ACS (Asia Classification Society)

Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships (2024)

ASIA CLASSIFICATION SOCIETY
NO.31, 5TH ST. , NORTH KARGAR AVE.
TEHRAN-IRAN
WWW.ASIACLASS.ORG

Copyright © 2022 ACS

CONTENTS

PART 1	**Regulations**	**3**
PART 2	**Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials**	**220**
PART 3	**Ship Structures**	**832**
PART 4	**Ship Structures (Ship Types)**	**1442**
PART 5	**Main and Auxiliary Machinery**	**1960**
PART 6	**Control, Electrical, Refrigeration and Fire**	**2666**
PART 7	**Other Ship Types and Systems**	**2911**
PART 8	**Rules for Ice and Cold Operations**	**3198**

PART

1

Regulations

CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1	**General Regulations**		**5**
	SECTION 1	General	6
CHAPTER 2	**Classification Regulations**		**11**
	SECTION 1	Conditions for classification	14
	SECTION 2	Character of classification and class notations	17
	SECTION 3	Surveys – General	49
	SECTION 4	IACS Audits and Assessments	59
	SECTION 5	Type Approval and Type Testing	60
	SECTION 6	Classification of machinery with [✠] MC or MCH notation	62
CHAPTER 3	**Periodical Survey Regulations**		**63**
	SECTION 1	General	71
	SECTION 2	Annual Surveys - Hull and machinery requirements	84
	SECTION 3	Intermediate Surveys - Hull and machinery requirements	96
	SECTION 4	Bottom Surveys – In Dry-Dock and In-Water - Hull and machinery requirements	101
	SECTION 5	Special Survey - General - Hull requirements	103
	SECTION 6	Special Survey - Bulk carriers - Hull requirements	116
	SECTION 7	Special Survey - Oil tankers (including ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships) - Hull requirements	128
	SECTION 8	Special Survey - Chemical Tankers - Hull requirements	144
	SECTION 9	Ships for liquefied gases	155
	SECTION 10	Dredgers, hopper dredgers, sand carriers, hopper barges and reclamation craft	168
	SECTION 11	Machinery surveys - General requirements	170
	SECTION 12	Turbines and steam engines - Detailed requirements	172
	SECTION 13	Reciprocating internal combustion engines - Detailed requirements	174
	SECTION 14	Electrical equipment	176
	SECTION 15	Boilers	179

SECTION 16 Steam pipes 181
SECTION 17 Screwshafts, tube shafts and propellers 183
SECTION 18 Screwshafts, tube shafts and propellers 191
SECTION 19 Inert gas systems 195
SECTION 20 Classification of ships not built under survey 196
SECTION 21 Refrigerated cargo installations 199
SECTION 22 Controlled atmosphere systems 203
SECTION 23 Bow, inner, side shell and stern doors on Ro-Ro ships 205
SECTION 24 Fuel installations using gases or other low-flashpoint fuels 209
SECTION 25 Classification of rigs not built under survey 219

PART

1

CHAPTER **1** **General Regulations**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1 General 6

1. 1 Background 6
1. 2 Governance 6
1. 3 Technical Committee 6
1. 4 Applicability of Classification Rules and Disclosure of Information 7
1. 5 Ethics 8
1. 6 Fees 8
1. 7 Disagreement 9
1. 8 Limitation of Liability 9
1. 9 Hold Harmless 9
1. 10 Time Bar to Legal Action 10
1. 11 Arbitration 10

PART

1

CHAPTER 1 General Regulations

SECTION 1 General

1. 1 Background

1. 1. 1 Asia Classification Society (hereinafter referred to as "ACS") was incorporated in 2005 as a private corporation registered in Kish Free Zone for: providing non-profit-making statutory services and certifications; faithful and accurate classification of merchant vessels, design approval, survey and issuing reports on merchant and non-merchant vessels, ships of special types (e.g., hovercrafts, hydrofoil boats, and multi-hull vessels), etc.; all within the scope of the classification described in the Rules.

1. 1. 2 This Chapter contains General Regulations which have been adopted by ACS for its governance.

1. 2 Governance

1. 2. 1 The management of the affairs of ACS are carried out under the direction and control of the Board of the Directors (hereinafter referred to as the 'Board'), in accordance with the provisions of its Memorandum and Articles of Association.

1. 2. 2 The Board of the Directors shall consist of representatives of the interests of various members of the company and those concerned with classification in general as under:

- One Director representing IBS (Iransafineh Bureau of Shipping)
- One Director representing Experts Group
- One Director representing PMO (Ports and Maritime Organization) Holding Company

1. 2. 3 The composition of the Board as above is to be in accordance with the articles of association of ACS (as may be amended from time to time).

1. 2. 4 The Board shall elect one of its members to be Chairman of the Board.

1. 2. 5 The employees of ACS are to be appointed by the Managing Director.

1. 3 Technical Committee

1. 3. 1 The Board has appointed a Technical Committee (hereinafter referred to as the 'Committee') whose function is to consider technical issues connected with ships matters, including but not limited to:

- Important technical issues concerning survey and certification of ships newbuildings and ships in service, development of checklists and procedures
- Formulation of Technical Rules for Classification Surveys, building of ships, their machinery and equipment.

- Important alterations of Rules once framed as may be required from time to time.

1. 3. 2 All decisions of the Technical Committee including amendments and/ or additions to the Rules and procedures for classification surveys and building of ships' hull, their machinery and equipment are to be reported to the Board.

1. 3. 3 The Technical Committee to be constituted of members of ACS including Managing Director, Branches Division Manager, Advisor(s) to Managing Director, Marine Division Manager, Ships in Service Department Manager, Ships Newbuildings Department Manager, Industrial and Offshore Division Manager and Training Department Manager.

1. 3. 4 In addition to the foregoing, the Technical Committee may co-opt other members to the Committee among the high managerial positions in professional bodies representing technical disciplines relevant to the industry, including but not limited to: Ship Building, Marine Engineering, Naval Architecture, Marine Insurance, Steel Making, and etc. as appointed by the Managing Director (e.g., the full authorized representative of PMO, NITC, IRISL, ISOICO, IOEC, SADRA Ship Building Industries, Defense Marine Industries Group, Iranian Ship Owners' Association and Iran Supreme Council of Marine Industries) .

1. 3. 5 All nominations to be member of Technical Committee are subject to confirmation by the Managing Director.

1. 3. 6 The Technical Committees are empowered to:

a. appoint sub-Committees or panels; and
b. co-opt to the Technical Committee, or to its sub-Committees or panels, representatives of any organisation or industry or private individuals for the purpose of considering any particular problem or part of the Rules.

1. 3. 7 The Managing Director is the Chairman of the Technical Committee.

1. 3. 8 The members desiring to propose alterations in, or additions to the Rules for the classification, survey or building of ship (hull and machinery) shall give notice of such proposals to the Secretary of the Technical Committee. Every such meeting is to be convened by notice from the Secretary, if possible one month before the date of the meeting, and the Secretary will send the meeting agenda to the Committee members as soon as possible thereafter.

1. 3. 9 The Board reserves the right to alter, add to, or rescind any/or all of the above terms of reference including the dissolution of the Technical Committee.

1. 4 Applicability of Classification Rules and Disclosure of Information

1. 4. 1 ACS has the power to adopt, and publish as deemed necessary, Rules relating to classification and has (in relation thereto) provided the following:

a. Except in the case of a special directive by the Committee, no new Regulation or alteration to any existing Regulation relating to classification or to class notations is to be applied to existing ships.
b. Except in the case of a special directive by the Committee, or where changes necessitated by mandatory implementation of International Conventions and Codes are concerned, no new Rule or alteration in any existing Rule is to be applied compulsorily after the date on which the contract between the ship builder and shipowner for construction of the ship has been signed, nor within six months of its adoption. The date of 'contract for construction' of a ship is the date on which the contract to build the ship is signed between the prospective shipowner and the ship builder. This date and the construction number (i.e. hull numbers) of all the vessels included in the contract are to be declared by the party applying for the assignment of class to a newbuilding. The date of 'contract for construction' of a series of sister ships, including specified optional ships for which the option is ultimately exercised, is the date on which the contract to build the series is signed between the prospective shipowner and the

ship builder. In this section a 'series of sister ships' is a series of ships built to the same approved plans for classification purposes, under a single contract for construction. The optional ships will be considered part of the same series of sister ships if the option is exercised not later than 1 year after the contract to build the series was signed. If a contract for construction is later amended to include additional ships or additional options, the date of 'contract for construction' for such ships is the date on which the amendment to the contract is signed between the prospective shipowner and the ship builder.

The amendment to the contract is to be considered as a 'new contract'. If a contract for construction is amended to change the ship type, the date of 'contract for construction' of this modified vessel, or vessels, is the date on which the revised contract or new contract is signed between the Owner(s) and the shipbuilder. Where it is desired to use existing approved ship or machinery plans for a new contract, written application is to be made to ACS. Sister ships may have minor design alterations provided that such alterations do not affect matters related to classification, or if the alterations are subject to classification requirements, these alterations are to comply with the classification requirements in effect on the date on which the alterations are contracted between the prospective owner and the ship builder or, in the absence of the alteration contract, comply with the classification requirements in effect on the date on which the alterations are submitted to ACS for approval. Recognising the long time period that may occur between the initial design contract and the contract for construction, the date determining effective classification requirements will be specially considered by ACS in such cases.

c. All reports of survey are to be made by surveyors authorised by ACS to survey and report (hereinafter referred to as 'the Surveyors') according to the form prescribed, and submitted for the consideration of the Technical Committee.

d. Information contained in the reports of classification and statutory surveys will be made available to the relevant owner, National Administration, Port State Administration, P&I Club, hull underwriter and, if authorised in writing by that owner, to any other person or organisation.

e. Information relating to the status of classification and statutory surveys and suspensions/withdrawals of class together with any associated conditions of class will be made available as required by applicable legislation or court order.

1. 5 Ethics

1. 5. 1 No ACS employee is permitted under any circumstances, to accept, directly or indirectly, from any person, firm or company, with whom the work of the employee brings the employee into contact, any present, bonus, entertainment or honorarium of any sort whatsoever which is of more than nominal value or which might be construed to exceed customary courtesy extended in accordance with accepted ethical business standards.

1. 6 Fees

1. 6. 1 Fees, in accordance with normal ACS practice, will be charged for all services rendered by ACS. Expenses incurred by the Surveyors in connection with these services are normally charged in addition to the fees. However, in some special circumstances and at the discretion of the society these expenses may be included in the classification fees. Fees and expenses will be billed to the party requesting that particular service.

1. 6. 2 ACS has the power to withhold or, if already granted, to suspend or withdraw any ship from class (or to withhold any certificate or report in any other case), in the event of non-payment of any fee to ACS.

1. 7 Disagreement

1. 7. 1 Any disagreement regarding either the proper interpretation of the Rules or translation of the Rules from the English language edition is to be referred to ACS for resolution.

1. 7. 2 In case of disagreement between the Owners or builders and the Surveyors regarding the material, workmanship, extent of repairs or application of the Rules relating to any vessel classed or proposed to be classed by ACS, an appeal may be made in writing to the Committee, who will order a special survey to be held. Should the opinion of the Surveyor be confirmed, the expense of this special survey is to be paid by the party appealing.

1. 8 Limitation of Liability

1. 8. 1 Whilst ACS and its Board/ Committee use their best endeavors to ensure that the functions of ACS are properly carried out, in providing services, information or advice, neither ACS nor any of its servants or agents warrants the accuracy of any information or advice supplied. Except as set out herein, ACS nor any of its servants or agents (on behalf each of whom ACS has agreed this clause) shall be liable for any loss damage or expense whatever sustained by any person due to any act or omission or error of whatsoever nature and howsoever caused of ACS, its servants or agents or due to any inaccuracy of whatsoever nature and howsoever caused in any information or advice given in any way whatsoever by or on behalf of ACS, even if held to amount to a breach of warranty. Nevertheless, if any person uses services of ACS, or relies on any information or advice given by or on behalf of ACS and suffers loss, damage or expenses thereby which is proved to have been due to any negligent act omission or error of ACS, its servants or agents or any negligent inaccuracy in information or advice given by or on behalf of ACS, then ACS will pay compensation to such person for his proved loss up but not exceeding the amount of the fee charged by ACS for that particular services, information or advice.

1. 8. 2 Any notice of claim for loss, damage or expense as referred shall be made in writing to ACS Head Office within six months of the date when the service, information or advice was first provided, failing which all the rights to any such claim shall be forfeited and ACS shall be relieved and discharged from all liabilities.

1. 9 Hold Harmless

1. 9. 1 The party requesting services hereunder, or his assignee or successor in interest, agrees to release ACS and to indemnify and hold harmless ACS from and against any and all claims, demands, lawsuits or actions for damages, including legal fees, to persons and/or property, tangible, intangible or otherwise which may be brought against ACS incidental to, arising out of or in connection with this Agreement, the work to be done, services to be performed or material to be furnished hereunder, except for those claims caused solely and completely by the negligence of ACS, its agents, employees, officers, directors or subcontractors. The parties agree that for the purposes of the Convention on Limitation of Liability for Maritime Claims, 1976, ACS is a person for whose acts the shipowner is responsible.

1. 9. 2 Any other individual, corporation, partnership or other entity who is a party hereto or who in any way participates in, is engaged in connection with or is a beneficiary of, any portion of the services described herein shall also release ACS and shall indemnify and hold ACS harmless from and against all claims, demands, lawsuits or actions for damages, including legal fees, to persons and/or property, tangible, intangible or otherwise, which may be brought against ACS by any person or entity as a result of the services performed pursuant to this Agreement, except for those claims caused solely and completely by the negligence of ACS, its agents, employees, officers, directors or subcontractors.

1. 10 Time Bar to Legal Action

1. 10. 1 Any statutes of limitation notwithstanding, Owner's right to bring or to assert against ACS any and all claims, demands or proceedings whether in arbitration or otherwise shall be waived unless (a) notice is received by ACS within ninety (90) days after Owner had notice of or should reasonably have been expected to have had notice of the basis for such claims; and (b) arbitration or legal proceedings, if any, based on such claims or demands of whatever nature are commenced within six (6) months of the date of such notice to ACS.

1. 11 Arbitration

1. 11. 1 Any and all differences and disputes of whatsoever nature arising out of services under these Rules shall be put to arbitration in Iran pursuant to the laws relating to arbitration there in force, before a board of three persons, consisting of one arbitrator to be appointed by ACS, one by the Client, and one by the two so chosen. The decision of any two of the three on any point or points shall be final. Until such time as the arbitrators finally close the hearings either party shall have the right by written notice served on the arbitrators and on an officer of the other party to specify further disputes or differences under these Rules for hearing and determination. The arbitration is to be conducted in accordance with the rules of the Society of Maritime Arbitrators, Inc. in the English language. The governing law shall be the law of the Islamic Republic of Iran (I.R.I). The arbitrators may grant any relief other than punitive damages which they, or a majority of them, deem within the scope of the agreement of the parties, including, but not limited to, specific performance. Awards made in pursuance to this clause may include costs including a reasonable allowance for attorney's fees and judgment may be entered upon any award made hereunder in any court having jurisdiction.

PART

1

CHAPTER **2** **Classification Regulations**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**Conditions for classification**		**14**
	1. 1	General	14
	1. 2	Advisory services	16
SECTION 2	**Character of classification and class notations**		**17**
	2. 1	Definitions	17
	2. 2	Character symbols	26
	2. 3	Class notations (hull)	27
	2. 4	Class notations (machinery)	32
	2. 5	Class notations (machinery special features)	36
	2. 6	Class notations (refrigerated cargo installations (RMC), controlled atmosphere (CA) systems and carriage of refrigerated containers (CRC))	39
	2. 7	Class notations (Environmental Protection)	41
	2. 8	Descriptive notes	41
	2. 9	Application notes	47
SECTION 3	**Surveys – General**		**49**
	3. 1	Statutory surveys	49
	3. 2	New construction surveys	49
	3. 3	Existing ships	50
	3. 4	Damages, repairs and alterations	50
	3. 5	Existing ships – Periodical Surveys	51
	3. 6	Surveys for novel/complex systems, machinery and equipment	55
	3. 7	Certificates	55
	3. 8	Notice of surveys	56
	3. 9	Withdrawal/Suspension of class	56
	3. 10	Appeal from Surveyors' recommendations	57
	3. 11	Force majeure	58

3. 12 Ownership details....58
SECTION 4 IACS Audits and Assessments....59
4. 1 Audit of surveys....59
SECTION 5 Type Approval and Type Testing....60
5. 1 Type Approval — Marine Applications....60
5. 2 Type testing....60
SECTION 6 Classification of machinery with [✠] MC or MCH notation....62
6. 1 General....62
6. 2 Appraisal and records....62
6. 3 Survey and inspection....62

PART

1

CHAPTER 2 Classification Regulations

LIST OF TABLES

Table 2. 2. 1: Type notations 17
Table 2. 2. 2: Special features notations 19
Table 2. 2. 3: Notations for ice and cold operations 25
Table 2. 2. 4: Machinery Class Notations 34

PART

1

CHAPTER **2** **Classification Regulations**

SECTION **1** **Conditions for classification**

1. 1 General

1. 1. 1 Ships referred to in this Chapter are defined in Pt 3 Ship Structures (General), Pt 4 Ship Structures (Ship Types) and Pt 7 Other Ship Types and Systems of these Rules. Machinery referred to in this Chapter is defined in Pt 5 Main and Auxiliary Machinery and Pt 6 Control, Electrical, Refrigeration and Fire of these Rules. Systems referred to in this Chapter are defined in Pt 7 Other Ship Types and Systems of these Rules. Materials are referred to in the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials.

1. 1. 2 Ships built in accordance with ACS Rules and Regulations, or in accordance with requirements equivalent thereto, will be assigned a class in the *Register Book* and will continue to be classed as long as they are found, upon examination at the prescribed surveys, to be maintained in accordance with the requirements of the Rules. Classification will be conditional upon compliance with ACS's requirements for both hull and machinery and with the Certification Requirements of Pt 1, Ch 2, 1.1, General.

1. 1. 3 The Classification Committee, in addition to requiring compliance with ACS's Rules, may require to be satisfied that ships are suitable for the geographical or other limits or conditions of the service contemplated.

1. 1. 4 Loading conditions and any other preparations required to permit a ship with a class notation specifying some service limitation to undertake a sea-going voyage, either from port of building to service area or from one service area to another, are to be in accordance with arrangements agreed by ACS prior to the voyage.

1. 1. 5 Any damage, defect, breakdown, grounding, serious deficiency, detention or, arrest or refusal of access, which could invalidate the conditions for which a class has been assigned, is to be reported to ACS without delay.

1. 1. 6 The Rules are framed on the understanding that ships will be properly loaded and handled. They do not, unless stated or implied in the class notation, provide for special distributions or concentrations of loading. The Classification Committee may require additional strengthening to be fitted in any ship which, in their opinion, would otherwise be subjected to severe stresses due to particular features in the design, or where it is desired to make provision for exceptional loaded or ballast conditions. In such cases, particulars are to be submitted for consideration.

1. 1. 7 When longitudinal strength calculations have been required, loading guidance information is supplied to the Master by means of a Loading Manual and in addition, when required, by means of a loading instrument.

1. 1. 8 The Rules are framed on the understanding that ships will not be operated in environmental conditions more severe than those agreed for the design basis and approval, without the prior agreement of ACS.

1. 1. 9 The Classification Committee requires that ships comply with all requirements of the National Administration and all applicable mandatory international IMO and ILO Conventions and Codes (including Amendments thereto), including the following:

- *Load Lines, 1966/1988 - International Convention on Load Lines, 1966, as Amended by the Protocol of 1988*
- *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea*
- *MARPOL - International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships*
- *AFS - International Convention on the Control of Harmful Anti-Fouling Systems on Ships, 2001*
- *Tonnage - International Convention on Tonnage Measurement of Ships, 1969*
- *IBC Code - International Code for the Construction and Equipment of Ships Carrying Dangerous Chemicals in BulkAmended by Resolution MEPC.225(64)*
- *2014 IGC Code - International Code for the Construction and Equipment of Ships Carrying Liquefied Gases in Bulk*
- *IMSBC Code – International Maritime Solid Bulk Cargoes Code – Resolution MSC.268(85)*
- *Maritime Labour Convention.*

The Classification Committee requires the applicable Convention and Code Certificates to be issued by authorities as follows:

- Cargo Ship Radio Certificates, Safety Management Certificates, International Ship Security Certificates and Maritime Labour Certificates, if required, must have been issued by a recognised organisation authorised by the National Administration with which the ship is registered.
- all other mandatory statutory certificates must have been issued by ACS or by a National Administration or by an IACS Member when so authorised by the National Administration with which the ship is registered.

In the case of dual-classed ships, Convention Certificates may be issued by the other Classification Society with which the ship is classed, provided this is recognised in a formal Dual Class Agreement with ACS and provided the other Classification Society is also authorised by the National Administration.
In the event of a National Administration withdrawing any ship's Convention Certificate (referred to in this Section), then the Classification Committee may suspend the ship's class. If a ship is removed from the National Administration's Registry for the non-compliance with the Conventions or Classification Requirements referred to herein, then the Classification Committee will suspend the ship's class. In the event of *ISM Code - International Management Code and Revised Guidelines on Implementation of the ISM Code* certification being withdrawn from a ship or Operator, then the Classification Committee will suspend the ship's class.

1. 1. 10 Where an onboard computer system having longitudinal strength computation capability, which is required by the Rules, is provided on a new ship, or newly installed on an existing ship, then the system is to be certified in respect of longitudinal strength in accordance with ACS's document entitled *Approval of Longitudinal Strength and Stability Calculation Programs*, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 4, 8 Loading guidance information

1. 1. 11 Where an onboard computer system having stability computation capability is provided on a new ship, then the system is to be certified in respect of stability aspects in accordance with ACS's document entitled, Approval of Longitudinal Strength and Stability Calculation Programs. When

provided, an onboard computer system having stability computation capability is to carry out the calculations and checks necessary to assess compliance with all the stability requirements applicable to the ship on which it is installed.

1. 1. 12 Where a ship has been detained by Port State Control the Owner is to advise ACS immediately in order to arrange the attendance of a Surveyor.

1. 2 Advisory services

1. 2. 1 The Rules do not cover certain technical characteristics, such as stability, trim, hull vibration, etc., but advice may be given on such matters without any assumption of responsibility for such advice.

PART

1

CHAPTER 2 **Classification Regulations**

SECTION 2 **Character of classification and class notations**

2. 1 Definitions

2. 1. 1 **Note** For the purpose of class notations, the definitions given in Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.1 Definitions 2.1.2 to Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.1 Definitions 2.1.12 will apply.

2. 1. 2 **Clear water.** Water having sufficient depth to permit the normal development of wind generated waves.

2. 1. 3 **Fetch.** The extent of clear water across which a wind has blown before reaching the ship.

2. 1. 4 **Sheltered water.** Water where the fetch is six nautical miles or less.

2. 1. 5 **Reasonable weather.** Wind strengths of force six or less in the Beaufort scale, associated with sea states sufficiently moderate to ensure that green water is taken on board the ship's deck at infrequent intervals only or not at all.

2. 1. 6 **Type notation.** A notation indicating that the ship has been arranged and constructed in compliance with particular Rules intended to apply to that type of ship. Type notations that may be assigned are listed in Table 2. 2. 1: Type notations.

Table 2. 2. 1: Type notations

Dry cargo	Tanker	Passenger
Anchor handler	Chemical tanker	Passenger ferry
AHTS (Anchor Handler Tug Supply)	Double hull oil tanker	Passenger/vehicle ferry
Barge	Liquefied gas carrier	Passenger ship
Bulk carrier	Liquefied gas tanker	Passenger yacht
Cable laying vessel	Moored oil storage tanker	Roll on-Roll off passenger ferry
Container ship	Moored oil storage unit	Roll on-Roll off passenger ship
Diving support vessel	Oil barge	Sailing passenger ship
Dredger	Oil or bulk carrier	
Escort tug	Oil recovery ship	
Fire fighting	Oil tanker	
Fishing vessel	Ore or oil carrier	
Hopper barge		

Hopper dredger		
Icebreaker		
Icebreaker(+)		
Launch		
Livestock carrier		
Offshore support vessel		
Offshore supply vessel		
Offshore tug		
Offshore well stimulation ship		
Ore carrier		
Pipe laying vessel		
Pontoon		
Reclamation ship		
Refrigerated cargo ship		
Research		
Roll on-Roll off cargo ship		
Seismographic support vessel		
Shipborne barge		
Subsea support vessel		
Standby vessel		
Stern trawler		
Split hopper barge		
Split hopper dredger		
Trawler		
Tug		
Vehicle carrier		

2. 1. 7 **Cargo notation.** A notation indicating that the ship has been designed, modified or arranged to carry one or more particular cargoes, e.g. sulphuric acid. Ships with one or more particular cargo notations are not thereby prevented from carrying other cargoes for which they are suitable.

2. 1. 8 **Special duties notation.** A notation indicating that the ship has been designed, modified or arranged for special duties other than those implied by the type and cargo notations, e.g. research. Ships with special duties notations are not thereby prevented from performing any other duties for which they may be suitable.

2. 1. 9 **ACSPlus notation**. Where one or more of ACS notation procedures have been satisfactorily applied, then a notation showing the associated characters of the procedure(s) within brackets will, at the Owner's request, be entered in the *Register Book*, preceded by the word **ACSPlus**, *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.17. Other ACSPlus procedures that have been satisfactorily

applied will similarly be shown as descriptive notes and will appear in the *Register Book*, *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.8 Descriptive notes 2.8.2.

2. 1. 10 **Special features notation.** A notation indicating that the ship incorporates special features which significantly affect the design, *See*Table 2. 2. 2: Special features notations.

Table 2. 2. 2: Special features notations

Special features notation	Description	*See also*
BC	Assigned to bulk carriers of length 150 m or above	Pt 4, Ch 7, 1.4 Class notation for CSR bulk carriers 1.4.2
Bottom Strengthened for (Operating Aground) (Loading and Unloading Aground)	Assigned where the bottom structure has been additionally strengthened for loading and unloading aground	Pt 3, Ch 9, 7 Bottom strengthening for loading and unloading aground and Pt 4, Ch 12, 1.3 Class notations 1.3.4
BLS	Bow Loading System. Assigned to tankers equipped with bow loading arrangements to facilitate the transfer of cargo oil from offshore loading terminals	Pt 7, Ch 6, 1.2 Class notations 1.2.1
BoxMax	Assigned to container vessels that have an approved onboard lashing program to calculate forces acting on a container and its container securing arrangements. The notation may be accompanied by one of the following supplementary letter sequences, **V** or **V,W** or **V,W,L** or **M**. These allow the Master to use weather dependent factors based on the environmental severity of the planned voyage to determine the forces acting on the container and the container securing arrangements, potentially increasing the flexibility of the carriage of containers onboard the ship. **V** (Voyage dependency) denotes that weather dependent factors based on an annual basis are available for selected specific voyages or routes. **W** (Weather dependency) denotes that weather dependent factors based on a seasonal basis are available for selected specific voyages or routes **L** (Limited duration voyage) denotes that weather dependent factors suitable for application to a limited duration voyage in coastal waters are available. **M** (Ship motion monitoring) denotes that the ship's Master shall select the weather dependent factors and that in-service maximum ship motion and environmental conditions will be recorded to demonstrate safe operation. ACS will supply weather dependent factors applicable to the list of sea areas requested by the Owner, *See also* Table 14. 1. 1: BoxMax notation features.	Pt 3, Ch 4 Longitudinal Strength and Pt 3, Ch 14 Cargo Securing Arrangements

Special features notation	Description		*See also*
Cargo Loading on (Tank Top/ Tween/ Deck (s) Plating/ Hatch cover(s)) limited to .... tonnes/m^2	Assigned where cargo loading on tank tops, decks and/or hatch covers are limited to a specified maximum value which is less than the normal Rule loading		—
Carriage of Oils with a F.P. not exceeding 60°C	Assigned to non-oil tankers where the ship is suitably constructed and arranged for the carriage of oils with a flash point not exceeding 60°C (closed cup test)		Pt 4, Ch 9 Double Hull Oil Tankers Pt 4, Ch 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers
Carriage of Oils with a F.P. exceeding 60°C	Assigned where only the carriage of oils having a flash point exceeding 60°C (closed cup test) is contemplated		Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.1 General 1.1.5
(Specified Cargo(es)) only	Assigned where arrangements have been approved for the carriage of a specific product(s)		Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.1 General 1.1.7
CC	Assigned where structures are fitted with an approved corrosion control system		Pt 1, Ch 3 Periodical Survey Regulations
CCSA	Certified Container Securing Arrangements. Assigned where freight container securing arrangements are fitted, and the design and construction of the system is in accordance with ACS Rules and loose fittings are supplied		Pt 3, Ch 14 Cargo Securing Arrangements
CG	Cargo Gear. Assigned where cargo gear is included in class at the Owner's request		Pt 3, Ch 9, 6 Lifting appliances and support arrangements
CL	Cargo Lift(s). Assigned where cargo lift(s) are included in class at the Owner's request		Pt 3, Ch 9, 6 Lifting appliances and support arrangements
CR	Cargo Ramp(s). Assigned where cargo ramp(s) are included in class at the Owner's request		Pt 3, Ch 9, 6 Lifting appliances and support arrangements
CRC –/– –kW –%/–%	Carriage of refrigerated containers. The CRC notation may be applied to any ship which has the ability to carry refrigerated containers operating at their design condition with a 24-hour average external ambient air temperature of 35°C		Pt 7, Ch 10, 1.1 General
	The following descriptive notations may be appended, giving details of electrical power and type of cargo:		
	–/–	No. of hold-stowed refrigerated containers/No. of deck-stowed refrigerated containers e.g. 230/140	
	–kW	Power generating capacity dedicated to supplying the container plug-in points, e.g. 2.800 kW	

Special features notation	Description		*See also*
	–%/–%	Stowage ratio of deep frozen and chilled cargoes, e.g. 60%/40%	
Container Cargoes in (((all) Hold (No(s)))(and on Upper Deck)((and on (all) Hatch Cover(s) (No(s))...)	Assigned where general cargo ships carry container cargoes.		Pt 3, Ch 4 Longitudinal Strength
Deck No(s) ... Strengthened for Carriage of Roll on-Roll off Cargoes	Assigned where it is proposed either to stow wheeled vehicles on the deck or to use wheeled vehicles for cargo handling and the deck and supporting structure has been specially considered		Pt 3, Ch 9, 3 Decks loaded by wheeled vehicles
DSPM4	Dual Single Point Mooring. Assigned to a ship provided with a dual mooring line arrangement at a single-point mooring		Pt 3, Ch 13, 8 Anchor windlass design and testing
DWA	Deep Water Anchoring. Assigned to a ship with a Rule length *L* not less than 135 m, subject to the Rules in Pt 3, Ch 13 Ship Control Systems, which has increased equipment for anchoring in deep waters with a depth up to 120 m		Pt 3, Ch 13, 10 Anchoring equipment in deep and unsheltered water
ECL(1, 2, 3)	Assigned to vessels where work spaces, movement about the ship, fall protection and working arrangements on deck have been specially considered for performing container securing, inspection and other related tasks		*Rules for Ergonomic Container Lashing*
ELD	Assigned when ergonomic lighting design has been applied		Pt 6, Ch 2, 23 Ergonomic Lighting Design – ELD optional notation and *Pt 6, Ch 2, 22 Ergonomic Lighting Design – ELD optional notation*
EWP	Enhanced Weather Protection. Assigned where a vessel, subject to the Rules in Pt 4, Ch 4 Offshore Support Vessels, has increased scantlings for superstructure, windows and side scuttles.		Pt 4, Ch 4, 9 Enhanced weather protection
Fire-Fighting Ship 1, 2, 3, (with water spray) or E	Designed where fire protection and fire-fighting equipment is provided. Type 1, 2 or 3 signifies the capacity of the fire-fighting equipment. The total discharge capacity of the monitors in m^3/h is shown in brackets. 'With water spray' signifies that a ship is provided with a water spray system which will provide an effective cooling spray of water E, when the characteristics of the water fire-fighting system are not those required for the assignment of the additional service features 1, 2 or 3, and when the system is specially considered by the Society		Pt 7, Ch 3 Fire-fighting Ships

Special features notation	Description	*See also*
Hatch Covers omitted in Hold (No(s)) ...	Assigned where the omission of hatch covers have been specially considered based upon the model tests or alternative means to determine the quantity of water likely to ingress the cargo holds and the means by which it is effectively and safely discharged	Pt 4, Ch 8, 11.4 Omission of hatch covers
Heavy Deck Loads	Assigned where decks are strengthened for loading in excess of Rule basic minimum, e.g. 'Upper deck aft of Fr. 50 strengthened for load of 10 tonnes/m^2'	Pt 3, Ch 6 Aft End Structure
Helideck	Assigned where a designated helicopter landing platform or other deck area with fire-fighting appliances and other equipment necessary for the safe operation of helicopters are provided.	Pt 3, Ch 9, 5 Helicopter landing areas
Occasional Helicopter Landing Area	Assigned where an area on a ship designated for occasional or emergency landing of helicopters is provided.	Pt 3, Ch 9, 5 Helicopter landing areas
Hold (No(s)) ... may be empty at draughts not (less than) (exceeding) ...m	Assigned where particular loading arrangements have been specially considered	Pt 4, Ch 7 Bulk Carriers
Ice Class	Assigned where a ship is strengthened to navigate in specific ice conditions. Supplementary Ice Class notations are given in Table 2. 2. 3: Notations for ice and cold operations .	Pt 8, Ch 1 Application and Pt 8, Ch 2 Ice Operations - Ice Class
Icebreaker	Assigned designed for icebreaking duties	Pt 8, Ch 1 Application and Pt 8, Ch 2 Ice Operations - Ice Class
LA	Mandatory Lifting Appliance(s). Assigned where the lifting appliance is considered to be an essential feature, e.g. cranes on crane barges, lifting arrangements for diving on diving support vessels, and is mandatory	Pt 3, Ch 9, 6 Lifting appliances and support arrangements
LA	Mandatory Lifting Appliance(s). Assigned where the lifting appliance is considered to be an essential feature and has been classed by a recognised classification society other than ACS and later transferred into class with ACS. In such cases, a new Register of Ship's Lifting Appliances & Cargo Handling Gear (LA.1) will be issued in accordance with ACS's *Code for Lifting Appliances in a Marine Environment*.	Pt 3, Ch 9, 6 Lifting appliances and support arrangements
LFPL	Low flash point liquids. Assigned to offshore supply vessels intended for the carriage of liquids with flashpoint below 60°C (closed cup test) in bulk	Pt 4, Ch 4 Offshore Support Vessels

Special features notation	Description	*See also*
For Liquefaction and Storage of (Methane, etc.) in Independent Gas Tanks (Type B, etc.), Maximum Vapour Pressure ( ) MPa, Minimum Temperature Minus ( ) °C	Assigned where ships of Category 1B or 2 which have process plants installed solely for the purposes of the physical liquefaction of impure feedstock gases at low temperature and the storage of the purified liquefied gases (where the chemical treatment of the impurities is an incidental process)	Pt 7, Ch 2, 2.2 Additional notations
Machinery on deck	Assigned where machinery other than lifting appliances, and anchoring and mooring equipment is installed on deck	Pt 3, Ch 9, 9 Strengthening for machinery on deck
Marpol 20.1.3	Assigned to double hull oil tankers not meeting the Rule minimum double side width requirements but which comply with MARPOL Annex 1, Regulation 20.1.3	Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.4 Class notation and applicable Rules for non-CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers 1.4.3
Marpol 21.1.2	Assigned to double hull oil tankers of less than 5000 tonnes deadweight which have a complete double hull in accordance with MARPOL Annex I, Regulation 21.1.2	Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.4 Class notation and applicable Rules for non-CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers 1.4.4
Movable Decks	Assigned where all movable decks comply with ACS requirements. Movable decks other than those specifically indicated in ACS Rule requirements are not a classification item	Pt 3, Ch 9, 4 Movable decks
Oil Recovery	Assigned when a ship is equipped for oil recovery operations	Pt 7, Ch 5, 2 Oil recovery
Oil Recovery (F.P. >60°C)	Assigned when a ship is equipped for oil recovery operations restricted to oils with a flash point greater than 60°C	Pt 7, Ch 5, 2 Oil recovery
Petrol in Hold (No(s))...	Assigned to ships that can carry motor vehicles with fuel in their tanks for self-propulsion, in specified locations. It does not apply to ships that are designed primarily for the carriage of motor vehicles Specific requirements will be advised upon request	—
PL	Passenger Lift(s). Assigned where the passenger lift(s) are included in class at the Owner's request	Pt 3, Ch 9, 6 Lifting appliances and support arrangements
PM (T1) [or (T2) or (T3)]	For ships fitted with a positional mooring system (PM). The supplementary notation **(T1)** [or **(T2)** or **(T3)**] may be applied if the system is thruster-assisted. The encircled numeral defines the thruster allowance	Pt 7, Ch 8, 1.2 Classification notations 1.2.1

Special features notation	Description	*See also*
PMC (T1) [or (T2) or (T3)]	For ships fitted with a positional mooring system for mooring in close proximity to other ships or installations (PMC). The supplementary notation **(T1)** [or **(T2)** or **(T3)**] may be applied if the system is thruster-assisted. The encircled numeral defines the thruster allowance	Pt 7, Ch 8, 1.2 Classification notations 1.2.1
RD	Relative Density. Assigned where a ship has tanks appraised for a maximum permissible relative density greater than 1.025	Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships Pt 4, Ch 4 Offshore Support Vessels
Self-Discharging (Unloading)	Assigned where a ship fitted with self-unloading equipment whose structural aspect has been specially approved	Pt 4, Ch 12, 1 General
SLS	Stern Loading System. Assigned to tankers equipped with stern loading arrangements to facilitate the transfer of cargo oil from offshore loading terminals	Pt 7, Ch 6, 1 General
Specialised for the Carriage of ...	Assigned to a vessel which has been designed for the carriage of specified cargo other than that applied by the type notation	Pt 4, Ch 4, 1 General
SPM4	Single Point Mooring. Assigned to a ship provided with a single mooring line arrangement at a single point mooring	Pt 3, Ch 13, 8 Anchor windlass design and testing
Strengthened to carry cargoes which may liquefy (IMSBC Group A)	Assigned to ore carriers which are to carry 'Group A cargo' and which have satisfied the ACS requirements for Classification as a specially constructed or fitted cargo ship for confining cargo shift, as stipulated in the IMSBC Code. In accordance with the IMSBC Code, vessels with this notation are eligible for the carriage of Group A cargo where the moisture content rises above the Transportable Moisture Limit (TML) after loading. This notation is assigned at the request of the Owner.	Pt 4, Ch 11, 1.3 Class notation 1.3.4
Strengthened for Heavy Cargoes (any) Hold (No(s) ..... may be empty)	Assigned to a bulk carrier of less than 150 m in length or a ship designed for the carriage of heavy cargoes. If only certain holds are strengthened for heavy cargoes, they will be specified	Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships and Pt 4, Ch 7, 1 General
HNLS	Hazardous and noxious liquids system. Assigned to Offshore Support Vessels complying with the aspects relevant to classification of the *Code for the transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk on offshore support vessels (OSV Chemical Code)*/	Pt 4, Ch 4, 8 Transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk
Hold No(s) ... Strengthened for Regular Discharge by Heavy Grabs	Assigned to bulk carriers where cargoes are regularly discharged by heavy grabs and the thickness of the plating of the hold inner bottom, hopper and transverse bulkhead bottom stool is increased	Pt 3, Ch 9, 7.1 Application

Special features notation	Description	*See also*
Submersible to a depth of ...m below Upper Deck in Harbour only	Assigned to a ship that is designed so that it can be submersed to a specified depth in harbour only	—
Timber Deck Cargoes	Assigned where a cargo of timber is carried on an uncovered part of the freeboard or superstructure deck (does not include wood pulp or similar cargo) and the requirements of the 1966 Load Line Convention concerning timber deck cargoes or other National Regulations are complied with	Pt 3, Ch 9, 2 Timber deck cargoes
TLS	Submerged Turret Loading System. Assigned to tankers equipped with submerged turret loading systems to facilitate the transfer of cargo oil from offshore loading to terminals	Pt 7, Ch 6, 1 General
WDL(+)	Weather Deck Load. Assigned where the weather deck load scantlings have been approved for a loading greater than a design head of 3.5 m	Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships and Pt 4, Ch 4 Offshore Support Vessels
W2W	Walk To Work. Assigned where a personnel transfer system is included in class at the Owner's request	Pt 3, Ch 9, 6 Lifting appliances and support arrangements

Table 2. 2. 3: Notations for ice and cold operations

Notation	Description	Conditions	Application	*See also*
Ice Class 1E	For offshore supply vessels	Light and very light ice conditions	Hull, Machinery	Pt 8, Ch 2, 4 Hull requirements for light ice conditions – Ice Classes 1D and 1E and Pt 8, Ch 2, 5 Machinery requirements for light ice conditions – Ice Classes 1D and 1E
Ice Class 1D	Hull strengthening in forward region only			
Ice Class 1C FS		Ice Class 1C; ships with such structure, engine output and other properties that they are capable of navigating in light ice conditions, with the assistance of icebreakers when necessary;		
Ice Class 1B FS		Ice Class 1B; ships with such structure, engine output and other properties that they are capable of navigating in moderate ice conditions, with the assistance of icebreakers when necessary		
Ice Class 1A FS	Finnish Swedish Ice Class Rules	Ice Class 1A; ships with such structure, engine output and other properties that they are capable of navigating in difficult ice conditions, with the	Hull, Machinery	Pt 8, Ch 2, 6 Hull requirements for first-year ice conditions – Ice Classes 1AS FS, 1A FS, 1B FS, 1C FS and

		assistance of icebreakers when necessary		1D and Pt 8, Ch 2, 7 Machinery requirements for first-year ice conditions – Ice Classes 1AS FS, 1A FS, 1B FS and 1C FS
Ice Class 1AS FS		Ice Class 1A Super; ships with such structure, engine output and other properties that they are normally capable of navigating in difficult ice conditions without the assistance of icebreakers		
Ice Class 1C FS(+)		Ice Class 1C; ships with such structure, engine output and other properties that they are capable of navigating in light ice conditions, with the assistance of icebreakers when necessary		
Ice Class 1B FS(+)	Finnish Swedish Ice Class Rules with enhanced engine power for icebreaking capability	Ice Class 1B; ships with such structure, engine output and other properties that they are capable of navigating in moderate ice conditions, with the assistance of icebreakers when necessary	Hull, Machinery	Pt 8, Ch 2, 8 Hull requirements for first-year ice conditions – Ice classes 1AS FS(+), 1A FS(+), 1B FS(+) and 1C FS(+) and Pt 8, Ch 2, 9 Machinery requirements for first-year ice conditions - Ice classes 1AS FS(+), 1A FS(+), 1B FS(+) and 1C FS(+)
Ice Class 1A FS(+)		Ice Class 1A; ships with such structure, engine output and other properties that they are capable of navigating in difficult ice conditions, with the assistance of icebreakers when necessary		
Ice Class 1AS FS(+)		Ice Class 1A Super; ships with such structure, engine output and other properties that they are normally capable of navigating in difficult ice conditions without the assistance of icebreakers		

2. 1. 11 **Service restriction notation**. A notation indicating that a ship has been classed on the understanding that it will be operated only in suitable areas or conditions which have been agreed by the Classification Committee, e.g. protected waters service.

2. 1. 12 **Linked** means connected, while in operation, to an attendant ship (which may be on shore, submerged or afloat) by a restraining line, suspension cable or umbilical cord.

2. 1. 13 **Laid-up notation**. A ship not under repair or not actively employed may be assigned the laid-up notation in order to maintain the ship in class subject to agreement by the Classification Committee. A general examination of the hull and machinery is to be carried out in lieu of the Annual Survey. An Underwater Examination (UWE) is to be carried out in lieu of the Special Survey. *See* Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.1 Frequency of surveys 1.1.2, Pt 1, Ch 3, 2.1 General 2.1.5, Pt 1, Ch 3, 5.1 General 5.1.6 and Pt 1, Ch 3, 11.1 Annual, Intermediate and Bottom Surveys 11.1.2.

2. 2 Character symbols

2. 2. 1 All ships, when classed, will be assigned one or more character symbols as applicable. For the majority of ships, the character assigned will be **100A1**, ✠**100A1** or ✠ **100A1**.

2. 2. 2 A full list of character symbols for which ships may be eligible is as follows:

✠ = This distinguishing mark will be assigned, at the time of classing, to new ships constructed under ACS's Special Survey in compliance with the Rules, and to the satisfaction of the Classification Committee.

✠ = This distinguishing mark, will be assigned to ships built under supervision of an IACS member society and later assigned class with ACS. For such ships the class notations will be reviewed separately and equivalent notations will be assigned.

100 = This character figure will be assigned to all ships considered suitable for sea-going service.

A = This character letter will be assigned to all ships which have been built or accepted into class in accordance with ACS's Rules and Regulations, and which are maintained in good and efficient condition.

1 = This character figure will be assigned to:

= (a) Ships having on board, in good and efficient condition, anchoring and/or mooring equipment in accordance with the Rules.

= (b) Ships classed for a special service, having on board, in good and efficient condition, anchoring and/or mooring equipment approved by the Classification Committee as suitable and sufficient for the particular service.

N = This character letter will be assigned to ships on which the Classification Committee has agreed that anchoring and mooring equipment need not be fitted in view of their particular service.

T = This character letter will be assigned to ships which are intended to perform their primary designed service function only while they are anchored, moored, towed or linked, and which have, in good and efficient condition, adequately attached anchoring, mooring, towing or linking equipment which has been approved by the Classification Committee as suitable and sufficient for the intended service.

2. 2. 3 For classification purposes, the character figure 1, or either of the character letters **N** or **T**, is to be assigned.

2. 2. 4 In cases where the anchoring and/or mooring equipment is found to be seriously deficient in quality or quantity, the class of the ship will be liable to be withheld.

2. 3 Class notations (hull)

2. 3. 1 When considered necessary by the Classification Committee, or when requested by an Owner and agreed by the Classification Committee, a class notation will be appended to the character of classification assigned to the ship. This class notation will consist of one of, or a combination of: a type notation, a cargo notation, a special duties notation, a special features notation and/or a service restriction notation, e.g `✠ **100A1** Oil Tanker F.P. exceeding 60°C in No. 4 tanks ESP Baltic Service Ice Class 1B'.

2. 3. 2 Details of the ship types and particular cargoes for which special Rules apply are given in those Chapters of Pt 3 Ship Structures (General), Pt 4 Ship Structures (Ship Types) and Pt 7 Other Ship Types and Systems which apply to such ships and cargoes.

2. 3. 3 Details of the more common special features and the conditions relevant to the assignment of special features notations, together with the form of such notations, are incorporated in Pt 3 Ship Structures (General), Pt 4 Ship Structures (Ship Types) and Pt 7 Other Ship Types and Systems as applicable.

2. 3. 4 Service restriction notations will generally be assigned in one of the forms shown in Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.6 to Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.10, but this does not preclude Owners or Shipbuilders requesting special consideration for other forms in unusual cases.

2. 3. 5 Where a service notation is applicable, certain exemptions may be granted. Where these affect statutory requirements, such as Load Lines, the Owner or shipbuilder is to obtain the authorisation of the Flag State. Such exemptions are to be recorded on the Class certificate and any applicable statutory certificate.

2. 3. 6 **Protected waters service**. Service in sheltered water adjacent to sand banks, reefs, breakwaters or other coastal features, and in sheltered water between islands.

2. 3. 7 **Extended protected waters service**. Service in protected waters and also for short distances (generally less than 15 nautical miles) beyond protected waters in `reasonable weather',–e.g. `Extended Protected Waters Service from the Port of Bandar Abbas'.

2. 3. 8 **Specified coastal service**. Service along a coast, the geographical limits of which will be indicated in the Register Book, and for a distance out to sea generally not exceeding 21 nautical miles, unless some other distance is specified for `coastal service' by the Administration with which the ship is registered, or by the Administration of the coast off which it is operating, as applicable, e.g. `Indonesian coastal service'.

2. 3. 9 **Specified route service**. Service between two or more ports or other geographical features which will be indicated in the Register Book, e.g. `Bandar Abbas to Dubai service'.

2. 3. 10 Specified operating area service. Service within one or more geographical area(s) which will be indicated in the Register Book, e.g. `Pacific Tropical Zone service', `Red Sea, Eastern Mediterranean and Black Sea service'.

2. 3. 11 ***IWS**. This notation (In-water Survey) may be assigned to a ship where the applicable requirements of ACS's Rules and Regulations are complied with, *See* Pt 1, Ch 3, 4.3 In-Water Surveys; Pt 3, Ch 1, 5.2 Plans and supporting calculations and Pt 3, Ch 1, 5.3 Plans to be supplied to the ship; Pt 3, Ch 2, 3.5 External hull protection; Pt 3, Ch 13, 2.16 Pintles and Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.12 Sternbushes. The notation will be withdrawn for **ESP** ships upon reaching 15 years of age.

2. 3. 12 **ESP**. This notation (Enhanced Survey Programme) will be assigned to oil tankers, combination carriers, chemical tankers, bulk carriers and ore carriers, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.5 Definitions which are subject to an enhanced survey programme as detailed in Pt 1, Ch 3, 3 Intermediate Surveys - Hull and machinery requirements, Pt 1, Ch 3, 6 Special Survey - Bulk carriers - Hull requirements, Pt 1, Ch 3, 7 Special Survey - Oil tankers (including ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships) - Hull requirements and Pt 1, Ch 3, 8 Special Survey - Chemical Tankers - Hull requirements.

2. 3. 13 **CSR**. This notation will be assigned to bulk carriers and double hull oil tankers compliant with the *IACS Common Structural Rules for Bulk Carriers and Oil Tankers (CSR)*, *See* Pt 4, Ch 7, 1.2 Application 1.2.1 and Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.2 Application and ship arrangement 1.2.1. Additional mandatory and non-mandatory class notations for CSR bulk carriers are given in Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.14.

2. 3. 14 **Class notations for CSR bulk carriers**. In general, CSR bulk carriers less than 150 m in length are to comply with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 7, 1.4, Class notation for CSR bulk carriers and the *IACS Common Structural Rules (CSR)* and will be eligible for one of the following mandatory class notations:

{any holds may be empty}	This class notation is normally assigned to a ship designed to carry dry bulk cargoes of cargo density 1.0 tonne/m^3 and above, with an approved arrangement of loaded holds such that any hold may be empty at the maximum draught.

{holds a, b, ... may be empty} This class notation is normally assigned to a ship designed to carry dry bulk cargoes of cargo density 1.0 tonne/m^3 and above with specified holds empty at maximum draught.

In general, CSR bulk carriers equal to or greater than 150 m in length are to comply with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 7, 1.5 Class notation for non-CSR bulk carriers and the IACS Common Structural Rules (CSR) and will be eligible for one of the following mandatory class notations:

BC-A, {holds a, b, … may be empty} This class will be assigned for bulk carriers designed to carry dry bulk cargoes of cargo density 1.0 tonne/m^3 and above with specified holds empty at maximum draught.

BC-B This class will be assigned for bulk carriers designed to carry dry bulk cargoes of cargo density 1.0 tonne/m^3 and above with all cargo holds loaded.

BC-C This class will be assigned for bulk carriers designed to carry dry bulk cargoes of cargo density less than 1.0 tonne/m^3 with all cargo holds loaded.

The following additional notations and annotations are to be provided giving further detailed description of limitations to be observed during operation as a consequence of the design loading condition applied during the design:

(maximum cargo density (in tonnes/m^3)) For notations **BC-A** and **BC-B** if the maximum cargo density is less than 3.0 tonnes/m^3

(no MP) For all notations when the vessel has not been designed for loading and unloading in multiple ports in accordance with the conditions specified in IACS Common Structural Rules *(CSR),* Pt 1, Ch 4, Sec 8, 4.2.2;

GRAB [X] Where the net thickness of plating of inner bottom, hopper tank sloping plate, transverse lower stool, transverse bulkhead plating and inner hull up to a height of 3.0 m above the lowest point of the inner bottom, excluding bilge wells comply with IACS Common Structural Rules *(CSR),* Pt 2, Ch 1, 6 for BC-A and BC-B, *See* IACS Common Structural Rules *(CSR),* Pt 1, Ch 1, Sec 1, 3.2.1;

(allowed combination of specified empty holds) Annotation for notation **BC-A.**

2. 3. 15 **ESN.** This notation (Enhanced Survivability Notation) will be assigned to non-**CSR** bulk carriers which are designed to withstand the individual flooding of all cargo holds, *See* Pt 4, Ch 7, 1.3 General class notations 1.3.2.

2. 3. 16 **LI.** This notation will be assigned where an approved loading instrument has been installed as a classification requirement.

2. 3. 17 **ACSPlus( ).** Where one or more of ACS's ACSPlus procedures for the following have been satisfactorily applied, then a notation showing the associated characters of the procedure(s) within brackets will, at the Owner's request, preceded by the word **ACSPlus**, e.g. **ACSPlus(CM, SDA, FDA plus(25,NA))**. The requirements pertaining to these notations and the ACSPlus procedures are given in Pt 3, Ch 16 ACSPlus Procedures for the Design, Construction and Lifetime Care of Ships.

AS() This ACSPlus notation AS (Anti-Corrosion System) will be assigned when a specified area or areas of the ship have been protected against corrosion in accordance with the relevant ACSPlus procedures. The **AS( )** notation with the extension of one or more of the following associated supplementary characters shown in brackets, detailing the specified protected area or areas, may be assigned;

- **B** for protective coating system of water ballast tanks;

D for protective coating system of double-side skin spaces;

- **C** for protective coating system of cargo oil tanks;

C* when corrosion resistant steel has been used in cargo oil tanks;

V for protective coating system of void spaces.

CM This ACSPlus notation (Construction Monitoring), which complements the ACSPlus **SDA**, **FDA**, **FDA plus()** , **FDA ICE, FDA SPR**, and **WDA** notations, will be assigned when the controls in construction tolerances detailed in the relevant ACSPlus procedures have been applied and verified. The ACSPlus notation **CM** is mandatory upon application of any of the following ACSPlus notations: **SDA, FDA, FDA plus(), FDA ICE, FDA SPR** and **WDA**

FDA This ACSPlus notation (Fatigue Design Assessment) will be assigned when an appraisal has been made of the fatigue performance of the hull structure in accordance with the relevant ACSPlus procedures.

FDA plus() This ACSPlus notation (Fatigue Design Assessment plus) will be assigned when an appraisal has been made for a higher level of fatigue performance than that made for the assignment of **FDA**. The appraisal may be made based upon a specific trading pattern, which is to be expressed in terms of either a Worldwide trading route, as defined in the relevant ACSPlus procedures, or a North Atlantic trading route (that utilises the wave data from IACS Recommendation 34). The ACSPlus notation **FDA plus()** is to be followed by the number of years that the vessel has been assessed for the specific trading pattern shown in brackets, for either the Worldwide or North Atlantic trading routes, denoted by **WW** and **NA** respectively, e.g. **FDA plus (25, NA)**.

FDA ICE This ACSPlus notation (Fatigue Design Ice) will be assigned when an appraisal has been made for the fatigue performance of the hull structure when navigating through ice in accordance with the relevant ACSPlus procedures.

FDA SPR This ACSPlus notation (Springing Fatigue Assessment) will be assigned when an appraisal has been made of the fatigue performance of the hull structure taking into account the effects due to springing (the continuous vibrational response of the hull girder due to waves) in accordance with the relevant ACSPlus procedures.

MP This ACSPlus notation will be assigned to ore carriers where an assessment for multiple port loading and unloading has been carried out in accordance with the relevant ACSPlus procedures and the ACSPlus notation **SDA** has been assigned.

SDA This ACSPlus notation (Structural Design Assessment) will be assigned when direct calculations in accordance with the relevant ACSPlus procedures have been applied. The ACSPlus notation **SDA** is mandatory upon application of any of the following ACSPlus notations: **FDA, FDA plus(), FDA ICE, FDA SPR** , **WDA1** and **WDA2**.

WDA1 This ACSPlus notation (Whipping Design Assessment Level 1) will be assigned when an appraisal has been made of the dynamic response of the hull structure due to wave impact loads (Whipping) in accordance with the relevant ACSPlus procedures.

WDA2 This ACSPlus notation (Whipping Design Assessment Level 2) will be assigned when an appraisal has been made of the dynamic response of the hull structure due to wave impact loads (Whipping) in accordance with the relevant ACSPlus procedures.

2. 3. 18 When the ACSPlus notations **SDA, FDA, FDA plus(), FDA ICE, FDA SPR, WDA1**, and **WDA2** are assigned, the precise technical conditions of the appraisal will be made available to Owners.

2. 3. 19

2. 3. 20 The following notations may be assigned to ships that comply with standards for noise and vibration levels in different spaces at the time of delivery and during the ship's life if substantial changes to the machinery installation or interior arrangements are made.

PAC Passenger Accommodation Comfort. This notation indicates that the passenger accommodation meets the acceptance criteria.

CAC Crew Accommodation Comfort. This notation indicates that the crew accommodation and work areas meet the acceptance criteria.

PCAC Passenger and Crew Accommodation Comfort. This notation indicates that the passenger and crew spaces both meet the acceptance criteria.

Following the **PAC** or **CAC** notation, numerals 1, 2 or 3 will indicate the acceptance criteria to which the noise and vibration levels have been assessed. In the case of the **PCAC** notation, two numerals will be assigned. The first will indicate the acceptance criteria for passenger accommodation, whilst the second will indicate the crew comfort criteria. These notations are optional and are primarily intended to apply to passenger ships. Spaces that comply with the minimum Rule requirement for noise levels indicated in Pt 7, Ch 12 Passenger and Crew Accommodation Comfort, will meet the requirements of section 4 of IMO *Resolution MSC.337(91) – Adoption of the Code on Noise Levels on Board Ships – (Adopted on 30 November 2012)The Annex below is consolidated into Resolution MSC.337(91)*, when measured in accordance with the requirements of *Chapters 2* and 3 of that Resolution

2. 3. 21 The notation **EPN** (escort performance numeral) may be assigned to escort tugs which carry out full-scale performance trials in accordance with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 3, 9.3 Performance numeral and trials. **(F,B,V,C)** may be appended to the notations where:

F Maximum steering force, in tonnes.

B Maximum braking force, in tonnes.

V Speed, in knots, at which F and B are determined.

C Time, in seconds, required for the escort tug in manoeuvring from maintained oblique position of the tug giving it a maximum steering force on one side of the assisted vessel to a mirror position on the other side.

2. 3. 22 The escort performance numerals in the **EPN** notation may be given the prefix **CFD**: where a Computational Fluid Dynamics prediction of the performance of the escort tug during escort operation in indirect towing mode is made in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 3, 9.4 Computational Fluid Dynamics Predicted Performance, in lieu of full-scale performance trials.

2. 3. 23 Where escort performance numerals are predicted using computational fluid dynamics, the escort performance numeral "**C**" will be omitted.

2. 4 Class notations (machinery)

2. 4. 1 The following class notations are associated with the machinery construction and arrangement, and may be assigned as considered appropriate by the Classification Committee:

✠**MC** This notation will be assigned when the propelling and essential auxiliary machinery, *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.9 Application notes 2.9.1, have been constructed, installed and tested under ACS's Special Survey and in accordance with ACS's Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships, *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.2, New construction surveys.

[✠]**MC** This notation will be assigned when:

- the propelling arrangements for propellers, propulsion shafting and multiple input/output gearboxes, steering systems, pressure vessels and electrical equipment for essential systems have been constructed, installed and tested under ACS's Special Survey and are in accordance with ACS's Rules and Regulations, *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.2, New construction surveys.
- other items of machinery and gearing arrangements for propulsion and electrical power generation and other auxiliary machinery for essential services are in compliance with ACS Rules and supplied with the Manufacturer's certificate. This notation is assigned subject to the conditions in Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.9 Application notes 2.9.2 being complied with.
- the system arrangements of propelling and essential auxiliary machinery, *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.9 Application notes 2.9.1, are appraised and found to be acceptable to ACS.

✠**MC** This notation will be assigned to existing ships in service that will be accepted or transferred into ACS class when:

- the propelling and essential auxiliary machinery, *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.9 Application notes 2.9.1, have neither been constructed nor installed under ACS's Special Survey.
- the existing machinery installation and arrangement have been tested and found to be acceptable to ACS.

MCH This notation will be assigned when the:

- propelling and essential auxiliary machinery, *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.9 Application notes 2.9.1, has been installed and tested under ACS's survey and found to be acceptable to ACS.
- propelling and essential auxiliary machinery has been supplied with a Manufacturer's certificate. This notation is assigned subject to the conditions in Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.9, Application notes 2.9.3 being complied with.
- system arrangements of propelling and essential auxiliary machinery, *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.9 Application notes 2.9.1, are appraised and found to be acceptable to ACS.

IGS This notation will be assigned when a ship intended for the carriage of oil in bulk, or for the carriage of liquid chemicals in bulk, is fitted with an approved system for producing gas for inerting the cargo tanks.

2. 4. 2 The following class notations are associated with the machinery control and automation, and may be assigned as considered appropriate by the Classification Committee:

UMS This notation may be assigned when the arrangements are such that the ship can be operated with the machinery spaces unattended. It denotes that the control engineering equipment has been arranged, installed and tested in accordance with ACS's Rules, or is equivalent thereto.

CCS This notation may be assigned when the arrangements are such that the machinery may be operated with continuous supervision from a centralised control station. It denotes that the control engineering equipment has been arranged, installed and tested in accordance with ACS's Rules, or is equivalent thereto.

ICC This notation may be assigned when the arrangements are such that the control and supervision of ship operational functions are computer based. It denotes that the control engineering equipment has been arranged, installed and tested in accordance with ACS's Rules, or is equivalent thereto.

IP This notation may be assigned to a ship classed with ACS when the arrangements of the machinery are such that the propulsion equipment and all the essential auxiliary machinery is integrated with the power unit for operation under all normal sea-going and manoeuvring conditions. The system is to be bridge controlled and the propulsion equipment is to incorporate an emergency means of propulsion in the event of failure in the prime mover. It also denotes that the machinery and control equipment have been arranged, installed and tested in accordance with ACS's Rules.

2. 4. 3 The following class notation is associated with vessels capable of being operated unmanned, and may be assigned as considered appropriate by the Classification Committee:

Unmanned Assigned when a vessel is designed and constructed such that it may be operated unmanned, i.e. without crew, passengers or other persons on board.

2. 4. 4 The following class notations are associated with dynamic positioning arrangements, and may be assigned as considered appropriate by the Classification Committee:

DP(CM) This notation may be assigned when a ship is fitted with centralised remote manual controls for position keeping and with position reference system(s) and environmental sensor(s). It denotes that the machinery and control engineering equipment has been arranged, installed and tested in accordance with ACS's Rules, or is equivalent thereto.

DP(AM) This notation may be assigned when a ship is fitted with automatic main and manual standby controls for position keeping and with postition reference system(s) and environmental sensor(s). It denotes that the machinery and control engineering has been arranged, installed and tested in accordance with ACS's Rules, or is equivalent thereto.

DP(AA) This notation may be assigned when a ship is fitted with automatic main and automatic standby controls for position keeping and with position reference system(s) and environmental sensor(s). It denotes that the machinery and control engineering equipment has been arranged, installed and tested in accordance with ACS's Rules, or is equivalent thereto.

DP(AAA) This notation may be assigned when a ship is fitted with automatic main and automatic standby controls for position keeping, together with an additional/emergency automatic control unit located in a separate compartment and with position reference systems and environmental sensors. It denotes that the machinery and control engineering equipment has been arranged, installed and tested in accordance with ACS's Rules, or is equivalent thereto.

PCR()() This rating supplements the DP() notation. This rating indicates the calculated percentage of time that a unit is capable of holding heading and position under a standard set of environmental conditions (North Sea).

Two rating numerals are calculated:

- The first numeral represents the percentage of time that the ship can remain on station when subjected to a set of standard environmental conditions (North Sea fully developed) with all thrusters operating.
- The second numeral represents the percentage of time that the ship can remain on station when subjected to a set of standard environmental conditions (North Sea fully developed) with the most effective thruster being inoperative.
- A typical rating might be (95),(70).

The foregoing dynamic positioning notations may be supplemented with a Performance Capability Rating (PCR). This rating indicates the calculated percentage of time that a ship is

capable of holding heading and position under a standard set of environmental conditions (North Sea), *See* Pt 7, Ch 4 Dynamic Positioning Systems.

2. 4. 5 The following class notations are associated with navigation safety, and may be assigned as considered appropriate by the Classification Committee:

NAV1 This notation will be assigned when the bridge layout and level of equipment are such that the ship is considered suitable for safe periodic operation under the supervision of a single watchkeeper on the bridge. It denotes that the navigational installation has been arranged, installed and tested in accordance with ACS's Rules, or is equivalent thereto.

IBS This additional notation will be assigned where an integrated bridge system is fitted to provide electronic chart display, track planning and automatic track following, centralised navigation information display, and bridge alarm management. It denotes that the integrated bridge system has been arranged, installed and tested in accordance with ACS's Rules, or is equivalent thereto. For assignment of this notation, in addition to satisfying ACS Rules, or equivalent thereto, for navigational function integration:

a. the layout of the bridge and the equipment located on the bridge is to satisfy the requirements of a relevant International or National Ergonomic or Human-centred Design Standard, or an acceptable equivalent, to the satisfaction of ACS; or
b. the notation **NAV1** is also to be assigned; or
c. where the bridge is not intended to operate a periodic one man watch, the layout of the bridge and the equipment on the bridge are to satisfy the requirements for the assignment of the notation **NAV1** to the satisfaction of ACS with the exception of requirements identified by ACS Rules that may be relaxed in such cases.

2. 4. 6 Machinery class notations will not be assigned to ships the hulls of which are not classed or intended to be classed with ACS.

2. 4. 7 The notations **✠MC, [✠]MC, ✠MC** and **MCH** will, in general, not be assigned to non-propelled craft, but individual cases will be considered on their merits.

Table 2. 2. 4: Machinery Class Notations

Machinery Notations *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.4 Class notations (machinery), Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.5 Class notations (machinery special features), Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.6 Class notations (refrigerated cargo installations (RMC), controlled atmosphere (CA) systems and carriage of refrigerated containers (CRC))		
✠MC Propulsion and essential machinery	**OPS** Operation of Services by connection to an external electrical Power Supply	**✠ACS's MC** Refrigerated Machinery
[✠]MC Propulsion and essential machinery	**PM** Positional Mooring System	**ACS's MC** Refrigerated Machinery
✠MC Propulsion and essential machinery	**PMC** Positional Mooring System for mooring in Close proximity to other vessels or installations	‡ Double Dagger – Suitable for carriage of fruit

MCH Propulsion and essential machinery	**LFPF( )** Machinery installation fuelled by low flashpoint fuel	**✠ACS's RMC (LG)** Reliquefaction and/or refrigeration equipment is fitted
IGS Inert Gas System	**PMR** Propulsion System Redundancy	**ACS's RMC (LG)** Reliquefaction and/or refrigeration equipment is fitted
UMS Unattended Machinery Spaces	**PSMR** Propulsion and Steering System Redundancy	**✠ACS's RMC (BC)** Refrigerated Chemical tanker
CCS Centralised Control Station	**PSMR*** Propulsion and Steering System Redundancy in Separate Compartments	**ACS's RMC (BC)** Refrigerated Chemical Tanker
ICC Integrated Computer Control	**PMRL** Propulsion System Redundancy with Limited Capacity	**TC** Chemical Tanker temperature Control Systems
IP Integrated Propulsion	**PMRL*** Propulsion System Redundancy in Separate Compartments with Limited Capacity	**(CA)** Controlled Atmosphere
DP(CM) Dynamic Position (Centralised Remote Manual Controls)	**SMRL** Steering System Redundancy with Limited Capacity	**CA ($\%O_2$, $\%CO_2$)** Controlled Atmosphere
DP(AM) Dynamic Position (Automatic main and Manual standby Controls)	**SMRL*** Steering System Redundancy in Separate Compartments with Limited Capacity	**RH** Relative Humidity
DP(AA) Dynamic Position (Automatic main and Automatic standby Controls)	**PSMRL** Propulsion and Steering System Redundancy with Limited Capacity	**EGCS( )** Exhaust Gas Cleaning System
DP(AAA) Dynamic Positioning (Automatic main and Automatic standby controls with additional/emergency Automatic control)	**PSMRL*** Propulsion and Steering System Redundancy in Separate Compartments with Limited Capacity	**BWTS** Ballast Water Treatment System
PCR()() Performance Capability Rating	**CAC1(1 or 2 or 3)** Crew Accommodation Comfort	**BWTS*** Type Approved Ballast Water Treatment System
NAV1 Navigation Equipment	**PAC1 (or 2 or 3)** Passenger Accommodation Comfort	

IBS Integrated Bridge System	**PCAC1 (or 2 or 3), 1 (or 2 or 3)** Passenger and Crew Accommodation	

2. 5 Class notations (machinery special features)

2. 5. 1 The following class notation is associated with onshore power supply arrangements and may be assigned as considered appropriate by the Classification Committee, upon application from the Owners:

OPS Assigned when the machinery, electrical and control engineering arrangements installed on board to permit continued operation of services by connection to an external electrical power supply have been assessed.

2. 5. 2 The following class notations are associated with positional mooring systems, or thruster-assisted positional mooring systems, and may be assigned as considered appropriate by the Classification Committee:

PM Assigned when a positional mooring system is fitted. This notation can be supplemented by a Thrust-Assisted notation **(T1)** [or **(T2)** or **(T3)**].

PMC Assigned when a positional mooring system for mooring in close proximity to other vessels or installations is fitted. This notation can be supplemented by a Thrust-Assisted notation **(T1)** [or **(T2)** or **(T3)**].

Note: This notation is not intended to apply to vessels where station-keeping capabilities may be suspended for short periods during adverse weather conditions and a subsequent loss of position allowed.

2. 5. 3 The following class notations are associated with machinery redundancy and may be assigned as considered appropriate by the Classification Committee:

PMR This notation will be assigned where the main propulsion systems are arranged such that, in the event of a single failure in equipment, the ship will retain not less than 50 per cent of the installed prime mover capacity and not less than 50 per cent of the installed propulsion systems. It also denotes that the installation has been arranged, installed and tested in accordance with ACS Rules.

PMR* This notation will be assigned where the main propulsion systems are arranged such that, in the event of a single failure in equipment, the ship will retain not less than 50 per cent of the installed prime mover capacity and not less than 50 per cent of the installed propulsion systems and where the machinery is installed in separate compartments such that, in the event of the loss of one compartment, the ship will retain availability of propulsion power. It also denotes that the installation has been arranged, installed and tested in accordance with ACS Rules.

SMR This notation will be assigned where the steering systems for manoeuvring are arranged so that steering capability will continue to be available in the event of a single failure in the steering gear equipment or loss of power supply or control system for any steering system. It also denotes that the installation has been arranged, installed and tested in accordance with ACS's Rules.

SMR* This notation will be assigned where the steering systems for manoeuvring are arranged so that steering capability will continue to be available in the event of a single failure in the steering gear equipment or loss of power supply or control system for any steering system and where the steering systems are installed in separate compartments such that, in the event of the loss of one compartment, steering capability will continue to be available. It also denotes that the installation has been arranged, installed and tested in accordance with ACS's Rules.

PSMR This notation will be assigned where the main propulsion and steering systems are configured such that, in the event of a single failure in equipment, the ship will retain not less than 50 per cent of the installed prime mover capacity and not less than 50 per cent of the installed propulsion systems and retain steering capability. It also denotes that the installation has been arranged, installed and tested in accordance with ACS's Rules.

PSMR* This notation will be assigned where the main propulsion and steering systems are configured such that, in the event of a single failure in equipment, the ship will retain not less than 50 per cent of the installed prime mover capacity and not less than 50 per cent of the installed propulsion systems and retain steering capability. The propulsion and steering arrangements are to be installed in separate compartments such that, in the event of the loss of one compartment, the ship will retain availability of propulsion power and manoeuvring capability. It also denotes that the installation has been arranged, installed and tested in accordance with ACS's Rules.

The foregoing machinery redundancy notations may be supplemented with the additional **L** character which indicates a limited capability.

2. 5. 4 The following class notations are associated with comfort control and may be assigned as considered appropriate by the Classification Committee:

CAC1 (or **2** or **3**)

Assigned when noise and vibration levels in crew accommodation and work areas have been assessed. Numerals **1** or **2** or **3** indicate the acceptance criterion to which the noise and vibration levels have been assessed. Primarily intended to apply to passenger ships. If requested, however, any ship can be assessed for compliance.

PAC1 (or **2** or **3**)

Assigned when noise and vibration levels in passenger accommodation have been assessed. Numerals **1** or **2** or **3** indicate the acceptance criterion to which the noise and vibration levels have been assessed. Primarily intended to apply to passenger ships. If requested, however, any ship can be assessed for compliance.

PCAC1 (or **2** or **3**), (**1** or **2** or **3**)

Assigned when noise and vibration levels in passenger and crew spaces have been assessed. Numerals **1** or **2** or **3** indicate the acceptance criterion to which the noise and vibration levels have been assessed. Two numerals will be assigned, the first for the acceptance criteria for passenger accommodation, the second for crew comfort criteria. Primarily intended to apply to passenger ships. If requested, however, any ship can be assessed for compliance.

2. 5. 5 The following class notation is associated with low flashpoint fuelled vessels and may be assigned as considered appropriate by the Classification Committee:

LFPF ( ) Assigned where the main propelling and/or auxiliary machinery is designed to operate using a low flashpoint fuel in accordance with the applicable ACS Rules and Regulations. As a minimum, the **LFPF( )** notation is to be appended by associated characters **GC** or **GF** and one two letter fuel identifier;

GC Assigned to liquefied gas carriers or tankers, where the main propelling and/or auxiliary machinery is designed to operate on a low flashpoint fuel. The notation also indicates that the gas-fuelled machinery has been constructed, arranged, installed and tested in accordance with the relevant requirements of *Use of Cargo as Fuel* of ACS's Rules for Ships for Liquefied Gases, or is equivalent thereto.

GF Assigned to ships other than liquefied gas carriers or tankers, where the main propelling and/or auxiliary machinery is designed to operate on a low flashpoint fuel, or a combination of low flashpoint fuel and standard marine oil fuel. The notation also indicates that the low flashpoint fuelled machinery has been constructed, arranged, installed and tested in accordance with the ACS Rules and Regulations applicable to the fuel(s) used.

The low flashpoint fuel (or fuels) that the ship is designed to use is (are) indicated in the notation using a two letter identifier:

NG Natural Gas

EG Ethane Gas

LP Liquid Petroleum Gas (LPG is considered to include pure propane or Butane or any mixture of the two)

HG Hydrogen Gas

ML Methanol

2. 5. 6 The following class notations are associated with Ballast Water Treatment Systems and may be assigned as considered appropriate by the Classification Committee:

BWTS Assigned to ships with a Ballast Water Treatment System (BWTS) which is approved and installed in accordance with ACS's Rules and Regulations.

BWTS* Assigned to ships with a BWTS which is Type Approved in accordance with ACS's Type Approval procedures and approved and installed in accordance with ACS's Rules and Regulations.

2. 5. 7 The following notation associated with the equipment fitted for the abatement of combustion machinery SO_x emissions may be assigned as considered appropriate by the Classification Committee:

EGCS This notation will be assigned where the SO_x emissions abatement plant has been designed, constructed, arranged, installed and tested in accordance with ACS's Rules and Regulations. Application of the EGCS notation does not infer that the installation will meet the statutory requirements for emissions regulation. This notation is to be supplemented by one of the following associated notations depending on the type of emissions abatement plant that is installed (*See* Pt 5, Ch 24, 1.2 Class notation and descriptive note 1.2.1 to Pt 5, Ch 24, 1.2 Class notation and descriptive note 1.2.3 for more information):

- **(Open)** Open loop wet scrubber installed with no capacity to operate in zero discharge mode;
- **(Closed)** Closed loop wet scrubber installed only capable of operating in zero discharge mode;
- **(Hybrid)** The installed wet scrubber is able to operate in both open loop and closed loop modes; or

- **(Dry)** Dry scrubber installed.

2. 5. 8 The following notation associated with the equipment fitted for the abatement of combustion machinery NO_x emissions may be assigned as considered appropriate by the Classification Committee:

EGCN This notation will be assigned where the NO_x emissions abatement plant has been designed, constructed, arranged, installed and tested in accordance with ACS's Rules and Regulations. Application of the **EGCN** notation does not infer that the installation will meet the statutory requirements for emissions regulation.This notation is to be supplemented by the following associated notation(s) (*See* Pt 5, Ch 24, 1.2 Class notation and descriptive note 1.2.4 to Pt 5, Ch 24, 1.2 Class notation and descriptive note 1.2.7 for more information):

- **(SCR)** Selective catalytic reduction installed.
- **(EGR)** Exhaust gas recirculation installed.

2. 5. 9 The following class notations are associated with hybrid electrical power systems and may be assigned as considered appropriate by the Classification Committee:

Hybrid Power Assigned to ships with an electrical power system utilising a combination of two or more different types of power source or utilising stored electrical energy to satisfy the ship's main power demand. The system and its component parts are in accordance with the existing applicable requirements of the Rules and the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 24 Hybrid electrical power systems.

Hybrid Power (+) Assigned to ships meeting the requirements for **Hybrid Power** and the additional optional requirements for **Hybrid Power (+)** specified within Pt 6, Ch 2, 24 Hybrid electrical power systems. The additional optional requirements aim to provide for enhanced performance of the electrical power system achieved through the consideration of system simulation, system integration and the dependability of the electrical power system during normal or reasonably fore*See*able abnormal operation.

2. 6 Class notations (refrigerated cargo installations (RMC), controlled atmosphere (CA) systems and carriage of refrigerated containers (CRC))

2. 6. 1 The following class notations may be assigned as considered appropriate by the Classification Committee, on application from the Owners:

✠**ACS's RMC** This notation will be assigned when a refrigerated cargo installation has been constructed, installed and tested under ACS's Special Survey and in accordance with the relevant requirements of the Rules.

ACS's RMC This notation will be assigned when the arrangements of the refrigerated cargo installation have been found to be equivalent to Rule requirements, and the installation has been tested in accordance with the relevant requirements of the Rules.

‡ This symbol will be assigned to installations considered suitable for the carriage of fruit. It indicates that the following parameters have been assessed and found satisfactory:

a. The rate of air circulation and the air refreshing arrangements through the refrigerated spaces or chambers, or to containers.
b. The temperature controls and monitoring arrangements.
c. The installation's capability to cool down a complete cargo of fruit to its carrying temperature within a specified time. The symbol will also be assigned to fishing vessels that have the refrigerating capacity to freeze down their catch.

✠**ACS's RMC (LG)** This notation will be assigned to a classed liquefied gas carrier or tanker, in which reliquefaction or refrigeration equipment is approved and fitted for cargo temperature and

pressure control where the equipment has been constructed, installed and tested in accordance with the relevant requirements of the Rules.

ACS's RMC (LG) This notation will be assigned to a classed liquefied gas carrier or tanker, in which reliquefaction or refrigeration equipment is fitted for cargo temperature and pressure control, where the equipment has been found equivalent to Rule requirements and tested in accordance with the relevant requirements of the Rules.

✠**ACS's RMC (BC)** Assigned to a classed chemical tanker in which refrigeration equipment has been constructed, installed and tested, in accordance with the relevant requirements of the Rules.

ACS's RMC (BC) Assigned to a classed chemical tanker where the equipment has been found equivalent to Rule requirements and tested in accordance with the relevant requirements of the Rules.

TC Assigned to a classed chemical tanker where the temperature control systems have been found equivalent to Rule requirements and tested in accordance with the relevant requirements of the Rules.

2. 6. 2 The following class notations are associated with controlled atmospheres and may be assigned as considered appropriate by the Classification Committee, on application from Owners, *See also* Pt 7, Ch 1 Controlled Atmosphere System:

(CA)	This notation may be assigned when a ship is fitted with arrangements for maintaining airtightness in CA zones and for the ready connection to a gas system in accordance with the relevant requirements of the Rules.
CA (%O_2, %CO_2)	This notation may be assigned when a ship is provided with a CA system which will achieve and maintain specified ranges of oxygen and carbon dioxide levels in accordance with the relevant requirements of the Rules.
RH	This notation may be assigned when a ship can maintain a specified relative humidity in the CA zones.
RPA	Assigned to ships where the Refrigeration Machinery for Provision Stores and Air-conditioning comply with the applicable requirements of Pt 7, Ch 15 Refrigeration Systems and Equipment Serving Provision Stores and Air-Conditioning Installations.

Before assignment of any of the above notations it is a prerequisite that the refrigeration installation is assigned an **RMC** class notation.

2. 6. 3 The following class notation is associated with the carriage of refrigerated cargo containers and may be assigned as considered appropriate by the Classification Committee, on application from Owners, *See also* Pt 7, Ch 10 Carriage of Refrigerated Containers:

✠ **CRC** This notation may be assigned when a ship is provided with a ventilation system which is approved, installed and tested in accordance with the relevant requirements of the Rules.

2. 6. 4 The class notation assigned will additionally specify the temperature conditions and other relevant characteristics for which the equipment has been approved, *See* Pt 6, Ch 3 Refrigerated Cargo Installations.

2. 6. 5 The class notation assigned will be maintained as long as the installation is found, at the prescribed Periodical Surveys, to be in a fit and efficient condition, and in accordance with the requirements of the Rules.

2. 6. 6 The Classification Committee will give consideration to ships engaged on voyages of short duration, to installations of small capacity, or to other special circumstances. In such cases the class may include a service limitation or other restriction.

2. 6. 7 Refrigerating installations designed to supply refrigerated air to insulated containers in ships' holds aboard container ships, are eligible for classification. The installation is to include the refrigerating machinery, supply and return air ducting, and the flexible couplings between containers and the duct system. Where the arrangements are such that cell air conditioning is essential to the carriage

of the containers, the air conditioning equipment and/or insulation of the hold, deckheads, sides and tank tops are to be included in the classification.

2. 6. 8 Other methods of carrying refrigerated cargoes in containers aboard container ships will be considered for classification on application.

2. 7 Class notations (Environmental Protection)

2. 7. 1 The following class notations are associated with the design and operation of a ship and may be assigned as considered appropriate by the Classification Committee, on application from the Owners:

ABN( ) This notation will be assigned where a vessel has had its airborne noise measured and certified in accordance with ACS's *ACSPlus Additional Design and Construction Procedure for the determination of airborne noise emissions from marine vessels*, and the sound power and sound pressure are found to be less than the assessment criterial limits it contains. The parentheses are to contain the characters associated with the most stringent assessment criteria limits that the airborne noise of the vessel satisfies.

ECO This notation will be assigned when a ship is designed and operated in accordance with the relevant requirements of the Rules.

ECO(TOC) This notation will be assigned when the environmental protection arrangements are in accordance with the requirements of another recognised classification society and are essentially equivalent to Rule requirements and the ship is operated in accordance with the relevant requirements of the Rules.

UWN-M This notation will be assigned where a vessel has had its underwater radiated noise measured and certified in accordance with ACS's *ACSPlus Procedure Additional Design and Construction Procedure for the Determination of a Vessel's Underwater Radiated Noise.*

UWN-L( ) This notation will be assigned where a vessel has had its underwater radiated noise measured and certified in accordance with ACS's *ACSPlus Procedure Additional Design and Construction Procedure for the Determination of a Vessel's Underwater Radiated Noise* and the profile of the underwater radiated noise curve(s) are found to be less than the limits contained in the ACSPlus Procedure. The parentheses are to contain the limit set in accordance with the ACSPlus Procedure and listed therein.

2. 8 Descriptive notes

2. 8. 1 In addition to any class notations, an appropriate descriptive note may be entered in the *Register Book* indicating the type of ship in greater detail than is contained in the class notation, and/or providing additional information about the ship's design and construction. This descriptive note is not an ACS class notation and is provided solely for information.

2. 8. 2 **ACSPlus()**. Where one or more of ACS's ACSPlus procedures for the following have been satisfactorily applied, then a descriptive note showing the associated characters of the procedure(s) within brackets will, at the Owner's request, be entered in the *Register Book*, preceded by the word **ACSPlus**, e.g. **ACSPlus(IHM, SERS)**. The requirements pertaining to these descriptive notes and the ACSPlus procedures are given in Pt 3, Ch 16 ACSPlus Procedures for the Design, Construction and Lifetime Care of Ships and Pt 5, Ch 21 Requirements for Condition Monitoring and Condition-Based Maintenance Systems, or directly within the relevant *ACSPlus Procedure* document.

ShaftRight() This ACSPlus descriptive note will be assigned when the main propulsion shafting alignment has been carried out in accordance with ACSPlus Procedure *ShaftRight: Main Propulsion Shafting Alignment Procedure*, which ACS considers to be best practice during design, construction and trials. The **ShaftRight()** descriptive note with the extension of one or more of the following associated supplementary characters shown in brackets, may be assigned:

- **E** Existing design. Applicable to vessels having main propulsion shafting and hull arrangements which have been previously implemented and, for which, proven satisfactory service experience is demonstrated;
- **N** New design. Applicable to a new main propulsion shafting arrangement within a new, or previously implemented, hull design.

BWMP() This ACSPlus descriptive note (Ballast Water Management Plan) will be assigned, when the requirements in accordance with the relevant ACSPlus procedures have been complied with. The descriptive note **BWMP()** with the extension of one or more of the following associated supplementary characters shown in brackets, detailing the method(s) used, may be assigned:

- **S** sequential method;
- **F** flow through method;
- **D** dilution method;
- **T** treatment method.

DIST() This ACSPlus descriptive note (Machinery suitable for operation on Distillate Fuels) will be assigned when specified machinery items are suitable for operation on distillate fuels, in accordance with the relevant ACSPlus procedures. The **DIST()** descriptive note with the extension of one or more of the following associated supplementary characters shown in brackets, detailing the specified machinery items, may be assigned:

- **M** main engine(s);
- **AB** auxiliary engines and boiler;
- **I** incinerator;
- **IG** inert gas generator.

E This ACSPlus descriptive note (Evidence) will be assigned, where evidence exists that supporting calculations have been performed in accordance with hull structural finite element and fatigue analysis procedures of a recognised classification society. This descriptive note can be assigned to vessels transferring class or to new builds where the design has been appraised by another recognised classification society.

ES() This ACSPlus descriptive note (Enhanced Scantlings) will be assigned, where scantlings in excess of the approved Rule minimum are fitted at defined locations in accordance with the relevant ACSPlus procedures. The added thickness measurement in mm is to be shown with a description of the location(s) in brackets e.g. **ACSPlus(ES(+1 Strength Deck, +2 Bottom Shell))**.

IHM This ACSPlus descriptive note (Inventory of Hazardous Materials) will be assigned when the requirements in accordance with the relevant ACSPlus procedures have been complied with.

PCWBT() This ACSPlus descriptive note (Protection Coatings in Water Ballast Tanks) will be assigned, to indicate that all sea-water ballast spaces having boundaries formed by the hull envelope have a corrosion protection coating applied, and that the coating remains efficient and is maintained in good condition. The month and year that the coating is approved is to be appended to the descriptive note within brackets.

SEA() This descriptive note (Ship Event Analysis) will be assigned, where hull surveillance systems for monitoring of the ship's hull girder stresses and motions have been fitted and are in compliance with the relevant ACSPlus procedures. The ACSPlus descriptive note is to be appended by **HSS** followed by the number of strain gauges fitted shown in brackets. In addition the extension of one or more of the following associated supplementary characters may be shown e.g. **ACSPlus(SEA(HSS-2, VDR))**:

- **L** The display of the relevant information in the cargo control area;
- **M** The display and recording of the ship's motion;
- **N** The facility to display and record navigational information;
- **VDR** An interface with the ship's voyage data recorder system to enable the recording of hull stress, ship motion and hull pressure information.

SEA ICE This ACSPlus descriptive note (Ship Event Analysis Ice) will be assigned when the ship has been provided with a hull surveillance system that can display and record local ice load induced stresses from a series of strain gauges in the bow region.

SERS This ACSPlus descriptive note (Ship Emergency Response Service) will be assigned when a Ship is registered with ACS's Ship Emergency Response Service.

SCM This ACSPlus descriptive note (Screwshaft Condition Monitoring) will be assigned where an Owner adopts the requirements for monitoring of the screwshaft. The descriptive note will indicate that equipment and procedures are in place to determine the physical and operational condition of that equipment.

SRtP This ACSPlus descriptive note (Safe Return to Port and Orderly Evacuation) is to be applied where the design appraisal and survey of the vessel has been performed in accordance with the relevant ACSPlus procedures for vessels required to comply with Safe Return to Port and Orderly Evacuation.

TCM This ACSPlus descriptive note (Main Steam Turbine Condition Monitoring) will be assigned where an Owner adopts the requirements for monitoring of the main steam turbine. The descriptive note will indicate that equipment and procedures are in place to determine the physical and operational condition of that equipment. Further information is provided in the ACS document *ACSPlus Procedure Machinery Planned Maintenance and Condition Monitoring*.

ThCM Thruster Condition Monitoring. This ACSPlus descriptive note (Thruster Condition Monitoring) will be assigned where an Owner adopts the requirements for monitoring of selected Thrusters and/or Podded Propulsors. The descriptive note will indicate that equipment and procedures are in place to determine the physical and operational condition of that equipment. Further information is provided in the ACS document *ACSPlus Procedure Machinery Planned Maintenance and Condition Monitoring*.

Note Not applicable where a single thruster, or podded propulsor, is solely responsible for the propulsion and/or steering of the vessel.

MPMS() This ACSPlus descriptive note (Machinery Planned Maintenance Scheme) will be assigned where an Owner operates, as part of the Continuous Survey Machinery (CSM) cycle, a Machinery Planned Maintenance Scheme which is approved in accordance with ACS's ACSPlus Procedures for Machinery Planned Maintenance and Condition Monitoring. The descriptive note will indicate that procedures and documentation are in place to control and record the inspection and maintenance routines of all machinery and equipment in the ship.

- **CM** This ACSPlus descriptive note (Condition Monitoring) will be assigned where an Owner operates, as part of the Continuous Survey Machinery (CSM) cycle, a Machinery Planned Maintenance Scheme which uses monitoring techniques and equipment are used to record the condition against agreed acceptable limits and the scheme is approved in accordance with ACS's ACSPlus Procedures for Machinery Planned Maintenance and Condition Monitoring. The descriptive note will indicate that equipment, procedures and documentation are in place to monitor, control and record the physical and operational condition of the equipment on the ship and control the maintenance routines accordingly. For the design and installation of machinery condition monitoring systems which form part of a Machinery Planned Maintenance Scheme approved by ACS for the assignment of the descriptive note, the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 21 Requirements for Condition Monitoring and Condition-Based Maintenance Systems are applicable.

- **PT** This ACSPlus descriptive note (Predictive Techniques) will be assigned where an Owner operates, as part of the Continuous Survey of Machinery (CSM) cycle, a Machinery Planned Maintenance Scheme which uses the output from machine learning and complex algorithms to determine acceptability for continued service and maintenance requirements and the scheme is approved in accordance with ACS's ACSPlus Procedures for Machinery Planned Maintenance and Condition Monitoring. The descriptive note will indicate that equipment, procedures and documentation are in place to monitor, control and review the output from machinery maintenance systems using Predictive Techniques. The requirements of Pt 5, Ch 21 Requirements for Condition Monitoring and Condition-Based Maintenance Systems are applicable.

- **RBM** This ACSPlus descriptive note (Risk Based Maintenance) will be assigned where an Owner operates, as part of the Continuous Survey Machinery (CSM) cycle, a Machinery Planned Maintenance Scheme based on the use of Risk Based Maintenance (RBM) which is approved in accordance with ACS's ACSPlus Procedures for Machinery Planned Maintenance and Condition Monitoring. The descriptive note will indicate that procedures and documentation are in place to control and record the inspection and maintenance routines of machinery and equipment based on the output from a Risk Based study. The Scheme is to be based on a risk assessment and an RBM In-Service Inspection Plan, both approved by ACS.

- **RCM** This ACSPlus descriptive note (Reliability Centred Maintenance) will be assigned where an Owner operates, as part of the Continuous Survey Machinery (CSM) cycle, Machinery Planned Maintenance Scheme based on the use of Reliability Centred Maintenance which is approved in accordance with ACS's ACSPlus

Procedures for Machinery Planned Maintenance and Condition Monitoring. The descriptive note will indicate that procedures and documentation are in place to control and record the inspection and maintenance routines of all machinery and equipment in the ship, and that they are based on acceptable and applicable methodology.

VECS This ACSPlus descriptive note (Vapour Emission Control System) will be assigned to a ship that has a vapour emission control system fitted which has been designed and constructed in accordance with the requirements of USCG 46, CFR 39 or the IMO Standards for Vapour Emission Control Systems (MSC Circular 585).

VECS-L This ACSPlus descriptive note (Vapour Emission Control System – Lightering) will be assigned to a ship that has a vapour emission control system that complies with the requirements for the **VECS** Descriptive Note and which has also been designed and constructed to meet the requirements for vapour balancing in accordance with USCG 46, CFR 39.40 for service vessels. If a ship has been assigned the **ECO** notation then it will not be eligible for the **VECS-L** Descriptive Note. Instead, **VECS** for lightering will be referenced in the **ECO** notation, i.e. **ECO(VECS-L)**.

2. 8. 3 Where an approved loading instrument is provided as an Owner's requirement, a descriptive note **LI** may be entered in the *Register Book*, *See also* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.16.

2. 8. 4 Where container securing arrangements are designed and constructed in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 14 Cargo Securing Arrangements, but where the Initial and Periodical Survey requirements for loose fittings are not requested, the ship will be eligible to be assigned the descriptive note **CSA** (container securing arrangement) and for an entry to be made in the *Register Book*.

2. 8. 5 **EDD**. Vessel is eligible for the Owner/Operator to apply to the Flag Administration for the vessel to be placed on a pilot Extended Dry-Docking regime. The relevant Flag Administration may elect to impose requirements additional to those defined as per this descriptive note. Vessels are to comply with the ACS Guidance notes on Extended Dry- Dockings.

2. 8. 6 **STV**. Where a sailing vessel is used for the offshore training of cadets or trainee seamen, a sailing training vessel **STV** descriptive note may be entered in the *Register Book*.

2. 8. 7 **GR**. Assigned to ships other than LNG carriers, detailing the aspects of design and construction that are prepared for gas fuel operation in accordance with ACS's Rules and Regulations in force on the date of 'contract for construction'. If a ship has been assigned the **LFPF(GF, NG)** notation then it will not be eligible for the **GR** descriptive note. The descriptive note **GR**, with the extension of one or more of the following associated characters shown in brackets, may be entered in the *Register Book*.

A The design of the gas fuel system has been approved in principle.

S Enhanced structural reinforcement and appropriate materials have been fitted to support the proposed gas storage tank.

T Fuel storage arrangements installed in accordance with an approved design.

P Gas fuel piping arrangements installed in accordance with an approved design.

E Engineering systems have been installed in accordance with an approved design. Additional letters will be assigned in brackets to identify which items may be gas-fuelled:

M = main engine(s)

A = auxiliary engines

B = boiler

I = incinerator

See ACS's *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships using Gases or other Low-flashpoint Fuels, 2 General* for further detail.

2. 8. 8 **EGCS-R()**. Assigned to ships with the extension of one or more of the following associated characters shown in brackets, detailing the aspects of design and construction that are prepared for installation of SO_x emissions abatement plant for combustion machinery in accordance with ACS's Rules and Regulations in force on the date of 'contract for construction' (*See* Pt 5, Ch 24, 1.2 Class notation and descriptive note 1.2.1 to Pt 5, Ch 24, 1.2 Class notation and descriptive note 1.2.3 for more information):

A Preliminary assessment of the proposed SO_x emissions abatement plant including its arrangement on board has been completed satisfactorily;
S Enhanced structural reinforcement and structural modifications necessary for the function of the proposed SO_x emissions abatement plant have been fitted under survey;
T The relevant tank(s) needed for operation of the proposed SO_x emissions abatement plant (e.g. chemical and/or residue storage tanks as applicable) have been installed under survey.

2. 8. 9 **EGCN-R().** Assigned to ships with the extension of one or more of the following associated characters shown in brackets, detailing the aspects of design and construction that are prepared for installation of NO_x emissions abatement plant for combustion machinery in accordance with ACS's Rules and Regulations in force on the date of 'contract for construction' (*See* Pt 5, Ch 24, 1.2 Class notation and descriptive note 1.2.4 to Pt 5, Ch 24, 1.2 Class notation and descriptive note 1.2.6 for more information):

A Preliminary assessment of the proposed NO_x emissions abatement plant including its arrangement on board has been completed satisfactorily;
S Enhanced structural reinforcement and structural modifications necessary for the function of the proposed NO_x emissions abatement plant have been fitted under survey;
T The relevant tank(s) needed for operation of the proposed NO_x emissions abatement plant (e.g. chemical tanks) have been installed under survey in accordance with approved design.

2. 9 Application notes

2. 9. 1 **Propelling and essential auxiliary machinery** includes machinery, equipment and systems installed for the ship to be under seagoing conditions and that are necessary for the following:

a. Maintaining the watertight and weathertight integrity of the hull and spaces within the hull.
b. The safety of the ship, machinery and personnel on board.
c. The functioning and dependability of propulsion, steering and electrical systems.
d. The operation and functioning of control engineering systems for the monitoring and safety of propulsion and steering systems.
e. The operation and functioning of emergency machinery and equipment.

2. 9. 2 **Manufacturer's certificate** for assignment of the [✠] **MC** notation. Acceptance of the manufacturer's certificate for items of machinery for propulsion (including propulsion gearing with single input/output arrangements) and for electrical power generation and for other auxiliary machinery for essential services is subject to the following:

a. The ship is a cargo ship of less than 500 gross tonnage or is a ship of 500 gross tonnage or greater and is not required to comply with international conventions applicable to a ship with unrestricted service.

b. Propulsion power is provided by engines or gas turbines which have been type approved in accordance with ACS requirements for marine application.
c. Electrical power is provided by generators driven by engines or gas turbines which have been type approved in accordance with ACS requirements for marine application.
d. The design and manufacture standards for all machinery and associated engineering systems are the applicable ACS Rules.
e. The machinery and equipment is manufactured under a recognised quality control system.
f. Propellers, propulsion shafting and multiple input/output gearboxes are not included within the scope of propulsion arrangements for acceptance of a manufacturer's certificate.

2. 9. 3 **Manufacturer's certificate** for assignment of the **MCH** notation. Acceptance of the manufacturer's certificate for propelling and essential auxiliary machinery is subject to the following:

a. The ship is a cargo ship of less than 500 gross tonnage or is a ship of 500 gross tonnage or greater and is not required to comply with the international conventions applicable to a ship with unrestricted service.
b. Propulsion power is provided by engines or gas turbines which have been type approved in accordance with ACS requirements for marine application.
c. Electrical power is provided by generators driven by engines or gas turbines which have been type approved in accordance with ACS requirements for marine application.
d. The power of any prime mover is less than 2.250 kW and the cylinder bore or any engine is not greater than 300 mm.
e. The design and manufacture standards for machinery and associated systems are the applicable ACS Rules or other marine standards acceptable to ACS.
f. The machinery and equipment is manufactured under a recognised quality control system in accordance with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 1, 1.3 Alternative approach for product assurance.
g. Individual components manufactured under Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.9 Application notes 2.9.3.f are to be delivered with a manufacturer’s statement confirming that the scantlings comply with the applicable ACS Rule requirements.

PART

1

CHAPTER **2** **Classification Regulations**

SECTION **3** **Surveys – General**

3. 1 Statutory surveys

3. 1. 1 The Classification Committee will act, when authorised on behalf of Governments, in respect of National and International statutory safety and other requirements for passenger and cargo ships.

3. 1. 2 The Classification Committee will also act, when authorised, in respect of National Safety and other requirements relating to ships used for offshore mineral exploration and exploitation.

3. 2 New construction surveys

3. 2. 1 When it is intended to build a ship for classification with ACS, constructional plans and all necessary particulars relevant to the hull, equipment and machinery, as detailed in the Rules, are to be submitted for approval before the work is commenced. Proposals for any subsequent modifications or additions to the scantlings, arrangements or equipment shown on the approved plans are also to be submitted in writing and on plans for approval.

3. 2. 2 Where the proposed construction of any part of the hull or machinery is of novel design, or involves the use of unusual material, or where experience, in the opinion of the Classification Committee, has not sufficiently justified the principle or mode of application involved, special tests or examinations before and during service may be required. In such cases a suitable notation may be assigned.

3. 2. 3 The materials used in the construction of hulls and machinery intended for classification are to be of good quality and free from defects and are to be tested in accordance with the requirements of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials. The steel is to be manufactured by an approved process at an approved works. Alternatively, tests will be required to demonstrate the suitability of the steel.

3. 2. 4 New ships intended for classification are to be built under ACS's Special Survey. From the commencement of the work until the completion of the ship, the Surveyors are to be satisfied that the materials, workmanship and arrangements are satisfactory and in accordance with the Rules. Any items found not to be in accordance with the Rules or the approved plans, or any material, workmanship or arrangements found to be unsatisfactory, are to be rectified.

3. 2. 5 For compliance with Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.2 New construction surveys 3.2.4, ACS is prepared to consider methods of survey and inspection for hull construction which formally include procedures involving the shipyard management, organisation and quality systems. The minimum requirements for the approval of any such proposed Quality Assurance methods are laid down in Pt 3, Ch 15 Quality Assurance Scheme for the Hull Construction of Ships.

3. 2. 6 Each offshore supply ship, offshore tug/supply ship, dredger, hopper dredger, sand carrier, hopper barge or reclamation craft, proceeding to sea is to comply with the draught and stability requirements of the National Authority and is to have on board sufficient stability data to enable it to be properly loaded and handled, or, where appropriate, to be properly towed. This data is to

take full account of any intended special distribution or concentration of loading. In the case of an unmanned ship under tow, the data is to be made available to the tug master.

3. 2. 7 Copies of approved plans (showing the ship as built), essential certificates and records, required loading and other instruction manuals are to be readily available for use when required by the attending Surveyors, and may be required to be kept on board.

3. 2. 8 When the machinery is constructed under ACS's Special Survey, this survey is to relate to the period from the commencement of the work until the final test under working conditions. Any items found not to be in accordance with the Rules or the approved plans, or any material, workmanship or arrangements found to be unsatisfactory, are to be rectified.

3. 2. 9 When arrangements are such that essential machinery can be operated by remote and/or automatic control equipment, the control equipment is to be arranged, installed and tested in accordance with ACS's Rules and Regulations.

3. 2. 10 The date of completion of the Special Survey during construction of ships built under ACS's inspection will normally be taken as the date of build to be entered in the ACS *Publication Record*. If the period between launching and commissioning is, for any reason, unduly prolonged, the dates of launching and completion or commissioning may be separately indicated in the ACS *Publications*.

3. 2. 11 When a ship, upon completion, is not immediately commissioned but is laid-up for a period, the Classification Committee, upon application by the Owner, prior to the ship proceeding to sea, will direct an examination to be made by the Surveyors which may include a survey in dry-dock. If, as the result of such a survey, the hull and machinery be reported in all respects in accordance with applicable Rule requirements, the subsequent Special Survey and Complete Survey of the machinery will date from the time of such examination.

3. 3 Existing ships

3. 3. 1 **Classification of ships not built under survey.** The requirements of the Classification Committee for the classification of ships which have not been built under ACS's Survey are indicated in Pt 1, Ch 3, 20 Classification of ships not built under survey. Special consideration will be given to ships transferring class to ACS from another recognised Classification Society.

3. 3. 2 **Reclassification**. When reclassification or class reinstatement is desired for a ship for which the class previously assigned by ACS has been withdrawn or suspended, the Classification Committee will direct that a survey, appropriate to the age of the ship and the circumstances of the case, be carried out by the Surveyors. If, at such a survey, the ship be found or placed in a condition in accordance with the requirements of the Rules and Regulations, the Classification Committee will be prepared to consider reinstatement of the original class or the assignment of such other class as may be deemed necessary.

3. 3. 3 A similar arrangement will apply in the case of reclassification of refrigerated cargo installations.

3. 3. 4 3.3.4 The Classification Committee reserves the right to decline an application for classification or reclassification where the prior history or condition of the ship indicates this to be appropriate.

3. 3. 5 **Unscheduled surveys**. Where the Classification Committee has concern about the condition of a ship and/or the equipment an unscheduled survey may be required at any time to determine the actual condition.

3. 4 Damages, repairs and alterations

3. 4. 1 All repairs to hull, equipment and machinery which may be required in order that a ship may retain her class (*See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 1.1 General 1.1.5), are to be carried out to the satisfaction of the Surveyors. When repairs are effected at a port, terminal or location where the services of a

Surveyor to ACS are not available, the repairs are to be surveyed by one of the Surveyors at the earliest opportunity thereafter.

3. 4. 2 When, at any survey, the Surveyors consider repairs to be immediately necessary, either as a result of damage, or wear and tear, they are to communicate their recommendations at once to the Owner, or his representative. When such recommendations are not complied with, immediate notification is to be given to the Classification Committee by the Surveyors.

3. 4. 3 Where repairs are to be carried out by a riding crew during a voyage then these must be planned in advance. A complete repair procedure, including the extent of proposed repair and the need for Surveyor's attendance during the voyage, is to be submitted reasonably in advance to the Surveyor for agreement. Failure to notify ACS in advance of the repairs may result in the class of the ship being specially considered by the Classification Committee. Where emergency repairs are effected immediately due to an extreme emergency circumstance, the repairs should be documented in the ship's log and submitted thereafter to ACS for use in determining further survey requirements.

3. 4. 4 When, at any survey, it is found that any damage, defect or breakdown (*See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 1.1 General 1.1.5) is of a nature that does not require immediate permanent repair, but is sufficiently serious to require rectification by a prescribed date in order to maintain class, a suitable condition of class is to be imposed by the Surveyors and recommended to the Classification Committee for consideration.

3. 4. 5 If a ship which is classed with ACS is to leave harbour limits or protected waters under tow, the Owner is to advise ACS of the circumstances prior to her departure.

3. 4. 6 If a ship which is classed with ACS is taken in tow whilst at sea, the Owner is to advise ACS of the circumstances at the first practicable opportunity.

3. 4. 7 Plans and particulars of any proposed alterations to the approved scantlings and arrangements of hull, equipment, or machinery are to be submitted for approval, and such alterations are to be carried out to the satisfaction of the Surveyors.

3. 4. 8 Where a complete replacement or addition of a major portion of the ship is involved, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.4 Damages, repairs and alterations 3.4.9, consideration may be given to assignment of a separate date of build for the new structure. The Survey requirements shall be based on the date of build associated with each major portion of the ship. Special Survey due dates may be aligned at the discretion of the Committee.

3. 4. 9 A major portion of the ship may include a complete forward or after section, a complete main cargo section (which may include a complete hold/tank of a cargo ship), a complete block of deck structure of a passenger ship or a structural modification of a single hull to a double hull ship.

3. 5 Existing ships – Periodical Surveys

3. 5. 1 Annual Surveys are to be held on all ships within three months, before or after each anniversary of the completion, commissioning or Special Survey in accordance with the requirements given in Pt 1, Ch 3 Periodical Survey Regulations. The date of the last Annual Survey will be recorded on the Class website.

3. 5. 2 Intermediate Surveys are to be held on all ships instead of the second or third Annual Survey after completion, commissioning or Special Survey. The Intermediate Survey may be commenced at the second Annual Survey and progressed with completion at the third Annual Survey. The date of the last Intermediate Survey will be recorded on the Class website. The concurrent crediting of items towards both Intermediate Survey and Special Survey is not permitted.

3. 5. 3 The Owner should notify ACS whenever a ship can be examined in dry-dock or on a slipway. A minimum of two Bottom Surveys are to be held in each five-year Special Survey period and the maximum interval between successive Bottom Surveys is not to exceed three years. One of the two Bottom Surveys required in each five-year period is to coincide with the Special Survey. Consideration may be given in exceptional circumstances to an extension of the Bottom Survey,

not exceeding three months, provided the interval between successive surveys does not exceed 36 months. A definition of 'exceptional circumstances' is given in Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.5 Existing ships – Periodical Surveys 3.5.9.

A Bottom Survey is an examination of the outside of the ship's bottom and related items, and is normally to be carried out with the ship in dry-dock. However, the Classification Committee may give consideration to alternate examination while the ship is afloat as an In-Water Survey, subject to provisions of Pt 1, Ch 3, 4.3 In-Water Surveys. An In-Water Survey shall not be permitted for ships of 15 years of age and over that are assigned the notation **ESP**.

For general dry cargo ships, for gas carriers and for ships with class notation **ESP**, the Bottom Survey in conjunction with the Special Survey must be carried out with the ship in dry-dock.

For ships over 15 years of age, with the class notation **ESP**, the Bottom Survey is to be held in dry-dock; in addition, a Bottom Survey in dry-dock is to be held as part of the Intermediate Survey.

Bottom Surveys are to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 4 Bottom Surveys – In Dry-Dock and In-Water - Hull and machinery requirements

A Bottom Survey is considered to coincide with the Special Survey when held within the 15 months prior to the due date of the Special Survey.

Where the Special Survey of the hull is carried out on a Continuous Survey basis, as given in Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.5 Existing ships – Periodical Surveys 3.5.14, the survey in Dry Dock may be held at any time within the five-year cycle.

3. 5. 4 The interval between Bottom Surveys for ships operating in fresh water and for certain non-self-propelled craft may be greater than that given in Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.5 Existing ships – Periodical Surveys 3.5.3.

3. 5. 5 Attention is to be given to any relevant statutory requirements of the National Authority of the country in which the ship is registered.

3. 5. 6 The date of the last Bottom Survey will be recorded on the Class website.

3. 5. 7 As an alternative to Annual Surveys and Bottom Surveys, according to Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.5, Existing ships – Periodical Surveys 3.5.1 and Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.5 Existing ships – Periodical Surveys 3.5.3 respectively, ships classed `100A1 shipborne barge' may be subjected to Intermediate Surveys. These surveys become due 30 months after the previous Special Survey. The survey is to be in accordance with the requirements given in Pt 1, Ch 3, 2 Annual Surveys - Hull and machinery requirements, as applicable. Intermediate Surveys are to be completed within three months of the due date.

3. 5. 8 Survey requirements for In-Water Surveys are given in Pt 1, Ch 3, 4.3 In-Water Surveys. The date of the last In-Water Survey will be recorded on the Class website.

3. 5. 9 All ships classed with ACS are also to be subjected to Special Surveys in accordance with the requirements given in Pt 1, Ch 3 Periodical Survey Regulations. These Surveys become due at five-yearly intervals, the first one five years from the date of build or date of Special Survey for Classification as recorded in the *Register Book*, and thereafter five years from the date recorded for the previous Special Survey. Consideration may be given at the discretion of the Committee to any exceptional circumstances justifying an extension of the hull classification to a maximum of three months beyond the fifth year. If an extension is agreed the next period of hull classification will start from the due date of the Special Survey before the extension was granted. In this context 'exceptional circumstances' means unavailability of dry-docking facilities, repair facilities, essential materials, equipment or spare parts or delays incurred by action taken to avoid severe weather conditions.

3. 5. 10 Where, on shipborne barges, Intermediate Surveys are permitted as an alternative to Annual and Bottom Surveys, Special Surveys become due five years after the previous Special Survey.

3. 5. 11 Special Surveys may be commenced at the fourth Annual Survey after completion, commissioning, or previous Special Survey, and be progressed during the succeeding year with a view to completion by the due date of the Special Survey.

3. 5. 12 When Special Surveys are commenced prior to the fourth Annual Survey, the entire survey is to be completed within 15 months if such work is to be credited towards the Special Survey.

3. 5. 13 Ships which have satisfactorily passed a Special Survey will have a record entered in the *Register Book* indicating the date and the notation **ESP** if this is applicable *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.12. Where the Special Survey is completed more than three months before the due date, the new record of Special Survey will be the final date of survey.

a. In all other cases, with the exception of Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.5 Existing ships – Periodical Surveys 3.5.13.b, the date recorded will be the fifth anniversary of the previous Special Survey.

b. For ships registered with Flag Administrations that have neither implemented the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea (SOLAS 1974) Harmonised System of Survey and Certification (HSSC) under the Protocol of 1988, nor adopted HSSC under *IMO Resolution A.883(21) – Global and Uniform Implementation of the Harmonized System of Survey and Certification (HSSC) – (Adopted on 25 November 1999)*, where the Special Survey is completed before the due date, the new record will be the final date of survey.

3. 5. 14 At the request of an Owner, it may be agreed that the Special Survey of the hull, for ships other than general dry cargo ships, bulk carriers, combination carriers, chemical tankers and oil tankers, be carried out on the Continuous Survey basis, all compartments of the hull being opened for survey and testing, in rotation, with an interval of five years between consecutive examinations of each part. In general, approximately one fifth of the Special Survey is to be completed each year and all the requirements of the particular hull Special Survey must be completed at the end of the five-year cycle. For examination of items listed in Pt 1, Ch 3, 2.2 Annual Surveys 2.2.25, Pt 1, Ch 3, 2.2 Annual Surveys 2.2.30 and Pt 1, Ch 3, 3.3 Intermediate Surveys 3.3.6, Pt 1, Ch 3, 3.3 Intermediate Surveys 3.3.7 and Pt 1, Ch 3, 3.3 Intermediate Surveys 3.3.9, the intervals for inspection will require to be specially agreed. For ships more than 10 years of age, an examination of the ballast tanks is to be carried out twice in each five year cycle, i.e. once within the scope of the Intermediate Survey and once within the scope of the Continuous Survey. Ships which have satisfactorily completed the cycle will have a record entered in the Class Direct indicating the date of completion which will not be later than five years from the last assigned date of Complete Survey of the hull. The agreement for surveys to be carried out on Continuous Survey basis may be withdrawn at the discretion of the Classification Committee.

3. 5. 15 In cases where the ship has been laid up or has been out of service for a considerable period because of a major repair or modification and the Owner elects to only carry out the overdue surveys, the next period of class will start from the expiry date of the Special Survey. If the Owner elects to carry out the next due Special Survey, the period of class will start from the survey completion date.

3. 5. 16 Machinery is to be submitted to the surveys detailed in Pt 1, Ch 3, 11 Machinery surveys - General requirements to Pt 1, Ch 3, 18 Screwshafts, tube shafts and propellers.

3. 5. 17 In cases where the ship has been laid-up, or has been out of service for a considerable period because of a major repair or modification and the Owner elects to only carry out the overdue surveys, the next period of class will start from the expiry date of the last Complete Survey of machinery. If the Owner elects to carry out a Complete Survey, the period of class will start from the completion date of this survey.

3. 5. 18 Complete Surveys of machinery become due at five-yearly intervals, the first one five years from the date of build or date of first classification as recorded in Class Direct , and thereafter five years from the date recorded for the previous Complete Survey. Consideration can be given at the discretion of the Classification Committee to any exceptional circumstances justifying an extension of machinery class to a maximum of three months beyond the fifth year. If an extension is agreed, the next period of machinery class will start from the due date of Complete Survey of machinery before extension was granted. Surveys which are commenced prior to their due date are not to extend over a period greater than 15 months, except with the prior approval of the

Classification Committee. Where the survey is completed more than three months before the due date, the recorded date of completion will be the final date of survey.

a. In all other cases, with the exception of Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.5 Existing ships – Periodical Surveys 3.5.18.b, the date recorded will be the fifth anniversary of the previous Complete Survey of machinery.

b. For ships registered with Flag Administrations that have neither implemented the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea (SOLAS 1974) Harmonised System of Survey and Certification (HSSC) under the Protocol of 1988, nor adopted HSSC under *IMO Resolution A.883(21) – Global and Uniform Implementation of the Harmonized System of Survey and Certification (HSSC) – (Adopted on 25 November 1999)*, where the Survey is completed before the due date, the new record will be the final date of survey.

3. 5. 19 Upon application by an Owner, the Classification Committee may agree to an extension of the survey requirements for main engines, which, by the nature of the ship's normal service, do not attain the number of running hours recommended by the engines' manufacturer for major overhauls within the survey periods given in Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.5 Existing ships – Periodical Surveys 3.5.18.

3. 5. 20 If it is found desirable that any part of the machinery should be examined again before the due date of the next survey, a certificate for a limited period will be granted in accordance with the nature of the case.

3. 5. 21 When, at the request of an Owner, it has been agreed by the Classification Committee that the Complete Survey of the machinery may be carried out on the Continuous Survey basis, the various items of machinery are to be opened for survey in rotation, as far as practicable, to ensure that the interval between consecutive examinations of each item will not exceed five years. In general, approximately one-fifth of the machinery is to be examined each year.

3. 5. 22 If any examination during Continuous Survey reveals defects, further parts are to be opened up and examined as considered necessary by the Surveyor, and the defects are to be made good to his satisfaction.

3. 5. 23 Upon application by an Owner, the Classification Committee may agree to an arrangement whereby, subject to certain conditions, some items of machinery may be examined by the Chief Engineer of the ship at ports where ACS is not represented, or, where practicable, at sea, followed by a limited confirmatory survey carried out at the next port of call where an Exclusive Surveyor is available. Particulars of this arrangement may be obtained from ACS. Where an approved planned maintenance scheme is in operation, the confirmatory surveys may be held at annual intervals, at which time the records will be checked and the operation of the scheme verified. Particulars of this arrangement may be obtained from any ACS Office.

3. 5. 24 Where condition monitoring equipment is fitted, the Classification Committee, upon application by the Owner, will be prepared to amend applicable Periodical Survey requirements where details of the equipment are submitted and found satisfactory. Where machinery installations are accepted for this method of survey, it will be a requirement that an Annual Survey be held, at which time monitored records will be analysed and the machinery examined under working conditions. An acceptable lubricating oil trend analysis programme may be required as part of the condition monitoring procedures.

3. 5. 25 Boiler Surveys, examination of steam pipes and Screwshaft Surveys are to be carried out as stated in Pt 1, Ch 3, 15 Boilers to Pt 1, Ch 3, 18 Screwshafts, tube shafts and propellers.

3. 5. 26 Where any inert gas system is fitted for the protection of cargo tanks on board a ship intended for the carriage of oil or liquid chemicals in bulk, the system is to be surveyed annually in accordance with the requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 2.2 Annual Surveys 2.2.33. In addition, on ships to which an **IGS** notation has been assigned, a Special Survey of the inert gas plant is to be carried out at intervals not exceeding five years, in accordance with the requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 19 Inert gas systems.

3. 5. 27 Where the ship is fitted with a dynamic positioning system, the system is to be examined and tested annually in accordance with the requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 2.2 Annual Surveys 2.2.24. In addition, a Special Survey is to be carried out at intervals not exceeding five years in accordance with Pt 1, Ch 3, 11.2 Complete Surveys 11.2.10.

3. 5. 28 Where the ship is fitted with a classed refrigerated cargo installation, the installation is to be surveyed annually in accordance with the requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 21.1 Annual Surveys. In addition, a Special Survey is to be carried out at intervals not exceeding five years in accordance with the requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 21.2 Special Surveys. At the request of the Owner, consideration will be given to the Survey of the installation being carried out on the Continuous Survey basis.

3. 5. 29 Where the ship is fitted with a classed refrigerated cargo installation, a Loading Port Survey, as detailed in Pt 1, Ch 3, 21.4 Loading Port Surveys, may be carried out at the request of the Owner. On completion, a certificate will be issued recording, in addition to other details, the temperatures in the various refrigerated spaces at the time of the survey. The certificate issued by ACS is not in respect of the cargo to be loaded or the manner in which it is to be stowed. A Loading Port Survey is not mandatory for classification, but may be carried out concurrently with the Annual, Continuous or Special Surveys if so desired.

3. 5. 30 At the request of an Owner, the Classification Committee may give special consideration to the application of the periodical survey requirements given in Pt 1, Ch 3 Periodical Survey Regulations to military ships or commercial ships owned or chartered by Governments, which are utilised in support of military operation or service.

3. 5. 31 Where the ship has been assigned an **OPS** notation, the on-shore power supply arrangements are to be examined annually in accordance with the requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 2.2 Annual Surveys 2.2.27. In addition, a Special Survey is to be carried out at intervals not exceeding five years in accordance with Pt 1, Ch 3, 14.2 Complete Surveys 14.2.15

3. 5. 32 Where the Committee has agreed to an Owner's request to assign the notation 'laid-up', the ship may be retained in class provided a satisfactory general examination of the hull and machinery is carried out at the Annual Survey due date and an Underwater Examination (UWE) is carried out at the Special Survey due date. The general examination may be carried out within three months before or after the Annual Survey due date.

3. 6 Surveys for novel/complex systems, machinery and equipment

3. 6. 1 Where novel/complex systems, machinery and equipment have been accepted by ACS and for which existing survey requirements are not considered to be suitable and sufficient then appropriate survey requirements are to be derived as part of the design approval process. In deriving these requirements ACS will consider, but not be limited to, the following:

a. Plan appraisal submissions;
b. Risk Assessment documentation where required by the Rules;
c. Equipment manufacturer recommendations;
d. Relevant recognised national or international standards.

3. 7 Certificates

3. 7. 1 When the required reports, on completion of the survey of new or existing ships which have been submitted for classification, have been received from the Surveyors and classification has been agreed by the Classification Executive a Certificate of Classification may be issued by an authorised surveyor. After approval by the Classification Committee, a certificate of First Entry of Classification, signed by ACS's Chairman or the Chairman of the Classification Committe, will be issued to Builders or Owners.

3. 7. 2 A Certificate of Class valid for five years subject to endorsement for Annual and Intermediate Surveys will also be issued to the Owners.

3. 7. 3 ACS's Surveyors are permitted to issue provisional (interim) certificates to enable a ship classed with ACS to proceed on her voyage (or to continue her service in the case of a fixed or tethered ship) provided that in their opinion it is in a fit and efficient condition. Such certificates will embody the Surveyors' recommendations for continuance of class, but in all cases are subject to confirmation by the Classification Committee.

3. 7. 4 The full class notation and abbreviated descriptive notes shall be stated on the Certificate of Class and the provisional (interim) certificate.

3. 8 Notice of surveys

3. 8. 1 It is the responsibility of the Owners to ensure that all surveys necessary for the maintenance of class are carried out at the proper time and in accordance with the instructions of the Classification Committee. Information is available to Owners on the Class website.

3. 8. 2 ACS will make available to an Owner timely notice about forthcoming surveys by means of Quarterly Listing of Surveys, Conditions of Class and Memoranda. The omission of such notice, however, does not absolve the Owner from his responsibility to comply with ACS's survey requirements for maintenance of class, all of which are available to Owners on the Class website.

3. 9 Withdrawal/Suspension of class

3. 9. 1 When the class of a ship, for which the Regulations as regards surveys on hull, equipment and machinery have been complied with, is withdrawn by the Classification Committee in consequence of a request from the Owner the notation `Class withdrawn at Owner's request' (with date) will be assigned.

3. 9. 2 When the Regulations as regards surveys on hull, equipment or machinery have not been complied with and the ship is thereby not entitled to retain class, the class will be suspended or withdrawn, at the discretion of the Classification Committee, and a corresponding notation will be assigned.

3. 9. 3 Class will be automatically suspended and the Certificate of Class will become invalid if the Annual or Intermediate Survey is not completed within three months of the due date of the survey.

3. 9. 4 Class will be automatically suspended from the expiry date of the Certificate of Class in the event that the Special Survey has not been completed by the due date and an extension has not been agreed (*See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.5 Existing ships – Periodical Surveys 3.5.9), or is not under attendance by the Surveyors with a view to completion prior to resuming trading.

Classification will be reinstated from suspension of class upon satisfactory completion of the surveys due. The surveys to be carried out are to be based upon the survey requirements at the original date due and not on the age of the ship when the survey is carried out. Such surveys are to be credited from the date originally due. However, the ship's Class remains suspended from the date of suspension until the date Class is reinstated.

3. 9. 5 When, in accordance with Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.4 Damages, repairs and alterations 3.4.4 of the Regulations, a condition of class is imposed, this will be assigned a due date for completion and the ship's class may be suspended if the condition of class is not dealt with, or postponed by agreement, by the due date.

3. 9. 6 When it is found, from the reported condition of the hull equipment machinery or arrangements of a ship, that an Owner has failed to comply with Pt 1, Ch 2, 1.1 General 1.1.5, Pt 1, Ch 2, 1.1 General 1.1.9, Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.4 Damages, repairs and alterations 3.4.1 or Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.4 Damages, repairs and alterations 3.4.6, the class will be suspended or withdrawn, at the discretion of the Classification Committee, and a corresponding notation assigned. When it is considered that an Owner's failure to comply with these requirements is sufficiently serious, the suspension or

withdrawal of class may be extended to include other ships controlled by the same Owner, at the discretion of the Classification Committee.

3. 9. 7 When the Classification Committee is satisfied that a ship proceeded to sea with less freeboard than that approved by the Classification Committee, or that the freeboard marks are placed higher on the sides of the ship than the position assigned or approved by the Classification Committee, or, in cases of ships where freeboards are not assigned, the draught is greater than that approved by the Classification Committee, the ship's class will be withdrawn or suspended in relation to the above voyage(s) concerned.

3. 9. 8 When the Classification Committee is satisfied that a specialised ship has been operated in a manner contrary to that agreed at the time of classification, or is being operated in environmental conditions which are more onerous or in areas other than those agreed by the Classification Committee, the ship's class will be withdrawn or suspended in relation to those operations.

3. 9. 9 Where a ship has been

- detained following a Flag State or Port State Control inspection on one or more occasions with serious deficiencies found, or
- been subject to an unscheduled survey (*See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.3 Existing ships 3.3.5) with serious deficiencies found,

then class will be liable to be suspended or withdrawn, at the discretion of the Classification Committee, and a corresponding notation will be assigned. In these cases, a period of notice, but not exceeding 3 months, may be given prior to any suspension or withdrawal of class.

3. 9. 10 When a client fails to pay all undisputed portions of invoices for the services by the contractual due date then class will be liable to be suspended or withdrawn at the discretion of the Classification Committee and a corresponding notation will be assigned. In these cases, a period of notice not exceeding 3 months may be given, prior to any suspension or withdrawal of class.

3. 9. 11 In all instances of class withdrawal or suspension, the assigned notation, with date of application, will be published by ACS. In cases where class has been suspended by the Classification Committee and it becomes apparent that the Owners are no longer interested in retaining ACS's class it will be withdrawn.

3. 9. 12 When a ship is intended for a demolition voyage with any Periodical Survey overdue, the ship's class suspension may be held in abeyance and consideration may be given to allow the ship to proceed on a single direct ballast voyage from the lay up or final discharge port to the demolition yard, provided the attending Surveyor finds the ship in a satisfactory condition to proceed for the intended voyage, at the discretion of the Classification Committee.

3. 9. 13 When a ship is intended for a single voyage from 'laid-up' position to repair yard with any Periodical Survey overdue, the ship's class suspension may be held in abeyance and consideration may be given to allow the ship to proceed on a single direct ballast voyage from the site of lay up to the repair yard, upon agreement with the Flag Administration, at the discretion of the Classification Committee. This is provided the ship is found in a satisfactory condition by surveys, the extent of which are to be based on surveys overdue and duration of lay-up.

3. 9. 14 For reclassification and reinstatement of class, *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.3 Existing ships 3.3.2 and Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.9 Withdrawal/Suspension of class 3.9.4.

3. 10 Appeal from Surveyors' recommendations

3. 10. 1 If the recommendations of the Surveyors are considered in any case to be unnecessary or unreasonable, an appeal may be made to the Classification Committee, who may direct a Special Examination to be held.

3. 11 Force majeure

3. 11. 1 If due to circumstances reasonably beyond the Owner's or ACS's control, as defined below, the ship is not in a port when surveys become overdue the Classification Committee may allow the ship to sail, in class, directly to an agreed discharge port and then, if necessary, in ballast to an agreed repair facility at which the survey can be completed. In this context, 'Force Majeure' means damage to the ship, unfore*See*n inability of Surveyors to attend the ship due to governmental restrictions on right of access or movement of personnel, unfore*See*n delays in port or inability to discharge cargo due to unusually lengthy periods of severe weather, strikes, civil strife, acts of war or other force majeure.

3. 12 Ownership details

3. 12. 1 The Owner will ensure ACS is promptly informed in writing of any change to their contact details and, in the event of a vessel/asset transfer or sale, is to supply details of the new Owner in writing. The new Owner is to promptly inform ACS in writing of their contact details. If the new Owner fails to do so and if ACS cannot verify the ownership record, then the class of that vessel/asset will be specially considered by the Classification Committee.

PART

1

CHAPTER **2** **Classification Regulations**

SECTION **4** **IACS Audits and Assessments**

4. 1 Audit of surveys

4. 1. 1 The surveys required by the Regulations may be subject to audit or assessment in accordance with the requirements of the International Association of Classification Societies requirements.

PART

1

CHAPTER **2** **Classification Regulations**

SECTION **5** **Type Approval and Type Testing**

5. 1 Type Approval — Marine Applications

5. 1. 1 ACS Type Approval is an impartial certification system that provides independent third-party Type Approval Certificates attesting to a product's conformity with specific standards or specifications. It is based on design review and type testing or where testing is not appropriate, a design analysis.

5. 1. 2 The ACS Type Approval System is a process whereby a product is assessed in accordance with a specification, standard or code to check that it meets the stated requirements and through selective testing demonstrates compliance with specific performance requirements. The testing is carried out on a prototype or randomly selected product(s) which are representative of the manufactured product under approval. Thereafter, the manufacturer applying for ACS Type Approval certification is required to demonstrate the effective implementation of a quality assurance system. This will be assessed by ACS through a Production Quality Assurance (PQA) assessment as defined in the ACS Type Approval System Procedure TA14. The PQA assessment is specific to ACS Type Approval.

5. 1. 3 The selective testing required by Pt 1, Ch 2, 5.1 ACS Type Approval — Marine Applications 5.1.2, is to include environmental testing applicable to the product's installation on board a ship classed or intended to be classed with ACS.

5. 1. 4 ACS Type Approval does not remove the requirements for inspection and survey procedures required by the Rules for equipment to be installed in ships classed or intended to be classed with ACS. Also, ACS Type Approval does not remove the requirement for plan appraisal of a system that incorporates Type Approved equipment where required by the Rules.

5. 1. 5 ACS Type Approval is subject to the understanding that the manufacturer's recommendations and instructions for the product and any relevant requirements of the ACS' Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships are fulfilled.

5. 1. 6 The manufacturer supplying equipment or components under the production quality assurance system (PQA), *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 5.1 ACS Type Approval — Marine Applications 5.1.2 is to have a recognised quality management system that is acceptable to ACS. The production quality assurance system (PQA) is to meet the requirements of ACS Type Approval System Procedure TA14.

5. 1. 7 Where equipment or components have been Type Approved in accordance with specifications and procedures other than ACS's, details of the product, certification and testing are to be submitted for consideration where appropriate.

5. 2 Type testing

5. 2. 1 Type testing is an impartial process that provides independent third-party verification that an item of machinery or equipment has satisfactorily undergone a functional type test.

5. 2. 2 Type testing is carried out against defined performance and test standards for a defined period of time with test conditions varying between minimum and maximum declared design conditions.

5. 2. 3 Type testing is carried out on a prototype or randomly selected product(s) which are representative of the manufactured product under assessment.

5. 2. 4 After type testing, mechanical equipment is to be opened out and inspected for damage or excessive wear.

5. 2. 5 On application from the manufacturer, type tests may be waived for equipment and machinery that has been proven to be reliable in marine service and where compliance with the current applicable standards can be demonstrated. Equipment and machinery that has been previously type tested with satisfactory testing evidence and certification need not have the type tests repeated where previous testing is in accordance with current testing standards.

5. 2. 6 The acceptance of type testing certification is subject to the understanding that the manufacturer's recommendations and instructions for the product and any relevant requirements of the applicable Rules are fulfilled.

PART

1

CHAPTER **2** **Classification Regulations**

SECTION **6** **Classification of machinery with [✠] MC or MCH notation**

6. 1 General

6. 1. 1 After delivery of machinery and equipment with the manufacturer's certificate to the shipyard, Survey at the Shipyard and Periodical Surveys are to be in accordance with the requirements for ships built or accepted into class with the ✠**MC** notation.

6. 2 Appraisal and records

6. 2. 1 To facilitate survey and compilation of classification records, plans and information required for a ship being accepted into class with the ✠**MC** notation are to be submitted for appraisal and information. Plans are not required where machinery and equipment has previously been type approved; in these cases it is only necessary to submit details of the machinery and equipment together with details of previous approval.

6. 3 Survey and inspection

6. 3. 1 The manufacturer's certificate for acceptance of machinery and equipment for assignment of the **[✠]MC** or **MCH** notation is to be in the English language and include the following information:

a. Design and manufacturing standard(s) used.
b. Materials used for construction of key components and their sources.
c. Details of the quality control system applied during design, manufacture and testing and of any software maintenance.
d. Details of any type approval or type testing.
e. Details of installation and testing recommendations for the machinery or equipment.

The manufacturer is to have a recognized quality management system certified by an IACS member or a Notified Body.

6. 3. 2 The installation and testing of machinery and equipment at the build yard which has been supplied with a manufacturer's certificate is to be in accordance with the requirements applicable to a ship having the ✠**MC** notation.

PART

1

CHAPTER **3** **Periodical Survey Regulations**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**71**
	1. 1	Frequency of surveys	71
	1. 2	Surveys for damage or alterations	72
	1. 3	Unscheduled surveys	72
	1. 4	Surveys for the issue of Convention certificates	72
	1. 5	Definitions	72
	1. 6	Preparation for survey and means of access	76
	1. 7	Remote Inspection Technique (RIT)	80
	1. 8	Thickness measurement at surveys	81
	1. 9	Repairs	82
	1. 10	Documentation	82
SECTION 2	**Annual Surveys - Hull and machinery requirements**		**84**
	2. 1	General	84
	2. 2	Annual Surveys	84
SECTION 3	**Intermediate Surveys - Hull and machinery requirements**		**96**
	3. 1	General	96
	3. 2	Review of documentation on board	96
	3. 3	Intermediate Surveys	96
SECTION 4	**Bottom Surveys – In Dry-Dock and In-Water - Hull and machinery requirements**		**101**
	4. 1	General	101
	4. 2	Bottom Surveys in Dry-Dock	101
	4. 3	In-Water Surveys	102
SECTION 5	**Special Survey - General - Hull requirements**		**103**
	5. 1	General	103
	5. 2	Preparation	103
	5. 3	Examination and testing	106

5. 4 Overall Survey 109
5. 5 Close-up Survey 109
5. 6 Thickness measurement 109
SECTION 6 Special Survey - Bulk carriers - Hull requirements 116
6. 1 General 116
6. 2 Review of documentation on board 116
6. 3 Planning for survey 116
6. 4 Overall survey 117
6. 5 Testing 117
6. 6 Close-up Survey 117
6. 7 Thickness measurement 121
SECTION 7 Special Survey - Oil tankers (including ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships) - Hull requirements 128
7. 1 General 128
7. 2 Review of documentation on board 128
7. 3 Planning for survey 129
7. 4 Overall Survey 129
7. 5 Testing 129
7. 6 Close-up Survey 130
7. 7 Thickness measurement 135
SECTION 8 Special Survey - Chemical Tankers - Hull requirements 144
8. 1 General 144
8. 2 Documentation 144
8. 3 Planning for survey 145
8. 4 Overall Survey 145
8. 5 Testing 145
8. 6 Close-up Survey 146
8. 7 Thickness measurement 149
8. 8 Ships over 10 years old 154
SECTION 9 Ships for liquefied gases 155
9. 1 General 155
9. 2 Annual Surveys − Basic requirements 155
9. 3 Annual Surveys − Reliquefaction/refrigeration equipment 157
9. 4 Annual Surveys - Gas fuel burning equipment and other equipment components 158
9. 5 Annual Surveys − Cargo containment systems 158

9. 6 Intermediate Surveys 158
9. 7 Special Survey I (ships five years old) − General requirements 160
9. 8 Special Survey I (ships five years old) − Reliquefaction/refrigeration equipment 162
9. 9 Special Survey I (ships five years old) - Gas fuel burning equipment 163
9. 10 Special Survey II and Special Surveys thereafter (ships 10 years old and over) 163
9. 11 Special Survey III and Special Surveys thereafter (ships 15 years old and over) 163
9. 12 Close-up Survey 164
9. 13 Thickness measurement 164
SECTION 10 Dredgers, hopper dredgers, sand carriers, hopper barges and reclamation craft 168
10. 1 General 168
10. 2 Special Surveys 168
SECTION 11 Machinery surveys - General requirements 170
11. 1 Annual, Intermediate and Bottom Surveys 170
11. 2 Complete Surveys 170
SECTION 12 Turbines and steam engines - Detailed requirements 172
12. 1 Complete Surveys 172
SECTION 13 Reciprocating internal combustion engines - Detailed requirements 174
13. 1 Scope 174
13. 2 Complete Surveys 174
SECTION 14 Electrical equipment 176
14. 1 Annual and Intermediate Surveys 176
14. 2 Complete Surveys 176
14. 3 Bottom Surveys 178
SECTION 15 Boilers 179
15. 1 Frequency of surveys 179
15. 2 Scope of surveys 179
SECTION 16 Steam pipes 181
16. 1 Frequency of surveys 181
16. 2 Scope of surveys 181
SECTION 17 Screwshafts, tube shafts and propellers 183
17. 1 Applicability 183
17. 2 Definitions 183

17. 3 Closed systems – Oil lubricated shafts or closed loop system fresh water lubricated shafts: Frequency of surveys 184
17. 4 Open Systems – Water Lubricated Shafts: Frequency of surveys 185
17. 5 Survey extensions 185
17. 6 Shaft Survey Methods 188
17. 7 Other systems 189
17. 8 Alternative arrangements 190
SECTION 18 Screwshafts, tube shafts and propellers 191
18. 1 Applicability 191
18. 2 Frequency of surveys 191
18. 3 Normal surveys 191
18. 4 Screwshaft Condition Monitoring (SCM) 192
18. 5 Modified Survey 193
18. 6 Partial Survey 194
SECTION 19 Inert gas systems 195
19. 1 Frequency of surveys 195
19. 2 Scope of surveys 195
SECTION 20 Classification of ships not built under survey 196
20. 1 General 196
20. 2 Hull and equipment 196
20. 3 Machinery 197
20. 4 Refrigerated cargoes 198
SECTION 21 Refrigerated cargo installations 199
21. 1 Annual Surveys 199
21. 2 Special Surveys 199
21. 3 Subsequent Special Survey 201
21. 4 Loading Port Surveys 201
21. 5 Refrigerating plant on ships not classed with ACS 202
SECTION 22 Controlled atmosphere systems 203
22. 1 Retention of class 203
22. 2 Annual Surveys 203
22. 3 Special Surveys 203
SECTION 23 Bow, inner, side shell and stern doors on Ro-Ro ships 205
23. 1 General 205
23. 2 Definitions 205
23. 3 Annual Surveys 206

23. 4 Special Surveys 207
SECTION 24 Fuel installations using gases or other low-flashpoint fuels 209
24. 1 General 209
24. 2 Survey Following Repair 210
24. 3 Annual Surveys - General Requirements for Fuel Systems 210
24. 4 Annual Surveys – Fuel Processing Equipment 212
24. 5 Annual Surveys – Fuel Storage 213
24. 6 Annual Survey - Fuel Bunkering System 213
24. 7 Intermediate Surveys 214
24. 8 Complete Surveys - General requirements 214
24. 9 Complete Surveys - Consumers and other equipment 217
SECTION 25 Classification of rigs not built under survey 219
25. 1 General 219

PART

1

CHAPTER **3** **Periodical Survey Regulations**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 3. 1. 1: Assessment of coating conditions 75

Table 3. 2. 1: Bulk carriers - Annual Surveys 93

Table 3. 3. 1: Bulk carriers - Intermediate Surveys 100

Table 3. 5. 1: Survey preparation 104

Table 3. 5. 2: Tank internal examination requirements 106

Table 3. 5. 3: Minimum requirements for thickness measurements - General 110

Table 3. 5. 4: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - General dry cargo ships 111

Table 3. 5. 5: Minimum requirements for Thickness measurement - General dry cargo ships 112

Table 3. 5. 6: Thickness measurement - Additional requirements in way of structure identified with substantial corrosion 114

Table 3. 5. 7: Air pipe head internal examination requirements (applicable for automatic air pipe heads installed on exposed decks of all ships except passenger ships) 115

Table 3. 6. 1: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Single skin bulk carriers 118

Table 3. 6. 2: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Double skin bulk carriers (excluding ore carriers) 119

Table 3. 6. 3: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Ore carriers 120

Table 3. 6. 4: Minimum requirements for thickness measurement - Single skin and double skin bulk carriers 122

Table 3. 6. 5: Thickness measurement - Single skin bulk carriers - Shell plating and stiffening, with substantial corrosion 124

Table 3. 6. 6: Thickness measurement - Single skin bulk carriers - Double bottom and hopper structure, with substantial corrosion 125

Table 3. 6. 7: Thickness measurement - Single and double skin bulk carriers - Transverse bulkheads in cargo holds, with substantial corrosion 125

Table 3. 6. 8: Thickness measurement - Single skin and double skin bulk carriers - Deck structure* with substantial corrosion 125

Table 3. 6. 9: Thickness measurement - Double skin bulk carriers - Double side space structure (including wing void spaces of ore carriers), with substantial corrosion 126

Table 3. 6. 10: Thickness measurement - Double skin bulk carriers - Double side space structure (including wing void spaces of ore carriers), with substantial corrosion 127

Table 3. 7. 1: Tank testing requirements - Single hull and double hull oil tankers, ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships 130

Table 3. 7. 2: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Single hull oil tankers 130
Table 3. 7. 3: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Double hull oil tankers..... 131
Table 3. 7. 4: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Ore/oil ships 132
Table 3. 7. 5: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Ore/bulk/oil ships..... 134
Table 3. 7. 6: Minimum requirements for thickness measurement - Single hull and double hull oil tankers, ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships..... 135
Table 3. 7. 7: Thickness measurement - Single hull oil tankers, ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships - Bottom structure with substantial corrosion 138
Table 3. 7. 8: Thickness measurement - Single hull oil tankers, ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships - Deck structure with substantial corrosion 139
Table 3. 7. 9: Thickness measurement - Single hull oil tankers, ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships - Shell and longitudinal bulkheads with substantial corrosion 139
Table 3. 7. 10: Thickness measurement - Single hull oil tankers, ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships - Transverse bulkheads and swash bulkheads with substantial corrosion..... 140
Table 3. 7. 11: Thickness measurement - Double hull oil tankers - Bottom, inner bottom and hopper structure with substantial corrosion 140
Table 3. 7. 12: Thickness measurement - Double hull oil tankers - Deck structure with substantial corrosion 141
Table 3. 7. 13: Thickness measurement - Double hull oil tankers - Wing ballast tank structure with substantial corrosion..... 141
Table 3. 7. 14: Thickness measurement - Double hull oil tankers - Longitudinal bulkhead structure in cargo tanks with substantial corrosion..... 142
Table 3. 7. 15: Thickness measurement - Double hull oil tankers - Transverse watertight and swash bulkhead structure in cargo tanks with substantial corrosion 142
Table 3. 8. 1: Tank testing requirements - Chemical tankers 146
Table 3. 8. 2: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Single hull chemical tankers 146
Table 3. 8. 3: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Double hull chemical tankers 147
Table 3. 8. 4: Minimum requirements for thickness measurement - Single and double hull chemical tankers 149
Table 3. 8. 5: Thickness measurement - Single and double hull chemical tankers - Bottom, inner bottom and hopper structure with substantial corrosion..... 151
Table 3. 8. 6: Thickness measurement - Single and double hull chemical tankers - Deck structure with substantial corrosion..... 151
Table 3. 8. 7: Thickness measurement - Single and double hull chemical tankers - Side shell and longitudinal bulkheads with substantial corrosion 152
Table 3. 8. 8: Thickness measurement - Single and double hull chemical tankers - Transverse watertight bulkheads and swash bulkheads with substantial corrosion..... 153
Table 3. 9. 1: Ships for liquefied gases - Intermediate Surveys 159
Table 3. 9. 2: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Ships for liquefied gases..... 164
Table 3. 9. 3: Minimum requirements for thickness measurement - Ships for liquefied gases 165
Table 3. 9. 4: Thickness measurement - Ships for liquefied gases - Structural areas with substantial corrosion 166
Table 3. 17. 1: Summary of survey intervals and extensions – Closed systems..... 186

Table 3. 17. 2: Summary of survey intervals and extensions – Open systems 187
Table 3. 17. 3: Shaft survey methods 188

PART

1

CHAPTER **3** **Periodical Survey Regulations**

SECTION **1** **General**

1. 1 Frequency of surveys

1. 1. 1 The requirements of this Chapter are applicable to the Periodical Surveys set out in Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.5 Existing ships – Periodical Surveys. Except as amended at the discretion of the Committee, the periods between such surveys are as follows:

a. Annual Surveys, as required by Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.5 Existing ships – Periodical Surveys 3.5.1.

b. Intermediate Surveys, as required by Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.5 Existing ships – Periodical Surveys 3.5.2.

c. Bottom Surveys, as required by Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.5 Existing ships – Periodical Surveys 3.5.3 and Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.5 Existing ships – Periodical Surveys 3.5.4.

d. When ships classed **100A1 shipborne barge** are subjected to Intermediate Surveys, those surveys become due 30 months after the previous Special Survey, *see* Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.5 Existing ships – Periodical Surveys 3.5.7.

e. Special Surveys at five-yearly intervals, *see* Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.5 Existing ships – Periodical Surveys 3.5.9. For alternative arrangements, *see also* Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.5 Existing ships – Periodical Surveys 3.5.10, Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.5 Existing ships – Periodical Surveys 3.5.11, Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.5 Existing ships – Periodical Surveys 3.5.12 and Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.5 Existing ships – Periodical Surveys 3.5.14.

f. Complete Surveys of machinery at five-yearly intervals, *see* Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.5 Existing ships – Periodical Surveys 3.5.18.

1. 1. 2 For ships assigned the notation ‘laid-up’, in order to maintain the ship in class a general examination of the hull and machinery is to be carried out in lieu of the Annual Survey and an Underwater Examination (UWE) is to be carried out in lieu of the Special Survey, *see* Pt 1, Ch 3, 2.1 General 2.1.5, Pt 1, Ch 3, 5.1 General 5.1.6 and Pt 1, Ch 3, 11.1 Annual, Intermediate and Bottom Surveys 11.1.2.

1. 1. 3 When it has been agreed that the complete survey of the hull and machinery may be carried out on the Continuous Survey basis, all compartments of the hull and all items of machinery are to be opened for survey in rotation to ensure that the interval between consecutive examinations of each part will not exceed five years, *see* Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.5 Existing ships – Periodical Surveys 3.5.14 and Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.5 Existing ships – Periodical Surveys 3.5.21.

1. 1. 4 For the frequency of surveys of boilers, steam pipes, screwshafts, tube shafts, propellers and inert gas systems, *see* Pt 1, Ch 3, 15 Boilers to Pt 1, Ch 3, 19 Inert gas systems.

1. 1. 5 For the requirements for surveys of refrigerated cargo installations, *see* Pt 6, Ch 3 Refrigerated Cargo Installations.

1. 1. 6 In general, the periodical survey requirements contained in Pt 1, Ch 3 Periodical Survey Regulations also apply to ships built in accordance with the *IACS Common Structural Rules for Bulk Carriers and Oil Tankers (CSR)*. Where a requirement does not apply to CSR ships, or where a specific requirement applies only to CSR ships, this will be clearly stated.

1. 1. 7 For ships which are classed as **100AT Moored Liquefied gas carrier for service at (place)**, **100AT Moored Liquefied gas tanker for service at (place)**, **100AT Moored Liquefied gas storage unit for service at (place)**, **100AT Moored Oil Storage Unit for service at (place)** or as **100AT Moored Oil Storage Tanker for service at (place)**, the frequency of the surveys will be considered on a case-by-case basis at the discretion of the Classification Committee.

1. 2 Surveys for damage or alterations

1. 2. 1 At any time when a ship is undergoing alterations or damage repairs, any exposed parts of the structure normally difficult to access are to be specially examined, e.g. if any part of the main or auxiliary machinery, including boilers, insulation or fittings, is removed for any reason, the steel structure in way is to be carefully examined by the Surveyor, or when cement in the bottom or covering on decks is removed, the plating in way is to be examined before the cement or covering is relaid.

1. 3 Unscheduled surveys

1. 3. 1 In the event that Asia Classification Society (hereinafter referred to as ACS) has cause to believe that its Rules and Regulations are not being complied with, ACS reserves the right to perform unscheduled surveys of the hull and machinery as well as the applicable statutory requirements whether or not the appropriate statutory certificate has been issued by ACS.

1. 3. 2 In the event of significant damage or defect affecting any ship, ACS reserves the right to perform unscheduled surveys of the hull or machinery of other similar ships classed by ACS and deemed to be vulnerable.

1. 4 Surveys for the issue of Convention certificates

1. 4. 1 Surveys are to be held by ACS when so appointed, or by the Exclusive Surveyors to a National Administration or by an IACS Member when so authorised by the National Authority, or, in the case of Cargo Ship Safety Radio Certificates or Safety Management Certificates, by any organisation authorised by the National Authority. In the case of dual classed ships, Convention Certificates may be issued by the other Society with which the ship is classed provided this is recognised in a formal Dual Class Agreement with ACS and provided the other Society is also authorised by the National Authority.

1. 5 Definitions

1. 5. 1 An **Oil Tanker** is a sea going self-propelled ship which is constructed generally with integral tanks and is intended primarily to carry oil in bulk and includes ship types such as combination carriers (ore/oil and ore/bulk/oil ships, etc.). Where referred to in this Chapter, it shall also include double hull oil tankers as well as tankers with alternative structural arrangements, e.g. mid-deck designs, except where specified. Single hull oil tankers and combination carriers are not covered by the IACS Common Structural Rules (CSR).

1. 5. 2 A **Double Hull Oil Tanker** is a sea going self-propelled ship which is constructed primarily for the carriage of oil in bulk, where the cargo tanks are protected by a double hull extending for the entire length of the cargo area, consisting of double side and double bottom spaces for the carriage of salt-water ballast.

1. 5. 3 A **Bulk Carrier** is a sea going self-propelled ship which is constructed generally with single deck, double bottom, topside tanks and hopper side tanks and with single side skin construction in the cargo length area, and is intended primarily to carry dry cargo in bulk and includes ship types such as ore carriers. Where referred to in this Chapter, it shall also include double skin bulk carriers and self-unloading bulk carriers except where specified.

1. 5. 4 A **Self-Unloading Bulk Carrier** is a sea going self-propelled ship which is constructed generally with single deck, double bottom, topside tanks and hopper side tanks and with single side skin or double side skin construction in the cargo length area, and is intended to carry and self-unload dry cargoes in bulk.

1. 5. 5 A **Double Skin Bulk Carrier** is a sea going self-propelled ship which is constructed generally with single deck, double bottom, topside tanks and hopper side tanks and with double side skin construction in the cargo length area (regardless of the width of the wing space) and is intended primarily to carry dry cargo in bulk and includes such types as ore carriers.

1. 5. 6 An **Ore Carrier** is a sea going self-propelled ship which is constructed generally with single deck, two longitudinal bulkheads and a double bottom throughout the cargo length area and intended primarily to carry ore cargoes in the centre holds only. Ore carriers are not covered by the IACS Common Structural Rules (CSR).

1. 5. 7 A **Chemical Tanker** is a sea going self-propelled ship constructed generally with integral tanks and being single or double hull construction, or having alternative structural arrangements, used primarily for the carriage in bulk of any liquid product listed in *Chapter 17 Summary of minimum requirements* of the *IBC Code - International Code for the Construction and Equipment of Ships Carrying Dangerous Chemicals in Bulk, Amended by Resolution MEPC.225(64)* .

1. 5. 8 A **Gas Carrier or Gas Tanker** is a cargo ship constructed or adapted and used for the carriage in bulk of any liquefied gas or other products of flammable nature listed in Chapter 19 of the *International Code for the Construction and Equipment of Ships Carrying Liquefied Gases in Bulk.*

1. 5. 9 A **Moored Liquefied gas carrier or Moored Liquefied gas tanker** is a Gas Carrier or Gas Tanker that is operated as a storage vessel at a fixed location, defined in the class notation, with the LMC notation either maintained or suspended. The character figure T will be assigned.

1. 5. 10 A Moored Liquefied gas storage unit is a Gas Carrier or Gas Tanker that is operated as a storage vessel at a fixed location, defined in the class notation, with the LMC notation withdrawn and the main propulsion machinery uncoupled and immobilised. The character figure T will be assigned.

1. 5. 11 A **Moored Oil Storage Unit** is an Oil Tanker or Double Hull Oil Tanker that is operated as a storage vessel at a fixed location, defined in the class notation, with the LMC notation withdrawn and the main propulsion machinery uncoupled and immobilised. The character figure T will be assigned.

1. 5. 12 A **Moored Oil Storage Tanker** is an Oil Tanker or Double Hull Oil Tanker that is operated as a storage vessel at a fixed location, defined in the class notation, with the LMC notation either maintained or suspended. The character figure T will be assigned.

1. 5. 13 A **Ballast Tank** is a tank which is used solely for the carriage of salt-water ballast. For bulk carriers, a space which is used for both cargo and salt-water ballast will be treated as a salt-water ballast tank when substantial corrosion has been found in that space. For double skin bulk carriers, the double side tank is to be considered as a separate tank even if it is connected to either the topside or hopper side tank. For oil tankers and chemical tankers, a combined tank which is used for both cargo and salt-water ballast as a routine part of the ship's operation will be treated as a ballast tank. A cargo tank which in exceptional cases may carry salt-water water ballast during severe weather conditions and is not designated as a combined cargo/ballast tank will be treated as a cargo tank.

1. 5. 14 **Spaces** are separate compartments such as holds, tanks, cofferdams and void spaces bounding cargo holds, decks and the outer hull.

1. 5. 15 **Enclosed space**. An enclosed space is any place of an enclosed nature where there is a risk of death or serious injury from hazardous substances or dangerous conditions. Examples include, but are not limited to: boilers, pressure vessels, cargo spaces (cargo holds or cargo tanks), cargo space stairways, ballast tanks, double bottoms, double hull spaces, fuel oil tanks, lube oil tanks, sewage-

tanks, pump-rooms, compressor rooms, cofferdams, void spaces, duct keels, inter-barrier spaces, engine crankcases, excavations and pits.

1. 5. 16 An **Overall Survey** is a survey intended to report on the overall condition of the hull structure and to determine the extent of additional Close-up Surveys.

1. 5. 17 A **Close-up Survey** is a survey where the details of structural components are within the close visual inspection range of the Surveyor, i.e. normally within reach of hand.

1. 5. 18 A **Remote Inspection Technique (RIT)** is a means of survey that enables examination of ship structure without the need for direct physical access of the Surveyor.

1. 5. 19 A **Transverse Section** includes all longitudinal members such as plating, longitudinals and girders at the deck, side, bottom, inner bottom, inner side, hopper side, top wing side and longitudinal bulkhead, where fitted. For transversely framed ships, a transverse section includes adjacent frames and their end connections in way of transverse sections.

1. 5. 20 **Representative Spaces** are those which are expected to reflect the condition of other spaces of similar type and service and with similar corrosion prevention systems. When selecting representative spaces, account is to be taken of the service and repair history on board and identifiable Critical Structural Areas.

1. 5. 21 **Critical Structural Areas** are locations which have been identified from calculations to require monitoring or from the service history of the subject ship or from similar ships or sister ships, if applicable, to be sensitive to cracking, buckling or corrosion which would impair the structural integrity of the ship.

1. 5. 22 **Substantial Corrosion** is wastage of individual plates and stiffeners in excess of 75 per cent of allowable margins, but within acceptable limits. For ships built in accordance with the IACS Common Structural Rules (CSR), substantial corrosion is an extent of corrosion such that the assessment of the corrosion pattern indicates a gauged (or measured) thickness between t_{ren} + 0.5 mm and t_{ren}. Renewal thickness, t_{ren},is the minimum allowable thickness, in mm, below which renewal of the structural members is to be carried out.

1. 5. 23 Steel renewal requirements have been separately determined according to date of contract for construction for:

a. cargo hold hatch covers and coamings under IACS UR S21 and UR S21A; and
b. bulk carriers' corrugated transverse watertight cargo hold bulkheads under IACS UR S18. *See* Pt 1, Ch 3, 5.6 Thickness measurement, Pt 1, Ch 3, 6.7 Thickness measurement and Pt 1, Ch 3, 7.7 Thickness measurement.

In these cases, the net thickness, t_{net}, is the minimum net thickness of the structural member, excluding any corrosion addition, and is defined in Pt 4, Ch 7, 12.1 General 12.1.2 for Hatch Covers and Pt 4, Ch 7, 10.4 Vertically corrugated transverse watertight bulkheads – Application and definitions 10.4.10 for Transverse Bulkheads.

1. 5. 24 **A Corrosion Prevention System** is normally considered a full hard protective coating. This is usually to be an epoxy coating or equivalent. Other systems with the exception of soft and semi-hard coatings, may be considered acceptable as alternatives provided they are applied and properly maintained in compliance with the manufacturer's specification.

1. 5. 25 For the application of requirements outlined in Sections Pt 1, Ch 3, 2 Annual Surveys - Hull and machinery requirements, Pt 1, Ch 3, 3 Intermediate Surveys - Hull and machinery requirements, Pt 1, Ch 3, 4 Bottom Surveys – In Dry-Dock and In-Water - Hull and machinery requirements and Pt 1, Ch 3, 5 Special Survey - General - Hull requirements, a **general dry cargo ship** is a self-propelled ship of 500 gross tonnes or above, constructed generally with a 'tween deck and intended to carry solid cargoes, other than:

- bulk carriers;
- ships dedicated to the carriage of containers;

- roll on-roll off ships;
- refrigerated cargo ships;
- dedicated wood chip carriers;
- dedicated cement carriers;
- livestock carriers;
- dock/deck cargo ships;
- general dry cargo ships of double side-skin construction, with double side-skin extending for the entire length of the cargo area, and for the entire height of the cargo hold to the upper deck.

For **general dry cargo ships** with hybrid cargo hold arrangements, e.g. with some cargo holds of single-side skin and others of double-side skin, the relevant survey requirements for **general dry cargo ships** are to be applied only to structure in way of the single-side skin cargo hold region.

1. 5. 26 **Coating Condition** is defined as follows

GOOD: Condition with only minor spot rusting.

FAIR: Condition with local breakdown of coating at edges of stiffeners and weld connections and/or light rusting over 20 per cent or more of areas under consideration, but less than as defined for POOR condition.

POOR: Condition with general breakdown of coating over 20 per cent or more of areas or hard scale at 10 per cent or more of areas under consideration.

These are further clarified as follows, in order to achieve a unified assessment of coating conditions, *see* Table 3. 1. 1: Assessment of coating conditions:

GOOD: Condition with spot rusting on less than 3 per cent of the area under consideration without visible failure of the coating. Rusting at edges or welds should be on less than 20 per cent of edges or weld lines in the area under consideration.

FAIR: Condition with breakdown of coating or rust penetration on less than 20 per cent of the area under consideration. Hard rust scale should be less than 10 per cent of the area under consideration. Rusting at edges or welds should be on less than 50 per cent of edges or weld lines in the area under consideration.

POOR: Condition with breakdown of coating or rust penetration on more than 20 per cent or hard rust scale on more than 10 per cent of the area under consideration or local breakdown concentrated at edges or welds on more than 50 per cent of edges or weld lines in the area under consideration.

Further information on coating assessment can be found in the ACS document *Thickness Measurement and Close-Up Survey Guidance*.

Table 3. 1. 1: Assessment of coating conditions

	GOOD[3]	FAIR	POOR
Breakdown of coating or area rusted [1]	< 3%	3–20%	> 20%
Area of hard rust scale [1]	—	10%	≥ 10%
Local breakdown of coating or rust on edges or weld lines [2]	< 20%	20–50%	> 50%

Note *1*. % is the percentage calculated on basis of the area under consideration or of the 'critical structural area'.

Note *2*. % is the percentage calculated on basis of edges or weld lines in the area under consideration or of the 'critical structural area'.

Note *3*. Spot rusting, i.e. rusting in spot without visible failure of coating.

1. 5. 27 **Pitting Corrosion**. Pitting corrosion is defined as scattered corrosion spots/areas with local material reductions which are greater than the general corrosion in the surrounding area. Further information on pitting intensity can be found in the ACS document *Thickness Measurement and Close-Up Survey Guidance*.

1. 5. 28 **Edge Corrosion**. Edge corrosion is defined as local corrosion at the free edges of plates, stiffeners, primary support members and around openings. An example of edge corrosion can be found in the ACS document *Thickness Measurement and Close-Up Survey Guidance*.

1. 5. 29 **Grooving Corrosion**. Grooving corrosion is typically local material loss adjacent to weld joints along abutting stiffeners and at stiffener or plate butts or seams. An example of groove corrosion can be found in the ACS document *Thickness Measurement and Close-Up Survey Guidance*.

1. 5. 30 A **Prompt and Thorough Repair** is a permanent repair completed at the time of survey to the satisfaction of the Surveyor, therein removing the need for the imposition of any associated condition of class or recommendation.

1. 5. 31 Bulk carriers with hybrid cargo hold arrangements are to have single skin cargo holds surveyed in accordance with the requirements for single skin bulk carriers and the double skin cargo holds surveyed in accordance with the requirements for double skin bulk carriers.

1. 5. 32 **Special consideration** or **specially considered** (in connection with close-up surveys and thickness measurements) means sufficient close-up inspection and thickness measurements are to be taken to confirm the actual average condition of the structure under the coating.

1. 5. 33 **Air pipe heads** installed on the exposed decks are those extending above the freeboard deck or superstructure decks.

1. 5. 34 The **Cargo Area** or **Cargo Length Area** is that part of the ship which contains all cargo holds and adjacent areas including fuel tanks, cofferdams, ballast tanks and void spaces. For oil tankers and chemical tankers, the **Cargo Area** is that part of the ship which contains cargo tanks, slop tanks and cargo/ballast pump-rooms, cofferdams, ballast tanks and void spaces adjacent to cargo tanks and also deck areas throughout the entire length and breadth of the part of the ship over the above mentioned spaces.

1. 5. 35 A fuel installation using **gases or other low-flashpoint fuels** comprises the following: fuel bunkering, fuel storage, fuel processing and fuel delivery to gas fuelled consumers. The scope of such a fuel installation extends from the bunker manifold to the consumer and includes any re-liquefaction plant and compressors that are fitted to manage boil off. These installations may be on board any ship type referred to in this Chapter except gas carriers as defined in Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.5 Definitions 1.5.8.

1. 6 Preparation for survey and means of access

1. 6. 1 In order to enable the attending Surveyor(s) to carry out surveys, provisions for safe access and for surveys are to be agreed between the Owner and ACS. Attention is drawn to the applicable recommendations in the IACS PR37 and/or IMO Recommendations For Entering Enclosed Spaces Aboard Ships, Resolution A.1050(27).

1. 6. 2 Means are to be provided to enable the Surveyor to examine the structure in a safe and practical way. Where the provisions of safety and required access are determined by the Surveyor not to be adequate, then the survey of the space(s) involved is not to proceed.

1. 6. 3 Spaces are to be made safe for access and survey and are to be sufficiently cleaned, illuminated and ventilated.

1. 6. 4 In preparation for survey, thickness measurements and to allow for a thorough examination, cleaning is to include removal from surfaces of all loose accumulated corrosion scale. Spaces are to be sufficiently clean and free from water, scale, dirt, and oil residues, etc. to reveal corrosion, deformation, fractures, damages or other structural deterioration, as well as the condition of the protective coating. However, those areas of structure whose renewal has already been decided by the Owner need only be cleaned and descaled to the extent necessary to determine the limits of renewed areas.

1. 6. 5 Where soft or semi-hard coatings have been applied, safe access is to be provided for the Surveyor to verify the effectiveness of the coating and to carry out an assessment of the conditions of internal structures which may include spot removal of the coating. When safe access cannot be provided, the soft or semi-hard coating is to be removed.

1. 6. 6 Prior to entering an enclosed space, it is to be verified by a competent person using a calibrated multi gas meter that the atmosphere in that space is free from hazardous gas and contains sufficient oxygen.

1. 6. 7 Emergency equipment and personnel are to be available in case of an emergency or rescue operation.

1. 6. 8 Information on procedures, equipment-operating instructions and safety checklists is to be available.

1. 6. 9 During the survey, ventilation is to be ensured and periodic testing is to be carried out as necessary to verify that the atmosphere remains safe for access.

1. 6. 10 For surveys, including close-up survey where applicable, in cargo spaces and ballast tanks, one or more of the following means of access is to be provided:

a. Permanent staging and passages through structures.
b. Temporary staging and passages through structures.
c. Hydraulic arm vehicles such as conventional cherry pickers, lifts and movable platforms.
d. Portable ladders, *see* Note.
e. Boats or rafts.
f. Other equivalent means.

Note Portable ladders may be used, at the discretion of the Surveyor, for survey of the hull structure of single skin bulk carriers, except for the close-up survey of cargo hold shell frames, *see* Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.6 Preparation for survey and means of access 1.6.11 and Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.6 Preparation for survey and means of access 1.6.12

1. 6. 11 For close-up surveys of the cargo hold shell frames of single skin bulk carriers with a deadweight less than 100,000 tonnes, one or more of the following means of access is to be provided:

a. Permanent staging and passages through structures.
b. Temporary staging and passages through structures.
c. Portable ladder restricted to not more than 5 m in length may be accepted for surveys of the lower section of a shell frame including bracket.
d. Hydraulic arm vehicles such as conventional cherry pickers, lifts and movable platforms.
e. Boats or rafts, provided the structural capacity of the hold is sufficient to withstand static loads at all levels of water.
f. Other equivalent means.

1. 6. 12 For close-up surveys of the cargo hold shell frames of single skin bulk carriers with a deadweight equal to or greater than 100,000 tonnes, the use of portable ladders is not accepted and one or more of the following means of access is to be provided:

a. At Annual Surveys, Intermediate Surveys held before the ship is 10 years old and Special Survey I:
   i. Permanent staging and passages through structures.
   ii. Temporary staging and passages through structures.
   iii. Hydraulic arm vehicles such as conventional cherry pickers, lifts and movable platforms.
   iv. Boats or rafts, provided the structural capacity of the hold is sufficient to withstand static loads at all levels of water.
   v. Other equivalent means.
b. At Special Survey II and all subsequent Intermediate Surveys and Special surveys:
   i. Either permanent or temporary staging and passage through structures for close-up survey of at least the upper part of hold frames.
   ii. Hydraulic arm vehicles such as conventional cherry pickers for surveys of lower and middle part of shell frames as alternative to staging.
   iii. Lifts and movable platforms.
   iv. Boats or rafts, provided the structural capacity of the hold is sufficient to withstand static loads at all levels of water.
   v. Other equivalent means.
c. Notwithstanding the above requirements, the following apply:
   i. At Annual Survey, for access to perform the close-up survey of the lower region of cargo hold shell frames, the use of a portable ladder fitted with a mechanical device to secure the upper end of the ladder is acceptable.
   ii. The use of hydraulic arm vehicles such as conventional cherry pickers may be accepted by the attending Surveyor for the close-up survey of the upper part of side shell frames or other structures in all cases where the maximum working height is not more than 17 m.

1. 6. 13 For surveys of the hull structure/s conducted by use of a RIT, one or more of the following means for access, acceptable to the Surveyor, is to be provided:
   a. Unmanned robot arm.
   b. Remote Operated Vehicles (ROV)
   c. Unmanned Aerial Vehicles/Drones
   d. Other means acceptable to ACS.

1. 6. 14 Survey at sea or anchorage may be undertaken when the Surveyor is fully satisfied with the necessary assistance from the personnel onboard and provided the foregoing preparations for survey, as applicable, have been met. In addition, the following conditions and limitations are to be applied:
   a. A communication system is to be arranged between the survey party in the tank and the responsible officer on deck. This system must include the personnel in charge of ballast pump handling if boats or rafts are to be used.
   b. Surveys of tanks by means of boats or rafts are to be agreed with the attending Surveyor, who is to take into account the safety arrangements provided, including weather forecasting and ship response under foreseeable sea conditions and provide the expected rise of water within the tank does not exceed 0.25 m.

   Where it has been agreed to use boats or rafts when carrying out close-up survey, the following conditions are to be observed:
   i. Only rough duty, inflatable rafts or boats, having satisfactory residual buoyancy and stability even if one chamber is ruptured, are to be used.
   ii. The boat or raft is to be tethered to the access ladder and an additional person is to be stationed down the access ladder with a clear view of the boat or raft.
   iii. Appropriate lifejackets are to be available for all participants.
   iv. The surface of water in the tank is to be calm and the water level stationary. On no account is the level of the water to be rising while the boat or raft is in use.

v. The tank or space must contain clean ballast water only. Even a thin sheen of oil on the water is not acceptable.

vi. At no time is the water level to be allowed to be within 1 m of the deepest under deck web face flat so that the survey team is not isolated from a direct escape route to the tank hatch. Filling to levels above the deck transverses is only to be contemplated if a deck access manhole is fitted and open in the bay being examined, so that an escape route for the survey party is available at all times. Other effective means of escape to the deck may be considered.

vii. If the tanks (or spaces) are connected by a common venting system, or Inert Gas system, the tank in which the boat or raft is to be used is to be isolated to prevent a transfer of gas from other tanks (or spaces).

c. Rafts or boats may be permitted for the survey of the under deck areas of tanks or spaces, if the depth of the under deck web plating is 1.5 m or less. If the depth of the under deck web plating is greater than 1.5 m, then rafts or boats may be permitted only when the coating of the under deck structure is in GOOD condition and there is no evidence of wastage or if a permanent means of access is provided in each bay to allow safe entry and exit. A permanent means of access is considered to mean:

i. Access direct from the deck via a vertical ladder and a small platform fitted approximately 2 m below the deck in each bay or,

ii. Access to deck from a longitudinal permanent platform having ladders to the deck at each end of the tank. The platform shall be arranged over the full length of the tank and level with, or above, the maximum water level needed for rafting of the under deck structure. For this purpose, the ullage corresponding to the maximum water level is to be assumed not more than 3 m from the deck plate measured at the midspan of deck transverses and at the mid point of the tank's length.

If neither of the above conditions are met, then staging or another equivalent means is to be provided for the survey of the under deck areas.

1. 6. 15 Rescue and emergency response equipment: if breathing apparatus and/or other equipment is used as ‘rescue and emergency response equipment’, it is recommended that the equipment be suitable for the configuration of the space being surveyed.

1. 6. 16 For ships assigned the notation **ESP**, the Owner is to respond to a Survey Planning Questionnaire and to prepare a Survey Programme, *see* Pt 1, Ch 3, 6.3 Planning for survey, Pt 1, Ch 3, 7.3 Planning for survey and Pt 1, Ch 3, 8.3 Planning for survey. In such cases, the following requirements are applicable:

a. The Survey Planning Questionnaire is to be submitted to ACS prior to the preparation of a Survey Programme. The response to the Questionnaire is to include information on access provisions for close-up Surveys and thickness measurements; cargo history; the results of inspections carried out by the Owner; a list of reports of Port State Control Inspection containing hull structural deficiencies; a list of Safety Management System non-conformities related to hull maintenance and details of the thickness measurement company.

b. The Survey Programme is to be submitted prior to the commencement of any part of the Intermediate Survey on ships over 10 years of age and Special Survey. This is to be in a written format and submitted to ACS at least six months in advance of the survey. The Survey Programme at Intermediate Survey may consist of the Survey Programme agreed for the previous Special Survey supplemented by the Executive Hull Summary of that Special Survey and later relevant survey reports. The survey will not commence until a Survey Programme has been agreed.

c. The Survey Programme is to be worked out taking into account any amendments to the survey requirements implemented after the previous Special Survey.

d. Further information on the Survey Planning Questionnaire and Survey Programme can be found in the *ESP guidance booklets* that have been prepared by ACS and are available on the Class Direct website.

e. Prior to the commencement of any part of the Intermediate Survey and Special Survey, a survey planning meeting is to be held between the attending Surveyor(s), the Owner's representative in attendance, the thickness measurement company operator representative (as applicable) and the Master of the ship or an appropriately qualified representative appointed by the Master or Owner for the purpose of ascertaining that all the arrangements envisaged in the Survey Programme are in place, so as to ensure the safe and efficient conduct of the survey to be carried out. The following is an indicative list of items that are to be addressed in the meeting:
i. Schedule of the ship (i.e. the voyage, docking and undocking manoeuvres, periods alongside, cargo and ballast operations, etc.).
ii. Provisions and arrangements for thickness measurements (i.e. access, cleaning/de-scaling, illumination, ventilation, personal safety).
iii. Extent of the thickness measurements.
iv. Permissible diminution levels.
v. Extent of close-up survey and thickness measurement considering the coating condition and suspect areas/areas of substantial corrosion.
vi. Execution of thickness measurements.
vii. Taking representative readings in general and where uneven corrosion/pitting is found.
viii. Mapping of areas of substantial corrosion.
ix. Communication between attending surveyor(s), the thickness measurement company operator(s) and Owner's representative(s) concerning findings.

f. Proper preparation and close co-operation between the attending Surveyor(s) and the Owner's representative on board prior to and during the survey are an essential part in the safe and efficient conduct of the survey. During the survey on board safety meetings are to be held regularly.

1. 6. 17 For a fuel installation using **gases or other low-flashpoint fuels** *see also* Pt 1, Ch 3, 24.1 General .

1. 7 Remote Inspection Technique (RIT)

Consideration may be given by ACS to allow the use of a RIT as a means to carry out a close-up survey. Surveys conducted using a RIT are to be completed to the satisfaction of the attending Surveyor. The following requirements are applicable:

a. The RIT is to provide the information normally obtained by a Surveyor when using traditional means of access to perform the survey.

b. Surveys performed with the use of a RIT are to be carried out in accordance with the requirements given in *IACS Recommendation 42 'Guidelines for Use of Remote Inspection Techniques for surveys'*. These considerations are to be included in the proposals for use of a RIT which are to be submitted in advance of the survey so that satisfactory arrangements can be agreed with ACS.

c. The equipment and procedure for observing and reporting the survey using a RIT are to be discussed and agreed prior to the survey using a RIT.

d. Time is to be allowed to set up, calibrate and test all equipment beforehand.

e. When using a RIT as a means to carry out a close-up survey, if not carried out by ACS itself, it is to be conducted by a firm approved as a service supplier and is to be witnessed by the attending Surveyor.

f. The structure to be examined using a RIT is to be sufficiently clean and visibility is to be sufficient to allow a meaningful examination. ACS is to be satisfied with the methods of orientation on the structure.

g. The Surveyor is to be satisfied with the method of data presentation including pictorial representation, and a good two-way communication between the Surveyor and the RIT operator is to be provided.
h. When a RIT is used as a means to carry out a close-up survey, means of access for the corresponding thickness measurements are to be provided unless the RIT is also able to carry out the required thickness measurements.
i. If the RIT reveals damage or deterioration that requires attention, the Surveyor may require a further close-up survey to be undertaken without the use of a RIT.

1. 8 Thickness measurement at surveys

1. 8. 1 This Section is applicable to the thickness measurement of the hull structure where required by Sections Pt 1, Ch 3, 2 Annual Surveys - Hull and machinery requirements, Pt 1, Ch 3, 3 Intermediate Surveys - Hull and machinery requirements, Pt 1, Ch 3, 5 Special Survey - General - Hull requirements, Pt 1, Ch 3, 6 Special Survey - Bulk carriers - Hull requirements, Pt 1, Ch 3, 7 Special Survey - Oil tankers (including ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships) - Hull requirements, Pt 1, Ch 3, 8 Special Survey - Chemical Tankers - Hull requirements and Pt 1, Ch 3, 9 Ships for liquefied gases.

1. 8. 2 Prior to the commencement of the Intermediate Survey and Special Survey, a meeting is to be held between the attending Surveyor(s), the Owner's representative in attendance, the thickness measurement company representative and the Master of the ship or an appropriately qualified representative appointed by the Master or Owner, so as to ensure the safe and efficient conduct of the survey and thickness measurements to be carried out.

1. 8. 3 Thickness measurements are normally to be taken by means of ultrasonic test equipment and are to be carried out by a firm approved in accordance with ACS's *Approval for Thickness Measurement of Hull Structure*. For non-**ESP** ships less than 500 gross tons and all fishing vessels, a suitably qualified exclusive Surveyor (where available) may carry out thickness measurements. On all other occasions, an approved firm is to carry out the thickness measurements.

1. 8. 4 The Surveyor may require to measure the thickness of the material in any portion of the structure where signs of wastage are evident or wastage is normally found. Any parts of the structure which are found defective or excessively reduced in scantlings are to be made good by materials of the approved scantlings and quality. Attention is to be given to the structure in way of discontinuities. If a corrosion control **CC** special features notation, as defined in the *Register Book*, is assigned, then surfaces are to be re-coated as necessary.

1. 8. 5 Thickness measurements are to be witnessed by the Surveyor. This requires the Surveyor to be on board, while the measurements are carried out, to the extent necessary to control the process. This also applies to thickness measurements carried out while the ship is at sea.

1. 8. 6 The Surveyor may extend the scope of thickness measurement if deemed necessary.

1. 8. 7 Where it is required as part of the survey to carry out thickness measurements for the structural areas subject to Close-up Survey, then these measurements are to be carried out simultaneously with the Close-up Survey.

1. 8. 8 Thickness measurements are to be taken in the forward and aft areas of all plates. Where plates cross ballast/cargo tank boundaries separate measurements for the area of plating in way of each type of tank are to be reported. In all cases the measurements are to represent the average of multiple measurements taken on each plate and/or stiffener. Where measured plates are renewed, the thicknesses of adjacent plates in the same strake are to be reported.

1. 8. 9 The acceptance criteria for thickness measurements are according to the ACS document *Thickness Measurement and Close-Up Survey Guidance.*

1. 8. 10 A report is to be prepared by the approved firm or Surveyor carrying out the thickness measurements. The report is to give the location of measurement, the thickness measured as well

as the corresponding original thickness. The report is to give the date when measurement was carried out, the type of measuring equipment, names of personnel and their qualifications and is to be signed by the operator.

1. 8. 11 The thickness measurement report is to be verified and signed by the Surveyor and countersigned by an authorising Surveyor.

1. 8. 12 In all cases the extent of the thickness measurements is to be sufficient to represent the actual average condition.

1. 9 Repairs

1. 9. 1 Any damage in association with wastage over the allowable limit (including buckling, grooving, detachment or fracture), or extensive areas of wastage over the allowable limits, which affects or, in the opinion of the Surveyor, will affect the ship's structural, watertight or weathertight integrity, is to be promptly and thoroughly repaired. Areas to be considered include, (where fitted):

- side shell frames, their end attachments and adjacent shell plating;
- deck structure and deck plating;
- bottom structure and bottom plating;
- side structure and side plating;
- inner bottom structure and inner bottom plating;
- inner side structure and inner side plating;
- watertight or oil-tight bulkheads;
- hatch covers and hatch coamings;
- the weld connection between air pipes and deck plating;
- air pipe heads installed on the exposed decks;
- ventilators, including closing devices.

For locations where adequate repair facilities are not available, consideration may be given to allow the ship to proceed directly to a repair facility. This may require discharging the cargo and/or temporary repairs for the intended voyage.

1. 9. 2 Additionally, when a survey results in the identification of structural defects or corrosion, either of which, in the opinion of the Surveyor, will impair the ship's fitness for continued service, remedial measures are to be implemented before the ship continues in service.

1. 9. 3 Where the damage found on structure mentioned in Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.9 Repairs 1.9.1 is isolated and of a localised nature which does not affect the ship's structural integrity (as, for example, a localised, isolated and very minor hole in a cross-deck strip), consideration may be given by the Surveyor to allow an appropriate temporary repair to restore watertight or weathertight integrity after careful evaluation of the surrounding structure and impose an associated Condition of Class with a specific short-term time limit in order to complete the repair and retain classification.

1. 10 Documentation

1. 10. 1 For oil tankers and bulk carriers, the Owner is to obtain, supply and maintain documentation on board as follows:

a. A survey file comprising reports of structural surveys, thickness measurement and executive hull summary in accordance with the *2011 ESP Code – International Code on the Enhanced*

Programme of Inspections During Surveys of Bulk Carriers and Oil Tankers, 2011 – Resolution A.1049(27).

b. Supporting documentation consisting of:

i. Main structural plans of cargo holds and ballast tanks (for ships built in accordance with the IACS Common Structural Rules (CSR), these plans are to include for each structural element, both the as-built and the renewal thickness. Any thickness for voluntary addition is also to be clearly indicated on the plans. The midship section plan to be supplied on board the ship is to include the minimum allowable hull girder sectional properties for the hold transverse section in all cargo holds).

ii. Previous repair history.

iii. Cargo and ballast history.

iv. Records of inspections by ship's personnel with reference to structural deterioration in general, leakages in bulkheads and piping and the condition of the corrosion prevention systems, if any.

v. Any other information that may help to identify critical structural areas and/or suspect areas requiring inspection.

vi. Survey Programme as required by Pt 1, Ch 3, 6.3 Planning for survey and Pt 1, Ch 3, 7.3 Planning for survey.

1. 10. 2 In addition to the above, for CSR oil tankers and CSR bulk carriers subject to *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea Chapter II-1 - Construction - Structure, subdivision and stability, machinery and electrical installations Part A-1 - Structure of ships Regulation 3-10 – Goal-based ship construction standards for bulk carriers and oil tankers*, a Goal Based Standard (GBS) Ship Construction File (SCF) is to be provided in accordance with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 7, 1.6 Information required for CSR bulk carriers 1.6.4 and Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.6 Information required for CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers 1.6.4. Certain important GBS SCF information must be retained aboard the ship. The remainder may be kept ashore as a 'GBS SCF' Supplement Ashore in an on-shore Archive Centre.

1. 10. 3 For CSR oil tankers and CSR bulk carriers subject to *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea Chapter II-1 - Construction - Structure, subdivision and stability, machinery and electrical installations Part A-1 - Structure of ships Regulation 3-10 – Goal-based ship construction standards for bulk carriers and oil tankers*, the Owner is to arrange the updating of the SCF throughout the ship's life information contained in the GBS SCF throughout the ship's life at any major event, including, but not limited to, substantial repair, conversion or modification to the ship structure. Documented procedures for updating the GBS SCF are to be included within the Safety Management System.

1. 10. 4 The applicable documentation is to be kept on board for the lifetime of the ship and is to be readily available for the Surveyor.

PART

1

CHAPTER 3 **Periodical Survey Regulations**

SECTION 2 **Annual Surveys - Hull and machinery requirements**

2. 1 General

2. 1. 1 Annual Surveys are to be held concurrently with statutory annual or other relevant statutory surveys, wherever practicable.

2. 1. 2 At Annual Surveys, the Surveyor is to examine the ship and machinery, so far as necessary and practicable, in order to be satisfied as to their general condition.

2. 1. 3 For additional requirements for ships for liquefied gases, *see* Pt 1, Ch 3, 9 Ships for liquefied gases.

2. 1. 4 For ships which are required by International Convention to comply with the *ISM Code - International Management Code and Revised Guidelines on Implementation of the ISM Code* (ISM Code), the Surveyor is to review the overall effectiveness of the Code onboard ship. This is to be undertaken regardless of the organisation issuing the Safety Management Certificate (SMC).

2. 1. 5 For ships assigned the notation 'laid-up', in lieu of the normal Annual Survey requirements a general examination of the hull and machinery is to be carried out.

2. 2 Annual Surveys

2. 2. 1 The survey is to include:

a. An examination for the purpose of ensuring, as far as practicable, that the hull, hatch covers, hatch coamings, closing appliances, equipment and related piping are maintained in a satisfactory condition and shall take into account the service history, condition and extent of the corrosion prevention system of ballast tanks and areas identified in the ship's classification records.

b. Examination of weather decks, ship side plating above the waterline, hatch cover and coamings.

c. Examination of watertight penetrations as far as practicable.

d. Examination of the weld connection between air pipes, ventilators and deck plating.

e. External examination of all air pipe heads installed on exposed decks.

f. Examination of flame screens on air pipes to all bunker tanks.

g. Examination of ventilators including closing devices, if any.

h. The Surveyor is to be satisfied regarding the efficient condition of:

i. exposed casings, skylights, flush deck scuttles, deckhouses and companionways, superstructure bulkheads, side, bow and stern doors, side scuttles and deadlights, chutes and other openings, together with all closing appliances.

ii. scuppers and sanitary discharges (so far as practicable); valves on discharge lines (so far as practicable) and their controls; guard rails and bulwarks; freeing ports, gangways and life-lines; fittings and appliances for timber deck cargoes.
iii. bilge level detection and alarm systems on ships assigned a **UMS** notation.

2. 2. 2 The following requirements for hatch covers and coamings are applicable:

a. The Surveyor is to obtain confirmation that no unapproved changes have been made to the hatch covers, hatch coamings and their securing and sealing devices since the previous survey.

b. Where mechanically operated steel hatch covers are fitted, Surveyors are to confirm the satisfactory condition of:
i. hatch covers;
ii. tightness devices of longitudinal, transverse and intermediate cross junctions (gaskets, gasket lips, compression bars, drainage channels);
iii. clamping devices, retaining bars, cleating;
iv. chain or rope pulleys;
v. guides;
vi. guide rails and track wheels;
vii. stoppers, etc;
viii. wires, chains, gypsies, tensioning devices;
ix. hydraulic system essential to closing and securing;
x. safety locks and retaining devices.

c. Where portable hatch covers, wooden or steel pontoons are fitted, Surveyors are to confirm the satisfactory condition of:
i. wooden covers and portable beams, carriers or sockets for the portable beam, and their securing devices;
ii. steel pontoons;
iii. tarpaulins;
iv. cleats, battens and wedges;
v. hatch securing bars and their securing devices;
vi. loading pads/bars and the side plate edge;
vii. guide plates and chocks;
viii. compression bars, drainage channels and drain pipes (if any).

d. The Surveyor is to confirm the satisfactory condition of hatch coaming plating and their stiffeners, where applicable.

e. The Surveyor is to carry out random checking of the satisfactory operation of mechanically operated hatch covers including:
i. stowage and securing in open condition,
ii. proper fit and efficiency of sealing in closed condition,
iii. operational testing of hydraulic and power components, wires, chains and link drives.

f. Where considered necessary by the Surveyor, the effectiveness of sealing arrangements may be proved by hose or chalk testing supplemented by dimensional measurements of seal compressing components.

g. For **general dry cargo ships** the survey is to include a close-up survey of the hatch covers, hatch coaming and stiffeners.

h. For **bulk carriers** the following requirements are also applicable:
i. The survey is to include a close-up survey of the hatch covers, hatch coaming and stiffeners.
ii. A thorough survey of cargo hatch covers and coamings is only possible by their examination in an open and closed position, including verification of the proper opening and closing operation. As such, the hatch cover sets located in the forward 25 per cent of the ship's length and at least one other additional set are to be surveyed open, closed and in operation to the full extent on each direction in accordance with (Pt 1, Ch 3, 2.2 Annual Surveys 2.2.2.(e)) above. When selecting hatch cover sets it should be ensured that all sets are subject to survey

at least once in every five-year Special Survey period. The closing of the covers is to include the fastening of all peripheral and cross joint cleats or other securing devices, with particular attention to be paid to the condition of the hatch covers located in the forward 25 per cent of the ship's length, where sea loads are normally greatest.

iii. If there are indications of difficulty in operating and securing hatch covers, then additional sets are to be tested in operation at the discretion of the Surveyor.

iv. Where the cargo hatch securing system does not function properly, repairs are to be carried out under the supervision of the Surveyor. Where hatch covers or coamings undergo substantial repairs, the strength of securing devices shall be upgraded to comply with Pt 4, Ch 7, 12.3 Closing arrangements.

v. Surveyors are to survey the sealing arrangements of perimeter and cross joints (gaskets for condition of permanent deformation, flexible seals on combination carriers, gasket lips, compression bars, drainage channels and non-return valves).

2. 2. 3 The Surveyor is to confirm that, where required, an approved loading instrument together with its operation manual are available on board, *see* Pt 3, Ch 4, 8 Loading guidance information. The operation of the loading instrument is to be verified in accordance with ACS's certification procedure.

2. 2. 4 The anchoring and mooring equipment is to be examined so far as practicable.

2. 2. 5 The watertight doors in watertight bulkheads, their indicators and alarms, are to be examined and tested (locally and remotely), together with an examination of watertight bulkhead penetrations, so far as practicable.

2. 2. 6 If a rig is fitted that is used for propulsion by wind force, then a general examination of the mast(s), standing rigging, sail/wind propulsion system and associated structure and equipment is to be carried out. The examination may be undertaken by a Surveyor and/or by a firm approved by ACS.

2. 2. 7 The Surveyor is to examine and test in operation all main and auxiliary steering arrangements including their associated equipment and control systems, and verify that log book entries have been made in accordance with statutory requirements where applicable.

2. 2. 8 The Surveyor is to be satisfied regarding the freeboard marks on the ship's side.

2. 2. 9 The Surveyor is to generally inspect the machinery and boiler spaces, with particular attention being given to the propulsion system, auxiliary machinery and to the existence of any fire and explosion hazards. Emergency escape routes are to be checked to ensure that they are free of obstruction.

2. 2. 10 The means of communication between the navigating bridge and the machinery control positions, as well as the bridge and the alternative steering position, if fitted, are to be tested.

2. 2. 11 The bilge pumping systems for each watertight compartment, including bilge wells, extended spindles, self-closing drain cocks, valves fitted with rod gearing or other remote operation, pumps and level alarms, where fitted, are to be examined and operated as far as practicable and all confirmed to be satisfactory. Any hand pumps provided are to be included.

2. 2. 12 Piping systems containing fuel oil, lubricating oil or other flammable liquids are to be generally examined and operated as far as practicable, with particular attention being paid to tightness, fire precaution arrangements, flexible hoses and sounding arrangements.

2. 2. 13 The Surveyor is to be satisfied regarding the condition of non-metallic joints in piping systems which penetrate the hull, where both the penetration and the non-metallic joint are below the deepest load waterline.

2. 2. 14 The main propulsion, essential auxiliary and emergency generators including safety arrangements, controls and foundations are to be generally examined. Surveyors are to confirm that Periodical Surveys of engines have been carried out as required by the Rules and that safety devices have been tested.

2. 2. 15 The boilers, other pressure vessels and their appurtenances, including foundations, controls, high pressure and waste steam piping and insulation and gauges, are to be generally examined. Surveyors should confirm that Periodical Surveys of boilers and other pressure vessels have been carried out as required by the Rules.

2. 2. 16 For boilers, the safety devices are to be tested, and the safety valves are to be operated using the relieving devices. For exhaust gas heated economisers/boilers, the safety valves are to be tested at sea by the Chief Engineer and details recorded in the log book.

2. 2. 17 The operation and maintenance records, repair history and feed water chemistry records of boilers are to be examined.

2. 2. 18 For other pressure vessels, the safety devices are to be examined.

2. 2. 19 The electrical equipment and cabling forming the main and emergency electrical installations are to be generally examined under operating conditions so far as practicable. The satisfactory operation of the main and emergency sources of power and electrical services essential for safety in an emergency is to be verified; where the sources of power are automatically controlled they should be tested in the automatic mode. Bonding straps for the control of static electricity and earthing arrangements are to be examined where fitted.

2. 2. 20 Where lithium battery system installations are used as a power source for essential or emergency systems, testing is to be conducted in accordance with the trials requirements in Pt 6 Control, Electrical, Refrigeration and Fire, Table 2. 21. 3: Test requirements on lithium battery systems. Additionally the following aspects of the battery space are to be inspected, as applicable to the installation:

a. structural fire protection;
b. fixed fire detection;
c. HVAC, ventilation, cooling, smoke extraction, fire damper systems;
d. fixed and portable extinguishing; and
e. escape and EEBD (emergency escape breathing device).

2. 2. 21 The electrical installation in areas which may contain flammable gas or vapour and/or combustible dust is to be examined in order to verify that it is in good condition and has been properly maintained.

2. 2. 22 For main propulsion, essential auxiliary and emergency machinery control engineering systems, a general examination of the equipment and arrangements is to be carried out. Records of modifications are to be made available for review by the attending Surveyor. The documentation required by Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems, including configuration management, are to be reviewed following system modifications to confirm compliance with applicable Rules. Satisfactory operation of the safety devices and control systems is to be verified. For ships having **UMS** or **CCS** notation, a general examination of the control engineering equipment required for these notations is also to be carried out.

2. 2. 23 For ships fitted with an electronically controlled engine for main propulsion, essential auxiliary or emergency power purposes the following is to be carried out to the satisfaction of the Surveyor:

a. Verification of evidence of satisfactory operation of the engine and where possible this is to include a running test under load.
b. Verification of satisfactory operation of the safety devices and control, alarm and monitoring systems.
c. Verification that any changes to the software or control, alarm, monitoring and safety systems that affect the operation of the engine have been assessed by ACS and are under configuration management control.

2. 2. 24 Dead ship starting arrangements for bringing machinery into operation without external aid are to be tested to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

2. 2. 25 On ships fitted with a dynamic positioning system, the control system and associated machinery items are to be generally examined and tested to demonstrate that they are in good working order. For ships classed with **DP (AA)** or **DP (AAA)** notations Surveyors are to review records of the annual testing to confirm the ship's ability to keep position after single failures of any component or system and, in addition, Surveyors are to witness testing conducted alongside as far as is practicable.

2. 2. 26 For ships to which a **PM** or **PMC** notation has been assigned in accordance with Pt 7, Ch 8, 1.2 Classification notations 1.2.1.(b), the thruster assisted positional mooring system, control system and associated machinery items are to be generally examined and tested under operating conditions to an approved Test Schedule.

2. 2. 27 For ships fitted with positional mooring equipment in accordance with Pt 7, Ch 8 Positional Mooring and Thruster-Assisted Positional Mooring Systems, a schedule or rota of moorings to be examined at Annual Survey should be agreed for component parts of the positional moorings.

2. 2. 28 For ships having an **OPS** notation assigned, a General Examination of on-shore power supply arrangements is to be carried out in accordance with Pt 7, Ch 13 On-shore Power Supplies.

2. 2. 29 For ships to which Pt 6, Ch 4 Fire Protection, Detection and Extinction Requirements applies, the arrangements for fire protection, detection and extinction are to be examined and are to include:

a. Verification, so far as practicable, that no significant changes have been made to the arrangement of structural fire protection.
b. Verification of the operation of manual and/or automatic doors where fitted.
c. Verification that fire-control plans are properly posted.
d. Examination, so far as possible, and testing as feasible, of the fire and/or smoke detection and alarm system(s).
e. Examination of fire main system, and confirmation that each fire pump, including the emergency fire pump can be operated separately so that the two required powerful jets of water can be produced simultaneously from different hydrants.
f. Verification that fire-hoses, nozzles, applicators and spanners are in good working condition and situated at their respective locations.
g. Examination of fixed fire-fighting systems controls, piping, instructions and marking, checking for evidence of proper maintenance and servicing, including date of last systems tests.
h. Verification that all portable and semi-portable fire-extinguishers are in their stowed positions, checking for evidence of proper maintenance and servicing, conducting random checks for evidence of discharged containers.
i. Verification, so far as practicable, that the remote control for stopping fans and machinery and shutting-off fuel supplies in machinery spaces and, where fitted, the remote controls for stopping fans in accommodation spaces and the means of cutting off power to the gallery are in good working order.
j. Examination of the closing arrangements of ventilators, funnel annular spaces, skylights, doorways and tunnels, where applicable.
k. Verification that the firemen's outfits are complete and in good condition.

2. 2. 30 The examination of salt-water ballast tanks is to be carried out as follows:

a. Salt-water ballast tanks, other than double bottom ballast tanks, on all ships (excluding oil tankers and chemical tankers) where it has been identified at a previous Special Survey or Intermediate Survey that:
   i. A hard protective coating has not been applied from the time of construction; or
   ii. A soft or semi-hard coating has been applied; or
   iii. A hard protective coating is found to be in POOR condition, as defined in 1.5, and the hard protective coating is not repaired to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

If the conditions listed above are applicable to double bottom ballast tanks, then these tanks may be subject to examination at the Annual Survey at the discretion of the Surveyor.

b. Salt-water ballast tanks on oil tankers (including ore/oil and ore/bulk/oil ships) and chemical tankers where it has been identified at a previous Special Survey or Intermediate Survey that:
   i. A hard protective coating has not been applied from the time of construction; or
   ii. A soft or semi-hard coating has been applied; or
   iii. The hard protective coating is found to be in less than GOOD condition, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.5 Definitions, and the hard protective coating is not repaired to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

c. The examination of the salt-water ballast tanks, in accordance with the above, is to include thickness measurements to confirm the condition of the hull structure.

2. 2. 31 The Surveyor is to carry out an examination and thickness measurement of structure identified at the previous Special Survey or Intermediate Survey as having substantial corrosion, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.5 Definitions. This requirement does not apply to cargo tanks of oil tankers and chemical tankers. The extent of thickness measurements is to be in accordance with the appropriate Tables in Sections Pt 1, Ch 3, 5 Special Survey - General - Hull requirements, Pt 1, Ch 3, 6 Special Survey - Bulk carriers - Hull requirements, Pt 1, Ch 3, 7 Special Survey - Oil tankers (including ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships) - Hull requirements or Pt 1, Ch 3, 8 Special Survey - Chemical Tankers - Hull requirements, as applicable, to determine the full extent of the corrosion pattern. The survey will not be considered complete until these additional thickness measurements have been carried out. For cargo holds and ballast tanks of bulk carriers built in accordance with the IACS Common Structural Rules (CSR), the annual thickness measurement may be dispensed with where a protective coating has been applied in accordance with the coating manufacturer's requirements and is maintained in good condition. Steel renewal requirements have been separately determined according to date of contract for construction for:

a. cargo hold hatch covers and coamings under IACS UR S21 and UR S21A; and
b. bulk carriers' corrugated transverse watertight hold bulkheads under IACS UR S18.

Where the gauged thickness is within the range $t_{net} + 0.5$ mm and $t_{net} + 1.0$ mm, a coating (applied in accordance with coating manufacturer's requirements) or annual gauging may be adopted as an alternative to steel renewal. *See* Pt 1, Ch 3, 5.6 Thickness measurement 5.6.7, Pt 1, Ch 3, 6.7 Thickness measurement 6.7.5 and Pt 1, Ch 3, 7.7 Thickness measurement 7.7.4.

2. 2. 32 For **oil tankers** (including ore/bulk/oil ships and ore/oil ships), in addition to the applicable requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 2.2 Annual Surveys 2.2.1 to Pt 1, Ch 3, 2.2 Annual Surveys 2.2.10, the following are to be dealt with where applicable:

a. Examination of cargo tank openings including gaskets, covers, coamings and screens.
b. Examination of cargo tank venting arrangements including secondary means of venting, or over/under pressure alarms where fitted, with associated pressure/vacuum valves and flame screens.
c. Examination of flame screens on vents to all bunker, oily ballast and oily slop tanks and void spaces, so far as practicable.
d. Examination of cargo, crude oil washing, bunker, ballast and vent piping systems together with flame arresters and pressure/vacuum valves, as applicable above the upper deck within the cargo tank area, including vent masts and headers.
e. Verification that no potential sources of ignition such as loose gear, excessive products in the bilges, excessive vapours, combustible materials, etc. are present in or near the cargo pump room and that access ladders are in good condition.
f. Examination of cargo pump rooms and pipe tunnels (where fitted) and examination of all pump room bulkheads for signs of leakage or fractures and, in particular, the sealing arrangements of all penetrations in these bulkheads.

g. Verification that the pump room ventilation system is operational, ducting intact, dampers operational and screens are clean.
h. For ships to which Pt 6, Ch 4 Fire Protection, Detection and Extinction Requirements applies, the external examination of the piping and cut-out valves of cargo tank and cargo pump room fixed fire-fighting system.
i. For ships to which Pt 6, Ch 4 Fire Protection, Detection and Extinction Requirements applies, verification that the deck foam system and deck sprinkler system are in good operating condition.
j. Examination of the condition of all piping systems in the cargo pump room so far as practicable.
k. Examination, so far as practicable, of cargo, bilge, ballast and stripping pumps for excessive gland seal leakage, verification of proper operation of electrical and mechanical remote operating and shutdown devices and operation of pump room bilge system, and checking that pump foundations are intact.
l. Verification that installed pressure gauges on cargo discharge lines and level indicator systems are operational.
m. Verification that at least one portable instrument for measuring flammable vapour concentrations is available, together with a sufficient set of spares and a suitable means of calibration.
n. Examination of any inert gas system, *see* Pt 1, Ch 3, 2.2 Annual Surveys 2.2.34.
o. For ballast tanks, in areas where substantial corrosion, as defined in 1.5, has been noted then additional measurements are to be carried out in accordance with Table 3. 7. 7: Thickness measurement - Single hull oil tankers, ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships - Bottom structure with substantial corrosion toTable 3. 7. 15: Thickness measurement - Double hull oil tankers - Transverse watertight and swash bulkhead structure in cargo tanks with substantial corrosion, as applicable. The survey will not be considered complete until these additional thickness measurements have been carried out.
p. Verification that any special arrangements made for bow or stern loading and unloading are in good condition.

2. 2. 33 For **chemical tankers**, in addition to the applicable requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 2.2 Annual Surveys 2.2.1 to Pt 1, Ch 3, 2.2 Annual Surveys 2.2.32, the following are to be dealt with, where applicable:

a. Examination of gauging devices, high level alarms and valves associated with overflow control.
b. Verification that any devices provided for measuring the temperature of the cargo and any associated alarms are satisfactory.
c. Examination of the cargo heating/cooling system sampling arrangements where fitted.
d. Verification that wheelhouse doors and windows, side scuttles and windows in superstructure and deckhouse ends facing the cargo area are in good condition.
e. Verification that pump discharge pressure gauges fitted outside the cargo pump rooms are satisfactory.
f. Verification that pumps, valves and pipelines are identified and distinctively marked.
g. Verification that the remote operation of the cargo pump room bilge system is satisfactory.
h. Verification that cargo pump room rescue arrangements are in order.
i. Verification that removable pipe lengths or other approved equipment necessary for cargo separation are available, and satisfactory.
j. Verification that the ventilation system including portable equipment, if any, of all spaces in the cargo area is operational.
k. Verification that arrangements are made for sufficient inert/padding/drying gas to be carried to compensate for normal losses and that means are provided for monitoring of ullage spaces.
l. Verification that arrangements are made for sufficient medium to be carried where drying agents are used on air inlets to cargo tanks.

m. Verification that suitable protective clothing is available for crew engaged in loading and discharging operations and that suitable storage is maintained.
n. Verification that the requisite safety equipment and associated breathing apparatus with requisite air supplies and emergency escape respiratory and eye protection, if required, are in good condition and are properly stowed.
o. Verification that medical first aid equipment including stretchers and oxygen resuscitation is in good condition and that satisfactory arrangements are made for antidotes for cargoes actually carried to be on board.
p. Verification that decontamination arrangements are operational.
q. Verification that the requisite gas detection instruments are on board and that satisfactory arrangements are made for the supply of any required vapour detection tubes.
r. Verification that the cargo sample stowage arrangements are in good condition.
s. Verification that, if applicable, the provisions made for chemicals which have special requirements listed in Chapter 17 of the *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquid Chemicals in Bulk* are in order.
t. For ballast tanks, in areas where substantial corrosion, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.5 Definitions, has been noted then additional measurements are to be carried out in accordance with Table 3. 8. 5: Thickness measurement - Single and double hull chemical tankers - Bottom, inner bottom and hopper structure with substantial corrosion, Table 3. 8. 6: Thickness measurement - Single and double hull chemical tankers - Deck structure with substantial corrosion, Table 3. 8. 7: Thickness measurement - Single and double hull chemical tankers - Side shell and longitudinal bulkheads with substantial corrosion and Table 3. 8. 8: Thickness measurement - Single and double hull chemical tankers - Transverse watertight bulkheads and swash bulkheads with substantial corrosion. The survey will not be considered complete until these additional thickness measurements have been carried out.

2. 2. 34 For **inert gas systems**, where fitted, the following are to be dealt with:

a. External examination of the condition of piping including vent piping above the upper deck in the cargo tank area and overboard discharges through the shell so far as practicable, together with components for signs of corrosion or gas leakage/effluent leakage.
b. Verification of the proper operation of both inert gas blowers.
c. Checking the scrubber room ventilation system.
d. Checking, so far as practicable, of the deck water seal for automatic filling and draining and checking for presence of water carry-over. Checking the operation of the non-return valve.
e. Testing of all remotely operated or automatically controlled valves including the flue gas isolating valve(s).
f. Checking the interlocking features of soot blowers.
g. Checking that the gas pressure regulating valve automatically closes when the inert gas blowers are secured.
h. Checking, so far as practicable, the following alarms and safety devices of the inert gas system using simulated conditions where necessary:
   i. high oxygen content of gas in the inert gas main;
   ii. low gas pressure in the inert gas main;
   iii. low pressure in the supply to the deck water seal;
   iv. high temperature of gas in the inert gas main;
   v. low water pressure to the scrubber;
   vi. accuracy of portable and fixed oxygen measuring equipment by means of calibration gas.

2. 2. 35 For **bulk carriers**, in addition to the applicable requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 2.2 Annual Surveys 2.2.1 to Pt 1, Ch 3, 2.2 Annual Surveys 2.2.31, the following are to be dealt with, where applicable:

a. Examination of cargo holds in accordance with Table 3. 2. 1: Bulk carriers - Annual Surveys is required.

b. Where substantial corrosion, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.5 Definitions, has been noted then additional measurements are to be carried out in accordance with Table 3. 6. 5: Thickness measurement - Single skin bulk carriers - Shell plating and stiffening, with substantial corrosion, Table 3. 6. 6: Thickness measurement - Single skin bulk carriers - Double bottom and hopper structure, with substantial corrosion, Table 3. 6. 7: Thickness measurement - Single and double skin bulk carriers - Transverse bulkheads in cargo holds, with substantial corrosion, Table 3. 6. 8: Thickness measurement - Single skin and double skin bulk carriers - Deck structure* with substantial corrosion, Table 3. 6. 9: Thickness measurement - Double skin bulk carriers - Double side space structure (including wing void spaces of ore carriers), with substantial corrosion and Table 3. 6. 10: Thickness measurement - Double skin bulk carriers - Double side space structure (including wing void spaces of ore carriers), with substantial corrosion. The survey will not be considered complete until these additional thickness measurements have been carried out.

For cargo holds and ballast tanks of bulk carriers built in accordance with the IACS Common Structural Rules (CSR), the annual thickness measurement may be dispensed with where a protective coating has been applied in accordance with the coating manufacturer's requirements and is maintained in good condition. Steel renewal requirements have been separately determined according to date of contract for construction for:

c. cargo hold hatch covers and coamings under IACS UR S21; and
d. corrugated transverse watertight hold bulkheads under IACS UR S18.

Where the gauged thickness is within the range $t_{net} + 0.5$ mm and $t_{net} + 1.0$ mm, a coating (applied in accordance with coating manufacturer's requirements) or annual gauging may be adopted as an alternative to steel renewal. *See* Pt 1, Ch 3, 5.6 Thickness measurement 5.6.7 and Pt 1, Ch 3, 6.7 Thickness measurement 6.7.5.

e. For ships fitted with water level detectors in cargo holds, ballast tanks forward of the collision bulkhead and any dry or void space which extends forward of the foremost cargo hold, an examination and a test, at random, of the water ingress detection systems and of their alarms is to be carried out.
f. For ships fitted with a means for draining and pumping ballast tanks forward of the collision bulkhead and the bilges of dry spaces, any part of which extends forward of the foremost cargo hold, an examination and a test of the draining and pumping systems, including their controls, is to be carried out.
g. Examination of bunker and vent piping systems, including ventilators.

2. 2. 36 For **general dry cargo ships**, in addition to the applicable requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 2.2 Annual Surveys 2.2.1, the following are required for ships over 10 years of age:

a. Overall survey of one forward and one after cargo hold and their associated 'tween deck spaces.
b. When considered necessary by the Surveyor, thickness measurement is to be carried out. If the results of thickness measurement indicate substantial corrosion, the extent of thickness measurement is to be in accordance with Pt 1, Ch 3, 5 Special Survey - General - Hull requirements, Table 3. 5. 6: Thickness measurement - Additional requirements in way of structure identified with substantial corrosion. The survey will not be considered complete until these additional thickness measurements have been carried out. Steel renewal requirements have been separately determined according to date of contract for construction for cargo hold hatch covers and coamings under IACS UR S21A. Where the gauged thickness is within the range $t_{net} + 0.5$ mm and $t_{net} + 1.0$ mm, a coating (applied in accordance with coating manufacturer's requirements) or annual gauging may be adopted as an alternative to steel renewal. *See* Pt 1, Ch 3, 5.6 Thickness measurement 5.6.7.

Table 3. 2. 1: Bulk carriers - Annual Surveys

Ships between 10 and 15 years old	Ships greater than 15 years old
a. Overall Survey of i. all cargo holds on single skin ships. ii. two selected cargo holds on double skin ships. a. Close-up Survey of at least 25 per cent of the cargo hold side shell frames, their lower end attachments and adjacent shell plating in the forward cargo hold on single skin ships b. Examination of all piping and penetrations in cargo holds including overboard piping. *See* Notes 1, 2, 3, and 4	a. Overall Survey of all cargo holds b. Close-up Survey of at least 25 per cent of the cargo hold side shell frames, their lower end attachments and adjacent shell plating in the forward cargo hold and one other selected cargo hold on single skin ships c. Examination of all piping and penetrations in cargo holds including overboard piping *See* Notes 1, 2, 3, and 4
Note The requirements in this Table apply to both single skin and double skin ships, unless stated otherwise.	
Note *1.* Close-up Survey is required within the area of the lower one-third of the length of the cargo hold side shell frames.	
Note *2.* Where the Survey reveals the need for remedial measures, the Survey is to be extended to include a Close-up Survey of all of the cargo hold side shell frames and adjacent shell plating of that cargo hold, as well as a Close-up Survey of sufficient extent of all remaining cargo holds.	
Note *3.* When considered necessary by the Surveyor, thickness measurement is to be carried out. If the results of thickness measurement indicate substantial corrosion, the extent of thickness measurement is to be in accordance with Section 6, Table 3. 6. 5: Thickness measurement - Single skin bulk carriers - Shell plating and stiffening, with substantial corrosion, Table 3. 6. 6: Thickness measurement - Single skin bulk carriers - Double bottom and hopper structure, with substantial corrosion, Table 3. 6. 7: Thickness measurement - Single and double skin bulk carriers - Transverse bulkheads in cargo holds, with substantial corrosion, Table 3. 6. 8: Thickness measurement - Single skin and double skin bulk carriers - Deck structure* with substantial corrosion, Table 3. 6. 9: Thickness measurement - Double skin bulk carriers - Double side space structure (including wing void spaces of ore carriers), with substantial corrosion and Table 3. 6. 10: Thickness measurement - Double skin bulk carriers - Double side space structure (including wing void spaces of ore carriers), with substantial corrosion as applicable. The survey will not be considered complete until these additional thickness measurements have been carried out.	
Note *4.* Where protective coatings are found in GOOD condition, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.5 Definitions, the extent of the Close-up Survey may be specially considered. When considered necessary by the Surveyor, thickness measurement is to be carried out. However, prior to any coating or recoating of cargo holds, scantlings are to be confirmed by thickness measurement with the Surveyor in attendance.	

2. 2. 37 For **general dry cargo ships**, in addition to the applicable requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 2.2 Annual Surveys 2.2.1, the following are required for ships over 15 years of age:

a. Overall survey of all cargo holds and 'tween deck spaces.
b. Close-up Survey of at least 25 per cent of shell frames, including their end attachments and adjacent shell plating in a forward lower cargo hold and one other selected lower cargo hold. Close-up Survey is to include the lower one third length of the shell frames.
c. Where the survey reveals the need for remedial measures, then the survey is to be extended to include the Close-up Survey of all shell frames and adjacent shell plating in those cargo holds

and associated tween deck spaces, as well as a Close-up Survey of sufficient extent of all remaining cargo holds and tween deck spaces.

d. Where the protective coatings in cargo holds are found in GOOD condition, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.5 Definitions, the extent of Close-up Survey may be specially considered.

e. When considered necessary by the Surveyor, thickness measurement is to be carried out. If the results of thickness measurement indicate substantial corrosion, the extent of thickness measurement is to be in accordance with Table 3. 5. 6: Thickness measurement - Additional requirements in way of structure identified with substantial corrosion in Pt 1, Ch 3, 5 Special Survey - General - Hull requirements. The survey will not be considered complete until these additional thickness measurements have been carried out. Steel renewal requirements have been separately determined according to date of contract for construction for cargo hold hatch covers and coamings under IACS UR S21A. Where the gauged thickness is within the range $t_{net} + 0.5$ mm and $t_{net} + 1.0$ mm, a coating (applied in accordance with coating manufacturer's requirements) or annual gauging may be adopted as an alternative to steel renewal. *See* Pt 1, Ch 3, 5.6 Thickness measurement 5.6.7.

2. 2. 38 For **ship-borne barges** where surveys are permitted in accordance with Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.5 Existing ships – Periodical Surveys 3.5.7, *see* Pt 1, Ch 3, 3 Intermediate Surveys - Hull and machinery requirements.

2. 2. 39 For **roll on-roll off ships** (i.e. those that utilise a loading ramp which enables wheeled vehicles to be rolled on and rolled off the ship), in addition to the requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 2.2 Annual Surveys 2.2.1, the requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 23 Bow, inner, side shell and stern doors on Ro-Ro ships are to be complied with, as applicable. For ships other than roll on-roll off ships, fitted with bow doors, inner doors, side doors and stern doors, in addition to the requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 2.2 Annual Surveys 2.2.1, the following are to be satisfactorily dealt with, as applicable:

a. Verification of the freedom of movement of doors, and operation of their power units.
b. Examination of the door structure and surrounding ship structure.
c. Examination of the door sealing arrangements including gaskets and retaining bars.
d. Examination of the door cleating, locking and securing arrangements.
e. Examination of the door hinging arrangements.
f. Verification of the local and/or remote control of the securing devices/cleats.
g. Examination of all equipment associated with the opening, closing and securing of the door, e.g. wire ropes, chains, sheaves, rollers, guides, shackles, etc.
h. Verification of the tightness of the doors.
i. Examination and testing of remote control panels and associated indicator lights, closed circuit television systems, water leakage indicator lights and alarm systems.
j. Examination of the required notice boards and verification of log entries.
k. Verification of the satisfactory testing of the bilge systems for the space between the inner and outer bow doors and of the vehicle deck.
l. Verification that the approved Operation and Maintenance Manual is on board and satisfactorily maintained.

2. 2. 40 For **navigational arrangements for periodic one man watch** and **integrated bridge systems**, Annual Surveys are to be carried out in accordance with the approved test schedule as required by Pt 7, Ch 9, 1.2 Information and plans required to be submitted 1.2.1 to ascertain that the equipment and arrangements required for the applicable class notation(s) are being maintained in good working order. At the time of the survey, relevant statutory certificates may be accepted as evidence of satisfactory operation.

2. 2. 41 For **liquefied gas ships**, *see also* Pt 1, Ch 3, 9 Ships for liquefied gases.

2. 2. 42 The Surveyor is to examine the fixed cargo securing fittings as far as necessary and practicable in order to be satisfied as to their general condition, *see* Pt 3, Ch 14, 10 Surveys.

2. 2. 43 Where the special features notation **CCSA** (certified container securing arrangements) is assigned, the Surveyor is to examine the securing arrangements including loose fittings so far as necessary and practicable in order to be satisfied as to their general condition, *see* Pt 3, Ch 14, 10 Surveys.

2. 2. 44 It is the responsibility of the onboard personnel to examine, maintain or renew cargo securing devices and maintain the appropriate certification. Records of inspections, maintenance and renewals, as well as the procedures for accepting, maintaining and repairing or rejecting cargo securing devices are to be kept onboard and made available to the attending Surveyor on request.

2. 2. 45 The Surveyor is to confirm that, for container ships which have the special features notation **BoxMax**, the onboard lashing program, together with its operation manual, is available on board, *see* Pt 3, Ch 4, 8 Loading guidance information. The operation of the program is to be verified in accordance with ACS's certification procedure.

2. 2. 46 For single hold general dry cargo ships, other than bulk carriers, fitted with water level detectors in the cargo hold, an examination and a test, at random, of the water ingress detection system and alarms are to be carried out.

2. 2. 47 For a fuel installation using **gases or other low-flashpoint fuels** *see also* Pt 1, Ch 3, 24.3 Annual Surveys - General Requirements for Fuel Systems to Pt 1, Ch 3, 24.6 Annual Survey - Fuel Bunkering System.

2. 2. 48 Where a Ballast Water Treatment System (BWTS) is installed, a general examination is to be carried out to ascertain that the BWTS is being maintained in good working order. This is to include examination and testing of safety/protective devices, the fixed fire detection and alarm system(s) and, where fitted, the gas detection and alarm system(s) and associated BWTS emergency shutdown devices. The ventilation arrangements of the space in which Ballast Water Treatment System (BWTS) is fitted are to be examined under operating conditions as far as practicable. At the time of the Annual Survey the operational and maintenance records are to be made available to the attending Surveyor to verify the satisfactory operation of the BWTS and associated safety devices/systems.

2. 2. 49 Where emissions abatement plant for combustion machinery is installed, the plant, supporting structure and associated systems are to be generally examined. This is to include the examination and testing of alarms, controls and safeguards and where fitted:

- isolation, by-pass, back pressure, backflow and carryover prevention arrangements;
- gas detection and alarm system(s);
- ventilation arrangements of the space in which the emissions abatement plant is fitted; and
- personal protective equipment.

Operational and maintenance records are to be made available to the attending Surveyor to verify satisfactory operation of the emissions abatement plant and associated safety devices/systems.

PART

1

CHAPTER 3 **Periodical Survey Regulations**

SECTION 3 **Intermediate Surveys - Hull and machinery requirements**

3. 1 General

3. 1. 1 Intermediate Surveys are to be held concurrently with statutory annual or other relevant statutory surveys wherever practicable.

3. 2 Review of documentation on board

3. 2. 1 Prior to survey, the Surveyor is to examine the completeness of the documentation onboard as detailed in Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.10 Documentation, and its contents as a basis for the survey.

3. 2. 2 For CSR oil tankers and CSR bulk carriers subject to *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea Chapter II-1 - Construction - Structure, subdivision and stability, machinery and electrical installations Part A-1 - Structure of ships Regulation 3-10 – Goal-based ship construction standards for bulk carriers and oil tankers*, the Surveyor is to examine the information held in the Goal Based Standard (GBS) Ship Construction File (SCF) stored on board the ship. On completion of the survey, in the case of any major event, including, but not limited to, substantial repair, conversion or any modification to the ship structure, the Surveyor is to verify that the information stored on board of the ship has been updated, and is to verify any addition and/or renewal of materials used for the construction of the hull structure are documented within the GBS SCF list of materials.

3. 2. 3 For CSR oil tankers and CSR bulk carriers subject to *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea Chapter II-1 - Construction - Structure, subdivision and stability, machinery and electrical installations Part A-1 - Structure of ships Regulation 3-10 – Goal-based ship construction standards for bulk carriers and oil tankers*, for the GBS SCF Supplement Ashore, the Surveyor is to verify the information stored in the Archive Centre by examining the list of information included in the Supplement Ashore. In addition, the Surveyor is to confirm that the service contract with the Archive Centre remains valid. In the case of any major event, including, but not limited to, substantial repair, conversion or modification to the ship's structure, the Surveyor is to verify that the information stored in the Archive Centre has been updated by examining the list of updated information included in the Supplement Ashore.

3. 3 Intermediate Surveys

3. 3. 1 The requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 2 Annual Surveys - Hull and machinery requirements are to be complied with so far as applicable.

3. 3. 2 A general examination of salt water ballast tanks is to be carried out as required by Pt 1, Ch 3, 3.3 Intermediate Surveys 3.3.6 and Pt 1, Ch 3, 3.3 Intermediate Surveys 3.3.7. For ships other than oil tankers and chemical tankers, if such examinations reveal no visible structural defects then the

examination may be limited to a verification that the protective coating remains in GOOD or FAIR condition as defined in Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.5 Definitions.

3. 3. 3 In application of Pt 1, Ch 3, 3.3 Intermediate Surveys 3.3.11, Pt 1, Ch 3, 3.3 Intermediate Surveys 3.3.13 and Pt 1, Ch 3, 3.3 Intermediate Surveys 3.3.15 respectively for **oil tankers** (including ore/oil and ore/bulk/oil ships), **chemical tankers** and **bulk carriers** over 15 years of age a survey in dry-dock is to be a part of the Intermediate Survey. The overall and close-up surveys and thickness measurements, as applicable, of the lower portions of cargo tanks/holds and water ballast tanks are to be surveyed in accordance with the applicable requirements for Intermediate Surveys, if not already surveyed.

3. 3. 4 For **oil tankers** (including ore/oil and ore/bulk/oil ships) and **chemical tankers**, the condition of the corrosion prevention system identified during the Survey may result in the salt-water ballast tanks being subject to further examination at Annual Surveys, in accordance with Pt 1, Ch 3, 2.2 Annual Surveys 2.2.30.

3. 3. 5 For salt-water ballast tanks on those ships not listed in Pt 1, Ch 3, 3.3 Intermediate Surveys 3.3.4, the condition of the corrosion prevention system identified during the Survey may result in the tanks being subject to further examination at Annual Surveys, in accordance with Pt 1, Ch 3, 2.2 Annual Surveys 2.2.30. For double bottom ballast tanks, the examination at Annual Surveys will be at the discretion of the Surveyor.

3. 3. 6 For ships over 5 years of age and up to 10 years of age, representative salt-water ballast tanks are to be examined. In addition to this, the following requirements are applicable:

a. For **general dry cargo ships**, an Overall Survey of representative salt-water ballast tanks, as selected by the Surveyor is to be carried out.
b. For **bulk carriers**, an Overall Survey of representative salt-water ballast tanks, as selected by the Surveyor is to be carried out. The selected tanks are to include the fore peak tank, aft peak tank and a number of other tanks, taking into account the total number and type of ballast tanks.
c. For **single hull oil tankers** (including ore/oil and ore/bulk/oil ships), an examination of all salt-water ballast tanks is to be carried out. Where considered necessary by the Surveyor, thickness measurement and testing are to be carried out to ensure the structural integrity remains effective.
d. For **double hull oil tankers** and **chemical tankers**, an Overall Survey of representative salt-water ballast tanks, as selected by the Surveyor is to be carried out. If the survey reveals no visible defects, the examination may be limited to a verification that the hard protective coating remains in GOOD condition, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.5 Definitions.
e. Where a hard protective coating is found to be in POOR condition, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.5 Definitions, where a soft or semi-hard coating has been applied, where a protective coating was not applied from the time of construction or other defects are found, the survey is to be extended to other ballast tanks of the same type.

3. 3. 7 For all ships over 10 years of age, the following are required:

a. All salt-water ballast tanks are to be examined.
b. The anchors are to be partially lowered and raised using the windlass.

3. 3. 8 The Surveyor is to carry out an examination and thickness measurement of structure identified at the previous Special Survey as having substantial corrosion, *see also* Pt 1, Ch 3, 5 Special Survey - General - Hull requirements, Pt 1, Ch 3, 6 Special Survey - Bulk carriers - Hull requirements, Pt 1, Ch 3, 7 Special Survey - Oil tankers (including ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships) - Hull requirements and Pt 1, Ch 3, 8 Special Survey - Chemical Tankers - Hull requirements. In addition, for double hull oil tankers built in accordance with the IACS Common Structural Rules (CSR), the identified substantial corrosion areas are required to be examined and additional thickness measurements are to be carried out in accordance with Table 3. 7. 11: Thickness measurement - Double hull oil tankers - Bottom, inner bottom and hopper structure with substantial corrosion to

Table 3. 7. 15: Thickness measurement - Double hull oil tankers - Transverse watertight and swash bulkhead structure in cargo tanks with substantial corrosion.

3. 3. 9 For all ships, the electrical generating sets are to be examined under working conditions to verify compliance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 2.2 Number and rating of generators and converting equipment.

3. 3. 10 In addition to the foregoing, in the case of all **oil tankers** (including ore/oil and ore/bulk/oil ships) the following are to be dealt with where applicable:

a. An examination of cargo, crude oil washing, bunker, ballast, steam and vent piping on the weather decks, as well as vent masts and headers. If upon examination there is any doubt as to the condition of the piping, the piping may be required to be pressure tested, gauged, or both.

b. A general examination within the zones and spaces deemed as hazardous, such as cargo pump rooms and spaces adjacent to and zones above cargo tanks, for defective and non-certified safe-type electrical equipment, improperly installed, defective and dead-end wiring. An electrical insulation resistance test of the circuits terminating in, or passing through, the hazardous zones and spaces is to be carried out. If the ship is not in a gas free condition the results of previously recorded test readings may be accepted.

3. 3. 11 For **oil tankers** (including ore/oil and ore/bulk/oil ships), in addition to Pt 1, Ch 3, 3.3 Intermediate Surveys 3.3.10, the following are required for ships over 10 years of age:

a. A survey to the same extent as the previous Special Survey (applicable only to ESP surveys, *see* Pt 1, Ch 3, 7.1 General 7.1.2).

b. Pressure testing of cargo and ballast tanks and the requirements for the longitudinal strength evaluation (*see* Pt 1, Ch 3, 7.7 Thickness measurement 7.7.3) are to be carried out if deemed necessary by the attending Surveyor.

3. 3. 12 For **chemical tankers**, in addition to the applicable requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 3.3 Intermediate Surveys 3.3.1 to Pt 1, Ch 3, 3.3 Intermediate Surveys 3.3.9 the following are to be dealt with where applicable:

a. Examination of vent line drainage arrangements.

b. Verification that the cargo heating/cooling system is in good condition.

c. Verification that the ship's cargo hoses are approved and in good condition.

d. Verification that where applicable, pipelines and independent cargo tanks are electrically bonded to the hull.

e. An examination of cargo, cargo washing, bunker, ballast, steam and vent piping on the weather decks, as well as vent masts and headers. If upon examination there is any doubt as to the condition of the piping, the piping may require to be pressure tested, gauged or both.

f. A General Examination within the zones and spaces deemed as hazardous, such as cargo pump rooms and spaces adjacent to and zones above cargo tanks, for defective and non-certified safe-type electrical equipment, improperly installed, defective and dead-end wiring. An electrical insulation resistance test of the circuits terminating in, or passing through, the hazardous zones and spaces is to be carried out. If the ship is not in a gas free condition the results of previously recorded test readings may be accepted.

3. 3. 13 For **chemical tankers**, in addition to Pt 1, Ch 3, 3.3 Intermediate Surveys 3.3.12, the following are required for ships over 10 years of age:

a. A survey to the same extent as the previous Special Survey (applicable only to ESP surveys, *see* Pt 1, Ch 3, 8.1 General 8.1.2).

b. Pressure testing of cargo and ballast tanks is to be carried out if deemed necessary by the attending Surveyor.

3. 3. 14 For **bulk carriers**, in addition to the applicable requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 3.3 Intermediate Surveys 3.3.1 to Pt 1, Ch 3, 3.3 Intermediate Surveys 3.3.9, the following are to be dealt with on ships over five years of age:

a. Overall Survey, Close-up Survey and thickness measurements of cargo holds in accordance with Table 3. 3. 1: Bulk carriers - Intermediate Surveys.
b. Steel renewal requirements have been separately determined according to date of contract for construction for:
i. cargo hold hatch covers and coamings under IACS UR S21; and
ii. corrugated transverse watertight hold bulkheads under IACS UR S18.
Where the gauged thickness is within the range t_{net} + 0.5 mm and t_{net} + 1.0 mm, a coating (applied in accordance with coating manufacturer's requirements) or annual gauging may be adopted as an alternative to steel renewal. *See* Pt 1, Ch 3, 5.6 Thickness measurement 5.6.7 and Pt 1, Ch 3, 6.7 Thickness measurement 6.7.5.
c. For bulk carriers built in accordance with the IACS Common Structural Rules (CSR), the areas identified with substantial corrosion in cargo holds and ballast tanks may be either:
i. protected by coating applied in accordance with the coating manufacturer's requirements and examined at Annual Surveys to confirm the coating in way is still in GOOD condition, or alternatively;
ii. subject to thickness measurement at Annual Surveys.

3. 3. 15 For **bulk carriers,** in addition to the applicable requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 3.3 Intermediate Surveys 3.3.1 to Pt 1, Ch 3, 3.3 Intermediate Surveys 3.3.9, the following is required for ships over 10 years of age:
a. A survey to the same extent as the previous special Survey (applicable to ESP surveys, *see* Pt 1, Ch 3, 6.1 General 6.1.2).
b. Pressure testing of all tanks and the internal examination of fuel oil tanks are to be carried out if deemed necessary by the Surveyor.

3. 3. 16 For ships over 10 years old of age (other than dry cargo ships, general dry cargo ships, ships assigned **ESP** Notation and ships for liquefied gases), in addition to the applicable requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 3.3 Intermediate Surveys 3.3.1 to Pt 1, Ch 3, 3.3 Intermediate Surveys 3.3.8, an Overall Survey of selected cargo spaces is to be carried out.

3. 3. 17 For **dry cargo ships** over 15 years old (other than bulk carriers and general dry cargo ships), in addition to the applicable requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 3.3 Intermediate Surveys 3.3.1 to Pt 1, Ch 3, 3.3 Intermediate Surveys 3.3.8, an Overall Survey of selected cargo holds is to be carried out.

3. 3. 18 For **general dry cargo ships**, in addition to the applicable requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 3.3 Intermediate Surveys 3.3.1 to Pt 1, Ch 3, 3.3 Intermediate Surveys 3.3.9, the following is required for ships over 5 years of age:
- An overall survey of one forward and one after cargo hold and their associated 'tween deck spaces.

3. 3. 19 For **general dry cargo ships**, in addition to the applicable requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 3.3 Intermediate Surveys 3.3.1, the following are required for ships over 10 years of age:
a. An overall survey of all cargo holds and 'tween deck spaces.
b. Where considered necessary by the Surveyor, thickness measurement is to be carried out. If the results of thickness measurement indicate substantial corrosion, the extent of thickness measurement is to be in accordance with Table 3. 5. 6: Thickness measurement - Additional requirements in way of structure identified with substantial corrosion in Section 5. The survey will not be considered complete until these additional thickness measurements have been carried out. Steel renewal requirements have been separately determined according to date of contract for construction for cargo hold hatch covers and coamings under IACS UR S21A. Where the gauged thickness is within the range t_{net} + 0.5 mm and t_{net} + 1.0 mm, a coating (applied in accordance with coating manufacturer's requirements) or annual gauging may be adopted as an alternative to steel renewal. *See* Pt 1, Ch 3, 5.6 Thickness measurement 5.6.7.

3. 3. 20 For **general dry cargo ships**, in addition to the applicable requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 3.3 Intermediate Surveys 3.3.1, the following are required for ships over 15 years of age:

a. A survey to the same extent as the previous special Survey (applicable only to surveys of the hull structure and piping systems in way of the cargo holds, cofferdams, pipe tunnels and void spaces within the cargo area and all salt water ballast tanks).

b. Tank testing, survey of automatic air pipe heads and internal examination of fuel oil, lubricating oil and fresh water tanks are to be carried out if deemed necessary by the Surveyor.

3. 3. 21 For **ship-borne barges**, where Intermediate Surveys are permitted as an alternative to Annual Surveys and Bottom Surveys, all the hatch covers are to be hose tested at every survey. The external surfaces of the barges are to be surveyed at these surveys.

3. 3. 22 For **liquefied gas ships**, *see* Pt 1, Ch 3, 9 Ships for liquefied gases.

3. 3. 23 For a fuel installation using **gases or other low-flashpoint fuels** *see also* Pt 1, Ch 3, 24.7 Intermediate Surveys.

Table 3. 3. 1: Bulk carriers - Intermediate Surveys

Ships between 5 and 10 years old	Ships between 10 and 15 years old	Ships greater than 15 years old
a. Overall Survey of all cargo holds, *see* Notes 1, 2, 3 and 4 b. Close-up Survey to establish the condition of at least 25 per cent of the cargo hold side shell frames including their upper and lower end attachments, adjacent shell plating and the transverse bulkheads in the forward cargo hold and one other selected cargo hold on single skin ships, *see* Notes 1, 3 and 4.	A survey to the same extent as the previous Special Survey (applicable only to ESP surveys, *see* Pt 1, Ch 3, 6.1 General 6.1.2), *see* Note 3.	A survey to the same extent as the previous Special Survey (applicable only to ESP surveys, *see* Pt 1, Ch 3, 6.1 General 6.1.2), *see* Note 3.
Note The requirements in this Table apply to both single skin and double skin ships, unless stated otherwise.		
Note *1.* For single skin ships, where considered necessary by the Surveyor as a result of the Overall and Close-up Survey, the Survey is to be extended to include a Close-up Survey of all of the side shell frames and adjacent shell plating of that cargo hold, as well as a Close-up Survey of sufficient extent of all remaining cargo holds.		
Note *2.* For double skin ships, where considered necessary by the Surveyor as a result of the Overall Survey, the Survey is to be extended to include a Close-up Survey of those areas of structure in cargo holds selected by the Surveyor.		
Note *3.* Thickness measurement is to be carried out of sufficient extent to determine the level of corrosion of those areas subject to Close-up Survey. If the results of thickness measurement indicate substantial corrosion, the extent of thickness measurement is to be in accordance with Section 6, Table 3. 6. 5: Thickness measurement - Single skin bulk carriers - Shell plating and stiffening, with substantial corrosion to Table 3. 6. 10: Thickness measurement - Double skin bulk carriers - Double side space structure (including wing void spaces of ore carriers), with substantial corrosion, as applicable. The survey will not be considered complete until these additional thickness measurements have been carried out.		
Note *4.* For ships between 5 and 10 years old where hard protective coatings in cargo holds are found to be in GOOD condition, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.5 Definitions, the extent of Close-up Survey and thickness measurement may be specially considered but not dispensed with in its entirety. Prior to any coating or recoating of cargo holds, scantlings are to be confirmed by thickness measurement with the Surveyor in attendance.		

PART

1

CHAPTER 3 **Periodical Survey Regulations**

SECTION 4 **Bottom Surveys – In Dry-Dock and In-Water - Hull and machinery requirements**

4. 1 General

4. 1. 1 At Bottom Surveys the Surveyor is to examine the ship and machinery, so far as necessary and practicable, in order to be satisfied as to the general condition.

4. 2 Bottom Surveys in Dry-Dock

4. 2. 1 Where a ship is in dry-dock or on a slipway it is to be placed on blocks of sufficient height, and proper staging is to be erected as may be necessary, for the examination of the shell including bottom and bow plating, keel, stern, sternframe and rudder.

4. 2. 2 The shell plating is to be examined for excessive corrosion, deterioration due to chafing or contact with the ground and for undue unfairness or buckling. Special attention is to be given to the connection between the bilge strakes and the bilge keels.

4. 2. 3 Visible parts of the rudder, rudder pintles, rudder stocks and couplings and stern frame are to be examined. The pintles are to be examined either by removal of the inspection plates, or if considered necessary by the Surveyor, the rudder is to be lifted to enable examination. The clearances in the rudder bearings are to be measured. Where applicable, pressure testing of the rudder may be required if deemed necessary by the Surveyor.

4. 2. 4 The sea chests, sea connections, scuppers and sanitary discharges, their attachments to the hull and the gratings at the sea inlets are to be examined.

4. 2. 5 Visible parts of the propeller(s) and sternbush(es) are to be examined. The clearance in the sternbush and the efficiency of the oil gland, if fitted, are to be ascertained and recorded. For controllable pitch propellers, the Surveyor is to be satisfied with the fastenings and tightness of hub and blade sealing.

4. 2. 6 Visible parts of side thrusters are to be examined. Other propulsion systems which also have manoeuvring characteristics (such as directional propellers, vertical axis propellers, water jet units) are to be examined externally with focus on the condition of gear housing, propeller blades, bolt locking and other fastening arrangements. Sealing arrangements of propeller blades, propeller shaft and steering column are to be verified.

4. 2. 7 When chain cables are ranged, the anchors and cables are to be examined by the Surveyor, *see also* Pt 1, Ch 3, 5.3 Examination and testing 5.3.15, Pt 1, Ch 3, 5.3 Examination and testing 5.3.16, Pt 1, Ch 3, 5.3 Examination and testing 5.3.18 and Table 3. 5. 1: Survey preparation.

4. 2. 8 Where the anti-fouling system is changed completely, or partial repair is carried out affecting 25 per cent or more of the antifouling system, the coating specification and anti-fouling system is to be examined by the Surveyor in accordance with the *AFS - International Convention on the*

Control of Harmful Anti-Fouling Systems on Ships, 2001 (AFS 2001) and Ch 15 Corrosion Prevention of the Rules for Materials.

4. 2. 9 To maintain an ***IWS** notation, at completion of each dry-docking the condition of the high resistance paint is to be confirmed and, as applicable, satisfactory access arrangements to take the sternbush clearance and rudder pintle/bearing clearances are to be verified.

4. 3 In-Water Surveys

4. 3. 1 The Committee will accept an In-Water Survey at alternate Bottom Surveys on ships other than those covered in Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.5 Existing ships – Periodical Surveys 3.5.3 and where an ***IWS** notation is assigned, *see* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.11.

4. 3. 2 The Committee may accept an In-Water Survey at alternate Bottom Surveys on ships where suitable protection is applied to the underwater portion of the hull. If requested, an ***IWS** notation may be assigned on satisfactory completion of the Survey, provided that the applicable requirements of ACS's Rules and Regulations are complied with, *see also* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.11.

4. 3. 3 The In-Water Survey is to provide the information normally obtained from the Bottom Survey in dry-dock. However, for oil lubricated sternbush arrangements, the clearance in the sternbush is not required to be ascertained subject to the Surveyor confirming satisfactory operating history and condition data records (lubricating oil analysis, bearing temperature, lubricating oil consumption) and verifying satisfactory operation of the screwshaft.

4. 3. 4 When there is no access, special consideration shall be given to ascertaining rudder bearing clearances and sternbush clearances of water lubricated bearings based on a review of the operating history, on board testing and stern bearing condition data. These considerations are to be included in the proposals for In-Water Surveys which are to be submitted in advance of the survey being required, so that satisfactory arrangements can be agreed with ACS.

4. 3. 5 The In-Water Survey is to be carried out at an agreed geographical location under the surveillance of a Surveyor to ACS, with the ship at a suitable draught in sheltered waters and with weak tidal streams and currents. The in-water visibility and the cleanliness of the hull below the waterline is to be clear enough to permit a meaningful examination which allows the Surveyor and diver to determine the condition of the plating, appendages and the welding. The Surveyor is to be satisfied with the methods of orientation of the divers on the plating, which should make use where necessary of permanent markings on the plating at selected points.

4. 3. 6 Prior to commencing the In-Water Survey, the equipment and procedures for both observing and reporting the survey are to be agreed between the Owners, the Surveyor and the diving firm.

4. 3. 7 The In-Water Survey is to be carried out by a qualified diver employed by a firm approved by ACS. In addition, for certain aspects of the In-Water Survey, consideration may be given to the use of a Remotely Operated Vehicle (ROV) operated by the ACS approved firm.

4. 3. 8 The Surveyor is to be satisfied that the method of pictorial presentation is satisfactory. There is to be good two-way communication between the Surveyor and the diver.

4. 3. 9 If the In-Water Survey reveals damage or deterioration that requires early attention, the Surveyor may require that the ship be dry-docked in order that a fuller survey can be undertaken and the necessary work carried out.

PART

1

CHAPTER **3** **Periodical Survey Regulations**

SECTION **5** **Special Survey - General - Hull requirements**

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 The survey is to be of sufficient extent to ensure that the hull and related piping are in satisfactory condition and are fit for the intended purpose for the new period of class of five years to be assigned, subject to proper maintenance and operation and to periodical surveys being carried out as required by the Regulations.

5. 1. 2 The requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 2 Annual Surveys - Hull and machinery requirements are to be complied with as applicable for all ships.

5. 1. 3 Additional requirements for **general dry cargo ships** are given in this Section; **dry bulk cargo ships bulk carriers** in Pt 1, Ch 3, 6 Special Survey - Bulk carriers - Hull requirements; **oil tankers** (including ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships) in Pt 1, Ch 3, 7 Special Survey - Oil tankers (including ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships) - Hull requirements; **chemical tankers** in Pt 1, Ch 3, 8 Special Survey - Chemical Tankers - Hull requirements; **ships for liquefied gases** in Pt 1, Ch 3, 9 Ships for liquefied gases.

5. 1. 4 A Bottom Survey in accordance with the requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 4 Bottom Surveys – In Dry-Dock and In-Water - Hull and machinery requirements is to be carried out as part of the Special Survey.

5. 1. 5 During the Bottom Survey, for general dry cargo ships, oil tankers (including ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships), chemical tankers and bulk carriers, the overall and close-up surveys and thickness measurements, as applicable, of the lower portions of the cargo spaces and ballast tanks are to be carried out as required, if not already surveyed.

5. 1. 6 For ships assigned the notation ‘laid-up’, an Underwater Examination (UWE) and general examination of hull and machinery is to be carried out in lieu of the normal Special Survey requirements.

5. 1. 7 For roll on-roll off ships (i.e. those fitted with a loading ramp which enables wheeled vehicles to be rolled on and rolled off the ship), in addition to the requirements of this Section, the requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 23 Bow, inner, side shell and stern doors on Ro-Ro ships are to be complied with, as applicable.

5. 2 Preparation

5. 2. 1 The ship is to be prepared for Overall Survey in accordance with the requirements of Table 3. 5. 1: Survey preparation. The preparation should be of sufficient extent to facilitate an examination to ascertain any significant corrosion, deformation, fractures, damages and other structural deterioration.

Table 3. 5. 1: Survey preparation

Special Survey I (Ships 5 years old)	Special Survey II (Ships 10 years old)	Special Survey III (Ships 15 years old)
Special Survey I (Ships 5 years old)	**Special Survey II (Ships 10 years old)**	**Special Survey III (Ships 15 years old)**
(1) The holds, 'tween decks, peaks, deep tanks, engine and boiler spaces, and other spaces, are to be cleared and cleaned as necessary, and the bilges and limbers all fore and aft are to be cleaned and prepared for examination. Platform plates in engine and boiler spaces are to be lifted as may be necessary for the examination of the structure below. Where necessary, close and spar ceiling, lining and pipe casings are to be removed for examination of the structure	In addition to the requirements for Special Survey I, the following are to be complied with: (1) A sufficient amount of ceiling in the holds and other spaces is to be removed from the bilges and inner bottom to enable the condition of the structure in the bilges, the inner bottom plating, pillar feet, and the bottom plating of bulkheads and tunnel sides to be examined. If the Surveyor deems it necessary, the whole of the ceiling is to be removed	In addition to the requirements for Special Survey II the following are to be complied with: (1) Ceiling in holds is to be removed in order to ascertain that the steelwork is in good condition, free from rust and coated. If the Surveyor is satisfied, after removal of portions of the ceiling then it need not all be removed
(2) In ships having a single bottom, a sufficient amount of close ceiling is to be lifted all fore and aft on each side from the bottom and bilges to permit the structure below to be examined	(2) In ships having a single bottom, the limber boards and ceiling equal to not less than three strakes, all fore and aft on each side are to be removed, one such strake being taken from the bilges. Where the ceiling is fitted in hatches, the whole of the hatches and at least one strake of ceiling in the bilges are to be removed. If the Surveyor deems it necessary the whole of the ceiling and limber boards are to be removed	(2) Portions of wood sheathing, or other covering, on steel decks are to be removed, as considered necessary by the Surveyor, in order to ascertain the condition of the plating
(3) In ships having a double bottom, a sufficient amount of ceiling is to be removed from the bilges and inner bottom to enable the condition of the plating to be ascertained. If it is found that the plating is clean and in good condition, and free from rust, the removal of the remainder of ceiling may be dispensed with. The Surveyor may waive the removal of heavy reinforced compositions if there is no evidence of leakages, cracking or other faults in the composition	(3) The chain locker is to be cleaned internally. The chain cables are to be ranged for inspection. The anchors are to be cleaned and placed in an accessible position for inspection	All subsequent Special Surveys In addition to the requirements for Special Survey III the following are to be complied with:

(4) Casings, ceilings or linings and loose insulation, where fitted, are to be removed for examination of plating and framing, as required by the Surveyor. Compositions on plating are to be examined and sounded, but need not be disturbed if found to be adhering satisfactorily to the plating. Where structural defects are identified, any applied composition is to be locally removed to enable further examination of the plating and adjacent frames, as required by the Surveyor (5) The steelwork is to be exposed and cleaned and rust removed as may be required for its proper examination by the Surveyor (6) All tanks are to be cleaned as necessary to permit examination, where this is required by Table 3. 5. 2: Tank internal examination requirements (7) Casings or covers of air, sounding, steam and other pipes, spar ceiling and lining in way of the side scuttles are to be removed, as required by the Surveyor (8) The masts and the sail/wind propulsion system are to be unshipped for survey. The whole of the standing rigging, including rigging screws, bolts, pins and fittings, is to be fully or partly disassembled as considered necessary by the Surveyor. Note This requirement may be waived at alternate Special Surveys or when the construction does not allow disassembly, provided that the masts and rigging are thoroughly examined *in situ*.		(1) In refrigerated cargo spaces, sufficient insulation is to be removed in each of the chambers to enable the Surveyor to be satisfied as to the condition of the steel structure, and to enable the thickness of the structure to be ascertained as required by Pt 1, Ch 3, 5.6 Thickness measurement

Note 'unshipped' means removed from its fixed or regular position and laid down, providing access for Close-up Survey.

'disassembled' means to dismantle and lay out all lines, tackles and other removable parts to the extent necessary to establish the condition of the rigging components.

'disassembled' means to dismantle and lay out all lines, tackles and other removable parts to the extent necessary to establish the condition of the rigging components.

5. 3 Examination and testing

5. 3. 1 All spaces within the hull and superstructure are to be examined unless specified otherwise by this Section.

5. 3. 2 At Special Survey III and subsequent special surveys, structural downflooding ducts and structural ventilation ducts are to be internally examined.

5. 3. 3 The requirements for tank internal examination are given in Table 3. 5. 2: Tank internal examination requirements.

Table 3. 5. 2: Tank internal examination requirements

Tank		Special Survey I (Ships 5 years old)	Special Survey II (Ships 10 years old)	Special Survey III (Ships 15 years old)	Special Survey IV and subsequent (Ships 20 years old and over)
(1)	Peaks	All tanks	All tanks	All tanks	All tanks
(2)	Salt water ballast, *see* Note 5	All tanks	All tanks	All tanks	All tanks
(3)	Lubricating oil	None	None	None	One tank
(4)	Fresh water	None	One tank	All tanks	All tanks
(5)	Fuel oil				
	(i) In way of engine room	None	None	One tank	One tank
	(ii) In way of cargo area	None	One tank	Two tanks, *see* Note 3	50% of tanks - *see* Notes 3 and 4.
	(iii) If no tanks in cargo length area, additional fuel tank(s) outside of engine room (if fitted)	None	One tank	One tank	Two tanks

Note *1.* The above requirements apply to integral tanks only.

Note *2.* Where a selected number of tanks are examined, then different tanks are to be examined at each Special Survey on a rotational basis.

Note *3.* To include one deep tank, if any.

Note *4.* Where 50% of tanks are to be examined, a minimum of two tanks are required to be examined depending upon the overall number of tanks.

Note *5.* The requirements for Salt-water ballast tanks are applicable to Bilge water, Sewage and Grey water tanks

.

5. 3. 4 For **oil tankers** (including ore/oil and ore/bulk/oil ships) and **chemical tankers**, the condition of the corrosion prevention system, where provided, is to be examined in cargo tanks and salt-water ballast tanks. When considered necessary by the Surveyor, thickness measurements are to be carried out. The condition of the corrosion prevention system identified during the Survey may result in the salt-water ballast tanks being subject to further examination at Annual Surveys, in accordance with Pt 1, Ch 3, 2.2 Annual Surveys 2.2.30.

5. 3. 5 For those ships not listed in Pt 1, Ch 3, 5.3 Examination and testing 5.3.4, the condition of the corrosion prevention system, where provided, in salt-water ballast tanks is to be examined. When

considered necessary by the Surveyor, thickness measurements are to be carried out. The condition of the corrosion prevention system identified during the Survey may result in the salt-water ballast tanks being subject to further examination at Annual Surveys, in accordance with Pt 1, Ch 3, 2.2 Annual Surveys 2.2.30. For double bottom ballast tanks, the examination at Annual Surveys will be at the discretion of the Surveyor.

5. 3. 6 Double bottom, deep, ballast, peak and other tanks, including cargo holds assigned also for the carriage of salt water ballast, are to be tested with a head of liquid to the top of air pipes or to near the top of hatches for ballast/cargo holds. Boundaries of fuel oil, lubricating oil and fresh water tanks are to be tested with a head of liquid to the highest point that liquid will rise to under service conditions. Tank testing of fuel oil, lubricating oil and fresh water tanks may be specially considered based upon a satisfactory external examination of the tank boundaries, and a confirmation from the Master stating that the pressure testing has been carried out according to the requirements with satisfactory results. Surveyors may extend the testing as deemed necessary. For **oil tankers** (including ore/oil and ore/bulk/oil ships) and **chemical tankers**, the minimum requirements for cargo tank testing are to be in accordance with Sections Pt 1, Ch 3, 7.5 Testing and Pt 1, Ch 3, 8.5 Testing, as applicable.

5. 3. 7 Where repairs are effected to the shell plating or bulkheads, any tanks in way are to be tested to the Surveyor's satisfaction on completion of these repairs.

5. 3. 8 On ship-borne barges, in lieu of water testing, tanks and cofferdams may be air tested.

5. 3. 9 In cases where the inner surface of the bottom plating is covered with cement, asphalt, or other composition, the removal of this covering may be dispensed with, provided that it is inspected, tested by beating or chipping, and found sound and adhering satisfactorily to the steel.

5. 3. 10 All decks, casings and superstructures are to be examined.

5. 3. 11 Wood decks or sheathing are to be examined. If decay or rot is found or the wood is excessively worn, the wood is to be renewed. When a wood deck, laid on stringers and ties, has worn by 15 mm or more, it is to be renewed. Attention is to be given to the condition of the plating under wood decks, sheathing or other deck covering. If it is found that such coverings are broken, or are not adhering closely to the plating, sections are to be removed as necessary to ascertain the condition of the plating, *see also* Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.2 Surveys for damage or alterations 1.2.1.

5. 3. 12 Mechanically-operated hatch covers are to be tested to confirm satisfactory operation including stowage; and securing in open condition; proper fit and efficiency of sealing in closed conditions; operational testing of hydraulic and power components, wires, chains and link drives. The effectiveness of sealing arrangements of all hatch covers is to be checked by carrying out hose testing or equivalent.

5. 3. 13 Rigs used for propulsion using wind force, associated structure and equipment, where fitted, are to be examined, *see* Table 3. 5. 1: Survey preparation. The examination may be undertaken by a Surveyor and/or by a firm approved by ACS.

5. 3. 14 The masts and standing rigging are to be examined.

5. 3. 15 The anchors are to be examined. If the chain cables are ranged they are to be examined. If any length of chain cable is found to be reduced in mean diameter at its most worn part by 12 per cent or more from its nominal diameter, it is to be renewed. The windlass is to be examined. For equipment forming part of a positional mooring system, *see* Pt 1, Ch 3, 5.3 Examination and testing 5.3.18.

5. 3. 16 The chain cables are to be ranged and examined on all ships over five years old.

5. 3. 17 The Surveyor is to be satisfied that there are suitable mooring ropes when these are a Rule requirement.

5. 3. 18 On ships fitted with positional mooring equipment in accordance with Pt 7, Ch 8 Positional Mooring and Thruster-Assisted Positional Mooring Systems, or wire rope anchor cables in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 13, 7 Equipment, the anchors are to be cleaned and examined. Wire rope

anchor cables are to be examined. If cables are found to contain broken, badly corroded or birdcaging wires they are to be renewed. Chain cables are to be ranged and examined. If any length of chain cable is found to be reduced in mean diameter at its most worn part by 12 per cent or more from its nominal diameter it is to be renewed. The windlass(es) or winches are to be examined.

5. 3. 19 The hand pumps, suctions, watertight doors, air and sounding pipes are to be examined. In addition, the Surveyor is to internally and externally examine air pipe heads in accordance with the requirements of Table 3. 5. 7: Air pipe head internal examination requirements (applicable for automatic air pipe heads installed on exposed decks of all ships except passenger ships).

5. 3. 20 The Surveyor is to be satisfied as to the efficient condition of the following:

a. For ships to which Pt 6, Ch 4 Fire Protection, Detection and Extinction Requirements applies, means of escape from crew and passenger spaces, and spaces in which crew are normally employed.
b. Helm indicator, protection of aft steering wheel and gear.

5. 3. 21 Where the special features notation **CCSA** (certified container securing arrangements) is assigned, the Surveyor is to be satisfied as to the efficient condition of:

a. Cell guide structure including the connections between vertical cell guides and cross ties.
b. Cell guide entry devices.
c. Portable frameworks or other forms of structural restraints.
d. Fittings attached to the ship structure, with special attention to any signs of leakage in way of tanks or deck and shell plating.
e. End connecting pieces for lashings, twist locks and other loose fittings, which are to be examined and verified with the Register, *see* Pt 3, Ch 14, 10 Surveys.
f. Lashings, rods, wire ropes, and chains together with turn buckles and other tightening devices are to be examined and verified with the Register as far as necessary and practicable in order to be satisfied as to their general condition, *see* Pt 3, Ch 14, 10 Surveys.
g. Lashing wire ropes, which are to be renewed where more than five per cent of the wires are broken, worn or corroded in any length of 10 diameters of the wire rope.
h. Chains, which are to be renewed where worn or damaged.

Where renewals are required, the new item is to be of approved type and manufacture. Where test certificates are not available, the item is to be tested in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 14, 3 Loose container securing fittings, materials and testing.

5. 3. 22 It is the responsibility of the onboard personnel to examine, maintain or renew cargo securing devices and maintain the appropriate certification. Records of inspections, maintenance and renewals, as well as the procedures for accepting, maintaining and repairing or rejecting cargo securing devices are to be kept onboard and made available to the attending Surveyor on request.

5. 3. 23 All bilge and ballast piping systems are to be examined and operationally tested to working pressure, to the satisfaction of the Surveyor, to ensure that tightness and condition remain satisfactory.

5. 3. 24 Ship side valves (i.e. sea connections, scuppers and sanitary discharges) are to be tested once reassembled.

5. 3. 25 For engine room and machinery space fire dampers the following is applicable:

a. At Special Survey I, Surveyors are to select and internally examine one engine room fire damper and one machinery space fire damper. Where considered necessary by the Surveyor as a result of the examinations, the extent of examinations may be extended to include other fire dampers.
b. At each subsequent Special Survey, all engine room and machinery space fire dampers are to be internally examined by the Surveyor.

Note The examination of fire dampers may be specially considered by the Surveyor where there is satisfactory documented evidence of their replacement within the previous five years.

5. 3. 26 In refrigerated cargo spaces, the condition of the coating and structure behind the insulation is to be examined at representative locations. Surveyors may limit the examination to the verification that the protective coating remains effective and that there are no visible structural defects. Where POOR coating condition is found, or structural defects are identified, then sufficient insulation is to be removed in each of the chambers in order to assess the condition of the remaining structure, as deemed necessary by the Surveyor. Additionally, where indents, scratches or other defects are identified during the survey of the shell plating from the outside, insulations in way are to be removed to enable further examination of the plating and adjacent frames, as required by the Surveyor.

5. 4 Overall Survey

5. 4. 1 The following requirements are applicable to **general dry cargo ships**.

5. 4. 2 All cargo holds, salt-water ballast tanks including double bottom tanks, pipe tunnels, cofferdams and void spaces bounding cargo holds, decks and outer hull are to be examined, and this is to be supplemented by Close-up Survey, thickness measurement and testing as deemed necessary, to ensure that the structural integrity remains effective.

5. 4. 3 The examination is to be sufficient to ascertain substantial corrosion, significant deformation, fractures, damages or other structural deterioration and, if deemed necessary by the Surveyor, suitable non-destructive examination may be required.

5. 4. 4 All piping systems within the tanks and spaces indicated in Pt 1, Ch 3, 5.4 Overall Survey 5.4.2 are to be examined and operationally tested to working pressure to the satisfaction of the Surveyor, to ensure that conditions remain satisfactory.

5. 4. 5 Where the salt-water ballast tanks have been converted to void spaces, the survey extent is to be specially considered based upon salt-water ballast tank requirements.

5. 4. 6 For single hold general dry cargo ships, other than bulk carriers, fitted with water level detectors in the cargo hold, an examination and a test of the water ingress detection system and alarms are to be carried out.

5. 5 Close-up Survey

5. 5. 1 The following requirements are applicable to **general dry cargo ships**.

5. 5. 2 The minimum requirements for Close-up Survey are given in Table 3. 5. 4: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - General dry cargo ships. The Close-up Survey may be extended, as deemed necessary by the Surveyor, after taking into account the maintenance of the spaces under survey, the condition of the corrosion prevention system and where spaces have structural arrangements or details which have suffered defects in similar spaces or on similar ships according to available information.

5. 5. 3 For areas in tanks and cargo holds where coatings are found to be in GOOD condition, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.5 Definitions, the extent of Close-up Surveys may be specially considered.

5. 6 Thickness measurement

5. 6. 1 The general minimum requirements for thickness measurement are given in Table 3. 5. 3: Minimum requirements for thickness measurements - General. For **general dry cargo ships**, the minimum requirements for thickness measurement are given in Table 3. 5. 5: Minimum requirements for Thickness measurement - General dry cargo ships. The Surveyor may extend the thickness measurements as deemed necessary.

Table 3. 5. 3: Minimum requirements for thickness measurements - General

Special Survey I (Ships 5 years old)	Special Survey III (Ships 15 years old)	Special Survey IV and subsequent (Ships 20 years old and over)
(1) Suspect areas, as required by the Surveyor. *See* Note 8.	(1) Within 0.5 *L* amidships; 2 transverse sections in way of two different cargo spaces. *See* Notes 2, 4(a), 5 and 7.	(1) Within 0.5 *L* amidships; a minimum of 3 transverse sections in way of cargo spaces. *see* Notes 2, 4(b) and 7.
Special Survey II (Ships 10 years old)	(2) All cargo hold hatch covers and coamings (plating and stiffeners). *See* Note 9.	(2) All cargo hold hatch covers and coamings (plating and stiffeners). *See* Note 9.
(1) Within 0.5 *L* amidships; 1 transverse section of deck plating in way of a cargo space, *See* Notes 2 and 7.	(3) Internals and the transverse bulkhead complete in the fore peak ballast tank and aft peak ballast tank. *See* Note 6.	(3) All exposed main deck plating over full length of ship.
(2) Suspect areas, as required by the Surveyor. *See* Note 8.	(4) Suspect areas, as required by the Surveyor. *See* Note 8.	(4) All wind and water strakes over the full length of the ship, port and starboard.
		(5) Representative exposed superstructure deck plating (i.e. poop, bridge and forecastle deck).
		(6) Lowest strake and strakes in way of 'tween deck of all transverse bulkheads in cargo spaces together with internals in way. *See* Notes 6 and 7.
		(7) Internals and the transverse bulkhead complete in the fore peak ballast tank and aft peak ballast tank. *See* Note 6.
		(8) All keel plates over the full length of the ship. Also additional bottom plates in way of cofferdams, machinery space and aft end of tanks.
		(9) Plating of sea chests. Also side shell plating in way of overboard discharges, as considered necessary by the Surveyor.
		(10) Suspect areas, as required by the Surveyor. *See* Note 8.

Note *1.* Thickness measurement locations are to be selected to provide the best representative sampling of areas likely to be most exposed to corrosion, considering cargo and ballast history and arrangement, and condition of protective coatings.

Note *2.* A transverse section is to include all longitudinal members such as plating, longitudinals and girders at the deck, sides, bottom, inner bottom, hopper side and longitudinal bulkheads, where fitted. For transversely framed vessels, a transverse section includes adjacent frames and their end connections in way of transverse sections.

Note *3.* Where the protective coating is in GOOD condition, then the extent of thickness measurements of internals may be specially considered, but not dispensed with in its entirety, at the discretion of the Surveyor.

4. For ships having length *L* less than 100 m:

the number of transverse sections required at Special Survey III may be reduced to one;

the number of transverse sections required at Special Survey IV and subsequent surveys may be reduced to two.

Note 5. For ships having length L more than 100m, at Special Survey III, thickness measurements of exposed deck plating within 0.5*L* amidships may be required.

Note *6.* Transverse bulkhead complete including stiffening system.

Note 7. For vessels without defined cargo spaces, thickness measurements are to be taken at the appropriate, most onerous locations selected to provide the best representative sampling of areas likely to be exposed to corrosion the most.

Note 8. Suspect Areas are locations showing substantial corrosion and/or are considered by the Surveyor to be prone to rapid wastage.

Note 9. Subject to cargo hold hatch covers of approved design which structurally have no access to the internals close-up survey/thickness measurement shall be done of accessible parts of hatch cover structures.

Table 3. 5. 4: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - General dry cargo ships

Special Survey I (Ships 5 years old)	Special Survey II (Ships 10 years old)	Special Survey III (Ships 15 years old)	Special Survey IV and subsequent (Ships 20 years old and over)
(1) Selected shell frames in one forward and one aft cargo hold and associated 'tween deck spaces.	(1) Selected shell frames in all cargo holds and 'tween deck spaces.	(1) All shell frames in the forward lower cargo hold and 25% of shell frames in each remaining cargo hold and 'tween deck spaces, including their upper and lower end attachments and adjacent shell plating.	(1) All shell frames in all cargo holds and 'tween deck spaces, including their upper and lower end attachments and adjacent shell plating.
(2) One selected cargo hold transverse bulkhead.	(2) One transverse bulkhead in each cargo hold, including stiffening system.	(2) All cargo hold transverse bulkheads, including stiffening system.	(2) All cargo hold transverse bulkheads, including stiffening system.
(3) All cargo hold hatch covers and coamings (plating and stiffeners). *See* Note 2.	(3) Forward and aft transverse bulkhead in one side ballast tank, including stiffening system.	(3) All transverse bulkheads in ballast tanks, including stiffening system.	(3) All transverse bulkheads in ballast tanks, including stiffening system.

	(4) One transverse web with associated plating and framing in two representative water ballast tanks of each type (i.e. topside, hopper side, side tank, peak tank or double bottom tank).	(4) All transverse webs with associated plating and framing in each water ballast tank.	(4) All transverse webs with associated plating and framing in each water ballast tank.
	(5) All cargo hold hatch covers and coamings (plating and stiffeners). *See* Note 2.	(5) All cargo hold hatch covers and coamings (plating and stiffeners). *See* Note 2.	(5) All cargo hold hatch covers and coamings (plating and stiffeners). *See* Note 2.
	(6) Selected areas of all deck plating and underdeck structure inside the line of hatch openings between cargo hold hatches.	(6) All deck plating and underdeck structure and inside the line of hatch openings between cargo hold hatches.	(6) All deck plating and underdeck structure inside the line of hatch openings between cargo hold hatches.
	(7) Selected areas of inner bottom plating.	(7) All areas of inner bottom plating.	(7) All areas of inner bottom plating.

Note *1.* Close-up survey of cargo hold transverse bulkheads to be carried out at the following areas:

a. Immediately above the inner bottom and immediately above the 'tween decks, as applicable.

b. Mid-height of the bulkhead for the holds without 'tween decks.

c. Immediately below the main deck plating and 'tween deck plating.

Note *2.* Subject to cargo hold hatch covers of approved design which structurally have no access to the internals, close-up survey/thickness measurement shall be done of accessible parts of hatch covers structures.

Table 3. 5. 5: Minimum requirements for Thickness measurement - General dry cargo ships

Special Survey I (Ships 5 years old)	Special Survey III (Ships 15 years old)	Special Survey IV and subsequent (Ships 20 years old and over)

(1)	Suspect areas, as required by the Surveyor. *See* Note 3.	(1) Within 0.5 *L* amidships; 2 transverse sections in way of two different cargo spaces. *See* Notes 2, and 4(a).	(1) Within the cargo length area: (i) A minimum of three transverse sections within the amidships 0.5 *L*. See Notes 2 & 4(b). (ii) Each deck plate outside the line of cargo hatch openings. *See* Note 6. (iii) Each bottom plate, including lower turn of bilge. (iv) Duct keel or pipe tunnel plating and internals.
Special Survey II (Ships 10 years old)		(2) Measurements for the general assessment and recording of corrosion pattern of those structural members subject to Close-up Survey in accordance with Table 3. 5. 4: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - General dry cargo ships	(2) Measurements for the general assessment and recording of corrosion pattern of those structural members subject to Close-up Survey in accordance with Table 3. 5. 4: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - General dry cargo ships.
(1)	Within 0.5*L* amidships; 1 transverse section of deck plating in way of a cargo space. *See* Note 2.	(3) Within the cargo length area; each deck plate outside line of cargo hatch openings. *See* Note 6.	(3) All wind and water strakes over the full length of the ship, port and starboard.
(2)	Measurements for the general assessment and recording of corrosion pattern of those structural members subject to Close-up Survey in accordance with Table 3. 5. 4: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - General dry cargo ships	(4) All wind and water strakes within cargo length area.	(4) Remaining exposed main deck plates not considered in item (3) and representative exposed superstructure deck plating (i.e. poop, bridge and forecastle deck).
		(5) Selected wind and water strakes outside the cargo length area.	(5) Lowest strake and strakes in way of 'tween deck of all transverse bulkheads in cargo spaces together with internals in way.

(3) Suspect areas, as required by the Surveyor. *See* Note 3.	(6) Suspect areas, as required by the Surveyor. *See* Note 3.	(6) All keel plates over the full length of the ship. Also additional bottom plates in way of cofferdams, machinery spaces and aft end of tanks. (7) Plating of sea chests. Also side shell plating in way of overboard discharges, as considered necessary by the Surveyor. (8) Suspect areas, as required by the Surveyor. *See* Note 3

Note *1.* Thickness measurement locations are to be selected to provide the best representative sampling of areas likely to be most exposed to corrosion, considering cargo and ballast history and arrangement, and condition of protective coatings.

Note *2.* A transverse section is to include all longitudinal members such as plating, longitudinals and girders at deck, sides, bottom, inner bottom and hopper side plating, longitudinal bulkheads and bottom plating in top wing tanks, where fitted. For transversely framed vessels, a transverse section includes adjacent frames and their end connections in way of transverse sections.

Note 3. Suspect areas are locations showing substantial corrosion and/or are considered by the Surveyor to be prone to rapid wastage.

4. For ships having length *L* less than 100 m:

a. the number of transverse sections required at Special Survey III may be reduced to one.

b. the number of transverse sections required at Special Survey IV and subsequent surveys may be reduced to two.

Note *5.* For areas in spaces (Cargo Holds and Water Ballast Tanks) where coatings are found to be in GOOD condition, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.5 Definitions 1.5.26, the extent of thickness measurement may be specially considered, but not dispensed with in its entirety.

Note *6.* Deck plating outside line of cargo hatch openings is deck plating between the ship sides and hatch coamings in the transverse section concerned.

5. 6. 2 Thickness measurements may be carried out in association with the fourth Annual Survey.

5. 6. 3 In areas where substantial corrosion, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.5 Definitions, has been noted, then additional measurements are to be carried out, as applicable, in accordance with Table 3. 5. 6: Thickness measurement - Additional requirements in way of structure identified with substantial corrosion to determine the full extent of the corrosion pattern. The survey will not be considered complete until these additional thickness measurements have been carried out.

Table 3. 5. 6: Thickness measurement - Additional requirements in way of structure identified with substantial corrosion

Structural member	Extent of measurement	Pattern of measurement
Plating	Suspect areas and adjacent plates	5 point pattern over $1m^2$
Stiffeners	Suspect areas	3 measurements each in line across web and flange

Table 3. 5. 7: Air pipe head internal examination requirements (applicable for automatic air pipe heads installed on exposed decks of all ships except passenger ships)

Special Survey I (Ships 5 years old)		Special Survey II (Ships 10 years old)		Special Survey III (Ships 15 years old) and subsequent
(1)	Two air pipe heads (one port and one starboard) on exposed decks in the forward 0.25*L*. *See* Notes 1 to 5	(1)	All air pipe heads on exposed decks in the forward 0.25*L*. *See* Notes 1 to 5	All air pipe heads on exposed decks. *See* Notes 1 to 6
(2)	Two air pipe heads (one port and one starboard) on the exposed decks, serving spaces aft of 0.25*L*. *See* Notes 1 to 5	(2)	At least 20% of air pipe heads on exposed decks, serving spaces aft of 0.25*L*. *See* Notes 1 to 5	

Note *1.* Air pipe heads serving ballast tanks are to be selected where available.

Note *2.* The Surveyor is to select which air pipe heads are to be examined.

Note *3.* Where considered necessary by the Surveyor as a result of the examinations, the extent of examinations may be extended to include other air pipe heads on exposed decks.

Note *4.* Where the inner parts of air pipe head cannot be properly examined due to its design, it is to be removed in order to allow an internal examination.

Note *5.* Particular attention is to be given to the condition of the zinc coating in heads constructed from galvanised steel.

Note *6.* Exemption may be considered for air pipe heads where there is documented evidence of their replacement within the previous five years.

5. 6. 4 Where substantial corrosion is identified and not rectified, this will be subject to examination and thickness measurement at Annual and Intermediate Surveys.

5. 6. 5 Where considered necessary by the Surveyor, thickness measurements are to be carried out in way of critical areas. These include areas considered prone to rapid wastage.

5. 6. 6 Where required by ACS, a check of the buckling capacity of the upper deck is to be carried out for tankers having a length greater than 90 m.

5. 6. 7 Steel evaluation of hatch covers on exposed decks and hatch coamings and closing arrangements of cargo holds on ships with contract for construction on or after 1 July 2012 is to be in accordance with IACS UR S21A. Further information is provided in the ACS document *Thickness Measurement and Close-Up Survey Guidance*.

Steel renewal is required where the gauged thickness is less than $t_{net} + 0.5$ mm. For definition of t_{net}, *see* Pt 4, Ch 7, 12.1 General 12.1.2.

Where the gauged thickness is within the range $t_{net} + 0.5$ mm and $t_{net} + 1.0$ mm, a coating (applied in accordance with coating manufacturer's requirements) or annual gauging may be adopted as an alternative to steel renewal.

PART

1

CHAPTER **3** **Periodical Survey Regulations**

SECTION **6** **Special Survey - Bulk carriers - Hull requirements**

6. 1 General

6. 1. 1 The requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 2 Annual Surveys - Hull and machinery requirements, Pt 1, Ch 3, 4 Bottom Surveys – In Dry-Dock and In-Water - Hull and machinery requirements and Pt 1, Ch 3, 5 Special Survey - General - Hull requirements are to be complied with as applicable.

6. 1. 2 In order to maintain and/or assign the **ESP** notation, the following requirements apply to the surveys of the hull structure and piping systems in way of the cargo holds, cofferdam, pipe tunnels, void spaces, topside tanks and double bottom tanks in way of the cargo hold area and all salt-water ballast tanks.

6. 2 Review of documentation on board

6. 2. 1 Prior to survey, the Surveyor is to examine the completeness of the documentation onboard as detailed in Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.10 Documentation, and its contents as a basis for the survey.

6. 2. 2 For CSR bulk carriers subject to *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea Chapter II-1 - Construction - Structure, subdivision and stability, machinery and electrical installations Part A-1 - Structure of ships Regulation 3-10 – Goal-based ship construction standards for bulk carriers and oil tankers*, the Surveyor is to examine the information held in the Goal Based Standard (GBS) Ship Construction File (SCF) stored on board the ship. On completion of the survey, in the case of any major event, including, but not limited to, substantial repair, conversion or any modification to the ship structure, the Surveyor is to verify that the information stored on board of the ship has been updated, and is to verify any addition and/or renewal of materials used for the construction of the hull structure are documented within the GBS SCF list of materials.

6. 2. 3 For CSR bulk carriers subject to *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea Chapter II-1 - Construction - Structure, subdivision and stability, machinery and electrical installations Part A-1 - Structure of ships Regulation 3-10 – Goal-based ship construction standards for bulk carriers and oil tankers*, for the GBS SCF Supplement Ashore, the Surveyor is to verify the information stored in the Archive Centre by examining the list of information included in the Supplement Ashore. In addition, the Surveyor is to confirm that the service contract with the Archive Centre remains valid. In the case of any major event, including, but not limited to, substantial repair, conversion or modification to the ship's structure, the Surveyor is to verify that the information stored in the Archive Centre has been updated by examining the list of updated information included in the Supplement Ashore.

6. 3 Planning for survey

6. 3. 1 A Survey Programme is to be submitted by the Owner and is to include the proposals for survey, including the means of providing access for Close-up Survey, thickness measurement and tank

testing and should take account of the information detailed in Pt 1, Ch 3, 6.2 Review of documentation on board 6.2.1.

6. 3. 2 Prior to the development of the Survey Programme, a Survey Planning Questionnaire is to be completed and submitted by the Owner, *see* Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.6 Preparation for survey and means of access 1.6.16.

6. 4 Overall survey

6. 4. 1 All cargo holds, salt-water ballast tanks including double bottom tanks, pipe tunnels, cofferdams and void spaces bounding cargo holds, decks and outer hull are to be examined, and this examination is to be supplemented by Close-up Survey, thickness measurement and testing as applicable, to ensure that the structural integrity remains effective.

6. 4. 2 The examination is to be sufficient to ascertain substantial corrosion, significant deformation, fractures, damages or other structural deterioration and, if deemed necessary by the Surveyor, suitable non-destructive examination may be required.

6. 4. 3 Where substantial corrosion, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.5 Definitions, is identified and is not rectified, this will be subject to re-examination at Annual and Intermediate Surveys.

6. 4. 4 All piping systems within the tanks and spaces indicated in Pt 1, Ch 3, 6.4 Overall survey 6.4.1 are to be examined and tested under working conditions to ensure that the conditions remain satisfactory.

6. 4. 5 The extent of survey of combined salt-water ballast cargo holds is to be evaluated based on the records of ballast history, the extent and condition of the corrosion protection system provided, and the extent of structural diminution (corrosion).

6. 4. 6 Where salt-water ballast tanks have been converted to void spaces the survey extent is to be based upon salt-water ballast tank requirements.

6. 4. 7 Where provided, in association with a corrosion control **CC** special features notation, as defined in the *Register Book*, the condition of the protective coating or corrosion prevention system of cargo holds is to be examined.

6. 4. 8 For ships fitted with water level detectors in cargo holds, ballast tanks forward of the collision bulkhead and any dry or void space which extends forward of the foremost cargo hold, an examination and a test of the water ingress detection systems and of their alarms is to be carried out.

6. 4. 9 For ships fitted with a means for draining and pumping ballast tanks forward of the collision bulkhead and the bilges of dry spaces, any part of which extends forward of the foremost cargo hold, an examination and a test of the draining and pumping systems including their controls is to be carried out.

6. 5 Testing

6. 5. 1 The minimum requirements for tank testing, as applicable, are given in Pt 1, Ch 3, 5.3 Examination and testing 5.3.6. Where required, the Surveyor may extend the tank testing if deemed necessary.

6. 6 Close-up Survey

6. 6. 1 The minimum requirements for Close-up Survey are given in Table 3. 6. 1: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Single skin bulk carriers,Table 3. 6. 2: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Double skin bulk carriers (excluding ore carriers) and Table 3. 6. 3: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Ore carriers as applicable.

6. 6. 2 The Close-up Survey may be extended, as deemed necessary by the Surveyor, after taking into account the maintenance of the spaces under survey, the condition of the corrosion prevention system and where spaces have structural arrangements or details which have suffered defects in similar spaces or on similar ships according to available information.

6. 6. 3 For areas in tanks and cargo holds where coatings are found to be in GOOD condition, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.5 Definitions, the extent of Close-up Surveys may be specially considered.

Table 3. 6. 1: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Single skin bulk carriers

Special Survey I (Ships 5 years old)	Special Survey II (Ships 10 years old)	Special Survey III (Ships 15 years old)	Special Survey IV (Ships 20 years old and over)
(1) 25% of shell frames and their end attachments in the forward cargo hold at representative positions. *(2)* Selected shell frames and their end attachments in remaining cargo holds. *(3)* 1 transverse web with associated plating and longitudinals in 2 representative water ballast tanks of each type (i.e. topside, peak, double bottom and hopper side tank). *(4)* 2 selected cargo hold transverse bulkheads, including internal structure of upper and lower stools, where fitted. This is to include the aft bulkhead of the forward hold.*See* Note 1. *(5)* All cargo hold hatch covers and coamings (plating and stiffeners). *See* Note 2.	*(1a)* For bulk carriers with a deadweight less than 100,000 tonnes, all shell frames in the forward cargo hold and 25% of frames in each of the remaining cargo holds, including their upper and lower end attachments and adjacent shell plating. *(1b)* For bulk carriers with a deadweight equal to or greater than 100,000 tonnes, all shell frames in the forward cargo hold and 50% of frames in each of the remaining cargo holds, including their upper and lower end attachments and adjacent shell plating. *(2)* 1 transverse web with associated plating and longitudinals in each water ballast tank. *(3)* Forward and aft transverse bulkhead in 1 side ballast tank, including stiffening system. *(4)* All cargo hold transverse bulkheads including internal structure of upper and lower stools, where fitted. *See* Note 1. *(5)* All cargo hold hatch covers and coamings, (plating and stiffeners). *See* Note 2. *(6)* All deck plating and underdeck structure inside line of hatch openings between all cargo hold hatches.	*(1)*All shell frames in the forward and one other selected cargo hold and 50% of frames in each of the remaining cargo holds, including their upper and lower end attachments and adjacent shell plating. *(2)* All transverse webs with associated plating and longitudinals in each water ballast tank. *(3)* All transverse bulkheads in ballast tanks, including stiffening system. *(4)* All cargo hold transverse bulkheads, including internal structure of upper and lower stools, where fitted. *See* Note 1. *(5)* All cargo hold hatch covers and coamings (plating and stiffeners). *See* Note 2. *(6)* All deck plating and underdeck structure inside line of hatch openings between all cargo hold hatches.	*(1)* All shell frames in all cargo holds, including their end attachments and adjacent shell plating. *(2)* All transverse webs with associated plating and longitudinals in each water ballast tank. *(3)* All transverse bulkheads in ballast tanks, including stiffening system. *(4)* All cargo hold transverse bulkheads, including internal structure of upper and lower stools, where fitted. *See* Note 1. *(5)* All cargo hold hatch covers and coamings (plating and stiffeners). *See* Note 2. *(6)* All deck plating and underdeck structure inside line of hatch openings between all cargo hold hatches.

Note 1. Close-up Survey of transverse bulkheads to be carried out at four levels:

- Level (a) Immediately above the inner bottom and immediately above the line of gussets (if fitted) and shedders for ships without lower stool.
- Level (b) Immediately above and below the lower stool shelf plate (for those ships fitted with lower stools), and immediately above the line of the shedder plates.
- Level (c) About mid-height of the bulkhead.
- Level (d) Immediately below the upper deck plating and immediately adjacent to the upper wing tank and immediately below the upper stool shelf plate for those ships fitted with upper stools, or immediately below the topside tanks.

Note 2. Subject to cargo hold hatch covers of approved design (which structurally have no access to the internals), close-up survey/thickness measurement shall be done of accessible parts of hatch covers structures.

Table 3. 6. 2: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Double skin bulk carriers (excluding ore carriers)

Special Survey I (Ships 5 years old)	Special Survey II (Ships 10 years old)	Special Survey III (Ships 15 years old)	Special Survey IV (Ships 20 years old and over)
(1) 1 transverse web with associated plating and longitudinals in 2 representative water ballast tanks of each type. This is to include the foremost topside and double side tanks; peak tanks and double bottom tanks. *(2)* 2 selected cargo hold transverse bulkheads including internal structure of upper and lower stools, where fitted. *See* Note 1. *(3)* All cargo hold hatch covers and coamings (plating and stiffeners). *See* Note 2.	*(1)* 1 transverse web with associated plating and longitudinals in each water ballast tank. *(2)* Forward and aft transverse bulkheads, including stiffening system, in one complete double side ballast tank on one side of the ship (i.e. port or starboard), *see* Note 3. *(3)* 25% of ordinary transverse frames for transverse framing system or 25% of longitudinals for longitudinal framing system on side shell and inner side plating at forward, middle and aft parts, in the foremost double side tanks. *(4)* One transverse bulkhead in each cargo hold including internal structure of upper and lower stools, where fitted. *See* Note 1. *(5)* All cargo hold hatch covers and coamings (plating and stiffeners). *See* Note 2. *(6)*All deck plating and underdeck structure inside line of hatch openings between all cargo hold hatches.	*(1)*All transverse webs with associated plating and longitudinals in each water ballast tank. *(2)* All transverse bulkheads in ballast tanks, including stiffening system. *(3)* 25% of ordinary transverse frames for transverse framing system or 25% of longitudinals for longitudinal framing system on side shell and inner side plating at forward, middle and aft parts, in all double side tanks. *(4)* All cargo hold transverse bulkheads including internal structure of upper and lower stools, where fitted. *See* Note 1. *(5)* All cargo hold hatch covers and coamings (plating and stiffeners). *See* Note 2. *(6)* All deck plating and underdeck structure inside line of hatch openings between all cargo hold hatches.	*(1)* All transverse webs with associated plating and longitudinals in each water ballast tank. *(2)* All transverse bulkheads in ballast tanks, including stiffening system. *(3)* All ordinary transverse frames for transverse framing system or all longitudinals for longitudinal framing system on side shell and inner side plating at forward, middle and aft parts, in all double side tanks. *(4)* All cargo hold transverse bulkheads including internal structure of upper and lower stools, where fitted. *See* Note 1. *(5)* All cargo hold hatch covers and coamings (plating and stiffeners). *See* Note 2. *(6)* All deck plating and underdeck structure inside line of hatch openings between all cargo hold hatches.

Note 1. Close-up survey of transverse bulkheads to be carried out at four levels:

- Level (a) Immediately above the inner bottom and immediately above the line of gussets (if fitted) and shedders for ships without lower stool.
- Level (b) Immediately above and below the lower stool shelf plate (for those ships fitted with lower stools), and immediately above the line of the shedder plates.
- Level (c) About mid-height of the bulkhead.
- Level (d) Immediately below the upper deck plating and immediately adjacent to the upper wing tank and immediately below the upper stool shelf plate for those ships fitted with upper stools, or immediately below the topside tanks.

Note 2. Subject to cargo hold hatch covers of approved design (which structurally have no access to the internals), close-up survey/thickness measurement shall be done of accessible parts of hatch covers structures.

Note 3. Complete ballast tank means topside tank, hopper tank, double bottom tank and double side tank, even if these are separate.

Table 3. 6. 3: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Ore carriers

Special Survey I (Ships 5 years old)	Special Survey II (Ships 10 years old)	Special Survey III (Ships 15 years old)	Special Survey IV (Ships 20 years old and over)
(1) 1 web frame ring complete including adjacent structural members in a water ballast wing tank. *(2)* 1 transverse bulkhead lower part including girder system and adjacent structural members in a ballast tank. *(3)* 2 selected cargo hold transverse bulkheads, including internal structure of upper and lower stools where fitted. *See* Note 1. *(4)* All cargo hold hatch covers and coamings (plating and stiffeners). *See* Note 2.	*(1)* All web frame rings complete including adjacent structural members in a water ballast wing tank. *(2)* 1 deck transverse including adjacent structural members in each remaining water ballast tank. *(3)* Forward and aft transverse bulkheads including girder system and adjacent structural members in a ballast wing tank. *(4)* 1 transverse bulkhead lower part including girder system and adjacent structural members in each remaining ballast tank. *(5)* 1 transverse bulkhead in each cargo hold, including internal structure of upper and lower stools where fitted. *See* Note 1. *(6)* All cargo hold hatch covers and coamings (plating and stiffeners). *See* Note 2. *(7)* All deck plating and under deck structure inside line of hatch openings between all cargo hold hatches.	*(1)* All web frame rings complete including adjacent structural members in each water ballast tank. *(2)* All transverse bulkheads including girder system and adjacent structural members in each ballast tank. *(3)* 1 web frame ring complete including adjacent structural members in each wing void space. *(4)* Additional web frame rings including adjacent structural members in void spaces as deemed necessary by the Surveyor. *(5)* All cargo hold transverse bulkheads, including internal structure of upper and lower stools where fitted. *See* Note 1. *(6)*All cargo hold hatch covers and coamings (plating and stiffeners). *See* Note 2. *(7)*All deck plating and under deck structure inside line of hatch openings between all cargo hold hatches.	*(1)* All web frame rings complete including adjacent structural members in each water ballast tank. *(2)* All transverse bulkheads including girder system and adjacent structural members in each ballast tank. *(3)* 1 web frame ring complete including adjacent structural members in each wing void space. *(4)* Additional web frame rings including adjacent structural members in void spaces as deemed necessary by the Surveyor. *(5)* All cargo hold transverse bulkheads, including internal structure of upper and lower stools where fitted. *See* Note 1. *(6)* All cargo hold hatch covers and coamings (plating and stiffeners). *See* Note 2. *(7)* All deck plating and under deck structure inside line of hatch openings between all cargo hold hatches.

Note 1. Close-up Survey of transverse bulkheads to be carried out at four levels:

- Level (a) Immediately above the inner bottom and immediately above the line of gussets (if fitted) and shedders for ships without lower stool.
- Level (b) Immediately above and below the lower stool shelf plate (for those ships fitted with lower stools), and immediately above the line of the shedder plates.
- Level (c) About mid-height of the bulkhead.
- Level (d) Immediately below the upper deck plating and immediately adjacent to the upper wing tank and immediately below the upper stool shelf plate for those ships fitted with upper stools, or immediately below the topside tanks.

Note 2. Subject to cargo hold hatch covers of approved design (which structurally have no access to the internals), close-up survey/thickness measurement shall be done of accessible parts of hatch covers structures.

6. 7 Thickness measurement

6. 7. 1 The minimum requirements for thickness measurements are given in Table 3. 6. 4: Minimum requirements for thickness measurement - Single skin and double skin bulk carriers, *see also* Pt 1, Ch 3, 5.6 Thickness measurement. For ships built in accordance with the IACS Common Structural Rules (CSR), refer to the ACS document *Thickness Measurement and Close-Up Survey Guidance*.

6. 7. 2 In areas where substantial corrosion, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.5 Definitions, has been noted then additional measurements are to be carried out, as applicable, in accordance with Table 3. 6. 5: Thickness measurement - Single skin bulk carriers - Shell plating and stiffening, with substantial corrosion, Table 3. 6. 6: Thickness measurement - Single skin bulk carriers - Double bottom and hopper structure, with substantial corrosion, Table 3. 6. 7: Thickness measurement - Single and double skin bulk carriers - Transverse bulkheads in cargo holds, with substantial corrosion, Table 3. 6. 8: Thickness measurement - Single skin and double skin bulk carriers - Deck structure* with substantial corrosion, Table 3. 6. 9: Thickness measurement - Double skin bulk carriers - Double side space structure (including wing void spaces of ore carriers), with substantial corrosion and Table 3. 6. 10: Thickness measurement - Double skin bulk carriers - Double side space structure (including wing void spaces of ore carriers), with substantial corrosion to determine the full extent of the corrosion pattern. The survey will not be considered complete until these additional thickness measurements have been carried out. For bulk carriers built in accordance with the IACS Common Structural Rules (CSR), the areas identified with substantial corrosion may be either:

a. protected by coating applied in accordance with the coating manufacturer's requirements and examined at Annual Surveys to confirm the coating in way is still in GOOD condition, or alternatively;
b. subject to thickness measurement at Annual Surveys.

6. 7. 3 Thickness measurement is required to determine both general and local levels of corrosion in salt water ballast tanks and in the shell frames and their end attachments in all cargo holds. Thickness measurements are also to be carried out to determine the corrosion levels on the transverse bulkhead plating.

6. 7. 4 Single skin bulk carriers contracted for construction prior to 1 July 1998 are to undergo a re-assessment and evaluation of their cargo hold shell frames. The number of shell frames to be measured is equivalent to number of shell frames subject to Close-Up Survey (*see* Table 3. 6. 1: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Single skin bulk carriers), with representative measurements to be taken at specific areas for each frame. The extent of thickness measurement may be specially considered, but not dispensed with in its entirety, by the Surveyor, provided the structural members indicate no thickness diminution with respect to the Rule thickness and the coating is found in 'as-new' condition (i.e. without breakdown or rusting). Repairs to shell frames are to be based upon the minimum thickness values shown in the evaluation records.

6. 7. 5 For bulk carriers built in accordance with the IACS Common Structural Rules (CSR), the ship's longitudinal strength is to be evaluated by using the thickness of structural members measured, renewed and reinforced, as appropriate, during the Special Surveys carried out after the ship reaches 15 years of age (or during the Special Survey No. 3, if this is carried out before the ship reaches 15 years) in accordance with the criteria for longitudinal strength of the ship's hull girder for CSR bulk carriers specified in Chapter 13 of CSR. For further details refer to the ACS document *Thickness Measurement and Close-Up Survey Guidance*.

6. 7. 6 Steel renewal evaluation of corrugated transverse watertight bulkheads on bulk carriers of 150 m in length and above, intending to carry solid bulk cargoes having a density of 1.0 *t*/m^3 with contract for construction on or after 1 July 1998 is to be in accordance with IACS UR S18. These requirements are not applicable to bulk carriers with class notation ESN Hold 1 and ESN – All Holds, or ships built in accordance with the IACS Common Structural Rules (CSR). Further information is provided in the ACS document *Thickness Measurement and Close-Up Survey Guidance*.

6. 7. 7 Steel renewal is required where the gauged thickness is less than $t_{net} + 0.5$ mm. For definition of t_{net}, *see* Pt 4, Ch 7, 10.4 Vertically corrugated transverse watertight bulkheads – Application and definitions 10.4.10.

6. 7. 8 Where the gauged thickness is within the range $t_{net} + 0.5$ mm and $t_{net} + 1.0$ mm, a coating (applied in accordance with coating manufacturer's requirements) or annual gauging may be adopted as an alternative to steel renewal.

6. 7. 9 Hatch covers of cargo holds' steel renewal evaluation of bulk carriers with contract for construction on or after 1 July 1998 is to be in accordance with IACS UR S21. These requirements are not applicable to ships built in accordance with the IACS Common Structural Rules (CSR). Further information is provided in the ACS document *Thickness Measurement and Close-Up Survey Guidance*.

6. 7. 10 Steel renewal is required where the gauged thickness is less than $t_{net} + 0.5$ mm. For definition of t_{net}, *see* Pt 4, Ch 7, 12.1 General 12.1.2.

6. 7. 11 Where the gauged thickness is within the range $t_{net} + 0.5$ mm and $t_{net} + 1.0$ mm, a coating (applied in accordance with coating manufacturer's requirements) or annual gauging may be adopted as an alternative to steel renewal.

6. 7. 12 Steel renewal evaluation of hatch covers and hatch coamings of cargo holds on bulk carriers and ore carriers with contract for construction on or after 1 January 2004 is to be in accordance with IACS UR S21. These requirements are not applicable to ships built in accordance with the IACS Common Structural Rules (CSR). Further information is provided in the ACS document *Thickness Measurement and Close-Up Survey Guidance*.

6. 7. 13 Steel renewal is required where the gauged thickness is less than $t_{net} + 0.5$ mm. For definition of t_{net}, *see* Pt 4, Ch 7, 12.1 General 12.1.2.

6. 7. 14 Where the gauged thickness is within the range $t_{net} + 0.5$ mm and $t_{net} + 1.0$ mm, a coating (applied in accordance with coating manufacturer's requirements) or annual gauging may be adopted as an alternative to steel renewal.

Table 3. 6. 4: Minimum requirements for thickness measurement - Single skin and double skin bulk carriers

Special Survey I (Ships 5 years old)	Special Survey III (Ships 15 years old)	Special Survey IV and subsequent (Ships 20 years old and over)

(1) Suspect areas, as required by the Surveyor. *See* Note 5.	*(1)* Within the cargo length area: *(a)* Each deck plate outside line of cargo hatch openings. *(b)* 2 transverse sections, outside line of cargo hatch openings. (A minimum of 1 of the above transverse sections is to be within 0.5*L* amidships). *See* Notes 2 and 6.	*(1)* Within the cargo length area: *(a)* Each deck plate outside line of cargo hatch openings. *(b)* 3 transverse sections, outside line of cargo hatch openings. (A minimum of 2 of the above transverse sections is to be within 0.5*L* amidships). *See* Notes 2 and 6. *(c)* Each bottom plate.
Special Survey II (Ships 10 years old) *(1)* Within the cargo length area: *(a)* 2 transverse sections of deck plating outside line of cargo hatch openings. *See* Note 7. *(2)* Measurement, for general assessment and recording of corrosion pattern, of those structural members subject to Close-up Survey in accordance with Table 3. 6. 1: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Single skin bulk carriers, Table 3. 6. 2: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Double skin bulk carriers (excluding ore carriers) or Table 3. 6. 3: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Ore carriers. *See* notes 3 and 4. *(3)*Wind and water strakes in way of the transverse sections considered in item (1). *(4)* Selected wind and water strakes outside the cargo length area.	(2) Measurement, for general assessment and recording of corrosion pattern, of those structural members subject to Close-up Survey in accordance with Table 3. 6. 1: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Single skin bulk carriers, Table 3. 6. 2: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Double skin bulk carriers (excluding ore carriers) or Table 3. 6. 3: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Ore carriers. *See* Notes 3 and 4. *(3)* All wind and water strakes within the cargo length area. *(4)* Selected wind and water strakes outside the cargo length area. *(5)* Suspect areas, as required by the Surveyor. *See* Note 5.	*(2)* Measurement, for general assessment and recording of corrosion pattern, of those structural members subject to Close-up Survey in accordance with Table 3. 6. 1: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Single skin bulk carriers, Table 3. 6. 2: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Double skin bulk carriers (excluding ore carriers) or Table 3. 6. 3: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Ore carriers. *See* Notes 3 and 4. *(3)* All wind and water strakes over the full length of the ship, port and starboard. *(4)* Remaining exposed main deck plates not considered in item (1) and representative exposed superstructure deck plating (i.e. poop, bridge and forecastle deck). *(5)* All keel plates outside the cargo length area. Also additional bottom plates in way of cofferdams. Machinery space and aft end of tanks.

(5) Suspect areas, as required by the Surveyor. *See* Note 5.		*(6)*Plating of sea chests. Also side shell plating in way of overboard discharges, as considered necessary by the Surveyor. *(7)* Suspect areas, as required by the Surveyor. *See* Note 5.

Note The requirements in this table apply to both single skin and double skin ships unless stated otherwise.

Note *1*. For areas in spaces (cargo holds and water ballast tanks) where coatings are found to be in GOOD condition, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.5 Definitions, the extent of thickness measurement may be specially considered, but not dispensed with in its entirety.

Note *2*. Transverse sections should be chosen where the largest scantling diminution is likely to occur, or as revealed by deck or bottom plating measurement.

Note 3. For ships assigned the notations **ESN Hold No1 and ESN All Holds**, the corrugated part of the aft transverse bulkhead of the forward cargo hold is to be subject to thickness measurement. This is to include each vertical corrugation at its lower and middle level including shedder plates and gusset plates, where applicable.

Note *4*. Single skin bulk carriers contracted for construction prior to 1 July 1998 are to undergo a re-assessment of their cargo hold shell frames. The number of shell frames to be measured is equivalent to the number of shell frames subject to Close-up survey (*see* Table 3. 6. 1: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Single skin bulk carriers), with representative measurements to be taken at specific areas for each frame.

Note 5. Suspect Areas are locations showing substantial corrosion and/or are considered by the surveyor to be prone to rapid wastage.

Note 6. A transverse section includes all continuous longitudinal members such as plating, longitudinals and girders at the deck, sides, bottom, inner bottom, hopper sides, longitudinal bulkheads, inner sides, top wing inner sides and bottom of top wing tanks. For transversely framed vessels, a transverse section includes adjacent frames and their end connections in way of transverse sections.

Note 7. Deck Plating outside line of cargo hatch openings is deck plating between the ship sides and hatch coamings in the transverse section concerned.

Table 3. 6. 5: Thickness measurement - Single skin bulk carriers - Shell plating and stiffening, with substantial corrosion

Structural member	Extent of measurement	Pattern of measurement
(1) Bottom and side shell plating	Suspect plate plus four adjacent plates	5 point pattern for each panel between longitudinals
(2) Bottom/side shell longitudinals	Minimum of three longitudinals in way of suspect areas	3 measurements in line across web and 3 measurements on flange
(3) Side shell frames	Suspect frame and each adjacent	At each end and mid-span: *(a)* 5 point pattern on both web and flange *(b)* 5 point pattern within 25 mm of welded attachment to both side shell and hopper sloping plate

Table 3. 6. 6: Thickness measurement - Single skin bulk carriers - Double bottom and hopper structure, with substantial corrosion

Structural member	Extent of measurement	Pattern of measurement
(1) Inner bottom plating	Suspect plate plus all immediately adjacent plates	5 point pattern for each panel between longitudinals over 1 m length
(2) Inner bottom longitudinals	Three longitudinals in way of plates measured	3 measurements in line across web and 3 measurements on flange
(3) Transverse floors and longitudinal girders	Suspect plates	5 point pattern over approximately 1 m^2 of plating
(4) Watertight floors and girders	*(a)* lower 1/3 of tank	*(a)* 5 point pattern over 1 m^2 of plating
	(b) upper 2/3 of tank	*(b)* 5 point pattern alternate plates over 1 m^2 of plating
*(5)*Transverse web frames	Suspect plate	5 point pattern over 1 m^2 of plating

Table 3. 6. 7: Thickness measurement - Single and double skin bulk carriers - Transverse bulkheads in cargo holds, with substantial corrosion

Structural member	Extent of measurement	Pattern of measurement
(1) Lower stool	*(a)* Transverse band within 25 mm of welded connection to inner-bottom	*(a)* 5 point pattern between stiffeners over 1 m length
	(b) Transverse band within 25 mm of welded connection to shelf plate	*(b)* as above
(2) Transverse bulkhead	*(a)* Transverse band immediately above lower stool shelf plate	*(a)* 5 point pattern over 1 m length
	*(b)*Transverse band at approximately mid-height	*(b)* 5 point pattern over 1 m^2 of plating
	*(c)*Transverse band at part of bulkhead adjacent to upper deck or below upper stool shelf plate (for those ships fitted with upper stools)	*(c)*5 point pattern over 1 m^2 of plating

Table 3. 6. 8: Thickness measurement - Single skin and double skin bulk carriers - Deck structure* with substantial corrosion

Structural member	Extent of measurement	Pattern of measurement
(1) Cross deck plating	Suspect cross deck strip plating	5 point pattern between underdeck stiffeners over 1 m length
(2) Underdeck stiffeners	*(a)* Transverse members	*(a)* 5 point pattern at each end and mid-span
	(b) Longitudinal member	*(b)* 5 point pattern on both web and flange
*(3)*Hatch covers	*(a)*Each side and end plate 3 locations	*(a)*5 point pattern at each location
	*(b)*Hatch cover top plate, 3 longitudinal bands - 2 on outboard strakes and 1 on centreline strake	*(b)* 5 point measurement at each band
*(4)*Hatch coamings	Each side and end of coaming, one upper and one lower band	5 point measurement at each band

(5) Topside salt water ballast tanks	*(a)* Watertight transverse bulkheads	*(i)*5 point pattern over 1 m^2 of plating
	(i) lower 1/3 of bulkhead	*(ii)* 5 point pattern over 1 m^2 of plating
	(ii) upper 2/3 of bulkhead	*(iii)* 5 point pattern over 1 m length
	*(iii)*stiffeners	
	*(b)*Swash transverse bulkheads	*(i)*5 point pattern over 1 m^2 of plating
	*(i)*lower 1/3 of bulkhead	*(ii)* 5 point pattern over 1 m^2 of plating
	*(ii)*upper 2/3 of bulkhead	*(iii)* 5 point pattern over 1 m length
	*(iii)*stiffeners	
	(c) 3 representative bays of the topside sloping plate	*(i)*5 point pattern over 1 m^2 of plating
	(i) lower 1/3 of tank	*(ii)*5 point pattern over 1 m^2 of plating
	(ii) upper 2/3 of tank	
	(d) suspect longitudinals and adjacent plates	5 point pattern both web and flange over 1 m length
(6) Main deck plating	Suspect plates and 4 immediately adjacent plates	5 point pattern over 1m^2 of plating
*(7)*Main deck longitudinals	Minimum of 3 longitudinals where plating measured	5 point pattern on both web and flange over 1 m length
(8) Web frames/transverses	Suspect plates	5 point pattern over 1m^2 of plating
* including cross strips, main cargo hatchways, hatch covers, coamings and topside tanks		

Table 3. 6. 9: Thickness measurement - Double skin bulk carriers - Double side space structure (including wing void spaces of ore carriers), with substantial corrosion

Structural member	Extent of measurement	Pattern of measurement
*(1)*Bottom, inner bottom and hopper structure plating	*(a)*Minimum of 3 bays across double bottom tank, including aft bay	5 point pattern for each panel between longitudinals and floors
	(b) Measurements around and under all suction bell mouths	
*(2)*Bottom, inner bottom and hopper structure longitudinals	Minimum of 3 longitudinals in each bay where bottom plating measured	3 measurements in line across flange and 3 measurements on the vertical web
*(3)*Bottom girders, including watertight girders	At fore and aft watertight floors and in centre of tanks	Vertical line of single measurements on girder plating with 1 measurement between each panel stiffener, or a minimum of 3 measurements
(4) Bottom floors, including watertight floors	3 floors in the bays where bottom plating measured, with measurements at both ends and middle	5 point pattern over 2 m^2 area
(5) Hopper structure web frame ring	3 floors in bays where bottom plating measured	5 point pattern over 1 m^2 of plating and single measurements on flange

*(6)*Hopper structure transverse watertight bulkhead or swash bulkhead	*(a)* lower 1/3 of bulkhead *(b)*upper 2/3 of bulkhead *(c)* stiffeners (minimum of 3)	*(a)*5 point pattern over 1 m^2 of plating *(b)*5 point pattern over 2 m^2 of plating *(c)*For web, 5 point pattern over span (2 measurements across web at each end and 1 at centre of span). For flange, single measurements at each end and centre of span
(7) Panel stiffening	Where applicable	Single measurements

Table 3. 6. 10: Thickness measurement - Double skin bulk carriers - Double side space structure (including wing void spaces of ore carriers), with substantial corrosion

Structural member	Extent of measurement	Pattern of measurement
(1) Side shell and inner plating: *(i)* Upper strake and strakes in way of horizontal girders *(ii)* All other strakes	*(i)* Plating between each pair of transverse frames/longitudinals in a minimum of 3 bays along the tank *(ii)* Plating between every third pair of longitudinals in same 3 bays	*(i)* Single measurement *(ii)* Single measurement
*(2)*Side shell and inner side transverse frames/longitudinals on: *(i)* Upper strake *(ii)* All other strakes	*(i)* Each transverse frame/longitudinal in same 3 bays *(ii)* Every third transverse frame/ longitudinal in same 3 bays	*(i)* 3 measurements across web and 1 measurement on flange *(ii)*3 measurements across web and 1 measurement on flange
(3) Transverse frames/longitudinals - brackets	Minimum of 3 at top, middle and bottom of tank in same 3 bays	5 point pattern over area of bracket
(4) Vertical web and transverse bulkheads: *(i)* Strakes in way of horizontal girders *(ii)* Other strakes	*(i)* Minimum of 2 webs and both transverse bulkheads *(ii)*Minimum of 2 webs and both transverse bulkheads	*(i)* 5 point pattern over approx. 2 m^2 area *(ii)* 2 measurements between each pair of vertical stiffeners
(5) Horizontal girders	Plating on each girder in a minimum of 3 bays	2 measurements between each pair of longitudinal girder stiffeners
(6) Panel stiffening	Where applicable	Single measurements

6. 7. 15 Prior to any coating or recoating of cargo holds, scantlings are to be confirmed by a thickness measurement, with the Surveyor in attendance.

PART

1

CHAPTER 3 **Periodical Survey Regulations**

SECTION 7 **Special Survey - Oil tankers (including ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships) - Hull requirements**

7. 1 General

7. 1. 1 The requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 2 Annual Surveys - Hull and machinery requirements, Pt 1, Ch 3, 4 Bottom Surveys – In Dry-Dock and In-Water - Hull and machinery requirements and Pt 1, Ch 3, 5 Special Survey - General - Hull requirements are to be complied with as applicable.

7. 1. 2 In order to maintain and/or assign the **ESP** notation, the following requirements apply to the surveys of the hull structure and piping systems in way of the cargo tanks/cargo holds, pump rooms, cofferdam, pipe tunnels, void spaces, double bottom tanks, etc. in way of the cargo tank area and all salt-water ballast tanks.

7. 2 Review of documentation on board

7. 2. 1 Prior to survey, the Surveyor is to examine the completeness of the documentation on board as detailed in Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.10 Documentation and its contents as a basis for the survey.

7. 2. 2 For CSR oil tankers subject to *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea Chapter II-1 - Construction - Structure, subdivision and stability, machinery and electrical installations Part A-1 - Structure of ships Regulation 3-10 – Goal-based ship construction standards for bulk carriers and oil tankers* the Surveyor is to examine the information held in the Goal Based Standard (GBS) Ship Construction File (SCF) stored on board the ship. On completion of the survey, in the case of any major event, including, but not limited to, substantial repair, conversion or any modification to the ship structure, the Surveyor is to verify that the information stored on board of the ship has been updated and is to verify any addition and/or renewal of materials used for the construction of the hull structure are documented within the GBS SCF list of materials.

7. 2. 3 For CSR oil tankers subject to *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea Chapter II-1 - Construction - Structure, subdivision and stability, machinery and electrical installations Part A-1 - Structure of ships Regulation 3-10 – Goal-based ship construction standards for bulk carriers and oil tankers* for the GBS SCF Supplement Ashore, the Surveyor is to verify the information stored in the Archive Centre by examining the list of information included in the Supplement Ashore. In addition, the Surveyor is to confirm that the service contract with the Archive Centre remains valid. In the case of any major event, including, but not limited to, substantial repair, conversion or modification to the ship's structure, the Surveyor is to verify that the information stored in the Archive Centre has been updated by examining the list of updated information included in the Supplement Ashore.

7. 3 Planning for survey

7. 3. 1 A Survey Programme is to be submitted by the Owner and is to include the proposals for survey, including the means of providing access for Close-up Survey, thickness measurement and tank testing and should take account of the information detailed in Pt 1, Ch 3, 7.2 Review of documentation on board 7.2.1.

7. 3. 2 Prior to the development of the Survey Programme a Survey Planning Questionnaire is to be completed and submitted by the Owner, *see* Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.6 Preparation for survey and means of access 1.6.16.

7. 4 Overall Survey

7. 4. 1 All cargo tanks/cargo holds, and salt-water ballast tanks including double bottom tanks, pump rooms, pipe tunnels, cofferdams and void spaces bounding cargo tanks/cargo holds, deck and outer hull are to be examined, and this examination is to be supplemented by Close-up Survey, thickness measurement and testing as applicable, to ensure that the structural integrity remains effective.

7. 4. 2 The examination is to be sufficient to ascertain substantial corrosion, significant deformation, fractures, damages or other structural deterioration and, if deemed necessary by the Surveyor, suitable non-destructive examination may be required.

7. 4. 3 Where substantial corrosion, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.5 Definitions, is identified and is not rectified, this will be subject to re-examination at Annual and/or Intermediate Surveys. In the case of salt-water ballast tanks and combined tanks for the carriage of salt-water ballast and cargo oil, the examination will be required at Annual Survey and Intermediate Survey. In the case of cargo oil tanks the examination will be required at Intermediate Surveys.

7. 4. 4 All cargo piping on deck, including Crude Oil Washing (COW) piping, and cargo and ballast piping within those spaces indicated in Pt 1, Ch 3, 7.4 Overall Survey 7.4.1 are to be examined and tested under working conditions to ensure that tightness and condition remain satisfactory. Special attention is to be given to ballast piping in cargo tanks and any cargo piping in ballast tanks and void spaces. The Surveyor should be advised on all occasions when this piping, including valves and fittings, is open and degasified during repair periods and may be examined internally.

7. 4. 5 Where salt-water ballast tanks have been converted to void spaces the survey extent is to be based upon salt-water ballast tank requirements.

7. 4. 6 Where provided, in association with a corrosion control **CC** special features notation, as defined in the *Register Book*, the condition of the protective coating or corrosion prevention system of cargo tanks is to be examined.

7. 4. 7 The attachment to the structure and condition of anodes in tanks is to be examined.

7. 4. 8 Where fitted, the strums of the cargo suction pipes are to be removed or lifted to facilitate examination of the shell plating and bulkheads in the vicinity, unless other means for visual inspection of these parts are provided.

7. 5 Testing

7. 5. 1 The minimum ballast tank testing requirements are given in Table 3. 7. 1: Tank testing requirements - Single hull and double hull oil tankers, ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships and, where required, the Surveyor may extend the tank testing if deemed necessary. The remaining requirements for tank testing, as applicable, are given in Pt 1, Ch 3, 5.3 Examination and testing 5.3.6.

7. 5. 2 The minimum cargo tank testing requirements are given in Table 3. 7. 1: Tank testing requirements - Single hull and double hull oil tankers, ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships; boundaries of cargo tanks are to be tested to the highest point that liquid will rise to under service conditions. Cargo tank testing carried out by the ship's crew under the direction of the Master may be accepted by the Surveyor provided the following conditions are complied with:

a. A tank testing procedure specifying fill heights, tanks being filled and bulkheads being tested has been submitted by the Owner and reviewed by ACS prior to the testing being carried out.
b. There is no record of leakage, distortion or substantial corrosion that would affect the structural integrity of the tank.
c. The tank testing has been satisfactorily carried out within the special survey window not more than 3 months prior to the date of the survey on which the overall or close-up survey is completed.
d. The satisfactory results of the testing are recorded in the ship's logbook.
e. The internal and external condition of the tanks and associated structure is found satisfactory by the Surveyor at the time of the overall and close-up survey.

Table 3. 7. 1: Tank testing requirements - Single hull and double hull oil tankers, ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships

Special Survey I(Ships 5 years old)	Special Survey II and subsequent (Ships 10 years old and over)
All ballast tank boundaries	All ballast tank boundaries
Cargo tank boundaries facing ballast tanks, void spaces, pipe tunnels, pump rooms or cofferdams	All cargo tank bulkheads

7. 5. 3 Notwithstanding the provisions of Pt 1, Ch 3, 7.5 Testing 7.5.2, permitting cargo tank testing to be carried out by the ship's crew under the direction of the Master, the testing of water ballast tanks is to be witnessed by an attending Surveyor, during which the attending Surveyor is to examine all boundaries, including the boundaries facing the cargo oil tanks.

7. 5. 4 Where the outcome of cargo tank testing reveals structural damage or leakage, the Owner is to advise ACS immediately in order to arrange the attendance of a Surveyor.

7. 6 Close-up Survey

7. 6. 1 The minimum requirements for Close-up Survey are given in Table 3. 7. 2: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Single hull oil tankers (Single hull oil tankers), Table 3. 7. 3: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Double hull oil tankers (Double hull oil tankers), Table 3. 7. 4: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Ore/oil ships (Ore/oil ships) and Table 3. 7. 5: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Ore/bulk/oil ships (Ore/bulk/oil ships).

Table 3. 7. 2: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Single hull oil tankers

Special Survey I (Ships 5 years old)	Special Survey II (Ships 10 years old)	Special Survey III (Ships 15 years old)	Special Survey IV (Ships 20 years old and over)

(1) One web frame ring – in a ballast wing tank, if any, or a cargo oil wing tank used primarily for water ballast. *See* Note 1. *(2)* One deck transverse – in a cargo oil tank. *See* Note 2. *(3)* One transverse bulkhead. *See* Notes 4 and 8: *(a)* in a ballast tank. *(b)* in a cargo oil wing tank. *(c)* in a cargo oil centre tank.	*(1)* All web frame rings – in a ballast wing tank, if any, or a cargo oil wing tank used primarily for water ballast. *See* Note 1. *(2)* One deck transverse, *See* Note 2: *(a)* In each of the remaining ballast tanks, if any *(b)* In a cargo oil wing tank *(c)* In 2 cargo oil centre tanks *(3)* Both transverse bulkheads – in a wing ballast tank, if any, or a cargo oil wing tank used primarily for water ballast, *see* Note 3 *(4)* One transverse bulkhead. *See* Notes 4 and 8: *(a)* In each remaining ballast tank. *(b)* In a cargo oil wing tank. *(c)* In 2 cargo oil centre tanks.	*(1)* All web frame rings, *See* Note 1: *(a)* in all ballast tanks. *(b)* in a cargo oil wing tank. *(2)* A minimum of 30% of all web frame rings in each remaining cargo oil wing tank. *See* Notes 1 and 7. *(3)* All transverse bulkheads – in all cargo and ballast tanks, *see* Note 3. *(4)* A minimum of 30% of deck and bottom transverses in each cargo centre tank. *See* Notes 5 and 7. *(5)* As considered necessary by Surveyor. *See* Note 6.	*(1)* As Special Survey III. *(2)* Additional transverses if deemed necessary by the Surveyor.

Note *1.* Complete transverse web frame ring including adjacent structural members.

Note *2.* Deck transverse including adjacent deck structural members.

Note *3.* Transverse bulkhead complete, including girder system and adjacent members, and adjacent longitudinal bulkhead structure.

Note *4.* Transverse bulkhead lower part including girder system and adjacent structural members.

Note *5.* Deck and bottom transverse including adjacent structural members.

Note *6.* Additional complete transverse web frame ring.

Note *7.* The 30% is to be rounded up to the next whole number of structural items.

Note 8. Where there are no centre tanks, the transverse bulkheads in wing tanks are to be subject to Close-up Survey. Where there are no wing tanks, the transverse bulkheads in centre tanks are to be subject to Close-up Survey.

Table 3. 7. 3: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Double hull oil tankers

Special Survey I (Ships 5 years old)	Special Survey II (Ships 10 years old)	Special Survey III (Ships 15 years old)	Special Survey IV (Ships 20 years old and over)

(1) One web frame ring in a ballast tank. *See* Notes 1 and 3. *(2)* One deck transverse in a cargo tank. *See* Note 4. *(3)* One transverse bulkhead in a ballast tank. *See* Notes 1 and 6. *(4)* One transverse bulkhead in a cargo centre tank. *See* Notes 2 and 7. *(5)* One transverse bulkhead in a cargo wing tank. *See* Notes 2 and 7.	*(1)* All web frame rings in a ballast tank. *See* Notes 1 and 3. *(2)* The knuckle area and the upper part (approx. 5 m) of one web frame ring in each remaining ballast tank. *See* Note 8. *(3)* One deck transverse in two cargo tanks. *See* Note 4. *(4)* One transverse bulkhead in each ballast tank. *See* Notes 1 and 6. *(5)* One transverse bulkhead in two cargo centre tanks. *See* Notes 2 and 7. *(6)* One transverse bulkhead in a cargo wing tank. *See* Notes 2 and 7.	*(1)* All web frame rings in all ballast tanks. *See* Note 3. *(2)* All web frame rings in a cargo tank. *See* Note 9. *(3)* One web frame ring in each remaining cargo tank. *See* Note 9. *(4)* All transverse bulkheads– in all cargo and ballast tanks. *See* Notes 5 and 6. *(5)* As considered necessary by the Surveyor. *See* Note 10.	*(1)* As Special Survey III. *(2)* Additional transverse areas if deemed necessary by the Surveyor. *See* Note 10.

Note *1.* Apart from the fore and aft peak tanks, the term "ballast tank" has the following meaning:

all ballast compartments (hopper tank, side tank and double deck tank, if separate from double bottom tank) located on one side, i.e. port or starboard, additionally double bottom tank on port plus starboard, when the longitudinal central girder is not watertight and, therefore, the double bottom tank is a unique compartment from port to starboard, or

all ballast compartments (double bottom tank, hopper tank, side tank and double deck tank) located on one side, i.e. port or starboard, when the longitudinal central girder is watertight and, therefore, the port double bottom tank is separate from the starboard double bottom tank.

Note *2.* Where there are no centre tanks, the transverse bulkheads in wing tanks are to be subject to Close-up Survey. Where there are no wing tanks, the transverse bulkheads in centre tanks are to be subject to Close-up Survey.

Note *3.* Web frame ring in a ballast tank includes the vertical web in side tank, hopper web in hopper tank, floor in double bottom tank and deck transverse in a double deck tank and adjacent structural members. In peak tanks a web frame means a complete transverse web frame, including adjacent structural members.

Note *4.* Deck transverse including adjacent deck structural members (or external structure on deck in way of the tank, where applicable).

Note *5.* Transverse bulkhead complete in cargo tanks, including girder system, adjacent structural members (including longitudinal bulkheads) and internal structure of lower and upper stools, where fitted. Note *6.* Transverse bulkhead complete in ballast tanks, including girder system and adjacent structural members including longitudinal bulkheads, girders in double bottom tanks, inner bottom plating, hopper side, connecting brackets.

Note *7.* Transverse bulkhead lower part in cargo tanks, including girder system, adjacent structural members (including longitudinal bulkheads) and internal structure of lower stool, where fitted.

Note *8.* The knuckle area and the upper part (approximately 5 m), including adjacent structural members. Knuckle area is the area of the web frame around the connections of the sloping hopper plating to the inner hull bulkhead and the inner bottom plating, up to 2 m from the corners both on the bulkhead and the double bottom.

Note *9.* Web frame ring in cargo tank includes deck transverse, longitudinal bulkhead vertical girder and cross ties, where fitted, and adjacent structural members.

Note *10.* Additional complete transverse web frame ring.

Table 3. 7. 4: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Ore/oil ships

Special Survey I (Ships 5 years old)	Special Survey II (Ships 10 years old)	Special Survey III (Ships 15 years old)	Special Survey IV (Ships 20 years old and over)

(1) One web frame ring – in a wing ballast tank, if any, or a cargo oil wing tank used primarily for water ballast. *See* Note 1. *(2)* One deck transverse – in a cargo tank. *See* Note 2. *(3)* One transverse bulkhead. *See* Notes 4 and 8: *(a)* in a ballast tank. *(b)* in a cargo oil wing tank. *(c)* in a cargo oil centre tank.	*(1)* All web frame rings – in a wing ballast tank, if any, or a cargo oil wing tank used primarily for water ballast. *See* Note 1. *(2)* One deck transverse. *See* Notes 2 and 8: *(a)* in each of the remaining ballast tanks, if any. *(b)* in a cargo oil wing tank. *(c)* in 2 cargo oil centre tanks. *(3)* Both transverse bulkheads – in a wing ballast tank, if any, or a cargo wing tank used primarily for water ballast. *See* Note 3. *(4)* One transverse bulkhead. *See* Notes 4 and 8: *(a)* in each remaining ballast tank. *(b)* in a cargo oil wing tank. *(c)* in 2 cargo oil centre tanks. *(5)* Selected cargo hold hatch covers and coamings (plating and stiffeners). *See* Note 9. *(6)* Selected areas of deck plating inside line of hatch openings between cargo hold hatches.	*(1)* All web frame rings. *See* Note 1: *(a)* in all ballast tanks. *(b)* in a cargo oil wing tank. *(2)* A minimum of 30% of all web frame rings in each remaining cargo oil wing tank. *See* Notes 1 and 7. *(3)*All transverse bulkheads – in all cargo and ballast tanks. *See* Note 3. *(4)* A minimum of 30% of deck and bottom transverses in each cargo oil centre tank. *See* Notes 5 and 7. *(5)* As considered necessary by the Surveyor. *See* Note 6 *(6)* All cargo hold hatch covers and coamings (plating and stiffeners). *See* Note 9. *(7)* All deck plating inside line of hatch coamings between cargo hold hatches.	*(1)* As Special Survey III. *(2)* Additional transverses if deemed necessary by the Surveyor.

Note *1.* Complete transverse web frame ring including adjacent structural members.

Note *2.* Deck transverse including adjacent deck structural members.

Note *3.* Transverse bulkhead complete, including girder system and adjacent members, and adjacent longitudinal bulkhead structure.

Note *4.* Transverse bulkhead lower part including girder system and adjacent structural members.

Note *5.* Deck and bottom transverse including adjacent structural members.

Note *6.* Additional complete transverse web frame ring Note *7.* The 30% is to be rounded up to the next whole number of structural items.

Note *8.* Where there are no centre tanks, the transverse bulkheads in wing tanks are to be subject to Close-up Survey. Where there are no wing tanks, the transverse bulkheads in the centre tanks are to be subject to Close-up Survey.

Note *9.* Subject to cargo hold hatch covers of approved design which structurally have no access to the internals, close-up survey/thickness measurement shall be done of accessible parts of hatch covers structures.

Table 3. 7. 5: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Ore/bulk/oil ships

Special Survey I (Ships 5 years old)	Special Survey II (Ships 10 years old)	Special Survey III (Ships 15 years old)	Special Survey IV (Ships 20 years old and over)
(1) 25% of shell frames and their end attachments in the forward cargo hold at representative positions. *(2)* Selected frames and their end attachments in remaining cargo holds. *(3)* 1 transverse web with associated plating and longitudinals in 2 representative water ballast tanks of each (i.e. topside, peak, double bottom and hopper side tank). *(4)* 2 selected cargo hold transverse bulkheads including internal structure of upper and lower stools where fitted. This is to include the aft bulkhead in the forward cargo hold. *See* Note 1.	*(1a)* For OBOs with a deadweight less than 100,000 tonnes, all shell frames in the forward cargo hold and 25% of frames in each of the remaining cargo holds, including their upper and lower end attachments and adjacent shell plating. *(1b)* For OBOs with a deadweight equal to or greater than 100,000 tonnes, all shell frames in the forward cargo hold and 50% of frames in each of the remaining cargo holds, including their upper and lower end attachments and adjacent shell plating. *(2)* 1 transverse web with associated plating and longitudinals in each water ballast tank. *(3)* Forward and aft transverse bulkhead in 1 side ballast tank, including stiffening system. *(4)* All cargo hold transverse bulkheads including internal structure of upper and lower stools where fitted. *See* Note 1. *(5)* All cargo hold hatch covers and coamings (plating and stiffeners). *See* Note 2 *(6)* All areas of deck plating and underdeck structure inside line of hatch openings between all cargo hold hatches.	*(1)* All shell frames in the forward and one other selected cargo cargo hold and 50% of frames in each of the remaining cargo holds, including their upper and lower end attachments and adjacent shell plating. *(2)* All transverse webs with associated plating and longitudinals in each water ballast tank. *(3)* All transverse bulkheads in ballast tanks, including stiffening system. *(4)* All cargo hold transverse bulkheads including internal structure of upper and lower stools, where fitted. *See* Note 1. *(5)* All cargo hold hatch covers and coamings (plating and stiffeners). *See* Note 2. *(6)* All deck plating and underdeck structure inside line of hatch openings between cargo hold hatches.	*(1)* All shell frames in all cargo holds including their end attachments and adjacent shell plating. *(2)* All transverse webs with associated plating and longitudinals in each water ballast tank. *(3)* All transverse bulkheads in ballast tanks, including stiffening system. *(4)* All cargo hold transverse bulkheads including internal structure of upper and lower stools, where fitted. *See* Note 1. *(5)* All cargo hold hatch covers and coamings (plating and stiffeners). *See* Note 2. *(6)* All deck plating and underdeck structure inside line of hatch openings between cargo hold hatches.

Note *1.* Close-up Survey of cargo hold transverse bulkheads to be carried out at four levels:

- Level (a) Immediately above the inner bottom and immediately above the line of gussets (if fitted) and shedders for ships without lower stool.
- Level (b) Immediately above and below the lower stool shelf plate (for those ships fitted with lower stools), and immediately above the line of the shedder plates.
- Level (c) About mid-height of the bulkhead.
- Level (d) Immediately below the upper deck plating and immediately adjacent to the upper wing tank and immediately below the upper stool shelf plate for those ships fitted with upper stools, or immediately below the topside tanks.

Note *2.* Subject to cargo hold hatch covers of approved design which structurally have no access to the internals, close-up survey/thickness measurement shall be done of accessible parts of hatch covers structures.

7. 6. 2 The Surveyor may extend the Close-up Survey, if deemed necessary, taking into account the maintenance of the tanks under survey, the condition of the corrosion prevention system, and the following:

a. Structural arrangements or details which have suffered defects in similar spaces or on similar ships.

b. Spaces which have structures approved with reduced scantlings in association with an approved corrosion control system.

7. 6. 3 For areas in tanks where coatings are found to be in GOOD condition, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.5 Definitions, the extent of Close-up Surveys may be specially considered.

7. 7 Thickness measurement

7. 7. 1 The minimum requirements for thickness measurements are given in Table 3. 7. 6: Minimum requirements for thickness measurement - Single hull and double hull oil tankers, ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships (Single and double hull oil tankers, including ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships), *see also* Pt 1, Ch 3, 5.6 Thickness measurement. For ships built in accordance with the IACS Common Structural Rules (CSR), refer to the ACS document *Thickness Measurement and Close-Up Survey Guidance*.

Table 3. 7. 6: Minimum requirements for thickness measurement - Single hull and double hull oil tankers, ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships

Special Survey I (Ships 5 years old)	Special Survey III (Ships 15 years old)	Special Survey IV (Ships 20 years old and over)
(1) 1 section of deck plating for the full beam of the ship within 0.5*L* amidships in way of a ballast tank, if any, or a cargo tank used primarily for water ballast.	*(1)* Within the cargo area. *(a)* Each deck plate. *(b)* 2 transverse sections. *See* Notes 2, 3, 5 and 6.	*(1)* Within the cargo area: *(a)* Each deck plate. *(b)* 3 transverse sections. *See* Notes 2, 3, 5 and 6. *(c)* Each bottom plate.

(2) Measurements for general assessment and recording of corrosion pattern of the structural members subject to Close-up Survey in accordance with Table 3. 7. 2: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Single hull oil tankers, Table 3. 7. 3: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Double hull oil tankers ,Table 3. 7. 4: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Ore/oil ships or Table 3. 7. 5: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Ore/bulk/oil ships. *See* Note 4. *(3)* Suspect areas, as required by the Surveyor. *See* Note 7.	*(2)* Measurements for general assessment and recording of corrosion pattern of the structural members subject to Close-up Survey in accordance with Table 3. 7. 2: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Single hull oil tankers, Table 3. 7. 3: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Double hull oil tankers ,Table 3. 7. 4: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Ore/oil ships or Table 3. 7. 5: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Ore/bulk/oil ships. *See* Note 4.	*(2)* Measurements for general assessment and recording of corrosion pattern of the structural members subject to Close-up Survey in accordance with Table 3. 7. 2: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Single hull oil tankers, Table 3. 7. 3: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Double hull oil tankers ,Table 3. 7. 4: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Ore/oil ships or Table 3. 7. 5: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Ore/bulk/oil ships. *See* Note 4.
Special Survey II (Ships 10 years old)	*(3)* Selected wind and water strakes outside the cargo area.	*(3)* All wind and water strakes over the full length of the ship, port and starboard.

(1) Within the cargo tank area: *(a)* Each deck plate. *(b)* 1 transverse section. *See* Notes 2, 3 and 6. *(2)* Measurements for general assessment and recording of corrosion pattern of the structural members subject to Close-up Survey in accordance with Table 3. 7. 2: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Single hull oil tankers, Table 3. 7. 3: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Double hull oil tankers, Table 3. 7. 4: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Ore/oil ships or Table 3. 7. 5: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Ore/bulk/oil ships. *See* Note 4. *(3)* Selected wind and water strakes outside the cargo area. *(4)* Suspect areas, as required by the Surveyor. *See* Note 7.	*(4)* All wind and water strakes within the cargo area. *(5)* Suspect areas, as required by the Surveyor. *See* Note 7.	*(4)* Remaining exposed main deck plating not considered in item (1) and representative exposed superstructure deck plating (i.e. poop, bridge and forecastle deck). *(5)* All keel plates outside the cargo tank length. Also additional bottom plates in way of cofferdams, Machinery space and aft end of tanks. *(6)* Plating of sea chests. Also side shell plating in way of overboard discharges, as considered necessary by the Surveyor. *(7)* Suspect areas, as required by the Surveyor. See Note 7.

Note *1.* For areas in tanks where coatings are found to be in GOOD condition, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.5 Definitions, the extent of thickness measurements may be specially considered, but not dispensed with in its entirety.

Note *2.* Transverse sections should be chosen where the largest reductions are likely to occur, or as revealed by deck plating measurement.

Note *3.* Where two or three transverse sections are required to be measured, at least one is to include a ballast tank within 0.5*L* amidships.

Note *4.* All cargo hold hatch covers and coamings, where fitted, are to be measured on ore/oil and ore/bulk/oil ships.

Note *5.* For oil tankers (including ore/oil and ore/bulk/oil ships), with length ≥ 130 m and over 10 years of age, the longitudinal strength is to be evaluated. In such cases, a minimum of three transverse sections are to be measured within 0.5*L* amidships.

Note *6.* A transverse section includes all longitudinal members such as plating, longitudinals and girders at the deck, sides, bottom, inner bottom and longitudinal bulkheads. For transversely framed vessels, a transverse section includes adjacent frames and their end connections in way of transverse sections.

Note 7. Suspect areas are locations showing substantial corrosion and/or are considered by the Surveyor to be prone to rapid wastage.

7. 7. 2 In areas where substantial corrosion, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.5 Definitions, has been noted then additional measurements are to be carried out, as applicable, in accordance with Table 3. 7. 7: Thickness measurement - Single hull oil tankers, ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships - Bottom structure with substantial corrosion, Table 3. 7. 8: Thickness measurement - Single hull oil tankers, ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships - Deck structure with substantial corrosion, Table 3. 7. 9: Thickness measurement - Single hull oil tankers, ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships - Shell and longitudinal bulkheads with substantial corrosion, Table 3. 7. 10: Thickness measurement - Single hull oil tankers, ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships - Transverse bulkheads and swash bulkheads with substantial corrosion, Table 3. 7. 11: Thickness measurement - Double hull oil tankers - Bottom, inner bottom and hopper structure with substantial corrosion, Table 3. 7. 12: Thickness measurement - Double hull oil tankers - Deck structure with substantial corrosion, Table 3. 7. 13: Thickness measurement - Double hull oil tankers - Wing ballast tank structure with substantial corrosion, Table 3. 7. 14: Thickness measurement - Double hull oil tankers - Longitudinal bulkhead structure in cargo tanks with substantial corrosion and Table 3. 7. 15: Thickness measurement - Double hull oil tankers - Transverse watertight and swash bulkhead structure in cargo tanks with substantial corrosion to determine the full extent of the corrosion pattern. The survey will not be considered complete until these additional thickness measurements have been carried out. For double hull oil tankers built in accordance with the IACS Common Structural Rules (CSR), the identified substantial corrosion areas are required to be examined and additional thickness measurements are to be carried out at Annual and Intermediate Surveys.

7. 7. 3 For **oil tankers** (including ore/oil and ore/bulk/oil ships) of 130 m in length and upwards (as defined by the *International Convention on Load Lines* in force), the ship's longitudinal strength is to be evaluated by using the thickness of structural members measured, renewed and reinforced as appropriate, during the Special Surveys carried out after the ship reaches 10 years of age.

7. 7. 4 Steel renewal evaluation of hatch covers and hatch coamings of cargo holds on combination carriers with contract for construction on or after 1 January 2004 is to be in accordance with IACS UR S21. These requirements are not applicable to ships built in accordance with the IACS Common Structural Rules (CSR). Further information is provided in the ACS document *Thickness Measurement and Close-Up Survey Guidance*.

7. 7. 5 Steel renewal is required where the gauged thickness is less than $t_{net} + 0.5$ mm. For definition of t_{net}, *see* Pt 4, Ch 7, 12.1 General 12.1.2.

7. 7. 6 Where the gauged thickness is within the range $t_{net} + 0.5$ mm and $t_{net} + 1.0$ mm, a coating (applied in accordance with coating manufacturer's requirements) or annual gauging may be adopted as an alternative to steel renewal.

Table 3. 7. 7: Thickness measurement - Single hull oil tankers, ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships - Bottom structure with substantial corrosion

Structural member	Extent of measurement	Pattern of measurement
(1) Bottom plating	Minimum of 3 bays across tank, including aft bay Measurement around and under all suction strums	5 point pattern for each panel between longitudinals and webs
(2) Bottom longitudinals	Minimum of 3 longitudinals in each bay where bottom plating measured	3 measurements in line across flange and 3 measurements on vertical web

(3) Bottom girders and brackets	At fore and aft transverse bulkhead, bracket toes and in centre of tanks	Vertical line of single measurements on web plating with 1 measurement between each panel stiffener, or a minimum of 3 measurements. 2 measurements across face flat. 5 point pattern on girder/bulkhead brackets
(4) Bottom transverse webs	3 webs in bays where bottom plating measured, with measurements at middle and both ends	5 point pattern over 2 m^2 area. Single measurements on face flat
(5) Panel stiffening	Where applicable	Single measurements

Table 3. 7. 8: Thickness measurement - Single hull oil tankers, ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships - Deck structure with substantial corrosion

Structural member	Extent of measurement	Pattern of measurement
(1) Deck plating	2 bands across tank	Minimum of 3 measurements per plate per band
(2) Deck longitudinals	Minimum of 3 longitudinals in each of 2 bays	3 measurements in line vertically on webs and 2 measurements on flange (if fitted)
(3) Deck girders and brackets	At fore and aft transverse bulkhead, bracket toes and in centre of tanks	Vertical line of single measurements on web plating with 1 measurement between each panel stiffener, or a minimum of 3 measurements. 2 measurements across face flat. 5 point pattern on girder/bulkhead brackets
(4) Deck transverse webs	Minimum of 2 webs with measurement at both ends and middle of span	5 point pattern over 2 m^2 area. Single measurements on face flat
(5) Panel stiffening	Where applicable	Single measurements

Table 3. 7. 9: Thickness measurement - Single hull oil tankers, ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships - Shell and longitudinal bulkheads with substantial corrosion

Structural member	Extent of measurement	Pattern of measurement
*(1)*Deckhead and bottom strakes and strakes in way of stringer platforms	Plating between each pair of longitudinals in a minimum of 3 bays	Single measurement
*(2)*All other strakes	Plating between every 3rd pair of longitudinals in same 3 bays	Single measurement
*(3)*Longitudinals – deckhead and bottom strakes	Each longitudinal in same 3 bays	3 measurements across web and 1 measurement on flange
*(4)*Longitudinals – all others	Every third longitudinal in same 3 bays	3 measurements across web and 1 measurement on flange
(5) Longitudinals – bracket	Minimum of 3 at top, middle and bottom of tank in same 3 bays	5 point pattern over area of bracket
(6) Web frames and cross ties	3 webs with minimum of 3 locations on each web, including in way of cross tie connections	5 point pattern over 2 m^2 area, plus single measurements on web frame and cross tie face flats

Table 3. 7. 10: Thickness measurement - Single hull oil tankers, ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships - Transverse bulkheads and swash bulkheads with substantial corrosion

Structural member	Extent of measurement	Pattern of measurement
(1) Deckhead and bottom strakes in way of stringer platforms	Plating between pair of stiffeners at 3 locations: approx. 1/4, 1/2 and 3/4 width of tank	5 point pattern between stiffeners over 1 m length
*(2)*All other strakes	Plating between pair of stiffeners at middle location	Single measurement
(3) Strakes in corrugated bulkheads	Plating for each change of scantling at centre of panel and at flange or fabricated connection	5 point pattern over 1 m^2 of plating
*(4)*Stiffeners	Minimum of 3 typical stiffeners	For web, 5 point pattern over span between bracket connections (2 measurements across web at each bracket connection and one at centre of span). For flange, single measurements at each bracket toe and at centre of span
*(5)*Brackets	Minimum of 3 at top, middle and bottom of tank	5 point pattern over area of bracket
*(6)*Deep webs and girders	Measurements at toe of bracket and at centre of span	For web, 5 point pattern over 1 m^2 area. 3 measurements across face flat
*(7)*Stringer platforms	All stringers with measurements at middle and both ends	5 point pattern over 1 m^2 area plus single measurements near bracket toes and on face flats

Table 3. 7. 11: Thickness measurement - Double hull oil tankers - Bottom, inner bottom and hopper structure with substantial corrosion

Structural member	Extent of measurement	Pattern of measurement
(1) Bottom, inner bottom and hopper plating	Minimum of 3 bays across double bottom tank, including aft bay. Measurement around and under all suction strums	5 point pattern for each panel between longitudinals and floors
*(2)*Bottom, inner bottom and hopper longitudinals	Minimum of 3 longitudinals in each bay where bottom plating measured	3 measurements in line across flange and 3 measurements on vertical web
*(3)*Bottom girders, including watertight girders	At the fore and aft watertight floors and in centre of tanks	Vertical line of single measurements on girder plating with 1 measurement between each panel stiffener, or a minimum of 3 measurements
(4) Bottom floors, including watertight floors	3 floors in bays where bottom plating measured, with measurements at both ends and middle	5 point pattern over 2 m^2 area
*(5)*Hopper web frame ring	3 floors in bays where bottom plating measured	5 point pattern over 1 m^2 of plating. Single measurements on flange

(6) Hopper transverse watertight bulkhead or swash bulkhead	*(i)* Lower $\frac{1}{3}$ of bulkhead	*(i)*5 point pattern over 1 m^2 of plating.
	(ii) Upper $\frac{2}{3}$ of bulkhead	*(ii)*5 point pattern over 2 m^2 of plating.
	(iii) Stiffeners (minimum of 3)	*(iii)*For web, 5 point pattern over span (2 measurements across web at each end and 1 at centre of span). For flange, single measurement at each end and centre of span.
(7) Panel stiffening	Where applicable	Single measurements

Table 3. 7. 12: Thickness measurement - Double hull oil tankers - Deck structure with substantial corrosion

Structural member	Extent of measurement	Pattern of measurement
*(1)*Deck plating	2 transverse bands across tank	Minimum of 3 measurements per plate per band
(2) Deck longitudinals	Every 3rd longitudinal in each of 2 bands with a minimum of 1 longitudinal	3 measurements in line vertically on webs and 2 measurements on flange (if fitted)
(3) Deck girders and brackets (usually in cargo tanks only)	At the fore and aft transverse bulkhead, bracket toes and in centre of tanks	Vertical line of single measurements on web plating with 1 measurement between each panel stiffener, or a minimum of 3 measurements. 2 measurements across flange. 5 point pattern on girder / bulkhead brackets
*(4)*Deck transverse webs	Minimum of 2 webs, with measurements at both ends and middle of span	5 point pattern over 1 m^2area. Single measurements on the flange
(5) Vertical web and transverse bulkhead in wing ballast tank (two metres from deck)	Minimum of 2 webs, and both transverse bulkheads	5 point pattern over 1 m^2 area
(6) Panel stiffening	Where applicable	Single measurements

Table 3. 7. 13: Thickness measurement - Double hull oil tankers - Wing ballast tank structure with substantial corrosion

Structural member	Extent of measurement	Pattern of measurement
(1) Side shell and longitudinal bulkhead plating:	*(i)*Plating between each pair of longitudinals in a minimum of 3 bays (along the tank)	*(i)*Single measurements
		(ii) Single measurements
*(i)*Upper strake and strakes in way of horizontal girders	*(ii)* Plating between every 3rd pair of longitudinals on same 3 bays	
(ii) All other strakes		
(2) Side shell and longitudinal bulkhead longitudinals on:	*(i)*Each longitudinal in same 3 bays	*(i)*3 measurements across web and 1 measurement on flange
*(i)*Upper strake	*(ii)* Every 3rd longitudinal in same 3 bays	*(ii)* 3 measurements across web and 1 measurement on flange
(ii) All other strakes		
*(3)*Longitudinals – brackets	Minimum of 3 at top, middle and bottom of tank in same 3 bays	5 point pattern over area of bracket

*(4)*Vertical web and transverse bulkheads (excluding deckhead area): *(i)* Strakes in way of horizontal girders *(ii)* Other strakes	*(i)* Minimum of 2 webs and both transverse bulkheads *(ii)* Minimum of 2 webs and both transverse bulkheads	*(i)* 5 point pattern over approximately 2 m^2 area *(ii)*2 measurements between each pair of vertical stiffeners
(5) Horizontal girders	Plating on each girder in a minimum of 3 bays	2 measurements between each pair of longitudinal girder stiffeners
(6) Panel stiffening	Where applicable	Single measurements

Table 3. 7. 14: Thickness measurement - Double hull oil tankers - Longitudinal bulkhead structure in cargo tanks with substantial corrosion

Structural member	Extent of measurement	Pattern of measurement
(1) Deckhead and bottom strakes, and strakes in way of horizontal stringers on transverse bulkheads	Plating between each pair of longitudinals in a minimum of 3 bays	Single measurement
(2) All other strakes	Plating between every 3rd pair of longitudinals in same 3 bays	Single measurement
*(3)*Longitudinals on deckhead and bottom strakes	Each longitudinal in same 3 bays	3 measurements across web and 1 measurements on flange
*(4)*All other longitudinals	Every 3rd longitudinal in same 3 bays	3 measurements across web and 1 measurements on flange
*(5)*Longitudinals – brackets	Minimum of 3 at top, middle and bottom of tank in same 3 bays	5 point pattern over area of bracket
(6) Web frames and cross ties	3 webs with minimum of 3 locations on each web, including in way of cross tie connections	5 point pattern over approximately 2 m^2 area of webs, plus single measurements on flanges of web frames and cross ties
(7) Lower end brackets (opposite side of web frame)	Minimum of 3 brackets	5 point pattern over approximately 2 m^2 area of brackets, plus single measurements on bracket flanges

Table 3. 7. 15: Thickness measurement - Double hull oil tankers - Transverse watertight and swash bulkhead structure in cargo tanks with substantial corrosion

Structural member	Extent of measurement	Pattern of measurements
*(1)*Upper and lower stool, where fitted	Transverse band within 25 mm of welded connection to inner bottom/deck plating Transverse band within 25 mm of welded connection to shelf plate	5 point pattern between stiffeners over 1 m length
*(2)*Deckhead and bottom strakes, and strakes in way of horizontal stringers	Plating between pair of stiffeners at 3 locations; approximately ¼, ½ and ¾ width of tank.	5 point pattern between stiffeners over 1 m length
(3) All other strakes	Plating between pair of stiffeners at middle location	Single measurement
(4) Strakes in corrugated bulkheads	Plating for each change of scantling at centre of panel and at flange of fabricated connection	5 point pattern over approximately 1 m^2 of plating

(5) Stiffeners	Minimum of 3 typical stiffeners	For web, 5 point pattern over span between bracket connections (2 measurements across web at each bracket connection and 1 at centre of span). For flange, single measurement at bracket toe and at centre of span
*(6)*Brackets	Minimum of 3 at top, middle and bottom of tank	5 point pattern over area of bracket
(7) Horizontal stringers	All stringers with measurements at both ends and middle	5 point pattern over 1 m^2 area, plus single measurements near bracket toes and on flanges

PART

1

CHAPTER 3 **Periodical Survey Regulations**

SECTION 8 **Special Survey - Chemical Tankers - Hull requirements**

8. 1 General

8. 1. 1 The requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 2 Annual Surveys - Hull and machinery requirements, Pt 1, Ch 3, 4 Bottom Surveys – In Dry-Dock and In-Water - Hull and machinery requirements and Pt 1, Ch 3, 5 Special Survey - General - Hull requirements are to be complied with as applicable.

8. 1. 2 In order to maintain and/or assign the **ESP** notation, the following requirements apply to the surveys of the hull structure and piping systems in way of the cargo tanks, pump rooms, cofferdam, pipe tunnels, void spaces, double bottom tanks, etc. in way of the cargo tank area and all salt-water ballast tanks.

8. 2 Documentation

8. 2. 1 The Owner is to obtain, supply and maintain documentation on board as follows:

a. A survey file comprising reports of structural surveys, thickness measurement and executive hull summary in accordance with the *2011 ESP Code – International Code on the Enhanced Programme of Inspections During Surveys of Bulk Carriers and Oil Tankers, 2011 – Resolution A.1049(27)*.

b. Supporting documentation consisting of:

i. Main structural plans of cargo tanks and ballast tanks.

ii. Previous repair history.

iii. Cargo and ballast history.

iv. Records of inspections by ship's personnel with reference to structural deterioration in general, leakages in bulkheads and piping and the condition of the corrosion prevention systems, if any.

v. Extent of use of inert gas plant and tank cleaning procedures.

vi. Any other information that may help to identify critical structural areas and/or suspect areas requiring inspection.

vii. Survey Programme as required by Pt 1, Ch 3, 8.3 Planning for survey.

The complete documentation in Pt 1, Ch 3, 8.2 Documentation 8.2.1 is to be readily available for examination by the Surveyor and should be used as a basis for survey.

8. 2. 2 The documentation is to be kept on board for the lifetime of the ship.

8. 3 Planning for survey

8. 3. 1 A Survey Programme is to be submitted by the Owner and is to include the proposals for survey, including the means of providing access for Close-up Survey, thickness measurement, tank testing and should take account of the information detailed in Pt 1, Ch 3, 8.2 Documentation 8.2.1.

8. 3. 2 Prior to the development of the Survey Programme a Survey Planning Questionnaire is to be completed and submitted by the Owner, *see* Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.6 Preparation for survey and means of access 1.6.16.

8. 4 Overall Survey

8. 4. 1 All cargo tanks and salt-water ballast tanks including double bottom tanks, pump rooms, pipe tunnels, cofferdams and void spaces bounding cargo tanks, deck and outer hull are to be examined, and this examination is to be supplemented by Close-up Survey, thickness measurement and testing as applicable, to ensure that the structural integrity remains effective.

8. 4. 2 The examination is to be sufficient to ascertain substantial corrosion, significant deformation, fractures, damages or other structural deterioration and, if deemed necessary by the Surveyor, suitable non-destructive examination may be required.

8. 4. 3 Where substantial corrosion, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.5 Definitions, is identified and is not rectified, this will be subject to re-examination at Annual and/or Intermediate Surveys. In the case of salt-water ballast tanks the examination will be required at Annual Survey and Intermediate Survey. In the case of cargo tanks the examination will be required at Intermediate Surveys.

8. 4. 4 All cargo piping on deck, and cargo and ballast piping, within those spaces indicated in Pt 1, Ch 3, 8.4 Overall Survey 8.4.1 are to be examined and tested under working conditions to ensure that tightness and condition remain satisfactory. Special attention is to be given to ballast piping in cargo tanks and any cargo piping in ballast tanks and void spaces.

8. 4. 5 The survey of stainless steel tanks may be carried out as an Overall Survey supplemented by Close-up Survey as deemed necessary by the Surveyor.

8. 4. 6 Where salt-water ballast tanks have been converted to void spaces the survey extent is to be based upon salt-water ballast tank requirements.

8. 4. 7 Where provided, in association with a corrosion control **CC** special features notation, as defined in the *Register Book*, the condition of the protective coating or corrosion prevention system of cargo tanks is to be examined.

8. 4. 8 The attachment to the structure and condition of anodes in tanks is to be examined.

8. 4. 9 Where fitted, the strums of the cargo suction pipes are to be removed or lifted to facilitate examination of the shell plating and bulkheads in the vicinity, unless other means for visual inspection of these parts are provided.

8. 5 Testing

8. 5. 1 The minimum ballast tank testing requirements are given in Table 3. 8. 1: Tank testing requirements - Chemical tankers and, where required, the Surveyor may extend the tank testing if deemed necessary. Other arrangements for cargo tank testing will be considered on application. The remaining requirements for tank testing, as applicable, are given in Pt 1, Ch 3, 5.3 Examination and testing 5.3.6.

8. 5. 2 The minimum cargo tank testing requirements are given in Table 3. 8. 1: Tank testing requirements - Chemical tankers, boundaries of cargo tanks are to be tested to the highest point that liquid will rise to under service conditions. Other arrangements for cargo tank testing will be considered on application.

Cargo tank testing carried out by the ship's crew under the direction of the Master may be accepted by the Surveyor provided the following conditions are complied with:

a. A tank testing procedure specifying fill heights, tanks being filled and bulkheads being tested has been submitted by the Owner and reviewed by ACS prior to the testing being carried out.
b. There is no record of leakage, distortion or substantial corrosion that would affect the structural integrity of the tank.
c. The tank testing has been satisfactorily carried out within the special survey window not more than 3 months prior to the date of the survey on which the overall or close-up survey is completed.
d. The satisfactory results of the testing are recorded in the ship's logbook.
e. The internal and external condition of the tanks and associated structure is found satisfactory by the Surveyor at the time of the overall and close-up survey.

Table 3. 8. 1: Tank testing requirements - Chemical tankers

Special Survey I (Ships 5 years old)	Special Survey II and subsequent (Ships 10 years old and over)
All ballast tank boundaries	All ballast tank boundaries
Cargo tank boundaries facing ballast tanks, void spaces, pipe tunnels, pump rooms or cofferdams	All cargo tank bulkheads

8. 6 Close-up Survey

8. 6. 1 The minimum requirements for Close-up Survey are given in Table 3. 8. 2: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Single hull chemical tankers (Single hull chemical tankers) and Table 3. 8. 3: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Double hull chemical tankers (Double hull chemical tankers).

Table 3. 8. 2: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Single hull chemical tankers

Special Survey I (Ships 5 years old)	Special Survey II (Ships 10 years old)	Special Survey III (Ships 15 years old)	Special Survey IV (Ships 20 years old and over)
(1) One web frame ring in a ballast wing tank. *See* Notes 1 and 6.	(1) All web frame rings in a ballast wing tank or double bottom ballast tank. *See* Notes 1 and 6.	(1) All web frame rings in all ballast tanks. *See* Notes 1 and 6.	(1) As Special Survey III.
(2) One deck transverse in a cargo tank or on deck. *See* Note 2.	(2) One deck transverse in each remaining ballast tank or on deck. *See* Note 2.	(2) All web frame rings in a cargo wing tank. *See* Notes 1 and 6.	(2) Additional transverse areas if deemed necessary by the Surveyor.
(3) One transverse bulkhead in a ballast tank. *See* Note 3.	(3) One deck transverse in a cargo wing tank or on deck. *See* Note 2.	(3) One web frame ring in each remaining cargo tank. *See* Note 6.	

(4) One transverse bulkhead in a cargo wing tank. *See* Notes 3 and 5. (5) One transverse bulkhead in a cargo centre tank. *See* Notes 3 and 5.	(4) One deck transverse in two cargo centre tanks or on deck. *See* Note 2. (5) Both transverse bulkheads in a ballast wing tank. *See* Note 4. (6) One transverse bulkhead in remaining ballast tank. *See* Note 3. (7) One transverse bulkhead in a cargo wing tank. *See* Notes 3 and 5. (8) One transverse bulkhead in two cargo centre tanks. *See* Notes 3 and 5.	(4) All transverse bulkheads – in all cargo and ballast tanks. *See* Note 4.	

Note *1.* Ballast double hull tank means double bottom tank, double side tank or double deck tank, as applicable, even if these tanks are separate.

Note *2.* Deck transverse including adjacent deck structural members (or external structure on deck in way of the tank).

Note *3.* Transverse bulkhead lower part including girder system and adjacent structural members.

Note *4.* Transverse bulkhead complete, including girder system and adjacent members, and adjacent longitudinal bulkhead structure.

Note *5.* Where there are no centre tanks, the transverse bulkheads in wing tanks are to be subject to Close-up Survey. Where there are no wing tanks, the transverse bulkheads in centre tanks are to be subject to Close-up Survey.

Note *6.* Complete transverse web frame ring including adjacent structural members.

Table 3. 8. 3: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Double hull chemical tankers

Special Survey I (Ships 5 years old)	Special Survey II (Ships 10 years old)	Special Survey III (Ships 15 years old)	Special Survey IV (Ships 20 years old and over)
(1) One web frame ring in a ballast double hull tank. *See* Notes 1 and 9.	(1) All web frame rings in a ballast wing tank or ballast double hull tank. *See* Notes 1 and 9.	(1) All web frame rings in all ballast tanks. *See* Note 1.	(1) As Special Survey III.

(2) One deck transverse in a cargo tank or on deck. *See* Note 2.	(2) The knuckle area and the upper part (approx. 3 m) of one web frame ring in each remaining ballast tank. *See* Note 6.	(2) All web frame rings in a cargo wing tank. *See* Note 7.	(2) Additional transverse areas if deemed necessary by the Surveyor.
(3) One transverse bulkhead in a ballast tank. *See* Note 5.	(3) One deck transverse in two cargo tanks. *See* Note 2.	(3) One web frame ring in each remaining cargo tank. *See* Note 7.	
(4) One transverse bulkhead in a cargo wing tank. *See* Notes 3 and 8.	(4) One transverse bulkhead in each ballast tank. *See* Note 5.	(4) All transverse bulkheads – in all cargo and ballast tanks. *See* Notes 4 and 5.	
(5) One transverse bulkhead in a cargo centre tank. *See* Notes 3 and 8.	(5) One transverse bulkhead in a cargo wing tank. *See* Note 3.		
	(6) One transverse bulkhead in two cargo centre tanks. *See* Notes 3 and 8.		

Note *1.* Web frame ring in a ballast tank includes the vertical web in side tank, hopper web in hopper tank, floor in double bottom tank and deck transverse in a double deck tank (where fitted) and adjacent structural members. In peak tanks, a web frame means a complete transverse web frame ring, including adjacent structural members.

Note *2.* Deck transverse including adjacent deck structural members (or external structure on deck in way of the tank), where applicable.

Note *3.* Transverse bulkhead lower part in cargo tanks, including girder system and adjacent structural members (including longitudinal bulkheads) and internal structure of lower stools, where fitted.

Note *4.* Transverse bulkhead complete in cargo tanks, including girder system, adjacent structural members (including longitudinal bulkheads) and internal structure of lower and upper stools, where fitted.

Note *5.* Transverse bulkhead complete in ballast tanks, including girder system and adjacent structural members including longitudinal bulkheads, girders in double bottom tanks, inner bottom plating, hopper side, connecting brackets.

Note *6.* The knuckle area and the upper part (approximately 3 m), including adjacent structural members. Knuckle area is the area of the web frame around the connections of the sloping hopper plating to the inner hull bulkhead and the inner bottom plating, up to 2 m from the corners both on the bulkhead and the double bottom.

Note *7.* Web frame ring in a cargo tank includes deck transverse, longitudinal bulkhead structural elements and cross ties, where fitted, and adjacent structural members.

Note *8.* Where there are no centre tanks, the transverse bulkheads in wing tanks are to be subject to Close-up Survey. Where there are no wing tanks, the transverse bulkheads in centre tanks are to be subject to Close-up Survey.

Note *9.* Ballast double hull tank includes double bottom tank, double side tank and double deck tank even though these tanks may be separate.

8. 6. 2 The Surveyor may extend the Close-up Survey, if deemed necessary, taking into account the maintenance of the tanks under survey, the condition of the corrosion prevention system, and the following:

a. Structural arrangements or details which have suffered defects in similar spaces or on similar ships.

b. Spaces which have structures approved with reduced scantlings in association with an approved corrosion control system.

8. 6. 3 For areas in tanks where coatings are found to be in GOOD condition, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.5 Definitions, the extent of Close-up Surveys may be specially considered.

8. 7 Thickness measurement

8. 7. 1 The minimum requirements for thickness measurements are given in Table 3. 8. 4: Minimum requirements for thickness measurement - Single and double hull chemical tankers, *see also* Pt 1, Ch 3, 5.6 Thickness measurement.

Table 3. 8. 4: Minimum requirements for thickness measurement - Single and double hull chemical tankers

Special Survey I (Ships 5 years old)	Special Survey III (Ships 15 years old)	Special Survey IV (Ships 20 years old and over)
(1) 1 section of deck plating for the full beam of the ship within 0.5L amidships (in way of a ballast tank, if any). *(2)* Measurements for general assessment and recording of corrosion pattern of the structural members subject to Close-up Survey in accordance with Table 3. 8. 2: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Single hull chemical tankers and Table 3. 8. 3: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Double hull chemical tankers. *See* Note 4 *(3)* Suspect areas, as required by the Surveyor. *See* Note 6.	*(1)* Within the cargo area: a. Each deck plate. b. 2 transverse sections. *See* Notes 2, 3 and 5. *(2)* Measurements for general assessment and recording of corrosion pattern of the structural members subject to Close-up Survey in accordance with Table 3. 8. 2: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Single hull chemical tankers and Table 3. 8. 3: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Double hull chemical tankers. *See* Note 4. *(3)* Selected wind and water strakes outside the cargo area.	*(1)* Within the cargo area: a. Each deck plate. b. 3 transverse sections. *See* Notes 2, 3 and 5. c. Each bottom plate. *(2)* Measurements for general assessment and recording of corrosion pattern of the structural members subject to Close-up Survey in accordance with Table 3. 8. 2: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Single hull chemical tankers and Table 3. 8. 3: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Double hull chemical tankers. *See* Note 4.
Special Survey II (Ships 10 years old)	*(4)* All wind and water strakes within the cargo area.	*(3)* All wind and water strakes over the full length of the ship, port and starboard.

(1) Within the cargo area: *(a)* Each deck plate. *(b)* 1 transverse section. *See* Notes 2, 3 and 5. *(2)* Measurements for general assessment and recording of corrosion pattern of the structural members subject to Close-up Survey in accordance with Table 3. 8. 2: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Single hull chemical tankers and Table 3. 8. 3: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Double hull chemical tankers. *See* Note 4 *(3)* Selected wind and water strakes outside the cargo area. *(4)* Suspect areas, as required by the Surveyor. *See* Note 6.	*(5)* Suspect areas, as required by the Surveyor. *See* Note 6.	*(4)* Remaining exposed main deck plating not considered in item (1) and representative exposed superstructure deck plating (i.e. poop, bridge and forecastle deck). *(5)* All keel plates outside the cargo tank length. Also additional bottom plates in way of cofferdams, machinery space and aft end of tanks. *(6)* Plating of seachests. Also side shell plating in way of overboard discharges, as considered necessary by the Surveyor. *(7)* Suspect areas, as required by the Surveyor. *See* Note 6.

Note *1.* For areas in tanks where coatings are found to be in GOOD condition, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.5 Definitions, the extent of thickness measurements may be specially considered, but not dispensed with in its entirety.

Note *2.* Transverse sections should be chosen where the largest reductions are likely to occur, or as revealed by deck plating measurements.

Note *3.* Where two or three transverse sections are required to be measured, at least one is to include a ballast tank within 0.5*L* amidships.

Note *4.* Transverse bulkhead complete including stiffening system.

Note *5.* A transverse section includes all continuous longitudinal members such as plating, longitudinals and girders at the deck, sides, bottom, inner bottom and longitudinal bulkheads. For transversely framed vessels, a transverse section includes adjacent frames and their end connections in way of transverse sections.

Note *6.* Suspect areas are locations showing substantial corrosion and/or are considered by the Surveyor to be prone to rapid wastage.

8. 7. 2 In areas where substantial corrosion, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.5 Definitions, has been noted, then additional measurements are to be carried out, as applicable, in accordance with Table 3. 8. 5: Thickness measurement - Single and double hull chemical tankers - Bottom, inner bottom and hopper structure with substantial corrosion, Table 3. 8. 6: Thickness measurement - Single and double hull chemical tankers - Deck structure with substantial corrosion, Table 3. 8. 7: Thickness measurement - Single and double hull chemical tankers - Side shell and longitudinal bulkheads with substantial corrosion and Table 3. 8. 8: Thickness measurement - Single and double hull chemical tankers - Transverse watertight bulkheads and swash bulkheads with substantial corrosion to determine the full extent of the corrosion pattern. The survey will not be considered complete until these additional thickness measurements have been carried out.

Table 3. 8. 5: Thickness measurement - Single and double hull chemical tankers - Bottom, inner bottom and hopper structure with substantial corrosion

Structural member	Extent of measurement	Pattern of measurement
(1) Bottom, inner bottom and hopper plating.	Minimum of 3 bays across double bottom tank, including aft bay. Measurement around and under all suction strums	5 point pattern for each panel between longitudinals and floors.
(2) Bottom, inner bottom and hopper longitudinals.	Minimum of 3 longitudinals in each bay where bottom plating measured.	3 measurements in line across flange and 3 measurements on vertical web.
(3) Bottom girders, including watertight girders.	At the fore and aft watertight floors and in centre of tanks.	Vertical line of single measurements on girder plating with 1 measurement between each panel stiffener, or a minimum of 3 measurements. 2 measurements across face flat (if fitted).
(4) Bottom floors, including watertight floors.	3 floors in bays where bottom plating measured, with measurements at both ends and middle.	5 point pattern over 2 m^2 area.
(5) Hopper web frame ring	3 floors in bays where bottom plating measured	5 point pattern over 1 m^2 of plating. Single measurements on flange
(6) Hopper transverse watertight bulkhead or swash bulkhead	(i) Lower $\frac{1}{3}$ of bulkhead	(i) 5 point pattern over 1 m^2 of plating
	(ii) Upper $\frac{2}{3}$ of bulkhead	(ii) 5 point pattern over 2 m^2 of plating
	(iii) Stiffeners (minimum of 3)	(iii) For web, 5 point pattern over span (2 measurements across web at each end and 1 at centre of span). For flange, single measurement at each end and centre of span
(7) Panel stiffening	Where applicable	Single measurements

Table 3. 8. 6: Thickness measurement - Single and double hull chemical tankers - Deck structure with substantial corrosion

Structural member	Extent of measurement	Pattern of measurement
(1) Deck plating	2 transverse bands across tank	Minimum of 3 measurements per plate per band
(2) Deck longitudinals	Every 3rd longitudinal in each of 2 bands with a minimum of 1 longitudinal	3 measurements in line vertically on webs and 2 measurements on flange (if fitted)
(3) Deck girders and brackets	At the fore and aft transverse bulkhead, bracket toes and in centre of tanks	Vertical line of single measurements on web plating with 1 measurement between each panel stiffener, or a minimum of 3 measurements. 2 measurements across flange. 5 point pattern on girder/bulkhead brackets

(4) Deck transverse webs	Minimum of 2 webs, with measurements at both ends and middle of span	5 point pattern over 1 m^2 area. Single measurements on the flange
(5) Vertical web and transverse bulkhead in wing ballast tank (2 m from deck) – for double hull chemical tankers	Minimum of 2 webs, and both transverse bulkheads	5 point pattern over 1 m^2 area
(6) Panel stiffening	Where applicable	Single measurements

Table 3. 8. 7: Thickness measurement - Single and double hull chemical tankers - Side shell and longitudinal bulkheads with substantial corrosion

Structural member	Extent of measurement	Pattern of measurement
(1) Side shell and longitudinal bulkhead plating:		
(i) Top and bottom strakes, and strakes in way of horizontal girders	(i) Plating between each pair of longitudinals in a minimum of 3 bays (along the tank)	(i) Single measurements
(ii) All other strakes	(ii) Plating between every 3rd pair of longitudinals on same 3 bays	(ii) Single measurements
(2) Side shell and longitudinal bulkhead longitudinals on:		
(i) Top and bottom strakes	(i) Each longitudinal in same 3 bays	(i) 3 measurements across web and 1 measurement on flange
(ii) All other strakes	(ii) Every 3rd longitudinal in same 3 bays	(ii) 3 measurements across web and 1 measurement on flange
(3) Longitudinals – brackets	Minimum of 3 at top, middle and bottom of tank in same 3 bays	5 point pattern over area of bracket
(4) Vertical web and transverse bulkheads of double side tanks (excluding deckhead area):		
(i) Strakes in way of horizontal girders	(i) Minimum of 2 webs and both transverse bulkheads	(i) 5 point pattern over approximately 2 m^2 area
(ii) Other strakes	(ii) Minimum of 2 webs and both transverse bulkheads	(ii) 2 measurements between each pair of vertical stiffeners

(5)	Web frames and cross ties for other tanks than double side tanks	3 webs with minimum of 3 locations on each web, including in way of cross tie connections and lower end bracket	5 point pattern over approximately 2 m^2 area of webs, plus single measurements on flanges of web frame and cross ties
(6)	Horizontal girders	Plating on each girder in a minimum of 3 bays	2 measurements between each pair of longitudinal girder stiffeners
(7)	Panel stiffening	Where applicable	Single measurements

Table 3. 8. 8: Thickness measurement - Single and double hull chemical tankers - Transverse watertight bulkheads and swash bulkheads with substantial corrosion

Structural member	Extent of measurement	Pattern of measurement
(1) Upper and lower stool, where fitted	Transverse band within 25 mm of welded connection to inner bottom/deck plating Transverse band within 25 mm of welded connection to shelf plate	5 point pattern between stiffeners over 1 m length
(2) Top and bottom strakes, and strakes in way of horizontal stringers	Plating between pair of stiffeners at 3 locations; approximately $\frac{1}{4}$, $\frac{1}{2}$, and $\frac{3}{4}$ width of tank	5 point pattern between stiffeners over 1 m length
(3) All other strakes	Plating between pair of stiffeners at middle location	Single measurement
(4) Strakes in corrugated bulkheads	Plating for each change of scantling at centre of panel and at flange of fabricated connection	5 point pattern over approximately 1 m^2 of plating
(5) Stiffeners	Minimum of 3 typical stiffeners	For web, 5 point pattern over span between bracket connections (2 measurements across web at each bracket connection and 1 at centre of span). For flange, single measurement at bracket toe and at centre of span
(6) Brackets	Minimum of 3 at top, middle and bottom of tank	5 point pattern over area of bracket
(7) Horizontal stringers	All stringers with measurements at both ends and middle	5 point pattern over 1 m^2 area, plus single measurements near bracket toes and on flanges
(8) Deep webs and girders	Measurements at toe of bracket and centre of span	For webs, 5 point pattern over 1 m^2 area. 3 measurements across face flat

8. 8 Ships over 10 years old

8. 8. 1 Selected steel cargo pipes outside cargo tanks and ballast pipes passing through cargo tanks are to be:

a. Thickness measured at random or selected pipe lengths to be opened for internal inspection.
b. Pressure tested to the maximum working pressure.

Note Special attention is to be given to cargo/slop discharge piping through ballast tanks and void spaces.

PART

1

CHAPTER **3** **Periodical Survey Regulations**

SECTION **9** **Ships for liquefied gases**

9. 1 General

9. 1. 1 The requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 2 Annual Surveys - Hull and machinery requirements to Pt 1, Ch 3, 7 Special Survey - Oil tankers (including ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships) - Hull requirements are to be complied with, as applicable.

9. 1. 2 Prior to the inspection of cargo tanks, surrounding spaces, associated piping, fittings and equipment, etc. the respective items are to be cleaned and thoroughly cleared of gas. Every precaution is to be taken to ensure safety during inspection.

9. 1. 3 The following documentation, as applicable, is to be available on board the ship:

a. Relevant instruction and information material such as cargo handling plans, filling limit information, cooling down procedures, etc.
b. A copy of the *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk*.
c. Test records of secondary barrier.
d. Loading and stability information, including damage stability.
e. A document specifying the maximum allowable loading limits for each cargo tank and product, at each applicable loading temperature and maximum reference temperature approved by the Administration. The pressures at which the pressure relief valves (PRVs) have been set shall also be stated in the document.
f. The cargo system operation manuals approved by the Administration.

9. 1. 4 For requirements of Special Survey for electrical equipment, *see* Pt 1, Ch 3, 14 Electrical equipment.

9. 1. 5 The survey requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 9.2 Annual Surveys − Basic requirements to Pt 1, Ch 3, 9.11 Special Survey III and Special Surveys thereafter (ships 15 years old and over) shall additionally be applied to gas fuel tanks and their associated systems, as applicable.

9. 2 Annual Surveys − Basic requirements

9. 2. 1 The Annual Survey is preferably to be carried out during a loading or discharging operation. Access to cargo tanks or inerted hold spaces, necessitating gasfreeing/ aerating will normally not be necessary unless required by the Regulations.

9. 2. 2 The ship's log and operational records for the cargo containment system covering the period from the previous survey are to be examined. Any malfunction of the system entered in the log is to be investigated, the cause ascertained, and that part of the system at fault is to be found or placed in good order.

9. 2. 3 Instrumentation and safety systems are to be surveyed as follows:

a. The instrumentation of the cargo installations with regard to pressure, temperature and liquid level is to be verified in good working order by one or more of the following methods:
   i. Visual external examination.
   ii. Comparing of read outs from different indicators.
   iii. Consideration of read outs with regard to the actual cargo and/or actual conditions.
   iv. Examination of maintenance records with reference to cargo plant instrumentation maintenance manual.
   v. Verification of calibration status of the measuring instruments.
b. The low level, high level, and overfill alarms are to be examined and tested to ascertain that they are in working order.
c. The alarms associated with the following are to be tested as applicable:
   i. Cargo tank high and low pressure.
   ii. Cargo tank temperature.
   iii. Cargo hold pressure.
   iv. Interbarrier space pressure.
   v. Inner hull temperature.
   vi. Secondary barrier temperature.
   vii. Cargo Hold or Interbarrier bilge level detection.
d. Control devices for the cargo containment systems and cargo handling equipment, together with any associated shutdown and/or interlock, are to be checked under simulated working conditions and, if necessary, recalibrated. Such safety systems include but are not limited to:
   i. Cargo tank overfill protection including cargo pump, compressor and other cargo machinery automatic shutdown.
   ii. Cargo pump, compressor and other cargo machinery shutdown on low cargo tank pressure or cargo tank and interbarrier/hold space differential pressure.
   iii. Cargo pump automatic shutdown on low level or current;
e. The emergency shutdown system is to be tested, without flow in the pipe lines, to verify that the system will cause the cargo pumps, compressors and other cargo machinery, as applicable, to stop.
f. Consideration will be given to the acceptance of simulated tests, provided that they are carried out at the cargo temperature, or comprehensive maintenance records, including details of tests held, in accordance with the cargo plant instrumentation maintenance manual.

9. 2. 4 Cargo gas leakage detection systems are to be examined and tested to ascertain that they are in working order and calibrated using sample gas.

9. 2. 5 Inert gas/dry air installations including the means for prevention of backflow of cargo vapour to gas-safe spaces are to be verified as being in satisfactory operating condition.

9. 2. 6 Ventilation systems and air locks in working spaces are to be checked for satisfactory operation.

9. 2. 7 Cargo pipeline, valves and fittings are to be generally examined, with special reference to expansion bellows, supports and vapour seals on insulated pipes. It is to be verified that all accessible cargo piping systems are electrically bonded to the hull.

9. 2. 8 Portable and/or fixed drip trays, or insulation for deck protection in the event of cargo leakage, are to be examined for condition.

9. 2. 9 The means for accomplishing gas tightness of the wheelhouse doors and windows is to be examined. All windows and side-scuttles within the area required to be of the fixed type (non-opening) are to be examined for gas tightness. The closing devices for all air intakes and openings into accommodation spaces, service spaces, machinery spaces, control stations and approved openings in superstructures and deckhouses facing the cargo area or bow and stern loading/unloading arrangements are to be examined. For ships carrying toxic gases such devices should be capable of being operated from inside the space.

9. 2. 10 Venting systems, including protection screens if provided, for the cargo tanks, inter-barrier spaces and hold spaces are to be visually examined externally. It is to be verified that the cargo tank relief valves are sealed and that the certificate for the relief valves opening/closing pressures is on board the ship.

9. 2. 11 Mechanical ventilation fans in gas hazardous zones and spaces are to be visually examined. Adequate spare parts should be carried for each type of fan installed.

9. 2. 12 Electrical equipment, cables and supports in gas hazardous zones and spaces shall be examined as far as practicable. Alarms and safety systems associated with pressurised lighting systems and any safety device associated with nonsafe type electrical equipment that is protected by air-locks are to be verified.

9. 2. 13 Heating arrangements, if fitted, for cofferdams and other spaces shall be verified in good working order.

9. 2. 14 All accessible gas-tight bulkhead penetrations including gas-tight shaft sealings are to be visually examined.

9. 2. 15 The sealing arrangements for tanks or tank domes penetrating decks or tank covers are to be externally examined.

9. 2. 16 The survey is to consist of an examination for the purpose of ensuring, as far as practicable, that the hull and piping are maintained in a satisfactory condition.

a. The examination of the hull and piping is to include the following:
   i. hull plating and closing appliances as far as can be seen
   ii. watertight penetrations as far as practicable
   iii. weather decks
   iv. flame screens on vents to all bunker tanks
   v. bunker and vent piping systems
b. The examination of the cargo pump rooms and compressor rooms and, as far as practicable, pipe tunnels if fitted is to include the following:
   i. all pump room and compressor room bulkheads for signs of leakage or fractures and, in particular, the sealing arrangements of all penetrations of pump room and compressor room bulkheads
   ii. condition of all piping systems (for cargo piping systems, *see* Pt 1, Ch 3, 9.2 Annual Surveys – Basic requirements 9.2.7).

9. 2. 17 The Surveyor is to carry out an examination and thickness measurement of structure identified at the previous Special Survey or Intermediate Survey as having substantial corrosion, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.5 Definitions. The extent of thickness measurements is to be increased in accordance with Table 3. 9. 4: Thickness measurement - Ships for liquefied gases - Structural areas with substantial corrosion to determine the full extent of the corrosion pattern. The survey will not be considered complete until these additional thickness measurements have been carried out.

9. 3 Annual Surveys – Reliquefaction/refrigeration equipment

9. 3. 1 Where reliquefaction or refrigeration equipment for cargo temperature and pressure control is fitted, the following are to be examined, so far as practicable:

a. The machinery under working conditions.
b. The shells of all pressure vessels in the system, externally. Insulation need not be removed for this examination, but any deterioration of insulation or evidence of dampness which could lead to external corrosion of the vessels or their connections, is to be investigated.
c. Primary refrigerant gas and liquid pipes, cargo vapour and liquid condensate pipes and condenser cooling water pipes. Insulation need not be removed, but any deterioration or evidence of dampness is to be investigated.

d. The reliquefaction/refrigeration plant spare gear.

9. 3. 2 Reference should be made to the Special Survey requirements for guidance on Continuous Survey arrangements.

9. 4 Annual Surveys - Gas fuel burning equipment and other equipment components

9. 4. 1 The following components are to be generally examined externally. If insulation is fitted, this need not be removed, but any deterioration of insulation, or evidence of dampness which could lead to external corrosion of the vessels or their connections, is to be investigated:

a. Heat exchangers and pressure vessels for use with gas fuel burning in boilers or machinery.
b. Cargo heaters, vaporisers, masthead heaters and other miscellaneous pressure vessels.

9. 4. 2 Controls and interlocks are to be checked.

9. 4. 3 Alarm systems are to be checked to ascertain that they are in working order.

9. 4. 4 Exhaust fans and/or pressurising system for gas trunking are to be tested.

9. 4. 5 Ventilation systems are to be checked for satisfactory operation, if separate from the cargo venting arrangements.

9. 4. 6 Fuel tanks and relief valves are to be externally examined, where applicable.

9. 5 Annual Surveys – Cargo containment systems

9. 5. 1 Where the insulation arrangement is such that the insulation cannot be examined, the surrounding structures of wing tanks, double bottom tanks and cofferdams are to be examined for cold spots, prior to the survey. This examination is to be held at a convenient cargo discharge operation with the cargo tanks loaded at approximately the minimum notation temperature.

9. 5. 2 On application by the Owner, consideration will be given to the cold spot examination, where applicable, being carried out by the ship's staff.

9. 5. 3 When tests are required after repairs, independent cargo tanks, other than independent tanks type C, are to be tested by hydraulic or hydropneumatic means as appropriate. Test heads and pressures should be as defined in *Part E - Tank Types* of the *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk*. Cargo tanks of the membrane or semi-membrane type are to be tested by means of a detectable gas in the inter-barrier spaces and discolouring paint on the weld seams of the cargo tanks wall, or other suitable means. Independent cargo tanks of type C are to be tested hydraulically at 1.25 times the approved maximum vapour pressure.

9. 5. 4 For membrane containment systems, the Surveyor is to receive confirmation from the Master that the nitrogen control system for insulation and inter-barrier spaces is operating normally.

9. 6 Intermediate Surveys

9. 6. 1 The Intermediate Survey intends to supplement the Annual Survey by testing cargo handling installations with related automatic control, alarm and safety systems for correct functioning. The Intermediate Survey is preferably to be carried out with the ship in a gas-free condition. The extent of the testing required for the Intermediate Survey will normally be such that the survey cannot be carried out during a loading or discharging operation.

9. 6. 2 In addition to the requirements for Annual Survey and the requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 3.3 Intermediate Surveys 3.3.1 to Pt 1, Ch 3, 3.3 Intermediate Surveys 3.3.9, the following are to be dealt with as applicable:

a. Examination of means for draining the vent piping system.
b. Verification that pipelines and cargo tanks are electrically bonded to the hull.
c. Verification that the heating arrangements, if any, for steel structures are satisfactory.
d. Where required by the manufacturer's maintenance instructions, cargo tank and inter-barrier space pressure and vacuum relief valve settings are to be checked and adjusted as required. Cargo tank pressure relief valve harbour settings are also to be checked, if applicable. Cargo tank pressure relief valves are to lift at a pressure not more than the percentage given below, above the maximum vapour pressure for which the tanks have been approved.
   i. For 0 to 0.15 MPa, 10 per cent.
   ii. For 0.15 to 0.3 MPa, 6 per cent.
   iii. For pressures exceeding 0.3 MPa, 3 per cent.
   iv. Valves may be removed from the tanks for the purpose of checking.
e. A General Examination within the zones and spaces deemed as hazardous, such as cargo compressor rooms and spaces adjacent to and zones above cargo areas, for defective and non-certified safe-type electrical equipment, improperly installed, defective and dead wiring. An electrical insulation resistance test of the circuits terminating in, or passing through the hazardous zones and spaces, is to be carried out. If the ship is not in a gas free condition the results of previously recorded test readings may be accepted.

9. 6. 3 For ships over 5 years of age and up to 10 years of age, an overall survey of representative ballast tanks is to be carried out. Where a hard protective coating is found to be in POOR condition, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.5 Definitions, where a soft or semi-hard coating has been applied or where a protective coating was not applied from the time of construction, the survey is to be extended to other ballast tanks of the same type.

9. 6. 4 For ships over 10 years of age, an overall survey of all ballast tanks is to be carried out.
a. If such examinations reveal no visible structural defects, the examination may be limited to verification that the corrosion prevention system remains in GOOD or FAIR condition.
b. The condition of the corrosion prevention system identified during the Survey may result in the tanks being subject to further examination at Annual Surveys, in accordance with Pt 1, Ch 3, 2.2 Annual Surveys 2.2.30. For independent double bottom ballast tanks, the examination at Annual Surveys will be at the discretion of the Surveyor.

9. 6. 5 The minimum requirements for Close-up Survey are given in Table 3. 9. 1: Ships for liquefied gases - Intermediate Surveys.

Table 3. 9. 1: Ships for liquefied gases - Intermediate Surveys

Ships between 10 and 15 years old	Ships greater than 15 years old
(1) Close-up survey of all web frames and both transverse bulkheads in a representative ballast tank. *See* Notes 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6. (2) Close-up survey of the upper part of one web frame in one other representative ballast tank. *See* Notes 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6. (3) Close-up survey of one transverse bulkhead in one other representative ballast tank. *See* Notes 1, 3, 4, 5 and 6.	(1) Close-up survey of all web frames and both transverse bulkheads in a two representative ballast tanks. *See* Notes 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

Note *1.* Ballast tanks include topside, double hull side, double bottom, hopper side, or any combined arrangement of the aforementioned, and peak tanks where fitted.

Note *2.* Complete transverse web frame including adjacent structural members.

Note *3.* Transverse bulkhead complete, including girder system and adjacent structural members and adjacent longitudinal bulkhead structure.

Note *4.* For areas in cargo tanks and salt-water ballast tanks subject to Close-up Survey, the Close-up Survey may be specially considered but not dispensed with in its entirety, provided the Surveyor is satisfied with the Close-up Survey that there is no structural diminution and the overall tank protective coating remains in GOOD condition.

Note *5.* The Surveyor may extend the Close-up Survey, if deemed necessary, taking into account the maintenance of the tanks under survey, the condition of the corrosion prevention system, the structural arrangements or details which have suffered defects in similar spaces or on similar ships and tanks having structures approved with reduced scantlings.

Note *6.* For ships having independent cargo tanks of Type C, with a midship section similar to that of a general cargo ship, the extent of Close-up Survey may be specially considered.

9. 7 Special Survey I (ships five years old) – General requirements

9. 7. 1 The requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 9.1 General to Pt 1, Ch 3, 9.6 Intermediate Surveys are to be complied with.

9. 7. 2 The requirements for Close-up Survey and thickness measurement are given in Pt 1, Ch 3, 9.12 Close-up Survey and Pt 1, Ch 3, 9.13 Thickness measurement.

9. 7. 3 All cargo tanks are to be examined internally, also externally so far as practicable, particular attention being paid to the plating in way of supports of securing arrangements, tower structures, seatings and pipe connections, also to sealing arrangements in way of the deck penetrations. Provided that the structural examination is satisfactory, that the gas leakage monitoring systems have been found to be operating satisfactorily and that the voyage records have not shown any abnormal operation, cargo tanks do not require to be hydraulically tested. The primary membranes of 'Gas Transport' design should be examined with the primary insulation space under a vacuum of at least -500 mbar gauge. For 'Moss Type' LNG cargo tanks, the Structural Transition Joints (STJ) are to be examined at the port, starboard, forward and aft locations. Insulation is to be removed as required. Non-destructive testing may be required where considered necessary. For membrane containment systems with corrugated primary barriers, in view of the sloshing loads experienced in service, measurements should, if required, be taken inside the cargo tanks of deformations of the primary barrier corrugations in order to assess the condition of the containment system in accordance with the system designer's procedures as approved by ACS.

9. 7. 4 The non-destructive testing of cargo tanks is to be carried out as follows:

a. Non-destructive testing is to supplement cargo tank inspection with special attention to be given to the integrity of the main structural members, tank shell and highly stressed parts, including welded connections as deemed necessary by the Surveyor. The following items are, inter alia, considered as highly stressed parts:
   i. Cargo tanks supports and anti-rolling/antipitching devices;
   ii. Web frames or stiffening rings;
   iii. Swash bulkhead boundaries;
   iv. Dome and stump connections to tank shell;
   v. Foundations for pumps, towers, ladders, etc.;
   vi. Pipe connections.

b. For independent tanks of Type B, the extent of non-destructive testing shall be as given in the programme specially prepared for the cargo tank design.

c. Independent cargo tanks of Type C are to be subjected to non-destructive testing of the plating in way of supports and also at selected lengths of welds. Where such testing raises doubt as to the structural integrity, a hydraulic test should be carried out at 1.25 times the approved maximum vapour pressure. Alternatively, consideration will be given to pneumatic testing under special circumstances, provided full details are submitted for approval.

d. At each alternate Special Survey (i.e. SSII, SSIV and so on), all independent cargo tanks of Type C are to be either:
i. Hydraulically or hydro-pneumatically tested to 1.25 times MARVS, followed by non-destructive testing in accordance with paragraph Pt 1, Ch 3, 9.7 Special Survey I (ships five years old) − General requirements 9.7.4 above, or,
ii. Subjected to a thorough, planned, non-destructive testing. This testing is to be carried out in accordance with a programme specially prepared for the tank design. If a special programme does not exist, the following applies:

- cargo tank supports and anti-rolling/anti-pitching devices;
- stiffening rings;
- Y-connections between tank shell and a longitudinal bulkhead of bi-lobe tanks;
- swash bulkhead boundaries;
- dome and sump connections to the tank shell;
- foundations for pumps, towers, ladders etc.;
- pipe connections.

At least 10 per cent of the length of the welded connections in each of the above mentioned areas is to be tested. This testing is to be carried out internally and externally as applicable. Insulation is to be removed as necessary for the required non-destructive testing.

9. 7. 5 Deck mounted cargo storage tanks are to be examined in the same manner as main cargo tanks.

9. 7. 6 For membrane containment systems, a tightness test of the primary and secondary barrier shall be carried out in accordance with the system designer's procedures and acceptance criteria as approved by ACS. Low differential pressure tests may be used for monitoring the cargo containment system performance, but are not considered an acceptable test for the tightness of the secondary barrier. For membrane containment systems with glued secondary barriers, if the designer’s threshold values are exceeded, an investigation is to be undertaken and additional testing such as thermographic or acoustic emissions testing should be carried out.

9. 7. 7 Where a cargo tank or the hull structure is insulated and the insulation is accessible, the insulation should be examined externally, together with any vapour or protective barrier, and sections removed for examination, if considered necessary by the Surveyor. Special attention should be given to insulation in way of chocks, supports and keys. Portions of the insulation are also to be removed, if required by the Surveyor, to enable the condition of the plating to be ascertained. Where the insulation is not accessible, *see* Pt 1, Ch 3, 9.5 Annual Surveys − Cargo containment systems 9.5.1.

9. 7. 8 Cargo tank internal pipes and fittings are to be examined, and all valves and cocks in direct communication with the interiors of the tanks are to be opened out for inspection and the connection pipes are to be examined internally, so far as practicable.

9. 7. 9 Relief valves are to be surveyed as follows:

a. The pressure relief valves for the cargo tanks are to be opened for examination, adjusted, function tested, and sealed. If the cargo tanks are equipped with relief valves with non-metallic membranes in the main or pilot valves, such non-metallic membranes are to be replaced.

b. Pressure relief valves are subsequently to be adjusted to lift at a pressure in accordance with Pt 1, Ch 3, 9.6 Intermediate Surveys 9.6.2.(d). Relief valve harbour settings are to be checked, if applicable. Valves may be removed from the shell for the purpose of making this adjustment under pressure of air or other suitable gas.

c. Where a proper record of continuous overhaul and retesting of individually identifiable relief valves is maintained, consideration will be given to acceptance on the basis of opening, internal examination, and testing of a representative sampling of valves, including each size and type of liquefied gas or vapour relief valve in use, provided there is logbook evidence that the remaining valves have been overhauled and tested since crediting of the previous Special Survey.

d. Relief valves on cargo gas and liquid pipelines are to have their pressure settings checked. The valves may be removed from the pipelines for this purpose. At the Surveyor's discretion a sample of each size and type of valve may be opened for examination and testing.

9. 7. 10 All cargo pumps, cargo booster pumps and cargo vapour pumps are to be opened out for examination. If requested by the Owner, these items may be examined on a Continuous Survey basis, provided the interval between examination of each item does not exceed five years. Pumping systems for inter-barrier spaces are to be checked and verified to be in good working order.

9. 7. 11 Piping for cargo and process systems including valves, actuators and compensators are to be opened for examination. Insulation may need to be removed, as deemed necessary, to ascertain the condition of the piping. If any doubt exists regarding the integrity of the piping based upon visual examination then, where deemed necessary by the Surveyor, a pressure test at 1.25 times MARVS for the pipeline is to be carried out. The complete piping systems are to be tested for leaks after re-assembly.

9. 7. 12 Equipment for the production of inert gas is to be examined and shown to be operating satisfactorily within the gas specification limits. Pipelines, valves, etc. for the distribution of the inert gas are to be generally examined. Pressure vessels for the storage of inert gas are to be examined internally and externally and the securing arrangements are to be specially examined. Pressure relief valves are to be demonstrated to be in good working order. Liquid nitrogen storage vessels are to be examined, so far as practicable, and all control equipment, alarms and safety devices are to be verified as operational.

9. 7. 13 Gastight bulkhead shaft seals are to be opened out so that the sealing arrangements may be checked.

9. 7. 14 Sea connections associated with the cargo handling equipment are to be opened out when the ship is in dry-dock.

9. 7. 15 The arrangements for discharging the cargo overboard in an emergency are to be checked.

9. 8 Special Survey I (ships five years old) – Reliquefaction/refrigeration equipment

9. 8. 1 Each reciprocating compressor is to be opened out. Cylinder bores, pistons, piston rods, connecting rods, valves and seats, glands, relief devices, suction filters and lubricating arrangements are to be examined. Crankshafts are to be examined, but crankcase glands and the lower half of main bearings need not be exposed if the Surveyor is satisfied with the alignment and wear.

9. 8. 2 Where other than reciprocating-type compressors are fitted, or where there is a program of replacement instead of surveys on board, alternative survey arrangements will be considered. Each case will be given individual consideration.

9. 8. 3 The water end covers of condensers are to be removed for examination of the tubes, tubeplates and covers.

9. 8. 4 Refrigerant condenser cooling water pumps, including standby pump(s) which may be used on other services, are to be opened out for examination.

9. 8. 5 Where a pressure vessel is insulated, sufficient insulation is to be removed, especially in way of connections and supports, to enable the vessel's condition to be ascertained.

9. 8. 6 Insulated pipes are to have sufficient insulation removed to enable their condition to be ascertained. Vapour seals are to be specially examined for their condition.

9. 8. 7 The Surveyor is to satisfy himself that all pressure relief valves and/or safety discs throughout the system are in good order. No attempt, however, is to be made to test primary refrigerant pressure relief valves on board ship.

9. 8. 8 The items covered by Pt 1, Ch 3, 9.8 Special Survey I (ships five years old) – Reliquefaction/refrigeration equipment 9.8.1 to Pt 1, Ch 3, 9.8 Special Survey I (ships five years old) – Reliquefaction/refrigeration equipment 9.8.4 may, at the request of the Owner, be examined on a Continuous Survey basis provided the interval between examination of each item does not exceed five years.

9. 9 Special Survey I (ships five years old) - Gas fuel burning equipment

9. 9. 1 Where gas fuel is used for main propulsion purposes, the associated compressors and heat exchangers are to be opened out and examined as for reliquefaction/refrigeration equipment. The glycol/water or steam side of the heaters is to be hydraulically tested to 1.5 times the design pressure.

9. 9. 2 Gas fuel pipe trunks or casings are to be generally examined and the exhaust or inerting arrangements for these trunks are to be verified.

9. 9. 3 All alarms associated with the gas fuel burning systems are to be verified.

9. 10 Special Survey II and Special Surveys thereafter (ships 10 years old and over)

9. 10. 1 The requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 9.1 General to Pt 1, Ch 3, 9.9 Special Survey I (ships five years old) - Gas fuel burning equipment are to be complied with.

9. 10. 2 Water cooled condensers in which the primary refrigerant is in contact with the shell are to have the end covers removed and the shell pneumatically tested to a pressure equal to the designed working pressure.

9. 10. 3 All other pressure vessels in the reliquefaction/refrigeration system, gas fuel burning system and other handling systems are to be pneumatically tested to a pressure equal to the designed working pressure.

9. 10. 4 The requirements for Close-up Survey and thickness measurement are given in Pt 1, Ch 3, 9.12 Close-up Survey and Pt 1, Ch 3, 9.13 Thickness measurement.

9. 11 Special Survey III and Special Surveys thereafter (ships 15 years old and over)

9. 11. 1 The requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 9.1 General toPt 1, Ch 3, 9.10 Special Survey II and Special Surveys thereafter (ships 10 years old and over) are to be complied with.

9. 11. 2 For independent tanks of Type B, the Owner is to submit proposals for the extent of non-destructive testing of the cargo tanks well in advance of the Special Survey.

9. 12 Close-up Survey

9. 12. 1 The minimum requirements for Close-up Survey are given Table 3. 9. 2: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Ships for liquefied gases.

9. 12. 2 The Surveyor may extend the Close-up Survey, if deemed necessary, taking into account the maintenance of the tanks under survey, the condition of the corrosion prevention system and the structural arrangements or details which have suffered defects in similar spaces or on similar ships and tanks having structures approved with reduced scantlings.

9. 12. 3 For areas in tanks where coatings are found to be in GOOD condition, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.5 Definitions, the extent of Close-up Survey may be specially considered.

Table 3. 9. 2: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Ships for liquefied gases

Special Survey I (Ships 5 years old)	Special Survey II (Ships 10 years old)	Special Survey III (Ships 15 years old)	Special Survey IV (Ships 20 years old and over)
(1) One web frame in: (a) a topside ballast tank (b) a hopper side ballast tank (c) a double hull side ballast tank *See* Notes 1, 2, 5 and 6. (2) One transverse bulkhead in a ballast tank. *See* Notes 1, 3, 4, 5 and 6.	(1) All web frames in either a topside ballast tank or a double hull side ballast tank. If such tanks are not fitted, another ballast tank is to be selected. *See* Notes 1, 2, 5 and 6. (2) One web frame in each remaining ballast tank. *See* Notes 1, 2, 5 and 6. (3) One transverse bulkhead in each ballast tank. *See* Notes 1, 3, 5 and 6	(1) All web frames in all ballast tanks. *See* Notes 1, 2, 5 and 6. (2) All transverse bulkheads in all ballast tanks. *See* Notes 1, 3, 5 and 6.	(1) All web frames in all ballast tanks. *See* Notes 1, 2, 5 and 6. (2) All transverse bulkheads in all ballast tanks. *See* Notes 1, 3, 5 and 6.

Note *1.* Ballast tanks include topside, double hull side, double bottom, hopper side, or any combined arrangement of the aforementioned, and peak tanks where fitted.

Note *2.* Complete transverse web frame ring including adjacent structural members.

Note *3.* Transverse bulkhead complete, including girder system and adjacent structural members and adjacent longitudinal bulkhead structure.

Note *4.* Transverse bulkhead lower part including girder system and adjacent structural members.

Note *5.* For ships having independent cargo tanks of Type C, with a midship section similar to that of a general cargo ship, the extent of Close-up Survey may be specially considered.

Note *6.* The Surveyor may extend the Close-up Survey, if deemed necessary, taking into account the maintenance of the tanks under survey, the condition of the corrosion prevention system, the structural arrangements or details which have suffered defects in similar spaces or on similar ships and tanks having structures approved with reduced scantlings.

9. 13 Thickness measurement

9. 13. 1 The minimum requirements for thickness measurement are given in Table 3. 9. 3: Minimum requirements for thickness measurement - Ships for liquefied gases.

9. 13. 2 In areas where substantial corrosion, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.5 Definitions, has been noted, then additional measurements are to be carried out in accordance with Table 3. 9. 4: Thickness measurement - Ships for liquefied gases - Structural areas with substantial corrosion to determine

the full extent of the corrosion pattern. The survey will not be considered complete until these additional thickness measurements have been carried out.

Table 3. 9. 3: Minimum requirements for thickness measurement - Ships for liquefied gases

Special Survey I (Ships 5 years old)	Special Survey III (Ships 15 years old)	Special Survey IV and subsequent (Ships 20 years old and over)
(1) 1 section of deck plating for the full beam of the ship within 0.5*L* amidships in way of a ballast tank, if any. (2) Measurements for general assessment and recording of corrosion pattern of the structural members subject to Close-up Survey in accordance with Table 3. 9. 2: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Ships for liquefied gases. (3) Suspect areas, as required by the Surveyor. *See* Note 5.	(1) Within the cargo area: (a) Each deck plate (b) 2 transverse sections. *See* Notes 2, 3 and 4. (2) Measurements for general assessment and recording of corrosion pattern of the structural members subject to Close-up Survey in accordance with Table 3. 9. 2: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Ships for liquefied gases.	(1) Within the cargo area: (a) Each deck plate. (b) 3 transverse sections. *See* Notes 2, 3 and 4. (c) Each bottom plate. (d) Duct keel plating and internals. (2) Measurements for general assessment and recording of corrosion pattern of the structural members subject to Close-up Survey in accordance with Table 3. 9. 2: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Ships for liquefied gases.
Special Survey II (Ships 10 years old)	(3) Selected wind and water strakes outside the cargo area.	(3) All wind and water strakes over the full length of the ship, port and starboard.

(1) Within the cargo area: (a) Each deck plate. (b) 1 transverse section. *See* Notes 2, 3 and 4. (2) Measurements for general assessment and recording of corrosion pattern of the structural members subject to close-up survey in accordance with Table 3. 9. 2: Minimum requirements for Close-up Survey - Ships for liquefied gases. *See* Note 1. (3) Selected wind and water strakes outside the cargo area. (4) Where considered necessary by the Surveyor, the inner bottom plating and adjacent tank supports are to be subject to thickness measurement for general assessment and recording of the corrosion pattern. (5) For those ships designated to carry light oils in the independent cargo tanks, thickness measurement of the independent cargo tank structure is to be carried out as considered necessary by the Surveyor. (6) Suspect areas, as required by the Surveyor. See Note 5.	(4) All wind and water strakes within the cargo area. (5) Where considered necessary by the Surveyor, the inner bottom plating and adjacent tank supports are to be subject to thickness measurement for general assessment and recording of the corrosion pattern. (6) For those ships designated to carry light oils in the independent cargo tanks, thickness measurement of the independent cargo tank structure is to be carried out as considered necessary by the Surveyor. (7) Suspect areas, as required by the Surveyor. *See* Note 5.	(4) Remaining exposed main deck plating not considered in item (1) and representative exposed superstructure deck plating (i.e. poop, bridge and forecastle deck). (5) All keel plates outside the cargo tank length. Also additional bottom plates in way of cofferdams, machinery space and aft end of tanks. (6) Plating of sea chests. Also side shell plating in way of overboard discharges, as considered necessary by the Surveyor. (7) Where considered necessary by the Surveyor, the inner bottom plating and adjacent tank supports are to be subject to thickness measurement for general assessment and recording of the corrosion pattern. (8) For those ships designated to carry light oils in the independent cargo tanks, thickness measurement of the independent cargo tank structure is to be carried out as considered necessary by the Surveyor. (9) Suspect areas, as required by the Surveyor. *See* Note 5.

Note *1.* For areas in tanks where coatings are found to be in GOOD condition, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.5 Definitions, the extent of thickness measurements may be specially considered, but not dispensed with in its entirety.

Note *2.* Transverse sections should be chosen where the largest reductions are likely to occur, or as revealed by deck plating measurements.

Note *3.* Where transverse sections are required to be measured, at least one is to include a ballast tank within 0.5*L* amidships.

Note *4.* A transverse section includes all continuous longitudinal members such as plating, longitudinals and girders at the deck, sides, bottom, inner bottom and longitudinal bulkheads. For transversely framed vessels, a transverse section includes adjacent frames and their end connections in way of transverse sections

Note *5.* Suspect areas are locations showing substantial corrosion and/or are considered by the Surveyor to be prone.

Table 3. 9. 4: Thickness measurement - Ships for liquefied gases - Structural areas with substantial corrosion

Structural member	Extent of measurement	Pattern of measurement

Plating	Suspect area and adjacent plates	5 point pattern over 1 m^2 of plating
Stiffeners	Suspect area	3 measurements each in line across web and flange

PART

1

CHAPTER **3** **Periodical Survey Regulations**

SECTION **10** **Dredgers, hopper dredgers, sand carriers, hopper barges and reclamation craft**

10. 1 General

10. 1. 1 The requirements of this Section are to be complied with, as applicable, in addition to the survey requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 2 Annual Surveys - Hull and machinery requirements, Pt 1, Ch 3, 3 Intermediate Surveys - Hull and machinery requirements, Pt 1, Ch 3, 4 Bottom Surveys – In Dry-Dock and In-Water - Hull and machinery requirements and Pt 1, Ch 3, 5 Special Survey - General - Hull requirements. Where surveys are required on dredging or hopper equipment such as gantries, bottom doors and their operating gear, positioning spuds and suction pipe attachments or split hull devices such as actuating and locking devices, these will be limited to the extent considered necessary by the Surveyor to satisfy himself that their condition or malfunction will not adversely affect the ship's structure.

10. 1. 2 Where applicable, the Bottom Survey is to include the examination of hopper doors and their fittings, and of hopper valves.

10. 2 Special Surveys

10. 2. 1 On ships up to 10 years old (Special Survey I and II):

a. Hoppers are to be cleared and cleaned as necessary and examined.
b. Where applicable, hopper doors or valves are to be opened and closed, so far as practicable, but keel blocks need not normally be moved specially to permit this to be done.
c. The integrity of hopper overflows and diluting water inlet and distribution structures is to be confirmed. Weir valves and sluices are to be tested to ensure proper operation, particular attention being paid to the lower weir when weirs are fitted at more than one level.
d. Attention is to be given to shell plating in way of hopper overflows.
e. The attachment to the ship's structure of all main items of dredging equipment, including gantries, `A' frames, spud controlgear supports and items provided to facilitate separation of split hulls including hinge pin gudgeons, anchorages for rams and locking devices, is to be carefully examined to ensure that no fracture is present.

10. 2. 2 On ships 15 years old and over (Special Survey III and subsequent Special Surveys):

a. Attention is to be given by the Surveyor to the structure in way of dredging pumps.
b. Hopper doors, valves and items provided to facilitate separation of split hulls are to be checked for proper operation, and their hinges, controlgear and other fittings are to be examined for wear or distortion. All seals and weardown strips are to be replaced if necessary, but a watertight seal is not normally required. Attention is to be paid to areas likely to be suffering from excessive erosion.

c. Those items of dredging gear and equipment whose efficiency is not part of classification but whose failure or malfunctioning is, nevertheless, likely to adversely affect the ship's structure, are to be examined to ensure that the structural integrity of the ship is maintained.

PART

1

CHAPTER **3** **Periodical Survey Regulations**

SECTION **11** **Machinery surveys - General requirements**

11. 1 Annual, Intermediate and Bottom Surveys

11. 1. 1 For Annual, Intermediate and Docking Surveys, *see* Pt 1, Ch 3, 2 Annual Surveys - Hull and machinery requirements, Pt 1, Ch 3, 3 Intermediate Surveys - Hull and machinery requirements and Pt 1, Ch 3, 4 Bottom Surveys – In Dry-Dock and In-Water - Hull and machinery requirements.

11. 1. 2 For ships assigned the notation 'laid-up', a general examination of the machinery is to be carried out in lieu of the normal Annual Survey requirements.

11. 2 Complete Surveys

11. 2. 1 While the ship is in dry-dock, all openings to the sea in the machinery spaces and pump-rooms, together with the valves, cocks and the fastenings with which these are connected to the hull, are to be examined.

11. 2. 2 All shafts (except screwshafts and tube shafts, for which special arrangements are detailed in Pt 1, Ch 3, 18 Screwshafts, tube shafts and propellers), thrust block and all bearings are to be examined. The lower halves of bearings need not be exposed if alignment and wear are found to be acceptable.

11. 2. 3 An examination is to be made of all reduction gears complete with all wheels, pinions, shafts, bearings and gear teeth, thrust bearings and incorporated clutch arrangements.

11. 2. 4 The following auxiliaries and components are also to be examined:

a. Auxiliary engines, auxiliary air compressors with their intercoolers, filters and/or oil separators and safety devices, and all pumps and components used for essential services.
b. Steering machinery.
c. Windlass and associated driving equipment, where fitted.
d. Evaporators (other than those of vacuum type) and their safety valves, which should be seen in operation under steam.
e. The holding down bolts and chocks of main and auxiliary engines, gearcases, thrust blocks and intermediate shaft bearings.
f. Where Thrusters and/or Podded Propulsors are fitted and have been assigned the ACSPlus descriptive note **ThCM**, the degree of inspection required whilst in dock will be determined by the analysis of Condition Monitoring records. Refer to *ACSPlus Procedure Machinery Planned Maintenance and Condition Monitoring*, Section 8.

11. 2. 5 All air receivers for essential services, together with their mountings, valves and safety devices, are to be cleaned internally and examined internally and externally. If internal examination of the air receivers is not practicable, they are to be tested hydraulically to 1.3 times the working pressure.

11. 2. 6 The valves, cocks and strainers of the bilge system, including bilge injection, are to be opened up as considered necessary by the Surveyor and, together with pipes, are to be examined and tested

under working conditions. The fuel oil, feed, lubricating oil and cooling water systems, emissions abatement plant for combustion machinery where installed, as well as the Ballast Water Treatment System (BWTS) where installed, ballast connections and blanking arrangements to deep tanks which may carry liquid or dry cargoes, together with all pressure filters, heaters and coolers used for essential services, are to be opened up and examined or tested, as considered necessary by the Surveyor. All safety devices for the foregoing items are to be examined.

11. 2. 7 Water ingress detection arrangements fitted on single hold cargo ships having length less than 80 m and bulk carriers and flooding detection systems fitted on passenger ships are to be tested to demonstrate that they are in good working order. Alternatively, this testing may be conducted during the required hull Special Survey space examinations, *see also* Pt 1, Ch 3, 5.3 Examination and testing.

11. 2. 8 Fuel tanks which do not form part of the ship's structure are to be examined and, if considered necessary by the Surveyor, they are to be tested to the pressure specified for new tanks. The tanks need not be examined internally at the first survey if they are found satisfactory on external inspection. The mountings, fittings and remote controls of all fuel oil tanks are to be examined, so far as practicable.

11. 2. 9 Where remote and/or automatic controls are fitted for essential machinery, they are to be tested to demonstrate that they are in good working order.

11. 2. 10 For ships fitted with a dynamic positioning system, the control system and associated machinery items are to be examined and tested under operating conditions to an approved Test Schedule.

11. 2. 11 In addition to the above, detailed requirements for steam and gas turbines and steam engines, engines, electrical installations and boilers are given in Pt 1, Ch 3, 12 Turbines and steam engines - Detailed requirements, Pt 1, Ch 3, 13 Reciprocating internal combustion engines - Detailed requirements, Pt 1, Ch 3, 14 Electrical equipment and Pt 1, Ch 3, 15 Boilers respectively. In certain instances, upon application by the Owner or where indicated by the maker's servicing recommendations, the Committee will give consideration to the circumstances where deviation from these detailed requirements is warranted, taking account of design, appropriate indicating equipment (e.g. vibration indicators) and operational records.

11. 2. 12 For a fuel installation using **gases or other low-flashpoint fuels** *see also* Pt 1, Ch 3, 24.8 Complete Surveys - General requirements and Pt 1, Ch 3, 24.9 Complete Surveys - Consumers and other equipment.

PART

1

CHAPTER 3 **Periodical Survey Regulations**

SECTION 12 **Turbines and steam engines - Detailed requirements**

12. 1 Complete Surveys

12. 1. 1 The requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 11 Machinery surveys - General requirements are to be complied with.

12. 1. 2 The working parts of the main engine and attached pumps, and of auxiliary machinery used for essential services, are to be opened out and examined, including:

a. For reciprocating engines:
   i. Bulkhead stop valves and manoeuvring valves.
   ii. Cylinders.
   iii. Pistons, piston rods, connecting rods, crossheads and guides.
   iv. Valves and valve gear.
   v. Crankshaft.

b. For turbine machinery:
   i. Blading and rotors.
   ii. Flexible couplings.
   iii. Casings.

12. 1. 3 In gas turbines and free piston gas generators, the following parts, also, are to be opened out and examined:

- Impellers or blading.
- Rotors and casings of the air compressors.
- Combustion chambers and burners.
- Intercoolers and heat exchangers.
- Gas and air piping, and fittings.
- Starting and reversing arrangements.

12. 1. 4 Where gas turbines operate in conjunction with free piston gas generators, the following parts of the latter are to be opened out and examined:

- Gas and air compressor cylinders and pistons.
- Compressor end covers.
- Valves and valve gear.
- Fuel pumps and fittings.

- Synchronizing and controlgear.
- Cooling system.
- Explosion relief devices.
- Gas and air piping.
- Receivers and valves, including by-pass arrangements.

12. 1. 5 Condensers, steam reheaters, desuperheaters which are not incorporated in the boilers, and any other appliances used for essential services, are to be examined to the satisfaction of the Surveyor and, if it is considered necessary, they are to be tested.

12. 1. 6 The manoeuvring of the engines is to be tested under working conditions.

12. 1. 7 Exhaust steam turbines supplying power for main propulsion purposes in conjunction with reciprocating engines together with their gearing and appliances, steam compressors or electrical machinery, are to be examined, so far as practicable. Where cone connections to internal gear shafts are fitted, the coned ends are to be examined, so far as practicable.

12. 1. 8 In ships having essential auxiliary machinery driven by engines, the prime movers of these auxiliaries are to be examined as detailed in Pt 1, Ch 3, 13 Reciprocating internal combustion engines - Detailed requirements.

PART

1

CHAPTER 3 **Periodical Survey Regulations**

SECTION 13 **Reciprocating internal combustion engines - Detailed requirements**

13. 1 Scope

13. 1. 1 The requirements of this Section are applicable to reciprocating internal combustion engines, operating on liquid, gas or dual fuel, providing power for services essential to the safety of the vessel.

13. 2 Complete Surveys

13. 2. 1 The requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 11 Machinery surveys - General requirements are to be complied with.

13. 2. 2 The following parts are to be opened out and examined:

- Cylinders and covers.
- Pistons, piston rods, connecting rods, crossheads and guides.
- Valves and valve gear.
- Crankshafts and all bearings.
- Crankcases, bedplates and entablatures.
- Crankcase door fastenings, explosion relief devices and scavenge relief devices.
- Scavenge pumps, scavenge blowers, superchargers and their associated coolers.
- Air compressors and their intercoolers.
- Filters and/or separators and safety devices.
- Fuel pumps and fittings.
- Camshaft drives and balancer units.
- Vibration dampers or detuners.
- Flexible couplings and clutches.
- Reverse gears.
- Attached pumps and cooling arrangements.

13. 2. 3 Selected pipes in the starting air system are to be removed for internal examination and are to be hammer tested. If any appreciable amount of lubricating oil is found in the pipes, the starting air

system is to be thoroughly cleaned internally by steaming out, or other suitable means. Some of the pipes selected are to be those adjacent to the starting air valves at the cylinders and to the discharges from the air compressors.

13. 2. 4 The electric ignition system, if fitted, is to be examined and tested.

13. 2. 5 The manoeuvring of engines is to be tested under working conditions. Initial starting arrangements are to be tested.

13. 2. 6 Where steam is used for essential purposes, the condensing plant, feed pumps and fuel oil burning plant are to be examined and the steam pipes examined and tested as detailed in Pt 1, Ch 3, 16 Steam pipes.

PART

1

CHAPTER **3** **Periodical Survey Regulations**

SECTION **14** **Electrical equipment**

14. 1 Annual and Intermediate Surveys

14. 1. 1 The electrical contacts of air circuit-breakers are to be visually inspected and maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations by suitably qualified and trained personnel. Appropriate maintenance records are to be made available to the attending Surveyor on request.

14. 1. 2 Where harmonic filters are fitted, the harmonic distortion level is to be measured annually and after any modification to the electrical distribution system or associated consumers. As a minimum, harmonic distortion measurements are to be taken at the main busbar under seagoing conditions, as close to the annual survey as possible, and readings are to be recorded when the greatest amount of distortion is indicated, by suitably qualified and trained personnel. Records are to include which equipment was running including the load on it and the filters that were in service. These records are to be made available to the attending Surveyor on request.

14. 1. 3 The requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 2.2 Annual Surveys and Pt 1, Ch 3, 3.3 Intermediate Surveys are to be complied with as far as applicable.

14. 2 Complete Surveys

14. 2. 1 An electrical insulation resistance test is to be made on the electrical equipment and cables. The installation may be sub-divided, or equipment which may be damaged disconnected, for the purpose of this test.

14. 2. 2 The fittings on the main and emergency switchboard, section boards and distribution boards are to be examined and over-current protective devices and fuses inspected to verify that they provide suitable protection for their respective circuits.

14. 2. 3 Generator circuit-breakers are to be tested, so far as practicable, to verify that protective devices including preference tripping relays, if fitted, operate satisfactorily.

14. 2. 4 Air circuit-breakers for essential or emergency services and rated at 800 A and above are to be surveyed to ensure that the manufacturer's recommended number of switching options has not been exceeded. *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 7.3 Circuit-breakers 7.3.6. Where a breaker is not fitted with an automatic counter, a written record is to be kept.

14. 2. 5 The electric cables are to be examined, so far as practicable, without undue disturbance of fixtures or casings, unless opening up is considered necessary as a result of observation or of the tests required by Pt 1, Ch 3, 14.2 Complete Surveys 14.2.1.

14. 2. 6 The generator prime movers are to be surveyed as required by Pt 1, Ch 3, 12 Turbines and steam engines - Detailed requirements and Pt 1, Ch 3, 13 Reciprocating internal combustion engines - Detailed requirements and the governing of the engines tested. The motors concerned with essential services together with associated control and switch gear are to be examined and, if considered necessary, are to be operated, so far as practicable, under working conditions. All

generators and steering gear motors are to be examined and are to be operated under working conditions, though not necessarily under full load or simultaneously.

14. 2. 7 Where transformers associated with supplies to essential services are liquid-immersed, the Owner is to arrange for samples of the liquid to be taken and tested for dissolved gases, breakdown voltage, acidity and moisture by a competent testing authority, in accordance with the equipment manufacturer's requirements, and a certificate giving the test results is to be made available to the Surveyor on request.

14. 2. 8 Navigation light indicators are to be tried under working conditions, and correct operation on the failure of supply or failure of navigation lights is to be verified.

14. 2. 9 The emergency sources of electrical power, their automatic arrangements and associated circuits are to be tested.

14. 2. 10 Emergency lighting, transitional emergency lighting, supplementary emergency lighting, general emergency alarm and public address systems are to be tested as far as practicable.

14. 2. 11 Where the ship is electrically propelled, the propulsion motors, generators, propulsion transformers, propulsion conversion equipment, cables, harmonic filters, neutral earthing resistors, dynamic braking resistors and all ancillary electrical equipment that forms part of the propulsion drive and control system, exciters and ventilating plant (including coolers) associated therewith are to be surveyed , and the insulation resistance to earth is to be tested. Special attention is to be given to windings, commutators and slip-rings. Where practicable, the low voltage and high voltage windings of cast resin propulsion transformers are to be subjected to boroscopic inspection, to assess the physical condition of their insulation and for signs of mechanical and thermal damage. The operation of protective gear and alarm devices is to be checked, so far as practicable. Insulating oil, if used, is to be tested in accordance with Pt 1, Ch 3, 14.2 Complete Surveys 14.2.7. Interlocks intended to prevent unsafe operations or unauthorised access are to be checked to verify that they are functioning correctly. Emergency overspeed governors are to be tested.

14. 2. 12 Where the ship has high voltage electrical equipment and associated cables used for essential services, the Surveyor is to visually examine the condition of their insulation systems for signs of deterioration, including partial discharge activity. Where deemed necessary by the Surveyor, boroscopic and/or endoscopic inspections are to be conducted. Areas to be considered for examination are to include, but are not limited to:

- winding ends of all high voltage electrical machines;
- electrical motor core laminations; stator wedges; stator bars; space blocks; and connection rings;
- terminal connections of high voltage equipment; and
- high voltage cable connections.

14. 2. 13 Where on-line partial discharge monitoring equipment has been fitted to high voltage equipment used for the provision of essential services, the Surveyor is to review the test reports for signs of deteriorating performance of the insulation system, *see* Pt 6, Ch 2, 21.4 On-line partial discharge testing of high voltage rotating machines for essential services.

14. 2. 14 A General Examination of the electrical equipment in areas which may contain flammable gas or vapour and/or combustible dust is to be made to ensure that the integrity of the safe-type electrical equipment has not been impaired owing to corrosion, missing bolts, etc. and that there is not an excessive build-up of dust on or in dust protected electrical equipment. Cable runs are to be examined for sheath and armouring defects, where practicable, and to ensure that the means of supporting the cables are in good order. Tests are to be carried out to demonstrate the effectiveness of bonding straps for the control of static electricity. Alarms and interlocks associated with pressurized equipment or spaces are to be tested for correct operation.

14. 2. 15 For ships having an **OPS** notation assigned, the onshore power supply arrangements are to be examined and functionally tested whilst connected to an external electrical power supply in accordance with approved test schedules (*see* Pt 7, Ch 13 On-shore Power Supplies) during the Complete Surveys of machinery or, where it is not practical to provide the facilities and operations for testing during the required Surveys of other machinery items, within 12 months of the due date of the Complete Surveys of machinery.

14. 3 Bottom Surveys

14. 3. 1 For tankers five years old and over, Pt 1, Ch 3, 14.2 Complete Surveys 14.2.14 is to be complied with. In addition, an electrical insulation resistance test of the circuits terminating in, or passing through, the hazardous zones and spaces is to be carried out.

PART

1

CHAPTER **3 Periodical Survey Regulations**

SECTION **15 Boilers**

15. 1 Frequency of surveys

15. 1. 1 All boilers, economizers, steam receivers, steam heated steam generators, thermal oil and hot water units intended for essential services, together with boilers used exclusively for non-essential services having a working pressure exceeding 0.35 MPa and a heating surface exceeding 4.5 m^2 are to be surveyed internally. There is to be a minimum of two internal examinations during each five-year Special Survey cycle. The interval between any two such examinations is not to exceed 36 months. A general external examination is to be carried out at the time of the Annual Survey.

15. 1. 2 Consideration may be given in exceptional circumstances to an extension of the internal examination of the boiler not exceeding three months beyond the due date. The extension may be granted after the following is satisfactorily carried out:

a. External examination of the boiler.
b. Examination and operational test of the boiler safety valve relieving gear (easing gear).
c. Operational tests of the boiler protective devices.
d. Review of the following records since the previous boiler survey:
   i. Operation
   ii. Maintenance
   iii. Repair history
   iv. Feedwater chemistry.

In this context 'exceptional circumstances' means unavailability of repair facilities, essential materials, equipment or spare parts, or delays incurred by action taken to avoid severe weather conditions.

15. 1. 3 An external survey of boilers including tests of safety and protective devices, and tests of safety valves using their relieving gear, is to be carried out annually within the range dates of the Annual Survey of the ship. For exhaust gas heated economizers, the safety valves are to be tested by the Chief Engineer at sea within the range dates of the Annual Survey. This test is to be recorded in the log book and reviewed by the attending Surveyor prior to crediting the Annual Survey.

15. 2 Scope of surveys

15. 2. 1 At the surveys described in Pt 1, Ch 3, 15.1 Frequency of surveys, the boilers, superheaters, economizers and air heaters are to be examined internally on the water-steam side and the fire side. Where considered necessary, the pressure parts are to be tested by hydraulic pressure and the thicknesses of plates and tubes and sizes of stays are to be ascertained to determine a safe working pressure. The safety valves and principal mountings on boilers, superheaters and economizers are to be examined and opened up as necessary by the Surveyor. The adjustment of safety valves is to be verified during each boiler internal survey. Boiler safety valves and their relieving gear are to be examined and tested to verify their satisfactory operation. Safety valves are to be set under steam to a pressure not greater than the approved design pressures of the respective parts. As a

working tolerance, the setting is acceptable, provided that the valves lift at not more than 103 per cent of the approved design pressure. However, for exhaust gas heated economizers, if steam cannot be raised in port, the safety valves may be set by the Chief Engineer at sea, and the results recorded in the log book and reviewed by the attending Surveyor. The following records since the previous Boiler Survey are to be reviewed as part of the survey:

- Operation
- Maintenance
- Repair history
- Feedwater chemistry.

The remaining mountings are to be examined externally and, if considered necessary by the Surveyor, are to be opened up for internal examination. Collision chocks, rolling stays and boiler stools are to be examined and maintained in an efficient condition.

15. 2. 2 In addition to the foregoing, in exhaust gas heated economizers of the shell type, all accessible welded joints are to be subjected to a visual examination in order to identify any evidence of cracking. Non-destructive testing may be required for this purpose and may be requested by the Surveyor.

15. 2. 3 In fired boilers employing forced circulation, the pumps used for this service are to be opened and examined at each Boiler Survey.

15. 2. 4 The fuel oil burning system is to be examined under working conditions and a General Examination made of fuel tank valves, pipes, deck controlgear and oil discharge pipes between pumps and burners.

15. 2. 5 At each survey of a cylindrical boiler which is fitted with smoke tube superheaters, the saturated steam pipes are to be examined as detailed in Section 16.

15. 2. 6 At the annual General Examination referred to in Pt 1, Ch 3, 15.1 Frequency of surveys 15.1.1 the requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 2.2 Annual Surveys 2.2.15 to Pt 1, Ch 3, 2.2 Annual Surveys 2.2.17 are to be complied with.

PART

1

CHAPTER **3 Periodical Survey Regulations**

SECTION **16 Steam pipes**

16. 1 Frequency of surveys

16. 1. 1 Saturated steam pipes, as well as superheated steam pipes where the temperature of the steam at the superheater outlet is not over 450°C, are to be surveyed 10 years from the date of build (or installation) and thereafter at five-yearly intervals.

16. 1. 2 Superheated steam pipes where the temperature of the steam at the superheater outlet is over 450°C are to be surveyed five years from the date of build (or installation) and thereafter at five-yearly intervals.

16. 1. 3 At 10 years from the date of build (or installation) and thereafter at five-yearly intervals, all copper or copper alloy steam pipes over 76 mm external diameter supplying steam for essential services at sea, are to be hydraulically tested to twice the working pressure.

16. 2 Scope of surveys

16. 2. 1 At each survey, a selected number of main steam pipes, also of auxiliary steam pipes, which:

a. are over 76 mm external diameter,
b. supply steam for essential services at sea, and
c. have bolted joints,

are to be removed for internal examination and are to be hydraulically tested to 1.5 times the working pressure. If these selected pipes are found satisfactory in all respects, the remainder need not be tested. So far as practicable, the pipes are to be selected for examination and hydraulic test in rotation, so that in the course of surveys all sections of the pipeline will be tested.

16. 2. 2 Where main and/or auxiliary steam pipes of the category described in Pt 1, Ch 3, 16.2 Scope of surveys 16.2.1 and Pt 1, Ch 3, 16.2 Scope of surveys 16.2.1.(b) have welded joints between the lengths of pipe and/or between pipes and valves, the lagging in way of the welds is to be removed, and the welds examined and, if considered necessary by the Surveyor, crack detected. Pipe ranges having welded joints are to be hydraulically tested to 1.5 times the working pressure. Where lengths having ordinary bolted joints are fitted in such pipe ranges and can be readily disconnected, they are to be removed for internal examination and hydraulically tested to 1.5 times the working pressure.

16. 2. 3 Where, on cylindrical boilers having smoke tube superheaters, the saturated steam pipes adjoining the saturated steam headers are situated partly in the boiler smoke boxes, all such pipes adjoining and cross−connecting these headers in the smoke boxes are, at the surveys required by Pt 1, Ch 3, 16.1 Frequency of surveys, to be included in the pipes selected for examination and testing, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 3, 16.2 Scope of surveys 16.2.1. Where the saturated steam pipes inside the smoke boxes consist of steel castings of substantial construction, these requirements need only be applied to a sample casting. Where steel castings are not fitted, the Surveyor is to satisfy himself

of the condition of the ends of the saturated steam pipes in the smoke boxes at each Boiler Survey and, if he considers it necessary, a sample pipe is to be removed for examination.

16. 2. 4 At the surveys specified in Pt 1, Ch 3, 16.1 Frequency of surveys 16.1.3, any of the copper or copper alloy pipes, such as those having expansion or other bends, which may be subject to bending and/or vibration, also closing lengths adjacent to steam-driven machinery, are to be annealed before being tested.

16. 2. 5 Where it is inconvenient for the Owner to fulfill all the requirements of a Steam Pipe Survey at its due date, the Committee will be prepared to consider postponement of the survey, either wholly or in part.

PART

1

CHAPTER **3 Periodical Survey Regulations**

SECTION **17 Screwshafts, tube shafts and propellers**

17. 1 Applicability

17. 1. 1 The requirements of this Section are applicable as follows:

a. to ships delivered on or after 1 January 2016; and
b. after the first screwshaft survey scheduled on or after 1 January 2016 for ships delivered before 1 January 2016.

17. 1. 2 For ships delivered before 1 January 2016, the first screwshaft survey held on or after 1 January 2016 is to be held in accordance with the requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 18 Screwshafts, tube shafts and propellers.

17. 2 Definitions

17. 2. 1 **Adequate means for protection against corrosion**. An adequate means for protection against corrosion is an approved means for full protection of the shaft against sea water intrusion and subsequent corrosion attack. Such means are used for the protection of common steel material against corrosion particularly in combination with water lubricated bearings. Typical means are to be for example:

a. continuous metallic, corrosion-resistant liners (Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.9 Bronze or gunmetal liners on shafts),
b. continuous cladding,
c. multiple layer synthetic coating,
d. multiple layers of fiberglass,
e. combinations of above mentioned,
f. rubber/elastomer covering coating.

The means for protection against corrosion are to be installed/applied according to ACS approved procedures.

17. 2. 2 **Fresh Water sample test**. At the Screwshaft Survey, a sample of the fresh water in a closed loop fresh water lubricated shaft is to be taken in the presence of a Surveyor. The requirements for Fresh Water sample tests are given in the *ACSPlus Procedure Machinery Planned Maintenance and Condition Monitoring*.

17. 2. 3 **Lubricating oil analysis**. Lubricating oil analysis is to be carried out at regular intervals not exceeding six months. The documentation on lubricating oil analysis is to be available on board. Oil samples, to be submitted for the analysis, are to be taken under service conditions.

17. 2. 4 **Oil sample examination**. An oil sample examination is a visual examination of the sterntube lubricating oil taken in the presence of a Surveyor, with a focus on water contamination.

17. 2. 5 **Service records**. Service records are regularly recorded data showing in-service conditions of the shaft(s) and are to include:

a. For Oil Lubricated Stern Bearings: lubricating oil temperature, bearing temperature and oil consumption records.
b. For Closed Loop System Fresh Water Lubricated Bearings: water flow, water temperature, salinity, pH, make-up water and water pressure (depending on design).

17. 2. 6 **Survey methods on closed systems**. Oil Lubricated Shafts or Closed Loop System Fresh Water Lubricated Shafts:

a. **TS Method 1** – Survey of screwshaft, tube shaft and propeller in accordance with the requirements of TS Method 1, *see* Table 3. 17. 3: Shaft survey methods. Primarily the shaft is withdrawn and the propeller is removed.
b. **TS Method 2** – Survey of screwshaft, tube shaft and propeller in accordance with the requirements of TS Method 2, *see* Table 3. 17. 3: Shaft survey methods. Primarily records are reviewed, the propeller is removed but the shaft is not withdrawn.
c. **TS Method 3** – Survey of screwshaft, tube shaft and propeller in accordance with the requirements of TS Method 3, *see* Table 3. 17. 3: Shaft survey methods. Primarily records are reviewed, the shaft is not withdrawn and the propeller is not removed.

17. 2. 7 **Survey Methods on Open Systems**. Water Lubricated Shafts:

a. **TS Method 4** – Survey of screwshaft, tube shaft and propeller in accordance with the requirements of TS Method 4, *see* Table 3. 17. 3: Shaft survey methods. Primarily the shaft is withdrawn and the propeller is removed.

17. 2. 8 **Tube shaft** is a shaft placed between the intermediate shaft and propeller shaft, normally arranged within a sterntube or running in open water. It may also be called a sterntube shaft.

17. 3 Closed systems – Oil lubricated shafts or closed loop system fresh water lubricated shafts: Frequency of surveys

17. 3. 1 Oil lubricated shafts fitted with approved oil glands and closed loop system fresh water lubricated shafts fitted with approved adequate means of protection against corrosion or fabricated from corrosion-resistant material are to be surveyed in accordance with Pt 1, Ch 3, 17.3 Closed systems – Oil lubricated shafts or closed loop system fresh water lubricated shafts: Frequency of surveys 17.3.2 to Pt 1, Ch 3, 17.3 Closed systems – Oil lubricated shafts or closed loop system fresh water lubricated shafts: Frequency of surveys 17.3.5.

17. 3. 2 Shafts with a keyless propeller connection or a flanged propeller connection (including controllable pitch propellers for main propulsion purposes) are to be surveyed at intervals of five years in accordance with TS Method 1, 2 or 3.

17. 3. 3 Shafts with a keyed propeller connection with a keyway that complies fully with the present Rules are to be surveyed at intervals of five years in accordance with TS Method 1 or 2; TS Method 3 is not permitted.

17. 3. 4 For oil lubricated keyless shafts, the maximum interval between two surveys carried out according to TS Method 1 or TS Method 2 shall not exceed 15 years, except in the case when one extension for no more than three months is agreed.

17. 3. 5 Closed loop system fresh water lubricated shafts may be surveyed in accordance with TS Method 2 or for keyless shafts TS Method 3, only if the descriptive note **ACSPlus SCM** is assigned. Notwithstanding this, the maximum interval between two surveys carried out according to TS Method 1 shall not exceed 15 years, except in the case when one extension for no more than three months is agreed.

17. 3. 6 Shaft configurations other than those listed in Pt 1, Ch 3, 17.3 Closed systems – Oil lubricated shafts or closed loop system fresh water lubricated shafts: Frequency of surveys 17.3.1 to Pt 1, Ch 3, 17.3 Closed systems – Oil lubricated shafts or closed loop system fresh water lubricated shafts:

Frequency of surveys 17.3.5 above are to be surveyed at intervals of three years in accordance with TS Method 1.

17. 3. 7 TS Method 2 and TS Method 3 are only permitted where the prerequisite service records and data specified for those methods are to be provided. If at the time of survey the attending Surveyor is not satisfied with the service records and data presented, then the shaft may be required to be withdrawn. The service records and data are to be retained onboard and audited by ACS at the Annual Survey.

17. 3. 8 For oil lubricated arrangements, the descriptive note **ACSPlus SCM** is not a prerequisite in order to hold TS Method 2 and TS Method 3.

17. 3. 9 In order to assign and maintain the descriptive note **ACSPlus SCM,** the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 6, 4 Control and Monitoring and *ACSPlus Procedure Machinery Planned Maintenance and Condition Monitoring, Section 4,* are to be complied with, including the requirements therein for onboard maintenance of records and review of them by the attending Surveyor at Annual Survey.

17. 3. 10 For surveys completed within three months before the Shaft Survey due date, the next period will start from the Shaft Survey due date.

17. 3. 11 *See* Summary of Survey Intervals and Extensions for closed systems in Table 3. 17. 1: Summary of survey intervals and extensions – Closed systems.

17. 4 Open Systems – Water Lubricated Shafts: Frequency of surveys

17. 4. 1 Survey in accordance with TS Method 4 at intervals of five years is applicable to any of the following:

a. Single shaft operating in fresh water only,
b. Single shaft provided with approved adequate means of protection against corrosion or fabricated from corrosion-resistant material,
c. Multiple shaft arrangements.

17. 4. 2 Single shaft configurations other than listed above are to be surveyed every three years in accordance with TS Method 4.

17. 4. 3 For shafts subject to five-yearly surveys with keyless connections, at the Surveyor's discretion removal of the propeller and NDE of the shaft taper, as required by TS Method 4, need only be carried out every 15 years, subject to a satisfactory visual inspection of all accessible parts of the shafting system at the intervening surveys.

17. 4. 4 For surveys completed within three months before the Shaft Survey due date, the next survey period will start from the Shaft Survey due date.

17. 4. 5 At the discretion of the Classification Committee, consideration may be given to accept special arrangements to monitor the condition of the screwshaft, bearings, sealing devices and the sterntube lubricant system so as to allow an extension to the interval between withdrawals of the Screwshaft required by TS Method 4. This is subject to the shaft being provided with approved adequate means of protection against corrosion or being fabricated from corrosion-resistant material.

17. 4. 6 *See* Summary of Survey Intervals and Extensions for open systems in Table 3. 17. 2: Summary of survey intervals and extensions – Open systems.

17. 5 Survey extensions

17. 5. 1 For all types of propeller connections, consideration can be given at the discretion of the Classification Committee to an extension of the interval between two consecutive surveys after the execution of an extension survey as follows:

a. Extension up to a maximum of two and a half years: Only permitted for closed systems. No more than one extension can be considered. No further extension, of other type, can be considered.
b. Extension up to a maximum of one year: Two consecutive 'one year extensions' can be considered. Where an additional extension is agreed the requirements of the 'two and a half year extension' are to be carried out and the Shaft Survey due date, prior to the previous extension(s), is extended for a maximum of two and a half years.
c. Extension up to a maximum of three months: One 'three month extension' can be considered. In the event an additional extension is agreed the requirements of the "one year extension" or 'two and a half years extension' are to be carried out and the Shaft Survey due date, prior to the previous extension, is extended for a maximum of one year or two and a half years.

17. 5. 2 If the extension survey is carried out within one month of the shaft survey due date then the extension will take effect from the Shaft Survey due date.

17. 5. 3 If the extension survey is carried out more than one month prior to the Shaft Survey due date, then the period of extension will take effect from the date on which the extension survey was completed.

Table 3. 17. 1: Summary of survey intervals and extensions – Closed systems

Oil Lubricated			
	Flanged Propeller Coupling	Keyless Propeller Coupling	Keyed Propeller Coupling (*see* Note b)
Every 5 years (*see* Note a)	TS Method 1 or	TS Method 1 or	TS Method 1 or
	TS Method 2 or	TS Method 2 or	TS Method 2
	TS Method 3	TS Method 3 (*see* Note c)	
Extension 2.5 years	Yes (*see* Note d)	Yes (*see* Note d)	Yes (*see* Note d)
Extension 1 year	Yes (*see* Note e)	Yes (*see* Note e)	Yes (*see* Note e)
Extension 3 months	Yes (*see* Note f)	Yes (*see* Note f)	Yes (*see* Note f)
Closed Loop System Fresh Water Lubricated			
	Flanged Propeller Coupling	Keyless Propeller Coupling	Keyed Propeller Coupling (*see* Note b)
Every 5 years (*see* Note a)	TS Method 1 (*see* Note g) or	TS Method 1 (*see* Note g) or	TS Method 1 (*see* Note g) or
	TS Method 2 or	TS Method 2 or	TS Method 2
	TS Method 3	TS Method 3	
Extension 2.5 years	Yes (*see* Note d)	Yes (*see* Note d)	Yes (*see* Note d)
Extension 1 year	Yes (*see* Note e)	Yes (*see* Note e)	Yes (*see* Note e)
Extension 3 months	Yes (*see* Note f)	Yes (*see* Note f)	Yes (*see* Note f)
General notes: For surveys (TS Method 1, or TS Method 2, or TS Method 3) completed within 3 months before the Shaft Survey due date, the next period will start from the shaft survey due date. If the extension survey is carried out within 1 month of the shaft survey due date then the extension will take effect from the shaft survey due date. If the extension survey is carried out more than 1 month prior to the shaft survey due date, then the period of extension counts from the date when the extension survey was completed.			

Notes:

Note a. Unless an Extension (Extension 2.5 years, Extension one year, Extension three months) is applied in between.

Note b. TS Method 3 not allowed.

Note c. The maximum interval between two surveys carried out according to TS Method 1 or TS Method 2 shall not exceed 15 years, except in the case when one extension for no more than 3 months is agreed.

Note d. No more than one extension can be considered. No further extension of other type can be considered.

Note e. Two consecutive extensions can be considered. Where an additional extension is agreed the requirements of the '2.5 year extension' are to be carried out and the shaft survey due date, prior to the previous extension(s), is extended for a maximum of 2.5 years.

Note f. Extension up to a maximum of 3 months: One "3 month extension" can be considered. In the event an additional extension is agreed the requirements of the 'one year extension' or '2.5 years extension' are to be carried out and the shaft survey due date, prior to the previous extension, is extended for a maximum of one year or 2.5 years.

Note g. The maximum interval between two surveys carried out according to TS Method 1 shall not be more than 15 years, except in the case when one extension for no more than 3 months is agreed.

Table 3. 17. 2: Summary of survey intervals and extensions – Open systems

<table>
<tr><td colspan="2">• Single shaft operating exclusively in fresh water.
• Single shaft provided with adequate means of corrosion protection, single corrosion-resistant shaft.
• All kinds of Multiple shaft arrangements.</td><td colspan="2">Other shaft configuration.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>All kinds of propeller coupling (see Note d)</td><td></td><td>All kinds of propeller coupling (see Note d)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Every 5 years (see Note a)</td><td>TS Method 4</td><td>Every 3 years (see Note a)</td><td>TS Method 4</td></tr>
<tr><td>Extension 1 year</td><td>Yes (see Note b)</td><td>Extension 1 year</td><td>Yes (see Note b)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Extension 3 months</td><td>Yes (see Note c)</td><td>Extension 3 months</td><td>Yes (see Note c)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">General notes:

For surveys (TS Method 4) completed within 3 months before the shaft survey due date, the next period will start from the shaft survey due date.

If the extension survey is carried out within 1 month of the shaft survey due date then the extension will take effect from the shaft survey due date. If the extension survey is carried out more than 1 month prior to the shaft survey due date, then the period of extension counts from the date when the extension survey was completed.

Notes:
Note a. Unless an Extension (Extension 1 year, Extension 3 months) is applied in between.
Note b. No more than one extension can be considered. No further extension, of other type, can be considered.
Note c. 1 extension can be considered. In the event an additional extension is agreed the requirements of the 1 year extension are to be carried out and the shaft survey due date prior to the previous extension is extended for a maximum of 1 year.
Note d. For keyless propeller connections the maximum interval between two consecutive dismantling and verifications of the shaft cone by means of non-destructive examination (NDE) shall not exceed 15 years.</td></tr>
</table>

17. 6 Shaft Survey Methods

17. 6. 1 For the survey methods *see* Table 3. 17. 3: Shaft survey methods below.

Table 3. 17. 3: Shaft survey methods

	TS METHOD 1	TS METHOD 2	TS METHOD 3	TS METHOD 4
GENERAL				
Drawing the shaft and examining the entire shaft (including liners, corrosion protection system and stress reducing features, where provided), sealing system and bearings	X			X
SHAFT				
Visual examination of all accessible parts of the shafting system *in situ*		X	X	
For keyed and keyless propeller connections, removing the propeller to expose the forward end of the taper	X	X		X
For keyed and keyless propeller connections, perform a non-destructive examination (NDE) by an approved surface crack-detection method around the after end of the cylindrical part of the shaft and the forward one-third of the shaft cone, including the keyway with the key removed (if fitted); for shafts provided with liners the NDE shall be extended to the after edge of the liner	X	X		X
For flanged connections, whenever the coupling bolts of any type of flange-connected shaft are removed or the flange radius is made accessible in connection with overhaul, repairs or when deemed necessary by the Surveyor, the coupling bolts and flange radius are to be examined by means of an approved surface crack detection method	X	X	X	X
Visual examination of all accessible parts of the shafting system following re-installation of the shaft	X			X
PROPELLER				
Examination of the propeller	X	X	X	X
Controllable pitch propellers, where fitted, are to be opened up and the working parts examined, together with the control gear. Propeller to be examined upon reassembly	X	X		X

Where a controllable pitch propeller is fitted, at least one of the blades is to be dismantled completely for examination of the working parts and the control gear. Propeller to be examined upon reassembly			X	
Examination of the propeller following re-installation	X	X		X
BEARING CLEARANCES				
Checking, recording and verification of bearing clearances	X			X
Recording the bearing weardown measurements after re-installation, if applicable	X			
Checking and recording the bearing weardown measurements		X	X	
SEALING SYSTEM				
Examine the inboard and outboard seals with shaft removed and following the re-installation of the shaft and propeller	X			X
Examine the inboard and outboard seals		X	X	
Examination of seal liner		X	X	
OTHERS				
Stationary supporting structure and any erosion protection inserts or doublers are to be examined in way of any propulsion devices	X	X	X	X
Verification of no unapproved repairs by grinding or welding of shaft and/or propeller	X	X	X	X
SERVICE RECORDS				
Review of service records		X	X	
Review of test records of Lubricating Oil Analysis (for oil lubricated shafts), or Fresh Water Sample Test (for closed system fresh water lubricated shafts)		X	X	
Oil Sample Examination (for oil lubricated shafts), or Fresh Water Sample Test (for closed system fresh water lubricated).		X	X	

17. 7 Other systems

17. 7. 1 Directional propeller and podded propulsion units for main propulsion purposes, inclusive of the propellers, shafts, gearing, control gear and the primary electrical components including any control and protection devices, are to be surveyed at intervals not exceeding five years. They are to be dismantled if considered necessary and generally examined as far as practicable. Non-destructive examination is to be carried out as considered necessary by the Surveyor on blade/fin

roots. Consideration may be given to condition monitoring schemes for determining the condition of the unit.

17. 7. 2 Podded propulsion unit screwshaft roller bearings are to be renewed when the calculated life at the maximum continuous rating no longer exceeds the survey interval, *see* Pt 5, Ch 9, 5.3 Propulsion shafting 5.3.7.

17. 7. 3 Dynamic positioning and/or thruster-assisted mooring and athwartship thrust propellers and shaftings are to be surveyed at intervals not exceeding five years. They are to be generally examined so far as possible in dry dock and tested under working conditions afloat for satisfactory operation. All accessible parts, including sealing, locking and bearing faces, and any other moving parts are to be examined. Non-destructive examination is to be carried out as considered necessary by the Surveyor on blade/fin roots. Consideration may be given to condition monitoring schemes for determining the condition of the unit.

17. 7. 4 Water jet units for main propulsion purposes, including the impeller, casing, shaft, shaft seal, shaft bearing, inlet and outlet channels, steering nozzle, reversing arrangements, and control gear are to be surveyed at intervals not exceeding five years, provided the impeller shafts are made of approved corrosion-resistant material or have approved equivalent arrangements. They are to be generally examined so far as practicable.

17. 7. 5 Stationary supporting structure and any erosion protection inserts or doublers are to be examined in way of any propulsion devices.

17. 8 Alternative arrangements

17. 8. 1 The Classification Committee will be prepared to give consideration to the circumstances of any special case upon application by the Owner, where the level of safety achieved is equivalent to that obtained by the survey methods described in this section.

PART

1

CHAPTER **3 Periodical Survey Regulations**

SECTION **18 Screwshafts, tube shafts and propellers**

18. 1 Applicability

18. 1. 1 The requirements of this Section are only applicable to the first screwshaft survey scheduled on or after 1 January 2016 for ships delivered before 1 January 2016. For subsequent screwshaft surveys, *see* Pt 1, Ch 3, 17 Screwshafts, tube shafts and propellers.

18. 1. 2 For screwshaft survey requirements on ships delivered on or after 1 January 2016, *see* Pt 1, Ch 3, 17 Screwshafts, tube shafts and propellers.

18. 2 Frequency of surveys

18. 2. 1 Shafts with keyed propeller attachments and fitted with continuous liners or approved oil glands, or made of approved corrosion resistant materials, are to be surveyed at intervals of five years when the keyway complies fully with the present Rules.

18. 2. 2 Shafts having keyless-type propeller attachments are to be surveyed at intervals of five years, provided they are fitted with approved oil glands or are made of approved corrosion resistant materials.

18. 2. 3 Shafts having solid coupling flanges at the after end are to be surveyed at intervals of five years, provided they are fitted with approved oil glands or are made of approved corrosion resistant materials.

18. 2. 4 All other shafts not covered by Pt 1, Ch 3, 18.2 Frequency of surveys 18.2.1 to Pt 1, Ch 3, 18.2 Frequency of surveys 18.2.3 are to be surveyed at intervals of $2^1/_2$ years.

18. 2. 5 Controllable pitch propellers for main propulsion purposes are to be surveyed at the same intervals as the screwshaft.

18. 2. 6 Directional propeller and podded propulsion units for main propulsion purposes are to be surveyed at intervals not exceeding five years.

18. 2. 7 Water jet units for main propulsion purposes are to be surveyed at intervals not exceeding five years, provided the impeller shafts are made of approved corrosion resistant material or have approved equivalent arrangements.

18. 2. 8 Dynamic positioning and/or thruster-assisted mooring and athwartship thrust propellers and shaftings are to be surveyed at intervals not exceeding five years.

18. 3 Normal surveys

18. 3. 1 All screwshafts are to be withdrawn for examination by ACS's Surveyors at the intervals prescribed in Pt 1, Ch 3, 18.2 Frequency of surveys 18.2.1 to Pt 1, Ch 3, 18.2 Frequency of surveys 18.2.4. The after end of the cylindrical part of the shaft and the forward one-third of the shaft cone,

or fillet of the flange, are to be examined by a magnetic particle crack detection method. In the case of a keyed propeller attachment, at least the forward one-third of the shaft cone is be examined with the key removed. Weardown is to be measured and the sterntube bearings, oil glands, propellers and fastenings are to be examined. Controllable pitch propellers where fitted are to be opened up and the working parts examined, together with the controlgear.

18. 3. 2 Directional propeller and podded propulsion units, inclusive of the propellers, shafts, gearing, controlgear and the primary electrical components including any control and protection devices, are to be dismantled if considered necessary and generally examined as far as practicable.

18. 3. 3 Water jet units, including the impeller, casing, shaft, shaft seal, shaft bearing, inlet and outlet channels, steering nozzle, reversing arrangements, and controlgear are to be generally examined so far as practicable.

18. 3. 4 Dynamic positioning and/or thruster-assisted mooring and athwartship thrust propellers are to be generally examined so far as possible in dry dock and tested under working conditions afloat for satisfactory operation. All accessible parts, including sealing, locking and bearing faces, and any other moving parts are to be examined. Non-destructive examination is to be carried out as considered necessary by the Surveyor on blade/fin roots. Consideration may be given to condition monitoring schemes for determining the condition of the unit.

18. 3. 5 Podded propulsion unit screwshaft roller bearings are to be renewed when the calculated life at the maximum continuous rating no longer exceeds the survey interval. *See* Pt 5, Ch 9, 5.3 Propulsion shafting 5.3.7.

18. 3. 6 Stationary supporting structure and any erosion protection inserts or doublers are to be examined in way of any propulsion devices.

18. 4 Screwshaft Condition Monitoring (SCM)

18. 4. 1 Monitoring records are to be reviewed at annual survey for all vessels assigned the ACSPlus descriptive note SCM (Screwshaft Condition Monitoring). The records that are to be maintained for oil and water lubricated bearings are detailed in the following Sections.

18. 4. 2 Oil lubricated bearing records are to be available on board that include the following:

a. Lubricating oil analysis to be carried out regularly at intervals not exceeding six months. Each analysis is to include the following minimum parameters:
   i. water content,
   ii. chloride content,
   iii. bearing material and metal particles content,
   iv. oil ageing (resistance to oxidation) , minimum testing to include Viscosity and Total Acid Number (TAN).

Note Oil samples are to be taken under service conditions and are to be representative of the oil within the sterntube.

b. Oil consumption.
c. Bearing temperatures.

18. 4. 3 Further information is provided in the ACS document ACSPlus Procedure Machinery Planned Maintenance and Condition Monitoring.

18. 4. 4 Water lubricated bearing records are to be available on board that include the following:

a. A record of variations in the flow rate of lubricating water.
b. A record of variations in the shaft power transmission.
c. Wear monitoring records for the sternbush.
d. For open loop systems the records from equipment for continuous monitoring of water sediment or alternatively records from a ACS approved extractive sampling and testing procedure are to be available on board.

Records of cleaning and replacement of lubrication filters/separators are to be maintained on board. The pumping and water filtration system is to be considered part of the continuous survey cycle and is to be subject to a Periodical Survey.

e. For closed cycle water systems the records from water analysis results carried out regularly at intervals not exceeding six months are to be retained on board. The analysis is to include the following parameters:
   i. Chloride content
   ii. Bearing material and metal particles content.

Note Samples are to be taken under service conditions and are to be representative of the water circulating within the sterntube.

Note Records of cleaning and replacement of lubrication filters/separators are to be maintained on board. The pumping and water filtration system is to be considered part of the continuous survey cycle and is to be subject to a Periodical Survey.

18. 4. 5 For maintenance of the descriptive note **SCM**, the records of all data collected in Pt 1, Ch 3, 18.4 Screwshaft Condition Monitoring (SCM) 18.4.2 and Pt 1, Ch 3, 18.4 Screwshaft Condition Monitoring (SCM) 18.4.4 are to be retained on board and audited by ACS annually.

18. 4. 6 Where the requirements for the descriptive note **SCM** have been complied with, the screwshaft need not be withdrawn at surveys as required by Pt 1, Ch 3, 18.3 Normal surveys 18.3.1, provided all condition monitoring data are found to be within permissible limits and all exposed areas of the shaft are examined by a magnetic particle crack detection method or an alternative approved means for shafts with a protective liner or coating Pt 5, Ch 6, 4.1 Screwshaft Condition Monitoring (SCM) 4.1.3.(f). The remaining requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 18.3 Normal surveys 18.3.1 are to be complied with. Where the Attending Surveyor considers that the data presented is not sufficient to determine the condition of the shaft, the shaft may be required to be withdrawn in accordance with Pt 1, Ch 3, 18.3 Normal surveys 18.3.1. For water lubricated bearings, the screwshaft is to be withdrawn for examination, as Pt 1, Ch 3, 18.3 Normal surveys 18.3.1, when the ship reaches 18 years from the date of build or the third Special Survey, whichever comes first.

18. 5 Modified Survey

18. 5. 1 A Modified Survey may be accepted at alternate five-yearly surveys for shafts described in Pt 1, Ch 3, 18.2 Frequency of surveys 18.2.1, provided they are fitted with oil lubricated bearings and approved oil glands, and also for those in Pt 1, Ch 3, 18.2 Frequency of surveys 18.2.2 and Pt 1, Ch 3, 18.2 Frequency of surveys 18.2.3.

18. 5. 2 The Modified Survey is to consist of the partial withdrawal of the shaft, sufficient to ascertain the condition of the stern bearing and shaft in way. For keyless propellers or shafts with a solid flange connection to the propeller, a visual examination to confirm the good condition of the sealing arrangements is to be made. The oil glands are to be capable of being replaced without removal of the propeller. The forward bearing and all accessible parts, including the propeller connection to the shaft, are to be examined as far as possible. Wear down is to be measured and found satisfactory. Where a controllable pitch propeller is fitted, at least one of the blades is to be dismantled complete for examination of the working parts and the controlgear.

18. 5. 3 For keyed propellers, the after end of the cylindrical part of the shaft and forward one-third of the shaft cone is to be examined by a magnetic particle crack detection method, for which dismantling of the propeller and removal of the key will be required.

18. 5. 4 Where the requirements for the descriptive note **SCM** have been complied with, as described in Pt 1, Ch 3, 18.4 Screwshaft Condition Monitoring (SCM) 18.4.1 and all data are found to be within permissible limits, partial withdrawal of the shaft will not be required. Where doubt exists regarding any of the above findings, the shaft is to be withdrawn to permit an entire examination.

18. 6 Partial Survey

18. 6. 1 For shafts where the Modified Survey is applicable, upon application by the Owner, the Committee will be prepared to give consideration to postponement of the survey for a maximum period of half the specified cycle provided a Partial Survey is held.

18. 6. 2 The Partial Survey is to consist of the propeller being backed off in any keyed shaft and the top half of the cone examined by an efficient crack detection method for which the removal of the key will be required. On ships less than 15 years old, propellers with keyless connections to the screwshaft are not required to be backed off. Exposed areas of screwshaft, oil gland and seals are to be examined and dealt with as necessary. Weardown is to be measured, recorded and reviewed at each screwshaft survey and found satisfactory. Propeller and fastenings are to be examined.

18. 6. 3 The Committee will be prepared to give consideration to the circumstances of any special case upon application by the Owner.

PART

1

CHAPTER **3 Periodical Survey Regulations**

SECTION **19 Inert gas systems**

19. 1 Frequency of surveys

19. 1. 1 Inert gas systems installed on board ships intended for the carriage of oil or liquid chemicals in bulk are to be surveyed annually in accordance with the requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 2.2 Annual Surveys 2.2.34. A Special Survey of the inert gas system, in accordance with the requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 19.2 Scope of surveys, is to be held at intervals not exceeding five years.

19. 2 Scope of surveys

19. 2. 1 At each Special Survey of the inert gas system, the inert gas generator, scrubber and blower are to be opened out as considered necessary and examined. Gas distribution lines and shut-off valves, including soot blower interlocking devices are to be examined as considered necessary. The deck seal and non-return valve are to be examined. Cooling water systems including the effluent piping and overboard discharge from the scrubbers are to be examined. All automatic shutdown devices and alarms are to be tested. The complete installation is to be tested under working conditions on completion of survey.

19. 2. 2 When, at the request of an Owner, it has been agreed by the Committee that the Complete Survey of the inert gas systems may be carried out on the Continuous Survey basis, the various items of machinery are to be opened for survey in rotation, so far as practicable, to ensure that the interval between consecutive examinations of each item will not exceed five years. In general, approximately one-fifth of the machinery is to be examined each year.

19. 2. 3 If any examination during Continuous Survey reveals defects, further parts are to be opened up and examined as considered necessary by the Surveyors, and the defects are to be made good to their satisfaction.

19. 2. 4 *See* Pt 1, Ch 3, 9.7 Special Survey I (ships five years old) – General requirements 9.7.12 for inert gas systems on ships for liquefied gases.

19. 2. 5 *See* Pt 1, Ch 3, 24.3 Annual Surveys - General Requirements for Fuel Systems 24.3.7 and Pt 1, Ch 3, 24.7 Intermediate Surveys 24.7.1 for inert gas systems on ships with a fuel installation using **gases or other low-flashpoint fuels**.

PART

1

CHAPTER **3** **Periodical Survey Regulations**

SECTION **20** **Classification of ships not built under survey**

20. 1 General

20. 1. 1 When classification is desired for a ship not built under the supervision of ACS's Surveyors, application should be made to the Committee in writing.

20. 1. 2 Periodical Surveys of such ships, when classed, are subsequently to be held as in the case of ships built under survey.

20. 1. 3 Where classification is desired for a ship which is classed by another recognized Society, special consideration will be given to the scope of the survey.

20. 2 Hull and equipment

20. 2. 1 Plans showing the main scantlings and arrangements of the actual ship, together with any proposed alterations, are to be submitted for approval. These should comprise plans of the midship section, longitudinal section and decks, and such other plans as may be requested. If plans cannot be obtained or prepared by the Owner, facilities are to be given for ACS's Surveyor to obtain the necessary information from the ship.

20. 2. 2 Particulars of the process of manufacture and the testing of the material of construction are to be supplied.

20. 2. 3 In all cases, the full requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 5 Special Survey - General - Hull requirements, Pt 1, Ch 3, 6 Special Survey - Bulk carriers - Hull requirements, Pt 1, Ch 3, 7 Special Survey - Oil tankers (including ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships) - Hull requirements, Pt 1, Ch 3, 8 Special Survey - Chemical Tankers - Hull requirements, Pt 1, Ch 3, 9 Ships for liquefied gases and Pt 1, Ch 3, 10 Dredgers, hopper dredgers, sand carriers, hopper barges and reclamation craft are to be carried out as applicable. Ships of recent construction will receive special consideration.

20. 2. 4 During the survey, the Surveyors are to satisfy themselves regarding the workmanship and verify the approved scantlings and arrangements. For this purpose, and in order to ascertain the amount of any deterioration, parts of the structure will require to be gauged as necessary. Full particulars of the anchors, chain cables and equipment are to be submitted. For ships to which Pt 6, Ch 4 Fire Protection, Detection and Extinction Requirements applies, fire protection, detection and extinction are to be in accordance with that Chapter. Loading instruments, where required, are to be in accordance with the Rules, *see* Pt 3, Ch 3, 4.8 Watertight tunnels and passageways as applicable.

20. 2. 5 When the full survey requirements indicated in Pt 1, Ch 3, 20.2 Hull and equipment 20.2.3 and Pt 1, Ch 3, 20.2 Hull and equipment 20.2.4 cannot be completed at one time, the Committee may consider granting an interim record for a limited period. The conditions regarding the completion of the survey will depend on the merits of each particular case, which should be submitted for consideration.

20. 3 Machinery

20. 3. 1 To facilitate the survey, plans of the following items (plans of piping are to be diagrammatic), together with the particulars of the materials used in the construction of the boilers, air receivers and important forgings, are to be furnished:

- General pumping arrangements, including air and sounding pipes (Shipbuilder's plan).
- Pumping arrangements at the forward and after ends of oil tankers and drainage of cofferdams and pump rooms.
- General arrangement of cargo piping in tanks and on deck of oil tankers.
- Piping arrangements for cargo oil (F.P. 60°C or above, closed cup test).
- Bilge, ballast and fuel oil pumping arrangements in the machinery space, including the capacities of the pumps on bilge service.
- Arrangement and dimensions of main steam pipes.
- Arrangement of fuel oil pipes and fittings at settling and service tanks.
- Arrangement of fuel oil piping in connection with oil burning installations.
- Fuel oil and cargo oil overflow systems, where these are fitted.
- Arrangement of boiler feed systems.
- Fuel oil settling, service and other fuel oil tanks not forming part of the ship's structure.
- Boilers, superheaters and economizers.
- Air receivers.
- Crank, thrust, intermediate and screw shafting.
- Clutch and reversing gear with methods of control.
- Reduction gearing.
- Propeller (including spare propeller if supplied).
- Electrical circuits.
- Arrangement of compressed air systems for main and axiliary services.
- Arrangement of lubricating oil systems.
- Arrangement of flammable liquids used for power transmission, control and heating systems
- Arrangement of cooling water systems for main and axiliary services.
- General arrangement of cargo tank vents. The plan is to indicate the type and position of the vent outlets from any superstructure, erection, air intake, etc. Ventilation arrangements of cargo and/or ballast pump rooms and other enclosed spaces which contain cargo handling equipment.

20. 3. 2 Plans additional to those detailed in Pt 1, Ch 3, 20.3 Machinery 20.3.1 are not to be submitted unless the machinery is of a novel or special character affecting classification.

20. 3. 3 Where remote and/or automatic controls are fitted to propulsion machinery and essential auxiliaries, a description of the scheme is to be submitted.

20. 3. 4 For new ships and ships which have been in service less than two years, calculations of the torsional vibration characteristics of the propelling machinery are to be submitted for consideration, as required for ships constructed under Special Survey. For older ships, the circumstances will be specially considered in relation to their service record and type of machinery installed. Where calculations are not submitted, the Committee may require that the machinery certificate be endorsed to this effect. When desired by the Owner, the calculations and investigation of the torsional vibration characteristics of the machinery may be carried out by ACS upon special request.

20. 3. 5 The main and auxiliary machinery, feed pipes, compressed air pipes and boilers are to be examined as required at Complete Surveys. Working pressures are to be determined from the actual scantlings in accordance with the Rules.

20. 3. 6 The screwshaft is to be drawn and examined.

20. 3. 7 The steam pipes are to be examined and tested as required by Pt 1, Ch 3, 16 Steam pipes.

20. 3. 8 The bilge, ballast and fuel oil pumping arrangements are to be examined and amended, as necessary, to comply with the Rules.

20. 3. 9 Oil burning installations are to be examined as required at Complete Surveys and found, or modified, to comply with the requirements of the Rules; they are also to be tested under working conditions.

20. 3. 10 The electrical equipment is to be examined as required at Complete Surveys.

20. 3. 11 Where an inert gas system is fitted on ships intended for the carriage of oil in bulk having a flash point not exceeding 60°C, the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 15, 7 Inert gas systems on Tankers of 8,000 tonnes DWT and above apply.

20. 3. 12 The whole of the machinery, including essential controls, is to be tried under working conditions to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

20. 3. 13 First entry reports are to be prepared by the Surveyors.

20. 4 Refrigerated cargoes

20. 4. 1 When classification is desired for an installation not constructed under the supervision of ACS's Surveyors, application is to be made to the Committee in writing.

20. 4. 2 Full particulars and plans are to be forwarded for consideration, together with the particulars of the materials of the crankshafts, pressure vessels and pressure piping. The requirements of Pt 6, Ch 3, 1 General requirements and Pt 6, Ch 3, 4 Refrigeration plant, pipes, valves and fittings are to be used for guidance in regard to the information required.

20. 4. 3 A special examination is to be made at least to the extent required for subsequent Special Surveys, *see* Pt 1, Ch 3, 21.3 Subsequent Special Survey.

20. 4. 4 The thickness and material of the insulation, the particulars of the frames, beams, stiffeners and other steelwork within the insulation, the air coolers and/or chamber grid piping, the compressors, evaporators and condensers are to be verified so far as practicable.

20. 4. 5 The installation is to conform to the requirements of the relevant Sections of Pt 6, Ch 3 Refrigerated Cargo Installations.

20. 4. 6 Acceptance tests are to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 3 Refrigerated Cargo Installations.

PART

1

CHAPTER **3 Periodical Survey Regulations**

SECTION **21 Refrigerated cargo installations**

21. 1 Annual Surveys

21. 1. 1 The Surveyors are to examine the machinery under working conditions as soon as practicable after a ship's arrival at a port of discharge before the cargo is unloaded. An examination of the refrigerated cargo installation log book (or other records) is to be made and any breakdowns or malfunctions of the plant during the previous twelve months are to be noted and reported to the Committee.

21. 1. 2 A General Examination of the refrigerating plant is to be carried out, and satisfactory operation of safety devices, controls and thermometry is to be verified. Insulated cargo spaces are to be inspected, and the condition of insulation, lining, scuppers, hatches, coolers, air ducting and air refreshing arrangements are to be checked. The Surveyors may request opening out of suspected items, or recommend repair or renewal of defective items, as a result of inspection.

21. 1. 3 A General Examination is to be made of electrical motors driving refrigerant compressors, pumps and fans, together with their controlgear and cables. Random tests for insulation resistance are to be made on the cables, switchgear, motors, etc. and this resistance is to be not less than 1 MΩ between individual conductors and between those conductors and earth. The installation may be subdivided for the purpose of this test, and the Surveyor may at his discretion accept the results of tests carried out by a competent member of staff or contractor.

21. 1. 4 A survey book or other permanent record is to be kept on board the ship to show the date of examination of the various parts. This is to be available to the Surveyor at all times, and is to be signed by the Surveyor on the occasion of each survey.

21. 2 Special Surveys

21. 2. 1 At the first Special Survey, the examinations outlined below are to be carried out. Where there is a programme of replacement instead of maintenance on board, alternative survey arrangements will be considered. Each case will be given individual consideration.

21. 2. 2 Detailed internal examination of each reciprocating compressor, opened up for inspection of cylinders, pistons, connection rods, valves, seats, glands, relief devices, filters, lubrication and crankshaft.

21. 2. 3 For screw-type compressors, the period before opening up may be extended to six years or 25 000 running hours, whichever is the earlier. Examination should be made of rotors, clearances, gearing, etc.

21. 2. 4 Refrigerant condenser cooling water pumps, including standby pump(s) which may be used on other services, are to be opened up and their working parts exposed.

21. 2. 5 Primary and secondary refrigerant pumps are to be opened up and their working parts exposed.

21. 2. 6 The water end covers of condensers are to be removed for examination of the tubes, tubeplates and covers.

21. 2. 7 In the case of pressure vessels covered by insulation, any evidence of dampness or deterioration of the insulation which could lead to external corrosion of the vessels or their connections is to be investigated.

21. 2. 8 Sufficient insulation is to be stripped from insulated pressure vessels to allow the condition of the vessels and their connections to be ascertained. Care is to be taken that in replacement of the insulation, the vapour sealing of the outer covering is made good.

21. 2. 9 Sufficient insulation is to be stripped from pipes carrying the refrigerant at various points of the system both outside and inside the insulated chambers to permit the condition of the pipes to be ascertained. Sections of piping exposed are to include locations where lengths of piping have been connected by screwed couplings or butt welding. Care is to be taken that when ungalvanized portions of the piping in way of joints have been exposed, they are to be suitably coated and taped, after pressure testing, to prevent corrosion. On replacement of the insulation, the vapour sealing of the outer covering is to be made good.

21. 2. 10 A General Examination is to be made of all pressure relief valves and/or safety discs throughout the refrigerating plant to ensure that they are in good order and covered by current certification. However, no attempt is to be made to test primary refrigerant pressure relief on board ship. Relief valves are to be removed, overhauled and recalibrated every five years or in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, whichever is sooner.

21. 2. 11 Sea connections to refrigerant condenser cooling water pumps are to be opened up on the occasion of the hull and/or main machinery Special Survey.

21. 2. 12 The electric motors driving refrigerant compressors, pumps and fans, together with their controlgear and cables, are to have their insulation resistance tested and this is to be not less than 1 MΩ between individual conductors and between those conductors and earth. The installation may be subdivided to any desired extent by opening switches, removing fuses or disconnecting appliances for the purpose of this test.

21. 2. 13 All automatic controls, alarms and safety systems are to be tested and correct operation confirmed.

21. 2. 14 Sufficient air ducting and insulation lining is to be stripped from the cargo spaces or chamber's overhead and vertical surfaces to allow the condition of the insulation, insulation linings, grounds, supports, hangers and fixtures which support the insulation, grids, meat rails, etc. to be ascertained. Care is to be taken that on replacement, the ducts and linings are sealed against air blowing into the insulation, or against moisture ingress from refrigerated cell or space atmosphere.

21. 2. 15 Sufficient tank top insulation is to be stripped to allow the condition of the grounds and inner insulation lining to be ascertained.

21. 2. 16 Due consideration is to be given to the type of insulation used in the cargo spaces and chambers when determining the amount of insulation lining to be removed. Where organic foam insulants have been used, including panel systems or foamed *in situ*, or other insulants in slab form, the removal of panels or linings is to be at the Surveyor's discretion.

21. 2. 17 Under normal circumstances, the condition of the cargo space and chamber insulation, grounds, etc. can be ascertained when the Special Survey of the ship's steel structure is being held.

21. 2. 18 Arrangements made for defrosting air coolers, and for draining condensate from trays below coolers, are to be examined to ascertain that they are in working order. Trace heating elements around drain pipes should be specially examined.

21. 2. 19 Any air refreshing arrangements are to be examined.

21. 3 Subsequent Special Survey

21. 3. 1 A subsequent Special Survey is to be held approximately five years from the date of the previous Special Survey. Where a Continuous Survey procedure has been agreed, the interval between consecutive examinations of each item should not exceed five years.

21. 3. 2 In addition to the requirements for the first Special Survey as detailed in Pt 1, Ch 3, 21.2 Special Surveys and Pt 1, Ch 3, 21.3 Subsequent Special Survey 21.3.3 are to be complied with.

21. 3. 3 `Shell-and-tube' condensers and evaporators (secondary refrigerant coolers) in which the primary refrigerant is in the shell, are to have the shell pneumatically tested with the refrigerant, or air, or a mixture of inert gas and refrigerant (with the end covers removed) at pressures as stated in Pt 6, Ch 3, 2.5 Design pressures 2.5.5.

21. 3. 4 Shell-and-tube evaporators (secondary refrigerant coolers) in which the secondary refrigerant is in the shell are to have the shell hydraulically tested (with the end covers removed) to 1.5 times the design pressure, but in no case less than 0.29 MPa. After refitting the end covers, the primary refrigerant side is to be pneumatically tested as stated in Pt 1, Ch 3, 21.3 Subsequent Special Survey 21.3.3, and an examination made as far as practicable for gas leakage in the shell with the secondary refrigerant connection removed.

21. 3. 5 Heat exchangers used for cooling refrigerant liquid by the suction return gas to a compressor are not subject to internal corrosion, and would normally require to be specially examined internally only if leakage is suspected between high and low pressure sides. This type of heat exchanger, together with others using brine or water, are to be examined and tested at the discretion of the Surveyor according to the design of such equipment.

21. 4 Loading Port Surveys

21. 4. 1 When a Loading Port Certificate is required by the Owner or his representative, a survey as detailed in Pt 1, Ch 3, 21.4 Loading Port Surveys 21.4.2 to Pt 1, Ch 3, 21.4 Loading Port Surveys 21.4.7 is to be carried out at the loading port. The certificate is not in respect of the cargo to be loaded or the manner in which it is to be stowed.

21. 4. 2 The refrigerating installation is to be examined under working conditions, and the temperatures in the cargo chambers are to be noted.

21. 4. 3 A General Examination of the generating plant supplying electric power to the refrigerated cargo installation is to be carried out to confirm that it complies with Pt 6, Ch 3, 6.1 General.

21. 4. 4 The refrigerated cargo spaces and chambers are to be examined in an empty state to ascertain that they are clean and free from odour which may adversely affect the cargo to be loaded, that the air cooler coils and cooling grids and their connections are free from leakage, that cargo battens, where fixed to the vertical surfaces, are in good order, that cargo gratings or dunnage battens (*see* Pt 6, Ch 3 Refrigerated Cargo Installations) are available as necessary for the floors or decks, and that no damage has been sustained to the insulation or its lining prior to the loading of the refrigerated cargo. Any indications of defective insulation not considered to warrant immediate attention are to be noted and specially reported.

21. 4. 5 All scuppers and bilge suctions draining insulated spaces are to be examined to ensure that they are in good working order, and that any liquid seals are primed.

21. 4. 6 If the ship loads at more than one port, one survey only at the first loading port will be required, provided that it includes the examination of all spaces or chambers which are to be used for refrigerated cargo during the voyage, and that general cargo is not subsequently carried in any of the spaces or chambers prior to loading the refrigerated cargo.

21. 4. 7 In the case of ships engaged on voyages of less than two months' duration, a Loading Port Certificate will be considered as valid for two months, provided that the cargoes carried are of such a nature as not to damage the insulation or appliances in the insulated chambers, nor to affect,

by taint or mould, the refrigerated cargoes loaded during that period. For longer voyages, the certificate is valid for only one cargo from the loading port(s) to the discharge port(s).

21. 4. 8 If there is no ACS Surveyor available at the loading port(s), or if none is obtainable from a port within a reasonable distance, the Committee will accept the report of a survey held at the loading port by two competent engineers of the ship.

21. 5 Refrigerating plant on ships not classed with ACS

21. 5. 1 In the case of refrigerating installations being constructed under Special Survey on ships not intended to be classed with ACS, the installation is to comply with the applicable requirements of Pt 6, Ch 3 Refrigerated Cargo Installations.

21. 5. 2 The generator engines and electrical equipment, which supply power to the refrigerating installations are to be constructed in accordance with the requirements of the Classification Society concerned and the installation is also to comply with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 3, 6.1 General 6.1.2. Such plant is to be examined generally and under working conditions by the Surveyors.

PART

1

CHAPTER 3 Periodical Survey Regulations

SECTION 22 Controlled atmosphere systems

22. 1 Retention of class

22. 1. 1 It is a prerequisite of the **CA** notation that the refrigeration installation on board already conforms to a ✠ **ACS's RMC** class notation. *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.6 Class notations (refrigerated cargo installations (RMC), controlled atmosphere (CA) systems and carriage of refrigerated containers (CRC)) 2.6.1.

22. 1. 2 For the retention of Class, the CA systems are to be submitted for Periodical Surveys by ACS's Surveyors as specified in Pt 1, Ch 3, 22.2 Annual Surveys and Pt 1, Ch 3, 22.3 Special Surveys.

22. 2 Annual Surveys

22. 2. 1 Annual Surveys are to be carried out from the date of the Initial Classification Survey to verify that the CA system remains satisfactory.

22. 2. 2 The complete CA installation is to be visually examined and tested for the following main aspects:

a. CA zone sealing arrangements including cleats and hinges, pressure/vacuum (P/V) valves, door locks, ventilation of adjacent spaces, warning notices.
b. CA zones to be individually tested for airtightness to the design pressure. Testing by ship's staff, within one month prior to the survey may be accepted, based on a written report by the Master subject to visual inspection confirming the airtightness.
c. Operation and performance testing of the gas supply equipment, including controls, alarms, interlocks, safety devices.
d. Ventilation arrangements including fans.
e. Electrical supply arrangements.
f. Gas analyzers and analyzing equipment and calibration.
g. RH sensors and calibrations.
h. Permanent and portable gas monitoring, calibration and personnel safety equipment.
i. Witnessing of the air leakage.
j. Voyage logs, records of CA zone airtightness and calibration of instruments.
k. Verification that an Operating and Safety Manual is on board, is complete and that the responsible officers have countersigned to confirm that they are familiar with its contents.

22. 2. 3 On satisfactory completion of this survey, a new Annual Survey `AS', with date, will be assigned.

22. 3 Special Surveys

22. 3. 1 Special Surveys are to be carried out at intervals of five years from the date of the Initial Classification Survey to verify that all machinery, CA zones and safety arrangements remain

satisfactory. On request from Owners, all surveyable items may be examined on a continuous basis. With this option, 20 per cent of all items are to be presented for survey annually.

22. 3. 2 Each CA zone is to be subjected to an airtightness test.

22. 3. 3 The extent of dismantling is to be at the ACS Surveyor's discretion, but is to be sufficient for the Surveyor to be satisfied as to the condition of the installation.

22. 3. 4 On satisfactory completion of this survey, a new Special Survey `SS', or `RMC CS' with date, will be assigned.

PART

1

CHAPTER **3** **Periodical Survey Regulations**

SECTION **23** **Bow, inner, side shell and stern doors on Ro-Ro ships**

23. 1 General

23. 1. 1 The requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 2 Annual Surveys - Hull and machinery requirements to Pt 1, Ch 3, 5 Special Survey - General - Hull requirements are to be complied with, as applicable.

23. 1. 2 The requirements in this Section are applicable to the survey of bow, inner, side shell and stern doors on roll on-roll off passenger (Ro-Pax) ships and roll on-roll off (Ro-Ro) cargo ships.

23. 1. 3 Annual Survey and Special Survey of bow, inner, side shell and stern doors are to include examinations, tests and checks to a sufficient extent in order to verify that they are in satisfactory condition, remain in compliance with applicable requirements, and are subject to proper maintenance and operation in accordance with the Operation and Maintenance Manual (OMM) or manufacturer's recommendations.

23. 2 Definitions

23. 2. 1 For the application of the requirements in this Section, a **Ro-Ro ship** is a ship that utilises a loading ramp to enable wheeled vehicles to be rolled on and rolled off the ship.

23. 2. 2 A **Ro-Pax** ship is a passenger ship with Ro-Ro spaces or special category spaces.

23. 2. 3 **Ro-Ro spaces** are those that extend over a substantial length or the entire length of the ship, and are not normally sub-divided. These spaces can be loaded and unloaded (normally in a horizontal direction) with motor vehicles with fuel in their tanks for their own propulsion and/or goods (either packaged or in bulk, in rail or road cars (including tankers), trailers, containers, pallets, demountable tanks or in other stowage units or receptacles).

23. 2. 4 **Special category spaces** are enclosed vehicle spaces (above or below the bulkhead deck) that vehicles can be driven on to and from, and that can be accessed by passengers. Special category spaces may be accommodated on more than one deck, provided that the total overall clear height for vehicles does not exceed 10 m.

23. 2. 5 **Securing devices** are used to keep the door closed by preventing it from rotating about its hinges.

23. 2. 6 **Supporting devices** are used to transmit external or internal loads from the door to a securing device and from the securing device to the ship's structure, or a device other than a securing device, such as a hinge, stopper or other fixed device, that transmits loads from the door to the ship's structure.

23. 2. 7 A **locking device** is used to lock a securing device in the closed position.

23. 2. 8 A **Close-up Survey** is defined in Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.5 Definitions.

23. 3 Annual Surveys

23. 3. 1 The survey is to consist of an examination to verify, as far as is practicable, that the bow, inner, side shell and stern doors are maintained in a satisfactory condition.

23. 3. 2 The Surveyor is to obtain confirmation that no unapproved changes have been made to the bow, inner, side shell and stern doors since the last survey.

23. 3. 3 Where applicable, Surveyors are to verify that the Operation and Maintenance Manual (OMM), including any revisions, is available on board. It is to be verified that documented operating procedures for closing and securing the doors are kept on board and posted at the appropriate place(s). The Surveyor is to apply particular attention to the register of inspections and its contents (contained within the OMM) as a basis for the survey.

23. 3. 4 An examination of the bow, inner, side shell and stern doors is to be carried out, with particular attention to be applied to the following:

a. The structural arrangement of doors, including plating, secondary stiffeners, primary structure, hinging arms and weld connections;
b. Shell structure surrounding the opening of the doors and the securing, supporting and locking devices, including shell plating, secondary stiffeners, primary structure and associated weld connections;
c. Hinges and bearings, thrust bearings;
d. Hull and door side supports for securing, supporting and locking devices.

Note If a crack is identified, an examination by non-destructive testing is to be carried out in the surrounding area and for similar items, as considered necessary by the Surveyor.

23. 3. 5 A Close-up Survey of the securing, supporting and locking devices is to be carried out. As a minimum, the Close-up Survey is to include the following:

a. Cylinder securing pins, supporting brackets, back-up brackets (where fitted) and their weld connections;
b. Hinge pins, supporting brackets, back-up brackets (where fitted) and their weld connections;
c. Locking hooks, securing pins, supporting brackets, back-up brackets (where fitted) and their weld connections;
d. Locking pins, supporting brackets, back-up brackets (where fitted) and their weld connections;
e. Locating and stopper devices and their weld connections.

23. 3. 6 The clearances of hinges, bearings and thrust bearings are to be measured where no dismantling is required. If the function test is not satisfactory, dismantling may be required to measure the clearances. If dismantling is carried out, a visual examination of hinge pins and bearings, together with non-destructive testing of the hinge pin, is to be carried out. The clearances of the securing, supporting and locking devices are to be measured, where indicated in the Operation and Maintenance Manual (OMM).

23. 3. 7 An examination of the sealing arrangements, including packing material/rubber gaskets, retaining bars or channels and associated weld connections, is to be carried out.

23. 3. 8 An examination of the drainage arrangements, including bilge wells and drain pipes, where fitted, is to be carried out. A test of the bilge system between the inner and outer doors is to be carried out.

23. 3. 9 A function test of doors is to be carried out. The Surveyor is to check the satisfactory operation of the bow, inner, side shell and stern doors during a complete opening and closing operation including, as applicable:

a. Proper working of the hinging arms and hinges;
b. Proper engagement of the thrust bearings;
c. Device for locking the door in the open position;

d. Securing, supporting and locking devices;
e. Proper sequence of the interlock system for the opening/ closing system and the securing and locking devices;
f. Mechanical lock of the securing devices;
g. Proper locking of hydraulic securing devices in the event of a loss of the hydraulic fluid, according to the procedure contained in the Operation and Maintenance Manual (OMM);
h. Correct indication of open/closed position of doors and securing/locking devices at navigation bridge and other control stations;
i. Isolation of the hydraulic securing/locking devices from other hydraulic systems;
j. Confirmation that the operating panels are inaccessible to unauthorised persons;
k. Verification that a notice plate giving instructions to the effect that all securing devices are to be closed and locked before leaving harbour is placed at each operating panel and supplemented by warning indicator lights;
l. Examination of electrical equipment for opening, closing and securing the doors.

23. 3. 10 A function test of the indicator system is to be carried out. The Surveyor is to check the satisfactory operation of the indicator system, where fitted, including the following, as applicable:
a. Proper visible indication and audible alarm on the navigation bridge panel, according to the selected function 'harbour/sea voyage' and on the operating panel;
b. Lamp test function on both panels;
c. Verification that it is not possible to turn off the indicator light on both panels;
d. Verification of fail safe performance, according to the procedure contained in the Operation and Maintenance Manual (OMM);
e. Confirmation that power supply for the indicator system is supplied by the emergency source or other secure power supply and is independent of the power supply for operating the doors;
f. Proper condition of sensors and protection from water, ice formation and mechanical damage.

23. 3. 11 A test of the water leakage detection system, where fitted, is to be carried out. The test is to include verification of a proper audible alarm on the navigation bridge panel and on the engine control room panel, according to the procedure contained in the Operation and Maintenance Manual (OMM).

23. 3. 12 A test of the television surveillance system, where fitted, is to be carried out. The test is to include verification of a proper indication on the navigation bridge monitor and on the engine control room monitor.

23. 3. 13 A hose test, or equivalent, is to be carried out. If the results of the visual examination and function test are satisfactory, the tightness test need not be carried out unless considered necessary by the Surveyor.

23. 3. 14 Following the visual examinations and function tests, non-destructive testing and thickness measurements may be required as considered necessary by the Surveyor.

23. 4 Special Surveys

23. 4. 1 The requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 23.3 Annual Surveys are to be complied with as applicable.

23. 4. 2 The securing, supporting and locking devices, including their weld connections, are to be subjected to non-destructive testing and thickness measurement to the extent considered necessary by the Surveyor. The maximum allowable diminution is 15 per cent of the as-built thickness.

23. 4. 3 The effectiveness of the sealing arrangements is to be verified by carrying out a hose test, or equivalent.

23. 4. 4 The clearances of hinges, bearings and thrust bearings are to be measured. Unless otherwise specified in the Operation and Maintenance Manual (OMM), or by the manufacturer's recommendation, the measurement of clearances may be limited to representative bearings where

dismantling is needed in order to measure the clearances. If dismantling is carried out, a visual examination of hinge pins and bearings, together with non-destructive testing of the hinge pin, is to be carried out.

23. 4. 5 The non-return valves of the drainage system are to be dismantled and examined.

PART

1

CHAPTER **3** **Periodical Survey Regulations**

SECTION **24** **Fuel installations using gases or other low-flashpoint fuels**

24. 1 General

24. 1. 1 The requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 11 Machinery surveys - General requirements are to be complied with, as applicable.

24. 1. 2 In addition to the survey requirements below, further survey requirements may be imposed; as identified during the risk assessment process, *see* Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.6 Surveys for novel/complex systems, machinery and equipment

24. 1. 3 This Section provides requirements for the survey of a fuel installation using gases or other low-flashpoint fuels as defined in Pt 1, Ch 3, 1.5 Definitions 1.5.35 (gases or other low-flashpoint fuels are hereinafter referred to as fuel).

24. 1. 4 The fuel installation is to be surveyed in working condition except at special survey where internal examination of some components will be required. *See* Pt 1, Ch 3, 24.8 Complete Surveys - General requirements and Pt 1, Ch 3, 24.9 Complete Surveys - Consumers and other equipment.

24. 1. 5 The Annual Survey shall be scheduled, as far as practicable, to coincide with a bunkering operation to allow for verification of fuel storage tank level alarms and bunkering control, alert and safety systems under operational conditions. At annual survey physical testing of alarms and shutdowns is not required unless it is considered necessary by the attending Surveyor. In any case records of the alarms are to be retained for the verification of the attending Surveyor.

24. 1. 6 The Intermediate Survey supplements the Annual Survey by testing the fuel bunkering system including automatic control, alert and safety systems to confirm satisfactory operation. The extent of the testing required for the Intermediate Survey may briefly interrupt the fuel installation and therefore vessel operations and the survey are to be scheduled accordingly.

24. 1. 7 The extent of the testing required for Complete Surveys will normally be such that the full survey cannot be carried out with the fuel installation operating or loaded with fuel. Consequently, aspects of the survey shall be coordinated to correspond with dry-docking or another period when the system will be gas free. Completion of the survey requires verification of satisfactory condition of the installation at the normal operating temperatures and pressures so will normally be completed once the vessel has been bunkered following reactivation of the system.

24. 1. 8 Prior to any internal inspection of fuel storage tanks, associated piping, fittings and equipment, etc. the respective items are to be made safe for access by means of isolating relevant valves, purging and gas-freeing the space.

24. 1. 9 Where an approved condition-monitoring system is employed for the fuel system and its constituent components, and the applicable Descriptive Note is assigned, the requirements of these regulations for opening up and internal examination may be waived where the condition of the

equipment can be shown to be within agreed acceptable limits as detailed in Pt 5, Ch 21 Requirements for Condition Monitoring and Condition-Based Maintenance Systems.

24. 1. 10 The following documentation, as applicable, is to be available on board the ship:

a. Relevant instruction and information such as loading limit curve information, bunkering procedures, cooling down procedures and fuel installation test and inspection procedures.
b. Condition-Monitoring or Condition-Based Maintenance documentation as applicable.
c. Test records for bunkering ESD systems.
d. Records of crew tests/inspections of the fuel installation.

24. 1. 11 For Special Survey requirements for electrical equipment *see* Pt 1, Ch 3, 14 Electrical equipment.

24. 1. 12 Where the design of any part of the fuel installation does not permit opening up for internal examination, as required by these regulations, alternative arrangements for testing and/or inspection will be specially considered.

24. 2 Survey Following Repair

24. 2. 1 Following repairs, independent fuel storage tanks of Type C are to be hydrostatically tested in accordance with *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships using Gases or other Low-flashpoint Fuels* and in accordance with the manufacturer's testing procedures. The tank shall be subjected to a hydrostatic test at a pressure measured at the top of the tanks of not less than 1.5 times the design vapour pressure. Other types of fuel storage tank, such as membrane tanks, are to be tested in accordance with approved procedures. provided by the fuel storage tank designers. After testing, suitable drying and consequent air-purging procedures are to be followed to return the tank to operational condition.

24. 3 Annual Surveys - General Requirements for Fuel Systems

24. 3. 1 The Annual Survey is to be carried out with the fuel installation operational. Gas-freeing will not generally be necessary.

24. 3. 2 The ship's log and operational records covering the period from the previous survey, are to be examined. with regard to correct functioning of the gas detection systems, fuel supply/gas systems, and other equipment related to the fuel installation. The operating hours per day of the reliquefaction plant, the gas combustion unit, as applicable, the boil-off rate, and nitrogen consumption (for membrane containment systems) are to be reviewed and evaluated for equivalence on the balance of the fuel handling, and considered together with any existing gas detection records.

24. 3. 3 Any malfunction of the installation recorded in the log is to be investigated. It is to be verified that any repairs have been carried out to an acceptable standard and in accordance with the applicable Rules and Regulations.

24. 3. 4 The manufacturer/Builder instructions and manuals covering the operations, safety and maintenance requirements and occupational health hazards relevant to fuel storage, fuel bunkering, and fuel supply and associated systems for the use of the fuel, are to be confirmed as being aboard the vessel.

24. 3. 5 All control systems, alerts and safety systems are to be tested as follows:

a. The control, alert and safety systems for the fuel storage tanks and processing system are to be verified in satisfactory condition by one or more of the following methods:
   i. Comparison of read-outs from local and remote indicators.
   ii. Consideration of read-outs with regard to the actual conditions.
   iii. Examination of maintenance records with reference to the approved maintenance management system.

iv. Verification of calibration status of the measuring instruments.

b. All control, alerts and safety systems are to be tested, where testing is not possible due to operational reasons simulated testing may be accepted by the attending Surveyor. Which are to include but are not limited to:
   i. fuel storage tank and processing system high and low pressure.
   ii. fuel storage tank high and high-high level
   iii. fuel storage tank overfill level
   iv. fuel storage tank high temperature.

c. Gas detection and other leakage detection equipment in spaces containing fuel storage, fuel bunkering, and fuel supply equipment or components or associated systems, including indicators and alarms, is to be confirmed as being in satisfactory operating condition. Recalibration of the gas detection systems shall be verified in accordance with the manufacturers' recommendations.

d. Fuel leakage detection systems (temperature sensors and gas detection as applicable) are to be examined and tested in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and calibrated using sample gas.

e. The electrical installation, equipment and cables in areas which may contain flammable gas are to be examined in order to verify that they are in good condition and have been properly maintained. Bonding straps that are installed to control static electricity are to be visually examined.

f. Alerts and safety systems associated with pressurised installations and any safety device associated with non-safe type electrical equipment that is protected by air-locks or pressurisation, are to be verified.

g. Verification, as far as is practicable, of the satisfactory operation of the control, monitoring and automatic shutdown systems of the fuel supply and bunkering systems.

h. Operational test, as far as practicable, of the shutdown of ESD protected machinery spaces.

24. 3. 6 Fuel installations are to be surveyed as follows:

a. Portable and/or fixed drip trays, or insulation providing protection in the event of fuel leakage, are to be examined.

b. Components of the fuel installation fitted with insulation to provide protection against ice formation are to be examined for satisfactory condition.

c. Fuel piping, valves and fittings are to be generally examined, with particular attention to double-wall or ventilated ducting arrangements, expansion bellows, supports and vapour seals on insulated piping.

d. Fuel piping and components associated with the fuel processing equipment are to be visually examined.

24. 3. 7 Inerting arrangements and associated alarms are to be verified as being in satisfactory condition, including the means for prevention of backflow of fuel vapour to the inert gas system.

24. 3. 8 Ventilation systems including portable ventilating equipment where fitted, for spaces containing fuel storage, fuel bunkering, and fuel supply units or components, or associated systems, including air locks, pump rooms, compressor rooms, fuel preparation rooms, fuel valve rooms, control rooms and spaces containing gas burning equipment, are to be surveyed as follows:

a. Ventilation systems and air-locks including their alarm system are to be generally examined.

b. Ventilation fans in hazardous areas are to be visually examined.

c. For ventilated double-walled piping or ducting containing fuel piping within machinery spaces, exhaust fans and/or supply fans are to be examined to ensure that the air-flow is not impeded.

d. Where alarms, such as differential pressure and loss of pressure alarms, are fitted, these shall be operationally tested as far as practicable.

24. 3. 9 The closing devices for all air-intakes and openings into accommodation spaces, service spaces, machinery spaces, control stations and approved openings in superstructures and deckhouses less than 10m from deck-mounted fuel storage tanks, are to be examined.

24. 3. 10 Venting arrangements, including protection screens if provided, for fuel storage tanks, inter-barrier spaces and tank hold spaces as applicable, are to be visually examined externally. The external condition of the fuel storage tank relief valves is to be verified and records of the last test of the opening/closing pressures are to be reviewed.

24. 3. 11 Means for draining the vent arrangements from fuel storage tank pressure relief valves and other system relief valves are to be examined to ensure that there is no liquid build-up that would impede effective operation, drain valves are to be checked as applicable.

24. 3. 12 Heating arrangements, if fitted, for steel structures in cofferdams and other spaces are to be verified in satisfactory condition.

24. 3. 13 All gastight bulkhead penetrations, including any gastight shaft seals, are to be visually examined.

24. 3. 14 Electrical equipment and bulkhead/deck penetrations, including access openings in hazardous areas, are to be examined for continued suitability for their intended service and installation area.

24. 3. 15 Electrical bonding arrangements in hazardous areas, including bonding straps where fitted, are to be examined.

24. 4 Annual Surveys – Fuel Processing Equipment

24. 4. 1 The following fuel processing equipment is to be generally examined in working condition and operational parameters verified. Insulation, where fitted, need not be removed but any deterioration of insulation, or evidence of dampness which could lead to external corrosion of the vessels or their connections, is to be investigated:

a. Heat exchangers and pressure vessels.
b. Fuel heaters, vaporisers, masthead heaters.
c. Heating arrangements, including provision for continuous heating and circulation of heating medium to prevent freezing during start up and when the fuel installation is not in use.
d. Fuel piping and components associated with the fuel processing equipment.

24. 4. 2 Where the double wall or duct containing fuel piping is protected using a pressurised inert gas atmosphere the monitoring and maintenance of the inert atmosphere is to be confirmed in satisfactory condition.

24. 4. 3 The condition of the fuel isolation valve and double block and bleed arrangements for each consumer is to be examined with respect to:

a. Containment to prevent fuel leakage from any valve arrangements installed within the machinery space.
b. Connections to the inerting and venting arrangements.
c. General examination to confirm that the valve arrangement and all associated fuel monitoring, control, and shutdown equipment are in satisfactory condition. The external examination is to be supplemented by a review of relevant operational, maintenance and service reports.

24. 4. 4 Where fuel processing equipment is located within an independent space that functions as containment in the event of a fuel spill (e.g. a tank connection space), the space is to be examined internally and externally to verify that the structure remains in a satisfactory condition to contain any potential leakage of fuel including any thermal isolation to protect the surrounding structure from damage due to cryogenic leakage.

24. 4. 5 Records of testing the operation of the master fuel valve for each engine space are to be verified. Tests are to be carried out on regular basis as agreed with ACS and the scope of the testing shall

incorporate a full test of the Emergency Shutdown sequence. Where practicable, operation of the valve as described above is to be witnessed at the time of survey.

24. 5 Annual Surveys – Fuel Storage

24. 5. 1 Areas in which fuel storage tanks are located (on and below deck) are to be examined for any changes to the arrangements within those areas that may affect the hazardous area rating.

24. 5. 2 For Type C pressurised fuel storage tanks the external surface of the fuel storage tank insulation is to be visually examined for cold spots to verify the condition of the insulation arrangements. This examination is to be carried out with the fuel storage tanks loaded. Ideally fuel storage tanks shall be loaded to the maximum loading limit; examination of partially-filled fuel storage tanks may be accepted alongside a review of records of periodic cold spot examinations carried out by suitably trained and qualified crew.

24. 5. 3 The supporting structure between the deck plating and the tank is to be examined to confirm that the saddle arrangement remains in satisfactory condition in accordance with the approved design.

24. 5. 4 For vacuum-insulated fuel storage tanks, monitoring records are to be reviewed to confirm satisfactory maintenance of the vacuum. Any trends identifying a breakdown or loss of vacuum containment are to be investigated.

24. 5. 5 For Type B fuel storage tanks where the insulation arrangements are such that the insulation cannot be examined, the surrounding structures of wing tanks, double bottom tanks and cofferdams are to be visually examined for cold spots. This examination is to be carried out with the fuel storage tanks loaded. Ideally fuel storage tanks shall be loaded to the maximum loading limit; examination of partially-filled fuel storage tanks may be accepted alongside a review of records of periodic cold spot examinations carried out by suitable trained and qualified crew.

24. 5. 6 For membrane fuel storage tanks the performance of the insulation arrangements is to be confirmed in accordance with approved procedures submitted by the containment designers.

24. 5. 7 The fuel storage hold space is to be generally examined.

24. 5. 8 The tank connection space is to be internally examined.

24. 5. 9 Tank and relief valves are to be externally examined.

24. 5. 10 Satisfactory operation of the tank monitoring system is to be verified.

24. 5. 11 Bilge alarms and means of drainage of the space are to be examined and tested.

24. 5. 12 Remote and local closing of the main tank valve is to be tested.

24. 6 Annual Survey - Fuel Bunkering System

24. 6. 1 The fuel-bunkering system, including manifold connections, isolation valves, bunker piping and linked Emergency Shutdown (ESD) system connection equipment (including cabling and connectors), are to be visually examined.

24. 6. 2 Bunkering operations are to be observed as far as practicable; satisfactory condition of the bunkering control, alert and safety system is to be verified. During annual survey it is not expected that ESD1 (stoppage of bunker transfer) or ESD2 (disconnection of bunker piping) will be operationally tested where applicable but records of maintenance and testing are to be reviewed. However, prior to starting the bunkering operation, it is expected that an ESD1 is tested with no fuel in the system (i.e. a dry test). Records of the testing are to be available during survey.

24. 7 Intermediate Surveys

24. 7. 1 In addition to the requirements below, the requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 24.1 General to Pt 1, Ch 3, 24.6 Annual Survey - Fuel Bunkering System are to be complied with.

a. Control, alert and safety systems for the bunkering system, fuel-containment systems and processing equipment, together with any associated shutdown and/or interlock, are to be tested under working conditions and, if necessary, recalibrated. Shutdown sequence and extent are to be verified against documented procedures where applicable. Such safety systems include but are not limited to:

i. Bunkering ESD system is to be tested, without fuel in the piping, to verify that ESD system operation will result in a closure of the isolation valves and a shutdown of machinery associated with bunkering operations. All ESD activations and outputs are to be tested including fuel storage tank overfill protection, bunkering isolation valve closure and automatic shutdown of machinery associated with bunkering operations.

ii. Fuel-processing equipment shutdown and closure of isolation valves resulting from:

- loss of the valve-actuating medium;
- loss of ventilation in fuel piping double wall /ventilated duct; or
- loss of pressure of inert gas in pressurised double-walled pipe arrangement.

iii. Fuel processing equipment shutdown and closure of isolation valves as a result of deviation in the fuel supply to the engine-room from the normal operating conditions (temperature and pressure).

iv. Fuel installation shutdown as a result of gas detection.

v. Safety interlocks on fuel-processing equipment are to be examined and tested as necessary to confirm satisfactory condition.

b. Gas detectors, temperature sensors, pressure sensors, level indicators, and other equipment providing input to the safety system are to be randomly tested to confirm satisfactory operating condition. The proper response of the safety system upon fault conditions is to be verified.

24. 7. 2 Consideration will be given to simulated testing, provided that it is considered representative. Comprehensive maintenance records, including details of tests carried out in accordance with the fuel plant and instrumentation maintenance manuals may be presented for review. Acceptance of either simulated testing or maintenance records including reports of testing as described above is subject to the satisfaction of the attending Surveyor.

24. 8 Complete Surveys - General requirements

24. 8. 1 The requirements of Pt 1, Ch 3, 24.1 General to Pt 1, Ch 3, 24.7 Intermediate Surveys are to be complied with.

24. 8. 2 The items covered by Pt 1, Ch 3, 24.8 Complete Surveys - General requirements 24.8.3 to Pt 1, Ch 3, 24.9 Complete Surveys - Consumers and other equipment 24.9.5 may, at the request of the Owner, be examined on a Continuous Survey basis provided that the interval between examinations of each item does not exceed five years. Exceptions may be made to this requirement if Condition Based Maintenance arrangements have been agreed and maintained satisfactorily (*see* Pt 1, Ch 3, 24.1 General 24.1.9).

24. 8. 3 Except where alternative provisions are given in Pt 1, Ch 3, 24.8 Complete Surveys - General requirements 24.8.6 and Pt 1, Ch 3, 24.8 Complete Surveys - General requirements 24.8.7 below, all fuel storage tanks are to be examined externally and internally, particular attention being paid to the plating in way of supports of securing arrangements for independent tanks, pipe connections, also to sealing arrangements in way of the deck penetrations. Insulation is to be removed as required.

24. 8. 4 Provided that the structural examination is satisfactory, that the gas detection systems have been found to be in satisfactory condition, routine on board checks and maintenance records are

satisfactory and that the voyage records have not shown any abnormal operation, fuel storage tanks will not require hydrostatic testing (except as required by Pt 1, Ch 3, 24.8 Complete Surveys - General requirements 24.8.6.

24. 8. 5 The non-destructive testing (NDT) of independent fuel storage tanks is to supplement visual inspection with particular attention to be given to the integrity of the main structural members, tank shell and highly-stressed parts, including welded connections as deemed necessary by the Surveyor. The following items are considered as highly-stressed parts:

- structure in way of tank supports and anti-rolling/anti-pitching devices,
- web frames or stiffening rings,
- swash bulkhead boundaries,
- dome and sump connections to tank shell,
- foundations for pumps, towers, ladders, etc.
- pipe connections.

24. 8. 6 The NDT testing requirements for different types of independent fuel storage tanks are detailed below; where radiographic or ultrasonic testing is required, at least 10 per cent of the length of the applicable welded connections is to be tested. This testing is to be carried out internally and externally as applicable. Insulation is to be removed as necessary for the required non-destructive testing:

a. For independent fuel storage tanks of Type B, the extent of non-destructive testing is to be given in the test schedule specially prepared for the tank design. The Owner is to submit proposals for the extent of non-destructive testing of the fuel storage tanks in advance of the survey.

b. For vacuum-insulated independent fuel storage tanks of Type C vacuum monitoring is accepted as a demonstration of the internal integrity of the tank. This is subject to verification that the monitoring equipment is being maintained, operated and calibrated in a satisfactory condition. There is no further requirement for internal examination and testing of these tanks. The tank support arrangements are to be visually examined; non-destructive testing may be required if the condition raises doubt as to the structural integrity.

c. For non-vacuum insulated independent fuel storage tanks of Type C non-destructive testing is required on the plating in way of supports and also over selected lengths of welds. Where such testing raises doubt as to the structural integrity, further testing is to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of the manufacturer's test and inspection instructions for hydraulic testing (normally at 1.25 times the approved maximum vapour pressure). Alternatively, consideration will be given to pneumatic testing under special circumstances, provided full details are submitted for approval.

d. At each alternate Complete Survey (i.e.at 10 year intervals); non-vacuum insulated independent fuel storage tanks of Type C are to be either:
i. Hydrostatically or hydro-pneumatically tested to not less than 1.25 times MARVS in accordance with the requirements of the manufacturer's test and inspection instructions. The requirements for non-destructive testing in Pt 1, Ch 3, 24.8 Complete Surveys - General requirements 24.8.5 are to be carried out following this test as required by the Surveyor; or
ii. Subject to a thorough, planned, non-destructive testing. This testing is to be carried out in accordance with a test schedule specially prepared for the tank design. If a special programme does not exist, the following shall be tested:
- structure in way of tank supports and anti-rolling/anti-pitching devices;
- stiffening rings;
- Y-connections between tank shell and a longitudinal bulkhead of bi-lobe tanks;
- swash bulkhead boundaries if applicable;

- dome and sump connections to the tank shell if applicable;
- pipe connections.

24. 8. 7 Membrane fuel storage tank surveys are to be carried out in accordance with approved testing procedures provided by the containment designers.

24. 8. 8 Fuel bunkering, supply and storage tank pipe connections and fittings are to be examined, and all valves and cocks in direct communication with the interiors of the storage tanks are to be opened out for inspection and the connection pipes are to be examined internally, so far as practicable. Special attention is to be paid to the fuel storage tank master isolation valve(s); the valve seat is to be visually examined and the valve tested at the maximum working pressure of the fuel storage tank prior to re-commissioning the fuel installation.

24. 8. 9 All emergency shutdown valves, check valves, block and bleed valves, master gas valves, remote operating valves, isolating valves for pressure relief valves in the fuel storage, fuel bunkering, and fuel supply piping systems are to be examined and proven operable. A random selection of valves is to be opened for examination.

24. 8. 10 Relief valves are to be surveyed as follows:

a. The pressure relief valves for the fuel storage tanks are to be opened for examination, adjusted to the correct operating pressure as indicated in Pt 1, Ch 3, 24.8 Complete Surveys - General requirements 24.8.10.(b), function-tested, and sealed. If the tanks are equipped with relief valves with non-metallic membranes in the main or pilot valves, such non-metallic membranes are to be replaced. Valves may be removed from the tank for the purpose of making this adjustment under pressure of air or other suitable gas.

b. Valves are to lift at a pressure not more than the percentage given below, above the maximum vapour pressure for which the tanks have been approved:
   i. For 0 to 0.15 MPa, 10 per cent.
   ii. For 0.15 to 0.3 MPa, 6 per cent.
   iii. For pressures exceeding 0.3 MPa, 3 per cent.

c. Pressure relief valves for the fuel supply and bunkering piping are to be opened for examination, adjusted, and function tested. Where a detailed record of continuous overhaul and retesting of individually-identifiable relief valves is maintained, consideration will be given to acceptance on the basis of opening, internal examination, and testing of a representative sampling of valves, including each size and type of liquefied gas or vapour relief valve in use, provided there is logbook evidence that the remaining valves have been overhauled and tested since the previous Complete Survey.

d. Relief valves on fuel piping are to have their pressure settings checked. The valves may be removed from the piping for this purpose. At the Surveyor's discretion a sample of each size and type of valve may be opened for examination and testing.

e. The pressure/vacuum relief valves, rupture discs and other pressure relief devices for interbarrier spaces and hold spaces are to be opened, examined, tested and readjusted as necessary, depending on their design.

24. 8. 11 All fuel pumps, booster pumps and vapour pumps are to be opened out for examination. Where applicable, pumping systems for inter-barrier spaces are to be checked and verified to be in satisfactory condition.

24. 8. 12 Compressors, process pressure vessels, heat exchangers and other components used in connection with fuel handling are to be examined.

24. 8. 13 Piping for the fuel processing system including valves, actuators and compensators is to be opened for examination. Insulation may need to be removed, as deemed necessary, to ascertain the condition of the piping. If any doubt exists regarding the integrity of the piping based upon visual examination then, where deemed necessary by the Surveyor, a pressure test at 1.25 times MARVS of the piping is to be carried out. The complete piping systems are to be tested for leaks after re-

assembly. Where water cannot be tolerated and the piping cannot be dried prior to putting the system into service, the Surveyor shall accept alternative testing fluids or alternative means of testing.

24. 8. 14 Equipment for the production of inert gas is to be examined and shown to be in satisfactory condition, operating within the gas specification limits. Piping, valves, etc. for the distribution of the inert gas are to be generally examined. Pressure vessels for the storage of inert gas are to be examined internally and externally and the securing arrangements are to be specially examined. Pressure relief valves are to be demonstrated to be in satisfactory condition. Liquid nitrogen storage vessels are to be examined, so far as practicable, and all control equipment, alarms and safety devices are to be verified as operational.

24. 8. 15 Gastight bulkhead shaft seals are to be opened out so that the sealing arrangements may be checked.

24. 8. 16 Any sea connections associated with the fuel handling equipment are to be opened out when the ship is in dry dock.

24. 8. 17 Where an approved condition-monitoring system or condition-based maintenance system is in place, the requirements for opening up of equipment may be reduced accordingly where the condition of the equipment can be shown to be within agreed acceptable limits as detailed inPt 5, Ch 21 Requirements for Condition Monitoring and Condition-Based Maintenance Systems.

24. 8. 18 Testing of the tank connection space and cofferdam leakage-detection arrangement (temperature sensors and gas detectors) is to be carried out.

24. 8. 19 Examination of electrical equipment to include the physical condition of electrical cables and supports, intrinsically safe, explosion proof, or any other increased safety features on the electrical equipment.

24. 8. 20 Functional testing of the equipment which is necessary to establish and maintain the pressure within pressurised electrical equipment enclosures (Ex p) and associated alarms is to be carried out.

24. 8. 21 Testing of arrangements for de-energizing electrical equipment which is not certified for use in hazardous areas.

24. 8. 22 An electrical insulation resistance test of the circuits terminating in, or passing through, hazardous areas, is to be carried out. If the ship is not in a gas-free condition, the results of previously recorded test readings may be accepted together with a review of the on-board monitoring of the earth loop impedance of relevant circuits.

24. 8. 23 Gas detectors, temperature sensors, pressure sensors, level indicators, and other equipment providing input to the fuel safety system are to be tested to confirm satisfactory operating condition. Pressure, temperature and level indicating equipment are to be calibrated in accordance with the manufacturer's requirements.

24. 9 Complete Surveys - Consumers and other equipment

24. 9. 1 Heat exchangers associated with the fuel installation are to be opened out and examined as follows:

a. The water end covers of evaporators are to be removed for examination of the tubes, tube plates and covers.
b. Heating medium pumps, including standby pump(s) which may be used on other services, are to be opened out for examination.
c. Where a pressure vessel is insulated, sufficient insulation is to be removed, especially in way of connections and supports, to enable the vessel's condition to be ascertained.
d. Note this refers to external insulation, not additional insulation that may be installed in the annular space of a vacuum insulated tank.

e. Insulated piping is to have sufficient insulation removed to enable its condition to be ascertained. Vapour seals are to be specially examined for their condition. Vacuum-insulated piping is to be visually examined and records of maintenance and vacuum monitoring are to be reviewed.

24. 9. 2 The steam side of steam heaters is to be hydraulically tested to 1.5 times the design pressure.

24. 9. 3 Fuel pipe ducts or casings are to be generally examined and the exhaust or inerting arrangements are to be verified.

24. 9. 4 All alarms associated with the fuel burning systems are to be verified; including, but not limited to, main and auxiliary engines, boilers, incinerators and gas combustion units.

24. 9. 5 The satisfactory condition of all pressure relief valves and/or safety discs throughout the installation is to be verified.

PART

1

CHAPTER **3 Periodical Survey Regulations**

SECTION **25 Classification of rigs not built under survey**

25. 1 General

25. 1. 1 When classification is desired for a rig not built under the supervision of ACS's Surveyors, application should be made to the Committee in writing.

25. 1. 2 When the **RIGGING*** notation is assigned, Periodical Surveys are to be carried out at the time of application and thereafter.

25. 1. 3 Where classification is desired for a rig which is classed by another recognised Society, special consideration may be given to the scope of the survey.

PART

2

Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials

CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1 General Requirements 224

SECTION 1 Scope 227
SECTION 2 Approval and survey requirements 228
SECTION 3 Certification of materials 233
SECTION 4 General requirements for manufacture 236
SECTION 5 Non-destructive examination 240
SECTION 6 References 242

CHAPTER 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials 245

SECTION 1 General requirements for testing 249
SECTION 2 Tensile tests 252
SECTION 3 Impact tests 259
SECTION 4 Ductility tests for pipes and tubes 261
SECTION 5 Embrittlement tests 264
SECTION 6 Crack tip opening displacement tests 266
SECTION 7 Bend tests 269
SECTION 8 Hardness testing 271
SECTION 9 Corrosion tests 272

CHAPTER 3 Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars 274

SECTION 1 General requirements 280
SECTION 2 Normal strength steels for ship and other structural applications 292
SECTION 3 Higher strength steels for ship and other structural applications 297
SECTION 4 Steels for boilers and pressure vessels 306
SECTION 5 Steels for machinery fabrications 314
SECTION 6 Carbon–manganese and nickel alloy steels for low temperature service 316
SECTION 7 Austenitic and duplex stainless steels 321

SECTION 8 Plates with specified through thickness properties 325
SECTION 9 Bars for welded chain cables..... 328
SECTION 10 High strength steels for welded structures..... 334
CHAPTER 4 Steel Castings 341
SECTION 1 General requirements..... 346
SECTION 2 Castings for ship and other structural applications 352
SECTION 3 Castings for machinery construction..... 360
SECTION 4 Castings for crankshafts..... 363
SECTION 5 Castings for propellers 369
SECTION 6 Castings for boilers, pressure vessels and piping systems..... 373
SECTION 7 Ferritic steel castings for low temperature service 377
SECTION 8 Stainless steel castings..... 379
SECTION 9 Steel castings for container corner fittings..... 382
CHAPTER 5 Steel Forgings 385
SECTION 1 General requirements..... 391
SECTION 2 Forgings for ship and other structural applications 398
SECTION 3 Forgings for shafting and machinery 403
SECTION 4 Forgings for crankshafts..... 413
SECTION 5 Forgings for gearing 421
SECTION 6 Forgings for turbines 428
SECTION 7 Forgings for boilers, pressure vessels and piping systems..... 433
SECTION 8 Ferritic steel forgings for low temperature service 438
SECTION 9 Stainless steel forgings 440
CHAPTER 6 Steel Pipes and Tubes 443
SECTION 1 General requirements..... 446
SECTION 2 Seamless pressure pipes 451
SECTION 3 Welded pressure pipes..... 456
SECTION 4 Ferritic steel pressure pipes for low temperature service..... 458
SECTION 5 Stainless steel pressure pipes..... 461
SECTION 6 Boiler and superheater tubes 464
CHAPTER 7 Iron Castings 466
SECTION 1 General requirements..... 469
SECTION 2 Grey iron castings 473
SECTION 3 Spheroidal or nodular graphite iron castings 474
SECTION 4 Compacted or vermicular graphite iron castings..... 478
SECTION 5 Iron castings for crankshafts..... 480

CHAPTER 8 Aluminium Alloys 482
SECTION 1 Plates, bars and sections 486
SECTION 2 Aluminium alloy rivets 494
SECTION 3 Aluminium alloy castings 497
SECTION 4 Aluminium/steel transition joints 501
CHAPTER 9 Copper Alloys 505
SECTION 1 Castings for propellers 509
SECTION 2 Castings for valves, liners and bushes 521
SECTION 3 Tubes 528
CHAPTER 10 Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring 533
SECTION 1 Anchors 538
SECTION 2 Stud link chain cables for ships 547
SECTION 3 Offshore Mooring chain cables 565
SECTION 4 Fittings for offshore mooring chain 579
SECTION 5 Short link chain cables 584
SECTION 6 Steel wire ropes 588
SECTION 7 Fibre ropes 593
CHAPTER 11 Approval of Welding Consumables 595
SECTION 1 General 600
SECTION 2 Mechanical testing procedures 605
SECTION 3 Electrodes for manual and gravity welding 606
SECTION 4 Wire-flux combinations for submerged-arc automatic welding 621
SECTION 5 Wires and wire-gas combinations for manual, semi-automatic and automatic welding 634
SECTION 6 Consumables for use in electro-slag and electro-gas welding 640
SECTION 7 Consumables for use in one-side welding with temporary backing materials 645
SECTION 8 Consumables for welding austenitic and duplex stainless steels 651
SECTION 9 Consumables for welding aluminium alloys 655
CHAPTER 12 Welding Qualifications 663
SECTION 1 General qualification requirements 667
SECTION 2 Welding procedure qualification tests for steels 669
SECTION 3 Specific requirements for stainless steels 698
SECTION 4 Welding procedure tests for non-ferrous alloys 701
SECTION 5 Welder qualification tests 708
SECTION 6 Qualification of friction stir welding of aluminium alloys 720

CHAPTER 13 Requirements for Welded Construction 722
SECTION 1 General welding requirements 727
SECTION 2 Specific requirements for ship hull structure and machinery 736
SECTION 3 Specific requirements for fabricated steel sections 748
SECTION 4 Specific requirements for fusion welded pressure vessels 751
SECTION 5 Specific requirements for pressure piping 762
SECTION 6 Repair of existing ships by welding 767
SECTION 7 Austenitic and duplex stainless steel – Specific requirements 769
SECTION 8 Specific requirements for welded aluminium 771
SECTION 9 Friction stir welding requirements for aluminium alloys 776
CHAPTER 14 Plastics Materials and other Non-Metallic Materials 778
SECTION 1 General requirements 782
SECTION 2 Tests on polymers, resins, reinforcements and associated materials 786
SECTION 3 Testing procedures 796
SECTION 4 Plastic pipes and fittings 803
SECTION 5 Control of material quality for composite construction 808
CHAPTER 15 Corrosion Prevention 816
SECTION 1 General Requirements 819
SECTION 2 Coatings 820
SECTION 3 Corrosion Resistant Steels 825
SECTION 4 Cathodic Protection (CP) 826

PART

2

CHAPTER **1 General Requirements**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**Scope**		**227**
	1. 1	General	227
SECTION 2	**Approval and survey requirements**		**228**
	2. 1	Approval and survey requirements – General	228
	2. 2	ACS Approval – General	228
	2. 3	Materials Survey Scheme	229
	2. 4	Materials Quality Scheme	230
SECTION 3	**Certification of materials**		**233**
	3. 1	General	233
	3. 2	Materials Survey Scheme	234
	3. 3	Materials Quality Scheme	234
	3. 4	Electronic certification	234
SECTION 4	**General requirements for manufacture**		**236**
	4. 1	General	236
	4. 2	Chemical composition	237
	4. 3	Heat treatment	237
	4. 4	Test material	237
	4. 5	Mechanical tests	238
	4. 6	Re-test procedures	238
	4. 7	Rectification of defective material	238
	4. 8	Identification of materials	239
SECTION 5	**Non-destructive examination**		**240**
	5. 1	General NDE requirements	240
	5. 2	Personnel qualifications	240
	5. 3	Non-destructive examination methods	240
	5. 4	Non-destructive examination procedures	240

5. 5 Non-destructive examination reports 241
SECTION 6 References 242
6. 1 General 242

PART

2

CHAPTER **1 General Requirements**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 1. 4. 1: Conversions from SI units to metric and imperial units 238
Table 1. 6. 1: List of National and International Standards 242

PART

2

CHAPTER **1** **General Requirements**

SECTION **1** **Scope**

1. 1 General

1. 1. 1 Materials used for the construction, conversion, modification or repair of ships, other marine structures and associated machinery which are classed or are intended for classification by Asia Classification Society (hereinafter referred to as ACS), are to be manufactured, tested and inspected in accordance with these Rules.

1. 1. 2 Wrought, cast and extruded materials are to comply with the requirements of Ch 1 General Requirements and Ch 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials, and the appropriate specific requirements of Ch 3 Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars to Ch 9 Copper Alloys. Mooring and anchoring equipment is to comply with the requirements of Ch 1 General Requirements and Ch 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials, and the appropriate specific requirements of Ch 10 Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring. Manufacturers of these materials must be approved by ACS according to the requirements in Ch 1, 2 Approval and survey requirements or Ch 1, 3 Certification of materials. Only those materials within a manufacturer's scope of approval may be used.

1. 1. 3 Welding consumables are to comply with the requirements of Ch 11 Approval of Welding Consumables of these Rules.

1. 1. 4 Where welding is used for the construction, conversion, modification or repair of ships, other marine structures and associated machinery which are classed or are intended for classification by ACS, welding qualifications and tests shall be performed according to Ch 12 Welding Qualifications of these Rules. All welding shall be performed according to Ch 13 Requirements for Welded Construction of these Rules.

1. 1. 5 Plastics materials are to comply with the requirements of Ch 14 Plastics Materials and other Non-Metallic Materials of these Rules.

1. 1. 6 Coatings, corrosion prevention systems and their components are to comply with the requirements of Ch 15 Corrosion Prevention.

1. 1. 7 The materials and components which are to comply with these requirements for the purposes of classification are defined in the relevant Rules dealing with design and construction.

1. 1. 8 Materials, manufacturing processes and inspection methods not listed in the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials, will be specially considered.

PART

2

CHAPTER **1** **General Requirements**

SECTION **2** **Approval and survey requirements**

2. 1 Approval and survey requirements – General

2. 1. 1 Marine materials manufactured in accordance with Ch 3 Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars to Ch 10 Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring of these Rules are to be made at works which have been approved by ACS for the type and grade of product being supplied.

2. 1. 2 Materials manufactured in accordance with Ch 3 Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars to Ch 10 Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring of these Rules are to be manufactured, tested and inspected under Survey according to the requirements of one of the following two schemes:

a. The Materials Survey Scheme, *See* Ch 1, 2.3, Materials Survey Scheme.
b. The Materials Quality Scheme, *See* Ch 1, 2.4 Materials Quality Scheme.

2. 1. 3 For the purposes of survey, ACS Surveyors are to be allowed access to all relevant parts of the works, and are to be provided with the necessary facilities and information to enable them to verify that the manufacture is being carried out in accordance with the approved procedures. Facilities are also to be provided for the selection of test material, the witnessing of mechanical tests and the examination of materials, as required by these Rules.

2. 1. 4 Where a production process, testing or examination of materials is sub-contracted, this must be with the approval of ACS. Surveyors are to be allowed access to the sub-contractor's premises in order to conduct Surveys according to the requirements of these Rules.

2. 1. 5 Products manufactured in accordance with Ch 11 Approval of Welding Consumables, Ch 14 Plastics Materials and other Non-Metallic Materials and Ch 15, 2 Coatings and Ch 15, 3 Corrosion Resistant Steels of Ch 15 Corrosion Prevention are to be approved in accordance with the requirements therein. For these materials, approval is given for a specific product on a type approval basis, rather than the approved manufacturer/survey arrangements applied to materials covered by Ch 3 Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars to Ch 10 Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring.

2. 2 ACS Approval – General

2. 2. 1 Unless specifically stated in other Chapters of these Rules, all ACS approvals apply to materials used in applications intended for marine service, as described in Ch 1, 1.1 General.

2. 2. 2 The procedures for application for approval of manufacturers and products, the details of the information to be supplied by the manufacturer, and the test programme to be conducted on the products are given in the appropriate book of ACS's *Materials and Qualification Procedures for Ships* (MQPS). This is published in the Approval section of ACS's web site at http://www.asiaclass.org.

2. 2. 3 ACS publishes lists of approved manufacturers and approved products. The lists are published in the Approval section of ACS's website, http://www.asiaclass.org. The lists are as follows:

- Type Approval
- Service Suppliers
- Recognized Specialists
- Approved Manufacturers

2. 2. 4 For initial ACS approval as an Approved Manufacturer for a particular material, the manufacturer is required to demonstrate to the satisfaction of ACS that the necessary manufacturing and testing facilities are available, and are supervised by suitably qualified personnel. A specified programme of tests is to be carried out under the supervision of ACS Surveyors, and the results are to be to the satisfaction of ACS.

2. 2. 5 If the results of the initial assessment of the manufacturer, and the test programme are considered satisfactory, the manufacturer will be added to the list of approved manufacturers of materials, and a certificate of approval will be issued to the manufacturer by ACS, showing the scope of materials and grades covered by the approval. Initial approval will generally be under the Materials Survey Scheme, *See* Ch 1, 2.3, Materials Survey Scheme.

2. 2. 6 Approved manufacturers who meet the entry requirements may apply for approval under the Materials Quality Scheme, *See* Ch 1, 2.4 Materials Quality Scheme.

2. 2. 7 When a manufacturer has more than one works, the manufacturer's approval shall only be valid for the works where the test programme was conducted.

2. 2. 8 It is the manufacturer's responsibility to advise ACS of all changes to the manufacturing process parameters that may affect the application of the material, prior to the adoption of the changes in production. Additional approval tests may be required to maintain the approval.

2. 2. 9 Maintenance of approval is dependent on the manufacturer continuing to meet the requirements of the applicable sections of these Rules.

2. 2. 10 Where it is considered that an approved manufacturer is not maintaining its responsibilities to comply with these Rules, the approval may be suspended by ACS until such time that agreed corrective and preventive actions are considered to have been satisfactorily carried out. If considered necessary, ACS may require that the normal level of testing and inspection is increased.

2. 2. 11 In all instances, ACS will reduce the scope of, or withdraw approval from, a manufacturer where it becomes apparent that the manufacturer is unable to maintain compliance with these Rules or the scope of approval.

2. 2. 12 Where a manufacturer disagrees with any decisions made with regard to ACS approval, they may appeal in writing to ACS.

2. 2. 13 Any documents, data or other information received as part of the approval process will be treated as strictly confidential, and will not be disclosed to any third party, without the manufacturer's prior written consent.

2. 2. 14 The approved works will be subject to a periodic inspection of all relevant parts of the works, at intervals not exceeding three years. The procedure for this periodic inspection is given in Book B of ACS's *Materials and Qualification Procedures for Ships* (MQPS). This periodic inspection is in addition to the regular visits made according to Ch 1, 2.3 Materials Survey Scheme 2.3.7.

2. 3 Materials Survey Scheme

2. 3. 1 Materials according to Ch 3 Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars to Ch 10 Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring of these Rules and produced under the Materials Survey Scheme will be subject to Direct Survey by an ACS Surveyor. The scheme requires the Surveyor to survey and certify all materials according to the requirements of these Rules.

2. 3. 2 Approved manufacturers are to request a survey of the material by an ACS Surveyor, when required. Manufacturers must provide the Surveyor with details of the order, specification and any special conditions additional to the requirements of these Rules.

2. 3. 3 All mechanical tests required by these Rules are to be witnessed. The Surveyor may allow part of this task to be carried out by a member of the works staff by prior written agreement.

2. 3. 4 Before final acceptance, all materials are to be submitted to the specified tests and examinations under conditions acceptable to the Surveyor. The results are to comply with the Rules, and all materials are to be to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

2. 3. 5 The specified tests and examinations are to be carried out prior to the despatch of finished materials from the manufacturer's works. Where materials are supplied in the rough or unfinished condition, as many as possible of the specified tests are to be carried out by the manufacturer, and any tests or examinations that are not completed are to be carried out under survey at a subsequent stage of manufacture.

2. 3. 6 In the event of any material proving unsatisfactory during subsequent working, machining or fabrication, such material is to be rejected, notwithstanding any previous certification.

2. 3. 7 In addition to witnessing test results, the Surveyor is responsible for ensuring that the manufacturing process, inspection, testing, identification and certification are properly conducted. As part of the Materials Survey Scheme, regular visits will be made to all relevant parts of the works, including the subcontractors who are conducting any process which will affect the properties of the final products, to check for compliance against the requirements of these Rules, and to ensure that the manufacturer is maintaining the capability to consistently produce approved materials.

2. 3. 8 The Surveyor, when satisfied that the material fully meets the requirements of these Rules, will certify the material in accordance with Ch 1, 3 Certification of materials and the appropriate Chapter of these Rules.

2. 4 Materials Quality Scheme

2. 4. 1 The manufacturer may apply to be approved under the Materials Quality Scheme where the following requirements are met:

a. The manufacturer has been approved by ACS for a minimum of three years and continues to maintain their ACS works approval according to Ch 1, 2.2 ACS Approval – General 2.2.14; and
b. The manufacturer has a quality management system, which has been certified as meeting the requirements of ISO 9001 by a certification body recognised by ACS, which is one accredited by a member of the International Accreditation Forum; and
c. The manufacturer has a satisfactory history of quality performance in the manufacture and supply of ACS approved materials.

2. 4. 2 Special consideration may be given to manufacturers who have not been approved under the Materials Survey Scheme, and may be considered onto the Materials Quality Scheme providing:

a. They have a quality management system which has been certified as meeting the requirements of ISO 9001 by a certification body recognised by ACS, which is one accredited by a member of the International Accreditation Forum.
b. They can demonstrate a history of satisfactory supply of materials which ACS deems to be equivalent to those for which approval under the Materials Quality Scheme is requested.

In this case, the initial assessment of the manufacturer will include the product testing regime, as required for initial approval under the Materials Survey Scheme *See* Ch 1, 2.2 ACS Approval – General 2.2.4.

2. 4. 3 The Scheme is based on a Scheme Certification Schedule, made between ACS and each individual manufacturer. The schedule will stipulate:

a. The scope of approved products covered by the approval.
b. The process route applied by the manufacturer for each approved product.
c. The arrangements for ACS scheme, audits, including scope, frequency, schedule, etc.
d. Agreed procedures for certification of approved materials.
e. Information to be supplied periodically to ACS by the manufacturer.
f. Procedures for the use of the scheme mark.

2. 4. 4 The contents of the Scheme Certification Schedule are to remain confidential between ACS and the manufacturer.

2. 4. 5 The Materials Quality Scheme is based on a technical audit approach, and is designed to complement the quality management systems audits performed to ISO 9001. The role of the Surveyor in scheme audits is to:

a. Verify that the quality management system is being maintained and audited to the requirements of ISO 9001.
b. Verify that the requirements of these Rules are being implemented.
c. Verify that the requirements of this Scheme are being implemented.
d. Perform Scheme audits, which focus on the technical aspects of the product realisation process, particularly with regard to Rule requirements.
e. Perform witness testing as required.
f. Verify the data supplied to ACS periodically by the manufacturer as part of the Scheme requirements.

2. 4. 6 The Materials Quality Scheme may be applied to any approved manufacturer who meets the eligibility requirements, and who applies to be approved under the scheme. If approved under the scheme, the manufacturer's name will appear on the List of Approved Manufacturers published by ACS, with an indication that they are approved under this scheme.

2. 4. 7 The scheme is available to manufacturers producing approved materials according to Ch 3 Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars to Ch 10 Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring of these Rules.

2. 4. 8 The procedures for application for approval for the Materials Quality Scheme are given in Book M of ACS's *Materials and Qualification Procedures for Ships* (MQPS).

2. 4. 9 Where ACS is satisfied that the manufacturer meets all of the requirements of the Scheme, and that it is appropriate for the products being manufactured, a Scheme Certification Schedule will be issued, which must be signed by an authorised representative of the manufacturer.

2. 4. 10 Once the Scheme Certification Schedule has been signed by both parties, ACS will issue the manufacturer with a certificate of approval according to the Materials Quality Scheme.

2. 4. 11 Maintenance of approval will be according to the Scheme Certification Schedule agreed between ACS and the manufacturer, and these Rules.

2. 4. 12 It is the responsibility of the attending Surveyor to perform regular Scheme audits at the manufacturer's works in accordance with the Scheme Certification Schedule, and the requirements of these Rules.

2. 4. 13 It is not the intention to repeat the audit according to ISO 9001 conducted by the recognised certification body. The Surveyor is, however, to be satisfied that these audits are being conducted effectively. Where appropriate, the Surveyor may conduct a partial audit to ISO 9001 to verify this.

2. 4. 14 Witness tests may be conducted as part of the Scheme audit. This will involve the selection of material, and the witness of sampling and testing according to the requirements of the appropriate

chapter of these Rules. Such witness testing may be on ACS grades, or materials which the Surveyor deems to be equivalent (for the purposes of audit testing only).

2. 4. 15 Once every three years, a full assessment of scheme compliance will be conducted by a Surveyor who is not the regular attending Surveyor. This assessment is in addition to the periodic inspection requirement made according to Ch 1, 2.2 ACS Approval – General 2.2.14.

2. 4. 16 In the event of any change which means that the manufacturer no longer meets the requirements for the Materials Quality Scheme (for example the loss of ISO 9001 approval), the Scheme certificate of approval will be revoked. The manufacturer will revert to the Materials Survey Scheme, and will be subject to survey according to that scheme.

PART

2

CHAPTER **1** **General Requirements**

SECTION **3** **Certification of materials**

3. 1 General

3. 1. 1 All materials subject to these Rules are to be supplied with appropriate certification, as required by the relevant requirements of these Rules. This will normally be an ACS certificate or a manufacturer's certificate validated by ACS, although a manufacturer's certificate may be accepted where allowed by the relevant requirements of these Rules.

3. 1. 2 Manufacturers approved under the Materials Quality Scheme are licensed to apply the scheme mark to manufacturer's certificates according to the requirements of the scheme, *See* Ch 1, 2.4 Materials Quality Scheme.

3. 1. 3 The following certificate types are to be used, (a) and (b) for the Materials Survey Scheme, and (d) for the Materials Quality Scheme:

a. **ACS Certificate**
This type of certificate is issued by ACS based on the results of testing and inspection being satisfactorily carried out in accordance with the requirements of these Rules.

b. **Manufacturer's certificate validated by ACS**
A manufacturer's certificate, validated by ACS on the basis of inspection and testing carried out by the manufacturer and which is in accordance with the requirements of these Rules, may be accepted. In this case, the certificate will include the following statement:
"We hereby certify that the material has been made by an approved process and satisfactorily tested in accordance with the Rules of Asia Classification Society."

c. **Manufacturer's certificate**
This type of certificate is issued by the manufacturer based on the results of testing and inspection being satisfactorily carried out in accordance with the requirements of these Rules or the applicable National or International standard. The certificate is to be validated by the manufacturer's authorised representative, independent of the manufacturing department. The certificate will contain a declaration that the products are in compliance with the requirements of these Rules or the applicable National or International standard.

d. **Manufacturer's certificate issued under the Materials Quality Scheme**
Where a manufacturer is approved according to the Materials Quality Scheme, they will issue manufacturer's certificates bearing the scheme mark. The certificates must also bear the following statement:
"This certificate is issued under the arrangements authorised by Asia Classification Society (operating group) in accordance with the requirements of the Materials Quality Scheme and scheme number MQS ……."

3. 1. 4 Where these Rules allow for the issue of a manufacturer's certificate for materials, either validated by an ACS Surveyor, or bearing the Materials Quality Scheme mark, the manufacturer is to ensure that a copy of the certificate is supplied to ACS.

3. 2 Materials Survey Scheme

3. 2. 1 The requirements for certification of materials according to the Materials Survey Scheme are established by the relevant requirements of these Rules.

3. 2. 2 The manufacturer is to supply the surveyor with any additional customer order requirements that are in addition to the requirements of these Rules, when the request for the issue or validation of the certificate is made.

3. 3 Materials Quality Scheme

3. 3. 1 Part of the certification schedule will include an agreement for the manufacturer to apply the scheme mark to manufacturer's certificates relating to approved products within the scope of approval of the manufacturer.

3. 3. 2 The use of the scheme mark is governed by the following:

a. The use of the scheme mark is not transferable. It is only to be used in conjunction with the manufacturer and works name and location shown on the certificate of approval.
b. The scheme mark must be applied to all manufacturers' certificates relating to approved materials produced under the Scheme.
c. In no circumstances is the scheme mark to be applied to test certificates relating to non-approved products.
d. The scheme mark is not to be used in any way which may imply approval for products which are not covered within the manufacturer's scope of approval.
e. Where a manufacturer is removed or suspended from the scheme, use of the scheme mark must cease immediately.

3. 3. 3 The certificate as given in Ch 1, 3.1 General 3.1.3.d is to be validated by an authorised representative of the manufacturer. The size and position of the scheme mark and statement on the manufacturer's certificate must be agreed by ACS.

3. 3. 4 Where manufacturers are approved under this scheme, the manufacturer's certificate issued according to these requirements fully meets the materials certification requirements of these Rules.

3. 4 Electronic certification

3. 4. 1 Where these Rules allow the issue of manufacturers' test certificates, under either the Materials Survey Scheme or the Materials Quality Scheme, these may be issued in electronic format provided that:

a. All tests and inspections have been satisfactorily completed according to the requirements of these Rules.
b. Procedures are in place to ensure that electronic certificates are only issued according to the requirements of these Rules.
c. The certification system is subject to regular inspection by the attending Surveyor.
d. A copy of the electronic certificate is supplied to ACS. This copy will be deemed to be the original of the test certificate.

3. 4. 2 In addition to the requirements of Ch 1, 3.4 Electronic certification 3.4.1, for items certified under the Materials Survey Scheme, the ACS office stamp and Surveyor's name may be applied electronically. This is only allowed where the Surveyor has access to the results of the relevant tests and inspections, and is able to authorise by access to the electronic system, the application of the ACS office stamp and Surveyor's name on the test certificate. The name of the authorising Surveyor is to be the name included on the certificate. The authorisation may be conducted electronically either at the manufacturers' works, or remotely by the Surveyor.

3. 4. 3 If the ACS office stamp and name are being applied electronically according to Ch 1, 3.4 Electronic certification 3.4.2, then the manufacturer is to ensure that the Surveyor is provided with all relevant information regarding the customer order, when the request for authorisation is made.

PART

2

CHAPTER **1 General Requirements**

SECTION **4 General requirements for manufacture**

4. 1 General

4. 1. 1 The following definitions are applicable to these Rules:

Item: A single forging, casting, plate, tube or other rolled product as delivered.

Piece: The rolled product from a single slab or billet or from a single ingot if this is rolled directly into plates, strip, sections or bars.

Batch: A number of similar items or pieces presented as a group for acceptance testing.

Wide Flat: Flat product of a width over 150 mm, up to and including 1250 mm and thickness generally over 4 mm. Edges are square cut, i.e. hot rolled on the four sides. Supplied in lengths, not coils.

Plate/Sheet: Flat rolled product whereby the edges are allowed to deform freely. Supplied flat and generally in square or rectangular shapes with a width of 600 mm or over, but other shapes may also apply.

4. 1. 2 Where a manufacturer purchases semi-finished products (e.g. slabs) for the purpose of re-processing (e.g. rolling), the manufacturer is to ensure that the materials are from an ACS approved manufacturer, and manufactured within the scope of approval of that manufacturer. The aim of chemical analysis, dimensions, surface and internal quality checks are to be agreed between the manufacturer and purchaser. The semi-finished materials must be supplied with appropriate certification, according to these Rules.

4. 1. 3 It is the responsibility of the manufacturer to ensure compliance with all relevant aspects of these Rules. All deviations are to be recorded as non-compliances, and brought to the attention of the Surveyor, along with corrective actions taken. Failure to do this is considered to render the material as not complying with these Rules.

4. 1. 4 The manufacturer is to maintain all test and inspection records required by these Rules for at least seven years. Records are to be made available to ACS on request.

4. 1. 5 Where material is produced which does not meet all aspects of these Rules, the manufacturer may apply to ACS for a concession to certify the material as approved. ACS will consider each application on a case-by-case basis, although concession will only normally be granted in exceptional circumstances. If the concession is granted, a formal written numbered concession will be issued to the manufacturer. The concession number must be applied to the approval certificate, whether it is an ACS certificate or a validated manufacturer's certificate.

4. 2 Chemical composition

4. 2. 1 The ladle analysis used for certification purposes is to be determined after all alloying elements have been added and sufficient time allowed for such additions to equalise throughout the ladle.

4. 2. 2 The method of taking samples is to ensure that the reported analysis is representative of the cast. In addition, the manufacturer must determine and certify the chemical composition of every heat of material.

4. 2. 3 Where more than one sample is taken, the method of averaging for the final certificate result and the determination of acceptable variations in composition are to be agreed with the Surveyor.

4. 2. 4 The chemical composition of ladle samples is to be determined by the manufacturer in an adequately equipped and competently staffed laboratory. The manufacturer's analysis will be accepted, but may be subject to occasional independent checks if required by the Surveyor.

4. 2. 5 The analysis is to include the content of all the elements detailed in the relevant Sections of the Rules and, where appropriate, the National or International Standard applied.

4. 2. 6 At the discretion of the Surveyors, a check chemical analysis of suitable samples from products may also be required. These samples are to be taken from the material used for mechanical tests but, where this is not practicable, an alternative procedure for obtaining a representative sample is to be agreed with the manufacturer. For product samples, the permissible limits of deviation from the specified ladle analysis are to be in accordance with an appropriate International or National Standard specification.

4. 3 Heat treatment

4. 3. 1 Materials are to be supplied in the condition specified in, or permitted by, the relevant Chapters of these Rules.

4. 3. 2 Heat treatment is to be carried out in properly constructed furnaces which are efficiently maintained and have adequate means for control and recording of temperature. The furnace dimensions are to be such as to allow the whole item to be uniformly heated to the necessary temperature. In the case of very large components which require heat treatment, alternative methods will be specially considered.

4. 3. 3 The manufacturer is to maintain the records, including the temperature charts of all heat treatments for at least seven years.

4. 4 Test material

4. 4. 1 Sufficient test material is to be provided for the preparation of the test specimen detailed in the specific requirements. It is, however, in the interests of manufacturers to provide additional material for any re-tests which may be necessary, as insufficient or unacceptable test material may be a cause for rejection.

4. 4. 2 The test material is to be representative of the item or batch and is not to be separated until all the specified heat treatment has been completed, except where provision for an alternative procedure is made in subsequent Chapters of these Rules.

4. 4. 3 All test material is to be selected by the Surveyor or an authorised deputy and identified by suitable markings which are to be maintained during the preparation of the test specimens.

4. 5 Mechanical tests

4. 5. 1 The dimensions, number and direction of test specimens are to be in accordance with the requirements of Ch 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials and the specific requirements for the product.

4. 5. 2 Where Charpy impact tests are required, a set of three test specimens is to be prepared and the average energy value is to comply with the requirements of subsequent Chapters. One individual value may be less than the required average value provided that it is not less than 70 per cent of that value.

4. 5. 3 In the Rules, mechanical properties are specified in SI units, but alternative units may be used for acceptance testing. In such cases, the specified values are to be converted in accordance with the appropriate conversions given in Table 1. 4. 1: Conversions from SI units to metric and imperial units. It is preferred that test results be reported in SI units, but alternative units may be used provided that the test certificate gives, in the same units, the equivalent specification values.

Table 1. 4. 1: Conversions from SI units to metric and imperial units

$1\ \mathrm{N/mm^2}$ or MPa $= 0.102\ \mathrm{kgf/mm^2}$ $1\ \mathrm{N/mm^2}$ or MPa $= 0.0647\ \mathrm{tonf/in^2}$ $1\ \mathrm{N/mm^2}$ or MPa $= 0.145 \times 10^3\ \mathrm{lbf/in^2}$ $1\mathrm{J} = 0.102\ \mathrm{kgf\ m}$ $1\mathrm{J} = 0.738\ \mathrm{ft\ lbs}$
$1\ \mathrm{kgf/mm^2} = 9.81\ \mathrm{N/mm^2}$ or MPa $1\ \mathrm{tonf/in^2} = 15.4\ \mathrm{N/mm^2}$ or MPa $1\ \mathrm{lbf/in^2} = 6.89 \times 10^{-3}\ \mathrm{N/mm^2}$ or MPa $1\ \mathrm{kgf\ m} = 9.81\ \mathrm{J}$ $1\ \mathrm{ft\ lbf} = 1.36\ \mathrm{J}$

4. 6 Re-test procedures

4. 6. 1 Re-test procedures are to be in accordance with the requirements of Ch 2, 1.4, Re-testing procedures.

4. 7 Rectification of defective material

4. 7. 1 Small surface imperfections may be removed by mechanical means provided that, after such treatment, the dimensions are acceptable, the area is proved free from defects and the rectification has been completed in accordance with any applicable requirements of subsequent Chapters of these Rules and to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

4. 7. 2 The repair of defects by welding can be accepted only when permitted by the appropriate specific requirements and provided that the agreement of the Surveyor is obtained before the work is commenced. When a repair has been agreed, it is necessary in all cases to prove by suitable methods of non-destructive examination that the defects have been completely removed before welding is commenced. Welding procedures and inspection on completion of the repair are to be in accordance with the appropriate specific requirements and are to be to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

4. 7. 3 Manufacturers wishing to carry out welding work must have at their disposal the necessary workshops, lifting gear, welding equipment, pre-heating, and where necessary annealing facilities and testing devices, as well as certified welders and supervisors to enable them to perform the work properly. Proof shall be furnished to the Surveyor that these conditions are satisfied before welding work begins.

4. 8 Identification of materials

4. 8. 1 The manufacturer is to adopt a system of identification which will enable all finished materials to be traced to the original cast, and the Surveyors are to be given full facilities for tracing the material when required. When any item has been identified by the personal mark of a Surveyor, or his deputy, this is not to be removed until an acceptable new identification mark has been made by a Surveyor. Failure to comply with this condition will render the item liable to rejection.

4. 8. 2 Before any item is finally accepted it is to be clearly marked by the manufacturer in at least one place with the particulars detailed in the appropriate specific requirements.

4. 8. 3 Where hard stamps such as the ACS brand stamp are issued to manufacturers to carry out the stamping on behalf of ACS, the procedure for issue, maintenance and use of stamps is to be agreed in writing.

4. 8. 4 Hard stamping is to be used except where this may be detrimental to the material, in which case stencilling, painting or electric etching is to be used. Paints used to identify alloy steels are to be free from lead, copper, zinc or tin, i.e. the dried film is not to contain any of these elements in quantities of more than 250 ppm.

4. 8. 5 Where a number of identical items are securely fastened together in bundles, the manufacturer need only brand the top item of each bundle. Alternatively, a durable label giving the required particulars may be attached to each bundle.

PART

2

CHAPTER **1 General Requirements**

SECTION **5 Non-destructive examination**

5. 1 General NDE requirements

5. 1. 1 Prior to the final acceptance of materials, surface inspection and verification of dimensions, non-destructive examination is to be carried out in accordance with the requirements detailed in this Section and subsequent Chapters of these Rules.

5. 1. 2 It is the manufacturer's responsibility for maintaining the required tolerances and making the necessary measurements. Periodic surveys by the Surveyor do not absolve the manufacturer from this responsibility.

5. 1. 3 When there is visible evidence to doubt the soundness of any material or component, such as flaws in test specimens or suspicious surface marks, the manufacturer is expected to prove the quality of the material by a suitable method.

5. 1. 4 Acceptance criteria are detailed in subsequent Chapters of these Rules. Alternative specifications may be submitted for consideration, provided they demonstrate equivalence to these Rules.

5. 2 Personnel qualifications

5. 2. 1 The shipyard, fabricator or manufacturer is to ensure that personnel carrying out non-destructive examination or interpreting the results of non-destructive examination are qualified to the appropriate level of a nationally recognised scheme such as ISO 9712, PCN, ACCP or SNT-TC-1A. Level 1 personnel are not permitted to interpret results to Codes or Standards.

5. 2. 2 When certification of personnel is made on an inhouse basis under a scheme such as SNT-TC-1A, practical examinations are to be relevant to material, product type, joint configuration, material thickness and acceptance criteria of items inspected for Classification purposes.

5. 2. 3 Personnel qualifications of NDE operators are to be randomly checked by the Surveyor.

5. 3 Non-destructive examination methods

5. 3. 1 Non-destructive examination methods are to comply with the relevant requirements of these Rules.

5. 4 Non-destructive examination procedures

5. 4. 1 All non-destructive examinations are to be carried out to a procedure that is representative of the item under inspection. As a minimum the procedures are to be in accordance with the following:

a. Procedures are to identify the component to be examined, the NDE method, equipment to be used and the full extent of the examinations including any test restrictions.

b. Procedures are to specify the qualification and certification requirements of the inspection personnel to be employed.
c. Procedures are to state the degree of surface preparation required and the methods of preparation to be used before the examinations are made.
d. Procedures are to state the reference standards for testing and the acceptance criteria to be applied to the results of the inspections.
e. Procedures are to include the requirement for components to be positively identified and for a datum system or marking system to be applied to ensure repeatability of inspections.
f. Procedures are to identify any requirements for increasing the extent of applied NDE where defects have been found during spot examination.
g. Procedures are to identify reporting requirements.
h. Procedures are to be reviewed by the Surveyor to ensure they are appropriate for the product type.
i. Procedures for radiography are to specify the acceptable optical density within the area of interest on the radiograph.
j. The minimum optical density within the area of interest on a radiograph is to be equal to or greater than 2.0 for gamma ray and 1.8 for X-ray. A maximum density of 4.0 is acceptable.
k. Procedures are to include the method and requirements for equipment calibrations and functional checks.
l. Procedures are to be approved by an operator qualified to a minimum of Level III in accordance with a recognised standard.
m. The Surveyor will review procedures for compliance with this Section.

5. 4. 2 The shipyard, fabricator or manufacturer may submit other Codes or Standards for consideration by ACS, providing they are equivalent to these Rules. Where no agreed acceptance standard is in place, the acceptance levels contained in the subsequent Chapters of these Rules are to apply.

5. 4. 3 In the event that proposed acceptance criteria are not considered to be equivalent to these Rules, the criteria may be submitted for special consideration.

5. 5 Non-destructive examination reports

5. 5. 1 NDE reports are to include all information required to identify how the examination was executed and are to include the following information where appropriate:

a. Date of test.
b. Name and qualification of operator with signatures of the operator.
c. Details of the component identification, description of test location and volume examined.
d. Heat treatment status.
e. Weld type, procedure and configuration.
f. Surface condition.
g. Test procedure.
h. Equipment used.
i. Test results with a map or record of reportable and/or reject indications, giving location, dimensions and nature of indications.
j. Reference to acceptance criteria and evaluation in accordance to these criteria.
k. Material type and thickness.
l. Calibration

PART

2

CHAPTER 1 **General Requirements**

SECTION 6 **References**

6. 1 General

6. 1. 1 The location of National and International Standards referenced in these Rules are shown in Table 1. 6. 1: List of National and International Standards. The latest version of the standards in this table applies unless otherwise agreed.

Table 1. 6. 1: List of National and International Standards

Rule reference	Standard
Chapter 1 General Requirements	ISO 9001
	SNT-TC-1A
	ISO 9712
Chapter 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials	ISO 6892-1
	ISO 6892-2
	ISO 185
	ISO 2566-1
	ISO 148-1
	ISO 7500-1
	ISO 6506-1
	ISO 6506-2
	ISO 6506-3
	ISO 6507-1
	ISO 6507-2
	ISO 6507-3
	ISO 6508-1
	ASTM E23
Chapter 3 Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars	EN 10160
	ASTM A578-07
	ASTM E112

	ASTM E381-01
	ASTM A255
	ISO 7452
	ASTM E208-06
	JWES2815
Chapter 4 Steel Castings	ISO 1161
Chapter 5 Steel Forgings	ASTM E112
Chapter 8 Aluminium Alloys	ASTM G66
	ASTM G67
Chapter 9 Copper Alloys	ASTM E272
	EN 1057: 2006 +A1
Chapter 10 Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring	ISO 643
	ISO 1704
	ISO 1834
	BS 7160
	ASTM E112
	ASTM E381-01
	ASTM A255
Chapter 11 Approval of Welding Consumables	ISO 3690
	ISO 10042
	ASTM G48
Chapter 12 Welding Qualifications	ISO 6947
	ISO 5817
	ISO 6520-1
	ISO 6507-1
	ISO 10042
	ASTM G48
	ISO 25239-3
	ISO 25239-4
	ISO 14732
Chapter 13 Requirements for Welded Construction	ISO 9712
	ISO 25239-5
	ISO 6520-1

	SNT TC-1A
	AWS D3.6M
	ISO 10042
Chapter 14 Plastics Materials	ISO 527-2
	ISO 178
	ISO 62
	ISO 75-2
	ISO 604
	ISO 527-4
	ISO 14125
	ISO 14130
	ISO 1172
	ISO 1922
	ASTM C273/C273
	ASTM C393/C393
	ISO 845
	ASTM C297/C297M
	ISO 844
	ISO 180
	ASTM D2583-13a
	BE EN 59
	ISO 175

PART

2

CHAPTER **2** **Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General requirements for testing**		**249**
	1. 1	Preparation of test specimens	249
	1. 2	Testing machines	249
	1. 3	Discarding of test specimens	250
	1. 4	Re-testing procedures	250
SECTION 2	**Tensile tests**		**252**
	2. 1	Dimensions of test specimens	252
	2. 2	Definition of yield stress for steel	256
	2. 3	Procedure for testing at ambient temperature	256
	2. 4	Equivalent elongations	257
	2. 5	Procedure for testing at elevated temperatures	258
SECTION 3	**Impact tests**		**259**
	3. 1	Dimensions of test specimens	259
	3. 2	Testing procedures	259
SECTION 4	**Ductility tests for pipes and tubes**		**261**
	4. 1	Bend tests	261
	4. 2	Flattening tests	261
	4. 3	Drift expanding tests	262
	4. 4	Flanging tests	262
SECTION 5	**Embrittlement tests**		**264**
	5. 1	Temper embrittlement tests	264
	5. 2	Strain age embrittlement tests	264
	5. 3	Hydrogen embrittlement tests	265
SECTION 6	**Crack tip opening displacement tests**		**266**
	6. 1	Dimensions of test specimens	266
	6. 2	Test equipment	267

6. 3 Testing procedures 267
6. 4 Validity requirements 268
6. 5 Test reports 268
SECTION 7 Bend tests 269
7. 1 Dimensions of test specimens 269
7. 2 Testing procedures 269
SECTION 8 Hardness testing 271
8. 1 Dimensions of test specimens 271
8. 2 Testing procedure 271
SECTION 9 Corrosion tests 272
9. 1 Intergranular corrosion test 272
9. 2 Pitting corrosion test 272

PART

2

CHAPTER **2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 2. 3. 1: Dimensions and tolerances for Charpy V-notch impact test specimens 259

PART

2

CHAPTER **2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials**

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 2. 2. 1: Test specimen dimensions for forgings and castings - I 252
Figure 2. 2. 2: Test specimen dimensions for forgings and castings - II and aluminum alloys 253
Figure 2. 2. 3: Test specimen dimensions for plates, strip and sections - I and aluminum alloys 253
Figure 2. 2. 4: Test specimen dimensions for plates, strip and sections - II 253
Figure 2. 2. 5: Test specimen dimensions for pipes and tubes - I 254
Figure 2. 2. 6: Test specimen dimensions for pipes and tubes - II 254
Figure 2. 2. 7: Test specimen dimensions for grey iron castings – I 255
Figure 2. 2. 8: Test specimen dimensions for grey iron castings - II 255
Figure 2. 2. 9: Test specimen for deposited weld metal tensile 255
Figure 2. 2. 10: Test specimen for butt weld 256
Figure 2. 4. 1: Drift expanding test 262
Figure 2. 4. 2: Flanging test 263
Figure 2. 5. 1: Idealized transition curve 265
Figure 2. 6. 1: Outline dimensions of the preferred specimen 266
Figure 2. 6. 2: Outline dimensions of the subsidiary specimen 267
Figure 2. 7. 1: Bend test specimen 269
Figure 2. 7. 2: Bend test 270
Figure 2. 7. 3: Guide bend test for aluminium 270

PART

2

CHAPTER 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials

SECTION 1 General requirements for testing

1. 1 Preparation of test specimens

1. 1. 1 The requirements specified below detail all the tests that may be applied to metallic materials. The specific tests and the test specimen types required for each material type, grade and product type are detailed in the subsequent Chapter of these Rules.

1. 1. 2 Where test material is cut from products by shearing or flame cutting, a reasonable margin is required to allow sufficient material to be removed from the cut edges during machining of the test specimens.

1. 1. 3 Test specimens are to be prepared in such a manner that they are not subjected to any significant work hardening, cold straining or heating during straightening or machining.

1. 1. 4 Test samples are not to be removed from the material they represent until heat treatment is complete. For castings in cases where test samples are separately cast, the castings and samples are to be heat treated together.

1. 1. 5 Dimensional tolerances are to comply with a relevant ISO specification.

1. 2 Testing machines

1. 2. 1 All tests are to be carried out by competent personnel. Testing machines are to be maintained in a satisfactory and accurate condition and are to be recalibrated at approximately annual intervals. This calibration is to be carried out by organisations of standing that have been approved or recognised by a Naval Authority and are to be to the satisfaction of the Surveyor. A record of all calibrations is to be kept available in the test house.

1. 2. 2 Tensile testing machine load cells are to be calibrated with an accuracy of ± one per cent in accordance with ISO 7500-1 or another recognised National Standard.

1. 2. 3 Impact tests are to be carried out on Charpy V-notch machines calibrated to ISO 148 or ASTM E23 dependent on the testing machine type. The testing machines are to be calibrated using either a direct or indirect method. Other National Standards equivalent to ISO 148 may be considered.

1. 2. 4 Hardness testing machines, together with their associated measuring microscopes, are to be directly and indirectly calibrated to ISO 6506-2, 6507-2 or equivalent standards applicable to the type of hardness test. Other National Standards equivalent to ISO 6507-2 and 6506-2 standards may be considered. Routine hardness checks with standard hardness blocks calibrated to ISO 6506-3 or ISO 6507-3 or equivalent are to be carried out at a frequency which demonstrates calibration consistency.

1. 3 Discarding of test specimens

1. 3. 1 If a test specimen fails because of faulty preparation or incorrect operation of the testing machine it may be discarded and replaced by a new test specimen prepared from material adjacent to the original test.

1. 3. 2 In addition to the discarding of test specimens as indicated in Ch 2, 1.3 Discarding of test specimens 1.3.1, a tensile test specimen may also be discarded when the specified minimum elongation is not obtained and the distance between the fracture and the nearest gauge mark is less than one-third of the gauge length.

1. 4 Re-testing procedures

1. 4. 1 Where the result of any test, other than an impact test, does not comply with the requirements, two additional tests of the same type are to be made from the same test sample, or if sufficient material is not available, a further representative sample taken from the item under test. For acceptance of the material, satisfactory results are to be obtained from both of these additional tests.

1. 4. 2 Where the result of any test taken from a weld procedure approval test, other than an impact test, does not comply with the requirements, two additional tests of the same type are to be made from the same weld test assembly. Where insufficient original welded assembly is available, a new assembly is to be prepared using the same conditions as the original test weld. For acceptance, satisfactory results are to be obtained from both of these additional tests.

1. 4. 3 Where the result of any test taken from a welding consumable approval test, other than an impact test, does not comply with the requirements, two additional tests of the same type are to be made from the same weld test assembly. Where insufficient original welded assembly is available, a new assembly is to be prepared using welding consumables from the same batch. If the new assembly is made with the same procedure (particularly the same number of runs) as the original assembly, only the duplicate re-test specimens need be prepared and tested. For acceptance of a weld consumable batch, satisfactory results are to be obtained from both of these additional tests.

1. 4. 4 Where the results from a set of three impact test specimens do not comply with the requirements, an additional set of three impact test specimens may be tested provided that, of the original set tested, not more than two individual values are less than the required average value and, of these, not more than one is less than 70 per cent of this average value. The results obtained are to be combined with the original results to form a new average which, for acceptance, is to be not less than the required average value. Additionally, for these combined results, not more than two individual values are to be less than the required average value and, of these, not more than one is to be less than 70 per cent of this average value.

1. 4. 5 The additional tests detailed in Ch 2, 1.4 Re-testing procedures 1.4.1 and Ch 2, 1.4 Re-testing procedures 1.4.2 are, where possible, to be made on material adjacent to the original samples. For castings, where insufficient material remains in the original test samples, the additional test may be made on other test samples representative of the castings. *See also* Ch 2, 1.3, Discarding of test specimens for discarding of test specimens.

1. 4. 6 When unsatisfactory results are obtained from tests representative of a batch of material, the item or piece from which the tests were taken is to be rejected. The remainder of the material in the batch may be accepted provided that two further items or pieces are selected and tested with satisfactory results. If the tests from one or both or these additional items or pieces give unsatisfactory results, the batch is to be rejected.

1. 4. 7 When a batch of material is rejected, the remaining items or pieces in the batch may be resubmitted individually for test, and those which give satisfactory results may be accepted.

1. 4. 8 At the option of the manufacturer, rejected material may be resubmitted as another grade and may then be accepted, provided that the test results comply with the appropriate requirements.

1. 4. 9 When material which is intended to be supplied in the ‘as-rolled’ or ‘hot-finished’ condition fails test, it may be suitably heat treated and resubmitted for test. Similarly, materials supplied in the heat treated condition may be reheat treated and resubmitted for test. Unless otherwise agreed by the Surveyor, such reheat treatment is to be limited to one repeat of the final heat treatment cycle.

PART

2

CHAPTER **2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials**

SECTION **2 Tensile tests**

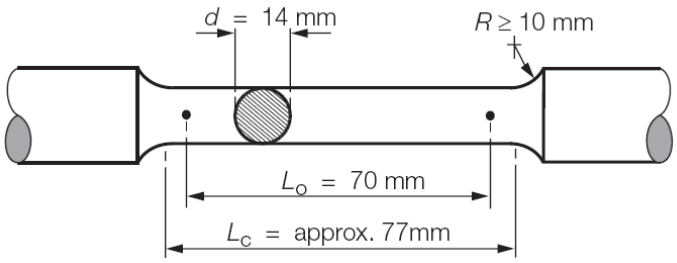
2. 1 Dimensions of test specimens

2. 1. 1 Proportional test specimens with a gauge length L_0 of $5.65\sqrt{S_o}$ or 5d where S_o is the cross-sectional area, d the diameter and L_C the parallel test length, have been adopted as the standard form of test specimen, and in subsequent Chapters in these Rules the minimum percentage elongation values are given for test specimens of these proportions.

2. 1. 2 The gauge length is to be greater than 20 mm and may be rounded off to the nearest 5 mm provided that the difference between the adjusted gauge length and the calculated one is less than 10 per cent of the calculated gauge length.

2. 1. 3 For forgings and castings (excluding those in grey cast iron) proportional test specimens of circular cross-section are to be machined to the dimensions shown in Figure 2. 2. 1: Test specimen dimensions for plates, strip and sections - I and aluminum alloys.

Figure 2. 2. 1: Test specimen dimensions for plates, strip and sections - I and aluminum alloys

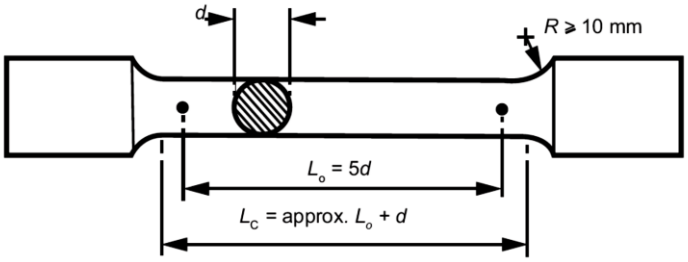


Note: For nodular cast iron and materials with a specified elongation less than 10%, R ≥20 mm

2. 1. 4 For hot rolled bars and similar products, the test specimens are to be as in Figure 2. 2. 1: Test specimen dimensions for plates, strip and sections - I and aluminum alloys, except that for small sizes they may consist of a suitable length of bar or other product tested in the full cross-section.

2. 1. 5 As an alternative to Ch 2, 2.1 Dimensions of test specimens 2.1.3 and Ch 2, 2.1 Dimensions of test specimens 2.1.4, proportional or non-proportional test specimens of other dimensions may be used, subject to any requirements for minimum cross-sectional area given in subsequent Chapters of these Rules. Where the size of proportional test specimens is other than as shown in Figure 2. 2. 1: Test specimen dimensions for plates, strip and sections - I and aluminum alloys, the general dimensions are to conform with Figure 2. 2. 2: Test specimen dimensions for forgings and castings - II and aluminum alloys.

Figure 2. 2. 2: Test specimen dimensions for forgings and castings - II and aluminum alloys



Note For nodular cast iron and materials with a specified elongation less that 10%, R, ≥ 1.5d

2. 1. 6 For plates, strip and sections, the test specimens are to be machined to the dimensions shown in Figure 2. 2. 1: Test specimen dimensions for plates, strip and sections - I and aluminum alloys and aluminum alloys or Figure 2. 2. 2: Test specimen dimensions for forgings and castings - II and aluminum alloys. Where the capacity of the available testing machine is insufficient to allow the use of a test specimen of full thickness, this may be reduced by machining one of the rolled surfaces. Alternatively, for materials over 40 mm thick, test specimens of circular cross-section machined to the dimensions shown in Figure 2. 2. 1: Test specimen dimensions for plates, strip and sections - I and aluminum alloys may be used. The axes of these test specimens are to be located at approximately one quarter of the thickness from one of the rolled surfaces as shown in Figure 3. 1. 2: Position of test material.

Figure 2. 2. 3: Test specimen dimensions for plates, strip and sections - I and aluminum alloys

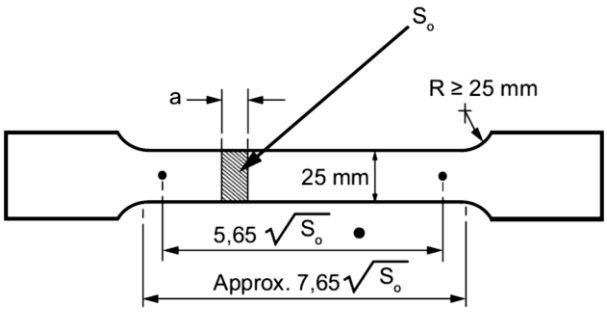
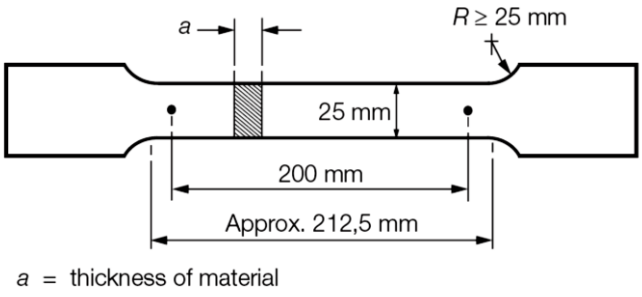


Figure 2. 2. 4: Test specimen dimensions for plates, strip and sections - II



2. 1. 7 As an alternative to Ch 2, 2.1 Dimensions of test specimens 2.1.6, test specimens with a width of other than 25 mm may be used subject to any requirements for minimum cross-sectional area given in subsequent Chapters of these Rules. A ratio of width/thickness of 8:1 should not be exceeded.

2. 1. 8 For pipes and tubes, the test specimens may consist of a suitable length tested in full cross-section with the ends plugged. The gauge length is to be $5.65\sqrt{S_o}$ or 50 mm, and the length of the test specimen between the grips or plugs, whichever is the smaller, is to be not less than the gauge length plus D, where D is the external diameter. Alternatively, test specimens may be prepared from strips cut longitudinally and machined to the dimensions shown in Figure 2. 2. 5: Test specimen dimensions for pipes and tubes - I or Figure 2. 2. 6: Test specimen dimensions for pipes and tubes - II. The parallel test length is not to be flattened, but the enlarged ends may be flattened for gripping in the testing machine. The cross-sectional area of this type of test specimen is to be calculated from:

$$So = ab$$

where

So = cross-sectional area

a = average radial thickness

b = average width

est specimens of circular cross-section may also be used provided that the wall thickness is sufficient to allow the machining of such specimens to the dimensions shown inFigure 2. 2. 1: Test specimen dimensions for plates, strip and sections - I and aluminum alloys, with their axes located at the mid-wall thickness.

Figure 2. 2. 5: Test specimen dimensions for pipes and tubes - I

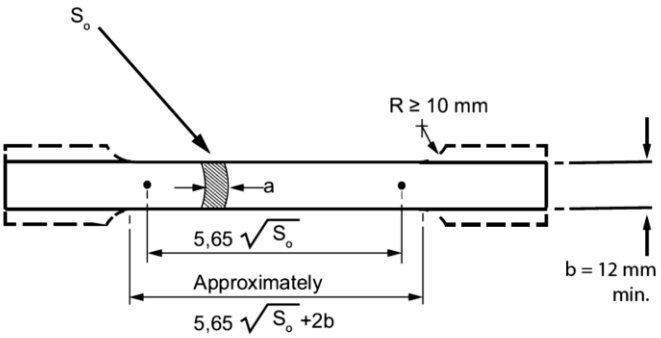
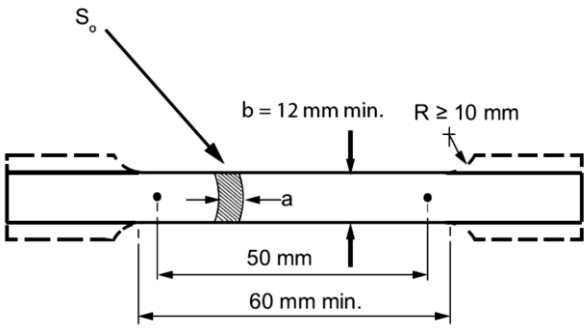


Figure 2. 2. 6: Test specimen dimensions for pipes and tubes - II



2. 1. 9 For wire, the test specimen may consist of a suitable length tested in full cross-section. The gauge length is to be 200 mm and the parallel test length 250 mm.

2. 1. 10 For grey iron castings, the test specimens are to be machined to the dimensions shown in Figure 2. 2. 7: Test specimen dimensions for grey iron castings – I or Figure 2. 2. 8: Test specimen dimensions for grey iron castings - II.

Figure 2. 2. 7: Test specimen dimensions for grey iron castings – I

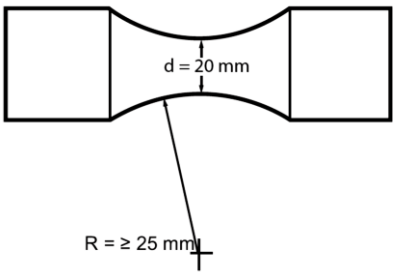
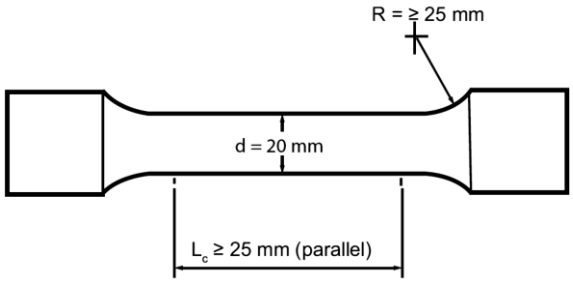


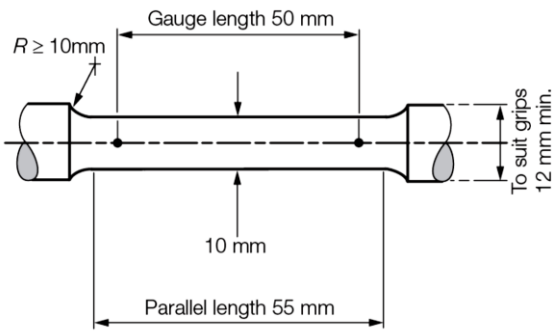
Figure 2. 2. 8: Test specimen dimensions for grey iron castings - II



2. 1. 11 For aluminium alloy plates and sections of thickness, a, less than or equal to 12.5 mm; the dimensions of rectangular cross-sectioned test specimens are to be as shown in Figure 2. 2. 3: Test specimen dimensions for plates, strip and sections - I and aluminum alloys. The rectangular cross-sectioned test specimen surfaces should remain as rolled/extruded. Where the thickness, a, is greater than 12.5 mm the test specimens are to be or round type as shown in Figure 2. 2. 2: Test specimen dimensions for forgings and castings - II and aluminum alloys.

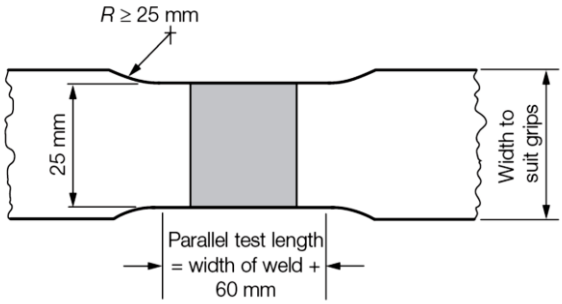
2. 1. 12 Deposited weld metal tensile test specimens are to be machined to the dimensions shown in Figure 2. 2. 9: Test specimen for deposited weld metal tensile, and may be heated to a temperature not exceeding 250°C for a period not exceeding 16 hours for hydrogen removal, prior to testing.

Figure 2. 2. 9: Test specimen for deposited weld metal tensile



2. 1. 13 Butt weld tensile test specimens are to be machined to the dimensions shown in Figure 2. 2. 10: Test specimen for butt weld. For thicknesses of more than 2 mm, the test width is to be 25 mm. For thicknesses less than 2 mm, the test width is to be reduced to 12 mm. The upper and lower surfaces of the weld are to be filed, ground or machined flush with the surface of the plate.

Figure 2. 2. 10: Test specimen for butt weld



2. 1. 14 Through thickness tensile test specimens may be, at the option of the steelmaker, either plain test specimens, or test specimens with welded extensions, in accordance with a Recognised Standard.

The extension pieces are to be of steel with a tensile strength exceeding that of the plate to be tested and may be attached to the plate surfaces by manual, resistance or friction welding carried out in such a way as to ensure a minimal heat affected zone.

2. 1. 15 Tolerances on tensile specimen dimensions are to be in accordance with ISO 6892-1 or another Recognised Standard as appropriate.

2. 2 Definition of yield stress for steel

2. 2. 1 The yield phenomenon is not exhibited by all the steels detailed in these Rules but, except for austenitic and duplex stainless steels, the term `yield stress' is used throughout when requirements are specified for acceptance testing at ambient temperature. For the purposes of the Rules, the terms `yield stress' and `yield strength' are to be regarded as synonymous.

2. 2. 2 Where reference is made to `yield stress' in the requirements for carbon, carbon-manganese and alloy steel products and in the requirements for the approval of welding consumables, either the upper yield stress or, where this is not clearly exhibited, the 0.2 per cent proof stress or the 0.5 per cent proof stress under load is to be determined. In cases of dispute, the 0.2 per cent proof stress is to be determined.

2. 2. 3 For austenitic and duplex stainless steel products and welding consumables, both the 0.2 and the 1.0 per cent proof stresses are to be determined.

2. 3 Procedure for testing at ambient temperature

2. 3. 1 Except as provided in Ch 2, 2.3 Procedure for testing at ambient temperature 2.3.5, the elastic stress rate for the determination of the upper yield for steels and copper alloys is to be between 6 and 60 N/mm^2 per second and between 2 and 20 N/mm^2 per second for aluminium. After reaching the yield or proof load, the straining rate may be increased to a maximum of $0.008s^{-1}$ for the determination of the tensile strength.

2. 3. 2 For steel, the upper yield stress is to be calculated from:

a. the value of stress measured at the commencement of plastic deformation, or
b. on a load/extension diagram using the value of stress measured at the first peak obtained during yielding even when the peak is equal to or less than any subsequent peaks observed during plastic deformation at yield.

2. 3. 3 When a well defined yield point cannot be obtained, the 0.2 or 1.0 per cent proof stress (non-proportional elongation) is to be determined from an accurate load/extension diagram by drawing a line parallel to the straight elastic portion and a distance from it where the amount represents 0.2 or 1.0 per cent of the extensometer gauge length. The point of intersection of this line with the plastic portion of the diagram represents the proof load, from which the 0.2 or 1.0 per cent proof stress can be calculated.

2. 3. 4 For stainless steels the 1.0 per cent proof stress and/or 0.2 per cent proof stress is specified as required by the relevant Chapters in these Rules.

2. 3. 5 For the determination of the tensile strength of flake graphite cast iron, the stress rate is not to exceed 10 N/mm^2 per second.

2. 4 Equivalent elongations

2. 4. 1 When a gauge length other than $5.65\sqrt{S_o}$ is used, the equivalent percentage elongation value is to be calculated using the following formula:

$$A = \frac{A_R}{2}\left(\frac{L_o}{\sqrt{S_o}}\right)^{0.4}$$

where

A_R = actual measured percentage elongation of test specimen

S_o = actual cross-sectional area of test specimen

L_o = actual gauge length of test piece

A = equivalent percentage elongation for a test specimen with a gauge length of $5.65\sqrt{S_o}$

2. 4. 2 Alternatively, where a number of test specimens of similar material and dimensions are involved, the actual percentage elongation values may be recorded, provided that the equivalent specified minimum elongation value appropriate for the test specimen dimensions is calculated from the formula in Ch 2, 2.4 Equivalent elongations 2.4.1 and is recorded on the test certificate.

2. 4. 3 For proportional test specimens having a gauge length other than $5.65\sqrt{S_o}$, the equivalent elongation may be calculated using the following factors (d is the diameter of the test specimen):

Actual gauge length	Factor for equivalent elongation on $5.65\sqrt{S_o}$
$4\sqrt{S_o}$	× 0.870
$8.16\sqrt{S_o}$	× 1.158
$11.3\sqrt{S_o}$	× 1.317
4d	× 0.916
8d	× 1.207

2. 4. 4 For non-proportional test specimens with gauge lengths of 50 mm and 200 mm, the equivalent elongation values tabulated in ISO 2566 are to apply.

2. 4. 5 The above conversions are reliable only for carbon, carbon-manganese and low alloy steels with a tensile strength not exceeding 700 N/mm^2 in the hot rolled, annealed, normalised, or normalised and tempered condition.

2. 4. 6 For alloy steels in the quenched and tempered condition, the following conversions may be used for proportional test specimens with a gauge length of $4\sqrt{S_o}$:

Actual percentage elongation on $4\sqrt{S_o}$	Equivalent elongation on $5.65\sqrt{S_o}$
22	17
20	15
18	13
17	12
16	12
15	11
14	10
12	8
10	7
8	5

2. 4. 7 Any proposals to use conversion factors for equivalent elongation values for the following materials are to be agreed with the Surveyors:

a. Carbon, carbon-manganese and alloy steels in the normalised or normalised and tempered condition with a tensile strength exceeding 700 N/mm^2.
b. Cold-worked steels.
c. Austenitic stainless steels.
d. Non-ferrous alloys.

2. 5 Procedure for testing at elevated temperatures

2. 5. 1 Tensile testing at elevated temperatures is to be carried out according to ISO 6892-2 Method B or an equivalent National Standard.

PART

2

CHAPTER 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials

SECTION 3 Impact tests

3. 1 Dimensions of test specimens

3. 1. 1 Impact tests are to be of the Charpy V-notch type. The test specimens are to be machined to the dimensions and tolerances given in Table 2. 3. 1: Dimensions and tolerances for Charpy V-notch impact test specimens and are to be carefully checked for dimensional accuracy.

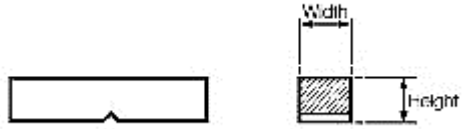
3. 1. 2 For material under 10 mm in thickness, the largest possible size of standard subsidiary Charpy V-notch test specimen is to be prepared with the notch cut on the narrow face. Generally, impact tests are not required when the thickness of the material is less than 6 mm.

3. 2 Testing procedures

3. 2. 1 All impact tests are to be carried out on Charpy machines approved by Asia Classification Society (hereinafter referred as ACS) and having a striking energy of not less than 150 J.

Table 2. 3. 1: Dimensions and tolerances for Charpy V-notch impact test specimens

Dimension	Nominal	Tolerance
Length, in mm	55	±0.60
Height, in mm, *See* Note 1	10	±0.075
Width , in mm, *See* Note 1		
- standard specimen	10	±0.11
- standard subsidiary specimen	7.5	±0.11
- standard subsidiary specimen	5	±0.06
Angle of notch	45°	±2°
Height below notch, in mm	8	±0.075
Root radius, mm	0.25	±0.025
Distance of plane of symmetry of notch from ends of test piece, in mm, *See* Note 1	27.5	±0.42 *See* Note 2
Angle between plane of symmetry of notch and longitudinal axis of test piece	90°	±2°
Angle between adjacent longitudinal faces of test piece	90°	±2°



Note *1* The test piece is to have a surface roughness better than Ra 5 μm except for the ends.

Note *2* For machines with automatic positioning of the test piece the tolerance is to be taken as ±0.165 mm.

3. 2. 2 Charpy V-notch impact tests may be carried out at ambient or lower temperatures in accordance with the specific requirements given in subsequent Chapters of these Rules. Where the test temperature is other than ambient, the temperature of the test specimen is to be controlled to within ±2°C for sufficient time to ensure uniformity throughout the cross-section of the test specimen, and suitable precautions are to be taken to prevent any significant change in temperature during the actual test. In cases of dispute, ambient temperature is to be considered as 18°C to 25°C.

3. 2. 3 For acceptance, the average energy value for a set of three impact tests must be equal to or greater than the appropriate specified minimum average value. Additionally, only one individual value may be less than the required average value but not less than 70 per cent of this average value.

3. 2. 4 Where standard subsidiary Charpy V-notch test specimens are necessary, the minimum energy values required are to be reduced as follows:

- Specimen 10 x 7.5 mm: 5/6 of tabulated energy.
- Specimen 10 x 5 mm: 2/3 of tabulated energy.

3. 2. 5 When reporting results, the specimen dimensions and the units used for expressing the energy absorbed (Joules) and the testing temperature are to be clearly stated.

PART

2

CHAPTER 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials

SECTION 4 Ductility tests for pipes and tubes

4. 1 Bend tests

4. 1. 1 The test specimens are to be cut as circumferential strips of full wall thickness and with a width of not less than 40 mm. For thick walled pipes, the thickness of the test specimens may be reduced to 20 mm by machining. The edges of the specimens may be rounded to a radius of 1.6 mm.

4. 1. 2 Testing is to be carried out at ambient temperature, and the specimens are to be doubled over a former whose diameter is to be in accordance with the specific requirements for the material. For submerged arc welded tube the test piece is to be bent with the root of the weld in tension. For other tubes, the test piece is to be bent in the original direction of curvature. In all cases, the welds are to be in the middle of the test specimen. The test is considered to be satisfactory if, after bending, the specimens are free from cracks and laminations. Small cracks at the edges of the test specimens are to be disregarded.

4. 2 Flattening tests

4. 2. 1 Ring test specimens are to be cut with the ends perpendicular to the axis of the pipe or tube. The length of the specimen is to be equal to 1.5 times the external diameter of the pipe or tube, but is to be not less than 10 mm or greater than 100 mm. Alternatively, the length of the test specimen may be 40 mm irrespective of the external diameter.

4. 2. 2 Testing is to be carried out at ambient temperature and is to consist of flattening the specimens in a direction perpendicular to the longitudinal axis of the pipe. Flattening is to be carried out between two plain parallel and rigid platens which extend over both the full length and the width after flattening of the test specimen. Flattening is to be continued until the distance between the platens, measured under load, is not greater than the value given by the formula:

$$H = \frac{t(1+C)}{C+\frac{t}{D}}$$

where

H = distance between plates, in mm

t = specified thickness of the pipe, in mm

D = specified outside diameter, in mm

C = a constant dependent on the steel type and detailed in the specific requirements

After flattening, the specimens are to be free from cracks or other flaws. Small cracks at the ends of the test specimens may be disregarded.

4. 2. 3 For welded pipes or tubes, the weld is to be placed at 90° to the direction of flattening.

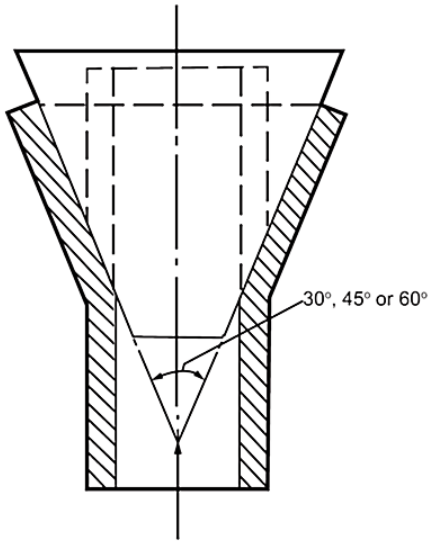
4. 3 Drift expanding tests

4. 3. 1 The test specimens are to be cut with the ends perpendicular to the axis of the tube. The edges of the end to be tested may be rounded by filing.

4. 3. 2 For metallic tubes, the length of the specimen is to be at least 1.5 times the external diameter of the tube except when a mandrel with an included angle of 30° is used, in which case the length of the specimen is to be twice the external diameter of the tube. In all cases the length of section remaining cylindrical after test is not be less than 0.5 times the external diameter.

4. 3. 3 Testing is to be carried out at ambient temperature and is to consist of expanding the end of the tube symmetrically by means of a hardened conical steel mandrel having a total included angle of 30°, 45° or 60°, *See* Figure 2. 4. 1: Drift expanding test. The mandrel is to be forced into the test specimen at a rate not exceeding 50 mm/min until the percentage increase in the outside diameter of the end of the test specimen is not less than the value given in the specific requirements for boiler and superheater tubes, *See* Ch 6 Steel Pipes and Tubes. The mandrel is to be lubricated, but there is to be no rotation of the tube or mandrel during the test. The expanded portion of the tube is to be free from cracks or other flaws.

Figure 2. 4. 1: Drift expanding test



4. 4 Flanging tests

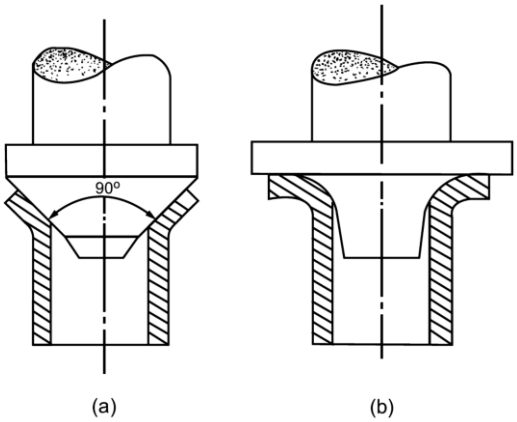
4. 4. 1 The test specimens are to be cut with the ends perpendicular to the axis of the tube. The length of the specimens is to be at least equal to the external diameter of the tube and such that after testing the portion that remains cylindrical is not less than half the external diameter. The edges of the end to be tested may be rounded by filing.

4. 4. 2 Testing is to be carried out at ambient temperature and is to consist of flanging the end of the tube symmetrically by means of hardened conical steel mandrels. The rate of flanging is not to exceed 50 mm/min.

4. 4. 3 The first stage of flanging is to be carried out with a conical angled mandrel having an included angle of approximately 90°, *See* Figure 2. 4. 2: Flanging test. The completion of the test is achieved with a second forming tool as shown in Figure 2. 4. 2: Flanging test. The mandrels are to be lubricated and there is to be no rotation of the tube or mandrels during the test. The test is to

continue until the drifted portion has formed a flange perpendicular to the axis of the test specimens. The percentage increase in the external diameter of the end of the specimens is to be not less than the value given in the specific requirements for boiler and superheater tubes, *See* Ch 6 Steel Pipes and Tubes. The cylindrical and flanged portion of the tube is to be free from cracks or other flaws.

Figure 2. 4. 2: Flanging test



PART

2

CHAPTER 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials

SECTION 5 Embrittlement tests

5. 1 Temper embrittlement tests

5. 1. 1 The test material is to be heat treated in accordance with the specification except that after tempering:

a. half the material is to be water quenched;

b. the other half is to be cooled from the tempering temperature to 300°C at a rate not exceeding 10°C per minute.

5. 1. 2 Impact tests in accordance with Ch 2, 3 Impact tests are to be made on the material in each condition at temperatures over a range wide enough to establish the upper and lower shelf energies and temperatures, tests being made at no less than three intermediate temperatures.

5. 1. 3 A set of three specimens is to be tested at each temperature. The results are to be plotted separately for each condition, in the form illustrated in Figure 2. 5. 1: Idealized transition curve. In addition, the test temperatures, proportions of crystallinity and absorbed energies for all the specimens tested are to be reported.

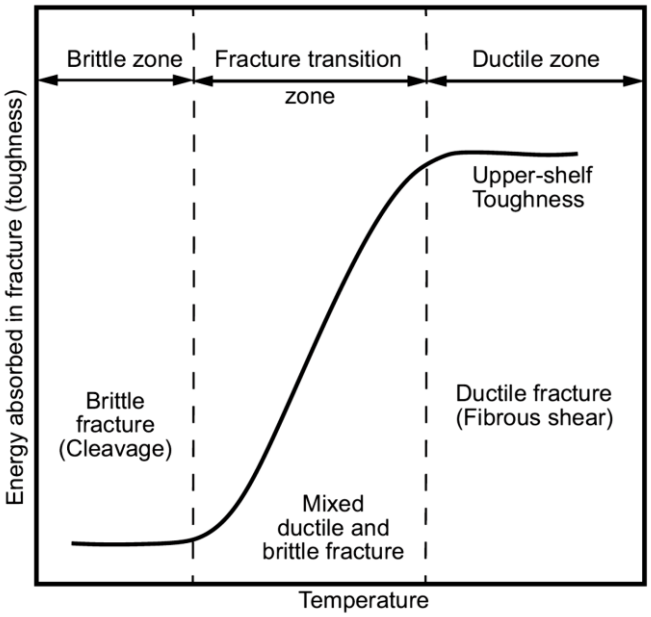
5. 1. 4 The transition temperature for each condition is to be taken as the mid-temperature of the fracture transition zone. The difference between the two transition temperatures is to be reported.

5. 2 Strain age embrittlement tests

5. 2. 1 The test material is to be heat treated in accordance with the specification and then subjected to five per cent strain. The test material is then to be heated to 250°C and held for one hour.

5. 2. 2 Impact tests in accordance with Ch 2, 5.1 Temper embrittlement tests 5.1.2 are to be made in both the strain aged and unstrained conditions.

Figure 2. 5. 1: Idealized transition curve



5. 2. 3 The tests are to comply with Ch 2, 5.1 Temper embrittlement tests 5.1.3.

5. 2. 4 The test results are treated in accordance with Ch 2, 5.1 Temper embrittlement tests 5.1.4.

5. 3 Hydrogen embrittlement tests

5. 3. 1 Two specimens are to be tested. The specimens are to be of a diameter of 20 mm. Where this is not practicable a diameter of 14 mm may be accepted.

5. 3. 2 One specimen is to be tested within a maximum of 3 hours after machining. Where the specimen diameter is 14 mm, the time limit is 1.5 hours. Alternatively, the specimen may be cooled to –60°C immediately after machining and kept at that temperature for a maximum period of 5 days before being tested.

5. 3. 3 The other specimen is to be tested after baking at 250°C for 4 hours. Where the specimen diameter is 14 mm the baking time is to be 2 hours.

5. 3. 4 A strain rate not exceeding $0.0003s^{-1}$ is to be used during the entire test, until fracture occurs.

5. 3. 5 Tensile strength, elongation and reduction of area are to be reported.

5. 3. 6 The ratio Z_1/Z_2 is to be reported, where Z_1 is the reduction in area without baking and Z_2 the reduction in area after baking.

PART

2

CHAPTER **2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials**

SECTION **6 Crack tip opening displacement tests**

6. 1 Dimensions of test specimens

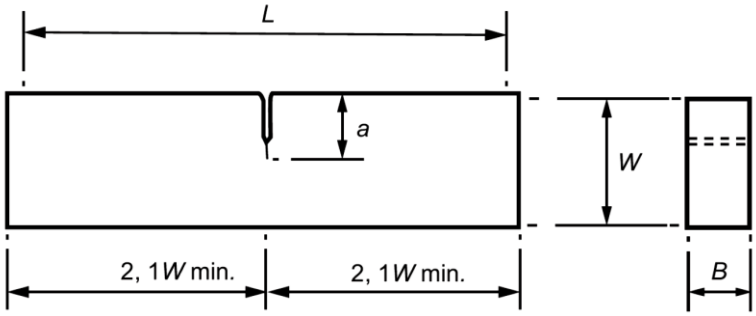
6. 1. 1 Unless agreed otherwise, tests are to be made on specimens of the full section thickness and which conform to a nationally agreed standard.

6. 1. 2 Normally the specimens are to be rectangular with the main dimensions as indicated in Figure 2. 6. 1: Outline dimensions of the preferred specimen and are to be tested in three point bending.

6. 1. 3 A subsidiary specimen as in Figure 2. 6. 2: Outline dimensions of the subsidiary specimen may be used by agreement.

6. 1. 4 In each case the notch is to be positioned at the center of the loading span; its root radius is not to exceed 0.10 mm. The notch is to be extended by the generation of a fatigue crack to give an effective crack length of the dimension a. For this purpose, the fatigue stress ratio, R_1, is to be within the range 0 to 0.1 and the fatigue intensity is not to exceed $0.63\sigma_\gamma B^{½}$ where σ_γ is the 0.2 per cent proof stress at the test temperature.

Figure 2. 6. 1: Outline dimensions of the preferred specimen



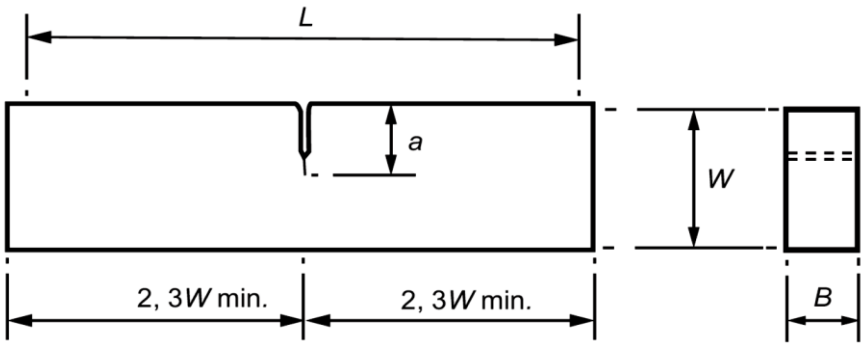
B = thickness

W = Width = 2B

a = effective crack length = 0.45W to 0.55W

L = loading span 4W

Figure 2. 6. 2: Outline dimensions of the subsidiary specimen



B = thickness

W = Width = B

a = effective crack length (to be agreed between the purchaser and manufacturer)

L = loading span = 4W

6. 2 Test equipment

6. 2. 1 Whenever possible, tests are to be made using machines operating under displacement control. The type of control is to be recorded.

6. 2. 2 The test equipment is to be calibrated annually.

6. 2. 3 The crack opening displacement gauge is to have an accuracy of at least one per cent. It is to be calibrated at least once every day of testing and at intervals of no more than 10 tests. It should be demonstrated that the calibration is satisfactory for the test conditions.

6. 3 Testing procedures

6. 3. 1 Tests are to be made in a recognised test house in accordance with a nationally accepted standard.

6. 3. 2 Unless otherwise agreed, all tests on unwelded wrought material are to be made on specimens taken transverse to the principal working direction and are to be through thickness notched.

6. 3. 3 Where tests are made on weld material, the fatigue crack should be arranged to sample the maximum amount of unrefined weld metal.

6. 3. 4 Where tests are made on the Heat Affected Zone (H.A.Z.) of a weld, a K or single bevel weld preparation is recommended. The region of lowest fracture toughness in the Heat Affected Zone should be identified for the particular steel and weld procedure by means of preliminary tests. The fatigue crack is to be accurately positioned to sample as high a proportion of this critical region as possible and after testing has been completed, the specimen is to be sectioned to check that this has been achieved. Sufficient tests should be made to ensure that the critical region has been sampled in at least three specimens.

6. 3. 5 At least three valid tests are to be made for each material condition. Invalid tests are to be disregarded and the tests repeated.

6. 3. 6 Local pre-compression of the test specimen ahead of the notch is acceptable in order to provide an acceptably even fatigue crack front.

6. 3. 7 The temperature of the test piece is to be measured to within ±2°C over the range minus 196°C to +200°C and to within ±5°C outside this range. The temperature should be measured at a point on the specimen not farther than 2 mm away from the crack tip.

6. 4 Validity requirements

6. 4. 1 The test is to be regarded as invalid if:

a. the fatigue crack front is not in a single plane;
b. any part of the fatigue crack surface lies in a plane whose angle with the plane of the notch exceeds 10°;
c. the length of any part of the fatigue crack is less than 0.025W or 1.25 mm, whichever is the greater;
d. the difference between the maximum and minimum lengths of the fatigue crack exceeds 0.1W;
e. the difference between any two of the lengths of the fatigue crack at 0.25B, 0.5B and 0.75B exceeds 0.05W.

6. 4. 2 In addition, for tests on welds and Heat Affected Zones (H.A.Z.), the following criteria are to be complied with:

a. Weld metal. The fatigue crack front shall not extend outside the weld metal deposit and 80 per cent should be within 2 mm of the fusion line.
b. Grain coarsened H.A.Z.. The fatigue crack should be within 0.5 mm of the fusion line and should sample all of the grain coarsened H.A.Z. present. However, if fusion line irregularities prevent this, a sample including as much grain coarsened H.A.Z. as possible may be accepted.
c. Subcritical/intercritical H.A.Z. boundary. The fatigue crack is to sample the boundary between the subcritical and intercritical regions of the H.A.Z. However, if fusion line irregularities prevent this, a sample including as much relevant microstructure as possible may be accepted.

6. 5 Test reports

6. 5. 1 The test report is to include:

a. details of the material, its condition and size;
b. the thickness and width of the test specimen;
c. the fatigue pre-cracking conditions;
d. the test temperature and environment;
e. the test machine control system and rate of change of displacement or load;
f. crack length measurements;
g. force/displacement records, preferably in the form of an autographic record;
h. the critical crack opening displacement;
i. a photograph of the fracture;
j. any observation on the fracture surface.

PART

2

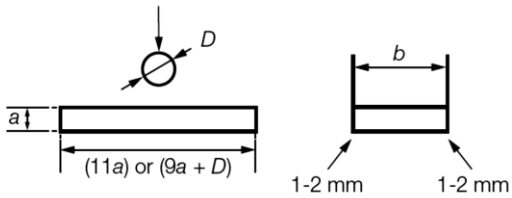
CHAPTER **2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials**

SECTION **7 Bend tests**

7. 1 Dimensions of test specimens

7. 1. 1 Flat bend test specimens are to be of rectangular cross-section with dimensions as defined in Figure 2. 7. 1: Bend test specimen

Figure 2. 7. 1: Bend test specimen



7. 1. 2 For plates, sections and strip the dimensions shall be full thickness and width 30 mm. Where the rolled thickness exceeds 25 mm the compression face may be reduced to 25 mm.

7. 1. 3 For forgings, castings and semi-finished products the thickness shall be 20 mm and width 25 mm.

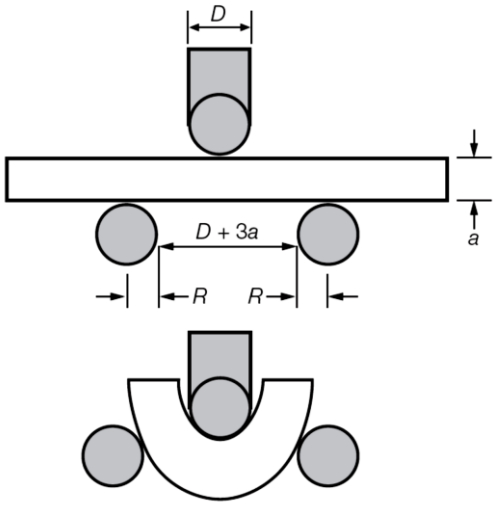
7. 1. 4 Butt weld face and root bend test specimens are to be 30 mm in width and of the full plate thickness. Where the thickness exceeds 12mm, two side bend test specimens may be tested in place of the face and root specimens specified. The side bend specimens should be 10 mm minimum thickness. The upper and lower surfaces of the weld are to be filed, ground or machined flush with the surface of the plate.

7. 1. 5 The edges on the tension side of bend samples are to be rounded to a radius of 1 to 2 mm.

7. 2 Testing procedures

7. 2. 1 The bend sample is plastically deformed by plunging a mandrel between two fixed points as shown in Figure 2. 7. 2: Bend test.

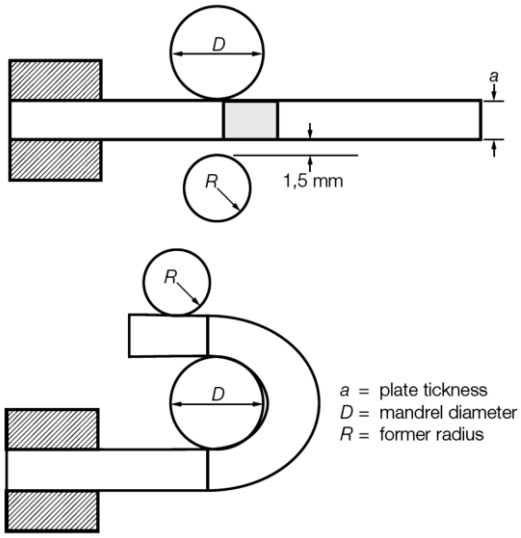
Figure 2. 7. 2: Bend test



a = thickness of bend sample
R = radius of roller
D = outside diameter of former

7. 2. 2 For aluminium welds a guided bend is required to ensure even deformation as shown in Figure 2. 7. 3: Guide bend test for aluminium.

Figure 2. 7. 3: Guide bend test for aluminium



7. 2. 3 Bend tests are to be conducted at ambient temperature at the highest convenient rate of bending (but not impact).

PART

2

CHAPTER 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials

SECTION 8 Hardness testing

8. 1 Dimensions of test specimens

8. 1. 1 Test pieces must be held rigidly in relation to the indenter and located such that the surface to be tested is at right angles to the axis of the indenter.

8. 1. 2 The surface finish of the test piece is to be such as to be able to measure the indent accurately.

8. 2 Testing procedure

8. 2. 1 Hardness testing is to be carried out according to ISO 6506-1, ISO 6507-1 or equivalent for the type of hardness test.

PART

2

CHAPTER **2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials**

SECTION **9 Corrosion tests**

9. 1 Intergranular corrosion test

9. 1. 1 For all products other than pipes, the material for the test specimens is to be taken adjacent to that for the tensile test and is to be machined to suitable dimensions for either a round or rectangular section bend test. The diameter or thickness is to be not more than 12 mm, and the total surface area is to be between 1500 mm^2 and 3500 mm^2.

9. 1. 2 For pipes with an outside diameter not exceeding 40 mm, the test specimens are to consist of a full cross-section. For larger pipes, the test specimens are to be cut as circumferential strips of full wall thickness and having a width of not less than 12.5 mm. In both cases the total surface area is to be between 1500 mm^2 and 3500 mm^2.

9. 1. 3 Specimens are to be heated to a temperature of 700±10 ºC for 30 minutes, followed by rapid cooling in water. They are then to be placed on a bed of copper turnings (50 g per litre of test solution) and immersed for 15 to 24 hours in a boiling solution of the following composition:

- 100 g of hydrated copper sulphate granules ($CuSO_4$. $5H_2O$)
- 184 g (100 ml) sulphuric acid (density 1.84 g/ml) added dropwise to distilled water to make 1 litre of solution.

Precautions are to be taken during boiling to prevent concentration of the solution by evaporation.

9. 1. 4 After immersion, the full cross-section test specimens from pipes are to be subjected to a flattening test in accordance with Ch 2, 4.2 Flattening tests. All other test specimens are to be bent, at ambient temperature, through 90 ºover a former with a diameter equal to twice the diameter or thickness of the test specimen.

9. 1. 5 After flattening or bending, the test specimens are to be free from cracks on the outer, convex surface.

9. 2 Pitting corrosion test

9. 2. 1 The material for the test specimens is to be taken adjacent to that for the tensile test and is to be machined to a round or rectangular test piece of thickness approximately 6 mm with total surface area between 1500 mm^2 and 3500 mm^2. Any deformed material at the edges is to be removed.

9. 2. 2 All surfaces of the specimen are to be polished to a uniform finish using 120 grit abrasive paper. Sharp edges are to be removed and, after polishing, the specimen should be thoroughly washed and dried.

9. 2. 3 The dimensions of the surface are to be measured in order to calculate the exposed area.

9. 2. 4 The specimen is to be weighed to an accuracy of 0.001g or greater.

9. 2. 5 For the corrosive media 100g of reagent grade ferric chloride, $FeCl_3.6H_2O$, is dissolved in 900ml of de-ionised water and filtered to remove insoluble particles.

9. 2. 6 At least 250ml of ferric chloride solution is to be added to a glass test container. The container is to be placed in a water bath and allowed to reach the required test temperature. The bath temperature shall be monitored and recorded in order to ensure that the temperature is satisfactorily maintained throughout the test. Once the test temperature has been achieved, the test piece is to be placed in a glass cradle and lowered into the solution.

9. 2. 7 A glass cover is to be placed over the vessel to allow the test piece to remain undisturbed throughout the duration of the test. The standard duration of the test is 72 hours.

9. 2. 8 At the end of the test, the specimen is to be removed from the solution. It shall be rinsed with water, scrubbed with a nylon bristle brush under running water to remove corrosion products, and then dried.

9. 2. 9 The surface of the specimen is to be thoroughly inspected to a magnification of x20 and the specimen is weighed to an accuracy of 0.001 g or better.

9. 2. 10 The results obtained shall be recorded and these shall include the weight loss expressed as g/m^2 and a description of the surface appearance, noting any evidence of pitting corrosion.

9. 2. 11 Unless otherwise agreed, the acceptance criteria for the test are that there shall be no evidence of pitting at x20 magnification and that the maximum weight loss shall be 0.8 g/m^2.

PART

2

CHAPTER **3 Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General requirements**		**280**
	1. 1	Scope	280
	1. 2	Steel with guaranteed through thickness properties – 'Z' grade steel	280
	1. 3	Corrosion resistant steels for cargo oil tanks of crude oil tankers	281
	1. 4	Manufacture	281
	1. 5	Surface quality of materials	282
	1. 6	Internal soundness	283
	1. 7	Dimensional tolerances	283
	1. 8	Heat treatment	285
	1. 9	Test material and mechanical tests	285
	1. 10	Visual and non-destructive examination	287
	1. 11	Rectification of defects	289
	1. 12	Identification of materials	290
	1. 13	Certification of materials	290
SECTION 2	**Normal strength steels for ship and other structural applications**		**292**
	2. 1	Scope	292
	2. 2	Manufacture and chemical composition	292
	2. 3	Condition of supply	293
	2. 4	Mechanical tests	294
	2. 5	Identification of materials	296
	2. 6	Certification of materials	296
SECTION 3	**Higher strength steels for ship and other structural applications**		**297**
	3. 1	Scope	297
	3. 2	Manufacture	298
	3. 3	Chemical composition	298
	3. 4	Condition of supply	300

3. 5 Mechanical tests 302
3. 6 Identification of materials 305
3. 7 Certification of materials 305
SECTION 4 Steels for boilers and pressure vessels 306
4. 1 Scope 306
4. 2 Manufacture and chemical composition 306
4. 3 Heat treatment 307
4. 4 Mechanical tests 308
4. 5 Identification of materials 310
4. 6 Certification of materials 310
4. 7 Mechanical properties for design purposes 310
SECTION 5 Steels for machinery fabrications 314
5. 1 General 314
5. 2 Certification of materials 315
SECTION 6 Carbon–manganese and nickel alloy steels for low temperature service 316
6. 1 Scope 316
6. 2 Manufacture and chemical composition 316
6. 3 Heat treatment 317
6. 4 Mechanical tests 317
6. 5 Identification of materials 319
6. 6 Certification of materials 319
SECTION 7 Austenitic and duplex stainless steels 321
7. 1 Scope 321
7. 2 Chemical composition 321
7. 3 Heat treatment 322
7. 4 Mechanical tests 322
7. 5 Metallographic examination for sigma phase 322
7. 6 Corrosion tests 322
7. 7 Clad plates 323
7. 8 Identification of materials 323
7. 9 Certification of materials 324
SECTION 8 Plates with specified through thickness properties 325
8. 1 Scope 325
8. 2 Manufacture 325
8. 3 Test material 326
8. 4 Mechanical tests 326

8. 5 Non-destructive examination 327
8. 6 Identification of materials 327
8. 7 Certification of materials 327
SECTION 9 Bars for welded chain cables 328
9. 1 Scope 328
9. 2 Manufacture 328
9. 3 Chemical composition 328
9. 4 Heat treatment 329
9. 5 Embrittlement tests 329
9. 6 Mechanical tests 330
9. 7 Structure and hardenability tests 331
9. 8 Dimensional tolerances 332
9. 9 Non-destructive examination 332
9. 10 Identification 332
9. 11 Certification of materials 333
SECTION 10 High strength steels for welded structures 334
10. 1 Scope 334
10. 2 Manufacture 335
10. 3 Chemical composition 335
10. 4 Mechanical tests 338
10. 5 Identification of materials 340
10. 6 Certification of materials 340

PART

2

CHAPTER **3 Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 3. 2. 1: Chemical composition and deoxidation practice 292
Table 3. 2. 2: Condition of supply 293
Table 3. 2. 3: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes 294
Table 3. 3. 1: Maximum thickness limits 297
Table 3. 3. 2: Chemical composition 298
Table 3. 3. 3: Chemical composition for Grade EH 47 299
Table 3. 3. 4: Carbon equivalent requirements for higher tensile strength steels up to 100 mm in 300
Table 3. 3. 5: Conditions of supply for plates and wide flats 301
Table 3. 3. 6: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes (*See* Note 1) 302
Table 3. 3. 7: Conditions of supply for sections and bars 304
Table 3. 4. 1: Chemical composition and deoxidation practice 306
Table 3. 4. 2: Condition of supply 307
Table 3. 4. 3: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon and carbon-manganese steels - As-rolled 308
Table 3. 4. 4: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon and carbon-manganese steels - Normalised or normalised rolled 308
Table 3. 4. 5: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: alloy steels - Normalised and tempered 310
Table 3. 4. 6: Mechanical properties for design purposes (*See* 4.7.1) : carbon and carbon-manganese steels - As-rolled 310
Table 3. 4. 7: Mechanical properties for design purposes (*See* 4.7.1): carbon and carbon-manganese steels - Normalised or controlled-rolled 311
Table 3. 4. 8: Mechanical properties for design purposes (*See* 4.7.1): alloy steels - Normalised and tempered 312
Table 3. 4. 9: Mechanical properties for design purposes (*See* 4.7.5): estimated average values for stress to rupture in 100 000 hours (units N/mm^2) 312
Table 3. 5. 1: Under thickness tolerances 314
Table 3. 6. 1: Chemical compositions of nickel alloy steels 316
Table 3. 6. 2: Supply conditions 317
Table 3. 6. 3: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes (*See* Note 1) 318
Table 3. 7. 1: Chemical composition 321

Table 3. 7. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes 323
Table 3. 8. 1: Batch size dependent on product and sulphur content 326
Table 3. 8. 2: Reduction of area acceptance values 327
Table 3. 9. 1: Chemical composition of killed steel bars 329
Table 3. 9. 2: Mechanical properties 330
Table 3. 9. 3: Dimensional tolerance of bar stock 332
Table 3. 10. 1: Maximum Thickness Limits 334
Table 3. 10. 2: Chemical Composition 335
Table 3. 10. 3: Maximum *Ceq*, *CET* and *Pcm* values 337
Table 3. 10. 4: Mechanical properties for acceptance purpose 338
Table 3. 10. 5: Elongation minimum values for a width of 25 mm and a 200 mm gauge length 340

PART

2

CHAPTER **3 Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars**

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 3. 1. 1: Location of thickness measuring points 285
Figure 3. 1. 2: Position of test material 288
Figure 3. 1. 3: ACS Brand 290
Figure 3. 6. 1: Minimum design temperatures for carbon-manganese grades 319
Figure 3. 6. 2: Minimum design temperatures for nickel grades 320
Figure 3. 8. 1: Schematic of testing directions 325
Figure 3. 8. 2: Plate and wide flat sampling position 326
Figure 3. 8. 3: Diagram showing acceptance/rejection and retest criteria 327
Figure 3. 9. 1: Sampling of steel bars 330

PART

2

CHAPTER 3 Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars

SECTION 1 General requirements

1. 1 Scope

1. 1. 1 This Section gives the general requirements for hot rolled plates and sections intended for use in the construction of ships, other marine structures, machinery, boilers and pressure vessels.

1. 1. 2 This Chapter is not applicable to hot rolled bars intended for the manufacture of bolts, plain shafts, etc. by machining operations only. Where used for this purpose, hot rolled bars are to comply with the requirements of Ch 5 Steel Forgings.

1. 1. 3 Plate and strip which is hot coiled after rolling and subsequently uncoiled, cold flattened and cut to the required dimensions are also subject to the appropriate requirements of this Chapter.

1. 1. 4 Plates, strip, sections and bars are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of Ch 1 General Requirements and Ch 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials, the general requirements of this Section and the appropriate specific requirements given in Sections Ch 3, 2 Normal strength steels for ship and other structural applications to Ch 3, 10 High strength steels for welded structures. Steels differing from the requirements of these Sections in respect of chemical composition, deoxidation practice, condition of supply or mechanical properties may be accepted subject to special approval by ACS. Such steels are to be given a special designation, *See* Ch 3, 1.12, Identification of materials.

1. 1. 5 As an alternative to Ch 3, 1.1 Scope 1.1.4, materials which comply with National or proprietary specifications may be accepted, provided that these specifications give equivalence to the requirements of this Chapter or are approved for a specific application. Particular attention is to be taken of the minimum required under thickness tolerance, *See* Ch 3, 1.7, Dimensional tolerances. Generally, survey and certification of such materials are to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of Ch 1 General Requirements.

1. 1. 6 Steels intended for high heat input welding above 50 kJ/cm are to be specially approved. Approval will be indicated on the manufacturer's approval certificate by adding a high heat input welding notation to the grade approved e.g. EH36-W300, indicating approval up to 300 kJ/cm.

1. 2 Steel with guaranteed through thickness properties – 'Z' grade steel

1. 2. 1 When plate material, intended for welded construction, will be subject to significant strains in a direction perpendicular to the rolled surfaces, it is recommended that consideration be given to the use of special plate material with specified through thickness properties, 'Z' grade steel. These strains are usually associated with thermal contraction and restraint during welding, particularly for full penetration 'T'-butt welds, but may also be associated with loads applied in service or during construction. Where these strains are of sufficient magnitude, lamellar tearing may occur. Requirements for 'Z' grade plate material are detailed in Ch 3, 8 Plates with specified through thickness properties. It is the responsibility of the fabricator to make provision for the use of this material.

1. 2. 2 Steels intended to have guaranteed through thickness properties will include the supplementary suffix Z25 or Z35 in the designation, for example: ACS DH36 Z35.

1. 3 Corrosion resistant steels for cargo oil tanks of crude oil tankers

1. 3. 1 This sub-Section refers to normal and higher strength steels that have approved enhanced corrosion resistance properties intended for application in the internal cargo oil tanks of crude oil tankers.

1. 3. 2 The additional approval procedures for these steels include specific corrosion tests, *See* Ch 1, 2.2, ACS Approval – General and Ch 15, 3 Corrosion Resistant Steels .

1. 3. 3 1.3.3 Normal and higher strength corrosion resistant steels are to be manufactured, tested and certified in accordance with the applicable requirements detailed in this section, and those of Ch 3, 2 Normal strength steels for ship and other structural applications or Ch 3, 3 Higher strength steels for ship and other structural applications , as applicable, and the requirements detailed in Ch 15, 3 Corrosion Resistant Steels .

1. 3. 4 Corrosion resistant steels for cargo oil tanks are primarily intended to apply to steel plates, wide flats and sections up to 50 mm thick and to bars up to 50 mm in diameter.

1. 3. 5 Corrosion resistant steels for cargo oil tanks are to be identified with one of the following supplementary suffixes, RCU, RCB or RCW in the designation, for example, ACS DH36 RCB. These suffixes relate to the area of the tank for which approval testing has been obtained:

a. RCU, for the lower surface of strength deck and surrounding structures, defined as the deckhead with complete internal structure, including brackets connecting to longitudinal and transverse bulkheads. In addition:
   i. In tanks with ring frame girder construction the underdeck transverse framing is to be protected down to level of the first tripping bracket below the upper faceplate;
   ii. Longitudinal and transverse bulkheads are to be protected to the uppermost means of access level. The uppermost means of access and its supporting brackets are to be fully protected.
   iii. On cargo tank bulkheads without an uppermost means of access the protection is to extend to 10 per cent of the tank's height at centreline but need not extend more than 3 m down from the deck.
b. RCB, for the upper surface of inner bottom plating and surrounding structures, defined as the flat inner bottom and all structure to a height of 0.3 m above inner bottom, is to be protected;
c. RCW, for both strength deck and inner bottom plating.

1. 3. 6 Corrosion resistant steels are not to be used in applications other than those specified in Ch 3, 1.3 Corrosion resistant steels for cargo oil tanks of crude oil tankers 1.3.1.

1. 3. 7 The weldability of corrosion resistant steels is similar to conventional normal and higher strength steels. Therefore the welding requirements specified in Ch 11 Approval of Welding Consumables to Ch 13 Requirements for Welded Construction are to be adhered with the exception that each corrosion resistant steel is approved with a specified brand of welding consumable and associated welding process.

1. 3. 8 Each manufacturer's approval certificate for corrosion resistant steels will state the steel grade and area of application designation, specified chemical composition range including additive and/or controlling element percentages to improve corrosion resistance, and brand of welding consumables and welding process used for approval.

1. 4 Manufacture

1. 4. 1 All materials are to be manufactured at works which have been approved by Asia Classification Society for the type and grade of steel which is being supplied and for the relevant steel-making and processing route.

1. 4. 2 Steel is to be cast in metal ingot moulds or by the continuous casting process. The size of the ingot, billet or slab is to be proportional to the dimensions of the final product such that the reduction ratio is normally to be at least 3 to 1. Sufficient discard is to be taken to ensure soundness in the portion used for further processing.

1. 4. 3 The cast analysis to be used for certification purposes is to be determined after all alloying additions have been carried out and sufficient time allowed for such an addition to homogenise.

1. 4. 4 Material may be supplied either as-rolled, normalised, normalising rolled, or thermomechanically controlled rolled. The following definitions apply:

a. As-rolled (AR) refers to steel being cooled as it is rolled with no further heat treatment. The rolling and finishing temperatures are typically in the austenite recrystallisation region and above the normalising temperature. The strength and toughness properties of steel produced by this process are generally less than those of steel heat treated after rolling or steel produced by advanced processes.

b. Normalising (N) refers to an additional heating cycle of rolled steel above the critical temperature, A_{c3}, and in the lower end of the austenite recrystallisation region for a specific period of time, followed by air cooling. The process improves the mechanical properties of as-rolled steel by refining the grain size and homogenising the microstructure.

c. Normalising rolling (NR), also known as controlled rolling, is a rolling procedure in which the final deformation is carried out in the normalising temperature range, and subsequently cooled in air, resulting in a material condition generally equivalent to that obtained by normalising.

d. Thermomechanically controlled rolling (TM) is a procedure which involves the strict control of both the steel temperature and the rolling reduction. Generally a high proportion of the rolling reduction is carried out close to the A_{r3} temperature and may involve the rolling in the dual phase temperature region. Unlike normalising rolling the properties conferred by TM (TMCP) cannot be reproduced by subsequent normalising or other heat treatment. The use of accelerated cooling on completion of TM may also be accepted subject to the special approval by ACS.

e. Accelerated Cooling, (AcC) is a process which aims to improve mechanical properties by controlled cooling with rates higher than air cooling immediately after the final TM operation. Direct quenching is excluded from accelerated cooling. The material properties conferred by TM and AcC cannot be reproduced by subsequent normalising or other austenitising heat treatment.

f. Quenching and Tempering (QT) is a heat treatment process in which steel is heated to an appropriate temperature above the A_{c3}, held for a specific period of time, and then cooled with an appropriate coolant for the purpose of hardening the microstructure, followed by tempering, a process in which the steel is re-heated to an appropriate temperature, not higher than the A_{c1}, maintained at that temperature for a specific period of time to restore the toughness properties by improving the microstructure and reducing the residual stresses resulting from the quenching process

1. 4. 5 Where material is being produced by a normalising rolling or a thermomechanically controlled process (T.M.) an additional program of tests for approval is to be carried out under the supervision of the Surveyors and the results are to be to the satisfaction of ACS.

1. 4. 6 Weldable high strength steels may be supplied in the quenched and tempered condition for other marine structures, *See* Ch 3, 10 High strength steels for welded structures.

1. 5 Surface quality of materials

1. 5. 1 The steel is to be free from surface defects prejudicial to the use of the material for the intended application. The finished material is to have a surface quality in accordance with a recognised

standard such as EN 10163 parts 1, 2 and 3 or an equivalent standard accepted by ACS, unless otherwise specified in this Section.

1. 5. 2 The responsibility for meeting the surface finish requirements rests with the manufacturer of the material, who is to take the necessary manufacturing precautions and is to inspect the products prior to delivery. If, during the subsequent processing operations, surface quality of the material is found to be defective, the materials shall be repaired or rejected.

1. 5. 3 For hot rolled plates, wide flats and sections, the surface quality inspection method shall be in accordance with recognised National or International Standards as agreed between the purchaser and the manufacturer, and accepted by ACS. The surface inspection acceptance criteria are to comply with the following:

a. Imperfections

Imperfections of a harmless nature, for example pitting, rolled-in scale, indentations, roll marks, scratches and grooves, regarded as being inherent in the manufacturing process, are permissible, provided the maximum permissible limits of Class A of EN 10163-2 or limits specified in a recognised equivalent standard accepted by ACS, are not exceeded and the remaining plate or wide flat thickness remains within the average allowable minus thickness tolerance specified in Ch 3, 1.7, Dimensional tolerances. The surface area exhibiting the imperfections is not to exceed 15 per cent of the total subject area.

b. Defects

Affected areas with imperfections with a depth exceeding the limits of Class A of EN 10163-2 or the maximum permissible limits specified in a recognised equivalent standard accepted by ACS, shall be repaired. Cracks, injurious surface flaws, shells (overlapping material with non-metallic inclusion), sand patches, laminations and sharp edged seams (elongated defects) visually evident on surface and/or edge of plate are considered defects which would impair the end use of the product and which require rejection or repair.

1. 5. 4 If agreed by the manufacturer and purchaser, steel can be ordered with higher standards of required surface finish than those shown in Ch 3, 1.5 Surface quality of materials 1.5.3.

1. 5. 5 The examination and acceptance standard of surface quality and condition requirement of sections, bars and tubulars is to be agreed between the purchaser and the steel maker, and accepted by ACS. It then has to be included in the manufacturing specification.

1. 6 Internal soundness

1. 6. 1 The steel is to be free from segregations and non-metallic inclusions prejudicial to the use of the material for the intended application.

1. 6. 2 Verification of internal soundness is the responsibility of the manufacturer. The acceptance of internal soundness by the ACS Surveyor shall not absolve the manufacturer from this responsibility.

1. 7 Dimensional tolerances

1. 7. 1 The tolerances on thickness of a given product are defined as:

a. Minus tolerance is the lower limit of the acceptable range below the nominal thickness.

b. Plus tolerance is the upper limit of the acceptable range above the nominal thickness.

Nominal thickness is defined by the purchaser at the time of enquiry and order.

1. 7. 2 The average thickness of a product or products is defined as the arithmetic mean of the measurements made in accordance with the requirements in Ch 3, 1.7 Dimensional tolerances 1.7.13.

1. 7. 3 For materials of nominal thickness 5 mm and more intended for hull structural purposes as detailed in Ch 3, 2 Normal strength steels for ship and other structural applications, Ch 3, 3 Higher strength steels for ship and other structural applications and Ch 3, 10 High strength steels for welded structures, the minus tolerance on thickness of plates, strip and wide flats, where the width is greater than or equal to 600 mm, is 0.3 mm, irrespective of nominal thickness. The average thickness of a product or products is not to be less than the nominal thickness. Plus tolerance is to be in accordance with a National or International Standard unless agreed otherwise by ACS and the purchaser.

1. 7. 4 Class C of ISO 7452 or equivalent National or International Standards may be applied in lieu of Ch 3, 1.7 Dimensional tolerances 1.7.3. Where this standard is applied, the steel mill is to ensure that the number of measurements and measurement distribution is appropriate to establish that the plates produced are greater than or equal to the specified nominal thickness.

1. 7. 5 For materials of nominal thickness below 5 mm intended for hull structural purposes as detailed in Ch 3, 2 Normal strength steels for ship and other structural applications, Ch 3, 3 Higher strength steels for ship and other structural applications and Ch 3, 10 High strength steels for welded structures, the minus tolerances on thickness of plates, strip and wide flats, where the width is greater than or equal to 600 mm, is 0.3 mm. The plus tolerance is to be in accordance with Class B of ISO 7452 or an equivalent National or International Standard.

1. 7. 6 The minus tolerance on bars and sections (except for wide flats with a width≥600 mm) is to be in accordance with the requirements of a recognised National or International Standard.

1. 7. 7 The Shipbuilder and Owner may agree in individual cases whether they wish to specify a more stringent minus tolerance than that given in this Chapter.

1. 7. 8 The dimensional tolerances for the products intended for the construction of lifting appliances are to be agreed with ACS.

1. 7. 9 The minus tolerances for plates and wide flats intended for machinery structures are given in Ch 3, 5 Steels for machinery fabrications.

1. 7. 10 For materials intended for applications as detailed in Ch 3, 4 Steels for boilers and pressure vessels and Ch 3, 6 Carbon–manganese and nickel alloy steels for low temperature service, no minus tolerance is permitted in the thickness of plates and strip. The minus tolerances on sections are to comply with the requirements of a recognised National or International Standard.

1. 7. 11 For the materials detailed in Ch 3, 7 Austenitic and duplex stainless steels, the minus tolerance of material intended for use in the construction of cargo tanks is not to exceed 0.3 mm. For other applications, no minus tolerance is permitted in the thickness of plates and strip.

1. 7. 12 Dimensional tolerances for material detailed in Ch 3, 9 Bars for welded chain cables are given in Table 3. 9. 3: Dimensional tolerance of bar stock.

1. 7. 13 The average thickness and thickness tolerance is to be measured at locations of a product or products as defined below:

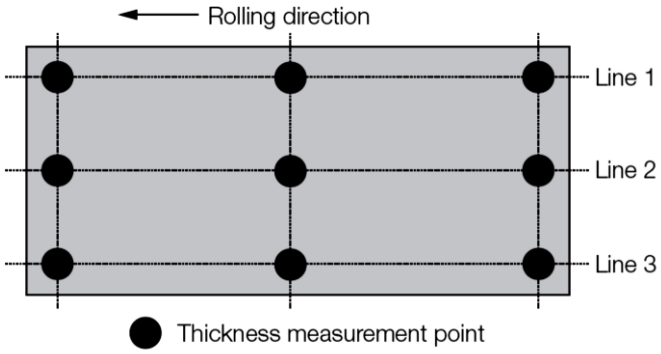
a. An automated method or manual method may be applied to the thickness measurements. The procedure and the records of measurements are to be made available to the Surveyor and copies provided on request.

b. At least two lines among Line 1, Line 2 or Line 3, as shown in Figure 3. 1. 1: Location of thickness measuring points, are to be selected for the thickness measurements and at least three points on each selected line as shown in Figure 3. 1. 1: Location of thickness measuring points are to be selected for thickness measurement on each piece rolled from a single slab or single ingot. If more than three points are taken on each line, then the number of points shall be equal on each line.

c. For automated methods, the measuring points at sides are to be located not less than 10 mm but not greater than 300 mm from the transverse or longitudinal edges of the product.

d. For manual methods, the measuring points at sides are to be located not less than 10 mm but not greater than 100 mm from the transverse or longitudinal edges of the product.
e. Additional measurements may be requested by the Surveyor.

Figure 3. 1. 1: Location of thickness measuring points



1. 7. 14 Local surface depressions resulting from imperfections and ground areas resulting from the elimination of defects may be disregarded provided that they are in accordance with the requirements of a recognised National or International Standard.

1. 7. 15 Tolerances relating to length, width, flatness and plus thickness are to comply with a National or International Standard.

1. 7. 16 The responsibility for maintaining the required tolerances and making the necessary measurements rests with the manufacturer. Occasional checking by the Surveyor does not absolve the manufacturer from this responsibility.

1. 7. 17 The Shipbuilder is responsible for the storage and maintenance of product(s) delivered with acceptable surface conditions.

1. 8 Heat treatment

1. 8. 1 Acceptable conditions of supply are specified in subsequent Sections of this Chapter.

1. 8. 2 The manufacturer is to carry out any heat treatment which may be necessary to prevent hydrogen cracking or to make the material in a safe condition for transit. The Surveyor is to be advised of any heat treatment proposed.

1. 8. 3 Where material is manufactured using a thermomechanically controlled process consideration must be given to the possibility of consequent reduction in mechanical properties if it is subjected to heating for forming or stress relieving or is welded using a high heat input.

1. 9 Test material and mechanical tests

1. 9. 1 Depending on the type of product, provision is made in subsequent Sections of this Chapter for the testing of individual items or for batch testing. Where the latter is permitted, all materials in a batch presented for acceptance tests are to be of the same product form, (e.g. plates, flats, sections, etc.), from the same cast and in the same condition of supply.

1. 9. 2 The test samples are to be fully representative of the material and, where appropriate, are not to be cut from the material until heat treatment has been completed. The test specimens are not to be separately heat treated in any way.

1. 9. 3 The test material is to be taken from the thickest piece in each batch, *See* Ch 1, 4.1 General.

1. 9. 4 Test material is to be taken from the following positions:

a. At the square cut end of plates and flats greater than 600 mm wide, approximately one-quarter width from an edge, *See* Figure 3. 1. 2: Position of test material.
b. For flats 600 mm or less in width, bulb flats and other solid sections, at approximately one-third of the width from an edge, *See* Figure 3. 1. 2: Position of test material, Figure 3. 1. 2: Position of test material and Figure 3. 1. 2: Position of test material. Alternatively, in the case of channels, beams or bulb angles, at approximately one-quarter of the width from the centreline of the web, *See* Figure 3. 1. 2: Position of test material.
c. For rectangular hollow sections, at approximately the centre of any side, *See* Figure 3. 1. 2: Position of test material. For circular hollow sections, at any position on the periphery.
d. For bars intended for purposes as detailed in Ch 3, 2 Normal strength steels for ship and other structural applications, Ch 3, 3 Higher strength steels for ship and other structural applications, Ch 3, 5 Steels for machinery fabrications and Ch 3, 9 Bars for welded chain cables, at approximately one-third of the radius or half-diagonal from the outer surface, *See*Figure 3. 1. 2: Position of test material. For smaller bars, the position of the test material is to be as close as is possible to the above.
e. For bars intended for the applications detailed in Ch 3, 4 Steels for boilers and pressure vessels, Ch 3, 6 Carbon–manganese and nickel alloy steels for low temperature service and Ch 3, 7 Austenitic and duplex stainless steels at approximately 12.5 mm below the surface. For bars up to 25 mm diameter, the test specimens may be machined coaxially.
f. When the capacity of the available testing machine is insufficient, tensile testing is to be carried out in accordance with the requirement of Ch 2, 2.1 Dimensions of test specimens 2.1.6.

1. 9. 5 Tensile test specimens and impact test specimens, where required for the type and grade of product being supplied, are to be prepared from each item or batch of material submitted for acceptance.

1. 9. 6 Where the finished width of plates and flats is greater than 600 mm, the tensile test specimens are to be cut with their principal axes perpendicular to the final direction of rolling. For all other rolled products, the principal axes are to be parallel to the final direction of rolling.

1. 9. 7 The tensile test specimens are to be machined to the dimensions detailed in Ch 2, 2.1 Dimensions of test specimens 2.1.6 and Ch 2, 2.1 Dimensions of test specimens 2.1.7.

1. 9. 8 Impact test specimens are to be cut with their principal axes either parallel (longitudinal test) or perpendicular (transverse test) to the final direction of rolling, as required by subsequent Sections of this Chapter. Where both longitudinal and transverse impact properties are shown for a particular grade, only the longitudinal test is required to be carried out, unless otherwise specified by the purchase order or subsequent Sections of this Chapter. However, for plates and wide flats, by certifying that the product meets the requirements of the Rules, the manufacturer guarantees that the acceptance values will be met if tested in the transverse direction. The Surveyor may request testing in this direction to confirm conformity.

1. 9. 9 Impact test specimens are to be of the Charpy V-notch type, machined to the dimensions detailed in Ch 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials. They are to be taken from a position within 2 mm of one of the rolled surfaces, except that for plates and sections over 40 mm thick, the axes of the test specimens are to be at one-quarter of the thickness from one of the rolled surfaces. For bars and other similar products the axes of the test specimens are to be as specified in Ch 3, 1.9 Test material and mechanical tests 1.9.4.d.

1. 9. 10 Standard test specimens 10 mm square are to be used, except where the thickness of the material does not allow this size of test specimen to be prepared. In such cases the largest possible size of subsidiary test specimen, in accordance with Table 2. 3. 1: Dimensions and tolerances for Charpy V-notch impact test specimens is to be prepared, with the notch cut on the narrow face. Alternatively, for material of suitable thickness, the rolled surfaces may be retained so that the test specimen width will be the full thickness of the material. In such cases the tolerances for width given in Table 2. 3. 1: Dimensions and tolerances for Charpy V-notch impact test specimens in

Chapter 2 are not applicable. The notch is to be cut in a face of the test specimen which was originally perpendicular to the rolled surface. The position of the notch is to be not nearer than 25 mm to a flame-cut or sheared edge.

1. 9. 11 Impact tests are not required when the nominal material thickness is less than 6 mm.

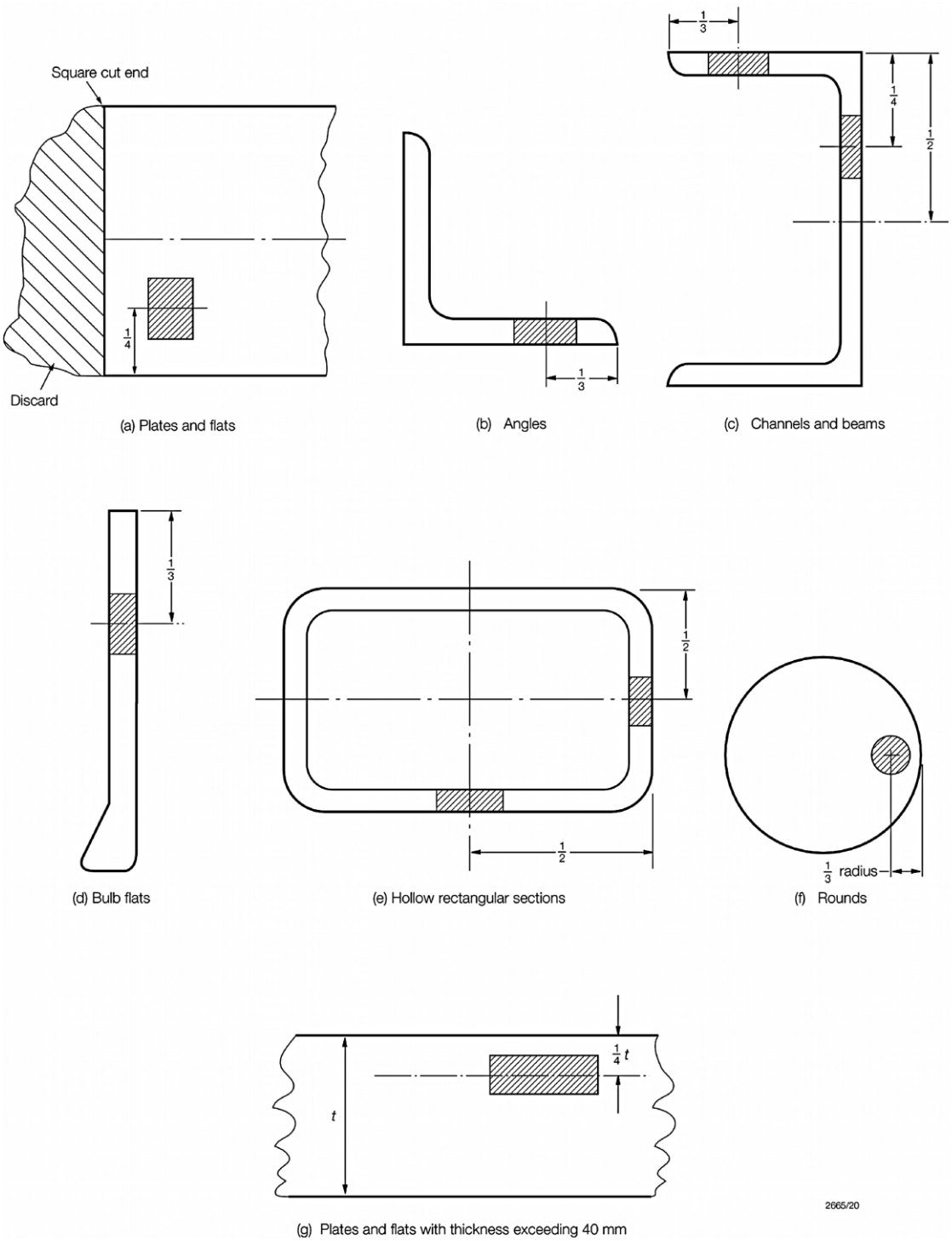
1. 9. 12 The test procedures used for all tensile and impact tests are to be in accordance with the requirements of Ch 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials.

1. 10 Visual and non-destructive examination

1. 10. 1 Surface inspection and verification of dimensions are the responsibility of the steelmaker and are to be carried out on all material prior to despatch. Acceptance by the Surveyors of material later found to be defective shall not absolve the steelmaker from this responsibility.

1. 10. 2 With the exception of 'Z' grade plate material (*See* Ch 3, 8 Plates with specified through thickness properties) and bars for offshore mooring cable (*See* Ch 3, 9 Bars for welded chain cables), the non-destructive examination of materials is not required for acceptance purposes. However, manufacturers are expected to employ suitable methods of non-destructive examination for the general maintenance of quality standards. If agreed by the manufacturer and purchaser that the plates and wide flats products are ordered with an ultrasonic examination requirement, then the examination is to be carried out in accordance with a recognised standard accepted by ACS, which is then to be included in the manufacturing specification.

Figure 3. 1. 2: Position of test material



1. 10. 3 Verification of results of visual and non-destructive examination is the responsibility of the manufacturer. The acceptance of internal soundness by the ACS Surveyor shall not absolve the manufacturer from this responsibility.

1. 11 Rectification of defects

1. 11. 1 For materials intended for structural purposes as detailed in Ch 3, 2 Normal strength steels for ship and other structural applications, Ch 3, 3 Higher strength steels for ship and other structural applications and Ch 3, 5 Steels for machinery fabrications, surface defects may be removed by local grinding provided that:

a. the thickness is in no place reduced to less than 93 per cent of the nominal thickness, but in no case by more than 3 mm,
b. each single ground area does not exceed 0.25 m^2,
c. the total area of local grinding does not exceed two per cent of the total surface,
d. adjacent ground areas, lying within a distance of less than their average breadth to each other, are to be regarded as one single area,
e. ground areas lying opposite each other on both surfaces shall not decrease the product thickness by values exceeding the limits as stated under Ch 3, 1.11 Rectification of defects 1.11.1.a,
f. the ground areas have smooth transitions to the surrounding surface.

Where necessary, the entire surface may be ground to a maximum depth as given by the underthickness tolerances of the product. The extent of such rectification is to be agreed in each case with the Surveyors and is to be carried out under their supervision, unless otherwise agreed. They may request that complete removal of the defect is proven by suitable non-destructive examination of the affected area.

1. 11. 2 Surface defects which cannot be dealt with as in Ch 3, 1.11, Rectification of defects 1.11.1 may be repaired by chipping or grinding followed by welding, subject to the Surveyor's consent and under his supervision, provided that:

a. after removal of the defect and before welding, the thickness of the item is in no place reduced by more than 20 per cent,
b. each single weld does not exceed 0.125 m^2,
c. the total area of welding does not exceed two per cent of the surface of the side involved,
d. the distance between any two welds is not less than their average width,
e. the welds are of reasonable size and made with an excess layer of beads which is then ground smooth to the surface level,
f. elimination of the defect is proven by suitable non-destructive examination of the affected area,
g. welding is carried out by an approved procedure and by competent operators using approved low hydrogen type electrodes and the repaired area is ground smooth to the correct nominal thickness,
h. when requested by the Surveyor, the item is normalised or otherwise suitably heat treated after welding and grinding, and
i. at the discretion of the Surveyor, the repaired area is proven free from defects by suitable non-destructive examination.

1. 11. 3 For materials intended for applications as detailed in Ch 3, 4 Steels for boilers and pressure vessels, Ch 3, 6 Carbon–manganese and nickel alloy steels for low temperature service and Ch 3, 7 Austenitic and duplex stainless steels, surface defects may be removed by grinding in accordance with Ch 3, 1.11, Rectification of defects 1.11.1, except that when the thickness is reduced below that given in the approved plans, acceptance will be subject to special consideration. Weld repairs may also be carried out generally in accordance with Ch 3, 1.11 Rectification of defects 1.11.2, except that in all cases suitable heat treatment after welding and non-destructive testing of the repaired areas is required. The fabricator is to be advised regarding the position and extent of all repairs.

1. 11. 4 For plates which have been produced by a T.M. process or by normalising rolling, repair by welding will be approved by the Surveyor only after procedure tests have shown that the mechanical properties have not been impaired.

1. 11. 5 Cracks, shells, sand patches and sharp edged seams are always considered defects which would impair the end use of the product and which require rejection or repair irrespective of their size and number. The same applies to other imperfections exceeding the acceptable limits.

1. 12 Identification of materials

1. 12. 1 Every finished item is to be clearly marked by the manufacturer in at least one place with ACS's brand (*See* Figure 3. 1. 3: ACS Brand) and the following particulars:

a. The manufacturer's name or trade mark.
b. The grade of steel. The designations given in subsequent Sections of this Chapter may be preceded by the letters 'ACS' in order to fully describe the grade, e.g. ACS A, ACS 490FG. ACS LT-FH40, ACS 316L , etc.
c. When the material complies with the requirements of Ch 3, 8 Plates with specified through thickness properties, the grade is to include the suffix Z25 or Z35, e.g. ACS AH36 Z35.
d. Identification number and/or initials which will enable the full history of the item to be traced.
e. If required by the purchaser, his order number or other identification mark.
f. Steels which have been specially approved and which differ from the requirements in this chapter are to have the letter `S' after the agreed identification mark.

The above particulars, but excluding the manufacturer's name or trade mark where this is embossed on finished products, are to be encircled with paint or otherwise marked so as to be easily recognisable.

1. 12. 2 Where a number of light materials are securely fastened together in bundles, the manufacturer may brand only the top piece of each bundle or, alternatively, a firmly fastened durable label containing the identification may be attached to each bundle.

1. 12. 3 In the event of any material bearing ACS's brand failing to comply with the test requirements, the brand is to be unmistakably defaced, *See also* Ch 1, 4.8 Identification of materials.

Figure 3. 1. 3: ACS Brand

1. 13 Certification of materials

1. 13. 1 Unless a ACS certificate is specified in other parts of the Rules, a manufacturer’s certificate validated by ACS is to be issued (*See* Ch 1, 3.1, General) and is to include the following particulars:

a. Purchaser's name and order number.
b. If known, the contract number for which the material is intended.

c. Address to which material is dispatched.
d. Name of steelworks.
e. Description and dimensions of the material.
f. Specification or grade of the steel.
g. Identification number of piece, including test specimen number where appropriate.
h. Cast number and chemical composition of ladle samples.
i. Mechanical test results (not required on shipping statements).
j. Condition of supply.

1. 13. 2 Before the test certificates are signed by the Surveyor, the steelmaker is required to provide a written declaration stating that the material has been made by an approved process, and that it has been subjected to and has withstood satisfactorily the required tests in the presence of the Surveyor, or an authorised deputy. The following form of declaration will be accepted if stamped or printed on each test certificate with the name of the steelworks and signed by an authorised representative of the manufacturer:

`We hereby certify that the material has been made by an approved process and satisfactorily tested in accordance with the Rules of Asia Classification Society'.

1. 13. 3 When steel is not produced at the works at which it is rolled, a certificate is to be supplied by the steelmaker stating the process of manufacture, the cast number and the chemical composition of ladle samples. The works at which the steel was produced must be approved by ACS.

1. 13. 4 The manufacturer of coiled plate is required to issue a certificate which clearly identifies the material as coil. The certificate issued should include the words; ‘Coils covered by this certificate require further processing at a works approved by Asia Classification Society before being certified as plate in accordance with the Rules of Asia Classification Society’ in addition to the requirements of Ch 3, 1.13 Certification of materials 1.13.2.

1. 13. 5 The supplier of plate cut from coil is required to issue a certificate validated by the ACS Surveyor which clearly identifies the product as finished plate meeting the requirements of the Rules in accordance with Ch 3, 1.13 Certification of materials 1.13.2.

1. 13. 6 The form of certificates produced by computer systems is to be agreed with the Surveyor.

PART

2

CHAPTER 3 **Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars**

SECTION 2 **Normal strength steels for ship and other structural applications**

2. 1 Scope

2. 1. 1 The requirements of this Section are primarily intended to apply to steel plates and wide flats not exceeding 100 mm in thickness and sections and bars not exceeding 50 mm in thickness in Grades A, B, D and E. For greater thicknesses, variations in the requirements may be permitted or required for particular applications.

2. 1. 2 Additional approval tests may be required to verify the suitability for forming and welding of Grade E plate exceeding 50 mm in thickness.

2. 2 Manufacture and chemical composition

2. 2. 1 The method of deoxidation and the chemical composition of ladle samples are to comply with the requirements given in Table 3. 2. 1: Chemical composition and deoxidation practice.

2. 2. 2 Small variations from the chemical compositions given in Table 3. 2. 1: Chemical composition and deoxidation practice may be allowed for Grade E steel in thicknesses exceeding 50 mm or when any Grade of steel is supplied in a thermo-mechanically controlled processed condition, provided that these variations are documented and approved in advance.

2. 2. 3 The manufacturer's declared analysis will be accepted subject to occasional checks if required by the Surveyors.

Table 3. 2. 1: Chemical composition and deoxidation practice

Grade	A	B	D	E
Deoxidation	For $t \leq 50$ mm: Any method (for rimmed steel, *See* Note 1)	For $t \leq 50$ mm: Any method except rimmed steel	For $t \leq 25$ mm: Killed	Killed and fine grain treated with aluminium
	For $t > 50$ mm: Killed	For $t > 50$ mm: Killed	For $t > 25$ mm: Killed and fine grain treated with aluminium	
Chemical composition % (*See* Note 5)				

Carbon	0.21 max. (*See* Note 2)	0.21 max.	0.21 max.	0.18 max.
Manganese	2.5 x C% min.	0.80 min. (*See* Note 3)	0.60 min.	0.70 min.
Silicon	0.50 max.	0.35 max.	0.10 – 0.35	0.10 – 0.35
Sulphur	0.035 max.	0.035 max.	0.035 max.	0.035 max.
Phosphorus	0.035 max.	0.035 max.	0.035 max.	0.035 max.
Aluminium (acid soluble)	-	-	0.015 min. (*See* Note 4)	0.015 min. (*See* Note 4)
	Carbon + 1 / 6 of the manganese content is not to exceed 0.40%			

Note *1.* For Grade A, rimmed steel may only be accepted for sections up to a maximum thickness of 12.5 mm, provided that it is stated on the test certificates or shipping statements to be rimmed steel.

Note *2.* The maximum carbon content for Grade A steel may be increased to 0.23% for sections.

Note *3.* Where Grade B is impact tested the minimum manganese content may be reduced to 0.60%.

Note *4.* The total aluminium content may be determined instead of the acid soluble content. In such cases the total aluminium content is to be not less than 0.020%.

Note *5.* Where additions of any other elements are made as part of the steel-making practice, the content is to be recorded.

2. 2. 4 For plate supplied from coil, the chemical analysis can be transposed from the certificate of the coil manufacture onto the re-processor's certificate.

2. 3 Condition of supply

2. 3. 1 All materials are to be supplied in a condition complying with the requirements given in Table 3. 2. 2: Condition of supply. Where alternative conditions are permitted these are at the option of the steelmaker, unless otherwise expressly stated in the order for the material, but a steelmaker is to supply materials only in those conditions for which he has been approved by ACS.

Table 3. 2. 2: Condition of supply

Grade	Thickness mm	Conditions of supply
A and B	≤50	Any (*See* Note 1)
	>50 ≤100	N NR TM (*See* Note 2)
D	≤35	Any (*See* Note 1)
	>35 ≤100	N NR TM (*See* Note 3)
E	≤100	N TM (*See* Note 4)
N= normalised NR= normalising rolled TM= thermomechanically controlled-rolled		

Note *1*. 'Any' includes as-rolled, normalised, normalising rolled and thermomechanically controlled-rolled.

Note *2*. Plates, wide flats, sections and bars may be supplied in the as-rolled condition, subject to special approval from ACS.

Note *3*. Sections in Grade D steel may be supplied in thicknesses greater than 35 mm in the as-rolled condition provided that satisfactory results are consistently obtained from Charpy V-notch impact tests.

Note *4*. Sections in Grade E steel may be supplied in the as-rolled and normalising rolled conditions provided that satisfactory results are consistently obtained from Charpy V-notch impact tests.

2. 3. 2 Where normalising rolling and thermomechanically controlled rolling (T.M.) processes are used, it is the manufacturer's responsibility to ensure that the programmed rolling schedules are adhered to. Where deviation from the programmed rolling schedule occurs, the manufacturer must ensure that each affected piece is tested and that the local Surveyor is informed.

2. 3. 3 If a steel product supplied in the T.M. condition is to be subjected to heating for forming or stress relieving or is to be welded by a high energy input process, consideration must be given to the possibility of a consequent reduction in mechanical properties.

2. 4 Mechanical tests

2. 4. 1 The results of all tensile tests and the average energy value from each set of three impact tests are to comply with the appropriate requirements given in Table 3. 2. 3: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes except where enhanced by the requirements of this Section.

2. 4. 2 With the exception given in Ch 3, 2.4 Mechanical tests 2.4.4, one tensile test is to be made for each batch presented unless the mass of finished material is greater than 50 tonnes, in which case one test is to be made from a different piece from each 50 tonnes or fraction thereof. Additional tests are to be made for every variation of 10 mm in the thickness or diameter of products from the same cast. For sections, the thickness to be considered is the thickness of the product at the point at which samples are taken for mechanical tests. A piece is to be regarded as the rolled product from a single slab or billet, or from a single ingot if this is rolled directly into plates, strip, sections or bars.

2. 4. 3 For Grades A and B where plate is supplied from coil, results of the tensile test can be transposed from the certificate of the coil manufacture onto the certificate issued by the re-processor. If the coil mass exceeds 50 tonnes, testing will additionally be required from twolocations representing the start and end of the coil. For Grades D and E, the mechanical properties must be sampled from the decoiled plate in accordance with the frequency specified in the Rules.

2. 4. 4 For plates of thickness exceeding 50 mm in Grade E steel, one tensile test is to be made on each piece.

Table 3. 2. 3: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes

Grade	Yield stress N/mm^2 minimum	Tensile strength N/mm^2	Elongation on $5.65\sqrt{S_o}$% minimum	Charpy V-notch impact test (*See* Notes 3, 4, 5, 6)		
				Thickness mm	Average energy J minimum	
					Longitudinal	Transverse

A, B, D, E	235	400 - 520 (*See* Note 1)	22 (*See* Note 2)	≤50 >50≤70 >70≤100	27 34 41	20 24 27
Impact tests are to be made on the various grades at the following temperatures:				A grade B grade D grade E grade	not required 0°C -20°C -40°C	

Note *1.* For sections in Grade A, the upper limit of the tensile strength range may be exceeded at the discretion of the Surveyor.

Note *2.* For full thickness tensile test specimens with a width of 25 mm and a gauge length of 200 mm (*See* Figure 2. 2. 4: Test specimen dimensions for plates, strip and sections - II), the minimum elongation is to be:

Thickness mm	≤5	>5 ≤10	>10 ≤15	>15 ≤20	>20 ≤25	>25 ≤30	>30 ≤35	>35 ≤50
Elongation %	14	16	17	18	19	20	21	22

Note *3. See* Ch 3, 2.4 Mechanical tests 2.4.5 and Ch 3, 2.4 Mechanical tests 2.4.6.

Note *4. See* Ch 3, 2.4 Mechanical tests 2.4.7.

Note *5. See* Ch 3, 1.9 Test material and mechanical tests 1.9.11.

2. 4. 5 For Grade A steel, Charpy V-notch impact tests are not required when the thickness does not exceed 50 mm, or up to 100 mm thick if the material is supplied in either the normalised or thermomechanically controlled-rolled condition and has been fine grain treated. However, the manufacturer should confirm, by way of regular in-house checks, that the material will meet a requirement of 27 J at +20°C. The results of these checks shall be reported to the Surveyor. The frequency of these checks should as a minimum be every 250 tonnes.

2. 4. 6 When Grade A steel is supplied in a thickness greater than 50 mm and either, in the normalising rolled condition, or when special approval has been given to be supply in the as-rolled condition, a set of three impact test specimens is to be tested from each batch of 50 tonnes or fraction thereof.

2. 4. 7 Impact tests are not required for Grade B steel of 25 mm or less in thickness. However, the manufacturer is to confirm, by way of regular in-house tests, and on occasional material selected by the Surveyor, that the material meets the requirement in Table 3. 2. 3: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes. The results of the tests are to be reported to the Surveyor. The frequency of the in-house checks are to be, as a minimum, one set of three impact test specimens for every 250 tonnes.

2. 4. 8 For Grade B steels of thicknesses above 25 mm, supplied in the as-rolled or normalising rolled condition, one set of three impact test specimens is to be made from the thickest item in each batch presented. If the mass of finished material is greater than 25 tonnes, one extra set of tests is to be made from a different piece from each 25 tonnes or fraction thereof.

2. 4. 9 For Grade B steels of thicknesses above 25 mm, supplied in the furnace normalised or thermomechanically controlled-rolled condition, one set of three impact test specimens is to be made from the thickest item in each batch presented. If the mass of finished material is greater than 50 tonnes, one extra set of tests is to be made from a different piece from each 50 tonnes or fraction thereof.

2. 4. 10 For Grade D steels supplied in the as-rolled or normalising rolled condition, one set of three impact test specimens is to be made from the thickest item in each batch presented. If the mass of finished material is greater than 25 tonnes, one extra set of tests is to be made from a different piece from each 25 tonnes or fraction thereof.

2. 4. 11 For Grade D steels, supplied in the furnace normalised or thermomechanically controlled-rolled condition, one set of three impact test specimens is to be made from the thickest item in each batch presented. If the mass of finished material is greater than 50 tonnes, one extra set of tests is to be made from a different piece from each 50 tonnes or fraction thereof.

2. 4. 12 For plates in Grade E steel, one set of three impact test specimens is to be made from each piece. For bars and sections in Grade E steel, one set of three test specimens is to be made from each 25 tonnes or fraction thereof. When, subject to the special approval of ACS, sections are supplied in the as-rolled or normalising rolled conditions, one set of impact tests is to be taken from each batch of 15 tonnes or fraction thereof.

2. 4. 13 The results of all tensile tests and the average energy values from each set of three impact tests are to comply with the appropriate requirements given in Table 3. 2. 3: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes. For impact tests, one individual value may be less than the required average value provided that it is not less than 70 per cent of this average value. *See* Ch 1, 4.6 Re-test procedures for re-test procedures.

2. 4. 14 Where standard subsidiary Charpy V-notch test specimens are necessary, *See* Ch 2, 3.2 Testing procedures 3.2.4.

2. 5 Identification of materials

2. 5. 1 The particulars detailed in Ch 3, 1.12, Identification of materials are to be marked on all materials which have been accepted. Where a number of light materials are bundled, the bundle is to be identified in accordance with Ch 3, 1.12 Identification of materials 1.12.2.

2. 6 Certification of materials

2. 6. 1 At least two copies of each test certificate are to be provided. They are to be of the type and give the information detailed in Ch 3, 1.13, Certification of materials and, additionally, are to indicate if sections in Grade A steel of rimming quality have been supplied. As a minimum, the chemical composition is to include the contents of any grain refining elements used and the residual elements, as detailed in Table 3. 2. 1: Chemical composition and deoxidation practice.

PART

2

CHAPTER 3 **Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars**

SECTION 3 **Higher strength steels for ship and other structural applications**

3. 1 Scope

3. 1. 1 Provision is made for material to be supplied in four strength levels, 27S, 32, 36 and 40.

3. 1. 2 Provision is made for material specifically intended for hatch coamings and deck structure of container ships requiring specified crack arrest properties. Grades of steel of type EH40 in thicknesses above 85 mm and EH47 shall have crack arrest properties demonstrated at time of approval and at batch release. Crack arrest steels are to have a guaranteed crack arrest temperature (CAT) below -10°C.

3. 1. 3 The required notch toughness is designated by subdividing the strength levels into Grades AH, DH, EH and FH.

3. 1. 4 For the designation to fully identify a steel and its properties the appropriate grade letters should precede the strength level number, e.g. AH32 or FH40.

3. 1. 5 The requirements of this Section are primarily intended to apply to plates, wide flats, sections and bars not exceeding the thickness limits given in Table 3. 3. 1: Maximum thickness limits. For greater thicknesses, variations in the requirements may be permitted or required for particular applications but a reduction of the required impact energy is not allowed.

Table 3. 3. 1: Maximum thickness limits

<table>
<tr><td colspan="4" rowspan="2">Steel designation</td><td colspan="2">Maximum thickness mm</td></tr>
<tr><td>Plates and wide flats</td><td>Sections and bars</td></tr>
<tr><td>AH 27S</td><td>DH 27S</td><td>EH 27S</td><td>FH27S</td><td rowspan="5">100</td><td rowspan="4">50</td></tr>
<tr><td>AH 32</td><td>DH 32</td><td>EH 32</td><td>FH32</td></tr>
<tr><td>AH 36</td><td>DH 36</td><td>EH 36</td><td>FH36</td></tr>
<tr><td>AH 40</td><td>DH 40</td><td>EH40 (See Note 1)</td><td>FH40</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">EH 47 (See Note 2)</td><td>Not applicable</td></tr>
</table>

Note *1.* Where the thickness of grade EH40 materials exceeds 85 mm the material is to achieve a crack arrest temperature (CAT) below -10°C. The CAT may be measured directly from large scale isothermal tests or be estimated from small scale tests that determine the Nil Ductility Temperature and applying a relationship such as the following, which has been validated at the approval stage:

$$CAT = (NDTT + 10) + \left[\left(\frac{\ln \sigma}{0.046}\right) - 105\right] + \left[153(B-5)^{1/13} - 190\right]$$

where

- CAT = crack arrest temperature in °C
- NDTT = nil ductility test temperature in °C
- σ = 2/3 of the minimum specified yield strength in N/mm^2
- B = thickness of the plate in mm

As an alternative to crack arrest temperature, crack arrest properties may be demonstrated by large scale ESSO tests where $K_{ca} \geq 6000$ N/mm$^{1.5}$ at -10°C or other approved methods.

Note *2.* Grade EH47 applies only to thickness greater than 50 mm. The crack arrest properties of EH47 are to be determined as described in Note 1. Where the K_{ca} ESSO test is used and where the thickness of the steel exceeds 80 mm, the required K_{ca} value for the brittle crack arrest steel plate is to be specifically agreed with ACS.

3. 1. 6 It should be noted that the fatigue strength of weldments in steels of high strength levels may not be greater than those of steels of lower strength levels.

3. 2 Manufacture

3. 2. 1 All the grades of steel are to be in the killed and fine grain treated condition.

3. 3 Chemical composition

3. 3. 1 The chemical compositions of ladle samples for all grades of steel are to comply with the requirements of the approved manufacturing specification and the limits given in Table 3. 3. 2: Chemical composition or Table 3. 3. 3: Chemical composition for Grade EH 47.

Table 3. 3. 2: Chemical composition

Grades	AH, DH, EH	FH
Carbon % max.	0.18	0.16
Manganese %	0.9 – 1.60 (*See* Note 1)	0.9 – 1.60
Silicon % max.	0.50	0.50
Phosphorus % max.	0.035	0.025
Sulphur % max.	0.035	0.025
Grain refining elements (*See* Note 2)		
Aluminium (acid soluble) %	0.015 min. (*See* Note 3)	
Niobium %	0.02 – 0.05	
Vanadium %	0.05 – 0.10	

Titanium %	0.02 max.	
Total (Nb + V + Ti) % (*See* Note 5)	0.12 max.	
Residual elements		
Nickel % max.	0.40	0.80
Copper % max.	0.35	0.35
Chromium % max.	0.20	0.20
Molybdenum % max.	0.08	0.08
Nitrogen % max.		0.009 (0.012 max. if Al is present)

Note *1.* For AH grade steels in all strength levels and thicknesses up to 12.5 mm, the specified minimum manganese content is 0.70%.

Note *2.* The steel is to contain aluminium, niobium, vanadium or other suitable grain refining elements, either singly or in any combination. When used singly, the steel is to contain the specified minimum content of the grain refining element. When used in combination, the specified minimum content of each element is not applicable.

Note *3.* The total aluminium content may be determined instead of the acid soluble content. In such cases the total aluminium content is to be not less than 0.020%.

Note *4.* Alloying elements other than those listed above are to be included in the approved manufacturing specification.

Note *5.* The grain refining elements are to be in accordance with the approved specification

Table 3. 3. 3: Chemical composition for Grade EH 47

Chemical element	max. (%)
Carbon	0.20
Manganese	2.00
Silicon	0.55
Phosphorus	0.030
Sulphur	0.030
Nickel	2.00
Chromium	0.25
Molybdenum	0.08
Grain refining elements	*See* Note 1
Residual elements Copper	0.35

Note *1.* The steel is to contain aluminium, niobium, vanadium, titanium, or other suitable grain refining elements, either singly or in any combination, in accordance with the approved specification.

3. 3. 2 The carbon equivalent is to be calculated from the ladle analysis using the formula given below and is not to exceed the maximum value agreed between the fabricator and the steelmaker when the steel is ordered.

$$Carbon\ equivalent = \mathrm{C} + \frac{\mathrm{Mn}}{6} + \frac{\mathrm{Cr} + \mathrm{Mo} + \mathrm{V}}{5} + \frac{\mathrm{Ni} + \mathrm{Cu}}{15}$$

For TM steels, the agreed carbon equivalent is not to exceed the values given in Table 3. 3. 4: Carbon equivalent requirements for higher tensile strength steels up to 100 mm in thickness when supplied in the TM condition.

3. 3. 3 The cold cracking susceptibility, P_{cm}, may be used instead of the carbon equivalent for evaluating weldability, in which case the following formula is to be used for calculating the P_{cm} from the ladle analysis:

$$P_{cm} = \mathrm{C} + \frac{\mathrm{Si}}{30} + \frac{\mathrm{Mn} + \mathrm{Cr} + \mathrm{Cu}}{20} + \frac{\mathrm{Ni}}{60} + \frac{\mathrm{Mo}}{15} + \frac{\mathrm{V}}{10} + 5\mathrm{B}$$

The maximum allowable P_{cm} is to be agreed with ACS and is to be included in the manufacturing specification and reported on the certificate.

3. 3. 4 The cold cracking susceptibility, P_{cm}, is to have a maximum value of 0.22 per cent for steels of H47 strength grade.

3. 3. 5 Small deviations in chemical composition from that given in Table 3. 3. 2: Chemical composition for plates exceeding 50 mm in thickness in Grades EH36, EH40, FH36 and FH40 may be approved provided that these deviations are documented and approved in advance.

3. 3. 6 Where the grain refining elements Niobium, Titanium and Vanadium are used either singly or in combination, the chemical composition is to be specifically approved for each Grade in combination with the rolling procedure to be used.

3. 3. 7 When any grade is supplied in an approved thermomechanically controlled processed condition, variations in the specified chemical composition may be considered, provided that these variations are documented and approved in advance.

3. 3. 8 For plate supplied from coil, the chemical analysis can be transposed from the certificate of the coil manufacture onto the re-processor's certificate.

Table 3. 3. 4: Carbon equivalent requirements for higher tensile strength steels up to 100 mm in

Grades	Carbon Equivalent, max. (%)	
	t ≤ 50	50 < t ≤ 100
AH 27S DH 27S EH 27S FH 27S	0.36	0.38
AH 32 DH 32 EH 32 FH 32	0.36	0.38
AH 36 DH 36 EH 36 FH 36	0.38	0.40
AH 40 DH 40 EH 40 FH 40	0.40	0.42
EH 47	Not applicable (*See* Table 3. 3. 1: Maximum thickness limits)	0.49
Note t = thickness in mm.		

3. 4 Condition of supply

3. 4. 1 All materials are to be supplied in a condition complying with the requirements given in Table 3. 3. 5: Conditions of supply for plates and wide flats or Table 3. 3. 7: Conditions of supply for sections and bars. Where alternative conditions are permitted, these are at the option of the steelmaker, unless otherwise expressly stated in the order for the material.

3. 4. 2 Where normalising rolling and thermomechanically controlled rolling (T.M.) processes are used, it is the manufacturer's responsibility to ensure that the programmed rolling schedules are adhered to. Where deviation from the programmed rolling schedule occurs, the manufacturer must ensure that each affected piece is tested and that the local Surveyor is informed.

3. 4. 3 The use of precipitation hardening steels is not acceptable, except where such hardening is incidental to the use of grain refining elements.

Table 3. 3. 5: Conditions of supply for plates and wide flats

Grade	Grain refining practice (*See* Note 1)	Thickness range mm	Conditions of supply (*See* Note 2)
AH 27S	Al or Al + Ti	≤20	AR N NR TM
		>20 ≤ 100	– N NR TM (*See* Note 3)
AH 32 AH 36	Nb or V or Al + (Nb or V) or Al + (Ti) + (Nb or V)	≤12.5	AR N NR TM
		>12.5≤100	– N NR TM
AH 40	Any practice	≤12.5	AR N NR TM
		>12.5 ≤ 50	– N NR TM
		>50 ≤ 100	– N – TM QT
DH 27S	Al or Al + Ti	≤20	AR N NR TM
		>20≤100	– N NR TM (*See* Note 4)
DH 32 DH 36	Nb or V or Al + (Nb or V) or Al + (Ti) + (Nb or V)	≤12.5	AR N NR TM
		>12.5≤100	– N NR TM
DH 40	Any practice	≤50	– N NR TM
		> 50 ≤ 100	– N – TM QT
EH 27S EH 32 EH 36	Any practice	≤100	– N – TM
EH 40	Any practice	≤100	– N – TM QT
FH 27S FH 32 FH 36 FH 40	Any practice	≤100	– N – TM QT
EH 47	Any practice	≤50	Not applicable
		>50 ≤100	— — — TM QT

Note *1.* Grain refining elements used singly or in any combination, require specific approval from Technical Committee, Tehran Head Office.

Note *2.* AR=as-rolled N=furnace normalised NR=normalising rolled TM=thermomechanically controlled-rolled QT=quenched and tempered.

Note *3.* Material up to 35 mm thick may be supplied in the as-rolled condition provided that prior approval has been obtained from ACS.

Note *4.* Material up to 25 mm thick may be supplied in the as-rolled condition provided that prior approval has been obtained from ACS.

3. 5 Mechanical tests

3. 5. 1 The results of all tensile tests and the average energy value from each set of three Charpy V-notch impact tests are to comply with the appropriate requirements given in Table 3. 3. 6: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes (See Note 1).

Table 3. 3. 6: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes (*See* Note 1)

Grades (*See* Note 3)	Yield Stress N/mm^2 min.	Tensile Strength N/mm^2	Elongation on $5.65\sqrt{S_o}$ % min (*See* Note 2)	Charpy V-notch impact tests (*See* Notes 3, 4, 5 and 6)					
				Average energy J minimum					
				t ≤ 50 mm		50 < t ≤ 70 mm		70 < t ≤ 100 mm	
				Longitudinal	Transverse	Longitudinal	Transverse	Longitudinal	Transverse
AH27S DH 27S EH 27S FH 27S	265	400 - 530	22	27	20	34	24	41	27
AH32 DH32 EH32 FH32	315	440 - 570	22	31	22	38	26	46	31
AH36 DH36 EH36 FH36	355	490 - 630	21	34	24	41	27	50	34
AH40 DH40 EH40 FH40	390	510 - 650	20	39	26	46	31	55	37
EH47	460	570 - 720	17	-	-	53	35	64 (*See* Note 1)	42 (*See* Note 5)
Impact tests are to be made on the various grades at the following temperatures: AH grades 0°C DH grades -20°C EH grades -40°C FH grades -60°C									

Note *1*. The requirements for products thicker than those detailed in the table are subject to agreement, *See* Ch 3, 3.1 Scope 3.1.5.
Note *2*. For full thickness tensile test specimens with a width of 25 mm and a gauge length of 200 mm, *See* Figure 2. 2. 4: Test specimen dimensions for plates, strip and sections - II in Ch 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials, the minimum elongation is to be:

Thickness		≤ 5	> 5 ≤ 10	> 10 ≤ 15	> 15 ≤ 20	> 20 ≤ 25	> 25 ≤ 30	> 30 ≤ 40	> 40 ≤ 50	> 50
Elongation	Strenght Levels 27S, 32	14	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	To be specifically agreed
	Strenght Levels 36	13	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	
	Strenght Levels 40	12	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	

Note *3*. Subject to special approval by ACS, the minimum tensile strength may be reduced to 470 N/mm^2, for grades AH36, DH36, EH36 and FH36, in the TM condition when micro-alloying elements Nb, Ti or V are used singly and not in combination and provided the yield to tensile strength ratio does not exceed 0.89. For plates with a thickness ≤12 mm, the yield to tensile strength ratio is to be specially considered.

Note *4*. *See* Ch 3, 1.9 Test material and mechanical tests 1.9.11

Note *5*. For steel of H47 strength grade, the yield to tensile strength ratio is not to exceed 0.94.

Note *6*. The Charpy V-notch impact energy for EH47 in thickness between 85 mm and 100 mm are to be 75J in the longitudinal direction and 50J in the transverse direction

3. 5. 2 For steels in the as-rolled, normalised, normalising rolled or T.M. conditions, one tensile test is to be made for each batch of 50 tonnes or fraction thereof. Additional tests are to be made for every variation of 10 mm in the thickness or diameter of products from the same cast.

3. 5. 3 Where plate is supplied from coil, both the tensile tests and the Charpy V-notch tests are to be taken from the de-coiled plate in accordance with the frequency specified for the Grade as required by this Section.

3. 5. 4 For steels in the quenched and tempered condition a tensile test is to be made on each plate as heat treated. For continuously heat treated plates, one tensile test is to be made for each 50 tonnes or fraction thereof from a single cast. Additional tests are to be made for every variation of 10 mm in the thickness of the products from a single cast. The tensile test specimens are to be taken with their axes transverse to the main direction of rolling.

3. 5. 5 For products in the AH and DH grades, at least one set of three impact tests is to be made on the thickest piece in each batch of 50 tonnes when supplied in either the normalised or thermomechanically controlled condition. When the products are supplied in the as-rolled or normalising rolled conditions a set of impact test specimens is to be taken from a different piece from each 25 tonnes or fraction thereof. When supplied in the quenched and tempered condition, a set of impact tests is to be made on each length as heat treated. Test specimens from the quenched and tempered plates are to have their axes transverse to the main rolling direction.

3. 5. 6 For plates and wide flats in the EH and FH grades supplied in the normalised or thermomechanically controlled conditions, one set of impact tests is to be made on each piece. For plates supplied in the quenched and tempered condition a set of impact tests is to be made on each length as heat treated. Test specimens from the quenched and tempered plates are to have their axes transverse to the main rolling direction.

3. 5. 7 For crack arrest steels the brittle crack arrest test frequency is to be as stated in Ch 3, 3.5 Mechanical tests 3.5.6. Small scale test methods may be used to demonstrate brittle crack arrest properties, subject to approval of the test method prior to application

3. 5. 8 For sections and bars in the EH and FH grades supplied in the normalised or thermomechanically controlled conditions, one set of impact tests is to be made on the thickest piece in a batch not

exceeding 25 tonnes. For sections supplied in the as-rolled or normalising rolled conditions the batch size is not to exceed 15 tonnes.

Table 3. 3. 7: Conditions of supply for sections and bars

Grade	Grain refining practice (*See* Note 1)	Thickness range mm	Conditions of supply (*See* Note 2)
AH 27S	Al or Al + Ti	≤20	Any
		>20≤50	N NR TM (*See* Note 3)
AH 32 AH 36	Nb or V or Al + Nb or A1+ V or Al + (Ti) + (Nb or V)	≤12.5	Any
		>12.5≤50	N NR TM (*See* Note 3)
AH 40	Any practice	≤12.5	Any
		>12.5≤50	N NR TM
DH 27S DH 32	Al or Al + Ti	≤20	Any
		>20≤50	N NR TM (*See* Note 3)
DH 36	Nb or V or Al + Nb or Al + V or Al + (Ti) + (Nb or V)	≤12.5	Any
		>12.5≤50	N NR TM (*See* Note 3)
DH 40	Any practice	≤50	N NR TM
EH 27S EH 32 EH 36	Any practice	≤50	N TM (*See* Notes 3 and 4)
EH 40	Any practice	≤50	N TM QT
FH 27S FH 32 FH 36 FH 40	Any practice	≤50	N TM QT (*See* Note 4)

Note *1.* Grain refining elements used singly or in any combination require specific approval from Technical Committee, Tehran Head Office.

Note *2.* N = furnace normalised NR = normalising rolled TM = thermomechanically controlled-rolled QT = quenched and tempered

Note *3.* Subject to the special approval of ACS, sections may be supplied in the as-rolled condition provided satisfactory results are consistently obtained from Charpy V-notch impact tests.

Note *4.* Subject to the special approval of ACS, sections may be supplied in the NR condition.

3. 5. 9 Where standard subsidiary impact specimens are necessary, *See* Ch 2, 2.3 Procedure for testing at ambient temperature 2.3.4.

3. 6 Identification of materials

3. 6. 1 The particulars detailed in Ch 3, 1.12, Identification of materials are to be marked on all materials which have been accepted and, for ease of recognition, are to be encircled or otherwise marked with paint. Where a number of light products are bundled, the bundle is to be identified in accordance with Ch 3, 1.12 Identification of materials 1.12.2.

3. 7 Certification of materials

3. 7. 1 At least two copies of each test certificate are to be provided. They are to be of the type and give the information detailed in Ch 3, 1.13, Certification of materials and, additionally, are to state the specified maximum carbon equivalent. As a minimum, the chemical composition is to include the contents of any grain refining elements used and of the residual elements.

3. 7. 2 For steels which have been specially approved, the agreed identification mark, the specified minimum yield stress and, if applicable, the contents of alloying elements are additionally to be stated on the test certificate or shipping statement.

3. 7. 3 The steelmaker is to provide the Surveyor with a written declaration as detailed in Ch 3, 1.13 Certification of materials 1.13.2.

PART

2

CHAPTER **3** **Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars**

SECTION **4** **Steels for boilers and pressure vessels**

4. 1 Scope

4. 1. 1 Provision is made in this Section for carbon, carbon-manganese and alloy steels intended for use in the construction of boilers and pressure vessels. In addition to specifying mechanical properties at ambient temperature for the purposes of acceptance testing, these requirements also give details of appropriate mechanical properties at elevated temperatures which may be used for design purposes.

4. 1. 2 Where it is proposed to use a carbon or carbon-manganese steel with a specified minimum tensile strength intermediate to those given in this Section, corresponding minimum values for the yield stress, elongation and mechanical properties at elevated temperatures may be obtained by interpolation.

4. 1. 3 Carbon and carbon-manganese steels with a specified minimum tensile strength of greater than 490 N/mm^2 but not exceeding 520 N/mm^2 may be accepted, provided that details of the proposed specification are submitted for approval.

4. 1. 4 Where it is proposed to use alloy steels other than as given in this Section, details of the specification are to be submitted for approval. In such cases the specified minimum tensile strength is not to exceed 600 N/mm^2.

4. 1. 5 Materials intended for use in the construction of the cargo tanks and process pressure vessels storage tanks for liquefied gases and for other low temperature applications are to comply with the requirements of Ch 3, 6 Carbon–manganese and nickel alloy steels for low temperature service or Ch 3, 7 Austenitic and duplex stainless steels, as appropriate.

4. 2 Manufacture and chemical composition

4. 2. 1 The method of deoxidation and the chemical composition of ladle samples are to comply with the appropriate requirements of Table 3. 4. 1: Chemical composition and deoxidation practice.

Table 3. 4. 1: Chemical composition and deoxidation practice

Grade of steel	Deoxidation	Chemical composition %						
Carbon and carbon-manganese steels		C max.	Si	Mn	P	S	Al	Residual elements
360 AR	Any method except rimmed steel	0.18	0.50 max.	0.40 – 1.20	0.040 max.		-	Cr 0.25 max. Cu 0.30 max. Mo 0.10 max.
410 AR		0.21		0.40 – 1.30			-	
460 AR		0.23		0.80 – 1.50			-	

360	Any method except rimmed steel	0.17	0.35 max.		0.40 – 1.20	0.035 max.		-	Ni 0.30 max. Total 0.70 max.
410		0.20			0.50 – 1.30			-	
460		0.20 (*See* Note 1)	0.40 max.		0.80 – 1.40			-	
490	Killed		0.10 – 0.50		0.90 – 1.60			-	
360 FG	Killed fine grained	0.17	0.35 max.		0.40 – 1.20	0.035 max.		(*See* Note 2)	
410 FG		0.20			0.50 – 1.30				
460 FG		0.20 (*See* Note 1)	0.40 max.		0.80 – 1.50				
490 FG			0.10 – 0.50		0.90 – 1.60				
510 FG		0.22							
Alloy steel		C	Si	Mn	P S	Al	Cr	Mo	Residual Elements
13Cr Mo 45	Killed	0.10–0.18	0.15-0.35	0.4-0.8	0.035 max.	(*See* Note 3)	0.70-1.30	0.40-0.60	Cu 0.30 max.
11Cr Mo 910		0.08-0.18	0.15-0.50				2.00-2.50	0.90-1.10	Ni 0.30 max.

Note *1.* For thicknesses greater than 30 mm, carbon 0.22% max.

Note *2.* Aluminium (acid soluble) 0.015% min. or Aluminium (total) 0.018% min. Niobium, vanadium or other suitable grain refining elements may be used either in place of or in addition to aluminium.

Note 3.Aluminium (acid soluble or total) 0.020% max.

4. 2. 2 For plate supplied from coil, the chemical analysis may be transposed from the certificate of the coil manufacture onto the re-processor's certificate.

4. 3 Heat treatment

4. 3. 1 All materials are to be supplied in a condition complying with the requirements given in Table 3. 4. 2: Condition of supply except that, when agreed, material intended for hot forming may be supplied in the as-rolled condition.

Table 3. 4. 2: Condition of supply

Grade of steel	Condition of supply
Carbon and carbon-manganese	As-rolled
360 AR to 460 AR	Maximum thickness or diameter is 40 mm
Carbon and carbon-manganese	Normalised or normalised rolled
360 to 490	
Carbon and carbon-manganese	Normalised or normalised rolled
360 FG to 510 FG	
13Cr Mo 45	Normalised and tempered
11Cr Mo 910	Normalised and tempered

4. 4 Mechanical tests

4. 4. 1 For plates, a tensile test specimen is to be taken from one end of each piece when the mass does not exceed 5 tonnes and the length does not exceed 15 m. When either of these limits is exceeded, tensile test specimens are to be taken from both ends of each piece. A piece is to be regarded as the rolled product from a single slab or from a single ingot if this is rolled directly into plates.

4. 4. 2 For strip, tensile test specimens are to be taken from both ends of each coil.

4. 4. 3 Sections and bars are to be presented for acceptance test in batches containing not more than 50 lengths, as supplied. The material in each batch is to be of the same section size, from the same cast and in the same condition of supply. One tensile test specimen is to be taken from material representative of each batch, except that additional tests are to be taken when the mass of a batch exceeds 10 tonnes.

4. 4. 4 Where plates are required for hot forming and it has been agreed that the heat treatment will be carried out by the fabricator, the tests at the steelworks are to be made on material which has been cut from the plates and given a normalising and tempering heat treatment in a manner simulating the treatment which will be applied to the plates.

4. 4. 5 If required by the Surveyors or by the fabricator, test material may be given a simulated stress relieving heat treatment prior to the preparation of the test specimens. This has to be stated on the order together with agreed details of the simulated heat treatment and the mechanical properties which can be accepted.

4. 4. 6 The results of all tensile tests are to comply with the appropriate requirements given in Table 3. 4. 3: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon and carbon-manganese steels - As-rolled to Table 3. 4. 5: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: alloy steels - Normalised and tempered.

Table 3. 4. 3: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon and carbon-manganese steels - As-rolled

Grade of steel	Thickness mm	Yield stress N/mm^2 minimum	Tensile strength N/mm^2	Elongation on $5.65\sqrt{S_o}$ % minimum
360 AR	≤40	190	360–480	24
410 AR	≤40	215	410–530	22
460 AR	≤40	240	460–580	21

Table 3. 4. 4: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon and carbon-manganese steels - Normalised or normalised rolled

Grade of steel	Thickness mm (*See* Note)	Yield stress N/mm^2 minimum	Tensile strength N/mm^2	Elongation on $5.65\sqrt{S_o}$% minimum
	>3≤16	205		26
360	>16≤40	195	360 – 480	26
	>40≤63	185		25
	>3≤16	235		24
410	>16≤40	225	410 – 530	24
	>40≤63	215		23

	>3≤16	285		22
460	>16≤40	255	460 – 580	22
	>40≤63	245		21
	>3≤16	305		21
490	>16≤40	275	490 – 610	21
	>40≤63	265		20
	>3≤16	235		26
360 FG	>16≤40	215	360 – 480	26
	>40≤63	195		25
	>3≤16	265		24
410 FG	>16≤40	245	410 – 530	24
	>40≤63	235		23
	>3≤16	295		22
460 FG	>16≤40	285	460 – 580	22
	>40≤63	275		21
	>3≤16	315		21
490 FG	>16≤40	315	490 – 610	21
	>40≤63	305		21
	>3≤16	355		
510 FG	>16≤40	345	510 – 650	21
	>40≤63	335		

Note For thicknesses greater than 63 mm, the minimum values for yield stress may be reduced by 1% for each 5 mm increment in thickness over 63 mm. The minimum elongationvalues may also be reduced one unit, for all thicknesses over 63 mm. For thicknesses over 100 mm, the above values are to be agreed.

4. 4. 7 Where plate is supplied from coil, the tensile tests are to be taken from the de-coiled plate in accordance with the frequency specified for the Grade as required by this Section.

Table 3. 4. 5: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: alloy steels - Normalised and tempered

Grade of steel	Thickness mm (*See* Note)	Yield stress N/mm^2 minimum	Tensile strength N/mm^2	Elongation on 5.65 $\sqrt{S_o}$% minimum
13Cr Mo45	≤63	305	470-620	20
11Cr Mo910	≤16	275	480-630	18
11Cr Mo910	>16≤63	265	480-630	18
Note For thicknesses greater than 63 mm, the minimum values for yield stress may be reduced by 1% for each 5 mm increment in thickness over 63 mm. The minimum elongation values may also be reduced one unit, e.g. for all thicknesses over 63 mm. For thicknesses over 100 mm, the above values are to be agreed.				

4. 4. 8 All test specimens are to be taken in the transverse direction unless otherwise agreed.

4. 4. 9 When material will be subject to strains in a through thickness direction, it is recommended that it should have specified through thickness properties in accordance with the requirements of Ch 3, 8 Plates with specified through thickness properties.

4. 5 Identification of materials

4. 5. 1 The particulars detailed in Ch 3, 1.12, Identification of materials are to be marked on all materials which have been accepted.

4. 6 Certification of materials

4. 6. 1 At least two copies of each test certificate are to be provided. They are to be of the type and to give the information detailed in Ch 3, 1.13, Certification of materials and, additionally, are to state the specified maximum carbon equivalent. As a minimum, chemical composition is to include the content of any grain refining elements used and of the residual elements, as detailed in Table 3. 4. 1: Chemical composition and deoxidation practice.

4. 7 Mechanical properties for design purposes

4. 7. 1 Nominal values for the minimum lower yield or 0.2 per cent proof stress at temperatures of 50°C and higher are given in Table 3. 4. 6: Mechanical properties for design purposes (See 4.7.1) : carbon and carbon-manganese steels - As-rolled to Table 3. 4. 8: Mechanical properties for design purposes (See 4.7.1): alloy steels - Normalised and tempered.

Table 3. 4. 6: Mechanical properties for design purposes (*See* 4.7.1) : carbon and carbon-manganese steels - As-rolled

Grade of steel	Thickness mm	Design temperature °C (*See* Note)						
		50	100	150	200	250	300	350
		Nominal minimum lower yield or 0.2% proof stress N/mm^2						
360 AR	≤40	154	153	152	145	128	108	102
410 AR	≤40	186	183	181	174	155	134	127
460 AR	≤40	218	213	210	203	182	161	153
Note Maximum permissible design temperature is 350°C								

4. 7. 2 These values are intended for design purposes only, and verification is not required except for materials complying with National or proprietary specifications where the elevated temperature properties used for design purposes are higher than given in Table 3. 4. 6: Mechanical properties for design purposes (See 4.7.1) : carbon and carbon-manganese steels - As-rolled to Table 3. 4. 8: Mechanical properties for design purposes (See 4.7.1): alloy steels - Normalised and tempered.

4. 7. 3 In such cases, at least one tensile test at the proposed design or other agreed temperature is to be made on material from each cast. Where materials of more than one thickness are supplied from one cast, the thickest material is to be tested. The test specimens are to be prepared from material adjacent to that used for tests at ambient temperature. The axis of the test specimens is to be between mid and quarter thickness of the material and the test specimens are to be machined to dimensions in accordance with the requirements of Ch 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials. The test procedure is also to be as detailed in Ch 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials, and the results are to comply with the requirements of the National or proprietary specifications.

4. 7. 4 As an alternative to Ch 3, 4.7 Mechanical properties for design purposes 4.7.3, a manufacturer may carry out an agreed comprehensive test program for a stated grade of steel to demonstrate that the specified minimum mechanical properties at elevated temperatures can be consistently obtained. This test program is to be carried out under supervision of the Surveyors, and the results submitted for assessment and approval. When a manufacturer is approved on this basis, tensile tests at elevated temperatures are not required for acceptance purposes but, at the discretion of the Surveyors, occasional check tests of this type may be requested.

4. 7. 5 Values for the estimated average stress to rupture in 100 000 hours are given in Table 3. 4. 9: Mechanical properties for design purposes (See 4.7.5): estimated average values for stress to rupture in 100 000 hours (units N/mm2) and may be used for design purposes.

Table 3. 4. 7: Mechanical properties for design purposes (*See* 4.7.1): carbon and carbon-manganese steels - Normalised or controlled-rolled

Grade of steel	Thickness mm (*See* Note)	Design temperature °C								
		50	100	150	200	250	300	350	400	450
		Nominal minimum lower yield or 0.2% proof stress N/mm^2								
360	>3≤16	183	175	172	168	150	124	117	115	113
	>16≤40	173	171	169	162	144	124	117	115	113
	>40≤63	166	162	158	152	141	124	117	115	113
410	>3≤16	220	211	208	201	180	150	142	138	136
	>16≤40	204	201	198	191	171	150	142	138	136
	>40≤63	196	192	188	181	168	150	142	138	136
460	>3≤16	260	248	243	235	210	176	168	162	158
	>16≤40	235	230	227	220	198	176	168	162	158
	>40≤63	227	222	218	210	194	176	168	162	158
490	>3≤16	280	270	264	255	228	192	183	177	172

	>16≤40	255	248	245	237	214	192	183	177	172
	>40≤63	245	240	236	227	210	192	183	177	172
	>3≤16	214	204	185	165	145	127	116	110	106
360 FG	>16≤40	200	196	183	164	145	127	116	110	106
	>40≤63	183	179	172	159	145	127	116	110	106
	>3≤16	248	235	216	194	171	152	141	134	130
410 FG	>16≤40	235	228	213	192	171	152	141	134	130
	>40≤63	222	215	204	188	171	152	141	134	130
	>3≤16	276	262	247	223	198	177	167	158	153
460 FG	>16≤40	271	260	242	220	198	177	167	158	153
	>40≤63	262	251	235	217	198	177	167	158	153
	>3≤16	297	284	265	240	213	192	182	173	168
490 FG	>16≤40	293	279	260	237	213	192	182	173	168
	>40≤63	286	272	256	234	213	192	182	173	168
510 FG	>3≤63	313	290	270	255	235	215	200	180	–

Note For thicknesses greater than 63 mm, the values for lower yield or 0.2% proof stress are to be reduced by 1% for each 5 mm increment in thickness up to 100 mm. For thicknesses over 100 mm, the values are to be agreed and verified by test.

Table 3. 4. 8: Mechanical properties for design purposes (*See* 4.7.1): alloy steels - Normalised and tempered

Grade of steel	Thickness mm (*See* Note)	Design temperature °C									
		50	100	200	300	350	400	450	500	550	600
		Nominal minimum lower yield or 0.2% proof stress N/mm^2									
13Cr Mo45	>3≤63	284	270	248	216	203	199	194	188	181	174
11Cr Mo910	>3≤63	255	249	233	219	212	207	194	180	160	137

Note For thicknesses greater than 63 mm, the values for lower yield or 0.2% proof stress are to be reduced by 1% for each 5 mm increment in thickness up to 100 mm. For thicknesses over 100 mm, the values are to be agreed and verified by test.

Table 3. 4. 9: Mechanical properties for design purposes (*See* 4.7.5): estimated average values for stress to rupture in 100 000 hours (units N/mm^2)

Temperature °C	Grades of steel

	Carbon and carbon-manganese			Low alloy	
	360FG 410FG 460FG	360 410 460	490 490FG 510FG	13CrMo 45	11CrMo 910
380	171	219	227	-	-
390	155	196	203	-	-
400	141	173	179	-	-
410	127	151	157	-	-
420	114	129	136	-	-
430	102	109	117	-	-
440	90	92	100	-	-
450	78	78	85	290	-
460	67	67	73	262	-
470	57	57	63	235	210
480	47	48	55	208	186
490	36	-	47	181	165
500	-	-	-	155	145
510	-	-	-	129	128
520	-	-	-	103	112
530	-	-	-	80	98
540	-	-	-	62	84
550	-	-	-	49	72
560	-	-	-	42	61
570	-	-	-	36	51
580	-	-	-	-	44

PART

2

CHAPTER **3** **Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars**

SECTION **5** **Steels for machinery fabrications**

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 Steel plates, sections or bars intended for use in the construction of major components of welded machinery structures, such as bedplates, crankcases, frames and entablatures, are to comply with one of the following alternatives:

a. Any grade of normal strength structural steel as detailed in Ch 3, 2 Normal strength steels for ship and other structural applications.

b. Any grade of higher tensile structural steel as detailed in Ch 3, 3 Higher strength steels for ship and other structural applications.

c. Any grade of carbon-manganese boiler or pressure vessel steel as detailed in Ch 3, 4 Steels for boilers and pressure vessels, except that for this application batch testing is acceptable. The size of a batch and the number of tensile tests are to be as detailed in Ch 3, 2 Normal strength steels for ship and other structural applications.

5. 1. 2 The minus tolerances for products for machinery structures are to be in accordance with Table 3. 5. 1: Under thickness tolerances.

Table 3. 5. 1: Under thickness tolerances

Nominal thickness, t (mm)	Minus tolerance on nominal thickness (mm)
$3 \leq t < 5$	−0.3
$5 \leq t < 8$	−0.4
$8 \leq t < 15$	−0.5
$15 \leq t < 25$	−0.6
$25 \leq t < 40$	−0.7
$40 \leq t < 80$	−0.9
$80 \leq t < 150$	−1.1
$150 \leq t < 250$	−1.2
$t \geq 250$	−1.3

5. 2 Certification of materials

5. 2. 1 At least two copies of each test certificate are to be provided. They are to be of the type and give the information detailed in Ch 3, 1.13, Certification of materials and, additionally, are to state the specified maximum carbon equivalent. As a minimum, chemical composition is to include the contents of any grain refining elements used and of the residual elements.

PART

2

CHAPTER 3 **Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars**

SECTION 6 **Carbon–manganese and nickel alloy steels for low temperature service**

6. 1 Scope

6. 1. 1 This Section gives specific requirements for carbon-manganese and nickel alloy steels intended for use in the construction of cargo tanks, storage tanks and process pressure vessels for liquefied gases.

6. 1. 2 The requirements of this Section are also applicable for other types of pressure vessels where the use of steels with guaranteed impact properties at low temperatures is required.

6. 1. 3 Provision is made for plates and sections up to 40 mm thick.

6. 1. 4 Steels with alternative chemical compositions or mechanical properties or in a different supply condition may be given special consideration.

6. 2 Manufacture and chemical composition

6. 2. 1 All steels are to be in the killed and fine grain treated condition.

6. 2. 2 The chemical compositions of carbon-manganese steels are to comply with the appropriate requirements for grades AH, DH, EH and FH strength levels 27S, 32, 36 and 40,*See* Table 3. 3. 2: Chemical composition. For the uses defined in Ch 3, 6.1 Scope 6.1.1 and Ch 3, 6.1 Scope 6.1.2, however, these grades are to be designated LT−AH, LT−DH, LT−EH and LT−FH respectively.

6. 2. 3 The chemical compositions of nickel alloy steels are to comply with the appropriate requirements of Table 3. 6. 1: Chemical compositions of nickel alloy steels.

Table 3. 6. 1: Chemical compositions of nickel alloy steels

Grade of steel	C	Si	Mn	Ni	P	S	Residual elements	Aluminium
1 1/2 Ni	0.18 max.	0.10–0.35	0.30– 1.50	1.30– 1.70	0.025 max.	0.020 max.	Cr 0.25 max. Cu 0.35 max. Mo 0.08 max. Total 0.60 max.	Total 0.020% min. Acid soluble 0.015 min.
2 1/4 Ni	0.18 max		0.30 - 0.80	2.10 - 2.50				
3 1/2 Ni	0.15 max.		0.30 – 0.90	3.20– 3.80				
5Ni	0.12 max.			4.70– 5.30				
9Ni	0.10 max.			8.50– 10.0				

6. 2. 4 For plate supplied from coil, the chemical analysis may be transposed from the certificate of the coil manufacture onto the re-processor's certificate.

6. 3 Heat treatment

6. 3. 1 All materials are to be supplied in a condition complying with the requirements given in Table 3. 6. 2: Supply conditions.

Table 3. 6. 2: Supply conditions

Grade	Plates	Sections and bars
LT – AH	N TM	Any
LT – DH		
LT – EH	Normalised (*See* Note)	
LT – FH	T.M.C.P. Quenched and tempered	N TM
$1^1/_2$ Ni	Normalised (*See* Note)	
$2\ ^1/_4$ Ni	Normalised or Normalised and tempered	
$3^1/_2$ Ni	Normalised and tempered	
5Ni	Quenched and tempered	
9Ni	Double normalised and tempered or Quenched and tempered	
Note Where the term 'Normalised' is used it does not include normalising rolling.		

6. 4 Mechanical tests

6. 4. 1 For plates, tensile test specimens are to be taken from both ends of each piece. A piece is to be regarded as the rolled product from a single slab or from a single ingot if this is rolled directly into plates.

6. 4. 2 For strips, tensile test specimens are to be taken from both ends of each coil.

6. 4. 3 Sections and bars are to be presented for acceptance test in batches containing not more than 50 lengths, as supplied. The material in each batch is to be of the same section size, from the same cast and in the same condition of supply. One tensile test specimen is to be taken from material representative of each batch, except that additional tests are to be taken when the mass of a batch exceeds 10 tonnes.

6. 4. 4 One set of three Charpy V-notch impact test specimens is to be taken for each tensile test specimen required.

6. 4. 5 For plates, these impact test specimens are to be cut with the principal axis perpendicular to the final direction of rolling. For sections, the impact test specimens are to be taken longitudinally.

6. 4. 6 The results of all tensile tests are to comply with the appropriate requirements given in Table 3. 6. 3: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes (See Note 1). For carbon–manganese steel grades, the ratio between the yield stress and the tensile strength is not to exceed 0.9 for normalised and TM steels and 0.94 for QT steels.

Table 3. 6. 3: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes (*See* Note 1)

Grade of steel	Yield stress N/mm^2 min.	Tensile strength N/mm^2	Elongation on $5.65\sqrt{S_o}$ % min.	Charpy V-notch impact tests (*See* Note 3)	
				Test temp. °C	Impact energy
LT – AH 27S	265	400 – 530	22	0	Plates – transverse tests Average energy 27 J min Sections and bars – longitudinal tests Average energy 41 J min
LT – AH 32	315	440 – 590	22		
LT – AH 36	355	490 – 620	21		
LT – AH 40	390	510 – 650	20		
LT – DH 27S	265	400 – 530	22	–20	
LT – DH 32	315	440 – 590	22		
LT – DH 36	355	490 – 620	21		
LT – DH 40	390	510 – 650	20		
LT – EH 27S	265	400 – 530	22	–40	
LT – EH 32	315	440 – 590	22		
LT – EH 36	355	490 – 620	21		
LT – EH 40	390	510 – 650	20		
LT – FH 27S	265	400 – 530	22	–60	
LT – FH 32	315	440 – 590	22		
LT – FH 36	355	490 – 620	21		
LT – FH 40	390	510 – 650	20		
1 1/2 Ni	275	490 – 640	22	–65	
2 1/4 Ni	275	490 - 640	21	-70	
3 1/2 Ni	285	450 – 610	21	–95	
5Ni	390	540 – 740	21	–110	
9Ni	490	640 – 790	18	–196	

Note *1.* These requirements are applicable to products not exceeding 40 mm in thickness. The requirements for thicker products are subject to agreement.

Note *2.* The minimum design temperatures at which plates of different thicknesses in the above grades may be used are given in Figure 3. 6. 1: Minimum design temperatures for carbon-manganese grades and Figure 3. 6. 2: Minimum design temperatures for nickel grades. Consideration will be given to the use of thicknesses greater than those in the Tables or to the use of design temperatures below –165°C.

Note *3. See* Ch 3, 1.9 Test material and mechanical tests 1.9.11

6. 4. 7 The average value for the three impact tests is to comply with the appropriate requirements given in Table 3. 6. 3: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes (See Note 1). One individual value may be less than the required value provided that it is not less than 70 per cent of this average value. *See* Ch 2, 1.4, Re-testing procedures for re-test procedures.

6. 4. 8 Where standard subsidiary impact specimens are necessary, *See* Ch 2, 2.3 Procedure for testing at ambient temperature 2.3.4.

6. 4. 9 Where plate is supplied from coil, both the tensile tests and the Charpy V-notch tests are to be taken from the de-coiled plate in accordance with the frequency specified for the Grade as required by this Section.

6. 5 Identification of materials

6. 5. 1 The particulars detailed in Ch 3, 1.12, Identification of materials are to be marked on all materials which have been accepted.

6. 6 Certification of materials

6. 6. 1 At least two copies of each test certificate are to be provided. They are to be of the type and give the information detailed in Ch 3, 1.13, Certification of materials together with general details of the heat treatment. As a minimum, chemical composition is to include the contents of any grain refining elements used and the residual elements as detailed in Table 3. 3. 2: Chemical composition or Table 3. 6. 1: Chemical compositions of nickel alloy steels.

Figure 3. 6. 1: Minimum design temperatures for carbon-manganese grades

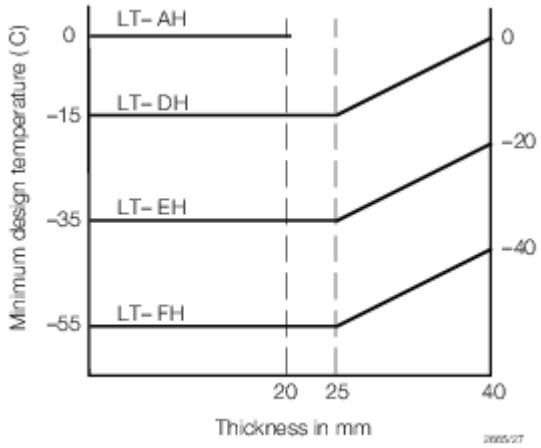
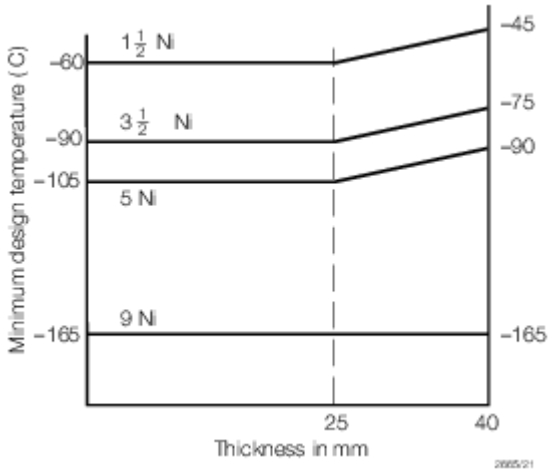


Figure 3. 6. 2: Minimum design temperatures for nickel grades



PART

2

CHAPTER **3** **Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars**

SECTION **7** **Austenitic and duplex stainless steels**

7. 1 Scope

7. 1. 1 Provision is made in this Section for rolled products in austenitic and duplex (austenite plus ferrite) stainless steels intended for use in the construction of cargo tanks, storage tanks and process pressure vessels for chemicals and liquefied gases.

7. 1. 2 Austenitic stainless steels are suitable for applications where the lowest design temperature is not lower than –165°C.

7. 1. 3 Austenitic stainless steels are also suitable for service at elevated temperatures, and for such applications the proposed specification should contain, in addition to the requirements of Ch 3, 7.1 Scope 7.1.6, minimum values for 0.2 and 1.0 per cent proof stresses at the design temperature.

7. 1. 4 Duplex stainless steels are suitable for applications where the lowest design temperature is above 0°C. Any requirement to use duplex stainless steels below 0°C will be subject to special consideration.

7. 1. 5 Duplex stainless steels are also suitable for service at temperatures up to 300°C, and for such applications the proposed specification should include, in addition to the requirements of 7.1.6, a minimum value for 0.2 per cent proof stress at the design temperature.

7. 1. 6 A specification giving details of the chemical composition, heat treatment and mechanical properties, including, for the austenitic grades, both the 0.2 and 1.0 per cent proof stresses, is to be submitted for consideration and approval.

7. 2 Chemical composition

7. 2. 1 The chemical composition of ladle samples is to comply with the requirements given in Table 3. 7. 1: Chemical composition.

7. 2. 2 Consideration will be given to the use of steels whose compositions are outside the scope of Table 3. 7. 1: Chemical composition.

Table 3. 7. 1: Chemical composition

Type and grade of steel	Chemical composition % (*See* Note)									
	C	Si	Mn	P	S	Cr	Ni	Mo	N	Other
Austenitic										
304 L	0.03	1.0	2.0	0.045	0.03	17.0-20.0	8.0-13.0	-	0.10	-
304 LN	0.03	1.0	2.0	0.045	0.03	17.0-20.0	8.0-12.0	-	0.10-0.22	-

316 L		0.03	1.0	2.0	0.045	0.03	16.0-18.5	10.0-15.0	2.0-3.0	0.10	-
316 LN		0.03	1.0	2.0	0.045	0.03	16.0-18.5	10.0-14.5	2.0-3.0	0.10-0.22	-
317 L		0.03	1.0	2.0	0.045	0.03	18.0-20.0	11.0-15.0	3.0-4.0	0.10	-
317 LN		0.03	1.0	2.0	0.045	0.03	18.0-20.0	12.5-15.0	3.0-4.0	0.10-0.22	-
321		0.08	1.0	2.0	0.045	0.03	17.0-19.0	9.0-12.0	-	0.10	5xC≤Ti≤0.7
347		0.08	1.0	2.0	0.045	0.03	17.0-19.0	9.0-13.0	-	0.10	10xC≤Nb≤1.0
Duplex											
UNS	S 31803	0.03	1.0	2.0	0.03	0.02	21.0-23.0	4.5-6.5	2.5-3.5	0.08-0.20	-
UNS	S 32750	0.03	0.80	1.2	0.035	0.02	24.0-26.0	6.0-8.0	3.0-5.0	0.24-0.32	Cu 0.50 max.
Note All figures are a maximum value except where a range is shown.											

7. 3 Heat treatment

7. 3. 1 All materials are to be supplied in the solution treated condition.

7. 4 Mechanical tests

7. 4. 1 Tensile test specimens are to be taken in accordance with the appropriate requirements of Ch 3, 4.4 Mechanical tests and Ch 3, 6.4 Mechanical tests 6.4.1.

7. 4. 2 For the duplex grades, one set of three Charpy V-notch impact test specimens machined from the longitudinal direction for each tensile test is to be tested at –20°C. The average energy value of the three specimens is to be not less than 41 Joules.

7. 4. 3 Unless otherwise agreed, impact tests are not required from the austenitic grades of steel given in this Section.

7. 4. 4 Where standard subsidiary Charpy V-notch test specimens are necessary, *See* Ch 2, 2.3 Procedure for testing at ambient temperature 2.3.4.

7. 4. 5 The results of all tensile tests are to comply with the requirements of Table 3. 7. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes or the approved specification.

7. 5 Metallographic examination for sigma phase

7. 5. 1 The microstructure of duplex stainless steel grades listed in Table 3. 7. 1: Chemical composition are to be examined metallographically at x400 magnification to demonstrate that there is no evidence of sigma phase in the observable area. The frequency of testing shall be one test per heat.

7. 6 Corrosion tests

7. 6. 1 For certain specific applications such as storage tanks for chemicals, it may be necessary to demonstrate that the material used is not susceptible to corrosion resulting from precipitation of deleterious phases.

7. 6. 2 When required, a corrosion test is to be carried out for each tensile test. The material for the corrosion test is to be taken adjacent to that for the tensile test.

7. 6. 3 Unless otherwise agreed or required for a particular chemical cargo, an intergranular corrosion test for austenitic stainless steels and a pitting corrosion test for duplex stainless steels are to be

performed. The testing procedures are given in , *See* Ch 2, 9 Corrosion tests and, for the pitting corrosion test, unless otherwise specified, the test temperatures shall be 20°C for S31803 and 30°C for S32750.

7. 6. 4 Wherever practical, exposed cut edges should be avoided. However, where any such edges are to remain after fabrication is completed it is to be shown by an appropriate test that the corrosion resistance is adequate for the cargoes expected to be encountered.

7. 7 Clad plates

7. 7. 1 Carbon or carbon-manganese steel plates, clad on one or both surfaces with a suitable grade of austenitic or duplex stainless steel, may be used for the construction of cargo or storage tanks for chemicals.

7. 7. 2 The carbon or carbon-manganese steel base plates are to comply with the requirements of Ch 3, 4 Steels for boilers and pressure vessels, and the austenitic cladding material generally with the requirements of this Section.

7. 7. 3 The process of manufacture is to be specially approved and may be either by roll cladding or by explosive bonding.

7. 7. 4 Where the use of clad materials is proposed, the material specification is to be submitted for consideration, together with details of the extent, and the acceptance standards for non-destructive examination.

7. 8 Identification of materials

7. 8. 1 The particulars detailed in Ch 3, 1.12, Identification of materials are to be marked on all materials which have been accepted.

Table 3. 7. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes

Type and grade of steel	0.2% Proof stress (N/mm^2) minimum	1% Proof stress (N/mm^2) minimum	Tensile strength (N/mm^2) minimum	Elongation on $5.65\sqrt{S_o}$% minimum
Austenitic				
304L	170	210	485	40
304LN	205	245	515	40
316L	170	210	485	40
316LN	205	245	515	40
317L	205	245	515	40
317LN	240	280	550	40
321	205	245	515	40
347	205	245	515	40
Duplex				
UNS S 31803	450	–	620	25
UNS S 32750	550	–	795	15

7. 9 Certification of materials

7. 9. 1 At least two copies of each test certificate are to be provided. They are to be of the type and give the information detailed in Ch 3, 1.13, Certification of materials and, where applicable, the results obtained from corrosion tests, and sigma phase assessment. Additionally, the specified maximum carbon equivalent is to be stated. As a minimum, the chemical composition is to include the contents of any grain refining elements used and of the residual elements, as detailed in Table 3. 7. 1: Chemical composition.

PART

2

CHAPTER 3 **Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars**

SECTION 8 **Plates with specified through thickness properties**

8. 1 Scope

8. 1. 1 Provision is made in this Section for 'Z' grade plate and wide flat material with improved ductility in the through thickness or 'Z' direction, *See* Figure 3. 8. 1: Schematic of testing directions.The use of this material is recommended for certain types of welded structures (*See* Ch 3, 1.2 Steel with guaranteed through thickness properties – 'Z' grade steel) in order to minimise the possibility of lamellar tearing either during fabrication or erection.

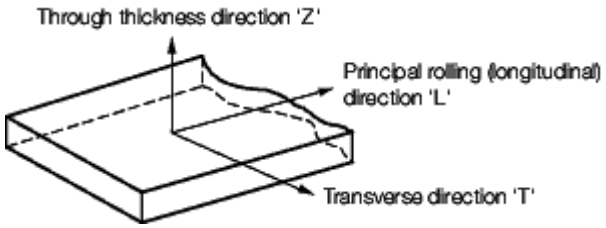
8. 1. 2 Through thickness properties are characterised by specified values for reduction of area in a through thickness tensile test.

8. 1. 3 Provision is made for two grades Z25 and Z35. For normal ship applications the Z25 grade is applicable, whilst the Z35 grade is for more severe applications.

8. 1. 4 This 'Z' grade material is to comply with the requirements of Ch 3, 2 Normal strength steels for ship and other structural applications, Ch 3, 3 Higher strength steels for ship and other structural applications, Ch 3, 4 Steels for boilers and pressure vessels, Ch 3, 5 Steels for machinery fabrications and Ch 3, 6 Carbon–manganese and nickel alloy steels for low temperature service as appropriate, and the additional requirements of this Section.

8. 1. 5 The test procedure detailed in this Section may also be used to demonstrate that no unacceptable amount of banding of any detrimental phase, such as sigma is present, *See* Ch 3, 7.5 Metallographic examination for sigma phase.

Figure 3. 8. 1: Schematic of testing directions



8. 2 Manufacture

8. 2. 1 All plates and wide flats are to be manufactured at works which have been approved by ACS for this quality of material.

8. 2. 2 It is recommended that the steel should be efficiently vacuum de-gassed. The sulphur content is not to exceed 0.008 per cent.

8. 2. 3 Consideration will be given to proposals for alternative methods of improving through thickness properties.

8. 3 Test material

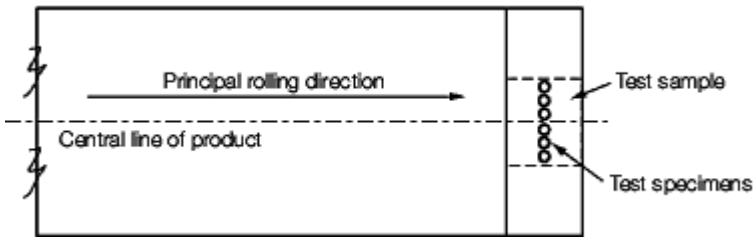
8. 3. 1 Unless otherwise agreed, through thickness tensile tests are only required for plate materials where the thickness exceeds 15 mm for carbon and alloy steels.

8. 3. 2 For plates and wide flats, one test sample is to be taken close to the longitudinal centreline from one end of each rolled piece representing the batch, *See* Table 3. 8. 1: Batch size dependent on product and sulphur content and Figure 3. 8. 2: Plate and wide flat sampling position. The test sample must be large enough to accommodate the preparation of 6 specimens. 3 test specimens are to be prepared while the rest of the sample is to be retained for possible retests. The test specimens shall be located in the mid-thickness region of the plate.

Table 3. 8. 1: Batch size dependent on product and sulphur content

Product	S > 0.005%	S ≤ 0.005%
Plates	Each piece (parent plate)	Maximum 50 t of products of the same cast, thickness and heat treatment
Wide flats of nominal thickness ≤ 25 mm	Maximum 10 t of products of the same cast, thickness and heat treatment	Maximum 50 t of products of the same cast, thickness and heat treatment
Wide flats of nominal thickness > 25 mm	Maximum 20 t of products of the same cast, thickness and heat treatment	Maximum 50 t of products of the same cast, thickness and heat treatment

Figure 3. 8. 2: Plate and wide flat sampling position



8. 3. 3 The dimensions of the test specimens are to be in accordance with Chapter 2, Ch 2, 2.1 Dimensions of test specimens 2.1.14

8. 3. 4 Alternatively, test sampling may be carried out in accordance with an accepted National or International Standard.

8. 4 Mechanical tests

8. 4. 1 The three through thickness tensile test specimens are to be tested at ambient temperature and for acceptance are to give a minimum average reduction of area value of not less than that shown in Table 3. 8. 2: Reduction of area acceptance values. Only one individual value may be below the minimum average, but should not be less than the minimum individual value shown for the appropriate grade.

Table 3. 8. 2: Reduction of area acceptance values

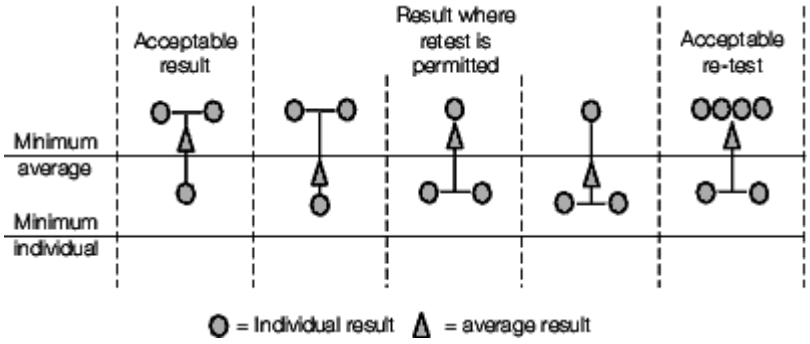
Grade	Z25	Z35
Minimum average	25%	35%
Minimum individual	15%	25%

8. 4. 2 If the average value fails to comply with Ch 3, 8.4 Mechanical tests 8.4.1, three additional tests may be made on specimens from the same test sample. The results of these tests are to be added to those previously obtained to form a new average, which for acceptance is to be not less than 25 per cent for grade Z25 or 35 per cent for grade Z35. No individual results in the re-test shall be below 25 per cent for grade Z25 or 35 per cent for grade Z35, *See* Figure 3. 8. 3: Diagram showing acceptance/rejection and retest criteria.

8. 4. 3 Where batch testing is permitted, and failure after retest occurs, the tested piece is to be rejected. Each remaining piece in the batch may be individually tested and accepted based on satisfactory results.

8. 4. 4 If the fracture of a test specimen occurs in the weld or in the heat affected zone the test is to be regarded as invalid and is to be repeated on a new test specimen.

Figure 3. 8. 3: Diagram showing acceptance/rejection and retest criteria



8. 5 Non-destructive examination

8. 5. 1 All 'Z' grade plates are to be ultrasonically tested in the final supply condition with a probe frequency of 2-5 MHz. The testing is to be performed in accordance with and in compliance with either EN 10160 Level S1/E1 or ASTM A 578 Level C.

8. 6 Identification of materials

8. 6. 1 Products which comply with the requirements of this Section are to have the notation Z25 or Z35 added to the steel grade designation.

8. 7 Certification of materials

8. 7. 1 The following information is required to be included on the certificate in addition to the appropriate steel grade requirements:

a. Through thickness reduction in area (%), individual results and average.
b. Steel grade with Z25 or Z35 notation.

8. 7. 2 Steel grade requirements are to comply with Ch 3, 1 General requirements to Ch 3, 7 Austenitic and duplex stainless steels.

PART

2

CHAPTER 3 Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars

SECTION 9 Bars for welded chain cables

9. 1 Scope

9. 1. 1 Provision is made in this Section for rolled steel bars intended for the manufacture of three Grades (U1, U2 and U3) of stud link chain cable for the anchoring and mooring of ships and five Grades (R3, R3S, R4, R4S and R5) of offshore mooring cable.

9. 1. 2 For the ship grades, U1, U2 and U3, approval will permit the supply of bars of the appropriate grades and size to any chain cable manufacturer.

9. 1. 3 For the offshore grades, R3, R3S, R4, R4S and R5, approval is confined to bar to be supplied to a nominated chain manufacturer and will be given only after successful testing of a completed chain. Separate approvals are required if bar is to be supplied to more than one cable manufacturer. Approval of a higher grade does not cover approval of a lower grade, as all grades must be individually approved. If it is demonstrated to the satisfaction of ACS that the higher and lower grades are produced to the same manufacturing procedure using the same chemistry and heat treatment, consideration will be given to qualification of a lower grade by a higher grade. The parameters applied during qualification are not to be modified during production.

9. 1. 4 For all grades, approval is normally given for diameters of bars no greater than those of the bars used in procedure tests.

9. 2 Manufacture

9. 2. 1 All grades of bar material are to be made from killed steel, and, all grades of bar material except for Grade U1 chain cables are to be fine grained. For Grades R3, R3S, R4, R4S and R5 the austenite grain size is to be 6 or finer, in accordance with ASTM E112 or equivalent grain size index in accordance to ISO 643. Measurements for circular sections are to be taken at one-third of the radius.

9. 2. 2 The bars are to be made to a specification approved by ACS which should include the manufacturing procedure, deoxidation practice, heat treatment and mechanical properties.

9. 2. 3 The rolling reduction ratio of bars for Grades R3, R3S, R4, R4S and R5 must be at least 5:1.

9. 3 Chemical composition

9. 3. 1 For Grades U1, U2 and U3 the chemical composition should be generally within the limits given in Table 3. 9. 1: Chemical composition of killed steel bars.

9. 3. 2 For Grades R3, R3S, R4, R4S and R5 the chemical composition is to comply with an approved specification, *See* Ch 3, 9.2 Manufacture 9.2.2.

9. 3. 3 For Grades R4, R4S and R5 chain cable the steel should contain a minimum of 0.2 per cent molybdenum. The reported composition is to include the contents of antimony, arsenic, tin, copper, nitrogen, aluminium and titanium.

9. 3. 4 For Grades R4S and R5 the steel used must be vacuum degassed.

9. 4 Heat treatment

9. 4. 1 Unless stipulated otherwise, the bars are to be supplied in the as-rolled condition, but the supplier is to be advised by the chain manufacturer of the heat treatment to be used for the completed chain in order that the mechanical test specimens may be tested in the condition of heat treatment used for the chain.

9. 4. 2 For Grades U1 and U2, the samples selected from each batch may be tested either in the as-rolled condition, or after heat treatment where the chain is to be used in the heat treated condition, in full cross-section and in a manner simulating the heat treatment applied to the finished cable.

9. 4. 3 For Grades U3, R3, R3S, R4, R4S and R5 the sample is to be tested after heat treatment as detailed in Ch 3, 9.4 Heat treatment 9.4.2.

Table 3. 9. 1: Chemical composition of killed steel bars

Grade	Chemical composition %												
	C max.	Si	Mn	P max.	S max.	Al	Nb max.	V max.	N max.	Cr max.	Cu max.	Ni max.	Mo max.
U1	0.20	0.15–0.35	0.40 min.	0.04	0.04	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
U2	0.24	0.15–0.55	1.60 max.	0.035	0.035	0.02 min. *See* Note 1	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
U3	0.33	0.15–0.55	1.90 max	0.035	0.035	0.065 max. *See* Note 2	0.05 *See* Note 2	0.10 *See* Note 2	0.015	0.25	0.35	0.40	0.08

Note *1.* Aluminium may be partly replaced by other grain refining elements.

Note *2.* To obtain fine grain steel, at least one of these grain refining elements must be present in sufficient amount.

9. 5 Embrittlement tests

9. 5. 1 For Grades R3, R3S, R4, R4S and R5 the bar manufacturer is to provide evidence that the material is not susceptible to strain ageing or to temper brittleness under the conditions of manufacture of the chain. The results of the relevant tests are to be reported to ACS at the approval stage. Approval will be restricted to the specified steel composition and if later this is altered then re-approval will be required. Temper brittleness testing may be waived if the chain is to be quenched after tempering.

9. 5. 2 Each heat of steel bars of grades R3S, R4, R4S and R5 is to be tested for hydrogen embrittlement (*See* Ch 2, 5.3 Hydrogen embrittlement tests). In the case of continuous casting, test samples representing both the beginning and the end of the heat are to be taken. In the case of ingot casting, test samples representing two different ingots are to be taken.

9. 5. 3 Each sample is to be heat treated in a manner simulating the heat treatment of the finished chain. From each sample two specimens are to be prepared from the mid-diameter of the bar and tested in accordance with Ch 2, 5.3 Hydrogen embrittlement tests.

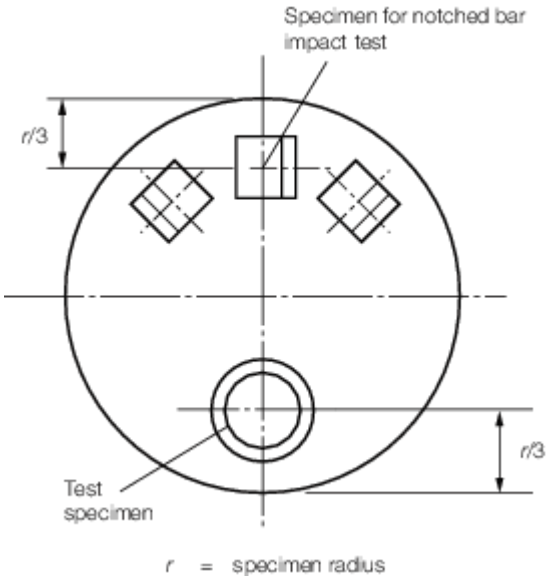
9. 5. 4 The ratio Z_1/Z_2 is to be greater than or equal to 0.85, where Z_1 is the reduction in area without baking and Z_2 the reduction in area after baking.

9. 5. 5 If the requirement is not met, the material is to be subjected to a hydrogen degassing treatment which is subject to approval by ACS. Further tests are to be performed after degassing.

9. 6 Mechanical tests

9. 6. 1 Bars of the same nominal diameter are to be presented for test in batches of 50 tonnes or fraction thereof from the same cast. A suitable length from one bar in each batch is to be selected for test purposes. Test pieces are to be taken from the positions as shown in Figure 3. 9. 1: Sampling of steel bars.

Figure 3. 9. 1: Sampling of steel bars



9. 6. 2 For all grades, one tensile test is to be taken from each sample length selected. Additionally, for Grades U3, R3, R3S, R4, R4S and R5 material, one set of three Charpy V-notch impact test specimens is to be prepared. Impact tests are also required for Grade U2 when the chain is to be supplied in as-welded condition.

9. 6. 3 The results of all tensile and, where applicable, impact tests are to be in accordance with the appropriate requirements of Table 3. 9. 2: Mechanical properties.

Table 3. 9. 2: Mechanical properties

Grade	Yield stress N/mm^2 minimum	Tensile strength N/mm^2	Elongation on $5.65\sqrt{S_o}$% minimum	Reduction of area % minimum	Charpy V-notch impact tests		
					Test temperature °C	Average energy J minimum	Average energy flash weld J minimum
U1	—	370–490	25	—	—	—	—
U2	295	490–690	22	—	0 (*See* Note 1)	27	—
U3	410	690 minimum	17	40	0	60	—

					–20 (*See* Note 2)	35	—
R3	410 (*See* Note 3)	690 minimum (*See* Note 3)	17	50	0	60	50
					–20 (*See* Note 2)	40	30
R3S	490 (*See* Note 3)	770 minimum (*See* Note 3)	15	50	0	65	53
					–20) (*See* Note 2)	45	33
R4	580 (*See* Note 3)	860 minimum (*See* Note 3)	12	50	–20	50	36
Grade R4S (*See* Note 4)	700 (*See* Note 3)	960 minimum (*See* Note 3)	12	50	–20	56	40
Grade R5 (*See* Note 4)	760 (*See* Note 3)	1000 minimum (*See* Note 3)	12	50	–20	58	42

Note *1.* Impact tests may be waived when the chain cable is to be supplied in one of the heat treated conditions given in Table 10. 2. 3: Condition of supply and scope of mechanical tests for finished chain cables and fittings.

Note *2.* Testing may be carried out at either 0°C or –20°C, at the option of ACS.

Note *3.* The ratio of yield strength to tensile strength should be 0.92 maximum unless specially approved.

Note *4.* The aim maximum hardness for R4S is to be HB330, and for R5 is to be HB340.

9. 6. 4 Failure to meet the requirements will result in the rejection of a batch of material, unless it is clearly attributed to improper simulated heat treatment. This is to be confirmed to be to the satisfaction of ACS, and further heat treatment and testing will be required prior to acceptance.

9. 7 Structure and hardenability tests

9. 7. 1 For Grades R4S and R5, the following tests are to be carried out on each heat:

a. Assessment and quantification of the level of non-metallic micro inclusion. These must be acceptable for the final product.

b. Macro etching on a representative sample, in accordance with ASTM E381 or equivalent. This must be free from any injurious segregation or porosity.

c. Jominy hardenability tests in accordance with ASTM A255 or equivalent.

9. 8 Dimensional tolerances

9. 8. 1 The tolerances on diameter and ovality of the bar are to be in accordance with Table 3. 9. 3: Dimensional tolerance of bar stock.

Table 3. 9. 3: Dimensional tolerance of bar stock

Nominal diameter mm	Tolerance on diameter mm	Tolerance on roundness ($d_{max} - d_{min}$) mm
≤20	–0/+1.0	0.60
>20 ≤25	–0/+1.0	0.60
>26 ≤35	–0/+1.2	0.80
>36 ≤50	–0/+1.6	1.10
>51 ≤80	–0/+2.0	1.50
>81 ≤100	–0/+2.6	1.95
>101 ≤120	–0/+3.0	2.25
>121 ≤160	–0/+4.0	3.00
>161 ≤210	–0/+5.0	4.00

9. 9 Non-destructive examination

9. 9. 1 For the grades U1, U2 and U3 all bars are to be free from internal and surface defects that might impair proper workability, use and strength. Subject to agreement by the Surveyor, surface defects may be removed by grinding provided the acceptable tolerances are not exceeded.

9. 9. 2 For the R3, R3S, R4, R4S and R5 grades all bars are to be inspected by a magnetic particle or eddy current method and are also to be subjected to ultrasonic examination.

9. 9. 3 All non-destructive examination is to be carried out in accordance with approved procedures, in accordance with Ch 1, 5 Non-destructive examination.

9. 9. 4 All non-destructive examination operators are to be qualified in the method of non-destructive examination to a minimum of Level II in accordance with a recognised standard.

9. 9. 5 The bars are to be free from pipes, cracks, flakes, and injurious surface defects such as seams, laps, and rolled in mill scale. Longitudinal discontinuities may be removed by blending to a smooth contour provided that their depth is not greater than 1 per cent of the bar diameter, and that the required diameter tolerances are not compromised. The contour radiuses are to be a minimum of four times the excavation depth.

9. 9. 6 The frequency of non-destructive testing may be reduced at the discretion of ACS, provided statistical evidence is available that the required quality is achieved consistently.

9. 10 Identification

9. 10. 1 Each bar is to be identified in accordance with Ch 3, 1.12, Identification of materials and, in addition, is to be marked with the appropriate grade of chain cable.

9. 11 Certification of materials

9. 11. 1 Each consignment of bars is to be accompanied by a certificate of a type and in accordance with Ch 3, 1.13, Certification of materials but with the addition of the grade of chain cable, the rolling reduction ratio, the results of the hydrogen embrittlement, micro inclusion, macro etch and hardenability tests, where required by each grade.

PART

2

CHAPTER **3** **Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars**

SECTION **10** **High strength steels for welded structures**

10. 1 Scope

10. 1. 1 Provision is made in this Section for hot-rolled, fine-grain treated, weldable high strength structural steels intended for use in marine and offshore structural applications. These requirements are not intended to apply to steels for the hull structure of ships.

10. 1. 2 The required notch toughness is designated by subdividing the strength levels into Grades AH, DH, EH and FH.

10. 1. 3 The steels may be supplied in eight strength levels with minimum yield stresses of 420, 460, 500, 550, 620, 690, 890 and 960 N/mm^2 respectively. For yield strength level of 890 and 960 N/mm^2 grade F is not applicable.

10. 1. 4 Steels covered by the scope of these Rules requirements may be supplied either in the normalised (N), normalising rolled (NR), thermomechanically controlled rolled (TM) or quench and tempered (QT) condition.

10. 1. 5 The requirements of this Section are primarily intended to apply to plates, wide flats, sections, bars and seamless tubulars, generally not exceeding the thickness limits given in Table 3. 10. 1: Maximum Thickness Limits. Steels with a thickness beyond the maximum thickness as given in Table 3. 10. 1: Maximum Thickness Limits are to be specially considered by ACS.

Table 3. 10. 1: Maximum Thickness Limits

Steel Grade	Condition of supply	Maximum thickness (mm) (*See* Note 1)			
		Plates	Sections	Bars	Tubulars
AH42, AH46	N	250	50	250	65
DH42, DH46	NR	150	(*See* Note 2)		
EH42, EH46	TM	150	50	-	-
FH42, FH46	QT	150	50	-	50
AH50, AH55, AH62, AH69	TM	150	-	-	-
DH50, DH55, DH62, DH69 EH50, EH55, EH62, DE69	QT	150	-	-	50

FH50, FH55, FH62, FH69					
AH89 DH89	TM	100	-	-	-
EH89	QT	100	-	-	-
AH96 DH96 EH96	QT	50	-	-	-

Note 1. Thicknesses in excess of these limits or those indicated by '-' may be considered for approved applications.

Note 2. The maximum thickness limits of sections and bars produced by the NR process route are generally lower than those applicable when manufactured by the N route and are subject to special consideration by ACS.

10. 2 Manufacture

10. 2. 1 The steel is to be made to a specification approved by ACS which should include the manufacturing procedure, deoxidation practice, heat treatment and mechanical properties.

10. 2. 2 Vacuum degassing treatment shall be applied for all steels with enhanced through thickness properties and for grades with yield strength level of 690, 890 and 960 N/mm^2.

10. 2. 3 The steel is to be supplied in the fully killed and fine grain treated condition as detailed in the approved manufacturing specification.

10. 3 Chemical composition

10. 3. 1 The chemical analysis is to be in accordance with the approved manufacturing specification. All the elements listed in Table 3. 10. 2: Chemical Composition are to be reported.

10. 3. 2 All alloying elements, including residuals, are to be as detailed in the approved manufacturing specification. Where Boron is added, this is not to exceed 0.005 per cent.

10. 3. 3 The steel shall contain nitrogen binding elements as detailed in the approved manufacturing specification.

Table 3. 10. 2: Chemical Composition

	Condition of supply/Steel Grade					
	N/NR		TM		QT	
Chemical Composition	AH42	EH42	AH42	EH42	AH42	EH42 FH42
	DH42	EH46	DH42	FH42	DH42	EH46 FH46
	AH46		AH46	EH46	AH46	EH50 FH50
	DH46		DH46	FH46	DH46	EH55 FH55
			AH50	EH50	AH50	EH62 FH62

			DH50 AH55 DH55 AH62 DH62 AH69 DH69 AH89	FH50 EH55 FH55 EH62 FH62 EH69 FH69 DH89 EH89	DH50 AH55 DH55 AH62 DH62 AH69 DH69 AH89 AH96	EH69 FH69 DH89 EH89 DH96 EH96
Carbon % max	0.20	0.18	0.16	0.14	0.18	
Manganese %	1.0~1.70		1.0~1.70		1.70	
Silicon % max	0.60		0.60		0.80	
Phosphorus % max (*See* Note 1)	0.030	0.025	0.025	0.020	0.025	0.02
Sulphur % max (*See* Note 1)	0.025	0.02	0.015	0.010	0.015	0.010
Aluminium $_{total}$ % min (*See* Note 2)	0.02		0.02		0.018	
Niobium % max (*See* Note 2)	0.05		0.05		0.06	
Vanadium % max (*See* note 3) 0.20	0.20		0.12		0.12	
Titanium % max (*See* Note 3)	0.05		0.05		0.05	
Nickel % max (*See* Note 4)	0.80		2.00 (*See* Note 4)		2.00 (*See* Note 4)	
Copper % max	0.55		0.55		0.50	
Chromium % max (*See* Note 3)	0.30		0.50		1.50	
Molybdenum % max (*See* Note 3)	0.10		0.50		0.70	
Nitrogen % max	0.025		0.025		0.015	
Oxygen ppm max (*See* Note 5)	Not applicable		Not applicable	50	Not applicable	30

Note 1. For sections the P and S content can be 0.005 per cent higher than the value specified in the Table,

Note 2. The total aluminium to nitrogen ratio shall be a minimum of 2:1, When other nitrogen binding elements are used, the minimum Al value and Al/N-ratio do not apply,

Note 3. Total Nb+V+Ti ≤ 0.26 % and Mo+Cr ≤0.65%, not applicable for QT steels,

Note 4. Higher Ni content may be approved at the discretion of ACS,

Note 5. The requirement on maximum Oxygen content is only applicable to DH89; EH89; DH96 and EH96.

10. 3. 4 The carbon equivalent value is to be calculated from the ladle analysis using the formula given below. Maximum values are specified in Table 3. 10. 3: Maximum Ceq, CET and Pcm values.

$$Ceq = c + \frac{Mn}{6} + \frac{Cr + Mo + V}{5} + \frac{Ni + Cu}{15}\ (\%)$$

For steel grades H46 and higher, CET may be used instead of Ceq at the discretion of the manufacturer, and is to be calculated according to the following formula:

$$CET = c + \frac{(Mn + Mo)}{10} + \frac{(Cr + Cu)}{20} + \frac{Ni}{40}\ (\%)$$

For TM and QT steels with carbon content not exceeding 0.12 per cent, the cold cracking susceptibility *Pcm* for evaluating weldability may be used instead of carbon equivalent of *Ceq* or *CET* at the manufacturer's discretion, and is to be calculated using the following formula:

$$Pcm = C + \frac{Si}{30} + \frac{Mn}{20} + \frac{Cu}{20} + \frac{Ni}{60} + \frac{Cr}{20} + \frac{Mo}{15} + \frac{V}{10} + 5B\ (\%)$$

Table 3. 10. 3: Maximum *Ceq*, *CET* and *Pcm* values

Steel yield strength level / Condition of supply	*Ceq* (%)						*CET* (%)	*Pcm* (%)
	Plates			Sections	Bars	Tubulars	all	all
	t≤50 (mm)	50<t≤100 (mm)	100<t≤250 (mm)	t≤50 (mm)	t≤250 or d≤250 (mm)	t≤65 (mm)	all	all
H42N/NR	0.46	0.48	0.52	0.47	0.53	0.47	N/A	
H42TM	0.43	0.45	0.47	0.44	N/A	N/A		
H42QT	0.45	0.47	0.49	N/A	N/A	0.46		
H46N/NR	0.50	0.52	0.54	0.51	0.55	0.51	0.25	
H46TM	0.45	0.47	0.48	0.46	N/A	N/A	0.30	0.23
H46QT	0.47	0.48	0.50	N/A	N/A	0.48	0.32	0.24
H50TM	0.46	0.48	0.50	N/A		N/A	0.32	0.24
H50QT	0.48	0.50	0.54	N/A		0.50	0.34	0.25
H55TM	0.48	0.50	0.54	N/A		N/A	0.34	0.25
H55QT	0.56	0.60	0.64	N/A		0.56	0.36	0.28
H62TM	0.50	0.52	N/A	N/A		N/A	0.34	0.26
H62QT	0.56	0.60	0.64	N/A		0.58	0.38	0.30
H69TM	0.56	N/A		N/A	N/A	0.36	0.30	0.33
H69QT	0.64	0.66	0.70	N/A		0.68	0.40	
H89TM	0.60	N/A		N/A	N/A	0.38	0.30	N/A
H89QT	0.68	0.75	N/A	N/A		N/A	0.40	
H96QT	0.75	N/A				N/A	0.40	N/A
Note N/A = Not applicable								

10. 4 Mechanical tests

10. 4. 1 For steels in the normalising rolled (NR) or thermomechanically controlled rolled (TM) conditions, one tensile test is to be made for each batch of 25 tonnes or fraction thereof. Additional tests are to be made for every variation of 10 mm in the thickness or diameter of products from the same cast. One set of three Charpy V-notch impact tests specimens are to be taken from each piece. A piece is to be regarded as the rolled product from a single slab or billet, or from a single ingot if this is rolled directly into plates. Charpy V-notch impact test specimens from plates and flats with a finished width more than 600 mm are to have their axes transverse to the main rolling direction.

10. 4. 2 For normalised (N) and quenched and tempered (QT) plates, one tensile test piece and a set of three Charpy V-notch impact test specimens are to be taken from each plate as heat treated. Charpy V-notch impact test specimens from quenched and tempered plates and flats with a finished width more than 600 mm are to have their axes transverse to the main rolling direction.

10. 4. 3 For sections, bars and tubulars, one tensile test piece and one set of three Charpy V-notch impact test specimens are to be taken from each batch of 25 tonnes or fraction thereof. Additional tests are to be made for every variation of 10 mm in the thickness or diameter of products from the same cast. For sections, the thickness to be considered is the thickness of the product at the point at which samples are taken for mechanical tests. A piece is to be regarded as the rolled product from a single slab or billet, or from a single ingot if this is rolled directly into sections, bars or tubulars.

10. 4. 4 For material with a thickness in excess of 50 mm, impact tests shall be taken at the quarter thickness (t/4) location and additionally at mid-thickness (t/2) location. As an alternative to a full thickness or a sub-sized flat tensile specimen, the specimens are to be located at a position lying at a distance of t/4 from the surface and additionally at t/2 for thickness above 100 mm or as near as possible to these positions.

10. 4. 5 For steels designated with improved through thickness properties, through thickness tensile tests are to be performed in accordance with the requirement of Ch 3, 8 Plates with specified through thickness properties. Through-thickness tensile strength is required to be not less than 80 % of the specified minimum tensile strength.

10. 4. 6 The results of the tests are to comply with the appropriate requirements of Table 3. 10. 4: Mechanical properties for acceptance purpose.

Table 3. 10. 4: Mechanical properties for acceptance purpose

Steel grade	Yield Stress N/mm² min (*See* Notes 1 and 2)				Tensile Strength N/mm²				Elongation on $5.65\sqrt{S_o}$ %min (*See* Note 3)		Charpy V-notch impact test	
	Nominal thickness (mm)										Average energy J Minimum	
	≥3≤50	>50≤100	>100≤150	>150≤250	≥3≤50	>50≤ 100	>100≤150	>150≤250	T	L	T	L
AH42 DH42 EH42 FH42	420	390	365	365	520~680	520~680	470~650	470~650	19	21	28	42

AH46 DH46 EH46 FH46	460	430	390	390	540~720	540~720	500~710	500~710	17	19	31	46
AH50 DH50 EH50 FH50	500	480	440	-	590~770	590~770	540~720	-	17	19	33	50
AH55 DH55 EH55 FH55	550	530	490	-	640~820	640~820	590~770	-	16	18	37	55
AH62 DH62 EH62 FH62	620	580	560	-	700~890	700~890	650~830	-	15	17	41	62
AH69 DH69 EH69 FH69	690	650	630	-	770~940	770~940	710~900	-	14	16	46	69
AH89 DH89 EH89	890	830	-	-	940~1100	940~1100	-	-	11	13	46	69
AH96 DH96 EH96	960	-	-		980~1150	-	-	-	10	12	46	69

Symbols

T = Transverse

L = Longitudinal

Impact tests are to be made on the various grades at the following temperatures:

- AH grades 0°C
- DH grades -20°C
- EH grades -40°C
- FH grades -60°C

Note 1. For tensile test either the upper yield stress (ReH) or where ReH cannot be determined, the 0.2 per cent proof stress (Rp0.2) is to be determined.

Note 2. The ratio of actual yield strength to tensile strength shall not exceed 0.94. A higher yield strength to tensile strength ratio may be acceptable on a project specific basis, subject to special consideration.

Note 3. For full thickness flat test specimens with a width of 25 mm and a gauge length of 200 mm the elongation is to comply with the minimum values shown in Table 3. 10. 5: Elongation minimum values for a width of 25 mm and a 200 mm gauge length.

Table 3. 10. 5: Elongation minimum values for a width of 25 mm and a 200 mm gauge length

Thickness (mm) (*See* Note 1)		≤10	>10 ≤15	>15 ≤20	>20 ≤25	>25 ≤40	>40 ≤50	>50 ≤70
Elongation (%)	Strength levels							
	H42	11	13	14	15	16	17	18
	H46	11	12	13	14	15	16	17
	H50	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
	H55	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
	H62	9	11	12	12	13	14	15
	H69 (*See* note 2)	9	10	11	11	12	13	14
	H89 H96	*See* Note 3						

Note 1. The tabulated elongation minimum values are the requirements for testing specimen in transversed direction.

Note 2. Re-test can be carried out on the standards proportional test specimen witha gauge length of $L_0=5.65\sqrt{S_0}$ to meet the requirement of Table 3. 10. 4: Mechanical properties for acceptance purpose when the elongation does not meeting the requirement in this table. *See* Ch 2, 2.4 Equivalent elongations.

Note 3. Steel with strength level of 89 and 96 shall be tested by proportional specimens witha gauge length of $L_0=5.65\sqrt{S_0}$.

10. 5 Identification of materials

10. 5. 1 The particulars detailed in Ch 3, 1.12, Identification of materials are to be marked on each piece which has been accepted and, for ease of recognition, are to be encircled or otherwise marked with paint.

10. 6 Certification of materials

10. 6. 1 At least two copies of each test certificate are to be provided. They are to be of the type and give the information detailed in Ch 3, 1.13, Certification of materials and, additionally, are to state the specified maximum *Ceq*, *CET* or *Pcm*. As a minimum, chemical composition is to include the contents of any grain refining elements used and of the residual elements as detailed in Table 3. 10. 2: Chemical Composition.

PART

2

CHAPTER **4 Steel Castings**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General requirements**		**346**
	1. 1	Scope	346
	1. 2	Manufacture	346
	1. 3	Quality of castings	346
	1. 4	Chemical composition	347
	1. 5	Heat treatment	347
	1. 6	Test material and test specimens	347
	1. 7	Visual and non-destructive examination	348
	1. 8	Pressure testing	349
	1. 9	Rectification and dressing of castings	349
	1. 10	Identification of castings	350
	1. 11	Certification of materials	351
SECTION 2	**Castings for ship and other structural applications**		**352**
	2. 1	Scope	352
	2. 2	Chemical composition	352
	2. 3	Heat treatment	353
	2. 4	Mechanical tests	353
	2. 5	Non-destructive examination	354
	2. 6	Acceptance levels for NDE of castings	357
SECTION 3	**Castings for machinery construction**		**360**
	3. 1	Scope	360
	3. 2	Chemical composition	360
	3. 3	Heat treatment	361
	3. 4	Mechanical tests	361
	3. 5	Non-destructive examination	362
SECTION 4	**Castings for crankshafts**		**363**

4. 1 Scope 363
4. 2 Manufacture 363
4. 3 Chemical composition 363
4. 4 Heat treatment 364
4. 5 Mechanical tests 364
4. 6 Non-destructive examination 364
4. 7 Rectification of defective castings 365
SECTION 5 Castings for propellers 369
5. 1 Scope 369
5. 2 Chemical composition 369
5. 3 Heat treatment 370
5. 4 Mechanical tests 370
5. 5 Non-destructive examination 370
5. 6 Rectification of defective castings 371
5. 7 Identification 371
5. 8 Certification of materials 371
SECTION 6 Castings for boilers, pressure vessels and piping systems 373
6. 1 Scope 373
6. 2 Chemical composition 373
6. 3 Heat treatment 373
6. 4 Mechanical tests 373
6. 5 Non-destructive examination 375
6. 6 Mechanical properties for design purposes 375
SECTION 7 Ferritic steel castings for low temperature service 377
7. 1 Scope 377
7. 2 Chemical composition 377
7. 3 Heat treatment 377
7. 4 Mechanical tests 378
7. 5 Non-destructive examination 378
SECTION 8 Stainless steel castings 379
8. 1 Scope 379
8. 2 Chemical composition 379
8. 3 Heat treatment 379
8. 4 Mechanical tests 379
8. 5 Corrosion tests 381
8. 6 Non-destructive examination 381

SECTION 9 Steel castings for container corner fittings 382
9. 1 General 382
9. 2 Chemical composition 382
9. 3 Heat treatment 382
9. 4 Mechanical tests 382
9. 5 Non-destructive examination 383
9. 6 Repair of defects 383
9. 7 Identification 384
9. 8 Certification of materials 384

PART

2

CHAPTER **4 Steel Castings**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 4. 2. 1: Chemical composition 352

Table 4. 2. 2: Acceptance criteria for surface inspection evaluation 358

Table 4. 2. 3: Ultrasonic acceptance criteria for marine steel castings 358

Table 4. 3. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon and carbon-manganese steel castings for machinery construction 361

Table 4. 4. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon - manganese steel castings for crankshafts 364

Table 4. 5. 1: Typical chemical composition for steel propeller castings 369

Table 4. 5. 2: Typical mechanical properties for steel propeller castings 370

Table 4. 6. 1: Chemical composition of steel castings for boilers, pressure vessels and piping systems 374

Table 4. 6. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: steel castings for boilers, pressure vessels and piping systems 374

Table 4. 6. 3: Mechanical properties for design purposes (*See* 6.6.1) 374

Table 4. 6. 4: Mechanical properties for design purposes (*See* 6.6.3): estimated average stresses to rupture in 100000 hours (N/mm^2) 375

Table 4. 7. 1: Chemical composition of ferritic steel castings for low temperature service 377

Table 4. 7. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: ferritic steel castings for low temperature service 378

Table 4. 8. 1: Chemical composition of stainless steel castings 379

Table 4. 8. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: austenitic stainless steel castings 380

Table 4. 9. 1: Chemical composition of steel castings for container corner fittings 383

PART

2

CHAPTER **4 Steel Castings**

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 4. 2. 1: Extent of non-destructive evaluation for stern frame castings 354
Figure 4. 2. 2: Extent of non-destructive evaluation for rudder stock castings 355
Figure 4. 2. 3: Extent of non-destructive evaluation for stern boss castings 355
Figure 4. 2. 4: Extent of non-destructive evaluation for rudder hanging castings 356
Figure 4. 2. 5: Extent of non-destructive evaluation for rudder (upper part) castings 356
Figure 4. 2. 6: Extent of non-destructive evaluation for rudder (lower part) castings 357
Figure 4. 4. 1: Magnetic particle inspection acceptance levels 365
Figure 4. 4. 2: Ultrasonic examination acceptance levels 367
Figure 4. 4. 3: Areas of semi-built crankthrows to which weld repairs are not permitted 367

PART

2

CHAPTER **4** **Steel Castings**

SECTION **1** **General requirements**

1. 1 Scope

1. 1. 1 This Section gives the general requirements for steel castings intended for use in the construction of ships, other marine structures, machinery, boilers, pressure vessels and piping systems.

1. 1. 2 Where required by the relevant Rules dealing with design and construction, castings are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with Ch 1 General Requirements and Ch 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials, together with the general requirements given in this Section and the appropriate specific requirements given in Sections Ch 4, 2 Castings for ship and other structural applications to Ch 4, 9 Steel castings for container corner fittings.

1. 1. 3 As an alternative to Ch 4, 1.1 Scope 1.1.2, castings which comply with National or proprietary specifications may be accepted provided that these specifications give reasonable equivalence to the requirements of this Chapter or alternatively are approved for a specific application. Generally, survey and certification are to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of Ch 1 General Requirements.

1. 1. 4 Where small castings are produced in large quantities, or where castings of the same type are produced in regular quantities, alternative survey procedures, in accordance with Ch 1, 2.4 Materials Quality Scheme, may be adopted.

1. 2 Manufacture

1. 2. 1 Castings are to be made at foundries approved by ACS. The steel used is to be manufactured by a process approved by Asia Classification Society (hereinafter referred as 'ACS').

1. 2. 2 All flame cutting, scarfing or arc-air gouging to remove surplus metal is to be undertaken in accordance with recognised good practice and is to be carried out before the final heat treatment. Preheating is to be employed where necessitated by the chemical composition and/or thickness of the casting. The affected areas are to be either machined or ground smooth for a depth of about 2 mm unless it has been shown that the material has not been damaged by the cutting process. Special examination will be required to find any cracking in way of the cut surfaces.

1. 2. 3 Where two or more castings are joined by welding to form a composite item, details of the proposed welding procedure are to be submitted for approval. Welding approval procedure tests will be required, *See also* the requirements of Ch 4, 1.9, Rectification and dressing of castings.

1. 3 Quality of castings

1. 3. 1 All castings are to be free from surface or internal defects which would be prejudicial to their proper application in service. The surface finish is to be in accordance with good practice and any specific requirements of the approved specification.

1. 3. 2 The surfaces are not to be hammered, peened or treated in any way which may obscure defects.

1. 3. 3 The locations of all chaplets are to be noted and to be subject to close visual inspection (and when necessary ultrasonic examination) to ensure complete fusion.

1. 4 Chemical composition

1. 4. 1 All castings are to be made from killed steel. The chemical composition of the ladle sample is to be within the limits given in the relevant Section of this Chapter. Where general overall limits are specified, the chemical composition is to be appropriate for the type of steel, dimensions and required mechanical properties of the castings.

1. 4. 2 Except where otherwise specified, suitable grain refining elements may be used at the discretion of the manufacturer. The content of such elements is to be reported in the ladle analysis.

1. 5 Heat treatment

1. 5. 1 All castings are to be heat treated in accordance with the requirements given in the relevant Section of this Chapter.

1. 5. 2 Heat treatment is to be carried out in a properly constructed furnace which is efficiently maintained and has adequate means of temperature control. The furnace dimensions are to be such as to allow the steel castings to be uniformly heated to the necessary temperature. Sufficient thermocouples are to be connected to the steel castings to show that their temperature is adequately uniform and the temperatures are to be recorded throughout the heat treatment. Alternative procedures are to be approved by ACS, Materials and NDE department. Copies of these records are to be presented to the Surveyor together with a sketch showing the positions at which the temperature measurements were carried out. The records are to identify the furnace that was used and give details of the individual steel castings, the heat treatment temperature and time at temperature and the date. The Surveyor is to examine the charts and confirm the details on the certificate. In the case of very large components which require heat treatment, alternative methods will be specially considered.

1. 5. 3 If a casting is locally reheated, or any straightening operation is performed after the final heat treatment, a subsequent stress relieving heat treatment may be required in order to avoid the possibility of harmful residual stresses.

1. 6 Test material and test specimens

1. 6. 1 Test material sufficient for the tests specified in Sections Ch 4, 2 Castings for ship and other structural applications to Ch 4, 9 Steel castings for container corner fittings and for possible re-test purposes is to be provided for each casting. The test samples are to be either integrally cast or gated to the casting and are to have a thickness of not less than 30 mm.

1. 6. 2 The test samples are not to be detached from the casting until the heat treatment specified in Ch 4, 1.5 Heat treatment 1.5.1 has been completed and they have been properly identified.

1. 6. 3 As an alternative to Ch 4, 1.6 Test material and test specimens 1.6.1 and Ch 4, 1.6 Test material and test specimens 1.6.2, where a number of small castings of about the same size, each of which is under 1000 kg in mass, are made from one cast and heat treated in the same furnace charge, a batch testing procedure may be adopted, using separately cast test samples of suitable dimensions. The test samples are to be properly identified and heat treated together with the castings which they represent. At least one test sample is to be provided for each batch of castings.

1. 6. 4 The test specimens are to be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Ch 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials. Tensile test specimens are to have a cross-sectional area of not less than 150 mm^2.

1. 6. 5 Re-test procedures are to be in accordance with Ch 2, 1.4, Re-testing procedures.

1. 7 Visual and non-destructive examination

1. 7. 1 This Section gives the general requirements for non-destructive examination of steel castings. As an alternative, castings may be examined in accordance with a National Specification, provided it gives reasonable equivalence to these Rules.

1. 7. 2 All castings are to be cleaned and adequately prepared for inspection. Suitable methods include pickling, caustic cleaning, wire brushing, local grinding, shot or sand blasting.

1. 7. 3 The surfaces are not to be hammered, peened or treated in any way which may obscure defects.

1. 7. 4 Unless otherwise agreed, the accuracy and verification of dimensions are the responsibility of the manufacturer.

1. 7. 5 All castings are to be presented to the Surveyor for visual examination. Where applicable, this is to include the examination of internal surfaces. Castings are to be subject to magnetic particle examination or dye penetrant inspection (for austenitic stainless steel castings, *See* Ch 4, 8 Stainless steel castings) in accordance with Ch 4, 1.7 Visual and non-destructive examination 1.7.9, unless more specific requirements for non-destructive examination are included in subsequent Sections of this Chapter, other parts of the Rules or the agreed specification.

1. 7. 6 Where specified or required by the Rules non-destructive examination is to be carried out before acceptance. All tests are to be in accordance with the requirements of Ch 1, 5 Non-destructive examination.

1. 7. 7 The manufacturer is to provide the Surveyor with a signed report confirming that non-destructive examination has been carried out and that such inspection has not revealed any significant defects.

1. 7. 8 Where magnetic particle examination is specified or required, this is to be carried out using a suspension of magnetic particles in a suitable fluid. The dry powder method is not acceptable for the final inspection. Prods are not permitted on finished machined surfaces.

1. 7. 9 Where required, magnetic particle or dye penetrant testing is to be carried out by the manufacturer whenever appropriate and also when the castings are in the finished condition. The tests are to be made in the presence of the Surveyor unless otherwise specially agreed. The castings are to be examined in the following areas:

a. At all accessible fillets and changes of section.
b. At positions where surplus metal has been removed by flame cutting, scarfing or arc-air gouging.
c. In way of fabrication weld preparations, for a distance not less than 50 mm from the edge.
d. In way of welds.
e. In way of chaplets.
f. At other positions agreed with the Surveyor to include areas which may be subjected to high stress in service.

1. 7. 10 Where required by subsequent Sections or by the agreed specification, ultrasonic examination is to be carried out by the manufacturer, but Surveyors may request to be present in order to verify that the examination is carried out in accordance with the agreed procedure. This examination is to be carried out in the following areas:

a. At positions which may be subjected to high stresses in service, as agreed with the Surveyor.
b. In way of fabrication weld preparations, for a distance not less than 50 mm from the edge.
c. At positions where subsequent machining may expose filamentary shrinkage or other defects (e.g. bolt holes, bearing bores).
d. In way of welding.
e. In way of riser positions.

f. At positions where experience shows that significant internal defects may occur: these are to be agreed between the manufacturer and the Surveyor.

1. 7. 11 Radiographic examination, where required, is to be carried out by the manufacturer in areas generally as indicated for ultrasonic examination in Ch 4, 1.7 Visual and non-destructive examination 1.7.10. All radiographs are to be submitted to the Surveyor for examination and acceptance. The radiographic technique and acceptance standards are to be to the satisfaction of the Surveyor and in accordance with any requirements of the approved specification.

1. 7. 12 In the event of any casting proving to be defective during subsequent machining or testing it is to be rejected notwithstanding any previous certification.

1. 7. 13 The general acceptance criteria given in Ch 4, 2.6, Acceptance levels for NDE of castings are to be applied where no specific acceptance criteria are stated in the subsequent Sections of this Chapter.

1. 8 Pressure testing

1. 8. 1 Where required by the relevant Rules, castings are to be pressure tested in the final machined condition before final acceptance. These tests are to be carried out in the presence of the Surveyors and are to be to their satisfaction.

1. 9 Rectification and dressing of castings

1. 9. 1 When unacceptable defects are found in a casting, these are to be removed by machining or chipping. Flame-scarfing or arc-air gouging may also be used provided that preheating is employed when necessary and that the surfaces of the resulting excavation are subsequently ground smooth. Complete elimination of the defective material is to be proven by adequate non-destructive examination. Shallow grooves or excavations resulting from the removal of defects may, at the discretion of the Surveyor, be accepted provided that they will cause no appreciable reduction in the strength of the castings and that they are suitably blended by grinding. Complete elimination of the defective material is to be verified by magnetic particle or dye penetrant testing.

1. 9. 2 Where flame scarfing or arc-air gouging is used, the requirements detailed in Ch 4, 1.2 Manufacture 1.2.2 are to apply.

1. 9. 3 Grinding wheels for use on austenitic stainless steels are to be of an iron-free type and shall have been used only on stainless steels.

1. 9. 4 All proposals to repair a defective casting by welding are to be submitted to the Surveyor before this work is commenced. The Surveyor is to satisfy himself that the number, position and size of the defects are such that the casting can be effectively repaired.

1. 9. 5 A statement and/or sketch detailing the extent and position of all welds is to be prepared by the manufacturer. Copies of these sketches are to be submitted to ACS.

1. 9. 6 All welding is to be carried out by an approved welder and in accordance with an approved welding procedure which includes the features referred to in Ch 4, 1.9 Rectification and dressing of castings 1.9.6 to Ch 4, 1.9 Rectification and dressing of castings 1.9.13.

1. 9. 7 Where welding is required, a grain refining heat treatment is to be given to the whole casting prior to carrying out welding unless agreed otherwise with the Surveyor. Grain refining heat treatment requires heating above the upper critical temperature.

1. 9. 8 Any excavations are to be of suitable shape to allow good access for welding and, after final preparation for welding, are to be re-examined by suitable non-destructive testing methods to ensure that all defective material has been eliminated.

1. 9. 9 All castings in alloy steels other than austenitic and duplex stainless steels are to be suitably preheated prior to welding. Castings in carbon-manganese steels may also be required to be

preheated, depending on their chemical composition, the dimensions, configuration and positions of the welds.

1. 9. 10 Welding is to be carried out under cover, in positions free from draughts and adverse weather conditions. As far as possible, all welding is to be carried out in the downhand (flat) position.

1. 9. 11 The welding consumables used are to be of an appropriate composition, giving a weld deposit with mechanical properties similar and in no way inferior to those of the parent castings. The use of low hydrogen type welding consumables is preferred. Welding procedure tests are to be carried out by the manufacturer to demonstrate that satisfactory mechanical properties can be obtained after heat treatment as detailed in Ch 4, 1.9 Rectification and dressing of castings 1.9.12, and the results of these tests are to be presented to the Surveyor.

1. 9. 12 After welding is completed, the castings are to be given the heat treatment specified in Ch 4, 2 Castings for ship and other structural applications to Ch 4, 9 Steel castings for container corner fittings, or a stress relieving heat treatment at a temperature of not less than 550°C. The type of heat treatment required will be dependent on the chemical composition of the casting and the dimensions, positions and nature of the repairs.

1. 9. 13 Special consideration may be given to a local stress relieving heat treatment where both the welded area is small and machining of the casting has reached an advanced stage, but prior agreement is to be obtained from ACS in writing. The welding procedure is to be such that residual stresses are minimised.

1. 9. 14 On completion of heat treatment, all welds and adjacent material are to be ground smooth and examined by magnetic particle, or liquid penetrant testing, ultrasonic or radiographic examination. The Surveyor is to attend at these inspections, to witness the results of magnetic particle or liquid penetrant examination and to examine any radiographs. Satisfactory results are to be obtained from all forms of non-destructive examination used. The acceptance criteria for the NDE of welds are to be in accordance with subsequent Sections of this Chapter or where these do not exist, Table 13. 2. 5: Acceptance criteria for visual testing, magnetic particle and liquid penetrant testing to Table 13. 2. 7: Acceptance criteria for ultrasonic testing, as appropriate.

1. 9. 15 Where no welding has been made on a casting, the manufacturer is to provide the Surveyor with a written statement that this is the case.

1. 9. 16 The foundry is to maintain full records detailing the weld procedure, heat treatment and the extent and location of all welds made to each casting. These records are to be available for review by the Surveyor, and copies of individual records are to be supplied to the Surveyor on request.

1. 9. 17 For rectification of defective steel castings for crankshafts, *See* Ch 4, 4.7, Rectification of defective castings.

1. 10 Identification of castings

1. 10. 1 The manufacturer is to adopt a system of identification, which will enable all finished castings to be traced to the original cast, and the Surveyor is to be given full facilities to trace the castings when required.

1. 10. 2 Before acceptance, all castings which have been tested and inspected with satisfactory results are to be clearly marked by the manufacturer with the following particulars:

a. Identification number, cast number or other marking which will enable the full history of the casting to be traced.
b. Manufacturer’s name or trade mark.
c. ACS or Asia Classification Society and the abbreviated name of ACS's local office.
d. Personal stamp of Surveyor responsible for inspection.
e. Test pressure, where applicable.
f. Date of final inspection.

1. 10. 3 Where small castings are manufactured in large numbers, modified arrangements for identification may be specially agreed with the Surveyor.

1. 11 Certification of materials

1. 11. 1 A ACS certificate is to be issued, *See* Ch 1, 3.1, General.

1. 11. 2 The manufacturer is to provide the Surveyor with a written statement giving the following particulars for each casting or batch of castings which has been accepted:

a. Purchaser's name and order number.
b. Description of castings and steel grade.
c. Identification number.
d. Steel-making process, cast number, chemical analysis of ladle samples and, in the case of the Special grade (*See* Ch 4, 2 Castings for ship and other structural applications), the chemical analysis of the product or test bar.
e. General details of heat treatment including the temperature and time at temperature.
f. Results of mechanical tests.
g. Test pressure, where applicable.

1. 11. 3 Where applicable, the manufacturer is to provide a signed report regarding non-destructive examination as required by Ch 4, 1.7 Visual and non-destructive examination 1.7.7 together with a statement and/or a sketch detailing the extent and position of all weld repairs made to each casting as required by Ch 4, 1.9 Rectification and dressing of castings 1.9.5 or the statement detailed in Ch 4, 1.9 Rectification and dressing of castings 1.9.15.

PART

2

CHAPTER 4 **Steel Castings**

SECTION 2 **Castings for ship and other structural applications**

2. 1 Scope

2. 1. 1 The requirements for carbon-manganese steel castings, intended for ship and other structural applications where the design and acceptance tests are related to mechanical properties at ambient temperature, are given in this Section.

2. 1. 2 Provision is made for two quality grades, Normal and Special.

2. 1. 3 Where it is proposed to use carbon-manganese steels of higher specified minimum tensile strength than required by Ch 4, 2.4 Mechanical tests 2.4.3, or alloy steels, particulars of the chemical composition, mechanical properties and heat treatment are to be submitted for approval.

2. 2 Chemical composition

2. 2. 1 The chemical composition of ladle samples is to comply with Table 4. 2. 1: Chemical composition.

Table 4. 2. 1: Chemical composition

Quality grade	Normal	Special (*See* Note 3)
Carbon	0.23% max.	0.23% max.
Silicon	0.60% max.	0.60% max.
Manganese	0.70 – 1.60%	0.70 – 1.60%
Sulphur	0.040% max.	0.035% max.
Phosphorus	0.040% max.	0.035% max.
Aluminium -(acid soluble)	–	0.015 – 0.080% (*See* Notes 1 and 2)
Residual elements:		
Copper	0.30% max.	0.30% max.
Chromium	0.30% max.	0.30% max.
Nickel	0.40% max.	0.40% max.
Molybdenum	0.15% max.	0.15% max.

Total	0.80% max.	0.80% max.

Note *1.* The total aluminium content may be determined instead of the acid soluble content, in which case the total aluminium content is to be 0.020 – 0.10%.

Note *2.* Grain refining elements other than aluminium may be used subject to special agreement with ACS.

Note *3.* For the Special grade, the nitrogen content is to be determined.

2. 2. 2 For the Special grade, the product of the aluminium and nitrogen contents is to comply with the following formula:

$$(\%\mathrm{Al}_{\mathrm{acid\ sol}} \times \%\mathrm{N})10^5 \leq 60$$

2. 2. 3 For the Special grade, a check chemical analysis on the product or a test bar is mandatory. The check analysis on the product or test bar is to comply with the requirements of Table 4. 2. 1: Chemical composition.

2. 3 Heat treatment

2. 3. 1 Castings are to be supplied:

a. fully annealed; or
b. normalised; or
c. normalised and tempered at a temperature of not less than 550°C; or
d. quenched and tempered at a temperature of not less than 550°C.

2. 3. 2 For larger castings where a coarser microstructure may be present in heavier thickness, a double austenising heat treatment may be required to ensure adequate grain refinement. A coarse microstructure will be indicated by an increased attenuation of approximately 30 dB/m at 2 MHz during ultrasonic examination.

2. 3. 3 Following weld repair and or the attachment of handling brackets, all castings are to be subject to post weld heat treatment at a temperature of not less than 550°C before delivery.

2. 4 Mechanical tests

2. 4. 1 At least one tensile test is to be made on material representing each casting or batch of castings.

2. 4. 2 Where the casting is of complex design, or where the finished mass exceeds 10 tonnes, two test samples are to be provided. Where large castings are made from two or more casts which are not mixed in a ladle prior to pouring, two or more test samples are required corresponding to the number of casts involved. These are to be integrally cast at locations as widely separated as possible.

2. 4. 3 The results of these tests are to comply with the following requirements:

Yield stress	200 N/mm^2 min.
Tensile strength	400 N/mm^2 min.
Elongation on $5.65\sqrt{S_0}$	25% min.
Reduction of area	40% min.

2. 4. 4 A set of three Charpy V-notch impact test specimens is to be provided with each casting in the Special grade. These may be taken from a small extension of the thickest part of the casting or from a block cast integrally with the casting and having dimensions representative of the largest

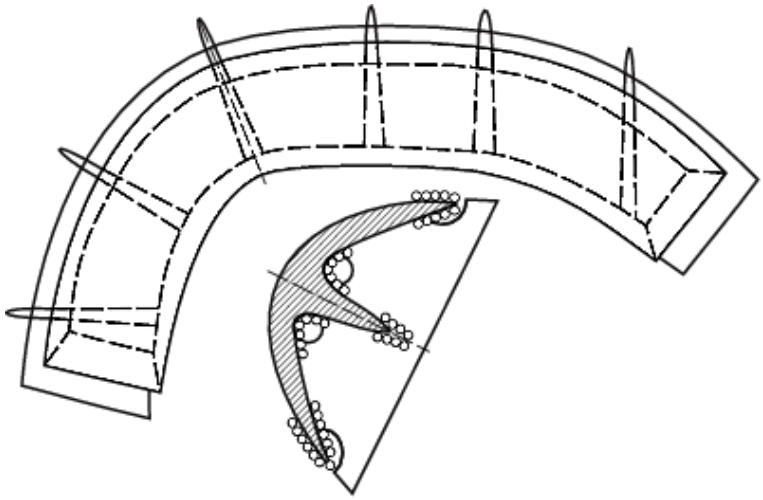
section thickness of the casting. These are to be tested in accordance with Ch 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials and are to have an average energy of not less than 27J at 0°C.

2. 5 Non-destructive examination

2. 5. 1 Castings used in ship construction for the sternframe, rudder and propeller shaft supports are to be examined by ultrasonic and magnetic particle methods in accordance with Ch 4, 1.7, Visual and non-destructive examination. The type and extent of non-destructive examination of castings for other structural applications are to be specially agreed by the Surveyor.

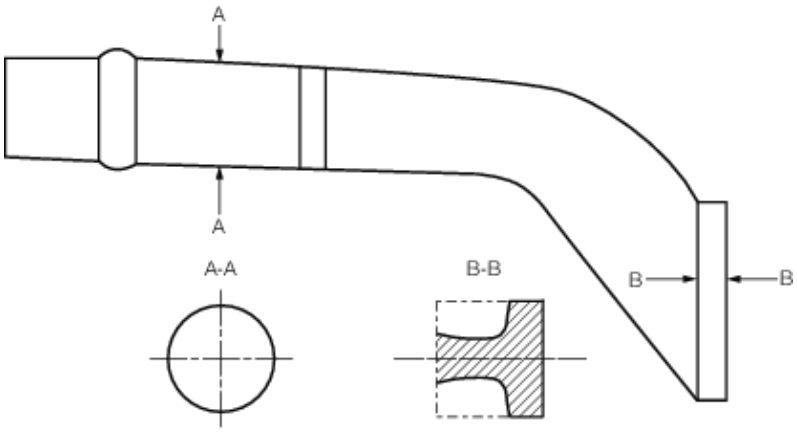
2. 5. 2 The extent and methods of non-destructive examination to be applied to typical hull steel castings are shown in Figure 4. 2. 1: Extent of non-destructive evaluation for stern frame castings to Figure 4. 2. 6: Extent of non-destructive evaluation for rudder (lower part) castings in addition to the areas specified in Ch 4, 1.7 Visual and non-destructive examination 1.7.9 and Ch 4, 1.7 Visual and non-destructive examination 1.7.10.

Figure 4. 2. 1: Extent of non-destructive evaluation for stern frame castings



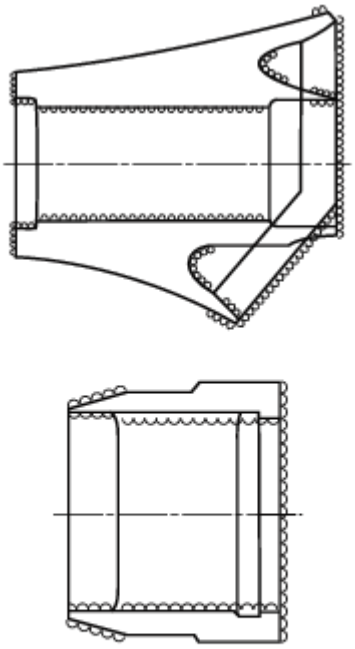
Location of non-destructive examination
1. All surfaces: Visual examination
2. Location indicated with (ooo): Magnetic particle and Ultrasonic testing

Figure 4. 2. 2: Extent of non-destructive evaluation for rudder stock castings



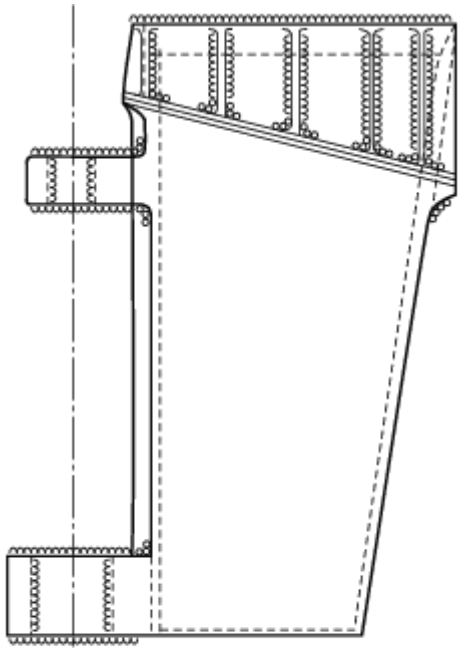
Location of non-destructive examination
All surfaces: Visual examination
Magnetic particle and ultrasonic testing

Figure 4. 2. 3: Extent of non-destructive evaluation for stern boss castings



Location of non-destructive examination
1. All surfaces: Visual examination
2. Location indicated with (ooo): Magnetic particle and ultrasonic testing
3. Location indicated with (~~~): Ultrasonic testing

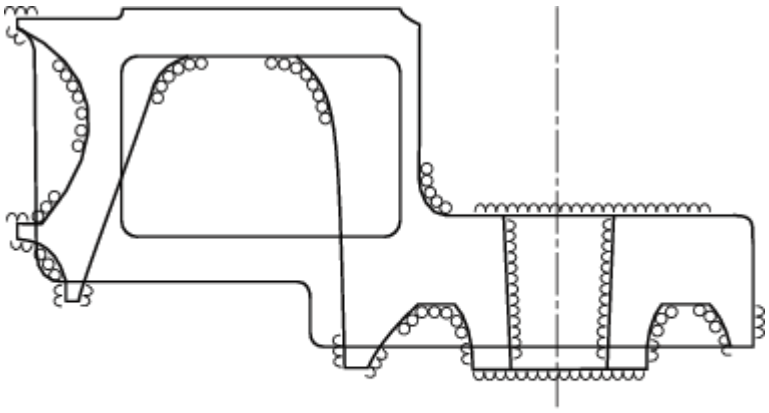
Figure 4. 2. 4: Extent of non-destructive evaluation for rudder hanging castings



Location of non-destructive examination

1.	All surfaces:	Visual examination
2.	Location indicated with (OOO):	Magnetic particle and Ultrasonic testing
3.	Location indicated with (⌒):	Ultrasonic testing

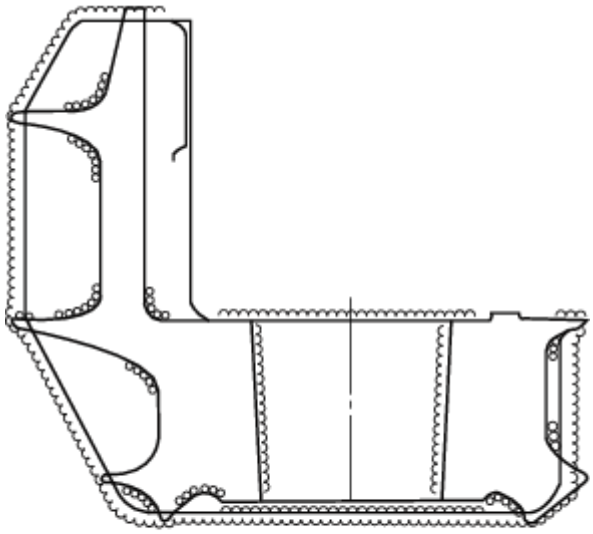
Figure 4. 2. 5: Extent of non-destructive evaluation for rudder (upper part) castings



Location of non-destructive examination

1.	All surfaces:	Visual examination
2.	Location indicated with (OOO):	Magnetic particle and Ultrasonic testing
3.	Location indicated with (⌒):	Ultrasonic testing

Figure 4. 2. 6: Extent of non-destructive evaluation for rudder (lower part) castings



Location of non-destructive examination

1.	All surfaces:	Visual examination
2.	Location indicated with (ooo):	Magnetic particle and Ultrasonic testing
3.	Location indicated with (~~~):	Ultrasonic testing

2. 5. 3 Acceptance levels for Visual Inspection are to be taken as follows:

a. No cracks or hot tears are permitted.
b. Castings are to be free of other injurious indications to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.
c. Additional magnetic particle, dye penetrant or ultrasonic testing may be required for a more detailed evaluation of surface irregularities at the request of the Surveyor. These examinations are in addition to those required by Ch 4, 2.6, Acceptance levels for NDE of castings.

2. 6 Acceptance levels for NDE of castings

2. 6. 1 The following definitions apply to indications associated with magnetic particle and dye penetrant inspection:

a. **Linear indication**. An indication in which the length is at least three times the width.
b. Non-linear indication. An indication of circular or elliptical shape with a length less than three times the width.
c. **Aligned indication**. Three or more indications in a line, separated by 2 mm or less edge-to-edge.
d. **Open indication**. An indication visible after removal of the magnetic particles or that can be detected by the use of contrast dye penetrant.
e. **Non-open indication**. An indication that is not visually detectable after removal of the magnetic particles or that cannot be detected by the use of contrast dye penetrant.
f. **Relevant indication**. An indication that is caused by a condition or type of discontinuity that requires evaluation. Only indications which have any dimension greater than 1.5 mm are to be considered relevant.

2. 6. 2 For the purpose of evaluating indications, the surface is to be divided into reference band length of 150 mm for level MT1/PT1 and into reference areas of 225 cm^2 for level MT2/PT2. The band length and/or area is to be taken in the most unfavourable location relative to the indications being evaluated.

2. 6. 3 The following quality levels recommended for magnetic particle testing (MT) and/or dye penetrant testing (PT) are;

a. Level MT1/PT1 – fabrication weld preparation areas.
b. Level MT2/PT2 – other locations indicated on Figure 4. 2. 1: Extent of non-destructive evaluation for stern frame castings to Figure 4. 2. 6: Extent of non-destructive evaluation for rudder (lower part) castings.

The acceptance criteria are shown in Table 4. 2. 2: Acceptance criteria for surface inspection evaluation. Cracks and hot tears are not acceptable.

2. 6. 4 Acceptance criteria for ultrasonic testing are shown in Table 4. 2. 3: Ultrasonic acceptance criteria for marine steel castings as UT1 and UT2. Discontinuities within the examined zones interpreted to be cracks or hot tears are not acceptable.

Table 4. 2. 2: Acceptance criteria for surface inspection evaluation

Quality level	Maximum number of indication	Type of indication	Maximum number each type	Maximum dimension of single indication, mm (*See* Note 2)
MT1/PT1	4 in 150 mm length	Non-linear Linear Aligned	4, *See* Note 1 4, *See* Note 1 4, *See* Note 1	5 3 3
MT2/PT2	20 in 22500 mm^2 area	Non-Linear Linear Aligned	10 6 6	7 5 5
Note *1.* Minimum of 30 mm between relevant indications. **Note** *2.* In weld repairs, the maximum dimension is 2 mm.				

Table 4. 2. 3: Ultrasonic acceptance criteria for marine steel castings

Quality level	Allowable disc shape according to the Distance-Gain Size (DGS), mm	Maximum number of indications to be registered, *See* Note 1	Allowable length of linear indications, mm, *See* Note 2
UT1	>6	0	0
UT2	12–15 >15	5 0	50 0
Note *1.* Grouped in an area measuring 300 x 300 mm. **Note** *2.* Measured on the scanning surface.			

2. 6. 5 Level UT1 is applicable to the following:

a. Fabrication weld preparations for a distance of 50 mm.
b. 50 mm depth from the final machined surface including boltholes.
c. Fillet radii to a depth of 50 mm and within a distance of 50 mm from the radius end.
d. Castings subject to cyclic bending stresses, e.g. rudder horn, rudder castings and rudder stocks, the outer one third of thickness in the zones shown in Figure 4. 2. 1: Extent of non-destructive evaluation for stern frame castings to Figure 4. 2. 6: Extent of non-destructive evaluation for rudder (lower part) castings.

2. 6. 6 Level UT2 is applicable to the following:

a. For locations which are not specified in Ch 4, 2.6 Acceptance levels for NDE of castings 2.6.5, nominated for ultrasonic testing in Figure 4. 2. 1: Extent of non-destructive evaluation for stern frame castings to Figure 4. 2. 6: Extent of non-destructive evaluation for rudder (lower part) castings or on the inspection plan.

b. Positions outside locations nominated for level UT1 examination where feeders and gates have been removed.

c. Castings subject to cyclic bending stresses, at the central one third of thickness in the zones shown in Figure 4. 2. 1: Extent of non-destructive evaluation for stern frame castings to Figure 4. 2. 6: Extent of non-destructive evaluation for rudder (lower part) castings.

2. 6. 7 Ultrasonic acceptance criteria for casting areas not nominated in Figure 4. 2. 1: Extent of non-destructive evaluation for stern frame castings to Figure 4. 2. 6: Extent of non-destructive evaluation for rudder (lower part) castings will be subject to special consideration based on the anticipated stress levels and the type, size and position of the discontinuity.

2. 6. 8 Parts which are welded are to be examined by the same method as at the initial inspection as well as by additional methods as required by the Surveyor.

PART

2

CHAPTER **4** **Steel Castings**

SECTION **3** **Castings for machinery construction**

3. 1 Scope

3. 1. 1 This Section gives the material requirements for carbon-manganese steel castings intended for use in machinery construction and which are not within the scope of Ch 4, 4 Castings for crankshafts to Ch 4, 7 Ferritic steel castings for low temperature service.

3. 1. 2 Where it is proposed to use steels of higher carbon content than is indicated in Ch 4, 3.2 Chemical composition 3.2.1, or alloy steels, particulars of the chemical composition, mechanical properties and heat treatment are to be submitted for approval.

3. 1. 3 The manufacture or repair of cast steel connecting rods is not permitted, except where the manufacturing and quality control procedures have been approved by ACS. For approval purposes, tests are to be carried out at the place of manufacture using the proposed process to demonstrate that the castings are sound. Tests are to be carried out to confirm that the appropriate mechanical properties are attained within the casting, including areas where weld repairs have been performed. Any changes to manufacturing, repair and quality control procedures are to be submitted to ACS for approval, *See also* Ch 1, 2.2, ACS Approval – General.

3. 2 Chemical composition

3. 2. 1 The chemical composition of ladle samples is to comply with the following limits, except as specified in Ch 4, 3.2 Chemical composition 3.2.2:

Carbon	0.40% max.
Silicon	0.60% max.
Manganese	0.50-1.60%
Sulphur	0.040% max.
Phosphorus	0.040% max.
Residual elements:	
Copper	0.30% max.
Chromium	0.30% max.
Nickel	0.40% max.
Molybdenum	0.15% max.
	Total 0.80% max.

3. 2. 2 Castings which are intended for parts of a welded fabrication are to be of weldable quality with a carbon content generally not exceeding 0.23 per cent.

3. 2. 3 Proposals to use steels with higher carbon content, or alloy steels, for welded construction will be subject to special consideration.

3. 3 Heat treatment

3. 3. 1 Castings are to be supplied:

a. fully annealed; or
b. normalised; or
c. normalised and tempered at a temperature of not less than 550°C; or
d. quenched and tempered at a temperature of not less than 550°C.

3. 3. 2 Engine bedplate castings, turbine castings and any other castings where dimensional stability and freedom from internal stresses are important, are to be given a stress relief heat treatment. This is to be at a temperature not lower than 550°C, followed by furnace cooling to 300°C or lower. Alternatively, full annealing may be used provided that the castings are furnace cooled to 300°C or lower.

3. 4 Mechanical tests

3. 4. 1 At least one tensile test is to be made on material representing each casting or batch of castings.

3. 4. 2 Where the casting is of complex design, or where the finished mass exceeds 10 tonnes, two test samples are to be provided. Where large castings are made from two or more casts which are not mixed in a ladle prior to pouring, two or more test samples are required corresponding to the number of casts involved. The test samples are to be integrally cast at locations as widely separated as possible.

3. 4. 3 Table 4. 3. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon and carbon-manganese steel castings for machinery construction gives the minimum requirements for yield stress, elongation and reduction of area corresponding to different strength levels, but it is not intended that these should necessarily be regarded as specific grades. Intermediate levels of minimum tensile strength may be specified, in which case minimum values for yield stress, elongation and reduction of area may be obtained by interpolation.

Table 4. 3. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon and carbon-manganese steel castings for machinery construction

Tensile strength N/mm^2	Yield stress N/mm^2 minimum	Elongation on $5.65\sqrt{S_0}$ % minimum	Reduction of area % minimum
400 – 550	200	25	40
440 – 590	220	22	30
480 – 630	240	20	27
520 – 670	260	18	25
560 – 710	300	15	20
600 – 750	320	13	20

3. 4. 4 Castings may be supplied to any specified minimum tensile strength selected within the general limits detailed in Table 4. 3. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon and carbon-manganese steel castings for machinery construction.

3. 4. 5 The results of all tensile tests are to comply with the requirements of Table 4. 3. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon and carbon-manganese steel castings for machinery construction appropriate to the specified minimum tensile strength.

3. 4. 6 For alloy steel castings and carbon-manganese steel castings containing more than 0.40 per cent carbon, the results of all mechanical tests are to comply with an approved specification.

3. 4. 7 When a casting, or a batch of castings, has failed to meet the mechanical test requirements, it may be re-heat treated and re-submitted for acceptance tests but this may not be carried out more than twice, *See* Ch 1, 4.6 Re-test procedures.

3. 5 Non-destructive examination

3. 5. 1 All piston crowns and cylinder heads are to be examined by ultrasonic testing unless otherwise agreed with ACS. Piston crowns intended for engines having a bore size larger than 400 mm and cylinder heads intended for engines having a bore size larger than 300 mm are additionally to be examined by magnetic particle or penetrant testing in accordance with Ch 4, 1.7, Visual and non-destructive examination.

3. 5. 2 Engine bedplate and transverse girder castings are to be examined by ultrasonic and magnetic particle or penetrant testing in accordance with Ch 4, 1.7, Visual and non-destructive examination.

3. 5. 3 Turbine castings are to be examined by magnetic particle or dye penetrant testing in accordance with Ch 4, 1.7, Visual and non-destructive examination. In addition, an ultrasonic or radiographic examination is to be made in way of fabrication weld preparations.

3. 5. 4 Other castings are to be examined by non-destructive methods where specified.

PART

2

CHAPTER **4** **Steel Castings**

SECTION **4** **Castings for crankshafts**

4. 1 Scope

4. 1. 1 This Section gives the requirements for carbon and carbon-manganese steel castings for semi-built crankshafts.

4. 1. 2 Where it is proposed to use steels of higher carbon content than is indicated in Ch 4, 4.3 Chemical composition 4.3.1, or alloy steels, particulars of the chemical composition, mechanical properties and heat treatment are to be submitted for approval. For alloy steels, the specified minimum tensile strength is not to exceed 700 N/mm^2.

4. 2 Manufacture

4. 2. 1 The method of producing combined web and pin castings is to be approved. For this purpose, tests to demonstrate the soundness of the casting and the properties at important locations may be required.

4. 3 Chemical composition

4. 3. 1 The chemical composition of ladle samples is to comply with the following limits:

Carbon	0.40% max. (but *See* Ch 4, 4.7 Rectification of defective castings 4.7.4.c)
Silicon	0.60% max.
Manganese	0.50-1.60%
Sulphur	0.040% max.
Phosphorus	0.040% max.
Residual elements:	
Copper	0.30% max.
Chromium	0.30% max.
Nickel	0.40% max.
Molybdenum	0.15% max.
	Total 0.80% max.

4. 4 Heat treatment

4. 4. 1 Castings are to be supplied either:

a. fully annealed and cooled in the furnace to a temperature of 300°C or lower; or

b. normalised and tempered at a temperature of not less than 550°C, and cooled in the furnace to a temperature of 300°C or lower.

4. 5 Mechanical tests

4. 5. 1 Proposals for the number of tests and the location of test material on the casting are to be submitted by the manufacturer.

4. 5. 2 Not less than one tensile test and three impact tests are to be made on material representing each casting. The impact tests are to be carried out at ambient temperature.

4. 5. 3 Table 4. 4. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon - manganese steel castings for crankshafts gives the minimum requirements for yield stress and elongation corresponding to different strength levels, and it is not intended that these should necessarily be regarded as specific grades. The strength levels have been given in multiples of 40 N/mm^2 to facilitate interpolation for intermediate values of specified minimum tensile strength.

4. 5. 4 Castings may be supplied to any specified minimum tensile strength selected within the general limits detailed in Table 4. 4. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon - manganese steel castings for crankshafts.

4. 5. 5 The results of all tests are to comply with the requirements of Table 4. 4. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon - manganese steel castings for crankshafts appropriate to the specified minimum tensile strength. For the impact tests, one individual value may be less than the required average value provided that it is not less than 70 per cent of this average value. *See* Ch 1, 4.6 Re-test procedures for re-test procedures.

Table 4. 4. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon - manganese steel castings for crankshafts

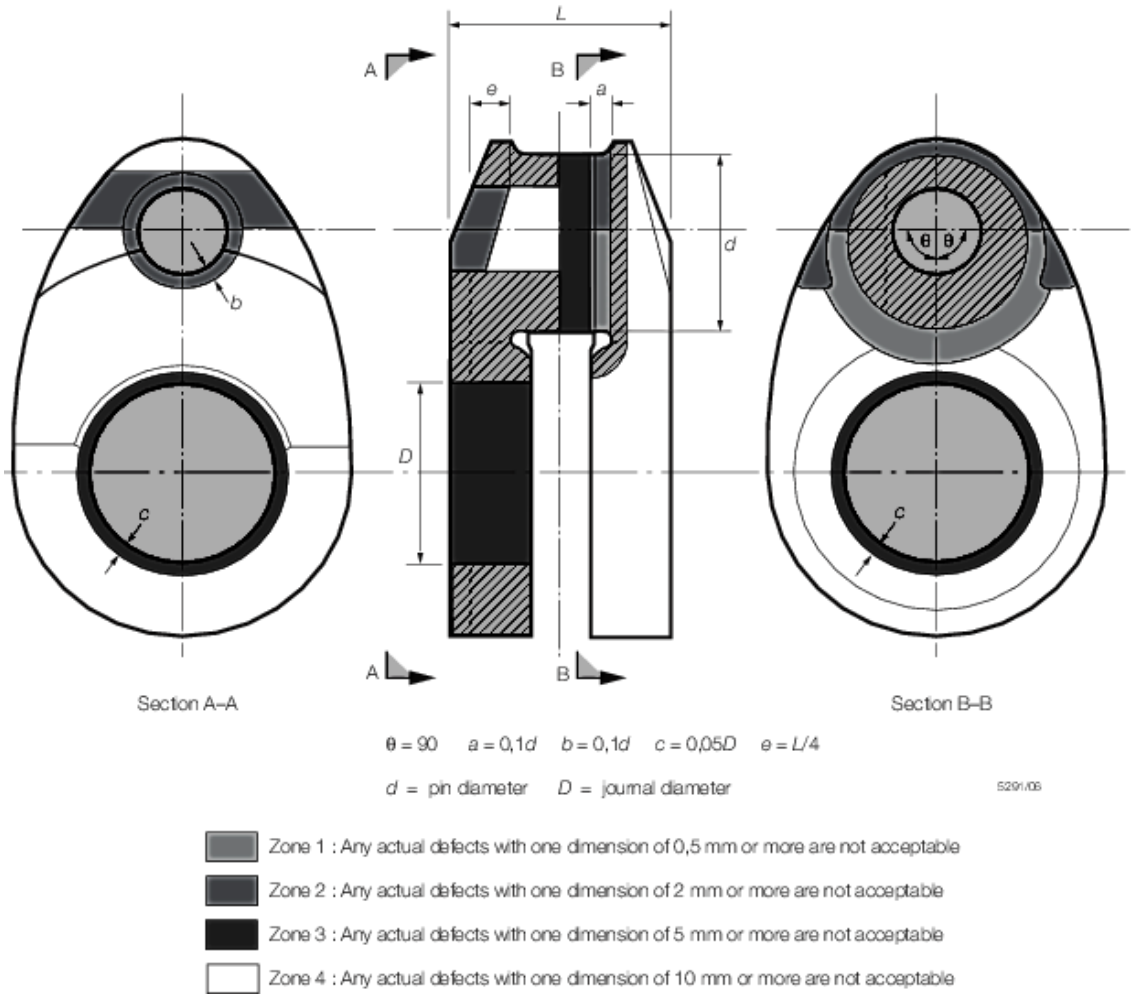
Tensile strength N/mm^2	Yield stress N/mm^2 minimum	Elongation on $5.65\sqrt{S_0}$% minimum	Reduction of area % minimum	Charpy V-notch impact tests average energy J minimum(*See* Note)
400 – 550	200	28	45	32
440 – 590	220	26	45	28
480 – 630	240	24	40	25
520 – 670	260	22	40	20
550 – 700	275	20	35	18

Note Impact tests are to be made at ambient temperature.

4. 6 Non-destructive examination

4. 6. 1 Magnetic particle examination is to be carried out over all surfaces in accordance with Figure 4. 4. 1: Magnetic particle inspection acceptance levels.

Figure 4. 4. 1: Magnetic particle inspection acceptance levels



4. 6. 2 Each casting is to be examined by ultrasonic testing, and the extent of examination and defect acceptance criteria, using the DGS (Distance Gain Size) technique, are to be as shown in Figure 4. 4. 2: Ultrasonic examination acceptance levels. Alternative ultrasonic procedures may be submitted for approval.

4. 7 Rectification of defective castings

4. 7. 1 The requirements of Ch 4, 1.9, Rectification and dressing of castings apply, except where amended by this Section.

4. 7. 2 Where castings have shallow surface defects, consideration is first to be given to removing such defects by grinding and blending or by machining the surface where there is excess metal on the Rule dimension.

4. 7. 3 Subject to prior agreement and submission of the detailed welding procedure for approval by ACS, welding may be carried out prior to the final austenitising heat treatment.

4. 7. 4 Approval for welding will not be given in the following circumstances:

a. For the rectification of repetitive defects caused by improper foundry technique or practice.
b. For the building up by welding of surfaces or large shallow depressions.
c. Where the carbon content of the steel exceeds 0.30 per cent.
d. Where the carbon equivalent of the steel, given by

$$C + \frac{Mn}{6} + \frac{Cr + Mo + V}{5} + \frac{Ni + Cu}{15} \; exceeds \; 0.65 \; per \; cent$$

4. 7. 5 Provided that the Surveyors are satisfied that welding is justified, they may also authorise welding to the surfaces of crankwebs, following the final austenitising heat treatment, within the following limits:

a. In general, the volume of the largest groove which is to be welded is not to exceed $3.2t$ cm^3, where t is the web axial thickness, in cm. The total volume of all grooves which are to be welded is not to exceed $9.6t$ cm^3 per crankweb.

b. The welds do not extend within the cross-hatched zones marked on Figure 4. 4. 3: Areas of semi-built crankthrows to which weld repairs are not permitted for semi-built crankthrows.

c. Larger welds on balance weights may be permitted at the discretion of the Surveyor, provided that such repairs are wholly contained within the balance weight and do not affect the strength of the crankweb.

4. 7. 6 Subsequent to the final austenitising heat treatment, welding may be authorised in the surface of the bore for the journal (or pin) within the following limits:

a. In general, the welds are to be not less than 125 mm apart.

b. The welds are not to be located within circumferential bands of $\frac{t}{5}$ from the edges of the bores, nor at any position within the inner 120° arc of the bores, as cross-hatched on Figure 4. 4. 3: Areas of semi-built crankthrows to which weld repairs are not permitted.

c. The volume of the largest weld is to be not more than $1.1t$ cm^3, where t is the web axial thickness at the bore, in cm, and not more than three welds are to be made in any one bore surface.

Figure 4. 4. 2: Ultrasonic examination acceptance levels

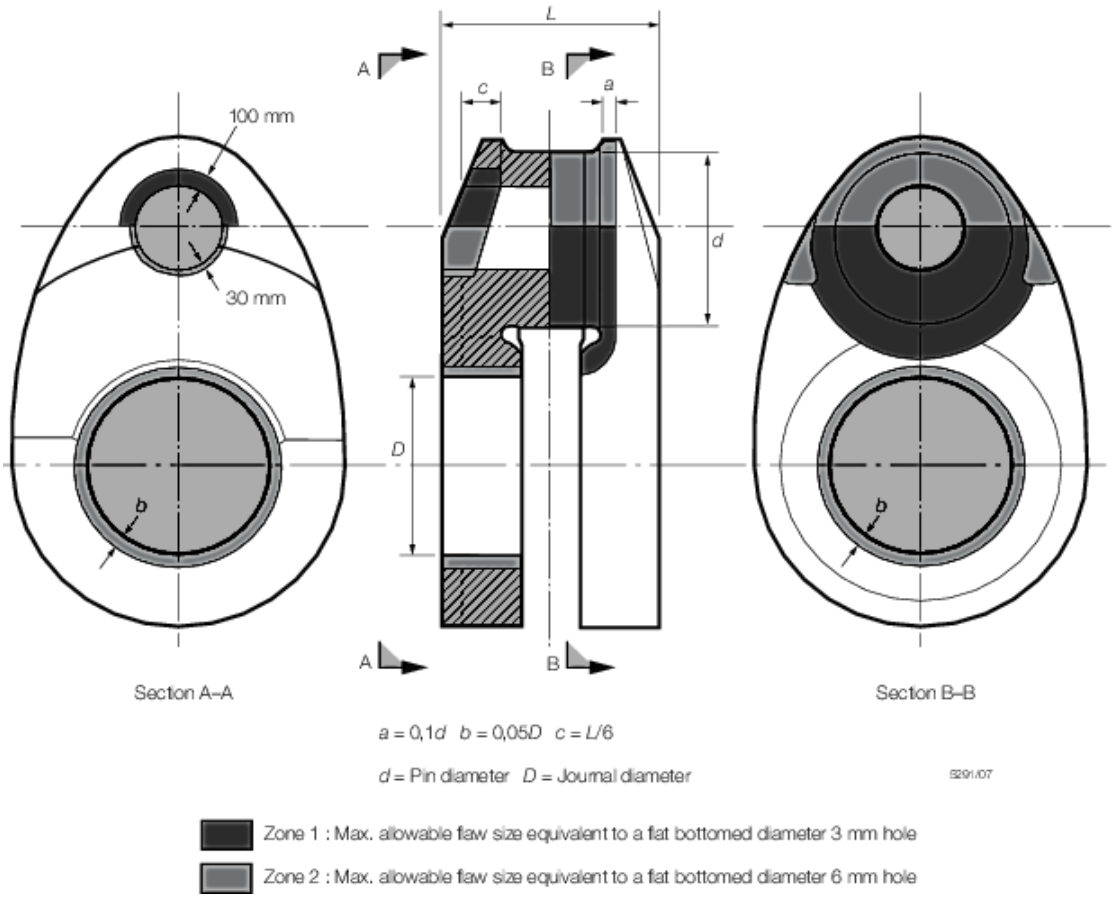
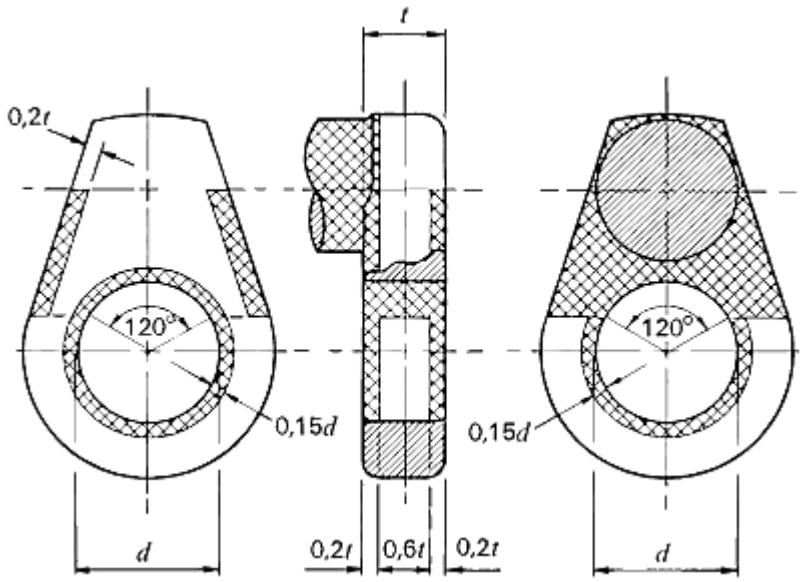


Figure 4. 4. 3: Areas of semi-built crankthrows to which weld repairs are not permitted



4. 7. 7 After all defective material has been removed from a region, and this has been proven in the presence of the Surveyor by magnetic particle inspection or other suitable method, the excavation is to be suitably shaped to allow good access for welding.

4. 7. 8 At the discretion of the Surveyor, the size of a groove may be increased beyond the limiting sizes given in Ch 4, 4.7 Rectification of defective castings 4.7.5 or Ch 4, 4.7 Rectification of defective castings 4.7.6, if the removal of further metal will facilitate welding.

4. 7. 9 Welding is to be carried out by approved welders using approved procedures. The welds are to be made by an electric arc process using low hydrogen type consumables which will produce a deposited metal that is not inferior in properties to the parent metal.

4. 7. 10 All castings are to be given a preliminary refining heat treatment prior to the commencement of welding. Before welding, the material is to be preheated in accordance with the qualified procedure. Where possible, preheating is to be carried out in a furnace. The preheat temperature is to be maintained until welding is completed, and preferably until the casting is placed in the furnace for post-weld heat treatment.

4. 7. 11 Where welding is carried out after the final austenitising heat treatments, a post-weld stress relieving heat treatment is to be applied at a temperature of not less than 600°C, *See also* Ch 4, 1.5 Heat treatment 1.5.2.

4. 7. 12 Welds are to be dressed smooth by grinding. The surfaces of the welds and adjacent parent steel are to be proven by magnetic particle and, where appropriate, ultrasonic inspection, *See* Ch 4, 1.9 Rectification and dressing of castings 1.9.14 and Ch 4, 1.9 Rectification and dressing of castings 1.9.15.

PART

2

CHAPTER **4** **Steel Castings**

SECTION **5** **Castings for propellers**

5. 1 Scope

5. 1. 1 This Section gives the requirements for steel castings for one-piece propellers and separately cast blades and hubs for fixed pitch and controllable pitch propellers (CPP). These include contra-rotating propellers, azipods and azimuth thrusters. The requirements for copper alloy propellers, blades and hubs are given in Ch 9, 1 Castings for propellers.

5. 1. 2 These castings are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the appropriate requirements of Ch 1 General Requirements and Ch 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials and Ch 4, 1 General requirements as well as the requirements of this Section.

5. 1. 3 Full details of the manufacturer's specification are to be submitted for approval. These should include the chemical composition, heat treatment, mechanical properties, microstructure and repair procedures.

5. 1. 4 Special requirements are given for castings which are intended for ice service in Table 4. 5. 2: Typical mechanical properties for steel propeller castings.

5. 2 Chemical composition

5. 2. 1 The chemical composition of ladle samples is to comply with the approved specification, *See* Ch 4, 5.1 Scope 5.1.3.

5. 2. 2 Typical cast steel propeller alloys are given in Table 4. 5. 1: Typical chemical composition for steel propeller castings.

Table 4. 5. 1: Typical chemical composition for steel propeller castings

Alloy type	C Max. (%)	Mn Max. (%)	Cr (%)	Mo Max. (%) (*See* Note)	Ni (%)
Martensitic (12Cr 1Ni)	0.15	2.0	11.5 – 17.0	0.5	Max. 2.0
Martensitic (13Cr 4Ni)	0.06	2.0	11.5 – 17.0	1.0	3.5 – 5.0
Martensitic (16Cr 5Ni)	0.06	2.0	15.0 – 17.5	1.5	3.5 – 6.0
Austenitic (19Cr 11Ni)	0.12	1.6	16.0 – 21.0	4.0	8.0 – 13.0

Note Minimum values are to be in accordance with the agreed specification or recognised National or International Standards.

5. 3 Heat treatment

5. 3. 1 Martensitic stainless steel castings are to be austenitised, quenched and tempered in accordance with the approved specification, *See* Ch 4, 5.1 Scope 5.1.3.

5. 3. 2 Austenitic stainless steel castings are to be solution treated in accordance with the approved specification, *See* Ch 4, 5.1 Scope 5.1.3.

5. 4 Mechanical tests

5. 4. 1 The test material is to be cast integral with the boss of propeller castings, or with the flange of separately cast propeller blades. Alternatively, the test material may be attached on blades in an area between 0.5 and 0.6R, where R is the radius of the propeller.

5. 4. 2 The test material is not to be removed from the casting until final heat treatment has been carried out. Removal is to be by non-thermal procedures.

5. 4. 3 At least one tensile test and for the martensitic stainless steel grades one set of three Charpy V-notch impact tests are to be made on material representing each casting. The results are to comply with the requirements of Table 4. 5. 2: Typical mechanical properties for steel propeller castings or the approved specification.

Table 4. 5. 2: Typical mechanical properties for steel propeller castings

Alloy type	Yield stress or, 0.2% proof stress minimum, N/mm^2	Tensile strength minimum N/mm^2	Elongation on 5.65 $\sqrt{S_0}$% minimum	Reduction of area % minimum	Charpy V-notch impact tests J minimum (*See* Notes 1 and 2)
Martensitic (12Cr 1Ni)	440	590	15	30	20
Martensitic (13Cr 4Ni)	550	750	15	35	30
Martensitic (16Cr 5Ni)	540	760	15	35	30
Austenitic (19Cr 11Ni)	180 (*See* Note 3)	440	30	40	-

Note *1.* When a general service **notation Ice Class 1AS, 1A, 1B or 1C** is required, the tests are to be made at –10°C.

Note *2.* For general service or where the notation **Ice Class 1D** is required, the tests are to be made at 0°C.

Note *3.* $R_{p1.0}$ value is 205 N/mm^2.

5. 4. 4 As an alternative to Ch 4, 5.4 Mechanical tests 5.4.3, where a number of small propeller castings of about the same size, and less than 1 m in diameter, are made from one cast and heat treated together in the same furnace, a batch testing procedure may be adopted using separately cast test samples of suitable dimensions. At least one set of mechanical tests is to be provided for each multiple of five castings in the batch.

5. 4. 5 Separately cast test bars may be used subject to prior approval of the Surveyor. Test bars must be cast from the same heat, or heats, and must also be heat treated with castings they represent.

5. 5 Non-destructive examination

5. 5. 1 On completion of machining and grinding, the whole surface of each casting is to be examined in accordance with Ch 9, 1.8, Inspection and non-destructive examination.

5. 5. 2 When appropriate, magnetic particle inspection may be used in lieu of liquid penetrant testing.

5. 5. 3 Castings are to be free from cracks and hot tears.

5. 6 Rectification of defective castings

5. 6. 1 The rectification of defective castings is to be undertaken in accordance with Ch 4, 1.9, Rectification and dressing of castings and the following paragraphs.

5. 6. 2 Removal of defective material is to be by mechanical means, e.g. by grinding, chipping or milling. The resultant grooves are to be blended into the surrounding surface so as to avoid any sharp contours.

5. 6. 3 Grinding in severity zone A may be carried out to an extent that maintains the blade thickness. Repair by welding is generally not permitted in zone A and will only be allowed after special consideration.

5. 6. 4 Defects in severity zone B that are not deeper than t/40 mm (t is the minimum local thickness according to the Rules) or 2 mm, whichever is the greater, are to be removed by grinding. Those defects that are deeper may be repaired by welding subject to prior approval of the Surveyor.

5. 6. 5 Repair welding is generally permitted in severity zone C.

5. 6. 6 Welds having an area of less than 5 cm^2 are to be avoided. The maximum surface area of repairs is to be in accordance with Table 9. 1. 4: Permissible rectification of new propellers by welding in Chapter 9.

5. 6. 7 Welding is to be in accordance with the approved specification, *See* Ch 4, 5.1 Scope 5.1.3.

5. 6. 8 After weld repair, the propeller or blade is to be heat treated in such fashion as will minimise the residual stresses. For martensitic stainless steels, this will involve full heat treatment as specified in the approved specification.

5. 6. 9 ACS reserves the right to restrict the amount of repair work accepted from a manufacturer when it appears that repetitive defects are the result of improper foundry techniques or practices.

5. 6. 10 All welds are to be inspected by the appropriate NDE method, *See* Ch 4, 1.7, Visual and non-destructive examination.

5. 7 Identification

5. 7. 1 Castings are to be clearly marked by the manufacturer in accordance with the requirements of Ch 1 General Requirements. The following details are to be shown on all castings which have been accepted:

a. Identification mark which will enable the full history of the item to be traced.
b. Type of steel, this should include or allow identification of the chromium and nickel contents.
c. ACS or Asia Classification Society and the abbreviated name of Asia Classification Society's local office.
d. Personal stamp of Surveyor responsible for the final inspection.
e. ACS certificate number.
f. Skew angle, if in excess of 25°.
g. Ice class symbol, where applicable.
h. Date of final inspection.

5. 8 Certification of materials

5. 8. 1 In addition to the requirements in Ch 4, 1.11 Certification of materials, the manufacturer is to provide the Surveyor with a written statement giving the following particulars for each casting:

a. Description of casting with drawing number.
b. Diameter, number of blades, pitch, direction of turning.
c. Skew angle, if in excess of 25°
d. Final mass.

e. Vessel identification, where known.

PART

2

CHAPTER 4 **Steel Castings**

SECTION 6 **Castings for boilers, pressure vessels and piping systems**

6. 1 Scope

6. 1. 1 This Section gives the requirements for carbon-manganese and alloy steel castings for boilers, pressure vessels and piping systems for use at temperatures not lower than 0°C.

6. 1. 2 Where it is proposed to use alloy steels other than as given in this Section, details of the specification are to be submitted for approval. In such cases, the specified minimum tensile strength is not to exceed 600 N/mm^2.

6. 1. 3 Castings which comply with these requirements are acceptable for liquefied gas piping systems where the design temperature is not lower than 0°C. Where the design temperature is lower than 0°C, and for other applications where guaranteed impact properties at low temperatures are required, the castings are to comply with the requirements of Ch 4, 7 Ferritic steel castings for low temperature service or Ch 4, 8 Stainless steel castings.

6. 2 Chemical composition

6. 2. 1 The chemical composition of ladle samples is to comply with the limits specified in Table 4. 6. 1: Chemical composition of steel castings for boilers, pressure vessels and piping systems.

6. 3 Heat treatment

6. 3. 1 Castings are to be supplied:

a. fully annealed; or
b. normalised; or
c. normalised and tempered; or
d. quenched and tempered.

6. 4 Mechanical tests

6. 4. 1 A tensile test is to be made on material representing each casting, unless a batch testing procedure has been agreed, *See* Ch 4, 1.6, Test material and test specimens.

6. 4. 2 The tensile test is to be carried out at ambient temperature, and unless agreed otherwise with the Surveyor the results are to comply with the requirements of Table 4. 6. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: steel castings for boilers, pressure vessels and piping systems.

Table 4. 6. 1: Chemical composition of steel castings for boilers, pressure vessels and piping systems

Type of steel	Chemical composition %										
	C max.	Si max.	Mn	S max.	P max.	Residual elements					
Carbon-manganese	0.25	0.60	0.50-1.20	0.040	0.040	Cr	0.30 max.				
						Mo	0.15 max.				
						Cu	0.30 max.				
						Ni	0.40 max.				
						Total	0.80 max.				
						Cr	Mo	V	Residual elements		
									Cr	Cu	Ni
$^1/_2$ Mo	0.20	0.60	0.50–1.00	0.040	0.040	–	0.45-0.65	–	0.30 max.	0.30 max.	0.40 max.
1 Cr $^1/_2$ Mo	0.20	0.60	0.50-0.80	0.040	0.040	1.00-1.50	0.45-0.65	–	–	0.30 max.	0.40 max.
2 $^1/_4$ Cr 1 Mo	0.18	0.60	0.40-0.70	0.040	0.040	2.00-2.75	0.90-1.20	–	–	0.30 max.	0.40 max.
$^1/_2$ Cr $^1/_2$ Mo $^1/_4$ V	0.10–0.15	0.45	0.40-0.70	0.030	0.030	0.30-0.50	0.40-0.60	0.22-0.30	–	0.30 max.	0.30 max.

Table 4. 6. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: steel castings for boilers, pressure vessels and piping systems

Type of steel	Yield stress minimum N/mm^2	Tensile strength N/mm^2	Elongation on $5.65\sqrt{S_0}$% minimum	Reduction of area % minimum
Carbon-manganese	275	485-655	22	25
$^1/_2$ Mo	260	460-590	18	30
1 Cr $^1/_2$ Mo	280	480-630	17	20
2 $^1/_4$ Cr 1 Mo	325	540-630	17	20
$^1/_2$ Cr $^1/_2$ Mo $^1/_4$ V	295	510-660	17	20

Table 4. 6. 3: Mechanical properties for design purposes (*See* 6.6.1)

Type of steel	Nominal minimum lower yield or 0.2% proof stress N/mm^2										
	Temperature °C										
	100	150	200	250	300	350	400	450	500	550	600
Carbon-manganese	225	214	201	186	163	156	152	–	–	–	–
$^1/_2$ Mo	242	236	226	207	186	175	169	158	145	136	126

1 Cr $^1/_2$ Mo	240	–	212	–	196	–	184	–	160	–	117
2 $^1/_4$ Cr 1 Mo	323	312	305	296	290	280	273	258	240	211	180
$^1/_2$ Cr $^1/_2$ Mo $^1/_4$ V	264	–	244	–	230	–	214	–	194	–	144

6. 4. 3 Where it is proposed to use a carbon-manganese steel with a specified minimum tensile strength intermediate to those given in this Section, corresponding minimum values for the yield stress, elongation and reduction of area may be obtained by interpolation.

6. 4. 4 Carbon-manganese steels with a specified minimum tensile strength of greater than 490 N/mm^2, but not exceeding 520 N/mm^2, may be accepted provided that details of the proposed specification are submitted for approval.

6. 5 Non-destructive examination

6. 5. 1 The non-destructive examination of castings is to be carried out in accordance with the appropriate requirements of Ch 4, 1.7 Visual and non-destructive examination 1.7.7 to Ch 4, 1.7 Visual and non-destructive examination 1.7.11 and additionally as agreed between the manufacturer, purchaser and Surveyor.

6. 6 Mechanical properties for design purposes

6. 6. 1 Nominal values for the minimum lower yield or 0.2 per cent proof stress at temperatures of 100°C and higher are given in Table 4. 6. 3: Mechanical properties for design purposes (See 6.6.1). These values are intended for design purposes only, and verification is not required except for materials complying with National or proprietary specifications where the elevated temperature properties used for design purposes are higher than those given in Table 4. 6. 3: Mechanical properties for design purposes (See 6.6.1).

6. 6. 2 In such cases, at least one tensile test at the proposed design or other agreed temperature is to be made on each casting or each batch of castings. The test specimen is to be taken from material adjacent to that used for tests at ambient temperature, and the test procedure is to be in accordance with the requirements of Ch 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials. The results of all tests are to comply with the requirements of the National or proprietary specification.

6. 6. 3 Values for the estimated average stress to rupture in 100 000 hours are given in Table 4. 6. 4: Mechanical properties for design purposes (See 6.6.3): estimated average stresses to rupture in 100000 hours (N/mm2) and may be used for design purposes.

Table 4. 6. 4: Mechanical properties for design purposes (*See* 6.6.3): estimated average stresses to rupture in 100000 hours (N/mm^2)

Temperature °C	Type of steel			
	½Mo	1Cr½Mo	2¼Cr1Mo	½Cr½Mo¼V
430	308	–	–	–
440	276	–	–	–
450	245	–	222	277
460	212	–	199	237
470	174	236	177	206

480	133	186	156	181
490	103	148	139	159
500	84	120	124	140
510	71	100	111	124
520	60	84	99	109
530	–	70	–	96
540	–	58	–	85
550	–	–	–	75
560	–	–	–	66

PART

2

CHAPTER 4 **Steel Castings**

SECTION 7 **Ferritic steel castings for low temperature service**

7. 1 Scope

7. 1. 1 This Section gives the requirements for castings in carbon-manganese and nickel alloy steels intended for use in liquefied gas piping systems where the design temperature is lower than 0°C, and for other applications where guaranteed impact properties at low temperatures are required.

7. 1. 2 Where it is proposed to use alternative steels, particulars of the specified chemical composition, mechanical properties and heat treatment are to be submitted for approval.

7. 2 Chemical composition

7. 2. 1 The chemical composition of ladle samples is to comply with the limits specified in Table 4. 7. 1: Chemical composition of ferritic steel castings for low temperature service. Carbon-manganese steels are to be made by fine grain practice.

Table 4. 7. 1: Chemical composition of ferritic steel castings for low temperature service

Type of steel	Chemical composition %						
	C max.	Si max.	Mn	S max.	P max.	Ni	Residual elements max.
Carbon-manganese	0.23	0.60	0.70-1.60	0.030	0.030	0.80 max.	Cr 0.25 Cu 0.30 Mo 0.15 V 0.03 Total 0.60
2 1/4Ni	0.25	0.60	0.50-0.80	0.025	0.030	2.00-3.00	
3 1/2Ni	0.15	0.60	0.50-0.80	0.020	0.025	3.00-4.00	

7. 3 Heat treatment

7. 3. 1 Castings are to be supplied:

a. normalised; or
b. normalised and tempered; or
c. quenched and tempered.

7. 4 Mechanical tests

7. 4. 1 One tensile test and one set of three Charpy V-notch impact test specimens are to be prepared from material representing each casting or batch of castings.

7. 4. 2 The tensile test is to be carried out at ambient temperature, and the results are to comply with the appropriate requirements given in Table 4. 7. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: ferritic steel castings for low temperature service.

7. 4. 3 The average value for impact test specimens is to comply with the appropriate requirements given in Table 4. 7. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: ferritic steel castings for low temperature service. One individual value may be less than the required average value provided that it is not less than 70 per cent of this average value. *See* Ch 2, 1.4, Re-testing procedures for re-test procedure.

Table 4. 7. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: ferritic steel castings for low temperature service

Type of steel	Grade	Yield stress N/mm^2 minimum	Tensile strength N/mm^2	Elongation on $5.65\sqrt{S_0}$ % minimum	Reduction of area % minimum	Charpy V-notch impact test	
						Test temperature °C	Average energy J minimum
Carbon-manganese	400	200	400-550	25	40		
	430	215	430-580	23	35	–60(*See* Note)	27
	460	230	460-610	22	30		
$2^1/_4$Ni	490	275	490-640	20	35	–70	34
3 $^1/_2$Ni	490	275	490-640	20	35	–95	34

Note The test temperature for carbon-manganese steels may be 5°C below the design temperature if the latter is above –55°C, with a maximum test temperature of –20°C.

7. 5 Non-destructive examination

7. 5. 1 The non-destructive examination of castings is to be carried out in accordance with the appropriate requirements of Ch 4, 1.7 Visual and non-destructive examination 1.7.7 to Ch 4, 1.7 Visual and non-destructive examination 1.7.11, and additionally agreed between the manufacturer, purchaser and Surveyor.

PART

2

CHAPTER **4** **Steel Castings**

SECTION **8** **Stainless steel castings**

8. 1 Scope

8. 1. 1 This Section gives the requirements for castings in austenitic and duplex stainless steels for machinery, marine structures, piping systems in ships for liquefied gases, and in bulk chemical tankers.

8. 1. 2 Austenitic stainless steels castings are suitable for applications where the lowest design temperature is not lower than –165°C.

8. 1. 3 Duplex stainless steels castings are suitable for applications where the lowest design temperature is above 0°C. Any requirement to use duplex stainless steels castings below 0°C will be subject to special consideration.

8. 1. 4 Where it is proposed to use alternative steels, particulars of the specified chemical composition, mechanical properties and heat treatment are to be submitted for approval.

8. 2 Chemical composition

8. 2. 1 The chemical composition of ladle samples is to comply with the requirements given in Table 4. 8. 1: Chemical composition of stainless steel castings.

8. 3 Heat treatment

8. 3. 1 Austenitic stainless steel castings are to be solution treated at a temperature of not less than 1000°C and cooled rapidly in water.

8. 3. 2 Duplex stainless steels castings are to be solution treated at a temperature of not less that 1100°C and cooled rapidly in water.

8. 4 Mechanical tests

8. 4. 1 One tensile test specimen is to be prepared from material representing each casting or batch of castings. In addition, where the castings are intended for liquefied gas applications, where the design temperature is lower than −55°C, one set of three Charpy V-notch impact test specimens is to be prepared.

Table 4. 8. 1: Chemical composition of stainless steel castings

Type of steel	Chemical composition %								
	C	Si	Mn	S	P	Cr	Mo	Ni	Others

Austenitic								
304L	0.03	0.20-1.5	0.50-2.0	0.040	17.0-21.0	—	8.0–12.0	—
304	0.08					—	8.0–12.0	—
316L	0.03					2.0–3.0	9.0–13.0	—
316	0.08					2.0–3.0	9.0–13.0	—
317	0.08					3.0–4.0	9.0–12.0	—
						—	9.0–12.0	Nb ≥ 8 x C ≤0.90
347	0.06							
(*See* Note 1)								
Duplex								
UNS J 92205 (*See* Note 3)	0.03	1.00	1.50	0.020	0.035	21.0–23.0	2.5–3.5	4.5–6.5	N 0.15–0.20 Cu 1.00

Note *1.* When guaranteed impact values at low temperature are not required, the maximum carbon content may be 0.08% and the maximum niobium may be 1.00%.

Note *2.* Where a single value is shown (and not a range of values), the value is to be taken as maximum.

Note *3* The grade UNS J 92205 is the cast equivalent of UNS S 31803.

Table 4. 8. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: austenitic stainless steel castings

Type of steel	Tensile strength N/mm² minimum	1.0% proof stress N/mm² minimum	Elongation on $5.65\sqrt{S_0}$ % minimum	Reduction of area % minimum	Charpy V-notch impact test	
					Test temperature °C	Average energy J minimum
Austenitic						
304L	430	215	26	40	–196	41
304	480	220				
316L	430	215	26	40	–196	41
316	480	220				
317	480	240				
347	480	215	22	35	–196	41
Duplex						
UNS J 92205 (*See* Note)	600	420	20	35	0	41

Note The grade UNS J 92205 is the cast equivalent of UNS S 31803.

8. 4. 2 The tensile test is to be carried out at ambient temperature, and the results are to comply with the requirements given in Table 4. 8. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: austenitic stainless steel castings.

8. 4. 3 The average value for impact test specimens is to comply with the appropriate requirements given in Table 4. 8. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: austenitic stainless steel castings. One individual value may be less than the required average value provided that it is not less than 70 per cent of this average value. *See* Ch 2, 1.4, Re-testing procedures for re-test procedures.

8. 5 Corrosion tests

8. 5. 1 Where corrosive conditions are anticipated in service, for grades 304, 316 and 317, intergranular corrosion tests are required in accordance with Ch 2, 9.1 Intergranular corrosion test. Such tests may also be required for grades 304L, 316L and 347.

8. 5. 2 Where corrosive conditions are anticipated in service, for duplex stainless pitting corrosion tests are required in accordance with Ch 2, 9.2 Pitting corrosion test . For UNS J 92205 the test temperature is to be 20°C.

8. 6 Non-destructive examination

8. 6. 1 The non-destructive examination of castings is to be carried out in accordance with the appropriate requirements of Ch 4, 1.7 Visual and non-destructive examination 1.7.7 to Ch 4, 1.7 Visual and non-destructive examination 1.7.11 and additionally agreed between the manufacturer, purchaser and Surveyor.

PART

2

CHAPTER **4** **Steel Castings**

SECTION **9** **Steel castings for container corner fittings**

9. 1 General

9. 1. 1 This Section gives the requirements for cast steel corner fittings used in the fabrication of freight and tank containers. The fittings are also to comply with the requirements of the latest edition of International Standard ISO 1161.

9. 1. 2 The castings are to be made in foundries approved by ACS. These foundries are also to be specially approved for the manufacture of container corner castings. In order to comply with these requirements, the manufacturer is required to verify that the casting soundness, mechanical properties, weldability and dimensional tolerances required by this Section and the manufacturing specification are met.

9. 1. 3 Castings may be released on the basis of an ACS survey or, alternatively, the manufacturer may be approved by means of a Quality Assurance Scheme as detailed in Ch 1, 2 Approval and survey requirements.

9. 2 Chemical composition

9. 2. 1 Chemical analysis is to be carried out on each cast.

9. 2. 2 The chemical composition of the ladle samples is to comply with the limits given in Table 4. 9. 1: Chemical composition of steel castings for container corner fittings.

9. 2. 3 The carbon equivalent

$$Ceq = C + \frac{Mn}{6} + \frac{Cr + Mo + V}{5} + \frac{Ni + Cu}{15} \quad \%$$

must not exceed 0.45 per cent.

9. 3 Heat treatment

9. 3. 1 Castings are to be supplied either :

a. normalised; or

b. water or oil quenched and tempered at a temperature of not less than 550°C.

9. 4 Mechanical tests

9. 4. 1 At least one tensile test is to be made on each batch of castings, using separately cast test bars which are to be from the same cast and heat treatment lot as the castings they represent.

Table 4. 9. 1: Chemical composition of steel castings for container corner fittings

Chemical composition %										
C max.	Mn	Si max.	P max.	S max.	Cr max.	Ni max.	Cu max.	Mo max.	Al acid soluble min. (*See* Notes)	Cr +Ni+Cu+Mo max.
0.20	0.90 to 1.50	0.50	0.035	0.035	0.25	0.30	0.20	0.08	0.015	0.70

Note *1.* The total aluminium content may be determined instead of the acid soluble content. In such cases, the total aluminium content is to be not less than 0.02%.

Note *2.* Aluminium may be replaced partly or totally by other grain refining elements as stated in the approved specification.

9. 4. 2 The results of the tensile tests are to comply with the following:

Yield stress	220 N/mm^2 min.
Tensile strength	430 - 600 N/mm^2
Elongation on $\sqrt{S_0}$	25% min.
Reduction of area	40% min.

9. 4. 3 Impact tests are not required on all casts but may be required on a random basis at the discretion of the Surveyor.

9. 4. 4 When required, the impact test specimens are to be tested in accordance with Ch 1, 4.5 Mechanical tests and Ch 2, 3.2, Testing procedures. In general, tests are to be made at a temperature of -20°C and the minimum average energy obtained is to be 27J.

9. 5 Non-destructive examination

9. 5. 1 Ultrasonic or radiographic testing is to be carried out, in accordance with Ch 4, 1.7 Visual and non-destructive examination 1.7.10 or Ch 4, 1.7 Visual and non-destructive examination 1.7.11 respectively, on at least one casting from each cast or from every 400 castings, whichever is the lesser.

9. 6 Repair of defects

9. 6. 1 Minor defects may be removed by grinding provided that the allowable minus tolerance is not exceeded.

9. 6. 2 Defects which exceed the allowable minus tolerance may be removed by grinding or chipping followed by welding, provided the weld depth does not exceed 40 per cent of the wall thickness and that the following requirements are met:

a. welding is not to be carried out in the as-cast condition; the grain structure has to be refined by heat treatment,
b. the casting is to be preheated to 80 - 100 °C,
c. welding is to be performed only by qualified welders in accordance with a qualified welding procedure,
d. all welded castings are to be post-weld heat treated at a temperature not less than 550°C,

e. the welded areas are to be ground or machined flush with the adjacent surface and inspected by magnetic particle or dye penetrant examination as appropriate.

9. 7 Identification

9. 7. 1 Each casting is to be clearly marked by the manufacturer with at least the following:

a. manufacturer's name or trade mark,
b. cast number or identification number which will enable the full history of the casting to be traced.

9. 7. 2 Where the casting has been inspected and found acceptable it is to be marked with the Surveyor's personal stamp.

9. 7. 3 The markings may be stamped or cast on the inner surface of the casting.

9. 8 Certification of materials

9. 8. 1 For each consignment an ACS certificate, *See* Ch 1, 3.1, General, is to be issued for castings made under ACS survey or alternatively a manufacturer’s certificate is to be issued containing at least the following:

a. Purchaser's name and order number.
b. Grade of steel.
c. Drawing and/or specification number.
d. Cast number and chemical composition.
e. Details of the heat treatment.
f. Number and weight of the castings.
g. Results of inspections and mechanical tests.

See (Ch 1, 3.1, General), for manufacturers approved under a Quality Assurance Scheme.

PART

2

CHAPTER **5 Steel Forgings**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General requirements**		**391**
	1. 1	Scope	391
	1. 2	Manufacture	391
	1. 3	Quality	392
	1. 4	Chemical composition	393
	1. 5	Heat treatment	393
	1. 6	Test material	394
	1. 7	Mechanical tests	394
	1. 8	Visual and non-destructive examination	395
	1. 9	Rectification of defects	396
	1. 10	Identification	397
	1. 11	Certification of materials	397
SECTION 2	**Forgings for ship and other structural applications**		**398**
	2. 1	Scope	398
	2. 2	Chemical composition	398
	2. 3	Heat treatment	399
	2. 4	Mechanical tests	399
	2. 5	Non-destructive examination	400
SECTION 3	**Forgings for shafting and machinery**		**403**
	3. 1	Scope	403
	3. 2	Chemical composition	403
	3. 3	Heat treatment	404
	3. 4	Mechanical tests	404
	3. 5	Non-destructive examination	407
SECTION 4	**Forgings for crankshafts**		**413**
	4. 1	Scope	413

4. 2 Manufacture 413
4. 3 Chemical composition 413
4. 4 Heat treatment 414
4. 5 Mechanical tests 414
4. 6 Non-destructive examination 417
SECTION 5 Forgings for gearing 421
5. 1 Scope 421
5. 2 Manufacture 421
5. 3 Chemical composition 421
5. 4 Heat treatment 422
5. 5 Mechanical tests for through hardened, induction hardened or nitrided forgings 422
5. 6 Mechanical tests for carburised forgings 426
5. 7 Non-destructive examination 427
SECTION 6 Forgings for turbines 428
6. 1 Scope 428
6. 2 Manufacture 428
6. 3 Chemical composition 428
6. 4 Heat treatment 428
6. 5 Mechanical tests 429
6. 6 Non-destructive examination 430
6. 7 Thermal stability tests 431
SECTION 7 Forgings for boilers, pressure vessels and piping systems 433
7. 1 Scope 433
7. 2 Chemical composition 433
7. 3 Heat treatment 433
7. 4 Mechanical tests 433
7. 5 Non-destructive examination 435
7. 6 Pressure tests 435
7. 7 Mechanical properties for design purposes 435
SECTION 8 Ferritic steel forgings for low temperature service 438
8. 1 Scope 438
8. 2 Chemical composition 438
8. 3 Heat treatment 438
8. 4 Mechanical tests 438
8. 5 Non-destructive examination 439

8. 6 Pressure tests 439
SECTION 9 Stainless steel forgings 440
9. 1 General 440
9. 2 Chemical composition 440
9. 3 Heat treatment 440
9. 4 Mechanical tests 440
9. 5 Mechanical properties for design purposes 440
9. 6 Non-destructive examination 441
9. 7 Corrosion tests 441

PART

2

CHAPTER **5 Steel Forgings**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 5. 2. 1: Mechanical properties for ship and other structural applications 399

Table 5. 2. 2: Steel forgings surface inspection 401

Table 5. 3. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon and carbon-manganese steel forgings for machinery and shafting 405

Table 5. 3. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: alloy steel forgings for machinery and shafting 406

Table 5. 3. 3: Acceptance criteria for ultrasonic testing 411

Table 5. 4. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon-manganese steel forgings for crankshafts 415

Table 5. 4. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: alloy steel forgings for crankshafts - Normalised and tempered 416

Table 5. 4. 3: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: alloy steel forgings for crankshafts - Quenched and tempered 416

Table 5. 4. 4: Surface inspection acceptance for crankshaft forgings – Allowable number and size of indications in a reference area of 225 cm^2 420

Table 5. 4. 5: Ultrasonic acceptance criteria for crankshafts 420

Table 5. 5. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon-manganese steels for gear wheel and rim forgings 424

Table 5. 5. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: alloy steel gear wheel and rim forgings - Normalised and tempered 425

Table 5. 5. 3: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: alloy steel gear forgings - Quenched and tempered 425

Table 5. 6. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon-manganese steel forgings for turbines - Normalised and tempered 431

Table 5. 6. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: alloy steel forgings for turbines - Quenched and tempered or normalised and tempered 432

Table 5. 7. 1: Chemical composition 433

Table 5. 7. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes 435

Table 5. 7. 3: Mechanical properties for design purposes 436

Table 5. 7. 4: Mechanical properties for design purposes: estimated average values for stress to rupture in 100 000 hours (units N/mm^2) 436

Table 5. 8. 1: Chemical composition of ferritic steel forgings 439

Table 5. 9. 1: Chemical composition of stainless steel forgings 441
Table 5. 9. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: stainless steel forgings..... 441
Table 5. 9. 3: Mechanical properties for design purposes: austenitic stainless steels 442
Table 5. 9. 4: Mechanical properties for design purposes: austenitic stainless steels 442

PART

2

CHAPTER **5 Steel Forgings**

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 5. 2. 1: Inspection zones for magnetic particle/dye penetrant testing on rudder stocks 400
Figure 5. 2. 2: Inspection zones for ultrasonic testing on rudder stocks 402
Figure 5. 3. 1: Directions and positions of test specimens 404
Figure 5. 3. 2: Directions and positions of test specimens 405
Figure 5. 3. 3: Directions and positions of test specimens 405
Figure 5. 3. 4: Zones for magnetic particle/dye penetrant testing on machinery components 408
Figure 5. 3. 5: Zones for magnetic particle/dye penetrant testing on machinery components 409
Figure 5. 3. 6: Zones for ultrasonic testing on shafts 410
Figure 5. 3. 7: Zones for ultrasonic testing on machinery components 411
Figure 5. 4. 1: Solid forged crankshaft 414
Figure 5. 4. 2: CGF Crankshaft 414
Figure 5. 4. 3: Zones for magnetic particle/dye penetrant testing on crankshafts 418
Figure 5. 4. 4: Zones for ultrasonic testing on crankshafts 419
Figure 5. 5. 1:Test positions for forgings for gearing 423
Figure 5. 5. 2: Test position B 423
Figure 5. 5. 3: Test position A 423
Figure 5. 5. 4: Test position C 424
Figure 5. 6. 1: Test positions for turbine rotor forgings 429
Figure 5. 6. 2: Test positions for turbine disc forgings 430

PART

2

CHAPTER **5** **Steel Forgings**

SECTION **1** **General requirements**

1. 1 Scope

1. 1. 1 This Section gives the general requirements for steel forgings intended for use in the construction of ships, other marine structures, machinery, boilers, pressure vessels and piping systems. These requirements are also applicable to rolled slabs and billets used as a substitute for forgings and to rolled bars used for the manufacture (by machining operations only) of shafts, bolts, studs and other components of similar shape.

1. 1. 2 When required by the relevant Rules dealing with design and construction, forgings are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with Ch 1 General Requirements and Ch 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials, together with the general requirements given in this Section and the appropriate specific requirements given in Sections Ch 5, 2 Forgings for ship and other structural applications to Ch 5, 9 Stainless steel forgings.

1. 1. 3 As an alternative to Ch 5, 1.1 Scope 1.1.2, steel forgings which comply with National or proprietary specifications may be accepted provided that these specifications give reasonable equivalence to the requirements of this Chapter or alternatively are approved for a specific application. Generally, survey and certification are to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of Ch 1 General Requirements.

1. 1. 4 Normalised forgings with mass up to 1000 kg each may be batch tested. A batch is to consist of forgings of similar shape and dimensions, made from the same steel-making heat, heat treated together and with a total mass not exceeding 6 tonnes.

1. 1. 5 Quenched and tempered forgings with mass up to 500 kg each may be batch tested. A batch is to consist of forgings of similar shape and dimensions, made from the same steel-making heat, heat treated together in the same furnace and with a total mass not exceeding 3 tonnes.

1. 1. 6 A batch testing procedure may also be used for hot rolled bars, *See* Ch 5, 3.4 Mechanical tests 3.4.3.

1. 1. 7 Where small forgings are produced in large quantities, or where forgings of the same type are produced in regular quantities, alternative survey procedures in accordance with Ch 1, 2.4 Materials Quality Scheme may be adopted.

1. 2 Manufacture

1. 2. 1 Forgings are to be made at works which have been approved by Asia Classification Society (hereinafter referred to as ACS). The steel used is to be manufactured in accordance with the requirements of Ch 3, 1.4 Manufacture.

1. 2. 2 When forgings are made directly from ingots, or from blooms or billets forged from ingots, the ingots are to be cast in chill moulds with the larger cross-section uppermost and with efficient feeder heads.

1. 2. 3 Adequate top and bottom discards are to be made to ensure freedom from piping and harmful segregations in the finished forgings.

1. 2. 4 The forgings are to be gradually and uniformly hot worked and are to be formed as closely as possible to the finished shape and size. The plastic deformation is to be such as to ensure soundness, uniformity of structure and satisfactory mechanical properties after heat treatment.

1. 2. 5 For certain components, such as crankshafts, where grain flow is required in the most favourable direction having regard to the mode of stressing in service, the proposed method of manufacture may require special approval by ACS. In such cases, tests may be required to demonstrate that a satisfactory structure and grain flow are obtained.

1. 2. 6 The reduction ratio (reduction of area expressed as a ratio) is to be calculated with reference to the average cross-sectional area of the ingot or continuously cast material, where appropriate. Where an ingot is initially upset, this reference area may be taken as the average cross-sectional area after this operation.

1. 2. 7 For components forged directly from ingots or from forged blooms or billets, and in which the fibre deformation is mainly longitudinal, the reduction ratio is not to be less than 3:1.

1. 2. 8 For forgings made from rolled billets, or where fibre deformation has taken place in more than one direction, the reduction ratio is not to be less than 4:1.

1. 2. 9 Where rolled bars are used as a substitute for forgings and the requirements of Ch 5, 1.2 Manufacture 1.2.2 are not complied with, the reduction ratio is to be not less than 6:1 unless otherwise accepted by the ACS Surveyor.

1. 2. 10 Where the length of any section of a shaft forging is less than its diameter (e.g. a collar), the reduction ratio is to be not less than half that given in Ch 5, 1.2 Manufacture 1.2.7, Ch 5, 1.2 Manufacture 1.2.8 or Ch 5, 1.2 Manufacture 1.2.9 respectively.

1. 2. 11 Disc type forgings, such as gear wheels, are to be made by upsetting, and the thickness of any part of the disc is to be not more than one-half of the length of the billet from which it was formed, provided that this billet has received an initial forging reduction of not less than 1.5:1. Where the piece used has been cut directly from an ingot, or where the billet has received an initial reduction of less than 1.5:1, the thickness of any part of the disc is to be not more than one-third of the length of the original piece.

1. 2. 12 Rings and other types of hollow forgings are to be made from pieces cut from ingots or billets and which have been suitably punched, bored or trepanned prior to expanding or hollow forging. Alternatively, pieces from hollow cast ingots may be used. The wall thickness of the forging is to be not more than one-half of the thickness of the prepared hollow piece from which it was formed. Where this is not practicable, the forging procedure is to be such as to ensure that adequate work is given to the piece prior to punching, etc. This may be either longitudinal or upset working of not less than 2:1.

1. 2. 13 The shaping of forgings or rolled slabs and billets by flame cutting, scarfing or arc-air gouging is to be undertaken in accordance with recognised good practice and, unless otherwise approved, is to be carried out before the final heat treatment. Preheating is to be employed where necessitated by the composition and/or thickness of the steel. For certain components, subsequent machining of all flame cut surfaces may be required, *See* Ch 5, 4.2 Manufacture 4.2.4.

1. 2. 14 Where two or more forgings are joined by welding to form a composite component, details of the proposed welding procedure are to be submitted for approval. Welding approval procedure tests may be required.

1. 3 Quality

1. 3. 1 All forgings are to be free from surface or internal defects which would be prejudicial to their proper application in service.

1. 4 Chemical composition

1. 4. 1 All forgings are to be made from killed steels, and the chemical composition of ladle samples is to comply with the requirements detailed in subsequent Sections in this Chapter. Where general overall limits are specified, the chemical composition selected is to be appropriate for the type of steel, dimensions and required mechanical properties of the forgings being manufactured.

1. 4. 2 Except where otherwise specified, suitable grain refining elements such as aluminium, niobium or vanadium may be used at the discretion of the manufacturer. The content of such elements is to be reported in the ladle analysis.

1. 4. 3 For alloy steel forgings, the chemical composition of ladle samples is to generally comply with the following overall limits and the requirements of the approved specifications:

Carbon	0.45% max.
Silicon	0.45% max.
Manganese	0.30% min.
Sulphur	0.035% max.
Phosphorus	0.035% max.
Copper	0.30% max.

And at least one of the following elements to comply with the minimum content:

Chromium	0.40% min.
Molybdenum	0.15% min.
Nickel	0.40% min.

The contents of all alloying elements and significant impurities detailed in the specification are to be reported.

1. 5 Heat treatment

1. 5. 1 At an appropriate stage of manufacture, after completion of all hot working operations, forgings are to be suitably heat treated to refine the grain structure and to obtain the required mechanical properties. Acceptable heat treatment procedures are to be such as to avoid the formation of hair-line cracks and are detailed in Sections Ch 5, 2 Forgings for ship and other structural applications to Ch 5, 9 Stainless steel forgings.

1. 5. 2 Heat treatment is to be carried out in a properly constructed furnace which is efficiently maintained and has adequate means of temperature control. The furnace dimensions are to be such as to allow all the steel forgings to be uniformly heated to the necessary temperature. In the case of very large forgings, alternative methods of heat treatment will be specially considered. Sufficient thermocouples are to be connected to the steel forging(s) in the furnace to show that the temperature is adequately uniform and the temperatures are to be recorded throughout the heat treatment. Copies of these records are to be presented to the Surveyor together with a sketch showing the positions at which the temperature measurements were carried out. The records are to identify the furnace that was used and give details of the steel-making heat, the heat treatment temperature, time at temperature and the date. The Surveyor is to examine the charts and confirm the details on the certificate. Alternative procedures are to be approved by ACS's Materials and NDE Department.

1. 5. 3 Where forgings are to be quenched and tempered and cannot be hot worked close to size and shape, they are to be suitably rough machined or flame cut prior to being subjected to this treatment.

1. 5. 4 If for any reason a forging is subsequently heated for further hot working, the forging is to be reheat treated.

1. 5. 5 If any straightening operation is performed after the final heat treatment, consideration should be given to a subsequent stress relieving heat treatment in order to avoid the possibility of harmful residual stresses.

1. 5. 6 Where it is intended to surface harden forgings, full details of the proposed procedure and specification are to be submitted for approval. For the purposes of this approval, the manufacturer will be required to demonstrate by tests that the proposed procedure gives a uniform surface layer of the required hardness and depth and that it does not impair the soundness and properties of the steel.

1. 5. 7 Where induction hardening or nitriding is to be carried out after machining, forgings are to be heat treated at an appropriate stage to a condition suitable for this subsequent surface hardening.

1. 5. 8 Where carburising is to be carried out after machining, forgings are to be heat treated at an appropriate stage (generally either by full annealing or by normalising and tempering) to a condition suitable for subsequent machining and carburising.

1. 5. 9 The forge is to maintain records of heat treatment identifying the furnace used, furnace charge, thermocouple location, date, temperature and time at temperature. The records are to be presented to the Surveyor on request.

1. 6 Test material

1. 6. 1 Test material, sufficient for the required tests and for possible re-test purposes, is to be provided with a cross-sectional area of not less than that part of the forging which it represents. This test material is to be integral with each forging, except in the case of small forgings which are batch tested, *See* Ch 5, 1.6 Test material 1.6.4.

1. 6. 2 Where a forging is subsequently divided into a number of components, all of which are heat treated together in the same furnace, for test purposes this may be regarded as one forging and the number of tests required is to be related to the total length and mass of the original multiple forging, *See* Ch 5, 2.4 Mechanical tests 2.4.2.

1. 6. 3 Except for components which are to be carburised, test material is not to be cut from a forging until the heat treatment detailed in Ch 5, 2 Forgings for ship and other structural applications to Ch 5, 9 Stainless steel forgings has been completed. The testing procedure for components which are to be carburised is to be in accordance with the details given in Ch 5, 5 Forgings for gearing.

1. 6. 4 Where a number of small forgings of about the same size are made from one cast and heat treated together in the same furnace, batch testing procedures (*See* Ch 5, 1.1 Scope 1.1.4) may be adopted using one of the forgings for test purposes, or alternatively using separately forged test samples. These test samples are to have a forging reduction similar to that used for the forgings which they represent. They are to be properly identified and heat treated together with the forgings.

1. 7 Mechanical tests

1. 7. 1 Specimens for mechanical tests are to be prepared as required by Ch 5, 2 Forgings for ship and other structural applications to Ch 5, 9 Stainless steel forgings.

1. 7. 2 Test specimens are normally to be cut with their axes either mainly parallel (longitudinal test) or mainly tangential (tangential test) to the principal axial direction of each product.

1. 7. 3 Unless otherwise agreed, the longitudinal axis of the test specimens is to be positioned as follows:

a. for thickness or diameter ≤ 50 mm, the axis is to be at the mid-thickness or the centre of the cross section;

b. for thickness or diameter > 50 mm, the axis is to be at one quarter thickness (mid-radius) or 80 mm, whichever is less, below any heat treated surface;

Test pieces shall be taken in such a way that no part of the gauge length is machined from material closer than 12.5 mm to any heat treated surface. For impact testing, this requirement is to apply to the complete test piece.

1. 7. 4 Tensile test specimens are to be machined to the dimensions detailed in Ch 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials. Where this is precluded by the dimensions of the forging, the test specimen is to be of the largest practicable cross-sectional area.

1. 7. 5 Impact test specimens are to be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Ch 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials.

1. 7. 6 The procedures used for the tensile and impact tests are to be in accordance with the requirements of Ch 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials.

1. 7. 7 Hardness tests, preferably of the Brinell type, are to be carried out when specified in subsequent Sections in this Chapter.

1. 8 Visual and non-destructive examination

1. 8. 1 Before acceptance, all forgings are to be presented to the Surveyor for visual examination. Where applicable, this is to include the examination of internal surfaces and bores.

1. 8. 2 Forgings are to be examined in the condition for final delivery. Surfaces are to be clean and free from dirt, grease, paint, etc. Black forgings are to be suitably descaled by either shotblasting or flame descaling methods.

1. 8. 3 All forgings are to be free of cracks, crack-like indications, laps, seams, folds, or other injurious indications. At the request of the Surveyor, additional magnetic particle, dye penetrant and ultrasonic testing may be required for a more detailed evaluation of surface irregularities.

1. 8. 4 When specified in subsequent Sections in this Chapter, or by an approved procedure for welding composite components, *See* Ch 5, 1.2 Manufacture 1.2.14, appropriate non-destructive examination is also to be carried out before acceptance. All tests are to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of Ch 1, 5 Non-destructive examination.

1. 8. 5 Magnetic particle and dye penetrant testing is to be carried out when the forgings are in the finished machined condition, *See also* Ch 1, 2.3 Materials Survey Scheme 2.3.5. For magnetic particle testing, attention is to be paid to the contact between the forging and the clamping devices of stationary magnetisation benches in order to avoid local overheating or burning damage on its surface. Prods are not permitted on finished machined items. Unless otherwise agreed, these tests are to be carried out in the presence of the Surveyor.

1. 8. 6 The following definitions apply to indications associated with magnetic particle and dye penetrant inspection:

a. **Linear indication**. An indication in which the length is at least three times the width.
b. Nonlinear indication. An indication of circular or elliptical shape with a length less than three times the width.
c. **Aligned indication**. Three or more indications in a line, separated by 2 mm or less edge-to-edge.
d. **Open indication**. An indication visible after removal of the magnetic particles or that can be detected by the use of contrast dye penetrant.
e. **Non-open indication**. An indication that is not visually detectable after removal of the magnetic particles or that cannot be detected by the use of contrast dye penetrant.
f. **Relevant indication**. An indication that is caused by a condition or type of discontinuity that requires evaluation. Only indications which have any dimension greater than 1.5 mm are to be considered relevant.

1. 8. 7 Acceptance standards for defects found by visual or non destructive examinations are to be in accordance with any specific requirements of the approved plan, and with equivalence to any additional requirements of this Chapter. In all cases they are to be to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

1. 8. 8 Where required, ultrasonic examination is to be carried out after the forgings have been machined to a condition suitable for this type of examination and after the final heat treatment. Both radial and axial scanning are to be carried out where appropriate for the shape and the dimensions of the forgings being examined. Scanning is to take into account near surface examination. Unless otherwise agreed, examinations are to be carried out by the manufacturer, although Surveyors may request to be present in order to verify that the examination is being carried out in accordance with the agreed procedure.

1. 8. 9 If the forging is supplied in the black condition for machining at a separate works, the manufacturer is to ensure that a suitable ultrasonic examination is carried out to verify the internal quality of the forging.

1. 8. 10 In the circumstance detailed in either Ch 5, 1.8 Visual and non-destructive examination 1.8.8 or Ch 5, 1.8 Visual and non-destructive examination 1.8.9, the manufacturer is to provide the Surveyor with a signed report confirming that ultrasonic examination has been carried out and that such inspection has not revealed any significant internal defects.

1. 8. 11 Unless otherwise agreed, the accuracy and verification of dimensions are the responsibility of the manufacturer.

1. 8. 12 In the event of any forging proving defective during subsequent machining or testing, it is to be rejected notwithstanding any previous certification.

1. 8. 13 When required by the conditions of approval for surface hardened forgings (*See* Ch 5, 1.5 Heat treatment 1.5.6) additional test samples are to be processed at the same time as the forgings which they represent. These test samples are subsequently to be sectioned in order to determine the hardness, shape and depth of the locally hardened zone and which are to comply with the requirements of the approved specification.

1. 9 Rectification of defects

1. 9. 1 Small surface imperfections may be removed by grinding or by chipping and grinding. Complete elimination of these imperfections is to be proved by magnetic particle or dye penetrant examination (as appropriate to the material). At the discretion of the Surveyor, the resulting shallow grooves or depressions can be accepted, provided that they are blended by grinding.

1. 9. 2 Repairs by welding are not generally permitted, but special consideration will be given to such repairs where they are of a minor nature and in areas of low working stresses. In such cases, full details of the proposed repair and subsequent inspection procedures are to be submitted for review by the Surveyors prior to the commencement of the proposed rectification. A report and/or sketch detailing the extent and location of all repairs, together with details of the post-weld heat treatment and non-destructive examination are to be provided for record purposes and are to be attached to the certificate.

1. 9. 3 Repair welding is not permitted for crankshafts or similar rotating components.

1. 9. 4 Where fabrication welding is involved, *See* Ch 5, 1.2 Manufacture 1.2.14, any repair of defects is to be carried out in accordance with the approved welding procedure.

1. 9. 5 The forging manufacturer is to maintain records of repairs and subsequent inspections traceable to each forging. The records are to be presented to the Surveyor on request.

1. 9. 6 Non-open indications evaluated as segregation are acceptable.

1. 10 Identification

1. 10. 1 The manufacturer is to adopt a system of identification, which will enable all finished forgings to be traced to the original cast, forging process and heat treatment batch, and the Surveyor is to be given full facilities for so tracing the castings when required.

1. 10. 2 Forgings are to be clearly marked by the manufacturer in accordance with the requirements of Ch 1 General Requirements. The following details are to be shown on all forgings which have been accepted:

a. Identification number, cast number or other marking which will enable the full history of the forging to be traced.
b. ACS or Asia Classification Society and the abbreviated name of ACS's.
c. Personal stamp of Surveyor responsible for inspection.
d. Test pressure, where applicable.
e. Date of final inspection.

1. 10. 3 Modified arrangements for the identification of small forgings manufactured in large numbers, as with closed-die forgings may be agreed with the Surveyor.

1. 11 Certification of materials

1. 11. 1 A ACS certificate is to be issued, *See* Ch 1, 3.1, General.

1. 11. 2 The manufacturer is to provide the Surveyor with a written statement giving the following particulars for each forging or batch of forgings which has been accepted:

a. Purchaser's name and order number.
b. Description of forgings and steel quality.
c. Identification number.
d. Steel-making process, cast number and chemical analysis of ladle samples.
e. General details of heat treatment.
f. Results of mechanical tests.
g. Test pressure, where applicable.

1. 11. 3 As a minimum, the chemical composition of ladle samples is to include the content of all the elements detailed in the specific requirements.

1. 11. 4 Where applicable, the manufacturer is also to provide a signed report regarding ultrasonic examination as required by Ch 5, 1.8 Visual and non-destructive examination 1.8.8, a report of magnetic particle inspection and a statement and/or sketch detailing all repairs by welding as required by Ch 5, 1.9 Rectification of defects 1.9.2.

1. 11. 5 When steel is not produced at the works at which it is forged, a certificate is to be supplied by the steelmaker stating the process of manufacture, cast number and the chemical composition of ladle samples. The works at which the steel was produced is to have been approved by ACS, *See* Ch 5, 1.4 Chemical composition 1.4.3.

PART

2

CHAPTER 5 **Steel Forgings**

SECTION 2 **Forgings for ship and other structural applications**

2. 1 Scope

2. 1. 1 This Section gives the specific requirements for carbon-manganese steel forgings intended for ship and other structural applications such as rudder stocks, pintles, etc.

2. 1. 2 Where it is proposed to use an alloy steel, particulars of the chemical composition, mechanical properties and heat treatment are to be submitted for approval, *See* Ch 5, 1.4 Chemical composition 1.4.3.

2. 2 Chemical composition

2. 2. 1 For forgings to which structural items are to be attached by welding or which are intended for parts of a fabricated component, or are to be weld cladded or may be subject to weld repair in service, the chemical composition of ladle samples is to comply with the following:

Carbon	0.23% max.
Silicon	0.45% max.
Manganese	0.30–1.50% but not less than 3 times the actual carbon content for components which are not given a post-weld heat treatment
Sulphur	0.035% max.
Phosphorus	0.035% max.

Residual elements:

Copper	0.30% max.
Chromium	0.30% max.
Molybdenum	0.15% max.
Nickel	0.40% max.
Total	0.85% max.

For samples from forgings, the carbon content is not to exceed 0.26 per cent.

2. 2. 2 It is recommended that forgings for rudder stocks, pintles and rudder coupling bolts comply with Ch 5, 2.2 Chemical composition 2.2.1 in order to obtain satisfactory weldability for any future repairs by welding in service.

2. 2. 3 For forgings not intended for welding the carbon content may be 0.65per cent max., *See* Ch 5, 3.2 Chemical composition 3.2.1.

2. 3 Heat treatment

2. 3. 1 Carbon-manganese steel forgings are to be:

a. fully annealed; or
b. normalised; or
c. normalised and tempered at a temperature of not less than 550°C.
d. quenched and tempered.

2. 3. 2 Alloy steel forgings are to be quenched and then tempered at a temperature of not less than 550°C. Alternatively, they may be supplied in the normalised and tempered condition, in which case the specified mechanical properties are to be agreed by ACS.

2. 4 Mechanical tests

2. 4. 1 At least one tensile specimen is to be taken from each forging or batch of forgings.

2. 4. 2 Where a forging exceeds both 4 tonnes in mass and 3 m in length, tensile test specimens are to be taken from each end. These limits refer to the `as forged' mass and length but exclude the test material.

2. 4. 3 Unless otherwise agreed between the manufacturer and the Surveyor, the test specimens are to be cut in a longitudinal direction.

2. 4. 4 The results of all tensile tests are to comply with the requirements given in Table 5. 2. 1: Mechanical properties for ship and other structural applications appropriate to the specified minimum tensile strength. Forgings may be supplied to any specified minimum tensile strength within the general limits given in Table 5. 2. 1: Mechanical properties for ship and other structural applications, and intermediate values may be obtained by interpolation. *See* Ch 5, 2.4 Mechanical tests 2.4.6 for rudder stocks, pintles, and rudder coupling keys and bolts.

2. 4. 5 For large forgings, where tensile tests are taken from each end, the variation in tensile strength is not to exceed 70 N/mm^2.

2. 4. 6 For rudder stocks, pintles, and rudder coupling keys and bolts, the minimum specified yield strength is not to be less than 200 N/mm^2, *See* Table 13. 2. 1: Rudder material factor, k in Pt 3 Ship Structures (General) of the *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships*.

Table 5. 2. 1: Mechanical properties for ship and other structural applications

Steel type	Yield stress N/mm^2 minimum	Tensile strength N/mm^2	Elongation on 5.65 $\sqrt{S_0}$ min. %		Reduction of area min. %	
			Long.	Tang.	Long.	Tang.
C and C-Mn	180	360-480	28	20	50	35
	200	400-520	26	19	50	35
	220	440-560	24	18	50	35
	235	470-590	23	17	45	35
	240	480-600	22	16	45	30
	260	520-640	21	15	45	30

	280	560-680	20	14	40	27
	300	600-750	18	13	40	27
	320	640-790	17	12	40	27
	340	680-830	16	12	35	24
	360	720-870	15	11	35	24
	380	760-910	14	10	35	24
Alloy	350	550-700	20	14	50	35
	400	600-750	18	13	50	35
	450	650-800	17	12	50	35

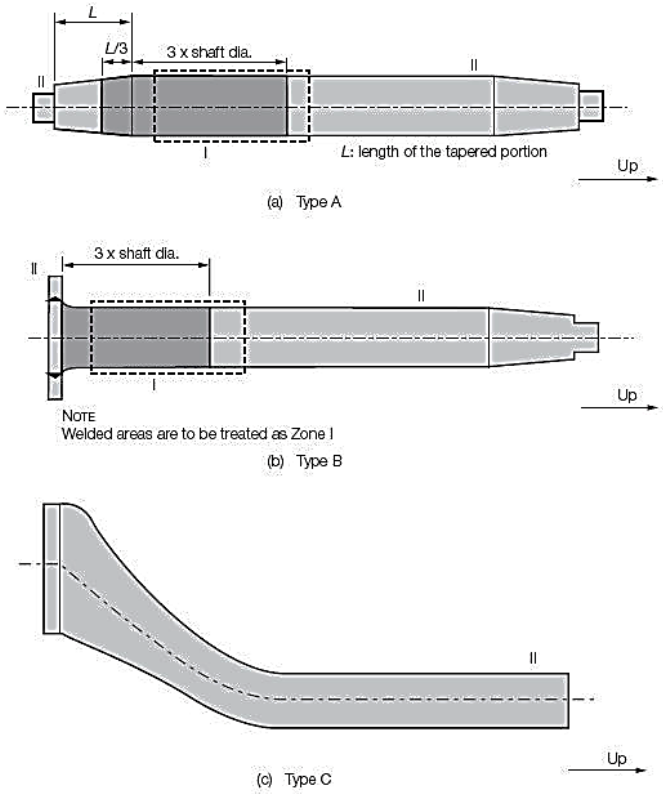
2. 4. 7 Impact tests are required for rudder stocks to be fitted to vessels which have an ice class notation. The tests are to be carried out at minus 10°C and the average energy value is to be not less than 27J.

2. 5 Non-destructive examination

2. 5. 1 Surface inspections are to be carried out by visual examination and magnetic particle testing (or dye penetrant testing where appropriate).

2. 5. 2 Surface inspections are to be carried out in the zones I and II as indicated in Figure 5. 2. 1: Inspection zones for magnetic particle/dye penetrant testing on rudder stocks.

Figure 5. 2. 1: Inspection zones for magnetic particle/dye penetrant testing on rudder stocks



2. 5. 3 For the purpose of evaluating indications, the surface is to be divided into reference areas of 225 cm^2. The area is to be taken in the most unfavourable location relative to the indication being evaluated.

2. 5. 4 The allowable number and size of indications in the reference area is given in Table 5. 2. 2: Steel forgings surface inspection.

Table 5. 2. 2: Steel forgings surface inspection

Inspection zone	Maximum number of indications	Type of indication	Maximum number each type	Maximum dimension, mm
I	3	Linear	0, *See* Note	–
		Non-linear	3	3.0
		Aligned	0, *See* Note	–
II	10	Linear	3, *See* Note	3.0
		Non-linear	7	5.0
		Aligned	3, *See* Note	3.0
Note Linear or aligned indications are not permitted on bolts, which receive a direct fluctuating load, e.g. main bearing bolts, connecting rod bolts, crosshead bearing bolts and cylinder cover bolts.				

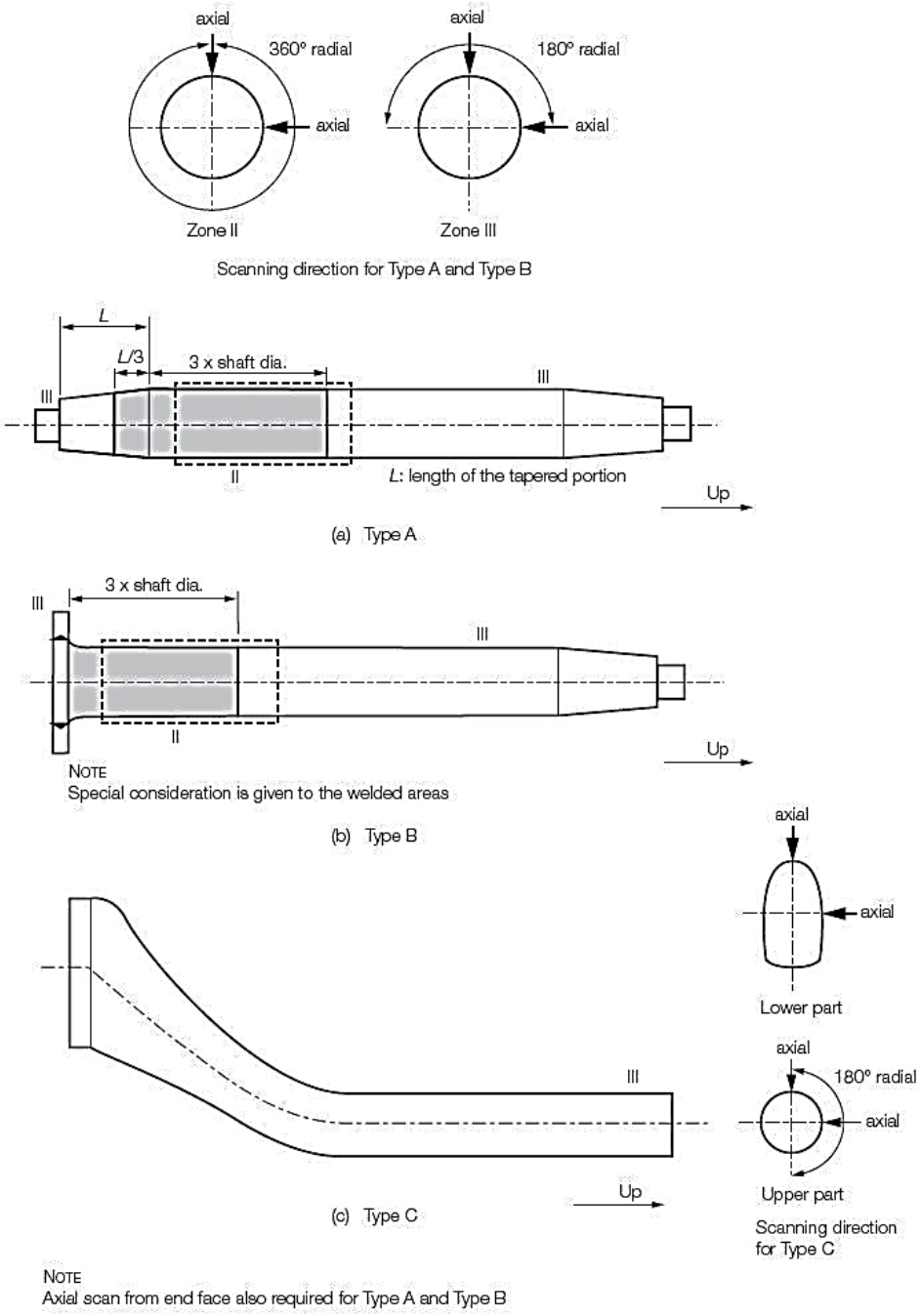
2. 5. 5 Volumetric inspection is to be carried out by ultrasonic testing using the contact method.

2. 5. 6 Ultrasonic testing is to be carried out on rudder stocks having a finished diameter of 200 mm or greater.

2. 5. 7 Ultrasonic testing is to be carried out in the zones II and III as indicated in Figure 5. 2. 2: Inspection zones for ultrasonic testing on rudder stocks. Areas may be upgraded to a higher zone at the discretion of the Surveyor.

2. 5. 8 Ultrasonic acceptance criteria are shown in Table 5. 3. 3: Acceptance criteria for ultrasonic testing, alternatively *See* Ch 1, 5 Non-destructive examination.

Figure 5. 2. 2: Inspection zones for ultrasonic testing on rudder stocks



NOTE
Axial scan from end face also required for Type A and Type B

PART

2

CHAPTER **5** **Steel Forgings**

SECTION **3** **Forgings for shafting and machinery**

3. 1 Scope

3. 1. 1 Detailed in this Section are the requirements for carbon-manganese steel forgings for shafting and other items of machinery which are not within the scope of Ch 5, 4 Forgings for crankshafts to Ch 5, 8 Ferritic steel forgings for low temperature service.

3. 1. 2 Where it is proposed to use alloy steel forgings, particulars of the chemical composition, mechanical properties and heat treatment are to be submitted for approval.

3. 2 Chemical composition

3. 2. 1 The chemical composition of ladle samples for carbon and carbon-manganese steels is to comply with the following overall limits:

Carbon	0.65% max.
Silicon	0.45% max.
Manganese	0.30- 1.50%
Sulphur	0.035% max.
Phosphorus	0.035% max.

Residual elements:

Copper	0.30% max.
Chromium	0.30% max.
Molybdenum	0.15% max.
Nickel	0.40% max.
Total	0.85% max.

3. 2. 2 For alloy steels, *See* Ch 5, 1.4 Chemical composition 1.4.3.

3. 2. 3 For forgings to which structural items are to be attached by welding, or which are intended for parts of a fabricated component, are to be of weldable quality, *See* Ch 5, 2.2 Chemical composition 2.2.1.

3. 3 Heat treatment

3. 3. 1 3.3.1 Forgings are to be:

a. fully annealed; or
b. normalised; or
c. normalised and tempered; or
d. quenched and tempered.

The tempering temperature is to be not less than 550°C.

3. 4 Mechanical tests

3. 4. 1 At least one tensile test is to be made on each forging, or each batch of forgings. Impact tests are not required except on screwshafts for ice service, *See* Ch 5, 3.4 Mechanical tests 3.4.12.

3. 4. 2 Where a forging exceeds both 4 tonnes in mass and 3 m in length, a tensile test is to be taken from each end. These limits refer to the `as forged' mass and length but exclude the test material.

3. 4. 3 A batch testing procedure may be used for hot rolled bars not exceeding 250 mm diameter, which are intended for the manufacture (by machining operations only) of straight shafting, bolts, studs and other machinery components of similar shape. A batch is to consist of either:

a. material from the same piece provided that, where this is cut into individual lengths, these are all heat treated together in the same furnace, or
b. bars of the same diameter and cast, heat treated together in the same furnace and with a total mass not exceeding 2.5 tonnes.

3. 4. 4 The test specimens are to be taken in the longitudinal direction but, at the discretion of the manufacturer and if agreed by the Surveyor, alternative directions or positions as shown in Figs. Figure 5. 3. 1: Directions and positions of test specimens, Figure 5. 3. 2: Directions and positions of test specimens, and Figure 5. 3. 3: Directions and positions of test specimens may be used.

Figure 5. 3. 1: Directions and positions of test specimens

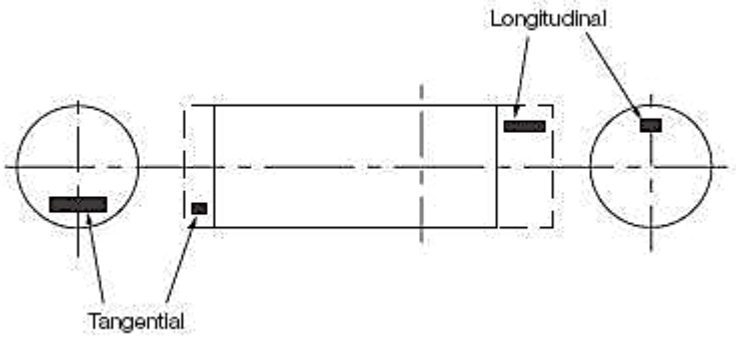


Figure 5. 3. 2: Directions and positions of test specimens

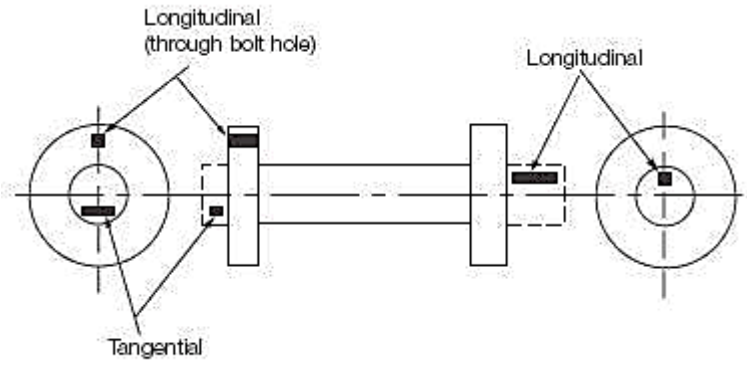
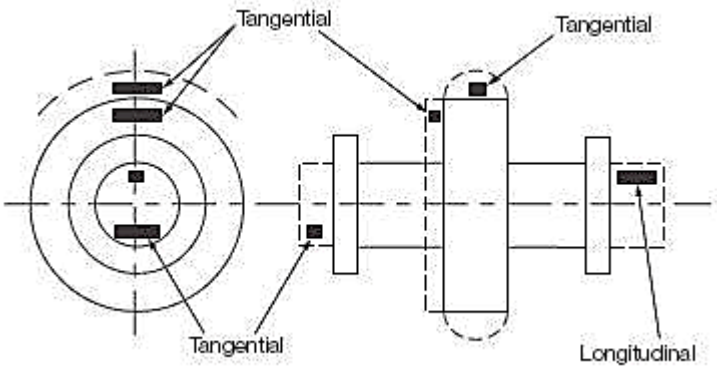


Figure 5. 3. 3: Directions and positions of test specimens



3. 4. 5 For carbon-manganese steels, Table 5. 3. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon and carbon-manganese steel forgings for machinery and shafting gives the minimum requirements for yield stress, elongation and reduction of area, corresponding to different strength levels, but it is not intended that these should necessarily be regarded as specific grades. Intermediate values for other specified minimum tensile strengths should be calculated by interpolation.

3. 4. 6 Forgings may be supplied to any specified minimum tensile strength selected within the general limits detailed in Table 5. 3. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon and carbon-manganese steel forgings for machinery and shafting, except that for main propulsion shafting forgings the specified minimum tensile strength is to be as defined in the relevant Rules dealing with design.

Table 5. 3. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon and carbon-manganese steel forgings for machinery and shafting

Tensile strength N/mm^2 (*See* Note 1)	Yield stress N/mm^2	Elongation on 5.65 $\sqrt{S_0}$ min %		Reduction of area min. %	
		Longitudinal	Tangential	Longitudinal	Tangential
360 – 480	180	28	20	50	35
400 – 520	200	26	19	50	35

440 – 560		220	24	18	50	35
470 – 590		235	23	17	45	35
480 – 600		240	22	16	45	30
520 – 640		260	21	15	45	30
560 – 680		280	20	14	40	27
600 – 750		300	18	13	40	27
640 – 790		320	17	12	40	27
680 – 830		340	16	12	35	24
700 – 850	*See* Note 2	350	15	11	35	24
720 – 870		360	15	11	35	24
760 – 910		380	14	10	35	24

Note *1.* For main propulsion shafting forgings, the specified minimum tensile strength is to be as defined in the relevant Rules dealing with design.

Note *2.* Where the specified minimum tensile strength exceeds 700 N/mm^2, forgings are to be supplied only in the quenched and tempered condition.

3. 4. 7 The results of all tensile tests are to comply with the requirements given in Table 5. 3. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon and carbon-manganese steel forgings for machinery and shafting appropriate to the specified minimum tensile strength.

3. 4. 8 The minimum requirements for yield stress, elongation and reduction of area, corresponding to different strength levels in alloy steel forgings are given in Table 5. 3. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: alloy steel forgings for machinery and shafting.

Table 5. 3. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: alloy steel forgings for machinery and shafting

Tensile strength N/mm^2 (*See* Note)	Yield stress N/mm^2	Elongation on 5.65 $\sqrt{S_0}$ min %		Reduction of area min. %	
		Longitudinal	Tangential	Longitudinal	Tangential
600 – 750	420	18	14	50	35
650 – 800	450	17	13	50	35
700 – 850	480	16	12	45	30
750 – 900	530	15	11	45	30
800 – 950	580	14	10	40	27
850 – 1000	630	13	9	40	27
900 – 1100	690	13	9	40	27
950 – 1150	750	12	8	35	24
1000 – 1200	810	12	8	35	24
1050 – 1250	870	11	7	35	24

1100 – 1300	930	11	7	35	24

Note For main propulsion shafting forgings, the minimum specified tensile strength is to be as defined in the relevant Rules dealing with design. For other forgings the minimum specified tensile strength is not to exceed 1100 N/mm^2 (1100–1300 N/mm^2 acceptance range).

3. 4. 9 Forgings in alloy steels may be supplied to any specified minimum tensile strength selected within the general limits detailed in Table 5. 3. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: alloy steel forgings for machinery and shafting, and minimum yield stress, elongation and reduction of area, obtained by interpolation, except that for main propulsion shafting forgings the specified minimum tensile strength is to be as defined in the relevant Rules dealing with design.

3. 4. 10 The results of all tensile tests are to comply with the requirements given in Table 5. 3. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: alloy steel forgings for machinery and shafting appropriate to the specified minimum tensile strength.

3. 4. 11 Where more than one tensile test is taken from a forging, the variation in tensile strength is not to exceed the following:

Specified minimum tensile strength N/mm^2	Difference in tensile strength N/mm^2
<600	70
≥600 <900	100
≥900	120

3. 4. 12 For screwshafts intended for ships with the notation **Ice Class 1AS** or **1A** and where the connection between the propeller and the screwshaft is by means of a key, a set of three Charpy V-notch impact tests (longitudinal test) is to be made on material from the propeller end of each shaft. The tests are to be carried out at −10°C and the average energy value is to be not less than 20 J.

3. 5 Non-destructive examination

3. 5. 1 Magnetic particle or penetrant testing (where appropriate) is to be carried out on forgings for main propulsion shafting (including propeller shafts, intermediate shafts, and thrust shafts with minimum diameter not less than 100 mm), on all connecting rod and tie rod forgings and on the following components:

Cylinder heads (when intended for engines having a bore diameter larger than 300 mm)
Piston crowns (when intended for engines having a bore diameter larger than 400 mm)
Piston rods (when intended for engines having a bore diameter larger than 400 mm)
Turbocharger shaft and rotor (when required by the relevant Rules dealing with engine design and construction)
When intended for engines having a bore diameter larger than 300 mm, bolts and studs for:

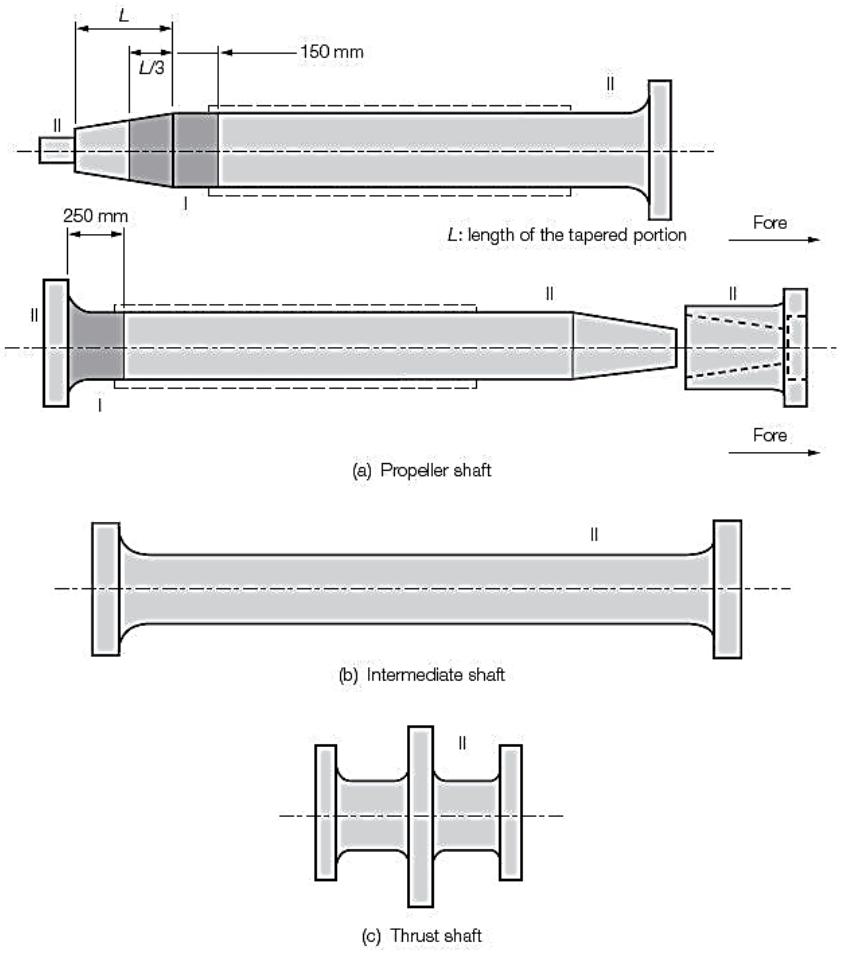
- Cylinder heads
- Crossheads
- Connecting rod bearings
- Main bearings
- Crankshafts
- Tie rods

- Holding down bolts
- Propeller blades
- Propeller bosses

Regardless of the above , bolts and studs which are subjected to dynamic loading (for example, but not limited to, cylinder head bolts, tie rods, crankpin bolts, main bearing bolts, engine holding down bolts, propeller blade fastening bolts) and have a diameter of 50mm or greater are to be subjected to surface examinations.

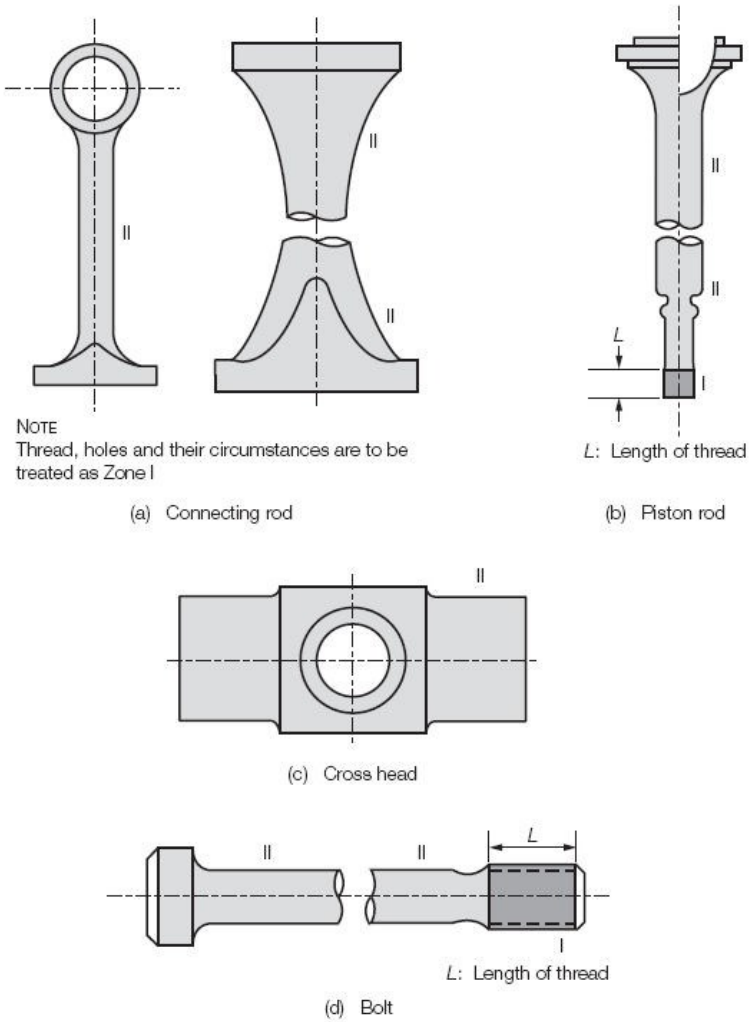
3. 5. 2 The areas to be tested by magnetic particle or dye penetrant testing are shown in Figure 5. 3. 4: Zones for magnetic particle/dye penetrant testing on machinery components and Figure 5. 3. 5: Zones for magnetic particle/dye penetrant testing on machinery components. Areas of other components not shown in these figures are to be agreed with the Surveyor. For tie rods, only threaded portions and the adjacent material over a length equal to that of the thread need be tested.

Figure 5. 3. 4: Zones for magnetic particle/dye penetrant testing on machinery components



NOTE
For propeller shaft, intermediate shafts and thrust shafts, all areas with stress raisers such as radial holes, slots and key ways are to be treated as Zone I.

Figure 5. 3. 5: Zones for magnetic particle/dye penetrant testing on machinery components



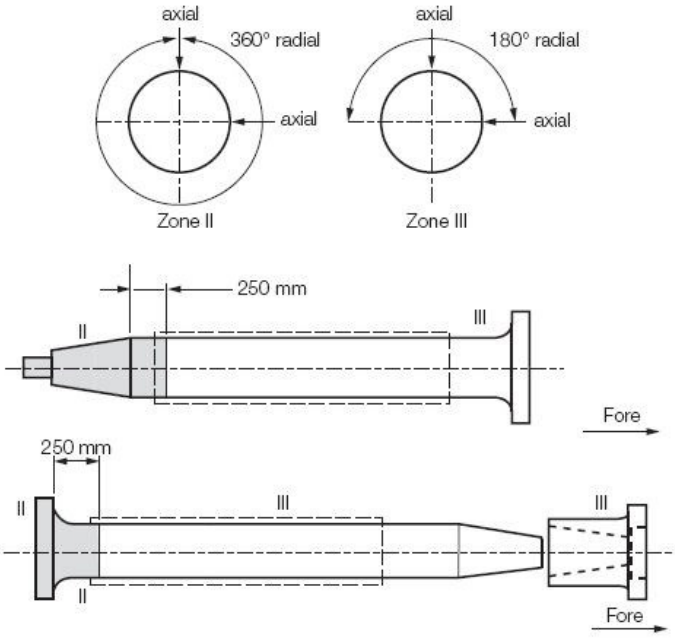
3. 5. 3 Surface inspection acceptance criteria are to be in accordance with Ch 5, 2.5 Non-destructive examination. Other acceptance criteria may be applied, providing they meet these minimum criteria, and are to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

3. 5. 4 Ultrasonic testing is to be carried out in accordance with Ch 5, 2.5 Non-destructive examination on the following items unless otherwise agreed with ACS:

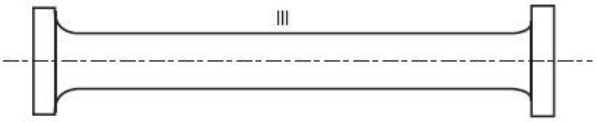
a. Shafts having a finished diameter of 200 mm or larger when intended for main propulsion or other essential services.
b. All piston crowns
c. All cylinder heads.
d. Piston rods for engines having a bore diameter greater than 400 mm.
e. Connecting rods
f. Turbocharger shaft and rotor (when required by the relevant Rules dealing with design and construction).
g. Bolts and studs (as listed in Ch 5, 3.5 Non-destructive examination 3.5.1) for engines having a bore diameter greater than 300 mm.

The areas to be tested are shown in Figure 5. 3. 6: Zones for ultrasonic testing on shafts and Figure 5. 3. 7: Zones for ultrasonic testing on machinery components. Areas of other components not shown in these drawings are to be agreed with the Surveyor.

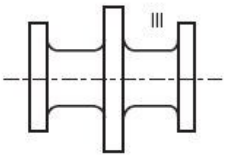
Figure 5. 3. 6: Zones for ultrasonic testing on shafts



(a) Propeller shaft



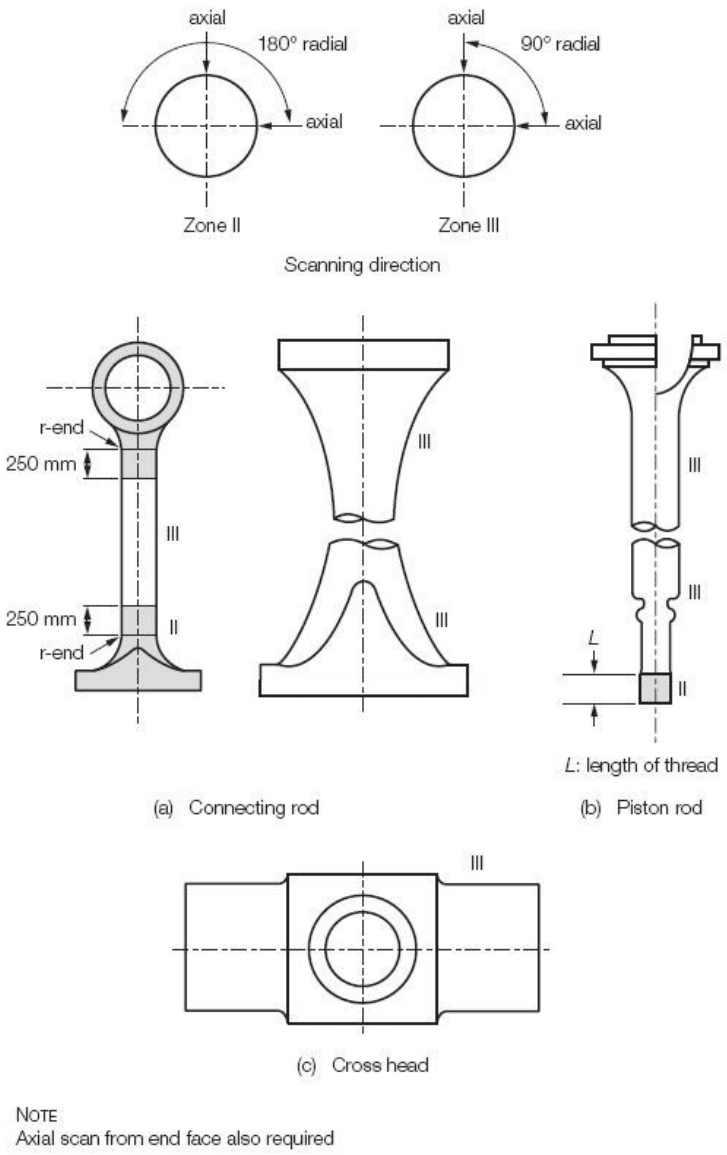
(b) Intermediate shaft



(c) Thrust shaft

NOTES
1. For hollow shafts, 360° radial scanning applies to Zone III
2. Circumferences of the bolt holes in the flanges are to be treated as Zone II
3. Axial scan from end face also required

Figure 5. 3. 7: Zones for ultrasonic testing on machinery components



NOTE
Axial scan from end face also required

3. 5. 5 Ultrasonic acceptance criteria are shown in Table 5. 3. 3: Acceptance criteria for ultrasonic testing. Other acceptance criteria may be applied, providing they meet these minimum criteria, and are to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

Table 5. 3. 3: Acceptance criteria for ultrasonic testing

Type of forging	Zone	Allowable disc shape according to Distance Gain Size (DGS), *See* Note 1,mm	Allowable length of indication, mm*See* Note 2
Propeller shaft	II	Outer $\underline{d} \leq 2$	≤10
Intermediate shaft		Inner $\underline{d} \leq 4$	≤15
Thrust shaft	III	Outer $\underline{d} \leq 3$	≤10

Rudder stock		Inner $\underline{d} \leq 6$	≤ 15
Connecting rod Piston rod	II	$\underline{d} \leq 2$	≤ 10
	III	$\underline{d} \leq 4$	≤ 10

Note *1.* Outer part means the part beyond one third of the shaft radius from the centre. The inner part means the remaining core area.

Note *2.* For accumulations of two or more isolated indications which are subjected to registration, the minimum distance between two neighbouring indications is to be at least the length of the larger indication.

PART

2

CHAPTER **5** **Steel Forgings**

SECTION **4** **Forgings for crankshafts**

4. 1 Scope

4. 1. 1 The specific requirements for solid forged crankshafts and forgings for use in the construction of fully built and semi-built crankshafts are detailed in this Section.

4. 1. 2 Where it is proposed to use alloy steel forgings, particulars of the chemical composition (*See* Ch 5, 1.4 Chemical composition 1.4.3), heat treatment and mechanical properties are to be submitted for approval. The specified minimum tensile strength is not to exceed 1000 N/mm^2 (1000–1200 N/mm^2 acceptance range).

4. 2 Manufacture

4. 2. 1 For closed die and continuous grain flow crankshafts forgings, where an allowance is given for design purposes, full details of the proposed method of manufacture are to be submitted for approval. In such cases, tests will be required to demonstrate that a satisfactory structure and grain flow are obtained. The number and positions of test specimens are to be agreed with ACS.

4. 2. 2 For the manufacture of welded crankshafts, approval is required for the welding procedure.

4. 2. 3 For combined crankweb and pin forgings, the proposed method of forging is to be submitted for approval. It is recommended that these forgings be made by a folding method. Other methods which can be shown to produce sound forgings with satisfactory mechanical properties will be considered, but where the gapping method is used for cranks having a pin diameter exceeding 510 mm this will only be accepted provided that an upsetting operation is included in the manufacturing sequence. In general, the amount of work during the upsetting operation is to be such that the reduction in the original length of the ingot (after discard) or bloom is not less than 50 per cent.

4. 2. 4 Where crankwebs are flame cut from forged or rolled slabs, the procedure used is to be in accordance with Ch 5, 1.2 Manufacture 1.2.13, and additionally, unless specially agreed, a depth of at least 7.5 mm is to be removed by machining from all flame-cut surfaces.

4. 3 Chemical composition

4. 3. 1 The chemical composition of ladle samples is to comply with Ch 5, 3.2 Chemical composition 3.2.1 for carbon and carbon-manganese steels and Ch 5, 1.4 Chemical composition 1.4.3 for alloy steels.

4. 3. 2 For alloy steel forgings which are to be nitrided, the phosphorus or sulphur contents are not to exceed 0.02 per cent.

4. 4 Heat treatment

4. 4. 1 For forgings in all types of steels, heat treatment is to be either:

a. normalising and tempering, or

b. quenching and tempering.

The temperature used for tempering is to be not less than 550°C.

4. 4. 2 Where it is proposed to surface harden crankshaft forgings by nitriding or induction hardening, full details of the proposed procedure are to be submitted as required by Ch 5, 1.5 Heat treatment 1.5.6.

4. 5 Mechanical tests

4. 5. 1 At least one tensile test specimen is to be taken from each forging.

4. 5. 2 For solid forged crankshafts, tests are to be taken in the longitudinal direction from the coupling end of each forging (test position A in Figure 5. 4. 1: Solid forged crankshaft). Where the mass, as heat treated but excluding test material, exceeds 3 tonnes, a second set of tests is to be taken from the end opposite the coupling, in addition (test position B in Figure 5. 4. 1: Solid forged crankshaft). Where the crankthrows are formed by machining or flame cutting, the second set of tests is to be taken in a tangential direction from material removed from the crankthrow at the end opposite the coupling (test position C in Figure 5. 4. 1: Solid forged crankshaft). For continuous grain flow (CGF) crankshaft forgings, where insufficient material exists for a second longitudinal test, the second set of tests may be taken in a tangential direction from the crankthrow (test position C in Figure 5. 4. 2: CGF Crankshaft).

Figure 5. 4. 1: Solid forged crankshaft

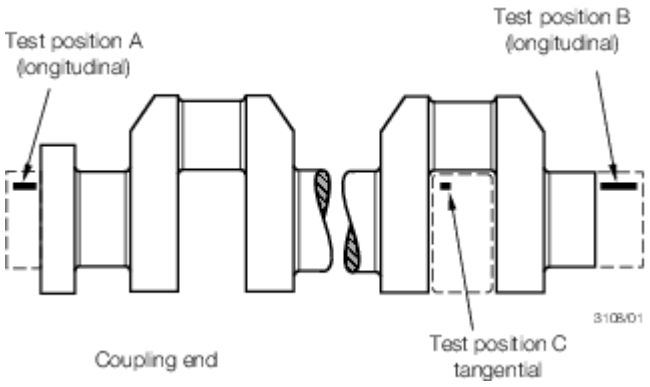
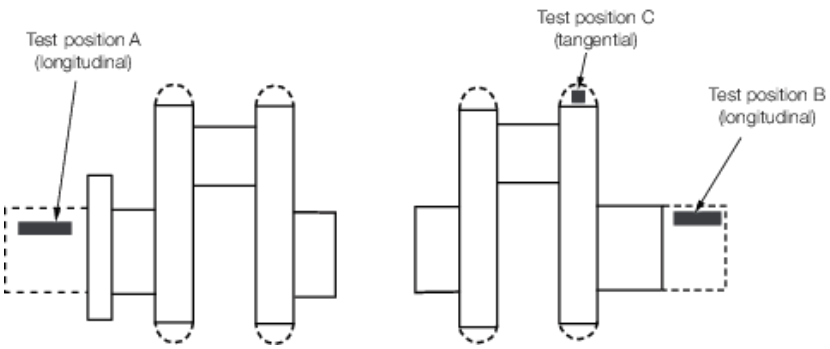


Figure 5. 4. 2: CGF Crankshaft



4. 5. 3 The number and position of test specimens from combined crankweb and pin forgings are to be in accordance with the requirements of the approved method of manufacture.

4. 5. 4 For other crankshaft forgings, tests are to be taken as detailed in Ch 5, 3 Forgings for shafting and machinery, except that for crankwebs the test specimens are to be cut in a tangential direction.

4. 5. 5 As an alternative to Ch 5, 4.5 Mechanical tests 4.5.2, small solid forged crankshafts may be batch tested in accordance with Ch 5, 1.6 Test material 1.6.4, provided that, in addition, hardness tests are carried out on each forging.

4. 5. 6 Table 5. 4. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon-manganese steel forgings for crankshafts to Table 5. 4. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon-manganese steel forgings for crankshafts give the minimum requirements for yield stress and elongation corresponding to different strength levels, but it is not intended that these should necessarily be regarded as specific grades. The strength levels have been given in multiples of 40 N/mm^2, or 50 N/mm^2 in the case of alloy steels, to facilitate interpolation for intermediate values of specified minimum tensile strength.

Table 5. 4. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon-manganese steel forgings for crankshafts

Tensile strength N/mm^2	Yield stress N/mm^2 minimum	Elongation on $5.65\sqrt{S_0}$% minimum		Hardness Brinell
		Long.	Tang.	
400 – 520	200	26	19	110 – 150
440 – 560	220	24	18	125 – 160
480 – 600	240	22	16	135 – 175
520 – 640	260	21	15	150 – 185
560 – 680	280	20	14	160 – 200
600 – 750	300	18	13	175 – 215
640 – 790	320	17	12	185 – 230
680 – 830	340	16	12	200 – 240
720 – 870	350	15	11	210 – 250
760 – 910	380	14	18	225 – 265
Intermediate values may be obtained by interpolation.				

4. 5. 7 Forgings may be supplied to any specified minimum tensile strength selected within the general limits detailed in Table 5. 4. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon-manganese steel forgings for crankshafts to Table 5. 4. 3: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: alloy steel forgings for crankshafts - Quenched and tempered.

4. 5. 8 The results of all tensile tests are to comply with the requirements of Table 5. 4. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon-manganese steel forgings for crankshafts, Table 5. 4. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: alloy steel forgings for crankshafts - Normalised and tempered or Table 5. 4. 3: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: alloy steel forgings for crankshafts - Quenched and tempered appropriate to the specified minimum tensile strength.

4. 5. 9 Where more than one tensile test is taken from a forging, the variation in tensile strength is not to exceed the following:

Specified minimum tensile strength N/mm^2	Difference in tensile strength N/mm^2
<600	70
≥600 <900	100
≥900	120

4. 5. 10 For small crankshaft forgings which have been batch tested, the hardness values are to be not less than those given in Table 5. 4. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon-manganese steel forgings for crankshafts to Table 5. 4. 3: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: alloy steel forgings for crankshafts - Quenched and tempered, as appropriate. The variation in hardness in each batch is to comply with the following:

Specified minimum tensile strength (N/mm^2)	Difference in hardness (Brinell number)
<600	not more than 25
≥600 <900	not more than 35
≥900	not more than 42

Table 5. 4. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: alloy steel forgings for crankshafts - Normalised and tempered

Tensile strength N/mm^2	Yield stress N/mm^2 minimum	Elongation on 5.65 $\sqrt{S_0}$% minimum		Hardness Brinell
		Long.	Tang.	
600 – 750	330	18	14	175 – 215
650 – 800	355	17	13	190 – 235
700 – 850	380	16	12	205 – 245
750 – 900	405	15	11	215 – 260
800 – 950	430	14	10	235 – 275
Intermediate values may be obtained by interpolation.				

Table 5. 4. 3: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: alloy steel forgings for crankshafts - Quenched and tempered

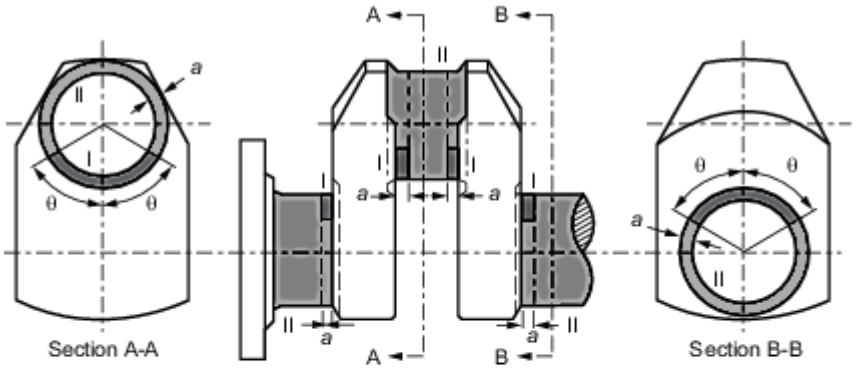
Tensile strength N/mm^2	Yield stress N/mm^2 minimum	Elongation on 5.65 $\sqrt{S_0}$% minimum		Hardness Brinell
		Long.	Tang.	
600-750	420	18	14	175-215
650-800	450	17	13	190-235
700-850	480	16	12	205-245

750-900	530	15	11	215-260
800-950	590	14	10	235-275
850-1000	640	13	9	245-290
900-1100	690	13	9	260-320
950-1150	750	12	8	275-340
1000-1200	810	12	8	290-365
Intermediate values may be obtained by interpolation.				

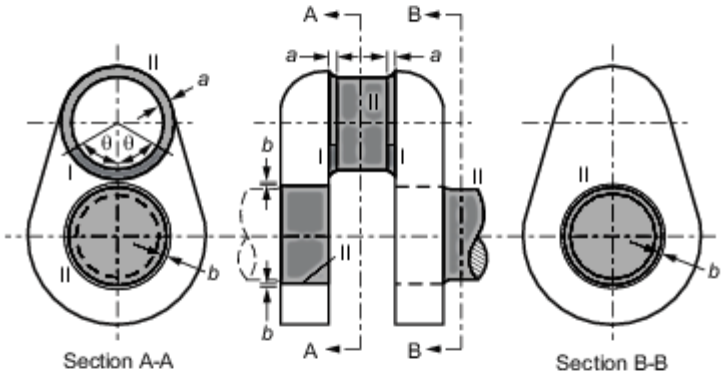
4. 6 Non-destructive examination

4. 6. 1 Magnetic particle or dye penetrant testing as detailed in Ch 5, 1.8 Visual and non-destructive examination 1.8.5 is to be carried out on all forgings for crankshafts. Where applicable, this is to include all surfaces which have been flame-cut, but not subsequently machined during manufacture. Particular attention is to be given to the testing of the pins, journals and associated fillet radii of solid forged crankshafts and to the pins and fillet radii of combined web and pin forgings. The extent of testing is shown in Figure 5. 4. 3: Zones for magnetic particle/dye penetrant testing on crankshafts.

Figure 5. 4. 3: Zones for magnetic particle/dye penetrant testing on crankshafts



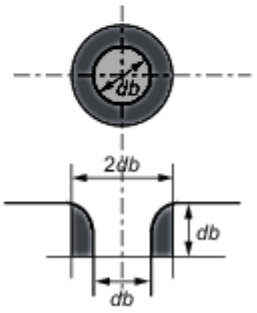
(a) Solid crankshaft



(b) Semi built-up crankshaft

NOTES

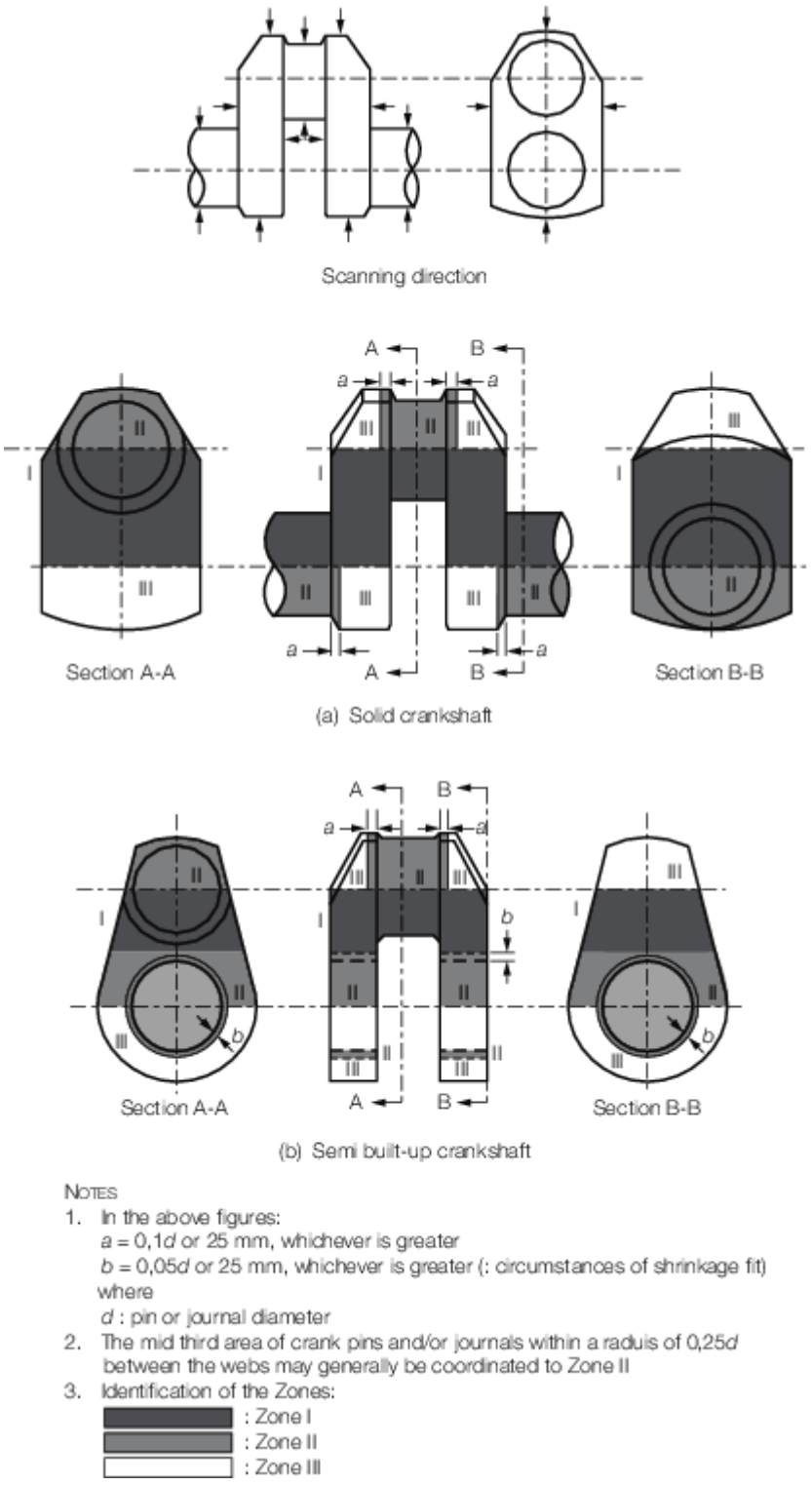
1. Where the crankpin or journal has oil holes, the circumferential surfaces of the oil are to be treated as Zone I, (*see* the figure on the right)
2. In the above figures:
   θ = 60°
   a = 1,5*r*
   b = 0,05*d* (: circumferential surfaces of shrinkage fit)
   where
   r : fillet radius
   d : journal diameter
3. Identification of the Zones:
   : Zone I
   : Zone II
   : Zone III



db: Oil hole bore diameter

4. 6. 2 The manufacturer is to carry out an ultrasonic examination of all forgings as detailed in Ch 5, 1.8 Visual and non-destructive examination 1.8.8. The extent of ultrasonic testing is shown in Figure 5. 4. 4: Zones for ultrasonic testing on crankshafts.

Figure 5. 4. 4: Zones for ultrasonic testing on crankshafts



NOTES
1. In the above figures:
   $a = 0{,}1d$ or 25 mm, whichever is greater
   $b = 0{,}05d$ or 25 mm, whichever is greater (: circumstances of shrinkage fit)
   where
   d : pin or journal diameter
2. The mid third area of crank pins and/or journals within a raduis of $0{,}25d$ between the webs may generally be coordinated to Zone II
3. Identification of the Zones:
   : Zone I
   : Zone II
   : Zone III

4. 6. 3 Surface inspection acceptance criteria are to be in accordance with Ch 5, 1.8, Visual and non-destructive examination and with Table 5. 4. 4: Surface inspection acceptance for crankshaft forgings – Allowable number and size of indications in a reference area of 225 cm2. Other acceptance criteria may be applied, providing they meet these minimum criteria, and is to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

Table 5. 4. 4: Surface inspection acceptance for crankshaft forgings – Allowable number and size of indications in a reference area of 225 cm²

Inspection zone	Maximum number of indication	Type of indication	Maximum number each type	Maximum dimension of single indication, mm
I Critical fillet area	0	Linear Non-linear Aligned	0 0 0	- - -
II Important fillet area	3	Linear Non-linear Aligned	0 3 0	- 3.0 -
III Journal surfaces	3	Linear Non-linear Aligned	0 3 0	- 5.0 -

4. 6. 4 Ultrasonic acceptance criteria are shown in Table 5. 4. 5: Ultrasonic acceptance criteria for crankshafts. Other acceptance criteria may be applied, providing they meet these minimum criteria, and is to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

Table 5. 4. 5: Ultrasonic acceptance criteria for crankshafts

Type of forging	Zone	Allowable disc shape according to Distance Gain Size (DGS), mm	Allowable length of indication, mm *See* Note
Crank shaft	I II III	$\underline{d} \leq 2.0$ $\underline{d} \leq 3.0$ $\underline{d} \leq 4.0$	– ≤10 ≤15
Note For accumulations of two or more isolated indications which are subjected to registration, the minimum distance between two neighbouring indications is to be at least the length of the larger indication. This applies to the distance in axial direction as to the distance in depth. Isolated indications with less distance are to be determined as one single indication.			

PART

2

CHAPTER **5** **Steel Forgings**

SECTION **5** **Forgings for gearing**

5. 1 Scope

5. 1. 1 Provision is made in this Section for carbon-manganese and alloy steel forgings intended for use in the construction of gearing for main propulsion and for driving electric generators.

5. 1. 2 Gear wheel and rim forgings with a specified minimum tensile strength not exceeding 760 N/mm^2 (760–910 N/mm^2 acceptance range) may be made in carbon-manganese steel. Gear wheel or rim forgings where the specified minimum tensile strength is in excess of 760 N/mm^2, and all pinion or pinion sleeve forgings, are to be made in a suitable alloy steel. Specifications for alloy steel components and for quill shafts, giving chemical composition, heat treatment and mechanical properties, are to be submitted for approval.

5. 1. 3 Forgings for flexible couplings, quill shafts and gear wheel shafts are to comply with the requirements of Ch 5, 3 Forgings for shafting and machinery.

5. 1. 4 Manufacturers' test certificates for forgings may be accepted where the transmitted power does not exceed 220 kW (300 shp) for main propulsion and 100 kW (150 shp) for auxiliary drives.

5. 2 Manufacture

5. 2. 1 All forgings are to be made with sufficient material to allow an adequate machining allowance on all surfaces for the removal of unsound or decarburised material.

5. 2. 2 The hardenabilty of the forged material is to be checked at random intervals using an end quench test complying with a National or International Standard.

5. 2. 3 The grain size is to be checked on a random basis in accordance with the testing and reporting procedures of ASTM E 112, or an equivalent National Standard, and is to be within the range 5 to 8.

5. 2. 4 The microstructure of the hardened case is to be mainly martensite, with a maximum content of 15 per cent of retained austenite.

5. 3 Chemical composition

5. 3. 1 The chemical composition of ladle samples is to comply with Ch 5, 3.2 Chemical composition 3.2.1 for carbon and carbon-manganese steels and Ch 5, 1.4 Chemical composition 1.4.3 for alloy steels.

5. 4 Heat treatment

5. 4. 1 Except as provided in Ch 5, 5.4 Heat treatment 5.4.4 and Ch 5, 5.4 Heat treatment 5.4.5, forgings may be either normalised and tempered or quenched and tempered in accordance with the approved specification. The tempering temperature is to be not less than 550°C.

5. 4. 2 Where forgings are machined prior to heat treatment, the allowance left for final machining is to be sufficient to remove the decarburised surface material, taking into account any bending or distortion which may occur.

5. 4. 3 When the teeth of a pinion or gear wheel are to be surface hardened, i.e. carburised, nitrided or induction hardened, the proposed specification together with details of the process and practice are to be submitted for approval. For purposes of initial approval, the gear manufacturer is required to demonstrate by test that the surface hardening of the teeth is uniform and of the required depth and that it does not impair the soundness and quality of the steel.

5. 4. 4 Where induction hardening of nitriding is to be carried out after machining of the gear teeth, the forgings are to be heat treated at an appropriate stage to a condition suitable for this subsequent surface hardening.

5. 4. 5 Forgings for gears which are to be carburised after final machining are to be supplied in either the fully annealed or the normalised and tempered condition, suitable for subsequent machining and carburising.

5. 5 Mechanical tests for through hardened, induction hardened or nitrided forgings

5. 5. 1 At least one tensile test specimen is to be taken from each forging in carbon or carbon-manganese steel, and at least one tensile specimen from forgings in alloy steel. Sufficient test material is to be provided for this purpose and the test specimens are to be taken as follows:

a. For pinion forgings where the finished diameter of the toothed portion exceeds 200 mm, tests are to be taken in a tangential direction and adjacent to the toothed portion (test position B in Figure 5. 5. 1:Test positions for forgings for gearing). Where the dimensions preclude the preparation of tests from this position, tests in a tangential direction are to be taken from the end of the journal (test position C in Figure 5. 5. 1:Test positions for forgings for gearing). If, however, the journal diameter is 200 mm or less, tests are to be taken in a longitudinal direction (test position A in Figure 5. 5. 1:Test positions for forgings for gearing). Where the finished length of the toothed portion exceeds 1250 mm, tests are to be taken from each end.

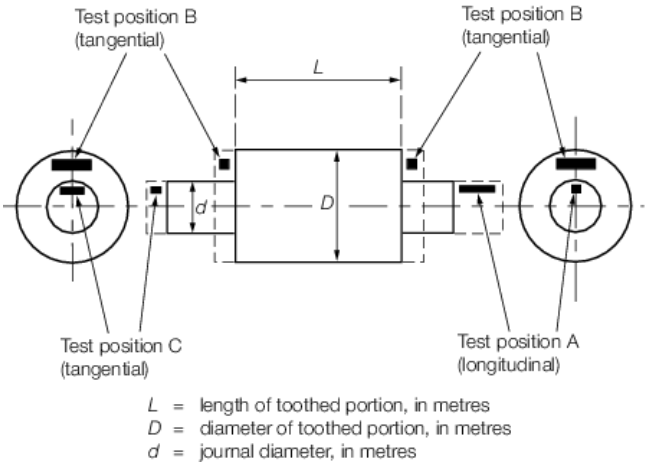
b. For small pinion forgings where the finished diameter of the toothed portion is 200 mm or less, tests are to be taken in a longitudinal direction (test position A in Figure 5. 5. 1:Test positions for forgings for gearing).

c. For gear wheel forgings, tests are to be taken in a tangential direction (from one of the test positions B in Figure 5. 5. 2: Test position B).

d. For gear wheel rim forgings, tests are to be taken in a tangential direction (from one of the test positions A in Figure 5. 5. 3: Test position A). Where the finished diameter exceeds 2500 mm or the mass (as heat treated but excluding test material) exceeds 3 tonnes, tests are to be taken from two diametrically opposite positions (test positions A in Figure 5. 5. 3: Test position A).

e. For pinion sleeve forgings, tests are to be taken in a tangential direction (from one of the test positions C in Figure 5. 5. 4: Test position C). Where the finished length exceeds 1250 mm, tests are to be taken from each end.

Figure 5. 5. 1:Test positions for forgings for gearing



L = length of toothed portion, in metres
D = diameter of toothed portion, in metres
d = journal diameter, in metres

Figure 5. 5. 2: Test position B

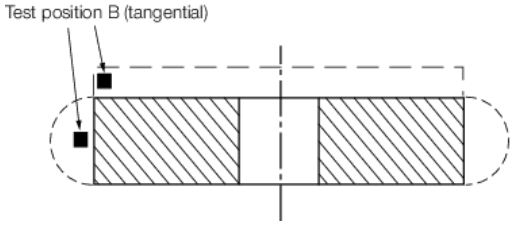


Figure 5. 5. 3: Test position A

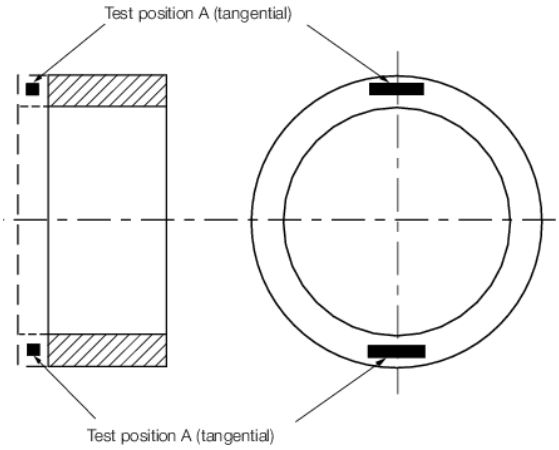
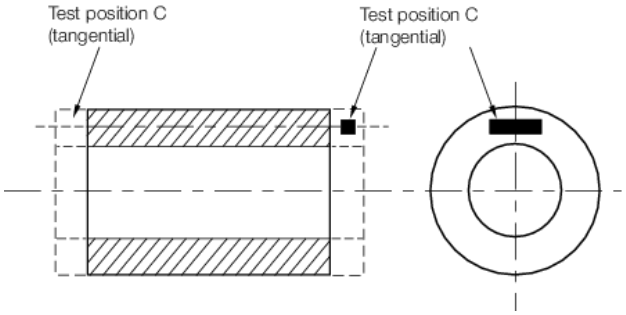


Figure 5. 5. 4: Test position C



5. 5. 2 As an alternative to Ch 5, 5.5 Mechanical tests for through hardened, induction hardened or nitrided forgings 5.5.1, small forgings may be batch tested in accordance with Ch 5, 1.6 Test material 1.6.4 provided that, in addition, hardness tests are carried out on each forging.

5. 5. 3 Table 5. 5. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon-manganese steels for gear wheel and rim forgings to Table 5. 5. 3: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: alloy steel gear forgings - Quenched and tempered give the minimum requirements for yield stress and elongation corresponding to different strength levels, but it is not intended that these should necessarily be regarded as specific grades. The strength levels have been given in multiples of 40 N/mm^2, or 50 N/mm^2 in the case of alloy steels, to facilitate interpolation for intermediate values of specified minimum tensile strength.

Table 5. 5. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon-manganese steels for gear wheel and rim forgings

Tensile strength N/mm^2(*See* Note)	Yield stress N/mm^2 minimum	Elongation on $5.65\sqrt{S_0}$ % minimum		Hardness Brinell
		Rims	Wheels	
400 - 520	200	26	22	110 - 150
440 - 560	220	24	21	125 - 160
480 - 600	240	22	19	135 - 175
520 - 640	260	21	18	150 - 185
560 - 680	280	20	17	160 - 200
600 - 750	300	18	15	175 - 215
640 - 790	320	17	14	185 - 230
680 - 830	340	16	14	200 - 240
720 - 870	360	15	13	210 - 250
760 - 910	380	14	12	225 - 265
Intermediate values may be obtained by interpolation.				
Note When the specified minimum tensile strength exceeds 700 N/mm^2 forgings are to be supplied only in the quenched and tempered condition.				

5. 5. 4 Forgings may be supplied to any specified minimum tensile strength selected within the general limits detailed in Table 5. 5. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon-manganese

steels for gear wheel and rim forgings to Table 5. 5. 3: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: alloy steel gear forgings - Quenched and tempered.

5. 5. 5 The results of all tensile tests are to comply with the requirements of Table 5. 5. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon-manganese steels for gear wheel and rim forgings, Table 5. 5. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: alloy steel gear wheel and rim forgings - Normalised and tempered or Table 5. 5. 3: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: alloy steel gear forgings - Quenched and tempered, appropriate to the specified minimum tensile strength. Unless otherwise agreed, the specified minimum tensile strength is to be not less than 800 N/mm^2 (800–950 N/mm^2 acceptance range) for induction hardened or nitrided gear forgings.

5. 5. 6 Where more than one tensile test is taken from a forging, the variation in tensile strength is not to exceed the following:

Specified minimum tensile strength N/mm^2	Difference in tensile strength N/mm^2
<600	70
≥600 <900	100
≥900	120

5. 5. 7 Hardness tests are to be carried out on all forgings after completion of heat treatment and prior to machining the gear teeth. The hardness is to be determined at four positions equally spaced around the circumference of the surface where teeth will subsequently be cut. Where the finished diameter of the toothed portion exceeds 2500 mm, the number of test positions is to be increased to eight. Where the width of a gear wheel rim forging exceeds 1250 mm, the hardness is to be determined at eight positions at each end of the forging.

Table 5. 5. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: alloy steel gear wheel and rim forgings - Normalised and tempered

Tensile strength N/mm^2	Yield stress N/mm^2 minimum	Elongation on $5.65\sqrt{S_0}$ % minimum		Hardness Brinell
		Rims	Wheels	
600 – 750	330	18	16	175 – 215
650 – 800	355	17	15	190 – 235
700 – 850	380	16	14	205 – 245
750 – 900	405	15	13	215 – 260
800 – 950	430	14	12	235 – 275
850 – 1000	455	13	11	245 – 290
Intermediate values may be obtained by interpolation.				

Table 5. 5. 3: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: alloy steel gear forgings - Quenched and tempered

Tensile strength N/mm^2 (*See* Notes 1 and 2)	Yield stress N/mm^2 Minimum (*See* Note 2)	Elongation on $5.65\sqrt{S_0}$ % minimum	Hardness Brinell

		A	B	C	
600 – 750	420	18	16	14	175 – 215
650 – 800	450	17	15	13	190 – 235
700 – 850	480	16	14	12	205 – 245
750 – 900	530	15	13	11	215 – 260
800 – 950	590	14	12	10	235 – 275
850 – 1000	640	13	11	9	245 – 290
900 – 1050	690	13	11	9	260 – 310
950 – 1100	750	12	10	8	275 – 330
1000 – 1150	810	12	10	8	290 – 340
1050 – 1200	870	11	9	7	310 – 365

= Column A is applicable to tests from gear rims and to longitudinal tests from pinions.

= Column B is applicable to tests from gear wheels and to tangential tests from pinions.

= Column C is applicable to tests from pinion sleeves.

Intermediate values may be obtained by interpolation

Note *1*. For gear wheel and rim forgings the specified minimum tensile strength is not to exceed 850 N/mm^2.

Note *2*. For carburised gear forgings the requirements for minimum yield stress and maximum tensile strength are not applicable

5. 5. 8 For small gear forgings which are batch tested, at least one hardness test is to be carried out on each forging.

5. 5. 9 The results of all hardness tests are to comply with the appropriate requirements of Table 5. 5. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon-manganese steels for gear wheel and rim forgings to Table 5. 5. 3: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: alloy steel gear forgings - Quenched and tempered. The difference between the highest and lowest values on any one forging is not to exceed the following:

Specified minimum tensile strength (N/mm$^{2)}$	Difference in hardness (Brinell number)
<600	25
≥600 <900	35
≥900	42

5. 5. 10 On nitrided or induction hardened components, hardness tests are also to be made on the teeth when surface hardening and grinding have been completed. The results are to comply with the approved specification.

5. 6 Mechanical tests for carburised forgings

5. 6. 1 Sufficient test material is to be provided for preliminary tests at the forge and for final tests after completion of carburising. For this purpose, duplicate sets of test material are to be taken from

positions as detailed in Ch 5, 5.5 Mechanical tests for through hardened, induction hardened or nitrided forgings 5.5.1, except that, irrespective of the dimensions or mass of the forging, tests are required from one position only, and in the case of forgings with integral journals are to be cut in a longitudinal direction. The test material which is to be used for measurements of case depth, hardness, grain size and residual austenite as well as mechanical properties is to be machined to a coupon of diameter of $\frac{D}{4}$ or 30 mm, whichever is less, where D is the finished diameter of the toothed portion.

5. 6. 2 For small forgings, where a system of batch testing is adopted, the test material may be prepared from surplus steel from the same cast provided that the forging reduction approximates to that of the actual gear forgings. The test samples are to be correctly identified and heat treated with the forgings they represent.

5. 6. 3 For preliminary tests at the forge, one set of test material is to be given a blank carburising and heat treatment cycle simulating that which will be subsequently applied to the forgings.

5. 6. 4 For final acceptance tests, the second set of test material is to be blank carburised and heat treated together with the forgings which it represents.

5. 6. 5 At the discretion of the forgemaster or gear manufacturer, test samples of larger cross-section than in Ch 5, 5.6 Mechanical tests for carburised forgings 5.6.1 may be either carburised or blank carburised, but these are to be machined to the required diameter prior to the final quenching and stress relieving heat treatment.

5. 6. 6 At least one tensile specimen is to be prepared from each sample of test material.

5. 6. 7 Unless otherwise agreed, the specified minimum tensile strength is to be not less than 750 N/mm^2, and the results of all tensile tests are to comply with the requirements given in Table 5. 5. 3: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: alloy steel gear forgings - Quenched and tempered.

5. 6. 8 Where it is proposed to adopt alternatives to the requirements of Ch 5, 5.6 Mechanical tests for carburised forgings 5.6.1 to Ch 5, 5.6 Mechanical tests for carburised forgings 5.6.7, full details are to be submitted to the Surveyor for consideration.

5. 7 Non-destructive examination

5. 7. 1 Magnetic particle or liquid penetrant testing is to be carried out on the teeth of all surface hardened forgings. This examination may also be requested on the finished machined teeth of through hardened gear forgings.

5. 7. 2 The manufacturer is to carry out an ultrasonic examination of all forgings where the finished diameter of the surfaces, where teeth will be cut, is in excess of 200 mm, and is to provide the Surveyor with a signed statement that such inspection has not revealed any significant internal defects.

5. 7. 3 On gear forgings where the teeth have been surface hardened, additional test pieces may be required to be processed with the forgings and subsequently sectioned to determine the depth of the hardened zone. These tests are to be carried out at the discretion of the Surveyor, and for induction or carburised gearing the depth of the hardened zone is to be in accordance with the approved specification. For nitrided gearing, the full depth of the hardened zone, (i.e. depth to core hardness), is to be not less than 0.5 mm and the hardness at a depth of 0.25 mm is to be not less than 500 HV.

PART

2

CHAPTER **5** **Steel Forgings**

SECTION **6** **Forgings for turbines**

6. 1 Scope

6. 1. 1 Provision is made in this Section for ferritic steel forgings for turbine rotors, discs and spindles, turbine-driven generator rotors and compressor rotors.

6. 1. 2 Plans for rotor forgings are to state whether the rotor is intended for propulsion or auxiliary machinery and the shaft power of auxiliary turbines. In the case of a rotor which is to be tested for thermal stability, the maximum operating temperature and the proposed test temperature are also to be stated.

6. 1. 3 Specifications of alloy steel forgings giving the proposed chemical composition, heat treatment and mechanical properties are to be submitted for approval with the plans of the components.

6. 1. 4 Where it is proposed to use rotors of welded construction, the compositions of the steels for the forgings are to be submitted for special consideration, together with details of the proposed welding procedure. Welding procedure tests may be required.

6. 2 Manufacture

6. 2. 1 Forgings are to be manufactured in accordance with the requirements of Ch 5, 1 General requirements, except that for rotors the forging reduction is to be not less than 2.5 to 1. Where an upsetting operation is included in the manufacturing procedure, the above requirement applies to the cross-sectional area of the upset bloom and not to that of the ingot.

6. 3 Chemical composition

6. 3. 1 The chemical composition of ladle samples is to comply with Ch 5, 3.2 Chemical composition 3.2.1 for carbon and carbon-manganese steels and Ch 5, 1.4 Chemical composition 1.4.3 for alloy steels.

6. 4 Heat treatment

6. 4. 1 Forgings are to be supplied in the heat treated condition, and the thermal treatment at all stages is to be such as to avoid the formation of hair-line cracks. At a suitable stage of manufacture, the forgings are to be reheated above the upper critical point to refine the grain, cooled in an approved manner and then tempered to produce the desired mechanical properties.

6. 4. 2 Where forgings receive their main heat treatment before machining, they are to be stress relieved after rough machining. Forgings which are heat treated in the rough machined condition need not be stress relieved provided that they have been slowly cooled from the tempering temperature.

6. 4. 3 The tempering and stress relieving temperatures are to be not less than 550°C for carbon and carbon-manganese steels, and not less than 600°C for alloy steels. The holding times and subsequent cooling rates are to be such that the forging in its final condition is free from harmful residual stresses.

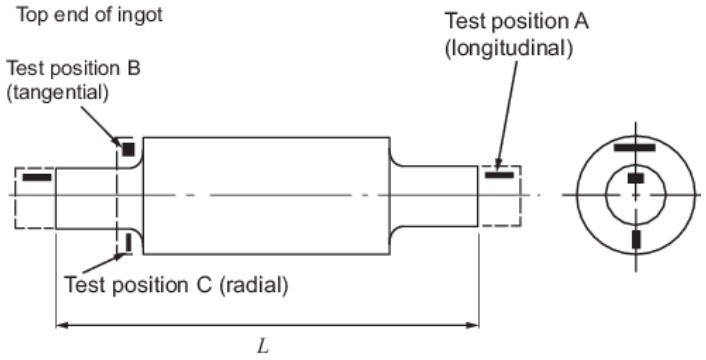
6. 4. 4 Details of the proposed heat treatment for rotors of welded construction are to be submitted for approval.

6. 5 Mechanical tests

6. 5. 1 At least one tensile test specimen, cut in a longitudinal direction, is to be taken from each rotor forging. For forgings exceeding both 3 tonnes in mass and 2000 mm in length, tests are to be taken from each end.

6. 5. 2 For rotor forgings of all main propulsion machinery and of auxiliary turbines exceeding 1100 kW, tangential and, where the dimensions permit, radial tensile tests are to be taken from the end of the body corresponding to the top end of the ingot, *See* Figure 5. 6. 1: Test positions for turbine rotor forgings.

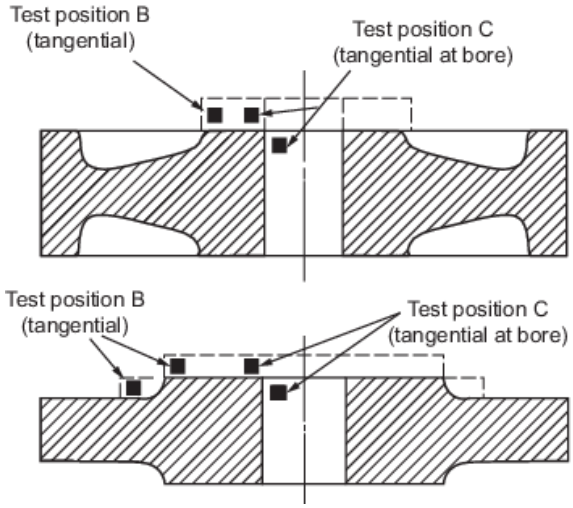
Figure 5. 6. 1: Test positions for turbine rotor forgings



6. 5. 3 For each turbine disc, at least one tensile test specimen is to be cut in a tangential direction from material at the hub, *See* Figure 5. 6. 2: Test positions for turbine disc forgings.

6. 5. 4 For the tests required by Ch 5, 6.5 Mechanical tests 6.5.1 to Ch 5, 6.5 Mechanical tests 6.5.3, sufficient test material is to be left on each forging and is not to be removed until all heat treatment, including stress relieving, has been completed. In this connection, a thermal stability test does not form part of the heat treatment of a turbine forging. Any excess test material is not to be completely severed from a forging until all the mechanical tests have been completed with satisfactory results.

Figure 5. 6. 2: Test positions for turbine disc forgings



6. 5. 5 Table 5. 6. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon-manganese steel forgings for turbines - Normalised and tempered and Table 5. 6. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: alloy steel forgings for turbines - Quenched and tempered or normalised and tempered give the minimum requirements for yield stress, elongation and reduction of area corresponding to different strength levels, but it is not intended that these should necessarily be regarded as specific grades. The strength levels have been given in multiples of 40 N/mm^2, or 50 N/mm^2 for alloy steels, to facilitate interpolation for intermediate values of specified minimum tensile strength.

6. 5. 6 Forgings may be supplied to any specified minimum tensile strength selected within the general limits detailed in Table 5. 6. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon-manganese steel forgings for turbines - Normalised and tempered or Table 5. 6. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: alloy steel forgings for turbines - Quenched and tempered or normalised and tempered.

6. 5. 7 The results of all tensile tests are to comply with the requirements of Table 5. 6. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon-manganese steel forgings for turbines - Normalised and tempered or Table 5. 6. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: alloy steel forgings for turbines - Quenched and tempered or normalised and tempered or normalised and tempered appropriate to the specified minimum tensile strength. For monobloc rotor forgings, the specified minimum tensile strength is not to exceed 800 N/mm^2.

6. 6 Non-destructive examination

6. 6. 1 The end faces of the body of rotor forgings and the end faces of the boss and the bore surface of each turbine disc are to be machined to a fine smooth finish for visual and magnetic particle examination.

6. 6. 2 The manufacturer is to carry out an ultrasonic examination of each forging and is to provide the Surveyor with a signed statement that such inspection has not revealed any significant internal defects.

6. 6. 3 Rotor forgings for propulsion machinery and for auxiliary turbines exceeding 1100 kW are to be hollow bored for internal examination. The surface of the bore is to have a fine smooth finish and is to be examined by means of an optical instrument of suitable magnification. Where the bore size permits, magnetic particle examination is also to be carried out. These examinations are to be confirmed by the Surveyor. Alternatively, an approved method of ultrasonic examination may be accepted instead of hollow boring. Details of the proposed method of ultrasonic examination are to be submitted for special consideration.

Table 5. 6. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon-manganese steel forgings for turbines - Normalised and tempered

Tensile strength N/mm^2	Yield stress N/mm^2 minimum	Elongation $5.65\sqrt{S_0}$ % minimum			Reduction of area % minimum		
		A	B	C	A	B	C
400 – 520	200	26	22	18	50	40	35
440 – 560	220	24	21	17	50	40	35
480 – 600	240	22	19	15	45	35	30
520 – 640	260	21	18	14	45	35	30
560 – 680	280	20	17	13	40	30	25
600 – 720	300	18	15	12	40	30	25

Columns A are applicable to longitudinal tests from rotor and spindle forgings.
Columns B are applicable to tangential tests from rotor forgings.
Columns C are applicable to radial tests from rotor forgings.
Intermediate values may be obtained by interpolation.

6. 7 Thermal stability tests

6. 7. 1 Thermal stability tests after heat treatment and rough machining of the turbine rotors, referred to in the relevant Rules dealing with design and construction, are to be undertaken in properly constructed furnaces, using accurate and reliable measuring equipment. Each test is to be carried out in accordance with the following recommended procedure:

a. Five bands are to be machined concentric with the axis of rotation. Two of these are to be reference bands and are to be positioned at or near the locations of the bearings. The remaining three bands are to be test bands located one as near as possible to the mid-length, and the other two near each end of the body. Where the length of a rotor is such that five bands cannot be provided, alternative proposals are to be submitted to the Surveyor for his approval.

b. Four positions, 90° apart, are to be stamped A, B, C and D on the coupling end of the rotor.

c. The whole of the body, and as much of the shaft at either end as will include the positions of the glands, is to be enclosed in the furnace. In the case of a rotor having an overhung astern wheel, the astern wheel is also to be enclosed in the furnace during the first test.

d. The rotor is to be rotated at a uniform and very low speed.

e. The deflections at all bands are to be recorded at the A, B, C and D positions. Initial cold readings are to be taken prior to heating.

f. The rotor is to be heated uniformly and slowly. Temperatures are to be recorded continuously at the surface of the rotor and, if practicable, in the bore at the mid-length of the body. In no circumstances is the surface temperature to exceed the temperature at which the rotor was tempered. During heating, the rate of rise of temperature is to be such as to avoid excessive temperature gradients in the rotor.

g. The maximum or holding temperature is to be not less than 28°C above the maximum operating temperature of the rotor. For the purposes of the test, the holding period is to start when the rotor has attained a uniform and specified temperature. The rotor is to be held under the specified temperature conditions until not less than three consecutive hourly readings of deflections show the radial eccentricity to be constant within 0.006 mm on all test bands.

h. The turbine rotor is to be rotated during cooling until the temperature is not more than 100°C. The rate of cooling is to be such as to avoid excessive temperature gradients in the rotor.

i. Final cold readings are to be taken.

Table 5. 6. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: alloy steel forgings for turbines - Quenched and tempered or normalised and tempered

Tensile strength N/mm^2 (*See* Note)	Yield stress N/mm^2 minimum Normalised and tempered	Yield stress N/mm^2 minimum Quenched and tempered	Elongation on 5.65 $\sqrt{S_0}$ % minimum			Reduction of area % minimum		
			A	B	C	A	B	C
500 – 650	275	–	22	20	18	50	40	35
550 – 700	300	–	20	18	16	50	40	35
600 – 750	330	410	18	16	14	50	40	35
650 – 800	355	450	17	15	13	50	40	35
700 – 850	385	490	16	14	12	45	35	30
750 – 900	–	530	15	13	11	45	35	30
800 – 950	–	590	14	12	10	45	35	30
850 – 1000	–	640	13	11	9	40	30	25
900 – 1050	–	690	13	11	9	40	30	25
950 – 1100	–	750	12	10	8	40	30	25
1000 – 1150	–	810	12	10	8	40	30	25

Columns A are applicable to longitudinal tests from rotor and spindle forgings.Columns B are applicable to tangential tests from rotor and spindle forgings, and to tangential tests from discs – test position B in Figure 5. 6. 2: Test positions for turbine disc forgings. Columns C are applicable to radial test from rotor forgings and to tangential tests from discs – test position C in Figure 5. 6. 2: Test positions for turbine disc forgings.Intermediate values may be obtained by interpolation.

6. 7. 2 The movements of the axis of the rotor in relation to the reference bands are to be determined from polar plots of the deflection readings. The radial movement of the shaft axis, as determined by the difference between the final hot and the final cold movements, is not to exceed 0.025 mm on any one band. As verification that test equipment and conditions are satisfactory, it is required that similar determinations of differences between initial cold and final cold movements do not exceed 0.025 mm on any one band.

6. 7. 3 If the results of the test on a rotor fail to meet either or both of the requirements in Ch 5, 6.7 Thermal stability tests 6.7.2, the test may be repeated if requested by the maker and agreed by the Surveyor. In the case of a rotor failing to meet the requirements of a thermal stability test, the rotor is deemed unacceptable. Proposals for the rectification of thermal instability of a rough machined rotor are to be submitted for special consideration.

PART

2

CHAPTER **5** **Steel Forgings**

SECTION **7** **Forgings for boilers, pressure vessels and piping systems**

7. 1 Scope

7. 1. 1 Provision is made in this Section for carbon-manganese and low alloy steel forgings intended for use in the construction of boilers, pressure vessels and piping systems where the design temperature is not lower than 0°C.

7. 1. 2 In addition to specifying mechanical properties at ambient temperature for the purposes of acceptance testing, these requirements give details of appropriate mechanical properties at elevated temperatures to be used for design purposes.

7. 1. 3 Forgings used in the construction of equipment for the containment of liquefied gases are to comply with the requirements of Ch 5, 8 Ferritic steel forgings for low temperature service, except for those used in piping systems, where the design temperature is not lower than 0°C. Forgings for other pressure vessels and piping systems, where the use of steels with guaranteed impact properties at low temperatures is required, are also to comply with Ch 5, 8 Ferritic steel forgings for low temperature service.

7. 2 Chemical composition

7. 2. 1 The chemical composition of ladle samples is to comply with the appropriate requirements of Table 5. 7. 1: Chemical composition.

7. 3 Heat treatment

7. 3. 1 Carbon-manganese steel forgings are to be normalised, normalised and tempered or quenched and tempered.

7. 3. 2 Alloy steel forgings are to be normalised and tempered or quenched and tempered.

7. 3. 3 No forging is to be fully heat treated more than twice.

7. 4 Mechanical tests

7. 4. 1 Except as provided in Ch 5, 7.4 Mechanical tests 7.4.2 and Ch 5, 7.4 Mechanical tests 7.4.4, at least one tensile test is to be taken from each forging and, where the dimensions and shape allow, the test specimen is to be cut in the longitudinal direction.

Table 5. 7. 1: Chemical composition

Type of steel		Chemical composition of ladle samples %

	Tensile strength N/mm^2	C max.	Si	Mn	P max.	S max.	Al	Residual elements	
Carbon-manganese	410-530 450-580 490-610	0.20 0.23 0.25	0.10–0.40	0.50-1.20 0.80-1.40 0.90-1.70	0.030	0.025	(*See* Notes 1 and 3)	Ni 0.40 max. Cr 0.25 max. Mo 0.10 max. Cu 0.30 max. Total 0.80 max.	
								Cr	Mo
Alloy steel 1Cr1/2Mo 21/4 Cr1Mo	440–590 440–590	0.18 0.15	0.15–0.40	0.40–0.70	0.030	0.025	0.020 max.(*See* Note 2)	0.85–1.15 2.0–2.5	0.45–0.65 0.90–1.20

Note *1.* Fine grained steels are to contain: aluminium (acid soluble) 0.015% min. or aluminium (total) 0.018% min.

Note *2.* For alloy steels, aluminium (acid soluble) 0.020% max. The determination of the aluminium (total) content is acceptable provided the above value is not exceeded.

Note *3.* Niobium may be used as a grain refiner in place of aluminium, in which case the content is to be in the range 0.01% to 0.06%.

7. 4. 2 On seamless drums and headers which are initially forged with open ends, test material is to be provided at each end of each forging. Where forged with one solid end, test material is to be provided at the open end only. Except where the ends are to be subsequently closed by forging, the test material is not to be removed until heat treatment has been completed. Where the ends are to be closed, rings of test material are to be cut off prior to the closing operation and are to be heat treated with the finished forging. In all cases, the test specimens are to be cut in the circumferential direction.

7. 4. 3 Unless otherwise agreed, tensile test specimens are to be taken with their axis at approximately 12.5 mm below the surface of the forging.

7. 4. 4 Small forgings may be batch tested in accordance with Ch 5, 1.6 Test material 1.6.4 provided that hardness tests are carried out on each forging. In such cases, the mass of each forging is not to exceed 1 tonne and that of the batch is not to exceed 10 tonnes and the hardness values are to accord with Table 5. 7. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes.

7. 4. 5 If required by the Surveyors or by the Fabricators, test material may be given a simulated stress relieving heat treatment prior to the preparation of the test specimens. This has to be stated on the order, together with agreed details of the simulated heat treatment and the mechanical properties which can be expected.

7. 4. 6 Except as provided in Ch 5, 7.4 Mechanical tests 7.4.7, the results of all tensile tests are to comply with the requirements given in Table 5. 7. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes appropriate to the specified minimum tensile strength.

7. 4. 7 Where tests are taken at a depth greater than 12.5 mm from the surface or where they are taken in a transverse direction, the mechanical properties which can be expected are to be agreed.

7. 4. 8 On seamless drums and headers where tests are taken from each end, the variation in tensile strength is not to exceed 70 N/mm^2.

7. 4. 9 For small batch-tested forgings, the hardness values are to comply with the requirements of Table 5. 7. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes appropriate to the specified minimum tensile strength. If forgings of more than one thickness are to be supplied from one cast, then the test is to be made on the thickest forging.

7. 5 Non-destructive examination

7. 5. 1 Non-destructive testing is to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of the approved forging drawing and specification, or as otherwise agreed between the manufacturer, purchaser and Surveyor.

7. 6 Pressure tests

7. 6. 1 Where applicable, pressure tests are to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of the relevant Rules.

7. 7 Mechanical properties for design purposes

7. 7. 1 Nominal values for the minimum lower yield or 0.2 per cent proof stress at temperatures of 50°C and higher are given in Table 5. 7. 3: Mechanical properties for design purposes. These values are intended for design purposes only, and verification is not required except for materials complying with National or proprietary specifications where the elevated temperature properties used for design purposes are higher than those given in Table 5. 7. 3: Mechanical properties for design purposes.

Table 5. 7. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes

Type of steel	Diameter or equivalent thickness	Yield stress N/mm^2	Tensile strength N/mm^2	Elongation on 5.65 $\sqrt{S_0}$% minimum	Hardness Brinell
Carbon-manganese not specifically fine grained	≤100	215	410 – 530	20	110 – 155
	>100 ≤500	205			
	≤100	245	460 – 580	18	130 – 170
	>100	235			
	≤100	265	490 – 610	16	140 – 180
	>100	255			
Carbon-manganese, fine grained	≤100	235	410 – 530	20	110 – 155
	>100 ≤250	220			
	≤100	275	460 – 580	18	130 – 170
	>100 ≤250	255			
	≤100	305	490 – 610	16	140 – 180
	>100 ≤250	280			
Alloy steel					

1Cr 1/2Mo	—	275	440 – 590	19	110 – 160
2 1/4Cr1Mo	—	275	490 – 640	18	140 – 185

Table 5. 7. 3: Mechanical properties for design purposes

Type of steel	Diameter or equivalent thickness mm	Tensile strength N/mm²	Nominal minimum lower yield or 0.2% proof stress N/mm²											
			Temperature °C											
			50	100	150	200	250	300	350	400	450	500	550	600
Carbon-manganese not specifically fine grained	≤100	410–530	196	192	188	181	168	150	142	138	136	–	–	–
	>100		183	178	175	170	162	150	142	138	136	–	–	–
	≤100	460–580	227	222	218	210	194	176	168	162	158	–	–	–
	>100		212	206	203	197	188	176	168	162	158	–	–	–
	≤100	490–610	245	240	236	227	210	192	183	177	172	–	–	–
	>100		229	222	219	212	203	192	183	177	172	–	–	–
Carbon-manganese fine grained	≤100	410–530	222	215	204	188	171	152	141	134	130	–	–	–
	>100		207	200	190	175	164	152	141	134	130	–	–	–
	≤100	460–580	262	251	236	217	198	177	167	158	153	–	–	–
	>100		244	233	220	202	190	177	167	158	153	–	–	–
	≤100	490–610	286	272	256	234	213	192	182	173	168	–	–	–
	>100		266	253	238	218	205	192	182	173	168	–	–	–
Alloy steel 1Cr $^{1}/_{2}$Mo	—	410–560	254	241	224	213	197	184	170	162	157	151	146	145
2 $^{1}/_{4}$ Cr1Mo	—	490–640	268	261	253	245	236	230	224	218	205	189	167	145

7. 7. 2 Where verification is required, at least one tensile test at the proposed design or other agreed temperature is to be made on each forging or each batch of forgings. The test specimen is to be taken from material adjacent to that used for tests at ambient temperature, and the test procedure is to be in accordance with the requirements of Ch 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials. The results of all tests are to comply with the requirements of the National or proprietary specification.

7. 7. 3 Values for the estimated average stress to rupture in 100 000 hours are given in Table 5. 7. 4: Mechanical properties for design purposes: estimated average values for stress to rupture in 100 000 hours (units N/mm2) and may be used for design purposes.

Table 5. 7. 4: Mechanical properties for design purposes: estimated average values for stress to rupture in 100 000 hours (units N/mm²)

Temperature °C	Grades of steel		
	Carbon-manganese	1Cr 1/2Mo	2 1/4 Cr1Mo

380	227	—	—
390	203	—	—
400	179	—	—
410	157	—	—
420	136	—	—
430	117	—	—
440	100	—	—
450	85	290	—
460	73	262	—
470	63	235	210
480	55	208	186
490	—	181	165
500	—	155	145
510	—	129	128
520	—	103	112
530	—	80	98
540	—	62	84
550	—	49	72
560	—	42	61
570	—	36	49
580	—	32	—
590	—	29	—

PART

2

CHAPTER **5** **Steel Forgings**

SECTION **8** **Ferritic steel forgings for low temperature service**

8. 1 Scope

8. 1. 1 The requirements for carbon-manganese and nickel steels suitable for low temperature service are detailed in this Section. They are applicable to all forgings used for the construction of cargo tanks, storage tanks and process pressure vessels for liquefied gases and, where the design temperature is less than 0°C, to forgings for the piping systems.

8. 1. 2 The requirements are also applicable to forgings for other pressure vessels and pressure piping systems where the use of steels with guaranteed impact properties at low temperatures is required.

8. 1. 3 In all cases, details of the proposed chemical composition, heat treatment and mechanical properties are to be submitted for approval.

8. 1. 4 In addition to the steels in this Section, the austenitic stainless steels detailed in Ch 5, 9 Stainless steel forgings may also be used for low temperature applications.

8. 2 Chemical composition

8. 2. 1 The chemical composition of ladle samples is, in general, to comply with the requirements given in Table 5. 8. 1: Chemical composition of ferritic steel forgings.

8. 3 Heat treatment

8. 3. 1 Forgings are to be normalised, normalised and tempered or quenched and tempered in accordance with the approved specification.

8. 4 Mechanical tests

8. 4. 1 At least one tensile and three Charpy V-notch impact test specimens are to be taken from each forging or each batch of forgings. Where the dimensions and shape allow, the test specimens are to be cut in a longitudinal direction.

8. 4. 2 The impact tests are to be carried out at a temperature appropriate to the type of steel and for the proposed application. Where forgings are intended for ships for liquefied gases, the test temperature is to be in accordance with the requirements given in Ch 3, 6.4 Mechanical tests 6.4.6 in Ch 3 Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars.

8. 4. 3 The results of all tensile tests are to comply with the approved specification.

8. 4. 4 The average energy values for impact tests are also to comply with the approved specification and generally with the requirements of Ch 3, 6 Carbon–manganese and nickel alloy steels for low

temperature service. One individual value may be less than the required average value provided that it is not less than 70 per cent of this value. *See* Ch 2, 1.4, Re-testing procedures for re-test procedures.

8. 5 Non-destructive examination

8. 5. 1 Non-destructive testing is to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of the approved forging drawing and specification, or as otherwise agreed between the manufacturer, purchaser and Surveyor.

8. 6 Pressure tests

8. 6. 1 When applicable, pressure tests are to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of the relevant Rules.

Table 5. 8. 1: Chemical composition of ferritic steel forgings

rade of steel	C %	Si %	Mn %	Ni %	P %	S %	Residual elements %	Grain refiners %	
								Al	Other
LT–AH (AH40) LT–DH (DH40) LT–EH (EH40)	0.18 max.	0.50 max.	0.90 – 1.60	0.40 max.	0.035 max.	0.030 max.	Cu 0.35 max. Cr 0.25 max. Mo 0.08 max. Total 0.60 max.	Total 0.020 min. Acid soluble 0.015 min.	(*See* Note) Nb 0.02 – 0.05 V 0.03 – 0.10 Ti 0.02 max.
LT–FH (FH40)	0.16 max.			0.80 max.	0.025 max.	0.020 max.			
1 ½Ni	0.18 max.	0.10–0.35	0.30 – 1.50	1.30 – 1.70	0.025 max.		Cu 0.35 max. Cr 0.25 max. Mo 0.08 max. Total 0.60 max.		
3 ½Ni	0.15 max.		0.30 – 0.90	3.20 – 3.80					
5Ni	0.12 max.			4.70 – 5.30					
9 Ni	0.10 max.			8.50 – 10.0					

Note The steel is to contain aluminium, niobium, vanadium or other suitable grain refining elements, either singly or in any combination. When used singly, the steel is to contain the specified minimum content of the grain refining element. When used in combination, the specified minimum content of each element is not applicable.

PART

2

CHAPTER **5** **Steel Forgings**

SECTION **9** **Stainless steel forgings**

9. 1 General

9. 1. 1 Forgings in austenitic and duplex stainless steels are acceptable for use in the construction of cargo tanks, storage tanks and piping systems for chemicals and liquefied gases. They may also be accepted for elevated temperature service in boilers.

9. 1. 2 Where it is proposed to use forgings in these types of steels, details of the chemical composition, heat treatment and mechanical properties are to be submitted for approval. These are to comply, in general, with the requirements of Ch 3, 7 Austenitic and duplex stainless steels for austenitic steel plates.

9. 2 Chemical composition

9. 2. 1 The chemical composition of ladle samples is to comply with the requirements given in Table 5. 9. 1: Chemical composition of stainless steel forgings.

9. 2. 2 Consideration will be given to the use of steels whose compositions are outside the scope of Table 5. 9. 1: Chemical composition of stainless steel forgings.

9. 3 Heat treatment

9. 3. 1 All materials are to be supplied in the solution treated condition.

9. 4 Mechanical tests

9. 4. 1 Tensile test specimens are to be taken in accordance with the appropriate requirements of Ch 5, 1.7 Mechanical tests.

9. 4. 2 The results of all tensile tests and impact tests are to comply with the requirements of Table 5. 9. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: stainless steel forgings or the approved specification.

9. 4. 3 For austenitic stainless steel forgings, impact tests may be omitted subject to prior agreement with ACS.

9. 5 Mechanical properties for design purposes

9. 5. 1 Where austentic stainless steel forgings are intended for service at elevated temperatures, the nominal values for the minimum one per cent proof stress at temperatures of 100°C and higher given in Table 5. 9. 3: Mechanical properties for design purposes: austenitic stainless steels steels may be used for design purposes. Verification of these values is not required except for material complying with a National or proprietary specification in which the elevated temperature

properties proposed for design purposes are higher than those given in Table 5. 9. 3: Mechanical properties for design purposes: austenitic stainless steels.

9. 6 Non-destructive examination

9. 6. 1 Non-destructive examination is to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of the approved forging drawing and specification or as otherwise agreed between the manufacturer, purchaser and Surveyor.

9. 7 Corrosion tests

9. 7. 1 Where corrosive conditions are anticipated in service, for grades 304, 316 and 317 intergranular corrosion tests are required in accordance with Ch 2, 9.1 Intergranular corrosion test. Such tests may also be required for grades 304L, 316L and 347.

9. 7. 2 Where corrosive conditions are anticipated in service, for duplex stainless grades pitting corrosion tests are required in accordance with Ch 2, 9.2 Pitting corrosion test . Unless otherwise specified, the test temperatures shall be 20°C for S31803 and 30°C for S32750.

Table 5. 9. 1: Chemical composition of stainless steel forgings

Type of steel	Chemical composition % (*See* Note)								
	C	Si	Mn	S	P	Cr	Mo	Ni	Others
Austenitic									
304L	0.03	1.000	2.000	0.030	0.045	18.0–20.0	-	8.0–13.0	-
304	0.08					18.0–20.0	-	8.0–11.0	-
316L	0.03					16.0–18.0	2.0–3.0	10.0–15.0	
316	0.08					16.0–18.0	2.0–3.0	10.0–14.0	
317	0.08					18.0–20.0	3.0–4.0	11.0–15.0	
347	0.08					17.0–20.0	–	9.0–13.0	Nb >10xC ≤1.10
Duplex									
UNS S 31803	0.03	1.00	2.00	0.020	0.030	21.0–23.0	2.5–3.5	4.5–6.5	N 0.08–0.20
UNS S 32750	0.03	0.80	1.20	0.020	0.035	24.0–26.0	3.0–5.0	6.0–8.0	N 0.24–0.32 Cu 0.50
Note Where a single value is shown (and not a range of values), the value is to be taken as maximum.									

Table 5. 9. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: stainless steel forgings

Type of steel	Tensile strength N/mm^2 minimum	1.0% proof stress N/mm^2 minimum	Elongation on 5.65 $\sqrt{S_0}$% minimum	Reduction of area % minimum	Charpy V-notch impact tests	
					Test temperature °C	Average energy J
Austenitic						
304L	485	170	30	50	–196	41

304	515	205				
316L	485	170				
316	515	205				
317	515	205				
347	515	205				
Duplex						
UNS S 31803	620	450	25	45	–20	41
UNS S 32750	800	550	15	40		

Table 5. 9. 3: Mechanical properties for design purposes: austenitic stainless steels

Type of steel	Tensile strength N/mm^2 minimum	1.0% proof stress N/mm^2 minimum	Elongation on 5.65 $\sqrt{S_0}$% minimum	Reduction of area % minimum	Charpy V-notch impact tests	
					Test temperature ^{o}C	Average energy J
Austenitic						
304L	485	170	30	50	–196	41
304	515	205				
316L	485	170				
316	515	205				
317	515	205				
347	515	205				
Duplex						
UNS S 31803	620	450	25	45	–20	41
UNS S 32750	800	550	15	40		

Table 5. 9. 4: Mechanical properties for design purposes: austenitic stainless steels

Grade	Nominal 1% proof stress (N/mm^2) at a temperature of												
	100°C	150°C	200°C	250°C	300°C	350°C	400°C	450°C	500°C	550°C	600°C	650°C	700°C
304L	168	150	137	128	122	116	110	108	106	102	100	96	93
316L	177	161	149	139	133	127	123	119	115	112	110	107	105
316LN	238	208	192	180	172	166	161	157	152	149	144	142	138
321	192	180	172	164	158	152	148	144	140	138	135	130	124
347	204	192	182	172	166	162	159	157	155	153	151	—	—

PART

2

CHAPTER **6 Steel Pipes and Tubes**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General requirements**		**446**
	1. 1	Scope	446
	1. 2	Manufacture	446
	1. 3	Quality	447
	1. 4	Dimensional tolerances	447
	1. 5	Chemical composition	447
	1. 6	Heat treatment	447
	1. 7	Test material	447
	1. 8	Dimensions of test specimens and test procedures	448
	1. 9	Visual and non-destructive testing	448
	1. 10	Hydraulic test	448
	1. 11	Rectification of defects	449
	1. 12	Identification	449
	1. 13	Certification of materials	449
SECTION 2	**Seamless pressure pipes**		**451**
	2. 1	Scope	451
	2. 2	Manufacture and chemical composition	451
	2. 3	Heat treatment	452
	2. 4	Mechanical tests	452
	2. 5	Mechanical properties for design	452
SECTION 3	**Welded pressure pipes**		**456**
	3. 1	Scope	456
	3. 2	Manufacture and chemical composition	456
	3. 3	Heat treatment	456
	3. 4	Mechanical tests	456
	3. 5	Mechanical properties for design	456

SECTION 4 Ferritic steel pressure pipes for low temperature service 458
4. 1 Scope 458
4. 2 Manufacture and chemical composition 458
4. 3 Heat treatment 458
4. 4 Mechanical tests 458
SECTION 5 Stainless steel pressure pipes 461
5. 1 Scope 461
5. 2 Manufacture and chemical composition 461
5. 3 Heat treatment 461
5. 4 Mechanical tests 461
5. 5 Corrosion tests 462
5. 6 Fabricated pipework 463
5. 7 Certification of materials 463
SECTION 6 Boiler and superheater tubes 464
6. 1 Scope 464
6. 2 Manufacture and chemical composition 464
6. 3 Heat treatment 464
6. 4 Mechanical tests 464
6. 5 Mechanical properties for design 465

PART

2

CHAPTER **6 Steel Pipes and Tubes**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 6. 1. 1: Batch sizes for pipes for Class II pressure systems 448

Table 6. 2. 1: Chemical composition of seamless pressure pipes 451

Table 6. 2. 2: Heat treatment 452

Table 6. 2. 3: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: seamless pressure pipes (maximum wall thickness 40 mm), *See* 2.1.2 453

Table 6. 2. 4: Mechanical properties for design purposes: seamless pressure pipes 453

Table 6. 2. 5: Mechanical properties for design purposes: seamless pressure pipes - Estimated values for stress to rupture in 100.000 hours (units N/mm^2) 454

Table 6. 3. 1: Chemical composition of welded pressure pipes 456

Table 6. 3. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: welded pressure pipes 457

Table 6. 3. 3: Heat treatment: welded pressure pipes 457

Table 6. 4. 1: Chemical composition 459

Table 6. 4. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes 459

Table 6. 4. 3: Heat treatment 460

Table 6. 5. 1: Chemical composition 462

Table 6. 5. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes 462

Table 6. 6. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: boiler and superheater tubes 465

PART

2

CHAPTER **6** **Steel Pipes and Tubes**

SECTION **1** **General requirements**

1. 1 Scope

1. 1. 1 This Section gives the general requirements for boiler tubes, superheater tubes and pipes intended for use in the construction of boilers, pressure vessels and pressure piping systems.

1. 1. 2 In addition to specifying mechanical properties for the purpose of acceptance testing, these requirements give details of appropriate mechanical properties at elevated temperatures to be used for design purposes.

1. 1. 3 Except for pipes for Class III pressure systems (as defined in the relevant Rules), all pipes and tubes are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of Ch 1 General Requirements and Ch 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials, the general requirements of this Section and the appropriate specific requirements given in Ch 6, 2 Seamless pressure pipes, Ch 6, 3 Welded pressure pipes, Ch 6, 4 Ferritic steel pressure pipes for low temperature service, Ch 6, 5 Stainless steel pressure pipes and Ch 6, 6 Boiler and superheater tubes.

1. 1. 4 Steels intended for the piping systems for liquefied gases where the design temperature is less than 0°C are to comply with the specific requirements of Ch 6, 4 Ferritic steel pressure pipes for low temperature service or Ch 6, 5 Stainless steel pressure pipes.

1. 1. 5 As an alternative to Ch 6, 1.1 Scope 1.1.3 and Ch 6, 1.1 Scope 1.1.4, pipes or tubes which comply with National or proprietary specifications may be accepted provided that these specifications give reasonable equivalence to the requirements of this Chapter or alternatively are approved for a specific application. Generally, survey and certification are to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of Ch 1 General Requirements.

1. 1. 6 At the discretion of the Surveyor, a modified testing procedure may be adopted for small quantities of materials. In such cases, these may be accepted on the manufacturer's declared chemical composition and hardness tests or other evidence of satisfactory properties.

1. 1. 7 Pipes for Class III pressure systems are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of an acceptable National specification. The manufacturer's test certificate will be acceptable and is to be provided for each consignment of material. Forge butt welded pipes are not acceptable for fuel oil systems, heating coils in oil tanks, primary refrigerant systems and other applications where the pressure exceeds 0.4 MPa.

1. 2 Manufacture

1. 2. 1 Pipes for Class I and II pressure systems, boiler and superheater tubes are to be manufactured at works approved by Asia Classification Society (hereinafter referred as 'ACS'). The steel used is to be manufactured and cast in ingot moulds or by an approved continuous casting process as detailed in Ch 3, 1.4 Manufacture.

1. 2. 2 Unless a particular method is requested by the purchaser, pipes and tubes may be manufactured by any of the following methods:

- Hot finished seamless.
- Cold finished seamless.
- Electric resistance or induction welded.
- Cold finished electric resistance or induction welded.
- Electric fusion welded.

1. 2. 3 Care is to be taken during manufacture that the pipe or tube surfaces coming in contact with any non-ferrous metals or their compounds are not contaminated to such an extent as could prove harmful during subsequent fabrication and operation.

1. 3 Quality

1. 3. 1 All pipes and tubes are to have a workmanlike finish and are to be clean and free from such surface and internal defects as can be established by the specified tests.

1. 3. 2 All pipes and tubes are to be reasonably straight. The ends are to be cut nominally square with the axis of the pipe or tube, and are to be free from excessive burrs.

1. 4 Dimensional tolerances

1. 4. 1 The tolerances on the wall thickness and diameter of pipes and tubes are to be in accordance with an acceptable National specification.

1. 5 Chemical composition

1. 5. 1 The requirements for the chemical composition of ladle samples and acceptable methods of deoxidation are detailed in subsequent Sections in this Chapter.

1. 6 Heat treatment

1. 6. 1 All pipes and tubes are to be supplied in the condition detailed in the relevant specific requirements.

1. 7 Test material

1. 7. 1 Pipes and tubes are to be presented for test in batches. The size of a batch and the number of tests to be performed are dependent on the application.

1. 7. 2 Where heat treatment has been carried out, a batch is to consist of pipes or tubes of the same size, manufactured from the same types of steel and subjected to the same finishing treatment in a continuous furnace, or heat treated together in the same batch type furnace.

1. 7. 3 Where no heat treatment has been carried out, a batch is to consist of pipes or tubes of the same size manufactured by the same method from material of the same type of steel.

1. 7. 4 For pipes for Class I pressure systems and boiler and superheater tubes, at least two per cent of the number of lengths in each batch is to be selected at random for the preparation of tests at ambient temperature.

1. 7. 5 For pipes for Class II pressure systems, each batch is to contain not more than the number of lengths given in Table 6. 1. 1: Batch sizes for pipes for Class II pressure systems. Tests are to be carried out on at least one pipe selected at random from each batch or part thereof.

Table 6. 1. 1: Batch sizes for pipes for Class II pressure systems

Outside diameter mm	Number in batch
≤323.9	200 pipes as made
>323.9	100 pipes as made

1. 8 Dimensions of test specimens and test procedures

1. 8. 1 The procedures for mechanical tests and the dimensions of the test specimens are to be in accordance with Ch 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials.

1. 9 Visual and non-destructive testing

1. 9. 1 All pipes for Class I and II pressure systems, boiler and superheater tubes, are to be presented for visual examination and verification of dimensions. The manufacturer is to provide adequate lighting conditions to enable an internal and external examination of the pipes and tubes to be carried out.

1. 9. 2 For welded pipes and tubes, the manufacturer is to employ suitable non-destructive methods for the quality control of the welds. It is preferred that this examination is carried out on a continuous basis.

1. 10 Hydraulic test

1. 10. 1 Each pipe and tube is to be subjected to a hydraulic test at the manufacturer's works.

1. 10. 2 The hydraulic test pressure is to be determined from the following formula, except that the maximum test pressure need not exceed 14 MPa:

$$P = \frac{2st}{D}$$

where

P = test pressure, in MPa

D = nominal outside diameter, in mm

t = nominal wall thickness, in mm

s = 80 per cent of the specified minimum yield stress, in N/mm^2, for ferritic steels and 70 per cent of the specified minimum, 1.0 per cent proof stress, in N/mm^2, for austenitic steels. These relate to the values specified for acceptance testing at ambient temperature.

1. 10. 3 The test pressure is to be maintained for sufficient time to permit proof and inspection. Unless otherwise agreed, the manufacturer's certificate of satisfactory hydraulic test will be accepted.

Where it is proposed to adopt a test pressure other than that determined as in Ch 6, 1.10 Hydraulic test 1.10.2, the proposal will be subject to special consideration.

1. 10. 4 Subject to special approval, either an ultrasonic or eddy current test can be accepted in lieu of the hydraulic test.

1. 11 Rectification of defects

1. 11. 1 Surface imperfections may be removed by grinding provided that the thickness of the pipe or tube after dressing is not less than the required minimum thickness. The dressed area is to be blended into the contour of the tube.

1. 11. 2 By agreement with the Surveyor, the repair of minor defects by welding can be accepted, subject to welding procedure tests which demonstrate acceptable properties appropriate for the grade of pipe to be repaired. Weld procedure tests are to be subjected to the same heat treatment as will be applied to the actual pipes after weld repair.

1. 11. 3 The repaired area is to be tested by magnetic particle examination, or, for austenitic steels, by liquid penetrant examination on completion of welding, heat treatment and surface grinding.

1. 12 Identification

1. 12. 1 Pipes and tubes are to be clearly marked by the manufacturer in accordance with the requirements of Ch 1 General Requirements. The following details are to be shown on all materials which have been accepted:

a. ACS or Asia Classification Society.
b. Manufacturer's name or trade mark.
c. Identification mark for the specification or grade of steel.
d. Identification number and/or initials which will enable the full history of the item to be traced.

1. 12. 2 It is recommended that hard stamping be restricted to the end face, but it may be accepted in other positions in accordance with National Standards and practices.

1. 13 Certification of materials

1. 13. 1 Unless a ACS certificate is specified in other parts of the Rules, a manufacturer’s certificate validated by ACS is to be issued, *See* Ch 1, 3.1, General.

1. 13. 2 The manufacturer is to provide ACS with the following information:

a. Purchaser's name and order number.
b. If known, the contract number for which the material is intended.
c. Address to which material is despatched.
d. Specification or the grade of material.
e. Description and dimensions.
f. Identification number and/or initials.
g. Cast number and chemical composition of ladle samples.
h. Mechanical test results, and results of the intercrystalline corrosion tests where applicable.
i. Condition of supply.

1. 13. 3 As a minimum, the chemical composition stated on the certificate is to include the content of all the elements detailed in the specific requirements. Where rimming steel is supplied, this is to be stated on the certificate.

1. 13. 4 When steel is not produced at the pipe or tube mill, a certificate is to be supplied by the steelmaker stating the process of manufacture, the cast number and the ladle analysis.

1. 13. 5 The steel manufacturer's works is to be approved by ACS.

PART

2

CHAPTER 6 Steel Pipes and Tubes

SECTION 2 Seamless pressure pipes

2. 1 Scope

2. 1. 1 Provision is made in this Section for seamless pressure pipes in carbon, carbon-manganese and low alloy steels.

2. 1. 2 Where pipes are used for the manufacture of pressure vessel shells and headers, the requirements for forgings in Ch 5, 7 Forgings for boilers, pressure vessels and piping systems are applicable where the wall thickness exceeds 40 mm.

2. 2 Manufacture and chemical composition

2. 2. 1 Pipes are to be manufactured by a seamless process and may be hot or cold finished.

2. 2. 2 The method of deoxidation and the chemical composition of ladle samples are to comply with the appropriate requirements given in Table 6. 2. 1: Chemical composition of seamless pressure pipes.

Table 6. 2. 1: Chemical composition of seamless pressure pipes

Type of steel	Grade	Method of deoxidation	Chemical composition of ladle samples %											
			C	Si	Mn	S max.	P max.	Residual elements						
Carbon and carbon-manganese	320	Semi-killed or killed	≤0.16	—	0.40—0.70	0.050	0.050	Ni 0.30 max. Cr 0.25 max. Mo 0.10 max. Cu 0.30 max. Total 0.70 max.						
	360		≤0.17	≤0.35	0.40—0.80	0.045	0.045							
	410	Killed	≤0.21	≤0.35	0.40—1.20	0.045	0.045							
	460		≤0.22	≤0.35	0.80—1.40	0.045	0.045							
	490		≤0.23	≤0.35	0.80—1.50	0.045	0.045							
1Cr½Mo	440	Killed	0.10 – 0.18	0.10 – 0.35	0.40—0.70	0.040	0.040	Ni	Cr	Mo	Cu	Sn	V	Al
								0.30 max.	0.70 – 1.10	0.45 – 0.65	0.25 max.	0.03 max.	—	≤0.020

$2^1/_4$Cr1Mo	410 490	Killed	0.08 – 0.15	0.10 – 0.50	0.40 — 0.70	0.040	0.040	0.30 max.	2.0— 2.5	0.90— 1.20	0.25 max.	0.03 max.	—	≤0.020
$^1/_2$Cr$^1/_2$Mo$^1/_4$V	460	Killed	0.10 – 0.18	0.10 – 0.35	0.40 — 0.70	0.040	0.040	0.30	0.30— 0.60	0.50— 0.70	0.25 max.	0.03 max.	0.22— 0.32	≤0.020

2. 3 Heat treatment

2. 3. 1 Pipes are to be supplied in the condition given in Table 6. 2. 2: Heat treatment.

2. 4 Mechanical tests

2. 4. 1 All pipes are to be presented in batches as defined in Ch 6, 1 General requirements.

2. 4. 2 Each pressure pipe selected for test is to be subjected to tensile and flattening or bend tests.

2. 4. 3 The results of all mechanical tests are to comply with the appropriate requirements given in Table 6. 2. 3: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: seamless pressure pipes (maximum wall thickness 40 mm), See 2.1.2.

2. 5 Mechanical properties for design

2. 5. 1 Values for nominal minimum lower yield or 0.2 per cent proof stress at temperatures of 50°C and higher are given in Table 6. 2. 4: Mechanical properties for design purposes: seamless pressure pipes and are intended for design purposes only. Verification of these values is not required, except for materials complying with National or proprietary specification where the elevated temperature properties used for design are higher than those given in Table 6. 2. 4: Mechanical properties for design purposes: seamless pressure pipes.

2. 5. 2 In such cases, at least one tensile test at the proposed design or other agreed temperature is to be made on each cast. The test specimen is to be taken from material adjacent to that used for tests at ambient temperature and tested in accordance with the procedures given in Ch 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials. If tubes or pipes of more than one thickness are supplied from one cast, the test is to be made on the thickest tube or pipe.

Table 6. 2. 2: Heat treatment

Type of steel		Condition of supply
Carbon and carbon-manganese		
Hot finished		Hot finished (*See* Note 1) Normalised (*See* Note 2)
Cold finished		Normalised (*See* Note 2)
Alloy steel		
1Cr$^1/_2$Mo		Normalised and tempered
$2^1/_4$Cr1Mo	Grade 410	Fully annealed
	Grade 490	Normalised and tempered 650—780°C
	Grade 490	Normalised and tempered 650—750°C

$^1/_2Cr^1/_2Mo^1/_4V$	Normalised and tempered
Note *1.* Provided that the finishing temperature is sufficiently high to soften the material. **Note** *2.* Normalised and tempered at the option of the manufacturer.	

2. 5. 3 As an alternative to Ch 6, 2.5 Mechanical properties for design 2.5.2, a manufacturer may carry out an agreed comprehensive test program for a stated grade of steel to demonstrate that the specified minimum mechanical properties at elevated temperatures can be consistently obtained. This test program is to be carried out under the supervision of the Surveyors, and the results submitted for assessment and approval. When a manufacturer is approved on this basis, tensile tests at elevated temperatures are not required for acceptance purposes, but at the discretion of the Surveyors occasional check tests of this type may be requested.

2. 5. 4 Values for the estimated average stress to rupture in 100 000 hours are given in Table 6. 2. 5: Mechanical properties for design purposes: seamless pressure pipes - Estimated values for stress to rupture in 100.000 hours (units N/mm2) and may be used for design purposes.

Table 6. 2. 3: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: seamless pressure pipes (maximum wall thickness 40 mm), *See* 2.1.2

Type of steel	Grade	Yield stress N/mm^2	Tensile strength N/mm^2	Elongation on $5.65\sqrt{S_0}$% minimum	Flattening test constant C	Bend test diameter of former (t = thickness)
Carbon and carbon-manganese	320	195	320—440	25	0.10	4t
	360	215	360—480	24	0.10	
	410	235	410—530	22	0.08	
	460	265	460—580	21	0.07	
	490	285	490—610	21	0.07	
$1Cr^1/_2Mo$	440	275	440—590	22	0.07	4t
$2^1/_4Cr1Mo$	410 (*See* Note 1)	135	410—560	20	0.07	4t
	490 (*See* Note 2)	275	490—640	16		
$^1/_2Cr^1/_2Mo^1/_4V$	460	275	460—610	15	0.07	4t
Note *1.* Annealed condition. **Note** *2.* Normalised and tempered condition.						

Table 6. 2. 4: Mechanical properties for design purposes: seamless pressure pipes

Type of steel	Grade	Nominal minimum lower yield or 0.2% proof stress N/mm^2											
		Temperature °C											
		50	100	150	200	250	300	350	400	450	500	550	600
Carbon and carbon-manganese	320	172	168	158	147	125	100	91	88	87	—	—	—
	360	192	187	176	165	145	122	111	109	107	—	—	—
	410	217	210	199	188	170	149	137	134	132	—	—	—

	460	241	234	223	212	195	177	162	159	156	—	—	—
	490	256	249	237	226	210	193	177	174	171	—	—	—
$1Cr^{1}/_{2}Mo$	440	254	240	230	220	210	183	169	164	161	156	151	—
$2^{1}/_{2}Cr1Mo$	410 (*See* Note 1)	121	108	99	92	85	80	76	72	69	66	64	62
	490 (*See* Note 2)	268	261	253	245	236	230	224	218	205	189	167	145
$^{1}/_{2}Cr^{1}/_{2}Mo^{1}/_{4}V$	460	266	259	248	235	218	192	184	177	168	155	148	—

Note *1.* Annealed condition.

Note *2.* Normalised and tempered condition.

Table 6. 2. 5: Mechanical properties for design purposes: seamless pressure pipes - Estimated values for stress to rupture in 100.000 hours (units N/mm^2)

Temperature °C	Carbon and carbon-manganese		$1Cr^{1}/_{2}Mo$	$2^{1}/_{4}Cr1Mo$		$^{1}/_{2}Cr^{1}/_{2}Mo^{1}/_{4}V$
	Grade 320 360 410	Grade 460 490	Grade 440	Grade 410 Annealed	Grade 490 Normalised and tempered (*See* Note)	Grade 460
380	171	227	—	—	—	—
390	155	203	—	—	—	—
400	141	179	—	—	—	—
410	127	157	—	—	—	—
420	114	136	—	—	—	—
430	102	117	—	—	—	—
440	90	100	—	—	—	—
450	78	85	—	196	221	—
460	67	73	—	182	204	—
470	57	63	—	168	186	—
480	47	55	210	154	170	218
490	36	47	177	141	153	191
500	—	41	146	127	137	170
510	—	—	121	115	122	150
520	—	—	99	102	107	131

530	—	—	81	90	93	116
540	—	—	67	78	79	100
550	—	—	54	69	69	85
560	—	—	43	59	59	72
570	—	—	35	51	51	59
580	—	—	—	44	44	46

Note When the tempering temperature exceeds 750°C, the values for Grade 410 are to be used.

PART

2

CHAPTER 6 **Steel Pipes and Tubes**

SECTION 3 **Welded pressure pipes**

3. 1 Scope

3. 1. 1 Provision is made in this Section for welded pressure pipes in carbon, carbon-manganese and low alloy steels.

3. 2 Manufacture and chemical composition

3. 2. 1 Pipes are to be manufactured by the electric resistance or induction welding process and, if required, may be subsequently hot reduced or cold finished.

3. 2. 2 Where it is proposed to use other welding processes, details of the welding processes and procedures are to be submitted for review.

3. 2. 3 In all cases, welding procedure tests are required. Test samples are to be subjected to the same heat treatment as the pipe.

3. 2. 4 The method of deoxidation and the chemical composition of ladle samples are to comply with the appropriate requirements given in Table 6. 3. 1: Chemical composition of welded pressure pipes.

3. 3 Heat treatment

3. 3. 1 Pipes are to be supplied in the heat treated condition given in Table 6. 3. 3: Heat treatment: welded pressure pipes.

3. 4 Mechanical tests

3. 4. 1 All pipes are to be presented in batches as defined in Ch 6, 1 General requirements.

3. 4. 2 Each pressure pipe selected for test is to be subjected to tensile and flattening or bend tests.

3. 4. 3 The results of all mechanical tests are to comply with the appropriate requirements given in Table 6. 3. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: welded pressure pipes.

3. 5 Mechanical properties for design

3. 5. 1 The mechanical properties at elevated temperature for carbon and carbon-manganese steels in Grades 320 to 460 and 1Cr½Mo steel can be taken from the appropriate Tables in Ch 6, 2 Seamless pressure pipes.

Table 6. 3. 1: Chemical composition of welded pressure pipes

	Grade		Chemical composition of ladle samples %

Type of steel		Method of deoxidation	C	Si	Mn	S max.	P max.	Residual elements					
Carbon and carbon-manganese	320	Any method (*See* Note)	≤0.16	–	0.30–0.70	0.050	0.050	Ni 0.30 max. Cr 0.25 max. Mo 0.10 max. Cu 0.30 max.					
	360		≤0.17	≤0.35	0.40–1.00	0.045	0.045						
	410	Killed	≤0.21	≤0.35	0.40–1.20	0.045	0.045						
	460		≤0.22	≤0.35	0.80–1.40	0.045	0.045	Total 0.70 max.					
$1Cr^{1}/_{2}Mo$	440	Killed	0.10 – 0.18	0.10 – 0.35	0.40–0.70	0.040	0.040	Ni	Cr	Mo	Cu	Sn	Al
								0.30 max.	0.70–1.10	0.45–0.65	0.25 max.	0.03 max.	≤0.020
Note For rimming steels, the carbon content may be increased to 0.19% max.													

Table 6. 3. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: welded pressure pipes

Type of steel	Grade	Yield stress N/mm^2	Tensile strength N/mm^2	Elongation on $5.65\sqrt{S_0}$% minimum	Flattening test constant C
Carbon and carbon-manganese	320	195	320 – 440	25	0.10
	360	215	360 – 480	24	0.10
	410	235	410 – 530	22	0.08
	460	265	460 – 580	21	0.07
$1Cr^{1}/_{2}Mo$	440	275	440 – 590	22	0.07

Table 6. 3. 3: Heat treatment: welded pressure pipes

Type of steel	Condition of supply
Carbon and carbon-manganese, *See* Note	Normalised (Normalised and tempered at the option of the manufacturer)
$1Cr^{1}/_{2}Mo$	Normalised and tempered
Note Subject to special approval, electric resistance welded (ERW) pipes and tubes in grades 320	

PART

2

CHAPTER 6 **Steel Pipes and Tubes**

SECTION 4 **Ferritic steel pressure pipes for low temperature service**

4. 1 Scope

4. 1. 1 Provision is made in this Section for carbon, carbon-manganese and nickel pipes intended for use in the piping arrangements for liquefied gases where the design temperature is less than 0°C. These requirements are also applicable for other types of pressure piping systems where the use of steels with guaranteed impact properties at low temperatures is required.

4. 2 Manufacture and chemical composition

4. 2. 1 Carbon and carbon-manganese steel pipes are to be manufactured by a seamless, electric resistance or induction welding process.

4. 2. 2 Nickel steel pipes are to be manufactured by a seamless process.

4. 2. 3 Seamless pipes may be hot finished or cold finished. Welded pipes may be as-welded, hot finished or cold finished. The terms `hot finished', `cold finished' and `as-welded' apply to the condition of the pipes before final heat treatment.

4. 2. 4 The method of deoxidation and the chemical composition of ladle samples are to comply with the appropriate requirements given in Table 6. 4. 1: Chemical composition.

4. 3 Heat treatment

4. 3. 1 Pipes are to be supplied in the condition given in Table 6. 4. 3: Heat treatment.

4. 4 Mechanical tests

4. 4. 1 All pipes are to be presented for test in batches as defined in Ch 6, 1 General requirements for Class 1 pressure piping systems, but in addition the material in each batch is to be from the same cast.

4. 4. 2 At least two per cent of the number of lengths in each batch is to be selected at random for the preparation of tests.

4. 4. 3 Each pressure pipe selected for test is to be subjected to tensile, flattening or bend test at room temperature and, where the wall thickness is 6 mm or greater, an impact test at the test temperature specified in Table 6. 4. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes.

4. 4. 4 The impact tests are to consist of a set of three Charpy V-notch test specimens cut in the longitudinal direction with the notch perpendicular to the original surface of the pipe. The

dimensions of the test specimens are to be in accordance with the requirements of Ch 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials.

4. 4. 5 The results of all tensile, impact (when applicable), flattening and bend tests are to comply with the appropriate values in Table 6. 4. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes. *See* Ch 2, 1.4, Re-testing procedures for re-testing procedures.

Table 6. 4. 1: Chemical composition

Type of steel	Grade	Method of deoxidation	Chemical composition of ladle sample %							
			C max.	Si	Mn	P max.	S max.	Ni	Al_{sol} *See* Note	Residual elements
Carbon	360	Fully killed	0.17	0.10—0.35	0.40—1.00	0.030	0.025	—	0.015 min.	Cr 0.25 Cu 0.30 Mo 0.10 Ni 0.30
Carbon-manganese	410 and 460		0.20	0.10—0.35	0.60—1.40	0.030	0.025	—	0.015 min.	Total 0.70
3 $\frac{1}{2}$Ni	440		0.15	0.15—0.35	0.30—0.90	0.025	0.020	3.25—3.75	—	Cr 0.25 Cu 0.30 Mo 0.10
9Ni	690			0.15—0.30	0.30—0.90	0.025	0.020	8.50—9.50	—	Total 0.60

Note Where a minimum Al_{sol} of 0.015% is specified, the determination of the total aluminium is acceptable provided that the result is not less than 0.020%.

Table 6. 4. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes

Type of steel	Grade	Yield stress N/mm^2	Tensile strength N/mm^2	Elongation on $5.65\sqrt{S_0}$% minimum	Flattening test constant C	Bend test diameter of former (t = thickness)	Charpy V-notch impact tests	
							Test temperature °C	Average energy J minimum
Carbon	360	210	360—480	24	0.10	4t	–40	27
Carbon-manganese	410	235	410—530	22	0.08	4t	–50	27
	460	260	460—580	21	0.07			
3½Ni	440	245	440—590	16	0.08	4t	–95	34

9Ni	690	510	690—840	15	0.08	4t	–196	41
Note For standard subsidiary impact test specimens, the minimum energy values are to be as follows								

Required average energy value for standard 10 mm x 10 mm	Subsidiary 10 mm x 7.5 mm	Subsidiary 10 mm x 5 mm
	Average energy	Average energy
27 J	22 J	18 J
34 J	28 J	23 J
41 J	34 J	27 J

Table 6. 4. 3: Heat treatment

Type of steel	Condition of supply
Carbon and carbon-manganese	Hot finished
	Normalised
	Normalised and tempered
$3^1/_2$Ni	Normalised
	Normalised and tempered
9Ni	Double normalised and tempered
	Quenched and tempered

PART

2

CHAPTER **6** **Steel Pipes and Tubes**

SECTION **5** **Stainless steel pressure pipes**

5. 1 Scope

5. 1. 1 Provision is made in this Section for austenitic and duplex stainless steel pipes suitable for use in the construction of the piping systems for chemicals and for liquefied gases where the design temperature is not less than minus 165°C and for bulk chemical tankers.

5. 1. 2 Austenitic stainless steels may be suitable for service at elevated temperatures. Where such applications are proposed, details of the chemical composition, heat treatment and mechanical properties are to be submitted for consideration and approval.

5. 1. 3 Where it is intended to supply seamless pipes in the direct quenched condition, a programme of tests for approval is to be carried out under the supervision of the Surveyors, and the results are to be to the satisfaction of ACS, *See* Ch 1, 2.2, ACS Approval – General.

5. 2 Manufacture and chemical composition

5. 2. 1 Pipes are to be manufactured by a seamless or a continuous automatic electric fusion welding process.

5. 2. 2 Welding is to be in a longitudinal direction, with or without the addition of filler metal.

5. 2. 3 The chemical composition of the ladle samples is to comply with the appropriate requirements of Table 6. 5. 1: Chemical composition.

5. 3 Heat treatment

5. 3. 1 Pipes are generally to be supplied by the manufacturer in the solution treated condition over their full length.

5. 3. 2 Alternatively, seamless pipes may be direct quenched immediately after hot forming, while the temperature of the pipes is not less than the specified minimum solution treatment temperature.

5. 4 Mechanical tests

5. 4. 1 All pipes are to be presented in batches as defined in Ch 6, 1 General requirements for Class I and II piping systems.

5. 4. 2 Each pipe selected for test is to be subjected to tensile and flattening or bend tests.

5. 4. 3 The results of all mechanical tests are to comply with the appropriate requirements given in Table 6. 5. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes.

Table 6. 5. 1: Chemical composition

Type of steel	Grade	Chemical composition %								
		C max.	Si	Mn	P max.	S max.	Cr	Mo	Ni	Others
Austenitic										
304L	490	0.030	≤1.00	≤2.00	0.045	0.030	18.0 – 20.0	–	8.0–12.0	N≤0.11
316L	490	0.030	≤1.00	≤2.00	0.045	0.030	16.0 – 18.5	2.0–3.0	10.0 – 14.0	–
317	490	0.08	≤1.00	≤2.00	0.045	0.030	18.0-20.0	3.0-4.0	11.0-15.0	–
321	510	0.08	≤1.00	≤2.00	0.045	0.030	17.0 – 19.0	—	9.0 – 12.0	Ti>5 x C≤0.70
347	510	0.08	≤1.00	≤2.00	0.045	0.030	17.0 – 19.0	—	9.0 – 12.0	Nb>10 x C≤1.10
Duplex										
UNS S31803	–	0.030	≤1.00	≤2.00	0.035	0.020	21.0–23.0	2.5–3.5	4.5–6.5	N 0.08-0.22
UNS S32750	–	0.030	≤0.80	≤1.20	0.035	0.020	24.0-26.0	3.0–5.0	6.0-8.0	N 0.24-0.32 Cu≤0.50

Table 6. 5. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes

Type of steel	Grade	0.2% proof stress N/mm^2 (*See* Note)	1.0% proof stress N/mm^2	Tensile strength N/mm^2	Elongation on $5.65\sqrt{S_0}$% minimum	Flattening test constant C	Bend test diameter of former (t = thickness)
Austenitic							
304L	490	175	205	490 – 690	30	0.09	3t
316L	490	185	215	490 – 690	30	0.09	3t
317		185	205	490–690	30	0.09	3t
321	510	195	235	510 – 710	30	0.09	3t
347	510	205	245	510 – 710	30	0.09	3t
Duplex							
UNS S31803	-	450	–	620 minimum	25	0.09	3t
UNS S32750	-	550	–	800 minimum	15	0.09	3t

Note Except for the duplex stainless steel grades, the 0.2% proof stress values are given for information purposes and unless otherwise agreed are not required to be verified by test.

5. 5 Corrosion tests

5. 5. 1 For materials used for piping systems for chemicals, corrosion tests are to be carried out on one per cent of the number of pipes in each batch, with a minimum of one pipe. For austenitic stainless

steels this should be an intercrystalline corrosion test (*See* Ch 2, 9.1 Intergranular corrosion test) and for duplex stainless steels this should be a pitting corrosion test (*See* Ch 2, 9.2 Pitting corrosion test). For the latter, the test temperatures shall be 20°C for S31803 and 30°C for S32750.

5. 5. 2 For pipes with an outside diameter not exceeding 40 mm, the test specimens are to consist of a full cross-section. For larger pipes, the test specimens are to be cut as circumferential strips of full wall thickness and having a width of not less than 12.5 mm. In both cases, the total surface area is to be between 15 and 35 cm^2.

5. 5. 3 Unless otherwise agreed or required for a particular chemical cargo, the testing procedure is to be in accordance with Ch 2, 9 Corrosion tests for austenitic stainless steels and Ch 12, 3.3 Duplex stainless steels 3.3.3.c for duplex stainless steels.

5. 5. 4 After immersion, the full cross-section test specimens are to be subjected to a flattening test in accordance with the requirements of Ch 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials. The strip test specimens are to be subjected to a bend test through 90° over a mandrel of diameter equal to twice the thickness of the test specimen.

5. 6 Fabricated pipework

5. 6. 1 Fabricated pipework is to be produced from material manufactured in accordance with Ch 6, 5.2 Manufacture and chemical composition, Ch 6, 5.3 Heat treatment, Ch 6, 5.4 Mechanical tests and Ch 6, 5.5 Corrosion tests.

5. 6. 2 Welding is to be carried out in accordance with an approved and qualified procedure by suitably qualified welders.

5. 6. 3 Fabricated pipework may be supplied in the as-welded condition without subsequent solution treatment provided that welding procedure tests have demonstrated satisfactory material properties including resistance to intercrystalline corrosion (austenitic stainless steel) or pitting corrosion (duplex stainless steel).

5. 6. 4 In addition, butt welds are to be subjected to 5 per cent radiographic examination for Class I, and 2 per cent for Class II pipes.

5. 6. 5 Fabricated pipework in the as-welded condition and intended for systems located on deck is to be protected by a suitable corrosion control coating.

5. 7 Certification of materials

5. 7. 1 Each test certificate is to be of the type and give the information detailed in Ch 1, 3.1, General together with general details of heat treatment and, where applicable, the results obtained from the appropriate corrosion tests. As a minimum, the chemical composition is to include the content of all the elements detailed in Table 6. 5. 1: Chemical composition.

PART

2

CHAPTER 6 **Steel Pipes and Tubes**

SECTION 6 **Boiler and superheater tubes**

6. 1 Scope

6. 1. 1 Provision is made in this Section for boiler and superheater tubes in carbon, carbon-manganese and low alloy steels.

6. 1. 2 Austenitic stainless steels may also be used for this type of service. Where such applications are proposed, details of the chemical composition, heat treatment and mechanical properties are to be submitted for consideration and approval.

6. 2 Manufacture and chemical composition

6. 2. 1 Tubes are to be seamless or welded and are to be manufactured in accordance with the requirements of Ch 6, 2 Seamless pressure pipes and Ch 6, 3 Welded pressure pipes, respectively.

6. 2. 2 The method of deoxidation and the chemical composition of ladle samples are to comply with the requirements given in Table 6. 2. 1: Chemical composition of seamless pressure pipes or Table 6. 3. 1: Chemical composition of welded pressure pipes, as appropriate.

6. 3 Heat treatment

6. 3. 1 All tubes are to be supplied in accordance with the requirements given in Table 6. 2. 2: Heat treatment or Table 6. 3. 3: Heat treatment: welded pressure pipes as appropriate, except that 1Cr½Mo steel may be supplied in the normalised only condition when the carbon content does not exceed 0.15 per cent.

6. 4 Mechanical tests

6. 4. 1 Tubes are to be presented for test in batches as defined in Ch 6, 1 General requirements.

6. 4. 2 Each boiler and superheater tube selected for test is to be subjected to at least the following:

a. Tensile test.
b. Flattening or bending test.
c. Expanding or flanging test.

6. 4. 3 The results of all mechanical tests are to comply with the appropriate requirements given in Table 6. 6. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: boiler and superheater tubes.

6. 5 Mechanical properties for design

6. 5. 1 The mechanical properties at elevated temperature for carbon and carbon-manganese steels in Grades 320 to 460, 1Cr½Mo and 2¼Cr1Mo steels can be taken from the appropriate Tables in Ch 6, 2 Seamless pressure pipes.

6. 5. 2 Where rimming steel is used, the design temperature is limited to 400°C.

Table 6. 6. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: boiler and superheater tubes

Type of steel	Grade	Yield stress N/mm^2	Tensile strength N/mm^2	Elongation on $5.65\sqrt{S_0}$% minimum	Flattening test constant C	Bend test diameter of former (t = thickness)	Drift expanding and flanging test minimum % increase in outside diameter		
							Ratio $\frac{Inside\ diameter}{Outside\ diameter}$		
							≤0.6	>0.6≤0.8	>0.8
Carbon and carbon-manganese	320	195	320–440	25	0.10	4t	12	15	19
	360	215	360–480	24	0.10		12	15	19
	410	235	410–530	22	0.08		10	12	17
	460	265	460–580	21	0.07		8	10	15
1Cr^1/$_2$Mo	440	275	440–590	22	0.07	4t	8	10	15
2^1/$_2$Cr1Mo	410 (*See* Note 1)	135	410–560	20	0.07	4t	8	10	15
	490 (*See* Note 2)	275	490–640	16					

Note *1.* Annealed condition.

Note *2.* Normalised and tempered condition.

PART

2

CHAPTER **7 Iron Castings**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General requirements**		**469**
	1. 1	Scope	469
	1. 2	Manufacture	469
	1. 3	Quality of castings	469
	1. 4	Chemical composition	470
	1. 5	Heat treatment	470
	1. 6	Test material	470
	1. 7	Mechanical tests	470
	1. 8	Visual and non-destructive examination	471
	1. 9	Rectification of defective castings	471
	1. 10	Pressure testing	471
	1. 11	Identification of castings	471
	1. 12	Certification of materials	472
SECTION 2	**Grey iron castings**		**473**
	2. 1	Scope	473
	2. 2	Test material	473
	2. 3	Mechanical tests	473
SECTION 3	**Spheroidal or nodular graphite iron castings**		**474**
	3. 1	Scope	474
	3. 2	Heat treatment	474
	3. 3	Test material	474
	3. 4	Mechanical tests	476
	3. 5	Metallographic examination	477
SECTION 4	**Compacted or vermicular graphite iron castings**		**478**
	4. 1	Scope	478
	4. 2	Heat treatment	478

4. 3 Test material 478
4. 4 Mechanical tests 478
4. 5 Metallographic examination 479
SECTION 5 Iron castings for crankshafts 480
5. 1 Scope 480
5. 2 Manufacture 480
5. 3 Heat treatment 480
5. 4 Test material 480
5. 5 Non-destructive examination 481
5. 6 Rectification of defective castings 481
5. 7 Certification of materials 481

PART

2

CHAPTER **7 Iron Castings**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 7. 3. 1: Type A (U-type) test samples 474

Table 7. 3. 2: Type B (Double U-type) test samples 475

Table 7. 3. 3: Type C (Y-type) test samples 475

Table 7. 3. 4: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: spheroidal or nodular graphite iron castings 476

Table 7. 3. 5: Mechanical properties: special qualities 477

Table 7. 4. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: compacted or vermicular graphite iron castings 479

PART

2

CHAPTER **7** **Iron Castings**

SECTION **1** **General requirements**

1. 1 Scope

1. 1. 1 This Section gives the general requirements for grey (flake), spheroidal (nodular) graphite and compacted (vermicular) graphite iron castings intended for use in the construction of ships, other marine structures, machinery, boilers, pressure vessels and piping systems.

1. 1. 2 Where required by the relevant Rules dealing with design and construction, castings are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with Ch 1 General Requirements and Ch 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials, together with the requirements given in this Section and either Ch 7, 2 Grey iron castings for grey iron castings, Ch 7, 3 Spheroidal or nodular graphite iron castings for spheroidal graphite iron castings or Ch 7, 4 Compacted or vermicular graphite iron castings for compacted graphite iron castings. Castings for crankshafts are additionally to comply with the requirements detailed in Ch 7, 5 Iron castings for crankshafts.

1. 1. 3 As an alternative to Ch 7, 1.1 Scope 1.1.2, castings which comply with National or proprietary specifications may be accepted, provided that these specifications give reasonable equivalence to the requirements of this Chapter or alternatively are approved for a specific application. Generally, survey and certification are to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of Ch 1 General Requirements.

1. 1. 4 Where small castings are produced in large quantities, or where castings of the same type are produced in regular quantities, alternative survey procedures, in accordance with Ch 1, 2.2, ACS Approval – General, may be adopted subject to approval by Asia Classification Society (hereinafter referred as 'ACS').

1. 2 Manufacture

1. 2. 1 Castings as designated in Ch 7, 1.1 Scope 1.1.2 are to be made at foundries approved by ACS.

1. 2. 2 Suitable mechanical methods are to be employed for the removal of surplus material from castings. Thermal cutting processes are not acceptable, except as a preliminary operation to mechanical methods.

1. 3 Quality of castings

1. 3. 1 Castings are to be free from surface or internal defects which would be prejudicial to their proper application in service. The surface finish is to be in accordance with good practice and any specific requirements of the approved plan.

1. 4 Chemical composition

1. 4. 1 The chemical composition of the iron used is left to the discretion of the manufacturer, who is to ensure that it is suitable to obtain the mechanical properties specified for the castings.

1. 5 Heat treatment

1. 5. 1 Except as required by Ch 7, 1.5 Heat treatment 1.5.2, castings may be supplied in either the as cast or heat treated condition.

1. 5. 2 For some applications, such as elevated temperature service, or where dimensional stability is important, castings may require to be given a suitable tempering or stress relieving heat treatment. This is to be carried out after any refining heat treatment and before machining.

1. 5. 3 Where it is proposed to carry out local hardening of the surface of a casting, full details of the proposed procedure are to be submitted for approval.

1. 6 Test material

1. 6. 1 At least one test sample is to be provided for each casting or batch of castings. For large castings, where more than one ladle of metal is used, one test sample is to be provided, from each ladle used.

1. 6. 2 A batch testing procedure may be adopted for castings with a fettled mass of 1 tonne or less. All castings in a batch are to be of similar type and dimensions, and cast from the same ladle of metal. One test sample is to be provided for each multiple of two tonnes of fettled castings in the batch.

1. 6. 3 Where separately cast test samples are used, they are to be cast in moulds made from the same type of material as used for the castings and are not to be stripped from the moulds until the temperature is below 500°C.

1. 6. 4 All test samples are to be suitably marked to identify them with the castings which they represent.

1. 6. 5 Where castings are supplied in the heat treated condition, the test samples are to be heat treated together with the castings which they represent. For cast-on test samples, the sample is not to be separated from the casting until after heat treatment.

1. 7 Mechanical tests

1. 7. 1 One tensile specimen is to be prepared from each test sample. The dimensions of the test specimens and the testing procedures used are to be in accordance with Ch 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials.

1. 7. 2 The results of all tensile tests are to comply with the requirements given in Ch 7, 2 Grey iron castings, Ch 7, 3 Spheroidal or nodular graphite iron castings, Ch 7, 4 Compacted or vermicular graphite iron castingsor Ch 7, 5 Iron castings for crankshafts, as appropriate.

1. 7. 3 In the case of castings supplied in the as cast condition which initially do not meet the requirements of Ch 7, 1.7 Mechanical tests 1.7.2, the manufacturer, by agreement with the purchaser, has the right to heat treat the castings, together with the representative test samples, and re-submit them for acceptance.

1. 7. 4 In the case of a batch of castings supplied in the heat treated condition which initially do not meet the requirements of Ch 7, 1.7 Mechanical tests 1.7.2, the manufacturer has the right to re-heat treat the batch together with the representative test samples, and re-submit the castings for acceptance. The number of reheat treatments and retestings will be restricted to two.

1. 8 Visual and non-destructive examination

1. 8. 1 All castings are to be cleaned and adequately prepared for examination. The surfaces are not to be hammered, peened or treated in any way which may obscure defects.

1. 8. 2 The accuracy and verification of dimensions are the responsibility of the manufacturer, unless otherwise agreed.

1. 8. 3 All castings are to be presented to the Surveyor for visual examination and this is to include the examination of internal surfaces where applicable.

1. 8. 4 The non-destructive examination of castings is not required unless otherwise stated in the approved plan or where there is reason to suspect the soundness of the casting.

1. 8. 5 In the event of any casting proving defective during subsequent machining or testing it is to be rejected notwithstanding any previous certification.

1. 9 Rectification of defective castings

1. 9. 1 At the discretion of the Surveyor, small surface blemishes may be removed by local grinding.

1. 9. 2 Subject to the prior approval of the Surveyor, castings containing local porosity may be rectified by vacuum impregnation with a suitable plastic filler, provided that the extent of the porosity is such that it does not adversely affect the strength of the casting.

1. 9. 3 Repairs by welding are not permitted on grey cast iron castings or compacted graphite iron castings and generally not permitted for spheroidal or nodular graphite iron castings, but may be considered in special circumstances for spheroidal or nodular graphite iron castings. In such cases, full details of the proposed repair procedure are to be submitted for approval prior to the commencement of the proposed rectification.

1. 10 Pressure testing

1. 10. 1 When required by the relevant Rules, castings are to be pressure tested before final acceptance. These tests are to be carried out in the presence and to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

1. 11 Identification of castings

1. 11. 1 The manufacturer is to adopt a system of identification which will enable all finished castings to be traced to the original cast, and the Surveyor is to be given full facilities for tracing the castings when required.

1. 11. 2 Before acceptance, all castings which have been tested and inspected with satisfactory results are to be clearly marked by the manufacturer with the following particulars:

a. Type and grade of cast iron.
b. Identification number, cast number or other marking which will enable the full history of the casting to be traced.
c. Manufacturer's name or trade mark.
d. ACS or Asia Classification Society and the abbreviated name of ACS's.
e. Personal stamp of Surveyor responsible for inspection.
f. Test pressure, where applicable.
g. Date of final inspection.

1. 11. 3 Where small castings are manufactured in large numbers, modified arrangements for identification may be specially agreed with the Surveyor.

1. 12 Certification of materials

1. 12. 1 A ACS certificate is to be issued, *See* Ch 1, 3.1, General.

1. 12. 2 The manufacturer is to provide the Surveyor with a written statement giving the following particulars for each casting or batch of castings which has been accepted:

a. Purchaser's name and order number.
b. Description of castings and quality of cast iron.
c. Identification number.
d. General details of heat treatment, where applicable.
e. Results of mechanical tests.
f. Test pressure, where applicable.
g. When specially required, the chemical analysis of ladle samples.

1. 12. 3 Where applicable, the manufacturer is to provide a signed statement regarding non-destructive testing as required by Ch 7, 1.8 Visual and non-destructive examination, together with a statement and/or a sketch detailing the extent and position of all weld repairs made to each casting as required by Ch 7, 1.9 Rectification of defective castings.

PART

2

CHAPTER **7** **Iron Castings**

SECTION **2** **Grey iron castings**

2. 1 Scope

2. 1. 1 This Section gives the specific requirements for grey cast iron castings.

2. 2 Test material

2. 2. 1 Separately cast test samples in the form of cylindrical bars, 30 mm diameter and of a suitable length, are to be used unless otherwise agreed by ACS. Test samples of other dimensions may be specially required for some components as may cast-on samples. In these circumstances, the tensile strength requirements are to be agreed.

2. 2. 2 When two or more test samples are cast simultaneously in a single mould, the bars are to be at least 50 mm apart.

2. 2. 3 Test samples may be cast integrally when a casting is both more than 20 mm thick and its mass exceeds 200 kg, subject to agreement between the manufacturer and the purchaser. The type and location of the samples are to be such as to provide approximately the same cooling conditions as for the casting it represents and are also subject to agreement.

2. 2. 4 For continuous melting of the same grade of cast iron in large tonnages the mass of a batch may be taken as the output of two hours of pouring.

2. 2. 5 Where Ch 7, 2.2 Test material 2.2.4 applies and production is carefully monitored by systematic checking of the melting process by, for example, chill testing, chemical analysis or thermal analysis, test samples may be taken at longer intervals as agreed by the Surveyor.

2. 3 Mechanical tests

2. 3. 1 Only the tensile strength is to be determined, and the results obtained from tests are to comply with the minimum value specified for the castings being supplied. Except for crankshaft castings (*See* Ch 7, 5 Iron castings for crankshafts), the specified tensile strength is to be not less than 200 N/mm2 subject to any additional requirements of the relevant Rules. The fractured surfaces of all tensile test specimens are to be granular and entirely grey in appearance.

PART

2

CHAPTER **7** **Iron Castings**

SECTION **3** **Spheroidal or nodular graphite iron castings**

3. 1 Scope

3. 1. 1 This Section gives the specific requirements for spheroidal or nodular graphite iron castings.

3. 1. 2 These requirements are generally applicable to castings intended for use at ambient temperatures. Additional requirements will be necessary when the castings are intended for service at either low or elevated temperatures. Impact test requirements are given for low temperature service in Ch 7, 3.4 Mechanical tests 3.4.2.

3. 2 Heat treatment

3. 2. 1 The special qualities with 350 N/mm^2 and 400 N/mm^2 nominal tensile strength and impact test are to undergo a ferritising heat treatment, *See* Ch 7, 3.4 Mechanical tests 3.4.2.

3. 3 Test material

3. 3. 1 The test samples are to be as detailed in Table 7. 3. 1: Type A (U-type) test samples, Table 7. 3. 2: Type B (Double U-type) test samples or Table 7. 3. 3: Type C (Y-type) test samples. The dimensions of the test specimens and testing procedures used are to be in accordance with Ch 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials. Test samples of other dimensions may be specially required for some castings and these are to be agreed with the Surveyor.

Table 7. 3. 1: Type A (U-type) test samples

Dimension	Standard sample, mm	Alternative samples when specially required, mm		
u	25	12	50	75
v	55	40	90	125
x	40	30	60	65
y	100	80	150	165
Z	To suit testing machine Approximately 5			
Rs				

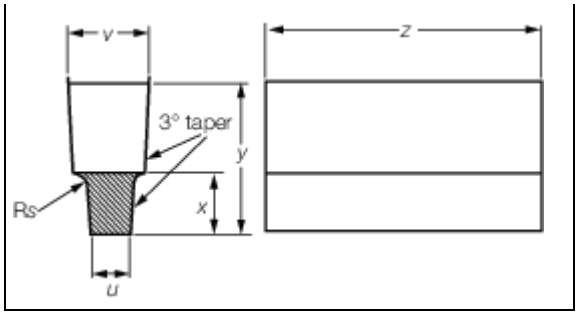


Table 7. 3. 2: Type B (Double U-type) test samples

Dimension	Standard sample,mm
u	25
v	90
x	40
y	100
Z	To suit testing machine
R_s	Approximately 5

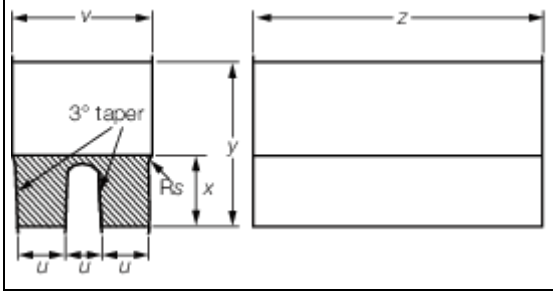
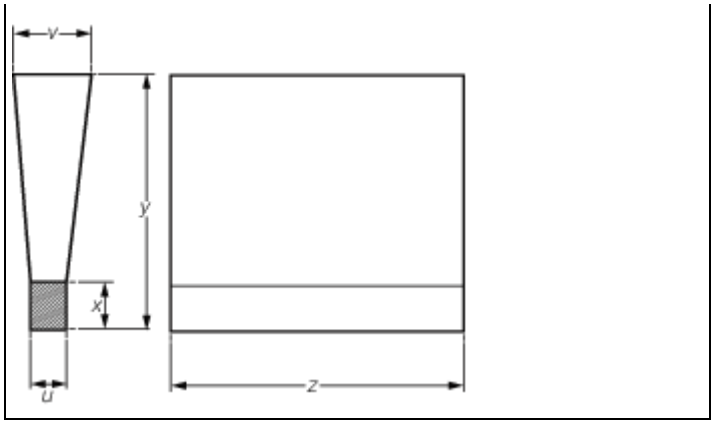


Table 7. 3. 3: Type C (Y-type) test samples

Dimension	Standard sample, mm	Alternative samples when specially required, mm		
u	25	12	50	75
v	55	40	100	125
x	40	25	50	65
y	140	135	150	175
Z	To suit testing machine			
Minimum thickness of mould surrounding test sample	40	40	80	80



3. 3. 2 The test samples may be either gated to the casting or separately cast.

3. 3. 3 Where separately cast test samples are used, they are to be taken towards the end of pouring of the castings.

3. 4 Mechanical tests

3. 4. 1 The tensile strength and elongation are to be determined and are to comply with the requirements of Table 7. 3. 4: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: spheroidal or nodular graphite iron castings. Minimum values for the 0.2 per cent proof stress are also included in this Table but are to be determined only if included in the specification. Typical ranges of hardness values are also given in Table 7. 3. 4: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: spheroidal or nodular graphite iron castings and are intended for information purposes.

3. 4. 2 Impact tests may be required for some applications in which case the selection of the grade is to be confined to those listed in Table 7. 3. 5: Mechanical properties: special qualities. These castings are to be given a ferritising heat treatment. The mechanical test results are to comply with Table 7. 3. 5: Mechanical properties: special qualities.

3. 4. 3 Castings may be supplied to any specified minimum tensile strength selected within the general limits detailed in Table 7. 3. 4: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: spheroidal or nodular graphite iron castings and Table 7. 3. 5: Mechanical properties: special qualities but subject to any additional requirements of the relevant Rules.

Table 7. 3. 4: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: spheroidal or nodular graphite iron castings

Specified minimum tensile strength N/mm^2	0.2% proof stress (*See* Note) N/mm^2 minimum	Elongation on $5.65\sqrt{s_0}$% minimum	Typical hardness value HB (*See* Ch 7, 3.4 Mechanical tests 3.4.1)	Typical structure of matrix (*See* Ch 7, 3.5 Metallographic examination 3.5.2)
370	230	17	120 – 180	Ferrite
400	250	12	140 – 200	Ferrite
500	320	7	170 – 240	Ferrite/pearlite
600	370	3	190 – 270	Pearlite/ferrite
700	420	2	230 – 300	Pearlite
800	480	2	250 – 350	Pearlite or tempered structure

Note Proof stresses need only be determined if specifically requested.

Table 7. 3. 5: Mechanical properties: special qualities

Specified minimum tensile strength N/mm^2	0.2% proof stress minimum (*See* Note 1) N/mm^2	Elongation on $5.65\sqrt{S_0}$ minimum% (*See* Note 2)	Typical hardness value	Charpy V-notch impact tests	
				Test temperature °C (*See* Note 3)	Average energy J minimum (*See* Note 4)
350	220	22	110 – 170	20	17 (14)
				–40	12 (10)
400	250	18	140 – 200	20	14 (11)
				–20	12 (10)

Note *1.* Proof stresses need only be determined if specifically requested.

Note *2.* In the case of integrally cast samples, the acceptable elongation may be taken as 2 percentage points less.

Note *3.* Tests need only be made at either of the temperatures listed, as appropriate.

Note *4.* The average value measured on three Charpy V-notch specimens. One of the three values may be below the specified minimum average value, but not less than the value shown in brackets.

Note *5.* Typical structure of the matrix is ferrite.

3. 5 Metallographic examination

3. 5. 1 Samples for metallographic examination are to be prepared for spheroidal or nodular graphite iron castings. These samples are to be representative of each ladle used and may conveniently be taken from the tensile test specimens. Alternative arrangements for the provision of these samples may, however, be adopted subject to the concurrence of the Surveyor. They are, however, to be taken towards the end of the pour.

3. 5. 2 Examination of the samples is to show that at least 90 per cent of the graphite is in a dispersed spheroidal or nodular form. Details of typical matrix structures are given in Table 7. 3. 4: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: spheroidal or nodular graphite iron castings and are intended for information purposes.

PART

2

CHAPTER **7** **Iron Castings**

SECTION **4** **Compacted or vermicular graphite iron castings**

4. 1 Scope

4. 1. 1 This Section gives the specific requirements for compacted or vermicular graphite iron castings.

4. 1. 2 These requirements are generally applicable to castings intended for use at ambient temperatures.

4. 2 Heat treatment

4. 2. 1 Where castings do not meet the specified mechanical property requirements in the as-cast condition, a corrective heat treatment may be carried out. This is to be restricted to a single heat treatment and the test coupons must be heat treated with the castings.

4. 3 Test material

4. 3. 1 The test samples are to be as detailed in Table 7. 3. 1: Type A (U-type) test samples, Table 7. 3. 2: Type B (Double U-type) test samples or Table 7. 3. 3: Type C (Y-type) test samples. The dimensions of the test specimens and testing procedures used are to be in accordance with Ch 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials. Test samples of other dimensions may be specially agreed with the Surveyor.

4. 3. 2 The test samples may be either gated to the casting or separately cast.

4. 3. 3 Where separately cast test samples are used, they are to be taken towards the end of pouring of the castings.

4. 4 Mechanical tests

4. 4. 1 The tensile strength and elongation are to be determined and are to comply with the requirements of Table 7. 4. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: compacted or vermicular graphite iron castings. Minimum values for the 0.2 per cent proof stress are also included in this Table but are to be determined only if included in the specification. Typical ranges of hardness values are also given in Table 7. 4. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: compacted or vermicular graphite iron castings and are intended for information purposes.

4. 4. 2 Castings may be supplied to any specified minimum tensile strength grade.

Table 7. 4. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: compacted or vermicular graphite iron castings

Specified minimum tensile strength N/mm²	0.2% proof stress (*See* Note) N/mm² minimum	Elongation on 5.65 $\sqrt{S_0}$% minimum	Typical hardness value HB (*See* Ch 7, 4.4 Mechanical tests 4.4.1)	Typical structure of matrix (*See* Ch 7, 4.5 Metallographic examination 4.5.2)
300	210	2	140 – 210	Ferrite
350	245	1.5	160 – 220	Ferrite/pearlite
400	280	1	180 – 240	Pearlite/ferrite
450	315	1	200 – 250	Pearlite
500	350	0.5	220 – 260	Fully pearlitic
Note Proof stresses need only be determined if specifically requested.				

4. 5 Metallographic examination

4. 5. 1 Samples for metallographic examination are to be prepared for compacted or vermicular graphite iron castings. These samples are to be representative of each ladle used and may conveniently be taken from the tensile test specimens. Alternative arrangements for the provision of these samples may, however, be adopted subject to the concurrence of the Surveyor. They are, however, to be taken towards the end of the pour.

4. 5. 2 Examination of the samples is to show that at least 80 per cent of the graphite is in a dispersed, compacted or vermicular form. The remaining 20 per cent of the graphite may be in spheroidal forms. Details of typical matrix structures are given in Table 7. 4. 1: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: compacted or vermicular graphite iron castings and are intended for information purposes.

PART

2

CHAPTER **7** **Iron Castings**

SECTION **5** **Iron castings for crankshafts**

5. 1 Scope

5. 1. 1 This Section gives additional requirements for cast iron crankshafts intended for engines and compressors. For both of these applications, details of the proposed specification are to be submitted for approval.

5. 1. 2 Crankshaft castings in grey iron and compacted graphite iron are acceptable only for compressors, and the specified minimum tensile strength is to be not less than 300 N/mm^2.

5. 1. 3 For crankshaft castings in spheroidal or nodular graphite iron, the specified minimum tensile strength is to be not less than 370 N/mm^2.

5. 2 Manufacture

5. 2. 1 Details of the method of manufacture, including the arrangements proposed for the provision of test material, are to be submitted for approval.

5. 2. 2 Tests to demonstrate the soundness of prototype castings and the mechanical properties at important locations will be required.

5. 3 Heat treatment

5. 3. 1 In general, crankshaft castings other than those which are fully annealed, normalised or oil quenched and tempered, are to receive a suitable stress relief heat treatment before machining.

5. 3. 2 Where it is proposed to harden the surfaces of machined pins and/or journals of cast iron crankshafts, details of the process are to be submitted for approval. Before such a process is applied to a crankshaft it is to be demonstrated by procedure tests, and to the satisfaction of the Surveyor, that the process is suitably controlled and does not impair the strength or soundness of the material.

5. 4 Test material

5. 4. 1 Unless otherwise approved, the dimensions of the test samples are to be such as to ensure that they have mechanical properties representative of those of the average section of the crankshaft casting.

5. 4. 2 For large crankshaft castings, the test samples are to be cast integral with, or gated from, each casting.

5. 4. 3 The batch testing procedure detailed in Ch 7, 1.6 Test material 1.6.2 may be adopted only where small and identical crankshaft castings are produced in quantity. Generally, the fettled mass of each casting in a batch is not to exceed 100 kg, and in addition to tensile tests, the hardness of each casting is to be determined. For this purpose, a small flat is to be ground on each crankshaft,

and Brinell hardness tests are to be carried out. The results obtained from these tests are to comply with the approved specification.

5. 5 Non-destructive examination

5. 5. 1 Cast crankshafts are to be subjected to a full magnetic particle or dye penetrant examination after final machining and completion of any surface hardening operations.

5. 5. 2 Particular attention is to be given to the testing of the pins, journals and associated fillet radii.

5. 5. 3 Cracks and crack-like defects are not acceptable. Fillet radii are to be free from any indications.

5. 6 Rectification of defective castings

5. 6. 1 Cast iron crankshafts are not to be repaired by welding, and blemishes are not to be plugged with a filler.

5. 7 Certification of materials

5. 7. 1 The chemical composition of ladle samples is to be given in addition to the other particulars detailed in Ch 7, 1.12 Certification of materials 1.12.2.

PART

2

CHAPTER **8 Aluminium Alloys**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**Plates, bars and sections**		**486**
	1. 1	Scope	486
	1. 2	Manufacture	486
	1. 3	Quality of materials	487
	1. 4	Dimensional tolerances	487
	1. 5	Chemical composition	487
	1. 6	Heat treatment	489
	1. 7	Test material	490
	1. 8	Mechanical tests	490
	1. 9	Corrosion tests	491
	1. 10	Pressure weld tests	492
	1. 11	Visual and non-destructive examination	492
	1. 12	Rectification of defects	493
	1. 13	Identification	493
	1. 14	Certification of materials	493
SECTION 2	**Aluminium alloy rivets**		**494**
	2. 1	Scope	494
	2. 2	Chemical composition	494
	2. 3	Heat treatment	494
	2. 4	Test material	495
	2. 5	Mechanical tests	495
	2. 6	Tests from manufactured rivets	495
	2. 7	Identification	495
	2. 8	Certification of materials	495
SECTION 3	**Aluminium alloy castings**		**497**
	3. 1	Scope	497

3. 2 Manufacture 497
3. 3 Quality of castings 497
3. 4 Chemical composition 497
3. 5 Heat treatment 498
3. 6 Mechanical tests 498
3. 7 Visual examination 499
3. 8 Rectification of defective castings 499
3. 9 Pressure testing 500
3. 10 Identification 500
3. 11 Certification of materials 500
SECTION 4 Aluminium/steel transition joints 501
4. 1 Scope 501
4. 2 Manufacture 501
4. 3 Visual and non-destructive examination 501
4. 4 Mechanical tests 501
4. 5 Identification 503
4. 6 Certification of materials 504

PART

2

CHAPTER **8 Aluminium Alloys**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 8. 1. 1: Underthickness tolerances for rolled products for marine construction 487

Table 8. 1. 2: Chemical composition, percentage 487

Table 8. 1. 3: Minimum mechanical properties for acceptance purposes of selected rolled aluminium alloy products 488

Table 8. 1. 4: Minimum mechanical properties for acceptance purposes of selected extruded aluminium alloy products 491

Table 8. 2. 1: Chemical composition, percentage 494

Table 8. 2. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes 495

Table 8. 3. 1: Chemical composition, percentage 497

Table 8. 3. 2: Minimum mechanical properties for acceptance purposes of sand-cast and investment cast reference test pieces 499

Table 8. 3. 3: Minimum mechanical properties for acceptance purposes of chill-cast reference test pieces 499

Table 8. 4. 1: Bend tests on explosion bonded aluminium/steel composites 503

PART

2

CHAPTER **8 Aluminium Alloys**

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 8. 4. 1: Specimen and procedure for shear tests 502
Figure 8. 4. 2: Ram tensile test 503

PART

2

CHAPTER **8** **Aluminium Alloys**

SECTION **1** **Plates, bars and sections**

1. 1 Scope

1. 1. 1 This Section makes provision for aluminium alloy plates, bars and sections intended for use in the construction of ships and other marine structures and for cryogenic applications.

1. 1. 2 Except as provided in Ch 8, 1.1 Scope 1.1.4, all items are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the appropriate requirements of Ch 1 General Requirements and Ch 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials and those detailed in this Section.

1. 1. 3 The thickness of plates, sections and bars described by these requirements will be in the range between 3 and 50 mm. Plates and sections less than 3.0 mm thick may be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of an acceptable national specification.

1. 1. 4 Plates less than 3.0 mm thick and sections less than 40 mm × 40 mm × 3.0 mm may be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of an acceptable National specification.

1. 1. 5 Where the section thickness exceeds 50 mm the requirements will be subject to special consideration.

1. 1. 6 Materials intended for the construction of cargo tanks or storage for liquefied gases, and for other low temperature applications, are to be manufactured in the 5083 alloy in the annealed condition.

1. 1. 7 As an alternative to Ch 8, 1.1 Scope 1.1.2 and Ch 8, 1.1 Scope 1.1.4, materials which comply with National or proprietary specifications may be accepted provided that these specifications give reasonable equivalence to the requirements of this Section and are approved for a specific application. Generally, survey and certification are to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of Ch 1 General Requirements.

1. 2 Manufacture

1. 2. 1 Aluminium alloys are to be manufactured at works approved by Asia Classification Society (hereinafter referred as 'ACS').

1. 2. 2 The alloys may be cast either in ingot moulds or by an approved continuous casting process. Plates are to be formed by rolling and may be hot or cold finished. Bars and sections may be formed by extrusion, rolling or drawing.

1. 2. 3 All melts are to be suitably degassed prior to casting such that the aim hydrogen content is less than 0.2 ml per 100 g.

1. 3 Quality of materials

1. 3. 1 Materials are to be free from surface or internal defects of such a nature as would be harmful in service.

1. 3. 2 The manufacturer is to verify the integrity of pressure welds of closed extrusion profiles in accordance with Ch 8, 1.10 Pressure weld tests.

1. 4 Dimensional tolerances

1. 4. 1 Underthickness tolerances for rolled products for marine construction are given in Table 8. 1. 1: Underthickness tolerances for rolled products for marine construction.

Table 8. 1. 1: Underthickness tolerances for rolled products for marine construction

Nominal thickness range, mm	Underthickness tolerance for nominal width range, mm		
	≤1500	>1500 ≤2000	>2000 ≤3500
≥3.0 <4.0	0.10	0.15	0.15
≥4.0 <8.0	0.20	0.20	0.25
≥8.0 <12	0.25	0.25	0.25
≥12 <20	0.35	0.40	0.50
≥20 <50	0.45	0.50	0.65

1. 4. 2 Underthickness tolerances for extruded products are to comply with an acceptable National or International Standard.

1. 4. 3 There are to be no underthickness tolerances for materials for application in cryogenic process pressure vessels.

1. 4. 4 Dimensional tolerances other than permitted underthicknesses are to comply with an acceptable National or International Standard.

1. 4. 5 Verification of dimensions is the responsibility of the manufacturer. Acceptance by Surveyors of material which is later found to be defective does not absolve the manufacturer from this responsibility.

1. 5 Chemical composition

1. 5. 1 Samples for chemical analysis are to be taken representative of each cast, or the equivalent where a continuous melting process is involved.

1. 5. 2 The chemical composition of these samples is to comply with the requirements of Table 8. 1. 2: Chemical composition, percentage.

Table 8. 1. 2: Chemical composition, percentage

Element	5083	5383	5059	5086	5754	5456	6005–A (*See* Note 1)	6061 (*See* Note 1)	6082
Copper	0.10 max.	0.20 max.	0.25 max.	0.10 max.	0.10 max.	0.10 max.	0.30 max.	0.15—0.40	0.10 max.

Magnesium	4.0—4.9	4.0—5.2	5.0—6.0	3.5—4.5	2.6—3.6	4.7—5.5	0.40—0.70	0.80—1.20	0.60—1.20
Silicon	0.40 max.	0.25 max.	0.45 max.	0.40 max.	0.40 max.	0.25 max.	0.50—0.90	0.40—0.80	0.70—1.30
Iron	0.40 max.	0.25 max.	0.50 max.	0.50 max.	0.40 max.	0.40 max	0.35 max.	0.70 max.	0.50 max.
Manganese	0.40—1.00	0.7—1.0	0.6—1.2	0.20—0.70	0.50 max. (*See* Note 2)	0.50—1.00	0.50 max. (*See* Note 3)	0.15 max.	0.40—1.00
Zinc	0.25 max.	0.40 max.	0.40—0.90	0.25 max.	0.20 max.	0.25 max.	0.20 max.	0.25 max.	0.20 max.
Chromium	0.05—0.25	0.25 max.	0.25 max.	0.05—0.25	0.30 max. (*See* Note 2)	0.05—0.20	0.30 max. (*See* Note 3)	0.04—0.35	0.25 max.
Titanium	0.15 max	0.15 max.	0.20 max.	0.15 max.	0.15 max.	0.20 max.	0.10 max.	0.15 max.	0.10 max.
Zirconium		0.20 max.	0.05—0.25						
Other elements:									
each	0.05 max.	0.05 max.	0.05 max.	0.05 max.	0.05 max.	0.05 max.	0.05 max.	0.05 max.	0.05 max.
total	0.15 max.	0.15 max.	0.15 max.	0.15 max.	0.15 max.	0.15 max.	0.15 max.	0.15 max.	0.15 max.

Note *1.* These alloys are not normally acceptable for application in direct contact with sea-water.

Note *2.* Mn + Cr = 0.10 min., 0.60 max.

Note *3.* Mn + Cr = 0.12 min., 0.50 max.

Table 8. 1. 3: Minimum mechanical properties for acceptance purposes of selected rolled aluminium alloy products

Alloy and temper condition, *See* Note 3	Thickness, t, mm	0.2% proof stress R_p, N/mm^2	Tensile strength R_m N/mm^2	Elongation 4d, %	Elongation on $5.65\sqrt{S_0}$ 5d,%
5083-O	$3 \le t \le 50$ (*See* Note 2)	125	275–350	16	14
5083-H111	$3 \le t \le 50$	125	275-350	16	14
5083-H112	$3 \le t \le 50$	125	275	12	10
5083-H116	$3 \le t \le 50$	215	305	10	10
5083-H321	$3 \le t \le 50$	215–295	305–380	12	10
5086-O	$3 \le t \le 50$	100	240–305	16	14
5086-H111	$3 \le t \le 50$	100	240–305	16	14
5086-H112	$3 \le t \le 12.5$	125	250	8	–
	$12.5 < t \le 50$	105	240	–	9
5086-H116	$3 \le t \le 50$	195	275	10 (*See* Note 1)	9

5059-O	$3 \le t \le 50$	160	330	24	24
5059-H111	$3 \le t \le 50$	160	330	24	24
5059-H116	$3 \le t \le 20$	270	370	10	10
	$20 < t \le 50$	260	360	10	10
5059-H321	$3 \le t \le 20$	270	370	10	10
	$20 < t \le 50$	260	360	10	10
5383-O	$3 \le t \le 50$	145	290	17	17
5383-H111	$3 \le t \le 50$	145	290	17	17
5754-H111	$3 \le t \le 50$	80	190–240	18	17
5383-H116	$3 \le t \le 50$	220	305	10	10
5383-H321	$3 \le t \le 50$	220	305	10	10
5456-O	$3 \le t \le 6.3$	130–205	290–365	16	–
	$6.3 \le t \le 50$	125–205	285–360	16	14
	$3 \le t \le 30$	230	315	10	10
5456-H116	$30 < t \le 40$	215	305	–	10
	$40 < t \le 50$	200	285	–	10
	$3 \le t \le 12.5$	230–315	315–405	12	–
5456-H321	$12.5 \le t \le 40$	215–305	305–385	–	10
	$40 \le t \le 50$	200–295	285–370	–	10
5754-O	$3 \le t \le 50$	80	190–240	18	17

Note 1. 8% for thickness up to and including 6.3 mm.

Note 2. For application to liquefied natural gas carriers or liquefied natural gas tankers where thicknesses are in excess of 50 mm, the mechanical properties given in this table are, in general, to be complied with

Note 3. The mechanical properties for the O and H111 tempers are the same for all alloys shown in this Table. However, they are separated in this Table as they are made using different manufacturing processes

1. 6 Heat treatment

1. 6. 1 The Aluminium 5000 series alloys, capable of being strain hardened, are to be supplied in any of the following temper conditions:

O annealed

H111 annealed with slight strain hardening

H112 strain hardened from working at elevated temperatures

H116 strain hardened and with specified resistance to exfoliation corrosion for alloys where the magnesium content is 4 per cent or more

H321 strain hardened and stabilised.

1. 6. 2 The H116 temper is specially developed for use in a marine environment.

1. 6. 3 The Aluminium 6000 series alloys, capable of being age hardened, are to be supplied in either of the following temper conditions:

T5 hot worked and artificially aged.

T6 solution treated and artificially aged.

1. 7 Test material

1. 7. 1 Plate with the same thickness and from a single cast or equivalent, are to be presented for test in batches of not more than 2 tonnes, with the exceptions of those given in Ch 8, 1.7 Test material 1.7.2 and Ch 8, 1.7 Test material 1.7.3.

1. 7. 2 For single plates or coils weighing more than 2 tonnes, only one tensile specimen per plate or coil is to be taken.

1. 7. 3 A tensile test specimen is required from each plate to be used in the construction of cargo tanks, secondary barriers and process pressure vessels with design temperatures below -55°C.

1. 7. 4 Bars and sections of less than 1 kg/m in nominal weight are to be tested in batches of 1 tonne. Bars and sections with a nominal weight between 1 kg/m and 5 kg/m are to be tested in batches of 2 tonnes. Where the nominal weight is greater than 5 kg/m, one tensile test is to be carried out for every 3 tonnes produced, or fractions thereof.

1. 7. 5 If the material is supplied in the heat treated condition, each batch is to be treated together in the same furnace or subjected to the same finishing treatment when a continuous furnace is used.

1. 7. 6 For plates over 300 mm in width, tensile test specimens are to be cut with their length transverse to the principal direction of rolling. For narrow plates and for sections and bars, the test specimens are to be cut in the longitudinal direction. Longitudinal tensile test specimens are accepted for the strain hardenable 5000 series alloys.

1. 7. 7 Longitudinal tensile test specimens from a plate are to be taken at $\frac{1}{3}$ width from the longitudinal edge. Longitudinal tensile test specimens taken from extruded sections should be taken in the range from $\frac{1}{3}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$ of the distance from the edge to the centre of the thickest region of the section.

1. 8 Mechanical tests

1. 8. 1 At least one tensile test specimen is to be prepared from each batch of material submitted for acceptance.

1. 8. 2 Tensile test specimens are to be machined to the dimensions given in Figure 2. 2. 3: Test specimen dimensions for plates, strip and sections - I and aluminum alloys in Chapter 2. Alternatively, machined proportional test specimens of circular cross-section in accordance with Figure 2. 2. 2: Test specimen dimensions for forgings and castings - II and aluminum alloys in Chapter 2 may be used provided that the diameter is not less than 10 mm. Round bars may be tested in full section, or test specimens may be machined in accordance with the dimensions given in Figure 2. 2. 2: Test specimen dimensions for forgings and castings - II and aluminum alloys in Chapter 2.

1. 8. 3 The results of all tensile tests are to comply with the values given in Table 8. 1. 3: Minimum mechanical properties for acceptance purposes of selected rolled aluminium alloy products and Table 8. 1. 4: Minimum mechanical properties for acceptance purposes of selected extruded aluminium alloy products, as applicable.

Table 8. 1. 4: Minimum mechanical properties for acceptance purposes of selected extruded aluminium alloy products

Alloy and temper condition, *See* Note 2	Thickness, t, mm	0.2% proof stress R_p,N/mm^2	Tensile strengthR_m N/mm^2	Elongation on 4d, %	Elongation on $5.65\sqrt{S_0}$5d, %
5083-O	$3 \le t \le 50$	110	270–350	14	12
5083-H111	$3 \le t \le 50$	165	275	12	10
5083-H112	$3 \le t \le 50$	110	270	12	10
5086-O	$3 \le t \le 50$	95	240–315	14	12
5086-H111	$3 \le t \le 50$	145	250	12	10
5086-H112	$3 \le t \le 50$	95	240	12	10
5059-H112	$3 \le t \le 50$	200	330	10	10
5383-O	$3 \le t \le 50$	145	290	17	17
5383-H111	$3 \le t \le 50$	145	290	17	17
5383-H112	$3 \le t \le 50$	190	310	13	13
6005A-T5	$3 \le t \le 50$	215	260	9	8
6005A-T6	$3 \le t \le 10$	215	260	8	6
	$10 < t \le 50$	200	250	8	6
6061-T6	$3 \le t \le 50$	240	260	10	8
6082-T5	$3 \le t \le 50$	230	270	8	6
6082-T6	$3 \le t \le 5$	250	290	6	–
	$5 < t \le 50$	260	310	10	8

Note *1.* The values are applicable for longitudinal and transverse tensile test specimens as well.

Note *2.* The mechanical properties for the O and H111 tempers are the same for all alloys shown in this Table. However, they are separated in this Table as they are made using different manufacturing processes.

1. 9 Corrosion tests

1. 9. 1 Rolled 5000 series alloys of type 5083, 5383, 5059, 5456 and 5086 in the H116 and H321 tempers intended for use in marine hull construction or in marine applications with frequent direct contact with seawater are to be corrosion tested with respect to exfoliation and intergranular corrosion resistance.

1. 9. 2 The manufacturer is to establish the relationship between microstructure and resistance to corrosion when the above alloys are approved. A reference photomicrograph taken at 500x, under the conditions specified in ASTM B928 Section 9.4.1, is to be prepared for each of the alloy-tempers and thickness ranges relevant. The reference photographs are to be taken from samples which have exhibited no evidence of exfoliation corrosion and a pitting rating of PB or better, when subjected to the test described in ASTM G66 (ASSET).The samples are also to have exhibited resistance to intergranular corrosion at a mass loss no greater than 15 mg/cm^2, when subjected to the test described in ASTM G67 (NAMLT). Upon satisfactory establishment of the relationship between microstructure and resistance to corrosion, the master photomicrographs and

the results of the corrosion tests are to be approved by ACS. Production practices are not to be changed after approval of the reference micrographs.

1. 9. 3 For batch acceptance of 5000 series alloys in the H116 and H321 tempers, metallographic examination of one sample selected from mid width at one end of a coil or random sheet or plate is to be carried out. The microstructure of the sample is to be compared to the reference photomicrograph of acceptable material in the presence of the Surveyor. A longitudinal section perpendicular to the rolled surface is to be prepared for metallographic examination, under the conditions specified in ASTM B928 Section 9.6.1. If the microstructure shows evidence of continuous grain boundary network of aluminium-magnesium precipitate in excess of the reference photomicrographs of acceptable material, the batch is either to be rejected or tested for exfoliation corrosion resistance and intergranular corrosion resistance subject to the agreement of the Surveyor. The corrosion tests are to be in accordance with ASTM G66 and G67 or equivalent standards. Acceptance criteria are that the sample shall exhibit no evidence of exfoliation corrosion and a pitting rating of PB or better when test subjected to ASTM G66 (ASSET) test, and the sample is to exhibit resistance to intergranular corrosion at a mass loss no greater than 15 mg/cm^2 when subjected to ASTM G67 (NAMLT) test. If the results from testing satisfy the acceptance criteria stated in Ch 8, 1.9 Corrosion tests 1.9.2, the batch is accepted, otherwise it is to be rejected.

1. 9. 4 As an alternative to metallographic examination, each batch may be tested for exfoliation corrosion resistance and intergranular corrosion resistance, in accordance with ASTM G66 and G67 under the conditions specified in ASTM B298, or equivalent standards. If this alternative is used, then the results of the test must satisfy the acceptance criteria stated in Ch 8, 1.9 Corrosion tests 1.9.2.

1. 9. 5 Tempers that are corrosion tested in accordance with Ch 8, 1.9 Corrosion tests 1.9.3 are to be marked 'M' after the temper condition, e.g. 5083 H321 M.

1. 10 Pressure weld tests

1. 10. 1 The integrity of pressure welds of closed profile extrusions is to be verified by examination of macrosections or drift expansion tests.

1. 10. 2 Every closed profile extrusion is to be sampled, except where the closed profile extrusions are equal to or shorter than 6.0 m long, in which case a batch is to comprise of five profiles. Every sample is to be tested at both ends after final heat treatment.

1. 10. 3 Where verification is by examination of macrosections, no indication of lack of fusion is permitted.

1. 10. 4 Where verification of fusion at pressure welds of closed profile extrusions is by drift expansion test, testing is to be generally in accordance with Ch 2, 4.3 Drift expanding tests. The minimum included angle of the mandrel is to be 60°, and the minimum specimen length, 50 mm. For acceptance, there is to be no failure by a clean split along the weld line.

1. 11 Visual and non-destructive examination

1. 11. 1 Surface inspection and verification of dimensions are the responsibility of the manufacturer, and acceptance by the Surveyors of material later found to be defective shall not absolve the manufacturer from this responsibility.

1. 11. 2 In general, the non-destructive examination of materials is not required for acceptance purposes. Manufacturers are expected, however, to employ suitable methods of non-destructive examination for the general maintenance of quality standards.

1. 11. 3 For applications where the non-destructive examination of materials in considered to be necessary, the extent of this examination, together with appropriate acceptance standards, are to be agreed between the purchaser, manufacturer and Surveyor.

1. 12 Rectification of defects

1. 12. 1 Slight surface imperfections may be removed by mechanical means, provided that the prior agreement of the Surveyor is obtained, that the work is carried out to his satisfaction and that the final dimensions are acceptable. The repair of defects by welding is not allowed.

1. 13 Identification

1. 13. 1 The manufacturer is to adopt a system of identification which will ensure that all finished material in a batch presented for test is of the same nominal chemical composition.

1. 13. 2 Products are to be clearly marked by the manufacturer in accordance with the requirements of Ch 1 General Requirements. The following details are to be shown on all materials which have been accepted:

a. Manufacturer's name or trade mark.
b. Alloy grade and temper condition.
c. Identification mark which will enable the full history of the item to be traced.
d. The stamp of the ACS brand.

1. 14 Certification of materials

1. 14. 1 A manufacturer’s certificate validated by ACS is to be issued, *See* Ch 1, 3.1, General.

1. 14. 2 Each test certificate is to include the following particulars:

a. Purchaser's name and order number.
b. Contract number.
c. Address to which material is to be despatched.
d. Description and dimensions.
e. Alloy grade and temper condition.
f. Identification mark which will enable the full history of the item to be traced.
g. Chemical composition.
h. Mechanical test results (not required on shipping statement).
i. Details of temper condition and heat treatment, where applicable.
j. Corrosion test results (as applicable).

1. 14. 3 Where the alloy is not produced at the works at which it is wrought, a certificate is to be supplied by the manufacturer of the alloy stating the cast number and chemical composition. The works at which the alloy was produced must be approved by ACS.

PART

2

CHAPTER **8** **Aluminium Alloys**

SECTION **2** **Aluminium alloy rivets**

2. 1 Scope

2. 1. 1 Provision is made in this Section for aluminium alloy rivets intended for use in the construction of marine structures.

2. 1. 2 They are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the appropriate requirements of Ch 8, 1 Plates, bars and sections and those detailed in this Section.

2. 2 Chemical composition

2. 2. 1 The chemical composition of bars used for the manufacture of rivets is to comply with the requirements of Table 8. 2. 1: Chemical composition, percentage.

Table 8. 2. 1: Chemical composition, percentage

Element		5154A	6082
Copper		0.10 max.	0.10 max.
Magnesium		3.1 – 3.9	0.6 – 1.2
Silicon		0.50 max.	0.7 – 1.3
Iron		0.50 max.	0.50 max.
Manganese		0.1 – 0.5	0.4 – 1.0
Zinc		0.20 max.	0.20 max.
Chromium		0.25 max.	0.25 max.
Titanium		0.20 max.	0.10 max.
Other elements:	each	0.05 max.	0.05 max.
	total	0.15 max.	0.15 max.
Aluminium		Remainder	Remainder

2. 3 Heat treatment

2. 3. 1 Rivets are to be supplied in the following condition:

5154A - annealed

6082 - solution treated.

2. 4 Test material

2. 4. 1 Bars intended for the manufacture of rivets are to be presented for test in batches of not more than 250 kg. The material in each batch is to be the same diameter and nominal chemical composition.

2. 4. 2 At least one test sample is to be selected from each batch and, prior to testing, is to be heat treated in full cross-section and in a manner simulating the heat treatment applied to the finished rivets.

2. 5 Mechanical tests

2. 5. 1 At least one tensile and one dump test specimen are to be prepared from each test sample.

2. 5. 2 The tensile test specimen may be either a suitable length of bar tested in full cross-section or a specimen machined to the dimensions given in Figure 2. 2. 2: Test specimen dimensions for forgings and castings - II and aluminum alloys in Chapter 2.

2. 5. 3 The dump test specimen is to consist of a section cut from the bar with the ends perpendicular to the axis. The length of this section is to be equal to the diameter of the bar.

2. 5. 4 The results of tensile tests are to comply with the appropriate requirements of Table 8. 2. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes.

Table 8. 2. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes

Mechanical properties	5154A	6082
0.2% proof stress N/mm^2 min.	90	120
Tensile strength N/mm^2 min.	220	190
Elongation on $5.65\sqrt{S}$% min.	18	16

2. 5. 5 The dump test is to be carried out at ambient temperature and is to consist of compressing the specimen until the diameter is increased to 1.6 times the original diameter. After compression, the specimen is to be free from cracks.

2. 6 Tests from manufactured rivets

2. 6. 1 At least three samples are to be selected from each consignment of manufactured rivets. Dump tests as detailed in Ch 8, 2.5 Mechanical tests are to be carried out on each sample.

2. 7 Identification

2. 7. 1 Each package of manufactured rivets is to be identified with attached labels giving the following details:

a. Manufacturer's name or trade mark.
b. Alloy grade.
c. Rivet size.

2. 8 Certification of materials

2. 8. 1 A manufacturer’s certificate is to be issued (*See* Ch 1, 3.1, General) and for each consignment of manufactured rivets is to include the following particulars:

a. Purchaser's name and order number.
b. Description and dimensions.
c. Specification.

PART

2

CHAPTER 8 Aluminium Alloys

SECTION 3 Aluminium alloy castings

3. 1 Scope

3. 1. 1 Provision is made in this Section for aluminium alloy castings intended for use in the construction of ships, ships for liquid chemicals and other marine structures and liquefied gas piping systems where the design temperature is not lower than minus 165°C. These materials should not be used for piping systems outside cargo tanks except for short lengths of pipes attached to the cargo tanks in which case fire-resisting insulation should be provided.

3. 1. 2 Castings are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with Chapters Ch 1 General Requirements and Ch 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials and also with the requirements of this Section.

3. 1. 3 As an alternative to Ch 8, 3.1 Scope 3.1.2, castings which comply with National or proprietary specifications may be accepted provided that these specifications give reasonable equivalence to the requirements of this Section or are approved for a specific application. Generally, survey and certification are to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of Ch 1 General Requirements.

3. 2 Manufacture

3. 2. 1 Castings are to be manufactured at foundries approved by ACS.

3. 3 Quality of castings

3. 3. 1 All castings are to be free from surface or internal defects which would be prejudicial to their proper application in service.

3. 4 Chemical composition

3. 4. 1 The chemical composition of a sample from each cast is to comply with the requirements given in Table 8. 3. 1: Chemical composition, percentage. Suitable grain refining elements may be used at the discretion of the manufacturer. The content of such elements is to be reported in the ladle analysis.

Table 8. 3. 1: Chemical composition, percentage

Alloy Element	Al–Mg 3	Al–Si 12	Al–Si 10 Mg	Al–Si 7 High purity
Copper	0.1 max	0.1 max.	0.1 max.	0.1 max.

Magnesium	2.5-4.5	0.1 max.	0.15-0.4	0.25-0.45
Silicon	0.5 max.	11.0-13.5	9.0-11.0	6.5-7.5
Iron	0.5 max.	0.7 max.	0.6 max.	0.2 max.
Manganese	0.6 max.	0.5 max.	0.6 max.	0.1 max.
Zinc	0.2 max.	0.1 max.	0.1 max.	0.1 max.
Chromium	0.1 max.	-	-	-
Titanium	0.2 max.	0.2 max.	0.2 max.	0.2 max.
Others each	0.05 max.	0.05 max.	0.05 max.	0.05 max.
Total	0.15 max.	0.15 max.	0.15 max.	0.15 max.
Aluminium	Remainder	Remainder	Remainder	Remainder

3. 4. 2 Where it is proposed to use alloys not specified in Table 8. 3. 1: Chemical composition, percentage, details of the chemical composition, heat treatment and mechanical properties are to be submitted for approval.

3. 4. 3 When a cast is wholly prepared from ingots for which an analysis is already available, and provided that no significant alloy additions are made during melting, the ingot maker's certified analysis can be accepted subject to occasional checks as required by the Surveyor.

3. 5 Heat treatment

3. 5. 1 Castings are to be supplied in the following conditions:

Grade AI-Mg 3 - as-manufactured

Grade AI-Si 12 - as-manufactured

Grade AI-Si 10 Mg - as-manufactured or solution heat treated and precipitation hardened

Grade AI-Si 7 Mg - solution heat treated and

(high purity) - precipitation hardened.

3. 6 Mechanical tests

3. 6. 1 At least one tensile specimen is to be tested from each cast and, where heat treatment is involved, for each heat treatment batch from each cast. Where continuous melting is employed, 500 kg of fettled castings may be regarded as a cast.

3. 6. 2 The test samples are to be separately cast in moulds made from the same type of material as used for the castings. These moulds should conform to National Standards.

3. 6. 3 The method and procedures for the identification of the test specimens, and the castings they represent, are to be agreed with the Surveyor. The identification marks are to be maintained during the preparation of test specimens.

3. 6. 4 Where castings are supplied in the heat treated condition, the test samples are to be heat treated together with the castings which they represent prior to testing.

3. 6. 5 The results of all tensile tests are to comply with the appropriate requirements given in Table 8. 3. 2: Minimum mechanical properties for acceptance purposes of sand-cast and investment cast

reference test pieces and/or Table 8. 3. 3: Minimum mechanical properties for acceptance purposes of chill-cast reference test pieces.

Table 8. 3. 2: Minimum mechanical properties for acceptance purposes of sand-cast and investment cast reference test pieces

Alloy	Temper (*See* Note)	Tensile strength N/mm^2	Elongation %
Al–Mg 3	M	150	5
Al–Si 12	M	150	3
Al–Si 10 Mg	M	150	2
Al–Si 10 Mg	TF	220	1
Al–Si 7 Mg	TF	230	5

Note *M* refers to as cast condition.

Note *TF* refers to solution heat treated and precipitation hardened condition.

3. 6. 6 Where the results of a test do not comply with the requirements, the re-test procedure detailed in Ch 2, 1.4, Re-testing procedures is to be applied. Where castings are to be used in the heat treated condition, the re-test sample must have been heat treated together with the castings it represents.

Table 8. 3. 3: Minimum mechanical properties for acceptance purposes of chill-cast reference test pieces

Alloy	Temper(*See* Note)	Tensile strength N/mm^2	Elongation %
Al–Mg 3	M	150	5
Al–Si 12	M	170	3
Al–Si 10 Mg	M	170	3
Al–Si 10 Mg	TF	240	1.5
Al–Si 7 Mg	TF	250	5

Note *M* refers to as cast condition.

Note *TF* refers to solution heat treated and precipitation hardened condition.

3. 7 Visual examination

3. 7. 1 All castings are to be cleaned and adequately prepared for inspection.

3. 7. 2 The accuracy and verification of dimensions are the responsibility of the manufacturer, unless otherwise agreed.

3. 7. 3 Before acceptance, all castings are to be presented to the Surveyor for visual examination.

3. 8 Rectification of defective castings

3. 8. 1 At the discretion of the Surveyor, small surface blemishes may be removed by local grinding.

3. 8. 2 Where appropriate, repair by welding may be accepted at the discretion of the Surveyor. Such repair is to be made in accordance with an approved procedure.

3. 9 Pressure testing

3. 9. 1 Where required by the relevant Rules, castings are to be pressure tested before final acceptance. Unless otherwise agreed, these tests are to be carried out in the presence and to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

3. 10 Identification

3. 10. 1 The manufacturer is to adopt a system of identification which will enable all finished castings to be traced to the original cast and the Surveyor is to be given full facilities for tracing the casting when required.

3. 10. 2 All castings which have been tested and inspected with satisfactory results are to be clearly marked with the following details:

a. Identification number, cast number or other markings which will enable the full history of the casting to be traced.
b. ACS or Asia Classification Society and the abbreviated name of ACS's.
c. Personal stamp of the Surveyor responsible for the inspection.
d. Test pressure where applicable.
e. Date of final inspection.

3. 10. 3 Where small castings are manufactured in large numbers, modified arrangements for identification may be specially agreed with the Surveyor.

3. 11 Certification of materials

3. 11. 1 A ACS certificate is to be issued (*See* Ch 1, 3.1, General) giving the following particulars for each casting or batch of castings which have been accepted:

a. Purchaser's name and order number.
b. Description of castings and alloy type.
c. Identification number.
d. Ingot or cast analysis.
e. General details of heat treatment, where applicable.
f. Results of mechanical tests.
g. Test pressure, where applicable.

PART

2

CHAPTER **8** **Aluminium Alloys**

SECTION **4** **Aluminium/steel transition joints**

4. 1 Scope

4. 1. 1 Provision is made in this Section for explosion bonded composite aluminium/steel transition joints used for connecting aluminium structures to steel plating.

4. 1. 2 Each individual application is to be separately approved as required by the relevant Rules dealing with design and construction.

4. 2 Manufacture

4. 2. 1 Transition joints are to be manufactured by an approved producer in accordance with an approved specification which is to include the maximum temperature allowable at the interface during welding.

4. 2. 2 The aluminium material is to comply with the requirements of Ch 8, 1 Plates, bars and sections and the steel is to be of an appropriate grade complying with the requirements of Ch 3, 2 Normal strength steels for ship and other structural applications.

4. 2. 3 Alternative materials which comply with International, National or proprietary specifications may be accepted provided that they give reasonable equivalence to the requirements of Ch 8, 4.2 Manufacture 4.2.2 or are approved for a specific application.

4. 2. 4 Intermediate layers between the aluminium and steel may be used, in which case the material of any such layer is to be specified by the manufacturer and is to be recorded in the approval certificate. Any such intermediate layer is then to be used in all production transition joints.

4. 3 Visual and non-destructive examination

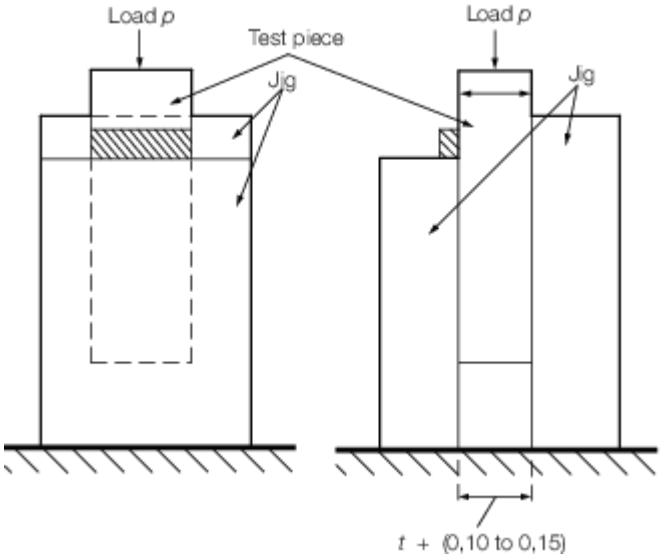
4. 3. 1 Each composite plate is to be subjected to 100 per cent visual and ultrasonic examination in accordance with a relevant National Standard to determine the extent of any unbonded areas. Unbonded areas are unacceptable and any such area plus 25 mm of surrounding sound material is to be discarded.

4. 4 Mechanical tests

4. 4. 1 Two shear test specimens and two tensile test specimens are to be taken from each end of each composite plate for tests to be made on the bond strength. One shear and one tensile test specimen from each end are to be tested at ambient temperature after heating to the maximum allowable interface temperature, *See* Ch 8, 4.2 Manufacture 4.2.1; the other two specimens are to be tested without heat treatment.

4. 4. 2 Shear tests may be made on a specimen as shown in Figure 8. 4. 1: Specimen and procedure for shear tests or an appropriate equivalent. Tensile tests may be made across the interface by welding extension pieces to each surface or by the ram method shown in Figure 8. 4. 2: Ram tensile test or by an appropriate alternative method.

Figure 8. 4. 1: Specimen and procedure for shear tests



4. 4. 3 The shear and tensile strengths of all the test specimens are to comply with the requirements of the manufacturing specification.

4. 4. 4 If either the shear or tensile strength of the bond is less than the specified minimum but not less than 70 per cent of the specified minimum, two additional shear and two tensile test specimens from each end of the composite plate are to be tested and, in addition, bend tests as described in Ch 8, 4.4 Mechanical tests 4.4.6 and Table 8. 4. 1: Bend tests on explosion bonded aluminium/steel composites are to be made.

Figure 8. 4. 2: Ram tensile test

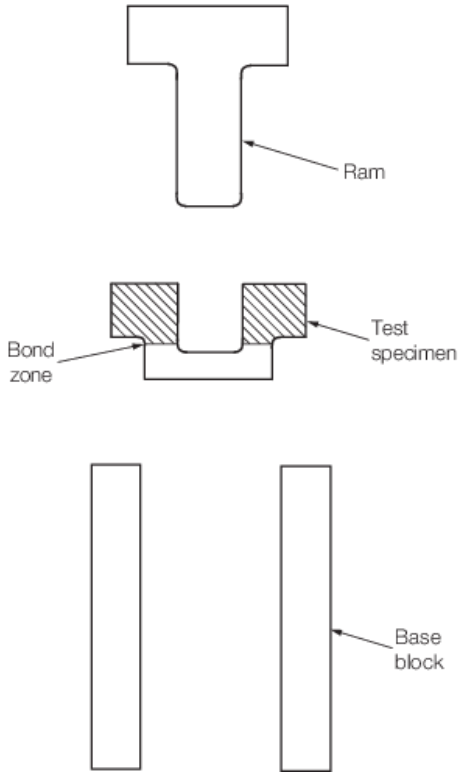


Table 8. 4. 1: Bend tests on explosion bonded aluminium/steel composites

Type of test	Minimum bend, degrees	Diameter of former
Aluminium in tension	90	*3T*
Steel in tension	90	*3T*
Side bend	90	*6T*
Note *T* is the total thickness of the composite plate.		

4. 4. 5 If either the shear or tensile strength of the bond is less than 70 per cent of the specified minimum the cause is to be investigated. After evaluation of the results of this investigation, ACS will consider the extent of composite plate which is to be rejected.

4. 4. 6 Bend tests, when required, are to be made under the following conditions, as listed in Table 8. 4. 1: Bend tests on explosion bonded aluminium/steel composites:

a. The aluminium plate is in tension.
b. The steel plate is in tension.
c. A side bend is applied.

4. 5 Identification

4. 5. 1 Each acceptable transition strip is to be clearly marked with the following particulars:

a. The aluminium plate is in tension.
b. Manufacturer's name or trade mark.
c. Identification mark for the grade of aluminium.

d. Identification mark for the grade of steel.

The particulars are to be stamped on the aluminium surface at one end of the strip.

4. 6 Certification of materials

4. 6. 1 A manufacturer's certificate validated by ACS is to be issued (*See* Ch 1, 3.1, General) and as a minimum is to include the following particulars:

a. Purchaser's name and order number.
b. The contract number for which the material is intended, if known.
c. Address to which the material is dispatched.
d. Description and dimensions of the material.
e. Specifications or grades of both the aluminium alloy and the steel and any intermediate layer.
f. Cast numbers of the steel and aluminium plates.
g. Identification number of the composite plate.
h. Mechanical test results (not required on shipping statement).

PART

2

CHAPTER **9 Copper Alloys**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**Castings for propellers**		**509**
	1. 1	Scope	509
	1. 2	Manufacture	509
	1. 3	Quality of castings	509
	1. 4	Chemical composition	509
	1. 5	Heat treatment	511
	1. 6	Test material	511
	1. 7	Mechanical tests	511
	1. 8	Inspection and non-destructive examination	512
	1. 9	Rectification of defective castings	516
	1. 10	Weld repair procedure	518
	1. 11	Identification	520
	1. 12	Certification of materials	520
SECTION 2	**Castings for valves, liners and bushes**		**521**
	2. 1	Scope	521
	2. 2	Manufacture	521
	2. 3	Quality of castings	521
	2. 4	Chemical composition	521
	2. 5	Heat treatment	523
	2. 6	Test material	523
	2. 7	Mechanical tests	523
	2. 8	Inspection	525
	2. 9	Rectification of defective castings	525
	2. 10	Pressure testing	526
	2. 11	Identification	526
	2. 12	Certification of materials	527

SECTION 3 Tubes 528

3. 1 Scope 528
3. 2 Manufacture 528
3. 3 Quality 528
3. 4 Dimensional tolerances 528
3. 5 Chemical composition 529
3. 6 Heat treatment 529
3. 7 Mechanical tests 530
3. 8 Visual examination 530
3. 9 Hydraulic test 531
3. 10 Rectification of defects 531
3. 11 Identification 531
3. 12 Certification of materials 532

PART

2

CHAPTER **9 Copper Alloys**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 9. 1. 1: Chemical composition of propeller and propeller blade castings 510

Table 9. 1. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: propeller and propeller blade castings 512

Table 9. 1. 3: Allowable number and size of dye penetrant indications in a reference area of 100 cm^2 (*See* Note 1) 517

Table 9. 1. 4: Permissible rectification of new propellers by welding 517

Table 9. 1. 5: Soaking times for stress relief heat treatment of copper alloy propellers 519

Table 9. 2. 1: Chemical compositions of long freezing range alloys: principal elements only 521

Table 9. 2. 2: Chemical compositions of short freezing range alloys: principal elements only 522

Table 9. 2. 3: Mechanical properties of long freezing range alloys for acceptance purposes 524

Table 9. 2. 4: Mechanical properties of short freezing range alloys for acceptance purposes 524

Table 9. 2. 5: Visual and surface NDE acceptance criteria for valves and pressure components 525

Table 9. 3. 1: Chemical composition of principal elements only 529

Table 9. 3. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes 530

PART

2

CHAPTER **9 Copper Alloys**

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 9. 1. 1: Keel block type test sample 511
Figure 9. 1. 2: Severity zones in all propeller blades 513
Figure 9. 1. 3: Severity Zone B at continuously loaded blade tip 514
Figure 9. 1. 4: Severity zones for controllable pitch propeller blades 514
Figure 9. 1. 5: Severity zones in integrally cast CPP blade journals 515
Figure 9. 1. 6: Severity zones for controllable pitch propeller hub 515
Figure 9. 2. 1: Sand cast test bars for long freezing range alloys 526

PART

2

CHAPTER **9** **Copper Alloys**

SECTION **1** **Castings for propellers**

1. 1 Scope

1. 1. 1 This Section gives the requirements for copper alloy castings for one-piece propellers and separately cast blades and bosses for fixed pitch and controllable pitch propellers (CPP). These include contra-rotating propellers and propulsors fitted to podded drives and azimuth units.

1. 1. 2 These castings are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the appropriate requirements of Chapters Ch 1 General Requirements and Ch 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials and the specific requirements of this Section.

1. 1. 3 As an alternative to Ch 9, 1.1 Scope 1.1.2, castings which comply with National or proprietary specifications may be accepted provided that these specifications give reasonable equivalence to the requirements of this Section or alternatively are approved for a specific application.

1. 1. 4 The appropriate requirements of this Section may also be applied to the repair and inspection of propellers which have been damaged during service.

1. 1. 5 Generally, survey and certification are to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of Ch 1 General Requirements.

1. 2 Manufacture

1. 2. 1 All castings are to be manufactured at foundries approved by Asia Classification Society (hereinafter referred as 'ACS').

1. 2. 2 The pouring is to be carried out into dried moulds using degassed liquid metal. The pouring is to avoid turbulent flow. Special devices and/or procedures are to be used to prevent slag flowing into the mould.

1. 3 Quality of castings

1. 3. 1 All castings are to be free from surface or internal defects which would be prejudicial to their proper application in service.

1. 3. 2 The removal and repair of defects are dealt with in Ch 9, 1.9, Rectification of defective castings and Ch 9, 1.10, Weld repair procedure.

1. 4 Chemical composition

1. 4. 1 The chemical compositions of samples from each melt are to comply with the manufacturing specification approved by ACS and also with the overall limits given in Table 9. 1. 1: Chemical composition of propeller and propeller blade castings. In addition to carrying out chemical analysis

for the elements given in the Table, it is expected that manufacturers will ensure that any harmful residual elements are within acceptable limits.

1. 4. 2 The use of alloys whose chemical compositions are different from those detailed in Table 9. 1. 1: Chemical composition of propeller and propeller blade castings will be given special consideration by ACS.

1. 4. 3 The manufacturer is to maintain records of all chemical analyses, which are to be made available to the Surveyor so that he can satisfy himself that the chemical composition of each casting is within the specified limits.

1. 4. 4 When a melt is wholly prepared from ingots for which an analysis is already available, and provided that no significant alloy additions are made during melting, the ingot maker's certified analysis can be accepted subject to occasional checks as required by the Surveyor. If any foundry returns are added to the melts, the ingot manufacturer's chemical analyses are to be supplemented by frequent checks as required by the Surveyor.

Table 9. 1. 1: Chemical composition of propeller and propeller blade castings

Alloy designation	Chemical composition of ladle samples %							
	Cu	Sn	Zn	Pb	Ni	Fe	Al	Mn
Grade Cu 1 Manganese bronze (high tensile brass)	52–62	1.5 max.	35–40	0.5 max.	1.0 max.	0.5–2.5	0.5–3.0	0.5–4.0
Grade Cu 2 Ni-manganese bronze (high tensile brass)	50–57	0.1–1.5	33–38	0.5 max.	3.0–8.0	0.5–2.5	0.5–2.0	1.0–4.0
Grade Cu 3 Ni-aluminium bronze	77–82	0.1 max.	1.0 max.	0.03 max.	3.0–6.0 (*See* Note)	2.0–6.0 (*See* Note)	7.0–11.0	0.5–4.0
Grade Cu4 Mn–aluminium bronze	70–80	1.0 max.	6.0 max.	0.05 max.	1.5–3.0	2.0–5.0	6.5–9.0	8.0–20.0

Note For Naval ships, the nickel content is to be higher than the iron content.

1. 4. 5 For alloys Grade Cu 1 and Cu 2, the zinc equivalent shall not exceed 45 per cent, and is to be calculated using the following formula:

$$zinc\ equivalent\ \% \ = \ 100 \ - \frac{100 \ \times \% \ Cu}{100 + A}$$

where A is the algebraic sum of the following:

$1 \ \times \ \%\ \mathrm{Sn}$

$5 \ \times \ \%\ \mathrm{Al}$

$-0.5 \ \times \ \%\ \mathrm{Mn}$

$-0.1 \ \times \ \%\ \mathrm{Fe}$

$-2.3 \ \times \ \%\ \mathrm{Ni}$

1. 4. 6 Samples for metallographic examination are to be prepared from the ends of test bars cast from every melt of Grade Cu 1 and Cu 2 alloys. The proportion of alpha-phase determined from the average of at least five counts is to be not less than 25 per cent.

1. 5 Heat treatment

1. 5. 1 At the option of the manufacturer, castings may be supplied in the `as cast' or heat treated condition. However, if heat treatment is to be applied, full details are to be included in the manufacturing specification.

1. 5. 2 If any welds are made in the propeller casting, stress relief heat treatment is required in order to minimise the residual stresses. Requirements concerning such heat treatment are given in Ch 9, 1.10, Weld repair procedure.

1. 6 Test material

1. 6. 1 Test samples are to be cast separately from each melt used for the manufacture of propeller or propeller blade castings.

1. 6. 2 The test samples are to be of the keel block type, generally in accordance with the dimensions given in Figure 9. 1. 1: Keel block type test sample and are to be cast in moulds made from the same type of material as used for the castings.

1. 6. 3 The method and procedures for the identification of the test specimens, and the castings they represent, are to be agreed with the Surveyor. The identification marks are to be transferred and maintained during the preparation of test specimens.

1. 6. 4 Where castings are supplied in the heat treated condition, the test samples are to be heat treated together with the castings which they represent.

1. 7 Mechanical tests

1. 7. 1 At least one tensile test specimen representative of each cast is to be prepared. The dimensions of this test specimen are to be in accordance with Figure 2. 2. 1: Test specimen dimensions for plates, strip and sections - I in Chapter 2.

1. 7. 2 The results of all tensile tests are to comply with the requirements given in Table 9. 1. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: propeller and propeller blade castings.

Figure 9. 1. 1: Keel block type test sample

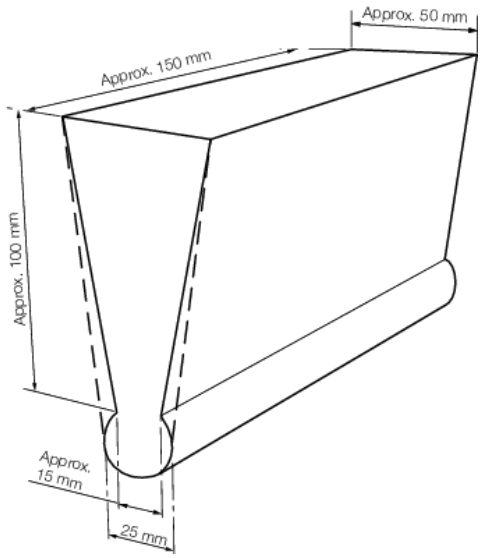


Table 9. 1. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: propeller and propeller blade castings

Alloy designation	0.2% proof stress N/mm^2 minimum	Tensile strength N/mm^2 minimum	Elongation on $5.65\sqrt{S_0}$ % minimum
Grade Cu 1 Manganese bronze (high tensile brass)	175	440	20
Grade Cu 2 Ni-manganese bronze (high tensile brass)	175	440	20
Grade Cu 3 Ni-aluminium bronze	245	590	16
Grade Cu 4 Mn-aluminium bronze	275	630	18

1. 7. 3 The mechanical properties of alloys whose chemical compositions do not accord with Table 9. 1. 1: Chemical composition of propeller and propeller blade castings are to comply with a manufacturing specification approved by ACS.

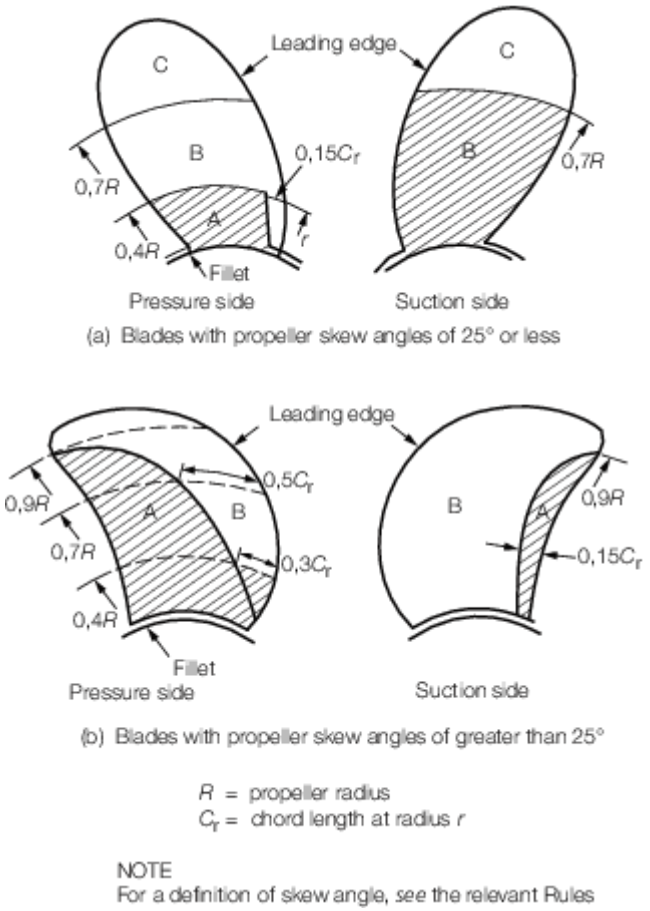
1. 8 Inspection and non-destructive examination

1. 8. 1 Propeller castings should be visually inspected at all stages of manufacture. The manufacturer is to draw any significant imperfections to the attention of the Surveyor. Such imperfections are to be verified in accordance with Ch 9, 1.9, Rectification of defective castings.

1. 8. 2 All finished castings are to be subjected to a comprehensive visual examination by the Surveyor, including internal surfaces such as the bore and bolt holes. Where unauthorised weld repairs are suspected by the Surveyor, the area is to be etched (e.g. by iron chloride) for the purpose of confirmation.

1. 8. 3 For the purpose of these requirements, the blades of propellers, including CPP blades, are divided into three severity Zones A, B and C as shown in Figure 9. 1. 2: Severity zones in all propeller blades and detailed in Ch 9, 1.8 Inspection and non-destructive examination 1.8.4 for blades having skew angles of 25° or less and Ch 9, 1.8 Inspection and non-destructive examination 1.8.5 for blades having skew angles of greater than 25°.

Figure 9. 1. 2: Severity zones in all propeller blades



(a) Blades with propeller skew angles of 25° or less

(b) Blades with propeller skew angles of greater than 25°

R = propeller radius
C_r = chord length at radius r

NOTE
For a definition of skew angle, *see* the relevant Rules

1. 8. 4 Skew angles of 25° or less:

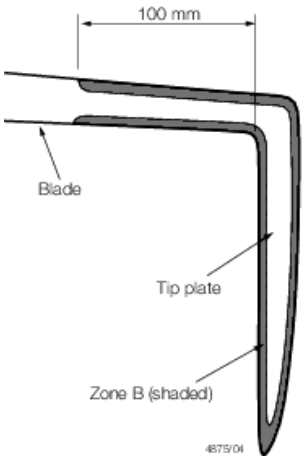
- Zone A is the area on the pressure side of the blade from and including the root fillet to 0.4R and bounded by the trailing edge and by a line at a distance 0.15 times the chord length from the leading edge.
- Zone B includes the areas inside 0.7R on both sides of the blade, excluding Zone A.
- Zone C includes the areas outside 0.7R on both sides of the blade.

1. 8. 5 Skew angles of greater than 25°:

- Zone A is the area on the pressure side of the blade bounded by, and including, the root fillet and a line running from the junction of the leading edge with the root fillet to the trailing edge at 0.9R and passing through the mid-point of the chord at 0.7R and a point situated at 0.3 of the chord length from the leading edge at 0.4R.
- Zone A also includes the area along the trailing edge on the suction side of the blade from the root to 0.9R and with its inner boundary at 0.15 of the chord length tapering to meet the trailing edge at 0.9R.
- Zone B constitutes the whole of the remainder of the blade surfaces.

1. 8. 6 In propeller blades with continuously loaded tips (CLT), the whole of the tip plate and the adjoining blade to a distance of 100 mm is to be regarded as severity Zone B, *See* Figure 9. 1. 3: Severity Zone B at continuously loaded blade tip. For propellers with diameters less than 2 m, the width of this zone may be reduced to one tenth of the propeller radius.

Figure 9. 1. 3: Severity Zone B at continuously loaded blade tip



1. 8. 7 In addition, the palm of a CPP blade is divided into severity Zones A and B as shown in Figure 9. 1. 4: Severity zones for controllable pitch propeller blades.

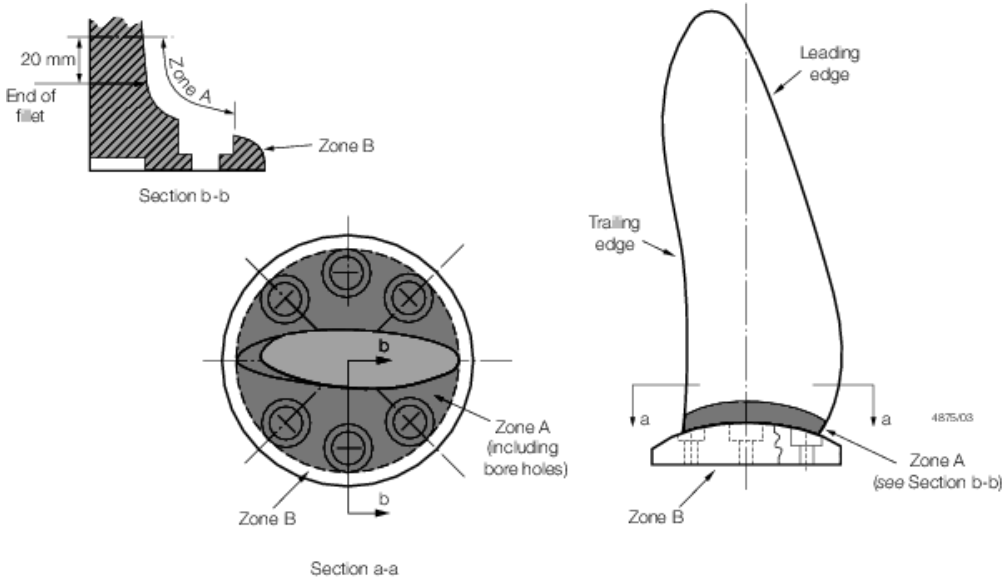
1. 8. 8 If a CPP blade has an integrally cast journal, the fillets of the journal and the adjoining material up to a distance of 20 mm from the fillet run-outs are to be regarded as Zone B, as indicated in Figure 9. 1. 5: Severity zones in integrally cast CPP blade journals. The remainder of the surface of the journal may be regarded as Zone C.

1. 8. 9 Hubs of controllable pitch propellers are to contain a Zone A region at each blade port as shown in Figure 9. 1. 6: Severity zones for controllable pitch propeller hub. The remainder may be regarded as Zone C.

1. 8. 10 On completion of machining and grinding, the whole surface of each casting is to be subjected to a dye penetrant inspection in accordance with a procedure acceptable to ACS.

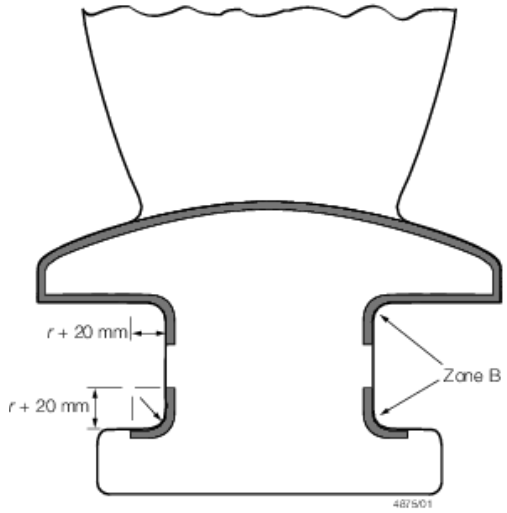
1. 8. 11 All dye penetrant inspections on Zone A areas in the finished condition are to be made in the presence of the Surveyor.

Figure 9. 1. 4: Severity zones for controllable pitch propeller blades



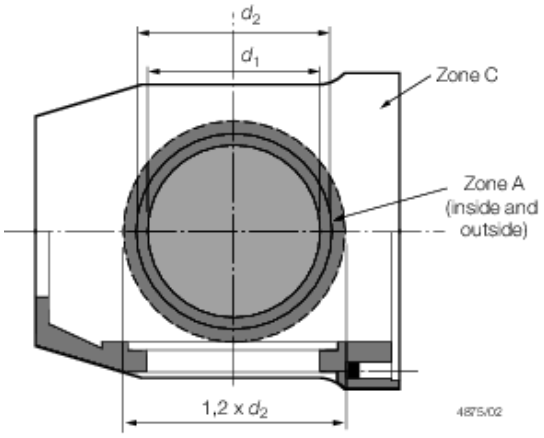
The surfaces of blades are to be divided into severity zones in accordance with Fig. 9.1.2

Figure 9. 1. 5: Severity zones in integrally cast CPP blade journals



The surfaces of the journal which are not shaded are to be regarded as severity Zone C

Figure 9. 1. 6: Severity zones for controllable pitch propeller hub



(d_1 and d_2 = diameters)

1. 8. 12 Dye penetrant inspections on Zones B and C are to be performed by the manufacturer and may be witnessed at the Surveyor's request.

1. 8. 13 The surface to be inspected shall be divided into reference areas of 100 cm^2. The indications detected shall, with respect to their size and number, not exceed the values given in Table 9. 1. 3: Allowable number and size of dye penetrant indications in a reference area of 100 cm2 (See Note 1). The area shall be taken in the most unfavourable location relative to the indication being evaluated.

1. 8. 14 Indications exceeding the acceptance standard in Table 9. 1. 3: Allowable number and size of dye penetrant indications in a reference area of 100 cm2 (See Note 1) shall be repaired in accordance with Ch 9, 1.9, Rectification of defective castings.

1. 8. 15 All defects requiring repair by welding in new propeller castings are to be recorded on sketches showing their locations and dimensions. Copies of these sketches are to be presented to the Surveyor prior to repair.

1. 8. 16 Where repairs have been made either by grinding or welding, the repaired areas are to be subjected to dye penetrant inspection in the presence of the Surveyor, regardless of their location.

1. 8. 17 Where no welds have to be made on a casting, the manufacturer is to provide the Surveyor with a statement that this is the case.

1. 8. 18 Where it is suspected that a casting contains internal defects, radiographic and/or ultrasonic examination may be required by the Surveyor. The acceptance criteria are to be agreed between the manufacturer and ACS in accordance with a recognised standard. The standard ASTM E272-99 (Severity Level 2) or equivalent is to be the radiographic acceptance standard for copper alloy castings. Ultrasonic testing of Cu 1 and Cu 2 is not considered in these Rules. For Cu 3 and Cu 4, ultrasonic inspection of defects may be possible and is to comply with the requirements for steel castings.

1. 8. 19 The measurement of dimensional accuracy is the responsibility of the manufacturer but the report on dimensional inspection is to be presented to the Surveyor who may require checks to be made and to witness such checks.

1. 8. 20 Static balancing is to be carried out on all propellers in accordance with the approved plan. Dynamic balancing is necessary for propellers running above 500 rpm.

1. 9 Rectification of defective castings

1. 9. 1 The rectification of defective propeller and propeller blade castings is to be carried out in accordance with the requirements given in Ch 9, 1.9 Rectification of defective castings 1.9.2 to Ch 9, 1.9 Rectification of defective castings 1.9.12.

1. 9. 2 The rectification of small indications within the acceptance standard of Table 9. 1. 3: Allowable number and size of dye penetrant indications in a reference area of 100 cm2 (See Note 1) is not generally required except where they occur in closely spaced groups.

1. 9. 3 Where, in the surface of the end face or bore of a propeller boss, local pores are present which do not themselves adversely affect the strength of the casting, they may be filled with a suitable plastic filler after the appropriate preparation of the defective area. The foundry is to maintain records and details of all castings which have been so rectified.

1. 9. 4 Where unacceptable defects are found in a casting, they are to be removed by mechanical means, and the surfaces of the resulting depressions are subsequently to be ground smooth. Complete elimination of the defects is to be proved by adequate dye penetrant inspection.

1. 9. 5 Shallow grooves or depressions resulting from the removal of defects may, at the discretion of the Surveyor, be accepted provided that they will cause no appreciable reduction in the strength of the castings and that they are suitably blended by grinding.

1. 9. 6 Welded repairs are to be undertaken only when they are considered to be necessary and approved by the Surveyor. In general, welds having an area less than 5 cm^2 are to be avoided.

1. 9. 7 All weld repairs are to be carried out in accordance with qualified procedures by suitably qualified welders, and are to be completed to the satisfaction of the Surveyor. Records are to be made available to the Surveyor.

1. 9. 8 Welding is generally not permitted in Zone A and will only be allowed after special consideration.

1. 9. 9 Prior approval by the Surveyor is required for any welds in Zone B. Complete details of the repair procedure are to be submitted for each case.

1. 9. 10 Repair by welding is allowed in Zone C provided that there is compliance with Ch 9, 1.9 Rectification of defective castings 1.9.6 and Ch 9, 1.9 Rectification of defective castings 1.9.7.

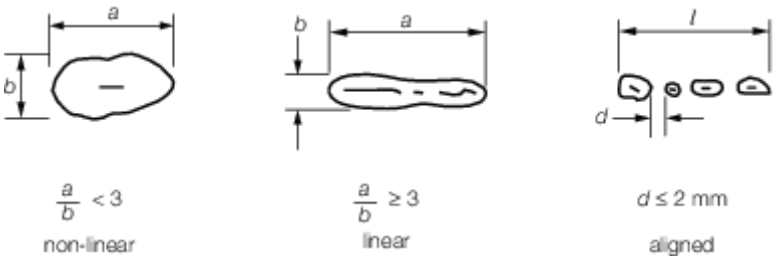
1. 9. 11 The maximum area of any single repair and the maximum total area of repair in any one zone or region are given in Table 9. 1. 4: Permissible rectification of new propellers by welding.

Table 9. 1. 3: Allowable number and size of dye penetrant indications in a reference area of 100 cm² (*See* Note 1)

Severity Zones	Max. total number of indications	Type of indications (*See* Note 2)	Max. number of each type (*See* Notes 3 and 4)	Max. acceptable value for 'a' or 'l' of indications (mm) (*See* Note 2)
A	7	Non-linear	5	4
		Linear	2	3
		Aligned	2	3
B	14	Non-linear	10	6
		Linear	4	6
		Aligned	4	6
C	20	Non linear	14	8
		Linear	6	6
		Aligned	6	6

Note *1.* The reference area is defined as an area of 0.01 m², which may be square or rectangular, with the major dimension not exceeding 250 mm. The area shall be taken in the most unfavourable location relative to the indication being evaluated.

Note *2.* Non-linear, linear and aligned indications are defined as follows:



Note *3.* Only indications that have any dimension greater than 1.5 mm shall be considered relevant.

Note *4.* Single non-linear indications less than 2 mm in Zone A and less than 3 mm in other zones may be disregarded.

Note *5.* The total number of non-linear indications may be increased to the maximum total number, or part thereof, represented by the absence of linear or aligned indications.

1. 9. 12 Where it is proposed to exceed the areas given in Table 9. 1. 4: Permissible rectification of new propellers by welding, the nature and extent of the repair work are to be approved by the Surveyor before commencement of the repair.

Table 9. 1. 4: Permissible rectification of new propellers by welding

Severity zone or region	Maximum individual area of repair	Maximum total area of repairs
Zone A	Weld repairs not generally permitted	

Zone B	Defects that are not deeper than (t/40) mm or 2 mm, whichever is greater, below the minimum local thickness are to be removed by grinding. Defects which are deeper than allowable for removal by grinding may be repaired by welding.	
Zone C	60 cm^2 or 0.6% x S whichever is the greater	200 cm^2 or 2% x S, whichever is the greater in combined Zones B and C but not more than 100 cm^2 or 0.8% x S, whichever is the greater, in Zone B on the pressure side
Other regions (*See* Note)	17 cm^2 or 1.5% area of the region whichever is the greater	50 cm^2 or 5% × area of the region whichever is the greater
where	t = minimum local thickness in mm S = area of one side of a blade = $0.79\frac{D_2 B}{N}$ D = finished diameter of propeller B = developed area ratio N = number of blades	
Note Other regions include: (a) the bore; (b) the forward and aft faces of the boss; (c) the outer surface of the boss to the start of the blade root fillets; (d) the inner face of a CPP blade palm; (e) all surfaces of CPP nose cones; (f) the surfaces of integral journals to CPP blades other than the fillets.		

1. 10 Weld repair procedure

1. 10. 1 Welding is to be carried out under cover in positions free from draughts and adverse weather conditions.

1. 10. 2 The manufacturer is to submit a detailed welding procedure specification covering the weld preparation, welding parameters, filler metal, preheating, post-weld heat treatment and inspection procedures.

1. 10. 3 Before welding is started, Welding Procedure Qualification tests are to be carried out and witnessed by the Surveyor. Each welder is to be qualified to carry out the proposed welding using the same process, consumable and position which are to be used for the repair.

1. 10. 4 Defects to be repaired by welding are to be removed completely by mechanical means (e.g. grinding, chipping or milling). Removal of defects in accordance with the requirements for Zone A is to be demonstrated by dye penetrant inspection in the presence of the Surveyor. The excavation is to be prepared in a manner which will allow good fusion and is to be clean and dry.

1. 10. 5 Metal arc welding with the electrodes or filler wire used in the procedure tests is to be used for all types of repairs. Welds should preferably be made in the downhand (flat) position. Where necessary, suitable preheat is to be applied before welding, and the preheat temperature is to be maintained until welding is completed.

1. 10. 6 When flux coated electrodes are used they are to be dried immediately before use, in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1. 10. 7 All slag, undercuts and other defects are to be removed before the subsequent run is deposited.

1. 10. 8 With the exception given in Ch 9, 1.10 Weld repair procedure 1.10.9, all weld repairs in areas of solid propellers exposed to sea-water, and all repairs to separately cast blades, are to be stress relief heat treated.

1. 10. 9 Stress relief heat treatment is not mandatory after welding Grade Cu 3 castings in Zone C unless a welding consumable susceptible to stress corrosion (e.g. complying with the composition range of Grade Cu 4) is used. All welds in Zones A and B however, must be stress relieved by heat treatment, regardless of alloy.

1. 10. 10 Propeller and propeller blades are to be stress relieved within the following temperature ranges:

alloy Grades Cu 1 and Cu 2 350°C to 550°C

alloy Grade Cu 3 450°C to 500°C

alloy Grade Cu 4 450°C to 600°C

Soaking times are to be in accordance with Table 9. 1. 5: Soaking times for stress relief heat treatment of copper alloy propellers, and subsequent cooling from the soaking temperature is to be suitably controlled to minimise residual stresses and is not to exceed 50°C per hour until the temperature is below 200°C. Care should be taken to avoid heating castings in the Grade Cu 3 alloy at temperatures between 300 and 400°C for prolonged periods.

Table 9. 1. 5: Soaking times for stress relief heat treatment of copper alloy propellers

Stress relief temperature °C (*See* Notes)	Alloy Grade Cu1 and Cu2		Alloy Grade Cu3 and Cu4	
	Hours per 25 mm of thickness	Maximum recommended total time hours	Hours per 25 mm of thickness	Maximum recommended total time hours
350	5	15	—	—
400	1	5	—	—
450	½	2	5	15
500	¼	1	1	5
550	¼	½	½	2
600	–	–	¼	1

Note *1.* Treatment at 550°C is not applicable to alloy Grade Cu3.

Note *2.* Treatment at 600°C is only applicable to alloy Grade Cu4.

1. 10. 11 Stress relief heat treatment is to be carried out, where possible, in furnaces having suitable atmosphere and temperature control. Sufficient thermocouples are to be attached to the casting to measure the temperature at positions of extremes of thickness.

1. 10. 12 As an alternative to Ch 9, 1.10 Weld repair procedure 1.10.11, local stress relief heat treatment may be accepted, provided that the Surveyor is satisfied that the technique will be effective and that adequate precautions are taken to prevent the introduction of detrimental temperature gradients. Where local stress relief heat treatment is approved, adequate temperature control is to be provided. The area of the propeller or blade adjacent to the repair is to be suitably monitored and insulated to ensure that the required temperature is maintained and that temperature gradients

are moderate. Care should be taken to select the shape of an area to be heat treated which will minimise residual stresses.

1. 10. 13 On completion, welds are to be ground smooth for visual examination and dye penetrant inspection. Where a propeller or propeller blade is to be stress relief heat treated, a visual examination is to be made before heat treatment, and both visual and dye penetrant examinations are to be made after the stress relief heat treatment. Irrespective of location, all weld repairs are to be assessed according to Zone A in Table 9. 1. 3: Allowable number and size of dye penetrant indications in a reference area of 100 cm2 (See Note 1).

1. 10. 14 The foundry is to maintain full records detailing the weld procedure, heat treatment and extent and location on drawings of repairs made to each casting. These records are to be available for review by the Surveyor, and copies of individual records are to be supplied to the Surveyor on request.

1. 10. 15 ACS reserves the right to restrict the amount of repair work accepted from a manufacturer when it appears that repetitive defects are the result of improper foundry techniques or practices.

1. 11 Identification

1. 11. 1 Castings are to be clearly marked by the manufacturer in accordance with the requirements of Ch 1 General Requirements. The following details are to be shown on all castings which have been accepted:

a. Identification mark which will enable the full history of the item to be traced.
b. Alloy grade.
c. ACS or Asia Classification Society and the abbreviated name of ACS.
d. Personal stamp of Surveyor responsible for the final inspection.
e. Date of final inspection.
f. Skew angle if in excess of 25°. *See* Pt 5, Ch 7, 1 Plans and particulars of the Rules for Ships for the definition of skew angle.

1. 12 Certification of materials

1. 12. 1 A ACS certificate is to be issued for each propeller, *See* Ch 1, 3.1, General.

1. 12. 2 The manufacturer is to provide the Surveyor with the following particulars for each casting:

a. Purchaser's name and order number.
b. Description of casting.
c. Alloy designation and/or trade name.
d. Identification number of casting.
e. Cast identification number if different from (d).
f. Details of heat treatment, where applicable.
g. Skew angle if in excess of 25°. *See* the relevant Rules for the definition of skew angle.
h. Final weight of casting.
i. Results of non-destructive tests and details of test procedures.
j. Proportion of alpha-structure for Cu1 and Cu2 alloys.
k. Results of mechanical tests.
l. A sketch showing the location and extent of welding repairs (if any).

PART

2

CHAPTER **9** **Copper Alloys**

SECTION **2** **Castings for valves, liners and bushes**

2. 1 Scope

2. 1. 1 This Section makes provision for copper alloy castings for valves, liners, bushes and other fittings intended for use in the construction of ships, other marine structures, machinery and pressure piping systems.

2. 1. 2 Castings are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with Chapters Ch 1 General Requirements and Ch 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials, and also with the requirements given in this Section.

2. 1. 3 As an alternative to Ch 9, 2.1 Scope 2.1.2, castings which comply with National or proprietary specifications may be accepted provided that these specifications give reasonable equivalence to the requirements of this Section or alternatively are approved for a specific application. Generally, survey and certification are to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of Ch 1 General Requirements.

2. 2 Manufacture

2. 2. 1 Castings are to be manufactured at foundries approved by ACS.

2. 3 Quality of castings

2. 3. 1 All castings are to be free from surface or internal defects which would be prejudicial to their proper application in service.

2. 4 Chemical composition

2. 4. 1 The chemical composition is to comply with the requirements of a National or International Standard and, where appropriate, with the limits for the principal elements of the preferred alloys listed in Table 9. 2. 1: Chemical compositions of long freezing range alloys: principal elements only and Table 9. 2. 2: Chemical compositions of short freezing range alloys: principal elements only.

Table 9. 2. 1: Chemical compositions of long freezing range alloys: principal elements only

Alloy type	Designation	Chemical composition						Typical applications
		Cu	Sn	Zn	Pb	Ni	P	
Phosphor bronze	Cu Sn11 P	87.0 – 89.5	10.0 – 11.5	0.05 max.	0.25 max.	0.10 max	0.5 – 1.0	

	Cu Sn12	85.0 – 88.5	11.0 – 13.0	0.50 max.	0.7 max.	2.0 max	0.60 max	Liners, bushes, valves and fittings
Gunmetal	Cu Sn10 Zn2	Remainder	9.5 – 10.5	1.75 – 2.75	1.5 max.	1.0 max	–	Liners, valves and fittings
Leaded gunmetal	Cu Sn5 Zn5 Pb5	83.0 – 87.0	4.0 – 6.0	4.0 – 6.0	4.0 – 6.0	2.0 max	0.10 max	Bushes, valves and fittings
	Cu Sn7 Zn2 Pb3	85.0 – 89.0	6.0 – 8.0	1.5 – 3.0	2.5 – 3.5	2.0 max	0.10 max	
	Cu Sn7 Zn4 Pb7	81.0 – 85.0	6.0 – 8.0	2.0 – 5.0	5.0 – 8.0	2.0 max	0.10 max	
	Cu Sn6 Zn4 Pb2	86.0 – 90.0	5.5 – 6.5	3.0 – 5.0	1.0 – 2.0	1.0 max	0.05 max	
Leaded bronze	Cu Sn10 Pb10	78.0 – 82.0	9.0 – 11.0	2.0 max.	8.0 – 11.0	2.0 max	0.10 max	Bushes
	Cu Sn5 Pb9	80.0 – 87.0	4.0 – 6.0	2.0 max.	8.0 – 10.0	2.0 max	0.10 max	
	Cu Sn7 Pb15	74.0 – 80.0	6.0 – 8.0	2.0 max.	13.0 – 17.0	0.5 – 2.0	0.10 max	
	Cu Sn5 Pb20	70.0 – 78.0	4.0– 6.0	2.0 max.	18.0 – 23.0	0.5 – 2.5	0.10 max	

Table 9. 2. 2: Chemical compositions of short freezing range alloys: principal elements only

Alloy type	Designation	Chemical composition								Typical applications
		Cu	Ni	Fe	Mn	Cr	Nb	Si	Al	
Copper 30% nickel	Cu Ni30 Fe1 Mn1	64.5 min.	29.0–31.0	0.5–1.5	0.6–1.2	–	–	0.1 max.	–	Flanges, valves and fittings
	Cu Ni30 Fe1 Mn1 Nb Si	Remainder	29.0–31.0	0.5–1.5	0.6–1.2	–	0.5–1.0	0.3–0.7	–	
	Cu Ni30 Cr2 Fe Mn Si (*See* Note)	Remainder	29.0–32.0	0.5–1.0	0.5–1.0	1.5–2.0	–	0.15–0.50	–	
Copper 10% nickel	Cu Ni10 Fe1 Mn1	84.5 min.	9.0–11.0	1.0–1.8	1.0–1.5	–	1.0 max.	0, 10 max.	–	Flanges, valves and fittings
Aluminium bronze	Cu Al10 Fe5 Ni5	76.0–83.0	4.0–6.0 (*See* Note 2)	4.0–5.5 (*See* Note 2)	3.0 max.	–	–	0.1 max.	8.5–10.5	Bushes, valves and fittings
	Cu Al11 Fe6 Ni6	72.0–78.0	4.0–7.5 (*See* Note 2)	4.0–7.0 (*See* Note 2)	2.5 max.	–	–	0.1 max.	10.0–12.0	

Note *1.* Normally alloy Cu Ni30 Cr2 Fe Mn Si contains 0.1 to 0.25% titanium and 0.05 to 0.15% zirconium.

Note *2.* For Naval ships, the nickel content is to be higher than the iron content.

2. 4. 2 With the exception given in Ch 9, 2.4 Chemical composition 2.4.3, chemical analysis is required on each cast.

2. 4. 3 Where a cast is wholly prepared from ingots for which an analysis is already available, and provided that no significant alloy additions are made during melting, the ingot maker's certified analysis can be accepted subject to occasional check tests as requested by the Surveyor. The frequency of these check tests should, as a minimum, be one in every ten casts. If one of these check analyses fails to comply with the specification, checks are to be made on the previous and subsequent melts. If one or both of these further analyses is unsatisfactory, chemical analysis is to be carried out on all further melts until the Surveyor is satisfied that a return can be made to the use of occasional check tests.

2. 5 Heat treatment

2. 5. 1 Where required by the specification, castings may be supplied in either the `as-cast' or heat treated condition.

2. 5. 2 Where castings are supplied in a heat treated condition, the test samples are to be heat treated with the castings they represent prior to the preparation of the tensile test specimens.

2. 6 Test material

2. 6. 1 Test material sufficient for the tests specified in Ch 9, 2.6 Test material 2.6.4 and for possible re-test purposes is to be provided for each cast of material.

2. 6. 2 The test material is to be separately cast into moulds made of the same material as that used for the castings they represent.

2. 6. 3 For the alloys listed in Table 9. 2. 1: Chemical compositions of long freezing range alloys: principal elements only, sand cast test bars are generally to be in accordance with Figure 9. 2. 1: Sand cast test bars for long freezing range alloys.

2. 6. 4 For the alloys listed in Table 9. 2. 2: Chemical compositions of short freezing range alloys: principal elements only, keel block type test samples are to be in accordance with Figure 9. 1. 1: Keel block type test sample.

2. 6. 5 If it is proposed to use any other form of test bar, this is to be agreed in advance with the Surveyor.

2. 6. 6 As an alternative, for liners and bushes, the test material may be taken from the ends of the castings.

2. 7 Mechanical tests

2. 7. 1 A tensile test specimen is to be prepared from each test sample. The dimensions of the specimens are to comply with Figure 2. 2. 1: Test specimen dimensions for plates, strip and sections - I or Figure 2. 2. 2: Test specimen dimensions for forgings and castings - II and aluminum alloys in Chapter 2.

2. 7. 2 The results of all tests are to comply with the appropriate requirements given in Table 9. 2. 3: Mechanical properties of long freezing range alloys for acceptance purposes and Table 9. 2. 4: Mechanical properties of short freezing range alloys for acceptance purposes.

Table 9. 2. 3: Mechanical properties of long freezing range alloys for acceptance purposes

Alloy type	Designation	0.2% proof stress N/mm^2 minimum (*See* Note 1)		Tensile strength N/mm^2 minimum		Elongation on $5.65\sqrt{S_0}$% minimum	
		Sand	Centrifugal	Sand	Centrifugal	Sand	Centrifugal
Phosphor bronze	Cu Sn11 P	130	170	250	330	5	4
	Cu Sn12	140	150	260	280	7	5
Gunmetal	Cu Sn10 Zn2	130	130	270	250	13	5
Leaded gunmetal	Cu Sn5 Zn5 Pb5	90	110	200	250	13	13
	Cu Sn7 Zn2 Pb3	130	130	230	260	14	12
	Cu Sn7 Zn4 Pb7	120	120	230	260	15	12
	Cu Sn6 Zn4 Pb2	110	110	220	240	15	12
Leaded bronze	Cu Sn10 Pb10	80	110	180	220	8	6
	Cu Sn5 Pb9	60	90	160	200	7	6
	Cu Sn7 Pb15	80	90	170	200	8	7
	Cu Sn5 Pb20	70	80	150	170	5	6

Note *1.* The 0.2% proof stress values are given for information purposes only and, unless otherwise agreed, are not required to be verified by test.

Note *2.* Castings may be supplied in the chill cast condition in which case the mechanical properties requirements are to be in accordance with a specification agreed by ACS.

Table 9. 2. 4: Mechanical properties of short freezing range alloys for acceptance purposes

Alloy type	Designation	0.2% proof stress N/mm^2 minimum		Tensile strength N/mm^2 minimum		Elongation on $5.65\sqrt{S_0}$% minimum	
		Sand	Centrifugal	Sand	Centrifugal	Sand	Centrifugal
Copper 30% Nickel	Cu Ni30 Fe1 Mn1	120	120	340	340	18	18
	Cu Ni30 Fe1 Mn1 Nb Si	230	–	440	–	18	–
	Cu Ni30 Cr2 Fe Mn Si	250	–	440	–	18	–
Copper 10% Nickel	Cu Ni10 Fe1 Mn1	120	100	280	280	20	25
Aluminium Bronze	Cu Al10 Fe5 Ni5	250	280	600	650	13	13
	Cu Al11 Fe6 Ni6	320	380	680	750	5	5

2. 8 Inspection

2. 8. 1 All castings are to be cleaned and adequately prepared for inspection. Before acceptance, all castings are to be presented to the Surveyor for visual examination. This is to include the examination of internal surfaces, where applicable.

2. 8. 2 For valves and other pressure components, dye penetrant inspection is required and the Surveyor is to witness the tests. Unless otherwise agreed, the acceptance criteria to be applied are to meet the requirements of Table 9. 2. 5: Visual and surface NDE acceptance criteria for valves and pressure components, or equivalent.

Table 9. 2. 5: Visual and surface NDE acceptance criteria for valves and pressure components

fect type	Acceptance criteria for visual and surface NDE, *See* Note
Linear indications	Not permitted
Porosity	Individual pores are not to exceed 3 mm diameter bleed out, and the sum of the diameters of all indications in an area of 70 x 70 mm is not to exceed 24 mm^2
Note Inspection is to be in accordance with a procedure acceptable to ACS.	

2. 8. 3 The accuracy and verification of dimensions are the responsibility of the manufacturer. However, the report on dimensional inspection is to be presented to the Surveyor who may request to witness confirmatory measurements.

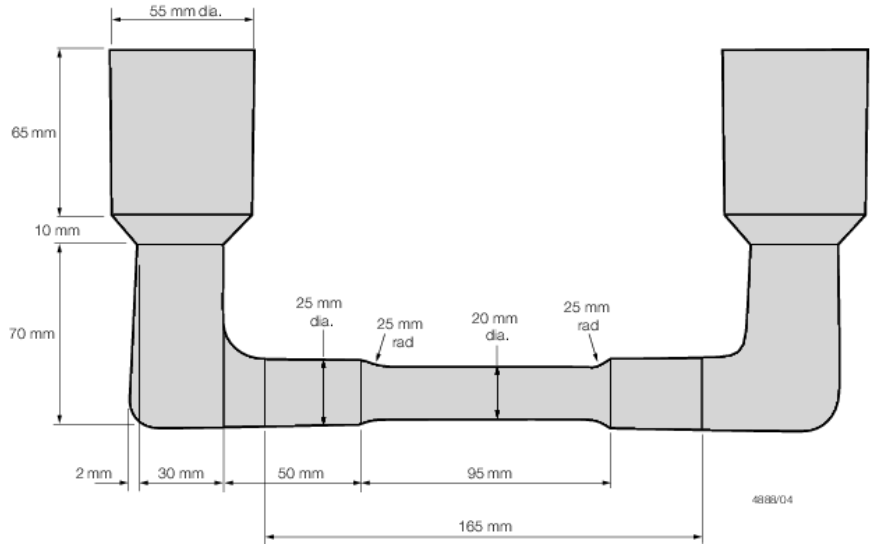
2. 9 Rectification of defective castings

2. 9. 1 Subject to the prior approval of the Surveyor, castings containing local porosity may be rectified by impregnation with a suitable plastic filler provided that the extent of the porosity is such that it does not adversely affect the strength of the casting.

2. 9. 2 Proposals to repair a defective casting by welding are to be submitted to the Surveyor before this work is commenced. The Surveyor is to be satisfied that the number, position and size of the defects are such that the castings can be efficiently repaired.

2. 9. 3 Where approval is given for the repair by welding, complete elimination of the defects is to be proven by adequate non-destructive testing.

Figure 9. 2. 1: Sand cast test bars for long freezing range alloys



2. 9. 4 All welding is to be in accordance with an approved and qualified weld procedure and carried out by a qualified welder.

2. 9. 5 A statement and/or sketch detailing the extent and position of all weld repairs is to be prepared by the manufacturer as a permanent record. These records are to be available for review by the Surveyor, and copies of individual records are to be supplied to the Surveyor on request.

2. 9. 6 The alloys listed in Table 9. 2. 1: Chemical compositions of long freezing range alloys: principal elements only are not satisfactory for repair by welding which is generally not permitted. Weld repairs may, however, be considered in special circumstances provided that a suitable procedure, with proof of previous satisfactory repairs is submitted to the Surveyor.

2. 9. 7 The welding during manufacture of liners is not permitted in any alloy containing more than 0.5 per cent lead.

2. 10 Pressure testing

2. 10. 1 Where required by the relevant Rules, castings are to be pressure tested before final acceptance. Unless otherwise agreed, these tests are to be carried out in the presence of the Surveyors and are to be to their satisfaction.

2. 11 Identification

2. 11. 1 The manufacturer is to adopt a system of identification which will enable all finished castings to be traced to the original cast, and the Surveyor is to be given full facilities for so tracing the casting when required.

2. 11. 2 Before acceptance, all castings which have been tested and inspected with satisfactory results are to be clearly marked by the manufacturer with the following details:

a. Identification number, cast number or other markings which will enable the full history of the casting to be traced.
b. ACS or Asia Classification Society and the abbreviated name of ACS 's.
c. Personal stamp of the Surveyor responsible for inspection.
d. Test pressure, where applicable.
e. Date of final inspection.

2. 11. 3 Where small castings are manufactured in large numbers, modified arrangements for identification may be specially agreed with the Surveyor.

2. 12 Certification of materials

2. 12. 1 A ACS certificate is to be issued, *See* Ch 1, 3.1, General.

2. 12. 2 The manufacturer is to provide the Surveyor with the following particulars for each casting or batch of castings which has been accepted:

a. Purchaser's name and order number.
b. Description of castings and alloy grade.
c. Identification number.
d. Ingot or cast analysis.
e. Full details of heat treatment, where applicable.
f. Mechanical test results.
g. Test pressure, where applicable.

2. 12. 3 In addition to Ch 9, 2.12 Certification of materials 2.12.2, the manufacturer is to provide, where applicable, a statement and/or sketch detailing the extent and position of all weld repairs made to each casting.

PART

2

CHAPTER **9** **Copper Alloys**

SECTION **3** **Tubes**

3. 1 Scope

3. 1. 1 Provision is made in this Section for seamless copper and copper alloy tubes intended for use in condensers, heat exchangers and pressure piping systems.

3. 1. 2 Tubes for Class I and II pressure systems (as defined in the relevant Rules), are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of Chapters Ch 1 General Requirements and Ch 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials and the requirements of this Section.

3. 1. 3 As an alternative to Ch 9, 3.1 Scope 3.1.2, tubes which comply with National or proprietary specifications may be accepted provided that these specifications give reasonable equivalence to the requirements of this Section or alternatively are approved for a specific application. Generally, survey and certification are to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of Ch 1 General Requirements.

3. 1. 4 Tubes for Class III pressure systems are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of a National or International Standard recognised by ACS. The manufacturer's test certificate will be acceptable and is to be provided for each batch of material.

3. 2 Manufacture

3. 2. 1 Tubes for Class I and II pressure systems are to be manufactured at a works approved by ACS for the grade of material being supplied.

3. 2. 2 Tubes for Class III pressure systems are not required to be manufactured at a works approved by ACS.

3. 3 Quality

3. 3. 1 Tubes are to be clean and free from surface and internal defects and residues from manufacturing operations.

3. 3. 2 The tubes are to be supplied in smooth, round, straight lengths and the manufacturer is to guarantee freedom from deleterious films in the bore. The ends are to be cut clean and square with the axis of the tube and are to be de-burred.

3. 4 Dimensional tolerances

3. 4. 1 The tolerances on the wall thickness and diameter of the tubes are to be in accordance with a National or International Standard recognised by ACS.

3. 4. 2 The measurement of dimensional accuracy and compliance with the specification are the responsibility of the manufacturer, but the reports are to be made available to the ACS Surveyors, who may require checks to be made in their presence.

3. 5 Chemical composition

3. 5. 1 The chemical composition is to comply with the requirements of a National or International Standard recognised by ACS and comply with the base limits for the principal elements given in Table 9. 3. 1: Chemical composition of principal elements only.

Table 9. 3. 1: Chemical composition of principal elements only

Designation	Chemical composition %								
	Cu	As	P	Fe	Pb	Ni	Al	Mn	Zn
Copper-phosphorus deoxidised–non-arsenical	99.85 min.	—	0.013–0.050	—	—	—	—	—	—
Copper-phosphorus deoxidised–arsenical	99.2 min.	0.30–0.50	0.013–0.050	—	—	—	—	—	—
Aluminium brass	76.0–79.0	0.02–0.06	—	0.06 max.	0.07 max.	—	1.8–2.5	—	Remainder
90/10 Copper-nickel-iron (*See* Note)	Remainder	—	—	1.0-2.0	—	9.0–11.0	—	0.5–1.0	—
70/30 Copper-nickel-iron (*See* Note)	Remainder	—	—	0.40–1.00	—	29.0–33.0	—	0.5–1.5	—

Note

Where the purchaser specifies that the product is intended for subsequent welding applications, the following limits will apply:

Zn	0.50% max.	S	0.02% max.
Pb	0.02% max.	C	0.05% max.
P	0.02% max.		

3. 6 Heat treatment

3. 6. 1 Copper-phosphorus and aluminium brass tubes are to be supplied in the annealed condition. Aluminium brass tubes may additionally be required to be given a suitable stress relieving heat treatment when subjected to a cold straightening operation after annealing.

3. 6. 2 Tubes in the copper-nickel iron alloys are to be supplied in a solution heat treated condition to ensure that no iron rich phases are present.

3. 7 Mechanical tests

3. 7. 1 Tubes are to be presented for test in batches of 300 lengths. A batch is to consist of tubes of the same size, manufactured from the same material grade.

3. 7. 2 At least one length is to be selected at random from each batch and subjected to the following tests:

a. Tensile test.
b. Flattening test.
c. Drift expanding test.

3. 7. 3 The procedures for mechanical tests and the dimensions of the test specimens are to be in accordance with Ch 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials.

3. 7. 4 The flattening test is to be continued until the interior surfaces of the tube meet.

3. 7. 5 For the drift expanding test, the mandrel is to have an included angle of 45°.

3. 7. 6 The results of all mechanical tests are to comply with the appropriate requirements given in Table 9. 3. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes.

Table 9. 3. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes

Designation	0.2% proof stress N/mm^2 minimum	Tensile strength N/mm^2 minimum	Elongation on $5.65\sqrt{S_0}$% minimum	Drift expansion test % minimum	Grain size mm maximum (*See* Note)
Copper-phosphorus deoxidised–non-arsenical	65	220	40	40	–
Copper-phosphorus deoxidised–arsenical	65	220	40	40	–
Aluminium brass	125	320	40	30	0.045
90/10 Copper-nickel-iron	100	270	30	30	0.045
70/30 Copper-nickel-iron	120	360	30	30	0.045

Note When a maximum grain size is specified, the structure is to be completely re-crystallised. The manufacturer is to guarantee the grain size, but testing of each batch will not be required.

3. 7. 7 At the discretion of the Surveyor, a modified testing procedure may be adopted for small quantities of materials. In such cases, these may be accepted on the manufacturer's declared chemical composition and hardness tests or other evidence of satisfactory properties.

3. 8 Visual examination

3. 8. 1 All tubes are to be visually examined. The manufacturer is to provide adequate lighting conditions to enable an internal and external examination of the tubes to be carried out.

3. 8. 2 The inner and outer surfaces are to be clean and smooth but may have a superficial, dull iridescent film on both the inner and outer surfaces.

3. 9 Hydraulic test

3. 9. 1 Each tube is to be subjected to a hydraulic test at the manufacturer's works.

3. 9. 2 The hydraulic test pressure is to be determined from the following formula, except that the maximum test pressure need not exceed 7 MPa:

$$P = \frac{2st}{D}$$

where P = test pressure, in MPa

D = nominal outside diameter, in mm

t = nominal wall thickness, in mm

s = 40 for copper-phosphorous

= 40 for copper-phosphorous

= 60 for 90/10 copper nickel iron

= 75 for 70/30 copper nickel iron

3. 9. 3 The test pressure is to be maintained for sufficient time to permit proof that the tubes do not weep, leak or undergo a permanent increase in diameter. Unless otherwise agreed, the manufacturer's certificate of satisfactory hydraulic test will be accepted.

3. 9. 4 Where it is proposed to adopt a test pressure other than that determined in Ch 9, 3.9 Hydraulic test 3.9.2, the proposal will be subject to special consideration.

3. 9. 5 Subject to special approval, an automated eddy current test can be accepted in lieu of the hydraulic test. Discontinuous irregularities on the external and internal surfaces of the tubes are permitted if they are within the agreed dimensional tolerances, with the exception of cracks, which are not permitted.

3. 10 Rectification of defects

3. 10. 1 The repair of defects by welding is not permitted.

3. 11 Identification

3. 11. 1 Tubes are to be clearly marked by the manufacturer in accordance with the requirements of Ch 1 General Requirements. The following details are to be shown on all materials which have been accepted:

a. ACS or Asia Classification Society.
b. Manufacturer's name or trade mark.
c. Grade of material or designation code.
d. Identification number and/or initials which will enable the full history of the item to be traced.

3. 11. 2 Identification is to be by rubber stamp or stencils. Hard stamping is not permitted.

3. 12 Certification of materials

3. 12. 1 A manufacturer's certificate validated by ACS is to be issued (*See* Ch 1, 3.1, General), giving the following particulars for each casting or batch of castings which has been accepted:

a. Purchaser's name and order number.
b. Specification or grade of material.
c. Description and dimensions.
d. Cast number and chemical composition.
e. Mechanical test results.
f. Results of stress corrosion cracking test, where applicable.
g. Hydraulic test report.

PART

2

CHAPTER **10 Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**Anchors**		**538**
	1. 1	Scope	538
	1. 2	Design requirements	538
	1. 3	Anchor holding power tests for HHP and SHHP anchors	538
	1. 4	Cast steel anchors	539
	1. 5	Forged steel anchors	539
	1. 6	Fabricated steel anchors	540
	1. 7	Rectification	540
	1. 8	Super high holding power (SHHP) anchors	540
	1. 9	Assembly	540
	1. 10	Proof test of anchors	540
	1. 11	Clearances and tolerances	545
	1. 12	Identification	546
	1. 13	Certification	546
SECTION 2	**Stud link chain cables for ships**		**547**
	2. 1	Scope	547
	2. 2	Manufacture	547
	2. 3	Flash butt welded chain cable	547
	2. 4	Cast chain cables	548
	2. 5	Forged chain cables	548
	2. 6	Stud material	550
	2. 7	Welding of studs	550
	2. 8	Heat treatment of completed chain cables	551
	2. 9	Testing of completed chain cables	551
	2. 10	Proof load tests	551
	2. 11	Dimensional inspection	554

2. 12 Breaking load tests 555
2. 13 Fittings for chain cables 556
2. 14 Substitute single links 558
2. 15 Identification 558
2. 16 Certification 558
SECTION 3 Offshore Mooring chain cables 565
3. 1 Scope 565
3. 2 Manufacture 565
3. 3 Studs 566
3. 4 Heat treatment of completed chain cables 566
3. 5 Testing of completed chain cables 567
3. 6 Proof load tests and non-destructive examination 567
3. 7 Dimensional inspection 571
3. 8 Breaking load tests 573
3. 9 Mechanical tests 574
3. 10 Connecting common links or substitute links 577
3. 11 Identification 578
3. 12 Documentation 578
3. 13 Certification 578
SECTION 4 Fittings for offshore mooring chain 579
4. 1 Scope 579
4. 2 Manufacture 579
4. 3 Testing of fittings 580
4. 4 Proof and break load tests 580
4. 5 Dimensional inspection 581
4. 6 Mechanical tests 581
4. 7 Identification 583
4. 8 Documentation 583
4. 9 Certification 583
SECTION 5 Short link chain cables 584
5. 1 Scope 584
5. 2 Manufacture 584
5. 3 Bar material 584
5. 4 Testing and inspection of chain cables 584
5. 5 Dimensions and tolerances 586
5. 6 Identification 587

5. 7 Certification 587
SECTION 6 Steel wire ropes 588
6. 1 Scope 588
6. 2 General requirements 588
6. 3 Steel wire for ropes 589
6. 4 Tests on completed ropes 591
6. 5 Dimensional inspection 591
6. 6 Identification 592
6. 7 Certification 592
SECTION 7 Fibre ropes 593
7. 1 Manufacture 593
7. 2 Tests of completed ropes 593
7. 3 Identification 594
7. 4 Certification 594

PART

2

CHAPTER **10 Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 10. 1. 1: Proof load tests for anchors (*See* Notes 1 and 2) 541
Table 10. 1. 2: NDE requirements following proof testing for Ordinary and HHP anchors 544
Table 10. 1. 3: NDE requirements following proof testing for SHHP anchors 544
Table 10. 2. 1: Mechanical properties of finished chain cable and fittings 549
Table 10. 2. 2: Chemical composition of butt welded and forged chain cable 549
Table 10. 2. 3: Condition of supply and scope of mechanical tests for finished chain cables and fittings 549
Table 10. 2. 4: Test loads for stud link anchor chain cables 551
Table 10. 2. 5: Number of breaking tests from completed cables 555
Table 10. 2. 6: Mechanical properties of welds in chain cables 556
Table 10. 3. 1: Test loads for mooring chain cables 567
Table 10. 3. 2: Stud link chain cable common link tolerances 572
Table 10. 3. 3: Studless link chain cable common link tolerances 573
Table 10. 3. 4: Frequency of break and mechanical tests 574
Table 10. 3. 5: Mechanical properties of chain cable materials 575
Table 10. 3. 6: Mass per unit length of stud link chain cable 576
Table 10. 5. 1: Mechanical test requirements for short link chain cables 585
Table 10. 6. 1: Recommended rope construction 588
Table 10. 6. 2: Torsion test 589
Table 10. 6. 3: Zinc coating 590
Table 10. 6. 4: Wrap test for adhesion of coating 591
Table 10. 7. 1: Breaking load test 593

PART

2

CHAPTER **10 Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring**

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 10. 1. 1: Location of gauge length measurement during proof load 544
Figure 10. 1. 2: Allowable lateral movement of shank 545
Figure 10. 2. 1: Manufacturing tolerances 555
Figure 10. 2. 2: Common link 559
Figure 10. 2. 3: Enlarged link 559
Figure 10. 2. 4: End link 560
Figure 10. 2. 5: Dee shackle 561
Figure 10. 2. 6: End shackle 562
Figure 10. 2. 7: Lugless shackle 563
Figure 10. 2. 8: Swivel 563
Figure 10. 2. 9: Lugless shackle of the Kenter type 564
Figure 10. 3. 1: Dimensions and tolerances of stud welds 566
Figure 10. 3. 2: Sampling of chain links 575
Figure 10. 4. 1: Sampling of steel bars, forgings and castings 582
Figure 10. 4. 2: Buffer and test piece location for pins 582
Figure 10. 5. 1: Form and proportions of links 586

PART

2

CHAPTER 10 Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring

SECTION 1 Anchors

1. 1 Scope

1. 1. 1 This Section makes provision for the manufacture and testing of anchors constructed from cast, forged and fabricated components.

1. 1. 2 This Section is applicable to the following types of anchor:

a. Ordinary.
b. High holding power (HHP).
c. Super high holding power (SHHP).

1. 1. 3 In the context of this Section, the reference to swivels refers to those directly attached to the anchor shank in lieu of the conventional 'D' shackle. For other mooring equipment swivels, *See* Ch 10, 2.13, Fittings for chain cables.

1. 2 Design requirements

1. 2. 1 All anchors are to be of an approved design. In addition, HHP and SHHP anchor designs are required to be tested in accordance with Ch 10, 1.3 Anchor holding power tests for HHP and SHHP anchors so as to confirm the holding power.

1. 3 Anchor holding power tests for HHP and SHHP anchors

1. 3. 1 Anchor designs for which approval is sought as HHP anchors are to be tested at sea to show that they have holding powers of at least twice those of approved standard stockless anchors of the same mass. In the case of SHHP anchors, a holding power of at least four times that of an ordinary stockless anchor of same mass is to be demonstrated.

1. 3. 2 Full scale tests are to be carried out at sea on various types of bottom, normally, soft mud or silt, sand or gravel and hard clay or similar compounded material. The tests are to be applied to anchors of mass which are as far as possible representative of the full range of sizes proposed.

1. 3. 3 HHP and SHHP anchors are to be tested along with an ordinary stockless anchor to establish the holding power. They are to be of approximately the same mass and tested in association with the size of chain required for that anchor mass.

1. 3. 4 Where an ordinary stockless anchor is not available for testing a HHP anchor, the use of a previously approved HHP anchor may be considered. For testing SHHP anchors, a previously approved HHP or SHHP anchor may be considered.

1. 3. 5 The length of the cable attached to each anchor is to be such that the pull on the shank remains horizontal during the test. For this purpose a scope of 10 is considered normal but a scope of not less than 6 may be accepted. Scope is defined as the ratio of length of cable to depth of water.

1. 3. 6 Three tests are to be taken for each anchor and each type of bottom. The stability of the anchor and ease of breaking out are to be noted where possible. Tests are to be carried out from a tug but, alternatively, shore based tests will be specially considered The pull is to be measured by dynamometer. Measurements of pull, based on the RPM/bollard pull curve of the tug will be considered as an alternative to a dynamometer.

1. 3. 7 For approval and/or acceptance for a range of HHP anchor sizes, tests are to be carried out for at least two anchor sizes. The mass of the maximum size approved is not to be more than 10 times the mass of the largest size tested.

1. 3. 8 For approval and/or acceptance for a range of SHHP anchor sizes, at least three anchor sizes are to be tested, indicative of the bottom, middle and top of the mass range.

1. 3. 9 The holding power test load is not to exceed the proof load of the anchor.

1. 4 Cast steel anchors

1. 4. 1 Cast steel anchor heads, shanks, shackles and swivels are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of Ch 4, 1 General requirements and Ch 4, 2 Castings for ship and other structural applications. The Special grade quality is to be used for anchor heads, shanks and shackles.

1. 4. 2 Special consideration will be given to the use of other grades of steel for the manufacture of swivels.

1. 4. 3 To confirm the quality of cast anchor components, the Surveyor is to witness drop and hammering tests.

1. 4. 4 When drop and hammering tests are required, they are to be carried out as follows:

a. Each anchor, or the components of an anchor made from more than one piece, is to be dropped from a clear height of 4 m onto a steel slab laid on a solid foundation.
b. Separately cast shanks and shackles are to be suspended horizontally from a clear height of 4 m before being dropped. Cast anchor flukes are to be suspended vertically, from a clear height of 4 m before being dropped. Alternatively, a horizontal drop test for the anchor fluke can be carried out as agreed by the manufacturer and Surveyor.
c. Anchors cast in one piece are to be drop tested twice from a clear height of 4 m. For the first test, the shank and flukes are to be horizontal. For the second test, two steel blocks are to be placed on the slab, arranged so that the middle of each fluke makes contact with the blocks without the crown making contact with the slab, and the orientation of the anchor is to be vertical with the crown nearest the slab.
d. If the slab is broken by the impact, the test is to be repeated on a new slab.

1. 4. 5 When hammering tests are required, they are to be carried out after the drop test on each anchor head and shank, which is slung clear of the ground, using a nonmetallic sling, and hammered to check the soundness of the component. A hammer of at least 3 kg mass is to be used.

1. 4. 6 As part of the manufacturer's works approval, consideration may be given to carrying out drop tests in alternative locations to the manufacturer's when the facilities and location are not suitable.

1. 4. 7 Repair of fractures or unsoundness detected during the drop or hammering tests are not permitted and the component is to be rejected.

1. 5 Forged steel anchors

1. 5. 1 Forged steel anchor pins, swivels, shanks and shackles are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of Ch 5, 1 General requirements and Ch 5, 2 Forgings for ship and other structural applications carbon and carbon-manganese steel for welded construction.

Rolled steel bar may be used provided that the requirements of Ch 5, 1.2 Manufacture 1.2.9 are met.

1. 5. 2 Special consideration will be given to other grades of steel for the manufacture of swivels.

1. 6 Fabricated steel anchors

1. 6. 1 Where it is proposed to use plate material for fabricated steel anchors, it is to comply with the requirements of Ch 3, 2 Normal strength steels for ship and other structural applications or Ch 3, 3 Higher strength steels for ship and other structural applications, and the proposed manufacturing procedure is to be submitted for approval.

1. 6. 2 Fabricated anchors are to be manufactured in accordance with Ch 13 Requirements for Welded Construction.

1. 6. 3 Stress relief is to be carried out as required in the approved welding procedure.

1. 7 Rectification

1. 7. 1 All rectification is to be agreed with the Surveyor.

1. 7. 2 Rectification of defective castings is to be carried out in accordance with Ch 4, 1.9, Rectification and dressing of castings.

1. 7. 3 Rectification of defective forgings is to be carried out in accordance with Ch 5, 1.9, Rectification of defects.

1. 7. 4 Rectification of defective fabricated anchors is to be carried out by suitably qualified welders within the parameters of the approved welding procedure used in construction.

1. 7. 5 Rectification of defective castings, forgings or fabricated anchors by welding is to be carried out using qualified weld procedures in accordance with Ch 12, 1 General qualification requirements and Ch 12, 2 Welding procedure qualification tests for steels, and in accordance with Ch 13, 1 General welding requirements and Ch 13, 2 Specific requirements for ship hull structure and machinery.

1. 8 Super high holding power (SHHP) anchors

1. 8. 1 The impact test requirements for SHHP anchor shackles are to be in accordance with the requirements for Grade U3 in Table 10. 2. 1: Mechanical properties of finished chain cable and fittings.

1. 9 Assembly

1. 9. 1 Assembly and fitting is to be carried out in accordance with the approved design.

1. 9. 2 Securing of anchor pins, shackle pins or swivels by welding is to be carried out by suitably qualified welders in accordance with an approved welding procedure.

1. 10 Proof test of anchors

1. 10. 1 Anchors are to be tested in the presence of the Surveyor at a proving establishment recognised by ACS. A list of recognised proving establishments is published separately by ACS. In addition to the requirements stated in this Chapter, attention must be given to any relevant statutory requirements of the National Authority of the country in which the ship or mobile offshore unit is to be registered.

1. 10. 2 The anchor is to be visually examined before application of the proof test load to ensure that it is free from cracks, notches, inclusions and other surface defects that would impair the performance of the product.

1. 10. 3 As required by Ch 10, 1.10, Proof test of anchors, each anchor is to be subjected to a proof loading test in an approved testing machine and is to withstand the load given in Table 10. 1. 1: Proof load tests for anchors (See Notes 1 and 2) for the appropriate mass of the anchor. The proof load is to be applied on the arm or on the palm at a spot which, measured from the extremity of the bill, is one-third of the distance between it and the centre of the crown. For stocked anchors, each arm is to be tested individually. For stockless anchors, both arms are to be tested at the same time, first on one side of the shank, then reversed and tested on the other.

Table 10. 1. 1: Proof load tests for anchors (*See* Notes 1 and 2)

Mass of anchor (Ch 10, 1.10 Proof test of anchors 1.10.5)	Proof test load	Mass of anchor (Ch 10, 1.10 Proof test of anchors 1.10.5)	Proof test load	Mass of anchor (Ch 10, 1.10 Proof test of anchors 1.10.5)	Proof test load
kg	kN	kg	kN	kg	kN
50	23.2	2200	376.0	7800	861.0
55	25.2	2300	388.0	8000	877.0
60	27.1	2400	401.0	8200	892.0
65	28.9	2500	414.0	8400	908.0
70	30.7	2600	427.0	8600	922.0
75	32.4	2700	438.0	8800	936.0
80	33.9	2800	450.0	9000	949.0
90	36.3	2900	462.0	9200	961.0
100	39.1	3000	474.0	9400	975.0
120	44.3	3100	484.0	9600	987.0
140	49.0	3200	495.0	9800	998.0
160	53.3	3300	506.0	10 000	1010.0
180	57.4	3400	517.0	10 500	1040.0
200	61.3	3500	528.0	11 000	1070.0
225	65.8	3600	537.0	11 500	1090.0
250	70.4	3700	547.0	12 000	1110.0
275	74.9	3800	557.0	12 500	1130.0
300	79.5	3900	567.0	13 000	1160.0

325	84.1	4000	577.0	13 500	1180.0
350	88.8	4100	586.0	14 000	1210.0
375	93.4	4200	595.0	14 500	1230.0
400	97.9	4300	604.0	15 000	1260.0
425	103.0	4400	613.0	15 500	1280.0
450	107.0	4500	622.0	16 000	1300.0
475	112.0	4600	631.0	16 500	1330.0
500	116.0	4700	638.0	17 000	1360.0
550	125.0	4800	645.0	17 500	1390.0
600	132.0	4900	653.0	18 000	1410.0
650	140.0	5000	661.0	18 500	1440.0
700	149.0	5100	669.0	19 000	1470.0
750	158.0	5200	677.0	19 500	1490.0
800	166.0	5300	685.0	20 000	1520.0
850	175.0	5400	691.0	21 000	1570.0
900	182.0	5500	699.0	22 000	1620.0
950	191.0	5600	706.0	23 000	1670.0
1000	199.0	5700	713.0	24 000	1720.0
1050	208.0	5800	721.0	25 000	1770.0
1100	216.0	5900	728.0	26 000	1800.0
1150	224.0	6000	735.0	27 000	1850.0
1200	231.0	6100	740.0	28 000	1900.0
1250	239.0	6200	747.0	29 000	1940.0
1300	247.0	6300	754.0	30 000	1990.0
1350	255.0	6400	760.0	31 000	2030.0
1400	262.0	6500	767.0	32 000	2070.0

1450	270.0	6600	773.0	34 000	2160.0
1500	278.0	6700	779.0	36 000	2250.0
1600	292.0	6800	786.0	38 000	2330.0
1700	307.0	6900	794.0	40 000	2410.0
1800	321.0	7000	804.0	42 000	2490.0
1900	335.0	7200	818.0	44 000	2570.0
2000	349.0	7400	832.0	46 000	2650.0
2100	362.0	7600	845.0	48 000	2730.0
Proof loads for intermediate mass are to be determined by linear interpolation					
Note *1.* Where ordinary anchors have a mass exceeding 48 000 kg, the proof loads are to be taken as 2.059 (mass of anchor in kg)$^{2/3}$ kN. **Note** *2.* Where high holding power anchors have a mass exceeding 36 000 kg, the proof loads are to be taken as 2.452 (actual mass of anchor in kg)$^{2/3}$ kN.					

1. 10. 4 The general arrangements for the test are to be such that the complete anchor, including the shackle, shackle pins and any welded or bolted connections are included in the test. If a replacement shackle is needed which requires welding or heating for fitting, the combined anchor and shackle are to be proof load tested. If welding or heating is not involved in fitting, the shackle may be proof load tested separately from the anchor.

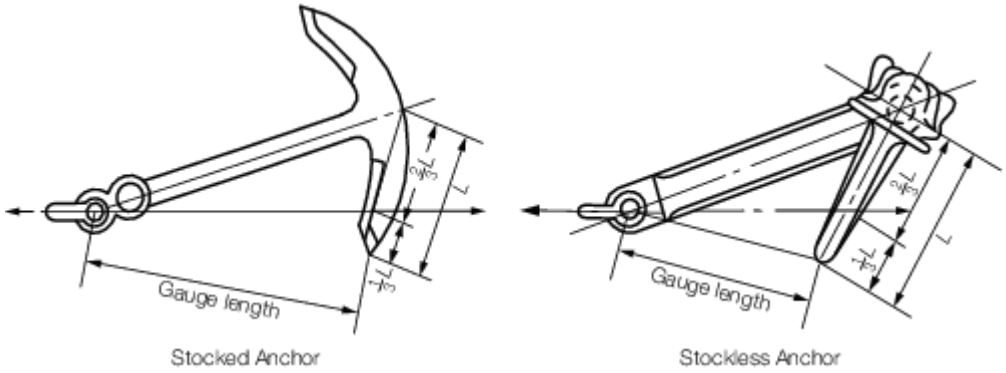
1. 10. 5 The mass to be used in Table 10. 1. 1: Proof load tests for anchors (See Notes 1 and 2) is:

a. For stockless anchors, the total mass of the anchor.
b. For stocked anchors, the mass of the anchor excluding the stock.
c. For high holding power anchors, a nominal mass equal to 1.33 times the actual total mass of the anchor.
d. For mooring anchors, including positional mooring anchors, a nominal mass equal to 1.33 times the actual total mass of the anchor, unless specifically agreed otherwise.
e. For super high holding power anchors, a nominal mass equal to twice the actual total mass of the anchor.

1. 10. 6 For positional mooring anchors, the proof test loading is to be that required by Ch 10, 1.10 Proof test of anchors 1.10.3 or 50 per cent of the minimum break strength of the intended anchor line, whichever is the greater.

1. 10. 7 The gauge length is to be measured with 10 per cent of the required load applied, before and after proof test. The two measurements shall differ by no more than 1 per cent. The gauge length is the distance between the tip of each fluke and a point on the shank adjacent to the shackle pin, *See* Figure 10. 1. 1: Location of gauge length measurement during proof load.

Figure 10. 1. 1: Location of gauge length measurement during proof load



1. 10. 8 After proof testing, all accessible surfaces are to be visually inspected by the Surveyor.

1. 10. 9 Following proof testing, NDE is to be conducted as described in Table 10. 1. 2: NDE requirements following proof testing for Ordinary and HHP anchors for ordinary and HHP anchors and Table 10. 1. 3: NDE requirements following proof testing for SHHP anchors.

Table 10. 1. 2: NDE requirements following proof testing for Ordinary and HHP anchors

Location	Method of NDE
Feeder heads, runners and risers of castings	Magnetic particle inspection and ultrasonic test, *See* Note 1
All welds	Magnetic particle inspection
Forged components	Not required
Fabrication welds	Magnetic particle inspection

Note *1. See also* Ch 10, 1.10 Proof test of anchors 1.10.10.

Note *2.* Penetrant testing is to be used in lieu of magnetic particle testing for stainless steel, aluminium and copper alloy anchors.

Table 10. 1. 3: NDE requirements following proof testing for SHHP anchors

Location	Method of NDE
Feeder heads, runners and risers of castings	Magnetic particle inspection and ultrasonic test, *See* Note 1
All surfaces of castings	Magnetic particle inspection
All welds	Magnetic particle inspection
Forged components	Not required
Fabrication welds	Magnetic particle inspection

Note *1. See also* Ch 10, 1.10 Proof test of anchors 1.10.10.

Note *2.* Additionally, all surfaces of all SHHP anchors are to be surface inspected by the magnetic particle or penetrant method as appropriate.

Note *3.* Penetrant is to be used in lieu of magnetic particle testing for stainless steel, aluminium and copper alloy anchors.

1. 10. 10 Each casting is to be subjected to ultrasonic inspection in the region of runners and risers, or where excess material has been removed by thermal methods. This examination is to extend around the whole periphery of the casting and for a distance of t/3 beyond the area affected, where t is the maximum thickness. In addition, random areas are to be selected by the Surveyor and examined.

1. 10. 11 Acceptance criteria for castings are to be in accordance with Ch 4 Steel Castings.

1. 10. 12 Acceptance criteria for forgings are to be in accordance with Ch 5 Steel Forgings.

1. 10. 13 Paint or anti-corrosive coatings are not to be applied until these inspections are completed to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

1. 10. 14 On completion of the proof testing, anchors made in more than one piece are to be examined for free movement of their heads over the complete range of rotation.

1. 11 Clearances and tolerances

1. 11. 1 Where no fitting tolerances are specified on the approved plans the following assembly and fitting tolerance are to be applied.

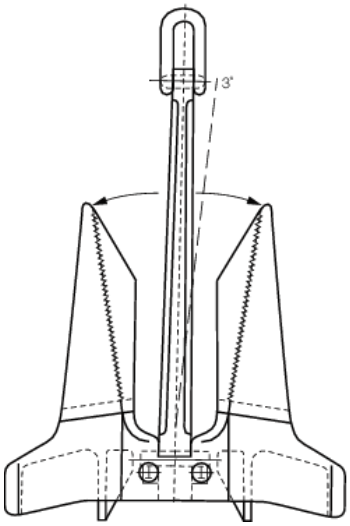
1. 11. 2 The clearance either side of the shank within the shackle jaws and the shackle pin in the shank end hole is to be no more than 3 mm for small anchors up to 3 tonnes, 4 mm for anchors up to 5 tonnes, 6 mm for anchors up to 7 tonnes and is not to exceed 12 mm for larger anchors.

1. 11. 3 The shackle pin to hole tolerance is to be no more than 0.5 mm for pins up to 57 mm and 1.0 mm for pins of larger diameter and the eyes of the shackle are to be chamfered on the outside to ensure a good tightness when the pin is fitted. The shackle pin is to mate with the shackle such that it can be inserted with moderate hand pressure, allowing disassembly if required.

1. 11. 4 The trunnion pin is to fit within the chamber such that it will achieve the closest fit which can be carried out by hand. The pin is to be long enough to prevent horizontal movement. The gap is to be no more than 1 per cent of the chamber length.

1. 11. 5 The lateral movement of the shank is not to exceed 3 degrees from the centreline datum, *See* Figure 10. 1. 2: Allowable lateral movement of shank.

Figure 10. 1. 2: Allowable lateral movement of shank



1. 11. 6 Unless otherwise agreed, the verification of mass and dimensions is the responsibility of the manufacturer. The Surveyor is only required to monitor this inspection. The mass of the anchor is to exclude the mass of the swivel, unless the swivel is in lieu of the conventional ‘D’ shackle.

1. 12 Identification

1. 12. 1 Identification marks on the shank are to be approximately level with the fluke tips. On the fluke, these markings are to be approximately at a distance of two thirds from the tip of the bill to the centre line of the crown on the right hand fluke, looking from the crown towards the shank.

1. 12. 2 The following details are to be shown on all anchors:

a. ACS or Asia Classification Society and abbreviated name of ACS's issuing the certificate.
b. Number of the certificate.
c. Month and year of test.
d. Mass (also the letters `HHP' when approved as high holding power anchors or 'SHHP' when approved as super high holding power anchors).
e. Mass of stock (in the case of stocked anchors).
f. National Authority requirements, as applicable.
g. Manufacturer's mark.

1. 12. 3 In addition to Ch 10, 1.12 Identification 1.12.2, each important part of an anchor is to be plainly marked by the maker with the words `forged steel' or `cast steel' as appropriate. Fabricated steel anchor heads do not require special marking.

1. 13 Certification

1. 13. 1 The manufacturer is to provide the Surveyor with a written statement that the anchor has been manufactured and tested in accordance with ACS Rules together with the following particulars:

a. Purchaser`s name and order number.
b. Type of anchor and principal dimensions.
c. Mass of anchor.
d. Identification mark which will enable the full history of manufacture to be traced.
e. Chemical composition.
f. Details of heat treatment.
g. Mechanical test results.
h. Proof load.
i. Results of the non-destrucive examination.
j. Weld location maps (cast steel anchors only).

1. 13. 2 Shanks, heads, pins, shackles and swivels are to be certified by ACS in accordance with the relevant sections of Chapters Ch 3 Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars, Ch 4 Steel Castings and Ch 5 Steel Forgings.

1. 13. 3 An ACS Anchor Certificate is to be issued for the completed anchor which will include the following particulars:

a. Manufacturer's name.
b. Type of anchor.
c. Mass of anchor.
d. Grade of materials.
e. Proof test load.
f. Heat treatment.
g. Marking applied to anchor.
h. Dimensions.
i. General Approval of an Anchor Design Certificate Number.
j. Fluke and shank identification numbers.

PART

2

CHAPTER **10 Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring**

SECTION **2 Stud link chain cables for ships**

2. 1 Scope

2. 1. 1 Provision is made in this Section for a range of grades, U1, U2 and U3, of stud link chain and fittings intended for anchor cables for ships.

2. 1. 2 The requirements for mooring chain cables are given in Ch 10, 3 Offshore Mooring chain cables.

2. 1. 3 The design of chain cables and fittings is to be to a Standard recognised by ACS, such as ISO 1704.

2. 2 Manufacture

2. 2. 1 All grades of chain cable and accessories are to be manufactured by approved procedures at works approved by ACS. A list of approved manufacturers of stud link chain cables and fittings is published separately by ACS.

2. 2. 2 The links may be made by the flash-butt or other approved welding process, or in the case of Grades U2 and U3 they may be flash-butt welded or drop forged, designated U2(a) or U3(a), or cast steel designated U2(b) or U3(b), *See* Table 10. 2. 5: Number of breaking tests from completed cables.

2. 2. 3 As far as practicable, consecutive links in all chain cable should originate from a single cast or batch of bar stock (*See* Ch 3, 9.6 Mechanical tests 9.6.1), and indicating marks should be stamped on the final link formed from one cast or batch and the first link formed from a separate cast or batch.

2. 2. 4 A length of chain cable is to measure not more than 27.5m and is to comprise an odd number of links. In this context, a length is a statutory term and is the basis for the number of test samples.

2. 2. 5 Where end links or enlarged links are manufactured and heat treated as part of and at the same time as the chain cable and are of the same cast heat of steel, they may be excluded from separate mechanical tests and break load tests.

2. 3 Flash butt welded chain cable

2. 3. 1 Bar material is to comply with the requirements of Ch 3, 9 Bars for welded chain cables and may be heated either by electrical resistance or in a furnace. For electrical resistance heating, the process is to be controlled by an optical heat sensor. For furnace heating, thermocouples in close proximity to the bars are to be used for control. The temperature is to be continuously recorded. In both cases, the controls are to be checked at least once every eight hours and checks are to be recorded.

2. 3. 2 Mechanical properties testing of U1 cable is not required. For Grade U2 cable supplied in the as-welded condition, and Grade U3 in all conditions, one tensile and one set of three Charpy V-notch

impact test specimens are to be taken at the side of a link opposite the weld from at least every fourth 27.5m length of cable. A further set of three impact test specimens is to be taken with the notch positioned at the centre of the weld, *See* Table 10. 2. 3: Condition of supply and scope of mechanical tests for finished chain cables and fittings. The test specimens are not to be selected from the same length as that from which the breaking test sample is taken, unless breaking test samples are to be taken from every length of the batch. All test samples are to be correctly identified with the lengths of cable represented.

2. 3. 3 The test links from which the mechanical test specimens are prepared are to be made as part of the chain cable and are to be heat treated with it. They may be removed from the cable prior to heat treatment provided that each sample is heat treated with, and in the same manner as, the chain it represents prior to preparation of the mechanical test specimens.

2. 3. 4 The results of tests on specimens taken from the non-welded areas are to comply with the appropriate requirements of Table 10. 2. 1: Mechanical properties of finished chain cable and fittings. The results of tests on the welds are to comply with the requirements of Table 10. 2. 6: Mechanical properties of welds in chain cables.

2. 4 Cast chain cables

2. 4. 1 The manufacture of cast steel chain cable is generally to be in accordance with the requirements of Ch 4, 1 General requirements, as appropriate.

2. 4. 2 The chemical composition of ladle samples is to comply with the specification approved by ACS.

2. 4. 3 Separately cast test samples are to be provided from each cast. They are to be of similar dimensions to the links they represent and are to be heat treated together with, and in the same manner as, the completed chain cable, *See* Table 10. 2. 3: Condition of supply and scope of mechanical tests for finished chain cables and fittings.

2. 4. 4 Tensile and Charpy V-notch impact test specimens are to be taken from each test sample and machined to the dimensions given in Ch 2, 3 Impact tests.

2. 4. 5 The results of all tests are to comply with the requirements given in Table 10. 2. 1: Mechanical properties of finished chain cable and fittings for the relevant grade.

2. 5 Forged chain cables

2. 5. 1 The procedure for the manufacture and testing of drop forgings for chain cable will be specially considered, but is generally to be in accordance with the appropriate requirements of Ch 5, 1 General requirements.

2. 5. 2 The chemical composition is to comply with Table 10. 2. 2: Chemical composition of butt welded and forged chain cable.

2. 5. 3 The completed forgings are to be heat treated in accordance with Table 10. 2. 3: Condition of supply and scope of mechanical tests for finished chain cables and fittings.

2. 5. 4 Test samples are to be provided in the form of forgings of similar dimensions to the links they represent. These test samples are to be from the same steel-making heat and heat treated together with the links they represent.

2. 5. 5 One tensile and three Charpy V-notch specimens are to be taken from each test sample.

2. 5. 6 The results of mechanical tests are to comply with the requirements of Table 10. 2. 1: Mechanical properties of finished chain cable and fittings for the relevant grade.

Table 10. 2. 1: Mechanical properties of finished chain cable and fittings

Grade	Yield stress N/mm² minimum	Tensile strength N/mm²	Elongation on $5.56\sqrt{s_0}\%$ minimum	Reduction of area % minimum	Charpy V-notch impact tests	
					Test temperature °C	Average energy J minimum
U2	295	490 – 690	22	—	0 (*See* Note 1)	27
U3	410	690 minimum	17	40	0	60
					–20 (*See* Note 2)	35

Note *1.* When required *See* Table 10. 2. 3: Condition of supply and scope of mechanical tests for finished chain cables and fittings.

Note *2.* Testing may be carried out at either 0°C or –20°C.

Note *3.* Mechanical testing is not required for finished chain cables and fittings in Grade U1.

Table 10. 2. 2: Chemical composition of butt welded and forged chain cable

Grade	Chemical composition %												
	C max.	Si	Mn	P max.	S max.	Al	N max.	Cr max.	Cu max.	Nb max.	Ni max.	V max.	Mo max.
U1	0.20	0.15 – 0.35	0.40 min.	0.04	0.04	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
U2	0.24	0.15 – 0.55	1.60 max.	0.035	0.035	0.02 min. *See* Note 1	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
U3	0.33	0.15 – 0.55	1.90 max.	0.035	0.035	0.065 max. *See* Note 2	0.015	0.25	0.35	0.05 *See* Note 2	0.40	0.10 *See* Note 2	0.08

Note *1.* Aluminium may be partly replaced by other grain refining elements.

Note *2.* To obtain fine grain steel, at least one of these grain refining elements must be present in sufficient amount.

Table 10. 2. 3: Condition of supply and scope of mechanical tests for finished chain cables and fittings

Grade	Manufacturing method	Condition of supply	Number of test specimens on every four lengths of chain cable of 27.5 m or less, or on each batch of fittings		
			Tensile test on base materials	Charpy V-notch impact test	
				Base material	Weldment

U1 cable	Flash butt welded	As welded Normalised	— —	— —	— —
U2 cable	Flash butt welded	As welded Normalised	1 —	3 —	3 —
U3 cable	Flash butt welded	Normalised Normalised and Tempered Quenched and Tempered	1	3	3
U2 cable	Cast or drop forged	Normalised	1	3	—
U3 cable	Cast or drop forged	Normalised Normalised and Tempered Quenched and Tempered	1	3	—
U2 fittings	Cast or drop forged	Normalised	1	3	—
U3 fittings	Cast or drop forged	Normalised Normalised and Tempered Quenched and Tempered	1	3	—

2. 6 Stud material

2. 6. 1 Steel studs are to be used for all grades of welded chain cable. In general, the carbon content should not exceed 0.23 per cent but mechanical tests for acceptance purposes are not required.

2. 7 Welding of studs

2. 7. 1 Where studs are welded into the links this is to be completed before the chain cable is heat treated.

2. 7. 2 The stud ends must be a good fit inside the link, and the weld is to be confined to the stud end opposite the flash-butt weld. Welding of studs both ends is not permitted unless specially approved. The full periphery of the stud end is to be welded. If, however, it can be demonstrated to the Surveyor that the quality of welding is of a high standard then partial peripheral welding may be accepted provided that welds are made only at the sides of the stud and that each run extends continuously for at least 25 per cent of the stud periphery. Weld start/stop positions are not to be located in the plane of the chain cable.

2. 7. 3 The welds are to be made by qualified welders using an approved procedure and consumables approved to Grade 3 and low hydrogen, in accordance with Ch 11 Approval of Welding Consumables.

2. 7. 4 The welds are to be of good quality and free from defects liable to impair the proper use of the chain. Undercuts, end craters and similar stress raising defects shall, where necessary, be ground off.

2. 7. 5 All stud welds are to be visually inspected. At least one stud weld within each length of cable is to be inspected using magnetic particle inspection or dye penetrant testing in accordance with Ch 1, 5 Non-destructive examination after the chain has been proof loaded. If a crack is found, the stud welds in the adjoining links are to be inspected; if a crack is found in either link, all the stud welds in that length are to be inspected using magnetic particle inspection or dye penetrant testing.

2. 8 Heat treatment of completed chain cables

2. 8. 1 The completed chain cable is to be heat treated in accordance with Table 10. 2. 3: Condition of supply and scope of mechanical tests for finished chain cables and fittings for the appropriate grade of cable.

2. 8. 2 Special consideration will be given to the heat treatment of certain types of drop forged chain cable.

2. 8. 3 In all cases, heat treatment is to be carried out prior to the proof loading and breaking tests.

2. 8. 4 All test samples are to be heat treated with, and in the same way as, the chain cables they represent.

2. 9 Testing of completed chain cables

2. 9. 1 All chain cables are to be subjected to a Proof Load test and a Breaking Load test. In addition, mechanical tests should be carried out where required, *See* Table 10. 2. 3: Condition of supply and scope of mechanical tests for finished chain cables and fittings.

2. 9. 2 All chain cables are to be tested in the presence of a Surveyor, at a proving establishment recognised by ACS. A list of recognised proving establishments is published separately by ACS. In addition to the requirements stated in this Chapter, attention must be given to any relevant statutory requirements of the National Authority of the country in which the ship is to be registered.

2. 10 Proof load tests

2. 10. 1 Each length of chain cable is to be subjected to a proof loading test in an approved testing machine and is to withstand the load given in Table 10. 2. 4: Test loads for stud link anchor chain cables for the appropriate grade and size of cable.

Table 10. 2. 4: Test loads for stud link anchor chain cables

Chain diameter d mm	Grade U1		Grade U2		Grade U3	
	Proof load kN $0.00686d^2$ $(44– 0.08d)$	Breaking load kN $0.00981d^2$ $(44– 0.08d)$	Proof load kN $0.00981d^2$ $(44– 0.08d)$	Breaking load kN $0.01373d^2$ $(44– 0.08d)$	Proof load kN $0.01373d^2$ $(44– 0.08d)$	Breaking load kN $0.01961d^2$ $(44– 0.08d)$
12.5	46	66	66	92	92	132
14	58	82	82	115	115	165
16	75	107	107	150	150	214
17.5	89	128	128	179	179	256
19	105	150	150	211	211	301
20.5	122	175	175	244	244	349
22	140	201	201	281	281	401
24	166	238	238	333	333	475
26	194	278	278	389	389	556
28	225	321	321	450	450	642

30	257	367	367	514	514	734
32	291	416	416	583	583	832
34	327	468	468	655	655	936
36	366	523	523	732	732	1045
38	406	580	580	812	812	1160
40	448	640	640	896	896	1280
42	492	703	703	984	984	1406
44	538	769	769	1076	1076	1537
46	585	837	837	1171	1171	1673
48	635	908	908	1270	1270	1814
50	686	981	981	1373	1373	1961
52	739	1057	1057	1479	1479	2113
54	794	1135	1135	1589	1589	2269
56	850	1216	1216	1702	1702	2430
58	908	1299	1299	1818	1818	2597
60	968	1384	1384	1938	1938	2767
62	1029	1472	1472	2060	2060	2943
64	1092	1562	1562	2187	2187	3123
66	1157	1655	1655	2316	2316	3308
68	1223	1749	1749	2448	2448	3496
70	1291	1846	1846	2583	2583	3690
73	1395	1995	1995	2792	2792	3988
76	1503	2149	2149	3007	3007	4295
78	1576	2254	2254	3154	3154	4505
81	1689	2415	2415	3380	3380	4827
84	1805	2580	2580	3612	3612	5158
87	1923	2750	2750	3849	3849	5498
90	2045	2924	2924	4093	4093	5845

92	2127	3042	3042	4258	4258	6081
95	2254	3223	3223	4510	4510	6442
97	2339	3345	3345	4682	4682	6687
100	2470	3532	3532	4943	4943	7060
102	2558	3658	3658	5120	5120	7312
105	2692	3850	3850	5389	5389	7697
107	2783	3980	3980	5571	5571	7957
111	2968	4245	4245	5941	5941	8486
114	3110	4447	4447	6224	6224	8889
117	3253	4652	4652	6511	6511	9299
120	3398	4859	4859	6801	6801	9714
122	3496	4999	4999	6997	6997	9994
124	3595	5141	5141	7195	7195	10276
127	3744	5354	5354	7494	7494	10703
130	3895	5571	5571	7796	7796	11135
132	3997	5716	5716	8000	8000	11426
137	4254	6083	6083	8514	8514	12161
142	4515	6456	6456	9036	9036	12906
147	4779	6834	6834	9565	9565	13662
152	5046	7217	7217	10100	10100	14426
157	5316	7602	7602	10640	10640	15197
162	5588	7991	7991	11185	11185	15975

2. 10. 2 On completion of the test, each link is to be visually examined and is to be free from significant defects. Special attention is to be given to welds.

2. 10. 3 Should any link be found to be defective it is to be replaced by an approved connecting link (joining shackle or substitute link as detailed in Ch 10, 2.14 Substitute single links). The chain is then to be subjected to a repeat of the proof load test followed by re-examination.

2. 10. 4 If a link breaks during proof load testing, a sample consisting of three common links is to be taken from each side of the broken link and subjected to a breaking test as detailed in Ch 10, 2.12 Breaking load tests. If either of these samples fails, the length of cable is not to be accepted. A thorough examination of all broken links is to be made to determine the cause of failure and, after evaluation, ACS will consider the extent of cable which is to be rejected.

2. 11 Dimensional inspection

2. 11. 1 The measurement of dimensions in Ch 10, 2.11 Dimensional inspection 2.11.2 and Ch 10, 2.11 Dimensional inspection 2.11.3 is to take place after the proof load has been applied to the chain and subsequently reduced to the load of 10 per cent of the proof load. All other dimensional checks are to be carried out without application of load.

2. 11. 2 On every 27.5 m length of chain, five links are to be selected for measurement of length to ensure that the maximum allowable tolerance on a length of five links is plus 2.5 per cent. No under-tolerance is permitted.

2. 11. 3 If a five-link length of chain exceeds the tolerance given in Ch 10, 2.11 Dimensional inspection 2.11.2, then the entire chain is to be checked for length, five links at a time with an overlap of two links, which is to include the first five links. Oversize links are to be removed and an approved connecting link inserted.

2. 11. 4 Checks of all other dimensions are to be made on three links from every four 27.5 m lengths. All measurements are to be made on links selected by the Surveyor and are to be carried out to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

2. 11. 5 If one of the links detailed in Ch 10, 2.11 Dimensional inspection 2.11.4 fails to comply with the required tolerances, measurements are to be made on all four 27.5 m lengths.

2. 11. 6 If more than one link in a 27.5 m length of chain cable fails to meet the tolerance requirements, all the links in that length are to be measured.

2. 11. 7 Links that fail to comply with tolerance requirements are to be removed and approved connecting links inserted. Where a significant number of links fail to comply with the tolerance requirements the chain is to be rejected.

2. 11. 8 The form and proportion of links and shackles are to be in accordance with a standard recognised by ACS, such as ISO 1704, *See* Figure 10. 2. 2: Common link to Figure 10. 2. 9: Lugless shackle of the Kenter type; alternatively, the design may be specifically approved by ACS.

2. 11. 9 Manufacturing tolerances on stud link chain are to be within ±2.5 per cent (taking into account that all components of the chain are to be a good fit with one another), except for those detailed in Ch 10, 2.11 Dimensional inspection 2.11.10.

2. 11. 10 The nominal diameter, $\underline{d}$, is to be the average of the diameters, measured in the plane of the link, $\underline{d}_c$, and perpendicular to the plane of the link, $\underline{d}_p$, *See* Figure 10. 2. 2: Common link. The negative tolerance on the nominal diameter is not to exceed the following:

a. Minus 1 mm when $\underline{d} \leq 40$ mm
b. Minus 2 mm when 40 mm $< \underline{d} \leq 84$ mm
c. Minus 3 mm when 84 mm $< \underline{d} \leq 122$ mm
d. Minus 4 mm when $\underline{d} > 122$ mm

For diameters of 20mm or greater, the plus tolerance on the diameter at the crown measured perpendicular to the plane of the link, $\underline{d}_p$, is not to exceed 5 per cent. For diameters less than 20mm, the plus tolerance is to be agreed between the chain manufacturer and bar material supplier.

2. 11. 11 The cross-sectional area is to be calculated using the nominal diameter, $\underline{d}$. The cross-sectional area at the crown of the link is to have no negative tolerance.

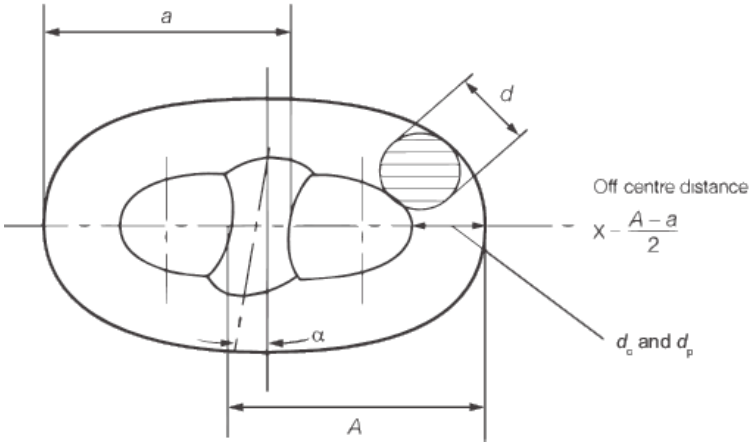
2. 11. 12 The diameter measured at locations other than the crown is to have no negative tolerance. For diameters of 20mm or greater, the plus tolerance may be up to 5 percent of the nominal diameter except at the butt weld where it is to be in accordance with the manufacturer's specification, which is to be agreed by ACS. For diameters less than 20mm, the plus tolerance is to be agreed between the chain manufacturer and bar material supplier.

2. 11. 13 Studs must be located in the links centrally and at right angles to the sides of the link, although the studs at each end of any length may also be located off-centre to facilitate the insertion of the

joining shackle. The following tolerances in Figure 10. 2. 1: Manufacturing tolerances will be accepted provided that the stud fits snugly and its ends lie practically flush against the inside of the link:

a. Maximum off-centre distance 'X': 10 per cent of the nominal diameter d
b. Maximum deviation 'α' from the 90° – position: 4°.

Figure 10. 2. 1: Manufacturing tolerances



2. 11. 14 All individual parts must have a clean surface consistent with the method of manufacture and the surface is to be free from cracks, notches, inclusions and other defects which could impair the performance of the product. Crack-like imperfections less than 3 mm in length can be ignored. The flash produced by upsetting or drop forging must be properly removed.

2. 11. 15 Minor surface imperfections may be ground off so as to leave a gentle transition to the surrounding surface provided that the cross-sectional area remains equal to or greater than the nominal cross-sectional area. Remote from the crown, local grinding up to 5 per cent of the nominal diameter may be permitted.

2. 11. 16 Paint or anti-corrosive coatings are not to be applied until these inspections are completed to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

2. 12 Breaking load tests

2. 12. 1 Breaking load tests are to be carried out on three-link samples selected by the Surveyor from the completed (including heat treatment) chain. The test links may be removed from the chain prior to heat treatment provided that each sample is heat treated with, and in the same manner as the chain it represents. They are to be properly identified with the lengths of chain they represent.

2. 12. 2 The number of tests required is to be in accordance with Table 10. 2. 5: Number of breaking tests from completed cables except that for chafing chain for Emergency Towing Arrangements (ETA), *See* Pt 3, Ch 13, 12.2 Chafing chain and wire or fibre rope for Emergency Towing Arrangements, one test is to be carried out on each 110 m of finished chains.

2. 12. 3 Breaking test specimens are to withstand the load given in Table 10. 2. 4: Test loads for stud link anchor chain cables for the appropriate grade and size of cable. The specimen is considered to have passed this test if it has shown no sign of fracture after application of the required load for a minimum of 30 seconds.

Table 10. 2. 5: Number of breaking tests from completed cables

Designation	Method of manufacture	Number of breaking test specimens

Grade U1	Flash-butt welded and heat treated	One from every four lengths of 27.5 m or less
Grade U2(a) U3(a)	Flash-butt welded, or drop forged and heat treated	One from every four lengths of 27.5 m or less
Grade U1 U2(a)	Flash-butt welded but not heat treated	One from each length of 27.5 m or less
Grade U2(b) U3(b)	Cast and heat treated	One per heat treatment batch with a minimum of one from every four lengths of 27.5 m or less

Table 10. 2. 6: Mechanical properties of welds in chain cables

Grade	Charpy V-notch impact test	
	Test temperature °C	Average energy J min
U1	—	—
U2	0 (*See* Note 1)	27
U3	0	50
	–20 (*See* Note 2)	27

Note 1. Impact tests are only required if the chain cable is not heat treated.

Note 2. Impact testing may be carried out at 0°C or minus 20°C.

2. 12. 4 Where a breaking test specimen fails, a further specimen is to be cut from the same length of cable and subjected to test. If this re-test fails, the length of cable from which it was taken is to be rejected. When this test is also representative of other lengths, each of the remaining lengths is to be individually tested by taking a breaking test specimen from each length of the batch. If one of these further tests fails, the entire set of lengths represented by the original test is to be rejected.

2. 12. 5 For large diameter cables where the required breaking load is greater than the capacity of the testing machines, special consideration will be given to acceptance of an alternative testing procedure.

2. 13 Fittings for chain cables

2. 13. 1 Cable fittings are to be manufactured at an approved works.

2. 13. 2 The materials from which the fittings are made are to be manufactured at approved works, in accordance with the appropriate requirements of Ch 4, 1 General requirements or Ch 5, 1 General requirements respectively. Alternative arrangements may be agreed provided that full details concerning the manufacturer are submitted to ACS.

2. 13. 3 All fittings are to be manufactured to an approved manufacturing specification, and provision is to be made for tensile specimens and, where applicable, impact test specimens, *See* Table 10. 2. 3: Condition of supply and scope of mechanical tests for finished chain cables and fittings. The mechanical test requirements are the same as those for the relevant grade of chain cable, *See* Table 10. 2. 1: Mechanical properties of finished chain cable and fittings.

2. 13. 4 The test samples are to be prepared in accordance with Ch 10, 2.4 Cast chain cables 2.4.3 or Ch 10, 2.5 Forged chain cables 2.5.4 as applicable. The test specimens are to be subjected to heat treatment with the fittings they represent.

2. 13. 5 For mechanical testing, a batch is defined as fittings of the same grade, size and heat treatment furnace load and is to have originated from a single cast heat of steel.

2. 13. 6 Mechanical tests of pins are to be taken in accordance with Ch 10, 4.6 Mechanical tests 4.6.7.

2. 13. 7 Fittings such as shackles, swivels and swivel shackles are to be forged or cast in steel of at least Grade U2. The welded construction of fittings may also be approved providing that full details of the manufacturing process and the heat treatment are submitted.

2. 13. 8 ll chain cable accessories, including spares, are to be subjected to the proof loads appropriate to the grade and size of cable for which they are intended. These include shackles, swivels, swivel shackles, enlarged links and end links. Anchor shackles, however, are to be tested in combination with the anchor.

2. 13. 9 The appropriate breaking load is to be applied for a minimum of 30 seconds to at least one item out of every batch of up to 25 detachable links, shackles, swivels, swivel shackles, enlarged end links and end links and at least one item out of every batch of up to 50 for lugless (Kenter) shackles. The item tested is to be destroyed and not used as part of an outfit. For the purposes of break load testing, a batch of accessories is to consist of:

a. the same accessory type, grade and size;
b. the same rolling or forging or casting process; and
c. accessories that are heat treated together in the same furnace.

2. 13. 10 Where a break load batch as defined in Ch 10, 2.13 Fittings for chain cables 2.13.9 requires a normalise or normalise and temper heat treatment, the size of accessories may vary within a batch provided that the heat treatment cycle is chosen to satisfy the accessory with the largest cross-section size. The batch may consist of more than one steel-making heat provided that the two accessories are break tested, one with the largest crosssection size and one with the smallest cross-section size.

2. 13. 11 Where a break load batch as defined in Ch 10, 2.13 Fittings for chain cables 2.13.9 requires a quench and temper heat treatment, the size of the accessories within the batch is to be the same and is limited to the same steel-making heat.

2. 13. 12 If the sample fails to withstand the breaking load without fracture, two more samples from the same batch may be tested. If either of these samples fails, the batch is to be rejected.

2. 13. 13 Fittings of increased dimensions or higher grade material may be used subject to approval by ACS.

2. 13. 14 Where items of increased dimensions are used or if material of a higher grade than is specified is used, the breaking load is to be applied to each item, and the items so tested included with the outfit. For the purpose of this paragraph, items of increased dimensions are those so designed that their breaking strength is not less than 1.4 times the Rule minimum breaking load of the chain cable with which they are to be used.

2. 13. 15 ACS may waive the breaking load test provided that:

a. the breaking load test has been completed satisfactorily during approval testing, and
b. the tensile and impact properties of each manufacturing batch are proved and
c. the accessories are subjected to suitable non-destructive testing.

2. 13. 16 All testing is to be carried out in the presence of the Surveyor and to his satisfaction.

2. 13. 17 The following tolerances are applicable to accessories:

a. Nominal diameter: plus 5 per cent, minus 0 per cent
b. Other dimensions: ±2.5 per cent
c. The radii of all machined corners are to be not less than 0.03 times the nominal chain diameter

2. 13. 18 All fittings are to be stamped in accordance with Ch 10, 2.15, Identification.

2. 14 Substitute single links

2. 14. 1 Single links to connect lengths of chain cable or to substitute for defective links, without the necessity for re-heat treatment of the whole cable length, are to be made by the chain manufacturer in accordance with an approved procedure. Separate approvals are required for each grade of chain cable and the tests are to be made on the maximum size of chain for which approval is sought. Re-approval is required annually.

2. 14. 2 Manufacture and heat treatment of the substitute link are not to affect the strength of the adjoining links. The temperature reached by these links is nowhere to exceed 250°C.

2. 14. 3 The steel bar used is to conform with the specification for the chain in accordance with Ch 3, 9 Bars for welded chain cables.

2. 14. 4 Details of the method of manufacture, including heat treatment, are to be submitted for approval, together with the results of a series of tests laid down by ACS.

2. 14. 5 All links involved in the approval tests are to be destroyed and are not to be used as part of a chain cable.

2. 14. 6 Every substitute link included in a chain cable is to be subjected to the proof load appropriate to the grade and size of chain in which it is incorporated, as detailed in Table 10. 2. 6: Mechanical properties of welds in chain cables.

2. 14. 7 Each substitute link is to be stamped on the stud with the identification marks listed in Ch 10, 2.15 Identification 2.15.1 plus a unique number for the link. The adjoining links are also to be stamped on the studs.

2. 15 Identification

2. 15. 1 All lengths of Grades U1, U2 and U3 cable and all fittings are to be stamped with the following identification marks:

a. ACS or Asia Classification Society and abbreviated name of ACS's issuing the certificate.
b. Number of certificate.
c. Proof load and grade of chain.
d. Surveyor’s personal stamp.
e. Each length of chain cable is to be stamped on both ends.

2. 16 Certification

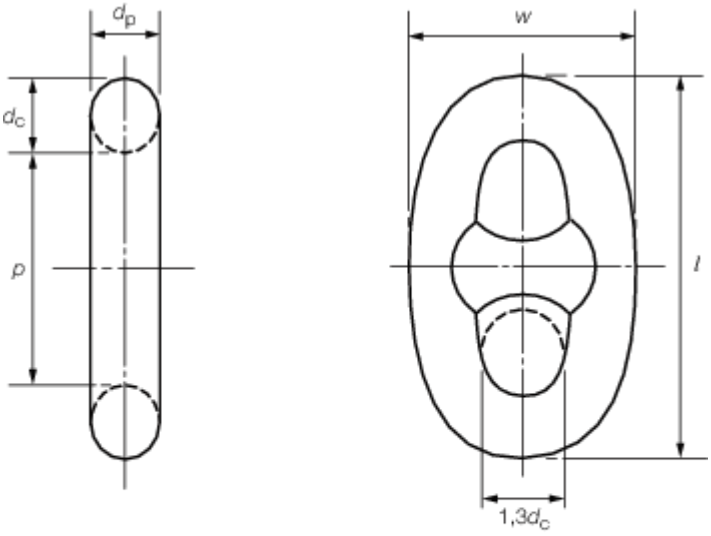
2. 16. 1 An ACS certificate is to be issued for chain cable only, fittings only or chain cable with associated fittings.

2. 16. 2 Each test certificate is to include the following particulars for all items included on the certificate:

a. Manufacturer’s name.
b. Purchaser's name and order number.
c. Description and dimensions.
d. Grade of chain cable.
e. Identification mark which will enable the full history of the chain or fitting to be traced.
f. Chemical composition.
g. Details of heat treatment.
h. Mechanical test results.
i. Breaking test load.
j. Proof load.

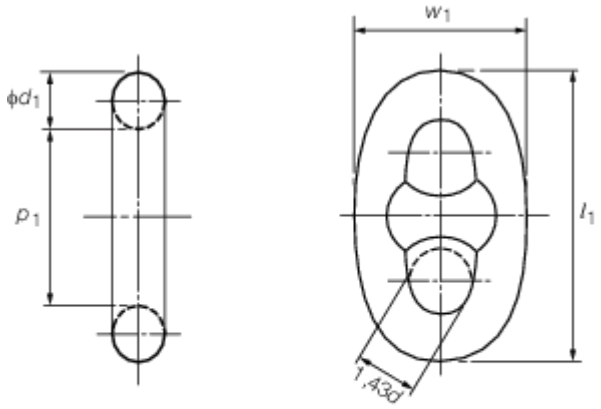
2. 16. 3 Where appropriate, the certificate is to include a list of all substitute links together with their grade of steel, the name of the steelmaker, the heat number and the purchase order number.

Figure 10. 2. 2: Common link



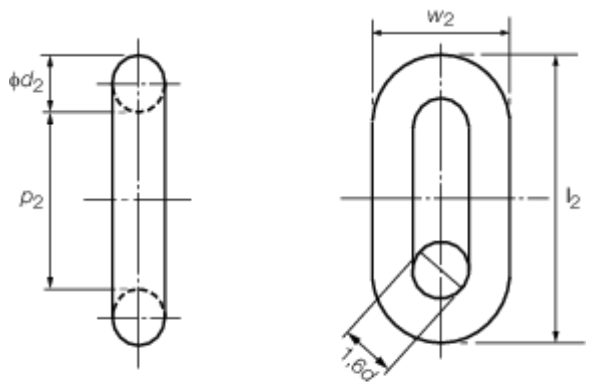
d = nominal diameter $\left(\frac{d_c + d_p}{2}\right)$
d_c = nominal diameter at crown measured in plane of link
d_p = nominal diameter at crown measured perpendicular to plane of link
$l = 6d_c$
$p = 4d_c$
$w = 3{,}6d_c$ to the nearest millimetre

Figure 10. 2. 3: Enlarged link



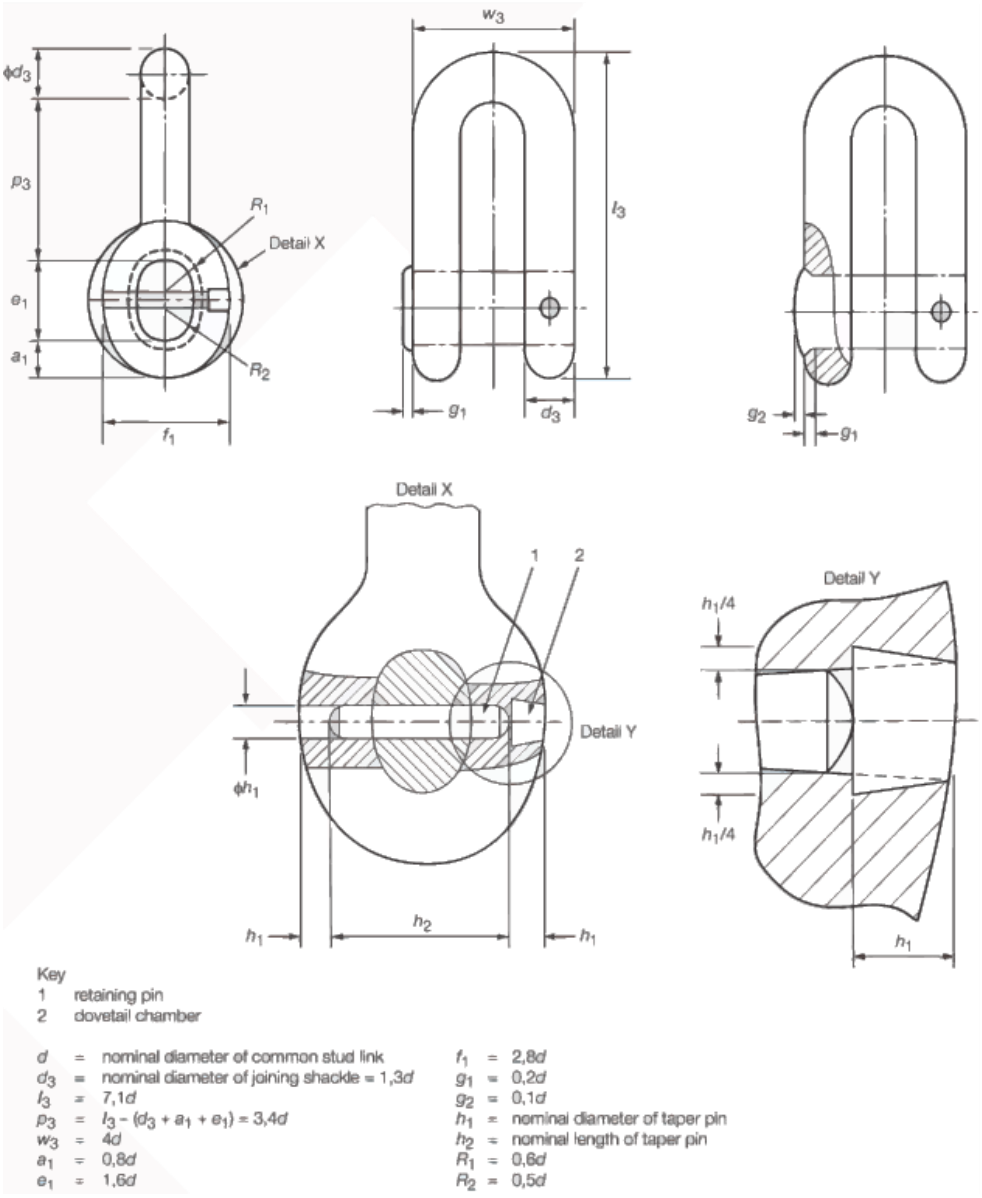
d = nominal diameter of common stud link
d_1 = nominal diameter of enlarged stud link = $1{,}1d$
$l_1 = 6d_1 \approx 6{,}6d$
$p_1 = 4d_1 \approx 4{,}4d$
$w_1 = 3{,}6d_1 \approx 3{,}96d$

Figure 10. 2. 4: End link



d = nominal diameter of common stud link
d_2 = nominal diameter of end link = $1,2d$
l_2 = $p_2 + 2d_2 \approx 6,75d$ to $7d$
p_2 = $3,65d_2 \approx 4,35d$
w_2 = $3,3d_2 \approx 4d$

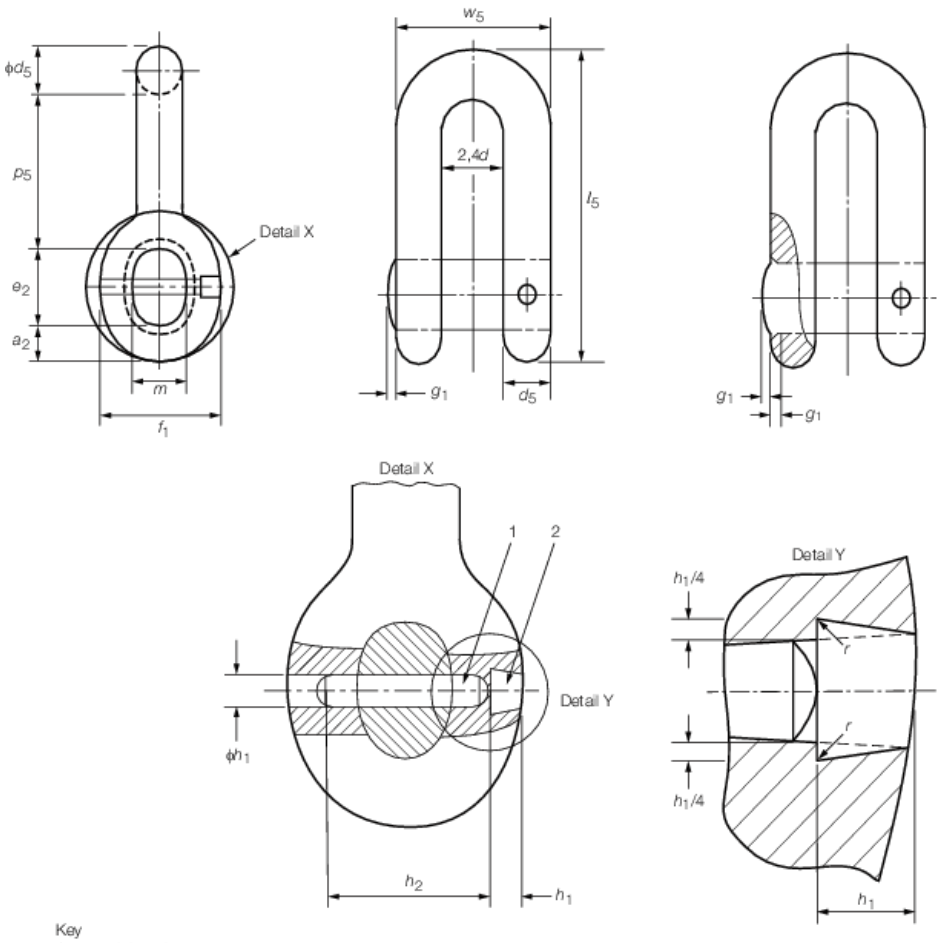
Figure 10. 2. 5: Dee shackle



Key
1 retaining pin
2 dovetail chamber

d	=	nominal diameter of common stud link	f_1	=	2,8d
d_3	=	nominal diameter of joining shackle = 1,3d	g_1	=	0,2d
l_3	=	7,1d	g_2	=	0,1d
p_3	=	$l_3 - (d_3 + a_1 + e_1) = 3{,}4d$	h_1	=	nominal diameter of taper pin
w_3	=	4d	h_2	=	nominal length of taper pin
a_1	=	0,8d	R_1	=	0,6d
e_1	=	1,6d	R_2	=	0,5d

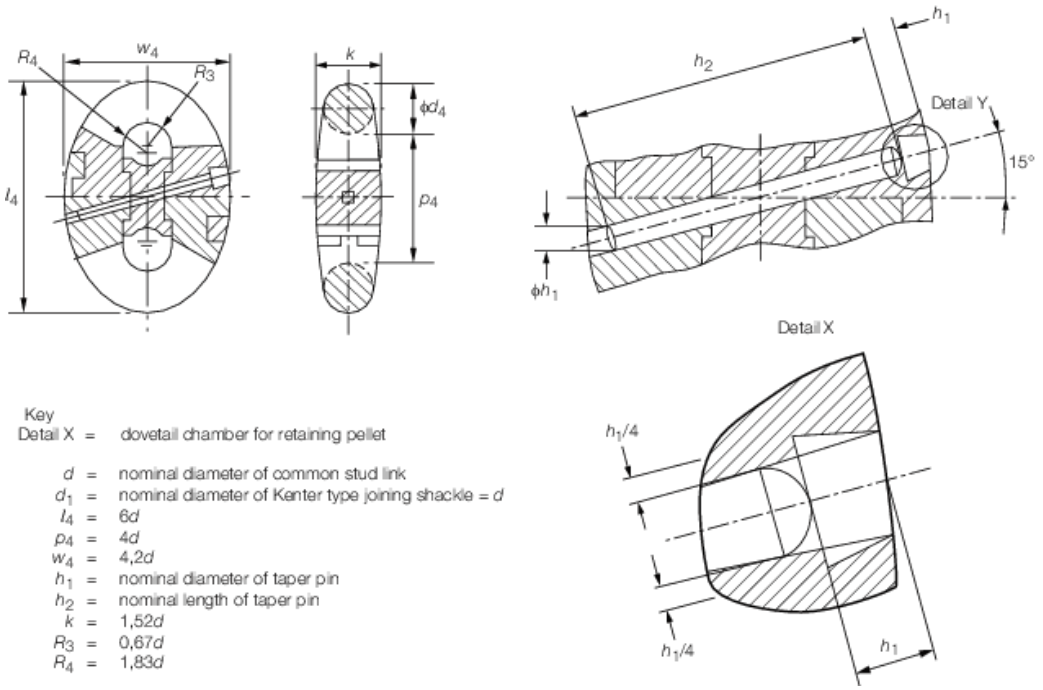
Figure 10. 2. 6: End shackle



Key
1 retaining pin
2 dovetail chamber

d = nominal diameter of common stud link
d_5 = nominal diameter of end shackle = 1,4d
l_5 = 8,7d
p_5 = $l_5 - (d_5 + a_2 + e_2) = 4,5d$
w_5 = 5,2d
a_2 = 0,9d
e_2 = 1,8d
f_2 = 3,1d
g_1 = 0,2d
g_2 = 0,1d
m = 1,4d
h_1 = nominal diameter of taper pin
h_2 = nominal length of taper pin

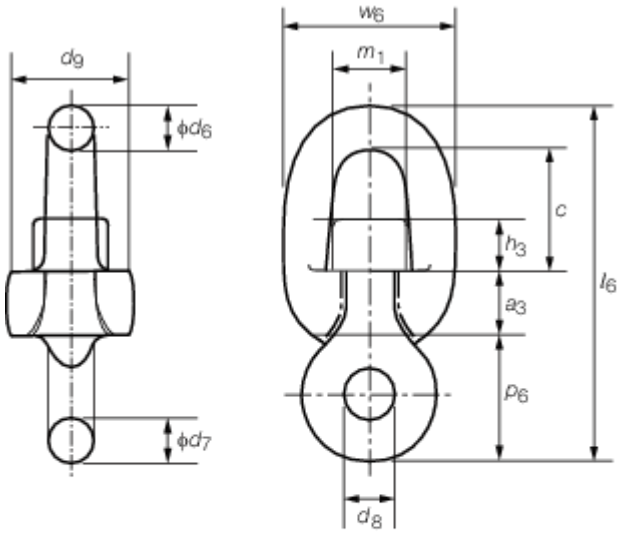
Figure 10. 2. 7: Lugless shackle



Key
Detail X = dovetail chamber for retaining pellet

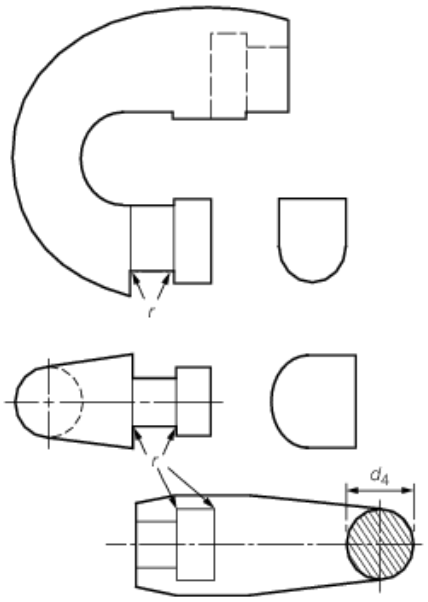
d = nominal diameter of common stud link
d_1 = nominal diameter of Kenter type joining shackle = d
l_4 = $6d$
p_4 = $4d$
w_4 = $4{,}2d$
h_1 = nominal diameter of taper pin
h_2 = nominal length of taper pin
k = $1{,}52d$
R_3 = $0{,}67d$
R_4 = $1{,}83d$

Figure 10. 2. 8: Swivel



d = nominal diameter of common stud link
d_6 = nominal diameter of swivel = $1{,}2d$
l_6 = $9{,}7d$
p_6 = d_9 = $3{,}4d$
w_6 = $4{,}7d$
d_7 = $1{,}1d$
a_3 = $1{,}75d$
m_1 = $2d$
h_3 = d_8 = $1{,}4d$
c = $3{,}35d$

Figure 10. 2. 9: Lugless shackle of the Kenter type



The radii indicated by *r* are to be not less than 0,03 x d_4

PART

2

CHAPTER **10 Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring**

SECTION **3 Offshore Mooring chain cables**

3. 1 Scope

3. 1. 1 Provision is made in this Section for five grades, R3, R3S, R4, R4S and R5, of stud link chain and studless flash butt welded chain cable intended for offshore mooring applications such as mooring of mobile offshore units, mooring of floating production units, offshore loading systems and gravity based structures during fabrication. Special consideration will be given to the use of grades outside the existing scope.

3. 1. 2 Design of stud link chain cables must be to a recognised Standard, such as ISO 1704. For studless chain the shape and dimensions are to comply with the requirements of this Section. Non-Standard designs of chain are to be subject to special consideration, and may require a fatigue analysis and tests to confirm relevant performance.

3. 1. 3 In addition, chain cable conforming to the requirements of the current edition of API specification 2F is acceptable provided that it has been manufactured, inspected and tested under survey by ACS, and that the bar stock has also been certified by ACS in accordance with Ch 3, 9 Bars for welded chain cables.

3. 1. 4 The studless link chain is generally expected to be deployed only once, being intended for long-term mooring applications with a pre-determined service life.

3. 2 Manufacture

3. 2. 1 All grades of chain cable and fittings are to be manufactured by approved procedures at works approved by ACS. A list of approved manufacturers for offshore mooring chain cables is published separately by ACS.

3. 2. 2 Approval is confined to a single works and is limited to one grade of cable made from bar from a nominated and approved supplier. Separate approvals are required if steel bar is supplied from more than one works and for other grades of cable, *See also* Ch 3, 9 Bars for welded chain cables.

3. 2. 3 Details of the method of manufacture and the specification of the steel, are to be submitted.

3. 2. 4 Offshore mooring chains are to be made in continuous lengths by flash-butt welding.

3. 2. 5 Bar material may be heated by electric resistance, induction or in a furnace. For electrical resistance heating or induction heating, the process is to be controlled by an optical heat sensor. For furnace heating, thermocouples in close proximity to the bars are to be used for control and the temperature is to be continuously recorded. In both cases, the controls are to be checked at least once every eight hours and records taken.

3. 2. 6 The following welding parameters (as approved in the weld procedure) are to be controlled during welding of each link:

a. platen motion;

b. current as a function of time; and
c. hydraulic pressure.

The controls are to be checked at least once every four hours and records taken.

3. 2. 7 The records of bar heating, flash-butt welding and heat treatment are to be made available to the Surveyor when required.

3. 2. 8 As far as practicable, consecutive links in all chain cable should originate from a single batch of bar stock (*See* Ch 3, 9.6 Mechanical tests 9.6.1) and indicating marks should be stamped on the final link formed from one batch and the first link formed from a separate batch.

3. 3 Studs

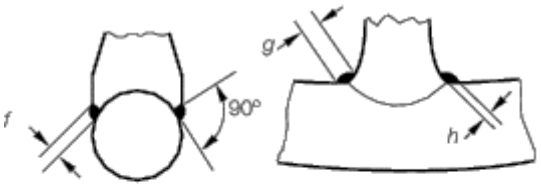
3. 3. 1 The studs are to be made of steel corresponding to that of the chain or in compliance with a specification approved by ACS. In general, the carbon content should not exceed 0.23 per cent if the studs are to be welded in place.

3. 3. 2 Studs may be welded into grade R3 and R3S chains. The welding of studs into grade R4, R4S and R5 chain is not permitted unless specially approved.

3. 3. 3 In all cases where studs are welded into links, this is to be carried out in accordance with Ch 10, 2.7 Welding of studs. The visual and NDE inspection of the stud welds is to be carried out in accordance with Ch 10, 3.6, Proof load tests and non-destructive examination.

3. 3. 4 The size of the stud welds is to be in accordance with Figure 10. 3. 1: Dimensions and tolerances of stud welds.

Figure 10. 3. 1: Dimensions and tolerances of stud welds



Dimension Designation	Nominal Dimension	Minus Tolerance
f	0,10*d*	0,01*d*
g	0,20*d*	0,02*d*
h	0,09*d*	0,01*d*

d = Nominal diameter of barstock

3. 3. 5 Where plastic straining is used to set studs, the applied load is not to be greater than that qualified in approval tests. The combined effect of shape and depth of the impression of the stud in the link is not to cause any harmful notch effect or stress concentration.

3. 4 Heat treatment of completed chain cables

3. 4. 1 The chain is to be normalised, normalised and tempered or quenched and tempered in accordance with the specification approved by ACS.

3. 4. 2 The chains are to be heat treated in a continuous furnace; batch heat treatment is not permitted unless specially approved.

3. 4. 3 The temperature and time, or temperature and chain speed, are to be controlled and continuously recorded.

3. 4. 4 Heat treatment is to be carried out prior to the proof loading, breaking tests and sample mechanical tests.

3. 4. 5 The heat treatment furnace is to be properly constructed, efficiently maintained and has adequate means of temperature control. Calibration of furnaces is to be verified by measurement and recording of a calibration test piece with dimensions equivalent to the maximum size of link manufactured.

3. 5 Testing of completed chain cables

3. 5. 1 All chain cables are to be subjected to proof load tests, non-destructive examination, sample break load tests and sample mechanical tests after final heat treatment in the presence of a Surveyor. In addition to the requirements stated in this Chapter, attention must be given to any relevant statutory requirements of the National Authority of the country in which the ship is to be registered.

3. 5. 2 The chain is to be shot or sand-blasted prior to testing in order to ensure that its surfaces are free from scale, paint or other coating for inspection and have a suitably prepared surface in accordance with the NDE standard applied.

3. 5. 3 All non-destructive examination is to be carried out in accordance with approved procedures, in accordance with Ch 1, 5 Non-destructive examination.

3. 6 Proof load tests and non-destructive examination

3. 6. 1 The entire length of chain cable is to be subjected to a proof loading test at a Proving Establishment recognised by ACS. A list of recognised Proving Establishments is published in the Class Direct section of ACS's website. The chain cable is to withstand the load given inCh 10, 3.6 Proof load tests and non-destructive examination 3.6.1 for the appropriate grade and size of cable.

Table 10. 3. 1: Test loads for mooring chain cables

Nominal diameter *d*	Grade R3			Grade R3S			Grade R4			Grade R4S			Grade R5		
	Proof test load		Break test load	Proof test load		Break test load	Proof test load		Break test load	Proof test load		Break test load	Proof test load		Break test load
	Stud link chain	Studless chain		Studless chain	Stud link chain		Stud link chain	Studless chain		Stud link chain	Studless chain		Stud link chain	Studless chain	
mm	kN	kN	kN	kN	kN	kN	kN	kN	kN	kN	kN	kN	kN	kN	kN
50	1480	1480	2230	1800	1740	2490	2160	1920	2740	2400	2130	3040	2510	2230	3200
52	1594	1594	2402	1939	1874	2682	2327	2068	2952	2585	2295	3275	2704	2402	3447
54	1712	1712	2580	2083	2013	2881	2499	2222	3170	2777	2465	3517	2904	2580	3703
56	1834	1834	2764	2231	2156	3086	2677	2380	3396	2974	2640	3768	3111	2764	3966
58	1960	1960	2953	2383	2304	3297	2860	2542	3628	3178	2820	4025	3323	2953	4237
60	2089	2089	3147	2540	2455	3514	3048	2710	3867	3387	3006	4290	3542	3147	4516
62	2221	2221	3347	2701	2611	3737	3242	2881	4112	3602	3196	4562	3767	3347	4802
64	2357	2357	3551	2867	2771	3965	3440	3058	4364	3822	3392	4841	3997	3551	5096

66	2496	2496	3761	3036	2935	4200	3643	3238	4621	4048	3593	5127	4233	3761	5397
68	2639	2639	3976	3209	3102	4440	3851	3423	4885	4279	3798	5420	4475	3976	5706
70	2785	2785	4196	3387	3274	4685	4064	3613	5156	4516	4008	5720	4723	4196	6021
73	3010	3010	4535	3660	3538	5064	4392	3904	5572	4881	4331	6182	5104	4535	6507
76	3242	3242	4884	3942	3811	5454	4731	4205	6001	5257	4665	6658	5498	4884	7009
78	3400	3400	5123	4135	3997	5720	4962	4411	6295	5514	4893	6984	5766	5123	7351
81	3643	3643	5490	4431	4283	6130	5317	4726	6745	5908	5243	7484	6179	5490	7877
84	3893	3893	5866	4735	4577	6550	5682	5051	7208	6313	5603	7997	6602	5866	8418
87	4149	4149	6252	5046	4878	6981	6056	5383	7682	6729	5972	8523	7037	6252	8971
90	4412	4412	6647	5365	5187	7422	6439	5723	8167	7154	6349	9062	7482	6647	9539
92	4590	4590	6916	5582	5396	7722	6699	5954	8497	7443	6606	9428	7784	6916	9924
95	4862	4862	7326	5913	5716	8180	7096	6307	9001	7884	6997	9987	8246	7326	10512
97	5047	5047	7604	6138	5933	8490	7365	6547	9343	8184	7263	10366	8559	7604	10911
100	5328	5328	8028	6480	6264	8964	7776	6912	9864	8640	7668	10944	9036	8028	11520
102	5519	5519	8315	6712	6488	9285	8054	7159	10217	8949	7942	11336	9359	8315	11932
105	5809	5809	8753	7065	6829	9773	8478	7536	10754	9420	8360	11932	9851	8753	12560
107	6005	6005	9048	7304	7060	10103	8764	7790	11118	9738	8643	12335	10184	9048	12984
111	6404	6404	9650	7789	7529	10775	9347	8308	11856	10385	9217	13154	10861	9650	13847
114	6709	6709	10109	8159	7887	11287	9791	8703	12420	10879	9655	13780	11378	10109	14506
117	7018	7018	10574	8535	8251	11807	10242	9104	12993	11380	10100	14415	11902	10574	15174
120	7331	7331	11047	8916	8619	12334	10700	9511	13573	11889	10551	15059	12434	11047	15852
122	7542	7542	11365	9173	8868	12690	11008	9785	13964	12231	10855	15493	12792	11365	16308
124	7755	7755	11686	9432	9118	13048	11319	10061	14358	12576	11161	15930	13153	11686	16768
127	8078	8078	12171	9824	9497	13591	11789	10479	14955	13099	11626	16592	13700	12171	17466
130	8404	8404	12663	10221	9880	14139	12265	10903	15559	13628	12095	17262	14253	12663	18171
132	8623	8623	12993	10488	10138	14508	12585	11187	15965	13984	12411	17713	14625	12993	18645
137	9178	9178	13829	11162	10790	15441	13395	11906	16992	14883	13209	18852	15565	13829	19844
142	9741	9741	14677	11847	11452	16388	14216	12637	18033	15796	14019	20008	16520	14677	21061

147	10311	10311	15536	12540	12122	17347	15048	13376	19089	16720	14839	21179	17487	15536	22294
152	10887	10887	16405	13241	12800	18317	15890	14124	20156	17655	15669	22363	18464	16405	23540
157	11469	11469	17282	13949	13484	19297	16739	14879	21234	18599	16507	23559	19452	17282	24799
162	12056	12056	18166	14663	14174	20284	17596	15641	22320	19551	17351	24764	20447	18166	26068
167	12647	12647	19056	15381	14869	21278	18458	16407	23414	20508	18201	25977	21448	19056	27345
172	13240	13240	19950	16103	15566	22276	19324	17177	24513	21471	19055	27196	22455	19950	28628
177	13836	13836	20847	16827	16267	23278	20193	17949	25615	22437	19912	28420	23465	20847	29915
182	14433	14433	21746	17553	16968	24282	21064	18723	26720	23404	20771	29645	24477	21746	31205
187	15029	15029	22646	18279	17670	25286	21935	19498	27825	24372	21630	30871	25489	22646	32496
192	15626	15626	23544	19004	18371	26289	22805	20271	28929	25339	22488	32096	26500	23544	33785
197	16220	16220	24440	19727	19070	27290	23673	21043	30029	26303	23344	33317	27509	24440	35071
202	16813	16813	25332	20448	19766	28286	24537	21811	31126	27264	24196	34534	28513	25332	36351
207	17401	17401	26220	21164	20459	29277	25397	22575	32216	28219	25044	35744	29512	26220	37625
210	17753	17753	26749	21591	20872	29868	25910	23031	32867	28788	25550	36465	30108	26749	38385

Grade R3		
Proof test load	Stud link chain	$0.0148d^2\ (44 - 0.08d)$
	Studless chain	$0.0148d^2\ (44 - 0.08d)$
Break test load		$0.0223d^2\ (44 - 0.08d)$
Grade R3S		
Proof test load	Stud link chain	$0.0180d^2\ (44 - 0.08d)$
	Studless chain	$0.0174d^2\ (44 - 0.08d)$
Break test load		$0.0249d^2\ (44 - 0.08d)$
Grade R4		
Proof test load	Stud link chain	$0.0216d^2\ (44 - 0.08d)$
	Studless chain	$0.0192d^2\ (44 - 0.08d)$
Break test load		$0.0274d^2\ (44 - 0.08d_c)$
Grade R4S		
Proof test load	Stud link chain	$0.0240d^2\ (44 - 0.08d)$
	Studless chain	$0.0213d^2\ (44 - 0.08d)$
Break test load		$0.0304d^2\ (44 - 0.08d)$
Grade R5		

Proof test load	Stud link chain	$0.0251d^2(44 - 0.08d)$
	Studless chain	$0.0223d^2(44 - 0.08d)$
Break test load		$0.0320d^2(44 - 0.08d)$

3. 6. 2 Care should be taken to obtain a uniform stress distribution in the links being tested.

3. 6. 3 On completion of the proof load test, each link is to be visually examined and is to be free from significant defects such as mill defects, surface cracks, dents and cuts, especially where gripped by clamping dies during flash butt welding. Studs are to be securely fastened and any burrs, irregularities and rough edges are to be removed by careful grinding. In order to ensure adequate inspection, the chain is to be positioned to facilitate access to all surfaces.

3. 6. 4 All flash butt welds, including the area gripped by the clamping dies on every link, plus 10 per cent of links on all accessible surfaces, are to be examined by magnetic particle inspection in accordance with standards recognized by ACS, using wet continuous fluorescent magnetization technique. Non-fluorescent techniques can be accepted in special cases where the standard inspection procedures are impractical. The inspected area is to be free from cracks, lack of fusion, gross porosity, and any imperfections with the following maximum allowable dimensions:

- relevant linear indications exceeding 1.6 mm in transverse direction;
- relevant linear indications exceeding 3.2 mm in longitudinal direction;
- relevant non-linear indications exceeding 4.8 mm.

3. 6. 5 Surface defects in the region of the flash butt welds may be removed by grinding, provided that the depth of grinding does not exceed five per cent of the link diameter and is smoothly contoured into the surrounding material. The final dimensions are still to conform with the agreed standard.

3. 6. 6 All flash butt welds on every link are also to be examined by ultrasonic testing in accordance with standards recognised by ACS using appropriate scanning techniques designed to detect all expected defects, including any defects within the relevant fusion zones. The flash butt weld must be free from defects causing ultrasonic back reflections equal to or greater than the calibration standard. The single probe technique has limitations as far as testing of the central region is concerned and the flash butt weld imperfections such as flat spots may have poor reflectivity. Where it is deemed necessary, detectability of imperfections may need to be carried out by using a tandem technique, TOFD (Time-of-flight diffraction) or PAUT (phased array ultrasonic testing).

3. 6. 7 Stud welds, if used, are to be visually inspected. The toes of the fillets are to have a smooth transition to the link with no undercuts exceeding 1.0 mm. In addition, at least 10 per cent of the stud welds distributed through the length is to be magnetic particle or dye penetrant tested in accordance with standards recognised by ACS. Cracks, lack of fusion or gross porosity are not acceptable. If defects are found, testing is to be extended to all stud welds in that length of chain.

3. 6. 8 If a link breaks during proof load testing, a sample consisting of three common links is to be taken from each side of the broken link and subjected to a breaking test as detailed in Ch 10, 3.8 Breaking load tests 3.8.1 and Ch 10, 3.8 Breaking load tests 3.8.2. If either of these samples fails, the proof loaded length of cable is not to be accepted.

3. 6. 9 In the event that two or more links break during the proof load testing, the proof loaded length is to be rejected.

3. 6. 10 In all cases when a link breaks during the proof load testing, a thorough examination of all broken links is to be made to determine the cause of failure and, after evaluation, ACS will consider the extent of cable which is to be rejected and also the possibility that similar factors to those which caused the failure may also be present in other parts of the cable, or other chain cables, i.e.:

- Where multiple chains are produced simultaneously, it is recognised that the preceding flash butt welded link and subsequent flash butt welded link will be on an alternative chain length

or the other end of the chain length. In such cases, ACS may require that two additional break tests are to be taken from the lengths of chain that include the preceding and subsequent welded links.

- If the investigation identifies defects in the flash butt weld or a lower strength flash butt weld is found, additional NDE is to be carried out to identify if other links are affected. A full assessment of the flash butt welding machine it to be carried out, together with assessment of the condition of the bar ends prior to welding.
- The Surveyor is to be advised in advance of all examinations, with reasonable notice being given.

3. 7 Dimensional inspection

3. 7. 1 After proof testing, the entire chain is to be checked for length, five links at a time with an overlap of two links, which is to include the first five links, to ensure that the chain meets the tolerances given in Ch 10, 3.7 Dimensional inspection 3.7.3. The measurements are to be made while the chain is loaded to about 5-10 per cent of the minimum proof load.

3. 7. 2 The links held in the end blocks may be excluded from these measurements.

3. 7. 3 The maximum allowable tolerance on a length of five links measured in accordance with Ch 10, 3.7, Dimensional inspection 3.7.1 is +2.5 per cent. No under-tolerance is permitted.

3. 7. 4 If the length over five links is less than the nominal, the chain may be stretched by loading above the specified proof test load provided that the applied load is not greater than ten per cent above the proof test load, and that only random lengths of the chain need to be stretched.

3. 7. 5 Checks of all other dimensions are to be made on at least five per cent of the links in the cable.

3. 7. 6 A manufacturing tolerance on all other dimensions of ±2.5 per cent is acceptable subject to all parts fitting properly together.

3. 7. 7 The form and proportions of links are to be in accordance with ISO1704, *See* Figure 10. 2. 2: Common link. Link tolerances are to be in accordance with Ch 10, 3.7 Dimensional inspection 3.7.4 to Ch 10, 3.7 Dimensional inspection 3.7.10.

The negative tolerance on the nominal diameter measured at the crown is not to exceed the following:

- Minus 1 mm when $d_c < 40$ mm
- Minus 2 mm when $40 \text{ mm} < d_c < 84$ mm
- Minus 3 mm when $84 \text{ mm} < d_c < 122$ mm
- Minus 4 mm when $122 \text{ mm} < d_c < 152$ mm
- Minus 6 mm when $152 \text{ mm} < d_c < 184$ mm
- Minus 7.5 mm when $184 \text{ mm} < d_c < 222$ mm

For diameters of 20 mm or greater, the plus tolerance on the diameter at the crown measured perpendicular to the plane of the link, d_p, is not to exceed 5 per cent. For diameters less than 20 mm, the plus tolerance is to be agreed between the chain manufacturer and bar material supplier.

3. 7. 8 The cross-sectional area at the crown is to be calculated using the average of the measured diameters, which are to be taken from at least two locations approximately 90 degrees apart. The cross-sectional area at the crown is to have no negative tolerance.

3. 7. 9 The diameter measured at locations other than the crown is to have no negative tolerance. For diameters of 20 mm or greater, the plus tolerance may be up to 5 per cent of the nominal diameter

except at the butt weld where it is to be in accordance with the manufacturer's specification, which is to be agreed by ACS. For diameters less than 20 mm, the plus tolerance is to be agreed between the chain manufacturer and bar material supplier.

3. 7. 10 If any link fails to meet the above dimensional tolerance requirements, measurements are to be made on 20 more links on each side of the incorrect one. If failure to meet any particular dimensional requirements occurs in more than two of the measured links, then all the links are to be dimensionally checked.

3. 7. 11 hould any link be found to be defective or fail to meet the dimensional tolerance requirements or if a five link length of chain exceeds the specified tolerance, the unsatisfactory links are to be removed from the chain and connecting common links complying with the requirements of Ch 10, 3.10, Connecting common links or substitute links inserted in their places. Proposals for other methods of repair must be subject to approval by ACS and the purchaser. Weld repair of chain is not permitted.

3. 7. 12 The tolerances for common links are to be measured in accordance with Table 10. 3. 2: Stud link chain cable common link tolerances and Table 10. 3. 3: Studless link chain cable common link tolerances.

3. 7. 13 The chain is then to be subjected to a further proof load test and re-examined.

3. 7. 14 The number of connecting common links which may be used to replace defective links is not to exceed three in any 100m length of chain. The number and type of joining shackles which may be used are to be subject to the written agreement of the end user.

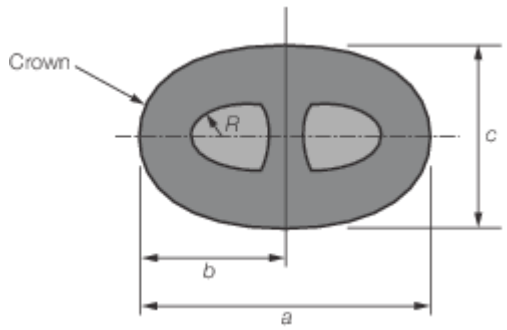
3. 7. 15 All measurements are to be made on links selected by the Surveyor and are to be carried out to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

3. 7. 16 For stud link chain, studs are to be located in the links centrally, and at right angles to the sides of the link, although the studs of the final link at each end of any length may also be located off-centre to facilitate the insertion of the joining shackle. The tolerances in accordance with Table 10. 3. 2: Stud link chain cable common link tolerances are acceptable provided that the stud fits snugly and its ends lie flush against the inside of the link.

3. 7. 17 Chain dimensions are to be recorded and the information retained on file.

Table 10. 3. 2: Stud link chain cable common link tolerances

The internal link radii (R) and external radii should be uniform

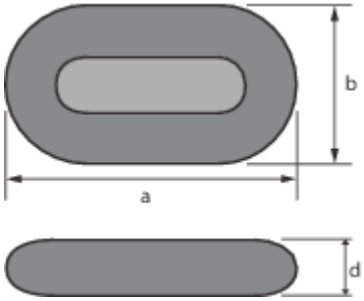


Designation	Description	Nominal dimension of the link	Minus tolerance	Plus tolerance
a	Link length	6*d*	0.15*d*	0.15*d*
b	Link half length	*a**/2	0.10*d*	0.10*d*
c	Link width	3.6*d*	0.09*d*	0.09*d*

e	Stud angular misalignment	0 degrees	4 degrees	4 degrees
R	Inner radius	0.65*d*	0	—
Symbols				
d = nominal diameter of chain *a** = actual link length				

Table 10. 3. 3: Studless link chain cable common link tolerances

The internal link radii (*R*) and external radii should be uniform



Designation	Description	Nominal dimension of the link	Minus tolerance	Plus tolerance
a	Link length	6*d*	0.15*d*	0.15*d*
b	Link width	3.35*d*	0.09*d*	0.09*d*
R	Inner radius	0.60*d*	0	—
Symbols				
d = nominal diameter of chain				
Note Other dimensional ratios are subject to special approval.				

3. 8 Breaking load tests

3. 8. 1 In addition to the requirements of Ch 10, 3.6 Proof load tests and non-destructive examination 3.6.1, three link samples are to be selected by the Surveyors from the completed chain for breaking tests. The number of tests required is to be in accordance with Ch 10, 3.8 Breaking load tests 3.8.5. Extra links are to be provided for the mechanical tests detailed in Ch 10, 3.9 Mechanical tests 3.9.1. All test links are to be made as part of the chain cable and are to be heat treated with it. These may be removed from the cable prior to heat treatment provided that each sample is heat treated with, and in the same manner as, the chain it represents prior to selection of the mechanical test specimens. They are to be properly identified with the length of chain they represent.

3. 8. 2 Breaking test specimens are to withstand the load given in Table 10. 3. 1: Test loads for mooring chain cables for the appropriate grade and size of cable for a period of 30 seconds. The specimen is considered to have passed this test if it has shown no sign of fracture and must not crack in the flash butt weld after application of the required load.

3. 8. 3 If a breaking test specimen fails, two further specimens are to be cut from the same sampling length and both are to be subjected to the breaking test load. If one of the re-test specimens fails the length is to be rejected. All the broken links are to be subjected to an investigation into the

cause of failure. ACS will then decide which lengths of chain can be accepted and on further action.

3. 8. 4 For chain diameters over 100 mm, alternative break-test proposals to the above break-test will be considered whereby a one link specimen is used. Alternatives are to be approved by ACS; every heat is to be represented, the test frequency is to be in accordance with Table 10. 3. 4: Frequency of break and mechanical tests, and it is to be demonstrated that the alternative test represents an equivalent load application to the three link test.

3. 8. 5 For large diameter cables where the required breaking load is greater than the capacity of the testing machines, special consideration will be given to acceptance of an alternative testing procedure.

Table 10. 3. 4: Frequency of break and mechanical tests

Nominal chain diameter mm	Maximum sampling interval m (*See* Note)
Min. — 48	91
49 — 60	110
61 — 73	131
74 — 85	152
86 — 98	175
99 — 111	198
112 — 124	222
125 — 137	250
138 — 149	274
150 — 162	297
163 — 175	322
176 — 186	346
187 — 198	370
199 — 210	395
211 — 222	420

Note If the sampling interval contains links made from more than one cast, extra break and mechanical tests are required so that tests are made on every cast.

3. 9 Mechanical tests

3. 9. 1 One tensile and three sets of Charpy V-notch impact test specimens are to be taken from links cut from the heat treated and proof loaded chain at intervals no greater than those indicated in Table 10. 3. 4: Frequency of break and mechanical tests provided that every cast is sampled. The tensile specimen and one set of impact specimens are to be taken from the side of the link opposite the weld. One set of impact test specimens is to have the notches positioned at the centre of the flash

butt weld and the third set is to be taken from the bend. All the specimens are to be taken from positions in accordance with Figure 10. 3. 2: Sampling of chain links.

3. 9. 2 The frequency of testing at the link bends may be reduced at the discretion of ACS provided it can be verified that the required toughness is achieved consistently.

3. 9. 3 The results of the mechanical tests are to comply with the requirements of Table 10. 3. 5: Mechanical properties of chain cable materials.

3. 9. 4 If the tensile test requirements are not achieved, two further specimens from the same sample are to be tested. The related length of chain will be considered acceptable if both re-test specimens meet the requirements but failure of either of the re-test specimens will result in rejection of the sampling length of chain represented by the tests.

3. 9. 5 If the impact test requirements are not achieved, re-tests may be carried out in accordance with Ch 2, 1.4, Re-testing procedures. Failure to meet the re-test requirements will result in rejection of the sampling length of chain represented by the tests.

3. 9. 6 A grain size determination must be made for the final product. The austenitic grain size for R3, R3S, R4, R4S and R5 is to be 6 or finer in accordance with ASTM E112 or equivalent grain size index in accordance to ISO 643. Measurements for circular sections are to be taken at surface, at one-third of the radius and centre for the base material, HAZ and weld.

3. 9. 7 Hardness tests are to be carried out on finished chain. The frequency and locations are to be agreed with ACS. The recorded values are for information only and used as an additional check to verify that the heat treatment process has been stable during the chain production.

3. 9. 8 The mass per unit length of stud link mooring cable is to comply with Table 10. 3. 6: Mass per unit length of stud link chain cable.

Figure 10. 3. 2: Sampling of chain links

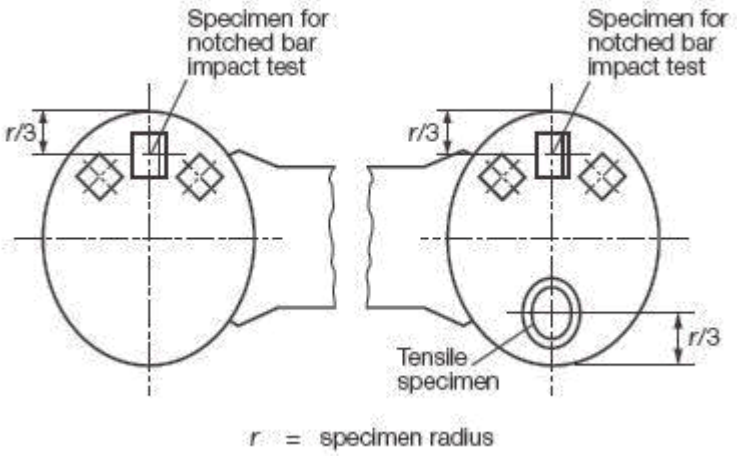


Table 10. 3. 5: Mechanical properties of chain cable materials

Grade	Yield stress N/mm² minimum	Tensile strength N/mm²	Elongation % minimum	Reduction of area % minimum (*See* Note 3)	Charpy V-notch impact tests		
					Test temperature ºC	Average energy J minimum	Average energy flash butt weld J minimum
R3			17	50	0	60	50

	410 (*See* Note 1)	690 minimum (*See* Note 1)			–20 (*See* Note 2)	40	30
R3S	490 (*See* Note 1)	770 minimum (*See* Note 1)	15	50	0	65	53
					–20 (*See* Note 2)	45	33
R4	580 (*See* Note 1)	860 minimum (*See* Note 1)	12	50	–20	50	36
R4S (*See* Note 4)	700 (*See* Note 1)	960 (*See* Note 1)	12	50	–20	56	40
R5 (*See* Note 4)	760 (*See* Note 1)	1000 (*See* Note 1)	12	50	–20	58	42

Note 1. The ratio of yield strength to tensile strength should be 0.92 maximum unless specially approved.

Note 2. Testing may be carried out at either 0°C or –20°C.

Note 3. For cast fittings, the minimum values for reduction of area are to be 40% for Grades R3 and R3S and 35% for Grades R4, R4S and R5.

Note 4. The aim maximum hardness for Grade R4S is to be HB330, and for Grade R5 is to be HB340.

Table 10. 3. 6: Mass per unit length of stud link chain cable

Nominal chain diameter (mm)	Mass per unit length $0.0219d^2$ (kg/m)
50	55
55	66
60	79
65	93
70	107
75	123
80	140
85	158
90	177
95	198
100	219
105	241
110	265
115	290
120	315

125	342
130	370
135	399
140	429
145	460
150	490
155	526
160	561
165	596
170	633
175	671
180	710
185	750
190	791
195	833
200	876
205	920
210	966
222	1079

3. 10 Connecting common links or substitute links

3. 10. 1 Single links to connect lengths of heat treated chain cable or to substitute for test links or defective links without the necessity for re-heat treatment of the whole length of cable are to be made by the chain manufacturer in accordance with an approved procedure. Separate approvals are required for each grade of chain cable and tests are to be made on the maximum size of chain for which approval is sought.

3. 10. 2 Manufacture and heat treatment of the connecting common link is not to affect the strength of the adjoining links. The temperature reached by these links is nowhere to exceed 250°C.

3. 10. 3 The steel bar used is to conform with the specification for the chain and approved by ACS in accordance with Ch 3, 9 Bars for welded chain cables.

3. 10. 4 Details of the method of manufacture, including heat treatment, are to be submitted for approval, together with the results of a series of tests laid down by ACS.

3. 10. 5 All links involved in the approval tests are to be destroyed and are not to be used as part of a chain cable.

3. 10. 6 Every connecting common link included in a chain cable is to be subjected to the proof load appropriate to the grade and size of chain in which it is incorporated as detailed in Table 10. 3. 1: Test loads for mooring chain cables.

3. 10. 7 Every connecting common link is to be inspected in accordance with Ch 10, 3.6 Proof load tests and non-destructive examination 3.6.3.

3. 10. 8 A second identical link is to be made for mechanical tests which are to be in accordance with Ch 10, 3.9 Mechanical tests 3.9.1. This test link is also to be inspected in accordance with Ch 10, 3.10 Connecting common links or substitute links 3.10.7.

3. 10. 9 Each connecting common link is to be stamped with the identification marks listed in Ch 10, 3.11 Identification 3.11.1 plus a unique number for the link. The adjoining links are also to be stamped.

3. 11 Identification

3. 11. 1 Each length of chain is to be permanently marked with the following:

a. ACS and abbreviated name of ACS's issuing the certificate.
b. Certificate number (this may be abbreviated provided it is stated in the certificate).
c. Grade and proof load of chain.

3. 11. 2 The chain is to be marked as follows:

a. at each end (the marking should identify the leading and tail end of each chain),
b. at intervals not exceeding 100 m,
c. on all connecting common links or shackles and the immediately adjacent links,
d. on the first and last common link of each individual heat used in the continuous length.

3. 11. 3 All identification marks are to be made on the studs for stud link chain or, on the outside of the straight part of the link, opposite the flash butt weld for studless chain, and are to be permanent and legible throughout the expected service life of the chain.

3. 12 Documentation

3. 12. 1 A complete Chain Inspection and Testing Report, in booklet form, is to be provided by the chain manufacturer for each continuous chain length, and for each order for chain and fittings. It is to include all dimensional checks, test and inspection reports, non-destructive test reports, process records, photographs (for fittings, example photographs of components positioned in furnaces), as well as any non-conformity, together with corrective action and repair work.

3. 12. 2 All documents, including reports and appendices, are to contain a reference to the relevant certificate number.

3. 12. 3 The chain manufacturer is responsible for storing all the documentation in a safe and retrievable manner for a period of at least 10 years.

3. 13 Certification

3. 13. 1 An ACS certificate is to be issued for each continuous single length of chain, and each type of fitting, *See* Ch 1, 3.1, General.

3. 13. 2 Each test certificate is to include the following particulars:

a. Purchaser’s name and order number.
b. Description and dimensions.
c. Grade of chain cable.
d. Identification mark which will enable the full history of the chain to be traced.
e. Chemical composition.
f. Details of heat treatment.
g. Mechanical test results.
h. Breaking test load.
i. Proof load.
j. The number and locations of all connecting common links and all marked links.

PART

2

CHAPTER **10 Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring**

SECTION **4 Fittings for offshore mooring chain**

4. 1 Scope

4. 1. 1 Provision is made in this Section for five grades, R3, R3S, R4, R4S and R5 of fittings for offshore mooring chain. Fittings include, but are not limited to, shackles, triplates, end shackles, swivels, and swivel shackles.

4. 1. 2 Design of fittings must be to a recognised Standard, such as ISO1704, *See* Figure 10. 2. 3: Enlarged link to Figure 10. 2. 9: Lugless shackle of the Kenter type; alternatively, non-standard designs of fittings are to be subject to special consideration, and may require a fatigue analysis and tests to confirm relevant performance.

4. 2 Manufacture

4. 2. 1 The materials from which the fittings are made are to be manufactured at works approved by ACS, in accordance with the appropriate requirements of Ch 4, 1 General requirements or Ch 5, 1 General requirements, and the requirement in this Section. Alternative arrangements may be agreed provided that full details concerning the manufacturer are submitted to ACS.

4. 2. 2 Steel used for fittings must be manufactured by an approved process, and be killed and fine grain treated.

4. 2. 3 The austenite grain size of steel used for fittings must be 6, or finer, as measured in accordance with ASTM E112 or equivalent grain size index in accordance to ISO 643. Measurements for circular sections are to be taken at one-third of the radius. Measurements for non-circular sections are to be taken at one-quarter of the thickness.

4. 2. 4 Steel used for forgings or castings for grades R4S and R5 must be vacuum degassed.

4. 2. 5 For steel used for forgings or castings for grades R4S and R5 the following tests are to be carried out on each heat:

a. assessment and quantification of the level of non-metallic micro inclusions. These must be acceptable for the final product.
b. macro-etching on a representative sample, in accordance with ASTM E381 or equivalent; this must be free from any injurious segregation or porosity.
c. hardenability tests in accordance with ASTM A255 or equivalent.

The results of these tests are to be supplied by the steel manufacturer, and the results are to be included in the final fitting documentation.

4. 2. 6 Fittings for chain are to be heat treated in accordance with procedures that have been approved by ACS.

4. 3 Testing of fittings

4. 3. 1 For fittings for mooring chain, a batch is defined as fittings from the same steel-making heat that have been heat treated together in the same furnace.

4. 3. 2 All fittings are to be subjected to proof load tests, non-destructive examination, sample break load tests and sample mechanical tests after final heat treatment in the presence of a Surveyor. In addition to the requirements stated in this section, attention must be given to any relevant statutory requirements of the National Authority of the country in which the ship is to be registered.

4. 4 Proof and break load tests

4. 4. 1 All chain cable fittings, including spares, are to be subjected to the proof loads appropriate to the grade and size of cable for which they are intended, *See* Table 10. 3. 1: Test loads for mooring chain cables. Prior to this test, the fittings are to be shot or sand blasted to ensure that their surfaces are free from scale, paint or any other coating which could interfere with any subsequent inspection.

4. 4. 2 The appropriate breaking load as required by Table 10. 3. 1: Test loads for mooring chain cables is to be applied to at least one item out of every batch of up to 25, and this item is to be destroyed and not used as part of an outfit.

4. 4. 3 If the sample fails to withstand the breaking load without fracture, or in the event of failure of any other test, then the entire batch is to be rejected unless the cause of failure has been determined and it can be demonstrated that the condition causing failure is not present in any of the other fittings in the batch. If this can be demonstrated, then two more samples from the same batch may be tested. If either of these samples fails, the batch is to be rejected.

4. 4. 4 For very large fittings where the required breaking load is greater than the capacity of the testing machine and for individually produced fittings or fittings produced in small batches (less than five), proposals for an alternative method of testing will be given special consideration. All proposals for alternative testing methods are to be detailed in writing for approval and the following additional conditions may apply:

a. Alternative testing is described in a written procedure and manufacturing specification.
b. A finite element analysis is provided at the break load and demonstrates that the fitting has a safety margin over and above the break load of the chain.
c. Strain age testing (in accordance with a procedure approved by ACS) is carried out on the material grade produced to the same parameters at the time of qualification.
d. If a fitting is of a large size that will make heat treating in batches unfeasible or has a unique design, strain gauges are to be applied during the proof and break load tests during initial qualification and during production. The strain gauge results from production are to be comparable with the results from qualification.

4. 4. 5 All fittings are to be subjected to close visual examination after proof load testing, particular attention being paid to machined surfaces and highly stressed regions.

4. 4. 6 Each fitting is subject to fluorescent magnetic particle or dye penetrant inspection on all surfaces and ultrasonic testing in accordance with a recognised Standard. As a minimum requirement surfaces must be free from:

- relevant linear indications exceeding 1.6 mm in transverse direction;
- relevant linear indications exceeding 3.2 mm in longitudinal direction;
- relevant non-linear indications exceeding 4.8 mm.

When required by ACS, ultrasonic testing is to be carried out on 100 per cent of cast or forged fittings. The acceptance/rejection criteria established for the design is to be met.

4. 4. 7 All non-destructive examination is to be carried out in accordance with approved procedures, in accordance with Ch 1, 5 Non-destructive examination.

4. 4. 8 Fittings of increased dimensions or higher grade material may be used subject to approval by ACS.

4. 4. 9 Where fittings with increased dimensions, or fittings of a higher material grade are included in an outfit:

a. each item must be successfully tested at the required breaking load for the chain cable for which it is intended; and
b. strain age properties must have been carried out on the material grade produced to the same parameters;
c. strain gauges are to be applied during the break load test in the high stress locations to monitor that the strains stay within allowable limits.

For the purpose of this paragraph, items of increased dimensions are so designed that their breaking strength is not less than 1.4 times the Rule minimum breaking load for the chain cable for which it is intended, and this has been verified by procedure tests.

4. 4. 10 Weld repairs of finished fittings are not permitted.

4. 5 Dimensional inspection

4. 5. 1 At least one fitting from each batch of up to 25 is to be checked dimensionally after proof load testing. The manufacturer is to provide a statement that the dimensions comply with the specified requirements.

4. 5. 2 The following tolerances apply to the unmachined dimensions of all fittings;

a. nominal diameter plus 5 per cent, minus 0 per cent; and
b. other dimensions plus or minus 2.5 per cent.

4. 6 Mechanical tests

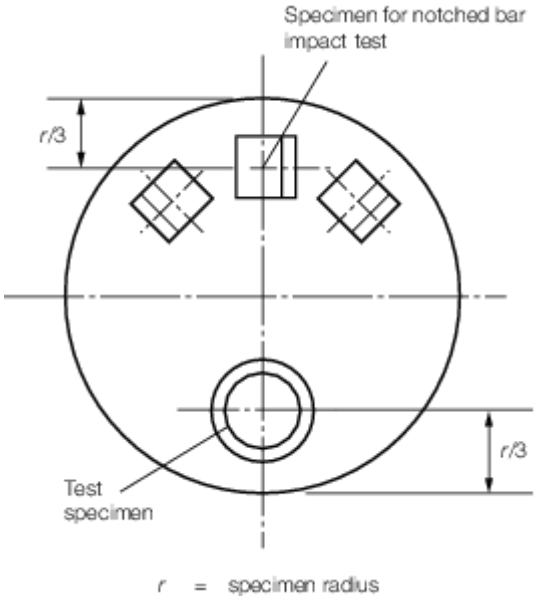
4. 6. 1 All fittings are to be manufactured to a manufacturing specification approved by ACS, and provision is to be made for tensile and impact test specimens. The test samples are to be subjected to heat treatment with the fittings they represent. The mechanical test requirements are the same as those for the relevant grade of chain cable, *See* Table 10. 3. 5: Mechanical properties of chain cable materials.

4. 6. 2 Mechanical tests for fittings are to be taken from full size fittings that have been heat treated with the production batch they represent, and the tests are to be taken after the fitting has been proof load tested. It is not permitted to use separate representative coupons unless approved by ACS in accordance with Ch 10, 4.6 Mechanical tests 4.6.6. At least one fitting out of every batch of up to 25 is to be tested. Hardness tests are to be carried out on finished fittings. The frequency and locations are to be agreed with ACS. The recorded values are for information only and used as an additional check to verify that the heat treatment process has been stable during the fitting production.

4. 6. 3 Forged shackle bodies and forged Kenter shackles are to have a set of three Charpy impact tests and a tensile test taken from the crown of the shackle. For smaller diameter shackles, where the geometry does not allow for the tensile test to be taken from the crown, this may be taken from the straight portion from the locations specified in Figure 10. 4. 1: Sampling of steel bars, forgings and castings, with the Charpy impact test specimens on the outside radius.

4. 6. 4 The mechanical test pieces for cast shackle bodies and cast Kenter shackles can be taken from the straight portion of the fitting from the locations shown in Figure 10. 4. 1: Sampling of steel bars, forgings and castings.

Figure 10. 4. 1: Sampling of steel bars, forgings and castings



4. 6. 5 For fittings with complex geometries the locations of mechanical test pieces taken are to be approved by ACS. For non-circular sections, one-quarter of t (thickness) from the surface is considered appropriate. Rolled plates are to be tested to the standard to which they are produced.

4. 6. 6 Where fittings are individually heat treated or produced in small batches (less than five), alternative testing may be approved; a proposal must be submitted in a written procedure for consideration and the following additional conditions may apply:

a. If separately forged or cast coupons are used, they are to have a cross-section and, for forged coupon, a reduction ratio similar to that of the fittings represented, and are to be heat treated in the same furnace and quenched in the same tank at the same time, as the actual forgings or castings. Thermocouples are to be attached to the coupon and to the fittings.

b. If separately forged or cast coupons are agreed, it is to be verified by a procedure test that coupon properties are representative of fitting properties.

4. 6. 7 Mechanical tests of pins are to be taken as shown in Figure 10. 4. 1: Sampling of steel bars, forgings and castings from the mid- length of a sacrificial pin of the same diameter as the final pin. For oval pins, the diameter taken is to represent the smaller dimension. Mechanical tests may be taken from an extended pin of the same diameter as the final pin that incorporates a test prolongation and a heat treatment buffer prolongation, where equivalence with mid-length test values have been established. The length of the buffer is to be at least equal to 1 pin diameter which is removed after the heat treatment cycle is finished. The test coupon can then be removed from the pin. The buffer and test are to come from the same end of the pin, as shown in Figure 10. 4. 2: Buffer and test piece location for pinsFigure 10. 4. 2: Buffer and test piece location for pins.

Figure 10. 4. 2: Buffer and test piece location for pins

4. 6. 8 Manufacturers intending to supply fittings in the machined condition are to submit detailed drawings for approval by ACS. Machining of Kenter shackles must result in a fillet radius of a minimum of 3 per cent of the nominal diameter.

4. 7 Identification

4. 7. 1 Each fitting is to be permanently marked with the following information:

a. identification number, cast number or other marking which will enable the full history of the casting to be traced;
b. manufacturer's name or trade mark;
c. ACS or Asia Classification Society, the abbreviated name of ACS's and number of certificate;
d. personal stamp of Surveyor responsible for inspection;
e. date of final inspection; and
f. chain grade.
g. 4.7.2 Where small casting/forging fittings are manufactured in large numbers, modified arrangements for identification may be specially agreed with the Surveyor.

4. 8 Documentation

4. 8. 1 A complete Inspection and Testing Report in booklet form is to be provided by the manufacturer for each order. This booklet include all dimensional checks, test and inspection reports, NDE reports, process records and example photographs of components positioned in furnaces, as well as any non-conformity, corrective action and repair work.

4. 8. 2 Each type of fitting must be covered by separate certificates.

4. 8. 3 All documents, including reports and appendices, are to contain a reference to the relevant certificate number.

4. 8. 4 The manufacturer is responsible for storing all the documentation in a safe and retrievable manner for a period of at least 10 years.

4. 9 Certification

4. 9. 1 Certificates are to be issued in accordance with Ch 10, 3.13 Certification.

PART

2

CHAPTER **10 Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring**

SECTION **5 Short link chain cables**

5. 1 Scope

5. 1. 1 This Section gives the requirements for electrically welded steel short link chain cable for marine use but excluding those applications covered by the *Code for Lifting Appliances in a Marine Environment*.

5. 1. 2 Provision is made for grade M(4), as defined in ISO 1834.

5. 2 Manufacture

5. 2. 1 Short link chain cables are to be manufactured at works approved by ACS. A list of approved manufacturers for short link chain cable is published separately by ACS.

5. 2. 2 The chain is to be supplied in either the normalised or quenched and tempered condition. Heat treatment is to be carried out prior to proof and breaking load testing.

5. 2. 3 The chain may be galvanised using a hot dipping process provided that this is carried out prior to proof and breaking load testing. If galvanised, it is recommended that the thickness of the zinc coating be not less than 70 microns.

5. 2. 4 Unless otherwise agreed, the finished chain is to be free from coatings other than zinc.

5. 3 Bar material

5. 3. 1 Bars for the manufacture of short link chain cable are to be made and tested in accordance with the appropriate requirements of Ch 3, 1 General requirements and to the requirements of an International or acceptable National Standard.

5. 3. 2 The bars are to be made at a works approved by ACS.

5. 3. 3 The steel is to be fully killed and fine grain treated.

5. 3. 4 The steel is to have mechanical properties which will allow the chain to meet the mechanical test requirements of Ch 10, 5.4 Testing and inspection of chain cables 5.4.7 and Table 10. 5. 1: Mechanical test requirements for short link chain cables.

5. 4 Testing and inspection of chain cables

5. 4. 1 All chain cable of 12.5 mm diameter and above, and all steering chains irrespective of diameter, are to be tested in the presence of a Surveyor at a proving establishment recognised by ACS. A list of recognised proving establishments is published by ACS. In addition to the requirements stated in this Chapter, attention is to be given to any relevant statutory requirements of the National Authority of the country in which the ship or other marine structure is to be registered.

Table 10. 5. 1: Mechanical test requirements for short link chain cables

Chain diameter mm	Grade M(4)	
	Proof load kN	Breaking load minimum kN
5	7.9	15.8
6.3	12.5	25
7.1	15.9	31.8
8	20.2	40.4
9	25.5	51
10	29.5	63
11.2	31.5	79
12.5	49.1	98.2
14	63	126
16	81	162
18	102	204
20	126	252
22.4	158	316
25	197	394
28	247	494
32	322	644
36	408	816
40	503	1006
45	637	1274

5. 4. 2 For chain of diameter less than 12.5 mm, other than steering chains, the manufacturer's tests will be acceptable.

5. 4. 3 After completion of all manufacturing processes, including heat treatment and galvanising, the whole of the chain is to be subjected to the appropriate proof load specified in Table 10. 5. 1: Mechanical test requirements for short link chain cables.

5. 4. 4 The whole of the chain is to be inspected after the proof load test and is to be free from significant defects.

5. 4. 5 At least one sample, consisting of seven or more links, is to be selected by the Surveyor from each 200 m or less of chain for breaking load tests. Two additional links may be required for engagement in the jaws of the testing machine. These extra links are not to be taken into account in determining the total elongation, *See* Ch 10, 5.4 Testing and inspection of chain cables 5.4.7.

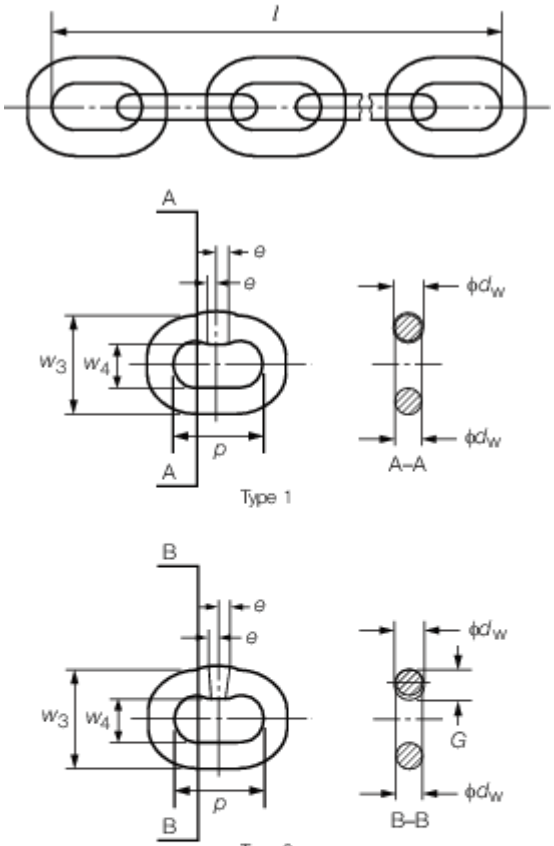
5. 4. 6 The breaking load is to comply with the appropriate requirements of Table 10. 5. 1: Mechanical test requirements for short link chain cables.

5. 4. 7 The total elongation of the breaking load sample at fracture, expressed as a percentage of the original inside length of the sample after proof loading, is to be not less than 20 per cent.

5. 5 Dimensions and tolerances

5. 5. 1 The form and proportions of links are to be in accordance with Figure 10. 5. 1: Form and proportions of links.

Figure 10. 5. 1: Form and proportions of links



l = multiple pitch length
p = pitch (internal link length)
d_n = measured diameter of the material, except at the weld
d_w = measured diameter of the material at the weld (Type 1) or weld dimension perpendicular to the plane of the link (Type 2)
G = dimension in other planes as per individual chain specification (Type 2)
e = length affected by welding, on either side of the centre link
w_1 = internal link width away from the weld
w_2 = external link width away from the weld
w_3 = external link width over the weld
w_4 = internal link width at the weld

5. 5. 2 Manufacturing tolerances are to be within the following limits:

Nominal diameter, d_n	± 5%
Pitch of chain, p_1	± 3%
Length measured over 11 links l	± 2%
Inside width, w_1	1.35 d_n minimum

Outside width, w	3.6 d_n maximum

The tolerances are to apply after galvanising. All measurements are to be taken after proof testing.

5. 6 Identification

5. 6. 1 All lengths of cable are to be stamped with the following identification marks:

a. Inspector's mark and date.
b. Reference mark or number of certificate.
c. Manufacturer's mark or name.
d. Chain cable quality mark, M, is to be stamped on at least each twentieth link or at intervals of one metre, whichever is the lesser distance.

5. 6. 2 Where the inspection is performed under ACS`s supervision, the inspector's mark and date are to be replaced by ACS and the abbreviated name of ACS's issuing the certificate.

5. 7 Certification

5. 7. 1 The manufacturer is to supply the Surveyor with a certificate stating compliance with an appropriate ISO standard, and also, in the event of the requirements of Ch 10, 5.4, Testing and inspection of chain cables being undertaken other than in the presence of the Surveyor, stating that the test and inspection requirements have been complied with at a recognised proving establishment.

5. 7. 2 Each test certificate is to include the following particulars:

a. the quality and description of chain,
b. identification mark,
c. nominal size of chain,
d. proof load,
e. breaking load,
f. total elongation at fracture,
g. where appropriate, the name of the proving establishment.

PART

2

CHAPTER 10 Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring

SECTION 6 Steel wire ropes

6. 1 Scope

6. 1. 1 Provision is made in this Section for the requirements for the manufacture, testing and certification of steel wire ropes intended to be used for general marine purposes, as well as permanent anchoring, mooring and marine lifting applications.

6. 2 General requirements

6. 2. 1 For general marine purposes, such as stream wires, towlines and ship mooring lines, the construction is to be in accordance with Table 10. 6. 1: Recommended rope construction. The construction, diameter and strength of steel wire ropes for permanent offshore applications, such as mooring, anchoring and lifting, are covered by other ACS Rules. Alternative applications of wire ropes may be accepted, subject to special consideration.

6. 2. 2 The manufacturer's plant and method of production are to be approved by ACS. A list of approved manufacturers of steel wire ropes is published annually in the *List of Approved Manufacturers of Materials*.

Table 10. 6. 1: Recommended rope construction

Purpose	Construction of rope			Construction of strands
	Strands	Wires	Core	
Stream wires, towlines and mooring lines	6	24	Fibre	15 over 9 over fibre core
	6	37	Fibre	18 over 12 over 6 over 1
	6	26	Fibre	10 over (5 + 5) over 5 over 1
	6	31	Fibre	12 over (6 + 6) over 6 over 1
	6	36	Fibre	14 over (7 + 7) over 7 over 1
	6	41	Fibre	16 over (8 + 8) over 8 over 1
	6	30	Fibre	18 over 12 over fibre core
Towlines and mooring lines used in association with mooring winches	6	31	7 x 7 wire rope	12 over (6 + 6) over 6 over 1
	6	36	7 x 7 wire rope	14 over (7 + 7) over 7 over 1
	6	41	7 x 7 wire rope	16 over (8 + 8) over 8 over 1

6. 2. 3 For shaped wire, for example, for large diameter ropes for permanent mooring, where there are no established Standards, the manufacturer is to provide evidence by way of test reports that specifications have been developed and agreed with the purchaser and ACS for the purposes intended.

6. 3 Steel wire for ropes

6. 3. 1 Steel wire is to be of homogeneous quality, uniform strength and free of defects likely to impair the manufacture and performance of the rope.

6. 3. 2 For all ropes, the specified minimum tensile strength of the wire is to be 1420, 1570, 1770 or 1960 N/mm^2. The specified minimum tensile strength of the wire is the designated grade for the rope, unless otherwise defined by the purchaser's specification. The actual tensile strength of the wire is not to exceed 120 per cent of the specified minimum tensile strength.

6. 3. 3 For new rope construction, the manufacturer is to carry out prototype testing suitable for the application of the rope and this is to include tests on wire used for the construction.

6. 3. 4 Tensile and torsion tests, coating, and adhesion (wrap) tests are to be carried out on wire used for the manufacture of rope.

6. 3. 5 At least 10 per cent of the spools used for the manufacture of the strand are to be tested. The manufacturer is to demonstrate that tests have been carried out on at least one wire intended for each of the outer and inner strands, and for each diameter and grade used.

6. 3. 6 The heat number, wire diameter and strength of wire used for a particular construction are to be recorded by the manufacturer.

6. 3. 7 Torsion tests are to be carried out on the wire by causing one or both of the securing vices to be revolved until fracture occurs (a tensile load not exceeding two per cent of the breaking load of the wire may be applied to keep the wire stretched).

6. 3. 8 The uncoated wire is to withstand, without fracture, the number of complete twists given for Grades 1 or 3 in Table 10. 6. 2: Torsion test.

6. 3. 9 The galvanised wire is to withstand, without fracture, the number of complete twists given in the specification, as agreed with the purchaser and ACS. In the absence of a suitable specification, the results are to comply with Table 10. 6. 2: Torsion test.

6. 3. 10 Hot dipped galvanised steel wire is to be used for the manufacture of ropes for marine applications. Depending upon the application, the coating may comply with any of the grades in Table 10. 6. 3: Zinc coating. Grades 1 and 2 are heavy coatings. Grade 3 is the minimum coating weight where the galvanising is carried out prior to final wire drawing. Uncoated wire may be considered for approved applications.

Table 10. 6. 2: Torsion test

Diameter coated wire mm	Minimum number of twists					
	Grade 2		Grade 1 or 3			
	Minimum strength N/mm^2		Minimum strength N/mm^2			
	1570	1770	1420	1570	1770	1960
<1.3	19	18	29	26	23	23
≥1.3 <2.3	18	17	26	24	21	21
≥2.3 <3.0	16	14	24	22	—	19

≥3.0 <4.0	12	10	20	18	—	17
≥4.0 <4.6	—	—	18	16	—	—
≥4.6 <5.0	—	—	16	14	—	—
≥5.0 <6.0	—	—	14	11	—	—

Note The minimum test length is 100*d* or 300 mm, where *d* is the wire diameter.

Table 10. 6. 3: Zinc coating

Diameter of coated wire mm	Zinc coating, minimum g/m^2		
	Grade 1	Grade 2	Grade 3
≥0.20<0.25	—	30	20
≥0.25<0.33	—	45	30
≥0.33<0.40	—	60	30
≥0.40<0.50	60	75	40
≥0.50<0.60	70	90	50
≥0.60<0.80	85	110	60
≥0.80<1.00	95	130	70
≥1.00<1.20	110	150	80
≥1.20<1.50	120	165	90
≥1.50<1.90	130	180	100
≥1.90<2.50	—	205	110
≥2.50<3.20	—	230	125
≥3.20<4.00	—	250	135

6. 3. 11 The mass per unit area of the zinc coating is to be determined in accordance with a recognised National or International Standard.

6. 3. 12 Zinc coating tests are to be carried out for each designated grade of wire. The manufacturer is to demonstrate that the coatings are continuous and uniform and suitable for the intended purpose.

6. 3. 13 Unless otherwise specified by the purchaser, zinc coating tests are to be carried out on the wire prior to stranding.

6. 3. 14 The adhesion of the coating is to be tested by wrapping the wire round a cylindrical mandrel for 10 complete turns. The ratio between the diameter of the mandrel and that of the wire is to be as in Table 10. 6. 4: Wrap test for adhesion of coating. After wrapping on the appropriate mandrel, the zinc coating is to have neither flaked nor cracked to such an extent that any zinc can be removed by rubbing with a cloth.

Table 10. 6. 4: Wrap test for adhesion of coating

Coating	Diameter of coated wire mm	Maximum ratio of mandrel to wire diameter
Grade 1 and 2	<1.5	4
	≥1.5	6
Grade 3	<1.5	2
	≥1.5	3

6. 4 Tests on completed ropes

6. 4. 1 Every length of wire rope is to be subjected to a breaking strength test.

6. 4. 2 A sample of sufficient length is to be provided for the breaking load test. The rope ends are to be enclosed in a suitable socket. Testing is to be carried out in accordance with a recognised National or International Standard.

6. 4. 3 The rope may be subject to cyclic loading for bedding purposes prior to testing. The rope is to be tested at a suitable strain rate in accordance with a recognised National or International Standard.

6. 4. 4 The load is to be applied until one wire break is witnessed or 130 per cent of the minimum breaking load is recorded. The maximum recorded load is to be reported by the manufacturer.

6. 4. 5 Tests in which a breakage occurs adjacent to and as a result of damage from the grips are to be rejected, if the applied load is less than the specified minimum requirement. The rope is to be retested to withstand the agreed minimum breaking load.

6. 4. 6 With the exception of offshore mooring ropes, consideration may be given to determining the breaking load by summation or aggregating actual test results on individual wires, if facilities are not available for undertaking a breaking test on a production basis. A suitable spin factor or lay-up deduction allowance in accordance with a recognised National or International Standard for the applicable rope diameter, designated grade and construction is to be applied.

6. 4. 7 Where spin factors or lay-up deduction allowances are proposed by the manufacturer, a report on suitable cyclic load testing of prototype ropes of the same construction, strength and diameter is to be approved by ACS. In addition, the manufacturer is to show that a satisfactory breaking load test has been carried out in the previous two years, and witnessed by ACS for the same rope construction, diameter and designated grade.

6. 4. 8 ACS may give special consideration to spin factors or lay deductions based on data extrapolated from smaller diameter ropes of the same construction, provided that these ropes have been tested in accordance with Ch 10, 6.4 Tests on completed ropes 6.4.7.

6. 4. 9 All data arising from smaller diameter ropes for the extrapolation in Ch 10, 6.4 Tests on completed ropes 6.4.8 are to have been derived from tests carried out within two years of the manufacture of the larger diameter rope.

6. 4. 10 The finished rope is to have no more than one wire connecting weld in any length of 18d, where d is the diameter of the rope.

6. 5 Dimensional inspection

6. 5. 1 The dimensions and discard criteria are to comply with a recognised National or International Standard.

6. 6 Identification

6. 6. 1 All completed ropes are to be identified with attached labels detailing the rope type, diameter and length.

6. 7 Certification

6. 7. 1 Unless otherwise requested by the purchaser, a manufacturer's certificate, in accordance with Ch 1, 3.1 General 3.1.3.c, is to be issued.

- Each test certificate is to contain the following particulars:
- Purchaser's name and order number.
- Details of the rope construction.
- Core material.
- Grade of zinc coating.
- Mechanical test results.
- Adhesion test results.
- Dimensions.
- Method of breaking load testing.
- Breaking load.

PART

2

CHAPTER **10 Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring**

SECTION **7 Fibre ropes**

7. 1 Manufacture

7. 1. 1 Fibre ropes intended as mooring lines may be made of coir, hemp, manila or sisal, or may be composed of synthetic (man-made) fibres. They may be three-strand (hawser laid), four-strand (shroud laid) or nine-strand (cable laid), but other constructions will be specially considered.

7. 1. 2 Each length of rope is to be manufactured from suitable material of good and consistent quality. Rope materials should, in general, comply with a recognised National Standard.

7. 1. 3 Synthetic fibre ropes are to be suitable for the purpose intended and should comply with a recognised standard.

7. 1. 4 Weighting and loading matter is not to be added, and any lubricant is to be kept to a minimum. Any rot-proofing or water repellancy treatment is not to be deleterious to the fibre nor is it to add to the weight or reduce the strength of the rope.

7. 2 Tests of completed ropes

7. 2. 1 The breaking load is to be determined by testing to destruction a sample cut from the completed rope.

7. 2. 2 The minimum test length and the initial test load are to be as given in Table 10. 7. 1: Breaking load test. After application of the initial load, the diameter and evenness of lay up of the sample are to be checked. The sample is then to be uniformly strained at the rate given in Table 10. 7. 1: Breaking load test until it breaks.

Table 10. 7. 1: Breaking load test

Material	Test length mm minimum	Initial load % (*See* Note)	Rate of straining mm/min
Natural fibre	1800	2	150 ± 50
Synthetic fibre	900	1	100 max.
Note Percentage of specified minimum breaking load.			

7. 2. 3 The actual breaking load is to be not less than that given in an appropriate National Standard.

7. 2. 4 If the sample is held by grips and the break occurs within 150 mm of the grips, the test may be repeated, but not more than two tests may be made on any one coil.

7. 2. 5 Where difficulty is experienced in testing a sample of a completed synthetic fibre rope, ACS will consider alternative methods of testing.

7. 3 Identification

7. 3. 1 Each coil of rope is to be identified with an attached label detailing the material, construction, diameter and length.

7. 4 Certification

7. 4. 1 A manufacturer's certificate, in accordance with Ch 1, 3.1 General 3.1.3.c, is to be issued. The certificate is to be validated by the manufacturer's representative, who is to be independent of the production process and ACS.

7. 4. 2 Each test certificate is to include the following particulars:

- Manufacturer's name.
- Purchaser's name and order number.
- Rope type.
- Dimensions.
- Test length.
- Rate of straining.
- Breaking load.

PART

2

CHAPTER **11 Approval of Welding Consumables**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**600**
	1. 1	Scope	600
	1. 2	Grading	600
	1. 3	Manufacture	603
	1. 4	Approval procedures	603
	1. 5	Annual inspection and tests	603
	1. 6	Changes in grading	603
	1. 7	Manufacturers' Quality Assurance Systems	604
	1. 8	Certification	604
SECTION 2	**Mechanical testing procedures**		**605**
	2. 1	Dimensions of test specimens	605
	2. 2	Testing procedures	605
	2. 3	Re-testing procedures	605
SECTION 3	**Electrodes for manual and gravity welding**		**606**
	3. 1	Grading	606
	3. 2	Deposited metal test assemblies	607
	3. 3	Butt weld test assemblies	611
	3. 4	Hydrogen test	615
	3. 5	Fillet weld test assemblies	616
	3. 6	Electrodes designed for deep penetration welding	617
	3. 7	Deep penetration butt weld test assemblies	617
	3. 8	Deep penetration fillet weld test assemblies	619
	3. 9	Electrodes designed for gravity or contact welding	619
	3. 10	Annual tests	620
SECTION 4	**Wire-flux combinations for submerged-arc automatic welding**		**621**
	4. 1	General	621

4. 2 Approval tests for multi-run technique 623
4. 3 Deposited metal test assemblies (multi-run technique)..... 623
4. 4 Butt weld test assemblies (multi-run technique)..... 626
4. 5 Approval tests for two-run technique 630
4. 6 Butt weld test assemblies (two-run technique)..... 630
4. 7 Annual tests 632
SECTION 5 Wires and wire-gas combinations for manual, semi-automatic and automatic welding..... 634
5. 1 General 634
5. 2 Approval tests for manual and semi-automatic multi-run welding 636
5. 3 Approval tests for multi-run automatic welding 637
5. 4 Approval tests for two-run automatic welding 637
5. 5 Annual tests 638
SECTION 6 Consumables for use in electro-slag and electro-gas welding..... 640
6. 1 General 640
6. 2 Butt weld test assemblies 640
6. 3 Annual tests 643
SECTION 7 Consumables for use in one-side welding with temporary backing materials 645
7. 1 General 645
7. 2 Approval tests for manual (m), semi-automatic (S) and automatic multi-run (M) techniques 647
7. 3 Approval tests for high heat input automatic (A) techniques 648
7. 4 Annual tests 649
SECTION 8 Consumables for welding austenitic and duplex stainless steels..... 651
8. 1 General 651
8. 2 Deposited metal test assemblies 652
8. 3 Butt weld test assemblies 652
8. 4 Fillet weld test assemblies..... 652
8. 5 Annual tests 654
SECTION 9 Consumables for welding aluminium alloys 655
9. 1 General 655
9. 2 Approval tests for manual, semi-automatic and automatic multi-run techniques..... 657
9. 3 Deposited metal test assembly..... 657
9. 4 Butt weld test assemblies 658
9. 5 Fillet weld test assembly 661
9. 6 Approval tests for two-run technique 661

9. 7 Butt weld test assemblies (two-run technique)..... 661
9. 8 Annual tests 662

PART

2

CHAPTER **11 Approval of Welding Consumables**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 11. 1. 1: Welding consumable grades appropriate to structural and low temperature service steel grades 600

Table 11. 3. 1: Minimum low hydrogen approval requirements for manual and gravity electrodes 606

Table 11. 3. 2: Requirements for deposited metal tests (covered electrodes) 608

Table 11. 3. 3: Requirements for butt weld tests (covered electrodes) 613

Table 11. 3. 4: Permitted methods for obtaining low hydrogen grading 615

Table 11. 3. 5: Temperature and minimum holding time 616

Table 11. 4. 1: Minimum low hydrogen approval requirements for wire-flux combinations 621

Table 11. 4. 2: Requirements for deposited metal tests (wire-flux combinations) 624

Table 11. 4. 3: Requirements for butt weld tests (wire-flux combinations) 628

Table 11. 4. 4: Butt weld assembly preparation 630

Table 11. 5. 1: Minimum low hydrogen approval requirements for wires and wire-gas combinations .. 635

Table 11. 7. 1: Minimum low hydrogen approval requirements for one-side welding with combinations including temporary backing material 646

Table 11. 8. 1: Requirements for deposited metal tests (manual, semi-automatic and automatic multi-run techniques) 653

Table 11. 8. 2: Requirements for butt weld tests (all techniques) 653

Table 11. 9. 1: Requirements for butt weld tests 655

Table 11. 9. 2: Shielding gas compositions 656

PART

2

CHAPTER **11 Approval of Welding Consumables**

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 11. 3. 1: Deposited metal test assembly 608
Figure 11. 3. 2: Butt weld test assembly 611
Figure 11. 3. 3: Butt weld test assembly position of impact test specimens 613
Figure 11. 3. 4: Fillet weld test assembly 616
Figure 11. 3. 5: Hardness tests for fillet weld test assembly 617
Figure 11. 3. 6: Deep penetration butt weld test assembly 618
Figure 11. 3. 7: Deep penetration fillet weld test assembly 619
Figure 11. 4. 1: Deposited metal test assembly 623
Figure 11. 4. 2: Butt weld test assembly (multi-run technique) 627
Figure 11. 4. 3: Butt weld test assembly (two-run technique) 631
Figure 11. 4. 4: Butt weld test assembly (two-run technique): position of impact test specimens 632
Figure 11. 5. 1: Normal edge preparation for two-run butt weld test assemblies specimens 638
Figure 11. 6. 1: Butt weld test assembly for electro-slag or electro-gas welding 642
Figure 11. 6. 2: Position of Charpy V-notch impact test specimens 643
Figure 11. 7. 1: Butt weld test assembly and specimens for all techniques 647
Figure 11. 7. 2: Position of Charpy V-notch impact tests for one-side automatic welding 648
Figure 11. 9. 1: Deposited metal test assembly 657
Figure 11. 9. 2: Butt weld test assembly (positional, multi-run technique) 659
Figure 11. 9. 3: Butt weld test assembly (downhand, multi-run technique) 660
Figure 11. 9. 4: Butt weld test assembly (two-run technique) 662

PART

2

CHAPTER **11 Approval of Welding Consumables**

SECTION **1 General**

1. 1 Scope

1. 1. 1 Provision is made in this Chapter for the approval by Asia Classification Society (hereinafter referred to as 'ACS') of electrodes, wires, fluxes and other consumables intended for use in the welding of the following types of materials:

a. Steel of various grades as represented by Grade A through to Grade EH96, *See* Ch 11, 3 Electrodes for manual and gravity welding to Ch 11, 7 Consumables for use in one-side welding with temporary backing materials.

b. A wide range of low-temperature service steels, *See* Ch 11, 3 Electrodes for manual and gravity welding to Ch 11, 7 Consumables for use in one-side welding with temporary backing materials.

c. Stainless steels including nitrogen strengthened grades and some of the duplex varieties, *See* Ch 11, 8 Consumables for welding austenitic and duplex stainless steels.

d. Aluminium alloys, *See* Ch 11, 9 Consumables for welding aluminium alloys.

1. 1. 2 For this purpose, welding, consumables are categorised and subject to the special requirements of different Sections of this Chapter.

a. Covered electrodes for manual welding and gravity welding.

b. Combinations of wire and flux for automatic submerged-arc welding.

c. Combinations of wire and gas for gas metal-arc welding and wires for self-shielding welding.

d. Combinations for electro-slag and electro-gas welding.

e. Combinations with temporary backing materials for one-side welding.

f. Consumables for welding austenitic and duplex stainless steels.

g. Combinations for welding aluminium.

1. 2 Grading

1. 2. 1 Consumables for welding structural steels are graded into twelve strength levels, and each of these is further subdivided into several levels in respect of notch toughness. The five basic levels of toughness are indicated by a number (1 to 5). Normal tensile strength is indicated by `N'. Higher tensile strength is indicated by `Y', and if the yield strength is higher than 375 N/mm^2 the Y is followed by a number (40 to 96), as shown in Table 11. 1. 1: Welding consumable grades appropriate to structural and low temperature service steel grades.

Table 11. 1. 1: Welding consumable grades appropriate to structural and low temperature service steel grades

Consumables grade	Suitable for steel grades (*See* Notes)

1. Ship Grade Steels (Ch 3, 2 Normal strength steels for ship and other structural applications and Ch 3, 3 Higher strength steels for ship and other structural applications)				
1N	A	***AH27S***	—	—
2N	B,D	***DH27S***	—	—
3N	E	***EH27S***	—	—
1Y	A	***AH27S***	***AH32***	***AH36***
2Y	B,D	***DH27S***	***DH32***	***DH36***
3Y	E	***EH27S***	***EH32***	***EH36***
4Y	—	***FH27S***	***FH32***	***FH36***
2Y40	***AH32***	***AH36***	***AH40***	—
2Y40	***DH32***	***DH36***	***DH40***	—
3Y40	***EH32***	***EH36***	***EH40***	—
4Y40	***FH32***	***FH36***	***FH40***	—
5Y40	***FH32***	***FH36***	***FH40***	—
3Y47	—	—	***EH40***	***EH47***
2. High Strength Steels (Ch 3, 10 High strength steels for welded structures)*See* Note 3				
3Y42	***AH36***	***AH40***	AH42	—
3Y42	***DH36***	***DH40***	DH42	—
4Y42	***EH36***	***EH40***	EH42	—
5Y42	***FH36***	***FH40***	FH42	—
3Y46	***AH40***	AH42	AH46	—
3Y46	***DH40***	DH42	DH46	—
4Y46	***EH40***	EH42	EH46	—
5Y46	***FH40***	FH42	FH46	—
3Y50	AH42	AH46	AH50	
3Y50	DH42	DH46	DH50	—
4Y50	EH42	EH46	EH50	—
5Y50	FH42	FH46	FH50	—
3Y55	AH50	AH55	—	—
3Y55	DH50	DH55	—	—
4Y55	EH50	EH55	—	—
5Y55	FH50	FH55	—	—

3Y62	AH55	AH62	—	—
3Y62	DH55	DH62	—	—
4Y62	EH55	EH62	—	—
5Y62	FH55	FH62	—	—
3Y69	AH62	AH69	—	—
3Y69	DH62	DH69	—	—
4Y69	EH62	EH69	—	—
5Y69	FH62	FH69	—	—
3Y89	AH89	—	—	—
3Y89	DH89	—	—	—
4Y89	EH89	—	—	—
3Y96	AH89	AH96	—	—
3Y96	DH89	DH96	—	—
4Y96	EH89	EH96	—	—
3. Ferritic Low Temperature Service Steels (Ch 3, 6 Carbon–manganese and nickel alloy steels for low temperature service)				
$1^1/_2$Ni	$1^1/_2$Ni	—	—	—
$2^1/_4$Ni	$2^1/_4$Ni	—	—	—
$3^1/_2$Ni	$3^1/_2$Ni	—	—	—
5 Ni	5 Ni	—	—	—
9 Ni	9 Ni	—	—	—

Note *1*. Steel grades shown in bold italic type include the equivalent (LT-xxxx) low temperature service grades referenced in Ch 3, 6 Carbon–manganese and nickel alloy steels for low temperature service.

Note *2*. The Table applies to the multi-run welding techniques (i.e. m, S, M).

Note *3*. Approval of consumables intended for welding high strength steels in Ch 3, 10 High strength steels for welded structures also includes the standard ship steel grades as shown in bold italic type and equivalent low temperature service steel grades referenced in Ch 3, 6 Carbon–manganese and nickel alloy steels for low temperature service.

1. 2. 2 In addition to the grade, consumables are also allocated a suffix indicating the welding technique used. These are defined in the context of the following Sections of this Chapter.

1. 2. 3 Consumables for structural and low temperature service steels may be controlled low hydrogen and approved as such. Grade marking H15, H10 or H5 will be applied, as appropriate.

1. 2. 4 For joining higher strength steels, approval granted for 1Y consumables will be limited to maximum material thickness of 25 mm.

1. 2. 5 Test assemblies are not to be subjected to any heat treatment, except in those higher strength grades where it is considered necessary to use the welded joint in the stress relieved (tempered) condition. In those cases, the code 'sr' will be added to the approval grade.

1. 2. 6 Further details of grading are given in subsequent Sections of this Chapter.

1. 3 Manufacture

1. 3. 1 The manufacturer's plant and method of production of welding consumables are to be such as to ensure reasonable uniformity in manufacture.

1. 4 Approval procedures

1. 4. 1 Welding consumables will be approved subject to a satisfactory inspection of the works by the Surveyor for compliance with the test requirements detailed in subsequent Sections in this Chapter.

1. 4. 2 The test assemblies are to be prepared under the supervision of the Surveyor, and using samples selected by him. All tests are to be carried out in his presence.

1. 4. 3 For Charpy V-notch tests, a set of three test specimens is to be prepared and the average energy value is to comply with the requirements of subsequent Sections in this Chapter. One individual value may be less than the required average value provided that it is not less than 70 per cent of this value.

1. 4. 4 Where chemical analysis is required for approval, the results of the analysis are not to exceed the limit values specified in the standards or by the manufacturer, the narrower tolerances being applicable in each case.

1. 4. 5 ACS may require, in any particular case, such additional tests or requirements as may be necessary.

1. 4. 6 A *List of Approved Welding Consumables* is published by ACS.

1. 4. 7 ACS is to be notified of any alteration proposed to be made in the process of manufacture subsequent to approval. Sufficient detail is to be provided to determine the need for further testing to maintain the approval.Consideration will be given to alternative procedures for approval in the case of manufacturers producing consumables under the control of another manufacturer or plant already having approval of one or more products.

1. 4. 8 Consideration will be given to alternative procedures for approval in the case of manufacturers producing consumables under the control of another manufacturer or plant already having approval of one or more products.

1. 5 Annual inspection and tests

1. 5. 1 All establishments where approved welding consumables are manufactured, and the associated quality control procedures, are to be subjected to annual inspection. On these occasions, samples of the approved consumables are to be selected by the Surveyor and subjected to the tests detailed in subsequent Sections in this Chapter. These are to be completed and reported before the end of the one year period beginning at the initial approval date, and repeated annually so as to provide at least an average of one annual test per year.

1. 6 Changes in grading

1. 6. 1 Changes in grading of welding consumables will be considered only at the manufacturer's request, preferably at the time of annual testing. For upgrading in connection with impact properties, and uprating in connection with tensile properties, tests from butt weld assemblies will be required in addition to the normal annual approval tests. For upgrading in connection with hydrogen testing, specific tests will be required in accordance with ISO 3690. Downgrading and downrating may be imposed by ACS where tests and re-tests fail to meet the requirements of this Chapter.

1. 7 Manufacturers' Quality Assurance Systems

1. 7. 1 As an alternative to Ch 11, 1.5 Annual inspection and tests, manufacturers may *See*k maintenance of approval based on acceptance by ACS of their `in house` quality assurance system, and by regular audit of that system carried out in accordance with procedures approved by ACS.

1. 8 Certification

1. 8. 1 Each carton or package of approved consumables is to contain a certificate from the manufacturer, generally in accordance with the following: 'The <*insert name of manufacturer*> company certifies that the composition and quality of these consumables conform with those of the consumables used in making the test pieces submitted to and approved by the approval bodies nominated on the label of this package.'

PART

2

CHAPTER 11 Approval of Welding Consumables

SECTION 2 Mechanical testing procedures

2. 1 Dimensions of test specimens

2. 1. 1 Dimensions of test pieces for deposited metal tensile tests, butt weld tensile tests, bend tests and Charpy V-notch impact test are to machined to the dimensions and tolerances detailed in Ch 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials.

2. 2 Testing procedures

2. 2. 1 The procedures used for all tensile and impact tests are to comply with the requirements of Ch 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials.

2. 2. 2 Butt weld bend test specimens are to be tested at ambient temperature and are to be bent through an angle of 120° over a former having a diameter which relates to the thickness of the test specimen as detailed in subsequent Sections. For each pair of bend test specimens, one specimen is to be tested with the face of the weld in tension and the other with the root of the weld in tension.

2. 2. 3 Macro examinations are to be carried out on polished and etched specimens at a maximum magnification not exceeding x10. The examination is to ensure complete fusion, inter-run penetration and freedom of defects.

2. 3 Re-testing procedures

2. 3. 1 Re-testing procedures are to comply with Ch 2, 1.4, Re-testing procedures.

PART

2

CHAPTER **11 Approval of Welding Consumables**

SECTION **3 Electrodes for manual and gravity welding**

3. 1 Grading

3. 1. 1 Dependent on the results of the mechanical and other tests, approval will be allocated as one of the grades from Table 11. 1. 1: Welding consumable grades appropriate to structural and low temperature service steel grades.

3. 1. 2 Approval of an electrode will be given in conjunction with a welding technique indicated by a suffix `m' for manual welding, `G' for gravity or contact electrode and `p' for deep penetration electrode.

3. 1. 3 If the electrodes are in compliance with the requirements of the hydrogen test given in Ch 11, 3.4 Hydrogen test, a suffix `H15' or `H10' or `H5' will be added to the grade mark. Table 11. 3. 1: Minimum low hydrogen approval requirements for manual and gravity electrodes shows the mandatory levels of low hydrogen approval for the various approval grades.

Table 11. 3. 1: Minimum low hydrogen approval requirements for manual and gravity electrodes

Approval grades	Low hydrogen grade required
1 (1N), 2 (2N), 3 (3N)	NR
2Y, 3Y, 4Y	H15 (*See* Note 2)
2Y40 to 5Y40	H15
3Y47	H10
3Y42 to 5Y42	H10
3Y46 to 5Y46	H10
3Y50 to 5Y50	H10
3Y55 to 5Y55	H5
3Y62 to 5Y62	H5
3Y69 to 5Y69	H5
3Y89 to 4Y89	H5
3Y96 to 4Y96	H5
$1\frac{1}{2}$ Ni	H15

$2\frac{1}{4}$ Ni	H15
$3\frac{1}{2}$ Ni	H15
5 Ni	NR (*See* Note 3)
9 Ni	NR (*See* Note 3)

Note 1. NR – Not required. Approval may be obtained when requested.

Note 2. Optional in this case. If low hydrogen approval is not obtained, there is a limitation on the carbon equivalent of the steel which is permitted to be welded.

Note 3. Assumes use of an austenitic, non-transformable, filler material.

3. 1. 4 For each strength level, electrodes which have satisfied the requirements for a higher toughness grade are considered as complying with the requirements for a lower grade.

3. 1. 5 Electrodes approved for normal and higher strength levels up to and including 'Y' are also considered suitable for welding steels in the three strength levels below that for which they have been approved.

3. 1. 6 Electrodes approved for strength levels Y40 to Y50, but excluding Y47 are also considered suitable for welding steels in two strength levels below that for which they have been approved.

3. 1. 7 Electrodes approved for strength levels Y47, Y55 and above are also considered suitable for welding steels in only one strength level below that for which they have been approved.

3. 1. 8 Electrodes approved for strength level Y89 are considered suitable for this strength level only.

3. 1. 9 Electrodes approved for strength level Y96 are also considered suitable for welding steels in one strength level below that for which they have been approved.

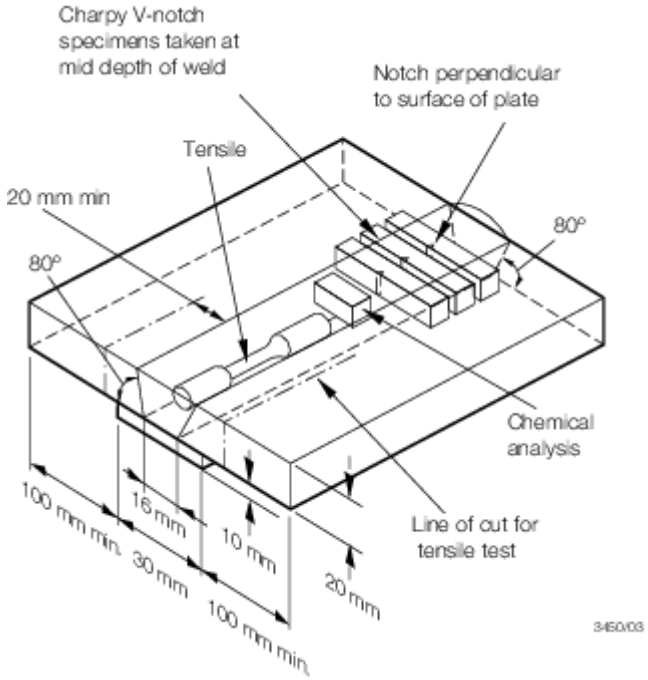
3. 1. 10 The welding current used is to be within the range recommended by the manufacturer and, where an electrode is stated to be suitable for both a.c. and d.c., a.c. is to be used for the preparation of the test assemblies.

3. 1. 11 Where an electrode is submitted only for approval for fillet welding and to which the butt weld test provided in Ch 11, 3.3, Butt weld test assemblies is not considered applicable, approval tests are to consist of the fillet weld tests as given in Ch 11, 3.5, Fillet weld test assemblies and deposited metal tests with chemical analyses as given in Ch 11, 3.2 Deposited metal test assemblies.

3. 2 Deposited metal test assemblies

3. 2. 1 The deposited metal test assemblies are to be prepared in the downhand position as shown in Figure 11. 3. 1: Deposited metal test assembly, one with 4 mm diameter electrodes and the other with 8 mm diameter electrodes, or the largest size manufactured if this is less than 8 mm diameter. If an electrode is available in one diameter only, one test assembly is sufficient. Any of the grades of steel in Table 11. 1. 1: Welding consumable grades appropriate to structural and low temperature service steel grades may be used for the preparation of these assemblies, up to a strength level which is not more than two levels above that for which approval is sought.

Figure 11. 3. 1: Deposited metal test assembly



3. 2. 2 For Y47 grades, as an alternative to Figure 11. 3. 1: Deposited metal test assembly, the thickness of the plate used for the test assembly may be taken as 50 mm.

3. 2. 3 The weld metal is to be deposited in single- or multi-run layers according to normal practice, and the direction of deposition of each layer is to alternate from each end of the plate, each run of weld metal being not less than 2 mm and not more than 4 mm thick. Between each run, the assembly is to be left in still air until it has cooled to less than 250°C, the temperature being taken in the centre of the weld, on the surface of the seam. After being welded, the test assemblies are not to be subjected to any heat treatment, except in those higher strength grades where it is considered necessary to use the welded joint in the stress-relieved (tempered) condition. In those cases, the code `sr' will be added to the approval grading.

3. 2. 4 The chemical analysis of the deposited weld metal in each deposited metal test assembly is to be supplied by the manufacturer and is to include the content of all significant alloying elements. The results of the analysis are not to exceed the limit values specified in the standards or by the manufacturer, the narrower tolerances being applicable in each case.

3. 2. 5 One tensile and three impact test specimens are to be taken from each test assembly as shown in Figure 11. 3. 1: Deposited metal test assembly. Care is to be taken that the axis of the tensile test specimen coincides with the centre of the weld and the mid-thickness of the plates. The impact test specimens are to be cut perpendicular to the weld, with their axes 10 mm from the upper surface. The notch is to be positioned in the centre of the weld and cut in the face of the test specimen perpendicular to the surface of the plate.

3. 2. 6 The results of all tests are to comply with the requirements of Table 11. 3. 2: Requirements for deposited metal tests (covered electrodes) as appropriate.

Table 11. 3. 2: Requirements for deposited metal tests (covered electrodes)

				Charpy V-notch impact tests

Grade (*See* Note 3)	Yield stress N/mm^2 minimum	Tensile strength N/mm^2 (*See* Note 1)	Elongation on 50 mm % minimum	Test temperature °C	Average energy (*See* Note 2) J minimum
1N, 2N, 3N	305	400 – 560	22	+20, 0, –20	47
1Y, 2Y, 3Y, 4Y	375	490 – 660	22	+20, 0, – 20, –40	47
2Y40, 3Y40, 4Y40, 5Y40	400	510 – 690	22	0, –20, –40, –60	47
3Y47	460	570 – 720	19	–20	53
3Y40	400	510 – 690	22	–20	47
3Y42	420	520 – 680	20	–20	47
3Y46	460	540 – 720	20	–20	47
3Y50	500	590 – 770	18	–20	50
3Y55	550	640 – 820	18	–20	55
3Y62	620	700 – 890	18	–20	62
3Y69	690	770 – 940	17	–20	69
3Y89	890	940 – 1100	14	–20	69
3Y96	960	980 – 1150	13	–20	69
4Y40	400	510 – 690	22	–40	47
4Y42	420	520 – 680	20	–40	47
4Y46	460	540 – 720	20	–40	47

4Y50	500	590 – 770	18	–40	50
4Y55	550	640 – 820	18	–40	55
4Y62	620	700 – 890	18	–40	62
4Y69	690	770 – 940	17	–40	69
4Y89	890	940 – 1100	14	–40	69
4Y96	960	980 – 1150	13	–40	69
5Y40	400	510 – 690	22	–60	47
5Y42	420	520 – 680	20	–60	47
5Y46	460	540 – 720	20	–60	47
5Y50	500	590 – 770	18	–60	50
5Y55	550	640 – 820	18	–60	55
5Y62	620	700 – 890	18	–60	62
5Y69	690	770 – 940	17	–60	69
$1^1/_2$Ni	375	490 – 640	22	–80	34
$2^1/_4$Ni	375	490 – 640	22	–90	34
$3^1/_2$Ni	375	490 – 610	25	–100	34
5 Ni	400	540 – 740	25	–120	34
9 Ni	400	640 – 790	25	–196	34

Note *1*. Single values are the minimum requirements.

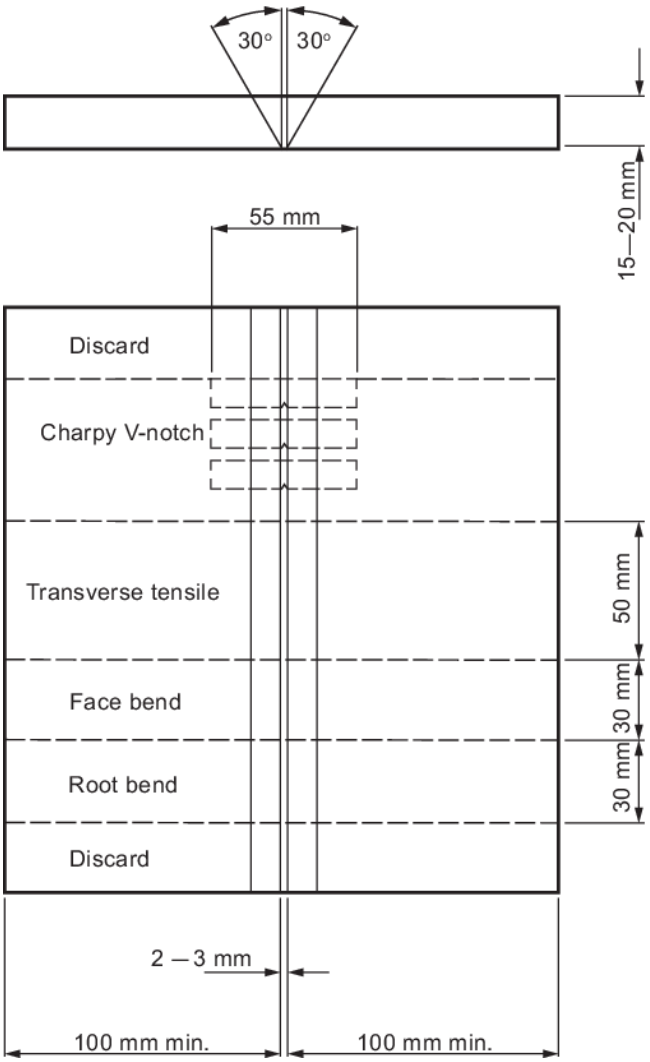
Note *2*. Energy values from individual impact test specimens are to comply with Ch 11, 1.4 Approval procedures 1.4.3.

Note *3*. Grade 1Y is not applicable to SMAW consumables referenced in Ch 11, 3 Electrodes for manual and gravity welding.

3. 3 Butt weld test assemblies

3. 3. 1 Butt weld assemblies, as shown in Figure 11. 3. 2: Butt weld test assembly, are to be prepared for each welding position (downhand, horizontal-vertical, vertical-upward, vertical-downward, and overhead) for which the electrode is recommended by the manufacturer. In the case of electrodes for normal strength and higher strength steels (up to 355 N/mm^2 minimum specified yield strength), electrodes satisfying the requirements for downhand and vertical-upward positions will be considered as also complying with the requirements for the horizontal-vertical position. In all other cases, approval for the horizontal-vertical position will require a butt weld to be made in that position and fully tested.

Figure 11. 3. 2: Butt weld test assembly



3. 3. 2 For Y47 grades, as an alternative to Figure 11. 3. 2: Butt weld test assembly, the thickness of the plate used for the test assembly may be taken as 50 mm.

3. 3. 3 Where the electrode is to be approved only in the downhand position, an additional test assembly is to be prepared in that position.

3. 3. 4 The grades of steel used for the preparation of the test assemblies are to be as follows:

Grade 1 (1N) electrodes A

Grade 2 (2N) electrodes	A, B or D
Grade 3 3(N) electrodes	A, B, D or E
Grade 2Y electrodes	AH32, AH36, DH32 or DH36
Grade 3Y electrodes	AH32, AH36, DH32, DH36, EH32 or EH36
Grade 4Y electrodes	AH32 AH36, DH32, DH36, EH32, EH36, FH32 or FH36
Grade 2Y40 electrodes	AH40 or DH40
Grade 3Y40 electrodes	AH40, DH40 or EH40
Grade 4Y40 electrodes	AH40, DH40, EH40 or FH40
Grade 5Y40 electrodes	AH40, DH40, EH40 or FH40
Grade 3Y47 electrodes	EH47

Where Grade 32 higher tensile steel is used, the tensile strength is to be not less than 490 N/mm^2. The chemical composition, including the content of grain refining elements, is to be reported in all cases where higher tensile steel is used.

3. 3. 5 For all other grades, the steel plates used are to be selected by reference to Table 11. 1. 1: Welding consumable grades appropriate to structural and low temperature service steel grades, and are to have at least their chemical composition and tensile properties within the limits specified for that grade in Ch 3 Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars. The strength grade used is to be the same as that for which approval is sought, and the toughness grade is to be no higher than that for which approval is also sought.

3. 3. 6 The test assemblies are to be made by welding together two plates of equal thickness (15 to 20 mm), not less than 100 mm in width and of sufficient length to allow the cutting out of test specimens of the prescribed number and size. The plate edges are to be prepared to form a single V-joint, the included angle between the fusion faces being 60° and the root gap 2 to 3 mm. The root face is to be 0 to 2 mm.

3. 3. 7 The following welding procedure is to be adopted in making the test assemblies:

Downhand (a). The first run with 4 mm diameter electrode. Remaining runs (except the last two layers) with 5 mm diameter electrodes or above according to the normal welding practice with the electrodes. The runs of the last two layers with the largest diameter of electrode manufactured or 8 mm whichever is the lesser.

Downhand (b) (where a second downhand test is required). First run with 4 mm diameter electrode. Next run with an electrode of intermediate diameter of 5 mm or 6 mm, and the remaining runs with the largest diameter of electrode manufactured or 8 mm whichever is the lesser.

Horizontal-vertical. First run with 4 mm or 5 mm diameter electrode. Subsequent runs with 5 mm diameter electrodes.

Vertical-upward and overhead. First run with 3.25 mm diameter electrode. Remaining runs with 4 mm diameter electrodes or possibly with 5 mm if this is recommended by the manufacturer for the positions concerned.

Vertical-downward. If the electrode being tested is intended for vertical welding in the downward direction, this technique is to be adopted for the preparation of the test assembly using electrode diameters as recommended by the manufacturer.

3. 3. 8 For all assemblies, the back sealing runs are to be made with 4 mm diameter electrodes in the welding position appropriate to each test sample, after cutting out the root run to clean metal. For

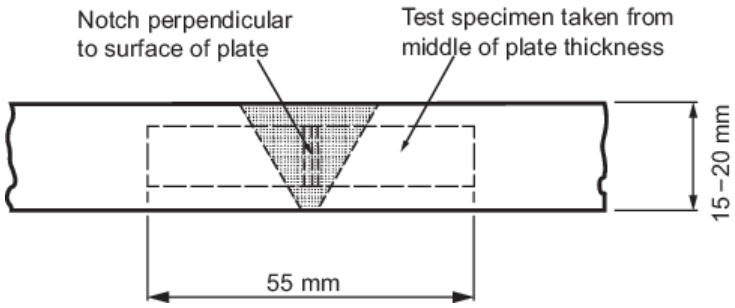
electrodes suitable for downhand welding only, the test assemblies may be turned over to carry out the back sealing run.

3. 3. 9 Normal welding practice is to be used and, between each run, the assembly is to be left in still air until it has cooled to less than 250°C, the temperature being taken in the centre of the weld, on the surface of the seam. After being welded, the test assemblies are not to be subjected to any heat treatment, except in those higher strength grades where it is considered necessary to use the welded joint in the stress-relieved (tempered) condition. In those cases, the code `sr' will be added to the approval grading.

3. 3. 10 It is recommended that the welded assemblies be subjected to a radiographic examination to ascertain if there are any defects in the weld prior to the preparation of test specimens.

3. 3. 11 The test specimens as shown in Figure 11. 3. 2: Butt weld test assembly and Figure 11. 3. 3: Butt weld test assembly position of impact test specimens are to be prepared from each test assembly.

Figure 11. 3. 3: Butt weld test assembly position of impact test specimens



3. 3. 12 The results of all tensile and impact tests are to comply with the requirements of Table 11. 3. 3: Requirements for butt weld tests (covered electrodes) as appropriate. The position of fracture in the transverse tensile test is to be reported.

Table 11. 3. 3: Requirements for butt weld tests (covered electrodes)

Grade (*See* Note 3)	Tensile strength N/mm^2	Bend test ratio: $\frac{D}{t}$	Charpy V-notch impact tests	
			Test temperature °C	Average energy (*See* Note 1) J minimum
				All positions (*See* Note 2)
1N, 2N, 3N	400	3	+20, 0, –20	47 (34)
1Y, 2Y, 3Y, 4Y	490	3	+20, 0, –20, –40	47 (34)
2Y40, 3Y40, 4Y40, 5Y40	510	3	0, –20, –40, –60	47 (39)

3Y47	570 - 720	4	–20	53
3Y40	510	3	–20	47 (39)
3Y42	520 – 680	4	–20	47
3Y46	540 – 720	4	–20	47
3Y50	590 – 770	4	–20	50
3Y55	640 – 820	5	–20	55
3Y62	700 – 890	5	–20	62
3Y69	770 – 940	5	–20	69
3Y89	940	6	–20	69
3Y96	980	7	–20	69
4Y40	510	3	–40	47 (39)
4Y42	520 – 680	4	–40	47
4Y46	540 – 720	4	–40	47
4Y50	590 – 770	4	–40	50
4Y55	640 – 820	5	–40	55
4Y62	700 – 890	5	–40	62
4Y69	770 – 940	5	–40	69
4Y89	940	6	–40	69
4Y96	980	7	–40	69
5Y40	510	3	–60	47 (39)
5Y42	520 – 680	4	–60	47
5Y46	540 – 720	4	–60	47
5Y50	590 – 770	4	–60	50

5Y55	640 – 820	5	–60	55
5Y62	700 – 890	5	–60	62
5Y69	770 – 940	5	–60	69
1 1/2Ni	490	3	–80	27
2 1/4Ni	490	3	-90	27
3 1/2Ni	490	3	–100	27
5 Ni	540	4	–120	27
9 Ni	640	4	–196	27

Note *1.* Energy values from individual impact test specimens are to comply with Ch 11, 1.4 Approval procedures 1.4.3.

Note *2.* Values in ( ) apply only to welds made in the vertical position with upward progression.

Note *3.* Grade 1Y is not applicable to SMAW consumables referenced in Ch 11, 3 Electrodes for manual and gravity welding.

3. 3. 13 The bend test specimens can be considered as complying with the requirements if, after bending, no crack or other open defect exceeding 3 mm in dimensions can be *See*n on the outer surface.

3. 4 Hydrogen test

3. 4. 1 The hydrogen gradings are specified in Ch 11, 3.1 Grading 3.1.3. The hydrogen grading required determines the method of testing permitted as shown in Table 11. 3. 4: Permitted methods for obtaining low hydrogen grading. Four test specimens are to be prepared and tested, and all four hydrogen test results must be below the maximum value for the hydrogen mark required.

Table 11. 3. 4: Permitted methods for obtaining low hydrogen grading

Hydrogen Grade	Permitted Method
H15	ISO 3690 (Mercury or Thermal Conductivity Detector Method) Or Glycerine (*See* Note)
H10	ISO 3690 (Mercury or Thermal Conductivity Detector Method)
H5	ISO 3690 (Mercury or Thermal Conductivity Detector Method)
Note ISO method preferred.	

3. 4. 2 The minimum holding time at a given test temperature for Thermal Conductivity Method should be as shown in Table 11. 3. 5: Temperature and minimum holding time.

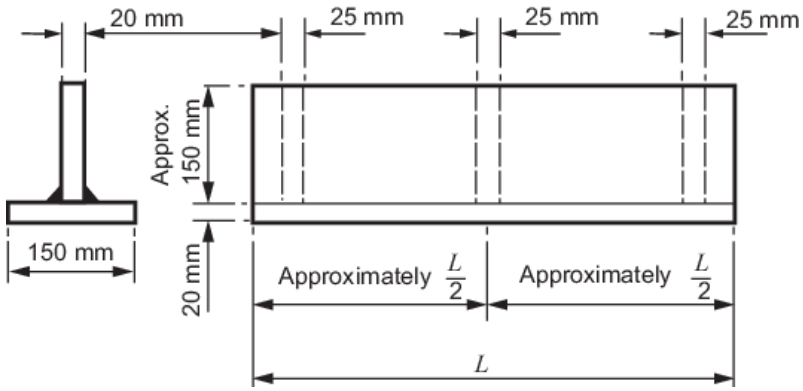
Table 11. 3. 5: Temperature and minimum holding time

Measuring Method		Test Temperature (°C)	Minimum Holding Time (h)
Thermal Conductivity Method (*See* Note 1)	Gas Chromatography	45	72
		150	6
Note 1. The use of hot carrier gas extraction method will be specially considered subject to verification of testing procedure to confirm that collection and measurement of the hydrogen occurs continuously until all the diffusible hydrogen is quantified.			

3. 5 Fillet weld test assemblies

3. 5. 1 Fillet weld assemblies as shown in Figure 11. 3. 4: Fillet weld test assembly are to be prepared for each welding position (horizontal-vertical, vertical-upward, vertical-downward or overhead) for which the electrode is recommended by the manufacturer. The grade of steel used for the test assemblies is to be as detailed in Ch 11, 3.3 Butt weld test assemblies 3.3.4. The length of the test assembly, L, is to be sufficient to allow at least the deposition of the entire length of the largest diameter electrode being tested. Where an electrode is submitted for approval of both butt and fillet welding, approval tests are to include the deposited metal tests as given in Ch 11, 3.2 Deposited metal test assemblies, the butt weld tests as given in Ch 11, 3.3, Butt weld test assemblies, and only one fillet weld test as given in subsequent paragraphs of this sub-Section welded in the horizontal-vertical position.

Figure 11. 3. 4: Fillet weld test assembly



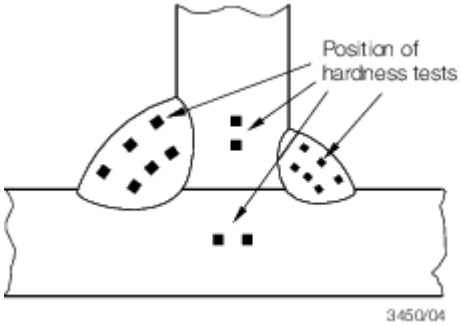
3. 5. 2 For Y47 grades, as an alternative to Figure 11. 3. 4: Fillet weld test assembly, the thickness of the plate used for the test assembly may be taken as 50 mm.

3. 5. 3 The electrode sizes to be used are the maximum and minimum diameters recommended by the manufacturer for fillet welding. The first side is to be welded using the maximum diameter. The second side is to be welded only after the assembly has been allowed to cool below 50°C using the minimum diameter. The size of these single run fillet welds will, in general, be determined by the electrode size and the welding current employed during testing and should represent the range of fillet weld bead sizes recommended by the manufacturer.

3. 5. 4 Each test assembly is to be sectioned to form three macro-sections, each about 25 mm thick. These are to be examined for root penetration, satisfactory profile, freedom from cracking and reasonable freedom from porosity and slag inclusions. Any undercut is not to exceed 0.5 mm in depth.

Convexity or concavity of the profile is not to exceed one-tenth of the fillet bead throat dimension. All such observations are to be reported.

Figure 11. 3. 5: Hardness tests for fillet weld test assembly



3. 5. 5 Hardness measurements are to be made on the central macro-section only, as shown in Figure 11. 3. 5: Hardness tests for fillet weld test assembly. The results are to be reported.

3. 5. 6 One of the remaining sections of the assembly is to have the weld on the first side gouged or machined to facilitate breaking the fillet weld on the second side by closing the two plates together, subjecting the root of the weld to tension. On the other remaining section, the weld on the second side is to be gouged or machined and the section fractured using the same procedure. The fractured surfaces are to be examined. They are to show satisfactory penetration, freedom from cracks and reasonable freedom from porosity and this should be reported.

3. 6 Electrodes designed for deep penetration welding

3. 6. 1 Where an electrode is designed solely for the deep penetration welding of downhand butt joints and horizontal-vertical fillets in normal tensile strength steel, only the tests detailed in Ch 11, 3.7 Deep penetration butt weld test assemblies and Ch 11, 3.8 Deep penetration fillet weld test assemblies are required for approval purposes.

3. 6. 2 Electrodes designed solely for the deep penetration welding technique will be approved as complying with Grade 1 requirements only and will be given the suffix `p'.

3. 6. 3 Where a manufacturer recommends that an electrode having deep penetrating properties can also be used for downhand butt welding of thicker plates with prepared edges, the electrode will be treated as a normal penetration electrode, and the full series of tests in the downhand position is to be carried out, together with the deep penetration tests given in Ch 11, 3.7 Deep penetration butt weld test assemblies and Ch 11, 3.8 Deep penetration fillet weld test assemblies.

3. 6. 4 Where a manufacturer desires to demonstrate that an electrode, in addition to its use as a normal penetration electrode, also has deep penetrating properties when used for downhand butt welding and horizontal fillet welding, the additional tests given in Ch 11, 3.7 Deep penetration butt weld test assemblies and Ch 11, 3.8 Deep penetration fillet weld test assemblies are to be carried out.

3. 6. 5 Electrodes approved for both normal and deep penetration welding will have the suffix 'p' added after the appropriate grade mark for normal penetration welding.

3. 6. 6 Where the manufacturer prescribes a different welding current and procedure for the electrode when used as a deep penetration electrode and a normal penetration electrode, the recommended current and procedure are to be used when making the test assemblies in each case.

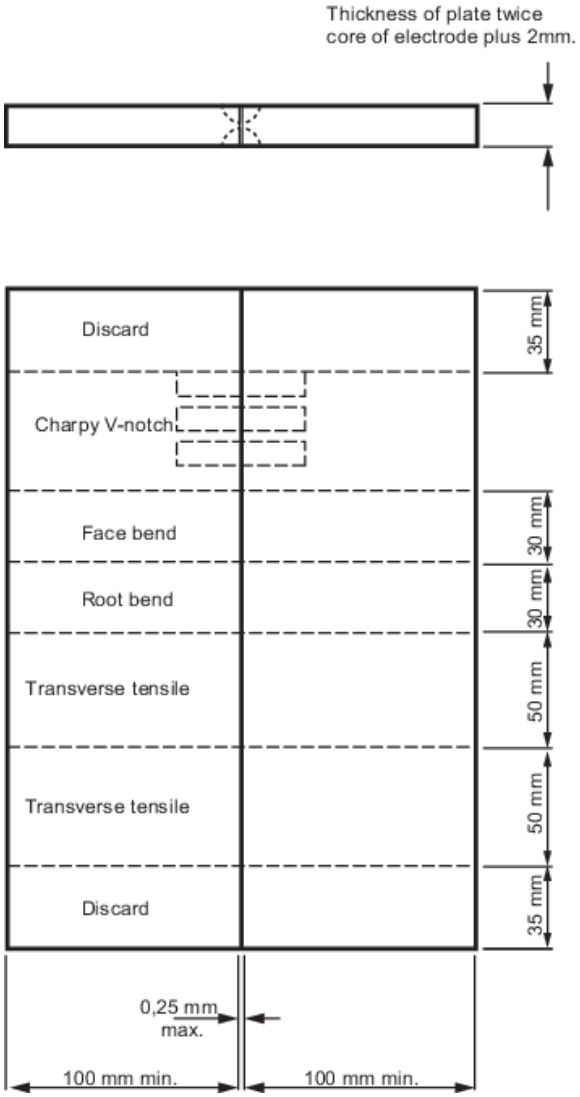
3. 7 Deep penetration butt weld test assemblies

3. 7. 1 Two plates of thickness equal to twice the diameter of the core of the electrode plus 2 mm are to be butt welded together with one downhand run of welding from each side. The plates are to be

not less than 100 mm wide and of sufficient length to allow the cutting out of the test specimens of the correct number and size as shown in Figure 11. 3. 6: Deep penetration butt weld test assembly. Grade A steel is to be used for these test assemblies. The joint edges are to be prepared square and smooth and, after tacking, the gap is not to exceed 0.25 mm. The test assembly is to be welded using an 8 mm diameter electrode, or the largest diameter manufactured if this is less than 8 mm and the assembly is to be allowed to cool below 50°C between runs.

3. 7. 2 The test specimens as shown in Figure 11. 3. 3: Butt weld test assembly position of impact test specimens and Figure 11. 3. 6: Deep penetration butt weld test assembly are to be prepared from each test assembly.

Figure 11. 3. 6: Deep penetration butt weld test assembly



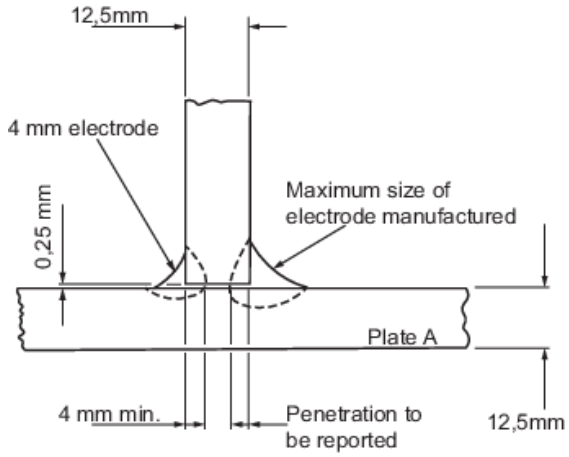
3. 7. 3 The results of tensile and impact tests are to comply with the requirements of Table 11. 3. 3: Requirements for butt weld tests (covered electrodes) for Grade 1 electrodes. The position of fracture in the tensile test is to be reported. The bend test specimens are to be in accordance with Ch 11, 3.3 Butt weld test assemblies 3.3.13.

3. 7. 4 The discards at the end of the welded assemblies are to be not more than 35 mm wide. The joints of these discards are to be polished and etched and must show complete fusion and inter-penetration of the weld beads. At each cut in the test assembly, the joints are also to be examined to ensure that complete fusion has taken place.

3. 8 Deep penetration fillet weld test assemblies

3. 8. 1 A fillet weld assembly is to be prepared as shown in Figure 11. 3. 7: Deep penetration fillet weld test assembly with plates about 12.5 mm in thickness. The welding is to be carried out with one run for each fillet with plate A in the horizontal plane during the welding operations. The length of the fillet is to be 160 mm and the gap between the plates is to be not more than 0.25 mm. Grade A steel is to be used for these test assemblies.

Figure 11. 3. 7: Deep penetration fillet weld test assembly



3. 8. 2 The fillet weld on one side of the assembly is to be carried out with a 4 mm diameter electrode, and that on the other side with the maximum diameter of electrode manufactured. The welding current used is to be within the range recommended by the manufacturer, and the welding is to be carried out using normal welding practice except that the assembly is to be allowed to cool below 50°C between runs.

3. 8. 3 The welded assembly is to be cut by sawing or machining within 35 mm of the ends of the fillet welds, and the joints are to be polished and etched. The welding of the fillet made with a 4 mm diameter electrode is to show a penetration of 4 mm (*See* Figure 11. 3. 7: Deep penetration fillet weld test assembly) and the corresponding penetration of the fillet made with the maximum diameter of electrode manufactured is to be reported.

3. 9 Electrodes designed for gravity or contact welding

3. 9. 1 Approval for welding using the gravity, `G', technique is available for welding only normal strength and higher tensile steels up to and including Grade 36.

3. 9. 2 Where an electrode is submitted solely for approval for use in contact welding using automatic gravity or similar welding devices, deposited metal tests, butt weld tests and, where appropriate, fillet weld tests similar to those for normal manual electrodes are to be carried out using the process for which the electrode is recommended by the manufacturer.

3. 9. 3 Where an electrode is submitted for approval for use in contact welding using automatic gravity or similar welding devices in addition to normal manual welding, butt weld and, where appropriate, fillet weld tests, using the gravity or other contact device as recommended by the manufacturer, are to be carried out in addition to the normal approval tests.

3. 10 Annual tests

3. 10. 1 For normal penetration electrodes, the annual tests are to consist of two deposited metal test assemblies. These are to be prepared and tested in accordance with Ch 11, 3.2 Deposited metal test assemblies. If an electrode is available in one diameter only, one test assembly is sufficient.

3. 10. 2 Where an electrode is approved solely for deep penetration welding, the annual test is to consist of one butt welded test assembly. This is to be prepared and tested in accordance with Ch 11, 3.7 Deep penetration butt weld test assemblies.

3. 10. 3 Where an electrode is approved for both normal and deep penetration welding, annual tests as detailed in Ch 11, 3.10 Annual tests 3.10.1 and Ch 11, 3.10 Annual tests 3.10.2 are to be carried out.

3. 10. 4 Where an electrode is approved solely for gravity or contact welding, the annual test is to consist of one deposited metal test assembly using the gravity or other contact device as recommended by the manufacturer.

3. 10. 5 Where an electrode is approved for both manual and gravity welding, annual tests as detailed in Ch 11, 3.10 Annual tests 3.10.1 and Ch 11, 3.10 Annual tests 3.10.4 are to be carried out.

3. 10. 6 A hydrogen test is required for Y89 and Y96 grades.

PART

2

CHAPTER **11 Approval of Welding Consumables**

SECTION **4 Wire-flux combinations for submerged-arc automatic welding**

4. 1 General

4. 1. 1 Wire-flux combinations for single and multiple electrode submerged-arc automatic welding, without the use of temporary backing, are divided into the following two categories:

- For use with the multi-run technique.
- For use with the two-run technique.

Where particular wire-flux combinations are intended for welding with both techniques, tests are to be carried out for each technique.

4. 1. 2 Dependent on the results of mechanical and other tests, approval will be allocated as one of the grades from Table 11. 1. 1: Welding consumable grades appropriate to structural and low temperature service steel grades.

4. 1. 3 The suffixes T or M will be added after the grade mark to indicate approval for the two-run technique or multi-run technique respectively.

4. 1. 4 Wire-flux combinations satisfying the requirements for multi-run or two-run techniques will also be approved for fillet welding in the downhand and horizontal-vertical position, subject to agreement by the manufacturer.

4. 1. 5 If the consumable combination is in compliance with the requirements of the hydrogen test given in Ch 11, 3.4 Hydrogen test, a suffix H15, H10, or H5 will be added to the grade. Table 11. 4. 1: Minimum low hydrogen approval requirements for wire-flux combinations shows the mandatory levels of low hydrogen approval for the various approval grades.

Table 11. 4. 1: Minimum low hydrogen approval requirements for wire-flux combinations

Approval grade	'H' grade for Multi-run	'H' grade for Two-run
1 (1N), 2 (2N), 3 (3N)	NR	NR
1Y, 2Y, 3Y, 4Y	NR	NR
2Y40 to 5Y40	H15	NR
3Y47	H10	H15
3Y42 to 5Y42	H10	H15
3Y46 to 5Y46	H10	H10

3Y50 to 5Y50	H10	H10
3Y55 to 5Y55	H5	H10
3Y62 to 5Y62	H5	H5
3Y69 to 5Y69	H5	H5
3Y89 to 4Y89	H5	H5
3Y96 to 4Y96	H5	H5
$1\frac{1}{2}$Ni	H15	NR
$2\frac{1}{4}$Ni	H15	NR
$3\frac{1}{2}$Ni	H15	NR
5 Ni (*See* Note 2)	NR	NR
9 Ni (*See* Note 2)	NR	NR
Note *1.* NR – Not required. Approval can be obtained when requested. **Note** *2.* Assumes use of an austenitic, non-transformable, filler material.		

4. 1. 6 For each strength level, wire-flux combinations which have satisfied the requirements for a higher toughness grade are considered as complying with the requirements for a lower grade.

4. 1. 7 Wire-flux combinations approved with multi-run technique for normal and higher strength levels up to and including 'Y' are also considered suitable for welding steels in the three strength levels below that for which they have been approved.

4. 1. 8 Wire-flux combinations approved with multi-run technique for strength levels Y40 to Y50, but excluding Y47 are also considered suitable for welding steels in two strength levels below that for which they have been approved.

4. 1. 9 Wire-flux combinations approved with multi-run technique for strength levels Y47, Y55 and above are also considered suitable for welding steels in only one strength level below that for which they have been approved.

4. 1. 10 Wire-flux combinations approved with multi-run technique for strength level Y89 are considered suitable for welding steels only in this strength level.

4. 1. 11 Wire-flux combinations approved with multi-run technique for strength level Y96 are also considered suitable for welding steels in one strength level below that for which they have been approved.

4. 1. 12 Wire-flux combinations with two-run technique approval are not considered suitable for welding steels of any other strength level with that technique, *See* Ch 11, 4.5 Approval tests for two-run technique 4.5.1.

4. 1. 13 The welding current may be either a.c. or d.c. (electrode positive or negative) according to the recommendation of the manufacturer. If both a.c. and d.c. are recommended, a.c. is to be used for the tests.

4. 1. 14 Wire-flux combinations for multiple electrode submerged-arc welding will be subject to separate approval tests. These are to be carried out generally in accordance with the requirements of this Section.

4. 1. 15 Wire-flux combinations are not naturally low hydrogen in character, but for the lower strength grades of steel low hydrogen testing is not normally a requirement for approval. With higher

strength steels it is more important and Table 11. 4. 1: Minimum low hydrogen approval requirements for wire-flux combinations shows the mandatory minimum low hydrogen status required for approval of wire-flux combinations.

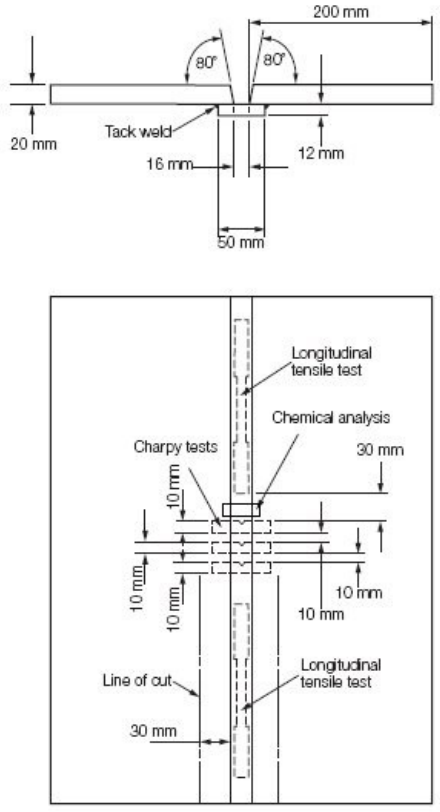
4. 2 Approval tests for multi-run technique

4. 2. 1 Where approval for use with the multi-run technique is requested, deposited metal and butt weld tests are to be carried out.

4. 3 Deposited metal test assemblies (multi-run technique)

4. 3. 1 One deposited metal test assembly is to be prepared as shown in Figure 11. 4. 1: Deposited metal test assembly, using any of the grades of steel in Table 11. 1. 1: Welding consumable grades appropriate to structural and low temperature service steel grades up to a strength level which is not more than two levels above that for which approval is sought.

Figure 11. 4. 1: Deposited metal test assembly



4. 3. 2 For Y47 grades, as an alternative to Figure 11. 4. 1: Deposited metal test assembly, the thickness of the plate used for the test assembly may be taken as 50 mm.

4. 3. 3 The bevelling of the plate edges is to be carried out by machining or mechanised gas cutting. In the latter case any remaining scale is to be removed from the bevelled edges.

4. 3. 4 Welding is to be in the downhand position, and the direction of deposition of each run is to alternate from each end of the plate. After completion of each run, the flux and welding slag are to be removed. Between each run, the assembly is to be left in still air until it has cooled to less than 250°C, the temperature being taken in the centre of the weld, on the surface of the seam. The

thickness of the layer is to be not less than the diameter of the wire nor less than 4 mm, unless it is clearly stated as part of the consumable manufacturer's published recommendations.

4. 3. 5 The welding conditions (amperage, voltage and rate of travel) are to be in accordance with the recommendations of the manufacturer and are to conform with normal good welding practice for multi-run welding.

4. 3. 6 The chemical analysis of the deposited weld metal in each test assembly is to be supplied by the manufacturer and is to include the content of all significant alloying elements. The results of the analysis are not to exceed the limit values specified in the standards or by the manufacturer, the narrower tolerances being applicable in each case.

4. 3. 7 Two longitudinal tensile and three impact test specimens are to be taken from each test assembly as shown in Figure 11. 4. 1: Deposited metal test assembly. Care is to be taken that the axes of the tensile test specimens coincide with the centre of the weld and the mid-thickness of the plates. The impact test specimens are to be cut perpendicular to the weld with their axes 10 mm from the upper surface. The notch is to be positioned in the centre of the weld and cut in the face of the test specimen perpendicular to the surface of the plate.

4. 3. 8 In those cases where two-run technique approval is also sought, only one longitudinal tensile specimen need be prepared and tested from this assembly.

4. 3. 9 The results of all tests are to comply with the requirements of Table 11. 4. 2: Requirements for deposited metal tests (wire-flux combinations), as appropriate.

Table 11. 4. 2: Requirements for deposited metal tests (wire-flux combinations)

Grade	Yield stress N/mm^2 minimum	Tensile strength N/mm^2	Elongation on 50 mm % minimum	Charpy V-notch impact tests	
				Test temperature °C	Average energy (*See* Note) J minimum
1N, 2N, 3N	305	400 – 560	22	+20, 0, –20	34
1Y, 2Y, 3Y, 4Y	375	490 – 660	22	+20, 0, –20, –40	34
2Y40, 3Y40, 4Y40, 5Y40	400	510 – 690	22	0, –20, –40, –60	39
3Y47	460	570 – 720	19	–20	53
3Y40	400	510 – 690	22	–20	39
3Y42	420	520 – 680	20	–20	47
3Y46	460	540 – 720	20	–20	47
3Y50	500	590 – 770	18	–20	50

3Y55	550	640 – 820	18	–20	55
3Y62	620	700 – 890	18	–20	62
3Y69	690	770 – 940	17	–20	69
3Y89	890	940 – 1100	14	–20	69
3Y96	960	980 - 1150	13	–20	69
4Y40	400	510 – 690	22	–40	39
4Y42	420	520 – 680	20	–40	47
4Y46	460	540 – 720	20	–40	47
4Y50	500	590 – 770	18	–40	50
4Y55	550	640 – 830	18	–40	55
4Y62	620	700 – 890	18	–40	62
4Y69	690	770 – 940	17	–40	69
4Y89	890	940 – 1100	14	–40	69
		980 - 1150	13	–40	69
5Y40	400	510 – 690	22	–60	39
5Y42	420	520 – 680	20	–60	47
5Y46	460	540 – 720	20	–60	47
5Y50	500	590 – 770	18	–60	50
5Y55	550	640 – 820	18	–60	55
5Y62	620	700 – 890	18	–60	62
5Y69	690	770 – 940	17	–60	69

1 1/2Ni	375	490-640	22	–80	34
2 1/4Ni	375	490-640	22	-90	34
3 1/2Ni	375	490 - 610	25	–100	34
5 Ni	400	540-740	25	–120	34
9 Ni	400	640-790	25	–196	34
Note Energy values from individual impact test specimens are to comply with Ch 11, 1.4 Approval procedures 1.4.3.					

4. 4 Butt weld test assemblies (multi-run technique)

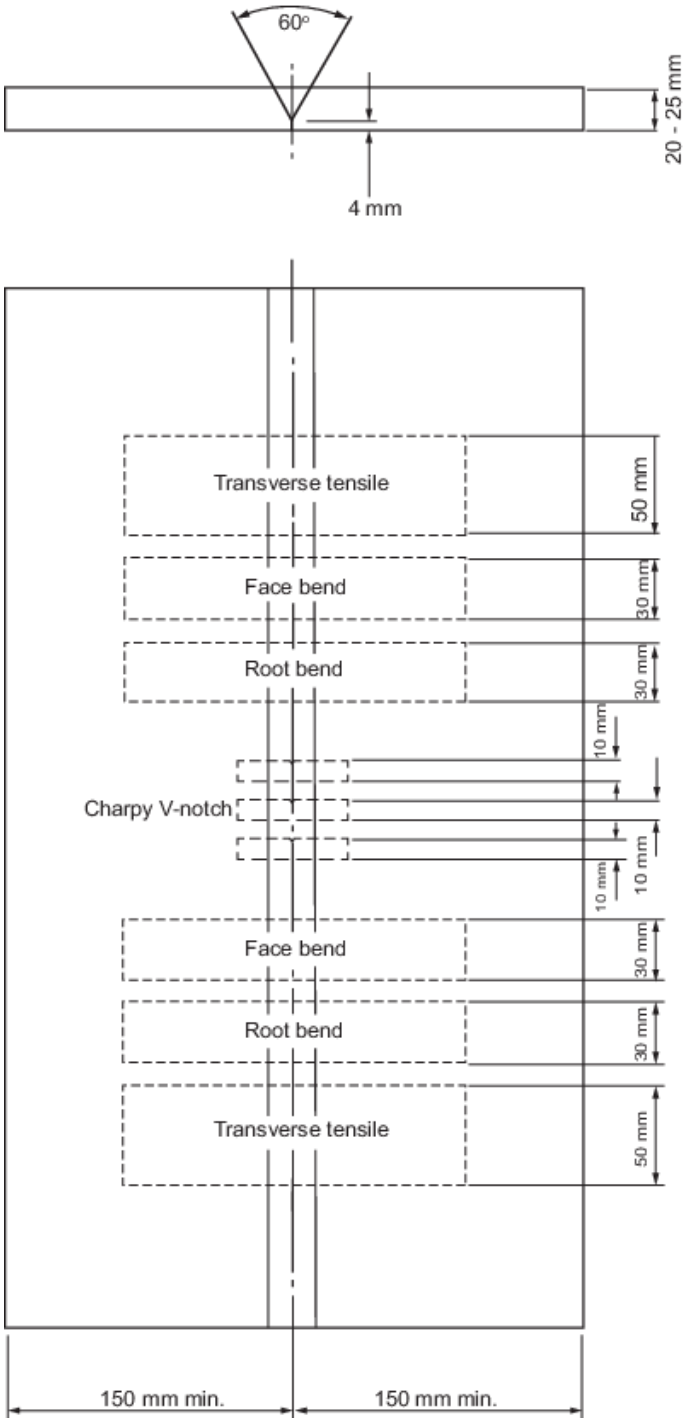
4. 4. 1 One butt weld test assembly is to be prepared as shown in Figure 11. 4. 2: Butt weld test assembly (multi-run technique).

4. 4. 2 The grade of steel used for the preparation of the test assembly are to be as follows:

Grade 1 wire-flux combination	A
Grade 2 wire-flux combinations	A, B or D
Grade 3 wire-flux combinations	A, B, D or E
Grade 1Y wire-flux combination	AH32 or AH36
Grade 2Y wire-flux combinations	AH32, AH36, DH32 or DH36
Grade 3Y wire-flux combinations	AH32, AH36, DH32, DH36, EH32 or EH36
Grade 4Y wire-flux combinations	AH32, AH36, DH32, DH36, EH32, EH36, FH32 or FH36
Grade 2Y40 wire-flux combination	AH40 or DH40
Grade 3Y40 wire-flux combinations	AH40, DH40 or EH40
Grade 4Y40 wire-flux combinations	AH40, DH40, EH40 or FH40
Grade 5Y40 wire-flux combinations	AH40, DH40, EH40 or FH40
Grade 3Y47 wire-flux combinations	EH47

Where Grade 32 higher tensile steel is used, the tensile strength is to be not less than 490 N/mm^2. The chemical composition, including the content of grain refining elements, is to be reported in all cases where higher tensile steel is used.

Figure 11. 4. 2: Butt weld test assembly (multi-run technique)



4. 4. 3 For all other grades, the steel plates used are to be selected by reference to Table 11. 1. 1: Welding consumable grades appropriate to structural and low temperature service steel grades, and are to have at least their chemical composition and tensile properties within the limits specified for that grade in Ch 3 Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars. The strength grade used is to be the same as that for which approval is sought, and the toughness grade is to be no higher than that for which approval is also sought.

4. 4. 4 The plate edges are to be prepared to form a single V-joint, the included angle between the fusion faces being 60° and the root face being 4 mm. The bevelling of the plate edges is to be carried out

by machining or mechanised gas cutting. In the latter case, any remaining scale is to be removed from bevelled edges.

4. 4. 5 Welding is to be carried out in the downhand position by the multi-run technique, and the welding conditions are to be the same as those adopted for the deposited metal test assembly. The back sealing run is to be applied in the downhand position after cutting out the root run to clean metal.

4. 4. 6 It is recommended that the welded assembly be subjected to a radiographic examination to ascertain if there are any defects in the weld prior to the preparation of test specimens.

4. 4. 7 The test specimens as shown in Figure 11. 3. 3: Butt weld test assembly position of impact test specimens and Figure 11. 4. 2: Butt weld test assembly (multi-run technique) are to be prepared from each test assembly.

4. 4. 8 The results of all tensile and impact tests are to comply with the requirements of Table 11. 4. 3: Requirements for butt weld tests (wire-flux combinations), as appropriate. The position of fracture of the transverse tensile test is to be reported.

Table 11. 4. 3: Requirements for butt weld tests (wire-flux combinations)

Grade	Tensile strength N/mm^2	Bend test ratio: $\frac{D}{t}$	Charpy V-notch impact tests	
			Test temperature °C	Average energy (*See* Notes 1 and 2) J minimum
1N, 2N, 3N	400	3	+20, 0, –20	34
1Y, 2Y, 3Y, 4Y	490	3	+20, 0, –20, –40	34
2Y40, 3Y40, 4Y40, 5Y40	510	3	0, –20, –40, –60	39
3Y47	570 – 720	4	–20	53
3Y40	510	3	–20	39
3Y42	520 – 680	4	–20	47 (41)
3Y46	540 – 720	4	–20	47
3Y50	590 – 770	4	–20	50
3Y55	640 – 820	5	–20	55
3Y62	700 – 890	5	–20	62
3Y69	770 – 940	5	–20	69

3Y89	940	6	–20	69
3Y96	980	7	–20	69
4Y40	510	3	–40	39
4Y42	520 – 680	4	–40	47 (41)
4Y46	540 – 720	4	–40	47
4Y50	590 – 770	4	–40	50
4Y55	640 – 820	5	–40	55
4Y62	700 – 890	5	–40	62
4Y69	770 – 940	5	–40	69
4Y89	940	6	–40	69
4Y96	980	7	–40	69
5Y40	510	3	–60	39
5Y42	520 – 680	4	–60	47 (41)
5Y46	540 – 720	4	–60	47
5Y50	590 – 770	4	–60	50
5Y55	640 – 820	5	–60	55
5Y62	700 – 890	5	–60	62
5Y69	770 – 940	5	–60	69
$1^1/_2$Ni	490	3	–80	27
$2^1/_4$Ni	490	3	-90	27
$3^1/_2$Ni	490	3	–100	27
5 Ni	540	4	–120	27
9 Ni	640	4	–196	27

Note *1*. Energy values from individual impact test specimens are to comply with Ch 11, 1.4 Approval procedures 1.4.3.

Note *2*. Values in ( ) apply only to two-run technique impact test specimens.

4. 4. 9 The bend test specimens can be considered as complying with the requirements if, after bending, no cracks or other open defects exceeding 3 mm in dimension can be *See*n on the outer surface.

4. 5 Approval tests for two-run technique

4. 5. 1 Where approval for use with the two-run technique is requested, two butt weld test assemblies are to be prepared and tested using plates of the strength level for which approval is required. Each strength level requires separate approval.

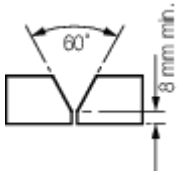
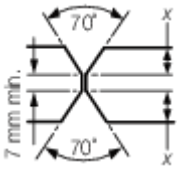
4. 5. 2 Two welded assemblies are to be made from a pair of plates of matching thicknesses. The thickness of the thicker pair of plates will be the maximum for which the approval is valid. The second assembly is to be welded from plates having approximately half of the thickness of the first assembly.

4. 6 Butt weld test assemblies (two-run technique)

4. 6. 1 he grade of steel used for the preparation of the test assemblies is not to be of any higher grade (impact toughness) than that for which approval is required. The chemical composition, including the content of grain refining elements, and the strength properties of the plates used, are to be reported.

4. 6. 2 The maximum diameter of wire and the edge preparation to be used are to be in accordance with Table 11. 4. 4: Butt weld assembly preparation. Small deviations in the edge preparation may be allowed if requested by the manufacturer. The bevelling of the plate edges is to be performed by machining or mechanized gas cutting. In the latter case, any remaining scale is to be removed from the bevelled edges. The root gap should not exceed 0.7 mm.

Table 11. 4. 4: Butt weld assembly preparation

Plate thickness mm	Recommended edge preparation	Maximum diameter of wire mm
12.5		5
20–25		6
35–40		7

4. 6. 3 Each butt weld is to be welded in two runs, one from each side, using amperages, voltages and travel speeds in accordance with the recommendations of the manufacturer and normal good welding practice. After completion of the first run, the flux and welding slag are to be removed and the assembly is to be left in still air until it has cooled to less than 100°C, the temperature being taken in the centre of the weld, on the surface of the seam.

4. 6. 4 It is recommended that the butt weld assemblies be subjected to radiographic examination to ascertain if there are any defects in the weld prior to the preparation of test specimens.

4. 6. 5 The test specimens, as shown in Figure 11. 4. 3: Butt weld test assembly (two-run technique) and Figure 11. 4. 4: Butt weld test assembly (two-run technique): position of impact test specimens, are to be prepared from each test assembly, except as detailed in Ch 11, 4.6 Butt weld test assemblies (two-run technique) 4.6.8. The edges of two of the discards are to be polished and etched, and must show complete fusion and inter-run penetration of the welds. At each cut in the test assembly, the edges are also to be examined to ensure that complete fusion has taken place.

Figure 11. 4. 3: Butt weld test assembly (two-run technique)

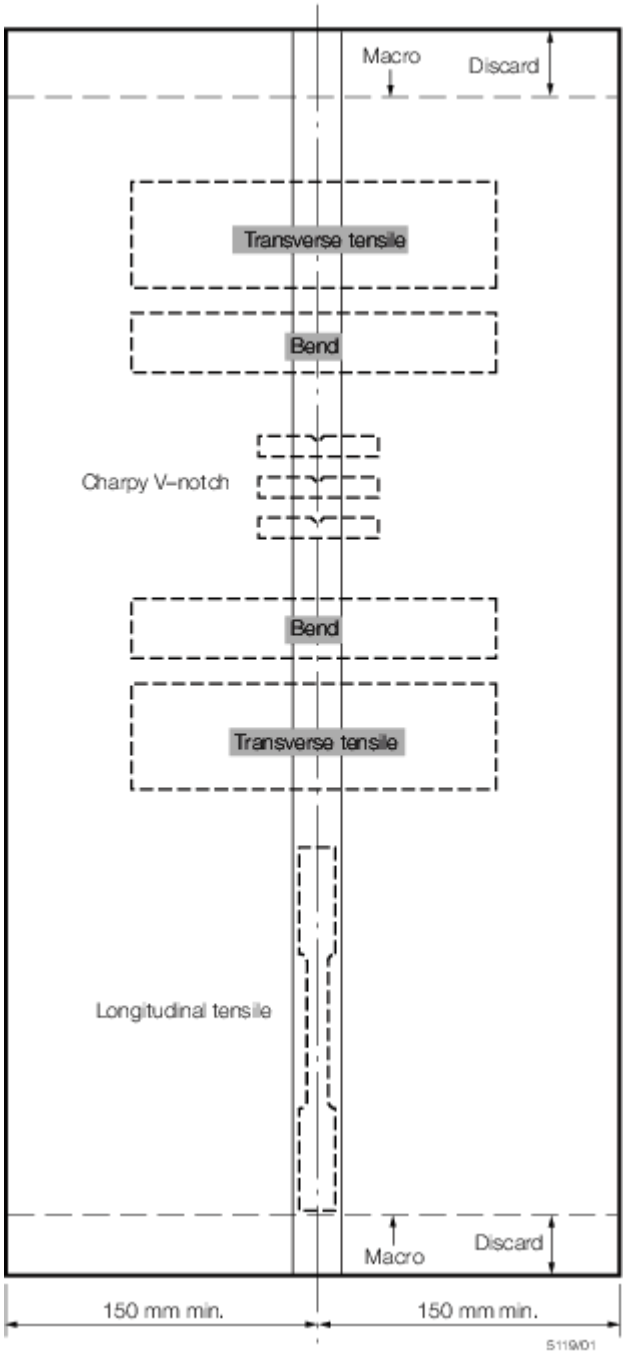
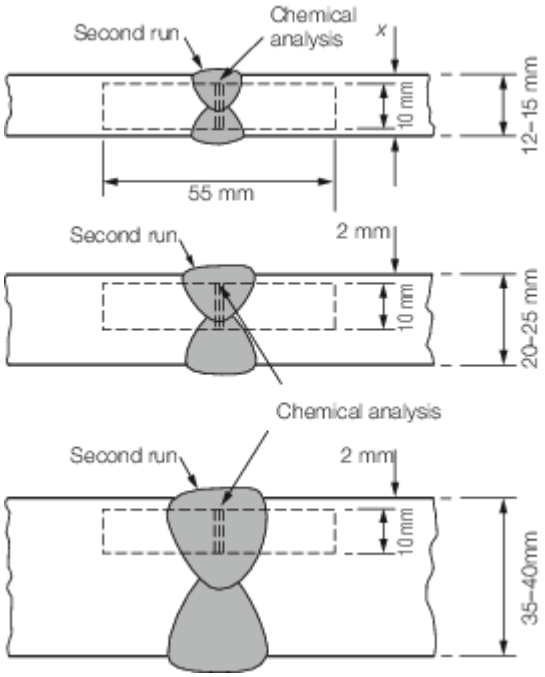


Figure 11. 4. 4: Butt weld test assembly (two-run technique): position of impact test specimens



4. 6. 6 The results of transverse tensile and impact tests are to comply with the requirements of Table 11. 4. 3: Requirements for butt weld tests (wire-flux combinations) as appropriate. The position of fracture of the transverse tensile tests is to be reported.

4. 6. 7 The bend test specimens can be considered as complying with the requirements if, after bending, no crack or other open defects exceeding 3 mm in dimensions can be *Seen* on the outer surface. One of the specimens from each assembly is to be tested with the side first welded in tension, and the second specimen with the other side in tension.

4. 6. 8 The longitudinal tensile specimen shown in Figure 11. 4. 3: Butt weld test assembly (two-run technique) is to be prepared from the thicker assembly, even in those cases where multi-run technique approval is also sought. This test specimen is to be machined to the dimensions shown in Ch 11, 2.1 Dimensions of test specimens 2.1.1 and the longitudinal axis is to coincide with the centre of the weld about 7 mm below the plate surface on the side from which the second run is made. The test specimen may be given a hydrogen release treatment in accordance with Ch 11, 2.1 Dimensions of test specimens 2.1.1. The results of this test are to comply with the requirements of Table 11. 4. 2: Requirements for deposited metal tests (wire-flux combinations).

4. 6. 9 The chemical analysis of the weld metal of the second run in each assembly is to be determined and reported. This is to include the content of all significant elements. The results of the analysis are not to exceed the limit values specified in the standards or by the manufacturer, the narrower tolerances being applicable in each case.

4. 7 Annual tests

4. 7. 1 Annual tests are to consist of at least the following:

a. For wire-flux combinations approved for the multi-run technique, one deposited metal test assembly.

b. For wire-flux combinations approved for the two-run technique, one butt weld test assembly using plate material 20 to 25 mm in thickness. For Y47, the thickness of plate material may be taken as 50 mm.

c. A hydrogen test for Y89 and Y96 grades.

4. 7. 2 The deposited metal assemblies are to be prepared and tested in accordance with Ch 11, 4.3 Deposited metal test assemblies (multi-run technique), except that only one longitudinal tensile, three impact test specimens and a chemical analysis are required.

4. 7. 3 The butt weld test assemblies are to be prepared and tested in accordance with Ch 11, 4.6 Butt weld test assemblies (two-run technique), except that only one transverse tensile, two bend, three impact test specimens and a chemical analysis are required. One longitudinal tensile test specimen is also to be prepared where the wire-flux combination is approved solely for the two-run technique.

4. 7. 4 Where a wire-flux combination is approved for welding a range of steels with different specified minimum strength levels, steel of the highest strength approved is to be used for the preparation of the butt weld assembly required by Ch 11, 4.7 Annual tests 4.7.1.b.

PART

2

CHAPTER **11 Approval of Welding Consumables**

SECTION **5 Wires and wire-gas combinations for manual, semi-automatic and automatic welding**

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 Wire-gas combinations and flux-cored or flux-coated wires (for use with or without a shielding gas) are divided into the following categories for the purposes of approval testing:

a. For use in manual multi-run welding with the inert gas tungsten arc welding process (GTAW).
b. For use in semi-automatic multi-run metal arc welding.
c. For use in single electrode multi-run automatic metal arc and GTAW welding.
d. For use in single electrode two-run automatic metal arc and GTAW welding.

5. 1. 2 The term `manual' is used to describe the technique where the gas-shielded tungsten arc torch is held in one hand and the filler is added separately by the other hand.

5. 1. 3 The term `semi-automatic' is used to describe processes in which the weld is made manually by a welder holding a gun through which the wire is continuously fed.

5. 1. 4 In the GTAW process, `automatic' refers to the fully mechanized control and application of both torch and separate filler wire.

5. 1. 5 Dependent on the results of mechanical and other tests, approval will be allocated as one of the grades from Table 11. 1. 1: Welding consumable grades appropriate to structural and low temperature service steel grades.

5. 1. 6 A suffix S will be added after the grade mark to indicate approval for semi-automatic multi-run welding.

5. 1. 7 For wires intended for automatic welding, the suffixes T or M will be added after the grade mark to indicate approval for two-run or multi-run welding techniques, respectively.

5. 1. 8 For wires intended for both semi-automatic and automatic welding, the suffixes will be added in combination.

5. 1. 9 Solid wire-gas combinations are considered naturally low hydrogen in character and qualify for `H15' approval without testing. This is not so for cored wires and continuous coated wires which must be tested if there is a need for low hydrogen approval. For the lower strength grades of steel, low hydrogen testing is not normally a requirement for approval. With higher strength steels, it is more important and Table 11. 5. 1: Minimum low hydrogen approval requirements for wires and wire-gas combinations shows the mandatory minimum low hydrogen status required for approval of wire-gas combinations.

5. 1. 10 The testing methods to be used for low hydrogen approval are to be in accordance with Ch 11, 3.4 Hydrogen test, modified to use the manufacturer's recommended welding conditions and adjusting the deposition rate to give a weld deposit weight per sample similar to that deposited when using manual electrodes.

5. 1. 11 Where applicable, the approved combination will name either the specific gas composition or its trade name, but in either case the composition of the shielding gas is to be reported. Unless otherwise agreed, additional approval tests are required when a shielding gas is used other than that used for the original approval tests. However a wire and gas combination approved with an argon/carbon dioxide shielding gas where the carbon dioxide is between 15-25 per cent is also approved for other combinations of argon/carbon dioxide, provided the carbon dioxide content is within the range 15-25 per cent. The range of approval is limited to ferritic consumables in solid wire, flux cored and coated wire forms and subject to the agreement of the consumable manufacturer and ACS.

5. 1. 12 Wires and wire-gas combinations for multiple electrode automatic welding will be subject to separate approval tests. Any proposals are to be submitted for consideration.

5. 1. 13 Wires and wire-gas combinations approved with multi-run technique for normal and higher strength levels up to and including 'Y' are also considered suitable for welding steels in the three strength levels below that for which they have been approved.

5. 1. 14 Wires and wire-gas combinations approved with multi-run technique for strength levels Y40 to Y50, but excluding Y47 are also considered suitable for welding steels in two strength levels below that for which they have been approved.

5. 1. 15 Wires and wire-gas combinations approved with multi-run technique for strength levels Y47, Y55 and above are also considered suitable for welding steels in only one strength level below that for which they have been approved.

5. 1. 16 Wires and wire-gas combinations approved with multi-run technique for strength level Y89 are considered suitable for welding steels only in this strength level.

5. 1. 17 Wires and wire-gas combinations approved with multi-run technique for strength level Y96 are also considered suitable for welding steels in one strength level below that for which they have been approved.

5. 1. 18 Wires and wire-gas combinations with two-run technique approval are not considered suitable for welding steels of any other strength level with that technique, *See* Ch 11, 5.4 Approval tests for two-run automatic welding 5.4.1.

Table 11. 5. 1: Minimum low hydrogen approval requirements for wires and wire-gas combinations

Approval grades	'H' grade for m and S techniques	'H' grade for M technique	'H' grade for T technique
1 (1N), 2 (2N), 3 (3N)	NR	NR	NR
1Y, 2Y, 3Y, 4Y	H15 (*See* Note 2)	NR	NR
2Y40 to 5Y40	H15	H15	NR
3Y47	H10	H10	H10
3Y42 to 5Y42	H10	H10	H15
3Y46 to 5Y46	H10	H10	H15
3Y50 to 5Y50	H10	H10	H10
3Y55 to 5Y55	H5	H5	H10
3Y62 to 5Y62	H5	H5	H5

3Y69 to 5Y69	H5	H5	H5
3Y89 to 4Y89	H5	H5	H5
3Y96 to 4Y96	H5	H5	H5
$1\frac{1}{2}$ Ni	H15	H15	NR
$2\frac{1}{4}$ Ni	H15	H15	NR
$3\frac{1}{2}$ Ni	H15	H15	NR
5 Ni	NR (*See* Note 3)	NR	NR
9 Ni	NR (*See* Note 3)	NR	NR

Note *1.* NR – Not required. Approval may be obtained when requested.

Note *2.* Optional in this case. If low hydrogen approval is not obtained, there is a limitation on the carbon equivalent of the steel which is permitted to be welded.

Note *3.* Assumes use of an austenitic, non-transformable, filler material.

5. 2 Approval tests for manual and semi-automatic multi-run welding

5. 2. 1 Approval tests for manual (GTAW) and semi-automatic multi-run welding are to be carried out generally in accordance with the requirements of Ch 11, 3 Electrodes for manual and gravity welding, except as required by Ch 11, 5.2, Approval tests for manual and semi-automatic multi-run welding, using the respective technique for the preparation of all test assemblies.

5. 2. 2 Two deposited metal test assemblies are to be prepared in the downhand position as shown in Figure 11. 3. 1: Deposited metal test assembly, one using the smallest diameter, and the other using the largest diameter of wire for which approval is required. Where only one diameter is manufactured, only one deposited metal assembly is to be prepared.

5. 2. 3 For Y47 grades, as an alternative to Figure 11. 3. 1: Deposited metal test assembly to Figure 11. 3. 4: Fillet weld test assembly, the thickness of the plate used for the test assembly may be taken as 50 mm.

5. 2. 4 The weld metal is to be deposited according to the practice recommended by the manufacturer, and the thickness of each layer of weld metal is to be between 2 mm and 6 mm, unless it is clearly stated as part of the consumable manufacturer's published recommendations.

5. 2. 5 The chemical analysis of the deposited weld metal in each test assembly is to be supplied by the manufacturer and is to include the content of all significant alloying elements. The results of the analysis are not to exceed the limit values specified in the standards or by the manufacturer, the narrower tolerances being applicable in each case.

5. 2. 6 Butt weld assemblies as shown in Figure 11. 3. 2: Butt weld test assembly are to be prepared for each welding position for which the wire is to be approved. In the case of approvals for normal and higher strength steels (up to 355 N/mm^2 minimum specified yield strength), tests satisfying the requirements in both the downhand and vertical-upward positions will be considered as having also satisfied the requirements for the horizontal-vertical position. In all other cases, approval in the horizontal-vertical position will require a butt weld to be made in that position and be fully tested.

5. 2. 7 The downhand assembly is to be welded using, for the first run, wire of the smallest diameter to be approved and, for the remaining runs, wire of the largest diameter to be approved.

5. 2. 8 Where approval is requested only in the downhand position, an additional butt weld assembly is to be prepared in that position using, if possible, wires of different diameter from those required by Ch 11, 5.2 Approval tests for manual and semi-automatic multi-run welding 5.2.7. If only one wire diameter is to be approved, this second downhand butt weld should be made using either larger or smaller beads than the first assembly.

5. 2. 9 The butt weld assemblies, in positions other than downhand, are to be welded using, for the first run, wire of the smallest diameter to be approved, and for the remaining runs, the largest diameter of wire recommended by the manufacturer for the position concerned.

5. 2. 10 Fillet weld test assemblies as detailed in Ch 11, 3.5, Fillet weld test assemblies are to be prepared, examined and tested.

5. 2. 11 Low hydrogen approval tests are to be carried out if required by Ch 11, 5.1 General 5.1.9.

5. 2. 12 Test specimens from each assembly are to be prepared and tested in accordance with the requirements of Ch 11, 3.2 Deposited metal test assemblies and Ch 11, 3.3, Butt weld test assemblies.

5. 3 Approval tests for multi-run automatic welding

5. 3. 1 Approval tests for multi-run automatic welding are to be carried out generally in accordance with the requirements of Ch 11, 4 Wire-flux combinations for submerged-arc automatic welding, except as required by Ch 11, 5.3 Approval tests for multi-run automatic welding, using the multi-run automatic welding technique for the preparation of all test assemblies.

5. 3. 2 One deposited metal test assembly is to be prepared as shown in Figure 11. 4. 1: Deposited metal test assembly. Welding is to be as detailed in Ch 11, 4.3 Deposited metal test assemblies (multi-run technique) 4.3.4, except that the thickness of each layer is to be not less than 3 mm, unless it is clearly stated as part of the consumable manufacturer's published recommendations.

5. 3. 3 For Y47 grades, as an alternative to Figure 11. 4. 1: Deposited metal test assembly and Figure 11. 4. 2: Butt weld test assembly (multi-run technique), the thickness of the plate used for the test assembly may be taken as 50 mm.

5. 3. 4 One butt weld test assembly is to be prepared as shown in Figure 11. 4. 2: Butt weld test assembly (multi-run technique) for each welding position to be approved for the automatic multi-run technique.

5. 3. 5 Test specimens from each test assembly are to be prepared and tested in accordance with the requirements of Ch 11, 4 Wire-flux combinations for submerged-arc automatic welding for multi-run submerged-arc automatic welding.

5. 3. 6 Low hydrogen approval tests are to be made if required by Ch 11, 5.1 General 5.1.9.

5. 3. 7 At the discretion of ACS, wires approved for semi-automatic welding in the downhand position may also be approved without additional tests, for use in multi-run automatic welding.

5. 4 Approval tests for two-run automatic welding

5. 4. 1 Approval tests for two-run automatic welding are to be carried out generally in accordance with the requirements of Ch 11, 4 Wire-flux combinations for submerged-arc automatic welding, except as required by Ch 11, 5.4, Approval tests for two-run automatic welding, using the two-run automatic welding technique for the preparation of all test assemblies. Two butt weld test assemblies are to be prepared and tested using plates of the strength level for which approval is required. Each strength level requires separate approval.

5. 4. 2 Two butt weld test assemblies are to be prepared generally as detailed in Ch 11, 4.5, Approval tests for two-run technique and Ch 11, 4.6 Butt weld test assemblies (two-run technique) using plates 12 to 15 mm and 20 to 25 mm in thickness.

5. 4. 3 If approval is requested for welding plate thicker than 25 mm, one assembly is to be prepared using plates approximately 20 mm in thickness and the other using plates of the maximum thickness for which approval is requested.

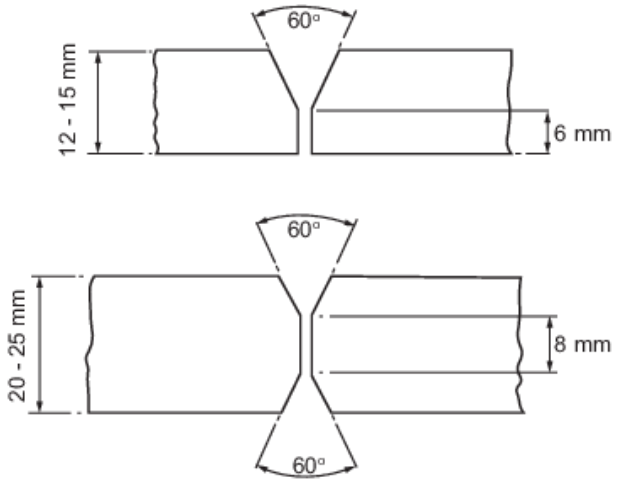
5. 4. 4 The edge preparation of the test assemblies is to be as shown in Figure 11. 5. 1: Normal edge preparation for two-run butt weld test assemblies specimens. Small deviations in edge preparation may be allowed, if these form part of the consumable manufacturer's recommendations. For assemblies using plates over 25 mm in thickness, the edge preparation is to be reported for information.

5. 4. 5 The diameters of wires used are to be in accordance with the recommendations of the manufacturer and are to be reported.

5. 4. 6 Test specimens from each butt weld assembly are to be prepared and tested in accordance with the requirements of Ch 11, 4 Wire-flux combinations for submerged-arc automatic welding for two-run submerged-arc automatic welding.

5. 4. 7 The weld metal chemical analysis is to be reported as in Ch 11, 4.6 Butt weld test assemblies (two-run technique) 4.6.9. The results of the analysis are not to exceed the limit values specified in the standards or by the manufacturer, the narrower tolerances being applicable in each case.

Figure 11. 5. 1: Normal edge preparation for two-run butt weld test assemblies specimens



5. 5 Annual tests

5. 5. 1 Annual tests are to consist of at least the following:

a. Wires approved for manual welding or semi-automatic welding or either of these combined with approval for automatic multi-run welding:
one deposited metal test assembly prepared in accordance with Ch 11, 5.2, Approval tests for manual and semi-automatic multi-run welding using a wire of diameter within the approved range.

b. Wire approved for automatic multi-run welding:
one deposited metal test assembly prepared in accordance with Ch 11, 5.3 Approval tests for multi-run automatic welding using a wire of diameter as stated in (a).

c. Wires approved for two-run automatic welding:
one butt weld test assembly prepared in accordance with Ch 11, 5.4, Approval tests for two-run automatic welding using plates 20 to 25 mm in thickness or the maximum approved thickness. The diameter of wire used is to be reported.

d. A hydrogen test for Y89 and Y96 grades.

PART

2

CHAPTER **11 Approval of Welding Consumables**

SECTION **6 Consumables for use in electro-slag and electro-gas welding**

6. 1 General

6. 1. 1 The requirements for the approval of consumables used for electro-slag or electro-gas welding (including consumable nozzles, where applicable) are generally as detailed in Ch 11, 4 Wire-flux combinations for submerged-arc automatic welding for two-run submerged-arc welding consumables, except as otherwise detailed in this Section.

6. 1. 2 For each grade, approval may be restricted for use with specific compositional types of steel. For Grades 1Y, 2Y, 3Y, 4Y, 2Y40, 3Y40 and 4Y40 this will normally be in respect of the grain refining element content, and tests on niobium grain refined steel will normally qualify for use also on steels treated with aluminium or vanadium or combinations of these elements.

6. 1. 3 Superscript numbers are applied to the 'Y' of higher strength steel consumables, e.g. $2Y^1$, to indicate the type of parent steel for which approval is applicable as follows:

Y^1 approval Grade for higher strength steel is limited to parent steel which has been treated only with aluminium.

Y^2 approval Grade for higher strength steel is appropriate to niobium-treated steels, whether aluminium treated or not. It also covers steels treated only with aluminium.

6. 1. 4 Each strength level requires separate approval involving the welding and testing of two butt weld assemblies of different thickness. The greater thickness will determine the maximum approved thickness.

6. 2 Butt weld test assemblies

6. 2. 1 Two butt weld test assemblies are to be prepared, one with plates 20 to 25 mm in thickness and the other with plates 35 to 40 mm in thickness. The steel used is not to be of any higher grade (impact toughness) than that for which approval is required. The limitations of Ch 11, 6.1 General 6.1.2 need to be considered in this Section. The chemical composition of the plate, including the content of grain refining elements, is to be reported.

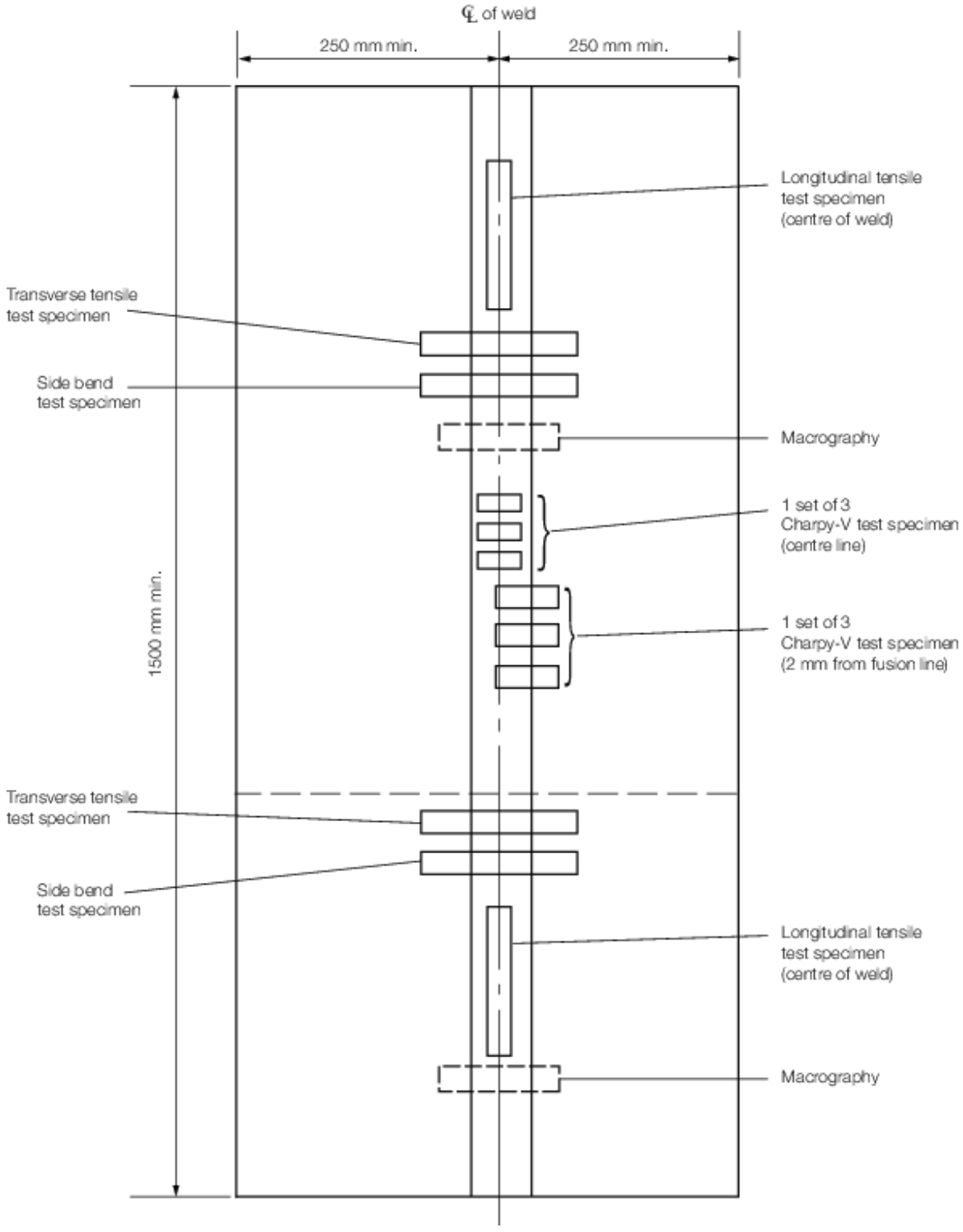
6. 2. 2 The welding conditions and the edge preparation adopted are to be in accordance with the recommendations of the manufacturer and are to be reported in detail. The manufacturer's maximum recommended gap between plates is to be used in making the test assemblies.

6. 2. 3 It is recommended that the assemblies are subjected to radiographic examination to identify any defects before the preparation of any test specimens.

6. 2. 4 Test specimens as follows, and as shown in Figure 11. 6. 1: Butt weld test assembly for electro-slag or electro-gas welding, are to be prepared from each test assembly:

a. Two longitudinal tensile test specimens.
b. Two transverse tensile test specimens.
c. Two bend test specimens.
d. Two macro-sections.
e. Two sets of three impact test specimens notched in accordance with Figure 11. 6. 2: Position of Charpy V-notch impact test specimens.

Figure 11. 6. 1: Butt weld test assembly for electro-slag or electro-gas welding



6. 2. 5 The chemical analysis of the weld metal in each assembly is to be determined and reported. This is to be supplied by the manufacturer and is to include the content of all significant elements. The results of the analysis are not to exceed the limit values specified in the standards or by the manufacturer, the narrower tolerances being applicable in each case.

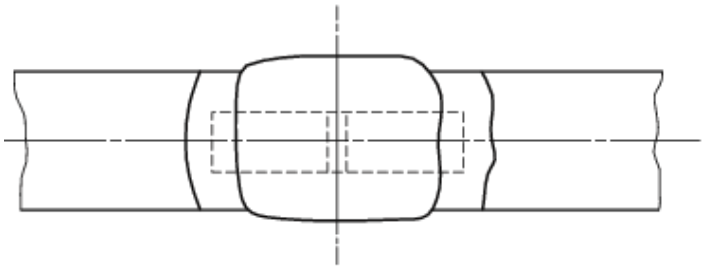
6. 2. 6 The results of all transverse tensile and impact tests are to comply with the requirements given in Table 11. 4. 3: Requirements for butt weld tests (wire-flux combinations) as appropriate. The

position of fracture of the transverse tensile test is to be reported. The Charpy V-notch impact test requirements are as for the two-run technique in Table 11. 4. 3: Requirements for butt weld tests (wire-flux combinations).

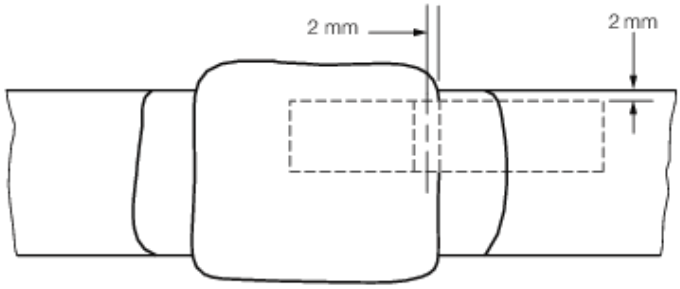
6. 2. 7 The results of all longitudinal tensile tests are to comply with the requirements of Table 11. 4. 2: Requirements for deposited metal tests (wire-flux combinations).

6. 2. 8 The bend test specimens are to be in accordance with Ch 11, 4.6 Butt weld test assemblies (two-run technique) 4.6.7 and Table 11. 4. 3: Requirements for butt weld tests (wire-flux combinations). Each surface of the weld is to be tested in tension.

Figure 11. 6. 2: Position of Charpy V-notch impact test specimens



(1) In the centre of the weld metal



(2) In the weld metal, 2 mm from the fusion line

6. 3 Annual tests

6. 3. 1 Annual tests are to consist of at least one butt weld test assembly using plate material 20 to 25 mm in thickness.

6. 3. 2 The assembly is to be prepared and tested in accordance with Ch 11, 6.2 Butt weld test assemblies except that only the following tests are required:

a. One longitudinal tensile test.
b. One transverse tensile test.
c. Two bend tests.
d. Two sets of three Charpy V-notch impact tests; one set with the notch at the centre of the weld (Figure 11. 6. 2: Position of Charpy V-notch impact test specimens, (1) In the centre of the weld metal), and one set with the notch in the weld metal 2 mm from the fusion line (Figure 11. 6. 2: Position of Charpy V-notch impact test specimens, (2) In the weld metal, 2 mm from the fusion line).
e. Chemical analysis.
f. One macro-section.

6. 3. 3 Where a consumable or combination is approved for a range of steels with different specified minimum strength levels, steel of the highest strength level is to be used for the preparation for the assembly required by Ch 11, 6.3 Annual tests 6.3.1.

PART

2

CHAPTER **11 Approval of Welding Consumables**

SECTION **7 Consumables for use in one-side welding with temporary backing materials**

7. 1 General

7. 1. 1 The requirements for approval of combinations including temporary backing material, for use in one-side welding techniques, are dependent on the technique used and which basic technique it most closely follows. The following are provided for:

a. Technique m — for manual electrode/backing combinations.
b. Technique S — for wire-gas/backing combinations used with semi-automatic multi-run technique.
c. Technique M — for wire-flux or wire-gas in combination with backing material (and maybe supplementary filler materials) used with an automatic multi-run technique.
d. Technique A — as for M but using a procedure with a high heat input rate (large bead size relative to thickness welded). This would apply to welds made by four or less runs in 20 mm thickness, or eight or less runs in 35 mm.

7. 1. 2 For technique m, S or M, a single butt weld is to be made in plate of 20–25 mm thickness. For technique A, two butt welds are to be made, one in plate of the maximum thickness recommended by the manufacturer, the other in plate of approximately half the thickness of the first. Usually this will involve thicknesses in the region of 35–40 mm and 20–25 mm respectively.

7. 1. 3 A wire and gas combination approved with an argon/carbon dioxide shielding gas where the carbon dioxide content is between 15-25 per cent is also approved for other combinations of argon/carbon dioxide, provided the carbon dioxide content is within the range 15-25 per cent. The range of approval is limited to ferritic consumables in solid wire, flux cored and coated wire forms and subject to the agreement of the consumable manufacturer and ACS.

7. 1. 4 Any unrecognised techniques or unusual combinations will be considered for approval subject to a test programme to be agreed based on the details of the technique and combination which are to be submitted in advance.

7. 1. 5 Where low hydrogen approval is required either by Table 11. 7. 1: Minimum low hydrogen approval requirements for one-side welding with combinations including temporary backing material or by the manufacturer, it should be noted that this will generally be achieved through separate testing of:

a. the backing material, and
b. the welding electrode or combination of wire-flux or wire-gas.

7. 1. 6 The hydrogen potential of the backing material is to be determined using the modified Gayley-Wooding method which expresses the total hydrogen content as water by weight per cent. The qualifying levels are:

To qualify as: H_2O g/100g sample

H15 0.5

H10 0.3

H5 0.2

7. 1. 7 The sampling and approval of the combinations without the backing are to follow the general requirements of Ch 11, 3 Electrodes for manual and gravity welding, Ch 11, 4 Wire-flux combinations for submerged-arc automatic welding or Ch 11, 5 Wires and wire-gas combinations for manual, semi-automatic and automatic welding, as appropriate.

Table 11. 7. 1: Minimum low hydrogen approval requirements for one-side welding with combinations including temporary backing material

Approval grades	'H' grade for m and S techniques	'H' grade for M technique	'H' grade for A technique
1 (1N), 2 (2N), 3 (3N)	NR	NR	NR
1Y, 2Y, 3Y, 4Y	H15 (*See* Note 2)	NR	NR
2Y40 to 5Y40	H15	H15	NR
3Y47	H10	H10	H15
3Y42 to 5Y42	H10	H10	H15
3Y46 to 5Y46	H10	H10	H15
3Y50 to 5Y50	H10	H10	H10
3Y55 to 5Y55	H5	H5	H10
3Y62 to 5Y62	H5	H5	H5
3Y69 to 5Y69	H5	H5	H5
3Y89 to 4Y89	H5	H5	H5
3Y96 to 4Y96	H5	H5	H5
$1\frac{1}{2}$ Ni	H15	H15	NR
$2\frac{1}{4}$Ni	H15	H15	NR
$3\frac{1}{2}$Ni	H15	H15	NR
5 Ni (*See* Note 3)	NR	NR	NR
9 Ni (*See* Note 3)	NR	NR	NR

Note *1.* NR – Not required. Approval may be obtained when requested.

Note *2.* Optional in this case. If low hydrogen approval is not obtained, there is a limitation on the carbon equivalent of the steel which is permitted to be welded.

Note *3.* Assumes the use of an austenitic, non-transformable, filler material.

7. 1. 8 Combinations approved with multi-run technique (m, S and M) for normal and higher strength levels up to and including 'Y' are also considered suitable for welding steels in the three strength levels below that for which they have been approved.

7. 1. 9 Combinations approved with multi-run technique (m, S and M) for strength levels Y40 to Y50, but excluding Y47, are also considered suitable for welding steels in two strength levels below that for which they have been approved.

7. 1. 10 Combinations approved with multi-run technique (m, S and M) for strength levels Y47, Y55 and above are also considered suitable for welding steels in only one strength level below that for which they have been approved.

7. 1. 11 Combinations approved with multi-run technique (m, S and M) for strength level Y89 are considered suitable for welding steels in only this strength level.

7. 1. 12 Combinations approved with multi-run technique (m, S and M) for strength level Y96 are also considered suitable for welding steels in one strength level below that for which they have been approved.

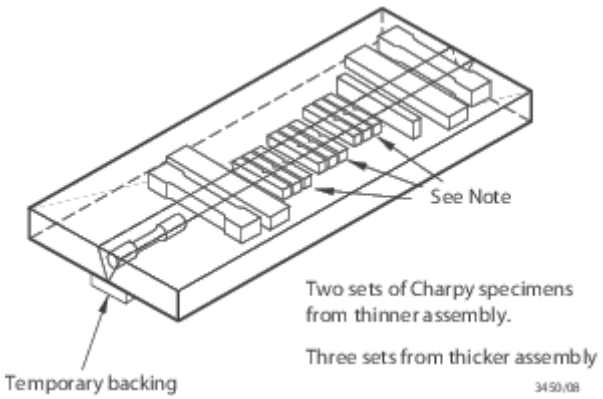
7. 1. 13 Combinations approved for the 'A' multi-run technique are not considered suitable for welding steels of any other strength level with that technique.

7. 2 Approval tests for manual (m), semi-automatic (S) and automatic multi-run (M) techniques

7. 2. 1 For each position to be approved, one butt weld assembly is to be prepared using plates of 20 — 25 mm thickness as shown in Figure 11. 7. 1: Butt weld test assembly and specimens for all techniques. The grade of plate used is to be no higher in toughness than that for which approval is required. The strength is to be appropriate to the grade for which welding approval is requested.

7. 2. 2 The thickness of test assembly may be taken as 50 mm for Y47 base material.

Figure 11. 7. 1: Butt weld test assembly and specimens for all techniques



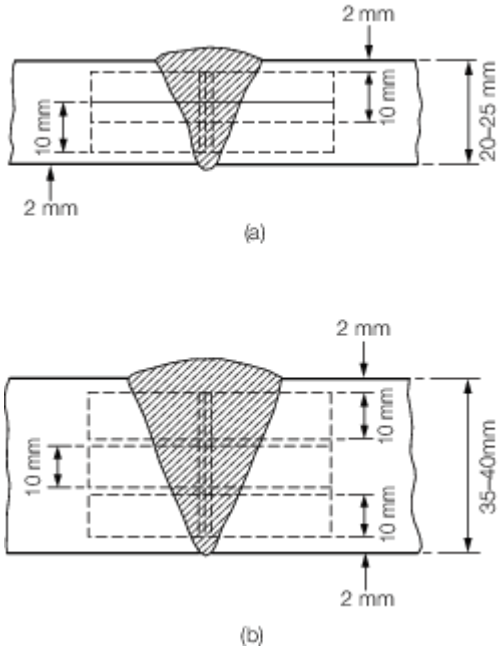
Note *See* Figure 11. 7. 2: Position of Charpy V-notch impact tests for one-side automatic welding

7. 2. 3 The edge preparation and welding conditions are to be in accordance with the recommendations of the manufacturers. For the m and S techniques, the assembly is to be welded using, for the first run wire of the smallest diameter recommended by the manufacturer and, for the remaining runs, wire of the largest diameter to be approved. For the M technique any size wire as recommended by the manufacturer can be used.

7. 2. 4 Test specimens are to be prepared as shown in Figure 11. 7. 1: Butt weld test assembly and specimens for all techniques and Figure 11. 7. 2: Position of Charpy V-notch impact tests for one-side automatic welding:

a. One longitudinal tensile test specimen (from the centre of the weld).
b. Two transverse tensile specimens.
c. Two bend test specimens, one with the face in tension, the other with the root in tension.
d. One macrosection.
e. Two sets of three Charpy impact test specimens positioned and notched in accordance with Figure 11. 7. 2: Position of Charpy V-notch impact tests for one-side automatic welding.

Figure 11. 7. 2: Position of Charpy V-notch impact tests for one-side automatic welding



7. 2. 5 The results of all transverse tensile, bend and impact tests are to comply with the requirements in Table 11. 3. 3: Requirements for butt weld tests (covered electrodes) for m and S technique, and Table 11. 3. 4: Permitted methods for obtaining low hydrogen grading for M technique. The position of fracture of the transverse tensile test is to be reported. The appearance of the bend test specimens is to be in accordance with Ch 11, 3.3 Butt weld test assemblies 3.3.13.

7. 2. 6 The results of all longitudinal tensile tests are to comply with the requirements in Table 11. 3. 2: Requirements for deposited metal tests (covered electrodes).

7. 2. 7 Low hydrogen approval is required in accordance with Table 11. 7. 1: Minimum low hydrogen approval requirements for one-side welding with combinations including temporary backing material.

7. 2. 8 Chemical analyses are to be made and reported from positions corresponding to the weld metal in the upper and lower Charpy specimens of the downhand butt weld. These are to be supplied by the manufacturer and are to include the content of all significant elements. The results of the analysis are not to exceed the limit values specified in the standards or by the manufacturer, the narrower tolerances being applicable in each case.

7. 3 Approval tests for high heat input automatic (A) techniques

7. 3. 1 Two butt weld assemblies are to be prepared, usually one of 35–40 mm thickness, the other 20–25 mm, as shown in Figure 11. 7. 1: Butt weld test assembly and specimens for all techniques,

noting that in the thinner assembly only two sets of Charpy specimens are required. The grade of plates used is to be no higher in toughness than that for which approval is required. The strength is to be appropriate to the grade for which welding approval is requested.

7. 3. 2 For Y47 grade, the thicker assembly is to be prepared from the maximum thickness for which approval is required, and the thinner assembly is to be prepared from 50 mm thickness. Where approval is required for 50 mm thickness, only one assembly from that thickness is required.

7. 3. 3 The edge preparation and welding conditions are to be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, and are to be reported to ACS. The diameters of wires are to be in accordance with the recommendations of the manufacturer and are to be reported.

7. 3. 4 Test specimens as follows are to be prepared as shown in Figure 11. 7. 1: Butt weld test assembly and specimens for all techniques and Figure 11. 7. 2: Position of Charpy V-notch impact tests for one-side automatic welding:

a. One longitudinal tensile test specimen (from centre of weld).
b. Two transverse tensile test specimens.
c. Two bend test specimens.
d. One macro-section.
e. From assembly 20 to 25 mm thick, two sets of three impact test specimens positioned and notched in accordance with Figure 11. 7. 2: Position of Charpy V-notch impact tests for one-side automatic welding.
f. From assembly 35 to 40 mm thick, three sets of three impact test specimens positioned and notched in accordance with Figure 11. 7. 2: Position of Charpy V-notch impact tests for one-side automatic welding.
g. From assembly of thickness 50 mm or more, three sets of three impact test specimens positioned and notched in accordance with Figure 11. 7. 2: Position of Charpy V-notch impact tests for one-side automatic welding. The second set positioned in the mid-thickness of test assembly.

The bend specimens are to be tested, one with the face in tension, the other with the root in tension.

7. 3. 5 The results of all transverse tensile, bend and impact tests are to comply with the requirements of Table 11. 4. 3: Requirements for butt weld tests (wire-flux combinations). The appearance of the bend test specimens is to be in accordance with Ch 11, 3.3 Butt weld test assemblies 3.3.13. The Charpy V-notch impact test requirements are as for the two-run technique in Table 11. 4. 3: Requirements for butt weld tests (wire-flux combinations).

7. 3. 6 The results of all longitudinal tensile tests are to comply with the requirements in Table 11. 3. 2: Requirements for deposited metal tests (covered electrodes), except that for Grades 1Y, 2Y and 3Y the tensile strength is to be not less than 490 N/mm^2.

7. 3. 7 Low hydrogen approval is required in accordance with Table 11. 7. 1: Minimum low hydrogen approval requirements for one-side welding with combinations including temporary backing material.

7. 3. 8 Chemical analyses are to be made and reported from positions corresponding to the weld metal in the uppermost and lowest Charpy specimens in the thicker plate weld. This is to be supplied by the manufacturer and is to include the content of all significant elements. The results of the analysis are not to exceed the limit values specified in the standards or by the manufacturer, the narrower tolerances being applicable in each case.

7. 4 Annual tests

7. 4. 1 Annual tests are to consist of, at least, one butt weld test assembly, for each technique approved, using plates of 20 to 25 mm thickness. For the Y47 grade the thickness of plates may be taken as 50mm.

7. 4. 2 The assembly is to be prepared and tested in accordance with Ch 11, 7.2 Approval tests for manual (m), semi-automatic (S) and automatic multi-run (M) techniques or Ch 11, 7.3 Approval tests for high heat input automatic (A) techniques , as appropriate, except that only the following tests are required:

a. One longitudinal tensile test (from centre of weld).
b. One transverse tensile test.
c. Two bend tests.
d. One set of three impact tests taken from the root of the weld and the specimens notched in accordance with Figure 11. 7. 2: Position of Charpy V-notch impact tests for one-side automatic welding.
e. Chemical analysis (one only).

7. 4. 3 A hydrogen test is required for Y89 and Y96 grades.

PART

2

CHAPTER **11 Approval of Welding Consumables**

SECTION **8 Consumables for welding austenitic and duplex stainless steels**

8. 1 General

8. 1. 1 Tests for the approval of consumables intended for welding the austenitic and duplex stainless steels detailed in Ch 3, 7 Austenitic and duplex stainless steels are to be carried out generally in accordance with the Ch 11, 3 Electrodes for manual and gravity welding, Ch 11, 4 Wire-flux combinations for submerged-arc automatic welding, Ch 11, 5 Wires and wire-gas combinations for manual, semi-automatic and automatic welding, Ch 11, 6 Consumables for use in electro-slag and electro-gas welding or Ch 11, 7 Consumables for use in one-side welding with temporary backing materials relevant to the type of consumable or combination.

8. 1. 2 Approval will be indicated by the grade or grades of parent stainless steel for which the consumable or combination is approved.

8. 1. 3 Where a shielding gas is employed separate approval will be required for each specific shielding gas composition.

8. 1. 4 Consumables for welding the austenitic stainless steels and the duplex stainless steels to carbon or carbon-manganese steels will be approved in a similar manner. Parent plate used for the butt and fillet weld test assemblies will be carbon or carbon-manganese steel with either austenitic stainless steel or duplex stainless steel, as appropriate. Approval will be indicated by `SS/CMn' and `Dup/CMn' respectively, however, no buttering of test assembly plates is allowed for these two approvals.

8. 1. 5 Separate approval will be given for welding chemical and cryogenic applications. For chemical use, evidence of relevant corrosion resistance will be required. Charpy impact toughness tests will be required for all uses, but for cryogenic use the Charpy impact toughness requirements are more severe.

8. 1. 6 The welding technique will be indicated in the approval grading by a letter:

m = for manual SMAW or GTAW welding.

S = for wire-gas combinations used with a semi-automatic multi-run technique.

M = for wire-flux or wire-gas combinations used with an automatic multi-run technique.

T = for wire-flux or wire-gas combinations used with an automatic two-run technique.

A = as for M but using a procedure with a high heat input rate (large bead size relative to thickness welded). This would apply to welds made by four or less runs in 20 mm thickness, or eight or less runs in 35 mm.

8. 2 Deposited metal test assemblies

8. 2. 1 Where the relevant Section requires deposited metal assemblies to be made and tested, the plates used must be either of the type for which approval is required or of normal strength carbon, or carbon-manganese steel with the prepared edges built up with stainless steel weld metal and finished with a layer of weld metal from the consumable to be approved.

8. 2. 2 The chemical analysis of the deposited weld metal is to be reported, including all significant elements. The elements reported will be dependent on the type of stainless steel for which approval of the consumables is requested. Any unusual weld metal compositions will have to be justified in respect of the particular approval requested. This is to be supplied by the manufacturer and is to include the content of all significant elements. The results of the analysis are not to exceed the limit values specified in the standards or by the manufacturer, the narrower tolerances being applicable in each case.

8. 2. 3 The results of all tensile and notch impact tests are to comply with the requirements given in Table 11. 8. 1: Requirements for deposited metal tests (manual, semi-automatic and automatic multi-run techniques) as appropriate.

8. 2. 4 The ferrite content in the last weld run from each deposited metal assembly is to be determined by physical or metallographic means, and reported, indicating the method of determination.

8. 3 Butt weld test assemblies

8. 3. 1 Where the relevant Section requires butt weld assemblies to be made and tested, the plates used are to be either of the type for which approval is required or of steel having strength and ductility within the range specified for the grade to be approved. In the latter case, provided the consumable is metallurgically compatible with the base material to be used, the prepared edges are to be built up with a layer of weld metal before final machining of the weld preparation.

8. 3. 2 Butt weld assemblies are to be prepared for each position (downhand, horizontal-vertical, vertical-upward, vertical-downward, and overhead) for which the electrode/wire is to be approved.

8. 3. 3 The results of transverse tensile, notch impact and bend tests are to comply with the requirements of Table 11. 8. 2: Requirements for butt weld tests (all techniques) as appropriate. The position of fracture is to be reported to ACS.

8. 3. 4 The ferrite content at the centre of the weld metal in each butt weld assembly is to be determined by physical or metallographic means, and meet the requirements in Table 11. 8. 2: Requirements for butt weld tests (all techniques). The method of determination is to be reported.

8. 3. 5 For austenitic and duplex stainless steel approvals (except for types 304L, 316L, 321, 347, SS/CMn and Dup/CMn), an appropriate sample from each butt weld assembly is to be submitted to the corrosion testing provided in ASTM G48, Method `C'. The results are to be reported so as to allow confirmation of the maximum acceptable pitting corrosion resistance temperature. This will be part of the approval grading and will be set at 5°C intervals. The minimum pitting corrosion temperature would not be expected to be less than 20°C.

8. 4 Fillet weld test assemblies

8. 4. 1 Where the relevant Section requires fillet weld assemblies to be made and tested, the plates used must be either of the type for which approval is required or of steel having strength and ductility within the range specified for the grade to be approved. In the latter case, the surfaces on which the fillet weld beads are to be deposited are to be cut back by machining and then built up to original dimensions with weld metal from the consumable to be approved.

Table 11. 8. 1: Requirements for deposited metal tests (manual, semi-automatic and automatic multi-run techniques)

Grade	0.2% proof stress N/mm² minimum	1% proof stress N/mm² minimum	Tensile strength N/mm² minimum	Elongation on 50 mm % minimum	Charpy V-notch impact tests		
					Chemical test temperature °C	Cryogenic test temperature °C	Average energy *See* Note 1 J minimum
304L	270	310	500	25	-20	-196	29
304LN	305	345	530	22	-20	-196	29
316L	270	310	500	22	-20	-196	29
316LN	305	345	530	22	-20	-196	29
317L	305	345	530	22	-20	-196	29
317LN	340	380	570	22	-20	-196	29
321	290	330	550	22	-20	-196	29
347	290	330	550	22	-20	-196	29
S 31254	370	410	650	22	-20	-196	29
N 08904	270	310	500	22	-20	-196	29
SS/CMn	270	310	500	22	-20	-60	29
S 31260	485	525	690	20	-20	*See* Note 2	40
S 31803	450	490	620	25	-20	*See* Note 2	40
S 32550	550	590	760	15	-20	*See* Note 2	40
S 32750	550	590	800	15	-20	*See* Note 2	40
S 32760	550	590	750	25	-20	*See* Note 2	40
Dup/CMn	270	310	500	22	-20	*See* Note 2	40

Note *1.* Energy values from individual impact test specimens are to comply with Ch 11, 1.4 Approval procedures 1.4.3.

Note *2.* Approval for cryogenic applications is to be obtained at the procedure approval stage.

Table 11. 8. 2: Requirements for butt weld tests (all techniques)

Grade	Tensile strength N/mm² minimum	Bend test ratio: $\frac{D}{t}$	Weld ferrite content %	Charpy V-notch impact tests		
				Chemical test temperature °C	Cryogenic test temperature °C	Average energy (*See* Note 1) J minimum
304L	500	3	4-12	-20	-196	27
304LN	530	3	4-12	-20	-196	27
316L	500	3	4-12	-20	-196	27

316LN	530	3	4-12	-20	-196	27
317L	530	3	4-12	-20	-196	27
317LN	570	3	4-12	-20	-196	27
321	550	3	4-12	-20	-196	27
347	550	3	4-12	-20	-196	27
S 31254	650	3	(*See* Note 2)	-20	-196	27
N 08904	500	3	(*See* Note 2)	-20	-196	27
SS/CMn	500	3	4-12	-20	-60	27
S 31260	690	4	35-65	-20	(*See* Note 3)	40
S 31803	620	3	35-65	-20	(*See* Note 3)	40
S 32550	760	6	35-65	-20	(*See* Note 3)	40
S 32750	800	6	35-65	-20	(*See* Note 3)	40
S 32760	750	6	35-65	-20	(*See* Note 3)	40
Dup/CMn	500	3	(*See* Note 2)	-20	(*See* Note 3)	40

Note 1. Energy values from individual impact test specimens are to comply with Ch 11, 1.4 Approval procedures 1.4.3.

Note 2. To be reported for special consideration.

Note 3. Approval for cryogenic applications is to be obtained at the procedure approval stage.

8. 4. 2 The ferrite content at the centre of the weld metal in each fillet weld bead of each assembly is to be determined from the centre macro-section by physical or metallographic means, and reported. The method of determination is also to be reported to ACS.

8. 4. 3 Where approval is sought for fillet welding only, corrosion testing is to be carried out in accordance with Ch 11, 8.3 Butt weld test assemblies 8.3.5 from a sample taken from the deposited metal test assembly.

8. 5 Annual tests

8. 5. 1 Annual tests are to be carried out as required by the relevant Section appropriate to the type of consumable and welding technique. The tests are to include a weld ferrite content in accordance with Ch 11, 8.2 Deposited metal test assemblies 8.2.4 or Ch 11, 8.3 Butt weld test assemblies 8.3.4 as appropriate.

8. 5. 2 The results of all tests are to comply with the requirements given in Table 11. 8. 1: Requirements for deposited metal tests (manual, semi-automatic and automatic multi-run techniques) and Table 11. 8. 2: Requirements for butt weld tests (all techniques) as appropriate.

PART

2

CHAPTER **11 Approval of Welding Consumables**

SECTION **9 Consumables for welding aluminium alloys**

9. 1 General

9. 1. 1 Tests for the approval of consumables intended for welding the aluminium alloys detailed in Ch 8 Aluminium Alloys are to be carried out generally in accordance with the requirements of Ch 11, 1 General, Ch 11, 2 Mechanical testing procedures and Ch 11, 5 Wires and wire-gas combinations for manual, semi-automatic and automatic welding, except as otherwise detailed in this Section.

9. 1. 2 Approval will be indicated by the grade shown in Table 11. 9. 1: Requirements for butt weld tests. Plate of the corresponding type of aluminium alloy and of appropriate thickness is to be used for the preparation of the weld test assemblies, and may be of any temper listed in ACS Rules.

Table 11. 9. 1: Requirements for butt weld tests

Consumable Approval Grade (*See* Note 1)	Base material used for the test	Tensile strength N/mm^2 minimum	Bend test ratio: $\frac{D}{t}$
ACS RA/ACS WA	5754	190	3
ACS RB/ACS WB	5086	240	6
ACS RC1/ACS WC1	5083	275	6
ACS RC2/ACS WC2 (*See* Note 2)	5383 or 5456	290	6
ACS RC3/ACS WC3(*See* Note 2)	5059	330	6
ACS RD/ACS WD(*See* Note 4)	6005A	170	6
	6061	170	6
	6082	170	6
Note *1.* The prefixes 'R' and 'W' indicate 'rod' form (for Gas Tungsten Arc Welding (GTAW)) or 'wire' form (for Gas Metal Arc Welding (GMAW) and GTAW). **Note** *2.* Approval of grade ACS RC2/ACS WC2 confers approval of 5383, 5456 and 5083 base material grade.			

Note *3.* Approval of grade ACS RC3/ACS WC3 confers approval of 5059, 5383, 5456 and 5083 base material grades.
Note *4.* Approval of grade ACS RD/ACS WD confers approval of 6005A, 6061 and 6082 base material grades.

9. 1. 3 The welding technique will be indicated in the approval grading by a letter:

m = manual multi-run welding (GTAW),

S = semi-automatic multi-run welding (GMAW),

M = automatic multi-run welding (GTAW or GMAW),

T = automatic two-run welding (GMAW).

9. 1. 4 The compositions of the shielding gas and the filler/electrode wire are to be reported.

9. 1. 5 Approval granted using the multi-run technique for a specific filler/electrode wire with a gas in one of the groups listed in Table 11. 9. 2: Shielding gas compositions will extend to any other gas compositions within that same group, provided that the gas composition is within the range recommended by the consumable manufacturer, subject to agreement with ACS.

Table 11. 9. 2: Shielding gas compositions

Group	Gas composition (Vol. %) (*See* Note)	
	Helium	Argon
I-1	—	100
I-2	100	—
I-3	>0 ≤33	Remainder
I-4	>33 ≤66	Remainder
I-5	>66 ≤95	Remainder
S	Special gas	
Note Gases of other composition (mixed gases) or special purity may be considered as special gases and will require separate approval tests.		

9. 1. 6 Approval granted for the two-run technique will be for a specific shielding gas composition; additional tests may be required if a change in shielding gas composition is sought.

9. 1. 7 On completion of welding, assemblies are to be allowed to cool naturally to ambient temperature. Welded test assemblies and test specimens are not to be subjected to any heat treatment after welding except for the alloy Grades 6005A, 6061 and 6082. These are to be allowed to naturally age at ambient temperature for a period of 72 hours from the completion of welding, before testing is carried out. A second solution heat treatment is not permitted.

9. 1. 8 All butt test assemblies are to be subjected to both radiographic and visual examination and imperfections such as lack of fusion, lack of penetration, cavities, inclusions, pores and cracks assessed in accordance with Intermediate Level C of ISO 10042, aided where necessary by dye penetrant and ultrasonic examination.

9. 1. 9 Fillet weld test assemblies and macro-sections are to be visually examined for imperfections, such as lack of fusion, lack of penetration, cavities, inclusions, pores and cracks, in accordance with Intermediate Level C of ISO 10042, aided where necessary by radiographic and dye penetrant examination.

9. 2 Approval tests for manual, semi-automatic and automatic multi-run techniques

9. 2. 1 Plate of the corresponding type of aluminium alloy and of appropriate thickness is to be used for the preparation of the weld test assemblies.

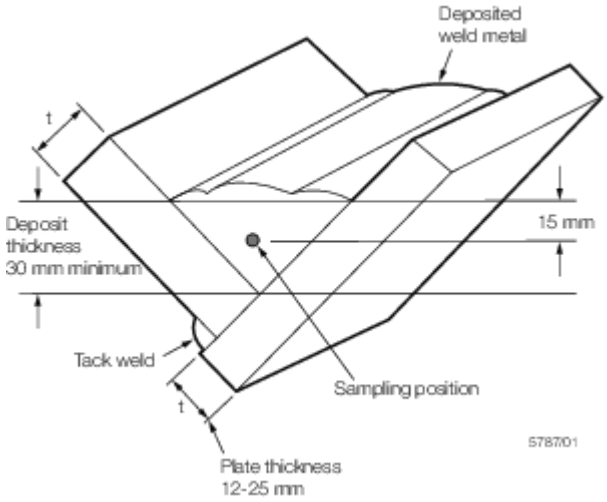
9. 2. 2 The welding parameters are to be within the range recommended by the manufacturer and are to be reported.

9. 2. 3 Welded assemblies are to be prepared and tested in accordance with Ch 11, 9.3 Deposited metal test assembly, Ch 11, 9.4, Butt weld test assemblies and Ch 11, 9.5, Fillet weld test assembly.

9. 3 Deposited metal test assembly

9. 3. 1 One assembly is to be prepared in the downhand position as shown in Figure 11. 9. 1: Deposited metal test assembly.

Figure 11. 9. 1: Deposited metal test assembly



9. 3. 2 The chemical composition of the plate used for the assembly is to be compatible with the weld metal.

9. 3. 3 The thickness of the plate used, and the length of the assembly, are to be appropriate to the welding process. The plate thickness is to be not less than 12 mm.

9. 3. 4 For the approval of filler wire/gas and electrode wire/gas combinations for manual or semi-automatic welding by GTAW or GMAW, one test assembly is to be welded using any size of wire within the range for which approval is sought.

9. 3. 5 For automatic multi-run approval, one test assembly is to be welded by the respective process using the recommended diameter of wire.

9. 3. 6 The weld metal is to be deposited in multi-run layers in accordance with normal practice. The direction of deposition of each layer is to alternate from each end of the plate.

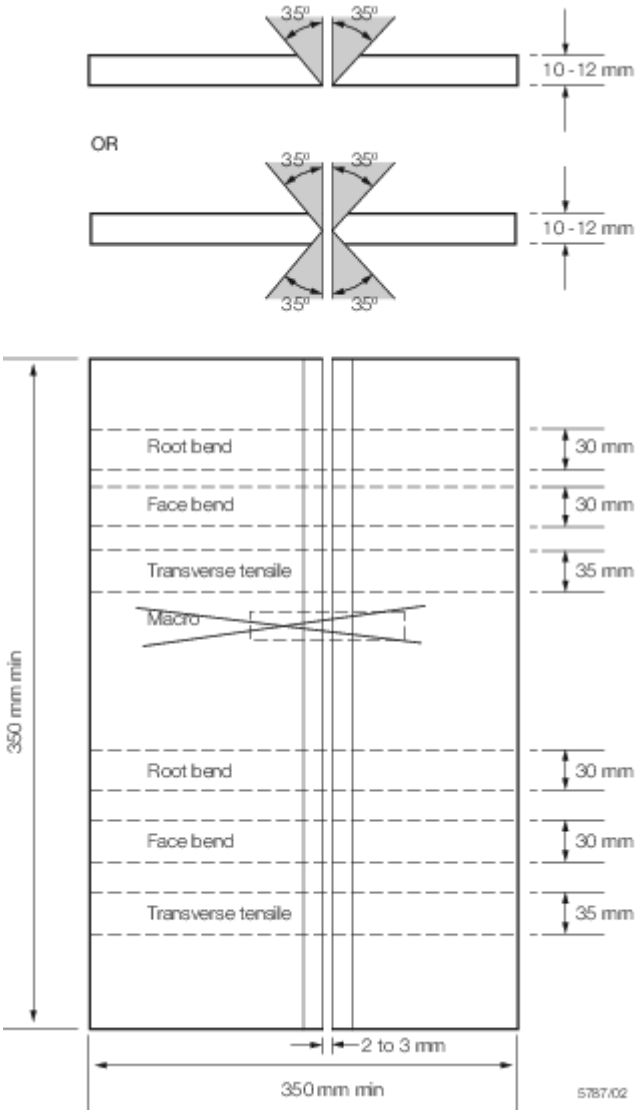
9. 3. 7 The deposited weld metal in the assembly is to be analysed and reported including the contents of all significant elements. The elements reported will be dependent on the type of aluminium alloy for which approval of the consumables is requested. The results of the analysis are not to exceed the limit values specified in the standards or by the manufacturer, the narrower tolerances being applicable in each case.

9. 4 Butt weld test assemblies

9. 4. 1 Plate of the corresponding type of aluminium alloy and of an appropriate thickness is to be used for the preparation of the test assemblies.

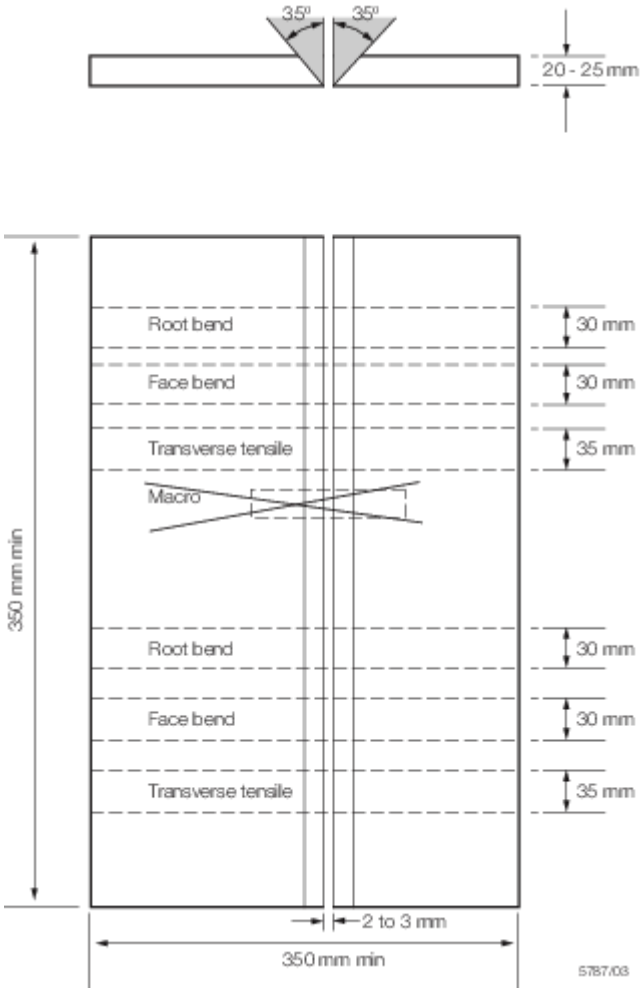
9. 4. 2 In order to ensure sound and representative welds, it is essential that test assemblies are cleaned and degreased prior to welding. Assemblies as shown in Figure 11. 9. 2: Butt weld test assembly (positional, multi-run technique) are to be prepared for each welding position (downhand, horizontal-vertical, vertical-upward, vertical-downward, and overhead) for which the consumable is recommended by the manufacturer; except that consumables satisfying the requirements for downhand and vertical-upward positions will be considered as also complying with the requirements for the horizontal-vertical position. Any wire diameter(s) to be approved may be used.

Figure 11. 9. 2: Butt weld test assembly (positional, multi-run technique)



9. 4. 3 One assembly, as shown in Figure 11. 9. 3: Butt weld test assembly (downhand, multi-run technique), is to be prepared for welding in the downhand position. The assembly is to be welded using, for the first run, wire of the smallest diameter recommended by the manufacturer and, for the remaining runs, wire of the largest diameter to be approved.

Figure 11. 9. 3: Butt weld test assembly (downhand, multi-run technique)



9. 4. 4 The welding conditions are to be in accordance with the recommendations of the manufacturer and are to be reported in detail.

9. 4. 5 The welded assemblies are to be subjected to NDE. Imperfections are to be assessed in accordance with Ch 11, 9.1 General 9.1.8.

9. 4. 6 The test specimens are to be taken from the welded assemblies as shown in Figure 11. 9. 2: Butt weld test assembly (positional, multi-run technique) and Figure 11. 9. 3: Butt weld test assembly (downhand, multi-run technique). For each assembly they are to comprise:

- 2 transverse tensile specimens;
- 2 face bend specimens; and
- 2 root bend specimens.

9. 4. 7 All tensile test specimens are to have a tensile strength not less than the respective value shown in Table 11. 9. 1: Requirements for butt weld tests. The position of each fracture is to be reported.

9. 4. 8 The bend test specimens are to be bent around a former having a diameter not more than the number of times the thickness of the test specimen, as shown in Table 11. 9. 1: Requirements for butt weld tests, and can be considered as complying with the requirements if, after bending to an angle of not less than 180°, no crack or other open defect exceeding 3 mm in length can be *Seen* on the outer surface. Flaws appearing at the corners of a test specimen may be ignored.

9. 4. 9 In order to obtain uniform bending of the bend test specimens, it is recommended that the wrap-around or guided bend test using a roller method is employed.

9. 5 Fillet weld test assembly

9. 5. 1 When approval is being sought for both butt and fillet welding, one assembly is to be prepared and welded in the horizontal-vertical position and tested in accordance with the appropriate requirements of Ch 11, 3.5, Fillet weld test assemblies, except that the plates are to be of an aluminium alloy compatible with the weld metal, that no hardness tests are required and that for automatic multi-run approval only one fillet weld bead is to be made using the recommended wire diameter. In this case, the bead size is to be as large as the maximum single bead size recommended by the manufacturer for fillet welding.

9. 5. 2 When approval is being sought for fillet welding only, one assembly is to be prepared and welded in each position for which approval is sought, and tested as detailed in Ch 11, 9.5 Fillet weld test assembly 9.5.1.

9. 5. 3 The results of examination of the macro-specimens and the fractured fillet welds are to be reported in accordance with Ch 11, 3.5 Fillet weld test assemblies 3.5.4 and Ch 11, 3.5 Fillet weld test assemblies 3.5.6. Imperfections are to be assessed in accordance with Ch 11, 9.1 General 9.1.9.

9. 6 Approval tests for two-run technique

9. 6. 1 Two butt weld test assemblies are to be prepared using the following plate thicknesses:

a. one with the maximum thickness for which approval is requested,
b. one with a thickness approximately one half to two thirds that of the maximum thickness.

9. 7 Butt weld test assemblies (two-run technique)

9. 7. 1 The plates used are to be of the aluminium alloy appropriate to the approval required as shown in Table 11. 9. 1: Requirements for butt weld tests. The composition of the plate material is to be within the range specified for that alloy in Table 11. 8. 2: Requirements for butt weld tests (all techniques) in Ch 8 Aluminium Alloys and is to be reported including all significant elements.

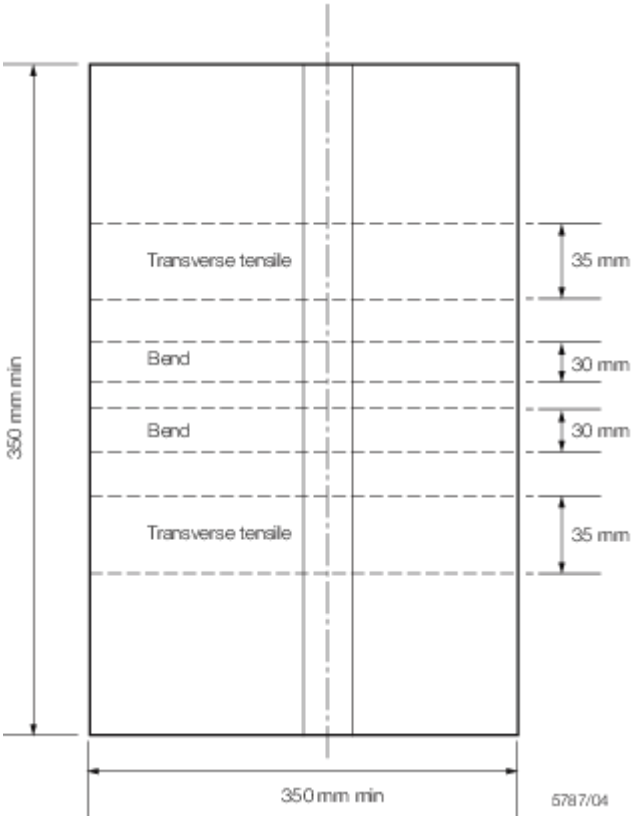
9. 7. 2 The wire diameter, edge preparation, welding current, arc voltage and travel speed are to be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and are to be reported.

9. 7. 3 Each butt weld is to be made in two runs, one from each side. After completion of the first run the assembly is to be left in still air until it has cooled to less than 50°C.

9. 7. 4 The welded assemblies are to be subjected to NDE. Imperfections are to be assessed in accordance with Ch 11, 9.1 General 9.1.8.

9. 7. 5 The test specimens as shown in Figure 11. 9. 4: Butt weld test assembly (two-run technique) are to be prepared from each test assembly. The edges of the discards are to be polished and etched, and must show complete fusion and inter-run penetration of the welds. Each cut in the assembly is also to be examined to confirm that complete fusion and penetration have been achieved.

Figure 11. 9. 4: Butt weld test assembly (two-run technique)



9. 7. 6 The results of the transverse tensile tests are to be as in Ch 11, 9.4 Butt weld test assemblies 9.4.7 and of the bend tests as in Ch 11, 9.4 Butt weld test assemblies 9.4.8. The position of the fracture in each transverse tensile specimen is to be reported.

9. 8 Annual tests

9. 8. 1 Annual tests are to consist of the following:

a. for combinations approved for the multi-run technique, one deposited metal assembly in accordance with Ch 11, 9.3 Deposited metal test assembly and one downhand butt assembly in accordance with Ch 11, 9.4, Butt weld test assemblies Figure 11. 9. 2: Butt weld test assembly (positional, multi-run technique);

b. for combinations approved for the two-run technique, one butt weld assembly in accordance with Ch 11, 9.7 Butt weld test assemblies (two-run technique) using plate material of thickness equal to one half to two thirds that of the maximum thickness approved.

PART

2

CHAPTER **12 Welding Qualifications**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General qualification requirements**		**667**
	1. 1	General	667
	1. 2	Design	667
	1. 3	Materials	668
	1. 4	Performance of welding tests	668
SECTION 2	**Welding procedure qualification tests for steels**		**669**
	2. 1	General	669
	2. 2	Welding variables	669
	2. 3	Steel test assemblies	670
	2. 4	Welding of steel test assemblies	676
	2. 5	Non-destructive examination (NDE)	677
	2. 6	Destructive tests – General requirements	677
	2. 7	Destructive tests for steel butt welds	677
	2. 8	Destructive tests for steel fillet welds	686
	2. 9	Destructive tests for T, K, Y steel nozzle welds	688
	2. 10	Destructive tests for steel pipe branch welds	689
	2. 11	Destructive tests for weld cladding of steel	689
	2. 12	Mechanical test acceptance criteria for steels	690
	2. 13	Failure to meet requirements (Retests)	693
	2. 14	Test records	693
	2. 15	Range of approval	693
	2. 16	Welding procedure specification (WPS)	697
SECTION 3	**Specific requirements for stainless steels**		**698**
	3. 1	Scope	698
	3. 2	Austenitic stainless steels	698
	3. 3	Duplex stainless steels	698

3. 4 Martensitic stainless steels 699
SECTION 4 Welding procedure tests for non-ferrous alloys 701
4. 1 Requirements for aluminium alloys 701
4. 2 Requirements for copper alloys 705
SECTION 5 Welder qualification tests 708
5. 1 Scope 708
5. 2 Welder qualification test assemblies 708
5. 3 Examination and testing 709
5. 4 Acceptance criteria 711
5. 5 Failure to meet requirements 711
5. 6 Range of approval 711
5. 7 Welders qualification certification 718
SECTION 6 Qualification of friction stir welding of aluminium alloys 720
6. 1 Scope 720
6. 2 Welding equipment 720
6. 3 Weld procedures 720
6. 4 Qualification of welding operators 721

PART

2

CHAPTER **12 Welding Qualifications**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 12. 2. 1: Equivalent designations of welding positions 675
Table 12. 2. 2: Impact test requirements for butt joints (t ≤ 50 mm) *See* Notes 1 and 2 691
Table 12. 2. 3: Impact test requirements for butt joints (t > 50 mm) *See* Notes 1 and 2 692
Table 12. 2. 4: Range of approval for different types of butt joints 694
Table 12. 2. 5: Welding procedure thickness approval range - Butt welds 695
Table 12. 2. 6: Diameter range approved 695
Table 12. 3. 1: Requirements for ferrite content and corrosion tests for duplex stainless steel test welds 699
Table 12. 4. 1: Acceptance criteria for surface imperfections of aluminium alloys 701
Table 12. 4. 2: Acceptance criteria for internal imperfections of aluminium alloys 702
Table 12. 4. 3: Tensile strength requirements by grade for aluminium alloys 703
Table 12. 4. 4: Welding procedure approval, welding positions for aluminium alloys 704
Table 12. 4. 5: Welding procedure approval, aluminium material grades approved 705
Table 12. 4. 6: Range of qualification for parent material thickness 705
Table 12. 4. 7: Range of qualification of throat thickness for fillet welds 705
Table 12. 4. 8: Minimum transverse tensile strengths for welded copper alloy propellers 706
Table 12. 4. 9: Former diameters for bend testing of copper alloy welds 706
Table 12. 4. 10: Range of approval for copper alloy material grades 707
Table 12. 5. 1: Welder qualification test requirements 709
Table 12. 5. 2: Welder qualification materials groupings 712
Table 12. 5. 3: Welder qualification, range of approval for material groups 713
Table 12. 5. 4: Welder qualification, range of approval for material thickness 714
Table 12. 5. 5: Welder qualification, diameter range of approval for pipes and hollow sections 715
Table 12. 5. 6: Range of welded joints for welder qualification 715
Table 12. 5. 7: Welding position ranges for welder qualification 715

PART

2

CHAPTER **12 Welding Qualifications**

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 12. 2. 1: Butt weld test assembly in plate 670
Figure 12. 2. 2: Butt weld test assembly in pipe 671
Figure 12. 2. 3: Fillet weld test assembly in plate 671
Figure 12. 2. 4: Plate butt weld test positions 672
Figure 12. 2. 5: Pipe butt weld test positions 673
Figure 12. 2. 6: Plate fillet weld test positions 674
Figure 12. 2. 7: Pipe fillet weld test positions 675
Figure 12. 2. 8: Butt welds in plate 678
Figure 12. 2. 9: Butt welds in pipe less than 750 mm diameter 680
Figure 12. 2. 10: Transverse bend test specimens 682
Figure 12. 2. 11: Locations of V-notch for butt weld of normal heat input (heat input ≤ 50 kJ/cm) 683
Figure 12. 2. 12: Locations of V-notch for butt weld of high heat input (heat input > 50 kJ/cm) 684
Figure 12. 2. 13: Locations of V-notch tests for butt welds intended for liquefied gas containment systems 685
Figure 12. 2. 14: Hardness testing locations for butt welds 686
Figure 12. 2. 15: Hardness test locations for fillet welds 687
Figure 12. 2. 16: Location of macro-examination test specimens for T, K and Y joints 688
Figure 12. 2. 17: Hardness test locations for T, K and Y joints 689
Figure 12. 2. 18: Type and location of test specimens for weld cladding 690
Figure 12. 5. 1: Preparation and fracture testing of test specimens for a fillet weld in plate 710
Figure 12. 5. 2: Preparation and fracture testing of test specimens for a butt weld in plate 710
Figure 12. 5. 3: Dimensions and types of test assembly for butt tack welding 717
Figure 12. 5. 4: Dimensions and types of test assembly for fillet tack welding 718

PART

2

CHAPTER **12 Welding Qualifications**

SECTION **1 General qualification requirements**

1. 1 General

1. 1. 1 This Section applies to all welding qualifications and tests required to be performed in the course of new construction, conversions, modifications or repairs made on ships, other marine structures and their associated pressure vessels, machinery and equipment.

1. 1. 2 These Rules also apply to all welding work related to other applications for which Asia Classification Society (hereinafter referred to as ACS) have issued Rules or have an interest.

1. 1. 3 It is the responsibility of the manufacturer to ensure compliance with all aspects of these Rules. All deviations are to be recorded as non-compliances and brought to the attention of the Surveyor along with the corrective actions taken. Failure to do this is considered to render the welding tests as not complying with the Rules.

1. 1. 4 Welding tests are to be performed under survey at the manufacturer's works. Welding procedure qualification tests and welder qualifications tests are to be performed and approved prior to commencement of fabrication or construction.

1. 1. 5 Weld procedure tests made in accordance with EN, ISO, JIS, ASME or AWS may be considered for acceptance provided that, as a minimum, they are equivalent to and meet the technical intent of these Rules to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

1. 1. 6 Welding tests that have previously been carried out may be considered for acceptance, provided that they have been supervised by an independent body acceptable to ACS and the Surveyor is satisfied with the authenticity of such tests.

1. 1. 7 The responsibility for the performance of the weld tests rests with the manufacturer. Aspects of the welding tests, such as mechanical testing, non-destructive testing and heat treatment, may be subcontracted by the manufacturer provided that the subcontractor performs the work under the technical control and direction of the manufacturer, and this is agreed with the Surveyor prior to commencing the work.

1. 1. 8 In these Rules, the term 'manufacturer' is considered to include any firm or organisation that performs welding and is considered to be the shipbuilder, or construction firm, or fabricator, or material manufacturer.

1. 2 Design

1. 2. 1 Welding procedure qualification tests are required to give assurance that construction welds made in accordance with the approved plans or the approved design have acceptable properties. It is the manufacturer's responsibility to establish and document whether a procedure is suitable for a particular application.

1. 2. 2 The requirements relate to mechanical properties of the weld and heat affected zone, however, other tests may be required on certain materials, for example, corrosion or fatigue tests, in order to ensure suitability for the proposed application.

1. 3 Materials

1. 3. 1 Materials used for testing are to be of the same grade, type and from the same manufacturing process as those to be used for construction, unless prior agreement is obtained from the Surveyor. Such agreements will only apply on a case-by-case basis.

1. 3. 2 All materials used for testing are to be suitably marked and identifiable to the original manufacturer's material certificate.

1. 4 Performance of welding tests

1. 4. 1 All welding and subsequent testing is to be performed in accordance with the requirements of this Chapter.

1. 4. 2 The manufacturer is responsible for monitoring the tests and for recording all the welding variables as specified in 2.2 and for compiling all the non-destructive examination (NDE) reports and mechanical test records for submission to the Surveyor.

1. 4. 3 The laboratory or testing establishment used to perform the tests is to have the necessary equipment, maintained in good order and suitably calibrated. The Surveyor is to be satisfied that the laboratory personnel have the appropriate skills and are appropriately qualified in accordance with Ch 2, 1.2 Testing machines 1.2.1.

PART

2

CHAPTER **12 Welding Qualifications**

SECTION **2 Welding procedure qualification tests for steels**

2. 1 General

2. 1. 1 The requirements of this Section relate to welding procedure test requirements of carbon, carbon-manganese steels and low alloys steels. Additional requirements for austenitic and austenitic/ferritic duplex stainless steels, aluminium and copper alloys are specified in Sections 3 and 4 respectively.

2. 1. 2 Prior to performing the welding procedure qualification test, the manufacturer is to present to the Surveyor a preliminary Welding Procedure Specification (pWPS) detailing the welding processes, positions, joint types, materials and heat treatments to be performed during the test. The pWPS is to be presented for information prior to commencing the test.

2. 1. 3 The type and extent of testing to be applied to each welding procedure test is to be in accordance with subsequent Sections of this Chapter.

2. 1. 4 For the welding procedure approval, the welding procedure qualification tests given in this Section are to be carried out with satisfactory results. Welding procedure specifications are to refer to the test results achieved during welding procedure qualification testing.

2. 2 Welding variables

2. 2. 1 In order that the conditions of the qualification test may be applied to production welding operations, the appropriate variables are to be recorded by the manufacturer during welding and testing from the following list:

a. The unique qualification reference number and the date of welding;
b. The material type, grade, product form, dimensions and identification;
c. Welding process(es), including tack welds;
d. Joint type, dimensions and surface condition;
e. Welding position(s);
f. Welding technique(s), weaving, multiple electrodes, etc;
g. Welding consumables including fluxes, shielding gases, etc;
h. Control of consumables, baking or drying conditions, etc;
i. Welding parameters, current, voltages, travel speeds, etc;
j. Number and sequence of weld runs;
k. Backing materials including any backing gas;
l. Preheats and interpass temperatures;
m. Methods used for cleaning and inspection of root deposits;
n. Post-weld heat treatment, temperature and cycle times;
o. Special weld profiling requirements.

2. 2. 2 Other variables may need to be recorded depending on the particular welding process or application and are to be agreed with the Surveyor, for example the peak and base current and cycle times for pulse welding, electrode type and nozzle size for GTAW welding, etc.

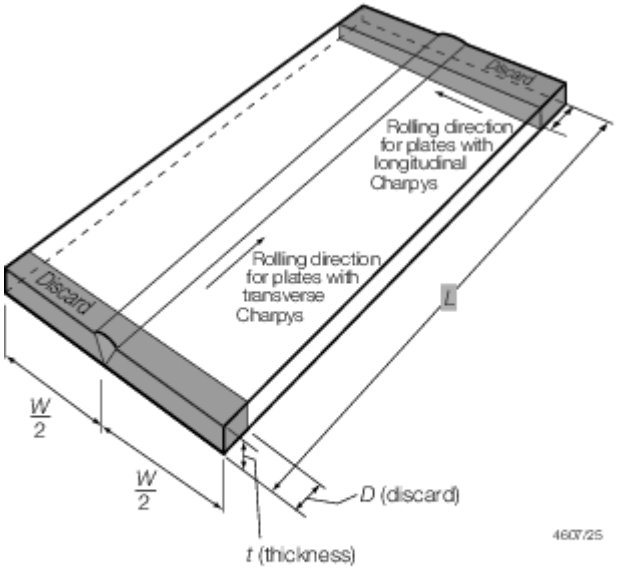
2. 3 Steel test assemblies

2. 3. 1 Tests are to be performed using the welding process and positions anticipated for actual construction. The weld test assemblies are to be representative of construction conditions and are to be welded in the same manner as intended for the actual production welds. Where prefabrication primers are used in the shipyard, these are to be included in the test assemblies.

2. 3. 2 For plate tests, the direction of plate rolling relative to the weld direction is to be considered. Where the material used for the test requires longitudinal impact tests, the plate rolling direction is to be perpendicular to the weld direction and for material which requires impact testing in the transverse direction, the rolling direction is to be parallel to the weld direction. For weld tests intended for liquefied gas storage or cargo tanks and associated process pressure vessels, the direction of plate rolling is to be parallel to the weld direction in all cases.

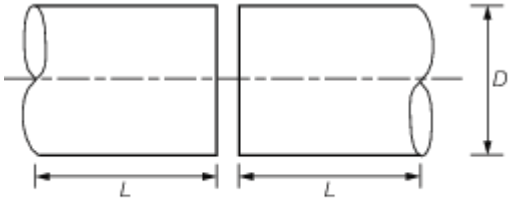
2. 3. 3 Typical test assemblies are shown in Figure 12. 2. 1: Butt weld test assembly in plate to Figure 12. 2. 3: Fillet weld test assembly in plate. These are a minimum requirement to permit the removal of all the necessary mechanical test specimens. Where impact tests or other toughness tests are required, the total width is not to be less than 8 times the material thickness of the thicker material being joined.

Figure 12. 2. 1: Butt weld test assembly in plate



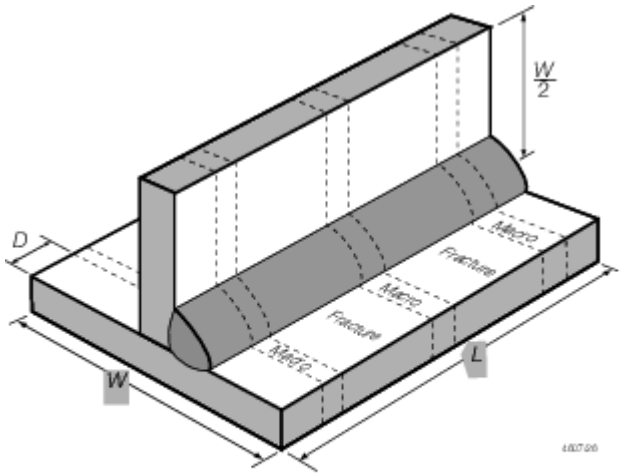
Welding Processes	L (min) mm	W (min) mm	D (min) mm
Manual/Semi-automatic	350	300	50
Automatic	1000	400	75

Figure 12. 2. 2: Butt weld test assembly in pipe



L = 150 mm minimum
D = Outside diameter

Figure 12. 2. 3: Fillet weld test assembly in plate



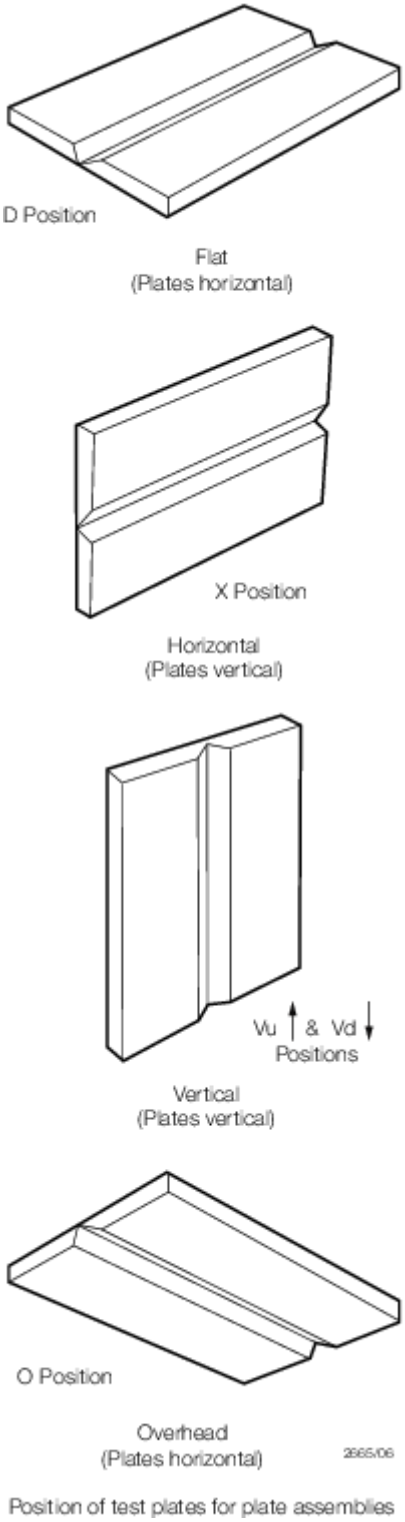
Welding Processes	*L* (min) mm	*W* (min) mm	*D* (min) mm
Manual/Semi-automatic	350	300	50
Automatic	1000	300	75

2. 3. 4 Welding procedure test assemblies are to be welded separately from production welds and are to be marked with the unique test identification number. The individual pieces of the test assembly may be held together to maintain their relative joint conditions by means of suitable tack welds, clamps or strongbacks.

2. 3. 5 Welding of the test assemblies and testing of test specimens is to be monitored by the Surveyor.

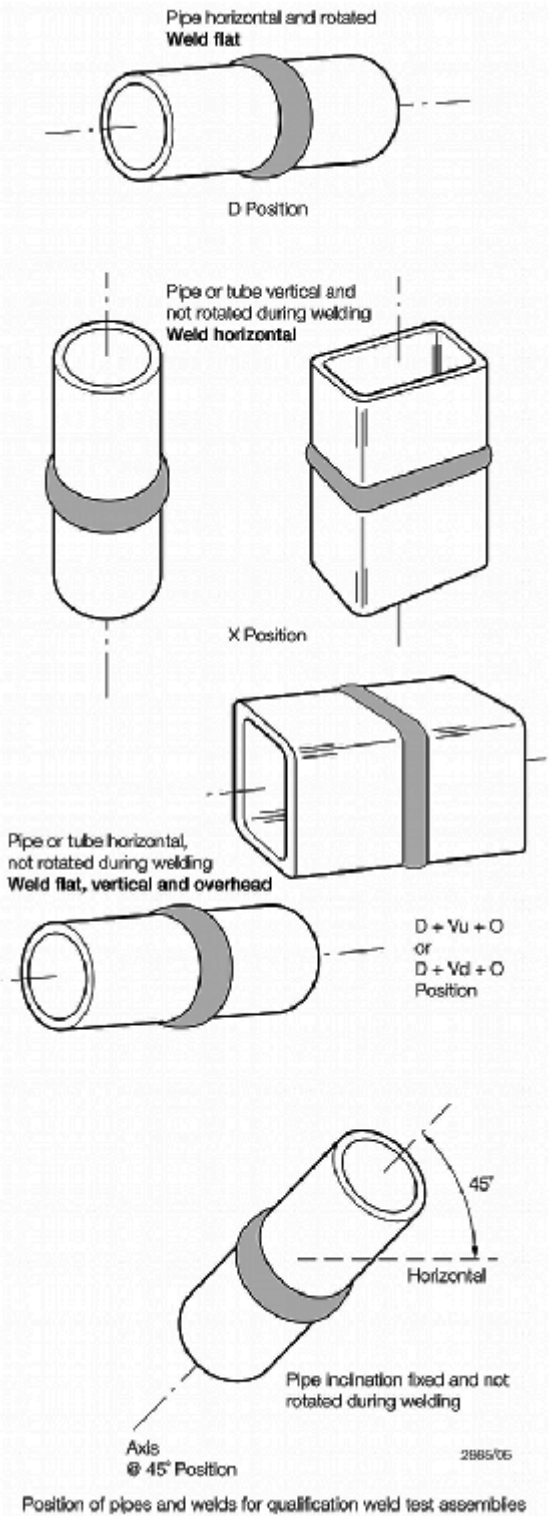
2. 3. 6 The test assembly is to be placed in one of the welding positions shown in Figure 12. 2. 4: Plate butt weld test positions to Figure 12. 2. 7: Pipe fillet weld test positions, as specified in the test Welding Procedure Specification (pWPS) and the specified level of preheat applied prior to the start of welding.

Figure 12. 2. 4: Plate butt weld test positions



Position of test plates for plate assemblies

Figure 12. 2. 5: Pipe butt weld test positions



Position of pipes and welds for qualification weld test assemblies

Figure 12. 2. 6: Plate fillet weld test positions

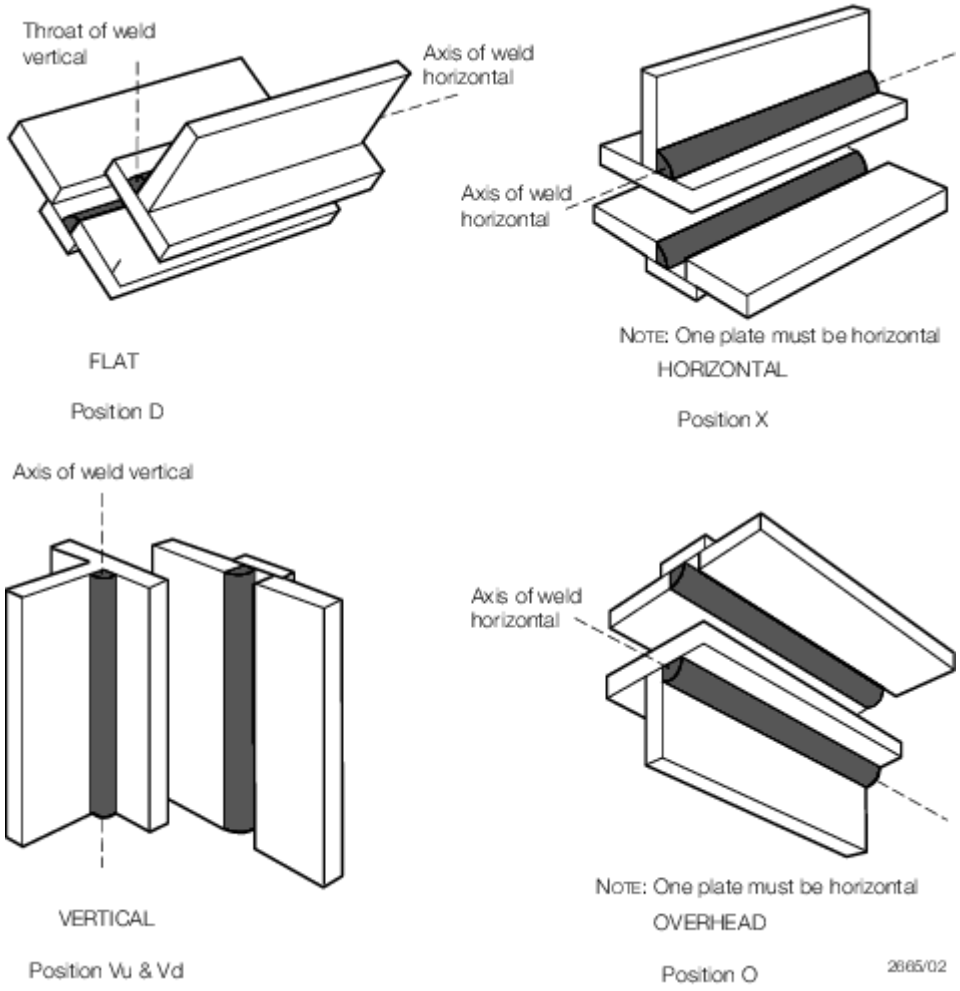
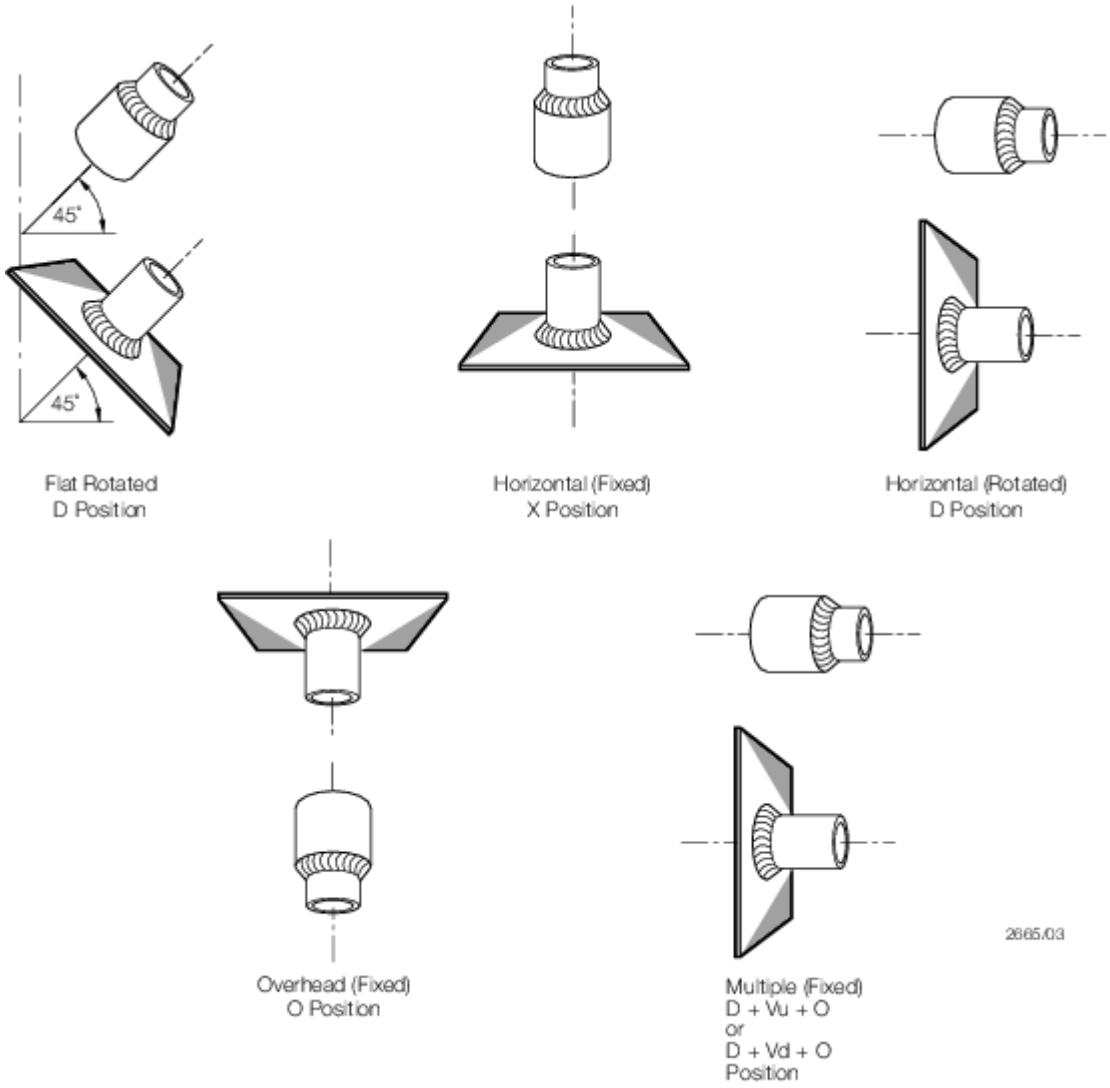


Figure 12. 2. 7: Pipe fillet weld test positions



2. 3. 7 Designations for equivalent welding positions shown by different standards are shown in. Table 12. 2. 1: Equivalent designations of welding positions

Table 12. 2. 1: Equivalent designations of welding positions

Weld position		Standard	
		ISO 6947	AWS
Plate butt welds			
Flat	D	PA	1G
Horizontal	X	PC	2G
Vertical, weld up	Vu	PF	3G
Vertical, weld down	Vd	PG	3G
Overhead	O	PE	4G

Pipe butt welds			
Pipe horizontal, rotated, weld horizontal	D	PA	1G
Pipe vertical, not rotated, weld horizontal	X	PC	2G
Pipe horizontal, not rotated, weld flat, vertical and overhead	D+Vu+O	PH	5G
	D+Vd+O	PJ	
Pipe inclination fixed, not rotated	45°	H-L045	6G
		J-L045	
Plate fillet welds			
Flat	D	PA	1F
Horizontal	X	PB	2F
Vertical up	Vu	PF	3F
Vertical down	Vd	PG	3F
Overhead	O	PD	4F
Pipe fillet welds			
Flat, pipe rotated	D	PA	1FR
Horizontal, pipe fixed	X	PB	2F
Horizontal, pipe rotated	D	PB	2FR
Overhead, pipe fixed	O	PD	4F
Multiple, pipe fixed	D+Vu+O	PF	5F
	D+Vd+O	PG	

2. 4 Welding of steel test assemblies

2. 4. 1 Welding of the test assembly is to be carried out in accordance with the agreed pWPS. Where, during the progress of the test, it is found necessary to change the conditions specified on the pWPS, this is to be brought to the attention of the Surveyor. If agreed, the test may be permitted to continue with the new conditions and these are to be recorded.

2. 4. 2 Where the production work requires welding over tack welds, the test is to simulate this condition and the tack welds are to be included in the inspection length of the test weld and their position recorded.

2. 4. 3 For manual and semi-automatic welding processes, weld stops and re-starts are to be included in the inspection length of the test weld.

2. 4. 4 Fillet weld test assemblies are welded on one side only.

2. 4. 5 Where the construction welding is predominately fillet welding, in addition to the butt weld qualification test, a fillet weld qualification test is to be performed to confirm that acceptable weld quality is achieved.

2. 5 Non-destructive examination (NDE)

2. 5. 1 On completion of welding, prior to sectioning for mechanical tests, the inspection length of the test assembly is to be subjected to both visual examination and surface crack detection.

2. 5. 2 Butt weld assemblies are also to be subjected to radiographic or ultrasonic examination over the whole inspection length of the weld.

2. 5. 3 For welds in steels with specified yield strength up to 400 N/mm^2, and with carbon equivalent less than or equal to 0.41 per cent, NDE may be performed as soon as the test assembly has cooled to ambient temperature. For other steels, NDE is to be delayed for a period of at least 48 hours after the test assembly has cooled to ambient temperature.

2. 5. 4 Where post-weld heat treatment is required, NDE is to be performed after the heat treatment is complete.

2. 5. 5 All NDEs are to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of Ch 1, 5 Non-destructive examination. Assessment of results is to be in accordance with ISO 5817 Level B except for excess convexity and excess throat thickness where Level C will apply. Linear porosity is not permitted.

2. 5. 6 As an alternative to radiography, ultrasonic examination may be carried out and acceptance criteria that are considered to result in equivalent weld quality (in accordance with Ch 12, 2.5 Non-destructive examination (NDE) 2.5.5) are to be agreed, with the Surveyor, prior to the tests being carried out. Ultrasonic testing will be subject to the thickness limitation specified in Ch 13, 2.12 Non-destructive examination of welds 2.12.5.

2. 5. 7 Where the test assembly does not satisfy the nondestructive examination acceptance criteria, the test is to be rejected. A duplicate test assembly may be welded using the original welding conditions. If this fails NDE, the welding procedure is to be considered as incapable of achieving the requirements without modification.

2. 5. 8 Subject to prior agreement with the Surveyor, where unacceptable imperfections are of a volumetric nature and are localised in one small area of the test assembly, the test may be permitted to continue and specimens for destructive testing may be removed, avoiding this area.

2. 6 Destructive tests – General requirements

2. 6. 1 The weld test assembly may only be sectioned for destructive testing after any heat treatment and the required non-destructive examinations have been completed successfully.

2. 6. 2 The dimensions of the test specimens and testing conditions are to be in accordance with the requirements specified in Ch 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials.

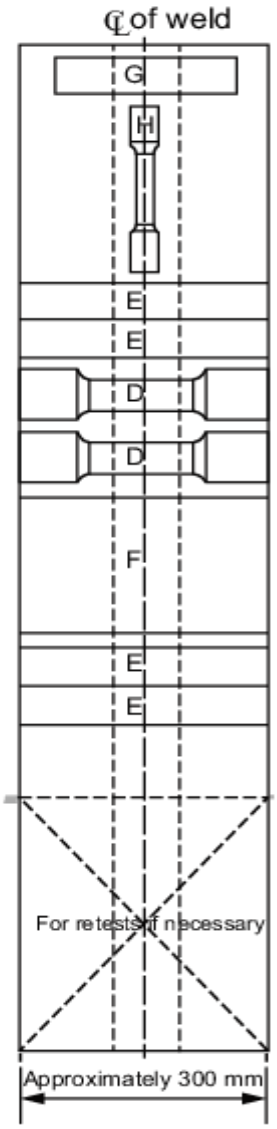
2. 6. 3 The results of destructive tests are to be assessed in accordance with the acceptance criteria specified in Ch 12, 2.12, Mechanical test acceptance criteria for steels, unless other, more stringent requirements are specified for the application.

2. 6. 4 Where a weld test is made between materials of different grades, the acceptance criteria that are to be applied are those applicable to the lower grade material.

2. 7 Destructive tests for steel butt welds

2. 7. 1 The test assembly is to be sectioned for mechanical testing in accordance with Figure 12. 2. 8: Butt welds in plate or Figure 12. 2. 9: Butt welds in pipe less than 750 mm diameter.

Figure 12. 2. 8: Butt welds in plate

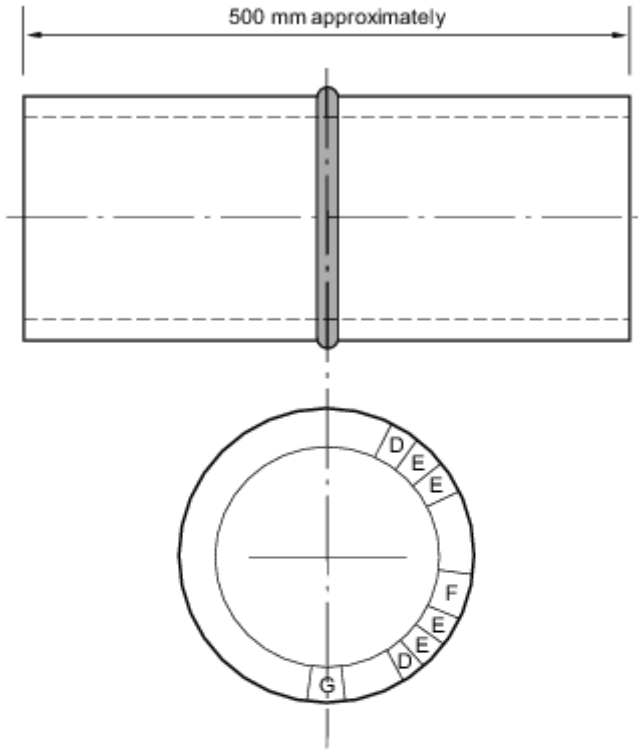


Test requirements
A Visual examination
B Surface crack detection
C 100 per cent radiographic examination (*see* Note 1)
D Two transverse tensile tests
E four bend tests
F Five sets Charpy V-notch impact tests
1 set notched at centre of weld
1 set notched at fusion line (FL)
1 set notched at FL + 2 mm
1 set notched at FL + 5 mm (*see* Note 2)
1 set notched at FL + 10 mm (if required)
G One macro specimen including harness survey
H All weld metal tensile test (if required)

Note 1 Radiographic examination may be replaced by ultrasonic examination for test assembly thickness of 8 mm or above.

Note 2 If required by Figure 12. 2. 11: Locations of V-notch for butt weld of normal heat input (heat input ≤ 50 kJ/cm) and Figure 12. 2. 12: Locations of V-notch for butt weld of high heat input (heat input > 50 kJ/cm)

Figure 12. 2. 9: Butt welds in pipe less than 750 mm diameter



Test requirements
A Visual examination
B Surface crack detection
C 100% radiographic examination (*see* Note 1)
D Two transverse tensile tests
E Four bend tests.
F Four sets Charpy V-notch impact tests
1 set notched at centre of weld
1 set notched at fusion line (FL)
1 set notched at FL + 2 mm
1 set notched at FL + 5 mm (*see* Note 2)
G One macro specimen including hardness survey

Note 1 Radiographic examination may be replaced by ultrasonic examination for test assembly thickness of 8 mm or above.

Note 2 If required by Figure 12. 2. 11: Locations of V-notch for butt weld of normal heat input (heat input ≤ 50 kJ/cm) and Figure 12. 2. 12: Locations of V-notch for butt weld of high heat input (heat input > 50 kJ/cm)

2. 7. 2 The longitudinal all weld metal tensile test specimen is to be of circular cross-section as detailed in Ch 11, 2.1 Dimensions of test specimens 2.1.1. Where more than one welding process or type of consumable has been used to make the weld, test specimens are to be removed from each

respective area of the weld. This does not apply to the process or consumables used to make the root or first weld run. During the test, the yield or proof stress, ultimate tensile strength, and elongation to failure are to be recorded.

2. 7. 3 Where approved welding consumables have been used, the longitudinal all weld metal tensile test may be omitted. For Type C independent tanks intended for liquefied gases, the all weld tensile test is mandatory for all welding procedure tests.

2. 7. 4 The transverse tensile test specimen is to be of full thickness with the dimensions shown in Ch 11, 2.1 Dimensions of test specimens 2.1.1. The tensile strength and fracture locations are to be reported.

2. 7. 5 Where the maximum load required to fracture the transverse tensile specimen is likely to exceed the capacity of the tensile testing equipment, several tensile specimens may be removed through the thickness and tested. Specimens are to be prepared such that they overlap in the thickness direction so that the full plate thickness is tested.

2. 7. 6 Transverse bend specimens of rectangular section are to be prepared with the weld centred in the middle of the specimen as shown in Figure 12. 2. 10: Transverse bend test specimens. For material of thickness 12 mm or greater, the face and root bends may be substituted by side bend tests. Where there is a significant difference between the strength of the weld and base material, longitudinal bend specimens may be used. The weld reinforcement may be removed by grinding or machining prior to testing and the edges rounded to a radius not exceeding 10 per cent of the specimen thickness. Each specimen is to be bent through an angle of at least 180°. The bend test ratio is to be the lesser of the following:

a. $$D_f = \left(\frac{D}{t}\right) + 1$$

or

b. D_f = $100/E_m$ (rounded up to the next whole number)

= is the bend test ratio

where

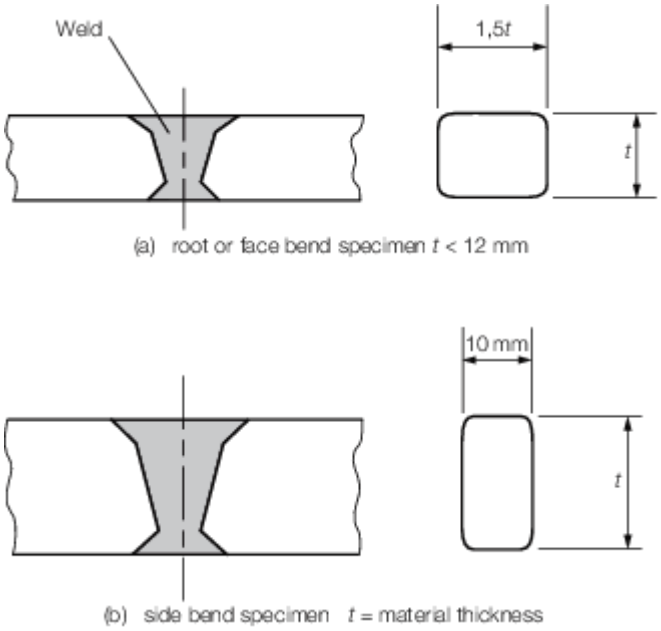
D_f

$\left(\frac{D}{t}\right)$ = is the value from Table 11. 3. 3: Requirements for butt weld tests (covered electrodes), Table 11. 3. 4: Permitted methods for obtaining low hydrogen grading or Table 11. 8. 2: Requirements for butt weld tests (all techniques) in Chapter 11, as appropriate

E_m = is the minimum specified percentage elongation for the test material (based on a proportional gauge length of $5.65\sqrt{S_0}$)

2. 7. 7 Where the weld test is made between different material types, the requirements of Ch 12, 2.7 Destructive tests for steel butt welds 2.7.8 are to be applied to the material with the lower toughness specification.

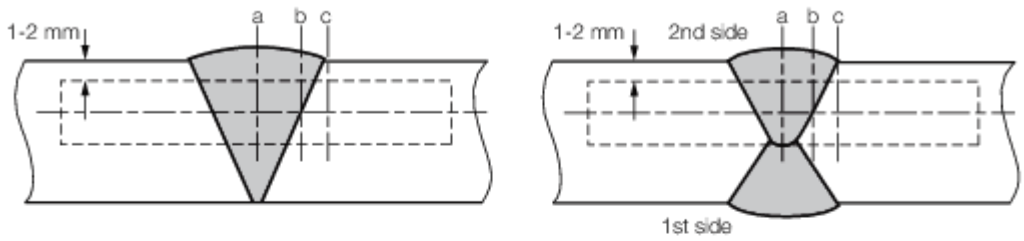
Figure 12. 2. 10: Transverse bend test specimens



2. 7. 8 For hull structural steels, impact test specimens are to be prepared from the locations shown in Figure 12. 2. 11: Locations of V-notch for butt weld of normal heat input (heat input ≤ 50 kJ/cm) or Figure 12. 2. 12: Locations of V-notch for butt weld of high heat input (heat input > 50 kJ/cm), with the notch perpendicular to the plate surface and have the dimensions and proportions in accordance with Ch 2, 3 Impact tests. Where more than one welding process or type of consumable has been used to make the weld, test specimens are also to be removed from these respective parts of the weld. Note that this does not apply to the welding process or consumables used solely to make the root or first weld run. Where the weld thickness exceeds 50 mm, an additional set of impact tests is required from the root area of the weld irrespective or whether different welding process or welding consumables are used as shown in Figure 12. 2. 11: Locations of V-notch for butt weld of normal heat input (heat input ≤ 50 kJ/cm) and Figure 12. 2. 12: Locations of V-notch for butt weld of high heat input (heat input > 50 kJ/cm).

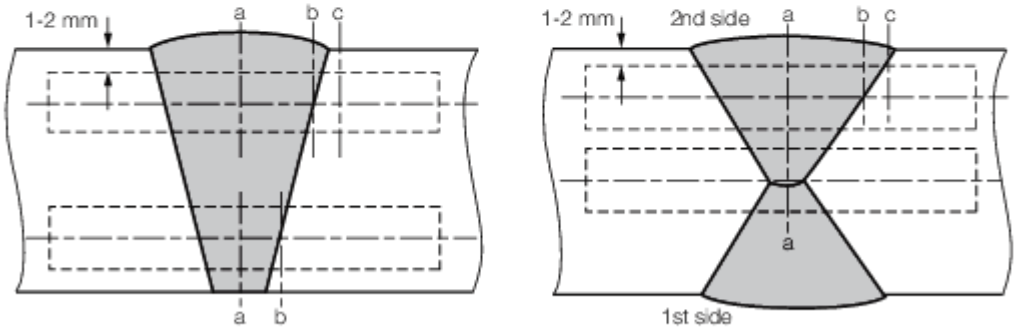
Figure 12. 2. 11: Locations of V-notch for butt weld of normal heat input (heat input ≤ 50 kJ/cm)

(a) $t \leq 50$ mm (1)



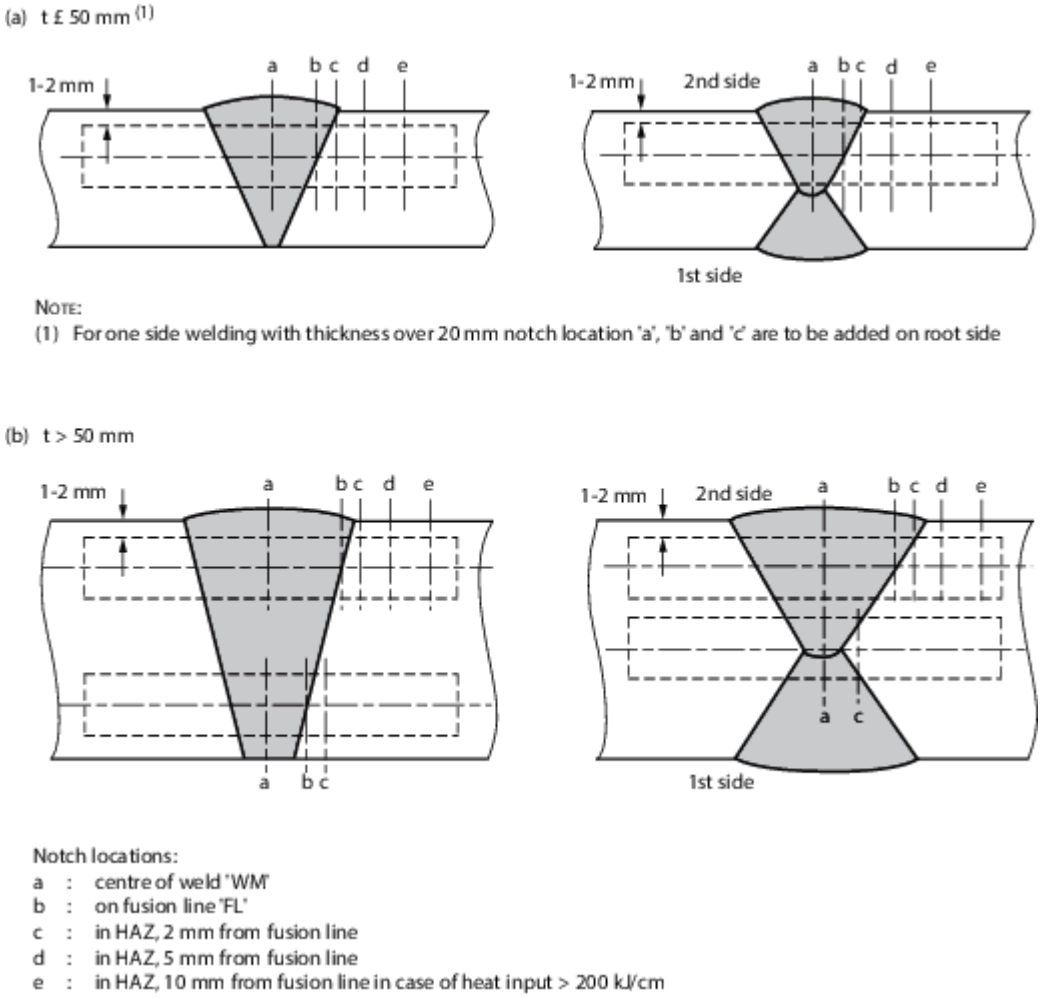
NOTE:
(1) For one side single run welding over 20 mm notch location 'a' is to be added on root side

(a) $t > 50$ mm



Notch locations:
a : centre of weld 'WM'
b : on fusion line 'FL'
c : in HAZ, 2mm from fusion line

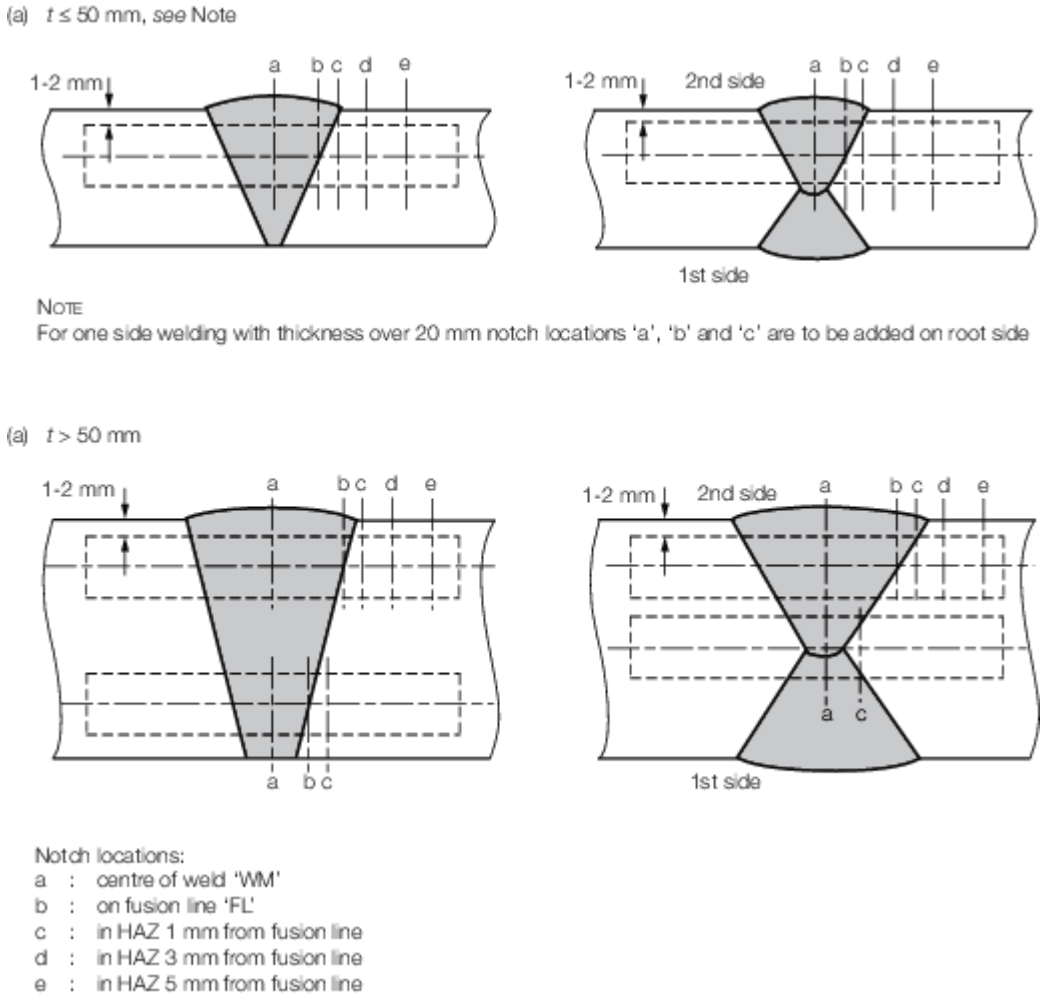
Figure 12. 2. 12: Locations of V-notch for butt weld of high heat input (heat input > 50 kJ/cm)



2. 7. 9 For offshore structures and pressure vessels, impact test specimens are not required to be notched at the FL + 10 mm location. Where more than one welding process or type of consumable has been used to make the weld, test specimens are to be removed from the respective areas of the weld. This does not apply to the process or consumables used solely to make the root or first weld run.

2. 7. 10 For pressure vessels and tanks employed in transportation of liquefied gases, Charpy impact test locations from the weld and heat affected zone are to be in accordance with Figure 12. 2. 13: Locations of V-notch tests for butt welds intended for liquefied gas containment systems.

Figure 12. 2. 13: Locations of V-notch tests for butt welds intended for liquefied gas containment systems

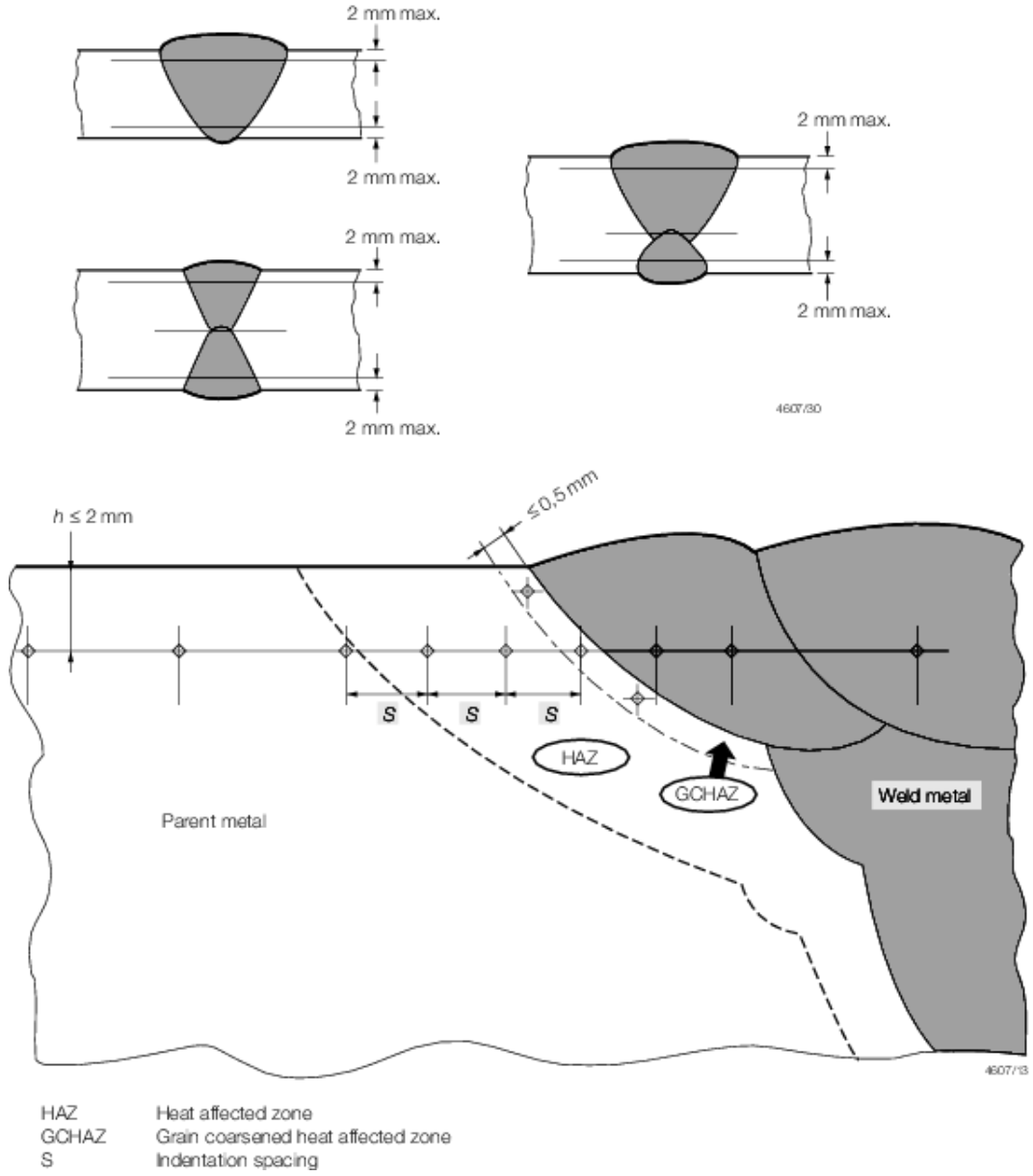


2. 7. 11 At least one macro examination specimen is to be removed from the test plate, near the end where welding started. The specimen is to include the complete cross-section of the weld and the heat affected zone and be prepared and etched to clearly reveal the weld runs and the heat affected zone. Examination is to be performed under a magnification of between x5 and x10.

2. 7. 12 A chemical analysis of the weld metal is to be performed on the macro specimen where approved welding consumables have not been used. The results are to comply with the limits given in the welding consumable specification.

2. 7. 13 A Vickers hardness survey is to be performed on the macro specimen taken from the weld start end of the test assembly in accordance with that shown in Figure 12. 2. 14: Hardness testing locations for butt welds, using a test load not in excess of 10 kg. For each row of indents, there are to be a minimum of 3 individual indentations in the weld metal, the heat affected zones (both sides), the base metal (both sides), and in addition, 2 indentations are required in the grain coarsened heat affected zone, one above and one below the hardness survey row. The recommended distance between indents is 1.0 mm, but the distance between indents should not be less than the minimum specified in ISO 6507/1.

Figure 12. 2. 14: Hardness testing locations for butt welds



2. 8 Destructive tests for steel fillet welds

2. 8. 1 Fillet weld test assemblies are to be sectioned for destructive testing in accordance with Figure 12. 2. 3: Fillet weld test assembly in plate and as follows:

a. two fracture tests;
b. three macro-sections;
c. one hardness survey.

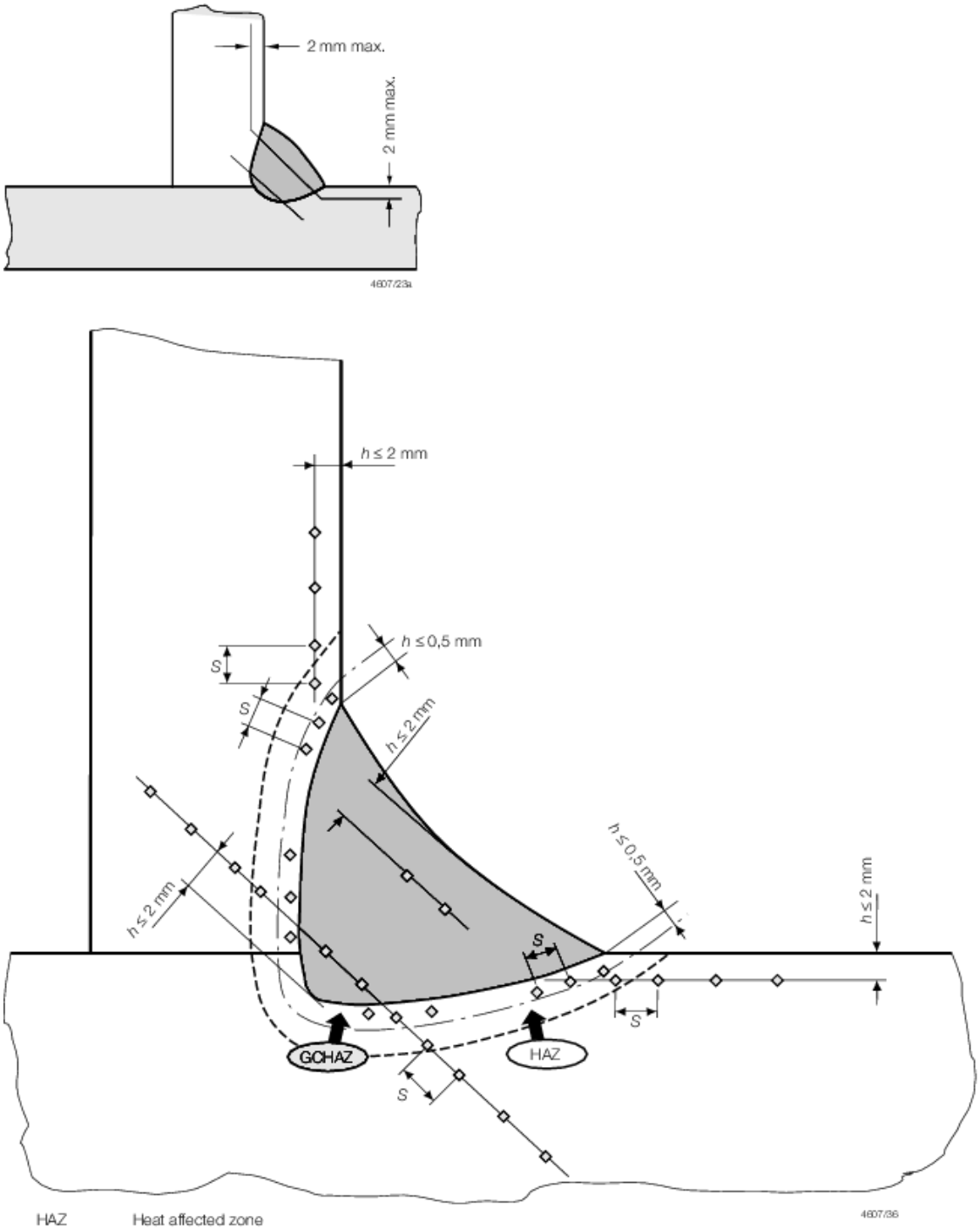
2. 8. 2 Two fracture test specimens are to be removed from the test weld and are to be subjected to testing by bending the upright plate onto the through plate to produce fracture, as shown in Figure 12. 2. 3: Fillet weld test assembly in plate.

2. 8. 3 At least three macro examination specimens are to be removed from the test plate. The specimens are to include the complete cross-section of the weld and the heat affected zone and is to be

prepared to clearly reveal the weld runs and the heat affected zone. One of the specimens is to include a weld stop/start position. Examination is to be performed under a magnification of between x5 and x10.

2. 8. 4 A Vickers hardness survey is to be performed on the macro specimen taken from the weld start end of the test assembly in accordance with that shown in Figure 12. 2. 15: Hardness test locations for fillet welds, using a test load not exceeding 10 kg.

Figure 12. 2. 15: Hardness test locations for fillet welds



HAZ Heat affected zone
GCHAZ Grain coarsened heat affected zone
S Indentation spacing

2. 9 Destructive tests for T, K, Y steel nozzle welds

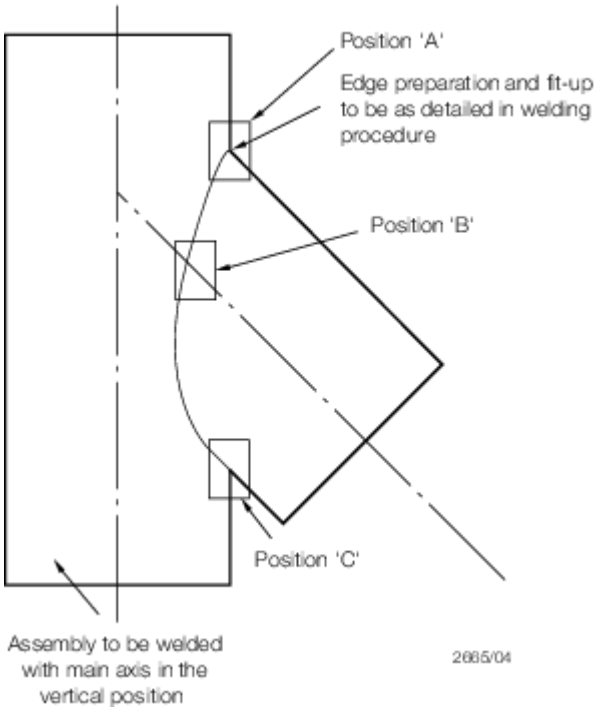
2. 9. 1 Full penetration ‘T', ‘K’ and ‘Y’ joints for structural applications and nozzle welds for pressure vessels are to be sectioned for testing in accordance with Figure 12. 2. 16: Location of macro-examination test specimens for T, K and Y joints and tested as detailed below:

a. three macro specimens;
b. impact tests from the weld, fusion line and fusion line + 2 (where the material thickness permits);
c. one hardness survey.

In addition, butt weld tests are to be performed in accordance with Ch 12, 2.7, Destructive tests for steel butt welds, using the same welding conditions, in order to verify acceptable weld and heat affected zone properties.

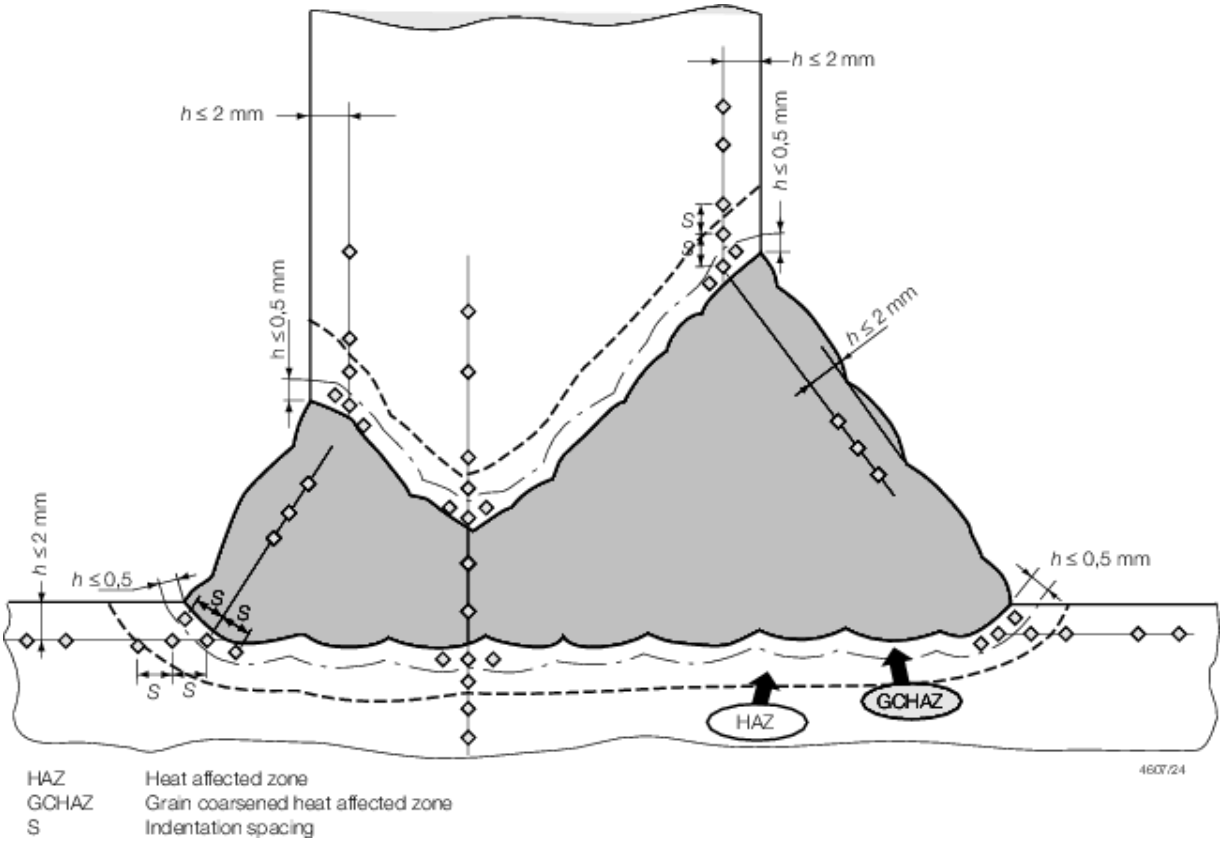
2. 9. 2 The impact tests are to be removed from the vertical (up) position ‘B’ in Figure 12. 2. 16: Location of macro-examination test specimens for T, K and Y joints and tested in accordance with Ch 12, 2.7 Destructive tests for steel butt welds 2.7.8.

Figure 12. 2. 16: Location of macro-examination test specimens for T, K and Y joints



2. 9. 3 A Vickers hardness survey is to be performed on the macro-section removed from position ‘A’ or ‘C’ in accordance with that shown in Figure 12. 2. 17: Hardness test locations for T, K and Y joints using a test load not exceeding 10 kg.

Figure 12. 2. 17: Hardness test locations for T, K and Y joints



2. 10 Destructive tests for steel pipe branch welds

2. 10. 1 Pipe branch welds may be by either full penetration, partial penetration or fillet welded, depending on the application and the approved plans. Where these types of welded joints are used, tests are to be performed which simulate the construction conditions.

2. 10. 2 The test weld assembly is to simulate the smallest angle between the branch and main pipe and is to be subjected to macro-examination and hardness testing, as follows:

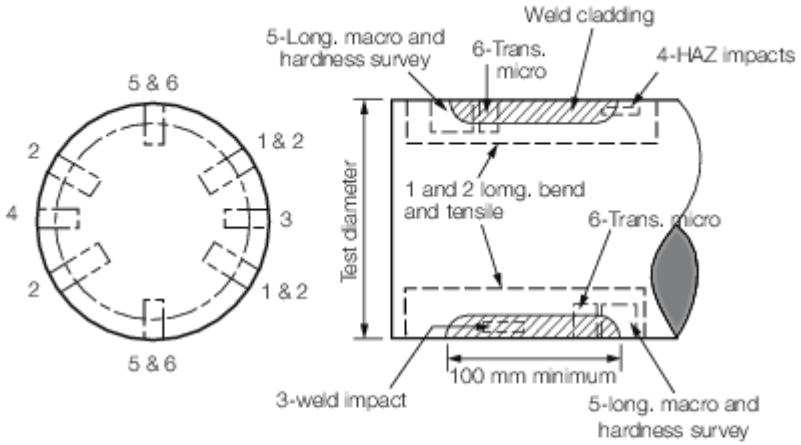
a. For a branch weld that is full penetration, testing is to be performed in accordance with the requirements for ‘T', ‘K’ and ‘Y’ joints in Ch 12, 2.9 Destructive tests for T, K, Y steel nozzle welds.

b. For a branch weld that is either a partial penetration or fillet weld, testing is to be in accordance with the requirements for fillet welds in Ch 12, 2.8 Destructive tests for steel fillet welds.

2. 11 Destructive tests for weld cladding of steel

2. 11. 1 Where weld cladding or overlay is allowed by Ch 13 Requirements for Welded Construction, and is considered as providing strength to the component to which it is welded, the type and location of test specimens are to be in accordance with Figure 12. 2. 18: Type and location of test specimens for weld cladding, except that micro-sections are not required. Impact tests may be omitted where the base material does not have specified impact properties. The longitudinal tensile and bend tests are to be tested in a similar manner to transverse specimens specified in Ch 12, 2.7 Destructive tests for steel butt welds 2.7.2 and Ch 12, 2.7,, Destructive tests for steel butt welds 2.7.6, respectively.

Figure 12. 2. 18: Type and location of test specimens for weld cladding



Test specimens
1 Longitudinaltensile test to include the weld metal, heat affected zone (HAZ) and base metal.
2 Longitudinal side bend test to include the weld metal, heat affected zone (HAZ) and base metal.
3 Weld metal Charpy V notch impact test.
4 HAZ Charpy impact test from Fusion Line and Fusion Line + 2 mm.
5 Longitudinal macro-section and hardness survey.
6 Transverse micro-section.
NOTE
In the case of shafts and pipes of circular section, the longitudinal direction is parallel to the centreline of the shaft or pipe axis.

2. 11. 2 Where the weld cladding is not considered as contributing to the strength of the component, but is required for corrosion or wear resistance, the type and location of test specimens are to be in accordance with Figure 12. 2. 18: Type and location of test specimens for weld cladding, except that tensile and impact tests are not required.

2. 11. 3 Where the weld cladding is applied for corrosion resistance, in addition to the above, weld metal analysis is to be performed on one of the micro-sections, on the final weld surface but 2 mm deep. The analysis is to be within the limits specified for the corrosion resistance required.

2. 12 Mechanical test acceptance criteria for steels

2. 12. 1 **Longitudinal all weld metal tensile test:**

a. In general, the longitudinal all weld tensile test is to meet the minimum properties specified in Table 11. 3. 2: Requirements for deposited metal tests (covered electrodes) or Table 11. 4. 2: Requirements for deposited metal tests (wire-flux combinations), as appropriate to the grade of steel and welding process used in the test.

b. Where the application is such that no consumable approvals are specified in Ch 11 Approval of Welding Consumables, the longitudinal all weld tensile test tensile is to meet the minimum properties specified for the base materials used in the test.

c. For pressure vessels manufactured from carbon or carbon/manganese steels, the tensile strength from the longitudinal all weld tensile test is not to be less than the minimum specified for the plate material and is not to be more than 145 N/mm^2 above this value, *See* Ch 13, 4.8 Mechanical requirements 4.8.3.

d. For tanks intended for liquefied gases, the weld metal strength may be lower than the minimum specified for the base metal provided that the application has design approval. In such cases the strength is not to be less than that specified in the approved design.

e. For base metal grades with minimum specified yield strength level of 890 and 960 N/mm^2, the weld metal strength may be lower than the minimum specified for the base metal provided that the application has design approval for the undermatching weld metal. In such cases the weld metal strength is not to be less than that specified in the approved design.

2. 12. 2 **Transverse tensile test:** The tensile strength measured from the transverse tensile test is not to be less than the minimum specified for the base material used in the test. For tanks intended for liquefied gases and for other types of assemblies for base metal grades with minimum specified yield strength level of 890 and 960 N/mm^2, a lower ultimate tensile may be accepted subject to design approval as in Ch 12, 2.12 Mechanical test acceptance criteria for steels 2.12.1.d and Ch 12, 2.12 Mechanical test acceptance criteria for steels 2.12.1.e.

2. 12. 3 **Bend tests:**

a. In general, bend tests are to exhibit no defects exceeding 3.0 mm measured in any direction across the tension face of the specimen after being bent over the required diameter of former to the appropriate angle.

b. Bend tests for pressure vessel applications are to exhibit no defects exceeding 3.0 mm measured along the specimen or 1.5 mm measured transverse to the specimen axis, after bending.

c. In all cases, premature failure of the bend tests at the edges of the specimen is to not be cause for rejection unless these are associated with a weld defect.

2. 12. 4 **Impact toughness tests:**

a. Impact test specimens for hull construction are to be tested at the temperature, and are to achieve the minimum impact energy, as specified in Table 12. 2. 2: Impact test requirements for butt joints (t ≤ 50 mm) See Notes 1 and 2 and Table 12. 2. 3: Impact test requirements for butt joints (t > 50 mm) See Notes 1 and 2.

b. Impact test specimens for applications other than hull construction are to be tested at the same temperature and achieve the same minimum energy values, as specified for the base materials used in the test.

c. Impact test acceptance criteria are to be in accordance with the above unless the Rules applicable to the particular construction specify more stringent requirements.

d. For quench and tempered steels, the required test temperature and absorbed energy are to be in accordance with that specified for the parent materials. For base metal grades with minimum specified yield strength level of 890 and 960 N/mm^2, the weld metal absorbed energy may be lower than the minimum specified for the base metal provided that the application has design approval for the undermatching weld metal. In such cases the absorbed energy is not to be less than that specified in the approved design.

Table 12. 2. 2: Impact test requirements for butt joints (t ≤ 50 mm) *See* Notes 1 and 2

Grade of steel	Test temperature (°C) *See* Note 4	Average energy (J) minimum, *See* Note 4		
		Manual or semi-automatic welded joints		Automatically welded joints
		Downhand, Horizontal, Overhead	Vertical upward, Vertical downward	
A, *See* Note 3	20	47	34	34
B, *See* Note 3, D	0			
E	-20			
AH32, AH36	20			
DH32, DH36	0			
EH32, EH36	-20			

FH32, FH36	-40			
AH40	20		39	39
DH40	0			
EH40	-20			
FH40	-40			

Note *1.* Steel grade EH47 is not permitted in thickness less than 50 mm, *See* Note 2, Table 3. 3. 1: Maximum thickness limits in Chapter 3.

Note *2.* These requirements are to apply to test piece of which butt weld is perpendicular to the rolling direction of the plates.

Note *3.* For grade A and B steels average absorbed energy on fusion line and in heat affected zone is to be a minimum of 27 J.

Note *4.* For Naval ships both the test temperature and value of minimum energy absorbed are to be those specified for the parent material.

Table 12. 2. 3: Impact test requirements for butt joints (t > 50 mm) *See* Notes 1 and 2

Grade of steel	Test temperature (ºC) *See* Note 2	Average energy (J) minimum, *See* Note 2		
		Manual or semi-automatic welded joints		Vertical upward, Vertical downward
		Downhand, Horizontal, Overhead	Automatically welded joints	
A	20	34	34	34
B	0	34	34	34
D	0	47	38	38
E	–20	47	38	38
AH32, AH36	20	47	41	41
DH32, DH36	0	47	41	41
EH32, EH36	–20	47	41	41
FH32, FH36	–40	47	41	41
AH40	20	50	46	46
DH40	0	50	46	46
EH40	–20	50	46	46
FH40	–40	50	46	46
EH47	–20	64	64	64

Note *1.* These requirements are to apply to test piece of which butt weld is perpendicular to the rolling direction of the plates.

Note *2.* For the Naval ships, both the test temperature and value of minimum absorbed energy are to be those specified for the parent material.

2. 12. 5 **Macro-examination:**The macro-section is to reveal an even weld profile blending smoothly with the base material. The weld dimensions are to be in accordance with the requirements of the pWPS and any defects present are to be assessed against the non-destructive examination acceptance criteria given in Ch 12, 2.5 Non-destructive examination (NDE) 2.5.5.

2. 12. 6 **Hardness surveys:** The maximum hardness value reported is not to exceed 350 Hv for steels with a specified minimum yield strength up to ≤420 N/mm^2, nor exceed 420 Hv for steels with a specified minimum yield strength in the range 420 N/mm^2 to 690 N/mm^2.

2. 12. 7 **Weld fracture or break tests (for pressure vessel test welds):** The faces of the broken fillet weld fracture or weld break test are to be examined for defects and assessed in accordance with the non-destructive acceptance criteria given in ISO 5817 Level B, except for excess convexity and excess throat thickness where Level C will apply.

2. 13 Failure to meet requirements (Retests)

2. 13. 1 Where a tensile, bend or hardness specimen fails to meet requirements, further test specimens may be removed and tested in accordance with the requirements of Ch 2, 1.4 Re-testing procedures 1.4.1.

2. 13. 2 Where an impact specimen fails to meet requirements, a further set of three specimens may be removed and tested in accordance with the requirements of Ch 2, 1.4 Re-testing procedures 1.4.4.

2. 13. 3 Where a macro specimen reveals a defect that is planar in nature, the welding procedure test is to be considered as not satisfying the requirements and a new test assembly is required.

2. 13. 4 Where a macro specimen does not meet requirements as a result of a volumetric imperfection exceeding the permitted size, two additional specimens may be removed from the same test weld and examined. If either of these macro-sections also fails to satisfy the requirements, the welding procedure is to be considered as not having met the requirements.

2. 13. 5 If there is a single hardness value above the maximum values specified, additional hardness tests are to be carried out, either on the reverse of the specimen, or after sufficient grinding of the tested surface. None of the additional hardness values is to exceed the maximum hardness values specified, otherwise the welding procedure is to be considered as not having met the requirements.

2. 13. 6 Where there is insufficient material available in the welded test assembly to provide re-test specimens, subject to prior agreement with the Surveyor, a second assembly may be welded using the same conditions as the original test weld.

2. 14 Test records

2. 14. 1 The procedure qualification record (PQR) is to be prepared by the manufacturer and is to include details of the welding conditions used in the test specified in Ch 12, 2.2, Welding variables and the results of all the non-destructive examinations and destructive tests, including re-tests.

2. 14. 2 Provided that the PQR lists all the relevant variables and there are no inconsistent features and the results satisfy the requirements, the PQR may be endorsed by the Surveyor as satisfying the requirement of the Rules, *See also* Ch 12, 1.1 General 1.1.4.

2. 15 Range of approval

2. 15. 1 A welding procedure qualification test that has successfully met the requirements may be used for a wider range of applications than those used during the test.

2. 15. 2 Changes outside of the ranges specified are to require a new welding procedure test.

2. 15. 3 Other ranges of approval from those specified in this Section may be agreed with the Surveyor, provided that they are in accordance with recognised National or International Standards.

2. 15. 4 **Manufacturer.** A welding procedure qualified by a manufacturer is valid for welding in workshops under the same technical and quality management.

2. 15. 5 **Welding process and technique.** The welding process and welding techniques approved are to be those employed during the welding procedure qualification test. Where multiple welding processes are used, these are to be employed in the same order as that used in the welding procedure qualification test. However, it may be acceptable to delete or add a welding process where it has been used solely to make the first weld run in the root of the joint, provided back gouging or grinding of the root weld is specified on the WPS. For multi-process procedures, the welding procedure approval may be carried out with separate welding procedure tests for each welding process.

2. 15. 6 **Welding positions.** Approval for a test made in any position is restricted to that position. To qualify a range of positions, test assemblies are to be welded for the highest heat input position, and the lowest heat input position, and all applicable tests are to be made on those assemblies. The above excludes welding in the vertical position with travel in the downward direction which will always require separate qualification testing and only be acceptable for that position.

2. 15. 7 **Joint types.** A qualification test performed on a butt weld may be considered acceptable for fillet and partial penetration welds, provided the same welding conditions are used. The range of approval depending on the type of joint for butt welds is given in Table 12. 2. 4: Range of approval for different types of butt joints.

Table 12. 2. 4: Range of approval for different types of butt joints

Type of welded joint for test assembly				Range of approval
Butt welding	One side	With backing	A	A,C
		Without backing	B	A,B,C,D
	Both sides	With gouging	C	C
		Without gouging	D	C,D

2. 15. 8 **Range of material types:**

a. For normal and higher strength steels, for each strength level, welding procedures are considered applicable to the same and lower toughness grades as that tested. For each toughness grade, welding procedures are considered applicable to the same and two lower strength levels as that tested with the exception of the two-run (T) or high welding heat input (A) techniques where acceptance is limited to the strength level used in the test.

b. A qualification test performed on H47 strength grade steels may be used to weld the steel of the same strength level or grade H40 and all lower toughness grades to that tested.

c. For high strength quenched and tempered steels, for each strength level, welding procedures are considered applicable to the same and lower toughness grades as that tested. For each toughness grade, welding procedures are considered applicable to the same and one lower strength level as that tested. The approval of quenched and tempered steels does not qualify thermo-mechanically rolled steels (TMCP steels) and vice versa.

d. For weldable C and C-Mn steel forgings, welding procedures are applicable to the same and lower strength level as that tested. The approval of quenched and tempered steel forgings does not qualify other delivery conditions and vice versa.

e. For weldable C and C-Mn steel castings, welding procedures are applicable to the same and lower strength level as that tested. The approval of quenched and tempered steel castings does not qualify other delivery conditions and vice versa.

f. Dissimilar materials. Where a qualification test has been performed using dissimilar materials, acceptance is to be limited to the materials used in the test.

2. 15. 9 **Thickness and diameter range:**

a. For straight butt welds, the material thickness range to be approved is to be based on the thickness of the test piece and the type of weld as shown in Table 12. 2. 5: Welding procedure thickness approval range - Butt welds.

b. For butt welds between plates of unequal thickness, the lesser thickness is the ruling dimension.

c. For fillet welds and 'T' butt welds, Table 12. 2. 5: Welding procedure thickness approval range - Butt welds is to be applicable to both the abutting and through member thicknesses. In addition to the requirements of Table 12. 2. 5: Welding procedure thickness approval range - Butt welds, the range of approval of throat thickness '*a*' for fillet welds is to be as follows:
i. single run: 0.75*a* to 1.5*a*
ii. multi-run: as for butt welds with multi-run (i.e. $a = t$)

d. Notwithstanding any of the above, the approval of maximum thickness of base metal for any technique is to be restricted to the thickness of the test assembly if three of the hardness values in the heat affected zone are found to be within 25 Hv of the maximum permitted.

e. The material diameter range to be approved is to be based on the diameter of the test piece and type of weld as shown in Table 12. 2. 6: Diameter range approved.

Table 12. 2. 5: Welding procedure thickness approval range - Butt welds

Test thickness, *See* Note 1 (t in mm)	Range approved	
	All multi-run butt welds and all fillet welds *See* Notes 2 and 3	All single-run or two-run (T technique) butt welds
$t \leq 3$	t to $2t$	$0.7t$ to $1.1t$
$3 < t \leq 12$	3 to $2t$	$0.7t$ to $1.1t$
$12 < t \leq 100$	$0.5t$ to $2t$, *See* Note 1	$0.7t$ to $1.1t$ *See* Note 4
$t > 100$	$0.5t$ to $1.5t$	$0.7t$ to $1.1t$ *See* Note 4

Note 1. Subject to a maximum limit of 150 mm.

Note 2. For multi process procedures, the recorded thickness contribution of each process is to be used as a basis for the range of approval of the individual welding process.

Note 3. For vertical down welding, the test piece thickness, t, is the upper limit of the range of application.

Note 4. For processes with heat input over 5.0 kJ/mm, the upper limit of the range of approval is to be 1.0 t.

Table 12. 2. 6: Diameter range approved

• Diameter used for test, • *See* Note 1	Range of diameters approved

• $D \leq 25$ mm • $D > 25$ mm	• $0.5D$ to $2D$ • $> 0.5D$, *See* Note 2

Note *1.* D is the outside diameter of the pipe or the smallest side dimension of rectangular hollow section.

Note *2.* Lower diameter range limited to 25 mm minimum. **Note** *3.* Qualification given for plates also covers pipes when the outside diameter is greater than 500 mm or when the diameter is greater than150 mm welded in the Downhand (D) or Horizontal (X) positions.

یک جدول در فایل اصلی هست؟

2. 15. 10 **Welding consumables:**

a. For manual and semi-automatic welding used for the fill and capping weld runs, it may be acceptable to change the brand or trade name of the welding electrode or wire from that used in the test, provided the proposed alternative has the same or higher approval grading and the same flux type (e.g. basic low hydrogen, rutile, etc.) as used in that test.

b. For the consumable used to make the root weld of full penetration butt welds made from one side only, no change in the type or trade name of the consumable or backing material is permitted. Alternative backing materials may be used provided they are equivalent to those used for approval. Where the approved backing material is a low hydrogen grade and the steel being welded requires a low hydrogen backing material, testing of the alternative backing material is to confirm compliance with the requirements of Ch 11, 7 Consumables for use in one-side welding with temporary backing materials.

c. For processes with heat input over 5 kJ/mm, no change in the type or trade name of the consumable is permitted.

2. 15. 11 **Shielding gas.** For gas shielded welding processes, a change in shielding gas composition from that used in the test will require a new qualification test.

2. 15. 12 **Heat Input.** The upper limit of heat input approved is 25 per cent greater than that used in the test, or 5.5 kJ/mm, whichever is the smaller. With heat input over 5.0 KJ/mm, the upper limit is 10 per cent above that used in the test. In all cases, the lower limit of heat input approved is 25 per cent lower than that used in the test.

2. 15. 13 **Current type.** The current type used during the qualification test is to be the only type approved. Additionally, changes from or to pulsed current require new qualification tests.

2. 15. 14 **Preheat temperature.** The temperature used during the test is to be the minimum approved. Higher temperatures may be specified for production welds up to the maximum interpass temperature. Where hardness tests have been performed that exhibit results near the maximum permitted, an increase in preheat temperature is required when welding material of greater thickness than that used in the test.

2. 15. 15 **Interpass temperature.** The maximum interpass temperature recorded during qualification testing is to be the maximum approved. Lower temperatures may be specified for production welding, but no lower than the minimum preheat temperature.

2. 15. 16 **Post-weld heat treatment.** A qualification test performed with no post weld heat treatment is only acceptable for production welding where no heat treatment is applied. Where the qualification test has included a post weld heat treatment, this is to be applied to all welds made with the welding procedure. The average specified soak temperature may vary by up to 25°C from that tested.

2. 15. 17 **Shop primers.** Welding procedure qualification with shop primers qualifies welds without primer, but not vice versa.

2. 16 Welding procedure specification (WPS)

2. 16. 1 A welding procedure specification (WPS) is to be prepared by the manufacturer detailing the welding conditions and techniques to be employed for production welding. The WPS is to be based on the conditions and variables used during the qualification test, and is to include all the ranges of the essential variables specified in Ch 12, 2.2 Welding variables 2.2.1 and Ch 12, 2.15 Range of approval.

2. 16. 2 The WPS should reference the procedure qualification record upon which it is based and is to be approved by the Surveyor prior to commencing production welding.

PART

2

CHAPTER **12 Welding Qualifications**

SECTION **3 Specific requirements for stainless steels**

3. 1 Scope

3. 1. 1 The requirements of this Section relate to the group of steel materials classed as stainless steels and include austenitic and duplex grades and martensitic grades.

3. 1. 2 In all cases, welding procedure tests are to be performed generally in accordance with Section 2 with the specific requirements specified below.

3. 2 Austenitic stainless steels

3. 2. 1 The requirements of this Section relate to the group of stainless steel materials that are austenitic at ambient and sub-zero temperatures, (e.g. 304L, 316L types), *See* Table 3. 7. 1: Chemical composition in Ch 3 Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars.

3. 2. 2 Impact tests are to be performed from specimens removed from the weld metal. Tests in the heat affected zone are not required. The specimens are to achieve the minimum impact energy, as specified in Table 11. 8. 2: Requirements for butt weld tests (all techniques). in Ch 11 Approval of Welding Consumables

3. 2. 3 Hardness tests are generally not required.

3. 2. 4 For cryogenic or corrosion resistant applications, the ferrite content in the weld cap region is to be measured and is to be in the range 2 to 10 per cent, with the exception of grades S 31254 and N 08904 where the content is to be nominally zero.

3. 2. 5 A qualification test performed on an austenitic grade may be considered acceptable for welding other austenitic steels with the same or lower level of alloying elements and the same or lower tensile strength.

3. 2. 6 A qualification test performed for cryogenic applications may be considered acceptable for chemical applications, but not vice versa.

3. 3 Duplex stainless steels

3. 3. 1 The requirements of this Section relate to the group of stainless steel materials that have a ferritic-austenitic structure and are usually referred to as duplex or super duplex stainless steels (e.g. S 31803, S 32760).

3. 3. 2 Impact test specimens are to be removed from the weld and heat affected zone in accordance with Ch 12, 2 Welding procedure qualification tests for steels with the exception that impact test specimens notched at the FL + 10 mm location are not required. The specimens are to be tested at a temperature of –20°C or the minimum design temperature whichever is the lower and exhibit a minimum average energy of 40 J.

3. 3. 3 The corrosion resistance is to be maintained in the welded condition and the following tests are to be performed to demonstrate acceptable resistance, unless agreed otherwise.

a. A sample is to be removed from the weld and heat affected zone for micro-structural examination and is to be suitably prepared and etched so that the microstructures of the weld and heat affected zones can be examined at a magnification of x200 or higher. The micro-structure of the weld and heat affected zone is to be examined, the percentage grain boundary carbides and intermetallic precipitates is to be reported.

b. The ferrite content in the un-reheated weld cap and cap HAZ along with the weld root and root HAZ are to be measured and reported. The ferrite content is to be in accordance with Table 12. 3. 1: Requirements for ferrite content and corrosion tests for duplex stainless steel test welds. Where the intended construction is such that the corrosion medium is only in contact with one surface of the weld (i.e. the weld root), the ferrite determination need only be reported in that surface area.

c. Corrosion testing is to be performed on samples removed from the weld such that both the weld and HAZ are included in the test. The critical pitting temperature is to be determined in accordance with ASTM G48 Method C and meet the requirements specified in Table 12. 3. 1: Requirements for ferrite content and corrosion tests for duplex stainless steel test welds. The cap and root surfaces are to be inspected for evidence of pitting and may require probing the surface with a needle. Pitting found on the ends of the specimen in the weld cross-section may be ignored. The use of the weight loss method for corrosion testing may be accepted subject to special consideration.

Table 12. 3. 1: Requirements for ferrite content and corrosion tests for duplex stainless steel test welds

Duplex Stainless Steel Material Grade	Weld and HAZ Ferrite content	Minimum Critical Pitting Temperature (CPT)
S 31260	30 to 70%	20°C
S 31803	30 to 70%	20°C
S 32550	35 to 65%	25°C
S 32750	35 to 65%	25°C
S 32760	35 to 65%	25°C

3. 3. 4 Where the test weld is between a grade of carbon steel and duplex stainless steel, the test requirements of Ch 12, 3.3 Duplex stainless steels 3.3.3.a and Ch 12, 3.3 Duplex stainless steels 3.3.3.c are not required and the ferrite content of the weld and the duplex heat affected zone are to be reported for information.

3. 3. 5 A qualification test performed on a duplex stainless steel grade may be considered acceptable for welding other duplex grades which have the same or less stringent mechanical or corrosion properties.

3. 3. 6 The range of heat input is not to vary by more than +10 per cent or –25 per cent from that used during testing.

3. 4 Martensitic stainless steels

3. 4. 1 The requirements of this Section relate to the group of stainless steel materials that have a martensitic structure at ambient temperatures, *See* Table 4. 5. 1: Typical chemical composition for steel propeller castings.

3. 4. 2 The results of the hardness survey results are to be reported for information purposes only.

3. 4. 3 A qualification test is considered acceptable only for the grade of material used in the test.

PART

2

CHAPTER **12 Welding Qualifications**

SECTION **4 Welding procedure tests for non-ferrous alloys**

4. 1 Requirements for aluminium alloys

4. 1. 1 The requirements for welding procedure qualification tests for aluminium alloys are to be in accordance with the general requirements of Ch 12, 2 Welding procedure qualification tests for steels with the following exceptions and specific requirements.

4. 1. 2 Non-destructive examination is to be performed in accordance with Ch 12, 2.5 Non-destructive examination (NDE) and the assessment of results is to be in accordance with Table 12. 4. 1: Acceptance criteria for surface imperfections of aluminium alloys and Table 12. 4. 2: Acceptance criteria for internal imperfections of aluminium alloys.

Table 12. 4. 1: Acceptance criteria for surface imperfections of aluminium alloys

Surface discontinuity	Classification according to ISO 6520-1	Acceptance criteria
Crack	100	Not permitted
Lack of fusion	401	Not permitted
Incomplete root penetration in butt joints welded from one side	4021	Not permitted
Surface pore	2017	$d \leq 0.1s$ or $0.1a$
		max. 1.0 mm
Uniformly distributed porosity (*See* Note 1)	2012	≤ 0.5% of area
Clustered porosity	2013	Not permitted
Continuous undercut	5011	Not permitted
Intermittent undercut	5012	$h \leq 0.1t$ or 0.5 mm (whichever is the lesser)
Excess weld metal (*See* Note 2)	502	$h \leq 1.5$ mm + $0.1b$ or 6 mm (whichever is the lesser)
Excess penetration	504	$h \leq 4$ mm
Root concavity (*See* Note 2)	515	$h \leq 0.05t$ or 0.5 mm (whichever is the lesser)

Linear misalignment (*See* Notes 3 and 4)	507	$h \leq 0.2t$ or 2.0 mm (whichever is the lesser)

Symbols

a = nominal throat thickness of a fillet weld

b = width of weld reinforcement

d = diameter of a gas pore

h = height or width of an imperfection

s = nominal butt weld thickness

t = wall or plate thickness (nominal size)

Note *1.* To be in accordance with EN ISO 10042.

Note *2.* A smooth transition is required.

Note *3.* The limits for linear misalignment relate to deviations from the correct position. Unless otherwise specified, the correct position is to be taken when the centrelines coincide.

Note *4.* Dimensional tolerances not specified in these Rules are to be mutually agreed between the manufacturer and the Surveyor.

Table 12. 4. 2: Acceptance criteria for internal imperfections of aluminium alloys

Internal discontinuity	Classification according to ISO 6520-1	Acceptance criteria	
Crack	100	Not permitted	
Lack of fusion	401	Not permitted	
Incomplete penetration	402	Not permitted	
Single gas pore	2011	$d \leq 0.2s$ or $0.2a$ or 4 mm (whichever is the lesser)	
Linear porosity (*See* Note 2)	2014	Not permitted	
Uniformly distributed porosity (*See* Note 2)	2012	$0.5t$ to $3t$	≤ 1% of area
		> $3t$ to $12t$	≤ 2% of area
		> $12t$ to $30t$	≤ 3% of area
		> $30t$	≤ 4% of area
Clustered porosity (*See* Note 1)	2013	$dA \leq 15$ mm or wp (whichever is the lesser)	
Elongated cavity Wormhole	2015 2016	$l \leq 0.2s$ or $0.2a$ or 3 mm (whichever is the lesser)	
Oxide inclusion (*See* Note 2)	303	$l \leq 0.2s$ or $0.2a$ or 3 mm (whichever is the lesser)	
Tungsten inclusion	3041	$l \leq 0.2s$ or $0.2a$ or 3 mm (whichever is the lesser)	

Copper inclusion	3042	Not permitted	
Multiple imperfections in any cross-section	—	The sum of the acceptable individual imperfections in any cross-section is not to exceed $0.2t$ or $0.2a$ (whichever is the lesser)	

Symbols

a = nominal throat thickness of a fillet weld

d = diameter of a gas pore

h = height or width of an imperfection

s = nominal butt weld thickness

t = wall or plate thickness (nominal size), in mm

wp = width of weld or width or height of cross-sectional area

dA = diameter of area surrounding gas pores

l = length of imperfection in longitudinal direction of weld

Note *1*. For this acceptance criterion, linear porosity is to be considered as three aligned gas pores in a length of 25 mm.

Note *2*. Porosity is to be determined in accordance with ISO 10042. The requirements for a single gas pore are to be met by all the gas pores within this circle. Systematic clustered porosity is not permitted.

4. 1. 3 Acceptance of the mechanical tests is to be in accordance with Ch 11, 9 Consumables for welding aluminium alloys. Welding of the strain hardened and heat treatable aluminium alloys will generally result in a loss of tensile strength in the heat affected zone below that specified for the base materials and the tensile strength acceptance criteria to be applied is that specified for the material in the annealed or 'as fabricated' condition. Minimum values of tensile strength measured on the transverse tensile samples are given in Table 12. 4. 3: Tensile strength requirements by grade for aluminium alloys.

Table 12. 4. 3: Tensile strength requirements by grade for aluminium alloys

Parent material Grade (alloy designation)	Minimum tensile strength (N/mm^2)
5754	190
5086	240
5083	275
5383	290
5059	330
5456	290
6005A	170
6061	170
6082	170

4. 1. 4 Impact tests and hardness surveys are not required for aluminium alloys.

4. 1. 5 Four side bend tests may be used in place of root and face bends where the test thickness exceeds 12 mm, and longitudinal bend tests may be used instead of transverse tests where the test weld is between different grades of alloy. Bend specimens are to be bent round a former in accordance with Table 11. 9. 1: Requirements for butt weld tests in Chapter 11, with the exception that the 6000 series alloys may be bent round a former with $D/t = 7$.

4. 1. 6 The ranges of approval to be applied to the WPS are to be as specified for steel in Ch 12, 2.15 Range of approval with the following exceptions:

a. The welding positions approved are as detailed in Table 12. 4. 4: Welding procedure approval, welding positions for aluminium alloys.

b. The aluminium alloys are grouped into three groups as follows:

- Group A: aluminium-magnesium alloys, with Mg content ≤3.5 per cent (alloy 5754).
- Group B: aluminium-magnesium alloys with 4 per cent ≤Mg ≤5.6 per cent (alloys 5059, 5083, 5086, 5383 and 5456).
- Group C: aluminium-magnesium-silicon alloys (alloys 6005A, 6061 and 6082).

For each group, the qualification made on one alloy qualifies the procedure also for the other alloys in the group, with equal or lower tensile strength after welding. The qualification made on group B alloys qualifies the procedure for Group A alloys also. Approval for the range of material grades is summarised in Table 12. 4. 5: Welding procedure approval, aluminium material grades approved.

c. The qualification of a procedure carried out on a test assembly of thickness t is valid for the thickness range given in Table 12. 4. 6: Range of qualification for parent material thickness. In the case of butt joints between dissimilar thicknesses, t is the thickness of the thinner material. In the case of fillet joints between dissimilar thicknesses, t is the thickness of the thicker material. In addition to the requirements of Table 12. 4. 6: Range of qualification for parent material thickness, the range of the qualification of throat thickness of fillet welds, a, is given in Table 12. 4. 7: Range of qualification of throat thickness for fillet welds. Where a fillet weld is qualified by a butt weld test, the throat thickness range qualified is to be based on the thickness of the deposited weld metal.

d. The range of shielding gas compositions approved is to be in accordance with Table 11. 9. 2: Shielding gas compositions in Ch 11 Approval of Welding Consumables.

e. A change in the brand or trade name of the filler metal from that used in the test is acceptable, provided that the proposed consumable has the same or higher strength grading.

f. A change in post-weld heat treatment or ageing is not permitted, except that for the heat treatable alloys, artificial ageing may give approval for prolonged natural ageing.

Table 12. 4. 4: Welding procedure approval, welding positions for aluminium alloys

Test Position		Positions Approved
Downhand	D	D
Horizontal-vertical	X	D, X
Vertical up	Vu	D, X, Vu
Overhead	O	D, X, Vu and O
Note Welding in vertical down (Vd) position is not recommended.		

Table 12. 4. 5: Welding procedure approval, aluminium material grades approved

Material used in qualification test	Material Grades approved				
5754	5754				
5086	5086	5754			
5083	5083	5086	5754		
5383	5383	5083	5086	5754	
5059	5059	5383	5083	5086	5754
5456	5456	5383	5083	5086	5754
6005A	6005A	6082	6061		
6082	6005A	6082	6061		
6061	6005A	6082	6061		
Note Approval includes all the different strained and tempered conditions in each case.					

Table 12. 4. 6: Range of qualification for parent material thickness

Thickness of test assembly, t (mm)	Range of qualification Multi pass welds	Range of qualification All single-run or two-run (T technique) butt welds
$t \leq 3$	0.5 to 2t	0.5t to 1.1t
$3 < t \leq 20$	3 to 2t	0.5t to 1.1t
$t > 20$	$\geq 0.8t$	0.5t to 1.1t

Table 12. 4. 7: Range of qualification of throat thickness for fillet welds

Throat thickness of test piece, a (mm)	Range of qualification
$a < 10$	0.75 a to 1.5 a
$a \geq 10$	≥ 7.5

4. 2 Requirements for copper alloys

4. 2. 1 The requirements for welding procedure qualification tests for copper alloys are to be in accordance with the requirements for steel as given in Ch 12, 2 Welding procedure qualification tests for steels with the following exceptions and additions.

4. 2. 2 Impact tests on copper alloys are not required.

4. 2. 3 Hardness tests are not required for seawater service.

4. 2. 4 For the welding of cast copper alloys for propellers, the minimum tensile strength from the transverse tensile test is to be in accordance with Table 12. 4. 8: Minimum transverse tensile strengths for welded copper alloy propellers.

Table 12. 4. 8: Minimum transverse tensile strengths for welded copper alloy propellers

Alloy designation	Minimum tensile strength (N/mm^2)
CU 1	370
CU 2	410
CU 3	500
CU 4	550

4. 2. 5 Bend tests are to be performed over a diameter of former as detailed in Table 12. 4. 9: Former diameters for bend testing of copper alloy welds.

Table 12. 4. 9: Former diameters for bend testing of copper alloy welds

Alloy designation (*See* Ch 9 Copper Alloys)	Former diameter (D/t)
Cast propellers:	
CU1	4
CU2	4
CU3	6, *See* Note
CU4	6, *See* Note
Other short freezing range castings:	
Copper-Nickel 90/10	4
Copper-Nickel 70/30	4
Aluminium bronze	6
Wrought alloys (tubes and pipes):	
Copper-phosphorus	3
Aluminium-brass	3
90/10 Copper-nickel-iron	3
70/30 Copper-nickel-iron	3
Note Where the qualification tests for these alloys are subjected to post-weld heat treatment the former diameter may be increased to $D/t = 10$.	

4. 2. 6 The range of approval to be applied to the WPS is to be as specified in Ch 12, 2.15 Range of approval with the exception of the material grades which are detailed in Table 12. 4. 10: Range of approval for copper alloy material grades.

Table 12. 4. 10: Range of approval for copper alloy material grades

Category	Alloy grade used in the qualification test	Alloy grades approved
Propellers	CU1	CU1
	CU2	CU1 and CU2
	CU3	CU1, CU2 and CU3
	CU4	CU4 *See* Note 1
Tubes/pipes	90/10 Copper - Nickel-Iron	90/10 Copper -Nickel-Iron
	70/30 Copper - Nickel-Iron	70/30 Copper -Nickel-Iron and
		90/10 Copper -Nickel-Iron
Tubes/pipes *See* Note 2	Copper-Phosphorus deoxidised - arsenical	Copper-Phosphorus deoxidised - arsenical
	Copper-Phosphorus deoxidised - non arsenical	Copper-Phosphorus deoxidised - non arsenical
	Aluminium-brass	Aluminium-brass

Note *1*. Where a CU3 type welding consumable has been used for the qualification test, the range of approval may also include welding of CU3.

Note *2*. These grades have limited weldability and approval to weld is subject to the materials satisfying the requirements of Table 9. 3. 1: Chemical composition of principal elements only in Chapter 9.

PART

2

CHAPTER **12 Welding Qualifications**

SECTION **5 Welder qualification tests**

5. 1 Scope

5. 1. 1 The requirements of this Section relate to qualification of welders involved in welded construction and repair associated with ships, or other marine structures, and products or components intended for use on or in these structures.

5. 1. 2 The requirements relate to fusion welding processes that are designated as manual, semi-automatic or partly mechanised. Special consideration will be given to other welding processes adapted from these requirements.

5. 1. 3 The qualification test and approval range of welding operators for fully mechanised and automatic welding processes are to be carried out with reference to ISO 14732 or equivalent.

5. 1. 4 Prior to commencing production welding, the welder is to have performed a qualification test that satisfies these requirements. It is the responsibility of the manufacturer to ensure that the welder possesses the required level of skill for the work to be undertaken.

5. 1. 5 The qualification of welders is to be documented by the manufacturer and the records are to be available for review by the Surveyor.

5. 1. 6 Welder qualification tests made in accordance with EN, ISO, JIS, ASME or AWS may be considered for acceptance provided that, as a minimum, they are equivalent to, and meet the technical intent of these Rules to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

5. 2 Welder qualification test assemblies

5. 2. 1 The welding of the welder qualification test assembly is to simulate, as far as practicable, the conditions to be experienced in production and be witnessed by the Surveyor. The test is to be carried out on a test assembly piece and not by way of production welding.

5. 2. 2 The test is to simulate, as far as practicable, the welding techniques and practices to be encountered during production welding. The test assembly is to be designed to test the skill of the welder and have the shape and dimensions appropriate to the range of approval required.

5. 2. 3 The inspection length of the test weld is to be such as to permit the removal of all the necessary test specimens and for plate tests, but in no case is to be less than 250 mm. The test assembly is to be set in one of the positions as shown in Figure 12. 2. 4: Plate butt weld test positions to Figure 12. 2. 7: Pipe fillet weld test positions appropriate to the welding positions to be approved.

5. 2. 4 A welding procedure specification (WPS) is required for the execution of the qualification test and is to include the information specified in Ch 12, 2.2 Welding variables 2.2.1, as a minimum.

5. 2. 5 The test assembly is to be marked with a unique identification and the inspection length is to be identified prior commencing welding. For pipe welds, the whole circumference is to be considered as the inspection length.

5. 2. 6 During welding of the test assembly, the welding time is to be similar to that expected under production conditions. For manual or semi-automatic processes, at least one stop and re-start in the root and in the top surface layer is to be included in the inspection length and marked for future inspection.

5. 2. 7 During welding of the test assembly, minor imperfections may be removed by the welder by any method that is used in production, except on the surface layer.

5. 2. 8 The Surveyor may stop the test if the welding conditions are not correct or if there is any doubt about the competence of the welder to achieve the required standard.

5. 3 Examination and testing

5. 3. 1 Each completed test weld is to be examined and tested in accordance with the requirements of Table 12. 5. 1: Welder qualification test requirements. All examinations and tests are to be witnessed by the Surveyor.

Table 12. 5. 1: Welder qualification test requirements

Examination type	Butt welds	Fillet welds	Pipe branch welds	Butt tack welds	Fillet tack welds
Visual	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%
Surface crack detection	*See* Note 1	100%	100%	Not required	Not required
Radiography	100% *See* Notes 2 and 6	Not required	Not required	Not required	Not required
Bend tests	4 required *See* Notes 3 and 6	Not required	Not required	Not required	Not required
Fracture tests	Not required	1 required *See* Note 4	Not required	1 required	1 required
Macro	Not required	1 required *See* Note 4	4 required *See* Note 5	Not required	Not required

Note *1.* Surface crack detection examination may be required by the Surveyor in order to clarify the acceptability of any weld feature.

Note *2.* Radiography may be replaced by ultrasonic examination for carbon and low alloy steels where the thickness exceeds 8 mm.

Note *3.* Bend tests are required for gas metal arc welding (GMAW) with solid wire or metal cored wire and oxy-acetylene welding.

Note *4.* The fracture test may be replaced with 4 macro sections equally spaced along the inspection length.

Note *5.* Macro-sections are to be separated by 90° measured around the abutting pipe member.

Note *6.* Radiography and bend tests are required for tests in aluminium alloys.

5. 3. 2 Visual examination is to be performed in the as welded state prior to any other assessment.

5. 3. 3 For plate butt welds, fracture testing may be used in place of radiography.

5. 3. 4 Where a backing strip has been used, it is to be retained for non-destructive examinations, but is to be removed prior to performing any bend or fracture tests.

5. 3. 5 Where fracture tests are required, they are to sample as much of the inspection length as practicable and the test assembly may be cut into several test specimens to achieve this. Testing is to be performed as shown in Figure 12. 5. 1: Preparation and fracture testing of test specimens for a fillet weld in plate or Figure 12. 5. 2: Preparation and fracture testing of test specimens for a butt weld in plate.

Figure 12. 5. 1: Preparation and fracture testing of test specimens for a fillet weld in plate

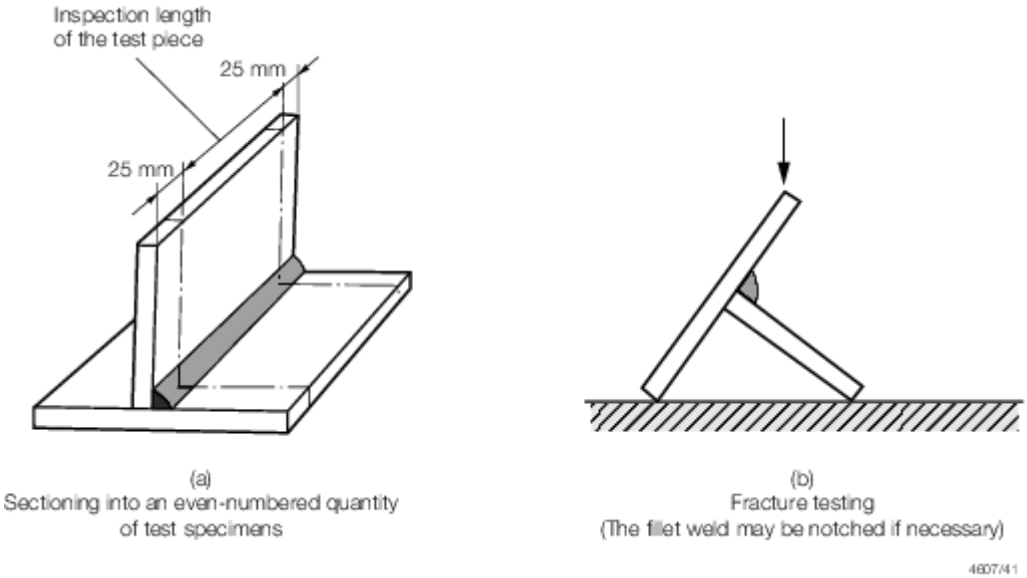
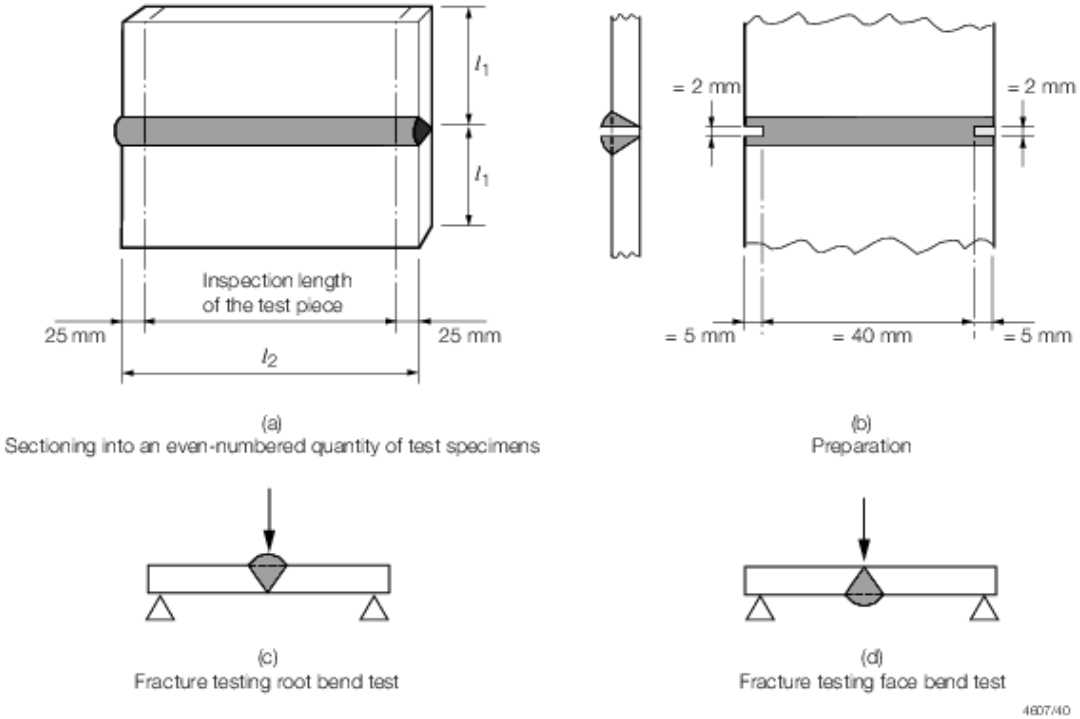


Figure 12. 5. 2: Preparation and fracture testing of test specimens for a butt weld in plate



5. 3. 6 For butt weld tests in aluminium alloys both radiography and bend tests are required.

5. 3. 7 When bend tests are required, 2 root and 2 face bends are to be tested and where the test thickness exceeds 12 mm, these may be substituted by 4 side bends specimens. The diameter of former to be used is to be in accordance with that specified for welding procedure qualification testing given in Ch 12, 2.7 Destructive tests for steel butt welds 2.7.6.a.

5. 3. 8 Where macro examination is required, the specimen is to be polished and etched to reveal the weld runs and heat affected zones, and be examined at a magnification between x5 and x10.

5. 4 Acceptance criteria

5. 4. 1 The acceptance criteria are to be in accordance with Ch 12, 2.5 Non-destructive examination (NDE) 2.5.5.

5. 4. 2 Fracture tests and macro-sections are to be assessed in accordance with the non-destructive examination acceptance criteria.

5. 4. 3 Bend tests are considered acceptable if after bending through an angle of at least 180°, there are no defects on the tension side of the specimen greater than 3 mm in any direction.

5. 5 Failure to meet requirements

5. 5. 1 Where a macro-section fails to meet requirements, one additional specimen may be removed from the test assembly and examined.

5. 5. 2 Where a bend or fracture test specimen fails to meet requirements, two additional specimens may be prepared from the same test assembly. If there is insufficient material, the welder may be permitted to weld an additional assembly to the same WPS, at the discretion of the Surveyor.

5. 5. 3 Where any of the additional test specimens fails to satisfy the requirements, the test will be considered as not meeting the requirements.

5. 5. 4 Where a test fails to comply with the acceptance criteria, the welder may be permitted to weld a second test piece. If this does not meet requirements, the welder is to be considered as not being capable of achieving the requirements.

5. 6 Range of approval

5. 6. 1 Upon successful completion of all the necessary examinations and tests, the welder is to be considered qualified. The essential variables and the range of welding conditions for which the welder is considered approved are specified in the following paragraphs.

5. 6. 2 Welding variables such as preheat, interpass temperature, heat input and current type are not considered welder qualification variables. However, if the WPS used for testing specify these, they are to be included in the test and the welder is expected to follow the specific instructions.

5. 6. 3 Where the WPS used for the welder qualification test specifies post-weld heat treatment, this need not be applied to the test weld unless bend tests are required and the material exhibits low ductility in the as welded condition.

5. 6. 4 The qualification test performed by a manufacturer is only applicable to workshops under the same technical control and quality system as that used for the test.

5. 6. 5 The welding process used in the qualification test is the process approved. However, it is possible for the welder to use more than one process in the test and the range of approval that may be applied to each will be within the limits of the essential variables appropriate to the part of the test where each welding process was used.

5. 6. 6 A change from welding with solid wire to metal cored wire or vice versa is allowed. A change from or to welding with flux cored wire requires a new qualification test.

5. 6. 7 For gas tungsten arc welding in which the wire is added manually, welding with a filler wire qualifies welding without filler wire but not vice versa.

5. 6. 8 Material types are to be grouped as shown in Table 12. 5. 2: Welder qualification materials groupings for welder qualifications. A qualification test performed on one material from a group will permit welding of all other materials within the same group. In addition, qualification on one group of materials may confer approval to weld other groups as shown in Table 12. 5. 3: Welder qualification, range of approval for material groups.

Table 12. 5. 2: Welder qualification materials groupings

Material group	Material description	Typical ACS Grades	Rules for Material references
WQ 01	Low carbon unalloyed,	A, B, D and E	Ch 3, 2 Normal strength steels for ship and other structural applications
	C/Mn, or	AH to FH32 and 36	Ch 3, 3 Higher strength steels for ship and other structural applications
	Low alloyed steels (Re≤360 N/mm^2)	Boiler 510FG and lower	Ch 3, 4 Steels for boilers and pressure vessels
		LT-AH to FH32 and 36	Ch 3, 6 Carbon–manganese and nickel alloy steels for low temperature service
		U1 and U2	Ch 3, 9 Bars for welded chain cables and Ch 10 Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring
		Steel castings	Ch 4, 2 Castings for ship and other structural applications , Ch 4, 3 Castings for machinery construction, Ch 4, 6 Castings for boilers, pressure vessels and piping systems and Ch 4, 7 Ferritic steel castings for low temperature service
		Steel pipes	Ch 6, 2 Seamless pressure pipes, Ch 6, 3 Welded pressure pipes, Ch 6, 4 Ferritic steel pressure pipes for low temperature service andCh 6, 6 Boiler and superheater tubes
WQ 02	Cr-Mo, or	13CrMo45 and 11CrMo910	Ch 3, 4 Steels for boilers and pressure vessels
	Cr-Mo-V creep resisting steels	1Cr½Mo and 2¼Cr1Mo	Ch 4, 6 Castings for boilers, pressure vessels and piping systems and Ch 6, 2 Seamless pressure pipes, Ch 6, 3 Welded pressure pipes and Ch 6, 6 Boiler and superheater tubes
		½Cr½Mo¼V	Ch 4, 6 Castings for boilers, pressure vessels and piping systems and Ch 6, 2 Seamless pressure pipes
WQ 03	High strength fine grained,	AH to FH40 to 69	Ch 3, 3 Higher strength steels for ship and other structural applications and Ch 10 Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring
	Normalised or quenched, or	LT-AH to LT-FH40	Ch 3, 6 Carbon–manganese and nickel alloy steels for low temperature service
	Tempered structural steels (2.0 – 5% Ni, with Re > 360 N/mm^2)	1½, 2¼, 3½ Ni steels and castings	Ch 3, 6 Carbon–manganese and nickel alloy steels for low temperature service, Ch 4, 7 Ferritic steel castings for low temperature service and Ch 6, 4 Ferritic steel pressure pipes for low temperature service

		U3, R3, R3S and R4	Ch 3, 9 Bars for welded chain cables and Ch 10 Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring
WQ 04	Ferritic, or martensitic stainless steels (12 to 20% Cr)	13% Cr (martensitic)	Ch 4, 5 Castings for propellers (martensitic)
WQ 05	Ferritic low temperature steels	5Ni and 9Ni	Ch 3, 6 Carbon–manganese and nickel alloy steels for low temperature service
WQ 011	Ferritic-austenitic stainless steels,	304, 316, 317, 321 and 347	Ch 3, 7 Austenitic and duplex stainless steels and Ch 8 Aluminium Alloys
	Austenitic stainless steels, or Cr-Ni steels	S31260, S31803, S32550 and S32750	Ch 4, 8 Stainless steel castings and Ch 6, 5 Stainless steel pressure pipes
WQ 22a	Aluminium alloy – Non-heat treatable Mg < 3.5%	5754	Ch 8 Aluminium Alloys
WQ 22b	Aluminium alloy – Non-heat treatable 3.5% < Mg < 5.6%	5083 and 5086	Ch 8 Aluminium Alloys
WQ 23	Aluminium alloy – Heat treatable	6005-A, 6061 and 6082	Ch 8 Aluminium Alloys
WQ 30	Copper alloys for propellers – Manganese bronze	Cu1	Ch 9, 1 Castings for propellers
WQ 31	Copper alloys for propellers – Nickel – manganese bronze	Cu2	Ch 9, 1 Castings for propellers
WQ 32	Copper alloys for propellers – Nickel – aluminium bronze	Cu3	Ch 9, 1 Castings for propellers
WQ 33	Copper alloys for propellers – Manganese-aluminium bronze	Cu4	Ch 9, 1 Castings for propellers
WQ 34	Copper alloys for tubes – Copper phosphorus	Deoxidised – non-arsenical and arsenical	Ch 9, 3 Tubes
WQ 35	Copper alloys for tubes – Aluminium brass	Aluminium brass	Ch 9, 3 Tubes
WQ 36	Copper alloys for tubes – Copper – nickel- iron	70/30 Cu/Ni and 90/10 Cu/Ni	Ch 9, 3 Tubes

Table 12. 5. 3: Welder qualification, range of approval for material groups

Material Group used for testing	Material groups approved to weld			
WQ 01	WQ 01			

WQ 02	WQ 01	WQ 02		
WQ 03	WQ 01	WQ 02	WQ 03	
WQ 04	WQ 01	WQ 02	WQ 04	
WQ 05	WQ 05			
WQ 11	WQ 11	WQ 05, *See* Note	WQ 04, *See* Note	
WQ 22a	WQ 22a	WQ 22b		
WQ 22b	WQ 22a	WQ 22b		
WQ 23	WQ 22a	WQ 22b	WQ 23	
WQ 30	WQ 30	WQ 31	WQ 32	WQ 33
WQ 31	WQ 30	WQ 31	WQ 32	WQ 33
WQ 32	WQ 30	WQ 31	WQ 32	WQ 33
WQ 33	WQ 30	WQ 31	WQ 32	WQ 33
WQ 34	WQ 34	WQ 35		
WQ 35	WQ 34	WQ 35		
WQ 36	WQ 36			
Note Provided an austenitic welding consumable compatible with material group WQ 11 is used.				

5. 6. 9 A qualification test performed on one thickness will confer approval to weld other thicknesses as specified in Table 12. 5. 4: Welder qualification, range of approval for material thickness. Where welding is required between materials of different thickness, the reference thickness for approval purposes is to be the lesser thickness.

Table 12. 5. 4: Welder qualification, range of approval for material thickness

Material type	Test piece thickness (mm)	Range approved, *See* Note (mm)
Steel and copper alloys	$t < 3$	t to $2t$
	$3 \leq t < 12$	3.0 to $2t$
	$t \geq 12$	≥ 3.0
Aluminium alloys	$t \leq 6$	0.5 t to $2t$
	t > 6	≥ 6
Note For oxy-acetylene welding the maximum thickness is limited to 1.5 t.		

5. 6. 10 A qualification test performed on plate confers approval to weld on pipes having an outside diameter greater than 500 mm in a fixed position (*See* Table 12. 5. 5: Welder qualification, diameter range of approval for pipes and hollow sections and Table 12. 5. 7: Welding position ranges for welder qualification).

Table 12. 5. 5: Welder qualification, diameter range of approval for pipes and hollow sections

Material type	Test piece diameter (mm)	Range approved (mm)
Steel and copper alloys	$D \leq 25$	D to $2D$
	$25 < D \leq 150$	$0.5D$ to $2D$, *See* Note 1
	$D > 150$	$\geq 0.5D$
	Plate, *See* Note 2	≥ 500
Aluminium alloys	$D \leq 125$	$0.25D$ to $2D$
	$D > 125$	$\geq 0.5D$
	Plate, *See* Note 2	≥ 500

Note *1.* Subject to 25 mm minimum diameter.

Note *2.* Plate qualification will approve welding on pipes greater than 150 mm diameter when the pipe is rotated.

5. 6. 11 qualification test performed using a specific diameter of pipe will give approval to weld other diameters as shown in Table 12. 5. 5: Welder qualification, diameter range of approval for pipes and hollow sections. For branch welds, the diameter upon which approval is based is to be the branch member.

5. 6. 12 A qualification test performed on a butt weld may be considered as giving approval for fillet welds. Where a welder is employed to perform fillet welding only, a fillet welding qualification test is required. For welding T joints with full or partial penetration a butt welding qualification is required.

5. 6. 13 A qualification test performed on one type of weld joint will give approval to weld other types of weld joint as shown in Table 12. 5. 6: Range of welded joints for welder qualification.

Table 12. 5. 6: Range of welded joints for welder qualification

Type of welded joint for test assembly				Range of approval
Butt welding	One side	With backing	A	A, C, E, F
		Without backing	B	A, B, C, D, E, F
	Both sides	With gouging	C	A, C, E, F
		Without gouging	D	A, C, D, E, F
Fillet weld		Multi-run	E	E, F
		Single-run	F	F

Table 12. 5. 7: Welding position ranges for welder qualification

Test weld conditions		Positions qualified			
Type of weld	Test position	Plate		Pipe, *See* Note 1	
		Butt weld	Fillet weld	Butt weld	Fillet weld

Plate butt, *See* Note 5	D	D	D	D	D
	X	D,X	D,X	D	D,X
	Vu	D, Vu	D, X, Vu	D	D, Vu
	Vd	Vd	Vd	–	–
	O	D, X, Vu, O	D, X, Vu, O	D	D, X, Vu, O
Plate Fillet, *See* Note 5	D	–	D	–	D
	X	–	D,X	–	D,X
	Vu	–	D, X, Vu	–	D, X, Vu
	Vd	–	Vd	–	–
	O	–	D, X, Vu, O	–	D, X, Vu, O
Pipe butt	D	D	D,X	D	D,X
	X	D,X	D,X	D,X	D,X
	D+Vu+O, *See* Note 3	D, Vu, O	D, X, Vu, O	D, Vu, O	D, X, Vu, O
	D+Vd+O, *See* Notes 2 and 3	Vd	Vd	Vd	Vd
	Axis at 45°, *See* Note 4, Travel Vu	D, X, Vu, O	D, X, Vu, O	D, X, Vu, O	D, X, Vu, O
	Axis at 45°, *See* Notes 2, 3 and 4, Travel Vd	Vd	Vd	Vd	Vd
Pipe fillet	D	–	D	–	D
	X	–	D, X	–	D, X
	D+Vu+O *See* Note 3	–	D, X, Vu, O	–	D, X, Vu, O
	D+Vu+O *See* Note 3	–	Vd	–	Vd

Note 1. Pipe D position means pipe in horizontal position and rotated, *See* Figure 12. 2. 5: Pipe butt weld test positions and Figure 12. 2. 7: Pipe fillet weld test positions.

Note 2. Vd position not usually recommended for pipe welds less than 500 mm diameter.

Note 3. Pipe fixed with axis in the horizontal position (e.g. ASME 5G).

Note 4. Pipe fixed with axis at 45° to the horizontal (e.g. ASME 6G).

Note 5. Plate qualification tests confers approval to weld pipes with diameter greater than 500 mm.

5. 6. 14 A qualification test performed in one position will give approval to weld in other positions as shown in Table 12. 5. 7: Welding position ranges for welder qualification.

5. 6. 15 For manual metal arc welding with covered electrodes, a qualification test performed using an electrode with one type of coating will only be approved for welding with that type of coating. However, a qualification test performed using a basic low hydrogen type coating will confer approval to use electrodes with rutile coatings.

5. 6. 16 For gas shielded welding processes that use a single component shielding gas, no change to the gas composition is permitted from that tested. Where the test has used a two component shielding gas, a change in the ratio of component gases is permitted, provided that one of the components is not reduced to zero. Where the test has used a three component shielding gas, changes are permitted in the ratio of component gases and the gas with the smallest ratio may be reduced to zero, provided this does not change the shielding gas from an active one to an inert one or vice versa. In addition, where a change in shielding gas composition requires a different welding method or technique to be employed, a new qualification test will be required.

5. 6. 17 A change of welding flux from that used for the test is permitted.

5. 6. 18 A qualification for butt or fillet welding qualifies welding of tacks.

5. 6. 19 Where a welder is employed in the welding of tack welds only and which are not incorporated into the final weld, a test assembly in accordance with Figure 12. 5. 3: Dimensions and types of test assembly for butt tack welding or Figure 12. 5. 4: Dimensions and types of test assembly for fillet tack welding may be prepared as an alternative to full butt or fillet weld qualification.

Figure 12. 5. 3: Dimensions and types of test assembly for butt tack welding

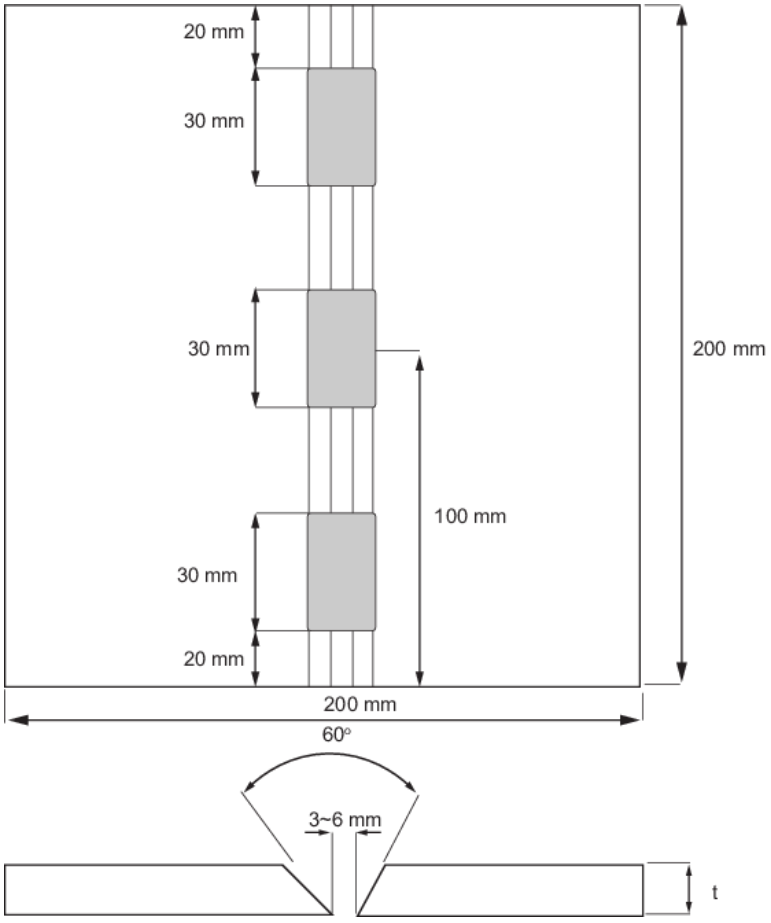
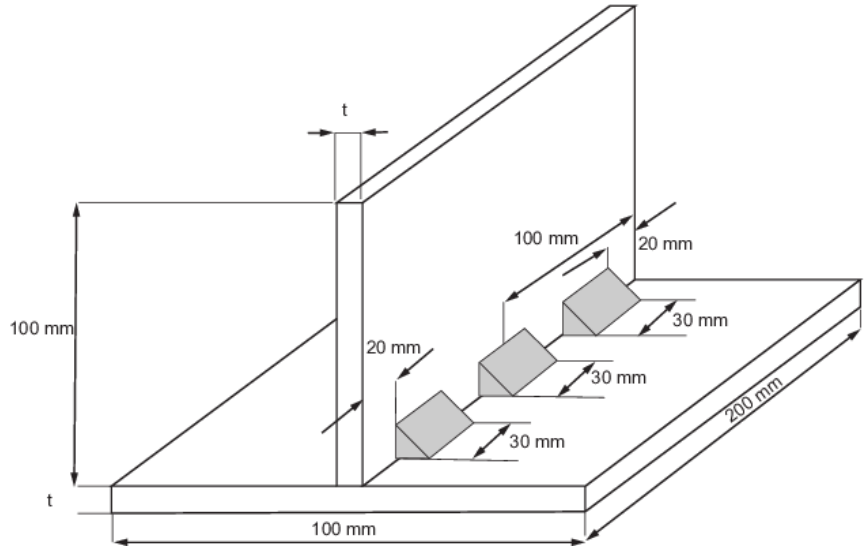


Figure 12. 5. 4: Dimensions and types of test assembly for fillet tack welding



5. 7 Welders qualification certification

5. 7. 1 All the relevant conditions used during the test are to be entered on the welder's qualification certificate along with the permitted range of approval.

5. 7. 2 If the Surveyor is satisfied that the welder has demonstrated the appropriate level of skill and all tests are satisfactory, the Surveyor will endorse the certificate verifying that the details contained on it are correct and that the test welds were prepared, welded and tested in accordance with the specified Rules, Codes or Standards.

5. 7. 3 The welder is considered to be approved for an initial validity period of 2 or 3 years depending upon the chosen method of validation which is to be stated on the welder's certificate at time of issue. The welder is considered to have retained the qualification during this period subject to the manufacturer confirming every 6 months that the welder has met the following conditions:

a. The welder has been engaged with a reasonable continuity on welding work within the current range of approval. An interruption for a period of no longer than six months is permitted.
b. The welder's work shall generally be in accordance with the technical conditions under which approval test is carried out.
c. There shall be no specific reason to question the welder's skill and knowledge.

5. 7. 4 The Surveyor shall extend the validity of the approval by one of the following methods:

a. Re-test the welder every 3 years.
b. After 2 years, two welds made within the previous six months are to be subject to radiographic inspection or ultrasonic inspection or destructively tested and the result recorded. Welding shall reproduce all initial test conditions except for thickness. Subject to satisfactory examination or testing the qualification is revalidated for a further 2 years. The Surveyor will signify acceptance of the extension to the validity by endorsing the certificate.

5. 7. 5 Where there is any reason to question the welder's ability, or there is a lack of continuity in the use of the welding process, or insufficient recorded evidence of acceptable weld performance, the welder is to perform a new qualification test.

5. 7. 6 Where the manufacturer has existing welders that have previously performed qualification tests, these may be considered for acceptance provided they satisfy the above requirements and the tests have been performed in the presence of an independent examiner that is acceptable to the Society.

5. 7. 7 Not withstanding the above, the Surveyor may at any time request a review of a welder's qualification records. If there is any reason for doubt concerning the skill of the welder, the Surveyor may withdraw the qualification and require a re-qualification test to be performed.

PART

2

CHAPTER **12 Welding Qualifications**

SECTION **6 Qualification of friction stir welding of aluminium alloys**

6. 1 Scope

6. 1. 1 The requirements of this Section relate to the Friction Stir Welding (FSW) of aluminium alloys. These requirements include requirements for verification of welding equipment, welding procedures, qualification of welding procedures and qualification of welding operators.

6. 2 Welding equipment

6. 2. 1 Welding equipment (e.g. welding machines and FSW tools) is to be capable of producing welds that meet the specified acceptance levels.

6. 2. 2 Welding equipment is to be maintained in a good condition and is to be repaired or adjusted when necessary.

6. 2. 3 After installation of new or refurbished equipment, appropriate tests are to be performed to verify that the equipment functions correctly.

6. 3 Weld procedures

6. 3. 1 This Section defines the requirements for welding procedures to be applied for FSW of aluminium alloys.

6. 3. 2 Manufacturers are to prepare a preliminary welding procedure specification (pWPS) defining procedures for how FSW is to be conducted.

6. 3. 3 A pWPS is to comply with the requirements of ISO 25239-4.

6. 3. 4 Qualification of a pWPS is achieved by conducting weld procedure qualification tests in accordance with ISO 25239-4. Minimum acceptance criteria for destructive tests are to be in accordance with these Rules. Reporting of the qualification tests are to be in accordance with ISO 25239-4.

6. 3. 5 Provided that the procedure qualification record lists all the relevant variables and there are no inconsistent features and the results satisfy the requirements, the procedure qualification record may be endorsed by the Surveyor as satisfying the requirement of the Rules.

6. 3. 6 A welding procedure specification (WPS) is to be prepared after the procedure qualification test report has been endorsed by the Surveyor.

6. 3. 7 For welding procedure specifications, the range of approval is to be limited as follows:

a. **Manufacturer**. A welding procedure qualified by a manufacturer is valid for welding in workshops under the same technical and quality management.

b. **Range of material type**. Approval is restricted to the specific aluminium grade and supply condition used in the qualification test.
c. **Thickness**. Approval is restricted to the thickness of the test piece in the qualification test.
d. **Joint types**. The joint types approved are to be those from the welding procedure qualification test only.
e. **Welding tool**. Approval is restricted to the specific design of welding tool employed during the qualification test.
f. **Other**. A range of approval for any other variables will be subject to special consideration.

6. 4 Qualification of welding operators

6. 4. 1 Welding operators are to be qualified in accordance with ISO 25239-3.

6. 4. 2 Weldeing operators are to be suitably trained and will be required to demonstrate a knowledge of FSW and have a working knowledge of the welding installation. Knowledge of the FSW process may be demonstrated by exams passed during the training period. Demonstration of a working knowledge of the welding installation will be subject to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

6. 4. 3 Qualification of welding operators is to be by welding tests as specified in ISO 25239-3 or by conducting weld procedure qualification tests.

6. 4. 4 Upon successful completion of all necessary examination and tests, the welding operator is to be considered qualified. The range of qualification is to be as specified in ISO 25239-3.

6. 4. 5 A certificate of qualification is to be issued in accordance with ISO 25239-3.

PART

2

CHAPTER **13 Requirements for Welded Construction**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General welding requirements**		**727**
	1. 1	Scope	727
	1. 2	Design	727
	1. 3	Materials	727
	1. 4	Requirements for manufacture and workmanship	728
	1. 5	Cutting of materials	728
	1. 6	Forming and bending	729
	1. 7	Assembly and preparation for welding	729
	1. 8	Welding equipment and welding consumables	730
	1. 9	Welding procedure and welder qualifications	730
	1. 10	Welding during construction	731
	1. 11	Non-destructive examination of welds	732
	1. 12	Routine weld tests	733
	1. 13	Rectification of material defects	733
	1. 14	Rectification of distortion	733
	1. 15	Rectification of welds defects	734
	1. 16	Post-weld heat treatment	734
	1. 17	Certification	735
SECTION 2	**Specific requirements for ship hull structure and machinery**		**736**
	2. 1	Scope	736
	2. 2	Welding consumables	736
	2. 3	Welding procedure and welder qualifications	738
	2. 4	Construction and workmanship	739
	2. 5	Butt welds	739
	2. 6	Lap connections	740
	2. 7	Closing plates	740

2. 8 Stud welding 741
2. 9 Fillet welds 741
2. 10 Post-weld heat treatment 741
2. 11 Tolerances 743
2. 12 Non-destructive examination of welds 743
2. 13 Weld repairs 746
2. 14 Welding afloat with water backing 746
SECTION 3 Specific requirements for fabricated steel sections 748
3. 1 Scope 748
3. 2 Dimensions and tolerances 748
3. 3 Identification of products 749
3. 4 Manufacture and workmanship 749
3. 5 Non-destructive examination 749
3. 6 Routine weld tests 750
3. 7 Certification and records 750
SECTION 4 Specific requirements for fusion welded pressure vessels 751
4. 1 Scope 751
4. 2 Cutting and forming of shells and heads 751
4. 3 Fitting of shell plates and attachments 752
4. 4 Welding 753
4. 5 General requirements for routine weld production tests 753
4. 6 Production test plate assembly requirements 753
4. 7 Inspection and testing 754
4. 8 Mechanical requirements 754
4. 9 Failure to meet requirements 758
4. 10 Post-weld heat treatment 758
4. 11 Basic requirements for post-weld heat treatment of fusion welded pressure vessels 759
4. 12 Non-Destructive Examination of welds 760
4. 13 Extent of NDE for Class 1 pressure vessels 760
4. 14 Extent of NDE for Class 2/1 pressure vessels 760
4. 15 NDE Method 761
4. 16 valuation and reports 761
4. 17 Repair to welds 761
SECTION 5 Specific requirements for pressure piping 762
5. 1 Scope 762

5. 2 Manufacture and workmanship 762
5. 3 Heat treatment after bending of pipes 764
5. 4 Post-weld heat treatment 765
5. 5 Non-destructive examination 765
5. 6 Repairs to pipe welds 766
SECTION 6 Repair of existing ships by welding 767
6. 1 Scope 767
6. 2 Materials used for repairs 767
6. 3 Workmanship 767
6. 4 Non-destructive examination 767
6. 5 Repairs to welds defects 768
SECTION 7 Austenitic and duplex stainless steel – Specific requirements 769
7. 1 Scope 769
7. 2 Design 769
7. 3 Forming and bending 769
7. 4 Fabrication and welding 769
7. 5 Repairs 770
SECTION 8 Specific requirements for welded aluminium 771
8. 1 Scope 771
8. 2 Forming and bending 771
8. 3 Fabrication and welding 771
8. 4 Non-destructive examination 773
SECTION 9 Friction stir welding requirements for aluminium alloys 776
9. 1 Scope 776
9. 2 Production quality control 776
9. 3 Repair 777

PART

2

CHAPTER **13 Requirements for Welded Construction**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 13. 2. 1: Preheat and consumable requirements for welding of carbon and carbon manganese steels up to strength grade H40 737

Table 13. 2. 2: Welding of aluminium alloys - Consumable requirements 737

Table 13. 2. 3: Welding of austenitic stainless and duplex stainless steels - Consumable requirements 738

Table 13. 2. 4: Post-weld stress relief heat treatment thickness limits 741

Table 13. 2. 5: Acceptance criteria for visual testing, magnetic particle and liquid penetrant testing ... 743

Table 13. 2. 6: Acceptance criteria for radiographic testing 744

Table 13. 2. 7: Acceptance criteria for ultrasonic testing 745

Table 13. 4. 1: Impact test requirements 752

Table 13. 4. 2: Post-weld heat treatment requirements 758

Table 13. 4. 3: Post-weld soak temperatures and times 759

Table 13. 5. 1: Pipe butt weld alignment tolerances 762

Table 13. 5. 2: Welding preheat levels for piping 763

Table 13. 5. 3: Heat treatment after bending of pipes 764

Table 13. 5. 4: Post-weld heat treatment requirements for piping 765

Table 13. 8. 1: Minimum mechanical properties for aluminium alloys 771

Table 13. 8. 2: Acceptance criteria for surface imperfections of aluminium 773

Table 13. 8. 3: Acceptance criteria for internal imperfections of aluminium 774

PART

2

CHAPTER **13 Requirements for Welded Construction**

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 13. 2. 1: Weld dimensions and types 740
Figure 13. 4. 1: Routine weld test - Test specimens for Class 1 and Class 2/1 755
Figure 13. 4. 2: Routine weld tests - Test specimens for Class 2/2 and Class 3 756
Figure 13. 9. 1: Production test assembly for Friction Stir Welds 777

PART

2

CHAPTER 13 Requirements for Welded Construction

SECTION 1 General welding requirements

1. 1 Scope

1. 1. 1 This Chapter specifies requirements for fabrication and welding during construction and repair of ships or other marine structures, and their associated pressure vessels, machinery, equipment, components and products intended for use in these structures.

1. 1. 2 The requirements for fabrication and welding during construction and repair of tanks intended for transport or storage of liquefied gases are located in the *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk,* or the *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Offshore Units*, as appropriate.

1. 1. 3 The requirements relate to fusion welding. Special consideration will be given to the use of other welding processes based on these requirements.

1. 1. 4 It is the responsibility of the manufacturer to ensure compliance with all aspects of these Rules and inform the Surveyor of any deviations that have occurred. All deviations are to be recorded as non-compliances along with the corrective actions taken and failure to do this is considered to render the fabrication to be in non-compliance with the Rules.

1. 1. 5 Welded constructions that comply with National or International specifications may be accepted to the satisfaction of the surveyor, provided that these specifications give reasonable equivalence to the requirements of this Chapter.

1. 1. 6 All welded construction is to be to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

1. 2 Design

1. 2. 1 Prior to commencing any work, the component to be manufactured is to be subjected to design review and approval in accordance with the Rule requirements.

1. 2. 2 The material characteristics that are affected by welding, particularly the loss of strength (e.g. in precipitation or strain hardened aluminium alloys) are to be considered in the design. The weld joints in such materials are to be arranged such that they are in areas of lower stress.

1. 3 Materials

1. 3. 1 Materials used in welded construction are to be manufactured at works approved by ACS. The use of materials from alternative sources will be subject to agreement of the Surveyor and satisfactory verification testing.

1. 3. 2 Materials are to be supplied and certified in accordance with the requirements of Ch 1 General Requirements to Ch 10 Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring of these Rules.

1. 3. 3 Materials used in welded construction are to be readily weldable and are to have proven weldability, unless requirements are agreed with ACS in advance.

1. 3. 4 Where the construction details are such that materials are subject to through thickness strains, consideration is to be given to using material with specified through thickness properties as specified in Ch 3, 8 Plates with specified through thickness properties.

1. 3. 5 When ordering materials for construction, consideration is to be taken of the possible degradation of properties during fabrication or post-weld heat treatment. Where these materials are used, consideration is to be given to additional test requirements being specified to the supplier.

1. 3. 6 The identity of materials is to be established by way of markings etc, during fabrication, so that traceability to the original manufacturer's certificate is maintained.

1. 3. 7 Pre-fabrication shop primers may be applied prior to welding, provided that they are of an approved type and have been tested to demonstrate that they have no deleterious effects on the completed weld.

1. 3. 8 Where it is proposed to weld forgings and/or castings, full details of the joint details, welding procedures and post-weld heat treatments are to be submitted for consideration.

1. 4 Requirements for manufacture and workmanship

1. 4. 1 The welding workshops are to be assessed by the Surveyor for their capability to produce work of the required quality in accordance with the requirements specified for the type of construction, *See* Ch 13, 2 Specific requirements for ship hull structure and machinery to Ch 13, 5 Specific requirements for pressure piping

1. 4. 2 Where structural components are to be assembled and welded in works sub-contracted by the builder, the Surveyor is to inspect the sub-contractor's works to ensure that compliance with the requirements of this Chapter is achieved.

1. 4. 3 The manufacturer is to provide a system of regular supervision of all welding, by suitably qualified and experienced personnel.

1. 4. 4 Welding is to be performed in covered workshops as far as practicable. Where this is not possible, provision is to be made in the welding area to give adequate protection from wind, rain and cold, etc.

1. 4. 5 Where required, arrangements are to be such as to permit adequate ventilation and access for preheating, and for the satisfactory completion of all welding operations.

1. 4. 6 The location of welding connections and sequences of welding are to be arranged to minimise distortion and the build up of residual stresses. Welded joints are to be so arranged as to facilitate the use of downhand welding wherever possible.

1. 4. 7 In the case of repairs to existing structures or components, care is to be exercised when attaching fit-up aids by welding to ensure that the base materials in way of the attachments are of weldable quality.

1. 4. 8 In order to prevent cross-contamination of different material types, the welding of carbon steel materials is to be in areas segregated from that used for either austenitic or non-ferrous materials, *See* Ch 13, 7 Austenitic and duplex stainless steel – Specific requirements.

1. 5 Cutting of materials

1. 5. 1 Materials may be cut to the required dimensions by thermal means, shearing or machining in accordance with the manufacturing drawings or specifications.

1. 5. 2 Cold shearing is not to be used on materials in excess of 25 mm thick. Where used, the cut edges that are to remain un-welded are to be cut back by machining or grinding for a minimum distance of 3 mm.

1. 5. 3 Material, which has been thermally cut, is to be free from excessive oxides, scale and notches.

1. 5. 4 All cut edges are to be examined to ensure freedom from material and/or cutting defects. Visual examination may be supplemented by other techniques.

1. 5. 5 Thermal cutting of alloy and high carbon steels may require the application of preheat, and special examination of these cut edges will be required to ensure no cracking. In these cases, the cut edge is to be machined or ground back a distance of at least 2 mm, unless it has been demonstrated that the cutting process has not damaged the material.

1. 5. 6 Any material damaged in the process of cutting is to be removed by machining, grinding or chipping back to sound metal. Weld repair may only be performed with the agreement of the Surveyor.

1. 6 Forming and bending

1. 6. 1 Plates, pipes, etc. may be formed to the required shape by any process which does not impair the quality of the material.

1. 6. 2 Where hot forming is employed the manufacturer is required to demonstrate that the forming procedure is compliant with a recognised National or International Standard or shall demonstrate by appropriate qualification tests that the material properties remain acceptable in the ‘as formed’ condition.

1. 6. 3 Materials that are cold formed, such that the permanent strain exceeds 10 per cent, or formed to a diameter to thickness ratio less than 10, are to be subjected to a subsequent softening heat treatment in accordance with the material manufacturers recommendations, unless it is demonstrated by testing that the material properties are acceptable in the ‘as formed’ condition.

1. 6. 4 As far as practicable, forming is to be performed by the application of steady continuous loading using a machine designed for that purpose. The use of hammering, in either the hot or cold condition is not to be employed.

1. 6. 5 Material may be welded prior to forming or bending, provided that it can be demonstrated that the weld mechanical properties are not impaired by the forming operation. All welds subjected to bending are to be inspected on completion to ensure freedom from surface breaking defects.

1. 7 Assembly and preparation for welding

1. 7. 1 Excessive force is not to be used in fairing and closing the work. Where excessive root gaps exist between surfaces or edges to be joined, corrective measures are to be adopted.

1. 7. 2 Provision is to be made for retaining correct alignment during welding operations in accordance with the approved manufacturing specifications and welding procedures.

1. 7. 3 Tack welds are to be avoided as far as practicable. When used, tack welds are to be of the same quality as the finished welds, made in accordance with approved welding procedures, and where they are to be retained as part of the finished weld, they are to be clean and free from defects.

1. 7. 4 Generally, tack welds are not to be applied in lengths of less than 30 mm for mild steel grades and aluminium alloys, and 50 mm for higher tensile steel grades. Smaller tack welds may be accepted for steels, provided that the carbon equivalent of the materials being welded is not greater than 0.36 per cent.

1. 7. 5 Where deep penetration welding is used (*See* Ch 13, 2.4 Construction and workmanship 2.4.6), welding procedure tests are to demonstrate that the specified degree of penetration is achieved in way of tack welds left in place.

1. 7. 6 Where temporary bridge pieces or strong-backs are used, they are to be of similar materials to the base materials and welded in accordance with approved welding procedures.

1. 7. 7 Any fit-up aids and tack welds, where welded to clad materials, are to be attached to the base material and not to the cladding.

1. 7. 8 Surfaces of all parts to be welded, are to be clean, dry and free from rust, grease, debris and other forms of contamination.

1. 7. 9 When misalignment of structural members either side of bulkheads, decks etc. exceeds the agreed tolerance, the misaligned item is to be released, realigned and rewelded in accordance with an approved procedure.

1. 8 Welding equipment and welding consumables

1. 8. 1 Welding plant and equipment is to be suitable for the purpose intended and properly maintained, taking into account relevant safety precautions.

1. 8. 2 Suitable means of measuring the welding parameters (i.e. current, voltage and travel speed) are to be available. Electrical meters are to be properly maintained and have current calibrations.

1. 8. 3 Welding consumables are to be suitable for the type of joint and grade of material to be welded, and in general, are to be ACS Approved in accordance with Ch 11 Approval of Welding Consumables.

1. 8. 4 Special care is to be taken in the distribution, storage and handling of all welding consumables. They are to be kept in heated dry storage areas with a relatively uniform temperature in accordance with the consumable manufacturer's recommendations. Condensation on the metal surface (e.g. wire electrodes and studs) during storage and use is to be avoided.

1. 8. 5 Prior to use, welding consumables are to be dried and/or baked in accordance with the consumable manufacturer's recommendations.

1. 8. 6 Satisfactory storage and handling facilities for consumables are to be provided close to working areas and the condition of welding consumables are to be subject to regular inspections.

1. 9 Welding procedure and welder qualifications

1. 9. 1 Welding procedures are to be developed by the manufacturer for all welding, include weld repairs, and are to be capable of achieving the mechanical property requirements and non-destructive examination quality appropriate to the work being undertaken.

1. 9. 2 Welding procedures are to be established for the welding of all joints and are to be qualified by testing in accordance with Ch 12 Welding Qualifications. The welding procedures are to give details of the welding process, type of consumable, joint preparation, welding position and filler metals to be used.

1. 9. 3 The proposed welding procedures are to be approved by the Surveyor prior to construction.

1. 9. 4 All welders and welding operators are to be qualified in accordance with the requirements of Ch 12 Welding Qualifications. Qualification records to demonstrate that welding personnel have the skills to achieve the required standard of workmanship are to be available to the Surveyor.

1. 10 Welding during construction

1. 10. 1 Materials to be assembled for welding are to be retained in position by suitable means such that the root gaps and alignment are in accordance with the approved manufacturing specifications and welding procedures.

1. 10. 2 Surfaces of all parts to be welded, are to be clean, dry and reasonably free from rust, scale and grease.

1. 10. 3 Pre-heat is to be applied, as specified in the approved welding procedure, for a distance of at least 75 mm from the joint preparation edges. The method of application and temperature control are to be such as to maintain the required level throughout the welding operation.

1. 10. 4 When the ambient temperature is 0°C or less, or where moisture resides on the surfaces to be welded, due care is to be taken to pre-heat the joint to a minimum of 20°C, unless a higher pre-heat temperature is specified.

1. 10. 5 Where tack welds are to be removed from the root of the weld joint, this is to be carried out such that the surrounding material and joint preparation is not damaged.

1. 10. 6 The welding arc is to be struck on the parent metal which forms part of the weld joint or on previously deposited weld metal.

1. 10. 7 Where the welding process used is slag forming (e.g. manual metal arc, submerged arc, etc.) each run of deposit is to be cleaned and free from slag before the next run is applied.

1. 10. 8 Full penetration welds are to be made from both sides of the joint as far as practicable. Prior to welding the second side, the weld root is to be cleaned, in accordance with the requirements of the approved welding procedure, to ensure freedom from defects. When air-arc gouging is used, care is to be taken to ensure that the ensuing groove is slag and oxide free and has a profile suitable for welding.

1. 10. 9 Where welding from one side only, care is to be exercised to ensure the root gap is in accordance with the approved welding procedure and the root is properly fused.

1. 10. 10 Particular care is to be exercised in welding in the vertical position with direction of travel downward (Vd) to avoid welding defects. The use of solid wire gas metal arc (GMAW) process in the vertical down position is to be avoided.

1. 10. 11 Welding is to proceed systematically with each welded joint being completed in correct sequence without undue interruption.

1. 10. 12 After welding has been stopped for any reason, care is to be taken in restarting to ensure that the previously deposited weld metal is thoroughly cleaned of slag and debris, and preheat has been re-established.

1. 10. 13 Care is to be taken to avoid stress concentrations such as sharp corners or abrupt changes of section, and completed welds are to have an even contour, blending smoothly with the base materials. The weld shape and size is to be in accordance with that specified in the approved drawings or specifications.

1. 10. 14 Welded temporary attachments used to aid construction are to be removed carefully by grinding, cutting or chipping. The surface of the material is to be finished smooth by grinding followed by crack detection.

1. 10. 15 Where fabricated and welded components require to be machined, all major welding operations are to be completed prior to final machining.

1. 10. 16 Welding to parts which are subjected to rotating fatigue (e.g. shafts) is not generally permitted.

1. 10. 17 Welding onto parts that have been hardened for wear resistance or strength (e.g. gear teeth) is not permitted.

1. 10. 18 Where welding of clad ferritic steel plates is to be undertaken, the clad materials are to be ground back from the prepared edge by at least 10 mm. In general, the ferritic materials are to be welded prior to welding of the cladding material.

1. 11 Non-destructive examination of welds

1. 11. 1 Non-destructive examinations are to be made in accordance with a definitive written procedure prepared and endorsed by a person qualified according to a Nationally Recognised Scheme with a grade equivalent to Level III qualification of ISO 9712, SNT-TC-1A or ASNT Central Certification Program (ACCP). As a minimum, the procedure will identify personnel qualification levels, NDE datum and identification system, extent of testing, methods to be applied with technique sheets, acceptance criteria and reporting requirements. These procedures are to be reviewed by the Surveyor. *See* Ch 1, 5 Non-destructive examination.

1. 11. 2 Non-destructive examinations are to be undertaken by personnel qualified according to a Nationally Recognised Scheme with a grade equivalent to Level II qualification of ISO 9712, SNT-TC-1A or ASNT Central Certification Program (ACCP). Operators qualified to Level I of the above schemes (or equivalent recognised by ACS) may be engaged in testing under the supervision of personnel qualified to Level II or III (or equivalent recognised by ACS). Personnel qualifications are to be verified by certification.

1. 11. 3 Effective arrangements are to be provided by the manufacturer for the inspection of finished welds to ensure that all welding, and where necessary, all post-weld heat treatment, has been satisfactorily completed.

1. 11. 4 Welds are to be clean and free from paint at the time of visual inspection unless specified otherwise in the following Sections.

1. 11. 5 The weld surface finish is to ensure accurate and reliable detection of defects. Where the weld surface is irregular or has other features likely to interfere with the interpretation of non-destructive examination, the weld is to be ground or machined.

1. 11. 6 Prior to inspection, welded temporary attachments and lifting eyes used to aid construction are to be removed carefully by grinding, cutting or chipping or other approved means. The surface of the material is to be finished smooth by grinding followed by crack detection. Any defects caused in the removal process are to be repaired and re-inspected.

1. 11. 7 For welds in steels with specified yield strength up to 400 N/mm^2, and with carbon equivalent less than or equal to 0.41 per cent, NDE may be performed as soon as the test assembly has cooled to ambient temperature. For other steels, NDE is to be delayed for a period of at least 48 hours after the test assembly has cooled to ambient temperature.

1. 11. 8 Non-destructive examinations are to be performed in accordance with the requirements of the Rules. Examinations are to be in accordance with agreed written procedures prepared by the manufacturer or ship builder.

1. 11. 9 The Surveyor may request additional inspections where there is reason to question the quality of workmanship, or where the weld is part of a complicated fabrication where there is high restraint or high residual stresses.

1. 11. 10 Welds are to be examined after completion of any post-weld heat treatment.

1. 11. 11 Where weld defects are discovered, the full extent is to be ascertained by applying additional non-destructive examinations where required. Unacceptable defects are to be completely removed and, where necessary, weld repaired in accordance with the relevant Sections of this Chapter. The repairs are to be re-inspected using the same technique as the original inspection.

1. 11. 12 Results of non-destructive examinations are to be recorded and evaluated by the constructor on a continual basis in order that the quality of welding can be monitored. These records are to be available to the Surveyor.

1. 11. 13 The constructor is to be responsible for the review, interpretation, evaluation and acceptance of the results of NDE. Reports stating compliance or otherwise with the criteria established in the inspection procedure are to be issued. Reports are to comply, as a minimum, with the requirements of Ch 1, 5 Non-destructive examination.

1. 11. 14 The extent of applied non-destructive examination is to be increased when warranted by the analysis of previous results.

1. 11. 15 Ultrasonic testing of welds in austenitic and duplex stainless steels requires specific procedures, appropriately qualified personnel and suitable equipment including angle-compression wave and creep wave probes, in addition to the above requirements.

1. 12 Routine weld tests

1. 12. 1 Routine or production weld tests may be specified as a means of monitoring the quality of the welded joints. This type of quality control test is generally specified for pressure vessel and LNG construction but may be used for other types of welded fabrication.

1. 12. 2 Routine weld tests may be requested by the Surveyor where there is reason to doubt the quality of workmanship.

1. 12. 3 Where routine weld tests have been agreed, they are to be performed in accordance with the general requirements for the type of construction, *See* Ch 13, 3 Specific requirements for fabricated steel sections and Ch 13, 4 Specific requirements for fusion welded pressure vessels.

1. 13 Rectification of material defects

1. 13. 1 Repair of defects found in base materials is not to be carried out without the prior approval of the Surveyor.

1. 13. 2 In general, surface defects in the material may be removed by grinding, chipping, etc. provided the remaining material thickness is not reduced below the minimum thickness tolerance, and the area is ground to blend in smoothly with the surrounding material.

1. 13. 3 Confirmation that the defect has been removed is required by performing visual examination, augmented by either magnetic particle or dye penetrant examination techniques.

1. 13. 4 Surface defects, which cannot be repaired by the above method, may be repaired by welding where permitted by Ch 3 Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars to Ch 9 Copper Alloys. Such repairs are to be performed in accordance with the requirements of this Section and those specified in Ch 3 Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars to Ch 9 Copper Alloys.

1. 13. 5 Any defects in the structure resulting from the removal of temporary attachments are to be prepared, efficiently welded and ground smooth so as to achieve a defect free repair.

1. 14 Rectification of distortion

1. 14. 1 Fairing, by linear or spot heating, to correct distortions due to welding, may be carried out. In order to ensure that the properties of the material are not adversely affected, approved procedures are to be utilised. On completion of such processes, visual examination of all heat affected areas in the vicinity is to be carried out to ensure freedom from cracking.

1. 14. 2 When misalignment of members exceeds the agreed tolerance, the misaligned item is to be cut apart, realigned and re-welded in accordance with an approved procedure.

1. 15 Rectification of welds defects

1. 15. 1 Where repairs are extensive the manufacturer is to investigate the reason for the defects and take the necessary actions to prevent recurrence. In addition, consideration is to be given to the sequence of repairs and to providing temporary supports to prevent misalignment or collapse.

1. 15. 2 Cracks are to be reported to the Surveyor and the cause established prior to undertaking weld repairs.

1. 15. 3 Defects may be removed by grinding, chipping or thermal gouging. Where thermal gouging is used, the repair groove is to be subsequently ground clean to remove oxides and debris. The groove is to have a profile suitable for welding.

1. 15. 4 Prior to commencing repair welding, it is to be confirmed that no defect exists on the prepared surface by performing visual examination, augmented by either magnetic particle or dye penetrant examination techniques.

1. 15. 5 Repair welding is to be performed using approved welding procedures.

1. 15. 6 Completed repairs are to be re-examined by the non-destructive examination method(s) that detected the original defect and are to confirm that the original defect has been removed.

1. 15. 7 Where the component or structure has been subjected to post-weld heat treatment prior to weld repair, this is to be repeated after completion of all repair welding.

1. 15. 8 Where non-destructive examination reveals that the original defect has not been successfully removed, one more repair attempt may be performed.

1. 15. 9 The manufacturer is to monitor the quality of welding and maintain records of welding repairs and take the necessary corrective actions where repair rates are outside normal limits.

1. 16 Post-weld heat treatment

1. 16. 1 On completion of welding, post-weld heat treatment may be required depending on the type of welded construction, the material type and thickness as specified by the relevant Parts or Sections of the Rules.

1. 16. 2 In general, heat treatment after welding is to be a stress relief treatment in order to reduce residual stresses introduced by welding and is generally applicable to ferritic steels. Where other types of heat treatment (e.g. normalising, solution annealing) are proposed, demonstration of acceptable mechanical properties of the weldment are to be confirmed by a welding procedure test which includes a simulated heat treatment.

1. 16. 3 Parts are to be properly prepared for heat treatment. Machined surfaces (e.g. flange faces, screw threads, etc.) are to be protected against scaling and sufficient temporary supports provided to prevent distortion or collapse of the structure.

1. 16. 4 Details of the heat treatment to be applied, soaking time and temperature, heating and cooling rates, etc. are to be submitted for review prior to commencing.

1. 16. 5 Post-weld heat treatment is to be carried out in a purpose built furnace which is efficiently maintained. In special cases, where the configuration of the component is such that thermal stresses during heating and cooling can be minimised, local post-weld heat treatment may be used. This would not normally apply to the complex geometry of cast materials during manufacture within the foundry environment.

1. 16. 6 In all cases, the heat treatment facilities and arrangements are to be capable of controlling the temperature throughout the heat treatment cycle and adequate means of measuring and recording the component temperature are to be provided. Thermocouples are to be attached so they are in contact with the component.

1. 16. 7 Unless specified otherwise, stress relief heat treatment is to be carried out by means of controlled heating from 300°C, to the soak temperature, holding within the prescribed soaking temperature range for the time specified (usually 1 hour per 25 mm of weld thickness) followed by controlled cooling to below 300°C.

1. 16. 8 Where post-weld stress relief is specified for welded constructions that contain joints between different materials (e.g. ferritic to austenitic steels), the details of the materials, welding procedures and heat treatment cycle to be applied are to be submitted for special consideration and approval.

1. 16. 9 Non-destructive examination of welds is to be performed after completion of any heat treatment.

1. 17 Certification

1. 17. 1 Products or components are not to be considered complete until all the requirements of the construction specification have been met and all activities have been completed.

1. 17. 2 Upon completion of the works, the manufacturer is to provide documentation which indicates that:

a. All welds are complete and there are no outstanding repairs.
b. The appropriate post-weld heat treatments have been performed.
c. Appropriate destructive tests have been performed.
d. Proof testing of welds has been performed.

1. 17. 3 Before the test certificates or shipping statements are signed by the Surveyor, the manufacturer is required to provide a written declaration stating that the product is in accordance with the requirements of Ch 13, 1.17 Certification 1.17.2.

PART

2

CHAPTER **13 Requirements for Welded Construction**

SECTION **2 Specific requirements for ship hull structure and machinery**

2. 1 Scope

2. 1. 1 The requirements of this Section apply to the construction of ships, including hull structure, superstructure and deckhouses, components forming part of the ship structure and its machinery (excluding pressure equipment and piping, *See* Ch 13, 4 Specific requirements for fusion welded pressure vessels). These requirements are in addition to the general welding requirements specified in Ch 13, 1 General welding requirements.

2. 1. 2 The shipyard and manufacturer's works are to be assessed to give assurance that they have the facilities, equipment, personnel and quality control procedures to produce work of the required quality.

2. 2 Welding consumables

2. 2. 1 Welding consumables used for hull construction are to be approved in accordance with Ch 11 Approval of Welding Consumables and are to be suitable for the type of joint and grade of material to be welded.

2. 2. 2 Steel welding consumable approvals, up to and including Grade Y40, and Y47, are considered acceptable for hull construction in line with Table 11. 1. 1: Welding consumable grades appropriate to structural and low temperature service steel grades in Chapter 11, Ch 12, 2.2 Welding variables 2.2.2 and the following:

a. Consumables up to Grade Y are acceptable for welding steels up to 3 strength levels below that for which the approval applies, e.g. a consumable with approval grading 3Y is acceptable for welding EH36, EH32 and EH27S higher tensile ship steels and grade E normal strength ship steel.
b. Consumables for Grade Y40 are acceptable for welding steels up to two strength levels below that for which the approval applies. Consumables for Grade Y47 are acceptable for welding steels up to one strength level below that for which the approval applies.
c. Consumables with an approved impact toughness grading are acceptable for welding steels with lower specified impact properties subject to (a) above, e.g. a consumable with approval grading 3Y is acceptable for welding EH, DH and AH materials.
d. For welding steels of different grades or different strength levels, the welding consumables may be of a type suitable for the lesser grade or strength being connected. The use of a higher grade of welding consumable may be required at discontinuities or other points of stress concentration.

2. 2. 3 In general, the use of preheating and hydrogen controlled welding consumables for welding of ship steels up to strength grade H40 is to be in accordance with Table 13. 2. 1: Preheat and

consumable requirements for welding of carbon and carbon manganese steels up to strength grade H40. The carbon equivalent is to be calculated from the ladle analysis using the formula given below:

$$\text{Carbon equivalent} = C + \frac{Mn}{6} + \frac{Cr + Mo + V}{5} + \frac{NI + Cu}{15}$$

Preheat and the use of low hydrogen controlled consumables will be required for welding of steel grades higher than Grade H40.

Table 13. 2. 1: Preheat and consumable requirements for welding of carbon and carbon manganese steels up to strength grade H40

Carbon equivalent C_{eq}	Preheat	Hydrogen controlled consumables
C_{eq} equal to or less than 0.41%	Not required	Not required, *See* Note 3
C_{eq} above 0.41 but not exceeding 0.45%	Not required, *See* Notes 1 and 2	Required
C_{eq} greater than 0.45%	Required	Required

Note *1.* Preheat may need to be applied in order to meet the maximum hardness values specified in Ch 12, 2.12 Mechanical test acceptance criteria for steels 2.12.6.

Note *2.* Under conditions of high restraint or low ambient temperature preheat may need to be applied.

Note *3.* Hydrogen controlled consumables may need to be considered for welding of

(a) Thicker materials (i.e. > 35 mm).

(b) Higher strength materials.

(c) Welds subject to high restraint.

2. 2. 4 All aluminium alloy welding consumables are to be approved in accordance with Ch 11 Approval of Welding Consumables and are suitable for welding the grades of material as shown in Table 13. 2. 2: Welding of aluminium alloys - Consumable requirements.

Table 13. 2. 2: Welding of aluminium alloys - Consumable requirements

Consumable approval grade	Base material alloy grade
RA or WA	5754
RB or WB	5086, 5754
RC or WC	5083, 5086, 5754
RD or WD	6005A, 6061, 6082

2. 2. 5 All austenitic stainless steel and duplex stainless steel welding consumables are to be approved in accordance with the Ch 11 Approval of Welding Consumables and are suitable for welding the grades of material as shown in Table 13. 2. 3: Welding of austenitic stainless and duplex stainless steels - Consumable requirements.

Table 13. 2. 3: Welding of austenitic stainless and duplex stainless steels - Consumable requirements

Consumable approval grade	Suitable for welding material alloy grades
Austenitic stainless steels	
321	321
347	347 and 321
Austenitic stainless steel – Low carbon	
304L (*See* Note 3)	304L
304LN (*See* Note 3)	304LN and 304L
316L	316L and 304L
316LN	316LN, 316L, 304LN and 304L
317L	317L, 316LN, 316L, 304LN and 304L
317LN	317LN, 317L, 316LN, 316L, 304LN and 304L
Super austenitic stainless steels, *See* Note 2	
S31254	S31254 and N08904
N08904	N08904
Duplex stainless steels, *See* Note 1	
S31260	S31260 and S31803
S31803	S31803
S32550	S32550
S32750	S32750 and S32550
S32760	S32760, S32550, S31260 and S31803
Stainless steels welded to carbon steels	
SS/CMn	Carbon steel to all steels in Sections 1, 2 and 3
Duplex/CMn	Carbon steel to all duplex stainless steel in Section 4

Note *1.* The use of a different welding consumable grade from that of the base material may require demonstration of acceptable corrosion properties.

Note *2.* May be used for welding low carbon austenitic grades provided measures are taken to prevent solidification cracking from occurring.

Note *3.* These are ACS Grades and do not correspond to any National or International Standards/Grades.

2. 3 Welding procedure and welder qualifications

2. 3. 1 Welding procedures and welder qualifications are to be tested and approved in accordance with the requirements of Ch 12 Welding Qualifications.

2. 4 Construction and workmanship

2. 4. 1 Weld preparations and openings may be formed by thermal cutting, machining or chipping. Chipped surfaces that will not be subsequently covered by weld metal are to be ground smooth.

2. 4. 2 Prior to welding, the alignment of plates and stiffeners forming part of the hull structure is to be in accordance with the tolerances specified in the relevant part of the Rules.

2. 4. 3 When welding from one side only, care is to be exercised to ensure the root gap and fit up are in accordance with the approved welding procedure and the root is properly fused.

2. 4. 4 Where it is proposed to use permanent backing strips, the intended locations and welding procedures are to be submitted for consideration.

2. 4. 5 Temporary backing strips may be used provided they are in accordance with approved welding procedures and are subsequently removed on completion of welding.

2. 4. 6 The outer surfaces of completed welds are to blend smoothly with the base materials and provide a smooth transition and gradual change of section.

2. 4. 7 Weld joints in parts of oil engine structures that are stressed by the main gas or inertia loads are to be designed as continuous full penetration welds. They are to be arranged so that welds do not intersect, and that welding can be effected without difficulty.

2. 4. 8 When modifications or repairs have been made which result in openings having to be closed by welded inserts, particular care is to be given to the fit of the insert and the welding sequence. The welding is also to be subject to non-destructive examination.

2. 4. 9 Where welding of aluminium alloy is employed, the following additional requirements are to be complied with so far as they are applicable:

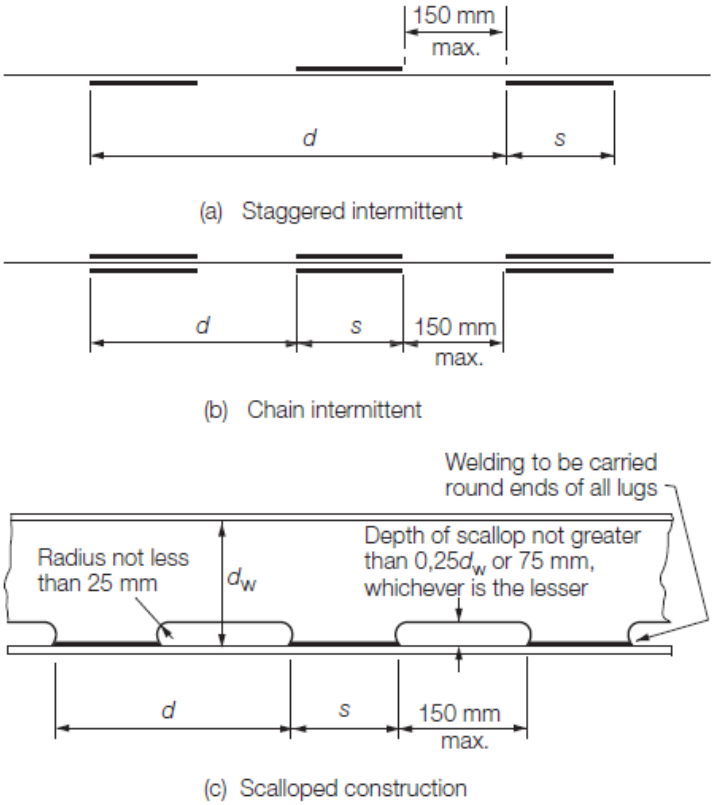
a. Welding is to be performed by fusion welding using inert gas or tungsten inert gas process or by the friction stir welding process. Where it is proposed to use other welding processes, details are to be submitted for approval.
b. The weld joint surfaces should be scratch brushed, preferably immediately before welding, in order to remove oxide or adhering films of dirt, filings, etc.

2. 5 Butt welds

2. 5. 1 Where the ship hull is constructed of plates of different thicknesses, the thicker plates are to be chamfered in accordance with the approved plans. In all cases the chamfer is not to exceed a slope of 1 in 3 so that the plates are of equal thickness at the weld seam. Alternatively, if so desired, the width of the weld may be included as part of the smooth taper to the thicker plate provided the difference in thickness is not greater than 3 mm.

2. 5. 2 Where stiffening members are attached by continuous fillet welds and cross completely finished butt or seam welds, these are to be made flush in way of the fillet weld. Similarly for butt welds in webs of stiffening members, the butt weld is to be complete and generally made flush with the stiffening member before the fillet weld is made. Where these conditions cannot be complied with, a scallop is to be arranged in the web of the stiffening member, *See* Figure 13. 2. 1: Weld dimensions and types. Scallops are to be of such a size and in such a position that a satisfactory weld can be made.

Figure 13. 2. 1: Weld dimensions and types



2. 6 Lap connections

2. 6. 1 Overlaps are generally not to be used to connect plates which may be subjected to high tensile or compressive loading and alternative arrangements are to be considered. However, where plate overlaps are adopted, the width of the overlap is not to exceed four times, nor be less than three times the thickness of the thinner plate and the joints are to be positioned to allow adequate access for completion of sound welds. The faying surfaces of lap joints are to be in close contact and both edges of the overlap are to have continuous fillet welds.

2. 7 Closing plates

2. 7. 1 For the connection of plating to internal webs, where access for welding is not practicable, the closing plating is to be attached by continuous full penetration welds or by slot fillet welds to face plates fitted to the webs. Slots are to have a minimum length of 90 mm and a minimum width of twice the plating thickness, with well rounded ends. Slots cut in plating are to be smooth and clean and are to be spaced not more than 230 mm apart, centre to centre. Slots are not to be filled with welding.

2. 7. 2 For the attachment of rudder shell plating to the internal stiffening of the rudder, slots are to have a minimum length of 75 mm and, in general, a minimum width of twice the side plating thickness. The ends of the slots are to be rounded and the space between them is not to exceed 150 mm.

2. 8 Stud welding

2. 8. 1 Where permanent or temporary studs are to be attached by welding to main structural parts in areas subject to high stress, the proposed location of the studs and the welding procedures adopted are to be approved.

2. 9 Fillet welds

2. 9. 1 T-connections are generally to be made by fillet welds on both sides of the abutting plate, the dimensions and spacing of which are shown in Figure 13. 2. 1: Weld dimensions and types. Where the connection is highly stressed, deep penetration or full penetration welding may be required. Where full penetration welding is required, the abutting plate may be required to be bevelled.

2. 9. 2 Where an approved deep penetration procedure is used, the fillet leg length calculated may be reduced by 15 per cent provided that the manufacturer is able to meet the following requirements:

a. Use of a welding consumable approved for deep penetration welding in accordance with Ch 11 Approval of Welding Consumables for either the 'p' or 'T' techniques.

b. Demonstrations by way of production weld testing that the minimum required penetration depths (i.e. throat thicknesses) are maintained. This is to be documented on a monthly basis by the manufacturer and be available to the Surveyor.

2. 9. 3 The calculated fillet leg length may be reduced by 20 per cent, provided that in addition to the requirements of Ch 13, 2.9 Fillet welds 2.9.2.a and Ch 13, 2.9 Fillet welds 2.9.2.b, the manufacturer is able to consistently meet the following additional requirements:

a. The documentation required in Ch 13, 2.9 Fillet welds 2.9.2.b is to be completed and made available to the Surveyor upon request on a weekly basis.

b. Suitable process selection confirmed by satisfactory welding procedure tests covering both minimum and maximum root gaps.

2. 9. 4 Where intermittent welding is used, the welding is to be made continuous in way of brackets, lugs and scallops and at orthogonal connections with other members.

2. 10 Post-weld heat treatment

2. 10. 1 This section determines the requirements for post-weld stress relief heat treatment when applied to ship structure and associated machinery.

2. 10. 2 Post-weld stress relief heat treatment is applied to improve resistance to brittle fracture or fatigue performance. It is to be applied when the thickness limits stated in Table 13. 2. 4: Post-weld stress relief heat treatment thickness limits are exceeded.

Table 13. 2. 4: Post-weld stress relief heat treatment thickness limits

Typical Application	Load Conditions (*See* Note 1)	Material Grade (*See* Note 2)	Material Thickness Limit (mm) (*See* Note 3)
Ship structure	Fatigue non-critical / critical	Normal strength (A - E), Higher strength (H27S - H40, [Excluding EH47])	150
Ship structure	Fatigue non-critical / critical	Higher strength (EH47)	100

Machinery	Fatigue non-critical	High strength (H42 - H69)	140
Machinery	Fatigue critical	High strength (H42 - H46)	100
Machinery	Fatigue critical	High strength (H50 - H69)	65
Ship structure / Machinery	Any	Other material grades	Subject to special consideration

Note 1. Fatigue analysis shall be approved by design appraisal according to relevant rules for each application.

a. Fatigue non-critical – Design assessment confirms that there are cyclic stresses but the fatigue life is reasonably greater than the design fatigue life and it is anticipated that fatigue crack initiation and propagation are unlikely to occur.

b. Fatigue critical – Design assessment confirms that there are cyclic stresses and the estimated fatigue life meets the design requirements but it is not significantly higher. It is anticipated that fatigue crack initiation and propagation are likely to occur.

Note 2. Where steel grades based on national and international standards are specially agreed for construction, they are to be procured from ACS approved works which hold current approval for the ACS equivalent grade and the same delivery condition as the steel to be procured.

Note 3. For all applications where material thickness is greater than 65 mm (or greater than 100 mm for EH47), 100 per cent surface and volumetric non-destructive examination of welds is required.

2. 10. 3 Post-weld heat treatment is to be applied to the following types of welded construction:

a. Welding of steel castings where the thickness of the casting at the weld exceeds 30 mm, except where castings are directly welded to the hull structure.

b. Engine bedplates except for engine types where the bedplate as a whole is not subjected to direct loading from the cylinder pressure. For these types, only the transverse girder assemblies need to be stress relieved.

c. Welding of gear wheels.

d. Welding of gear cases associated with main or auxiliary engines, *See* Pt 5 Main and Auxiliary Machinery.

2. 10. 4 Consideration is to be given to applying post-weld heat treatment for all thicknesses of complicated weld joints where there are high stress concentrations.

2. 10. 5 Where required, heat treatment is to be performed in accordance with the requirements specified in Ch 13, 1.16 Post-weld heat treatment and Table 13. 4. 3: Post-weld soak temperatures and times.

2. 10. 6 Special consideration may be given to omit the required post-weld heat treatment. Evaluation is to be based on critical engineering assessment involving fracture mechanics testing and proposals are to be submitted which include full details of the application, materials, welding procedures, inspection procedures, design temperature and stresses, fatigue loads and cycles. Evidence will be required to demonstrate that the inspection techniques and procedures to be employed are able to detect flaws to the sizes and tolerances (of length, through-wall height and through-wall position), as determined from the fracture mechanics (and or fatigue) calculations. Alternative procedures for the omission of post weld heat treatment will be subject to special consideration.

2. 11 Tolerances

2. 11. 1 Tolerances after welding are to be in accordance with the relevant Part of the Rules.

2. 11. 2 Distortion which has resulted from welding may be corrected by spot heating in accordance with Ch 13, 1.14 Rectification of distortion.

2. 12 Non-destructive examination of welds

2. 12. 1 All finished welds are to be sound and free from cracks and substantially free from lack of fusion, incomplete penetration, porosity and slag. The surfaces of welds are to be reasonably smooth and substantially free from undercut and overlap. Care is to be taken to ensure that the specified dimensions of welds have been achieved and that both excessive reinforcement and under-fill of welds is avoided.

2. 12. 2 Welds forming part of the hull and superstructure may be coated with a thin layer of protective primer prior to inspection provided it does not interfere with inspection and is removed, if required by the Surveyor, for closer interpretation of possible defective areas.

2. 12. 3 All welds are to be visually inspected by personnel designated by the builder. Visual inspection of all welds may be supplemented by other non-destructive examination techniques in cases of unclear interpretation, as considered necessary. The acceptance criteria for visual testing are given in Table 13. 2. 5: Acceptance criteria for visual testing, magnetic particle and liquid penetrant testing.

Table 13. 2. 5: Acceptance criteria for visual testing, magnetic particle and liquid penetrant testing

Surface discontinuity	Classification according to ISO 6520-1	Acceptance criteria for visual testing
Crack	100	Not accepted
Lack of fusion	401	Not accepted
Incomplete root penetration in butt joints welded from one side	4021	Not accepted
Surface pore	2017	Single pore diameter $d \leq 0.25t$, for butt welds, with maximum diameter 3 mm, *See* Note 1$d \leq 0.25a$, for fillet welds, with maximum diameter 3 mm, *See* Note 12.5d as minimum distance to adjacent pore
Undercut in butt welds	501	Depth ≤ 0.5 mm, whatever the length Depth ≤ 0.8 mm, with a maximum continuous length of 90 mm, *See* Note 2
Undercut in fillet welds	501	Depth ≤ 0.8 mm, whatever the length

Note *1.* t is the plate thickness of the thinnest plate, and a is the throat of the fillet weld.

Note *2.* Adjacent undercuts separated by a distance shorter than the shortest undercut are to be regarded as a single continuous undercut

2. 12. 4 In addition to visual inspection, welded joints are to be examined using any one or a combination of ultrasonic, radiographic, magnetic particle, eddy current, dye penetrant or other acceptable methods appropriate to the configuration of the weld.

2. 12. 5 The method to be used for the volumetric examinations of welds is the responsibility of the builder. Radiography is generally preferred for the examination of butt welds of 8 mm thickness or less. Ultrasonic testing is acceptable for welds of 8 mm thickness or greater and is to be used for the examination of full penetration tee butt or cruciform welds or joints of similar configuration. Advanced ultrasonic techniques, such as Phased Array Ultrasonic Testing (PAUT), may be used as a volumetric testing method in lieu of radiography or manual ultrasonic testing. If these methods are used, the thickness limitations for manual ultrasonic testing apply.

2. 12. 6 The acceptance criteria for radiographic testing are given in Table 13. 2. 6: Acceptance criteria for radiographic testing, and those for ultrasonic testing in Table 13. 2. 7: Acceptance criteria for ultrasonic testing.

Table 13. 2. 6: Acceptance criteria for radiographic testing

Discontinuity	Classification according to ISO 6520-1	Acceptance criteria for radiographic testing, *See* Note 1
Crack	100	Not accepted
Lack of fusion	401	Continuous maximum length $t/2$ or 25 mm, whichever is the less, *See* Note 2 Intermittent cumulative length maximum t or 50 mm, whichever is less, *See* Note 3
Lack of root fusion	4013	Not accepted in butt joints welded from one side
Incomplete root penetration	4021	Not accepted in butt joint welded from one side
		Continuous maximum length $t/2$ or 25 mm, whichever is lesser, *See* Note 2 Intermittent cumulative maximum length t or 50 mm, whichever is less, *See* Note 3
Slag inclusion	301	Continuous maximum length t or 50 mm, whichever is less, *See* Note 2 Intermittent cumulative length maximum $2t$ or 100 mm, whichever is less, *See* Notes 3 and 4
Gas pore	2011	maximum dimension for a single pore: $d \leq 0.2t$, max. 4.0 mm *See* Note 5
Uniformly distributed porosity	2012	Maximum dimension of the area of imperfections: For single run welds: ≤ 1.5% For multi-run welds: ≤ 3% *See* Notes 6 and 7
Clustered (localised) porosity	2013	Maximum dimension of the summation of the projected area of the imperfection: ≤ 8% *See* Notes 6 and 7
Elongated cavity	2015	$h \leq 0.3t$, max. 3.0 mm $l \leq t$, max. 50 mm *See* Notes 8 and 9
Wormholes	2016	$h \leq 0.3t$, max. 3.0 mm $l \leq t$, max. 50 mm *See* Notes 8 and 9

Metallic inclusions other than copper	304	$h \leq 0.3t$, max. 3.0 mm *See* Note 8
Copper inclusions	3042	Not permitted

Note *1.* t is the thickness of the thinnest plate.

Note *2.* Two adjacent individual discontinuities of length l_d^1 and l_d^2 situated on a line and where the distance l_d between them is shorter than the shortest discontinuity are to be regarded as a continuous discontinuity of length $l_d^1+l_d+l_d^2$

Note *3.* Sum of the length of individual continuous discontinuities.

Note *4.* Parallel inclusions not separated by more than 3 times the width of the largest inclusion are to be regarded as one continuous discontinuity.

Note *5.* d is the diameter of the gas pore.

Note *6.* The limits for the maximum single gas pore within this group still apply.

Note *7.* Further reference to porosity limits may be obtained in ISO 5817:2007.

Note *8.* h is the width of the imperfection.

Note *9.* l is the length of the imperfection.

Table 13. 2. 7: Acceptance criteria for ultrasonic testing

Echo height	Acceptance criteria for ultrasonic testing, *See* Note
Greater than 100% of DAC curve	Maximum length $t/2$ or 25 mm, whichever is less
Greater than 50% of DAC curve, but less than 100% of DAC curve	Maximum length t or 50 mm, whichever is less
Indications evaluated to be cracks are unacceptable regardless of echo height; Indications evaluated to be lack of penetration or lack of root fusion in joints welded from one side are unacceptable regardless of echo height.	
Note Two adjacent individual discontinuities of length L1 and L2 situated on a line and where the distance L between them is shorter than the shortest discontinuity are to be regarded as a continuous discontinuity of length L1 + L + L2.	

2. 12. 7 Checkpoints examined at the pre-assembly stage are to include ultrasonic testing on examples of the stop/start points of automatic welding and magnetic particle inspection of weld ends.

2. 12. 8 Checkpoints examined at the assembly stage are generally to be selected from those welds intended to be examined as part of the agreed quality control programme to be applied by the builder. The locations and number of checkpoints are to be approved by the Surveyor.

2. 12. 9 Where components of the structure are subcontracted for fabrication, the same inspection regime is to be applied as if the item had been constructed within the main contractor's works. In these cases, particular attention is to be given to highly loaded fabrications (such as stabiliser fin boxes) forming an integral part of the hull envelope.

2. 12. 10 Particular attention is to be paid to highly stressed items. Magnetic particle inspection is to be used at ends of fillet welds, T-joints, joints or crossings in main structural members and at stern frame connections.

2. 12. 11 Special attention is to be given to the examination of plating in way of lifting eye plate positions to ensure freedom from cracks. This examination is not restricted to the positions where eye plates have been removed, but includes the positions where lifting eye plates are permanent fixtures.

2. 12. 12 Checkpoints for volumetric examination are to be selected so that a representative sample of welding is examined.

2. 12. 13 Typical locations for volumetric examination and number of checkpoints to be taken are given in the relevant Sections of the Rules. A list of the proposed items to be examined is to be submitted for approval.

2. 12. 14 For the hull structure of refrigerated spaces, and of ships designed to operate in low air temperatures, the extent of non-destructive examination will be specially considered. For non-destructive examination of gas ships *See* the *Rules for the carriage for Liquefied Gases*.

2. 12. 15 For all ship types, the builder is to carry out random non-destructive examination at the request of the Surveyor.

2. 12. 16 Results of non-destructive examinations made during construction are to be recorded and evaluated by the builder on a continual basis in order that the quality of welding can be monitored. These records are to be available to the Surveyor.

2. 12. 17 The extent of applied non-destructive examinations is to be increased when warranted by the analysis of previous results.

2. 13 Weld repairs

2. 13. 1 The full extent of any weld defect is to be ascertained by applying additional non-destructive examination where required. Unacceptable defects are to be completely removed and, where necessary, re-welded and re-examined in accordance with the requirements of Ch 13, 1.15 Rectification of welds defects.

2. 13. 2 During the assembly of large components, root gaps in excess of those specified in the approved welding procedure may be rectified by welding.

2. 13. 3 Rectification of wide root gaps in butt welds, up to a maximum gap of 16 mm, may be performed provided that the length of these areas is small in relation to the whole weld length. Repairs may be executed by applying weld buttering layers to one edge of the weld joint, followed by machining or grinding to return the root opening to the required dimensions. The weld buttering and filling of the joint are to be in accordance with welding procedures qualified in accordance with Ch 12 Welding Qualifications.

2. 13. 4 For sub-assemblies, rectification of wide root gaps may be performed using a backing strip, provided that it is removed on completion of the welding.

2. 13. 5 Rectification of wide root gaps in fillet welds may be carried out as follows:

a. where the root gap, g, is in excess of 3 mm, but not greater than 5 mm, the fillet leg length, z, may be increased by g – 2.0 mm;

b. where the root gap is in excess of 5 mm, the joint detail may be changed into a full penetration weld.

2. 13. 6 Where repair welds are made using small weld beads, suitable precautions (including preheat) are to be taken to avoid high hardness and possible cold cracking.

2. 14 Welding afloat with water backing

2. 14. 1 Welding afloat with water backing is not recommended due to the additional precautions required during survey and therefore, is generally not permitted. However consideration may be given to welding afloat with water backing after specific ACS approval has been obtained by the yard or fabricator prior to such welding being carried out. Such approval will only be given once all of the following conditions are satisfied:

a. The welding procedure qualification tests are carried out on steel plates with water backing and the water is maintained at the flow rate and minimum water temperature anticipated during fabrication.

b. The carbon equivalent of the steel plates used in the welding procedure qualification tests are to be greater than 0.41 per cent based on the IIW formula. Where it can be shown that all hull steel plates and new sections will have a carbon equivalent value below this figure, steel plates with the maximum carbon equivalent value may be used for the welding procedure qualification tests.
c. Welding procedure qualification tests are carried out without preheat.
d. The thickness of steel plate used in the welding procedure qualification test is the minimum hull plate thickness to be used during fabrication.
e. The maximum measured hardness on the completed welding procedure qualification assembly is less than or equal to 350 HV10. Following fabrication welding, 10 per cent of welds are to be hardness tested in way of heataffected zones at weld starts to confirm compliance with the 350 HV10 limit.
f. The heat input used in the welding qualification test is the minimum permitted heat input during fabrication.
g. Only low hydrogen welding consumables (H5) are used.
h. In addition to normal non-destructive testing for welds, 10 per cent of the welds are additionally subject to magnetic particle inspection 48 hours after welding is complete.
i. The welding procedure qualification tests for the repair of welds carried out afloat with water backing are to be carried out on test pieces that have previously been welded afloat and also meet the requirements above.

2. 14. 2 For new construction, conversion or permanent repairs, wet underwater welding is not permitted.

PART

2

CHAPTER **13 Requirements for Welded Construction**

SECTION **3 Specific requirements for fabricated steel sections**

3. 1 Scope

3. 1. 1 Fabricated steel sections are items used in place of rolled sections and as such will not be regarded as subassemblies. Products regarded as sub-assemblies are subject to requirements of welded construction specified in Ch 13, 2 Specific requirements for ship hull structure and machinery.

3. 1. 2 The requirements for structural steel sections are based on these being manufactured from flat products by automatic welding and intended for use in the construction of ships and other marine structures.

3. 1. 3 Fabricated steel sections are to be manufactured in accordance with the requirements of this Section and the general requirements of Ch 13, 1 General welding requirements.

3. 1. 4 In all cases, sections are to be manufactured at works, which have been assessed and approved in accordance with *Materials and Qualification Procedures for Ships, Book J, MQPS Procedure 12-1*.

3. 2 Dimensions and tolerances

3. 2. 1 Products are to conform dimensionally to the provisions of an acceptable National or International Standard.

3. 2. 2 The minimum throat thickness of fillet welds is to be determined from:

$$\text{Throat thickness} = 0.34t \text{ but not to be taken as less than 3 mm}$$

where

t = plate thickness of the thinner member to be joined (generally the web).

3. 2. 3 Where a welding procedure using deep penetration welding is used (*See* Ch 11 Approval of Welding Consumables, 'p' and 'T' welding techniques) the minimum leg length required will be specially considered provided the requirements of Ch 13, 2.9, Fillet welds 2.9.2 are complied with.

3. 2. 4 Unless agreed otherwise, the leg length of the weld is to be not less than 1.4 times the specified throat thickness.

3. 3 Identification of products

3. 3. 1 Every finished item is to be clearly marked by the manufacturer in at least one place with the following particulars:

a. The manufacturer's name or trade mark.
b. Identification mark for the grade of steel.
c. Identification number and/or initials which will enable the full history of the item to be traced.
d. Where required by the purchaser, the order number or other identification mark.
e. The letters 'ACS'.
f. The Surveyor's personal stamp.

The above particulars, but excluding the manufacturer's name or trade mark where this is embossed on finished products, are to be encircled with paint or otherwise marked so as to be easily recognisable.

3. 3. 2 In the event of any material bearing ACS's brand failing to comply with the test requirements, the brand is to be removed or unmistakably defaced, *See also* Ch 1, 4.7 Rectification of defective material.

3. 4 Manufacture and workmanship

3. 4. 1 For cut edges that are to remain unwelded, it is to be demonstrated that the plate preparation procedures used are able to achieve edges that are free from cracks or other deleterious imperfections.

3. 4. 2 Where assembly jigs and devices are used to bring the web into contact with the flanges and hold these in place during welding, means are to be provided to ensure that the degree of contact is maintained until welding is complete.

3. 4. 3 Welding procedures are to be established for the welding of all joints including weld repairs and are to be approved in accordance with Ch 12 Welding Qualifications. Welders are to be approved in accordance with Ch 12 Welding Qualifications, and qualification records are to be available to the Surveyor.

3. 4. 4 The welding consumables used are to be approved in accordance with Ch 11 Approval of Welding Consumables and are to be suitable for the type of joint and grade of steel as described in Ch 13, 2.2 Welding consumables. For joining steel of different tensile strengths, the consumables are to be suitable for the tensile strength of the component considered in the determination of weld size.

3. 4. 5 The application of pre-heat and the use of low hydrogen welding consumables are to be in accordance with the requirements of Ch 13, 2.2 Welding consumables.

3. 4. 6 Welding is to be double continuous fillet welding or full penetration welding as specified in the approved plans.

3. 4. 7 Where deep penetration welding is used, the requirements of Ch 13, 2.9, Fillet welds 2.9.2 are to be complied with.

3. 5 Non-destructive examination

3. 5. 1 Surface inspection and verification of dimensions are the responsibility of the manufacturer and are to be carried out on all materials prior to despatch. Acceptance by the Surveyor of material later found to be defective does not absolve the manufacturer from this responsibility.

3. 5. 2 The Surveyor will carry out checks to ensure that the weld size and profile are in accordance with the manufacturing specification and the manufacturer's Quality Control Procedures.

3. 5. 3 The manufacturer is to examine the welds by magnetic particle or dye penetrant methods. The length examined is to be 200 mm at each end, for each length cut for delivery.

3. 5. 4 If cracks are revealed, these are to be reported to the Surveyor and the whole of the length is to be examined by magnetic particle or dye penetrant methods. Corrective action in respect of the manufacturing process, and repairs are to be as indicated in the manufacturers' Quality Control Manual.

3. 5. 5 The weld defect is not to exceed the acceptance levels given in Table 13. 2. 5: Acceptance criteria for visual testing, magnetic particle and liquid penetrant testing.

3. 6 Routine weld tests

3. 6. 1 One production batch test is required for every 500 m of fabricated section manufactured, or fraction thereof. From each batch test, two samples are to be removed, one from near the beginning of the production run and one from near the end. From each of these test samples one macro specimen and one fracture test specimen are to be taken.

3. 6. 2 The macro specimens are to be prepared and etched to demonstrate freedom from unacceptable defects and that the weld penetration is in accordance with the manufacturing specification. The fracture specimens are to be broken, one for each side of the fillet welds and the fractured surfaces examined for compliance with the requirements of Table 13. 2. 6: Acceptance criteria for radiographic testing.

3. 6. 3 Where the welding procedure used has employed the deep penetration technique, the amount of root penetration is to be measured on the macro specimen and is not to be less than that demonstrated during welding procedure approval testing.

3. 6. 4 For the purposes of this Section, a batch is to consist of products of only one size and grade of material.

3. 7 Certification and records

3. 7. 1 Each test certificate is to include the following particulars:

a. Purchaser's name and order number.
b. Where known, the contract number for which the material is intended.
c. Address to which material is despatched.
d. Description and dimensions of the product.
e. Specification or grade of the steel.
f. Identification number and/or initials.
g. Cast number and chemical composition of ladle samples of constituent plates.
h. Mechanical test results of constituent plates.
i. Condition of supply when other than as-rolled.
j. Make and brand of welding consumables.

3. 7. 2 Test certificates or shipping statements may be signed by the Surveyor, provided the documentation requirements of Ch 13, 1.17, Certification are satisfied. The following form of declaration will be accepted if stamped or printed on each test certificate or shipping statement with the name of the works and signed by an authorised representative of the manufacturer: 'We hereby certify that the material has been made by an approved procedure in accordance with the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials.

3. 7. 3 The manufacturer is to maintain records by which sources of material can be identified together with the results of all inspections and tests.

PART

2

CHAPTER **13 Requirements for Welded Construction**

SECTION **4 Specific requirements for fusion welded pressure vessels**

4. 1 Scope

4. 1. 1 The requirements of this Section apply to fusion welded pressure vessels and process equipment, heating and steam raising boilers, and steam or gas turbine rotors and cylinders and are in addition to those requirements referred to in Ch 13, 1 General welding requirements.

4. 1. 2 The allocation of pressure vessel Class is determined from the design criteria in Pt 5, Ch 10 Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels and Pt 5, Ch 11 Other Pressure Vessels of the *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships*. Prior to commencing construction, the design of the vessel is to be approved. Construction requirements for turbine rotors and cylinders are to be in accordance with Class 2/1, unless a higher Class is specified in the approved plans.

4. 1. 3 Pressure vessels will be accepted only if manufactured by firms equipped and competent to undertake the quality of welding work required for the Class of vessel proposed. The manufacturer's works are to be approved in accordance with the requirements specified in *Materials and Qualification Procedures for Ships, Book A, Procedure MQPS 0-4*.

4. 1. 4 The term 'fusion weld', for the purpose of these requirements, is applicable to welded joints made by manual, semi-automatic, or automatic electric arc welding processes. Special consideration will be given to the proposed use of other fusion welding processes.

4. 2 Cutting and forming of shells and heads

4. 2. 1 Cut or chipped surfaces which will not be subsequently covered by weld metal are to be ground smooth.

4. 2. 2 Shell plates and heads are to be formed to the correct contour up to the extreme edge of the plate.

4. 2. 3 Vessels manufactured from carbon or carbon manganese steel plates (*See* Table 13. 4. 1: Impact test requirements in Ch 3 Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars, grades 360AR to 510FG), which have been hot formed or locally heated for forming, are to be re-heat treated in accordance with the original supplied condition on completion of this operation. Vessels formed from plates supplied in the as-rolled condition are to be heat treated in accordance with the material manufacturer's recommendations.

4. 2. 4 Subsequent heat treatment will not be required where steels are supplied in the as-rolled, normalised or normalised and controlled rolled condition, or hot forming is carried out entirely at a temperature within the normalising range.

4. 2. 5 For alloy steel vessels where hot forming is employed (*See* Table 13. 4. 1: Impact test requirements in Ch 3 Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars, 13Cr Mo 45 etc.), the plates are to be heat treated on completion in accordance with the material manufacturer's recommendations.

Table 13. 4. 1: Impact test requirements

Pressure vessel Class	Minimum design temperature	Plate material thickness *t*	Impact test temperature
Class 1 *See* Note	–10°C or above	All	5°C below the minimum design temperature or 20°C, whichever is the lower
		$t \leq 20$ mm	5°C below the minimum design temperature
All Classes	Below –10°C	20 mm < $t \leq 40$ mm	10°C below the minimum design temperature
		Over 40 mm	Subject to special consideration
Note Impact testing is not required for Classes 2/1, 2/2 and 3.			

4. 2. 6 Where plates are cold formed, subsequent heat treatment is to be performed where the internal radius is less than 10 times the plate thickness. For carbon and carbonmanganese steels this heat treatment may be a stress relief heat treatment.

4. 2. 7 In all cases where hot forming is employed, and for cold forming to a radius less than 10 times the thickness, the manufacturer is required to demonstrate that the forming process and subsequent heat treatments result in acceptable properties.

4. 3 Fitting of shell plates and attachments

4. 3. 1 The location of welded joints is to be such as to avoid intersecting butt welds in the vessel shell plates. The attachment of nozzles and openings in the vessels are to be arranged to avoid main shell weld seams.

4. 3. 2 The surfaces of the plates at the longitudinal or circumferential seams are not to be out of alignment with each other, at any point, by more than 10 per cent of the plate thickness. In no case is the misalignment to exceed 3 mm for longitudinal seams, or 4 mm for circumferential seams.

4. 3. 3 Where a vessel is constructed of plates of different thicknesses (tube plate and wrapper plate), the plates are to be so arranged that their centrelines form a continuous circle.

4. 3. 4 For longitudinal seams, the thicker plate is to be equally chamfered inside and outside by machining over a circumferential distance not less than twice the difference in thickness, so that the plates are of equal thickness at the longitudinal weld seam. For the circumferential seam, the thickest plate is to be similarly prepared over the same distance longitudinally.

4. 3. 5 For the circumferential seam, where the difference in the thickness is the same throughout the circumference, the thicker plate is to be reduced in thickness by machining to a taper for a distance not less than four times the offset, so that the two plates are of equal thickness at the weld joint. A parallel portion may be provided between the end of the taper and the weld edge preparation; alternatively, if so desired, the width of the weld may be included as part of the smooth taper to the thicker plate.

4. 3. 6 All attachments (lugs, brackets, reinforcing plates, etc.) are to conform to the shape of the surface to which they are attached.

4. 4 Welding

4. 4. 1 Welding procedures are to be established for all welds joining pressure containing parts and for welds made directly onto pressure containing parts. Welding procedures are to be based on qualification tests performed in accordance with Ch 12 Welding Qualifications.

4. 4. 2 In all cases where tack welds, in the root of the weld seam, are used to retain plates or parts in position prior to welding, they are to be removed in the process of welding the seam.

4. 4. 3 Steel backing strips may be used for the circumferential seams of Class 2/1, Class 2/2 and Class 3 pressure vessels and are to be the same nominal composition as the plates to be welded.

4. 4. 4 Fillet welds are to be made to ensure proper fusion and penetration at the root of the fillet. At least two layers of weld metal are to be deposited at each weld affixing branch pipes, flanges and seatings.

4. 4. 5 The outer surface of completed welds is to be at least flush with the surface of the plates joined, and any weld reinforcement is to provide a smooth transition and gradual change of section with the plate surface.

4. 4. 6 Where attachment of lugs, brackets, branches, manhole frames, reinforcement plates and other members are to be made to the main pressure shell by welding, this is to be to the same standard as required for the main vessel shell construction.

4. 4. 7 The main weld seams and all welded attachments made to pressure containing parts are to be completed prior to post weld heat treatment.

4. 4. 8 The finish of welds attaching pressure parts and non-pressure parts to the main pressure shell is to be such as to allow satisfactory examination of the welds. In the case of Class 1 and Class 2/1 pressure vessels, these welds are to be ground smooth, if necessary, to provide a suitable finish for examination.

4. 5 General requirements for routine weld production tests

4. 5. 1 Routine weld production tests are specified as a means of monitoring the quality of the welded joints and are required for pressure vessel Classes 1, 2/1 and 2/2.

4. 5. 2 Routine production test plates are required during the manufacture of vessels and as part of the initial approval test programme for Class 1 vessel manufacturers, refer to *MQPS 0-4*.

4. 5. 3 Routine production weld tests are not required for Class 3 pressure vessels unless there are doubts about the weld quality where check tests may be requested by the Surveyor.

4. 5. 4 Routine production test plates are not required for circumferential seams of cylindrical pressure vessels. Spherical vessels are to have one test plate prepared having a welded joint which is a simulation of the circumferential seams.

4. 5. 5 Routine production weld tests may be requested by the Surveyor where there is reason to doubt the quality of workmanship.

4. 6 Production test plate assembly requirements

4. 6. 1 Two test plates and one complete test assembly, of sufficient dimensions to provide all the required mechanical test specimens is to be prepared for each vessel and is to be welded as a continuation and simulation of the longitudinal weld joint.

4. 6. 2 For Class 2/2 vessels, where a large number are made concurrently at the same works using the same welding procedure and the plate thicknesses do not vary by more than 5 mm, one test may be performed for each 37 m of longitudinal plus circumferential weld seam. In these cases the thickness of the test plate is to be equal to the thickest shell plate used in the construction.

4. 6. 3 Where the vessel size or design results in a small number of longitudinal weld seams, one test assembly may be prepared for testing provided that the welding details are the same for each seam.

4. 6. 4 Test plate materials are to be the same grade, thickness and supply condition and from the same cast as that of the vessel shell. The test assembly is to be welded at the same time as the vessel weld to which it relates and is to be supported so that distortion during welding is minimised.

4. 6. 5 As far as practicable, welding is to be performed by different welders where there is a requirement for several routine tests to be welded.

4. 6. 6 The test assembly may be detached from the vessel weld only after the Surveyor has performed a visual examination and has added his mark or stamp. Straightening of test welds prior to mechanical testing is not permitted.

4. 6. 7 Where the pressure vessel is required to be subjected to post-weld heat treatment, the test weld is to be heat treated, after welding, in accordance with the same requirements. This may be performed separately from the vessel.

4. 7 Inspection and testing

4. 7. 1 The test weld is to be subjected to the same type of non-destructive examination and acceptance criteria as specified for the weld seam to which the test relates. Nondestructive examination is to be performed prior to removing specimens for mechanical testing, but after any post-weld heat treatment.

4. 7. 2 The test weld is to be sectioned to remove the number and type of test specimens for mechanical testing as given in 4.8.

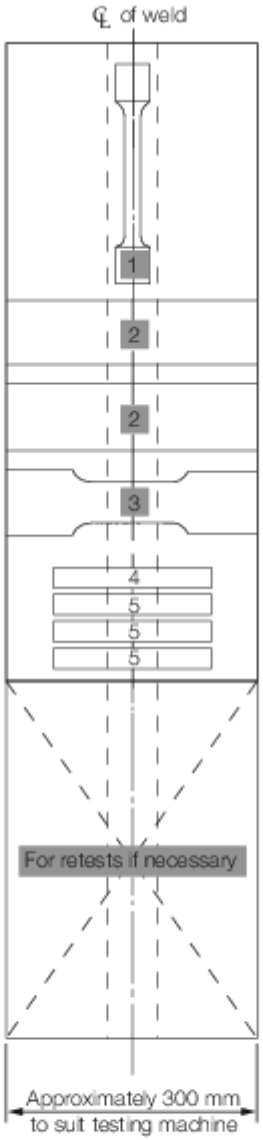
4. 8 Mechanical requirements

4. 8. 1 The routine production test assembly is to be machined to provide the following test specimens:

a. Tensile.
b. Bend.
c. Hardness.
d. Impact (*See* Table 13. 4. 1: Impact test requirements).
e. Macrograph and hardness survey of full weld section.

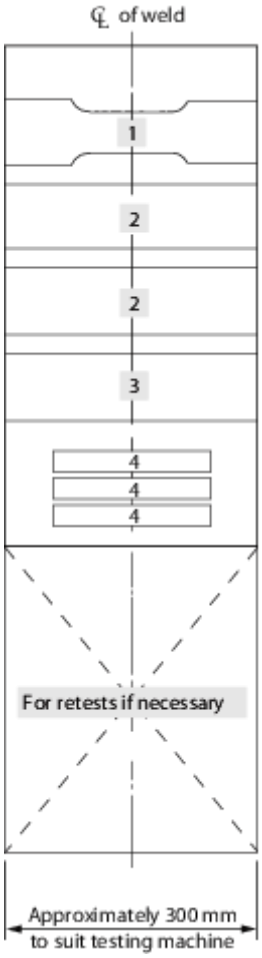
4. 8. 2 One set of specimens for mechanical testing are to be removed, as shown in Figure 13. 4. 1: Routine weld test - Test specimens for Class 1 and Class 2/1 or Figure 13. 4. 2: Routine weld tests - Test specimens for Class 2/2 and Class 3 as appropriate for the Class of approval. Impact tests are to be removed and tested where required by Table 13. 4. 1: Impact test requirements.

Figure 13. 4. 1: Routine weld test - Test specimens for Class 1 and Class 2/1



1. All weld metal tensile test specimen.
2. Bend test specimens.
3. Tensile test for joints.
4. Macro-test specimen.
5. Charpy V-notch impact.
(For all Class 1 pressure vessels and other Classes of pressure vessels where the minimum design temperature is below –10°C).

Figure 13. 4. 2: Routine weld tests - Test specimens for Class 2/2 and Class 3



Note 1. Tensile test for joints.

Note 2. Bend test specimens.

Note 3. Nicked bend test specimen.

Note 4. Charpy V-notch impact test specimens (if required by Table 13. 4. 1: Impact test requirements).

4. 8. 3 **Longitudinal tensile test for weld metal.** An all-weld metal longitudinal tensile test is required. For thicknesses in excess of 20 mm, where more than one welding process or type of consumable has been used to complete the joint, additional longitudinal tests are required from the respective area of the weld. This does not apply to the welding process or consumables used solely to deposit the root weld. Specimens are to be tested in accordance with the following requirements:

a. The diameter and gauge length of the test specimen is to be in accordance with Ch 11, 2.1 Dimensions of test specimens 2.1.1.

b. For carbon and carbon-manganese steels the tensile strength of the weld metal is to be not less than the minimum specified for the plate material and not more than 145 N/mm^2 above this value. The percentage elongation, A, is to be not less than that given by:
A = (980-R)/21.6 but not less than 80 per cent of the minimum elongation specified for the plate

where = R is the tensile strength, in N/mm^2, obtained from the all weld metal tensile tests.

c. For other materials the tensile strength and percentage elongation is not to be less than that specified for the base materials welded.

4. 8. 4 **Transverse tensile test for joint.** Transverse tensile test specimens are to be removed and tested in accordance with the following requirements:

a. One reduced section tensile test specimen is to be cut transversely to the weld to the dimensions shown in Ch 11, 2.1 Dimensions of test specimens 2.1.1 and the weld reinforcement is to be removed.

b. In general, where the plate thickness exceeds 30 mm, or where the capacity of the tensile test machine prevents full thickness tests, each tensile test may be made up of several reduced section specimens, provided that the whole thickness of the weld is subjected to testing.

c. The tensile strength obtained is to be not less than the minimum specified tensile strength for the plate material, and the location of the fracture is to be reported.

4. 8. 5 **Transverse bend test.** The bend test specimens are to be removed and tested in accordance with the following requirements:

a. Two bend test specimens of rectangular section are to be cut transversely to the weld, one bent with the outer surface of the weld in tension (face bend), and the other with the inner surface in tension (root bend).

b. The specimen dimensions are to be in accordance with Ch 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials.

c. Each specimen is to be mounted on roller supports with the centre of the weld midway between the supports. The former is to have a diameter specified in Ch 12, 2.7,, Destructive tests for steel butt welds 2.7.6 depending on the material being welded.

d. After bending through an angle of at least 180° there is to be no crack or defect exceeding 1.5 mm measured across the specimen or 3 mm measured along the specimen. Premature failure at the edges of the specimen is not to be cause for rejection, unless this is associated with a weld defect.

4. 8. 6 **Macro-specimen and hardness survey.** A macro examination specimen is to be removed from the test assembly near the end where welding started. The specimen is to include the complete cross-section of the weld and the heat affected zone. The specimen is to be prepared and examined in accordance with the following requirements:

a. The cross-section of the specimen is to be ground, polished and etched to clearly reveal the weld runs, and the heat affected zones.

b. The specimen is to show an even weld profile that blends smoothly with the base material and have satisfactory penetration and fusion, and an absence of significant inclusions or other defects.

c. Where there is doubt in the condition of the weld as shown by macro-etching, the area concerned is to be microscopically examined.

d. For carbon, carbon manganese and low alloy steels, a Vickers hardness survey is to be performed on the macro-specimen using either a 5 kg or 10 kg load. Testing is to include the base material, the weld and the heat affected zone. Hardness scans on the crosssection are to be performed as specified in Figure 12. 2. 14: Hardness testing locations for butt welds in Chapter 12. The maximum recorded hardness is to not exceed 350 Hv.

4. 8. 7 **Charpy V-notch impact test.** Charpy V notch impact test specimens are to be prepared and tested as required by Table 13. 4. 1: Impact test requirements and in accordance with the following requirements:

a. The dimensions and tolerances of the specimens are to be in accordance with Ch 2 Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials.

b. Charpy V-notch impact specimens and are to be removed with the notch perpendicular to the plate surface.
c. Specimens are to be removed for testing from the weld centreline and the heat affected zone (fusion line and fusion line + 2 mm locations) detailed in Figure 12. 2. 11: Locations of V-notch for butt weld of normal heat input (heat input ≤ 50 kJ/cm) or Figure 12. 2. 12: Locations of V-notch for butt weld of high heat input (heat input > 50 kJ/cm) in Chapter 12, as appropriate. Heat affected zone impact tests may be omitted where the minimum design temperature is above +20°C.
d. For thicknesses in excess of 20 mm, where more than one welding process or type of consumable has been used to complete the joint, impact tests are required from the respective areas of the weld. This does not apply to the welding process or consumables used solely to deposit the root weld.
e. The average energy of a set of three specimens is not to be less than 27 J or the minimum specified for the base material, whichever is the higher. The minimum energy for each individual specimen is to meet the requirements of Ch 1, 4.5 Mechanical tests 4.5.2.

4. 8. 8 **Nick break bend tests.** A nick bend or fracture test specimen is to be a minimum of 100 mm long measured along the weld direction and is to be tested in accordance with and meet the requirements of the following:
a. The specimen is to have a slot cut into each side along the centreline of the weld and perpendicular to the plate surface.
b. The specimen is to be bent along the weld centreline until fracture occurs and the fracture faces are to be examined for defects. The weld is to be sound, with no evidence of cracking or lack of fusion or penetration and be substantially free from slag inclusions and porosity.

4. 9 Failure to meet requirements

4. 9. 1 Where any test specimen fails to meet the requirements, additional specimens may be removed and re-tested in accordance with Ch 2, 1.4, Re-testing procedures.

4. 9. 2 Where a routine weld test fails to meet requirements, the welds to which it relates will be considered as not having met the requirements. The reason for the failure is to be established, and the manufacturer is to take such steps as necessary to either
a. Remove the affected welds and have them re-welded, or
b. Demonstrate that the affected production welds have acceptable properties.

4. 10 Post-weld heat treatment

4. 10. 1 Fusion welded pressure vessels, where indicated in Table 13. 4. 2: Post-weld heat treatment requirements, are to be heat treated on completion of the welding of the seams and of all attachments to the shell and ends, and before the hydraulic test is carried out.

Table 13. 4. 2: Post-weld heat treatment requirements

Type of steel	Plate thickness above which post-weld heat treatment (PWHT) is required	
	Steam raising plant	Other pressure vessels
Carbon and carbon/manganese steels without low temperature impact values	20 mm	30 mm
Carbon and carbon/manganese steels with low temperature impact values	20 mm	40 mm

1Cr ½Mo	All thicknesses	All thicknesses
2¼Cr 1Mo	All thicknesses	All thicknesses
½Cr ½Mo ¼V	All thicknesses	All thicknesses
Other alloy steels	Subject to special consideration	

4. 10. 2 Tubes which have been expanded into headers or drums may be seal welded without further post-weld heat treatment.

4. 10. 3 Steam and gas turbine cylinders and rotors are to be subjected to post-weld heat treatment irrespective of thickness.

4. 10. 4 Where the weld attaches parts of different thicknesses, the thickness to be used when applying the requirements for post-weld heat treatment is to be either the thinner of the two plates for butt welded connections, or the thickness of the shell for welds to flanges, tubeplates and similar connections.

4. 10. 5 Care is to be exercised to provide drilled holes in double reinforcing plates and other closed spaces prior to heat treatment.

4. 11 Basic requirements for post-weld heat treatment of fusion welded pressure vessels

4. 11. 1 Recommended soaking temperatures and soak durations for post-weld heat treatment are given in Table 13. 4. 3: Post-weld soak temperatures and times for different materials. Where other materials are used for pressure vessel construction, full details of the proposed heat treatment are to be submitted for consideration.

Table 13. 4. 3: Post-weld soak temperatures and times

Material type	Soak temperature (°C)	Soak period
Carbon and carbon/manganese grades	580–620°	1 hour per 25 mm of thickness, minimum 1 hour
1Cr ½Mo	620–660°	1 hour per 25 mm of thickness, minimum of 1 hour
2¼Cr 1Mo	650–690°	1 hour per 25 mm of thickness, minimum of 1 hour
½Cr ½Mo ¼V	670–720°	1 hour per 25 mm of thickness, minimum of 1 hour
Note For materials supplied in the tempered condition, the post-weld heat treatment temperature is to be lower than the material tempering temperature.		

4. 11. 2 Where pressure vessels are of dimensions that the whole length cannot be accommodated in the furnace at one time, the pressure vessels may be heated in sections, provided that sufficient overlap is allowed to ensure the heat treatment of the entire length of the longitudinal seam.

4. 11. 3 Where materials other than those detailed in Table 13. 4. 3: Post-weld soak temperatures and timesare used or where it is proposed to adopt special methods of heat treatment, full particulars are to be submitted for consideration. In such cases, it may be necessary to carry out tests to show the effect of the proposed heat treatment.

4. 12 Non-Destructive Examination of welds

4. 12. 1 Non-Destructive Examinations (NDE) of pressure vessel welds are to be carried out in accordance with a nationally recognised code or standard.

4. 12. 2 NDE is not to be applied until an interval of at least 48 hours has elapsed since the completion of welding.

4. 12. 3 NDE Personnel are to be qualified to an appropriate level of a nationally recognised certification scheme.

4. 12. 4 Qualification schemes are to include assessments of practical ability for Levels I and II individuals. These examinations are to be made on representative test pieces containing relevant defects.

4. 13 Extent of NDE for Class 1 pressure vessels

4. 13. 1 All butt welded seams in drums, shells, headers and test plates, together with tubes or nozzles with outside diameter greater than 170 mm, are subject to 100 per cent volumetric and surface crack detection inspections.

4. 13. 2 For circumferential butt welds in extruded connections, tubes, headers and other tubular parts with an outside diameter of 170 mm or less, at least 10 per cent of the total number of welds is to be subjected to volumetric examination and surface crack detection inspections.

4. 13. 3 Full penetration tube sheet to shell welds are to be subjected to 10 per cent volumetric examination and 10 per cent surface inspection, prior to the installation of the tubes.

4. 13. 4 In addition to the acceptance limits stated in Table 13. 2. 5: Acceptance criteria for visual testing, magnetic particle and liquid penetrant testing to Table 13. 2. 7: Acceptance criteria for ultrasonic testing, no cracks, lack of fusion, or lack of penetration is permitted.

4. 13. 5 When an unacceptable indication is detected, the full length of the weld is to be subjected to 100 per cent examination by the same method, testing conditions and acceptance criteria.

4. 13. 6 The NDE requirements of Ch 13, 1.11 Non-destructive examination of welds are to be complied with.

4. 14 Extent of NDE for Class 2/1 pressure vessels

4. 14. 1 For Class 2/1 pressure vessels, volumetric and surface crack detection inspections are to be applied at selected regions of each main seam. At least 10 per cent of each main seam is to be examined together with the full length of each welded test plate. When an unacceptable indication is detected, at least two additional check points in the seam are to be selected by the surveyor for examination using the same inspection method. Where further unacceptable defects are found either:

a. the whole length of weld represented is to be cut out and re-welded and re-examined as if it was a new weld with the test plates being similarly treated, or
b. the whole length of the weld represented is to be reexamined using the same inspection methods.

4. 14. 2 Butt welds in furnaces, combustion chambers and other pressure parts for fired pressure vessels under external pressure, are to be subject to spot volumetric examination. The minimum length for each check point is to be 300 mm.

4. 14. 3 The extent of NDE for turbine cylinders and rotors is to be agreed with the Surveyor.

4. 14. 4 The requirements of Ch 13, 4.13 Extent of NDE for Class 1 pressure vessels 4.13.3, Ch 13, 4.13 Extent of NDE for Class 1 pressure vessels 4.13.4 and Ch 13, 4.13 Extent of NDE for Class 1 pressure vessels 4.13.5 apply to Class 2/1 pressure vessels.

4. 15 NDE Method

4. 15. 1 Volumetric examinations may be made by radiography. For welds of nominal thickness greater than or equal to 8 mm, the examinations may be by ultrasonic testing. The preferred method for surface crack detection in ferrous metals is magnetic particle inspection. The preferred method for nonmagnetic materials is liquid penetrant inspection.

4. 16 valuation and reports

4. 16. 1 The manufacturer is to be responsible for the review, interpretation, evaluation and acceptance of the results of NDE. Reports stating compliance, or non-compliance, with the criteria established in the inspection procedure are to be issued. Reports are to comply, as a minimum, with the requirements of Ch 1, 5 Non-destructive examination.

4. 17 Repair to welds

4. 17. 1 Where non-destructive examinations reveal unacceptable defects in the welded seams, they are to be repaired in accordance with Ch 13, 1.15 Rectification of welds defects and are to be shown by further non-destructive examinations to have been eliminated.

4. 17. 2 In the case where spot radiography has revealed unacceptable defects, the requirements of Ch 13, 4.14 Extent of NDE for Class 2/1 pressure vessels 4.14.1 apply.

4. 17. 3 Where post-weld heat treatment is required in accordance with Ch 13, 4.10 Post-weld heat treatment, weld repairs to the vessel or cylindrical shell or parts attaching to the shell are to be subjected to a subsequent heat treatment in accordance with Ch 13, 4.10 Post-weld heat treatment.

4. 17. 4 In the event of unsuccessful weld repair of a defect, only one more repair attempt may be made of the same defect. Any subsequent repairs may require the re-repair excavation to be enlarged to remove the original repair heat affected zone.

PART

2

CHAPTER **13 Requirements for Welded Construction**

SECTION **5 Specific requirements for pressure piping**

5. 1 Scope

5. 1. 1 Fabrication of piping is to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of this Section and the general requirements given in Ch 13, 1 General welding requirements, unless more stringent requirements have been specified.

5. 1. 2 Piping systems are to be constructed in accordance with the approved plans and specifications.

5. 1. 3 Fabricated piping will be accepted only if manufactured by firms that have demonstrated that they have the facilities and equipment and are competent to undertake the quality of welding required for the Class of pipework proposed.

5. 2 Manufacture and workmanship

5. 2. 1 Pipe welding may be performed using manual, semi-automatic or fully automatic electric arc processes. The use of oxy-acetylene welding will be limited to Class 3 piping in carbon steel or carbon/manganese material that is not for carrying flammable fluids and limited to butt joints in pipes not exceeding 100 mm diameter or 9.5 mm thickness.

5. 2. 2 Welding of piping, including attachment welds directly to pressure retaining parts is to be performed in accordance with approved welding procedures that have been qualified in accordance with Ch 12 Welding Qualifications.

5. 2. 3 Where the work involves a significant number of branch connections, tests will be required to demonstrate that the type of joint(s) and welding techniques employed are capable of achieving the required quality.

5. 2. 4 Where pressure piping is assembled and butt welded in situ, the piping is to be arranged well clear of adjacent structures to allow sufficient access for preheating, welding, heat-treatment and non-destructive examination of the joints.

5. 2. 5 Alignment of pipe butt welds is to be in accordance with Table 13. 5. 1: Pipe butt weld alignment tolerances unless more stringent requirements have been agreed. Where fusible inserts are used, the alignment is to be within 0.5 mm in all cases.

Table 13. 5. 1: Pipe butt weld alignment tolerances

Pipe size	Maximum permitted misalignment
$D < 150$ mm and $t \leq 6$ mm	1.0 mm or 25% of t, whichever is the lesser
$D < 300$ mm and $t \leq 9.5$ mm	1.5 mm or 25% of t, whichever is the lesser
$D \geq 300$ and $t > 9.5$ mm	2.0 mm or 25% of t, whichever is the lesser

where
D = pipe internal diameter
t = pipe wall thickness

5. 2. 6 The number of welds is to be kept to a minimum. The minimum separation between welds, measured toe-to-toe, is to be not be less than 75 mm. Where it is not possible to achieve this, adjacent welds are to be subjected to surface crack detection NDE.

5. 2. 7 Welding consumables and fusible root inserts, where used, are to be suitable for the materials being joined.

5. 2. 8 Acceptable methods of flange attachment are to be used, *See* Figure 12. 2. 2: Typical welded-on flanges in Pt 5, Ch 12 Piping Design Requirementsof the Rules for Ships. Where backing rings are used with flange type (a) they are to fit closely to the bore of the pipe and be removed after welding. The rings are to be made of the same material as the pipes. The use of flange types (b) and (c) with alloy steel pipes is limited to pipes up to and including 168.3 mm outside diameter.

5. 2. 9 Where socket welded fittings are employed, the diametrical clearance between the outside diameter of the pipe and the base of the fitting is not to exceed 0.8 mm, and a gap of approximately 1.5 mm is to be provided between the end of the pipe and the internal step at the bottom of the socket.

5. 2. 10 For welding of carbon, carbon/manganese and low alloy steels, the preheat to be applied will be dependent on the material grade, thickness and hydrogen grading of the welding consumable in accordance with Table 13. 5. 2: Welding preheat levels for piping, unless welding procedure testing indicates that a higher level is required.

Table 13. 5. 2: Welding preheat levels for piping

Material Grade	Thickness,t (mm) *See* Note 4	Minimum preheat temperature (°C) *See* Note 1	
		Non-low H_2	Low H_2 *See* Note 2
Carbon and carbon /manganese grades:	$t \leq 15$	50	10
320 and 360	$t \geq 15$	100	50
Carbon and carbon /manganese grades:	$t \leq 15$	75	20
410, 460 and 490	$t \geq 15$	150	100
1Cr ½Mo	$t < 13$		100
	$t \geq 13$	*See* Note 3	150
2¼Cr 1Mo	$t < 13$	*See* Note 3	150
	$t \geq 13$		200
½Cr ½Mo ¼V	$t < 13$	*See* Note 3	150
	$t \geq 13$		200

Note 1. Where the ambient temperature is 0°C or below, pre-warming of the weld joint is required in all cases.

Note 2. Low hydrogen process or consumables are those that have been tested and have achieved a grading of H15 or better (*See* Ch 11 Approval of Welding Consumables).

Note 3. Low hydrogen welding process is required for these materials.

Note 4. t = the thickness of the thinner member for butt welds, and the thicker member for fillet and branch welds.

5. 2. 11 Welding without filler metal is generally not permitted for welding of duplex stainless steel materials.

5. 2. 12 All welds in high pressure, high temperature pipelines are to have a smooth surface finish and even contour; and where necessary, made smooth by grinding.

5. 2. 13 Check tests of the quality of the welding are to be carried out periodically.

5. 3 Heat treatment after bending of pipes

5. 3. 1 After forming or bending of pipes, the heat treatments specified in this Section are to be applied unless the pipe material manufacturer specifies or recommends other requirements.

5. 3. 2 Generally, hot forming is to be carried out within the normalising temperature range. When carried out within this temperature range, no subsequent heat treatment is required for carbon and carbon/manganese steels. For alloy steels, 1Cr ½Mo, 2¼Cr 1Mo and ½Cr ½Mo ¼V, a subsequent stress relieving heat treatment in accordance with Ch 13, 1.16 Post-weld heat treatment at the temperatures and times specified in Table 13. 5. 4: Post-weld heat treatment requirements for piping is required, irrespective of material thickness.

Table 13. 5. 3: Heat treatment after bending of pipes

Type of steel	Heat treatment required
Carbon and carbon/manganese: Grades 320, 360, 410, 460 and 490	Normalise at 880 to 940°C
1Cr ½Mo	Normalise at 900 to 940°C, followed by tempering at 640 to 720°C
2¼Cr 1Mo	Normalise at 900 to 960°C, followed by tempering at 650 to 780°C
½Cr ½Mo ¼V	Normalise at 930 to 980°C, followed by tempering at 670 to 720°C
Other alloy steels	Subject to special consideration

5. 3. 3 When hot forming is performed outside the normalising temperature range, a subsequent heat treatment in accordance with Table 13. 5. 3: Heat treatment after bending of pipes is required.

5. 3. 4 After cold forming to a radius (measured at the centreline of the pipe) of less than four times the outside diameter, heat treatment in accordance with Table 13. 5. 3: Heat treatment after bending of pipes is required.

5. 3. 5 Bending procedures and subsequent heat treatment for other alloy steels will be subject to special consideration.

5. 4 Post-weld heat treatment

5. 4. 1 Post-weld heat treatment is to be carried out in accordance with the general requirements specified in Ch 13, 1.16 Post-weld heat treatment and Ch 13, 4.10 Post-weld heat treatment.

5. 4. 2 The thickness limits, the recommended soaking temperatures and periods, for application of post-weld heat treatment are given in Table 13. 5. 4: Post-weld heat treatment requirements for piping.

Table 13. 5. 4: Post-weld heat treatment requirements for piping

Material Grade	Thickness for which post-weld heat treatment is required	Soak temperature (°C) *See* Note 2	Soak period
Carbon and carbon/manganese grades: 320, 360, 410, 460, 490	Over 30 mm	580–620°C	1 hour per 25 mm of thickness, 320, 360, 410, 460, 490 minimum of 1 hour
1Cr ½Mo	Over 8 mm	620–660°C	1 hour per 25 mm of thickness, minimum of 1 hour
2¼Cr 1Mo	All	650–690°C	1 hour per 25 mm of thickness, minimum of 1 hour
½Cr ½Mo ¼V	All, *See* Note 1	670–720°C	1 hour per 25 mm of thickness, minimum of 1 hour
Note *1.* Heat treatment may be omitted for thicknesses up to 8 mm and diameters not exceeding 100mm and minimum service temperature 450°C provided that welding procedure tests have demonstrated acceptable properties in the as welded condition. **Note** *2.* For materials supplied in the tempered condition, the post weld heat treatment temperature is to be at least 20°C less than the material tempering temperature.			

5. 4. 3 Where the use of oxy-acetylene welding is proposed, due consideration is to be given to the need for normalising and tempering after such welding.

5. 5 Non-destructive examination

5. 5. 1 Non-destructive examination of pipe welds is to be carried out in accordance with the general requirements of Ch 13, 1.11 Non-destructive examination of welds and the following.

5. 5. 2 Butt welds in Class 1 pipes with an outside diameter greater or equal to 75 mm are to be subject to 100 per cent volumetric and visual inspections. Consideration is to be given to the extent and method of testing applied to butt welds in Class 1 pipes with an outside diameter less than 75 mm.

5. 5. 3 Butt welds in Class II pipes are to be subjected to at least 10 per cent random volumetric inspections when the outside diameter is 100 mm and greater.

5. 5. 4 NDE for Class II pipes with a diameter less than 100 mm is to be at the discretion of the Surveyor.

5. 5. 5 Non-destructive examination procedures, methods and the evaluation of reports are to be in accordance with Ch 13, 4.15 NDE Method and Ch 13, 4.16 Evaluation and reports.

5. 5. 6 Fillet welds on flange pipe connections of Class I pipes are to be examined by surface crack detection methods.

5. 5. 7 Weld acceptance criteria shall be in accordance with Ch 13, 4.13, Extent of NDE for Class 1 pressure vessels.

5. 6 Repairs to pipe welds

5. 6. 1 Where non-destructive examinations reveal unacceptable defects in a weld, the defects are to be removed and repaired in accordance with Ch 13, 1.15 Rectification of welds defects. Completed repairs are to be shown by further non-destructive examination to have eliminated the defects.

5. 6. 2 For pipes with diameter less than 88 mm and where unacceptable defects have been found during nondestructive examination, consideration is to be given to cutting the weld out completely, re-making the weld preparation and re-welding as a new joint (because of the difficulty of making small repairs).

5. 6. 3 Where repeated weld repairs have to be made to a weld, only two such attempts are to be permitted, thereafter the weld is to be cut apart and removed, and re-welded as a new joint.

5. 6. 4 Where piping requires post-weld heat treatment weld, repairs to the pressure retaining parts are to be subjected to a subsequent heat treatment. Similarly, where welding is conducted after pressure testing, a further pressure test is to be required unless specific exemption has been agreed.

PART

2

CHAPTER **13 Requirements for Welded Construction**

SECTION **6 Repair of existing ships by welding**

6. 1 Scope

6. 1. 1 This Section specifies requirements for repairs made by welding after introduction into service. This Section includes defects to hull structures, machinery, equipment and components. It also includes replacement of structure due to damage or corrosion. These requirements are in addition to those specified in the preceding Sections of this Chapter.

6. 1. 2 These requirements apply unless the original builder or manufacturer has specified alternative requirements.

6. 2 Materials used for repairs

6. 2. 1 Permanent materials used in the repair are to be in accordance with Ch 13, 1.3 Materials.

6. 2. 2 Prior to commencing any welding, the material grades present in the original structure in way of the repair are to be determined. Where the materials cannot be identified from the ship records, test samples may be removed for chemical analysis and mechanical testing in order to determine the material grades.

6. 2. 3 Temporary materials that are to be welded to the main structure to assist in executing the repairs, but removed on completion, are to be of weldable quality.

6. 3 Workmanship

6. 3. 1 A repair method is to be established by the shipyard or repair yard and is to be agreed by the Surveyor prior to commencing any repair work.

6. 3. 2 The removal of crack-like defects is to be confirmed by visual examination and surface crack detection NDE. This may be augmented by ultrasonic examination where several defects are reported at different depths at the same location.

6. 3. 3 The weld joint or groove shape used for the repair is to have a profile suitable for welding.

6. 3. 4 The weld area is to be carefully cleaned, in particular, where the material surface has been painted or has been subjected to an oily or greasy environment.

6. 4 Non-destructive examination

6. 4. 1 On completion of welding and any post-weld heat treatment, repair welds are to be subjected to the type and extent of NDE and assessed in accordance with the acceptance criteria specified for the original construction.

6. 4. 2 Where the original construction specification did not specify NDE, the completed welds are to be, as a minimum, subject to visual examination. Consideration of other NDE techniques is to take due cognisance of the location or the repair within the vessel.

6. 4. 3 Where spot NDE is applied and defects are found, the extent of NDE is to be increased to include an equal amount of weld length. Where this reveals unacceptable defects, either the whole weld will be rejected or the extent of inspection increased to 100 per cent examination.

6. 4. 4 The acceptance criteria to be applied are to generally be in accordance with the original build specification. Where conflict of requirements exist, the NDE acceptance limits for welding procedure tests specified in Ch 12, 2.5 Non-destructive examination (NDE) 2.5.5 may be used as a minimum requirement.

6. 5 Repairs to welds defects

6. 5. 1 Where NDE reveals unacceptable defects, these are to be repaired in accordance with Ch 13, 1.15 Rectification of welds defects.

PART

2

CHAPTER **13 Requirements for Welded Construction**

SECTION **7 Austenitic and duplex stainless steel – Specific requirements**

7. 1 Scope

7. 1. 1 This Section specifies requirements for the fabrication and welding of austenitic and duplex stainless steels, and is in addition to those detailed above.

7. 1. 2 Fabrication and welding of these materials is to be in designated areas which are separated from those used for other materials, such as carbon steels and copper alloys. Where work is performed in the same workshop as other materials, adequate barriers or screening are to be provided to prevent cross-contamination of different material types.

7. 1. 3 All tools and equipment used are to be suitable for use on stainless steel materials. The use of tools or equipment made of carbon steel materials is to be avoided. It is permissible to use carbon steel tools provided that the surfaces that come into contact with the austenitic and duplex stainless materials are protected with an austenitic or nickel base alloy.

7. 2 Design

7. 2. 1 Care is to be exercised in the weld design to prevent crevice corrosion from occurring, particularly where austenitic materials are used. In this respect fillet welds and partial penetration welds are to be continuous and welded on both sides of the joint.

7. 3 Forming and bending

7. 3. 1 Materials that are cold formed, such that the total strain exceeds 15 per cent (i.e. where the formed diameter to thickness ratio is less than 6:1) are to be subjected to a subsequent softening heat treatment in accordance with the material manufacturers recommendations, unless it is demonstrated by testing that the material properties are acceptable in the ‘as formed’ condition.

7. 3. 2 Materials may be hot formed provided that a subsequent softening heat treatment is carried out. The forming process and the subsequent heat treatment are to be in accordance with the material manufacturer’s recommendations.

7. 4 Fabrication and welding

7. 4. 1 Welding may be performed using shielded manual arc welding (SMAW), gas tungsten arc welding (GTAW), MIG/MAG welding (GMAW), flux cored arc welding (FCAW), plasma arc welding (PAW) and submerged arc welding (SAW). The use of other welding processes will be subject to special consideration and will require submission of the process details, consumables and the weld properties achieved.

7. 4. 2 Misalignment may be corrected by the application of steady even force (e.g. using hydraulic or screw-type clamps). Hammering or heating is not permitted.

7. 4. 3 For full penetration welds, a backing or shielding gas is to be provided to prevent oxidation of the root weld. The backing gas is to be maintained until completion of, at least, the root and first fill layer. The backing gas may be omitted where the weld is back gouged or ground to remove the root weld.

7. 4. 4 Shielding and backing gases are to be an inert type of high purity and oxygen free.

7. 4. 5 For welding of Duplex stainless, the use of backing gases that contain up to 2 per cent nitrogen is permitted.

7. 4. 6 Welding of duplex stainless steels without filler metal is generally not permitted.

7. 4. 7 Degreasing agents, acid solutions, washing water etc. used for cleaning and any marking crayons and paints used are to be free of chlorides.

7. 5 Repairs

7. 5. 1 Correction of distortion by the application of heat is not permitted.

PART

2

CHAPTER **13 Requirements for Welded Construction**

SECTION **8 Specific requirements for welded aluminium**

8. 1 Scope

8. 1. 1 This Section specifies requirements for the fabrication and welding of aluminium alloys, and is in addition to those detailed in this Chapter.

8. 1. 2 Fabrication and welding of these materials is to be in designated areas which are separated from those used for other materials, such as carbon steels, stainless steels and copper alloys. Where work is performed in the same workshop as other materials, adequate barriers or screening are to be provided to prevent cross-contamination of different material types.

8. 1. 3 All tools and equipment used are to be suitable for use on aluminium alloy materials. The use of tools made of carbon steel materials is to be avoided where possible.

8. 2 Forming and bending

8. 2. 1 Aluminium alloys are to be subject to cold forming and cold bending only.

8. 3 Fabrication and welding

8. 3. 1 Welding may be performed using gas tungsten arc welding (GTAW) or metal inert gas welding (GMAW), MIG/MAG welding (GMAW), or variants thereof. The use of other welding processes such as friction stir welding (FSW) will be subject to special consideration and will require submission of the process details, consumables and the weld properties achieved.

8. 3. 2 A comparison of the mechanical properties for selected welded and unwelded alloys is given in Table 13. 8. 1: Minimum mechanical properties for aluminium alloys.

Table 13. 8. 1: Minimum mechanical properties for aluminium alloys

Alloy	Condition	0.2% proof stress, N/mm^2			Ultimate tensile strength, N/mm^2
		Unwelded	Welded (*See* Note 4)	Unwelded	Welded (*See* Note 4)
5083	O/H111	125	125	275	275
5083	H112	125	125	275	275
5083	H116/H321	215	125	305	275
5383	O/H111	145	145	290	290

5383	H116/H321	220		145	305	290
5086	O/H111	100		95	240	240
5086	H112	125 (*See* Note 2)		95	250 (*See* Note 2)	240
5086	H116/H321	195		95	275	240
5059	O/H111	160		160	330	330
5059	H116/H321	260		160	360	300
5456	O	125		125	285	285
5456	H116	200 (*See* Note 5)		125	290 (*See* Note 5)	285
5456	H321	215 (*See* Note 5)		125	305 (*See* Note 5)	285
5754	O/H111	80		80	190	190
6005A	T5/T6	Extruded: Open Profile	215	100	260	160
(*See* Note 1)		Extruded: Closed Profile	215	100	250	160
6061	T5/T6	Rolled	240	125	290	160
(*See* Note 1)		Extruded: Open Profile	240	125	260	160
		Extruded: Closed Profile	205	125	245	160
6082	T5/T6	Rolled	240	125	280	190
		Extruded: Open Profile	260	125	310	190
		Extruded: Closed Profile	240	125	290	190

Note *1.* These alloys are not normally acceptable for application in direct contact with sea-water.

Note *2.* *See also* Table 8. 1. 4: Minimum mechanical properties for acceptance purposes of selected extruded aluminium alloy products or Table 8. 1. 3: Minimum mechanical properties for acceptance purposes of selected rolled aluminium alloy products in Chapter 8.

Note *3.* The mechanical properties to be used to determine scantlings in other types and grades of aluminium alloy manufactured to National or proprietary Standards and specifications are to be individually agreed with ACS, *See also* Ch 8, 1.1 Scope 1.1.5.

Note *4.* Where detail structural analysis is carried out, 'unwelded' stress values may be used away from heat affected zones and weld lines, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 2, 1.3 Aluminium 1.3.3 of the Rules for Ships.

Note *5.* For thickness less than 12.5 mm, the minimum unwelded 0.2% proof stress is to be taken as 230 N/mm^2 and the minimum tensile strength is to be taken as 315 N/mm^2.

8. 3. 3 Misalignment may be corrected by the application of steady even force (e.g. using hydraulic or screw-type clamps). Hammering or heating is not permitted.

8. 3. 4 Correction of distortion by the application of heat is not permitted.

8. 4 Non-destructive examination

8. 4. 1 The requirements of Ch 13, 1.11 Non-destructive examination of welds and Ch 13, 2.12, Non-destructive examination of welds apply; however, acceptance criteria applicable to aluminium are to be in accordance with Table 13. 8. 2: Acceptance criteria for surface imperfections of aluminium and Table 13. 8. 3: Acceptance criteria for internal imperfections of aluminium.

Table 13. 8. 2: Acceptance criteria for surface imperfections of aluminium

Surface discontinuity	Classification according to ISO 6520-1	Acceptance criteria
Crack	100	Not permitted
Lack of fusion	401	Not permitted
Incomplete root penetration in butt joints welded from one side	4021	Not permitted
Surface pore	2017	$d \leq 0.3s$ or $0.3a$ or 1.5 mm (whichever is the lesser)
Linear porosity (*See* Note 1)	2014	Not permitted
Uniformly distributed porosity (*See* Note 2)	2018	≤ 1% of area
Clustered porosity	2013	Not permitted
Continuous undercut	5011	$h \leq 0.1t$ or 0.5 mm (whichever is the lesser)
Intermittent undercut	5012	$h \leq 0.1t$ or 1.0 mm (whichever is the lesser)
Excess weld metal (*See* Note 3)	502	$h \leq 1.5$ mm + $0.15b$ or 8 mm (whichever is the lesser)
Excess penetration	504	$h \leq 4$ mm

Root concavity (*See* Note 3)	515	$h \leq 0.1t$ or 1 mm (whichever is the lesser)
Linear misalignment (*See* Notes 4 and 5)	507	$h \leq 0.1t$ or 1.0 mm (whichever is the lesser)
Angular misalignment	508	(*See* Note 6)

Symbols

a = nominal throat thickness of a fillet weld

b = width of weld reinforcement

d = diameter of a gas pore

h = height or width of an imperfection

s = nominal butt weld thickness

t = wall or plate thickness (nominal size)

Note *1.* For these acceptance criteria, linear porosity is to be considered as three aligned gas pores in a length of 25 mm.

Note *2.* To be in accordance with EN ISO 10042.

Note *3.* A smooth transition is required.

Note *4.* Linear misalignment is to be a maximum of 0.5 mm in highly stressed areas. For other areas, the linear misalignment is to be a maximum of 1.0 mm locally, where the sum of the length of imperfection is not more than 10% of the weld length.

Note *5.* The limits for linear misalignment relate to deviations from the correct position. Unless otherwise specified, the correct position is that when the centrelines coincide.

Note *6.* Angular misalignment shall be mutually agreed between the designer and the fabricator.

Table 13. 8. 3: Acceptance criteria for internal imperfections of aluminium

Internal discontinuity	Classification according to ISO 6520-1	Acceptance criteria (*See* Note 1)
Crack	100	Not permitted
Lack of fusion	401	Not permitted
Incomplete penetration	402	Not permitted
Single gas pore	2017	$d \leq 0.3s$ or $0.3a$ or 5 mm (whichever is the lesser)
Linear porosity	2014	Assess as lack of fusion
Uniformly distributed porosity (*See* Note 1)	2021	$0.5 < t < 3$ mm ≤ 2% of area $3 < t < 12$ mm ≤ 4% of area $12 < t < 30$ mm ≤ 6% of area $t > 30$ mm ≤ 8% of area
Clustered porosity (*See* Note 1)	2013	$dA \leq 20$ mm or wp (whichever is the lesser)

Elongated cavity	2015	$l \leq 0.3s$ or $0.3a$ or 4 mm (whichever is the lesser)
Wormhole	2016	
Oxide inclusion (*See* Note 2)	303	$l \leq 0.5s$ or $0.5a$ or 5 mm (whichever is the lesser)
Tungsten inclusion	3041	$l \leq 0.3s$ or $0.3a$ or 4 mm (whichever is the lesser)
Copper inclusion	3042	Not permitted
Multiple imperfections in any cross-section	—	The sum of the acceptable individual imperfections in any cross-section is not to exceed $0.3t$ or $0.3a$ (whichever is the lesser)

Symbols

a = nominal throat thickness of a fillet weld

b = width of weld reinforcement

d = diameter of a gas pore

h = height or width of an imperfection

s = nominal butt weld thickness

t = wall or plate thickness (nominal size)

wp = width of weld or width or height of cross-sectional area

dA = diameter of area surrounding gas pores

l = length of imperfection in longitudinal direction of weld

Note *1*. Porosity is to be determined in accordance with ISO 10042. The requirements for a single gas pore are to be met by all the gas pores within this circle. Systematic clustered porosity is not permitted.

Note *2*. If several oxide inclusions $l1$, $l2$, $l3$, ... exist in one cross-section, then they are summed: $l = l1+l2+l3+...+l_n$.

8. 4. 2 Alternative NDE acceptance criteria will be subject to special consideration provided that they are equivalent to these requirements.

PART

2

CHAPTER **13 Requirements for Welded Construction**

SECTION **9 Friction stir welding requirements for aluminium alloys**

9. 1 Scope

9. 1. 1 The requirements of this Section apply to the application of FSW during construction.

9. 1. 2 Prior to welding, the friction stir welding equipment is to have been demonstrated as being suitable for use.

9. 1. 3 Qualified welding procedures that have been approved by ACS are required. Procedures to ISO 25239-4 that are endorsed by another Classification Society may be accepted if they are to the satisfaction of the attending Surveyor.

9. 1. 4 Welding operators are to be qualified to ISO 25239-3 standard. Where qualifications have been certified by another Classification Society, acceptance of the qualifications will be subject to document review and demonstration of knowledge of the FSW process and function of the FSW installation.

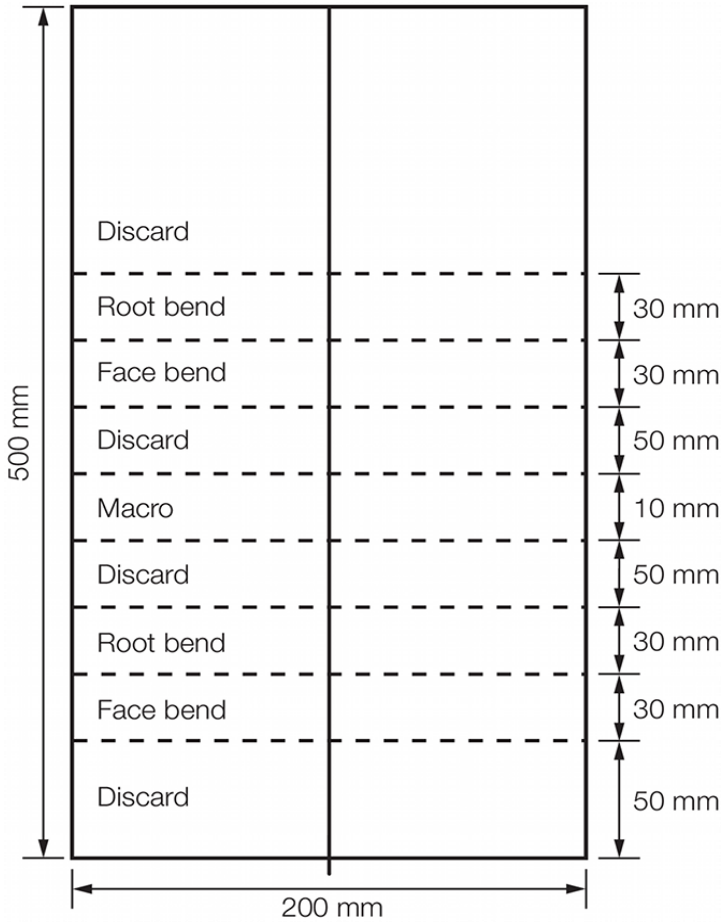
9. 2 Production quality control

9. 2. 1 The general requirements for quality control are specified in ISO 25239-5.

9. 2. 2 Unless otherwise specified in relevant parts of the Rules, the following production tests will be required.

9. 2. 3 production test is required when there is a change in procedure, a change in tooling, after equipment repairs or modifications, after deviation from optimum parameters are detected, when defects are identified by non-destructive testing, after continuous welding of every 100 m length during a single shift and with a maximum interval between procedure tests of 8 hours. For butt welds the production tests are to consist of 100 per cent visual examination, two face bend tests, two root bend tests and one macro section. For thicknesses exceeding 12 mm, sets of face and bend tests may be replaced by side bend tests. For test assembly, *See* Figure 13. 9. 1: Production test assembly for Friction Stir Welds. The production tests for other joint geometry are to be agreed between the Surveyor and the fabricator.

Figure 13. 9. 1: Production test assembly for Friction Stir Welds



9. 2. 4 As an automated process, all essential variables are to be recorded by the FSW system. The welding operator is responsible for ensuring that the system continues to produce welds that are in compliance with the qualified procedure. Surveyors are to be informed when the system exceeds the operating parameters. Surveyors are periodically to review the welding records.

9. 2. 5 Production welds are to be subject to 100 per cent visual examination by the fabricator and be subject to random checking by the Surveyor.

9. 2. 6 Surface and volumetric NDE testing is to be conducted on production welds at a frequency of two per welded panel or one every 100 m of weld, whichever is the greater.

9. 2. 7 Assessment of imperfections is to be in accordance with ISO 25239-5 Annex A and the requirements of Table 13. 8. 3: Acceptance criteria for internal imperfections of aluminium.

9. 3 Repair

9. 3. 1 All defective welds are to be reported to the Surveyor.

9. 3. 2 The manufacturer is to have an approved procedure for the repair of defective welds.

9. 3. 3 Weld repairs are to be conducted by qualified welders or welding operators in accordance with qualified weld procedures. Welding procedures and welders/operators are to be qualified in accordance with the requirements of Ch 12 Welding Qualifications as appropriate to the welding process used for the weld repair.

9. 3. 4 All repairs are to be subject to 100 per cent visual, surface and volumetric NDE.

PART

2

CHAPTER **14** **Plastics Materials and other Non-Metallic Materials**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General requirements**		**782**
	1. 1	Scope	782
	1. 2	Information on material quality and application	783
	1. 3	Manufacture	783
	1. 4	Survey procedure	783
	1. 5	Alternative survey procedure	783
	1. 6	Post-cure heating	784
	1. 7	Test material	784
	1. 8	Re-test procedure	784
	1. 9	Visual and non-destructive examination	784
	1. 10	Rectification of defective material	785
	1. 11	Identification of products and base materials	785
	1. 12	Certification	785
SECTION 2	**Tests on polymers, resins, reinforcements and associated materials**		**786**
	2. 1	Scope	786
	2. 2	Thermoplastic polymers	786
	2. 3	Thermosetting resins	787
	2. 4	Reinforcements	788
	2. 5	Reinforced thermoplastic polymers	790
	2. 6	Reinforced thermosetting resins	791
	2. 7	Core materials	791
	2. 8	Specific requirements for end-grain balsa	791
	2. 9	Specific requirements for rigid foams (PVC, Polyurethane and other types)	792
	2. 10	Synthetic felt type materials with or without microspheres	792
	2. 11	Machinery chocking compounds (resin chocks)	793

2. 12 Rudder and pintle bearings 793
2. 13 Sterntube bearings 794
2. 14 Plywoods 794
2. 15 Adhesive and sealant materials 794
2. 16 Repair compounds 794
SECTION 3 Testing procedures 796
3. 1 General 796
3. 2 Preparation of test samples 796
3. 3 Preparation of test specimens 797
3. 4 Testing 797
3. 5 Discarding of test specimens 797
3. 6 Reporting of results 797
3. 7 Tests for specific materials 797
3. 8 Structural core materials 799
3. 9 Machinery chocking compounds 800
3. 10 Rudder and pintle bearings 801
3. 11 Sterntube bearings 802
SECTION 4 Plastic pipes and fittings 803
4. 1 Scope 803
4. 2 Design requirements 803
4. 3 Manufacture 804
4. 4 Quality assurance 804
4. 5 Dimensional tolerances 804
4. 6 Composition 805
4. 7 Testing 805
4. 8 Visual examination 807
4. 9 Hydraulic test 807
4. 10 Repair procedure 807
4. 11 Identification 807
4. 12 Certification 807
SECTION 5 Control of material quality for composite construction 808
5. 1 Scope 808
5. 2 Design submission 808
5. 3 Construction 808
5. 4 Quality assurance 809
5. 5 Dimensional tolerances 809

5. 6 Material composition 809
5. 7 Material testing 809
5. 8 Visual examination 811
5. 9 Repair procedure 811
5. 10 Material identification 812
5. 11 Minimum tested requirements for material approval 812
5. 12 Closed cell foams for core construction based on PVC or polyurethane 814
5. 13 End-grain balsa 815
5. 14 Synthetic chocking compounds 815
5. 15 Other materials 815

PART

2

CHAPTER 14 **Plastics Materials and other Non-Metallic Materials**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 14. 2. 1: Data requirements for thermosetting resins 787
Table 14. 2. 2: Glass fraction by weight for different reinforcement types 789
Table 14. 2. 3: Content by volume for different reinforcement types 789
Table 14. 2. 4: Fibre orientations in reinforced test specimens 790
Table 14. 3. 1: Tests for unreinforced thermoplastic resins 798
Table 14. 3. 2: Tests on unreinforced cast thermoset resin specimens 798
Table 14. 3. 3: Tests on laminate specimens 798
Table 14. 3. 4: Tests on end-grain balsa 800
Table 14. 3. 5: Tests for machinery chocking components 801
Table 14. 4. 1: Testing during manufacture of pipes 806
Table 14. 5. 1: Tests during construction 811
Table 14. 5. 2: Gel coat resins, minimum property values 812
Table 14. 5. 3: Laminating resins, minimum property values 812
Table 14. 5. 4: Laminating resins, minimum values for properties for CSM laminate at 0.3 glass fraction by weight 813
Table 14. 5. 5: Laminates, minimum property requirements 813
Table 14. 5. 6: Minimum characteristics and mechanical properties of rigid expanded foams at 20°C 814
Table 14. 5. 7: Minimum characteristics and mechanical properties of end-grain balsa 815

PART

2

CHAPTER **14** **Plastics Materials and other Non-Metallic Materials**

SECTION **1** **General requirements**

1. 1 Scope

1. 1. 1 Provision is made in this Chapter for the manufacture and testing of plastic pipes, together with approval requirements for base materials used in the construction or repair of composite vessels, other marine structures, piping and any associated machinery components and fittings which are to be certified or are intended for classification.

1. 1. 2 These materials and products are to be manufactured and surveyed in accordance with the general requirements of Ch 14, 1 General requirements, Ch 14, 2 Tests on polymers, resins, reinforcements and associated materials and Ch 14, 3 Testing procedures of this Chapter; and ACS's *Materials and Qualification Procedures for Ships (MQPS) Book K*, *See* Ch 1, 2.2 ACS Approval – General 2.2.2, which, in addition to the test programme, also details the procedures for application for approval of manufacturers and products and details of the information to be supplied by the manufacturer.

1. 1. 3 For base materials, the manufacturer's works do not require approval by Asia Classification Society (hereinafter referred as 'ACS'), however the Quality Control procedures must be acceptable in accordance with the appropriate Section of this Chapter.

1. 1. 4 Where a requirement exists for the material to be approved, the test requirements and information to be submitted for approval of polymers, resins, reinforcements and associated materials are defined in Ch 14, 2 Tests on polymers, resins, reinforcements and associated materials and Ch 14, 3 Testing procedures.

1. 1. 5 Specific material requirements relating to the design and manufacture of plastic pipes and fittings are indicated in Ch 14, 4 Plastic pipes and fittings, with the material requirements for hull structures contained in Ch 14, 5 Control of material quality for composite construction.

1. 1. 6 For Builders constructing composite vessels, Ch 14, 5 Control of material quality for composite construction provides the minimum material control requirements for acceptance of the works by ACS.

1. 1. 7 For the purposes of these Rules a 'plastics material' is regarded as an organic substance which may be thermosetting or thermoplastic and which, in its finished state, may contain reinforcements or additives.

1. 1. 8 Materials not listed in Ch 14, 2.1 Scope 2.1.1 may be considered for approval on a case-by-case basis. The approved test results will be listed on the issued certificate. Subject to satisfactory service experience and validation of approval, the material may be entered in Ch 14, 2.1 Scope 2.1.1 of the Rules.

1. 2 Information on material quality and application

1. 2. 1 Where plastics products are to be classed or certified, the manufacturer is to provide the material producer with such information as is essential to ensure that the base materials to be used are in accordance with the approval requirements and the product specification. This information is to include any survey requirements for the materials.

1. 3 Manufacture

1. 3. 1 Plastics products are to be made at works which have been approved (or accepted) for the type of product being supplied using base materials that have been approved.

1. 3. 2 Base materials are to be approved in accordance with the requirements of Ch 14, 2 Tests on polymers, resins, reinforcements and associated materials and Ch 14, 3 Testing procedures.

1. 3. 3 In order that a works can be approved (or accepted), the manufacturer is required to demonstrate to the satisfaction of ACS that the necessary manufacturing and testing facilities are available and are supervised by qualified personnel. A specified programme of tests is to be carried out under the supervision of the Surveyors, and the results are to be to the satisfaction of ACS. When a manufacturer has more than one works, the approval (or acceptance) is only valid for the individual works which carried out the test programme.

1. 3. 4 In order to maintain approval, the manufacturer is required to confirm in writing that there have been no changes in the formulation or production process for the material in question and that the site of manufacture remains unchanged.

1. 4 Survey procedure

1. 4. 1 The Surveyors are to be allowed access to all relevant parts of the works and are to be provided with the necessary facilities and information to enable them to verify that manufacture is being carried out in accordance with the approved procedure. Facilities are also to be provided for the selection of test material, the witnessing of specified tests and the examination of materials, as required by the Rules.

1. 4. 2 Prior to the provision of test material for acceptance, manufacturers are to provide the Surveyors with details of the order, specification and any special conditions additional to the Rule requirements.

1. 4. 3 Before final acceptance, all test materials are to be confirmed as typical of the manufactured product and be submitted to the specified tests and examinations under conditions acceptable to the Surveyors. The results are to comply with the specification and any Rule requirements and are to be to the satisfaction of the Surveyors.

1. 4. 4 These specified tests and examinations are to be carried out prior to the despatch of finished products from the manufacturer's works.

1. 4. 5 In the event of any material proving unsatisfactory, during subsequent working, machining or fabrication, it is to be rejected, notwithstanding any previous certification.

1. 5 Alternative survey procedure

1. 5. 1 Where materials are manufactured in quantity by semi-continuous or continuous processes under closely controlled conditions, an alternative system for testing and inspection may be adopted, subject to the agreement of the Surveyors.

1. 5. 2 In order to be considered for approval, manufacturers are to comply with the requirements of Ch 1, 2, Approval and survey requirements.

1. 6 Post-cure heating

1. 6. 1 Post-cure heating is to be carried out in properly constructed ovens which are efficiently maintained and have adequate means for control and recording of temperature. The oven is to be such as to allow the whole item to be uniformly heated to the necessary temperature. In the case of very large components which require post-cure heating, alternative methods will be specially considered.

1. 7 Test material

1. 7. 1 Sufficient material is to be provided for the preparation of the test specimens detailed in the specific requirements. It is, however, in the interests of manufacturers to provide additional material for any re-tests which may be necessary, as insufficient or unacceptable test material may be a cause for rejection.

1. 7. 2 Where test materials, (either base materials or product sample materials) are selected by the Surveyor or a person nominated by ACS, these are to be suitably identified by markings which are to be maintained during the preparation of the test specimens.

1. 7. 3 All base material samples for testing are to be prepared under conditions that are as close as possible to those under which the product is to be manufactured. Where this is not possible, a suitable procedure is to be agreed with the Surveyor.

1. 7. 4 During production, check test samples are to be provided as requested by the Surveyor.

1. 7. 5 Should the taking of these samples prove impossible, model samples are to be prepared concurrently with production. The procedure for the preparation of these samples is to be agreed with the Surveyor.

1. 7. 6 The dimensions, number and orientation of test specimens are to be in accordance with the requirements of a National or International Standard acceptable to ACS.

1. 8 Re-test procedure

1. 8. 1 Where test material fails to meet the specified requirement, two additional tests of the same type may be made at the discretion of the Surveyor.

1. 8. 2 Where an individual test result in a group (minimum five) deviates from the mean by more than two standard deviations in either the higher or lower direction, the result is to be excluded and a re-test made. Excluded results of tests are to be reported with confirmation that they have been excluded. Only one exclusion is acceptable in any group of tests.

1. 9 Visual and non-destructive examination

1. 9. 1 Prior to the final acceptance, surface inspection, verification of dimensions and non-destructive examination are to be carried out in accordance with the requirements detailed in Ch 14, 3 Testing procedures, Ch 14, 4 Plastic pipes and fittings and Ch 14, 5 Control of material quality for composite construction of this Chapter.

1. 9. 2 When there is visible evidence to doubt the soundness of any material or component, such as flaws or suspicious surface marks, it is to be the responsibility of the manufacturer to prove the quality of the material by any suitable method.

1. 10 Rectification of defective material

1. 10. 1 Small surface blemishes may be removed by mechanical means provided that, after such treatment, the dimensions are acceptable, the area is proved free from structural defects and the rectification has been completed to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

1. 10. 2 Repair procedures for larger defects are to be agreed with ACS prior to implementation.

1. 11 Identification of products and base materials

1. 11. 1 The manufacturer of approved materials is to identify each batch with a unique number.

1. 11. 2 The manufacturer of plastics products is to adopt a system of identification which will enable all finished products to be traced to the original batches of base materials. Surveyors are to be given full facilities for tracing any component or material when required.

1. 11. 3 When any item has been identified by the personal mark of a Surveyor, or deputy, this is not to be removed until an acceptable new identification mark has been made by a Surveyor. Failure to comply with this condition will render the item liable to rejection.

1. 11. 4 Before any pipe or fitting is finally accepted it is to be clearly marked by the manufacturer in at least one place with the particulars detailed in the appropriate specific requirements as given in Ch 14, 4 Plastic pipes and fittings.

1. 11. 5 Where a number of identical items are securely fastened together in bundles, the manufacturer need only brand the top item of each bundle. Alternatively, a durable label giving the required particulars may be attached to each bundle.

1. 12 Certification

1. 12. 1 Certification of the finished product is to be in accordance with the requirements of the appropriate Sections.

PART

2

CHAPTER **14** **Plastics Materials and other Non-Metallic Materials**

SECTION **2** **Tests on polymers, resins, reinforcements and associated materials**

2. 1 Scope

2. 1. 1 This Section gives the tests and data required by ACS for materials approval and/or inspection purposes on the following:

a. Thermoplastic polymers.
b. Thermosetting resins.
c. Reinforcements.
d. Reinforced thermoplastic polymers.
e. Reinforced thermosetting resins.
f. Core materials.
   i. End-grain balsa.
   ii. Rigid foams.
   iii. Synthetic felt type materials.
g. Machinery chocking compounds.
h. Rudder and pintle bearings.
i. Sterntube bearings.
j. Plywoods.
k. Adhesive and sealant materials.
l. Repair compounds.

2. 2 Thermoplastic polymers

2. 2. 1 The following data is to be provided by the manufacturer for each thermoplastic polymer:

a. Melting point.
b. Melt flow index.
c. Density.
d. Bulk density.
e. Filler content, where applicable.
f. Pigment content, where applicable.
g. Colour.

2. 2. 2 Samples for testing are to be prepared by moulding or extrusion under the polymer manufacturer's recommended conditions.

a. The following tests are to be carried out on these samples:
b. Tensile stress at yield and break.

c. Modulus of elasticity in tension.
d. Tensile strain at yield and break.
e. Compressive stress at yield and break.
f. Compressive modulus.
g. Temperature of deflection under load.
h. Determination of water absorption.

2. 2. 3 The following tests are to be carried out on these samples:

a. Tensile stress at yield and break.
b. Modulus of elasticity in tension.
c. Tensile strain at yield and break.
d. Compressive stress at yield and break.
e. Compressive modulus.
f. Temperature of deflection under load.
g. Determination of water absorption.

2. 3 Thermosetting resins

2. 3. 1 The data listed in Table 14. 2. 1: Data requirements for thermosetting resins is to be provided by the manufacturer for each thermosetting resin.

Table 14. 2. 1: Data requirements for thermosetting resins

Data	Type of resin		
	Polyester (*See* Note 3 for vinylester)	Epoxide	Phenolic
Specific gravity of liquid resin	required	required	required
Viscosity	required	required	required
Gel time	required	required	not applicable
Appearance	required	required	required
Mineral content (*See* Note 1)	required	required	not applicable (*See* Note 2)
Volatile content	required	not applicable	not applicable
Acid value	required	not applicable	not applicable
Epoxide content	not applicable	required	not applicable
Free phenol	not applicable	not applicable	required
Free formaldehyde	not applicable	not applicable	required

Note *1.* This is to be the total filler in the system, including thixotrope, filler, pigments, etc. and is to be expressed in parts by weight per hundred parts of pure resin.

Note *2.* If the resin is pre-filled, the mineral content is required.

Note *3.* Vinylesters are to be treated as equivalent to polyesters.

2. 3. 2 Cast samples are to be prepared in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and are to be cured and post-cured in a manner consistent with the intended use. The curing system used and the ratio of curing agent (or catalyst) to resin are to be recorded. Where post-cure conditions

equivalent to ambient-cure conditions apply, *See* Ch 14, 3.2 Preparation of test samples 3.2.2 and Ch 14, 3.2 Preparation of test samples 3.2.3.

2. 3. 3 The following are to be determined using these samples:

a. Tensile strength (stress at maximum load) and stress at break.
b. Tensile strain at maximum load.
c. Tensile secant modulus at 0.5 per cent and 0.25 per cent strain respectively.
d. Temperature of deflection under load.
e. Barcol hardness.
f. Determination of water absorption.
g. Volume shrinkage after cure.
h. Specific gravity of cast resin.

2. 3. 4 In addition, for gel coat resins the stress at break and modulus of elasticity in flexure are to be determined.

2. 3. 5 Where resins which have been modified by the addition of waxes or polymers, for example 'low styrene emission or air inhibited' materials, it is to be confirmed that the use of such resins will not result in poor interlaminar adhesion when interruptions to the laminating process occur. The test procedure is to be as follows:

a. A conventional room temperature curing catalyst/ accelerator system is to be used with the resin for laminate preparation.
b. A laminate of 25 to 35 per cent glass content in mass is to be prepared using two plies of 450g/m^2 chopped strand mat. The laminate is to be prepared at ambient temperature (18° to 21°C). The laminate is to be allowed to stand for a minimum of four days but no longer than 6 days at ambient temperature.
c. A further two plies of 450g/m^2 chopped strand mat are to be laminated onto the exposed surface and cured at ambient temperature for 24 hours. The finished laminate is then to be post-cured at 40°C for 16 hours. The finished laminate is to have a glass content of 25 to 35 per cent.
d. After cooling, the apparent interlaminar shear strength of the laminate is to be determined in accordance with ISO 14130; the minimum value is given in Ch 14, 5.11 Minimum tested requirements for material approval 5.11.4. Before testing the samples shall be conditioned at 23°C and relative humidity of 50 per cent for a period of 88 hours before testing.
e. If the tests are undertaken at the resin manufacturer's own laboratory, the individual test values are to be reported and the broken test specimens retained for examination by ACS.

Alternative test procedures will be considered with prior agreement.

2. 4 Reinforcements

2. 4. 1 The following data is to be provided, where applicable, for each type of reinforcement:

a. Reinforcement type.
b. Fibre type for each direction.
c. Fibre tex value.
d. Fibre finish and/or treatment.
e. Yarn count in each direction.
f. Width of manufactured reinforcement.
g. Weight per unit area of manufactured reinforcement.
h. Weight per linear metre of manufactured reinforcement.
i. Compatibility (e.g. suitable for polyesters, epoxides, etc.).
j. Constructional stitching – details of yarn, specific gravity, type, frequency and direction.
k. Weave type.
l. Binder type and content.

m. Density of the fibre material.

2. 4. 2 Tests of the mechanical properties are to be made on laminate samples containing the reinforcement and prepared as follows:

a. an approved resin of suitable type is to be used;
b. a minimum of three layers of the reinforcement is to be laid with parallel ply to give a laminate not less than 4 mm thick;
c. the weights of resin and reinforcement used are to be recorded together with the measured thickness of the laminate, including the measured weight per unit area of the reinforcement used;
d. for glass reinforcements, the glass/resin ratios, by weight, as shown in Table 14. 2. 2: Glass fraction by weight for different reinforcement types are to be used;
e. for reinforcement type other than glass, a fibre volume fraction, as shown in Table 14. 2. 3: Content by volume for different reinforcement types, is to be used.

Table 14. 2. 2: Glass fraction by weight for different reinforcement types

Reinforcement type	Glass fraction nominal values
Unidirectional	0.60
Chopped strand mat	0.30
Woven roving	0.50
Woven cloth	0.50
Composite roving (*See* Note)	0.45
Gun rovings	0.33
±45° stitched parallel plied roving	0.50
Triaxial parallel plied roving	0.50
Quadriaxial parallel plied roving	0.50
Note Continuous fibre reinforcement with attached chopped strand mat.	

2. 4. 3 Rovings intended for filament winding are to be tested as unidirectional rovings.

Table 14. 2. 3: Content by volume for different reinforcement types

Reinforcement type	Content by volume nominal values
Unidirectional	0.41
Chopped strand mat	0.17
Woven roving	0.32
Woven cloth	0.32
Composite roving (*See* Note)	0.28
Gun rovings	0.19
±45° stitched parallel plied roving	0.32

Triaxial parallel plied roving	0.32
Quadriaxial parallel plied roving	0.32

Note The volume content may be converted to weight fractions by use of the formula:

$$W_F = V_F D_F / (D_F V_F + D_R V_R)$$

where

- W_F = fibre fraction by weight
- D_F = density of fibre
- D_R = density of cured resin

V_F = fibre fraction by volume

V_R = resin fraction by volume

2. 4. 4 The following tests as defined in Ch 14, 3 Testing procedures are to be made on the samples:

a. Tensile strength (stress at maximum load).
b. Tensile strain at break.
c. Tensile secant modulus at 0.5 per cent and 0.25 per cent strain respectively.
d. Compressive strength (stress at maximum load).
e. Compressive modulus.
f. Flexural strength (stress at maximum load).
g. Modulus of elasticity in flexure.
h. Apparent interlaminar shear.
i. Fibre content.
j. Determination of water absorption.

2. 4. 5 The laminate is to be tested in air in the directions indicated by Table 14. 2. 4: Fibre orientations in reinforced test specimens.

Table 14. 2. 4: Fibre orientations in reinforced test specimens

Type of reinforcement	Test orientations
Unidirectional	0°
Chopped strand mat Gun roving	any direction
Woven roving Woven cloth Composite roving	0° and 90°
± 45° parallel plied roving Triaxial plied roving Quadriaxial plied roving	0°, 45°, 90° and -45°

2. 4. 6 Additionally, tests in Ch 14, 2.4 Reinforcements 2.4.4(c) and (f) are to be repeated, in one direction only, after immersion in fresh water at 35°C for 28 days with the exception of Ch 14, 2.4 Reinforcements 2.4.4.j.

2. 5 Reinforced thermoplastic polymers

2. 5. 1 Thermoplastic polymers intended for use with reinforcements are to be tested in accordance with Ch 14, 2.2 Thermoplastic polymers 2.2.1 to Ch 14, 2.2 Thermoplastic polymers 2.2.3.

2. 5. 2 A laminate is to be prepared using the polymer and an approved reinforcement in accordance with a manufacturing specification. The laminate is to be tested in accordance with the appropriate requirements of Ch 14, 2.4 Reinforcements 2.4.4. Testing may be confined to one direction only.

2. 6 Reinforced thermosetting resins

2. 6. 1 Thermosetting resins intended for use with reinforcements are to be tested in accordance with Ch 14, 2.3 Thermosetting resins 2.3.1 to Ch 14, 2.3 Thermosetting resins 2.3.4.

2. 6. 2 No further tests are required for gel coat resins.

2. 6. 3 For laminating resins, a laminate is to be prepared using the resin and an approved reinforcement as follows:

a. For polyester resins, chopped strand mat.
b. For epoxide resins, a balanced woven roving.
c. For phenolic resins, a balanced woven material.

2. 6. 4 The laminate is to be tested in accordance with procedures outlined in MQPS Book K procedure 14-1 and Ch 14, 2.4 Reinforcements 2.4.4 in one fibre direction only.

2. 7 Core materials

2. 7. 1 **General requirements**. The following data is to be provided for each type of core material:

a. Type of material.
b. Density.
c. Description (block, scrim mounted, grooved).
d. Thickness and tolerance.
e. Sheet/block dimensions.
f. Surface treatment.

2. 7. 2 Manufacturers are required to provide a full application procedure for use of the product.

2. 8 Specific requirements for end-grain balsa

2. 8. 1 The supplier is to provide a signed statement that the balsa (ochroma lozopus) is cut to end-grain, is of good quality, being free from unsound or loose knots, holes, splits, rot, pith and corcho, and that it has been treated against fungal and insect attack, shortly after felling, followed by homogenisation, sterilisation and kiln drying to an average moisture content of no more than 12 per cent.

2. 8. 2 The following tests are to be carried out on the virgin material, both parallel to and perpendicular to the grain:

a. Compressive strength (stress at maximum load).
b. Compressive modulus of elasticity.
c. Tensile strength (stress at maximum load).

The density of the virgin material is also to be tested.

2. 8. 3 Where the balsa is mounted on a carrier material (e.g. scrim), any adhesive used is to be of a type compatible with the proposed resin system.

2. 8. 4 Core shear properties are to be determined according to the requirements of Ch 14, 3.8 Structural core materials 3.8.1.

2. 9 Specific requirements for rigid foams (PVC, Polyurethane and other types)

2. 9. 1 The foam is to be of the closed cell type and compatible with the proposed resin system (e.g. polyester, epoxide etc.).

2. 9. 2 Foams are to be of uniform cell structure.

2. 9. 3 Data is to be provided on the dimensional stability of the foam by measurement of the shrinkage.

2. 9. 4 The following test data is to be submitted for each type of foam:

a. Density.
b. Tensile strength (stress at maximum load).
c. Tensile modulus of elasticity.
d. Compressive strength (stress at maximum load).
e. Compressive modulus of elasticity.

2. 9. 5 Core shear properties are to be determined according to the requirements of Ch 14, 3.8 Structural core materials 3.8.1.

2. 9. 6 Additionally, the compressive properties (*See* Ch 14, 2.9 Specific requirements for rigid foams (PVC, Polyurethane and other types) 2.9.4.d and Ch 14, 2.9 Specific requirements for rigid foams (PVC, Polyurethane and other types) 2.9.4.e) are to be determined at a minimum of five points over the temperature range ambient to maximum recommended service or 70°C, whichever is the greater.

2. 10 Synthetic felt type materials with or without microspheres

2. 10. 1 For materials of this type, the following data is required in addition to the requirements of Ch 14, 2.7 Core materials 2.7.1:

a. Fibre type.
b. Width.
c. Width of finished material.
d. Weight per unit area of the manufactured material.
e. Weight per linear metre of the manufactured material.
f. Compatibility.
g. Details of the method of combining.

2. 10. 2 A laminate of the material is to be prepared using a suitable approved resin under conditions recommended by the manufacturer.

2. 10. 3 The following properties are to be determined:

a. Tensile strength (stress at maximum load).
b. Tensile strain at break.
c. Modulus of elasticity in tension or secant modulus at 0.25 per cent and 0.5 per cent strain.
d. Compressive strength (stress at maximum load).
e. Compressive modulus.
f. Flexural strength (stress at maximum load).
g. Modulus of elasticity in flexure.
h. Fibre content.
i. Water absorption.

2. 10. 4 In the case of anisotropic materials (e.g. where combined with other reinforcements) the tests listed in Ch 14, 2.10 Synthetic felt type materials with or without microspheres 2.10.3 are to be conducted in the 0°, 90° directions and in any other reinforcement direction.

2. 10. 5 Additionally, the tests listed in Ch 14, 2.10 Synthetic felt type materials with or without microspheres 2.10.3 are to be repeated after immersion in fresh water at 35°C for 28 days. For anisotropic materials, the requirement is for this test to be carried out in one direction only.

2. 10. 6 The shear properties (of the resin filled system) are to be determined according to Ch 14, 3.8 Structural core materials 3.8.1.

2. 11 Machinery chocking compounds (resin chocks)

2. 11. 1 Thermosetting materials for filling the space between the base of machinery and its foundation where the maintenance of accurate alignment is necessary are to be approved by ACS before use.

2. 11. 2 Approval will be considered by ACS for use under the following service conditions:

- Loading of 3.5 N/mm^2 (max) for a temperature not exceeding 60°C.
- Loading of 2.5 N/mm^2 (max) for a temperature not exceeding 80°C.
- Other loading conditions.

2. 11. 3 The exotherm temperature, defined as the maximum temperature achieved by the reacting resin under conditions equivalent to those of intended use, is to be determined according to a procedure approved by ACS.

2. 11. 4 The following properties are to be determined on chock material cured at the measured exotherm temperature:

a. The impact resistance (Izod).
b. Hardness.
c. Compressive strength (stress at maximum load) and modulus of elasticity.
d. Water absorption.
e. Oil absorption.
f. Heat deflection temperature.
g. Compressive creep is to be measured according to Ch 14, 3.9 Machinery chocking compounds 3.9.4.
h. Curing linear shrinkage.
i. Flammability.

2. 11. 5 The chocking compound approval is contingent on the material achieving the minimum exotherm value as specified when used on an installation under practical conditions.

2. 11. 6 Where the resin chock is to be used for installation of sterntubes and sternbushes in addition to the requirements of Ch 14, 2.11 Machinery chocking compounds (resin chocks) 2.11.4, the tensile strength and modulus of elasticity in tension are to be measured.

2. 11. 7 The manufacturer's installation procedure is required to be documented and is to be to the satisfaction of ACS.

2. 11. 8 Resin chock materials are to be tested in accordance with Ch 14, 3.9, Machinery chocking compounds and are to meet the requirements of Ch 14, 5.14, Synthetic chocking compounds.

2. 12 Rudder and pintle bearings

2. 12. 1 Materials used for rudder and pintle bearings are to be approved by ACS before use.

2. 12. 2 Initial approval is to be based on a review of the following physical properties of the material:

a. Compressive strength (stress at maximum load) and modulus of elasticity.
b. Tensile strength (stress at maximum load) and modulus of elasticity.
c. Shear strength (stress at maximum load).
d. Impact strength.

e. Swelling in oil and in water.
f. Hardness.

2. 12. 3 Additionally, friction data is to be provided under both wet and dry conditions.

2. 12. 4 Furthermore, the installation instructions (especially recommended clearances) are to be reviewed by ACS prior to provisional approval being given.

2. 12. 5 If the above data is satisfactory, the material will be provisionally approved until sufficient service experience has been gained.

2. 13 Sterntube bearings

2. 13. 1 Materials used for sterntube bearings are to be approved by ACS before use.

2. 13. 2 Approval is to be based on a review of the physical properties as given by Ch 14, 2.12 Rudder and pintle bearings 2.12.2.

2. 13. 3 Friction data is to be provided under the lubrication system(s) proposed for the material(s).

2. 14 Plywoods

2. 14. 1 All plywoods are to be approved to BS 1088 or equivalent National or International Standard in accordance with ACS's Type Approval Procedure.

2. 14. 2 For structural applications in the marine environment, a minimum timber rating of moderate durability according to BS 1088-1 and BS 1088-2 is required.

2. 14. 3 Enhancement of durability by use of preservatives is permitted, subject to each veneer layer being treated with a recognised preservative.

2. 14. 4 Where Okoume, as specified by BS 1088 is involved, (i.e. non-durable timber classification) this may only be used for marine structures subject to the specific application being acceptable to ACS.

2. 15 Adhesive and sealant materials

2. 15. 1 Materials of these types are to be accepted by ACS before use.

2. 15. 2 The requirements for acceptance are dependent on the nature of the application.

2. 15. 3 In the first instance, the manufacturer is to submit full details of the product, procedure for method of use (including surface preparation) and the intended application. After review of these details, ACS will provide a specific test schedule for confirmation of the material's properties.

2. 15. 4 Any acceptance granted will be limited to specific applications and will be contingent on the instructions for use being adhered to.

2. 16 Repair compounds

2. 16. 1 Materials used for repairs are to be accepted by ACS before use.

2. 16. 2 For acceptance purposes, the manufacturer is to submit full product details and user instructions, listing the types of repair for which the system is to be used together with details of any installer accreditation schemes.

2. 16. 3 Dependent on the proposed uses, ACS may require testing in accordance with a specified test programme.

2. 16. 4 Materials will not be accepted for the following uses unless specific evidence of their suitability is provided:

a. Any component in rubbing contact.
b. Any component subject to dynamic cyclic loading.
c. Any pressure part in contact with gas or vapour.
d. Any pressure part in contact with liquid above 0.35 MPa.
e. Any component where operating temperature exceeds 90°C.

All uses of materials of these types are subject to the discretion of the Surveyor.

PART

2

CHAPTER **14** **Plastics Materials and other Non-Metallic Materials**

SECTION **3** **Testing procedures**

3. 1 General

3. 1. 1 This Section gives details of the test methods to be used for base materials and on finished plastics products such as fibre reinforced plastics (FRP) piping and any testing required in the construction of composite vessels.

3. 1. 2 In general, testing is to be carried out by a competent independent test house which, at the discretion of ACS, may or may not require witnessing by the Surveyor.

3. 1. 3 Alternatively, testing may be carried out by the manufacturer subject to these tests being witnessed by the Surveyor.

3. 1. 4 All testing is to be carried out by competent personnel.

3. 1. 5 Unless specified otherwise, testing is to be carried out in accordance with a recognised ISO standard, where one exists, and all test programmes are to have written procedures.

3. 1. 6 Alternatively, testing may be carried out in accordance with a National Standard provided that it conforms closely to an appropriate ISO standard and subject to prior agreement with the Surveyor.

3. 1. 7 Mechanical properties are to be established using suitable testing machines of approved types. The machines and other test equipment are to be maintained in a satisfactory and accurate condition and are to be recalibrated at approximately annual intervals. Calibration is to be undertaken by a nationally recognised authority or other organisation of standing and is to be to the satisfaction of the Surveyor. A record of all calibrations is to be kept available in the test house. The accuracy of test machines is to be within ± one per cent.

3. 2 Preparation of test samples

3. 2. 1 Thermoplastic samples are to be prepared in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations for moulding. For finished products, samples are to be taken from the product during production in accordance with the manufacturer's quality plan, but where this is impractical, separate test samples are to be prepared in a manner identical with that of the product.

3. 2. 2 Samples of thermosetting resins are to be prepared using the curing system recommended by the manufacturer and identical with that used for the finished product.

3. 2. 3 The post curing conditions for samples of thermosetting resins are to be as recommended by the manufacturer and identical with those used for the finished product. Where the samples are made for the general approval of a resin, the post curing conditions are to be those in which the resin is intended to be used.

3. 2. 4 Where curing of the product is intended to take place at room temperature, the sample is to be allowed to cure at room temperature (18 to 21°C) for 24 hours followed by a post-cure at 40°C for 16 hours.

3. 2. 5 Where a reinforcement is to be used, the ratio of reinforcement to resin or polymer is to be nominally the same as that of the finished product or in accordance with Table 14. 2. 2: Glass fraction by weight for different reinforcement types or Table 14. 2. 3: Content by volume for different reinforcement types.

3. 2. 6 Where laminates are prepared specifically for approval test purposes, the reinforcement is to be laid parallel plied.

3. 3 Preparation of test specimens

3. 3. 1 The test specimen is to be prepared in accordance with the appropriate ISO standard and the requirements of this Section.

3. 3. 2 Precautions are to be taken during machining to ensure that the temperature rise in the specimen is kept to a minimum.

3. 4 Testing

3. 4. 1 Strain measurement is to be made by the use of a suitable extensometer or strain gauge.

3. 4. 2 The rate of strain is to be in accordance with the appropriate ISO standard.

3. 4. 3 The number of test specimens from each sample to be tested is to be in accordance with the ISO standard. For mechanical testing this is five.

3. 5 Discarding of test specimens

3. 5. 1 If a test specimen fails because of faulty preparation or incorrect operation of the testing machine, it is to be discarded and replaced by a new specimen.

3. 5. 2 In addition, if the deviation of one result in a group of five exceeds the mean by more than two standard deviations, that result is to be discarded and one further specimen tested, *See* Ch 14, 1.8 Re-test procedure 1.8.1 and Ch 14, 1.8 Re-test procedure 1.8.2.

3. 6 Reporting of results

3. 6. 1 All load/displacement graphs and tabulated results are to be reported, including mean values and the calculated standard deviation.

3. 6. 2 Additionally, full details of the sample and specimen preparation are to be provided including (where applicable):

a. Catalyst/accelerator or curing agent types and mix ratio.
b. Weights of resins, and/or reinforcements used.
c. Casting/laminate dimensions.
d. Number of layers of reinforcement used.
e. Curing/post-curing conditions.

3. 7 Tests for specific materials

3. 7. 1 The data requirements in Ch 14, 2.2, Thermoplastic polymers and Ch 14, 2.3, Thermosetting resins for thermoplastic or thermosetting resins or polymers are to be determined in accordance with suitable National or International Standards.

3. 7. 2 Recognised Standards to which specimens of unreinforced thermoplastic resins are to be tested are listed in Table 14. 3. 1: Tests for unreinforced thermoplastic resins.

Table 14. 3. 1: Tests for unreinforced thermoplastic resins

Test	Standard	
Tensile properties	ISO 527-2	Test speed=5mm/min Specimen 1A or 1B
Flexural properties	ISO 178	Test speed = $\frac{Thickness}{2}$ mm/min
Water absorption	ISO 62	Method 1
Temperature of deflection under load	ISO 75-2	Method A
Compressive properties	ISO 604	Test speed - as for ductile materials
Note *1.* Water absorption - result to be expressed as milligrams. **Note** *2.* Tensile modulus values are to be determined using an extensometer which may be removed for strain to failure.		

3. 7. 3 Test standards for unreinforced cast thermosetting resins are given in Table 14. 3. 2: Tests on unreinforced cast thermoset resin specimens.

Table 14. 3. 2: Tests on unreinforced cast thermoset resin specimens

Test	Standard	
Tensile properties	ISO 527-2	Test speed = 5 mm/min Specimen 1A or 1B
Flexural properties	ISO 178	Test speed = $\frac{Thickness}{2}$mm/min
Water absorption	ISO 62	Method 1
Temperature of deflection under load	ISO 75-2	Method A
Compressive properties	ISO 604	Test speed = 1 mm/min
Note *1.* ISO 62:2008 - where resins are intended for use under ambient conditions to avoid additional post-curing, the requirement in ISO 62:2008 for pre-drying the test specimen at 50°C is to be omitted. The test result is to be expressed as mg of water. **Note** *2.* ISO 527-2:1993 - tensile properties are to be measured using extensometry.		

3. 7. 4 The Standards to which laminate specimens of any type are to be tested are listed in Table 14. 3. 3: Tests on laminate specimens.

Table 14. 3. 3: Tests on laminate specimens

Test	Standard	
Tensile properties	ISO 527-4	Test speed = 2 mm/min Specimen types II or III
Flexural properties	ISO 14125	Test speed = $\frac{Thickness}{2}$mm/min

		Method A
Compressive properties	ISO 604	Test speed = 1 mm/min
Interlaminar shear	ISO 14130	
Water absorption	ISO 62	Method 1
Glass content	ISO 1172	

Note *1.* ISO 62:2008 - where resins are intended for use under ambient conditions to avoid additional post-curing, the requirement in ISO 62:2008 for pre-drying the test specimen at 50°C is to be omitted. The test result is to be expressed as mg of water.

Note *2.* ISO 527-4:1997 - tensile properties are to be measured using extensometry.

Note *3.* Tensile modulus values are to be determined using an extensometer which may be removed for strain to failure.

3. 8 Structural core materials

3. 8. 1 Initially, the core shear strength and modulus are to be determined by ISO 1922 or ASTM C273/C273M. Test sandwich panels are then to be prepared and subjected to four-point flexural tests to determine the apparent shear properties according to ASTM C393/C393M (short beam) at two representative thicknesses (i.e. 15 mm and 30 mm). Testing is to be carried out at ambient temperature and at 70°C. The following requirements are to be observed:

a. Each skin is to be identical and have a thickness not greater than 21 per cent of the nominal core thickness. For hand laid constructions, each skin is to comprise a lightweight chopped strand mat reinforcement (300 g/m^2) consolidated at a glass content, by weight, of 0.3 against the core, plus the required number of woven reinforcements consolidated, using an isophthalic polyester resin, to give a minimum glass content, by weight, of 0.5.

b. The method of construction of the sandwich laminate is to reflect the core material manufacturer's instructions for use, i.e. application of bonding paste, surface primer or any other recommended system.

c. Where vacuum bagging techniques or equivalent systems are used, these will be subject to individual consideration.

d. All resins and reinforcements are to hold current ACS approval.

e. Curing conditions are to be in accordance with Ch 14, 3.2 Preparation of test samples 3.2.3 and Ch 14, 3.2 Preparation of test samples 3.2.4.

f. The dimensions of the test samples should be based on the requirements of ASTM C393 Paragraph 5.1, and the ratio parameters as indicated in ASTM C393 Paragraph 5.2, using a proportional limit stress (F) for the woven roving skins of 130 N/mm^2 and a span (a_2) of not less than 400 mm.

3. 8. 2 For each type of test sample, the following data are to be reported, together with the submission of a representative test sample showing the mode of failure for each density of core material:

a. Skin and core thickness, and core type and density.

b. Resin/catalyst/accelerator ratio.

c. Skin construction, including types and weight of reinforcements, resin(s), etc.

d. Details of production method and curing conditions (temperature and times).

e. Where additional preparation of the foam is involved, for example the use of primers or bonding pastes, full details are to be provided.

f. Actual span between base supports for each type of test sample.

3. 8. 3 The following requirements apply to end-grain balsa:

a. The data requirements of Ch 14, 2.7 Core materials 2.7.1 are to be provided, where applicable, according to suitable National or International Standards.

b. The balsa is to be tested according to the requirements of Ch 14, 3.8 Structural core materials 3.8.1.

c. The test methods for balsa are given in Table 14. 3. 4: Tests on end-grain balsa.

Table 14. 3. 4: Tests on end-grain balsa

Test	Standard
Density	ISO 845
Tensile properties	ASTM C297/C297M
	Test speed $=\frac{Thickness}{10}$ mm/min
Compressive properties	ISO 844
	Test speed $=\frac{Thickness}{10}$ mm/min
Shear properties	ISO 1922 Test speed = 1 mm/min

3. 8. 4 The following requirements apply to rigid foams:

a. The data requirements of Ch 14, 2.7 Core materials 2.7.1 are to be provided in accordance with a suitable National or International Standard.

b. The foam is to be tested according to the requirements of Ch 14, 3.8 Structural core materials 3.8.1.

c. The test methods for rigid foams are to be in accordance with Table 14. 3. 4: Tests on end-grain balsa.

3. 8. 5 The following requirements apply to synthetic felt type materials:

a. The data requirements of Ch 14, 2.10 Synthetic felt type materials with or without microspheres 2.10.1 are to be provided according to suitable National or International Standards.

b. The material is to be tested according to the requirements of Ch 14, 3.8 Structural core materials 3.8.1, with the following modifications:

i. The core of the laminate test sandwich panel is to be prepared with a fibre content as recommended by the manufacturer.

ii. The felt fibre/resin ratio is to be stated.

iii. The required test thicknesses of the cores are to be changed from 30 mm and 15 mm to 12 mm and 6 mm respectively.

c. The prepared laminate of the base material is to be of minimum thickness 3.5 mm with a minimum of three layers.

d. The specified tests on the laminate (*See* Ch 14, 2.10 Synthetic felt type materials with or without microspheres 2.10.3) are to be conducted according to the requirements of Table 14. 3. 3: Tests on laminate specimens.

3. 9 Machinery chocking compounds

3. 9. 1 Test samples of the cured chock resin are to be prepared under ambient conditions and then post-cured at the exotherm temperature as determined in Ch 14, 2.11 Machinery chocking compounds (resin chocks) 2.11.3.

3. 9. 2 The specified properties are to be determined as required by Table 14. 3. 5: Tests for machinery chocking components.

Table 14. 3. 5: Tests for machinery chocking components

Test	Standard
Izod Impact Resistance	ISO 180 Unnotched
Barcol hardness	ASTM D2583 or BS EN 59
Compressive strength	ISO 604
	Test speed = 1 mm/min
Water absorption	ISO 62 Method 1
	25 mm x 20 mm cylinder
	(to constant weight)
Oil absorption (light machine)	ISO 175
	25 mm x 20 mm cylinder
	(to constant weight)
Temperature of deflection under load	ISO 75-2 Method A

3. 9. 3 The percentage linear shrinkage of cured material is to be measured.

3. 9. 4 Creep is to be measured according to the following method:

a. A 25 mm x 20 mm diameter parallel faced cylinder is to be pre-loaded against a steel base at 2.5 N/mm^2 or 3.5 N/mm^2, or at the specified higher loading condition, at ambient temperature for 16 hours.
b. The temperature is to be increased at the rate of 8°C per hour until the service temperature (60°C or 80°C) is reached.
c. During this time, the creep of the cylinder is to be measured at 15 minute intervals.
d. The temperature and loading are to be maintained for a minimum of 100 days measuring the creep at intervals of 24 hours.
e. A plot of creep in mm (linear scale) against time (log scale), together with full experimental details, is to be provided for review by ACS.

3. 10 Rudder and pintle bearings

3. 10. 1 All mechanical properties as required by Ch 14, 2.12, Rudder and pintle bearings are to be measured according to suitable National or International Standards.

3. 10. 2 Frictional properties are to be determined according to a method agreed with ACS.

3. 11 Sterntube bearings

3. 11. 1 The requirements for sterntube bearings are as defined in Ch 14, 2.13 Sterntube bearings.

PART

2

CHAPTER **14** **Plastics Materials and other Non-Metallic Materials**

SECTION **4** **Plastic pipes and fittings**

4. 1 Scope

4. 1. 1 This Section gives the general requirements for plastic pipes and fittings, with or without reinforcement, intended for use in the services listed in the relevant Rules dealing with design and construction. Hoses and mechanical couplings are not covered by these requirements.

4. 1. 2 Pipes and fittings intended for application in Class I, Class II and Class III systems for which there are Rule requirements, are to be manufactured in accordance with the requirements of Ch 14, 1 General requirements and this Section.

4. 1. 3 As an alternative to Ch 14, 4.1 Scope 4.1.2, plastic pipes and fittings which comply with National or proprietary specifications may be accepted, provided that the specifications give reasonable equivalence to the requirements of this Section or, alternatively, are approved for a specific application. The survey and certification are however to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of this Section.

4. 2 Design requirements

4. 2. 1 The requirements for design approval are detailed in the relevant Rules.

4. 2. 2 The design submission is to include a materials list with confirmation that the materials listed have properties and characteristics conforming with those values used in the design submission. As a minimum, the details given should include the following:

a. Resin.
b. Accelerator (type and concentration).
c. Catalyst or curing agent (type and concentration).
d. Reinforcement.
e. Cure/post-cure conditions.
f. Resin/reinforcement ratio.
g. Wind angle (or lay-up sequence) and orientation.
h. Dimensions and tolerances.

This submission is to include similar details for the fittings together with a description of the method of attachment of the fittings to the pipes.

4. 2. 3 Any alteration of the component materials or manufacturing operations from those used in the design submission will necessitate a completely new submission.

4. 2. 4 If the piping manufacturer anticipates the possible use of alternative materials, these should be listed in the design submission. Proof that the modified product will meet the specified requirements will be needed prior to its use.

4. 3 Manufacture

4. 3. 1 Plastic pipes and fittings intended for use in Class I, Class II and Class III systems are to be manufactured at facilities approved by ACS, using materials approved by ACS.

4. 3. 2 A Manufacturing Specification is to be submitted. This is to contain details of the following:

a. All constituent materials.
b. Manufacturing procedures such as lay-up sequence or wind angle, the ratios of curing agent to resin and reinforcement to resin, the laminate thickness, the mandrel dwell time (initial cure) and the cure and post-cure conditions.
c. Quality control procedures including details and frequency of tests on the incoming materials, tests made during production and on the finished piping.
d. Acceptance standards and tolerances, including all dimensions.
e. Procedures for cosmetic repair.
f. System for traceability of the finished piping to the batches of raw materials.
g. Method of bonding pipes and fittings.

4. 3. 3 Details of all raw materials are to be submitted for approval and are to be in accordance with the Manufacturing Specification and the design submission.

4. 3. 4 All batches of raw materials are to be provided with unique identifications by their manufacturers.

4. 3. 5 No batch of material is to be used later than its date of expiry.

4. 3. 6 The piping manufacturer is to ensure that all batches of materials are used sequentially.

4. 3. 7 The piping manufacturer is to maintain records of the amounts of resin and reinforcement used, in order to ensure that the proportions remain within the limits set in the Manufacturing Specification.

4. 3. 8 Records are to be kept of the wind angle and/or the orientation of the reinforcement.

4. 3. 9 The piping manufacturer is to ensure that each item of piping is traceable to the batch or batches of material used in its manufacture. The unique identifications referred to in Ch 14, 4.3 Manufacture 4.3.4 are to be included on all documents.

4. 3. 10 The curing oven is to be suitable for the intended purpose and all pyrometric equipment is to be calibrated at least annually and adequate records maintained.

4. 3. 11 The temperature of the pipe or fitting is to be controlled and recorded by the attachment of suitably placed thermocouples.

4. 4 Quality assurance

4. 4. 1 The piping manufacturer is to have a quality assurance system approved to ISO 9001 or equivalent. This system should ensure that the pipes and fittings are produced with uniform and consistent mechanical and physical properties in accordance with acceptable standards.

4. 5 Dimensional tolerances

4. 5. 1 Dimensions and tolerances are to conform to the Manufacturing Specification.

4. 5. 2 The wall thicknesses of the pipes are to be measured at intervals around the circumference and along the length in accordance with an appropriate National Standard. The thicknesses are to accord with the Manufacturing Specification.

4. 5. 3 The responsibility for maintaining the required tolerances and making the necessary measurements rests with the manufacturer. Occasional checking by the Surveyor does not absolve the manufacturer from this responsibility.

4. 6 Composition

4. 6. 1 The composition of the pipes and fittings is to be in accordance with the Manufacturing Specification.

4. 6. 2 Where alternative materials are used (*See* Ch 14, 4.2 Design requirements 4.2.4), the manufacturer is to demonstrate to the Surveyor's satisfaction, and prior to their introduction, their suitability with respect to the performance of the piping. Otherwise, full testing as specified in Ch 14, 4.7, Testing will be required.

4. 7 Testing

4. 7. 1 For thermoplastic pipes, the polymer manufacturer is to make the following measurements on samples taken from each batch:

a. Melting point.
b. Melt flow index.
c. Density.
d. Filler/pigment content, where applicable.
e. Tensile stress at yield and break.
f. Tensile strain at yield and break.

4. 7. 2 The values obtained are to be certified by the polymer manufacturer.

4. 7. 3 For reinforced thermoset pipes, the resin manufacturer is to determine, on samples taken from each batch, at least the following:

a. All resins:
   i. Viscosity.
   ii. Gel time.
   iii. Filler content, where applicable.
b. Polyester resins:
   i. Type (orthophthalic, isophthalic, etc.).
   ii. Volatiles content.
   iii. Acid value.
c. Epoxide resins:
   i. Free epoxide content.
d. Phenolic resins:
   i. Free phenol content.
   ii. Free formaldehyde content.

4. 7. 4 The values obtained are to comply with the requirements of the Manufacturing Specification.

4. 7. 5 Where the resin manufacturer mixes batches, both the original batches and the mixed batch are to be tested in accordance with Ch 14, 4.7 Testing 4.7.1 to Ch 14, 4.7 Testing 4.7.3 as appropriate. The mixed batch is then to be given a unique batch number.

4. 7. 6 The polymer or resin manufacturer is to demonstrate that each batch of polymer or resin satisfies the requirement for temperature of deflection under load and this is not to be less than 80°C.

4. 7. 7 These measurements should be repeated on each batch by the piping manufacturer. Where this is not done, ACS may require that the tests be made on a random basis by an independent laboratory.

4. 7. 8 The piping manufacturer is to confirm, by means of tests on at least one batch in twenty, that the temperature of deflection under load exceeds the specified minimum under manufacturing conditions.

4. 7. 9 Where reinforcements are used, at least the following are to be recorded, where applicable:

a. Tex of yarn(s) or roving(s).

b. Ends per 100 mm in all reinforcement orientations.
c. Weight per square metre.
d. Binder/size content.
e. Stitch type and count.
f. Type of fibre used.
g. Surface treatment and/or finish.

4. 7. 10 All items in Ch 14, 4.7 Testing 4.7.9 are to comply with the Manufacturing Specification.

4. 7. 11 The piping manufacturer is to maintain accurate records of resin and glass usage and is to calculate the resin/glass ratio on an ongoing basis.

4. 7. 12 During manufacture of the piping, apart from the requirements of Ch 14, 4.7 Testing 4.7.5, Ch 14, 4.7 Testing 4.7.6 and Ch 14, 4.7 Testing 4.7.8, tests are to be carried out on the constituents and final product in accordance with Table 14. 4. 1: Testing during manufacture of pipes.

Table 14. 4. 1: Testing during manufacture of pipes

Component/ operation	Characteristic	Rate of testing
Resin/curing	Gel time	Two per shift
agent/catalyst	Rate of consumption	Continuous
Reinforcement	Quality	Continuous
	Wind angle	Continuous
	Rate of consumption	Continuous
Resin/reinforcement	Ratio	Continuous
Pipe	Post-cure:	
	temperature of the pipe in oven	Continuous
	Cure level	At least eight per length
	Dimensions	Each length
	Hydraulic pressure test	Each length
	Electrical resistance	Each length (*See* Note)
	Hydraulic bursting test	At Surveyor's discretion
	Axial strength	At Surveyor's discretion

Note Measurements of electrical resistance are only required on piping where the operating conditions given in Pt 5, Ch 12, 5.2 Design and performance criteria 5.2.4 of the *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships* apply.

4. 7. 13 The standards of acceptance are those listed in the Manufacturing Specification approved by ACS.

4. 7. 14 At the Surveyor's discretion, sections of pipe are to be subjected to hydraulic bursting tests and/or measurements of axial strength.

4. 7. 15 If the batch of resin or polymer, or the curing agent, or their ratio is changed during manufacture of a batch of pipes, at least two additional measurements of the gel time are to be carried out during each shift.

4. 8 Visual examination

4. 8. 1 All pipes and fittings are to be visually examined and are to be free from surface defects and blemishes.

4. 8. 2 The pipes are to be reasonably straight and the cut ends are to be square to the axis of the pipe.

4. 9 Hydraulic test

4. 9. 1 Each length of pipe is to be tested at a hydrostatic pressure not less than 1.5 times the rated pressure of the pipe.

4. 9. 2 The test pressure is to be maintained for sufficient time to permit proof and inspection. Unless otherwise agreed, the manufacturer's certificate of satisfactory hydraulic test, endorsed by the Surveyor, will be accepted.

4. 10 Repair procedure

4. 10. 1 Repairs are not allowed, with the exception of minor cosmetic blemishes as detailed in Ch 14, 1.10 Rectification of defective material 1.10.1.

4. 10. 2 A repair procedure for these minor blemishes is to be included in the Manufacturing Specification.

4. 11 Identification

4. 11. 1 All piping is to be identified in such a manner that traceability to all the component materials used in its manufacture is ensured. The Surveyor is to be given full facilities for so tracing the material when required.

4. 11. 2 Pipes and fittings are to be permanently marked by the manufacturer by moulding, hot stamping or by any other suitable method, such as printing, in accordance with Ch 14, 1.11, Identification of products and base materials. The markings are to include:

a. Identification number, *See* Ch 14, 4.11 Identification 4.11.1.
b. ACS or Asia Classification Society, and the abbreviated name of ACS 's.
c. Manufacturer's name or trademark.
d. Pressure rating.
e. Design standard.
f. Material system with which the piping is made.
g. Maximum service temperature.

4. 12 Certification

4. 12. 1 The manufacturer is to provide the Surveyor with copies of the test certificates or shipping statements for all material which has been accepted.

4. 12. 2 Each test certificate is to contain the following particulars:

a. Purchaser's name and order number.
b. If known, the contract number for which the piping is intended.
c. Address to which piping is despatched.
d. Type and specification of material.
e. Description and dimensions.
f. Identification number, *See* Ch 14, 4.11 Identification 4.11.1.
g. Test results.

PART

2

CHAPTER 14 **Plastics Materials and other Non-Metallic Materials**

SECTION 5 **Control of material quality for composite construction**

5. 1 Scope

5. 1. 1 This Section gives the general requirements for control of material quality when used in the construction of composite craft.

5. 1. 2 For composite craft built under the Rules, the survey of materials is to be conducted in accordance with the requirements of Ch 14, 1 General requirements to Ch 14, 3 Testing procedures and this Section.

5. 2 Design submission

5. 2. 1 The requirements for design submission are detailed in the appropriate Part of the Rules which includes full information on composite materials.

5. 3 Construction

5. 3. 1 All constructions are to be carried out using materials approved or accepted by ACS.

5. 3. 2 All materials are to be in accordance with the approved construction documentation.

5. 3. 3 All batches of materials are to be provided with unique identifications by their manufacturers. Components are to be similarly identified.

5. 3. 4 No batch of material is to be used later than its date of expiry.

5. 3. 5 The Builder is to ensure that all batches of materials are used systematically and sequentially.

5. 3. 6 The Builder is to maintain, on a continuous basis, records of the amounts of resin and reinforcement used, in order to ensure that the proportions remain within the limits set in the construction documentation.

5. 3. 7 Records are to be kept of the sequence and orientation of the reinforcements.

5. 3. 8 The Builder is to ensure that each section of the construction is traceable to the batch or batches of material used. The unique identifications required under Ch 14, 1.11 Identification of products and base materials 1.11.1 are to be included on all relevant quality control documentation.

5. 3. 9 Any curing system used is to be demonstrated as suitable for the intended purpose and all pyrometric equipment is to be calibrated at least annually and adequate records maintained.

5. 3. 10 The post-curing temperature is to be controlled and recorded by the attachment of suitably placed thermocouples.

5. 4 Quality assurance

5. 4. 1 Where the Builder has a quality assurance system, this is to include the requirements of this Section.

5. 5 Dimensional tolerances

5. 5. 1 Dimensions and tolerances are to conform to the approved construction documentation.

5. 5. 2 The thicknesses of the laminates are, in general, to be measured at not less than ten points, evenly distributed across the surface. In the case of large sections, at least ten evenly distributed measurements are to be taken in bands across the width at maximum spacing of two metres along the length.

5. 5. 3 The responsibility for maintaining the required tolerances and making the necessary measurements rests with the Builder. Monitoring and random checking by the Surveyor does not absolve the Builder from this responsibility.

5. 5. 4 Where ultrasonic thickness gauges are used, these are to be calibrated against an identical laminate (of measured thickness) to that on which the thickness measurement is to be carried out. If suitable pieces are not available from the construction, then a small sample of identical lay-up is to be prepared.

5. 6 Material composition

5. 6. 1 The materials, prefabricated sections or components used are to be in accordance with the approved construction documentation.

5. 6. 2 Where alternative materials are used, these are to be of approved or accepted types and the manufacturer is to demonstrate to the Surveyor's satisfaction, prior to their introduction, their suitability with respect to performance, otherwise full testing as appropriate will be required.

5. 7 Material testing

5. 7. 1 Where so required, the material manufacturer is to provide the purchaser with certificates of conformity for each batch of material supplied, indicating the relevant values specified in Ch 14, 5.7 Material testing 5.7.4 to Ch 14, 5.7 Material testing 5.7.8. These values are to comply with those specified by the approved construction documentation.

5. 7. 2 Where the Builders do not conduct verification testing of the information indicated in Ch 14, 5.7 Material testing 5.7.4 to Ch 14, 5.7 Material testing 5.7.8, they are to ensure that copies of all certificates of conformity (which must indicate the actual tested values) are obtained for all batches of materials received, and maintain accurate records. The Surveyor may at any time select a sample of a material for testing by an independent, where applicable, source and should such tests result in the material failing to meet the specification, then that batch will be rejected.

5. 7. 3 The following tests are to be carried out, where applicable, on receipt of any material:

a. The consignment is to be divided into its respective batches and each batch is to be labelled accordingly.
b. Each batch is to be visually examined for conformity with the batch number, visual quality and date of expiry.
c. Each batch is to be separately labelled and stored separately.
d. Each unit, within the batch, is to be labelled with the batch number.
e. Records are to be maintained of the above and these are to be cross-referenced with the certificate of conformity for the material and/or the Builder's own test results.

5. 7. 4 For thermosetting resins, reinforced or otherwise, the resin manufacturer is to have determined, on samples taken from each batch, at least the following:

a. All resins:
   i. Viscosity.
   ii. Gel time.
   iii. Filler content, where applicable.
b. Polyester and vinylester resins:
   i. Type (orthophthalic, isophthalic, etc.).
   ii. Volatiles content.
   iii. Acid value.
c. Epoxide resins:
   i. Free epoxide content.
d. Phenolic resins:
   i. Free phenol content.
   ii. Free formaldehyde content.

5. 7. 5 For thermoplastics, the polymer manufacturer is to have made the following measurements on samples taken from each batch:

a. Melting point.
b. Melt flow index.
c. Density.
d. Filler/pigment content, where applicable.
e. Tensile stress at yield and break.
f. Tensile strain at yield and break.

5. 7. 6 Where the resin or polymer manufacturer mixes batches, both the original batches and the mixed batch are to be tested in accordance with Ch 14, 5.7 Material testing 5.7.4 or Ch 14, 5.7 Material testing 5.7.5 as appropriate. The mixed batch is then to be given a unique batch number.

5. 7. 7 For reinforcements, the material manufacturer is to have recorded, where applicable, the following for each batch of material:

a. Tex of yarn(s) or roving(s).
b. Ends per 100 mm in all reinforcement orientations.
c. Weight per square metre.
d. Binder/size content.
e. Stitch type and count.
f. Type of fibre used.
g. Surface treatment and/or finish.

5. 7. 8 For core materials, the following properties are to be recorded by the manufacturer for each batch:

a. Type of material.
b. Density.
c. Description (block, scrim mounted, grooved).
d. Thickness and tolerance.
e. Sheet/block dimensions.
f. Surface treatment.

Together with the following mechanical properties:

In the case of rigid foams:

a. Compressive strength (stress at maximum load) and modulus of elasticity.
g. Core shear strength.

In the case of end-grain balsa:

a. Tensile strength (stress at maximum load).
h. Compressive strength (stress at maximum load) and modulus of elasticity.

5. 7. 9 During construction, tests are to be carried out on the constituents and final product in accordance with Table 14. 5. 1: Tests during construction.

5. 7. 10 The standards of acceptance for testing are those listed in the material manufacturer's specification, approved construction documentation or agreed quality control procedures as applicable.

5. 7. 11 Laminate fibre content is to be determined at the request of the Surveyor, in particular where the thickness measured does not correlate with the specified fibre content, by weight. This will, in general, result in additional reinforcement being required.

5. 7. 12 If the batch of resin or polymer, or the curing agent, or their ratio is changed, at least two additional measurements of the gel time are to be carried out during each shift.

Table 14. 5. 1: Tests during construction

Component/operation	Characteristic	Rate of testing
Resin/curing agent/catalyst	Gel time	Two per shift
	Rate of consumption	Continuous
Reinforcement	Quality	Continuous
	Orientation	Continuous
	Rate of consumption	Continuous
Resin/reinforcement	Ratio	Continuous
Construction	Temperature during cure/post cure	Continuous
	Dimensions	Continuous against approved construction documentation
	Cure level (Barcol) against resin manufacturer's specification	At least one per square metre
	Laminate thickness	Continuous against material usage and approved construction documentation (*See also* Ch 14, 5.5 Dimensional tolerances 5.5.2
	Laminate fibre content	At the Surveyor's request (*See* Ch 14, 5.7 Material testing 5.7.11)

5. 8 Visual examination

5. 8. 1 All constructional mouldings and any components are to be visually examined and are to be free from surface defects and blemishes.

5. 9 Repair procedure

5. 9. 1 Repairs of minor cosmetic blemishes are permitted providing that these are brought to the attention of the Surveyor.

5. 9. 2 A repair procedure for these minor blemishes is to be included in the agreed quality control procedures.

5. 9. 3 Structural repairs are subject to individual consideration and full written details must be approved by the plan approval office prior to introduction.

5. 10 Material identification

5. 10. 1 Records of the construction are to be kept in such a manner that traceability of all the component materials used is ensured. The Surveyor is to be given full facilities for tracing the material's origin when required.

5. 10. 2 Small representative samples of each batch of material are to be retained, these being suitably labelled to ensure tracebility.

5. 10. 3 When so requested by the Surveyor, the Builder is to provide copies of all test data and/or manufacturers' certificates of conformity appertaining to any material used.

5. 11 Minimum tested requirements for material approval

5. 11. 1 This Section provides the minimum property values required of a material for approval or acceptance by ACS and are applicable to materials cured under ambient conditions.

5. 11. 2 **Gel coat resins**. When the cast resin is tested according to the requirements of Ch 14, 2.3, Thermosetting resins, Table 14. 5. 2: Gel coat resins, minimum property values gives the minimum values for the respective properties.

Table 14. 5. 2: Gel coat resins, minimum property values

Properties	Minimum value
Tensile strength (stress at maximum load)	40 N/mm^2
Tensile stress at break	40 N/mm^2
Tensile strain at maximum load	2.5%
Modulus of elasticity in tension	As measured
Flexural strength (stress at maximum load)	80 N/mm^2
Modulus of elasticity in flexure	As measured
Barcol hardness	As measured at full cure
Water absorption	70 mg (max)

5. 11. 3 **Laminating resins**. When tested according to the requirements of Ch 14, 2.3, Thermosetting resins and Ch 14, 2.4, Reinforcements, Table 14. 5. 3: Laminating resins, minimum property values and Table 14. 5. 4: Laminating resins, minimum values for properties for CSM laminate at 0.3 glass fraction by weight give the minimum properties for the cast resin and chopped strand mat laminate respectively.

Table 14. 5. 3: Laminating resins, minimum property values

Properties	Minimum value
Tensile strength (stress at maximum load)	40 N/mm^2
Tensile stress at break	40 N/mm^2
Tensile strain at maximum load	2.0%

Modulus of elasticity in tension	As measured
Barcol hardness	As measured at full cure
Temperature of deflection under load	55°C
Note These minimum value are for the recommended glass content by weight of 0.3.	

Table 14. 5. 4: Laminating resins, minimum values for properties for CSM laminate at 0.3 glass fraction by weight

Properties	Minimum value
Tensile strength (stress at maximum load)	90 N/mm^2
Secant modulus at 0.25% and 0.5% strain respectively	6.9 kN/mm^2
Compressive strength (stress at maximum load)	125 N/mm^2
Compressive modulus	6.4 kN/mm^2
Flexural strength (stress at maximum load)	160 N/mm^2
Modulus of elasticity in flexure	5.7 kN/mm^2
Apparent interlaminar shear	18 N/mm^2
strength (*See* Note)	
Fibre content	As measured (0.3)
Water absorption	70 mg (max)
Note Applicable only to the special test for environmental control resins.	

5. 11. 4 When tested to the requirements of Ch 14, 2.4, Reinforcements for reinforcements, Table 14. 5. 5: Laminates, minimum property requirements gives the minimum properties for laminates.

Table 14. 5. 5: Laminates, minimum property requirements

Material type	Property	Value
Chopped strand mat	Tensile strength (stress at maximum load) (N/mm^2)	$200G_C + 30$
	Modulus of elasticity in tension (kN/mm^2)	$15G_C + 2.4$
Bi-directional reinforcement	Tensile strength (stress at maximum load) (N/mm^2)	$400G_C - 10$
	Modulus of elasticity in tension (kN/mm^2)	$30G_C - 0.5$
Uni-directional reinforcement	Tensile strength (stress at maximum load) (N/mm^2)	$1800G_C^2 - 1400G_C + 510$
	Modulus of elasticity in tension (kN/mm^2)	$130G_C^2 - 114G_C + 39$

Chopped strand mat	Flexural (stress at maximum load) (N/mm^2)	$502G_C^2 + 114.6$
	Modulus of elasticity in flexure (kN/mm^2)	$33.4G_A^2 + 2.7$
All	Flexural strength (stress at maximum load) (N/mm^2)	$502G_c{}^2 + 106.8$
	Modulus of elasticity in flexure (kN/mm^2)	$33.4Gc^2 + 2.2$
	Compressive strength (stress at maximum load) (N/mm^2)	$150G_C + 72$
	Compressive modulus (kN/mm^2)	$40G_C - 6$
	Interlaminar shear strength (N/mm^2)	$22 - 13.5G_C(\min 15)$
	Water absorption (mg)	70 (maximum)
	Glass content (% by weight)	As measured

Note *1.* After water immersion, the values shall be a minimum of 75% of the above.

Note *2.* Where materials have reinforcement in more than two directions, the requirement will be subject to individual consideration dependent on the construction.

Note *3.* G_C = glass fraction by weight.

5. 11. 5 Alternatively, materials may be approved by use of the actual tested values whereby the approval value shall equal the mean of the tested values minus twice the standard deviation of a minimum of five tested values.

5. 12 Closed cell foams for core construction based on PVC or polyurethane

5. 12. 1 Table 14. 5. 6: Minimum characteristics and mechanical properties of rigid expanded foams at 20°C gives minimum values for closed cell forms for core construction based on PVC or polyurethane.

Table 14. 5. 6: Minimum characteristics and mechanical properties of rigid expanded foams at 20°C

Material	Apparent density kg/m^3	Strength (stress at maximum load) (N/mm^2)			Modulus of elasticity (N/mm^2)	
		Tensile	Compressive	Shear	Compressive	Shear
Polyurethane	96	0.85	0.60	0.50	17.20	8.50
Polyvinylchloride	60					

5. 12. 2 Other types of foam will be subjected to individual consideration. A minimum core shear strength of 0.5 N/mm^2 is to be achieved.

5. 13 End-grain balsa

5. 13. 1 Table 14. 5. 7: Minimum characteristics and mechanical properties of end-grain balsa gives the minimum property requirement for end-grain balsa.

Table 14. 5. 7: Minimum characteristics and mechanical properties of end-grain balsa

Apparent density (kg/m^3)	Strength (stress at maximum load) (N/mm^2)					Compressive modulus of elasticity (N/mm^2)		Shear modulus of elasticity (N/mm^2)
	Compressive		Tensile		Shear			
	Direction of stress					Direction of stress		
	Parallel to grain	Perpendicular to grain	Parallel to grain	Perpendicular to grain		Parallel to grain	Perpendicular to grain	
96	5.0	0.35	9.00	0.44	1.10	2300	35.2	105
144	10.6	0.57	14.6	0.70	1.64	3900	67.8	129
176	12.8	0.68	20.5	0.80	2.00	5300	89.6	145

5. 14 Synthetic chocking compounds

5. 14. 1 After 1000 hours the chocking resin must be stabilised and maximum creep is to be less than or equal to 0.2 per cent.

5. 14. 2 Compliance with Ch 14, 5.14 Synthetic chocking compounds 5.14.1 is to be demonstrated at the time of chocking compound approval for a specified cure/post cure schedule. The Izod, barcol, compression, and water and oil absorption are additionally to be determined for the creep tested cure/post cure schedule.

5. 14. 3 Confirmation of creep, barcol and compression will be required for cure/post cure conditions which differ from those shown on the product approval certificate.

5. 15 Other materials

5. 15. 1 All other materials will be subject to special consideration.

PART

2

CHAPTER **15 Corrosion Prevention**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General Requirements**		**819**
	1. 1	Scope	819
SECTION 2	**Coatings**		**820**
	2. 1	General	820
	2. 2	Surface preparation	821
	2. 3	Pre-fabrication primers (Shop primers)	821
	2. 4	Seawater ballast tank coatings	821
	2. 5	Cargo oil tank coatings	822
	2. 6	Void space coatings	822
	2. 7	Bulk carrier cargo hold coatings	823
	2. 8	Other internal tanks	823
	2. 9	Coatings for external hulls	823
	2. 10	Anti-fouling coatings	824
	2. 11	Cargo tanks of product carriers or mixed-use tankers	824
	2. 12	Coating maintenance and repairs	824
	2. 13	Ice coatings	824
SECTION 3	**Corrosion Resistant Steels**		**825**
	3. 1	Performance standard and definition	825
	3. 2	Corrosion resistant steel approval	825
	3. 3	Certification	825
SECTION 4	**Cathodic Protection (CP)**		**826**
	4. 1	General principles	826
	4. 2	CP systems for the submerged zones of ships	827
	4. 3	Impressed Current Cathodic Protection (ICCP)	827
	4. 4	ICCP systems for aluminium hulls	828
	4. 5	Sacrificial anodes	829

4. 6 Hybrid or combined impressed current and sacrificial anode cathodic protection system 830
4. 7 Fixed potential monitoring systems 830
4. 8 Cathodic protection in tanks 830
4. 9 Surveys of electrical potential 831
4. 10 Replacing and retrofitting of sacrificial anodes 831

PART`

2

CHAPTER **15 Corrosion Prevention**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 15. 4. 1: Typical corrosion protection requirements for the hull steelwork 827

PART

2

CHAPTER **15 Corrosion Prevention**

SECTION **1 General Requirements**

1. 1 Scope

1. 1. 1 This Chapter specifies the requirements for the corrosion protection of ships and other marine structures. In general, suitable protective systems may include coatings, corrosion resistant materials, cathodic protection, corrosion allowances or other approved methods, either individually or in combination. Corrosion protection systems should be selected with consideration for the design life of the structure, and the in-service inspection and maintenance regimes.

1. 1. 2 The materials and processes described in this Chapter are to be considered in accordance with the requirements of the relevant design and construction Rules, as well as the *ACSPlus Guidelines Anti-Corrosion System Notation*. Where applicable, the requirements of current statutory legislation must be satisfied.

PART

2

CHAPTER **15 Corrosion Prevention**

SECTION **2 Coatings**

2. 1 General

2. 1. 1 The following plans and information regarding corrosion protection by the use of coatings are to be agreed between the shipyard and owner prior to construction, and, where required by subsequent sections, submitted to Class for review:

a. A copy of the Asia Classification Society approval certificate for pre-fabrication primer (shop-primer).

b. Details of the coating system. This is to include the paint specification with regard to:

i. The identity and generic type of the coating, and confirmation by the manufacturer of its suitability for the intended environment;

ii. The methods used to prepare the surface before the coating is applied, and the standards to be achieved, with reference to shipyard standards, or National or International Standards;

iii. The method of application of the coating in each area; and

iv. The number of coats to be applied, with the nominal total dry film thickness.

c. Details of the areas to be coated.

2. 1. 2 Paints or other coatings are to be confirmed as being suitable for their intended purpose in the locations where they are to be used. In areas not covered by the Regulations identified in the following Sections, this shall be demonstrated by the submission of the paint manufacturer's technical data sheet, together with appropriate in-service experience.

2. 1. 3 Coatings used in cargo oil tanks, cargo tank deck areas, pump rooms, cofferdams or any other area where flammable vapours may accumulate shall be coated using suitable coating systems. If the selected coatings for these spaces contain aluminium, it shall be present at less than 10 per cent by weight in the dry film.

2. 1. 4 Coatings utilised in areas such as accommodation or defined escape routes are required to comply with the appropriate Sections of the following SOLAS Regulations:

a. Areas defined as requiring low flame spread coatings shall be treated in accordance with SOLAS II-2, Regulation 5.

b. Areas defined as requiring low smoke and toxicity emission coatings shall be treated in accordance with SOLAS II-2, *Regulation 6*.

2. 1. 5 Coating manufacturers shall comply with the requirements of Ch 1, 2.1 Approval and survey requirements – General 2.1.5 regarding control of the manufacturing process.

2. 1. 6 The top coat of coating systems used in spaces subject to scheduled inspection should be light in colour to assist the Surveyor.

2. 2 Surface preparation

2. 2. 1 Coatings are to be applied in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, to surfaces prepared in accordance with the agreed coating application specification.

2. 2. 2 The surface treatment prior to coating application should be performed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, unless a mandatory minimum standard has been established for specified areas, such as in Sections Ch 15, 2.4,, Seawater ballast tank coatings and Ch 15, 2.5 Cargo oil tank coatings below.

2. 2. 3 Dust and surface contamination, such as oil or salt deposits, is to be removed, as far as is practicable, from the surface prior to the application of any paint. The cleanliness of the surface should be measured using appropriate shipyard, National or International standard methods, with the following properties assessed:

a. Residual salt levels.
b. Oil contamination.
c. Dust or other particulates.

2. 2. 4 Appropriate methods shall be used to remove, as far as practicable, surface contamination detected when assessing the surfaces. Selection of these methods shall consider the location of the surface to be cleaned, any applicable standards and any local environmental legislation.

2. 3 Pre-fabrication primers (Shop primers)

2. 3. 1 Where a pre-fabrication primer is used to coat steel after surface preparation and prior to fabrication, the composition of the coating is to be such that it will have no significant deleterious effect on subsequent welding work, and it is to be compatible with the coatings subsequently applied over it.

2. 3. 2 For Asia Classification Society classed vessels and structures the pre-fabrication primer shall be of an approved type. A list of pre-fabrication primers currently approved by ACS is available on Asia Classification Society website.

2. 3. 3 The full approval procedure is detailed in MQPS Book P, Procedure 19-5.

2. 4 Seawater ballast tank coatings

2. 4. 1 For ships that are required to comply with IMO *Resolution MSC.215(82) - Performance Standard for Protective Coatings for Dedicated Seawater Ballast Tanks in all Types of Ships and Double-Side Skin Spaces of Bulk Carriers - (Adopted on 8 December 2006)*, all dedicated seawater ballast tanks for all ship types and double-side skin spaces of bulk carriers are to have approved coating systems applied in accordance with the *ACSPlus Guidelines Anti-Corrosion Systems Notation*.

2. 4. 2 The procedure for coating system type approval is detailed in MQPS Book P, Procedure 19-3. A list of PSPC-compliant seawater ballast tank coating systems currently type approved by ACS is available on Asia Classification Society website.

2. 4. 3 The compliance of the vessel with the PSPC requirements is demonstrated by the formal acceptance of the Coating Technical File (CTF) and the issue of the vessel's SOLAS certificate. A copy of the accepted CTF shall be retained on the vessel. The appropriate Class notations will be assigned in accordance with the *ACSPlus Guidelines Anti-Corrosion System Notation*.

2. 4. 4 The CTF shall record all of the mandatory information required by the PSPC, including the paint schedule, primary surface preparation, pre-fabrication priming, secondary surface preparation, assessment of the surface condition, coating application, repairs and evidence of the resolution of any non-compliances. This data is to be recorded by a designated, appropriately qualified coatings inspector assigned by the ship builder.

2. 4. 5 Maintenance of PSPC-compliant coatings in accordance with the CTF is mandatory.

2. 4. 6 For ships that are not required to comply with IMO *Resolution MSC.215(82) - Performance Standard for Protective Coatings for Dedicated Seawater Ballast Tanks in all Types of Ships and Double-Side Skin Spaces of Bulk Carriers - (Adopted on 8 December 2006)*, all seawater ballast spaces having boundaries formed by the hull envelope are to have a corrosion protection coating applied, *See ACSPlus Guidelines Protective Coatings in Water Ballast Tanks (PCWBT)*.

2. 4. 7 Where requested, a Descriptive Note **PCWBT** will be entered in column six of the *Register Book* to indicate that all seawater ballast spaces having boundaries formed by the hull envelope have a corrosion protection coating applied, and that the coating remains efficient and is maintained in good condition. If the coatings have broken down, particularly at more critical areas, and no effort is being made to maintain the coatings, then this note will be placed in parentheses, i.e. **(PCWBT)**. In either case, the date of the last survey will be placed in parentheses after the note.

2. 4. 8 The following tanks shall not be considered to be dedicated seawater ballast tanks and shall therefore be exempted from the application and requirements of the Performance Standard for Protective Coatings for dedicated seawater ballast tanks in all types of ships and double-side skin spaces of bulk carriers (*Resolution MSC.215(82) - Performance Standard for Protective Coatings for Dedicated Seawater Ballast Tanks in all Types of Ships and Double-Side Skin Spaces of Bulk Carriers - (Adopted on 8 December 2006)*), provided the coatings applied in the tanks described in Ch 15, 2.4 Seawater ballast tank coatings 2.4.8.b and Ch 15, 2.4 Seawater ballast tank coatings 2.4.8.c below are confirmed by the coating manufacturer to be resistant to the media stored in these tanks and provided such coatings are applied and maintained according to the coating manufacturer's procedures.

a. Ballast tank identified as ‘Spaces included in Net Tonnage’ in the 1969 ITC Certificate;
b. Seawater ballast tanks in passenger vessels also designated for the carriage of grey water or black water;
c. Seawater ballast tanks in livestock carriers also designated for the carriage of the livestock dung.

2. 5 Cargo oil tank coatings

2. 5. 1 For ships that are required to comply with IMO *Resolution MSC.288(87) – Performance Standard for Protective Coatings for Cargo Oil Tanks of Crude Oil Tankers – (Adopted on 14 May 2010)*, all cargo oil tanks are to have type approved coating systems applied in accordance with *ACSPlus Guidelines Anti-Corrosion System Notation*. Owners may request to receive the optional notation ***ACSPlus* ACS(C)**.

2. 5. 2 The procedure for coating system type approval is detailed in MQPS Book P, Procedure 19-4. A list of PSPC-COT compliant cargo oil tank coating systems currently type approved by ACS is available on Asia Classification Society website.

2. 5. 3 SectionsCh 15, 2.4 Seawater ballast tank coatings 2.4.4, Ch 15, 2.4 Seawater ballast tank coatings 2.4.5 and Ch 15, 2.4 Seawater ballast tank coatings 2.4.6 above apply.

2. 5. 4 Where the vessel’s Owner has not requested to receive the ***ACSPlus* ACS(C)** notation, compliance with the PSPC-COT Regulation is demonstrated by the formal acceptance of the Coating Technical File and the issue of the vessel’s Oil Tanker Safety Certificate.

2. 6 Void space coatings

2. 6. 1 Ships within the scope of IMO *Resolution MSC.244(83) - Adoption of Performance Standard for Protective Coatings for Void Spaces on Bulk Carriers and Oil Tankers - (Adopted on 5 October 2007)* may, if requested by the Owner, receive an optional notation in accordance with the *ACSPlus Guidelines Anti-Corrosion System Notation*.

2. 6. 2 Void spaces on ships should, if possible, be coated in accordance with IMO *Resolution MSC.244(83) - Adoption of Performance Standard for Protective Coatings for Void Spaces on Bulk Carriers and Oil Tankers - (Adopted on 5 October 2007)*, which is not mandatory. Where an alternative to these guidelines is used the coating system selected shall be suitable for the service environment, and applied in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2. 7 Bulk carrier cargo hold coatings

2. 7. 1 The cargo hold spaces of bulk carriers shall be protected by a suitable corrosion protection coating. The coating system selected shall be suitable for the intended cargoes and applied in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2. 7. 2 All internal and external surfaces of hatch coamings and hatch covers, and all internal surfaces of the cargo holds, excluding the flat tank top areas and the hopper tank sloping plating more than approximately 300 mm below the side shell frame and brackets, shall be coated.

2. 8 Other internal tanks

2. 8. 1 Other internal tanks not covered by the above shall include those listed in Ch 15, 2.4, Seawater ballast tank coatings 2.4.8 and shall include those intended for the storage of, for example: black water; grey water; potable or made water, permanent ballast tanks, fuel tanks, etc.

2. 8. 2 Internal tanks and other compartments may require corrosion protection where the intended contents may cause or promote corrosion. Acceptable protective measures may include suitable coatings, cathodic protection or corrosion inhibitors, either individually, or in combination.

2. 8. 3 Selection of any coating system for such spaces shall be confirmed by the coating manufacturer to be resistant to the media stored in these tanks and shall be applied and maintained according to the coating manufacturer's procedures.

2. 8. 4 Some internal spaces are subject to Flag State or other local regulations regarding the coatings and other corrosion prevention systems that may be used. The selected coating system shall be fully compliant with all relevant legislation and be capable of protecting the tank from corrosion in applications where the use of sacrificial anodes is prohibited, such as in potable water tanks.

2. 9 Coatings for external hulls

2. 9. 1 External hulls are to be protected from corrosion by the use of appropriate anti-corrosive measures, which may include the application of suitable coating systems to all external surfaces.

2. 9. 2 Coatings used for corrosion prevention of exterior hulls should be confirmed as suitable for this application by the manufacturer, whose recommendations regarding surface preparation and coating application should be followed. Compatibility of the coating with other anti-corrosive measures should be confirmed by the coating manufacturer.

2. 9. 3 High resistance paints (HRP) shall be used on the underwater hull of vessels applying for or in possession of the in-water survey notation ***IWS**. High resistance paints shall be of a hard, convertible type, such as an epoxy, polyurethane or equivalent, and shall be applied in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

2. 9. 4 Vessels applying for the ***IWS** notation must submit the details of the coatings selected for review, including the manufacturer's technical data sheets, the number of coats and the total dry film thicknesses applied.

2. 9. 5 Coatings which have been certified by ACS as being either PSPC-compliant seawater ballast tank coatings or recognised Corrosion Control Coatings (CCC) are automatically acceptable as high-resistance paints. Any such certification should be submitted when requesting the in-water survey Notation as above.

2. 9. 6 The procedure of ACS recognition for Corrosion Control Coatings is detailed in MQPS Book P, Procedure 19-7. A list of corrosion control coatings currently recognised by ACS is available on Asia Classification Society website.

2. 10 Anti-fouling coatings

2. 10. 1 Coatings used on the hulls of ACS classed vessels shall be recognised by ACS as complying with the IMO Convention on the Control of Harmful Anti-fouling Systems on Ships.

2. 10. 2 Compliance of a coating shall be demonstrated prior to use by the issue of a certificate of recognition, or alternatively by the sampling of the coating during or immediately after application. Coating samples shall be tested for their organotin content and confirmed as being compliant before the vessel is issued with its AFS convention certificate.

2. 10. 3 The procedure for achieving ACS recognition is detailed in MQPS Book P, Procedure 19-6. A list of anti-fouling coatings currently recognised by ACS is available on Asia Classification Society website.

2. 11 Cargo tanks of product carriers or mixed-use tankers

2. 11. 1 The cargo tanks of tankers engaged in the carriage of refined products or mixed product/crude oil usage should be protected from corrosion by the application of corrosion resistant alloys, or alternatively by the application of suitable coatings or other corrosion prevention systems.

2. 11. 2 Any coating used in such environments should be of a type recommended by the manufacturer for that use, and applied according to their recommendations. Proof of compatibility of the coating with the intended cargoes shall be provided by the coating manufacturer.

2. 12 Coating maintenance and repairs

2. 12. 1 The regular inspection, maintenance and, where necessary, repair of coatings are essential to preserve their anti-corrosive performance during the life of the vessel.

2. 12. 2 Where deterioration in the quality of a coating is identified, it should be addressed immediately, and preferably restored to the original condition.

2. 13 Ice coatings

2. 13. 1 A combination of laboratory tests and in-service inspections by ACS Surveyors of vessels that have been operated in ice conditions for at least two winters is required for full recognition.

2. 13. 2 Laboratory tests shall include assessments of the coating's resistance to abrasion, impact resistance, strength of adhesion to the substrate and flexibility, in addition to conventional corrosion resistance tests.

2. 13. 3 A list of ice coatings currently recognised by ACS is available on Asia Classification Society website.

PART

2

CHAPTER **15 Corrosion Prevention**

SECTION **3 Corrosion Resistant Steels**

3. 1 Performance standard and definition

3. 1. 1 IMO *Resolution MSC.289(87) – Performance Standard for Alternative Means of Corrosion Protection for Cargo Oil Tanks of Crude Oil Tankers – (Adopted on 14 May 2010)* defines minimum standards for the means of corrosion protection by the use of approved corrosion resistant steel in cargo oil tanks during the construction of crude oil tankers.

3. 1. 2 Corrosion resistant steel is steel whose corrosion resistance performance in the bottom or top of the internal cargo oil tank is tested and approved to satisfy the requirements in the IMO Performance Standard in addition to other relevant requirements for ship steel, structure strength and construction.

3. 2 Corrosion resistant steel approval

3. 2. 1 The compliance of the corrosion resistant steel with the IMO Performance Standard shall be confirmed on the steel manufacturer's Approval certificate. The full approval procedure for corrosion resistant steel manufacturers and for the steel products involved is contained in MQPS Book C, Procedure 3-3.

3. 2. 2 The compliance of the vessel with IMO Performance Standard is indicated by the acceptance of the Technical File (TF) by the Flag State or their Recognised Organisation (RO), the issue of the vessel's SOLAS certificate and, if requested, the assignment of the appropriate notations by the Class Society. The TF must be kept on board and maintained throughout the life of the vessel.

3. 2. 3 The TF shall record all of the data required by IMO Performance Standard, including a copy of the Works Approval Certificate, technical data (approved welding methods, welding consumables and repair procedures) and records of the application, including the applied actual space and area of each compartment and the applied product and its thickness.

3. 3 Certification

3. 3. 1 For certification requirements, *See* Ch 3, 1.3 Corrosion resistant steels for cargo oil tanks of crude oil tankers 1.3.8.

PART

2

CHAPTER **15 Corrosion Prevention**

SECTION **4 Cathodic Protection (CP)**

4. 1 General principles

4. 1. 1 Where the design requires application of cathodic protection systems, either by impressed current or sacrificial means, this Section gives guidance on satisfying this requirement.

4. 1. 2 The type of cathodic protection of the structure required is to be considered in terms of the following zones:

a. Submerged zone. That part of the hull below the maximum design operating draught.
b. Splash zone. That part of the hull above the submerged zone and subject to wet and dry conditions.
c. Atmospheric zone. That part of the hull above the splash zone.

Cathodic protection inside tanks is considered separately (*See* Section Ch 15, 4.8 Cathodic protection in tanks).

4. 1. 3 The cathodic protection system for the submerged areas should be capable of polarising the steelwork to a sufficient level in order to minimise corrosion. This may be achieved using an impressed current system, sacrificial anodes or a combination of both.

4. 1. 4 All parts of the submerged structure should be electrically continuous, and where considered necessary, appropriate bonding devices and straps should be fitted across such items as propeller shafts, thrusters, stabilisers and rudders, pipe work, etc. Where bonding straps are not fitted then a supplementary cathodic protection system should be considered. The influence of any connecting structures, such as docking structures, on the efficiency of the cathodic protection system should be evaluated.

4. 1. 5 The cathodic protection system is to be capable of polarising the steel structure to potentials measured with respect to a silver/silver chloride/seawater (Ag/AgCl) reference electrode to within the range -0.80 to -1.20 volts for open seawater conditions. An average potential range from -0.90 to -0.95 volts vs. Ag/AgCl may be considered ideal. The electrode potential for steels which have surfaces operating above 25°C should be 1 mV (0.001 V) more negative for each degree above 25°C.

4. 1. 6 Potentials more negative than -1.20 volts vs. Ag/AgCI must be avoided in order to minimise any damage to the coating system.

4. 1. 7 In applications where high strength steels (tensile strengths in excess of 700 N/mm^2) are used in the submerged zone, potentials should be limited to -0.95 volts vs. Ag/AgCl in order to reduce the possibility of hydrogen embrittlement.

4. 1. 8 High strength fastening materials should be avoided due to the possible effects of hydrogen absorption. If the use of high strength fasteners is unavoidable, then the hardness of such bolting materials should be limited to a maximum of 300 HV.

4. 1. 9 When selecting protection systems the following items are normally considered:

a. A surface area breakdown for all areas to be protected, including appendages.
b. The assumed resistivity of the seawater.
c. All current densities used for design purposes.
d. The type and location of any reference electrodes and their methods of attachment.
e. Full details of any coatings used and the areas to which they are to be applied.
f. Details of the shaft grounding.
g. The electrical bonding.

4. 2 CP systems for the submerged zones of ships

4. 2. 1 Where the design specifies cathodic protection, the typical requirements of the hull and hull appendages and openings are given in Table 15. 4. 1: Typical corrosion protection requirements for the hull steelwork.

Table 15. 4. 1: Typical corrosion protection requirements for the hull steelwork

Corrosion protection required and area		
Zone	Structural steelwork	Method of protection required
Submerged zone	Main hull	Coatings, or coatings in combination with cathodic protection
Splash zone	Main hull	Coatings
Atmospheric zone	All structure above the splash zone	Coatings only

4. 3 Impressed Current Cathodic Protection (ICCP)

4. 3. 1 When designing an ICCP system, the following items are to be considered in addition to those identified in Ch 15, 4.1 General principles 4.1.9:

a. The anode composition and, where applicable, the thickness of the plated surface together with consumption and life data.
b. Anode resistance, limiting potential and current output.
c. System maximum operating voltage.
d. Details of the anode and reference electrode cofferdam construction, including the specification of the steel used and welding details, and the standards and specifications which are applicable.
e. Size, shape and composition of the dielectric shields.
f. Diagram of the wiring system used for the impressed current and monitoring systems including details of cable sizes, junction boxes, joints (if any), type of insulation and normal working current in circuits, as well as the capacity, type and make of the protected devices.
g. Details of glands and size of steel conduits (if applicable).
h. The locations of the anodes and reference electrodes.
i. The coating manufacturer should confirm that the hull coating is compatible with an impressed current cathodic protection system.

4. 3. 2 All impressed current anodes and reference electrodes should be capable of being replaced easily by divers.

4. 3. 3 Impressed current anode materials are to consist of lead/silver alloy or platinum over such substrates as titanium, niobium, tantalum or mixed metal oxide coated titanium.

4. 3. 4 The design and installation of electrical equipment and cables are to be in accordance with the requirements of the relevant Rules.

4. 3. 5 All equipment is to be suitable for its intended location

4. 3. 6 The arrangements for glands, where cables pass through shell boundaries, are to include a small cofferdam.

4. 3. 7 Cables which pass through ballast tanks are to be enclosed in a steel tube of at least 10 mm thickness.

4. 3. 8 Cables to anodes are not to pass through tanks intended for the storage of low flash point products, including but not limited to, oils.

4. 3. 9 Cables which pass through the cofferdams of storage tanks which may contain low flash point products are to be enclosed in a steel tube of at least 10 mm thickness.

4. 3. 10 Cable and insulating material shall be resistant to chlorides, hydrocarbons and any other chemicals with which they may come into contact.

4. 3. 11 The electrical connection between the anode cable and the anode body is to be watertight, and mechanically and electrically sound.

4. 3. 12 Where electrical power is derived from a rectified a.c. source, adequate protection is to be provided to trip the supply in the event of:

a. A fault between the input or high voltage windings of the transformer (i.e. main voltage) and the d.c. output of the associated rectifier; or
b. The ripple on the rectified d.c. exceeding 5 per cent.

4. 3. 13 Suitable dielectric shields are to be fitted in order to avoid negative potentials of -1.70 volts (vs. Ag/AgCl) and below.

4. 3. 14 Where protection is primarily by an impressed current cathodic protection system, sufficient sacrificial anodes are to be fitted that are capable of polarising the critical regions of the structure from the time of initial immersion until full commissioning of the impressed current system.

4. 4 ICCP systems for aluminium hulls

4. 4. 1 The use of ICCP for the corrosion protection of aluminium has a significantly higher risk of failure than ICCP used for the protection of steel vessels. However, applications for its use in fast craft such as fast ferries, sailing yachts and water jet tunnels must be considered because traditional zinc sacrificial anode cathodic protection is unsuitable for aluminium structures.

4. 4. 2 The accepted potential limits for the corrosion protection of aluminium hulls in clean, undiluted and aerated sea water using ICCP are as follows:

a. Positive limit: $-0.90\mathrm{V(vs.\,Ag/AgCl)}$
b. Negative limit: $-1.15\mathrm{V(vs.\,Ag/AgCl)}$

4. 4. 3 In addition to the information required for design as given in Ch 15, 4.1 General principles 4.1.9 and Ch 15, 4.3 Impressed Current Cathodic Protection (ICCP) 4.3.1, the ICCP system as applied to aluminium hulls has the following additional considerations:

a. The corrosion protection potential range must be strictly controlled and alarmed with the overprotection limit setting not to be exceeded.
b. The ICCP is to operate within the following potential limits:
Under-protection limit: $-0.85\ \mathrm{V\ (vs.\,Ag/AgCl)}$
Overprotection limit: $-1.15\ \mathrm{V\ (vs.\,Ag/AgCl)}$
c. The monitoring and control reference electrodes are to be positioned to register the maximum and minimum limits on the hull. In practice this usually means that a reference electrode should be placed near the propellers and on the periphery of the anode dielectric shield.

d. The anode dielectric shield is to be fabricated from plastic unless an alternative coating system can be proven to maintain adhesion and dielectric properties for at least the duration of the dry dock maintenance period under the maximum operating anode voltage.
e. The power/control and monitoring unit shall have a dielectric shield breakdown detection system capable of detecting water ingress behind the shield and current leakage through the shield. The unit should be able to detect and shut down current output automatically as well as registering an alarm. Each dielectric shield shall have an in-built sensor to detect water leakage behind the shield and current leakage through the shield.
f. The bare marine grade aluminium (series 5000) has very low corrosion rates in open seawater and will require a current density of less than 1 mA/m² to fully protect it. Therefore the most suitable location of the anodes will differ from that of a steel hulled vessel. Any requirement for current density of coated aluminium can be ignored provided that the full current demand requirement for the metal underwater appendages has been taken into account.
g. The anodes shall be located near the appendages where the current demand is at its greatest.

4. 4. 4 Special additional consideration needs to be undertaken to prevent bi-metallic corrosion at areas vulnerable to such attack, e.g. water-lubricated sterntubes and the underwater hull penetrations such as water cooling suctions (intakes), overboard discharges and exhaust discharges. Such considerations include:

a. For hull penetrations, the sea valves are to be electrically isolated from hull and pipework, and the penetration depth (depth from the hull) should be less than four times the internal diameter of the penetration.
b. For sterntubes, the wetted areas of the sterntube should be lined with a plastic tube or other sufficiently insulating material, and the shaft should have an effective passive shaft grounding system.

4. 5 Sacrificial anodes

4. 5. 1 Sacrificial anodes intended for installation on Classed structures are to be manufactured in accordance with the requirements of this Section.

4. 5. 2 For offshore structures, plans showing anode nominal dimensions, tolerances and installation details are to be submitted for approval prior to manufacture.

4. 5. 3 For ships, anode design and details are to be agreed between the shipyard and owners.

4. 5. 4 When calculating the number and location of sacrificial anodes, the following items are normally considered in addition to those identified in Ch 15, 4.1 General principles 4.1.9:

a. The design life of the system in years.
b. Anode type, material and minimum design capacity of anode material, in Ah/kg.
c. The dimensions of anodes, including details of the inserts and their locations.
d. The nett and gross weight of the anodes, in kilograms.
e. The means of attachment.
f. The location of the anodes.
g. Calculation of anodic resistance (in ohms) in the as-installed condition and when consumed to their design utilisation factor.
h. Closed circuit potential of the anode material, in volts.
i. Computer modelling or supporting calculations.
j. The anode design utilisation factor.

4. 5. 5 The anode materials are to be approved alloys of zinc or aluminium with a closed circuit potential of at least -1.00 volt (vs. Ag/AgCI). Magnesium-based anodes may be used for short-term temporary protection of materials which are not susceptible to hydrogen embrittlement.

4. 5. 6 The anode material is to be cast around a steel insert so designed as to retain the anode material even when it is consumed to its design utilisation factor. The steel inserts are to have sufficient strength to withstand all external forces that they may encounter such as wave, wind, and ice loadings in the vessel or structure's normal operating conditions.

4. 5. 7 The anodes are to be sufficiently rigid to avoid vibration in the anode support. The steel inserts are to be of weldable, fully killed structural steel bar, section or pipe with a carbon equivalent not greater than 0.45 per cent determined using the following formula:

a. Carbon equivalent $C_{eq} = C + Mn/6 + (Cr + Mo + V)/5 + (Ni + Cu)/15$

4. 6 Hybrid or combined impressed current and sacrificial anode cathodic protection system

4. 6. 1 The definition of the hybrid system is that it is an impressed current cathodic protection system, supplemented by sacrificial anodes.

4. 6. 2 If sacrificial anodes are installed on the submerged parts of a vessel or structure where impressed current is the primary cathodic protection system, then the cathodic protection should be treated as a single hybrid system and the Rules stated below are applied. The exception to this would be if the hull of a vessel is purposely electrically isolated from any of the appendages. In this case the hull and its appendages can be independently protected with either system, provided that sufficient measures are taken to prevent interference and stray current damage.

4. 6. 3 The design of the hybrid system should be integrated, with the impressed current and sacrificial anodes positioned so that the sacrificial anodes do not interfere with the performance of the impressed current cathodic protection system. The distances of the sacrificial anodes from the ICCP reference electrodes should not be less than three metres.

4. 6. 4 Where the hybrid system is installed on a vessel, the impressed current portion of the hybrid system should be designed in accordance with Section 4.3. The number, size and location of the sacrificial anodes should be sufficient to protect the aft section of the ship, without the impressed current, for a design life of one year.

4. 6. 5 For applications where there is a risk of anode passivation or poor performance, only zinc sacrificial anodes should be used.

4. 7 Fixed potential monitoring systems

4. 7. 1 Offshore structures with a sacrificial anode cathodic protection system should be monitored regularly to confirm the least negative potential from the system.

4. 7. 2 For ships over 300 m, a permanent monitoring system is to be installed on the bow of the hull protected by an all-aft impressed current cathodic protection system. Consideration is to be given to the use of sacrificial anodes in way of known high potential zones.

4. 7. 3 For offshore structures, details of the monitoring system should be submitted for review.

4. 8 Cathodic protection in tanks

4. 8. 1 Impressed current cathodic protection systems are not to be fitted in any tank.

4. 8. 2 Particular attention is to be given to the locations of anodes in tanks which can contain explosive or other inflammable vapour, both in relation to the structural arrangements and openings of the tanks.

4. 8. 3 Aluminium and aluminium alloy anodes are permitted in tanks which may contain explosive or flammable vapour, or in tanks adjacent to tanks which may contain explosive or flammable vapour, but only at locations where the potential energy of the anode does not exceed 275 J. The

weight of the anode is to be taken as the weight at the time of fitting, including any inserts and fitting devices. The height of the anode is, in general, to be measured from the bottom of the tank to the centre of the anode. Where the anode is located on a horizontal surface (such as bulkhead stringer) not less than 1 m wide, provided with an upstanding flange or face plate projecting not less than 75 mm above the horizontal surface, the height of the anode can be measured above that surface.

4. 8. 4 Aluminium anodes are not to be located under tank hatches or other openings unless protected by adjacent structure.

4. 8. 5 Magnesium or magnesium alloy anodes are not permitted in tanks which can contain explosive or flammable vapour, or in tanks adjacent to which can contain explosive or flammable vapour. Where permitted for other tanks, adequate venting must be provided.

4. 8. 6 Anodes fitted internally should preferably be attached to stiffeners, or aligned in way of stiffeners on plane bulkhead plating. Where they are welded to asymmetrical stiffeners, they are to be connected to the web with the welding at least 25 mm away from the edge of the web.

4. 8. 7 In the case of stiffeners or girders with symmetrical face plates, the connection may be made to the web or to the centreline of the mild steel face plate but well clear of the free edges. Where higher tensile steel face plates are fitted, the anodes are to be attached to the webs.

4. 8. 8 Anodes are not to be attached directly to the shell plating of main hulls, columns or primary bracings.

4. 8. 9 For guidance on the design of sacrificial anode systems in tanks, *See* Ch 15, 4.5, Sacrificial anodes.

4. 9 Surveys of electrical potential

4. 9. 1 Surveys of electrical potential in way of the submerged areas of the external hull or structure should be carried out at regular intervals.

4. 9. 2 Should the results of any potential survey measured with respect to a Ag/AgCl reference cell indicate values more positive than -0.8 volts for aerobic conditions or -0.9 volts for anaerobic conditions then remedial action should be carried out at the earliest opportunity.

4. 10 Replacing and retrofitting of sacrificial anodes

4. 10. 1 Replacement and retrofitting of sacrificial anodes would preferably be carried out during dry docking. Alternatively, these operations could be carried out whilst afloat, if suitable arrangements can be made.

4. 10. 2 Where it is proposed to fit additional anodes, design approval is required in accordance with Ch 15, 4.5 Sacrificial anodes 4.5.2 or Ch 15, 4.5 Sacrificial anodes 4.5.3.

4. 10. 3 Where it is necessary to weld anodes to the structure only approved welding procedures and consumables are to be used.

4. 10. 4 The welding procedure is to be qualified under fully representative conditions in accordance with the requirements of Ch 12 Welding Qualifications.

PART

3

Ship Structures

CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1	**General**		**837**
	SECTION 1	Rule application	841
	SECTION 2	Direct calculations	842
	SECTION 3	Equivalents	843
	SECTION 4	National and International Regulations	844
	SECTION 5	Information required	845
	SECTION 6	Definitions	849
	SECTION 7	Equipment Number	853
	SECTION 8	Inspection and workmanship	855
	SECTION 9	Procedures for testing tanks and tight boundaries	857
CHAPTER 2	**Materials**		**865**
	SECTION 1	Materials of construction	868
	SECTION 2	Fracture control	871
	SECTION 3	Corrosion protection	880
	SECTION 4	Corrosion protection	883
CHAPTER 3	**Structural Design**		**884**
	SECTION 1	General	888
	SECTION 2	Rule structural concepts	889
	SECTION 3	Structural idealisation	895
	SECTION 4	Bulkhead requirements	903
	SECTION 5	Design loading	909
	SECTION 6	Minimum bow heights, reserve buoyancy and extent of forecastle	920
CHAPTER 4	**Longitudinal Strength**		**921**
	SECTION 1	Definitions	925
	SECTION 2	General	926
	SECTION 3	Application	928

SECTION 4 Information required 931
SECTION 5 Hull bending strength 932
SECTION 6 Hull shear strength 940
SECTION 7 Hull buckling strength 946
SECTION 8 Loading guidance information 952
CHAPTER 5 Fore End Structure 956
SECTION 1 General 960
SECTION 2 Deck structure 973
SECTION 3 Shell envelope plating 980
SECTION 4 Shell envelope framing 984
SECTION 5 Single and double bottom structure 995
SECTION 6 Fore peak structure 1000
SECTION 7 Forward deep tank structure 1004
CHAPTER 6 Aft End Structure 1007
SECTION 1 General 1011
SECTION 2 Deck structure 1013
SECTION 3 Shell envelope plating 1018
SECTION 4 Shell envelope framing 1021
SECTION 5 Single and double bottom structure 1029
SECTION 6 After peak structure 1031
SECTION 7 Sternframes and appendages 1033
CHAPTER 7 Machinery Spaces 1049
SECTION 1 General 1052
SECTION 2 Deck structure 1054
SECTION 3 Side shell structure 1055
SECTION 4 Double and single bottom structure 1057
SECTION 5 Machinery casings and fuel oil bunkers 1060
SECTION 6 Engine seatings 1062
CHAPTER 8 Superstructures, Deckhouses and Bulwarks 1065
SECTION 1 General 1068
SECTION 2 Scantlings of erections other than forecastles 1072
SECTION 3 Aluminium erections 1076
SECTION 4 Forecastles 1077
SECTION 5 Bulwarks, guard rails and other means for the protection of crew 1078
CHAPTER 9 Special Features 1087
SECTION 1 General 1092

SECTION 2 Timber deck cargoes 1093
SECTION 3 Decks loaded by wheeled vehicles 1099
SECTION 4 Movable decks 1105
SECTION 5 Helicopter landing areas 1108
SECTION 6 Lifting appliances and support arrangements 1113
SECTION 7 Bottom strengthening for loading and unloading aground 1117
SECTION 8 Strengthening for regular discharge by heavy grabs 1119
SECTION 9 Strengthening for machinery on deck 1121
CHAPTER 10 Welding and Structural Details 1126
SECTION 1 General 1130
SECTION 2 Welding 1131
SECTION 3 Secondary member end connections 1146
SECTION 4 Construction details for primary members 1150
SECTION 5 Structural details 1154
SECTION 6 Access arrangements for oil tankers and bulk carriers 1167
CHAPTER 11 Closing Arrangements for Shell, Deck and Bulkheads 1168
SECTION 1 General 1173
SECTION 2 Steel hatch covers 1176
SECTION 3 Hatch beams and wood covers 1204
SECTION 4 Hatch cover securing arrangements and tarpaulins 1205
SECTION 5 Hatch coamings 1211
SECTION 6 Miscellaneous openings 1218
SECTION 7 Tanker access arrangements and closing appliances 1229
SECTION 8 Side and stern doors and other shell openings 1232
SECTION 9 Watertight doors in bulkheads below the freeboard deck 1239
SECTION 10 External openings and openings in watertight bulkheads and internal decks in cargo ships 1241
CHAPTER 12 Ventilators, Air Pipes and Discharges 1242
SECTION 1 General 1245
SECTION 2 Ventilators 1246
SECTION 3 Air and sounding pipes 1249
SECTION 4 Scuppers and sanitary discharges 1251
SECTION 5 Air pipes, ventilator pipes and their securing devices located on the exposed fore deck 1255
CHAPTER 13 Ship Control Systems 1260
SECTION 1 General 1266

SECTION 2 Rudders 1267
SECTION 3 Fixed and steering nozzles 1292
SECTION 4 Steering gear and allied systems 1298
SECTION 5 Bow and stern thrust unit structure 1299
SECTION 6 Stabiliser structure 1300
SECTION 7 Equipment 1301
SECTION 8 Anchor windlass design and testing 1318
SECTION 9 Structural requirements associated with towing and mooring 1329
SECTION 10 Anchoring equipment in deep and unsheltered water 1337
SECTION 11 Mooring of ships at single point moorings 1341
SECTION 12 Emergency towing arrangements 1345
CHAPTER 14 Cargo Securing Arrangements 1347
SECTION 1 General 1353
SECTION 2 Fixed cargo securing fittings, materials and testing 1367
SECTION 3 Loose container securing fittings, materials and testing 1370
SECTION 4 Ship structure 1374
SECTION 5 Container securing arrangements for stowage on exposed decks without cell guides 1375
SECTION 6 Container securing arrangements for underdeck stowage without cell guides 1379
SECTION 7 Container securing arrangements for stowage using cell guides 1380
SECTION 8 Determination of forces for container securing arrangements 1389
SECTION 9 Strength of container securing arrangements 1398
SECTION 10 Surveys 1408
CHAPTER 15 Quality Assurance Scheme for the Hull Construction of Ships 1409
SECTION 1 General 1411
SECTION 2 Application 1413
SECTION 3 Particulars to be submitted 1415
SECTION 4 Requirements of Parts 1 and 2 of the Scheme 1416
SECTION 5 Additional requirements for Part 2 of the Scheme 1421
SECTION 6 Initial assessment of the shipyard 1423
SECTION 7 Approval of the shipyard 1424
SECTION 8 Maintenance of approval 1425
SECTION 9 Suspension or withdrawal of approval 1426
CHAPTER 16 ACSPlus Guidelines for the Design, Construction and Lifetime Care of Ships 1427
SECTION 1 General 1429

SECTION 2 Construction monitoring 1430
SECTION 3 Structural design assessment 1431
SECTION 4 Fatigue design assessment 1432
SECTION 5 Whipping design assessment 1433
SECTION 6 Ship Event Analysis 1434
SECTION 7 Enhanced scantlings 1435
SECTION 8 Corrosion protection of internal tanks and spaces 1436
SECTION 9 Ship Emergency Response Service 1438
SECTION 10 Assessment of Ballast Water Management Plans 1439
SECTION 11 Inventory of Hazardous Materials 1440
SECTION 12 Safe return to port and orderly evacuation 1441

PART

3

CHAPTER **1 General**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**Rule application**		**841**
	1. 1	General	841
	1. 2	Exceptions	841
	1. 3	Loading	841
	1. 4	Advisory services	841
	1. 5	Intact stability	841
SECTION 2	**Direct calculations**		**842**
	2. 1	General	842
	2. 2	Submission of direct calculations	842
SECTION 3	**Equivalents**		**843**
	3. 1	Alternative arrangements and scantlings	843
SECTION 4	**National and International Regulations**		**844**
	4. 1	International Conventions	844
	4. 2	International Association of Classification Societies (IACS)	844
	4. 3	International Maritime Organization (IMO)	844
SECTION 5	**Information required**		**845**
	5. 1	General	845
	5. 2	Plans and supporting calculations	845
	5. 3	Plans to be supplied to the ship	847
	5. 4	Fire protection, detection and extinction	848
SECTION 6	**Definitions**		**849**
	6. 1	Principal particulars	849
	6. 2	Freeboard deck	850
	6. 3	Bulkhead deck	850
	6. 4	Weathertight	851
	6. 5	Watertight	851

6. 6 Position 1 and Position 2 851
6. 7 Passenger ship 851
6. 8 Reference system 852
6. 9 Co-ordinate system 852
SECTION 7 Equipment Number 853
7. 1 Calculation of Equipment Number 853
SECTION 8 Inspection and workmanship 855
8. 1 Inspection 855
8. 2 Workmanship 855
8. 3 Trial trip and operational tests 855
SECTION 9 Procedures for testing tanks and tight boundaries 857
9. 1 General 857
9. 2 Application 857
9. 3 Test types 860
9. 4 Structural test procedures for SOLAS ships 861
9. 5 Structural test procedures for non-SOLAS ships and SOLAS exempt/equivalent ships 861
9. 6 Leak test procedures 862
9. 7 Definitions and details of tests 862
9. 8 Application of coating 863
9. 9 Safe access to joints 864

PART

3

CHAPTER **1 General**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 1. 8. 1: Trial trip and operational tests 855
Table 1. 9. 1: Testing requirements 858

PART

3

CHAPTER 1 General

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 1. 6. 1: Position 1 and Position 2 851
Figure 1. 6. 2: Co-ordinate system 852

PART

3

CHAPTER 1 **General**

SECTION 1 **Rule application**

1. 1 General

1. 1. 1 The Rules apply in general to single hull ships of normal form, proportions and speed. Relevant parameters to define what is regarded as normal are given by limitations specified at the beginning of individual ship type Chapters. Although the Rules are, in general, for steel ships of all welded construction, other materials for use in hull construction will be considered.

1. 2 Exceptions

1. 2. 1 Ships of unusual form, proportions or speed, intended for the carriage of special cargoes, or for special or restricted service, not covered by Pt 3 Ship Structures (General) and Pt 4 Ship Structures (Ship Types), will receive individual consideration based on the general standards of the Rules.

1. 2. 2 The requirements of Pt 3, Ch 1, 7.1, Calculation of Equipment Number are not applicable to Double Hull Oil Tankers or Bulk Carriers with a **CSR** notation (*See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull)).

1. 3 Loading

1. 3. 1 The Rules are framed on the understanding that ships will be properly loaded and handled; they do not, unless it is stated or implied in the class notation, provide for special distributions or concentrations of loading other than those included in the approved Loading Manual. The Committee may require additional strengthening to be fitted in any ship which, in their opinion, would otherwise be subjected to severe stresses due to particular features of the design, or where it is desired to make provision for exceptional load or ballast conditions.

1. 4 Advisory services

1. 4. 1 The Rules do not cover certain technical characteristics, such as stability, trim, vibration, docking arrangements, etc. The Committee cannot assume responsibility for these matters but is willing to advise upon them on request.

1. 5 Intact stability

1. 5. 1 New ships to which the Load Lines Conventions are applicable will be assigned Class only after it has been demonstrated that the level of intact stability is adequate, *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 1.1 General 1.1.9.

PART

3

CHAPTER **1** **General**

SECTION **2** **Direct calculations**

2. 1 General

2. 1. 1 Direct calculations may be specifically required by the Rules or may be required for ships having novel design features, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 1.2 Exceptions or may be submitted in support of alternative arrangements and scantlings. Asia Classification Society (hereinafter referred to as 'ACS') may, when requested, undertake calculations on behalf of designers and make recommendations in regard to suitability of any required model tests.

2. 1. 2 Where model testing is undertaken to complement direct calculations the following details would normally be required to be submitted:

- Schedule of tests;
- details of test equipment;
- input data;
- analysis; and
- calibration procedure together with tabulated and plotted output.

2. 2 Submission of direct calculations

2. 2. 1 ACS's direct calculation procedures and facilities are summarised in the document entitled *Overview*. *ACSPlus Guidelines*.

2. 2. 2 In cases where direct calculations have been carried out using *ACSPlus Guidelines*, the following supporting information should be submitted as applicable:

a. Reference to the *ACSPlus Guidelines* and technical program used.
b. A description of the structural modelling.
c. A summary of analysis parameters including properties and boundary conditions.
d. Details of the loading conditions and the means of applying loads.
e. A comprehensive summary of calculation results. Sample calculations should be submitted where appropriate.

2. 2. 3 In general, submission of large volumes of input and output data associated with such programs as finite element analysis will not be necessary.

2. 2. 4 The responsibility for error free specification and input of program data and the subsequent correct transposal of output rests with the Builder.

PART

3

CHAPTER **1 General**

SECTION **3 Equivalents**

3. 1 Alternative arrangements and scantlings

3. 1. 1 In addition to cases where direct calculations are specifically required by the Rules, ACS will consider alternative arrangements and scantlings which have been derived by direct calculations in lieu of specific Rule requirements. All direct calculations are to be submitted for examination.

3. 1. 2 Where calculation procedures other than those available within—*ACSPlus* are employed, supporting documentation is to be submitted for appraisal and this is to include details of the following:

- calculation methods, assumptions and references;
- loading;
- structural modelling;
- direct criteria and their derivation, e.g. permissible stresses, factors of safety against plate panel instability, etc.

3. 1. 3 ACS will be ready to consider use of Builders' programs for direct calculations in the following cases:

a. Where it can be established that the program has previously been satisfactorily used to perform a direct calculation similar to that now submitted.
b. Where sufficient information and evidence of satisfactory performance is submitted to substantiate the validity of the computation performed by the program.

PART

3

CHAPTER **1 General**

SECTION **4 National and International Regulations**

4. 1 International Conventions

4. 1. 1 The Committee, when authorised, will act on behalf of Governments and, if requested, ACS will certify compliance in respect of National and International statutory safety and other requirements for passenger and cargo ships.

4. 1. 2 In satisfying the Load Line Conventions, the general structural strength of the ship is required to be sufficient for the draught corresponding to the freeboards to be assigned. Ships built and maintained in accordance with ACS's Rules and Regulations possess adequate strength to satisfy the Load Line Conventions. However, some National Authorities may, in addition, require to be supplied with calculations of bending moments and shear forces for certain conditions of loading.

4. 2 International Association of Classification Societies (IACS)

4. 2. 1 Where applicable, the Rules take into account unified requirements and interpretations established by IACS.

4. 3 International Maritime Organization (IMO)

4. 3. 1 Attention is drawn to the fact that Codes of Practice issued by IMO contain requirements which are outside classification as defined in these Rules and Regulations.

PART

3

CHAPTER **1** **General**

SECTION **5** **Information required**

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 The categories and lists of information required are given in Pt 3, Ch 1, 5.2, Plans and supporting calculations.

5. 1. 2 Plans are generally to be submitted in triplicate, but one copy only is necessary for supporting documents and calculations.

5. 1. 3 Plans are to contain all necessary information to fully define the structure, including construction details, equipment and systems as appropriate.

5. 1. 4 Additional requirements for individual ship types are given in subsequent Chapters.

5. 2 Plans and supporting calculations

5. 2. 1 Plans covering the following items are to be submitted:

- Midship sections showing longitudinal and transverse material.
- Profile and decks.
- Shell expansion.
- Oiltight and watertight bulkheads.
- Propeller brackets.
- Double bottom construction.
- Pillars and girders.
- Aft end construction.
- Engine room construction.
- Engine and thrust seatings.
- Fore end construction.
- Hatch coamings.
- Hatch cover construction.
- Deckhouses and superstructures.
- Sternframe.
- Rudder, stock and tiller.

- Equipment.
- Loading Manuals, preliminary and final.
- Ice strengthening.
- Welding.
- Hull penetration plans.
- Support structure for masts, derrick posts or cranes.
- Bilge keels showing material grades, welded connections and detail design.
- Supporting structure of deck fittings used for towing and mooring.

5. 2. 2 The following supporting documents are to be submitted:

- General arrangement.
- Capacity plan.
- Lines plan or equivalent.
- Dry-docking plan.
- Freeboard plan or equivalent showing freeboards and items relative to the conditions of assignment.
- Towing and mooring arrangements plan as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 5.3 Plans to be supplied to the ship 5.3.1.n.
- When the ship is required to comply with statutory damage stability criteria: Watertight Integrity plan or equivalent showing watertight boundaries and associated design head necessary to satisfy damage stability criteria.

5. 2. 3 The following supporting calculations are to be submitted:

- Calculation of Equipment Number.
- Calculation of hull girder still water bending moment and shear force as applicable.
- Calculation of midship section modulus.
- Calculations for structural items in the aft end, midship and fore end regions of the ship.
- Preliminary freeboard calculation.

5. 2. 4 Where an ***IWS** (In-Water Survey) notation is to be assigned (*See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.11), plans and information covering the following items are to be submitted:

- Details showing how rudder pintle and bush clearances are to be measured and how the security of the pintles in their sockets is to be verified with the vessel afloat.
- Details showing how for water lubricated bearings, sternbush clearances are to be measured with the vessel afloat.
- Details of high resistance paint, for information only.

5. 2. 5 Where it is intended to exchange ballast water at sea resulting in the partial filling of the ballast spaces, the scantlings and structural arrangements of the tank boundaries are to be capable of withstanding the loads imposed by the movement of the ballast water in those spaces. The magnitude of the predicated loadings, together with the scantling calculations, may require to be submitted.

5. 2. 6 Ships that are required to comply with SOLAS Regulation 3-6 in chapter II-1 for 'Access to and within spaces in the cargo area of oil tankers and bulk carriers' are to supply information showing attachment of the access arrangements to the ship structure. This is to include necessary strength calculations, local detail and any reinforcements.

5. 2. 7 Ships that are required to comply with the *Performance Standards for Protective Coatings* of SOLAS *Regulation 3-2 - Protective coatings of dedicated seawater ballast tanks in all types of ships and double-side skin spaces of bulk carriers* are to submit information on the coating specification agreed by the shipyard, the ship owner and the manufacturer, including the coating system selection, surface preparation and coating application and inspection procedure. Corrosion prevention arrangements and coating system specifications are to comply with Ch 15 Corrosion Prevention of the Part 2 .

5. 3 Plans to be supplied to the ship

5. 3. 1 A Ship Construction File is to be provided on board of the ship containing information to facilitate inspection/survey, repair and maintenance. As a minimum it is to include the following documentation and plans:

a. Copies of approved as-built plans, including the main scantling plans are to be placed on board the ship. These plans are to indicate, as applicable, the disposition and grades (other than Grade A) of hull structural steel, the extent and location of higher tensile steel together with details of specification and mechanical properties, location of butts and seams, cross-section details and locations of all partial and full penetration welds, areas identified for close attention and rudders, wastage allowances and any recommendations for welding, working and treatment of these steels.
b. Similar information is to be provided on board when aluminium alloy or other materials are used in the hull construction.
c. Copies of certificates of forgings and castings welded into the hull.
d. Details of equipment forming part of the watertight and weather tight integrity of the ship.
e. The approved tank testing plan including details of the test requirements.
f. Docking plan and details of all penetrations normally examined at dry-docking.
g. Ship structure access manual, as applicable.
h. A copy of the final Loading Manual, when approved, and details of the loadings applicable to approved decks, hatch covers and inner bottom.
i. Operations and maintenance manuals required for classification (e.g. hatch cover and coamings, shell doors and container securing arrangements).
j. Details of any corrosion prevention systems applied or fitted.
k. For ships that are required to comply with IMO *Performance Standard for Protective Coatings*, a copy of the Coating Technical File (CTF), *See* Ch 15 Corrosion Prevention of the Part 2.
l. Where an ***IWS** (In-water Survey) notation is to be assigned, approved plans and information covering the items detailed in Pt 3, Ch 1, 5.2 Plans and supporting calculations 5.2.4 .
m. Where the *ACSPlus* notation **CM** is to be assigned, the approved Construction Monitoring Plan (CMP), as detailed in the *ACSPlus Construction Monitoring Guidelines*.
n. The towing and mooring arrangements plan in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 13, 9.4 Towing and mooring arrangements plan is to be provided for the guidance of the Master.

The information contained in the towing and mooring arrangement plan is also to be incorporated into the pilot card in order to provide the pilot with the necessary information on harbour/escorting operations.

o. Details of the principal dimensions, the freeboard marks and draft marks.

5. 4 Fire protection, detection and extinction

5. 4. 1 For information and plans required, *See* Pt 6, Ch 4 Fire Protection, Detection and Extinction Requirements.

PART

3

CHAPTER **1 General**

SECTION **6 Definitions**

6. 1 Principal particulars

6. 1. 1 Rule length, L, is the distance, in metres, on the waterline at draught T, from the forward side of the stem to the after side of the rudder post or to the centre of the rudder stock if there is no rudder post. L is to be not less than 96 per cent, and need not be greater than 97 per cent, of the extreme length on the waterline. For ships without rudders, the Rule length is to be taken as 97 per cent of the extreme length on the waterline. In ships with unusual stem or stern arrangements the Rule length, L, will be specially considered.

6. 1. 2 Amidships is to be taken as the middle of the Rule length, L, measuring from the forward side of the stem.

6. 1. 3 Breadth, B, is the greatest moulded breadth, in metres.

6. 1. 4 Depth, D, is measured, in metres, at the middle of the length, L, from top of keel to top of the deck beam at side on the uppermost continuous deck, or as defined in appropriate Chapters. When a rounded gunwale is arranged, the depth D is to be measured to the continuation of the moulded deck line.

6. 1. 5 Draught, T, is the summer draught, in metres, measured from top of keel, or a greater value if such a value has been specified as 'scantling draught'. Both of the draughts are to be indicated on the midship plan, irrespective of whether or not they are of the same value.

6. 1. 6 The block coefficient, C_b, is the moulded block coefficient at draught, T, based on Rule length, L, and moulded breadth, B, as follows:

$$C_b = \frac{moulded\ displacement\ (m3) at\ draught\ T}{LBT}$$

6. 1. 7 Length between perpendiculars, L_{pp}, is the distance, in metres, on the waterline at draught T, from the fore side of the stem to the after side of the rudder post, or to the centre of the rudder stock if there is no rudder post. In ships with unusual stern arrangements the length, L_{pp}, will be specially considered. The forward perpendicular, F.P., is the perpendicular at the intersection of the waterline with the fore side of the stem. The after perpendicular, A.P., is the perpendicular at the intersection of the waterline with the after side of the rudder post. For ships without a rudder post, the A.P. is the perpendicular at the intersection of the waterline with the centreline of the rudder stock.

6. 1. 8 Load line length, L_L, is to be taken as 96 per cent of the total length on a waterline at 85 per cent of the least moulded depth measured from the top of the keel, or as the length from the fore side of the stem to the axis of the rudder stock on that waterline, if that is greater. In ships designed with a rake of keel, the waterline on which this length is measured is to be parallel to the designed waterline. The length L_L is to be measured in metres.

6. 1. 9 Load line block coefficient, C_{bL}, is defined as:

$$C_{bL} = \frac{\nabla}{L_L B T_L}$$

where

∇ = volume of the moulded displacement, in m^3, excluding appendages, taken at draught T_L

T_L = moulded draught, in metres, measured to the waterline at 85 per cent of the least moulded depth.

6. 1. 10 Maximum service speed, V, means the maximum ahead service speed, in knots, which the ship is designed to maintain, at the summer load waterline at maximum propeller RPM and corresponding MCR.

6. 1. 11 Bow reference height, H_b , is defined as:

For ships less than 250 m in length:

$$H_b = 0.056 L_L \left(1 - \frac{L_L}{500}\right)\left(\frac{1.36}{C_{bl} + 0.68}\right) m$$

For ships 250 m or greater in length:

$$H_h = 7\left(\frac{1.36}{C_{bL} + 0.68}\right) m$$

Where

L_L = is defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1 Principal particulars 6.1.8

C_{bL} = is defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1 Principal particulars 6.1.9 ADD , but is not to be taken less than 0.68

6. 2 Freeboard deck

6. 2. 1 The freeboard deck is normally the uppermost complete deck exposed to weather and sea, which has permanent means of closing all openings in the weather part, and below which all openings in the sides of the ship are fitted with permanent means of watertight closing.

6. 2. 2 For the purposes of the Load Lines Conventions, as applicable, where the assigned summer freeboard is increased such that the resulting draught is not more than that corresponding to a minimum summer freeboard for the same ship, but with an assumed freeboard deck located a distance below the actual freeboard deck at least equal to the standard superstructure height, the related items for the conditions of assignment to the actual freeboard deck may be as required for a superstructure deck.

6. 3 Bulkhead deck

6. 3. 1 For a passenger ship the bulkhead deck is generally to be taken as the deck to which the main bulkheads and side shell are carried watertight.

6. 3. 2 For a cargo ship the bulkhead deck is generally to be taken as the freeboard deck.

6. 4 Weathertight

6. 4. 1 A closing appliance is considered weathertight if it is designed to prevent the passage of water into the ship in any sea conditions.

6. 4. 2 Generally, all openings in the freeboard deck and in enclosed superstructures are to be provided with weathertight closing appliances.

6. 5 Watertight

6. 5. 1 A closing appliance is considered watertight if it is designed to prevent the passage of water in either direction under a head of water for which the surrounding structure is designed.

6. 5. 2 Generally, all openings below the freeboard deck in the outer shell/envelope (and in main bulkheads) are to be fitted with permanent means of watertight closing.

6. 6 Position 1 and Position 2

6. 6. 1 For the purpose of Load Line conditions of assignment, there are two basic positions of hatchways, doorways and ventilators defined as follows (*See also* Figure 1. 6. 1: Position 1 and Position 2):

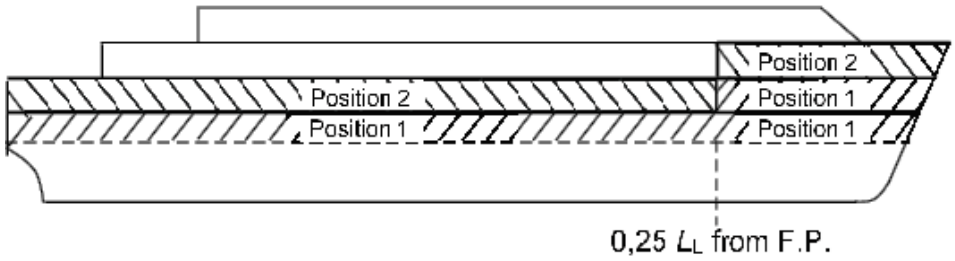
Position 1:

- Exposed decks located abaft the forward 0.25 of the load line length, L_L, and less than one standard superstructure height above the freeboard deck.
- Exposed decks situated within the forward 0.25 of the load line length, L_L, and located less than two standard heights of superstructure above the freeboard deck.

Position 2:

- Exposed decks situated abaft the forward 0.25 of the load line length, L_L, and located at least one standard height of superstructure, but less than two standard heights of superstructure, above the freeboard deck.
- Exposed decks situated within the forward 0.25 of the load line length, L_L, and located at least two standard heights of superstructure, but less than three standard heights of superstructure, above the freeboard deck.

Figure 1. 6. 1: Position 1 and Position 2



6. 7 Passenger ship

6. 7. 1 A passenger ship is a ship which carries more than 12 passengers.

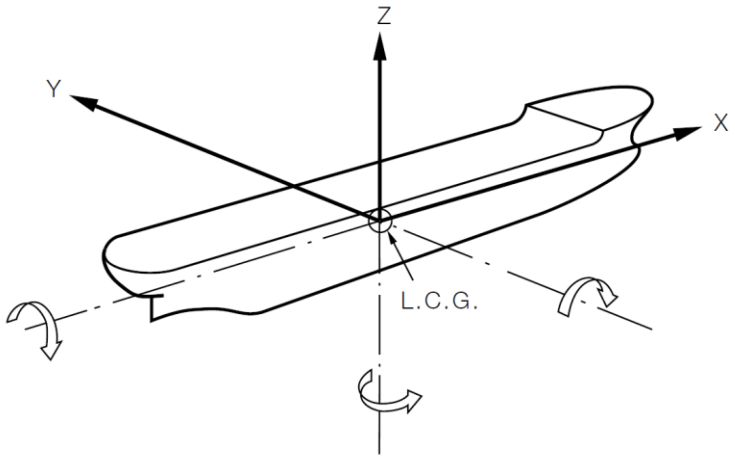
6. 8 Reference system

6. 8. 1 For hull reference purposes, the ship is divided into 21 equally spaced stations where Station 0 is the after perpendicular, Station 20 is the forward perpendicular, and Station 10 is mid-L_{pp}.

6. 9 Co-ordinate system

6. 9. 1 Unless otherwise stated, the co-ordinate system is as shown in Figure 1. 6. 2: Co-ordinate system, that is, a right-hand co-ordinate system with the X axis positive forward, the Y axis positive to port and the Z axis positive upwards. Angular motions are considered positive in a clockwise direction about the X, Y or Z axes.

Figure 1. 6. 2: Co-ordinate system



PART

3

CHAPTER **1** **General**

SECTION **7** **Equipment Number**

7. 1 Calculation of Equipment Number

7. 1. 1 The equipment of anchors and chain cables specified in Pt 3, Ch 13, 7 Equipment is based on an `Equipment Number' which is to be calculated as follows:

$$Equipment\ Number = \Delta^{2/3} + 2BH + \frac{A}{10}$$

Where

A = area, in m^2, in profile view of the hull, within the Rule length of the vessel, and of superstructures and houses above the summer load waterline, which are within the Rule length of the vessel, and also having a breadth greater than $\frac{B}{4}$

= *See also* Pt 3, Ch 1, 7.1 Calculation of Equipment Number 7.1.3 and Pt 3, Ch 1, 7.1 Calculation of Equipment Number 7.1.4

B = greatest moulded breadth, in metres

H freeboard amidships, in metres, from the summer load waterline to the upper deck, plus the sum of the heights at the centreline, in metres, of each tier of houses having a breadth greater than $\frac{B}{4}$

See also Pt 3, Ch 1, 7.1 Calculation of Equipment Number 7.1.2, Pt 3, Ch 1, 7.1 Calculation of Equipment Number 7.1.3 and Pt 3, Ch 1, 7.1 Calculation of Equipment Number 7.1.4

Δ = moulded displacement, in tonnes, to the summer load waterline.

7. 1. 2 In the calculation of H, sheer and trim are to be ignored. Where there is a local discontinuity in the upper deck, H is to be measured from a notional deckline.

7. 1. 3 If a house having a breadth greater than $\frac{B}{4}$ is above a house with a breadth of $\frac{B}{4}$ or less, then the wide house is to be included, but the narrow house ignored.

7. 1. 4 Screens and bulwarks more than 1.5 m in height are to be regarded as parts of houses when determining H and A. Where a screen or bulwark is of varying height, the portion to be included is to be that length the height of which exceeds 1.5 m. The height of the hatch coamings and that of any deck cargo, such as containers, may be disregarded when determining H and A.

7. 1. 5 The Equipment Number for tugs is to be calculated as follows:

$$Equipment\ Number = \Delta\frac{2}{3} + 2\left(Bf + \sum bh\right) + \frac{A}{10}$$

Where

Δ, B and A = are defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 7.1 Calculation of Equipment Number 7.1.1

b = breadth, in metres, of the widest superstructure or deckhouse on each tier having a breadth greater than $\frac{B}{4}$

f freeboard amidships, in metres, from the summer load waterline

h the height, in metres, of each tier of superstructure or deckhouse at side having a breadth of $\frac{B}{4}$ or greater. In the calculation of h, sheer and trim are to be ignored.

7. 1. 6 In the case of dredgers having normal ship shape underwater hull, bucket ladders and gallows are not to be included in the Equipment Number calculations. If the dredger has an unusual underwater hull design or has a limited service area, the anchoring equipment needs to be specially considered.

7. 1. 7 The Equipment Number formulae for anchoring equipment as given in this Section are based on an assumed maximum current speed of 2.5 m/s, maximum wind speed of 25 m/s and a minimum scope of chain cable of 6, the scope being the ratio between length of chain paid out and water depth. For ships with a Rule length, L, greater than 135 m, the required anchoring equipment is also considered adequate for a maximum current speed of 1.54 m/s, a maximum wind speed of 11 m/s and waves with maximum significant height of 2 m.

PART

3

CHAPTER **1** **General**

SECTION **8** **Inspection and workmanship**

8. 1 Inspection

8. 1. 1 Adequate facilities are to be provided to enable the Surveyor to carry out a satisfactory inspection of all components during each stage of prefabrication and construction.

8. 2 Workmanship

8. 2. 1 All workmanship is to be of good quality and in accordance with good shipbuilding practice. Any defect is to be rectified to the satisfaction of the Surveyor before the material is covered with paint, cement or other composition. The materials and welding are to be in accordance with the requirements of the Part 2 . The assembly sequence and welding sequence are to be agreed prior to construction and are to be to the satisfaction of the Surveyor. Plates which have been subjected to excessive heating while being worked are to be satisfactorily heat treated before being erected in the hull.

8. 2. 2 **Wood sheathing on decks.** Where plated decks are sheathed with wood, the sheathing is to be efficiently attached to the deck, caulked and sealed, to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

8. 2. 3 **Rudder and sternframe.** The final boring out of the propeller boss and sternframe skeg or solepiece, and the fit-up and alignment of the rudder, pintles and axles, are to be carried out after completing the major part of the welding of the after part of the ship. The contacts between the conical surfaces of pintles, rudder stocks and rudder axles are to be checked before the final mounting.

8. 3 Trial trip and operational tests

8. 3. 1 The items listed in Table 1. 8. 1: Trial trip and operational tests are to be tested on completion of the installation or at sea trials.

Table 1. 8. 1: Trial trip and operational tests

Item	Requirement
Sliding watertight doors	To be operated under working conditions
Windlass	An anchoring test is to be carried out in the presence of the Surveyor The test should demonstrate that the windlass with brakes, etc. functions satisfactorily, and that the power to raise anchor can be developed and satisfies the Rule requirements For Rule requirements, *See* Pt 3, Ch 13, 7 Equipment.

Steering gear, main and auxiliary	To be tested under working conditions, to the satisfaction of the Surveyors,to demonstrate that the Rule requirements are met For Rule requirements, *See* Pt 5, Ch 19 Steering Systems.
Bilge suctions in holds, and hand pumps in peak spaces	To be tested under working conditions to the satisfaction of the Surveyors.

PART

3

CHAPTER **1** **General**

SECTION **9** **Procedures for testing tanks and tight boundaries**

9. 1 General

9. 1. 1 The test procedures detailed in this Section are to be used to confirm the watertightness of tanks and watertight boundaries, the structural adequacy of tanks and weathertightness of structures.

9. 2 Application

9. 2. 1 The testing requirements for gravity tanks, defined as tanks subject to a vapour pressure not greater than 70 kN/m^2, and other boundaries required to be watertight or weathertight, are to be tested in accordance with this Section. Tests are to be carried out in the presence of a Surveyor at a stage sufficiently close to completion such that the strength and tightness are not subsequently impaired and prior to any sealing and cement work being applied over joints *See also* Pt 3, Ch 1, 9.8, Application of coating.

9. 2. 2 Testing procedures for watertight compartments for SOLAS Ships (including CSR BC & OT) are to be carried out in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 1, 9.4, Structural test procedures for SOLAS ships, unless:

a. the shipyard provides documentary evidence of the Shipowner's agreement to a request to the responsible Flag Administration for an exemption from the application of SOLAS, Ch. II.1, Part B-2, *Regulation 11 - Initial testing of watertight bulkheads, etc.* or for an equivalency agreeing that the content of Pt 3, Ch 1, 9.5, Structural test procedures for non-SOLAS ships and SOLAS exempt/equivalent ships is equivalent to *Regulation 11 - Initial testing of watertight bulkheads, etc.* and;

b. the above-mentioned exemption/equivalency has been granted by the responsible Flag Administration.

9. 2. 3 Where the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 1, 9.2 Application 9.2.2.a and Pt 3, Ch 1, 9.2 Application 9.2.2.b have been met, then the testing procedures for watertight compartments for SOLAS Ships (including CSR BC & OT) are to be carried out in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 1, 9.5, Structural test procedures for non-SOLAS ships and SOLAS exempt/equivalent ships

9. 2. 4 Testing procedures for watertight compartments for non-SOLAS Ships are to be carried out in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 1, 9.5, Structural test procedures for non-SOLAS ships and SOLAS exempt/equivalent ships.

9. 2. 5 The testing of cargo containment systems of liquefied gas carriers are to be in accordance with the requirements of the *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk*.

9. 2. 6 The testing of structures not listed in this Section are to be specially considered.

Table 1. 9. 1: Testing requirements

Item to be tested	Testing procedure	Testing requirement
Double bottom tanks, *See* Note 1	Leak and structural	The greater of: head of water up to the top of the overflow head of water 2.4 m above top of tank, *See* Note 2 head of water up to bulkhead deck
Combined double bottom and hopper side tanks	Leak and structural	The greater of: head of water up to the top of the overflow head of water representing the maximum pressure experienced in service
Double bottom voids, *See* Note 3	Leak	
Double side tanks	Leak and structural	
Combined double bottom, lower hopper and topside tanks	Leak and structural	The greater of: head of water up to the top of the overflow head of water 2.4 m above top of tank, *See* Note 2 head of water up to bulkhead deck
Topside tanks	Leak and structural	
Double side voids	Leak	
Deep tanks (other than those listed elsewhere)	Leak and structural	The greater of: head of water up to the top of the overflow head of water 2.4 m above top of tank, *See* Note 2
Cargo oil tanks, and fuel oil bunkers	Leak and structural	The greater of: head of water up to the top of the overflow head of water 2.4 m above top of tank, *See* Note 2 head of water up to top of tank, *See* Note 2, plus setting of fitted pressure-relief valve
Scupper and discharge pipes in way of tanks	Leak and structural	
Ballast hold of bulk carriers	Leak and structural	Head of water up to the top of cargo hatch coaming, *See* Note 9
Holds used for in-port ballasting	Leak and structural	Head of water representing the maximum loading that will occur in-port as indicated in the Loading Manual.

Peak tanks, *See* Note 4	Leak and structural	The greater of: head of water up to the top of the overflow head of water 2.4 m above top of tank, *See* Note 2
Fore peak spaces with equipment	Leak	
Fore peak voids	Leak	
Aft peak spaces with equipment	Leak	
Aft peak voids, *See* Note 4	Leak	
Cofferdams	Leak	
Watertight bulkheads	Leak	*See* Note 5
Superstructure end bulkhead	Leak	
Watertight doors below freeboard or bulkhead deck, and watertight hatches	Leak	*See* Notes 6 and 12
Double plate rudder blades	Leak	
Shaft tunnel clear of deep tanks	Leak	*See* Note 5
Shell doors when fitted in place	Leak	*See* Notes 5 and 7
Weathertight doors, hatch covers and closing appliances	Leak	*See* Note 5
Steel hatch covers fitted to the cargo oil tanks and cargo holds of ships used for the alternate carriage of oil cargo and dry bulk cargo	Leak	*See* Note 5
Chain locker	Leak and structural	Head of water up to top of chain pipe
Independent edible liquid tanks	Leak and structural	The greater of: head of water up to the top of the overflow head of water 0.9 m above top of tank, *See* Note 2
L.O. Sump tanks and other similar tanks/spaces under main engines	Leak	*See* Notes 5 and 11
Ballast ducts	Leak and structural	The greater of: ballast pump maximum pressure setting of pressure-relief valve

Chemical tanker cargo tanks	Leak and structural	The greater of: head of water 2.4 m above top of tank, *See* Notes 2 and 8 head of water up to top of tank, *See* Notes 2 and 8, plus setting of fitted pressure-relief valve
Independent tanks, *See* Note 13	Leak and structural	The greater of: head of water up to the top of the overflow head of water 2.4 m above top of tank, *See* Note 2

Note *1.* Including tanks arranged in accordance with the provisions of SOLAS *Regulation 9 - Double bottoms in passenger ships and cargo ships other than tankers*.

Note *2.* Top of tank is the deck forming the top of the tank, excluding any hatchways. In holds for liquid cargo or ballast with large hatch openings, the top of tank is to be taken to the top of the hatch.

Note *3.* Including dry compartments and duct keels arranged in accordance with the provisions of SOLAS Chapter II-1 *Regulation 9 - Double bottoms in passenger ships and cargo ships other than tankers* and *Regulation 11 - Initial testing of watertight bulkheads, etc.*, as well as voids used for the protection of fuel oil tanks and pump rooms arranged in accordance with the provisions of MARPOL Annex I, *Reg. 12A* and *Reg. 22*.

Note *4.* Testing of the aft peak is to be carried out after the sterntube has been fitted.

Note *5.* A hose test will be considered, *See* Pt 3, Ch 1, 9.6 Leak test procedures 9.6.2 and Pt 3, Ch 1, 9.7 Definitions and details of tests 9.7.3.

Note *6.* Watertight doors and hatches not confirmed watertight by a prototype test are to be subject to a hydrostatic test, *See* SOLAS Chapter II-1 *Regulation 16 - Construction and initial tests of watertight closures*

Note *7.* For shell doors providing watertight closure, watertightness is to be demonstrated through prototype testing before installation. The testing procedure is to be agreed with ACS prior to testing.

Note 8. Where a cargo tank is designed for the carriage of cargoes with a specific gravity greater than 1.0, an appropriate additional head is to be considered.

Note 9. Where air vents are fitted below the top of the coaming, adequate blanking off of these vents may be required prior to the commencement of the test.

Note *10.* Other testing methods listed in Pt 3, Ch 1, 9.7 Definitions and details of tests 9.7.7 and Pt 3, Ch 1, 9.7 Definitions and details of tests 9.7.8 may be considered, subject to adequacy of such testing methods being verified, *See* SOLAS Chapter II-1 *Regulation 11 - Initial testing of watertight bulkheads, etc.*.

Note 11. Where L.O. sump tanks and other similar spaces under main engines intended to hold liquid form part of the watertight subdivision of the ship, they are to be tested in accordance with the requirements for deep tanks (other than those listed elsewhere).

Note 12. All watertight doors and hatches are to be hose tested after installation. Hose testing is to be carried out from each side of a door or hatch unless, for a specific application, flooding is anticipated from only one side. Where a hose test is not practicable because of possible damage to machinery, electrical equipment insulation or outfitting items, it may be replaced by an ultrasonic leak test or an equivalent test.

Note 13. Independent tanks not confirmed watertight by a prototype test are to be subject to a hydrostatic test. A leak test is to be carried out after installation on board.

9. 3 Test types

9. 3. 1 The types of test specified in this Section are:

a. **Structural test**: which is to be conducted to verify the tightness and structural adequacy of the construction of tanks. This may be a hydrostatic test or, where the situation warrants, a hydropneumatic test.
b. **Leak test**: which is to be used to verify the tightness of a boundary. Unless a specific test is indicated, this may be a hydrostatic, hydropneumatic test, air or other medium test.

9. 4 Structural test procedures for SOLAS ships

9. 4. 1 Tanks which are intended to hold liquids, and which form part of the watertight subdivision of the ship, shall be tested for tightness and structural strength as indicated in Table 1. 9. 1: Testing requirements.

9. 4. 2 Watertight subdivision means the transverse and longitudinal subdivisions of the ship required to satisfy the subdivision requirements of *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea Chapter II-1 - Construction - Structure, subdivision and stability, machinery and electrical installations*.

9. 4. 3 Where a structural test is specified in Table 1. 9. 1: Testing requirements, unless specified otherwise, a hydrostatic test is to be carried out in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 1, 9.7 Definitions and details of tests 9.7.1. Where practical limitations prevent a hydrostatic test being carried out, a hydropneumatic test in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 1, 9.7 Definitions and details of tests 9.7.2 is to be conducted. All external boundaries of the tested space are to be examined for structural distortion, bulging, buckling, or other related damage and/or leaks.

9. 4. 4 A hydrostatic test or hydropneumatic test may be carried out afloat to confirm the structural adequacy of tanks, provided that a leak test is carried out and the results are confirmed as satisfactory before the vessel is afloat.

9. 4. 5 Consideration is to be given to the selection of tanks to be structurally tested. Selected tanks are to be chosen so that all representative structural members are tested for the expected tension and compression. Tank boundaries are to be tested from at least one side.

9. 4. 6 For watertight boundaries of spaces other than tanks, excluding ballast holds, chain lockers and cargo holds which are intended to be used for in-port ballasting, structural testing may be exempted completely, provided that the watertightness in all boundaries of exempted spaces are verified by leak tests and thorough inspection. The testing of ballast holds, chain lockers and cargo holds which are intended to be used for in-port ballasting, are to comply with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 1, 9.4 Structural test procedures for SOLAS ships 9.4.3 to Pt 3, Ch 1, 9.4 Structural test procedures for SOLAS ships 9.4.5.

9. 4. 7 Tanks which do not form part of the watertight subdivision of the ship, need not be structurally tested providing that the watertightness of all boundaries of these spaces is verified by leak tests and thorough inspection.

9. 5 Structural test procedures for non-SOLAS ships and SOLAS exempt/equivalent ships

9. 5. 1 Testing procedures are to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 1, 9.4, Structural test procedures for SOLAS ships in association with the alternative test procedures given in Pt 3, Ch 1, 9.5 Structural test procedures for non-SOLAS ships and SOLAS exempt/equivalent ships 9.5.2 to Pt 3, Ch 1, 9.5 Structural test procedures for non-SOLAS ships and SOLAS exempt/equivalent ships 9.5.5.

9. 5. 2 For tanks of the same structural design, configuration and the same general workmanship, as determined by the attending Surveyor, a structural test need only be carried out on one tank, provided that all subsequent tanks are tested for leaks by an air test. The relaxation to accept leak testing using an air test instead of a structural test does not apply to cargo space boundaries

adjacent to other compartments in tankers and combination carriers or to the boundaries of tanks for segregated cargoes or pollutant cargoes in other types of ship.

9. 5. 3 Where the structural adequacy of a tank has been verified by structural testing on a previous vessel in a series, tanks of structural similarity on subsequent vessels within that series (which are built at the same shipyard) need not be structurally tested, provided that the watertightness of all exempt tanks is verified by leak tests and thorough inspection. However, structural testing is to be carried out for at least one tank of each type of tank on every vessel in the series. The relaxation to accept leak testing and thorough inspections instead of a structural test on subsequent vessels in a series does not apply to cargo space boundaries adjacent to other compartments in tankers and combination carriers or to the boundaries of tanks for segregated cargoes or pollutant cargoes in other types of ship.

9. 5. 4 For sister ships built two or more years after the delivery of the last ship of the series, the application of the provisions of Pt 3, Ch 1, 9.5 Structural test procedures for non-SOLAS ships and SOLAS exempt/equivalent ships 9.5.3 will be specially considered provided that the general practices, equipment and workmanship of the shipyard have been maintained continuously, and an NDT programme is implemented for the tanks not subject to structural tests.

9. 5. 5 Tanks exempted from structural testing in Pt 3, Ch 1, 9.5 Structural test procedures for non-SOLAS ships and SOLAS exempt/equivalent ships 9.5.2 and Pt 3, Ch 1, 9.5 Structural test procedures for non-SOLAS ships and SOLAS exempt/equivalent ships 9.5.3 will require structural testing if found necessary after the structural testing of the first tank.

9. 6 Leak test procedures

9. 6. 1 Where a leak test is specified in Table 1. 9. 1: Testing requirements, unless specified otherwise, a tank air test, compressed air fillet weld test, or vacuum box test is to be carried out in accordance with the applicable requirements of Pt 3, Ch 1, 9.7 Definitions and details of tests 9.7.4 to Pt 3, Ch 1, 9.7 Definitions and details of tests 9.7.6. A hydrostatic or hydropneumatic test conducted in accordance with the applicable requirements of Pt 3, Ch 1, 9.7 Definitions and details of tests 9.7.1 and Pt 3, Ch 1, 9.7 Definitions and details of tests 9.7.2 will be accepted as a leak test on the condition that safe access to all joints being examined is provided, *See* Pt 3, Ch 1, 9.9 Safe access to joints 9.9.1. Where a hydrostatic or hydropneumatic test is applied as a leak test, the external boundaries are to be free of any liquid residue prior to the commencement of the test.

9. 6. 2 A hose test will be accepted as means of verifying the tightness of joints only in specific locations, identified in Table 1. 9. 1: Testing requirements.

9. 6. 3 Air tests of joints may be conducted at any stage during construction provided that all work that might affect the tightness of the joint is completed before the test is carried out.

9. 6. 4 Where acceptable to the attending Surveyor, provided that careful visual inspections show a continuous uniform weld profile shape, free from repairs, and the results of selected NDE testing show no significant defects, the leak testing of automatic butt welds and semi-automatic (flux core arc welding) butt welds may be omitted.

9. 7 Definitions and details of tests

9. 7. 1 **Hydrostatic test** is a test conducted by filling a space with a liquid to a specified head. Unless another liquid is approved, the hydrostatic test is to consist of filling a space with either fresh or sea-water, whichever is appropriate for the space being tested, to the level specified in Table 1. 9. 1: Testing requirements. For tanks intended to carry cargoes of a higher density than the test liquid, the head of the liquid is to be specially considered.

9. 7. 2 **Hydropneumatic test** is a combination of a hydrostatic test and a tank air test, consisting of partially filling a tank with water and conducting a tank air test on the unfilled portion of the tank. A hydropneumatic test, where approved, is to be such that the test condition in conjunction with

the approved liquid level and air pressure will simulate the actual loading as far as practicable. The requirements for tank air testing shown in Pt 3, Ch 1, 9.7 Definitions and details of tests 9.7.4 are to be adhered to.

9. 7. 3 **Hose test** is a test used to verify the tightness of joints with a jet of water. The jet of water is to be directed perpendicular to the joint. It is to be carried out with the pressure in the hose nozzle maintained at not less than 0.2 MPa during the test. The hose nozzle is to have a minimum inside diameter of 12 mm and is to be situated no further than 1.5 m from the joint. Where a hose test is not practical because of possible damage to machinery, electrical equipment insulation or outfitting items, it may be replaced by a careful visual examination of welded connections, supported by an ultrasonic or penetration leak test, or an equivalent, *See* SOLAS *Regulation 11 - Initial testing of watertight bulkheads, etc.*

9. 7. 4 **Tank air test** is to be used to verify the tightness of a compartment by means of an air pressure differential and leak indicator solution. An efficient indicating solution (e.g. soapy water) is to be applied to the weld or penetration being tested and is to be examined whilst an air pressure differential of not less than 0.015 MPa is applied by pumping air into the compartment. Arrangements are to be made to ensure that any increase in air pressure does not exceed 0.03 MPa. A U-tube with a height sufficient to hold a head of water corresponding to the required test pressure is to be used for verification and to avoid overpressure. The cross-sectional area of the U-tube is not to be less than that of the pipe supplying air to the tank. Alternatively, two calibrated pressure gauges may be considered acceptable. All boundary welds, including pipe connections in the compartment are to be examined twice. The first is to be examined immediately upon applying the leak indication solution; the second approximately five minutes afterwards.

9. 7. 5 **Compressed air fillet weld test**. This test consists of compressed air being injected into one end of a fillet welded joint and the pressure verified at the other end of the joint by a pressure gauge. Pressure gauges are to be arranged so that an air pressure of at least 0.015 MPa above atmospheric pressure can be verified at each end of all passages within the portion being tested. A leak indicator solution is to be applied and the weld line examined for leaks. A compressed air test may be carried out for partial penetration welds where the root face is greater than 6 mm.

9. 7. 6 **Vacuum box test** is a test used to verify the tightness of joints by means of a localised air pressure differential and leak indicator solution. The test is to be conducted with the use of a box with air connections, gauges and an inspection window that is to be placed over the joint being tested with a leak indicator solution applied. The air within the box is to be removed by an ejector to create a vacuum i.e. a pressure differential of 0.02 to 0.026 MPa inside the box.

9. 7. 7 **Ultrasonic test** may be used where a hose test is not practical to verify the tightness of a boundary, *See* Pt 3, Ch 1, 9.7 Definitions and details of tests 9.7.3. An arrangement of ultrasonic echo transmitters is to be placed inside a compartment and a receiver outside. The receiver is to be used to detect any leaks in the compartment.

9. 7. 8 **Penetration test** may be used where a hose test is not practical to assess butt welds, *See* Pt 3, Ch 1, 9.7 Definitions and details of tests 9.7.3, by applying a low surface tension liquid to one side of a compartment boundary. When no liquid is detected on the opposite side of the boundary after expiration of a defined period of time, the verification of tightness of the compartment's boundary may be assumed. A developer solution may be applied on the other side of the weld to aid leak detection.

9. 7. 9 Other methods of testing may be considered and are to be agreed by ACS prior to commencement of testing.

9. 8 Application of coating

9. 8. 1 A final coating may be applied over automatic butt welds before the completion of a leak test, provided that careful visual inspections show continuous uniform weld profile shape, free from repairs, and the results of selected NDE testing show no significant defects. For all other joints,

the final coating is to be applied after the completion of a leak test. The Surveyor reserves the right to require a leak test prior to the application of the final coating over automatic erection butt welds.

9. 8. 2 Any temporary coating which may conceal defects or leaks is to be applied at a time as specified for the final coating, *See* Pt 3, Ch 1, 9.8 Application of coating 9.8.1. This requirement does not apply to shop primer.

9. 9 Safe access to joints

9. 9. 1 For leak tests, safe access to all joints under examination is to be provided.

PART

3

CHAPTER **2 Materials**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**Materials of construction**		**868**
	1. 1	General	868
	1. 2	Steel	868
	1. 3	Aluminium	870
SECTION 2	**Fracture control**		**871**
	2. 2	Refrigerated spaces	872
	2. 3	Structures exposed to low temperatures	876
	2. 4	Carriage of cold cargoes	877
SECTION 3	**Corrosion protection**		**880**
	3. 1	General	880
	3. 2	Prefabrication primers	880
	3. 3	Internal cathodic protection	880
	3. 4	Aluminium and magnesium anodes	881
	3. 5	External hull protection	881
	3. 6	Application of coatings and alternative means of protection	881
SECTION 4	**Corrosion protection**		**883**
	4. 1	General	883

PART

3

CHAPTER **2 Materials**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 2. 1. 1: Values of k_L 868

Table 2. 2. 1: Material classes and grades 872

Table 2. 2. 2: Steel grades 875

Table 2. 2. 3: Grades of steel for refrigerated spaces with a minimum design temperatures below 0°C 876

Table 2. 2. 4: Assessment of deck temperature 876

Table 2. 2. 5: Material classes and grades for structures exposed to low air temperatures 877

Table 2. 2. 6: Materials for Class I for low air temperatures 878

Table 2. 2. 7: Materials for Class II for low air temperatures 878

Table 2. 2. 8: Materials for Class III for low air temperatures 878

PART

3

CHAPTER **2 Materials**

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 2. 2. 1: Design air temperature 872

PART

3

CHAPTER **2** **Materials**

SECTION **1** **Materials of construction**

1. 1 General

1. 1. 1 The Rules relate in general to the construction of steel ships, although consideration will be given to the use of other materials.

1. 1. 2 The materials used in the construction of the ship are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of the Part 2 (hereinafter referred to as Rules for Materials). Materials for which provision is not made therein may be accepted, provided that they comply with an approved specification and such tests as may be considered necessary.

1. 1. 3 The requirements in this Chapter are not applicable to Double Hull Oil Tankers or Bulk Carriers with a **CSR** notation (*See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull)) with the exception of Pt 3, Ch 2, 1.2 Steel 1.2.6 and Pt 3, Ch 2, 3.2 Prefabrication primers which are to be complied with.

1. 2 Steel

1. 2. 1 Steel having a specified minimum yield stress of 235 N/mm^2 is regarded as mild steel. Steel having a higher specified minimum yield stress is regarded as higher tensile steel.

1. 2. 2 For the determination of the hull girder section modulus, where higher tensile steel is used, a higher tensile steel factor, k_L, is given in Table 2. 1. 1: Values of kL.

Table 2. 1. 1: Values of k_L

Specified minimum yield stress in N/mm^2	k_L
235	1.0
265	0.92
315	0.78
355	0.72
390	0.68 (0.66 *See* Note 3)
460 *See* Note 4	0.62 *See* Note 4

Note *1.* Intermediate values by linear interpolation.

Note *2.* For the purpose of calculating hull moment of inertia as specified in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.8 Hull moment of inertia 5.8.1, k_L = 1.0.

Note *3.* A k_L factor of 0.66 may be applied to all ship types provided that a fatigue assessment is carried out as required by Pt 3, Ch 2, 1.2 Steel 1.2.4.

Note *4.* Grade only applies to thickness above 50 mm for upper deck, hatch coamings, shear strake, uppermost strake of longitudinal bulkhead and other longitudinal strength members in way of the above structures of container ships. The requirements specified in Ch 3, 3 Higher strength steels for ship and other structural applications of the Part 2 Rules for Materials apply, *See* Pt 3, Ch 2, 1.2 Steel 1.2.4 and Pt 3, Ch 2, 1.2 Steel 1.2.5.

1. 2. 3 The local scantling requirements of higher tensile steel plating, longitudinals, stiffeners and girders may be based on a k factor determined as follows:

$$k = \frac{235}{\sigma_o}$$

or 0.66, whichever is the greater,

Where

σ_o = specific minimum yield stress in N/mm^2

1. 2. 4 For the application of the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 2, 1.2 Steel 1.2.2 and Pt 3, Ch 2, 1.2 Steel 1.2.3, special consideration will be given to steel where σ_o >355 N/mm^2. Where such steel grades are used in areas which are subject to fatigue loading, the structural details are to be verified using fatigue design assessment methods.

1. 2. 5 For container ships only a k_L factor of 0.62 may be applied to steel with a specified minimum yield stress of 460 N/mm^2 for structural members that contribute to the ship's longitudinal strength, provided that:

a. the member's plate or web thickness is greater than 50 mm, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 8, 2.3 Requirements for use of thick steel plates;

b. the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 2, 1.2 Steel 1.2.4 are satisfied; and

c. a spectral fatigue assessment is carried out in accordance with *ACSPlus Fatigue Design Assessment (FDA level 3) Guidelines*, to demonstrate that key structural details sensitive to the hull girder loads have satisfactory fatigue performance. The assessment should normally include the following:

- Hatch corners in way of cross-deck strips;
- Hatch corners at the forward region;
- Hatch corners forward and aft of the engine room and the accommodation blocks;
- Connection of hatch coaming to supporting structure; and
- Other critical locations subject to dynamic hull girder bending and torsional effects.

d. In addition, the *ACSPlus Construction Monitoring (CM) Guidelines* is to be applied to the fatigue critical locations described above.

1. 2. 6 Where steel castings or forgings are used for sternframes, rudder frames, rudder stocks, propeller shaft brackets and other major structural items, they are to comply with Ch 4 Steel Castings or Ch 5 Steel Forgings of the Part 2 Rules for Materials, as appropriate.

1. 3 Aluminium

1. 3. 1 The use of aluminium alloy is permitted for superstructures, deckhouses, hatch covers, helicopter platforms, or other local components on board ships.

1. 3. 2 Aluminium is not to be used for the crowns or casings of Category A machinery spaces, *See* Pt 5, Ch 1, 4.9 Category A machinery spaces 4.9.1.

1. 3. 3 Except where otherwise stated, equivalent scantlings are to be derived as follows:

a. Plating thickness;

$$t_a = t_s\sqrt{k_a}c$$

b. Section modulus of stiffeners;

$$Z_{\mathrm{a}} = Z_s k_a c$$

Where

c = 0.95 for high corrosion resistant alloy

$$\mathrm{k}_a = \frac{245}{\sigma_{\mathrm{a}}}$$

t_{a} = thickness of aluminium plating

t_{s} = thickness of mild steel plating

Z_{s} = section modulus of mild steel stiffener

σ_{a} = 0.2 per cent proof stress or 70 per cent of the ultimate strength of the material, whichever is the lesser.

1. 3. 4 In general, for welded structure, the maximum value of σ_a to be used in the scantlings derivation is that of the aluminium in the welded condition. However, consideration will be given to using unwelded values depending upon the weld line location, other heat affected zones, in relation to the maximum applied stress on the member (e.g. extruded sections).

1. 3. 5 A comparison of the mechanical properties for selected welded and unwelded alloys is given in Ch 13, 8.3 Fabrication and welding 8.3.2 of the Part 2 Rules for Materials.

1. 3. 6 Where strain hardened grades (designated Hxxx) are used, adequate protection by coating is to be provided to avoid the risk of stress corrosion cracking.

PART

3

CHAPTER 2 Materials

SECTION 2 Fracture control

2. 1. 1 The resistance to fracture is controlled, in part, by the notch toughness of the steel used in the structure. Steels with different levels of notch toughness are specified in the Part 2 The grade of steel to be used is, in general, related to the thickness of the material and the stress pattern associated with its location.

2. 1. 2 In order to distinguish between the material grade requirements for different hull members at varying locations along the ship, material classes are assigned as shown in Table 2. 2. 1: Material classes and grades. For each class, depending on thickness, the material grade requirements are not to be lower than those given in .

2. 1. 3 Where tee or cruciform connections employ full penetration welds, and the plate material is subject to significant strains in a direction perpendicular to the rolled surfaces, it is recommended that consideration be given to the use of special plate material with specified through thickness properties, as detailed in Ch 3, 8 Plates with specified through thickness properties of the Part 2 Rules for Materials.

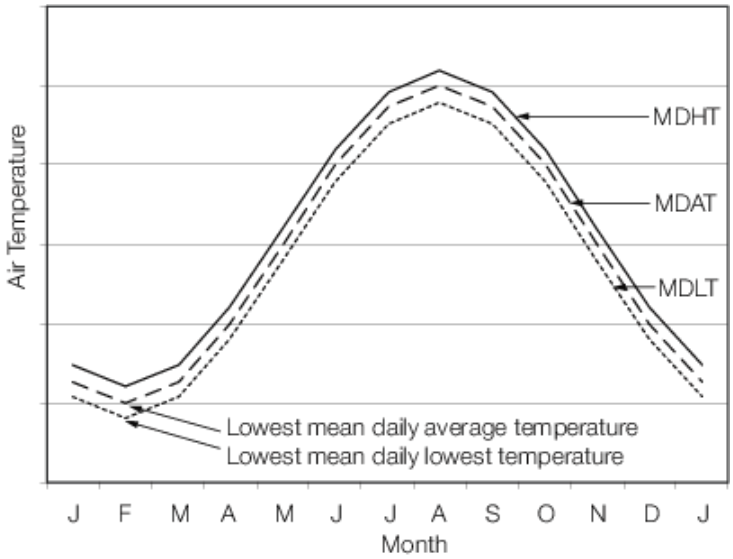
2. 1. 4 Design for normal worldwide service assumes the navigation to areas of minus 10°C, where the design air temperature is to be taken as the lowest mean daily average air temperature in the area of operation:

Where

Mean	=	statistical mean over a minimum of 20 years
Average	=	average during one day and one night
Lowest	=	lowest during the year
MDHT	=	Mean Daily High Temperature
MDAT	=	Mean Daily Average Temperature
MDLT	=	Mean Daily Low Temperature

Figure 2. 2. 1: Design air temperature shows the definition graphically.
The material grade of exposed structure of ships intended to operate in external air temperatures below minus 10°C is to be in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 2, 2.3 Structures exposed to low temperatures.

Figure 2. 2. 1: Design air temperature



2. 1. 5 For container ships only, measures for the prevention of brittle fracture of thick plates are to be taken in accordance with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 8, 2.3 Requirements for use of thick steel plates.

2. 2 Refrigerated spaces

2. 2. 1 Where the minimum design temperature of the steel falls below 0°C in refrigerated spaces, in addition to the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 2, 2.1 Grades of steel 2.1.2, the grade of steel for the following items is to comply, in general, with the requirements of Table 2. 2. 3: Grades of steel for refrigerated spaces with a minimum design temperatures below 0°C:

- Deck plating.
- Webs of deck girders.
- Longitudinal bulkhead strakes attached to deck.
- Shelf plates and their face bars supporting hatch covers.

2. 2. 2 Unless a temperature gradient calculation is carried out to assess the design temperature in the items defined in Pt 3, Ch 2, 2.2 Refrigerated spaces 2.2.1, the temperature to which the steel deck may be subjected is to be assessed as shown in Table 2. 2. 4: Assessment of deck temperature.

Table 2. 2. 1: Material classes and grades

Structural member category	Material class/Minimum grade
SECONDARY	
A1. Longitudinal bulkhead strakes, other than belonging to the Primary category	
A2. Deck plating exposed to weather, other than that belonging to the Primary or Special category	Class I within 0.4*L* amidships
A3. Side plating	Grade A/AH outside 0.4*L* amidships
PRIMARY	

B1. Bottom plating, including keel plate	
B2. Strength deck plating, excluding that belonging to the Special category	
B3. Continuous longitudinal plating of strength members above strength deck, excluding hatch coamings	Class II within 0.4*L* amidships
B4. Uppermost strake in longitudinal bulkhead	Grade A/AH outside 0.4*L* amidships
B5. Vertical strake (hatch side girder) and uppermost sloped strake in top wing tank	
SPECIAL	
C1. Sheerstrake (or rounded gunwale) and stringer plate at strength deck, *See* Note 1	Class III within 0.4*L* amidships
C2. Deck strake at longitudinal bulkhead excluding deck plating in way of inner skin bulkhead of double hull ships, *See* Note 1	Class II outside 0.4*L* amidships Class I outside 0.6*L* amidships
C3. Strength deck plating at outboard corners of cargo hatch openings (and plating intersections of the longitudinal underdeck girders and the cross-deck strips) in container carriers and other ships with similar hatch opening configurations	Class III within 0.4*L* amidships Class II outside 0.4*L* amidships Class I outside 0.6*L* amidships Minimum Class III within cargo region
C4. Strength deck plating at corners of cargo hatch openings in bulk carriers (*See* Pt 3, Ch 2, 1.1 General 1.1.3), ore carriers, combination carriers and other ships with similar hatch opening configurations	Class III within 0.6*L* amidships
C5. Trunk deck and inner deck plating at corners of openings for liquid and gas domes in membrane type liquefied gas carriers	Class II within rest of cargo region
C6. Bilge strake in ships with double bottom over the full breadth and length less than 150 m	Class II within 0.6*L* amidships Class I outside 0.6*L* amidships
C7. Bilge strake in other ships , *See* Note 1	Class III within 0.4*L* amidships Class II outside 0.4*L* amidships Class I outside 0.6*L* amidships
C8 Longitudinal hatch coamings of length greater than 0.15*L* including coaming top plate and flange	Class III within 0.4*L* amidships Class II outside 0.4*L* amidships

C9.	End brackets and deck house transition of longitudinal cargo hatch coamings	Class I outside 0.6*L* amidships Not to be less than Grade D/DH
ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR SINGLE STRENGTH DECK SHIPS OF LENGTH GREATER THAN 150 m.		
D1.	Longitudinal plating of strength deck where contributing to the longitudinal strength	Grade B/AH within 0.4*L* amidships
D2.	Continuous longitudinal plating of strength members above strength deck	
D3	Continuous longitudinal trunk deck plating of membrane type liquefied gas carriers	Class II within 0.4*L* amidships
D4	Single side strakes for ships without inner continuous longitudinal bulkhead(s) between bottom and strength deck	Grade B/AH within cargo region
ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR SHIPS OF LENGTH GREATER THAN 250 m.		
E1.	Sheerstrake (or rounded gunwale) and stringer plate at strength deck, *See* Note 2	Grade E/EH within 0.4*L* amidships
E2.	Bilge strake, *See* Note 2	Grade D/DH within 0.6*L* amidships
SINGLE SKIN BULK CARRIERS SUBJECTED TO SOLAS REGULATION XII/6.5		
F1.	Lower bracket of ordinary side frame, *See* Notes 6 and 7	Grade D/DH
F2.	Side shell strakes included totally or partially between the two points located to 0.125l above and below the intersection of side shell and bilge hopper sloping plate or inner bottom plate, *See* Note 7	Grade D/DH

Note *1.* Single strakes required to be of Class III and within 0.4L amidships are to have breadths not less than 800 + 5L mm, but need not be greater than 1800 mm, unless limited by the geometry of the ship's design.

Note *2.* Single strakes required to be of Grade E/EH and within 0.4L amidships are to have breadths not less than 800 + 5L mm, but need not be greater than 1800 mm, unless limited by the geometry of the ship's design.

Note *3.* For strength members not mentioned, Grade A/AH may be generally used.

Note *4.* Steel grade is to correspond to the as-fitted thickness.

Note *5.* Plating materials for sternframes supporting the rudder and propeller boss, rudders, rudder horns and shaft brackets are, in general, not to be of lower grades than corresponding to Class II. For rudder and rudder body plates subjected to stress concentrations (e.g. in way of lower support of semi-spade rudders or at upper part of spade rudders) Class III is to be applied.

Note *6.* The term 'lower bracket' means webs of lower brackets and webs of the lower part of side frames up to the point of 0.125l above the intersection of side shell and bilge hopper sloping plate or inner bottom plate.

Note *7.* The span of the side frame, l, is defined as the distance between the supporting structures.

Note *8.* Corner inserts in way of complex openings such as for lifts and side doors which may impinge on the deck plating or stringer plate are to be of Grade D/DH for $t \leq 20$ mm and Grade E/EH for $t > 20$ mm.

Note *9.* The material class used for reinforcement and the quality of material (i.e. whether mild or higher tensile steel) used for welded attachments, such as waterway bars and bilge keels, is to be similar to that of the hull envelope plating in way. Where attachments are made to rounded gunwale plates, special consideration will be given to the required grade of steel, taking account of the intended structural arrangements and attachment details.

Note *10.* The material class for deck plating, sheer strake and upper strake of longitudinal bulkhead within 0.4L amidships is also to be applied at structural breaks of the superstructure, irrespective of position.

Note *11.* Engine seat top plates outside 0.6L amidships may be Grade A/AH. Steel grade requirement for top plates within 0.6L amidships will be specially considered.

Table 2. 2. 2: Steel grades

Thickness, t, in mm	Material class					
	I		II		III	
	Mild steel	H.T. steel	Mild steel	H.T. steel	Mild steel	H.T. steel
$t \leq 15$	A	AH	A	AH	A	AH
$15 < t \leq 20$	A	AH	A	AH	B	AH
$20 < t \leq 25$	A	AH	B	AH	D	DH
$25 < t \leq 30$	A	AH	D	DH	D	DH
$30 < t \leq 35$	B	AH	D	DH	E	EH
$35 < t \leq 40$	B	AH	D	DH	E	EH
$t > 40$	D	DH	E	EH	E	EH

Note *See* Notes under Table 2. 2. 1: Material classes and grades

Table 2. 2. 3: Grades of steel for refrigerated spaces with a minimum design temperatures below 0°C

Minimum design temperature, in °C	Thickness, in mm	Grades of steel
<0 to –10	$t \leq 12.5$	B/AH
	12.5 $t \leq 25.5$	D/DH
	$t > 25.5$	E/EH
<–10 to –25	$t \leq 12.5$	D/DH
	$t > 12.5$	E/EH
<– 25 to –40	$t \leq 12.5$	E/EH
	$t > 12.5$	FH/LT–FH, *See also* Ch 3, 6 Carbon–manganese and nickel alloy steels for low temperature service of the Part 2 Rules for Materials

Table 2. 2. 4: Assessment of deck temperature

Arrangement	Deck temperature
(1) Deck not covered with insulation in the refrigerated space	Temperature of the refrigerated space
(2) Deck covered with insulation in the refrigerated space and not insulated on the other side	Temperature of the space on the uninsulated side
(3) Deck covered with insulation on both sides	
(a) Temperature difference not greater than 11°C	Mean of the temperatures of the spaces above and below the deck
(b) Temperature difference greater than 11°C but not greater than 33°C	Mean of the temperatures of the spaces above and below the deck less 3°C
(c) Temperature difference greater than 33°C	Deck temperature will be specially assessed
Note Where one of the internal spaces concerned is not refrigerated, the temperature of the space is to be taken as 5°C.	

2. 3 Structures exposed to low temperatures

2. 3. 1 For ships intended to operate in areas with low air temperatures (below −10°C), e.g. regular service during winter seasons to Arctic or Antarctic waters, the material grade requirements of structures above the lowest ballast water line exposed to air are not to be of lower grades than those given in Table 2. 2. 5: Material classes and grades for structures exposed to low air temperatures , Table 2. 2. 6: Materials for Class I for low air temperatures, Table 2. 2. 7: Materials for Class II for low air temperatures and Table 2. 2. 8: Materials for Class III for low air temperatures.

2. 3. 2 Where the material class in Table 2. 2. 1: Material classes and grades is higher than in Table 2. 2. 5: Material classes and grades for structures exposed to low air temperatures, the higher material class is to be applied.

2. 4 Carriage of cold cargoes

2. 4. 1 For ships other than liquefied gas carriers, which are intended to be loaded with liquid cargo having a temperature below −10°C, e.g. loading from cold onshore storage tanks during winter conditions, the grade of steel for the cargo tank boundary plating is to comply with the requirements of Table 2. 2. 6: Materials for Class I for low air temperatures where the design air temperature is to be taken as the design minimum cargo temperature in °C. The design minimum cargo temperature is to be specified in the Loading Manual, *See* Pt 3, Ch 4, 8.2, Loading Manual 8.2.4.

Table 2. 2. 5: Material classes and grades for structures exposed to low air temperatures

Structural member category	Material class	
	Within 0.4 L amidships	Outside 0.4 L amidships
SECONDARY	I	I
• Deck plating exposed to weather, in general • Side plating above CWL, *See* Note 5 • Transverse bulkheads above CWL, *See* Notes 5 and 6		
PRIMARY	II	I
• Strength deck plating • Continuous longitudinal members above strength deck, excluding longitudinal hatch coamings • Longitudinal bulkhead above CWL, *See* Notes 5 and 6 • Top wing tank bulkhead above CWL, *See* Notes 5 and 6		
SPECIAL	III	II
• Sheerstrake at strength deck, *See* Note 1 • Stringer plate in strength deck, *See* Note 1 • Deck strake at longitudinal bulkhead, *See* Note 2 • Continuous longitudinal hatch coamings, *See* Note 3		

Note 1. Not to be less than Grade E/EH within 0.4L amidships in ships with length exceeding 250 m.

Note 2. In ships with breadth exceeding 70 m at least three deck strakes are to be Class III.

Note 3. Not to be less than Grade D/DH.

Note 4. Within 0.4L amidships, single strakes which are required to be of Class III or of Grade E/EH or FH are to have breadths not less than 800 + 5L, but need not be taken greater than 1800 mm.

Note 5. The Cold Waterline (CWL) is to be taken as 0.3 m below the minimum design Ballast Waterline (BWL).

Note 6. Applicable to plating attached to hull envelope plating exposed to cold air. At least one strake is to be considered in the same way as exposed plating and the strake width is to be at least 600 mm. If thermal stress calculations are performed, then the extent of plate requiring consideration is to be adjusted accordingly.

Table 2. 2. 6: Materials for Class I for low air temperatures

Thickness, mm	Design air temperature									
	−11°C to −15°C		−16°C to −25°C		−26°C to −35°C		−36°C to −45°C		−46°C to −55°C	
	MS	HT	MS	HT	MS	HT	MS	HT	MS	HT
$t \leq 10$	A	AH	A	AH	B	AH	D	DH	D	DH
$10 < t \leq 15$	A	AH	B	AH	D	DH	D	DH	D	DH
$15 < t \leq 20$	A	AH	B	AH	D	DH	D	DH	E	EH
$20 < t \leq 25$	B	AH	D	DH	D	DH	D	DH	E	EH
$25 < t \leq 30$	B	AH	D	DH	D	DH	E	EH	E	EH
$30 < t \leq 35$	D	DH	D	DH	D	DH	E	EH	E	EH
$35 < t \leq 45$	D	DH	D	DH	E	EH	E	EH	n/a	FH
$45 < t \leq 50$	D	DH	E	EH	E	EH	n/a	FH	n/a	FH

Note MS and HT are defined as Mild Steel and High Tensile Steel respectively.

Table 2. 2. 7: Materials for Class II for low air temperatures

Thickness, mm	Design air temperature									
	−11°C to −15°C		−16°C to −25°C		−26°C to −35°C		−36°C to −45°C		−46°C to −55°C	
	MS	HT	MS	HT	MS	HT	MS	HT	MS	HT
$t \leq 10$	A	AH	B	AH	D	DH	D	DH	E	EH
$10 < t \leq 20$	B	AH	D	DH	D	DH	E	EH	E	EH
$20 < t \leq 30$	D	DH	D	DH	E	EH	E	EH	n/a	FH
$30 < t \leq 40$	D	DH	E	EH	E	EH	n/a	FH	n/a	FH
$40 < t \leq 45$	E	EH	E	EH	n/a	FH	n/a	FH	n/a	n/a
$45 < t \leq 50$	E	EH	E	EH	n/a	FH	n/a	FH	n/a	n/a

Note. MS and HT are defined as Mild Steel and High Tensile Steel respectively.

Table 2. 2. 8: Materials for Class III for low air temperatures

Thickness, mm	Design air temperature									
	−11°C to −15°C		−16°C to −25°C		−26°C to −35°C		−36°C to −45°C		−46°C to −55°C	
	MS	HT	MS	HT	MS	HT	MS	HT	MS	HT
$t \leq 10$	B	AH	D	DH	D	DH	E	EH	E	EH
$10 < t \leq 20$	D	DH	D	DH	E	EH	E	EH	n/a	FH
$20 < t \leq 25$	D	DH	E	EH	E	EH	E	FH	n/a	FH
$25 < t \leq 30$	D	DH	E	EH	E	EH	n/a	FH	n/a	FH

$30 < t \leq 35$	E	EH	E	EH	n/a	FH	n/a	FH	n/a	n/a
$35 < t \leq 40$	E	EH	E	EH	n/a	FH	n/a	FH	n/a	n/a
$40 < t \leq 50$	E	EH	n/a	FH	n/a	FH	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a
Note MS and HT are defined as Mild Steel and High Tensile Steel respectively.										

PART

3

CHAPTER **2** **Materials**

SECTION **3** **Corrosion protection**

3. 1 General

3. 1. 1 Where bimetallic connections are made, measures are to be incorporated to mitigate galvanic corrosion.

3. 2 Prefabrication primers

3. 2. 1 Prefabrication primers are to be approved in accordance with Ch 15 Corrosion Prevention of the Part 2 Rules for Materials.

3. 2. 2 Aluminium coatings intended for oil tankers and chemical tankers used in way of the cargo oil tanks, cargo tank deck areas, pumprooms, cofferdams or any other area where oil vapour may accumulate are to be coated using systems containing less than 10 per cent aluminium by weight in the dry film.

3. 3 Internal cathodic protection

3. 3. 1 The requirements for cathodic protection of internal tanks in Ch 15 Corrosion Prevention of the Part 2 Rules for Materials are to be complied with. When a cathodic protection system is to be fitted in tanks for the carriage of liquid cargo with flash point not exceeding 60°C, a plan showing details of the locations and attachment of anodes is to be submitted. The arrangements will be considered for safety against fire and explosion aspects only. Impressed current cathodic protection systems are not permitted in any tank.

3. 3. 2 Particular attention is to be given to the locations of anodes in relation to the structural arrangements and openings of the tank.

3. 3. 3 Anodes are to be of approved design and sufficiently rigid to avoid resonance in the anode support. Steel cores are to be fitted, and these are to be so designed as to retain the anode even when the latter is wasted.

3. 3. 4 Anodes are to be attached to the structure in such a way that they remain secure both initially and during service. The following methods of attachment would be acceptable:

a. Steel core connected to the structure by continuous welding of adequate section.
b. Steel core bolted to separate supports, provided that a minimum of two bolts with lock nuts is used at each support. The separate supports are to be connected to the structure by continuous welding of adequate section.
c. Approved means of mechanical clamping.

3. 3. 5 Anodes are to be attached to stiffeners, or may be aligned in way of stiffeners on plane bulkhead plating, but they are not to be attached to the shell. The two ends are not to be attached to separate members which are capable of relative movement.

3. 3. 6 Where cores or supports are welded to the main structure, they are to be kept clear of the toes of brackets and similar stress raisers. Where they are welded to asymmetrical stiffeners, they are to be connected to the web with the welding kept at least 25 mm away from the edge of the web. In the case of stiffeners or girders with symmetrical face plates, the connection may be made to the web or to the centreline of the face plate but well clear of the free edges. However, it is recommended that anodes are not fitted to face plates of higher tensile steel longitudinals.

3. 4 Aluminium and magnesium anodes

3. 4. 1 Aluminium and aluminium alloy anodes are permitted in tanks which can contain explosive or flammable vapour, or in tanks adjacent to tanks which can contain explosive or flammable vapour, but only at locations where the potential energy of the anode does not exceed 275 J. The weight of the anode is to be taken as the weight at the time of fitting, including any inserts and fitting devices. The height of the anode is, in general, to be measured from the bottom of the tank to the centre of the anode. Where the anode is located on a horizontal surface (such as a bulkhead stringer) not less than 1 m wide, provided with an upstanding flange or face plate projecting not less than 75 mm above the horizontal surface, the height of the anode can be measured above that surface.

3. 4. 2 Aluminium anodes are not to be located under tank hatches or Butterworth openings unless protected by adjacent structure.

3. 4. 3 Magnesium or magnesium alloy anodes are not permitted in tanks which can contain explosive or flammable vapour, or in tanks adjacent to tanks which can contain explosive or flammable vapour. Where permitted for other tanks, adequate venting must be provided.

3. 5 External hull protection

3. 5. 1 Suitable protection of the underwater portion of the hull is to be provided.

3. 5. 2 Where a cathodic protection system is fitted, plans showing the proposed layout of anodes and hull penetrations are to be submitted in accordance with Ch 15 Corrosion Prevention of the Part2 Rules for Materials.

3. 5. 3 All equipment is to be suitable for its intended location.

3. 5. 4 The arrangements for glands, where cables pass through the shell, are to include a small cofferdam.

3. 5. 5 Cables which pass through ballast tanks are to be enclosed in a steel tube of at least 10 mm thickness.

3. 5. 6 Cables to anodes are not to pass through tanks intended for the storage of low flash point products; including, but not limited to, oils.

3. 5. 7 Cables which pass through cofferdams of storage tanks which may contain low flash point products are to be enclosed in a steel tube of at least 10 mm thickness. *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 14 Electrical equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres or in the presence of combustible dusts.

3. 5. 8 Where an ***IWS** (In-water Survey) notation is to be assigned, *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.11, protection of the underwater portion of the hull is to be provided by means of a suitable high resistance paint applied in accordance with the manufacturer's requirements. Details of the high resistance paint are to be submitted for information in accordance with Ch 15 Corrosion Prevention of the Part 2 Rules for Materials.

3. 6 Application of coatings and alternative means of protection

3. 6. 1 For ships that are required to comply with IMO *Resolution MSC.215(82) - Performance Standard for Protective Coatings for Dedicated Seawater Ballast Tanks in all Types of Ships and Double-*

Side Skin Spaces of Bulk Carriers - (Adopted on 8 December 2006), all dedicated sea-water ballast tanks of all types of ships and double-side skin spaces of bulk carriers are to comply with all of the requirements of the Resolution, *See ACSPlus Guidelines Anti-Corrosion Systems Notation* and Ch 15 Corrosion Prevention of the Part 2 Rules for Materials.

3. 6. 2 For ships that are required to comply with IMO *Resolution MSC.288(87) – Performance Standard for Protective Coatings for Cargo Oil Tanks of Crude Oil Tankers – (Adopted on 14 May 2010)* , all cargo oil tanks are to comply with all of the requirements of the Resolution, *See ACSPlus Guidelines Anti-Corrosion System Notation* and Ch 15 Corrosion Prevention of the Part 2 Rules for Materials.

3. 6. 3 For ships that are required to comply with the IMO *Resolution MSC.289(87) – Performance Standard for Alternative Means of Corrosion Protection for Cargo Oil Tanks of Crude Oil Tankers – (Adopted on 14 May 2010)* , by application of corrosion resistant steel, *See* Ch 3, 1.3, Corrosion resistant steels for cargo oil tanks of crude oil tankers of the Part 2 Rules for Materials, all cargo oil tanks are to comply with all of the requirements of the Resolution, *See ACSPlus Guidelines Anti-Corrosion System Notation* and Ch 15 Corrosion Prevention of the Part 2 Rules for Materials.

3. 6. 4 For ships that are required to comply with IMO *Resolution MSC.244(83) - Adoption of Performance Standard for Protective Coatings for Void Spaces on Bulk Carriers and Oil Tankers - (Adopted on 5 October 2007)*, all void spaces are to comply with all of the requirements of the Resolution, *See ACSPlus Guidelines Anti-Corrosion System Notation* and Ch 15 Corrosion Prevention of the Part 2 Rules for Materials.

3. 6. 5 For ships that are not required to comply with the IMO *Resolution MSC.215(82) - Performance Standard for Protective Coatings for Dedicated Seawater Ballast Tanks in all Types of Ships and Double-Side Skin Spaces of Bulk Carriers - (Adopted on 8 December 2006)*, all sea-water ballast spaces having boundaries formed by the hull envelope are to have an efficient protective coating, epoxy or equivalent, applied in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, *See ACSPlus Guidelines Protective Coatings in Water Ballast Tanks (PCWBT)* and Ch 15 Corrosion Prevention of the Part 2 Rules for Materials.

3. 6. 6 The following tanks are not considered to be dedicated sea-water ballast tanks and are therefore exempted from the application and requirement of the IMO PSPC:

a. ballast tanks identified as 'Spaces included in Net Tonnage' in the 1969 ITC Certificate;
b. sea-water ballast tanks in passenger vessels also designated for the carriage of grey water or black water; or
c. sea-water ballast tanks in livestock carriers also designated for the carriage of the livestock dung.

Alternative provisions are to be made for the protection of these tanks.

PART

3

CHAPTER **2** **Materials**

SECTION **4** **Corrosion protection**

4. 1 General

4. 1. 1 Where plated decks are sheathed with wood or an approved composition, reductions in plate thickness may be allowed.

4. 1. 2 The steel deck is to be coated with a suitable material in order to prevent corrosive action, and the sheathing or composition is to be effectively secured to the deck.

4. 1. 3 Primary deck coverings within accommodation spaces, control stations or service spaces are to be of a type which will not readily ignite or give rise to smoke or toxic or explosive hazards at elevated temperatures in accordance with the requirements of the *International Code for the Application of Fire Test Procedure*

PART

3

CHAPTER **3 Structural Design**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**888**
	1. 1	Application	888
SECTION 2	**Rule structural concepts**		**889**
	2. 1	Definition of requirements	889
	2. 2	Definition of fore end region	889
	2. 3	Definition of aft end region	889
	2. 4	Symbols	889
	2. 5	Taper requirements for hull envelope	889
	2. 6	Vertical extent of higher tensile steel	890
	2. 7	Grouped stiffeners	894
	2. 8	Rounding policy for plate thickness	894
SECTION 3	**Structural idealisation**		**895**
	3. 1	General	895
	3. 2	Geometric properties of section	895
	3. 3	Determination of span point	897
	3. 4	Calculation of hull section modulus	898
SECTION 4	**Bulkhead requirements**		**903**
	4. 1	Number and disposition of bulkheads	903
	4. 2	Collision bulkhead	904
	4. 3	After peak bulkhead	904
	4. 4	Height of bulkheads	904
	4. 5	Watertight recesses, flats and loading ramps	904
	4. 6	Longitudinal subdivision	905
	4. 7	Separation and protection of tanks	905
	4. 8	Watertight tunnels and passageways	907
	4. 9	Means of escape	907

4. 10 Oil tankers 908
SECTION 5 Design loading 909
5. 2 Symbols 912
5. 3 Stowage rate and design loads 916
5. 4 Design pressure for partially filled tanks 916
SECTION 6 Minimum bow heights, reserve buoyancy and extent of forecastle 920
6. 1 Minimum bow heights 920
6. 2 Extent of forecastle 920

PART

3

CHAPTER **3 Structural Design**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 3. 2. 1: Taper requirements for hull envelope 892
Table 3. 3. 1: Load bearing plating factor..... 895
Table 3. 4. 1: Total number of bulkheads 903
Table 3. 4. 2: Fuel oil tank boundary requirements..... 906
Table 3. 5. 1: Design heads and permissible cargo loadings 909

PART

3

CHAPTER 3 **Structural Design**

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 3. 2. 1: Rule Scantlings - Schematic layout of requirements 891
Figure 3. 2. 2: Transition of steel grades 894
Figure 3. 3. 1: Corrugation dimensions 896
Figure 3. 3. 2: Double plate bulkhead dimensions 897
Figure 3. 3. 3: Span points 899
Figure 3. 3. 4: Midship strength deck stepping 900
Figure 3. 3. 5: Local strength deck stepping 900
Figure 3. 3. 6: Deduction free openings shadow areas 901
Figure 3. 4. 1: Fuel oil tank boundary lines 907
Figure 3. 4. 2: Definition of d_b 907
Figure 3. 5. 1: Heads for 'tween decks 913
Figure 3. 5. 2: Heads for watertight and deep tank bulkheads 914
Figure 3. 5. 3: Natural periods diagrams 918

PART

3

CHAPTER **3** **Structural Design**

SECTION **1** **General**

1. 1 Application

1. 1. 1 This Chapter illustrates the general principles to be adopted in applying the Rule structural requirements given in Pt 3 Ship Structures (General) and Pt 4 Ship Structures (Ship Types). In particular, consideration has been given to the layout of the Rules as regards the different regions of the ship, principles for taper of hull scantlings, definition of span point, derivation of section moduli and basic design loading for deck structures. Principles for subdivision are also covered.

1. 1. 2 Where additional requirements relating to particular ship types apply, these are, in general, dealt with under the relevant ship type Chapter in Pt 4 Ship Structures (Ship Types).

1. 1. 3 The requirements in this chapter are not applicable to Double Hull Oil Tankers or Bulk Carriers with a **CSR** notation (*See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull)) with the exception of Pt 3, Ch 3, 4.7, Separation and protection of tanks which is to be complied with.

PART

3

CHAPTER 3 Structural Design

SECTION 2 Rule structural concepts

2. 1 Definition of requirements

2. 1. 1 In Figure 3. 2. 1: Rule Scantlings - Schematic layout of requirements the breakdown of the ship into regions is shown. Within each region, the applicable Parts and Chapters of the Rules are indicated.

2. 2 Definition of fore end region

2. 2. 1 The fore end region structure is considered to include structure forward of the midship 0.4L region.

2. 3 Definition of aft end region

2. 3. 1 The aft end region structure is considered to include all structure aft of the midship 0.4L region.

2. 4 Symbols

2. 4. 1 The symbols used in this Section are defined as follows:

$\boldsymbol{F_D}$, $\boldsymbol{F_B}$ = local scantling reduction factor as defined in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.7, Local reduction factors

$\boldsymbol{k_L}$, $\boldsymbol{k}$ = higher tensile steel factor, *See* Pt 3, Ch 2, 1.2, Steel

$\boldsymbol{z_D}$, $\boldsymbol{z_B}$ = vertical distance, in metres, from the hull transverse neutral axis to the moulded deck line at side and to the top of keel respectively

$\boldsymbol{z_{ht}}$ = vertical extent of higher tensile steel.

2. 5 Taper requirements for hull envelope

2. 5. 1 The thickness of the shell envelope and strength deck plating, and the modulus and sectional area of strength deck longitudinals are to taper gradually from the midship region to the fore and aft ends. For the requirements, *See* Table 3. 2. 1: Taper requirements for hull envelope.

2. 5. 2 Outside the line of openings where higher tensile steel is used amidships and mild steel at the ends, the equivalent mild steel midship thickness for plating, equivalent mild steel midship deck longitudinal area and equivalent mild steel midship total deck area, for taper purposes are to be determined as follows:

a. Equivalent mild steel value

$$= \frac{\text{H.T.steel value}}{k_L}$$

b. If the higher tensile steel plating is based on minimum thickness requirements, then:

Equivalent mild steel midship plating thickness determined from Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships and Pt 4, Ch 9 Double Hull Oil Tankers.

2. 5. 3 The transition from higher tensile steel to mild steel is to be as shown in Figure 3. 2. 2: Transition of steel grades for the forward region. The transition in the aft region is to be similar to the forward region.

2. 5. 4 Where the higher tensile steel longitudinals extend beyond the point of transition from higher tensile to mild steel plating, the modulus of the composite section is not to be taken less than the required mild steel value at the deck plate flange, and k times the mild steel value at the higher tensile flange.

2. 6 Vertical extent of higher tensile steel

2. 6. 1 Higher tensile steel may be used for both deck and bottom structures or deck structure only. Where fitted, it is to be used for the whole of the longitudinal continuous material for the following vertical distances:

a. from the line of deck at side

$$Z_{\mathrm{ht}} = \left(1 - \frac{k_{\mathrm{L}}}{F_{\mathrm{D}}}\right) Z_{\mathrm{D}}$$

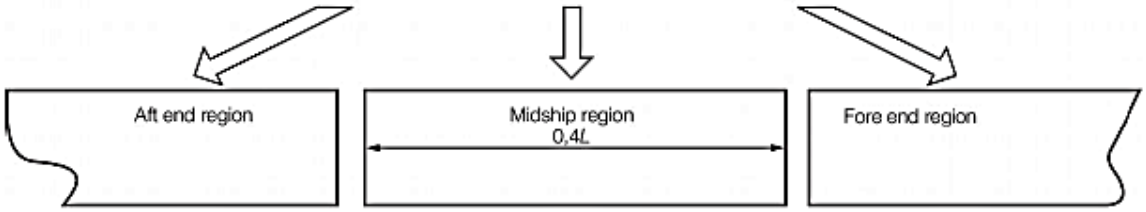
b. from the top of keel

$$Z_{\mathrm{ht}} = \left(1 - \frac{k_{\mathrm{L}}}{F_{\mathrm{B}}}\right) Z_{\mathrm{B}}$$

In the above formulae, F_{D} and F_{B} are to be taken not less than k_{L}.

Figure 3. 2. 1: Rule Scantlings - Schematic layout of requirements

Sections covered	Part	Chapter
Rule applicability, general	3	1
Structural arrangement and taper, general	3	3
Longitudinal strength	3	4
Material and grades of steel	3	2
Corrosioncontrol	3	2
Ice strengthening	8	1
Decks, special features	3	9



Sections covered	Part	Ch
Deck structure	3	6
Shell structure	3	6
strengthening in panting region	3	6
After peak structure	3	6
Sternframes, shaft brackets and bossings	3	6
Rudder	3	13
Propeller hull clearances	3	6

Sections covered	Part	Ch
Deck structure	4	–
Shell structure	4	–
Hull girder section modulus	3	4
Longitudinal bulkheads	4	–
Deck girders and supporting structure	4	–
Transverse bukheads	4	–
Inner bottom	4	–

Sections covered	Part	Ch
Deck structure	3	5
Shell structure	3	5
Stems	3	5
Deep tank forward	3	5
Strengthening in panting region	3	5
Bottom strengthening forward	3	5
Fore peak structure	3	5

Sections covered	Part	Chapter
Control systems 3	13	
Superstructures, deckhouses and forecastles	3	8
Welding and structural details	3	10
Machinery space additional requirement	3	7
Hatch covers	3	11
Scuppers and sanitary discharges	3	12
Testing	3	1

Table 3. 2. 1: Taper requirements for hull envelope

Item	Location	Requirement
Plating		
(1) Shell envelope plating, *See* Notes 1 and 2	Fore and aft ends	The thickness, in mm, is to be the greater of the following: *(a)* $t_t = [(t_c - t_{e1})(1 - \frac{d}{0.225L}) + t_{e1}]$ (*See* Note 3) *(b)* $t_t = (6.5 + 0.033L)f_2\sqrt{\frac{ks_1}{s_0}}$
(2) Strength deck plating, *See* Notes 1 and 2	Fore and aft ends	The thickness, in mm, is to be the greater of the following: *(a)* $t_t = [(t_c - t_{e2})(1 - \frac{d}{0.225L}) + t_{e2}]$ (*See* Note 3) *(b)* $t_t = (5.5 + 0.02L)\sqrt{\frac{ks_1}{s_b}}$
Longitudinals outside $0.4L$ amidships		
(3) Strength deck, *See* Notes 1 and 2	Fore and aft ends	MODULUS The section modulus in association with deck plating, in cm^3, is to be the greater of the following: *(a)* $Z_t = [(Z_c - Z_e)(1 - \frac{d}{0.225L}) + Z_e]$ (*See* Note 3) *(b)* As determined by Table 5. 2. 3: Strength/weather deck longitudinals forward, Table 6. 2. 3: Strength/weather deck longitudinals aft, and Pt 4, Ch 9 Double Hull Oil Tankers, as appropriate
		SECTIONAL AREA The deck longitudinals may be gradually tapered outside the $0.4L$ midships region in association with the deck plating on the basis of area. The sectional area of one longitudinal without plating, in cm^2, is to be not less than the following: $A_t = [(A_c - A_e)(1 - \frac{d}{0.225L}) + A_e]$ (*See* Note 3)
Strength deck area		
(4) Deck area taper, *See* Notes 1 and 2	Fore and aft decks	The total area of longitudinals and deck plating outside line of openings at midship region should have a linear taper from $0.2L$ from midships to $0.075L$ from F.P. or A.P. such that the area at $0.075L$ and $0.15L$ from the F.P. or A.P. is not less than 30 and 50 per cent respectively of the total midships area, *See* Note 3.
Symbols		

L, k, s, T as defined in Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.4 Symbols and definitions 1.4.1

d = distance, in m, from 0.2L forward or aft of amidships to the mid-length of the building block, strake, or longitudinal under consideration

s_b = standard frame spacing, in mm, as given in Table 5. 2. 1: Strength/weather deck plating forward (excluding forecastle deck) and Table 5. 3. 1: Shell plating forward in Chapter 5, and Table 6. 2. 1: Strength/weather deck plating aft (excluding poop deck) and Table 6. 3. 1: Shell plating aft in Chapter 6, as appropriate

s_1 = s, but is to be taken not less than s_b

t_c = actual thickness of deck or shell plating within the 0.4L midships region

t_{e1} = basic shell end thickness for taper and is $(6.5 + 0.033\text{L})\ f2)\ \sqrt{k}$ at 0.075L from the A.P. or F.P.

t_{e2} = basic strength deck end thickness for taper and is $(5.5 + 0.02\text{L})\ \sqrt{k}$ at 0.075L from the A.P. or F.P.

t_t = taper thickness for strength deck and shell plating

Z_c = section modulus of deck longitudinal in association with deck plating, in cm^3, within the 0.4L midships region

Z_e = section modulus of deck longitudinal in association with deck plating, in cm^3, at 0.075L from the ends

Z_t = taper section modulus of deck longitudinal in association with deck plating, in cm^3

A_c = cross-sectional area of one longitudinal without attached plating, in cm^2, within the 0.4L midships region

A_e = cross-sectional area of one longitudinal without attached plating, in cm^2, at 0.075L from the ends

A_t = taper cross-sectional area of one longitudinal without attached plating, in cm^2

f_2 = factor to be taken as:

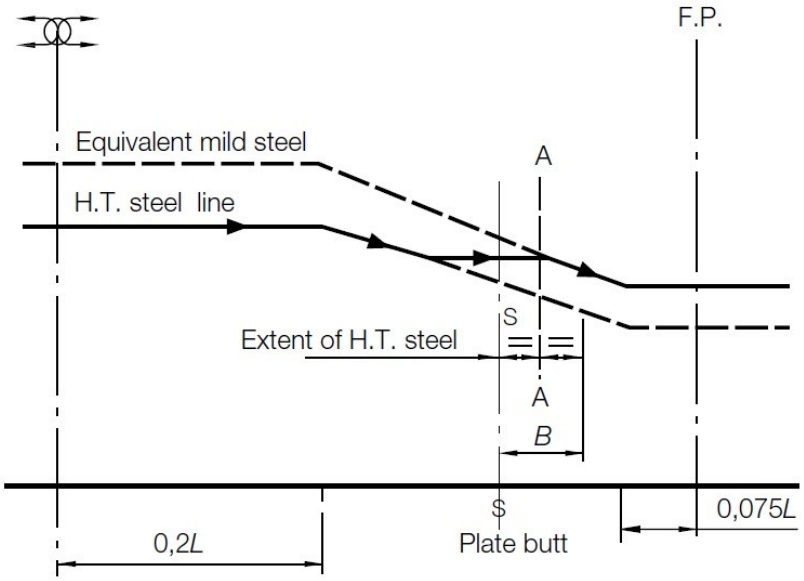
$f_2 = (\frac{15}{L/T})^{0.2}$ but need not be taken greater than 1. L/T is not to be taken greater than 25.

Note *1*. For thickness of strength deck and shell plating in way of cargo tanks of double hull oil tankers, single hull oil tankers or ore carriers, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 9 Double Hull Oil Tankers, Pt 4, Ch 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers, or Pt 4, Ch 11 Ore Carriers as appropriate.

Note *2*. The taper requirement does not apply to container ships or open type ships, *See* Pt 3, Ch 4, 2.3 Open type ships, where the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 8, 3.2 Longitudinal strength are applicable, nor to fast cargo ships where the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 3 Longitudinal strength are applicable. *See also* Pt 3, Ch 4, 5 Hull bending strength for hull section modulus requirement away from the midship area.

Note *3*. The formulae for the taper values are based on the assumption that the quality of steel is the same at amidships and ends. Where higher tensile steel is used in the midship region and mild steel at the ends, the taper values should be calculated for both qualities of steel in way of the transition from higher tensile to mild steel, and applied as determined by Pt 3, Ch 3, 2.5 Taper requirements for hull envelope 2.5.2 and Pt 3, Ch 3, 2.5 Taper requirements for hull envelope 2.5.3.

Figure 3. 2. 2: Transition of steel grades



A – A centre of aftermost mild steel plate

B = length of aftermost mild steel plate

2. 7 Grouped stiffeners

2. 7. 1 Where stiffeners are arranged in groups of the same scantling, the section modulus requirement of each group is to be based on the greater of the following:

a. the mean value of the section modulus required for individual stiffeners within the group,

b. 90 per cent of the maximum section modulus required for individual stiffeners within the group.

2. 8 Rounding policy for plate thickness

2. 8. 1 Where plating thicknesses as determined by the Rules are required to be rounded, then this should be carried out to the nearest half millimetre, with thicknesses 0.75 mm and 0.25 mm being rounded up.

For example,

- for $10.75 \leq t < 11.25$ mm, the Rule required thickness is 11.0 mm;
- for $11.25 \leq t < 11.75$ mm, the Rule required thickness is 11.5 mm.

PART

3

CHAPTER **3** **Structural Design**

SECTION **3** **Structural idealisation**

3. 1 General

3. 1. 1 For derivation of scantlings of stiffeners, beams, girders, etc. the formulae in the Rules are normally based on elastic or plastic theory using simple beam models supported at one or more points and with varying degrees of fixity at the ends, associated with an appropriate concentrated or distributed load.

3. 1. 2 Apart from local requirement for web thickness or flange thicknesses, the stiffener, beam or girder strength is defined by a section modulus and moment of inertia requirement.

3. 2 Geometric properties of section

3. 2. 1 The symbols used in this sub-Section are defined as follows:

b = the actual width, in metres, of the load-bearing plating, i.e. one-half of the sum of spacings between parallel adjacent members or equivalent supports

f = $0.3(\frac{1}{b})^{2/3}$ but is not to exceed 1.0. Values of this factor are given in Table 3. 3. 1: Load bearing plating factor

l = the overall length, in metres, of the primary support member, *See* Figure 3. 3. 3: Span points

t_p = the thickness, in mm, of the attached plating. Where this varies, the mean thickness over the appropriate span is to be used.

Table 3. 3. 1: Load bearing plating factor

$\frac{l}{b}$	f	$\frac{l}{b}$	f
0.5	0.19	3.5	0.69
1.0	0.30	4.0	0.76
1.5	0.39	4.5	0.82
2.0	0.48	5.0	0.88
2.5	0.55	5.5	0.94
3.0	0.62	6 and above	1.00
Note Intermediate values to be obtained by linear interpolation.			

3. 2. 2 The effective geometric properties of rolled or built sections may be calculated directly from the dimensions of the section and associated effective area of attached plating. Where the web of the

section is not normal to the attached plating, and the angle exceeds 20°, the properties of the section are to be determined about an axis parallel to the attached plating.

3. 2. 3 The geometric properties of rolled or built stiffener sections and of swedges are to be calculated in association with effective area of attached load bearing plating of thickness t_p mm and of width 600 mm or $40t_p$ mm, whichever is the greater. In no case, however, is the width of plating to be taken as greater than either the spacing of the stiffeners or the width of the flat plating between swedges, whichever is appropriate. The thickness, t_p, is the actual thickness of the attached plating. Where this varies, the mean thickness over the appropriate span is to be used.

3. 2. 4 The effective section modulus of a corrugation over a spacing p is to be calculated from the dimensions and, for symmetrical corrugations, may be taken as:

$$Z = \frac{d_w}{6000}(3bt_p + ct_w)\text{cm}^3$$

where d_w, b, t_p, c and t_w are measured, in mm, and are as shown in Figure 3. 3. 1: Corrugation dimensions. The value of b is to be taken not greater than:

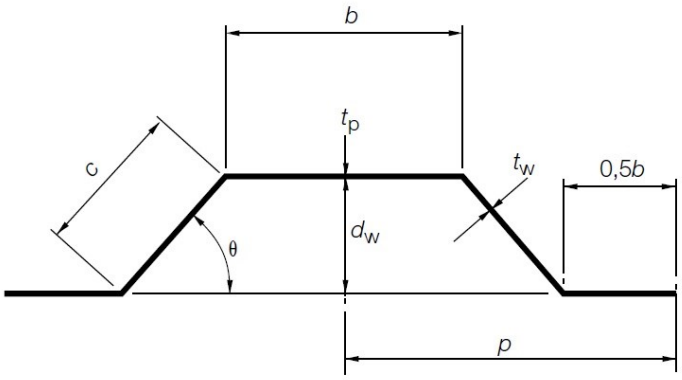
$50t_p\sqrt{k}$ for welded corrugations

$60t_p\sqrt{k}$ for cold formed corrugations

The value of θ is to be not less than 40°. The moment of inertia is to be calculated from:

$$I = \frac{Z}{10}\left(\frac{d_w}{2}\right)cm^4$$

Figure 3. 3. 1: Corrugation dimensions

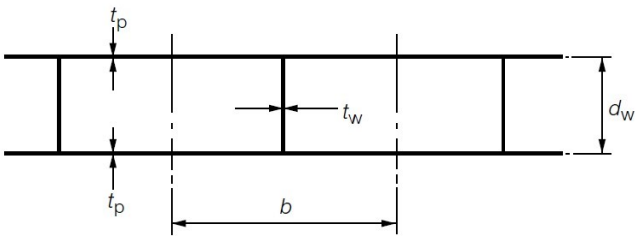


3. 2. 5 The section modulus of a double plate bulkhead over a spacing b may be calculated as:

$$Z = \frac{d_w}{6000}(6fbt_p + d_w t_w)cm^3$$

Where d_w , b, t_p and t_w are measured, in mm, and are as shown in Figure 3. 3. 2: Double plate bulkhead dimensions.

Figure 3. 3. 2: Double plate bulkhead dimensions



3. 2. 6 The effective section modulus of a built section may be taken as:

$$Z = \frac{ad_w}{10} + \frac{t_w d^2{}_w}{6000}(1 + \frac{200(A-a)}{200A + t_w d_w})\text{cm}^3$$

where

a = the area of the face plate of the member, in cm^2

d_w = the depth, in mm, of the web between the inside of the face plate and the attached plating. Where the member is at right angles to a line of corrugations, the minimum depth is to be taken

t_w the thickness of the web of the section, in mm

A = the area, in cm^2, of the attached plating, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3.2 Geometric properties of section 3.2.7. If the calculated value of A is less than the face area a, then A is to be taken as equal to a.

3. 2. 7 The geometric properties of primary support members (i.e. girders, transverses, webs, stringers, etc.) are to be calculated in association with an effective area of attached load bearing plating, A, determined as follows:

a. For a member attached to plane plating:

$$\text{A} = 10\text{fbt}_\text{p}\ \text{cm}^2$$

b. For a member attached to corrugated plating and parallel to the corrugations:

$$\text{A} = 10\text{bt}_\text{p}\ \text{cm}^2$$

c. *See* Figure 3. 3. 1: Corrugation dimensions

d. For a member attached to corrugated plating and at right angles to the corrugations:

A=is to be taken as equivalent to the area of the face plate of the member.

3. 3 Determination of span point

3. 3. 1 The effective length, l_e, of a stiffening member is generally less than the overall length, l, by an amount which depends on the design of the end connections. The span points, between which the value of l_e is measured, are to be determined as follows:

a. For rolled or built secondary stiffening members:
The span point is to be taken at the point where the depth of the end bracket, measured from the face of the secondary stiffening member is equal to the depth of the member. Where there is no end bracket, the span point is to be measured between primary member webs. For double skin construction, the span may be reduced by the depth of primary member web stiffener, *See* Figure 3. 3. 3: Span points.

b. For primary support members:

The span point is to be taken at a point distant from the end of the member,
Where

$$b_e = b_b(1 - \frac{d_w}{d_b})$$

See also Figure 3. 3. 3: Span points.

3. 3. 2 Where the end connections of longitudinals are designed with brackets to achieve compliance with the *ACSPlus FDA Guidelines*, no reduction in span is permitted for such brackets unless the fatigue life is subsequently re-assessed and shown to be adequate for the resulting reduced scantlings.

3. 3. 3 Where the stiffener member is inclined to a vertical or horizontal axis and the inclination exceeds 10°, the span is to be measured along the member.

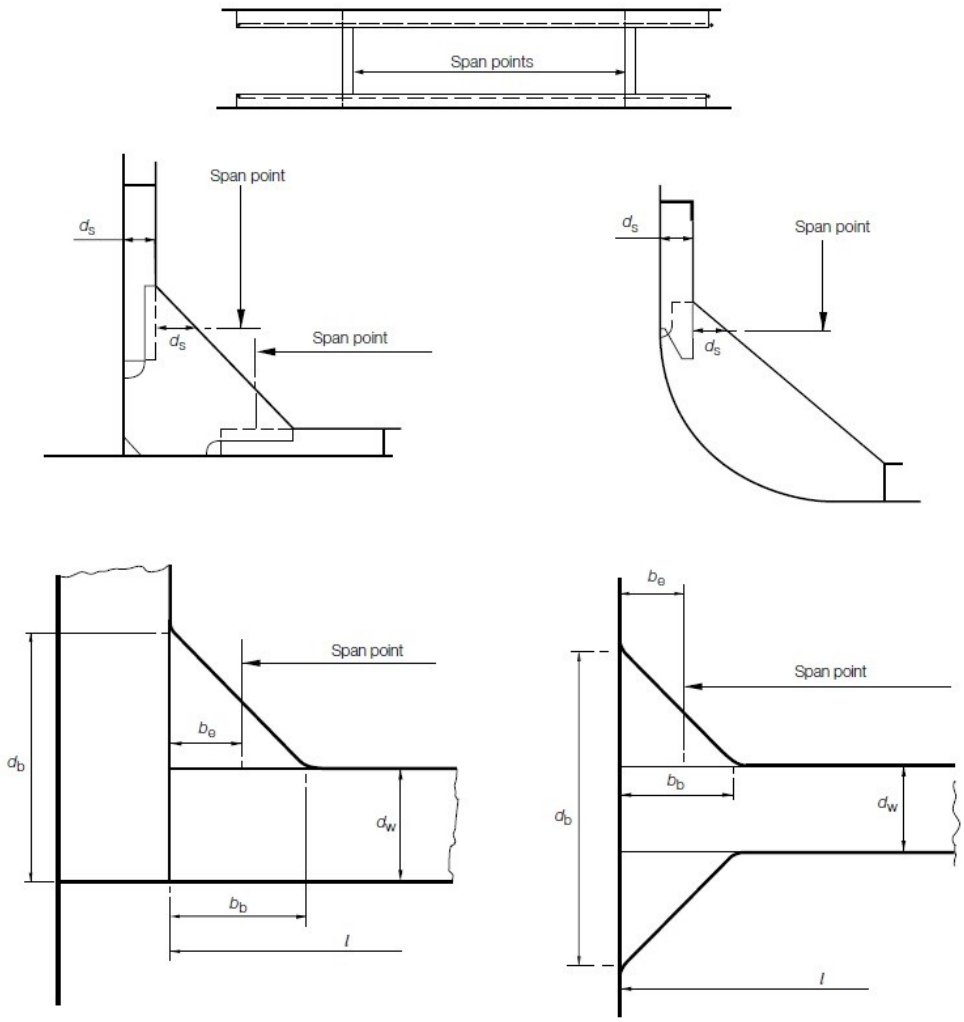
3. 3. 4 It is assumed that the ends of stiffening members are substantially fixed against rotation and displacement. If the arrangement of supporting structure is such that this condition is not achieved, consideration will be given to the effective span to be used for the stiffener.

3. 4 Calculation of hull section modulus

3. 4. 1 All continuous longitudinal structural material is to be included in the calculation of the inertia of the hull midship section, and the lever z is, except where otherwise specified for particular ship types, to be measured vertically from the neutral axis to the top of keel and to the moulded strength deck line at the side. The strength deck is to be taken as follows:

a. Where there is a complete upper deck and no effective superstructure, the strength deck is the upper deck.
b. Where the upper deck is stepped, as in the case of a raised quarterdeck or a long forecastle, or there is an effective superstructure on the upper deck, the strength deck is stepped

Figure 3. 3. 3: Span points



3. 4. 2 transition zone, *See* Figure 3. 3. 4: Midship strength deck stepping and Figure 3. 3. 5: Local strength deck stepping, is to be assumed at the ends of effective superstructures and at the end of stepped decks, where the longitudinal material cannot be included in the calculation of the hull section modulus. The length of the zone is to be taken as four times the deck height. Local insert plates are to be fitted in the side shell as appropriate with a thickness at least 25 per cent greater than the adjacent plating. They are to extend a minimum of one primary frame spacing forward and aft, but are to be not less than 1500 mm each way from the end of the transition zone. For vessels with complex arrangements or geometries, shadow plan areas are to be submitted.

3. 4. 3 A superstructure deck or stepped deck can only be considered as the strength deck and included in the calculation of hull midship section modulus if it extends at least the complete $0.4L$ amidships and transversely to the side shell with transition zones being located aft and forward (as appropriate) outside of this length.

3. 4. 4 A superstructure deck or stepped deck can only be considered effective and used in local section modulus calculations if it extends at least $0.15L$ and transversely to the side shell with the transition zones being located aft and forward outside of this length.

Figure 3. 3. 4: Midship strength deck stepping

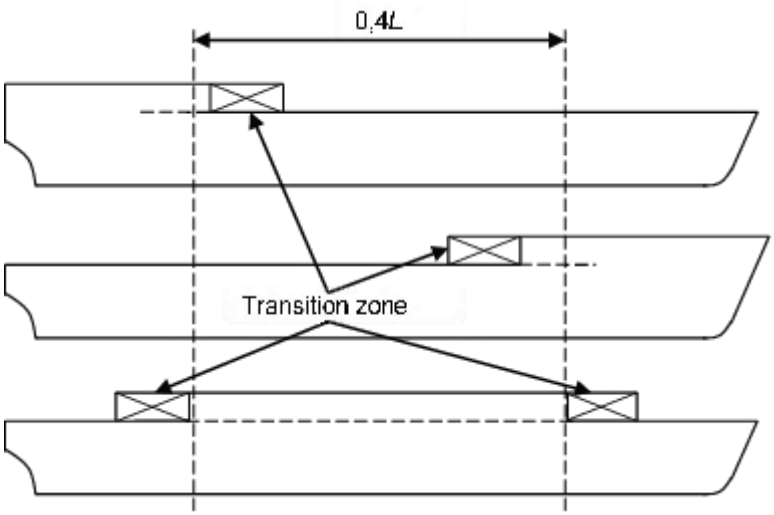
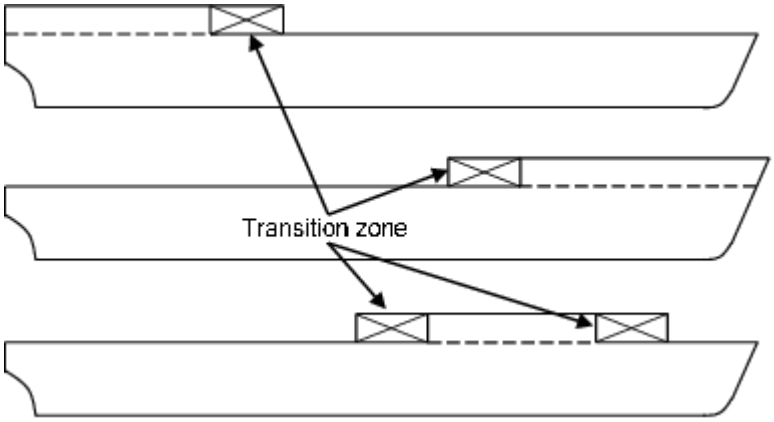


Figure 3. 3. 5: Local strength deck stepping



3. 4. 5 Openings having a length in the fore and aft directions exceeding 2.5 m or 0.1B m or a breadth exceeding 1.2 m or 0.04B m, whichever is the lesser, are always to be deducted from the sectional areas used in the section modulus calculation.

3. 4. 6 Smaller openings (including manholes, lightening holes, single scallops in way of seams, etc.) need not be deducted provided they are isolated and the sum of their breadths or shadow area breadths (*See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3.4 Calculation of hull section modulus 3.4.9), in one transverse section does not reduce the section modulus at deck or bottom by more than 3 per cent.

3. 4. 7 Where B_1 equals the breadth of the ship at the section considered and Σb_1 equals the sum of breadths of deductible openings, the expression 0.06 (B1 – Σb) may be used for deck openings in lieu of the 3 per cent limitation of reduction of section modulus in Pt 3, Ch 3, 3.4 Calculation of hull section modulus 3.4.6.

3. 4. 8 Where a large number of openings are proposed in any transverse space, special consideration will be required.

3. 4. 9 When calculating deduction-free openings, the openings are assumed to have longitudinal extensions as shown by the shaded areas in Figure 3. 3. 6: Deduction free openings shadow areas. The shadow area is obtained by drawing two tangent lines to an opening angle of 30°. The section to be considered should be perpendicular to the centreline of the ship and should result in the maximum deduction in each transverse space.

3. 4. 10 Isolated openings in longitudinals or longitudinal girders need not be deducted if their depth does not exceed 25 per cent of the web depth with a maximum depth for scallops of 75 mm.

3. 4. 11 Openings are considered isolated if they are spaced not less than 1 m apart.

3. 4. 12 For compensation that may be required for openings, *See* individual ship Chapters.

3. 4. 13 Where trunk decks or continuous hatch coamings are effectively supported by longitudinal bulkheads or deep girders, they are to be included in the longitudinal sectional area when calculating the hull section modulus. The lever z_t is to be taken as:

z_t = $z_c(0.9 + 0.2\frac{y}{B})$ m but not less than z

y = horizontal distance from top of continuous strength member to the centreline of the ship, in metres

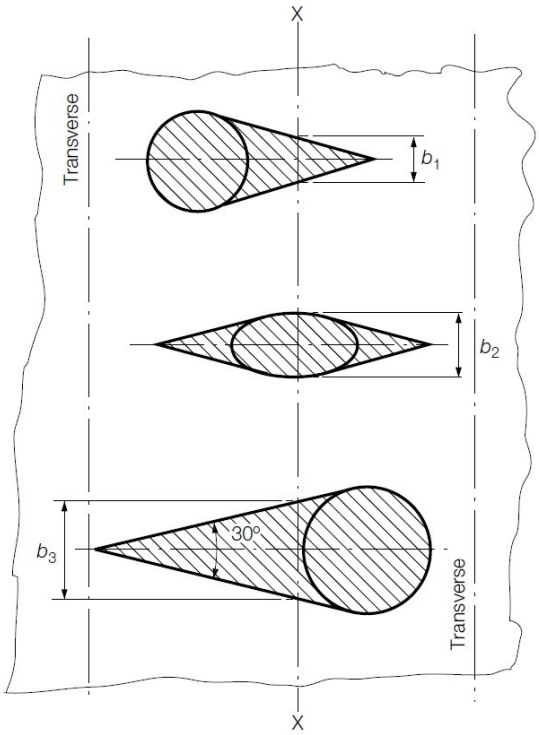
Z = vertical distance from the neutral axis to the moulded deck line at side, in metres

z_c = vertical distance from the neutral axis to the top of the continuous strength member, in metres

z_c and y are to be measured to the point giving the largest value of z_t.

3. 4. 14 Where continuous hatch coamings are effectively supported (except inboard coamings of multi-hatch arrangements, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3.4 Calculation of hull section modulus 3.4.16), 100 per cent of their sectional area may be included in the calculation of the hull section modulus.

Figure 3. 3. 6: Deduction free openings shadow areas



3. 4. 15 Where a continuous longitudinal underdeck girder, or girders, are arranged to support the inboard hatch coamings, 50 per cent of their sectional area may be included. If the girder is fitted in conjunction with a longitudinal centreline bulkhead, 100 per cent of the sectional area may be included. In cases where the girders are enclosed box sections, or where the girders are effectively tied to the bottom structure, the area to be included will be specially considered.

3. 4. 16 The percentage of the sectional area to be included for inboard continuous hatch side coamings should be the same percentage as that of the longitudinal girder under.

3. 4. 17 Where continuous deck longitudinals or deck girders are arranged above the strength deck, the sectional area may be included in the calculation of the hull section modulus. The lever is to be taken to a position corresponding to the depth of the longitudinal member above the moulded deckline at side amidships.

PART

3

CHAPTER **3** **Structural Design**

SECTION **4** **Bulkhead requirements**

4. 1 Number and disposition of bulkheads

4. 1. 1 All ships are to have a collision bulkhead, an after peak bulkhead, generally enclosing the sterntubes in a watertight compartment, and a watertight bulkhead at each end of the machinery space. Additional watertight bulkheads are to be fitted so that the total number of bulkheads is at least in accordance with Table 3. 4. 1: Total number of bulkheads.

Table 3. 4. 1: Total number of bulkheads

Length, *L*, in metres		Total number of bulkheads	
		Machinery amidships	Machinery aft, *See* Note
	≤65	4	3
>65	≤85	4	4
>85	≤90	5	5
>90	≤105	5	5
>105	≤115	6	5
>115	≤125	6	6
>125	≤145	7	6
>145	≤165	8	7
>165	≤190	9	8
>190		To be considered individually	

Note With after peak bulkhead forming after boundary of machinery space.

4. 1. 2 The bulkheads in the holds should be spaced at reasonably uniform intervals. Where non-uniform spacing is unavoidable and the length of a hold is unusually great, the transverse strength of the ship is to be maintained by fitting web frames, increased framing, etc. and details are to be submitted.

4. 1. 3 Proposals to dispense with one or more of these bulkheads will be considered, subject to suitable structural compensation, if they interfere with the requirements of a special trade.

4. 1. 4 Where applicable, the number and disposition of bulkheads are to be arranged to suit the requirements for subdivision, floodability and damage stability, and are to be in accordance with the requirements of the National Authority in the country in which the ship is registered.

4. 2 Collision bulkhead

4. 2. 1 A collision bulkhead shall be fitted which shall be watertight up to the bulkhead deck. This bulkhead shall be located at a distance from the forward side of the stem, on the waterline on which L_L is measured, of not less than $0.05L_L$ or 10 m, whichever is the less, and, except as may be permitted by the Administration, not more than $0.08L_L$ or $0.05L_L$+3m, whichever is the greater.

4. 2. 2 Where any part of the ship below the waterline extends forward of the forward side of the stem, on the waterline on which L_L is measured, e.g. a bulbous bow, the distances stipulated in Pt 3, Ch 3, 4.2 Collision bulkhead 4.2.1 are to be measured from a point either:

a. at the mid-length of such extension;
b. at a distance $0.015L_L$ forward of the forward side of the stem, on the waterline on which L_L is measured; or
c. at a distance 3 m forward of the forward side of the stem, on the waterline on which L_L is measured, whichever is the least.

4. 2. 3 No doors, manholes, access openings, ventilation ducts or any other openings shall be fitted in the collision bulkhead below the bulkhead deck.

4. 3 After peak bulkhead

4. 3. 1 All ships are to have an after peak bulkhead generally enclosing the sterntube and rudder trunk in a watertight compartment. In twin screw ships where the bossing ends forward of the after peak bulkhead, the sterntubes are to be enclosed in suitable watertight spaces inside or aft of the shaft tunnels. The sterntubes are to be enclosed in watertight spaces of moderate volume. In passenger ships, the stern gland is to be situated in a watertight shaft tunnel or other watertight space separate from the sterntube compartment and of such volume that, if flooded by leakage through the stern gland, the bulkhead deck will not be submerged.

4. 4 Height of bulkheads

4. 4. 1 The collision bulkhead is normally to extend to the uppermost continuous deck or, in the case of ships with combined bridge and forecastle or a long superstructure which includes a forecastle, to the superstructure deck. However, if a ship is fitted with more than one complete superstructure deck, the collision bulkhead may be terminated at the deck next above the freeboard deck. Where the collision bulkhead extends above the freeboard deck, the extension need only be to weathertight standards.

4. 4. 2 The after peak bulkhead may terminate at the first deck above the load waterline, provided that this deck is made watertight to the stern or to a watertight transom floor. In passenger ships, the after peak bulkhead is to extend watertight to the bulkhead deck. However, it may be stepped below the bulkhead deck provided the degree of safety of the ship as regards watertight subdivision is not thereby diminished.

4. 4. 3 The remaining watertight bulkheads are to extend to the freeboard deck. In passenger ships of restricted draught and all ships of unusual design, the height of the bulkheads will be specially considered.

4. 5 Watertight recesses, flats and loading ramps

4. 5. 1 Watertight recesses in bulkheads are generally to be so framed and stiffened as to provide strength and stiffness equivalent to the requirements for watertight bulkheads.

4. 5. 2 In collision bulkheads, any recesses or steps in the bulkhead are to fall within the limits of bulkhead positions given in Pt 3, Ch 3, 4.2 Collision bulkhead 4.2.1. Where the bulkhead is extended above the freeboard deck or bulkhead deck, the extension need only be to weathertight

standards. If a step occurs at that deck, the deck need also only be to weathertight standards in way of the step, unless the step forms the crown of a tank, *See* Pt 4, Ch 1, 4 Deck structure.

4. 5. 3 Where bow doors are fitted and a sloping loading ramp forms part of the extension of the collision bulkhead above the bulkhead deck the ramp shall be weathertight over its complete length. In cargo ships the part of the ramp which is more than 2.3 m above the bulkhead deck may extend forward of the limit specified in Pt 3, Ch 3, 4.2 Collision bulkhead 4.2.1 or Pt 3, Ch 3, 4.2 Collision bulkhead 4.2.2. Ramps not meeting the above requirements shall be disregarded as an extension of the collision bulkhead.

4. 5. 4 The number of openings in the extension of the collision bulkhead above the freeboard deck shall be restricted to the minimum compatible with the design and normal operation of the ship. All such openings shall be capable of being closed weathertight.

4. 6 Longitudinal subdivision

4. 6. 1 When timber load lines are to be assigned, double bottom tanks within the midship half-length are to have adequate longitudinal subdivision.

4. 7 Separation and protection of tanks

4. 7. 1 Where the cross contamination of liquids stored in adjacent tanks is hazardous to machinery, these tanks are to be separated by cofferdams. Hazardous pairings of liquid consumables include but are not limited to the following:

a. Fuel oil and lubricating oil;
b. Fuel oil and technical water (e.g. feedwater);
c. Lubricating oil and technical water;
d. Fuel oil and urea.

4. 7. 2 Tanks carrying liquids for the purposes of fire fighting (e.g. foam concentrate) are to be separated by cofferdams from adjacent tanks containing liquid fuels.

4. 7. 3 Tanks carrying fresh water for human consumption (potable water) are to be separated by cofferdams from adjacent tanks containing liquid substances harmful to human health. Fresh water for other purposes and water ballast are not considered harmful.

4. 7. 4 Where a cofferdam as specified in Pt 3, Ch 3, 4.7 Separation and protection of tanks 4.7.1 is impracticable, special consideration may be given, subject to the arrangements complying with the following:

a. The thickness of common boundary plates is increased by 1 mm;
b. Common boundaries have full penetration welds.

4. 7. 5 Where a corner to corner situation occurs, tanks are not considered to be adjacent.

4. 7. 6 Where fitted, cofferdams are to be suitably ventilated, provided with a suitable drainage arrangement, *See* Pt 5, Ch 13, 3.4 Tanks and cofferdams, and be of sufficient size to allow proper inspection, maintenance and safe evacuation.

4. 7. 7 If fuel oil tanks are necessarily located within or adjacent to the machinery spaces, their arrangement is to be such as to avoid direct exposure of the bottom from rising heat resulting from a machinery or hazardous space fire, *See also SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea Chapter II-2 - Construction - Fire protection, fire detection and fire extinction Part B - Prevention of fire and explosion1* 4.2.2.3.2.

4. 7. 8 For vessels which do not comply with the accidental fuel oil outflow performance standard given in MARPOL Annex 1, *Regulation 12A-11*, fuel oil tanks are to be bounded by double bottom and double side tanks or void spaces such that the distance between the fuel oil tank boundary and the shell plating is not less than that given in Table 3. 4. 2: Fuel oil tank boundary requirements and

Figure 3. 4. 1: Fuel oil tank boundary lines. For double hull oil tankers where the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.2 Application and ship arrangement 1.2.17 conflict with this requirement Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.2 Application and ship arrangement 1.2.17 is to take precedent. Alternatively the accidental oil outflow performance standard specified in MARPOL Annex 1 *Regulation 12A* may be complied with.

Table 3. 4. 2: Fuel oil tank boundary requirements

Fuel oil tank capacity (C), m^3	Minimum double side width (d_s) metres	Minimum double bottom depth (d_b) metres
$C \geq 5000$	$d_s = 0.5 + \frac{C}{20000}$ or $d_s = 1.0$ whichever is the lesser, but not less than 1.0	$d_b = \frac{B}{20}$ or $d_b = 2.0$ whichever is the lesser, but not less than 0.76
$600 \leq C < 5000$	$d_s = 0.4 + \frac{2.4C}{20000}$ or $d_s = 1.0$ whichever is the greater, *See* Note	$d_b = \frac{B}{20}$ or $d_s = 2.0$ whichever is the lesser, but not less than 0.76
$C < 600$	$d_s = 0$	$d_s = 0$

Symbols

C the ship's total volume of fuel oil, including that of small fuel oil tanks, in m^3, at 98 per cent tank filling

d_b = the distance, in metres, between the bottom of the fuel oil tank and the moulded line of the bottom shell plating. In the turn of bilge area and at locations without a clearly defined turn of bilge, the fuel oil tank boundary line shall run parallel to the line of the midship flat bottom as shown in Figure 3. 4. 2: Definition of db

d_s = the distance, in metres, between the side of the fuel oil tank and the moulded line of the side shell plating, *See* Figure 3. 4. 1: Fuel oil tank boundary lines

Note *1.* However, for individual tanks with an fuel oil capacity of less than 500 m^3, the minimum distance is 0.76 m.

Note *2.* Fuel oil tanks with a maximum individual capacity not greater than 30 m^3 need not comply with the requirements of this Table, provided the aggregate capacity of such excluded tanks is not greater than 600 m^3.

Note *3.* Suction wells in fuel oil tanks may protrude into the double bottom below the boundary line defined by the distance d_b, provided that such wells are as small as practicable and the distance between the well bottom and the bottom shell plating is not less than $0.5d_b$.

Figure 3. 4. 1: Fuel oil tank boundary lines

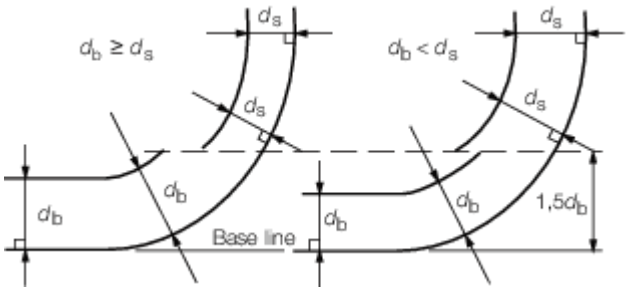
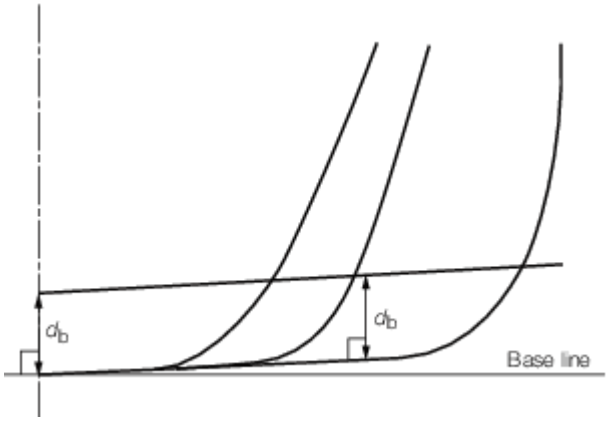


Figure 3. 4. 2: Definition of d_b



4. 7. 9 No individual fuel oil tank is to have a capacity greater than 2.500 m^3.

4. 8 Watertight tunnels and passageways

4. 8. 1 Where a machinery space is situated with a compartment or compartments between it and the after peak bulkhead, the shafting is to be enclosed in a watertight tunnel large enough to permit proper examination and repair of shafting. A sliding watertight door, capable of being operated locally from both sides, is to be provided at the forward end of the tunnel. Consideration may, however, be given to the omission of the watertight door, subject to satisfactory compliance with any relevant statutory requirements. Where two or more shafts are fitted, the tunnels shall be connected by an interconnecting passage. There shall be only one door between the machinery space and the tunnel spaces where two shafts are fitted and only two doors where there are more than two shafts.

4. 8. 2 Pipe tunnels are to have dimensions adequate for reasonable access.

4. 8. 3 Where fore and aft underdeck passageways are arranged at the ship's side, the after access thereto is to be by a watertight trunk led to the upper deck. Alternative arrangements to prevent the engine room being flooded, in the event of a collision or if the passageway doors are left open, will be considered.

4. 9 Means of escape

4. 9. 1 For the requirements for means of escape, *See* SOLAS 1974 as amended *Regulation 13 - Means of escape*.

4. 10 Oil tankers

4. 10. 1 For subdivision requirements within the cargo tank region for oil tankers, *See* Pt 4, Ch 9, 1 General.

PART

3

CHAPTER 3 Structural Design

SECTION 5 Design loading

5. 1. 1 This Section contains the design heads/pressures to be used in the derivation of scantlings for decks, tank tops and transverse bulkheads. These are given in Table 3. 5. 1: Design heads and permissible cargo loadings.

Table 3. 5. 1: Design heads and permissible cargo loadings

Structural item and position	Component	Standard stowage rate C, in m^3/tonne	Design loading p, in kN/m^2	Equivalent design head h_i in metres	Permissible cargo loading in kN/m^2	Equivalent permissible head, in metres
Design heads and permissible cargo loadings (SI units)						
Weather deck (general cargo)				h_1		
(a) Loading for minimum scantlings						
Forward of 0.075L from F.P.	Beams and longitudinals	1.39	12.73	1.8	8.5	1.2
	Primary structure		29.64 + 14.41E	4.2 + 2.04E		
Between 0.12L and 0.075L from F.P.	Beams and longitudinals	1.39	10.61	1.5	8.5	1.2
	Primary structure		22.59 + 14.41E	3.2 + 2.04E		
Aft of 0.12L from F.P.	Beams and longitudinals	1.39	8.5 + 14.41E	1.2 + 2.04E	8.5	1.2
	Primary structure					
(b) Specified cargo loading						

Forward of 0.075*L* from F.P.	Beams and longitudinals	1.39	$2.47p_a + 14.41E$ or as (a), whichever is larger (Note 1)	$0.35p_a + 2.04E$ (Note 1)	p_a	$0.14p_a$
	Primary structure		$3.5p_a + 14.41E$ or as (a), whichever is larger (Note 1)	$0.5p_a + 2.04E$(Note 1)		
Between 0.12*L* and 0.075*L* from F.P.	Beams and longitudinals	1.39	$1.98p_a + 14.41E$or as (a), whichever is larger (Note 1)	$0.28p_a + 2.04E$ (Note 1)		
	Primary structure		$2.67p_a + 14.41E$or as (a), whichever is larger (Note 1)	$0.38p_a + 2.04E$ (Note 1)	p_a	$0.14p_a$
Aft of 0.12*L* from F.P.	Beams and longitudinals	1.39	$p_a + 14.41E$(Note 1)	$0.14p_a + 2.04E$ (Note 1)	p_a	$0.14p_a$
	Primary structure					
Cargo decks				h_2		
General cargo (standard loads)	All structure	1.39	$7.07H_{td}$	H_{td}	$7.07H_{td}$	H_{td}
Special cargo (specified loads)		*C*	p_a	$\frac{Cp_a}{9.82}$	p_a	$\frac{Cp_a}{9.82}$
Machinery space, workshop and stores		1.39	18.37	2.6	-	-
Ship stores		1.39	14.14	2.0	-	-
Accomodation decks (clear of tanks)	All structure	1.39	8.5	h_3 / 1.2	-	-
Superstructure decks (Note 2)				h_3		
1st tier		—	—	0.9	—	—

2nd tier	Beams and longitudinals			0.6	Where the deck is exposed to the weather, add $2.04E$		
3rd tier and above				0.45			
Decks forming crown of tunnels and deep tanks	Plating and stiffeners	C	$\frac{9.82h}{C}$ where h=½ height of stand pipe above crown	h_4 h		—	—
(c) Bulk carrier (*See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 1.1 Application 1.1.3) with topside tanks							
Weather deck outside line of hatchways in way of cargo hold region, when topside tanks empty	Beams and longitudinals	1.39	—	—		7.06h	h=the lesser of (i) 0.22B (ii) $1.2 + 0.14\frac{W_b}{A}$ where W_b = weight of water ballast in the topside tank per frame space, in kN A=Corresponding area, (m^2), of deck in way over one hold frame space
	Primary Structure	1.39	—	—			
Cargo hatch covers (standard loading)				h_H			
Steel cover	Webs, stiffeners and plating	1.39	$7.07H_{td}$	H_{td}		$7.07H_{td}$	H_{td}
Wood cover	—	1.39	—	—		$7.07H_{td}$	H_{td}
Inner bottom				H			
Ship without heavy cargo notation	Plating and stiffeners	1.39	—	—		9.82T	1.39T
Ship with heavy cargo notation		C but≤0.865	$\frac{H}{C}$	H		$\frac{H}{C}$	H
Watertight bulkheads	Plating and stiffeners	0.975	$10.07h_4$	h_4 from Fig 3.5.2		—	—

Deep tank bulkhead	Plating and stiffeners	C but≤0.975	$\frac{9.82h_4}{C}$	h_4 from Fig 3.5.2	—	—

Note *1*. In the case of beams and longitudinals, the equivalent design head is to be used in conjunction with the appropriate formul.

Note *2*. For forecastle decks forward of 0.12L from F.P., *See* Weather decks.

Note *3*. For hatch covers of non-CSR bulk carriers, ore carriers and combination carriers, *See* Pt 4, Ch 7, 12 Steel hatch covers.

Note *4*. For hatch covers of ship types excluding non-CSR bulk carriers, ore carriers and combination carriers, *See* Pt 3, Ch 11, 2 Steel hatch covers.

Note *5*. For pontoon hatch covers, *See* Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.17 Pontoon covers.

5. 2 Symbols

5. 2. 1 The symbols used in this Section are defined as follows:

L, L_{pp}, C_b, B, D and T as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1, Principal particulars

h_i = appropriate design head, in metres

l_e = span of stiffener

p = design loading, in kN/m^2

p_a = applied loading, in kN/m^2

C = stowage rate, in m^3/tonne

$= \frac{h_i}{p}$ generally

= volume of the hold, in m^3 excluding the volume contained within the depth of the cargo hatchway, divided by the weight of cargo, in tonnes, stowed in the hold, for inner bottom

E = correction factor for height of platform

$= \frac{0.0914+0.003L}{D-T} - 0.15$, but not less than zero nor more than 0.147

H = height from tank top to deck at side, in metres

H_c = 'tween deck height measured vertically on the centreline of the ship from 'tween deck to underside of hatch cover stiffeners on deck above, in metres

H_{td} = cargo head in 'tween deck, in metres, as defined in Figure 3. 5. 1: Heads for 'tween decks.

Figure 3. 5. 1: Heads for 'tween decks

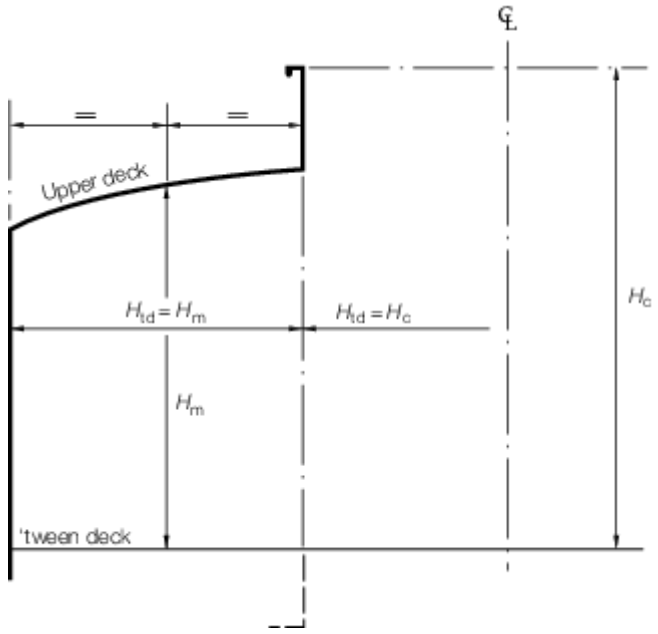
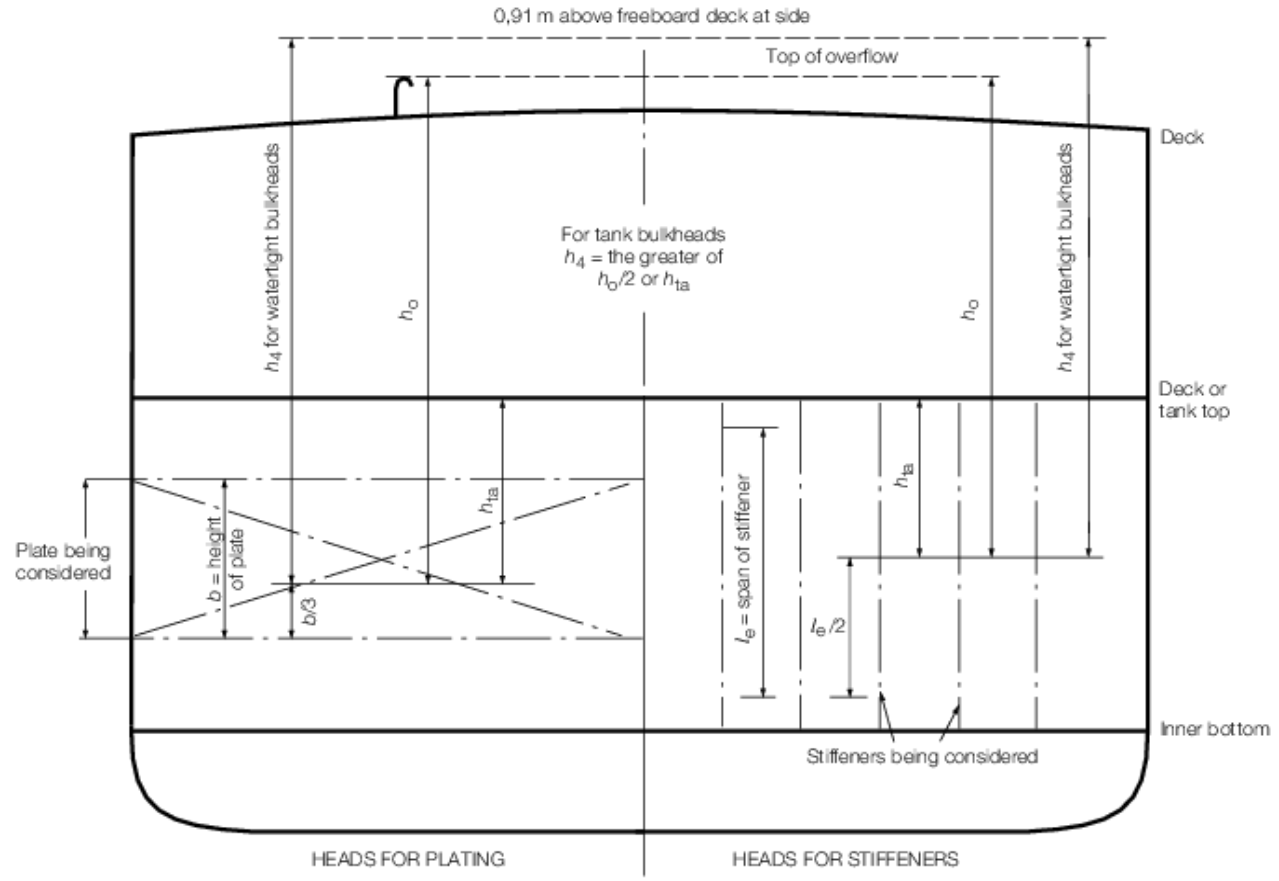
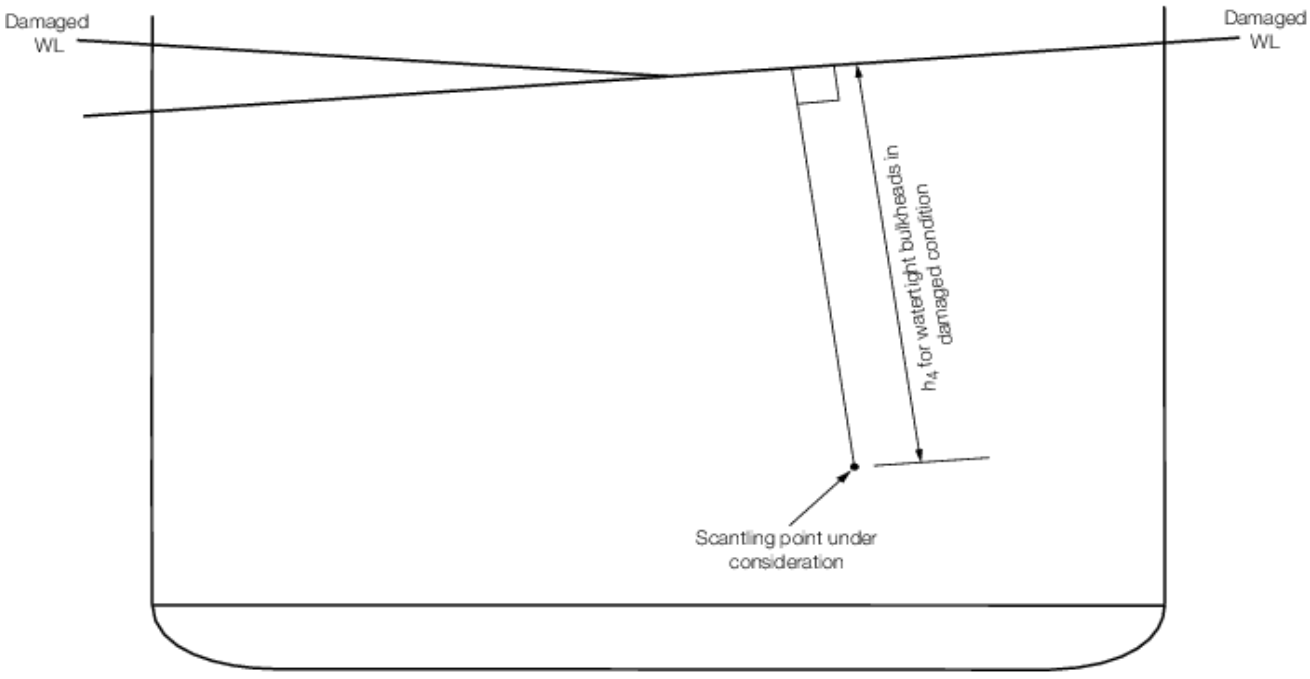


Figure 3. 5. 2: Heads for watertight and deep tank bulkheads



(a) Heads for watertight and deep tank bulkheads in intact condition



(b) Heads for watertight bulkheads in damaged condition

5. 2. 2 The following symbols and definitions apply in particular to the design pressures for partially filled tanks:

L_{pp} and C_b as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1, Principal particulars

b = height of internal primary bottom members, in metres

F = fill height, in metres

F_r = effective filling ratio

$$\frac{\pi}{L_s}(F - b\sqrt{\frac{n}{n+1}})$$

GM = transverse metacentric height, in metres, including free surface correction, for the loading condition under consideration

H_t = tank depth, in metres, measured from the bottom of the tank to the underside of the deck at side. In the case of holds, the depth is measured from the inner bottom to the underside of the deck at hatch side, except in double skin ships with hatch coaming in line with the inner skin, in which case, the depth is measured to the top of the hatch coaming

N = number of internal primary bottom members

L_s = the effective horizontal free surface length, in metres, in the direction of angular motion (i.e. tank breadth for roll, tank length for pitch)

S_{nr} = ship's natural rolling period

$=\frac{2.35_r}{\sqrt{GM}}$ seconds

= for ships for which either r or GM varies significantly between loading conditions (for example, bulk carriers and tankers, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 1.1 Application 1.1.3), S_{nr} should be evaluated for each representative loading condition considered

r = radius of gyration of roll, in metres, and may be taken as $0.34B$

S_{np} = ship's natural pitching period

= $3.5\sqrt{TC_b}$ seconds

= for ships for which either T or C_b varies significantly between loading conditions (for example, bulk carriers and tankers, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 1.1 Application 1.1.3), S_{np} should be evaluated for each representative loading condition considered

T_{np} = fluid natural period of pitch

= $\sqrt{\frac{4\pi L_s}{g.\tanh(F_r)}}$ seconds

T_{nr} = fluid natural period of roll

$\sqrt{\frac{4\pi L_s}{g.\tanh(F_r)}}$ seconds

θ_{max} = maximum `lifetime' pitch angle, in degrees

$= (32.7 - 8.2C_b)e^{-0.001L}\text{pp}(4.9 + 0.5C_b)$

φ_{max} = maximum `lifetime' roll angle, in degrees

$= (14.8 + 3.7\frac{L_{PP}}{B})e^{-0.0023L}\text{pp}$

5. 3 Stowage rate and design loads

5. 3. 1 Unless it is specifically requested otherwise, the following standard stowage rates are to be used:

a. 1.39 m^3/tonne for weather or general cargo loading on deck and inner bottom.

b. 0.975 m^3/tonne for liquid cargo of density of 1.025 tonne/m^3 or less on watertight and tank divisions. For liquid of density greater than 1.025 tonne/m^3 the corresponding stowage rates are to be adopted.

5. 3. 2 Proposals to use a stowage rate greater than 1.39 m^3/tonne for permanent structure will require special consideration, and will normally be accepted only in the case of special purpose designs such as fruit carriers, etc.

5. 3. 3 The design head and permissible cargo loading are shown in Table 3. 5. 1: Design heads and permissible cargo loadings.

5. 4 Design pressure for partially filled tanks

5. 4. 1 When partial filling of tanks or holds is contemplated for sea-going conditions, the risk of significant loads due to sloshing induced by any of the ship motions is to be considered. An initial assessment is to be made to determine whether or not a higher level of sloshing investigation is required, using the following procedure which corresponds to the Level 1 investigation outlined in the *SDA Procedure for Sloshing loads and scantling assessment*, on tanks partially filled with liquids.

5. 4. 2 In general, significant dynamic magnifications of the sloshing pressures are considered unlikely for the following cases:

a. For internally stiffened tanks:

i. Where two (or more) deck girders (in the case of rolling) or deck transverses (in the case of pitching) are located not more than 25 per cent of the tank breadth or length respectively from the adjacent tank boundary, and the fill level is greater than the tank depth minus the height of the deck girders or transverses;

ii. Where the deck girders or transverses, at any location, are less than 10 per cent of the tank depth, and the fill level is greater than the tank depth minus the height of the deck girders or transverses;

iii. Where the fill level is less than the height of any bottom girders or transverses.

b. For smooth tanks:

where the fill level is less than 10 per cent or more than 97 per cent of the tank depth.

5. 4. 3 Significant dynamic magnification of the fluid motions, and hence the sloshing pressure, can occur if either of the following conditions exist:

a. The natural rolling period, T_{nr}, of the fluid and the ship's natural rolling period, S_{nr}, are within five seconds of each other.

b. The natural pitching period, T_{np}, of the fluid is greater than a value of three seconds below the ship natural pitching period, S_{np}.

These values define the limits of the critical fill range for each tank.

5. 4. 4 The critical fill range, F_{crit}, is to be determined using the following formula:

$$F_{\text{crit}} = (\frac{100}{H_t})[(\frac{L_s}{2\pi})\ln(\frac{1+\eta}{1-\eta}) + b\sqrt{\frac{n}{n+1}}]\%$$

where

ln = natural logarithm to base e

η = $\frac{4\pi L_s}{[(S_{nr}-5)^2 g]}$ for fill level at S_{nr}-5 seconds upper bound roll critical fill level

or η = $\frac{4\pi L_s}{[(S_{nr}+5)^2 g]}$ for fill level at S_{nr} +5 seconds lower bound roll critical fill level

or η = $\frac{4\pi L_s}{[(S_{np}-3)^2 g]}$ for fill level at S_{np}-3 seconds upper bound pitch critical fill level

or η = $\frac{4\pi L_s}{[(S_{np})^2 g]}$ for fill level at S_{np} seconds

The lower bound pitch critical fill level is 0.1 per cent fill. The value of F_{crit} is limited to the range 0 to 100 per cent, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 3, 5.4 Design pressure for partially filled tanks 5.4.6.

5. 4. 5 The natural periods of the ship for a given motion type are to be determined for the service loading conditions agreed between the Shipbuilder and ACS. From this aspect, the storm-ballast and the segregated ballast conditions and the condition with all tanks partially filled could be the most critical.

5. 4. 6 When a ship is to be approved for Unrestricted Filling Levels - Unspecified Loading Conditions, many arbitrary ship loading conditions are possible. In order to cover the complete range of loading conditions, the fully loaded and ballast conditions are to be considered. These two conditions give an upper and lower limit for the possible range of natural periods of the ship as shown in Figure 3. 5. 3: Natural periods diagrams. Both the roll and pitch motion modes are to be examined.

Because of the unrestricted filling level requirement, the critical sloshing ranges extend from [$S_{nrBallast}$-5] to [$S_{nrLoaded}$+5] seconds in roll and from [$S_{npBallast}$-3] to [$S_{npLoaded}$] in pitch. Also, because of unrestricted filling levels, the ship natural period range extends from [$S_{nBallast}$] to [$S_{nLoaded}$] for both pitch and roll.

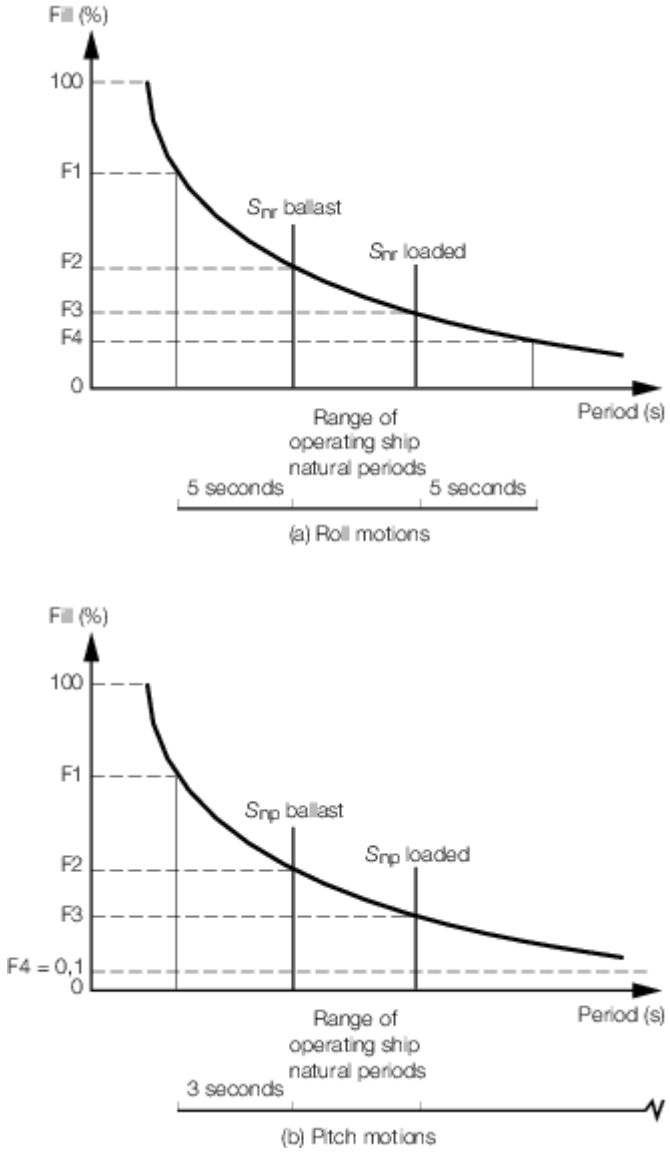
For sloshing in the roll motion mode shown in Figure 3. 5. 3: Natural periods diagrams, the critical fill range extends from F_1 to F_4. All fill levels between F_1 and F_4 are to be investigated:

- For fill levels between F_1 and F_2, $S_{nrBallast}$ is to be used.
- For fill levels between F_3 and F_4, $S_{nrLoaded}$ is to be used.
- For fill levels between F_2 and F_3, S_{nr} is to be equal to T_{nr}.

Similarly, for sloshing in the pitch motion mode shown in Figure 3. 5. 3: Natural periods diagrams, the critical fill range extends from F_1 to F_4. All fill levels between F_1 and F_4 are to be investigated.

- For fill levels between F_1 and F_2, $S_{npBallast}$ is to be used.
- For fill levels between F_2 and F_3, S_{np} is to be equal to T_{np}.
- For fill levels between F_3 and F_4, S_{np} loaded is to be used.

Figure 3. 5. 3: Natural periods diagrams



5. 4. 7 When a ship is to be approved for Restricted Filling Levels - Unspecified Loading Conditions, many arbitrary ship loading conditions are possible within the restrictions imposed. In order to cover the complete range of loading conditions, the fully loaded and ballast conditions are to be considered. These two conditions give an upper and lower limit for the possible range of ship natural period. It is recognised that there might be ship natural period bands which will not be applicable as a result of the limitations on the fill levels. However, it is recommended that the Unrestricted Filling Levels - Unspecified Loading Conditions procedure outlined in Pt 3, Ch 3, 5.4 Design pressure for partially filled tanks 5.4.6 be applied.

5. 4. 8 When a ship is to be approved for Unrestricted Filling Levels - Specified Loading Conditions, each specified loading condition is to be examined for the complete fill ranges to determine the critical sloshing fill range for each tank in both roll and pitch motion modes.

5. 4. 9 When a ship is to be approved for Restricted Filling Levels - Specified Loading Conditions, each specified loading condition is to be examined for the restricted fill ranges to determine the critical sloshing fill range for each tank in both roll and pitch motion modes.

5. 4. 10 here the assessment indicates that all the intended fill levels are outside the critical fill ranges and, therefore, significant sloshing will not occur, no further evaluation is required with regard to sloshing pressure. In such cases, the scantlings of the tank boundaries are to be determined in accordance with the relevant Rule requirements.

5. 4. 11 Where the separation of periods defined in Pt 3, Ch 3, 5.4 Design pressure for partially filled tanks 5.4.3 is not met, other levels of assessment will be required as given in the *SDA Procedures for sloshing loads and scantling assessment*, on tanks partially filled with liquids.

5. 4. 12 The structural capability of the tank boundaries to withstand the dynamic sloshing pressures is to be examined. The magnitude of the predicted loads, together with the scantling calculations may be required to be submitted.

PART

3

CHAPTER 3 **Structural Design**

SECTION 6 **Minimum bow heights, reserve buoyancy and extent of forecastle**

6. 1 Minimum bow heights

6. 1. 1 Ships are to comply with the Load Lines conventions, so far as these are applicable.

6. 1. 2 Bulk carriers, ore carriers and combination carriers are also to comply with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 7, 14 Forecastles.

6. 2 Extent of forecastle

6. 2. 1 Forecastles are to extend from the stem to a point at least $0.07L_L$ abaft the forward end of L_L (as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1, Principal particulars). If the minimum bow height is obtained by increasing the sheer of the upper deck, the sheer is to extend for at least $0.15L_L$ abaft the forward end of L_L.

6. 2. 2 Bulk carriers, ore carriers and combination carriers are also to comply with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 7, 14 Forecastles.

6. 2. 3 Forecastles are to be enclosed; that is with enclosing bulkheads of efficient construction and access openings complying with Pt 3, Ch 11 Closing Arrangements for Shell, Deck and Bulkheads and all other openings in sides or ends fitted with efficient weathertight means of closing.

PART

3

CHAPTER **4 Longitudinal Strength**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**Definitions**		**925**
	1. 1	List of symbols	925
SECTION 2	**General**		**926**
	2. 1	Longitudinal strength calculations	926
	2. 2	Erections contributing to hull strength	926
	2. 3	Open type ships	926
	2. 4	Ships with large flare	926
	2. 5	Direct calculation procedures	927
	2. 6	Approved calculation systems	927
SECTION 3	**Application**		**928**
	3. 1	Symbols	928
	3. 2	General	929
	3. 3	Exceptions	929
SECTION 4	**Information required**		**931**
	4. 1	List of requirements	931
SECTION 5	**Hull bending strength**		**932**
	5. 1	Symbols	932
	5. 2	Design vertical wave bending moments	933
	5. 3	Design still water bending moments	934
	5. 4	Minimum hull section modulus	936
	5. 5	Permissible still water bending moments	937
	5. 6	Permissible hull vertical bending stresses	937
	5. 7	Local reduction factors	938
	5. 8	Hull moment of inertia	938
	5. 9	Continuous strength members above strength deck	938
SECTION 6	**Hull shear strength**		**940**

6. 1 Symbols 940
6. 2 General 940
6. 3 Design wave shear force 940
6. 4 Design still water shear force 941
6. 5 Permissible still water shear force 943
6. 6 Permissible shear stress 944
6. 7 Design shear stress 944
SECTION 7 Hull buckling strength 946
7. 1 Application 946
7. 2 Symbols 946
7. 3 Elastic critical buckling stress 947
7. 4 Design stress 947
7. 5 Scantling criteria 949
SECTION 8 Loading guidance information 952
8. 1 General 952
8. 2 Loading Manual 952
8. 3 Loading instrument 953
8. 4 Onboard lashing program 954

PART

3

CHAPTER **4 Longitudinal Strength**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 4. 3. 1: Ship speed criteria 930
Table 4. 5. 1: Wave bending moment factor 933
Table 4. 7. 1: Standard deduction for corrosion, d_t 947
Table 4. 7. 2: Elastic critical buckling strength of plating 948
Table 4. 7. 3: Elastic critical buckling strength of longitudinals 950

PART

3

CHAPTER **4 Longitudinal Strength**

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 4. 3. 1: Deck opening size 929
Figure 4. 5. 1: Propeller immersion 936
Figure 4. 6. 1: Shear force factor K_1 942
Figure 4. 6. 2: Shear force correction 943
Figure 4. 6. 3: Examples of uneven transverse loading 944
Figure 4. 6. 4: Tapered plates 945
Figure 4. 7. 1: Dimensions of longitudinals 949

PART

3

CHAPTER **4** **Longitudinal Strength**

SECTION **1** **Definitions**

1. 1 List of symbols

1. 1. 1 The following symbols definitions are applicable to this Chapter, unless otherwise stated:

L, B, D, C_b and V = are as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1, Principal particulars

k_L, k = higher tensile steel factor, *See* Pt 3, Ch 2, 1.2, Steel

PART

3

CHAPTER **4** **Longitudinal Strength**

SECTION **2** **General**

2. 1 Longitudinal strength calculations

2. 1. 1 Longitudinal strength calculations are to be carried out for all ships where L is greater than 65 m, covering the range of load and ballast conditions proposed, in order to determine the required hull girder strength. The calculations of still water shear forces and bending moments are to cover both departure and arrival conditions and any special mid-voyage conditions caused by changes in ballast distribution.

2. 1. 2 For ships where L is equal to or less than 65 m, longitudinal strength calculations may be required, dependent upon proposed loading.

2. 1. 3 Specific information regarding required loading conditions is given in the individual ship type Chapters.

2. 2 Erections contributing to hull strength

2. 2. 1 In general, where a long superstructure or deckhouse of length greater than $0.15L$ is fitted, extending within the $0.5L$ amidships, the requirements for longitudinal strength in the hull and erection will be considered in each case.

2. 3 Open type ships

2. 3. 1 For ships other than container ships which have large deck openings and where the structural configuration is such that warping stresses in excess of 14.7 N/mm^2 are likely to occur, local increases in section modulus, based normally on the combined stress diagram undertaken for container ships, may be required. For calculations for container ships, *See* Pt 4, Ch 8, 3 Longitudinal strength.

2. 3. 2 For ships with large deck openings such as containerships, sections at or near to the aft and forward quarter length positions are to be checked. For such ships with cargo holds aft of the superstructure, deckhouse or engine room, strength checks of sections in way of the aft end of the aft-most holds, and the aft end of the deckhouse or engine room are to be performed.

2. 4 Ships with large flare

2. 4. 1 In ships of length between 120 and 170 m and maximum service speed greater than 17.5 knots, in association with a bow shape factor of more than 0.15, the Rule hull midship section modulus and the distribution of longitudinal material in the forward half-length will be specially considered, *See* Pt 4, Ch 1, 3 Longitudinal strength.

2. 5 Direct calculation procedures

2. 5. 1 In direct calculation procedures capable of deriving the wave induced loads on the ship, and hence the required modulus, account is to be taken of the ship's actual form and weight distribution.

2. 5. 2 Asia Classification Society (hereinafter referred to as 'ACS') direct calculation method involves derivation of response to regular waves by appropriate sea keeping software, short-term response to irregular waves using the sea spectrum concept, and long-term response predictions using statistical distributions of sea states. Other direct calculation methods submitted for approval should normally contain these three elements and produce similar and consistent results when compared with ACS's methods.

2. 6 Approved calculation systems

2. 6. 1 Where the assumptions, method and procedures of a longitudinal strength calculation system have received general approval from ACS, calculations using the system for a particular ship may be submitted.

PART

3

CHAPTER **4** **Longitudinal Strength**

SECTION **3** **Application**

3. 1 Symbols

3. 1. 1 The symbols used in this Section are defined as follows:

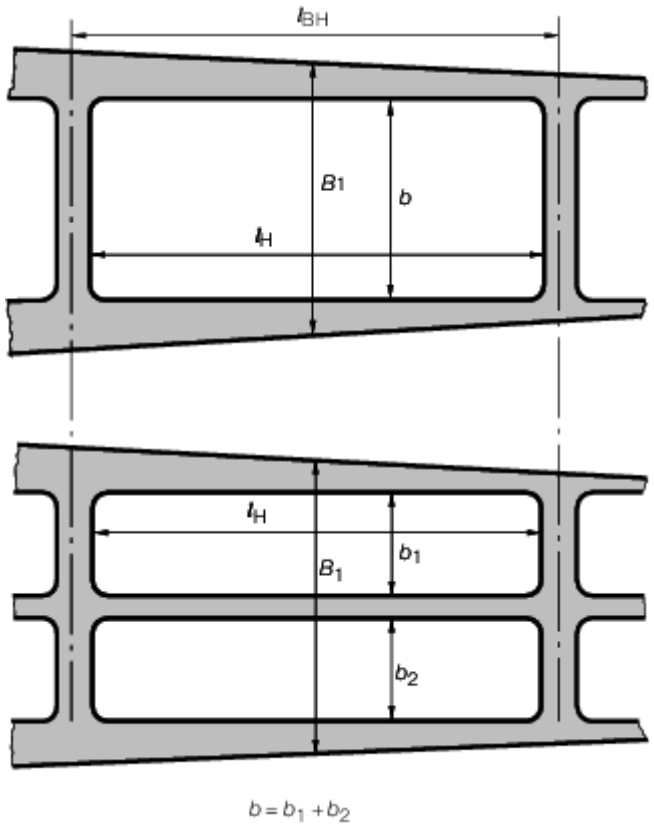
b = breadth, in metres, of the hatch opening. Where there are multiple openings abreast, these are regarded as a single opening, and b is to be the sum of the individual breadths of these openings

l_H = length of the hatch opening, in metres

l_{BH} = distance, in metres, between centres of the deck strip at each end of the hatch opening. Where there is no further opening beyond the one under consideration, the point to which l_{BH} is measured will be considered, *See also* Figure 4. 3. 1: Deck opening size

B_1 = extreme breadth of deck including hatch opening, measured at the mid-length of the opening, in metres.

Figure 4. 3. 1: Deck opening size



3. 2 General

3. 2. 1 The requirements of this Chapter apply to sea-going steel ships, of normal form, proportions and speed, unless direct calculation procedures are adopted, in which case the assumptions made and the calculations performed are to be submitted for approval.

3. 2. 2 The requirements in this Chapter are not applicable to Double Hull Oil Tankers or Bulk Carriers with a **CSR** notation. *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull).

3. 3 Exceptions

3. 3. 1 Individual consideration based on direct calculation procedures will generally be required for ships having one or more of the following characteristics:

- Length L greater than 400 m.
- Speed V greater than that defined in Table 4. 3. 1: Ship speed criteria for the associated block coefficient.
- Unusual type or design.
- Unusual hull weight distribution.
- $\frac{L}{B} \leq 5.$ or $\frac{B}{D} \geq 2.5$
- Large deck openings, or where warping stresses in excess of 14.7 N/mm^2 are likely to occur.
- Openings for side loading in way of both sheerstrake and stringer.

- C_b<0.6
- Carriage of heated cargo, *See* Pt 4, Ch 9, 12 Cargo temperatures.

Table 4. 3. 1: Ship speed criteria

Ship length L,m	C_b	Speed, knots
≤200	> 0.80	17
	= 0.70	19.5
	< 0.60	22
> 200	> 0.80	18
	= 0.70	21.5
	< 0.60	25
Note Intermediate values of speed to be obtained by linear interpolation for C_b		

3. 3. 2 A ship is regarded as having large deck openings if both the following conditions apply to any one opening:

$$\frac{b}{B_1} > 0.6$$

$$\frac{l_H}{l_{BH}} > 0.7$$

See also Figure 4. 3. 1: Deck opening size.

PART

3

CHAPTER **4** **Longitudinal Strength**

SECTION **4** **Information required**

4. 1 List of requirements

4. 1. 1 In order that an assessment of the longitudinal strength requirements can be made, the following information is to be submitted, in ACS's standard format where appropriate.

a. General arrangement and capacity plan or list, showing details of the volume and position of centre of gravity of all tanks and compartments.

b. Bonjean data, in the form of tables or curves, for at least 21 equally spaced stations along the hull. A lines plan and/or tables of offsets may also be required.

c. Details of the calculated lightweight and its distribution.

d. Loading Manual.

e. Details of the weights and centres of gravity of all deadweight items for each of the main loading conditions for individual ship types specified in Pt 4 Ship Structures (Ship Types). It is recommended that this information be submitted in the form of a preliminary Loading Manual, and that it includes the calculated still water bending moments and shear forces.

4. 1. 2 For final Loading Manual, *See* Pt 3, Ch 4, 8 Loading guidance information.

PART

3

CHAPTER **4** **Longitudinal Strength**

SECTION **5** **Hull bending strength**

5. 1 Symbols

5. 1. 1 The symbols used in this Section are defined as follows:

f_1 = ship service factor

f_2 = wave bending moment factor

F_B = local scantling reduction factor for hull members below the neutral axis, *See* Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.7, Local reduction factors

FD = local scantling reduction factor for hull members above the neutral axis, *See* Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.7, Local reduction factors

I_{min} = minimum moment of inertia, of the hull midship section about the transverse neutral axis, in m4

M_s = design still water bending moment, sagging (negative) and hogging (positive), in kN m, to be taken negative or positive according to the convention given in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.3 Design still water bending moments 5.3.2

$\bar{M}_s$ = maximum permissible still water bending moment, sagging (negative) and hogging (positive), in kN m, *See* Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.4, Minimum hull section modulus

M_w = design hull vertical wave bending moment, sagging (negative) and hogging (positive), in kN m, to be taken negative or positive according to the convention given in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.3 Design still water bending moments 5.3.2

Z_c = actual hull section modulus, in m3, at continuous strength member above strength deck, calculated with the lever specified in Pt 3, Ch 3, 3.4, Calculation of hull section modulus

Z_D, Z_B = actual hull section moduli, in m3, at strength deck and keel respectively, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3.4, Calculation of hull section modulus

Z_{min} = minimum hull midship section modulus about the transverse neutral axis, in m3

σ = permissible combined stress (still water plus wave), in N/mm2, *See* Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.5, Permissible still water bending moments

σ_D, σ_B = maximum hull vertical bending stress at strength deck and keel respectively, in N/mm2

z = vertical distance from the hull transverse neutral axis to the position considered, in metres

z_M = vertical distance, in metres, from the hull transverse neutral axis to the minimum limit of higher tensile steel, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 3, 2.6 Vertical extent of higher tensile steel, above or below the neutral axis as appropriate.

5. 2 Design vertical wave bending moments

5. 2. 1 The appropriate hogging or sagging design hull vertical wave bending moment at amidships is given by the following:

$$M_w = f_1 f_2 M_{wo}$$

where

C_b = is to be taken not less than 0.60

C_1 = is given in Table 4. 5. 1: Wave bending moment factor

C_2 = 1, (also defined in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.2 Design vertical wave bending moments 5.2.2 at other positions along the length L)

f_1 = ship service factor. To be specially considered depending upon the service restriction and in any event should be not less than 0.5. For unrestricted sea-going service $f_1 = 1.0$

f_2 = −1.1 for sagging (negative) moment

Where

f_2 = $\frac{1.9C_b}{(C_b+0.7)}$ for hogging (positive) moment

M_{wo} = $0.1C_1C_2L^2B(C_b + 0.7)$ kN m

= $(0.0102C_1C_2L^2B(C_b + 0.7)$ tonne − f m)

Consideration will be given to direct calculations of long-term vertical wave bending moments, *See* Pt 3, Ch 4, 2.6 Approved calculation systems.

Table 4. 5. 1: Wave bending moment factor

Length L, in metres	Factor C_1
<90	$0.0412L + 4.0$
90 to 300	$10.75 - (\frac{300 - L}{100})^{1.5}$
> 300 ≤ 350	10.75
> 350 ≤ 500	$10.75 - (\frac{L - 350}{150})^{1.5}$

5. 2. 2 The longitudinal distribution factor, C_2, of wave bending moment is to be taken as follows:

- 0 at the aft end of L
- 1.0 between $0.4L$ and $0.65L$ from aft

- 0 at the forward end of L

Intermediate values are to be determined by linear interpolation.

5. 2. 3 For operation in sheltered water or short voyages, a higher permissible still water bending moment can be assigned based on a reduced vertical wave bending moment given by:

a. For operating in sheltered water:
- $M_w = 0.5 f_2 M_{wo}$

b. For short voyages:
- $M_w = 0.8 f_2 M_{wo}$

These expressions can only be used in the expression for permissible still water bending moment, *See* Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.4, Minimum hull section modulus, and the relevant loading conditions are to be included in the Loading Manual, *See* Pt 3, Ch 4, 8.1 General.

5. 2. 4 Short voyages' are defined as voyages of limited duration in reasonable weather. `Reasonable weather' and `sheltered water' are defined in Pt 1, Ch 2, 2 Character of classification and class notations.

5. 3 Design still water bending moments

5. 3. 1 The design still water bending moment, M_s, hogging and sagging is the maximum moment calculated from the loading conditions, given in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.3 Design still water bending moments 5.3.3, and is to satisfy the following relationship:

$$|M_s| \leq |\overline{M}_s|$$

5. 3. 2 Still water bending moments are to be calculated along the ship length. For these calculations, downward loads are to be taken as positive values and are to be integrated in the forward direction from the aft end of L. Hogging bending moments are positive.

5. 3. 3 In general, the following loading conditions, based on amount of bunkers, fresh water and stores at departure and arrival, are to be considered.

a. General cargo ships, container ships, passenger ships, roll on-roll off ships and refrigerated cargo carriers:
i. Homogeneous loading conditions, at maximum draught.
ii. Ballast conditions.
iii. Special loading conditions, e.g. container or light load conditions at less than the maximum draught, heavy cargo, empty holds or non-homogeneous cargo conditions, deck cargo conditions, etc. where applicable.

b. Bulk carriers (*See* Pt 3, Ch 4, 3.2 General 3.2.2), ore carriers and combination carriers
i. For ships of length, L, less than 150 m:
Alternate hold loading conditions at maximum draught, where applicable.
Homogeneous loading conditions at maximum draught.
Ballast conditions, including intermediate conditions associated with ballast exchange at sea.
Special conditions, e.g. deck cargo conditions.
For combination carriers, the conditions as specified in (c) for oil tankers are also to be considered.
ii. For ships of length, L, 150 m or above:
Alternate light and heavy cargo loading conditions at maximum draught, where applicable.
Homogeneous light and heavy cargo loading conditions at maximum draught.
Ballast conditions. Where vessels are designed with a ballast hold adjacent to topside wing, hopper and double bottom tanks, the structure design is to be such that the ballast hold can be filled with all adjacent tanks empty;

Short voyage conditions where the ship is loaded to maximum draught with reduced bunkers, where applicable.
Multiple port loading/unloading conditions, where applicable.
Deck cargo conditions, where applicable.
Typical loading and discharging sequences from commencement to end of cargo operation, for homogeneous, alternate and part load conditions, where applicable.
Typical sequences for exchange of ballast at sea, where applicable.
For combination carriers, the conditions as specified in (c) for oil tankers are also to be considered.
For bulk carriers, the conditions as specified in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.4, Minimum hull section modulus for the relevant notation are also to be considered.

c. Oil tankers (*See* Pt 3, Ch 4, 3.2 General 3.2.2):
   i. Homogeneous loading conditions (excluding dry and clean ballast tanks) and ballast or part loaded conditions.
   ii. Any specified non-uniform distribution of loading.
   iii. Mid-voyage conditions relating to tank cleaning or other operations where these differ significantly from the ballast conditions.
d. Chemical tankers:
   i. Conditions as specified for oil tankers.
   ii. Conditions for high density or segregated cargo.
e. Liquefied gas carriers:
   i. Homogeneous loading conditions for all approved cargoes.
   ii. Ballast conditions.
   iii. Cargo conditions where one or more tanks are empty or partially filled or where more than one type of cargo having significantly different densities is carried.
f. All ships:
   i. Any other loading condition likely to result in high bending moments and/or shear forces (including docking conditions, as appropriate).

5. 3. 4 Where the amount and disposition of consumables at any intermediate stage of the voyage are considered more severe, calculations for such intermediate conditions are to be submitted in addition to those for departure and arrival conditions. Also where any ballasting and/or de-ballasting is intended during voyage, calculations of the intermediate condition just before and just after ballasting and/or de-ballasting any tank are to be submitted and, where approved, included in the loading manual for guidance.

5. 3. 5 Ballast loading conditions involving partially filled peak and/or other ballast tanks at departure, arrival or during intermediate conditions are not permitted as design conditions unless the design stress limits are satisfied for all filling levels between empty and full, and for bulk carriers the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 7, 3 Longitudinal strength, as applicable, are to be complied with for all filling levels between empty and full. To demonstrate compliance with all filling levels between empty and full, it will be acceptable if, in each condition at departure, arrival and where required by Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.3 Design still water bending moments 5.3.3, any intermediate condition, the tanks intended to be partially filled are assumed to be:

- empty
- full
- partially filled at intended level.

Where multiple tanks are intended to be partially filled, all combinations of empty, full or partially filled at intended level for those tanks are to be investigated. However, for conventional ore carriers with large wing water ballast tanks in cargo area, where empty or full ballast water filling levels of one or maximum two pairs of these tanks lead to the ship's trim exceeding one of the following conditions, it is sufficient to demonstrate compliance with maximum, minimum and

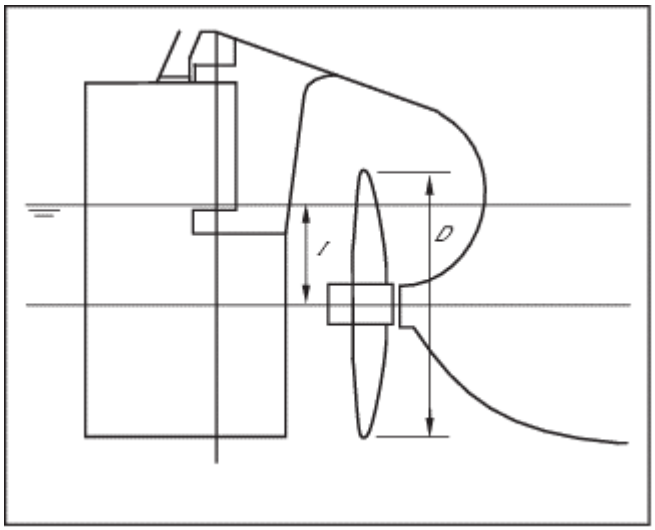
intended partial filling levels of these one or maximum two pairs of ballast tanks such that the ship's condition does not exceed any of these trim limits. Filling levels of all other wing ballast tanks are to be considered between empty and full. The trim conditions mentioned above are:

- trim by stern of 3 per cent of the ship's length, or
- trim by bow of 1.5 per cent of ship's length, or
- any trim that cannot maintain propeller immersion (I/D) not less than 25 per cent, where;

I = the distance from propeller centreline to the waterline, *See* Figure 4. 5. 1: Propeller immersion
D = propeller diameter, *See* Figure 4. 5. 1: Propeller immersion
The maximum and minimum filling levels of the above mentioned pairs of side ballast tanks are to be indicated in the loading manual.

5. 3. 6 When considering cargo loading conditions, the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.3 Design still water bending moments 5.3.5 apply to peak tanks only.

Figure 4. 5. 1: Propeller immersion



5. 3. 7 When considering ballast water exchange using the sequential method, the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.3 Design still water bending moments 5.3.5 and Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.3 Design still water bending moments 5.3.6 do not apply. However, bending moment and shear force calculations for each de-ballasting or ballasting stage in the ballast water exchange sequence are to be included in the loading manual or ballast water management plan of any vessel that intends to employ the sequential ballast water exchange method.

5. 4 Minimum hull section modulus

5. 4. 1 The hull midship section modulus about the transverse neutral axis, at the deck or the keel, is to be not less than:

$$Z_{min} = f_1 k_L C_1 L^2 B(C_b + 0.7) \times 10^{-6} m^3$$

=and f_1 is to be taken not less than 0.5.

5. 4. 2 For materials to be included in the calculation of actual hull section properties, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3 Structural idealisation.

5. 4. 3 The midship section modulus for ships with a service restriction notation is to be not less than half the minimum value required for unrestricted service.

5. 4. 4 Scantlings of all continuous longitudinal members of the hull girder based on the minimum section modulus requirements given in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.4 Minimum hull section modulus 5.4.1 are to be maintained within 0.4L amidships. However, in special cases, based on consideration of type of ship, hull form and loading conditions, the scantlings may be gradually reduced towards the ends of the 0.4L part, bearing in mind the desire not to inhibit the vessel's loading flexibility.

5. 4. 5 Outside 0.4L amidships, as a minimum, hull girder bending strength checks are to be carried out at the following locations:

a. In way of the forward end of the engine room.
b. In way of the forward end of the foremost cargo hold.
c. At any locations where there are significant changes in hull cross-section.
d. At any locations where there are changes in the framing system.

5. 5 Permissible still water bending moments

5. 5. 1 The permissible still water bending moments sagging and hogging are to be taken as the lesser of the following:

a. $|\overline{M}_s| = \mathrm{F_D}\sigma\mathrm{Z_D} \times 10^3 - |\mathrm{M_w}|$ kN m

b. $|\overline{M}_s|\mathrm{F_B}\sigma\mathrm{Z_B} \times 10^3 - |\mathrm{M_w}|$ kN m

where

σ = the permissible combined stress in N/mm^2 is given in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.6, Permissible hull vertical bending stresses and F_D and F_B are defined in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.7 Local reduction factors 5.7.2. M_w is the design wave bending moment, sagging or hogging as appropriate, in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.2, Design vertical wave bending moments.

5. 6 Permissible hull vertical bending stresses

5. 6. 1 The permissible combined (still water plus wave) stress for hull vertical bending, σ, is given by:

a. within 0.4L amidships

$$\sigma = \frac{175}{k_\mathrm{L}}\mathrm{N/mm^2}$$

b. for continuous longitudinal structural members outside 0.4L amidships

$$\sigma = (75 + 543\frac{d}{\mathrm{L}} - 699(\frac{d}{\mathrm{L}})^2)\frac{1}{k_\mathrm{L}}\mathrm{N/mm^2}$$

where d is the distance, in metres, from the F.P. (for the fore end region) or from the A.P. (for the aft end region), as appropriate, to the location under consideration.
Special consideration will be given to increasing the permissible stress outside 0.4L amidships to

$$\frac{175}{k_\mathrm{L}}\mathrm{N/mm^2}$$

provided that sufficient buckling checks are carried out.

5. 6. 2 The requirements for ships of special or unusual design and for the carriage of special cargoes will be individually considered.

5. 7 Local reduction factors

5. 7. 1 The maximum hull vertical bending stresses at deck, σ_D, and keel, σ_B, are given by the following, using the appropriate combination of bending moments to give sagging and hogging stresses:

$$\sigma_D = \frac{|\overline{M}_s + M_w|}{Z_D} \times 10^{-3} \text{N/mm}^2$$

$$\sigma_B = \frac{|\overline{M}_s + M_w|}{Z_B} \times 10^{-3} \text{N/mm}^2$$

Where the ship is always in the hogging condition, the sagging bending moment is to be specially considered.

5. 7. 2 Where the maximum hull vertical bending stress at deck or keel is less than the permissible combined stress, σ, reductions in local scantlings within 0.4L amidships may be permitted. The reduction factors applicable in Pt 4 Ship Structures (Ship Types) are defined as follows:

a. For hull members above the neutral axis

$$F_D = \frac{\sigma_D}{\sigma}$$

b. For hull members below the neutral axis

$$F_B = \frac{\sigma_B}{\sigma}$$

In general, the values of σ_D and $\sigma_B$to be used are the greater of the sagging or hogging stresses, and F_D and F_B are not to be taken less than 0.67 for plating and 0.75 for longitudinal stiffeners.

5. 7. 3 Where higher tensile steel is used in the hull structure, the values of F_D and F_B for the mild steel part are to be taken as not less than $\frac{Z}{Z_M}$

5. 8 Hull moment of inertia

5. 8. 1 The hull midship section moment of inertia about the transverse neutral axis is to be not less than the following using the maximum total bending moment, sagging or hogging:

$$I_{min} = \frac{3L(|\overline{M}_s + M_w|)}{k_L \sigma} \times 10^{-5} \text{m}^4$$

where values of σ are given in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.6 Permissible hull vertical bending stresses 5.6.1.
In addition for vessels with L ≥ 90 m the hull midship section moment of inertia is not to be less than the following:

$$I_{min} = 3C_1 L^3 B(C_b + 0.7) \times 10^{-8} \text{ m}^4$$

where $C_1$is given in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.2 Design vertical wave bending moments 5.2.1.

5. 9 Continuous strength members above strength deck

5. 9. 1 Where trunk decks or continuous hatch coamings are effectively supported or deck longitudinals or girders are fitted above the strength deck, the modulus Z_c is to be not less than Z_{min}. The scantling reduction factor, F_D, referred to strength deck at side, is applicable and, in addition to the requirement given in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.5 Permissible still water bending moments 5.5.1, the permissible still water bending moments, sagging and hogging, are not to exceed:

$$|\overline{M}_s| = \sigma Z_c \times 10^3 - |M_w| \text{kNm}$$

where

M_w = is the design wave bending moment sagging or hogging, as appropriate, in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.2, Design vertical wave bending moments.

PART

3

CHAPTER **4** **Longitudinal Strength**

SECTION **6** **Hull shear strength**

6. 1 Symbols

6. 1. 1 The symbols used in this Section are defined as follows:

q_v =unit shear flow per mm along the cross-section under consideration, in N/mm, *See* Pt 3, Ch 4, 6.2 General 6.2.2 and Pt 3, Ch 4, 6.2 General 6.2.3

Q_S=design hull still water shear force, in kN, to be taken as negative or positive according to the convention given in Pt 3, Ch 4, 6.4 Design still water shear force 6.4.2

$\overline{Q_S}$= permissible hull still water shear force, in kN, *See* Pt 3, Ch 4, 6.5, Permissible still water shear force

Q_W=design hull wave shear force, in kN, to be taken as negative or positive according to the convention given in Pt 3, Ch 4, 6.4 Design still water shear force 6.4.2

τ = permissible combined shear stress (still water plus wave), in N/mm^2, *See* Pt 3, Ch 4, 6.6 Permissible shear stress

τ_A= design shear stress, in N/mm^2, as given in Pt 3, Ch 4, 6.7 Design shear stress 6.7.1

6. 2 General

6. 2. 1 For ships with length L greater than 65 m, the shear forces on the hull structure are to be investigated.

6. 2. 2 Shear flow calculation procedures are generally to be in accordance with *ACSPlus Guidelines Additional calculation procedures for longitudinal strength*.

6. 2. 3 Where shear flow calculation procedures, other than those available within *ACSPlus* are employed, the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 1, 3 Equivalents are to be complied with.

6. 2. 4 For passenger ships, the assessment of permissible still water shear forces is to take into consideration the effectiveness of the continuous superstructures and the sizes and arrangements of window and door openings.

6. 2. 5 Where longitudinal bulkheads are perforated by cut-outs, the assessment of permissible still water shear forces is to take into consideration the loss of material.

6. 2. 6 For ships where the side shell, side casings, superstructure or longitudinal bulkheads contain large openings or large numbers of windows or openings, consideration is to be given to assessing the permissible still water shear forces using direct calculation techniques.

6. 3 Design wave shear force

6. 3. 1 The design wave shear force, Q_w, at any position along the ship is given by:

$$Q_w = K_1 K_2 Q_{wo} \text{kN}$$

where

Q_{wo} = $0.3C_1LB(C_b + 0.7)$

C_1 is given in Table 4. 5. 1: Wave bending moment factor and is to be taken not less than 0.6 .

K_1 is to be taken as follows, *See also* Figure 4. 6. 1: Shear force factor K1:

a. Positive shear force

K_1=0 at aft end of L

= $\frac{1.589C_b}{(C_b+0.7)}$ between 0.2L and 0.3L from aft

= 0.7 between 0.4L and 0.6L from aft

= 1.0 between 0.7L and 0.85L from aft

= 0 at forward end of L

b. Negative shear force

K_1=0 at aft end of L

= -0.92 between 0.2L and 0.3L from aft

= -0.7 between 0.4L and 0.6L from aft

= $\frac{1.727C_b}{(C_b+0.7)}$ between 0.7L and 0.85L from aft

= 0 at forward end of L

c. Intermediate values to be determined by linear interpolation.

K_2=1.0 for unrestricted sea-going service conditions

= 0.8 for short voyages

= 0.5 for operation in sheltered water.

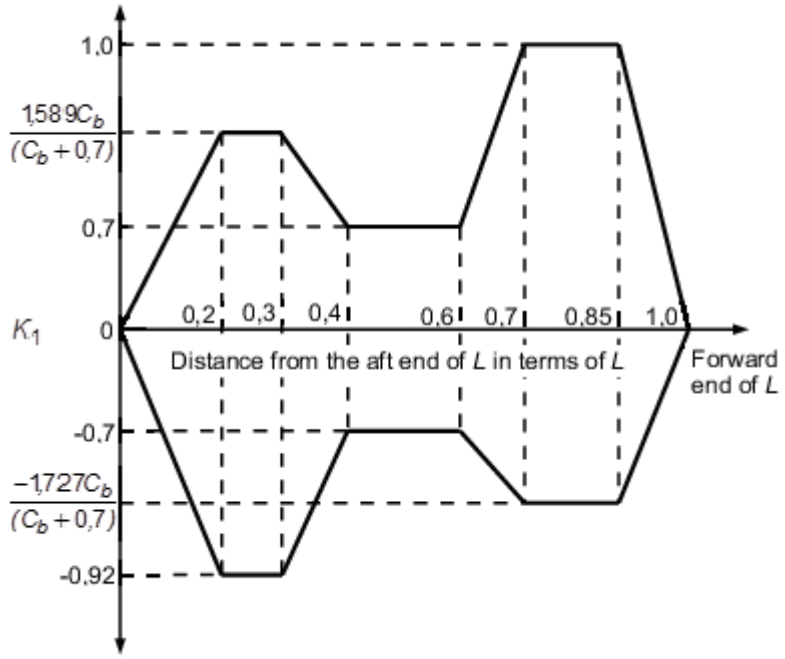
6. 4 Design still water shear force

6. 4. 1 The design still water shear force, Q_s, at each transverse section along the hull is to be taken as the maximum positive and negative value found from the longitudinal strength calculations for each of the loading conditions given in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.3 Design still water bending moments 5.3.3 and is to satisfy the following relationship:

$$|Q_s| \leq |\overline{Q}_s|$$

6. 4. 2 Still water shear forces are to be calculated at each section along the ship length. For these calculations, downward loads are to be taken as positive values and are to be integrated in a forward direction from the aft end of L. The shear force is positive when the algebraic sum of all vertical forces aft of the section is positive.

Figure 4. 6. 1: Shear force factor K_1



6. 4. 3 For hull configurations where there are no longitudinal bulkheads (not including the inner hull) and where loading conditions feature either:

- cargo loading with specified or alternative cargo holds (or cargo tanks) empty; or
- ballasting of cargo hold(s);

the actual shear forces obtained from the longitudinal strength calculations are to be corrected for the effect of local forces at the transverse bulkheads. The calculation of these local forces is to be submitted for approval or, alternatively, the proportion of the double bottom load carried by the transverse bulkhead can be arrived at by using the following bulkhead factor F:

$$F = \frac{1}{1 + 1.5\alpha^{1.65}}$$

where

α = $\frac{S_H}{I_F}$

I_F = span of floors measured to the intersection of the hopper or ship's side, and inner bottom, in metres

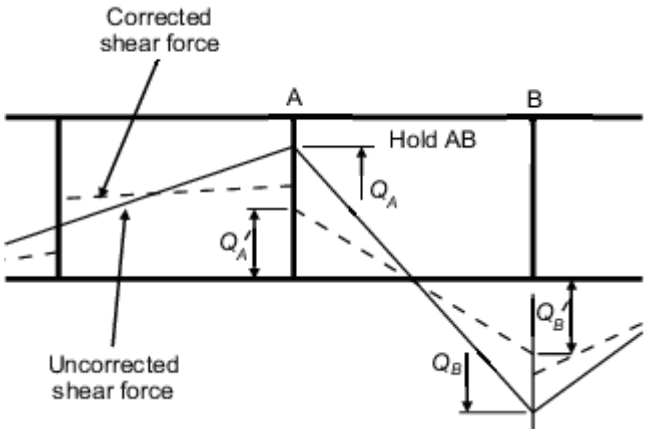
S_H span of floors measured to the intersection of the hopper or ship's side, and inner bottom, in metres

6. 4. 4 If the hull shear forces in kN at transverse bulkheads A and B are calculated to be Q_A and Q_B respectively (with appropriate algebraic signs), the excess load or buoyancy over hold AB is given by $Q_B - Q_A$ and the load transmitted to each bulkhead is:

$$0.5F(Q_B - Q_A)\text{kN}$$

where F is the bulkhead factor as given in Pt 3, Ch 4, 6.4 Design still water shear force 6.4.3. *See* Figure 4. 6. 2: Shear force correction.

Figure 4. 6. 2: Shear force correction



6. 4. 5 The corrected shear forces, Q'_A and Q'_B, at bulkheads A and B with respect to hold AB are then obtained from:

$$Q'_A = Q_A + 0.5F(Q_B - Q_A)\text{kN}$$
$$Q'_B = Q_B + 0.5F(Q_B - Q_A)\text{kN}$$

6. 5 Permissible still water shear force

6. 5. 1 Still water shear forces are to be determined for all vertical structural elements which contribute to the shear strength capability of the ship. The permissible hull still water shear force is given by the minimum value obtained from:

$$|\overline{Q}_s| = \tau m \frac{t \times 10^{-3}}{q_v} - |Q_w|\text{kN}$$

where

m = the plate thickness of the structural member at the vertical level and section under consideration, in mm

m is given in Pt 3, Ch 4, 6.5 Permissible still water shear force 6.5.2

q_v is the shear flow in the structural member at the vertical level and section under consideration, calculated in accordance with the *ACSPlus Guidelines Additional calculation procedures*.

6. 5. 2 To account for the effects of non-uniform loading in the transverse direction, m is to be taken as follows:

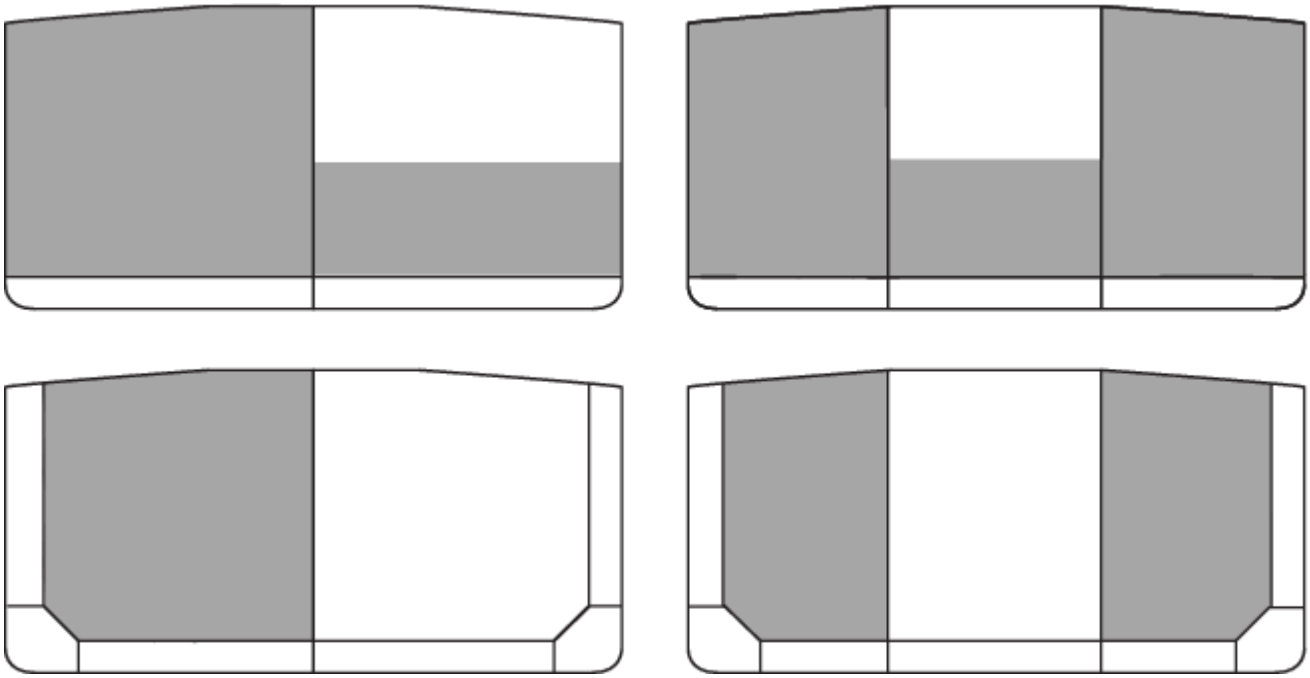
m = 0.9 for loading conditions where the cargo region between two consecutive bulkheads, *See* Figure 4. 6. 3: Examples of uneven transverse loading, within $0.2L_T$, is unevenly loaded in the transverse direction. Where there are two longitudinal bulkheads, the symmetric loading condition where the centre region has a different filling height to the port and starboard regions is considered to be uneven loading in the transverse direction.

m = 1.0 otherwise

where

L_T is the cargo hold length, in metres

Figure 4. 6. 3: Examples of uneven transverse loading



6. 5. 3 For hull configurations where loading conditions are such that hull girder torsion is induced, direct calculations are to be undertaken if considered necessary.

6. 5. 4 The calculation of shear forces immediately beyond the ends of the longitudinal bulkheads will be considered in relation to the arrangement of structure in these regions.

6. 6 Permissible shear stress

6. 6. 1 The permissible combined shear stress (still water plus wave) is to be taken as:

$$\tau = \frac{110}{k_L} \text{N/mm}^2$$

6. 6. 2 Where a plate is tapered, the permissible combined shear stress is not to be exceeded at any point in way of the taper, *See* Pt 3, Ch 4, 6.7 Design shear stress 6.7.1.

6. 7 Design shear stress

6. 7. 1 The design shear stress for use in *Pt 3, Ch 4, 7.4 Design stress* is to be taken as:

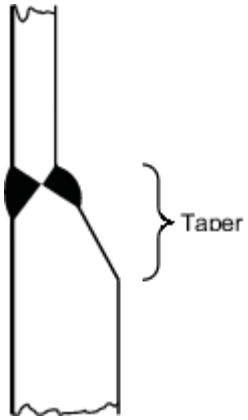
$$\tau_A = \frac{|Q_s| + |Q_w|}{mtl\ q_v} \times 10^3 \text{N/mm}^2$$

where

t and q_v are given in Pt 3, Ch 4, 6.5 Permissible still water shear force 6.5.1.

m is given in Pt 3, Ch 4, 6.5 Permissible still water shear force 6.5.2.

Figure 4. 6. 4: Tapered plates



PART

3

CHAPTER **4** **Longitudinal Strength**

SECTION **7** **Hull buckling strength**

7. 1 Application

7. 1. 1 These requirements apply to plate panels and longitudinals subjected to hull girder compression and shear stresses based on design values for still water and wave bending moments and shear forces.

7. 1. 2 The hull buckling strength requirements are applicable within 0.4*L* amidships to ships of 90 m or greater in length.

7. 1. 3 Hull buckling strength for ships less than 90 m in length will be specially considered.

7. 1. 4 Hull buckling strength outside 0.4*L* amidships of members contributing to the longitudinal strength and subjected to compressive and shear stresses is to be checked, in particular in regions where changes in the framing system or significant changes in the hull cross-section occur.

7. 2 Symbols

7. 2. 1 The symbols used in this Section are defined as follows:

d_t = standard deduction for corrosion, *See* Table 4. 7. 1: Standard deduction for corrosion, dt

s = spacing of secondary stiffeners, in mm. In the case of symmetrical corrugations, s is to be taken as b or c in Figure 3. 3. 1: Corrugation dimensions in Ch 3, whichever is the greater

t = as built thickness of plating, stiffener flange and web used in Table 4. 7. 1: Standard deduction for corrosion, dt in calculating standard deduction d_t, in mm

t_p = as built thickness of plating less standard deduction d_t, in mm, (i.e. $t_p=t-d_t$)

E = modulus of elasticity, in N/mm^2

= 206000 N/mm^2 for steel

S spacing of primary members, in metres

σ_o = specified minimum yield stress, in N/mm^2

σ_A = design longitudinal compressive stress in N/mm^2

σ_{CRB} = critical buckling stress in compression, in N/mm^2 corrected for yielding effects

σ_E = elastic critical buckling stress in compression, in N/mm^2

τ_A = design shear stress in N/mm^2

τ_{CRB} = critical buckling stress in shear, N/mm^2 corrected for yielding effects

τ_E = elastic critical buckling stress in shear, in N/mm^2

τ_0 = $\frac{\sigma_0}{\sqrt{3}}$

7. 3 Elastic critical buckling stress

7. 3. 1 The elastic critical buckling stress of plating is to be determined from Table 4. 7. 2: Elastic critical buckling strength of plating.

7. 3. 2 The elastic critical buckling stress of longitudinals is to be determined from Pt 3, Ch 4, 7.5 Scantling criteria 7.5.3.

7. 4 Design stress

7. 4. 1 Design longitudinal compressive stress, σ_A, is to be determined in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 4, 5 Hull bending strength:

$$\text{minimum } \sigma_A = \frac{30}{k_L} \; N/\text{mm}^2$$

for structural members above the neutral axis,

$$\sigma_A = \sigma_D \frac{z}{z_D}$$

for structural members below the neutral axis,

$$\sigma_A = \sigma_B \frac{z}{z_B}$$

σ_D based on sagging moment and σ_B based on hogging moment are determined in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.8 Hull moment of inertia 5.8.1.

where

z = vertical distance from the hull transverse neutral axis to the position considered, excluding deck camber, in metres

z_D, z_B = vertical distances from the hull transverse neutral axis to the deck and keel respectively, in metres

For initial design purposes, the hull transverse neutral axis may be taken at a distance $\frac{D}{2}$ above keel, where D is the depth of the ship, in metres, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6 Definitions.

Table 4. 7. 1: Standard deduction for corrosion, d_t

Structure		d_t mm	d_t range mm min.-max.
(a) Compartments carrying dry bulk cargoes	_	0.05t	0.5-1

(b) One side exposure to water ballast and/or liquid cargo.	Vertical surfaces and surfaces sloped at an angle greater than 25° to the horizontal line.		
(c) One side exposure to water ballast and/or liquid cargo.	Horizontal surfaces and surfaces sloped at an angle less than 25° to the horizontal line.	0.10*t*	2 - 3
(d) Two side exposure to water ballast and/or liquid cargo.	Vertical surfaces and surfaces sloped at an angle greater than 25° to the horizontal line.		
(e) Two side exposure to water ballast and/or liquid cargo.	Horizontal surfaces and surfaces sloped at an angle less than 25° to the horizontal line.	0.15*t*	2 - 4
Note *1.* The standard deduction d_t is to be taken as appropriate and within the range given above. **Note** *2.* For direct calculation purposes, standard deductions will be specially considered.			

Table 4. 7. 2: Elastic critical buckling strength of plating

Mode	Elastic critical buckling stress, N/mm^2
(a) Compression of plating with longitudinal stiffeners (parallel to compressive stress), *See* Note	$\sigma_E = 3.6E(\frac{t_p}{s})^2$
(b) Compression of plating with transverse stiffeners (perpendicular to compressive stress), *See* Note	$\sigma_E = 0.9c\left[1+\left(\frac{s}{1000S}\right)^2\right]^2 E\left(\frac{t_p}{s}\right)^2$ where c = 1.3 when plating stiffened by floors or deep girders = 1.21 when stiffeners are built up profiles or rolled angles = 1.10 when stiffeners are bulb plates = 1.05 when stiffeners are flat bars
(c) Shear, *See* Note	$\tau_E = 3.6[1.335+(\frac{s}{1000S})^2]E(\frac{t_p}{s})^2$
Note Where the elastic critical buckling stress, as evaluated from (a), (b) or (c), exceeds 50 per cent of specified minimum yield stress of the material, the corrected critical buckling stresses in compression (σ_{CRB}) and shear (τ_{CRB}) are given by: $\sigma_{CRB} = \sigma_E$ when $\sigma_E \le \frac{\sigma_o}{2}$ $= \sigma_o(1-\frac{\sigma_o}{4\sigma_E})$ when $\sigma_E > \frac{\sigma_o}{2}$	N/mm^2
$\tau_{CRB} = \tau_E$ when $\tau_E \le \frac{\tau_o}{2}$ $= \tau_o(1-\frac{\tau_o}{4\tau_E})$ when $\tau_E > \frac{\tau_o}{2}$	N/mm^2

7. 4. 2 Design shear stress, τ_A, is to be determined in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 4, 6 Hull shear strength. For initial design purposes, $\tau_A$may be taken as:

$$\tau_A = \frac{110}{k_L} \; N/\text{mm}^2$$

7. 5 Scantling criteria

7. 5. 1 The corrected critical buckling stress in compression, σ_{CRB}, of plate panels and longitudinals, as derived from Table 4. 7. 2: Elastic critical buckling strength of plating and Pt 3, Ch 4, 7.5 Scantling criteria 7.5.3, is to satisfy the following:

$$\sigma_{CRB} \geq \beta \sigma_A$$

where

β = 1 for plating and for web plating of longitudinals (local buckling)

β = 1.1 for longitudinals

7. 5. 2 The corrected critical buckling stress in shear, τ_{CRB}, of plate panels, as derived from Table 4. 7. 2: Elastic critical buckling strength of plating, is to satisfy the following:

$$\tau_{CRB} \geq \tau_A$$

Figure 4. 7. 1: Dimensions of longitudinals

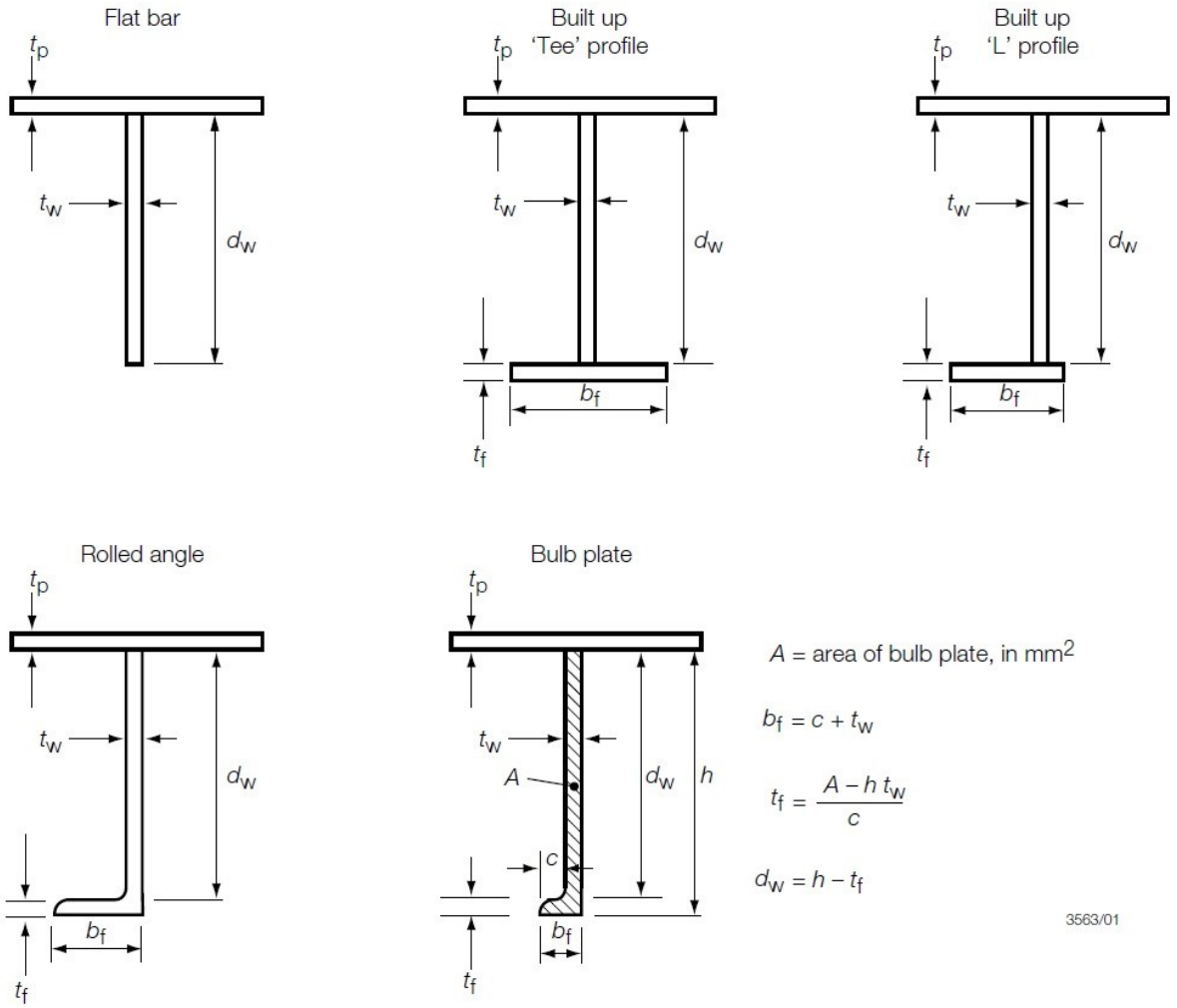


Table 4. 7. 3: Elastic critical buckling strength of longitudinals

Mode	Elastic critical buckling stress, N/mm^2
(a) Column buckling (perpendicular to plane of plating) without rotation of cross section, *See* Note 1	$\sigma_E = 0.001E\frac{I_a}{A_t S^2}$
(b) Torsional buckling, *See* Note 1	$\sigma_E = \frac{0.001EI_w}{I_p S^2}(m^2 + \frac{K}{m^2}) + 0.385E\frac{I_t}{I_p}$
(c) Web buckling, *See* Notes 1 and 3 (flat bars are excluded)	$\sigma_E = 3.8E(\frac{t_w}{d_w})^2$

Symbols and Parameters

d_w = web depth, in mm

t_w = as built web thickness less standard deduction d_t as specified in Table 4. 7. 1: Standard deduction for corrosion, dt, in mm, (i.e. $t_w = t - d_t$). For webs in which the thickness varies, a mean thickness is to be used

b_f = flange width, in mm

t_f = as built flange thickness less standard deduction d_t as specified in Table 4. 7. 1: Standard deduction for corrosion, dt, in mm, (i.e. $t_f = t - d_t$). For bulb plates, the mean thickness of the bulb may be used, *See* Figure 4. 7. 1: Dimensions of longitudinals

A_t = cross-sectional area, in cm^2, of longitudinal, including attached plating, taking account of standard deductions, *See* Note 4

I_a = moment of inertia, in cm^4, of longitudinal, including attached plating, taking account of standard deductions, *See* Note 4

I_t = St.Venant's moment of inertia, in cm^4, of longitudinal (without attached plating)

= $\frac{d_w t_w^3}{3}10^{-4}$ for flat bars

= $\frac{1}{3}[d_w t_w^3 + b_f t_f^3(1 - 0.63\frac{t_f}{b_f})]10^{-4}$ for built up profiles, rolled angles and bulb plates

I_p = polar moment of inertia, in cm^4, of profile about connection of stiffener to plating

= $\frac{d_w^3 t_w}{3}10^{-4}$ for flat bars

= $(\frac{d_w^3 t_w}{3} + d_w^2 b_f t_f)10^{-4}$ for built up profiles, rolled angles and bulb plates

I_w = sectorial moment of inertia, in cm^6, of profile about connection of stiffener to plating

= $\frac{d_w^3 t_w^3}{36}10^{-6}$ for flat bars

= $\frac{t_f b_f^3 d_w^2}{12}10^{-6}$ for `Tee' profiles

= $\frac{b_f^3 d_w^2}{12(b_f + d_w)^2}[t_f(b_f^2 + 2b_f d_w + 4d_w^2) + 3t_w b_f d_w]10^{-6}$ for `L' profiles, rolled angles and bulb plates

K = $\frac{1.03CS^4}{EI_w}10^4$

m is determined as follows:

m	*K* range
1	$0 < K \leq 4$
2	$4 < K \leq 36$

3	$36 < K \leq 144$
4	$144 < K \leq 400$
5	$400 < K \leq 900$
6	$900 < K \leq 1764$
m	$(m-1)^2m^2 < K \leq m^2(m+1)^2$

C = spring stiffness exerted by supporting plate panel

$$= \frac{k_p E {t_p}^3}{3s\left(1 + \frac{1.33 k_p d_w {t_p}^3}{s {t_w}^3}\right)}$$

kp 1 - ηp, and is not to be taken less than zero. For built up profiles, rolled angles and bulb plates, kp need not be taken less than 0.1

n_p $\frac{\sigma A}{\sigma E_p}$ where σEP=elastic critical buckling stress (σE) of supporting plate derived from Table 4. 7. 2: Elastic critical buckling strength of plating

All other symbols as defined inPt 3, Ch 4, 7.2 Symbols 7.2.1 .

Note *1.* Where the elastic critical buckling stress, as evaluated from (a), (b) or (c), exceeds 50 per cent of specified minimum yield stress of the material, the corrected critical buckling stress in compression (σ_{CRB}) is given by:

$$\sigma_{CRB} = \sigma_o\left(1 - \frac{\sigma_o}{4\sigma_E}\right) \text{N/mm}^2$$

Note *2.* Figure 4. 7. 1: Dimensions of longitudinals.

Note *3.* For flanges on angles and T-sections of longitudinals, the following requirement is to be satisfied: $\frac{b_f}{t} \leq 15$for angles, $\frac{b_f}{t} \leq 30$ for 'Tee' profiles,

- **where**

t = as built flange thicknesses, in mm

Note *4.* The area of attached plating is to be calculated using actual spacing of secondary stiffeners.

PART

3

CHAPTER **4** **Longitudinal Strength**

SECTION **8** **Loading guidance information**

8. 1 General

8. 1. 1 Sufficient information is to be supplied to the Master of every ship to enable him to arrange loading and ballasting in such a way as to avoid the creation of unacceptable stresses in the ship's structure.

8. 1. 2 This information is to be provided by means of a Loading Manual and in addition, where required, by means of an approved loading instrument.

8. 2 Loading Manual

8. 2. 1 A Loading Manual is to be supplied to all ships where longitudinal strength calculations have been required, *See* Pt 3, Ch 4, 2 General. The Manual is to be submitted for approval in respect of strength aspects. Where both Loading Manual and loading instrument are supplied, the Loading Manual must nevertheless be approved from the strength aspect. In this case, the Manual is to be endorsed to the effect that any departures from these conditions in service are to be arranged on the basis of the loading instrument and the allowable local loadings shown in the Manual, *See* Pt 3, Ch 4, 8.2, Loading Manual 8.2.4.

8. 2. 2 The Manual is to be based on the final data of the ship and is to include well-defined lightweight distribution and buoyancy data.

8. 2. 3 Details of the loading conditions given in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.3 Design still water bending moments 5.3.3 are to be included in the Manual as applicable.

8. 2. 4 The Manual is also to contain the following:

a. Values of actual and permissible still water bending moments and shear forces and, where applicable, limitations due to torsional loads.

b. The allowable local loadings for the structure such as the hatch covers, decks and double bottoms. If the ship is not approved to carry load on the deck or hatch covers, this is to be clearly stated.

c. Details of cargo carriage constraints imposed by the use of an accepted coating in association with a system of corrosion control, *See* Pt 3, Ch 2, 3.6 Application of coatings and alternative means of protection.

d. A note saying:
'Scantlings approved for minimum draught forward of ...m with ballast tanks No... filled. In heavy weather conditions the forward draught should not be less than this value. If, in the opinion of the Master, sea conditions are likely to cause regular slamming, then other appropriate measures such as change in speed, heading or an increase in draught forward may also need to be taken.'

e. The maximum unladen weight, in tonnes, of grab that is considered suitable for the approved thickness of the hold inner bottom for bulk carriers and ore or oil carriers that are regularly

discharged by grabs. This maximum unladen weight may differ for adjacent holds, *See* Pt 3, Ch 9, 8.2 Inner bottom plating and Pt 4, Ch 7, 8.1 General. This weight does not preclude the use of heavier grabs, but is intended as an indication to the Builders, Owners and operators of the increased risk of local damage and the possibility of accelerated diminution of the plating thickness if grabs heavier than this are used regularly to discharge cargo.

f. The design minimum cargo temperature in °C for ships other than liquefied gas carriers which are intended to be loaded with liquid cargo having a temperature below −10°C, *See* Pt 3, Ch 2, 2.4 Carriage of cold cargoes 2.4.1.

8. 2. 5 In addition to the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4, 8.2, Loading Manual 8.2.4, the Manual is to contain the following information for bulk carriers (*See* Pt 3, Ch 4, 3.2 General 3.2.2), ore carriers and combination carriers of length, *L*, 150 m or above:

a. The cargo hold(s) or combination of cargo holds that may be empty at maximum draught. If no cargo hold is permitted to be empty at maximum draught, this is to be clearly stated in the Manual.

b. Maximum allowable and minimum required mass of cargo and double bottom ballast for each hold as a function of the draught at mid-hold position.

c. Maximum allowable and minimum required mass of cargo and double bottom ballast for any two adjacent holds as a function of the mean draught in way of these holds. The mean draught may be calculated by averaging the draught at the two mid-hold positions.

d. Maximum allowable inner bottom loading together with specification of the nature of the cargo, for cargoes other than bulk cargoes.

e. The maximum rate of ballast exchange, together with advice that a load plan is to be agreed with the terminal on the basis of achievable rates of exchange.

For bulk carriers for which it is required to undertake longitudinal strength calculations in the flooded condition, *See* Pt 4, Ch 7, 3.1 General 3.1.2, the Manual is also to contain envelope results and permissible limits of still water bending moments and shear forces for hold flooded conditions, *See* Pt 4, Ch 7, 3.4 Flooded conditions.

8. 2. 6 Where applicable, the Manual is also to contain the procedure for ballast exchange and sediment removal at sea.

8. 2. 7 Where alteration to structure, lightweight, cargo distribution or draught is proposed, revised information is to be submitted for approval.

8. 3 Loading instrument

8. 3. 1 In addition to a Loading Manual, an approved type loading instrument is to be provided for all ships where *L* is greater than 65 m and which are approved for non-uniform distribution of loading. The following ships are exempt from this requirement:

a. Ships with very limited possibilities for variations in the distribution of cargo and ballast.

b. Ships with a regular or fixed trading pattern.

c. Ships exempt by individual Chapters in Pt 4 Ship Structures (Ship Types).

8. 3. 2 The loading instrument is to be capable of calculating shear forces and bending moments, in any load or ballast condition at specified readout points and is to indicate the permissible values. On container ships and other ships with large deck openings, (*See* Pt 3, Ch 4, 3.3 Exceptions 3.3.2) cargo torque is also to be calculated.

8. 3. 3 For bulk carriers, ore carriers and combination carriers of length, *L*, 150 m or above, the loading instrument is to be additionally capable of verifying that the following are within permissible limits:

a. the mass of cargo and double bottom ballast in way of each hold as a function of the draught at the mid-hold position.

b. the mass of cargo and double bottom ballast for any two adjacent holds as a function of the mean draught in way of these holds. The mean draught may be calculated by averaging the draught at the two mid-hold positions.

For bulk carriers for which it is required to undertake longitudinal strength calculations in the flooded condition, *See* Pt 4, Ch 7, 1.2 Application 1.2.2, the loading instrument is also to be capable of verifying that the still water bending moments and shear forces in hold flooded conditions (*See* Pt 4, Ch 7, 3.4 Flooded conditions) are within permissible limits.

8. 3. 4 If the approved loading manual utilises bulkhead correction factors for shear force distribution, then the loading instrument must also have the capability to account for the bulkhead correction factors.

8. 3. 5 The instrument is to be certified in accordance with ACS's document entitled *Approval of Longitudinal Strength and Stability Calculations Programs*.

8. 3. 6 The instrument readout points are usually selected at the position of the transverse bulkheads or other obvious boundaries. As many readout points as considered necessary by ACS are to be included, e.g. between bulkheads.

8. 3. 7 A notice is to be displayed on the loading instrument stating:

a. `Scantlings approved for minimum draught forward of ...m with ballast tanks No... filled. In heavy weather conditions, the forward draught should not be less than this value. If, in the opinion of the Master, sea conditions are likely to cause regular slamming, then other appropriate measures such as change in speed, heading or an increase in draught forward may also need to be taken.'

8. 3. 8 Where alteration to structure, lightweight or cargo distribution is proposed, the loading instrument is to be modified accordingly and details submitted for approval.

8. 3. 9 The operation of the loading instrument is to be verified by the Surveyors upon installation and at Annual and Periodical Surveys as required in Pt 1, Ch 3 Periodical Survey Regulations. An Operation Manual for the instrument is to be verified as being available on board.

8. 3. 10 Where an onboard computer system having a strength computation capability is provided as an Owner's option, it is recommended that the system be certified in accordance with ACS's document entitled *Approval of Longitudinal Strength and Stability Calculations Programs*. For systems having a stability computation capability and installed on a new ship, *See also* Pt 1, Ch 2, 1.1 General 1.1.11. For systems having a stability computation capability and installed on an existing ship, it is recommended that the system be certified in accordance with ACS's document entitled *Approval of Longitudinal Strength and Stability Calculation Programs.*

8. 4 Onboard lashing program

8. 4. 1 An onboard lashing program to calculate forces acting on the container stowage arrangement may be provided, *See* Pt 3, Ch 14 Cargo Securing Arrangements. This may be an extension to the loading instrument covered under Pt 3, Ch 4, 8.3 Loading instrument. If the software to carry out lashing calculations is installed and maintained in accordance with the Rules, the ship will be eligible to be assigned the special features notation **BoxMax**, with one or more of the supplementary letters **V** and **W**. The notation **BoxMax(V,W)** may be supplemented with the letter **L** if the conditions for this notation are satisfied. **BoxMax** may be supplemented with the letter **M** if the conditions for this notation are satisfied.

8. 4. 2 For description of the **BoxMax** notation and its **V**, **W**, **L** and **M** features, *See Pt 3, Ch 14, 1.2 Classification notations and descriptive notes*.

8. 4. 3 To qualify for the notation **BoxMax** the following requirements must be satisfied:

a. The onboard lashing program is to be certified in accordance with ACS's *Approval of Strength and Stability Calculation Programs*.

b. Where alteration to the container stowage arrangements is proposed, the onboard lashing program is to be modified accordingly and details submitted for approval.

c. The operation of the onboard lashing program is to be verified by the Surveyors upon installation and at Annual and Periodical Surveys as required in Pt 1, Ch 3 Periodical Survey Regulations. An Operation Manual for the onboard lashing program is to be verified as being available on board.

8. 4. 4 To qualify for the aspects of the notation, i.e. **V**, **W**, **L** and **M**, the Surveyor is to verify upon installation and at Annual and Periodical Surveys as required in Pt 1, Ch 3 Periodical Survey Regulations that the individual features of the notation are implemented in the onboard lashing program. The Surveyor is also to verify that an Operation Manual for these aspects of the onboard lashing program is available on board.

PART

3

CHAPTER **5 Fore End Structure**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**960**
	1. 1	Application	960
	1. 2	Structural configuration	960
	1. 3	Structural continuity	960
	1. 4	Symbols and definitions	961
	1. 5	Strengthening of bottom forward	961
	1. 6	Strengthening against bow flare slamming	963
SECTION 2	**Deck structure**		**973**
	2. 1	General	973
	2. 2	Deck plating	973
	2. 3	Deck stiffening	973
	2. 4	Deck supporting structure	975
	2. 5	Deck openings	976
SECTION 3	**Shell envelope plating**		**980**
	3. 1	General	980
	3. 2	Keel	980
	3. 3	Stem	980
	3. 4	Bottom shell and bilge	980
	3. 5	Side shell and sheerstrake	981
	3. 6	Shell openings	981
SECTION 4	**Shell envelope framing**		**984**
	4. 1	General	984
	4. 2	Shell longitudinals	984
	4. 3	Shell framing	986
	4. 4	Panting stringers in way of transverse framing	987
	4. 5	Primary structure at sides	989

SECTION 5 Single and double bottom structure 995
5. 1 General 995
5. 2 Single bottoms − Transverse framing 995
5. 3 Single bottoms − Longitudinal framing 998
5. 4 Double bottoms 998
SECTION 6 Fore peak structure 1000
6. 1 General 1000
6. 2 Bottom structure 1000
6. 3 Side structure − Transverse framing 1000
6. 4 Side structure − Longitudinal framing 1002
6. 5 Bulbous bow 1002
6. 6 Wash bulkhead 1003
6. 7 Collision bulkhead 1003
SECTION 7 Forward deep tank structure 1004
7. 1 General 1004
7. 2 Bottom structure 1004
7. 3 Side structure − Transverse framing 1004
7. 4 Side structure − Longitudinal framing 1005
7. 5 Wash bulkheads 1005
7. 6 Transverse boundary bulkheads 1005

PART

3

CHAPTER **5 Fore End Structure**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 5. 1. 1: Additional strengthening of bottom forward 963
Table 5. 1. 2: Permissible stresses 968
Table 5. 1. 3: Buckling procedure for primary member web plating and web stiffener 972
Table 5. 2. 1: Strength/weather deck plating forward (excluding forecastle deck) 974
Table 5. 2. 2: Lower deck plating forward 975
Table 5. 2. 3: Strength/weather deck longitudinals forward 976
Table 5. 2. 4: Weather deck beams forward 977
Table 5. 2. 5: Spacing of girders and transverses under strength/weather decks forward 978
Table 5. 3. 1: Shell plating forward 981
Table 5. 4. 1: Shell framing (longitudinal) forward 984
Table 5. 4. 2: Shell framing (transverse) forward 987
Table 5. 4. 3: Spacing of side transverses and web frames forward 989
Table 5. 4. 4: Primary structure forward 990
Table 5. 5. 1: Single bottom construction forward 995
Table 5. 5. 2: Double bottom construction forward 998
Table 5. 6. 1: Fore peak structure 1001

PART

3

CHAPTER **5 Fore End Structure**

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 5. 1. 1: Pressure heads 963
Figure 5. 1. 2: Flare angle determination 970
Figure 5. 1. 3: Chord spacing and mean chord spacing for secondary members 971
Figure 5. 1. 4: Mean chord spacing for primary members 971
Figure 5. 1. 5 Dimensions of critical areas of (a) primary member web plating and (b) primary web stiffener 971
Figure 5. 4. 1: Framing depths for transverse frames 993
Figure 5. 4. 2: Framing factors for primary members 993
Figure 5. 4. 3: Illustration of bow fullness factor determination 994

PART

3

CHAPTER **5** **Fore End Structure**

SECTION **1** **General**

1. 1 Application

1. 1. 1 This Chapter applies to all types of ship covered by Pt 4 Ship Structures (Ship Types) except where specifically stated otherwise.

1. 1. 2 The requirements given are those specific to fore ends and relate to structure situated in the region forward of 0.3*L* from the forward perpendicular.

1. 1. 3 Requirements for cargo space structure within this region not dealt with in this Chapter are to be as detailed in the relevant Chapter of Pt 4 Ship Structures (Ship Types) for the particular ship type.

1. 1. 4 The requirements in this Chapter are not applicable to Double Hull Oil Tankers or Bulk Carriers with a **CSR** notation. *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull).

1. 2 Structural configuration

1. 2. 1 The Rules provide for both longitudinal and transverse framing systems.

1. 2. 2 In the case of container ships and open type ships, additional requirements may apply as detailed in Pt 4, Ch 8 Container Ships.

1. 2. 3 In the case of fast cargo ships, the additional requirements given in Pt 4, Ch 1, 3 Longitudinal strength are to be complied with where applicable.

1. 2. 4 The requirements regarding minimum bow height given in Pt 3, Ch 3, 6 Minimum bow heights, reserve buoyancy and extent of forecastle are to be complied with where applicable.

1. 3 Structural continuity

1. 3. 1 Suitable scarfing arrangements are to be made to ensure continuity of strength and the avoidance of abrupt structural changes.

1. 3. 2 Where longitudinal framing terminates and is replaced by a transverse system, adequate arrangements are to be made to avoid an abrupt changeover. Where a forecastle is fitted extending aft of 0.15*L* from the F.P., longitudinal framing at the upper deck and topsides is generally to be continued forward of the end bulkhead of this superstructure. In bulk carriers and oil tankers (*See* Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.1 Application 1.1.4) the longitudinal framing at the upper deck is to be maintained over the cargo space region and continued over the fore peak region.

1. 3. 3 In container or similar ships having continuous side tanks or double skin construction in way of the cargo spaces, the longitudinal bulkheads are to be continued as far forward as is practicable and are to be suitably tapered at their ends. Where, due to the ship's form, such bulkheads are stepped, suitable scarfing is to be arranged.

1. 3. 4 In bulk carriers (*See* Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.1 Application 1.1.4) the topside tank and double bottom hopper tank structures are to be maintained over the cargo space region, and suitable taper brackets are to be arranged in line with the end of these tank structures in the fore peak region. In addition, in way of the cargo space forward bulkhead, a girder or intercostal bulb plate stiffeners (fitted between and connected to the bulkhead vertical stiffeners), are to be arranged on the forward side in line with the sloped bulkheads of the topside and hopper tanks clear of the taper brackets.

1. 4 Symbols and definitions

1. 4. 1 The following symbols and definitions are applicable to this Chapter unless otherwise stated:

L, B, D, T, C_b and V = as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1, Principal particulars

k_L, k = higher tensile steel factor, *See* Pt 3, Ch 2, 1.2, Steel

l overall length of stiffening member, in metres, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3.3 Determination of span point

l_e effective length of stiffening member, in metres, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3.3 Determination of span point

s spacing of secondary stiffeners, in mm

t thickness of plating, in mm

I inertia of stiffening member, in cm^4, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3.2, Geometric properties of section

S spacing, or mean spacing, of primary members, in metres

Z section modulus of stiffening member, in cm^3, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3.2, Geometric properties of section

ρ relative density (specific gravity) of liquid carried in a tank and is to be taken not less than 1.025.

1. 4. 2 For the purpose of this Chapter the forward perpendicular, F.P., is defined as the forward limit of the Rule length L.

1. 5 Strengthening of bottom forward

1. 5. 1 The bottom forward of a sea-going ship is to be additionally strengthened, except where the ship is so designed that a minimum draught forward, T_{FB}, of $0.045L$ can be achieved for any ballast or part loaded condition. This draught is to be indicated on the shell expansion plan, the plan showing the internal strengthening, the Loading Manual and loading instrument, where fitted, *See* Pt 3, Ch 4, 8 Loading guidance information.

1. 5. 2 The requirements for the additional strengthening apply to ships where L is greater than 65 m. Where a ship is classed for service in protected waters or extended protected waters, compliance with the requirements of this Section may be modified or waived altogether.

1. 5. 3 The additional strengthening is to extend forward of $0.3L$ from the F.P. over the flat of bottom and adjacent plating with attached stiffeners up to a height of $0.002L$ above the base line or 300 mm whichever is the lesser.

1. 5. 4 The scantling requirements outside the areas defined in Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.5 Strengthening of bottom forward 1.5.3 are to be suitably tapered to maintain adequate continuity of strength in both longitudinal and transverse directions.

1. 5. 5 The requirements for the additional strengthening within the region defined in Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.5 Strengthening of bottom forward 1.5.3 are given in Table 5. 1. 1: Additional strengthening of bottom forward, or may be obtained by direct calculation. Where T_{FB} is less than $0.01L$, the additional strengthening is to be specially considered.

1. 5. 6 Bottom longitudinals are to pass through and be supported by the webs of primary members. The vertical web stiffeners are to be connected to the bottom longitudinals. The cross-sectional area of the connections is to comply with the requirements given in Table 5. 1. 1: Additional strengthening of bottom forward.

1. 5. 7 The scantlings required by this Section must in no case be less than those required by the remaining Sections in Pt 3, Ch 5 Fore End Structure.

1. 5. 8 For minimum draught forward, T_{FB} between $0.01L$ and $0.045L$, the equivalent slamming pressure expressed as a head of water, h_s, is to be obtained from Figure 5. 1. 1: Pressure heads, where h_{max} is calculated from the following expressions:

$$65 < L \leq 169m, h_{max} = 10\sqrt{L}Fm$$

$$169 < L \leq 180\ m, h_{max} = 130Fm$$

$$L > 180m, h_{max} = 130\ Fe^{-0.0125(L-180)0.705}m$$

where

F = $5.95 - 10.5\left(\frac{T_{FB}}{L}\right)^{0.2}$

= and

e = base of natural logarithms, 2.7183

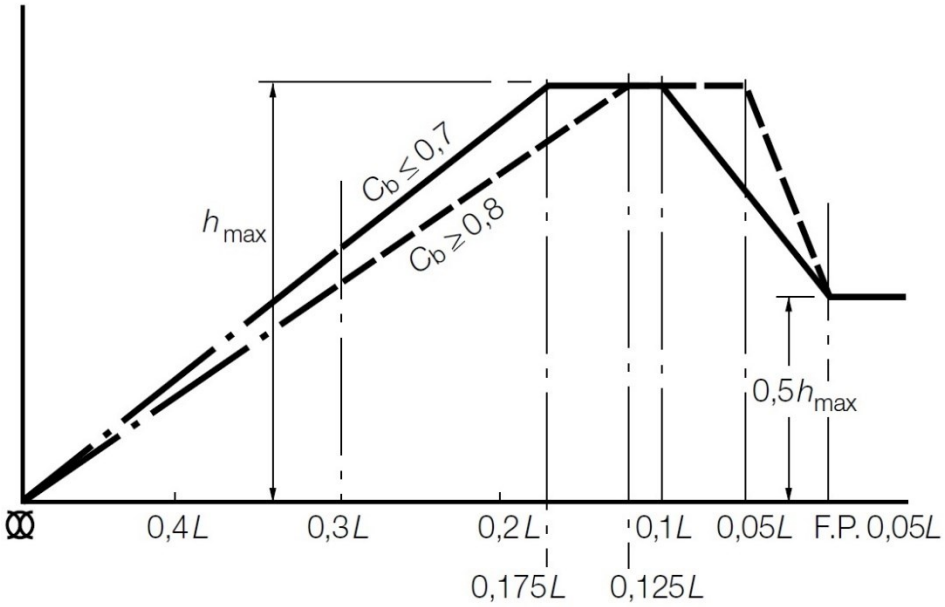
a. The application of the maximum pressure for forward of $0.3L$ from the F.P. is as indicated in Figure 5. 1. 1: Pressure heads. For C_b between 0.70 and 0.80 its position may be obtained by linear interpolation.

b. Where the bottom plating forms the boundary of a double bottom tank, deep tank or double skin tank which is full in all ballast conditions, then for such conditions the head, h_s, may be reduced by 1.25 times the head, in metres, of ballast water to top of tank.

c. For bulk carriers (*See* Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.1 Application 1.1.4) the reduction to the head, h_s, is not to exceed the head, in metres, of ballast water to the top of the hopper tank or 1.25 times the depth, in metres, of the double bottom tank, whichever is the greater.

d. For ballast and part loaded conditions where the draught forward is less than $0.045L$ and the reduction to the head, h_s, has been applied, the ballast tanks are to be filled and a note added to the loading booklet to this effect, *See* Pt 3, Ch 4, 8.2 Loading Manual 8.2.4.d.

Figure 5. 1. 1: Pressure heads



1. 6 Strengthening against bow flare slamming

1. 6. 1 The requirements of this Section apply to all ships except those defined in Pt 4, Ch 2 Ferries, Roll On-Roll Off Ships and Passenger Ships and Pt 4, Ch 8 Container Ships.

1. 6. 2 The side structure in the area forward of $0.075L$ from the F.P. and above the summer load waterline is to be strengthened against bow flare impact pressure. The strengthening is to extend vertically to the uppermost deck level, including the forecastle deck, if fitted, but need not exceed the level of $T + 1.65Hb$ above the base line, where H_b is the minimum bow height, in metres, as derived in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1 Principal particulars 6.1.11.

1. 6. 3 The flare angle, α, is the angle between the vertical axis and the tangent of the outer shell measured normal to the shell in a vertical plane, at the point under consideration. The entry angle, β, is the angle between the longitudinal axis and the waterplane tangent measured on the outer shell, at the point under consideration. The flare angle may normally be derived in accordance with Figure 5. 1. 2: Flare angle determination.

Table 5. 1. 1: Additional strengthening of bottom forward

Item	Requirements
(1) Longitudinally framed bottom shell plating (including keel), *See* Notes 1 and 2	$t = 0.003sf\sqrt{h_s k}$

(2) Bottom longitudinals - other than flat bars	$\frac{d_w}{t_w} \leq 55\sqrt{k}$ $\frac{d_w t_w}{100} \geq 0.00033 k h_s s c \left(S - \frac{s}{2000}\right)$ cm^2 $Z \geq 6.8 \times 10^{-6} h_s s k \left[(17.5 l_s)^2 - (0.01 s)^2 + d_w c \left(S - \frac{s}{2000}\right)\right]$ cm^3 $\frac{(A_1 \bar{\tau} + \alpha)}{p} \times 10^{-1} \geq 1$ $A_w \geq 0.84 A_1$	
(3) Bottom longitudinals - flat bars	Will be specially considered	
	Transverse framing	Longitudinal framing
(4) Primary structure in way of single bottoms	(a) Centre girder: Scantlings as required by item (1) in Table 5. 1. 1: Additional strengthening of bottom forward, except that in determining Z in way of a deep tank forward of 0.2L from the F.P. the value of h_5 is to be increased by the following percentages: where $T_{FB} \leq 0.03L_2$, 30 per cent where $T_{FB} \geq 0.04L_2$, 0 per cent The increase in h_5 for intermediate values of T_{FB} to be obtained by interpolation (b) Floors: Scantlings as required by item (2) in Table 5. 1. 1: Additional strengthening of bottom forward, except that in way of dry cargo spaces the minimum face area is to be increased by the following percentages: where $T_{FB} \leq 0.03L_2$, 50 per cent where $T_{FB} \geq 0.04L_2$, 0 per cent	(a) Ships having one or more longitudinal bulkheads: (i) Centre girder Scantlings as required by item (4) in Table 5. 1. 1: Additional strengthening of bottom forward and (iii) (ii) Bottom transverses Maximum spacing As for midships region Scantlings as required by Pt 4, Ch 9, 9 Primary members supporting longitudinal framing or Pt 4, Ch 10, 2 Primary members supporting longitudinal framing (iii) For horizontally stiffened longitudinal bulkheads and girders the depth to thickness ratio of the panel attached to the bottom shell plate is not to exceed $55\sqrt{k}$ (iv) Where $T_{FB,} < 0.025L_2$ the scantlings and arrangements will receive individual consideration

	The increase of minimum face area for intermediate values of T_{FB} is to be obtained by interpolation (c) Side girders: Arrangement and scantlings as required by Pt 3, Ch 5, 5.2 Single bottoms – Transverse framing 5.2.2 and Pt 3, Ch 5, 5.2 Single bottoms – Transverse framing 5.2.3, with the addition of intermediate half-height girders or equivalent fore and aft stiffening	(b) Other ship arrangements will receive individual consideration
(5) Primary structure in way of double bottoms, *See* Note 3	(a) Plate floors: Maximum spacing, every frame Scantlings as required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 8 Double bottom structure (b) Centre and side girders: Maximum spacing, $0.003S_F$ m (c) Intermediate half-height girders to be arranged midway between side girders: Scantlings as required for non watertight side girders by Pt 4, Ch 1, 8 Double bottom structure	(a) Plate floors: Maximum spacing: $0.002s_F$ m for $T_{FB} < 0.04L_2$ $0.003s_F$ m for $T_{FB} \geq 0.04L_2$ but not to exceed that required by item (2) in Table 5. 5. 2: Double bottom construction forward Scantlings as required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 8 Double bottom structure (b) Centre and side girders: Maximum spacing: $0.003s_L$ m for $T_{FB} < 0.04L_2$ $0.004s_L$ m for $T_{FB} > 0.04L_2$ but not to exceed that required by item (4) in Table 5. 5. 2: Double bottom construction forward. Scantlings as required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 8 Double bottom structure
(6) Primary structure in way of double bottoms supported by longitudinal bulkheads	–	The scantlings and arrangements will receive individual consideration on the basis of direct calculations using, if necessary, a suitably defined two-dimensional grillage model, *See* Pt 3, Ch 1, 3 Equivalents
Symbols		

L, T, s, k as defined in Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.4 Symbols and definitions 1.4.1

c = 1.0 for $S \leq 2.5$ m

= $(0.87 + 0.16S)$ c 1 for $S > 2.5$ m

c_1 = 1.0 for $S \leq 1.0$ m

= $(1.14 - 0.14S)$ for 1.0 m $< S \leq$ 4.0 m

= $\frac{2.32}{s}$ for $S > 4.0$m

d_w = web depth, in mm, which for bulb flats may be taken as 0.9 times the section height

$$f = \left(1.1 - \frac{s}{2500S}\right)$$

= but not greater than 1.0

h_s = equivalent slamming pressure, in metres obtained from Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.5 Strengthening of bottom forward 1.5.8

l_s l_e, in metres, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.4 Symbols and definitions 1.4.1 where in way of a double bottom

= S, in metres, where in way of a single bottom

S = spacing of primary members, in metres

ρ = $9.81h_s s c_1 \left[S - \frac{s}{2000}\right] \times 10^{-3}$kN

s_F = spacing of transverse frames, in mm, for longitudinally framed side and bottom construction s_F may be taken as s_L

s_L = spacing of bottom longitudinals, in mm

t_w = web thickness, in mm

A_f = cross-sectional area of primary member web stiffener, in cm^2

A_{fc} = effective area of primary member web stiffener in way of butted end connection to the longitudinal, in cm^2

A_L = area of weld of lapped connection, in cm^2, calculated as total length of weld, in cm × throat thickness, in cm

A_w = area of weld of lug and web connection to the longitudinal, in cm^2, calculated as total length of weld in cm × throat thickness, in cm

A_1 = effective total cross-sectional area of the lug and web connection to the longitudinal, in cm^2

L_2 = L but need not be taken greater than 215 m

T_{FB} = draught, in metres, at the F.P., as defined in Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.5 Strengthening of bottom forward 1.5.1

a = $A_f \bar{\sigma}$ for the web stiffeners

= $A_{fC} \bar{\sigma}$ for a butted connection to the longitudinals

= $A_L \bar{\tau}$ for a lapped connection

$\bar{\sigma}$ = permissible direct stress, in N/mm^2, given in Table 5. 1. 2: Permissible stresses

$\bar{\tau}$ permissible shear stress, in N/mm^2, given in Table 5. 1. 2: Permissible stresses

Note *1.* If intermediate stiffening is fitted the thickness of the bottom shell plating may be 80 per cent of that required by (1) but is to be not less than the normal taper thickness.

Note *2.* For transverse framing the bottom shell plating is to be specially considered.

Note *3.* Particular care is to be taken to limit the size and number of openings in way of the ends of floors or girders or to fit suitable reinforcement where such openings are essential.

Note *4.* The welding requirements of Pt 3, Ch 10 Welding and Structural Details, and in cargo oil tanks of tankers, the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 9, 10.14 Arrangements at intersections of continuous secondary and primary members or Pt 4, Ch 10, 7.14 Arrangements at intersections of continuous secondary and primary members, are also to be complied with.

1. 6. 4 The equivalent bow flare slamming head, h_S, is to be taken as:

$$h_S = 0.8(0.2 + 1.5\tan\alpha)\left(0.51V\sin\beta\cos\alpha + \frac{\pi}{\sqrt{L}}\delta\right)^2 m$$

where

V = as defined in Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.4 Symbols and definitions 1.4.1

α = flare angle, in degrees, at the point under consideration

β = entry angle, in degrees, at the point under consideration

δ = $\left(\frac{\pi}{30}Le^{-0.0033L} - 0.5d\right)$ and is not to be taken less than zero

e = base of natural logarithms 2.7183

d = vertical distance, in metres, between the waterline at draught T and the point under consideration.

1. 6. 5 The thickness of the side shell is to be not less than:

$$t = 3.2s_C\sqrt{kh_s}C_R \times 10^{-2}\text{mm}$$

where

s_C = spacing of secondary stiffeners, in mm, measured along a chord between parallel adjacent members or equivalent supports, as shown in Figure 5. 1. 3: Chord spacing and mean chord spacing for secondary members

h_S = bow flare slamming head, in metres, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.6 Strengthening against bow flare slamming 1.6.3

C_R = panel ratio factor

= $\left(\frac{l}{s_c}\right)^{0.41}$ but is not to be taken less than 0.06 or greater than 0.1

l = overall panel length, in metres, measured along a chord between the primary members.

1. 6. 6 The scantlings of secondary stiffeners are not to be less than:

a. Section modulus of secondary stiffeners

$$Z = 3.6s_{CM}kh_sl_e^2 \times 10^{-3}\text{cm}^3$$

b. Web area of secondary stiffeners

$$A = 3.7s_{CM}kh_S(l_e - s_{CM}/2000) \times 10^{-4}\text{cm}^2$$

Where

s_{CM} = mean spacing of secondary stiffeners, in mm, measured along a chord between parallel adjacent members or equivalent supports, as shown in Figure 5. 1. 3: Chord spacing and mean chord spacing for secondary members

h_S = bow flare slamming head, in metres, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.6 Strengthening against bow flare slamming 1.6.3

= Other symbols are as defined in Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.4 Symbols and definitions 1.4.1.

Table 5. 1. 2: Permissible stresses

Item		Direct stress, $\bar{\sigma}$ in N/mm^2 *See* Note	Shear stress, $\bar{\tau}$ in N/mm^2
Primary member web stiffener on area A_f	(a) Flat bars *See* Note	$\frac{10.3}{k}\left[33-\frac{d}{t\sqrt{k}}\right]$	—
	(b) Bulb plates *See* Note	$\frac{8.6}{k}\left[40-\frac{d}{\left(\frac{100A_f}{d}-\frac{t}{6}\right)\sqrt{k}}\right]$	—
	(c) Inverted angles	$\frac{220}{k}$	—
Primary member web stiffener on area A_{fc}		$\frac{245}{k}$	—
Primary member web stiffener lapped to secondary member on area A_L		—	$\frac{167}{k}$
Lug or web connection on area A_1	Single	—	$\frac{124}{k}$
	Double	—	$\frac{141}{k}$
Symbols			
A_f, A_L, A_1 as defined in Table 5. 1. 1: Additional strengthening of bottom forward d =stiffener depth, in mm k =as defined in Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.4 Symbols and definitions 1.4.1 t=stiffener web thickness, in mm			
Note $\bar{\sigma}$ to be taken not greater than $\frac{220}{k}$			

1. 6. 7 The scantlings of primary members are not to be less than:

a. Section modulus of primary members

$$Z = 2S_{CM}kh_s l_e^2 \text{cm}^3$$

b. Web area of primary members

$$A = 0.2S_{CM}kh_s l_e \text{cm}^2$$

where

S_{CM} = mean spacing of primary members, in metres, measured along a chord between parallel adjacent members or equivalent supports, as shown in Figure 5. 1. 4: Mean chord spacing for primary members

h_S = bow flare slamming head, in metres, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.6 Strengthening against bow flare slamming 1.6.4

= Other symbols are as defined in Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.4 Symbols and definitions 1.4.1.

1. 6. 8 For primary members with cut-outs for the passage of secondary stiffeners, and which may have web stiffeners connected to the secondary stiffener, buckling checks are to be carried out to ensure that the primary member web plating and web stiffener will not buckle under the design load. The buckling procedure to be followed is given in Table 5. 1. 3: Buckling procedure for primary member web plating and web stiffener. Where the web stiffener is fitted with a bracket, the buckling capability of the web stiffener in way of the cut-out is to take account of the bracket. Where no web stiffener is fitted, the buckling capability of the primary member web plating is to be checked for the total load transmitted to the connection.

1. 6. 9 The structural scantlings required in areas strengthened against bow flare slamming are to be tapered from 0.075L aft of fore perpendicular to meet the normal requirements at 0.15L aft of the fore perpendicular.

1. 6. 10 Where the stiffener web is not perpendicular to the plating, tripping brackets may need to be fitted in order to obtain adequate lateral stability.

1. 6. 11 For stiffeners and primary structure, where the angle between the stiffener web and the plating is less than 70°, the effective section modulus and shear area are to take account of the non-perpendicularity.

1. 6. 12 The side structure scantlings required by this Section must in no case be taken less than those required by the remaining Sections of Pt 3, Ch 5 Fore End Structure.

Figure 5. 1. 2: Flare angle determination

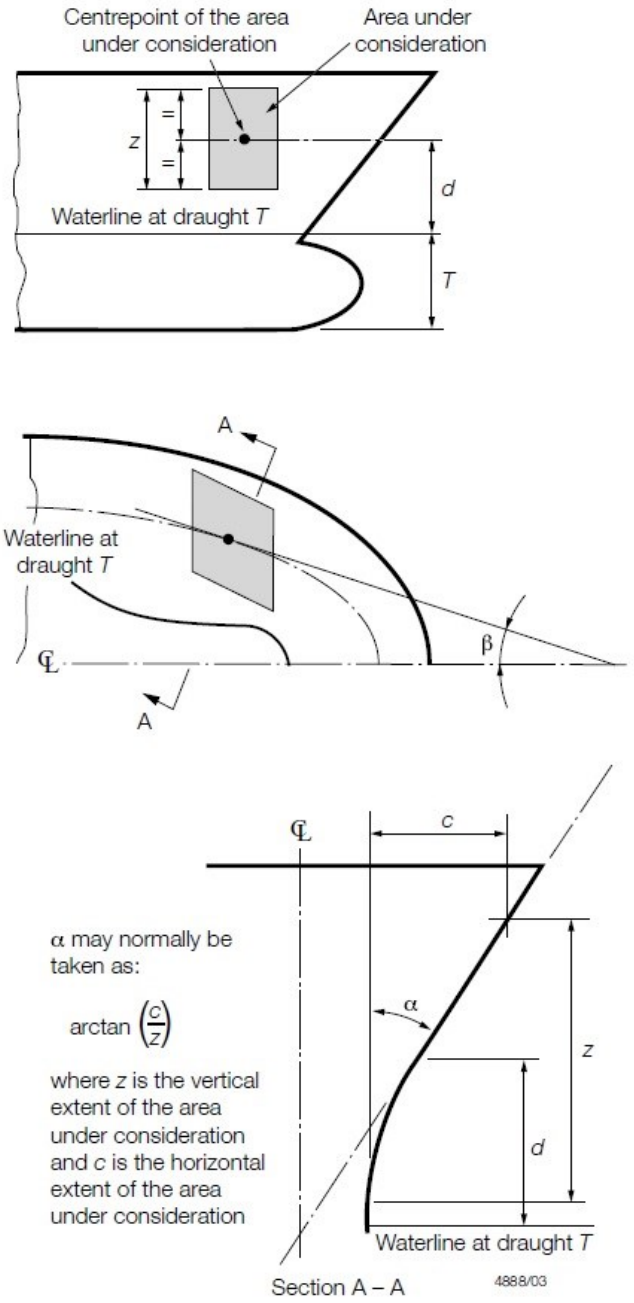


Figure 5. 1. 3: Chord spacing and mean chord spacing for secondary members

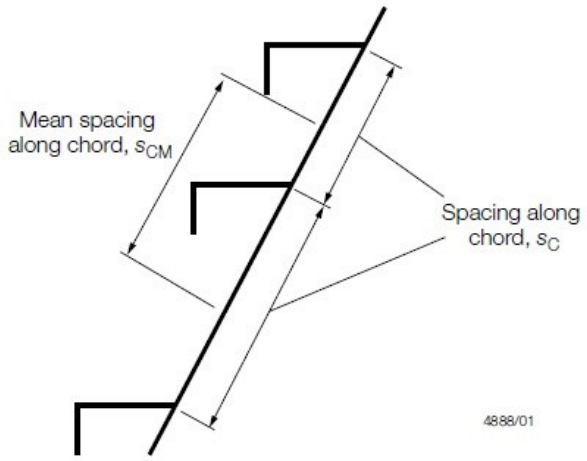


Figure 5. 1. 4: Mean chord spacing for primary members

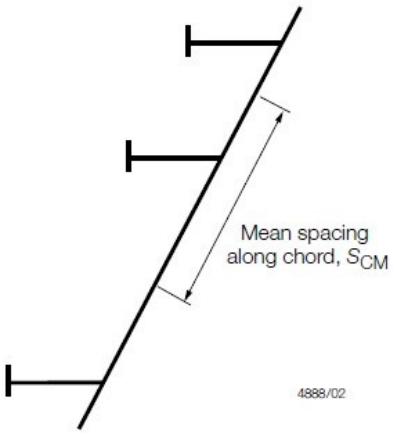


Figure 5. 1. 5 Dimensions of critical areas of (a) primary member web plating and (b) primary web stiffener

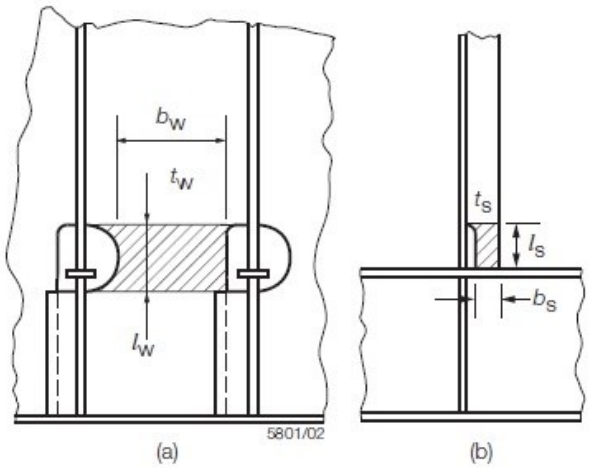


Table 5. 1. 3: Buckling procedure for primary member web plating and web stiffener

Steps	Members	
	Primary member web plating	Primary member web stiffener
Determination of the design compressive stress, σ_A, N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2)	$\sigma_A = \frac{1000P_W}{A_W}$	$\sigma_A = \frac{1000P_S}{A_S}$
Determination of the elastic critical buckling stress, σ_E, in compression, N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2)	$\sigma_E = \frac{9.87EI_W}{{l_w}^2 A_W}$	$\sigma_E = \frac{9.87EI_S}{{l_s}^2 A_S}$
Determination of the corrected critical buckling stress, σ_{CR}, in compression, N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2)	$\sigma_{CR} = \sigma_o\left(1 - \frac{\sigma_o}{4\sigma_E}\right)$ where $\sigma_E > \frac{\sigma_o}{2}$ $\sigma_{CR} = \sigma_E$ where $\sigma_E \leq \frac{\sigma_o}{2}$	
Requirement	$\sigma_{CR} \geq \sigma_A$	

Symbols

b_W, b_S , l_W, and l_S are dimensions, in mm, as shown in Figure 5. 1. 5 Dimensions of critical areas of (a) primary member web plating and (b) primary web stiffener

h_S =equivalent bow flare slamming head, in metres, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.6 Strengthening against bow flare slamming 1.6.3

s_{CM} =mean spacing of secondary stiffeners, in mm, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.6 Strengthening against bow flare slamming 1.6.5

t_W = thickness of primary member web plating, in mm

t_S = thickness of primary member web stiffener, in mm

$A_W = b_W t_W$ mm^2

$A_S = b_S t_S$ mm^2

E =modulus of elasticity, in N/mm^2
=206000 N/mm^2 for steel

$l_W = \frac{b_w {t_w}^3}{12}$ mm^4

$l_S = \frac{b_s {t_s}^3}{12}$ mm^4

P =total load transmitted to the connection
$= 10.06\, S_{CM}\, s_{CM}\, h_s \times 10^{-3}$ kN

P_W =load transmitted through the primary member web plating, in kN
=P–P_S, or by direct calculations

P_S =load transmitted through the primary member web stiffener, in kN (tonne-f), to be determined from Pt 3, Ch 10, 5.2 Arrangements at intersections of continuous secondary and primary members 5.2.7.b, or by direct calculations

S_{CM} = mean spacing of primary members, in metres, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.6 Strengthening against bow flare slamming 1.6.6

σ_o specified minimum yield stress, in N/mm^2

PART

3

CHAPTER **5** **Fore End Structure**

SECTION **2** **Deck structure**

2. 1 General

2. 1. 1 Where the upper deck is longitudinally framed outside the line of openings in the midship region, this system of framing is to be carried as far forward as possible. In the case of oil tankers (*See* Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.1 Application 1.1.4) longitudinal framing is to extend to at least the forward end of the cargo tank section.

2. 2 Deck plating

2. 2. 1 The thickness of strength/weather deck plating is to comply with the requirements of Table 5. 2. 1: Strength/weather deck plating forward (excluding forecastle deck).

2. 2. 2 The thickness of lower deck plating is to comply with the requirements of Table 5. 2. 2: Lower deck plating forward.

2. 2. 3 The taper thickness of the strength deck stringer plate is to be increased by 20 per cent at the end of a forecastle or bridge where the end bulkhead is situated aft of 0.25L from the F.P. No increase is required where the end bulkhead lies forward of 0.2L from the F.P. The increase at intermediate positions is to be determined by interpolation.

2. 2. 4 The deck plating thickness and supporting structure are to be suitably reinforced in way of the anchor windlass and other deck machinery, and in way of cranes, masts or derrick posts.

2. 2. 5 Where long, wide hatchways are arranged at lower decks, it may be necessary to increase the deck plating thickness to ensure effective support for side framing.

2. 3 Deck stiffening

2. 3. 1 The scantlings of strength/weather deck longitudinals are to comply with the requirements of Table 5. 2. 3: Strength/weather deck longitudinals forward.

2. 3. 2 The scantlings of cargo and accommodation deck longitudinals are to comply with the requirements given in Table 1. 4. 4: Cargo and accommodation deck longitudinals in Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships.

2. 3. 3 End connections of longitudinals to bulkheads are to provide adequate fixity, lateral support and, so far as practicable, direct continuity of longitudinal strength.

2. 3. 4 The scantlings of weather deck beams are to comply with the requirements of Table 5. 2. 4: Weather deck beams forward.

2. 3. 5 The scantlings of lower deck beams are to comply with the requirements of Table 1. 4. 5: Strength/weather, cargo and accommodation deck beams in Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships.

Table 5. 2. 1: Strength/weather deck plating forward (excluding forecastle deck)

Symbols	Location	Thickness, in mm
L, D, T, s, S, k, ρ as defined in Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.4 Symbols and definitions 1.4.1 $C = \left(\frac{D + 2.3 - T}{\text{height of deck above load waterline at F.P.}}\right)$ but is to be taken not greater than 1.0 nor less than 0.9	(1) Forward of $0.075L$ from the F.P.	$t = (6.5 + 0.02L)C\sqrt{\frac{ks_1}{s_b}}$
s_1=s, but to be taken not less than s_b s_b=standard frame spacing as follows: (a) forward of $0.05L$ from the F.P.: $s_b = \left(470 + \frac{L}{0.6}\right)$ mm or 600 mm,	(2) Between $0.075L$ and $0.2L$ from the F.P.	The greater of the following: (a) $t = (5.5 + 0.02L)C\sqrt{\frac{ks_1}{s_b}}$ (b) the taper thickness (*See* Notes 1, 2 and 3) (c) For oil tankers, the thickness is also to be in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 9, 4.3 Deck plating 4.3.3
whichever is the lesser	(3) Aft of $0.2L$ from the F.P.	The taper thickness (*See* Notes 1, 2 and 3) or as (2) (c) whichever is the greater
(b) between $0.05L$ and $0.2L$ from the F.P.:	(4) Inside forecastle extending aft of $0.15L$ from the F.P.	As for a lower deck (*See* Note 4)
$s_b = \left(470 + \frac{L}{0.6}\right)$ mm or 700 mm, whichever is the lesser $f = 1.1 - \frac{S}{2500S}$ but to taken not greater than 1.0 h_4 = tank head, in metres, as defined in Ch 3.5	(5) In way of crown of a tank	$t = 0.004sf\sqrt{\frac{\rho k h_4}{1.025}} + 3.5$ or as in (1) to (4) as applicable, whichever is the greater but not less than: 7.5 mm where $L \geq 90$ m, or 6.5 mm where $L < 90$ m

Note *1*. The taper thickness is to be determined from Table 3. 2. 1: Taper requirements for hull envelope.

Note *2*. For taper area requirements, *See* Table 3. 2. 1: Taper requirements for hull envelope.

Note *3*. For thickness of upper deck plating in way of the cargo and fore peak tanks of oil tankers or ore carriers, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 9 Double Hull Oil Tankers, Pt 4, Ch 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers or Pt 4, Ch 11 Ore Carriers, as applicable.

Note *4*. The exposed deck taper thickness is to extend into a forecastle or bridge for at least one-third of the breadth of the ship from the superstructure end bulkhead.

Note *5*. The taper requirements from Table 3. 2. 1: Taper requirements for hull envelope in Pt 3, Ch 3 Structural Design do not apply to container ships or open ship types, *See* Pt 3, Ch 4, 2.3 Open type ships, where the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 8, 3.2 Longitudinal strength are applicable, nor to fast cargo ships where the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 3 Longitudinal strength are applicable. *See also* Pt 3, Ch 4, 5 Hull bending strength for hull section modulus requirement away from the midship area.

Table 5. 2. 2: Lower deck plating forward

Symbols	Location	Thickness, in mm
L, s, S, k, ρ as defined in Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.4 Symbols and definitions 1.4.1 b = breadth of increased plating, in mm	(1) Forward of $0.075L$ from the F.P.	$t = 0.01 s_1 \sqrt{k}$ but not less than 6.5 mm
$f = 1.1 - \frac{s}{2500S}$ but is to be taken not greater than 1.0	(2) Aft of $0.075L$ from the F.P., inside line of openings	$t = 0.01 s_1 \sqrt{k}$ but not less than 6.5 mm
h_4=tank head, in metres, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 3, 5 Design loading	(3) Aft of $0.075L$ from the F.P., outside line of openings	As determined by a taper line from the midship thickness to the end thickness given by (1)
K_2 = 2.5 mm at bottom tank, or = 3.5 mm at crown of tank s_1 = s, but is to be taken not less than $\left(470 + \frac{L_1}{0.6}\right) mm$	(4) In way of crown or bottom of tank	$t = 0.004 f s \sqrt{\frac{\rho k h_4}{1.025}} + K_2$ or as in (1), (2) or (3) as applicable, whichever is the greater but not less than: = 7.5 mm where $L \geq 90$ m, or = 6.5 mm where $L < 90$ m
A_f = girder face area, in cm^2 L_1 = L, but need not be taken greater than 190 m **Note** *1.* Where the deck loading exceeds 43.2 kN/m^2, the thickness of plating will be specially considered. This is equivalent to a 'tween deck height of 6.1 m in association with the standard stowage rate 1.39 m^3/tonne. **Note** *2.* For minimum thickness of deck plating in oil tankers, *See* Pt 4, Ch 9, 10.2 Compartment minimum thickness.	(5) Plating forming the upper flange of underdeck girders	Clear of cargo hatches $t = \sqrt{\frac{A_f}{1.8k}}$ In way of hatch side girders $t = 1.1\sqrt{\frac{A_f}{1.8k}}$ Minimum breadth b = 760 mm

2. 3. 6 End connections of beams are to be in accordance with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 10, 3 Secondary member end connections.

2. 4 Deck supporting structure

2. 4. 1 The arrangements and scantlings of supporting structure are generally to be in accordance with the requirements given in Pt 4, Ch 1, 4 Deck structure using the heads given in Pt 3, Ch 3, 5 Design loading for the particular region concerned, except as required by Pt 3, Ch 5, 2.4 Deck supporting structure 2.4.2 to Pt 3, Ch 5, 2.4 Deck supporting structure 2.4.4.

2. 4. 2 The spacings of girders and transverses are generally not to exceed the values given in Table 5. 2. 5: Spacing of girders and transverses under strength/weather decks forward.

2. 4. 3 Primary structure in the topside tanks of bulk carriers is to comply with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 7, 7 Topside tank structure.

2. 4. 4 Primary structure in the cargo tanks of oil tankers and ore carriers is to be determined from Pt 4, Ch 9 Double Hull Oil Tankers, Pt 4, Ch 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers or Pt 4, Ch 11 Ore Carriers, as applicable.

2. 5 Deck openings

2. 5. 1 In dry cargo ships the requirements for deck openings given in Pt 4, Ch 1, 4 Deck structure are generally applicable throughout the forward region, except that forward of 0.25L from the F.P.:

a. The radii or dimensions of the corners of main cargo hatchway openings on the strength deck are to be in accordance with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 4.5 Deck openings. The thickness of the insert plates, where required, is not to be less than 20 per cent greater than the adjacent deck thickness outside the line of openings, with a minimum increase of 3 mm.

b. Insert plates will be required at lower decks in way of any rapid change in hull form to compensate for loss of deck cross-sectional area. Otherwise, insert plates will not normally be required.

c. Compensation and edge reinforcement for openings outside the line of main hatchways will be considered, bearing in mind their position, the deck arrangements and the type of ship concerned.

2. 5. 2 For deck openings in way of the cargo tanks in oil tankers and ore carriers, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 9 Double Hull Oil Tankers, Pt 4, Ch 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers or Pt 4, Ch 11 Ore Carriers, as applicable. For main cargo hatchway openings on bulk carriers and container ships, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 7 Bulk Carriers and Pt 4, Ch 8 Container Ships, as applicable.

Table 5. 2. 3: Strength/weather deck longitudinals forward

Location	Modulus, cm^3	Inertia, cm^4
(1) Forward of 0.075L from the F.P.	The greater of the following: (a) $Z = sk(635h_1 + 0.0078(l_e L_1)^2) \times 10^{-4}$ (b) $Z = 0.0127skh_1 {l^2}_e$	—
(2) At 0.075L from the F.P., for end modulus for taper	The greater of the following: (a) $Z_e = sk(485h_0 + 0.0062(l_{e1} L_1)^2) \times 10^{-4}$ (b) $Z_e = 0.009skh_o {l_{e1}}^2$	—
(3) Aft of 0.075L from the F.P., outside line of openings	As given by (4) or as determined from Table 3. 2. 1: Taper requirements for hull envelope whichever is the greater, *See* Note 1	—
(4) At 0.075L and between 0.075L and 0.12L from the F.P.	The greater of the following: (a) $Z = sk(570h_1 + 0.0072(l_e L_1)^2) \times 10^{-4}$ (b) $Z = 0.0127skh_1 {l_e}^2$	—
(5) Aft of 0.12L from the F.P., inside line of main cargo hatchways openings	The greater of the following: (a) $Z = sk(400h_1 + 0.005(l_e L_1)^2) \times 10^{-4}$ (b) $Z = 0.007skh_1 {l_e}^2$	—
(6) In way of the crown of a tank	As (1) to (5), as applicable, or $Z = \frac{0.0113\rho skh_4 l_e^2}{b}$ whichever is the greater	$I = \frac{2.3}{k} l_e Z$
Symbols		
L, s, k_L, k ρ as defined in Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.4 Symbols and definitions 1.4.1 b =1.4 for rolled or built sections =1.6 for flat bars d_w =web depth of longitudinal, in mm		

h_o =1.2 m for dry cargo ships

$=\frac{L_1}{56}$ m for oil tankers (*See* Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.1 Application 1.1.4)

h_1 =weather head, in metres, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 3, 5 Design loading for dry cargo ships

$=\frac{L_1}{70}$ m for oil tankers (*See* Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.1 Application 1.1.4)

h_4 =tank head, in metres, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 3, 5 Design loading

l_e as defined in Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.4 Symbols and definitions 1.4.1, but is to be taken not less than 1.5 m

l_{e1} is to be taken as the maximum span in metres in the midship cargo tank region for oil tankers (*See* Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.1 Application 1.1.4) and equal to l_e for dry cargo ships

L_1 = L but need not be taken greater than 190 m

Note *1*. For area taper requirements, *See also* Table 3. 2. 1: Taper requirements for hull envelope.

Note *2*. Where weather decks are intended to carry deck cargo and the loading is in excess of 8.5 kN/m^2, the scantlings of longitudinals may be required to be increased to comply with the requirements for location (1) in Table 1. 4. 4: Cargo and accommodation deck longitudinals using the equivalent design head, for specified cargo loadings, for weather decks given in Table 3. 5. 1: Design heads and permissible cargo loadings.

Note *3*. For the scantlings of deck longitudinals forward in way of the cargo tanks of oil tankers (*See* Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.1 Application 1.1.4) or ore carriers, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 9 Double Hull Oil Tankers, Pt 4, Ch 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers or Pt 4, Ch 11 Ore Carriers, as applicable.

4. The thickness of flat bar longitudinals situated outside the line of openings is to be not less than the following:

$$(a)\ t = \frac{d_w}{18\sqrt{k_L}} mm$$

where longitudinal continuous through bulkhead

$$(b)\ t = \frac{d_w}{15\sqrt{k_L}} mm$$

where longitudinal cut at bulkhead

Note *5*. The web depth of longitudinal, d_w, is to be not less than 60 mm.

Note *6*. The taper requirements from Table 3. 2. 1: Taper requirements for hull envelope in Pt 3, Ch 3 Structural Design do not apply to container ships or open ship types, *See* Pt 3, Ch 4, 2.3 Open type ships, where the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 8, 3.2 Longitudinal strength are applicable, nor to fast cargo ships where the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 3 Longitudinal strength are applicable. *See also* Pt 3, Ch 4, 5 Hull bending strength for hull section modulus requirement away from the midship area.

Table 5. 2. 4: Weather deck beams forward

Location	Modulus, cm^3	Inertia, cm^4
(1) Forward of 0.075L from the F.P.	The lesser of the following: $(a) Z = k\left(800K_1TD + 5.4B_1sh_1{l_e}^2\right) \times 10^{-4}$ (b) $Z = 10.8B_1skh_1{l_e}^2 \times 10^{-4}$	—

(2) Between 0.075L and 0.12L from the F.P.	The lesser of the following: $(a) Z = k\left(800K_1TD + K_3B_1sh_1{l_e}^2\right) \times 10^{-4}$ (b) $Z = 2K_3B_1skh_1{l_e}^2 \times 10^{-4}$	—
(3) Aft of 0.12L from the F.P.	As required for location (1) of Table 1. 4. 5: Strength/weather, cargo and accommodation deck beams	—
(4) In way of the crown of a tank	As (1), (2) or (3), as applicable, or $Z = \frac{0.0113\rho k h_4 l_e^2}{b}$ whichever is the greater	$I = \frac{2.3}{k} l_e Z$

Symbols

B, D, T, s, ρ, k as defined in Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.4 Symbols and definitions 1.4.1

b = 1.4 for rolled or built sections

= 1.6 for flat bars

h_1 = weather head, in metres, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 3, 5 Design loading

h_4 = tank head, in metres, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 3, 5 Design loading

l_e as defined in Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.4 Symbols and definitions 1.4.1, but is to be taken not less than 1.83 m

K_1 = a factor dependent on the number of decks (including a bridge superstructure) at the position of the beam under consideration as follows:

1 deck – 20.0

2 decks – 13.3

3 decks – 10.5

4 decks or more – 9.3

For a forecastle deck, K_1 is to be taken as 13.3

K_3 =a factor dependent on the location of the beam as follows:

Span adjacent to ship's side – 3.6

Elsewhere – 3.3

B_1 = B, but need not be taken greater than 21.5 m

Note *1*. Beams at the upper deck inside superstructures are to have scantlings determined as for a lower deck, *See* Table 1. 4. 5: Strength/weather, cargo and accommodation deck beams.

Note *2*. Where weather decks are intended to carry deck cargo and the loading is in excess of 8.5 kN/m^2, the scantlings of beams are also to comply with the requirements for location (2) in Table 1. 4. 5: Strength/weather, cargo and accommodation deck beams using the equivalent design head, for specified cargo loadings, for weather decks given in Table 3. 5. 1: Design heads and permissible cargo loadings.

Note *3*. The web depth of beams, d_w, is to be not less than 60 mm.

Note *4*. The scantlings of deck beams forward in way of the cargo tanks of oil tankers or ore carriers will be specially considered, *See* Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.4 Class notation and applicable Rules for non-CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers 1.4.12.

Table 5. 2. 5: Spacing of girders and transverses under strength/weather decks forward

Location	Maximum spacing	
	Girders in association with transverse framing system	Transverses in association with longitudinal framing system
(1) Forward of the collision bulkhead	3.7 m	

(2) Between the collision bulkhead and 0.075*L* from the F.P.	3.7 m	2.5 m where $L \leq 100$ m 3.5 m where $L \geq 300$ m Intermediate values by interpolation
(3) In way of a deep tank, forward of 0.2*L* from the F.P.	—	3.0 m where $L \leq 100$ m 4.2 m where $L \geq 300$ m Intermediate values by interpolation
(4) Elsewhere in way of dry cargo spaces or deep tanks, *See* Note 1	—	3.8 m where $L \leq 100$ m $(3.2 + 0.006L)$ m where $L > 100$ m

Note *1.* For the maximum spacing of transverses in the cargo tanks of oil tankers or ore carriers, *See* Pt 4, Ch 9, 9 Primary members supporting longitudinal framing.

Note *2.* For the maximum spacing of transverses in dredgers, *See* Pt 4, Ch 12, 5 Shell envelope framing.

PART

3

CHAPTER **5** **Fore End Structure**

SECTION **3** **Shell envelope plating**

3. 1 General

3. 1. 1 Where the shell is longitudinally framed in the midship region, this system of framing is to be carried as far forward as practicable. In the case of oil tankers (*See* Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.1 Application 1.1.4), longitudinal framing is to extend at least to the forward end of the cargo tanks.

3. 2 Keel

3. 2. 1 The scantlings of bar keels at the fore end are to be the same as in the midship region as required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 5 Shell envelope plating.

3. 2. 2 The thickness and width of plate keels in the forward region are to be the same as required in the midship region for the particular type of ship concerned, *See* Pt 4 Ship Structures (Ship Types).

3. 3 Stem

3. 3. 1 Bar stems may be either steel castings or steel forgings complying with the requirements of Ch 3 Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars of the Rules for Materials for rolled steel flat bars or Ch 5 Steel Forgings of the Rules for Materials for solid round bars. The scantlings of bar stems are to comply with Table 3. 5. 1: Design heads and permissible cargo loadings.

3. 3. 2 The scantlings of plate stems are to be determined from Table 3. 5. 1: Design heads and permissible cargo loadings. Plate stems are to be supported by horizontal diaphragms positioned in line with the side stringers or perforated flats with intermediate breasthook diaphragms. Diaphragms are to be spaced not more than 1.5 m apart, measured along the stem. Where the stem plate radius is large, a centreline stiffener or web will be required.

3. 4 Bottom shell and bilge

3. 4. 1 The thickness of bottom shell and bilge plating in the forward region for ships not requiring additional strengthening of bottom is to comply with Table 5. 3. 1: Shell plating forward.

3. 4. 2 For thickness of bottom shell and keel when additional bottom strengthening is required, *See* Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.5, Strengthening of bottom forward.

3. 4. 3 Where longitudinals are omitted in way of radiused bilge plating amidships, the plating thickness forward will be considered in relation to the support derived from the hull form and internal stiffening arrangements.

3. 5 Side shell and sheerstrake

3. 5. 1 The thickness of side shell and sheerstrake plating in the forward region is to be not less than the values given in Table 5. 3. 1: Shell plating forward, but may be required to be increased locally on account of high shear forces, in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 4, 6.5, Permissible still water shear force.

3. 5. 2 For transversely framed side shells where panting stringers are omitted, *See* Pt 3, Ch 5, 4.4, Panting stringers in way of transverse framing, the side shell plating in the region concerned is to be increased in thickness by the percentages given below:

a. 15 per cent, where L $\leq$ 150 m
b. 5 per cent, where L $\geq$ 215 m

For intermediate values of *L*, the percentage increase is to be obtained by interpolation.

3. 5. 3 The side shell plating of increased thickness required by Pt 3, Ch 5, 3.5 Side shell and sheerstrake 3.5.2 is to be continued forward past the fore peak or collision bulkhead. In addition, horizontal brackets in line with the fore peak stringers are to be fitted at the aft side of the bulkhead where practicable. The brackets are to be the same thickness as the side shell and are to extend from the bulkhead to the adjacent shell frame and be connected thereto. Transversely the toes of the brackets are to extend past the outboard stiffener of the bulkhead to clear any cut out in the bulkhead stringer.

3. 5. 4 The sheerstrake taper thickness is to be increased by 20 per cent at the ends of a bridge superstructure extending out to the ship's side irrespective of position. Similar strengthening is to be fitted in way of the end of a forecastle if this occurs at a position aft of 0.25*L* from the F.P. No increase is required if the forecastle end bulkhead lies forward of 0.2*L* from the F.P. The increase at intermediate positions of end bulkhead is to be obtained by interpolation.

3. 5. 5 The shell plating may be required to be increased in thickness locally in way of hawse pipes, *See* Pt 3, Ch 13, 8.12 Structural requirements associated with anchoring.

3. 5. 6 The shell plating is to be increased in thickness locally in way of a bulbous bow, *See* Pt 3, Ch 5, 6.5 Bulbous bow 6.5.6.

3. 6 Shell openings

3. 6. 1 In general, compensation will not be required for holes in the sheerstrake which are clear of the gunwale, or for any deck openings situated outside the line of main hatchways and whose depth does not exceed 20 per cent of the depth of the sheerstrake or 380 mm, whichever is the lesser. Openings are not to be cut in a rounded gunwale. Cargo door openings are to have well rounded corners, and the proposed compensation for the door openings will be individually considered.

3. 6. 2 Sea inlet and other openings are to have well rounded corners. The thickness of sea inlet box plating is generally to be the same as the adjacent shell. It is however, to be not less than 12.5 mm, and need not exceed 25 mm.

Table 5. 3. 1: Shell plating forward

Location	Thickness, in mm	Notes *(Part only shown)*
(1) Bottom shell and bilge, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.5, Strengthening of bottom forward and Note 5:		**Note** *1*. For ships where $L \leq 70$ m this thickness may be reduced by 1 mm, but it is to be not less than 6 mm.

(a) Forward of $0.075L$ from the F.P.	$t = (6.5 + 0.033L)f_2\sqrt{\frac{ks_1}{s_b}}$ (*See* Note 1)	**Note** *2.* The taper thickness is to be determined from Table 3. 2. 1: Taper requirements for hull envelope
(b) Between $0.075L$ and $0.25L$ from the F.P.,*See* Note 7	As (1)(a) or the taper thickness, whichever is the greater	**Note** *3.* For thickness of shell plating in way of the cargo and fore peak tanks of oil tankers or ore carriers, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 9 Double Hull Oil Tankers, Pt 4, Ch 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers or Pt 4, Ch 11 Ore Carriers, as appropriate.
(c) Aft of $0.25L$ from the F.P., *See* Note 7	The taper thickness, (*See* Note 2)	**Note** *4.* In offshore supply ships the thickness of side shell is to be not less than 9 mm.
(2) Side shell, *See* Notes 4 and 5:		**Note** *5.* For trawlers and fishing vessels *See* Pt 4, Ch 6, 5 Shell envelope plating.
(a) Forward of $0.075L$ from the F.P.	$t = (6.5 + 0.033L)f_2\sqrt{\frac{ks_1}{s_b}}$ (*See* Note 1)	**Note** *6.* For fast cargo ships, *See* Pt 4, Ch 1, 3 Longitudinal strength.
(b) Between $0.075L$ and $0.2L$ from the F.P., *See also* Pt 3, Ch 5, 3.5 Side shell and sheerstrake 3.5.2	As (2)(a) or the taper thickness, whichever is the greater	**Note** *7.* For oil tankers the thickness is also to be in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 9, 4.3 Deck plating 4.3.3.
(c) Aft of $0.2L$ from the F.P.	The taper thickness, (*See* Note 2)	**Note** *8.* The taper requirements from Table 3. 2. 1: Taper requirements for hull envelope in Pt 3, Ch 3 Structural Designdo not apply to container ships or open ship types, *See* Pt 3, Ch 4, 2.3 Open type ships, where the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 8, 3.2 Longitudinal strength are applicable, nor to fast cargo ships where the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 3 Longitudinal strength
(3) Sheerstrake, *See* Notes 4 and 5:		
(a) Forward of $0.075L$ from the F.P.:		
where $\frac{T}{D} > 0.7$	As (2)(a) for side shell	
where $\frac{T}{D} \leq 0.7$	As (4) for a forecastle	
(b) Between $0.075L$ and $0.2L$ from the F.P., *See* Note 7	As (3)(a) or as determined from Table 3. 2. 1: Taper requirements for hull envelope in Chapter 3	

(c) Aft of 0.2*L* from the F.P., *See* Note 7	The taper thickness, (*See* Note 2)	are applicable. *See also* Pt 3, Ch 4, 5 Hull bending strength for hull section modulus requirement away from the midship area.
(4) Forecastle, *See* Notes 4 and 5	$t = (7.0 + 0.02L)f_2\sqrt{\frac{ks_1}{s_b}}$	
(5) Stem, *See* Notes 4 and 5		
(a) Bar stem: below load waterline	A_1 = (1.6*L*-32) cm^2 or *L* cm^2 whichever is the greater	
at stem head	A_2 = 0.75 A_1 cm^2	
(b) Plate stem: below load waterline	t = (5.0+0.083L_2) $\sqrt{k}$ mm	
at stem head	t = as (2)(a) for side shell	

Symbols

L, *B*, *D*, *T*, *s*, *k* as defined in Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.4 Symbols and definitions 1.4.1

s_1 = *s*, but to be taken as not less than s_b

f_2 = factor to be taken as:

$f_2 = \left(\frac{15}{L/T}\right)^{0.2}$ but need not be taken greater than 1. *L*/*T* is not to be taken greater than 25

s_b = standard frame spacing, in mm, as follows:

Region	Bottom shell s_b	Side shell s_b
Forward of 0.05*L* from the F.P.	$\left(470 + \frac{L}{0.6}\right)$ or 600*	$\left(470 + \frac{L}{0.6}\right)$ or 600*
Between 0.05*L* and 0.2*L* from the F.P.	$\left(470 + \frac{L}{0.6}\right)$ or 700*	$\left(470 + \frac{L}{0.6}\right)$ or 700*
Between 0.2*L* and 0.25*L* from the F.P.	$\left(510 + \frac{L_2}{0.6}\right)$	* whichever is the lesser

A_1 = cross-sectional area of bar stem below load waterline, in cm^2

A_2 = cross-sectional area of bar stem at stem head, in cm^2

L_2 = *L*, but need not be taken greater than 215 m

PART

3

CHAPTER **5** **Fore End Structure**

SECTION **4** **Shell envelope framing**

4. 1 General

4. 1. 1 Requirements are given in this Section for both longitudinal and transverse framing systems. Where longitudinal framing is adopted in the midship region it is to be carried as far forward as practicable. In the case of oil tankers (*See* Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.1 Application 1.1.4), longitudinal framing is to be continued at least to the fore end of the cargo tanks.

4. 1. 2 End connections of longitudinals to bulkheads are to provide adequate fixity, lateral support and, so far as practicable, direct continuity of longitudinal strength, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 10, 3 Secondary member end connections. Where L exceeds 215 m, the bottom longitudinals are to be continuous in way of both watertight and non-watertight floors, but alternative arrangements will be considered. Higher tensile steel longitudinals within 10 per cent of the ship's depth at the bottom and deck are to be continuous irrespective of the ship length.

4. 1. 3 Stiffeners and brackets on side transverses, where fitted on one side and connected to higher tensile steel longitudinals between the base line and $0.8D$ above the base line, are to have their heels well radiused to reduce stress concentrations. Where a symmetrical arrangement is fitted, i.e. bracket or stiffening on both sides, and it is connected to higher tensile steel longitudinals, the toes of the stiffeners or brackets are to be well radiused. Alternative arrangements will be considered if supported by appropriate direct calculations.

4. 1. 4 Where higher tensile steel side longitudinals pass through transverse bulkheads in the cargo area, well radiused brackets of the same material are to be fitted on both the fore and aft side of the connection between the upper turn of bilge and $0.8D$ above the base line. Particular attention is to be given to ensuring the alignment of these brackets. Alternative arrangements will be considered if supported by appropriate direct calculations.

4. 1. 5 For ships intended to load or unload while aground, *See* Pt 3, Ch 9, 7 Bottom strengthening for loading and unloading aground.

4. 2 Shell longitudinals

4. 2. 1 The scantlings of bottom and side shell longitudinals in the forward region are to comply with the requirements given in Pt 3, Ch 5, 4.2 Shell longitudinals 4.2.1. For the scantlings of bottom shell longitudinals where additional bottom strengthening is required, *See* Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.5, Strengthening of bottom forward.

Table 5. 4. 1: Shell framing (longitudinal) forward

Location	Modulus, in cm^3
(1) Side longitudinals in forecastle	$Z = 0.0075skl_e^2(0.6 + 0.167D_1)$

(2) Side longitudinals in way of dry spaces including double skin construction:	
(a) Forward of the collision bulkhead	$Z = 0.007skh_{Tl}l_e^2F_s$ but not to be less than as required by (1)
(b) Between the collision bulkhead and 0. 2L from the F.P.	As (a) above or as required in the midship region for the particular type of ship concerned, whichever is the greater. However, not to be taken less than as required by (1).
(c) Aft of 0.2L from the F.P.	As required in the midship region for the particular type of ship concerned.
(3) Side longitudinals in way of double skin tanks or deep tanks	The greater of the following: Z as from (2) As required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 9 Bulkheads for deep tanks.
(4) Bottom and bilge longitudinals	The greater of the following: As required in the midship region for the particular type of ship concerned. As required by Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.5, Strengthening of bottom forward, strengthening of bottom forward, where applicable.
Symbols	

L, D, T, s, k, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.4 Symbols and definitions 1.4.1

l_e = as defined in Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.4 Symbols and definitions 1.4.1, but is to be taken not less than 1.5m

L_1 = L but need not be taken greater than 190 m

F_s is a fatigue factor to be taken as follows:

(a) For built sections and rolled angle bars:

F_s = $\frac{1.1}{k}\left[1-\frac{2b_{f1}}{b_f}(1-k)\right]$ at $0.6D_1$ above the base line

= 1.0 at D_1 and above, and F_{sb} at the base line intermediate values by linear interpolation

F_{sb} is a fatigue factor for bottom longitudinals

= $0.5(1+F_s$ at $0.6D_1)$

(b) For flat bars and bulb plates $\frac{b_{f1}}{b_f}$ may be taken as 0.5

where

b_{f1} = the minimum distance, in mm, from the edge of the face plate of the side longitudinal under consideration to the centre of the web plate, *See* Fig. 9.5.1 in Pt 4, Ch 9

b_f = the width of the face plate, in mm, of the side longitudinal under consideration, *See* Fig. 9.5.1 in Pt 4, Ch 9

T_1 = T but not to be taken less than $0.65D_1$

D_1 = $T + H_b$ metres, where H_b is the minimum bow height, in metres, obtained from Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1 Principal particulars 6.1.11

h_{T1} = $f_w C_w\left(1-\frac{h_6}{D_1-T_1}\right)F_\lambda$ F_λ, in metres, for longitudinals above the waterline at draught T_1 where

$f_w\left(1-\frac{h_6}{D_1-T_1}\right)$ is not to be taken less than 0.7

= $\left[h_6+f_w C_w\left(1-\frac{h_6}{2T_1}\right)\right]F_\lambda$, in metres, for longitudinals below the waterline at draught T_1

where

f_w = 1.0 at $0.2L$ from the F.P. and 1.71 at, and forward of, $0.15L$ from the F.P. Intermediate positions by interpolation

h_6 = vertical distance, in metres, from the waterline at draught T_1, to the longitudinal under consideration

F_λ = 1.0 for $L \leq 200$ m

= $[1.0 + 0.0023(L-200)]$ for $L > 200$ m

C_w = a wave head, in metres $= 7.71\times10^{-2}Le^{-0.0044\,L}$

where

e = base of natural logarithms 2.7183

Note Where struts are fitted midway between transverses in double skin construction, the modulus of the side longitudinals may be reduced by $50k$ per cent from that obtained for locations (2) and (3) as applicable.

4. 2. 2 End connections of longitudinals to bulkheads are to provide adequate fixity, lateral support and so far as practicable, direct continuity of longitudinal strength, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 10, 3 Secondary member end connections.

4. 3 Shell framing

4. 3. 1 The scantlings of side frames in the forward region are to comply with the requirements given in Pt 3, Ch 5, 4.4 Panting stringers in way of transverse framing 4.4.3.

4. 3. 2 The scantlings of main frames are normally to be based on Rule standard brackets at top and bottom, whilst the scantlings of 'tween deck frames are normally to be based on a Rule standard bracket at the top only.

4. 3. 3 End connections of transverse main and 'tween deck frames are to be in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 10, 3 Secondary member end connections. For bulk carriers the end connections of main frames in cargo holds are to be in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 7, 6.2 Transverse stiffening 6.2.5 to Pt 4, Ch 7, 6.2 Transverse stiffening 6.2.12. Where brackets are omitted at the foot of main frames in cargo spaces, small easing brackets are to be fitted forward of 0.15L from the F.P.

4. 4 Panting stringers in way of transverse framing

4. 4. 1 In lower hold or deep tank spaces panting stringers are generally to be fitted in line with each stringer or flat in the fore peak space and extending back to 0.15L from the F.P. These stringers may be omitted if the shell plating is increased in thickness as required by Pt 3, Ch 5, 3.5 Side shell and sheerstrake 3.5.2. Where the span of the main frames exceeds 9 m, panting stringers are to be fitted irrespective of whether the shell plating is increased in thickness or not. These stringers are to be arranged in line with alternate stringers or flats in the fore peak and are to extend back to 0.2L from the F.P.

4. 4. 2 In 'tween deck spaces in the region forward of 0.15L from the F.P., where the unsupported length of frame exceeds 2.6 m in a lower 'tween deck or 3.0 m in an upper 'tween deck, intermediate panting stringers are generally to be fitted. These stringers may be omitted if the shell plating is increased in thickness as required by Pt 3, Ch 5, 3.5 Side shell and sheerstrake 3.5.2.

4. 4. 3 The scantlings of panting stringers are to be determined from Pt 3, Ch 5, 4.4 Panting stringers in way of transverse framing 4.4.3.

Table 5. 4. 2: Shell framing (transverse) forward

Location	Modulus, in cm^3	Inertia, in cm^4
*(1)*Frames in fore peak spaces and lower 'tween decks over, *See* Note 1	$Z = 9.1skD_1 \times 10^{-3}$	$I = \frac{3.5}{k} S_1 Z$
(2) Frames in upper 'tween decks and forecastles forward of the collision bulkhead, *See* Notes 1, 2 and 8	The greater of the following: $Z = Cskh_{T1}H^2 \times 10^{-3}$ $Z = 9.1skD_1 \times 10^{-3}$	$I = \frac{3.5}{k} HZ$
(3) Main and 'tween deck frames (including forecastle) between the collision bulkhead and 0.15L from the F.P., *See* Notes 1 to 4 and 8	The greater of the following: $Z = Cskh_{T1}H^2 \times 10^{-3}$ Z=9.1skD_1 x 10^{-3}	$I = \frac{3.5}{k} HZ$
*(4)*Main and 'tween deck frames between 0.15L and 0.2L from the F.P. in dry cargo spaces, *See* Notes 1 to 4 and 8	The greater of the following: $Z = Cskh_{T1}H^2 \times 10^{-3}$ $Z = 9.1skD_1 \times 10^{-3}$	$I = \frac{3.2}{k} HZ$
(5) Panting stringers, *See* Note 5	Web depth, d_w, same depth as frames Web thickness, $t = 6 + 0.025L_2$ mm Face area,$A = kS_2(H + 1)$cm^2	
(6) Main and 'tween deck frames elsewhere, *See* Notes 1 to 4	As required in the midship region for the particular type of ship concerned	
Symbols		
L, D, T, s, k as defined in Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.4 Symbols and definitions 1.4.1		

L_2 = L, but need not be taken greater than 215 m

D_1 = $T + H_b$, in metres, where H_b is defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1 Principal particulars 6.1.11

D_1 = $T + H_b$, in metres, where H_b is defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1 Principal particulars 6.1.11

D_2 = D_1, but is to be taken not greater than 16 m, nor less than 6.0 m

H = H_{MF} or H_{TF} as applicable, *See* Note 7

H_{MF} = vertical framing depth, in metres, of main frames as shown in Fig. 5.4.1 but is to be taken not less than 3.5 m, *See* Note 6

H_{TF} = vertical framing depth, in metres, of 'tween deck frames as shown in Fig. 5.4.1 but is to be taken not less than 2.5 m

K_1 = 2.3 for peak tanks

= 1.87 for 'tween decks over peak tanks

S_1 = vertical spacing of peak stringers or height of lower 'tween deck above the peak, in metres, as applicable

S_2 vertical spacing of panting stringers, in metres

C = end connection factor

= 3.4 where two Rule standard brackets fitted

= $3.4\ (1.8 - 0.8(l_a/l))$ where one Rule standard bracket and one reduced bracket is fitted

= $3.4\ (2.15 - 1.15(l_{amean}/l))$ where two reduced brackets are fitted

= 6.1 where one Rule standard bracket is fitted

= $6.1\ (1.2 - 0.2(l_a/l))$ where one reduced bracket is fitted.

= 7.3 where no brackets are fitted

= The requirements for frames where brackets larger than Rule standard are fitted will be specially considered

l = length, in mm, as derived from Pt 3, Ch 10, 3.4 Scantlings of end brackets 3.4.1

l_a = equivalent arm length, in mm, as derived from Pt 3, Ch 10, 3.4 Scantlings of end brackets 3.4.1

l_{amean} = mean equivalent arm length, in mm, for both brackets

T_1 = T but not to be taken less than $0.65D_1$

h_{T1} head, in metres, at mid-length of H

= $f_w C_w \left(1 - \frac{h_6}{D_1 - T}\right) F_\lambda$ in metres for frames where the mid-length of frame is above the waterline, at draught T_1

where $f_w \left(1 - \frac{h_6}{D_1 - T_1}\right)$ is not to be taken less than 0.7

$\left[h_6 + f_w C_w \left(1 - \frac{h_6}{2T_1}\right)\right] F_\lambda$ in metres for frames where the mid-length of frame is below the waterline at draught T_1

where

f_W = 1.0 at $0.2L$ from F.P. and 1.71 at, and forward of, $0.15L$ from F.P. Intermediate positions by interpolation

h_6 = vertical distance, in metres, from the waterline at draught T_1 to the mid-length of H

F_λ 1.0 for $L \leq 200$ m

= $[1.0 + 0.0023\ (L - 200)]$ for $L > 200$ m

C_W = a wave head, in metres

$= 7.71 \times 10^{-2} Le^{-0.0044\,L}$

where

e = base of natural logarithms 2.7183

Note 1. For framing in the fore end of fishing vessels, *See* Pt 4, Ch 6, 6 Shell envelope framing

Note 2. In offshore supply ships the moduli of main and 'tween deck frames are to be 25 per cent greater than given in (2), (3) and (4).

Note 3. In way of the cargo tanks of oil tankers or ore carriers, the scantlings of frames are also to comply with the requirements for frames in the midship region of such ships, *See* Pt 4, Ch 9 Double Hull Oil Tankers, Pt 4, Ch 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers or Pt 4, Ch 11 Ore Carriers, as applicable.

Note 4. In bulk carriers the scantlings of frames are also to comply with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 7, 6 Shell envelope framing in which the requirements of Table 7.6.1 location (1) are to be multiplied by the following factor: Between $0.15L$ and $0.2L$ from the F.P., $C_1 = (0.018D_2 + 0.82)$, but not to be taken less than 1.0 .Between collision bulkhead and $0.15L$ from the F.P.$C_1 = (0.021D_2 + 0.96)$.

Note 5. Panting stringers are not required in tugs less than 46 m in length, *See* Pt 4, Ch 3, 4 Panting and strengthening of bottom forward.

Note 6. Where the frames are supported by fully effective horizontal stringers, these may be considered as decks for the purpose of determining H_{MF}.

Note 7. Where frames are inclined at more than 15° to the vertical, H_{MF} or H_{TF} is to be measured along a chord between span points of the frame.

Note 8. Except for main frames the modulus for these members need not exceed that derived from (1) using H_{TF} in place of S_1.

4. 5 Primary structure at sides

4. 5. 1 For the arrangement of primary structure in peak tanks and deep tanks forward, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 5, 6 Fore peak structure and Pt 3, Ch 5, 7 Forward deep tank structure.

4. 5. 2 The spacing of side transverses and web frames is generally not to exceed the values given in Table 5. 4. 3: Spacing of side transverses and web frames forward.

Table 5. 4. 3: Spacing of side transverses and web frames forward

Location	Maximum spacing	
	Web frames in association with transverse framing system	Side transverses in association with longitudinal framing system
(1) Forward of the collision bulkhead	5 frame spaces	2.5 m where L ≤ 100m 3.5 m where L ≥ 300 Intermediate values by interpolation
(2) In way of a forward deep tank adjacent to the collision bulkhead	5 frame spaces	3.0 m where L ≤ 100m 4.2 m where L ≥ 300m

		Intermediate values by interpolation
(3) Elsewhere in way of dry cargo spaces or deep tanks	*See* Note 1	3.8 m where L ≤ 100m (0.006L + 3.2) m where L > 100m
(4) In way of the cargo tanks of oil tankers, chemical tankers or ore or oil carriers	—	3.6 m where L≤ 180 m 0.02L where L > 180 m
Note 1. In 'tween decks above deep tanks situated adjacent to the collision bulkhead, web frames are to be fitted in line with those in the tanks. **Note** 2. For the maximum spacing of transverses in dredgers, *See* Pt 4, Ch 12, 5 Shell envelope framing		

4. 5. 3 The scantlings of side transverses supporting longitudinal framing and stringers and webs supporting transverse framing in the forward region are to be determined from Table 5. 4. 4: Primary structure forward.

Table 5. 4. 4: Primary structure forward

Item and location	Modulus, in cm^3	Inertia, in cm^4
Longitudinal framing system		
(1) Side transverses in dry spaces forward of 0.2*L* from the F.P., *See* Note 5:		—
Holds 'tween decks	$Z = 10kSh_{T1}{l_e}^2$ $Z = C_2kSTH_{TF}\sqrt{D}$	
(2) Side transverses in peak and deep tanks forward of 0.2*L* from the F.P., *See* Notes 1 and 4:		$I=\frac{2.5}{k}l_eZ$
where no struts fitted where struts fitted	$Z = 14.1\rho kSh_4{l_e}^2\gamma$ or as (1) above, whichever is the greater As in Pt 4, Ch 9, 9 Primary members supporting longitudinal framing	
(3) Side transverses in dry spaces and deep tanks aft of 0.2*L* from the F.P.	As in Pt 4, Ch 1, 6 Shell envelope framing, *See* Notes 1 and 2	
Transverse framing system		

(4) Side stringers supported by webs in dry spaces forward of 0.2L from the F.P., *See* Note 3 or as (4) above, whichever is the greater	$Z = 7.75kSh_{T1}{l_e}^2$	—
(5) Side stringers supported by webs in peak or deep tanks forward of 0.2L from the F.P., *See* Notes 1 and 3	$Z = 11.7\rho kSh_4{l_e}^2$ or as (4) above, whichever is the greater	$I=\frac{2.5}{k}l_eZ$
(6) Web frames supporting side stringers forward of 0.2L from the F.P., *See* Notes 1, 2 and 3	Z to be determined from the calculations based on the following assumptions: Fixed ends Point loadings from stringers Head γh_4 or γh_{T1} as applicable Bending stress $\frac{93.2}{k}N/mm^2$ Shear stress $\frac{83.4}{k}N/mm^2$	In deep tanks $I=\frac{2.5}{k}l_eZ$
(7) Web frames in 'tween decks, not supporting side stringers, forward of 0.2L from the F.P.	$Z = C_3kSTH_{TF}\sqrt{D}$	—
(8) Side stringers and web frames in dry spaces and deep tanks aft of 0.2L from the F.P.	As in Pt 4, Ch 1, 6 Shell envelope framing, *See* Notes 1 and 2	
Symbols		
D, T, S, l_e, k, ρ as defined in Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.4 Symbols and definitions 1.4.1		

B_f = bow fullness factor determined from Fig 5.4.3 to be taken as 1.0 for framing members located at and abaft 0.2L from the forward perpendicular

h_4 = tank head, in metres, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 3, 5 Design loading

h_{T1} = head, in metres, at mid-length of span

= $f_w C_w \left(1 - \frac{h_6}{D_1 - T_1}\right) F_\lambda$, in metres, where the mid-length of span is above the waterline at draught T_1

Where $f_w \left(1 - \frac{h_6}{D_1 - T_1}\right)$ is not to be taken less than 0.7

= $\left[h_6 + f_w C_w \left(1 - \frac{h_6}{2T_1}\right)\right] F_\lambda$, in metres, where the mid-length of span is below the waterline at draught T_1

where

f_W = 1.0 at 0.2L from F.P. and 1.71 at, and forward of, 0.15L from F.P. Intermediate positions by interpolation

h_6 = vertical distance, in metres, from the waterline at draught T_1 to the mid-length of span

F_λ = 1.0 for L $\leq$ 200 m

= [1.0 + 0.0023 (L − 200)] for L > 200 m

C_W = a wave head, in metres

= $7.71 \times 10^{-2} L e^{-0.0044L}$

where

e = base of natural logarithms 2.7183

D_1 = T+H_b, in metres, where H_b is defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1 Principal particulars 6.1.11

T_1 = T but not to be taken less than 0.65D_1

C_2, C_3 = factors obtained from Figure 5. 4. 2: Framing factors for primary members

H_{TF} = vertical height of `tween decks, in metres, as shown in Pt 3, Ch 5, 4.5 Primary structure at sides 4.5.4

γ is to be measured at the mid-span of the member as follows:

γ_1 = 1.0 at base line

γ_2 bow fullness factor (B_f) at 0.6D above base

γ_3 $\left(\frac{B_f - 1}{2}\right)$ + 1.0 at depth D above base

Intermediate values are to be determined by interpolation.

Minimum value = 1.0

Note *1.* In way of the cargo tanks, fore peak tanks and dry spaces of oil tankers or ore carriers the scantlings of primary structure are to comply with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 9 Double Hull Oil Tankers, Pt 4, Ch 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers or Pt 4, Ch 11 Ore Carriers, as appropriate.

Note *2.* For bulk carriers *See* Pt 4, Ch 7, 6.2, Transverse stiffening.

Note *3.* For stringers and webs in fore peaks or deep tanks, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 5, 6.3, Side structure − Transverse framing and Pt 3, Ch 5, 7.3, Side structure − Transverse framing.

Note *4.* In the fore peak, the breadth S should be measured along the line of shell. The effective length l_e of the vertical webs should be measured along the line of shell from horizontal flat to horizontal flat, except that it may be taken to the underside of a transverse or strut where fitted.
Note *5.* The web depth of side transverses forward of 0.2L from the F.P. is to be not less than 2.5 times the depth of the longitudinals supported. The web depth of stringers forward of 0.2L is to be not less than 2.2 times the depth of the frames supported.
Note *6.* For the primary structure at sides in dredgers with restricted service notations, *See* Table 12. 5. 2: Primary supporting structure at sides.

4. 5. 4 The web thickness, stiffening arrangements and end connections of primary supporting members are to be in accordance with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 10, 4 Construction details for primary members.

Figure 5. 4. 1: Framing depths for transverse frames

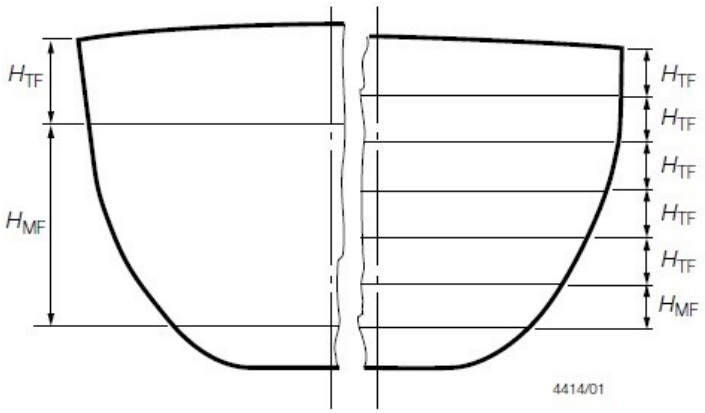


Figure 5. 4. 2: Framing factors for primary members

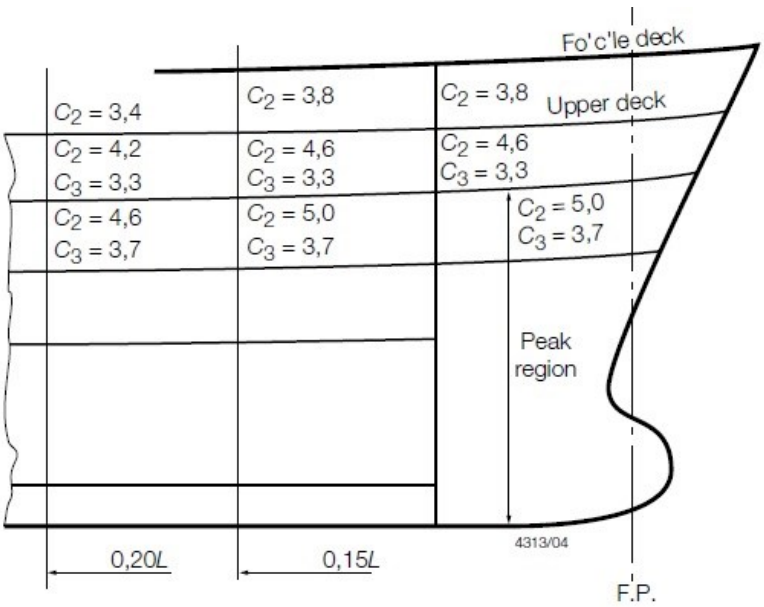
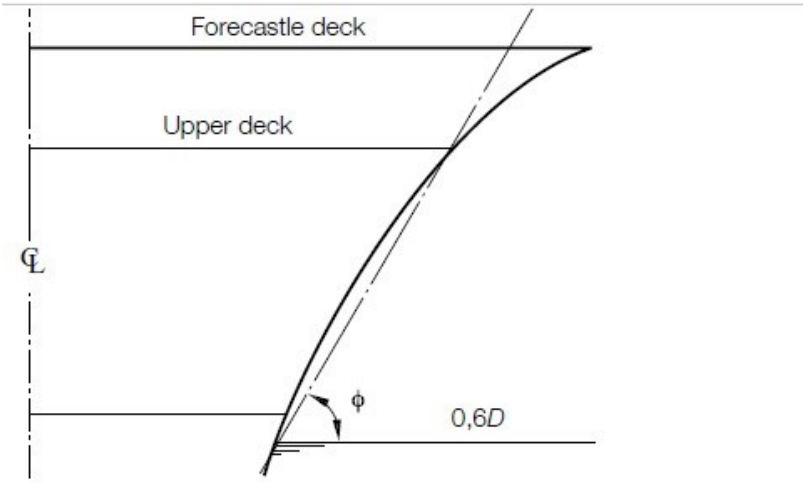


Figure 5. 4. 3: Illustration of bow fullness factor determination



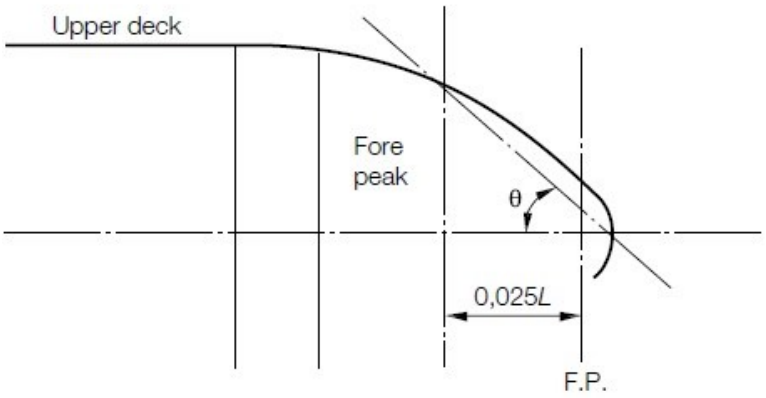
(a)

Conditions for ϕ

1. ϕ to be deduced at 0,025*L* aft of fore perpendicular

2. Aft of fore peak tank ϕ to be deduced at section being considered

3. For ships with a bulbous bow the angle ϕ is to be measured from the narrowest point of the bow between 0,6*D* from base and upper deck



(b)

Bow fullness factor
$B_f = 2,45 \cos \phi \tan \theta$
but not to be taken less than 1,0

PART

3

CHAPTER **5** **Fore End Structure**

SECTION **5** **Single and double bottom structure**

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 For dry cargo ships exceeding 120 m in length and for all ships which have the notation `strengthened for heavy cargoes', longitudinal framing is, in general, to be adopted (*See also* Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.3 Class notation and applicable Rules for CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers and Pt 4, Ch 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers).

5. 1. 2 For ships requiring additional strengthening of bottom forward the requirements given in 1.5 are also to be complied with, as applicable.

5. 1. 3 For ships having the notation `strengthened for heavy cargoes' the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 7, 8 Double bottom structure are also to be complied with, as applicable.

5. 1. 4 For ships intended to load or unload while aground, *See* Pt 3, Ch 9, 7 Bottom strengthening for loading and unloading aground.

5. 1. 5 Provision is to be made for the free passage of water and/or air from all parts of single or double bottoms to bilge or tank suctions, account being taken of the pumping rates required.

5. 1. 6 For passenger ships, *See* Pt 4, Ch 2, 6 Double bottom.

5. 2 Single bottoms – Transverse framing

5. 2. 1 In fore peak spaces, for ships of full form the floors are to be supported by a centreline girder or a centreline wash bulkhead. In other cases the centreline girder is to be carried as far forward as practicable. The arrangement and scantlings of the floors and centreline girder are to be sufficient to give adequate stiffness to the structure, but are to be not less than required by Table 5. 5. 1: Single bottom construction forward. The floor panels and the upper edges of the floors and centreline girder are to be suitably stiffened.

Table 5. 5. 1: Single bottom construction forward

Item	Parameter	Requirement
Transverse framing system		
(1) Centre girder:		The greater of the following:
(a) In fore peak tank, or deep tank, forward of 0.2L from the F.P.	Modulus	$Z = 8.5\mathrm{kSh}_5 le^2$ cm^3, or $Z = 9.75\rho kSh_4 le^2$ cm^3
	Inertia	$I = \frac{2.5}{k} l_e Z$ cm^4

	Web thickness	$t = t_w$ as in Pt 3, Ch 10, 4.4 Geometric properties and proportions
(b) In dry spaces		Forward of $0.075L$ from the F.P., $t = (\sqrt{Lk} + 0.5)$ mm or 6 mm, whichever is the greater.
	Web thickness	Between $0.075L$ and $0.3L$ from the F.P. the thickness may taper from the midship thickness to the end thickness above
	Web depth and face area	As in Pt 4, Ch 1, 7 Single bottom structure
(2) Floors:		
(a) In fore peak tank, or deep tank, forward of $0.2L$ from the F.P.	Maximum spacing	Every frame
	Web depth (at centreline)	$\mathrm{df} = (83\mathrm{D} + 150)\mathrm{mm}$ or 1400 mm, whichever is the lesser
	Web thickness	$t = (6.0 + 0.025L_2)\sqrt{\frac{S_2}{800}}\,\mathrm{mm}$
	Minimum face plate area in deep tank	$A_f = 0.85\mathrm{kBcm}^2$
(b) In dry cargo spaces	Maximum spacing	Every frame
	Scantlings	As in Pt 4, Ch 1, 7.2 Girders and floors
(3) Intercostal side girders:		
(a) In deep tank, forward of $0.2L$ from the F.P.	Maximum spacing	$0.003s_F$ m
	Web depth	As floors
	Web thickness	$t = t_w$ as in Pt 3, Ch 10, 4.4 Geometric properties and proportions
	Minimum face plate area	Suitable stiffener
(b) In dry cargo spaces	Maximum spacing	$0.003s_F$ m
	Scantlings	As in Pt 4, Ch 1, 7 Single bottom structure
Longitudinal framing system		
(4) Centre girder:		
(a) In deep tanks forward of $0.2L$ from the F.P.	Scantlings	As in Pt 4, Ch 9, 9 Primary members supporting longitudinal framing
(b) In dry spaces	Scantlings	To be specially considered
(5) Bottom transverses:		

(a) In deep tanks forward of 0.2*L* from the F.P., *See* Note 4	Maximum spacing	3.0 m for $L \leq 100$ m 4.2 m for $L \geq 300$ m Spacing at intermediate lengths by interpolation
	Scantlings	As in Pt 4, Ch 9, 9 Primary members supporting longitudinal framing
(b) In dry spaces	Scantlings	To be specially considered
(6) Intercostal side girders	Scantlings	To be specially considered

Symbols

L, *B*, *D*, *S*, l_e, *k*, ρ as defined in Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.4 Symbols and definitions 1.4.1

h_4 = tank head, in metres, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 3, 5 Design loading

h_5 = distance, in metres, from mid-point of span to the following positions:

forward of 0.15*L* from the F.P., 3 m above the deck height obtained from Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1 Principal particulars 6.1.11

at 0.2*L* from the F.P. the upper deck at side

between 0.15*L* and 0.2*L* from the F.P., by interpolation between (a) and (b)

s_F = transverse frame spacing, in mm

s_2 = spacing of stiffener, in mm, but to be taken not less than 800 mm

L_2 = *L* but need not be taken greater than 215 m

Note *1*. For single bottom construction in way of the cargo tanks of oil tankers, *See* Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.3 Class notation and applicable Rules for CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers and Pt 4, Ch 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers

Note *2*. For minimum thickness of structure within cargo tanks and fore peak tanks in oil tankers, *See* Pt 4, Ch 9, 10.2 Compartment minimum thickness and Pt 4, Ch 10, 7.2 Compartment minimum thickness.

Note *3*. For single bottom construction in dredgers, *See* Pt 4, Ch 12, 6 Bottom structure.

Note *4*. For ships having one or more longitudinal bulkheads the maximum spacing may be increased but is not to exceed that for the midship region.

5. 2. 2 In deep tanks forward of 0.2*L* from the F.P. floors are to be supported by a primary centreline girder or centreline bulkhead together with intercostal side girders. In the case of an oil tanker (*See* Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.1 Application 1.1.4) or similar ship having longitudinal bulkheads port and starboard, these may be extended to the fore end of the deep tank in lieu of a centreline bulkhead. The arrangement and scantlings of centreline girder, floors and side girders are to be determined from Table 5. 5. 1: Single bottom construction forward, but in way of web frames the depth of the floor and size of the face bar are to be not less than those of the web frame. In general, floors are not to be flanged.

5. 2. 3 In way of dry cargo spaces forward, the arrangement and scantlings of transversely framed single bottoms areto be generally as required in the midship region as given in Pt 4, Ch 1, 7 Single bottom structure, except as required by Table 5. 5. 1: Single bottom construction forward. The girders forward are to scarf into the normal girder arrangement in the midship region. In ships having considerable rise of floor towards the fore end, the depth of the floors may be required to be increased or the top edge sloped upwards towards the outboard end. In general, floors are not to be flanged.

5. 3 Single bottoms – Longitudinal framing

5. 3. 1 In deep tanks forward of 0.2L from the F.P., bottom transverses are to be supported by a primary centreline girder or a centreline bulkhead. In addition, an intercostal side girder is generally to be fitted port and starboard. In the case of an oil tanker (*See* Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.1 Application 1.1.4) or similar ship having longitudinal bulkheads port and starboard, these may be extended to the fore end of the deep tank in lieu of a primary centreline support and intercostal girders. The spacing of bottom transverses and scantlings of the centreline girder, bottom transverses and side girders are to be as required by Table 5. 5. 1: Single bottom construction forward.

5. 3. 2 The requirements for longitudinally framed single bottoms in way of dry cargo spaces will be specially considered.

5. 4 Double bottoms

5. 4. 1 The minimum depth of centre girder forward is generally to be the same as that required in the midship region by Pt 4 Ship Structures (Ship Types) for the particular type of ship concerned, but in ships with considerable rise of floor, a greater depth may be required at the fore end to provide adequate access throughout the double bottom tank.

5. 4. 2 Where the height of the double bottom varies, this variation is generally to be made gradual by sloping the inner bottom over an adequate longitudinal extent. Knuckles in the plating are to be arranged close to plate floors. Otherwise, suitable scarfing arrangements are to be made.

5. 4. 3 The arrangement and scantlings of girders, floors and inner bottom plating and the section modulus of inner bottom stiffening are to be determined from Table 5. 5. 2: Double bottom construction forward. In other respects the structural arrangements are to be as detailed in Pt 4 Ship Structures (Ship Types) for the particular type of ship concerned.

5. 4. 4 For double bottom construction in way of the cargo tanks of oil tankers or ore carriers, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 9 Double Hull Oil Tankers, Pt 4, Ch 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers or Pt 4, Ch 11 Ore Carriers, as appropriate.

Table 5. 5. 2: Double bottom construction forward

Item and parameter	Requirements	
	Transverse framing	Longitudinal framing
(1) Centre girder: *(a)* Thickness forward of 0.075L from the F.P. *(b)* Thickness between 0.075L and 0.3L from the F.P.	$t = (0.008d_{DB} + 2)\sqrt{k}\ mm$ As determined by a taper line from the midship thickness given in Pt 4, Ch 1, 8 Double bottom structure to the end thickness as for (1) (a)	
(2) Plate floors: *(a)* Maximum spacing forward of 0.2L from the F.P. *(b)* Maximum spacing aft of 0.2L from the F.P. *(c)* Scantlings	0.002s_F m As for midship region As in Pt 4, Ch 1, 8 Double bottom structure	2.5 m As for midship region (*See* Note 5) As in Pt 4, Ch 1, 8 Double bottom structure

(3) Watertight floors and bracket floors	As in Pt 4, Ch 1, 8 Double bottom structure	As in Pt 4, Ch 1, 8 Double bottom structure
(4) Side girders, *See* Note 1:		
(a) Maximum spacing forward of 0.2*L* from the F.P.	$0.003s_F$ m	$0.004s_L$ or 3.7 m whichever is the lesser
(b) Maximum spacing aft of 0.2*L* from the F.P.	As for midship region	As for midship region, *See* Note 5
(c) Scantlings	As in Pt 4, Ch 1, 8 Double bottom structure	As in Pt 4, Ch 1, 8 Double bottom structure
(5) Inner bottom plating, *See* Note 2:		
(a) Thickness at or forward of 0.075*L* from the F.P.	$t = \left(0.00127(s + 660)\sqrt[4]{k^2LT}\right)$ mm or 6.5 mm, whichever is the greater, *See* Notes 3, 4 and 5	
(b) Thickness between 0.075*L* and 0.3*L* from the F.P.	As determined by a taper line from the midship thickness given in Pt 4, Ch 1, 8 Double bottom structure to the end thickness as for (5) (a), but not less than 6.5 mm, *See* Notes 3, 4 and 5	
(c) In way of deep tanks or holds used for the carriage of water ballast or where the double bottom tank is common with a wing ballast tank.	$t = \left(0.004sf\sqrt{\frac{\rho k h_4}{1.025}} + 2.5\right)$ mm or 6.5 mm, whichever is the greater	
(6) nner bottom longitudinals	As in Pt 4, Ch 1, 8 Double bottom structure, *See* Notes 2 and 5	

Symbols

L, T, S, s, k, ρ = as defined in Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.4 Symbols and definitions 1.4.1

d_{DB} = minimum depth of centre girder as required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 8 Double bottom structure

f = $1.1 - \frac{s}{2500S}$ but to be taken not greater than 1.0

h_4 = tank head, in metres, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 3, 5 Design loading

s_F = transverse frame spacing, in mm

s_L = spacing of bottom longitudinals, in mm

Note *1*. The girders forward of 0.2*L* are to be suitably scarfed into the midship girder arrangement.

Note *2*. For double bottom construction in way of the cargo tanks of oil tankers or ore carriers, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 9 Double Hull Oil Tankers, Pt 4, Ch 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers or Pt 4, Ch 11 Ore Carriers, as appropriate.

Note *3*. In way of hatches the tank top taper thickness is to be increased by 2 mm if no ceiling is fitted, but is to be taken not less than 7.5 mm.

Note *4*. Where cargo is to be regularly discharged by grabs the tank top taper thickness is to be increased by 5.0 mm if no ceiling is fitted, or by 3.0 mm where ceiling is fitted.

Note *5*. For ships having the notation `strengthened for heavy cargoes', the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 7, 8 Double bottom structure are also to be complied with.

PART

3

CHAPTER **5** **Fore End Structure**

SECTION **6** **Fore peak structure**

6. 1 General

6. 1. 1 The requirements given in this Section apply to the arrangement of primary structure supporting the peak side framing and bulbous bow, the arrangement and scantlings of wash bulkheads and perforated flats, and the scantlings of collision bulkheads.

6. 1. 2 In ships of very full form it is recommended that transverse framing and side transverses supporting longitudinal framing, together with attached floors and beams, be inclined at an angle to the centreline of ship so that the frames or transverses lie as near normal to the shell plating as possible.

6. 2 Bottom structure

6. 2. 1 The bottom of the peak space is generally to be transversely framed with arrangements and scantlings as detailed in Pt 3, Ch 5, 5.2 Single bottoms − Transverse framing 5.2.1. Longitudinally framed bottom structure will be specially considered.

6. 3 Side structure − Transverse framing

6. 3. 1 Above the floors, transverse side framing is to be supported by one of the following arrangements:

a. Side stringers spaced about 2.0 m apart and supported by struts fitted at alternate frames. The struts are to be bracketed to the frames and where the span is long, supported at the centreline by a complete or partial wash bulkhead or equally effective structure. Intermediate frames are to be bracketed to the stringer plates.

b. Side stringers spaced about 2.0 m apart and supported by web frames. The upper ends of the web frames are to be supported under the tank top by suitable deep beams or buttresses which should generally form a ring structure.

c. Perforated flats spaced not more than 2.5 m apart. The area of perforations in each flat is to be not less than 10 per cent of the total area of the flat. The plating is to be suitably framed in way of openings.

d. A combination of the above arrangements.

6. 3. 2 Where the depth of the peak space exceeds 10 m, a perforated flat is to be arranged at about mid-depth.

6. 3. 3 Where the length of the space exceeds 10 m and the side framing is supported as required by Pt 3, Ch 5, 6.3,, Side structure − Transverse framing 6.3.1 or Pt 3, Ch 5, 6.3 Side structure − Transverse framing 6.3.1.c, additional transverse strengthening in the form of transverse wash bulkheads or web frames is to be provided.

6. 3. 4 The scantlings of side stringers supported by struts, and also of the struts and their brackets, are to be determined from Table 5. 6. 1: Fore peak structure.

Table 5. 6. 1: Fore peak structure

Item	Parameter	Requirement
(1) Unflanged stringers supported by panting beams at alternate frames	Web thickness	$t = (6.0 + 0.025L_2)\sqrt{\frac{S_1}{600}}$ mm
	Web depth	$d_w = (400 + 3.3L)\frac{S_1}{2.0}$ mm
(2) Struts	Cross-sectional area	$A = (2.5B_1 - 0.04L_2)k$ cm^2
	Least inertia	$I = S_1 S_2 h_5 l^2{}_e$ cm^4
(3) Brackets supporting stringers and beams	Thickness	$t = (6.0 + 0.025L_2)\sqrt{\frac{S_1}{600}}$ mm
	Arm length	$l_e = \frac{150A}{t}$ mm in way of struts $l_e = 0.5d_w$ mm at intermediate frames
(4) Perforated flats and wash bulkheads (excluding lowest strake of plating) *See* Notes 1, 2 and 3	Plating thickness	$t = (6.0 + 0.015L)\sqrt{\frac{S_2}{800}}$ mm
	Stiffener modulus	$Z = \frac{0.0057skh_6 l^2{}_e}{b}$ cm^3
(5) Diaphragms in bulbous bows and lowest strake of wash bulkhead	Plating thickness	$t = (6.0 + 0.025L_2)\sqrt{\frac{S_2}{800}}$ mm
Symbols		

L, B, S, s, k = as defined in Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.4 Symbols and definitions 1.4.1

b = 1.4 for rolled or built sections

= 1.6 for flat bars

h_5 = vertical distance, in metres, from the stringer to a position 3 m above the deck height obtained from Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1 Principal particulars 6.1.11

b = 1.4 for rolled or built sections

= 1.6 for flat bars

h_5 = vertical distance, in metres, from the stringer to a position 3 m above the deck height obtained from Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1 Principal particulars 6.1.11

h_6 = vertical distance, in metres, from mid-depth of tank to top of tank

l_e = effective length of stiffening member, in metres, *See* Table 1. 9. 1: Watertight and deep tank bulkhead scantlings and Table 1. 9. 3: Bulkhead end constraint factors in Pt 4, Ch 1

s_1 = spacing of peak frames, in mm, but to be taken not less than 600 mm

s_2 = spacing of stiffeners, in mm, but to be taken not less than 800 mm

B_1 = B, but need not be taken greater than 32 m

L_2 = L, but need not be taken greater than 215 m

S_1 = vertical spacing or mean spacing of stringers, in metres

S_2 = horizontal spacing of struts, in metres

Note *1*. For oil tankers, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 9, 10.7 Application of stiffening requirements

Note *2*. For horizontal flats supporting vertical webs in the fore peak tank, the thickness of the flat in way of the web is to comply with Table 9. 7. 1: Transverse oiltight bulkhead scantlings.

Note *3*. For minimum thickness within fore peak tanks of oil tankers, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 9, 10.2 Compartment minimum thickness.

6. 3. 5 The scantlings of side stringers supported by web frames, and also of the web frames, are to be determined from Pt 3, Ch 5, 4.5, Primary structure at sides.

6. 3. 6 The scantlings of perforated flats are to be determined from Table 5. 6. 1: Fore peak structure.

6. 4 Side structure – Longitudinal framing

6. 4. 1 The spacing and scantlings of side transverses supporting longitudinal framing are to be as required by Pt 3, Ch 5, 4.5, Primary structure at sides.

6. 4. 2 Where the depth of a tank exceeds 10 m, side transverses are generally to be supported by one or more perforated flats or an arrangement of struts.

6. 4. 3 Suitable transverses or deep beams are to be arranged at the top of the tank and at perforated flats to provide end rigidity to the side transverses.

6. 5 Bulbous bow

6. 5. 1 Where a bulbous bow is fitted, the structural arrangements are to be such that the bulb is adequately supported and integrated into the fore peak structure.

6. 5. 2 At the fore end of the bulb the structure is generally to be supported by horizontal diaphragm plates spaced about 1.0 m apart in conjunction with a deep centreline web.

6. 5. 3 In general, vertical transverse diaphragm plates are to be arranged in way of the transition from the peak framing to the bulb framing.

6. 5. 4 In way of a wide bulb, additional strengthening in the form of a centreline wash bulkhead is generally to be fitted.

6. 5. 5 In way of a long bulb, additional strengthening in the form of transverse wash bulkheads or substantial web frames spaced about five frame spaces apart are generally to be fitted.

6. 5. 6 The shell plating is to be increased in thickness at the fore end of the bulb and in other areas likely to be damaged by the anchors and chain cables. The increased plate thickness is to be the same as that required for plated stems by Pt 3, Ch 5, 3.3 Stem 3.3.2.

6. 6 Wash bulkhead

6. 6. 1 Where a fore peak space is used as a tank and the breadth of the tank at its widest point exceeds 0.5*B*, a complete or partial centreline wash bulkhead is to be fitted.

6. 6. 2 Wash bulkheads are to have an area of perforations not less than five per cent nor more than 10 per cent of the area of the bulkhead. The plating is to be suitably stiffened in way of openings.

6. 6. 3 The scantlings of wash bulkheads are to be determined from Table 5. 6. 1: Fore peak structure. Stiffeners are to be bracketed at top and bottom.

6. 7 Collision bulkhead

6. 7. 1 The position and height of the collision bulkhead are to be in accordance with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 3, 4 Bulkhead requirements.

6. 7. 2 The scantlings are to comply with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 9 Bulkheads except that the thickness of plating and modulus of stiffeners are to be not less than 12 per cent greater and 25 per cent greater, respectively, than would be required for a dry space. If the collision bulkhead forms the boundary of a cargo tank or cofferdam in an oil tanker or ore carrier the minimum thickness requirements of Pt 4, Ch 9, 10 Construction details and minimum thickness are also to be complied with.

6. 7. 3 Doors, manholes, permanent access openings or ventilation ducts are not to be cut in the collision bulkhead below the freeboard deck, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 13, 3 Drainage of compartments, other than machinery spaces. The number of openings in collision bulkheads above the freeboard deck is to be kept to a minimum compatible with the design and proper working of the ship. All such openings are to be fitted with means of closing to weathertight standards.

PART

3

CHAPTER **5** **Fore End Structure**

SECTION **7** **Forward deep tank structure**

7. 1 General

7. 1. 1 The requirements given in this Section apply to the arrangement of primary structure supporting the side framing, the arrangement and scantlings of wash bulkheads and perforated flats, and the scantlings of boundary bulkheads in way of deep tanks situated forward of 0.2*L* from the F.P.

7. 1. 2 For deep tanks situated aft of this position, *See* Pt 4, Ch 1, 9 Bulkheads.

7. 2 Bottom structure

7. 2. 1 The bottom structure is to comply with the requirements given in Pt 3, Ch 5, 5.2 Single bottoms – Transverse framing 5.2.2, Pt 3, Ch 5, 5.3 Single bottoms – Longitudinal framing 5.3.1 and Pt 3, Ch 5, 5.4 Double bottoms, as applicable.

7. 3 Side structure – Transverse framing

7. 3. 1 Above the floors, transverse framing is to be supported by one of the following arrangements:

a. Side stringers spaced not more than 5 m apart and supported by web frames. The upper ends of the web frames are to be supported under the tank top by suitable deep beams or buttresses which should generally form a ring system.

b. Side stringers spaced not more than 5 m apart and spanning from bulkhead to bulkhead. The ends of these stringers are to be connected to horizontal stringers on the transverse bulkheads to form a ring system.

c. In the case of narrow tanks, perforated flats spaced not more than 5 m apart. The area of perforations is to be not less than 10 per cent of the area of the flat, and the plating is to be suitably stiffened in way of openings.

7. 3. 2 Where the side framing is supported as required by Pt 3, Ch 5, 7.3,, Side structure – Transverse framing 7.3.1 and the depth of the tank exceeds 16 m, the web frames are to be supported by one of the following:

a. One or more side stringers spanning from bulkhead to bulkhead.

b. One or more perforated flats having deep beams or transverses in way of the web frames.

c. One or more cross ties.

7. 3. 3 Where the side framing is supported as required by Pt 3, Ch 5, 7.3 Side structure – Transverse framing 7.3.1.c and the length of the tank exceeds 14 m, additional transverse strengthening in the form of transverse wash bulkheads or web frames is to be provided.

7. 3. 4 The scantlings of stringers and web frames as required by Pt 3, Ch 5, 7.3,, Side structure – Transverse framing 7.3.1 are to be determined from Pt 3, Ch 5, 4.5, Primary structure at sides.

7. 3. 5 The scantlings of side stringers supporting framing as required by Pt 3, Ch 5, 7.3 Side structure – Transverse framing 7.3.1.b are to be determined from Item (5) in Table 5. 4. 4: Primary structure forward.

7. 3. 6 The scantlings of side stringers supporting web frames as required by Pt 3, Ch 5, 7.3, Side structure – Transverse framing 7.3.2 are to be determined from Item (6) in Table 5. 4. 4: Primary structure forward.

7. 3. 7 The scantlings of perforated flats as required by Pt 3, Ch 5, 7.3 Side structure – Transverse framing 7.3.1.c or Pt 3, Ch 5, 7.3 Side structure – Transverse framing 7.3.2.b are to be determined from Table 5. 6. 1: Fore peak structure.

7. 3. 8 The scantlings of cross ties are to be determined as for cross ties in the cargo tanks of oil tankers, *See* Pt 4, Ch 9, 9 Primary members supporting longitudinal framing . Where the span between the side shell and longitudinal bulkhead exceeds 0.3*B*, additional fore and aft or vertical support for the struts may be required.

7. 4 Side structure – Longitudinal framing

7. 4. 1 The spacing and scantlings of side transverses supporting longitudinal framing are to be as required by Pt 3, Ch 5, 4.5, Primary structure at sides.

7. 4. 2 Where the depth of the tank exceeds 16 m, the side transverses are to be supported as required by Pt 3, Ch 5, 7.3, Side structure – Transverse framing 7.3.2.

7. 5 Wash bulkheads

7. 5. 1 Where the breadth of the tank at its widest point exceeds 0.5*B*, a centreline wash bulkhead is generally to be fitted. If the maximum breadth of tank exceeds 0.7*B*, it is recommended that the centreline bulkhead be made intact. In the case of an oil tanker or similar ship having longitudinal bulkheads port and starboard, these may be extended to the fore end of the deep tank in lieu of a centreline bulkhead.

7. 5. 2 Wash bulkheads are to have an area of perforations not less than 5 per cent nor more than 10 per cent of the area of the bulkhead. The plating is to be suitably stiffened in way of openings.

7. 5. 3 The scantlings of wash bulkheads are generally to be as required by Table 5. 6. 1: Fore peak structure, but *See also* Pt 3, Ch 5, 7.5 Wash bulkheads 7.5.4 to Pt 3, Ch 5, 7.5 Wash bulkheads 7.5.6. Stiffeners are to be bracketed at top and bottom.

7. 5. 4 The thickness of longitudinal bulkheads may be required to be increased to ensure compliance with the shear strength requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4, 6 Hull shear strength. In the case of a centreline or perforated wing bulkhead, the proportion of the total shear force absorbed by the bulkhead will be specially considered.

7. 5. 5 The thickness of plating of wash bulkheads may also be required to be increased to take account of shear buckling.

7. 5. 6 Where longitudinal wash bulkheads support bottom transverses, the lower section of the bulkhead is to be kept free of non-essential openings for a depth equal to 1.75 times the depth of the transverses, and the plating thickness may be required to be increased to meet local buckling requirements.

7. 6 Transverse boundary bulkheads

7. 6. 1 The transverse bulkheads forming the forward and after boundaries of the tank are generally to comply with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 9 Bulkheads, except that when the after bulkhead forms the boundary of a cargo tank or cofferdam in an oil tanker or ore carrier, the minimum

thickness requirements of Pt 4, Ch 9, 10 Construction details and minimum thickness are also to be complied with.

PART

3

CHAPTER **6 Aft End Structure**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**1011**
	1. 1	Application	1011
	1. 2	Structural configuration	1011
	1. 3	Structural continuity	1011
	1. 4	Symbols and definitions	1012
SECTION 2	**Deck structure**		**1013**
	2. 1	General	1013
	2. 2	Deck plating	1013
	2. 3	Deck stiffening	1013
	2. 4	Deck supporting structure	1016
	2. 5	Deck openings	1017
SECTION 3	**Shell envelope plating**		**1018**
	3. 1	General	1018
	3. 2	Keel	1018
	3. 3	Bottom shell and bilge	1018
	3. 4	Side shell and sheerstrake	1018
	3. 5	Shell openings	1019
SECTION 4	**Shell envelope framing**		**1021**
	4. 1	General	1021
	4. 2	Shell longitudinals	1021
	4. 3	Shell framing	1021
	4. 4	Panting stringers in way of transverse framing	1025
	4. 5	Primary structure at sides	1026
SECTION 5	**Single and double bottom structure**		**1029**
	5. 1	General	1029
	5. 2	Single bottoms − Transverse framing	1029

5. 3 Single bottoms − Longitudinal framing 1029
5. 4 Double bottoms 1029
SECTION 6 After peak structure 1031
6. 1 Bottom structure 1031
6. 2 Side structure − Transverse framing 1031
6. 3 Side structure − Longitudinal framing 1031
6. 4 Wash bulkheads 1032
6. 5 After peak bulkhead 1032
SECTION 7 Sternframes and appendages 1033
7. 1 General 1033
7. 2 Sternframes 1033
7. 3 Sole pieces 1036
7. 4 Rudder horns 1038
7. 5 Rudder trunks 1041
7. 6 Shaft bossing 1042
7. 7 Shaft brackets 1044
7. 8 Double arm shaft brackets ('A' – brackets) 1046
7. 9 Propeller hull clearances 1047

PART

3

CHAPTER **6 Aft End Structure**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 6. 2. 1: Strength/weather deck plating aft (excluding poop deck) 1014
Table 6. 2. 2: Lower deck plating aft 1014
Table 6. 2. 3: Strength/weather deck longitudinals aft 1015
Table 6. 3. 1: Shell plating aft 1019
Table 6. 4. 1: Shell framing (longitudinal) aft 1021
Table 6. 4. 2: Shell framing (transverse) aft 1023
Table 6. 4. 3: Spacing of side transverses and web frames aft 1026
Table 6. 4. 4: Primary structure aft 1027
Table 6. 6. 1: After peak structure 1031
Table 6. 7. 1: Sternframes 1033
Table 6. 7. 2: Permissible stresses for sole pieces 1035
Table 6. 7. 3: Sole pieces scantlings 1036
Table 6. 7. 4: Permissible stresses for solepieces 1037
Table 6. 7. 5: Rudder horn scantlings 1039
Table 6. 7. 6: Permissible stresses for rudder horns 1039
Table 6. 7. 7: Rudder coefficient k_R 1040
Table 6. 7. 8: Recommended propeller/hull clearances 1040

PART

3

CHAPTER **6 Aft End Structure**

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 6. 4. 1: Framing depths 1025
Figure 6. 4. 2: Framing factors 1026
Figure 6. 7. 1: Solepiece 1036
Figure 6. 7. 2: Rudder horn 1038
Figure 6. 7. 3: Rudder horn integration 1039
Figure 6. 7. 4: Rudder trunk fillet shoulder radii 1042
Figure 6. 7. 5: Propeller posts 1044
Figure 6. 7. 6: Propeller boss 1044
Figure 6. 7. 7: Rudder axle 1045
Figure 6. 7. 8: Rudder post for twin screw ships 1046
Figure 6. 7. 9: Double arm shaft bracket 1047
Figure 6. 7. 10: Solepieces 1047
Figure 6. 7. 11: Rudder horn 1048
Figure 6. 7. 12: Propeller clearances 1048

PART

3

CHAPTER **6** **Aft End Structure**

SECTION **1** **General**

1. 1 Application

1. 1. 1 This Chapter applies to all types of ship covered by Pt 4 Ship Structures (Ship Types), except where specifically stated otherwise.

1. 1. 2 The requirements given are those specific to aft ends and relate to structure situated in the region aft of 0.3*L* from the after perpendicular.

1. 1. 3 Requirements for cargo space structure within this region not dealt with in this Chapter are to be as detailed in the relevant Chapter of Pt 4 Ship Structures (Ship Types) for the particular ship type.

1. 1. 4 The requirements in this Chapter are not applicable to Double Hull Oil Tankers or Bulk Carriers with a **CSR** notation. *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull).

1. 2 Structural configuration

1. 2. 1 The Rules provide for both longitudinal and transverse framing systems.

1. 2. 2 In the case of container ships and open type ships additional requirements may apply as detailed in Pt 4, Ch 8 Container Ships.

1. 3 Structural continuity

1. 3. 1 Suitable scarfing arrangements are to be made to ensure continuity of strength and the avoidance of abrupt structural changes.

1. 3. 2 Where longitudinal framing terminates and is replaced by a transverse system, adequate arrangements are to be made to avoid an abrupt changeover. Where a poop is fitted extending forward of 0.15*L* from the A.P., longitudinal framing at the upper deck and topsides is generally to be continued aft of the forward bulkhead of this superstructure. In bulk carriers and oil tankers (*See* Pt 3, Ch 6, 1.1 Application 1.1.4) the longitudinal framing at the upper deck is to be maintained over the cargo space region and continued over the aft end region.

1. 3. 3 In oil tankers (*See* Pt 3, Ch 6, 1.1 Application 1.1.4) with machinery aft, continuity of the longitudinal bulkheads is to be maintained as far as is practicable into the machinery space, and suitable taper brackets are to be fitted at their ends.

1. 3. 4 In bulk carriers (*See* Pt 3, Ch 6, 1.1 Application 1.1.4) with machinery aft, continuity of the topside tank and double bottom hopper tank structure is to be maintained over the cargo space region and as far as is practicable continued into the machinery space, and suitable taper brackets are to be arranged at their ends. Also a vertical taper bracket in line with the vertical strake of the topside tank is to be fitted at the forward side of the aft bulkhead of the cargo space region. Where the topside tank and double bottom hopper tank structures terminate at the cargo space aft bulkhead, the vertical strake of the topside tank is to be arranged with an integral taper bracket and continued

through the bulkhead into the machinery space for a distance of 0.2*B*, and the ends of the hopper and topside structures are to be arranged with suitable taper brackets. In addition, in way of the cargo space aft bulkhead, a girder or intercostal bulb plate stiffeners (fitted between and connected to the bulkhead vertical stiffeners), are to be arranged on the aft side in line with the sloped bulkheads of the topside and hopper tanks clear of the taper brackets.

1. 3. 5 In container or similar ships having continuous side tanks or double skin construction in way of the cargo spaces, the longitudinal bulkheads are to be continued as far aft as is practicable and are to be suitably tapered at their ends. Where, due to the ship's form, such bulkheads are stepped, suitable scarfing is to be arranged.

1. 4 Symbols and definitions

1. 4. 1 The following symbols and definitions are applicable to this Chapter unless otherwise stated:

L, B, D, T = *L, B, D, T* = as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1, Principal particulars

k_L, k = higher tensile steel factor as defined in Pt 3, Ch 2, 1.2, Steel

l = overall length of stiffening member, in metres, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3.3 Determination of span point

l_e = effective length of stiffening member, in metres, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3.3 Determination of span point

s = spacing of secondary stiffeners, in mm

t = thickness of plating, in mm

S = spacing, or mean spacing, of primary members, in metres

Z = section modulus of stiffening member, in cm^3, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3.2, Geometric properties of section

P = relative density (specific gravity) of liquid carried in a tank and is to be taken not less than 1.025

I = inertia of stiffening member, in cm^4, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3.2, Geometric properties of section.

1. 4. 2 For the purpose of this Chapter, the after perpendicular, A.P., is defined as the after limit of the Rule length *L*.

PART

3

CHAPTER 6 **Aft End Structure**

SECTION 2 **Deck structure**

2. 1 General

2. 1. 1 Where the upper deck is longitudinally framed outside the line of openings in the midship region, this system of framing is to be carried as far aft as possible. *See also* Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.3 Class notation and applicable Rules for CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers.

2. 2 Deck plating

2. 2. 1 The thickness of strength/weather deck plating is to comply with the requirements of Table 6. 2. 1: Strength/weather deck plating aft (excluding poop deck).

2. 2. 2 The thickness of lower deck plating is to comply with the requirements of Table 6. 2. 2: Lower deck plating aft.

2. 2. 3 The taper thickness of the strength deck stringer plate is to be increased by 20 per cent at the ends of a poop or bridge where the end bulkhead is situated forward of 0.25L from the A.P. No increase is required where the end bulkhead lies aft of 0.2L from the A.P. The increase at intermediate positions is to be determined by interpolation.

2. 2. 4 The deck plating thickness and supporting structure are to be suitably reinforced in way of deck machinery, and in way of cranes, masts or derrick posts.

2. 2. 5 Where long, wide hatchways are arranged at lower decks it may be necessary to increase the deck plating thickness to ensure effective support for side framing.

2. 3 Deck stiffening

2. 3. 1 The scantlings of strength/weather deck longitudinals are to comply with the requirements of Table 6. 2. 3: Strength/weather deck longitudinals aft.

2. 3. 2 The scantlings of cargo and accommodation deck longitudinals are to comply with the requirements given in Table 1. 4. 4: Cargo and accommodation deck longitudinals.

2. 3. 3 End connections of longitudinals to bulkheads are to provide adequate fixity, lateral support and so far as practicable, direct continuity of longitudinal strength.

2. 3. 4 The scantlings of weather deck beams are to comply with the midship requirements for the particular ship type.

2. 3. 5 The scantlings of lower deck beams are to comply with the requirements of Table 1. 4. 5: Strength/weather, cargo and accommodation deck beams in Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships.

2. 3. 6 End connections of beams are to be in accordance with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 10, 3 Secondary member end connections.

Table 6. 2. 1: Strength/weather deck plating aft (excluding poop deck)

Symbols	Location	Thickness, in mm
L, s, S, k, ρ as defined in Pt 3, Ch 6, 1.4 Symbols and definitions 1.4.1 $f = 1.1 - \frac{s}{2500S}$ but is to be taken not greater than 1.0	*(1)* Aft of $0.075L$ from the A.P.	$t = (5.5 + 0.02L)\sqrt{\frac{ks_1}{s_b}}$
h_4 = tank head, in metres, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 3, 5 Design loading s_b = standard frame spacing as follows:	*(2)* Between $0.075L$ and $0.15L$ from the A.P.	The greater of the following: a. $t = (5.5 + 0.02L)\sqrt{\frac{ks_1}{s_b}}$ b. the taper thickness, *See* Notes 1, 2 and 3 c. for oil tankers, the thickness is also to be in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 9, 4.3 Deck plating 4.3.3
Aft of $0.15L$ from the A.P.: $s_b = \left(510 + \frac{L}{0.6}\right)$ mm or 850 mm,	*(3)* Forward of $0.15L$ from the A.P.	The taper thickness, *See* Notes 1, 2 and 3, or as (2)(c) whichever is the greater
whichever is the lesser $s_1 = s$, but is to be taken not less than s_b	*(4)* Inside poop extending forward of $0.15L$	As for a lower deck, *See* Note 4
	(5) In way of the crown of a tank	$t = 0.004sf\sqrt{\frac{rkh_4}{1.025}} + 3.5$ or (1) to (4) as applicable, whichever is the greater but not less than 7.5 mm where $L \geq 90$ m, or 6.5 mm where $L < 90$ m

Note *1*. The taper thickness is to be determined from Table 3. 2. 1: Taper requirements for hull envelope in Chapter 3.

Note *2*. For taper area requirements, *See* Table 3. 2. 1: Taper requirements for hull envelope in Chapter 3.

Note *3*. For thickness of upper deck plating in way of the cargo tanks of oil tankers or ore carriers, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 9 Double Hull Oil Tankers, Pt 4, Ch 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers or Pt 4, Ch 11 Ore Carriers.

Note *4*. The exposed weather deck taper thickness is to extend into a poop or bridge for at least one-third of the breadth of the ship from the superstructure end bulkhead.

Note *5*. The taper requirements from Table 3. 2. 1: Taper requirements for hull envelope in Pt 3, Ch 3 Structural Designdo not apply to container ships or open ship types, *See* Pt 3, Ch 4, 2.3 Open type ships, where the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 8, 3.2 Longitudinal strength are applicable, nor to fast cargo ships where the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 3 Longitudinal strength are applicable. *See also* Pt 3, Ch 4, 5 Hull bending strength for hull section modulus requirement away from the midship area.

Table 6. 2. 2: Lower deck plating aft

Symbols	Location	Thickness, in mm
L, s, S, k, ρ as defined in Pt 3, Ch 6, 1.4 Symbols and definitions 1.4.1	*(1)* Aft of $0.075L$ from the A.P.	$t = 0.01s_1\sqrt{k}$ but not less than 6.5 mm

b = breadth of increased plating, in mm f = $f = 1.1 - \frac{s}{2500S}$ but is to be taken not greater than 1.0 h_4 = tank head, in metres, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 3, 5 Design loading K_2 = 2.5 mm at bottom of tank or 3.5 mm at crown of tank s_1 = s, but is to be taken not less than $\left(470 + \frac{L_1}{0.6}\right)$ mm	*(2)* Forward of $0.075L$ from the A.P., inside line of openings	$t = 0.01 s_1 \sqrt{k}$ but not less than 6.5 mm
	(3) Forward of $0.075L$ from the A.P., outside line of openings	As determined by a taper line from the midship thickness to the end thickness given by (1)
	(4) In way of the crown or bottom of a tank	$t = 0.004sf\sqrt{\frac{rkh_4}{1.025}} + K_2$ or (1), (2) or (3) as applicable, whichever is the greater but not less than 7.5 mm where $L \geq 90$ m, or 6.5 mm where $L < 90$ m
A_f = girder face area, in cm^2 L_1 = L, but need not be taken greater than 190 mm	*(5)* Plating forming upper flange of underdeck girders	Clear of cargo hatches $t = \sqrt{\frac{A_f}{1.8k}}$ In way of hatch side girders $t = 1.1\sqrt{\frac{A_f}{1.8k}}$
Note Where the deck loading exceeds 43.2 kN/m^2, the thickness of plating will be specially considered. This is equivalent to a 'tween deck height of 6.1 m in association with the standard stowage rate of 1.39 m^3/tonne.		Minimum b = 760 mm breadth

Table 6. 2. 3: Strength/weather deck longitudinals aft

ocation	Modulus, in cm^3	Inertia, in cm^4
(1) Aft of $0.075L$ from the A.P.	The greater of the following: $Z = sk(400h_1 + 0.005(l_e L_1)^2) \times 10^{-4}$ $Z = 0.0074skh_1 l^2 e$	—
(2) Forward of $0.075L$ from the A.P., inside line of openings	As (1)	—
(3) Forward of $0.075L$ from the A.P., outside line of openings	As determined from Table 3. 2. 1: Taper requirements for hull envelope in Chapter 3, *See* Note 1 For oil tankers (*See* Pt 3, Ch 6, 1.1 Application 1.1.4) and dry cargo ships the end modulus for taper at $0.075L$ from the A.P. is to be derived from Table 5. 2. 3: Strength/weather deck longitudinals forward item (2)	—

(4) In way of the crown of a tank	$Z = \frac{0.0113rskh_4l_e^2}{b}$ or as (1) to (3) as applicable, whichever is the greater	$l = \frac{2.3}{k} l_e Z$
Symbols		
L, s, k_L, k, ρ as defined in Pt 3, Ch 6, 1.4 Symbols and definitions 1.4.1		
b = 1.4 for rolled or built sections = 1.6 for flat bars		
d_w = web depth of longitudinal, in mm h_1 = weather head, in metres, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 3, 5 Design loading h_4 = tank head, in metres, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 3, 5 Design loading l_e = as defined in Pt 3, Ch 6, 1.4 Symbols and definitions 1.4.1, but is to be taken not less than 1.5 m L_1 = L but need not be taken greater than 190 m		
Note *1.* For taper area requirements, *See* Table 3. 2. 1: Taper requirements for hull envelope in Chapter 3. **Note** *2.* Where weather decks are intended to carry deck cargo and the loading is in excess of 8.5 kN/m^2 the scantlings of longitudinals are also to comply with the requirements for location (1) in Table 1. 4. 4: Cargo and accommodation deck longitudinals using the equivalent design head, for specified cargo loadings, for weather decks given in Table 3. 5. 1: Design heads and permissible cargo loadings. **Note** *3.* For the scantlings of deck longitudinals aft in way of the cargo tanks of oil tankers (*See* Pt 3, Ch 6, 1.1 Application 1.1.4) or ore carriers, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 9 Double Hull Oil Tankers, Pt 4, Ch 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers or Pt 4, Ch 11 Ore Carriers as applicable. **Note** *4.* The thickness of flat bar longitudinals, situated outside the line of openings is to be not less than the following: **Note** *(a)* $t = \frac{d_w}{18\sqrt{k_L}} mm$ mm where longitudinal continuous through bulkhead **Note** *(b)* $t = \frac{d_w}{15\sqrt{k_L}} mm$ mm where longitudinal cut at bulkhead **Note** *5.* The web depth of longitudinal, d_w, to be not less than 60 mm. **Note** *6.* The taper requirements from Table 3. 2. 1: Taper requirements for hull envelope in Pt 3, Ch 3 Structural Designdo not apply to container ships or open ship types, *See* Pt 3, Ch 4, 2.3 Open type ships, where the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 8, 3.2 Longitudinal strength are applicable, nor to fast cargo ships where the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 3 Longitudinal strength are applicable. *See also* Pt 3, Ch 4, 5 Hull bending strength for hull section modulus requirement away from the midship area.		

2. 4 Deck supporting structure

2. 4. 1 The arrangements and scantlings of supporting structure are generally to be in accordance with the requirements given in Pt 4, Ch 1, 4 Deck structure except as required by Pt 3, Ch 6, 2.4 Deck supporting structure 2.4.2 to Pt 3, Ch 6, 2.4 Deck supporting structure 2.4.4.

2. 4. 2 At upper and lower decks above the after peak, deep beams are generally to be fitted in way of web frames. Deck girders are generally to be spaced not more than 3.0 m apart.

2. 4. 3 Primary structure in the topside tanks of bulk carriers is to comply with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 7, 7 Topside tank structure.

2. 4. 4 Primary structure in the cargo tanks of oil tankers, or ore carriers, is to be determined from Pt 4, Ch 9 Double Hull Oil Tankers, Pt 4, Ch 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers or Pt 4, Ch 11 Ore Carriers, as applicable.

2. 5 Deck openings

2. 5. 1 In dry cargo ships, the requirements for deck openings given in Pt 4, Ch 1, 4 Deck structure are generally applicable throughout the aft region except that aft of 0.25*L* from the A.P.:

a. The radii or dimensions of the corners of main cargo hatchway openings of the strength deck are to be in accordance with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 4.5 Deck openings. The thickness of the insert plates, where required, is not to be less than 20 per cent greater than the adjacent deck thickness outside the line of openings, with a minimum increase of 3 mm.

b. Insert plates will be required at lower decks in way of any rapid change in hull form to compensate for loss of deck cross-sectional area. Otherwise, insert plates will not normally be required.

c. Compensation and edge reinforcement for openings outside the line of main hatchways will be considered, bearing in mind their position, the deck arrangements and the type of ship concerned.

2. 5. 2 For deck openings in way of cargo tanks in oil tankers and ore carriers, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 9 Double Hull Oil Tankers, Pt 4, Ch 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers or Pt 4, Ch 11 Ore Carriers, as applicable. For main cargo hatchway openings on bulk carriers and container ships, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 7 Bulk Carriers and Pt 4, Ch 8 Container Ships, as applicable.

PART

3

CHAPTER **6** **Aft End Structure**

SECTION **3** **Shell envelope plating**

3. 1 General

3. 1. 1 Where the shell is longitudinally framed in the midship region, this system of framing is to be carried as far aft as practicable.

3. 2 Keel

3. 2. 1 The scantlings of bar keels at the aft end are to be the same as in the midship region as required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 5 Shell envelope plating.

3. 2. 2 The thickness and width of plate keels in the aft region are to be the same as required in the midship region for the particular type of ship concerned, *See* Pt 4 Ship Structures (Ship Types).

3. 3 Bottom shell and bilge

3. 3. 1 The thickness of bottom shell and bilge plating in the aft region is to comply with the requirements of Table 6. 3. 1: Shell plating aft .

3. 3. 2 Where the bottom is transversely framed and there are large flat areas of shell plating, the buckling stability of the plating will be specially considered, and increased plate thickness or additional stiffening may be required, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 6, 5.2 Single bottoms − Transverse framing 5.2.3.

3. 3. 3 Where longitudinals are omitted in way of radiused bilge plating amidships, the plating thickness aft will be considered in relation to the support derived from the hull form and internal stiffening arrangements.

3. 4 Side shell and sheerstrake

3. 4. 1 The thickness of side shell and sheerstrake plating in the aft region is to be not less than the values given in Table 6. 3. 1: Shell plating aft, but may be required to be increased locally on account of high shear forces, in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 4, 6.5, Permissible still water shear force.

3. 4. 2 Increased shell plate thickness may be required where the panting stringers required by Pt 3, Ch 6, 4.4 Panting stringers in way of transverse framing 4.4.1 are omitted. The extent and amount of the increase will be specially considered.

3. 4. 3 The thickness of shell plating is to be increased locally in way of the sternframe, propeller brackets or rudder horn. The increased plate thickness is to be not less than 50 per cent greater than the basic shell end thickness.

3. 4. 4 The sheerstrake thickness is to be increased by 20 per cent at the ends of a bridge superstructure extending out to the ship's side, irrespective of position. Similar strengthening is to be fitted in way of the end of a poop if this occurs at a position forward of 0.25*L* from the A.P. No increase is

required if the poop end bulkhead lies aft of 0.2L from the A.P. The increase at intermediate positions of end bulkhead is to be obtained by interpolation.

3. 5 Shell openings

3. 5. 1 In general, compensation will not be required for holes in the sheerstrake which are clear of the gunwale, or for any deck openings situated outside the line of main hatchways and whose depth does not exceed 20 per cent of the depth of the sheerstrake or 380 mm, whichever is the lesser. Openings are not to be cut in a rounded gunwale. Cargo door openings are to have well rounded corners, and the proposed compensation for the door openings will be individually considered.

Table 6. 3. 1: Shell plating aft

Location	Thickness, in mm	NOTES
(1) Bottom shell and bilge, *See* Notes 4 and 5:		**Note** *1.* For ships where $L \leq 70$ m this thickness may be reduced by 1 mm, but it is to be not less than 6 mm. **Note** *2.* The taper thickness is to be determined from Table 3. 2. 1: Taper requirements for hull envelope, *See* Note 7. **Note** *3.* For thickness of shell plating in way of the cargo tanks of oil tankers or ore carriers, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 9 Double Hull Oil Tankers, Pt 4, Ch 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers or Pt 4, Ch 11 Ore Carriers, as applicable. **Note** *4.* In offshore supply ships the thickness of side shell is to be not less than 9 mm. **Note** *5.* For trawlers and fishing vessels *See* Pt 4, Ch 6, 5 Shell envelope plating. **Note** *6.* For oil tankers the thickness is also to be in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 9, 4.3 Deck plating 4.3.3 **Note** *7.* The taper requirements from Table 3. 2. 1: Taper requirements for hull envelope in Pt 3, Ch 3 Structural Design do not apply to container ships or open ship types, *See* Pt 3, Ch 4, 2.3 Open type ships, where the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 8, 3.2 Longitudinal strength are applicable, nor to fast cargo ships where the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 3 Longitudinal strength are applicable. *See also* Pt 3, Ch 4, 5 Hull bending strength for hull section modulus requirement away from the midship area.
(a) Aft of 0.075L from the A.P.	$t = (6.5 + 0.033L)f_2\sqrt{\frac{ks_1}{s_b}}$ (*See* Note 1)	
(b) Between 0.075L and 0.15L from the A.P., *See* Note 6	As (1)(a) or the taper thickness, whichever is the greater, *See* Note 2	
(c) Forward of 0.15L from the A.P., *See* Note 6	The taper thickness, *See* Note 2	
(2) Side shell, *See* Notes 4 and 5:		
(a) Aft of 0.075L from the A.P.	$t = (6.5 + 0.033L)f_2\sqrt{\frac{ks_1}{s_b}}$ (*See* Note 1)	
(b) Between 0.075L and 0.15L from the A.P., *See also* Pt 3, Ch 6, 3.4 Side shell and sheerstrake 3.4.2	As (2)(a) or the taper thickness, whichever is the greater, *See* Note 2	
(c) Forward of 0.15L from the A.P.	The taper thickness, *See* Note 2	
(3) Sheerstrake, *See* Notes 4 and 5		
(a) Aft of 0.075L from the A.P.:		
where $\frac{T}{D} > 0.7$	As (2)(a) for side shell	
where $\frac{T}{D} \leq 0.7$	As (4) for a poop	
(b) Between 0.075L and 0.15L from the A.P., *See* Note 6	As (3)(a) or as determined from Table 3. 2. 1: Taper requirements for hull envelope	

(c) Forward of $0.15L$ from the A.P., *See* Note 6	The taper thickness, *See* Note 2	
(4) Poop, *See* Notes 4 and 5	$t = (6.5 + 0.017L)f_2\sqrt{\frac{ks_1}{s_b}}$	

Symbols

L, B, D, T, s, k as defined in Pt 3, Ch 6, 1.4 Symbols and definitions 1.4.1

f_2 = factor to be taken as: این مطالب درون rull نیست

$f_2 = \left(\frac{15}{L/T}\right)^{0.2}$ but need not be taken greater than 1. L/T is not to be taken greater than 25.

s_1 = s but to be taken as not less than s_b

s_b = standard frame spacing, in mm, as follows:

Region	Bottom shell s_b		Side shell s_b
Aft of $0.05L$ from the A.P.	$\left(470 + \frac{L}{0.6}\right)$ or 600*	$\left(470 + \frac{L}{0.6}\right)$ or 600*	below the deck next above the load waterline
		or $\left(470 + \frac{L}{0.6}\right)$ or 700*	above the deck next above the load waterline
Between $0.05L$ and $0.15L$ from the A.P.	$\left(510 + \frac{L}{0.6}\right)$ or 850*	$\left(510 + \frac{L}{0.6}\right)$ or 850*	

*whichever is the lesser

3. 5. 2 Sea inlet and other openings are to have well rounded corners and so far as possible, should be kept clear of the bilge radius. The thickness of sea inlet box plating is generally to be the same as the adjacent shell. It is not, however, to be less than 12.5 mm, and need not exceed 25 mm.

PART

3

CHAPTER **6** **Aft End Structure**

SECTION **4** **Shell envelope framing**

4. 1 General

4. 1. 1 Requirements are given in this Section for both longitudinal and transverse framing systems. Where longitudinal framing is adopted in the midship region, it is to be carried as far aft as practicable.

4. 1. 2 End connections of longitudinals to bulkheads are to provide adequate fixity, lateral support and, so far as practicable, direct continuity of longitudinal strength, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 10, 3 Secondary member end connections. Where L exceeds 215 m, the bottom longitudinals are to be continuous in way of both watertight and non-watertight floors, but alternative arrangements will be considered. Higher tensile steel longitudinals within 10 per cent of the ship's depth at the bottom and deck are to be continuous irrespective of the ship length.

4. 1. 3 Stiffeners and brackets on side transverses, where fitted on one side and connected to higher tensile steel longitudinals between the base line and 0.8D above the base line, are to have their heels well radiused to reduce stress concentrations. Where a symmetrical arrangement is fitted, i.e. bracket or stiffening on both sides, and it is connected to higher tensile steel longitudinals, the toes of the stiffeners or brackets are to be well radiused. Alternative arrangements will be considered if supported by appropriate direct calculations.

4. 1. 4 Where higher tensile steel side longitudinals pass through transverse bulkheads in the cargo area, well radiused brackets of the same material are to be fitted on both the fore and aft side of the connection between the upper turn of bilge and 0.8D above the base line. Particular attention is to be given to ensuring the alignment of these brackets. Alternative arrangements will be considered if supported by appropriate direct calculations.

4. 1. 5 For ships intended to load or unload while aground, *See* Pt 3, Ch 9, 7 Bottom strengthening for loading and unloading aground.

4. 2 Shell longitudinals

4. 2. 1 The scantlings of bottom and side shell longitudinals in the aft region are to comply with the requirements given in Table 6. 4. 1: Shell framing (longitudinal) aft.

4. 3 Shell framing

4. 3. 1 The scantlings of side frames in the aft region are to comply with the requirements given in Table 6. 4. 2: Shell framing (transverse) aft.

Table 6. 4. 1: Shell framing (longitudinal) aft

Location	Modulus, in cm^3

(1) Side longitudinals in poop	$Z = 0.0065\text{skl}e^2(0.6 + 0.167D_2)$
(2) Side longitudinals in way of dry spaces including double skin construction:	
(a) Aft of the after peak bulkhead	$Z = 0.0085skh_{Tl}l_e^2F_s$ but not to be less than as required by (1)
(b) Between the after peak bulkhead and $0.2L$ from the A.P.	$Z = 0.007skh_{Tl}l_e^2F_s$ or as required in the midship region for the particular type of ship concerned, whichever is the greater
(c) Forward of $0.2L$ from the A.P.	As required in the midship region for the particular type of ship concerned
(3) Side longitudinals in way of double skin tanks or deep tanks	The greater of the following: *(a)* Z as from (2) *(b)* As required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 9 Bulkheads for deep tanks
(4) Bottom and bilge longitudinals	As required in the midship region for the particular type of ship concerned

Symbols

L, D, T, s, k, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 6, 1.4 Symbols and definitions 1.4.1

l_e as defined in Pt 3, Ch 6, 1.4 Symbols and definitions 1.4.1, but is to be taken not less than 1.5m

D_2=D_1 but need not be taken greater than 20 m

L_1=L but need not be taken greater than 190 m

F_s is a fatigue factor to be taken as follows:

(a) For built sections and rolled angle bars

$F_s = \frac{1.1}{k}\left[1 - \frac{2b_{f1}}{b_f}(1-k)\right]$ at $0.6D_1$ above the base line

= 1.0 at D_1 and above, and F_{sb} at the base line intermediate values by linear interpolation

F_{sb} is a fatigue factor for bottom longitudinals

$=0.5(1 + F_s \text{ at } 0.6D_1)$

(b) For flat bars and bulb plates $\frac{b_{f1}}{b_f}$ may be taken as 0.5

where

b_{f1}=the minimum distance, in mm, from the edge of the face plate of the side longitudinal under consideration to the centre of the web plate, *See* Figure 9. 5. 1: Definition of b f and b f1

b_f = the width of the face plate, in mm, of the side longitudinal under consideration, *See* Figure 9. 5. 1: Definition of b f and b f1

D_1=D but need not exceed $T + H_b$, in metres, where H_b is the minimum bow height, in metres, obtained from Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1 Principal particulars 6.1.11
T_1=T but not to be taken less than $0.65D_1$
h_{T1}=$f_w C_w \left(1 - \frac{h_6}{D_1 - T}\right) F_\lambda$, in metres, for longitudinals above the waterline at draught T_1 where $f_w \left(1 - \frac{h_6}{D_1 - T_1}\right)$ is not to be less than 0.7 =$\left[h_6 + f_w C_w \left(1 - \frac{h_6}{2T_1}\right)\right] F_\lambda$, in metres, for longitudinals below the waterline at draught T_1
where f_w=1.0 at 0.2L from A.P. and 1.32 at and aft of aft peak bulkhead. Intermediate positions by interpolation.
h_6=vertical distance, in metres, from the waterline at draught T_1, to the longitudinal under consideration
C_w = a wave head, in metres = $7.71 \times 10^{-2} L e^{-0.0044\,L}$
where e=base of natural logarithm 2.7183
$F_\lambda = 1.0$ for$L \leq 200$ m $= [1.0 + 0.0023(L - 200)]$ for $L > 200$ m
Note *1.* Where struts are fitted midway between transverses in double skin construction, the modulus of the side longitudinals may be reduced by 50k per cent from that obtained for locations (2) and (3) as applicable.
Note *2.* For modulus and area of side longitudinals in way of a machinery space, *See* Pt 3, Ch 7, 3.1 Secondary stiffening.

Table 6. 4. 2: Shell framing (transverse) aft

Location	Modulus, in cm^3	Inertia, in cm^4
(1) Frames in after peak spaces and lower 'tween decks over	$Z = 1.85skTD_2S_1 \times 10^{-3}$	$I = \frac{3.2}{k} S_1 Z$
(2) Frames in upper 'tween decks and poops aft of the after peak bulkhead, *See* Notes 1, 2 and 6	The greater of the following: $Z = Cskh_{T1}H^2 \times 10^{-3}$ $Z = 9.1skD_1 \times 10^{-3}$	$I = \frac{3.2}{k} HZ$
(3) Main and 'tween deck frames (including poop) between the after peak bulkhead and 0.2L from the A.P., *See* Notes 1, 2 and 3	The greater of the following: $Z = Cskh_{T1}H^2 \times 10^{-3}$ $Z = 9.1skD_1 \times 10^{-3}$	$I = \frac{3.2}{k} HZ$
(4) Main and 'tween deck frames elsewhere, *See* Notes 1, 2 and 3	As required in the midship region for the particular type of ship concerned	
(5) Panting stringers, *See* Note 4	Web depth, d_w, same depth as frames Web thickness, t=t_W as in Pt 3, Ch 10, 4.4 Geometric properties and proportions Face area, $A = kS_2(H + 1)$cm^2	
Symbols		

L, D, T, s, k as defined in Pt 3, Ch 6, 1.4 Symbols and definitions 1.4.1
D_1=D but need not exceed $T+H_b$, in metres, where H_b is the minimum bow height, in metres, obtained from Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1 Principal particulars 6.1.11
D_2=D_1 but is to be taken not greater than 16 m nor less than 6 m
H=H_{MF} or H_{TF} as applicable, *See* Note 3
H_{MF}=vertical framing depth, in metres, of main frames as shown in Figure 6. 4. 1: Framing depths but is not to be taken less than 3.5 m, *See* Note 5
H_{TF}=vertical framing depth, in metres, of 'tween deck frames as shown in Figure 6. 4. 1: Framing depths, but is not to be taken less than 2.5 m
S_1=vertical spacing of peak stringers or height of lower 'tween deck above the peak, in metres, as applicable
S_2=vertical spacing of panting stringers, in metres
C=end connection factor =3.4 where two Rule standard brackets fitted =3.4 $(1.8-0.8\,(l_a/l))$ where one Rule standard bracket and one reduced bracket fitted =3.4 $(2.15-1.15(l_{amean}/l))$ where two reduced brackets fitted =6.1 where one Rule standard bracket fitted =6.1 $(1.2-0.2(l_a/l))$where one reduced bracket fitted =7.3 where no brackets fitted
The requirements for frames where brackets larger than Rule standard are fitted will be specially considered
l=length, in mm, as derived from Pt 3, Ch 10, 3.4 Scantlings of end brackets 3.4.1
l_a =equivalent arm length, in mm, as derived from Pt 3, Ch 10, 3.4 Scantlings of end brackets 3.4.1
l_{amean} =mean equivalent arm length, in mm, for both brackets
T_1=T but not to be taken less than $0.65D_1$
h_{T1}=head, in metres, at mid-length of H =$f_w C_w \left(1-\frac{h_6}{D_1-T}\right) F_\lambda$, in metres for frames where the mid-length of frame is above the waterline, at draught T_1 $f_w \left(1-\frac{h_6}{D_1-T_1}\right)$ is not to be taken less than 0.7 =$\left[h_6+f_w C_w \left(1-\frac{h_6}{2T_1}\right)\right] F_\lambda$, in metres for frames where the mid-length of frame is below the waterline at draught T_1
where f_W=1.0 at 0.2L from A.P. and 1.32 at and aft of aft peak bulkhead Intermediate positions by interpolation.
h_6= vertical distance in metres from the waterline at draught T_1 to the mid-length of H
$F_\lambda = 1.0$ for $L \leq 200$ m =$[1.0+0.0023(L-200)]$ for $L > 200$ m
C_w = a wave head in metres $= 7.71 \times 10^{-2} Le^{-0.0044L}$

where e=base of natural logarithm 2.7183

Note *1.* In fishing vessels the modulus of main and 'tween deck frames need not be greater than 80% of that given in (2).

Note *2.* In offshore supply ships the moduli of main and 'tween deck frames are to be 25 % greater than those given in (2), (3) and (4).

Note *3.* Where frames are inclined at more than 15° to the vertical, H_{MF} or H_{TF} is to be measured along a chord between span points of the frame.

Note *4.* Panting stringers are not required in tugs less than 46 m in length, *See* Pt 4, Ch 3, 4 Panting and strengthening of bottom forward.

Note *5.* Where the frames are supported by fully effective horizontal stringers, these may be considered as decks for the purpose of determining H_{MF}.

Note *6.* Except for main frames the modulus for these members need not exceed that derived from (1) using H_{TF} in place of S_1.

4. 3. 2 The scantlings of main frames are normally to be based on Rule standard brackets at top and bottom, whilst the scantlings of 'tween deck frames are normally to be based on a Rule standard bracket at the top only.

4. 3. 3 End connections of transverse main and 'tween deck frames are to be in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 10, 3 Secondary member end connections. For bulk carriers (*See* Pt 3, Ch 6, 1.1 Application 1.1.4), the end connections of main frames in cargo holds are to be in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 7, 6.2 Transverse stiffening 6.2.5 to Pt 4, Ch 7, 6.2 Transverse stiffening 6.2.12.

4. 4 Panting stringers in way of transverse framing

4. 4. 1 In deep 'tween decks above the after peak space, panting stringers having scantlings as given in Table 6. 4. 2: Shell framing (transverse) aft or increased shell plate thickness may be required, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 6, 3.4 Side shell and sheerstrake 3.4.2.

Figure 6. 4. 1: Framing depths

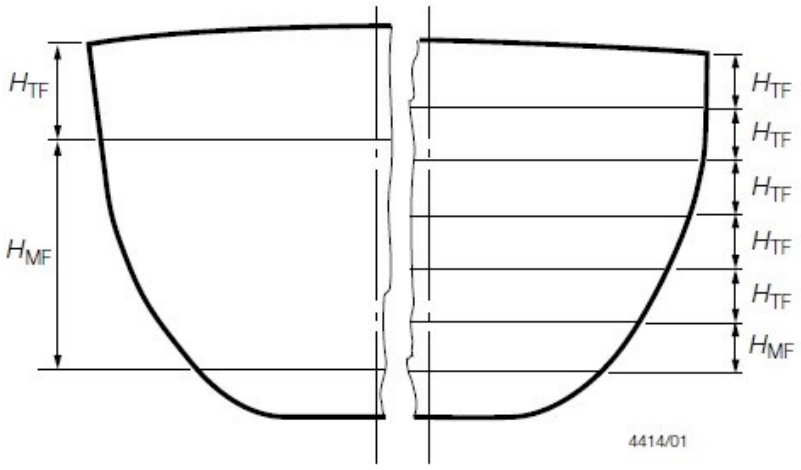
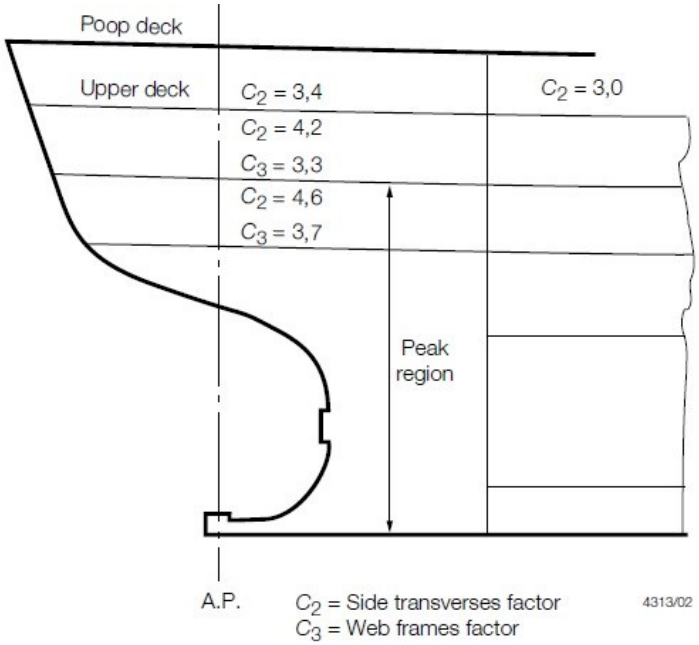


Figure 6. 4. 2: Framing factors



4. 5 Primary structure at sides

4. 5. 1 Where the 'tween decks above an after peak space are transversely framed, web frames are to be fitted. Their spacing is generally not to exceed the values given in Table 6. 4. 3: Spacing of side transverses and web frames aft, and their scantlings are to be determined from Table 6. 4. 4: Primary structure aft.

4. 5. 2 Where longitudinal framing is arranged, the spacing of transverses is generally not to exceed the values given in Table 6. 4. 3: Spacing of side transverses and web frames aft, and their scantlings are to be determined from Table 6. 4. 4: Primary structure aft.

4. 5. 3 Where the shape of the after sections is such that there are large sloped flat areas, particularly in the vicinity of the propellers, additional primary supports for the secondary stiffening may be required. Their extent and scantlings will be specially considered.

4. 5. 4 The web thickness, stiffening arrangements and connections of primary supporting members are to be in accordance with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 10, 4 Construction details for primary members.

Table 6. 4. 3: Spacing of side transverses and web frames aft

Location	Maximum spacing	
	Web frames in association with transverse framing system	Side transverses in association with longitudinal framing system
(1) Aft of the after peak bulkhead	4 frame spaces	2.5 m where $L \leq 100$ m 3.5 m where $L \geq 300$ m Intermediate values by interpolation

(2) Elsewhere in way of dry cargo spaces or deep tanks, *See* Note	—	3.8 m where $L \leq 100$ m $(0.006L+3.2)$ m where $L>100$ m
(3) In way of cargo tanks of oil tankers, chemical tankers or ore or oil carriers	—	3.6 m where $L \leq 180$ m $0.02L$ where $L > 180$ m
Note For the maximum spacing of transverses in dredgers, *See* Pt 4, Ch 12, 5 Shell envelope framing.		

Table 6. 4. 4: Primary structure aft

Item and location	Modulus, in cm^3	Inertia, in cm^4
Longitudinal framing system		
(1) Side transverses in dry spaces aft of the after peak bulkhead, *See* Note 4: *(a)* Lower space *(b)* 'Tween deck	 $Z = 10kSh_{T1}{l_e}^2$ $Z = C_2kSTH_{TF}\sqrt{D}$	—
(2) Side transverses in tanks aft of the after peak bulkhead, *See* Note 4: *(a)* Lower space *(b)* 'Tween decks	 $Z = 11.7\rho kSh_4{l_e}^2$ $Z = 14.1\rho kSh_4{l_e}^2$ or as (1) above, whichever is the greater	$I=\frac{2.5}{k}l_eZ$
(3) Side transverses in dry spaces and deep tanks forward of the after peak bulkhead	As in Pt 4, Ch 1, 6 Shell envelope framing, *See* Notes 1 and 2	
Transverse framing system		
(4) Side stringers supported by webs in after peak dry space, *See* Note 3	$Z = 7.75kSh_{T1}{l_e}^2$	—
(5) Side stringers supported by webs in after peak tank, *See* Note 3	$Z = 11.7\rho kSh_4{l_e}^2$ or as (4) above, whichever is the greater	$I=\frac{2.5}{k}l_eZ$
(6) Web frames supporting side stringers in after peak, *See* Note 3	Z is to be determined from calculations based on the following assumptions: Fixed ends Point loadings from stringers Head h_4 or h_{T1} as applicable Bending stress $\frac{93.2}{k}$ N/mm² Shear stress $\frac{83.4}{k}$ N/mm²	In deep tanks: $I=\frac{2.5}{k}l_eZ$

*(7)*Web frames in 'tween decks aft of the after peak bulkhead not supporting side stringers	$Z = C_3 k S T H_{TF} \sqrt{D}$	—
*(8)*Side stringers and web frames in dry spaces and deep tanks forward of the after peak bulkhead	As in Pt 4, Ch 1, 6 Shell envelope framing, *See* Notes 1 and 2	

Symbols

D, *T*, *S*, l_e, *k*, ρ as defined in Pt 3, Ch 6, 1.4 Symbols and definitions 1.4.1

C_2, C_3=factors obtained from Figure 6. 4. 2: Framing factors

h_4=tank head, in metres, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 3, 5 Design loading

h_{T1}=head, in metres, at mid-length of span

$=f_w C_w \left(1 - \frac{h_6}{D_1 - T_1}\right) F_\lambda$, in metres where the mid-length of span is above the waterline at draught T_1

where $f_w \left(1 - \frac{h_6}{D_1 - T_1}\right)$ is not to be taken less than 0.7

$=\left[h_6 + f_w C_w \left(1 - \frac{h_6}{2T_1}\right)\right] F_\lambda$, in metres where the mid-length of span is below the waterline at draught T_1

where

f_W=1.0 at 0.2*L* from A.P. and 1.32 at and aft of aft peak bulkhead. Intermediate positions by interpolation

h_6=vertical distance, in metres, from the waterline at draught T_1 to the mid-length of span

$F_\lambda = 1.0$ for $L \leq 200$ m

$= [1.0 + 0.023 (L - 200)]$ for $L > 200$ m

C_W=a wave head, in metres

$= 7.71 \times 10^{-2} L e^{-0.0044L}$

=where e=base of natural logarithms 2.7183

D_1=*D* but need not be taken greater than $T+H_b$, in metres, where H_b is the minimum bow height, in metres, obtained fromPt 3, Ch 1, 6.1 Principal particulars 6.1.11

T_1=*T* but not to be taken less than $0.65D_1$

H_{TF}=vertical height of `tween decks, in metres, as shown in Figure 6. 4. 1: Framing depths

Note *1.* In way of the cargo tanks or fuel oil tanks of oil tankers or ore carriers, the scantlings of primary structure are to comply with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 9 Double Hull Oil Tankers, Pt 4, Ch 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers or Pt 4, Ch 11 Ore Carriers, as appropriate.

Note *2.* For bulk carriers, *See* Pt 4, Ch 7, 6 Shell envelope framing

Note *3.* For stringers and webs in after peaks, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 6, 6.2 Side structure – Transverse framing.

Note *4.* The web depth of side transverses aft of the after peak bulkhead is to be not less than 2.5 times the depth of the longitudinals supported. The web depth of stringers is to be not less than 2.2 times the depth of frames supported.

PART

3

CHAPTER 6 **Aft End Structure**

SECTION 5 **Single and double bottom structure**

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 For dry cargo ships exceeding 120 m in length, and for all ships which are strengthened for heavy cargoes, longitudinal framing is, in general, to be adopted, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.3 Class notation and applicable Rules for CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers.

5. 1. 2 For ships having the notation `strengthened for heavy cargoes', the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 7, 8 Double bottom structure are also to be complied with, as applicable.

5. 1. 3 For ships intended to load or unload while aground, *See* Pt 3, Ch 9, 7 Bottom strengthening for loading and unloading aground.

5. 1. 4 Provision is to be made for the free passage of water and/or air from all parts of single or double bottoms to the bilge or tank suctions, account being taken of the pumping rates required.

5. 1. 5 For passenger ships, *See* Pt 4, Ch 2, 6 Double bottom.

5. 2 Single bottoms – Transverse framing

5. 2. 1 In after peak spaces, floors are to be arranged at every frame. For details and scantlings, *See* Pt 3, Ch 6, 6.1 Bottom structure.

5. 2. 2 In way of dry cargo spaces aft, the arrangement and scantlings of transversely framed single bottoms are to be generally as required in the midship region, as given in Pt 4, Ch 1, 7 Single bottom structure, except that the thickness of the centreline girder may be tapered from the midship thickness at $0.3L$ from the A.P. to $t = \left(\sqrt{Lk} + 0.5\right)$mm or 6 mm, whichever is the greater, at $0.075L$ from the A.P. In ships having considerable rise of floor towards the aft end, the depth of the floors may be required to be increased.

5. 2. 3 Where the shape of the after sections is such that there are large flat areas of shell plating, additional stiffening and/or increased shell plate thickness may be required, *See* Pt 3, Ch 6, 3.3 Bottom shell and bilge. The extent of this stiffening will be specially considered.

5. 3 Single bottoms – Longitudinal framing

5. 3. 1 The scantlings and arrangement of longitudinally framed single bottoms in way of dry cargo spaces will be specially considered.

5. 4 Double bottoms

5. 4. 1 The minimum depth of centre girder aft is generally to be the same as that required in the midship region by Pt 4 Ship Structures (Ship Types) for the particular type of ship concerned, but in ships

with considerable rise of floor a greater depth may be required at the aft end to provide adequate access throughout the double bottom tank.

5. 4. 2 Where the height of the double bottom varies, this variation is generally to be made gradual by sloping the inner bottom over an adequate longitudinal extent. Knuckles in the plating are to be arranged close to plate floors. Otherwise, suitable scarfing arrangements are to be made.

5. 4. 3 For dry cargo ships, the arrangement and scantlings of girders, floors, inner bottom plating and inner bottom stiffening in the aft end region are to be determined from Pt 4, Ch 1, 8 Double bottom structure.

5. 4. 4 For double bottom construction in way of the cargo tanks of oil tankers or ore carriers, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 9 Double Hull Oil Tankers, Pt 4, Ch 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers or Pt 4, Ch 11 Ore Carriers, as appropriate.

PART

3

CHAPTER **6** **Aft End Structure**

SECTION **6** **After peak structure**

6. 1 Bottom structure

6. 1. 1 Floors are to be arranged at every frame space and are to be carried to a suitable height, and at least to above the sterntube, where fitted. They are to have a thickness as determined from Table 6. 6. 1: After peak structure and are to be adequately stiffened. In way of a propeller post, rudder post or rudder horn, the floors are generally to be carried to the top of the space and are to be increased in thickness. The extent and amount of the increase will be specially considered, account being taken of the arrangements proposed.

6. 2 Side structure – Transverse framing

6. 2. 1 Above the floors, transverse side framing is to be supported by one of the following arrangements:

a. Side stringers spaced not more than 2.5 m apart and supported by web frames. The upper ends of the web frames are to be supported under the tank top by suitable deep beams to form a ring structure.

b. Perforated flats spaced not more than 2.5 m apart. The area of perforations in each flat is to be not less than 10 per cent of the total area of the flat.

c. A combination of the above arrangements.

6. 2. 2 The scantlings of side stringers supported by web frames, and also of the web frames are to be determined from Pt 3, Ch 6, 4.5 Primary structure at sides.

6. 2. 3 The scantlings of perforated flats are to be determined from Table 6. 6. 1: After peak structure. Stiffeners are to be fitted at every frame.

6. 3 Side structure – Longitudinal framing

6. 3. 1 The spacing and scantlings of side transverses supporting longitudinal framing are to be as required by Pt 3, Ch 6, 4.5 Primary structure at sides.

6. 3. 2 Suitable transverses or deep beams are to be arranged at the top of the tank to provide end rigidity to the side transverses.

Table 6. 6. 1: After peak structure

Item	Parameter	Requirement
(1) Floors	Thickness	$t = (7.5 + 0.025L_2)\sqrt{\frac{S_2}{800}}$ mm

(2) Perforated flats and wash bulkheads	Thickness *See* Note	$t = (7.5 + 0.015L)\sqrt{\frac{S_2}{800}}$ mm
	Stiffener modulus	$Z = \frac{0.0057skh_6l_e^2}{b}$ cm^2
Symbols		
$=L$, s, l_e, k as defined in Pt 3, Ch 6, 1.4 Symbols and definitions 1.4.1		
b=1.4 for rolled or built sections =1.6 for flat bars		
h_6=vertical distance from middle of effective length of stiffener to top of tank, in metres		
s_2=spacing of stiffeners, in mm, but is to be taken not less than 800 mm		
L_2=L but need not be taken greater than 215 m		
Note The thickness for perforated flats and wash bulkheads may be reduced by 1 mm for ships of 40 m and under with no reduction for ships of 90 m and above. Reduction for intermediate lengths to be by linear interpolation.		

6. 4 Wash bulkheads

6. 4. 1 A centreline wash bulkhead is to be arranged in the upper part of the after peak space and counter or cruiser stern. Where the overhang is very large, or the breadth of the space at the widest point exceeds 20 m, additional wash bulkheads may be required port and starboard.

6. 4. 2 Wash bulkheads are to have an area of perforations not less than 5 per cent nor more than 10 per cent of the area of the bulkhead. The plating is to be suitably stiffened in way of openings, and the arrangement of openings is to be such as to maintain adequate shear rigidity.

6. 4. 3 The scantlings of wash bulkheads are to be determined from Table 6. 6. 1: After peak structure, and stiffeners are to be fitted at every frame and bracketed top and bottom. The plating thickness may be required to be increased locally in way of the upper part of the sternframe or the rudder horn.

6. 5 After peak bulkhead

6. 5. 1 The position and height of the after peak bulkhead are to be in accordance with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 3, 4 Bulkhead requirements.

6. 5. 2 The scantlings of the after peak bulkhead and of the flat forming the top of the peak space are to be determined from Pt 4, Ch 1, 9 Bulkheads, but the plating thickness is to be increased locally in way of the sterntube gland.

PART

3

CHAPTER **6** **Aft End Structure**

SECTION **7** **Sternframes and appendages**

7. 1 General

7. 1. 1 Sternframes, rudder horns, boss end brackets and shaft brackets may be constructed of cast or forged steel, or may be fabricated from plate.

7. 1. 2 In castings, sudden changes of section or possible constrictions to the flow of metal during casting are to be avoided. All fillets are to have adequate radii, which should, in general, be not less than 50 to 75 mm, depending on the size of the casting.

7. 1. 3 Cast sternframes, rudder horns, shaft brackets and solepieces are to be manufactured from special grade material. Cast bossings can be manufactured from normal grade material, *See* Ch 4, 2 Castings for ship and other structural applications of the Rules for Materials.

7. 1. 4 Sternframes, rudder horns, shaft brackets, etc. are to be effectively integrated into the ship's structure, and their design is to be such as to facilitate this.

7. 2 Sternframes

7. 2. 1 The scantlings of sternframes are to be determined from Table 6. 7. 1: Sternframes. In the case of very large ships, the scantlings and arrangements may be required to be verified by direct calculations.

Table 6. 7. 1: Sternframes

tem	Parameter	Requirement		
(1) Propeller posts *See* Notes 1 and 2		Cast steel, *See* Figure 6. 7. 5: Propeller posts	Forged steel, *See* Figure 6. 7. 5: Propeller posts	Fabricated mild steel,*See* Figure 6. 7. 5: Propeller posts
	l	$165\sqrt{T}$ mm	-	$200\sqrt{T}$ mm
	r	$20\sqrt{T}$ mm	-	$18\sqrt{T}$ mm
	t_w	$8\sqrt{T}$ mm (need not exceed 38)	need not exceed 30)	$6\sqrt{T}$ mm
	t_1	$12\sqrt{T}$ mm (min. 19)	-	$12\sqrt{T}$ mm
	t_2	$16\sqrt{T}$mm (min.25)	-	-
	w	$115\sqrt{T}$ mm	$40\sqrt{T}$ mm	$140\sqrt{T}$ mm

	A	-	$(10 + 0.5L)T$ cm^2 $L \leq 60$ m $40T$ cm^2 where $L >$ 60 m	-
(2) Propeller boss, *See* Note 3 and Figure 6. 7. 6: Propeller boss	t_b	$(0.1\delta_{TS}+56)$ mm, but need not exceed $0.3\delta_{TS}$		
(3) Rudder posts or axles		Single screw with integral solepiece, *See* Figure 6. 7. 10: Solepieces(a)	Single screw with bolted rudder axle, *See* Figure 6. 7. 7: Rudder axle	Twin screw, integral with hull, *See* Figure 6. 7. 8: Rudder post for twin screw ships
	n	-	6 (*See* Note 4)	-
	r	-	-	$20\sqrt{T}$ mm
	r_b	-	δ_A mm	-
	t_F	-	δ_B mm	-
	t_1	-	-	$12\sqrt{T}$ mm
	t_2	-	-	$15\sqrt{T}$ mm
	t_3	-	-	$18\sqrt{T}$ mm
	w	-	-	$120\sqrt{T}$ mm
	z_{PB1}, z_{PB2}	-	$1.2\delta_{PL2}$ mm	-
	Z_T	$0.147\left(\frac{k_R}{0.248}\right)^3 A_R K_2 b(V_0 + 3)^2 \text{cm}^3$	-	-
	δ_A	-	$(25T + 76)$ mm but need not exceed $0.9\delta_{PL2}$ mm	-
	δ_b	-	$6.25T + 19)$ mm or $0.225\delta_{PL2}$ mm whichever is the greater	-
	δ_{PL1}, δ_{PL2} bearing pressure and pintle clearance	-	As for rudder pintles (*See* Table 13. 2. 12: Pintle requirements in Chapter 13)	-
Symbols				
L, T as defined in Pt 3, Ch 6, 1.4 Symbols and definitions 1.4.1 b=length of the rudder post or axle, in m, as defined in Figure 6. 7. 10: Solepieces K_2=rudder profile coefficient, as given by Table 13. 2. 2: Rudder profiles in *Chapter 13*				

n=number of bolts in palm coupling

r_b=mean distance of bolt centres from centre of palm, in mm

t_b=finished thickness of boss, in mm

A=cross-sectional area of forged steel propeller post, in cm^2

A_R= rudder area, in m^2

k_R=rudder coefficient, as given by Table 6. 7. 7: Rudder coefficient kR

V_0=maximum service speed, in knots, with the ship in the loaded condition

Z_T=section modulus against transverse bending, in cm^3

δ_b=diameter of coupling bolts, in mm

δ_{TS}=diameter of tail shaft, in mm

Note *1.* Where scantlings and proportions of the propeller post differ from those shown in Item (1), the section modulus about the longitudinal axis of the proposed section normal to the post is to be equivalent to that with Rule scantlings. t is to be not less than $8\sqrt{T}$ (minimum of 19 mm for cast steel sternframes) or as required by Pt 3, Ch 6, 3.4 Side shell and sheerstrake 3.4.2, whichever is the greater.

Note *2.* On sternframes without solepieces, the modulus of the post below the propeller boss, about the longitudinal axis may be gradually reduced to not less than 85% of that required by Note 1, subject to the same thickness limitations.

Note *3.* In fabricated sternframes the connection of the propeller post to the boss is to be by full penetration welds.

Note *4.* If more than six bolts are fitted, the arrangements are to provide equivalent strength.

7. 2. 2 Fabricated and cast propeller posts and rudder posts of twin screw ships are to be strengthened at intervals by webs. In way of the upper part of the sternframe arch, these webs are to line up with the floors.

7. 2. 3 Rudder posts and propeller posts are to be connected to floors of increased thickness, *See* Pt 3, Ch 6, 6.1 Bottom structure.

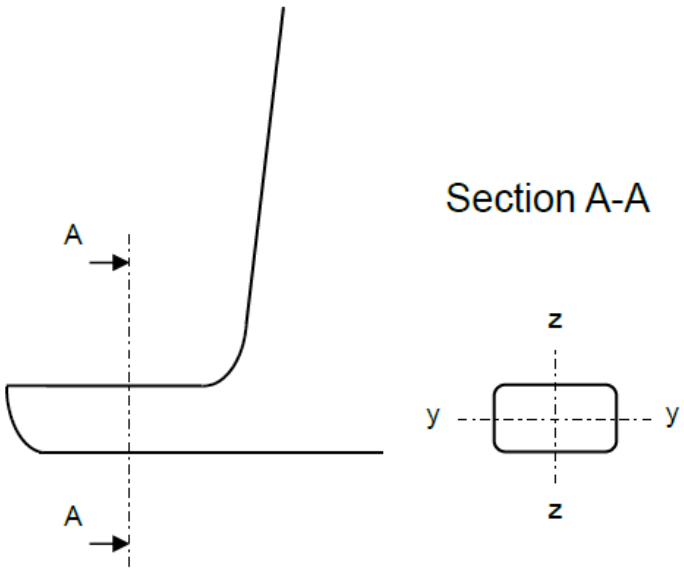
Table 6. 7. 2: Permissible stresses for sole pieces

Mode	Permissible stress
(1) Equivalent stress	$115/K_0$ N/mm^2
Symbols	
σ_e=equivalent stress $=\sqrt{\sigma_b^2 + 3\tau_T^2}$ N/mm^2	
σ_b=bending stress $=\frac{M_B}{Z_T}$	
τ_T=shear stress $=\frac{B_1}{A_S}$	

M_B=bending moment, in Nm, at the section considered $=B_1x$
B_1=supporting force, in N, in pintle bearing $=0.5P_L$
P_L=rudder force, in N, as calculated in Ch 13.2
x=distance, in metres, from centre of rudder stock to section under consideration
Z_T=*See* Table 6. 7. 1: Sternframes (4)
A_s=sectional area, in mm^2, of solepiece

7. 3 Sole pieces

Figure 6. 7. 1: Solepiece



7. 3. 1 The scantlings of sole pieces are to be not less than those required by Table 6. 7. 3: Sole pieces scantlings:

Table 6. 7. 3: Sole pieces scantlings

Item, *See* Figure 6. 7. 10: Solepieces	Minimum requirements
Section modulus about the vertical (z)-axis, Z_z	$Z_z = \frac{M_b k}{80}$ cm^3
Section modulus about the transverse (y)-axis, Z_y	$Z_y = 0.5Z_z$ cm^3
Section area, A_s	$A_s = \frac{B_1 k}{48}$ mm^3
Symbols	

M_b= bending moment, in Nm, at the section considered

$=B_1 x$

x =distance, in m, from centre of rudder stock to section under consideration

k=as defined in Table 13. 2. 1: Rudder material factor, k

B_1= supporting force in the pintle bearing, in N

= 0.5 CR

C_R= as defined in Pt 3, Ch 13, 2 Rudders

Note 1. For dredging and reclamation craft classed 'A1 protected waters service', the scantlings of an 'open' type solepiece are to be such that:

a. $Z_z = 0.625 Z_z$

b. The cross-sectional area is not less than 18 cm^2

c. The depth is not less than two-thirds of the width at any point.

Note 2. In fabricated solepieces, transverse webs are to be fitted spaced not more than 760 mm apart. Where the breadth of the solepiece exceeds 900 mm, a centreline vertical web is also to be fitted.

Note 3. Solepieces supporting fixed or movable nozzles will be specially considered, *See* Pt 3, Ch 13, 3 Fixed and steering nozzles

7. 3. 2 The solepiece is to be dimensioned such that the stresses do not exceed the permissible stresses given in Table 6. 7. 4: Permissible stresses for solepieces.

Table 6. 7. 4: Permissible stresses for solepieces

Mode	Permissible stress
(1) Equivalent stress	$\frac{115}{k}$ N/mm^2
Symbols	

σ_e=equivalent stress

$=\sqrt{\sigma_b^2 + 3\tau_T^2}$ N/mm^2

σ_b=bending stress

$=\frac{M_b}{Z_z}$ N/mm^2

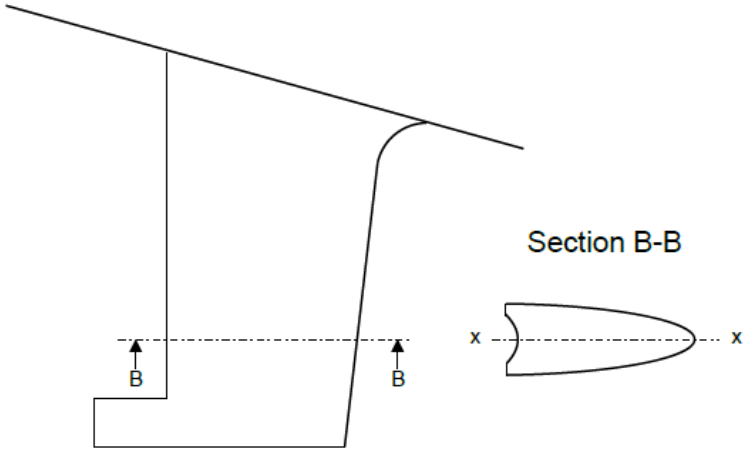
τ_T=shear stress

$=\frac{B_1}{A_s}$ N/mm^2

k=as defined in Table 13. 2. 1: Rudder material factor, k

7. 4 Rudder horns

Figure 6. 7. 2: Rudder horn



7. 4. 1 Rudder horns are to be effectively integrated into the main hull structure.

7. 4. 2 The rudder horn side plating should be carried through the ship's bottom shell plating and aligned with primary members. Brackets or stringers are to be fitted on the inside of the rudder horn to align with the ship's adjoining bottom shell plating, *See* Figure 6. 7. 3: Rudder horn integration.

7. 4. 3 A number of transverse webs of the rudder horn should be carried through the ship's bottom shell up to the inner bottom or bottom deck. These rudder horn transverse webs should be fitted in line with strengthened plate floors.

7. 4. 4 Where practicable the rudder horn should be connected to the ship's centreline bulkhead.

7. 4. 5 Scallops in way of the connection between the rudder horn transverse webs and the ship's adjoining bottom shell plating are to be avoided.

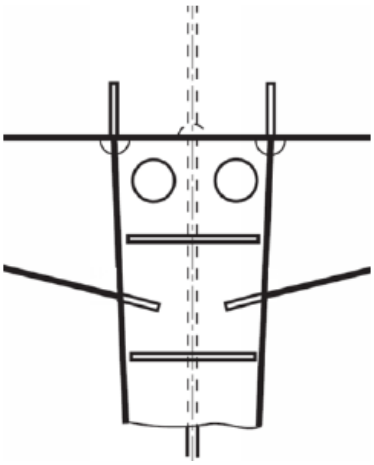
7. 4. 6 The weld at the connection between the rudder horn plating and the ship's bottom shell is to be full penetration. The welding radius is to be as large as practicable and may be obtained by grinding.

7. 4. 7 When the connection between the rudder horn and the hull structure is designed as a curved transition into the hull plating, special consideration is to be given to the effectiveness of the rudder horn plate bending and to the stresses in the transverse web plates.

7. 4. 8 The ship's bottom shell plating is to be increased in thickness in way of the rudder horn. Where the horn plating is radiused into the shell plating, the radius at the shell connection is to be not less than:

$$r = (150 + 0.8L)\text{mm}$$

Figure 6. 7. 3: Rudder horn integration



7. 4. 9 The bending moments and shear forces are to be determined by direct calculations.

7. 4. 10 The scantlings of the rudder horn are to be not less than those required by Table 6. 7. 5: Rudder horn scantlings:

Table 6. 7. 5: Rudder horn scantlings

Item, *See* Figure 6. 7. 2: Rudder horn	Minimum requirement
Section modulus about the horizontal (x)-axis, Z_x	$Z_x = \frac{M_b k}{67}$ cm^3
Rudder horn plating	$t = 2.4\sqrt{Lk}\ mm$
Symbols	
M_b = bending moment, in Nm, at the section considered. k = as defined in Table 13. 2. 1: Rudder material factor, k	

7. 4. 11 The rudder horn is to be dimensioned such that the stresses do not exceed the permissible stresses given in Table 6. 7. 6: Permissible stresses for rudder horns.

Table 6. 7. 6: Permissible stresses for rudder horns

Mode	Permissible stress
(1) Shear stress	$\frac{48}{k}$ N/mm^2
(2) Equivalent stress	$\frac{120}{k}$ N/mm^2
Symbols	

σ_e = equivalent stress

$= \sqrt{\sigma_b^2 + 3(\tau^2 + \tau_T^2)}$ N/mm²

σ_b = bending stress

$= \frac{M_b}{Z_x}$ N/mm²

τ = shear stress

$= \frac{B_1}{A_h}$ N/mm²

B_1 = supporting force in the pintle bearing, in N

A_h = effective shear area, of rudder horn in y-direction, in mm²

τ_T = torsional stress

$= \frac{M_T 10^3}{2A_T t_h}$ N/mm²

M_T = torsional moment at the section considered, in Nm

A_T = area in the horizontal section enclosed by the rudder horn, in mm²

t_h = plate thickness of rudder horn, in mm

k = as defined in Table 13. 2. 1: Rudder material factor, k

Table 6. 7. 7: Rudder coefficient k_R

Design criteria		k_R
Ahead condition	Rudder in propeller slipstream	0.248
	Rudder out of propeller slipstream	0.235
Astern condition		0.185
Bow rudder		
Barge – non self– propelled		0.226

Table 6. 7. 8: Recommended propeller/hull clearances

Number of blades	Hull clearances for single screw, in metres,*See* Figure 6. 7. 12: Propeller clearances				Hull clearances for twin screw, in metres, *See* Figure 6. 7. 12: Propeller clearances	
	a	*b*	*c*	*d*	*e*	*f*
3	1.20Kδ	1.80Kδ	0.12δ	0.03δ	1.20Kδ	1.20Kδ
4	1.00Kδ	1.50Kδ	0.12δ	0.03δ	1.00Kδ	1.20Kδ
5	0.85Kδ	1.275Kδ	0.12δ	0.03δ	0.85Kδ	0.85Kδ

6	0.75Kδ	1.125Kδ	0.12δ	0.03δ	0.75Kδ	0.75Kδ
Minimum value	0.10δ	0.15δ	t_R	—	3 and 4 blades, 0.20δ 5 and 6 blades, 0.16δ	0.15δ

Symbols

L as defined in Pt 3, Ch 6, 1.4 Symbols and definitions 1.4.1

C_b=moulded block coefficient at load draught

$$K = \left(0.1 + \frac{L}{3050}\right)\left(\frac{3.48C_bP}{L^2} + 0.3\right)$$

$$= \left(K = \left(0.1 + \frac{L}{3050}\right)\left(\frac{2.56C_bP}{L^2} + 0.3\right)\right)$$

t_R=thickness of rudder, in metres, measured at $0.7R_P$ above the shaft centreline

P=designed power on one shaft, in kW (shp)

R_P=propeller radius, in metres

δ=propeller diameter, in metres

Note The above recommended minimum clearances also apply to semi-spade type rudders.

7. 5 Rudder trunks

7. 5. 1 Rudder trunks extending above or below the stern frame are to be constructed of steel of a weldable quality with a carbon content not exceeding 0.23 per cent on ladle analysis or a carbon equivalent (CEQ) not exceeding 0.41 per cent.

7. 5. 2 Plating materials for rudder trunks are in general not to be of lower grades than those corresponding to Class II as defined in Table 2. 2. 2: Steel grades.

7. 5. 3 The weld at the connection between the rudder trunk and the shell or the bottom of the skeg is to be full penetration.

7. 5. 4 The fillet shoulder radius, r, of webs connected to the rudder trunk *See* Figure 6. 7. 4: Rudder trunk fillet shoulder radii, are to be as large as practicable and are in no case to be less than:

r = 60 mm when $\sigma_b \geq \frac{40}{k}$ N/mm^2

r = the greater of 0.1d_c, and 30 mm when $\sigma_b < \frac{40}{k}$ N/mm^2

Where

d_c = rudder stock diameter as defined in Table 13. 2. 4: Rudder stock diameter

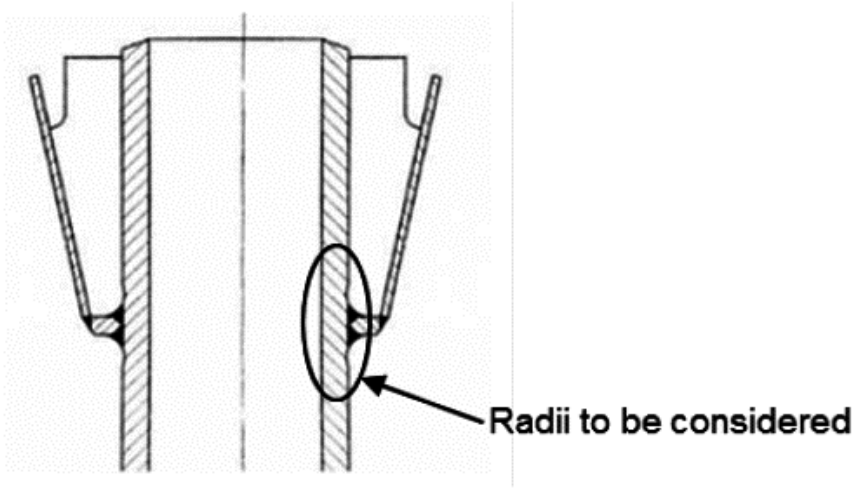
σ_b = bending stress in the rudder trunk, in N/mm^2

k = as defined in Table 13. 2. 1: Rudder material factor, k

The radius may be obtained by grinding. If disk grinding is carried out, score marks are to be avoided in the direction of the weld. The radius is to be checked with a template for accuracy. At least four profiles are to be checked. A report is to be submitted to the Surveyor.

7. 5. 5 Rudder trunks comprising of materials other than steel will be specially considered.

Figure 6. 7. 4: Rudder trunk fillet shoulder radii



7. 5. 6 Where the rudder stock is arranged in such a way that it will impose forces on the rudder trunk, the scantlings of the trunk are to be as follows:

a. the equivalent stress due to bending and shear is not exceed 0.35σ,

b. the bending stress of fabricated rudder trunks is to be less than $\frac{80}{k}$ N/mm^2

Where

σ_b = bending stress in the rudder trunk, in N/mm^2

k = as defined in Table 13. 2. 1: Rudder material factor, k but is not to be taken less than 0.7

σ = minimum specified yield stress, in N/mm^2.

For calculation of bending stress, the span to be considered is the distance between the mid-height of the lower rudder stock bearing and the point where the trunk is clamped into the shell or the bottom of the skeg.

7. 6 Shaft bossing

7. 6. 1 Where the propeller shafting is enclosed in bossings extending back to the bearings supporting the propellers, the aft end of the bossings and the bearings are to be supported by substantially constructed boss end castings or fabrications. These are to be designed to transmit the loading from the shafting efficiently into the ship's internal structure.

7. 6. 2 The length of the shaft bracket boss, l_b, is to be sufficient to support the length of the required bearing. In general, l_b is not to be less than $4d_t$, where d_t is the Rule diameter of the screwshaft, in mm, *See* Pt 5, Ch 6, 3 Design. Proposals for a reduction in the required length of the shaft bracket boss will be considered in conjunction with details of the bearing material, allowable bearing operating pressure and installation arrangements. However, in no case is l_b to be less than the greater of:

a. $2d_t$; or

b. that recommended by the bearing manufacturer; or

c. that required to accommodate the aftermost bearing and to allow the proper connection of the shaft bracket .

7. 6. 3 Where the shaft and the shaft bracket boss are of the same material, the thickness of the shaft bracket boss is not to be less than $d_t/4$. Where the shaft and the shaft bracket boss are of dissimilar materials, the thickness of the boss, t_b, is to be not less than:

$$t_b = 0.75 d_t \left(f_1^{1/3} - 0.667 \right) \text{mm}$$

Note In no case is t_b to be taken as less than 12 mm

Where

d_t = Rule diameter of the screwshaft in way of boss, in the appropriate screwshaft material, in mm, *See* Pt 5, Ch 6, 3 Design:

f_1 = s_S/s_B but not less than 0.825

s_S = ultimate tensile strength of the shaft material, in N/mm^2.

s_B = ultimate tensile strength of the boss material, in N/mm^2.

7. 6. 4 Cast steel supports are to be suitably radiused where they enter the main hull to line up with the boss plating radius. Where the hull sections are narrow, the two arms are generally to be connected to each other within the ship. The arms are to be strengthened at intervals by webs.

7. 6. 5 Fabricated supports are to be carefully designed to avoid or reduce the effect of hard spots. Continuity of the arms into the ship is to be maintained, and they are to be attached to substantial floor plates or other structure. The connection of the arms to the bearing boss is to be by full penetration welding.

7. 6. 6 The scantlings of supports will be specially considered. In the case of certain high powered ships, direct calculations may be required.

7. 6. 7 The boss plating is generally to be radiused into the shell plating and supported at the aft end by diaphragms at every frame. These diaphragms are to be suitably stiffened and connected to floors or a suitable arrangement of main and deep web frames. At the forward end, the main frames may be shaped to fit the bossing, but deep webs are generally to be fitted not more than four frame spaces apart.

7. 6. 8 The region where the shafting enters the ship, and the bearing in way, are to be adequately supported by floors or deep webs.

Figure 6. 7. 5: Propeller posts

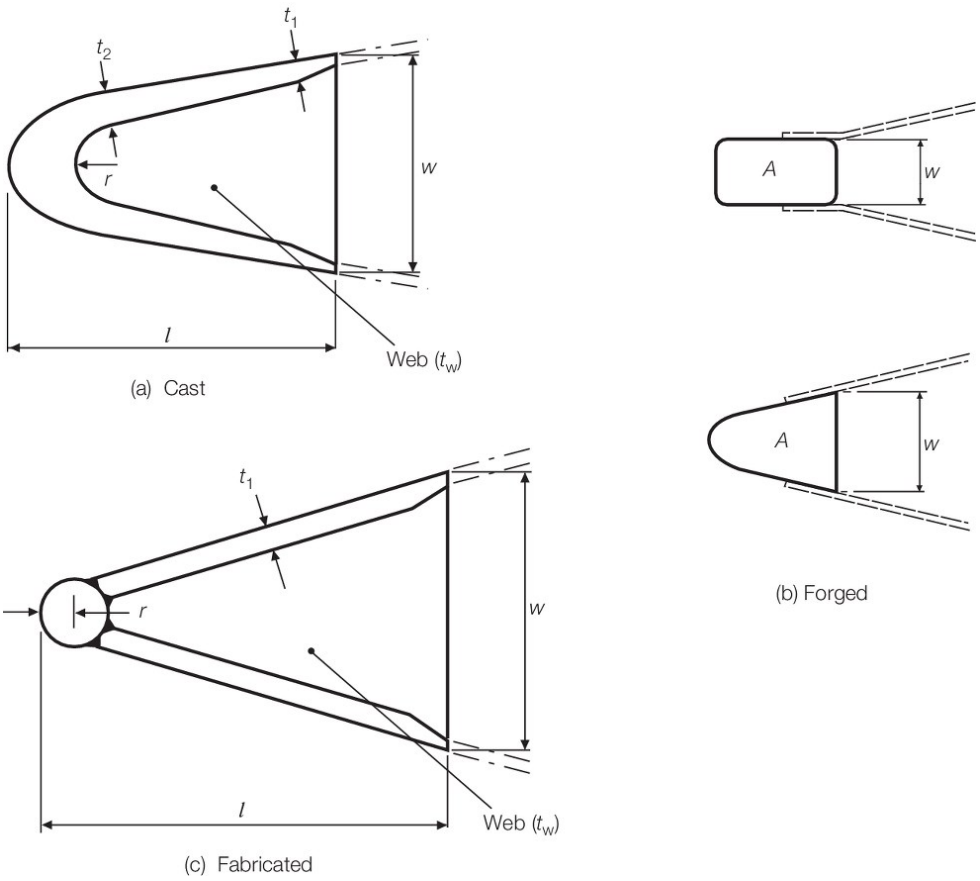
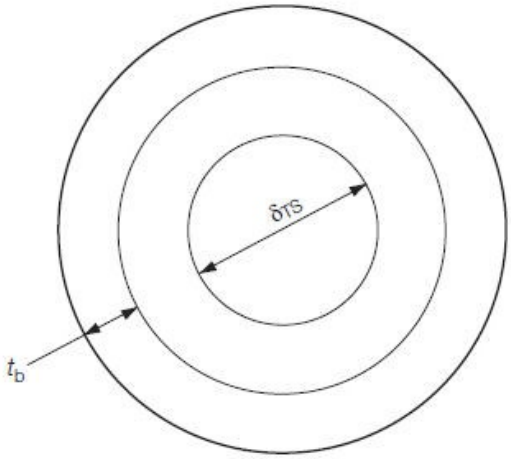


Figure 6. 7. 6: Propeller boss



7. 7 Shaft brackets

7. 7. 1 The scantlings of the arms of shaft brackets, generally based on a breadth to thickness ratio of about five, are to be determined in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 6, 7.8 Double arm shaft brackets ('A' – brackets) 7.8.2.

7. 7. 2 Where the propeller shafting is exposed to the sea for some distance clear of the main hull, it is generally to be supported adjacent to the propeller by independent brackets having two arms. In very small ships, the use of single arm brackets will be specially considered.

7. 7. 3 Fabricated brackets are to be designed to avoid or reduce the effect of hard spots and ensure a satisfactory connection to the hull structure. The connection of the arms to the bearing boss is to be by full penetration welding.

7. 7. 4 Where bracket arms are carried through the shell plating, they are to be attached to floors or girders of increased thickness. The shell plating is to be increased in thickness and connected to the arms by full penetration welding.

7. 7. 5 In the case of certain high powered ships, direct calculations may be required and scantlings of shaft brackets will be specially considered.

7. 7. 6 The region where the shafting enters the ship, and the bearing in way, is to be adequately supported by floors or deep webs.

Figure 6. 7. 7: Rudder axle

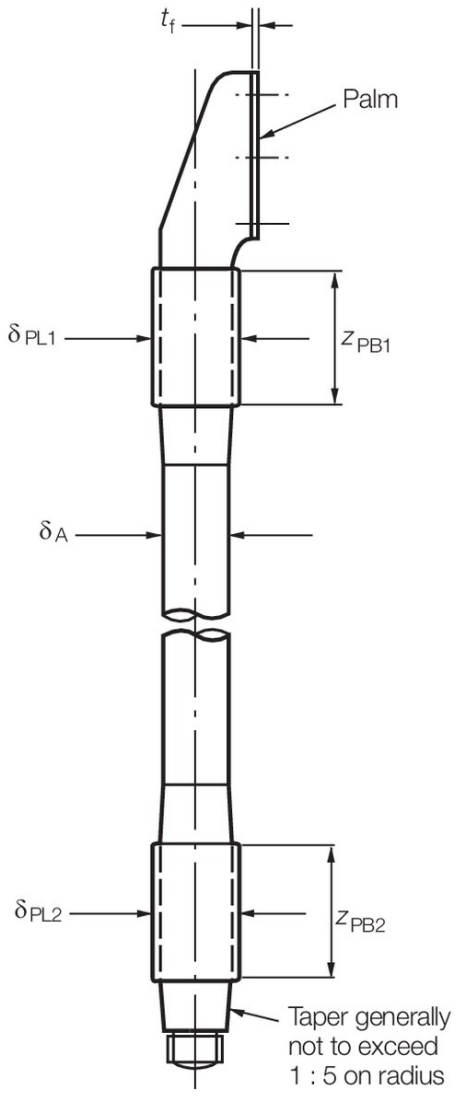
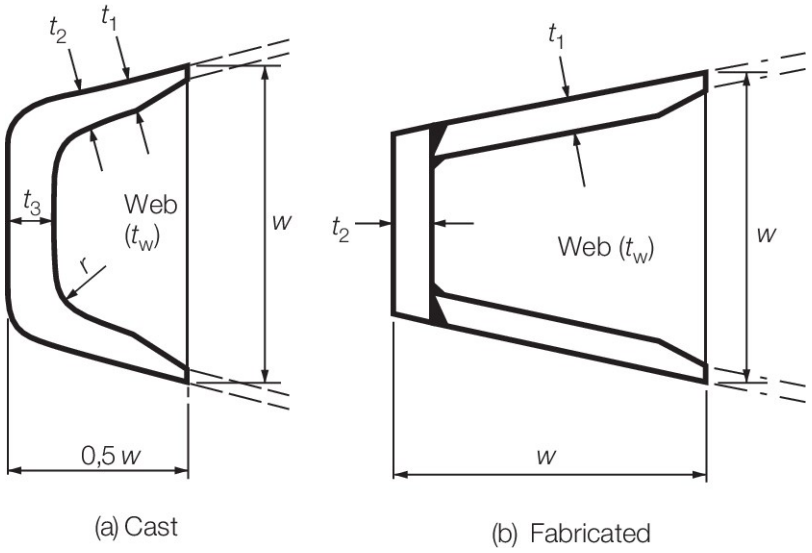


Figure 6. 7. 8: Rudder post for twin screw ships



7. 8 Double arm shaft brackets ('A' – brackets)

7. 8. 1 The angle between the arms for double arm shaft brackets is generally to be not less than 50°. Proposals for the angle between the arms to be less than 50° will be specially considered with supporting calculations to be submitted by the designers.

7. 8. 2 The arms of double arm shaft brackets are to have a section modulus, Z_{xx}, of not less than that determined from the formula:

$$Z_{xx} = 0.45n^3 \text{ cm}^3$$

Where

n = the minimum thickness, in cm, of a hydrofoil section obtained from:

$$n = d_{up}\sqrt{\left(\frac{f}{2000}\right)\left(1+\sqrt{\left(1+\left(\frac{0.0112}{f}\right)\left(\frac{a_d}{d_{up}}\right)^2\right)}\right)} \text{ cm}$$

ad = the length of the longer strut, in mm, *See* Figure 6. 7. 9: Double arm shaft bracket

dup = the Rule diameter for an unprotected screwshaft, in mm, or by the applicable Ice Class Rules, *See* Pt 8, Ch 2, 7.8 Screwshafts, obtained from:.

$$d_{up} = 128\sqrt[3]{P/R}$$

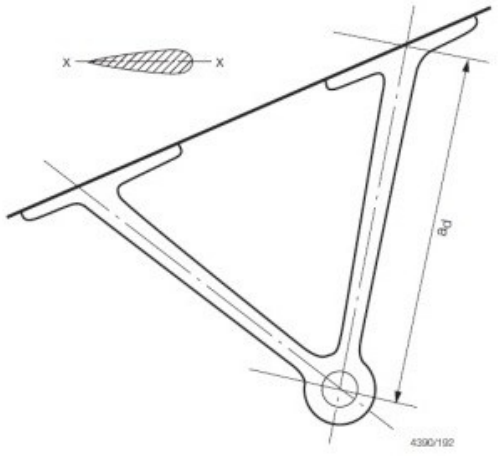
P = shaft power, in kW as defined in Pt 5, Ch 1, 3.3 Power ratings

R revolutions per minute, as defined in Pt 5, Ch 1, 3.3 Power ratings

$f = 400/\sigma_u$

σu = ultimate tensile strength of arm material, in N/mm2.

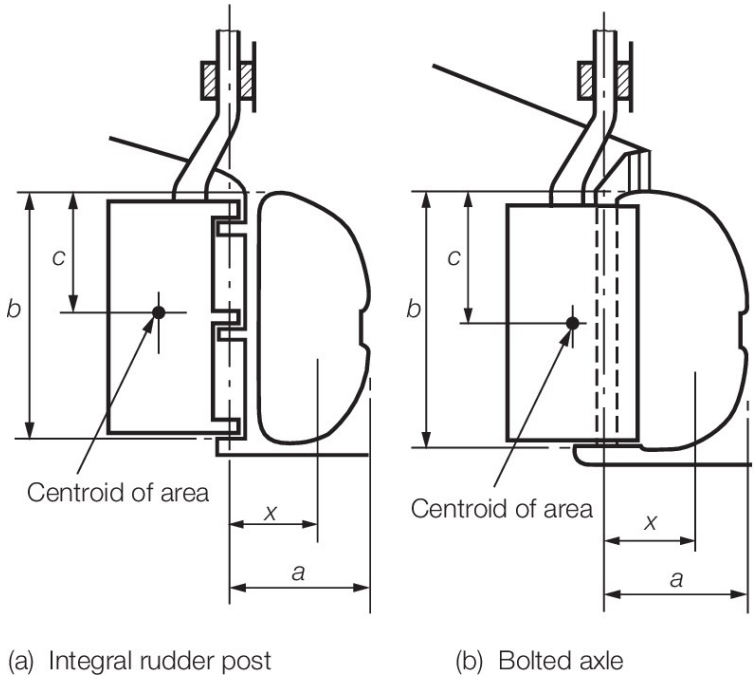
Figure 6. 7. 9: Double arm shaft bracket



7. 9 Propeller hull clearances

7. 9. 1 Recommended minimum clearances between the propeller and the sternframe, rudder or hull are given in Table 6. 7. 8: Recommended propeller/hull clearances. These are the minimum distances considered desirable in order to expect reasonable levels of propeller excited vibration. Attention is drawn to the importance of the local hull form characteristics, shaft power, water flow characteristics into the propeller disc and cavitation when considering the recommended clearances.

Figure 6. 7. 10: Solepieces



(a) Integral rudder post (b) Bolted axle

Figure 6. 7. 11: Rudder horn

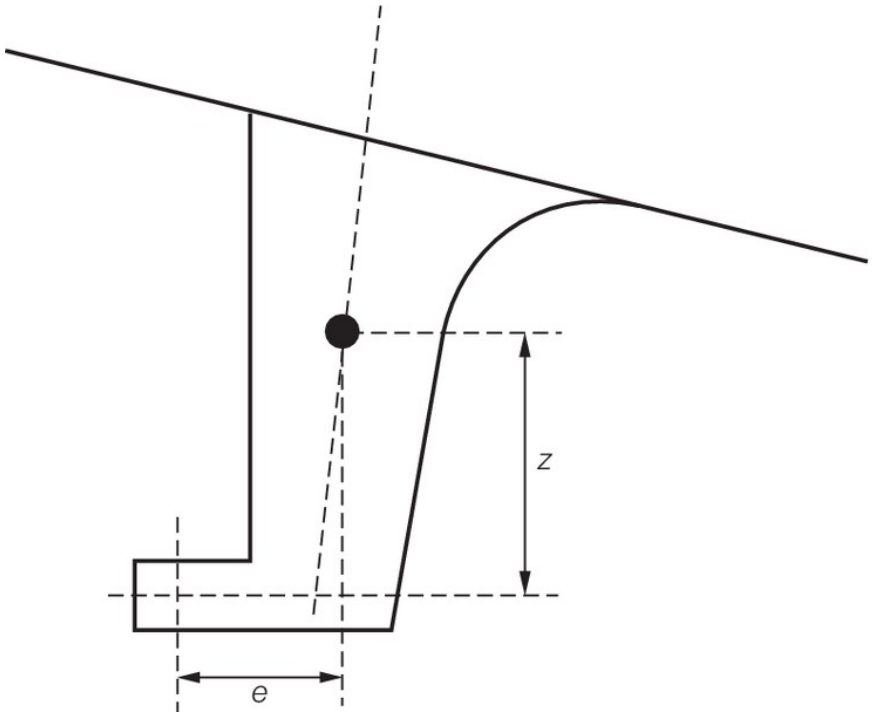
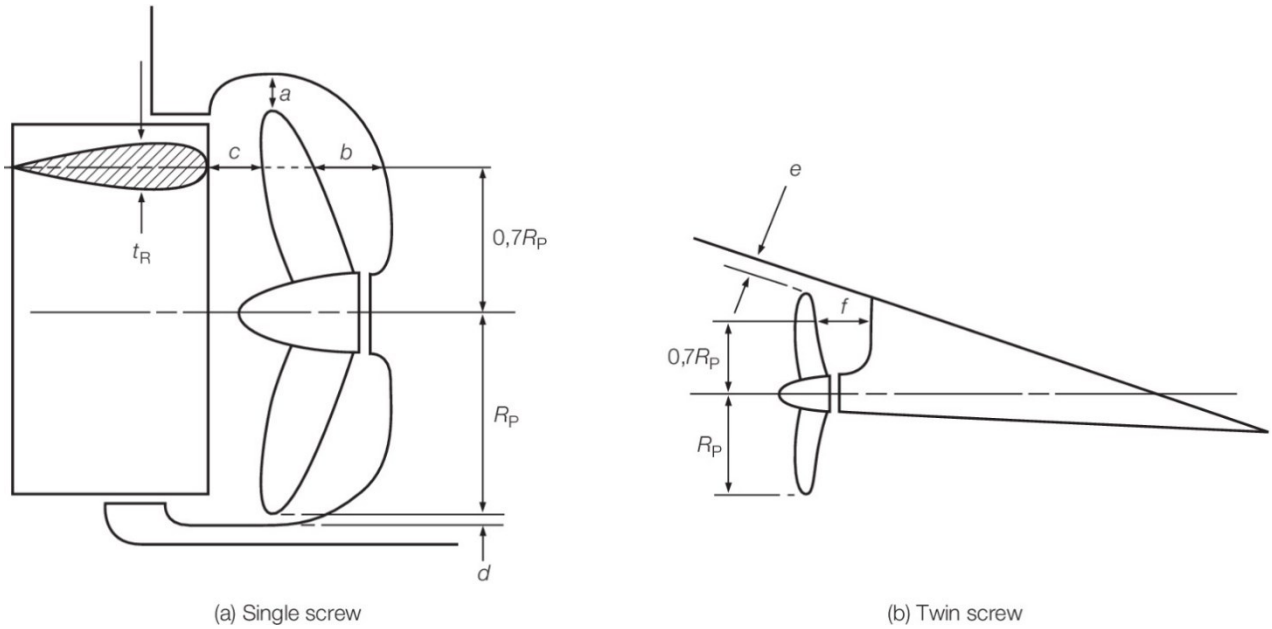


Figure 6. 7. 12: Propeller clearances



(a) Single screw

(b) Twin screw

PART

3

CHAPTER **7 Machinery Spaces**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**1052**
	1. 1	Application	1052
	1. 2	Structural configuration	1052
	1. 3	Structural continuity	1052
	1. 4	Symbols and definitions	1053
SECTION 2	**Deck structure**		**1054**
	2. 1	Strength deck − Plating	1054
	2. 2	Strength deck − Primary structure	1054
	2. 3	Lower decks	1054
SECTION 3	**Side shell structure**		**1055**
	3. 1	Secondary stiffening	1055
	3. 2	Primary structure - Transverse framing	1055
	3. 3	Primary structure - Longitudinal framing	1056
SECTION 4	**Double and single bottom structure**		**1057**
	4. 1	Double bottom structure	1057
	4. 2	Single bottom structure	1058
SECTION 5	**Machinery casings and fuel oil bunkers**		**1060**
	5. 1	Machinery casings	1060
	5. 2	Fuel oil bunkers	1061
SECTION 6	**Engine seatings**		**1062**
	6. 1	General	1062
	6. 2	Seats for engines	1062
	6. 3	Seats for turbines	1064
	6. 4	Seats for boilers	1064
	6. 5	Seats for auxiliary machinery	1064

PART

3

CHAPTER **7 Machinery Spaces**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 7. 3. 1: Primary structure in machinery spaces 1056
Table 7. 5. 1: Protected machinery casings 1060
Table 7. 6. 1: Seats for engines - Recommended scantlings 1063

PART

3

CHAPTER **7 Machinery Spaces**

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 7. 4. 1: Engine-room with longitudinal framing..... 1057
Figure 7. 6. 1: Engine seatings 1063

PART

3

CHAPTER **7** **Machinery Spaces**

SECTION **1** **General**

1. 1 Application

1. 1. 1 This Chapter applies to all ship types detailed in Pt 4 Ship Structures (Ship Types). Only requirements particular to machinery spaces, including protected machinery casings and engine seatings, are given. For other scantlings and arrangement requirements, *See* the relevant Chapter in Pt 4 Ship Structures (Ship Types) for the particular ship type concerned.

1. 1. 2 Requirements are given for machinery spaces situated as follows:

a. In the midship region.
b. In the aft end region but with a cargo compartment between it and the after peak bulkhead.
c. In the aft end region where the after peak bulkhead forms the aft end of the machinery space.

1. 1. 3 The requirements in this Chapter are not applicable to Double Hull Oil Tankers or Bulk Carriers with a **CSR** notation. *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull).

1. 2 Structural configuration

1. 2. 1 Requirements are given for ships constructed using either a transverse framing system or a longitudinal framing system, or a combination of the two.

1. 2. 2 For midship machinery spaces, where the shell and decks (outside line of openings) are longitudinally framed in way of adjacent cargo spaces, this system of framing is also to be adopted in the machinery space.

1. 2. 3 For machinery spaces situated aft, where the longitudinal framing terminates and is replaced by transverse framing, a suitable scarfing arrangement of the longitudinal framing is to be arranged, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 6, 1 General.

1. 2. 4 The maximum spacing, S_{max}, of transverses in longitudinally framed machinery spaces is not to exceed the following:

a. where $L \leq 100$ m, $S_{max} = 3.8$ m
b. where $L > 100$ m, $S_{max} = (0.006L + 3.2)$ m

In addition, the spacing in way of a machinery space situated adjacent to the after peak is not to exceed five transverse frame spaces.

1. 3 Structural continuity

1. 3. 1 Suitable scarfing arrangements are to be made to ensure continuity of strength and the avoidance of abrupt discontinuities where structure which contributes to the main longitudinal strength of the ship is omitted in way of a machinery space.

1. 3. 2 In cargo ships, suitable taper brackets are, in general, to be arranged in way of deck ends.

1. 3. 3 In oil tankers and bulk carriers with machinery aft (*See* Pt 3, Ch 6, 1.1 Application 1.1.3), continuity of the longitudinal bulkheads and topside tank structure is to be maintained as far as possible into the machinery space with suitable taper brackets at the end.

1. 3. 4 In container or similar ships having side tanks or double skin construction in way of the cargo spaces, the longitudinal bulkheads are generally to be carried through the machinery space where this is situated amidships or separated from the after peak by a cargo compartment. Where the machinery space is situated adjacent to the after peak, the longitudinal bulkheads are to be continued as far aft as possible and suitably tapered at their ends.

1. 4 Symbols and definitions

1. 4. 1 For symbols not defined in this Chapter, *See* Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships. L, B, D and T are defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1, Principal particulars. Other symbols are defined in the appropriate Sections.

PART

3

CHAPTER **7** **Machinery Spaces**

SECTION **2** **Deck structure**

2. 1 Strength deck – Plating

2. 1. 1 The corners of machinery space openings are to be of suitable shape and design to minimise stress concentrations.

2. 1. 2 In the case of oil tankers (*See* Pt 3, Ch 6, 1.1 Application 1.1.3), or other ships having small deck openings amidships and machinery aft, where the width of machinery openings exceeds $\frac{B}{2}$ and the opening extends forward beyond a point $\frac{B}{3}$ aft of the poop front, the thickness of deck plating may be required to be increased locally.

2. 2 Strength deck – Primary structure

2. 2. 1 Where a transverse framing system is adopted, deck beams are to be supported by a suitable arrangement of longitudinal girders in association with pillars or pillar bulkheads. Deep beams are to be arranged in way of the ends of engine casings and also in line with web frames where fitted.

2. 2. 2 Where a longitudinal framing system is adopted, deck longitudinals are to be supported by transverses in association with pillars or pillar bulkheads. For the maximum spacing of transverses, *See* Pt 3, Ch 7, 1.2 Structural configuration 1.2.4. Deck transverses are to be in line with side transverses or web frames.

2. 2. 3 Machinery casings are to be supported by a suitable arrangement of deep beams or transverses and longitudinal girders in association with pillars or pillar bulkheads. In way of particularly large machinery casing openings, cross ties may be required, and these are to be arranged in line with deep beams or transverses.

2. 3 Lower decks

2. 3. 1 The scantlings of lower decks or flats are generally to be as detailed in Pt 3, Ch 5, 2 Deck structure, Pt 3, Ch 6, 2 Deck structure or Pt 4, Ch 1, 4 Deck structure, as appropriate. However, in way of concentrated loads such as those from boiler bearers or heavy auxiliary machinery, etc. the scantlings of deck structure will be specially considered, taking account of the actual loading.

2. 3. 2 In way of machinery openings, etc. particularly towards the aft end, decks or flats are to have sufficient strength where they are intended as effective supports for side framing, webs or transverses. Web frames and side transverses are to be supported by deep beams or deck transverses.

PART

3

CHAPTER **7** **Machinery Spaces**

SECTION **3** **Side shell structure**

3. 1 Secondary stiffening

3. 1. 1 Transverse frames are generally to have scantlings determined as required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 6 Shell envelope framing for cargo spaces, except that where, in a machinery space situated in the midship region, it is desired to omit web frames as permitted by Pt 3, Ch 7, 3.2 Primary structure - Transverse framing 3.2.3, the section modulus of the ordinary main or 'tween deck frames is to be increased by 50 per cent, up to the level of the lowest deck above the load waterline. Where fully effective stringers supported by web frames are fitted, the stringers may be considered as decks for the purpose of calculating the modulus of the frames.

3. 1. 2 Longitudinal framing is generally to have scantlings determined as required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 6 Shell envelope framing for machinery spaces in the midship region, and by Table 6. 4. 1: Shell framing (longitudinal) aft Location 2(b) in Chapter 6 for machinery spaces clear of and aft of the midship region.

3. 2 Primary structure - Transverse framing

3. 2. 1 Where the space is situated in the aft end region, web frames are to be fitted, spaced in general not more than five frame spaces apart, extending from the tank top to the upper deck and having scantlings as required by Table 7. 3. 1: Primary structure in machinery spaces. However, consideration will be given to a spacing of web frames at not more than seven transverse frame spaces apart, in association with substantially increased ordinary frames to satisfy the overall modulus and inertia requirements. The web frames are to be connected at top and bottom to members of adequate stiffness and supported at lower decks by deep beams. If the span of ordinary frames below the lowest deck or flat exceeds 6.5 m, one or more fully effective side stringers are to be fitted to support the frames. These are to have scantlings as required by Table 7. 3. 1: Primary structure in machinery spaces. Stringers are to be efficiently bracketed to bulkheads, and their connection to the web frames is to be such as to provide adequate continuity of face material.

3. 2. 2 As an alternative to the fully effective stringers required by Pt 3, Ch 7, 3.2 Primary structure - Transverse framing 3.2.1, an arrangement of light stringers spaced about 2.5 m apart may be accepted. These stringers are to have scantlings not less than those required in the panting region forward, *See* Pt 3, Ch 5, 4.4 Panting stringers in way of transverse framing.

3. 2. 3 Where the machinery space is situated in the midship region, it is recommended that web frames be fitted in the engine-room, spaced not more than five frame spaces apart and extending from the tank top to the level of the lowest deck above the load waterline. The scantlings of these webs are to be such that the combined section modulus of the web frame and the main or 'tween deck frames is 50 per cent greater than that required for normal transverse framing. These webs may be omitted if the section modulus of the transverse frames is increased as required by Pt 3, Ch 7, 3.1 Secondary stiffening 3.1.1.

3. 2. 4 If an effective side stringer supporting the side frames is fitted, then its scantlings and those of the supporting web frames are to be determined from Table 7. 3. 1: Primary structure in machinery spaces.

3. 3 Primary structure - Longitudinal framing

3. 3. 1 Where the machinery space is longitudinally framed, side transverses are to be fitted having scantlings as required by Table 7. 3. 1: Primary structure in machinery spaces. For the maximum spacing of transverses, *See* Pt 3, Ch 7, 1.2 Structural configuration 1.2.4. Transverses are to be connected at top and bottom to members of adequate stiffness and supported at lower decks by transverses or deep beams.

Table 7. 3. 1: Primary structure in machinery spaces

Symbols	Item and position	Scantlings	
		Section modulus, in cm^3	Min. web depth d_w, in mm
L, D and T are as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1, Principal particulars h =load head, in metres, measured from mid-point of span to upper deck at side amidships k=higher tensile and steel factor, *See* Pt 3, Ch 2, 1.2, Steel l_e=effective length of stiffening member, in metres, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3.3 Determination of span point s=spacing of floors and longitudinals, in mm C=2.2 for a lower 'tween deck or 2.0 for an upper 'tween deck S=spacing or mean spacing of primary supporting members, in metres	TRANSVERSE FRAMING SYSTEM Aft end region: Web frames below lowest deck and not supporting effective stringers	$Z = 5kShl_e^2$	2.5×depth of adjacent main frames
	Web frames above lowest deck	$Z = 1.68CkTSl_e\sqrt{D}$	
	Any region: Fully effective stringers	$Z = 7.75kShl_e^2$	2.5×depth of adjacent main frames
	Web frames below lowest deck supporting effective stringers	Determined from calculation based on following assumptions: (a) Fixed ends (b) Point loadings (c) Head to upper deck at side (d) Bending stress 93.2 N/mm^2 (e) Shear stress 83.4 N/mm^2	
	LONGITUDINAL FRAMING SYSTEM Side transverses below lowest deck Side transverses above lowest deck	$Z = 10kShl_e^2$ $Z = 2.1CkTSl_e\sqrt{D}$	2.5 × depth of longitudinals

PART

3

CHAPTER 7 **Machinery Spaces**

SECTION 4 **Double and single bottom structure**

4. 1 Double bottom structure

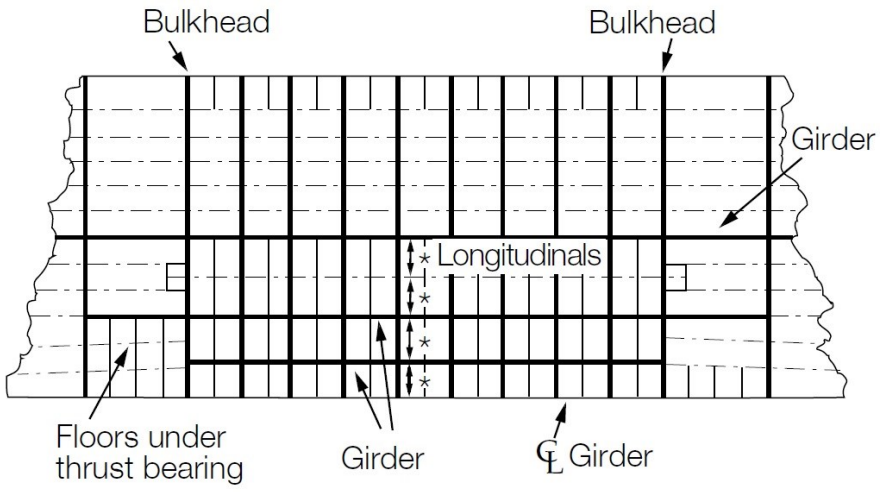
4. 1. 1 The minimum depth of the centre girder and its thickness are to be at least the same as required in way of cargo space amidships, *See* Pt 4, Ch 1, 8 Double bottom structure. A greater depth is recommended in way of large engine-rooms when the variation in draught between light and load conditions is considerable. For passenger ships, *See* Pt 4, Ch 2, 6 Double bottom.

4. 1. 2 In machinery spaces situated adjacent to the after peak, the double bottom is to be transversely framed. Elsewhere transverse or longitudinal framing may be adopted, but *See also* Pt 4, Ch 1, 8 Double bottom structure.

4. 1. 3 Where the double bottom is transversely framed, plate floors are to be fitted at every frame in the engine-room. In way of boilers, plate floors are to be fitted under the boiler bearers, and elsewhere as required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 8 Double bottom structure.

4. 1. 4 Where the double bottom is longitudinally framed, plate floors are to be fitted at every frame under the main engines and thrust bearing. Outboard of the engine seating, floors may be fitted at alternate frames, *See* Figure 7. 4. 1: Engine-room with longitudinal framing.

Figure 7. 4. 1: Engine-room with longitudinal framing



*Maximum spacing = 1,5 x normal spacing of longitudinals

4. 1. 5 The scantlings of floors clear of the main engine seatings, are generally to be as required in way of cargo spaces, *See* Pt 4, Ch 1, 8 Double bottom structure. In way of engine seatings, the floors are to be increased in thickness, *See* Pt 3, Ch 7, 6.2 Seats for engines 6.2.1.

4. 1. 6 Sufficient fore and aft girders are to be arranged in way of the main machinery to effectively distribute its weight and to ensure adequate rigidity of the structure. In midship machinery spaces these girders are to extend for the full length of the space and are to be carried aft to support the foremost shaft tunnel bearing. This extension beyond the after bulkhead of the engine-room is to be for at least three transverse frame spaces, aft of which the girders are to scarf into the structure. Forward of the engine-room bulkhead, the girders are to be tapered off over three frame spaces and effectively scarfed into the structure. In machinery spaces situated at the aft end the girders are to be carried as far aft as practicable and the ends effectively supported by web frames or transverses. For recommended scantlings of engine girders, *See* Pt 3, Ch 7, 6.2 Seats for engines 6.2.1.

4. 1. 7 Outboard of the engines, side girders are to be arranged, where practicable, to line up with the side girders in adjacent cargo spaces. These are to have scantlings as required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 8 Double bottom structure.

4. 1. 8 Where the double bottom is longitudinally framed and transverse floors are fitted in way of the engine seatings as required by Pt 3, Ch 7, 4.1 Double bottom structure 4.1.4, no additional longitudinal stiffening is required in way of the engines other than the main engine girders, provided that the spacing of girders does not exceed 1.5 times the normal spacing of longitudinals. Where this spacing of girders is exceeded, shell longitudinals are to be fitted. These are to scarf into the longitudinal framing clear of the machinery spaces. The scantlings of the longitudinals are to be determined as required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 6 Shell envelope framing using a minimum span of 1.3 m, *See* Figure 7. 4. 1: Engine-room with longitudinal framing.

4. 1. 9 The thickness, t, of inner bottom plating in engine-rooms, clear of the engine seatings, is to be not less than:

$$t = 0.0015\sqrt[4]{LTk^2}(s + 660)\text{mm}$$

and not less than 7.0 mm (symbols as defined in Table 7. 3. 1: Primary structure in machinery spaces). This thickness will be required to be increased in way of engine seatings integral with the tank top, *See* Pt 3, Ch 7, 6.2 Seats for engines 6.2.1.

4. 1. 10 Where the height of inner bottom in the machinery spaces differs from that in adjacent spaces, continuity of longitudinal material is to be maintained by sloping the inner bottom over an adequate longitudinal extent. The knuckles in the plating are to be arranged close to plate floors.

4. 2 Single bottom structure

4. 2. 1 In way of machinery spaces situated amidships the minimum depth of floors is to be at least 10 per cent greater than that required elsewhere in general cargo ships, *See* Pt 4, Ch 1, 7 Single bottom structure. If the top of the floors is recessed in way of the engines, the depth of the floors in way of the recess should generally be not less than that required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 7 Single bottom structure, but this will be specially considered in each case in relation to the arrangements proposed.

4. 2. 2 In way of machinery spaces situated aft, or where there is considerable rise of floor, the depth of the floors will be specially considered.

4. 2. 3 Clear of the engine seatings the thickness and face plate area of the floor webs are to be 1.0 mm and 10 per cent greater, respectively, than the requirements for general cargo ships as given in Pt 4, Ch 1, 7 Single bottom structure. The floors are not to be flanged.

4. 2. 4 Sufficient fore and aft girders are to be arranged in way of machinery to effectively distribute its weight and ensure adequate rigidity of the structure. In midship machinery spaces these girders are to extend for the full length of the space and are to be carried aft to support the foremost shaft tunnel bearing and forward to scarf into the structure. In machinery spaces situated at the aft end, the girders are to be carried as far aft as practicable and the ends effectively supported by web frames or transverses. For scantlings of engine girders, *See* Pt 3, Ch 7, 6.2 Seats for engines 6.2.1.

4. 2. 5 Outboard of the engines, side girders are to be arranged having scantlings as required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 7 Single bottom structure and these are to be scarfed into the side girders in adjacent spaces.

PART

3

CHAPTER **7** **Machinery Spaces**

SECTION **5** **Machinery casings and fuel oil bunkers**

5. 1 Machinery casings

5. 1. 1 The scantlings and arrangements of exposed casings protecting machinery openings are to be in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 8, 2 Scantlings of erections other than forecastles.

5. 1. 2 The minimum scantlings of protected casings are to be in accordance with Table 7. 5. 1: Protected machinery casings.

Table 7. 5. 1: Protected machinery casings

Item	Minimum scantlings
Plating: In way of cargo hold spaces In way of accommodation spaces	 $t = 6.5\sqrt{k}$ mm $t = 5.0\sqrt{k}$ mm
Stiffeners	$Z = 0.008 l_e s k$ cm^3
Symbols	
k = higher tensile steel factor, *See* Pt 3, Ch 2, 1.2, Steel l_e= effective length of stiffening member, in metres, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3.3 Determination of span point s = spacing of stiffeners, in mm t = thickness, in mm Z = section modulus of stiffening member, in cm^3, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3.2 Geometric properties of section	
Note In no case is the depth of the stiffener to be less than 60 mm.	

5. 1. 3 Where casing stiffeners carry loads from deck transverses, girders, etc. or where they are in line with pillars below, they are to be suitably increased, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 1, 4 Deck structure.

5. 1. 4 Where casing sides act as girders supporting decks over, care is to be taken that access openings do not seriously weaken the structure. Openings are to be effectively framed and reinforced if found necessary. Particular attention is to be paid to stiffening where the casing supports the funnel or exhaust uptakes.

5. 2 Fuel oil bunkers

5. 2. 1 Fuel oil bunkers situated within the machinery space are generally to comply with the requirements given in Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships or Pt 3, Ch 9 Special Features, as appropriate.

PART

3

CHAPTER **7** **Machinery Spaces**

SECTION **6** **Engine seatings**

6. 1 General

6. 1. 1 Main engines and thrust bearings are to be effectively secured to the hull structure by seatings of adequate scantlings to resist the various gravitational, thrust, torque, dynamic and vibratory forces which may be imposed on them.

6. 1. 2 For initial guidance, recommended scantlings for engine seatings are given in Pt 3, Ch 7, 6.2 Seats for engines 6.2.1.

6. 1. 3 In the case of higher power engines or turbine installations the seatings should generally be integral with the double bottom structure. The tank top plating in way of the engine foundation plate or the turbine gear case and the thrust bearing should be substantially increased in thickness, *See* Figure 7. 6. 1: Engine seatings, Type 1.

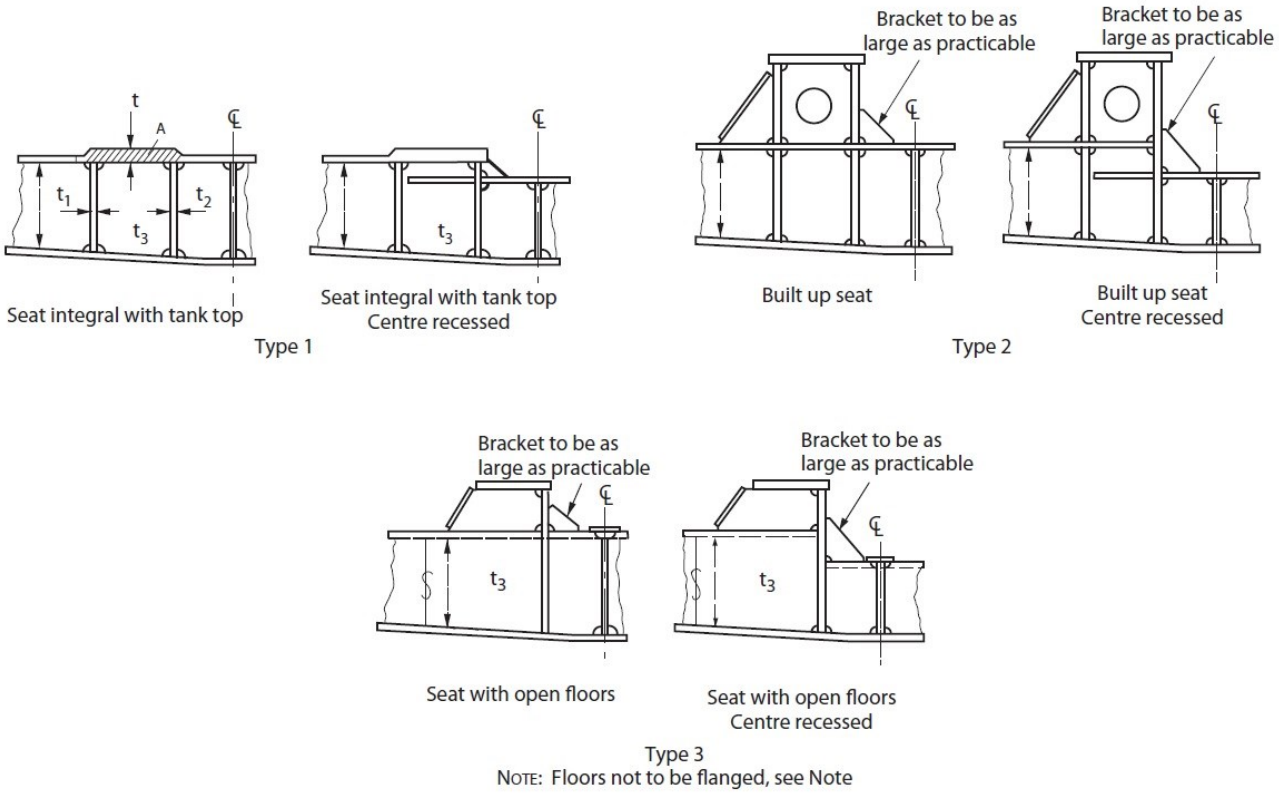
6. 1. 4 If the main machinery is supported on seatings of Type 2 as shown in Figure 7. 6. 1: Engine seatings, these are to be so designed that they distribute the forces from the engine as uniformly as possible into the supporting structure. Longitudinal members supporting the seating are to be arranged in line with girders in the double bottom, and adequate transverse stiffening is to be arranged in line with floors, *See* Figure 7. 6. 1: Engine seatings, Type 2.

6. 1. 5 In ships having open floors in the machinery space the seatings are generally to be arranged above the level of the top of floors and securely bracketed to them, *See* Figure 7. 6. 1: Engine seatings, Type 3.

6. 2 Seats for engines

6. 2. 1 In determining the scantlings of seats for engines, consideration is to be given to the general rigidity of the engine itself and to its design characteristics in regard to out of balance forces. As a general guide to designers, recommended scantlings are given in Table 7. 6. 1: Seats for engines - Recommended scantlings.

Figure 7. 6. 1: Engine seatings



Note *See* Pt 3, Ch 7, 4.2 Single bottom structure 4.2.3

Table 7. 6. 1: Seats for engines - Recommended scantlings

Symbols	Item	Scantlings of one seat
L as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1, Principal particulars f=engine factor $=\frac{P}{Rl}$ t=minimum thickness of top plate, in mm	Top plate	$A = (120 + 44.2f + 4.07f^2)\text{cm}^2$
t_1, t_2=main engine girder thicknesses, in mm t_3=floor plate thickness under seating, in mm, *See also* Figure 7. 6. 1: Engine seatings A=area of top plate for one side of seat, in cm^2		Minimum thickness: (a) Where two girders fitted $t = (19 + 3.4f)$ mm (b) Where one girder fitted $t = (25 + 3.4f)$ mm
	Girders (both inside and above double bottom where fitted)	Number:

where *l*=effective length of engine foundation plate, in metres, required for bolting the engine to the seating. =The thrust and gearcase seating is to be considered as a separate item *P*=power of one engine at maximum service speed, in kW (bhp)		Generally two but a single girder can be accepted where all the following apply: (a) $f < 1.84$ (b) $P < 5900$ kW (c) $L < 100$ m
R=rev/min of engine at maximum service speed		Total thickness: (a) Where two girders are fitted $t_1 + t_2 = (28 + 4.08f)$ mm (b) Where one girder is fitted $t_1 = (15 + 4.08f)$ mm
	Floors (between girders or under seat where a single girder is fitted)	Thickness: $t_3 = (10 + 1.5f)$ mm

6. 3 Seats for turbines

6. 3. 1 Seats are to be so designed as to provide effective support for the turbines and ensure their proper alignment with the gearing, and (where applicable) allow for thermal expansion of the casings. In general, the seats are not to be arranged in way of breaks or recesses in the double bottom.

6. 4 Seats for boilers

6. 4. 1 Boiler bearers are to be of substantial construction and efficiently supported by transverse and horizontal brackets. These should generally be arranged in line with plate floors and girders in a double bottom or with suitable deep beams or transverses and girders at boiler flats. Suitable allowance is to be made in the design of the supporting structure for the variation in loading due to thermal expansion effects, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 14, 2 Fuel oil - General requirements.

6. 5 Seats for auxiliary machinery

6. 5. 1 Auxiliary machinery is to be secured on seatings, of adequate scantlings, so arranged as to distribute the loadings evenly into the supporting structure.

PART

3

CHAPTER **8 Superstructures, Deckhouses and Bulwarks**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**1068**
	1. 1	Application	1068
	1. 2	Symbols	1068
	1. 3	Definition of tiers	1070
	1. 4	Design pressure head	1071
SECTION 2	**Scantlings of erections other than forecastles**		**1072**
	2. 1	Thickness of bulkhead and side plating	1072
	2. 2	Stiffeners and their connections	1072
	2. 3	Deck plating	1072
	2. 4	Deck longitudinals and beams	1073
	2. 5	Deck girders and transverses	1074
	2. 6	Strengthening at ends and sides of erections	1074
	2. 7	Erections contributing to hull strength	1074
	2. 8	Unusual designs	1075
SECTION 3	**Aluminium erections**		**1076**
	3. 1	Scantlings	1076
	3. 2	Bimetallic joints	1076
SECTION 4	**Forecastles**		**1077**
	4. 1	Construction	1077
SECTION 5	**Bulwarks, guard rails and other means for the protection of crew**		**1078**
	5. 1	General requirements	1078
	5. 2	Bulwark construction	1080
	5. 3	Freeing arrangements	1080
	5. 4	Free flow area	1085
	5. 5	Special requirements for tugs and offshore supply ships	1086

PART

3

CHAPTER **8 Superstructures, Deckhouses and Bulwarks**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 8. 1. 1: Values of α 1070
Table 8. 1. 2: Values of λ 1070
Table 8. 2. 1: Stiffener end connections 1073
Table 8. 2. 2: Thickness of deck plating 1073
Table 8. 3. 1: Percentage increase of scantlings 1076
Table 8. 5. 1: 1 Protection of crew 1081

PART

3

CHAPTER **8 Superstructures, Deckhouses and Bulwarks**

LIST OF FGURES

Figure 8. 5. 1: Support of stanchions 1079

PART

3

CHAPTER 8 Superstructures, Deckhouses and Bulwarks

SECTION 1 General

1. 1 Application

1. 1. 1 This Chapter applies to all types of ships detailed in Pt 4 Ship Structures (Ship Types), except for deckhouses situated on forecastles of offshore supply ships, which are dealt with separately in Pt 4, Ch 4 Offshore Support Vessels.

1. 1. 2 The scantlings of exposed bulkheads and decks of superstructures and deckhouses are generally to comply with the following requirements, but increased scantlings may be required where the structure is subjected to loading additional to Rule. Where there is no access from inside the house to below the freeboard deck, or where a bulkhead is in a particularly sheltered location, the scantlings may be specially considered.

1. 1. 3 The term `erection' is used in this Section to include both superstructures and deckhouses.

1. 1. 4 For requirements relating to companionways, doors, accesses and skylights, *See* Pt 3, Ch 11 Closing Arrangements for Shell, Deck and Bulkheads.

1. 1. 5 The requirements in this Chapter are not applicable to Double Hull Oil Tankers or Bulk Carriers with a **CSR** notation. *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull).

1. 2 Symbols

1. 2. 1 The following symbols and definitions are applicable to this Chapter, unless otherwise stated:

L, B, T and C_b	=	as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1, Principal particulars
b	=	breadth of deckhouse, at the positions under consideration, in metres
k	=	higher tensile steel factor, *See* Pt 3, Ch 2, 1.2, Steel
l_e	=	effective length, in metres, of the stiffening member, deck beam or longitudinal measured between span points, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3.3 Determination of span point
l_s	=	span, in metres, of stiffeners, and is to be taken as the 'tween deck or house height but in no case as less than 2.0 m
s	=	spacing of stiffeners, beams or longitudinals, in mm
s_b	=	standard spacing, in mm, of stiffeners, beams or longitudinals, and is to be taken as:

(a) for 0.05L from the ends:

s_b = 610 mm or that required by (b), whichever is the lesser

= (b) elsewhere:

s_b = $470 + 1.67L_2$ mm

= but forward of $0.2L$ from the forward perpendicular s_b is not to exceed 700 mm

B_1 = actual breadth of ship, at the section under consideration, measured at the weather deck, in metres

D = moulded depth of ship, in metres, to the uppermost continuous deck or the deck next above a height of $1.6T$ from the base line amidships, whichever is the lesser

L_2 = length of ship, in metres, but is not to be taken greater than 250 m or less than 50 m

L_3 = length of ship, in metres, but is not to be taken greater than 300 m

X = distance, in metres, between the after perpendicular and the bulkhead under consideration. When determining the scantlings of deckhouse sides, the deckhouse is to be subdivided into parts of approximately equal length not exceeding $0.15L$ each, and X is to be measured to the mid-length of each part

α = a coefficient given in Table 8. 1. 1: Values of α

β = $1.0 + \left(\frac{\left(\frac{X}{L} - 0.45\right)}{(C_b + 0.2)}\right)^2 f$ or $\frac{X}{L} \leq 0.45$

= $1.0 + 1.5\left(\frac{\left(\frac{X}{L} - 0.45\right)}{(C_b + 0.2)}\right)^2 f$ or $\frac{X}{L} > 0.45$

= C_b is to be taken as not less than 0.6 nor greater than 0.8. Where the aft end of an erection is forward of amidships, the value of C_b used in determining β for the aft end bulkhead need be taken as not less than 0.8

γ = vertical distance, in metres, from the summer load waterline to the mid-point of span of the bulkhead stiffener, or the mid-point of the plate panel, as appropriate

δ = 1.0 for exposed machinery casings and houses protecting openings to pump-rooms

= $\left(0.3 + 0.7\frac{b}{B_1}\right)$elsewhere, but in no case to be taken less than 0.475

λ = a coefficient given in Table 8. 1. 2: Values of λ

1. 3 Definition of tiers

1. 3. 1 The lowest, or first tier, is normally that which is directly situated on the deck to which *D* is measured. The second tier is the next tier above the lowest tier and so on.

Table 8. 1. 1: Values of α

Position		α
Lowest tier	- unprotected front	$2.0 + 0.0083\mathrm{L}_3$
Second tier	- unprotected front	$1.0 + 0.0083\mathrm{L}_3$
Third tier and above	- unprotected front	$0.5 + 0.0067\mathrm{L}_3$
All tiers	- protected fronts	
All tiers	- sides	
All tiers	- aft end where aft of amidships	$0.7 + 0.001\mathrm{L}_3 - 0.8\frac{X}{L}$
All tiers	- aft end where forward of amidships	$0.5 + 0.001\mathrm{L}_3 - 0.4\frac{X}{L}$

Table 8. 1. 2: Values of λ

Length *L*	λ	Expression for λ
metres		$\mathrm{L} \leq 150$ m $\lambda = (\frac{L}{10}e^{-\frac{L}{300}}) - (1 - (\frac{L}{150})^2)$
20	0.89	
30	1.76	
40	2.57	
50	3.34	
60	4.07	
70	4.76	
80	5.41	
90	6.03	
110	7.16	
130	8.18	
150	9.10	
150	9.10	$150\text{ m} \leq \mathrm{L} \leq 300\text{ m}\ \lambda = \frac{L}{10}e^{-\frac{L}{300}}$
170	9.65	
190	10.08	
210	10.43	
230	10.69	
250	10.86	
270	10.98	

290	11.03	
300	11.03	
300 and above	11.03	$L \geq 300$ m $\lambda = 11.03$

1. 3. 2 Where the freeboard corresponding to the required summer moulded draught for the ship can be obtained by considering the ship to have a virtual moulded depth at least one standard superstructure height less than the Rule depth, *D*, measured to the uppermost continuous deck, proposals to treat the first tier erection as a second tier, and so on, will be specially considered. The standard height of superstructure is the height defined in the *International Convention on Load Lines, 1966*.

1. 4 Design pressure head

1. 4. 1 The design pressure head, *h*, to be used in the determination of erection scantlings is to be taken as:

$$h = \alpha\delta(\beta\lambda - \gamma) \text{ m}$$

1. 4. 2 In no case is the design pressure head to be taken as less than the following:

a. Lowest tier of unprotected fronts:
minimum $h = 2.5 + 0.01L_2$ m

b. All other locations:
minimum $h = 1.25 + 0.005L_2$ m.

PART

3

CHAPTER 8 **Superstructures, Deckhouses and Bulwarks**

SECTION 2 **Scantlings of erections other than forecastles**

2. 1 Thickness of bulkhead and side plating

2. 1. 1 The thickness, *t*, of plating of the fronts, sides and aft ends of all erections, other than the sides of superstructures where these are an extension of the side shell, is to be not less than:

$$t = 0.003s\sqrt{kh}\ \text{mm}$$

but in no case is the thickness to be less than:

a. for the lowest tier:

$t = (5.0 + 0.01L_3)\sqrt{k}$ mm

b. for the upper tiers:

$t = (4.0 + 0.01L_3)\sqrt{k}$ mm but not less than 5.0 mm

2. 1. 2 The thickness of sides of poops and bridges is to be as required by Pt 3, Ch 6, 3 Shell envelope plating or Pt 4, Ch 1, 5 Shell envelope plating, as appropriate.

2. 2 Stiffeners and their connections

2. 2. 1 The modulus of stiffeners, *Z,* on front, side and end bulkheads of all erections, other than sides of superstructures, is to be not less than:

$$Z = 0.0035hsl_s^2k\ \text{cm}^3$$

2. 2. 2 The section modulus of side frames of poops and bridges is to comply with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 6, 4 Shell envelope framing or Pt 4, Ch 1, 6 Shell envelope framing, as appropriate.

2. 2. 3 The end connections of stiffeners are to be as given in Table 8. 2. 1: Stiffener end connections.

2. 3 Deck plating

2. 3. 1 The requirements of Pt 3, Ch 8, 2.3, Deck plating need not apply to effective superstructure decks of passenger ships and ferries where direct calculations have been carried out in accordance with the SDA procedure relevant to the ship type.

2. 3. 2 The thickness of erection deck plating is to be not less than that required by Table 8. 2. 2: Thickness of deck plating.

2. 3. 3 When decks are fitted with approved sheathing, the thicknesses derived from Table 8. 2. 2: Thickness of deck plating may be reduced by 10 per cent for a 50 mm sheathing thickness, or 5 per cent for 25.5 mm, with intermediate values in proportion. The steel deck is to be coated with a suitable material in order to prevent corrosive action, and the sheathing or composition is to be effectively secured to the deck, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 4 Fire Protection, Detection and Extinction Requirements. Inside deckhouses the thickness may be reduced by a further 10 per cent.

Table 8. 2. 1: Stiffener end connections

Position	Attachment at top and bottom
1. Front stiffeners of lower tiers and of upper tiers when L is 160 m or greater	*See* Pt 3, Ch 10 Welding and Structural Details
2. Front stiffeners of upper tiers when L is less than 160 m	May be unattached
3. Side stiffeners of lower tiers where two or more tiers are fitted	Bracketed, unless stiffener modulus is increased by 20 per cent and ends are welded to the deck all round
4. Side stiffeners if only one tier is fitted, and aft end stiffeners of after deckhouses on deck to which D is measured	*See* Pt 3, Ch 10 Welding and Structural Details
5. Side stiffeners of upper tiers when L is 160 m or greater	*See* Pt 3, Ch 10 Welding and Structural Details
6. Side stiffeners of upper tiers when L is less than 160 m	May be unattached
7. Aft end stiffeners except as covered by item 4	May be unattached
8. Exposed machinery and pump-room casings - Front stiffeners on amidship casings and all stiffeners on aft end casings which are situated on the deck to which D is measured	Bracketed
9. All other stiffeners on exposed machinery and pump-room casings	6.5 cm^2 of weld

Table 8. 2. 2: Thickness of deck plating

	Thickness of deck plating, in mm		
Position	$L \leq 100$ m		$L > 100$ m
Top of first tier erection	$(5.5 + 0.02L)\sqrt{\frac{ks}{s_b}}$		$7.5\sqrt{\frac{ks}{s_b}}$
Top of second tier erection	$(5.0 + 0.02L)\sqrt{\frac{ks}{s_b}}$		$7.0\sqrt{\frac{ks}{s_b}}$
Top of third tier and above	$(4.5 + 0.02L)\sqrt{\frac{ks}{s_b}}$	but not less than 5.0 mm	$6.5\sqrt{\frac{ks}{s_b}}$

2. 4 Deck longitudinals and beams

2. 4. 1 The requirements of Pt 3, Ch 8, 2.4, Deck longitudinals and beams need not apply to effective superstructure decks of passenger ships and ferries where direct calculations have been carried out in accordance with the SDA procedure relevant to the ship type.

2. 4. 2 The section modulus of superstructure deck longitudinals and beams is to be in accordance with the requirements for location (2) in Table 1. 4. 4: Cargo and accommodation deck longitudinals

and location (3) in Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships, using design heads not less than those specified in Table 3.5.1 in Chapter 3 for superstructure decks.

2. 4. 3 Transverse deck beams in deckhouses and deck longitudinals other than as in Pt 3, Ch 8, 2.7 Erections contributing to hull strength are to have a section modulus, Z, not less than:

$Z = 0.0048\ h_2\ sle^2k\ cm^3$, but in no case less than:

$Z = 0.025 sm^3$

and the value of h_2, the load head, is to be taken as not less than:

on first tier decks	0.9 m
on second tier decks	0.6 m
on third tier decks and above	0.45 m

2. 5 Deck girders and transverses

2. 5. 1 The section modulus of deck girders and transverses is to be in accordance with the requirements for location (1) in Table 1. 4. 6: Deck girders, transverses and hatch beams inPt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships, using design heads not less than those specified in Table 3. 5. 1: Design heads and permissible cargo loadings for superstructure decks.

2. 6 Strengthening at ends and sides of erections

2. 6. 1 Web frames or partial bulkheads are to be fitted within poops and bridges that have large deckhouses or other erections above.

2. 6. 2 Web frames or equivalent strengthening are also to be arranged to support the sides and ends of large deckhouses.

2. 6. 3 These web frames should be spaced about 9 m apart and are to be arranged, where practicable, in line with watertight bulkheads below. Webs are also to be arranged in way of large openings, boats, davits and other points of high loading.

2. 6. 4 Arrangements are to be made to minimise the effect of discontinuities in erections. All openings cut in the sides are to be substantially framed and have well rounded corners. Continuous coamings or girders are to be fitted below and above doors and similar openings. House tops are to be strengthened in way of davits. Special care is to be taken to minimise the size and number of openings in the side bulkheads in the region of the ends of erections within $0.5L$ amidships. Account is to be taken of the high vertical shear loading which can occur in these areas.

2. 6. 5 Adequate support under the ends of erections is to be provided in the form of webs, pillars, diaphragms or bulkheads in conjunction with reinforced deck beams. At the corners of houses and in way of supporting structures, attention is to be given to the connection to the deck, and inserts or equivalent arrangements are generally to be fitted especially for erections that are effective in resisting vertical hull girder bending as defined in Pt 3, Ch 3, 4.2 Collision bulkhead.

2. 6. 6 The side plating of bridges having a length of $0.15L$ or greater is to be increased in thickness by 25 per cent at the ends of the structure, and is to be tapered into the upper deck sheerstrake. This plating is to be efficiently stiffened at the upper edge and supported by web plates not more than 1.5 m from the end bulkhead. Proposals for alternative arrangements, including the use of higher tensile steel, will be individually considered.

2. 7 Erections contributing to hull strength

2. 7. 1 Where a long superstructure or deckhouse is fitted, extending at least $0.15L$, the scantlings of the first tier deck plating and longitudinals may be required to be increased, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3.4, Calculation of hull section modulus and Pt 3, Ch 4, 2.3 Open type ships.

2. 8 Unusual designs

2. 8. 1 Where superstructures or deckhouses are of unusual design, the strength is to be not less than that required by this Chapter for a conventional design.

PART

3

CHAPTER 8 **Superstructures, Deckhouses and Bulwarks**

SECTION 3 **Aluminium erections**

3. 1 Scantlings

3. 1. 1 Where an aluminium alloy complying with Ch 8 Aluminium Alloys of the Rules for Materials (Part 2) is used in the construction of erections, the scantlings of these erections are to be increased (relative to those required for steel construction) by the percentages given in Table 8. 3. 1: Percentage increase of scantlings.

Table 8. 3. 1: Percentage increase of scantlings

Item	Percentage increase
Fronts, sides, aft ends, unsheathed deck plating	20
Decks sheathed in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 8, 2.3 Deck plating 2.3.3	10
Deck sheathed with wood, and on which the plating is fixed to the wood sheathing at the centre of each beam space	Nil
Stiffeners and beams	70
Scantlings of small isolated houses	Nil

3. 1. 2 The thickness, t, of aluminium alloy members is to be not less than:

$$t = 2.5 + 0.022 d_w \text{ mm need not exceed } 10 \text{ mm}$$

where

d_w = depth of the section, in mm

$$I = 5.25 Z l_e \text{ cm}^4$$

Where l_e is the effective length of the member in metres, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 8, 1.2 Symbols 1.2.1, and Z is the section modulus of the stiffener and attached plating calculated using the formulae in Pt 3, Ch 8, 2.2 Stiffeners and their connections 2.2.1 and Pt 3, Ch 8, 2.4 Deck longitudinals and beams 2.4.3, as applicable, taking k as 1.

3. 2 Bimetallic joints

3. 2. 1 Where aluminium erections are arranged above a steel hull, details of the arrangements in way of the bimetallic connections are to be submitted.

PART

3

CHAPTER **8** **Superstructures, Deckhouses and Bulwarks**

SECTION **4** **Forecastles**

4. 1 Construction

4. 1. 1 Side plating and framing of forecastles are to comply with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 5, 3 Shell envelope plating and Pt 3, Ch 5, 4 Shell envelope framing respectively. The end plating and its stiffening are to comply with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 8, 2.1 Thickness of bulkhead and side plating 2.1.1 and Pt 3, Ch 8, 2.2 Stiffeners and their connections 2.2.1 respectively.

4. 1. 2 The bow height and the extent of the forecastle are to comply with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 3, 6 Minimum bow heights, reserve buoyancy and extent of forecastle.

4. 1. 3 The thickness, t, of forecastle deck plating is to be not less than:

$$t = (6 + 0.017L)\sqrt{\frac{k_s}{s_b}}\,\text{mm}$$

4. 1. 4 Deck longitudinals and beams are to comply with Pt 3, Ch 5, 2.3 Deck stiffening, using a head of 1.8 m forward of $0.075L$ and 1.5 m between $0.12L$ and $0.075L$.

4. 1. 5 Girders, transverses and pillars are to be in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 5, 2.4 Deck supporting structure, and the depth of the girder or transverse is to be not less than twice that of the beam or longitudinal supported.

PART

3

CHAPTER 8 **Superstructures, Deckhouses and Bulwarks**

SECTION 5 **Bulwarks, guard rails and other means for the protection of crew**

5. 1 General requirements

5. 1. 1 Bulwarks or guard rails are to be provided around all exposed decks. Bulwarks or guard rails are to be not less than 1.0 m in height measured above sheathing, and are to be constructed as required by this Section. Consideration will be given to cases where this height would interfere with the normal operation of the ship.

5. 1. 2 The freeing arrangements in bulwarks are to be in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 8, 5.3, Freeing arrangements.

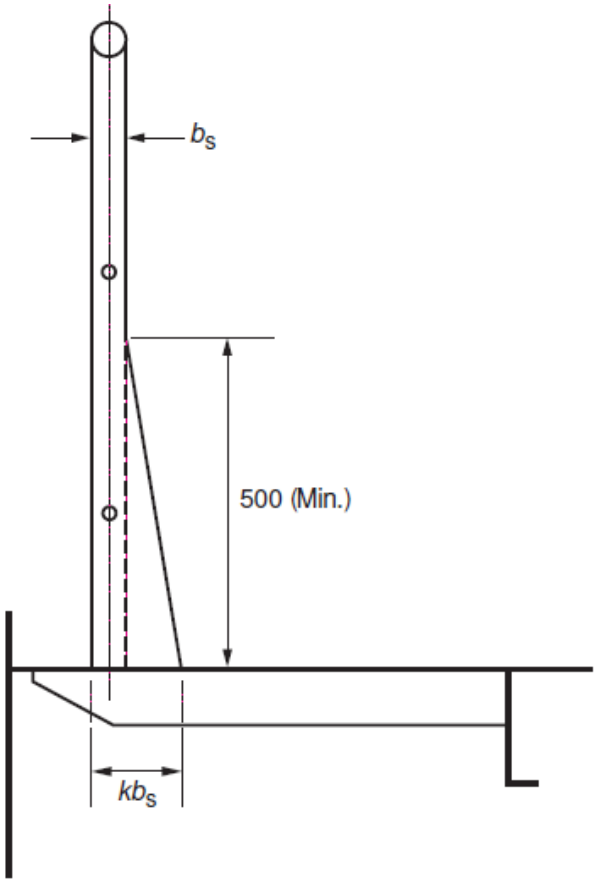
5. 1. 3 Guard rails fitted on superstructure and freeboards decks are to have at least three courses. The opening below the lowest course of guard rails is not to exceed 230 mm. The other courses are to be spaced not more than 380 mm apart. In the case of ships with rounded gunwales, the guard rail supports are to be placed on the flat of the deck. In other locations, guard rails with at least two courses are to be fitted.

5. 1. 4 Guard rails are to be fitted with fixed, removable or hinged stanchions fitted no more than 1.5 m apart. Removable or hinged stanchions shall be capable of being locked in the upright position.

5. 1. 5 At least every third stanchion is to be supported by a stay. In lieu of this, flat steel stanchions shall be of increased breadth as given in Figure 8. 5. 1: Support of stanchions

5. 1. 6 , and aligned with a member below deck unless the deck plating thickness exceeds 20 mm. Guard rail stanchions of increased breadth are to be welded to the deck with double continuous fillet weld with a minimum leg size of 7 mm or in compliance with a standard recognised by ACS.

Figure 8. 5. 1: Support of stanchions



In lieu of at least every third stanchion supported by stay, alternatively:

(a) at least every third stanchion shall be of increased breadth: $kb_S = 2{,}9b_S$

(b) at least every second stanchion shall be of increased breadth: $kb_S = 2{,}4b_S$

(c) every stanchion shall be of increased breadth: $kb_S = 1{,}9b_S$

where

b_S breadth of normal stanchion as specified in an appropriate standard recognised by LR

Stanchions with increased breadth are to be aligned with members below deck, minimum 100 x 12 flat bar welded to deck by double continuous fillet weld. Stanchions with increased breadth need not be aligned with under deck structure for deck plating exceeding 20 mm.

5. 1. 7 Where necessary for the normal operation of the ship, steel wire ropes may be accepted in lieu of guard rails. Wires are to be made taut by means of turnbuckles. Chains are only permitted in short lengths in way of access openings.

5. 1. 8 Satisfactory means, in the form of guard rails, life-lines, handrails, gangways, underdeck passageways or other equivalent arrangements, are to be provided for the protection of the crew in getting to and from their quarters, the machinery space and all other parts used in the necessary work of the ship in accordance with Table 8. 5. 1: 1 Protection of crew.

5. 1. 9 Where gangways on a trunk are provided by means of a stringer plate fitted outboard of the trunk side bulkheads (port and starboard), each gangway is to be a solid plate, effectively stayed and supported, with a clear walkway at least 450 mm wide, at or near the top of the coaming, with guard rails complying with Pt 3, Ch 8, 5.1 General requirements and hatch cover securing appliances accessible from the gangway.

5. 1. 10 Where permitted by the National Authority, gangways or walkways may be omitted on ships engaged on protected or extended protected water service. However, life-lines are to be provided on tankers and flush deck ships, or where the cargo hatch coamings are less than 600 mm high.

5. 1. 11 For a Type 'A' ship with freeboards assigned greater than, or equal to, Type 'B', a life−line may be provided in lieu of a walkway.

5. 2 Bulwark construction

5. 2. 1 Plate bulwarks are to be stiffened by a strong rail section and supported by stays from the deck. The spacing of these stays forward of 0.07*L* from the forward perpendicular is to be not more than 1.2 m on Type `A', Type `B-60' and Type `B-100' ships (as defined in Pt 3, Ch 11, 1.1, Application), and not more than 1.83 m on other Types. Elsewhere, bulwark stays are to be not more then 1.83 m apart. Where bulwarks are cut to form a gangway or other opening, stays of increased strength are to be fitted at the ends of the openings. Bulwarks are to be adequately strengthened in way of eyeplates for cargo gear, and in way of mooring pipes the plating is to be doubled or increased in thickness and adequately stiffened.

5. 2. 2 Bulwarks should not be cut for gangway or other openings near the breaks of superstructures, and are also to be arranged to ensure their freedom from main structural stresses. *See* shell plating in appropriate Chapters.

5. 2. 3 The section modulus, *Z,* at the bottom of the bulwark stay is to be not less than:

$$Z = (33.0 + 0.44L)\, h^2\, s\ cm^3$$

Where

h = height of bulwark from the top of the deck plating to the top of the rail, in metres

s = spacing of the stays, in metres, in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 8, 5.2 Bulwark construction 5.2.1

L = length of ship, in metres (as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1, Principal particulars), but to be not greater than 100 m.

5. 2. 4 In the calculation of the section modulus, only the material connected to the deck is to be included. The bulb or flange of the stay may be taken into account where connected to the deck, and where, at the ends of the ship, the bulwark plating is connected to the sheerstrake, a width of plating not exceeding 600 mm may also be included. The free edge of the stay is to be stiffened.

5. 2. 5 Bulwark stays are to be supported by, or to be in line with, suitable underdeck stiffening, which is to be connected by double continuous fillet welds in way of the bulwark stay connection.

5. 2. 6 It should be noted that the above requirements do not allow for any loading from deck cargoes.

5. 3 Freeing arrangements

5. 3. 1 The requirements of Pt 3, Ch 8, 5.3,, Freeing arrangements 5.3.2 to Pt 3, Ch 8, 5.3 Freeing arrangements 5.3.11 apply to ships of Type `B'. Additional requirements applicable to ships of Type `A', Type `B-100' and Type `B-60' are indicated in Pt 3, Ch 8, 5.3 Freeing arrangements

5.3.18 and Pt 3, Ch 8, 5.3 Freeing arrangements 5.3.20. The ship Types are as defined in Pt 3, Ch 11, 1.1, Application.

5. 3. 2 Where bulwarks on the weather portions of freeboard or superstructure decks form wells, ample provision is to be made for rapidly freeing the decks of large quantities of water by means of freeing ports, and also for draining them.

5. 3. 3 The minimum freeing area on each side of the ship, for each well on the freeboard deck or raised quarterdeck, where the sheer in the well is not less than the standard sheer required by the *Load Lines, 1966/1988 - International Convention on Load Lines, 1966, as Amended by the Protocol of 1988* , is to be derived from the following formula:

a. where the length, *l*, of the bulwark in the well is 20 m or less:
area required $= 0.7 + 0.035/\mathrm{m}^2$

b. where the length, *l*, exceeds 20 m:
area required $= 0.07/\mathrm{m}^2$

l need not be taken greater than $0.7L_L$, where L_L is the length of the ship as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1, Principal particulars.

5. 3. 4 If the average height of the bulwark exceeds 1.2 m or is less than 0.9 m, the freeing area is to be increased or decreased, respectively, by 0.004 m^2 per metre of length of well for each 0.1 m increase or decrease in height respectively.

5. 3. 5 The minimum freeing area for each well on a first tier superstructure is to be half the area calculated from Pt 3, Ch 8, 5.3 Freeing arrangements 5.3.3.

5. 3. 6 Two-thirds of the freeing port area required is to be provided in the half of the well nearest to the lowest point of the sheer curve.

5. 3. 7 When the deck has little or no sheer, the freeing area is to be spread along the length of the well.

Table 8. 5. 1: 1 Protection of crew

<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">Ship Type</th><th rowspan="2">Location in ship</th><th rowspan="2">Assigned Summer Freeboard, in mm</th><th colspan="4">Acceptable arrangements according to type of freeboard assigned</th></tr>
<tr><th>Type A</th><th>Type (B-100)</th><th>Type (B-60)</th><th>Type (B & B +)</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Oil tankers, chemical tankers and gas carriers (See Pt 3, Ch 8, 1.1 Application 1.1.5)</td><td rowspan="2">1.1 Access to bow
1.1.1 Between poop and bow or
1.1.2 Between a deckhouse containing living accommodation or navigation equipment, or both, and bow, or
1.1.3 In the case of a flush deck vessel, between crew accommodation and the forward ends of ship</td><td>≤(A_f+H_s)</td><td>a
e
f(1)
f(5)</td><td>a
e
f(1)
f(5)</td><td>a
e
f(1)
f(5)</td><td>a
e
f(1)
f(5)</td></tr>
<tr><td>>(A_f+H_s)</td><td colspan="4">a
e
f(1)
f(5)</td></tr>
<tr><td>1.2 Access to after end
In the case of a flush deck vessel, between crew accommodation and the after end of ship</td><td colspan="4">As required in item 2.2.4 in Pt 3, Ch 8, 5.3 Freeing arrangements 5.3.7 for other types of ships</td></tr>
</table>

Other ship type	2.1 Access to midship quarters 2.1.1 Between poop and bridge, or	≤ 3000 mm	a b e	a b e	a b c(1) e f(1)	a b c(1) c(2) c(4) d(1) d(2) d(3) e f(1) f(2) f(4)
	2.1.2 Between poop and deckhouse containing living accommodation or navigation equipment, or both	> 3000 mm	a b e	a b e	a b c(1) c(2) e f(1) f(2)	
	2.2 Access to ends 2.2.1 Between poop and bow (if there is no bridge), 2.2.2 Between bridge and bow, or	≤ 3000 mm	a b c(1) e f(1)	a b c(1) c(2) e f(1) f(2)	a b c(1) c(2) e f(1) f(2)	
	2.2.3 Between a deckhouse containing living accommodation or navigation equipment, or both, and bow, or 2.2.4 In the case of a flush deck vessel, between crew accommodation and the forward and after ends of ship	> 3000 mm	a b c(1) d(1) e f(1)	a b c(1) c(2) d(1) d(2) e f(1) f(2)	a b c(1) c(2) d(1) d(2) d(3) e f(1) f(2) f(4)	

Symbols

A_f = the minimum summer freeboard calculated as Type A ship regardless of type freeboard actually assigned

H_s = the standard height of superstructure as defined in *International Convention on Load Lines*, Regulation 33

Acceptable arrangements:

Acceptable arrangements referred to in the Table are defined as follows:

a A well lighted and ventilated under-deck passageway (clear opening 0.8 m wide, 2 m high) as close as practicable to the freeboard deck, connecting and providing access to the locations in question.

b A permanent and efficiently constructed gangway fitted at or above the level of the superstructure deck on or as near as practicable to the centreline of the ship, providing a continuous platform at least 0.6 m in width and a non-slip surface, with guard rails extending on each side throughout its length. Guard-rails shall be at least 1 m high with courses as required in Pt 3, Ch 8, 5.1, General requirements, and supported by stanchions spaced not more than 1.5 m; a foot-stop shall be provided.

c A permanent walkway at least 0.6 m in width fitted at freeboard deck level consisting of two rows of guard-rails with stanchions spaced not more than 3 m. The number of courses of rails and their spacing are to be as required by Pt 3, Ch 8, 5.1, General requirements. On Type B ships, hatchway coamings not less than 0.6 m in height may be regarded as forming one side of the walkway, provided that between the hatchways two rows of guard rails are fitted.

d A 10 mm minimum thickness diameter wire rope life-line supported by stanchions about 10 m apart, or a single hand rail or wire rope attached to hatch coamings, continued and adequately supported between hatchways.
e A permanent and efficiently constructed gangway fitted at or above the level of the superstructure deck on or as near as practicable to the centreline of the ship: • located so as not to hinder easy access across the working areas of the deck; • providing a continuous platform at least 1.0 m in width; • constructed of fire resistant and non-slip material; • fitted with guard rails extending on each side throughout its length; guard rails should be at least 1.0 m high with courses as required by Regulation 25(3) and supported by stanchions spaced not more than 1.5 m; • provided with a foot stop on each side; • having openings, with ladders where appropriate, to and from the deck. Openings should not be more than 40 m apart; • having shelters of substantial construction set in way of the gangway at intervals not exceeding 45 m if the length of the exposed deck to be traversed exceeds 70 m. Every such shelter should be capable of accommodating at least one person and be so constructed as to afford weather protection on the forward port and starboard sides.
f A permanent and efficiently constructed walkway fitted at freeboard deck level on or as near as practicable to the centre line of the ship having the same specifications as those for a permanent gangway listed in (e) except for foot-stops. On Type B ships (certified for the carriage of liquids in bulk), with a combined height of hatch coaming and fitted hatch cover of together not less than 1 m in height the hatchway coamings may be regarded as forming one side of the walkway, provided that between the hatchways two rows of guard rails are fitted.
Alternative transverse locations for c, d and f: (1) At or near centreline of ship; or fitted on hatchways at or near centreline of ship. (2) Fitted on each side of the ship. (3) Fitted on one side of the ship, provision being made for fitting on either side. (4) Fitted on one side of the ship only. (5) Fitted on each side of hatchways as near to the centreline as practicable.
Note *1.* In all cases where wire ropes are fitted, adequate devices are to be provided to ensure their tautness. **Note** *2.* Wire ropes may only be accepted in lieu of guard rails in special circumstances and then only in limited lengths. **Note** *3.* Lengths of chain may only be accepted in lieu of guard rails if fitted between two fixed stanchions. **Note** *4.* Where stanchions are fitted, every third stanchion is to be supported by a bracket or stay. **Note** *5.* Removable or hinged stanchions shall be capable of being locked in the upright position. **Note** *6.* A means of passage over obstructions, if any, such as pipes or other fittings of a permanent nature, should be provided. **Note** *7.* Generally, the width of the gangway or deck-level walkway should not exceed 1.5 m.

5. 3. 8 In ships with no sheer the freeing area as calculated from Pt 3, Ch 8, 5.3 Freeing arrangements 5.3.3 is to be increased by 50 per cent. Where the sheer is less than the standard, the percentage is to be obtained by linear interpolation.

5. 3. 9 Where the length of the well is less than 10 m, or where a deckhouse occupies most of the length, the freeing port area will be specially considered but in general need not exceed 10 per cent of the bulwark area.

5. 3. 10 Where it is not practical to provide sufficient freeing port area in the bulwark, particularly in small ships, credit can be given for bollard and fairlead openings where these extend to the deck.

5. 3. 11 Where a ship fitted with bulwarks has a continuous trunk, or hatch side coamings that are continuous, or substantially continuous, the minimum freeing area is to be not less than 20 per cent of the total bulwark area where the width of trunk or hatchway is 0.4*B* or less, and not less than 10 per cent of the total bulwark area when the width of the trunk or hatch is 0.75*B* or greater. The freeing area required for an intermediate width of trunk or hatch is to be obtained by linear interpolation.

5. 3. 12 Where the trunk referred to in Pt 3, Ch 8, 5.3 Freeing arrangements 5.3.11 or its equivalent is included in the calculation of freeboard, open rails are to be fitted for at least 50 per cent of the length of the exposed part of the weather deck. Alternatively, if a continuous bulwark is fitted, the minimum freeing area is to be at least 33 per cent of the bulwark area. The freeing area is to be placed in the lower part of the bulwark.

5. 3. 13 Where a deckhouse has a breadth less than 80 per cent of the beam of the ship, or the width of the side passageways exceeds 1.5 m, the arrangement is considered as one well. Where a deckhouse has a breadth equal to or more than 80 per cent of the beam of the ship, or the width of the side passageways does not exceed 1.5 m, or when a screen bulkhead is fitted across the full breadth of the ship, this arrangement is considered as two wells, before and abaft the deckhouse.

5. 3. 14 Suitable provision is also to be made for the rapid freeing of water from recesses formed by superstructures, deckhouses and deck cargo arrangements, etc. in which water may be shipped and trapped. Deck gear, particularly on fishing vessels, is not to be stowed in such a manner as to obstruct unduly the flow of water to freeing ports.

5. 3. 15 The lower edges of freeing ports are to be as near to the deck as practicable, and should not be more than 100 mm above the deck.

5. 3. 16 Where freeing ports are more than 230 mm high, vertical bars spaced 230 mm apart may be accepted as an alternative to a horizontal rail to limit the height of the freeing port.

5. 3. 17 Where shutters are fitted, the pins or bearings are to be of a non−corrodible material, with ample clearance to prevent jamming. The hinges are to be within the upper third of the port. Shutters are not to be fitted with securing appliances.

5. 3. 18 Ships of Type `A' and Type `B-100' are to have open rails for at least half the length of the exposed part of the weather deck. Alternatively, if a continuous bulwark is fitted, the minimum freeing area is to be at least 33 per cent of the total area of the bulwark. The freeing area is to be placed in the lower part of the bulwark.

5. 3. 19 Where superstructures are connected by trunks, open rails are to be fitted for the whole length of the exposed part of the freeboard deck.

5. 3. 20 Ships of Type `B-60' are to have a minimum freeing area of at least 25 per cent of the total area of the bulwark. The freeing area is to be placed in the lower part of the bulwark.

5. 3. 21 Gutter bars greater than 300 mm in height fitted on the weather decks of tankers are to be treated as bulwarks and freeing ports arranged as required by this Section. Closures for use during loading and discharge operations are to be arranged in such a way that jamming cannot occur while at sea.

5. 3. 22 In ships having superstructures which are open at either or both ends to wells formed by bulwarks on the open deck, adequate provision for freeing the open spaces are to be provided as follows:

The freeing port area, A_w for the open well:

$$A_w = (0.07l_w + A_c)(S_c)(\frac{0.5h_s}{h_w})$$

The freeing port area, A_s for the open superstructure:

$$A_s = (0.07l_t)(S_c)\left(\frac{b_o}{l_t}\left(1 - \left(\frac{l_w}{l_t}\right)^2\right)\right)(\frac{0.5h_s}{h_w})$$

Where

l_w = the length of the open deck enclosed by bulwarks, in metres

l_s = the length of the common space within the open superstructure, in metres

l_t = $l_w + l_s$ but if 20 m or less then the freeing area is to be calculated in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 8, 5.3 Freeing arrangements 5.3.3

S_c = sheer correction factor, maximum 1.5 as defined in Pt 3, Ch 8, 5.3 Freeing arrangements 5.3.8

b_o = breadth of openings in the end bulkhead of the enclosed superstructure, in metres

h_w = distance of the well deck above the freeboard deck, in metres

h_s = one standard superstructure height, *See* Pt 3, Ch 8, 1.3 Definition of tiers 1.3.2

h_b = actual height of the bulwark, in metres

= bulwark height correction factor taken as;

= 0 for bulwarks between 0.9 and 1.2 m in height

= $l_w(\frac{(h_b-1.2)}{0.1})(0.004)\text{m}^2$ for bulwarks of height greater than 1.2 m, and

= $l_w(\frac{(h_b-1.9)}{0.1})(0.004)m^2$ for bulwarks of height less than 0.9 m.

To adjust the freeing port area for the distance of the well deck above the freeboard deck, for decks located more than $0.5h_s$ above the freeboard deck, multiply by the factor 0.5 (h_s/h_w).

5. 4 Free flow area

5. 4. 1 The effectiveness of the freeing port area in bulwarks of vessels not fitted with a continuous deck obstruction, depends on the free flow across the deck.

5. 4. 2 The free flow area is the net total longitudinal area of the transverse passageways or gaps between hatchways and superstructures or deckhouses, due account being made for any obstructions such as equipment or other fittings. The height of passageways or gaps used in the calculation of the area is the height of the bulwark.

5. 4. 3 The provision of freeing area in bulwarks should be related to the net free flow area as follows:

a. If the free flow area is equal to, or greater than the freeing port area calculated from Pt 3, Ch 8, 5.3 Freeing arrangements 5.3.11 when the hatchway coamings are continuous, then the minimum freeing area calculated from Pt 3, Ch 8, 5.3 Freeing arrangements 5.3.3 is sufficient.

b. If the free flow area is less than the freeing port area calculated from Pt 3, Ch 8, 5.3 Freeing arrangements 5.3.3, then the minimum freeing area is to be that calculated from Pt 3, Ch 8, 5.3 Freeing arrangements 5.3.11.

c. If the free flow area is less than the freeing port area derived from (a) but greater than that derived from Pt 3, Ch 8, 5.4 Free flow area 5.4.3.b, the minimum freeing area, F, in the bulwark is to be obtained from the following formula:

$$F = F_1 + F_2 - f_e \text{m}^2$$

Where

f_p	total net area of passages and gaps between hatchways, superstructures and deckhouses (the free flow area)
F_1	minimum area from Pt 3, Ch 8, 5.3 Freeing arrangements 5.3.3
F_2	minimum area from Pt 3, Ch 8, 5.3 Freeing arrangements 5.3.11

5. 5 Special requirements for tugs and offshore supply ships

5. 5. 1 In tugs and offshore supply ships where there is a recess at the after end of the forecastle for the towing winch, the freeing port area in way of the recess is to be calculated as follows:

B	=	breadth of ship
b	=	breadth of recess
L	=	length of well
l	=	mean length of recess
a	=	freeing area for well length L

Freeing port area in way of recess:

$$\text{A} = a\frac{l}{L}$$

Reduction due to breadth of recess:

$$A_1 = A\frac{b}{B}$$

Reduce A_1 by 25 per cent for winch area:

$$A_2 = 0.75A_1$$

= required freeing port area each side in way of the recess

Where the winch is enclosed in a non-weathertight compartment freeing ports are not required but adequate drainage by means of scuppers is to be provided.

PART

3

CHAPTER **9 Special Features**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**1092**
	1. 1	Application	1092
	1. 2	Symbols	1092
SECTION 2	**Timber deck cargoes**		**1093**
	2. 1	Application	1093
	2. 2	Symbols and definitions	1093
	2. 3	General	1093
	2. 4	Arrangements	1094
	2. 5	Uprights	1094
	2. 6	Lashings	1095
	2. 7	Stowage	1096
	2. 8	Safety arrangements	1097
	2. 9	Longitudinal strength	1097
	2. 10	Deck loading and scantlings	1097
	2. 11	Scantlings of hatch covers	1098
	2. 12	Direct calculations	1098
SECTION 3	**Decks loaded by wheeled vehicles**		**1099**
	3. 1	General	1099
	3. 2	Symbols	1099
	3. 3	Loading	1099
	3. 4	Deck plating	1099
	3. 5	Deck longitudinals and beams	1102
	3. 6	Deck girders and transverses	1102
	3. 7	Direct calculations	1103
	3. 8	Hatch covers	1103
	3. 9	Train decks	1104

3. 10 Heavy and special loads 1104
3. 11 Securing arrangements 1104
SECTION 4 Movable decks 1105
4. 1 Classification 1105
4. 2 Symbols 1105
4. 3 Arrangements and design 1105
4. 4 Loading 1105
4. 5 Pontoon deck plating 1105
4. 6 Pontoon webs and stiffeners 1106
4. 7 Deflection 1107
4. 8 Direct calculations 1107
SECTION 5 Helicopter landing areas 1108
5. 1 General 1108
5. 2 Symbols 1108
5. 3 Arrangements 1108
5. 4 Landing area plating 1109
5. 5 Deck stiffening and supporting structure 1110
5. 6 Bimetallic connections 1110
SECTION 6 Lifting appliances and support arrangements 1113
6. 1 General 1113
6. 2 Masts, derrick posts and crane pedestals 1113
6. 3 Support Structure for masts, derrick posts and lifting appliance pedestals 1113
6. 4 Lifting appliances 1114
6. 5 Support structure for life-saving appliances 1115
6. 6 Walk-to-Work (W2W) 1116
6. 7 Ramp supporting structure 1116
SECTION 7 Bottom strengthening for loading and unloading aground 1117
7. 1 Application 1117
SECTION 8 Strengthening for regular discharge by heavy grabs 1119
8. 1 Application 1119
8. 2 Inner bottom plating 1119
8. 3 Hopper side tank sloped bulkhead plating 1120
8. 4 Transverse bulkhead plating 1120
SECTION 9 Strengthening for machinery on deck 1121
9. 1 Application 1121

9. 2 Loading 1121
9. 3 Support structure for machinery on deck 1124

PART

3

CHAPTER **9 Special Features**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 9. 3. 1: Deck plate thickness calculation 1100
Table 9. 3. 2: Wear and wastage allowance 1101
Table 9. 3. 3: Tyre correction factor, n 1102
Table 9. 3. 4: Values of K_2 and K_2 1102
Table 9. 3. 5: Values of K_3 and K_4 1103
Table 9. 4. 1: Values of K_1 and K_2 1106
Table 9. 5. 1: Location factor 1110
Table 9. 5. 2: Design load cases for deck stiffening and supporting structure 1110
Table 9. 5. 3: Permissible stresses for deck stiffening and supporting structure 1111
Table 9. 6. 1: Special features class notations associated with lifting appliances 1114
Table 9. 7. 1: Bottom strengthening for loading and unloading aground 1117
Table 9. 9. 1: Ship motions 1122
Table 9. 9. 2: Force coefficient Cf 1124

PART

3

CHAPTER **9 Special Features**

LIAST OF FIGURES

Figure 9. 3. 1: Tyre print chart 1101

PART

3

CHAPTER **9** **Special Features**

SECTION **1** **General**

1. 1 Application

1. 1. 1 The requirements of this Chapter are to be taken in conjunction with the Chapters of Pt 3 Ship Structures (General) and Pt 4 Ship Structures (Ship Types) applicable to the particular ship type.

1. 2 Symbols

1. 2. 1 The following symbols and definitions are applicable to this Chapter:

k	=	higher tensile steel factor, *See* Pt 3, Ch 2, 1.2, Steel
l	=	overall length, of the stiffening member, in metres
l_e	=	effective length, in metres, of the stiffening member, measured between span points, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3.3 Determination of span point
s	=	spacing, of stiffeners, in mm
B	=	moulded breadth of ship, in metres, *See* Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1, Principal particulars
L		length of ship, in metres, *See* Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1, Principal particulars
Z		section modulus of the stiffening member, in cm^3, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3.2 Geometric properties of section

1. 2. 2 Other symbols are defined in the appropriate Section.

PART

3

CHAPTER **9** **Special Features**

SECTION **2** **Timber deck cargoes**

2. 1 Application

2. 1. 1 Where the ship carries timber as deck cargo and the notation 'timber deck cargoes' is to be assigned, the requirements of this Section are to be complied along with relevant parts of non-mandatory IMO Resolution A.1048(27) *2011 TDC Code – Code of Safe Practice for Ships Carrying Timber Deck Cargoes, 2011 – Resolution A.1048(27)*, irrespective of being assigned timber load line or not.

2. 1. 2 In all other cases, compliance with the relevant parts of this Section or the *2011 TDC Code – Code of Safe Practice for Ships Carrying Timber Deck Cargoes, 2011 – Resolution A.1048(27)* shall be as required by the flag state; the flag state may make the *2011 TDC Code – Code of Safe Practice for Ships Carrying Timber Deck Cargoes, 2011 – Resolution A.1048(27)* a mandatory requirement

- For ships on their register that carry timber deck cargoes; or
- For foreign ships in their ports when acting as a port state.

2. 1. 3 Attention is drawn to the International Load Line Convention, 1966, and its 1988 Protocol, with respect to requirements for ships assigned a timber loadline.

2. 2 Symbols and definitions

2. 2. 1 The term `timber deck cargo' means a cargo of timber carried on an uncovered part of the freeboard or superstructure deck. The term does not include wood pulp or similar cargo.

2. 2. 2 The symbols used in this Section are defined as follows:

C =mean stowage rate, in m^3/tonne, of the timber deck cargo, making allowance for normal battens, etc.

h = the height, in metres, to which the timber deck cargo is to be stowed, measured vertically from the deck or hatch cover as applicable.

2. 2. 3 Other symbols are defined in Pt 3, Ch 9, 1.2 Symbols.

2. 3 General

2. 3. 1 Attention is drawn to the requirements of the *International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea, 1974, Chapter VI*, as amended, the *International Load Line Convention, 1966,* concerning timber deck cargoes, and its 1988 Protocol, and to National Regulations.

2. 3. 2 Timber deck cargoes are to be loaded, stowed and secured throughout the voyage, in accordance with the Cargo Securing Manual prepared in compliance with the *2011 TDC Code – Code of Safe Practice for Ships Carrying Timber Deck Cargoes, 2011 – Resolution A.1048(27)* and the requirements specified in this Section. The Cargo Securing Manual is to be approved by the Flag

Administration as required by *Chapter VI - Carriage of cargoes and oil fuels*, and a copy is to be placed on board.

2. 3. 3 Each cargo securing arrangement for timber deck cargoes detailed in the ship's Cargo Securing Manual is to be documented by a lashing plan that shows the following:

a. maximum cargo weight for which the arrangement is designed;
b. maximum stowage height;
c. required number and strength of blocking devices, lashings, uprights and loose gear, as applicable;
d. required pre-tension in lashings;
e. other cargo properties of importance for the securing arrangement, such as friction, rigidity of timber packages;
f. illustrations of all securing items that might be used;
g. any restrictions regarding maximum accelerations, weather criteria, restricted sea areas and for non-winter conditions only;
h. the walkway/life-line arrangements; and
i. lashing and stowage arrangements, which are to be in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 9, 2.6, Lashings and Pt 3, Ch 9, 2.7 Stowage .

2. 3. 4 All timber deck cargoes must be compactly stowed, lashed and secured. Friction alone is not deemed sufficient and such methods are not endorsed by Asia Classification Society. Loop lashing is recommended where applicable as one of the safest practices for securing timber deck cargoes.

2. 3. 5 Timber freeboards cannot be used where wood pulp is being carried as the deck cargo. Packaged timber (timber which has been prelashed) may be carried on deck with the ship at its timber freeboards.

2. 3. 6 Type `B−60' ships may have timber freeboards assigned based on ordinary Type `B' freeboards.

2. 3. 7 Timber freeboards are not appropriate for ships which are assigned freeboards from a second deck. However, where the maximum geometric upper deck draught is restricted, a restricted timber draught may be assigned.

2. 3. 8 It is the Master's responsibility to ensure loose gear (e.g. uprights, wire lashings and life-lines) are supplied and fitted onboard in accordance with the approved timber deck cargo loading and lashing plan when the ship is carrying timber deck cargoes. However, it is not a requirement that loose gear remains permanently on board a ship assigned timber freeboards.

2. 4 Arrangements

2. 4. 1 Double bottom tanks within the midship half-length are to have adequate longitudinal subdivision.

2. 4. 2 A forecastle of at least standard height of a superstructure, defined by Regulation 33 of the International Load Line Convention, as amended, and of length at least 0.07*L* is to be fitted. In addition, in ships of less than 100 m in length, a poop of at least standard height, or a raised quarterdeck with a deckhouse or strong steel hood of at least the same total height, is to be fitted.

2. 5 Uprights

2. 5. 1 Uprights designed in accordance with the *2011 TDC Code – Code of Safe Practice for Ships Carrying Timber Deck Cargoes, 2011 – Resolution A.1048(27)* should be used when required by the nature, height or character of the timber deck cargo, as outlined in the *2011 TDC Code – Code of Safe Practice for Ships Carrying Timber Deck Cargoes, 2011 – Resolution A.1048(27)*. Where timber uprights are used, it is the responsibility of the Master to use timber of a type and grade proven satisfactory for the purpose.

2. 5. 2 Uprights are to be used for all timber deck cargoes with the exception that, where only packaged timber is to be carried, uprights may be omitted, depending on racking strength and not including uprights or stoppers (low uprights) situated either side of hatch covers.

2. 5. 3 The spacing of the uprights is to be suitable for the length and character of the timber to be carried but is not to exceed 3 m.

2. 5. 4 Each upright is to extend above the top of the cargo and be fitted with a strap or bracket support at the top of the bulwark to hold it upright whilst loading.

2. 5. 5 Strong permanent bulwarks, or efficient rails of specially strong construction, are to be fitted. They are acceptable as supports for uprights, provided they have adequate strength, and substantial sockets are built for each upright.

2. 5. 6 Deck sockets, along with locking pin, are to be of adequate strength to hold the uprights in place. They are to be efficiently connected to the hull structure to transfer the loads. They are not to be less than 100 mm in depth with drainage provided. A locking pin or wedge is to be provided to prevent the upright lifting out of the socket.

2. 6 Lashings

2. 6. 1 The timber deck cargo is to be secured along its length by appropriate top-over lashings or loop lashings of adequate strength.

2. 6. 2 The spacing of lashings is to be such that lashings are positioned as close as practicable to the ends of each continuous timber deck stow.

2. 6. 3 In order to achieve a more secure stowage of logs when stowed on deck, hog wires are to be utilised. Such hog wires shall be installed in the following manner so as to obtain as even a tension as possible throughout, thus producing an inboard pull on the respective uprights:

a. At approximately three quarters of the height of the stow, the hog wire should be rove through a pad eye attached to the uprights at this level so as to run transversely, connecting the respective port and starboard uprights. The hog lashing wire should not be too tight when laid, so that it becomes taut, when overstowed with other logs.

b. A second hog wire may be applied in a similar manner, if the height of the hatch cover is less than 2 m. Such second hog wire should be installed approximately 1 m above the hatch covers.

2. 6. 4 Where only packaged timber is to be carried, and uprights are omitted, *See* Pt 3, Ch 9, 2.5 Uprights 2.5.2, lashings are to be spaced not more than 1.5 m apart.

2. 6. 5 Eye plates used for lashing are to be of substantial construction and adequate strength. They are to be effectively connected to the hull structure, and placed at intervals appropriate for the lashing arrangement. The distance from a superstructure or deckhouse end bulkhead to the first eye plate and lashing is to be not more than 2 m.

2. 6. 6 Open hooks, which may loosen if the lashing becomes slack, are not to be used in securing arrangements for timber deck cargoes, and web lashing is not to be used in combination with chain or wire lashing.

2. 6. 7 Slip hooks or other appropriate methods may be used for quick and safe adjustment of lashings. Pelican hooks, when used, are to be moused.

2. 6. 8 Corner protectors are to be used to prevent lashings from cutting into the cargo and to protect lashings from damage at sharp corners.

2. 6. 9 Lashings and fittings must have adequate strength for the proposed timber loading and must not:

a. Have a breaking strength of less than 133 kN;

b. Elongate more than 5 per cent at 80 per cent of the breaking strength and;

c. Show any permanent deformation at less than 40 percent of the breaking strength.

2. 6. 10 Every lashing is to be provided with a tightening device or system, situated so that it can be safely and efficiently operated when required. The magnitude of the components of the resolved load produced by the tightening device or system is not to be less than:

a. 27 kN in the horizontal direction; and
b. 16 kN in the vertical direction.

2. 6. 11 Once the lashings are secured, the tightening device or system is to have not less than half the tightening capacity available for further use.

2. 6. 12 If wire rope clips are used to make a joint in a wire lashing, the following conditions are to be observed to avoid a significant reduction in strength:

a. at least three rope clips are to be utilised to make a wire joint, where the total number and size of the rope clips utilised are to be in proportion to the diameter of the wire rope used. The rope clips are to be spaced not less than 150 mm apart;
b. the saddle portion of the clip is to be applied to the live load segment; and
c. rope clips are to be initially tightened so that they visibly compress the wire rope and are subsequently to be re-tightened after the lashing has been stressed.

2. 6. 13 Bulldog grips are only suitable for a standard wire rope of right-hand lay having six strands. Such grips are not to be used for wire rope of left-hand lay or different construction.

2. 6. 14 Where loose or packaged sawn wood is carried, Pt 3, Ch 9, 2.6 Lashings 2.6.15 to 2.6.18, and in case of logs, poles, cants or similar cargo, Pt 3, Ch 9, 2.6 Lashings 2.6.19 to Pt 3, Ch 9, 2.6 Lashings 2.6.20, are to be complied with.

2. 6. 15 Subject to Pt 3, Ch 9, 2.6 Lashings 2.6.16, the maximum spacing of the lashings referred to above should be determined by the maximum height of the timber deck cargo in the vicinity of the lashings:

a. for a height of 2.5 m and below, the maximum spacing is to be not more than 3 m;
b. for heights of above 2.5 m, the spacing is to be not more than 1.5 m;
c. on the foremost and aft-most sections of the deck cargo, the distance between the lashings in accordance with (a) and (b) are to be halved.

2. 6. 16 As far as practicable, long and sturdy packages should be stowed in the outer rows of the stow, and the packages stowed at the upper outboard edge should be secured by at least two lashings each.

2. 6. 17 When the outboard packages of the timber deck cargo are in lengths of less than 3.6 m, the spacing of the lashings should be reduced as necessary, or other suitable provisions made to suit the length of timber.

2. 6. 18 Rounded angle pieces of suitable material and design are to be used along the upper outboard edge of the stow to bear the stress and permit free reeving of the lashings.

2. 6. 19 Round wood deck cargo should be supported by uprights and secured throughout its length by independent top-over or loop lashings spaced not more than 1.5 m apart.

2. 6. 20 In addition to Pt 3, Ch 9, 2.6 Lashings 2.6.19, round wood timber deck cargo, stowed over and above hatches, is to be further secured by a system of athwartship lashings (*See* Pt 3, Ch 9, 2.6 Lashings 2.6.3) connecting respective port and starboard uprights.

2. 7 Stowage

2. 7. 1 The stowage arrangements are to be detailed within the lashing plan, *See* Pt 3, Ch 9, 2.3 General 2.3.3.

2. 7. 2 Timber deck cargoes are to extend over at least the entire available length, which is the total length of the well or wells between superstructures. Where there is no limiting superstructure at the after end, the timber is to extend at least to the after end of the aftermost hatchway.

2. 7. 3 The timber deck cargo is to extend athwartships as close as possible to the ship's side, due allowance being made for obstructions, provided any gap thus created at the side of the ship does not exceed a mean of four per cent of the breadth.

2. 7. 4 The timber is to be stowed as solidly as possible to at least the standard height of a superstructure other than a raised quarter deck. It is not to interfere in any way with the safe navigation and necessary work of the ship.

2. 7. 5 On a ship within a seasonal winter zone in winter, the height of the deck cargo above the deck exposed to weather must not exceed one third of the extreme breadth of the ship.

2. 7. 6 Cargo which overhangs hatch coamings or other structures in the longitudinal direction by more than a third of their individual or packed length is to be supported at the outer end by other cargo stowed on deck or by structure of adequate strength.

2. 8 Safety arrangements

2. 8. 1 If there is no convenient passage on or below the deck of the ship, a walkway is to be provided over the timber deck cargo. This walkway is either to be:

a. At, or near, the centreline of the ship, consisting of two sets of guard wires, spaced 1 m apart, each with more than three courses of wire. The opening below the lowest course is not to exceed 230 mm; the remaining courses are to be spaced not more than 380 mm apart to a height of at least 1 m above the timber deck cargo. The guard wires are to be secured to stanchions. The stanchions are to be not more than 3 m apart, and these are to be secured to the timber cargo by spikes, or other equivalent means.

b. Alternatively, where uprights are used, guard wires, spaced vertically not more than 330 mm apart, are to be secured to the uprights along the length of the timber deck cargo on both port and starboard sides to a height of not less than 1 m above the cargo. A wire life-line is also to be fitted at the centreline of the ship, adequately supported by stanchions spaced not more than 10 m apart.
A safe walking surface, not less than 600 mm in width, is to be fitted over the cargo and effectively secured to the top of it in line with the walkway or adjacent to the life-line. All lines are to be taut using tightening devices.

2. 8. 2 Safe access is to be provided to the top of the timber deck cargo by means of properly constructed ladders, steps or ramps fitted with guard lines or handrails.

2. 8. 3 All openings in the weather deck are to be capable of being properly closed and secured tight. Ventilators, air pipes and other fittings enclosing openings are to be efficiently protected against damage.

2. 8. 4 Access hatches, vents, air pipes, fire hydrants, hoses, valve operating positions, sounding pipes and other essential equipment are to be clearly marked and left accessible.

2. 9 Longitudinal strength

2. 9. 1 The proposed timber deck loading conditions are to be taken into account in the longitudinal strength calculations *See* Pt 3, Ch 4 Longitudinal Strength, and details are to be included in the ship's Loading Manual.

2. 10 Deck loading and scantlings

2. 10. 1 Adequate deck strength is to be ensured, when the proposed timber deck cargoes will impose a mean cargo loading in excess of 8.5 kN/m^2 on the weather deck.

2. 10. 2 In general, the stowage rate, C, of timber deck cargoes is to be taken as:

a. for round timber and logs:
$C = 2.1\ \mathrm{m}^3/\ \text{tonne}$
b. for packaged sawn timber:
$C = 1.45\ \mathrm{m}^3/\ \text{tonne}$.

These values are based on the total volume occupied by the cargo, including normal battens, etc. measured from bulwark to bulwark, and deck, or hatch cover, to top of cargo.

2. 10. 3 Where it is proposed to store timber more densely than that corresponding to the above values, the appropriate value of C is to be used.

2. 10. 4 The load height, h, of the cargo at any position is to be determined from the overall heights of cargo stowage as supplied by the Shipbuilder. Where the height of cargo varies, a mean effective load height is to be adopted. Attention is drawn to the limitation on height of cargo contained in the Load Lines Conventions where these apply.

2. 10. 5 A scantling correction factor, K, is to be determined from $K = \frac{h}{1.08C}$, and the hull scantlings are to be increased as follows:

a. **Deck longitudinals.** The section modulus is to be multiplied by the factor $0.5(1+K)$.
b. **Deck beams.** The load head contained in the expression for section modulus is to be multiplied by K, and the section modulus determined using the increased value.
c. **Deck girders and transverses.** The section modulus is to be multiplied by the factor K.
d. **Pillars and deck supporting structure.** The design load is to be multiplied by the factor K, and scantlings determined using the increased value.
e. **Side structure.** The arrangement and scantlings of side structure are to be considered, and increased scantlings of framing may be required.

2. 11 Scantlings of hatch covers

2. 11. 1 The scantlings of primary supporting members and secondary stiffeners are to comply with Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.3 Load model 2.3.4 for distributed cargo load pL using $\mathrm{pC} = \mathrm{h}/\mathrm{C}$.

2. 11. 2 The hatch cover securing and support arrangements, stoppers, etc. and coamings are to be suitably reinforced to take account of increased loading from timber deck cargoes, *See* Pt 3, Ch 11, 4.2, Steel covers − Clamped and gasketed.

2. 12 Direct calculations

2. 12. 1 As an alternative to the above, the scantlings of the deck and side structure, and of hatch covers, may be assessed using direct calculations based on the proposed loading of the ship.

2. 12. 2 In the case of hatch covers, the stress and deflection criteria given in Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.4, Allowable stress and deflection corresponding to a uniformly distributed weather load are not to be exceeded.

PART

3

CHAPTER **9** **Special Features**

SECTION **3** **Decks loaded by wheeled vehicles**

3. 1 General

3. 1. 1 Where it is proposed either to stow wheeled vehicles on the deck or to use wheeled vehicles for cargo handling, the deck and supporting structure are to be designed on the basis of the maximum loading to which they may be subjected in service. Where applicable, the hatch covers are to be similarly designed. In no case, however, are the scantlings to be less than would be required as a weather or cargo deck or hatch cover, as applicable.

3. 1. 2 The vehicles, types and axle loads, for which the vehicle carrying decks including, where applicable, hatch covers have been approved, are to be stated in the Loading Manual and be contained in a notice displayed on each deck.

3. 2 Symbols

3. 2. 1 The symbols used in this Section are defined in Pt 3, Ch 9, 1.2 Symbols and in the appropriate sub-Section.

3. 3 Loading

3. 3. 1 Details of the deck loading resulting from the proposed stowage or operation of vehicles are to be supplied by the Shipbuilder. These details are to include the wheel load, axle and wheel spacing, tyre print dimensions and type of tyre for the vehicles.

3. 3. 2 For design purposes, where wheeled vehicles are to be used for cargo handling, the deck is to be taken as loaded with a normal head cargo, except in way of the vehicle.

3. 4 Deck plating

3. 4. 1 The deck plate thickness, t, is to be not less than:

$$t = t_1 + t_c \text{mm}$$

Where

t_c = wear and wastage allowance determined from Table 9. 3. 2: Wear and wastage allowance

= $t_1 = \dfrac{\alpha s}{1000\sqrt{k}} \text{mm}$

P_1 = corrected patch load obtained from Table 9. 3. 1: Deck plate thickness calculation

α = thickness coefficient obtained from Figure 9. 3. 1: Tyre print chart

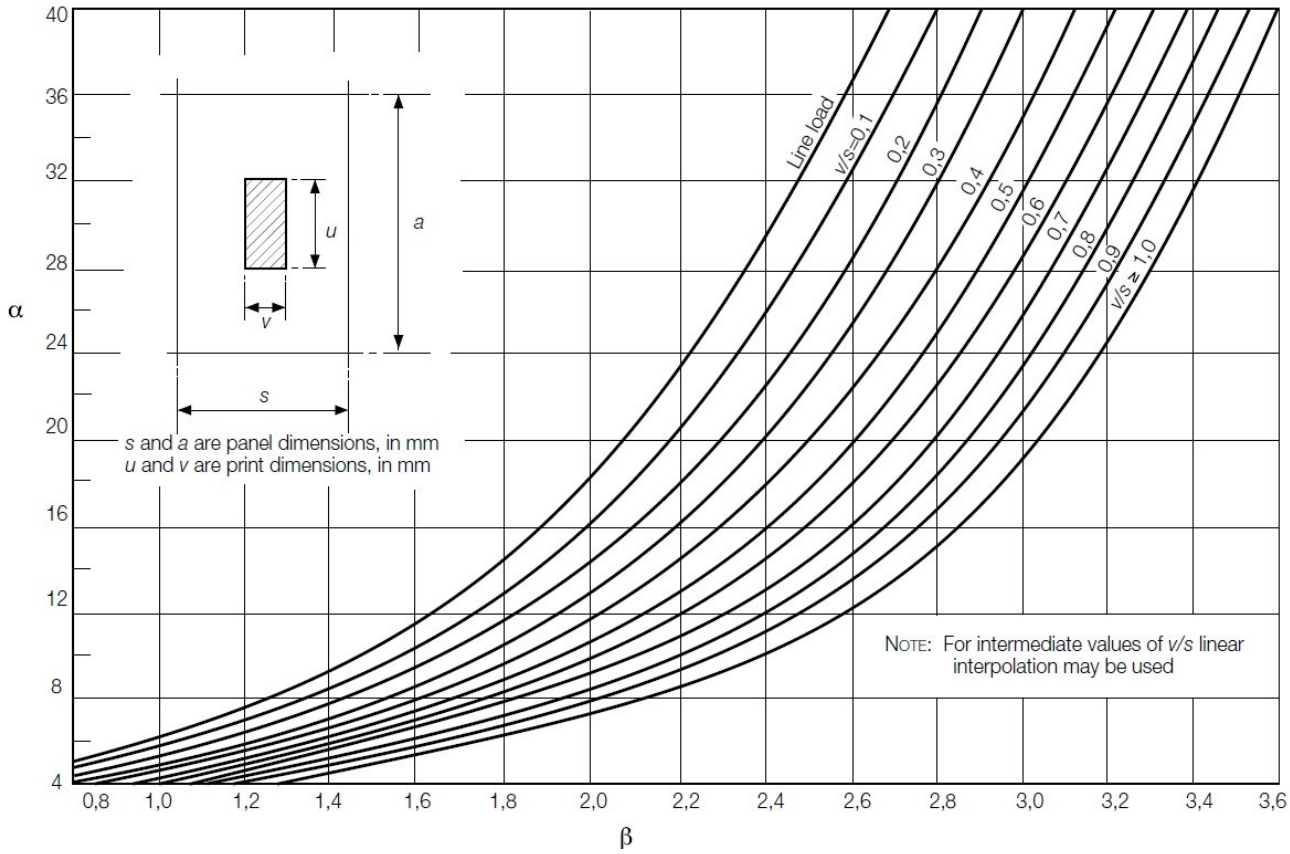
β = tyre print coefficient used in Figure 9. 3. 1: Tyre print chart

$$= \log_{10}\left(\frac{P_1 k^2}{s^2} \times 10^7\right)$$

Table 9. 3. 1: Deck plate thickness calculation

Symbols	Expression	
a, s, u, and v as defined in Figure 9. 3. 1: Tyre print chart	$P_1 = \varphi_1\varphi_2\varphi_3\lambda P$ W	
n=tyre connection factor, *See* Table 9. 3. 3: Tyre correction factor, n	$\varphi_1 = \frac{2v_1 + 1.1s}{u_1 + 1.1s}$	$v_1 = v$, but ≤ s $u_1 = u$, but ≤ a
P_w=load, in tonnes, on the tyre print. For closely spaced wheels the shaded area shown in Figure 9. 3. 1: Tyre print chart may be taken as the combined print P_1=corrected patch load, in tonnes	$\varphi_2 = 1.0$ $= \frac{1}{1.3 - \frac{0.3}{s}(a-u)}$ $= 0.77\frac{a}{u}$	for $u \le (a - s)$ for $a > u > (a - s)$ for $u > a$
λ=dynamic magnification factor φ1=patch aspect ratio correction factor	$\varphi_3 = 1.0$ $= 0.6\frac{S}{v} + 0.4$ $= 1.2\frac{S}{v}$	for $v < s$ for $1.5 > \frac{v}{s} \ge 1.0$ for $\frac{v}{s} \ge 1.5$
φ2=panel aspect ratio correction factor φ3=wide patch load factor	$\lambda = 1.25$ for harbour conditions $= (1 + 0.7n)$ for sea-going conditions	

Figure 9. 3. 1: Tyre print chart



3. 4. 2 Where transversely framed decks contribute to the hull girder strength, or where secondary stiffening is fitted perpendicular to the direction of vehicle lanes, the thickness, t, derived from Pt 3, Ch 9, 3.4 Deck plating 3.4.1 is to be increased by 1.0 mm.

3. 4. 3 Where decks are designed for the exclusive carriage of unladen wheeled vehicles, the deck plate thickness, t, may be reduced as follows:

$$t = (t_1 - 0.75) + t_c \text{ mm}$$

3. 4. 4 Where it is proposed to carry tracked vehicles, the patch dimensions may be taken as the track print dimensions and P_w is to be taken as half the total weight of the vehicle. The wear and wastage allowance from Table 9. 3. 2: Wear and wastage allowance is to be increased by 0.5 mm. Deck fittings in way of vehicle lanes are to be recessed.

Table 9. 3. 2: Wear and wastage allowance

Location	t_c, in mm
Strength deck, weather decks, decks forming crown of tank, inner bottom	1.5
Internal decks elsewhere	0.75

3. 4. 5 If wheeled vehicles are to be used on insulated decks or tank tops, consideration will be given to the permissible loading in association with the insulation arrangements and the plating thickness.

Table 9. 3. 3: Tyre correction factor, n

Number of wheels in idealised patch	Pneumatic tyres	Solid rubber tyres	Steel or solid tyres
1	0.6	0.8	1.0
2 or more	0.75	0.9	1.0

3. 5 Deck longitudinals and beams

3. 5. 1 The section modulus, Z, of deck beams or longitudinals is to be not less than that required for a weather or cargo deck as appropriate, nor less than the following:

a. For general purpose cargo decks where fork lift trucks are to be used:
$Z = (0.375K_1Pl_e + 0.00125\ K_2hsl_e^2k^k\ cm^3$.

b. For permanent vehicle decks in association with a value of h which need not exceed 2.5 m:
h =normal load height on the deck, in metres
P =total weight , in tonnes, of the vehicle divided by the number of axles. Where distribution of weight is not uniform, P is to be taken as the maximum axle load. For fork lift trucks the total weight is to be applied to one axle

c. $Z = (0.536K_1Pl_e + 0.00125\ K_2hsl_e^2)^k cm^3$
=where the values of K_1 and K_2 are given in Table 9. 3. 4: Values of K2 and K2.

d. For decks designed for the carriage of wheeled vehicles only that required to satisfy the most severe arrangement of print wheel loads on the stiffener in association with a bending stress of $\frac{100}{k} N/mm^2$ assuming 100 per cent end fixity.

Table 9. 3. 4: Values of K_2 and K_2

Wheel spacing* / Beam span	K_1	K_2
0.1	15.4	1.89
0.2	14.6	1.84
0.3	13.35	1.730
0.4		1.55
	11.8	
0.5 and greater	10.1	1.30
* Outer wheel to outer wheel on axles with multiple wheel arrangements		

3. 6 Deck girders and transverses

3. 6. 1 Where the load on deck girders and transverses is uniformly distributed, the section modulus is to be not less than:

$$Z = 4.75bhl_e^2k\ cm^3$$

Where

h = is defined in Pt 3, Ch 9, 3.5 Deck longitudinals and beams 3.5.1

b = mean width of plating supported by a deck girder or transverse, in metres

3. 6. 2 Where the member supports point loads, with or without the addition of uniformly distributed load, the section modulus is to be based on a stress of $\frac{123.6}{k}\ N/mm^2$, assuming 100 per cent end fixity.

3. 6. 3 Where it is proposed to carry tracked vehicles, the total weight of the vehicle is to be taken when determining the section modulus of the transverse at the top of a ramp or at other changes of gradient.

3. 7 Direct calculations

3. 7. 1 As an alternative to the above, permissible deck loads may be determined by direct calculation. The assumed loadings in these calculations are to include suitable allowance for weather, generally 2.16 kN/m^2 (0.22 tonne-f/m^2), where applicable.

3. 8 Hatch covers

3. 8. 1 Where wheeled vehicles are to be used, the hatch cover plating is to be not less in thickness than that required by Pt 3, Ch 9, 3.4, Deck plating, and the modulus of the stiffeners is to be not less than:

$$Z = (K_3 P l_e + 0.00167 K_4 h s l_e^2)^k$$

Where

= where the values of K_3 and K_4 are given in Table 9. 3. 5: Values of K3 and K4 and P and h are defined in Pt 3, Ch 9, 3.5 Deck longitudinals and beams 3.5.1.

In no case, however, are the scantlings of plating and stiffeners to be less than would be required as a weather or cargo deck hatch cover, as applicable.

Table 9. 3. 5: Values of K_3 and K_4

Wheel spacing* / Stiffener span	K_3	K_4
0.1	11.96	2.32
0.2	10.69	1.89
0.3	9.58	1.55
0.4	8.46	1.28
0.5	7.46	1.07
0.6	6.51	0.91
0.7	5.55	0.73
0.8	4.23	0.36
0.9	2.38	0.11

* Outer wheel to outer wheel on axles with multiple wheel arrangements

3. 8. 2 Where unusual arrangements of hatch cover stiffening are proposed, the scantlings may be determined by direct calculations using a two-dimensional grillage idealisation, and the parameters given in Table 11. 2. 3: Effective breadth em of plating of primary supporting members in Pt 3, Ch 11 Closing Arrangements for Shell, Deck and Bulkheads.

3. 9 Train decks

3. 9. 1 Decks for the transport of railway rolling stock on fixed rails will be specially considered.

3. 10 Heavy and special loads

3. 10. 1 Where heavy or special loads, such as machinery transporters, are proposed to be carried, the scantlings and arrangements of the deck structure will be individually considered.

3. 11 Securing arrangements

3. 11. 1 Details of the connections to the hull of vehicle securing arrangements are to be submitted for approval.

PART

3

CHAPTER **9** **Special Features**

SECTION **4** **Movable decks**

4. 1 Classification

4. 1. 1 Movable vehicle decks hoisted by means of a hydraulic or electrical winch, or lifted by a mechanical lift on board the ship, are to comply with Ch 6 Ro-Ro Access Equipment of *ACS Guideline for Lifting Appliances in a Marine Environment*.

4. 1. 2 Movable decks other than described in Pt 3, Ch 9, 4.1 Classification 4.1.1, and which are subjected to general cargo loading, are to comply with the requirements of this Section.

4. 2 Symbols

4. 2. 1 The symbols used in this Section are defined in Pt 3, Ch 9, 1.2 Symbols and in the appropriate sub-Section.

4. 3 Arrangements and design

4. 3. 1 Movable decks are generally to be constructed as pontoons comprising a web structure with top decking. Other forms of construction will be individually considered.

4. 3. 2 These requirements assume that the pontoons are to be constructed of steel. Other materials will be considered on the basis of equivalent strength.

4. 3. 3 Positive means of control are to be provided to secure decks in the lowered position.

4. 3. 4 The decks are to be efficiently supported, and hinges, pillars, chains or other means (or a combination of these) are to be designed on the basis of the imposed loads. Where supporting chains and fittings are required, they are to have a factor of safety of at least two on the proof load.

4. 3. 5 Plans showing the proposed scantlings and arrangements of the system are to be submitted.

4. 3. 6 Where it is proposed to stow the pontoons on deck, when not in use, details of the proposals for racks, fittings, etc. are to be submitted for consideration.

4. 4 Loading

4. 4. 1 Design loading for general cargo is to be specified on the plans, together with details of fork lift trucks where appropriate, and submitted for consideration.

4. 5 Pontoon deck plating

4. 5. 1 Where the pontoon is constructed of steel decking with stiffening webs, the deck plate thickness, t, is to be not less than that required by Pt 3, Ch 9, 3.4, Deck plating.

4. 5. 2 The plate thickness, t, for aluminium pontoons is to be not less than:

$$t = (1.4t_1 + 0.75)\text{mm}$$

where t_1 is the mild steel thickness as determined from Pt 3, Ch 9, 3.4, Deck plating.
For aluminium pontoons designed for the exclusive carriage of unladen wheeled vehicles:

$$t = 1.4t_1 \text{ mm}$$

4. 5. 3 Where it is proposed to use plywood decking, the arrangement and thickness will be considered. Plywood alone, is not, generally, to be used for axle loads in excess of 7.8 kN.

4. 5. 4 Attention is drawn to National fire regulations which in certain cases may ban the use of plywood and certain other materials in `special category spaces' on passenger ships.

4. 6 Pontoon webs and stiffeners

4. 6. 1 The section modulus of webs and stiffening of steel pontoons is to be not less than:

Z = $(0.375K_1Pl_e + 0.00125K_2hsl_e^2)^k$ cm^3

= for general-purpose cargo decks where fork lift trucks may be used where the values of K_1 and K_2 are given in Table 9. 4. 1: Values of K1 and K2, and

= for general-purpose cargo decks where fork lift trucks may be used where the values of K_1 and K_2 are given in Table 9. 4. 1: Values of K1 and K2, and

h = load height of cargo on the deck, where this is proposed to be carried, in metres.

p = the total fork lift truck load, in tonnes, is to be applied to one axle.

Table 9. 4. 1: Values of K_1 and K_2

Wheel spacing* / Beam span	K_1	K_2
0.1	15.4	1.89
0.2	14.6	1.845
0.3	13.35	1.730
0.4	11.8	1.55
0.5 and greater	10.1	1.30
* Outer wheel to outer wheel on axles with multiple wheel arrangements		

4. 6. 2 The section modulus of webs and stiffening of aluminium pontoons is to be not less than that defined in Pt 3, Ch 9, 4.6 Pontoon webs and stiffeners 4.6.1 replacing k by k_a where k_a is defined in Pt 3, Ch 2, 1 Materials of construction.

4. 6. 3 Where plywood decking is proposed, or in other arrangements where the decking is not integral with the stiffening webs, the arrangement of the grillage of webs is to be such as to provide the required strength.

4. 7 Deflection

4. 7. 1 Where wheeled vehicles are to be used, the supporting arrangements are to be such that the movement at the edge of one pontoon relative to the next does not exceed 50 mm during loading or unloading operations.

4. 8 Direct calculations

4. 8. 1 As an alternative to Pt 3, Ch 9, 4.3 Arrangements and design to Pt 3, Ch 9, 4.7 Deflection, the structure may be designed on the basis of a direct calculation using a grillage idealisation. The method adopted and the stress levels proposed for the material of construction are to be submitted for consideration.

PART

3

CHAPTER **9** **Special Features**

SECTION **5** **Helicopter landing areas**

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 Attention is drawn to the requirements and guidance of National and other Authorities concerning the construction of helicopter landing platforms and the operation of helicopters as they affect the ship. These include SOLAS *Regulation 18 - Helicopter facilities* and *Reg.III/28* as applicable. as well as the *International Chamber of Shipping (ICS) Guide to Helicopter/Ship Operations* and the *International Aeronautical Search and Rescue Manual (IAMSAR)* and *CAP437 Standards for Offshore Helicopter Landing Areas*.

5. 1. 2 Where the requirements of this Section have been adhered to for a designated helicopter landing platform or other deck area and fire-fighting appliances and other equipment necessary for the safe operation of helicopters are provided, the ship will be eligible for the special features notation **Helideck**. *See also* SOLAS *Regulation 18 - Helicopter facilities*.

5. 1. 3 Where the requirements of this Section have been complied with for an area on a ship designated for occasional or emergency landing of helicopters, the ship will be eligible for the special features notation **Occasional Helicopter Landing Area**, *See* SOLAS *Regulation 18 - Helicopter facilities*.

5. 1. 4 The structure is to be designed to accommodate the largest helicopter type which it is intended to use.

5. 1. 5 Plans are to be submitted showing the proposed scantlings and arrangements of the structure. The type, size, weight and footprint of helicopters to be used are also to be indicated. Details of the helicopter types to be used are to be included in the Loading Manual (*See* Pt 3, Ch 4, 8.2, Loading Manual)

5. 1. 6 Where the landing area forms part of a weather or erection deck, the scantlings are to be not less than those required for decks in the same position.

5. 2 Symbols

5. 2. 1 The symbols in this Section are defined in Pt 3, Ch 9, 1.2 Symbols and in the appropriate sub-Section.

5. 3 Arrangements

5. 3. 1 The landing area is to be sufficiently large to allow for the landing and manoeuvring of the helicopter, and is to be approached by a clear landing and take-off sector complying in extent with the applicable Regulations, International Standards, or to the satisfaction of the National Authority.

5. 3. 2 The landing area is to be free of any projections above the level of the deck. Projections in the zone surrounding the landing area are to be kept below the heights permitted by the Regulations, International Standards, or to the satisfaction of the National Authority.

5. 3. 3 Suitable arrangements are to be made to minimise the risk of personnel or machinery sliding off the landing area. A non-slip surface and anchoring devices are to be provided.

5. 3. 4 Engine uptake arrangements are to be sited such that exhaust gases cannot be drawn into helicopter engine intakes during helicopter take off or landing operations.

5. 4 Landing area plating

5. 4. 1 The deck plate thickness, t, within the landing area is to be not less than:

$$t = t_1 + 1.5 \text{ mm}$$

Where

t_1 = $\frac{\alpha s}{1000\sqrt{k}}$ mm

α = thickness coefficient obtained from Figure 9. 3. 1: Tyre print chart

β = tyre print coefficient used in Figure 9. 3. 1: Tyre print chart

= $\log_{10}\left(\frac{P_1 k^2}{s^2} \times 10^7\right)$

The plating is to be designed for the emergency landing case taking:

P_1 = $2.5\varphi_1\varphi_2\varphi_3 f_Y P_w$ tonnes

in which φ_1, φ_2, φ_3 are to be determined from Table 9. 3. 1: Deck plate thickness calculation

f = 1.15 for landing decks over manned spaces, e.g. deckhouses, bridges, control rooms, etc.

= 1.0 elsewhere

P_h = the maximum all-up weight of the helicopter, in tonnes

P_w = landing load on the tyre print in tonnes; for helicopters with a single main rotor, P_w is to be taken as P_h divided equally between the two main undercarriage wheels for helicopters with tandem main rotors, P_w is to be taken as P_h distributed between all main undercarriage wheels in proportion to the static loads they carry For helicopters fitted with landing gear consisting of skids, P_w is to be taken as P_h distributed in accordance with the actual load distribution given by the airframe manufacturer. If this is unknown, P_w is to be taken as $1/6P_h$ for each of the two forward contact points and $1/3P_h$ for each of the two aft contact points. The load may be assumed to act as a 300 mm x 10 mm line load at each end of each skid when applying Figure 9. 3. 1: Tyre print chart.

γ = a location factor given in Table 9. 5. 1: Location factor

For wheeled undercarriages, the tyre print dimensions specified by the manufacturer are to be used for the calculation. Where these are unknown, it may be assumed that the print area is 300 x 300 mm and this assumption is to be indicated on the submitted plan.
For skids and tyres with an asymmetric print, the print is to be considered oriented both parallel and perpendicular to the longest edge of the plate panel and the greatest corresponding value of α, taken from Figure 9. 3. 1: Tyre print chart.

Table 9. 5. 1: Location factor

Location	γ	
On decks forming part of the hull girder		
(a) within 0.4*L* amidships	0.71	Values for intermediate locations are to be determined by interpolation
(b) at the F.P. or A.P.	0.6	Values for intermediate locations are to be determined by interpolation
Elsewhere	0.6	

5. 4. 2 The plate thickness for aluminium decks is to be not less than:

$$t = 1.4t_1 + 1.5 \text{ mm}$$

where t_1 is the mild steel thickness as determined from Pt 3, Ch 9, 5.4 Landing area plating 5.4.1.

5. 5 Deck stiffening and supporting structure

5. 5. 1 The helicopter deck stiffening and the supporting structure for helicopter platforms are to be designed for the load cases given in Table 9. 5. 2: Design load cases for deck stiffening and supporting structure in association with the permissible stresses given in Table 9. 5. 3: Permissible stresses for deck stiffening and supporting structure. The helicopter is to be positioned so as to produce the most severe loading condition for each structural member under consideration.

5. 5. 2 The minimum moment of inertia, *I*, of aluminium secondary structure stiffening is to be not less than:

$$I = \frac{5.25}{k_a} Z l_e \text{ cm}^4$$

where *Z* is the required section modulus of the aluminium stiffener and attached plating and k_a as defined in Pt 3, Ch 9, 4.6 Pontoon webs and stiffeners 4.6.2.

5. 5. 3 Where a grillage arrangement is adopted for the platform stiffening, it is recommended that direct calculation procedures be used.

5. 6 Bimetallic connections

5. 6. 1 Where aluminium alloy platforms are connected to steel structures, details of the arrangements in way of the bimetallic connections are to be submitted.

Table 9. 5. 2: Design load cases for deck stiffening and supporting structure

	Loads	
Loadcase	Landing area	Supporting structure (*See* Note 1)

	UDL, in kN/m^2	Helicopter patch load (*See* Note 2)	Self weight	Horizontal load (*See* Note 2)
(1) Overall distributed loading	2	—	—	—
(2) Helicopter emergency landing	0.5	$2.5P_w f$	W_h	$0.5P_h$
(3) Normal usage	0.5	$1.5P_w$	W_h	$0.5P_h + 0.5W_h$

Symbols

P_h and P_w as defined in Pt 3, Ch 9, 5.4 Landing area plating 5.4.1

UDL=Uniformly distributed vertical load over entire landing area

W_h=structural self-weight of helicopter platform

Note *1*. For the design of the supporting structure for helicopter platforms, applicable self weight and horizontal loads are to be added to the landing area loads.

Note *2*. The helicopter is to be so positioned as to produce the most severe loading condition for each structural member under consideration.

Table 9. 5. 3: Permissible stresses for deck stiffening and supporting structure

	Permissible stresses, in N/mm^2			
Loadcase (*See* Table 9. 5. 2: Design load cases for deck stiffening and supporting structure)	Deck secondary structure (beams, longitudinals) (*See* Notes 1 and 2)	Primary structure (transverses, girders, pillars, trusses)		All structure
	Bending		Combined bending and axial	Shear
(1) Overall distributed load	$\frac{147}{k}$	$\frac{147}{k}$	$0.6\sigma_c$	
(2) Helicopter emergency landing	$\frac{245}{k}$	$\frac{220.5}{k}$	$0.9\sigma_c$	$\frac{\text{Bending}}{\sqrt{3}}$
(3) Normal usage	$\frac{176}{k}$	$\frac{147}{k}$	$0.6\sigma_c$	

Symbols

k =a material factor:

=as defined in Pt 3, Ch 9, 1.2 Symbols for steel members

=k_a as defined in Pt 3, Ch 9, 4.6 Pontoon webs and stiffeners 4.6.2 for aluminium alloy members

σ_c=yield stress, 0.2% proof stress or compressive buckling stress, in N/mm^2, whichever is the lesser

Note *1.* For strength deck longitudinals and girders, the permissible bending stresses are to be reduced as follows:

Note *(a)* within 0.4*L* of amidships - by 30%

Note *(b)* at the F.P. or A.P. - by 0%

Values at intermediate locations are to be determined by interpolation between (a) and (b).

Note *2.* When determining bending stresses in secondary structure, for compliance with the above permissible stresses, 100% end fixity may be assumed.

PART

3

CHAPTER **9** **Special Features**

SECTION **6** **Lifting appliances and support arrangements**

6. 1 General

6. 1. 1 Masts, derrick posts, crane pedestals and similar supporting structures are classification items, and the scantlings and arrangements are to comply with ACS's requirements whether or not ACS is also requested to issue the Register of Ships' Cargo Gear and Lifting Appliances.

6. 1. 2 Where the lifting appliance is considered to be an essential feature of a classed vessel, the special feature class notation **LA** or **LA** will, in general, be mandatory.

6. 1. 3 Elsewhere, classification of lifting appliances is optional and may be assigned at the request of the Owner on compliance with the appropriate requirements.

6. 1. 4 Certain movable support structures and lifting appliances on special purpose vessels which are considered an essential feature of the vessel are to be included in the classification of the vessel.

6. 1. 5 Proposals to class lifting appliances on unclassed ships will be specially considered.

6. 2 Masts, derrick posts and crane pedestals

6. 2. 1 The scantlings of masts and derrick posts, intended to support derrick booms, conveyor arms and similar loads, and of crane pedestals, are to comply with the requirements of ACS's *Code for Lifting Appliances in a Marine Environment,* (hereinafter referred to as LAME).

6. 2. 2 In addition to the information and plans requested in ACS's LAME the following details are to be submitted:

a. Details of masthouses or other supports for the masts, derrick posts or crane pedestals, together with details of the attachments to the hull structure.

b. Details of any reinforcement or additional supporting material fitted to the hull structure in way of the mast, derrick post or crane pedestal.

6. 3 Support Structure for masts, derrick posts and lifting appliance pedestals

6. 3. 1 The requirements of Pt 3, Ch 9, 6.3 Support Structure for masts, derrick posts and lifting appliance pedestals 6.3.2 and Pt 3, Ch 9, 6.3 Support Structure for masts, derrick posts and lifting appliance pedestals 6.3.3 are not applicable to Double Hull Oil Tankers or Bulk Carriers with a **CSR** notation, *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull).

6. 3. 2 Masts, derrick posts and crane pedestals are to be efficiently supported and, in general, are to be carried through the deck and satisfactorily scarfed into a transverse hold or 'tween deck bulkhead. Alternatively, the masts, derrick posts or crane pedestals may be carried into a mast house, in

which case the mast house is to be of substantial construction. Proposals for other support arrangements will be specially considered.

6. 3. 3 Deck plating and underdeck structure are to be reinforced under masts, derrick posts or crane pedestals and, where the deck is penetrated, the deck plating is to be suitably increased locally.

6. 3. 4 The deck plating and underdeck stiffening in way of a lifting appliance are to be assessed using the same criteria used to assess the lifting appliance pedestal with due consideration given to the material grade.

6. 3. 5 Insert plates are to be incorporated in the deck plating in way of lifting appliance foundations where considered necessary to limit deflection and reduce stress concentrations. The thickness of the insert plates is to be as required by the designer's calculations but in no case is to be taken as less than 1.5 times the thickness of the adjacent attached plating.

6. 3. 6 Where fitted, all inserts are to have well radiused corners and be suitably edge prepared prior to welding. The connection between the insert plate and the adjacent deck plating is to be full penetration. All other welding in way of the insert plate is generally to be double continuous and full penetration in way of critical locations. Tapers are to be not less than three to one.

6. 4 Lifting appliances

6. 4. 1 Vessels or offshore units fitted with lifting appliances built in accordance with ACS's LAME in respect of structural and machinery requirements will be eligible to be assigned Special Features class notations as listed in Table 9. 6. 1: Special features class notations associated with lifting appliances. This notation will be retained so long as the appliances are found upon examination at the prescribed surveys to be maintained in accordance with ACS's requirements.

Table 9. 6. 1: Special features class notations associated with lifting appliances

Lifting appliance	Special features class notation	Remarks
Cargo gear, Derricks, derrick cranes or cranes on ships	**CG**	*Optional notation*. Indicates that the vessel's cargo gear is included in class.
Cranes on offshore units, offshore installations and offshore support vessels	**OC**	*Optional notation*. Indicates that the installation's, unit's or vessel's main deck cranes are included in class.
Pipe laying system	**PLS**	*Optional notation*. Indicates that the pipe laying system is included in class.
Personnel transfer system (Walk-to-Work)	**W2W**	*Optional notation*. Indicates that the personnel transfer system is included in class.
Lifts and ramps on vessels	**CL** **PL** **CR**	*Optional notations*. Indicate that the vessel's cargo lifts (**CL**), passenger lifts (**PL**) or cargo ramps (**CR**) are included in class.

Lifting appliances forming an essential feature of the vessel, e.g. cranes on crane barges or pontoons, lifting arrangements for diving on diving support vessels, etc.	**LA**	*Mandatory notation*. Indicates that the lifting appliance is included in class.
Lifting appliances forming an essential feature of the vessel where the appliance(s) has been classed by a recognised classification society other than ACS and later transferred into class with ACS.	**LA**	*Mandatory notation*. Indicates that the lifting appliance is classed and that initial requirements for the appliance were that of another recognised classification society

6. 5 Support structure for life-saving appliances

6. 5. 1 The support structure for life-saving appliance davits and cranes is to be assessed on the basis of the maximum safe working load assigned and the ultimate strength of the materials used for construction.

6. 5. 2 The following load cases are to be considered as appropriate:

a. Vertical forces acting on deck;
b. Overturning moment;
c. Slewing moment.

6. 5. 3 The load cases given in Pt 3, Ch 9, 6.5 Support structure for life-saving appliances 6.5.2 are to be calculated based on the maximum safe working load of the davit and the requirements of the *LSA Code - International Life-Saving Appliance Code – Resolution MSC.48(66)* , *Chapter VI - Launching and Embarkation Appliances*, 6.1.1 General requirements. Each load case is to also consider the self-weight of the davit.

6. 5. 4 Both outboard and inboard load cases are to be considered together with intermediate positions as appropriate.

6. 5. 5 Support structure for appliances used for both life-saving and general shipboard operations are to be considered for both of these aspects.

6. 5. 6 The maximum permissible bending stress is to be taken as the lesser of:

a. $\sigma_a = \frac{\sigma_U}{4.5} N/mm^2$

b. $\sigma_a = \frac{\sigma_o}{2.2} N/mm^2$

Where

σ_U = Ultimate tensile strength of material, in N/mm^2

σ_o = specified minimum yield stress or 0.2 per cent proof stress, in N/mm^2

6. 5. 7 The maximum permissible shear stress is to be taken as the lesser of:

$$\tau_a = \frac{\sigma_U}{7.8} N/mm^2$$

$$\tau_a = \frac{\sigma_o}{3.8} N/mm^2$$

σ_U and σ_o are defined in Pt 3, Ch 9, 6.5 Support structure for life-saving appliances 6.5.6.

6. 6 Walk-to-Work (W2W)

6. 6. 1 This notation applies to ships designed, constructed and equipped to include personal transfer, e.g. by a motion compensated gangway or similar feature.

6. 6. 2 The transfer equipment is to be certified by ACS against appropriate code relevant for the equipment, i.e. ACS's *Code for Lifting Appliances in a Marine Environment,* as applicable or an alternative code deemed applicable by ACS.

6. 6. 3 Attention is drawn to the requirements of the Flag Administration concerning the transfer system.

6. 6. 4 Information and details of the local strengthening in way of the transfer system are to be submitted to ACS for approval.

6. 6. 5 When considering loads, all expected directions of operation are to be taken into account. The foundation for the transfer system is to be designed in accordance with ACS's *Code for Lifting Appliances in a Marine Environment,* Ch 4, 5.1 General 5.1.6.

6. 6. 6 Where required by primary or additional bridge functions associated with offshore support the primary conning position in the navigation bridge is to permit adequate monitoring of personal transfer from the aft deck of the ship. Means of ensuring this visibility are to be provided.

6. 6. 7 The fields of vision at the fore stations for ship handling and work on the aft deck are to be sufficient to enable operators to supervise pernal transfer in all defined operational conditions, *See* ACS Ship Control Centre Guidance for further details.

6. 7 Ramp supporting structure

6. 7. 1 The support structure (including hinges) in way of the interface between a ramp and the ship is to be assessed in accordance with the appropriate criteria given in Ch 6, 2 Loading and design criteria *of the Code for Lifting Appliances in a Marine Environment*.

6. 7. 2 The loads that the ramp supporting structure will be subjected to are to be submitted by the designer or Shipbuilder. These loads are to be calculated in accordance with Ch 6, 2 Loading and design criteria of the *Code for Lifting Appliances in a Marine Environment*. Load cases calculated in accordance with alternative standards can be accepted subject to agreement with ACS.

6. 7. 3 Loads already existing in the supporting structure (other than those from the ramp) are to be superimposed if applicable.

6. 7. 4 Ramps forming part of the watertight integrity of the hull are also to be assessed in accordance with the applicable scantling requirements.

PART

3

CHAPTER **9** **Special Features**

SECTION **7** **Bottom strengthening for loading and unloading aground**

7. 1 Application

7. 1. 1 Where a ship of length, L, less than 90 m has the bottom structure additionally strengthened for loading and unloading aground in accordance with Table 9. 7. 1: Bottom strengthening for loading and unloading aground, it will be eligible for the special features notation `bottom strengthened for loading and unloading aground'. Ships of length, L, 90 m or more intended for this service will receive individual consideration.

7. 1. 2 For dredgers intended to operate aground, the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 12 Dredging and Reclamation Craft are to be applied.

Table 9. 7. 1: Bottom strengthening for loading and unloading aground

Item	Requirement	
The following requirements are to be applied to the bottom structure upon which the ship is likely to be supported whilst aground		
(1) Bottom shell and keel plating	Thickness to be increased by 20% over the minimum requirements given in Part 4 for the particular type of ship with a minimum of 8 mm	
(2) Bottom longitudinals in way of single bottoms	For dry cargo ships, as required in way of double bottoms, *See* item (3) For oil tankers, scantlings as required by Table 9. 5. 1: Values of F1 in Pt 4, Ch 9 in taking $c_1 = 1.0$	
(3) Bottom longitudinals in way of double bottoms, *See* Note 1	For dry cargo ships, scantlings as required by Table 1. 6. 1: Shell framing (longitudinal) in Pt 4, Ch 1 in taking $c_1 = 1.0$	
(4) Bilge longitudinals (where fitted)	Scantlings to be the same as bottom longitudinals	
	Transverse framing	Longitudinal framing
(5) Primary stiffening in way of single bottoms, *See* Notes 2 and 3	*(a)* Floors to be fitted at every frame with vertical stiffeners spaced, in general, not more than 1.25 m apart (b) One side girder is to be fitted on each side of the centreline in addition to the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 7 Single bottom structure and intermediate 150 x 10 bulb plate longitudinals or equivalent fitted	*(a)* The arrangements and scantlings will receive individual consideration depending on the structural arrangements of the particular ship type *(b)* The spacing of transverse or floors is, in general, not to exceed 1.85 m

(6) Primary stiffening in way of double bottoms, *See* Notes 1, 2 and 3	(a) Plate floors are to be fitted at every frame and vertical stiffening arranged to give panel widths, in general, not exceeding 1.25 m One side girder is to be fitted on each side of the centreline in addition to the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 8 Double bottom structure and intermediate 150 x 10 bulb plate longitudinals or equivalent fitted	(a) The spacing of floors is, in general, not to exceed 1.85 m (b) One side girder is to be fitted on each side of the centreline in addition to the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 8 Double bottom structure

Note *1*. For oil tankers, to be specially considered.

Note *2*. The scantlings of floors, girders and transverses are to be determined from Pt 4 Ship Structures (Ship Types), for the particular ship type.

Note *3*. The number and sizes of holes in floors, girders and transverses are to be kept to a minimum; *See* Pt 4, Ch 1, 8 Double bottom structure and Pt 4, Ch 9, 6 Inner hull, inner bottom and longitudinal oiltight bulkheads.

PART

3

CHAPTER 9 **Special Features**

SECTION 8 **Strengthening for regular discharge by heavy grabs**

8. 1 Application

8. 1. 1 For bulk carriers where cargoes are regularly discharged by heavy grabs and the thickness of the plating of the hold inner bottom, hopper and transverse bulkhead bottom stool is increased in accordance with the requirements of this Section, the ship will, at the Owner's option, be assigned the notation `strengthened for regular discharge by heavy grabs'.

8. 1. 2 It should be noted that damage to the plating cannot be excluded even when complying with these requirements and can result from the mishandling of the grabs during the discharge of cargo.

8. 1. 3 The grab weight given in Pt 3, Ch 9, 8.2 Inner bottom plating 8.2.1 does not preclude the use of heavier grabs. It is intended as an indication to the Builders, Owners and operators of the increased risk of local damage and the possibility of accelerated diminution of the plating thickness if grabs heavier than this are used regularly to discharge cargo.

8. 1. 4 The maximum unladen weight of the grab is to be recorded in the Loading Manual, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 4, 8.2 Loading Manual 8.2.4.e.

8. 1. 5 The requirements in this Section are not applicable to Double Hull Oil Tankers or Bulk Carriers with a **CSR** notation. *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull).

8. 2 Inner bottom plating

8. 2. 1 The thickness of the inner bottom plating in the holds is to be not less than required by the greater of the following:

a. $t = \frac{\left(\log_{10}\left(1.775P\left(\frac{k}{s}\right)^2\right)+5.7633\right)s-344.5}{40.875\sqrt{k}} + 1.5\text{mm}$

b. t =the Rule required thickness, in mm in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 7, 8 Double bottom structure for the intended class notation.

Where

P = specified unladen grab weight for the hold, in tonnes, and is not to be taken as less than 25 tonnes

s = spacing of inner bottom longitudinals, in mm

k = higher tensile steel factor as defined in Pt 3, Ch 2, 1.2, Steel

8. 3 Hopper side tank sloped bulkhead plating

8. 3. 1 The thickness of the sloped bulkhead plating adjacent to the inner bottom knuckle is to be as required by Pt 3, Ch 9, 8.2 Inner bottom plating 8.2.1 but based on the actual spacing of stiffeners. The plating of increased thickness is to extend for a minimum distance corresponding to a vertical height of 1.5 m above the line of the inner bottom. Outboard of the plating of increased thickness, the thickness of the adjacent strakes is to be tapered to the Rule thickness for plating, as required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 8.4 Inner bottom plating and stiffening 8.4.1, at the top corner of the tank, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 7, 9.2 Sloped bulkhead plating 9.2.3 where, in addition, the `strengthened for heavy cargo notation' is desired.

8. 4 Transverse bulkhead plating

8. 4. 1 The thickness of the bulkhead or stool plating adjacent to the inner bottom is to be as required by Pt 3, Ch 9, 8.2 Inner bottom plating 8.2.1 but based on the actual spacing of the bulkhead or stool stiffeners. The plating of increased thickness is to extend for a minimum distance corresponding to a vertical height of 1.5 m above the line of the inner bottom.

PART

3

CHAPTER **9** **Special Features**

SECTION **9** **Strengthening for machinery on deck**

9. 1 Application

9. 1. 1 Where it is intended to install machinery on deck, the requirements of this Section are to be complied with and the notation '**Machinery on deck**' will be assigned.

9. 1. 2 Where the concentrated loads calculated in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 9, 9.2, Loading are less than the specified deck design load required by Table 3. 5. 1: Design heads and permissible cargo loadings or where the ship has been assigned a '**Heavy deck loads**' notation and the machinery loading is less than the assigned heavy deck cargo loading, then the requirements of this Section need not be applied and the notation will not be assigned.

9. 1. 3 The requirements of this Section do not apply to lifting appliances, anchoring and mooring equipment, or towing equipment.

9. 2 Loading

9. 2. 1 The motions of the ship and the wind loading are to be considered in deriving the loads acting on the ship.

9. 2. 2 The design accelerations are to be calculated in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 9, 9.2 Loading 9.2.3 and applied as considered necessary. Other means of deriving the design accelerations such as direct calculation or model testing will be specially considered.

9. 2. 3 The following formulae are given as guidance for the components of acceleration due to ship motions and apply to ships with a length exceeding 50 metres and where the speed is such that the ship is operating within the displacement mode basedon normal ship service speed.

Vertical acceleration due to heave, pitch and roll motions:

$$a_z = \pm\sqrt{a_{\text{heave}}^2 + a_{\text{pitch}}^2 + a_{\text{rollz}}^2}$$

Transverse acceleration due to sway, yaw and roll motions:

$$a_y = \pm\sqrt{a_{\text{sway}}^2 + a_{\text{yaw}}^2 + a_{\text{rolly}}^2}$$

Longitudinal acceleration due to surge motions:

$$a_x = \pm a_0\sqrt{0.06 + A^2 - 0.25\text{A}}$$

Where

$$A = f_{\text{HS}} f_{\text{st}} \left(0.7 - \frac{L}{1200} + \frac{5(z-T)}{L}\right)\left(\frac{0.6}{C_b}\right)$$

a_x, a_y and a_z=are the maximum dimensionless accelerations (i.e. relative to the acceleration of gravity) in their respective directions and are considered as acting separately for calculation purposes.

a_x = is measured positive in the forward direction. Includes the component due to static weight in the longitudinal direction due to pitching.

a_y = is measured positive in the transverse direction to port. Includes the component due to static weight in the transverse direction due to rolling.

a_z = is measured positive in the downwards direction, i.e. adds to g. Does not include the component due to static weight.

a_0, a_{heave}, a_{pitch}, a_{sway}, a_{yaw}, a_{rolly}, $a_{(rollz)}$, f_{st} and A are defined in Table 9. 9. 1: Ship motions.

f_{HS} = is taken as 1 for unrestricted sea going service.

T, L and C_b=are defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1, Principal particulars

z = is the vertical distance, in metres, from the keel line to the position or centre of gravity of the item being considered.

Table 9. 9. 1: Ship motions

Motion		Acceleration
Heave		$a_{heaxe} = a_0$
Pitch		$a_{pitch} = a_0\left(5.3 - \frac{45}{L}\right)\left(\frac{x - LCG}{L}\right)\left(\frac{0.6}{C_b}\right)^{0.75}$
Sway		$a_{sway} = 0.78a_0$
Yaw		$a_{yaw} = a_0 1.6\left(\frac{x - LCG}{L}\right)$
Roll	Acceleration due to Roll Vertical direction	$a_{rollz} = a_0\frac{0.6yK^{1.5}}{B}$
Roll	Acceleration due to Roll Transverse direction	$a_{rolly} = a_0\sqrt{K}\left(1 + 0.6K\left(\frac{z - T}{B}\right)\right)$
		$a_0 = f_{HS}f_{st}\left(\frac{0.2V_a}{\sqrt{L}} + \frac{34 - \left(\frac{600}{L}\right)}{L}\right)$
Relative vertical motion		$H_{rm} = C_{w.min}\left(1 + \frac{k_r}{(C_b + 0.2)}\left(\frac{x}{L} - x_m\right)^2\right)$
Symbols		
f_{st}=correction factor for long term (10^{-8}) acceleration value to average of the highest 1/100 acceleration values =0.8		$F_n = \frac{0.515V_a}{\sqrt{gL}}$

C_w=a wave head, in metres $= 7.71 \times 10^{-2} L e^{-0.0044L}$ but L is not to be taken greater than 227 $C_{w.min} = \frac{C_w}{k_m}\sqrt{\frac{2.25}{k_r}}$ $k_m = 1 + \frac{k_r(0.5-x_m)^2}{(C_b+0.2)}$ x_m=0.45-0.6F_n but x_m is not to be taken less than 0.2 k_r= 2.25 $V_a = \frac{2}{3}V$ V is maximum service speed in knots	K $= 13\frac{GM}{B}$ but is not to be taken less than 1 GM=is the metacentric height in metres f_{HS}=is defined in Pt 3, Ch 9, 9.2 Loading 9.2.3 L, T, B and C_b =are defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1, Principal particulars x=is the longitudinal position of the location under consideration measured from the aft end of L LCG=is the longitudinal centre of gravity of the ship measured in metres from the aft end of L
Note *1* Heave motion is measured positive upwards. **Note** *2* Pitch motion is measured positive bow downwards. **Note** *3* Sway motion is measured positive to port. **Note** *4* Yaw motion is measured positive bow to port. **Note** *5* Roll motion is measured positive port side upwards.	

9. 2. 4 The wind force is to be calculated in accordance with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 9, 9.2 Loading 9.2.4 and Pt 3, Ch 9, 9.2 Loading 9.2.5. The wind force acting in the most onerous direction for the case being considered is to be applied.

9. 2. 5 The wind pressure, p, acting on the structure is given by:

$$p = \frac{V^2}{1630} \text{kN/m}^2$$

Where

V = wind speed, in m/s; to be taken as 63 m/s.

9. 2. 6 The wind force, F_w, acting on the structure is given by:

$$F_w = ApC_f \quad \text{kN}$$

Where

A = the effective area of the structure concerned, i.e. the solid area projected on to a plane perpendicular to the wind direction, in m2

p = the wind pressure as defined in Pt 3, Ch 9, 9.2 Loading 9.2.5

C_f = the force coefficient in the direction of the wind, as defined in Table 9. 9. 2: Force coefficient Cf

Table 9. 9. 2: Force coefficient Cf

Type	Description		Aerodynamic slenderness l/b or l/D					
			5	10	20	30	40	50
Individual members	Rolled sections, rectangles, hollow sections, flat plates, box sections with b or d less than 0.5 m		1.30	1.35	1.60	1.65	1.70	1.80
	Circular sections, where	$DV_s < 6\ m^2/s$	0.75	0.80	0.90	0.95	1.00	1.10
		$DV_s \geq 6\ m^2/s$	0.60	0.65	0.70	0.70	0.75	0.80
	Box sections with b or d greater than 0.5 m	b/d ≥2.00	1.55	1.75	1.95	2.10	2.20	
		1.00	1.40	1.55	1.75	1.85	1.90	
		0.50	1.00	1.20	1.30	1.35	1.40	
		0.25	0.80	0.90	0.90	1.00	1.00	
Single lattice frames	Flat sided sections		1.70					
	Circular sections, where	$DV_s < 6\ m^2/s$	1.20					
		$DV_s \geq 6\ m^2/s$	0.80					
Plated structure	Plated structures on solid base (air flow beneath structure prevented)		1.10					
Symbols								
l=length of member D=diameter of circular section V_s=wind speed, in m/s b=breadth of box section, in metres d=depth of box section, in metres								

9. 3 Support structure for machinery on deck

9. 3. 1 The deck plating and underdeck structure are to be reinforced under machinery. Acceptable stress levels are as follows:

$$\sigma \leq 0.75\sigma_{ref}$$

$$\tau \leq 0.47\sigma_{ref}$$

$$\sigma_e \leq 0.85\ \sigma_{ref}$$

Where

σ = normal stress, in N/mm^2

τ = shear stress, in N/mm^2

σ_e = equivalent stress, in N/mm^2

σ_{ref} = reference stress of the material, in N/mm^2

$= \frac{235}{k_L}$

k_L = as defined in Table 2. 1. 1: Values of kL

9. 3. 2 Insert plates are to be incorporated in the deck plating in way of machinery foundations where considered necessary to limit deflection and reduce stress concentrations. The thickness of the insert plates is to be as required by the designer's calculations but in no case is to be taken as less than 1.5 times the thickness of the adjacent attached plating.

9. 3. 3 Where fitted, all inserts are to have well radiused corners and be suitably edge prepared prior to welding. The connection between the insert plate and the adjacent deck plating is to be full penetration. All other welding in way of the insert plate is generally to be double continuous and full penetration in way of critical locations. Tapers are to be not less than three to one.

PART

3

CHAPTER **10 Welding and Structural Details**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**1130**
	1. 1	Application	1130
	1. 2	Symbols	1130
SECTION 2	**Welding**		**1131**
	2. 1	General	1131
	2. 2	Fillet welds	1131
	2. 3	Welding of primary structure	1139
	2. 4	Welding of primary and secondary member end connections	1140
	2. 5	Welding equipment	1142
	2. 6	Welding consumables and equipment	1143
	2. 7	Welding procedures and welder qualifications	1143
	2. 8	Workmanship and shipyard practice	1143
	2. 9	Inspection of welds	1143
SECTION 3	**Secondary member end connections**		**1146**
	3. 1	General	1146
	3. 2	Symbols	1146
	3. 3	Basis for calculation	1146
	3. 4	Scantlings of end brackets	1147
	3. 5	Arrangements and details	1149
SECTION 4	**Construction details for primary members**		**1150**
	4. 1	General	1150
	4. 2	Symbols	1150
	4. 3	Arrangements	1150
	4. 4	Geometric properties and proportions	1151
	4. 5	Web stability	1151
	4. 6	Openings in the web	1152

4. 7 End connections 1152
SECTION 5 Structural details 1154
5. 1 Continuity and alignment 1154
5. 2 Arrangements at intersections of continuous secondary and primary members 1155
5. 3 Openings 1162
5. 4 Sheerstrake and bulwarks 1162
5. 5 Fittings and attachments, general 1163
5. 6 Bilge keels and ground bars 1163
5. 7 Other fittings and attachments 1166
SECTION 6 Access arrangements for oil tankers and bulk carriers 1167
6. 1 Application 1167
6. 2 Information for approval 1167

PART

3

CHAPTER **10 Welding and Structural Details**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 10. 2. 1: Weld factors 1133
Table 10. 2. 2: Throat thickness limits 1139
Table 10. 2. 3: Connections of primary structure 1140
Table 10. 2. 4: Secondary member end connection welds 1141
Table 10. 2. 5: Weld connection of strength deck plating to sheerstrake 1141
Table 10. 2. 6: Checkpoint locations 1143
Table 10. 3. 1: Thickness of brackets 1148
Table 10. 4. 1: Minimum thickness of primary members 1151
Table 10. 5. 1: Total load transmitted to connection of secondary members 1156
Table 10. 5. 2: Load height factor, *f* 1158
Table 10. 5. 3: Permissible stresses 1161

PART

3

CHAPTER **10 Welding and Structural Details**

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 10. 2. 1: Weld dimensions and types 1132

Figure 10. 3. 1: Diagrammatic arrangements of stiffener end brackets 1148

Figure 10. 5. 1: Bracket toe construction 1155

Figure 10. 5. 2: Load height diagrams for framing members (a) at and abaft 0.2*L* from the forward perpendicular and (b) forward of cargo tank region for oil tankers, bulk chemical tankers and combination carriers (*See Pt 3, Ch 10, 1.1 Application 1.1.3*) and forward of 0.15*L* from the forward perpendicular for other ship types 1159

Figure 10. 5. 3: Cut-outs and connections 1160

Figure 10. 5. 4: Arrangement with offset stiffener 1162

Figure 10. 5. 5: Bilge keel construction 1163

Figure 10. 5. 6: Bilge keel end design 1165

PART

3

CHAPTER 10 Welding and Structural Details

SECTION 1 General

1. 1 Application

1. 1. 1 This Chapter is applicable to all ship types and components.

1. 1. 2 Requirements are given in this Chapter for the following:

a. Welding-connection details, defined practices and sequence, consumables and equipment, procedures, workmanship and inspection.

b. End connection scantlings and constructional details for longitudinals, beams, frames and bulkhead stiffeners.

c. Primary member proportions, stiffening and construction details.

Additional requirements for primary structure of tankers and similar ships are given in Pt 4, Ch 9, 6 Inner hull, inner bottom and longitudinal oiltight bulkheads.

1. 1. 3 The requirements in this Chapter are not applicable to Double Hull Oil Tankers or Bulk Carriers with a CSR notation (*See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull)) with the exception of Pt 3, Ch 10, 2.5 Welding equipment which are to be complied with.

1. 2 Symbols

1. 2. 1 Symbols are defined as necessary in each Section.

1. 2. 2 The Notation **ESP** serves to identify the ships as being subject to an Enhanced Survey Programme as detailed in Pt 1, Ch 3, 3 Intermediate Surveys - Hull and machinery requirements and Pt 1, Ch 3, 7 Special Survey - Oil tankers (including ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships) - Hull requirements, *See also* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2 Character of classification and class notations.

PART

3

CHAPTER **10 Welding and Structural Details**

SECTION **2 Welding**

2. 1 General

2. 1. 1 The plans to be submitted for approval are to indicate clearly details of the welded connections of main structural members, including the type and size of welds. This requirement includes welded connections to steel castings.

The information to be submitted should include the following:

a. Whether weld sizes given are throat thicknesses or leg lengths.
b. Grades and thicknesses of materials to be welded.
c. Location, types of joints and angles of abutting members.
d. Reference to welding procedures to be used.
e. Sequence of welding of assemblies and joining up of assemblies.

2. 1. 2 Unless otherwise indicated, all welding is to be in accordance with the requirements of Ch 13 Requirements for Welded Construction of the Rules for Materials.

2. 2 Fillet welds

2. 2. 1 The throat thickness of fillet welds is to be determined from:

$$\text{Throat thickness} = t_p \times \text{weld factor} \times \frac{d}{s}$$

Where

d = the distance between start positions of successive weld fillet, in mm

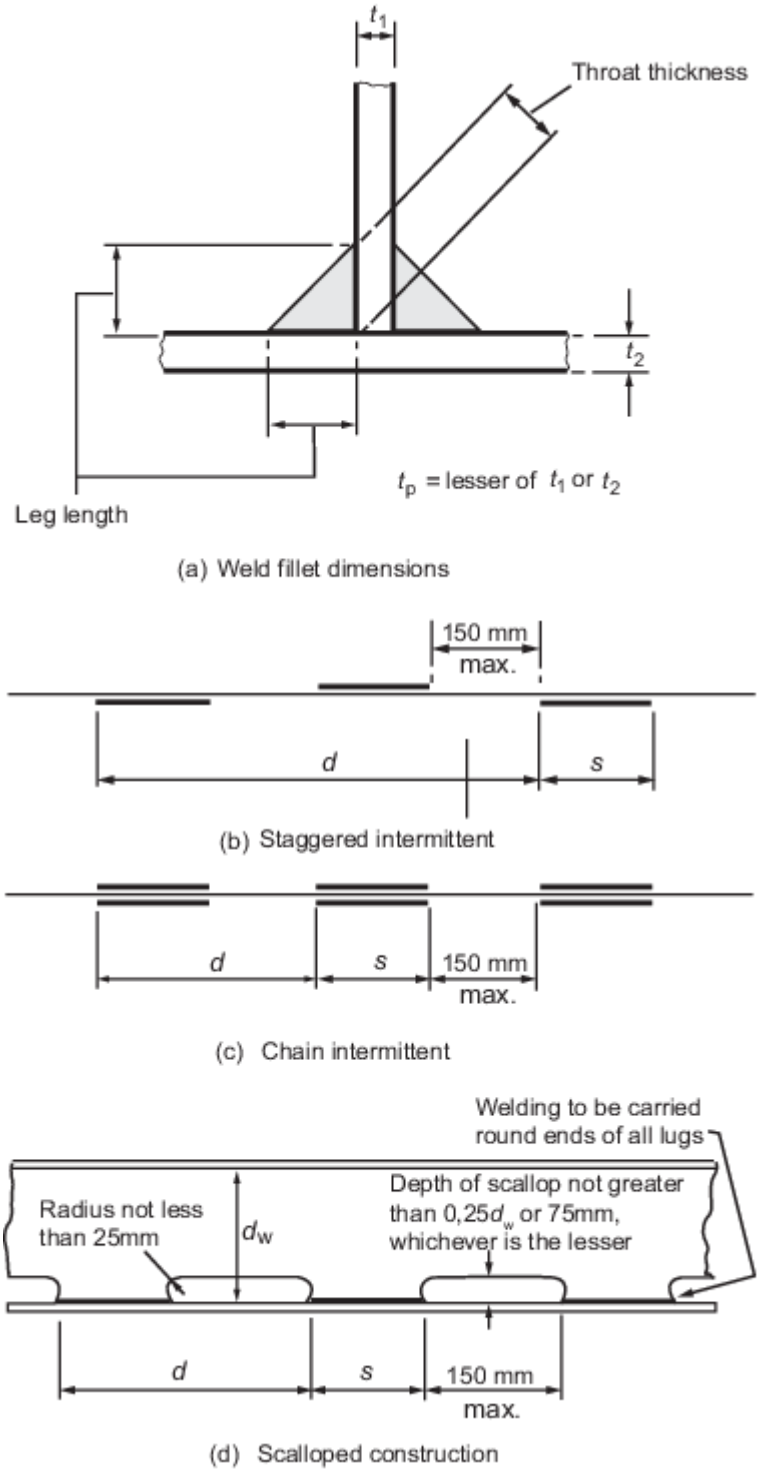
s = the length, in mm, of correctly proportioned weld fillet, clear of end craters, and is to be not less than 75 mm

t_p = plate thickness, on which weld fillet size is based, in mm

See also Figure 10. 2. 1: Weld dimensions and types

Weld factors are given in Table 10. 2. 1: Weld factors, Table 10. 2. 3: Connections of primary structure and Table 10. 2. 4: Secondary member end connection welds.

Figure 10. 2. 1: Weld dimensions and types



2. 2. 2 Where double continuous fillet welding is proposed, the throat thickness is to be determined taking $(\frac{d}{s})$ equal to 1.0.

2. 2. 3 The leg length of the weld is to be not less than $\sqrt{2}$ times the specified throat thickness.

2. 2. 4 The plate thickness, t_p, to be used in the above calculation is generally to be that of the thinner of the two parts being joined. Where the difference in thickness is considerable, the size of fillet will be considered.

2. 2. 5 Where the thickness of the abutting member of the connection (e.g. the web of a stiffener) is greater than 15 mm and exceeds the thickness of the table member (e.g. plating), the welding is to be double continuous and the throat thickness of the weld is to be not less than the greatest of the following:

a. 0.21 x thickness of the table member. The table member thickness used need not exceed 25mm.
b. 0.21 (0.27 in tanks) x half the thickness of the abutting member.
c. As required by Table 10. 2. 2: Throat thickness limits.

2. 2. 6 Except as permitted by Pt 3, Ch 10, 2.2 Fillet welds 2.2.5, the throat thickness of the weld is not to be outside the limits specified in Table 10. 2. 2: Throat thickness limits.

Table 10. 2. 1: Weld factors

Item		Weld factor	Remarks
(1)	General application:		except as required below
	Watertight plate boundaries	0.34	
	Non-tight plate boundaries	0.13	
	Longitudinals, frames, beams, and other secondary members to shell, deck or bulkhead plating	0.10	
		0.13	in tanks
		0.21	in way of end connections
	Panel stiffeners, etc.	0.10	
	Overlap welds generally	0.27	
	Longitudinals of the flat-bar type to plating		*See* Note 5
(2)	Bottom construction in way of holds or tanks:		
	Non-tight centre girder: to keel	0.27	
	to inner bottom	0.21	no scallops
		0.21	in way of 0.2 × span at ends
	Non-tight boundaries of floors, girders and brackets	0.27	in way of brackets at lower end of main frame
	Watertight bottom girders	0.34	
	Connection of girder to inner bottom in way of longitudinal bulkheads supported on inner bottom	0.44	

	Inner bottom longitudinals or reverse frames	0.13	under holds strengthened for heavy cargoes Weld size based on floor thickness
	Connection of floors to inner bottom in way of plane bulkheads, bulkhead stools, or corrugated and double plate bulkheads supported on inner bottom. The supporting floors are to be continuously welded to the inner bottom	0.44	Weld material compatible with floor material *See* Note 4
(3)	Hull framing; Webs of web frames and stringers: to shell to face plate Tank side brackets to shell and inner bottom	 0.16 0.13 0.34	
(4)	Decks and supporting structure: Strength deck plating to shell		as shown in Table 10. 2. 5: Weld connection of strength deck plating to sheerstrake but alternative proposals will be considered
	Other decks to shell and bulkheads (except where forming tank boundaries)	0.21	generally continuous
	Webs of cantilevers to deck and to shell in way of root bracket	0.44	
	Webs of cantilevers to face plate	0.21	
	Pillars: fabricated	0.10	
	end connections	0.34	*See* Note 1
	end connections (tubular)	full penetration	
	Girder web connections and brackets in way of pillar heads and heels	0.21	continuous
(5)	Bulkheads and tank construction, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 7, 10 Bulkheads: Plane, double plate and corrugated watertight bulkhead boundary at bottom, bilge, inner bottom, deck and connection to shelf plate, where fitted	0.44	weld size to be based on thickness of bulkhead plating weld material to be compatible with bulkhead plating material

	Shelf plate connection to stool	0.44	weld size to be based on thickness of stool at junction with shelf plate. Weld material to be compatible with stool material
	Plane, double plate and corrugated bulkhead boundaries in way of deep tanks, holds in bulk carriers (*See* Pt 3, Ch 10, 1.1 Application 1.1.3) which are floodable for the sea-going ballast condition or for the carriage of oil cargoes (Holds in bulk carriers (*See* Pt 3, Ch 10, 1.1 Application 1.1.3) which are partially flooded for harbour conditions will be specially considered):		
	- Boundary at bottom, bilge, inner bottom and deck	0.44	
	- Connection of stool and bulkhead to lower stool shelf plating	full penetration	
	- Connection of stool and bulkhead plating to upper stool shelf plate	0.44	
	- Connection of bulkhead plating to hopper and topside tanks	0.44	
	- Connection of bulkhead plating to side shell	0.34	
	Secondary members where acting as pillars	0.13	
	Non-watertight pillar bulkhead boundaries	0.13	
	Perforated flats and wash bulkhead boundaries	0.10	
(6)	Structure in cargo oil tanks of tankers (*See* Pt 3, Ch 10, 1.1 Application 1.1.3):		
	Bottom longitudinals to shell	0.21	for forward of 0.3*L*
	Longitudinal of flat-bar type to plating		*See* Pt 3, Ch 10, 2.2 Fillet welds 2.2.5
	Connections between primary structural members	0.44	at bottom
		0.34	at deck
	Oiltight bulkhead boundaries:		
	longitudinal bulkhead	0.44	*See* Note 2
	transverse bulkhead	0.44	at bottom, *See* Note 3
		0.34	at deck, sides and longitudinal bulkhead
	Vertical corrugations to an inner bottom	full penetration	
	Non-tight bulkhead boundaries to plating	0.21	
(7)	Structure in cargo tanks of chemical tankers:		
	Tank boundary bulkheads:		

Type 1 ship		full penetration	
Type 2 ship			
	longitudinal bulkheads	0.44	*See* Note 2
	transverse bulkhead	0.44	
Type 3 ship			
	longitudinal bulkheads	0.44	*See* Note 2
	transverse bulkheads	0.44	at bottom *See* Note 3
	transverse bulkheads at deck, sides and longitudinal bulkhead	0.34	
(8) Structure in hoppers of hopper dredgers, etc.:			
Bulkhead boundary connections		0.44	at bottom and bilge
		0.34	at deck and coamings
Cross members to bulkheads and keels		0.44	
Pillar end connections		0.34	
Hopper door hinges		full penetration	generally
(9) Structure in machinery space:			
Centre girder to keel and inner bottom		0.27	
Floors to centre girder in way of engine, thrust and boiler bearers		0.27	
Floors and girders to shell and inner bottom		0.21	
Main engine foundation girders:			
	to top plate	deep penetration	edge to be prepared with maximum root $0.33t_p$ deep penetration generally
	to hull structure	to depend on design	
Floors to main engine foundation girders		0.27	
Brackets, etc. to main engine foundation girders		0.21	
Transverse and longitudinal framing to shell		0.13	
(10) Construction in 0.25L forward:			
Floors and girders to shell and inner bottom		0.21	
Bottom longitudinals to shell		0.13	
Transverse and longitudinal side framing to shell		0.13	

Tank side brackets to frame and inner bottom	0.34	
Panting stringers to shell and frames	0.34	
Fore peak construction:		
all internal structure	0.13	unless a greater weld factor is required
(11) After peak construction:		
All internal structure and stiffeners on after peak bulkhead	0.21	unless a greater weld factor is required
(12) Superstructure and deckhouses:		
Connection of external bulkheads to deck	0.34	1st and 2nd tier erections elsewhere
	0.21	
Internal bulkheads	0.13	
(13) Hatchways and closing arrangements:		
Hatchways coamings to deck	0.34	0.44 at corners
Hatch cover rest bar	0.16	
Hatch coaming stays to coaming	0.13	
Hatch coamings stays to deck	0.21	
Cleats and fittings	0.44	full penetration welding may be required
Primary and secondary stiffening of hatch covers	0.10	0.13 for tank covers and where covers strengthened for loads over
(14) Steering control systems:		
Rudder:		
Fabricated mainpiece and mainplace to side plates and webs	0.44	
Slot welds inside plates	0.44	
Remaining construction	0.21	
Fixed and steering nozzles:		
Main structure	0.44	
Elsewhere	0.21	
Fabricated housing and structure of thruster units, stabilisers, etc.:		
Main structure	0.44	
Elsewhere	0.21	
(15) Miscellaneous fittings and equipment:		

Rings for manhole type covers, to deck or bulkhead	0.34	
Frames of shell and weathertight bulkhead doors	0.34	
Stiffening of doors	0.21	
Ventilator, air pipe, etc. coamings to deck	0.34	Load Line Positions 1 and 2
	0.21	elsewhere
Ventilator, etc. fittings	0.21	
Scuppers and discharges, to deck	0.44	
Masts, derrick posts, crane pedestals, etc. to deck	0.44	full penetration welding may be required
Deck machinery seats to deck	0.21	generally
Mooring equipment seats	0.21	generally, but increased or full penetration welding may be required
Bulwark stays to deck	0.21	
Bulwark attachment to deck	0.34	
Guard rails, stanchions, etc. to deck	0.34	
Bilge keel ground bars to shell	0.34	Continuous fillet weld, minimum throat thickness 4 mm
Bilge keels to ground bars	0.21	Light continuous fillet weld, minimum throat thickness 3 mm
Fabricated anchors	full penetration	

Note *1.* Where pillars are fitted inside tanks or under watertight flats, the end connection is to be such that the tensile stress in the weld does not exceed 108 N/mm^2.

Note *2.* t_p need not be taken greater than the thickness determined from item 1(a) or 1(b) and Notes, as appropriate, of Table 9. 6. 1: Inner hull and longitudinal oiltight bulkhead scantlings in Pt 4, Ch 9 Double Hull Oil Tankers, but in no case is the weld throat thickness to be less than 0.34 x actual plate thickness.

Note *3.* t_p need not be taken greater than the Rule thickness determined from Table 9. 7. 1: Transverse oiltight bulkhead scantlings of Pt 4, Ch 9 Double Hull Oil Tankers for stiffener spacing of 760 mm, but in no case is the weld throat thickness to be less than 0.34 × actual plate thickness.

Note *4.* In way of bulkhead stools in ballast holds of bulk carriers or in tanks at longitudinal girder/transverse floor intersection, cut-outs are to be omitted and full penetration welding is to be applied to both floor and girder for a distance of 150 mm on either side of intersection.

Note *5.* The throat thickness of the weld is to be determined by Pt 3, Ch 10, 2.2 Fillet welds 2.2.5. For longitudinals within *D*/4 of the strength deck and with a thickness less than 100 mm, the throat thickness need not exceed 5.5 mm.

2. 2. 7 Double continuous fillet welding is to be adopted in the following locations, and may be used elsewhere if desired:

a. Boundaries of weathertight decks and erections, including hatch coamings, companionways and other openings.
b. Boundaries of tanks and watertight compartments.
c. All structure in the after peak and the after peak bulkhead stiffeners.
d. All welding inside tanks intended for chemicals or edible liquid cargoes.
e. All lap welds in tanks.
f. Primary and secondary members to bottom shell in the 0.3L forward.
g. Primary and secondary members to plating in way of end connections, and end brackets to plating in the case of lap connections.
h. Where Pt 3, Ch 10, 2.2 Fillet welds 2.2.5 applies.
i. All water ballast tanks.
j. Other connections or attachments, where considered necessary, and in particular the attachment of minor fittings to higher tensile steel plating.

2. 2. 8 Where intermittent welding is used, the welding is to be made double continuous in way of brackets, lugs and scallops and at the orthogonal connections with other members.

2. 2. 9 As an alternative to intermittent welding, single sided welding may be used. Only mechanised single sided welding is acceptable although manual single sided welding may be used at non-critical locations e.g. deck house stiffeners. Where single sided welding is used, the welding is to be made double continuous in way of brackets, lugs and scallops and at the orthogonal connections with other members.

2. 2. 10 Where structural members pass through the boundary of a tank, and leakage into the adjacent space could be hazardous or undesirable, full penetration welding is to be adopted for the members for at least 150 mm on each side of the boundary. Alternatively a small scallop of suitable shape may be cut in the member close to the boundary outside the compartment, and carefully welded all round.

2. 3 Welding of primary structure

2. 3. 1 Weld factors for the connections of primary structure are given in Table 10. 2. 3: Connections of primary structure.

Table 10. 2. 2: Throat thickness limits

Item	Throat thickness, in mm	
	Minimum	Maximum
(1) Double continuous welding	$0.21t_p$	$0.44t_p$
(2) Intermittent welding	$0.27t_p$	$0.44t_p$ or 4.5
(3) All welds, overriding minimum:		
(a) Plate thickness $t_p \leq 7.5$ mm		
Hand or automatic welding	3.0	—
Automatic deep penetration welding	3.0	—
(b) Plate thickness $t_p > 7.5$ mm		
Hand or automatic welding	3.25	—

Automatic deep penetration welding	3.0	—

Note *1*. In all cases, the limiting value is to be taken as the greatest of the applicable values given above.

Note *2*. Where t_p exceeds 25 mm, the limiting values may be calculated using a notional thickness equal to 0.4 (t_p+25) mm.

Note *3*. The maximum throat thicknesses shown are intended only as a design limit for the approval of fillet welded joints. Any welding in excess of these limits is to be to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

2. 3. 2 The weld connection to shell, deck or bulkhead is to take account of the material lost in the notch where longitudinals or stiffeners pass through the member. Where the width of notch exceeds 15 per cent of the stiffener spacing, the weld factor is to be multiplied by:

$$\frac{0.85 \times \text{stiffener spacing}}{\text{length of web plating between notches}}$$

2. 3. 3 Where direct calculation procedures have been adopted, the weld factors for the 0.2 x overall length at the ends of the members will be considered in relation to the calculated loads.

2. 3. 4 The throat thickness limits given in Table 10. 2. 2: Throat thickness limits are to be complied with.

2. 4 Welding of primary and secondary member end connections

2. 4. 1 Welding of end connections of primary members is to be such that the area of welding is not less than the cross-sectional area of the member, and the weld factor is to be not less than 0.34 in tanks or 0.27 elsewhere.

2. 4. 2 The welding of secondary member end connections is to be not less than as required by Table 10. 2. 4: Secondary member end connection welds. Where two requirements are given the greater is to be complied with.

2. 4. 3 The area of weld, A_w, is to be applied to each arm of the bracket or lapped connection.

Table 10. 2. 3: Connections of primary structure

Primary member face area, in cm^2			Weld factor			
Exceeding	Not exceeding	Position(1)	In tanks		In dry spaces	
			To face plate	To plating	To face plate	To plating
	30.0	At ends	0.21	0.27	0.21	0.21
		Remainder	0.10	0.16	0.10	0.13
30.0	65.0	At ends	0.21	0.34	0.21	0.21
		Remainder	0.13	0.27	0.13	0.16
65.0	95.0	At ends	0.34	0.44(3)	0.21	0.27
		Remainder	0.27(2)	0.34	0.16	0.21
95.0	130.0	At ends	0.34	0.44(3)	0.27	0.34
		Remainder	0.27(2)	0.34	0.21	0.27
130.0		At ends	0.44	0.44(3)	0.34	0.44(3)
		Remainder	0.34	0.34	0.27	0.34

Note *1.* The weld factors `at ends' are to be applied for 0.2 x the overall length of the member from each end, but at least beyond the toes of the member end brackets. On vertical webs the increased welding may be omitted at the top, but is to extend at least 0.3 x overall length from the bottom.

Note *2.* Weld factor 0.34 in cargo oil tanks.

Note *3.* Where the web plate thickness is increased locally, the weld size may be based on the thickness clear of the increase, but is to be not less than 0.34 x the increased thickness.

Note *4.* In tankers over 122 m in length, the weld factor of the connection of bottom transverses to shell, and of side transverses to shell and vertical webs to longitudinal and transverse bulkheads all in the lower half depth, is to be not less than 0.34.

Note *5.* The final throat thickness of the weld fillet to be not less than $0.34t_p$ in cargo oil tanks.

Table 10. 2. 4: Secondary member end connection welds

Connection	Weld area, A_w, in cm^2	Weld factor
(1) Stiffener welded direct to plating	$0.25A_s$ or 6.5 cm^2 whichever is the greater	0.34
(2) Bracketless connection of stiffeners or stiffener lapped to bracket or bracket lapped to stiffener:		
(a) in dry space	$1.2\sqrt{Z}$	0.27
(b) in tank	$1.4\sqrt{Z}$	0.34
(c) main frame to tank side bracket in $0.15L$ forward	as (a) or (b)	0.34
(3) Bracket welded to face of stiffener and bracket connection to plating	—	0.34
(4) Stiffener to plating for 0.1 x span at ends, or in way of end bracket if that be greater	—	0.34

Symbols

A_s = cross sectional area of the stiffener, in cm^2

A_w = the area of the weld, in cm^2, and is calculated as total length of weld, in cm, x throat thickness, in cm

Z = the section modulus, in cm^2, of the stiffener on which the scantlings of the bracket are based, *See* Pt 3, Ch 10, 3 Secondary member end connections

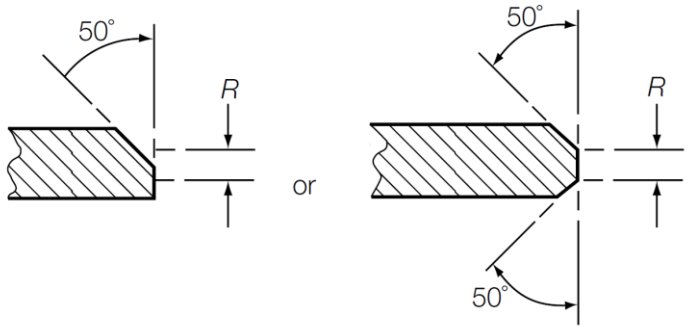
Note For maximum and minimum weld fillet sizes, *See* Table 10. 2. 2: Throat thickness limits

Table 10. 2. 5: Weld connection of strength deck plating to sheerstrake

Item	Stringer plate thickness, mm	Weld type

1	$t \leq 15$	Double continuous fillet weld with a weld factor of 0.44
2	$15 < t \leq 20$	Single vee preparation to provide included angle of 50° with root R $\leq \frac{1}{3}t$ in conjunction with a continuous fillet weld having a weld factor of 0.39; or Double vee preparation to provide included angles of 50° with root R $\leq \frac{1}{3}t$
3	$t > 20$	Double vee preparation to provided included angles of 50° with root R $\leq \frac{1}{3}t$ but not to exceed 10 mm

Where t = thickness of stringer plate, in mm



Single vee preparation Double vee preparation

Note *1.* Welding procedure, including joint preparation, is to be specified. Procedure is to be qualified and approved for individual Builders.

Note *2. See also* Pt 3, Ch 10, 2.2 Fillet welds 2.2.10:

Note *3.* For thickness *t* in excess of 20 mm the stringer plate may be bevelled to achieve a reduced thickness at the weld connection. The length of the bevel is in general to be based on a taper not exceeding 1 in 3 and the reduced thickness is in general to be not less than 0.65 times the thickness of stringer plate or 20 mm, whichever is the greater.

Note *4.* Alternative connections will be considered.

2. 4. 4 Where a longitudinal strength member is cut at a primary support and the continuity of strength is provided by brackets, the area of weld is to be not less than the cross-sectional area of the member.

2. 4. 5 Where the secondary member passes through, and is supported by, the web of a primary member, the weld connection is to be in accordance with the following:

a. In strengthening of bottom forward region:

Comply with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.5 Strengthening of bottom forward.

b. Elsewhere:

Comply with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 10, 5.2, Arrangements at intersections of continuous secondary and primary members.

2. 4. 6 The throat thickness limits given in Table 10. 2. 2: Throat thickness limits are to be complied with.

2. 5 Welding equipment

2. 5. 1 Welding plant and equipment are to be in accordance with the requirements specified in Ch 13, 1.8 Welding equipment and welding consumables of the Rules for Materials.

2. 6 Welding consumables and equipment

2. 6. 1 Welding consumables used and associated equipment is to be in accordance with the requirements specified in Ch 13, 1.8 Welding equipment and welding consumables of the Rules for Materials.

2. 7 Welding procedures and welder qualifications

2. 7. 1 Welding procedures are to be established for the welding of all joints in accordance with the requirements specified in Ch 13, 1.9 Welding procedure and welder qualifications of the Rules for Materials.

2. 7. 2 All welding procedures are to be tested and qualified in accordance with the requirements of Ch 12 Welding Qualifications of the Rules for Materials and are to be approved by the Surveyor prior to construction.

2. 7. 3 Welders and welding operators are to be proficient in the type of work to be undertaken and are to be qualified in accordance with the requirements specified in Ch 12 Welding Qualifications of the Rules for Materials.

2. 8 Workmanship and shipyard practice

2. 8. 1 A sufficient number of skilled supervisors is to be provided to ensure an effective and systematic control at all stages of welding operations.

2. 9 Inspection of welds

2. 9. 1 Effective arrangements are to be provided by the Shipbuilder for the inspection of finished welds to ensure that all welding has been satisfactorily completed.

2. 9. 2 All finished welds are to be subjected to non-destructive examination by personnel designated by the Builder in accordance with the requirements specified in Ch 13, 2.12 Non-destructive examination of welds of the Rules for Materials.

2. 9. 3 In addition to the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 10, 2.9 Inspection of welds 2.9.2, a number of checkpoints are to be examined by volumetric examination as detailed in Pt 3, Ch 10, 2.9 Inspection of welds 2.9.4 to Pt 3, Ch 10, 2.9 Inspection of welds 2.9.9.

2. 9. 4 Typical locations and number of checkpoints to be taken are shown in Table 10. 2. 6: Checkpoint locations. Critical locations as identified by *ACSPlus FDA Guidelines* (*See* Pt 3, Ch 16 ACSPlus Guidelines for the Design, Construction and Lifetime Care of Ships) are also to be considered. A plan of the proposed checkpoint locations is to be submitted for approval.

Table 10. 2. 6: Checkpoint locations

Item	Location	Checkpoints
Intersections of butts and seams of fabrication and section welds	Throughout:	
	(a) hull envelope, shell envelope and deck structure plating:	
	at highly stressed areas, *See* Note 1	all
	remainder	1 in 2

	(b) longitudinal and transverse bulkheads	1 in 2
	(c) inner bottom and hopper plating:	1 in 2
SDA/FDA	At critical locations identified by SDA or FDA, *See* Note 2	all
Butt welds in plating	Throughout	1 m in 25 m, *See* Notes 3 and 4
Seam welds in plating	Throughout	1 m in 100 m
Butt welds in longitudinals	Hull envelope within 0.4*L* amidships	1 in 10 welds, *See* Note 5
	Hull envelope outside 0.4*L* amidships	1 in 20 welds
Bilge keel butt welds	Within 0.4*L* amidships	all
	Remainder	1 in 3
Structural items when made with full penetration welding as follows:	Throughout	
connection of stool and bulkhead to lower stool shelf plating		1 m in 20 m
vertical corrugations to an inner bottom		1 m in 20 m
hopper knuckles		1 m in 10 m
sheerstrake to deck stringer		1 m in 20 m
hatchways coaming to deck		1 m in 40 m
	Hatchway ends within 0.4*L* amidships	all
	Hatchway ends outside 0.4*L* amidships	1 in 2
	Remainder	1 in 40 m

Note *1.* Typically those at sheerstrake, deck stringer, keel strake and turn of bilge.

Note *2.* SDA signifies the *ACSPlus Structural Design Assessment Guidelines*, FDA signifies the *ACSPlus Fatigue Design Assessment Guidelines*.

Note *3.* Checkpoints in butt welds and seam welds are in addition to those at intersections.

Note *4.* Welds at inserts used to close openings in hull envelope plating are to be checked by non-destructive examination.

Note *5.* Particular attention is to be given to repair rates in butt welds in longitudinals. Additional welds are to be tested if defects such as lack of fusion or incomplete penetration are observed in more than 10 per cent of the welds examined.

2. 9. 5 Checkpoints are not to be identified on the ship's structural components prior to the welding taking place. Special treatment is not to be given at these locations except critical locations as identified by *ACSPlus FDA Guidelines*.

2. 9. 6 For ultrasonic examination the length of each checkpoint is to be 0.5 m and for radiographic examination the length is to be a minimum of 0.3 m. At weld intersections, examination is to be in both weld directions.

2. 9. 7 The Builder is to provide the Surveyor with all the NDE reports of the checkpoints. These reports are to be available for the Surveyor to review within a short time after inspection, normally considered to be within 10 working days of the examination being carried out. Where welds are repaired the NDE report is to include details of examination of both the defective weld and of the re-weld.

2. 9. 8 Where the Surveyor notes that a checkpoint has been repaired without record of the original defect, the shipyard is to carry out additional examinations on additional lengths of weld. These lengths are to be adjacent to and on both sides of the defective checkpoint. These additional examinations are to be carried out in the presence of the Surveyor and reported in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 10, 2.9 Inspection of welds 2.9.7.

2. 9. 9 Where checkpoints are found to contain continuous or semi-continuous defects, additional lengths of weld adjacent to and on both sides of the defective length are to be subject to further volumetric examination. The NDE reports are to be submitted in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 10, 2.9 Inspection of welds 2.9.7.

2. 9. 10 The following non-destructive examination is to be carried out on ships to be assigned the class notation '**Chemical tanker**':

a. All crossings of butts and seams of cargo tank bulkhead plating which are welded in assembly areas or on the berth.
b. Where cargo tank boundary welding is completed in assembly areas or on the berth, a minimum of 10 per cent of the total weld length is to be crack detected.
c. Where side and bottom longitudinal framing and longitudinal stiffeners terminate at transverse bulkheads, a minimum of 10 per cent of the bulkhead boundary connections is to be crack detected in addition to the requirement given in Pt 3, Ch 10, 2.9 Inspection of welds 2.9.10.b.
d. Where longitudinal framing and longitudinal bulkhead stiffeners are continuous through transverse bulkheads, 30 per cent each of the bottom and shipside boundaries and 20 per cent of the longitudinal bulkhead boundaries are to be crack detected in addition to the requirement given in Pt 3, Ch 10, 2.9 Inspection of welds 2.9.10.b.
e. Where transverse framing members are continuous through the cargo tank boundary, a minimum of 10 per cent of boundary connections is to be crack detected.

PART

3

CHAPTER **10 Welding and Structural Details**

SECTION **3 Secondary member end connections**

3. 1 General

3. 1. 1 Secondary members, that is longitudinals, beams, frames and bulkhead stiffeners forming part of the hull structure, are generally to be connected at their ends in accordance with the requirements of this Section. Where it is desired to adopt bracketless connections, the proposed arrangements will be individually considered.

3. 1. 2 Where end connections are fitted in accordance with these requirements, they may be taken into account in determining the effective span of the member.

3. 1. 3 Where the section modulus of the secondary member on which the bracket is based (*See* Pt 3, Ch 10, 3.3 Basis for calculation 3.3.2) exceeds 2000 cm^3, the scantlings of the connection will be considered.

3. 2 Symbols

3. 2. 1 The symbols used in this Section are defined as follows:

a, b = the actual lengths of the two arms of the bracket, in mm, measured from the plating to the toe of the bracket

b_f = the breadth of the flange, in mm

t = the thickness of the bracket, in mm

Z = the section modulus of the secondary member, in cm3.

3. 3 Basis for calculation

3. 3. 1 Where a longitudinal strength member is cut at a primary support and the continuity of strength is provided by brackets, the scantlings of the brackets are to be such that their section modulus and effective cross-sectional area are not less than those of the member. Care is to be taken to ensure correct alignment of the brackets on each side of the primary member.

3. 3. 2 In other cases the scantlings of the bracket are to be based on the modulus as follows:

a. Bracket connecting stiffener to primary member:
modulus of the stiffener.

b. Bracket at the head of a main transverse frame where frame terminates:
modulus of the frame.
Brackets connecting lower deck beams or longitudinals to the main frame in the forward.15L:
modulus of the frame.

c. Elsewhere: the lesser modulus of the members being connected by the bracket.

3. 3. 3 Typical arrangements of stiffener end brackets are shown diagrammatically in Figure 10. 3. 1: Diagrammatic arrangements of stiffener end brackets.

3. 4 Scantlings of end brackets

3. 4. 1 The lengths, *a* and *b*, of the arms are to be measured from the plating to the toe of the bracket and are to be such that:

a. a + b ≥ 2.0l
b. a ≥ 0.8l
c. b ≥ 0.8l

Where

$$I = 90\left(2\sqrt{\frac{Z}{14+\sqrt{Z}}}-1\right)\text{mm}$$

but in no case is *l* to be taken as less than twice the web depth of the stiffener on which the bracket scantlings are to be based.

The scantlings of main frames are normally to be based on these standard brackets at top and bottom, while the scantlings of `tween deck frames are normally to be based on a standard bracket at the top only. Where the actual arm lengths fitted, a_1 and b_1(in mm) are smaller than Rule size, or bracket is omitted, an equivalent arm length, l_a, for the calculation of end connection factor, *See* Table 1. 6. 3: Shell framing (transverse), is to be derived from:

d. $l_a = \frac{(a_1+b_1)}{2}$
e. $a_1 \geq 0.8l_a$
f. $b_1 \geq 0.8l_a$
g. $l_a = 0$, where:
  i. bracket is omitted from the upper or lower ends of the frame, or
  ii. lower frame bracket at bilge is at same level as the inner bottom, or
  iii. lower frame is welded directly to the inner bottom.

3. 4. 2 The length of arm of tank side and hopper side brackets is to be not less than 20 per cent greater than that required above.

3. 4. 3 The thickness of the bracket is to be not less than as required by Table 10. 3. 1: Thickness of brackets.

3. 4. 4 The free edge of the bracket is to be stiffened where any of the following apply:

a. The section modulus, *Z*, exceeds 2000 cm^3.
b. The length of free edge exceeds 50*t* mm.
c. The bracket is fitted at the lower end of main transverse side framing.

3. 4. 5 Where a flange is fitted, its breadth is to be not less than:

$$b_f = 40\left(1+\frac{Z}{1000}\right)\text{mm}$$

= but not less than 50 mm

3. 4. 6 Where the edge is stiffened by a welded face flat, the cross-sectional area of the face flat is to be not less than:

a. $0.009b_ft$ cm^2 for offset edge stiffening.
b. $0.014b_ft$ cm^2 for symmetrically placed stiffening.

Figure 10. 3. 1: Diagrammatic arrangements of stiffener end brackets

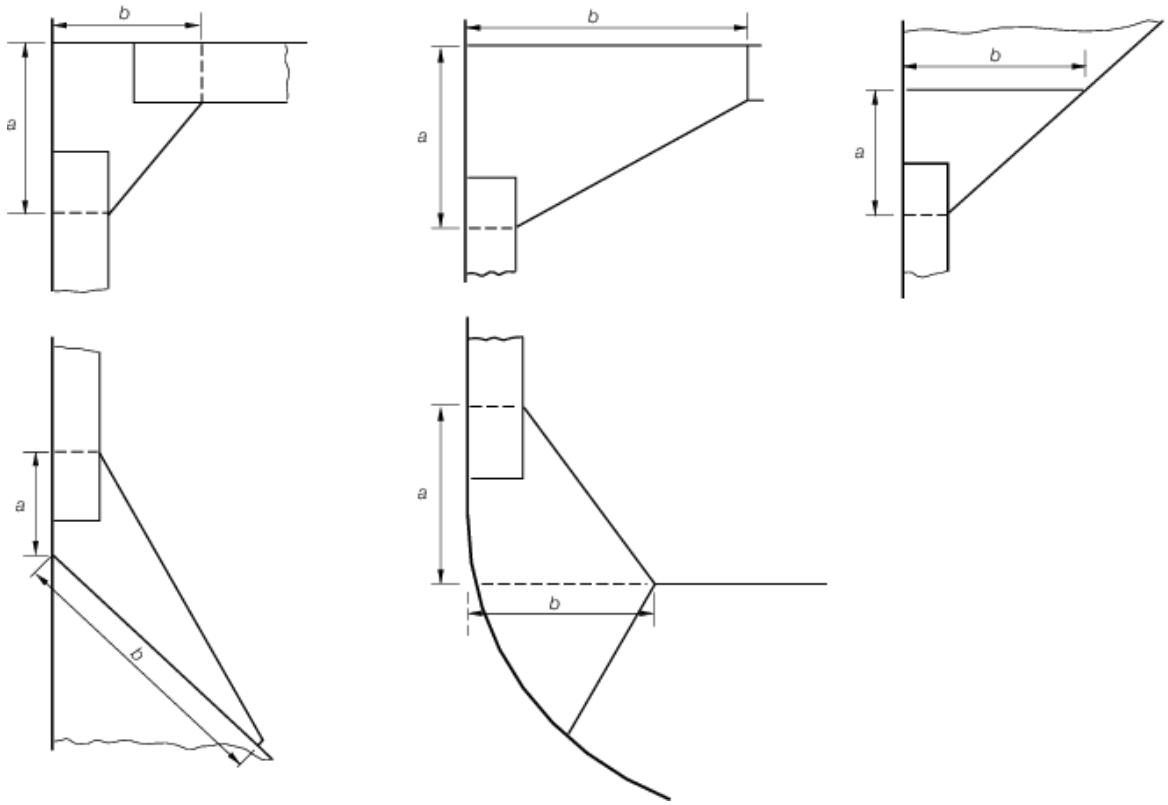


Table 10. 3. 1: Thickness of brackets

Bracket	Thickness, in mm	Limits	
		Minimum	Maximum
With edge stiffened:			
(a) in dry spaces	$3.5 + 0.25\sqrt{Z}$	6.5	12.5
(b) in tanks	$4.5 + 0.25\sqrt{Z}$	7.5 *See* Note	13.5
Unstiffened brackets:		7.5	–
(a) in dry spaces	$5.5 + \frac{Z}{55} - \left(\frac{Z}{168}\right)^{1.3}$		
(b) in tanks	$6.5 + \frac{Z}{55} - \left(\frac{Z}{168}\right)^{1.3}$	8.5 *See* Note	–
Note In the cargo tank region of tankers, the minimum thickness is to be not less than the compartment minimum thickness, *See* Pt 4, Ch 9, 10 Construction details and minimum thickness.			

3. 4. 7 Where the stiffening member is lapped on to the bracket, the length of overlap is to be adequate to provide for the required area of welding. In general, the length of overlap should be not less than $10\sqrt{Z}\,mm$, or the depth of stiffener, whichever is the greater.

3. 4. 8 Where the free edge of the bracket is hollowed out, it is to be stiffened or increased in size to ensure that the modulus of the bracket through the throat is not less than that of the required straight edged bracket.

3. 5 Arrangements and details

3. 5. 1 The arrangement of the connection between the stiffener and the bracket is to be such that at no point in the connection is the modulus reduced to less than that of the stiffener with associated plating.

3. 5. 2 The design of end connections and their supporting structure is to be such as to provide adequate resistance to rotation and displacement of the joint.

3. 5. 3 For arrangements where end brackets are not perpendicular to the adjacent plating the strength of the brackets, in terms of lateral stability, may need to be specially considered.

PART

3

CHAPTER **10 Welding and Structural Details**

SECTION **4 Construction details for primary members**

4. 1 General

4. 1. 1 The requirements for section modulus and inertia (if applicable) of primary members are given in the appropriate Chapter. This Section includes the requirements for proportions, stiffening and construction details for primary members in dry spaces and in tanks of all ship types other than tankers.

4. 1. 2 The requirements for construction details for the primary structure of tankers are given in Pt 4, Ch 9, 10 Construction details and minimum thickness.

4. 1. 3 The requirements of this Section may be modified where direct calculation procedures are adopted to analyse the stress distribution in the primary structure.

4. 2 Symbols

4. 2. 1 The symbols used in this Section are defined as follows:

d_w = depth of member web, in mm

k_L, k = higher tensile steel factor, *See* Pt 3, Ch 2, 1.2, Steel

t_w = thickness of member web, in mm

A_f = area of member face plate or flange, in cm^2

F_D = local scantlings reduction factor as defined in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.6 Permissible hull vertical bending stresses

S_w = spacing of stiffeners on member web, or depth of unstiffened web, in mm.

4. 3 Arrangements

4. 3. 1 Primary members are to be so arranged as to ensure effective continuity of strength, and abrupt changes of depth or section are to be avoided. Where members abut on both sides of a bulkhead, or on other members, arrangements are to be made to ensure that they are in alignment. Primary members in tanks are to form a continuous line of support and wherever possible, a complete ring system.

4. 3. 2 The members are to have adequate lateral stability and web stiffening and the structure is to be arranged to minimise hard spots and other sources of stress concentration. Openings are to have well rounded corners and smooth edges and are to be located having regard to the stress distribution and buckling strength of the panel.

4. 3. 3 Primary members are to be provided with adequate end fixity by end brackets or equivalent structure. The design of end connections and their supporting structure is to be such as to provide adequate resistance to rotation and displacement of the joint and effective distribution of the load from the member.

4. 3. 4 Where the primary member is supported by structure which provides only a low degree of restraint against rotation, the member is generally to be extended for at least two frame spaces, or equivalent, beyond the point of support before being tapered.

4. 3. 5 Where primary members are subject to concentrated loads, particularly if these are out of line with the member web, additional strengthening may be required.

4. 4 Geometric properties and proportions

4. 4. 1 The geometric properties of the members are to be calculated in association with an effective width of attached plating determined in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 3, 3.2 Geometric properties of section.

4. 4. 2 The minimum thickness or area of material in each component part of the primary member is given in Table 10. 4. 1: Minimum thickness of primary members.

4. 4. 3 Primary members constructed of higher tensile steel are to comply with Table 10. 4. 1: Minimum thickness of primary members.

Table 10. 4. 1: Minimum thickness of primary members

Item	Requirement
(1) Member web plate*See* Note	t_w=0.01Sw but not less than 7 mm in dry spaces and not less than 8 mm in tanks
(2) Member face plate	A_f not to exceed $\frac{d_w t_w}{150} cm^2$
(3) Deck plating forming the upper flange of underdeck girders	Plate thickness not less than $\sqrt{\frac{A_f}{1.8k}}$ mm and 10 per cent greater for hatch side girders Width of plate not less than 700 mm
(4) Primary members in cargo oil tanks in tankers	As required by Pt 4, Ch 9, 10 Construction details and minimum thickness
NOTE For primary members having a web depth exceeding 1500 mm, the arrangement of stiffeners will be individually considered, and stiffening parallel to the member face plate may be required.	

4. 5 Web stability

4. 5. 1 Primary members are to be supported by tripping brackets. The tripping brackets supporting asymmetrical sections are to be spaced no more than two secondary frames apart. The tripping brackets supporting symmetrical sections are to be spaced no more than four secondary frames apart.

4. 5. 2 Tripping brackets are also to be fitted at the toes of end brackets and in way of heavy or concentrated loads such as the heels of pillars.

4. 5. 3 Where the ratio of unsupported width of face plate (or flange) to its thickness exceeds 16:1, the tripping brackets are to be connected to the face plate and on members of symmetrical section, the brackets are to be fitted on both sides of the web.

4. 5. 4 Intermediate secondary members may be welded directly to the web or connected by lugs.

4. 5. 5 Where the depth of web of a longitudinal girder at the strength deck within $0.4L$ amidships exceeds:

a. $55t_w$ for mild steel members

b. $55t_w\sqrt{\frac{k_L}{F_D}}$ for higher tensile steel members

additional longitudinal web stiffeners are to be fitted at a spacing not exceeding the value given in (a) or (b) as appropriate, with a maximum of $65t_w\sqrt{k_L}$ for higher tensile steel members. In cases where this spacing is exceeded, the web thickness is, in general, to be suitably increased.

4. 5. 6 The arm length of unstiffened end brackets is not to exceed $100t_w$. Stiffeners parallel to the bracket face plate are to be fitted where necessary to ensure that this limit is not exceeded.

4. 5. 7 Web stiffeners may be flat bars of thickness t_w and depth $0.1d_w$, or 50 mm, whichever is the greater. Alternative sections of equivalent moment of inertia may be adopted.

4. 6 Openings in the web

4. 6. 1 Where openings are cut in the web, the depth of opening is not to exceed 25 per cent of the web depth, and the opening is to be so located that the edges are not less than 40 per cent of the web depth from the face plate. The length of opening is not to exceed the web depth or 60 per cent of the secondary member spacing, whichever is the greater, and the ends of the openings are to be equidistant from the corners of cut-outs for secondary members. Where larger openings are proposed, the arrangements and compensation required will be considered.

4. 6. 2 Openings are to have smooth edges and well rounded corners.

4. 6. 3 Cut-outs for the passage of secondary members are to be designed to minimise the creation of stress concentrations. The breadth of cut-out is to be kept as small as practicable and the top edge is to be rounded, or the corner radii made as large as practicable. The extent of direct connection of the web plating, or the scantlings of lugs or collars, is to be sufficient for the load to be transmitted from the secondary member.

4. 7 End connections

4. 7. 1 End connections of primary members are generally to comply with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 10, 3 Secondary member end connections, taking Z as the section modulus of the primary member.

4. 7. 2 The thickness of the bracket is to be not less than that of the primary member web. The free edge of the bracket is to be stiffened.

4. 7. 3 Where a deck girder or transverse is connected to a vertical member on the shell or bulkhead, the scantlings of the latter may be required to be increased to provide adequate stiffness to resist rotation of the joint.

4. 7. 4 Where a member is continued over a point of support, such as a pillar or pillar bulkhead stiffener, the design of the end connection is to be such as to ensure the effective distribution of the load into the support. Proposals to fit brackets of reduced scantlings, or alternative arrangements, will be considered.

4. 7. 5 Connections between primary members forming a ring system are to minimise stress concentrations at the junctions. Integral brackets are generally to be radiused or well rounded at

their toes. The arm length of the bracket, measured from the face of the member, is to be not less than the depth of the smaller member forming the connection.

PART

3

CHAPTER **10 Welding and Structural Details**

SECTION **5 Structural details**

5. 1 Continuity and alignment

5. 1. 1 The arrangement of material is to be such as will ensure structural continuity. Abrupt changes of shape or section, sharp corners and points of stress concentration are to be avoided.

5. 1. 2 Where members abut on both sides of a bulkhead or similar structure, care is to be taken to ensure good alignment.

5. 1. 3 Pillars and pillar bulkheads are to be fitted in the same vertical line wherever possible, and elsewhere arrangements are to be made to transmit the out of line forces satisfactorily. The load at head and heel of pillars is to be effectively distributed and arrangements are to be made to ensure the adequacy and lateral stability of the supporting members.

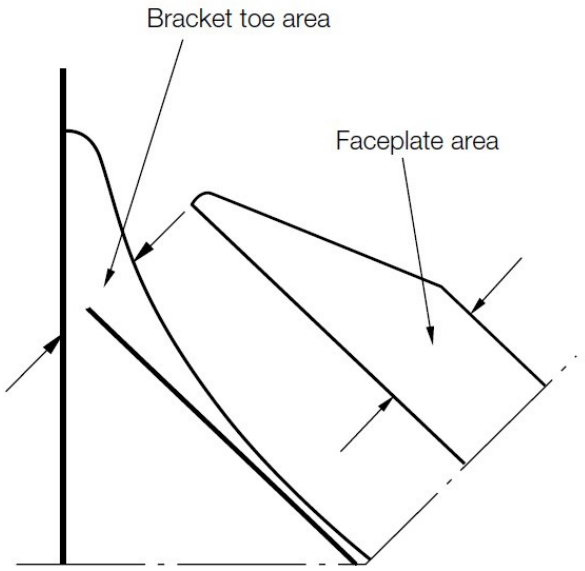
5. 1. 4 Continuity is to be maintained where primary members intersect and where the members are of the same depth, a suitable gusset plate is to be fitted.

5. 1. 5 End connections of structural members are to provide adequate end fixity and effective distribution of the load into the supporting structure.

5. 1. 6 The toes of brackets, etc. should not land on unstiffened panels of plating. Special care should be taken to avoid notch effects at the toes of brackets, by making the toe concave or otherwise tapering it off.

5. 1. 7 Where primary and/or secondary members are constructed of higher tensile steel, particular attention is to be paid to the design of the end bracket toes in order to minimise stress concentrations. Sniped face plates which are welded onto the edge of primary member brackets are to be carried well around the radiused bracket toe and are to incorporate a taper not exceeding 1 in 3. Where sniped face plates are welded adjacent to the edge of primary member brackets, adequate cross sectional area is to be provided through the bracket toe at the end of the snipe. In general, this area measured perpendicular to the face plate, is to be not less than 60 per cent of the full cross-sectional area of the face plate, *See* Figure 10. 5. 1: Bracket toe construction. *See also* Pt 4, Ch 1, 4.3 Deck stiffening, Pt 4, Ch 1, 6.1, General, Pt 4, Ch 9, 5.7 Connections of longitudinals and Pt 4, Ch 9, 10.13 Brackets connecting primary members.

Figure 10. 5. 1: Bracket toe construction



5. 2 Arrangements at intersections of continuous secondary and primary members

5. 2. 1 Cut-outs for the passage of secondary members through the web of primary members, and the related collaring arrangements, are to be designed to minimise stress concentrations around the perimeter of the opening and in the attached hull envelope or bulkhead plating. The critical shear buckling stress of the panel in which the cut-out is made is to be investigated. Cut-outs for longitudinals will be required to have double lugs in areas of high stress, e.g. in way of cross tie ends and floors under bulkhead stools in ore and ballast holds.

5. 2. 2 Cut-outs are to have smooth edges, and the corner radii are to be as large as practicable, with a minimum of 20 per cent of the breadth of the cut-out or 25 mm, whichever is the greater. It is recommended that the web plate connection to the hull envelope or bulkhead should end in a smooth tapered `soft toe'. Recommended shapes of cut-out are shown in Figure 10. 5. 3: Cut-outs and connections, but consideration will be given to other shapes on the basis of maintaining equivalent strength and minimizing stress concentration. Consideration is to be given to the provision of adequate drainage and unimpeded flow of air and water when designing the cut-outs and connection details.

5. 2. 3 Asymmetrical secondary members are to be connected on the heel side to the primary member web plate. Additional connection by lugs on the opposite side may be required.

5. 2. 4 Symmetrical secondary members are to be connected by lugs on one or both sides, as necessary.

5. 2. 5 The cross-sectional areas of the connections are to be determined from the proportion of load transmitted through each component in association with its appropriate permissible stress.

5. 2. 6 The total load P, transmitted to the primary member is to be derived in accordance with Table 10. 5. 1: Total load transmitted to connection of secondary members.

5. 2. 7 This load is to be apportioned between the connections as follows:

a. Transmitted through the collar arrangement:

$$P_1 = P\left(\frac{s_1}{S_w} + \frac{A_1}{4C_f A_f + A_1}\right)$$

where A_1 is derived in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 10, 5.2 Arrangements at intersections of continuous secondary and primary members 5.2.8 and $\frac{s_1}{s_w}$ is not to be taken as greater than 0.25

The collar load factor, C_f, is to be derived as follows:

Symmetrical secondary members

$$C_f = 1.85 \quad \text{for } A_f \leq 18$$

$$C_f = 1.85 - 0.0341\,(A_f - 18) \quad \text{for } 18 < A_f \leq 40$$

$$C_f = 1.1 - 0.01\,(A_f - 40) \quad \text{for } A_f > 40$$

Asymmetrical secondary members

$$C_f = 0.68 + 0.0224\,\frac{b_1}{A_f}$$

Where

A_f = the area, in cm^2, of the primary member web stiffener in way of the connection including backing bracket, where fitted (*See* Pt 3, Ch 10, 5.2 Arrangements at intersections of continuous secondary and primary members 5.2.10)

b_1 = the length of lug or direct connection, in mm, as shown in Figure 10. 5. 3: Cut-outs and connections. Where the lug or direct connections differ in length a mean value of b_1 is to be used.

b. Transmitted through the primary member web stiffener:
$P_2 = P - P_1 kN$

c. Where the web stiffener is not connected to the secondary member, P_1 is to be taken equal to P.

Table 10. 5. 1: Total load transmitted to connection of secondary members

Ship type	Head, h_1, in metres	Total load, P, transmitted to connection
(1) Oil tankers, bulk chemical tankers and combination carriers, *See* Pt 3, Ch 10, 1.1 Application 1.1.3	h_1 = load height, in metres, derived in accordance with the following provisions, but to be taken as not less than $\frac{L_1}{56}$ or $(0.01L_1 + 0.7)$ m whichever is the greater	
	For shell framing members:	
	(a) With mid-point of span at base line, $h_1 = 0.8D_2$	
	(b) With mid-point of span at a distance $0.6D_2$ above base line, $h_1 = fD_2B_f$	
	(c) With mid-point of span intermediate between (a) and (b). The value of h_1 is to be obtained by linear interpolation between values from (a) and (b).	(a) In general $P = 11.77(S_{yx} - s_1/2)s_1h_1$kN
	(d) With mid-point of span higher than $0.6D_2$ above base line.	(b) For wash bulkheads
	The value of h_1 is to be obtained by linear interpolation between the values from (b) and the values at the following points:	$P = 10.06(S_w - s_1/2)s_1h_1$kN

	(i) For framing members located at and abaft 0.2L from the forward perpendicular (*See*)	Zero value at the level of the deck edge amidships	
	(ii) For framing members forward of cargo tank region (*See* Fig. 10.5.2(b))	Value of $f\,D_2(B_f\text{-}1)$ at the level 3 m above the minimum bow height determined from the Load Lines Convention	
	(iii) Intermediate values between locations (i) and (ii) are to be determined by linear interpolation		
	For secondary stiffening members of transverse and longitudinal bulkheads, and inner hull an inner bottom of double hull tankers, *See* Pt 3, Ch 10, 1.1 Application 1.1.3:		
	h_1 = distance from the mid-point of span to top of tank but need not exceed $0.8D_2$		
	Side and bottom shell longitudinals		
(2) Other ship types for which oil tanker (*See* Pt 3, Ch 10, 1.1 Application 1.1.3) requirements are not applicable	As for (1) except as follows: (a) h_1 to be derived in accordance with (1) above but to be taken as not less than $\frac{L_1}{56}$ m for type `B-60' and the greater of $\frac{L_1}{70}$, or 1.20 m for Type 'B' ships	$P = 10.06(S_w - s_1/2)s_1h_1$kN
	(b) h_1 for item (1)(d)(ii) above to extend forward of 0.15L from the forward perpendicular		
(3) Other ship types for which oil tanker (*See* Pt 3, Ch 10, 1.1 Application 1.1.3) requirements are not applicable (continued)	Internal tank boundaries (a) Topside tank longitudinals h_1 = distance from the longitudinal under consideration to the highest point of the tank with the ship inclined 30° either way, or = the greater of the distance from the longitudinal under consideration to the top of the tank, or half the distance to the top of the overflow, or = 1.5 m = whichever is the greatest	$P = 10.06(S_w - s_1/2)s_1h_1$kN
	(b) Inner bottom and hopper longitudinals	$P = 9.81(S_{yX} - s_1/2)s_1h_1/C$kN
		= but not to be taken less than the load derived from (b)(iv), (b)(v), (b)(vi) or (c) where applicable
	(i) For cargo ships and bulk carriers (*See* Pt 3, Ch 10, 1.1 Application 1.1.3) without the notation 'strengthened for heavy cargoes' h_1=1.39T	
	(ii) For cargo ships and bulk carriers (*See* Pt 3, Ch 10, 1.1 Application 1.1.3) with the notation 'strengthened for heavy cargoes' h_1=H	
	(iii) For longitudinal bulkheads of ore carriers $h_1=HK_c$	
	(iv) For bulk carriers (*See* Pt 3, Ch 10, 1.1 Application 1.1.3) where the topside wing tank is interconnected with hopper side and double bottom tanks h_1 = the distance from the longitudinal under consideration to the top of the topside tank with the ship inclined 25° either way	$P = 10.06(S_w - s_1/2)s_1h_1$kN

	(v) For bulk carriers (*See* Pt 3, Ch 10, 1.1 Application 1.1.3) in way of ballast hold h_1 = the distance from the longitudinal under consideration to the top of the hatchway coaming	$P = 10.06(S_w - s_1/2)s_1h_1$kN
	(vi) For cargo ships and bulk carriers (*See* Pt 3, Ch 10, 1.1 Application 1.1.3) with double hull where tank at side interconnected with double bottom h_1=H	$P = 10.06(S_w - s_1/2)s_1h_1$kN
	(c) Longitudinals of inner hull of double hull cargo ships and bulk carriers (*See* Pt 3, Ch 10, 1.1 Application 1.1.3)	$P = 10.06(S_w - s_1/2)s_1h_1$kN
	h_1 = the distance from the longitudinal under consideration to the top of the tank, or half the distance to the top of the overflow, whichever is the greater	

B_f = bow fullness factor determined from Figure 10. 5. 4: Arrangement with offset stiffener factor determination in Chapter 5 to be considered. To be taken as 1 for framing members located at and abaft 0.2L from the forward perpendicular

f = load height factor at level 0.6D above base line, *See* Table 10. 5. 2: Load height factor, f

h_1 = load height, in metres, *See also*

C = stowage rate, in m^3 /tonne, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 3, 5.2, Symbols. For cargo ships without the notation 'strengthened for heavy cargoes', the value to be used is 1.39 m^3/tonne. For cargo ships and bulk carriers (*See* Pt 3, Ch 10, 1.1 Application 1.1.3) with the notation 'strengthened for heavy cargoes', the actual stowage rate is to be used, but the value is not to be taken greater than 0.865 m^3/tonne

H = height from inner bottom at position under consideration, to deck at side amidships, in metres, for inner bottom longitudinals

= height from the longitudinal under consideration to the underside of the topside tank sloped bulkhead, in metres, for hopper longitudinals

S_w = spacing of primary members, in metres

s_1 = spacing of secondary members, in metres

T = the summer draught, in metres, measured from top of keel

D_2 = D in metres, but need not be taken greater than 1.6T

L_1 = L but need not be taken as greater than 190 m

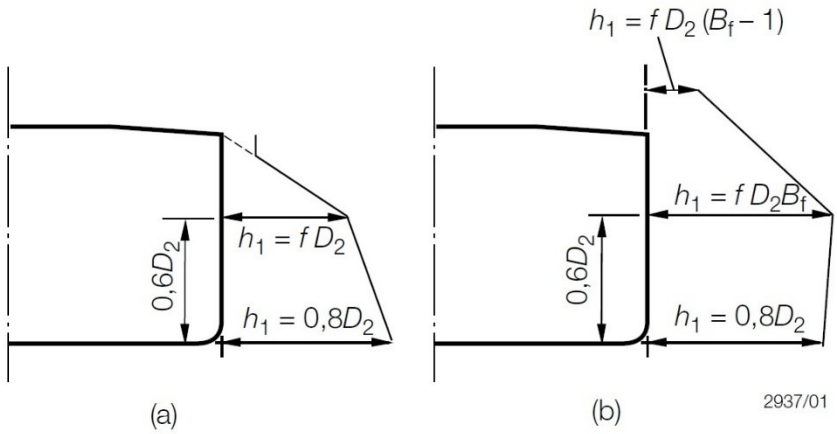
K_c = as defined in Table 11. 7. 1: Longitudinal and transverse bulkhead scantlings for ore loading in Pt 4, Ch 11 Ore Carriers

Table 10. 5. 2: Load height factor, *f*

	Ship depth, D metres					
	≤17.5	20	22.5	25	27.5	30
(1) (a) For oil tankers, bulk chemical tankers and combination carriers (*See* Pt 3, Ch 10, 1.1 Application 1.1.3), tank boundaries wholly within parallel mid-body	0.6	0.6	0.582	0.556	0.535	0.517
(b) For other ship types, at an abaft of 0.2L from the forward perpendicular						
(2) (a) For oil tankers, bulk chemical tankers and combination carriers (*See* Pt 3, Ch 10, 1.1 Application 1.1.3), tank boundaries wholly or partially outside parallel mid-body	0.7	0.685	0.685	0.628	0.6	0.577
(b) For other ship types, forward of 0.15L from the forward perpendicular						

Note Intermediate values to be obtained by linear interpolation

Figure 10. 5. 2: Load height diagrams for framing members (a) at and abaft 0.2*L* from the forward perpendicular and (b) forward of cargo tank region for oil tankers, bulk chemical tankers and combination carriers (*See* Pt 3, Ch 10, 1.1 Application 1.1.3) and forward of 0.15*L* from the forward perpendicular for other ship types



5. 2. 8 The effective cross-sectional area A_1 of the collar arrangements is to be taken as the sum of cross-sectional areas of the components of the connection as follows:

a. Direct connection:
$A_1 = 0.01 b_l t_w \text{cm}^2$

b. Lug connection:
$A_1 = 0.01 f_1 b_l t_l \text{cm}^2$

Where

f_1 = 1.0 for symmetrical secondary member connections

= $\frac{140}{W_l}$ but not greater than 1.0, for asymmetrical secondary member connections.

t_w = thickness of primary member web, in mm

t_2 = thickness, in mm, of lug connection, and is to be taken not greater than the thickness of the adjacent primary member web plate

w = overall width of the cut-out, in mm

w_2 = width for cut-out asymmetrical to secondary member web, in mm

See Figure 10. 5. 3: Cut-outs and connections

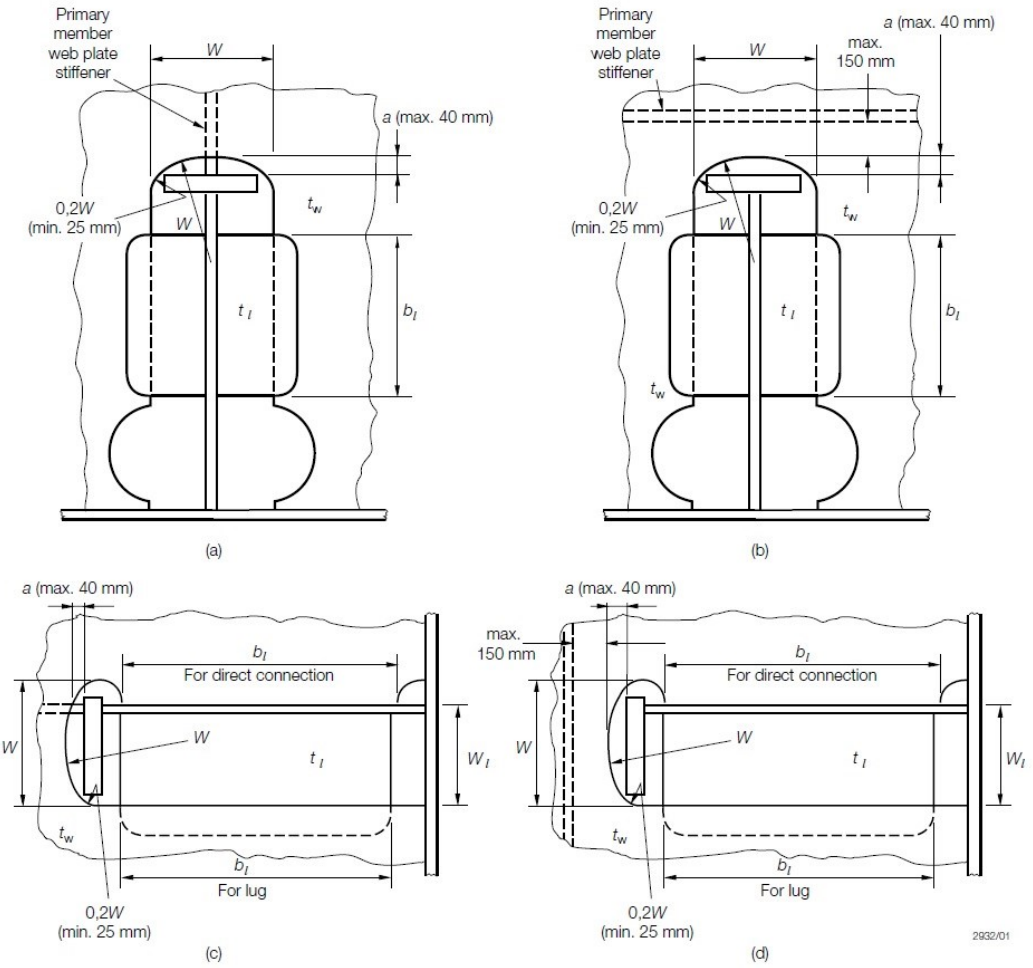
5. 2. 9 The values of A_f and A_1 are to be such that the stresses given in Table 10. 5. 3: Permissible stresses are not exceeded.

5. 2. 10 Where a bracket is fitted to the primary member web plate in addition to a connected stiffener it is to be arranged on the opposite side to, and in alignment with the stiffener. The arm length of the bracket is to be not less than the depth of the stiffener, and its cross-sectional area through the throat of the bracket is to be included in the calculation of A_f.

5. 2. 11 In general where the primary member stiffener is connected to the secondary member it is to be aligned with the web of the secondary member, except where the face plate of the latter is offset and abutted to the web, in which case the stiffener connection is to be lapped. Lapped connections of primary member stiffeners to mild steel bulb plate or rolled angle secondary members may also be permitted. Where such lapped connections are fitted, particular care is to be taken to ensure

that the primary member stiffener wrap around weld connection is free from undercut and notches, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 10, 2.9, Inspection of welds.

Figure 10. 5. 3: Cut-outs and connections



5. 2. 12 Fabricated longitudinals having the face plate welded to the underside of the web, leaving the edge of the web exposed, are not recommended for side shell and longitudinal bulkhead longitudinals. Where it is proposed to fit such sections, a symmetrical arrangement of connection to transverse members is to be incorporated. This can be achieved by fitting backing brackets on the opposite side of the transverse web or bulkhead. The primary member stiffener and backing brackets are to be lapped to the longitudinal web, *See* Pt 3, Ch 10, 5.2 Arrangements at intersections of continuous secondary and primary members 5.2.11.

5. 2. 13 For ship types for which oil tanker (*See* Pt 3, Ch 10, 1.1 Application 1.1.3) requirements are not applicable, the collar arrangement is to satisfy the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 10, 5.2,, Arrangements at intersections of continuous secondary and primary members 5.2.1 to Pt 3, Ch 10, 5.2 Arrangements at intersections of continuous secondary and primary members 5.2.12 inclusive. In addition the weld area of the connections is to be not less than the following:

a. Connection of primary member stiffener to the secondary member:

A_w = 0.25 A_f or 6.5 cm^2, whichever is the greater, corresponding to a weld factor of 0.34 for the throat thickness

b. Connection of secondary member to the web of the primary member:

Where

A = $0.5\sqrt{Z}$ corresponding to a weld factor of 0.34 in tanks or 0.27 in dry spaces for the throat thickness

A = weld area, in cm^2, and is calculated as total length of weld, in cm, multiplied by throat thickness, in cm

A_f = cross-sectional area of the primary member web stiffener, in cm^2, in way of connection

Z = the section modulus, in cm^3, of the secondary member.

Table 10. 5. 3: Permissible stresses

Item		Direct stress, in N/mm² (*See* Notes 1 and 2)		Shear stress, in N/mm² (*See* Note 1)	
		Oil tankers	Other ship types for which oil tanker requirements are not applicable	Oil tankers and ship types where primary member stiffener unconnected	Other ship types for which oil tanker requirements are not applicable
Primary member web plate stiffener within distance *a* of end *See* Figure 10. 5. 3: Cut-outs and connections		147.2	157	—	—
Welding of primary member web plate stiffener to secondary member	Butted	98.1 (double continuous fillet) 147.2 (automatic deep penetration)	117.7 (double continuous fillet) 157 (automatic deep penetration)	— —	— —
	Lapped	—	—	83.4 *See* Note 2	98.1 *See* Note 2
Lug or collar plate and weld	Single	—	—	68.6	98.1
	Double	—	—	83.4 *See* Note 3	

Note 1. The welding requirements of Pt 3, Ch 10, 2 Welding, and where applicable Pt 3, Ch 10, 5.2 Arrangements at intersections of continuous secondary and primary members 5.2.13 are also to be complied with, *See* Pt 3, Ch 10, 1.1 Application 1.1.3.

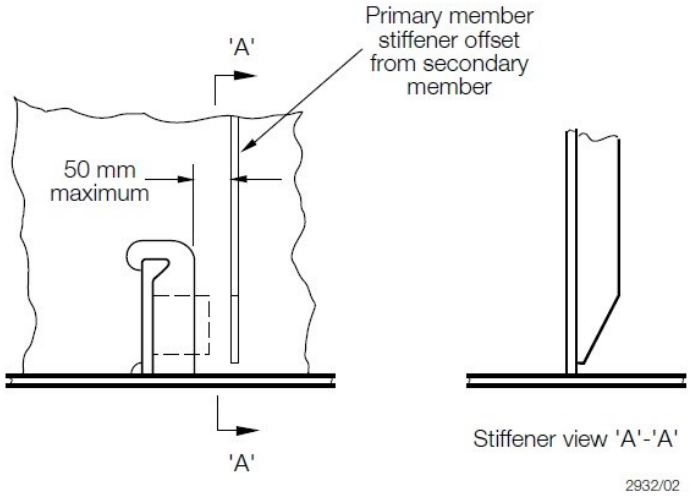
Note 2. Where longitudinals are of higher tensile steel having a yield stress of 315 kg/mm² or more, these stresses are to be divided by the factor 1.2 for application to side longitudinals above $0.3D_2$ from the base-line. For definition of D_2 *See* Table 10. 5. 1: Total load transmitted to connection of secondary members.

Note 3. When the permissible shear stress is applied in the assessment for the notation **Strengthened to carry cargoes which may liquefy (IMSBC Group A)**, the permissible shear stress shall be divided by *k*, *See* Pt 3, Ch 2, 1.2 Steel 1.2.3, i.e. $^{83.4}/_{k}$ N/mm².

5. 2. 14 Where the stiffeners of the double bottom floors, and the hopper primary members are unconnected to the secondary members and offset from them (*See* Figure 10. 5. 4: Arrangement with offset stiffener) the collar arrangement is to satisfy the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 10, 5.2,, Arrangements at intersections of continuous secondary and primary members 5.2.1 to Pt 3, Ch 10, 5.2 Arrangements at intersections of continuous secondary and primary members 5.2.13 inclusive.

In addition, the fillet welds attaching the lugs to the secondary members are to be based on a weld factor of 0.44 for the throat thickness. To facilitate access for welding the offset stiffeners are to be located 50 mm from the slot edge furthest from the web of the secondary member. The ends of the offset stiffeners are to be suitably tapered and softened.

Figure 10. 5. 4: Arrangement with offset stiffener



5. 2. 15 Alternative arrangements will be considered on the basis of their ability to transmit load with equivalent effectiveness. Details of the calculations made and testing procedures are to be submitted.

5. 3 Openings

5. 3. 1 Manholes, lightening holes and other cut-outs are to be avoided in way of concentrated loads and areas of high shear. In particular, manholes and similar openings are not to be cut in vertical or horizontal diaphragm plates in narrow cofferdams or double plate bulkheads within one-third of their length from either end, nor in floors or double bottom girders close to their span ends, or below the heels of pillars, unless the stresses in the plating and the panel buckling characteristics have been calculated and found satisfactory.

5. 3. 2 Manholes, lightening holes and other openings are to be suitably framed and stiffened where necessary.

5. 3. 3 Air and drain holes, notches and scallops are to be kept at least 200 mm clear of the toes of end brackets and other areas of high stress. Openings are to be well rounded with smooth edges. Details of scalloped construction are shown in Figure 10. 2. 1: Weld dimensions and types. Closely spaced scallops are not permitted in higher tensile steel members. Widely spaced air or drain holes may be accepted, provided that they are of elliptical shape, or equivalent, to minimise stress concentration and are, in general, cut clear of the weld connection.

5. 4 Sheerstrake and bulwarks

5. 4. 1 Where an angled gunwale is fitted, the top edge of the sheerstrake is to be kept free of all notches and isolated welded fittings. Bulwarks are not to be welded to the top of the sheerstrake within the 0.5L amidships.

5. 4. 2 Where a rounded gunwale is adopted, the welding of fairlead stools and other fittings to this plate is to be kept to the minimum, and the design of the fittings is to be such as to minimise stress concentration.

5. 4. 3 Arrangements are to ensure a smooth transition from rounded gunwale to angled gunwale towards the ends of the ship.

5. 4. 4 At the ends of superstructures where the side plating is extended and tapered to align with the bulwark plating, the transition plating is to be suitably stiffened and supported. Where freeing ports or other openings are essential in this plate, they are to be suitably framed and kept well clear of the free edge.

5. 5 Fittings and attachments, general

5. 5. 1 The quality of welding and general workmanship of fittings and attachments as given in Pt 3, Ch 10, 5.6, Bilge keels and ground bars and Pt 3, Ch 10, 5.7 Other fittings and attachments are to be equivalent to that of the main hull structure. Visual examination of all welds is to be supplemented by non-destructive testing as considered necessary by the Surveyor.

5. 6 Bilge keels and ground bars

5. 6. 1 It is recommended that bilge keels should not be fitted in the forward 0.3L region on ships intended to navigate in severe ice conditions.

5. 6. 2 Bilge keels are to be attached to a continuous ground bar as shown in Figure 10. 5. 5: Bilge keel construction. Butt welds in shell plating, ground bar and bilge keels are to be staggered.

5. 6. 3 The minimum thickness of the ground bar is to be equal to the thickness of the bilge strake or 14 mm, whichever is the lesser.

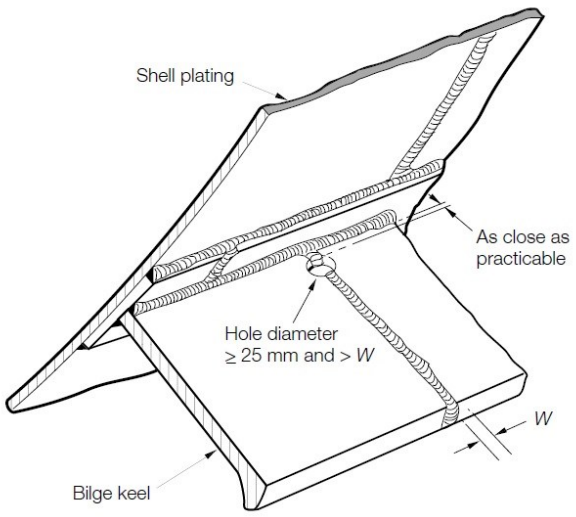
5. 6. 4 The material class, grade and quality of the ground bar are to be in accordance with Table 2. 2. 1: Material classes and grades.

5. 6. 5 The ground bar is to be connected to the shell with a continuous fillet weld and the bilge keel to the ground bar with a light continuous fillet weld.

5. 6. 6 Direct connection between ground bar butt welds and shell plating, and between bilge keel butt welds and ground bar is to be avoided.

5. 6. 7 The design of single web bilge keels is to ensure that failure to the web occurs before failure of the ground bar. In general, this may be achieved by ensuring the web thickness of bilge keels does not exceed that of the ground bar.

Figure 10. 5. 5: Bilge keel construction



5. 6. 8 The end details of bilge keels and intermittent bilge keels, where adopted, are to be as shown in Figure 10. 5. 6: Bilge keel end design.

5. 6. 9 The ground bar and bilge keel ends are to be tapered or rounded. Where the ends are tapered, the tapers are to be gradual with ratios of at least 3:1, *See* Figure 10. 5. 6: Bilge keel end design. Where the ends are rounded, details are to be as shown in Figure 10. 5. 6: Bilge keel end design. Cut-outs on the bilge keel web within zone 'A' (*See* Figure 10. 5. 6: Bilge keel end design) are not permitted.

5. 6. 10 The end of the bilge keel web is to be between 50 mm and 100 mm from the end of the ground bar, *See* Figure 10. 5. 6: Bilge keel end design.

5. 6. 11 An internal transverse support is to be positioned as close as possible to halfway between the end of the bilge keel web and the end of the ground bar, *See* Figure 10. 5. 6: Bilge keel end design.

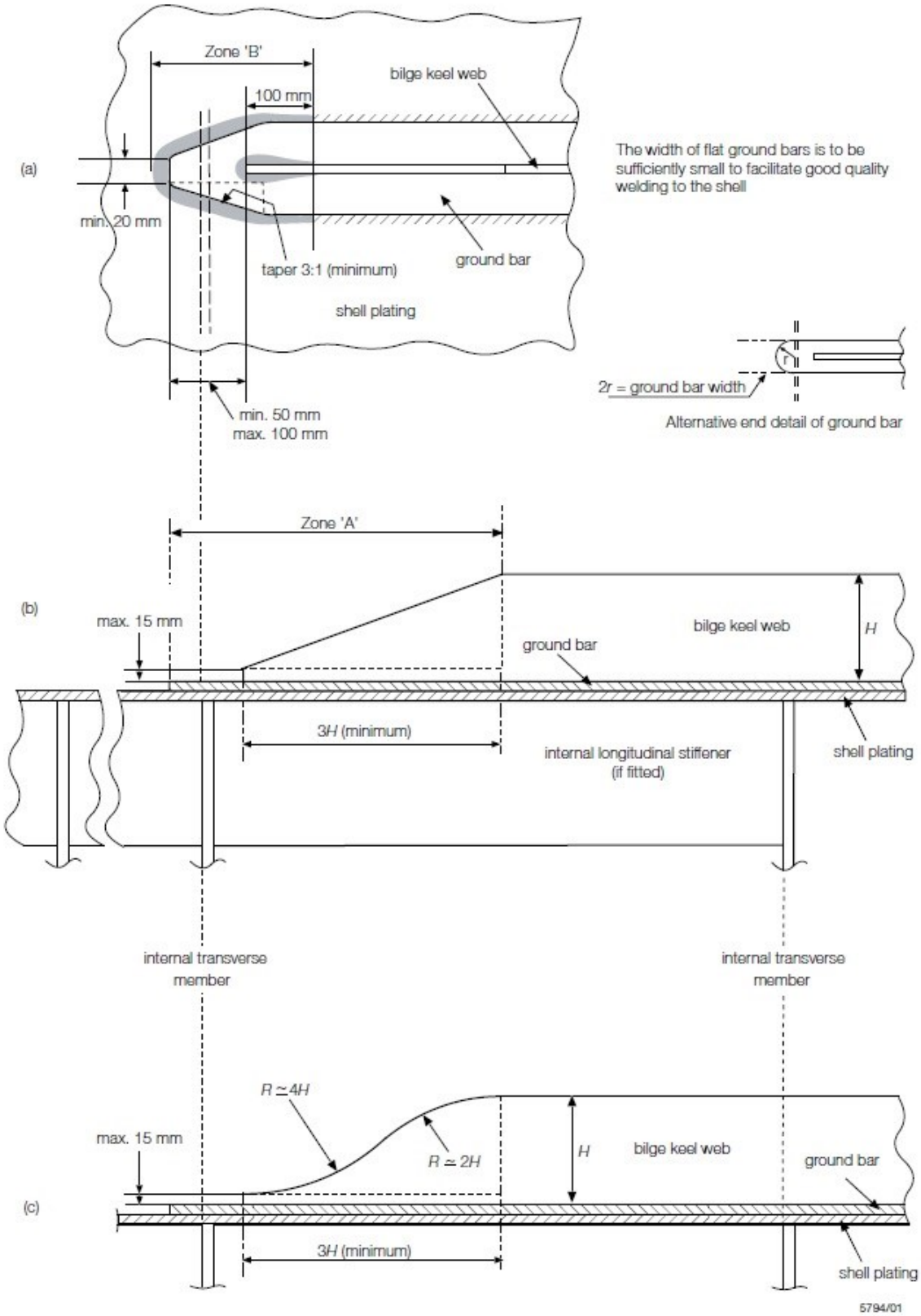
5. 6. 12 Where an internal longitudinal stiffener is fitted in line with the bilge keel web, the longitudinal stiffener is to extend to at least the nearest transverse member outside zone 'A', *See* Figure 10. 5. 6: Bilge keel end design. In this case, the requirement of Pt 3, Ch 10, 5.6 Bilge keels and ground bars 5.6.10 does not apply.

5. 6. 13 For ships over 65 m in length, holes are to be drilled in the bilge keel butt welds. The size and position of these holes are to be as illustrated in Figure 10. 5. 5: Bilge keel construction. Where the butt weld has been subject to non-destructive examination the stop hole may be omitted.

5. 6. 14 Bilge keels of a different design from that shown in Figure 10. 5. 5: Bilge keel construction and Figure 10. 5. 6: Bilge keel end design will be specially considered.

5. 6. 15 Within zone 'B', (*See* Figure 10. 5. 6: Bilge keel end design), welds at the end of the ground bar and bilge plating, and at the end of the bilge keel web and ground bar, are to have weld factors of 0.44 and 0.34 respectively. These welds are to be ground and to blend smoothly with the base materials.

Figure 10. 5. 6: Bilge keel end design



5. 6. 16 A plan of the bilge keels is to be submitted for approval of material grades, welded connections and detail design.

5. 7 Other fittings and attachments

5. 7. 1 Gutterway bars at the upper deck are to be so arranged that the effect of main hull stresses on them is minimised.

5. 7. 2 Minor attachments, such as pipe clips, staging lugs and supports, are generally to be kept clear of toes of end brackets, corners of openings and similar areas of high stress. Where connected to asymmetrical stiffeners, the attachments may be in line with the web providing the fillet weld leg length is clear of the offset face plate or flange edge. Where this cannot be achieved the attachments are to be connected to the web, and in the case of flanged stiffeners they are to be kept at least 25 mm clear of the flange edge. On symmetrical stiffeners, they may be connected to the web or to the centreline of the face plate in line with the web.

5. 7. 3 Where necessary in the construction of the ship, lifting lugs may be welded to the hull plating but they are not to be slotted through. Where they are subsequently removed, this is to be done by flame or mechanical cutting close to the plate surface, and the remaining material and welding ground off. After removal the area is to be carefully examined to ensure freedom from cracks or other defects in the plate surface.

PART

3

CHAPTER **10 Welding and Structural Details**

SECTION **6 Access arrangements for oil tankers and bulk carriers**

6. 1 Application

6. 1. 1 Access arrangements are to be provided as required by SOLAS.

6. 2 Information for approval

6. 2. 1 Details of the attachment of the access arrangements to the ship's structure are to be submitted for approval and suitable designs are to take into account proper location, strength, detail and reinforcement of all attachments to hull structural members.

PART

3

CHAPTER **11** **Closing Arrangements for Shell, Deck and Bulkheads**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**1173**
	1. 1	Application	1173
SECTION 2	**Steel hatch covers**		**1176**
	2. 1	General	1176
	2. 2	Stiffener arrangement	1176
	2. 3	Load model	1177
	2. 4	Allowable stress and deflection	1181
	2. 5	Local net plate thickness	1182
	2. 6	Local plate thickness of hatch covers for wheel loading and helicopter landing	1183
	2. 7	Lower plating of double skin hatch covers and box girders	1184
	2. 8	Net scantling of secondary stiffeners	1184
	2. 9	Net scantling of primary supporting members	1185
	2. 10	Strength calculations	1186
	2. 11	Buckling strength of hatch cover structures	1187
	2. 12	Webs and flanges of primary supporting members	1191
	2. 13	Longitudinal and transverse secondary stiffeners	1191
	2. 14	Effective width of top and lower hatch cover plating	1191
	2. 15	Lateral buckling of secondary stiffeners	1194
	2. 16	Torsional buckling of secondary stiffeners	1196
	2. 17	Pontoon covers	1198
SECTION 3	**Hatch beams and wood covers**		**1204**
	3. 1	Portable hatch beams	1204
	3. 2	Wood covers	1204
SECTION 4	**Hatch cover securing arrangements and tarpaulins**		**1205**
	4. 1	Cargo oil tank and adjacent spaces	1205

4. 2 Steel covers − Clamped and gasketed 1205
4. 3 Portable covers − Tarpaulins and battening devices 1210
4. 4 Packing material 1210
SECTION 5 Hatch coamings 1211
5. 1 General 1211
5. 2 Construction 1211
5. 3 Strength criteria 1214
5. 4 Rest bars in hatchways 1217
5. 5 Loading in excess of Rule requirements 1217
SECTION 6 Miscellaneous openings 1218
6. 1 Small hatchways on exposed decks 1218
6. 2 Manholes and flush scuttles 1219
6. 3 Hatchways within enclosed superstructures or 'tween decks 1219
6. 4 Companionways, doors and accesses on weather decks 1219
6. 5 Side scuttles, windows and skylights 1221
6. 6 Small hatchways on exposed fore decks 1224
SECTION 7 Tanker access arrangements and closing appliances 1229
7. 1 Materials 1229
7. 2 Cargo tank access hatchways 1229
7. 3 Enlarged cargo tank access openings 1230
7. 4 Miscellaneous openings 1230
7. 5 Access to spaces other than cargo tanks 1230
7. 6 Equivalents 1230
7. 7 ther openings 1231
SECTION 8 Side and stern doors and other shell openings 1232
8. 1 Symbols 1232
8. 2 General 1232
8. 3 Scantlings 1233
8. 4 Doors serving as ramps 1235
8. 5 Arrangements for the closing, securing and supporting of doors 1235
8. 6 Design loads 1235
8. 7 Design of securing and supporting devices 1236
8. 8 Operating and Maintenance Manual 1237
SECTION 9 Watertight doors in bulkheads below the freeboard deck 1239
9. 1 Openings in bulkheads 1239
9. 2 Watertight doors 1239

SECTION 10 External openings and openings in watertight bulkheads and internal decks in cargo ships 1241

10. 1 Shell and watertight subdivision openings 1241

PART

3

CHAPTER 11 **Closing Arrangements for Shell, Deck and Bulkheads**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 11. 1. 1: Covers associated with ship types 1174
Table 11. 1. 2: Corrosion addition t_c 1175
Table 11. 2. 1: Design pressure p_H of weather deck hatches 1177
Table 11. 2. 2: Minimum design load, p_{Amin} 1180
Table 11. 2. 3: Effective breadth e_m of plating of primary supporting members 1186
Table 11. 2. 4: Correction factor F_1 1188
Table 11. 2. 5: Coefficients e_1, e_2, e_3 and factor B 1188
Table 11. 2. 6: Buckling and reduction factors for plane elementary plate panels 1189
Table 11. 2. 7: Moments of inertia 1198
Table 11. 2. 8: Pontoon cover minimum design pressures 1198
Table 11. 2. 9: Summary of pontoon cover minimum design pressures 1199
Table 11. 2. 10: Steel pontoon cover permissible stress, deflection and buckling criteria 1199
Table 11. 2. 11: Steel pontoon cover webs and stiffeners 1201
Table 11. 4. 1: Permissible nominal surface pressure p_n 1206
Table 11. 6. 1: Acceptable arrangements of glazing in lieu of portable storm covers/deadlights 1223
Table 11. 6. 2: Scantlings for small steel hatch covers on exposed deck 1227

PART

3

CHAPTER 11 **Closing Arrangements for Shell, Deck and Bulkheads**

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 11. 2. 1: Positions 1 and 2 1178
Figure 11. 2. 2: Positions 1 and 2 for an increased freeboard 1179
Figure 11. 2. 3: Determination of normal stress of the hatch cover plating 1183
Figure 11. 2. 4: General arrangement of panel 1193
Figure 11. 2. 5: Stiffening parallel to web of primary supporting member 1193
Figure 11. 2. 6: Stiffening perpendicular to web of primary supporting member 1194
Figure 11. 2. 7: Dimensions of stiffener 1198
Figure 11. 2. 8: Cover with stiffening fitted normal to the axis of primary bending 1201
Figure 11. 2. 9: Diagrammatic profile of web or stiffener or portable beam 1203
Figure 11. 5. 1: Coaming continuation bracket - Recommended arrangement 1212
Figure 11. 5. 2: Example of hatch side girder 1214
Figure 11. 5. 3: Example of coaming stays 1216
Figure 11. 6. 1: Side Scuttle Positioning 1222
Figure 11. 6. 2: Arrangement of stiffeners 1226
Figure 11. 6. 3: Example of a primary securing method 1227

PART

3

CHAPTER 11 **Closing Arrangements for Shell, Deck and Bulkheads**

SECTION 1 **General**

1. 1 Application

1. 1. 1 This Chapter applies to all ship types detailed in Pt 4 Ship Structures (Ship Types), unless otherwise stated, with the exception of Sections 1 to 5 which are not applicable to Bulk Carriers with a **CSR** notation and Section Pt 3, Ch 11, 6.1, Small hatchways on exposed decks which is not applicable to Bulk Carriers and Oil Tankers with a **CSR** notation, *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull). Additional provisions regarding access arrangements for oil tankers and chemical carriers are contained in Pt 4, Ch 9 Double Hull Oil Tankers, Pt 4, Ch 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers and the *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquid Chemicals in Bulk,* (hereinafter referred to as the Rules for Ships for Liquid Chemicals), respectively.

1. 1. 2 Requirements are given for steel and wooden hatch covers, securing arrangements, tarpaulins, coamings and side shell doors for main openings, also closing arrangements for other miscellaneous openings.

1. 1. 3 Where relevant, the contents of this Chapter conform with the requirements of the *Load Lines, 1966/1988 - International Convention on Load Lines, 1966, as Amended by the Protocol of 1988* . Attention should, however, be given to any additional Statutory Requirements of the National Authority of the country in which the ship is to be registered and to the relevant regulations of the *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea* and applicable amendments.

1. 1. 4 For the purpose of this Chapter the basic types of ships are those defined in the *Load Lines, 1966/1988 - International Convention on Load Lines, 1966, as Amended by the Protocol of 1988* namely:

Type `A'	Ships designed solely for the carriage of liquid cargoes.
Type `B'	Cargo ships, other than Type `A', with steel weathertight hatch covers.
Type `B-100'	Cargo ships of type `B' with reduced freeboards on account of their ability to survive a stipulated damage.
Type `B-60'	Cargo ships of type `B' with reduced freeboards on account of their ability to survive a stipulated damage.
Type `B +'	Cargo ships with increased freeboard on account of hatch cover arrangements.

1. 1. 5 The type of hatch covers on the weather decks of the basic ship types defined in Pt 3, Ch 11, 1.1 Application 1.1.4 are detailed below and may be used in the types of ships as indicated in Table 11. 1. 1: Covers associated with ship types:

a. Steel plated cargo hatch covers stiffened by webs or stiffeners and secured by clamping devices. Weathertightness to be achieved by means of gaskets. Hatch covers used for holds containing liquid cargoes are included in this category.
b. Steel plated cargo hatch pontoon covers having interior webs and stiffeners extending for the full width of the hatchway. A pontoon cover is defined as a portable cover, secured weathertight by tarpaulins and battening devices.
c. Hatch covers of wood or steel used in conjunction with portable beams. Weathertightness to be obtained by tarpaulins.
d. Access hatch covers for cargo oil tanks and adjacent spaces. The hatch covers are to be of steel and gasketed.
e. Access hatch covers other than (d). For Type `A', Type `B-100' and Type `B-60' ships, the covers are to be of steel, and weathertightness is to be achieved by means of gaskets.

Table 11. 1. 1: Covers associated with ship types

Type of cover	Type of ship				
	'A'	'B-100'	'B-60'	'B'	'B+'
(a)	–	X	X	X	X
(b)	–	–	–	X	X
(c)	–	–	–	–	X
(d)	X	X	X	Not applicable	
(e)	X	X	X	X	X

1. 1. 6 The positions of hatches on weather decks are defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.6 Position 1 and Position 2.

1. 1. 7 'Tween deck hatch covers may be any of the types defined in Pt 3, Ch 11, 1.1,, Application 1.1.5, but need not be weathertight unless fitted to deep tanks or water ballast holds or compartments, in which case the covers are to be of type (a) and oiltight or watertight as appropriate.

1. 1. 8 The scantlings specified in the following Sections are applicable to covers of mild steel or higher tensile steel. Where other materials are used, equivalent scantlings are to be provided. The scantlings apply basically to rectangular covers, with the stiffening members arranged primarily in one direction and carrying a uniformly distributed load. The covers are assumed to be simply supported. Where covers are stiffened by a grillage formation, and also where point loads are applied to any type of cover, the scantlings are to be determined from direct calculations.

1. 1. 9 In the case of flush hatch covers or of covers on coamings of lesser height than required by Pt 3, Ch 11, 5.1 General 5.1.1, their scantlings, the securing and sealing arrangements and the drainage of gutterways will be specially considered.

1. 1. 10 The scantlings of hatch covers need to be increased only if the loading exceeds that given in Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.3, Load model. The scantlings of the surrounding deck structure are to be sufficient to support this loading. Heavier loading may be permitted only if the scantlings of the cover are capable of withstanding this increased loading, satisfying the stress and deflection criteria given in this Chapter. The deck structure is also to be capable of withstanding this increased loading.

1. 1. 11 Where timber cargo is to be carried on the hatch covers the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 9, 2.11 Scantlings of hatch covers are to be satisfied in addition to the requirements of this Chapter.

1. 1. 12 Where hatchways are trunked through one or more 'tween decks, and hatchway beams and covers are dispensed with at the intermediate decks, the hatchway beams, coamings and covers immediately below the trunk are to be adequately strengthened. Plans are to be submitted for approval.

1. 1. 13 The net plate thickness, t_{net}, is the calculated minimum thickness of the plating and stiffeners. The required thickness is the net thickness plus a corrosion addition, t_c, given in Table 11. 1. 2: Corrosion addition tc.

Table 11. 1. 2: Corrosion addition t_c

Application	Structure	t_c, in mm
Weather deck hatches of container ships, car carriers, paper carriers, passenger vessels	Hatch covers	1.0
	Hatch coamings	1.0
Weather deck hatches of all other ship types except bulk carriers, ore carriers and combination carriers, *See* Pt 4, Ch 7, 12.1 General 12.1.2	Hatch covers in general	2.0
	Weather exposed plating and bottom plating of double skin hatch covers	1.5
	Internal structure of double skin hatch covers and closed box girders	1.0
	Hatch coamings	1.5
Weather deck hatches of all other ship types except bulk carriers, ore carriers and combination carriers, *See* Pt 4, Ch 7, 12.1 General 12.1.2	Coaming stays and stiffeners	1.5
'Tween deck hatches	Hatch covers in general	1.0

PART

3

CHAPTER 11 **Closing Arrangements for Shell, Deck and Bulkheads**

SECTION 2 **Steel hatch covers**

2. 1 General

2. 1. 1 The requirements of Pt 3, Ch 11, 2 Steel hatch covers are not applicable to hatch covers of bulk carriers, ore carriers and combination carriers.

2. 1. 2 The requirements of Pt 3, Ch 11, 2 Steel hatch covers are applicable to hatch covers and coamings made of steel. Hatch covers of alternative materials and innovative design will be specially considered.

2. 1. 3 The strength requirements in Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.1 General to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.16 Torsional buckling of secondary stiffeners are applicable to hatch covers and closing arrangements of stiffened plate construction. The strength requirements are applicable to exposed weather deck hatch covers and 'tween deck hatch covers, unless otherwise stated.

2. 1. 4 Sub-Sections Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.1 General to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.16 Torsional buckling of secondary stiffeners are not applicable to portable covers secured weathertight by tarpaulins and battening devices, or pontoon covers, *See* Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.17, Pontoon covers.

2. 1. 5 Unless otherwise stated, the thicknesses referred to in the following Sections are net thicknesses. The net thicknesses are the member thicknesses necessary to obtain the minimum net scantlings required in this Section. The required gross thicknesses are obtained by adding corrosion additions, t_c, given in Table 11. 1. 2: Corrosion addition tc. Strength calculations using grillage analysis or FEM are to be performed with net scantlings.

2. 1. 6 Material class I is to be applied for top plate, bottom plate and primary supporting members.

2. 1. 7 The strength and closing arrangements of hatch covers are to comply with Pt 4, Ch 7, 12 Steel hatch covers in addition to the requirements in this Chapter when hatch covers are subjected to internal ballast or oil cargo pressure.

2. 1. 8 Hatch covers are to comply with Pt 4, Ch 8, 11 Hatch covers in addition to the requirements in this Chapter when containers are carried on covers.

2. 2 Stiffener arrangement

2. 2. 1 The primary supporting members and secondary stiffeners of hatch covers are to be continuous over the breadth and length of hatch covers, as far as practical. When this is impractical, sniped end connections are not to be used and appropriate arrangements are to be adopted to ensure sufficient load-carrying capacity.

2. 2. 2 The spacing of primary supporting members parallel to the direction of secondary stiffeners is not to exceed one third of the span of primary supporting members. When strength calculation is carried out by FE analysis using plane strain or shell elements, this requirement can be waived.

2. 2. 3 Secondary stiffeners of hatch coamings are to be continuous over the breadth and length of hatch coamings.

2. 2. 4 Supporting members in way of cut-outs are to have sufficient shear area.

2. 3 Load model

2. 3. 1 The structural assessment of hatch covers is to be carried out using the design loads defined in this Section. The following symbols and definitions are applicable to this Section:

x = longitudinal co-ordinate measured from the AP to mid point of assessed structural member

T_{fb} = draught, in metres, corresponding to the assigned summer load line

h_N = standard superstructure height in metres

= $1.05 + 0.01L_L, 1.8 \leq h_N \leq 2.3$

Where

L_L = load line length, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1 Principal particulars 6.1.8.

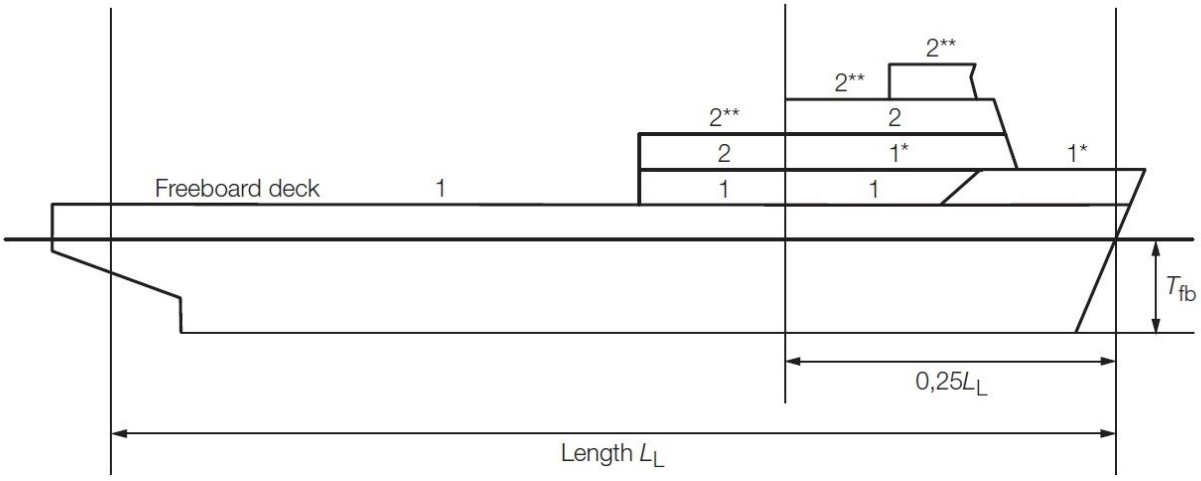
2. 3. 2 The vertical weather design pressure, p_H, in kN/m^2, on the hatch cover panels is to be taken from Table 11. 2. 1: Design pressure pH of weather deck hatches. When cargo is carried on the cover, cargo loads according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.3 Load model 2.3.4, Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.3 Load model 2.3.5 and Pt 4, Ch 8, 11.2, Direct calculations are to be considered. The vertical weather design load needs not to be combined with the cargo load. For 'tween deck hatch covers not exposed to weather load, the structural assessment is to be carried out using the cargo loads defined in Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.3 Load model 2.3.4 and Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.3 Load model 2.3.5. Covers carrying wheeled vehicles are also to comply with Pt 3, Ch 9, 3 Decks loaded by wheeled vehicles and where it is proposed to provide a helicopter landing area, covers are also to comply with Pt 3, Ch 9, 5 Helicopter landing areas. Where an increased freeboard is assigned, the design load for hatch covers according to Table 11. 2. 1: Design pressure pH of weather deck hatches on the actual freeboard deck may be as required for a superstructure deck, provided the summer freeboard is such that the resulting draught will not be greater than that corresponding to the minimum freeboard calculated from an assumed freeboard deck situated at a distance at least equal to the standard superstructure height, h_N, below the actual freeboard deck, *See* Figure 11. 2. 2: Positions 1 and 2 for an increased freeboard.

Table 11. 2. 1: Design pressure p_H of weather deck hatches

Position (*See* Note)	p_H, in kN/m^2	
1	$\frac{x}{L_L} \leq 0.75$	$0.75 < \frac{x}{L_L} \leq 1.0$
	for 24 m $\leq L_L \leq$ 100 m	
	$\frac{g}{76}(1.5L_L + 116)$	on freeboard deck $\frac{g}{76}\left[(4.28L_L + 28)\frac{x}{L_L} - 1.71L_L + 95\right]$
		upon exposed superstructure decks located at least one superstructure standard height above the freeboard deck $\frac{g}{76}(1.15L_L + 116)$
	for $L_L >$ 100 m	

	3.5g	on freeboard deck for type B ships according to ICLL $g\left[(0.0296L_1 + 3.04)\frac{x}{L_L} - 0.0222L_1 + 1.22\right]$
		on freeboard deck for ships with less freeboard than type B according to ICLL $g\left[(0.1452L_1 - 8.52)\frac{x}{L_L} - 0.1089L_1 + 9.89\right]$ L_1=L_L but not more than 340 m
		upon exposed superstructure decks located at least one superstructure standard height above the freeboard deck 3.5g
2	for 24 m $\leq$ L_L $\leq$ 100 m	
	$\frac{g}{76}(1.1L_L + 87.6)$	
	for L_L $>$ 100 m	
	2.6g	
	upon exposed superstructure decks located at least one superstructure standard height above the lowest Position 2 deck 2.1g	
Symbols		
L_L = load line length, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1 Principal particulars 6.1.8 g = acceleration due to gravity, 9.81 m/s^2		
Note The positions 1 and 2 are illustrated for example ships in Figure 11. 2. 1: Positions 1 and 2.		

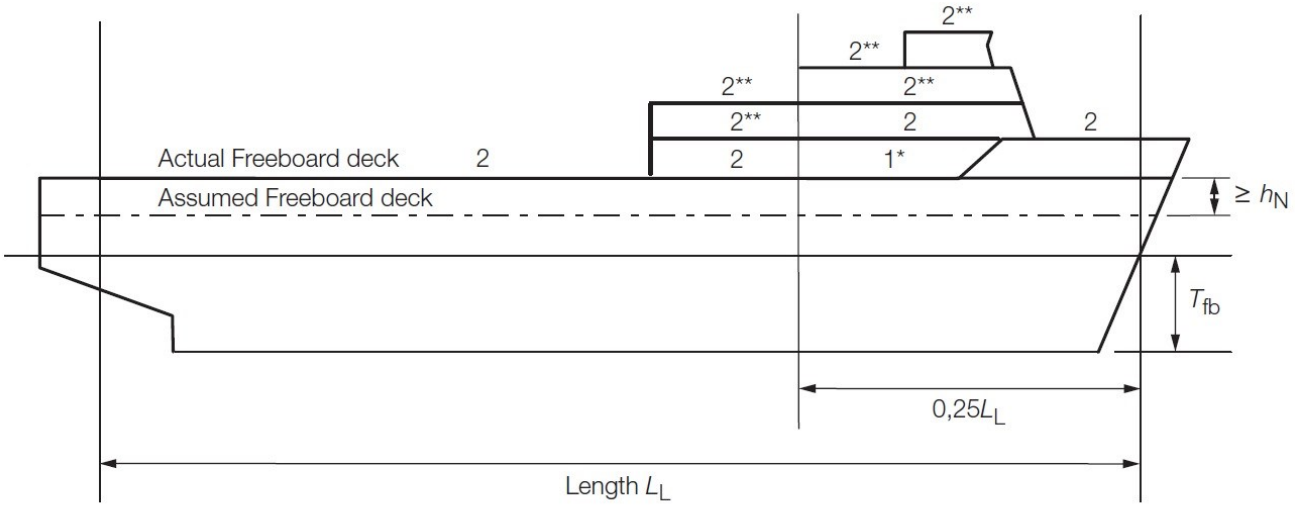
Figure 11. 2. 1: Positions 1 and 2



* reduced load upon exposed superstructure decks located at least one standard height of superstructure above the freeboard deck

** reduced load upon exposed superstructure decks of vessels with L_L > 100 m located at least one superstructure standard height of superstructure above the lowest Position 2 deck

Figure 11. 2. 2: Positions 1 and 2 for an increased freeboard



* reduced load upon exposed superstructure decks located at least one standard height of superstructure above the freeboard deck

** reduced load upon exposed superstructure decks of vessels with L_L > 100 m located at least one superstructure standard height of superstructure above the lowest Position 2 deck

2. 3. 3 The horizontal weather design pressure, in kN/m^2, for determining the scantlings of outer edge girders (skirt plates) of weather deck hatch covers and of hatch coamings is:

Note The horizontal weather design pressure need not be included in the direct strength calculation of the hatch cover, unless it is utilised for the design of substructures of horizontal support according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 4.2 Steel covers − Clamped and gasketed 4.2.10.

p_A = $ac(bc_c, f - z)\text{kN/m}^2$

f = $\frac{L}{25} + 4.1$ for L < 90 m

= $10.75 - \left(\frac{300-L}{100}\right)^{1.5}$ for 90 m ≤ L < 300 m

= 10.75 for 300 m ≤ L < 350 m

= $10.75 - \left(\frac{L-350}{100}\right)^{1.5}$ for 350 m ≤ L ≤ 500 m

c_L = $\sqrt{\frac{L}{90}}$ for $L < 90\text{m}$

= 1

a = 1 for unprotected front coamings and hatch cover skirt plates

= 1

= $20 + \frac{L_1}{12}$ for unprotected front coamings and hatch cover skirt plates

a = $10 + \frac{L_1}{12}$ for unprotected front coamings and hatch cover skirt plates, where the distance from the actual freeboard deck to the summer load line exceeds the minimum non-corrected tabular freeboard according to ICLL by at least one standard superstructure height h_N

a = $5 + \frac{L_1}{15}$ for side and protected front coamings and hatch cover skirt plates

a = $= 7 + \frac{L_1}{100} - 8\frac{x'}{L}$ for aft ends of coamings and aft hatch cover skirt plates abaft amidships

a = $5 + \frac{L_1}{100} - 4\frac{x'}{L}$ for aft ends of coamings and aft hatch cover skirt plates forward of amidships

L_1 = L, need not be taken greater than 300 m

b = $$1.0 + \left(\frac{\frac{x'}{L} - 0.45}{C_b + 0.2}\right)^2 \text{ for } \left(\frac{x'}{L}\right) < 0.45$$

b = $$1.0 + 1.5\left(\frac{\frac{x'}{L} - 0.45}{C_b + 0.2}\right)^2 \text{ for } \left(\frac{x'}{L}\right) < 0.45$$

= $0.6 \leq Cb \leq 0.8$, when determining scantlings of aft ends of coamings and aft hatch cover skirt plates forward of amidships, C_b need not be taken less than 0.8

C_b = block coefficient, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1 Principal particulars 6.1.6

x’ = distance, in metres, between the transverse coaming or hatch cover skirt plate considered and aft end of the length L. When determining side coamings or side hatch cover skirt plates, the side is to be subdivided into parts of approximately equal length, not exceeding $0.15L$ each, and x’ is to be taken as the distance between aft end of the length L and the centre of each part considered

z = vertical distance in metres from the summer load line to the mid point of stiffener span, or to the middle of the plate field

c = $0.3 + 0.7\frac{b'}{B'}$

b' = breadth of coaming in metres at the position considered

B' = actual maximum breadth of ship in metres on the exposed weather deck at the position considered b'/B' is not to be taken less than 0.25

The design pressure p_A is not to be taken less than the minimum values given in Table 11. 2. 2: Minimum design load, pAmin.

Table 11. 2. 2: Minimum design load, p_{Amin}

L	p_{Amin}, kN/m^2	
	For unprotected fronts	Elsewhere
≤ 50	30	15

> 50	$25+\frac{L}{10}$	$12.5+\frac{L}{20}$
< 250		
≥ 250	50	25

2. 3. 4 The pressure on hatch covers due to distributed cargo loads p_L, in kN/m2, resulting from heave and pitch (i.e. ship in upright condition), is to be determined according to the following formula:

$$p_L = p_c(1+a_v)\text{kN/m}^2$$

Where

p_c = uniform cargo load, in kN/m^2

Note For 'tween deck hatch covers, p_c is not to be taken less than 7.07 H_{td} kN/m^2, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 5.2 Symbols 5.2.1, Table 3. 5. 1: Design heads and permissible cargo loadings and Figure 3. 5. 1: Heads for 'tween decks for 'tween decks. A design load less than this will be specially considered.

a_v = vertical acceleration addition as follows:

$a_v = Fm$

$F = 0.11\frac{V_0}{\sqrt{L}}$

$m = m_0 - 5(m_0-1)\frac{x}{L}$ for $0 \le \frac{x}{L} \le 0.2$

$= 1.0$ for $0.2 \le \frac{x}{L} \le 0.7$

$= 1+\frac{m_0+1}{0.3}\left(\frac{x}{L}-0.7\right)$ for $0.7 < \frac{x}{L} \le 1.0$

$m_0 = 1.5+F$

v_0 = Maximum speed at summer load line draught, v_0 is not to be taken less than $\sqrt{L}$, in knots.

2. 3. 5 The point load due to a concentrated force, P, in kN resulting from heave and pitch is to be determined as follows:

$P = P_S(1+a_v)\text{kN}$

P_S = single force, in kN.

2. 3. 6 Container loads as defined in Pt 4, Ch 8, 11.2 Direct calculations 11.2.4 are to be applied where containers are stowed on the hatch cover.

2. 3. 7 In addition to the loads defined in this Section, hatch covers are loaded in the ship's transverse direction by forces due to elastic deformations of the ship's hull. Hatch covers may be required to be designed such that the sum of stresses does not exceed the permissible values given in Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.4 Allowable stress and deflection 2.4.1.

2. 4 Allowable stress and deflection

2. 4. 1 The equivalent stress, σ_v, in steel hatch cover structures related to the net thickness shall not exceed $0.8\sigma_o$, where σ_o is the minimum yield stress, in N/mm^2, of the material. For design loads according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.3 Load model 2.3.3 to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.3 Load model 2.3.7 and Pt 4, Ch 8, 11.2,

Direct calculations, the equivalent stress, σ_v, related to the net thickness shall not exceed $0.9\sigma_o$ when the stresses are assessed by means of FEM.

For grillage analysis, the equivalent stress may be taken as follows:

σ_v = $\sqrt{\sigma^2 + 3\tau^2}$, in N/mm^2

σ = normal stress in N/mm^2

τ = shear stress in N/mm^2

For FEM calculations, the equivalent stress may be taken as follows:

σ_v = $\sqrt{\sigma_x^2 - \sigma_x\sigma_y + \sigma_{y^2} + 3\tau^2}$, N/mm^2

σ_x = normal stress, in N/mm^2, in x-direction

σ_y = normal stress, in N/mm^2, in y-direction

τ = shear stress, in N/mm^2, in the x-y plane

Indices x and y are coordinates of a two-dimensional Cartesian system in the plane of the considered structural element.

In the case of FEM calculations using shell or plane strain elements, the stresses are to be read from the centre of the individual element. It is to be recognised that in particular at flanges of unsymmetrical girders, the evaluation of stress from the element centre may lead to non-conservative results. Thus, a sufficiently fine mesh is to be applied in these cases. Where shell elements are used, the stresses are to be evaluated at the mid plane of the element.

Stress concentrations are to be considered by examining design details or FE analysis. FEM calculations are to be carried out in accordance with the ACSPlus procedure *Assessment of Steel Hatch Covers using Finite Element Analysis*.

2. 4. 2 The vertical deflection of primary supporting members due to the vertical weather design load according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.3 Load model 2.3.2, is to be not more than $0.0056l_g$ where l_g is the greatest span of primary supporting members.

Note Where hatch covers are arranged for carrying containers and mixed stowage is allowed, i.e. a 40'-container stowed on top of two 20'-containers, particular attention should be paid to the deflections of hatch covers. Furthermore the possible contact of deflected hatch covers with in-hold cargo has to be avoided.

For 'tween deck hatch covers not exposed to the vertical weather design load according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.3 Load model 2.3.2, the vertical deflection of primary supporting members due to the cargo loads according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.3 Load model 2.3.4, Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.3 Load model 2.3.5 and Pt 4, Ch 8, 11.2, Direct calculations is to be not more than $0.007l_g$ where l_g is the greatest span of primary supporting members.

2. 5 Local net plate thickness

2. 5. 1 The local net plate thickness, t, in mm, of the hatch cover top plating is not to be less than:

$$t = F_p 0.0158 s \sqrt{\frac{p}{0.95\sigma_o}}$$

and to be not less than 1 per cent of the spacing of the stiffener or 6 mm, whichever is greater

F_p = factor for combined membrane and bending response

= 1.5 in general

$= \quad 1.9\frac{\sigma}{\sigma_a}.\ \text{for}\ \frac{\sigma}{\sigma_a} \geq 0.8$

for the attached plate flange of primary supporting members

s = stiffener spacing, in mm

p = pressure p_H and p_L, in kN/m^2, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.3, Load model

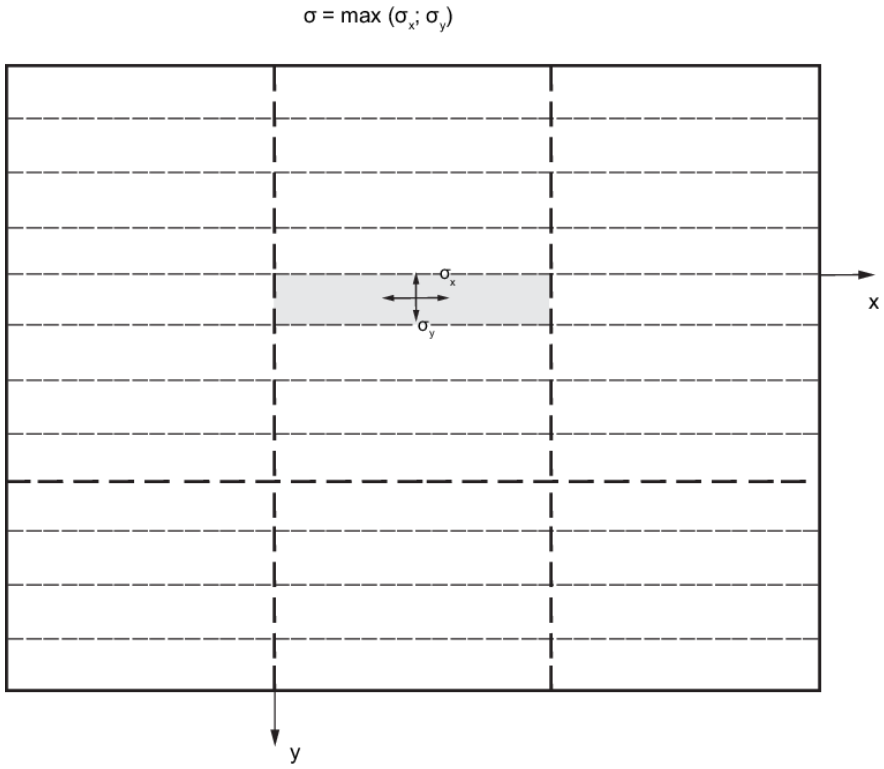
σ = maximum normal stress, in N/mm^2, of hatch cover top plating, determined according to Figure 11. 2. 3: Determination of normal stress of the hatch cover plating

σ_a = $0.8\sigma_o$, in N/mm^2

σ_0 = minimum yield stress, in N/mm^2, of the material

For flange plates under compression, sufficient buckling strength according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.11, Buckling strength of hatch cover structures is to be demonstrated.

Figure 11. 2. 3: Determination of normal stress of the hatch cover plating



2. 6 Local plate thickness of hatch covers for wheel loading and helicopter landing

2. 6. 1 The local gross plate thickness of hatch covers for wheel loading is to comply with Pt 3, Ch 9, 3 Decks loaded by wheeled vehicles.

2. 6. 2 The local gross plate thickness of hatch covers for helicopter landing is to comply with Pt 3, Ch 9, 5 Helicopter landing areas.

2. 7 Lower plating of double skin hatch covers and box girders

2. 7. 1 The thickness to fulfil the strength requirements is to be obtained from the calculation according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.10, Strength calculations under consideration of permissible stresses according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.4 Allowable stress and deflection 2.4.1. When the lower plating is taken into account as a strength member of the hatch cover, the net thickness, in mm, of lower plating is to be taken not less than 5 mm. When project cargo is intended to be carried on a hatch cover, the net thickness must not be less than:

t = $0.0065s$, in mm

s = stiffener spacing, in mm.

Note Project cargo means especially large or bulky cargo lashed to the hatch cover. Examples are parts of cranes or wind power stations, turbines, etc. Cargoes that can be considered as uniformly distributed over the hatch cover, e.g. timber, pipes or steel coils, need not be considered as project cargo.

When the lower plating is not considered as a strength member of the hatch cover, the thickness of the lower plating is to be specially considered.

2. 8 Net scantling of secondary stiffeners

2. 8. 1 The net section modulus, Z, and net shear area, A_s, of uniformly loaded hatch cover stiffeners constrained at both ends is not to be less than:

Z = $\frac{104psl^2}{\sigma_0}$ in cm^3 for design load according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.3 Load model 2.3.2

Z = $\frac{93psl^2}{\sigma_0}$ in cm^3 for design load according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.3 Load model 2.3.4

A_s = $\frac{10.8psl}{\sigma_o}$, in cm^2 for design load according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.3 Load model 2.3.2

A_s = $A_s = \frac{9.6psl}{\sigma_o}$, in cm^2 for design load according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.3 Load model 2.3.4

Where

l = secondary stiffener span, in metres, to be taken as the spacing, in metres, of primary supporting members or the distance between a primary supporting member and the edge support, as applicable

s = secondary stiffener spacing, in mm

p = pressure p_H and p_L, in kN/m^2, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.3 Load model 2.3.2 and Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.3 Load model 2.3.4 respectively.

σ_o = minimum yield stress, in N/mm^2, of the material, *See* Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.4 Allowable stress and deflection 2.4.1

For secondary stiffeners of lower plating of double skin hatch covers, requirements mentioned above are not applicable due to the absence of lateral loads.

The net thickness, in mm, of the stiffener web, except of u-beams/trapeze stiffeners, is to be taken not less than 4 mm.

2. 8. 2 The net section modulus of the secondary stiffeners is to be determined, based on an attached plate width assumed equal to the stiffener spacing.

2. 8. 3 For flat bar secondary stiffeners and buckling stiffeners, the ratio h/t_w is to be not greater than $15k^{0.5}$

Where

h = height of the stiffener

t_w = net thickness of the stiffener

k = $235/\sigma_o$.

2. 8. 4 Stiffeners parallel to primary supporting members and arranged within the effective breadth according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.10, Strength calculations must be continuous when crossing primary supporting members and may be considered when calculating the cross-sectional properties of primary supporting members. It is to be verified that the combined stress of those stiffeners, induced by the bending of primary supporting members and lateral pressures, does not exceed the permissible stresses according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.4 Allowable stress and deflection 2.4.1. The requirements of this paragraph are not applied to stiffeners of lower plating of double skin hatch covers if the lower plating is not considered as strength member.

2. 8. 5 For hatch cover stiffeners under compression, sufficient safety against lateral and torsional buckling according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.15 Lateral buckling of secondary stiffeners and Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.16 Torsional buckling of secondary stiffeners is to be verified.

2. 8. 6 For hatch covers subject to wheel loading or point loads, stiffener scantlings are to be determined under consideration of the permissible stresses according to Pt 3, Ch 9, 3 Decks loaded by wheeled vehicles or Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.4 Allowable stress and deflection 2.4.1, as applicable.

2. 8. 7 For hatch covers subject to helicopter landing, stiffener gross scantlings are to comply with Pt 3, Ch 9, 5 Helicopter landing areas.

2. 9 Net scantling of primary supporting members

2. 9. 1 Scantlings of primary supporting members are obtained from calculations according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.10, Strength calculations, under consideration of permissible stresses according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.4 Allowable stress and deflection 2.4.1.

2. 9. 2 For all components of primary supporting members, sufficient safety against buckling must be verified according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.11, Buckling strength of hatch cover structures to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.16 Torsional buckling of secondary stiffeners. For biaxial compressed flange plates, this is to be verified within the effective widths according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.14 Effective width of top and lower hatch cover plating 2.14.1.

2. 9. 3 The net thickness, t, in mm, of webs of primary supporting members is not to be less than:

a. $0.0065s$, in mm
b. 5 mm

Where

s = stiffener spacing, in mm.

2. 9. 4 Scantlings of edge girders (skirt plates) are obtained from the calculations according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.10, Strength calculations, under consideration of permissible stresses according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.4 Allowable stress and deflection 2.4.1.

2. 9. 5 The net thickness, t, in mm, of the outer edge girders exposed to wash of sea is not to be less than the largest of the following values:

a. $0.0158s\sqrt{\frac{p_A}{0.95\sigma_o}}$

b. $0.0085s$ mm
c. 5 mm

Where

p_A = horizontal pressure, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.3 Load model 2.3.3

s = stiffener spacing, in mm.

2. 9. 6 The stiffness of edge girders is to be sufficient to maintain adequate sealing pressure between securing devices. The moment of inertia, in cm^4, of edge girders is not to be less than:

$I = 6q\, s\, s_{SD}^4$

q = packing line pressure, in N/mm, minimum 5 N/mm

s_{SD} = spacing, in metres, of securing devices.

2. 10 Strength calculations

2. 10. 1 Strength calculation for hatch covers may be carried out by using either grillage analysis or FEM. Double skin hatch covers or hatch covers with box girders are to be assessed using FEM, *See* Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.10 Strength calculations 2.10.3. *See also* Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.7 Lower plating of double skin hatch covers and box girders for requirement of lower plqting of double skin hatch covers and box girders.

2. 10. 2 The effective cross-sectional properties for calculation by grillage analysis are to be determined considering the effective breadth. Cross-sectional areas of secondary stiffeners parallel to the primary supporting member under consideration within the effective breadth can be included, *See* Figure 11. 2. 5: Stiffening parallel to web of primary supporting member. The effective breadth of plating, e_m, of primary supporting members is to be determined according to Table 11. 2. 3: Effective breadth em of plating of primary supporting members, considering the type of loading. Special calculations may be required for determining the effective breadth of one-sided or non-symmetrical flanges. The effective cross-sectional area of plates is not to be less than the cross-sectional area of the face-plate. For flange plates under compression with secondary stiffeners perpendicular to the web of the primary supporting member, the effective width is to be determined according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.14 Effective width of top and lower hatch cover plating 2.14.1.

Table 11. 2. 3: Effective breadth e_m of plating of primary supporting members

l/e	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	≥8
e_{m1}/e	0	0.36	0.64	0.82	0.91	0.96	0.98	1.00	1.00
e_{m2}/e	0	0.20	0.37	0.52	0.65	0.75	0.84	0.89	0.90

Symbols	
e_{m1}	is to be applied where primary supporting members are loaded by uniformly distributed loads or else by no fewer than six equally spaced single loads
e_{m2}	is to be applied where primary supporting members are loaded by three or fewer single loads. Intermediate values may be obtained by direct interpolation
l	length of zero-points of bending moment curve: $l = l_0$ for simply supported primary supporting members

	$l = 0.6l_0$for primary supporting members with both ends constrained
where	
l_0	is the unsupported length of the primary supporting member
e	width of plating supported, measured from centre to centre of the adjacent unsupported fields

2. 10. 3 FEM calculations are to be done in accordance with the ACSPlus SDA Procedure, *Assessment of Steel Hatch Covers Using Finite Element Analysis*.

2. 11 Buckling strength of hatch cover structures

2. 11. 1 For hatch cover structures, sufficient buckling strength is to be demonstrated.

a = length of the longer side of a single plate field, in mm

b = breadth of the shorter side of a single plate field, in mm

α = aspect ratio of single plate field

= a/b

n = number of single plate field breadths within the partial or total plate field

t = net plate thickness, in mm

σ_x = membrane stress, in N/mm^2, in x-direction

σ_y = membrane stress, in N/mm^2, in y-direction

τ = shear stress, in N/mm^2, in the x-y plane

E = modulus of elasticity, in N/mm^2, of the material

= 2.06 x 10^5 N/mm^2 for steel

σ_o = minimum yield stress, in N/mm^2, of the material.

Compressive and shear stresses are to be taken positive, tension stresses are to be taken negative. If stresses in the x- and y-direction already contain the Poisson effect (calculated using FEM), the following modified stress values may be used. Both stresses σ_x * and σ_y * are to be compressive stresses, in order to apply the stress reduction according to the following formulae.

$$\sigma_x = \frac{\left(\sigma_x^* - 0.3\sigma_y^*\right)}{0.91}$$

$$\sigma_y = \frac{\left(\sigma_y^* - 0.3\sigma_x^*\right)}{0.91}$$

σ_x^*, σ_y^* = stresses containing the Poisson effect where compressive stress fulfils the condition

$\sigma_y{}^* < 0.3\sigma_x^*$, then $\sigma_y = 0$ and $\sigma_x = \sigma_x^*$

where compressive stress fulfils the condition

$\sigma_x^* < 0.3\sigma_y{}^*$, then $\sigma_x = 0$ and $\sigma_y = \sigma_x *$

F_1 = correction factor for boundary condition at the longitudinal stiffeners according to Table 11. 2. 4: Correction factor F1

σ_e = reference stress, in N/mm^2, taken equal to

= $$0.9E\left(\frac{t}{b}\right)^2$$

ψ = edge stress ratio taken equal to

= $$\frac{\sigma_2}{\sigma_1}$$

Where

σ_1 = maximum compressive stress

σ_2 = minimum compressive stress or tension stress

S = safety factor (based on net scantling approach), taken equal to

= 1.25 for hatch covers when subjected to the vertical weather design load according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.3 Load model 2.3.2

= 1.10 for hatch covers when subjected to loads according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.3 Load model 2.3.3 and Pt 4, Ch 8, 11.2, Direct calculations

λ = reference degree of slenderness, taken equal to:

= $$\sqrt{\frac{\sigma_0}{K\sigma_e}}$$

K = buckling factor according to Table 11. 2. 6: Buckling and reduction factors for plane elementary plate panels.

Table 11. 2. 4: Correction factor F_1

Stiffeners sniped at both ends	1.00	
Guidance values, *See* Note 1, where both ends are effectively connected to adjacent structures	1.05	for flat bars
	1.10	for bulb sections
	1.21	for angle and tee-sections
	1.30	for u-type sections, *See* Note 2, and girders of high rigidity
An average value of F_1, is to be used for plate panels having different edge stiffeners		
Note *1.* Exact values may be determined by direct calculations. **Note** *2.* A higher value, but not greater than 2.0, may be taken if it is verified by a buckling strength check of the partial plate field using non-linear FEA. The calculations are to be submitted to LR for approval.		

Table 11. 2. 5: Coefficients e_1, e_2, e_3 and factor B

Exponents e_1 to e_3 and factor B	Plate panel

e_1	$1 + \kappa_x^4$
e_2	$1 + \kappa_y{}^4$
e_3	$1 + \kappa_x \kappa_y \kappa_\tau^2$
B σ_x and σ_y positive (compression stress)	$(\kappa_x \kappa_y)^5$
B σ_x or σ_y negative (tension stress)	1

2. 11. 2 Proof is to be provided that the following condition is complied with for the single plate field a b:

$$\left(\frac{|\sigma_x|S}{\kappa_x \sigma_o}\right)^{e1} + \left(\frac{|\sigma_y|S}{\kappa_y \sigma_o}\right)^{e2} - B\left(\frac{\sigma_x \sigma_y S^2}{{\sigma_o}^2}\right) + \left(\frac{|\tau|S\sqrt{3}}{\kappa_t \sigma_o}\right)^{e3} \leq 1.0$$

The first two terms and the last term of the above condition shall not exceed 1.0.

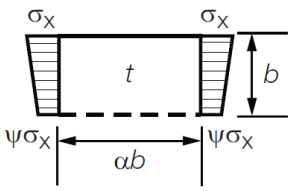
The reduction factors κ_x, κ_y and κ_τ are given in Table 11. 2. 6: Buckling and reduction factors for plane elementary plate panels.

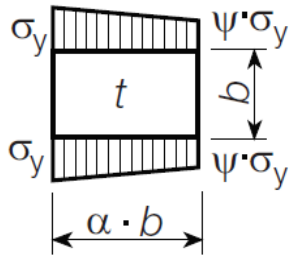
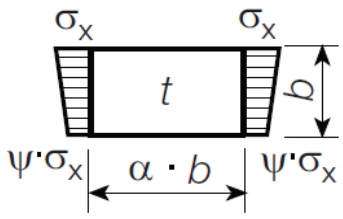
Where $\sigma_x \leq 0$ (tension stress), $\kappa_x = 1.0$.

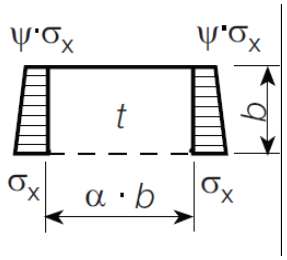
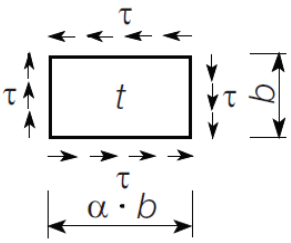
Where $\sigma_y \leq 0$ (tension stress), $\kappa_y = 1.0$.

The exponents e_1, e_2 and e_3 as well as the factor B are to be taken as given by Table 11. 2. 5: Coefficients e1, e2, e3 and factor B.

Table 11. 2. 6: Buckling and reduction factors for plane elementary plate panels

Buckling load case	Edge stress ratio ψ	Asp. ratio $a = \frac{a}{b}$	Buckling factor K	Reduction factor κ
1 	$1 \geq \psi \geq 0$	$\alpha \geq 1$	$K = \frac{8.4}{\psi + 1.1}$	$\kappa_x = 1$ for $\lambda \leq \lambda_c$
	$0 > \psi > -1$		$K = 7.63 - \psi\,(6.26 - 10\psi)$	$\kappa_X = c\left(\frac{1}{\lambda} - \frac{0.22}{\lambda^2}\right)$ for $\lambda > \lambda_c$
	$\psi \leq -1$		$K = 5.975\,(1 - \psi)^2$	$c = (1.25 - 0.12\psi) \leq 1.25$ $\lambda_c = \frac{c}{2}\left(1 + \sqrt{1 - \frac{0.88}{c}}\right)$
2	$1 \geq \psi \geq 0$	$\alpha \geq 1$	$K = F_1\left(1 + \frac{1}{\alpha^2}\right)^2 \frac{2.1}{(\psi + 1.1)}$	$\kappa_y = c\left(\frac{1}{\lambda} - \frac{R + F^2(H - R)}{\lambda^2}\right)$

				$c = (1.25 - 0.12\psi) \leq 1.25$
				$R = \lambda\left(1 - \frac{\lambda}{c}\right)$ for $\lambda < \lambda_C$
	$0 > \psi > -1$	$1 \leq \alpha \leq 1.5$	$K = F_1\left[\left(1 + \frac{1}{\alpha^2}\right)^2 \frac{2.1(1+\psi)}{1.1} - \frac{\psi}{\alpha^2}(13.9 - 10\psi)\right]$	$R = 0.22$ for $\lambda < \lambda_C$ $\lambda_c = \frac{c}{2}\left(1 + \sqrt{1 - \frac{0.88}{c}}\right)$ $F = \left(1 - \frac{\frac{\kappa}{0.91} - 1}{{\lambda_p}^2}\right)c_1 \geq 0$
		$\alpha > 1.5$	$K = F_1\left[\left(1 + \frac{1}{\alpha^2}\right)^2 \frac{2.1(1+\psi)}{1.1} - \frac{\psi}{\alpha^2}(5.87 + 1.87\alpha^2 + \frac{8.6}{\alpha^2} - 10\psi)\right]$	$\lambda_p^2 = \lambda^2 - 0.5$ for $1 \leq \lambda_p^2 \leq 3$ $c_1 = \left(1 - \frac{F_1}{\alpha}\right) \geq 0$
	$\psi \leq -1$	$1 \leq \alpha \leq \frac{3(1-\psi)}{4}$	$K = 5.975F_1\left(\frac{1-\psi}{\alpha}\right)^2$	$H = \lambda - \frac{2\lambda}{c(T + \sqrt{T^2 - 4})} \geq R$
		$\alpha > \frac{3(1-\psi)}{4}$	$K = F_1\left[3.9675\left(\frac{1-\psi}{\alpha}\right)^2 + 0.5375\left(\frac{1-\psi}{\alpha}\right)^4 + 1.87\right]$	$T = \lambda + \frac{14}{15\lambda} + \frac{1}{3}$
3 	$1 \geq \psi \geq 0$	$\alpha > 0$	$k = \frac{4\left(0.425 + \frac{1}{\alpha^2}\right)}{3\psi + 1}$	$\kappa_X = 1$ for $\lambda \leq 0.7$
	$0 > \psi \geq -1$		$K = 4\left(0.425 + \frac{1}{\alpha^2}\right)(1+\psi) - 5\psi(1 - 3.42\psi)$	$\kappa_x = \frac{1}{\lambda^2 + 0.51}$ for $\lambda > 0.7$

4 	$1 \geq \psi \geq -1$	$\alpha > 0$	$K = \left(0.425 + \frac{1}{\alpha^2}\right)\frac{3-\psi}{2}$	
5 	—		$K = K_\tau\sqrt{3}$	$\kappa_\tau = 1$ for $\lambda \leq 0.84$
		$\alpha \geq 1$	$K_\tau = \left(5.34 + \frac{4}{\alpha^2}\right)$	$K_\tau = \frac{0.84}{\lambda}$ for $\lambda > 0.84$
		$0 < \alpha < 1$	$K_\tau = \left(4 + \frac{5.34}{\alpha^2}\right)$	
Explanations for boundary conditions		----------	plate edge free plate edge simply supported	

2. 12 Webs and flanges of primary supporting members

2. 12. 1 For non-stiffened webs and flanges of primary supporting members, sufficient buckling strength, as for the hatch cover top and lower plating, is to be demonstrated according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.11 Buckling strength of hatch cover structures 2.11.2.

2. 13 Longitudinal and transverse secondary stiffeners

2. 13. 1 It is to be demonstrated that the continuous longitudinal and transverse stiffeners of partial and total plate fields comply with the conditions set out in Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.15 Lateral buckling of secondary stiffeners and Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.16 Torsional buckling of secondary stiffeners. For u-type stiffeners, the verification of torsional buckling strength according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.16 Torsional buckling of secondary stiffeners can be omitted. Single-sided welding is not permitted for secondary stiffeners except for u-type stiffeners.

2. 14 Effective width of top and lower hatch cover plating

2. 14. 1 For demonstration of buckling strength according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.15 Lateral buckling of secondary stiffeners and Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.16 Torsional buckling of secondary stiffeners, the effective width of plating may be determined by the following formulae:

b_m = κ_x b for longitudinal stiffeners

a_m = κ_y a for transverse stiffeners

See also Figure 11. 2. 4: General arrangement of panel.

The effective width of plating is not to be taken greater than the value obtained from Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.10 Strength calculations 2.10.2.

The effective width e'_m of stiffened flange plates of primary supporting members may be determined as follows:

(a) Stiffening parallel to web of primary supporting member:

- $b < e_m$

e'_m = $n\ b_m$

n = integer number of stiffener spacings b inside the effective breadth e_m according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.10 Strength calculations 2.10.2

= $\text{int}\left(\frac{e_m}{b}\right)$

(b) Stiffening perpendicular to web of primary supporting member:

- $a \geq e_m$

e'_m = $n_{am} < e_m$

n = $2.7\frac{e_m}{a} \leq l$

e = width of plating supported according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.10 Strength calculations 2.10.2

For $b \geq e_m$ or $a < e_m$, respectively, b and a are to be exchanged.

a_m and b_m for flange plates are in general to be determined for $\psi = 1$.

Scantlings of plates and stiffeners are in general to be determined according to the maximum stresses $\sigma_x(y)$ at webs of primary supporting member and stiffeners, respectively. For stiffeners with spacing b under compression arranged parallel to primary supporting members, no value less than $0.25\sigma_o$ shall be inserted for $\sigma_x(y=b)$.

The stress distribution between two primary supporting members can be obtained by the following formula:

$$\sigma_x(y) = \sigma_{xl}\left\{1 - \frac{y}{e}\left[3 + c_1 - 4c_2 - 2\frac{y}{e}(1 + c_1 - 2c_2)\right]\right\}$$

Where

c_1 = $\frac{\sigma_{x2}}{\sigma_{x1}}\ 0 \leq c_1 \leq 1$

c_2 = $\frac{1.5}{e}(e_{m1}'' + e_{m2}'') - 0.5$

e_{m1}" = proportionate effective breadth e_{m1} or proportionate effective width e_{m1}' of primary supporting member 1 within the distance e, as appropriate

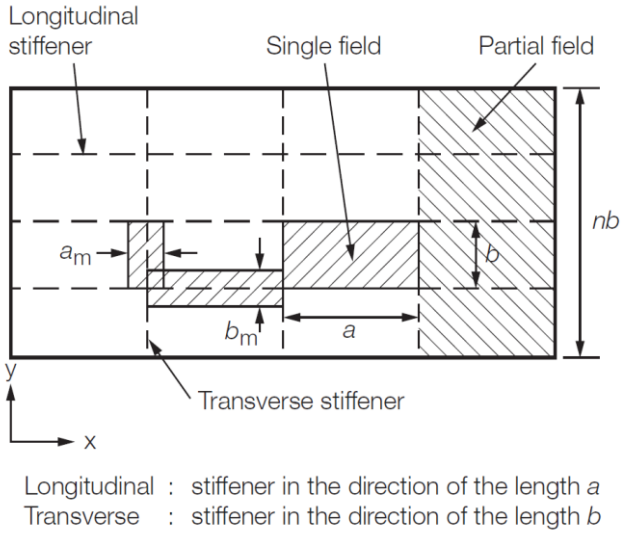
e_{m2}" = proportionate effective breadth e_{m2} or proportionate effective width e_{m2}' of primary supporting member 2 within the distance e, as appropriate

σ_{x1}, σ_{x2} = normal stresses in flange plates of adjacent primary supporting member 1 and 2 with spacing e, based on cross-sectional properties considering the effective breadth or effective width, as appropriate

y = distance of considered location from primary supporting member 1

Shear stress distribution in the flange plates may be assumed linearly.

Figure 11. 2. 4: General arrangement of panel



Longitudinal : stiffener in the direction of the length *a*
Transverse : stiffener in the direction of the length *b*

Figure 11. 2. 5: Stiffening parallel to web of primary supporting member

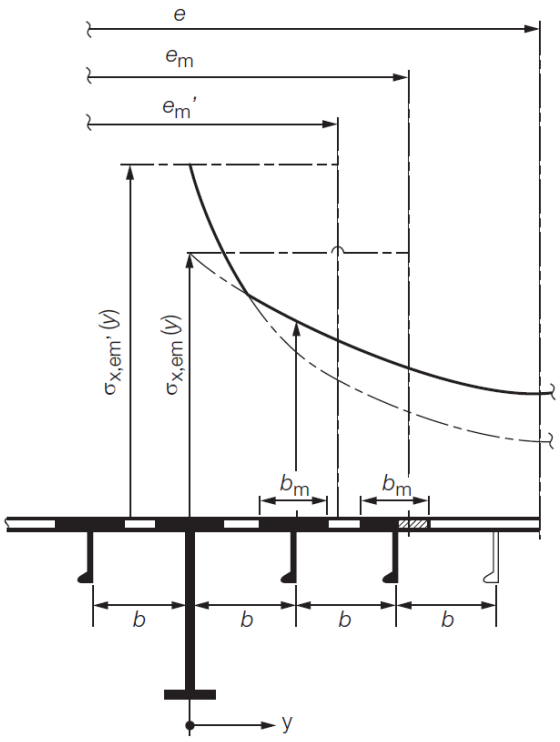
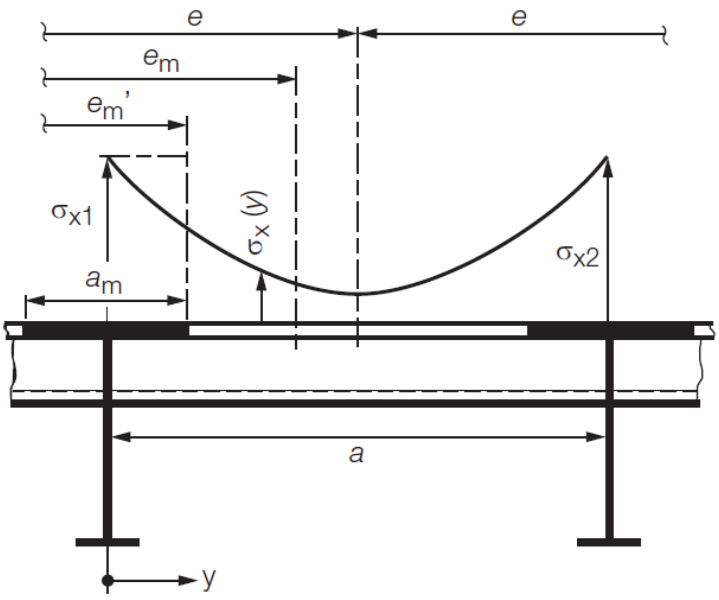


Figure 11. 2. 6: Stiffening perpendicular to web of primary supporting member



2. 15 Lateral buckling of secondary stiffeners

2. 15. 1 The secondary stiffeners are to comply with the following criteria:

$$\frac{\sigma_a + \sigma_b}{\sigma_o} S \leq 1$$

Where

σ_a = uniformly distributed compressive stress, in N/mm^2, in the direction of the stiffener axis

σ_a = σ_x for longitudinal stiffeners

σ_a = σ_y for transverse stiffeners

σ_b = bending stress, in N/mm^2, in the stiffener

$$= \frac{M_0 + M_1}{Z_{st} \times 10^3}$$

M_0 = bending moment, in Nmm, due to the deformation w of stiffener, taken equal to:

$$M_0 = F_{Ki} \frac{p_z w}{c_f - p_z} \text{ with } (c_f - p_z) > 0$$

M_1 = bending moment, in Nmm, due to the lateral load p equal to:

M_1 = $\frac{pba^2}{24\times10^3}$ for longitudinal stiffeners

M_1 = $\frac{pa(nb)^2}{8c_s\times10^3}$ for transverse stiffeners

- n is to be taken equal to 1 for ordinary transverse stiffeners

Where

p = lateral load, in kN/m^2

F_{Ki} = ideal buckling force, in N, of the stiffener

F_{Kix} = $\frac{\pi^2}{a^2} E I_X \times 10^4$ for longitudinal stiffeners

F_{Kiy} = $\frac{\pi^2}{(nb)^2} E I_y \times 10^4$ for transverse stiffeners

l_x, l_y = net moments of inertia, in cm^4, of the longitudinal or transverse stiffener, including effective width of attached plating according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.14 Effective width of top and lower hatch cover plating 2.14.1. I_x and I_y are to comply with the following criteria:

$$I_x \geq \frac{bt^3}{12 \times 10^4}$$

$$I_y \geq \frac{at^3}{12 \times 10^4}$$

p_z = nominal lateral load, in N/mm^2, of the stiffener due to σ_x, σ_y and τ

p_{zx} = $\frac{t}{b}\left(\sigma_{xl}\left(\frac{\pi b}{a}\right)^2 + 2c_y\sigma_y + \sqrt{2}\tau_1\right)$ for longitudinal stiffeners

p_{zy} = $\frac{t}{a}\left(2c_x\sigma_{x1} + \sigma_y\left(\frac{\pi a}{nb}\right)^2\left(1 + \frac{A_y}{at}\right) + \sqrt{2}\tau_1\right)$ for transverse stiffeners

σ_{xl} = $\sigma_x\left(1 + \frac{A_x}{bt}\right)$

c_x, c_y = factor taking into account the stresses perpendicular to the stiffener's axis and distributed variably along the stiffener's length

= $0.5\ (1\ +\ \psi)$ for $0\ \leq\ \psi\ \leq\ 1$

= $\frac{0.5}{1-\psi}$ for $\psi < 0$

A_x, A_y = net sectional area, in mm^2, of the longitudinal or transverse stiffener, respectively, without attached plating

τ_1 = $\left[\tau - t\sqrt{\sigma_o E\left(\frac{m_1}{a^2} + \frac{m_2}{b^2}\right)}\right] \geq 0$

- for longitudinal stiffeners:
- $\frac{a}{b} \geq 2.0\ : m_1 = 1.47 m_2 = 0.49$
- $\frac{a}{b} < 2.0\ : m_1 = 1.96 m_2 = 0.37$
- for transverse stiffeners:
- $\frac{a}{nb} \geq 0.5\ : m_1 = 0.37 m_2 = \frac{1.96}{n^2}$
- $\frac{a}{nb} < 0.5\ : m_1 = 0.49 m_2 = \frac{1.47}{n^2}$

w = w_0+w_1

w_0 = assumed imperfection, in mm

- $w_{0x} \leq min\left(\frac{a}{250}, \frac{b}{250}, 10\right)$

- $w_{0y} \leq min\left(\frac{a}{250}, \frac{nb}{250}, 10\right)$

NOTE
For stiffeners sniped at both ends, w_0 must not be taken less than the distance from the mid point of plating to the neutral axis of the profile, including effective width of plating.

w_1 = deformation of stiffener, in mm, at midpoint of stiffener span due to lateral load p

In the case of uniformly distributed load, the following values for w_1 may be used:

w_1 = $\frac{pba^4}{384\times10^7 EI_x}$ for longitudinal stiffeners

w_1 = $\frac{5ap(nb)^4}{384\times10^7 EI_y c^2{}_s}$ for transverse stiffeners

c_f = elastic support provided by the stiffener, in N/mm^2

a. For longitudinal stiffeners:

$$c_{fx} = F_{Kix}\frac{\pi^2}{a^2}\left(1 + c_{px}\right)$$

$$c_{px} = \frac{1}{1 + \frac{0.91\left(\frac{12\times10^4 I_x}{t^3 b} - 1\right)}{c_{xa}}}$$

$$c_{xa} = \left(\frac{a}{2b} + \frac{2b}{a}\right)^2 \text{ for a } \geq \text{ 2b}$$

$$c_{xa} = \left(1 + \left(\frac{a}{2b}\right)^2\right)^2 \text{ for a } < \text{ 2b}$$

b. For transverse stiffeners:

$$c_{fy} = c_s F_{Kiy}\frac{\pi^2}{(nb)^2}\left(1 + c_{py}\right)$$

$$c_{py} = \frac{1}{1 + \frac{0.91\left(\frac{12\times10^4 I_y}{t^3 a} - 1\right)}{c_{ya}}}$$

$$c_{ya} = \left(\frac{nb}{2a} + \frac{2a}{nb}\right)^2 \text{ for n b } \geq \text{ 2a}$$

$$c_{ya} = \left(1 + \left(\frac{nb}{2a}\right)^2\right)^2 \text{ for n b } < \text{ 2a}$$

c_s = factor accounting for the boundary conditions of the transverse stiffener

= 1.0 for simply supported stiffeners

= 2.0 for partially constrained stiffeners

Z_{st} = net section modulus of stiffener (longitudinal or transverse), in cm^3, including effective width of plating according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.14 Effective width of top and lower hatch cover plating 2.14.1.

If no lateral load p is acting, the bending stress σ_b is to be calculated at the mid point of the stiffener span for that fibre which results in the largest stress value. If a lateral load p is acting, the stress calculation is to be carried out for both fibres of the stiffener's cross-sectional area (if necessary for the biaxial stress field at the plating side).

2. 16 Torsional buckling of secondary stiffeners

2. 16. 1 The longitudinal secondary stiffeners are to comply with the following criteria:

$$\frac{\sigma_X S}{\kappa_T \sigma_o} \leq 1.0$$

Where

κ_T = coefficient taken equal to:

κ_T = 1.0 for $\lambda_T \leq 0.2$

κ_T = $\frac{1}{\varphi + \sqrt{\varphi^2 - \lambda_T^2}}$ for $\lambda_T > 0.2$

Φ = $0.5(1 + 0.21(\lambda_T - 0.2) + \lambda T^2)$

λ_T = reference degree of slenderness taken equal to:

λ_T = $\sqrt{\frac{\sigma_F}{\sigma_{KiT}}}$

σ_{KiT} = $\frac{E}{I_p}\left(\frac{\pi^2 I_\omega 10^2}{a^2}\varepsilon + 0.385 I_T\right)$, in N/mm^2

For I_p, I_T, I_ω, *See* Figure 11. 2. 7: Dimensions of stiffenerand

l_p = net polar moment of inertia of the stiffener, in cm^4, related to the point *C*

l_T = net St.Venant's moment of inertia of the stiffener, in cm^4

l_w = et sectorial moment of inertia of the stiffener, in cm^6, related to the point *C*

ε = egree of fixation taken equal to:

ε = $1 + 10^{-3}\sqrt{\frac{a^4}{\frac{3}{4}\pi^4 I_\omega \left(\frac{b}{t^3} + \frac{4h_w}{3t^3{}_w}\right)}}$

h_w = web height, in mm

t_w = net web thickness, in mm

b_f = flange breadth, in mm

t_f = net flange thickness, in mm

A_w = net web area equal to: $A_W = h_W t_{yl}$

A_f = net flange area equal to: $A_f = b_f t_f$

e_f = $h_w + \frac{t_f}{2}$, *in mm*

b = stiffener spacing, in mm

t = local net plate thickness of the attached plate, in mm.

Figure 11. 2. 7: Dimensions of stiffener

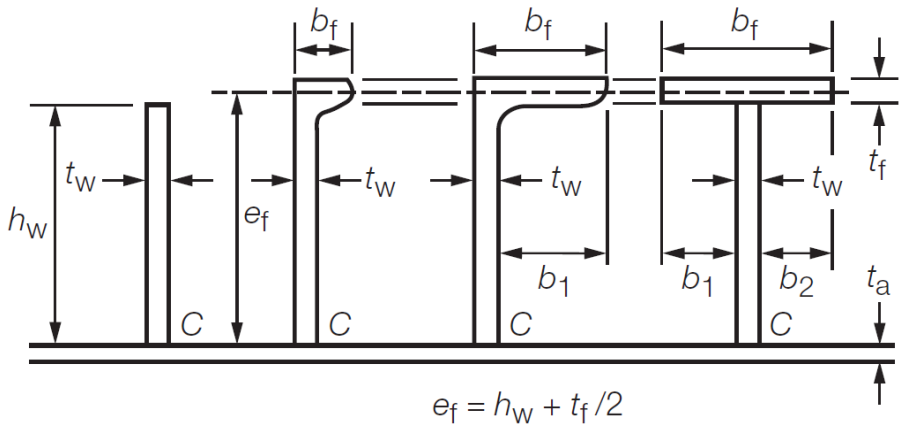


Table 11. 2. 7: Moments of inertia

Section	I_P	I_T	I_ω
Flat bar	$\frac{{h_w}^3 t_w}{3 \times 10^4}$	$\frac{h_w {t_w}^3}{3 \times 10^4}\left(1 - 0.63\frac{t_w}{h_w}\right)$	$\frac{{h_w}^3 {t_w}^3}{36 \times 10^6}$
Sections with bulb or flange	$\left(\frac{A_w {h_w}^2}{3} + A_f e_f^2\right) 10^{-4}$	$\frac{h_w {t_w}^3}{3 \times 10^4}\left(1 - 0.63\frac{t_w}{h_w}\right) + \frac{b_f {t_f}^3}{3 \times 10^4}\left(1 - 0.63\frac{t_f}{b_f}\right)$	for bulb and angle sections: $\frac{A_f^2 e_f^2 b_f^2}{12 \times 10^6}\left(\frac{A_f + 2.6A_w}{A_f + A_w}\right)$ for tee sections: $\frac{b_f^3 t_f^2 e_f^2}{12 \times 10^6}$

2. 16. 2 For transverse secondary stiffeners loaded by compressive stresses and which are not supported by longitudinal stiffeners, sufficient torsional buckling strength is to be demonstrated analogously in accordance with this sub-Section.

2. 17 Pontoon covers

2. 17. 1 The structural assessment of pontoon covers, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 11, 1.1 Application 1.1.5.b, is to be carried out by direct calculations, which are to be submitted for approval, using the minimum design pressures acting on the hatch covers defined in Table 11. 2. 8: Pontoon cover minimum design pressures. The permissible stress, deflection and buckling criteria are given in Table 11. 2. 10: Steel pontoon cover permissible stress, deflection and buckling criteria.

Table 11. 2. 8: Pontoon cover minimum design pressures

For ships of 100 m in length and above:
(a) Position 1 hatch covers located in the forward quarter of the ship's length shall be designed for wave pressures at the forward perpendicular, calculated from the following equation: Minimum design pressure, $p = 49.05 + 9.81(L_H - 100)a$ in kN/m^2 where L_H is L for ships of not more than 340 m but not less than 100 m in length and equal to 340 m for ships of more than 340 m in length: ***a*** = 0.0074 for Type B freeboard ships = 0.0363 Ships assigned reduced freeboard

The pressure, p, is to be reduced linearly to 34.3 kN/m^2 at the end of the forward quarter's length, as shown in Table 11. 2. 9: Summary of pontoon cover minimum design pressures

The design pressure used for each hatch cover panel shall be that determined at its mid point location:

(b) All other position 1 hatch covers shall be designed to 34.3 kN/m^2

(c) Position 2 hatch covers shall be designed to 25.5 kN/m^2

(d) Where a position 1 hatchway is located at least one superstructure standard height higher than the freeboard deck, it may be designed to 34.3 kN/m^2

For ships 24 m in length:

(a) Position 1 hatch covers located in the forward quarter of the ship's length shall be designed for wave pressures of 23.8 kN/m^2 at the forward perpendicular and reduced linearly to 19.6 kN/m^2 at the end of the forward quarter's length, as shown in Table 11. 2. 9: Summary of pontoon cover minimum design pressures. The design pressure used for each hatch cover panel shall be that determined at its mid point location

(b) All other position 1 hatch covers shall be designed to 19.6 kN/m^2

(c) Position 2 hatch covers shall be designed to 14.7 kN/m^2

(d) Where a position 1 hatchway is located at least one superstructure standard height higher than the freeboard deck, it may be designed to 19.6 t/m^2

For ships between 24 m and 100 m in length, and for positions between FP and 0.25L, wave pressures shall be obtained by linear interpolation of the values shown in Table 11. 2. 9: Summary of pontoon cover minimum design pressures

Table 11. 2. 9: Summary of pontoon cover minimum design pressures

Deck location	Longitudinal position		
	FP	0.25L	Aft of 0.25L
L>100 m			
Freeboard deck	Equation given in Table 11. 2. 8: Pontoon cover minimum design pressures	34.3 kN/m^2	34.3 kN/m^2
Superstructure deck	34.3 kN/m^2		25.5 kN/m^2
	L =100 m		
Freeboard deck	49.05 kN/m^2	34.3 kN/m^2	34.3 kN/m^2
Superstructure deck	34.3 kN/m^2		25.5 kN/m^2
	L=24 m		
Freeboard deck	23.84 kN/m^2	19.6 kN/m^2	19.6 kN/m^2
Superstructure deck	19.6 kN/m^2		14.7 kN/m^2

Table 11. 2. 10: Steel pontoon cover permissible stress, deflection and buckling criteria

Location	Permissible bending stress, N/mm^2	Permissible shear stress, N/mm^2	Permissible deflection metres
Weather deck – Positions 1 and 2	0.68 σ_o	0.39 σ_o	0.0044 l_0

Buckling requirements

Symbols

b = length of panel (longer panel dimension), in mm, in transverse direction, *See* Figure 11. 2. 8: Cover with stiffening fitted normal to the axis of primary bending

s = spacing of webs and stiffeners (shorter panel dimension), in mm

t = thickness of plating, in mm

σ_{ac} = corrected critical buckling stress, in N/mm^2

σ_b = the compressive bending stress, in N/mm^2, in the steel cover plating, calculated by taking the cover as a loaded beam simply supported at its ends

σ_c = critical buckling stress of panel, in N/mm^2

σ_o = yield stress of cover plating material, in N/mm^2

σ_c = $18.6R_c\left(\frac{t}{b}\right)^2 \times 10^4 \text{N/mm}^2$

σ_{ac} = $\sigma_o\left(1-\frac{\sigma_o}{4\sigma_c}\right)\text{N/mm}^2$

(a) Where primary bending stress acts on longer panel edge b, *See* Figure 11. 2. 8: Cover with stiffening fitted normal to the axis of primary bending:

$$\frac{\sigma_c}{\sigma_b}\left(\text{or}\frac{\sigma_{ac}}{\sigma_b}\right) \geq 1.3 \quad \text{where } R_c = \left(\frac{s}{b}+\frac{b}{s}\right)^2$$

Where primary bending stress acts on shorter panel edge s:

$$\frac{\sigma_c}{\sigma_b}\left(\text{or}\frac{\sigma_{ac}}{\sigma_b}\right) \geq 1.2 \quad \text{where } R_c = 4\left(\frac{b^2}{s^2}\right)$$

If $\sigma_c > 0.5\ \sigma_o$, then corrected value σ_{ac} is used

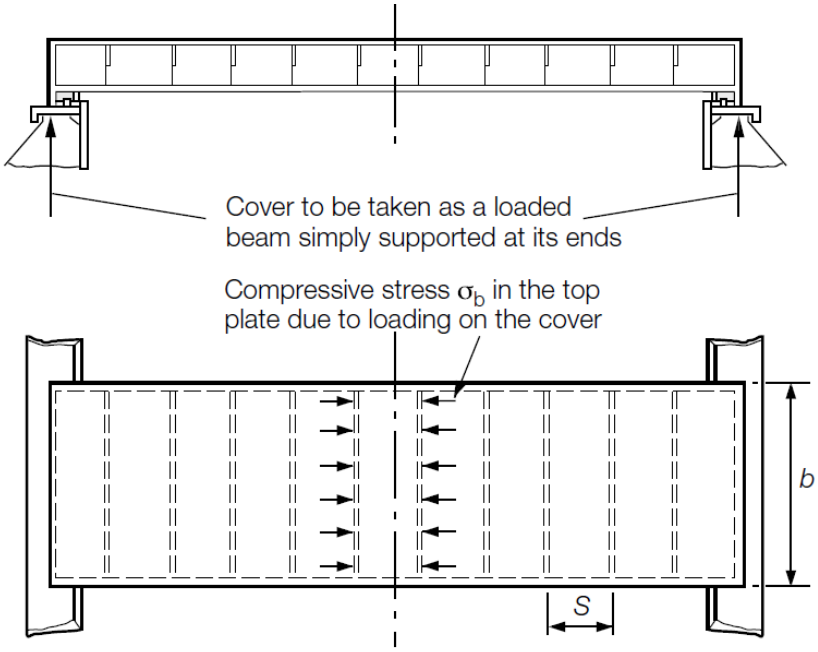
It is recommended that $\frac{b}{s} < 5.0$

(b) Where covers are stiffened in two directions by a grillage formation, buckling checks are to be carried out as per (a) above for bending stresses acting on both the longer and shorter edges of the panel

For the derivation of the section modulus for primary members, an effective width of plating to achieve a balanced section is to be adopted

However, a greater width of plating in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 3, 3.2 Geometric properties of section may be adopted where this is suitably stiffened in the directions being considered from the buckling aspect

Figure 11. 2. 8: Cover with stiffening fitted normal to the axis of primary bending



2. 17. 2 The gross thickness of the plating of steel pontoon covers is to be not less than the greater of:

a. $t = 0.01s$ mm

b. $t = 6.0$ mm as required by Table 11. 2. 8: Pontoon cover minimum design pressures

Where

s = stiffener spacing in mm

t = thickness as required by Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.17 Pontoon covers 2.17.1.

2. 17. 3 The gross scantlings of steel pontoon cover primary and secondary webs or stiffeners are to be not less than would be required to satisfy the requirements of Table 11. 2. 11: Steel pontoon cover webs and stiffeners. Alternatively, scantlings may be determined by direct calculations, which are to be submitted for approval. In no case are the stresses and deflections given in Table 11. 2. 10: Steel pontoon cover permissible stress, deflection and buckling criteria to be exceeded.

Table 11. 2. 11: Steel pontoon cover webs and stiffeners

Symbols	Primary and secondary stiffening requirements

A_s = shear area, in cm^2

K = higher tensile steel factor, *See* Pt 3, Ch 2, 1.2, Steel

K_1 = 1281

I_0 = moment of inertia at mid-span, in cm^4

I_1 moment of inertia at supports, in cm_4

C_1 = 696

where

$$I_1 > 0.05I_0$$

l_0 = unsupported span, in metres, measured as shown in Figure 11. 2. 9: Diagrammatic profile of web or stiffener or portable beam

l_1 = proportion of the span, in metres, measured as shown in Figure 11. 2. 9: Diagrammatic profile of web or stiffener or portable beam. The depth and face area over the remainder of the span is assumed to be constant

p = minimum design pressure, in kN/m^2, acting on the hatch covers as defined in Table 11. 2. 8: Pontoon cover minimum design pressures

Z_0 = section modulus at mid-span, in cm^3

Z_1 = section modulus at supports, in cm^3

$$C_H = 1 + \frac{8\alpha^3{}_H(1-\beta_H)}{0.2+3\sqrt{\beta_H}}$$

$$K_H = 1 + \frac{3.2\alpha_H - \gamma_H - 0.8}{7.0\gamma_H + 0.4}$$

but not less than 1.0. To be specially considered when discontinuities in area of face material occur

$$\alpha_H = \frac{l_1}{l_0}, \quad \beta_H = \frac{I_1}{I_0}, \gamma_H = \frac{Z_1}{Z_0}$$

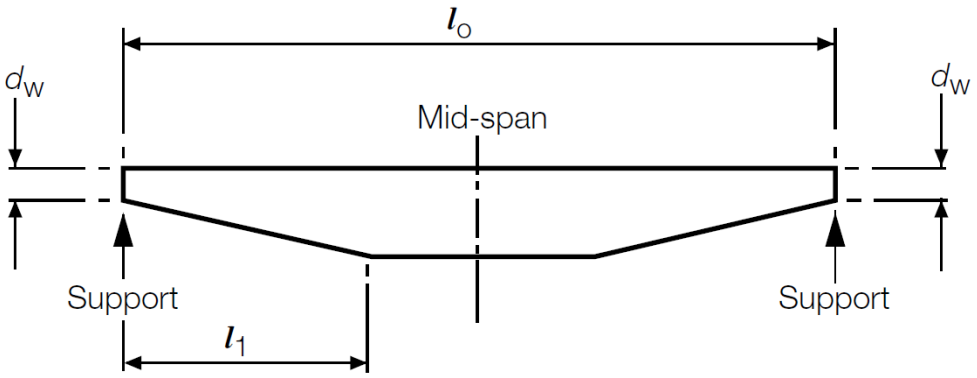
$$Z_0 = \frac{psl^2{}_0 k_H k}{k_1}\,cm^3$$

$$I_0 = \frac{psl^3{}_0 C_H}{C_1}\,cm^4$$

$$A_s = \frac{0.01282psl_0}{\sigma_0}\,cm^2$$

Note Where the ends of the secondary panel stiffeners are effectively bracketed or continuous, the values of modulus and inertia of the secondary panel stiffeners may be reduced respectively by 33% and 80%.

Figure 11. 2. 9: Diagrammatic profile of web or stiffener or portable beam



PART

3

CHAPTER 11 **Closing Arrangements for Shell, Deck and Bulkheads**

SECTION 3 **Hatch beams and wood covers**

3. 1 Portable hatch beams

3. 1. 1 The section modulus and moment of inertia of portable web plate beams stiffened at their upper and lower edges by continuous flat bars are to satisfy the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.17, Pontoon covers for pontoon covers. Alternatively, direct calculations may be used, provided the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.17, Pontoon covers for pontoon covers are complied with.

3. 1. 2 The ends of web plates are to be doubled, or inserts fitted for at least 180 mm along length of web.

3. 1. 3 At beams which carry the ends of wood or steel hatch covers, a vertical 50 mm flat is to be arranged on the upper face plate. The width of bearing surface for hatch covers is to be not less than 65 mm.

3. 1. 4 Carriers or sockets, or other suitable arrangements, of suitable construction are to provide means for the efficient fitting and securing of portable hatch beams. The width of bearing surface is to be not less than 75 mm.

3. 1. 5 Sliding hatch beams are to be provided with an efficient device for locking them in their correct fore and aft positions when the hatchway is closed.

3. 2 Wood covers

3. 2. 1 Wood covers are to have a finished thickness of not less than 60 mm in association with an unsupported span of not more than 1.5 m. Where the 'tween deck height measured vertically on the centreline of the ship from ‘tween deck to underside of the hatch cover stiffeners on deck above, exceeds 2.6 m, the thickness of the wood covers is to be increased at the rate of 16.5 per cent per metre excess in 'tween deck height.

3. 2. 2 The ends of all wood hatch covers are to be protected by encircling galvanised steel bands, about 65 mm wide and 33 mm thick, efficiently secured.

PART

3

CHAPTER 11 **Closing Arrangements for Shell, Deck and Bulkheads**

SECTION 4 **Hatch cover securing arrangements and tarpaulins**

4. 1 Cargo oil tank and adjacent spaces

4. 1. 1 For access hatchways to cargo oil tanks and adjacent spaces, *See* Pt 3, Ch 11, 7 Tanker access arrangements and closing appliances.

4. 2 Steel covers – Clamped and gasketed

4. 2. 1 These requirements, unless stated otherwise, apply to steel hatch covers in Positions 1 and 2 fitted with gaskets and securing devices and situated above dry cargo holds.

4. 2. 2 Where steel hatch covers are fitted to hatch openings on weather decks, the arrangements are to be such that weathertightness can be maintained. A sufficient number of securing devices is to be provided at each side of the hatch cover, considering the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.9 Net scantling of primary supporting members 2.9.4 to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.9 Net scantling of primary supporting members 2.9.6. This applies also to hatch covers consisting of several parts.

4. 2. 3 The weight of the covers and weather loading may be transmitted to the ship's structure by means of continuous steel to steel contact of the cover skirt plate with the ship's structure in association with a maximum bearing pressure of 200 kgf/cm^2. Alternatively the weight may be transmitted by means of defined bearing pads. For covers loaded by containers or other cargo, the total load together with inertial forces generated by the ship's motion, are to be transmitted by means of defined bearing pads only.

4. 2. 4 For the design of the securing devices against shifting, the horizontal mass forces $F_h = m \cdot a$ are to be calculated with the following accelerations:

a_x = 0.2 g in longitudinal direction

a_y = 0.5 g in transverse direction

m = sum of mass of cargo lashed on the hatch cover and mass of hatch cover.

The accelerations in longitudinal direction and in transverse direction do not need to be considered as acting simultaneously.

4. 2. 5 For the transmission of the support forces resulting from the load cases specified in Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.3, Load model and of the horizontal mass forces specified in Pt 3, Ch 11, 4.2 Steel covers – Clamped and gasketed 4.2.4, hatch cover supports are to be provided, which are to be designed such that the nominal surface pressures do not, in general, exceed the following values:

$p_{n\,max}$ = dp_n, in N/mm^2

d = 3.75 – 0.015L

d_{max} = 3.0

d_{min} = 1.0 in general

= 2.0 for partial loading conditions, *See* Pt 4, Ch 8, 11.2 Direct calculations 11.2.5

p_n = *See* Table 11. 4. 1: Permissible nominal surface pressure pn

For metallic supporting surfaces not subjected to relative displacements, the nominal surface pressure applies:

$p_{n\,max}$ = $3p_n$, in N/mm^2

When the maker of vertical hatch cover support material can provide proof that the material is sufficient for the increased surface pressure, not only statically but under dynamic conditions including relative motion for an adequate number of cycles, permissible nominal surface pressure may be specially considered. In this case, realistic long-term distribution of spectra for vertical loads and relative horizontal motion is to be required to be considered.

The supports are to be designed such that the permissible stresses according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.4 Allowable stress and deflection 2.4.1 are not exceeded.

Table 11. 4. 1: Permissible nominal surface pressure p_n

Support material	p_n in N/mm^2 when loaded by	
	Vertical force	Horizontal force (on stoppers)
Hull structural steel	25	40
Hardened steel	35	50
Lower friction materials	50	—

4. 2. 6 Drawings of hatch cover supports which specify the permitted maximum pressure, given by the material manufacturer, must be submitted.

4. 2. 7 Where large relative displacements of the supporting surfaces of hatch cover supports are to be expected, the use of material having low wear and frictional properties is recommended.

4. 2. 8 The substructures of the hatch cover supports must be of such a design that a uniform pressure distribution is achieved. Irrespective of the arrangement of stoppers, the supports must be able to transmit the following force P_h in the longitudinal and transverse direction:

$$P_h = \mu \frac{P_v}{\sqrt{d}}$$

Where

P_v = vertical supporting force

μ = frictional coefficient

= 0.5 in general

For non-metallic, low-friction support materials on steel, the friction coefficient may be reduced, but is not to be less than 0.35. The substructures are to be designed such that the permissible stresses according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.4 Allowable stress and deflection 2.4.1 are not exceeded.

4. 2. 9 For substructures and adjacent structures of supports subjected to horizontal forces P_h, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 11, 4.2 Steel covers − Clamped and gasketed 4.2.8, the fatigue strength is to be considered.

4. 2. 10 Hatch covers are to be sufficiently secured against horizontal shifting. Stoppers are to be provided for hatch covers on which cargo is carried. The greater of the loads resulting from Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.3 Load model 2.3.3 and Pt 3, Ch 11, 4.2 Steel covers − Clamped and gasketed 4.2.4 is to be applied for the dimensioning of the stoppers and their substructures. The permissible stress in stoppers and their substructures in the cover and in the coamings is to be determined according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.4 Allowable stress and deflection 2.4.1. In addition, the provisions in Pt 3, Ch 11, 4.2 Steel covers − Clamped and gasketed 4.2.5 are to be observed.

4. 2. 11 The sealing is to be obtained by a continuous gasket of relatively soft elastic material compressed to achieve the necessary weathertightness. Similar sealing is to be arranged between cross-joint elements. Where fitted, compression flat bars or angles are to be well rounded where in contact with the gasket and are to be made of a corrosion-restraint material or suitably protected against corrosion.

4. 2. 12 Special consideration is to be given to the gasket and securing arrangements in ships with large relative movements between cover and ship structure or between cover elements. The relative horizontal and vertical deflections are to be calculated and submitted with the hatch cover plans. Where applicable, deflections due to thermal effects and internal pressure loads are also to be included.

4. 2. 13 The suitability of the gasket material and the securing adhesive is the responsibility of the Builder and Owner. When selecting such material, consideration is to be given to its suitability for the environmental conditions likely to be experienced by the ship and its compatibility with the cargo carried. The material and form of gasket selected is to be considered in conjunction with the type of cover, the securing arrangement and the expected relative movement between cover and ship structure. The gasket is to be effectively secured to the cover.

4. 2. 14 Drainage is to be arranged inside the line of gasket by means of a gutter bar or vertical extension of the hatch side and end coaming; drain openings are to be provided at appropriate positions on the drain channels. This requirement need not be complied with for special ships carrying container cargoes when the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 8, 11 Hatch coversare satisfied.

4. 2. 15 Where the arrangement includes continuous steel to steel contact between hatch cover and coaming or between hatch cover and ship structure or at cross-joints, drainage on both sides of the gasket is to be provided.

4. 2. 16 Drain openings are to be arranged at the ends of drain channels and are to be provided with non-return valves for preventing ingress of water from outside.

The following requirements are to be complied with:

a. If manufactured from steel, the minimum drain pipe wall thickness is to be not less than 4.5 mm.
b. If not manufactured from steel, details of the drain, including the material specification, method of manufacture and details of any tests carried out, are to be submitted for consideration.
c. The drains are to be securely attached to the hatch coaming and adequately protected if in an exposed position.
d. When the drain is fitted to a hold also designed to carry liquids, a shut-off valve is to be incorporated into the assembly.
e. Drain openings in hatch coamings are to be arranged with sufficient distance to areas of stress concentration (e.g. hatch corners, transitions to crane posts).

4. 2. 17 Panel hatch covers are to be secured by appropriate devices (bolts, wedges or similar) suitably spaced alongside the coamings. The securing devices are not to have a vertical clearance but are to be pre-tensioned when the cover is in the closed position. The devices are also to be arranged

in close proximity horizontally to the gasket. Arrangement and spacing are to be determined with due attention to the effectiveness for weathertightness, depending upon the type and the size of the hatch cover, as well as on the stiffness of the cover edges between the securing devices. A minimum of two securing devices for each side of a panel are to be fitted. The securing devices should be arranged as close to the panel corners as is practicable.

4. 2. 18 Between cover and coaming and at cross-joints, a gasket pressure sufficient to obtain weathertightness is to be maintained by the securing devices. This pressure is to be specified. Securing devices of a design other than rod or bolts will be specially considered, *See* Pt 3, Ch 11, 4.2 Steel covers − Clamped and gasketed 4.2.26.

4. 2. 19 The net sectional area of each securing device is to be not less than:

$$A = \frac{1.4 S_1 W_1}{50 f} \text{ cm}^2$$

Where

f = $\left(\frac{\sigma_c}{235}\right)^e$

S_1 = spacing between securing devices, in metres, not to exceed 6 m and not to be taken less than 2 m

W_1 = the gasket loading per unit length, in N/cm, but not less than 50 N/cm

σ_c = specified minimum upper yield stress in N/mm^2 of the steel used for cleats or securing devices, to be taken not greater than 70 per cent of the ultimate tensile strength

^{e} = 0.75 for $\sigma_c \geq 235$

= 1.0 for $\sigma_c < 235$.

4. 2. 20 Rods or bolts are to have a gross diameter not less than 19 mm for hatchways exceeding 5 m^2 in area.

4. 2. 21 In order to ensure compression between gasket and compression bar along the full length, the cover edge stiffness is to be examined. The inertia of the cover edge is to be not less than:

I_E = $0.6 W_1 S_1^4$ cm^4

where W_1 and S_1 are as defined in Pt 3, Ch 11, 4.2 Steel covers − Clamped and gasketed 4.2.12.

4. 2. 22 Securing devices are to be constructed of reliable design and securely attached to the hatchway coamings, decks or covers. Individual securing devices on each cover are to have approximately the same stiffness characteristics.

4. 2. 23 Where rod cleats are fitted, resilient washers or cushions are to be incorporated.

4. 2. 24 Where hydraulic cleating is adopted, a positive means is to be provided to ensure that it remains mechanically locked in the closed position in the event of failure of the hydraulic system.

4. 2. 25 The cross-joints of multi-panel covers are to be arranged with wedges, or locators (male and female) to retain the hatch covers in the correct sealing position, the number and spacing is to be arranged to suit the size and type of cover, gasket arrangements and stiffness of cover edges at cross-joints. Means are also to be provided to prevent excessive relative vertical deflections between loaded and unloaded panels. The arrangement of the gasket retaining angle and the compression bar at the cross-joints is to be such that the gasket compression is maintained between loaded and unloaded panels.

4. 2. 26 In addition to the requirements given above, all hatch covers, especially those carrying deck cargo are to be effectively secured against horizontal shifting due to the horizontal forces arising from the ship motions.

4. 2. 27 To prevent damage to hatch covers and ship structure, the location of stoppers is to be compatible with the relative movements between hatch covers and ship structure. The number should be as small as practically possible.

4. 2. 28 Towards the ends of the ship, vertical acceleration forces may exceed gravity forces. The resulting lifting forces must therefore be also considered when dimensioning the securing devices. Also lifting forces from cargo secured on the hatch cover during rolling are to be taken into account.

4. 2. 29 Hatch coamings and supporting structure are to be adequately stiffened to accommodate the loading from hatch covers and cargo carried thereon.

4. 2. 30 Upon completion of installation of hatch covers, a hose test with a pressure of water as specified in Table 1. 9. 1: Testing requirements in Chapter 1 is to be carried out. Alternative methods of tightness testing will be considered. This does not apply to covers with reduced securing arrangements as specified in Pt 4, Ch 8, 11 Hatch covers.

4. 2. 31 All hatch covers are to be tested to prove satisfactory operation.

4. 2. 32 It is recommended that ships with steel hatch covers are supplied with an operation and maintenance manual including:

a. opening and closing instructions;
b. maintenance requirements and specifications for packings, securing devices and operating items;
c. cleaning instructions for the drainage system;
d. corrosion prevention instructions;
e. list of spare parts.

4. 2. 33 The spacing and size of securing devices in hatch covers for holds which may be flooded and used for ballast tanks and holds in OBO, ore or oil and similar types of ship are to correspond to the reaction forces at the cover edges found by calculation. The loading is to be as required by Pt 4, Ch 7, 12.4 Load model 12.4.1.c.

The permissible stress in the securing devices is not to exceed the following:

$\sigma_e = 0.9 \times 235 f \mathrm{N/mm^2}$

= Where

f = material factor as defined in Pt 3, Ch 11, 4.2 Steel covers – Clamped and gasketed 4.2.19

σ = bending stress in $\mathrm{N/mm^2}$

σ_e = equivalent stress, in $\mathrm{N/mm^2}$

= $\sqrt{(\sigma^2 + 3\tau^2)}$

τ = shear stress in $\mathrm{N/mm^2}$

4. 2. 34 On tank hatch covers in 'tween decks the maximum spacing of cleats is to be 600 mm, but cleats are to be arranged as close to the corners as practicable.

4. 2. 35 Steel hatch covers with special sealing arrangements, insulated covers, flush hatch covers, and covers having coamings less than required by Pt 3, Ch 11, 5.1, General, will be specially considered.

4. 2. 36 The material and weld specifications of stoppers and securing devices are to be shown in the drawings of the hatch covers.

4. 2. 37 Securing devices of special design in which significant bending or shear stresses occur may be designed as anti-lifting devices according to Pt 4, Ch 8, 11.2 Direct calculations 11.2.6. The packing line pressure, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 11, 4.2 Steel covers − Clamped and gasketed 4.2.12, multiplied by the spacing between securing devices, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 11, 4.2 Steel covers − Clamped and gasketed 4.2.12, is to be applied as design load.

4. 3 Portable covers − Tarpaulins and battening devices

4. 3. 1 At least two layers of tarpaulin in good condition are to be provided for each hatchway in Positions 1 and 2.

4. 3. 2 Tarpaulins are to be free from jute, waterproof and of ample strength. The minimum mass of the material before treatment is to be 0.65 kg/m^2 if the material is to be tarred, 0.60 kg/m^2 if to be chemically dressed, or 0.55 kg/m^2 if to be dressed with black oil. A certificate to this effect is to be supplied by the makers of the tarpaulins. Special consideration will be given to the use of synthetic materials for tarpaulins.

4. 3. 3 Cleats are to be of an approved pattern, at least 65 mm wide, with edges so rounded as to minimise damage to the wedges, and are to be spaced not more than 600 mm from centre to centre: the first and last cleats along each side or end are to be not more than 150 mm from the hatch corners. Cleats should be so set as to fit the taper of the wedges.

4. 3. 4 Battens and wedges shall be efficient and in good condition. Wedges are to be of tough wood, generally not more than 200 mm in length and 50 mm in width. They should have a taper of not more than 1 in 6 and should not be less than 13 mm at the point.

4. 3. 5 For all hatchways in Positions 1 and 2, steel bars or other equivalent means are to be provided in order to secure each section of hatch covers efficiently and independently after the tarpaulins are battened down. Hatch covers of more than 1.5 m in length are to be secured by at least two such securing appliances. Where hatchway covers extend over intermediate supports, steel bars or their equivalent are to be fitted at each end of each section of covers. At all other hatchways in exposed positions on weather decks, ring bolts or other fittings suitable for lashings are to be provided.

4. 4 Packing material

4. 4. 1 Packing material is to be suitable for all expected service conditions of the ship and is to be compatible with the cargoes to be transported. The packing material is to be selected with regard to dimensions and elasticity in such a way that expected deformations can be carried. Forces are to be carried by the steel structure only.

4. 4. 2 Packing material is to be compressed so as to give the necessary tightness effect for all expected operating conditions. Special consideration will be given to the packing arrangement in ships with large relative movements between hatch covers and coamings or between hatch cover sections.

PART

3

CHAPTER 11 **Closing Arrangements for Shell, Deck and Bulkheads**

SECTION 5 **Hatch coamings**

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 The height of coamings above the upper surface of the deck, measured above sheathing if fitted, for hatchways closed by portable covers secured weathertight by tarpaulins and battening devices, is to be not less than:

- 600 mm at Position 1,
- 450 mm at Position 2.

5. 1. 2 Where hatches in locations above Position 2 are included in the consideration of intact and damage stability or are in critical locations above Position 2, then the height of hatch coamings is to be specially considered.

5. 1. 3 The height of coamings of hatchways situated in Positions 1 and 2 closed by steel covers fitted with gaskets and clamping devices are to be as specified in Pt 3, Ch 11, 5.1 General 5.1.1, but may be reduced, or the coamings may be omitted entirely, if the safety of the ship is not thereby impaired in any sea condition. Special attention will be given in such cases to the scantlings of the covers, to their gasketing and securing arrangements and to the drainage of recesses in the deck. The agreement of the National Authority concerned will also be required.

5. 1. 4 The height of coamings may be required to be increased on ships of Type `B-100' or Type `B-60' where this is shown to be necessary by the floatability calculations required by the *International Convention on Load Lines, 1966.*

5. 2 Construction

5. 2. 1 Vertical cargo hatch coamings 600 mm or more in height are to be stiffened on their upper edges by a horizontal bulb flat or equivalent which is to be not less than 180 mm in width for ships where L is greater than 75 m. Additional support is to be afforded by fitting brackets or stays from the bulb flat to the deck at intervals of not more than 3 m. Each bracket or stay is to be aligned with suitable underdeck stiffeners and is to have a softened nose.

5. 2. 2 Vertical coamings less than 600 mm in height are to be stiffened at their upper edge by a substantial rolled or fabricated section. Additional support is to be arranged as required by Pt 3, Ch 11, 5.2 Construction 5.2.2.

5. 2. 3 Cargo hatchways on other decks, in positions not specified in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.6 Position 1 and Position 2, are to be suitably framed.

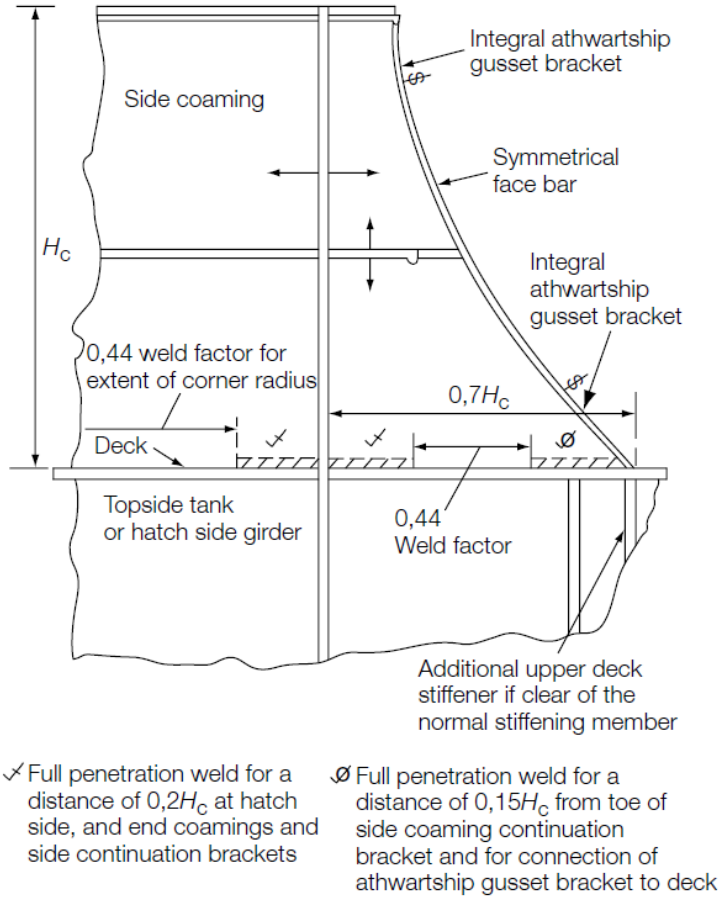
5. 2. 4 The scantlings and arrangements of hatch coamings acting as girders will be specially considered. The coamings are to be arranged with intermediate continuous horizontal stiffeners supported by the bracket stays.

5. 2. 5 Sloped cargo hatch coamings will be specially considered. In general, the sloped coaming arrangement is to be restricted to the hatch side coamings with vertical coamings at the ends. The sloped coaming is not to have a knuckle and the angle to the vertical is not to exceed 30°. The scantlings are to be in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 11, 5.2 Construction 5.2.1, Pt 3, Ch 11, 5.2 Construction 5.2.2 and Pt 3, Ch 11, 5.3 Strength criteria, except that the end coamings are to be increased by 20 per cent for a distance of $0.15b$ from the side coamings where b is the width of the hatchway at the deck. Particular care is to be taken where the proposed loadings exceed those given in Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.3, Load model and Pt 3, Ch 3, 5 Design loading, and where the coamings are not in alignment with the topside tank vertical strake in bulk carriers.

5. 2. 6 A radiused coaming plate at the corner junction of the longitudinal and transverse cargo hatch coamings is acceptable for ships where $L \leq 90$ m and the heights of coamings are not in excess of that specified in Pt 3, Ch 11, 5.1 General 5.1.1. Where $L > 90$ m the corner junctions are to be rectangular and arranged with continuation brackets as required by Pt 3, Ch 11, 5.2 Construction 5.2.8.

5. 2. 7 The deck plating is to extend inside the coamings and the side coamings are to be extended in the form of tapered brackets. A recommended arrangement is shown in Figure 11. 5. 1: Coaming continuation bracket - Recommended arrangement. Continuation brackets are also to be arranged athwartships in line with the hatch end coamings and the under deck transverse. In bulk carriers the athwartship brackets, in conjunction with the hatch end beams should be arranged to achieve a satisfactory overlap with the top side tank transverses. In cases where the hatch end beam is formed by the transverse bulkhead top stool the horizontal knuckle of the stool should be arranged well clear of the topside tank knuckle line.

Figure 11. 5. 1: Coaming continuation bracket - Recommended arrangement



5. 2. 8 In bulk carriers where the hatch side coaming does not align with the topside tank vertical strake the arrangement and scantlings will be specially considered. In general, suitable underdeck girders and cantilever brackets are to be arranged taking into consideration the hatch cover loading. The underdeck girders are to continue beyond the hatch end for a distance of $2H_c$ mm. Alternative arrangements incorporating bulkhead top stool structure or cross-deck structure will be considered.

5. 2. 9 Extension brackets or rails arranged approximately in line with the cargo hatch side coamings and intended for the stowage of steel covers are not to be welded to a deckhouse, masthouse or to each other unless they form part of the longitudinal strength members.

5. 2. 10 The arrangement and scantlings of continuous hatchway coamings on the strength deck will be specially considered. The material of the coamings is to comply with Table 2. 2. 1: Material classes and grades and Table 2. 2. 2: Steel grades in Pt 3, Ch 2 Materials and is to be of the same strength level as the deck plating. Discontinuous coamings of length greater than $0.09L$ are also to satisfy this requirement.

5. 2. 11 Where containers are carried on multi-panel hatch covers, the hatch coaming in way of the loaded panel will be required to be reinforced to resist the lateral loads imposed on the coaming due to rolling of the ship. Thrust blocks are to be fitted on the coaming rest bar to prevent the covers from moving. Where one-piece hatch covers are fitted with locating devices, the coamings are to be reinforced in way of the locators.

5. 2. 12 Cut outs in the top of hatch coamings are to be avoided. Where these are necessary for the securing devices they are to be circular or elliptical in shape. Also any local reinforcements should be given a tapered transition in the longitudinal direction with a taper the rate of which should not exceed 1 in 3. Cut-outs and drain holes are to be avoided in the hatch side coaming continuation brackets. Where these are necessary the size, shape and position will be specially considered.

5. 2. 13 Material for hatch coamings is to be steel, according to the requirements for ship's hull. Alternative materials will be subject to special consideration.

5. 2. 14 Secondary stiffeners of hatch coamings are to be continuous over the breadth and length of hatch coamings.

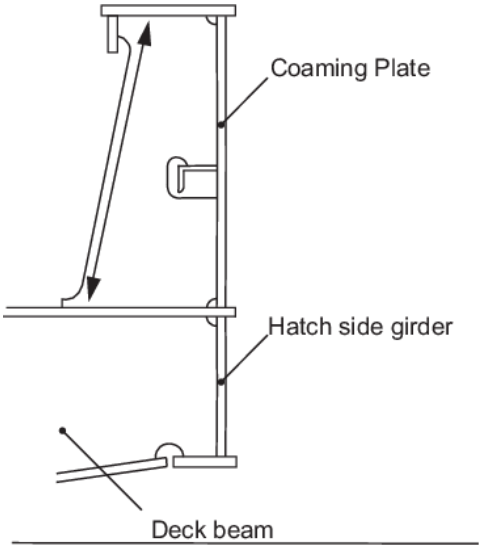
5. 2. 15 Longitudinal hatch coamings with a length exceeding $0.1L$ m are to be provided with tapered brackets or equivalent transitions and a corresponding substructure at both ends. At the end of the brackets they are to be connected to the deck by full penetration welds of minimum 300 mm in length.

5. 2. 16 Hatch coamings and supporting structures are to be adequately stiffened to accommodate the loading from hatch covers, in longitudinal, transverse and vertical directions. Structures under deck are to be checked against the load transmitted by coaming stays.

5. 2. 17 On ships carrying cargo on deck, such as timber, coal or coke, coaming stays are to be spaced not more than 1.5 m apart.

5. 2. 18 Coaming plates are to extend to the lower edge of the deck beams; they or hatch side girders are to be fitted that extend to the lower edge of the deck beams. Extended coaming plates and hatch side girders are to be flanged or fitted with face bars or half-round bars. Figure 11. 5. 2: Example of hatch side girder and Figure 11. 5. 3: Example of coaming stays give examples.

Figure 11. 5. 2: Example of hatch side girder



5. 3 Strength criteria

5. 3. 1 The strength requirements in this Section are applicable to hatch coamings of stiffened plate construction.

5. 3. 2 The local net plate thickness of weather deck hatch coamings is not to be less than the larger of the following values:

$$t = 0.0142s\sqrt{\frac{P_A}{0.95\sigma_0}}\ in\ mm$$

$$t_{min} = 6 + \frac{L_1}{100}\ in\ mm$$

Where

s = stiffener spacing, in mm

L_1 = L need not be taken greater than 300 metres

p_A = pressure, in kN/m^2, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.3 Load model 2.3.3

= Longitudinal strength aspects are to be observed.

5. 3. 3 Secondary stiffeners of coamings must be continuous at the coaming stays. For stiffeners with both ends constrained, the elastic net section modulus Z in cm^3 and net shear area A_s in cm^2, calculated on the basis of net thickness, are not to be less than:

$$Z = \frac{0.083}{\sigma_0} s l^2 p_A cm^3$$

$$A_s = \frac{0.01 s l p_A}{\sigma_0} cm^2$$

Where

l = secondary stiffener span, in metres, to be taken as the spacing of coaming stays

s = stiffener spacing in mm

p_A = pressure, in kN/m^2, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.3 Load model 2.3.3.

5. 3. 4 For sniped stiffeners at coaming corners, section modulus and shear area at the fixed support are to be increased by 35 per cent. The gross thickness of the coaming plate at the sniped stiffener end is not to be less than:

$$t = 19.6\sqrt{\frac{0.001sp_A(l - 0.0005s)}{\sigma_o}} \text{ in mm}$$

Where

p_A = pressure, in kN/m^2, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.3 Load model 2.3.3.

5. 3. 5 Coaming stays are to be designed for the loads transmitted through them, and permissible stresses according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.4 Allowable stress and deflection 2.4.1.

5. 3. 6 At the connection with deck, the net section modulus Z, in cm^3, and the gross thickness t_w, in mm, of the coaming stays designed as beams with flange (examples 1 and 2 are shown in Figure 11. 5. 3: Example of coaming stays) are to be taken not less than:

$$Z = \frac{526}{\sigma_o} e h_s{}^2 p_A \text{ in cm}^3$$

and

$$t_w = \frac{2}{\sigma_o}\frac{e h_s p_A}{h_w} + t_c \text{ in mm}$$

where e = spacing of coaming stays, in metres

h_s = height of coaming stays, in metres

h_w = web height of coaming stay at its lower end, in metres

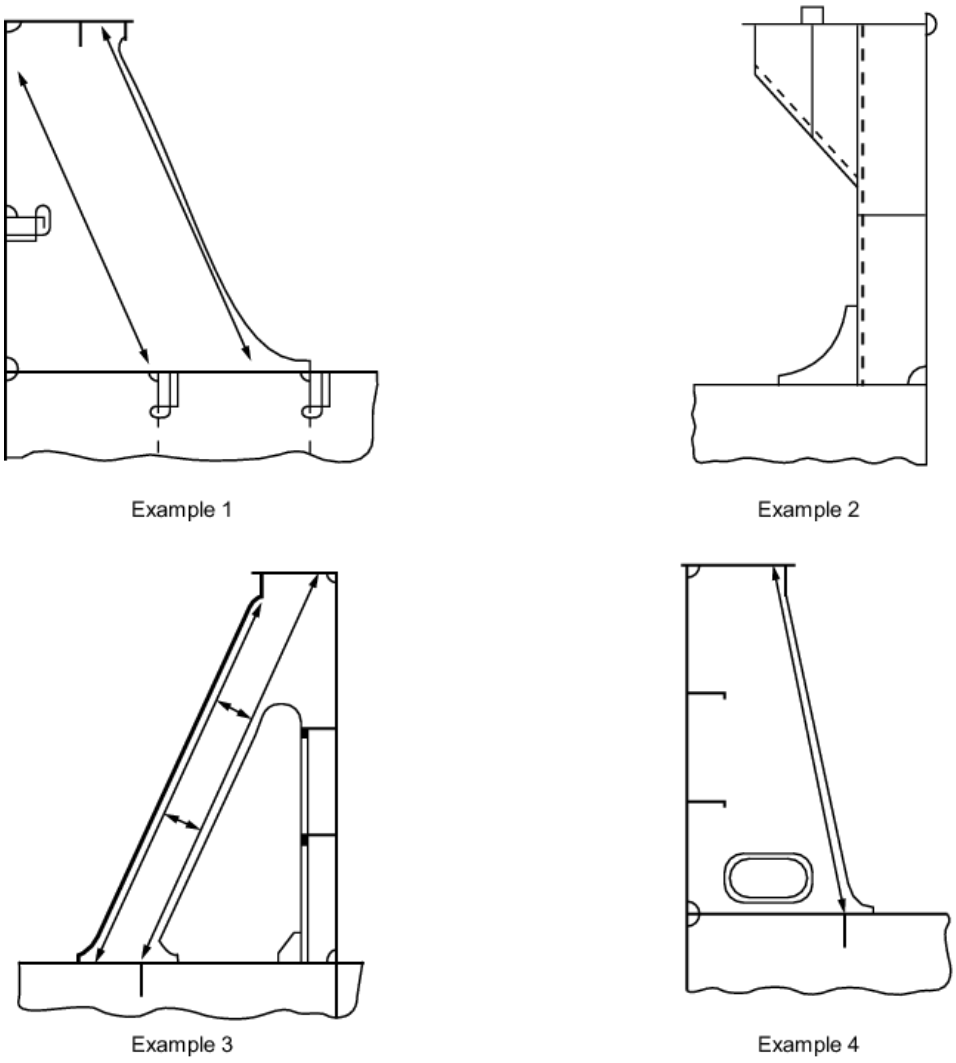
t_c = corrosion addition, in mm, according to Table 11. 1. 2: Corrosion addition tc

p_A = pressure, in kN/m^2, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.3 Load model 2.3.3.

σ_o = minimum yield stress, in N/mm^2.

5. 3. 7 For other designs of coaming stays, such as those shown in examples 3 and 4 in Figure 11. 5. 3: Example of coaming stays, the stresses are to be determined through FEM. The calculated stresses are to comply with the permissible stresses according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.6 Local plate thickness of hatch covers for wheel loading and helicopter landing.

Figure 11. 5. 3: Example of coaming stays



5. 3. 8 Coaming stays are to be supported by appropriate substructures. Face-plates may be included in the calculation only if an appropriate substructure is provided and welding ensures an adequate joint.

5. 3. 9 Webs of coaming stays are to be connected to the deck by fillet welds on both sides with a throat thickness of $a = 0.44t_w$.

5. 3. 10 For coaming stays which transfer friction forces at hatch cover supports, fatigue strength is to be considered, *See* Pt 3, Ch 11, 4.2 Steel covers − Clamped and gasketed 4.2.5 to Pt 3, Ch 11, 4.2 Steel covers − Clamped and gasketed 4.2.8.

5. 3. 11 Hatch coamings which are part of the longitudinal hull structure are to be designed according to the requirements for longitudinal strength in Pt 3, Ch 4 Longitudinal Strength.

5. 3. 12 For structural members welded to coamings and for cut-outs in the top of coamings, sufficient fatigue strength is to be verified.

5. 4 Rest bars in hatchways

5. 4. 1 Rest bars are to provide at least 65 mm bearing surface and are to be aligned if required to suit the slope of the hatches.

5. 5 Loading in excess of Rule requirements

5. 5. 1 For weather deck hatch side coamings forming part of a hatch side girder subjected to loading exceeding that defined in Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.3, Load model, *See* Pt 4, Ch 1, 4 Deck structure.

PART

3

CHAPTER 11 **Closing Arrangements for Shell, Deck and Bulkheads**

SECTION 6 **Miscellaneous openings**

6. 1 Small hatchways on exposed decks

6. 1. 1 Hatches which:

- are designed for access to spaces below the deck;
- are capable of being closed weathertight or watertight, as applicable;
- have an opening 2.5 m^2 or less;
- are located on the exposed deck over the forward 0.25*L* of the ship's rule length;
- are on a ship of sea-going service of length 80 m or more, where the height of the exposed deck in way of the hatch is less than 0.1*L* or 22 m above the summer load waterline, whichever is the lesser;

are to comply with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 11, 6.6, Small hatchways on exposed fore decks. All other small hatchways or access openings in the positions defined in Pt 3, Ch 11, 1.1 Application 1.1.6 are to comply with the following requirements.

6. 1. 2 The number and size of hatchways and other access openings are to be kept to the minimum consistent with the satisfactory operation of the ship.

6. 1. 3 The height of coamings is to be in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 11, 5.1 General 5.1.1. Lower heights may be considered in relation to operational requirements and the nature of the spaces to which access is given.

6. 1. 4 Rope hatches may be accepted with reduced coamings, but generally not less than 380 mm, provided they are well secured and closed before the ship leaves port. A suitable notice is to be displayed at the hatch stating that it is to be closed whilst the ship is at sea.

6. 1. 5 The thickness of the coamings is to be not less than the Rule minimum thickness for the deck inside line of openings for that position, or 11 mm, whichever is the lesser. Stiffening of the coaming is to be appropriate to its length and height.

6. 1. 6 Hatch covers are to be of steel, weathertight and generally hinged. The means of securing are to be such that weathertightness can be maintained in any sea condition. Where toggles are fitted, their diameter and spacing are to be in accordance with ISO Standard or equivalent.

6. 1. 7 Hinges are not to be used as securing devices unless specially considered.

6. 1. 8 The thickness of covers is to be not less than the Rule minimum thickness inside the line of openings for the deck at that point, or 8 mm, whichever is the lesser.

6. 1. 9 The covers are to be adequately stiffened.

6. 1. 10 To facilitate a swift and safe means of escape to the lifeboat and life raft embarkation deck, the following provisions apply to overhead hatches fitted along the escape routes addressed by SOLAS *Regulation 13 - Means of escape*:

a. escape hatches and their securing devices shall be of a type which can be opened from both sides;

b. the maximum force needed to open the hatch cover should not exceed 150 N; and

c. the use of a spring equalising, counterbalance or other suitable device on the hinge side to reduce the force needed for opening is acceptable.

6. 1. 11 Small hatches, including escape hatches, are to be situated clear of cargo containment areas, particularly in the case of offshore supply ships.

6. 1. 12 Where portable plates are required in decks for unshipping machinery, or for other similar reasons, they may be accepted provided they are of equivalent strength to the unpierced deck and are secured by gaskets and closely spaced bolts at a pitch not exceeding five diameters.

6. 1. 13 Satisfactory means are to be provided to prevent inadvertent flooding of chain lockers. *See* Pt 3, Ch 13, 8.12 Structural requirements associated with anchoring 8.12.5 and Pt 3, Ch 13, 8.12 Structural requirements associated with anchoring 8.12.7.

6. 1. 14 Where permitted by the National Authority, access hatch coaming heights may be reduced on ships engaged on protected or extended protected water service. Coaming heights are to be as high as practicable with a minimum height of 230 mm.

6. 2 Manholes and flush scuttles

6. 2. 1 Manholes and flush scuttles fitted in Positions 1 and 2, or within superstructures other than enclosed superstructures, are to be closed by substantial covers capable of being made watertight. Unless secured by closely spaced bolts, the covers are to be permanently attached.

6. 3 Hatchways within enclosed superstructures or 'tween decks

6. 3. 1 The requirements of Pt 3, Ch 11, 6.1, Small hatchways on exposed decks are to be complied with where applicable.

6. 3. 2 Access hatches within a superstructure or deckhouse in Position 1 or 2 need not be provided with means for closing if all openings in the surrounding bulkheads have weathertight closing appliances.

6. 4 Companionways, doors and accesses on weather decks

6. 4. 1 Companionways on exposed decks are to be of equivalent construction, weathertightness and strength to a deckhouse in the same position and effectively secured to the deck.

6. 4. 2 Access openings in:

a. bulkheads at ends of enclosed superstructures;

b. deckhouses or companionways protecting openings leading into enclosed superstructures or to spaces below the freeboard deck; and

c. deckhouse on a deckhouse protecting an opening leading to a space below the freeboard deck

are to be fitted with doors of steel or other equivalent material, permanently and strongly attached to the bulkhead and framed, stiffened and fitted so that the whole structure is of equivalent strength to the unpierced bulkhead, and weathertight when closed. The doors are to be gasketed and secured weathertight by means of clamping devices or equivalent arrangements, permanently attached to the bulkhead or to the door. Doors are generally to open outwards and are to be capable of being operated and secured from both sides. The sill heights are to be as required by Pt 3, Ch 11, 6.4

Companionways, doors and accesses on weather decks 6.4.6. *See also* Pt 3, Ch 11, 7 Tanker access arrangements and closing appliances and Pt 4, Ch 9, 13 Access arrangements and closing appliances and Pt 4, Ch 11, 1 General and the Rules for Ships for Liquid Chemicals, concerning access openings in tankers, chemical tankers and ore or oil ships. Double doors are to be equivalent in strength to the unpierced bulkhead, and in Position 1, a centre pillar is to be provided which may be portable.

6. 4. 3 Elsewhere doors may be of hardwood not less than 50 mm in thickness or of equivalent material and strength.

6. 4. 4 Fixed lights in doors are to comply with the requirements for side scuttles as given in Pt 3, Ch 11, 6.5 Side scuttles, windows and skylights 6.5.1 and Pt 3, Ch 11, 6.5 Side scuttles, windows and skylights 6.5.2. Hinged steel deadlights may be external.

6. 4. 5 The height of doorway sills above deck sheathing of access openings in bulkheads at ends of enclosed superstructures is to be not less than 600mm in Position 1 and not less than 380mm otherwise.

6. 4. 6 The height of doorway sills above deck sheathing, if fitted, is to be not less than 600 mm in Position 1, and not less than 380 mm in Position 2.

6. 4. 7 Where access is provided from the deck above as an alternative to access from the freeboard deck, the height of sill into a bridge or a poop is to be not less than 380 mm. The same requirement applies to deckhouses on the freeboard deck. The sill height for doorways in a forecastle, if protecting a companionway, is to be 600 mm regardless of whether or not access is provided from above. If not protecting a companionway, the sill height may be 380 mm.

6. 4. 8 When the closing appliances of openings in superstructures and deckhouses do not comply with Pt 3, Ch 11, 6.4 Companionways, doors and accesses on weather decks 6.4.2, interior deck openings are to be treated as if exposed on the weather deck.

6. 4. 9 Where an access opening, in the top of a deckhouse situated on a raised quarterdeck, gives access below the freeboard deck or to an enclosed superstructure, the closing appliances in the surrounding bulkheads are not required to be gasketed, provided the raised quarterdeck is at least standard height, and the deckhouse is at least standard superstructure height.

6. 4. 10 The height of door sills may be required to be increased on ships of Type `A', Type `B-100' or Type `B-60' where this is shown to be necessary by the floatability calculations required by the *International Convention on Load Lines, 1966.*

6. 4. 11 Where doors in locations above Position 2 are included in the consideration of intact and damage stability or are in critical locations above Position 2, then the height of door sills is to be specially considered.

6. 4. 12 Direct access from the freeboard deck to the machinery space through exposed casings is not permitted on ships of Type `A', Type `B-100' or Type `B-60'. A door complying with Pt 3, Ch 11, 6.4 Companionways, doors and accesses on weather decks 6.4.2 may, however, be fitted in an exposed machinery casing on these ships, provided that it leads to a space or passageway which is of equivalent strength to the casing and is separated from the machinery space by a second weathertight door complying with Pt 3, Ch 11, 6.4 Companionways, doors and accesses on weather decks 6.4.2. The outer and inner weathertight doors are to have sill heights of not less than 600 mm and 230 mm, respectively and the space between is to be adequately drained by means of a screw plug or equivalent.

6. 4. 13 For a Type `A' ship with freeboards assigned greater than, or equal to, Type `B', inner doors are not required for direct access to the engine-room.

6. 4. 14 If internal access is provided from a wheelhouse in Position 2, or below, to spaces below the weather deck either directly or through other spaces, the opening should be protected by a hinged weathertight cover adequately secured, fitted on a coaming appropriate to its position, or by an equivalent arrangement, and the space adequately drained.

6. 4. 15 In way of a moonpool, where a working or platform deck is provided below the weather deck, openings in the surrounding bulkheads are to be kept to a minimum. Access or companionway openings are to be provided with weathertight closing appliances as for an exposed superstructure bulkhead, with 600 mm high coamings.

6. 4. 16 Where portable plates are required in casings for unshipping machinery, or for other similar reasons, they may be accepted provided they are of equivalent strength to the unpierced bulkhead and are secured by gaskets and close spaced bolts at a pitch not exceeding five diameters.

6. 4. 17 The sill heights of accesses closed by covers which are secured by closely spaced bolts or otherwise kept permanently closed at sea will be specially considered.

6. 4. 18 Where permitted by the National Authority, companionway coaming heights may be reduced on ships engaged on protected or extended protected water service. Coaming heights are to be as high as practicable with a minimum height of 230 mm. Where the wheelhouse is on the freeboard deck, or located in the forward quarter of the ship's length, with internal access below, a weathertight cover, fitted to a coaming not less than 230 mm high, is to be provided for the access. Alternatively, storm covers are to be provided for windows in exposed positions. The wheelhouse is to be adequately drained.

6. 5 Side scuttles, windows and skylights

6. 5. 1 Side scuttles are defined as being round or oval openings with an area not exceeding 0.16 m^2.

6. 5. 2 Windows are defined as being rectangular openings generally, having a radius at each corner relative to the window size in accordance with a recognised National or International Standard, and round or oval openings with an area exceeding 0.16 m^2.

6. 5. 3 Deadlights are fitted to the inside of windows and side scuttles while storm covers, of comparable specifications to deadlights, are fitted to the outside of windows, where accessible. Deadlights can be hinged and storm covers can be hinged or portable.

6. 5. 4 A plan showing the location of side scuttles and windows is to be submitted. Attention is to be given to any relevant Statutory Requirements of the National Authority of the country in which the ship is to be registered.

6. 5. 5 Side scuttles and windows together with their glasses, deadlights and storm covers if fitted, are to be of an approved design or in accordance with a recognised National or International Standard. The minimum design pressures to which windows and side scuttles are to be designed are to be in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 8 Superstructures, Deckhouses and Bulwarks unless otherwise specified by the relevant requirements of Pt 4 Ship Structures (Ship Types)

6. 5. 6 Side scuttles and windows are to comply with the relevant requirements given in Pt 4 Ship Structures (Ship Types) for the applicable ship type in conjunction with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 11, 6.5, Side scuttles, windows and skylights

6. 5. 7 Side scuttles to spaces below the freeboard deck, or to spaces within the first tier of enclosed superstructures, or to first tier deckhouses on the freeboard deck protecting openings leading below or considered buoyant in stability calculations, are to be fitted with efficient, hinged, inside deadlights.

6. 5. 8 Deadlights are to be capable of being closed and secured watertight if fitted below the freeboard deck or weathertight if fitted above.

6. 5. 9 No side scuttle is to be fitted in such a position that its sill is below a line drawn parallel to the freeboard deck at side and having its lowest point 2.5 per cent of the breadth *B* above the load waterline corresponding to the summer freeboard (or timber summer freeboard if assigned), or 500 mm, whichever is the greater distance, *See* Figure 11. 6. 1: Side Scuttle Positioning.

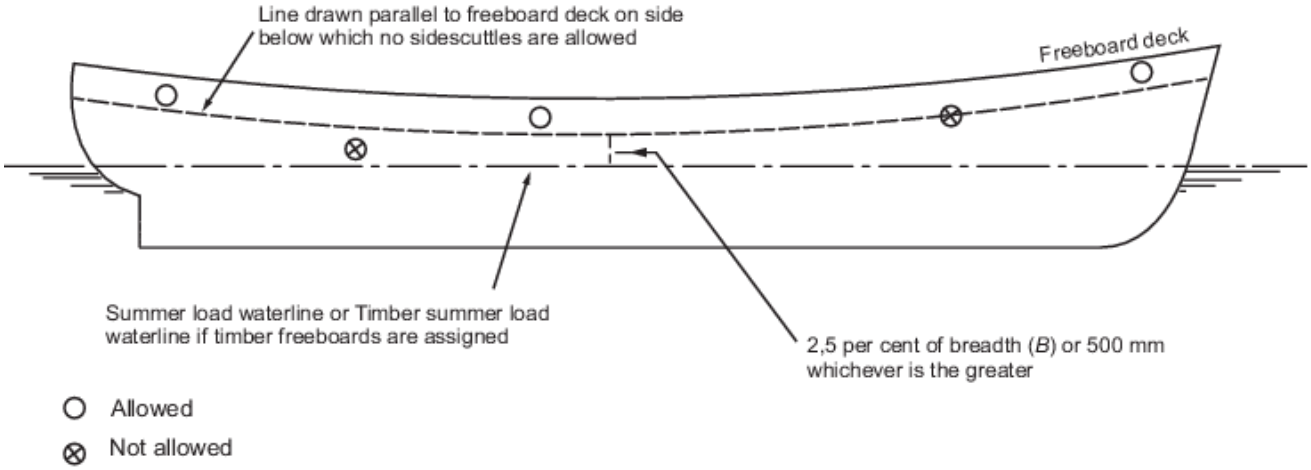
6. 5. 10 If the required damage stability or floatability calculations indicate that the side scuttles would become immersed at any intermediate stages of flooding or the final equilibrium waterline, these are to be of the non-opening type.

6. 5. 11 Windows are not to be fitted below the freeboard deck, in first tier end bulkheads or sides of enclosed superstructures, or in first tier deckhouses that are considered buoyant in stability calculations or protecting openings leading below.

6. 5. 12 Where windows are fitted in a deckhouse in the first tier, they are to be provided with strong, hinged, steel, weathertight storm covers. However, if there is an opening leading below deck in this deckhouse, this opening is to be treated as being on an exposed deck and is to be protected as required by Pt 3, Ch 11, 6.4 Companionways, doors and accesses on weather decks 6.4.2.

6. 5. 13 Where windows are permitted in an exposed bulkhead on the weather deck in the forward 0.25 of the load line length, strong external storm covers which can be portable and stored adjacent are to be provided.

Figure 11. 6. 1: Side Scuttle Positioning



6. 5. 14 Side scuttles and windows at the side shell in the second tier protecting direct access below or spaces considered buoyant in stability calculations are to be provided with efficient inside deadlights capable of being effectively closed and secured weathertight.

6. 5. 15 Side scuttles and windows set inboard from the side shell in the second tier protecting direct access below to spaces listed in Pt 3, Ch 11, 6.5 Side scuttles, windows and skylights 6.5.7, are to be provided with either efficient hinged inside deadlights or, where they are accessible, permanently attached external storm covers of approved design and of substantial construction and capable of being effectively closed and secured weathertight.

6. 5. 16 Cabin bulkheads and doors in the second tier separating side scuttles and windows from a direct access leading below may be accepted in place of deadlights or storm covers fitted to the side scuttles or windows.

6. 5. 17 Side scuttles and windows set inboard from the side shell in the second tier, not protecting direct access below or spaces considered buoyant in the stability calculations, do not require deadlights or storm covers.

6. 5. 18 If fitted in a deckhouse in the second tier located within the forward 0.25 of the load line length windows are to be provided with strong, hinged, steel, weathertight storm covers. However, if there is an opening leading below deck in this deckhouse, this opening is to be treated as being on an exposed deck and is to be protected as required by Pt 3, Ch 11, 6.4 Companionways, doors and accesses on weather decks 6.4.2.

6. 5. 19 Where the wheelhouse is in the second tier located abaft the forward 0.25 of the load line length, in lieu of storm covers being provided for the wheelhouse windows, a weathertight cover, fitted to a coaming of not less than 230 mm in height around the internal stairway opening within the wheelhouse, can be accepted. If this arrangement is accepted, adequate means of draining the wheelhouse are to be provided.

6. 5. 20 Deckhouses or superstructure situated on a raised quarter deck or on the deck of a superstructure of less than standard height or on the deck of a deckhouse of less than standard height can be regarded as being in the second tier as far as the provision of deadlights is concerned, provided that the height of the raised quarter deck, superstructure or deckhouse is equal to, or greater than, the standard quarter deck height.

6. 5. 21 Where the wheelhouse is in the third tier located in the forward 0.25 of the load line length, in lieu of storm covers being provided for the wheelhouse windows, a weathertight cover, fitted to a coaming of not less than 230 mm in height around the internal stairway opening within the wheelhouse, can be accepted. If this arrangement is accepted, adequate means of draining the wheelhouse are to be provided.

6. 5. 22 Windows at the side shell in the third tier are to be provided with strong portable internal storm covers for 25 per cent of each size of window, with means of securing being provided at each window.

6. 5. 23 Windows at the side shell in the fourth tier located in the forward 0.25 of the load line length are to be provided with strong portable internal storm covers for 25 per cent of each size of window, with means of securing being provided at each window.

6. 5. 24 If necessary, for practical considerations, storm covers can be in two parts.

6. 5. 25 For windows in the second tier and higher above the freeboard deck, a glazing equivalent can be fitted in lieu of deadlights/storm covers. The thicknesses and arrangements are to be acceptable to the National Authority with whom the ship is registered. For arrangements of glazing acceptable to LR, *See* Table 11. 6. 1: Acceptable arrangements of glazing in lieu of portable storm covers/deadlights. Other glazing equivalents will be considered on a case-by-case basis.

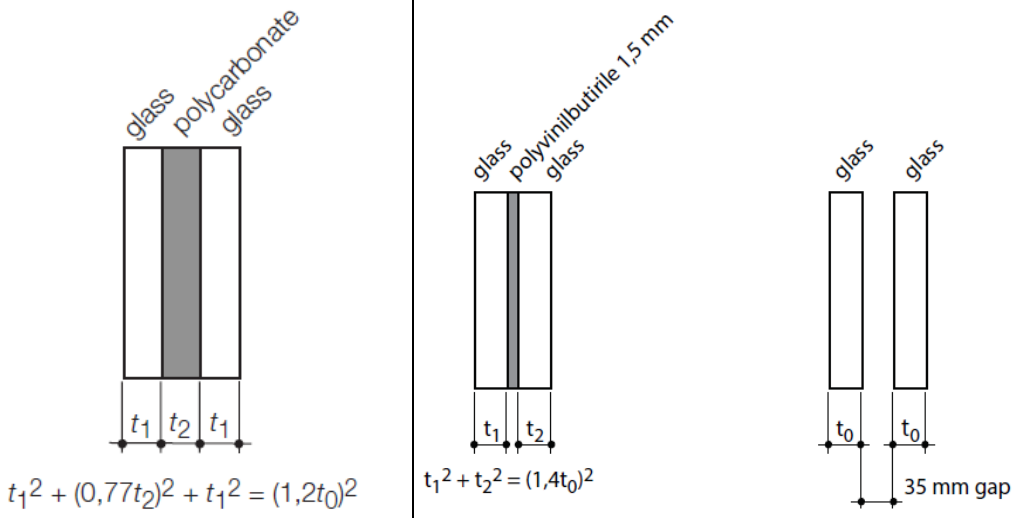
6. 5. 26 Windows are not to be fitted in machinery space boundaries. However, this does not preclude the use of glass in control rooms within the machinery space.

6. 5. 27 Skylights, where fitted, are to be of substantial construction and securely attached to their coamings. The height of the lower edge of the opening is to be as required by Pt 3, Ch 11, 5.1 General 5.1.1. The scantlings of the coaming are to be as required by this Section or Pt 3, Ch 11, 5 Hatch coamings, as appropriate. The thickness of glasses in fixed or opening skylights is to be appropriate to their size and position as required for side scuttles or windows. Glasses in any position are to be protected from mechanical damage and, where fitted in Positions 1 or 2, are to be provided with robust deadlights or storm covers permanently attached. Cargo pump room and machinery space skylights are not to contain glass.

6. 5. 28 Skylights to cargo pump rooms are to be capable of being closed from outside the pump room.

Table 11. 6. 1: Acceptable arrangements of glazing in lieu of portable storm covers/deadlights

In lieu of portable storm covers	In lieu of deadlights and storm covers



Symbols

t_0 = minimum thickness of toughened glass as required by Pt 3, Ch 11, 6.5 Side scuttles, windows and skylights 6.5.5

6. 5. 29 Laminated toughened safety glass may also be used for windows but the total thickness will need to be greater than that required for the equivalent sized window using toughened safety glass. The equivalent thickness of laminated toughened safety glass is to be determined from the following formula:

$$T_{L1}^2 + T_{L2}^2 + \cdots T_{Ln}^2 = T_s^2$$

n = number of laminates

T_{Li} = thickness of glass laminate

T_s = thickness of toughened safety glass

Alternative arrangements that do not meet the above thickness requirement will be specially considered, provided that equivalent strength and bending stiffness to that of a single, thermally toughened pane of thickness, T_s, can be demonstrated in a four-point bending test as described in EN-ISO 1288-3 or an equivalent recognised National or International Standard, using not less than ten samples. The lower limit of the 90 per cent confidence level interval for the laminated pane shall not be less than the same for monolithic toughened safety glass. Small scale punch test or ring-in-ring test methods shall not be used.

6. 5. 30 Non-metallic frames are not acceptable for windows in the first and second tiers, and are not generally acceptable in any other position in external casings. Any proposals to fit non-metallic frames are to be submitted for consideration, and are to be acceptable to the Administration. The proposed locations, frame dimensions, glass thicknesses and the results of any tests carried out, are to be forwarded.

6. 6 Small hatchways on exposed fore decks

6. 6. 1 For the application of the following requirements, *See* Pt 3, Ch 11, 6.1, Small hatchways on exposed decks.

6. 6. 2 The number and size of hatchways and other access openings are to be kept to the minimum consistent with the satisfactory operation of the ship.

6. 6. 3 The height of coamings is to be in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 11, 5.1 General 5.1.1. Lower heights may be considered in relation to operational requirements and the nature of the spaces to which access is given.

6. 6. 4 ope hatches may be accepted with reduced coamings, but generally not less than 380 mm, provided they are well secured and closed before the ship leaves port. A suitable notice is to be displayed at the hatch stating that it is to be closed whilst the ship is at sea.

6. 6. 5 Where permitted by the National Authority, access hatch coaming heights may be reduced on ships engaged on protected or extended protected water service. Coaming heights are to be as high as practicable with a minimum height of 230 mm.

6. 6. 6 The thickness of the coamings is to be not less than the Rule minimum thickness for the deck inside line of openings for that position, or 11 mm, whichever is the lesser.

6. 6. 7 The upper edge of the hatchway coamings is to be suitably reinforced by a horizontal section, normally not more than 170 to 190 mm from the upper edge of the coamings.

6. 6. 8 Hatches are to be fitted with primary securing devices such that their hatch covers can be secured in place and weather-tight by means of a mechanism employing any one of the following methods:

a. Butterfly nuts tightening onto forks (clamps),
b. Quick acting cleats, or
c. Central locking device.

Emergency escape hatches are excluded from options (a) and (b).

6. 6. 9 Dogs (twist tightening handles) with wedges are not acceptable as primary securing devices.

6. 6. 10 Escape hatches are to be capable of being opened from either side and are to have a quick-acting type securing device, e.g. one action wheel handle central locking device for latching/unlatching the hatch cover.

6. 6. 11 For a primary securing method using butterfly nuts, the forks (clamps) are to be of robust design. They are to be designed to minimise the risk of butterfly nuts being dislodged while in use; by means of curving the forks upward, a raised surface on the free end, or a similar method. The plate thickness of unstiffened steel forks is not to be less than 16 mm. An example arrangement is shown in Figure 11. 6. 3: Example of a primary securing method.

Figure 11. 6. 2: Arrangement of stiffeners

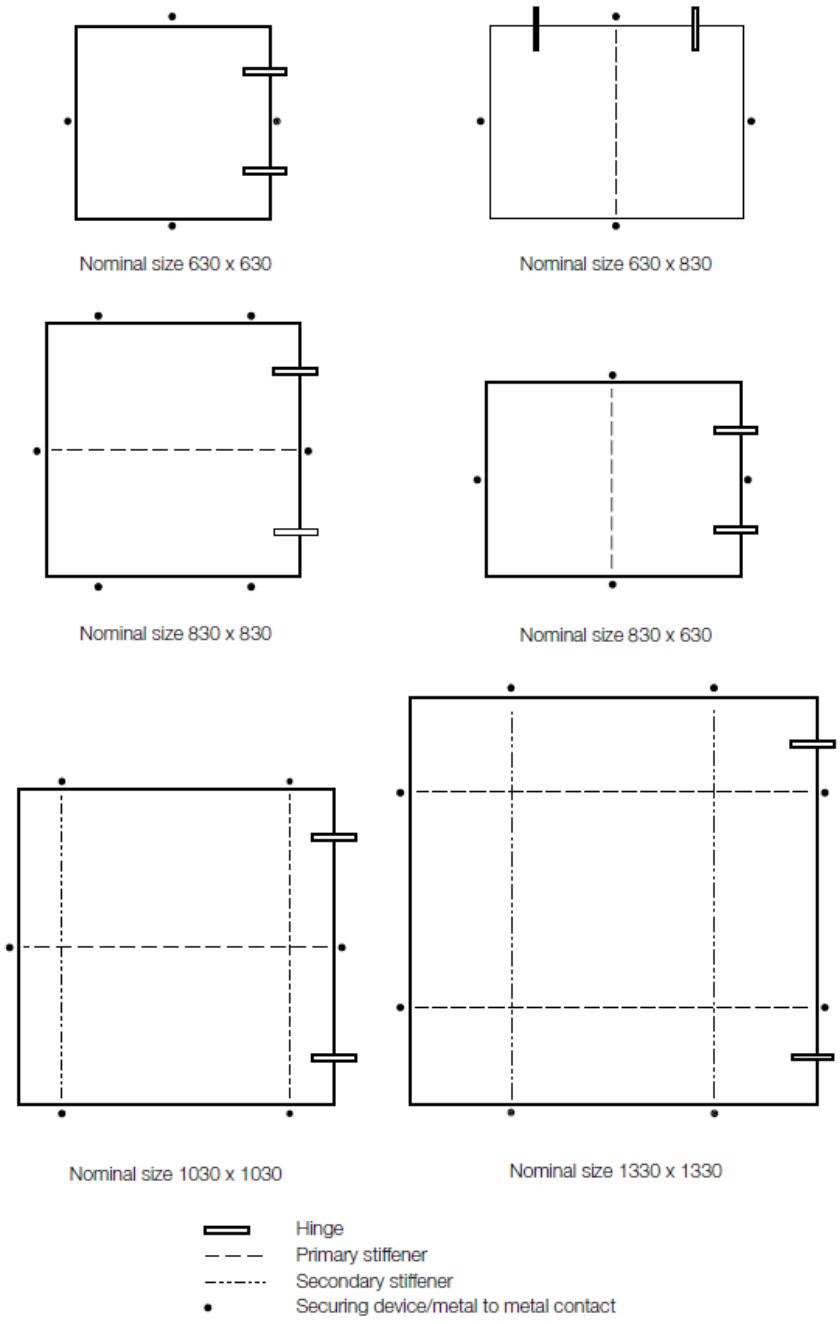
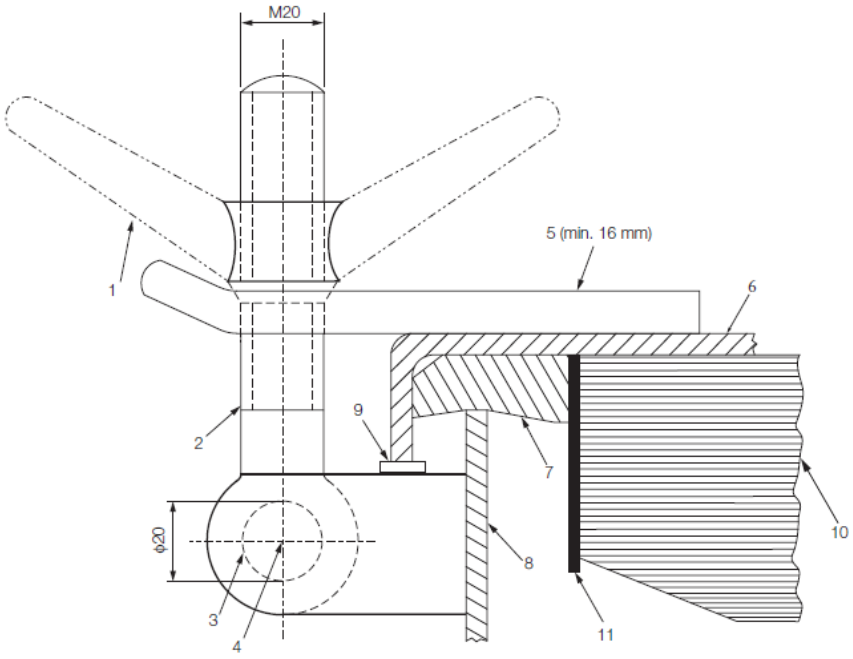


Figure 11. 6. 3: Example of a primary securing method



1. butterfly nut
2. bolt
3. pin
4. centre of pin
5. fork (clamp) plate
6. hatch cover
7. gasket
8. hatch coaming
9. bearing pad welded on the bracket of a toggle bolt for metal to metal contact
10. stiffener
11. inner edge stiffener

(Note: Dimensions in millimeters)

6. 6. 12 The hatch cover is to be fitted with a gasket of elastic material. This is to be designed to allow a metal to metal contact at a designed compression and to prevent over compression of the gasket by green sea forces that may cause the securing devices to be loosened or dislodged. The metal-to-metal contacts are to be arranged close to each securing device in accordance with Figure 11. 6. 2: Arrangement of stiffeners, and of sufficient capacity to withstand the bearing force.

6. 6. 13 The primary securing method is to be designed and manufactured such that the designed compression pressure can be achieved by one person without the need of any tools.

6. 6. 14 For small rectangular steel hatch covers, the plate thickness, stiffener arrangement and scantlings are to be in accordance with Table 11. 6. 2: Scantlings for small steel hatch covers on exposed deck and Figure 11. 6. 2: Arrangement of stiffeners. Stiffeners, where fitted, are to be aligned with the metal-to-metal contact points required in Pt 3, Ch 11, 6.6 Small hatchways on exposed fore decks 6.6.11, *See* Figure 11. 6. 2: Arrangement of stiffeners. Primary stiffeners are to be continuous. All stiffeners are to be welded to the inner edge stiffener, *See* Figure 11. 6. 3: Example of a primary securing method.

Table 11. 6. 2: Scantlings for small steel hatch covers on exposed deck

nominal size (mm x mm)	cover plate thickness (mm)	primary stiffeners Flat bar (mm x mm); number	secondary stiffeners

630 x 630	8	–	–
630 x 830	8	100 x 8.1	–
830 x 630	8	100 x 8.1	–
830 x 830	8	100 x 10.1	–
1030 x 1030	8	120 x 12.1	80 x 8.2
1330 x 1330	8	150 x 12.2	100 x 10.2

6. 6. 15 For hatch covers constructed of materials other than steel, the required scantlings are to provide equivalent strength.

6. 6. 16 For small hatch covers of circular or similar shape, the cover plate thickness and reinforcement are to be of equivalent strength to that of the small rectangular steel hatch covers described in Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.2 Stiffener arrangement 2.2.1.

6. 6. 17 For hatch covers located on the deck forward of the fore-most cargo hatch, the hinges are to be fitted such that the predominant direction of green sea will cause the cover to close. The hinges are normally to be located on the fore edge.

6. 6. 18 On small hatches located between the main hatches, for example between Numbers 1 and 2, the hinges are to be placed on the fore edge or outboard edge, whichever is practicable for protection from green water in beam sea and bow quartering conditions.

6. 6. 19 Hatches, excluding emergency escape hatches, are to be fitted with an independent secondary securing device, e.g. by means of a sliding bolt, a hasp or a backing bar of slack fit, which is capable of keeping the hatch cover in place, even in the event that the primary securing device became loosened or dislodged. It is to be fitted on the side opposite to the hatch cover hinges.

6. 6. 20 Small hatches, including escape hatches, are to be situated clear of cargo containment areas, particularly in the case of offshore supply ships.

6. 6. 21 Where portable plates are required in decks for unshipping machinery, or for other similar reasons, they may be accepted provided they are of equivalent strength to the unpierced deck and are secured by gaskets and closely spaced bolts at a pitch not exceeding five diameters.

6. 6. 22 Satisfactory means are to be provided to prevent inadvertent flooding of chain lockers, *See* Pt 3, Ch 13, 8.12 Structural requirements associated with anchoring 8.12.5 and Pt 3, Ch 13, 8.12 Structural requirements associated with anchoring 8.12.7.

PART

3

CHAPTER 11 **Closing Arrangements for Shell, Deck and Bulkheads**

SECTION 7 **Tanker access arrangements and closing appliances**

7. 1 Materials

7. 1. 1 Covers for access hatches, tank cleaning and other openings to cargo tanks and adjacent spaces are to be manufactured from steel complying with the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials.

7. 1. 2 Consideration will be given to the use of bronze, brass or other materials; however, aluminium alloy is not to be used for the covers of any openings to tanks.

7. 1. 3 Synthetic materials will be considered, taking into account their fire resistance and physical and chemical properties in relation to the intended operating conditions. Details of the properties of the material, the design of the cover and the method of manufacture are to be submitted for approval.

7. 1. 4 The hatch cover packing material is to be compatible with the cargoes to be carried and is to be efficiently held in place.

7. 2 Cargo tank access hatchways

7. 2. 1 Attention is drawn to IMO Resolutions concerning safe access to, and working in, large tanks.

7. 2. 2 Oiltight hatchways are to be kept to the minimum size required to provide reasonable access and ventilation. Where tanks are large or subdivided by wash bulkheads, additional hatchways may be required. In determining the size and location of hatchways, consideration should be given to the handling of materials and staging for maintenance in the tank.

7. 2. 3 The size and location of hatchways should also take into account access for personnel wearing breathing apparatus, and removal of injured personnel (possibly on a stretcher) from the bottom of the tank.

7. 2. 4 The height of hatch coaming is to be not less than 600 mm, measured above the upper surface of the freeboard deck, unless a lower height is permitted by the Administration of the country in which the ship is to be registered.

7. 2. 5 Taking account of sheer and camber, the height of any cargo tank hatch coaming is to be such as to ensure that the top of the hatch coaming is above the highest point of the tank over which it is fitted.

7. 2. 6 The height of the coaming may be required to be increased if this is shown to be necessary by the floatability calculations required by the *Load Lines, 1966/1988 - International Convention on Load Lines, 1966, as Amended by the Protocol of 1988*.

7. 2. 7 The thickness of the coaming plate is to be not less than 10 mm, but may be required to be increased, and edge stiffening fitted, where the coaming height exceeds 600 mm.

7. 2. 8 Unstiffened plate covers are to be not less than 12.5 mm in thickness, but if the area of the cover exceeds 1.2 m^2 this thickness may be required to be increased or stiffening fitted.

7. 2. 9 Unstiffened covers are to be secured by fastenings spaced not more than 600 mm apart on circular hatchways. On rectangular hatchways the spacing of fastenings is generally not to exceed 450 mm, and the distance between hatch corners and adjacent fastenings is to be not more than 230 mm.

7. 2. 10 The arrangement of fastenings on stiffened hatchway covers and covers of special design will be specially considered.

7. 2. 11 Where the cover is hinged, adequate stiffening of the coaming and cover in way of the hinge is to be provided. In general, hinges are not to be used as securing devices for the cover.

7. 3 Enlarged cargo tank access openings

7. 3. 1 Proposals to fit enlarged cargo tank accesses closed by bolted plate covers will be considered. Such openings may be of extended dimensions for ease of access and evacuation of personnel, *See* Pt 3, Ch 11, 7.2 Cargo tank access hatchways 7.2.3, and may incorporate a smaller access hatch for normal use constructed as required by Pt 3, Ch 11, 7.2, Cargo tank access hatchways.

7. 3. 2 The plate cover is to be not less than 15 mm in thickness and is to be secured by closely spaced studs to a ring of suitable dimensions, welded to the deck. The studs are not to penetrate the deck plating.

7. 4 Miscellaneous openings

7. 4. 1 Small openings for tank cleaning, ullage and similar purposes may be closed by flush covers which are to be not less than 12.5 mm in thickness and secured by studs not more than 100 mm apart. Studs are to be arranged in a ring of suitable width and thickness attached to the deck, and are not to penetrate the deck plating.

7. 4. 2 Small diameter holes provided for staging wires are to be closed by plugs of an approved pattern. The plugs are to be provided with a thick washer of suitable material which is also compatible with the intended cargoes. Spare plugs equal to at least 10 per cent of the number of holes are to be provided and maintained on board, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 9, 4 Hull envelope plating. If these openings are threaded they are to be protected while in use with a protective sleeve of suitable material.

7. 5 Access to spaces other than cargo tanks

7. 5. 1 Access to clean ballast or dry tanks and to cofferdams may be either by access hatch or by manhole generally complying with the preceding requirements.

7. 6 Equivalents

7. 6. 1 Alternative access cover designs and securing arrangements will be considered on the basis of equivalence to the above requirements and taking into account any relevant National Requirements.

7. 7 ther openings

7. 7. 1 For access to structure within cargo tanks, *See* Pt 4, Ch 9, 13 Access arrangements and closing appliances.

PART

3

CHAPTER **11** **Closing Arrangements for Shell, Deck and Bulkheads**

SECTION **8** **Side and stern doors and other shell openings**

8. 1 Symbols

8. 1. 1 The symbols used in this Section are defined as follows:

d = distance between closing devices, in metres

k = material factor, *See* Pt 3, Ch 2, 1.2, Steel, but is not to be taken less than 0.72 unless demonstrated otherwise by a direct strength analysis with regard to relevant modes of failure

l = moment of inertia, in cm^4, of the stiffener or girder, in association with an effective width of attached plating determined in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 3, 3 Structural idealisation

σ = bending stress, in N/mm^2

σ_e = equivalent stress, in N/mm^2

$= \sqrt{(\sigma^2 + 3\tau^2)}$

σ_o = minimum yield stress of the bearing material, in N/mm^2

τ = shear stress, in N/mm^2.

8. 2 General

8. 2. 1 These requirements cover cargo and service doors in the ship side (abaft the collision bulkhead) and stern area, below the freeboard deck and in enclosed superstructures.

8. 2. 2 For the requirements of bow doors, *See* Pt 4, Ch 2, 8 Bow doors and inner doors.

8. 2. 3 Side and stern doors are to be so fitted as to ensure tightness and structural integrity commensurate with their location and the surrounding structure, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.4 Weathertight 6.4.2 and Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.5 Watertight 6.5.2.

8. 2. 4 In general, and for passenger ships in particular, the lower edge of door openings is not to be below a line drawn parallel to the freeboard deck at side, which has at its lowest point at least 230 mm above the upper edge of the uppermost Load Line.

8. 2. 5 When the lower edge is below the line specified in Pt 3, Ch 11, 8.2 General 8.2.4, the arrangement will be specially considered. Special consideration is to be given to preventing the spread of

leakage water over the deck. The reference to the uppermost Load Line is to be taken as the tropical fresh waterline or, if timber freeboards are assigned, the timber tropical fresh waterline.

8. 2. 6 Watertight doors below the freeboard deck, with the exception of pilot doors which are to open inwards, are to open outwards. Weathertight doors are generally to be arranged to open outwards, however inward opening doors will be considered provided these satisfy the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 11, 8.2 General 8.2.7.

8. 2. 7 Inward opening doors situated in the first two 'tween decks above the summer load waterline are to be fitted with a second independent securing device, such as a strongback or equivalent arrangement, capable of providing weathertight integrity. Where the consequences of water ingress due to failure of the door are minimal, such as a small pilot door giving access to a watertight trunk leading to the bulkhead deck, the required enhancements will be specially considered.

8. 2. 8 For passenger ships the following are also applicable:

a. Gangway, cargo and service ports fitted below the margin line, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 4.3 After peak bulkhead, are to satisfy the strength requirements given for side doors in this Section. They are to be effectively closed and secured watertight before the ship leaves port, and are to be kept closed during navigation. Such ports are not to have their lowest point below the deepest subdivision Load Line.

b. Where the inboard end of a rubbish chute is below the margin line in a passenger ship, the inboard end cover is to be watertight and, in addition to the discharge flap interlock, a screwdown automatic non-return valve is to be fitted in an easily accessible position above the deepest subdivision. The valve is to be controlled from a position above the bulkhead deck and provided with an open/shut indicator, and kept closed when not in use. A suitable notice is to be displayed at the valve position.

8. 2. 9 For ships complying with the requirements of this Section, the securing, supporting and locking devices are defined as follows:

a. A securing device is used to keep the door closed by preventing it from rotating about its hinges or other pivoted attachments to the ship.

b. A supporting device is used to transmit external and internal loads from the door to a securing device and from the securing device to the ship's structure, or a device other than a securing device, such as a hinge, stopper or other fixed device, that transmits loads from the door to the ship's structure.

c. A locking device locks a securing device in the closed position.

8. 2. 10 Ro-ro cargo spaces are spaces not normally subdivided in any way and extending to either a substantial length or the entire length of the ship, in which motor vehicles with fuel in their tanks for their own propulsion and/or goods (packaged or in bulk, in or on rail or road cars, vehicles (including road or rail tankers), trailers, containers, pallets, demountable tanks in or on similar stowage units or other receptacles) can be loaded and unloaded normally in a horizontal direction.

8. 2. 11 Special category spaces are those enclosed spaces above and below the bulkhead deck, into and from which vehicles can be driven and to which passengers have access, and which may be accommodated on more than one deck where total overall clear height for vehicles does not exceed 10 m.

8. 3 Scantlings

8. 3. 1 In general the strength of side and stern doors is to be equivalent to the strength of the surrounding structure.

8. 3. 2 Door openings in the side shell are to have well rounded corners and adequate compensation is to be arranged with web frames at sides and stringers or equivalent above and below, *See* Pt 4, Ch 1, 5 Shell envelope plating.

8. 3. 3 Doors are to be adequately stiffened, and means are to be provided to prevent movement of the doors when closed. Adequate strength is to be provided in the connections of the lifting/manoeuvring arms and hinges to the door structure and to the ship structure.

8. 3. 4 The thickness of the door plating is to be not less than the shell plating calculated with the door stiffener spacing, and in no case to be less than the minimum adjacent shell thickness.

8. 3. 5 Where stern doors are protected against direct wave impact by a permanent external ramp, the thickness of the stern door plating may be reduced by 20 per cent relative to the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 11, 8.3 Scantlings 8.3.4. Those parts of the stern door which are not protected by the ramp are to have the thickness of plating in full compliance with Pt 3, Ch 11, 8.3 Scantlings 8.3.4.

8. 3. 6 Where higher tensile steel is proposed, the plating thickness required in Pt 3, Ch 11, 8.3 Scantlings 8.3.4 and Pt 3, Ch 11, 8.3 Scantlings 8.3.5 may be reduced by $\sqrt{k}$.

8. 3. 7 The section modulus of horizontal or vertical stiffeners is to be not less than required for the adjacent shell framing using the actual stiffener spacing. Consideration is to be given, where necessary, to differences in fixity between ship's frames and door stiffeners.

8. 3. 8 Where necessary, door secondary stiffeners are to be supported by primary members constituting the main stiffening elements of the door.

8. 3. 9 The scantlings of such primary members are to be based on direct strength calculations. Normally, formulae for simple beam theory may be applied to determine the bending stress. Members are to be considered to have simply supported end connections. The design load is the uniformly distributed external sea pressure, p_e, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 11, 8.2 General 8.2.6. For minimum scantlings, p_e is to be taken as 25 kN/m^2 and the permissible stresses are as follows:

$$\tau = \frac{80}{\mathrm{k}}\ \mathrm{N/mm^2}$$

$$\sigma = \frac{120}{\mathrm{k}}\ \mathrm{N/mm^2}$$

$$\sigma_e = \frac{150}{\mathrm{k}}\ \mathrm{N/mm^2}$$

8. 3. 10 The webs of primary members are to be adequately stiffened, preferably in a direction perpendicular to the shell plating.

8. 3. 11 The stiffness of the edges of the doors and the hull structure in way are to be sufficient to ensure weathertight integrity. Edge stiffeners/girders are to be adequately stiffened against rotation and are to have a moment of inertia not less than:

$$I = 0.8 P_1 \mathrm{d}^4\ c\mathrm{m}^4$$

Where

P_1 = packing line pressure along edges, not to be taken less than 50 N/cm.

For edge girders supporting main door girders between securing devices, the moment of inertia is to be increased in relation to the additional force.

8. 3. 12 The buckling strength of primary members is to be specially considered.

8. 3. 13 All load transmitting elements in the design load path from door through securing and supporting devices into the ship structure, including welded connections, are to be to the same strength standard as required for the securing and supporting devices. These elements include pins, supporting brackets and back-up brackets. Where cut-outs are made in the supporting structure, the strength and stiffness will be specially considered.

8. 4 Doors serving as ramps

8. 4. 1 Where doors also serve as vehicle ramps, the plating and stiffeners are to be not less than required for vehicle decks, *See* Pt 3, Ch 9, 3 Decks loaded by wheeled vehicles.

8. 4. 2 The support structure (including hinges) is to be assessed in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 9, 6.7 Ramp supporting structure.

8. 5 Arrangements for the closing, securing and supporting of doors

8. 5. 1 Doors are to be fitted with adequate means of closing, securing and support so as to be commensurate with the strength and stiffness of the surrounding structure. The hull supporting structure in way of the doors is to be suitable for the same design loads and design stresses as the securing and supporting devices. Where packing is required, the packing material is to be of comparatively soft type, and the supporting forces are to be carried by the steel structure only. Other types of packing may be considered. Maximum design clearance between securing and supporting devices is generally not to exceed 3 mm.

8. 5. 2 Devices are to be simple to operate and easily accessible. They are to be of a design approved by Lloyd's Register for the intended purpose.

8. 5. 3 Securing devices are to be equipped with positive locking arrangements. Arrangements are to be such that the securing devices are retained in the closed position within design limits of inclination, vibration and other motion-induced loads and in the event of loss of any actuating power supply.

8. 5. 4 Systems for door opening/closing and securing/ locking are to be interlocked in such a way that they can only operate in a proper sequence. Hydraulic systems are to comply with Pt 5, Ch 14, 9 Hydraulic systems.

8. 5. 5 Means are to be provided to enable the doors to be mechanically fixed in the open position taking into account the self weight of the door and a minimum wind pressure of 1.5 kN/m^2 acting on the maximum projected area in the open position.

8. 5. 6 The spacing for cleats or closing devices should not exceed 2.5 m and there should be cleats or closing devices positioned as close to the corners as practicable. Alternative arrangements for ensuring weathertight sealing will be specially considered.

8. 5. 7 Control and monitoring arrangements are to comply with the applicable requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 19 Ship safety systems.

8. 6 Design loads

8. 6. 1 The design force considered for the scantlings of primary members, securing and supporting devices of side shell doors and stern doors are to be taken not less than:

a. Design forces for securing or supporting devices of doors opening inwards:

External force:

$$P_e = Ap_e + P_e \text{kN}$$

Internal force:

$$P_i = P_0 + 10W\text{kN}$$

b. Design forces for securing or supporting devices of doors opening outwards:

External force:

$$P_e = Ap_e\text{kN}$$

Internal force:

$$P_i = P_0 + 10W + P_p\text{kN}$$

c. Design forces for primary members:
External force:

$$P_e = AP_e + 10\text{KN}$$

Internal force:

$$P_i = P_0 + 10W\text{kN}$$

whichever is the greater.
The symbols used are defined as follows:

p_e = external sea pressure, in kN/m^2, determined at the centre of gravity of the door opening and is not to be taken less than:

= for $Z_G < T$ $\quad 10(T - Z_G) + 25$ kN/m^2
for $Z_G \geq T$ $\quad 25$ kN/m^2

= For stern doors of ships fitted with bow doors, P_e is not to be taken less than:

p_{emin} = $0.6\lambda C_H(0.8 + 0.6L^{0.5})^2$kN/m^2

T = summer draught, in metres

Z_G = height of the centre of area of the door, in m, above the base line

L = length of ship, but need not be taken greater than 200 m

λ = coefficient depending on the area where the ship is intended to be operated:

= 1 for sea-going ships

= 0.8 for ships operated in coastal waters

= 0.5 for ships operated in sheltered waters

C_H = $0.0125L$ for $L < 80$ m

= 1 for $L \geq 80$ m

A = area, in m^2, of the door opening

W = weight of the door, in tonnes

P_p = total packing force, kN. When packing is fitted, the packing line force per unit length is to be specified, normally not to be taken less than: 5 kN/m

P_o = the greater of P_c and $5A$ kN

P_c = accidental force, in kN, due to loose cargo, etc. to be uniformly distributed over the area A and not to be taken less than 300 kN. For small doors such as bunker doors and pilot doors, the value of P_c may be taken as zero, provided an additional structure such as an inner ramp is fitted, which is capable of protecting the door from accidental force due to loose cargoes.

8. 7 Design of securing and supporting devices

8. 7. 1 Securing devices and supporting devices are to be designed to withstand the forces given above using the following permissible stresses:

$$\tau = \frac{80}{k} N/mm^2$$
$$\sigma = \frac{120}{k} N/mm^2$$
$$\sigma_e = \frac{150}{k} N/mm^2$$

The terms `securing device' and `supporting device' are defined in Pt 4, Ch 2, 8.2 General 8.2.8.

8. 7. 2 The arrangement of securing and supporting devices is to be such that threaded bolts are not to carry support forces. The maximum tensile stress in way of threads of bolts, not carrying support forces, is not to exceed:

$$\frac{125}{k} N/mm^2$$

8. 7. 3 For steel to steel bearings in securing and supporting devices, the normal bearing pressure is not to exceed $0.8\sigma_o$, *See* Pt 3, Ch 11, 8.1 Symbols 8.1.1. For other bearing materials, the permissible bearing pressure is to be determined according to the manufacturer's specification. The normal bearing pressure is to be calculated by dividing the design force by the projected bearing area.

8. 7. 4 The distribution of the reaction forces acting on the securing and supporting devices may require to be supported by direct calculations taking into account the flexibility of the hull structure and the actual position and stiffness of the supports. Small and/or flexible devices, such as cleats, intended to provide load compression of the packing material are not generally to be included in these calculations.

8. 7. 5 Only the active supporting and securing devices having an effective stiffness in the relevant direction are to be considered in the calculation of the reaction forces acting on the devices.

8. 7. 6 The number of securing and supporting devices is generally to be the minimum practicable whilst complying with Pt 3, Ch 11, 8.5 Arrangements for the closing, securing and supporting of doors 8.5.3 and taking account of the available space in the hull for adequate support.

8. 7. 7 The arrangement of securing devices and supporting devices in way of these securing devices is to be designed with redundancy so that in the event of failure of any single securing or supporting device the remaining devices are capable of withstanding the reaction forces, without exceeding, by more than 20 per cent, the permissible stresses as defined in Pt 3, Ch 11, 8.7 Design of securing and supporting devices 8.7.1.

8. 8 Operating and Maintenance Manual

8. 8. 1 An Operating and Maintenance Manual for the doors is to be provided on board and is to contain necessary information on:

a. main particulars and design drawings,
b. service conditions, e.g. service area restrictions, acceptable clearances for supports,
c. maintenance and function testing,
d. register of inspections, repairs and renewals.

8. 8. 2 For passenger/vehicle ferries and roll on-roll off cargo ships, *See* Pt 4, Ch 2, 1.1 Application 1.1.1, an Operating and Maintenance Manual for the doors, as defined in Pt 4, Ch 2, 8.7 Operating and Maintenance Manual 8.7.1, is to be provided on board instead of that required by Pt 3, Ch 11, 8.8 Operating and Maintenance Manual 8.8.1.

8. 8. 3 The Manual is to be submitted for approval, and is to contain a note recommending that recorded inspections of the door supporting and securing devices be carried out by the ship's staff at monthly intervals or following incidents that could result in damage, including heavy weather or contact in the region of the doors. Any damages recorded during such inspections are to be reported to LR.

8. 8. 4 Documented operating procedures for closing and securing the doors are to be kept on board and posted at an appropriate place.

PART

3

CHAPTER **11** **Closing Arrangements for Shell, Deck and Bulkheads**

SECTION **9** **Watertight doors in bulkheads below the freeboard deck**

9. 1 Openings in bulkheads

9. 1. 1 Certain openings below the freeboard deck are permitted, but these must be kept to a minimum and provided with means of closing to watertight standards. All such openings are to be to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

9. 2 Watertight doors

9. 2. 1 Watertight doors are to be of equivalent strength to the unpierced bulkhead, efficiently constructed and fitted, and are to be capable of being closed watertight when the ship is listed up to 15° either way. They are to be operated under working conditions and hose tested in place, *See* Table 1. 9. 1: Testing requirements in Chapter 1.

9. 2. 2 The scantlings of the watertight doors are to comply with Pt 4, Ch 1, 9 Bulkheads using the actual stiffener spacing of the door.

9. 2. 3 The scantlings of the frames of the watertight doors are to satisfy the requirements of watertight bulkheads given in item 5 of Table 1. 9. 1: Watertight and deep tank bulkhead scantlings in Pt 4, Ch 1, 9 Bulkheads taking into account the arrangement of door stiffeners and securing arrangements.

9. 2. 4 Watertight doors of the sliding type are to be capable of being operated both at the door itself and from an accessible position above the bulkhead deck. Means are to be provided at all the remote operating positions to indicate whether the door is open or closed. Doors are to be capable of being remotely closed by power from the bridge. The relevant regulations regarding openings in watertight bulkheads, contained in the *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea* and applicable amendments, are also to be complied with.

9. 2. 5 Hinged watertight doors of approved pattern may be fitted in 'tween decks in approved positions. The hinges of these doors are to be fitted with gunmetal pins or gunmetal bushes.

9. 2. 6 The frames of vertical watertight doors shall have no groove at the bottom in which dirt might lodge and prevent the door closing properly.

9. 2. 7 Means are to be provided on the navigating bridge to indicate whether the watertight doors are open or closed. A notice is to be affixed to both sides of each such door or hatch cover to the effect that it is not to be left open.

9. 2. 8 In passenger ships the number and construction of the watertight doors in bulkheads will be specially considered. Each watertight door is to be tested, *See* Table 1. 9. 1: Testing requirements. The test may be carried out either before of after the door is fitted. The relevant regulations

regarding openings in watertight bulkheads in passenger ships, contained in the *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea* and applicable amendments, are also to be complied with.

PART

3

CHAPTER 11 **Closing Arrangements for Shell, Deck and Bulkheads**

SECTION 10 **External openings and openings in watertight bulkheads and internal decks in cargo ships**

10. 1 Shell and watertight subdivision openings

10. 1. 1 In addition to the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 11, 8 Side and stern doors and other shell openings and Pt 3, Ch 11, 9 Watertight doors in bulkheads below the freeboard deck, for cargo ships of 80 m in length and above, the relevant regulations concerning shell and watertight subdivision openings contained in the *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea* 1974, and amendments thereto are also to be complied with.

PART

3

CHAPTER **12 Ventilators, Air Pipes and Discharges**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**1245**
	1. 1	Application	1245
	1. 2	Protection	1245
SECTION 2	**Ventilators**		**1246**
	2. 1	General	1246
	2. 2	Coamings	1246
	2. 3	Closing appliances	1247
	2. 4	Machinery spaces	1248
SECTION 3	**Air and sounding pipes**		**1249**
	3. 1	General	1249
	3. 2	Height of air pipes	1249
	3. 3	Closing appliances	1250
SECTION 4	**Scuppers and sanitary discharges**		**1251**
	4. 1	General	1251
	4. 2	Closing appliances	1252
	4. 3	Rubbish chutes, offal and similar discharges	1254
	4. 4	Materials for valves, fittings and pipes	1254
SECTION 5	**Air pipes, ventilator pipes and their securing devices located on the exposed fore deck**		**1255**
	5. 1	General	1255
	5. 2	Loading	1255
	5. 3	Strength requirements	1256
	5. 4	Ventilator coamings	1258
	5. 5	Height of air pipes	1258
	5. 6	Closing appliances for ventilators	1259
	5. 7	Closing appliances for air pipes	1259

PART

3

CHAPTER **12 Ventilators, Air Pipes and Discharges**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 12. 2. 1: Ventilator coaming requirements 1246
Table 12. 5. 1: Air pipe thickness and bracket standards 1256
Table 12. 5. 2: 900 mm Ventilator pipe thickness and bracket standards 1257

PART

3

CHAPTER **12 Ventilators, Air Pipes and Discharges**

LIAST OF FIGURES

Figure 12. 4. 1: Diagrammatic arrangement of discharge valves 1253

PART

3

CHAPTER 12 Ventilators, Air Pipes and Discharges

SECTION 1 General

1. 1 Application

1. 1. 1 This Chapter applies to all ship types detailed in Pt 4 Ship Structures (Ship Types), and provides requirements for ventilators, air and sounding pipes and overboard discharges.

1. 1. 2 The requirements conform, where relevant, with those of the *Load Lines, 1966/1988 - International Convention on Load Lines, 1966, as Amended by the Protocol of 1988* Reference should also be made to any additional requirements of the National Authority of the country in which the ship is to be registered and to the relevant regulations of the *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea* and applicable amendments.

1. 2 Protection

1. 2. 1 In all cargo spaces and other areas where mechanical damage is likely, all air and sounding pipes, scuppers and discharges, including their valves, controls and indicators, are to be well protected. This protection is to be of steel or other equivalent material.

PART

3

CHAPTER **12 Ventilators, Air Pipes and Discharges**

SECTION **2 Ventilators**

2. 1 General

2. 1. 1 Ventilators located on the exposed deck over the forward 0.25L of the rule length, of ships of sea-going service of length 80 m or more, where the height of the exposed deck in way of the item is less than 0.1L or 22 m above the summer load waterline, whichever is the lesser, are to comply with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 12, 5 Air pipes, ventilator pipes and their securing devices located on the exposed fore deck. All other ventilators are to comply with the following requirements.

2. 1. 2 Special care is to be taken in the design and positioning of ventilator openings and coamings, particularly in the region of the forward end of superstructures and other points of high stress. The deck plating in way of the coamings is to be efficiently stiffened.

2. 1. 3 Ventilators from deep tanks and tunnels passing through 'tween decks are to have scantlings suitable for withstanding the pressures to which they may be subjected, and are to be made watertight.

2. 1. 4 For height and location of cargo tank vent outlets, *See* the *Rules for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk* (hereinafter referred to as the Rules for Ships for liquefied Gases), or the *Rules for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquid Chemicals in Bulk* (hereinafter reffered to as the Rules for Ships for Liquid Chemicals), where applicable.

2. 2 Coamings

2. 2. 1 The scantlings and height of ventilator coamings exposed to the weather are to be not less than required by Table 12. 2. 1: Ventilator coaming requirements but the thickness need not exceed that of the adjacent deck or bulkhead plating. In particularly exposed positions, the height of coamings and scantlings may be required to be increased.

Table 12. 2. 1: Ventilator coaming requirements

Feature	Requirements
Height (measured above sheathing if fitted)	(1) z_c=900 mm at Position 1(*See* Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.6 Position 1 and Position 2)
	z_c = 760 mm at Position 2(*See* Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.6 Position 1 and Position 2)
Thickness	(2) $t_c = 5.5 + 0.01\delta_v$mm where 7.5 mm $\leq t_c \leq$ 10.0 mm

Support	(3) If $z_c > 900$ mm the coaming is to be specially supported
Symbols	
t_c = thickness of coaming, in mm z_c = height of coaming, in mm δ_v = internal diameter of coaming, in mm	
Note Where the height of the ventilator exceeds that given in Item (1), the thickness given by (2) may be generally reduced, above that height, to a minimum of 6.5 mm. The ventilator is to be adequately stayed.	

2. 2. 2 Where ventilators in locations above Position 2 are included in the consideration of intact and damage stability or are in critical locations above Position 2, then the height of ventilator coamings is to be specially considered.

2. 2. 3 The height of ventilator coamings may be required to be increased on ships of Type `A', Type `B-100' and Type `B-60' where this is shown to be necessary by the floatability calculations required by the *Load Lines, 1966/1988 - International Convention on Load Lines, 1966, as Amended by the Protocol of 1988* .

2. 2. 4 For gooseneck ventilators, the coaming height is to be measured to the underside of the bend, this being the lowest point through which water on deck could pass freely to spaces below.

2. 2. 5 Where wall vents are fitted with an internal baffle which rises above the lower edge of the exterior opening, the coaming height is measured to the top of the baffle.

2. 2. 6 Where permitted by the National Authority, ventilator coaming heights may be reduced on ships engaged on protected or extended protected water service. Coaming heights are to be as high as practicable, with a minimum height of 450 mm in Position 1 and 300 mm in Position 2.

2. 3 Closing appliances

2. 3. 1 All ventilator openings are to be provided with efficient weathertight closing appliances of steel or other equivalent material unless:

a. the height of the coaming is greater than 4.5 m where Table 12. 2. 1: Ventilator coaming requirements requires a minimum height of 900 mm; or
b. the height of the coaming is greater than 2.3 m where Table 12. 2. 1: Ventilator coaming requirements requires a minimum height of 760 mm.

2. 3. 2 In ships where the load line length, L_L (*See* Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1, Principal particulars), is not more than 100 m, the closing appliances are to be permanently attached to the ventilator coaming. Where not so provided in other ships, they are to be conveniently stowed near the ventilator to which they are to be fitted.

2. 3. 3 Where, in ferries, ventilators are proposed to be led overboard in an enclosed 'tween deck, the closing arrangements are to be submitted for approval. If such ventilators are led overboard more than 4.5 m above the main vehicle deck, closing appliances may be omitted, provided that satisfactory baffles and drainage arrangements are provided, as in the case of air intakes or exhaust openings for machinery spaces, which may be arranged in the sides of the ship.

2. 3. 4 On offshore supply ships, to ensure satisfactory operation in all weather conditions, machinery space ventilation inlets and outlets are to be located in such positions that closing appliances will not be necessary.

2. 3. 5 Mushroom ventilators closed by a head revolving on a centre spindle (screw down head) are acceptable in Position 2, and also in sheltered positions in Position 1, excluding those described

in Pt 3, Ch 12, 2.1 General 2.1.1, but the diameter is not to exceed 300 mm if situated within the forward $0.25L_L$.

2. 3. 6 Mushroom ventilators with a fixed head and closed by a screw down plate (screw down cover) may be accepted in exposed positions within the forward $0.25L_L$, excluding those described in Pt 3, Ch 12, 2.1 General 2.1.1, up to a diameter of 750 mm.

2. 3. 7 Wall ventilators (jalousies) may be accepted provided they are capable of being closed weathertight by hinged steel gasketed covers secured by bolts or toggles.

2. 3. 8 A ventilator head not forming part of the closing arrangements is to be not less than 6.5 mm thick.

2. 3. 9 In order to limit the fire growth potential in every space of the ship, the main inlets and outlets of all ventilation systems shall be capable of being closed from outside the spaces being ventilated. The means of closing shall be easily accessible as well as prominently and permanently marked and shall indicate whether the inlet or outlet is open or closed. Battery room ventilators are only to be fitted with a means of closing, whenever:

a. the battery room does not open directly on to an exposed deck; or
b. the ventilation opening for the battery room is required to be fitted with a closing device according to the Load Line Convention; or
c. the battery room is fitted with a fixed gas fire extinguishing system.

Where a battery room ventilator is fitted with a closing device *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 12.5 Thermal management and ventilation 12.5.2.

2. 4 Machinery spaces

2. 4. 1 In general, ventilators necessary to continuously supply the machinery space are to have coamings of sufficient height to comply with Pt 3, Ch 12, 2.3 Closing appliances 2.3.1 without having to fit weathertight closing appliances. Ventilators to emergency generator rooms are to be so positioned that closing appliances are not required.

2. 4. 2 Where due to ship size and arrangement this is not practicable, lesser heights for machinery space ventilator coamings fitted with weathertight closing appliances may be permitted by the administration in combination with other suitable arrangements to ensure uninterrupted, adequate supply of ventilation to these spaces.

2. 4. 3 Where closing appliances are fitted to ventilators serving emergency generator rooms or ventilation louvres are used for emergency generator rooms, the following requirements are to be applied in addition to the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 12, 2.4 Machinery spaces 2.4.2:

a. Ventilation louvres and closing appliances may either be hand-operated or power-operated (hydraulic/pneumatic/electric) and are to be operable under a fire condition.
b. Hand-operated ventilation louvres and closing appliances are to be kept open during the normal operation of the vessel. Corresponding instruction notices are to be provided at the location where hand operation is provided.
c. Power-operated ventilation louvres and closing appliances are to open automatically whenever the emergency generator is starting/in operation. Closed ventilation louvres and closing appliances are acceptable during normal operation of the vessel. In the event of power failure, the default position of the ventilation louvres or closing appliances is to be the open position.
d. Ventilation openings are to be capable of being operated manually from a clearly marked safe position outside the space where the closing operation can be easily confirmed. The louvre status (open/closed) is to be indicated at this position. Such closing is not to be possible from any other remote position.

PART

3

CHAPTER **12 Ventilators, Air Pipes and Discharges**

SECTION **3 Air and sounding pipes**

3. 1 General

3. 1. 1 Air pipes located on the exposed deck over the forward 0.25*L* of the rule length, of ships of sea-going service of length 80 m or more, where the height of the exposed deck in way of the item is less than 0.1*L* or 22 m above the summer load waterline, whichever is the lesser, are to comply with the requirements of Section 5. All other air and sounding pipes are to comply with the following requirements in addition to the applicable requirements of Pt 5, Ch 13, 12 Air, overflow and sounding pipes and Pt 5, Ch 15, 2 Piping systems for bilge, ballast, fuel oil, etc..

3. 1. 2 Striking plates of suitable thickness, or their equivalent, are to be fitted under all sounding pipes.

3. 1. 3 On offshore supply ships, air pipes are to be situated clear of the cargo containment areas.

3. 2 Height of air pipes

3. 2. 1 The height of air pipes from the upper surface of decks exposed to the weather, to the point where water may have access below, is normally to be not less than:

- 760 mm on the freeboard deck;
- 450 mm on the superstructure deck;
- these heights being measured above deck sheathing, where fitted.

3. 2. 2 Lower heights may be approved in cases where these are essential for the working of the ship, provided that the design and arrangements are otherwise satisfactory. In such cases, efficient, permanently attached closing appliances of an approved automatic type will generally be required.

3. 2. 3 The height of air pipes may be required to be increased on ships of Type `A', Type `B-100' and Type `B-60' where this is shown to be necessary by the floatability calculations required by the *International Convention on Load Lines, 1966.* An increase in height may also by required or recommended by individual Administrations when air pipes to fuel oil and settling tanks are situated in positions where sea water could be temporarily entrapped, e.g. in recesses in the sides and ends of superstructures or deckhouses, between hatch ends, behind high sections of bulwark, etc. This may entail an increase in tank scantlings, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 3 Structural Design.

3. 2. 4 Air pipes are generally to be led to an exposed deck. For alternative arrangements in an enclosed space on a main vehicle deck, *See* Pt 4, Ch 2, 9 Subdivision structure on vehicle deck.

3. 2. 5 Where air pipes are led through the side of superstructures, the opening is to be at least 2.3 m above the summer load waterline.

3. 2. 6 The minimum wall thickness of air pipes in positions indicated in Pt 3, Ch 12, 3.2 Height of air pipes 3.2.1 is to be:

- 6.0 mm for pipes of 80 mm external diameter or smaller;

- 8.5 mm for pipes of 165 mm external diameter or greater.

Intermediate minimum thicknesses are to be determined by linear interpolation.

3. 2. 7 Where permitted by the National Authority, air pipe coaming heights may be reduced on ships engaged on protected or extended protected water service. Coaming heights are to be as high as practicable, with a minimum height of 450 mm on the freeboard deck and 300 mm on a superstructure deck.

3. 3 Closing appliances

3. 3. 1 All openings of air and sounding pipes are to be provided with permanently attached, satisfactory means of closing to prevent the free entry of water, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 12, 3.2 Height of air pipes 3.2.2.

3. 3. 2 Closing appliances are to be of an approved automatic type.

3. 3. 3 Pressure/vacuum valves as required by Pt 5, Ch 15, 4 Cargo tank venting, purging and gas-freeing may be accepted as closing appliances for cargo tanks.

PART

3

CHAPTER **12 Ventilators, Air Pipes and Discharges**

SECTION **4 Scuppers and sanitary discharges**

4. 1 General

4. 1. 1 Scuppers sufficient in number and size to provide effective drainage are to be fitted in all decks.

4. 1. 2 Scuppers draining weather decks and spaces within superstructures or deckhouses not fitted with efficient weathertight doors are to be led overboard.

4. 1. 3 Where the freeboard is such that the freeboard deck edge is immersed when the ship heels 5° or less, scuppers and discharges which drain spaces below the freeboard deck, or spaces within intact superstructures or deckhouses on the freeboard deck fitted with efficient weathertight doors, are to be led to the bilges in the case of scuppers or to suitable sanitary tanks in the case of sanitary discharges. Where the freeboard is such that the freeboard deck edge is immersed when the ship heels greater than 5° then they may be led overboard and fitted with means of preventing water from passing inboard in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 12, 4.2, Closing appliances.

4. 1. 4 In ships where an approved fixed pressure water spray fire–extinguishing system is fitted in vehicle or cargo spaces, deck scuppers of not less than 150 mm diameter are to be provided port and starboard, spaced about 9.0 m apart. The scupper area will require to be increased if the design capacity of the drencher system exceeds the Rule required capacity by 10 per cent or more. After installation, the two adjacent sections with the greatest aggregate drencher capacity are to be tested in operation to ensure that there is no build up of water on the deck, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 2, 11.2 Openings in main vehicle deck 11.2.2. The mouth of the scupper is to be protected by bars.

4. 1. 5 Where a sewage system is fitted, the shipside valves on the discharge pipe from the effluent tank(s) and the by-pass system are to comply with Pt 3, Ch 12, 4.2, Closing appliances.

4. 1. 6 The minimum wall thickness of pipes not indicated in Pt 3, Ch 12, 4.2 Closing appliances 4.2.6 is to be:

- 4.5 mm for pipes of 155 mm external diameter or smaller.
- 6.0 mm for pipes of 230 mm external diameter or greater.

Intermediate minimum thicknesses are to be determined by linear interpolation.

4. 1. 7 For the use of non-metallic pipe, *See* Pt 5, Ch 12, 5 Plastic pipes.

4. 1. 8 Scuppers and discharge pipes should not normally pass through fuel oil or cargo oil tanks. Where scuppers and discharge pipes pass, unavoidably, through fuel oil or cargo oil tanks, and are led through the shell within the tanks, the thickness of the piping should be at least the same thickness as Rule shell plating in way, derived from the appropriate Chapters, but need not exceed 19 mm.

4. 1. 9 Piping within tanks is to be tested in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 1, 8 Inspection and workmanship.

4. 1. 10 All piping is to be adequately supported.

4. 1. 11 *See also* the *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk* or the *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquid Chemicals in Bulk*, where applicable.

4. 1. 12 For additional requirements for scuppers and sanitary discharges on dredging and reclamation craft, *See* Pt 4, Ch 12, 15 Spoil space weirs and overflows.

4. 2 Closing appliances

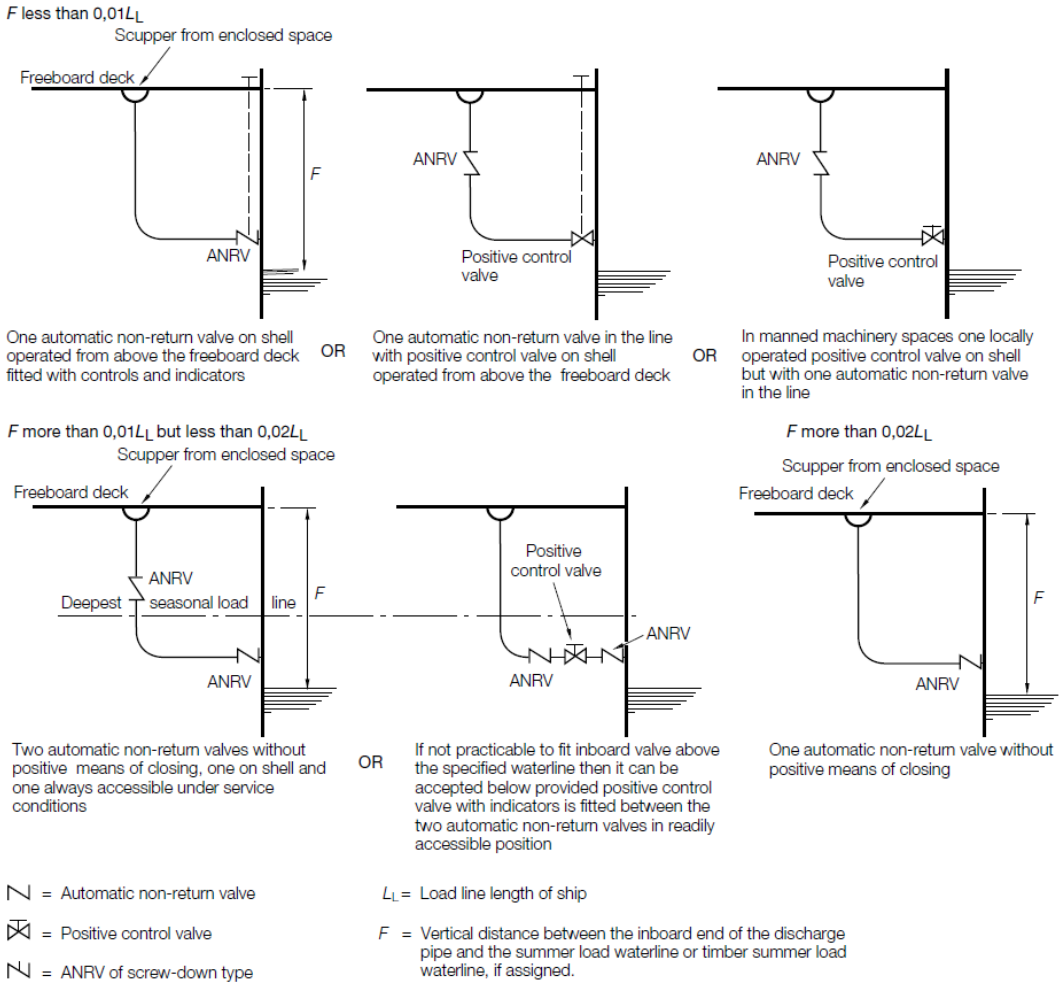
4. 2. 1 In general, each separate overboard discharge is to be fitted with a screw-down non-return valve capable of being operated from a position always accessible and above the freeboard deck. An indicator is to be fitted at the control position showing whether the valve is open or closed. A machinery space, whether manned or unattended (i.e. with **UMS** notation), is considered accessible. Cargo holds or spaces with access only by hatches or bolted manholes are not considered accessible.

4. 2. 2 Where a drencher fire-extinguishing system is provided in an enclosed vehicle space of a ferry, the scupper controls are to be operated from a position above the bulkhead deck, and outside the vehicle space protected by the drencher system, and are to be protected from mechanical damage.

4. 2. 3 Where the vertical distance from the summer load waterline to the inboard end of the discharge pipe exceeds $0.01L_L$ the discharge may be fitted with two automatic non-return valves without positive means of closing, instead of the screw-down non-return valve, provided that the inboard valve is always accessible for examination under service conditions.

4. 2. 4 Where the vertical distance from the summer load waterline to the inboard end of the discharge pipe exceeds $0.02L_L$, a single automatic non-return valve without positive means of closing may be fitted, *See* Figure 12. 4. 1: Diagrammatic arrangement of discharge valves.

Figure 12. 4. 1: Diagrammatic arrangement of discharge valves



4. 2. 5 The requirements for non-return valves are applicable only to those discharges which remain open during the normal operation of the ship. For discharges which are closed at sea, such as gravity drains from topside ballast tanks, a single screw down valve operated from the freeboard deck is considered to provide sufficient protection.

4. 2. 6 Scuppers and discharge pipes originating at any level which penetrate the shell either more than 450 mm below the freeboard deck or less than 600 mm above the summer load waterline, are to be fitted with an automatic non-return valve at the shell. This valve, unless required by Pt 3, Ch 12, 4.1 General 4.1.3, may be omitted provided the piping has a minimum wall thickness of:

- 7.0 mm for pipes of 80 mm external diameter or smaller;
- 10.0 mm for pipes of 180 mm external diameter;
- 12.5 mm for pipes of 220 mm external diameter or greater.

Intermediate minimum thicknesses are to be determined by linear interpolation. Unless required by Pt 3, Ch 12, 4.1 General 4.1.8, the maximum thickness need not exceed 12.5 mm.

4. 2. 7 The outboard valve is to be mounted directly on the shell and secured in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 13, 2.5 Ship-side valves and fittings (other than those on scuppers and sanitary discharges) 2.5.1. If this is impracticable, a short distance piece of rigid construction may be introduced between the valve and the shell. Valves should not be fitted in cargo tanks.

4. 2. 8 If a valve is required by Pt 3, Ch 12, 4.1 General 4.1.3, this valve should preferably be fitted as close as possible to the point of entry of the pipe into the tank. If fitted below the freeboard deck, the valve is to be capable of being controlled from an easily accessible position above the freeboard deck. Local control is also to be arranged, unless the valve is inaccessible. An indicator is to be fitted at the control position showing whether the valve is open or closed.

4. 2. 9 In a ship to which timber freeboards are assigned, the summer load waterline is to be regarded as that corresponding to the timber summer freeboard.

4. 2. 10 For ship side valves and fittings (other than those on scuppers and sanitary discharges), *See* Pt 5, Ch 13, 2 Construction and installation and Pt 6, Ch 1, 2 Essential features for control, alarm, monitoring and safety systems .

4. 3 Rubbish chutes, offal and similar discharges

4. 3. 1 Rubbish chutes, offal and similar discharges should be constructed of mild steel piping or plating of shell thickness. Other materials will be specially considered. Openings are to be kept clear of the sheerstrake and areas of high stress concentration.

4. 3. 2 Rubbish chute hoppers are to be provided with a hinged weathertight cover at the inboard end with an interlock so that the discharge flap and hopper cover cannot be open at the same time. The hopper cover is to be secured closed when not in use, and a suitable notice displayed at the control position.

4. 3. 3 Where the inboard end of the hopper is less than $0.01L_{\text{L}}$ above the summer load waterline, a suitable valve with positive means for closing is to be provided in addition to the cover and flap in an easily accessible position above the deepest seasonal waterline. The valve is to be controlled from a position adjacent to the hopper and provided with an open/shut indicator. The valve is to be kept closed when not in use, and a suitable notice displayed at the valve operating position.

4. 3. 4 Where damage stability requirements apply and the inboard end of the chute is below the equilibrium waterlines, or in passenger ships, where the inboard end of a rubbish chute is below the margin line; *See* Pt 3, Ch 11, 8.2 General 8.2.8.b.

4. 3. 5 In trawlers or fish factory ships, offal discharges in the fish working spaces are to be provided with either a non-return flap, preferably fitted at the shell which can be positively secured weathertight, or a separate positively controlled valve kept closed when not in use. A suitable notice is to be displayed at the flap or valve operating position.

4. 4 Materials for valves, fittings and pipes

4. 4. 1 All shell fittings and valves required by Pt 3, Ch 12, 4.2, Closing appliances are to be of steel, bronze or other approved ductile material; ordinary cast iron or similar material is not acceptable. Materials are to satisfy the requirements of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials.

4. 4. 2 All these items, if made of steel or other approved material with low corrosion resistance, are to be suitably protected against wastage.

4. 4. 3 The lengths of pipe attached to the shell fittings, elbow pieces or valves are to be of galvanised steel or other equivalent approved material.

PART

3

CHAPTER **12 Ventilators, Air Pipes and Discharges**

SECTION **5 Air pipes, ventilator pipes and their securing devices located on the exposed fore deck**

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 For the application of the following requirements relating to ventilators, *See* Pt 3, Ch 12, 2.1 General 2.1.1. For the application of the following requirements relating to air pipes, *See* Pt 3, Ch 12, 3.1 General 3.1.1. Air pipes complying with the following requirements are also to comply with the applicable requirements of Pt 5, Ch 13, 12 Air, overflow and sounding pipes and Pt 5, Ch 15, 2.5 Air and sounding pipes.

5. 1. 2 Special care is to be taken in the design and positioning of ventilator openings and coamings, particularly in the region of the forward end of superstructures and other points of high stress. The deck plating in way of the coamings is to be efficiently stiffened.

5. 1. 3 Ventilators from deep tanks and tunnels passing through 'tween decks are to have scantlings suitable for withstanding the pressures to which they may be subjected, and are to be made watertight.

5. 1. 4 For height and location of cargo tank vent outlets, *See* the Rules for Ships for Liquefied Gases, or Rules for Ships for Liquid Chemicals, where applicable.

5. 1. 5 On offshore supply ships, air pipes are to be situated clear of the cargo containment areas.

5. 2 Loading

5. 2. 1 The design pressure acting on air pipes, ventilator pipes and their closing devices is to be taken as not less than:

$$p = 0.5\rho V^2 C_d C_s C_p \text{kN/m2}$$

Where

P = density of sea water (1.025 t/m^3)

V = velocity of water over the fore deck

= 13.5 m/sec for $d \leq 0.5d_1$

$$= 13.5\sqrt{2(1-\frac{d}{d_1})} \text{for d} > 0.5\text{d}_1$$

d = distance from summer load waterline to exposed deck

d_1 = 0.1L but need not be taken as greater than 22 m

C_d = shape coefficient (0.5 for pipes,1.3 for air pipe or ventilator heads in general and 0.8 for an air pipe or ventilator head of cylindrical form with its axis in the vertical direction)

C_s = slamming coefficient (3.2)

C_p = protection coefficient (0.7 for pipes and ventilator heads located immediately behind a breakwater or forecastle and 1.0 elsewhere and immediately behind a bulwark).

5. 2. 2 Forces acting in the horizontal direction on the pipe and its closing device are to be not less than those calculated from Pt 3, Ch 12, 5.2 Loading 5.2.1 using the largest projected area of each component.

5. 3 Strength requirements

5. 3. 1 Bending moments and stresses in air and ventilator pipes are to be calculated at critical positions:

- at penetration pieces;
- at weld or flange connections; and
- at toes of supporting brackets.

5. 3. 2 Bending stresses in the net section are not to exceed $0.8\sigma_y$, where σ_y is the specified minimum yield stress or 0.2 per cent proof stress of the steel at room temperature. Irrespective of corrosion protection, a corrosion addition to the net section of 2.0 mm is then to be applied.

5. 3. 3 For standard air pipes of 760 mm coaming height closed by heads of not more than the tabulated projected area, pipe thicknesses and bracket heights are specified in Table 12. 5. 1: Air pipe thickness and bracket standards. Where brackets are required, three or more radial brackets are to be fitted. Brackets are to be of gross thickness 8 mm or more, of minimum length 100 mm, and height according to Table 12. 5. 1: Air pipe thickness and bracket standards but need not extend over the joint flange for the head. Bracket toes at the deck are to be suitably supported.

Table 12. 5. 1: Air pipe thickness and bracket standards

	Minimum	Maximum	
Nominal pipe	fitted gross	projected area	Height(1) of
diameter,	thickness,	of head,	brackets,
in mm	in mm	in cm^2	in mm
65A	6.0	-	480
80A	6.3	-	460
100A	7.0	-	380
125A	7.8	-	300
150A	8.5	-	300
175A	8.5	-	300

200A	8.5(2)	1900	300(2)
250A	8.5(2)	2500	300(2)
300A	8.5(2)	3200	300(2)
350A	8.5(2)	3800	300(2)
400A	8.5(2)	4500	300(2)
(1)	Brackets (*See* Pt 3, Ch 12, 5.3 Strength requirements 5.3.3) need not extend over the joint flange for the head.		
(2)	Brackets are required where the as fitted (gross) thickness is less than 10.5mm, or where the tabulated projected head area is exceeded.		
Note For other pipe heights, the relevant requirements of Pt 3, Ch 12, 5.3, Strength requirements are to be applied.			

5. 3. 4 For other configurations, loads according to Pt 3, Ch 12, 5.2, Loading are to be applied, and means of support determined in order to comply with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 12, 5.3 Strength requirements 5.3.1 and Pt 3, Ch 12, 5.3 Strength requirements 5.3.2. Brackets, where fitted, are to be of suitable thickness and length according to their height. Pipe thickness is not to be taken less than as indicated in Pt 5, Ch 12 Piping Design Requirements.

Table 12. 5. 2: 900 mm Ventilator pipe thickness and bracket standards

	Minimum	Maximum	
Nominal pipe	fitted gross	projected area	Height of
diameter,	thickness,	of head,	brackets,
in mm	in mm	in cm^2	in mm
80A	6.3	-	460
100A	7.0	-	380
150A	8.5	-	300
200A	8.5	550	-
250A	8.5	880	-
300A	8.5	1200	-
350A	8.5	2000	-
400A	8.5	2700	-
450A	8.5	3300	-
500A	8.5	4000	-
Note For ventilator heights other than 900 mm, the relevant requirements of 5.3 are to be applied.			

5. 3. 5 For standard ventilators of 900 mm coaming height closed by heads of not more than the tabulated projected area, pipe thicknesses and bracket heights are specified in Table 12. 5. 2: 900 mm Ventilator pipe thickness and bracket standards. Brackets, where required, are to be as specified in Pt 3, Ch 12, 5.3 Strength requirements 5.3.3.

5. 3. 6 For ventilators of coaming height greater than 900 mm, the coaming support will be specially considered. Pipe thickness is not to be taken less than as indicated in Pt 5, Ch 12 Piping Design Requirements.

5. 3. 7 All component parts and connections of the air pipe or ventilator are to be capable of withstanding the loads defined in Pt 3, Ch 12, 5.2, Loading.

5. 4 Ventilator coamings

5. 4. 1 The height of ventilator coamings is to be not less than 900 mm, this height being measured above deck sheathing, where fitted. In particularly exposed positions, the heights of coamings and scantlings may be required to be increased.

5. 4. 2 The height of ventilator coamings may be required to be increased on ships of Type 'A', Type 'B-100' and Type 'B-60' where this is shown to be necessary by the floatability calculations required by the *Load Lines, 1966/1988 - International Convention on Load Lines, 1966, as Amended by the Protocol of 1988*.

5. 4. 3 For gooseneck ventilators, the coaming height is to be measured to the underside of the bend, this being the lowest point through which water on deck could pass freely to spaces below.

5. 4. 4 Where wall vents are fitted with an internal baffle which rises above the lower edge of the exterior opening, the coaming height is measured to the top of the baffle.

5. 4. 5 Where permitted by the National Authority, ventilator coaming heights may be reduced on ships engaged on protected or extended protected water service. Coaming heights are to be as high as practicable, with a minimum height of 450 mm.

5. 5 Height of air pipes

5. 5. 1 The height of air pipes from the upper surface of decks exposed to the weather, to the point where water may have access below is normally to be not less than 760 mm, this height being measured above deck sheathing, where fitted.

5. 5. 2 Lower heights may be approved in cases where these are essential for the working of the ship, provided that the design and arrangements are otherwise satisfactory. In such cases, efficient, permanently attached closing appliances of an approved automatic type will generally be required.

5. 5. 3 The height of air pipes may be required to be increased on ships of Type 'A', Type 'B-100' and Type 'B-60' where this is shown to be necessary by the floatability calculations required by the *Load Lines, 1966/1988 - International Convention on Load Lines, 1966, as Amended by the Protocol of 1988*. An increase in height may also be required or recommended by individual Administrations when air pipes to fuel oil and settling tanks are situated in positions where sea-water could be temporarily entrapped, e.g. in recesses in the sides and ends of superstructures or deckhouses, between hatch ends, behind high sections of bulwark, etc. This may entail an increase in tank scantlings, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 3 Structural Design.

5. 5. 4 Air pipes are generally to be led to an exposed deck. For alternative arrangements in an enclosed space on a main vehicle deck, *See* Pt 4, Ch 2, 9 Subdivision structure on vehicle deck.

5. 5. 5 Where air pipes are led through the side of superstructures, the opening is to be at least 2.3 m above the summer load waterline.

5. 5. 6 Where permitted by the National Authority, air pipe coaming heights may be reduced on ships engaged on protected or extended protected water service. Coaming heights are to be as high as practicable, with a minimum height of 450 mm.

5. 6 Closing appliances for ventilators

5. 6. 1 All ventilator openings are to be provided with efficient weathertight closing appliances unless the height of the coaming is greater than 4.5 m.

5. 6. 2 In ships where the load line length, L_L (*See* Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1, Principal particulars), is not more than 100 m, the closing appliances are to be permanently attached to the ventilator coaming. Where not so provided in other ships, they are to be conveniently stowed near the ventilator to which they are to be fitted.

5. 6. 3 Where, in ferries, ventilators are proposed to be led overboard in an enclosed 'tween deck, the closing arrangements are to be submitted for approval. If such ventilators are led overboard more than 4.5 m above the main vehicle deck, closing appliances may be omitted, provided that satisfactory baffles and drainage arrangements are provided, as in the case of air intakes or exhaust openings for machinery spaces, which may be arranged in the sides of the ship.

5. 6. 4 On offshore supply ships, to ensure satisfactory operation in all weather conditions, machinery space ventilation inlets and outlets are to be located in such positions that closing appliances will not be necessary.

5. 6. 5 Rotating type mushroom ventilator heads are unsuitable for application on the exposed fore deck.

5. 6. 6 Wall ventilators (jalousies) may be accepted provided they are capable of being closed weathertight by hinged steel gasketed covers secured by bolts or toggles.

5. 6. 7 A ventilator head not forming part of the closing arrangements is to be not less than 6.5 mm thick.

5. 7 Closing appliances for air pipes

5. 7. 1 All openings of air pipes are to be provided with permanently attached, satisfactory means of closing to prevent the free entry of water, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 12, 5.5 Height of air pipes 5.5.2.

5. 7. 2 Closing appliances are to be of an approved automatic type where, with the ship at its summer load waterline, the openings are immersed at an angle of heel of 40° or, the angle of down flooding if this is less than 40°. *See also* Pt 3, Ch 3, 6 Minimum bow heights, reserve buoyancy and extent of forecastle.

5. 7. 3 Where the closing appliances are not of an automatic type, provision is to be made for relieving vacuum when the tanks are being pumped out.

5. 7. 4 In a ship to which timber freeboards are assigned, air pipes which will be inaccessible when the deck cargo is carried are to be provided with approved automatic closing appliances.

5. 7. 5 Pressure/vacuum valves as required by Pt 5, Ch 15, 4 Cargo tank venting, purging and gas-freeing may be accepted as closing appliances for cargo tanks.

PART

3

CHAPTER **13 Ship Control Systems**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**1266**
	1. 1	Application	1266
	1. 2	General symbols	1266
	1. 3	Navigation in ice	1266
	1. 4	Podded propulsion	1266
SECTION 2	**Rudders**		**1267**
	2. 1	Application	1267
	2. 2	Design considerations	1267
	2. 3	Materials	1267
	2. 4	Welding and design details	1268
	2. 5	Equivalence	1268
	2. 6	Rudder force	1269
	2. 7	Rudder torque for rudder blades without cut-outs	1271
	2. 8	Rudder torque for rudder blades with cut-outs (semi-spade rudders)	1272
	2. 9	Rudder strength calculation	1273
	2. 10	Rudder stock scantlings	1273
	2. 11	Rudder blade	1276
	2. 12	Connections of rudder blade structure with solid parts	1278
	2. 13	Rudder stock flange couplings	1280
	2. 14	Cone couplings with key	1284
	2. 15	Cone couplings with special arrangements for mounting and dismounting the couplings	1286
	2. 16	Pintles	1288
	2. 17	Bearings	1289
SECTION 3	**Fixed and steering nozzles**		**1292**
	3. 1	General	1292

3. 2 Design pressure 1292
3. 3 Nozzle scantlings 1293
3. 4 Nozzle stock 1295
3. 5 Nozzle headbox 1296
3. 6 Ancillary items 1297
3. 7 Welding 1297
3. 8 Azimuth thrusters 1297
SECTION 4 Steering gear and allied systems 1298
4. 1 General 1298
SECTION 5 Bow and stern thrust unit structure 1299
5. 1 Unit wall thickness 1299
5. 2 Framing 1299
SECTION 6 Stabiliser structure 1300
6. 1 Fin stabilisers 1300
6. 2 Stabiliser tanks 1300
SECTION 7 Equipment 1301
7. 1 General 1301
7. 2 Anchors 1305
7. 3 High holding power anchors 1307
7. 4 Chain cables and chain locker 1307
7. 5 Mooring lines (Equipment Number $\leq$ 2000) 1309
7. 6 Mooring lines (Equipment Number > 2000) 1309
7. 7 Mooring Arrangement and winches 1312
7. 8 Towline and towing arrangement 1313
7. 9 Mooring and towline construction 1314
SECTION 8 Anchor windlass design and testing 1318
8. 1 General 1318
8. 2 Plans and particulars to be submitted 1318
8. 3 Materials and fabrication 1319
8. 4 Windlass design 1319
8. 5 Hydraulic systems 1321
8. 6 Electrical systems 1321
8. 7 Control arrangements 1322
8. 8 Protection arrangements 1322
8. 9 Shop inspection and testing 1323
8. 10 On-board testing 1323

8. 11 Marking and identification 1324
8. 12 Structural requirements associated with anchoring 1324
8. 13 Structural requirements for windlasses on exposed fore decks 1325
SECTION 9 Structural requirements associated with towing and mooring 1329
9. 1 eneral 1329
9. 2 Towing 1329
9. 3 Mooring 1333
9. 4 Towing and mooring arrangements plan 1336
9. 5 Corrosion addition 1336
9. 6 Wear allowance 1336
SECTION 10 Anchoring equipment in deep and unsheltered water 1337
10. 1 General 1337
10. 2 Anchor and chain cable 1337
10. 3 Anchor windlass and chain stopper 1338
SECTION 11 Mooring of ships at single point moorings 1341
11. 1 General 1341
11. 2 Arrangements 1343
SECTION 12 Emergency towing arrangements 1345
12. 1 Structural requirements 1345
12. 2 Chafing chain and wire or fibre rope for Emergency Towing Arrangements 1346

PART

3

CHAPTER **13 Ship Control Systems**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 13. 2. 1: Rudder material factor, *k* 1267
Table 13. 2. 2: *Rudder profiles* 1270
Table 13. 2. 3: Relative centre of pressure along the chord length, α 1271
Table 13. 2. 4: Rudder stock diameter 1274
Table 13. 2. 5: Rudder stock permissible stresses 1275
Table 13. 2. 6: Double plated rudder construction 1276
Table 13. 2. 7: Single plate rudder construction 1277
Table 13. 2. 8: Rudder blade permissible stresses 1278
Table 13. 2. 9: Thickness of side plating and vertical web plates in way of solid parts 1280
Table 13. 2. 10: Horizontal and Vertical flange couplings 1281
Table 13. 2. 11: Securing nut dimensions 1286
Table 13. 2. 12: Pintle requirements 1288
Table 13. 2. 13: Bearings 1289
Table 13. 2. 14: Maximum surface pressure 1290
Table 13. 3. 1: Nozzle construction 1293
Table 13. 7. 1: Equipment requirements 1301
Table 13. 7. 2: Equipment - Bower anchors and chain cables 1305
Table 13. 7. 3: Chain cable steel grades 1308
Table 13. 7. 4: Equipment – Stream anchors, stream wires, towlines and mooring lines 1314
Table 13. 7. 5: Equipment for fishing vessels 1316
Table 13. 8. 1: Values of K_b 1321
Table 13. 8. 2: Allowable stresses in windlass and chain stopper supporting structure 1324
Table 13. 8. 3: Allowable stress in windlass supporting structure for green sea loading 1328
Table 13. 9. 1: Minimum design load for deck fittings and supporting structure – Towing 1330
Table 13. 9. 2: Allowable stress within the supporting structure of shipboard fittings 1332
Table 13. 9. 3: Minimum design load for deck fittings and supporting structure - Mooring 1333
Table 13. 10. 1: Anchoring equipment for ships in unsheltered water with depth up to 120m 1339
Table 13. 11. 1: Deadweight group for shipboard fittings requirements 1343
Table 13. 11. 2: Fittings requirements for deadweight group 1343

Table 13. 12. 1: Permissible stress values 1345
Table 13. 12. 2: Nominal diameter of common link for chafing chains for ETA 1346

PART

3

CHAPTER **13 Ship Control Systems**

LIAST OF FIGURES

Figure 13. 2. 1: Rudder co-ordinate system 1270
Figure 13. 2. 2: Rudder Areas 1273
Figure 13. 2. 3: Rudder stock taper 1275
Figure 13. 2. 4: Cross-section of the connection between rudder blade structure and rudder stock housing 1279
Figure 13. 2. 5: Rudder stock horizontal flange palm radius for spade rudders 1283
Figure 13. 2. 6: Welded joint between rudder stock and coupling flange 1283
Figure 13. 2. 7: Rudder stock horizontal flange coupling 1284
Figure 13. 2. 8: Cone coupling with key 1285
Figure 13. 3. 1: Nozzle construction 1293
Figure 13. 3. 2: Nozzle geometry 1296
Figure 13. 7. 1: Typical mooring arrangement 1311
Figure 13. 7. 2: Typical towing arrangement 1314
Figure 13. 8. 1: Windlass loading 1326
Figure 13. 8. 2: Direction of forces and weight 1327
Figure 13. 9. 1: Design load applied to fittings 1331
Figure 13. 9. 2: Supporting hull structure 1332
Figure 13. 9. 3: Supporting hull structure 1335
Figure 13. 11. 1: Positioning of forward fairleads, bow chain stoppers and pedestal roller leads 1342
Figure 13. 12. 1: Typical outboard chafing chain end 1346

PART

3

CHAPTER **13 Ship Control Systems**

SECTION **1 General**

1. 1 Application

1. 1. 1 This Chapter applies to all the ship types detailed in Pt 4 Ship Structures (Ship Types), and requirements are given for rudders, nozzles, steering gear, bow and stern thrust unit structure, stabiliser structure, anchoring and mooring equipment, and emergency towing arrangements.

1. 1. 2 The requirements in this Chapter are not applicable to Double Hull Oil Tankers or Bulk Carriers with a **CSR** notation (*See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull)) with the exception of the following:

- For Double Hull Tankers; Sections Pt 3, Ch 13, 2 Rudders to Pt 3, Ch 13, 6 Stabiliser structure are to be complied with as applicable.
- For Bulk Carriers; Sections Pt 3, Ch 13, 3 Fixed and steering nozzles to Pt 3, Ch 13, 6 Stabiliser structure and Section Pt 3, Ch 13, 12 Emergency towing arrangements are to be complied with as applicable.

1. 2 General symbols

1. 2. 1 The following symbols and definitions are applicable to this Chapter, unless otherwise stated:

L, B and C_b as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1, Principal particulars

σ_o = minimum yield stress or 0. 5 per cent proof stress of the material, in N/mm^2

k = higher tensile steel factor, *See* Pt 3, Ch 2, 1.2, Steel.

1. 3 Navigation in ice

1. 3. 1 Where an ice class notation is included in the class of a ship, additional requirements are applicable as detailed in Pt 8 Rules for Ice and Cold Operations.

1. 4 Podded propulsion

1. 4. 1 Where podded propulsion is included in the class of a ship, additional requirements as detailed in Pt 5, Ch 9 Podded Propulsion Units are to be complied with, as applicable.

PART

3

CHAPTER **13 Ship Control Systems**

SECTION **2 Rudders**

2. 1 Application

2. 1. 1 This Section applies to ordinary profile rudders, and to some enhanced profile rudders with special arrangements for increasing the rudder force, as defined in Table 13. 2. 2: Rudder profiles.

2. 2 Design considerations

2. 2. 1 Effective means are to be provided for supporting the weight of the rudder without excessive bearing pressure, e.g. by a rudder carrier attached to the upper part of the rudder stock. The hull structure in way of the rudder carrier is to be suitably strengthened.

2. 2. 2 Suitable arrangements are to be provided to prevent the rudder from lifting.

2. 2. 3 In rudder trunks which are open to the sea, a seal or stuffing box is to be fitted above the deepest load waterline, to prevent water from entering the steering gear compartment and the lubricant from being washed away from the rudder carrier. If the top of the rudder trunk is below the deepest load waterline, two separate stuffing boxes are to be provided. Rudder trunk boundaries, where exposed to the sea, are to have a corrosion protection coating applied in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2. 3 Materials

2. 3. 1 The requirements for materials are contained in the Part 2

2. 3. 2 Stern frames, rudder horns, shaft brackets, rudder stocks, pintles, coupling bolts, keys, and other rudder members are to be made of rolled, forged or cast carbon-manganese steel in accordance with Ch 3 Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars, Ch 4 Steel Castings and Ch 5 Steel Forgings of the Part 2. The requirements for stern frames, rudder horns and shaft brackets are to be in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 6, 7 Sternframes and appendages.

2. 3. 3 For rudder stocks, pintles, coupling bolts and keys the minimum yield stress is not to be less than 200 N/mm^2.

2. 3. 4 For all parts of the rudder, including rudder stocks, pintles, coupling bolts and keys having a specified minimum yield stress differing from 235 N/mm^2, the material factor, k is to be determined in accordance with :

Table 13. 2. 1: Rudder material factor, *k*

Specified minimum yield stress, σ_o (N/mm^2)	k

$\sigma_o > 235$	$k = \left(\frac{235}{\sigma_0}\right)^{0.75}$
$\sigma_O \leq 235$	$k = \frac{235}{\sigma_0}$

Note 1. The specified minimum yield stress is not to be taken as greater than 70 per cent of the ultimate tensile strength.

Note 2.The specified minimum yield stress is not to be taken as greater than 450 N/mm^2.

2. 4 Welding and design details

2. 4. 1 Slot-welding is to be limited as far as possible. Slot welding is not to be used in areas subject to large in-plane stresses transverse to the slots or in way of cut-outs of semi-spade rudders. Continuous butt welding with backing may be accepted in lieu of slot welds. When continuous butt welding is applied, the root gap is to be between 6-10 mm. The bevel angle is to be at least 15°.

2. 4. 2 When slot welding is applied, the length of individual slots is to be not less than 75 mm with a minimum breadth of 2 times the plate thickness. The distance between ends of adjacent slots is to be not greater than 125 mm. The slots are to be fillet welded around the edges and filled with a suitable compound, e.g. epoxy putty. Slots are not to be filled with weld. The ends of slots are to be rounded.

2. 4. 3 The rudder, in way of rudder horn recesses of semi-spade rudders, are to have well radiused corners. The corner radii are not to be less than 5 times the local rudder plate thickness, but in no case less than 100 mm. Welding in the rudder side plating is to be positioned away from these corner radii. The weld connecting the side plate and the leading edge plate in way of these radiused corners is to be ground smooth.

2. 4. 4 Welds between plates and forged or cast parts or very thick plating are to be made as full penetration welds. In way of highly stressed areas e.g. cut-outs of semi-spade rudders and upper parts of spade rudders, cast or welded on ribs are to be arranged. Two sided full penetration welding is normally to be arranged. Where back welding is impossible welding is to be performed against ceramic backing bars or equivalent. Steel backing bars may be used and are to be continuously welded on one side to the heavy piece.

2. 5 Equivalence

2. 5. 1 Asia Classification Society *(hereinafter referred to as ACS)* may accept alternatives to the requirements given in this Section, provided they are deemed to be equivalent.

2. 5. 2 Direct analyses adopted to justify an alternative design are to take into consideration all relevant modes of failure, on a case by case basis. These failure modes may include, amongst others: yielding, fatigue, buckling and fracture. Possible damages caused by cavitation are also to be considered.

2. 5. 3 If deemed necessary by *ACS*, lab tests, or full scale tests may be requested to validate the alternative design approach.

2. 6 Rudder force

2. 6. 1 The lateral rudder force at the centre of pressure is to be determined for both ahead and astern conditions as follows:

$$C_R = 132K_1K_2K_3AV^2 \text{ N}$$

Where

A = rudder blade area, in m^2.

V = maximum service speed, in knots, for both the ahead and astern conditions.

= V_{ahead} is to be taken as the maximum service speed at the summer load waterline at maximum propeller RPM and corresponding engine MCR. Where this speed is less than 10 knots, V_{ahead} is to be replaced by the following expression:

V_{min} = $\frac{V_{ahead} + 20}{3}$

= V_{astern}, is to be taken as the maximum astern speed or $0.5V_{ahead}$, whichever is the greater.

K_1 = aspect ratio correction factor

= $\frac{\lambda + 2}{3}$

λ = $\frac{h_R^2}{A_t}$ but is not to be taken greater than 2.

h_R = mean height, in m, of the rudder blade, *See* Figure 13. 2. 1: Rudder co-ordinate system;

A_t = sum of rudder blade area A and area of rudder post or rudder horn, if any, within the mean height h_R, in m^2.

K_2 = rudder profile coefficient, *See*Table 13. 2. 2: Rudder profiles;

K_3 = 0.8 for rudders outside the propeller jet.

= 1.15 for rudders behind a fixed propeller nozzle.

= 1.0 otherwise.

Figure 13. 2. 1: Rudder co-ordinate system

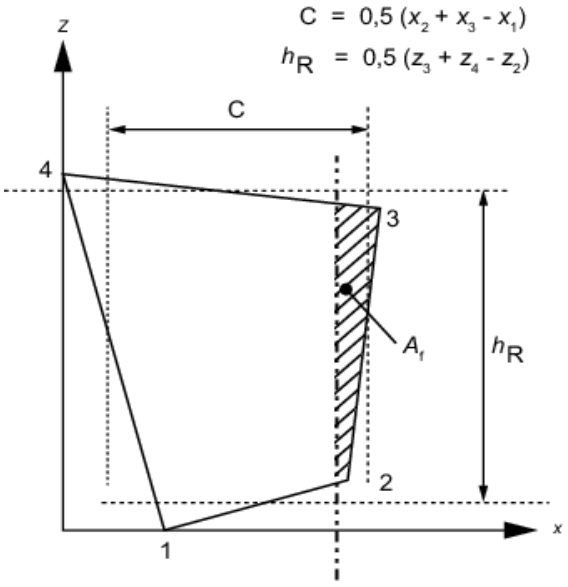
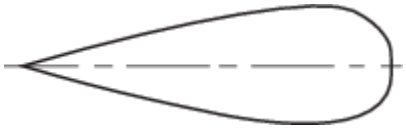
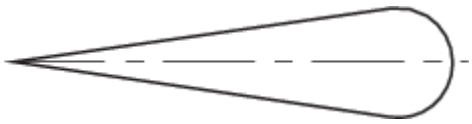
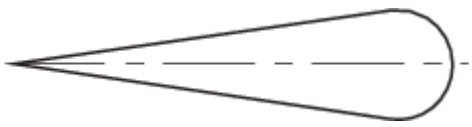
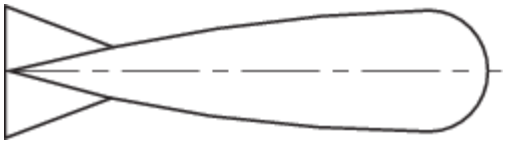
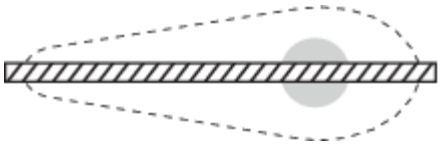


Table 13. 2. 2: *Rudder profiles*

Profile Type	*K*2	
	Ahead condition	Astern condition
NACA-00 series 	1.10	0.80
Flat sided 	1.10	0.90
Hollow 	1.35	0.90
High lift rudders	1.70	To be specially considered
Fish tail	1.40	0.80

		
Single plate 	1.00	1.00
Mixed profiles	1.21	0.90
Note For rudder profiles not defined above, the value of K_2 may be determined on the basis of experimental results. These results are to be submitted for consideration.		

2. 7 Rudder torque for rudder blades without cut-outs

2. 7. 1 The maximum rudder torque, Q_R, is to be determined from both the ahead and astern conditions as follows:

$$Q_R = C_{R2}\text{Nm}$$

Where

C_R = lateral force acting on the rudder, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 13, 2.6 Rudder force 2.6.1.

r = distance from the centre of pressure to the centreline of the rudder stock.

$= c(\alpha - k_1)$, in m.

c = mean breadth of the rudder blade, (the mean chord length), in m, *See* Figure 13. 2. 1: Rudder co-ordinate system.

α = relative centre of pressure along the chord length, *See* Table 13. 2. 3: Relative centre of pressure along the chord length, α.

k_1 = ratio of the rudder blade area forward of the rudder stock centreline, to the rudder blade area:

$= \frac{A_f}{A}$

A_f = portion of the rudder blade area situated ahead of the centreline of the rudder stock.

For the ahead condition the rudder torque, Q_R is not to be taken less than:

$$Q_R = 0.1cC_R\text{Nm}$$

Table 13. 2. 3: Relative centre of pressure along the chord length, α

Condition	Behind fixed structure	Not behind a fixed structure
Ahead	0.25	0.33
Astern	0.55	0.66

Note Fixed structure is defined as any relatively stationary structure immediately ahead of the rudder, for example rudder horns of semi-spade rudders.

2. 8 Rudder torque for rudder blades with cut-outs (semi-spade rudders)

2. 8. 1 The maximum rudder torque, Q_R, is to be determined from both the ahead and astern conditions, for rudder blades with cut-outs, as follows. The pressure distribution for rudder blades with cut-outs is assumed to be proportional to the areas above and below the base of the cut-out. The rudder blade area, A, is to be divided into parts as per Figure 13. 2. 2: Rudder Areas.

$$Q_R \qquad Q_{R1} + Q_{R2} \text{Nm}$$

Where

Q_{R1} = $C_{R1} r_1$.

Q_{R2} = $C_{R2} r_2$

C_R = lateral force acting on the rudder, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 13, 2.6 Rudder force 2.6.1

C_{R1} = $C_R \frac{A_1}{A}$

C_{R2} = $C_R \frac{A_2}{A}$

r_1 = $c_1(\alpha - k_1)$, in m.

r_2 = $c_2(\alpha - k_2)$, in m.

c_1 = mean breadth, in m, of partial area A_1.

c_2 = mean breadth, in m, of partial area A_2.

α = relative centre of pressure along the chord length, *See* Table 13. 2. 3: Relative centre of pressure along the chord length, α.

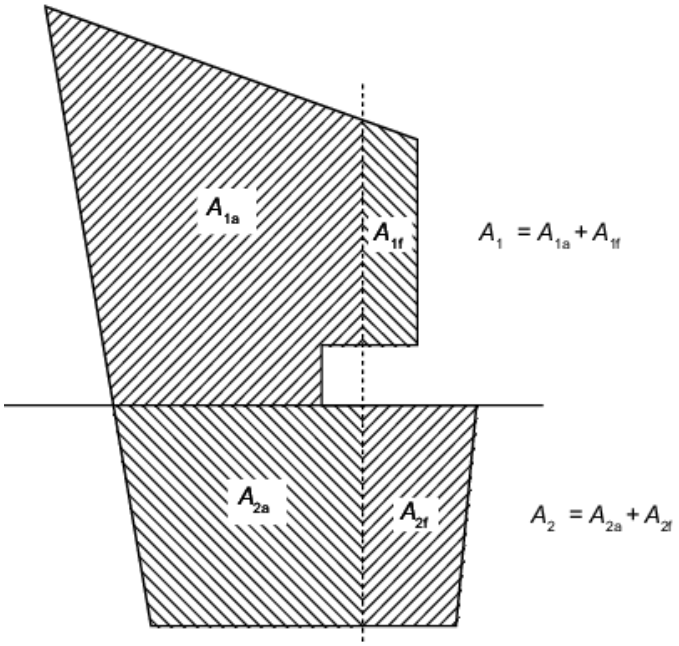
K_1 = $\frac{A_{1f}}{A_1}$

K_2 = $\frac{A_{2f}}{A_2}$

For the ahead condition the rudder torque, Q_R is not to be taken less than:

$$Q_R = 0.1 \frac{A_1 c_1 + A_2 c_2}{A} C_R \ Nm$$

Figure 13. 2. 2: Rudder Areas



2. 9 Rudder strength calculation

2. 9. 1 The rudder force and resulting rudder torques as given in Pt 3, Ch 13, 2.6, Rudder force, Pt 3, Ch 13, 2.7 Rudder torque for rudder blades without cut-outs or Pt 3, Ch 13, 2.8 Rudder torque for rudder blades with cut-outs (semi-spade rudders), cause bending moments and shear forces in the rudder body, bending moments and torques in the rudder stock, supporting forces in pintle bearings and rudder stock bearings and bending moments, shear forces and torques in rudder horns and heel pieces. The rudder body is to be stiffened by horizontal and vertical webs enabling it to act as a bending girder.

2. 9. 2 The bending moments, shear forces and torques as well as the reaction forces described in Pt 3, Ch 13, 2.9 Rudder strength calculation 2.9.1 are to be determined by direct calculations or where otherwise stated by an approximate simplified formulae. For rudders supported by sole pieces or rudder horns these structures are to be included in the calculation model in order to account for the elastic support of the rudder body.

2. 10 Rudder stock scantlings

2. 10. 1 The scantlings of the rudder stock are to be not less than required by Table 13. 2. 4: Rudder stock diameter.

The rudder stock diameter is to be dimensioned such that the stresses do not exceed the permissible stresses given in Table 13. 2. 5: Rudder stock permissible stresses.

2. 10. 2 Before significant reductions in rudder stock diameter due to the application of steels with yield stresses exceeding 235 N/mm^2 are granted, *ACS* may require the evaluation of the rudder stock deformations. Large deformations of the rudder stock are to be avoided in order to avoid excessive edge pressures in way of bearings.

2. 10. 3 For spade rudders the stock diameter corrected for higher tensile steel is to be greater than 90 per cent of the uncorrected stock diameter unless direct calculations are submitted showing that the slope of the stock at the lowest main bearing does not exceed 0.0035 when the rudder blade is

loaded by a lateral force of C_R, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 13, 2.6 Rudder force 2.6.1, acting at the center of pressure.

2. 10. 4 For rudders having an increased diameter of the rudder stock in way of the rudder, the increased diameter is to be maintained to a point as far as practicable above the top of the lowest bearing. The diameter may then be tapered to the diameter required in way of the tiller. The length of the taper is to be at least three times the reduction in diameter. Particular care is to be taken to avoid the formation of a notch at the upper end of the taper, *See* Figure 13. 2. 3: Rudder stock taper.

2. 10. 5 Sudden changes of section or sharp corners in way of the rudder coupling, jumping collars and shoulders for rudder carriers, are to be avoided. Jumping collars are not to be welded to the rudder stock. Keyways in the rudder stock are to have rounded ends and the corners at the base of the keyway are to be radiused.

Table 13. 2. 4: Rudder stock diameter

Item	Requirement
(1) Rudder stock diameter due to combined loads	$d_c = d_t \sqrt[6]{1 + \frac{4}{3}\left(\frac{M}{Q_R}\right)^2}$
(2) Rudder stock diameter required for transmission of the rudder torque (e.g. in way of tiller)	$d_t = 4.2\sqrt[3]{Q_R k}$
Symbols	
Q_R = maximum rudder torque, in Nm, as calculated in Pt 3, Ch 13, 2.8 Rudder torque for rudder blades with cut-outs (semi-spade rudders) M = bending moment, in Nm, at the section of the rudder stock under consideration, *See* Pt 3, Ch 13, 2.9 Rudder strength calculation 2.9.2.	
Note 1. If direct calculations are not carried out, then the following approximate formulae may be applied: For rudders with a heel support; $M = \frac{h_R}{10\left(\frac{c^2}{A}\right)} C_R$ For spade rudders; $M = C_R h_c$ For semi-spade rudders; $M = \frac{h_R}{10\left(1 + \frac{c^2}{A}\right)} C_R$ where h_R = mean height, in m, of the rudder blade, *See* Figure 13. 2. 1: Rudder co-ordinate system.	

h_c = the distance, in m, from the centroid of the rudder blade area to the centre of the lowest main bearing;

c = mean breadth of the rudder blade, (the mean chord length), in m, *See* Figure 13. 2. 1: Rudder co-ordinate system.

A = rudder blade area, in m^2.

Figure 13. 2. 3: Rudder stock taper

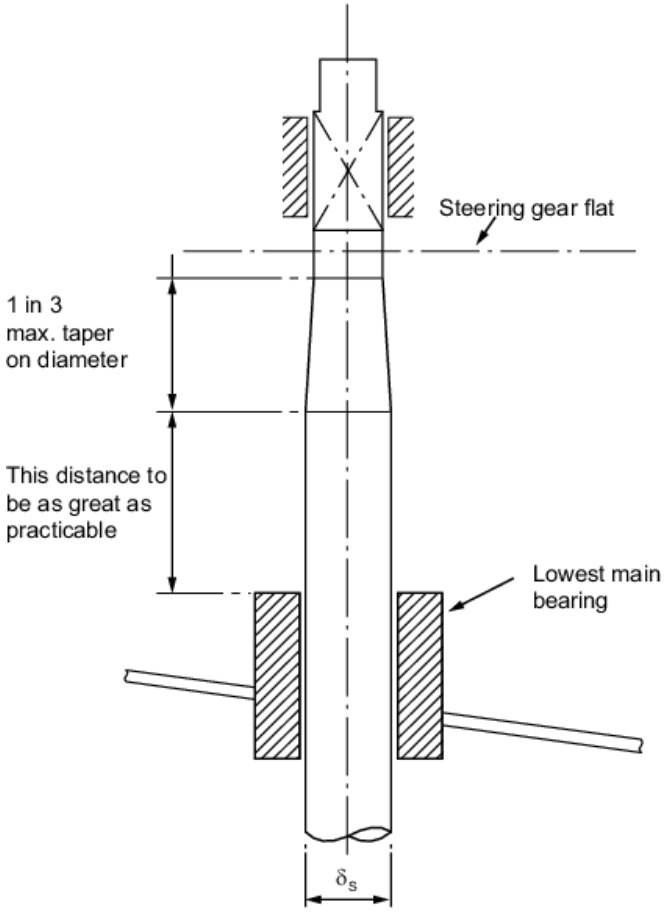


Table 13. 2. 5: Rudder stock permissible stresses

Mode	Permissible stress, N/mm^2
(1) Torsional shear stress, τ_t	$\frac{68}{k}$
(2) Equivalent stress, σ_c	$\frac{118}{k}$
Symbols	

Equivalent stress:

$$\sigma_c = \sqrt{\sigma_b^2 + 3\tau_t^2} \quad N/mm^2$$

Bending stress:

$$\sigma_b = 10.2 \times 10^3 \frac{M}{d_c^3} \quad \mathrm{N/mm^2}$$

Torsional stress:

$$\tau_t = 5.1 \times 10^3 \frac{Q_R}{d_c^3} \quad \mathrm{N/mm^2}$$

M = bending moment, in Nm, at the section of the rudder stock under consideration, *See* Pt 3, Ch 13, 2.9 Rudder strength calculation 2.9.2.

d_c= actual stock diameter, in mm.

2. 11 Rudder blade

2. 11. 1 The scantlings of a double plated rudder are to be not less than required by Table 13. 2. 6: Double plated rudder construction.

2. 11. 2 The scantlings of single plate rudders are to be not less than required by Table 13. 2. 7: Single plate rudder construction.

2. 11. 3 All rudders are to be dimensioned such that the stresses do not exceed the permissible stresses given in Table 13. 2. 8: Rudder blade permissible stresses.

2. 11. 4 In way of rudder couplings, pintles, and cut-outs of semi-spade rudders the plating thickness is to be suitably increased. Adequate hand or access holes are to be arranged in the rudder plating in way of pintles as required, and the rudder plating is to be reinforced locally in way of these openings, *See* Table 13. 2. 9: Thickness of side plating and vertical web plates in way of solid parts.

2. 11. 5 For spade rudders fitted with a fabricated rectangular mainpiece, the mainpiece is to be designed with its forward and aft transverse sections at similar distances forward and aft of the rudder stock transverse axis.

2. 11. 6 Internal surfaces of double plate rudders are to be efficiently coated. Alternatively, where it is intended to fill the rudder with plastic foam or use a corrosion inhibitor, details are to be submitted. Means for draining the rudder are to be provided.

Table 13. 2. 6: Double plated rudder construction

Item	Requirement
(1) Rudder side, top and bottom plating	$t = 5.5s\beta\sqrt{k(T + \frac{C_R 10^{-4}}{A})} + 2.5\ mm$
(2) Webs, vertical and horizontal	tw ≥ 0.7t but is not to be less than 8 mm
(3) Nose plate	tn ≥ 1.25t but need not exceed 22 mm

(4) Mainpiece, (*See* Notes 1 and 2)	Rectangular (fabricated)	Breadth and width ≥ d_c The side plating of the mainpiece is to extend 0.2c and is to be in accordance with (1) and the vertical webs as per (2), but in no case are either to be less than tM.	$t_M \geq 8.5 + 0.56\sqrt{d_c}\sqrt[3]{k}$ mm (*See* Note 3 and 4)
	Tubular	Inside diameter ≥ d_c	
Symbols			
T = draught, in m, as given in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1, Principal particulars; C_R = rudder force, in N, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 13, 2.6 Rudder force 2.6.1; A = rudder area, in m^2; $\beta = \sqrt{1.1 - 0.5\left(\frac{s}{b}\right)^2}$; max. 1.00 if b/s ≥ 2.5 k = material factor, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 13, 2.3 Materials 2.3.4 s = smallest unsupported width of plating in m b = greatest unsupported width of plating in m c = chord length in m, as defined in Figure 13. 2. 1: Rudder co-ordinate system.			
Note 1. The mainpiece bending stresses are to be not greater than those in Table 13. 2. 8: Rudder blade permissible stresses. **Note** 2. The mainpiece plating attached to solid forged or cast parts, is not to be less than that required by Pt 3, Ch 13, 2.12 Connections of rudder blade structure with solid parts. **Note** 3. The stock diameter to be used for calculating the mainpiece plate thickness is to be based on the mild steel stock scantlings, as given in Table 13. 2. 4: Rudder stock diameter. **Note** 4. The requirement of *t*M need only be applied to the upper part of the rudder plate: for semi spade rudders; above a point midway between the lowest pintle and the bottom of the rudder. for spade rudders; above a point one third of the height of the rudder above the base.			

Table 13. 2. 7: Single plate rudder construction

Item	Requirement
(1) Blade thickness	The greater of; $t_b = 1.5sV\sqrt{k + 2.5}$; or 10 mm.
(2) Arms	$t_a = t_b$ The section modulus is not to be less than: $Z_a = 0.5\ sC_1^2\ V^2kcm^3$
(3) Mainpiece, *See* Note 1	As per Table 13. 2. 4: Rudder stock diameter
Symbols	
s = spacing of stiffening arms, in m, but is not to exceed 1 m. V = speed in knots, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 13, 2.6 Rudder force 2.6.1. C_1 = horizontal distance from the aft edge of the rudder to the centreline of the rudder stock, in m.	

Note 1. For spade rudders the lower third may be taper down to 0.75 d_c.

Table 13. 2. 8: Rudder blade permissible stresses

Item	Permissible stress, N/mm^2		
	Bending stress, σ_b	Shear stress, τ	Equivalent stress, σ_c
Rudder blade, clear of cut-outs	$\frac{110}{k}$	$\frac{50}{k}$	$\frac{120}{k}$
Rudder blade in way of cut-outs, of semi-spade rudders	75	50	100

2. 12 Connections of rudder blade structure with solid parts

2. 12. 1 Solid parts in forged or cast steel, which house the rudder stock or the pintle, are to be provided with protrusions, except as follows, *See* Figure 13. 2. 4: Cross-section of the connection between rudder blade structure and rudder stock housing. These protrusions are not required when the web plate thickness is less than:

a. 10 mm for web plates welded to the solid part on which the lower pintle of a semi-spade rudder is housed and for vertical web plates welded to the solid part of the rudder stock coupling of spade rudders.

b. 20 mm for other web plates.

2. 12. 2 The solid parts are in general to be connected to the rudder structure by means of two horizontal web plates and two vertical web plates, *See* Figure 13. 2. 4: Cross-section of the connection between rudder blade structure and rudder stock housing.

2. 12. 3 The minimum section modulus of the cross-section of the structure of the rudder blade formed by vertical web plates and rudder plating, which is connected with the solid part where the rudder stock is housed is to be not less than:

$$w_s = c_s d_c^3 \left(\frac{H_{E-H_x}}{H_E}\right)\frac{k}{k_s}10^{-4} \quad \text{cm}^3$$

Where

c_s = coefficient, to be taken equal to:

= 1.0 if there is no opening in the rudder plating or if such openings are closed by a full penetration welded plate.

= 1.5 if there is an opening in the considered cross-section of the rudder.

d_c = rudder stock diameter, in mm.

H_E = vertical distance between the lower edge of the rudder blade and the upper edge of the solid part, in m.

H_X = vertical distance between the considered cross-section and the upper edge of the solid part, in m.

k = material factor for the rudder blade plating, *See* Pt 3, Ch 13, 2.3 Materials 2.3.4.

k_s = material factor for the rudder stock, *See* Pt 3, Ch 13, 2.3 Materials 2.3.4.

2. 12. 4 The actual section modulus of the cross-section of the structure of the rudder blade is to be calculated with respect to the symmetrical axis of the rudder, *See* the x-x axis in Figure 13. 2. 4: Cross-section of the connection between rudder blade structure and rudder stock housing. The breadth of the rudder plating to be considered for the calculation of section modulus is to be not greater than:

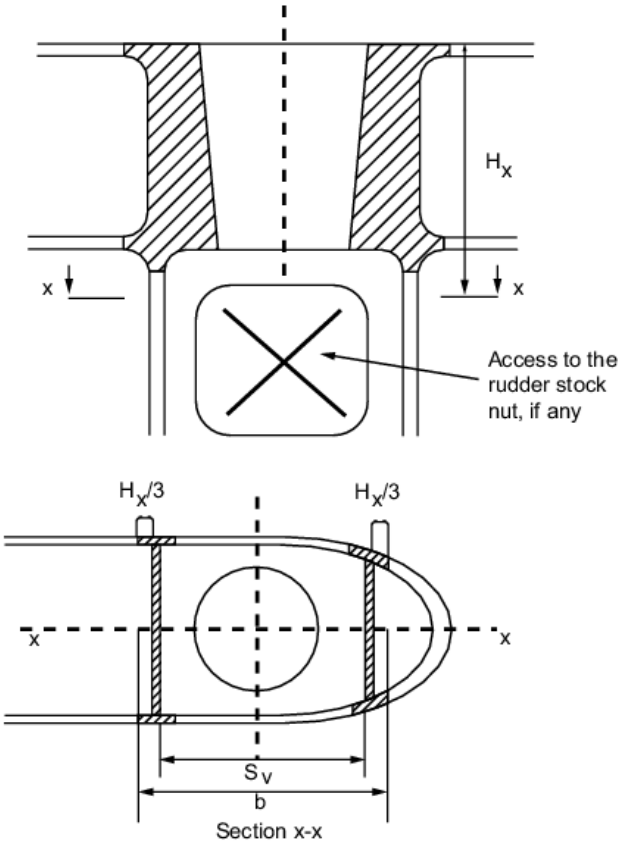
$$b = s_v + \frac{2H_x}{3} \quad m$$

Where

s_v = spacing between the two vertical webs, in m.

Where openings for access to the rudder stock nut are not closed by a full penetration welded plate, they are not to be included in the section modulus calculations.

Figure 13. 2. 4: Cross-section of the connection between rudder blade structure and rudder stock housing



2. 12. 5 The thickness of the horizontal web plates connected to the solid parts as well as that of the rudder blade plating between these webs, is to be not less than the greater of the following values:

t_H = $1.2\,t$ mm

t_H = $0.045\frac{d_s^2}{S_H}$ mm

Where

t = as calculated in Table 13. 2. 6: Double plated rudder construction

d_S = stock diameter, in mm, to be taken equal to:

= d_c for the solid part housing the rudder stock, as calculated in Table 13. 2. 4: Rudder stock diameter.

= $d_p$for the solid part housing the pintle, as calculated in Table 13. 2. 12: Pintle requirements.

S_H = spacing between the two horizontal web plates, in mm.

The increased thickness of the horizontal webs is to extend fore and aft of the solid part at least to the next vertical web.

2. 12. 6 The thickness of the vertical web plates welded to the solid part where the rudder stock is housed as well as the thickness of the rudder side plating above and below this solid part is to be not less than the values obtained from Table 13. 2. 9: Thickness of side plating and vertical web plates in way of solid parts. The increased thickness is to extend above and below the solid piece at least to the next horizontal web.

Table 13. 2. 9: Thickness of side plating and vertical web plates in way of solid parts

Type of rudder	Thickness of vertical web plates, in mm		Thickness of rudder plating, in mm, *See* Note 1	Area with opening
	Rudder blade without opening	Rudder blade with opening	Rudder blade without opening	
Rudder supported by sole piece	1.2 t	1.6 t	1.2 t	1.4 t
Semi-spade and spade rudders	1.4 t	2.0 t	1.3 t	1.6 t
Symbols				
t = thickness of the rudder plating, in mm, as calculated in Table 13. 2. 6: Double plated rudder construction c = chord length in m, as defined in Figure 13. 2. 1: Rudder co-ordinate system.				
Note 1. The side plating of the mainpiece is to extend at least 0.2c.				

2. 13 Rudder stock flange couplings

2. 13. 1 Rudder stock horizontal and vertical flange couplings are to be in accordance with Table 13. 2. 10: Horizontal and Vertical flange couplings.

2. 13. 2 For rudders with horizontal coupling arrangements the rudder stock should be forged when the stock diameter exceeds 350 mm. Where the stock diameter does not exceed 350 mm the rudder stock may be either forged or fabricated. Where the upper flange is welded to the rudder stock, a full penetration weld is required and its integrity is to be confirmed by non-destructive examination. The flange material is to be from the same welding materials group as the stock. Such rudder stocks are to be subjected to a furnace post-weld heat treatment (PWHT) after completion of all welding operations. For carbon or carbon manganese steels, the PWHT temperature is not to be less than 600°C.

2. 13. 3 For a horizontal flange coupling of a spade rudder, the palm radius, between the rudder stock and the flange, is not to be less than that calculated from Figure 13. 2. 5: Rudder stock horizontal

flange palm radius for spade rudders, *See also* Figure 13. 2. 7: Rudder stock horizontal flange coupling.

Where

d_c, R, t_f are defined in Table 13. 2. 10: Horizontal and Vertical flange couplings

b_f = breadth of flange, in mm.

2. 13. 4 For all rudder types, with a horizontal welded flange connection to the rudder stock, the connection details are in general to be in accordance with Figure 13. 2. 6: Welded joint between rudder stock and coupling flange.

2. 13. 5 The connecting bolts for coupling the rudder to the rudder stock are to be positioned with sufficient clearance to allow the fitting and removal of the bolts and nuts without contacting the palm radius. The surface forming the palm radius is to be free of hard and sharp corners and is to be machined smooth to the Surveyor's satisfaction. The surface in way of bolts and nuts is to be machined smooth to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

2. 13. 6 Coupling bolts are to be fitted bolts and their nuts are to be locked effectively.

Table 13. 2. 10: Horizontal and Vertical flange couplings

Item	Requirement	
	Horizontal coupling	Vertical coupling
Number of coupling bolts	n ≥ 6	n ≥ 8
Diameter of coupling bolts, in mm	$d_b = 0.62\sqrt{\frac{d_c^3 k_b}{n e_m k_s}}$	$d_b = 0.81 d_c \sqrt{\frac{k_b}{n k_s}}$
Thickness of coupling flange, in mm	The greater of the following, (*See* Note 1): $t_f = d_b\sqrt{\frac{k_f}{k_b}}$ (b) $t_f = 0.9 d_b$ (c) $t_f = 0.33 d_c \sqrt[3]{k_s}$ (*See* Notes 2 and 3)	$t_f = d_b$
Width of flange material outside the bolt holes, in mm	$W_f = 0.67 d_b$	$W_f = 0.67 d_b$
First moment of area of bolts about centre of coupling, in cm^3	$m = 0.00071 n d_c d_b^2 \sqrt{\frac{k_b}{k_s}}$	$m = 0.00043 d_c^3 \sqrt{\frac{k_b}{k_s}}$
Stress concentration factor for as built scantlings	$\alpha_{asbuitt} \le \alpha_{max}$(See Note 2)	-
Symbols		
d_c = stock diameter, in mm, as calculated in Table 13. 2. 4: Rudder stock diameter. n = total number of bolts. e_m = mean distance, in mm, of the bolt axes from the centre of the bolt system. k_s = material factor for the stock. k_b = material factor for the bolts.		

k_f = material factor for flange.

d_b = bolt diameter, in mm.

w_f = width of flange material outside the bolt holes, in mm.

m = first moment of area of bolts about the centre of the coupling, in cm^3.

$$\alpha_{asbuilt} = \frac{0.73}{\sqrt{\frac{R}{d}}}$$

$\alpha_{asbuilt}$ = stress concentration factor for as built scantlings.

α_{max} = maximum allowable stress concentration factor.

$$\alpha_{max} = \left((53.82 - 35.29k_{max})\frac{d^3}{hC_R 10^3}\right) - \left(\left(1.8 - 6.3\frac{R}{d}\right)\left(\frac{t_f - t_{fa}}{t_{fa}}\right)\right)$$

h = vertical distance, in m, between the centre of pressure and the centre point of the palm radius, *See* Figure 13. 2. 7: Rudder stock horizontal flange coupling.

k_{max} = the greater of k_s or k_f

R = palm radius, in mm, between the rudder stock and connection flange.

t_f = minimum thickness of coupling flange, in mm.

t_{fa} = as built flange thickness, in mm.

Note 1. Where the value of d_b is to be calculated for a number of bolts not exceeding 8.

Note 2. This requirement is only applicable for spade rudders with horizontal couplings, *See* Figure 13. 2. 7: Rudder stock horizontal flange coupling.

Note 3. For a twin spade rudder arrangement with a single screw, and where the rudders are positioned within the slipstream of the propeller:

the thickness of the palm plate/coupling flange is not to be less than $0.35d\sqrt[3]{k_s}$

where the stock is welded to the palm plate, the stock diameter is to be increased by 14 per cent

Figure 13. 2. 5: Rudder stock horizontal flange palm radius for spade rudders

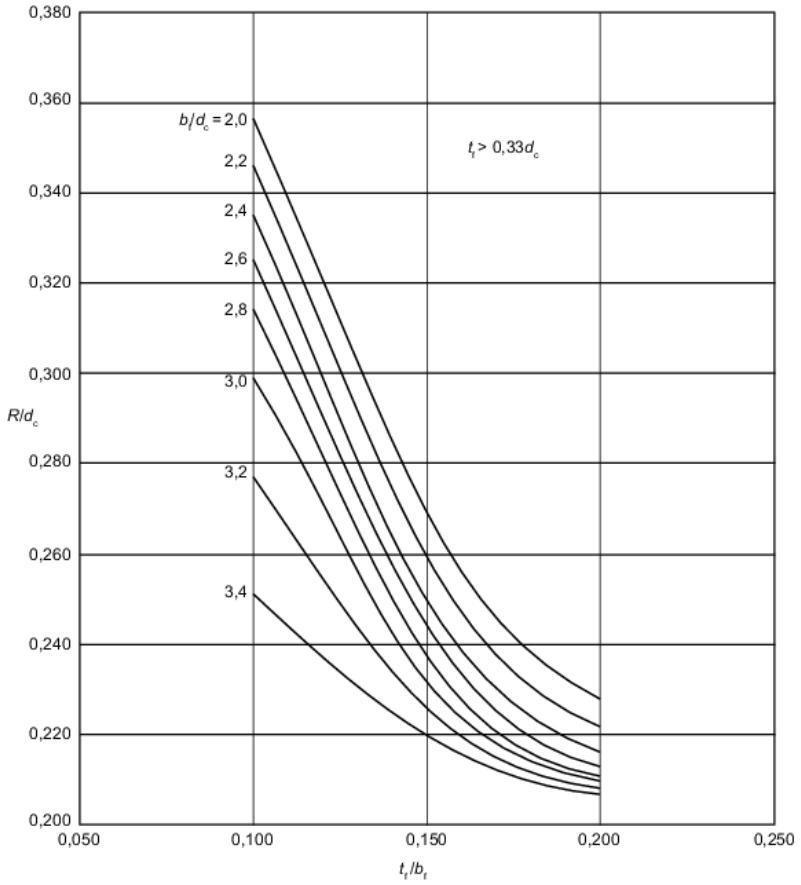


Figure 13. 2. 6: Welded joint between rudder stock and coupling flange

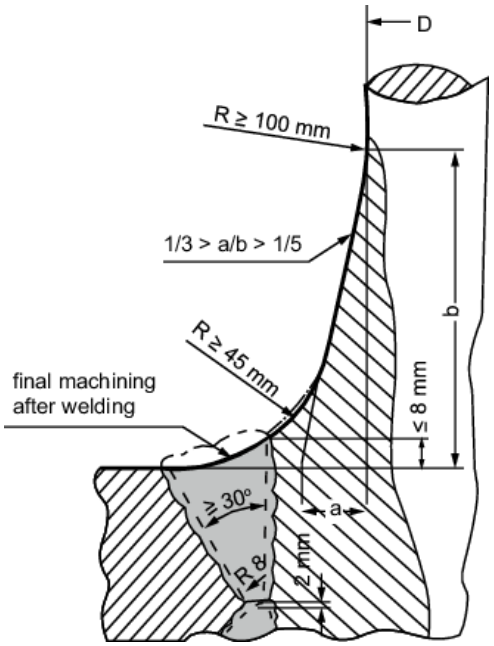
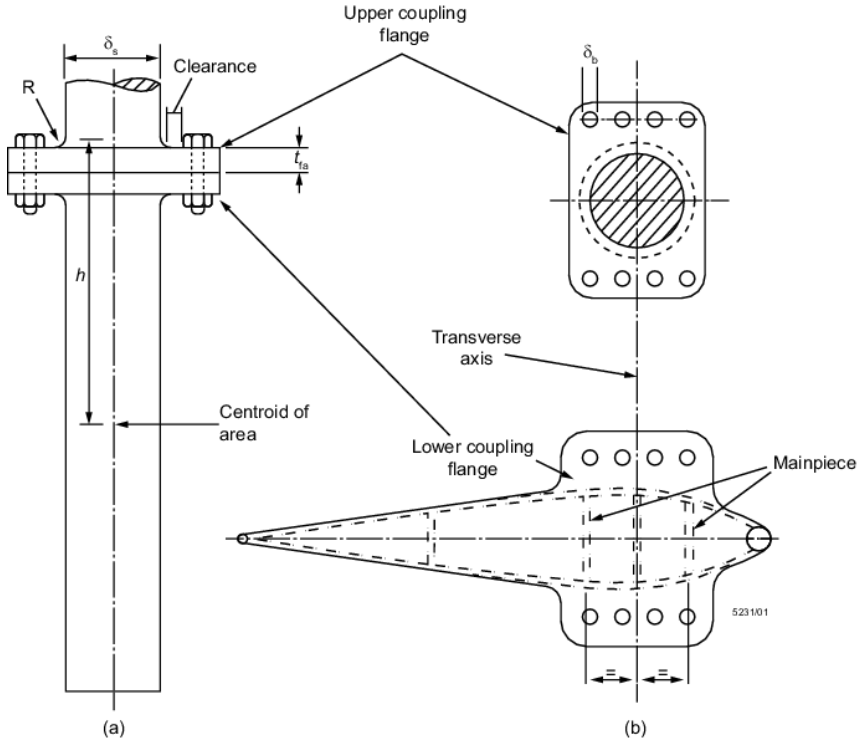


Figure 13. 2. 7: Rudder stock horizontal flange coupling



2. 14 Cone couplings with key

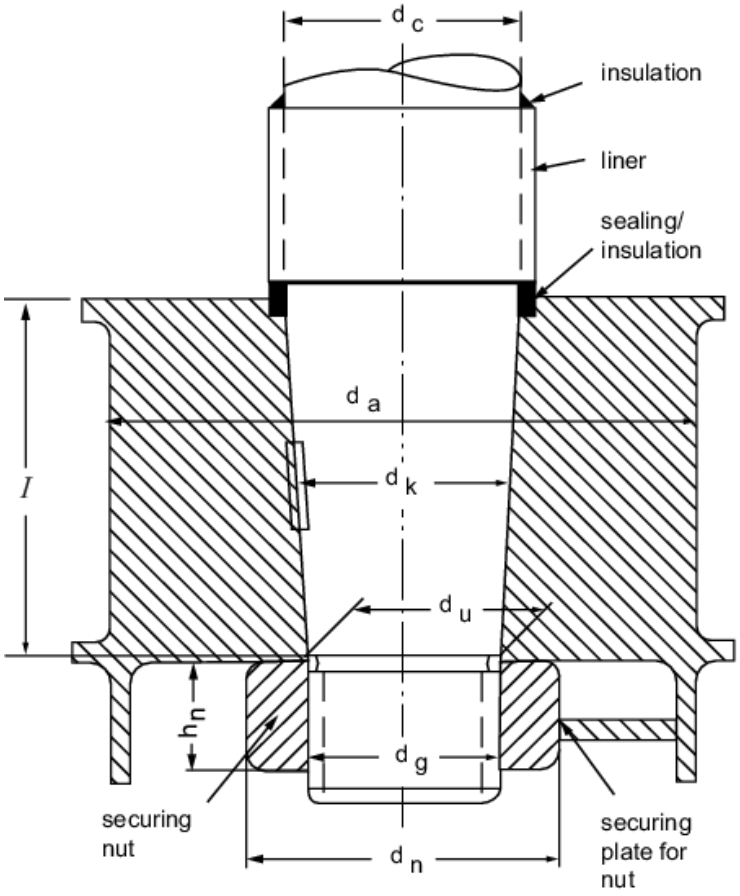
2. 14. 1 Cone couplings without hydraulic arrangements for mounting and dismounting the coupling are to have a taper ratio, θ_t on diameter of 1:8 to 1:12;

Where

$$\theta_t = \frac{d_c - d_u}{l}$$

The cone shapes are to fit exactly. The cone coupling is to be secured by a nut and the nut itself is to be secured, e.g. by a securing plate, *See* Figure 13. 2. 8: Cone coupling with key.

Figure 13. 2. 8: Cone coupling with key



2. 14. 2 The coupling length ℓ is to be, not less than $1.5d_c$.

2. 14. 3 For couplings between stock and rudder where a key is provided, the shear area of the key is not to be less than:

$$a_s = \frac{17.55 Q_F}{d_k \sigma_{F1}} \text{ cm}^2$$

where

Q_F = design yield moment of rudder stock, in Nm.

$$Q_F = 0.02664 \frac{d_t^3}{k}$$

d_t = stock diameter, in mm, as calculated in Table 13. 2. 4: Rudder stock diameter.

d_k = mean diameter of the conical part of the rudder stock, in mm, at the key.

σ_{F1} = minimum specified yield stress of the key material, in N/mm^2.

Where the actual diameter d_{ta} is greater than the calculated diameter d_t, the diameter d_{ta} is to be used. However, d_{ta} need not be taken greater than 1.145 d_t.

2. 14. 4 The effective surface area of the key (without rounded edges) between key and rudder stock or cone coupling is not to be less than:

$$a_k = \frac{5Q_F}{d_k \sigma_{F2}} \text{ cm}^2$$

where

σ_{F2} = minimum specified yield stress of the key, stock or coupling material, in N/mm^2, whichever is less.

2. 14. 5 2.14.5 The dimensions of the securing nut are to be in accordance with Table 13. 2. 11: Securing nut dimensions, *See also* Figure 13. 2. 8: Cone coupling with key:

Table 13. 2. 11: Securing nut dimensions

Item	Requirement
External thread diameter	$d_g \geq 0.65 d_c$
Height	$h_n \geq 0.6 d_g$
Outer diameter	The greater of the following: $d_n \geq 1.2 d_i$, $d_n \geq 1.5 d_u$
Symbols, *See* Figure 13. 2. 8: Cone coupling with key.	
d_c = stock diameter, in mm d_g = external thread diameter, in mm h_n = height of securing nut, in mm d_n = minimum distance across flats of securing nut, in mm d_u = inner diameter of securing nut, in mm	

2. 14. 6 It is to be proved that 50 per cent of the design yield moment is solely transmitted by friction in the cone couplings. This can be done by calculating the required push-up pressure and push-up length in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 13, 2.15 Cone couplings with special arrangements for mounting and dismounting the couplings 2.15.4 and Pt 3, Ch 13, 2.15 Cone couplings with special arrangements for mounting and dismounting the couplings 2.15.5 for a torsional moment $Q'\text{F} = 0.5 Q_F$.

2. 15 Cone couplings with special arrangements for mounting and dismounting the couplings

2. 15. 1 Where the stock diameter exceeds 200 mm, the press fit is recommended to be effected by a hydraulic pressure connection. In such cases the cone is to be more slender, and is to have a taper ratio, θ_t, on diameter of 1:12 to 1:20.

2. 15. 2 In the case of hydraulic pressure connections the nut is to be effectively secured against the rudder stock or the pintle.

2. 15. 3 For the safe transmission of the torsional moment by the coupling between rudder stock and rudder body the push-up pressure and the push-up length are to be determined in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 13, 2.15 Cone couplings with special arrangements for mounting and dismounting the couplings 2.15.4 and Pt 3, Ch 13, 2.15 Cone couplings with special arrangements for mounting and dismounting the couplings 2.15.5.

2. 15. 4 The push-up pressure, P_{req} is not to be less than the greater of the two following values:

$$p_{req1} = \frac{2Q_F}{d_m^2 l \pi \mu_0} 10^3 \quad N/mm^2$$

$$p_{req2} = \frac{6M_b}{l^2 d_m} 10^3 \quad N/mm^2$$

Where

Q_F = design yield moment of rudder stock, in Nm, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 13, 2.14 Cone couplings with key 2.14.3.

d_m = mean cone diameter in, mm = $\frac{(d_u + d_c)}{2}$

l = cone length in, mm, *See* Figure 13. 2. 8: Cone coupling with key.

M_b = bending moment in the cone coupling (e.g. in case of spade rudders), in Nm.

μ_0 = frictional coefficient, to be taken as 0.15.

d_u = upper cone diameter, *See* Figure 13. 2. 8: Cone coupling with key

d_c = lower cone diameter, *See* Figure 13. 2. 8: Cone coupling with key

It has to be proved by the designer that the push-up pressure does not exceed the permissible surface pressure in the cone. The permissible surface pressure is to be determined by the following formula:

$$p_{perm} = \frac{0.95\sigma_g(1-\alpha^2)}{\sqrt{3+\alpha^4}} P_b \quad N/mm^2$$

Where

$$P_b = \frac{3.5M_b}{d_m l^2} 10^3$$

σ_g = minimum specified yield stress of the material of the gudgeon in N/mm^2.

$$\alpha = \frac{d_m}{d_a}$$

d_m = mean cone diameter in, mm.

d_a = outer diameter of the gudgeon to be not less than 1.25 d_c, in mm, *See* Figure 13. 2. 8: Cone coupling with key.

l = cone length in, mm, *See* Figure 13. 2. 8: Cone coupling with key.

m_b = bending moment in the cone coupling (e.g. in case of spade rudders), in Nm.

2. 15. 5 The push-up length $\Delta\ell$, is to comply with the following formula:

$$\Delta\ell_1 \leq \Delta\ell \leq \Delta\ell_2$$

Where

$$\Delta\ell_1 = \frac{p_{req}\, d_m}{E\left(\frac{1-\alpha^2}{2}\right)\theta_t} + \frac{0.8R_{tm}}{\theta_t} \quad mm$$

$$\Delta\ell_2 = \frac{p_{perm}\, d_m}{E\left(\frac{1-\alpha^2}{2}\right)\theta_t} + \frac{0.8R_{tm}}{\theta_t} \quad mm$$

Where

p_{req} p_{perm}, α, d_m are defined in Pt 3, Ch 13, 2.15 Cone couplings with special arrangements for mounting and dismounting the couplings 2.15.4

R_{tm} = mean roughness, in mm, taken equal to 0.01

E = Young's modulus of the material, in N/mm^2

θ_t = taper on diameter, *See* Pt 3, Ch 13, 2.14, Cone couplings with key

2. 15. 6 In case of hydraulic pressure connections the required push-up force P_e, for the cone may be determined by the following formula:

$$P_e = P_{req}\, d_m \Pi l \left(\frac{\theta_t}{2} + 0.02\right) N$$

The value 0.02 is a reference for the friction coefficient using oil pressure. It varies and depends on the mechanical treatment and roughness of the details to be fixed. Where due to the fitting procedure a partial push-up effect caused by the rudder weight is given, this may be taken into account when fixing the required push-up length, subject to approval by *ACS*.

2. 16 Pintles

2. 16. 1 Rudder pintles and their bearings are to be in accordance with the requirements of this sub-section and Pt 3, Ch 13, 2.17, Bearings.

2. 16. 2 The bottom pintle on semi-spade rudders and all pintles over 500 mm in diameter are if inserted into their sockets from below, to be keyed to the rudder or sternframe as appropriate or to be hydraulically assembled, with the nut adequately locked, *See* Pt 3, Ch 13, 2.14, Cone couplings with key and Pt 3, Ch 13, 2.15, Cone couplings with special arrangements for mounting and dismounting the couplings.

2. 16. 3 Where liners are fitted to pintles, they are to be shrunk on or otherwise efficiently secured. If liners are to be shrunk on, the shrinkage allowance is to be indicated on the plans. Where liners are formed by stainless steel weld deposit, the pintles are to be of weldable quality steel and details of the procedure are to be submitted, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 13, 2.17 Bearings 2.17.2.

2. 16. 4 Where an ***IWS** (In-water Survey) notation is to be assigned, means are to be provided for ascertaining the rudder pintle and bush clearances and for verifying the security of the pintles in their sockets with the vessel afloat.

Table 13. 2. 12: Pintle requirements

Item	Requirement	
(1) Pintle diameter, in mm	$d_P = 0.35\sqrt{Bk_p}$	
(2) Pintle taper	Method of assembly	Taper (on diameter)
	Keyed and other manually assembled pintles applying locking by securing nut	1:8 – 1:12

	Pintles mounted with oil injection and hydraulic nut	1:12 – 1:20
(3) Pintle bearing length	$d_{p1} \leq l_p \leq 1.2\ d_{pl}$	
(4) Pintle housing/gudgeon	$b_g \geq 0.25 d_{pl}$	
(5) Liner or bush in way of pintle bearings, in mm	$t = 0.01\sqrt{B}$	
Symbols		
k_p = material factor for pintle B = bearing force, in N d_p = actual pintle diameter measured to the inside of the liner, in mm d_{pl} = diameter measured to the outside of the pintle liner, in mm b_g = thickness of pintle housing/gudgeon in way of pintles (measured from the outside of bush if fitted).		
Note 1. The minimum dimensions of threads and nuts are to be determined according to Table 13. 2. 11: Securing nut dimensions.		

2. 16. 5 The required push-up pressure for pintle is to be determined by the following formula:

$$p_{req} = 0.4\frac{B_1 d_p}{d_m^2 l} \quad N/mm^2$$

Where

d and l are defined in Pt 3, Ch 13, 2.15 Cone couplings with special arrangements for mounting and dismounting the couplings 2.15.4.

B_1 = supporting force in the pintle, in N

d_p = actual pintle diameter, in mm.

The push-up length is to be calculated in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 13, 2.15 Cone couplings with special arrangements for mounting and dismounting the couplings 2.15.5, using the required push-up pressure and properties for the pintle.

2. 17 Bearings

2. 17. 1 Bearings are to comply with the requirements of Table 13. 2. 13: Bearings. The fitting of bearings is to be carried out in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations to ensure that they remain secure under all fore*See*able operating conditions.

2. 17. 2 Where it is proposed to use stainless steel for liners or bearings for rudder stocks and/or pintles, the chemical composition is to be submitted for approval. Synthetic rudder bearing materials are to be of a type approved by *ACS*. When this type of lining material is used, arrangements to ensure an adequate supply of sea-water to the bearing are to be provided.

Table 13. 2. 13: Bearings

tem	Requirement

(1) Bearing surface area	$A_B = \frac{B}{q_a}$ mm^2	
(2) Bearing length	The length/diameter ratio of the bearing surface is not to be greater than 1.2.	
(3) Clearance	Bearing material	Minimum clearance (on diameter)
	Metal	$0.001d + 1.0$
	Synthetic	*See* Notes 1, 2, 3 and 4
(4) Liners and bushes	Material	Minimum thickness
	Metal and synthetic material	8 mm
	Lignum vitae	22 mm
(5) Main bearing housing wall thickness, *See* Note 5	Greater than $0.2d_c$	

Symbols

A_B = bearing surface, in mm^2, defined as the projected area (length x outer diameter) of liner

d = stock diameter, as calculated in Table 13. 2. 4: Rudder stock diameter, or pintle diameter as calculated in Table 13. 2. 12: Pintle requirements

B = bearing force, in N

q_a = allowable surface pressure, *See* Table 13. 2. 14: Maximum surface pressure.

Note 1. If non-metallic bearing material is applied, the bearing clearance is to be specially determined considering the material's swelling and thermal expansion properties. This clearance is not to be less than 1.5 mm on bearing diameter unless a smaller clearance is supported by the manufacturer's recommendation and there is documented evidence of satisfactory service history with a reduced clearance.

Note 2. For bearings which are pressure lubricated the clearance must be restricted to enable the pressure to be maintained.

Note 3. The value of the proposed minimum clearance is to be indicated on plans submitted for approval.

Note 4. Proposals for higher pressures or other materials will be specially considered on the basis of satisfactory test results.

Note 5. Where web stiffening is fitted on the bearing, a reduction in wall thickness will be considered.

Table 13. 2. 14: Maximum surface pressure

Bearing material	q_a (N/mm^2) (*See* Note 1)
Lignum vitae	2.5
White metal, oil lubricated	4.5
Synthetic material with hardness between 60 and 70 Shore D (*See* Note 2)	5.5 (*See* Note 3)

Steel (*See* Note 4) and bronze and hot-pressed bronze-graphite materials	7.0

Note 1. Proposals for higher pressures will be specially considered on the basis of satisfactory test results.

Note 2. Indentation hardness test at 23°C and with 50 per cent moisture according to a recognised standard. Synthetic bearing materials are to be of an approved type.

Note 3. Surface pressures exceeding 5.5 N/mm^2 may be accepted in accordance with bearing manufacturer's specification and tests, but in no case more than 10 N/mm^2.

Note 4. Stainless and wear-resistant steel in an approved combination with stock liner.

PART

3

CHAPTER **13 Ship Control Systems**

SECTION **3 Fixed and steering nozzles**

3. 1 General

3. 1. 1 The requirements given in this Section are applicable to fixed and steering nozzles with an inner diameter of not greater than 5 metres.

3. 1. 2 For nozzles with an inner diameter greater than 5 metres, the maximum pressure acting on the nozzle is to be submitted by the designer. This pressure is to be used to determine the nozzle scantlings in accordance with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 13, 3.3 Nozzle scantlings to Pt 3, Ch 13, 3.5 Nozzle headbox.

3. 1. 3 Suitable arrangements are to be provided to prevent the steering nozzle from lifting.

3. 1. 4 Effective means are to be provided for supporting the weight of the nozzle. The hull structure, in way of the nozzle supports, is to be suitably strengthened.

3. 1. 5 Care is to be taken in the manufacture of the nozzle to ensure its internal preservation and watertightness. The preservation and testing are to be as required for rudders, *See* Pt 3, Ch 13, 2.11 Rudder blade, Table 1. 9. 1: Testing requirements and Table 1. 8. 1: Trial trip and operational tests.

3. 2 Design pressure

3. 2. 1 The design pressure for propeller nozzles, in kN/m^2, is to be determined as follows: این جدول پایین فرق دارهRullبا

$$P_d = c_z P_{d0}$$

$$P_{d0} = 9 + 0.0025\, N\delta_p \text{ for } N_N \leq 63$$

$$P_{d0} = 13 + 0.002 N\delta_p \text{ for } 63 < N_N \leq 200$$

$$P_{d0} = \varepsilon C_f \frac{N}{A_p} \text{ for } N_N > 200$$

Where

N_N = is the nozzle numeral

$= 0.01\, N\delta_p$

N = is the maximum shaft power in kW

A_p = is the propeller disc area, in m^2, taken equal to:

$= \frac{\pi \delta_p^2}{4}$

δ_p = is the propeller diameter in m

ε = is a factor obtained from the following formula:

$\varepsilon = 0.21 - 2 \times 10^{-4} \frac{N}{A_p}$ but not to be taken less than 0.1

c_z = is a coefficient taken equal to:

c_z = 1.0 in Zone 2 (propeller zone)

c_z = 0.5 in Zone 1

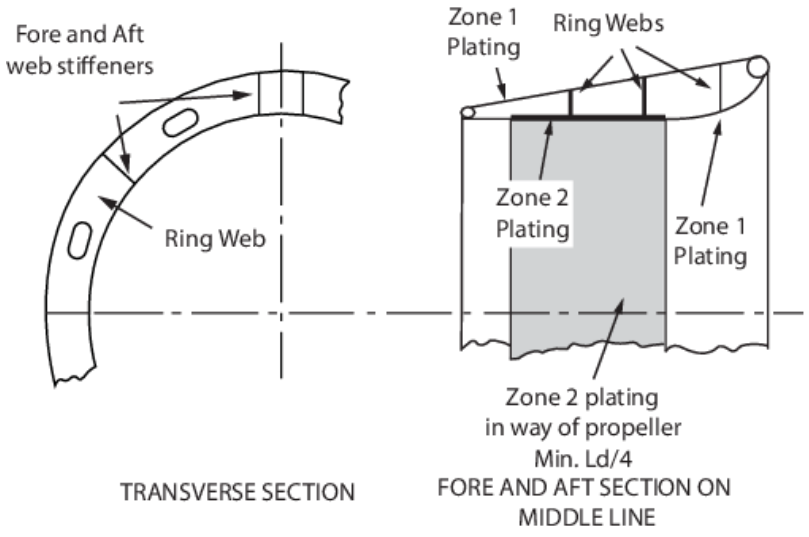
See also Figure 13. 3. 1: Nozzle construction

c_f = is a coefficient taken equal to:

c_f = 1.0 for fixed nozzles

c_f = 1.25 for steering nozzles

Figure 13. 3. 1: Nozzle construction



3. 3 Nozzle scantlings

3. 3. 1 The scantlings of propeller nozzles are to be not less than required by Table 13. 3. 1: Nozzle construction.

Table 13. 3. 1: Nozzle construction

Item	Requirement
(1) Nozzle plating	$t = 5s\sqrt{P_d k} + t_k$ but not less than 7.5 mm

(2) Ring webs and web stiffeners	Not less than the attached nozzle plating in way of Zone 1
(3) Webs in way of headbox and pintle support structure	$t_w = t + 4$ mm
(4) Section modulus of nozzle profile about its neutral axis	$Z = n\delta_p^2 L_d V^2$ cm^3
Symbols	
P_d = nozzle design pressure, in kN/m^2, *See* Pt 3, Ch 13, 3.2 Design pressure t = thickness of nozzle plating, in mm t_w = thickness of web plating, in mm s = spacing of web rings, in m k = material factor, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 13, 1.2 General symbols t_k = corrosion thickness, to be taken as: t_k = 2.5 in general t_k = 1.5 for fresh water environments t_k = 0 for stainless steel δ_p = propeller diameter, in m L_d = nozzle length, in m n = coefficient taken equal to: n = 1.0 for steering nozzles n = 0.7 for fixed nozzles V is as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1, Principal particulars	

3. 3. 2 The Zone 2 nozzle plating is to be carried well forward and aft of the propeller tips with due allowance being made on steering nozzles for the rotation of the nozzle in relation to the propeller, and is to extend at least $0.25L_d$ in length.

3. 3. 3 Fore and aft web stiffeners are to be fitted between the inner and outer skins of the nozzle. Both sides of the headbox and pintle support structure, are to be connected to fore and aft webs of increased thickness.

3. 3. 4 The adjacent ring webs fore and aft of those connected to the headbox and pintle support structure are to be of a similar thickness to the ring webs connected to the headbox and pintle support structure.

3. 3. 5 Local stiffening is to be fitted in way of the top and bottom supports which are to be integrated with the web stiffeners and ring webs. Continuity of bending strength is to be maintained in these regions.

3. 3. 6 The plating thickness of attached fins is to be not less than the Zone 1 nozzle plating thickness. Solid fins should be not less than 25 mm thick.

3. 4 Nozzle stock

3. 4. 1 The requirements for the nozzle stock are to be derived, in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 13, 2.10 Rudder stock scantlings, using the lateral nozzle force and maximum nozzle torque obtained in this sub-Section.

3. 4. 2 The lateral nozzle force, C_R, at the centre of pressure is to be determined as follows:

$$C_R = P_d A_t 10^3 \text{ N}$$

Where

P_d = nozzle design pressure in Zone 2, in kN/m^2

A_t = total projected area of nozzle and supporting structure, in m^2

$A_t = A_n + A_f + A_s$

Where

A_n = projected area of nozzle, in m^2, to be taken as $1.57\delta_p L_d$

A_f = projected area of nozzle flap, in m^2

A_s = projected area of support structure in the longitudinal plane, in m^2

where δ_p and L_d are defined in Table 13. 3. 1: Nozzle construction.

3. 4. 3 The maximum nozzle torque,Q_R, is to be determined as follows:

$$Q_R = C_R \times r \text{Nm}$$

Where

r = distance from the centre of pressure to the stock, in m, to be taken as: $c(a - k_1)$

c = nozzle length plus the length of the nozzle flap if present

a = relative centre of pressure along the nozzle length, to be taken as:

a = 0.25 for fixed nozzles

a = 0. 33 for steering nozzles

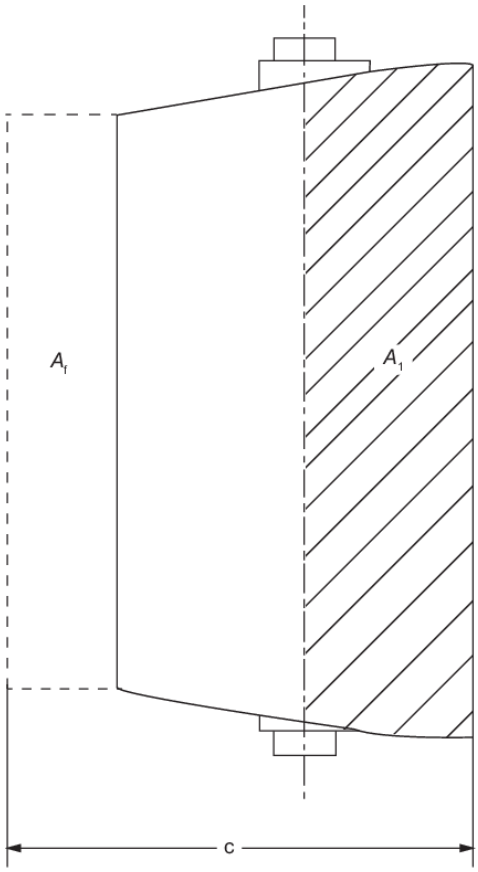
k_1 = ratio of the nozzle area forward of the stock centreline to the combined area of the nozzle and flap

$$k_1 = \frac{A_1}{A_n + A_f}$$

A_1 is the portion of the projected nozzle area located forward of the stock centreline, *See also* Figure 13. 3. 2: Nozzle geometry

C_R, A_n and A_f are given in Pt 3, Ch 13, 3.4 Nozzle stock 3.4.2.

Figure 13. 3. 2: Nozzle geometry



3. 5 Nozzle headbox

3. 5. 1 The section modulus of the headbox, Z, about the longitudinal axis is to be not less than:

$$Z = 0.143 P_d A_t D_h \times 10^2 \text{ cm}^3$$

Where

P_d = nozzle design pressure in Zone 2, in kN/m^2

D_H = $\delta_h + \frac{\delta_p}{2}$

Where

δ_h = depth of headbox, in m

δ_p = propeller diameter, in m

A_t = is given in Pt 3, Ch 13, 3.4 Nozzle stock 3.4.2.

3. 5. 2 Plans detailing the integration of the headbox into the sternframe are to be submitted.

3. 6 Ancillary items

3. 6. 1 Requirements for ancillary items such as bearings, couplings, pintles, etc. are given in Pt 3, Ch 13, 2 Rudders.

3. 7 Welding

3. 7. 1 Double continuous welds are to be used as far as practicable for the connection between the inner and outer nozzle plating and the internal stiffening rings and webs. Slot welding is not permitted for the inner nozzle plating.

3. 7. 2 Additional welding requirements are given in Pt 3, Ch 13, 2.4 Welding and design details.

3. 8 Azimuth thrusters

3. 8. 1 In general, the scantlings of similar structures, such as azimuth thrusters, are to be calculated in accordance with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 13, 3.3 Nozzle scantlings where the design pressure,P_d, is to be derived from loads specified by the designer. The stock may be assessed using these loads and the permissible design stresses given in Table 13. 2. 5: Rudder stock permissible stresses.

PART

3

CHAPTER **13 Ship Control Systems**

SECTION **4 Steering gear and allied systems**

4. 1 General

4. 1. 1 For the requirements of steering gear, *See* Pt 5, Ch 19 Steering Systems.

PART

3

CHAPTER **13 Ship Control Systems**

SECTION **5 Bow and stern thrust unit structure**

5. 1 Unit wall thickness

5. 1. 1 The wall thickness of the unit is, in general, to be in accordance with the manufacturer's practice, but is to be not less than either the thickness of the surrounding shell plating plus 10 per cent or 15 mm, whichever is greater.

5. 2 Framing

5. 2. 1 The unit is to be framed to the same standard as the surrounding shell plating.

5. 2. 2 The unit is to be adequately supported and stiffened.

PART

3

CHAPTER **13 Ship Control Systems**

SECTION **6 Stabiliser structure**

6. 1 Fin stabilisers

6. 1. 1 The box into which the stabilisers retract is to have perimeter plating of the same thickness as the surrounding Rule shell plating plus 2 mm, but is to be not less than 12.5 mm, and is to be stiffened to the same standard as the shell.

6. 1. 2 The stabiliser machinery and surrounding structure is to be adequately supported and stiffened. Where bending stresses are induced in the structure under fatigue conditions the maximum stress is not to exceed 39.0 N/mm^2.

6. 2 Stabiliser tanks

6. 2. 1 The general structure of the tank is to comply with the Rule requirements for deep tanks. Sloshing forces in the tank structure are to be taken into account. Where such forces are likely to be significant, the scantlings will be required to be verified by additional calculation.

PART

3

CHAPTER **13 Ship Control Systems**

SECTION **7 Equipment**

7. 1 General

7. 1. 1 To entitle a ship to the figure **1** in its character of classification, equipment in accordance with the requirements of Table 13. 7. 1: Equipment requirements is to be provided. The regulations governing the assignment of the character figure **1** for equipment are given in Pt 1, Ch 2, 2 Character of classification and class notations.

7. 1. 2 For ships intended to be operated only in suitable areas or conditions which have been agreed by the Committee, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.6 to Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.10, equipment differing from these requirements may be approved if considered suitable for the particular service on which the ship is to be engaged, *See also* Table 13. 7. 1: Equipment requirements.

7. 1. 3 Where the Committee has agreed that anchoring and mooring equipment need not be fitted in view of the particular service of the ship, the character letter **N** will be assigned, *See also* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.2 Character symbols 2.2.2.

Table 13. 7. 1: Equipment requirements

Ship type	Service	Required equipment
Cargo ships, bulk carriers, tankers, ferries, dredgers, etc. (*See* Pt 3, Ch 13, 1.1 Application 1.1.2)	Unrestricted service	(1) The equipment is to be selected from the following sub-Sections as appropriate, using N_C Anchor and chain cables — *See* Table 13. 7. 2: Equipment - Bower anchors and chain cables Mooring lines — *See* Pt 3, Ch 13, 7.5 Mooring lines (Equipment Number ≤ 2000) or Pt 3, Ch 13, 7.6 Mooring lines (Equipment Number > 2000) as appropriate. Towing line — *See* Pt 3, Ch 13, 7.8 Towline and towing arrangement
Ferries	Certain restricted services, *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.9	(2) As per item (1), using N_C and N_A as appropriate Mass of bower anchor — N_A = one grade below N_C Chain cable length and diameter — N_A = one grade below N_C Stream anchor may be omitted
		(3) As per item (2), and

	Specified coastal service, *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.8	Chain cables	Where L < 40 m, wire ropes may be used in place of chain cables when the requirements specified under Pt 3, Ch 13, 7.4 Chain cables and chain locker 7.4.7 and Pt 3, Ch 13, 7.4 Chain cables and chain locker 7.4.9 are complied with. Where 40 m ≤ L ≤ 90 m, chain cables may be replaced with wire rope of equal minimum breaking strength when: (a) the requirements specified for L < 40 m are complied with and (b) have a minimum mass per unit length of 30% that of Grade U2 chain cable required by Table 13. 7. 2: Equipment - Bower anchors and chain cables.
Dredging and reclamation craft	Extended protected waters service, *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.7	(4) As per item (1), using N_C and N_A as appropriate $N_A = N_C$ reduced by two grades, except for stream anchors or mooring lines Stream anchor	– not required if ship fitted with positioning spuds
	Protected waters service, *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.6	(5) As per item (1), using N_C and N_A as appropriate Mass of bower anchor	$N_A = 0.5N_C$
		Chain cable diameter	$N_A = 0.5N_C$
		Bower anchors	powered ships – two anchors
		Bower anchors	unpowered (manned) ships – one anchor
		Chain cable length	– greater of $2L$ m or $10.0T_D$ m, but need not exceed requirements for an ordinary cargo ship with anchors of the same mass
		Mooring lines	– as required for N_C
		Wire ropes	– may be substituted for chain cable on bower anchors if breaking strength ≥1.5 times that of the chain cable
Trawlers, stern trawlers, fishing vessels	Unrestricted service	(6) The equipment for fishing vessels is to be selected from Pt 3, Ch 13, Table 13. 7. 4: Equipment – Stream anchors, stream wires, towlines and mooring lines Chain cables	Where L < 40 m, wire ropes (including those fitted to trawl winches) may be used in place of chain cables when the requirements specified under Pt 3, Ch 13, 7.4 Chain cables and chain locker 7.4.7 and Pt 3, Ch 13, 7.4 Chain cables and chain locker 7.4.9 are complied with.
		Hawsers and warps	– Sufficient in number and strength for proper working of the ship

Tugs	Unrestricted and restricted service	(7) As per item (1) using N_C except as stated below Stream anchor – not required Towlines – adequate for tug's maximum bollard pull with factor of safety ≥ 2.0
	Service restricted, *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.7 to Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.10	(8) As per item (1) using N_C Mass of bower anchor – reduced to correspond to two Equipment Letters below that required for N_C Chain cable diameter – reduced to correspond to two Equipment Letters below that required for N_C Anchor chains – As item (3) in this Table
	Protected waters service, *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.6	(9) As per item (1) using N_A Mass of bower anchor – $N_A = 0.5N_C$ Chain cable diameter – $N_A = 0.5N_C$ Chain cable length – = 0.5 times length required by N_A Where $N_C < 90$, the requirements for anchors and chain cable will be specially considered Anchor chains – As item (3) in this Table
Offshore supply ships	Unrestricted service	(10) As per item (1) using N_C Chain cable length and diameter – increased to correspond to two Equipment Letters above that required for N_C. Need not be applied for ships with **DP(AAA)**, **DP(AA)** or **DP(AM)** notations
Manned barges and pontoons	Service restricted, *See* Pt 1, Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.7 to Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.10	(11) As per item (4) in this Table
Unmanned barges and pontoons	Unrestricted service, or service restricted,*See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.7 to Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.10	(12) As per item (1) using N_C and N_A as appropriate Anchors – $L < 30$ m, no anchor need be carried Anchors – $L \geq 30$ m, one anchor to be fitted Anchor cable length – greater of 40 m or $2L$ m
		(a) Unrestricted service: mass of anchors and chain cable diameters as for N_C (b) Protected water service, *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.6: mass of anchors and chain cable diameters, $N_A = 0.5N_C$

		(c) Service restriction, *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.7 to Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.10: mass of anchor and chain cable diameter, N_A reduced to correspond to two Equipment Letters below N_C	
		Mooring lines	L < 65 m, two mooring lines to be fitted
			$L \geq 65$ m, three mooring lines to be fitted length of mooring lines to be the greater of 2L or 80 m, but need not exceed that for manned ships Strength of each line to be that required by NC Consideration will be given to proposals to omit anchoring equipment in association with the assignment of the character figure 1, *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.2, Character symbols. Where L < 65 m consideration will be given to the omission of anchoring and mooring equipment, in which case the character letter N will be assigned in the character of classification, *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.2, Character symbols

Symbols

L = length of ship as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1, Principal particulars

N_A = actual equipment number to be used, if different from N_C

N_C = calculated equipment number for ship as required by Pt 3, Ch 1, 7.1 Calculation of Equipment Number

T_D = maximum depth at which ship is designed to dredge, in metres

7. 1. 4 Where the ship is intended to perform its primary designed service function only while it is anchored, moored, towed or linked, the character letter **T** will be assigned, *See also* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.2 Character symbols 2.2.2.

7. 1. 5 For classification purposes, the character figure **1**, or either of the character letters **N** or **T**, is to be assigned.

7. 1. 6 The anchoring equipment required herewith is intended for temporary mooring of a ship within a harbour or sheltered areas when the ship is awaiting berth, tide, etc. It is designed to hold a ship only in good holding ground conditions to avoid dragging of the anchor. In poor holding ground, the holding power of the anchors would be significantly reduced.

7. 1. 7 It is assumed that under normal circumstances a ship uses only one bower anchor and chain cable at a time.

7. 1. 8 All anchors and chain cables are to be tested at establishments and on machines recognised by the Committee and under the supervision of *ACS*'s Surveyors or other Officers recognised by the Committee, and in accordance with Ch 10 Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring of the Rules for Materials.

7. 1. 9 Test certificates showing particulars of weights of anchors, or size and weight of cable and of the test loads are applied to be furnished. These certificates are to be examined by the Surveyors when the anchors and cables are placed on board the ship.

7. 1. 10 Steel wire and fibre ropes are to be tested as required by Ch 10 Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring of the Rules for Materials.

7. 2 Anchors

7. 2. 1 Anchors are to be of an approved design. The design of all anchor heads is to be such as to minimise stress concentrations, and in particular, the radii on all parts of cast anchor heads are to be as large as possible, especially where there is considerable change of section.

7. 2. 2 Anchors which must be specially laid the right way up, or which require the fluke angle or profile to be adjusted for varying types of sea bed, will not generally be approved for normal ship use, but may be accepted for offshore units, floating cranes, etc. In such cases suitable tests may be required.

7. 2. 3 The mass of each bower anchor given in Table 13. 7. 2: Equipment - Bower anchors and chain cables is for anchors of equal mass. The masses of individual anchors may vary by ± 7 per cent of the masses given in the Table, provided that the total mass of the anchors is not less than would have been required for anchors of equal mass.

7. 2. 4 The mass of the head, including pins and fittings, of an ordinary stockless anchor is to be not less than 60 per cent of the total mass of the anchor.

7. 2. 5 When stocked bower or stream anchors are to be used, the mass excluding the stock is to be not less than 80 per cent of the mass given in Table 13. 7. 2: Equipment - Bower anchors and chain cables for ordinary stockless bower anchors. The mass of the stock is to be 25 per cent of the total mass of the anchor, including the shackle, etc. but excluding the stock.

7. 2. 6 It is recommended that anchor lashings, e.g. a 'devil's claw', be fitted to hold the anchor tight against the hull or the anchor pocket. Anchor lashings are to be designed to resist at least a load corresponding to twice the anchor mass plus 10 m of cable without exceeding 40 per cent of the yield strength of the material.

Table 13. 7. 2: Equipment - Bower anchors and chain cables

Equipment number		Equipment Letter	Stockless bower anchors		Stud link chain cables for bower anchors			
						Diameter, in mm		
Exceeding	Not Exceeding		Number	Mass of anchor, in kg	Total length, in metres	Mild steel (Grade 1 or U1)	Special quality steel (Grade U2)	Extra special quality steel (Grade U3)
50	70	A	2	180	220	14	12.5	12.5
70	90	B	2	240	220	16	14	14
90	110	C	2	300	247.5	17.5	16	16
110	130	D	2	360	247.5	19	17.5	17.5
130	150	E	2	420	275	20.5	17.5	17.5
150	175	F	2	480	275	22	19	19
175	205	G	2	570	302.5	24	20.5	20.5
205	240	H	2	660	302.5	26	22	20.5
240	280	I	2	780	330	28	24	22
280	320	J	2	900	357.5	30	26	24
320	360	K	2	1020	357.5	32	28	24
360	400	L	2	1140	385	34	30	26

400	450	M	2	1290	385	36	32	28
450	500	N	2	1440	412.5	38	34	30
500	550	O	2	1590	412.5	40	34	30
550	600	P	2	1740	440	42	36	32
600	660	Q	2	1920	440	44	38	34
660	720	R	2	2100	440	46	40	36
720	780	S	2	2280	467.5	48	42	36
780	840	T	2	2460	467.5	50	44	38
840	910	U	2	2640	467.5	52	46	40
910	980	V	2	2850	495	54	48	42
980	1060	W	2	3060	495	56	50	44
1060	1140	X	2	3300	495	58	50	46
1140	1220	Y	2	3540	522.5	60	52	46
1220	1300	Z	2	3780	522.5	62	54	48
1300	1390	A†	2	4050	522.5	64	56	50
1390	1480	B†	2	4320	550	66	58	50
1480	1570	C†	2	4590	550	68	60	52
1570	1670	D†	2	4890	550	70	62	54
1670	1790	E†	2	5250	577.5	73	64	56
1790	1930	F†	2	5610	577.5	76	66	58
1930	2080	G†	2	6000	577.5	78	68	60
2080	2230	H†	2	6450	605	81	70	62
2230	2380	I†	2	6900	605	84	73	64
2380	2530	J†	2	7350	605	87	76	66
2530	2700	K†	2	7800	632.5	90	78	68
2700	2870	L†	2	8300	632.5	92	81	70
2870	3040	M†	2	8700	632.5	95	84	73
3040	3210	N†	2	9300	660	97	84	76
3210	3400	O†	2	9900	660	100	87	78
3400	3600	P†	2	10500	660	102	90	78
3600	3800	Q†	2	11100	687.5	105	92	81
3800	4000	R†	2	11700	687.5	107	95	84
4000	4200	S†	2	12300	687.5	111	97	87
4200	4400	T†	2	12900	715	114	100	87
4400	4600	U†	2	13500	715	117	102	90

4600	4800	V†	2	14100	715	120	105	92
4800	5000	W†	2	14700	742.5	122	107	95
5000	5200	X†	2	15400	742.5	124	111	97
5200	5500	Y†	2	16100	742.5	127	111	97
5500	5800	Z†	2	16900	742.5	130	114	100
5800	6100	A*	2	17800	742.5	132	117	102
6100	6500	B*	2	18800	742.5	-	120	107
6500	6900	C*	2	20000	770	-	124	111
6900	7400	D*	2	21500	770	-	127	114
7400	7900	E*	2	23000	770	-	132	117
7900	8400	F*	2	24500	770	-	137	122
8400	8900	G*	2	26000	770	-	142	127
8900	9400	H*	2	27500	770	-	147	132
9400	10000	I*	2	29000	770	-	152	132
10000	10700	J*	2	31000	770	-	-	137
10700	11500	K*	2	33000	770	-	-	142
11500	12400	L*	2	35500	770	-	-	147
12400	13400	M*	2	38500	770	-	-	152
13400	14600	N*	2	42000	770	-	-	157
14600	16000	O*	2	46000	770	-	-	162

7. 3 High holding power anchors

7. 3. 1 When high holding power anchors are used as bower anchors, the mass of each such anchor may be 75 per cent of the mass given in the Table for ordinary stockless bower anchors.

7. 3. 2 Anchor designs for which approval is sought as high holding power anchors are to be tested at sea to show that they have holding powers of at least twice those of approved standard stockless anchors of the same mass. For holding power test requirements relating to high holding power anchors, *See* Ch 10, 1.3 Anchor holding power tests for HHP and SHHP anchors of the Part 2.

7. 3. 3 The anchor is to be suitable for the ship's use and is not to require prior adjustment or special placement on the sea bottom.

7. 3. 4 High holding power anchors are to be of a design that will ensure that the anchors will take effective hold of the sea bed without undue delay and will remain stable, for holding forces up to those required by Pt 3, Ch 13, 7.3 High holding power anchors 7.3.2, irrespective of the angle or position at which they first settle on the sea bed when dropped from a normal type of hawse pipe. In case of doubt, a demonstration of these abilities may be required.

7. 4 Chain cables and chain locker

7. 4. 1 An easy lead of the cables from the windlass to the anchors and chain lockers is to be arranged.

7. 4. 2 Chain cables may be of mild steel, special quality steel or extra quality steel in accordance with the requirements of Ch 10 Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring of the Part 2 and are to be graded in accordance with Table 13. 7. 3: Chain cable steel grades. The total length of chain cable given in Table 13. 7. 2: Equipment - Bower anchors and chain cables is to be divided in approximately equal parts between the two bower anchors.

7. 4. 3 Grade U1 material having a tensile stress of less than 400 N/mm^2 is not to be used in association with high holding power anchors. Grade U3 material is to be used only for chain 20.5 mm or more in diameter.

7. 4. 4 Where stream anchors are used in association with chain cable, this cable may be either stud link or short link. Also for Equipment Number ≤ 90, short link chain cables may be used for bower anchors as an alternative to stud link chain cables.

7. 4. 5 The form and proportion of links and shackles are to be in accordance with Ch 10 Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring of the Part 2.

7. 4. 6 Where Owners require equipment for anchoring at depths greater than 82.5 m and up to 120 m, the recommendations specified in Pt 3, Ch 13, 10 Anchoring equipment in deep and unsheltered water shall be complied with.

7. 4. 7 Wire rope may be used in place of chain cable for bower anchors on ships with Rule length L less than 40 m when subjected to the following conditions:

a. The length of the wire rope is to be equal to 1.5 times the corresponding tabular length of chain cable specified by Table 13. 7. 2: Equipment - Bower anchors and chain cables or Table 13. 7. 5: Equipment for fishing vessels as appropriate.
b. The breaking strength is to be equal to that of tabular chain cable of Grade U1.

7. 4. 8 Wire ropes or chain cable are to be used for stream anchors as specified by Table 13. 7. 4: Equipment – Stream anchors, stream wires, towlines and mooring lines.

7. 4. 9 When wire ropes are used instead of chain cable in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 13, 7.4 Chain cables and chain locker 7.4.7 or Pt 3, Ch 13, 7.4 Chain cables and chain locker 7.4.8:

a. A short length of chain cable is to be fitted between the wire rope and bower or stream anchor having a length of 12.5 m or the distance between the anchor in the stowed position and the winch, whichever is less.
b. All surfaces being in contact with the wire need to be rounded with a radius of not less than 10 times the wire rope diameter (including stem).

7. 4. 10 Where wire rope is used in lieu of chain cable for anchoring, galvanised wire rope with an independent wire core in accordance with Ch 10, 6 Steel wire ropes of the Part 2 is to be used. Wire rope terminal fittings are to comply with an acceptable code or standard. The strength of terminations, connecting fittings, shackles or links is not to be less than that of the anchor line.

7. 4. 11 The chain locker is to be of adequate capacity and depth to provide an easy direct lead of the cables through the chain pipes and facilitate self-stowing of the cables. The chain locker is to be provided with an internal division so that the port and starboard chain cables can be separately stowed.

7. 4. 12 The chain locker boundaries are to be watertight up to the weather deck. Where the means of access to the chain locker is located below the weather deck, the access cover and its securing arrangement in general are to be in accordance with recognised standards for watertight manhole with bolted covers (e.g. ISO 5894 Ships and marine technology – Manholes with bolted covers). Butterfly nuts and/or hinged bolts are prohibited as the securing mechanism for the access cover.

7. 4. 13 The chain locker is to be provided with adequate drainage facilities.

Table 13. 7. 3: Chain cable steel grades

		Tensile strength

Grade	Material	N/mm^2
U1	Mild steel	300 - 490
U2 (a)	Special quality steel (wrought)	490 - 690
U2 (b)	Special quality steel (cast)	490 - 690
U3	Extra special quality steel	690 min.

7. 5 Mooring lines (Equipment Number ≤ 2000)

7. 5. 1 It is recommended that the breaking strength, length and number of mooring lines provided on board ships with equipment number of less than or equal to 2000 be not less than those specified in Table 13. 7. 4: Equipment – Stream anchors, stream wires, towlines and mooring lines. The Equipment Number is to be calculated in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 1, 7.1 Calculation of Equipment Number. Deck cargo as given by the loading manual is to be included in the determination of side-projected area A to be used in this sub-Section including the equipment number calculations.

7. 5. 2 It is the Owners responsibility to ensure the adequacy of the mooring equipment. The equipment should be verified through carrying out ship specific mooring calculations. The mooring calculations are to be representative of the anticipated mooring configurations, as well as accounting for operational and environmental considerations. This section details minimum recommendations only, and where the calculations provide a lesser specification it is recommended that they be increased in accordance with this section.

7. 5. 3 For ships having the ratio of side projected area A and equipment number as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 7.1 Calculation of Equipment Number greater than 0.9, the following number of lines is to be added to the number of mooring lines as given by the Table 13. 7. 4: Equipment – Stream anchors, stream wires, towlines and mooring lines:

a. One line where $0.9 < \frac{A}{\text{Equipment Number}} \leq 1.1$

b. Two lines where $1.1 < \frac{A}{\text{Equipment Number}} \leq 1.2$

c. Three lines where $1.2 < \frac{A}{\text{Equipment Number}}$.

7. 5. 4 It is permitted to reduce the individual mooring line lengths specified by Table 13. 7. 4: Equipment – Stream anchors, stream wires, towlines and mooring lines by up to 7 per cent provided the total length of mooring lines is not less than the total length, if all the lines were of equal given lengths.

7. 6 Mooring lines (Equipment Number > 2000)

7. 6. 1 The recommended minimum breaking strength, length and number of mooring lines for ships with equipment number greater than 2000, calculated in accordance withPt 3, Ch 1, 7.1 Calculation of Equipment Number are provided in this sub-Section. Deck cargo as given by the Loading Manual is to be included in the determination of side-projected area A to be used in the equipment number calculations.

7. 6. 2 It is the Owners responsibility to ensure the adequacy of the mooring equipment. The equipment should be verified through carrying out ship specific mooring calculations. The mooring calculations are to be representative of the anticipated mooring configurations, as well as accounting for operational and environmental considerations. This section details minimum recommendations only, and where the calculations provide a lesser specification it is recommended that they be increased in accordance with this section. A typical mooring arrangement is indicated in Figure 13. 7. 1: Typical mooring arrangement and the following is defined with respect to mooring lines.

a. Breast line: A mooring line that is deployed perpendicular to the ship, restraining the ship in the off-berth direction.
b. Spring line: A mooring line that is deployed almost parallel to the ship, restraining the ship in the fore or aft direction.
c. Head/stern line: A mooring line that is oriented between longitudinal and transverse direction, restraining the ship in the off-berth and in the fore or aft direction. The amount of restraint in fore or aft and off-berth direction depends on the line angle relative to these directions.

7. 6. 3 The strength of mooring lines and the number of head, stern, and breast lines for ships with an Equipment Number > 2000 are based on the side-projected area A_1. Side projected area A_1 is to be calculated similar to the side-projected area A according to Pt 3, Ch 1, 7.1 Calculation of Equipment Number but considering the following conditions:

a. For oil tankers, chemical tankers, bulk carriers, and ore carriers, the lightest ballast draft is to be considered for the calculation of the side-projected area A_1. For other ships the lightest draft of usual loading conditions is to be considered if the ratio of the freeboard in the lightest draft and the full load condition is equal to or above two. Usual loading conditions mean loading conditions as given by the trim and stability booklet that are to be expected to regularly occur during operation and, in particular, excluding light weight conditions, propeller inspection conditions, etc.
b. Wind shielding of the pier can be considered for the calculation of the side-projected area A_1 unless the ship is intended to be regularly moored to jetty type piers. The lower part of the side projected area above the waterline for the considered loading condition can be disregarded up to the pier height in the calculation of the side-projected area A_1. Actual height of the pier above the waterline is to be used in the calculation but in general not to exceed 3 m.
c. Deck cargo as given by the Loading Manual is to be included for the determination of side-projected area A_1. Deck cargo need not be considered if the usual light draft condition without cargo on deck generates a larger side-projected area A_1 than the full load condition with cargo on deck. The larger of both side-projected areas should be chosen as side-projected area A_1.

7. 6. 4 The mooring lines specified are based on a maximum current speed of 1.0 m/s and the following maximum wind speed V_w:

V_w = $25.0 - 0.002\ (A_1 - 2000)$ m/s for passenger ships, ferries and car carriers with $2000\ m^2 < A1 \leq 4000\ m^2$

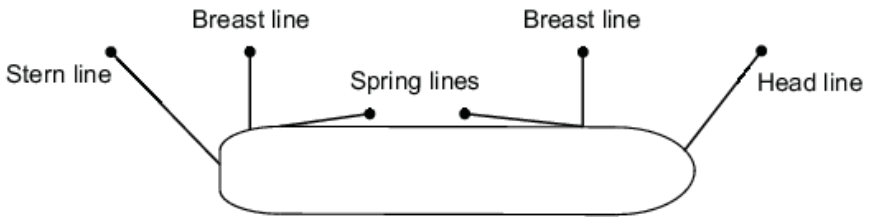
= 21.0 m/s for passenger ships, ferries and car carriers with $A_1 > 4000\ m^2$

= 25.0 m/s for other ships

7. 6. 5 The maximum wind speed V_w is representative of the mean wind speed over a 30 second period from any direction and at a height of 10 m above the ground. The current speed considered is a representative of the maximum current speed acting on bow or stern (±10°) at a depth of one-half of the mean draft. Furthermore, it is considered that the ships are moored to solid piers that provide shielding against cross currents.

7. 6. 6 Additional loads caused by higher wind or current speeds, cross currents, additional wave loads, or reduced shielding from non-solid piers, for example are to be specially considered. Consideration is also to be given to the fact that unfavourable mooring layouts can significantly increase the loads on individual mooring lines.

Figure 13. 7. 1: Typical mooring arrangement



7. 6. 7 The minimum breaking strength, in kN, of the mooring lines (MBL) is to be taken as:

$$\text{MBL} = 0.1 \times A_1 + 350$$

Where

A_1 = Side projected area as defined by Pt 3, Ch 13, 7.6 Mooring lines (Equipment Number > 2000) 7.6.3

7. 6. 8 The minimum breaking strength may be limited to 1275 kN (130 tonnes). However in these cases, the moorings are to be considered as not sufficient for the environmental conditions given by Pt 3, Ch 13, 7.6 Mooring lines (Equipment Number > 2000) 7.6.4. For these ships, the acceptable wind speed V_W^*, in m/s, to be calculated as follows:

$$V_W^* = V_w \times \sqrt{\frac{\text{MBL}^*}{\text{MBL}}}$$

Where

V_w = wind speed as per Pt 3, Ch 13, 7.6 Mooring lines (Equipment Number > 2000) 7.6.4

MBL* = the breaking strength of the mooring lines intended to be supplied

MBL = required breaking strength provided by Pt 3, Ch 13, 7.6 Mooring lines (Equipment Number > 2000) 7.6.7

However, the intended minimum breaking strength MBL* is not to be taken less than that corresponding to an acceptable wind speed of 21 m/s:

$$\text{MBL}^* \geq \left(\frac{21}{V_W}\right)^2 \times \text{MBL}$$

7. 6. 9 If the mooring lines are intended to be supplied for an acceptable wind speed V_W^*, higher than V_w as per Pt 3, Ch 13, 7.6 Mooring lines (Equipment Number > 2000) 7.6.4, the minimum breaking strength to be taken as:

$$\text{MBL}^* = \left(\frac{V_W^*}{V_W}\right)^2 \times \text{MBL}$$

Where

MBL = required breaking strength provided by Pt 3, Ch 13, 7.6 Mooring lines (Equipment Number > 2000) 7.6.7

7. 6. 10 The total number of head, stern and breast lines is specified as:

$$n = 8.3 \times 10^{-4} \times A_1 + 6$$

Where

A_1 = side projected area as defined by Pt 3, Ch 13, 7.6 Mooring lines (Equipment Number $>$ 2000) 7.6.3

However, for oil tankers, chemical tankers, bulk carriers and ore carriers the total number of head, stern and breast lines is to be taken as:

$$n = 8.3 \times 10^{-4} \times A_1 + 4$$

The total number of head, stern and breast lines is to be rounded to the nearest whole number. The number may be increased or decreased in conjunction with an adjustment to the strength of the lines. The adjusted strength, MBL*, is to be taken as:

$$\text{MBL}^* = 1.2 \times \text{MBL} \times \frac{n}{n^*} \leq \text{MBL}, \text{ for increased number of lines}$$

$$\text{MBL}^* = \text{MBL} \times \frac{n}{n^*}, \text{ for reduced number of lines}$$

Where

n = number of lines for the considered ship type as calculated by the above formula without rounding

n^* = increased or decreased total number of head, stern and breast lines

Vice versa, the strength of head, stern and breast lines may be increased or decreased in conjunction with an adjustment to the number of lines.

7. 6. 11 The total number of spring lines is to be taken not less than:

- Two lines where EN < 5000,
- Four lines where EN ≥ 5000.

The strength of spring lines is to be the same as that of the head, stern and breast lines. If the number of head, stern and breast lines is increased in conjunction with an adjustment to the strength of the lines, the number of spring lines is also to be increased likewise, but rounded up to the nearest even number.

7. 6. 12 The length of mooring lines is to be taken as 200 m. It is permitted to reduce the length of individual mooring line by up to 7 per cent provided that the total length of mooring lines is not less than the total length, if all the lines were of equal given lengths.

7. 7 Mooring Arrangement and winches

7. 7. 1 The recommendations with respect to the mooring arrangement and mooring winches are provided by this sub-Section.

7. 7. 2 Mooring lines in the same service (e.g. breast lines) are to be of the same characteristics in terms of strength and elasticity.

7. 7. 3 As far as possible, a sufficient number of mooring winches is to be fitted so as to allow all mooring lines to be belayed on winches. This allows for an efficient distribution of the load to all mooring lines in the same service and for the mooring lines to shed the load before they break. If the mooring arrangement is designed such that mooring lines are partly to be belayed on bitts or bollards, it is to be understood that these lines may not be as effective as the mooring lines belayed on winches.

7. 7. 4 In the case of ships with Rule length L greater than 90 m, all ropes having breaking strengths in excess of 736.0 kN and used in normal mooring operations are to be handled by, and stored on,

suitably designed winches. Alternative methods of storing shall give due consideration to the difficulties experienced in manually handling ropes having breaking strengths in excess of 490.0 kN.

7. 7. 5 The mooring winch is to be fitted with brakes, the holding capacity of which is sufficient to prevent unreeling of the mooring line when the rope tension is equal to 80 per cent of the minimum breaking strength of the rope as fitted on the first layer. The winch is to be fitted with brakes that will allow for the reliable setting of the brake rendering load.

7. 7. 6 For powered winches the maximum hauling tension which can be applied to the mooring line (the reeled first layer) is to be not less than 2/9, nor to be more than, 1/3, of the rope's minimum breaking strength. For automatic winches these figures apply when the winch is set to the maximum power with automatic control.

7. 7. 7 For powered winches on automatic control, the rendering tension which the winch can exert on the mooring line (the reeled first layer) is not to exceed 1.5 times, nor be less than 1.05 times, the hauling tension for that particular power setting of the winch. The winch is to be marked with the range of rope strengths for which it is designed.

7. 7. 8 Mooring lines are to have a straight lead from the mooring drum to the fairlead as far as practicable.

7. 7. 9 When a mooring line changes direction, the contact surface on the fitting shall have a large radius so as to minimise the wear experienced by the mooring lines. Recommendations from the rope manufacturer for the intended rope type are also to be complied with.

7. 8 Towline and towing arrangement

7. 8. 1 The recommended towlines are given in Table 13. 7. 4: Equipment – Stream anchors, stream wires, towlines and mooring lines and are intended as ship's own towline, for being towed by a tug or another ship. This sub-Section also provides recommendations with respect to the towing arrangement.

7. 8. 2 The equipment number used for the selection of the towline is to be calculated in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 1, 7.1 Calculation of Equipment Number. Deck cargo as given by the Loading Manual is to be included in the determination of side-projected area A to be used in the equipment number calculations.

7. 8. 3 Towing lines are to be led through a closed chock. The use of open fairleads with rollers or closed roller fairleads is to be avoided.

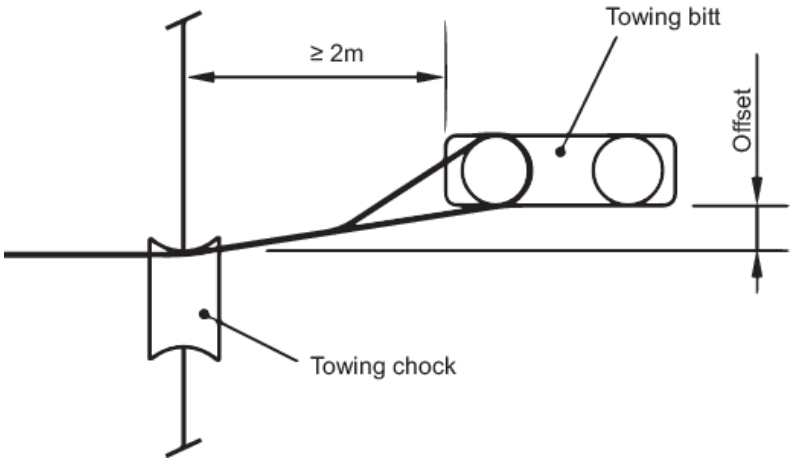
7. 8. 4 For the purpose of towing, it is recommended to provide at least one chock close to centreline of the ship forward and aft. It is also beneficial to provide additional chocks on port and starboard side at the transom and at the bow.

7. 8. 5 Towing lines are to have a straight lead from the towing bitt or bollard to the chock.

7. 8. 6 For the purpose of towing, bitts or bollards serving a chock are to be located slightly offset and at a distance of at least 2 m away from the chock, *See* Figure 13. 7. 2: Typical towing arrangement.

7. 8. 7 Attention is to be given to the arrangement of the equipment for towing and mooring operations in order to prevent interference of mooring and towing lines as far as practicable. It is beneficial to provide dedicated towing arrangements separate from the mooring equipment.

Figure 13. 7. 2: Typical towing arrangement



7. 8. 8 For emergency towing arrangements for tankers, reference is made to Pt 3, Ch 13, 12 Emergency towing arrangements. For all ships other than tankers, towing arrangements of sufficient strength are to be provided fore and aft, as defined by 'other towing service' in Pt 3, Ch 13, 9.2, Towing.

7. 9 Mooring and towline construction

7. 9. 1 Towlines and mooring lines are to be of wire, natural fibre or synthetic fibre construction or of a mixture of wire and fibre. For synthetic fibre ropes it is recommended that lines with reduced risk of recoil (snap-back) be used to mitigate the risk of injuries or fatalities in the case mooring line failure.

7. 9. 2 Notwithstanding the strength recommendations, no fibre rope shall be less than 20 mm in diameter. For polyamide ropes the minimum breaking strength is to be increased by 20 per cent and for other synthetic ropes by 10 per cent to account for strength loss due to, among other causes, aging and wear.

7. 9. 3 Wire ropes used for towlines and mooring lines are generally to be of a flexible construction with not less than 144 wires in six strands with seven fibre cores for strengths up to 490 kN, and 222 wires in six strands with one fibre core for strengths exceeding 490 kN. The wires laid round the fibre centre of each strand are to be made up in not less than two layers.

7. 9. 4 Wire ropes for towlines and mooring lines used in association with mooring winches (on which the rope is stored on the winch drum) are to be of suitable construction.

7. 9. 5 The towing and mooring lines are to be tested in accordance with Ch 10, 6 Steel wire ropes and Ch 10, 7 Fibre ropes of the Part 2 for wire ropes and fibre ropes, respectively.

Table 13. 7. 4: Equipment – Stream anchors, stream wires, towlines and mooring lines

Equipment Number		Stockless stream anchor	Stream wire or chain (*See* Note 1)		Mooring lines (*See* Note 2)			Towline	
Exceeding	Not exceeding	Mass per anchor (kg)	Length (m)	Breaking strength (kN)	No. of mooring lines	Minimum length of each line (m)	Minimum breaking strength (kN)	Minimum length (m)	Minimum breaking strength (kN)
50	70	60	80	64.7	3	80	37	180	98
70	90	80	85	73.5	3	100	40	180	98

90	110	100	85	80	3	110	42	180	98
110	130	120	90	89.2	3	110	48	180	98
130	150	140	90	98.1	3	120	53	180	98
150	175	165	90	107.9	3	120	59	180	98
175	205	190	90	117.7	3	120	64	180	112
205	240				4	120	69	180	129
240	280				4	120	75	180	150
280	320				4	140	80	180	174
320	360				4	140	85	180	207
360	400				4	140	96	180	224
400	450				4	140	107	180	250
450	500				4	140	117	180	277
500	550				4	160	134	190	306
550	600				4	160	143	190	338
600	660				4	160	160	190	370
660	720				4	160	171	190	406
720	780				4	170	187	190	441
780	840				4	170	202	190	479
840	910				4	170	218	190	518
910	980				4	170	235	190	559
980	1060				4	180	250	200	603
1060	1140				4	180	272	200	647
1140	1220				4	180	293	200	691
1220	1300				4	180	309	200	738
1300	1390				4	180	336	200	786
1390	1480				4	180	352	200	836
1480	1570				5	190	352	220	888
1570	1670				5	190	362	220	941
1670	1790				5	190	384	220	1024
1790	1930				5	190	411	220	1109
1930	2080 (*See* Note 2)				5	190	437	220	1168
2080	2230							240	1259
2230	2380							240	1356
2380	2530							240	1453

2530	2700							260	1471
2700	2870							260	1471
2870	3040							260	1471
3040	3210							280	1471
3210	3400							280	1471
3400	3600							280	1471
3600	-							300	1471

Note 1. The rope used for stream wire is to be constructed of not less than 72 wires, made up into six strands.

Note 2. The mooring lines are to be selected only for ships with equipment number less than or equal to 2000.

Table 13. 7. 5: Equipment for fishing vessels

Equipment Number		Stockless bower anchors		Stud link chain cables for bower anchors			Mooring lines		
					Minimum diameter (mm)				
Exceeding	Not exceeding	Number	Mass per anchor (kg)	Total length (m)	Mild steel (Grade U1) *See* Note 1	Special quality steel (Grade U2)	Number	Minimum length of each line (m)	Minimum breaking strength (kN)
30	40	2	80	165	11	-	2	50	29
40	50	2	100	192.5	11	-	2	60	29
50	60	2	120	192.5	12.5	-	2	60	29
60	70	2	140	192.5	12.5	-	2	80	29
70	80	2	160	220	14	12.5	2	100	34
80	90	2	180	220	14	12.5	2	100	36.8
90	100	2	210	220	16	14	2	110	36.8
100	110	2	240	220	16	14	2	110	39
110	120	2	270	247.5	17.5	16	2	110	39
120	130	2	300	247.5	17.5	16	2	110	44
130	140	2	340	275	19	17.5	2	120	44
140	150	2	390	275	19	17.5	2	120	49
150	175	2	480	275	22	19	2	120	54
175	205	2	570	302.5	24	20.5	2	120	59
205	240	2	660	302.5	26	22	2	120	64
240	280	2	780	330	28	24	3	120	71

280	320	2	900	357.5	30	26	3	140	78
320	360	2	1020	357.5	32	28	3	140	85.8
360	400	2	1140	385	34	30	3	140	93
400	450	2	1290	385	36	32	3	140	101
450	500	2	1440	412.5	38	34	3	140	108
500	550	2	1590	412.5	40	34	4	160	113
550	600	2	1740	440	42	36	4	160	118
600	660	2	1920	440	44	38	4	160	123
660	720	2	2100	440	46	40	4	160	127

Note 1. For equipment number ≤ 110, short link chain cables may be considered as an alternative to stud link chain cables.

PART

3

CHAPTER **13 Ship Control Systems**

SECTION **8 Anchor windlass design and testing**

8. 1 General

8. 1. 1 A windlass used for handling anchors,

suitable for the size of chain cable required by Pt 3, Ch 13, 7 Equipment and complying with the following criteria is to be fitted. Where Owners require equipment significantly in excess of Rule requirements, it is their responsibility to specify increased windlass power.

8. 1. 2 The design, construction and testing of windlasses are to conform with a relevant National or International Standard or code of practice acceptable to *ACS*. To be considered acceptable, the standard, or code of practice, is to specify criteria for evaluation of stresses, performance and testing.

8. 1. 3 Operation and maintenance procedures for the anchor windlass are to be incorporated in the vessel operations manual.

8. 2 Plans and particulars to be submitted

8. 2. 1 The following plans showing the design specifications, the standard of compliance, engineering analyses and details of construction, as applicable, are to be submitted for evaluation:

- Windlass design specifications, anchor and chain cable particulars, performance criteria, and standard of compliance.
- Windlass foundation drawings including the supporting structure below deck. The details shall include bolts, chocks, shear stoppers etc., along with the foot print loads for the specified windlass ratings.
- Chain stopper foundation drawings including the supporting structure below deck. The details shall include bolts, chocks, shear stoppers etc., along with the foot print loads for the specified rating.
- Windlass arrangement plans showing all the components of the anchoring/mooring system such as the prime mover, shafting, cable lifter, anchors and chain cables; mooring winches, wires and fairleads, if they form part of the windlass machinery, brakes, controls, etc.
- Dimensions, materials, welding details, as applicable, of all torque-transmitting components (shafts, gears, clutches, couplings, coupling bolts, etc.) and all load-bearing components (shaft bearings, cable lifter, sheaves, drums, bed-frames, etc.) of the windlass and of the winch, where applicable, including brakes, chain stopper (if fitted), and foundation.
- Hydraulic system, to include:

  i. piping diagram along with system design pressure;

ii. safety valves arrangement and settings;
iii. material specifications for pipes and equipment;
iv. typical pipe joints, as applicable;
v. technical data and details for hydraulic motors;
vi. cooling systems arrangements for hydraulic system oil.

- Electrical one-line diagram along with cable specification and size, motor controller, protective device rating or setting, as applicable.
- Control, monitoring and instrumentation arrangements.
- Engineering analyses for torque-transmitting and load-bearing components demonstrating their compliance with recognised standards or codes of practice. Analyses for gears are to be in accordance with a recognised standard.
- Calculations proving satisfactory inertia loads for the intended windlass, *See* Pt 3, Ch 13, 8.4 Windlass design 8.4.1.b.
- Plans and data for windlass electric motors including associated gears rated 100 kW and over.
- Calculations demonstrating that the windlass prime mover is capable of attaining the hoisting speed, the required continuous duty pull, and the overload capacity are to be submitted if the 'load testing' including 'overload' capacity of the entire windlass unit is not carried out at the shop (*See* Pt 3, Ch 13, 8.9 Shop inspection and testing 8.9.1.b).

8. 3 Materials and fabrication

8. 3. 1 Materials used in the construction of torque-transmitting and load-bearing parts of windlasses are to comply with *ACS*'s Part 2 or an appropriate National or International Standard acceptable to *ACS*, provided that the Standard gives reasonable equivalence to the requirements of *ACS*. The proposed materials are to be indicated in the construction plans and are to be approved in connection with the design. All such materials are to be certified by the material manufacturers and are to be traceable to the manufacturers' certificates.

8. 3. 2 Weld joint designs are to be shown in the submitted construction plans and are to be appraised in association with the approval of the windlass design in accordance with an appropriate National or International Standard acceptable to *ACS*.

8. 3. 3 Welding procedures, welding consumables and welders are to comply with the *ACS* Part 2 or an appropriate National or International Standard acceptable to *ACS*.

8. 3. 4 The degree of non-destructive examination of welds and post-weld heat treatment, if any, are to be specified and submitted for consideration.

8. 4 Windlass design

8. 4. 1 In addition to the requirements of the National or International Standard or code of practice acceptable to *ACS* (*See* Pt 3, Ch 13, 8.1 General 8.1.2) the following performance requirements are to be complied with:

a. Holding Loads: Calculations are to be made to show that, in the holding condition (single anchor, brake fully applied and chain cable lifter declutched) and under a load equal to 80 per cent of the specified minimum breaking strength of the chain cable, the maximum stress in each load bearing component will not exceed the maximum permissible yield. For installations fitted with a chain cable stopper, 45 per cent of the specified minimum breaking strength of the chain cable may instead be used for the calculation.

b. Inertia Loads: The design of the drive train, including prime mover, reduction gears, bearings, clutches, shafts, cable lifter and bolting is to consider the dynamic effects of sudden stopping and starting of the prime mover or chain cable, so as to limit inertial load.

c. Continuous Duty Pull: The windlass is to have sufficient power to exert a continuous duty pull , Z_{cont1}, over a period of 30 minutes corresponding to the grade and diameter, d_c, of the chain cables as follows:

i. for specified design anchorage depths up to 82.5 m when using ordinary stockless anchors:

Chain cable grade	Z_{cont1} (N)
U1	$37.5d_c^2$
U2	$42.5d_c^2$
U3	$47.5d_c^2$

ii. for specified design anchorage depths greater than 82.5 m a continuous duty pull Z_{cont2} is:

$$Z_{cont\ 2} = Z_{cont\ 1} + (D_a - 82.5)0.27d_c^2 \text{N}$$

Where

d_c = is the chain diameter, in mm

D_a = is the specified design anchorage depth, in metres

The anchor masses are assumed to be the masses as given in Table 13. 7. 2: Equipment - Bower anchors and chain cables. The value of Z_{cont} is based on the hoisting of one anchor at a time, and assumes that the effects of buoyancy and hawse pipe efficiency (assumed to be 70 per cent) have been accounted for. In general, stresses in each torque-transmitting component are not to exceed 40 per cent of yield strength (or 0.2 per cent proof stress) of the material under these loading conditions.

d. Overload Capability: The windlass prime mover is to be able to provide, for a period of at least two minutes, the necessary temporary overload capacity for breaking out the anchor. This temporary overload capacity is to be a pull equal to the greater of:

i. short term pull:
1.5 times the continuous duty pull as defined in Pt 3, Ch 13, 8.4 Windlass design 8.4.1.c, or

ii. anchor breakout pull:

$$12.18W_a + \frac{7.0L_c d_c^2}{100} \text{N}$$

Where

L_c = is the total length of chain cable on board, in metres, as given by Table 13. 7. 2: Equipment - Bower anchors and chain cables

W_a = is the mass of bower anchor (kg) as given in Table 13. 7. 2: Equipment - Bower anchors and chain cables.

Note The speed in this period may be lower than normal.

e. Hoisting Speed: The mean speed of the chain cable during hoisting of the anchor and cable is to be 0.15 m/s.

f. Brake Capacity: The capacity of the windlass brake is to be sufficient to stop the anchor and chain cable when paying out the chain cable in a controlled manner. Where a chain cable

stopper is not fitted, the brake is to produce a torque capable of withstanding a pull equal to 80 per cent of the specified minimum breaking strength of the chain cable without any permanent deformation of strength members and without brake slip. Where a chain cable stopper is fitted, 45 per cent of the breaking strength may instead be applied. The following simplified formula is to be used to calculate the required brake capacity:

$K_b d_c^2(44 - 0.08d_c)$N

where K_b is given in Table 13. 8. 1: Values of Kb.

Table 13. 8. 1: Values of K_b

	K_b	
Cable grade	Windlass used in conjunction with chain stopper	Chain stopper not fitted
U1	4.41	7.85
U2	6.18	11.0
U3	8.83	15.7

8. 4. 2 As an alternative to conducting the engineering analyses required by Pt 3, Ch 13, 8.4,, Windlass design 8.4.1, approval of the windlass mechanical design can be based on a type test, in which case the testing procedure is to be submitted for consideration.

8. 4. 3 Calculations for torque transmitting components are to be based on 1500 hours of operation with a nominal load spectrum factor of K_m = 1.0. Alternatively unlimited hours with K_m = 0.8 can be applied.

8. 4. 4 The following criteria are to be used for gearing design:

a. Torque is to be based on the performance criteria specified in Pt 3, Ch 13, 8.4,, Windlass design 8.4.1.
b. The use of an equivalent torque, T_{eq}, for dynamic strength calculations is acceptable but the derivation is to be submitted to ACS for consideration.
c. The application factor for dynamic strength calculation, K_A, is to be 1.15.
d. Calculations are to be based on 1500 hours of operation.
e. The static torque is to be 1.5 x T_n where T_n is the nominal torque.
f. The minimum factors of safety for load capacity of spur and helical gears, as derived using ISO 6336 or a relevant National or International standard acceptable to *ACS*, are to be 1.5 for bending stress and 0.6 for contact stress.

Gears intended to transmit power greater than 100 kW are to be certified by, and the gears are to meet the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 5 Gearing.

8. 5 Hydraulic systems

8. 5. 1 Hydraulic systems, where employed for driving windlasses, are to comply with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 14, 9 Hydraulic systems.

8. 6 Electrical systems

8. 6. 1 Electric motors are to meet the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 9 Rotating machines. Motors exposed to weather are to have enclosures suitable for their location, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.11 Location and construction 1.11.1.

8. 6. 2 Motor branch circuits are to be protected in accordance with the applicable Rules, and cable sizing is to be in accordance with the requirements of the Pt 6, Ch 2, 11 Electric cables, optical fibre cables and busbar trunking systems (busways).

8. 7 Control arrangements

8. 7. 1 All control devices are to be capable of being controlled from readily accessible positions and protected against unintentional operation.

8. 7. 2 The maximum travel of the levers is not to exceed 600 mm if movable in one direction only, or 300 mm to either side from a central position if movable in both directions. They are to move toward the right when hauling and toward the left when paying out. Alternatively, they are to move backward when hauling and forward when paying out.

8. 7. 3 Wherever practical, the lever is to move in the direction of the intended movement.

8. 7. 4 For lever-operated brakes, the brake is to engage when the lever is pulled and disengage when the lever is pushed. The physical effort on the brake for the operator is not to exceed 160 N.

8. 7. 5 For pedal-operated brakes the maximum travel is not to exceed 250 mm and the physical effort for the operator is not to exceed 320 N.

8. 7. 6 The handwheel or crankhandle is to actuate the brake when turned clockwise and release it when turned counterclockwise. The physical effort for the operator is not to exceed 250 N for speed regulation and 500 N at any moment.

8. 7. 7 When not provided with automatic sequential control, separate push-buttons are to be provided for each direction of operation.

8. 7. 8 The push-buttons are to actuate the machinery when depressed and stop and effectively brake the machinery when released.

8. 7. 9 The above mentioned individual push-buttons may be replaced by two ‘start’ and ‘stop’ push-buttons.

8. 7. 10 Control systems, whether electric, pneumatic or hydraulic, are to comply with the general requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, 2 Essential features for control, alarm, monitoring and safety systems .

8. 8 Protection arrangements

8. 8. 1 Where applicable, moving parts of windlass machinery are to be provided with suitable railings and/or guards to prevent injury to personnel.

8. 8. 2 Protection is to be provided for preventing persons from coming into contact with surfaces having temperatures over 50°C.

8. 8. 3 Steel surfaces not protected by lubricant are to be protected by a coating in accordance with the requirements of a relevant National or International Standard acceptable to *ACS*.

8. 8. 4 For arrangements of power transmission systems and relief requirements *See* Pt 5, Ch 14, 9.1 General.

8. 8. 5 Electrical cables installed in exposed locations on open deck are to be provided with effective mechanical protection.

8. 8. 6 Means are to be provided to contain potential debris resulting from severe damage of the prime mover due to over-speed in the event of uncontrolled rendering of the cable, particularly when an axial piston type hydraulic motor forms the prime mover.

8. 8. 7 An arrangement to release the anchor and chain in the event of windlass power failure is to be provided. Windlasses are to be fitted with couplings which are capable of disengaging between

the cable lifter and the drive shaft. Hydraulically or electrically operated couplings are to be capable of being disengaged manually.

8. 8. 8 The design of the windlass is to be such that the following requirements or equivalent arrangements will minimise the probability of the chain locker or forecastle being flooded in bad weather:

a. a weathertight connection can be made between the windlass bedplate, or its equivalent, and the upper end of the chain pipe by means of a cover or seal, and
b. access to the chain pipe is adequate to permit the fitting of a cover or seal, of sufficient strength and proper design, over the chain pipe while the ship is at sea.

8. 9 Shop inspection and testing

8. 9. 1 Windlasses are to be inspected during fabrication at the manufacturers' facilities by a Surveyor for conformance with the approved plans. Acceptance tests, as specified in the specified Standard (*See* Pt 3, Ch 13, 8.1 General 8.1.2), are to be witnessed by the Surveyor and include the following tests, as a minimum:

a. No-load test. The windlass is to be run without load at nominal speed in each direction for a total of 30 minutes. If the windlass is provided with a gear change, an additional run in each direction for 5 minutes at each gear change is required.
b. Load test. The windlass is to be tested to verify that the continuous duty pull, overload capacity and hoisting speed as specified in Pt 3, Ch 13, 8.4,, Windlass design 8.4.1 can be achieved. Where the manufacturer's works does not have adequate facilities, these tests, including the adjustment of the overload protection, can be carried out on board ship. In these cases, functional testing in the manufacturer's works is to be performed under no-load conditions.
c. Brake capacity test. The holding power of the brake is to be verified through testing if not verified by calculation.

8. 9. 2 Windlass performance characteristics specified in Pt 3, Ch 13, 8.9, Shop inspection and testing 8.9.1 are based on the following assumptions:

a. one cable lifter only is connected to the drive shaft;
b. continuous duty and short term pulls are measured at the cable lifter;
c. hawse pipe efficiency assumed to be 70 per cent.

8. 10 On-board testing

8. 10. 1 Each windlass is to be tested under working conditions after installation on board to demonstrate satisfactory operation. Each unit is to be independently tested for braking, clutch functioning, lowering and hoisting of the chain cable and anchor, proper riding of the chain over the cable lifter, proper transit of the chain through the hawse pipe and the chain pipe, and effecting proper stowage of the chain and the anchor. It is to be confirmed that anchors properly seat in the stored position and that chain stoppers function as designed, if fitted. The braking capacity is to be tested by intermittently paying out and holding the chain cable by means of the application of the brake.

8. 10. 2 The mean hoisting speed, as specified in Pt 3, Ch 13, 8.4 Windlass design 8.4.1.e is to be measured and verified. For testing purposes, the speed is to be measured over two shots of chain cable and initially with at least three shots of chain (82.5 m or 45 fathoms in length) and the anchor submerged and hanging free. Following trials, the ship will be eligible to be asigned a descriptive note **specified design anchorage depth . . . metres**, which will be entered in column 6 of the *Register Book*.

8. 10. 3 Load testing is to be carried out if this was not previously completed as required by Pt 3, Ch 13, 8.9 Shop inspection and testing 8.9.1.b.

8. 10. 4 Where the depth of water in the trial area is inadequate, suitable equivalent simulating conditions will be considered as an alternative.

8. 11 Marking and identification

8. 11. 1 The windlass is to be permanently marked with the following information:

a. Nominal size of the cable chain including mean diameter, grade and percentage of the breaking load the windlass is designed to hold (e.g. 100/3/45).

b. Maximum anchorage depth, in metres.

8. 12 Structural requirements associated with anchoring

8. 12. 1 The windlass or winch is to be efficiently bedded and secured to the deck. The thickness of the deck in way of the windlass or winch is to be increased and the supporting structure for the anchor windlass is to be examined for the brake holding loads specified by Pt 3, Ch 13, 8.4, Windlass design. The allowable stresses specified in Table 13. 8. 2: Allowable stresses in windlass and chain stopper supporting structure are to be used to derive the net scantlings of the supporting structure. A corrosion addition of 2 mm is to be added to the net thickness derived. The structural design integrity of the bedplate is the responsibility of the Shipbuilder and windlass or winch manufacturer.

8. 12. 2 Where cables pass through stoppers, these stoppers are to be manufactured from ductile material and be designed to minimise the possibility of damage to, or snagging of, the cable. They are to be capable of withstanding without permanent deformation a load equal to 80 per cent of the Rule breaking load of the cable passing over them. The allowable stresses specified in Table 13. 8. 2: Allowable stresses in windlass and chain stopper supporting structure are to be used to derive the net scantlings of the supporting structure. A corrosion addition of 2 mm is to be added to the net thickness derived.

Table 13. 8. 2: Allowable stresses in windlass and chain stopper supporting structure

	Permissible stress N/mm^2
Normal stress (*See* Note 1) Shear stress	$1.00\ \sigma_0$ $0.58\ \sigma_0$
Symbols	
σ_0 = specified minimum yield stress, N/mm^2	
Note *1* Normal stress is defined as the sum of bending and axial stresses.	

8. 12. 3 Hawse pipes and anchor pockets are to be of ample thickness and of a suitable size and form to house the anchors efficiently, preventing, as much as practicable, slackening of the cable or movements of the anchor being caused by wave action. The shell plating and framing in way of the hawse pipes are to be reinforced as necessary. Reinforcing is also to be arranged in way of those parts of bulbous bows liable to be damaged by anchors or cables. Substantial chafing lips are to be provided at shell and deck. These are to have sufficiently large, radiused faces to minimise the probability of cable links being subjected to high bending stresses. Alternatively, roller fairleads of suitable design may be fitted. Where unpocketed rollers are used, it is recommended that the roller diameter be not less than eleven times the chain diameter. Where hawse pipes are not fitted, alternative arrangements will be specially considered.

8. 12. 4 The chain locker is to be of a capacity and depth adequate to provide an easy direct lead for the cable into the chain pipes, when the cable is fully stowed. Chain or spurling pipes are to be of suitable size and provided with chafing lips. The port and starboard cables are to be separated by a division in the locker.

8. 12. 5 Where means of access is provided to the chain locker it is to be closed by a substantial cover and secured by closely spaced bolts. Where a means of access to spurling pipes or cable lockers is located below the weather deck, the access cover and its securing arrangements are to be in accordance with ISO 5894-1999, or an equivalent National Standard acceptable to *ACS*, recognised standards or equivalent for watertight manhole covers. Butterfly nuts and/or hinged bolts are prohibited as the securing mechanism for the access cover.

8. 12. 6 Chain lockers and spurling pipes are to be watertight up to the exposed weather deck and the space is to be efficiently drained. However, bulkheads between separate chain lockers, or which form a common boundary of chain lockers, need not be watertight.

8. 12. 7 Spurling pipes are to be provided with permanently attached closing appliances to minimise water ingress. Examples of acceptable arrangements are:

a. steel plates with cutouts to accommodate chain links, or
b. canvas hoods with a lashing arrangement that maintains the cover in the secured position.

8. 12. 8 Provision is to be made for securing the bitter end of the chain cable to the ship structure. The fastening for securing the bitter end is to be capable of withstanding a force of not less than 15 per cent and not greater than 30 per cent of the minimum breaking strength of the as fitted chain cable. It is to be provided with suitable means such that, in case of emergency, the chain cable may be easily slipped to sea from an accessible position outside the chain cable locker. Where the mechanism for slipping the chain cable to sea penetrates the chain locker bulkhead, this penetration is to be made watertight.

8. 12. 9 Alternatively the cable end connection may be accepted where it has been designed and constructed to a recognised National or International Standard.

8. 12. 10 The cable clench supporting structure is to be adequately stiffened in accordance with the breaking strength of the fastening provided.

8. 12. 11 Satisfactory arrangements are to be made for the stowage and working of the stream anchor, if provided.

8. 12. 12 On dredging and reclamation craft the following are to be complied with:

a. On unpowered ships, the windlass may be hand operated.
b. On split type vessels, the arrangements are to be such that jamming of the anchor cable during opening and closing operations of the hull will not occur.

8. 12. 13 When wire rope instead of chain is used for the anchor cable, it is to be stored on a suitably designed drum or reel. Fairleads intended for use with wire rope cable are to be designed to minimise wear and to avoid kinking or other damage occurring to the rope. Fairleads should, in general, be fitted with rollers having a diameter not less than eleven times the diameter of the anchor cable or as specified/ recommended by the rope manufacturer.

8. 13 Structural requirements for windlasses on exposed fore decks

8. 13. 1 Windlasses located on the exposed deck over the forward 0.25L of the rule length, of ships of sea-going service of length 80 m or more, where the height of the exposed deck in way of the item is less than 0.1L or 22 m above the summer load waterline, whichever is the lesser, are to comply with the following requirements. Where mooring winches are integral with the anchor windlass, they are to be considered as part of the windlass.

8. 13. 2 The following pressures and associated areas are to be applied, *See* Figure 13. 8. 1: Windlass loading:

- 200 kN/m^2 normal to the shaft axis and away from the forward perpendicular, over the projected area in this direction;
- 150 kN/m^2 parallel to the shaft axis and acting both inboard and outboard separately, over the multiple of f times the projected area in this direction;

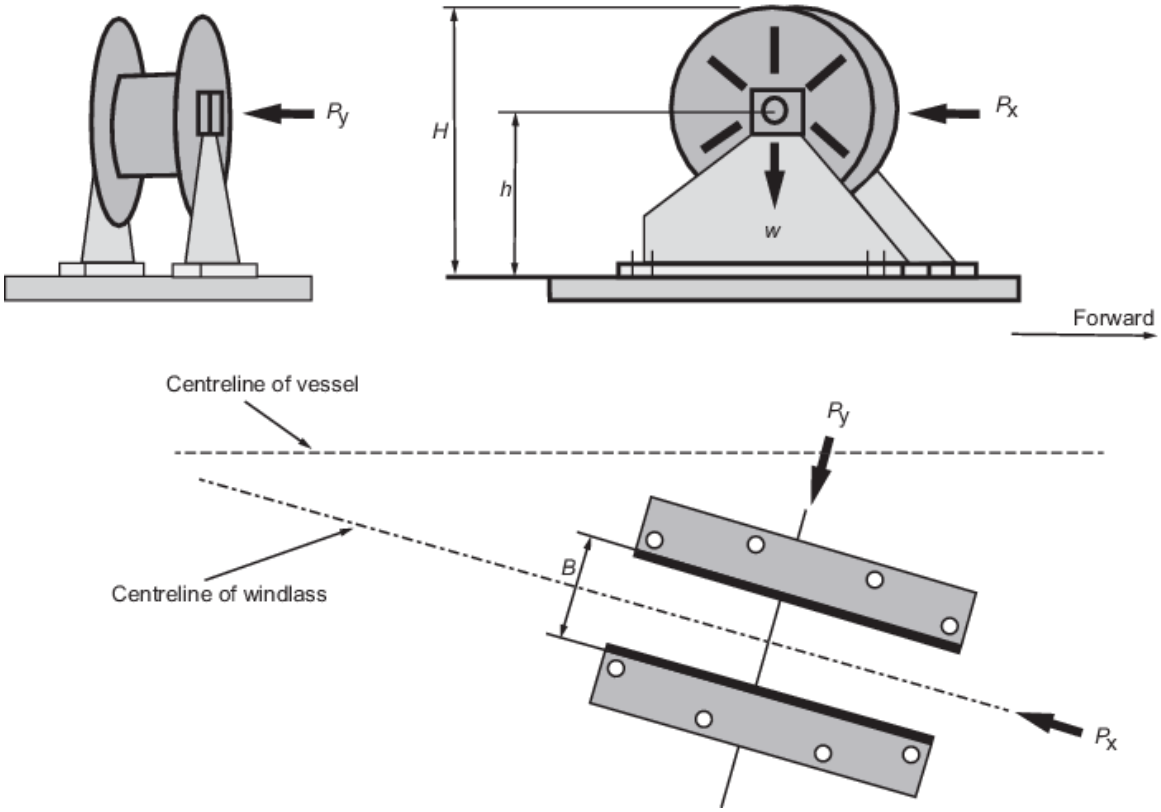
Where

f = $1 + B/H$, but not greater than 2.5

B = width of windlass measured parallel to the shaft axis, in metres

H = overall height of windlass, in metres.

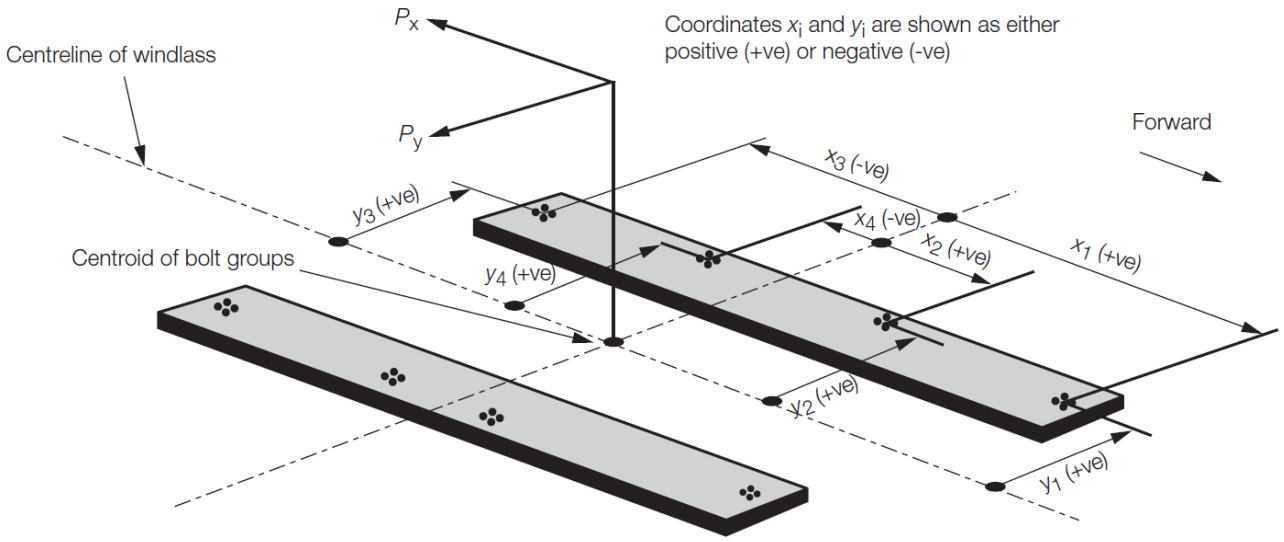
Figure 13. 8. 1: Windlass loading



Note P_y is to be examined from both inboard and outboard directions separately, *See* Pt 3, Ch 13, 8.13 Structural requirements for windlasses on exposed fore decks 8.13.2. The sign convention for y_i is reversed when P_Y is from the opposite direction as shown.

8. 13. 3 Forces in the bolts, chocks and stoppers securing the windlass to the deck are to be calculated. The windlass is supported by N bolt groups, each containing one or more bolts, *See* Figure 13. 8. 2: Direction of forces and weight.

Figure 13. 8. 2: Direction of forces and weight



8. 13. 4 The axial force R_i in bolt group (or bolt) i, positive in tension, may be calculated from:

$$R_{xi} = P_x h x_i A_i / I_x \text{ in kN}$$

$$R_{yi} = P_y h y_i A_i / I_y \text{ in kN, and}$$

$$R_i = R_{xi} + R_{yi} - R_{si} \text{ in kN}$$

where

P_x = force acting normal to the shaft axis, in kN

P_y = force acting parallel to the shaft axis, either inboard or outboard whichever gives the greater force in bolt group i, in kN

h = shaft height above the windlass mounting, in cm

x_i, y_i = x and y coordinates of bolt group i from the centroid of all N bolt groups, positive in the direction opposite to that of the applied force, in cm

A_i = cross sectional area of all bolts in group i, in cm^2

I_x = $\Sigma A_i x_i^2$ for N bolt groups, in cm^4

I_y = $\Sigma A_i y_i^2$ for N bolt groups, in cm^4

R_{si} = static reaction at bolt group i, due to weight of windlass, in kN.

8. 13. 5 Shear forces F_{xi}, F_{yi} applied to the bolt group i, and the resultant combined force F_i may be calculated from:

$$F_{xi} = (P_x - \mu g M)/N \text{ in kN}$$

$$F_{yi} = (P_y - \mu g M)/N \text{ in kN}$$

$$F_i = \sqrt{(F_{xi}^2 + F_{yi}^2)}\ kN$$

Where

α = coefficient of friction (0.5)

M = mass of windlass, in tonnes

g = gravity acceleration (9.81 m/sec^2)

N = number of bolt groups.

8. 13. 6 Tensile axial stresses in the individual bolts in each bolt group i are to be calculated. The horizontal forces F_{xi} and F_{yi} are normally to be reacted by shear chocks. Where 'fitted' bolts are designed to support these shear forces in one or both directions, the von Mises equivalent stresses in the individual bolts are to be calculated, and compared to the stress under proof load. Where pourable resins are incorporated in the holding down arrangements, due account is to be taken in the calculations.

8. 13. 7 The safety factor against bolt proof strength is to be not less than 2.0.

8. 13. 8 Bolts are to be of lSO 898/1 material Grade 8.8, 10.9 or 12.9 or equivalent and are to be pretensioned by controlled means to 70 to 90 per cent of their yield stress. Pretensioning is to be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and, in general, pretensioning by bolt torqueing up to bolt size M30 may be used. Beyond this, pretensioning is to be carried out by an hydraulic tensioning device and the elongation of the bolts measured to determine pre-load. Where resin chocks are proposed plans and calculations are to be submitted for consideration.

8. 13. 9 The windlass is to be efficiently bedded and secured to the deck. The thickness of the deck in way of the windlass is to be increased. Adequate stiffening of the deck in way of the windlass is to be provided. The scantlings of the supporting structure and deck are to be determined by additional calculations applying the weight of the windlass combined with the resultant force on the seat due to the application of the following design loads:

- P_x (as defined in Pt 3, Ch 13, 8.13 Structural requirements for windlasses on exposed fore decks 8.13.4);
- P_y;
- P_x and P_y combined;

The allowable stresses given in Table 13. 8. 3: Allowable stress in windlass supporting structure for green sea loading are not to be exceeded.

Table 13. 8. 3: Allowable stress in windlass supporting structure for green sea loading

	Bending stress, in N/mm^2	Shear stress, in N/mm^2	Combined stress, in N/mm^2
Allowable stress	$\frac{150}{k}$	$\frac{87}{k}$	$\frac{213}{k}$
k = material factor, *See* Pt 3, Ch 2, 1.2, Steel			

8. 13. 10 The axial tensile and compressive forces in Pt 3, Ch 13, 8.13 Structural requirements for windlasses on exposed fore decks 8.13.4 and the lateral forces in Pt 3, Ch 13, 8.13 Structural requirements for windlasses on exposed fore decks 8.13.5 are also to be considered in the design of the supporting structure.

PART

3

CHAPTER **13 Ship Control Systems**

SECTION **9 Structural requirements associated with towing and mooring**

9. 1 eneral

9. 1. 1 This Section applies to the design and construction of shipboard fittings and supporting structures used for the normal towing and mooring operations. Normal towing means towing operations necessary for manoeuvring in ports and sheltered waters associated with the normal operations of the ship.

9. 1. 2 The arrangements, equipment and fittings of sufficient safe working load are to be provided to enable the safe conduct of all towing and mooring operations associated with the normal operations of the ship.

9. 1. 3 For ships, not subject to SOLAS Regulation II-1/3-4 Paragraph 1, but intended to be fitted with equipment for towing by another ship or a tug, e.g. such as to assist the ship in case of emergency as given in SOLAS Regulation II-1/3-4 Paragraph 2, the requirements designated as 'other towing' in this Section are to be applied to the design and construction of those shipboard fittings and supporting hull structures.

9. 1. 4 This Section is not applicable to the design and construction of shipboard fittings and supporting hull structures used for special towing services such as escort towing, canal transit towing, emergency towing for tankers etc. These requirements are also not applicable to special purpose ships.

9. 1. 5 Shipboard fittings means bollards and bitts, fairleads, stand rollers, chocks used for the normal mooring of the ship, and the similar components used for normal or other towing of the ship. Any weld or bolt or equivalent device connecting the shipboard fitting to the supporting structure is part of the shipboard fitting. Other components such as capstans, winches, etc. are not covered by this Section.

9. 1. 6 Supporting hull structures means that part of the ship structure on/in which the shipboard fitting is placed and which is directly submitted to the forces exerted on the shipboard fitting. The supporting hull structure of capstans, winches, etc. used for normal or other towing and mooring operations mentioned above is also to comply with the requirements specified in this Section.

9. 2 Towing

9. 2. 1 The strength of shipboard fittings used for normal towing operations at bow, sides and stern and their supporting hull structures are to comply with the requirements specified in this sub-Section.

9. 2. 2 Where a ship is equipped with shipboard fittings intended to be used for other towing services, the strength of these fittings and their supporting hull structures are also to comply with the requirements specified.

9. 2. 3 Shipboard fittings for towing are to be located on stiffeners and/or girders which are part of the deck construction so as to facilitate efficient distribution of the towing load. Other arrangements are acceptable (for chocks in bulwarks, etc.), provided that the strength is confirmed adequate for the intended service.

9. 2. 4 The design load applied to shipboard fittings and supporting hull structure is not to be less than that given in Table 13. 9. 1: Minimum design load for deck fittings and supporting structure – Towing.

Table 13. 9. 1: Minimum design load for deck fittings and supporting structure – Towing

Use/Item	Minimum design load (*See* Notes 1 to 3)
Normal towing (harbour/manoeuvring)	1.25 times the intended maximum towing load (e.g. static bollard pull) as indicated on the towing and mooring arrangements plan
Other towing service (SOLAS Regulation II-1/3-4 Paragraph 2)	Minimum breaking strength of the towline
For fittings intended to be used for both normal towing and other towing service	The greater of the specified loads in each case

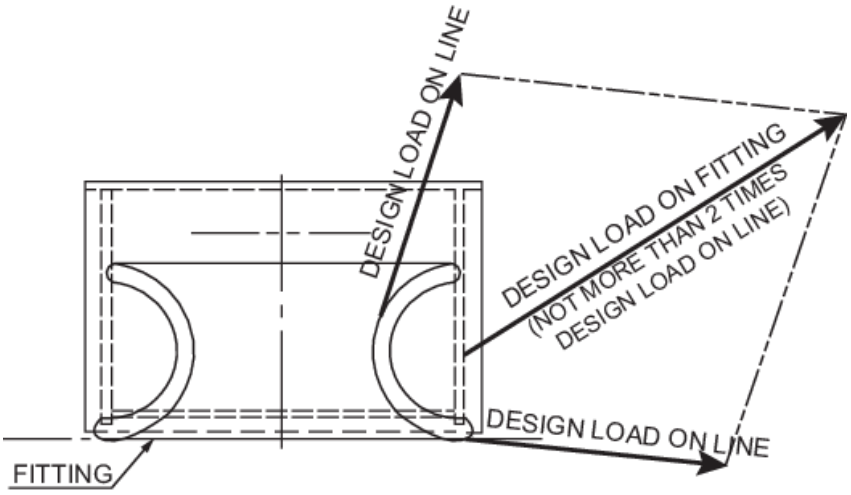
Note 1. When a safe towing load TOW greater than that determined according to Pt 3, Ch 13, 9.2 Towing 9.2.12 is requested, then the design load is to be increased in accordance with the appropriate TOW/design load relationship given in this sub-Section.

Note 2. Side projected area including that of deck cargoes as given by the loading manual is to be taken into account for selection of towing lines and the loads applied to shipboard fittings and supporting hull structure.

Note 3. The increase of the minimum breaking strength for synthetic ropes need not to be taken into account for the loads applied to shipboard fittings and supporting hull structure.

9. 2. 5 The design load is to be applied to fittings in all directions that could occur by taking into account the arrangement shown on the towing and mooring arrangements plan. Where the towing line takes a turn at a fitting, the total design load applied to the fitting is equal to the resultant of the design loads acting on the line, *See* Figure 13. 9. 1: Design load applied to fittings. However, in no case does the design load applied to the fitting need to be greater than twice the design load on the line.

Figure 13. 9. 1: Design load applied to fittings



9. 2. 6 Shipboard fittings are to be selected from an acceptable National or International standard and to be based on the following minimum loads.

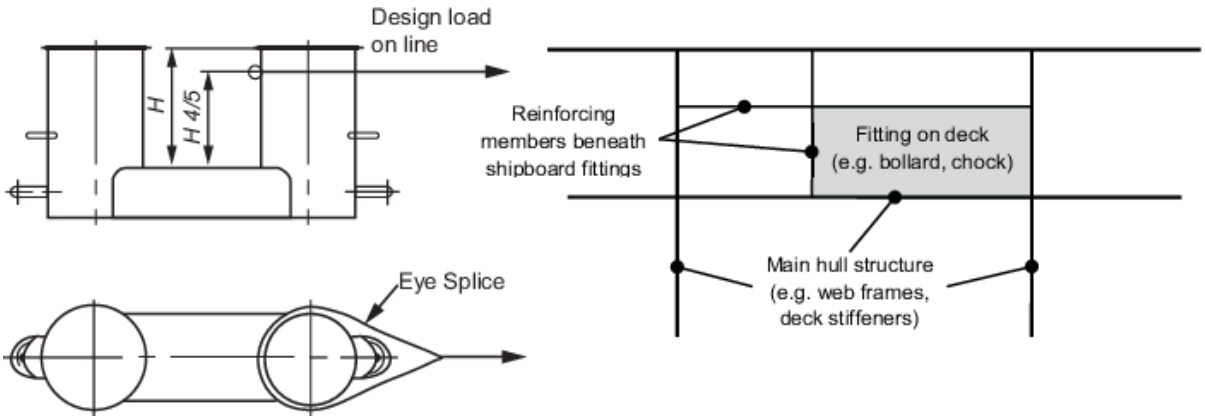
- For normal towing operations, the intended maximum towing load (e.g. static bollard pull) as indicated on the towing and mooring arrangements plan;
- For other towing service, the minimum breaking strength of the towline in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 13, 7.8 Towline and towing arrangement (*See* Notes 2 and 3 of Table 13. 9. 1: Minimum design load for deck fittings and supporting structure – Towing);
- For fittings intended to be used for both, i.e. normal and other towing operations, the greater of the loads specified in each case is to be used.

9. 2. 7 Towing bitts (double bollards) are to be chosen for the towing line attached with an eye splice if the industry standard distinguishes between different methods to attach the line, i.e. figure-of eight or eye splice attachment.

9. 2. 8 When the shipboard fitting is not selected from an accepted industry standard, the strength of the fitting based on net scantlings and its attachment to the ship is to be adequate for the loads specified by the Table 13. 9. 1: Minimum design load for deck fittings and supporting structure – Towing based on the acceptance criteria given in Pt 3, Ch 13, 9.2 Towing 9.2.10 or Pt 3, Ch 13, 9.2 Towing 9.2.11 as appropriate. Towing bitts (double bollards) are required to resist the loads caused by the towing line attached with an eye splice. For strength assessment, beam theory or finite element analysis using net scantlings is to be applied, as appropriate. Corrosion additions and wear down allowance is to be added to the net scantlings as defined in this Section.

9. 2. 9 The net scantlings of the supporting hull structure for the fittings are to be adequate for the loads specified by the Table 13. 9. 1: Minimum design load for deck fittings and supporting structure – Towing based on the acceptance criteria given in by Pt 3, Ch 13, 9.2 Towing 9.2.10 or Pt 3, Ch 13, 9.2 Towing 9.2.11 as appropriate. The reinforced members beneath shipboard fittings are to be effectively arranged for any variation of direction (horizontally and vertically) of the towing forces acting upon the shipboard fittings, *See* Figure 13. 9. 2: Supporting hull structure for a sample arrangement. Proper alignment of the fitting and its supporting hull structure is to be ensured. The acting point of the towing force on a shipboard fitting is to be taken at the attachment point of a towing line or at a change in its direction. For bollards and bitts the attachment point of the towing line is to be taken not less than 4/5 of the tube height above the base as indicated in Figure 13. 9. 2: Supporting hull structure. Corrosion additions are to be added to the net scantlings as defined in this Section.

Figure 13. 9. 2: Supporting hull structure



9. 2. 10 In the case of strength assessment using beam theory or grillage analysis, the stress within the supporting structure of fittings is not to exceed that given in Table 13. 9. 2: Allowable stress within the supporting structure of shipboard fittings.

9. 2. 11 For strength calculations by means of finite element analysis, the geometry is to be idealised as realistically as possible. The ratio of element length to width is not to exceed 3. Girders are to be modelled using shell or plane stress elements. Symmetric girder flanges are generally to be modelled by beam or truss elements. At least three elements are to be used across the depth of the girder. In way of small openings in girder webs the web thickness is to be reduced to a mean thickness over the web height. Large openings are to be modelled. Stiffeners are generally to be modelled by using shell, plane stress, or beam elements. Stresses are to be read from the centre of the individual element. For shell elements the stresses are to be evaluated at the mid plane of the element. The equivalent stress within the supporting structure of fittings is not to exceed the specified minimum yield strength of the material.

Table 13. 9. 2: Allowable stress within the supporting structure of shipboard fittings

	Normal stress, in N/mm^2	Shear stress, in N/mm^2
Allowable stress	$\frac{235}{k}$	$\frac{141}{k}$

where

$k = \frac{235}{\sigma_0}$

σ_0 = specified minimum yield strength of the material in N/mm^2

Note Normal stress is defined as the sum of bending and axial stresses. No stress concentration factors accounted for and as such may need to be considered separately.

9. 2. 12 The safe towing load (TOW) is the load limit for towing purposes. TOW used is not to exceed 80 per cent of the design loads specified by Table 13. 9. 1: Minimum design load for deck fittings and supporting structure – Towing.

9. 2. 13 TOW, in tonnes, of each shipboard fitting is to be marked (by weld bead or equivalent) on the deck fittings used for towing. For fittings intended to be used for both, towing and mooring, SWL, in tonnes, according to Pt 3, Ch 13, 9.3, Mooring is to be marked in addition to TOW.

9. 2. 14 The above requirements on TOW apply for the use with no more than one towline line. If not otherwise chosen, for towing bitts (double bollards) TOW is the load limit for a towing line attached with an eye-splice.

9. 2. 15 The towing and mooring arrangements plan mentioned in Pt 3, Ch 13, 9.4, Towing and mooring arrangements plan is to define the method of use of towing lines.

9. 3 Mooring

9. 3. 1 The strength of shipboard fittings used for mooring operations and their supporting hull structures as well as the strength of supporting hull structures of winches and capstans are to comply with the requirements specified in this sub-Section.

9. 3. 2 Shipboard fittings, winches and capstans for mooring are to be located on stiffeners and/or girders which are part of the deck construction so as to facilitate efficient distribution of the mooring load. Other arrangements are acceptable (for chocks in bulwarks, etc.) provided that the strength is confirmed adequate for the service.

9. 3. 3 The design load applied to shipboard fittings and supporting hull structure is not to be less than that given in Table 13. 9. 3: Minimum design load for deck fittings and supporting structure - Mooring.

9. 3. 4 The design load is to be applied to fittings in all directions that could occur by taking into account the arrangement shown on the towing and mooring arrangements plan. Where the mooring line takes a turn at a fitting, the total design load applied to the fitting is equal to the resultant of the design loads acting on the line, *See* Figure 13. 9. 1: Design load applied to fittings. However, in no case does the design load applied to the fitting need to be greater than twice the design load on the line.

Table 13. 9. 3: Minimum design load for deck fittings and supporting structure - Mooring

Use/Item	Minimum design load (*See* Notes 1 to 3)
Moorings (Fittings and their supporting hull structure)	1.15 times the breaking strength of the mooring lines given in Pt 3, Ch 13, 7.5 Mooring lines (Equipment Number ≤ 2000) or Pt 3, Ch 13, 7.6 Mooring lines (Equipment Number > 2000) as appropriate.
Winches (Supporting hull structure only)	1.25 times the intended maximum brake holding load, where the maximum brake holding load is to be assumed not less than 80% of the minimum breaking strength of the mooring line given in Pt 3, Ch 13, 7.5 Mooring lines (Equipment Number ≤ 2000) or Pt 3, Ch 13, 7.6 Mooring lines (Equipment Number > 2000) as appropriate.
Capstans (Supporting hull structure only)	1.25 times the maximum hauling in force, where hauling in force is defined as the maximum pull of the capstan or 1.25 times the intended maximum brake holding load if that be greater.

Note 1. When a safe working load SWL greater than that determined according to the Rules is requested, the design load is to be increased in accordance with the appropriate SWL/design load relationship given in Pt 3, Ch 13, 9.3 Mooring 9.3.12.

Note 2. Side projected area including that of deck cargoes as given by the loading manual is to be taken into account for the selection of mooring lines and the loads applied to shipboard fittings and supporting hull structure.

Note 3. The increase of the minimum breaking strength for synthetic ropes need not to be taken into account for the loads applied to shipboard fittings and supporting hull structure.

9. 3. 5 Shipboard fittings are to be selected from an acceptable National or International standard and to be based on the minimum breaking strength of the mooring line as given in Pt 3, Ch 13, 7.5 Mooring lines (Equipment Number ≤ 2000) or Pt 3, Ch 13, 7.6 Mooring lines (Equipment Number > 2000), corresponding to the ship's equipment number (*See* Notes 2 and 3, Table 13. 9. 3: Minimum design load for deck fittings and supporting structure - Mooring).

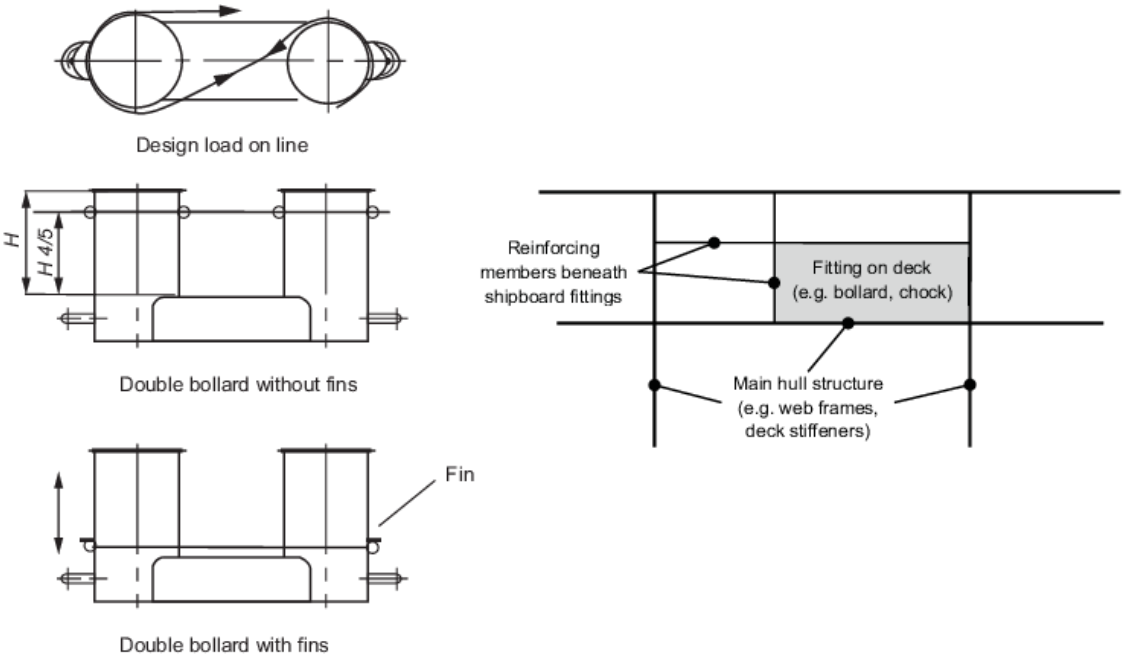
9. 3. 6 Mooring bitts (double bollards) are to be chosen for the mooring line attached in figure-of-eight fashion if the industry standard distinguishes between different methods to attach the line, i.e. figure-of-eight or eye-splice attachment.

9. 3. 7 When the shipboard fitting is not selected from an accepted industry standard, the strength of the fitting based on net scantlings and its attachment to the ship is to be adequate for the loads specified in Table 13. 9. 3: Minimum design load for deck fittings and supporting structure - Mooring based on the acceptance criteria given in Pt 3, Ch 13, 9.3 Mooring 9.3.10 or Pt 3, Ch 13, 9.3 Mooring 9.3.11 as appropriate. Mooring bitts (double bollards) are required to resist the loads caused by the mooring line attached in figure-of-eight fashion. For strength assessment, beam theory or finite element analysis using net scantlings is to be applied, as appropriate. Corrosion additions and wear down allowance is to be added as defined in this Section.

9. 3. 8 The net scantlings of the supporting hull structure for the fittings are to be adequate for the loads given in Table 13. 9. 3: Minimum design load for deck fittings and supporting structure - Mooring based on the acceptance criteria given in Pt 3, Ch 13, 9.3 Mooring 9.3.10 or Pt 3, Ch 13, 9.3 Mooring 9.3.11 as appropriate. The arrangement of reinforced members beneath shipboard fittings, winches and capstans is to consider any variation of direction (horizontally and vertically) of the mooring forces acting upon the shipboard fittings, *See* Figure 13. 9. 3: Supporting hull structure for a sample arrangement. Proper alignment of fitting and supporting hull structure is to be ensured. The acting point of the mooring force on shipboard fittings is to be taken at the attachment point of a mooring line or at a change in its direction. Corrosion additions are to be added to the net scantlings as defined in this Section.

9. 3. 9 For bollards and bitts the attachment point of the mooring line is to be taken not less than 4/5 of the tube height above the base, *See* Figure 13. 9. 3: Supporting hull structure. However, if fins are fitted to the bollard tubes to keep the mooring line as low as possible, then the attachment point of the mooring line is to be taken at the location of the fins, *See* Figure 13. 9. 3: Supporting hull structure.

Figure 13. 9. 3: Supporting hull structure



9. 3. 10 In the case of strength assessment using beam theory or grillage analysis, the stress within the supporting structure of fittings is not to exceed that given in Table 13. 9. 2: Allowable stress within the supporting structure of shipboard fittings.

9. 3. 11 For strength calculations by means of finite element analysis, the geometry is to be idealised as realistically as possible. The ratio of element length to width is not to exceed 3. Girders are to be modelled using shell or plane stress elements. Symmetric girder flanges are generally to be modelled by beam or truss elements. At least three elements are to be used across the depth of the girder. In way of small openings in girder webs the web thickness is to be reduced to a mean thickness over the web height. Large openings are to be modelled. Stiffeners are generally to be modelled by using shell, plane stress, or beam elements. Stresses are to be read from the centre of the individual element. For shell elements the stresses are to be evaluated at the mid plane of the element. The equivalent stress within the supporting structure of fittings is not to exceed the specified minimum yield strength of the material.

9. 3. 12 The Safe Working Load (SWL) is the load limit for mooring purposes. Unless a greater SWL is requested, the SWL assigned shall be the minimum breaking strength of the mooring line given in Pt 3, Ch 13, 7.5 Mooring lines (Equipment Number ≤ 2000) and Pt 3, Ch 13, 7.6 Mooring lines (Equipment Number > 2000), corresponding to the ship's equipment number (*See* Notes 2 and 3 of). Design load on line Double bollard without fins Fitting on deck (e.g. bollard, chock) Main hull structure (e.g. web frames, deck stiffeners) Reinforcing members beneath shipboard fittings Double bollard with fins Fin

9. 3. 13 The SWL, in tonnes, of each shipboard fitting is to be marked (by weld bead or equivalent) on the deck fittings used for mooring. For fittings intended to be used for both, mooring and towing, the TOW, in tonnes, according to Pt 3, Ch 13, 9.2, Towing is to be marked in addition to the SWL.

9. 3. 14 The above requirements on SWL apply for the use with no more than one mooring line.

9. 3. 15 The towing and mooring arrangements plan mentioned in Pt 3, Ch 13, 9.4, Towing and mooring arrangements plan is to define the method of use of mooring lines.

9. 4 Towing and mooring arrangements plan

9. 4. 1 The SWL and TOW for the intended use for each shipboard fitting is to be noted in the towing and mooring arrangements plan available on board for the guidance of the Master. It is to be noted that TOW is the load limit for towing purpose and SWL that for mooring purpose. If not otherwise chosen, for towing bitts it is to be noted that TOW is the load limit for a towing line attached with an eye splice.

9. 4. 2 Information provided on the plan is to include in respect for each shipboard fitting:

a. location on the ship;
b. fitting type;
c. SWL/TOW;
d. purpose (mooring/harbour towing/other towing);
e. manner of applying towing or mooring line load, including limiting fleet angles.
f. the arrangement of mooring lines showing number of lines (*N*);
g. the minimum breaking strength of each mooring line (MBL);
h. the acceptable environmental conditions as given in Pt 3, Ch 13, 7.6 Mooring lines (Equipment Number > 2000) for the recommended minimum breaking strength of mooring lines for ships with EN > 2000:
   - 30 second mean wind speed from any direction (V_W or V_W^*)
   - Maximum current speed acting on bow or stern ($\pm 10^\circ$).

Note Item (c) with respect to items (d) and (e), is subject to approval. Fleet angle is defined as the maximum angle the line deviates from a direction perpendicular to the drum axis of a mooring/towing winch.

9. 4. 3 The above information as given Pt 3, Ch 13, 9.4 Towing and mooring arrangements plan 9.4.2 is to be incorporated into the pilot card in order to provide the pilot with proper information on harbour and other towing operations.

9. 5 Corrosion addition

9. 5. 1 An allowance for corrosion is to be added to the net thickness derived as indicated below:

- For the supporting hull structure, a corrosion addition of 2 mm is to be added to the net thickness derived.
- For pedestals and foundations on deck which are not part of a fitting according to an accepted industry standard, 2.0 mm.
- For shipboard fittings not selected from an accepted industry standard, 2.0 mm.

9. 6 Wear allowance

9. 6. 1 In addition to the corrosion addition given in Pt 3, Ch 13, 9.5 Corrosion addition, the wear allowance, t_w, for shipboard fittings that are not selected from an acceptable National or International standard, is not to be less than 1.0 mm, added to surfaces which are intended to regularly contact the line.

PART

3

CHAPTER **13 Ship Control Systems**

SECTION **10 Anchoring equipment in deep and unsheltered water**

10. 1 General

10. 1. 1 It is recommended that the equipment requirements specified in this Section are complied with if the vessel intends to anchor in deep and unsheltered water. Where a ship's anchoring equipment complies with the requirements of this Section, the ship will be eligible to be assigned the special features notation **DWA**.

10. 1. 2 The equipment specified is for ships intended to anchor in water with depth up to 120 m, current with speed up to 1.54 m/s, wind with speed up to 14 m/s and waves with significant height of up to 3 m. The scope of chain cable, being the ratio between the length of chain paid out and water depth, is assumed to be not less than 3 to 4. These requirements are applicable only to ships with a Rule length L of not less than 135 m.

10. 1. 3 The requirements specified in other Sections of this Chapter need to be complied with unless alternative requirements are provided.

10. 2 Anchor and chain cable

10. 2. 1 Anchors and chain cables to be in accordance with Table 13. 10. 1: Anchoring equipment for ships in unsheltered water with depth up to 120m and based on the Equipment Number EN_1 obtained from the following equation.

$$EN_1 = 0.628\left[a\left(\frac{EN}{0.628}\right)^{1/2.3} + b(1-a)\right]^{2.3}$$

Where

a = $1.83 \times 10^{-9} \times L + 2.09 \times 10^{-6} \times L^2 - 6.21 \times 10^{-4} L + 0.0866$

b = $0.156 \times L + 8.372$

L = Rule length, in metres, *See* Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1 Principal particulars 6.1.1

EN = Equipment Number calculated in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 1, 7.1 Calculation of Equipment Number

10. 2. 2 The bower anchors are to be connected to their chain cables and positioned on board ready for use.

10. 2. 3 Anchors are to be of the stockless High Holding Power (HHP) type. The mass of the head of a stockless anchor, including pins and fittings, is to be not less than 60 per cent of the total mass of the anchor.

10. 2. 4 The mass, per anchor, of bower anchors given in Table 13. 10. 1: Anchoring equipment for ships in unsheltered water with depth up to 120m is for anchors of equal mass. The mass of individual anchors may vary to 7 per cent of the tabular mass, but the total mass of anchors is not to be less than that specified for anchors of equal mass.

10. 2. 5 Bower anchors are to be associated with stud link chain cables of special (U2) or extra special (U3) quality. The total length of chain cable, as given in Table 13. 10. 1: Anchoring equipment for ships in unsheltered water with depth up to 120m is to be approximately divided between the two bower anchors.

10. 3 Anchor windlass and chain stopper

10. 3. 1 The windlass unit prime mover is to be able to supply for at least 30 minutes a continuous duty pull Z_{cont}, in N, given by:

$$Z_{cont} = 35d^2 + 13.4\, m_A$$

Where

d = chain diameter, in mm, as per Table 13. 10. 1: Anchoring equipment for ships in unsheltered water with depth up to 120m

m_A = HHP anchor mass, in kg, as per Table 13. 10. 1: Anchoring equipment for ships in unsheltered water with depth up to 120m

10. 3. 2 The windlass is to have sufficient power to exert, over a period of at least two minutes, a pull equal to the greater of:

a. short term pull:
1.5 times the continuous duty pull as defined in Pt 3, Ch 13, 10.3 Anchor windlass and chain stopper 10.3.1

b. anchor breakout pull:

$$12.18 m_A + \frac{7.0 L_c d^2}{100} N$$

Where

L_c = is the total length of chain cable on board, in metres, as given by Table 13. 10. 1: Anchoring equipment for ships in unsheltered water with depth up to 120m

m_A = is the mass of HHP bower anchor (kg) as given in Table 13. 10. 1: Anchoring equipment for ships in unsheltered water with depth up to 120m

d = chain diameter, in mm, as per Table 13. 10. 1: Anchoring equipment for ships in unsheltered water with depth up to 120m

10. 3. 3 The capacity of the windlass brake is to be sufficient to stop the anchor and chain cable when paying out the chain cable. Where a chain cable stopper is not fitted, the brake is to produce a torque capable of withstanding a pull equal to 80 per cent of the specified minimum breaking strength of the chain cable without any permanent deformation of strength members and without brake slip. Where a chain cable stopper is fitted, 45 per cent of the breaking strength is to be applied instead.

10. 3. 4 As far as practicable, for testing purposes the speed of the chain cable during hoisting of the anchor and cable is to be measured over 37.5 m of chain cable and initially with at least 120 m of chain

and the anchor submerged and hanging free. The mean speed of the chain cable during hoisting of the anchor from the depth of 120 m to the depth of 82.5 m is to be at least 4.5 m/min.

10. 3. 5 The chain cable stopper, if fitted, along with its attachments is to be designed to withstand, without any permanent deformation, 80 per cent of the specified minimum breaking strength of the chain cable.

Table 13. 10. 1: Anchoring equipment for ships in unsheltered water with depth up to 120m

Equipment Number EN_1		High holding power stockless bower anchors		Stud link chain cable for bower anchors		
					Min. diameter	
Exceeding	Not exceeding	Number	Mass per anchor (kg)	Length (m)	Special quality (Grade U2) (mm)	Extra special quality (Grade U3) (mm)
	1790	2	14150	1017.5	105	84
1790	1930	2	14400	990	105	84
1930	2080	2	14800	990	105	84
2080	2230	2	15200	990	105	84
2230	2380	2	15600	990	105	84
2380	2530	2	16000	990	105	84
2530	2700	2	15900	990	105	84
2700	2870	2	15800	990	105	84
2870	3040	2	15700	990	105	84
3040	3210	2	15600	990	105	84
3210	3400	2	15500	990	105	84
3400	3600	2	15400	990	105	84
3600	3800	2	16600	990	107	87
3800	4000	2	17800	962.5	107	87
4000	4200	2	18900	962.5	111	90
4200	4400	2	20100	962.5	114	92
4400	4600	2	22000	962.5	117	95
4600	4800	2	22400	962.5	120	97
4800	5000	2	23500	962.5	124	99
5000	5200	2	24000	935	127	102
5200	5500	2	24500	907.5	132	107
5500	5800	2	25000	907.5	132	107

5800	6100	2	25500	880	137	111
6100	6500	2	25500	880	142	114
6500	6900	2	26000	852.5	142	117
6900	7400	2	26500	852.5	147	117
7400	7900	2	27000	825	152	122
7900	8400	2	27000	825	-	127
8400	8900	2	27000	797.5	-	127
8900	9400	2	27000	770	-	132
9400	10000	2	27000	770	-	137
10000	10700	2	27000	770	-	142
10700	11500	2	27000	770	-	142
11500	12400	2	29500	770	-	147
12400	13400	2	31500	770	-	152
13400	14600	2	34500	770	-	157
14600		2	38000	770	-	162

PART

3

CHAPTER **13 Ship Control Systems**

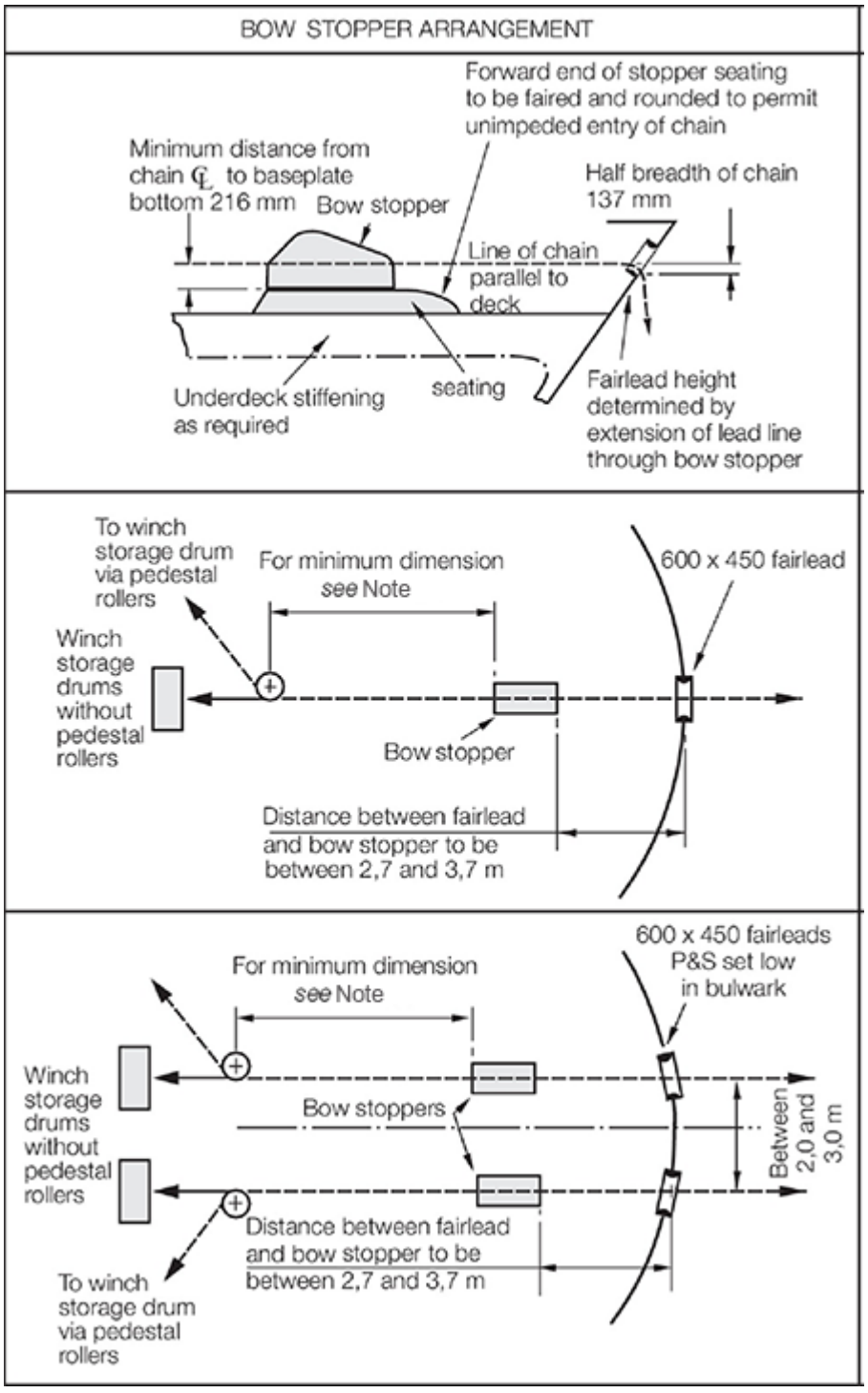
SECTION **11 Mooring of ships at single point moorings**

11. 1 General

11. 1. 1 These requirements are applicable to conventional oil tankers which intend to utilise the fittings standardised for single point moorings. For other ship types, the applicability would be specially considered. The requirements specified include the type, strength and location of the required fittings.

11. 1. 2 A ship provided with mooring arrangements in accordance with the requirements of this Section will be eligible to be assigned the Class notation **SPM4** where a single mooring line arrangement is provided for and **DSPM4** where a dual mooring line arrangement is provided for, *See* Figure 13. 11. 1: Positioning of forward fairleads, bow chain stoppers and pedestal roller leads.

Figure 13. 11. 1: Positioning of forward fairleads, bow chain stoppers and pedestal roller leads



Note Pt 3, Ch 13, 11.2 Arrangements 11.2.7.c

11. 2 Arrangements

11. 2. 1 The ship is to be fitted with bow chain stoppers and bow fairleads. In addition, pedestal roller fairleads may be required for alignment purposes but a direct straight lead from the chain stopper to the winch storage drum is the preferred arrangement. However, consideration of safety and protection from risk of injury to mooring personnel should take priority in determining whether pedestal rollers should be fitted as well as their number and positioning.

11. 2. 2 In order to ensure matching with terminal mooring equipment, the requirements for shipboard fittings are specified in association with ranges of ship deadweight as shown in Table 13. 11. 1: Deadweight group for shipboard fittings requirements.

Table 13. 11. 1: Deadweight group for shipboard fittings requirements

Group	Deadweight in tonnes
I	≤100 000
II	>100 000 ≤150 000
III	>150 000

11. 2. 3 Bow chain stoppers:

a. The number, chain cable size and minimum safe working load of bow chain stoppers should be as given in Table 13. 11. 2: Fittings requirements for deadweight group.

b. Bow chain stoppers should be located between 2.7 m and 3.7 m aft of the bow fairlead and should be positioned so as to give correct alignment with the bow fairlead and the pedestal fairlead or the storage drum of the winch, *See* Figure 13. 11. 1: Positioning of forward fairleads, bow chain stoppers and pedestal roller leads.

c. The leading edge of the stopper base plate is to be suitably faired to allow unimpeded entry of the combination chafe chain into the stopper. The chain referred to, forms part of the standardised SPM equipment.

d. The safety factor on yield of bow chain stoppers should be a minimum of 2 when the safe working load is applied.

e. The bow chain stopper(s) are to be type approved confirming that they are constructed in strict compliance with a standard recognised by *ACS* which specifies SWL, yield strength and safety factors.

Table 13. 11. 2: Fittings requirements for deadweight group

Group	Chain size, in mm	No. of chain stoppers	SWL, in kN (tonnes)
I	76	1, *See* Note	1960 (200)
II	76	1, *See* Note	2450 (250)
III	76	2	3430 (350)
Note Ships in this size range may elect to fit two stoppers to ensure full range terminal acceptance, *See* Pt 3, Ch 13, 11.1 General 11.1.2.			

11. 2. 4 The deck in way of bow chain stoppers is to have a minimum thickness of 15 mm. Their foundations, welds attaching them to the ship and associated ship supporting structure are to be demonstrated adequate to resist horizontal loads equal to 2 x SWL as given in Table 13. 11. 2: Fittings requirements for deadweight group. This is to be accomplished by suitable engineering analysis or calculations together with an inspection of the installation.

11. 2. 5 Bow chain stoppers are to be permanently marked with the SWL and appropriate serial numbers so that the certificates can be easily cross-referenced to the fitted equipment.

11. 2. 6 Bow fairleads:

a. One centrally located bow fairlead should be provided for ships fitted with one bow chain stopper. Two bow fairleads should be provided for ships fitted with two bow chain stoppers, *See* Figure 13. 11. 1: Positioning of forward fairleads, bow chain stoppers and pedestal roller leads.

b. Bow fairlead openings should be at least 600 x 450 mm for 76 mm chafe chain size. Where more than one bow fairlead is installed, the spacing of centres should be between 2 m and 3 m.

c. The height of the centre of the bow fairlead opening above the deck should be determined by the extension, parallel to the deck, of the lead line of the chain cable to the bow chain stopper, *See* Figure 13. 11. 1: Positioning of forward fairleads, bow chain stoppers and pedestal roller leads. The fairlead should have a minimum radius equal to seven times the chain radius.

d. The scantlings of the fairlead are to be determined in association with a load of 2 x SWL with hawser angles up to 90 degrees from the ship's centre line, both port and starboard in the horizontal plane and to 30 degrees above and below horizontal in the vertical plane.

e. The bow fairleads are to be type approved confirming that they are constructed in strict compliance with a standard recognised by *ACS* which specifies SWL and safety factors.

f. Their foundations and associated ship supporting structure are to be demonstrated adequate by detailed engineering analysis or calculations together with an inspection of the installation.

11. 2. 7 Pedestal roller fairleads:

a. Pedestal roller fairleads should have a minimum radius equal to 10 times the radius of wire mooring ropes with a fibre core, seven times the radius of wire mooring ropes with a steel core or three times the radius of synthetic mooring ropes.

b. The number of pedestal roller fairleads used for each bow chain stopper should not exceed two and the angle subtended by the change of direction of the pick-up rope should be minimal.

c. The minimum distance of pedestal roller fairleads from the bow chain stopper should be 3.0 m. Any variation in the minimum distance will be specially considered.

d. Details of local strengthening of the deck in way of pedestal roller fairleads should be submitted for approval.

11. 2. 8 The winch drum used for handling the mooring gear should be capable of exerting a continuous duty pull of not less than 147 kN and be of sufficient size to accommodate 150 m of 80 mm diameter rope. Winch drum ends (warping ends) to handle pick-up ropes should be avoided. Remotely-operated winch storage drums are recommended.

PART

3

CHAPTER **13 Ship Control Systems**

SECTION **12 Emergency towing arrangements**

12. 1 Structural requirements

12. 1. 1 This Section applies to ships equipped with emergency towing arrangements in accordance with IMO *Resolution MSC.35(63) - Adoption of Guidelines for Emergency Towing Arrangements on Tankers - (adopted on 20 May 1994)Amended by Resolution MSC.132(75)*.

12. 1. 2 Where a ship is provided with an emergency towing arrangement and the supporting structure complies with the requirements of this Section, the ship will be eligible to be assigned the descriptive note **ETA** which will be entered in column 6 of the *Register Book*.

12. 1. 3 The design load for strong points and associated fairleads shall be at least the specified breaking strength of the weakest component of the emergency towing arrangement, for angles of tow as specified in IMO *Resolution MSC.35(63) - Adoption of Guidelines for Emergency Towing Arrangements on Tankers - (adopted on 20 May 1994)Amended by Resolution MSC.132(75)*.

12. 1. 4 The deck and its supporting structure in way of strongpoints and fairleads are to be suitably reinforced to resist design loads of at least 1.3 times the specified breaking strength of the weakest component of the emergency towing arrangement, for angles of tow as specified in IMO *Resolution MSC.35(63) - Adoption of Guidelines for Emergency Towing Arrangements on Tankers - (adopted on 20 May 1994)Amended by Resolution MSC.132(75)*. The deck in way of strongpoints and fairleads is to have a minimum thickness of 15 mm.

12. 1. 5 Stresses induced in the strongpoints, fairleads and associated ship supporting structure, determined using the design loads from Pt 3, Ch 13, 12.1 Structural requirements 12.1.3 and Pt 3, Ch 13, 12.1 Structural requirements 12.1.4 as appropriate, are not to exceed the permissible values given in Table 13. 12. 1: Permissible stress values. The capability of the structure to withstand buckling is also to be assessed.

Table 13. 12. 1: Permissible stress values

	Permissible stress N/mm^2
Direct stress	σ_o
Shear stress	$\frac{\sigma_0}{\sqrt{3}}$
Combined stress	σ_o
Symbols	
σ_o = specified minimum yield stress, in N/mm^2	

12. 1. 6 The weld between the fittings and the deck shall be capable of resisting the design load specified in Pt 3, Ch 13, 12.1 Structural requirements 12.1.3.

12. 1. 7 The structural arrangement is to be such that continuity will be ensured. Abrupt changes of shape or section, sharp corners and other points of stress concentration are to be avoided.

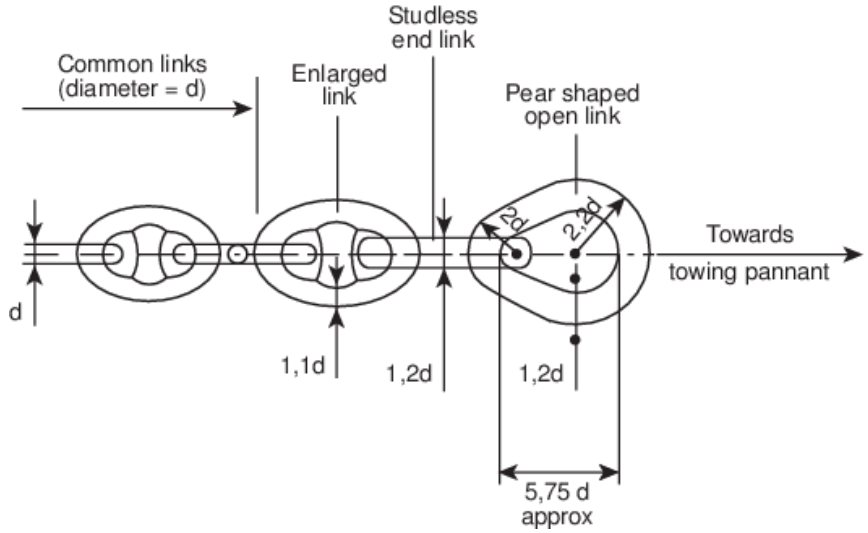
12. 1. 8 Designs of emergency towing arrangements shall be prototype-tested as required by the IMO *Resolution MSC.35(63) - Adoption of Guidelines for Emergency Towing Arrangements on Tankers - (adopted on 20 May 1994)Amended by Resolution MSC.132(75)*

12. 2 Chafing chain and wire or fibre rope for Emergency Towing Arrangements

12. 2. 1 Chafing chains are to be manufactured, tested and certified in accordance with Ch 10, 2 Stud link chain cables for ships of the Rules for Materials Grades U2 and U3.

12. 2. 2 The outboard end of the chafing chain is to include a pear-shaped link allowing connection to a shackle corresponding to the type of ETA and chain grade. A typical arrangement is shown in Figure 13. 12. 1: Typical outboard chafing chain end.

Figure 13. 12. 1: Typical outboard chafing chain end



12. 2. 3 The chafing chain is to be able to withstand a breaking load not less than twice the safe working load (SWL). The nominal diameter of common link for chafing chains is to comply with the value indicated in Table 13. 12. 2: Nominal diameter of common link for chafing chains for ETA.

Table 13. 12. 2: Nominal diameter of common link for chafing chains for ETA

Type of ETA	Nominal diameter of common link, *d* min	
	Grade U2	Grade U3
ETA 1000	62 mm	52 mm
ETA 2000	90 mm	76 mm

12. 2. 4 Steel wire ropes are to be manufactured, tested and certified in accordance with Ch 10, 6 Steel wire ropes of the Rules for Materials.

12. 2. 5 Fibre ropes are to be manufactured, tested and certified in accordance with Ch 10, 7 Fibre ropes of the Rules for Materials.

PART

3

CHAPTER **14 Cargo Securing Arrangements**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**1353**
	1. 1	Application	1353
	1. 2	Classification notations and descriptive notes	1354
	1. 3	Application of the BoxMax(V,W,L) notation	1356
	1. 4	Application of the BoxMax(M) notation	1360
	1. 5	Plans and information required	1360
	1. 6	Securing systems	1361
	1. 7	Symbols and definitions	1361
SECTION 2	**Fixed cargo securing fittings, materials and testing**		**1367**
	2. 1	General	1367
	2. 2	Materials and design	1367
	2. 3	Prototype testing	1367
	2. 4	Production testing	1369
SECTION 3	**Loose container securing fittings, materials and testing**		**1370**
	3. 1	General	1370
	3. 2	Materials and design	1370
	3. 3	Prototype testing	1371
	3. 4	Production testing	1372
	3. 5	Function and environmental testing	1372
SECTION 4	**Ship structure**		**1374**
	4. 1	General	1374
	4. 2	Strength	1374
SECTION 5	**Container securing arrangements for stowage on exposed decks without cell guides**		**1375**
	5. 1	General	1375
	5. 2	Containers in one tier	1375
	5. 3	Containers in two tiers	1376

5. 4 Containers in more than two tiers 1376
5. 5 Line Load stowage 1377
5. 6 Systems incorporating structural restraint 1378
SECTION 6 Container securing arrangements for underdeck stowage without cell guides 1379
6. 1 General 1379
SECTION 7 Container securing arrangements for stowage using cell guides 1380
7. 1 General 1380
7. 2 Arrangement and construction 1380
7. 3 Carriage of 20 ft containers in 40 ft cell guides in holds 1381
7. 4 Cell guide systems on exposed decks 1387
7. 5 Entry guide devices 1388
SECTION 8 Determination of forces for container securing arrangements 1389
8. 1 General 1389
8. 2 Ship motion, wind and green sea forces acting on containers 1389
SECTION 9 Strength of container securing arrangements 1398
9. 1 General 1398
9. 2 Forces applied to each container 1398
9. 3 Analysis of the container stack 1400
9. 4 Allowable forces on containers, fittings and lashing devices 1404
SECTION 10 Surveys 1408
10. 1 Initial Survey 1408
10. 2 Periodical Surveys 1408
SECTION 1 General 1411
1. 1 Definitions 1411
1. 2 Scope of the Quality Assurance Scheme 1412
SECTION 2 Application 1413
2. 1 Certification of the shipyard 1413
SECTION 3 Particulars to be submitted 1415
3. 1 Documentation and procedures 1415
3. 2 Amendments 1415
SECTION 4 Requirements of Parts 1 and 2 of the Scheme 1416
4. 1 General 1416
4. 2 Policy statement 1416
4. 3 Responsibility 1416
4. 4 Management Representative 1416

4. 5 Quality control and testing personnel 1416
4. 6 Resources 1416
4. 7 The Quality Management System 1417
4. 8 Regulatory requirements 1417
4. 9 Control of hull drawings 1417
4. 10 Documentation and change control 1417
4. 11 Purchasing data and receipt 1418
4. 12 Owner supplied material 1418
4. 13 Identification and traceability 1418
4. 14 Fabrication control 1418
4. 15 Control of inspection and testing 1418
4. 16 Indication of inspection status 1419
4. 17 Inspection, measuring and test equipment 1419
4. 18 Non-conforming materials and corrective action 1419
4. 19 Protection and preservation of quality 1419
4. 20 Records 1419
4. 21 Internal audit and management review 1420
4. 22 Training 1420
4. 23 Sampling 1420
4. 24 Sub-contracted personnel, services and components 1420

SECTION 5 Additional requirements for Part 2 of the Scheme 1421

5. 1 Quality System procedures 1421
5. 2 Quality Plans 1421
5. 3 Material supplier approval 1421
5. 4 Identification and traceability 1421
5. 5 Fabrication control 1421
5. 6 Control of inspection and testing 1422
5. 7 Control of non-conforming materials and corrective action 1422
5. 8 Records 1422
5. 9 Training 1422
5. 10 Sub-contracted personnel, services and components 1422

SECTION 6 Initial assessment of the shipyard 1423

6. 1 General 1423

SECTION 7 Approval of the shipyard 1424

7. 1 General 1424

SECTION 8 Maintenance of approval 1425

8. 1 General 1425
SECTION 9 Suspension or withdrawal of approval 1426
9. 1 General 1426

PART

3

CHAPTER **14 Cargo Securing Arrangements**

LIST OF TABELS

Table 14. 1. 1: BoxMax notation features 1355

Table 14. 2. 1: Design breaking loads and proof loads for fixed cargo securing fittings 1367

Table 14. 2. 2: Test loads and test modes for fixed container securing fittings 1368

Table 14. 3. 1: Design breaking loads and proof loads for loose container securing fittings 1371

Table 14. 3. 2: Test loads and test modes for loose container securing fittings 1371

Table 14. 4. 1: Permissible stress values 1374

Table 14. 7. 1: Maximum container weights of Wh 20 ft containers stowed in 40 ft cell guides with no overstow 1383

Table 14. 7. 2: Maximum containers weights, Wh of 20 ft containers stowed in 40 ft cell guides with overstow, diagonal stacking cone arrangement 1384

Table 14. 7. 3: Maximum container weights Wh of 20 ft containers stowed in 40 ft cell guides with overstow, other stacking cone arrangement 1386

Table 14. 8. 1: Wind heading coefficient C_{wh} 1392

Table 14. 8. 2: Green sea pressure coefficients 1396

Table 14. 8. 3: Motion Combination Factors (MCFs) 1396

Table 14. 9. 1: Acceleration force application 1399

Table 14. 9. 2: Shear spring stiffness of container walls 1400

Table 14. 9. 3: Container post properties 1400

Table 14. 9. 4: Effective modulus of elasticity of lashing devices 1401

Table 14. 9. 5: Twistlock separation and states 1402

Table 14. 9. 6: Allowable forces in containers in stacks with the same base size 1405

Table 14. 9. 7: Allowable compression forces for posts and corner castings of 40 ft and 45 ft containers in mixed stacks 1406

PART

3

CHAPTER **14 Cargo Securing Arrangements**

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 14. 1. 1: Diagrammatic representation of symbols 1366

Figure 14. 1. 2: Ship coordinate system and sign convention of motio 1366

Figure 14. 7. 1: ft euro container in cell guides 1381

Figure 14. 7. 2: Diagonal stacking cone arrangement 1386

Figure 14. 8. 1: Application of wind forces 1394

Figure 14. 8. 2: Example of application of green sea forces 1395

Figure 14. 9. 1: Lashing bridge transverse spring stiffness 1402

Figure 14. 9. 2: Allowable forces for 20 ft or 40 ft containers constructed to ISO 1496-1:1990 including Amendment Nos. 1, 2 and 3 1407

PART

3

CHAPTER **14 Cargo Securing Arrangements**

SECTION **1 General**

1. 1 Application

1. 1. 1 All cargo ships, regardless of tonnage, except those engaged solely in the carriage of either liquid or solid bulk cargoes, are to be provided with a Cargo Securing Manual approved by the Flag Administration, as required by SOLAS 1974 (as amended). Pt 3, Ch 14, 2 Fixed cargo securing fittings, materials and testing, Pt 3, Ch 14, 4 Ship structure, Pt 3, Ch 14, 7 Container securing arrangements for stowage using cell guides (if applicable) and Pt 3, Ch 14, 10 Surveys apply to all ships for which a Cargo Securing Manual is required. It is recommended that the container securing arrangements in the Cargo Securing Manual be designed in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 14, 3 Loose container securing fittings, materials and testing , Pt 3, Ch 14, 5 Container securing arrangements for stowage on exposed decks without cell guides, Pt 3, Ch 14, 6 Container securing arrangements for underdeck stowage without cell guides, Pt 3, Ch 14, 8 Determination of forces for container securing arrangements and Pt 3, Ch 14, 9 Strength of container securing arrangements. Furthermore, it is recommended that the container securing arrangements be submitted to ACS, for formal approval. In cases where ACS is authorised to carry out the approval of the Cargo Securing Manual on behalf of a National Administration and the container securing arrangements have not been designed on the basis of the ACS Rules nor received formal ACS approval, the Cargo Securing Manual will be annotated accordingly, highlighting this fact. In general, Cargo Securing Manuals can be approved by ACS if authorised by the National Authority.

1. 1. 2 Fixed fittings which are part of the container lashing equipment or which may affect the strength of the ship's hull are subject to approval on the basis of the requirements of this Chapter. Details of the connection and the supporting ship structure require approval to satisfy the design loads determined in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 14, 8 Determination of forces for container securing arrangements or the safe working load of the fixed fitting, as applicable. Drawings are to be submitted showing details of the fittings, the attachment, the local foundations and information about the intended materials and welding.

1. 1. 3 The requirements for container securing arrangements have been framed in relation to ISO Standard Series 1 ISO 1496-1:1990, including Amendment Nos. 1, 2 and 3, Freight Containers. For previous ISO 1496-1:1984 containers, reference should be made to ACS Rules. Proposals to consider higher allowable forces in accordance with ISO 1496-1, including Amendment No. 4, 2006, will be specially considered. Proposals for the securing of other types of containers will be specially considered.

1. 1. 4 Containers are to be loaded so as not to exceed the weights and distribution within the stack according to the Cargo Securing Manual (CSM). The permissible loading patterns are to be clearly indicated on the Container Securing Arrangement Plan carried on board the ship.

1. 1. 5 Containers may be approved and certified using ACS *Container Certification Scheme*.

1. 1. 6 Where it is intended and specified that loose or fixed parts of the container securing system are used for lifting appliance purposes, e.g. pedestal sockets and fittings used for lifting of hatch covers, or twistlocks used for vertical tandem lifting, the requirements of ACS Guideline for

Lifting Appliances in a Marine Environment-are applicable. If no approval from lifting aspects is sought, the devices will be considered as part of a container securing arrangement only.

1. 1. 7 For ships having the class notation **Container Ship**, an effective breakwater is to be fitted to protect the containers against green sea impact loads. For other ships which are equipped for the carriage of containers on deck, protection of the cargo is recommended by the provision of a breakwater. *See also*Pt 3, Ch 14, 8.2, Ship motion, wind and green sea forces acting on containers.

1. 1. 8 Forward of 0.75*L*, it is recommended that all door ends face aft in order to improve the performance of the container walls to withstand green sea loads.

1. 1. 9 Improper ship handling related to course and speed or threshold phenomena like parametric rolling can create adverse forces acting on the ship and the cargo which are in excess of the forces determined on the basis of Section Pt 3, Ch 14, 8 Determination of forces for container securing arrangements. It is the responsibility of the Master to apply good seamanship in order to mitigate excessive ship motions to reduce forces acting on the cargo stowage arrangements.

1. 2 Classification notations and descriptive notes

1. 2. 1 Ships with container securing arrangements which are designed and constructed in accordance with this Chapter will be eligible to be assigned the special features notation **CCSA** (certified container securing arrangements). In addition to the fixed fittings, the Initial and Periodical Survey requirements of Section Pt 3, Ch 14, 10 Surveys for all loose fittings are applicable. Where loose container securing fittings are supplied for part container stowage only, the special features notation will be suitably modified.

1. 2. 2 Ships with container securing arrangements which are designed and constructed in accordance with this Chapter, but where the Initial and Periodical Survey requirements for loose fittings in Section Pt 3, Ch 14, 10 Surveys are not requested, will be eligible to be assigned the descriptive note **CSA** (container securing arrangement).

1. 2. 3 The advantage of having an onboard lashing program to calculate forces acting on the stowage arrangement is highlighted. It is recommended that all ships carrying containers on a regular basis be equipped with such a tool. This may be an extension to the loading instrument covered under Pt 3, Ch 4, 8.3 Loading instrument. It is recommended that the program be approved by ACS. If the program to carry out lashing calculations is approved by ACS and installed and maintained in accordance with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4, 8.4 Onboard lashing program, the ship will be eligible to be assigned the special features notation **BoxMax**.

1. 2. 4 It is a prerequisite for assignment of the special features notation **BoxMax** that the container securing arrangements in the Cargo Securing Manual are designed in accordance with this Chapter and submitted to ACS for formal approval.

1. 2. 5 The container securing arrangements of a container ship may take into account specific voyage routes and seasons, provided the ship has been assigned the special features notation **BoxMax** with one of the following supplementary letter sequences: **V** or **V,W** or **V,W,L** or **M**. The features offered by these supplementary letter sequences are defined in Table 14. 1. 1: BoxMax notation features.

1. 2. 6 The onboard lashing program is to be capable of performing calculations specific to defined sea areas and seasons, and the weather dependent factors for these areas and seasons have been supplied by ACS.

- If the weather dependent factors have been supplied by ACS for specific sea areas, the ship will be eligible to be assigned the special features notation **BoxMax(V)**.
- If the factors have been supplied by ACS for specific sea areas in combination with seasons, the ship will be eligible to be assigned the special features notation **BoxMax(V,W)**.

- If the factors have been supplied by ACS for limited voyages, the ship will be eligible to be assigned the special features notation **BoxMax(V,W,L)**.
- If the factors have been supplied by ACS for ship motions and environmental conditions, the ship will be eligible to be assigned the special features notation **BoxMax(M)**.

See also Pt 3, Ch 4, 8.4 Onboard lashing program.

1. 2. 7 For details of the individual features for the **BoxMax** notation, *See* Table 14. 1. 1: BoxMax notation features.

1. 2. 8 A ship designed to carry containers that is provided with safe access and securing arrangements in accordance with the *Rules for Ergonomic Container Lashing* will be eligible to be assigned the special features notation **ECL** (Ergonomic Container Lashing), with supplementary descriptor.

Table 14. 1. 1: BoxMax notation features

Notation	Additional feature description
BoxMax(V)	**V**: Voyage dependencies The assessment of the loads acting on the containers and the container securing arrangements may take account of the areas on the trading route of the ship. The North Atlantic represents one of the most severe weather areas in the world. For other areas the weather conditions may be less severe, and hence the assignment of the **BoxMax(V)** notation allows weather dependent factors to be applied to the environmental (dynamic) loads acting on the container stacks in-hold or on-deck. For the **V** feature, the weather dependent factors are determined on the basis of the annual environmental wave data, *See* Note 1. The weather dependent factors applicable to annual environmental wave data for the requested sea areas will be supplied by ACS, *See* Note 2.
BoxMax(V,W)	**W**: Weather dependency (Season dependency) The **BoxMax(V,W)** notation allows the change in weather conditions for various seasons to be taken into account for the assessment of the environmental loads acting on container stacks in-hold or on-deck. For example, this allows enhanced flexibility for the carriage of containers in the summer season, when the weather conditions are usually less severe than in the winter months. For the **W** feature, the weather dependent factors are determined on the basis of the seasonal environmental wave data. The weather dependent factors applicable to seasonal environmental wave data for the requested sea areas will be supplied by ACS, *See* Note 2.

BoxMax(V,W,L)	**L**: Limited duration voyages The **BoxMax(V,W,L)** notation potentially allows increased flexibility for the carriage of containers on board the ship for limited duration voyages. When applying the **L** feature, limited duration voyage factors are applicable for voyages of less than 48 hours. They are suitable for short coastal voyages, for example between ports such as Hamburg and Rotterdam or between Hong Kong and Xiamen (China). Typically it will allow enhanced flexibility for the carriage of containers and may allow reduced lashing requirements between local ports. The process of application of the **BoxMax(V,W,L)** limited duration voyage feature is given in Pt 3, Ch 14, 1.3 Application of the BoxMax(V,W,L) notation. The weather dependent factors applicable to limited duration voyages based on wave heights predicted by weather forecasts will be supplied by ACS.
BoxMax(M)	**M**: Ship motion monitoring The **BoxMax(M)** notation allows maximum flexibility in the way containers are carried for any voyage. The degree of lashing can be fully appropriate to operation, *See* Note 3. The Master will be required to manage the motion of the ship during the voyage by good seamanship and by weather routing, and not exceed the declared ship motions. The maximum motion of the ship during the voyage is to be recorded and compared to the declared ship motion. The process of application of the **BoxMax(M)** ship motion monitoring feature is given in *Pt 3, Ch 14, 1.4 Application of the BoxMax(M) notation*.
Note 1: The weather dependent factors are described in Pt 3, Ch 14, 1.7 Symbols and definitions 1.7.1. **Note** 2: ACS will supply weather dependent factors applicable to the list of sea areas requested by the owner. The requested sea areas must cover the whole of the voyage route to be used. If the vessel sails outside of the requested sea areas then all the weather dependent factors should be set to 1.0. **Note** 3: ACS will supply weather dependent factors in the form of a look up table specific to the ship; the voyage factors shall be selected based on the maximum ship motion being declared.	

1. 3 Application of the BoxMax(V,W,L) notation

1. 3. 1 The **BoxMax(V,W,L)** notation requires the following process to be applied by the Ship's Master.

1. 3. 2 For the limited duration voyage feature to be applicable the following process must be in place:

a. The ship must subscribe to an ocean weather forecast service provided by a recognised and reputable met ocean weather forecasting organisation. The forecast is to include wind speed and wave heights for a minimum period of 5 days and preferably 10 days. The responsibility for selection of the weather forecasting organisation lies with the Master.

b. The limited voyage feature shall not hazard safe navigation and adverse weather conditions should be avoided as far as possible.

1. 3. 3 The limited duration voyage feature can only be applied in the following scenarios:

a. The maximum length of a limited duration voyage is 48 hours in Open Water. A limited duration voyage may be slightly extended at the Master's discretion provided the forecast is favourable. Voyages longer than this will need to be considered using the **BoxMax(V,W)** approaches.

b. There should be no warnings for major storms with maximum sustained winds of more than 119 km per hour for an area within 500 miles from the long-range weather forecast.

where

Open Water — May be taken as starting at the outer harbour limits or harbour breakwater, as applicable. The concept of Open Water here is used to define the point at which the ship will leave the confines of the port and any estuaries or inshore navigation confines.

T_{depart} — Is to be taken as the estimated time in hours after the initial forecast that the ship enters Open Water after leaving the port of departure.

T_{arrive} — Is to be taken as the estimated time in hours after the initial forecast that the ship leaves Open Water prior to entering the port of arrival.

1. 3. 4 The supplied weather dependent factors applicable to limited duration voyages are based on the significant wave height.

1. 3. 5 The Master needs to select the appropriate significant wave height for the limited duration voyage, H_{SL}. The significant wave height for the limited duration voyage is to be rounded up to the next integer and is to be selected as follows:

H_{SL} = $H_{foercast}$ if the T_{arrive} is less than 72 hours after the time of the initial forecast.

= $H_{forecast} + 1$ m if the is more than 72 hours after the time of the initial forecast.

Where $H_{forecast} + 2$ m if the T_{arrive} is more than hours after the time of the initial forecast.

$H_{forecast}$ is the maximum significant wave height predicted for the limited duration voyage. It is to be extracted from the forecast at the time of planning the cargo stowage up to the time when the vessel leaves Open Water prior to entering the port of arrival. The forecast period is not to be less than 5 days.

The time of the initial forecast is to be taken as the most recent forecast prior to commencement of cargo planning operations.

1. 3. 6 When the ship departs, if the latest forecast is more severe than the earlier forecasts, then is to be taken as the maximum significant wave height from the latest forecast for the period up to the time the ship leaves Open Water prior to entering the port of arrival +24 hours for the planned voyage, if this exceeds from Pt 3, Ch 14, 1.3 Application of the BoxMax(V,W,L) notation 1.3.5.

1. 3. 7 The significant wave height used for the limited duration voyage should be recorded in the cargo plan information and the onboard lashing computer for the voyage. The ship specific weather dependent coefficients for a range of significant wave heights will be provided by ACS as part of the **BoxMax(V,W,L)** notation.

1. 3. 8 Example of application of **BoxMax(V,W,L)**:

Scenario 1

Date	14 July	15 July	16 July	17 July	18 July	19 July
Voyage schedule	Planning commences at 14:00			Stowage and lashing Leaves quayside At 13:00 Enters Open Water at 16:00	Voyage 18 hours Leaves Open Water at 10:00 Arrive at quayside	

Forecast day 14 July @ 12:00 – initial forecast						
Forecast time	12:00					
Time from initial forecast				T_{depart} = 76 hrs	T_{arrive} = 94 hrs	
Forecast wave height	3.3 m	3.3 m	3.7 m	3.7 m	3.5 m	3.5 m
$H_{forecast}$	3.7 m					
$\Delta H_{forecast}$ **(T_{arrive}>72h) (T_{arrive}<96h)**	1.0 m					
Limited duration H_{SL}	3.7 m+1.0 m=4.7 m rounded up to the next integer = 5 m					
Action	Plan lashing requirement with H_{SL} = 5 m					
Forecast day 15 July @ 12:00						
Forecast time	-	12:00				
Forecast wave height	-	3.5 m	3.7 m	3.5 m	3.3 m	3.2 m
Action	-	Monitor weather forecast – no change in wave height expected				
Forecast day 16 July @ 12:00						
Forecast time	-	-	12:00			
Forecast wave height	-	-	3.7 m	3.7 m	3.5 m	3.3 m
Action	-	-	Monitor weather forecast – no change in wave height expected			
Forecast day 17 July @ 12:00						
Forecast time	-	-	-	12:00		
Forecast wave height	-	-	-	3.8 m	4.1 m	4.0 m
Action	-	-	-	Max forecast wave height increased to 4.1 m. 4.1 m is less than planning wave height of 5.0 m Voyage can be undertaken. Monitor latest forecast and actual sea state		
Forecast day 18 July @ 12:00						
Forecast time	-	-	-	-	12:00	
Forecast wave height	-	-	-	-	4.2 m	4.0 m
Action	-	-	-	Monitor latest forecast and actual sea state		

Scenario 2

Date	14 July	15 July	16 July	17 July	18 July	19 July

Voyage schedule	Planning commences at 14:00			Stowage and lashing Leaves quayside At 13:00 Enters Open Water at 16:00	Voyage 18 hours Leaves Open Water at 10:00 Arrive at quayside	
Forecast day 14 July @ 12:00 – initial forecast						
Forecast time	12:00					
Time from initial forecast				Tdepart = 76 hrs	Tarrive = 94 hrs	
Forecast wave height	3.3 m	3.3 m	3.7 m	3.7 m	3.5 m	3.3 m
Hforecast	3.7 m					
ΔHforecast (Tarrive>72h) (Tarrive<96h)	1.0 m					
Limited duration HSL	3.7 m + 1.0 m = 4.7 m rounded up to the next integer = 5 m					
Action	Plan lashing requirement with HSL = 5 m					
Forecast day 15 July @ 12:00						
Forecast time	-	12:00				
Forecast wave height	-	3.5 m	3.7 m	3.7 m	3.5 m	3.8 m
Action	-	Monitor weather forecast				
Forecast day 16 July @ 12:00						
Forecast time	-	-	12:00			
Forecast wave height	-	-	3.7 m	3.7 m	4.4 m	4.5 m
Action	-	-	Forecast indicates increasing waveheight (Maximum wave height still below HSL of 5 m) Consider reassessing lashing requirement with increased waveheight. Monitor weather forecast			
Forecast day 17 July @ 12:00						
Forecast time	-	-	-	12:00		
Forecast wave height	-	-	-	4.8 m	5.5 m	5.4 m
Action	-	-	-	Final forecast from Tdepart to Tarrive + 24 hours is higher than HSL, hence cargo plan needs to be reassessed. Master needs to select an appropriate HSL value, e.g. 6 m. Might result in delay to planned departure.		
Forecast day 18 July @ 12:00						
Forecast time	-	-	-	-	12:00	
Forecast wave height	-	-	-	-	5.5 m	5.4 m
Action	-	-	-	-	Monitor latest forecast and actual sea state	

1. 4 Application of the BoxMax(M) notation

1. 4. 1 The **BoxMax(M)** notation requires the following process to be applied by the Ship's Master.

1. 4. 2 For the ship motion monitoring notation to be applicable the following process must be in place:

a. At the start of a voyage, the Master shall declare the maximum expected ship motions and environmental conditions and assign weather dependent factors accordingly. The responsibility for selection of appropriate ship motions and environmental conditions lies with the Master.

b. The ship motion monitoring feature shall not hazard safe navigation and adverse weather conditions should be avoided as far as possible.

1. 4. 3 The supplied weather dependent factors applicable to ship motion notation are based on the declared ship motion and environmental conditions.

1. 4. 4 The maximum ship motion, environmental conditions and weather dependent factors planned for the voyage should be recorded in the cargo plan information and the onboard lashing computer for the voyage. The ship specific weather dependent coefficients for a range of ship motion and environmental conditions will be provided by ACS as part of the **BoxMax(M)** notation.

1. 4. 5 ACS can provide ship specific guidance with regard to voyage ship motion predictions and environmental loading.

1. 5 Plans and information required

1. 5. 1 For all fixed cargo securing arrangements, except container securing arrangements, the following information and plans are to be submitted:

a. Details of certification including safe working load (SWL) of fixed cargo securing fittings.

b. Plans of structure in way of fixed cargo securing fittings.

c. Direction of loads imposed on the ship's fixed cargo securing fittings.

d. A general arrangement of fixed cargo securing fittings.

1. 5. 2 For container securing arrangements, the following plans and information are to be submitted:

a. General arrangement plan showing the disposition and design weights of the containers.

b. Details of materials, design, scantlings of cell guides structure, lashing bridges, pedestals, and other container securing arrangements, where fitted.

c. Details of certification, including safe working load (SWL), of fixed and loose container securing fittings.

d. Plans of structure in way of fixed container securing fittings and arrangements.

e. Design values of the following ship parameters for the container load departure and arrival conditions:

i. Moulded draught (T_c)

ii. Transverse metacentric height (GM).

f. Cargo Securing Manual, *See* Pt 3, Ch 14, 1.5 Plans and information required 1.5.3.

1. 5. 3 The Cargo Securing Manual is to include the following information:

a. For vessels with an approved onboard lashing program, representative lashing calculations based on one design GM value within the following range:

i. A lower design GM value of 2.5 per cent of the breadth B.

ii. An upper design GM value of 7.5 per cent of B for ships with a breadth less than 52 m and 10 per cent of B for ships where $B \geq 52$ m.

b. For vessels without an approved onboard lashing program, representative lashing calculations based on design GM values as follows:

i. A lower design GM value of 2.5 per cent of the breadth B.

ii. An upper design *GM* value of 7.5 per cent of *B* for ships with a breadth less than 52 m and 10 per cent of *B* for ships where *B*>= 52 m.

iii. Actual GM values of the ship in the container loaded condition from the approved Trim and Stability Booklet or Loading Manual when the actual design GM values are outside the range specified in i) and ii).

c. For vessels with notation **BoxMax(V)**, **BoxMax(V,W)**, **BoxMax(V,W,L)** or **BoxMax(M)** representative calculations based on applicable weather reduction factors are to be included in the Cargo Securing Manual.

1. 5. 4 Where containers of types other than ISO containers are to be incorporated in the stowage arrangement, the Cargo Securing Manual is to indicate clearly the locations where these containers are stowed. The manual is also to indicate the container weights and required securing arrangements for stacks composed entirely of ISO Standard containers.

1. 6 Securing systems

1. 6. 1 Containers are to be secured by one, or a combination, of the following systems:

- Corner locking devices.
- Rod, wire or chain lashings.
- Buttresses, shores or equivalent structural restraint.
- Cell guides.

Alternative systems will be considered on the basis of their suitability for the intended purpose.

1. 6. 2 Dunnage is not to be used in association with approved container securing systems except where forming part of an approved line load stowage, *See* Pt 3, Ch 14, 5.5 Line Load stowage.

1. 7 Symbols and definitions

1. 7. 1 The following definitions are applicable to this Chapter, except where otherwise stated:

a = breadth of the container, in metres (for longitudinally stowed containers)

b = length of the container, in metres (for longitudinally stowed containers)

c_i = height of container i, in metres

d_i = flange thickness of container securing device (e.g. twistlock) below container i, in metres

a_0 = acceleration parameter

$$= f_{HS}(1.58 - 0.47C_b)(\frac{2.4}{\sqrt{L}} + \frac{34}{L} - \frac{600}{L^2})$$

a_{surge} = longitudinal acceleration due to surge, in m/s^2

$= 0.275a_0$ g

a_{sway} = transverse acceleration due to sway, in m/s^2

$= 0.55a_0$ g

a_{heave} = vertical acceleration due to heave, in m/s^2

= a_0 g

a_{roll} = roll acceleration at the centre of motion of the vessel, in rad/s^2

= $0.69.\frac{\varphi}{T_{r^2}}$

a_{pitch} = acceleration due to pitch, in rad/s^2

$0.69(1+\frac{0.98}{\sqrt{L}})\frac{\Psi}{T_{p^2}}$

T_p = period of pitch of the ship, in seconds

= $0.80\sqrt{C_1 L}$

where

C_1 = 0.95 for Motion Case 1

= 0.52 for all other Motion Cases

T_r = period of roll of the ship, in seconds

= $\frac{0.82B}{\sqrt{GM}}$

φ = design roll angle for container securing arrangements, in degrees

= $f_{HsR}\varphi_f$ but not less than 12 degrees

Where

φ_f = $55f_{BK}e^{(-0.025B)}$ but need not be taken greater than 30 degrees

If φ_f is less than φ_m:

φ_f = $55f_{gm}f_V f_{BK}e^{(-0.025\ B)}$ but is not to be taken greater than φ_m

Where

φ_m the minimum unrestricted roll angle, in degrees, is to be taken as:
For ships with a breadth greater than 58 m:

= 22 degrees for *GM* values below 7.5 per cent of the breadth, *B*

= 18 degrees for *GM* values above 10 per cent of the breadth, *B*

for *GM* values between 7.5 and 10 per cent of the breadth, *B*, the minimum unrestricted roll angle is to be determined by linear interpolation.

For ships with a breadth less than 54 m

= 22 degrees

For ships with breadth, *B*, between 54 m and 58 m, the minimum unrestricted roll angle is to be determined by linear interpolation.

f_v = is to be taken as 1.0

f_{gm} = $\frac{7.5GM}{B} + 0.6$but is not to be taken less than 1.0

Note The calculations assume that the Master takes action to avoid synchronous rolling and parametric rolling. ACS can provide ship specific guidance with regard to synchronous rolling and parametric rolling.

Ψ = design pitch angle, in degrees,

= $1350L^{-0.94}(1.0 + \left(\frac{0.82}{\sqrt{L}}\right)^{1.2})f_{H_3p}$

but need not exceed 8°

e = base of natural logarithms

= 2.7183

f_{ap} = hull form coefficient

= for Motion Case MC1:

= $1.2R_A^{0.3}$ for $R_A > 1.0$

= 1.2 for $R_A \leq 1.0$

= for all other Motion Cases:

= 1.0

R_A = area ratio factor for combined stern and bow shape, defined in Pt 4, Ch 2, 2.4 Design vertical wave bending moments. For the purpose of container stowage calculation, R_A is to be taken as 1.5 if this value is not available

f_{BK} = bilge keel coefficient

= 1.2 for ships without bilge keels

= 1.0 for ships with bilge keels

f_{Hs} = weather-dependent factor for acceleration

= 1.0 for unrestricted worldwide service

f_{HsP} = weather-dependent factor for pitch

= 1.0 for unrestricted worldwide service

f_{HsVw} = weather-dependent factor for wind

= 1.0 for unrestricted worldwide service

C_{p1} = hull whipping factor

= $1 + f_{MC}f_{wh}$

f_{MC} = Motion Case coefficient

= $1.0f_{w1}$ for MC1

= 0 for MC2

= $0.5f_{w1}$ for MC3

= $0.25f_{wl}$ for MC4

$0.5f_{wl}$ for MC5

0 for MC6

f_{wh} = whipping coefficient

= 0.55 for $x_c/L \leq 0.25$

= 0.20 at $x_c/L = 0.5$

= 0.45 for $x_c/L \geq 0.75$

intermediate values are to be obtained by linear interpolation

f_{wl} = length-dependent factor for whipping

= 0 for L $\leq$ 250 m

= 1.0 for L $\geq$ 350 m

intermediate values are to be obtained by linear interpolation

g = acceleration due to gravity and is to be taken as 9.81 m/s^2

x_c = longitudinal centre of gravity of a container forward of the aft end of L, in metres

z_c = vertical centre of gravity of a container above the keel, in metres

c_{vcg} = vertical location of the centre of gravity of the container measured positive upward from the bottom of the corner castings. To be taken at 33 percent of the height of the container. Other values of c_{vcg}will be specially considered.

x_i = longitudinal coordinate of the centre of gravity of container i, in metres, from O_m measured positive forwards in ship coordinate system, *See*Figure 14.1.1 Diagrammatic representation of symbols

= $x_c - x_{om}$

y_i = transverse coordinate of the centre of gravity of container i, in metres, from O_m measured positive to port in ship coordinate system, *See*Figure 14.1.1 Diagrammatic representation of symbols

z_i = vertical coordinate of the centre of gravity of container i, in metres, from O_m measured positive upwards in ship coordinate system, *See*Figure 14.1.1 Diagrammatic representation of symbols

= $z_c - z_{om}$

x_{om} = longitudinal centre of motion forward of the aft end of L. To be taken at the LCF of the ship

z_{om} = vertical centre of motion above the keel. To be taken as the greater of $2T_c/3 + KG/3, T_c$ or $D/2$

A = side area of the container, in m^2

GM = transverse metacentric height of the ship, in metres

KG = vertical distance of the centre of gravity of the ship above the keel, in metres

L = Rule length, in metres, *See* Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1 Principal particulars 6.1.1

C_b = block coefficient, *See* Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1 Principal particulars 6.1.6

MCn = Motion Case n

LCF = longitudinal centre of flotation. To be taken at 0.48L from the aft end of L

O_m = centre of motion, to be taken on the centreline at x_{om} and z_{om}, *See* Figure 14.1.1 Diagrammatic representation of symbols and Figure 14. 1. 2: Ship coordinate system and sign convention of motio

R = the rating, or maximum operating gross weight for which the container is certified, and is equal to the tare weight plus payload of the container, in tonnes

T_c = moulded draught in the container load condition, in metres

V_w = wind speed, in m/s.

= 40fHsVw

W = weight of the container and contents, in tonnes. The following minimum weights W are to be used:

= 2.5 tonnes for 20 ft containers

= 3.5 tonnes for 40 ft containers

= 4.0 tonnes for 45 ft containers

= 4.5 tonnes for 48 ft and 53 ft containers.

Figure 14. 1. 1: Diagrammatic representation of symbols

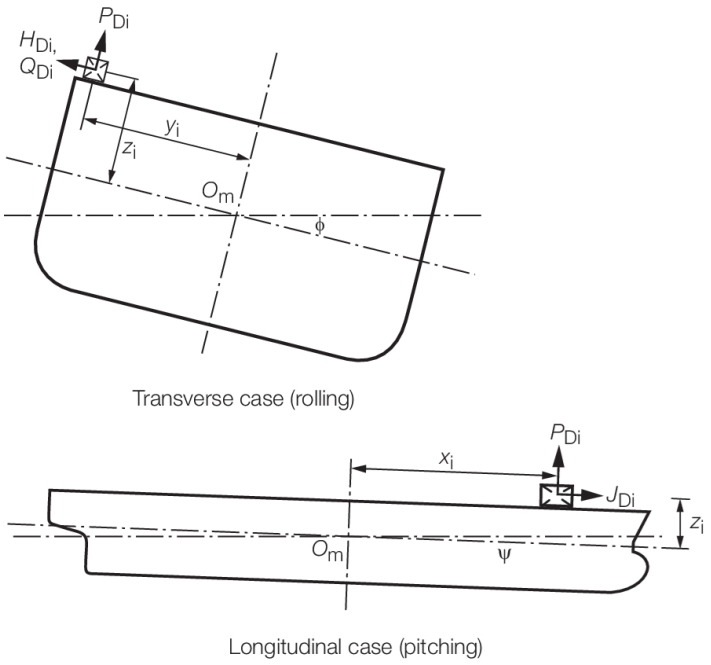
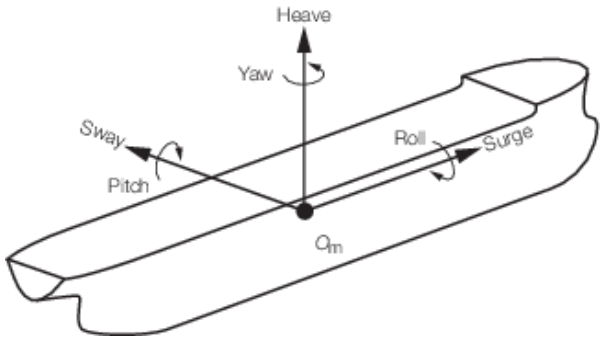


Figure 14. 1. 2: Ship coordinate system and sign convention of motio



1. 7. 2 The sign convention for ship motions and accelerations is shown in Figure 14. 1. 2: Ship coordinate system and sign convention of motio. This is based on a right-handed coordinate system. The roll, pitch and yaw motions are defined positive clockwise as shown. For instance, positive sway is defined as the translation toward port and positive pitch as the rotation of the bow down and stern up.

PART

3

CHAPTER **14 Cargo Securing Arrangements**

SECTION **2 Fixed cargo securing fittings, materials and testing**

2. 1 General

2. 1. 1 Randomly selected samples of fixed cargo securing fittings are to be subjected to prototype testing and, upon satisfactory completion, will be granted General Approval.

2. 1. 2 Randomly selected samples drawn from production runs are to be subjected to production testing prior to delivery to the ship.

2. 1. 3 Cargo securing fittings, certified by an organisation other than ACS, will be accepted where the certification scheme is to the satisfaction of ACS.

2. 2 Materials and design

2. 2. 1 Steel used for the construction of the fixed cargo securing fittings is to comply with the requirements of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials or with an equivalent specification acceptable to ACS. Due account is to be taken of the grade and tensile strength of the hull material in way of the attachment. The chemical composition of the steel is to be such as to ensure acceptable qualities of weldability. Where necessary, tests are to be carried out to establish specific welding procedures.

2. 2. 2 Where securing arrangements are intended to operate at low ambient temperatures, special consideration is to be given to the specification of the steel.

2. 2. 3 Proposals for the use of materials other than steel will be specially considered.

2. 2. 4 Attention is drawn to the need for measures to be taken to prevent water accumulation in pockets or recesses that could lead to excessive corrosion.

2. 3 Prototype testing

2. 3. 1 Prototype tests to determine the breaking or failure loads are to be carried out on at least two randomly selected samples of each item used in the securing system. The relationship between design breaking load and safe working load (SWL) is to be as indicated in Table 14. 2. 1: Design breaking loads and proof loads for fixed cargo securing fittings.

Table 14. 2. 1: Design breaking loads and proof loads for fixed cargo securing fittings

Minimum design breaking load		Minimum proof load	
for SWL $\leq$ 400 kN	for SWL $>$ 400 kN	for SWL $\leq$ 400 kN	for SWL $>$ 400 kN

2 x SWL	SWL + 400 kN	1.5 x SWL	SWL + 200 kN
Note Breaking and proof loads for fixed cargo securing fittings of a material other than steel will be specially considered.			

2. 3. 2 The Surveyor is to be satisfied that the design and materials of the fittings are in accordance with the approved plans.

2. 3. 3 For acceptance, no permanent deformation (other than due to initial embedding of component parts) is to be induced by test loads up to the proof load given in Table 14. 2. 1: Design breaking loads and proof loads for fixed cargo securing fittings.

2. 3. 4 When considering the test modes, all expected directions of operation are to be taken into account. Jigs are to be employed, where necessary, in order that satisfactory simulation is obtained.

2. 3. 5 In the interest of standardisation of the strength of container securing fittings, safe working loads in accordance with Table 14. 2. 2: Test loads and test modes for fixed container securing fittings are recommended.

Table 14. 2. 2: Test loads and test modes for fixed container securing fittings

Item No.	Description	Required test modes		Recommended minimum, in kN		
				SWL	Proof load	Breaking load
1	Flush socket		Pull-out load	250	375	500
			Pull-out load	250	375	500
2	Pedestal socket		Tangential load	200	300	400
3	'D' ring		Tensile load	250	375	500
4	Lashing plate		Tensile load	250	375	500

Note*1*. For items 3 and 4, where specifically designed for use with chain or steel wire rope (SWR) lashings, a lesser SWL may be considered.

Note*2*. For items 1 and 2, where multiple flush sockets or pedestal sockets are involved, test loads are to be applied simultaneously to each socket opening which can be loaded simultaneously in service.

Note*3*. For item 4, where multiple lashing points are fitted in one deck plate fitting, testing is to be similarly arranged as for Note 2.

Note*4*. Where containers with strength higher than required for ISO containers are used, consideration will be given to the required minimum loads.

Note*5*. The test modes illustrated above are diagrammatic only.

2. 3. 6 Where one of the required two randomly selected test samples fails before the design breaking load is reached, this can be accepted, provided that:

a. the failure is not less than 95 per cent of the design breaking load;
b. an additional randomly selected sample is tested satisfactorily; and
c. the average failure load of the three randomly selected samples is equal to or greater than the design breaking load.

2. 4 Production testing

2. 4. 1 The nature and extent of proposed production testing will be considered by ACS, but the arrangements are to be at least equivalent to one of the following testing procedures:

a. One randomly selected sample from every 50 pieces, or from each batch if fewer than 50 pieces, is to be proof loaded in accordance with Table 14. 2. 1: Design breaking loads and proof loads for fixed cargo securing fittings.
b. All fittings are to be loaded to the SWL of the item.

2. 4. 2 Consideration will be given to a reduced frequency of the mechanical production testing proposed in Pt 3, Ch 14, 2.4 Production testing 2.4.1, provided that:

a. the prototype test results indicate a breaking load at least 50 per cent greater than that required by Table 14. 2. 1: Design breaking loads and proof loads for fixed cargo securing fittings; and
b. a suitable non-destructive inspection procedure is agreed.

2. 4. 3 Permanent deformation (other than that due to initial embedding of component parts) will not be accepted unless tests are conducted in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 14, 2.4 Production testing 2.4.1 and the SWL of the sample is 250 kN or greater. In this case, consideration may be given to acceptance of permanent deformation in the load range between SWL + 125 kN and the proof load, provided that satisfactory manual operation can be achieved after completion of tests.

2. 4. 4 In the event of premature failure or serious plastic deformation occurring in a test sample, a further randomly selected sample is to be selected for testing. In the event that this sample is found to be unsatisfactory, the associated batch will be rejected.

PART

3

CHAPTER **14** **Cargo Securing Arrangements**

SECTION **3** **Loose container securing fittings, materials and testing**

3. 1 General

3. 1. 1 Randomly selected samples of loose container securing fittings are to be subjected to prototype testing and, upon satisfactory completion, will be granted General Approval.

3. 1. 2 Randomly selected samples drawn from production runs are to be subjected to production testing prior to delivery to the ship in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 14, 3.4, Production testing.

3. 1. 3 Loose container securing fittings, certified by an organisation other than LR, will be accepted where the certification scheme is to the satisfaction of ACS.

3. 1. 4 In the following, the term 'fully automatic fitting' is used to describe fittings which do not require manual operation during unloading of the containers. It should be noted that usually these fittings do not mechanically secure the container in the vertical direction (perpendicular to the hatch cover) in the upright condition when subjected to pure vertical motions. Other modes of operation and novel design will be specially considered.

3. 2 Materials and design

3. 2. 1 Steel used for loose container securing fittings is to comply with the requirements of the Rules for Materials or with an equivalent specification acceptable to ACS.

3. 2. 2 Where loose container securing fittings are intended to operate at low ambient temperatures, special consideration is to be given to the specification of the steel.

3. 2. 3 Proposals for the use of materials other than steel will be specially considered.

3. 2. 4 Locking devices and other fittings which are inserted into the container castings on the quayside before lifting on board are to be such as to minimise the risk of them working loose under the effects of vibration and the risk of them falling out.

3. 2. 5 For twistlocks, bottom twistlocks, midlocks, stackers with intermediate plates and fully automatic fittings, the contact areas, for both tension and compression between the fitting and the corner castings of the containers, are to be such as not to exceed a bearing stress of 300 N/mm2 under the safe working load of the fitting. No increase in the permissible stress level will be given due to higher strength material of the fittings. In the case where the design is such that the contact area is sloped or inclined and not parallel to the container corner casting, the effective contact area will be specially considered.

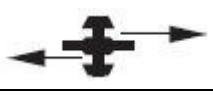
3. 3 Prototype testing

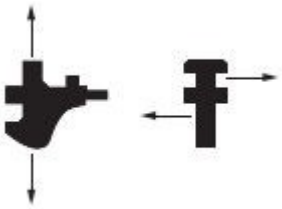
3. 3. 1 Prototype tests are to be in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 14, 2.3 Prototype testing 2.3.1, except that Table 14. 3. 1: Design breaking loads and proof loads for loose container securing fittings and Table 14. 3. 2: Test loads and test modes for loose container securing fittings are to be applied in lieu of Table 14. 2. 1: Design breaking loads and proof loads for fixed cargo securing fittings and Table 14. 2. 2: Test loads and test modes for fixed container securing fittings respectively. For vertical lashing, *See*Pt 3, Ch 14, 5.4 Containers in more than two tiers 5.4.9.b.

Table 14. 3. 1: Design breaking loads and proof loads for loose container securing fittings

Item			Min. proof load		Min. design breaking load	
			SWL ≤ 400 kN	SWL > 400 kN		SWL > 400 kN
Lashings						
Wire rope					3 x SWL	
	Rod:	higher tensile steel	1.5 x SWL	SWL + 200 kN	2 x SWL	
	Chain:	mild steel			3 x SWL	SWL + 400 kN
	higher tensile steel				2.5 x SWL	
Other loose container securing fittings			1.5 x SWL		2 x SWL	
Note*1*. Higher tensile steel is defined for this purpose as steel having a yield stress not less than 315 N/mm^2. **Note***2*. Breaking and proof loads for lashings of material other than steel will be considered.						

Table 14. 3. 2: Test loads and test modes for loose container securing fittings

Item No.	Description	Required test modes		Recommended minimum, in kN		
				SWL	Proof load	Breaking load
1	Lashing rod			180	270	360
2	Lashing rod (HTS)			250	375	500
3	Lashing chain (MS)			80	—	200
4	Lashing chain (HTS)			100	—	300
5	Lashing steel wire rope			120	—	360
6	Turnbuckle		Tensile load	250	375	500
7	Twistlock (manual,		Shear load	200	300	400

	semi-automatic and fully automatic fittings)		Tensile load	250	375	500
8	Midlock		Shear load	200	300	400
			Tensile load	250	375	500
9	Stacker		Shear load	200	300	400
Note*1*. Where containers with strength higher than required for ISO containers are used, special consideration will be given to the required minimum loads.						
Note*2*. The test modes illustrated above are diagrammatic only.						
Note*3*. Other fittings not covered in this Table may be specially considered, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 14, 3.5 Function and environmental testing 3.5.1.						

3. 4 Production testing

3. 4. 1 The nature and extent of proposed production testing will be considered by ACS, but the arrangements are to be at least equivalent to one of the following testing procedures:

a. For:

i. **Loose container securing fittings except chain or wire rope lashings**. One randomly selected sample from every 50 pieces, or from each batch if fewer than 50 pieces, is to be proof loaded in accordance with Table 14. 3. 1: Design breaking loads and proof loads for loose container securing fittings.

ii. **Chain or wire rope lashings**. One randomly selected sample from every 50 pieces, or from each batch if fewer than 50 pieces, is to be tested to breaking.

b. All fittings, securing devices and lashings are to be proof loaded to the SWL of the item and in addition, one randomly selected sample from every batch of chain or wire rope lashings is to be tested to breaking.

3. 4. 2 Permanent deformation (other than that due to initial embedding of component parts) will not be accepted unless tests are conducted in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 14, 3.4 Production testing 3.4.1.a.ii and the SWL of the sample is 250 kN or greater. In this case, consideration may be given to acceptance of permanent deformation in the load range between SWL + 125 kN and the proof load, provided that satisfactory manual operation can be achieved after completion of tests.

3. 4. 3 In the event of premature failure or serious plastic deformation occurring in a test sample, a further randomly selected sample is to be selected for testing. In the event that this sample is found to be unsatisfactory, the associated batch will be rejected.

3. 5 Function and environmental testing

3. 5. 1 For fittings of novel design or with special features, in addition to the prototype and production testing, a function test may be required to demonstrate that the fitting is fit for purpose. Details of the function test will be considered on an individual basis, taking into consideration the mode of operation of the fitting. In addition, ACS reserves the right to require environmental tests. The

actual test depends on the individual design of the fitting. The tests are to verify that environmental and ageing effects, such as corrosion, icing, debris contamination, etc. do not impinge on the safe operation of the fitting. In this case, ACS reserves the right to require the submission of maintenance instructions as part of the approval procedure.

PART

3

CHAPTER **14 Cargo Securing Arrangements**

SECTION **4 Ship structure**

4. 1 General

4. 1. 1 The ship structure and hatch covers in way of fixed cargo securing fittings are to be strengthened as necessary, *See* Pt 3, Ch 14, 1.1 Application 1.1.2.

4. 1. 2 A breakwater may be required, *See* Pt 3, Ch 14, 1.1 Application 1.1.7.

4. 2 Strength

4. 2. 1 The SWL of the fixed cargo securing fitting is to be used as the design load when approving the weld attachments and the support structure of the fixed cargo securing fitting.

4. 2. 2 For container securing arrangements, the design load when approving the weld attachment and supporting structure is to be calculated in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 14, 9 Strength of container securing arrangements.

4. 2. 3 When considering the loads, all expected directions of operation are to be taken into account.

4. 2. 4 Stresses induced in the weld attachments, supporting structure, cell guides and other structures serving as fixed cargo securing points, determined using the design loads as defined in Pt 3, Ch 14, 4.2 Strength 4.2.1 to Pt 3, Ch 14, 4.2 Strength 4.2.3, are not to exceed the permissible values given in Table 14. 4. 1: Permissible stress values.

Table 14. 4. 1: Permissible stress values

	Permissible stress, N/mm^2
Normal stress (bending, tension, compression)	$0.67\sigma_o$
Shear stress	$0.4\sigma_o$
Combined stress	$0.86\sigma_o$
Symbols	
σ_o = specified minimum yield stress, in N/mm^2	

4. 2. 5 Structural strength of container lashing bridges is to be assessed in accordance with the ACSPlus SDA Guideline for the Assessment of Container Ship Lashing Bridge Structures.

PART

3

CHAPTER **14** **Cargo Securing Arrangements**

SECTION **5** **Container securing arrangements for stowage on exposed decks without cell guides**

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 Containers stowed on deck or on hatch covers are generally to be aligned in the fore and aft direction (longitudinally stowed), but alternative arrangements will be considered.

5. 1. 2 Containers are to be stowed so that they do not extend beyond the ship's side. Adequate support is to be provided where they overhang hatch coamings or other deck structures. The stowage arrangements are to be such as to permit safe access for personnel in the necessary working of the ship, and to provide sufficient access for operation and inspection of the securing devices.

5. 1. 3 Where containers are stowed on hatch covers, the covers are to be effectively restrained against sliding by approved type stoppers or equivalent. Details of the locations of stoppers relative to the supporting structure are to be submitted at an early stage.

5. 1. 4 Stanchions and similar structure supporting containers and securing devices, such as D-rings for lashings, are to be of adequate strength for the imposed loads and of sufficient stiffness to minimise any deflection which could lead to a reduction in the effectiveness of the securing device.

5. 1. 5 In the region forward of 0.75*L*, additional securing devices may be required due to green sea forces, *See* Pt 3, Ch 14, 8.2 Ship motion, wind and green sea forces acting on containers 8.2.4.

5. 1. 6 In general, stowage of heavy containers on top of lighter containers is to be avoided, unless validated as being satisfactory by an approved onboard lashing program or covered by the approved container securing arrangement.

5. 1. 7 Approved semi-automatic and fully-automatic fittings and twistlocks are to be used.

For fittings where the locking method requires defined clearances between the corner castings and the fixed foundations, such fittings are not to be used at the lowest tier of a stack which is resting with one side on a hatch cover panel and bridging to a container stanchion. The same applies if the stack is resting on different hatch cover panels or foundations where relative deflection during ship operation can occur.

5. 2 Containers in one tier

5. 2. 1 Containers are to be secured at their lower corners by approved locking devices.

5. 2. 2 Alternatively, containers may be secured by lashings fitted diagonally or vertically at both ends of each container, in association with cone fittings at each container corner.

5. 3 Containers in two tiers

5. 3. 1 Containers are to be secured at their lower corners at each tier by approved locking devices.

5. 3. 2 Where the calculations indicate that separation forces will not occur at any point in the stack, double stacking cones may be fitted at all internal corners of the stack and bridge fittings used to connect the tops of the rows in the transverse direction. Locking devices are to be fitted at all external corners.

5. 3. 3 Alternatively, containers may be secured by lashings in association with stacking cones or, where the calculations indicate that separation forces may occur, with locking devices.

5. 4 Containers in more than two tiers

5. 4. 1 Containers are to be secured at their lower corners at each tier by approved locking devices.

5. 4. 2 Alternatively, containers may be secured by lashings. One or two tiers of lashings may be fitted in association with stacking cones or, where the calculations indicate that separation forces may occur, with locking devices.

5. 4. 3 When lashings are employed, they are usually fitted to the bottom corner casting of a container. Proposals to attach lashings to the top casting of a container will be considered. The reduced strength of the upper corner casting compared to the lower corner castings is to be taken into account.

5. 4. 4 Internal lashings arranged in pairs (internal para-lash arrangements) are acceptable. Lashings in pairs are generally to be attached one to the bottom corner casting of the upper tier and the other to the top corner casting of the lower tier container. Suitable connections are to be provided at the lower ends. *See also* Table 14. 3. 2: Test loads and test modes for loose container securing fittings.

5. 4. 5 Approved semi-automatic or fully-automatic fittings may be used with internal lashing or external lashing arrangements.

5. 4. 6 or external lashing arrangements, if the stack forces are such that lifting occurs at the uppermost lashing connection point, then the force in the lashing device is to include allowance for the lifting force. The effect of lifting at lashing point connections below the uppermost connection may be ignored.

5. 4. 7 The ACS approval process for fully-automatic fittings includes a requirement that the fitting passes a tensile load test. This test specifies a maximum allowable vertical separation under the tensile load and therefore the effect of the magnitude of the opening clearance under tensile loads may be ignored in the calculation of the additional vertical force in the lashing rod. For semi-automatic twistlocks used with external lashings, the nominal clearance of the fitting is not to exceed the maximum values specified in the ACS test procedure. Non--ACS approved fittings will be specially considered, *See*Pt 3, Ch 14, 3.1 General 3.1.3.

5. 4. 8 Proposals to use horizontal lashings connected to lashing bridges will be specially considered. The forces in such securing systems are to be determined by direct calculations, taking into account the following effects:

- stiffness of the container walls, the lashings and the lashing bridge; and
- the possible horizontal displacements of the containers relative to the lashing bridge due to the clearances of the hatch cover stoppers and the container securing fittings.

5. 4. 9 When vertical lashings are used in combination with container securing fittings, consideration is to be given to the vertical clearances between the fittings and the container corner castings:

a. The lashing assembly is to remain elastic when subject to an elongation equating to the number of interface fittings fitted below the point where the vertical lashing is applied to the stack. In

order to avoid overstressing of the rod and the turnbuckle, provision of spring or elastic elements incorporated into the turnbuckle may be advantageous. When lashing from lashing bridge level, the number of interfaces is to be counted down to the level where the lowest container is resting. The lashing rod is to be fitted to the bottom casting of the container. For container securing fittings having design clearances in accordance with ISO 3874, a nominal clearance per fitting of 10 mm is to be taken to determine the total elongation of the lashing system. For fittings having clearances in excess of 10 mm, the total elongation is to be calculated, taking into consideration the higher clearances.

b. A prototype test is to be carried out to demonstrate that the vertical lashing has a safe working load of 150 kN when elongated up to the calculated total design clearance plus 10 per cent without plastic deformation.

c. It is recommended that the load-bearing effect of vertical lashing arrangements be explicitly taken into account when performing lashing calculations. Where this is not done, it is acceptable to either:

i. allow the permissible calculated lifting force to be increased to SWL+150 kN where SWL is the safe working load of the container securing fittings below the fitting position of the vertical lashing. The nominal lifting force for these fittings is not to exceed 400 kN at the securing fittings below the fitting position of the vertical lashing; or

ii. calculate the force in the lashing rod taking into account the lifting force at the rod connection point.

5. 4. 10 For stowage arrangements incorporating fully-automatic fittings which do not mechanically secure the container in pure vertical direction when subject to vertical motions, it is to be ensured that no separation occurs under the load cases specified in Pt 3, Ch 14, 8 Determination of forces for container securing arrangements. In addition, where stacks in the outermost position, anywhere in the length of the vessel, are secured with fully-automatic fittings without lashings, provisions such as breakwaters, effective side screens, plated bulwarks or similar, are to be provided to prevent the possibility of green sea buoyancy forces causing the containers to disengage, *See*Pt 3, Ch 14, 8.2 Ship motion, wind and green sea forces acting on containers 8.2.10. Alternatively, the lowest tier of containers is to be secured by manual or semi-automatic twistlocks.

5. 4. 11 If the carriage of one or more tiers of 20 ft containers being overstowed with at least one tier of 40 ft containers, the so-called ‘Russian Stow Arrangement’, is desired, the following requirements apply.

a. At the 20 ft gap the containers are to be secured by means of midlocks, whereas the fore and aft ends are to be secured by twistlocks and if necessary supplemented by lashing rods.

b. The 40 ft overstow container is to be secured by twistlocks or if necessary with a combination of twistlocks and lashing rods. The stack is to be assessed in a twostep procedure, as follows:

i. For location at the 40 ft ends, the entire mixed stack is to be considered as a 40 ft stack. The weights of the 40 ft containers are to be considered in the calculations. For the tiers of 20 ft containers, the weight of one 20 ft container is to be taken as the basis for the calculation at each tier.

ii. For the location of the 20 ft tiers at the mid-bay position, the assessment is to be carried out as for an unlashed stack. The 40 ft overstow container does not need to be taken into consideration.

5. 4. 12 No lashings are to be applied to the ends of a 45 ft, 48 ft or 53 ft container if stowed on top of a shorter unit.

5. 5 Line Load stowage

5. 5. 1 Where the containers are supported on bearers placed to distribute the stackweight as Line Loads, the following requirements are to be complied with:

a. The stack is, in general, to comprise a maximum of two tiers of loaded containers.
b. The load from the upper tier is to be transferred through the container corners. Line loading is not to be used between tiers.
c. The load on each vertical corner post of the bottom tier, calculated in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 14, 9 Strength of container securing arrangements, is not to exceed one half of the Rated Load of the container.
d. Where the calculations indicate that lifting forces may occur, locking devices are to be fitted at the container corners.
e. The clearance below the bottom container corner casting is to be such that the stacking cone or equivalent cannot be dislodged under shear loading.

5. 5. 2 Where an approved Line Load stowage system is installed, the special features notation will be suitably modified.

5. 6 Systems incorporating structural restraint

5. 6. 1 Containers may be secured by the use of a fixed structure providing permanent buttresses in association with portable frameworks. Proposals to adopt such systems will be considered on the basis of the loads developed in the structure and the corresponding stresses.

5. 6. 2 The framework or other devices securing the containers are to be aligned with the container corner castings and any clearance gap is to be kept to the minimum to reduce shifting.

PART

3

CHAPTER **14 Cargo Securing Arrangements**

SECTION **6 Container securing arrangements for underdeck stowage without cell guides**

6. 1 General

6. 1. 1 Containers are generally to be stowed in holds in the fore and aft direction, but alternative arrangements will be considered. The securing arrangements are to be designed on the basis of the most severe distribution of loads which may arise in the container stack.

6. 1. 2 Containers may be secured by locking devices only or by a combination of locking devices, buttresses, shores or lashings. Containers are, in general, to be restrained at every corner at the base of the stack and at all intermediate levels.

6. 1. 3 Where stacks consist of one or two tiers only, consideration will be given to the omission of corner locking devices. Containers must, however, be secured by a minimum of two corner locking devices.

6. 1. 4 Where the calculations indicate that separation forces could occur at any particular level, twistlocks or equivalent means of securing are to be fitted at that level. Elsewhere, consideration will be given to the use of double stacking cones.

6. 1. 5 Where the calculations indicate that separation forces will not occur between containers at any level, consideration will be given to the use of stacking cones in lieu of locking devices throughout.

6. 1. 6 Buttresses are generally to be of the tension and compression type and are to be provided with means of adjustment to ensure tightness when fitted in place. Where applicable, the attachment to the ship's structure is also to include means for vertical adjustment of the buttress to match container stacks of different heights.

6. 1. 7 Shores of the compression-only type may be permanently attached to the ship structure or they may be hinged or portable. When in place they are to abut the container corner castings with minimal clearance. Means are to be provided to prevent slackening of the device.

6. 1. 8 Adjacent stacks of containers are to be linked in line with buttresses or shores in order to transmit lateral loads. The fittings used for these linkages are to be of adequate strength to transmit the loads imposed.

6. 1. 9 The ship's structure supporting shores and buttresses is to be reinforced as necessary.

6. 1. 10 Proposals for alternative securing systems, including systems relying on minimal clearance between containers and hull structure, will be specially considered.

6. 1. 11 6.1.11 Attention is drawn to the safety at work aspects for fittings which require operation on top of containers, e.g. double stacking cones, bridge fittings, buttresses and shores. Where these fittings are used, fall protection is to be provided.

PART

3

CHAPTER **14** **Cargo Securing Arrangements**

SECTION **7** **Container securing arrangements for stowage using cell guides**

7. 1 General

7. 1. 1 Cell guide systems may be fitted to support containers stowed in holds or on exposed decks.

7. 1. 2 The cell guides are not to form an integral part of the ship's structure. The guide system is generally to be so designed as to keep it free of the main hull stresses.

7. 1. 3 Cell guides are to be designed to resist loads caused by loading and unloading of the containers, to prevent shifting of the containers and to transmit the loads caused by motions of the ship into the main hull structure.

7. 2 Arrangement and construction

7. 2. 1 Cell guides are to be of robust construction and generally fabricated from steel plate and rolled sections. They are to have sufficient vertical extent and continuity to provide efficient support to containers. Guide bars are to be effectively attached to the supporting structure to prevent tripping or distortion resulting from container loading.

7. 2. 2 The intersection between cell guide and cross ties is to provide adequate torsional stability.

7. 2. 3 Intermediate brackets are to be fitted to vertical cell guides at suitable intervals.

7. 2. 4 The cell guides are to give a total clearance between the container and guide bars not exceeding 25 mm in the transverse direction and 40 mm in the longitudinal direction. The deviation of the cell guide bar from its intended line is not generally to exceed 4 mm in the transverse direction and 5 mm in the longitudinal direction.

7. 2. 5 Athwartship cross ties are to be fitted between cell guides at a spacing determined from the loading on the guides but, generally, not more than 3.0 m apart. Wherever possible, cross ties are to be arranged in line with the corners of the containers as stowed and are to be supported against fore and aft movement at a minimum of two points across the breadth of the hold. Where, however, the maximum fore and aft deflection in the cross tie can be shown not to exceed 20 mm, one support point may be accepted.

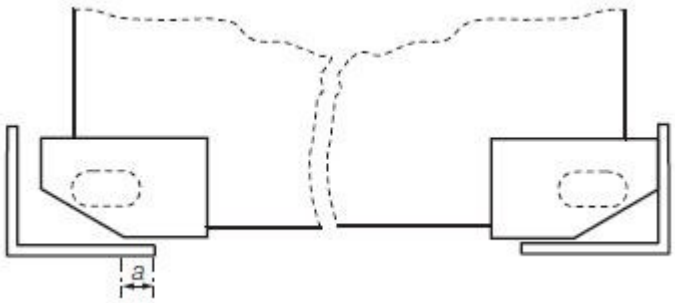
7. 2. 6 Longitudinal tie bars may be required to be fitted where shown necessary by the force calculations for the structure. Where fitted, they are to comply with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 14, 7.2 Arrangement and construction 7.2.5.

7. 2. 7 Where, at the sides or ends of holds, the guide rails are fitted to transverse or longitudinal bulkheads, the bulkhead is to be locally reinforced to resist the additional loads.

7. 2. 8 If the carriage of 45 ft Euro containers complying with EU Directive 96/53 is specified to be carried in 45 ft cell guides, attention is to be paid to the arrangement of the corner castings,

*See*Figure 14.7.1 45 ft euro container in cell guides. The guide bars need to be increased in order to ensure that a minimum design overlap, *a*, of 20 mm is achieved, taking into account the design clearances and tolerances defined in Pt 3, Ch 14, 7.2 Arrangement and construction 7.2.4. Consideration is to be given to the torsional loads being applied to the guide bars.

Figure 14. 7. 1: ft euro container in cell guides



7. 3 Carriage of 20 ft containers in 40 ft cell guides in holds

7. 3. 1 Where the cell guides are arranged for the carriage of 40 ft containers, provision may be made for the installation of temporary intermediate cell guides for 20 ft containers. The permanent structure is to be designed such that it is suitable for either loading pattern.

7. 3. 2 Alternatively, permanent means for the support of 20 ft containers at the mid-length of a cell arranged for 40 ft containers will be considered. Such means may include the following:

a. A pillar (inboard) and vertical rest bar (on the longitudinal bulkhead) against which the container stack may rest. The pillar is to be supported laterally by the deck structure over and is to be sufficiently stiff to control lateral deflection of the container stacks.

b. Guide bars supported transversely by slim structure within the gap between containers and with longitudinal ties as necessary.

Details of proposals will be individually considered, taking into account the loads on the support structure and the resulting deflections.

7. 3. 3 Where it is desired to stow 20 ft containers without external support at the mid-bay location with or without 40 ft overstow, so-called ‘mixed stowage’ arrangements meeting the following requirements are applicable:

a. Maximum homogeneous container weights for 20 ft containers stowed in cell guides with no 40 ft container overstowed can be derived from Table 14. 7. 1: Maximum container weights of Wh 20 ft containers stowed in 40 ft cell guides with no overstow, depending on the transverse acceleration and the number of tiers in the stack.

b. Maximum homogeneous container weights for 20 ft containers stowed in cell guides with one or more 40 ft containers overstowed can be derived from:

i. Table 14. 7. 2: Maximum containers weights, Wh of 20 ft containers stowed in 40 ft cell guides with overstow, diagonal stacking cone arrangement

ii. Table 14. 7. 3: Maximum container weights Wh of 20 ft containers stowed in 40 ft cell guides with overstow, other stacking cone arrangement

c. All inhold mixed stowage tables have been derived on the basis of all 20 ft containers having the same weight. However it is acceptable to carry non-homogeneous stacks provided the following two conditions are met:

i. 20 ft containers heavier than specified in the weight W_h can be loaded provided that the average container weight excluding the lowest container in the stack does not exceed W_h, i.e.

$$\Sigma_2^N W_i \leq (N-1)W_{\mathrm{h}}$$

ii. The total moment of 20 ft containers in a stacks about the base is not to be greater than the moment exerted by an equivalent homogeneous stack of weight W_{h}, i.e.

$$\sum_{i=2}^{N}(W_i \,.\, e_a(i-1)) \leq (N-1).W_h.\frac{C_a.N}{2}$$

where

W_{i} weight of container *i*.

c_{i} height of container *i*.

W_{h} is the homogeneous container weight as determined from Table 14. 7. 1: Maximum container weights of Wh 20 ft containers stowed in 40 ft cell guides with no overstow, Table 14. 7. 2: Maximum containers weights, Wh of 20 ft containers stowed in 40 ft cell guides with overstow, diagonal stacking cone arrangement or Table 14. 7. 3: Maximum container weights Wh of 20 ft containers stowed in 40 ft cell guides with overstow, other stacking cone arrangement as applicable. Where W_{h} is corrected by Note 5 of the tables, W_{h} is to be taken as W_{hc}.

c_{a} average height of the 20 ft containers in the stack.

N Number of 20 ft containers.

d. The weight of the lowest container in the stack may be increased to its rated value.

e. The force in the corner post in the lowest container is not to exceed the permissible compression value given in Table 14. 9. 6: Allowable forces in containers in stacks with the same base size. The force is to be determined by:

$$V = -\frac{a_z(w_{40s} + W_{20s-1})}{4}$$

where

V is the compressive force in the corner post

W_{40s} is the total weight of the 40 ft containers, in tonnes

$W_{20S\text{-}1}$ is the total weight of the 20 ft containers excluding the weight of the lowest container, in tonnes

a_Z is the maximum vertical acceleration of all containers in the stack, *See*Pt 3, Ch 14, 8.2 Ship motion, wind and green sea forces acting on containers 8.2.5

f. Means are to be provided to prevent transverse sliding of the bottom of the stacks of 20 ft containers at the mid-bay position. This is to be in the form of permanently attached chocks at the inner bottom or equivalent. The design clearance is to be the same as for the cell guides and in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 14, 7.2 Arrangement and construction 7.2.4.

g. 20 ft containers stowed with no stacking cones are to be restrained to avoid transverse movement, e.g. all containers at the same tier height in a bay are to be of the same height and structural constraints between the containers and the hull are to be provided.

h. The 20 ft containers are to have closed steel walls and top (no open frame containers, e.g. tank or bulk containers).

Table 14. 7. 1: Maximum container weights of Wh 20 ft containers stowed in 40 ft cell guides with no overstow

	Maximum homogeneous container weights, in tonnes (number of 20 ft containers)									
Lowest tier transverse acceleration (= a_y/g), *See* Pt 3, Ch 14, 8.2 Ship motion, wind and green sea forces acting on containers 8.2.5	3 tiers	4 tiers	5 tiers	6 tiers	7 tiers	8 tiers	9 tiers	10 tiers	11 tiers	12 tiers
0.20	30.5	30.5	30.5	30.5	22.9	19.6	18.3	15.5	13.5	11.7
0.21	30.5	30.5	30.5	30.2	22.5	19.2	17.9	15.2	13.3	11.5
0.22	30.5	30.5	30.5	29.2	22.0	18.8	17.6	14.9	13.1	11.4
0.23	30.5	30.5	30.5	28.3	21.6	18.5	17.2	14.6	12.9	11.2
0.24	30.5	30.5	30.5	27.4	21.2	18.1	16.9	14.4	12.7	11.1
0.25	30.5	30.5	30.5	26.6	20.8	17.8	16.5	14.1	12.5	10.9
0.26	30.5	30.5	30.5	25.8	20.4	17.4	16.2	13.9	12.3	10.8
0.27	30.5	30.5	30.5	25.0	20.0	17.1	15.8	13.6	12.1	10.6
0.28	30.5	30.5	30.5	24.3	19.6	16.7	15.5	13.4	11.9	10.5
0.29	30.5	30.5	29.5	23.6	19.2	16.4	15.2	13.1	11.7	10.4
0.30	30.5	30.5	28.7	23.0	18.8	16.1	14.9	12.9	11.5	10.2
0.31	30.5	30.5	27.8	22.3	18.4	15.8	14.6	12.6	11.4	10.1
0.32	30.5	29.9	27.1	21.7	18.1	15.5	14.3	12.4	11.2	9.9
0.33	30.5	29.3	26.3	21.2	17.7	15.2	14.0	12.2	11.0	9.8
0.34	30.5	28.6	25.7	20.7	17.4	14.9	13.7	12.0	10.8	9.7
0.35	30.5	28.1	25.0	20.2	17.3	14.8	13.4	11.6	10.6	9.5
0.36	30.5	27.6	24.4	19.7	16.9	14.5	13.2	11.5	10.5	9.3
0.37	30.5	27.0	23.9	19.3	16.5	14.1	13.0	11.3	10.3	9.2
0.38	30.5	26.4	23.3	18.8	16.1	13.8	12.7	11.2	10.2	9.1
0.39	30.5	25.9	22.7	18.4	15.8	13.5	12.5	11.0	10.0	9.0
0.40	30.5	25.4	22.2	18.0	15.4	13.2	12.3	10.8	9.9	8.9
0.41	30.5	25.0	21.8	17.6	15.1	13.0	12.0	10.7	9.7	8.8
0.42	30.5	24.7	21.3	17.3	14.8	12.7	11.7	10.4	9.6	8.7
0.43	30.5	24.3	20.9	17.0	14.6	12.5	11.4	10.2	9.4	8.6
0.44	30.5	24.0	20.6	16.8	14.4	12.4	11.1	10.0	9.3	8.5
0.45	30.5	23.7	20.2	16.5	14.1	12.2	10.9	9.9	9.2	8.3

0.46	30.5	23.4	19.9	16.2	13.9	12.0	10.7	9.7	9.0	8.2
0.47	30.5	23.1	19.6	16.0	13.7	11.8	10.6	9.5	8.9	8.1
0.48	30.5	22.9	19.3	15.8	13.5	11.6	10.5	9.4	8.7	7.9
0.49	30.5	22.6	19.1	15.6	13.3	11.4	10.3	9.2	8.5	7.8
0.50	30.5	22.4	18.8	15.4	13.1	11.2	10.2	9.1	8.4	7.7
0.51	30.4	22.1	18.6	15.2	13.0	11.1	10.1	8.9	8.3	7.6
0.52	30.4	21.9	18.3	15.0	12.8	10.9	9.9	8.8	8.1	7.4
0.53	30.4	21.7	18.1	14.8	12.6	10.8	9.8	8.7	8.0	7.3
0.54	30.3	21.5	17.9	14.6	12.4	10.6	9.6	8.5	7.9	7.2
0.55	30.1	21.3	17.6	14.4	12.3	10.5	9.5	8.4	7.8	7.1
0.56	29.8	21.1	17.4	14.2	12.1	10.4	9.3	8.3	7.7	7.0
0.57	29.4	20.9	17.2	14.1	11.9	10.2	9.2	8.2	7.6	6.9
0.58	28.9	20.7	17.0	13.9	11.8	10.1	9.0	8.1	7.5	6.8
0.59	28.5	20.5	16.8	13.7	11.6	10.0	8.9	8.0	7.4	6.7
0.60	28.2	20.4	16.6	13.6	11.5	9.9	8.8	7.9	7.3	6.6
0.61	28.0	20.2	16.5	13.4	11.4	9.8	8.7	7.8	7.2	6.5
0.62	28.0	20.0	16.3	13.3	11.2	9.7	8.6	7.7	7.1	6.5
0.63	27.9	19.9	16.1	13.1	11.1	9.6	8.5	7.6	7.0	6.4
0.64	27.9	19.7	15.9	13.0	11.0	9.5	8.4	7.5	6.9	6.3
0.65	27.9	19.6	15.8	12.9	10.9	9.4	8.4	7.5	6.8	6.2

Note 1. Linear interpolation is to be used to determine intermediate values.

Note 2. 40 ft overstow containers not included in the number of tiers.

Note 3. Maximum container weights for transverse acceleration and number of tiers outside of those presented will be specially considered.

Note 4. The maximum container weight should not exceed the rated weight of the container.

Note 5. Where the homogeneous container weight (W_h) derived from the table is lower than the rated weight of the container, the maximum homogeneous weight is to be corrected to account for the height of the containers used, as follows: $W_{hc} = W_h w_{ac}$ Where: $W_{ac} = \frac{2.591}{c_a}$ which is not to be taken greater than 1 c_a is the average height of the 20 ft containers

Table 14. 7. 2: Maximum containers weights, Wh of 20 ft containers stowed in 40 ft cell guides with overstow, diagonal stacking cone arrangement

Lowest tier transverse acceleration	Maximum homogeneous container weights, in tonnes (number of 20 ft containers)

(= a_y/g), *See* Pt 3, Ch 14, 8.2 Ship motion, wind and green sea forces acting on containers 8.2.5	4 tiers and fewer	5 tiers	6 tiers	7 tiers	8 tiers	9 tiers	10 tiers	11 tiers
0.20	30.5	30.5	30.5	29.2	28.2	24.8	22.6	21.0
0.21	30.5	30.5	30.5	29.2	28.2	24.8	22.5	20.7
0.22	30.5	30.5	30.5	29.2	28.2	24.8	22.4	20.5
0.23	30.5	30.5	30.5	29.2	28.2	24.8	22.3	20.3
0.24	30.5	30.5	30.5	29.2	28.2	24.8	22.1	20.0
0.25	30.5	30.5	30.5	29.2	28.2	24.8	22.0	19.8
0.26	30.5	30.5	30.5	29.2	28.2	24.7	21.9	19.6
0.27	30.5	30.5	30.5	29.1	28.0	24.6	21.8	19.6
0.28	30.5	30.5	30.5	29.0	27.8	24.4	21.7	19.5
0.29	30.5	30.5	30.5	28.9	27.7	24.3	21.6	19.4
0.30	30.5	30.5	30.5	28.8	27.5	24.2	21.5	19.3
0.31	30.5	30.5	30.5	28.7	27.4	24.0	21.4	19.2
0.32	30.5	30.5	30.5	28.6	27.2	23.9	21.2	19.1
0.33	30.5	30.5	30.5	28.6	27.1	23.8	21.1	19.0
0.34	30.5	30.5	30.5	28.5	27.0	23.7	21.0	18.8
0.35	30.5	30.5	30.5	28.2	26.5	23.4	20.9	18.9
0.36	30.5	30.5	30.5	27.9	26.0	23.1	20.8	18.9
0.37	30.5	30.5	30.5	27.7	25.5	22.8	20.6	18.8
0.38	30.5	30.5	30.5	27.4	25.1	22.4	20.2	18.4
0.39	30.5	30.5	30.5	27.2	24.7	22.0	19.8	18.1
0.40	30.5	30.5	30.5	26.9	24.3	21.6	19.4	17.7
0.41	30.5	30.5	30.5	26.7	23.9	21.2	19.1	17.4
0.42	30.5	30.5	30.5	26.5	23.6	20.9	18.8	17.0
0.43	30.5	30.5	30.5	26.4	23.3	20.6	18.4	16.7
0.44	30.5	30.5	30.5	26.2	23.0	20.3	18.1	16.4
0.45	30.5	30.5	30.5	26.1	22.8	20.0	17.9	16.1
0.46	30.5	30.5	29.8	25.7	22.6	19.8	17.6	15.8
0.47	30.5	30.5	29.0	25.2	22.3	19.5	17.2	15.3
0.48	30.5	30.5	28.1	24.4	21.6	18.9	16.7	14.9
0.49	30.5	30.5	27.2	23.6	20.9	18.3	16.3	14.7
0.50	30.5	30.5	26.4	22.8	20.1	17.8	16.0	14.5

0.51	30.5	30.4	25.5	22.0	19.4	17.3	15.7	14.3
0.52	30.5	29.3	24.6	21.2	18.7	16.9	15.4	14.3
0.53	30.5	28.3	23.7	20.4	18.0	16.5	15.3	14.3
0.54	30.5	27.2	22.8	19.6	17.2	16.1	15.1	14.3
0.55	30.5	26.2	21.9	18.8	16.5	15.6	14.9	14.4

Note 1. Linear interpolation is to be used to determine intermediate values.

Note 2.40 ft overstow containers not included in the number of tiers

Note 3. Maximum container weights for transverse acceleration and number of tiers outside of those presented will be specially considered.

Note 4. The maximum container weight should not exceed the rated weight of the container.

Note 5. Where the homogeneous container weight (W_h) derived from the table is lower than the rated weight of the container, the maximum homogeneous weight is to be corrected to account for the height of the containers used, as follows: $W_{hc} = W_h w_{ac}$ Where: $W_{ac} = \frac{2.591}{c_a}$ which is not to be taken greater than $1 c_a$ is the average height of the 20 ft containers

Figure 14. 7. 2: Diagonal stacking cone arrangement

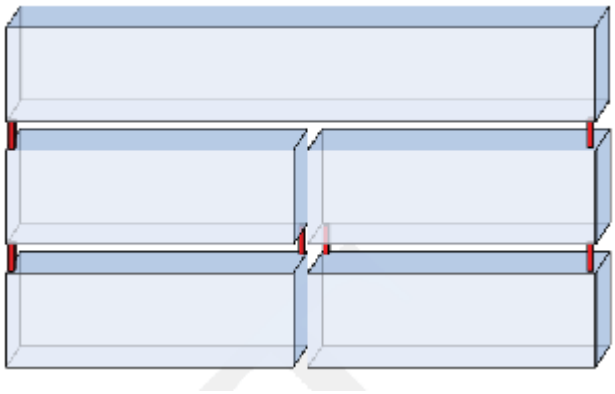


Table 14. 7. 3: Maximum container weights Wh of 20 ft containers stowed in 40 ft cell guides with overstow, other stacking cone arrangement

Lowest tier transverse acceleration (= a_y/g), *See* Pt 3, Ch 14, 8.2 Ship motion, wind and green sea forces acting on containers 8.2.5	Maximum homogeneous container weights, in tonnes					
	3 tiers	4 tiers	5 tiers	6 tiers	7 tiers	8 tiers
0.400	24.0	24.0	24.0	19.6	17.1	15.2
0.410	24.0	24.0	23.3	19.2	16.8	14.9
0.420	24.0	24.0	22.5	18.9	16.5	14.7
0.430	24.0	24.0	21.8	18.6	16.2	14.4
0.440	24.0	24.0	21.2	18.3	15.9	14.1

0.450	24.0	24.0	20.8	18.0	15.7	13.9
0.460	24.0	24.0	20.5	17.7	15.4	13.6
0.470	24.0	24.0	20.2	17.3	15.1	13.3
0.480	24.0	23.9	19.9	17.0	14.8	13.1
0.490	24.0	23.6	19.6	16.7	14.5	12.8
0.500	24.0	23.2	19.3	16.4	14.2	12.5
0.510	24.0	22.9	18.9	16.1	13.9	12.2
0.520	24.0	22.5	18.6	15.7	13.6	12.0
0.530	24.0	22.3	18.3	15.4	13.3	11.7
0.540	24.0	22.1	18.1	15.1	13.0	11.4
0.550	24.0	21.8	17.9	14.8	12.8	11.2

Note 1. Linear interpolation is to be used to determine intermediate values.

Note 2.40 ft overstow containers not included in the number of tiers.

Note 3. Maximum container weights for transverse acceleration and number of tiers outside of those presented will be specially considered.

Note 4. The maximum container weight should not exceed the rated weight of the container.

Note 5. Where the homogeneous container weight (W_h) derived from the table is lower than the rated weight of the container, the maximum homogeneous weight is to be corrected to account for the height of the containers used, as follows: $W_{hc} = W_h w_{ac}$ Where:$W_{ac} = \frac{2.591}{c_a}$which is not to be taken greater than 1c_a is the average height of the 20 ft containers

7. 3. 4 Alternative proposals for stowage arrangements will be individually considered and are to be accompanied by supporting calculations.

7. 4 Cell guide systems on exposed decks

7. 4. 1 Analysis methods for the strength of the cell guide structure are to take due account of the interactive effects between guide structure and supporting deck structure and also of the deformation of the hull girder.

7. 4. 2 At its lower end the guide structure is to be efficiently connected to the deck structure. Cross ties are to be arranged between guides in a transverse direction at a spacing determined by the loading on the guides but in general not more than 3 m apart. Cross-bracing members of adequate strength and sufficient number are to be fitted in the transverse and longitudinal directions to prevent excessive deflection of the guide structure.

7. 4. 3 The height of guide bars above the deck is to be sufficient to ensure adequate restraint to the uppermost container tiers.

7. 4. 4 Where the cell guide structure is attached to highly stressed hull or deck elements, such as sheerstrakes, special attention is to be given to the design of the connection and the grade and quality of steel utilised.

7. 5 Entry guide devices

7. 5. 1 A device to pre-centre the container and direct it into the cell guides is normally to be fitted at the top of the guide bars. Such devices include:

- fixed even peaks,
- fixed high and low peaks,
- 'flip-flop' systems,

but other devices will be considered. The device is to be of robust construction.

PART

3

CHAPTER **14 Cargo Securing Arrangements**

SECTION **8 Determination of forces for container securing arrangements**

8. 1 General

8. 1. 1 The forces acting in the securing system are to be determined for each loading condition and associated set of motions of the ship. Although the operation of anti-roll devices or other systems may improve the behaviour of the ship in a seaway, the effect of such devices is not to be taken into account to reduce the determination of the forces for container securing arrangements.

8. 1. 2 The following forces are to be taken into account:

- Static gravity forces.
- Inertial forces generated by the ship motions in a seaway.
- Wind forces.
- Forces imposed by the securing arrangements.
- Wave impact forces and effects of consequential hull girder whipping.

8. 1. 3 Forces due to pre-tensioning the securing devices need not, in general, be included in the calculation, provided that they do not exceed 5 kN in any one item. Special consideration will be given to cases where forces obtained from pre-stressing are an integral part of the design of the system.

8. 2 Ship motion, wind and green sea forces acting on containers

8. 2. 1 The forces acting on each container due to gravity, ship motion accelerations, ship rolling and pitching angles and wind forces and green sea forces are to be calculated as follows.

8. 2. 2 The equations for ship motion accelerations and other motion parameters are given in Pt 3, Ch 14, 1.7, Symbols and definitions. These are to be used for the calculation of accelerations to derive the forces for the container securing arrangements. Alternatively, the ship motion values may be derived by direct calculation methods using the same principles as those used to derive the Rule equations. The formulae in Pt 3, Ch 14, 1.7, Symbols and definitions are applicable to container ships. Values for other ship types will be specially considered.

8. 2. 3 The following six Motion Cases (MCs) are to be considered:

MC1: Head sea case that maximises vertical acceleration

MC2: Beam sea case that maximises roll motion

MC3: Oblique sea case that maximises pitch acceleration

MC4: Oblique sea case with forward speed that maximises roll motion

MC5: Oblique sea case that maximises combined transverse and vertical accelerations

MC6: Beam sea case that maximises heave acceleration

Each Motion Case comprises 2 Motion Combination Factor (MCF) sets. Each MCF set represents an Equivalent Design Wave (EDW) that generates response values equivalent to the long-term response values of the critical load components for ship motion forces acting on containers. The Motion Combination Factors are given in Table 14. 8. 3: Motion Combination Factors (MCFs).

8. 2. 4 The individual force components for each Motion Case due to gravity, ship motions, wind and green seas acting on a container *i* are to be determined as follows, *See* Figure 14. 1. 1: Diagrammatic representation of symbols and Table 14. 9. 1: Acceleration force application:

H_{Di} = force acting on container *i* in kN in transverse direction parallel to deck, positive to port

= Wa_y

J_{Di} = force acting on container *i* in kN in longitudinal direction parallel to deck, positive forward

= Wa_x

P_{Di} = force acting on container *i* in kN in vertical direction normal to deck, positive upward

= Wa_z

Q_{Di} = wind force acting on exposed container *i* in kN in transverse direction parallel to deck, positive to port

= $Q_{DSi}Q_{DMi}$

Where

Q_{DMi} = wind force magnitude acting on exposed container *i* in kN in transverse direction parallel to deck

= $0.5bc\rho_a C_{rmll} C_z C_{wh} V_{wh}^2 10^{-3}$

where

C_{roll} wind force coefficient to include effect of roll angle

= $\left(\frac{1}{1 + 0.026 \mid C_y d\varphi}\right) + 0.65$

ρ_a density of air in kg/m^3 is to be taken as

= 1.204

C_Z wind force height distribution coefficient

= $\left(1 - \frac{z_{ci} - z_{bc}}{z_{tc} - z_{bc}}\right)^{0.25}$

V_{wh} mean wind speed over the stack in m/s

$$= 0.63V_m \frac{z_{tc}^{1.11} - z_{bc}^{1.11}}{z_{tc} - z_{bc}}$$

z_{tc} height above moulded draught, T_c, of the top of the highest container in the stack under consideration, in m

z_{bc} height above moulded draught, T_c, of the underside of the lowest container in the outermost stack, in m

Where

z_{ci} height above moulded draught, T_c, of the centre of the side wall of container i, in m

C_{wh} wind heading coefficient, given in Table 14. 8. 1: Wind heading coefficient Cwh

C_{yG} transverse acceleration motion combination factor C_{yG}, given in Table 14. 8. 3: Motion Combination Factors (MCFs)

Other symbols are defined in Pt 3, Ch 14, 1.7, Symbols and definitions.

می باشدRullدر سطرهای بعدی 3 تا فرمول در

Q_{DSi} = Wind force direction coefficient

= 1 if $H_{Di} > 0$kN

= -1 if $H_{Di} \leq 0$kN

H_{Gi} = green sea force acting on container i, in kN in transverse direction parallel to deck, positive to port

= $-bc_i P_{gs}$ for port side exposed containers

= $bc_i P_{gs}$ for starboard side exposed containers

Note 1. H_{Gi} is only to be applied when H_{Gi} will increase the transverse force H_{Di}.

Note 2. *See also*Pt 3, Ch 14, 8.2 Ship motion, wind and green sea forces acting on containers 8.2.8 and Pt 3, Ch 14, 8.2 Ship motion, wind and green sea forces acting on containers 8.2.11.

J_{Gi} = green sea force acting on container i, in kN in longitudinal direction parallel to deck, positive forward

= $-ac_i P_{gs}$

Note 1. J_{Gi} is only to be applied when J_{Gi} will increase the longitudinal force J_{Di}.

Note 2. *See also*Pt 3, Ch 14, 8.2 Ship motion, wind and green sea forces acting on containers 8.2.10 and Pt 3, Ch 14, 8.2 Ship motion, wind and green sea forces acting on containers 8.2.11.

P_{Gi} = green sea force acting on container i, in kN in the upwards direction normal to deck

= $1.5ab$

Note 1. P_{Gi} is only to be applied when the vertical acceleration a_z> -9.81 m/s^2 (downward acceleration less than gravitational acceleration).

Note 2. *See also*Pt 3, Ch 14, 8.2 Ship motion, wind and green sea forces acting on containers 8.2.10 and Pt 3, Ch 14, 8.2 Ship motion, wind and green sea forces acting on containers 8.2.11.

Where

P_{gs} = green sea pressure in kN/m^2, *See*Pt 3, Ch 14, 8.2 Ship motion, wind and green sea forces acting on containers 8.2.11 and Pt 3, Ch 14, 8.2 Ship motion, wind and green sea forces acting on containers 8.2.12.

Table 14. 8. 1: Wind heading coefficient C_{wh}

	Wind heading coefficient C_{wh}
Motion case *See* Note 1	Only applied to the exposed side walls of containers as defined in Pt 3, Ch 14, 8.2 Ship motion, wind and green sea forces acting on containers 8.2.7 and Pt 3, Ch 14, 8.2 Ship motion, wind and green sea forces acting on containers 8.2.8
MC1, *See* Note 2	0
MC2	1.00
MC3	0.866
MC4	0.866
MC5	0.866
MC6	1.00
Note*1*. For definition of Motion Cases, *See*Pt 3, Ch 14, 8.2 Ship motion, wind and green sea forces acting on containers 8.2.7. **Note***2*. No wind loads are to be applied to Motion Case MC1.	

8. 2. 5 The total instantaneous acceleration values acting on container *i*, including the static gravitational term, are to be taken as:

- Longitudinal acceleration (parallel to deck, positive forward)

$$a_x = C_{xS}a_{surge} + C_{xP}a_{pitch}\,z_i - g\sin(C_{xG}\psi)\text{m/s}^2$$

- Transverse acceleration (parallel to deck, positive to port)

i. For containers on the port side and on the centreline:

$$a_y = C_{yS}a_{sway} - C_{yR}a_{roll}z_i + g\sin(C_{yG}\varphi)\text{m/s}^2$$

ii. For containers on the starboard side:

$$a_y = -C_{yS}a_{sway} + C_{yR}a_{roll}z_i - g\sin(C_{yG}\varphi)\text{m/s}^2$$

- Vertical acceleration (normal to deck, positive upwards)

i. For containers on the port side and on the centreline:

$$a_z = C_{p1}\left(C_{zH}a_{heave} + C_{zR}a_{roll}\,y_i - f_{ap}C_{zP}a_{pitch}x_i\right) - g\cos(C_{xG}\psi)\cos(C_{yG}\varphi)\text{m/s}^2$$

ii. For containers on the starboard side

$$a_z = C_{p1}\left(C_{zH}a_{heave} - C_{zR}a_{roll}\,y_i - f_{ap}C_{zP}a_{pitch}x_i\right) - g\cos(C_{xG}\psi)\cos(C_{yG}\varphi)\text{m/s}^2$$

where the Motion Combination Factors $C_{xS}, C_{xP}, C_{xG}, C_{yS}, C_{yR}, C_{yG}, C_{zH}, C_{zR}$ and C_{ZP} for each Motion Case are given in Table 14. 8. 3: Motion Combination Factors (MCFs).

8. 2. 6 Wind forces are to be applied to the outer faces of the outermost container stack in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 14, 8.2 Ship motion, wind and green sea forces acting on containers 8.2.4. Wind forces may also need to be applied to inboard stacks in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 14, 8.2 Ship motion, wind and green sea forces acting on containers 8.2.7. The wind forces are to be taken as acting in the athwartships direction. Only positive forces of wind pressure are to be applied; suction forces need not be included. *See*Figure 14.8.1 Application of wind forces

8. 2. 7 Wind forces are to be applied to containers in inboard stacks if the centre of the windward side wall of the container is above the wind shear line, *See* Figure 14. 8. 1: Application of wind forces. The wind shear line is to be taken at an angle of 35 degrees to the horizontal and passing through the upper corner of the uppermost container of any windward stack, *See* Figure 14. 8. 1: Application of wind forces. The roll angle is to be ignored in the assessment of the wind shear line. The wind force is to be derived in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 14, 8.2 Ship motion, wind and green sea forces acting on containers 8.2.4 but *See also*Pt 3, Ch 14, 8.2 Ship motion, wind and green sea forces acting on containers 8.2.8.

Hence wind forces are to be applied to containers in inboard stacks if:

$$z_{ci} > z_{ws} + (|y_{ws} - y_{ci}|)\tan(35)$$

Where

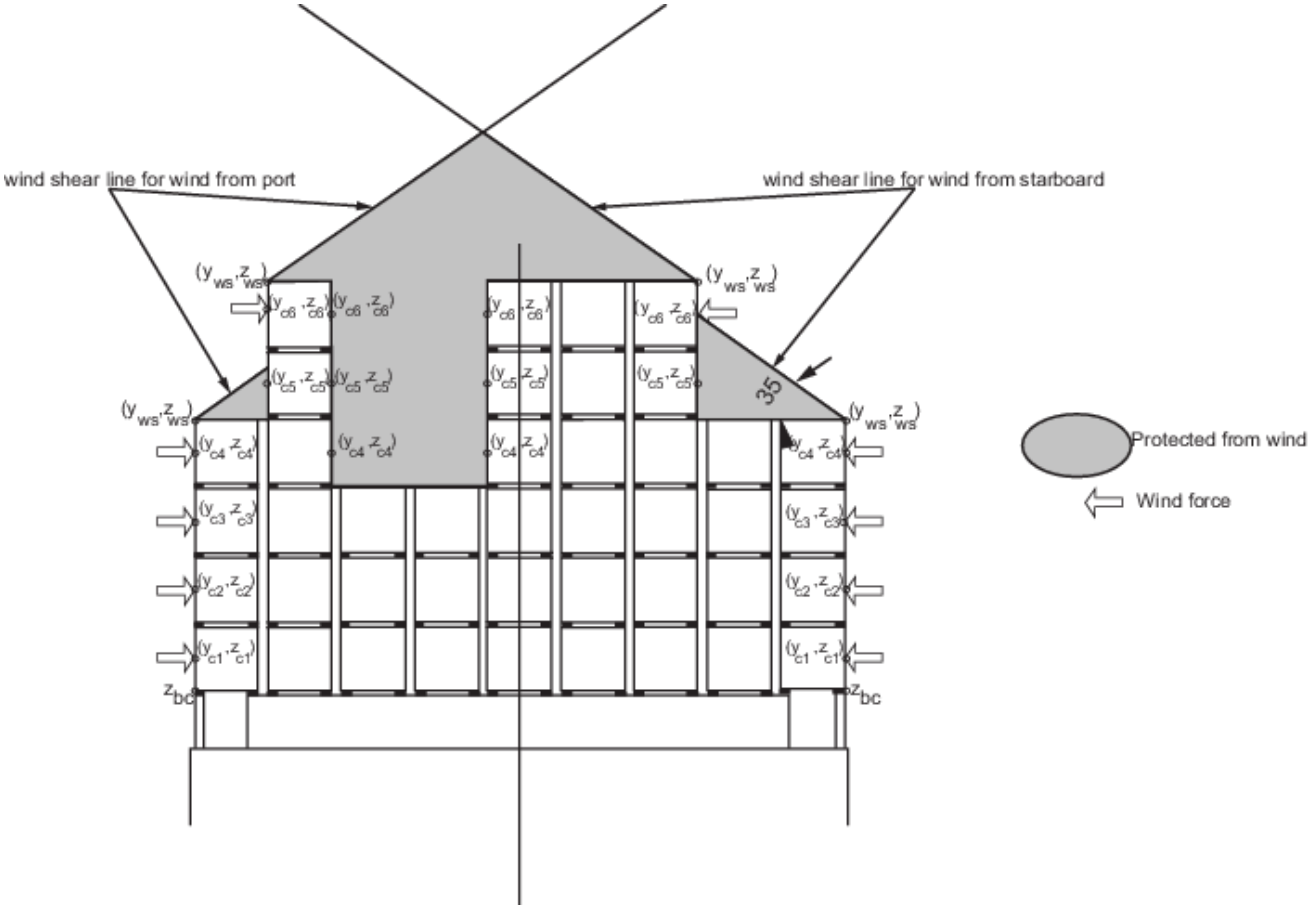
z_{ci} is the vertical position of the centre of the windward side wall of container *i* of the stack under consideration

y_{ws} is the transverse position of the windward top corner of the uppermost container of the stacks windward of the stack under consideration

z_{ws} is the vertical position of the windward top corner of the uppermost container of the stacks windward of the stack under consideration

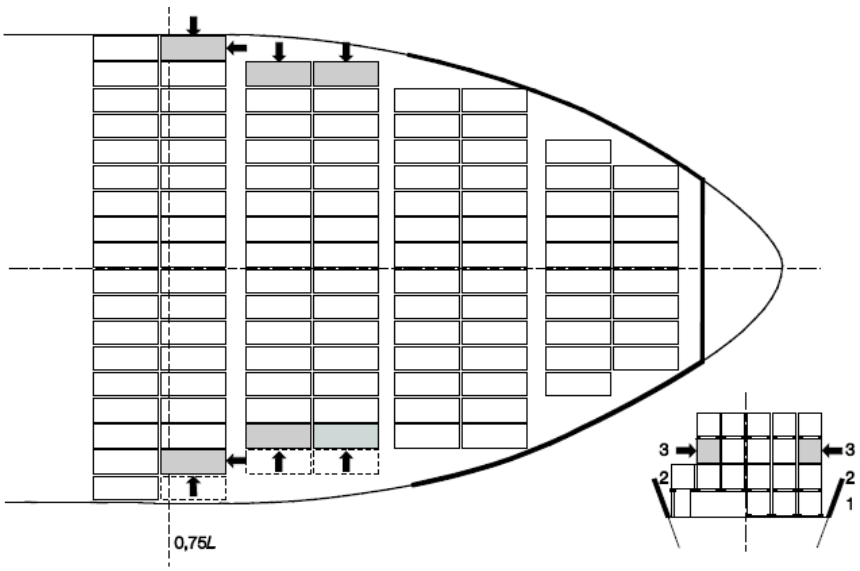
y_{ci} is the transverse position of the centre of the windward side wall of container i of the stack under consideration

Figure 14. 8. 1: Application of wind forces

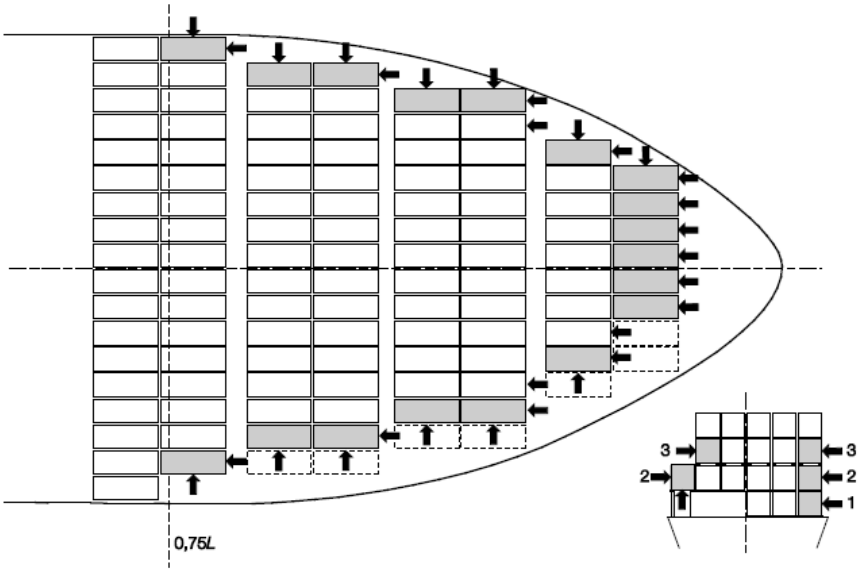


Note. The formula in Pt 3, Ch 14, 8.2 Ship motion, wind and green sea forces acting on containers 8.2.7 compares points at the container base and centre. The drawing compares points at the side. Both comparisons yield the same result.

Figure 14. 8. 2: Example of application of green sea forces



(a) Green sea loading on lowest three tiers only – Effective breakwaters (Forward and wrap around)



(b) Green sea loading on lowest three tiers only – No effective breakwater

8. 2. 8 A container is considered protected from wind in the transverse direction or from green sea loads in the longitudinal or transverse direction if an effective breakwater or similar extends above mid height of the container.

8. 2. 9 A container is considered partially protected from wind if an outboard container partially shields an inboard container as follows:

- An outboard 40ft container is considered to fully protect a longer inboard container.
- An outboard 20ft container is considered to partially protect a longer inboard container from wind. In this case the full wind force is to be applied over the exposed portion of the longer inboard container when the exposed length is more than 3m. The resulting wind force is to be applied solely to the end wall of the exposed portion.

8. 2. 10 A container is considered protected from green sea loads in the vertical direction if:

- the underside is less than 0.5 m above the hatch cover or deck; or
- an effective breakwater or similar extends above the bottom of the container.

8. 2. 11 Green sea loads need only be applied to a container when (*See*Pt 3, Ch 14, 8.2 Ship motion, wind and green sea forces acting on containers 8.2.7):

- the container $x_c > 0.75L$;
- the container is in the lowest three tiers of a stack;
- the container is in one of the two most outboard positions on the deck; and
- the container is not protected, *See*Pt 3, Ch 14, 8.2 Ship motion, wind and green sea forces acting on containers 8.2.8*and*Pt 3, Ch 14, 8.2 Ship motion, wind and green sea forces acting on containers 8.2.10.

Note In general, Tier 1 position corresponds to lowest tier of containers sitting just above the deck and Tier 2 position corresponds to the lowest tier of containers sitting just above the hatch covers, *See*Pt 3, Ch 14, 8.2 Ship motion, wind and green sea forces acting on containers 8.2.7.

8. 2. 12 The green sea pressure is given by:

for $L>100$

$$P_{gs} = C_{G1}L^2 + C_{G2}L + C_{G3}\text{kN/m}^2 \text{ but not less than 0}$$

for $L \leq 100$, P_{gs} is to be taken as:

= 1.5 for Tier 1

= 1.0 for Tier 2

= 0.5 for Tier 3

where

C_{G1}, C_{G2}, C_{G3} are defined in Table 14. 8. 2: Green sea pressure coefficients

Proposals to use other values for green sea forces will be specially considered

Table 14. 8. 2: Green sea pressure coefficients

	C_{G1}	C_{G2}	C_{G3}
Tier 1	–0.000017	0.0035	1.32
Tier 2	–0.000020	0.0040	0.80
Tier 3	–0.000023	0.0045	0.28

Table 14. 8. 3: Motion Combination Factors (MCFs)

			Longitudinal acceleration			Transverse acceleration			Vertical acceleration		
Motion Case	Heading	MCF	*a*-surge	*a*-pitch	*g**sin ψ	*a*-sway	*a*-roll	*g**sin φ	*a*-heave	*a*-roll	*a*-pitch
			C_{xS}	C_{xP}	C_{xG}	C_{yS}	C_{yR}	C_{yG}	C_{zH}	C_{zR}	C_{zP}
MC1	Head	HS_1	–0.69	1.00	–0.85	0.00	0.00	0.00	–0.18	0.00	1.00

		HS_2	0.69	–1.00	0.85	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.18	0.00	–1.00
MC2	Beam	BS1_1	0.00	0.00	0.00	–0.09	0.66	–0.66	0.14	0.66	0.00
		BS1_2	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.09	–0.66	0.66	–0.14	–0.66	0.00
MC3	Oblique	OS1_1	–0.43	1.00	–0.86	–0.28	–0.22	0.05	–0.29	–0.22	1.00
		OS1_2	0.43	–1.00	0.86	0.28	0.22	–0.05	0.29	0.22	–1.00
MC4	Oblique	OS2_1	0.00	0.00	0.00	–0.02	1.00	–1.00	0.00	1.00	0.00
		OS2_2	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.02	–1.00	1.00	0.00	–1.00	0.00
MC5	Oblique	OS3_1	0.62	–0.46	0.65	0.96	–0.36	0.12	0.11	–0.36	–0.46
		OS3_2	–0.62	0.46	–0.65	–0.96	0.36	–0.12	–0.11	0.36	0.46
MC6	Beam	BS2_1	–0.07	–0.05	0.02	0.62	0.12	–0.01	1.00	0.12	–0.05
		BS2_2	0.07	0.05	–0.02	–0.62	–0.12	0.01	–1.00	–0.12	0.05

PART

3

CHAPTER **14 Cargo Securing Arrangements**

SECTION **9 Strength of container securing arrangements**

9. 1 General

9. 1. 1 The securing system is to be designed on the basis of the most severe combination of the forces specified in Pt 3, Ch 14, 8 Determination of forces for container securing arrangements in such a manner that the resultant forces on the containers and securing devices are within allowable limits., the forces are to be calculated for the most severe condition applicable to each arrangement.

9. 1. 2 The resultant forces in the containers are not to exceed the allowable values given in Pt 3, Ch 14, 9.4, Allowable forces on containers, fittings and lashing devices.

9. 1. 3 The resultant forces in the securing devices and supports are not to exceed the allowable working loads for which the device has been approved, *See*Pt 3, Ch 14, 2 Fixed cargo securing fittings, materials and testing and Pt 3, Ch 14, 3 Loose container securing fittings, materials and testing.

9. 1. 4 The container orientation is to follow the cargo securing manual, however, if unknown the container door end is assumed to face aft.

9. 1. 5 The forces in lashing devices, where fitted, are not to exceed the allowable safe working loads (SWLs) of the lashings as determined from Pt 3, Ch 14, 3 Loose container securing fittings, materials and testing.

9. 1. 6 For containers that are stowed in the fore and aft direction, it is sufficient to calculate the forces in the lashing rods based on assessment of the transverse and vertical loads acting on the containers. The vertical forces in the corner posts are to include the effects of transverse and longitudinal loads acting on the containers.

9. 1. 7 For containers that are stowed athwartships, the transverse, longitudinal and vertical loads acting on the containers will need to be taken into account in calculating the forces in the lashing rods. The vertical forces in the corner posts are to include the effects of transverse and longitudinal loads acting on the containers. The approach to be adopted should be agreed with ACS.

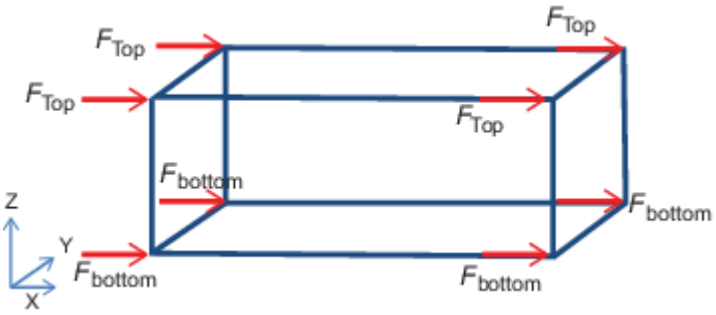
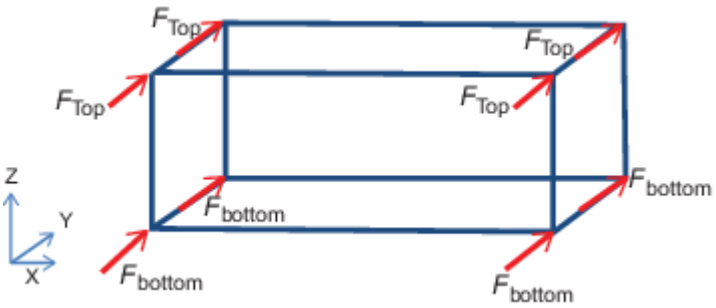
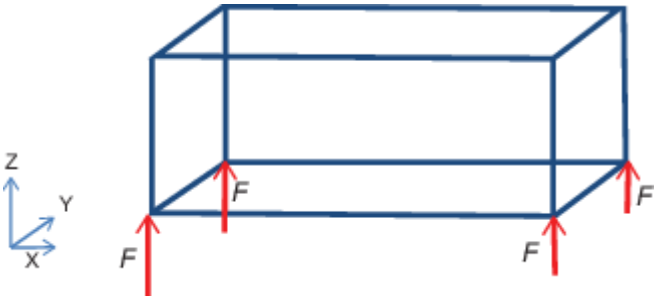
9. 2 Forces applied to each container

9. 2. 1 Forces due to acceleration, green water and wind in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 14, 8 Determination of forces for container securing arrangements, are to be applied as follows:

- Acceleration forces are to be calculated about the centre of gravity of the container.
- Vertical acceleration forces and self-weight are to be distributed to the four bottom corner castings.
- Vertical, transverse and longitudinal green sea loads act uniformly over the exposed panel of the container.
- Wind loads act uniformly over the exposed panel of the container.

9. 2. 2 Table 14. 9. 1: Acceleration force application shows a method to apply the forces to a container, assuming centre of gravity of the container is to be taken as half way along its length, midway between the port and starboard wall, and c_{VGGi} off the container floor.

Table 14. 9. 1: Acceleration force application

Acceleration Force	Figure
(a) Longitudinal acceleration force	 **where** $F_{Top} = \frac{J_{Di}}{4} \cdot \left(1 - \frac{c_{VCGi}}{c_i}\right)$ $F_{Bottom} = \frac{J_{Di}}{4} \cdot \left(1 - \frac{c_{VCGi}}{c_i}\right)$
(b) Transverse acceleration force	 **where** $F_{Top} = \frac{J_{Di}}{4} \cdot \left(1 - \frac{c_{VCGi}}{c_i}\right)$ $F_{Bottom} = \frac{J_{Di}}{4} \cdot \left(1 - \frac{c_{VCGi}}{c_i}\right)$
(c) Vertical acceleration force	 **Where** $F = \frac{p_{Di}}{4}$

Note The force application assumes the centre of gravity of the container is to be taken as half way along its length, midway between the port and starboard wall and c_{VCGi} off the container floor.

9. 3 Analysis of the container stack

9. 3. 1 ACS Guidance Notes for *Calculation Procedure of Container Stack Analysis* describes a methodology that complies with these requirements.

9. 3. 2 The application of ship motion and environmental loads will induce forces in the container boxes and lashing devices which result in distortion of the container stack. The key structural items resisting this distortion are as follows:

- The shear stiffness of the container end and side panels;
- The axial stiffness of the container corner posts;
- The stiffness of the lashing devices, including lashing bridge structure, when present;
- Under certain conditions and lashing arrangements, the twistlock can experience lifting forces which result in increased stack distortion.

All these aspects need to be considered in the stack analysis.

9. 3. 3 The forces in the containers, twistlocks and lashing devices are calculated from the stack distortion. Using the forces applied to the stack in *9.2 Forces applied to each container* and the stiffness of the stack, the overall stack deformation is calculated using the standard force-displacement equations. Non-linearity of the system as a consequence of twistlock separation and lashing rods is to be considered in evaluating the deformation. The inclusion of twistlock separation and corner post stiffness results in an increase in the loads in the lashing devices. The inclusion of a lashing bridge structure significantly affects the support a lashing device can provide for the stack and hence must be considered.

9. 3. 4 The overall distortion behaviour of a container is a combination of its shear stiffness and corner post stiffness. A container is to be modelled as a combination of shear only panels representing the walls, and rod elements representing the corner posts and horizontal frame structures. The shear stiffness of the container walls is to be taken as specified in Table 14. 9. 2: Shear spring stiffness of container walls. The area and Young's Modulus of the corner posts and horizontal frame members is to be taken as specified in Table 14. 9. 3: Container post properties.

Table 14. 9. 2: Shear spring stiffness of container walls

Container height	Door end kN/mm	Closed end kN/mm	Side wall kN/mm
2.438 m (8 ft)	3.7	16.7	6.1
2.591 m (8 ft 6 in)	3.5	15.4	5.7
2.743 m (9 ft)	3.3	14.3	5.4
2.896 m (9 ft 6 in)	3.2	13.3	5.1

Table 14. 9. 3: Container post properties

Property	Corner post properties	Horizontal post properties
Effective Area	3800 mm^2	2000 mm^2
Young's Modulus	206 kN/mm^2	206 kN/mm^2

9. 3. 5 Lashing devices are to be taken into account and their properties modelled to capture their behaviour. These include but are not limited to lashing rods and shore devices.

9. 3. 6 Lashing rods are to be modelled using tension only rod elements. Elongation may be determined by reference to an effective cross-sectional area and an effective modulus of elasticity of the lashing (allowance for straightening and stretching), which in the absence of actual test values,is to be taken as specified in Table 14. 9. 4: Effective modulus of elasticity of lashing devices.

9. 3. 7 Lashing rod stiffness, k_{Lr}, in kN/mm may be derived as follows:

$$k_{l,r} = \frac{E_r A_r}{l_r}$$

Where

E_r = effective modulus of elasticity, in kN/mm^2, *See* Table 14. 9. 4: Effective modulus of elasticity of lashing devices

A_r = cross sectional area of lashing device, in mm^2

l_r = length of lashing rod device, in mm

9. 3. 8 For external and internal para-lash arrangements, each lashing rod is to be individually modelled and connected to the relevant container casting.

9. 3. 9 Other lashing rod arrangements, e.g. an internal para-lash with load equaliser arrangements, will need to be specially considered.

Table 14. 9. 4: Effective modulus of elasticity of lashing devices

Lashing equipment	Effective modulus of elasticity
Steel rod lashings of hook type, including turnbuckle	98 kN/mm^2
Short (one tier) steel rod lashings (knob type), including turnbuckle and lashing eyes	140 kN/mm^2
Long (two tier) steel rod lashings (knob type), including turnbuckle and lashing eyes	175 kN/mm^2
Steel wire rope lashings	90 kN/mm^2
Steel chain lashings (based on the nominal diameter of the chain)	80 kN/mm^2
Adjustable tension/compression buttress	120 kN/mm^2
Aluminium or other materials	To be specially considered

9. 3. 10 Any other element introducing flexibility into the structure between the lashing point and the base of the container stack is to be evaluated and taken into account. Examples of this could be flexibility of the lashing bridge, sliding of a hatch cover or torsional deformations of the hull.

9. 3. 11 Where lashing devices are attached to a lashing bridge, the lashing bridge transverse stiffness is to be taken into account and may be modelled as an additional rod element. For lashing bridge designs with multiple lashing platforms, a lashing bridge rod element is required for each platform.

All the lashing bridge rod elements are to be connected in series. The bottom of the lashing bridge can be assumed to be rigidly fixed.

A default Rule stiffness for each platform of the lashing bridge is to be modelled with a rod with a transverse spring stiffness (K_{lbyi}) calculated from the following:

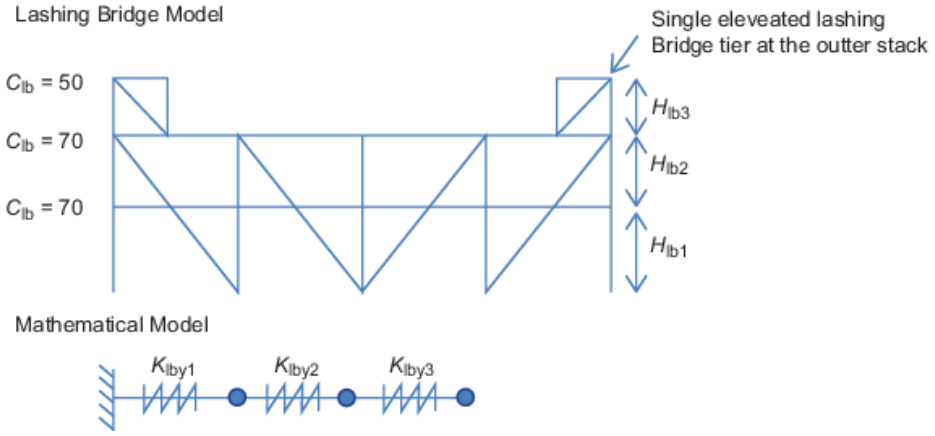
$$K_{lbyi} = \frac{C_{lb}}{H_{lbi}} \text{kN/mm}$$

Where

H_{lbi} is the height of lashing bridge tier *i*, taken in m, *See*Figure 14.9.1 Lashing bridge transverse spring stiffness

C_{lb} is the lashing bridge stiffness coefficient, taken as 50 for single elevated lashing bridge tiers at the outer stack, *See*Figure 14.9.1 Lashing bridge transverse spring stiffness, and 70 otherwise.

Figure 14. 9. 1: Lashing bridge transverse spring stiffness



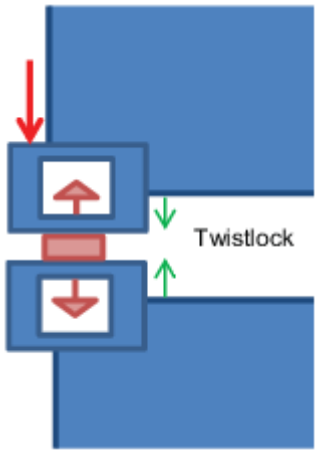
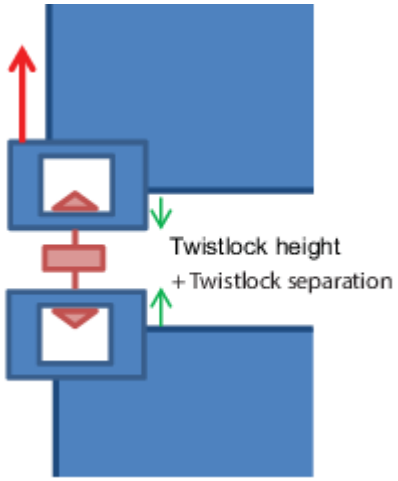
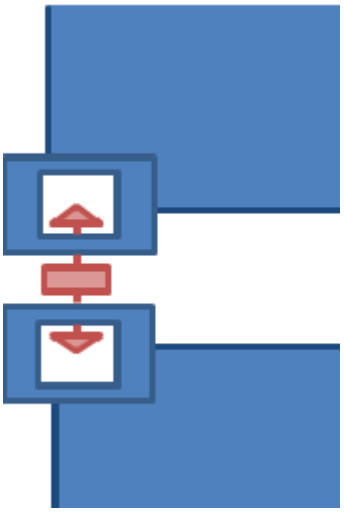
9. 3. 12 For lashing bridge designs having a higher transverse stiffness than the default stiffness value of $70/H_{lbi}$, in kN/mm, the stack analysis can be based on the actual stiffness value determined in accordance with the *ACSPlus ADP Guideline for the Assessment of Container Ship Lashing Bridge Structures*.

9. 3. 13 Alternative proposals for the transverse stiffness of the lashing bridge will be individually considered.

9. 3. 14 Inherent in the twistlock design is a need for play in order to be able to fit the device. This play allows easy installation of the twistlocks, but this also means that vertical lifting of the top container occurs before the twistlock comes in to tension. Twistlocks therefore have three states, *See* Table 14. 9. 5: Twistlock separation and states. This vertical lifting distance is referred to as twistlock separation. If this separation occurs then it can significantly increase the transverse stack deformation and the forces in the lashing devices. The assessment of the effects of twistlock separation is particularly critical for external lashing arrangements.

Table 14. 9. 5: Twistlock separation and states

State	Figure	Description

Twistlock closed		Twistlock closed and in compression. The distance between the container castings is equal to the twistlock height.
Twistlock open		Twistlock open and in tension. The distance between the container castings is equal to the twistlock height plus twistlock separation.
Twistlock float		Float condition with zero axial force. The distance between the container castings is in between closed and open state.

9. 3. 15 Twistlock separation and height is to be provided by the lashing manufacturer. If this information is not available, the twistlock flange height is to be taken as 28 mm and the twistlock separation as 18 mm for FATs, SATs and manual twistlocks.

9. 3. 16 In the analysis of container stacks, it may be assumed that shear deformation of twistlocks can be ignored.

9. 3. 17 Initial displacement of containers due to tolerances in container fittings will be considered in conjunction with the stowage arrangement proposed. Generally, initial displacement may be neglected in calculation procedures for conventional stowages.

9. 4 Allowable forces on containers, fittings and lashing devices

9. 4. 1 The racking force of the container panels is calculated from the transverse shear deformation and the shear stiffness. The absolute racking force on the container end and side panels must not exceed the allowable racking force specified in Table 14. 9. 6: Allowable forces in containers in stacks with the same base size

9. 4. 2 The vertical force in the corner post is to be calculated from the compression of the post plus the vertical force due to shear in the end wall acting on the post. The maximum compressive force in each corner post of the container must not exceed the vertical forces at each top corner casting and in each corner post specified in Table 14. 9. 6: Allowable forces in containers in stacks with the same base size.

9. 4. 3 The maximum vertical compressive force in the twistlock is not to be greater than the allowable vertical forces at each bottom corner casting, compression and the maximum vertical tensile force in the twistlock is not to be greater than the allowable vertical corner pull-out force at each bottom corner casting.

9. 4. 4 The twistlock tensile load is to be less than the safe working load.

9. 4. 5 The forces and force components in the lashing devices must not be greater than the allowable lashing forces on the corner castings and the safe working load of the lashing device.

9. 4. 6 Table 14. 9. 6: Allowable forces in containers in stacks with the same base size and Pt 3, Ch 14, 9.4 Allowable forces on containers, fittings and lashing devices 9.4.12 show the values for allowable forces for ISO containers according to ISO 1496-1:1990 including Amendment Nos. 1, 2, 3 and 4. Other configurations will be specially considered.

9. 4. 7 The allowable forces for containers of other dimensions, e.g. 24 ft, 48 ft and 53 ft, will be determined on the basis of the values in Table 14. 9. 6: Allowable forces in containers in stacks with the same base size and of the forces for which the container has been certified.

9. 4. 8 The resultant forces in the securing devices and supports are not to exceed the allowable safe working loads for which the device has been approved, *See* Pt 3, Ch 14, 2 Fixed cargo securing fittings, materials and testing and Pt 3, Ch 14, 3 Loose container securing fittings, materials and testing.

9. 4. 9 The forces in lashing devices, where fitted, are not to exceed the allowable safe working loads (SWLs) of the lashings as determined from Pt 3, Ch 14, 3 Loose container securing fittings, materials and testing.

9. 4. 10 Table 14. 2. 2: Test loads and test modes for fixed container securing fittings and Table 14. 3. 2: Test loads and test modes for loose container securing fittings show the allowable safe working loads for loose fittings, including twistlocks, and securing devices. The forces in lashing devices are not to exceed the safe working loads (SWLs).

9. 4. 11 Table 14. 3. 2: Test loads and test modes for loose container securing fittings show the allowable shear force of the twistlocks. The calculated twistlock shear force is to be increased by 10 per cent due to misalignment, corrosion and design tolerances before comparing to the safe working load.

9. 4. 12 When Fully Automatic Twistlocks (FATs) are used, it is to be ensured that at least one of the port and starboard FATs at each end is in compression. This is to ensure that the FATs would not become disengaged.

Table 14. 9. 6: Allowable forces in containers in stacks with the same base size

	20 ft	40 ft	45 ft
	in kN		
Horizontal force from a container casting acting parallel to the side face	150	150	150
Horizontal force from lashing on container casting acting parallel to the end face, *See* Note 1	225	225	225
Vertical force from lashing on lower container casting acting parallel to the end or side face, *See* Note 1	250	250	250
Resultant force from lashing on upper container casting acting parallel to the end or side face	188	188	188
Racking force on container end	150	150	150
Racking force on container side	150	150	150
Vertical forces at each top corner casting, tension	250	250	250
Vertical forces at each bottom corner casting, tension	250	250	250
Vertical forces at each top corner casting and in each corner post, compression	848 *See* Note 4	848 *See* Note 4	942
Vertical forces at each bottom corner casting, compression	$848 + \left(\frac{1.8Rg}{4}\right)$ *See* Note 3	$848 + (1.8Rg/4)$ *See* Note 3	$942 + \frac{1.8Rg}{4}$ *See* Note 3
Transverse forces acting at the level of and parallel to the top face, tension or compression, *See* Note 2	340	340	340
Transverse forces acting at the level of and parallel to the bottom face, tension or compression, *See* Note 2	500	500	500

Note*1*. In no case is the resultant of the horizontal and the vertical forces to exceed the limiting values derived from Figure 14. 9. 2: Allowable forces for 20 ft or 40 ft containers constructed to ISO 1496-1:1990 including Amendment Nos. 1, 2 and 3. The horizontal and vertical forces are the maximum components of a diagonal force and are not to be used as the maximum load if horizontal or vertical lashings are employed.

Note*2*. Where a buttress supports the stack at an intermediate level, the total transverse force in the containers at the level is not to exceed the sum of the appropriate top and bottom forces.

Note *3*. The vertical compression force on the lower corner casting on the closed end of the lowest container may exceed $848 + (1.8Rg/4)$ kN or $942 + (1.8Rg/4)$ as applicable, provided the following conditions are complied with:

The vertical compression force acting on the lowest container from the container above does not exceed 848 kN.

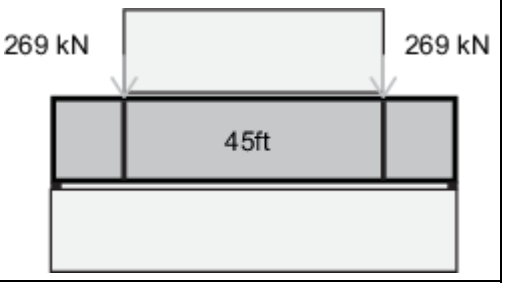
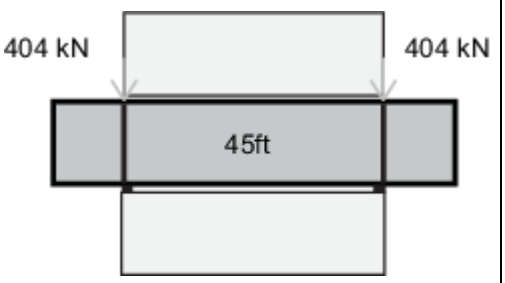
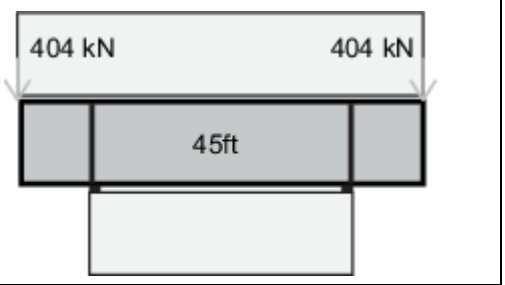
The horizontal racking force acting on the lowest container from the container above does not exceed 150 kN.

The local ship side or hatch cover container foundation is designed and approved for the increased design compression force.

The loose bottom container securing fittings should have a contact area fulfilling the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 14, 3.2 Materials and design 3.2.5.

Note 4. Containers that are certified to comply with ISO 1496-1:1990 including Amendment 4 may have the top corner casting and post compression increased to 942 kN.

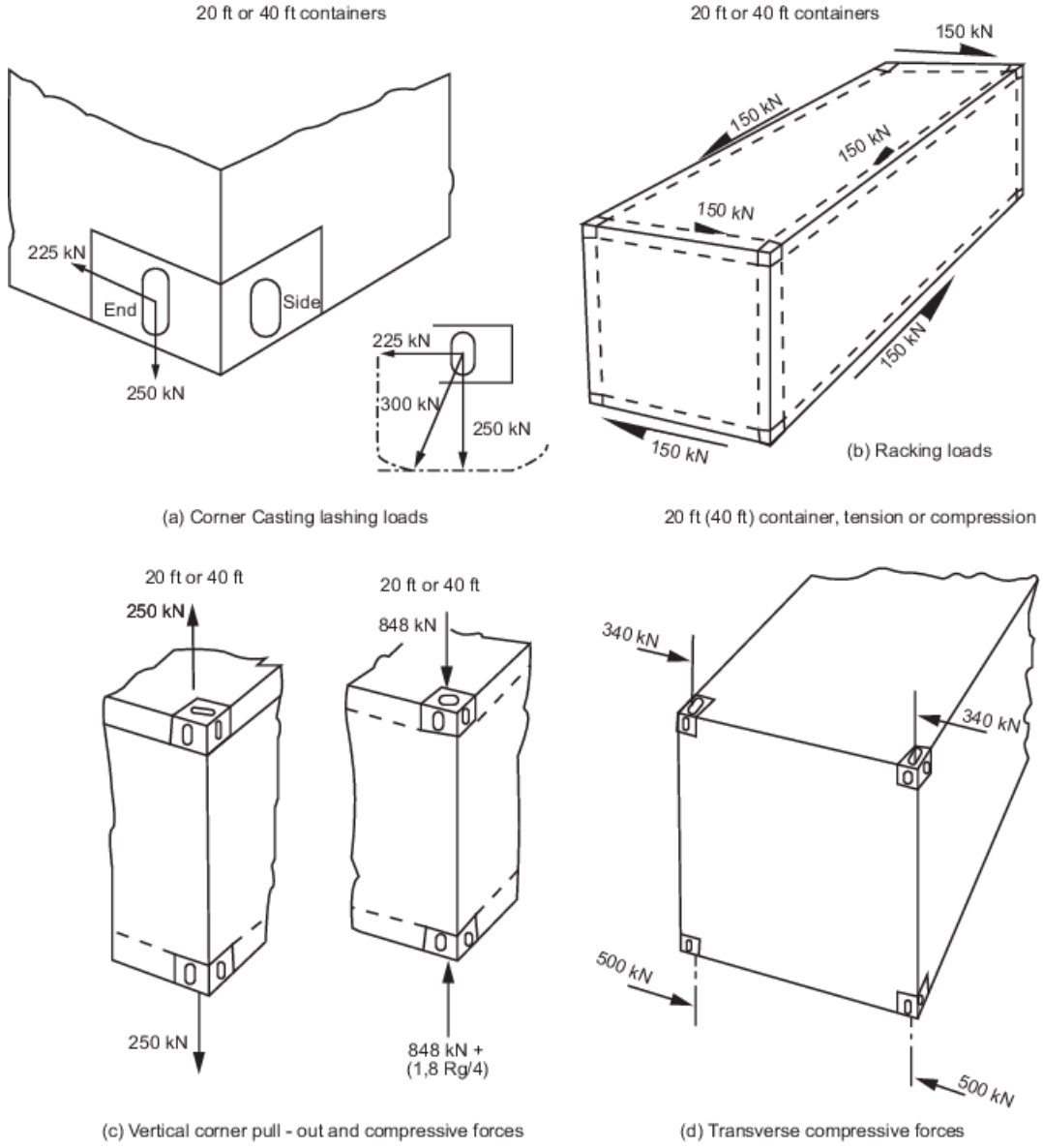
Table 14. 9. 7: Allowable compression forces for posts and corner castings of 40 ft and 45 ft containers in mixed stacks

Allowable force in kN




Note 1. *See* Notes 1 and 2 of Table 14. 9. 6: Allowable forces in containers in stacks with the same base size

Note 2. The allowable compression force for the bottom container casting may be increased by (1.8 Rg)/4

Figure 14. 9. 2: Allowable forces for 20 ft or 40 ft containers constructed to ISO 1496-1:1990 including Amendment Nos. 1, 2 and 3



PART

3

CHAPTER **14 Cargo Securing Arrangements**

SECTION **10 Surveys**

10. 1 Initial Survey

10. 1. 1 The following requirements are mandatory for fixed fittings, including cell guides, if fitted, on all ships. For ships having a **CCSA** class notation the requirements are also applicable for loose fittings.

10. 1. 2 The Surveyor is to be satisfied that the materials, workmanship and arrangements are satisfactory and in accordance with the requirements and the approved plans. Any items found not to be in accordance with the requirements or the approved plans, or any material, workmanship or arrangements found to be unsatisfactory are to be rectified.

10. 1. 3 A Register or plan is to be kept on board and up to date, and is to be made available to the Surveyor upon request. The Register or plan is to contain sufficient details to enable all fittings to be identified, including:

- a simple sketch;
- the name of the item;
- the number supplied;
- the manufacturer's mark or code; and
- the safe working load with the corresponding breaking load.

10. 1. 4 For container securing arrangements, a suitable Container Stowage Arrangement Plan is to accompany the Register. Where containers of types other than ISO containers are proposed to be carried, their stowage locations are to be clearly indicated on the plan.

10. 1. 5 The Register and stowage plans, if applicable, may be included in the Cargo Securing Manual.

10. 2 Periodical Surveys

10. 2. 1 For the requirements for Periodical Surveys, *See* Pt 1, Ch 3, 2.2 Annual Surveys and Pt 1, Ch 3, 5.3 Examination and testing.

PART

3

CHAPTER 15

Quality Assurance Scheme for the Hull Construction of Ships

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**1411**
	1. 1	Definitions	1411
	1. 2	Scope of the Quality Assurance Scheme	1412
SECTION 2	**Application**		**1413**
	2. 1	Certification of the shipyard	1413
SECTION 3	**Particulars to be submitted**		**1415**
	3. 1	Documentation and procedures	1415
	3. 2	Amendments	1415
SECTION 4	**Requirements of Parts 1 and 2 of the Scheme**		**1416**
	4. 1	General	1416
	4. 2	Policy statement	1416
	4. 3	Responsibility	1416
	4. 4	Management Representative	1416
	4. 5	Quality control and testing personnel	1416
	4. 6	Resources	1416
	4. 7	The Quality Management System	1417
	4. 8	Regulatory requirements	1417
	4. 9	Control of hull drawings	1417
	4. 10	Documentation and change control	1417
	4. 11	Purchasing data and receipt	1418
	4. 12	Owner supplied material	1418
	4. 13	Identification and traceability	1418
	4. 14	Fabrication control	1418
	4. 15	Control of inspection and testing	1418
	4. 16	Indication of inspection status	1419

4. 17 Inspection, measuring and test equipment 1419
4. 18 Non-conforming materials and corrective action 1419
4. 19 Protection and preservation of quality 1419
4. 20 Records 1419
4. 21 Internal audit and management review 1420
4. 22 Training 1420
4. 23 Sampling 1420
4. 24 Sub-contracted personnel, services and components 1420
SECTION 5 Additional requirements for Part 2 of the Scheme 1421
5. 1 Quality System procedures 1421
5. 2 Quality Plans 1421
5. 3 Material supplier approval 1421
5. 4 Identification and traceability 1421
5. 5 Fabrication control 1421
5. 6 Control of inspection and testing 1422
5. 7 Control of non-conforming materials and corrective action 1422
5. 8 Records 1422
5. 9 Training 1422
5. 10 Sub-contracted personnel, services and components 1422
SECTION 6 Initial assessment of the shipyard 1423
6. 1 General 1423
SECTION 7 Approval of the shipyard 1424
7. 1 General 1424
SECTION 8 Maintenance of approval 1425
8. 1 General 1425
SECTION 9 Suspension or withdrawal of approval 1426
9. 1 General 1426

PART

3

CHAPTER 15 **Quality Assurance Scheme for the Hull Construction of Ships**

SECTION 1 **General**

1. 1 Definitions

1. 1. 1 **Quality Assurance Scheme.** Asia Classification Society (hereinafter referred to as 'ACS') Quality Assurance requirements for the hull construction of ships are defined as follows:

- **Quality Assurance.** All activities and functions concerned with the attainment of quality including documentary evidence to confirm that such attainment is met.
- **Quality system.** The organisation structure, responsibilities, activities, resources and events laid down by Management that together provide organised procedures (from which data and other records are generated) and methods of implementation to ensure the capability of the shipyard to meet quality requirements.
- **Quality programme.** A documented set of activities, resources and events serving to implement the quality system of an organisation.
- **Quality plan**. A document derived from the quality programme setting out the specific quality practices, special processes, resources and activities relevant to a particular ship or series of sister ships. This document will also indicate the stages at which, as a minimum, direct survey and/or system monitoring will be carried out by the Classification Surveyor.
- **Quality control.** The operational techniques and activities used to measure and regulate the quality of hull construction to the required level.
- **Inspection.** The process of measuring, examining, testing, gauging or otherwise comparing the item with the approved drawings and the shipyard's written standards including those which have been agreed by ACS for the purposes of classification of the specific ship type concerned.
- **Assessment.** The initial comprehensive review of the shipyard's quality systems, prior to the granting of approval, to establish that all the requirements of these Rules have been met.
- **Audit**. A documented activity aimed at verifying by examination and evaluation that the applicable elements of the quality programme continue to be effectively implemented.
- **Hold point**. A defined stage of manufacture beyond which the work must not proceed until the inspection has been carried out by all the relevant personnel.
- **System monitoring.** The act of checking, on a regular basis, the applicable processes, activities and associated documentation that the Shipbuilder's quality system continues to operate as defined in the quality programme.

- **Special process.** A process where some aspects of the required quality cannot be assured by subsequent inspection of the processed material alone. Manufacturing special processes include welding, forming and the application of protective treatments. Inspection and testing processes classified as special processes include non-destructive examination and pressure and leak testing.

1. 2 Scope of the Quality Assurance Scheme

1. 2. 1 This Chapter specifies the minimum Quality System requirements for a shipyard to construct ships under ACS Quality Assurance Scheme.

1. 2. 2 For the purposes of this Chapter of the Rules, hull construction comprises the hull structure; containment systems, including those which are independent of the main hull structure; appendages; superstructures; deckhouses; and closing appliances all as required by the Rules.

1. 2. 3 Although the requirements of this Scheme are, in general, for steel ships of all welded construction, other materials for use in hull construction will be considered.

PART

3

CHAPTER 15 **Quality Assurance Scheme for the Hull Construction of Ships**

SECTION 2 **Application**

2. 1 Certification of the shipyard

2. 1. 1 ACS will give consideration to a shipyard's Quality Assurance System provided, at all times, there is full commitment by all the shipyard personnel to the implementation and maintenance of this system. On satisfactory completion of assessments and audits ACS will issue certificates of approval to the shipyard as indicated in Pt 3, Ch 15, 2.1 Certification of the shipyard 2.1.2.

2. 1. 2 ACS Quality Assurance Scheme comprises:

Part 1 The requirements of the Quality System for hull construction which are applicable to shipyards operating a quality programme but not necessarily constructing to ACS Class. Certificates of approval valid for three years will be issued, with intermediate audits at intervals of 6 months.

Part 2 The Quality System requirements for hull construction for application to ships under construction to ACS Class as part of the Special Survey. ACS particular requirements for construction of ships to its Class, and the continuous involvement in the hull construction process by a combination of direct survey and systems monitoring by ACS Surveyors, are provided for by Part 2. Where ACS considers that there is a stage in construction at which a high degree of direct inspection by the Surveyors is desirable, this stage will be described on the Part 2 Approval Certificate.

Certificates of approval for Part 2 will be valid for one year, and will be issued after satisfactory assessment/audit carried out at a suitable stage during construction to ACS Class. Part 1 certification will automatically be issued, or re-issued as applicable, on attainment of Part 2 approval.

2. 1. 3 Chemical carriers with cargo tank structure of material other than carbon manganese steel and the cargo containment system on ships for liquefied gases will be specially considered. The procedure relating to the construction of such structure on chemical carriers and liquefied gas containment systems is to be separately prescribed in the Quality Plan which will be subject to approval by ACS.

2. 1. 4 The Quality System at a shipyard will be examined for compliance with these Rules by the assessments and audits as laid down in Pt 3, Ch 15, 4 Requirements of Parts 1 and 2 of the Scheme, Pt 3, Ch 15, 5 Additional requirements for Part 2 of the Scheme and Pt 3, Ch 15, 6 Initial assessment of the shipyard. Initial and periodical approval of the system will be considered by the Committee on receipt of satisfactory assessment and audit reports.

2. 1. 5 All information and data submitted by a Shipbuilder for approval under this Scheme and for maintenance of approval will be treated by ACS in strict confidence and will not be disclosed to any third party without the prior written consent of the Shipbuilder.

2. 1. 6 A list of shipyards approved under the Scheme will be held in the *List of Shipyards Approved to the Requirements of the Quality Assurance Scheme.*

PART

3

CHAPTER 15 **Quality Assurance Scheme for the Hull Construction of Ships**

SECTION 3 **Particulars to be submitted**

3. 1 Documentation and procedures

3. 1. 1 Under either Part of the Scheme, the documentation to meet the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 15, 4 Requirements of Parts 1 and 2 of the Scheme is to be submitted. This documentation includes the Quality Manual, Quality Plans, documented procedures and work instructions.

3. 1. 2 Additionally, under Part 2 of the Scheme the documentation to meet the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 15, 5 Additional requirements for Part 2 of the Scheme is to be submitted for approval. Construction plans and all necessary particulars are also to be submitted for approval in accordance with the relevant requirements of the Rules. *See*Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.2 New construction surveys 3.2.1.

3. 2 Amendments

3. 2. 1 Any major changes to the documentation or procedures required by Pt 3, Ch 15, 4 Requirements of Parts 1 and 2 of the Scheme or Pt 3, Ch 15, 5 Additional requirements for Part 2 of the Scheme are to be re-submitted.

PART

3

CHAPTER 15 **Quality Assurance Scheme for the Hull Construction of Ships**

SECTION 4 **Requirements of Parts 1 and 2 of the Scheme**

4. 1 General

4. 1. 1 The requirements of this Section are applicable to shipyards *See*king approval under Parts 1 and 2 of the Scheme.

4. 2 Policy statement

4. 2. 1 A policy statement, signed by the chief executive of the shipyard concerned, confirming the full commitment of all levels of personnel in the shipyard to the implementation and sustained operation of quality assurance methods is to be included in the Quality Manual.

4. 3 Responsibility

4. 3. 1 Personnel responsible for functions affecting quality are to have defined responsibility and authority to identify, control and evaluate quality.

4. 4 Management Representative

4. 4. 1 The Shipbuilder is to appoint a Management Representative, who is to be independent of other functions unless specifically agreed otherwise by ACS, and who is to have the necessary authority and responsibility for ensuring that the requirements of the Scheme are complied with.

4. 4. 2 The Management Representative is to have the authority to stop production if serious quality problems arise.

4. 5 Quality control and testing personnel

4. 5. 1 The Shipbuilder is to utilise quality control and testing personnel whose performance and continued freedom of influence from production pressures is to be systematically confirmed by the Management Representative.

4. 6 Resources

4. 6. 1 Sufficient resources shall be provided by the shipyard to enable the requirements identified by the Quality Management System to be effectively implemented.

4. 7 The Quality Management System

4. 7. 1 The Shipbuilder is to establish, document and maintain an effective Quality Management System that will ensure and demonstrate that materials and consumables used, and working processes employed, conform to the requirements for hull construction.

4. 7. 2 **Quality Manual**. The basic documentation is to be in the form of a Quality Manual which sets out the general quality policies and which references the detailed procedures, standards, etc. and includes the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 15, 4.2 Policy statement to Pt 3, Ch 15, 4.24, Sub-contracted personnel, services and components and, where appropriate, Pt 3, Ch 15, 5.1 Quality System procedures to Pt 3, Ch 15, 5.10 Sub-contracted personnel, services and components.

4. 7. 3 **Procedures**. The Shipbuilder is to establish, document and maintain an adequate and defined control of the hull construction process comprising:

a. defined and documented controls, processes, procedures, tolerances, acceptance/rejection criteria and workmanship standards; and
b. the provision of Quality Plans for each ship or series of sister ships for the processes and procedures for manufacture, inspection and testing involved from receipt of material through to completion of the hull construction process.

4. 7. 4 **Work instructions**. The Shipbuilder is to develop and maintain clear and complete documented work instructions for the processes and standards involved in the construction of the hull. Such instructions are to provide directions to various levels of personnel.

4. 8 Regulatory requirements

4. 8. 1 The Shipbuilder is to establish that the requirements of all applicable Regulations are clearly specified and agreed with the Owner/Classification Society/Regulatory Authority. These Regulations are to be made available for all functions that require them and their suitability is to be reviewed.

4. 8. 2 The Shipbuilder is to establish a design verification procedure to ensure that the regulatory requirements have been incorporated into the design output.

4. 9 Control of hull drawings

4. 9. 1 The Shipbuilder is to establish, document and maintain a procedure for the submission to the Classification Society and other regulatory bodies of all the necessary drawings required for approval sufficiently early and in such a manner that the requirements of the Classification Society and other regulatory bodies can be included in the design before construction commences. This procedure is to include a provision which ensures that all amendments to approved drawings are incorporated in the working drawings and that design revisions are re-submitted for approval.

4. 10 Documentation and change control

4. 10. 1 The Shipbuilder is to establish a procedure to ensure that:

a. valid drawings, specifications, procedures, work instructions and other documentation necessary for each phase of the fabrication process are prepared;
b. all necessary documents and data are made readily available at all appropriate work, testing and inspection locations;
c. all amended drawings and changes to documentation are processed in a timely manner to ensure inclusion in the production process;
d. records are maintained of amendments and changes to documentation; and
e. provision is made for the prompt removal or immediate identification of all superseded drawings and documentation throughout the shipyard.

4. 11 Purchasing data and receipt

4. 11. 1 The Shipbuilder is to maintain purchasing documents containing a clear description of the materials ordered for use in hull construction and the standards to which material must conform, and the identification and certification requirements.

4. 11. 2 For the requirements for receiving inspection of purchased items *See*Pt 3, Ch 15, 4.15 Control of inspection and testing.

4. 12 Owner supplied material

4. 12. 1 The Shipbuilder is to have procedures for the inspection, storage and maintenance of Owner supplied materials and equipment.

4. 13 Identification and traceability

4. 13. 1 The Shipbuilder is to establish and maintain a procedure to ensure that materials and consumables used in the hull construction process are identified (by colour-coding and/or marking as appropriate) from arrival at the shipyard through to erection in such a way as to enable the type and grade to be readily recognised. The procedure is to ensure that the Shipbuilder has the ability to identify material in the completed vessel and ensure traceability to the mill sheets.

4. 14 Fabrication control

4. 14. 1 The Shipbuilder is to establish, document and maintain suitable procedures to ensure that fabrication and construction operations are carried out under controlled conditions. Controlled conditions are to include:

a. clearly documented work instructions defining material treatment, marking, cutting, forming, sub-assembly, assembly, erection, fitting of closing appliances, use of fabrication aids and associated fit-up, weld preparation, welding and dimensional control procedures;
b. criteria for workmanship and manufacturing tolerances. These are to be documented in a clear manner and made available to the appropriate workforce, and are to include acceptance/rejection criteria; and
c. documented instructions for the control of equipment and machines used in fabrication. These are to be made available to the appropriate workforce and supplied to individuals where necessary.

4. 14. 2 The Shipbuilder is to establish and control welding, non-destructive examination and painting which are part of the fabrication system, the equipment used in such processes and the environment in which they are employed. Operators of these special processes are to be properly qualified. Details of these processes are to be included in the relevant Quality Plans.

4. 14. 3 A list of approved welding procedures is to be maintained and made available to relevant personnel. Records of the results of testing for approval are also to be maintained. Lists of appropriately qualified welders are to be maintained. Procedures for distribution and recycling of welding consumables are to be implemented.

4. 14. 4 The Shipbuilder is to establish, document and maintain adequate maintenance schedules and standards for all equipment associated with the hull construction process.

4. 15 Control of inspection and testing

4. 15. 1 The Shipbuilder is to be responsible for ensuring that all incoming plates, sections, castings, components, fabrications and consumables and other materials used in the hull construction process are inspected or otherwise verified as conforming to purchase order requirements.

4. 15. 2 The Shipbuilder is to provide an inspection system at suitable stages of the fabrication process from the material delivery to the completion of hull construction. The inspection system is to confirm and record the inspections carried out.

4. 16 Indication of inspection status

4. 16. 1 The Shipbuilder is to establish and maintain a system for identifying the inspection status of structural components at appropriate stages of the fabrication process. This may include the direct marking of components. Records of inspection and measurements are to be identifiable to components to which they refer and be readily accessible to production and inspection personnel and to Classification Surveyors.

4. 17 Inspection, measuring and test equipment

4. 17. 1 The Shipbuilder is to be responsible for the control, calibration, and maintenance of the inspection, measuring and test equipment used in the fabrication and non-destructive examination of the hull structure.

4. 17. 2 The calibration system is to allow traceability back to appropriate National Standards. Where these do not exist the basis of calibration is to be defined.

4. 18 Non-conforming materials and corrective action

4. 18. 1 The Shipbuilder is to establish and define procedures to provide for:

a. the clear identification and segregation from production areas of all plates, sections, castings, components, fabrications, consumables and other materials which do not conform to the agreed specification; and
b. the initiation of authorised corrective or alternative action.

4. 19 Protection and preservation of quality

4. 19. 1 The Shipbuilder is to establish and maintain a procedure to control handling and preservation processes for both the material used in fabrication and the structural components at all stages of the fabrication process. This procedure is to ensure conformance to specified requirements and established standards.

4. 19. 2 Welding consumables are to be stored, handled and recycled according to maker's recommendations.

4. 20 Records

4. 20. 1 The Shipbuilder is to develop and maintain records that demonstrate achievement of the required quality and the effective operation of the Quality System. Records demonstrating sub-contractor achievement of these requirements are to be maintained. These records are to be retained and available for a defined period. These records are to include identification of materials and consumables used in fabrication, the number and class of defects found during fabrication and information regarding corrective action taken. Records of particular processes, e.g. plate surface preparation and priming, marking, cutting, forming, accuracy control, non-destructive examination, audits and all other records pertaining to the operation of the Quality System are also to be maintained.

4. 21 Internal audit and management review

4. 21. 1 Internal audits of the performance of all aspects of the systems relating to design, production and testing are to be carried out systematically by appointed staff and recorded under the authority of the Management Representative. These staff members will not normally audit functions for which they are directly responsible.

4. 21. 2 Using data obtained from the audits and any other available relevant information, management reviews are to take place at specified intervals or more frequently as deemed necessary in order to review the performance of the Quality System.

4. 21. 3 The Shipbuilder is to establish, document and maintain a procedure for corrective application of data feedback from previous construction, including previous ships during the guarantee period.

4. 21. 4 The Shipbuilder is to establish, document and maintain a procedure to provide for the analysis of departures from manufacturing standards, steel material scrapped, reworked or repaired during the fabrication and construction process in order to detect trends, investigate the cause to determine the action needed to correct the processes and work procedures, or to identify the further training of operators as appropriate.

4. 21. 5 Agreed improvements to the Quality System are to be implemented within a time scale appropriate to the nature of the improvement.

4. 22 Training

4. 22. 1 The Shipbuilder is to establish and maintain a system to identify training needs and ensure that all personnel involved in the fabrication, erection and quality-involved functions have adequate experience, training and qualifications. This requirement extends to sub-contractor personnel working within the shipyard. Records are to be available to the Classification Surveyor.

4. 23 Sampling

4. 23. 1 Any sampling processes used by the Shipbuilder are to be in accordance with specified or Statutory Requirements or to the satisfaction of the Classification Surveyor as applicable.

4. 24 Sub-contracted personnel, services and components

4. 24. 1 The requirements of the Scheme are applicable, as appropriate, to all sub-contractor personnel and sub-contracted services operating within the shipyard.

4. 24. 2 The requirements of the Scheme are not applicable to sub-contractor personnel or sub-contracted services operating at locations outside the shipyard. In these circumstances it will be necessary for inspections to be carried out by the ACS Surveyor using conventional survey methods.

PART

3

CHAPTER 15 **Quality Assurance Scheme for the Hull Construction of Ships**

SECTION 5 **Additional requirements for Part 2 of the Scheme**

5. 1 Quality System procedures

5. 1. 1 The procedures detailed in Pt 3, Ch 15, 4.7, The Quality Management System are to be submitted for approval.

5. 2 Quality Plans

5. 2. 1 Quality Plans for ships which are to be classed by ACS are to be submitted for approval well in advance of commencement of work, irrespective of any submissions that may have been made for sister ships under Part 1 of the Scheme. Such Quality Plans are to outline all of the manufacturing, testing and inspection operations to be performed by the Shipbuilder and by which personnel they will be carried out. The Quality Plans are then to be submitted to the ACS Surveyors who will indicate all the stages at which they will perform system monitoring, carry out direct inspection and participate in hold point inspections. These hold points will include, but not be limited to, the following:

a. Radiographs and other test records of non-destructive examinations as required for Classification purposes, *See*Ch 13, 2.12 Non-destructive examination of welds of the Rules for Materials.

b. The items described in Pt 3, Ch 1, 8 Inspection and workmanship relevant to the scope of this Chapter.

5. 2. 2 Notwithstanding what may have been agreed in the Quality Plans, the ACS Surveyors have the discretion to increase their involvement, *See also*Pt 3, Ch 15, 8.1 General 8.1.5.

5. 3 Material supplier approval

5. 3. 1 The Shipbuilder is to ensure that hull construction materials and consumables used are selected from manufacturers who are approved by ACS.

5. 4 Identification and traceability

5. 4. 1 The procedure required by Pt 3, Ch 15, 4.13 Identification and traceability 4.13.1 is to be submitted for approval.

5. 5 Fabrication control

5. 5. 1 The information required by Pt 3, Ch 15, 4.14 Fabrication control 4.14.1.b will be examined for acceptability.

5. 5. 2 Procedures for material treatment, forming, weld preparation and welding are to be submitted for approval.

5. 5. 3 Procedures required by Pt 3, Ch 15, 4.14 Fabrication control 4.14.3 are to be submitted to the ACS Surveyors for approval.

5. 6 Control of inspection and testing

5. 6. 1 The inspection stages incorporated into the Scheme are to include specific checks for fit-up and welding which are to be carried out at each sub-assembly, assembly, pre-erection and erection stage as well as self-checking by the operator. The number of recorded checks to each stage will be agreed with the ACS Surveyor, after consideration of documentary evidence of quality being achieved. Repairs, where required, are to be effected after each check. Collated Quality Control data to demonstrate the efficiency of the above self-check system are to be made available to the ACS Surveyor by the Shipbuilder. The Quality Plans referred to in Pt 3, Ch 15, 4.7 The Quality Management System 4.7.3.b provide the opportunity for the Shipbuilder and the ACS Surveyor to consider the structural design and ship type fully in order to determine the most efficient and effective inspection stages.

5. 7 Control of non-conforming materials and corrective action

5. 7. 1 All predetermined repair procedures are to be consistent with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 15, 4.7,, The Quality Management System 4.7.3 and are to be to the satisfaction of the ACS Surveyor. Where a defect is found, whether by the ACS Surveyor or through shipyard inspection, for which no agreed repair procedure exists, approval is to be obtained from the ACS Surveyor before any corrective action is effected.

5. 8 Records

5. 8. 1 The shipyard is to make data available to the ACS Surveyor, to demonstrate the efficiency of the inspection system, *See*Pt 3, Ch 15, 5.6 Control of inspection and testing 5.6.1.

5. 9 Training

5. 9. 1 The competence of the welding operators, non-destructive examination and other personnel involved in special processes and inspection are to be to the satisfaction of the ACS Surveyor.

5. 10 Sub-contracted personnel, services and components

5. 10. 1 The requirements of the Scheme are not applicable to those services operating at locations outside the shipyard. It will be necessary for inspections to be carried out by the ACS Surveyor using conventional survey methods.

5. 10. 2 The methods of control for the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 15, 4.24 Sub-contracted personnel, services and components 4.24.1 are to be submitted to the ACS Surveyor.

PART

3

CHAPTER 15 **Quality Assurance Scheme for the Hull Construction of Ships**

SECTION 6 **Initial assessment of the shipyard**

6. 1 General

6. 1. 1 In the first instance applications for approval under this Scheme will be considered on the recommendation of the local Surveyors.

6. 1. 2 After receipt and appraisal of the main quality documentation, an assessment of the shipyard is to be carried out by the Surveyors to examine all aspects of the Quality System applicable to hull construction.

6. 1. 3 The Surveyors will review the quality arrangements proposed by the Shipbuilder at the shipyard. They may advise as to how the proposed Quality System might be improved and where it is considered inadequate, advise how it might be revised to be acceptable to ACS.

6. 1. 4 For assessment to Part 1 of the Scheme, the Surveyors will review the Quality System in association with the quality documentation and will check that all aspects of the System are established and in accordance with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 15, 3 Particulars to be submitted.

6. 1. 5 For assessment of Part 2 of the Scheme, the Surveyors will confirm that the requirements given in Pt 3, Ch 15, 3 Particulars to be submitted have been fully implemented and are complied with by a detailed examination of work in progress and by confirming that workmanship and the quality level being consistently achieved are to their satisfaction.

PART

3

CHAPTER 15 **Quality Assurance Scheme for the Hull Construction of Ships**

SECTION 7 **Approval of the shipyard**

7. 1 General

7. 1. 1 If the initial assessment confirms that the shipyard's quality arrangements are satisfactory, the Committee will issue Part 1 or Part 2 and Part 1 of ACS Quality Assurance Approval Certificates as appropriate. Maintenance of approval will be subject to the provisions of Pt 3, Ch 15, 8 Maintenance of approval.

7. 1. 2 Approval by another organisation will not be accepted as sufficient evidence that the arrangements for hull construction comply with these requirements.

PART

3

CHAPTER **15** **Quality Assurance Scheme for the Hull Construction of Ships**

SECTION **8** **Maintenance of approval**

8. 1 General

8. 1. 1 For Part 2 of the Scheme, the arrangements approved at the shipyard are to be kept under review by the Surveyors to ensure that the approved Quality System is being maintained in a satisfactory manner. This is to be carried out by:

a. Regular and systematic audits by the ACS Surveyor.
b. Comprehensive Annual Audits. The audit team leader will be formally nominated by ACS.

8. 1. 2 Where a comprehensive audit cannot be carried out due to lack of a current building programme to Class, demonstration that the requirements of Part 1 of the Scheme are being maintained may be confirmed by audit review at intervals of six months, normally by the local Surveyors. Where necessary a comprehensive triennial audit would be carried out by a Surveyor formally nominated by ACS. The degree of re-assessment for re-approval at the recommencement of building to ACS Class would be at the discretion of the Committee.

8. 1. 3 All documentation, including reports, is to be available to the Surveyors.

8. 1. 4 Minor alterations in the approved procedures may be permitted provided that the Surveyors are advised and their prior concurrence obtained. Major alterations would need to be submitted for approval and may require an additional audit.

8. 1. 5 In a shipyard constructing ships to ACS Class, the following are applicable:

a. The ACS Surveyor is to be allowed access at all reasonable times to all records pertaining to quality and to all parts of the shipyard involved in the implementation and maintenance of the Quality Assurance Programme.
b. The ACS Surveyor is immediately to advise the Management Representative of any matter pertaining to the Quality System with which he is not satisfied.
c. When minor deficiencies in the approved procedures are discovered during audits, or if workmanship is considered unsatisfactory, the ACS Surveyor will apply more intensive auditing and inspection.
d. Notwithstanding any of the provisions of the Quality System, all work related to Classification of ships with ACS is to be to the satisfaction of the ACS Surveyor.

PART

3

CHAPTER **15** **Quality Assurance Scheme for the Hull Construction of Ships**

SECTION **9** **Suspension or withdrawal of approval**

9. 1 General

9. 1. 1 When the Surveyors have drawn attention to significant faults or deficiencies in the Quality System or its operation and these have not been rectified within a period of time acceptable to ACS, the approval of the system, together with the associated certification, will be withdrawn and the shipyard's name deleted from the *List of Shipyards Approved to the Requirements of the Quality Assurance Scheme*.

9. 1. 2 If a significant period of time elapses between such withdrawal and any application for reinstatement, the reapproval procedures, if agreed to by the Committee, may require a restructuring of the Quality Management System and will always require a complete re-examination as for an initial assessment.

PART

3

CHAPTER **16** **ACSPlus Guidelines for the Design, Construction and Lifetime Care of Ships**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**1429**
	1. 1	Application	1429
SECTION 2	**Construction monitoring**		**1430**
	2. 1	Construction Monitoring notation – CM	1430
SECTION 3	**Structural design assessment**		**1431**
	3. 1	Structural Design Assessment notation - SDA	1431
SECTION 4	**Fatigue design assessment**		**1432**
	4. 1	Fatigue Design Assessment notations – FDA, FDA plus, and FDA ICE and FDA SPR	1432
SECTION 5	**Whipping design assessment**		**1433**
	5. 1	Whipping Design Assessment notations – WDA1 and WDA2	1433
SECTION 6	**Ship Event Analysis**		**1434**
	6. 1	Ship Event Analysis	1434
SECTION 7	**Enhanced scantlings**		**1435**
	7. 1	Enhanced Scantlings - Descriptive note ES	1435
SECTION 8	**Corrosion protection of internal tanks and spaces**		**1436**
	8. 1	Protective coating systems in dedicated sea-water ballast tanks and double-side skin spaces – ACSPlus Notations AS(B) or AS(B,D)	1436
	8. 2	Protective coating systems in the cargo oil tanks of crude oil tankers – ACSPlus Notation AS(C)	1436
	8. 3	Alternative means of corrosion protection for cargo oil tanks of crude oil tankers – ACSPlus notation AS(C*)	1437
	8. 4	Protective coatings for void spaces on bulk carriers and oil tankers – ACSPlus Notation AS(V)	1437
	8. 5	Protective coating systems in dedicated seawater ballast tanks – Descriptive note PCWBT ()	1437
SECTION 9	**Ship Emergency Response Service**		**1438**

9. 1 Ship Emergency Response Service - Descriptive note SERS 1438
SECTION 10 Assessment of Ballast Water Management Plans 1439
10. 1 Ballast Water Management Plan – Descriptive note BWMP 1439
SECTION 11 Inventory of Hazardous Materials 1440
11. 1 Inventory of Hazardous Materials – Descriptive note IHM 1440
SECTION 12 Safe return to port and orderly evacuation 1441
12. 1 Safe Return to Port and Orderly Evacuation – Descriptive Note SRtP 1441

PART

3

CHAPTER 16 **ACSPlus Guidelines for the Design, Construction and Lifetime Care of Ships**

SECTION 1 **General**

1. 1 Application

1. 1. 1 Where one or more of ACSPlus Guidelines have been satisfactorily applied whether on a mandatory or voluntary basis, the associated ACSPlus notation or descriptive note as detailed in Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.17 or Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.8 Descriptive notes 2.8.2 will be assigned.

1. 1. 2 In addition to the ACSPlus Guidelines indicated in this Chapter, details of all ACSPlus Guidelines are given in the *ACSPlus Guidelines Overview* document. Details of machinery ACSPlus Guidelines can also be found in Pt 5, Ch 21 Requirements for Condition Monitoring and Condition-Based Maintenance Systems.

PART

3

CHAPTER 16 **ACSPlus Guidelines for the Design, Construction and Lifetime Care of Ships**

SECTION 2 **Construction monitoring**

2. 1 Construction Monitoring notation – CM

2. 1. 1 Extended controls on structural alignment, fit up and workmanship standards are to be applied in accordance with the *ACSPlus Construction Monitoring Guideline*, to areas of the ship structure that have been requested or have been shown by other ACSPlus Guidelines to be in need of particular attention. The ACSPlus Construction Monitoring Guideline is mandatory when one or more of the Guidelines indicated in Pt 3, Ch 16, 3 Structural design assessment, Pt 3, Ch 16, 4 Fatigue design assessment, or Pt 3, Ch 16, 5 Whipping design assessment have been applied, whether voluntarily or on a mandatory basis. Where the relevant Guidelines have been applied, the ACSPlus notation **CM** is to be assigned, *See also*Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.17.

PART

3

CHAPTER 16 **ACSPlus Guidelines for the Design, Construction and Lifetime Care of Ships**

SECTION 3 **Structural design assessment**

3. 1 Structural Design Assessment notation - SDA

3. 1. 1 Where specified in the Rules the ship structure is to be assessed using finite element modelling in accordance with the applicable ACSPlus SDA Guidelines. Where the relevant Guidelines have been applied whether on a voluntary or mandatory basis the ACSPlus notation **SDA** will be assigned, *See also*Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.17. In general the mandatory application criteria for implementation of one of the associated ACSPlus SDA Guidelines is as follows:

a. bulk carriers and oil tankers without a **CSR** notation greater than 190 m in length;
b. ore carriers equal to and greater than 150 m in length;
c. container ships with a beam greater than 32 m;
d. the primary structure of LNG ships fitted by membrane cargo tanks;
e. the primary structure of LNG ships fitted with independent Type B spherical cargo tanks;
f. the primary structure of LPG ships fitted with Independent Type A cargo tanks;
g. passenger ships where it is required to utilise the load carrying capability of the superstructure for longitudinal strength; or where it is considered that the superstructure will be subjected to a significant load from flexure of the hull girder; or, where a limited number of transverse bulkheads above the bulkhead deck are present to carry the racking response;
h. other ships of abnormal hull form or where the type, size and structural configuration demand; and
i. upon application of any of the following ACSPlus notations: **FDA, FDA plus(), FDA ICE, FDA SPR** and, **WDA1** and **WDA2**, *See also*Pt 3, Ch 16, 4 Fatigue design assessment and Pt 3, Ch 16, 5 Whipping design assessment.

In addition to the above, and where applicable, the structural capability to withstand dynamic loadings from partially filled tanks or the influence of thermal loadings may also be required to be assessed.

PART

3

CHAPTER 16 **ACSPlus Guidelines for the Design, Construction and Lifetime Care of Ships**

SECTION 4 **Fatigue design assessment**

4. 1 Fatigue Design Assessment notations – FDA, FDA plus, and FDA ICE and FDA SPR

4. 1. 1 Where specified in the Rules the fatigue performance of the hull structure is to be assessed in accordance with the applicable ACSPlus FDA Guidelines. Where an appraisal has been made whether on a voluntary or mandatory basis of the fatigue performance of the hull structure in accordance with the relevant Guidelines and found to comply with the requirement of 20 years fatigue life based on the 100A1 Fatigue Wave Environment (World-wide) trading pattern the ACSPlus notation **FDA** will be assigned, *See also*Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.17. In general the ACSPlus FDA Guideline is mandatory for all bulk carriers and oil tankers without a **CSR** notation and of length greater than 190 m or where the type, size and structural configuration demand. The ACSPlus notation **FDA** is not applicable to ships approved using the IACS Common Structural Rules.

4. 1. 2 Where an appraisal is requested for a higher level of fatigue performance of the hull structure than that made for the assignment of the ACSPlus notation **FDA**, the relevant Guidelines for the application of the ACSPlus notation **FDA plus()** are to be applied. The appraisal may be made based upon a specific trading pattern, which is to be expressed in terms of either a Worldwide trading route, as defined in the relevant ACSPlus Guidelines, or a North Atlantic trading route (that utilises the wave data from IACS Recommendation 34). The ACSPlus notation **FDA plus()** is to be followed by the number of years that the vessel has been assessed for the specific trading pattern shown in brackets, for either the Worldwide or North Atlantic trading routes, denoted by **WW**and **NA** respectively, e.g. **FDA plus(25, NA)**. This Guideline is applicable to all ships including those built in accordance with the IACS Common Structural rules.

4. 1. 3 Where an appraisal is requested for the fatigue performance of the hull structure when navigating through ice, the relevant ACSPlus FDA ICE Guidelines are to be applied. Where the relevant Guidelines have been applied the ACSPlus notation **FDA ICE** will be assigned, *See also* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.17.

4. 1. 4 Where specified in the Rules an appraisal is to be made of the fatigue performance of the hull structure taking into account of the effects due to the continuous vibrational response of the hull girder in waves (springing) in accordance with the relevant ACSPlus Guidelines. Where the relevant Guidelines have been applied the ACSPlus notation **FDA SPR** will be assigned, *See also* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.17.

PART

3

CHAPTER 16 **ACSPlus Guidelines for the Design, Construction and Lifetime Care of Ships**

SECTION 5 **Whipping design assessment**

5. 1 Whipping Design Assessment notations – WDA1 and WDA2

5. 1. 1 Where specified in the Rules an appraisal is to be made of the dynamic response of the hull structure due to wave impact loads (Whipping) in accordance with the relevant ACSPlus Guidelines. Where the relevant Guidelines have been applied the ACSPlus notation Whipping Design Assessment Level 1 **WDA1** will be assigned, *See also* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.17.

5. 1. 2 Where specified in the Rules an appraisal is to be made of the dynamic response of the hull structure due to wave impact loads (Whipping) in accordance with the relevant ACSPlus Guidelines. Where the relevant Guidelines have been applied the ACSPlus notation Whipping Design Assessment Level 2**WDA2** will be assigned, *See also* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull).

PART

3

CHAPTER **16** **ACSPlus Guidelines for the Design, Construction and Lifetime Care of Ships**

SECTION **6** **Ship Event Analysis**

6. 1 Ship Event Analysis

6. 1. 1 At the Owner's request and in order to enhance safety and awareness on board during ship operation, the *ACSPlus Ship Event Analysis Guideline* applies to all ships where it is intended to provide a hull surveillance system for:

a. Monitoring of the ship's hull girder stresses and motions, and warning the ship's personnel that these stress levels or the frequency and magnitude of slamming motions are approaching a level where corrective action is advisable.

b. Monitoring of the ship's hull girder stresses and local ice loads when the ship is navigating in ice, and warning the ship's personnel that the load levels or the frequency and magnitude of ice impacts are approaching a level where corrective action is advisable.
The descriptive note is to be appended by HSS followed by the number of strain gauges fitted shown in brackets. In addition the extension of one or more of the following associated supplementary characters may be shown, e.g. **ACSPlus(SEA(HSS-2,VDR))**:

- **L** The display of the relevant information in the cargo control area;
- **M** The display and recording of the ship's motion;
- **N** The facility to display and record navigational information;
- **VDR** An interface with the ship's voyage data recorder system to enable the recording of hull stress, ship motion and hull pressure information.

PART

3

CHAPTER **16** **ACSPlus Guidelines for the Design, Construction and Lifetime Care of Ships**

SECTION **7** **Enhanced scantlings**

7. 1 Enhanced Scantlings - Descriptive note ES

7. 1. 1 Where scantlings in excess of the approved Rule minimum are fitted at defined locations, a descriptive note **ES**, Enhanced Scantlings. For example, the note **ES+1** will indicate that an extra 1 mm has been fitted to the hull envelope plating (i.e. deck, side and bottom).

PART

3

CHAPTER **16** **ACSPlus Guidelines for the Design, Construction and Lifetime Care of Ships**

SECTION **8** **Corrosion protection of internal tanks and spaces**

8. 1 Protective coating systems in dedicated sea-water ballast tanks and double-side skin spaces – ACSPlus Notations AS(B) or AS(B,D)

8. 1. 1 For ships that are required to comply with IMO *Resolution MSC.215(82) - Performance Standard for Protective Coatings for Dedicated Seawater Ballast Tanks in all Types of Ships and Double-Side Skin Spaces of Bulk Carriers - (Adopted on 8 December 2006)*, all dedicated sea-water ballast tanks for all ship types and double-side skin spaces of bulk carriers are to have type approved coating systems applied in accordance with ACSPlus Guideline *Anti-Corrosion Systems Notation*, *See* Ch 15 Corrosion Prevention of the Rules for Materials and Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.17 for the list of ACSPlus AS notations.

8. 1. 2 **AS(B)** or **AS(B,D)** notations indicate that the ship's sea water ballast tanks and double-side skin spaces of bulk carriers are coated with approved coating systems according to IMO *Resolution MSC.215(82) - Performance Standard for Protective Coatings for Dedicated Seawater Ballast Tanks in all Types of Ships and Double-Side Skin Spaces of Bulk Carriers - (Adopted on 8 December 2006)*.

8. 2 Protective coating systems in the cargo oil tanks of crude oil tankers – ACSPlus Notation AS(C)

8. 2. 1 For ships that are required to comply with IMO *Resolution MSC.291(87) – Adoption of Amendments to the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea, 1974, as Amended – (Adopted on 21 May 2010)* , Owners may request to receive the optional notation **AS(C)**, which indicates that the cargo oil tanks are protected in compliance with IMO *Resolution MSC.288(87) – Performance Standard for Protective Coatings for Cargo Oil Tanks of Crude Oil Tankers – (Adopted on 14 May 2010)* , and are to have type approved coating systems applied in accordance with ACSPlus Guideline *Anti-Corrosion System Notation* and Ch 15 Corrosion Prevention of the Rules for Materials.

8. 2. 2 **AS(C)** notation indicates that the ship's cargo oil tanks are protected using approved materials in accordance with IMO *Resolution MSC.291(87) – Adoption of Amendments to the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea, 1974, as Amended – (Adopted on 21 May 2010)* .

8. 2. 3 When in compliance with IMO *Resolution MSC.291(87) – Adoption of Amendments to the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea, 1974, as Amended – (Adopted on 21 May 2010)* , but the **AS(C)** notation is not requested, this compliance may be indicated on the applicable certification, Ch 15 Corrosion Prevention of the Rules for Materials.

8. 3 Alternative means of corrosion protection for cargo oil tanks of crude oil tankers – ACSPlus notation AS(C*)

8. 3. 1 For ships that are required to comply with the IMO *Resolution MSC.291(87) – Adoption of Amendments to the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea, 1974, as Amended – (Adopted on 21 May 2010)* , as amended, Owners may request to receive the optional notation **AS(C*)**, which indicates that all cargo tanks are protected in accordance with IMO *Resolution MSC.289(87) – Performance Standard for Alternative Means of Corrosion Protection for Cargo Oil Tanks of Crude Oil Tankers – (Adopted on 14 May 2010)* , by application of corrosion resistant steel, *See*Ch 3, 1.3 Corrosion resistant steels for cargo oil tanks of crude oil tankers of the Rules for Materials and ACSPlus Guideline *Anti-Corrosion System Notation*.

8. 3. 2 **AS(C*)** notation indicates that the ship's cargo oil tanks are protected using approved materials in accordance with IMO *Resolution MSC.291(87) – Adoption of Amendments to the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea, 1974, as Amended – (Adopted on 21 May 2010)* , as amended.

8. 3. 3 When in compliance with IMO *Resolution MSC.291(87) – Adoption of Amendments to the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea, 1974, as Amended – (Adopted on 21 May 2010)* , but the **AS(C*)** notation is not requested, this compliance may be indicated on the applicable certificate.

8. 4 Protective coatings for void spaces on bulk carriers and oil tankers – ACSPlus Notation AS(V)

8. 4. 1 For ships within the scope of IMO *Resolution MSC.244(83) - Adoption of Performance Standard for Protective Coatings for Void Spaces on Bulk Carriers and Oil Tankers - (Adopted on 5 October 2007)*, Owners may request to receive the optional notation **AS(V)**, which indicates that the void spaces are protected according to the *ACSPlus Guideline Anti- Corrosion System Notation*.

8. 4. 2 **AS(V)** notation indicates that the ship's void spaces are protected in accordance with IMO *Resolution MSC.244(83) - Adoption of Performance Standard for Protective Coatings for Void Spaces on Bulk Carriers and Oil Tankers - (Adopted on 5 October 2007)*.

8. 4. 3 When in compliance with IMO *Resolution MSC.244(83) - Adoption of Performance Standard for Protective Coatings for Void Spaces on Bulk Carriers and Oil Tankers - (Adopted on 5 October 2007)*, but the **AS(V)** notation is not requested, this compliance may be indicated on the applicable certificate.

8. 5 Protective coating systems in dedicated seawater ballast tanks – Descriptive note PCWBT ()

8. 5. 1 For ships that are not required to comply with IMO *Resolution MSC.215(82) - Performance Standard for Protective Coatings for Dedicated Seawater Ballast Tanks in all Types of Ships and Double-Side Skin Spaces of Bulk Carriers - (Adopted on 8 December 2006)* , all sea-water ballast spaces having boundaries formed by the hull envelope are to have a corrosion protection coating applied, *See* ACSPlus Guideline *Protective Coatings in Water Ballast Tanks (PCWBT)*. The month and year that the coating is approved is to be appended to the descriptive note within brackets.

8. 5. 2 Where requested, a descriptive note **PCWBT ()** (Protective Coating in Water Ballast Tanks) indicates that all sea-water ballast spaces having boundaries formed by the hull envelope have a corrosion protection coating applied, and that the coating remains efficient and is maintained in good condition. The month and year that the coating is approved is to be appended to the descriptive note within brackets.

PART

3

CHAPTER **16** **ACSPlus Guidelines for the Design, Construction and Lifetime Care of Ships**

SECTION **9** **Ship Emergency Response Service**

9. 1 Ship Emergency Response Service - Descriptive note SERS

9. 1. 1 This service, offered by ACS, provides a rapid computer assisted analysis of a damaged ship's stability and damaged longitudinal strength in the event of a casualty to the ship.

9. 1. 2 Where an Owner adopts this service, the descriptive note **SERS**, `Ship is registered with ACS Ship Emergency Response Service', will be assigned.

PART

3

CHAPTER **16** **ACSPlus Guidelines for the Design, Construction and Lifetime Care of Ships**

SECTION **10** **Assessment of Ballast Water Management Plans**

10. 1 Ballast Water Management Plan – Descriptive note BWMP

10. 1. 1 Compliance with this Guideline is optional. A ship meeting the requirements of this Guideline will be eligible for an appropriate **BWMP ()** descriptive note. The extension of one or more of the following associated supplementary characters may be shown in brackets, detailing the method(s) used:

- **S** Sequential method
- **F** Flow through method
- **D** Dilution method
- **T** Treatment method.

PART

3

CHAPTER **16** **ACSPlus Guidelines for the Design, Construction and Lifetime Care of Ships**

SECTION **11** **Inventory of Hazardous Materials**

11. 1 Inventory of Hazardous Materials – Descriptive note IHM

11. 1. 1 Compliance with this Guideline is optional. A ship meeting the requirements of this Guideline will be eligible for the descriptive note **IHM**.

PART

3

CHAPTER **16** **ACSPlus Guidelines for the Design, Construction and Lifetime Care of Ships**

SECTION **12** **Safe return to port and orderly evacuation**

12. 1 Safe Return to Port and Orderly Evacuation – Descriptive Note SRtP

12. 1. 1 Compliance with this Guideline is optional. A ship meeting the requirements of this Guideline will be eligible for a **SRtP** Descriptive Note.

PART

4

Ship Structures (Ship Types)

CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1	**General Cargo Ships**		**1447**
	SECTION 1	General	1451
	SECTION 2	Materials and protection	1453
	SECTION 3	Longitudinal strength	1454
	SECTION 4	Deck structure	1458
	SECTION 5	Shell envelope plating	1476
	SECTION 6	Shell envelope framing	1481
	SECTION 7	Single bottom structure	1493
	SECTION 8	Double bottom structure	1495
	SECTION 9	Bulkheads	1500
CHAPTER 2	**Ferries, Roll On-Roll Off Ships and Passenger Ships**		**1508**
	SECTION 1	General	1513
	SECTION 2	Longitudinal strength	1518
	SECTION 3	Deck structure	1525
	SECTION 4	Shell envelope plating	1529
	SECTION 5	Shell envelope framing	1536
	SECTION 6	Double bottom	1542
	SECTION 7	Peak, watertight and deep tank bulkheads	1544
	SECTION 8	Bow doors and inner doors	1545
	SECTION 9	Subdivision structure on vehicle deck	1555
	SECTION 10	Masts and standing rigging	1561
	SECTION 11	Miscellaneous openings	1565
	SECTION 12	External glass balustrades	1572
	SECTION 13	Direct calculation	1575
CHAPTER 3	**Tugs**		**1576**
	SECTION 1	General	1580

SECTION 2 Longitudinal strength 1582
SECTION 3 Floors in single bottoms 1583
SECTION 4 Panting and strengthening of bottom forward 1584
SECTION 5 Machinery casings 1585
SECTION 6 Freeing arrangements 1586
SECTION 7 Towing arrangements 1587
SECTION 8 Fenders 1591
SECTION 9 Escort operation, performance numeral and trials 1592
CHAPTER 4 Offshore Support Vessels 1596
SECTION 1 General 1600
SECTION 2 Longitudinal strength 1604
SECTION 3 Hull envelope plating 1605
SECTION 4 Hull envelope framing 1607
SECTION 5 Lifting appliances, equipment integration and foundations 1608
SECTION 6 Miscellaneous openings 1610
SECTION 7 Engine exhaust outlets 1611
SECTION 8 Transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk 1612
SECTION 9 Enhanced weather protection 1618
CHAPTER 5 Barges and Pontoons 1622
SECTION 1 General 1625
SECTION 2 Longitudinal strength 1628
SECTION 3 Hull envelope plating 1629
SECTION 4 Hull envelope framing 1631
SECTION 5 Strengthening of bottom forward 1634
SECTION 6 Bottom strengthening for loading and unloading aground 1635
SECTION 7 Watertight bulkheads 1636
SECTION 8 Towing fittings 1637
SECTION 9 Void spaces 1639
CHAPTER 6 Trawlers and Fishing Vessels 1640
SECTION 1 General 1641
SECTION 2 Protection 1643
SECTION 3 Longitudinal strength 1644
SECTION 4 Deck structure 1645
SECTION 5 Shell envelope plating 1646
SECTION 6 Shell envelope framing 1647

SECTION 7 Watertight bulkheads 1648
SECTION 8 Stern ramp, and cruiser and transom sterns 1649
SECTION 9 Strengthening of bottom forward 1650
CHAPTER 7 Bulk Carriers 1651
SECTION 1 General 1656
SECTION 2 Materials and protection 1663
SECTION 3 Longitudinal strength 1664
SECTION 4 Deck structure 1667
SECTION 5 Shell envelope plating 1669
SECTION 6 Shell envelope framing 1670
SECTION 7 Topside tank structure 1678
SECTION 8 Double bottom structure 1681
SECTION 9 Hopper side tank structure 1692
SECTION 10 Bulkheads 1695
SECTION 11 Direct calculation 1710
SECTION 12 Steel hatch covers 1711
SECTION 13 Hatch coamings 1721
SECTION 14 Forecastles 1724
CHAPTER 8 Container Ships 1726
SECTION 1 General 1731
SECTION 2 Materials 1734
SECTION 3 Longitudinal strength 1739
SECTION 4 Deck structure 1740
SECTION 5 Shell envelope plating 1743
SECTION 6 Shell envelope framing 1744
SECTION 7 Double bottom structure 1746
SECTION 8 Longitudinal bulkheads 1749
SECTION 9 Transverse bulkheads 1750
SECTION 10 Hatch coamings and support for hatch covers 1751
SECTION 11 Hatch covers 1753
SECTION 12 Strengthening for wave impact loads 1758
SECTION 13 Container stowage systems 1761
SECTION 14 Direct calculation 1762
SECTION 15 Requirements for ships with large deck openings 1765
SECTION 16 Longitudinal strength calculations 1774
CHAPTER 9 Double Hull Oil Tankers 1789

SECTION 1 General 1795
SECTION 2 Materials and protection 1807
SECTION 3 Longitudinal strength 1809
SECTION 4 Hull envelope plating 1811
SECTION 5 Hull framing 1818
SECTION 6 Inner hull, inner bottom and longitudinal oiltight bulkheads 1825
SECTION 7 Transverse oiltight bulkheads 1831
SECTION 8 Non-oiltight bulkheads 1835
SECTION 9 Primary members supporting longitudinal framing 1839
SECTION 10 Construction details and minimum thickness 1845
SECTION 11 Ships for alternate carriage of oil cargo and dry bulk cargo 1853
SECTION 12 Cargo temperatures 1857
SECTION 13 Access arrangements and closing appliances 1858
SECTION 14 Direct calculations 1860
CHAPTER 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers 1861
SECTION 1 General 1865
SECTION 2 Primary members supporting longitudinal framing 1866
SECTION 3 Primary members supporting transverse side framing 1875
SECTION 4 Primary members supporting oiltight bulkheads 1877
SECTION 5 Primary members supporting non-oiltight bulkheads 1879
SECTION 6 Trunked construction 1880
SECTION 7 Construction details and minimum thickness 1884
CHAPTER 11 Ore Carriers 1890
SECTION 1 General 1894
SECTION 2 Materials and protection 1898
SECTION 3 Longitudinal strength 1899
SECTION 4 Hull envelope plating 1900
SECTION 5 Hull framing 1901
SECTION 6 Double bottom construction 1903
SECTION 7 Longitudinal bulkheads 1904
SECTION 8 Transverse bulkheads 1906
SECTION 9 Primary structure in wing tanks 1907
SECTION 10 Structural details 1911
SECTION 11 Direct calculations 1912
SECTION 12 Forecastles 1913
SECTION 13 Single pass loading 1914

CHAPTER 12 Dredging and Reclamation Craft 1917
SECTION 1 General 1922
SECTION 2 Longitudinal strength 1927
SECTION 3 Deck structure 1930
SECTION 4 Shell envelope plating 1931
SECTION 5 Shell envelope framing 1933
SECTION 6 Bottom structure 1936
SECTION 7 Bottom strengthening for operating aground 1939
SECTION 8 Spoil space and well structure 1941
SECTION 9 Watertight bulkheads 1947
SECTION 10 Exposed casings 1948
SECTION 11 Dredging machinery seats and dredging gear 1949
SECTION 12 Ladder wells 1950
SECTION 13 Fenders 1951
SECTION 14 Rudders 1952
SECTION 15 Spoil space weirs and overflows 1953
SECTION 16 Scuppers and sanitary discharges and side scuttles 1954
SECTION 17 Split hopper dredgers and barges 1955
SECTION 18 Direct calculations 1959

PART

4

CHAPTER **1 General Cargo Ships**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**1451**
	1. 1	Application	1451
	1. 2	Structural configuration	1451
	1. 3	Class notations	1451
	1. 4	Information required	1452
	1. 5	Symbols and definitions	1452
SECTION 2	**Materials and protection**		**1453**
	2. 1	Materials and grades of steel	1453
	2. 2	Protection of steelwork	1453
SECTION 3	**Longitudinal strength**		**1454**
	3. 1	General	1454
	3. 2	Fast cargo ships	1454
SECTION 4	**Deck structure**		**1458**
	4. 1	General	1458
	4. 2	Deck plating	1458
	4. 3	Deck stiffening	1458
	4. 4	Deck supporting structure	1463
	4. 5	Deck openings	1464
SECTION 5	**Shell envelope plating**		**1476**
	5. 1	General	1476
	5. 2	Keel	1476
	5. 3	Bottom shell and bilge	1477
	5. 4	Side shell	1477
SECTION 6	**Shell envelope framing**		**1481**
	6. 1	General	1481
	6. 2	Longitudinal stiffening	1481

6. 3 Transverse stiffening 1482
6. 4 Primary supporting structure 1482
SECTION 7 Single bottom structure 1493
7. 1 General 1493
7. 2 Girders and floors 1494
SECTION 8 Double bottom structure 1495
8. 1 Symbols and definitions 1495
8. 2 General 1495
8. 3 Girders 1496
8. 4 Inner bottom plating and stiffening 1497
8. 5 Floors 1498
SECTION 9 Bulkheads 1500
9. 1 General 1500
9. 2 Watertight and deep tank bulkheads 1500
9. 3 Shaft tunnels 1501

PART

4

CHAPTER **1 General Cargo Ships**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 1. 3. 1: Fast cargo ships 1455
Table 1. 4. 1: Strength/weather deck plating 1459
Table 1. 4. 2: Lower deck plating 1459
Table 1. 4. 3: Strength/weather deck longitudinals 1460
Table 1. 4. 4: Cargo and accommodation deck longitudinals 1461
Table 1. 4. 5: Strength/weather, cargo and accommodation deck beams 1462
Table 1. 4. 6: Deck girders, transverses and hatch beams 1465
Table 1. 4. 7: Pillars 1466
Table 1. 4. 8: Non-watertight pillar bulkheads 1468
Table 1. 4. 9: Cantilever beams 1469
Table 1. 5. 1: Bar and plate keels 1476
Table 1. 5. 2: Bottom shell and bilge plating 1477
Table 1. 5. 3: Side shell plating 1478
Table 1. 6. 1: Shell framing (longitudinal) 1482
Table 1. 6. 2: Shell framing (longitudinal) 1484
Table 1. 6. 3: Shell framing (transverse) 1486
Table 1. 6. 4: Primary structure 1490
Table 1. 7. 1: Single bottom girders and floors 1493
Table 1. 9. 1: Watertight and deep tank bulkhead scantlings 1501
Table 1. 9. 2: Symmetrical corrugations and double plate bulkheads (additional requirements) 1504
Table 1. 9. 3: Bulkhead end constraint factors 1505

PART

4

CHAPTER **1 General Cargo Ships**

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 1. 3. 1: Derivation of bow shape factor 1455
Figure 1. 3. 2: Plate factor, K_C 1457
Figure 1. 4. 1: Hatch end beam arrangements 1473
Figure 1. 4. 2: Deck cantilevers 1473
Figure 1. 4. 3: Section moduli of hatch end beams 1474
Figure 1. 4. 4: Deck supporting structure 1474
Figure 1. 4. 5: Elliptical and parabolic corners 1475
Figure 1. 4. 6: Insert plates for large openings 1475
Figure 1. 6. 1: Framing depths for various structural configurations 1490
Figure 1. 9. 1: End connections 1504

PART

4

CHAPTER 1 General Cargo Ships

SECTION 1 General

1. 1 Application

1. 1. 1 This Chapter applies to sea-going ships designed primarily for the carriage of general cargo. The requirements are intended to cover the midship region, but may also apply with suitable modification to the taper regions forward and aft in way of cargo spaces.

1. 2 Structural configuration

1. 2. 1 The Rules provide for a basic structural configuration of a multi-deck or a single deck hull which includes a double bottom, or a single bottom arrangement. The structural configuration may also include a single or multiple arrangement of cargo hatch openings, and side tanks.

1. 2. 2 Individual consideration may be required where the ship incorporates double hull construction, large deck openings or other special design features.

1. 2. 3 Longitudinal framing is, in general, to be adopted at the strength deck outside line of openings and at the bottom, but special consideration will be given to proposals for transverse framing in these regions.

1. 3 Class notations

1. 3. 1 In general, ships complying with the requirements of this Chapter will be eligible to be classed **100A1**.

1. 3. 2 Where a ship has been specially strengthened for heavy cargoes in accordance with the requirements listed in Pt 4, Ch 7, 8.2 Carriage of heavy cargoes, it will be eligible to be classed **100A1 strengthened for heavy cargoes**.

1. 3. 3 The following additional notations and annotations can be appended to the main class notation giving further detailed description of the loading criteria incorporated into the design:

a. **RD** (Relative density):
Where a ship has tanks appraised for a maximum permissible relative density greater than 1.025, the notation **RD(specified tank names, density)** may be added.

b. **WDL(+)** (Weather deck load):
The notation **WDL(+)** may be added. If requested, the maximum permissible weather deck load and extent can be identified in the notation, e.g. **WDL(5.0 t/m^2 from Aft to Fr. 26)** .

1. 3. 4 Ships intended to be operated only in suitable areas or conditions which have been agreed by the Committee, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.6 to 2.3.10, will receive individual consideration on the basis of the Rules with respect to the environmental conditions agreed for the design basis and approval.

1. 3. 5 The Regulations for classification and the assignment of class notations are given in Pt 1, Ch 2 Classification Regulations, to which reference should be made.

1. 4 Information required

1. 4. 1 For the information required, *See* Pt 3, Ch 1, 5 Information required. In addition the following are to be supplied:

a. Cargo loadings on decks, hatchways and inner bottom if these are to be in excess of Rule. Where concentrated or point loads occur, their magnitude and points of application are to be defined.

b. The maximum pressure head in service on tanks, also details of any double bottom tanks interconnected with side tanks.

c. Details of the proposed depths of any partial fillings where water ballast or liquid cargo is intended to be carried in the holds, or large deep tanks.

1. 5 Symbols and definitions

1. 5. 1 The following symbols and definitions are applicable to this Chapter unless otherwise stated:

L, B, D, T and V	=	as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6 Definitions
k_L, k	=	higher tensile steel factor, *See* Pt 3, Ch 2, 1 Materials of construction
e	=	base of natural logarithms 2.7183
l	=	overall length of stiffening member, or pillar, in metres, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3 Structural idealisation
l_e	=	effective length of stiffening member, or pillar, in metres, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3 Structural idealisation
t	=	thickness of plating, in mm
s	=	spacing of secondary stiffeners, in mm
A	=	cross-sectional area of stiffening member, in cm^2
C	=	stowage rate, in m^3/tonne, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 5 Design loading
C_w	=	a wave head in metres
	=	$7.71 \times 10^{-2} L e^{-0.0044}$ L where L is not to be taken greater than 227
I	=	inertia of stiffening member, in cm^4, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3 Structural idealisation
S	=	spacing or mean spacing of primary members, in metres
Z	=	section modulus of stiffening member, in cm^3, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3 Structural idealisation
ρ	=	relative density (specific gravity) of liquid carried in a tank but is not to be taken less than 1.025.

PART

4

CHAPTER **1** **General Cargo Ships**

SECTION **2** **Materials and protection**

2. 1 Materials and grades of steel

2. 1. 1 Materials and grades of steel are to comply with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 2 Materials.

2. 2 Protection of steelwork

2. 2. 1 For the protection of steelwork, in addition to the requirements specified in Pt 3, Ch 2, 3 Corrosion protection the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 2.2 Protection of steelwork 2.2.2 are to be complied with.

2. 2. 2 Ceiling is to be laid on the inner bottom under cargo hatchways, but may be omitted provided that the inner bottom plating is increased by 2 mm. In any ship which is regularly to be discharged by grabs, ceiling is to be laid on the inner bottom, and the inner bottom plating increased by 3 mm. Alternatively, the ceiling may be omitted provided that the inner bottom plating is increased in thickness by a minimum of 5 mm. The ceiling is to be 76 mm thick in softwood or 65 mm thick in hardwood, and is to be laid at right angles to the inner bottom stiffening. Where it is intended to use plywood or other forms of ceiling of an approved type instead of planking, the thickness will be considered for each case. Ceiling is also to be laid over bilges, and fitted with portable sections which are to be readily removable. The spaces between the frames at the top of the bilge ceiling are to be closed by steel plates, wood chocks, cement or other suitable means. Inner bottom manhole covers or fittings, where projecting above the inner bottom plating, are to be provided with a steel protection coaming around each manhole, and a wood or steel cover is to be fitted.

2. 2. 3 Where plated decks are sheathed with wood or approved compositions, the minimum thicknesses given in Pt 4, Ch 1, 4.2 Deck plating, Pt 3, Ch 5, 2 Deck structure and Pt 3, Ch 6, 2 Deck structure may be reduced by 10 per cent for a 50 mm sheathing thickness or five per cent for 25 mm, with intermediate values in proportion. The steel deck is to be coated with a suitable material in order to prevent corrosive action, and the sheathing or composition is to be effectively secured to the deck. *See also* the fire protection requirements relating to deck coverings in the relevant *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea* Regulations or Pt 6, Ch 3, 4 Refrigeration plant, pipes, valves and fittings as applicable.

2. 2. 4 Where cargo battens or equivalent are fitted in the holds of dry cargo ships, the descriptive note `SF' *(Sparring Fitted)* will be entered in the *Register Book.* The battens, when fitted, are to extend from above the upper part of the bilge to the underside of beam knees in the holds, and in all cargo spaces in the 'tween decks and superstructures, up to the underside of beam knees. Wood cargo battens are to be not less than 50 mm in thickness, and the clear space between adjacent rows is, in general, not to exceed 230 mm. The dimensions and spacing of battens made of other materials will be considered. Nets may be adopted in lieu of battens, and other alternative proposals will be specially considered. For arrangements in way of a refrigerated hold, *See* Pt 6, Ch 3, 4 Refrigeration plant, pipes, valves and fittings.

PART

4

CHAPTER 1 General Cargo Ships

SECTION 3 Longitudinal strength

3. 1 General

3. 1. 1 Longitudinal strength calculations are to be made in accordance with the requirements given in Pt 3, Ch 4 Longitudinal Strength.

3. 1. 2 The requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4, 8.3 Loading instrument regarding loading instruments are not applicable to general cargo ships under 120 m.

3. 2 Fast cargo ships

3. 2. 1 The hull section modulus for ships of length, L, between 120 m, and 170 m, and maximum service speed greater than 17.5 knots in association with a bow shape factor, ψ, of more than 0.15, is to comply with the requirements of this sub-Section.

3. 2. 2 The bow shape factor is defined as:

$$\psi = \frac{100\sum A_b}{L^{1.5}B}$$

Where

a_0 = projection of upper deck at waterline (F.P.), in metres

a_1 = projection of upper deck at waterline ($0.1L$ from F.P.), in metres

a_2 = projection of upper deck at waterline ($0.2L$ from F.P.), in metres

b = projection of upper deck at waterline (F.P. to bow line), in metres

$$\sum A_b = \frac{ba_0}{2} + 0.1L(a_1 + a_2)$$

See also Figure 1. 3. 1: Derivation of bow shape factor.

3. 2. 3 For longitudinal strength requirements, the Rule minimum hull midship section modulus and the distribution of longitudinal material in the forward half-length will be considered. In general, the following requirements are to be complied with:

a. The vertical hull midship section modulus, about the horizontal neutral axis, at deck is to be not less than $331Lk\Sigma A_b$ cm^3, or that required by Pt 3, Ch 4, 5 Hull bending strength, whichever is the greater. $\sum A_b$ is defined in Pt 4, Ch 1, 3.2 Fast cargo ships 3.2.2.

b. The horizontal hull midship section modulus, about a vertical axis through the ship centreline, is to be not less than $32.5L^2D$ cm^3.

c. In the forward half-length, the hull section modulus is not to be a lesser percentage of the midship value than that shown in Table 1. 3. 1: Fast cargo ships.

d. Any load or ballast condition resulting in a sagging still water bending moment, or a hogging moment less than 80 per cent of the Rule value of still water bending moment, will be specially considered with a view to minimising the compressive stresses in the deck in waves.

Figure 1. 3. 1: Derivation of bow shape factor

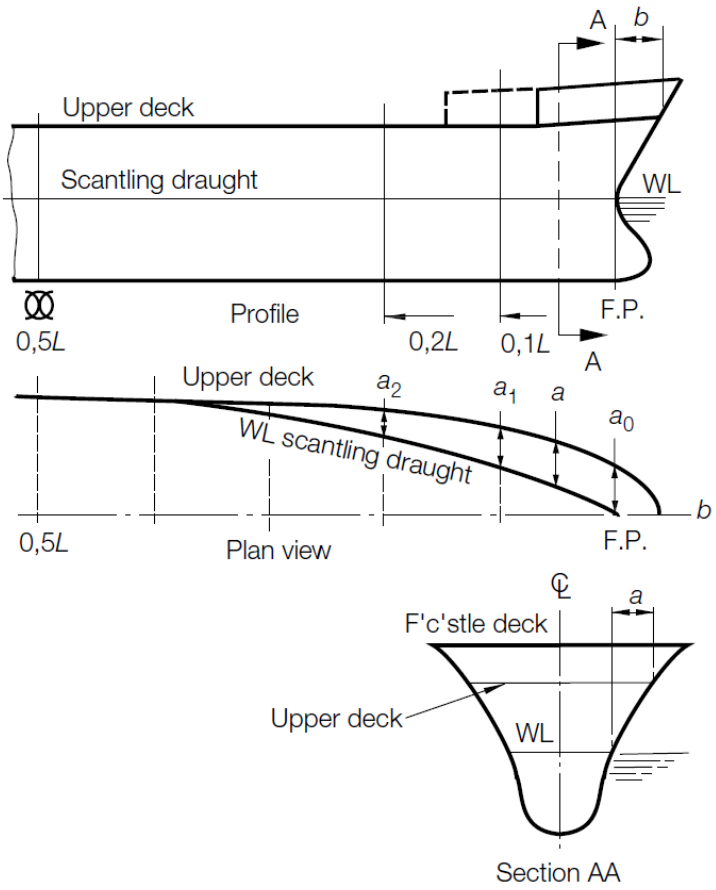


Table 1. 3. 1: Fast cargo ships

Position	Percentage of midship vertical modulus(modulus about horizontal axis)	Percentage of midship horizontal modulus(modulus about vertical axis)
Station 10 (mid-L_{pp})	100	100
12	98	87
14	95	62
16	81	38
18	44	17
20 (F.P.)	0	0

Note *1.* Intermediate values to be obtained by interpolation.

Note *2.* L_{pp} as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6 Definitions.

3. 2. 4 For local strength, in general the following requirements are to be complied with:

a. Longitudinal deck stiffening is to be carried forward to the fore peak bulkhead or as far forward as practical. Where a long forecastle is fitted, the buckling strength of the proposed structure will be specially considered.

b. Substantial web frames in way of deck transverses are to be fitted in the forward half-length. Scantlings of webs and frames are to be based on actual lengths, not 'tween deck heights, and collars are to be fitted at ends of members in way of high shear.

c. Scantlings of bottom structure in forward part are to be specially considered.

d. Deck and side shell panels forward of 0.5*L* from F.P. are to be examined to establish the critical buckling stress from the following formula:

$$\sigma_\varepsilon = \frac{\pi^2 E}{12(1-v^2)}\left(\frac{t}{s}\right)^2 K_c N/mm^2$$

Where

s = length of shorter edge, in mm

t = thickness of plating, in mm

E = Young's modulus, in N/mm^2

K_c = a factor depending on aspect ratio and boundary restraint

= 4 for longitudinally stiffened plating or as shown in Figure 1. 3. 2: Plate factor, KC for transversely stiffened plating

ν = Poisson's ratio (0.3 for steel and aluminium alloy).

Where the buckling stresses, as evaluated, exceed 50 per cent of yield stress, the actual critical buckling stress is given by:

$$\sigma_{ac} = \sigma_0\left(1 - \frac{\sigma_0}{4\sigma_c}\right) \text{N/mm}^2$$

Where

σ_{ac} = corrected critical buckling stress, in N/mm^2

σ_o = yield stress, in N/mm^2

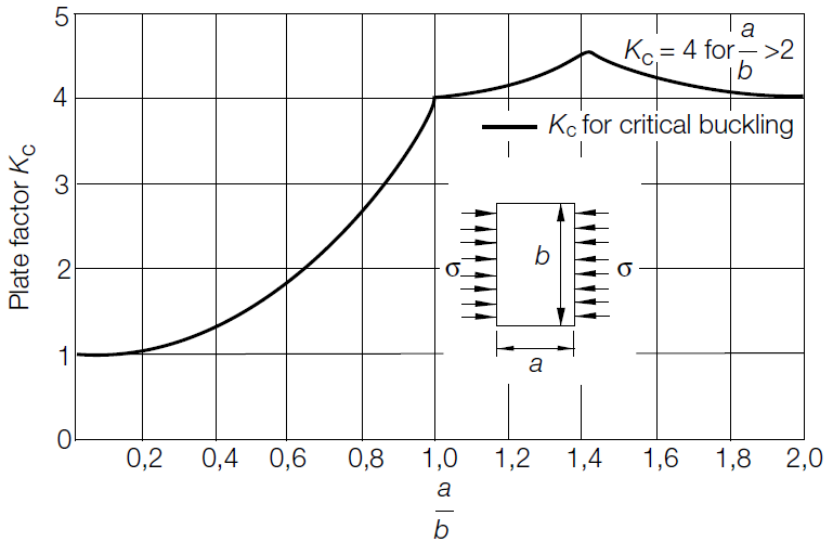
The critical buckling stress from the above formulae must be not less than 176.6 N/mm^2 within 0.4*L* amidships, nor less than 147.2 N/mm^2 for the deck forward of this, nor less than 117.7 N/mm^2 for the side shell between the first and second deck forward of 0.5*L* from F.P. For higher tensile steel plating, the above permissible stresses are to be divided by *k*.

e. In order to obtain the necessary critical buckling strength, either of the following is to be applied:

i. plate thickness to be increased, or

ii. panel aspect ratio to be altered by the fitting of additional panel stiffening.

Figure 1. 3. 2: Plate factor, K_C



PART

4

CHAPTER **1** **General Cargo Ships**

SECTION **4** **Deck structure**

4. 1 General

4. 1. 1 Longitudinal framing is, in general, to be adopted at the strength deck outside line of openings, but special consideration will be given to proposals for transverse framing. Requirements are given in this Section for longitudinal and transverse framing systems of all deck structure, except decks in way of erections. For erection decks, *See* Pt 3, Ch 8 Superstructures, Deckhouses and Bulwarks.

4. 2 Deck plating

4. 2. 1 The thickness of strength/weather deck plating in the midship region is to comply with the requirements of Table 1. 4. 1: Strength/weather deck plating. Outside the line of openings the thickness is also to be that necessary to give the hull section modulus required by Pt 3, Ch 4, 5 Hull bending strength.

4. 2. 2 The thickness of lower deck plating in the midship region is to comply with the requirements of Table 1. 4. 2: Lower deck plating.

4. 2. 3 The thickness of the strength deck stringer plate is to be increased by 20 per cent at the ends of bridges, poop and forecastle.

4. 2. 4 The deck plating thickness and supporting structure are to be suitably reinforced in way of cranes, masts, derrick posts and deck machinery.

4. 2. 5 Where long, wide hatchways are arranged on lower decks, it may be necessary to increase the deck plating thickness to ensure effective support for side framing.

4. 3 Deck stiffening

4. 3. 1 The scantlings of strength/weather deck longitudinals in the midship region are to comply with the requirements of Table 1. 4. 3: Strength/weather deck longitudinals.

4. 3. 2 The lateral and torsional stability of longitudinals together with web and flange buckling criteria are to be verified in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 4, 7 Hull buckling strength.

4. 3. 3 The scantlings of cargo and accommodation deck longitudinals are to comply with the requirements of Table 1. 4. 4: Cargo and accommodation deck longitudinals.

4. 3. 4 End connection of longitudinals to bulkheads are to provide adequate fixity and, so far as is practicable, direct continuity of longitudinal strength. Where L exceeds 215 m, the deck longitudinals are to be continuous through transverse structure, including bulkheads, but alternative arrangements will be considered. Higher tensile steel deck longitudinals are to be continuous irrespective of the ship length.

4. 3. 5 The scantlings of strength/weather, cargo and accommodation deck transverse beams are to comply with the requirements of Table 1. 4. 5: Strength/weather, cargo and accommodation deck beams.

4. 3. 6 The end connections of beams are to be in accordance with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 10, 3 Secondary member end connections.

Table 1. 4. 1: Strength/weather deck plating

Location	Minimum thickness, in mm	
	Longitudinal framing	Transverse framing
(1) Outside line of openings (*See* Notes 1 and 2)	The greater of the following: (a) $t = 0.001_{s1}(0.059L_1 + 7)\sqrt{\frac{F_D}{k_L}}$ (b) $t = 0.00083_{s1}\sqrt{LK} + 2.5$	The greater of the following: (a) $t = 0.001_{s1}f_1(0.083L_1 + 10)\sqrt{\frac{F_D}{k_L}}$ (b) $t = 0.001_{s1}\sqrt{LK} + 2.5$
(2) Inside line of openings (*See* Note 2)	(b) $t = 0.00083_{s1}\sqrt{LK} + 2.5$ but not less than 6.5	$t = 0.00083_{s1}\sqrt{LK} + 1.5$ but not less than 6.5
(3) In way of the crown of a tank	$t = 0.004sf\sqrt{\frac{pkh_4}{1.025}} + 3.5$ or as (1) or (2), whichever is the greater, but not less than 7.5 mm where $L \geq 90$m, or 6.5 mm where $L < 90$ m	

Symbols

L, k_L, k, ρ, s, S as defined in Pt 4, Ch 1, 1.5 Symbols and definitions 1.5.1

f = $1.1 - \frac{s}{2500}$ but not to be taken greater than 1.0

f_1 = $\frac{1}{1 + \left(\frac{s}{1000S}\right)^2}$

h_4 = tank head, in metres, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 3, 5 Design loading

s_1 = s but is not to be taken less than the smaller of $470 + \frac{L}{0.6}$ mm or 700 mm

F_D = as defined in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.7 Local reduction factors

L_1 = L but need not be taken greater than 190 m.

Note *1.* The thickness derived in accordance with (1) is also to satisfy the buckling requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4, 7 Hull buckling strength.

Note *2.* The deck thickness is to be not less than the basic deck end thickness for taper as given in Pt 3, Ch 3 Structural Design, Table 3. 2. 1: Taper requirements for hull envelope

Table 1. 4. 2: Lower deck plating

Location	Minimum thickness, in mm	
	Second deck	Third or platform decks
(1) Outside line of openings	$t = 0.012_{s1}\sqrt{k}$ but not less than 6.5	$t = 0.01_{s1}\sqrt{k}$ but not less than 6.5

(2) Inside line of openings	t=0.01$s_1\sqrt{k}$ but not less than 6.5
(3) In way of the crown or bottom of a tank	$t = 0.004sf\sqrt{\frac{\rho kh_4}{1.025}} + K_1$ but not less than 7.5 where L≥90 m, or 6.5 where L<90 m
(4) Plating forming the upper flange of underdeck girders	Clear of deck openings, $t=\sqrt{\frac{A_f}{1.8k}}$ In way of deck openings, t=1.1$\sqrt{\frac{A_f}{1.8k}}$ Minimum breadth, b = 760 mm
Symbols	
s, S, k, ρ, as defined in Pt 4, Ch 1, 1.5 Symbols and definitions 1.5.1 b = breadth of increased plating, in mm f = 1.1 – $\frac{s}{25005}$ but not to be taken greater than 1.0 h_4 = tank head, in metres, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 3, 5 Design loading s_1 = s but is not to be taken less than the smaller of 470 + $\frac{L}{0.6}$ mm or 700 mm A_f = girder face area, in cm^2 K_1 = 2.5 mm at bottom of tank. = 2.5 mm at bottom of tank = 3.5 mm at crown of tank **Note** Where a deck loading exceeds 43.2kN/m^2(4.4 tonne-f /m^2), the thickness of plating will be specially considered.	

Table 1. 4. 3: Strength/weather deck longitudinals

Location	Modulus, in cm^3	Inertia, in cm^4
(1) In way of dry cargo spaces, *See* Note 1		
(a) Outside line of openings	$Z = 0.043skh_{T1}le^2F_1$	—
(b) Inside line of openings	$Z = sk(400h_1 + 0.005(l_eL_2)^2 \times 10^{-4}$	—
(2) In way of the crown or bottom of a tank	$Z = \frac{0.0113\rho skh_4l_e^2}{b}$ or as (1)(a) or (1)(b) above, whichever is the greater	$I = \frac{2.3}{k}l_eZ$
(3) In way of superstructure	To be specially considered	—
Symbols		

L, s, k_L, k, ρ as defined in Pt 4, Ch 1, 1.5 Symbols and definitions 1.5.1

b = 1.4 for rolled or built sections

= 1.6 for flat bars

c_1 = $\frac{60}{225 - 165F_D}$

d_w = depth of longitudinal, in mm

F_1 = $0.25c_1$

h_1 = weather head, in metres, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 3, 5 Design loading

h_4 = tank head, in metres, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 3, 5 Design loading

l_e = as defined in Pt 4, Ch 1, 1.5 Symbols and definitions 1.5.1, but not to be taken less than 1.5 m

F_D = as defined in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.7 Local reduction factors

h_{T1} = $\frac{L_1}{56}$ for Type `B-60' ships

= the greater of $\frac{L_1}{70}$ or 1.20 m for Type `B' ships

L_1 = L but need not be taken greater than 190 m

L_2 = L but need not be taken greater than 215 m

Note *1.* Where weather decks are intended to carry deck cargo and the load is in excess of 8.5 kN/m^2 (0.865 tonne-f/m^2), the scantlings of longitudinals may be required to be increased to comply with the requirements for location (1) Table 1. 4. 4: Cargo and accommodation deck longitudinals using the equivalent design head, for specified cargo loading, for weather decks given in Table 3. 5. 1: Design heads and permissible cargo loadings in Pt 3, Ch 3 Structural Design .

Note *2.* The buckling requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4, 7 Hull buckling strength are to be complied with. The ratio of the web depth d_w to web thickness t is to comply with the following requirements: (a)Built up profiles and rolled angles:

$\frac{d_w}{t} \leq 60\sqrt{k_L}$ Flat bars:

$\frac{d_w}{t} \leq 18\sqrt{k_L}$ when continuous at bulkheads

$\frac{d_w}{t} \leq 15\sqrt{k_L}$ when non-continuous at bulkheads

Note *3.* The web depth of longitudinals, d_w is to be not less than 60 mm.

Table 1. 4. 4: Cargo and accommodation deck longitudinals

Location	Modulus, in cm^3	Inertia, in cm^4
(1) Cargo decks		
(a) L ≥ 90 m	$Z = sk\ (5.9\ L_1 + 25\ h_2 le^2) \times 10^{-4}$	—
(b) L < 90 m	$Z = 0.005skh_2le^2$	—
(2) Accommodation decks		
(a) L ≥ 90 m	$Z = sk(5.1L_1 + 25h_3l_e^2) \times 10^{-4}$	—
(b) L < 90 m	$Z = 0.00425skh_3l_e^2$ *See* Note 1	—

(3) In way of the crown or bottom of a tank	As in (1) or (2) as applicable, or $Z = \frac{0.0113\rho skh_4 l_e^2}{\gamma}$ whichever is the greater	$I = \frac{2.3}{k} l_e Z$

Symbols

L, s, k, ρ as defined in Pt 4, Ch 1, 1.5 Symbols and definitions 1.5.1

d_w = web depth of longitudinal, in mm, *See* Note 2

h_2 = cargo head, in metres, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 3, 5 Design loading

h_3 = accommodation head, in metres, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 3, 5 Design loading

h_4 = tank head, in metres, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 3, 5 Design loading

l_e = as defined in Pt 4, Ch 1, 1.5 Symbols and definitions 1.5.1, but not to be taken less than 1.5 m

L_1 = *L* but need not be taken greater than 190 m

γ = 1.4 for rolled or built sections

= 1.6 for flat bars

Note *1.* The section modulus of accommodation deck longitudinals need not be taken greater than the value required by location (1)(a), in Table 1. 4. 3: Strength/weather deck longitudinals.

Note *2.* The web depth of longitudinals, d_w, to be not less than 60 mm.

Table 1. 4. 5: Strength/weather, cargo and accommodation deck beams

Location	Modulus, in cm^3	Inertia, in cm^4
(1) Strength/weather decks	The lesser of the following: a) $Z = (K_1K_2TD + K_3B_1sh_1le^2)k \times 10^4$ (b) $Z = 2K_3B_1skh_1le^2 \times 10^{-4}$	—
(2) Cargo decks	$Z = (400K_1TD + 38.8sh_2l_e^2)k \times 10^{-4}$	—
(3) Accommodation decks	$Z = (530K_1TD + 38.8\text{sh } 3l_e^2)k \times 10^{-4}$	—
(4) In way of the crown or bottom of a tank	As (1), (2) or (3) as applicable, or $Z = \frac{0.0113\text{ps}kh_4 l_{2_e}}{\gamma}$ whichever is the greater	$I = \frac{2.3}{k} l_e Z$
Symbols		

B, D, T, s, k, ρ as defined in Pt 4, Ch 1, 1.5 Symbols and definitions 1.5.1

d_w = depth of beam, in mm

h_1 = weather deck head in metres, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 5 Design loading

h_2 = cargo head in metres, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 5 Design loading

h_3 = accommodation head in metres, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 5 Design loading

h_4 = tank head in metres, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 5 Design loading

l_e as defined in Pt 4, Ch 1, 1.5 Symbols and definitions 1.5.1, but to be taken as not less than 1.83 m

B_1 = B, but need not be taken greater than 21.5 m

K_1 = a factor dependent on the number of decks (including poop and bridge superstructures) at the position of the beam under consideration:

= 1 deck 20.0

= 2 decks 13.3

= 3 decks 10.5

= 4 or more 9.3

K_2 a factor dependent on the location of the beam:

= at short bridge and poops 133

= elsewhere 530

K_3 a factor dependent on the location of the beam:

= elsewhere 3.3

= span adjacent to the ship side 3.6

γ 1.4 for rolled or built sections

= 1.6 for flat bars

Note *1.* Where weather decks are intended to carry deck cargo and the load is in excess of 8.5 kN/m^2, the scantlings of beams may be required to be increased to comply with the requirements for location (2) using the equivalent design head, for specified cargo loading, for weather decks given in Table 3. 5. 1: Design heads and permissible cargo loadings.

Note *2.* The web depth of beams, d_w, is to be not less than 60 mm.

4. 4 Deck supporting structure

4. 4. 1 **Girders and transverses** supporting deck longitudinals and beams, also hatch side girders and hatch end beams, are to comply with the requirements of Table 1. 4. 6: Deck girders, transverses and hatch beams. In general, transverses, webs or frames of increased scantlings, *See* Table 1. 6. 3: Shell framing (transverse), are to be arranged in way of hatch end beams and deck transverses, and these are to be in line with the double bottom floors where practicable. Equivalent transverse ring scantling arrangements will be considered.

4. 4. 2 **Transverses** supporting deck longitudinals are, in general, to be spaced not more than 3.8 m apart where the length, L, is 100 m or less, and $(0.006L + 3.2)$m apart where L is greater than 100 m.

4. 4. 3 The web thickness, stiffening arrangements and end connection of primary supporting members are to be in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 10, 4 Construction details for primary members.

4. 4. 4 Where a girder is subject to concentrated loads, such as pillars out of line, the scantlings are to be suitably increased. Also, where concentrations of loading on one side of the girder may occur, the girder is to be adequately stiffened against torsion. Reinforcements may be required in way of localised areas of high stress.

4. 4. 5 **Pillars** are to comply with the requirements of Table 1. 4. 7: Pillars.

4. 4. 6 Pillars are to be fitted in the same vertical line wherever possible, and effective arrangements are to be made to distribute the load at the heads and heels of all pillars. Where pillars support eccentric loads, they are to be strengthened for the additional bending moment imposed upon them.

4. 4. 7 Tubular and hollow square pillars are to be attached at their heads to plates supported by efficient brackets, in order to transmit the load effectively. Doubling or insert plates are to be fitted to the inner bottom under the heels of tubular or hollow square pillars, and to decks under large pillars. The pillars are to have a bearing fit and are to be attached to the head and heel plates by continuous welding. At the heads and heels of pillars built of rolled sections, the load is to be well distributed by means of longitudinal and transverse brackets.

4. 4. 8 In double bottoms under widely spaced pillars, the connections of the floors to the girders, and of the floors and girders to the inner bottom, are to be suitably increased. Where pillars are not directly above the intersection of plate floors and girders, partial floors and intercostals are to be fitted as necessary to support the pillars. Manholes are not to be cut in the floors and girders below the heels of pillars. Where longitudinal framing is adopted in the double bottom, equivalent stiffening under the heels of pillars is to be provided, and where the heels of pillars are carried on a tunnel, suitable arrangements are to be made to support the load.

4. 4. 9 Where pillars are fitted inside tanks or under watertight flats, the tensile stress in the pillar and its end connections is not to exceed 108 N/mm^2 at the test heads. In general, such pillars should be of built sections, and end brackets may be required.

4. 4. 10 Pillars are to be fitted below deckhouses, windlasses, winches, capstans and elsewhere where considered necessary.

4. 4. 11 **Non-watertight pillar bulkheads** are to comply with the requirements of Table 1. 4. 8: Non-watertight pillar bulkheads.

4. 4. 12 **Cantilevers** and their supporting frames are to comply with the requirements of Table 1. 4. 9: Cantilever beams.

4. 5 Deck openings

4. 5. 1 The corners of main cargo hatchways in the strength deck within 0.5L amidships are to be elliptical, parabolic or rounded, with a radius generally not less than $\frac{1}{24}$of the breadth of the opening. Rounded corners are to have a minimum radius of 300 mm if the deck plating extends inside the coaming, or 150 mm if the coamings are welded to the inner edge of the plating in the form of a spigot. Where elliptical corners are arranged, the major axis is to be fore and aft, the ratio of the major to minor axis is to be not less than 2 to 1 nor greater than 2.5 to 1, and the minimum half-length of the major axis is to be defined by l_1 in Figure 1. 4. 5: Elliptical and parabolic corners. Where parabolic corners are arranged, the dimensions are also to be as shown in Figure 1. 4. 5: Elliptical and parabolic corners.

4. 5. 2 Where the corners of large openings in the strength deck are parabolic or elliptical, insert plates are not required. For other shapes of corner, insert plates of the size and extent shown in Figure 1. 4. 6: Insert plates for large openings will, in general, be required. The required thickness of the insert plate is to be not less than 25 per cent greater than the adjacent deck thickness, outside line of openings with a minimum increase of 4 mm. The increase need not exceed 7 mm.

4. 5. 3 Welded attachments close to or on the free edge of the hatch corner plating are to be avoided (e.g. welded protection strips or shedder plates) and the butt welds of corner insert plates to the adjacent deck plating are to be located well clear of butts in the hatch coaming.

4. 5. 4 Openings in the strength deck outside the line of hatch openings are to be kept to the minimum number consistent with operational requirements. Openings are to be arranged clear of hatch corners and, so far as possible, clear of one another. Where, within 0.4L amidships, deck openings have a total breadth or shadow area breadth, in one transverse section that exceeds the limitation given in Pt 3, Ch 3, 3.4 Calculation of hull section modulus 3.4.6 and Pt 3, Ch 3, 3.4 Calculation

of hull section modulus 3.4.7, compensation will be required to restore the excess. This is generally to be arranged by increasing the deck plate thickness, but other proposals will be considered. Plate panels in which openings are cut are to be adequately stiffened, where necessary, against compression and shear buckling. The corners of all openings are to be well rounded and the edges smooth.

Table 1. 4. 6: Deck girders, transverses and hatch beams

Location and arrangements	Modulus, in cm^3	Inertia, in cm^4
(1) Girders and transverses in way of dry cargo spaces and clear of hatch openings:	*See also* Note	
(a) supporting up to three point loads	Z to be determined from calculations using Note and stress $\frac{123.5}{k}$N/mm^2 $\left(\frac{12.6}{\mathrm{k}}\mathrm{kgf/mm2}\right)$and assuming fixed ends.	$I = \frac{1.85}{k} l_e Z$
(b) supporting four or more point loads or a uniformly distributed load	$Z = 5.85\mathrm{kS_1Hg}l_e^2$	
(2) Hatch side girders in way of dry cargo spaces at weather decks (with deep coamings):		
(a) supporting up to three point loads	Z to be determined from calculations using Note and stress $\frac{100.4}{k}$N/mm^2 $\left(\frac{10.25}{\mathrm{k}}\mathrm{kgf}/mm^2\right)$ and assuming fixed ends	$I = \frac{2.3}{k} l_e Z$
(b) supporting four or more point loads or a uniformly distributed load	$Z = 5.85kS_1H_gl_e^2$	
(3) Hatch side girders in way of dry cargo spaces at lower decks (without deep coamings):		
(a) supporting up to three point loads	Z to be determined from calculations using stress$\left(\frac{112.5}{\mathrm{k}}\right)$ N/mm$^2\left(\frac{11.5}{\mathrm{k}}\mathrm{kgf}/mm^2\right)$	$I = \frac{2.8}{k} l_e Z$
(b) supporting four or more point loads or a uniformly distributed load	$Z = 5.20\mathrm{kS_1}H_gl_e^2$	
(4) Hatch end beams in way of dry cargo spaces and supported at centreline, *See* Figure 1. 4. 1: Hatch end beam arrangements:		
(a) In association with longitudinal framing when there is no transverse between the hatch end beam and adjacent transverse bulkhead or equivalent supporting structure	$Z = 19kK_1H_\mathrm{g}l_\mathrm{e}S_1l_1 + 2.37\mathrm{kS}_eH_\mathrm{g}l_\mathrm{e}^2$	

(b) In association with longitudinal framing where there is one or more transverse between the hatch end beam and adjacent transverse bulkhead or equivalent supporting structure	$Z = 19kK_1H_gl_e(S_1l_1 + S_2l_2)$	$I = \frac{2.8}{k} l_e Z$
(c) In association with transverse framing when the hatch end beam supports the hatch side girder and in line girder only	$Z = 19kK_1H_gl_e(S_1l_1 + S_3l_3)$	
(d) In association with transverse framing when the hatch end beam supports the hatch side girder, an in line girder and an additional girder between the hatch side and the centreline	$Z = 19kH_gl_e(K_1(S_1l_1 + S_4l_4) + K_2S_5l_5)$	
(5) Girders and transverses in way of the crown or bottom of a tank	$Z = 11.7\rho kh_4Sl_e^2$	$I = \frac{2.8}{k} l_e Z$

Symbols

S, l_e, k, ρ as defined in Pt 4, Ch 1, 1.5 Symbols and definitions 1.5.1

h_4 = tank head, in metres, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 3, 5 Design loading

l_1, l_2, l_3, l_4, l_5, in metres, as indicated in Figure 1. 4. 1: Hatch end beam arrangements

B_h = breadth of hatchway, in metres, as used to determine K_1

H_g = weather head h_1, or cargo head h_2, or accommodation head h_3, in metres, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 3, 5 Design loading, whichever is applicable

K_1, K_2 = factors, dependent on the girder arrangments, as follows:

$\frac{B_h}{2l_e}$ or $\frac{X}{l_e}$	K_1 or K_2
0.2	0.143
0.3	0.177
0.4	0.191
0.5	0.187
0.6	0.179
0.7	0.169
0.8	0.141
0.9	0.085
1.0	0.000

S_e, S_1, S_2, S_3, S_4, S_5, in metres as indicated in Figure 1. 4. 1: Hatch end beam arrangements

X = distance, in metres, from centreline of ship to an additional girder, if fitted, as shown inFigure 1. 4. 1: Hatch end beam arrangements, as used to determine K_2

Note In single deck ships the section modulus of deck transverses is to be increased by 15 per cent.

Table 1. 4. 7: Pillars

Symbols	Parameter	Requirement

b = breadth of side of a hollow rectangular pillar or breadth of flange or web of a built or rolled section, in mm d_p = mean diameter of tubular pillars, in mm	(1) Cross-sectional area of all types of pillar	$A_p = \frac{kP}{12.36 - 51.5\frac{l_e}{r\sqrt{k}}} cm^2$ *See* Note
k = local scantling higher tensile steel factor, *See* Pt 3, Ch 2, 1.2 Steel 1.2.3, but not less than 0.72 l= overall length of pillar, in metres l_e= effective length of pillar, in metres, and is taken as: for hold pillars 0.65l for 'tween deck pillars 0.80l l_p = distance, in metres, between centres of two adjacent spans of girders or transverses supported by the pillar.	(2) Minimum wall thickness of tubular pillars	The greater of the following: (a) $t = \frac{P}{d_p\left(0.392 - 1.53\frac{l_e}{r}\right)}$ mm (b) $t = \frac{d_p}{40}$ mm but not to be less than (c)t = 5.5 mm where L < 90 m, or = 7.5 mm where L ≥ 90 m
r = least radius of gyration of pillar cross-section, in mm, and may be taken as: $r = 10\sqrt{\frac{I}{A_p}}$ mm A_p = cross-sectional area of pillar, in cm^2 C, S as defined in Pt 4, Ch 1, 1.5 Symbols and definitions 1.5.1 H_g as defined in Table 1. 4. 6: Deck girders, transverses and hatch beams I = least moment of inertia of cross-section, in cm^4	(3) Minimum wall thickness of hollow rectangular pillars or web plate thickness of l or channel sections	The lesser of (b) and (c) and not to be less than (a): (a) $t = \frac{P}{b\left(0.5 - 1.95\frac{l_e}{r}\right)}$ mm (b) $t = \frac{br}{600l_e}$ mm (c) $t = \frac{b}{55}$ mm but to be not less than t = 5.5 mm where L < 90 m, or = 7.5 mm where L ≥ 90 m
P = load, in kN, supported by the pillar and is to be taken as $\frac{9.81SH_g l_p}{C} + P_a$ but not less than 19.62 kN	(4) Minimum thickness of flanges of angle or channel sections	The lesser of the following: (a) $t_f = \frac{br}{200l_e}$ mm (b) $t_f = \frac{b}{18}$ mm
P_a = load, in kN, from pillar or pillars above (zero if no pillars over)	(5) Minimum thickness of flanges of built or rolled I sections	The lesser of the following: (a) $t_f = \frac{br}{400l_e}$ mm (b) $t_f = \frac{b}{36}$ mm
Note As a first approximation A_p may be taken as $\frac{\sqrt{kP}}{9.32}$ and the radius of gyration estimated for a suitable section having this area. **Note** If the area calculated using this radius of gyration differs by more than 10 per cent from the first approximation, a further calculation using the radius of gyration corresponding to the mean area of the first and second approximation is to be made.		

4. 5. 5 Openings in the strength deck outside the line of hatch openings having a stress concentration factor in excess of 2.4 will require edge reinforcements in the form of a spigot of adequate

dimensions, but alternative arrangements will be considered. The area of any edge reinforcement which may be required is not to be taken into account in determining the required sectional area of compensation for the opening. Alternatively, the shape of the opening is to be such that a stress concentration factor of 2.4 is not exceeded. In this respect, reinforcement will not in general, be required in way of:

a. elliptical openings having their major axis fore and aft and a ratio of length to breadth not less than 2 to 1, or
b. openings of other shapes provided that it has been shown by suitable tests that the stress concentration factor does not exceed 2.4.

Table 1. 4. 8: Non-watertight pillar bulkheads

Parameter	Requirement	
	Ships with $L < 90$ m	Ships with $L \geq 90$ m
(1) Minimum thickness of bulkhead plating	5.5 mm in holds and 'tween decks	7.5 mm in holds
		6.5 mm in 'tween decks
(2) Maximum stiffener spacing	1500 mm	1500 mm
(3) Minimum depth of stiffeners or corrugations	100 mm in holds	150 mm in holds
	75 mm in 'tween decks	100 mm in 'tween decks
(4) Cross-sectional area (including plating) for rolled, built or swedged stiffeners supporting beams, longitudinals, girders or transverses	(a) Where $\frac{S}{t} \leq 80$ (b) Where $\frac{s}{t} \geq 120$ (c) Where $80 < \frac{S}{t} < 120$	$A=A_1$ $A=A_2$ A is obtained by interpolation between A_1 and A_2
(5) Cross-sectional area (including plating) for symmetrical corrugation	(a)Where $\frac{b}{t_p} \leq \frac{750\lambda l_e}{(\lambda+0.25)r}$ (b)Where $\frac{b}{t_p} > \frac{750\lambda l_e}{(\lambda+0.25)r}$	$A=A_1$ $A=A_2$

Symbols

d_w, t_p, b, c as defined in Pt 3, Ch 3, 3 Structural idealisation

r = radius of gyration, in mm, of stiffener and attached plating

= $10\sqrt{\frac{I}{A}}$ mm for rolled, built or swedged stiffeners

= $d_w\sqrt{\frac{3b+c}{12(b+c)}}$ mm for symmetrical corrugation

I = moment of inertia, in cm^4, of stiffener and attached plating

s = spacing of stiffeners, in mm

A = cross-sectional area, in cm^2, of stiffener and attached plating

$A_1 = \frac{P}{12.36 - 51.5\frac{l_e}{r}}$ cm^2

As a first approximation A_1 may be taken as

$\frac{P}{9.32}$

$A_2 = \frac{P}{4.9-14.7\frac{l_e}{r}} cm^2$

As a first approximation A_2 may be taken as

$\frac{P}{3.92}$

P, l_e as defined in Table 1. 4. 7: Pillars

$\lambda = \frac{b}{c}$

4. 5. 6 Lower deck openings should be kept clear of main hatch corners and the areas of high stress, so far as possible. Compensation will not, in general, be required unless the total width of openings in any frame space, or between any two transverses, exceeds $15k$ per cent of the original effective plating width. The requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 4.5 Deck openings 4.5.4 also apply to lower deck openings except that:

a. the thickness of inserts, if required, for the second deck hatch corners is to be 2.5 mm greater than the deck thickness,
b. inserts will not generally be required for hatch corners on third decks, platform decks and below, and
c. reinforcement will not generally be required for circular openings, provided that the plate panels in which they are situated are otherwise adequately stiffened against compression and shear buckling.

4. 5. 7 All openings are to be adequately framed; attention is to be paid to structural continuity, and abrupt changes of shape, section or plate thickness are to be avoided. Arrangements in way of corners and openings are to be such as to minimise the creation of stress concentrations. Where a deck longitudinal is cut, compensation is to be arranged to ensure full continuity of strength.

Table 1. 4. 9: Cantilever beams

Location and supporting arrangements	Required modulus, in cm^3, *See* Notes	
	Cantilever beam	Supporting frame
(1) Any position - no support from end girders	Z_o=$8.67kM_o$(Z_o=$85kM_o$)	Z_v=$\frac{v}{H_1}\left(\frac{fZ_o}{u} - kZ_t\right)$
(2) At hatch side - uniform loading, partial support received from hatch side girder, *See* Figure 1. 4. 3: Section moduli of hatch end beams:		
(a) Hatch side girder supported by Rule hatch end beams or pillars at hatch corners	Z_u=$0.9Z_0 - kG$	Z_v=$\frac{v}{H_1}\left(\frac{fZ_u}{u} - kZ_t\right)$
(b) Hatch side girder supported by end bulkheads of hold - no Rule hatch end beams or pillars	Z_u as in (a) or the following formula, whichever is the greater: $\left(\frac{n+1}{n}\right)\left(0.45\left(1+\frac{1}{\beta}\right)Z_o - k\beta G - (1-\beta)kE\right)$	

(c) No transverse bulkheads between hatchways, no Rule hatch end beams or pillars, *See* Notes	Z_u as in (a) or the following formula, whichever is the greater: $\left(\frac{n+1}{n}\right)\left(\frac{Z_o}{\beta} - 0.5kE\right)$	
(d) At hatch side - concentrated loading	Z_u as in (a), (b) or (c), whichever is applicable, or as the following formula, whichever is the greater: $I_o - kG_1$	
Case (1) or (2)	Required inertia, in cm^4	
	$I_u = \frac{9u}{k} Z_u$	—

Note *1.* Where a transverse bulkhead is fitted at only one end of a hatchway the section modulus of cantilever beams is to be a mean of the values obtained from (2)(b) and (2)(c).

Note *2.* Where only cantilevers in the length of a hatchway consist of two or three close together at the mid-length of hatchway, their modulus is to be determined by calculating the modulus of a single cantilever at mid-length and dividing this by the actual number of cantilevers.

Note *3.* If a negative value is obtained for the required section modulus, cantilevers are not necessary for the arrangement considered.

Note *4.* In calculating the actual section modulus of a cantilever or supporting frame, the effective area of attached plating is to be as given in Pt 3, Ch 3, 3 Structural idealisation. Intermediate beams or frames within the effective breadth may be included in the calculation.

Note *5.* Rule hatch end beams are those with scantlings determined from Table 1. 4. 6: Deck girders, transverses and hatch beams, assuming that the hatch side girder has a span between hatch end beams.

Note *6.* The section modulus of cantilever beams is to be not less than that determined from Table 1. 4. 5: Strength/weather, cargo and accommodation deck beams for beams in the same position.

Note *7.* The section modulus of side frames, pillars or pillar bulkhead stiffeners supporting cantilevers is to be not less than that required for ordinary side frames, pillars or pillar bulkhead stiffeners, as determined from the appropriate Sections of the Rules.

Note *8.* The scantlings of the cantilever bracket within the shaded area shown in Figure 1. 4. 2: Deck cantilevers are to be as follows:

(a) Where tripping brackets are not fitted:

$t = (0.0075d_c + 5)\sqrt{k}\text{mm}$

$A_f = \left(\frac{27Z_d}{e}\left(1 - \frac{e}{1420f}\right) - \frac{et}{300}\right)kcm^2$

(b) Where tripping brackets are fitted at the positions indicated in Figure 1. 4. 2: Deck cantilevers:

$t = (0.0075d_c + 5)\sqrt{k}\text{mm}$

$A_f = \left(\frac{20Z_d}{e}\left(1 - \frac{e}{1420f}\right) - \frac{et}{200}\right)kcm^2$

In general the radius at the throat of the cantilever bracket is to be not less than d_c.

Note *9.* The cantilever beam and supporting frame face plates may be gradually tapered from the limits of the shaded area shown in Figure 1. 4. 2: Deck cantilevers. The web depth of the supporting frame may be tapered to a minimum of $0.5d_f$ at the base.

Note *10.* Where the web thickness of cantilevers or supporting frames is less than $\frac{d_w}{60\sqrt{k}}$ transverse web stiffeners are to be fitted spaced approximately $1.5d_w$ apart. In no case is the web thickness outside the limits of the cantilever brackets to be less than $\frac{d_w}{85\sqrt{k}}$

Where stiffeners are fitted parallel to the face plates, the stiffening arrangements will be specially considered.

Symbols

f = overall length of cantilever, in metres

k = higher tensile steel factor as defined in Pt 4, Ch 1, 1.5 Symbols and definitions 1.5.1

l_b = distance, in metres, between transverse bulkheads, *See* Figure 1.4.4 Deck supporting structure. Where there is no bulkhead midway between hatchways, l_b is to be measured to a point midway between hatchways

l_h = length of hatchway, in metres, *See* Figure 1. 4. 2: Deck cantilevers

C = cargo stowage rate in m^3/tonne as defined in Pt 3, Ch 3, 5 Design loading, and is to be taken as 1.39 m^3/tonne unless specified otherwise

Where there is no centreline support:

d_c = web depth of cantilever, at root of bracket, in mm, *See* Figure 1. 4. 2: Deck cantilevers

d_f = web depth of frame at root of bracket, in mm, *See* Figure 1. 4. 2: Deck cantilevers

d_w = web depth of cantilever or frame, in mm

e = web depth, in mm, as shown in Figure 1. 4. 2: Deck cantilevers

Z_a = section modulus, in cm^3, of hatch side girder which is to be not less than that calculated from Table 1. 4. 6: Deck girders, transverses and hatch beams, taking the span between cantilevers

Z_b = mean of section moduli, in cm^3, of longitudinal girders in line with hatch side girder (Z_b is to be taken not greater than Z_a)

$Z_d = \frac{fZ_u}{u}$

Z_o = section modulus, in cm^3, of cantilever beam, not supported by end girder, at distance u from outer end

Z_t = section modulus, in cm^3, of frame or stiffener above cantilever, *See* Figure 1. 4. 2: Deck cantilevers. (Where there is no frame or stiffener above cantilever Z_t = 0)

Z_u = section modulus, in cm^3, of cantilever beam, partially supported by hatch side girder at end, at distance u from outer end

Z_v = section modulus, in cm^3, of supporting frame, at distance v from lower end

Z_1, Z_2, Z_3 = mean of section moduli, in cm^3, of hatch end beams calculated for the positions shown in Figure 1. 4. 3: Section moduli of hatch end beams. Z_2 is to be taken as the smaller modulus of the two sections adjacent to the hatch side

$\beta = \frac{l_h}{l_b}$

E is determined as follows:

When centreline bulkheads or pillars are fitted:

$E = \frac{4}{n+1}\left((Z_1 + Z_2) + \frac{2u}{B_h}(Z_2 + Z_3)\right)$

n = number of cantilevers between the hatch end beams

t = thickness of cantilever bracket, in mm

u, v = lever arms, in metres, as shown in Figure 1. 4. 2: Deck cantilevers

A_f = sectional area, in cm^2, of cantilever bracket face plate

B_h = breadth of hatch, in metres, *See* Figure 1. 4. 2: Deck cantilevers

$E = \frac{4}{n+1}(Z_1 + Z_2)$

$G = \frac{7u}{(n+1)l_h}(Z_a + Z_b)$

$G_1 = \frac{3.5uZ_a}{S_c}$

H_1, H_2, H_3 = mean height of hold or 'tween decks, in metres, as shown in Figure 1. 4. 2: Deck cantilevers. At weather decks, H_2 and H_3 are to be taken equivalent to the weather head h_1 as defined in Pt 3, Ch 3, 5 Design loading

M_o = bending moment, in kN m, on the cantilever beam due to the load supported by a single cantilever. This bending moment is to be calculated about an axis at a distance u from the end. For hatch side cantilevers with uniformly distributed loading this will equal

$\frac{4.9S_c u}{C}(H_2 B_h + H_3 u)$

S_c = spacing of cantilevers, in metres, *See* Figure 1. 4. 4: Deck supporting structure

Figure 1. 4. 1: Hatch end beam arrangements

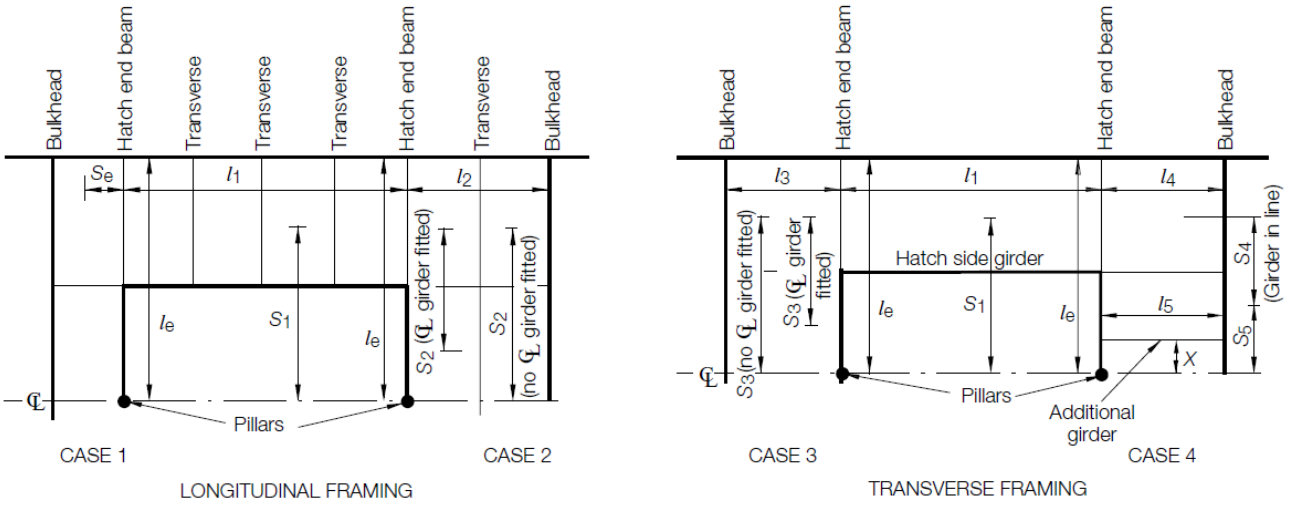


Figure 1. 4. 2: Deck cantilevers

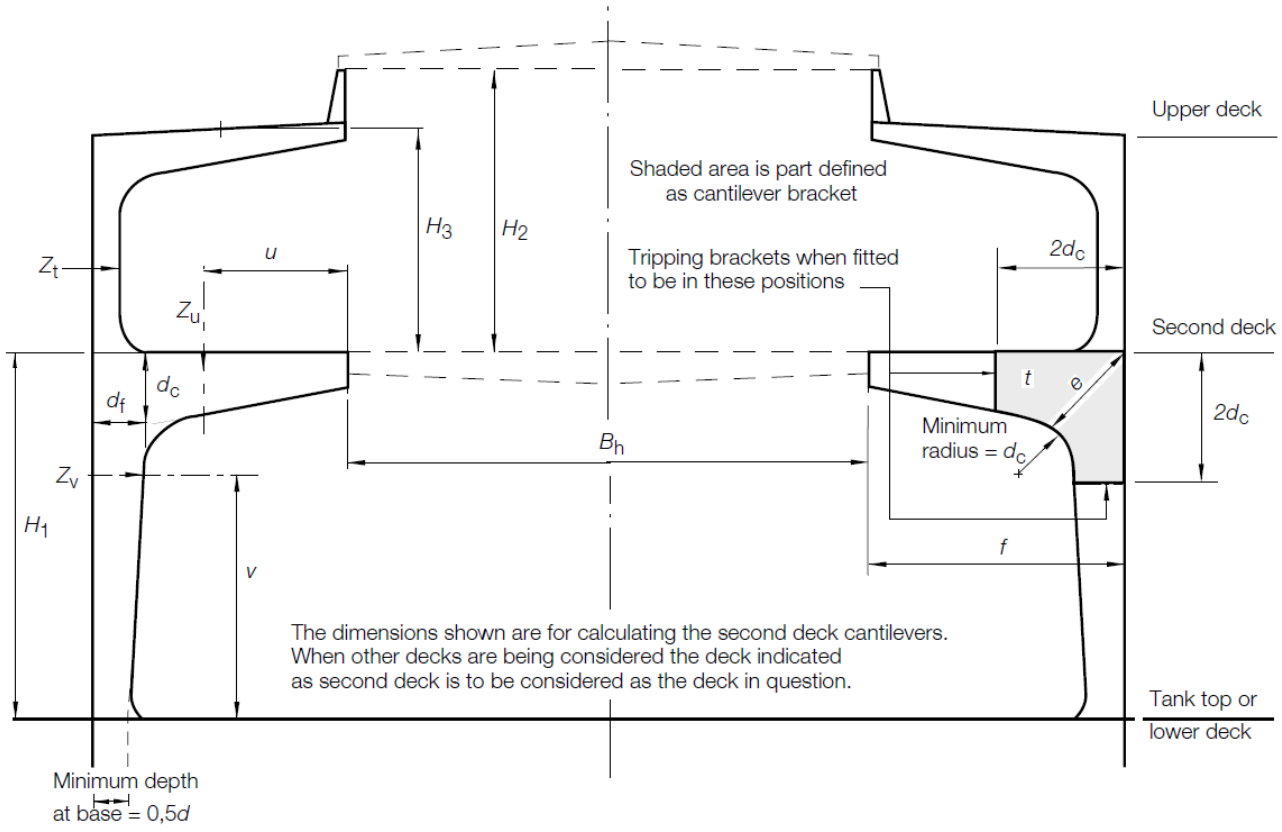


Figure 1. 4. 3: Section moduli of hatch end beams

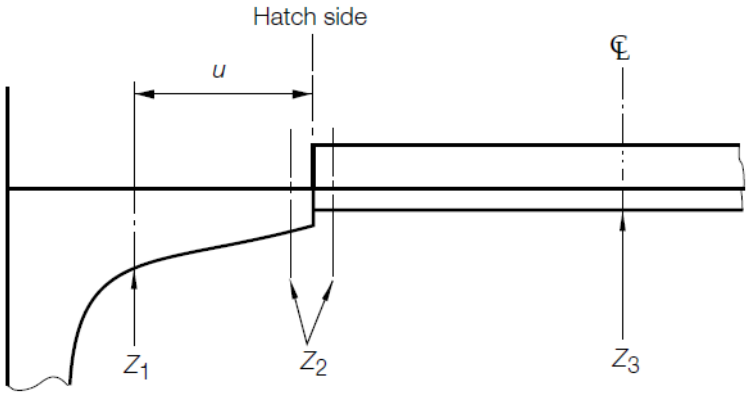


Figure 1. 4. 4: Deck supporting structure

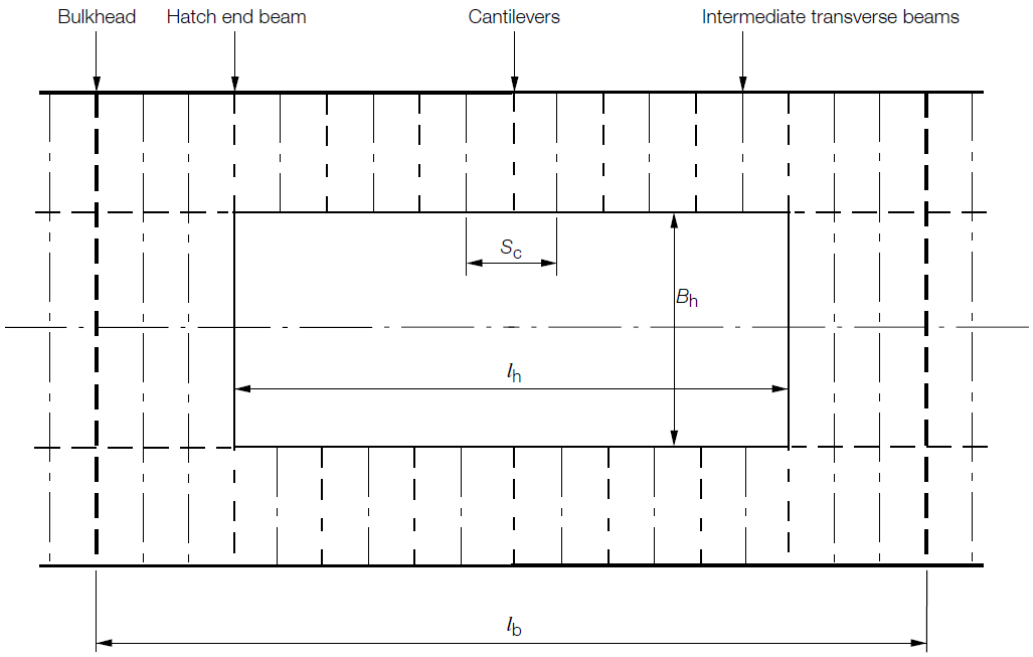


Figure 1. 4. 5: Elliptical and parabolic corners

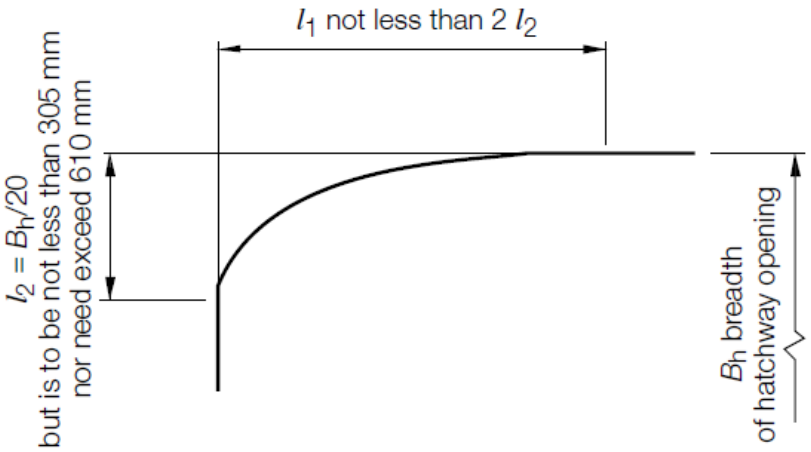
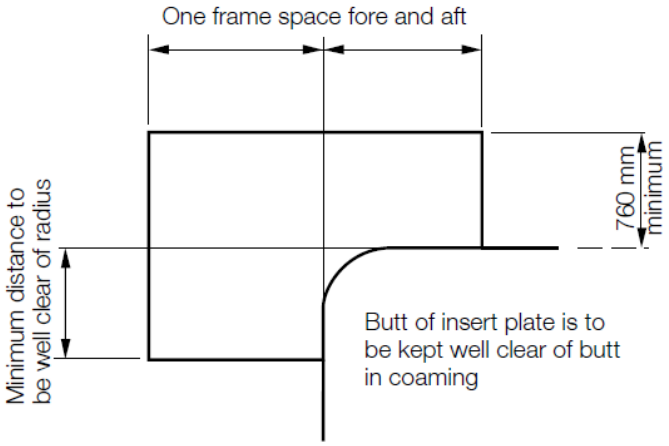


Figure 1. 4. 6: Insert plates for large openings



PART

4

CHAPTER **1** **General Cargo Ships**

SECTION **5** **Shell envelope plating**

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 Requirements are given in this Section for longitudinal or transversely framed shell plating, and attention is drawn to the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 6.1 General 6.1.1. In ships with a transversely framed bottom construction, the bottom shell plating is, in general, to be reinforced with additional continuous, or intercostal, longitudinal stiffeners, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 1, 7.1 General 7.1.2. Alternative arrangements will be considered.

5. 1. 2 For ships intended to load or unload while aground, *See* Pt 3, Ch 9, 7 Bottom strengthening for loading and unloading aground.

5. 2 Keel

5. 2. 1 5.2.1 The cross-sectional area and thickness of bar keels, and the width and thickness of plate keels, are to comply with the requirements of Table 1. 5. 1: Bar and plate keels. Forged or rolled bar keels are also to comply with the material requirements of Ch 3 Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials).

Table 1. 5. 1: Bar and plate keels

Item and parameter	Requirement
(1) Bar keels:	
Cross-sectional area	$A = (1.8L - 16)\ cm^2$
Thickness	$t = (0.6L + 8)\ mm$
(2) Plate keels:	
Breadth	$b = 70B\ mm$ but need not exceed 1800 mm and is not to be less than 750 mm
Thickness	$t = (t_1 + 2)\ mm$ where t_1 is as in location (1) in Table 1. 5. 2: Bottom shell and bilge plating, using the spacing in way of the keel plate t is to be taken not less than the adjacent bottom shell thickness
Symbols	

L, *B* as defined in Pt 4, Ch 1, 1.5 Symbols and definitions 1.5.1

b = breadth of keel, in mm

t = thickness of keel, in mm

A = cross-sectional area, in cm^2

5. 3 Bottom shell and bilge

5. 3. 1 In the midship region the thickness of bottom shell plating to the upper turn of bilge is to be that necessary to give the hull section modulus required by Pt 3, Ch 4, 5 Hull bending strength, and is to be not less than the minimum values given by Table 1. 5. 2: Bottom shell and bilge plating.

5. 4 Side shell

5. 4. 1 In the midship region, the thickness of side shell and sheerstrake plating including the sides of bridge superstructures is to be not less than the values given by Table 1. 5. 3: Side shell plating, but may be required to be increased locally on account of high shear forces in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 4, 6 Hull shear strength.

5. 4. 2 Sea inlets, or other openings, are to have well rounded corners and so far as possible, are to be kept clear of the bilge radius. Openings on, or near to, the bilge radius are to be elliptical. The thickness of sea inlet box plating is to be the same as the adjacent shell, but not less than 12.5 mm and need not exceed 25 mm.

5. 4. 3 Where a rounded sheerstrake is adopted the radius should, in general, be not less than 15 times the thickness.

5. 4. 4 The sheerstrake thickness is to be increased by 20 per cent at the ends of a bridge superstructure extending out to the ship's side. In the case of a bridge superstructure exceeding $0.15L$, the side plating at the ends of the superstructure is also to be increased by 25 per cent and tapered gradually into the upper deck sheerstrake.

5. 4. 5 In general, compensation will not be required for holes in the steerstrake which are clear of the gunwale or any deck openings situated outside the line of the main hatchways and whose depth does not exceed 20 per cent of the depth of the sheerstrake or 380 mm, whichever is the lesser. Openings are not to be cut in a rounded gunwale. Cargo door openings are to have well rounded corners, and the proposed compensation for the door openings will be individually considered.

Table 1. 5. 2: Bottom shell and bilge plating

Location	Minimum thickness, in mm	
	Longitudinal framing	Transverse framing
(1) Bottom plating, *See* Notes 1 and 2	The greater of the following: (a) $t = 0.001s_1(0.043L_1 + 10)\sqrt{\frac{F_B}{k_L}}$ (*See* Note 4) (b) $t = 0.0063s_1\sqrt{\frac{h_{T2}k}{1.8-F_B}}$	The greater of the following: (a) $t = 0.00\text{ls}_1f_1(0.056L_1 + 16.7)\sqrt{\frac{F_B}{k_L}}$ (*See* Note 4) (b) $t = 0.0063s_1\sqrt{\frac{h_{T2}k}{1.8-F_B}}$

(2) Bilge plating - where framed, *See* Notes 1 and 2	t as for (1)	t as for (1)
(3) Bilge plating -where unframed, *See* Note 3	Provided that transverses or adequate bilge brackets are spaced not more than $\frac{8t^2}{DR_B}\sqrt{\frac{t}{R_B}} \times 10^6$mm apart $t = \frac{R_B F_B}{165k_L}$ but is to be not less than the adjacent bottom plating	

Symbols

L, D, T, s, S, k_L, *k* as defined in Pt 4, Ch 1, 1.5 Symbols and definitions 1.5.1

C_w is as defined in Pt 4, Ch 1, 1.5 Symbols and definitions 1.5.1.

Where

$L > 227$ m, C_w is not to be taken less than 6.446 m

$f_1 = \frac{1}{1+\left(\frac{s}{1000S}\right)^2}$

h_{T2} = $(T+0.5C_w)$, in metres but need not be taken greater than $1.2T$ m

s_1 = s, but is not to be taken less than the smaller of $470 + \frac{L}{0.6}$mm or 700mm

F_B = as defined in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.7 Local reduction factors

L_1 = L but need not be taken greater than 190 m

R_B = bilge radius, in mm, *See* Note 3

Note *1.* The thickness derived in accordance with (1) is also to satisfy the buckling requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4, 7 Hull buckling strength.

Note *2.* The thickness of bottom shell or bilge plating is to be not less than the basic shell end thickness for taper as given in Pt 3, Ch 3 Structural Design, Table 3. 2. 1: Taper requirements for hull envelope.

Note *3.* Where longitudinally framed and the lowest side longitudinal lies a distance *a* mm above the uppermost turn of bilge and/or the outermost bottom longitudinal lies a distance *b* inboard of the lower turn of bilge, the bilge radius is to be taken as $R_B + \frac{(a+b)}{2}$mm. In no case is *a* or *b* to be greater than *s*.

Note *4.* Where separate maximum sagging and hogging still water bending moments are assigned, F_B may be based on the hogging moment.

Table 1. 5. 3: Side shell plating

Location	Minimum thickness, in mm	
	Longitudinal framing	Transverse framing
(1) Side shell clear of sheerstrake, *See* Notes 1, 2 and 4	(a) Above $\frac{D}{2}$from base: The greater of the following: (i) $t = 0.001s_1(0.059L_1 + 7)\sqrt{\frac{F_D}{k_L}}$ (ii) $t = 0.0042s_1\sqrt{h_{T1}k}$	(a) Within $\frac{D}{4}$from the gunwale: The greater of the following: (i) $t = 0.00085s_1 f_1(0.083L_1 + 10)\sqrt{\frac{F_D}{k_L}}$ (ii) $t = 0.0042s_1\sqrt{h_{T1}k}$

	(b) At upper turn of bilge, *See* Note 3: The greater of the following: (i) $t = 0.001s_1(0.059L_1 + 7)\sqrt{\frac{F_M}{k_L}}$ (ii) $t = 0.0054s_1\sqrt{\frac{h_{T2}k}{2-F_B}}$	(b) Within $\frac{D}{4}$ from mid-depth: The greater of the following: (i) $t = 0.001s_1(0.059L_1 + 7)\sqrt{\frac{F_M}{k_L}}$ (ii) $t = 0.005ls_1\sqrt{h_{T1}k}$
	(c) Between upper turn of bilge and $\frac{D}{2}$ from base: The greater of the following: (i) *t* from (b)(i) (ii) *t* from interpolation between (a)(ii) and (b)(ii)	(c) Within $\frac{D}{4}$ from base (excluding bilge plating) *See* Note 3: The greater of the following: (i) $t = 0.00085s_1f_1(0.083L_1 + 10)\sqrt{\frac{F_B}{k_L}}$ (ii) $t = 0.0056s_1\sqrt{\frac{h_{T2}k}{1.8-F_B}}$
(2) Sheerstrake, *See* Notes 1, 2 and 4	The greater of the following: (i) $t = 0.00ls_1(0.059L_1 + 7)\sqrt{\frac{F_D}{k_L}}$ (ii) $t = 0.00083s_1\sqrt{Lk} + 2.5$ but *t* is to be not less than the thickness of the adjacent side plating	The greater of the following: (i) $t = 0.00ls_Lf_1(0.083L_1 + 10)\sqrt{\frac{F_D}{k_L}}$ (ii) $t = 0.001s_1\sqrt{Lk} + 2.5$ but *t* is to be not less than the thickness of the adjacent side plating

Symbols

L, D, T, S, s, k_L, *k*, as defined in Pt 4, Ch 1, 1.5 Symbols and definitions 1.5.1

C_w is as defined in Pt 4, Ch 1, 1.5 Symbols and definitions 1.5.1.

Where $L > 227$ m, C_w is not to be taken less than 6.446 m

f_1 = $\frac{1}{1 + \left(\frac{s}{1000S}\right)^2}$

h_{T1} = $T+C_w$ m but need not be taken greater than $1.36T$

h_{T2} = $T + 0.5C_w$ m but need not be taken greater than $1.2T$

s_1 = *s*, but is not to be taken less than the smaller of

$470 + \frac{L}{0.6}$ mm or 700mm

F_D, F_B = as defined in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.7 Local reduction factors

F_M = the greater of F_D or F_B

L_1 = *L*, but need not be taken greater than 190 m

Note *1.* The thickness is also to satisfy the buckling requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4, 7 Hull buckling strength.

Note *2.* The thickness of side shell or sheerstrake plating is to be not less than the basic shell end thickness for taper, as given in Pt 3, Ch 3 Structural Design, Table 3. 2. 1: Taper requirements for hull envelope. The width of the sheerstrake (where of different thickness from the side shell) is to be not less than that required by Table 2. 2. 1: Material classes and grades in Pt 3, Ch 2 Materials.

Note *3.* The thickness of side shell need not exceed that determined from Table 1. 5. 2: Bottom shell and bilge plating for bottom shell, but using the spacing of side frames or longitudinals.

Note *4.* For the expressions contained in (i), where separate maximum sagging and hogging still water bending moments are assigned, F_D may be based on the sagging moment and F_B on the hogging moment.

PART

4

CHAPTER **1** **General Cargo Ships**

SECTION **6** **Shell envelope framing**

6. 1 General

6. 1. 1 Longitudinal framing is, in general, to be adopted at the bottom, but special consideration will be given to proposals for transverse framing in this region. Transverse or longitudinal framing can be adopted for the side shell. Requirements are given in this Section for longitudinal and transverse framing systems.

6. 1. 2 End connections of longitudinals to bulkheads are to provide adequate fixity and, so far as practicable, direct continuity of longitudinal strength. Where L exceeds 215 m, the bottom longitudinals are to be continuous in way of both watertight and non-watertight floors, but alternative arrangements will be considered. Higher tensile steel longitudinals within 10 per cent of the ship's depth at the bottom and deck are to be continuous irrespective of the ship length, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 10, 5.2, Arrangements at intersections of continuous secondary and primary members.

6. 1. 3 Stiffeners and brackets on side transverses, where fitted on one side and connected to higher tensile steel longitudinals between the base line and $0.8D_2$ above the base line, are to have their heels well radiused to reduce stress concentrations. Where a symmetrical arrangement is fitted, i.e. bracket or stiffening on both sides, and it is connected to higher tensile steel longitudinals, the toes of the stiffeners or brackets are to be well radiused. Alternative arrangements will be considered if supported by appropriate direct calculations, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 10, 5.2, Arrangements at intersections of continuous secondary and primary members.

6. 1. 4 Where higher tensile steel side longitudinals pass through transverse bulkheads in the cargo area, well radiused brackets of the same material are to be fitted on both the fore and aft side of the connection between the upper turn of bilge and $0.8D_2$ above the base line. Particular attention should be given to ensuring the alignment of these brackets. Alternative arrangements will be considered if supported by appropriate direct calculations, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 1, 6.2 Longitudinal stiffening 6.2.3.

6. 1. 5 For ships intended to load or unload while aground, *See* Pt 3, Ch 9, 7 Bottom strengthening for loading and unloading aground.

6. 2 Longitudinal stiffening

6. 2. 1 For non-**CSR** tankers, bulk carriers and ore carriers (*See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull)) the scantlings of bottom and side longitudinals in the midship region are to comply with the requirements given in Table 1. 6. 2: Shell framing (longitudinal). In general other ships are to comply with Table 1. 6. 1: Shell framing (longitudinal).

6. 2. 2 The lateral and torsional stability of longitudinals together with web and flange buckling criteria are to be verified in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 4, 7 Hull buckling strength.

6. 2. 3 Where higher tensile steel asymmetrical sections are adopted in double bottom tanks which are interconnected with double skin side tanks or combined hopper and topside tanks the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 6.1 General 6.1.3 and Pt 4, Ch 1, 6.1 General 6.1.4 are to be complied with regarding arrangements to reduce stress concentrations. Alternatively, it is recommended that bulb plate or symmetrical sections are adopted.

6. 3 Transverse stiffening

6. 3. 1 The scantlings of main and 'tween deck frames, and bottom frames in way of bracket floors, in the midship region are to comply with the requirements given in Table 1. 6. 3: Shell framing (transverse).

6. 3. 2 The scantlings of main frames are normally to be based on Rule standard brackets at top and bottom, whilst the scantlings of 'tween deck frames are normally to be based on a Rule standard bracket at the top only.

6. 3. 3 End connections of transverse main and 'tween deck frames are to be in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 10, 3 Secondary member end connections.

6. 4 Primary supporting structure

6. 4. 1 Side transverses supporting longitudinal stiffening, and webs and stringers supporting transverse side stiffening, are to comply with the requirements of Table 1. 6. 4: Primary structure.

6. 4. 2 Side transverses are to be spaced not more than 3.8 m apart when the length, L, is less than 100 m and $(0.006\mathrm{L} + 3.2)$ m apart where L is greater than 100 m.

Table 1. 6. 1: Shell framing (longitudinal)

Location	Modulus, in cm^3
(1) Side longitudinals in way of dry spaces, including double skin construction, *See* Note 2	The lesser of the following: (a) $Z = 0.056skh_{T1}l_e^2F_1F_S$ (b) Z from (3)(a) evaluated using s, k and l_e for the longitudinal under consideration and the remaining parameters evaluated at the base line
(2) Side longitudinals in way of double skin tanks or deep tanks, *See* Note 2	The greater of the following: (a) Z as from (1) (b) As required by Ch1, 9 for deep tanks
(3) Bottom and bilge longitudinals, *See* Notes 1, 2, 3 and 4	The greater of the following: (a) $Z = \gamma skh_{T2}l_e^2F_1$ (b) $Z = \gamma skh_{T3}l_e^2F_{sb}$
Symbols	

L, D, T, s, k,k_L, ρ, as defined in Pt 4, Ch 1, 1.5 Symbols and definitions 1.5.1

l_e = as defined in Pt 4, Ch 1, 1.5 Symbols and definitions 1.5.1, but is not to be taken less than 1.5 m except in way of the centre girder brackets required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 8.5 Floors 8.5.3 where a minimum span of 1.25 m may be used

l_{e1} = l_e in metres, but is not to be taken less than 2.5 m and need not be taken greater than 5.0 m

C_l = $\frac{60}{225-165F_D}$ at deck

C_1 = 1.0 at $\frac{D_2}{2}$

C_1 = $\frac{75}{225-150F_B}$at baseline

Intermediate values of c_1 are to be obtained by interpolation.

D_1 = D_2, in metres, but is not to be taken less than 10 and need not be taken greater than 16

D_2 = D, in metres, but need not be taken greater than $1.6T$

F_B,F_D as defined in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.7 Local reduction factors

F_l = $\frac{D_2c_1}{4D_2+20h_5}$for side longitudinals above $\frac{D_2}{2}$

F_l = = $\frac{D_2c_1}{25D_2+20h_5}$for side longitudinals below$\frac{D_2}{2}$ and for bottom longitudinals

F_1 is not to be taken less than = 0.14

L_1 = L but need not be taken greater than 190 m

F_s is a fatigue factor for side longitudinals to be taken as follows:

(a) For built sections and rolled angle bars

F_s = $\frac{1.1}{k}\left[1-\frac{2b_{f1}}{b_f}(1-k)\right]$at $0.6D_2$ above the base line

F_S = 1.0 at D_2 and above

F_S = F_{SB} at the base line.

Intermediate values of F_s are to be obtained by interpolation.

b) For flat bars and bulb plates $\frac{b_{f1}}{b_f}$may be taken as 0.5

F_{sb} is a fatigue factor for bottom longitudinals = longitudinals $= 0.5(1 + F_s$ at $0.6D_2)$

Where

b_{f1} = the minimum distance, in mm, from the edge of the face plate of the side longitudinal under consideration to the centre of the web plate, *See* Pt 4, Ch 9, 5.2 Symbols 5.2.1

h_{Tl} = $C_w\left(1-\frac{h_6}{D_2-T}\right)$in metres, for longitudinals above the waterline, at draught T

Where $C_w\left(1-\frac{h_6}{D_2-T}\right)$ is not to be taken less than $\frac{L_1}{56}$m for Type 'B-60' ships or less than the greater of $\frac{L_1}{70}$or 1.20 for Type 'B' ships

h_{T1} = $\left[h_6+C_W\left(1-\frac{h_6}{2T}\right)\right]F_\lambda$,in metres, for longitudinals below the waterline at draught T.

h_{T1} need not exceed $0.86\left(h_5+\frac{D_1}{8}\right)$ for $F_1 \le 0.14$ and $\left(h_5+\frac{D_1}{8}\right)$ for $F_1 > 0.14$

h_{T2} = (T+0.5C_W), in metres for bottom longitudinals but need not be taken greater than $1.2T$

h_{T3} = h_4-0.25T, in metres

h_4 = load head required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 9.1 General for deep tanks

h_5 = vertical distance, in metres, from longitudinal to deck at depth, D_2

h_6 = vertical distance, in metres, from the waterline at draught T to the longitudinal under consideration

b_f = the width of the face plate, in mm, of the side longitudinal under consideration, *See* Pt 4, Ch 9, 5.2 Symbols 5.2.1

C_W = a wave head, in metres = $7.71 \times 10^{-2} Le^{-0.0044\,L}$ where e = base of natural logarithms 2.7183

F_λ = 1.0 for L $\leq$ 200 m

= [1.0 + 0.0023(L – 200)] for L > 200 m

γ = $0.002l_{e1} + 0.046$

Note *1*. The buckling requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4, 7 Hull buckling strength are to be complied with. The ratio of the web depth, d_w, to web thickness, t, is to comply with the following requirements:

(a) Built up profiles and rolled angles:

$$\frac{d_w}{t} \leq 60\sqrt{k_L}$$

(b) Flat bars:

$\frac{d_w}{t} \leq 18\sqrt{k_L}$ when continuous at bulkheads

$\frac{d_w}{t} \leq 15\sqrt{k_L}$ when non-continuous at bulkheads

Note *2*. Where struts are fitted midway between transverses in way of double bottom tanks, or double skin construction, the modulus of the bottom or side longitudinals may be reduced by 50k per cent from that obtained from the locations (1), (2), or (3) as applicable.

Note *3*. Where the bilge radius exceeds the Rule height of a double bottom the modulus of the longitudinal above this nominal height is to be derived from the location (1) or (2) as applicable.

Note *4*. Where no bilge longitudinals are fitted and bilge brackets are required by location (3) in Table 1. 5. 2: Bottom shell and bilge plating, at least two brackets are to be fitted.

Table 1. 6. 2: Shell framing (longitudinal)

Location	Modulus, in cm^3
(1) Side longitudinals in way of dry spaces, including double skin construction, *See* Note 2	The lesser of the following: (a) $Z = 0.056\text{skh}_{T1}l_e^2F_1F_S$ (b) Z from (3)(a) evaluated using s and l_e for the longitudinal under consideration and the remaining parameters evaluated at the base line
(2) Side longitudinals in way of double skin tanks or deep tanks, *See* Note 2	The greater of the following: (a) Z as from (1) As required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 9.1 General for deep tanks using h_{T3} instead of h_4, but need not exceed Z from (3)(b) evaluated using γ, s and fige for the longitudinal under consideration and the remaining parameters evaluated at the base line
(3) Bottom and bilge longitudinals, *See* Notes 1, 2, 3 and 4	The greater of the following: (a) $Z = \gamma skh_{T2}l_e^2F_{sb}$ (b) $Z = \gamma skh_{T3}l_e^2F_{sb}$

Symbols

L, D, T, s, k, ρ, as defined in Pt 4, Ch 1, 1.5 Symbols and definitions 1.5.1

l_e = as defined in Pt 4, Ch 1, 1.5 Symbols and definitions 1.5.1, but is not to be taken less than 1.5 m except in way of the centre girder brackets required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 8.5 Floors 8.5.3 where a minimum span of 1.25 m may be used

$l_{e1} = l_e$ in metres, but is not to be taken less than 2.5 m and need not be taken greater than 5.0 m

$c_1 = \frac{60}{225-165F_D}$ at deck

c_1 = 1.0 at $\frac{D_2}{2}$

$c_1 = \frac{75}{225-150F_B}$ at baseline

intermediate values c_1 are to be obtained by interpolation

$D_1 = D_2$, in metres, but is not to be taken less than 10 and need not be taken greater than 16

$D_2 = D$, in metres, but need not be taken greater than $1.6T$

F_B,F_D as defined in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.7 Local reduction factors

$F_1 = \frac{D_2 c_1}{4D_2+20h_5}$ for side longitudinals above $\frac{D_2}{2}$

$F_1 = \frac{D_2 c_1}{25D_2+20h_5}$ for side longitudinals below $\frac{D_2}{2}$ and bottom longitudinals

F_1 is not to to be taken less than 0.14

$L_1 = L$ but need not be taken greater than 190 m

F_s is a fatigue factor for side longitudinals to be taken as follows:

(a) For built sections and rolled angle bars

$F_s = \frac{1.1}{k}\left[1 - \frac{2b_{f1}}{b_f}(1-k)\right]$ at $0.6D_2$ above the base line

F_S = 1.0 at D_2 and above,

$F_S = F_{SB}$ at the base line

Intermediate values of F_s are to be obtained by linear interpolation.

(b) For flat bars and bulb plates $\frac{b_{fl}}{b_f}$ may be taken as 0.5

F_{sb} is a fatigue factor for bottom longitudinals $= 0.5(1 + F_s$ at $0.6D_2)$

Where

b_{fl} = the minimum distance, in mm, from the edge of the face plate of the side longitudinal under consideration to the centre of the web plate, *See* Pt 4, Ch 9, 5.2 Symbols 5.2.1

$h_{T1} = C_W\left(1 - \frac{h_6}{D_2-T}\right)F_\lambda$, in metres, for longitudinals above the waterline, at draught T

Where $\left(1 - \frac{h_6}{D_2-T}\right)$ is not to be taken less than 0.7

$h_{T1} = \left[h_6 + C_W\left(1 - \frac{h_6}{2T}\right)\right]F_\lambda$, in metres, for longitudinals below the waterline at draught T.

h_{T1} and h_{T2} need not exceed $0.86\left(h_5 + \frac{D_1}{8}\right)$ for $F_1 \leq 0.14$ and $\left(h_5 + \frac{D_1}{8}\right)$ for $F_1 > 0.14$

$h_{T2} = (T + 0.5C_W)\, F_\lambda$, in metres for bottom longitudinals

$h_{T3} = h_4 - 0.25T$, in metres at the base line

$h_{T3} = h_4$ in metres, at and above $T/4$ from the base line

Intermediate values of $h_{T\,3}$ are to be obtained by linear interpolation

h_4 = load head required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 9.1 General for deep tanks

h_5 = vertical distance, in metres, from longitudinal to deck at depth, D_2

h_6 = vertical distance, in metres, from the waterline at draught T to the longitudinal under consideration

b_f = the width of the face plate, in mm, of the side longitudinal under consideration, *See* Pt 4, Ch 9, 5.2 Symbols 5.2.1

C_W = a wave head, in metres $= 7.71 \times 10^{-2} L e^{-0.0044L}$ where e = base of natural logarithms 2.7183

$F_\lambda = 1.0$ for $L \leq 200$ m

$= [1.0 + 0.0023(L - 200)]$ for $L > 200$ m

$\gamma = 0.002 l_{e1} + 0.046$

Note *1*. The buckling requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4, 7 Hull buckling strength are to be complied with. The ratio of the web depth, d_w, to web thickness, t, is to comply with the following requirements:

(a) Built up profiles and rolled angles:

$$\frac{d_w}{t} \leq 60\sqrt{k_L}$$

(b) Flat bars:

$\frac{d_w}{t} \leq 18\sqrt{k_L}$ when continuous at bulkheads

$\frac{d_w}{t} \leq 15\sqrt{k_L}$ when non-continuous at bulkheads

Note *2*. Where struts are fitted midway between transverses in way of double bottom tanks, or double skin construction, the modulus of the bottom or side longitudinals may be reduced by $50k$ per cent from that obtained from the locations (1), (2), or (3) as applicable.

Note *3*. Where the bilge radius exceeds the Rule height of a double bottom the modulus of the longitudinal above this nominal height is to be derived from the location (1) or (2) as applicable.

Note *4*. Where no bilge longitudinals are fitted and bilge brackets are required by location (3) in Table 1. 5. 2: Bottom shell and bilge plating, at least two brackets are to be fitted.

Table 1. 6. 3: Shell framing (transverse)

Location	Modulus, in cm^3	Inertia, in cm^4
*(1)*Main, 'tween deck and superstructure frames in dry spaces, *See* Note 3	The greater of the following: (a) $Z = C$ s $kh_{T1}H^2 \times 10^{-3}$ (b) $Z = 6.7skhH_2^2 \times 10^{-3}$	$I = \frac{3.2}{k} HZ$
*(2)*Main and 'tween deck frames in way of fuel or water ballast tanks or cargo holds used for water ballast	The greater of the following: (a)1.15 x Z from (1) (b) $Z = 6.7skhH_2^2 \times 10^{-3}$	$I = \frac{3.2}{k} HZ$

*(3)*Frames supporting hatch end beams or deck transverses, *See* Note 2	The greater of the following: *(a)*Z from (1) (b) $Z = 2.5(0.2l_s^2 + H_1^2)kS_1H_g$	$I = \frac{3.2}{k}HZ$
*(4)*Bottom frames of double bottom bracket floors	$Z = 2.15skTl_e \times 10^{-2}$	—
Symbols		
D, T, s, k as defined in Pt 4, Ch 1, 1.5 Symbols and definitions 1.5.1		

C = end connection factor

= 3.4 where two Rule standard brackets are fitted

= 3.4 (1.8 − 0.8 (la/l)where one Rule standard bracket and one reduced bracket fitted

= 3.4 (2.15 − 1.15 ($lamean/$l) where two reduced brackets are fitted

= 6.1 where one Rule standard bracket is fitted

= 6.1 (1.2 − 0.2 (la/l) where one reduced bracket is fitted

= 7.3 where no bracket is fitted

The requirements for frames where brackets larger than Rule standard are fitted will be specially considered

l_a = equivalent arm length, in mm, as derived from Pt 3, Ch 10, 3.4 Scantlings of end brackets 3.4.1

l_{amean} = mean equivalent arm length, in mm, for both brackets

h_{T1} = head, in metres, at middle of H

= $C_w\left(1-\frac{h_6}{D_1-T}\right)F_\lambda$, in metres for frames where the mid-length of frame is above the waterline, at draught T

where$\left(1-\frac{h_6}{D_1-T}\right)$ is not to be taken less than 0.7

= $[h_6+C_w\left(1-\frac{h_6}{2T}\right)]F_\lambda$, in metres for frames where the mid-length of frame is below the waterline at draught T

h = h_4 or h_5, whichever is the greater

h_4 = tank head, in metres, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 3, 5 Design loading

h_5 = head, in metres, measured from the mid-length of H, to the deck at side

h_6 = vertical distance in metres, from waterline at draught T to the mid-length of H

l_s = distance, in metres, from side shell to inboard support of beam or transverse

l_e = effective length, in metres, of bottom frames for double bottom bracket floors

l_h = length, in metres, of hatch side girder

C_w = a wave head, in metres,

= $7.71\times10^{-2}Le^{-0.0044\,L}$

= where e = base of natural logarithm 2.7183

$F\lambda$ = 1.0 for L ≤ 200 m

= (1.0 + 0.0023 (L − 200)) for L > 200 m

D_1 = D, but need not be taken greater than $1.6T$

H = H_{MF} or H_{TF} as applicable, *See* Note 1

MF = vertical framing depth, in metres, of main frames, as shown inFigure 1. 6. 1: Framing depths for various structural configurations, but is to be taken not less than 3.5 m

H_{TF} = vertical framing depth, in metres, of 'tween deck frames, as shown in Figure 1. 6. 1: Framing depths for various structural configurations, but is to be taken not less than 2.5 m

H_1 = H, but need not be taken greater than 3.5 m

H_2 = H, where H_{MF} is to be taken not less than 2.5 m

H_9 = weather head, h_1, or cargo head, h_2, in metres, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 3, 5 Design loading, whichever is applicable

S = spacing, in metres, of deck transverses

S_1 $= \frac{l_h}{4}$ for hatch end beams

$= S$ for transverses

Note *1.* Where frames are inclined at more than 15° to the vertical, H_{MF} or H_{TF} is to be measured along a chord between span points of the frame.

Note *2.* If the modulus obtained from (3) for frames under deck transverses exceeds that obtained from (1) and (2), the intermediate frames may be reduced provided that the combined modulus is maintained and the reduction in any intermediate frame is not greater than 35 per cent. The reduced modulus is to be not less than that given by (1)(b).

Note *3.* The scantlings of main frames are not to be less than those of the 'tween deck frames above.

Figure 1. 6. 1: Framing depths for various structural configurations

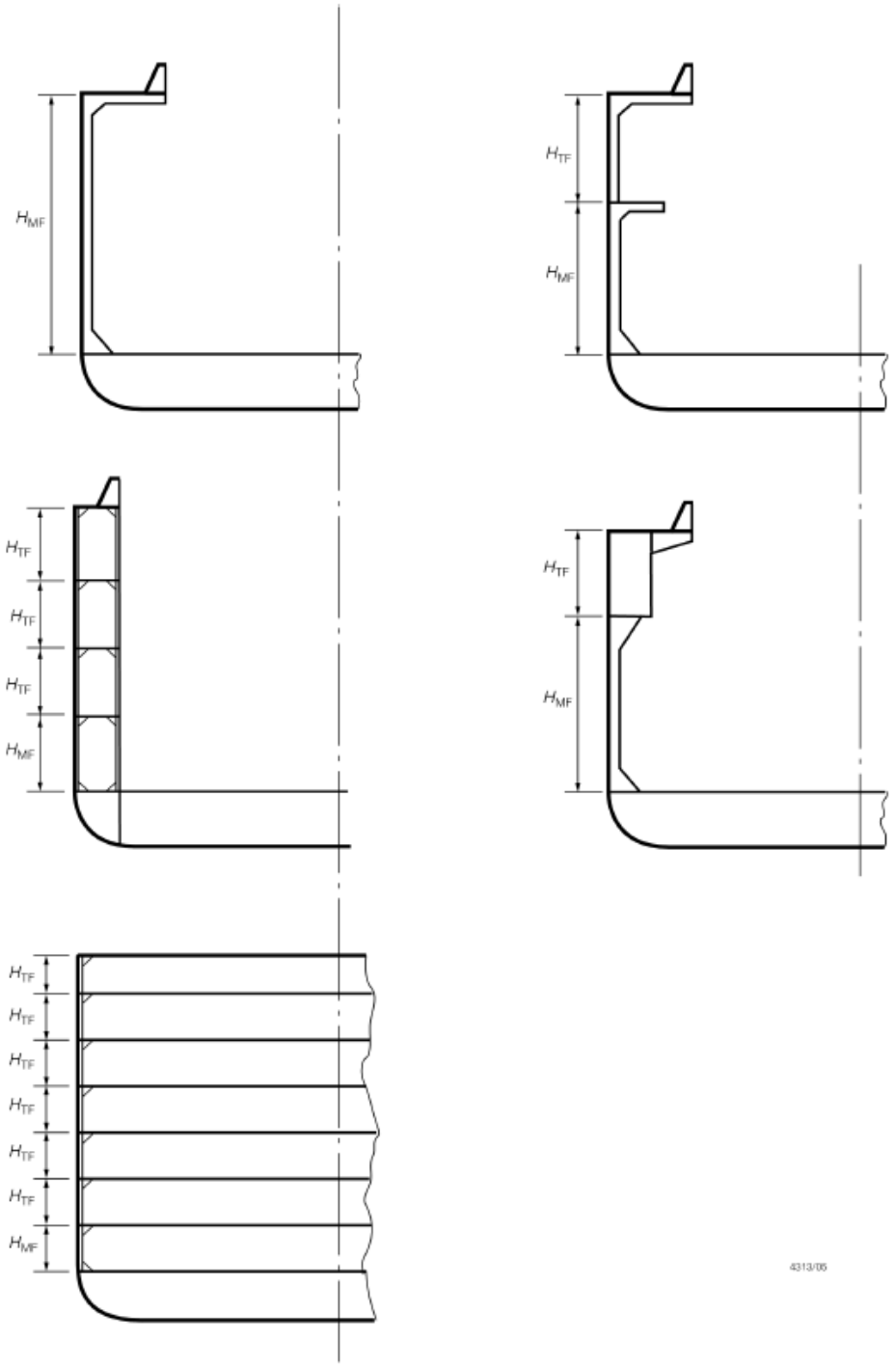


Table 1. 6. 4: Primary structure

Item and location	Modulus, in cm^3	Inertia, in cm^4
Longitudinal framing system:		

*(1)*Side transverses in dry cargo spaces	$Z = 10kSh_{T1}l_e^2$	—
*(2)*Side transverses in deep tanks	$Z = 11.7\rho kSh_4l_e^2$ or as (1) above, whichever is the greater	$I = \frac{2.5}{k}l_eZ$
Transverse framing system:		
*(3)*Side stringers in dry cargo spaces	$Z = 7.75kSh_{T1}l_e^2$	—
*(4)*Side stringers in deep tanks	$Z = 11.7\rho kSh_4l_e^2$ or as (3) above, whichever is the greater	$I = \frac{2.5}{k}l_eZ$
*(5)*Web frames supporting side stringers	Z determined from calculation based on following assumptions: *(a)*fixed ends *(b)* point loadings *(c)*head h_4 or h_{T1} as applicable *(d)* bending stress $\frac{93.2}{k}\text{N/mm}^2$ *(e)* shear stress $\frac{83.4}{k}\text{N/mm}^2$	$I = \frac{2.5}{k}l_eZ$
Symbols		

T, S, l_e, k, ρ	=	as defined in Pt 4, Ch 1, 1.5 Symbols and definitions 1.5.1
h_4	=	tank head, in metres, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 3, 5 Design loading
h_{T1}	=	head, in metres, at mid-length of span
	=	$C_w\left(1-\frac{h_6}{D_1-T}\right)F_\lambda$, in metres where mid-length of span is above the waterline at draught T, where $\left(1-\frac{h_6}{D_1-T}\right)$ is not to be taken less than 0.7
	=	$[h_6+C_w\left(1-\frac{h_6}{2T}\right)]F_\lambda$, in metres where mid-length of span is below the waterline at draught T
Where		
h_6	=	vertical distance, in metres, from the waterline at draught T, to the mid-length of span
F_λ	=	1.0 for $L \leq 200$ m
	=	$[1.0 + 0.0023\ (L - 200)]$ for $L > 200$ m
C_w	=	a wave head, in metres
	=	$7.71 \times 10^{-2} L_e^{-0.0044\ L}$
		Where e =base of natural logarithms 2.7183
D_1	=	D but need not be taken greater than $1.6T$

PART

4

CHAPTER 1 General Cargo Ships

SECTION 7 Single bottom structure

7. 1 General

7. 1. 1 Requirements are given in this Section for single bottom construction in association with transverse framing, and are generally applicable to the following ships:

a. Cargo ships of less than 500 tons gross tonnage,
b. Ships not propelled by mechanical means, and
c. Trawlers and fishing vessels.

Cases where a single bottom structure is adopted in association with longitudinal framing will be considered.

7. 1. 2 Ships with single bottoms are to have a centre girder fitted. In addition, one side girder is to be fitted on each side of the centreline where B does not exceed 10 m, and two side girders on each side where B is greater than 10 m and does not exceed 17 m. In addition, continuous or intercostal longitudinal stiffeners are to be fitted where the panel size exceeds the ratio 4 to 1. Centre and side girders are to extend as far forward and aft as practicable, and where they cut at bulkheads the longitudinal strength is to be maintained.

7. 1. 3 Plate floors are to be fitted at every frame, and the tops of floors, in general, may be level from side to side, but in ships having considerable rise of floor, and towards the ends, the depth of the floor plates is to be increased. Floor plates forming part of a watertight or deep tank bulkhead are to be not less than 900 mm in depth measured at the centreline, and the thickness is to be not less than that required for the bottom strake of a bulkhead.

7. 1. 4 For ships intended to load or unload while aground, *See* Pt 3, Ch 9, 7 Bottom strengthening for loading and unloading aground.

Table 1. 7. 1: Single bottom girders and floors

Item	Depth, in mm	Thickness, in mm	Face plate area, in cm^2	
(1) Centre girder	As for floors	$t = \sqrt{Lk} + 2$ but not less than 6.0	$A_f = 0.67Lk$ but not less than 12.5*See* Notes 2 and 3	
(2) Side girders	As for floors	$t = \sqrt{Lk}$ but not less than 6.0	$A_f = (0.25L + 5)k$ but not less than 10.0 *See* Note 3	
(3) Floors	Where $B \leq 10$ m $d_f = 40(B + T)$ Where $B > 10$m (*See*Note 1) $d_f = 40(1.5B + T) - 200$		$t = \frac{s\sqrt{k}}{s_1}\left(\frac{d_f}{100} + 3\right)$ but not less than 6.0	$A_f = \frac{5Tsk}{s_1}\left(1 - \frac{2.5}{B}\right)$ *See* Notes 2 and 3

Symbols

L, B, T, s, k = as defined in Pt 4, Ch 1, 1.5 Symbols and definitions 1.5.1

b_f = breadth of face plate, in mm

d_f = overall depth of floor at the centreline, in mm

s_1 = a standard frame spacing, in mm, and is to be taken as $2(L + 240)$

A_f = cross-sectional area of face plate, in cm^2

Note *1.* If the side frames are attached to the floors by brackets, the Rule depth of floor may be reduced by 15 per cent and the floor thickness determined using the reduced depth. The brackets are to be flanged and have the same thickness as the floors, and their arm lengths clear of the frame and are to be the same as the reduced floor depth given above.

Note *2.* The face plate thickness of floors and centre girder is to be not less than the floor plate thickness.

Note *3.* The thickness of face plates is to be: not less than $\frac{b_f}{16\sqrt{k}}$ nor more than $\frac{b_f}{8}$

7. 1. 5 Provision is made for the free passage of water from all parts of the bottom to the suctions, taking into account the pumping rates required.

7. 2 Girders and floors

7. 2. 1 The scantlings of girders and floors are to comply with the requirements of Table 1. 7. 1: Single bottom girders and floors.

PART

4

CHAPTER **1** **General Cargo Ships**

SECTION **8** **Double bottom structure**

8. 1 Symbols and definitions

8. 1. 1 The symbols used in this Section are defined as follows:

L, B, T = as defined in Pt 4, Ch 1, 1.5 Symbols and definitions 1.5.1

d_{DB} = Rule depth of centre girder, in mm

d_{DBA} = actual depth of centre girder, in mm

h_{DB} = head from top of inner bottom to top of over-flow pipe, in metres

s = spacing of stiffeners, in mm

H_{DB} = height from tank top, at position under consideration, to deck at side amidships, in metres

Z_{BF} = section modulus of bottom frame at bracket floor, in cm^3.

8. 2 General

8. 2. 1 Except as specified in Pt 4, Ch 1, 8.2 General 8.2.5, cargo ships other than tankers are to be fitted with a double bottom extending from the collision bulkhead to the after peak bulkhead, as far as this is practicable and compatible with the design and proper working of the ship.

8. 2. 2 Where a double bottom is required to be fitted, its depth at the centreline, d_{DB}, is to be in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 1, 8.3, Girders 8.3.1 and the inner bottom is to be continued out to the ship's side in such a manner as to protect the bottom to the turn of the bilge.

8. 2. 3 Small wells constructed in the double bottom, in connection with drainage arrangements, are not to extend in depth more than necessary. In no case shall the vertical distance from the bottom of such a well to a plane coinciding with the keel line be less than 500 mm or $B/40$ whichever is greater for passenger ships and cargo ships other than tankers unless compliance for that part of the ship with paragraph 8 of SOLAS Chapter II-1 *Regulation 9 - Double bottoms in passenger ships and cargo ships other than tankers* is demonstrated. Keel line is defined in SOLAS Chapter II-1, Part A, *Regulation 2 - Definitions* and B is defined in Pt 4, Ch 1, 1.5 Symbols and definitions 1.5.1.

8. 2. 4 Other well arrangements (e.g. for lubricating oil under main engines) can be considered provided they give protection equivalent to that afforded by the double bottom. For a cargo ship of 80 m in length and upwards or for a passenger ship, proof of equivalent protection is to be shown by demonstrating that the ship is capable of withstanding bottom damages as specified in paragraph 8 of SOLAS Chapter II-1 *Regulation 9 - Double bottoms in passenger ships and cargo ships other than tankers*. Alternatively, wells for lubricating oil below main engines can protrude into the

double bottom below the boundary line defined by the distance $B/20$ provided that the vertical distance between the well bottom and a plane coinciding with the keel line is not less than $B/40$ or 500 mm, whichever is greater. For cargo ships of less than 80 m in length, the arrangements shall provide a level of safety satisfactory to the Flag Administration.

8. 2. 5 A double bottom need not be fitted in way of watertight compartments used exclusively for the carriage of liquids, provided the safety of the ship in the event of bottom damage is not thereby impaired. In addition, a double bottom need not be fitted on the following ships:

a. Cargo ships of less than 500 tons gross tonnage.
b. Ships not propelled by mechanical means.
c. Trawlers and fishing vessels.

8. 2. 6 This Section provides for longitudinal or transverse framing in the double bottom, but for ships exceeding 120 m in length and for ships strengthened for heavy cargoes, longitudinal framing is, in general, to be adopted. For the additional requirements for ships specially strengthened for heavy cargoes, *See* Pt 4, Ch 7, 1.3 General class notations.

8. 2. 7 For ships intended to load or unload while aground, *See* Pt 3, Ch 9, 7 Bottom strengthening for loading and unloading aground.

8. 2. 8 Girders and the side walls of duct keels are to be continuous, and the structure in way is to be sufficient to withstand the forces imposed by dry-docking the ship.

8. 2. 9 Adequate access is to be provided to all parts of the double bottom. The edges of all holes are to be smooth. The size of opening should not, in general, exceed 50 per cent of the double bottom depth, unless edge reinforcement is provided. In way of ends of floors and fore and aft girders at transverse bulkheads, the number and size of holes are to be kept to a minimum, and the openings are to be circular or elliptical. Edge stiffening may be required in these positions.

8. 2. 10 Provision is to be made for the free passage of air and water from all parts of the tank to the air pipes and suctions, account being taken of the pumping rates required. To ensure this, sufficient air holes and drain holes are to be provided in all longitudinal and transverse non-watertight primary and secondary members. The drain holes are to be located as close to the bottom as is practicable, and air holes are to be located as close to the inner bottom as is practicable, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 10, 5.3 Openings and Pt 4, Ch 9, 5.8 Openings in longitudinals.

8. 3 Girders

8. 3. 1 The minimum depth of the centre girder is to be taken as the greater of the following:

a. $d_{\mathrm{DB}} = 28B + 205\sqrt{T}\mathrm{mm}$
b. d_{DB}=50B mm, but need not be taken as greater than 2000 mm
c. d_{DB}=760 mm.

8. 3. 2 The centre girder thickness is to be not less than:

$t = (0.008d_{\mathrm{DB}} + 4)\sqrt{k}\mathrm{mm}$

nor less than 6.0 mm. The thickness may be determined using the value for d_{DB} without applying the minimum depths specified in Pt 4, Ch 1, 8.3 Girders 8.3.1.b and Pt 4, Ch 1, 8.3 Girders 8.3.1.c.

8. 3. 3 **In transversely framed ships** where the breadth, B, does not exceed 10 m, no side girders are required, and one vertical stiffener is to be fitted to the floors on each side, about midway between the centreline and the margin plate. One side girder is to be fitted where the breadth, B, exceeds 10 m but does not exceed 20 m, and for greater breadths two girders are to be fitted on each side of the centreline. The non-watertight side girders are to extend as far forward and aft as practicable and are to have a thickness not less than:

$t = (0.008d_{DB} + 1)\sqrt{k}\mathrm{mm}$

nor less than 6.0 mm.

8. 3. 4 Vertical stiffeners are to be fitted at every bracket floor (*See* Pt 4, Ch 1, 8.5 Floors 8.5.7), and are to have a depth not less than the depth of the tank top frame or 150 mm, whichever is the greater. For ships with a length, L, less than 90 m, stiffeners are to have a depth of not less than $1.65L$ mm with a minimum of 50 mm. The thickness is to be as required for the girder. Watertight side girders are to have a thickness 1 mm greater than required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 8.3 Girders 8.3.3 for non-watertight side girders. Where the double bottom tanks are interconnected with side tanks or cofferdams, the thickness is to be as for deep tanks (*See* Pt 4, Ch 1, 9.2 Watertight and deep tank bulkheads 9.2.1) with h, in metres, measured to the highest point at the side tank or cofferdam.

8. 3. 5 **In longitudinally framed ships** one side girder is to be fitted where the breadth, B, exceeds 14 m, and two girders are to be fitted on each side of the centreline where B exceeds 21 m. The girders are to extend as far forward and aft as practicable and are to have a thickness not less than:

$t = (0.0075d_{DB} + 1)\sqrt{k}$mm
nor less than 6.0 mm.
In general, a vertical stiffener, having a depth not less than 100 mm and a thickness equal to the girder thickness, is to be arranged midway between floors.

8. 3. 6 **Watertight side girders** are to have a plating thickness corresponding to the greater of the following:

a. $t = (0.0075d_{DB} + 2)\sqrt{k}$mm, or
b. thickness t as for deep tanks (*See* Pt 4, Ch 1, 9.2 Watertight and deep tank bulkheads 9.2.1) with h, in metres, measured to the highest point of the side tank, or cofferdam if the double bottom is interconnected with these tanks.

8. 3. 7 Watertight side girder stiffeners are to be in accordance with the requirements for watertight floors, *See* Pt 4, Ch 1, 8.5 Floors 8.5.4 and Pt 4, Ch 1, 8.5 Floors 8.5.5.

8. 3. 8 **Duct keels,** where arranged, are to have a thickness of side plates corresponding to the greater of the following:

a. $t = (0.008d_{DB} + 2)\sqrt{k}$mm, or
b. thickness t, as for deep tanks, (*See* Pt 4, Ch 1, 9.2 Watertight and deep tank bulkheads 9.2.1) with h, in metres, measured to the highest point of the side tank, or cofferdam if the double bottom tank is interconnected with these tanks.

8. 3. 9 The sides of duct keels are, in general, to be spaced not more than 2.0 m apart. Where the sides of the duct keels are arranged on either side of a centreline or side girder, each side is, in general, to be spaced not more than 2.0 m from the centreline or side girder. The inner bottom and bottom shell within the duct keel are to be suitably stiffened. The primary stiffening in the transverse direction is to be suitably aligned with the floors in the adjacent double bottom tanks. Where the duct keels are adjacent to double bottom tanks which are interconnected with side tanks or cofferdams, the stiffening is to be in accordance with the requirements for deep tanks, *See* Pt 4, Ch 1, 9.2 Watertight and deep tank bulkheads 9.2.1. Access to the duct keel is to be by watertight manholes or trunks.

8. 3. 10 The buckling requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4, 7 Hull buckling strength are also to be satisfied.

8. 4 Inner bottom plating and stiffening

8. 4. 1 The thickness of the inner bottom plating in the holds is to be not less than:

$t = 0.00136(s + 660)\sqrt[4]{k^2LT}nm$
nor less than 6.5 mm in holds and 7.5 mm under hatchways if no ceiling is fitted.

8. 4. 2 The thickness of the inner bottom plating as determined in Pt 4, Ch 1, 8.4 Inner bottom plating and stiffening 8.4.1 is to be increased by 2 mm under the hatchways if no ceiling is fitted. If cargo is to be regularly discharged by grabs, *See* Pt 4, Ch 1, 2.2 Protection of steelwork 2.2.2.

8. 4. 3 A margin plate, if fitted, is to have a thickness throughout 20 per cent greater than that required for inner bottom plating.

8. 4. 4 Where the double bottom tanks are common with side tanks or cofferdams, the thickness of the inner bottom plating is to be not less than that required for deep tanks (*See* Pt 4, Ch 1, 9.2 Watertight and deep tank bulkheads 9.2.1), with h, in metres, taken to the highest point of the side tank or cofferdam, and K_1 is to be taken as 'elsewhere'.

8. 4. 5 Inner bottom longitudinals, or tank top frames at bracket floors within the range of cargo holds, are to have a section modulus not less than 85 per cent of the Rule value for bottom longitudinals (*See* Pt 4, Ch 1, 6.2 Longitudinal stiffening 6.2.1) or bottom frames in way of bracket floors (*See* Pt 4, Ch 1, 6.3 Transverse stiffening 6.3.1), whichever is applicable. The unsupported span of tank top frames is generally not to exceed 2.5 m. Where the double bottom tanks are interconnected with side tanks, hopper and topside tanks or cofferdams, the scantlings are to be not less than those required for deep tanks, *See* Pt 4, Ch 1, 9.2 Watertight and deep tank bulkheads 9.2.1. For higher tensile steel inner bottom longitudinals the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 6.2 Longitudinal stiffening 6.2.2 are to be complied with where applicable.

8. 4. 6 The buckling requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4, 7 Hull buckling strength are also to be satisfied.

8. 5 Floors

8. 5. 1 **In longitudinally framed ships**, plate floors are to be fitted under bulkheads and elsewhere at a spacing not exceeding 3.8 m. The thickness of non-watertight plate floors is to be not less than:

$t = (0.009d_{DB} + 1)\sqrt{k}$mm

nor less than 6.0 mm. The thickness need not be greater than 15 mm, but the ratio between the depth of the double bottom and the thickness of the floor is not to exceed $130\sqrt{k}$. This ratio may, however, be exceeded if suitable additional stiffening is fitted. Vertical stiffeners are to be fitted at each longitudinal, having a depth not less than 150 mm and a thickness equal to the thickness of the floors. For ships of length, L, less than 90 m, the depth is to be not less than $1.65L$ mm, with a minimum of 50 mm.

8. 5. 2 The thickness of watertight floors for longitudinally framed ships is to be not less than:

a. $t = (0.008d_{DB} + 3)\sqrt{k}$mm, or

b. $t = (0.009d_{DB} + 1)\sqrt{k}$mm

c. whichever is the greater,

but need not exceed 15 mm on floors of normal depth. The thickness is also to satisfy the requirements for deep tanks (*See* Pt 4, Ch 1, 9.2 Watertight and deep tank bulkheads 9.2.1) with h, in metres, taken to the highest point of the side tank, or cofferdam if the double bottom tank is interconnected with these tanks. The scantlings of stiffeners are to be in accordance with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 9.2 Watertight and deep tank bulkheads 9.2.1 for deep tanks, or as required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 8.5 Floors 8.5.4 whichever is the greater. The stiffeners are to be connected to the inner bottom and shell longitudinals.

8. 5. 3 Between plate floors, transverse brackets having a thickness not less than $0.009d_{DB}$ mm are to be fitted, extending from the centre girder and margin plate to the adjacent longitudinal. The brackets, which are to be suitably stiffened at the edge, are to be fitted at every frame at the margin plate, and those at the centre girder are to be spaced not more than 1.25 m.

8. 5. 4 **In transversely framed ships**, plate floors are to be fitted under bulkheads, in way of change in depth of double bottom and elsewhere at a spacing not exceeding 3.0 m. The shell inner bottom plating between these floors is to be supported by bracket floors. The thickness of non-watertight plate floors is to be not less than:

$t = (0.008d_{DB} + 1)\sqrt{k}$mm

but need not exceed 15 mm and is to be not less than 6 mm. Watertight or strengthened floors are to be fitted below, or in the vicinity of, watertight bulkheads, and their thickness is to be 2 mm greater than that derived above for non-watertight floors, but need not exceed 15 mm on floors of normal depth. If the depth of such floors exceeds 915 mm but does not exceed 2000 mm, the floors are to be fitted with vertical stiffeners spaced not more than 915 mm apart and having a section modulus not less than:

$$Z = 5.41 d_{\mathrm{DBA}}^2 h_{\mathrm{DB}} sk \times 10^{-9} \text{ cm}^3$$

The ends of the stiffeners are to be sniped.

8. 5. 5 Where the double bottom tanks are interconnected with side tanks or cofferdams, or where the depth of floor exceeds 2000 mm, the scantlings of watertight floors are to be not less than those required for deep tanks (*See* Pt 4, Ch 1, 9.2 Watertight and deep tank bulkheads 9.2.1), and the ends of the stiffeners are to be bracketed top and bottom.

8. 5. 6 Where floors form the boundary of a sea inlet box, the thickness of the plating is to be the same as the adjacent shell, but not less than 12.5 mm and need not exceed 25 mm. The scantlings of stiffeners, where required are, in general, to comply with Pt 4, Ch 1, 9.2 Watertight and deep tank bulkheads 9.2.1 for deep tanks. Sniped ends for stiffeners on the boundaries of these spaces are to be avoided wherever practicable. The stiffeners should be bracketed or the free end suitably supported to provide alignment with backing structure.

8. 5. 7 **Where bracket floors** are fitted, the bottom frames are to be derived from Pt 4, Ch 1, 6.3 Transverse stiffening 6.3.1. The unsupported span of the frames is not to exceed 2.5 m. The breadth of the brackets attaching the frames and the reverse frames to the centre girder and margin plate is to be three-quarters of the depth of the centre girder. The brackets are to be flanged on the unsupported edge and are to have the same thickness as the plate floors.

8. 5. 8 **Where struts** are fitted to reduce the unsupported span of the frames, reverse frames and longitudinals, they are to have a cross-sectional area of not less than:

a. $A = 0.32 Z_{BF} \text{cm}^2$ for ZBF ≤ 83.5, or

b. $A = 23.2 + \frac{Z_{BF}}{25} \text{cm}^2$ for ZBF > 83.5

where Z_{BF} is the modulus, in cm^3, of the frame or longitudinal based on the effective length between floors as defined in Pt 3, Ch 3, 3 Structural idealisation.

PART

4

CHAPTER **1** **General Cargo Ships**

SECTION **9** **Bulkheads**

9. 1 General

9. 1. 1 The requirements of this Section cover watertight and deep tank transverse and longitudinal bulkheads. Requirements are also given for shaft tunnel boundaries and non-watertight bulkheads. For transverse bulkheads in way of ballast holds, stools may be required, *See* Pt 4, Ch 7, 10.2 Bulkheads supported by stools.

9. 1. 2 The requirements of this Section apply to a vertical system of stiffening on bulkheads. They may also be applied to a horizontal system of stiffening provided that equivalent end support and alignment are provided.

9. 1. 3 For number and disposition of transverse watertight bulkheads, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 4 Bulkhead requirements.

9. 1. 4 The buckling requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4, 7 Hull buckling strength are also to be satisfied.

9. 2 Watertight and deep tank bulkheads

9. 2. 1 The scantlings of watertight and deep tank bulkheads are to comply with the requirements of Table 1. 9. 1: Watertight and deep tank bulkhead scantlings to Table 1. 9. 3: Bulkhead end constraint factors. Where bulkhead stiffeners support deck girders, transverses or pillars over, the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 4.4 Deck supporting structure 4.4.11 are also to be satified.

9. 2. 2 In way of partially filled holds or tanks, the scantlings and structural arrangements of the boundary bulkheads are to be capable of withstanding the loads imposed by the movement of the liquid in those spaces. The magnitude of the predicted loadings, together with the scantling calculations may require to be submitted, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 5.4 Design pressure for partially filled tanks.

9. 2. 3 In deep tanks, fuel oil or oil carried as cargo is to have a flash point of 60°C or above (closed-cup test). Where tanks are intended for other liquid cargoes of a special nature the scantlings and arrangements will be considered in relation to the nature of the cargo.

9. 2. 4 Where watertight bulkhead stiffeners are cut in way of watertight doors in the lower part of a bulkhead, the opening is to be suitably framed and reinforced. Where stiffeners are not cut but the spacing between the stiffeners is increased on account of watertight doors, the stiffeners at the sides of the doorways are to be increased in depth and strength so that the efficiency is at least equal to that of the unpierced bulkhead, without taking the stiffness of the door frame into consideration. Watertight recesses in bulkheads are generally to be so framed and stiffened as to provide strength and stiffness equivalent to the requirements for watertight bulkheads.

9. 2. 5 A centreline bulkhead is, generally, to be fitted in deep tanks which extend from side to side of the ship and are intended for the carriage of fuel oil for the ship's use. The bulkhead may be intact or perforated as desired. If intact, the scantlings are to be as required for boundary bulkheads. If perforated, the modulus of the stiffeners may be 50 per cent of that required for boundary

bulkheads, using h_4 measured to the crown of the tank. The stiffeners are to be bracketed at top and bottom. The area of perforation is to be not less than five per cent nor more than 10 per cent of the total area of the bulkhead. Where brackets from horizontal girders on the boundary bulkheads terminate at the centreline bulkhead, adequate support and continuity are to be maintained.

9. 3 Shaft tunnels

9. 3. 1 Where shaft tunnels are required as specified in Pt 3, Ch 3, 4 Bulkhead requirements the thickness of the tunnel plating is to comply with Table 1. 9. 1: Watertight and deep tank bulkhead scantlings for holds or deep tanks as appropriate. If the top plating is well curved, the thickness may be reduced by 10 per cent in dry cargo holds. If the top plating is flat, it is to be not less than 1.1 times the thickness required for watertight bulkheads in dry cargo holds. Under hatchways the top plating is to be increased by 2 mm, unless covered with wood not less than the thickness specified in Pt 4, Ch 1, 2.2 Protection of steelwork 2.2.2, which is to be secured by fastenings which do not penetrate the plating. Where it is intended to use plywood or other forms of ceiling of an approved type instead of planking, the thickness will be considered in each case. The tunnel stiffeners are to comply with Table 1. 9. 1: Watertight and deep tank bulkhead scantlings for holds or deep tanks, as appropriate. When the section modulus of curved stiffeners is determined, the values of ω_1 and ω_2 are to be taken as 1.0. The span of the stiffener, l_e, is to be taken as the overall height of the tunnel, measured vertically at the centreline of the tunnel. If the tunnel top is flat, scantlings of the stiffeners are also to comply with Pt 4, Ch 1, 4.3 Deck stiffening. The lower end connection to the tank top is to be welded. Additional strengthening is to be fitted under the heels of pillars or masts stepped on the tunnel.

Table 1. 9. 1: Watertight and deep tank bulkhead scantlings

Item and requirement	Watertight bulkheads	Deep tank bulkheads
(1) Plating thickness for plane, symmetrically corrugated and double plate bulkheads	$t = 0.004sf\sqrt{h_4 k}$mm but not less than 5.5 mm	$t = 0.004sf\sqrt{\frac{\rho h_4 k}{1.025}} + 2.5$mm but not less than 6.5 mm, where L<90 m; not less than 7.5 mm, where L≥90m
	In the case of symmetrical corrugations, s is to be taken as b or c in Figure 3. 3. 1: Corrugation dimensions in Pt 3, Ch 3, whichever is the greater	
(2) Modulus of rolled and built stiffeners, swedges, double plate bulkheads and symmetrical corrugations	$Z = \frac{skh_4 l_e^2}{71\gamma(\omega_1+\omega_2+2)} cm^3$	$Z = \frac{skh_4 l_e^2}{22\gamma(\omega_1+\omega_2+2)} cm^3$
	In the case of symmetrical corrugations, s is to be taken as p, *See also* Note 2	
(3) Inertia of rolled and built stiffeners and swedges	—	$I = \frac{2.3}{k} l_e Z cm^4$

(4) Symmetrical corrugations and double plate bulkheads	Additional requirements to be complied with as detailed in Table 1. 9. 2: Symmetrical corrugations and double plate bulkheads (additional requirements)	
(5) Stringers or webs supporting vertical or horizontal stiffening		
(a) Modulus	$Z = 5.5\mathrm{kh}_4\mathrm{Sle}^2$ cm^3	$Z = 11.7\rho k h_4 S l_e^2$ cm^3
(b) Inertia	—	$I = \frac{2.5}{k} l_e Z cm^4$

Symbols

s, S, I, k, ρ as defined in Pt 4, Ch 1, 1.5 Symbols and definitions 1.5.1

d_w = web depth of stiffening member, in mm

f = $1.1 - \frac{s}{2500S}$ but not to be taken greater than 1.0

h_4 = load head, in metres measured as follows:

For watertight bulkhead plating, the distance vertically from a point one-third of the height of the plate above its lower edge to a point 0.91 m above the bulkhead deck at side or perpendicular to the deepest equilibrium waterline in damaged condition obtained from applicable damage stability calculations, whichever is the greater, *See also* Figure 3. 5. 2: Heads for watertight and deep tank bulkheads in Pt 3, Ch 3

For deep tank bulkhead plating, the distance from a point one-third of the height of the plate above its lower edge to the top of the tank, or half the distance to the top of the overflow, whichever is the greater, *See also* Figure 3. 5. 2: Heads for watertight and deep tank bulkheads in Pt 3, Ch 3

For watertight bulkhead stiffeners or girders, the distance vertically from the middle of the effective length to a point 0.91 m above the bulkhead deck at sideside, or perpendicular to the deepest equilibrium waterline in damaged condition obtained from applicable damage stability calculations, whichever is the greater, *See also* Figure 3. 5. 2: Heads for watertight and deep tank bulkheads in Pt 3, Ch 3

For deep tank bulkhead stiffeners or girders, the distance from the middle of the effective length to the top of the tank, or half the distance to the top of the overflow, whichever is the greater, *See also* Figure 3. 5. 2: Heads for watertight and deep tank bulkheads

l_e = effective length of stiffening member, in metres, and for bulkhead stiffeners, to be taken as $l - e_1 - e_2$, *See also* Figure 1. 9. 1: End connections

p = spacing of corrugations as shown in Figure 3.3.1 Corrugation dimensions

γ = 1.4 for rolled or built sections and double plate bulkheads

= 1.6 for flat bars

= 1.1 for symmetrical corrugations of deep tank bulkheads

= 1.0 for symmetrical corrugations of watertight bulkheads

ω, e = as defined in Table 1. 9. 3: Bulkhead end constraint factors, *See also* Figure 1. 9. 1: End connections

Note *1.* In no case are the scantlings of deep tank bulkheads to be less than the requirements for watertight bulkheads where watertight bulkheads are required by Pt 3, Ch 3, 5 Design loading.

Note *2.* In calculating the actual modulus of symmetrical corrugations the panel width b is not to be taken greater than that given by Pt 3, Ch 3, 3.2, Geometric properties of section

Note *3.* For rolled or built stiffeners with flanges or face plates, the web thickness is to be not less than $\frac{d_w}{60\sqrt{k}}$ whilst for flat bar stiffeners the web thickness is to be not less than $\frac{d_w}{60\sqrt{k}}$

Figure 1. 9. 1: End connections

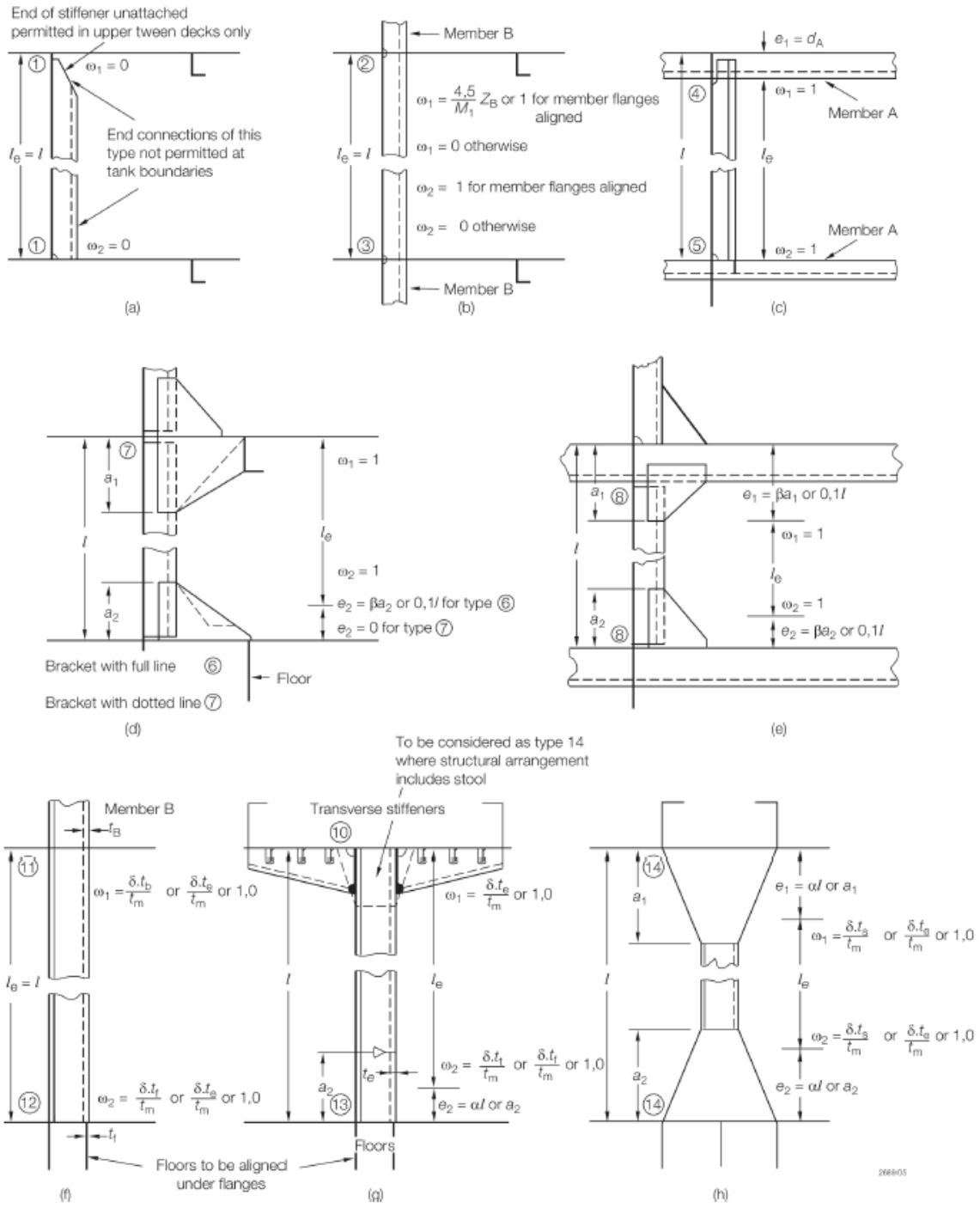


Table 1. 9. 2: Symmetrical corrugations and double plate bulkheads (additional requirements)

Symbols	Type of bulkhead	Parameter	Watertight bulkheads	Deep tank bulkheads

s, *k* as defined in Pt 4, Ch 1, 1.5 Symbols and definitions 1.5.1 *b* = panel width as shown in Figure 3. 3. 1: Corrugation dimensions in Pt 3, Ch 3 Structural Design *d* = depth, in mm, of symmetrical corrugation or double plate bulkhead l_e as defined in Table 1. 9. 1: Watertight and deep tank bulkhead scantlings A_w = shear area, in cm^2, of webs of double plate bulkhead θ = angle of web corrugation to plane of bulkhead	Symmetrically corrugated, *See also* Notes 1 and 2	$\frac{b}{t}$	Not to exceed: $85\sqrt{k}$ at top, and $70\sqrt{k}$ at bottom	Not to exceed: $70\sqrt{k}$ at top, and at bottom
		d	—	To be not less than: $39l_e$ mm
		θ	To be not less than 40°	
Note *1.* The plating thickness at the middle of span l_e of corrugated or double plate bulkheads is to extend not less than $0.2l_e$ m above mid span. **Note** *2.* Where the span of corrugations exceeds 15 m, a diaphragm plate is to be arranged at about mid-span. **Note** *3. See also* Pt 3, Ch 10, 5.2 Arrangements at intersections of continuous secondary and primary members 5.2.1.	Double plate, *See also* Notes 1 and 3	$\frac{s}{t}$	Not to exceed:	$75\sqrt{k}$ at top, and $65\sqrt{k}$ at bottom
		$\frac{d}{t_w}$	Not to exceed:	$85\sqrt{k}$ at top, and $75\sqrt{k}$ at bottom
		d	—	To be not less than: $39l_e$ mm
		A_w	To be not less than: $\frac{0.12Z}{l_e} cm^2$ at top and $\frac{0.18Z}{l_e} cm^2$ at bottom	To be not less than: $\frac{0.07Z}{l_e} cm^2$ at top and $\frac{0.10Z}{l_e} cm^2$ at bottom

Table 1. 9. 3: Bulkhead end constraint factors

Type	End connection (*See* Figure 1. 9. 1: End connections)		ω	*e*	μ
Rolled or built stiffeners and swedges					
1	End of stiffeners unattached or attached to plating only		0	0	—
2	Members with webs and flanges (or bulbs) in line and attached at deck or horizontal girder, *See also* Note 1	Adjacent member of B of smaller modulus	The lesser of $\frac{4.5Z_B}{M_1}$ or 1.0	0	—
3		Adjacent member of B of same or larger modulus	1.0	0	—
4	Bracketless connection to longitudinal member	Member A within length *l*	1.0	$\frac{d_A}{1000}$	—
5		Member A outside length *l*	1.0	0	—

6	Bracketed connection	To transverse member	Bracket extends to floor	1.0	The lesser of βa or $0.1l$	—
7			Otherwise	1.0	0	—
8		To longitudinal member		1.0	The lesser of βa or $0.1l$	—
Symmetrical corrugations or double plate bulkheads						
9	Welded directly to deck– no bulkhead in line	No longitudinal brackets		0	0	—
10		With longitudinal brackets and transverse stiffeners supporting corrugated bulkhead		The lesser of $\frac{\delta t_e}{t_m}$ or 1.0	0	—
11	Welded directly to deck or girder	Bulkhead B, having same section, in line		The least of $\frac{\delta t_f}{t_m}$ or $\frac{\delta t_e}{t_m}$ or 1.0	0	—
12	Welded directly to tank top and effectively supported by floors in line with each bulkhead flange, *See also* Note 2	Thickness at bottom same as that at mid-span		The least of $\frac{\delta t_f}{t_m}$ or $\frac{\delta t_e}{t_m}$ or 1.0	0	—
13		Thickness at bottom greater than that at mid-span		The least of $\frac{\delta t_f}{t_m}$ or $\frac{\delta t_e}{t_m}$ or 1.0	The lesser of αl or a	The lesser of $\frac{t_f}{t_m}$ or $\frac{t_e}{t_m}$
14	Welded to stool efficiently supported by ship's structure			For deep tank bulkheads 1.0 For watertight bulkheads the least of $\frac{\delta t_s}{t_m}$ or $\frac{\delta t_e}{t_m}$ or 1.0	The lesser of αl or a	$\frac{10Z_s}{M_2}$
Symbols						

s, l, ρ, *k,* as defined in Pt 4, Ch 1, 1.5 Symbols and definitions 1.5.1

a = height, in metres, of bracket or end stool or lowest strake of plating of symmetrically corrugated or double plate bulkheads, *See* Figure 1. 9. 1: End connections

d_A = web depth, in mm, of adjacent member A

e = effective length, in metres, of bracket or end stool, *See* Figure 1. 9. 1: End connections

h_o = h_4 but measured from the middle of the overall length l

l_e, p, h as defined in Table 1. 9. 1: Watertight and deep tank bulkhead scantlings

t_B = thickness, in mm, of flange plating of member B

t_f = thickness, in mm, of supporting floor

t_m, t_e, = thickness, in mm, of flange plating of corrugation or double plate bulkhead at mid-span or end, respectively Subscripts 1 and 2 when applied to ω, *e*, and *a* refer to the top and bottom ends of stiffener

$M_1 = \frac{ph_4sl_{2e}}{71}$ for watertight bulkheads

$= \frac{ph_4sl_{2e}}{22}$ for deep tank bulkheads

$M_2 = \frac{ph_0sl_2}{71}$ for watertight bulkheads

$= \frac{ph_0sl_2}{22}$ for deep tank bulkheads

In the case of symmetrical corrugations $s=p$

Z_B = section modulus, in cm^3, of adjacent member B

Z_s = section modulus, in cm^3, of horizontal section of stool adjacent to deck or tank top over breadth *s* or *p* (as applicable)

All material which is continuous from top to bottom of stool may be included in the calculation

α = a factor depending on μ and determined as follows:

where $\mu \leq 1.0$ $\alpha = 0$

where $\mu > 1.0$ $\alpha = 0.5 - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\mu+2}}$

β = a factor depending on the end bracket stiffening and to be taken as:

1.0 for brackets with face bars directly connected to stiffener face bars
0.7 for flanged brackets
0.5 for unflanged brackets

μ = a factor representing end constraint for symmetrical corrugation and double plate bulkheads

ω = an end constraint factor relating to the different types of end connection, *See* Figure 1. 9. 1: End connections

t_s = thickness, in mm, of stool adjacent to bulkhead

δ = 1.0 generally

$\delta = \frac{0.932\sqrt{k}}{\xi}$ for corrugated watertight bulkheads

ξ = 1.0 where full continuity of corrugation webs is provided at the ends

ξ = greater of 1.0 and (η + 0.333) where full continuity is not provided

η = lesser of 1.0 and $\frac{50t_m\sqrt{k}}{b}$ for welded sections

η = lesser of 1.0 and $\frac{60t_m\sqrt{k}}{b}$ for cold formed sections

Note *1*. Where the end connection is similar to type 2 or 3, but member flanges (or bulbs) are not aligned and brakets are not fitted, ω=0.

Note *2*. Where the end connection is similar to type 12 or 13, but a transverse girder is arranged in place of one of the supporting floors, special consideration will be required.

PART

4

CHAPTER **2** **Ferries, Roll On-Roll Off Ships and Passenger Ships**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**1513**
	1. 1	Application	1513
	1. 2	Structural configuration	1514
	1. 3	Class notations	1515
	1. 4	Information required	1516
	1. 5	Symbols	1516
SECTION 2	**Longitudinal strength**		**1518**
	2. 1	General	1518
	2. 2	Calculation of hull section modulus	1518
	2. 3	Still water bending moments and shear forces	1519
	2. 4	Design vertical wave bending moments	1519
	2. 5	Design wave shear force	1522
	2. 6	Buckling strength	1523
SECTION 3	**Deck structure**		**1525**
	3. 1	Loading	1525
	3. 2	Deck stiffening	1527
	3. 3	Deck supporting primary structure	1528
SECTION 4	**Shell envelope plating**		**1529**
	4. 1	Bottom and side shell	1529
	4. 2	Bow flare and wave impact pressures	1530
	4. 3	Strengthening for wave impact loads	1534
SECTION 5	**Shell envelope framing**		**1536**
	5. 1	Side structure	1536
	5. 2	Strengthening for wave impact loads	1537
SECTION 6	**Double bottom**		**1542**

6. 1 General 1542
6. 2 Transmission of pillar loads 1542
6. 3 Ferries and passenger ships with a specified operating area service 1543
SECTION 7 Peak, watertight and deep tank bulkheads 1544
7. 1 General 1544
7. 2 Ferries and passenger ships with a specified operating area service 1544
SECTION 8 Bow doors and inner doors 1545
8. 1 Symbols 1545
8. 2 General 1548
8. 3 Scantlings 1548
8. 4 Vehicle ramps 1550
8. 5 Arrangements for the closing, securing and supporting of doors 1550
8. 6 Design of securing and supporting devices 1550
8. 7 Operating and Maintenance Manual 1553
SECTION 9 Subdivision structure on vehicle deck 1555
9. 1 General 1555
9. 2 Design loads 1555
9. 3 Height of subdivision structure 1557
9. 4 Material 1557
9. 5 Scantlings of subdivision structure other than doors 1557
9. 6 Scantlings of subdivision doors 1557
9. 7 Closing, securing and supporting of subdivision doors 1558
9. 8 Access doors 1559
9. 9 Watertightness and drainage 1559
9. 10 Ventilation of vehicle deck spaces 1560
9. 11 Operating and Maintenance Manual 1560
SECTION 10 Masts and standing rigging 1561
10. 1 General 1561
10. 2 Design loadings and allowable stresses 1561
10. 3 Materials of mast construction 1562
10. 4 Standing rigging 1562
10. 5 Design loadings 1563
10. 6 Shroud and stay attachment points 1563
10. 7 Materials for rigging 1564

10. 8 Testing and certification 1564
SECTION 11 Miscellaneous openings 1565
11. 1 General 1565
11. 2 Openings in main vehicle deck 1565
11. 3 Strength assessment of windows in large passenger ships 1566
11. 4 Frame design and testing 1568
11. 5 Strength of mullions 1568
11. 6 Bonded windows and side scuttles 1569
SECTION 12 External glass balustrades 1572
12. 1 General 1572
12. 2 Design considerations 1572
12. 3 Weather design loads 1573
12. 4 Personnel design loads 1573
12. 5 Balustrade stanchions 1573
12. 6 Balustrade top rail 1573
12. 7 Impact Resistance and Containment 1574
SECTION 13 Direct calculation 1575
13. 1 Application 1575
13. 2 Procedures 1575

PART

4

CHAPTER **2** **Ferries, Roll On-Roll Off Ships and Passenger Ships**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 2. 2. 1: Buckling factors of safety, λ 1523

Table 2. 3. 1: Design deck loadings (ferries and passenger ships only) 1525

Table 2. 3. 2: Thickness of deck plating for ferries and passenger ships where a relevant SDA is applied 1526

Table 2. 3. 3: Modulus of deck beams and longitudinals for ferries and passenger ships where a relevant SDA is applied 1527

Table 2. 4. 1: End shell thickness 1530

Table 2. 4. 2: Positions at which α_p, β_p and γ_p are to be measured 1533

Table 2. 8. 1: Combination of external loads 1552

Table 2. 9. 1: Permissible stress values 1558

Table 2. 9. 2: Permissible stress values 1559

Table 2. 10. 1: Ship motions 1561

Table 2. 11. 1: Acceptable arrangements of glazing in lieu of portable storm covers/deadlights 1566

Table 2. 11. 2: Design pressure, H_d, on windows 1567

Table 2. 11. 3: Thickness of toughened glass 1567

Table 2. 11. 4: Mullion arrangements 1569

PART

4

CHAPTER **2** **Ferries, Roll On-Roll Off Ships and Passenger Ships**

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 2. 2. 1: Derivation of bow and stern flare areas 1521
Figure 2. 2. 2: Shear force factor K_f 1523
Figure 2. 4. 1: Bow flare and bottom slamming angles 1534
Figure 2. 4. 2: Chord spacing and mean chord spacing for secondary members 1535
Figure 2. 5. 1: Distance between span support points and curvature 1537
Figure 2. 5. 2: Mean spacing between primary members, S_{cm}, and the extents of wave impact pressure g_{bfh} and g_{bfv} 1540
Figure 2. 8. 1: Bow door (upward hinging) 1547
Figure 2. 8. 2: Definition of α and β 1547
Figure 2. 8. 3: Typical supporting device between doors 1553
Figure 2. 9. 1: Design heads for different locations in compartment 1556
Figure 2. 10. 1: Definition of h_{eye} and l_{eye} 1564
Figure 2. 11. 1: Gap width between flange and window, bonded from outside of the ship 1571

PART

4

CHAPTER 2 **Ferries, Roll On-Roll Off Ships and Passenger Ships**

SECTION 1 **General**

1. 1 Application

1. 1. 1 This Chapter applies to seagoing passenger ships and ferries, including those with roll on-roll off capability, as well as passenger yachts, sailing passenger ships, roll on-roll off cargo ships and vehicle carriers defined as follows:

a. A **passenger ship** is defined as a ship specially designed and constructed for the carriage of more than 12 passengers.

b. A **passenger ferry** is defined as a ship specially designed and constructed for the carriage of more than 12 passengers on a regular scheduled service between specified ports operating in reasonable weather conditions. Reasonable weather is defined in Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.1 Definitions 2.1.5

c. A **roll on-roll off passenger ship** is defined as a ship specially designed and constructed for the carriage of more than 12 passengers, as well as the carriage of vehicles accessed by means of ramps and doors located at the bow, stern or through the side shell, or any combination thereof.

d. A **roll on-roll off passenger ferry** is defined as a ship specially designed and constructed for the carriage of more than 12 passengers, as well as the carriage of vehicles accessed by means of ramps and doors located at the bow, stern or through the side shell, or any combination thereof where the ferry is on regular scheduled service between specified ports operating in reasonable weather. Reasonable weather is defined in Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.1 Definitions 2.1.5

e. A **passenger/vehicle ferry** has the same definition as a roll on-roll off passenger ferry.

f. A **passenger yacht** is defined as a yacht that is specially designed and constructed in accordance with National Administration requirements for passenger yachts.

g. A **sailing passenger ship** is defined as a ship specially designed and constructed for the carriage of more than 12 passengers and incorporating sail devices which are intended to be the primary means of propulsion.

h. A **roll on-roll off cargo ship** is defined as a ship specially designed and constructed for the carriage of vehicles and cargo in pallet form or in containers, loaded/unloaded by wheeled vehicles and accessed by means of ramps and doors located at the bow, stern or through the side shell, or any combination thereof.

i. A **vehicle carrier**, sometimes referred to as a pure car carrier or a pure car/truck carrier, is defined as a ship specially designed and constructed for the carriage of large numbers of vehicles, accessed by means of ramps and doors located at the stern and/or through the side shell.

1. 1. 2 Ships intended to operate only in certain areas or conditions which have been agreed by the Committee, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 2 Classification Regulations, will receive individual

consideration on the basis of the Rules with respect to the environmental conditions agreed for the design basis and approval.

1. 1. 3 The scantlings and arrangements are to be as required by Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships except as otherwise specified in this Chapter.

1. 1. 4 The scantlings of the primary supporting structure for multi-decked passenger ships are to be assessed by direct calculation, in accordance with the *ACSPlus Structural Design Assessment Guideline* for passenger ships, wherever:

a. the superstructure will be subjected to significant load from flexure of the hull girder; or
b. it is required to utilise the load-carrying capability of the superstructure for longitudinal strength; or
c. a limited number of transverse bulkheads above the bulkhead deck are present to carry the racking response ; or
d. as required by ACS.

See also Pt 4, Ch 2, 1.3 Class notations 1.3.7 and Pt 4, Ch 2, 13 Direct calculation.

1. 1. 5 A multi-decked ship is generally defined as a ship having one or more continuous decks above the bulkhead deck which contribute to the global strength of the ship. The efficiency of decks can vary in conjunction with their length, scantlings arrangement and materials.

1. 1. 6 The scantlings of the primary supporting structure of a vehicle ferry, passenger/vehicle ferry, roll on–roll off cargo ship, roll on–roll off passenger ship or vehicle carrier are to be assessed by direct calculation in accordance with the *ACSPlus Structural Design Assessment Guideline* for Ro–Ro ships and the *ACSPlus Construction Monitoring Guideline. See also* Pt 4, Ch 2, 1.3 Class notations 1.3.7 and Pt 4, Ch 2, 13 Direct calculation.

1. 1. 7 For the purpose of providing operational information to the Master for safe return to port after a flooding casualty, passenger ships having a Load Line length of 120 m or more or having three or more main vertical zones are to have:

a. an onboard stability computer; or
b. shore-based support.

Where an onboard computer system having a stability computation capability is provided, the system is to be certified in accordance with ACS's document entitled *Approval of Longitudinal Strength and Stability Calculations Programs*, *See also* Pt 1, Ch 2, 1.1 General 1.1.11.

1. 2 Structural configuration

1. 2. 1 The requirements provide for a basic structural configuration of a multi-deck hull which includes a double bottom, and in some cases wing tanks up to the lowest deck.

1. 2. 2 For passenger ships, the structural arrangements detailed in Chapter II-1, Part B, of the *International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea, 1974*, and applicable amendments as they apply to passenger ships are to be complied with in their entirety.

1. 2. 3 Where bulkheads are omitted in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 3, 4 Bulkhead requirements, a system of partial bulkheads, web frames and deck transverses should be fitted to provide equivalent transverse strength.

1. 2. 4 Longitudinal framing is, in general, to be adopted at the strength deck and at the bottom, but special consideration will be given to proposals for transverse framing in these regions.

1. 2. 5 Reference should be made to the Regulations of the *International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea, 1974* and applicable amendments and to the relevant Statutory Requirements of the National Authority of the country in which the ship is to be registered.

1. 2. 6 Attention is also drawn to the requirements for passenger ships given in:

- Bulkhead requirements, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 4 Bulkhead requirements

- Closing arrangements for shell, deck and bulkheads, *See* Pt 3, Ch 11, 6 Miscellaneous openings, Pt 3, Ch 11, 8 Side and stern doors and other shell openings and Pt 3, Ch 11, 9 Watertight doors in bulkheads below the freeboard deck
- Electrical installations, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2 Electrical Engineering
- Fire protection, detection and extinction, *See* SOLAS Reg. II-2 *Part B - Prevention of fire and explosion1* and *Part C - Suppression of fire*.

1. 2. 7 Attention is drawn to National Authority requirements relating to the stowage and securing of vehicles and cargo units on board roll on-roll off ships. Steel used for the construction of fixed securing fittings attached to the ship's structure is to comply with the requirements of Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials , or with an equivalent acceptable specification. Due account is to be taken of the grade and tensile strength of the hull material in way of the attachment and the chemical composition of the steel is to be such as to ensure acceptable qualities of weldability.

1. 2. 8 Sailing passenger ships are to be fitted with auxiliary propulsive power to ensure adequate speed and manoeuvrability of the vessel in conditions when the sail systems are not available for use. The auxiliary propulsion and other essential machinery are to comply with the requirements of Pt 5 Main and Auxiliary Machinery of the Rules, as applicable.

1. 2. 9 Sail systems may be made up in the form of soft sails, semi-rigid and rigid sail configurations including wind turbines or systems incorporating rotating cylinders.

1. 2. 10 For sailing vessels, a continuous visual read out of the apparent wind speed and direction is to be available to the ship's master when the vessel is under way. Sail control and service systems are to provide adequate speed of response to neutralise the sail system in the event of high wind conditions. Sufficient information and evidence is to be submitted to substantiate that the foregoing arrangements are in place.

1. 2. 11 For sailing passenger ships, the Rules for classification will, in principle, apply to the mast arrangements and standing gear, but will exclude running gear, yards, booms and sail arrangements.

1. 2. 12 For sailing passenger ships, the equipment requirements will be in accordance with the letter and numeral two grades higher than that corresponding to the calculated Equipment Numeral.

1. 3 Class notations

1. 3. 1 In general, ships complying with the requirements of this Chapter will be eligible to be classed:

- **'100A1 passenger ship'**, or
- **'100A1 passenger ferry'**, or
- **'100A1 roll on-roll off passenger ship'**,or
- **'100A1 roll on-roll off passenger ferry'**,or
- **'100A1 passenger/vehicle ferry'**, or
- **'100A1 passenger yacht'**, or
- **'100A1 sailing passenger ship'**, or
- **'100A1 roll on-roll off cargo ship'**, or
- **'100A1 vehicle carrier'**.

1. 3. 2 متنی وجود ندارد

1. 3. 3 A ship assigned a class notation incorporating the word `passenger', which is also designed to fulfil other functions not associated with passenger carrying is to comply with the requirements of this Chapter for passenger ships together with the requirements of the relevant Chapter of this Part for the particular ship type.

1. 3. 4 Where ferries are specially reinforced for the carriage of trains on fixed rails, the class notation will also include the word `train'.

1. 3. 5 The Regulations for the classification and assignment of class notations are given in Pt 1, Ch 2 Classification Regulations, to which reference should be made.

1. 3. 6 The 'ACSPlus Guidelines' for hull construction of ships are detailed in Pt 3, Ch 16 ACSPlus Guidelines for the Design, Construction and Lifetime Care of Ships and the classification notations and descriptive notes associated with these procedures are given in Pt 1, Ch 2, 2 Character of classification and class notations.

1. 3. 7 The 'Structural Design Assessment' (**SDA**) and 'Construction Monitoring' (**CM**) Guidelines detailed in the *ACSPlus Guidelines Manual*, published by ACS, are mandatory for multi-decked passenger ships where it is considered that the superstructure will be subjected to a significant load from flexure of the hull girder; or, where it is required to utilise the load carrying capability of the superstructure for longitudinal strength, and for other passenger ships of abnormal hull form, or of unusual structural configuration or complexity.

1. 4 Information required

1. 4. 1 In addition to the information and plans required by Pt 3, Ch 1, 5 Information required, the following details are to be submitted:

- The intended service areas required for ships designed to operate within specified geographical limits.
- Stern or bow ramps.
- Bow, stern and side doors.
- Movable decks, if fitted, including stowing arrangements for portable components.
- Sail plans and associated operational and design conditions, including apparent wind speeds (sailing ships).
- Masts and all structural components of the standing rigging (sailing ships).
- The standing rigging and all standing rigging attachments (sailing ships).
- The design deck loadings including details of wheeled vehicles, *See* Pt 3, Ch 9, 3 Decks loaded by wheeled vehicles, and trains, where applicable.
- Locations of fixed securing points for wheeled vehicles, with indication of the magnitude and direction of the imposed lashing force.

1. 5 Symbols

1. 5. 1 For the definition of symbols not defined in this Chapter, *See* Pt 4, Ch 1, 1.5, Symbols and definitions.

1. 5. 2 The following definitions apply to ships employing sails:

Standing rigging – Rigging of fixed length used to support masts/bowsprit.

Running rigging – Rigging used to control yards, booms and sails and which may pass over revolving sheaves.

Apparent wind speed – The vector resultant of the combination of real wind speed and ship velocity.

PART

4

CHAPTER **2** **Ferries, Roll On-Roll Off Ships and Passenger Ships**

SECTION **2** **Longitudinal strength**

2. 1 General

2. 1. 1 Longitudinal strength calculations are to be made in accordance with the requirements given in Pt 3, Ch 4 Longitudinal Strength and the additional notes contained in this Section.

2. 1. 2 The design vertical wave bending moments and design wave shear forces to be used in Pt 3, Ch 4 Longitudinal Strength are to be determined in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 2, 2.5, Design wave shear force and Pt 4, Ch 2, 2.4, Design vertical wave bending moments below. For ships of unusual hullform or where their design parameters are outwith the applicability of the Rules, *See* Pt 3, Ch 4 Longitudinal Strength, special consideration will be given to the values and distributions of the wave induced global loads.

2. 1. 3 The still water bending moment and shear force envelopes are to take into account the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 2, 2.3, Still water bending moments and shear forces.

2. 1. 4 For ships where the side shell or side casings contain large openings or where the effectiveness of the superstructures in resisting hull girder bending loads is expected to be reduced by the presence of large numbers of windows or openings, the combined hull and superstructure response may require to be verified using direct calculation techniques.

2. 2 Calculation of hull section modulus

2. 2. 1 The calculation of section modulus is to be in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 3, 3.4, Calculation of hull section modulus and the additional notes in this Section. In general, the effective sectional area of continuous longitudinal strength members, after deduction of openings, is to be used for the calculation of midship section modulus. For ships where the effectiveness of the superstructure is only partial due to the presence of large or numerous shell openings or discontinuities in the shell envelope, an equivalent section modulus for the purposes of this Section may be derived using direct calculations in accordance with the SDA Guideline relevant to the ship type.

2. 2. 2 Structural members which contribute to the overall hull girder strength are to be carefully aligned so as to avoid discontinuities resulting in abrupt variations of stresses and are to be kept clear of any form of openings which may affect their structural performances.

2. 2. 3 In general, short superstructures, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3.4 Calculation of hull section modulus 3.4.2, or deckhouses will not be accepted as contributing to the global longitudinal or transverse strength of the ship. However, where it is proposed to include substantial continuous stiffening members, special consideration will be given to their inclusion on submission of the designer's/ Builder's calculations, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 2, 2.6 Buckling strength.

2. 2. 4 Adequate transition arrangements are to be fitted at the ends of effective continuous longitudinal strength members in the deck and bottom structures.

2. 2. 5 Scantlings of all continuous longitudinal members of the hull girder based on the minimum section stiffness requirements determined from Pt 4, Ch 4, 5 Lifting appliances, equipment integration and foundations are to be maintained within 0.4L amidships. However, in special cases, based on consideration of type of ship, hull form and loading conditions, the scantlings may be gradually reduced towards the ends of the 0.4L part, bearing in mind the desire not to inhibit the ship's loading and operational flexibility.

2. 2. 6 Structural material which is longitudinally continuous but which is not considered to be fully effective for longitudinal strength purposes may be specially considered. The global longitudinal strength assessment must take into account the presence of such material when it can be considered effective. The consequences of failure of such structural material and subsequent redistribution of stresses into or additional loads imposed on the remaining structure is to be considered.

2. 2. 7 In particular, all longitudinally continuous material will be fully effective in tension whereas this may not be so in compression due to a low buckling capability. In this case, it may be necessary to derive and apply different hull girder section moduli to the hogging and sagging bending moment cases.

2. 3 Still water bending moments and shear forces

2. 3. 1 The design still water hogging and sagging bending moment distribution envelope, M_S, is to be taken as the maximum sagging (negative) and maximum hogging (positive) still water bending moments, calculated at each position along the ship. The maximum moments from all loading conditions are to be used to define the still water bending moment distribution envelope.

2. 3. 2 It is normal for ships which have a low deadweight requirement or a uniform loading rate in association with a low block coefficient to have a hogging still water bending moment in all conditions of loading. For these ships, the maximum design sagging still water bending moment may be taken as the minimum actual hogging bending moment.

2. 3. 3 The design still water shear force distribution envelope, Q_S, is to be taken as the maximum positive and negative shear force values, calculated at each position along the ship. The maximum shear forces from all loading conditions are to be used to define the still water shear force distribution envelope.

2. 4 Design vertical wave bending moments

2. 4. 1 The minimum value of vertical wave bending moment, M_w at any position along the ship may be taken as follows:

$$M_w = f_1 f_2 C_2 M_{wo} \text{kNm}$$

where

M_{wo} = $0.1 C_1 L^2 B_{WL}(C_b + 0.7)$kNm

B_{WL} = maximum waterline breadth, in metres

= C_1, C_2, L and C_b are given in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5 Hull bending strength

= and

f_1 = is given in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5 Hull bending strength

f_2 = is the hogging, f_{fH}, or sagging, f_{fS}, correction factor based on the amount of bow flare, stern flare, length and effective buoyancy of the aft end of the ship above the waterline

f_{fS} = is the sagging (negative) moment correction factor and is to be taken as

f_{fS} = $-1.10R_A^{0.3}$ for values of $R_A > 1.0$

f_{fS} = -1.10 for values of $R_A \leq 1.0$

f_{fH} = is the hogging (positive) moment correction factor and is to be taken as

f_{fH} = $$\frac{1.9C_b}{(C_b + 0.7)^d}$$

= R_A is an area ratio factor, *See* Pt 4, Ch 2, 2.4 Design vertical wave bending moments 2.4.2.

2. 4. 2 The area ratio factor, R_A, for the combined stern and bow shape is to be derived as follows:

$$R_A = \frac{30(A_{BF} + 0.5A_{SF})}{LB_{WL}}$$

Where

A_{BF} = is the bow flare area, in m^2

A_{SF} = is the stern flare area, in m^2

2. 4. 3 The bow flare area, A_{BF}, is illustrated in Figure 2. 2. 1: Derivation of bow and stern flare areas and may be derived as follows:

$$A_{BF}\text{-}A_{UB}\text{-}A_{LB}\ m^2$$

Where

A_{UB} = is half the water plane area at a waterline of $T_{C,U}$ of the bow region of the hull forward of $0.8L$ from the AP

A_{LB} = is half the water plane area at the design draught of the bow region of the hull forward of $0.8L$ from the AP

= Note the AP is to be taken at the aft end of L

= The design draught is to be taken as T, *See* Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1, Principal particulars.

Alternatively the following formula may be used

$$A_{BF} = 0.005L(b_0 + 2b_1 + b_2) + b_0 a/2 m^2$$

Where

b_0 = projection of $T_{C,U}$ waterline outboard of the design draught waterline at the FP, in metres, *See* Figure 2. 2. 1: Derivation of bow and stern flare areas

b_1 = projection of $T_{C,U}$ waterline outboard of the design draught waterline at $0.9L$ from the AP, in metres

b_2 = projection of $T_{C,U}$ waterline outboard of the design draught waterline at $0.8L$ from the AP, in metres

a = projection of $T_{C,U}$ waterline forward of the FP, in metres

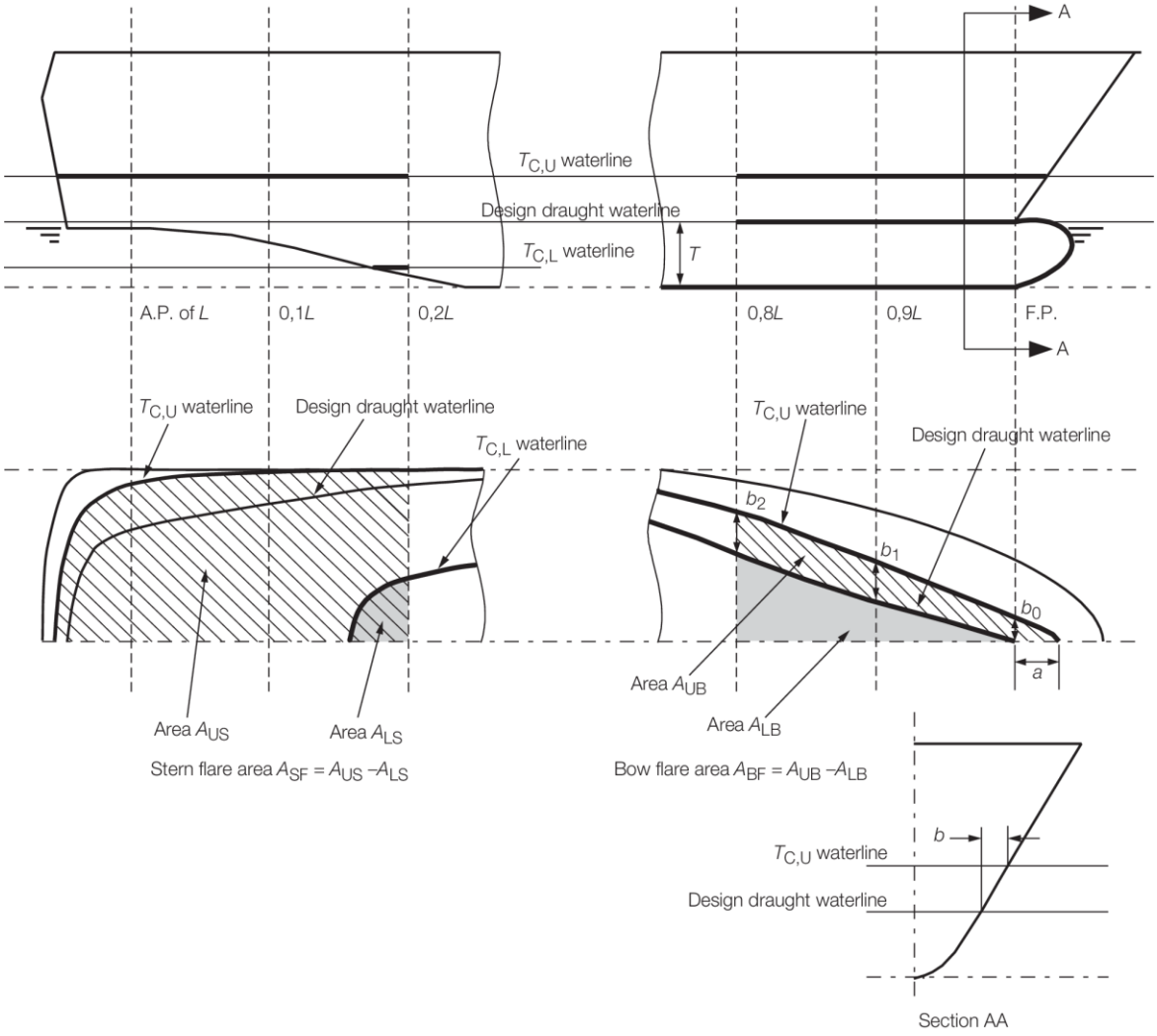
$T_{C,U}$ = is a waterline taken $C_1/2$ m above the design draught

$T_{C,U}$ = $T + \frac{C_1}{2}$ m

C_1 = is given in Pt 3, Ch 4 Longitudinal Strength Table 4. 5. 1: Wave bending moment factor

= For ships with large bow flare angles above the $T_{C,U}$ waterline the bow flare area may need to be specially considered.

Figure 2. 2. 1: Derivation of bow and stern flare areas



2. 4. 4 The stern flare area, A_{SF}, is illustrated in Figure 2. 2. 1: Derivation of bow and stern flare areas and is to be derived as follows:

$$A_{SF} = A_{US} - A_{LS} m^2$$

A_{US} = is half the water plane area at a waterline of $T_{C,U}$ the stern region of the hull aft of 0.2L from the AP

A_{LS} = is half the water plane area at a waterline of $T_{C,L}$ the stern region of the hull aft of 0.2L from the AP

$T_{C,L}$ = is a waterline taken $C_1/2$ m below the design draught

$T_{C,L}$ = $T - \frac{C_1}{2}$ m

= For ships with tumblehome in the stern region, the maximum breadth at any waterline less than $T_{C,U}$ is be used in the calculation of A_{US}. The effects appendages including bossings are to be ignored in the calculation of A_{LS}.

2. 4. 5 Direct calculation methods may be used to derive the vertical wave bending moments, *See* Pt 3, Ch 4, 2.5 Direct calculation procedures.

2. 4. 6 The sagging correction factor, f_{fS}, in the vertical wave bending moment formulation in Pt 4, Ch 2, 2.3 Still water bending moments and shear forces 2.3.1 may be derived by direct calculation methods. Appropriate direct calculation methods include a combination of long-term ship motion analysis, non linear ship motion analysis and static balance on a wave crest or trough.

2. 5 Design wave shear force

2. 5. 1 The design vertical wave shear force, Q_w, at any position along the ship is given by:

$$Q_w = K_f K_2 Q_{wo}\ kN$$

where
Q_{wo} and K_2 are given in Pt 3, Ch 4, 6.3 Design wave shear force
K_f is to be taken as follows, *See also* Figure 2. 2. 2: Shear force factor Kf:

a. Positive shear force:

K_f = 0 at aft end of L

= +0.836f_{fH} between 0.2L and 0.3L from aft

= +0.70 at 0.4L

= –0.65f_{fS} at 0.6L

= –0.91f_{fS} between 0.7L and 0.85L from aft

= 0 at forward end of L

b. Negative shear force:

K_f = 0 at aft end of L

= +0.836f_{fS} between 0.15L and 0.3L from aft

= +0.65f_{fS} at 0.4L

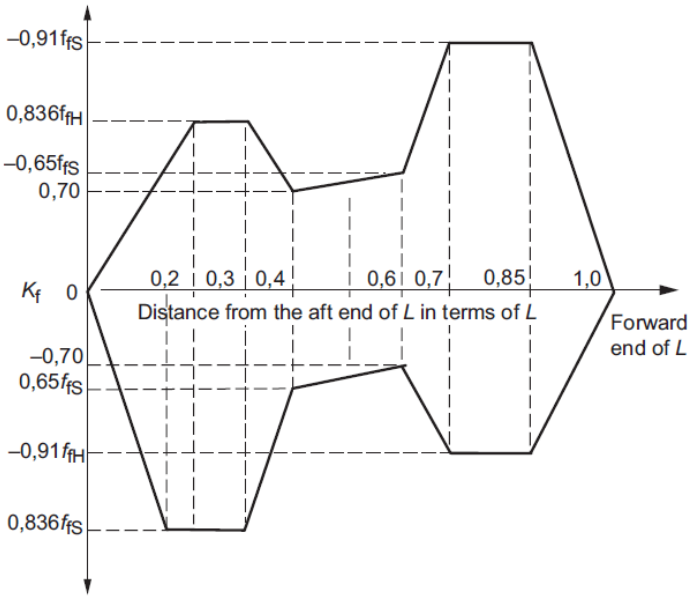
= -0.70 at 0.6$_L$

= –0.91f_{fH} between 0.7L and 0.85L from aft

= 0 at forward end of L

Intermediate values of K_f to be obtained by linear interpolation.
f_{fS} and f_{fH} are defined in Pt 4, Ch 2, 2.4 Design vertical wave bending moments 2.4.1.

Figure 2. 2. 2: Shear force factor K_f



2. 6 Buckling strength

2. 6. 1 The buckling requirements in Pt 3, Ch 4, 7 Hull buckling strength are to be applied to plate panels and longitudinals subject to hull girder compression and shear stresses. The design stresses are to be based on the design values of still water and wave bending moments and shear forces and are given in Pt 4, Ch 2, 2.4 Design vertical wave bending moments 2.4.1 and Pt 4, Ch 2, 2.5 Design wave shear force 2.5.1.

2. 6. 2 The standard deduction for corrosion, d_t, to be applied to plating and longitudinals is to be taken in accordance with Table 4. 7. 1: Standard deduction for corrosion, dt in Pt 3, Ch 4 Longitudinal Strength.

2. 6. 3 The buckling factors of safety, λ, to be applied to the corrected critical buckling stress, σ_{CRB}, of plate panels and longitudinals subjected to hull girder compression are given in Table 2. 2. 1: Buckling factors of safety, λ, where the corrected critical buckling stress is to be determined in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 4, 7.3 Elastic critical buckling stress.

2. 6. 4 The shear buckling requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4, 7.3 Elastic critical buckling stress are to be applied.

Table 2. 2. 1: Buckling factors of safety, λ

Structural item	Buckling factor of safety, λ
Longitudinally effective plating	1.0
Longitudinal stiffeners when the buckling failure mode of the attached plating is elasto-plastic, *See* Note	1.1
Longitudinal stiffeners when the buckling failure mode of the attached plating is elastic, *See* Note	1.25
Note The buckling mode of failure of the attached plating is defined as follows: elastic	$\sigma_E \leq 0.5\ \sigma_o$

elasto-plastic $\sigma_E > 0.5\ \sigma_o$

where

Note

σ_E = the elastic critical buckling stress, *See* Pt 3, Ch 4, 7.3 Elastic critical buckling stress

σ_o = specified minimum yield stress, in N/mm^2.

PART

4

CHAPTER **2** **Ferries, Roll On-Roll Off Ships and Passenger Ships**

SECTION **3** **Deck structure**

3. 1 Loading

3. 1. 1 In general, loadings for decks should comply with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships except where specified in this Section.

3. 1. 2 Vehicle decks for the carriage of cars, trucks, etc. are to have a loading for wheeled vehicles as specified in Pt 3, Ch 9, 3 Decks loaded by wheeled vehicles. Where vehicle decks are also used for the carriage of cargo, the loadings derived from Pt 3, Ch 9, 3 Decks loaded by wheeled vehicles are to be not less than would be required by Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships.

3. 1. 3 For ferries and passenger ships classed **100A1**, the minimum design loadings for decks are not to be taken as less than those in Table 2. 3. 1: Design deck loadings (ferries and passenger ships only).

3. 1. 4 For ferries and passenger ships classed **100A1** with a specified operating area service notation, the loadings for decks in way of baggage and accommodation spaces are to be in accordance with Table 2. 3. 1: Design deck loadings (ferries and passenger ships only).

3. 1. 5 Mooring decks, afterward and forward, other than when part of the strength deck, are to comply with the requirements for forecastles, *See* Pt 3, Ch 8 Superstructures, Deckhouses and Bulwarks. Canopy decks or aprons protecting mooring decks are to be designed using the weather head for forecastle decks reduced by 0.3 m.

3. 1. 6 For movable decks, *See* Pt 3, Ch 9, 4 Movable decks.

3. 1. 7 For train decks, the minimum design loading will be specially considered.

Table 2. 3. 1: Design deck loadings (ferries and passenger ships only)

Deck		Design pressures P_s, in kN/m^2	
		Secondary structures	Primary structures
Internal Decks	Decks in way of accommodation and public spaces (including internal muster stations), *See* Note	6.38	3.19
	Stairwell landing areas where people may congregate	6.38	6.38

	Deck supporting baggage spaces	$3.53H_t$	$3.53H_t$
	Decks in way of stores and refrigerated spaces	14.13	14.13
	Decks in way of workshop and machinery spaces (excludes A/C machinery spaces)	18.34	18.34
External Decks	Magradomes	2.45	2.45
	Balconies	3.92	1.96
	Weather exposed superstructure decks	2.26	2.26
	Weather exposed lifeboat deck, external muster stations	8.44	8.44
	Exposed decks subjected to sea loads	*See* Pt 3 Ship Structures (General), Table 3. 5. 1: Design heads and permissible cargo loadings	
Symbols			
H_t = 'tween deck height, in metres			
Note The design pressure, P_s, may be reduced by 12 per cent for ferries and passenger ships with a specified operating area service notation.			

Table 2. 3. 2: Thickness of deck plating for ferries and passenger ships where a relevant SDA is applied

Deck location	Plating thickness (mm)
Accommodation and public spaces	$t = 0.008s\sqrt{k}$
Baggage handling and storage	$t = 0.009s\sqrt{k}$
Storerooms	$t = 0.01s\sqrt{k}$
Workshops and machinery spaces	$t = 0.01s\sqrt{k}$
Weather exposed lifeboat deck	$t = 0.00083s1\sqrt{Lk} + 2.5$
Symbols	
L, k, s as defined in Pt 4, Ch 1, 1.5 Symbols and definitions 1.5.1 $s_1 = s$ but is not to be taken less than the smaller of $470 + \frac{L}{0.6}$mm or 700 mm	
Note The thickness of deck plating is in no case to be less than 5.0 mm	

3. 1. 8 For ferries, roll on-roll off cargo ships and passenger ships (other than for vehicle decks), the minimum thicknesses of decks are to be in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships or Pt 3, Ch 8 Superstructures, Deckhouses and Bulwarks as appropriate.

3. 1. 9 For ferries and passenger ships where direct calculations have been carried out in accordance with the SDA Guideline relevant to the ship type (including multi-decked ships), the minimum thicknesses of decks are to be in accordance with Table 2. 3. 2: Thickness of deck plating for ferries and passenger ships where a relevant SDA is applied.

3. 1. 10 For roll on-roll off cargo ships, the thickness of deck plating (other than for vehicle decks) will generally be in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships.

3. 1. 11 Where decks are required to resist hull girder bending, the thickness is to satisfy the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4, 7 Hull buckling strength.

3. 1. 12 Where deck plating is required to form the effective flange of deck primary members, the thickness may need to be increased locally taking account of the compressive forces acting, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 10 Welding and Structural Details, Table 10. 4. 1: Minimum thickness of primary members.

3. 1. 13 Vehicle deck plating is to satisfy the requirements for plating loaded by wheeled vehicles as specified in Pt 3, Ch 9, 3 Decks loaded by wheeled vehicles. Where vehicle decks are also to be used for the carriage of cargo, the thickness of plating derived from Pt 3, Ch 9, 3 Decks loaded by wheeled vehicles is to be not less than would be required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 4.2 Deck plating.

3. 1. 14 The thickness of all other decks will generally be in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships.

3. 2 Deck stiffening

3. 2. 1 For ferries, roll on-roll off cargo ships and passenger ships, the deck stiffening (other than for vehicle decks) is generally to be in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships or Pt 3, Ch 8 Superstructures, Deckhouses and Bulwarks as appropriate.

3. 2. 2 For ferries and passenger ships where direct calculations have been carried out in accordance with the SDA Guideline relevant to the ship type (including multi-decked ships), the deck stiffening is to be in accordance with.

3. 2. 3 Vehicle deck beams and longitudinals are to have scantlings in accordance with the requirements for wheeled vehicles as specified in Pt 3, Ch 9, 3 Decks loaded by wheeled vehicles. Where vehicle decks are also to be used for the carriage of cargo, the scantlings derived from Pt 3, Ch 9, 3 Decks loaded by wheeled vehicles are to be not less than would be required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 4.3 Deck stiffening.

Table 2. 3. 3: Modulus of deck beams and longitudinals for ferries and passenger ships where a relevant SDA is applied

Position of beam/longitudinal	Modulus, in cm^3
Decks, excluding those for the stowage of cargo or vehicles	$Z = 0.00083 f_R P_s l_e^2 sk$ but not less than: Z = 0.025s
Symbols	
l_e, s, Z, and k as defined in Pt 4, Ch 1, 1.5, Symbols and definitions P_s = deck loading, in kN/m^2, *See* Table 2. 3. 1: Design deck loadings (ferries and passenger ships only). f_R = 1, for ships with unrestricted service f_R = 0.81 for ships with a specified operating area service notation	

3. 3 Deck supporting primary structure

3. 3. 1 For ferries, roll on-roll off cargo ships, and passenger ships the primary structure supporting four or more point loads or a uniformly distributed load is to be in accordance with Table 1. 4. 6: Deck girders, transverses and hatch beams.

3. 3. 2 For ferries and passenger ships where direct calculations have been carried out in accordance with the SDA Guideline relevant to the ship type (including multi-decked ships), the section modulus of primary members supporting four or more point loads or a uniformly distributed load is not to be taken as less than:

$$Z = 0.673SP_s\mathrm{k}l_e^2(\mathrm{cm}^3)$$

Where

l_e, S, Z and k are as defined in Pt 4, Ch 1, 1.5, Symbols and definitions

P_s = deck design loading, in kN/m^2, *See* Table 2. 3. 1: Design deck loadings (ferries and passenger ships only).

3. 3. 3 For ferries and passenger ships where direct calculations have been carried out in accordance with the SDA Guideline relevant to the ship type (including multi-decked ships), the moment of inertia of primary members supporting more than four point loads is not to be taken as less than:

$$I = \frac{1.85}{k}l_\mathrm{e}Z(\mathrm{cm}^4)$$

Where

Z, l_e and k are defined in Pt 4, Ch 1, 1.5, Symbols and definitions.

3. 3. 4 Scantlings of primary structure are to be verified for the following cases using direct calculation methods.

a. The structural support arrangement is complex either due to arrangement or loading pattern.
b. Large openings are incorporated in the webs of primary members.
c. The structure is of novel or unusual design.
d. Primary members supporting up to three point loads.

The stress criteria in Table 1. 4. 6: Deck girders, transverses and hatch beams in Chapter 1 are to be complied with.

3. 3. 5 Direct calculations should be carried out in accordance with the SDA Guideline relevant to the ship type.

3. 3. 6 Vehicle deck structure is to be of adequate strength for the upward forces imposed at fixed securing points. Local reinforcement is to be fitted as necessary.

PART

4

CHAPTER **2** **Ferries, Roll On-Roll Off Ships and Passenger Ships**

SECTION **4** **Shell envelope plating**

4. 1 Bottom and side shell

4. 1. 1 For ferries and passenger ships classed **100A1** with a specified operating area service notation the keel thickness for $0.4L$ amidships is to be as required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 5 Shell envelope plating. At ends, the keel thickness may be reduced by 25 per cent from the above value, but is to be not less than that of the adjacent shell plating.

4. 1. 2 The thickness of side shell plating above $1.6T$ including superstructures may require special consideration depending on the particular structural arrangement, hull vertical bending and shear stresses and position of the shell above the waterline. In no case are the shell scantlings above $1.6T$ to be less than the following:

a. $t_{zm} = t_{stell} - (Z_m - 1.6T)(0.24 + 0.0012L)\sqrt{\frac{ks_1}{s_b}}$

b. $t_{zm} = (4 + 0.02L)\sqrt{\frac{ks_1}{s_b}}$

c. as required by Pt 3, Ch 8 Superstructures, Deckhouses and Bulwarks

Where

t_{shell} = minimum required shell thickness above D/2 for the specific location, as calculated in Pt 4, Ch 1, 5 Shell envelope plating

t_{zm} = minimum shell thickness at Z_m

Z_m = vertical height in metres above base

= L and T as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 1.5 Intact stability.

= s_1, s_b as defined in Table 5. 3. 1: Shell plating forward in Pt 3, Ch 5 Fore End Structure for fore end or Table 6. 3. 1: Shell plating aft in Pt 3, Ch 6 Aft End Structure for aft end.

4. 1. 3 Openings in the side shell and superstructure plating for windows and doors are to be suitably stiffened and the thickness and grade of plating in way will be specially considered.

4. 1. 4 For ships with broad flat counter stern sections which are liable to be subjected to large wave impact loading, the effect of wave impact loading on the plating and framing of the local shell structure is to be additionally considered, *See* Pt 4, Ch 2, 4.3, Strengthening for wave impact loads and Pt 4, Ch 2, 5.2, Strengthening for wave impact loads.

4. 1. 5 The plating and framing of the forward shell structure for ships with significant bow flare is to be additionally considered with regard to wave impact loading, *See* Pt 4, Ch 2, 4.3, Strengthening for wave impact loads and Pt 4, Ch 2, 5.2, Strengthening for wave impact loads.

4. 1. 6 The minimum thickness of the shell plating at ends and for taper is to be not less than the values given in Table 2. 4. 1: End shell thickness, and is in no case to be less than 6 mm.

4. 1. 7 For ferries and passenger ships classed **100A1** with a specified operating area service notation, the bottom and side shell minimum thickness at ends may be taken 20 per cent less than that required by Table 2. 4. 1: End shell thickness and Pt 3, Ch 5 Fore End Structure and Pt 3, Ch 6 Aft End Structure, but is in no case to be less than 6 mm.

Table 2. 4. 1: End shell thickness

Scantling length	Thickness, in mm
70 m and below	$(6.5 + 0.033L)\sqrt{\frac{ks_1}{s_b}} - 1.0$
Between 70 m and 110 m	$(6.5 + 0.033L)\sqrt{\frac{ks_1}{s_b}} - 0.5$
Over 110 m	Pt 3, Ch 5 Fore End Structure and Pt 3, Ch 6 Aft End Structure
Symbols	
L as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 1.5 Intact stability s_1, s_b as defined in Table 5. 3. 1: Shell and deck plating in Pt 3, Ch 5 Fore End Structure for fore end or Table 6. 3. 1: Shell plating aft in Pt 3, Ch 6 Aft End Structure for aft end	

4. 2 Bow flare and wave impact pressures

4. 2. 1 This Section is applicable to:

a. bow flare region;
b. sides and undersides of sponsons; and
c. other parts of the side shell plating close to and above the design waterline that are expected to be subjected to wave impact pressures.

The wave impact pressure, P_{bf}, in kN/m^2 due to relative motion is to be taken as:

$$P_{bf} = 0.5\left(K_{bf}V_{bf}^2 + K_{rv}H_{rv}V_{rv}^2\right)\text{kN/m}^2$$

Where

K_{bf} = hull form shape coefficient for wave impacts

$= \frac{\pi}{\tan\psi}$ for $\psi \geq 10$

$= 28\,(1 - \tan(2\psi))$ for $\psi < 10$

V_{bf} = wave impact velocity, in m/s, and is given by

$= \sqrt{V_{thbf^2} + 2m_1 \ln(N_{bf})}$ for $N_{bf} \geq 1$

$= 0$ for $N_{bf} < 1$

V_{thbf} = threshold velocity for wave impact, in m/s, to be taken as:

$= \dfrac{\sqrt{10}}{\cos\ \alpha_p}$

In ( ) is the natural logarithm

N_{bf} = No. of wave impacts in a three hour period and is given by

$= 1720 PR_{bf} \sqrt{\frac{m_1}{m_0}}$

PR_{bf} = probability of a wave impact and is given by

$= e^{-u}$

$u = \left(\frac{Z_{wl^2}}{2m_0} + \frac{V_{thbf^2}}{2m_1}\right)$

Z_{wl} = distance of the centroid of the area of plating or stiffener above the local design waterline

m_1 = variance of the relative vertical velocity

$= 0.25(\omega_e f_{s1} H_{rm})^2$

m_0 = variance of the relative vertical motion

$= 0.25(f_{s1} H_{rm})^2$

ω_e = effective encounter wave frequency

$= \omega\left(1 + \dfrac{0.4 q \omega V_{sl}}{g}\right)$

where

q = 1.0 for $\frac{x}{L} \geq 0.5$

= – 0.6 for $\frac{x}{L} < 0.5$

ω = effective wave frequency based on 80 per cent ship length

$= \sqrt{\dfrac{2\pi g}{0.8 L_{wL}}}$

f_{sl} = probability level correction factor for relative vertical motion

= 1.0 for $C_b \leq 0.6$

= 1.2 for $C_b > 0.6$

V_{sl} = $0.515V$, in m/s

K_{rv} = hull form shape coefficient for impact due to forward speed

$= \frac{\pi}{\tan(90 - \alpha_p)}$ for $\alpha_p \leq 80$

$= 28\left(1 - \tan\left(2(90 - \alpha_p)\right)\right)$ for $\alpha_p > 80$

H_{rv} = relative wave heading coefficient

for $\frac{x}{L} \geq 0.5$

= 1 for $\gamma_p > 45$

= $\cos(45 - \gamma_p)$ for $\gamma_p \leq 45$

for $\frac{x}{L} < 0.5$

= 0

The point at which the following angles are to be measured for assessment of plating and stiffeners is detailed in Table 2. 4. 2: Positions at which αp, βp and γp are to be measured:

V_{rv} = relative forward speed, in m/s

= $0.515V\sin\gamma_p$

α_p = buttock angle measured in the longitudinal plane, in degrees, *See* Figure 2. 4. 1: Bow flare and bottom slamming angles and Table 2. 4. 2: Positions at which αp, βp and γp are to be measured

ψ = effective deadrise angle, in degrees

For $C_b > 0.6, \psi$ is to be taken as the maximum of α_p and β_p, *See* Figure 2. 4. 1: Bow flare and bottom slamming angles and Table 2. 4. 2: Positions at which αp, βp and γp are to be measured

For $C_b \leq 0.6, \psi$ is to be taken as the maximum of α_p and β

where

β = $\beta_p - 10°$, but is to be taken as not less than 0°

NOTE

The 10° deduction is to allow for the effects of roll motion on the impact pressures.

γ_p = waterline angle measured in the horizontal plane, in degrees, *See* Figure 2. 4. 1: Bow flare and bottom slamming angles and Table 2. 4. 2: Positions at which αp, βp and γp are to be measured.

NOTE

Where only two angles are known and are measured in orthogonal planes, the third angle may be obtained by the following expression:

α_p = $\tan^{-1}(\tan\beta_p \tan\gamma_p)$

The relative vertical motion, H_{rm}, is to be taken as

$$H_{rm} = C_{w,min}\left(1 + \frac{4.5}{(C_b + 0.2)}\left(\frac{X_{wL}}{L_{wL}} - x_m\right)^2\right)$$

Where

$C_{w,min}$ = $\dfrac{C_w}{k_m\sqrt{2}}$

C_w = a wave head in metres

Where

= $0.0771L_{WL}(C_b + 0.2)^{0.3}e^{(-0.0044\ L_{wL})}$

k_m = $1 + \dfrac{4.5(0.5 - x_m)2}{(C_b + 0.2)}$

x_m = $0.45 - 0.6F_n$ but is not to be less than 0.2

F_n = $\dfrac{0.515V}{\sqrt{gL_{WL}}}$

L_{WL} = waterline length at summer load draught

X_{WL} = longitudinal distance, in metres, measured forwards from the aft end of the L_{WL} to the location being considered

V = speed, in knots

for $\frac{x}{L} \geq 0.5$

= is to be taken as the maximum service speed, in knots, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6 Definitions For passenger yachts not required to maintain high speeds in severe weather, the value of V may be specially considered, but is not to be taken as less than the greater of $\frac{V}{3}$ or 5 knots. Where V has been specially considered it is to be noted in the classification records as a memorandum that should state: "A design speed of … knots has been used for the assessment of bow structure with regards to bow flare impacts. It should be noted that this speed may not be appropriate for all conditions and it is the responsibility of the Master to apply good Seamanship to minimise bow flare slamming."

for $\frac{x}{L} < 0.5$

= 0 knots, for passenger ships

= 5 knots, for all other ship types

C_b = Rule block coefficient.

Table 2. 4. 2: Positions at which α_p, β_p and γ_p are to be measured

Framing system	Plating	Secondary stiffeners
Longitudinally framed	Mid-distance between longitudinals	Mid-distance between frames
Transversely framed	0.5s from the bottom edge of the plate strake or primary member	Mid-distance between primary members

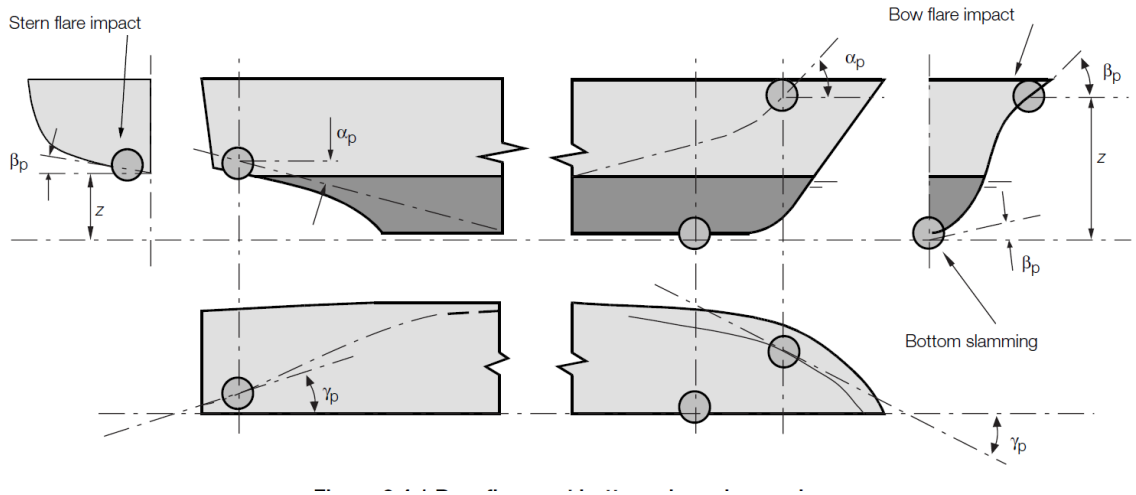
4. 2. 2 Alternatively, P_{bf} may be derived by the direct calculations carried out in accordance with a procedure agreed by ACS.

4. 3 Strengthening for wave impact loads

4. 3. 1 The shell envelope in the forward and after portions of the hull are to be strengthened against bow flare or wave impact pressure. Typically, strengthening is to be considered over the following areas:

- over the after body in way of a flat counter stern which is close to the waterline;
- over the fore end side and bow structure above the waterline and up to the deck at side;
- other areas where the hull exhibits significant flare.

Figure 2. 4. 1: Bow flare and bottom slamming angles



4. 3. 2 The thickness of the side shell plating is to be not less than:

$$t = 3.2 s_c \sqrt{k h_5} C_R \times 10^{-2} \text{ mm}$$

Where

s_c = is the length of the shorter edge of a plating panel framed by primary and secondary members, *See* Figure 2. 4. 2: Chord spacing and mean chord spacing for secondary members

h_s = equivalent wave impact head, in metres

h_s = $0.1 P_{bf}$ m

P_{bf} = is defined in Pt 4, Ch 2, 4.2 Bow flare and wave impact pressures 4.2.1

C_R = panel ratio factor

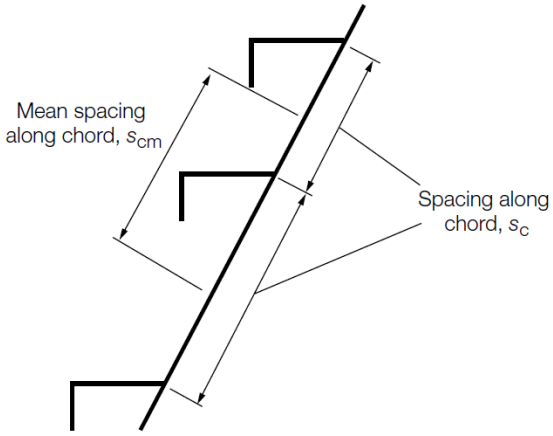
C_R = $\left(\frac{l}{s_c}\right)_{0.41}$ but is not to be taken less than 0.06 or greater than 0.1

l = overall panel length, in metres, measured along a chord between the primary members.

4. 3. 3 The structural scantlings required in areas strengthened against bow flare slamming are to be tapered to meet the normal shell envelope requirements.

4. 3. 4 The side structure scantlings required by this Section must in no case be taken less than those required by the remaining Sections of Pt 4, Ch 2 Ferries, Roll On-Roll Off Ships and Passenger Ships.

Figure 2. 4. 2: Chord spacing and mean chord spacing for secondary members



PART

4

CHAPTER **2** **Ferries, Roll On-Roll Off Ships and Passenger Ships**

SECTION **5** **Shell envelope framing**

5. 1 Side structure

5. 1. 1 The scantlings of frames, or side longitudinals, web frames or transverses, and stringers below 1.6T above base are to satisfy the requirement of Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships and this Section, but may be required to be confirmed by direct calculation. The scantlings of these members above 1.6T from base may require special consideration on the basis of the particular structural arrangements, design deck loading, hull vertical bending stresses, and position of the member above the waterline.

5. 1. 2 The scantlings of side transverses supporting shell longitudinals above 1.6T are to satisfy the requirements of:

a. Pt 4, Ch 1, 6 Shell envelope framing, Pt 3, Ch 5, 4 Shell envelope framing and Pt 3, Ch 6, 4 Shell envelope framing.

b. The minimum geometric properties required in order to provide rotational constraint to the end of the deck transverse in way:

$$Z_s = \frac{0.677SkP_sL_d^3}{\left(\left(\frac{I_d}{I_s}\right)L_s + L_d\right)}\text{cm}^3$$

but is not to be less than $0.339SkP_sL_d^2$ cm^3

I_s is not to be less than $I_d\left(\frac{L_s}{L_d}\right)\left(\frac{Z_{dR}}{Z_d}\right)$cm^4

Where

P_s = deck design loading, in kN/m^2, *See* Table 2. 3. 1: Design deck loadings (ferries and passenger ships only)

L_d = span of adjacent deck transverse, in metres

Z_d = actual modulus of adjacent deck transverse, in cm^3

Z_{dR} = Rule modulus of adjacent deck transverse, in cm^3

I_d = moment of inertia of adjacent deck transverse, in cm^4

L_s = span of side shell transverse, in metres

I_s = moment of inertia of side shell transverse, in cm^4

S,k = as defined in Pt 4, Ch 2, 1.5 Symbols 1.5.1

= Due account should be taken of the shell window dimensions when determining the effective width of attached plating.

5. 1. 3 The required modulus of transverse main and 'tween deck frames, which may have reasonably constant convex curvature over their entire length, may be corrected for curvature as follows:

$$Z_{min} = Z_{rule}\left(\frac{1}{\text{Cosh}\left(\frac{2\pi Y_c}{l_e}\right)}\right)^3 \text{ cm}^3$$

Where

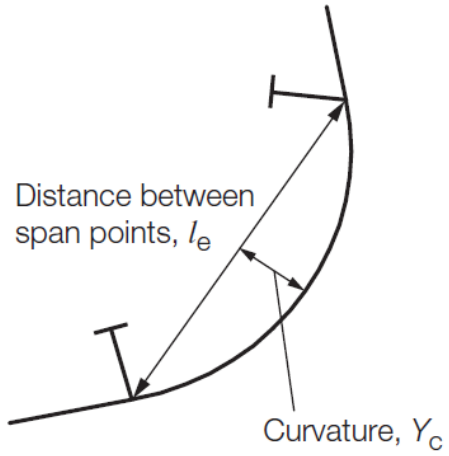
Z_{rule} = modulus requirement, in cm^3, from Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships using l_e

l_e = distance between span support points, in metres, as shown in Figure 2. 5. 1: Distance between span support points and curvature

Y_c = curvature measured from a line intersecting the end support points to the frame at mid-span, in metres, as shown in Figure 2. 5. 1: Distance between span support points and curvature

Z_{min} = is not to be less than $0.5Z_{rule}$

Figure 2. 5. 1: Distance between span support points and curvature



5. 1. 4 Where ramp openings are fitted adjacent to the ship's side, adequate support for the side framing is to be provided.

5. 2 Strengthening for wave impact loads

5. 2. 1 The side structure in the forward and after portions of the hull is to be strengthened against bow flare or wave impact pressure. Typically, strengthening is to be considered over the following areas:

- over the after body in way of a flat counter stern which is close to the waterline.
- over the fore end side and bow structure above the waterline and up to the deck at side.
- other areas where the hull exhibits significant flare.

5. 2. 2 The scantlings of secondary stiffeners are not to be less than:

a. Effective plastic section modulus of stiffeners:

$$Z_p = 3.75 h_s S_{cm} k l_e^2 \times 10^{-3} \text{ cm}^3$$

Where

h_s = wave impact head, in metres, as defined in Pt 4, Ch 2, 4.3 Strengthening for wave impact loads 4.3.2

s_{cm} = mean spacing of secondary stiffeners, in mm, measured along a chord between parallel adjacent members or equivalent supports, as shown in Figure 2. 4. 2: Chord spacing and mean chord spacing for secondary members

Other symbols are as defined in Pt 4, Ch 2, 1.5 Symbols 1.5.2

b. Web area of secondary stiffeners

$$A = 3.7 s_{cm} k h_s \left(l_e - \frac{s_{cm}}{2000}\right) \times 10\text{–}4 \text{ cm2}$$

Where

s_{cm} = mean spacing of secondary stiffeners, in mm, measured along a chord between parallel adjacent members or equivalent supports, as shown in Figure 2. 4. 2: Chord spacing and mean chord spacing for secondary members

h_s = wave impact head, in metres, as defined in Pt 4, Ch 2, 4.3 Strengthening for wave impact loads 4.3.2

Other symbols are as defined in Pt 4, Ch 2, 1.5 Symbols 1.5.2.

5. 2. 3 The effective section properties of secondary stiffeners are to be taken as:

a. Plastic section modulus of secondary stiffeners, Z_p, is to be taken as:

$$Z_p = (2.8 \times 10^{-4} \, s_{cm} t_p^2) - (10^{-3} b_f b_{fc} t_f \sin \theta_e) + (5 \times 10^{-4} (h_w^2 t_w + 2 b_f t_f h_w) \cos \theta_e) \text{cm}^3$$

Where

θ_e = $C_0(90 - \varphi)$

C_o = 1.1

φ = the angle between the stiffener and the side shell, in degrees

$b\text{-}_{fc}$ = $0.5(b_f - t_w)$ for L profiles

= 0 for flat bar and T profiles

= $\frac{c}{2}$ for bulb profiles, *See* Figure 4. 7. 1: Dimensions of longitudinals in Pt 3, Ch 4 Longitudinal Strength, for c

h_w = height of stiffener web, in mm

t_w = web thickness, in mm

b_f = breadth of flange, in mm

t_f = flange thickness, in mm

t_p = thickness of attached plating, in mm

a. Web area of secondary stiffeners, A_s, is to be taken as:

$A_s = 0.01(h_w + t_p)t_w \sin\varphi \text{cm}^2$

5. 2. 4 Where the stiffener web is not perpendicular to the plating, tripping brackets have to be fitted in order to obtain adequate lateral stability.

5. 2. 5 The scantlings of primary members are not to be less than:

a. Section modulus of primary members

$Z = 2\gamma_z k h_5 q v l_e^2 cm^3$

b. Web area of primary members

$A = 0.2\gamma_A k h_s q v_e \text{cm}^2$

Where

h_s = wave impact head, in metres, as defined in Pt 4, Ch 2, 4.3 Strengthening for wave impact loads 4.3.2

= and

γ_A and γ_Z are strength factors dependent on the load position
for $q < 1$ $\gamma_A = q^3 - 2q^2 + 2$ and $\gamma_Z = 3q^3 - 8q^2 + 6q$
for $q = 1$ $\gamma_A = 1$ and $\gamma_Z = 1$

$q = \frac{u}{l_e}$ but ≤ 1

for web frames:

u = is the minimum of g_{bfv} or l_e

v = is the minimum of g_{bfh} or S_{cm}

for primary stringers:

u = is the minimum of g_{bfh} or l_e

v = is the minimum of g_{bfv} or S_{cm}

Where

l_e = is the effective length of the primary member, in metres

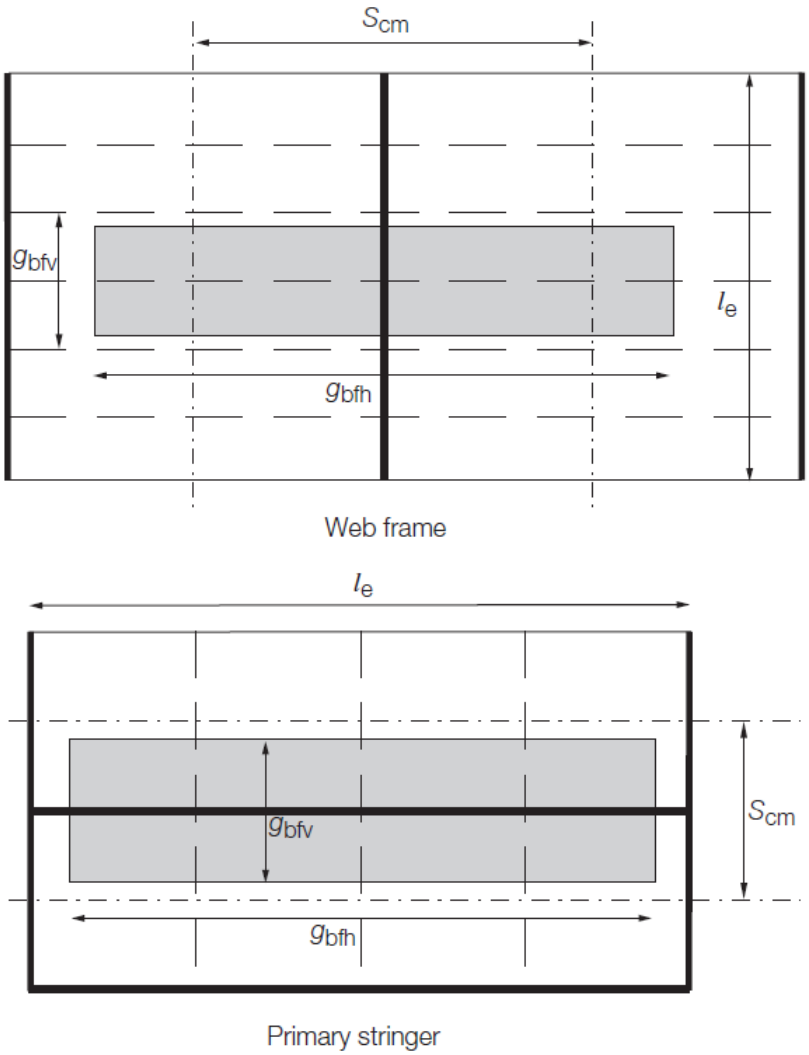
S_{cm} = is the mean spacing between primary members along the plating, in metres, *See* Figure 2. 5. 2: Mean spacing between primary members, Scm, and the extents of wave impact pressure gbfh and gbfv

= g_{bfv} and g_{bfh} are defined in Pt 4, Ch 2, 5.2 Strengthening for wave impact loads 5.2.6

= Other symbols are as defined in Pt 4, Ch 2, 1.5 Symbols 1.5.2.

c. The web of the primary member is to be adequately stiffened.

Figure 2. 5. 2: Mean spacing between primary members, S_{cm}, and the extents of wave impact pressure g_{bfh} and g_{bfv}



5. 2. 6 The extents of the wave impact pressure are to be derived as follows:

a. the vertical extent, g_{bfv}, is to be taken as:

$$g_{bfv} = \frac{4}{\sin \psi \sqrt{8\ K_{bf}}} \text{m}$$

b. the horizontal extent, g_{bfh}, is to be taken as:

$$g_{bfh} = 4 \text{ m}$$

Where

= K_{bf} and ψ are given in Pt 4, Ch 2, 4.2 Bow flare and wave impact pressures 4.2.1.

5. 2. 7 For primary members with cut-outs for the passage of secondary stiffeners, and which may have web stiffeners connected to the secondary stiffener, buckling checks are to be carried out to ensure that the primary member web plating and web stiffener will not buckle under the design load. The buckling procedure to be followed is given in Table 5. 1. 3: Buckling procedure for primary member web plating and web stiffener in Pt 3, Ch 5 Fore End Structure. Where the web stiffener

is fitted with a bracket, the buckling capability of the web stiffener in way of the cut-out is to take account of the bracket. Where no web stiffener is fitted, the buckling capability of the primary member web plating is to be checked for the total load transmitted to the connection.

5. 2. 8 Where the angle between primary structure web and the plating is less than 70°, the effective section modulus and shear area are to take account of the non-perpendicularity.

5. 2. 9 The structural scantlings required in areas strengthened against bow flare slamming are to be tapered to meet the normal shell envelope requirements.

5. 2. 10 The side structure scantlings required by this Section must in no case be taken less than those required by the remaining Sections of Pt 4, Ch 2 Ferries, Roll On-Roll Off Ships and Passenger Ships.

PART

4

CHAPTER **2** **Ferries, Roll On-Roll Off Ships and Passenger Ships**

SECTION **6** **Double bottom**

6. 1 General

6. 1. 1 A double bottom is to be fitted in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 1, 8 Double bottom structure.

6. 1. 2 Where podded drive systems are to be employed, adequate floors and girders are to be arranged in order to efficiently integrate the unit into the aft structure. The adequacy of the hull structure supporting the unit is to be verified using the maximum external forces and moments stated by the manufacturer. Due account is to be taken of additional forces induced by ship motion accelerations.

6. 2 Transmission of pillar loads

6. 2. 1 In ships where the deck centreline supports are widely spaced, transmission of the pillar loads to the double bottom structure will be specially considered, and additional reinforcement may be required if high shear and bending stresses are induced by the concentrated loads. The reinforcement should take the form of additional floors, and fore and aft girders. The final reinforcement is to be confirmed by direct calculation.

6. 2. 2 Where, in multi-decked passenger ships, the Rule deck loadings from Table 2. 3. 1: Design deck loadings (ferries and passenger ships only) have been used to determine the primary deck supporting structure, the cumulative pillar load P_p may be taken as:

$$P_p = \sum(b_p S_p) P_s \text{kN}$$

where

b_p = breadth of deck supported by pillar

S_p = mean spacing between pillars

P_s = *See* Table 2. 3. 1: Design deck loadings (ferries and passenger ships only).

6. 2. 3 Pillars are to be provided with suitable pads at their heels. Long pillars, and those terminating at the inner bottom are to be bracketed. At pillar heads, the free edges of deck primary structure face plates are to be at least 20 mm clear of the pillar head attachment weld. Where necessary, gusset plates are to be fitted at primary member intersections in way of pillars. These gussets may be applied as doublers onto the primary member face plates and should be at least equal in thickness to the pillar or the face plate, whichever is greater. Where pillars act in tension, the gussets are to be integral with the primary member face plates. The axial stress in tensile pillars is not to exceed 110/k N/mm^2 and full penetration welds are to be arranged in way of the end connections.

6. 3 Ferries and passenger ships with a specified operating area service

6. 3. 1 The thickness of double bottom centre girders may be reduced by 10 per cent, and the thickness of double bottom side girders and floors may be reduced by five per cent, from the values required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 8 Double bottom structure, but is in no case to be less than 6 mm.

PART

4

CHAPTER **2** **Ferries, Roll On-Roll Off Ships and Passenger Ships**

SECTION **7** **Peak, watertight and deep tank bulkheads**

7. 1 General

7. 1. 1 The scantlings of watertight and deep tank bulkheads are to comply with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships.

7. 1. 2 The load head, h_4 to be used in watertight bulkhead scantlings for passenger ships is, in addition, to comply with the following:

- For watertight bulkhead plating, the distance from a point one-third of the height of the plate above its lower edge to a point 0.91 m above the bulkhead deck at side, or to the deepest intermediate/equilibrium waterline in damaged condition obtained from applicable damage stability calculations, whichever is the greater.
- For watertight bulkhead stiffeners or girders, the distance from the middle of the effective length to a point 0.91 m above the bulkhead deck at side, or to the deepest intermediate/equilibrium waterline in damaged condition obtained from applicable damage stability calculations, whichever is the greater.

7. 1. 3 Partial watertight bulkheads and webs fitted above the bulkhead deck which are to be included in damage stability calculations, are to be assessed as watertight, *See* Pt 4, Ch 2, 7.1 General 7.1.2.

7. 2 Ferries and passenger ships with a specified operating area service

7. 2. 1 The thickness of bulkhead plating for peak tanks and deep tanks, other than the collision bulkhead, may be reduced by 0.5 mm, and the modulus of bulkhead stiffeners, swedges, corrugations and girders may, in general, be reduced by 20 per cent from the values required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 9 Bulkheads.

PART

4

CHAPTER **2** **Ferries, Roll On-Roll Off Ships and Passenger Ships**

SECTION **8** **Bow doors and inner doors**

8. 1 Symbols

8. 1. 1 The symbols used in this Section are defined as follows:

a = vertical distance, in metres, from the bow door pivot to the centroid of the vertical projected area of bow door, *See* Figure 2. 8. 1: Bow door (upward hinging)

b = horizontal distance, in metres, from the bow door pivot to the centroid of the horizontal projected area of bow door, *See* Figure 2. 8. 1: Bow door (upward hinging)

c = horizontal distance, in metres, from bow door pivot to centre of gravity of bow door, *See* Figure 2. 8. 1: Bow door (upward hinging)

d = vertical distance, in metres, from bow door pivot to the centre of gravity of the bow door, *See* Figure 2. 8. 1: Bow door (upward hinging)

h = height of the door, in metres, between the levels of the bottom of the door and the upper deck or between the bottom of the door and the top of the door, whichever is the lesser, *See* Figure 2. 8. 2: Definition of α and β

k = material factor (*See* Pt 3, Ch 2, 1.2 Steel), but is not to be taken less than 0.72 unless demonstrated otherwise by a direct strength analysis with regard to relevant modes of failure

l = projected length, in metres, of the door at a height of $\frac{h}{2}$ above the bottom of the door, *See* Figure 2. 8. 2: Definition of α and β

w = width of bow door at half height, in metres

A_z = area, in m^2, of the horizontal projection of the bow door, between the bottom of the door and the top of the upper deck bulwark, or between the bottom of the door and the top of the door, including the bulwark, where it is part of the door,whichever is the lesser, *See* Figure 2. 8. 1: Bow door (upward hinging). Where the flare angle of the bulwark is at least 15 degrees less than the flare angle of the adjacent shell plating, the height from the bottom of the door may be measured to the upper deck or to the top of the door, whichever is the lesser

A_s = area of stiffener web, in cm^2

A_x = area, in m^2, of the transverse vertical projection of the bow door, between the bottom of the door and the top of the door or between the bottom of the door and the upper deck bulwark, or between the bottom of the door and the top of the door, including the bulwark, where it is part of the door, whichever is the lesser, *See* Figure 2. 8. 1: Bow door (upward hinging) Where the flare angle of the bulwark is at least 15 degrees less than the flare angle of the adjacent shell plating, the height from the bottom of the door may be measured to the upper deck or to the top of the door, whichever is lesser. In determining the height from the bottom of the door to the upper deck or to the top of the door, the bulwark is to be excluded

A_y = area, in m^2, of the longitudinal vertical projection of the bow door, between the bottom of the door and the top of the upper deck bulwark, or between the bottom of the door and the top of the door, including the bulwark, where it is part of the door, whichever is the lesser, *See* Figure 2. 8. 1: Bow door (upward hinging) Where the flare angle of the bulwark is at least 15 degrees less than the flare angle of the adjacent shell plating, the height from the bottom of the door may be measured to the upper deck or to the top of the door, whichever is the lesser

W = weight of bow visor, in tonnes

q = distance, in metres, from the centroid of the hydrostatic head profile, to the top of the cargo space

C_H = $0.0125L$ where $L < 80$ m

= 1.0 where $L \geq 80$ m

L = length of ship, but need not be taken greater than 200 m

V = as defined in Pt 4, Ch 2, 1.5 Symbols 1.5.1

λ = coefficient depending on the area where the ship is intended to be operated

= 1.0 for sea-going ships

= 0.8 for ships operated in coastal waters

= 0.5 for ships operated in sheltered waters

σ = bending stress, in N/mm^2

σ_e = equivalent stress, in N/mm^2

= $\sqrt{\sigma^2 + 3\tau^2}$

σ_y = yield stress of the bearing material, in N/mm^2

τ = shear stress, in N/mm^2.

Figure 2. 8. 1: Bow door (upward hinging)

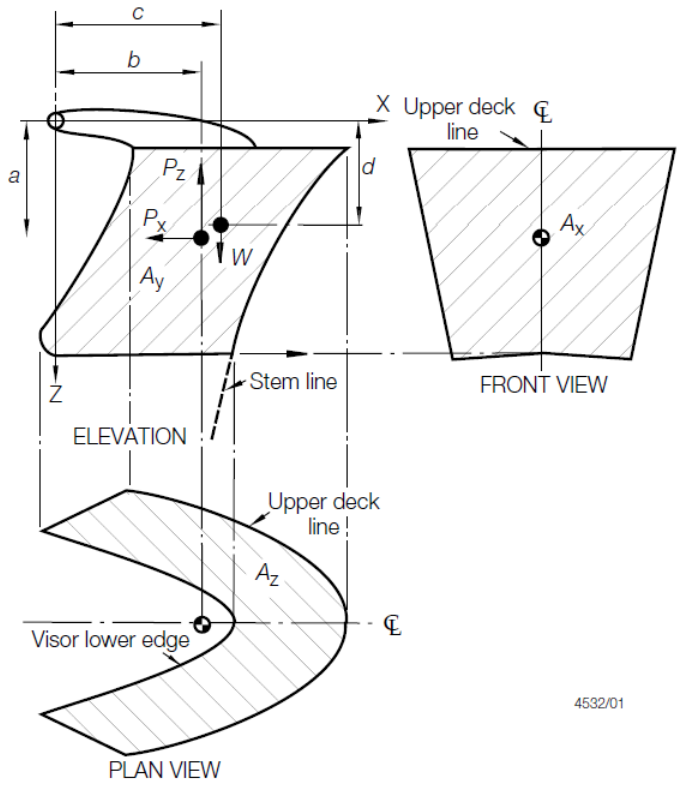
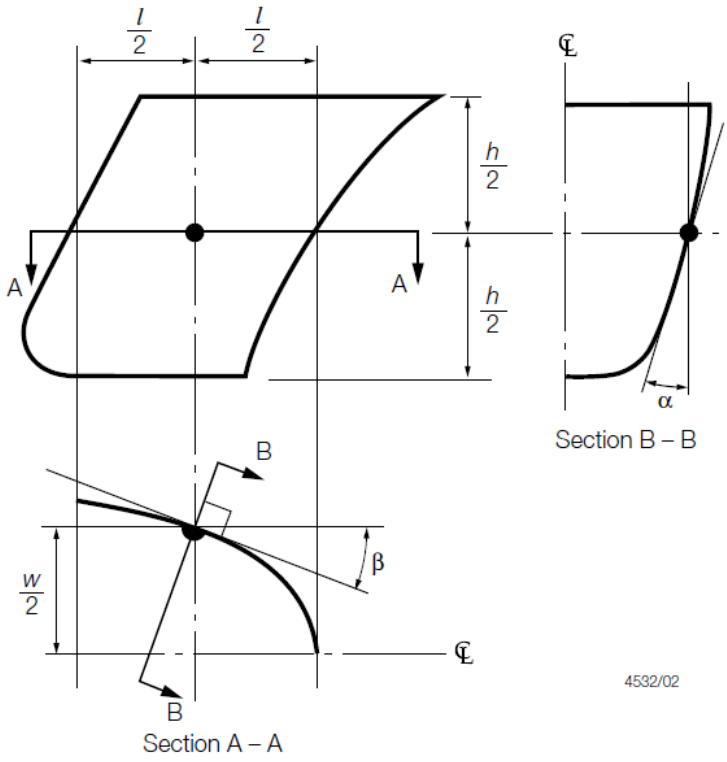


Figure 2. 8. 2: Definition of α and β



8. 2 General

8. 2. 1 Bow doors are defined by the following types:

a. Visor doors opened by rotating upwards and outwards about a horizontal axis through two or more hinges located near the top of the door and connected to the primary structure of the door by longitudinally arranged lifting arms.

b. Side-opening doors opened either by rotating outwards about a vertical axis through two or more hinges located near the outbound edges or by horizontal translation by means of linking arms arranged with pivoted attachments to the door and the ship. It is expected that side-opening bow doors will be arranged in pairs.

Other bow door types will be specially considered.

8. 2. 2 Bow doors are to be situated above the freeboard deck. A watertight recess in the freeboard deck located forward of the collision bulkhead and above the deepest waterline, fitted for arrangement of ramps or other related mechanical devices, may be regarded as a part of the freeboard deck for the purpose of this requirement.

8. 2. 3 Where bow doors lead to a complete or long forward enclosed superstructure, or to a long non-enclosed superstructure which is fitted to attain minimum bow height equivalence, an inner door is to be fitted. The inner door is to be part of the collision bulkhead. Where a sloping vehicle ramp forming the collision bulkhead above the freeboard deck is arranged, the inner door may be omitted if the ramp is weathertight over its complete length and fulfils the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 3 Structural Design concerning the position of the collision bulkhead.

8. 2. 4 Bow doors are to be fitted with arrangement for ensuring weathertight sealing, such as gaskets, and to give effective protection to inner doors.

8. 2. 5 Inner doors forming part of the collision bulkhead are to be watertight over the full height of the cargo space and arranged with fixed sealing supports on the aft side of the doors.

8. 2. 6 Bow doors and inner doors are to be arranged so as to preclude the possibility of the bow door causing structural damage to the inner door or to the collision bulkhead in the case of damage to or detachment of the bow door. If this is not possible, a second separate inner weathertight door, complying with Pt 4, Ch 2, 8.2 General 8.2.5, is to be installed.

8. 2. 7 The requirements for inner doors are based on the assumption that vehicles and cargo are effectively lashed and secured against movement from the stowed position.

8. 2. 8 For ships complying with the requirements of this Section, the securing, supporting and locking devices are defined as follows:

a. A securing device is used to keep the door closed by preventing it from rotating about its hinges.

b. A supporting device is used to transmit external and internal loads from the door to a securing device and from the securing device to the ship's structure, or a device other than a securing device, such as a hinge, stopper or other fixed device, that transmits loads from the door to the ship's structure.

c. A locking device locks a securing device in the closed position.

8. 2. 9 The scantlings and arrangements of side shell and stern doors are to be in accordance with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 11, 8 Side and stern doors and other shell openings.

8. 3 Scantlings

8. 3. 1 The strength of the bow door is to be equivalent to the surrounding structure, as given in Pt 3, Ch 5, 6 Fore peak structure.

8. 3. 2 For bow doors, including bulwark, of unusual form or proportions, the areas and angles used for the determination of design values of external forces are to be specially considered.

8. 3. 3 Bow doors of the visor or hinged opening type are to be adequately stiffened, and means are to be provided to prevent lateral or vertical movement of the doors when closed. Care is to be taken to ensure that adequate strength is provided in the connections of the hinge or linking arms to the door structure and to the ship structure.

8. 3. 4 The thickness of the bow door plating is not to be less than the side shell plating calculated with the door stiffener spacing, and in no case to be less than the minimum shell plate end thickness or forecastle side thickness as appropriate.

8. 3. 5 The section modulus of horizontal or vertical stiffeners is not to be less than required for end framing. Consideration is to be given, where necessary, to differences in fixity between ship frames and bow door stiffeners.

8. 3. 6 The stiffener webs are to have a net sectional area not less than:

$$A_s = \frac{10Q}{\tau} cm^2$$

τ is to be taken as $\frac{100}{k}$ $\mathrm{N/mm^2}$

Where

Q = shear force, in kN calculated using the uniformly distributed external sea pressure, p_e, defined in Pt 4, Ch 2, 8.6, Design of securing and supporting devices 8.6.1

8. 3. 7 Bow door secondary stiffeners are to be supported by primary members constituting the main stiffening elements of the door.

8. 3. 8 The scantlings of such primary members are to be based on direct strength calculations. Normally, formulae for simple beam theory may be applied to determine the bending stress. Members are to be considered to have simply supported end connections. The design load, P_e, is the uniformly distributed external sea pressure. The formulae for P_e given in Pt 4, Ch 2, 8.6, Design of securing and supporting devices 8.6.1, may be used with α and β defined as:

α = flare angle, in degrees, generally to be measured normal to the shell between the vertical axis and the vertical tangent to the outer shell of the door measured at the point on the bow door, one half of the projected length (l/2) aft of the stern line on the plane at the half height of the door (h/2) (*See* Figure 2. 8. 2: Definition of α and β)

β = entry angle, in degrees, generally to be measured on the outer shell of the door between the longitudinal axis and the waterplane tangent measured at the point on the bow door, one half of the projected length (l/2) aft of the stem line on the plane at the half height of the door (h/2) (*See* Figure 2. 8. 2: Definition of α and β)

The permissible stresses are as follows:

$$\tau = \frac{80}{k} \quad \mathrm{N/mm^2}$$

$$\sigma = \frac{120}{k} \quad \mathrm{N/mm^2}$$

$$\sigma_e = \frac{150}{k} \quad \mathrm{N/mm^2}$$

8. 3. 9 The webs of primary members are to be adequately stiffened, preferably in a direction perpendicular to the shell plating.

8. 3. 10 The primary members of the bow doors and hull structure in way are to have sufficient stiffness to ensure the integrity of the boundary support of the doors.

8. 3. 11 All load transmitting elements in the design load path, from door through securing arrangements and supporting devices into the ship structure, including welded connections, are to be to the same strength standard. These elements include pins, supporting brackets and back-up brackets. Where cut-outs are made in the supporting structure, the strength and stiffness will be specially considered.

8. 3. 12 For bow doors and inner doors, the distribution of forces acting on the securing devices and the supporting devices is to be supported by direct calculations taking into account the flexibility of the structure and the actual position and stiffness of the supports.

8. 3. 13 The buckling strength of primary members is to be specially considered.

8. 4 Vehicle ramps

8. 4. 1 Where doors also serve as vehicle ramps, the scantlings are to be not less than would be required by Pt 4, Ch 2, 3.2 Deck plating 3.2.3 and Pt 4, Ch 2, 3.3 Deck stiffening 3.3.3 and where they form part of the collision bulkhead the arrangement is to be in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 3, 4.5 Watertight recesses, flats and loading ramps.

8. 5 Arrangements for the closing, securing and supporting of doors

8. 5. 1 Bow doors are to be fitted with adequate means of closing, securing and supporting so as to be commensurate with the strength and stiffness of the surrounding structure. The hull supporting structure in way of the bow doors is to be suitable for the same design loads and design stresses as the securing and supporting devices. Where packing is required, the packing material is to be of a comparatively soft type, and the supporting forces are to be carried by the steel structure only. Maximum design clearance between securing and supporting devices is not to exceed 3 mm.

8. 5. 2 Securing devices are to be simple to operate and easily accessible. They are to be of a design approved by ACS for the intended purpose.

8. 5. 3 Securing devices are to be equipped with positive locking arrangements. Arrangements are to be such that the devices are retained in the closed position within design limits of inclination, vibration and other motion-induced loads and in the event of loss of any actuating power supply.

8. 5. 4 Systems for door opening/closing and securing/locking are to be interlocked in such a way that they can only operate in a proper sequence. Hydraulic systems are to comply with Pt 5, Ch 14, 9 Hydraulic systems.

8. 5. 5 Means are to be provided to enable the bow doors to be mechanically fixed in the open position taking into account the self-weight of the door and a minimum wind pressure of 1.5 kN/m^2 (0.153 tonne-f/m^2) acting on the maximum projected area in the open position.

8. 5. 6 The spacing for side and top cleats should not exceed 2.5 m and there should be cleats positioned as close to the corners as practicable. Alternative arrangements for ensuring weathertight sealing will be specially considered.

8. 5. 7 Control and monitoring arrangements are to comply with Pt 6, Ch 2, 19 Ship safety systems.

8. 6 Design of securing and supporting devices

8. 6. 1 The external design forces for securing devices, supporting devices and surrounding structure are to be taken not less than P, taking the direction of the pressure into account:

$$P_x = A_x p_e$$

$$P_y = A_y p_e$$

$$P_{yz} = A_z p_e$$

Where

p_e = external sea pressure, not to be taken less than:

a. For bow doors:

$$p_e = 0.8(0.15V + 0.6\sqrt{L})^2 \text{kN/m}^2$$

or

$$p_e = 2.75\lambda C_H(0.22 + 0.15\tan\alpha)(0.4V\sin\beta + 0.6\sqrt{L})^2 \text{kN/m}^2$$

whichever is the greater.

b. For inner doors:

$$p_e = 0.45L \text{kN/m}^2$$

or

$$p_e = 10q \text{kN/m}^2$$

whichever is the greater

The symbols are as defined in Pt 4, Ch 2, 8.1 Symbols 8.1.1.

8. 6. 2 The inner door internal design pressure, considered for the scantlings of securing devices, is not to be less than 25 kN/m^2.

8. 6. 3 For visor doors, the pivot arrangement is to be such that the visor is self-closing under external loads. The closing moment, M_c, is to be taken as:

$$M_c = P_x a + l0Wc - P_z b \text{kNm}$$

but is not to be less than:

$$M_c = 10Wc + 0.1\sqrt{(a^2 + b^2)(p_x^2 + p_z^2)} kN\ m$$

8. 6. 4 For visor doors, two securing devices are to be provided at the lower part of the door, each capable of providing the full reaction force required to prevent opening of the door within the permissible stresses given in Pt 4, Ch 2, 8.6 Design of securing and supporting devices 8.6.7. The opening moment M_o, to be balanced by this reaction force, is to be taken as not less than:

$$M_o = 10Wd + 5A_X a \text{kNm}$$

8. 6. 5 For visor type doors, the securing and supporting devices, excluding hinges, are to be capable of resisting the vertical design force (P_z – 10W) kN, within the permissible stresses given in Pt 4, Ch 2, 8.6 Design of securing and supporting devices 8.6.7.

8. 6. 6 For side-opening doors, securing devices are to be provided such that in the event of a failure of any single securing device the remainder are capable of providing the full reaction force required to prevent the opening of the door. The permissible stresses given in Pt 4, Ch 2, 8.6 Design of securing and supporting devices 8.6.7 are not to be exceeded. The opening moment about the hinges to be balanced by this reaction force is not to be less than that calculated when the following loads are applied:

a. An internal pressure of 5 kN/m^2.
b. A force of $10W$ kN acting forward at the centroid of mass.

8. 6. 7 Securing devices and supporting devices are to be designed to withstand the forces given above using the following permissible stresses:

$$\tau = \frac{80}{k} \quad \text{N/mm}^2$$

$$\sigma = \frac{120}{k} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

$$\sigma_e = \frac{150}{k} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

8. 6. 8 The arrangement of securing and supporting devices is to be such that threaded bolts are not to carry support forces. The maximum tensile stress in way of threads of bolts, not carrying support forces, is not to exceed:

$$\frac{125}{k} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

8. 6. 9 For steel to steel bearings in securing and supporting devices, the nominal bearing pressure is not to exceed $0.8\sigma_y$. For other bearing materials, the permissible bearing pressure is to be determined according to the manufacturer's specification. The nominal bearing pressure is to be calculated by dividing the design force by the projected bearing area.

8. 6. 10 The reaction forces to be applied to the effective securing and supporting devices are to be determined from the combination of external loads defined in Table 2. 8. 1: Combination of external loads.

Table 2. 8. 1: Combination of external loads

Bow door type	Combination of external loads	
	Case 1 (Head seas)	Case 2 (Quartering seas)
Visor doors, *See* Notes 1 and 2	P_x and P_z *See* Note 3	$0.7P_y$ acting on each side separately, together with $0.7P_x$ and $0.7P_z$
Side opening, *See* Notes 1 and 2	P_x, P_y and P_z acting on both doors, *See* Note 3	$0.7P_x$ and $0.7P_z$ acting on both doors and $0.7P_y$ acting on each door separately
Note *1.* P_x, P_y and P_z are defined in Pt 4, Ch 2, 8.6, Design of securing and supporting devices 8.6.1. These forces are to be applied at the centroid of the projected areas. **Note** *2.* The self-weight of the door is to be included in the combination of external loads. **Note** *3.* The Case 1 forces are generally to give rise to a zero moment about the transverse axis through the centroid of area A_x, *See*Figure 2. 8. 1: Bow door (upward hinging).		

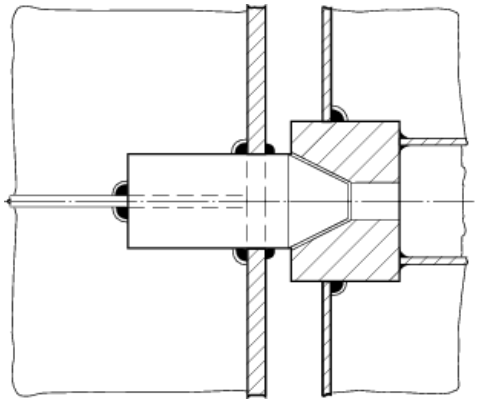
8. 6. 11 The distribution of the reaction forces acting on the securing and supporting devices is to be supported by direct calculations taking into account the flexibility of the hull structure and the actual position and stiffness of the supports. Small and/or flexible devices, such as cleats, intended to provide load compression of the packing material are not to be included in these calculations.

8. 6. 12 The hinge or linking arms of a bow door and its supports are to be designed for the static and dynamic opening forces. A minimum wind pressure of 1.5 kN/m^2, acting on the transverse projected area of the door is to be taken into account.

8. 6. 13 For side-opening doors, supporting devices are to be provided in way of girder ends at the closing of the two doors to prevent one side shifting towards the other under the effect of asymmetrical pressure. A typical arrangement is shown inFigure 2. 8. 3: Typical supporting device between doors.

8. 6. 14 Inner doors are to be gasketed and weathertight.

Figure 2. 8. 3: Typical supporting device between doors



8. 6. 15 Only the active supporting and securing devices having an effective stiffness in the relevant direction are to be included and considered to calculate the reaction forces acting on the devices.

8. 6. 16 The number of securing and supporting devices is to be the minimum practicable whilst complying with Pt 4, Ch 2, 8.6 Design of securing and supporting devices 8.6.4 and Pt 4, Ch 2, 8.6 Design of securing and supporting devices 8.6.17 and taking account of the available space for adequate support in the hull structure.

8. 6. 17 The arrangement of securing devices and supporting devices in way of these securing devices is to be designed with redundancy so that in the event of failure of any single securing or supporting device the remaining devices are capable of withstanding the reaction forces, resulting from the external loads defined in Table 2. 8. 1: Combination of external loads, without exceeding, by more than 20 per cent, the permissible stresses as defined in Pt 4, Ch 2, 8.6 Design of securing and supporting devices 8.6.7.

8. 7 Operating and Maintenance Manual

8. 7. 1 An Operating and Maintenance Manual for the bow doors and inner doors is to be provided on board and is to contain the following information:

a. main particulars and design drawings,
- special safety precautions;
- details of vessel;
- equipment and design loading for ramps;
- key plan of equipment for doors and ramps;
- manufacturers' recommended testing for equipment; and
- a description of the equipment for:
  - bow doors;
  - inner bow doors;
  - bow ramp/doors;
  - side doors;
  - stern doors;
  - central power pack;
  - bridge panel;
  - ramps leading down from the main deck;
  - engine control room panel.

b. service conditions:
- limiting heel and trim of the ship for loading/unloading;
- limiting heel and trim for door operations;
- operating instructions for doors and ramps; and

- emergency operating instructions for doors and ramps.

c. maintenance:
- schedule and extent of maintenance;
- troubleshooting and acceptable clearances; and
- manufacturers' maintenance procedures.

d. register of inspections, including inspection of locking, securing and supporting devices, repairs and renewals.

This Manual is to be submitted for approval, and is to contain a note recommending that recorded inspections of the door supporting and securing devices be carried out by the ship's staff at monthly intervals or following incidents that could result in damage, including heavy weather or contact in the region of the doors. Any damages recorded during such inspections are to be reported to ACS.

8. 7. 2 Documented operating procedures for closing and securing the bow doors and inner doors are to be kept on board and posted at an appropriate place.

PART

4

CHAPTER **2** **Ferries, Roll On-Roll Off Ships and Passenger Ships**

SECTION **9** **Subdivision structure on vehicle deck**

9. 1 General

9. 1. 1 The requirements of this Section cover subdivision structure fitted on the vehicle deck(s) of roll on-roll off passenger ships. Subdivision structure includes partition doors, bulkheads and longitudinal casings.

9. 1. 2 Where a ship is provided with subdivision structure that complies with the requirements of this Section, the ship will be eligible to be assigned the descriptive note **SSDS** (Subdivision Structure and Damage Stability).

9. 1. 3 The fitting of subdivision structure on the vehicle deck(s) forms one option to mitigate the stability-reducing effects of water on the vehicle deck(s) after damage. Such measures may be required by the National Administration with whom the ship is registered and/or by the National Administration within whose territorial jurisdiction the ship is intended to operate, for example *See* The Stockholm Agreement.

9. 2 Design loads

9. 2. 1 For calculation of the design loads, an equivalent depth of water on the first vehicle deck above the design waterline, d, in metres, is to be derived in accordance with the requirements of the National Administration, *See* Pt 4, Ch 2, 9.1 General 9.1.3

9. 2. 2 It is assumed that vehicles and cargo are effectively lashed and secured to prevent movement from the stowed position.

9. 2. 3 The design heads (*See* Figure 2. 9. 1: Design heads for different locations in compartment) are not to be taken less than the greater of 0.5 m and:

a. For transverse structure more than 1.5 m away from the longitudinal boundaries of the compartment:

$$h_{\mathrm{T}} = 1.4\sqrt{L_c dK} \text{ in metres, for z} < 1$$

$$= 1.4\sqrt{L_c dK}\left(1 - \frac{(z-1)}{1.4\sqrt{{}_c dK - 1}}\right) \text{ in metres, for } z \geq 1$$

Symbols are as defined in Pt 4, Ch 2, 9.2 Design loads 9.2.4.

b. For longitudinal structure more than $L_c/6$ away from the transverse boundaries of the compartment:

$$h_{\mathrm{L}} = \sqrt{\mathrm{B}_c \, \mathrm{d}} \text{ in metres, for z} < 1$$

$$= \sqrt{B_c\, d}\left(1 - \frac{z-1}{(1.4\sqrt{B_d}d-1)}\right) \text{ in metres, for z} \geq 1$$

Symbols are as defined in Pt 4, Ch 2, 9.2 Design loads 9.2.4.

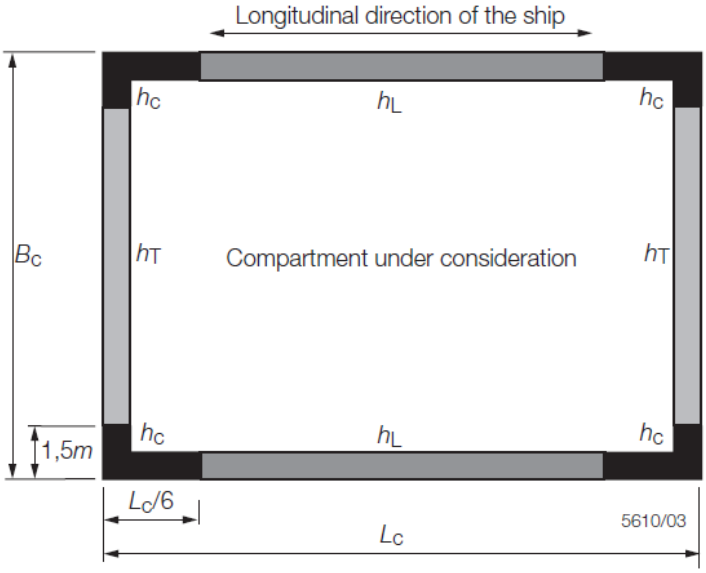
c. For structure elsewhere:

$$h_c = \frac{L_c K}{2} + \sqrt{R} \text{ in metres, for z} < 1$$

$$= \left(\frac{L_c K}{2} + \sqrt{R}\right)\left(1 - \frac{(z-1)}{1.4\left(\frac{L_c K}{2}+R\right)-1}\right) \text{ in metres, for z} \geq 1$$

Symbols are as defined in Pt 4, Ch 2, 9.2 Design loads 9.2.4.

Figure 2. 9. 1: Design heads for different locations in compartment



9. 2. 4 Symbols, as used in Pt 4, Ch 2, 9.2 Design loads 9.2.3, are defined as follows:

d = equivalent depth of water on the vehicle deck, in metres, in the upright condition taking into account the volume of flooded and accumulated water on the vehicle deck calculated in accordance with the requirements of the National Administration, *See* Pt 4, Ch 2, 9.1 General 9.1.3 and Pt 4, Ch 2, 9.2 Design loads 9.2.1

z = vertical distance, between the point under consideration and the flooded vehicle deck, in metres. For plate panels the point under consideration is to be taken as one third of the panel height above its lower edge. For stiffeners the point under consideration is to be taken as the midspan of the effective length

B_c = breadth of compartment, in metres, *See* Figure 2. 9. 1: Design heads for different locations in compartment

K = $0.21e(-^{-0.0033\,L}pp)$ and need not exceed 0.14

L_c = length of compartment, in metres, *See* Figure 2. 9. 1: Design heads for different locations in compartment

R = $B_c d - \frac{L_{2c} K_2}{12}$ and is not to be taken less than 0

e = base of natural logarithms, 2.7183

L_{pp} = as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6 Definitions

9. 2. 5 The design heads calculated in Pt 4, Ch 2, 9.2 Design loads 9.2.3 are based on the ship being in the upright condition. Where the actual damaged floating position is specified, the design heads will be specially considered taking this into account.

9. 2. 6 The subdivision structure, and access doors within the subdivision structure, are to be capable of withstanding the design loading applied from the side of the compartment under consideration.

9. 2. 7 Consideration will be given to the use of design heads agreed by the National Administration.

9. 3 Height of subdivision structure

9. 3. 1 The height of the subdivision structure, H_D, is not to be less than:

- 4m, or
- $8d$, but not less than 2.2 m, or
- the height between the vehicle deck under consideration and the underside of the next watertight deck above,

whichever is the lesser.

d = is defined in Pt 4, Ch 2, 9.2 Design loads 9.2.4.

9. 3. 2 For special arrangements, such as hanging car decks or wide side casings, other subdivision structure heights may be accepted on the basis of detailed model tests in the flooded conditions under investigation by the National Administration.

9. 4 Material

9. 4. 1 Where materials other than steel are used, the scantlings are to be specially considered.

9. 5 Scantlings of subdivision structure other than doors

9. 5. 1 The minimum scantlings of subdivision bulkheads and casings are to be derived in accordance with Table 1. 9. 1: Watertight and deep tank bulkhead scantlings for watertight bulkheads, where h_4 is to be substituted by either of h_T, h_L or h_c, depending on the location under consideration.

9. 5. 2 Where a cut-out is made in the subdivision structure for the fitting of an access door, the strength and integrity of the subdivision structure are to be maintained.

9. 6 Scantlings of subdivision doors

9. 6. 1 The plate thickness of subdivision doors of single plate construction is not to be less than the greater of:

t = $0.004sf(hk)^{0.5}$ mm, or

t = 5.0 mm

Where

s,k = as defined in Pt 4, Ch 2, 1.5 Symbols 1.5.1

f = as defined in Table 1. 9. 1: Watertight and deep tank bulkhead scantlings in Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships

h = h_T, h_L or h_c as defined in Pt 4, Ch 2, 9.2 Design loads 9.2.3, as appropriate.

9. 6. 2 For subdivision doors of a double plate construction the plate thickness is to be specially considered.

9. 6. 3 The scantlings of primary and secondary stiffeners of subdivision doors are to be based on direct strength calculations.

9. 6. 4 The direct strength calculations are also to provide an assessment of the door, under the design load, to enable the leakage and hence the drainage requirements of Pt 4, Ch 2, 9.9 Watertightness and drainage to be assessed.

9. 6. 5 For the purpose of the direct strength calculations. the stresses induced in the subdivision door, determined using the design loads from Pt 4, Ch 2, 9.2, Design loads, are not to exceed the permissible values given in Table 2. 9. 1: Permissible stress values. Checks are also to be carried out to ensure that the door will not buckle under the design loads.

Table 2. 9. 1: Permissible stress values

Stress type	Permissible stress
Direct stress	σ_o
Shear stress	$\frac{\sigma_o}{3}$
Combined stress	σ_o
Symbols	
σ_o = specified minimum yield stress, in N/mm^2	

9. 6. 6 Where a cut-out is made within the subdivision door for the fitting of an access door, the strength of the subdivision door is to be maintained.

9. 7 Closing, securing and supporting of subdivision doors

9. 7. 1 The closing and securing devices of doors are to comply with the following requirements:

a. Securing devices are to be simple to operate and easily accessible. They are to be of a design approved by ACS for the intended purpose.

b. Securing devices and supporting devices are to be designed to withstand the design loads calculated in Pt 4, Ch 2, 9.2 Design loads 9.2.1 in association with the permissible stresses shown in Table 2. 9. 2: Permissible stress values.

c. The arrangement of securing and supporting devices is to be such that threaded bolts do not carry support forces. The maximum tensile stress in way of threads of bolts not carrying support forces is not to exceed $0.5\sigma_o$.

d. For steel to steel bearings in securing and supporting devices, the bearing pressure is not to exceed $0.8\sigma_o$. For other bearing materials, the permissible bearing pressure is to be determined according to the manufacturer's specification. The bearing pressure is to be calculated by dividing the design force by the projected bearing area.

e. Only the active supporting and securing devices having an effective stiffness in the relevant direction are to be included when calculating the reaction forces acting on the devices.

f. Securing devices are to be equipped with positive locking arrangements. Arrangements are to be such that the securing devices are retained in the closed position within design limits of inclination, vibration and other motion-induced loads and in the event of loss of any actuating power supply.
g. Hydraulic systems are to comply with Pt 5, Ch 14, 9 Hydraulic systems.
h. Control and monitoring arrangements are to comply with Pt 6, Ch 2, 19 Ship safety systems.

Table 2. 9. 2: Permissible stress values

Stress type	Permissible stress
Direct stress	$0.8\sigma_o$
Shear stress	$0.5\sigma_o$
Combined stress	$0.8\sigma_o$
Symbols	
σ_o = specified minimum yield stress, in N/mm^2	

9. 7. 2 The reaction forces to be applied to the effective securing and supporting devices are to be determined using the applicable design loads calculated using the heads in Pt 4, Ch 2, 9.2, Design loads together with the weight of the door.

9. 8 Access doors

9. 8. 1 Access doors are permitted to be fitted in subdivision doors or bulkheads in order to provide acess between compartments.

9. 8. 2 Access doors may be manually operated.

9. 8. 3 The strength of access doors is to be not less than that of the surrounding structure.

9. 8. 4 Means are to be provided to ensure that access doors are closed and secured when not in use after the ship has left the berth.

9. 8. 5 A notice is to be displayed on the access doors stating that the door is to be closed and secured at all times when not in use, when the ship is under way.

9. 8. 6 Means are to be provided on the navigation bridge to indicate whether the access doors are opened or closed.

9. 9 Watertightness and drainage

9. 9. 1 Subdivision doors and access doors are to be fitted with gaskets in order to minimise leakage. For access doors where down flooding could result, particular attention is to be paid to drainage requirements.

9. 9. 2 The gasket arrangement shall provide sufficient flexibility to absorb possible racking deformation.

9. 9. 3 Attention is drawn to the drainage requirements of Pt 5, Ch 13, 3.1 General with respect to the compartments created by subdivision structures.

9. 9. 4 The drainage arrangement for each compartment is to have sufficient capacity to handle leakage from any adjacent flooded compartment.

9. 10 Ventilation of vehicle deck spaces

9. 10. 1 Attention is drawn to the ventilation requirement of Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.13 Special requirements for ships with spaces for carrying vehicles with fuel in their tanks, for their own propulsion 14.13.3, since subdivision structure could disrupt air flow.

9. 11 Operating and Maintenance Manual

9. 11. 1 An Operating and Maintenance Manual for the subdivision doors is to be provided on board and is to contain the following:

- main particulars and design drawings,
- service conditions (e.g. service area restrictions),
- maintenance and function testing,
- register of inspections, repairs and renewals.

9. 11. 2 The Manual is to be submitted for approval. It is to contain a note recommending that recorded inspections of supporting and securing devices are to be carried out by the ship's staff at monthly intervals, or following incidents that could result in damage, including heavy weather or contact in the region of the subdivision doors. Any damages recorded during such inspections are to be reported to ACS.

9. 11. 3 Documented operating procedures for closing and securing the subdivision doors are to be kept on board and posted in an appropriate place.

PART

4

CHAPTER **2** **Ferries, Roll On-Roll Off Ships and Passenger Ships**

SECTION **10** **Masts and standing rigging**

10. 1 General

10. 1. 1 Masts are generally to be of tubular construction and may be either stayed or unstayed. Special consideration will be given to other forms of construction.

10. 1. 2 Masts are to be of sufficient strength to withstand the worst combination of loads from both the operational case with full sail, reduced sail configurations where applicable and survival conditions.

10. 1. 3 Masts are to be adequately supported using stays if necessary.

10. 1. 4 Drainage is to be provided to prevent the build-up of sea-water or condensation within the mast structure. Steel masts should, where possible, be coated internally with a suitable anti-corrosive preparation.

10. 1. 5 Openings in the masts for entry and exit of running rigging or cables should be adequately compensated with suitable insert plates or doublers.

10. 1. 6 Masts are to be efficiently integrated into the hull and in principle, carried through to the keel. Alternative arrangements of supporting masts will require to be specially considered.

10. 1. 7 Where ship response data are not available the values for roll, pitch and heave given in Table 2. 10. 1: Ship motions should be used.

10. 2 Design loadings and allowable stresses

10. 2. 1 The mast and standing rigging design is to be considered with respect to the loads from the following conditions:

R1 - Operational case with full press of sails for the maximum operational apparent wind speed as specified by the designer.

R2 - Storm conditions with reduced sail.

R3 - Survival case with sails reefed/stowed/weathervaning with the environmental loads resulting from the combination of a maximum wind speed of 63 m/sec and the accelerations produced by ship motions.

Table 2. 10. 1: Ship motions

Motion	Maximum single amplitude	Period, in seconds

Roll	$\Phi = \sin^{-1}\theta$ degrees but need not exceed 30° and is not to be taken less than 22°	$T_r = \frac{0.7B}{\sqrt{GM}}$
Pitch	$\Psi = 12e^{-0.0033L_{pp}}$ degrees, but need not exceed 8°	$T_p = 0.5\sqrt{L_{pp}}$
Heave	$\frac{L_P}{80}$ m	$T_h = 0.5\sqrt{L_{pp}}$

where

L_{pp}, B as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6 Definitions

GM = transverse metacentric height of loaded ship, in metres

$\theta = \left(0.45 + 0.1\frac{L}{B}\right)\left(0.54 - \frac{L}{1270}\right)$

10. 2. 2 The mast section is to be designed to have a margin against failure due to column buckling using the greatest combined design axial and bending stress in both the transverse and fore and aft directions.

10. 2. 3 For loadcases R1 and R2 described in Pt 4, Ch 2, 10.2 Design loadings and allowable stresses 10.2.1, the following condition is to be satisfied:

$$\frac{\sigma_b}{\sigma_y} + \frac{\sigma_a}{\sigma_c} \leq 0.67$$

For loadcase R3 the following condition is to be satisfied:

$$\frac{\sigma_b}{\sigma_y} + \frac{\sigma_a}{\sigma_c} \leq 0.85$$

Where

σ_b = is the bending stress in the mast section under consideration

σ_y = is the tensile yield stress for the material

σ_a = is the axial stress in the mast section under consideration

σ_c = is the critical buckling stress for the mast section.

10. 2. 4 For thin walled masts, constructed from either flat or curved shells, calculations are to be submitted demonstrating adequate margin against local elastic instability.

10. 3 Materials of mast construction

10. 3. 1 In general masts are to be constructed from either steel or aluminium alloy tubular members, extrusions and/or welded constructions, and are, generally, to comply with Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials, where appropriate.

10. 3. 2 Other materials will be specially considered.

10. 4 Standing rigging

10. 4. 1 Standing rigging is to be so arranged such that it does not foul running rigging or interfere with the operation of the sails. Protection is to be provided against routine quay contacts.

10. 4. 2 Standing rigging is to be effectively attached to the masts, deck and hull structure and is to be so designed that it cannot become disconnected during operation.

10. 4. 3 Standing rigging is to be properly erected using tensioning devices to ensure that the correct pre-tension is applied as specified by the designer.

10. 4. 4 The initial pre-tension applied to standing rigging is to be measured and recorded.

10. 5 Design loadings

10. 5. 1 The forces in the standing rigging are to be obtained by direct calculation methods for the load conditions given in Pt 4, Ch 2, 10.2 Design loadings and allowable stresses 10.2.1.

10. 5. 2 The minimum factors of safety on the breaking strength of shrouds and stays are as follows:

Sail cases R1 and R2	3.5
Survival case R3	2.0

10. 6 Shroud and stay attachment points

10. 6. 1 Standing rigging is to be effectively attached to the masts, ship's deck or bulwark structure. Chain plates, mast eyeplates and the structure in way are to be reinforced to withstand a load of 1.2 x breaking strength of the appropriate shroud or stay.

Generally the hull structure in way of shroud/stay attachment should be capable of withstanding the wire breaking load without permanent deformation of the structure.

10. 6. 2 Increased mast wall thickness, or internal or external mast stiffening rings or diaphragms are to be arranged in way of the toes of shroud and stay eyeplates to resist mast wall punching shear loads. Where additional mast stiffening rings or diaphragms are not fitted, the mast wall is not to be less than:

$$t_{\text{wall}} = \frac{2\left(h_{\text{eyc}}\, B_s k_{\text{mast}}\right)}{\left(t_{\text{cye}} l_{\text{eye}}\right)} (\text{mm})$$

Where

h_{eye} = eyeplate pin axis from mast wall, mm, *See* Figure 2. 10. 1: Definition of heye and leye

B_s = breaking strength, in kN, of attached rigging component

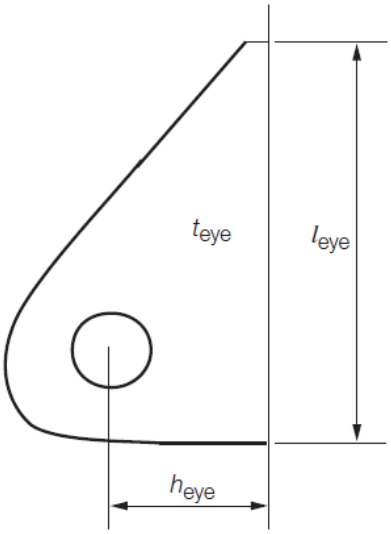
k_{mast} = mast material factor, k

t_{eye} = eyeplate thickness, mm, *See* Figure 2. 10. 1: Definition of heye and leye

l_{eye} = eyeplate length, mm, *See* Figure 2. 10. 1: Definition of heye and leye

10. 6. 3 The attachments of the stays and shrouds are to be efficiently integrated into the hull structure and due regard given to any attachments to the sheerstrake.

Figure 2. 10. 1: Definition of h_{eye} and l_{eye}



10. 6. 4 Where it is intended to use mechanical attachments (bolting) of running rigging or other gear to the mast walls, the number of holes are to be kept to a minimum and are to be staggered in order to maintain the structural integrity of the mast. All details are to be submitted.

10. 7 Materials for rigging

10. 7. 1 In general, standing rigging is to be made from galvanised steel wire rope (GSWR) with galvanised steel rigging screws, shackles and terminations, and is to comply with the requirements of ACS. Special consideration will, however, be given to other rigging materials.

10. 7. 2 Alternatively, stainless steel wire rope or solid rod rigging may be used in place of GSWR.

10. 7. 3 The steel wire rope, solid rods and loose fittings used for standing rigging are to be manufactured to a recognised National or International Standard and at an ACS approved works.

10. 7. 4 Rigging components from other sources will be specially considered.

10. 7. 5 Where stainless steel rigging is employed, particular attention is to be given to the selection of the grade of material used as some stainless steels are prone to stress corrosion cracking and consequent fatigue failure, the onset of which is not readily observed.

10. 7. 6 Attention is drawn to the requirements of the Flag Administration for the vessel who may have requirements regarding the application of certain materials, systems or criteria.

10. 8 Testing and certification

10. 8. 1 All equipment items used for standing rigging, including loose items of gear such as shackles, bottle screws, sheaves, etc. are to be tested and surveyed in accordance with ACS requirements. For systems employing specialised devices or materials, individual consideration will be given to the testing and survey requirements.

10. 8. 2 For sailing passenger ships, the equipment requirement will be in accordance with the letter and numeral two grades higher than that corresponding to the calculated Equipment Numeral.

PART

4

CHAPTER **2** **Ferries, Roll On-Roll Off Ships and Passenger Ships**

SECTION **11** **Miscellaneous openings**

11. 1 General

11. 1. 1 The requirements of Pt 3, Ch 11, 6 Miscellaneous openings are to be complied with.

11. 2 Openings in main vehicle deck

11. 2. 1 Where the main vehicle deck is enclosed, all companionways and openings in the deck which lead to spaces below are generally to be protected by steel doors or hatch covers. Approved fire doors may be accepted in lieu of steel doors. The sills or coamings are to be not less than 230 mm above the main vehicle deck, with the exception of those leading to machinery spaces which are to have sills or coamings not less than 380 mm. Exceptionally, when such openings are to be kept closed at sea, sills or coamings may be reduced in height, provided that the sealing arrangements are adequate. In such cases, the doors or hatch covers are to be secured weathertight by gaskets and a sufficient number of clamping devices. Such items as portable plates in the main vehicle deck arranged for the removal of machinery parts, etc. may be arranged flush with the deck, provided they are secured by gaskets and closely spaced bolts at a pitch not exceeding five diameters.

11. 2. 2 Scuppers from vehicle or cargo spaces above the bulkhead deck fitted with an approved fixed pressure water spray fire-extinguishing system are to be led directly overboard and are to be fitted with means of preventing water from passing inboard in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 12, 4.2 Closing appliances.

11. 2. 3 Inboard draining scuppers do not require valves but are to be led to suitable drain tanks (not engine room or hold bilges) and the capacity of the tanks is to be sufficient to hold approximately 20 minutes of drenching water. The arrangements for emptying these tanks are to be approved and suitable high level alarms provided.

11. 2. 4 A drainage system is to be arranged in the area between bow door and ramp, or where no ramp is fitted, between the bow door and inner door. The system is to be equipped with an audible and visual alarm function to the navigation bridge being set off when the water levels in these areas exceed 0.5 m or the high water level alarm, whichever is the lesser.

11. 2. 5 The drainage arrangement for each area is to have sufficient capacity to prevent accumulation of water in case of leakage. Scuppers are to be provided on both sides of the ship with a diameter not less than 50 mm and in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 12, 4 Scuppers and sanitary discharges. Alternatively, a bilge suction should be provided.

11. 2. 6 If the main vehicle deck is not totally enclosed, scuppers or freeing ports are to be provided consistent with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 8, 5.3 Freeing arrangements.

11. 2. 7 Air pipes from cofferdams or void spaces may terminate in the enclosed 'tween deck space on the main vehicle deck provided the space is adequately ventilated and the air pipes are provided with weathertight closing appliances.

11. 2. 8 Between the bow door and the inner door a television surveillance system is to be fitted with a monitor on the navigation bridge and in the engine control room. The system must monitor the position of doors and a sufficient number of their securing devices. Special consideration is to be given for lighting and contrasting colour of objects under surveillance, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 2, 8.5 Arrangements for the closing, securing and supporting of doors 8.5.7.

11. 3 Strength assessment of windows in large passenger ships

11. 3. 1 On windows in the second tier and higher above the freeboard deck, a glazing equivalent may be fitted in lieu of deadlights/storm covers. The thicknesses and arrangements are to be acceptable to the National Authority with whom the ship is registered and/or by the Administration within whose territorial jurisdiction the ship is intended to operate. For arrangements of glazing acceptable to ACS, *See* Table 2. 11. 1: Acceptable arrangements of glazing in lieu of portable storm covers/deadlights. Alternative arrangement of glazing in lieu of deadlights/storm covers may be accepted provided details are submitted for consideration.

11. 3. 2 For passenger ships the design pressure, H_d, on windows is to be taken as given in Table 2. 11. 2: Design pressure, Hd, on windows, or an equivalent National or Internationally Recognised Standard.

11. 3. 3 The thickness, t_o, of toughened safety glass is to be taken as given in Table 2. 11. 3: Thickness of toughened glass.

11. 3. 4 Toughened safety glass of laminated construction will also be accepted, provided the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 11, 6.5 Side scuttles, windows and skylights 6.5.29 are complied with.

Table 2. 11. 1: Acceptable arrangements of glazing in lieu of portable storm covers/deadlights

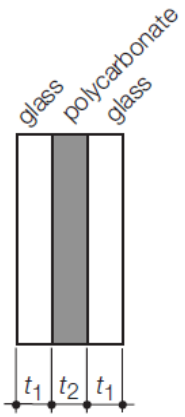
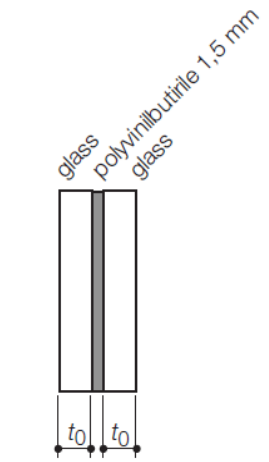
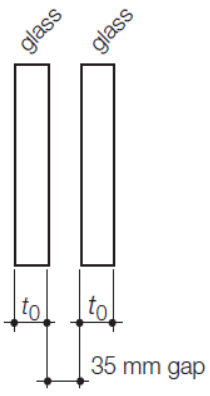
In lieu of portable storm covers	In lieu of deadlights and storm covers
 $t_1^2 + (0{,}77t_2)^2 + t_1^2 = (1{,}2t_0)^2$	 $t_0^2 + t_0^2 = (1{,}4t_0)^2$ 
Symbols	
t_0 = minimum thickness of toughened glass as calculated in Table 2. 11. 3: Thickness of toughened glass	

Table 2. 11. 2: Design pressure, H_d, on windows

Window location	Design pressure head H_d in metres
Between the design waterline and a point $Z_{1.5}$ m above the waterline	Per BS MA 25: 1973
Between a point $Z_{1.5}$ m above the waterline and the deck immediately above (at $Z_{d1.5}$)	1.5
Over the next 2 'tween deck heights	$1.5 - f_w\left(\frac{Z_w - Z_{dL,s}}{H_{t1} + H_{t2}}\right)$
For subsequent decks to the top of the navigation bridge	0.25 sides and aft ends 0.75 house fronts
From the top of the navigation bridge to the uppermost deck, for house fronts	0.75 at top of navigation bridge 0 at uppermost continuous deck, with linear variation between, but not less than 0.25
From the top of the navigation bridge to the uppermost deck, at sides and aft ends	0.25

Symbols

f_w = 1.25 in way of sides and ends of superstructures

= 0.75 in way of house fronts

$Z_{1.5}$ = the vertical location in metres above the waterline at which the BS MA:25 pressure as given in Annex E of BS MA:25 (is 1973) 1.5t/m^2

$Z_{d1.5}$ = the vertical location in metres of the deck at which the pressure is 1.5 t/m^2 from Table 2. 11. 1: Acceptable arrangements of glazing in lieu of portable storm covers/deadlights

Z_w = the vertical location in metres above the waterline to the point under consideration

$H_{t1}+H_{t2}$ = sum of the appropriate 'tween deck heights in metres

Table 2. 11. 3: Thickness of toughened glass

Window type	Thickness, t_o, in mm
Rectangular	$b\sqrt{\frac{H_d\beta}{4000}}$
Circular	$0.0175r\sqrt{H_d}$
Semi-circular	$0.011r\sqrt{H_d}$

Symbols

b	= length of shorter side of window, in mm
H_d	= design pressure head, in metres, as calculated in Table 2. 11. 2: Design pressure, Hd, on windows
β	= $0.54_{\ R} - 0.078A_R^2 - 0.17$ for $A_R \leq 3$
	= 0.75 for $A_R > 3$
A_R	= aspect ratio of window, in mm
	= a/b
a	= length of longer side of window, in mm
r	= the radius of the window, in mm

11. 4 Frame design and testing

11. 4. 1 **Application**. The testing requirements contained in this Section are for all exterior window and glass balustrade designs on all tiers for passenger ships regardless of length. The testing is to be carried out for characteristic window and balustrade sizes (largest, smallest) and forms (circular, semicircular and rectangular) for each passenger ship. Window and balustrade designs, which are not covered by Type Approval Certification, will require prototype testing in order to confirm structural integrity and weather or water tightness as required. Tests are to be carried out to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

11. 4. 2 **Water tightness**. hydrostatic test is to be carried out in order to examine the water tightness of windows. This is carried out by applying the design pressure head H_d, as calculated in Pt 4, Ch 2, 11.3, Strength assessment of windows in large passenger ships, to the external face of the window and maintained at this level for at least 15 minutes.

11. 4. 3 **Structural testing**. A hydrostatic test is to be carried out in order to examine the capability of the frame, mullions and the retaining arrangement for the glazing. This is carried out by applying a test pressure of $4H_d$ (H_d as calculated in Pt 4, Ch 2, 11.3, Strength assessment of windows in large passenger ships for windows and Pt 4, Ch 2, 12.3 Weather design loads for balustrades) to the external face of the window, utilising an aluminium alloy plate of appropriate temper and thickness to simulate the flexural response in lieu of the glazing. A full-scale test with actual glazing in place may be acceptable provided that the stresses induced are within allowable limits. Details of the calculations made and testing procedures are to be submitted for review prior to the test. Alternative means of demonstrating adequacy of frame, mullions and the retaining arrangement for the glazing may be specially considered.

11. 4. 4 Equivalent proposals for testing will be considered. Where alternative testing procedures are proposed, these are to be agreed with ACS before commencement.

11. 4. 5 **Chemically toughened glass.**

a. Chemically toughened glass may be used in lieu of thermally toughened glass provided it can be demonstrated the strength of the arrangement is at least equivalent in strength to that of thermally toughened glass.
b. The glazing system is to be of laminated construction.
c. Method of testing will be specially considered.

11. 4. 6 The overlap between glazing and the retaining frame is not to be less than 12 mm.

11. 5 Strength of mullions

11. 5. 1 The section modulus of mullions is not to be less than:

$$Z = 10.78 H_d l A_m k 10^{-9} cm^3$$

where

a = *See* Table 2. 11. 4: Mullion arrangements

b = *See* Table 2. 11. 4: Mullion arrangements

r = *See* Table 2. 11. 4: Mullion arrangements

l = a for rectangular windows

= $2r$ for semi-circular windows

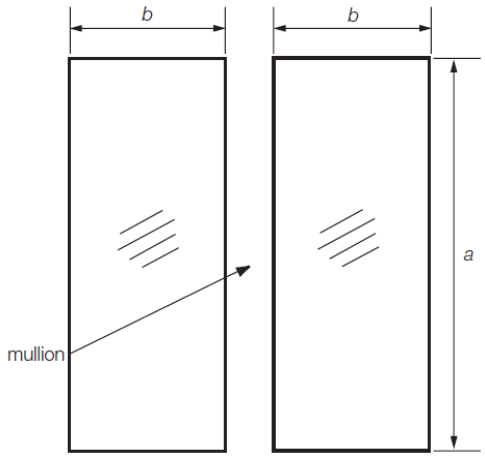
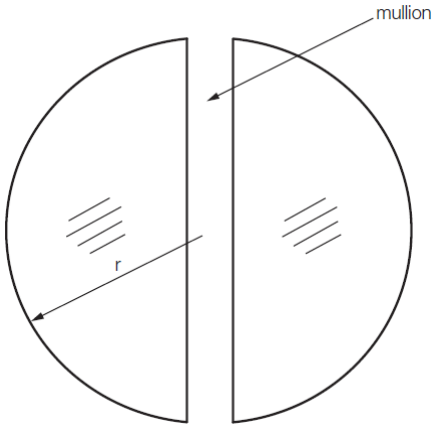
H_d = design pressure head, in metres, as calculated in Pt 4, Ch 2, 11.3 Strength assessment of windows in large passenger ships 11.3.2

A_m = ab for rectangular windows

= $1.22r^2$ for semi-circular windows

k = as defined in Pt 4, Ch 2, 1.5 Symbols 1.5.1.

Table 2. 11. 4: Mullion arrangements

Rectangular windows	Semi-circular windows
	

Symbols

a = dimension parallel to mullion, in mm

b = length of shorter side of window, in mm

r = radius of the window, in mm

11. 6 Bonded windows and side scuttles

11. 6. 1 A ‘bonded window’ or ‘bonded side scuttle’ is one in which the glazing material is secured in its frame from outside of the ship by glue or other adhesive material. No mechanical fixing is provided for the glazing. Bonded windows and side scuttles are to comply with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 2, 11 Miscellaneous openings. Proposals to secure glazing from the inside of the ship are to be specially considered using the requirements in this Section as a basis. It should be noted that bonding from the inside is not recommended and where it is proposed, further testing will be

required. Non-load bearing secondary bonded glazing, e.g. glazing to improve thermal insulation, is not required to comply with the requirements of this sub- Section.

11. 6. 2 The adhesive is to be flexible enough to support the glazing without holding it firm. The glue strip is to be elastic, with width and thickness designed to allow the glazing to move in both directions in the plane of the glazing without undue forces on the bonding or the substrate. The glass is to be free to settle under-load and not to be forced to follow deflections in the supporting structure. If substantial racking of the glazing opening under-load is expected, the bonding is to be designed to accommodate such deflections.

11. 6. 3 Bonded windows and side scuttles may be considered as acceptable, in general, depending on their position, size of vessel and applicable statutory requirements, noting the distinction between glazing and the frame, which may have different requirements.

11. 6. 4 Bonded windows are not permitted in galley areas, including glazing in galley doors (internal or external). They are not permitted on escape routes and evacuation routes where a fire rating is required. The fire integrity of bulkheads is not to be impaired.

11. 6. 5 Bonded windows and side scuttles are not acceptable on fire-fighting vessels, i.e. those with a fire-fighting notation.

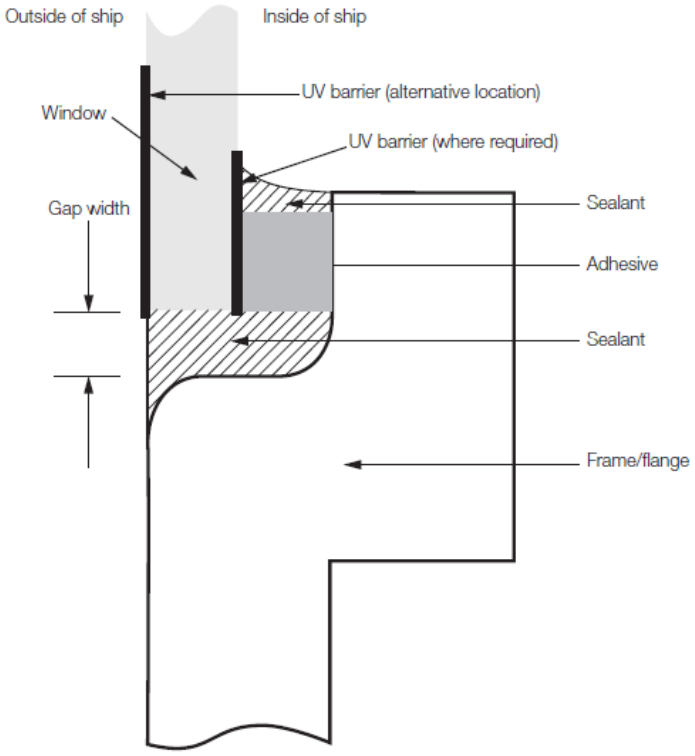
11. 6. 6 The failure of laminated glass is considered to pose a lower risk to safety than that of single pane glass. In the event of breaking, laminated glass more readily holds together and tends not to break up into large sharp pieces. Therefore, in general, laminated glazing is preferred. When laminated glass is used, the sealant is to be compatible with the interlayer. Lamination thickness is to be in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 11, 6.5 Side scuttles, windows and skylights 6.5.29. Special consideration will be given to single pane toughened safety glass.

11. 6. 7 The durability of the adhesive and the sealant in the long term marine environment is to be considered in the approval process. Adhesive is to be approved in accordance with Ch 14, 2.15 Adhesive and sealant materials of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials . The adhesive bead is to be resistant to or protected from UV radiation, either by an optically dense area at the edges of the glazing or by overlapping trim or UV shielding tape. The adhesive bead is to be resistant to or protected from fungal attack. Arrangements are to be in accordance with the adhesive manufacturer's published guidelines and relevant ACS Rules.

11. 6. 8 The edges of the bonding recess are to be rounded to facilitate the application of the sealant without air entrapment. The width of the gap between the flange and the glazing is to be large enough to accommodate the movement of the glazing as a result of hull deflection and thermal expansion, *See* Figure 2. 11. 1: Gap width between flange and window, bonded from outside of the ship. Recommended gap widths for bonded windows are to be taken as:

Gap width	Length of longest side of window
10–15 mm	<1.5 m
15–20 mm	1.5–3.0 m.

Figure 2. 11. 1: Gap width between flange and window, bonded from outside of the ship



11. 6. 9 The minimum adhesive width and thickness are to be in accordance with the adhesive manufacturer's published guidelines.

PART

4

CHAPTER **2** **Ferries, Roll On-Roll Off Ships and Passenger Ships**

SECTION **12** **External glass balustrades**

12. 1 General

12. 1. 1 Attention is drawn to relevant requirements of National and International Standards concerning the construction of barriers using glass, as well as applicable statutory regulations for the Protection of Crew, *See* the *Load Lines, 1966/1988 - International Convention on Load Lines, 1966, as Amended by the Protocol of 1988* and its Protocol of 1988.

12. 1. 2 The requirements of this Section apply solely to external glass balustrades. External glass balustrades are barriers constructed with glass that are used on exposed decks.

12. 2 Design considerations

12. 2. 1 External glass balustrades should not be situated in areas deemed essential for the operation of the ship. Such areas include mooring decks, lifeboat decks, external muster stations and in the vicinity of davits. Where external glass balustrades are not to be used, more traditional bulwarks or guard rails are to be fitted in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 8, 5 Bulwarks, guard rails and other means for the protection of crew.

12. 2. 2 External glass balustrades are to be designed to resist the most unfavourable anticipated loads within service, including weather loads or personnel loads without unacceptable deflection. Detailed plans and calculations are to be submitted clearly indicating the position, arrangement and the anticipated loads for all external glass balustrades.

12. 2. 3 External glass balustrades are to be not less than 1.0 m in height.

12. 2. 4 External glass balustrades are to provide water freeing areas in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 8, 5.3 Freeing arrangements.

12. 2. 5 Laminated toughened safety glass is to be used for the glazing of all external glass balustrades.

12. 2. 6 In general openings should not be greater than 76 mm unless required for water freeing. Openings for water freeing are not to be greater than 230 mm.

12. 2. 7 Consideration should be given to minimising the possibility of surface deterioration of the balustrade glass infill panels in service by means of suitable edge protection or finishes.

12. 2. 8 The total horizontal deflection of external glass balustrades is not to exceed 25 mm when subject to the anticipated loads specified in Pt 4, Ch 2, 12.3 Weather design loads or Pt 4, Ch 2, 12.4 Personnel design loads .

12. 2. 9 Special consideration may be given to external glass balustrades that are not constructed in accordance with this Section.

12. 3 Weather design loads

12. 3. 1 External glass balustrades are to be designed to resist the anticipated weather loadings dependent on their location specified in Table 2. 11. 2: Design pressure, Hd, on windows. It is recommended that the equivalent monolithic thickness of the glass infill panels be derived through direct calculations using the design pressures given in Table 2. 11. 2: Design pressure, Hd, on windows and a safety factor of 2 on the characteristic failure strength of toughened safety glass. The equivalent laminated toughened safety glass thickness can then be obtained in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 11, 6.5 Side scuttles, windows and skylights 6.5.29.

12. 4 Personnel design loads

12. 4. 1 External glass balustrades are to be designed to resist the most unfavourable anticipated personnel loads, which are to be specified by the designer. The specified personnel loads are to be not less than 1.5 times the commensurate loads specified in *EN 1991-1-1:2002 Eurocode 1: Actions on structures – Part 1-1: General actions – Densities, self-weight, imposed loads for buildings*.

12. 5 Balustrade stanchions

12. 5. 1 External glass balustrades are to be fitted with fixed stanchions of adequate strength to resist the anticipated loads imposed between stanchions specified in Pt 4, Ch 2, 12.3 Weather design loads and Pt 4, Ch 2, 12.4 Personnel design loads using a bending stress coefficient not greater than 0.6.

12. 6 Balustrade top rail

12. 6. 1 External glass balustrades are to be fitted with a continuous top rail.

12. 6. 2 The top rail is to be sufficiently stiff so as not to permanently deflect when subject to the personnel loads specified in Pt 4, Ch 2, 12.4 Personnel design loads .

12. 6. 3 The top rail is to be sufficiently stiff so as not to deflect more than $L_b/96$ when subject to the personnel loads specified in Pt 4, Ch 2, 12.4 Personnel design loads .

Where

L_b = span of top rail between stanchions, in m.

12. 6. 4 The top rail minimum section modulus is to be greater than:

$$Z = \frac{141 \times q_k \times L_b^2}{f_\sigma \sigma_o} \text{cm}^3$$

Where

L_b = span of top rail between stanchions, in m.

q_k = line load on top rail, in kN/m, in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 2, 12.4 Personnel design loads and to be taken not less than 1 kN/m

σ_o = specified minimum yield stress in N/mm^2.

f_σ = bending stress coefficient not to be taken greater than 0.6.

12. 7 Impact Resistance and Containment

12. 7. 1 External glass balustrades are to be subject to a prototype pendulum impact test in accordance with *EN 13049:2003 Windows — Soft and heavy body impact — Test method, safety requirements and classification*or an equivalent National or International Standard utilising a drop height of not less than 1.5m. The test specimens including the retaining arrangements should be the same as the finished installation.

PART

4

CHAPTER **2** **Ferries, Roll On-Roll Off Ships and Passenger Ships**

SECTION **13** **Direct calculation**

13. 1 Application

13. 1. 1 Direct calculations are to be employed in derivation of scantlings where required by preceding Sections of this Chapter or by related provisions included in Pt 3 Ship Structures (General).

13. 1. 2 Direct calculation methods are also generally to be used where additional calculations are required by the Rules in respect of unusual structural arrangements.

13. 2 Procedures

13. 2. 1 For details of ACS's direct calculation procedures, *See* Pt 3, Ch 1, 2 Direct calculations. For requirements concerning use of other calculation procedures, *See* Pt 3, Ch 1, 3 Equivalents.

PART

4

CHAPTER **3 Tugs**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**1580**
	1. 1	Application	1580
	1. 2	Class notations	1580
	1. 3	Information required	1581
SECTION 2	**Longitudinal strength**		**1582**
	2. 1	General	1582
SECTION 3	**Floors in single bottoms**		**1583**
	3. 1	Floors	1583
SECTION 4	**Panting and strengthening of bottom forward**		**1584**
	4. 1	Panting region reinforcement	1584
	4. 2	Strengthening of bottom forward	1584
SECTION 5	**Machinery casings**		**1585**
	5. 1	Escape hatches	1585
SECTION 6	**Freeing arrangements**		**1586**
	6. 1	General	1586
SECTION 7	**Towing arrangements**		**1587**
	7. 1	Towing equipment	1587
	7. 2	Towing equipment foundations	1587
	7. 3	Towing winches	1588
	7. 4	Towline guiding fittings	1589
	7. 5	Towing hooks	1589
	7. 6	Supporting Structure	1590
SECTION 8	**Fenders**		**1591**
	8. 1	Ship's side fenders	1591
SECTION 9	**Escort operation, performance numeral and trials**		**1592**
	9. 1	General	1592

9. 2 Towing arrangements..... 1592
9. 3 Performance numeral and trials 1593
9. 4 Computational Fluid Dynamics Predicted Performance..... 1594

PART

4

CHAPTER **3 Tugs**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 3. 1. 1: Class notations 1581
Table 3. 7. 1: Tug towing equipment design loads 1587

PART

4

CHAPTER **3 Tugs**

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 3. 9. 1: Forces generated during a typical escort mode 1593

PART

4

CHAPTER **3** **Tugs**

SECTION **1** **General**

1. 1 Application

1. 1. 1 Sections 1 to 8 of this Chapter apply to tugs.

1. 1. 2 Pt 4, Ch 3, 9 Escort operation, performance numeral and trials of this Chapter applies to tugs and offshore supply ships intended to provide escort operation.

1. 1. 3 The scantlings and arrangements are to be as required by Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships except as otherwise specified. The draught, T, used for the determination of scantlings is to be not less than $0.85D$.

1. 2 Class notations

1. 2. 1 Ships complying with relevant requirements will be assigned one or more of the class notations given in Table 3. 1. 1: Class notations.

1. 2. 2 Tugs intended to be operated only in suitable areas or conditions which have been agreed by the Committee, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.6 to Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.10, will receive individual consideration on the basis of the Rules with respect to the environmental conditions agreed for the design basis and approval. In particular, tugs complying with the requirements of this Chapter and Pt 3, Ch 13, 7 Equipment for the relevant reduced equipment requirements, will be eligible to be classed:

- **A1 tug protected waters service**; or
- **A1 escort tug protected waters service**; or
- **A1 escort tug EPN (F,B,V,C) protected waters service**; or
- **A1 escort tug EPN (CFD: F,B, V) protected waters service**; or
- **100A1 tug with service restriction notation**; or
- **100A1 escort tug with service restriction notation**; or
- **100A1 escort tug EPN (F,B,V,C) with service restriction notation**; or
- **100A1 escort tug EPN (CFD: F,B, V) with service restriction notation**;

whichever is applicable.

1. 2. 3 The Regulations for classification and the assignment of class notations are given in Pt 1, Ch 2 Classification Regulations to which reference should be made.

Table 3. 1. 1: Class notations

Class Notation	Applicable Sections
100A1 tug	Pt 4, Ch 3, 1 General to Pt 4, Ch 3, 8 Fenders
100A1 escort tug	Pt 4, Ch 3, 1 General to Pt 4, Ch 3, 9 Escort operation, performance numeral and trials, except Pt 4, Ch 3, 9.3, Performance numeral and trials and Pt 4, Ch 3, 9.4 Computational Fluid Dynamics Predicted Performance
100A1 escort tug EPN (F, B, V, C)	Pt 4, Ch 3, 1 General to Pt 4, Ch 3, 9 Escort operation, performance numeral and trials except Pt 4, Ch 3, 9.4 Computational Fluid Dynamics Predicted Performance
100A1 escort tug EPN (CFD: F, B, V)	Pt 4, Ch 3, 1 General to Pt 4, Ch 3, 9 Escort operation, performance numeral and trials, except Pt 4, Ch 3, 9.3, Performance numeral and trials
Note Tugs which comply with the anchor handler requirements in Pt 4, Ch 4, 1 General to Pt 4, Ch 3, 8 Fenders will be eligible for the additional notation **anchor handler**.	

1. 3 Information required

1. 3. 1 In addition to the information and plans required by Pt 3, Ch 1, 5 Information required, plans covering the following items are to be submitted for approval where applicable:

- Support structure and foundations of towing equipment.
- Skegs, propeller guards and other structures which support the weight of the vessel during dry-docking.

1. 3. 2 The following supporting documents are to be submitted for information:

- Towing arrangements, including lines of action, magnitudes and corresponding points of application of towline pulls on towing equipment.
- Details of the breaking strength of the components of the towline system, together with maximum pull and brake holding load, or equivalent, of towing winches where applicable.

PART

4

CHAPTER **3** **Tugs**

SECTION **2** **Longitudinal strength**

2. 1 General

2. 1. 1 The longitudinal strength standard is to comply with the relevant requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4 Longitudinal Strength.

2. 1. 2 The requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4, 8.3 Loading instrument regarding loading instruments are not applicable to tugs.

PART

4

CHAPTER **3** **Tugs**

SECTION **3** **Floors in single bottoms**

3. 1 Floors

3. 1. 1 Single bottom floors are to be in accordance with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 7 Single bottom structure, except that floors clear of the machinery space may be flanged in lieu of a face plate being fitted.

PART

4

CHAPTER 3 **Tugs**

SECTION 4 **Panting and strengthening of bottom forward**

4. 1 Panting region reinforcement

4. 1. 1 The arrangements to resist panting required by Pt 3, Ch 5 Fore End Structure do not apply to tugs less than 46 m in length. In tugs 46 m or more in length, additional stiffening is also to be fitted in the 'tween decks throughout the panting region.

4. 2 Strengthening of bottom forward

4. 2. 1 The requirements for strengthening of bottom forward detailed in Pt 3, Ch 5 Fore End Structure do not apply to tugs.

PART

4

CHAPTER **3 Tugs**

SECTION **5 Machinery casings**

5. 1 Escape hatches

5. 1. 1 Any emergency exit from the machinery room to the deck is to be capable of being used at extreme angles of heel, and should be positioned as high as possible above the waterline and on or near the ship's centreline. Covers to escape hatches are to have hinges arranged athwartships. Coaming heights are to be at least 600 mm above the upper surface of the deck.

PART

4

CHAPTER **3 Tugs**

SECTION **6 Freeing arrangements**

6. 1 General

6. 1. 1 If the only means of access to the wheelhouse is external, then stormboards, or an equivalent, are to be fitted between the deckhouse and the ship's sides forward of any deckhouse doors up to the height of the bulwark rail. A gap is to be left between the deck and the bottom board for freeing purposes.

PART

4

CHAPTER **3** **Tugs**

SECTION **7** **Towing arrangements**

7. 1 Towing equipment

7. 1. 1 For tugs which normally tow over the stern with the main towline connection to the hull ahead of the propellers, the position of towline connection is normally to be five to 10 per cent of the ship's length abaft amidships, but in no circumstances is it to be sited forward of a position, five per cent of the ship's Rule length abaft the longitudinal centre of gravity of the tug in any anticipated condition of loading.

7. 1. 2 The attachment of the towline to the tug is to be located as low as practicable in order to minimise heeling moments arising from working conditions. Reliable slip arrangements which facilitate towline release regardless of the angle of the towline are to be provided.

7. 1. 3 It is recommended that the slip arrangements should also be operable from the bridge. The arrangements should be tested to the Surveyor's satisfaction. The breaking strength of the hook, or its equivalent, should generally be 50 per cent in excess of that of the towline, *See* Pt 3, Ch 13, 7 Equipment.

7. 1. 4 The emergency release systems provided on towing winches that are used for towing ships within close quarters, ports or terminals, are also to comply with the requirements specified in Pt 7, Ch 16 Towing Winch Emergency Release Systems.

7. 2 Towing equipment foundations

7. 2. 1 Direct support for towing equipment by means of pillars and/or pillar bulkheads is to be arranged as far as this is practicable.

7. 2. 2 The design load to be considered for the strength assessment of the towing equipment and the associated supporting structures is to be as given in Table 3. 7. 1: Tug towing equipment design loads, unless a higher design load is specified by the designer/owner.

Table 3. 7. 1: Tug towing equipment design loads

Class Notation	Design Force or Bollard Pull as appropriate (kN)	Design Load (kN)
tug protected waters service	$T_{\mathrm{BP}} \leq 200$	$2.T_{BP}$
	$200 < T_{\mathrm{BP}} < 800$	$\left(\frac{2600 - T_{\mathrm{BP}}}{1200}\right) \cdot T_{\mathrm{BP}}$
	$T_{\mathrm{BP}} \geq 800$	$1.5.T_{BP}$
tug	$T_{\mathrm{BP}} \leq 400$	$2.5 \cdot T_{BP}$

	$400 < T_{BP} < 1000$	$\left(\frac{3400 - T_{BP}}{1200}\right) \cdot T_{BP}$
	$T_{BP} \geq 1000$	$2.T_{BP}$
escort tug protected waters service	$T_{DF} \leq 500$	$2.4 \cdot T_{DF}$
	$500 < TDF < 1000$	$\left(\frac{2000 - T_{DF}}{625}\right) \cdot T_{DF}$
	$T_{DF} \geq 1000$	$1.6 \cdot T_{DF}$
escort tug	$T_{DF} \leq 500$	$3.T_{DF}$
	$500 < T_{DF} < 1000$	$\left(\frac{2000 - T_{DF}}{500}\right) \cdot T_{DF}$
	$T_{DF} \geq 1000$	$2.T_{DF}$
Where T_{BP} = Bollard pull of the tug as submitted by the designer and represents the towline maximum continuous force (also called quasi-static towline force). T_{DF} = Design force as submitted by the designer and represents the towline maximum continuous force for escort operations (also called quasi-static towline force).		
Note 1 The Design loads shown in this table include dynamic effects.		

7. 2. 3 Scantlings of pillars and pillar bulkheads are to be in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 1, 4.4, Deck supporting structure.

7. 2. 4 The scantling requirements for towing arrangements are detailed in the following subsections:

- Towing winches Pt 4, Ch 3, 7.3 Towing winches
- Towline guiding fittings Pt 4, Ch 3, 7.4 Towline guiding fittings
- Towing hooks: Pt 4, Ch 3, 7.5 Towing hooks
- Towing equipment supporting structure: Pt 4, Ch 3, 7.6, Supporting Structure

7. 2. 5 Generally, the foundations of towing fairleads are to be carried through the deck and integrated into suitable underdeck structure.

7. 2. 6 On tugs which utilise an indirect method of towing, attention is drawn to the increased out-of-plane forces that occur in towing fairleads.

7. 3 Towing winches

7. 3. 1 The scantlings of towing winches (including winch drums, drum shafts, brakes, support frames and connections to the hull strucuture) are to be determined by direct calculations using the Design Loads given in Pt 4, Ch 3, 7.2 Towing equipment foundations 7.2.2 and are to be able to sustain the following:

- The Design Loads (in the most unfavourable anticipated position of the towline) without permanent deformation i.e. $\sigma_e \leq 1, \sigma_y$.
- The winch BHL (in the most unfavourable anticipated position of the towline), without exceeding $\sigma_e \leq 0.80\sigma_y$.
- The anticipated maximum RP (in the most unfavourable anticipated position of the towline), without exceeding $\sigma_e \leq 0.40\sigma_y$.

Where

BHL is the brake holding load, i.e. the maximum towline force the towing winch can withstand without slipping of the (activated) brake, considering the towline at the first inner layer.

RP is the rated pull, i.e. the winch maximum hauling-in load considering the towline at the first inner layer.

σ_e = equivalent stress, in N/mm^2

σ_y = specified minimum tensile yield stress of the material, in N/mm^2

7. 4 Towline guiding fittings

7. 4. 1 Towline guiding fittings, such as fairleads, staples, towing pins, stern rollers and equivalent components which guide the towline, shall be able to sustain the force exerted by the towline loaded under a tension equal to the design load as specified in Table 3. 7. 1: Tug towing equipment design loads, in the most unfavourable anticipated position of the towline. The fittings shall not exceed the following permissible stress levels:

- $\sigma \leq 0.75_{ref}$;
- $\tau \leq 0.47_{ref}$;
- $\sigma_e \leq 0.85_{ref}$

Where

σ = normal stress, in N/mm^2

τ = shear stress, in N/mm^2

σ_e = equivalent stress, in N/mm^2

σ_{ref} = $\frac{235}{k_L}$= Reference stress of the material in N/mm^2, but may be taken as σ_y for fittings not made of welded construction

k_L = as defined in Pt 3 Ship Structures (General), Table 2. 1. 1: Values of kL

7. 4. 2 Towline guiding fittings used for guiding the towline when towing on a towing winch shall be able to sustain the force exerted by the towline loaded under a tension equal to the winch BHL (with the most unfavourable anticipated position of the towline) without exceeding the specified permissible stress criteria.

7. 4. 3 Where a towline guiding fitting has been designed for a specific Safe Working Load (SWL), defined as the maximum static working load, the fitting shall be able to sustain a force equal to 2 times the SWL without exceeding the above-specified permissible stress criteria.

7. 5 Towing hooks

7. 5. 1 The scantlings of towing hooks, their load carrying attachments (transferring load from the hook to the hull structure) are to be determined by direct calculations using the Design Loads given in Pt 4, Ch 3, 7.2 Towing equipment foundations 7.2.2 and are to be able to sustain the Design Load (in the most unfavourable anticipated position), without exceeding $\sigma_e \leq 0.80\sigma_y$.

7. 6 Supporting Structure

7. 6. 1 The scantlings of the supporting structures of towing equipment shall be such that they able to sustain the force exerted upon them with the towing equipment under the action of the towline (with the most unfavourable anticipated position) loaded under a tension equal to the DL as specified in Table 3. 7. 1: Tug towing equipment design loads, without exceeding the following permissible stress levels:

- $\sigma \leq 0.75_{ref}$,
- $\tau \leq 0.47_{ref}$,
- $\sigma_e \leq 0.85_{ref}$

Where

σ = normal stress, in N/mm^2

τ = shear stress, in N/mm^2

σ_e = equivalent stress, in N/mm^2

σ_{ref} = $=\frac{235}{k_L}=$ Reference stress of the material in N/mm^2,

k_L = as defined in Pt 3 Ship Structures (General), Table 2. 1. 1: Values of kL

7. 6. 2 In addition, supporting structures of towing equipment used for escort or towing on a winch services shall be such that they able to sustain the force exerted upon them with the towing equipment under the action of the towline (with the most unfavourable anticipated position) loaded under a tension equal to the BHL of the associated winch without exceeding the permissible stress criteria in Pt 4, Ch 3, 7.6 Supporting Structure 7.6.1.

7. 6. 3 Where a towline guiding fitting has been designed for a specific Safe Working Load (SWL), defined as the maximum static working load, the supporting structure shall be able to sustain a force equal to 2 times the SWL without exceeding the permissible stress criteria in Pt 4, Ch 3, 7.6 Supporting Structure 7.6.1.

PART

4

CHAPTER **3** **Tugs**

SECTION **8** **Fenders**

8. 1 Ship's side fenders

8. 1. 1 An efficient fender is to be fitted to the ship's side at deck level extending all fore and aft.

PART

4

CHAPTER **3** **Tugs**

SECTION **9** **Escort operation, performance numeral and trials**

9. 1 General

9. 1. 1 An escort tug is a tug intended for escort operation. Escort operation is an operation in which the tug closely follows the assisted ship providing control by steering and braking, as necessary.

9. 1. 2 Escort tugs are to be capable of utilising methods of towing through which steering and braking forces are generated by a combination of propulsive and hydrodynamic forces developed by the tug, acting on the towline to the attended ship, *See* example in Figure 3. 9. 1: Forces generated during a typical escort mode.

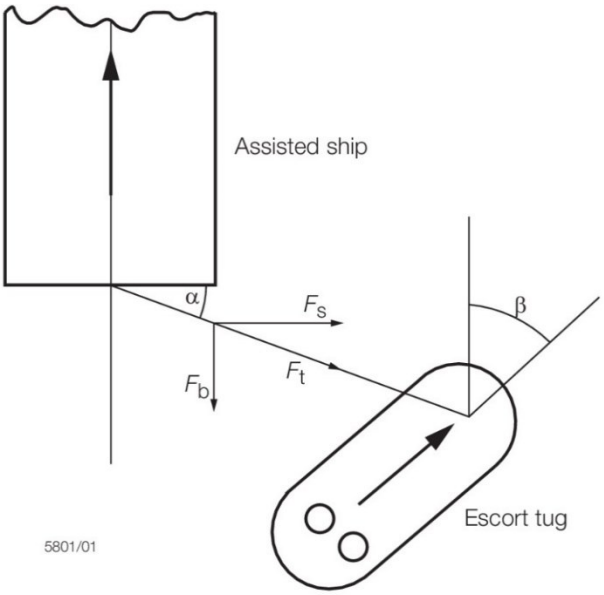
9. 1. 3 The intact stability of the tug during escort operation is to comply with a Standard recognised by the National Administration with whom the ship is registered and/or by the National Administration within whose territorial jurisdiction the tug is intended to operate, as applicable. Attention is drawn to the inherent problems relating to the quick release of the towline and the sudden loss of propulsion power during the escort operation in addition to the maximum steering and braking forces.

9. 2 Towing arrangements

9. 2. 1 The specified breaking strength of the towline is to be at least 2.5 x maximum design towline force.

9. 2. 2 The towing winch is to include a system of continuous load monitoring, with a bridge readout display and an overload prevention system, which is to be operational during escort duties. The overload prevention system is to be designed with the capability to pay out the towline in a controlled manner when the load reaches the maximum design towline force, and is to be capable of alerting the Master and crew.

Figure 3. 9. 1: Forces generated during a typical escort mode



F_t = force exerted by the tug on the assisted ship via the towline
F_s = steering (athwartships) component of F_t
F_b = breaking (longitudinal) component of F_t
α = angle between assisted ship's transverse axis and towline
β = angle between centreline of assisted ship and centreline of tug

9. 3 Performance numeral and trials

9. 3. 1 Escort tugs which carry out full scale performance trials in accordance with the requirements of this Section will be eligible to have the escort performance numeral **EPN (F,B,V,C)** appended to the **escort tug** notations, *See* Pt 4, Ch 3, 1.2 Class notations 1.2.1 and Pt 4, Ch 3, 1.2 Class notations 1.2.2 and Pt 4, Ch 4, 1.2 Class notations 1.2.2,

Where

F is the maximum steering force (F_s), in tonnes, *See* Figure 3. 9. 1: Forces generated during a typical escort modeand Pt 4, Ch 3, 9.3 Performance numeral and trials 9.3.6.

B is the maximum braking force (F_b), in tonnes, *See* Figure 3. 9. 1: Forces generated during a typical escort mode and Pt 4, Ch 3, 9.3 Performance numeral and trials 9.3.6.

V is the speed, in knots, at which **F** and **B** are determined.

C is the time, in seconds (s), required for the escort tug in manoeuvring from maintained oblique position of tug giving maximum steering force F_s on one side of assisted vessel to mirror position on the other side, *See* Pt 4, Ch 3, 9.3 Performance numeral and trials 9.3.6. The towline angle, **α**, need not be taken less than 30°, *See*Figure 3. 9. 1: Forces generated during a typical escort mode.

9. 3. 2 The performance numeral may be determined with speed **V** equal to either 8 knots or 10 knots. If both sets of numerals are determined at the trials then the class notation will include them all.

9. 3. 3 A trials plan, which includes the estimated forces, is to be submitted and approved prior to trials being undertaken.

9. 3. 4 The trials of the escort tug are to be performed using a ship capable of maintaining almost constant heading and speed when subjected to the steering and braking forces from the escort tug.

9. 3. 5 The following trials are to be carried out in calm weather conditions and in the presence of a Lloyd's Register Surveyor:

- Steering and braking force capability test, *See* Pt 4, Ch 3, 9.3 Performance numeral and trials 9.3.6.
- Bollard pull test, *See* Pt 4, Ch 3, 9.3 Performance numeral and trials 9.3.8.

A record of the results is to be kept on board the escort tug.

9. 3. 6 Prior to commencing a trial, the following data are to be recorded:

- Wind speed and direction.
- Sea state.
- Current speed and direction.
- Water depth.
- The main particulars and the loading condition of the assisted ship.
- Loading condition of the escort tug.

9. 3. 7 **Steering and braking force capability test** is a test by which the steering force, F_s, and braking force, F_b, are determined when utilising the method, shown inFigure 3. 9. 1: Forces generated during a typical escort mode, of towing at a range of towline angles, α, from 0 to 90 degrees and for a range of operating speeds up to and including the maximum escort speed. The following parameters are to be continuously recorded during the test:

- Position, speed and heading of the assisted ship and the escort tug.
- Towline force, F_t.
- Angle of towline, α.
- Heel angle of the escort tug.
- Direction of thrust and power absorbed by all propellers and thrusters of the tug.
- Rudder angles of the tug.

9. 3. 8 The length of the towline is to represent a typical operating condition and is to be recorded prior to and at the completion of the test. The steering and braking forces for a given speed and angle can be calculated by using the average values of the recorded towline force.

9. 3. 9 9.3.9 **Bollard pull test** is to be carried out in accordance with ACS *Guide for Certification of Bollard Pull*.

9. 4 Computational Fluid Dynamics Predicted Performance

9. 4. 1 Where the performance of the escort tug during escort operation in indirect towing mode has been predicted and reported using computational fluid dynamics in accordance with the requirements of this Section and in lieu of full-scale performance trials, the vessel will be eligible to have **EPN (CFD: F,B,V)** appended to the **escort tug** notation, *See* Pt 4, Ch 3, 1.2 Class notations 1.2.1, Pt 4, Ch 3, 1.2 Class notations 1.2.2 and Pt 4, Ch 4, 1.2 Class notations 1.2.2.

9. 4. 2 The computational fluid dynamics investigation is to include escort performance prediction with an escort speed equal to 8 knots and/or 10 knots.

9. 4. 3 A computational fluid dynamics report is to be submitted to ACS for consideration. The performance prediction simulating the trials detailed in Pt 4, Ch 3, 9.3, Performance numeral and trials is to be carried out in accordance with ACSPlus Guidelines titled *Guidelines for CFD Escort Tug Performance*.

9. 4. 4 The length of the towline in the computational fluid dynamics simulation is to represent a typical operating condition.

9. 4. 5 The report or a summary of the results obtained therein is to be kept on board the vessel and made available prior to the commencement of any full-scale performance trials.

PART

4

CHAPTER **4 Offshore Support Vessels**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**1600**
	1. 1	Application	1600
	1. 2	Class notations	1601
	1. 3	Information required	1602
	1. 4	Symbols	1603
SECTION 2	**Longitudinal strength**		**1604**
	2. 1	General	1604
SECTION 3	**Hull envelope plating**		**1605**
	3. 1	Hull envelope plating	1605
	3. 2	Side shell	1605
	3. 3	Weather decks	1605
	3. 4	Cargo containment	1606
SECTION 4	**Hull envelope framing**		**1607**
	4. 1	General	1607
SECTION 5	**Lifting appliances, equipment integration and foundations**		**1608**
	5. 1	Lifting appliances	1608
	5. 2	Equipment foundation loads and permissible stresses	1608
	5. 3	Equipment supporting arrangements loads and permissible stresses	1609
	5. 4	Support arrangements for towing equipment	1609
SECTION 6	**Miscellaneous openings**		**1610**
	6. 1	General	1610
	6. 2	Access from freeboard deck	1610
	6. 3	Windows and side scuttles	1610
SECTION 7	**Engine exhaust outlets**		**1611**
	7. 1	Location	1611

SECTION 8 Transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk 1612

8. 1 Scope 1612

8. 2 Definitions and equivalents 1612

8. 3 Design 1613

8. 4 Special requirements for products with a flashpoint not exceeding 60°C, toxic products and acid 1613

8. 5 Cargo containment 1614

8. 6 Materials of construction 1614

8. 7 Cargo transfer 1614

8. 8 Cargo tank venting 1615

8. 9 Electrical installations 1615

8. 10 Mechanical ventilation in the cargo area 1615

8. 11 Instrumentation and automation systems 1616

8. 12 Pollution prevention requirements 1616

8. 13 Carriage of liquefied gases 1616

SECTION 9 Enhanced weather protection 1618

9. 1 Applicability 1618

9. 2 Superstructure scantlings 1618

9. 3 Windows and side scuttles 1618

PART

4

CHAPTER 4 Offshore Support Vessels

LIST OF TABLES

Table 4. 1. 1: Type notations applicable to offshore support vessels 1601
Table 4. 3. 1: Minimum side shell thickness 1605
Table 4. 5. 1: Loading conditions 1608
Table 4. 9. 1: Superstructures and deckhouses on forecastle deck 1618
Table 4. 9. 2: Design pressure head, H_d, on windows 1620

PART

4

CHAPTER 4 **Offshore Support Vessels**

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 4. 9. 1: Location of windows and side scuttles..... 1621

PART

4

CHAPTER **4** **Offshore Support Vessels**

SECTION **1** **General**

1. 1 Application

1. 1. 1 This Chapter applies to sea-going ships specially designed and constructed to support the operations of offshore installations, including the carriage of specialised stores and cargoes to such facilities. These may be defined as:

a. **AHTS**: Assigned to vessels designed for anchor handling, towing and supply of specialised stores and cargo.

b. **Anchor handler**: Assigned to vessels specially designed, constructed and equipped for handling anchors used to secure floating offshore installations.

c. **Cable laying vessel**: Assigned where special consideration has been given to operations for laying/maintaining underwater cables.

d. **Diving support vessel**: Assigned where a diving system has been installed and where special consideration has been given to the launch and recovery systems for diving operations, including the strength and continuity in way of moon pools, large hatches, heavy loads, etc.

e. **Offshore supply vessel**: Assigned to vessels designed for the carriage of specialised stores and cargoes to fixed or floating offshore installations.

f. **Offshore support vessel**: Assigned to vessels designed for the provision of support services to fixed or floating offshore installations.

g. **Offshore well stimulation ship**: Assigned where a plant has been installed and where special consideration has been given to operations associated with the stimulation of wells for offshore oil/gas production.

h. **Pipe laying vessel**: Assigned where special consideration has been given to operations for laying/maintaining pipes associated with offshore oil/gas production.

i. **Seismographic support vessel**: Assigned where special consideration has been given to operations associated with seismographic research and survey.

j. **Standby vessel**: Assigned to vessels designed to provide rescue assistance and afford safe refuge in the event of an emergency on or near an offshore installation.

k. **Subsea support vessel**: Assigned where special consideration has been given to operations associated with subsea construction and installation support, inspection, repair and maintenance.

1. 1. 2 Where appropriate, ACS may request direct calculations or additional requirements to be complied with, for novel or additional features pertinent to a given Ship Type listed within this Chapter, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 1, 2.1 General 2.1.1.

1. 1. 3 The scantlings and arrangements are to be as required by Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships, except as otherwise specified in this Chapter.

1. 1. 4 Attention is drawn to the need for Masters to be able to assess the stability of their ships quickly and accurately in all service conditions, *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 3 Surveys - General.

1. 1. 5 Where towing equipment is fitted, the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 3, 7 Towing arrangements are to be applied.

1. 1. 6 Attention is drawn to the National and International standards applicable to vessels in this chapter as required by the Flag Administation

1. 2 Class notations

1. 2. 1 In general, ships complying with the requirements of this Chapter and relevant additional requirements will be eligible for one or a combination of the notations indicated in Table 4. 1. 1: Type notations applicable to offshore support vessels.

Table 4. 1. 1: Type notations applicable to offshore support vessels

Class Notation	Requirements
Offshore support vessel	Pt 4, Ch 4, 1 General to Pt 4, Ch 4, 8 Transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk
Offshore supply vessel	Pt 4, Ch 4, 1 General to Pt 4, Ch 4, 8 Transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk
Cable laying vessel **Pipe laying vessel** **Diving support vessel** **Subsea support vessel** **Seismographic support vessel**	Pt 4, Ch 4, 1 General, Pt 4, Ch 4, 2 Longitudinal strength, Pt 4, Ch 4, 7 Engine exhaust outlets and Pt 4, Ch 4, 8 Transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk, *See* Note 2
Standby vessel	Pt 4, Ch 4, 1 General to Pt 4, Ch 4, 8 Transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk
Anchor handler	Pt 4, Ch 4, 1 General to Pt 4, Ch 4, 8 Transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk
Offshore Tug	Pt 4, Ch 3, 1 General to Pt 4, Ch 3, 8 Fenders and Pt 4, Ch 4, 1 General to Pt 4, Ch 4, 8 Transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk
AHTS (Anchor Handler Tug Supply)	Pt 4, Ch 3, 1 General to Pt 4, Ch 3, 8 Fenders; and Pt 4, Ch 4, 1 General to Pt 4, Ch 4, 8 Transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk

Note *1.* A ship designed to fulfil more than one function can be assigned a combination of the notations listed above, e.g.:

- **100A1 Offshore supply vessel/Standby vessel**
- **100A1 Offshore supply vessel /Anchor handler**
- **100A1 Offshore supply vessel /Standby vessel/Oil Recovery**
- Any combination of the requirements listed in this Table.

Note 2. ACS may request direct calculations or additional requirements to be complied with, *See* Pt 4, Ch 4, 1.1 Application 1.1.2

1. 2. 2 The following additional special features may be requested:

- **EWP** (Enhanced Weather Protection):

The notation **EWP** may be added if the vessel complies with requirements in Pt 4, Ch 4, 9 Enhanced weather protection, e.g. **Offshore supply vessel EWP**. The notation is mandatory for vessels that are intended for unrestricted worldwide service and that are required to stay on station in adverse weather conditions. The enhanced features provide additional protection in harsh weather.

- **Oil Recovery:**

A vessel complying with the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 5 Ships Equipped for Oil Recovery Operations will be eligible for the notation **Oil Recovery**.

- **WDL(+)** (Weather deck load):

If the weather deck scantlings have been approved for a loading greater than a design head of 3.5 m, the notation **WDL(+)** may be added. If requested, the maximum permissible weather deck load and extent can be identified in the notation, e.g. **WDL(5.0 t/m2 from Aft to Fr. 26)**.

- **RD** (Relative density):

Where a ship has tanks appraised for a maximum permissible relative density greater than 1.025, the notation **RD(specified tank names, density)** may be added, *See* Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships.

- **LFPL** (Low flashpoint liquids):

Ships intended for the carriage of liquids with flash point below 60°C (closed-cup test) in bulk are to be built and equipped in accordance with the relevant requirements of Pt 4, Ch 4, 8 Transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk and will be given the class notation **LFPL**. If requested, the concerned cargo, flash point (closed-cup test) and tank can be identified in the notation, e.g. **LFPL(methanol, 12°C, No. 7 centre tank)**.

1. 2. 3 The Regulations for classification and the assignment of class notations are given in Pt 1, Ch 2 Classification Regulations, to which reference should be made.

1. 3 Information required

1. 3. 1 In addition to the information and plans required by Pt 3, Ch 1, 5 Information required, plans covering the following items are to be submitted where applicable:

- Independent cargo tanks.
- Cargo tank foundations and securing arrangements.
- Towing arrangements, including supports and foundations of towing winches.
- Arrangements for the stowage of deck cargoes (cargo containment) and details of any associated racks or other similar structures and their supports/foundations together with information to indicate design loads.
- Movable decks, including the stowing arrangements for portable components.
- Freeing arrangements.

1. 3. 2 In addition to the information and plans required by Pt 4, Ch 4, 1.3 Information required 1.3.1, details of local strengthening for the following items are to be submitted where applicable:

- The arrangement and integration into the hull of equipment, tanks, supports, foundations, etc. in conjunction with their mass, working load and holding capability information.
- For unusual structural arrangement and equipment, calculations are to be submitted showing acceptable structural strength.

- Supports and foundations for anchor handling and laying arrangements for anchors carried as cargo.
- Supports for towing arrangements.
- The arrangement for fast rescue craft.

1. 4 Symbols

1. 4. 1 The symbols are as defined in Pt 4, Ch 1, 1.5, Symbols and definitions.

PART

4

CHAPTER **4** **Offshore Support Vessels**

SECTION **2** **Longitudinal strength**

2. 1 General

2. 1. 1 The longitudinal strength standard is to comply with the relevant requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4 Longitudinal Strength.

2. 1. 2 The requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4, 8.3 Loading instrument regarding loading instruments are generally not applicable to offshore supply ships.

PART

4

CHAPTER 4 **Offshore Support Vessels**

SECTION 3 **Hull envelope plating**

3. 1 Hull envelope plating

3. 1. 1 Anchor handing activities often give rise to areas of high local loads and/or frequent impacts, such as in way of stern rollers and immediately adjacent to high duty bollards. The shell in way of high loads and/or frequent impacts is to be suitably reinforced by increasing shell plate thickness, additional stiffening support or other appropriate means.

3. 2 Side shell

3. 2. 1 The thickness of side shell is to be that required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 5.4 Side shell but is not to be less than given by Table 4. 3. 1: Minimum side shell thickness

3. 2. 2 As an alternative, where over the length of a vessel, portions of the sheerstrake that are not protected by an efficient fender, the sheerstrake is to be increased by a minimum of 5 mm thickness. The increased thickness shall extend from the deck level to not less than 600 mm below the deck level.

Table 4. 3. 1: Minimum side shell thickness

Ship type	Minimum thickness, mm
Offshore supply ships	9
Standby vessels	8
Anchor handler	9

3. 3 Weather decks

3. 3. 1 Where cargo is to be carried on weather decks, the scantlings are to be suitable for the specified loadings. The thickness, t, of deck plating is to be not less than the greater of:

a.

$$t = 0.025L + 4.5 + t_a \text{ mm}$$

b.

$$t = 0.1 f_m^s \sqrt{\frac{PF_D}{f_y \sigma}} t_a \text{mm}$$

Where

P = specified design load for weather deck, in tonnef/m^2

= $\frac{h}{1.39}$

h = equivalent design head, in metres, not to be taken less than 3.5 m

s = spacing of secondary stiffeners, in mm

σ = yield stress of plating, in N/mm^2

F_D = as defined in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.7 Local reduction factors

f_m = 0.75

f_y = 0.67

t_a = 2.5 mm, in general

= 1.0 mm, for ships with dedicated class notation **standby vessel**.

3. 3. 2 Scantlings are to be increased locally where specialised cargoes are likely to induce concentrated loads that exceed the specified design load. Acceptable stress levels are given in Pt 4, Ch 3, 7.2 Towing equipment foundations 7.2.4.

3. 3. 3 Deck areas, where there are arrangements for the collection and handling of anchors and associated equipment, are to be protected by wooden sheathing. Alternatively, this can be omitted if the plate thickness is increased by 2.5 mm.

3. 4 Cargo containment

3. 4. 1 Means are to be provided to enable deck cargoes to be adequately secured and protected. In general, suitable inner bulwarks, rails, bins or storage racks of substantial construction are to be provided and properly secured to adequately strengthened parts of the hull structure. Properly designed locking equipment or efficient means of lashing containers are to be fitted where appropriate. Small hatches (including escape hatches), valve controls, ventilators, air pipes, etc. are to be situated clear of the cargo containment areas.

PART

4

CHAPTER **4** **Offshore Support Vessels**

SECTION **4** **Hull envelope framing**

4. 1 General

4. 1. 1 The section moduli of side longitudinals, the main and 'tween deck frames are to be not less than kZ, cm^3

Where

k = 1.25 in general

= 1.10 for ships with dedicated class notation **standby vessel**

Z = as required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 6 Shell envelope framing, Pt 3, Ch 5, 4 Shell envelope framing and Pt 3, Ch 6, 4 Shell envelope framing for the appropriate location.

4. 1. 2 Frames are not to be scalloped.

4. 1. 3 The scantlings of deck secondary stiffeners are to be in accordance with the requirements of Table 1. 4. 4: Cargo and accommodation deck longitudinals (1) or Table 1. 4. 5: Strength/weather, cargo and accommodation deck beams (2) in Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships, where h_2 is to be taken as the specified design loading and not less than a design head of 3.5 m.

PART

4

CHAPTER 4 **Offshore Support Vessels**

SECTION 5 **Lifting appliances, equipment integration and foundations**

5. 1 Lifting appliances

5. 1. 1 Where the vessel has fitted onboard lifting appliances, which are considered by ACS to be essential for the vessel to fulfil its primary operational role, and if there are no alternative means of operation, it is a requirement that the lifting appliance(s) is classed in accordance with the requirements of the **LA** or **L̇A** notation, *See* Pt 3, Ch 9, 6 Lifting appliances and support arrangements.

- Where the **LA** notation is assigned,the lifting appliance(s) are to be designed, built and surveyed in accordance with ACS Guideline for Lifting Appliances in a Marine Environment.
- Where the **L̇A** notation is assigned, the lifting appliance(s) have been classed by a recognised classification society other than ACS and later transferred into class with ACS. From the time the **LA** notation is assigned, the subject appliance(s) is to be tested and surveyed in accordance with ACS Guideline for Lifting Appliances in a Marine Environment.

A lifting appliance forms an essential feature of a vessel if the purpose of the vessel is predominantly to support the appliance, and the purpose of the floating structure is impaired if the appliance is not functioning.

5. 1. 2 For non-classed lifting appliances, generally it is a requirement of National Authorities that lifting appliances are approved, examined, tested and certified by a competent person or organisation. It is ACS's interpretation of the intention of current National Regulations that every lifting appliance is to be certified. *See also* Pt 3, Ch 9, 6 Lifting appliances and support arrangements.

5. 2 Equipment foundation loads and permissible stresses

5. 2. 1 When considering the loads, all expected directions of operation are to be taken into account. The supporting arrangements for equipment which are not considered to be lifting appliances are to be loaded in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 4, 5.2 Equipment foundation loads and permissible stresses 5.2.1.

Table 4. 5. 1: Loading conditions

Loading/conditions	Loads

Transit/Stowed	Gravity loads; Environmental loads such as wind and waves as applicable; and inertia forces generated by ship motions, *See also ACS Guideline for Lifting Appliances in a Marine Environment, Ch 4, 2.11 Forces due to ship motion*.
Operation	Equipment operational load

5. 2. 2 Permissible stress values used for equipment integration and foundations are to be in accordance with the *ACS Guideline for Lifting Appliances in a Marine Environment, Ch 4, 5 Pedestals and foundation*

5. 3 Equipment supporting arrangements loads and permissible stresses

5. 3. 1 Support arrangements for lifting appliances which are part of the hull or main support structure are classification items and are to be in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 9, 6 Lifting appliances and support arrangements. For supporting structure that is not part of the hull or main support, reference is made to ACS Guideline for Lifting Appliances in a Marine Environment, Ch 4, 5 Pedestals and foundation.

5. 4 Support arrangements for towing equipment

5. 4. 1 Direct support for towing and deck equipment, if applicable, is to be in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 3, 7.2, Towing equipment foundations.

PART

4

CHAPTER 4 **Offshore Support Vessels**

SECTION 6 **Miscellaneous openings**

6. 1 General

6. 1. 1 For offshore supply ships the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 11, 6 Miscellaneous openings are to be complied with.

6. 2 Access from freeboard deck

6. 2. 1 There is to be no direct access from the freeboard deck to machinery or other spaces below the freeboard deck. Indirect access may be arranged via a space or passageway fitted with an outer door having a sill not less than 600 mm high and an inner door having a sill not less than 380 mm high. The inner door is to be self-closing and gastight. The space or passageway between the two doors is to be adequately drained. It is desirable, however, that access to spaces below the freeboard deck is arranged from a position above the superstructure deck. Where it is necessary to provide an emergency escape trunk which cannot terminate within a superstructure space, the arrangements for maintaining the integrity of the hatch or outlet are to be approved by ACS.

6. 3 Windows and side scuttles

6. 3. 1 Requirements for windows and side scuttles are to be determined in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 11, 6.5, Side scuttles, windows and skylights.

PART

4

CHAPTER **4** **Offshore Support Vessels**

SECTION **7** **Engine exhaust outlets**

7. 1 Location

7. 1. 1 Engine exhaust outlets are to be located as high as is practicable above the deck and are to be fitted with spark arresters.

PART

4

CHAPTER 4 **Offshore Support Vessels**

SECTION 8 **Transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk**

8. 1 Scope

8. 1. 1 This Section applies to the arrangement and scantling of sea-going ships as defined in Pt 4, Ch 4, 1.1,, Application and intended for the carriage of hazardous and noxious substances, i.e.;

a. Products which are listed in chapter 17 or chapter 18 of the IBC Code and the latest edition of the MEPC.2/Circular (Provisional categorization of liquid substances in accordance with MARPOL Annex II and the IBC Code) and their related references to chapter 15 and chapter 19; or
b. Oil-based/water-based mud containing mixtures of products listed in 1(a); or
c. Liquid carbon dioxide (high purity and reclaimed quality) and liquid nitrogen; or
d. Contaminated backloads.

8. 1. 2 The requirements of this Section are non-mandatory and need not be complied with for classification with ACS, although compliance may be insisted upon, in part or in full, by the Flag Administration.

8. 1. 3 Ships complying with the requirements of this Section will be eligible for the optional special feature notation **HNLS**.

8. 1. 4 Carriage of products not listed in Pt 4, Ch 4, 8.1 Scope 8.1.1 may be permitted in accordance with the *Code for the transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk on offshore support vessels* (OSV Chemical Code) 1.1 Application 1.1.10.

8. 1. 5 Compliance with the *Code for the transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk on offshore support vessels* (OSV Chemical Code) will warrant the issuance of a certificate of fitness in line with the Code for the transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk on offshore support vessels 1.4 Surveys and certification 1.4.1.

8. 1. 6 This Section is to be considered as additional to the requirements listed in Pt 4, Ch 4, Sections 1 to 7 in these Rules.

8. 2 Definitions and equivalents

8. 2. 1 The definitions applicable to this Section are as per the *Code for the transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk on offshore support vessels* (OSV Chemical Code) 1.2 Definitions.

8. 2. 2 Equivalents to the requirements of this Section will be considered in accordance with the *Code for the transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk on offshore support vessels* (OSV Chemical Code) 1.3 Equivalents.

8. 3 Design

8. 3. 1 The goals of this sub-Section are:

a. To ensure that the cargo tanks are located in protected location(s) in the event of minor hull damage.

b. To ensure that the cargo containment and handling systems are located so that the consequences of any release of cargo will be minimised, and to provide safe access for operation and inspection.

8. 3. 2 The vessel is to be designed in accordance with the following:

a. The *Code for the transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk on offshore support vessels (OSV Chemical Code) 2.3 Non-cargo discharges below the freeboard deck.*

b. The *Code for the transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk on offshore support vessels (OSV Chemical Code) 2.9 Location of cargo tanks.*

c. The *Code for the transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk on offshore support vessels (OSV Chemical Code) 3 Vessel design.*

d. Segregation of cargo tanks from spaces which are intended to be non-hazardous, where diagonal or corner to corner situations occur, will be specially considered. *See also* Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.2 Application and ship arrangement 1.2.9 of these Rules.

e. With respect to access to spaces in the cargo area, spaces which are of confined or cellular construction adjacent to cargo or slop tanks, such as double bottom tanks and cofferdams, are to have dual access from the upper deck, spaced as widely apart as possible. Pipe tunnels and duct keels to which access is normally required for operational purposes are to be provided with means of access not more than 60 m apart. In all cases, however, access is to be provided at each end of the tunnel or duct keel.

8. 4 Special requirements for products with a flashpoint not exceeding 60°C, toxic products and acid

8. 4. 1 The goal of this sub-Section is to ensure that the consequences of any release of liquid cargo with severe safety hazards, from compliant vessels, will be minimised; and to provide protection to the vessel and crew from fire, toxic vapour and corrosive substances.

8. 4. 2 Where the vessel is designed to carry cargoes with a flashpoint not exceeding 60°C, toxic products or acid, it shall comply with the following:

a. The *Code for the transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk on offshore support vessels (OSV Chemical Code) 4 Special requirements for products with a flashpoint not exceeding 60°C, toxic products and acid.*

b. With respect to toxic products, vapour return lines are to be fitted with shut-off valves and blank flanges.

c. With respect to internal cargo tanks for the carriage of acids, the surface is to be smooth and free of obstruction, and the arrangements at corners are to be appropriate to the intended lining arrangements.

d. With respect to tank or piping surfaces to be exposed to acid cargos, the corrosion protection lining is to be applied in a solid state.

e. Linings approved for use with acids are considered to be an acid-resistant material that is applied to the tank or piping system in a solid state with a defined elasticity property, which is to be greater than the elasticity of the structural steel.

8. 5 Cargo containment

8. 5. 1 The goal of this sub-Section is to ensure the safe containment of cargo under all fore*See*able design and operating conditions having regard to the nature of the cargo carried.

8. 5. 2 The cargo containment arrangements of the vessel shall comply with the following:

a. The *Code for the transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk on offshore support vessels (OSV Chemical Code) 5 Cargo containment.*
b. Cargo tanks are to be as required by the ACS Rules as applicable for the intended cargo.
c. Integral cargo tank scantlings and arrangements are to be in accordance with the ACS Rules as applicable.
d. With respect to independent cargo tank scantlings and arrangements, these are to be considered on the basis of the standards contained in the classification Rules taking account of the cargo relative densities, and giving due consideration to the maximum pressure which will be encountered in service and the dynamic loading which will be experienced by the tanks, supports and keys. Calculations are to be submitted to enable the appraisal of the proposed arrangements.
e. Where it is intended that vessels are to carry high temperature cargoes in independent cargo tanks, the tanks are to be supported and keyed so as to permit free expansion in all directions and to eliminate heat bridges which can transmit thermal stresses to the hull of the ship.
f. All openings in independent cargo tanks are to be in the top of the tank and extended above the deck (alternative arrangements will be specially considered). Access is to be from the open deck direct, with arrangements for maintaining watertightness at the joint between the hatch coaming and the deck.

8. 6 Materials of construction

8. 6. 1 The goal of this sub-Section is to ensure that the materials used in the construction of the vessel, piping, pumps, valves, vents, and their jointing materials are of suitable quality and traceability, and shall be suitable for the temperature and pressure for their intended function in accordance with appropriate standards.

8. 6. 2 OSVs intended for the transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk shall comply with the ACS Rules as applicable.

8. 7 Cargo transfer

8. 7. 1 The goal of this sub-Section is to ensure the safe handling of all cargoes, under all normal operating conditions and fore*See*able emergency conditions, to minimise the risk to the vessel, its crew and the environment, having regard to the nature of the products involved through ensuring the integrity of integral liquid product tanks, piping systems and cargo hoses, preventing the uncontrolled transfer of cargo, and ensuring reliable means to fill and empty cargo tanks.

8. 7. 2 OSVs intended for the transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk shall comply with the following cargo transfer requirements:

a. The *Code for the transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk on offshore support vessels (OSV Chemical Code) 6 Cargo Transfer*.
b. The nominal thickness of steel pipes is to be not less than shown in Pt 5 Main and Auxiliary Machinery Table 12. 2. 4: Minimum thickness for steel pipes in these Rules.
c. The use of and scantlings of stainless steel pipes will be specially considered.
d. Welding, post-heat treatment and non-destructive examination for piping fabrication and jointing details is also to be in accordance with the requirements of Ch 13 Requirements for Welded Construction of Pt 2.

e. Standby means for pumping out each cargo tank are to be provided. *See* Pt 5, Ch 15, 3.1 General 3.1.2 of Pt 2.
f. Details of ship's cargo hoses are to be submitted together with a type test certificate issued by a recognised authority.
g. The extreme service temperature for ship's cargo hoses is to be taken as the highest and/or lowest service temperature for which the hose is intended.

8. 8 Cargo tank venting

8. 8. 1 The goal of this sub-Section is to protect cargo containment systems from harmful over-pressure or under-pressure at all times.

8. 8. 2 The cargo tank venting arrangements for the vessel shall comply with the following:

a. The *Code for the transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk on offshore support vessels (OSV Chemical Code) 7 Cargo Tank venting*.
b. The system for guarding against liquid rising to a height which would exceed the design head of the cargo tanks is to be independent of the gauging devices.
c. With respect to cargo tank venting, attention is drawn to the need to comply with any more onerous filling height restrictions imposed by the carriage of high relative density cargoes (i.e. above 1.025 t/m^3).

8. 9 Electrical installations

8. 9. 1 The goal of this sub-Section is to ensure that electrical installations are designed so as to minimise the risk of fire and explosion from flammable products; and ensure availability of electrical generation and distribution systems relating to the safe carriage, handling and conditioning of cargoes.

8. 9. 2 The electrical installations aboard the vessel are to comply with the following:

a. The *Code for the transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk on offshore support vessels (OSV Chemical Code) 8 Electrical installations*.
b. Pt 6, Ch 2 Electrical Engineering of these Rules.
c. Where electrical equipment is to be of a 'safe type' in order to comply with *IEC 60092: Electrical installations in ships - Part 502: Tankers - Special features*, such equipment is to be certified for the gases/vapours involved. The construction and type testing are to be in accordance with IEC Publication *60079: Electrical Apparatus for Explosive Gas Atmospheres*, or an equivalent National Standard.
d. For electrical installations for systems or tanks which are to carry chlorosulphonic acid, hydrochloric acid, nitric acid, oleum, phosphoric acid, sulphuric acid or trimethylacetic acid, the hazardous areas identified in *IEC 60092 Electrical installations in ships - Part 502: Tankers - Special features, 4.5 Tankers carrying cargoes (for example acids) reacting with other products/materials to evolve flammable gases* are applicable. The relevant gas group and temperature class are IIC T1.
e. For electrical installations for systems or tanks which are to carry sulphur liquid, the hazardous areas identified in *IEC 60092 Electrical installations in ships - Part 502: Tankers - Special features, 4.3 Tankers carrying flammable liquids having a flashpoint exceeding 60° C*, are applicable.

8. 10 Mechanical ventilation in the cargo area

8. 10. 1 The goal of this sub-Section is to ensure that arrangements are provided for enclosed spaces in the cargo area to control the accumulation of flammable and/or toxic vapours.

8. 10. 2 Mechanical ventilation arrangements in the cargo area are to comply with the following:

a. The *Code for the transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk on offshore support vessels (OSV Chemical Code) 10 Mechanical ventilation in the cargo area*.

b. With respect to ventilation of spaces not normally entered, the particulars of the type and number of portable fans, their arrangement and means of attachment are to be submitted to ACS for consideration in relation to the internal and external arrangement of the space concerned;

i. increased ventilation will be required for spaces which contain gas-freeing systems, unless these systems are totally enclosed; and

ii. ventilation systems are to be capable of use prior to entry and during occupation.

8. 11 Instrumentation and automation systems

8. 11. 1 The goal of this sub-Section is to ensure that any instruments and automation systems provide for the safe carriage and handling of cargoes.

8. 11. 2 Instrumentation and automation systems on board the vessel shall comply with the *Code for the transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk on offshore support vessels* (OSV Chemical Code) 11 instrumentation and automation systems.

8. 12 Pollution prevention requirements

8. 12. 1 The goal of this sub-Section is to ensure control of pollution from noxious liquid substances from offshore support vessels.

8. 12. 2 The vessel shall comply with the Code for the transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk on offshore support vessels (OSV Chemical Code) 12 pollution prevention requirements.

8. 13 Carriage of liquefied gases

8. 13. 1 he goal of this sub-Section is to ensure that the vessel's design, arrangement and operational procedures are such as to minimise the risk to the vessel, its crew and the environment, when carrying liquefied gases in bulk.

8. 13. 2 Where the vessel is to carry liquefied gases as a cargo it shall comply with the following:

a. Cargo tanks are to be as required by the ACS Rules as applicable for the intended cargo.

b. The Code for the transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk on offshore support vessels (OSV Chemical Code) 18.1 General, noting that, in the context of the application of this Chapter of the code, deviation from specific requirements of the IGC code must first be agreed with the relevant Flag Administration and latterly presented to ACS for special consideration.

c. The Code for the transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk on offshore support vessels (OSV Chemical Code) 18.2 Accommodation, service and machinery spaces and control stations.

d. The Code for the transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk on offshore support vessels (OSV Chemical Code) 18.3 Cargo containment.

e. The Code for the transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk on offshore support vessels (OSV Chemical Code) 18.4 Materials of construction.

f. The Code for the transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk on offshore support vessels (OSV Chemical Code) 18.5 Vent system for cargo containment.

g. The Code for the transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk on offshore support vessels (OSV Chemical Code) 18.6 Cargo transfer.
h. The Code for the transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk on offshore support vessels (OSV Chemical Code) 18.7 Vapour detection.
i. The Code for the transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk on offshore support vessels (OSV Chemical Code) 18.8 Gauging and level detection.
j. The Code for the transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk on offshore support vessels (OSV Chemical Code) 18.9 Emergency shutdown system.
k. The *Code for the transport and handling of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk on offshore support vessels (OSV Chemical Code) 18.12 Carriage of other liquefied gases listed in chapter 19 of the IGC Code* noting that, where a vessel is intended for carriage of liquefied gases listed in chapter 19 of the IGC Code, other than liquid carbon dioxide (high purity and reclaimed quality) or liquid nitrogen, then agreement on the relevant aspects of the IGC Code and any additional requirements are to be agreed during multi-party discussions to include the Flag Administration and ACS.

PART

4

CHAPTER **4** **Offshore Support Vessels**

SECTION **9** **Enhanced weather protection**

9. 1 Applicability

9. 1. 1 Where the requirements in this Section are complied with, the special features notation **EWP** may be assigned.

9. 2 Superstructure scantlings

9. 2. 1 The scantlings of deckhouses situated on the forecastle deck and above are to comply with the requirements of Table 4. 9. 1: Superstructures and deckhouses on forecastle deck.

9. 2. 2 The scantlings of forecastle end bulkheads are to be not less than those required by Table 4. 9. 1: Superstructures and deckhouses on forecastle deck for aft ends of deckhouses or less than those required by Pt 3, Ch 8, 2 Scantlings of erections other than forecastles for an exposed machinery casing.

Table 4. 9. 1: Superstructures and deckhouses on forecastle deck

Position	Thickness of plating, in mm	Modulus of stiffeners, in cm^3	Depth of stiffeners, in mm
Fronts	The greater of $t = 0.012s$ or 8.0	$Z = 0.034sle^2$	Not less than 100
Sides	The greater of $t = 0.01s$ or 6.5	$Z = 0.027sl_e^2$	Not less than 75
Aft ends	The greater of $t = 0.008s$ or 6.5	$Z = 0.027sl_e^2$	Not less than 65
Note The ends of stiffeners are to be connected on all tiers.			

9. 3 Windows and side scuttles

9. 3. 1 The requirements of this Section are to be applied in conjunction with Pt 3, Ch 11, 6.5, Side scuttles, windows and skylights.

9. 3. 2 Windows may only be fitted in the following locations:

a. Second tier and higher above the freeboard deck:
   i. in the after end bulkhead of deckhouses and superstructures,
   ii. in the sides of deckhouses and superstructures which are not part of the shell plating.

b. Third tier and higher above the freeboard deck:
   i. in the forward facing bulkheads of deckhouse and superstructures, except that in the first tier of the front bulkhead above the weather deck, only side scuttles will be accepted.

9. 3. 3 In locations not specified in Pt 4, Ch 4, 9.3 Windows and side scuttles 9.3.2, only side scuttles will be accepted.

9. 3. 4 Permanently attached deadlights are to be provided as follows:

a. Side scuttles:
   i. in the side shell plating,
   ii. in the forward facing bulkheads of superstructures and deckhouses,
   iii. in the sides of deckhouses and superstructures up to and including the third tier above the freeboard deck,
   iv. in the after end bulkheads of superstructures, deckhouses, casings and companionways in the first and second tiers above the freeboard deck.

b. Windows in locations permitted in Pt 4, Ch 4, 9.3 Windows and side scuttles 9.3.2:
   i. in the sides of deckhouses and superstructures in the second and third tiers above the freeboard deck.
   ii. in the after end bulkheads of superstructures, deckhouses, casings and companionways in the second tier above the freeboard deck.

9. 3. 5 On windows in the second tier and higher above the freeboard deck, hinged storm covers may be fitted in lieu of deadlights, provided there is safe access for closing.

9. 3. 6 Windows in the wheelhouse front are to have deadlights or storm covers. For storm covers, an arrangement for easy and safe access is to be provided, (e.g. gangway with railing). However, for practical purposes, the deadlights or storm covers may be portable if stowed adjacent to the window for quick fitting. At least two of the deadlights or storm covers are to have the means of providing a clear view.

9. 3. 7 Deadlights for side scuttles, and for windows not mentioned in Pt 4, Ch 4, 9.3 Windows and side scuttles 9.3.5 and Pt 4, Ch 4, 9.3 Windows and side scuttles 9.3.6, are to be internally hinged.

9. 3. 8 Side scuttles are to comply with ISO Standard 1751, as follows:

a. Type A side scuttles in the shell plating, in the sides of superstructures and in the forward facing bulkheads of superstructures and deckhouses on the weather deck;
b. Type B side scuttles in the after ends of superstructures and in the sides and ends of deckhouses; or
c. An equivalent National Standard.

9. 3. 9 For the location of windows and side scuttles, *See* Figure 4. 9. 1: Location of windows and side scuttles.

9. 3. 10 The thickness of the toughened safety glass for windows is to be not less than the greater of:

a.

$$t = 10 \text{ mm}$$

b.

$$t = b\sqrt{\frac{H_b \beta}{4000}} mm$$

where

H_d = design pressure head, in metres, as obtained from Table 4. 9. 2: Design pressure head, Hd, on windows

b = length of shorter side of window, in mm

β = $0.54A_R - 0.078A_R^2 - 0.17$ for $A_R < 3$

= 0.75 for $A_R > 3$

A_R = aspect ratio of window

= a/b

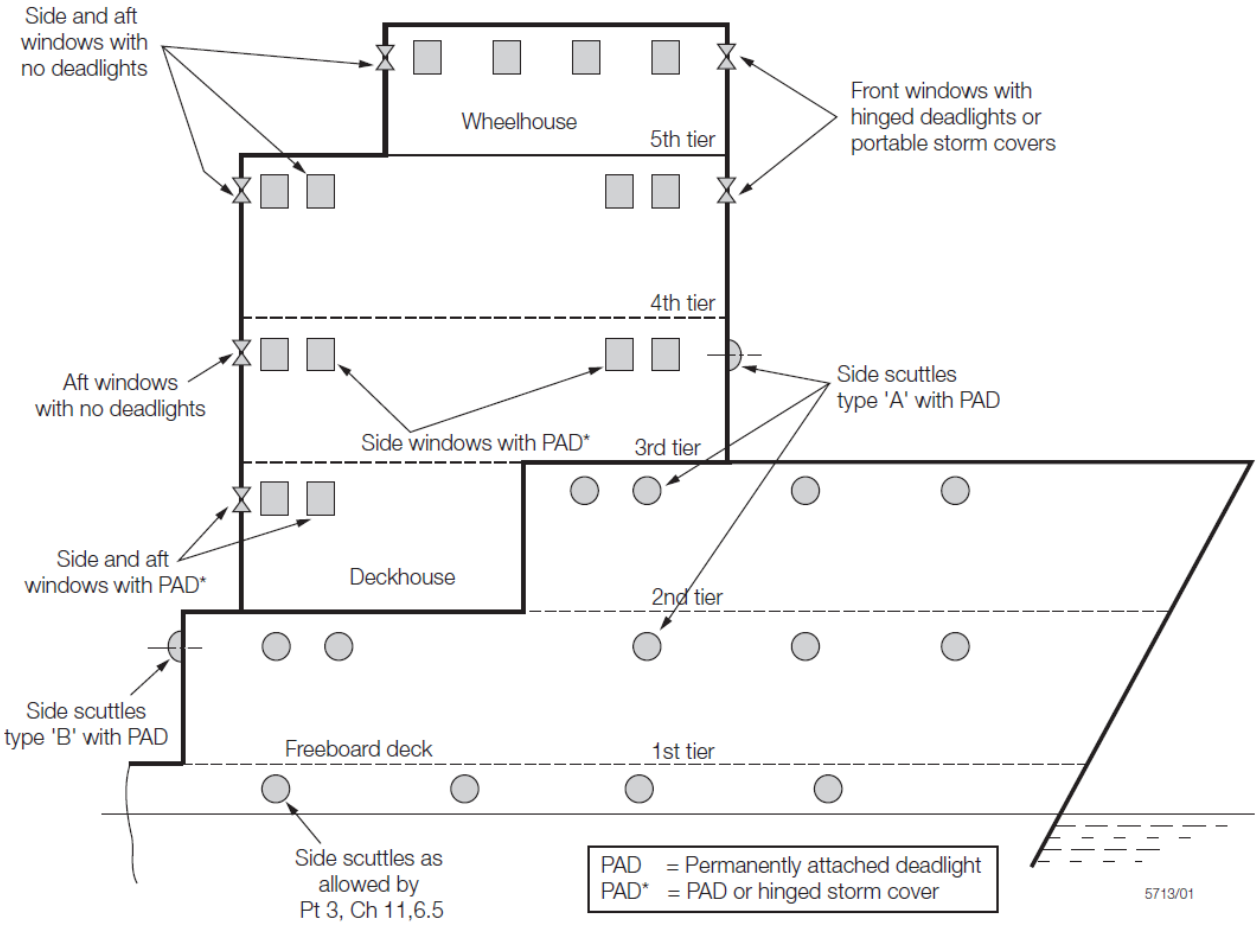
a = length of longer side of window, in mm.

9. 3. 11 Proposals for alternative materials will be specially considered.

Table 4. 9. 2: Design pressure head, H_d, on windows

	Design pressure head, in metres	
	Windows in front and side bulkheads	Windows in after end bulkheads
6th tier and above	3.0	2.5
5th tier	5.0	2.5
4th tier	8.0	2.5
3rd tier	12.5	6.25
2nd tier	14.0	8.0

Figure 4. 9. 1: Location of windows and side scuttles



PART

4

CHAPTER **5 Barges and Pontoons**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**1625**
	1. 1	Application	1625
	1. 2	Class notations	1626
	1. 3	Information required	1626
	1. 4	Symbols and definitions	1626
SECTION 2	**Longitudinal strength**		**1628**
	2. 1	General	1628
SECTION 3	**Hull envelope plating**		**1629**
	3. 1	Shell and deck plating	1629
SECTION 4	**Hull envelope framing**		**1631**
	4. 1	Symbols	1631
	4. 2	General	1631
	4. 3	Longitudinal framing	1632
	4. 4	Transverse framing	1632
	4. 5	Primary supporting structure	1633
SECTION 5	**Strengthening of bottom forward**		**1634**
	5. 1	Application	1634
SECTION 6	**Bottom strengthening for loading and unloading aground**		**1635**
	6. 1	Application	1635
SECTION 7	**Watertight bulkheads**		**1636**
	7. 1	Collision bulkheads	1636
SECTION 8	**Towing fittings**		**1637**
	8. 1	Smit-Type towing brackets and closed fairleads	1637
SECTION 9	**Void spaces**		**1639**
	9. 1	Void spaces on unmanned pontoons not fitted with auxiliary machinery	1639

PART

4

CHAPTER 5 Barges and Pontoons

LIST OF TABLES

Table 5. 1. 1: Applicable Rules 1625
Table 5. 2. 1: Ship service factor f_1 1628
Table 5. 3. 1: Shell and deck plating 1629
Table 5. 4. 1: Longitudinal framing 1632
Table 5. 4. 2: Transverse framing 1632
Table 5. 4. 3: Primary supporting structure 1633
Table 5. 7. 1: Collision bulkhead position 1636
Table 5. 8. 1: Permissible Stress Values 1638

PART

4

CHAPTER 5 Barges and Pontoons

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 5. 1. 1: Definition of Rule length 1627
Figure 5. 8. 1: Illustration of apex angle in a towing arrangement 1637

PART

4

CHAPTER **5** **Barges and Pontoons**

SECTION **1** **General**

1. 1 Application

1. 1. 1 This Chapter applies, in general, to manned or unmanned non-self-propelled ships defined as follows:

a. Barges for the carriage of general dry cargoes in cargo holds.
b. Barges for the carriage of liquid cargoes in bulk.
c. Pontoons designed specifically for the carriage of non-perishable cargo on deck.
d. Shipborne barges for the carriage of general dry cargo in cargo holds and intended to operate afloat only within specified geographical limits, and suitable for regular carriage on board a larger ship.

1. 1. 2 Manned or unmanned barges for the carriage of liquid chemicals in bulk and barges for the carriage of liquefied gases will receive individual consideration on the basis of the Rules, *See* Table 5. 1. 1: Applicable Rules.

Table 5. 1. 1: Applicable Rules

Type of barge	Applicable Rules
Barge for the carriage of general dry cargo in cargo hold	Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships
Barge for the carriage of liquid cargo in bulk	Pt 4, Ch 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers
Pontoon designed specifically for the carriage of non-perishable cargo on deck	Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships
Shipborne barges for the carriage of general dry cargo in cargo holds	Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships and this Chapter for `extended protected water service' barges

1. 1. 3 The scantlings and arrangements, except where otherwise specified in this Chapter, are to comply with the Rules as indicated in Table 5. 1. 1: Applicable Rules.

1. 1. 4 The Rules assume that the structural arrangements of barges carrying cargo in holds will generally approximate to normal ship shape and construction. Barges of this type not doing so will receive individual consideration on the basis of the Rules.

1. 1. 5 The Rules also assume that barges and pontoons are homogeneously loaded. Barges or pontoons with other types of loading, e.g. crane pontoon, will receive individual consideration.

1. 1. 6 All barges and pontoons are to be fitted with adequate arrangements for towing. In general, such arrangements are to consist of, or be equivalent to, not less than two sets of bollards, each of which shall be suitable for accepting a towline of suitable breaking strength.

1. 2 Class notations

1. 2. 1 In general, ships complying with the requirements of this Chapter will be eligible for one of the following classes:

a. **100A1 barge**. This class will be assigned to non-self-propelled sea-going ships as defined in Pt 4, Ch 5, 1.1, Application 1.1.1.

b. **100A1 oil barge**. This class will be assigned to non-self-propelled sea-going ships as defined in Pt 4, Ch 5, 1.1 Application 1.1.1.b.

c. **100A1 pontoon**. This class will be assigned to non-self-propelled sea-going ships as defined in Pt 4, Ch 5, 1.1 Application 1.1.1.c.

1. 2. 2 Barges and pontoons intended to be operated only in suitable areas or conditions which have been agreed by the Committee, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.6 to Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.10, will receive individual consideration on the basis of the Rules with respect to the environmental conditions agreed for the design basis and approval. In particular, shipborne barges as defined in Pt 4, Ch 5, 1.1 Application 1.1.1.d complying with the requirements of this Chapter will be eligible to be classed **100A1 shipborne barge extended protected water service**.

1. 2. 3 The Regulations for classification and the assignment of class notations are given in Pt 1, Ch 2 Classification Regulations, to which reference should be made.

1. 3 Information required

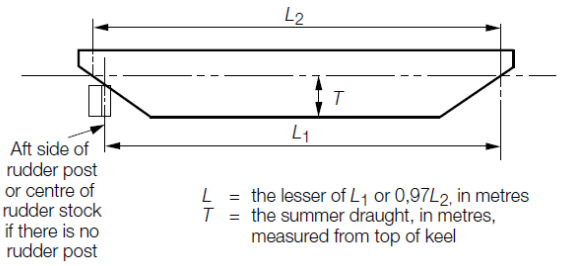
1. 3. 1 In addition to the information and plans required by Pt 3, Ch 1, 5 Information required, the following are to be submitted:

- Details of structure and fittings to which deck cargo securing lashings, etc. are attached.
- Details of the bollards and their supporting structure.
- Where pusher tugs or integral tug/barge systems are proposed, full details and data of the attachment and support arrangements.
- Details of the intended service areas required for barges or pontoons designed to operate within specified geographical limits.
- Longitudinal strength and lifting arrangements for ship-borne barges.

1. 4 Symbols and definitions

1. 4. 1 The Rule length, L, for vessels with swim ends is to be measured as shown in Figure 5. 1. 1: Definition of Rule length. Where a swim end is arranged aft but no rudder is fitted, L need not exceed 97 per cent of the extreme length on the summer load waterline. For tugs and barge units having rigid connections, the length, L, is to be taken as the combined length of the tug and barge.

Figure 5. 1. 1: Definition of Rule length



PART

4

CHAPTER **5** **Barges and Pontoons**

SECTION **2** **Longitudinal strength**

2. 1 General

2. 1. 1 Longitudinal strength calculations are to be made in accordance with the requirements given in Pt 3, Ch 4 Longitudinal Strength, and the ship service factor, f_1, is given in Table 5. 2. 1: Ship service factor f1.

Table 5. 2. 1: Ship service factor f_1

	f_1	
Type of ship	`100A1'	`100A1 extended protected water service'
Barge for the carriage of general cargo in holds and for the carriage of liquid cargoes in bulk	1.0	0.80
Pontoons for the carriage of non-perishable cargoes on deck		
Shipborne barges for the carriage of general cargo in holds and unmanned	—	0.70

2. 1. 2 The requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4, 8.3 Loading instrument regarding loading instruments are not applicable to barges and pontoons.

2. 1. 3 For shipborne barges, where it is the intention to lift the barge on board ship by crane, a condition `fully loaded barge suspended by crane' is to be submitted. For this condition the following stresses are permissible:

- Bending stress $\sigma_b = 147.2\ \mathrm{N/mm^2}$
- Shear stress $\tau = 98.1\ \mathrm{N/mm^2}$

PART

4

CHAPTER **5** **Barges and Pontoons**

SECTION **3** **Hull envelope plating**

3. 1 Shell and deck plating

3. 1. 1 The thickness of shell and deck plating is to be as necessary to give the hull section modulus required by Pt 4, Ch 5, 2.1 General and to satisfy the requirements listed in Table 5. 3. 1: Shell and deck plating.

Table 5. 3. 1: Shell and deck plating

Item of plating		Thickness for ships classed 100A1	Thickness for ships having extended protected water service notation
(a)	Keel	The separate requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships or Pt 4, Ch 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers, whichever is applicable, for keel width and thickness need not be applied, except where L > 100 m and the bottom has a rise of floor	
(b)	Bottom shell and bilge	In accordance with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships or Pt 4, Ch 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers, whichever is applicable	In accordance with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships or Pt 4, Ch 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers, whichever is applicable, reduced by 12.5 per cent, but is to be not less than required by (c) below
		For chines, *See* Pt 4, Ch 5, 3.1 Shell and deck plating 3.1.2	
(c)	Side shell from upper turn of bilge or chine to deck	The greater of the values obtained from Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships or Pt 4, Ch 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers, whichever is applicable, for the appropriate framing arrangement	
(d)	Deck	In accordance with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships or Pt 4, Ch 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers, whichever is applicable	In accordance with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships or Pt 4, Ch 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers, whichever is applicable, reduced by 2 mm, but is to be not less than the deck basic end thickness as required by Pt 3, Ch 5 Fore End Structure and Pt 3, Ch 6 Aft End Structure
		In pontoon barges with deck cargoes the deck thickness derived from (d) may be required to be increased	
(e)	Swim ends	The bottom shell plating thickness is to be maintained up to the summer load waterline for the rake plating. Above this point the thickness may be tapered to that of the side shell requirements from a point not less than 1 m above the load waterline	

3. 1. 2 On ships with two chines each side, the bilge plating should generally be calculated from the bottom plating formulae. On hard chine ships, flanged chines will not, in general, be approved, but where a chine is formed by knuckling the shell plating, the radius of curvature, measured on the inside of the plate, is to be not less than 10 times the plate thickness. Where a solid round chine bar is fitted, the bar diameter is to be not less than three times the thickness of the thickest abutting

plate. Where welded chines are used, the welding is to be built up as necessary to ensure that the shell plating thickness is maintained across the weld.

PART

4

CHAPTER **5** **Barges and Pontoons**

SECTION **4** **Hull envelope framing**

4. 1 Symbols

4. 1. 1 The symbols used in this Section are defined as follows:

h = head or load height, in metres, and is to be taken as:

= for bottom longitudinals, frames, girders and transverses: the depth D

= for side longitudinals: the distance of the longitudinal below the deck at side, but not less than $0.01L + 0.7$

= for side transverses: the distance from the mid-point of span to the deck at side, but not less than $0.01L + 0.7$

= for deck longitudinals and transverses: the head equivalent to cargo carried at a stowage rate of 1.39 m^3/tonne, but is not to be taken less than $0.01L + 0.7$

= for side frames: the distance from the midpoint of span to the deck at the side

= for deck beams and girders: the head equivalent to cargo carried at a stowage rate of 1.39 m^3/tonne, but is not to be taken less than required by Table 3. 5. 1: Design heads and permissible cargo loadings

l_e = effective length of stiffening member, in metres, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3 Structural idealisation

s = spacing of frames, beams or longitudinals, in mm

S = spacing or mean spacing of girders, transverses or floors, in metres

Z = section modulus of stiffening member, in cm^3, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3 Structural idealisation.

4. 2 General

4. 2. 1 Bottom, side and deck transverses are to be connected in such a manner as to ensure continuity of the transverse ring system, and longitudinals are to be attached to transverses. In way of deck and bottom transverses, a deep web frame is to be fitted.

4. 2. 2 End connections of longitudinals at bulkheads are to provide adequate fixity and direct continuity of longitudinal strength.

4. 2. 3 Brackets at the top and bottom of side frames are to extend to the adjacent deck or bottom longitudinal to which they are to be attached.

4. 2. 4 pontoons where truss arrangements, comprising top and bottom girders in association with pillars and diagonal bracing, are used in the support of the deck loads, the diagonal members are generally

to have angles of inclination with the horizontal of about 45° and cross-sectional area of approximately 50 per cent of the adjacent pillar in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 1, 4.4, Deck supporting structure, with a head in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 1, 4.1 General 4.1.1.

4. 2. 5 Adequate support must be provided on the centreline for the loads imposed on the structure when the ship is in dry dock.

4. 3 Longitudinal framing

4. 3. 1 The scantlings of bottom, side and deck longitudinals are to comply with the requirements of Table 5. 4. 1: Longitudinal framing.

Table 5. 4. 1: Longitudinal framing

Position of longitudinals	Modulus, in cm^3
Bottom	$* Z = 11.0le^2sh \times 10^{-3}$
Side shell	$* Z = 8.0l_e^2sh \times 10^{-3}$
Deck	$* Z = 5.5l_e^2\text{sh} \times 10^{-3}$
	* For the requirements for barges carrying liquid cargoes in bulk *See* Pt 4, Ch 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers
Note The scantlings derived from above need not exceed the scantling requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships or Pt 4, Ch 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers, whichever is applicable.	

4. 4 Transverse framing

4. 4. 1 The scantlings of bottom and side frames and deck beams are to comply with the requirements of Table 5. 4. 2: Transverse framing.

Table 5. 4. 2: Transverse framing

Position of member	Modulus, in cm^3
Bottom and side frames	$* Z = 9.5l_e^2\text{sh} \times 10^{-3}$
Deck beams	$* Z = 4.5l_e^2sh \times 10^{-3}$
	* For the requirements for barges carrying liquid cargoes in bulk *See* Pt 4, Ch 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers
Note The scantlings derived from above need not exceed the scantling requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships or Pt 4, Ch 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers, whichever is applicable.	

4. 5 Primary supporting structure

4. 5. 1 Primary supporting members are to comply with the requirements of Table 5. 4. 3: Primary supporting structure.

Table 5. 4. 3: Primary supporting structure

Position of member	Modulus, in cm^3
Bottom transverse	$* Z = 11.0 l_e^2 Sh$
Side transverse	$* Z = 8.0 l_e^2 Sh$ (may be reduced by 5 per cent for vessels classed `100A1 extended protected water service')
Deck transverse	$* Z = 5.5 l e^2 Sh$
Bottom girder	$* Z = 9.5 l_e^2 Sh$
Deck longitudinal girder	$* Z = 5.0 l_e^2 Sh$
	* For the requirements for barges carrying liquid cargoes in bulk *See* Pt 4, Ch 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers
Note The scantlings derived from above need not exceed the scantling requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships or Pt 4, Ch 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers, whichever is applicable	

PART

4

CHAPTER **5 Barges and Pontoons**

SECTION **5 Strengthening of bottom forward**

5. 1 Application

5. 1. 1 The requirements for strengthening of bottom forward detailed in Pt 3, Ch 5 Fore End Structure do not apply to barges or pontoons less than 50 m in length.

PART

4

CHAPTER **5** **Barges and Pontoons**

SECTION **6** **Bottom strengthening for loading and unloading aground**

6. 1 Application

6. 1. 1 For barges or pontoons intended to load or unload while aground, *See* Pt 3, Ch 9, 7 Bottom strengthening for loading and unloading aground.

PART

4

CHAPTER **5** **Barges and Pontoons**

SECTION **7** **Watertight bulkheads**

7. 1 Collision bulkheads

7. 1. 1 Barges and pontoons are to have a collision bulkhead extending intact to the strength/weather deck and, in general, this is to be positioned as detailed in Table 5. 7. 1: Collision bulkhead position.

Table 5. 7. 1: Collision bulkhead position

Length *L*, in metres	Distance of collision bulkhead aft of fore end of *L*, in metres, *See* Figure 5. 1. 1: Definition of Rule length	
	Minimum	Maximum
≤ 150	0.05*L*	0.05L + 4.5
> 150	The lesser of: 0.05*L* or 10	0.08*L*

PART

4

CHAPTER **5** **Barges and Pontoons**

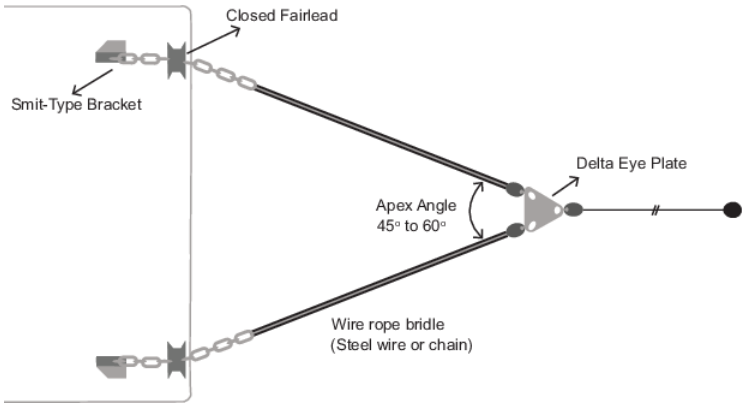
SECTION **8** **Towing fittings**

8. 1 Smit-Type towing brackets and closed fairleads

8. 1. 1 This sub-Section applies to the typical Smit-Type towing brackets and closed fairleads installed on board manned or unmanned non-self-propelled ships which are part of the envisaged towing arrangement.

8. 1. 2 The design load for Smit-Type brackets and closed fairleads shall be no less than 1.3 times the minimum breaking strength of the provided towline or of the weakest component in the envisaged towing arrangement if that is lower, applied at all possible angles of tow.

Figure 5. 8. 1: Illustration of apex angle in a towing arrangement



8. 1. 3 When towed using a bridle arrangement, the angle at the apex of the bridle shall normally be between 45° and 60° as shown in Figure 5. 8. 1: Illustration of apex angle in a towing arrangement. If it exceeds 60°, then the design load for Smit-Type brackets and closed fairleads specified in Pt 4, Ch 5, 8.1 Smit-Type towing brackets and closed fairleads 8.1.2 shall be increased to account for the increased resolved load in the bridle.

8. 1. 4 The Smit-Type brackets and closed fairleads shall be selected from an industry standard accepted by ACS based on the design load specified in Pt 4, Ch 5, 8.1 Smit-Type towing brackets and closed fairleads 8.1.2 or Pt 4, Ch 5, 8.1 Smit-Type towing brackets and closed fairleads 8.1.3 as appropriate, applied at all possible angles of tow.

8. 1. 5 hen the Smit-Type brackets or the closed fairleads are not selected from an industry standard accepted by the society, the strength of fittings is to be adequate for the design load specified in Pt 4, Ch 5, 8.1 Smit-Type towing brackets and closed fairleads 8.1.2 or Pt 4, Ch 5, 8.1 Smit-Type towing brackets and closed fairleads 8.1.3as appropriate, applied at all possible angles of tow. Under the design load and with net scantlings, the stresses are not to exceed those given in Table 5. 8. 1: Permissible Stress Values. Non-linear analysis is considered acceptable subject to special consideration.

Table 5. 8. 1: Permissible Stress Values

	Permissible stress N/mm^2
Normal stress	σ_0
Shear stress	$\frac{\sigma_0}{\sqrt{3}}$
Combined stress	σ_0
Symbols	
σ_0 = specified minimum yield stress, in N/mm^2 **Note** Normal stress is defined as the sum of bending and axial stresses, with the corresponding shearing stress acting perpendicular to the normal stress.	

8. 1. 6 Prototype testing will be required to confirm the strength unless the Smit-Type bracket or the closed fairlead is selected from a recognised National or International Standard. The fitting shall be tensioned to its design load as specified in Pt 4, Ch 5, 8.1 Smit-Type towing brackets and closed fairleads 8.1.2 or Pt 4, Ch 5, 8.1 Smit-Type towing brackets and closed fairleads 8.1.3 as appropriate, accounting for all possible angles of tow. After the test, the prototype needs to be examined for any failures including unacceptable deformations. The prototype which was strength-tested shall not be installed on board.

8. 1. 7 The weld between the fittings and the deck shall be capable of resisting the design load specified in Pt 4, Ch 5, 8.1 Smit-Type towing brackets and closed fairleads 8.1.2 or Pt 4, Ch 5, 8.1 Smit-Type towing brackets and closed fairleads 8.1.3 as appropriate.

8. 1. 8 The deck and the supporting structure in way of the fittings are to be suitably reinforced to resist a design load specified in Pt 4, Ch 5, 8.1 Smit-Type towing brackets and closed fairleads 8.1.2 or Pt 4, Ch 5, 8.1 Smit-Type towing brackets and closed fairleads 8.1.3 as appropriate, applied at all possible angles of tow. Stresses induced in the supporting structure, determined using the design load and with net scantlings are not to exceed the permissible values given in Table 5. 8. 1: Permissible Stress Values. The capability of the structure to withstand buckling is also to be assessed, and an appropriate insert plate needs to be provided where necessary.

8. 1. 9 An allowance for corrosion is to be added to the net thickness derived as indicated below:

- For the supporting deck structure, a corrosion addition of 2 mm is to be added to the net thickness derived.
- For fittings not selected from an accepted industry standard, 2 mm is to be added to the net thickness derived.

8. 1. 10 In addition to the corrosion requirements specified in Pt 4, Ch 5, 8.1 Smit-Type towing brackets and closed fairleads 8.1.9, the wear allowance for the shipboard fittings not selected from an accepted industry standard is not to be less than 1.0 mm, added to the surfaces which are intended to be in regular contact with the towline.

PART

4

CHAPTER **5** **Barges and Pontoons**

SECTION **9** **Void spaces**

9. 1 Void spaces on unmanned pontoons not fitted with auxiliary machinery

9. 1. 1 Drainage arrangements and air pipes are to be provided in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 13, 10 Drainage arrangements for ships not fitted with propelling machinery and Pt 5, Ch 13, 12.4 Air pipes 12.4.4 respectively.

9. 1. 2 Deck openings to allow drainage in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 13, 10.1 Pumps 10.1.3 are to be as small as practicable and closed by watertight gasketed covers of steel or equivalent material.

PART

4

CHAPTER **6 Trawlers and Fishing Vessels**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**1641**
	1. 1	Application	1641
	1. 2	Assignment of load lines	1641
	1. 3	Class notations	1641
	1. 4	Information required	1641
	1. 5	Symbols and definitions	1642
SECTION 2	**Protection**		**1643**
	2. 1	Protection of steelwork	1643
	2. 2	Protection of cargo	1643
SECTION 3	**Longitudinal strength**		**1644**
	3. 1	General	1644
SECTION 4	**Deck structure**		**1645**
	4. 1	Deck plating	1645
	4. 2	Factory deck beams	1645
SECTION 5	**Shell envelope plating**		**1646**
	5. 1	Shell plating	1646
SECTION 6	**Shell envelope framing**		**1647**
	6. 1	Transverse side framing	1647
SECTION 7	**Watertight bulkheads**		**1648**
	7. 1	Collision bulkheads	1648
SECTION 8	**Stern ramp, and cruiser and transom sterns**		**1649**
	8. 1	Stern ramp	1649
	8. 2	Cruiser and transom sterns	1649
SECTION 9	**Strengthening of bottom forward**		**1650**
	9. 1	General	1650

PART

4

CHAPTER 6 Trawlers and Fishing Vessels

SECTION 1 General

1. 1 Application

1. 1. 1 This Chapter applies to sea-going steel trawlers, stern trawlers and fishing vessels.

1. 1. 2 For the purpose of this Chapter, a fishing vessel is a ship used for fishing operations, but not equipped for trawling.

1. 1. 3 The scantlings and arrangements are to be as required by Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships except as otherwise specified in this Chapter. Consideration will be given to proposals for modified scantlings on vessels where *L* is less than 24 m.

1. 2 Assignment of load lines

1. 2. 1 The *International Convention on Load Lines, 1966* does not apply to trawlers and fishing vessels, but certain National Authorities may request the assignment of load lines for ships registered in their countries.

1. 2. 2 The Rules affecting the protection of openings and protection of crew, and particularly those contained in Pt 3, Ch 11 Closing Arrangements for Shell, Deck and Bulkheads and Pt 3, Ch 12 Ventilators, Air Pipes and Discharges, may be modified to take account of National Regulations or practicabilities related to fishing operations.

1. 3 Class notations

1. 3. 1 In general, ships complying with the requirements of this Chapter will be eligible for one of the following classes:

a. **100A1 trawler**. This class will be assigned to side fishing trawlers.
b. **100A1 stern trawler**. This class will be assigned to stern fishing trawlers.
c. **100A1 fishing vessel**. This class will be assigned to fishing vessels, *See* Pt 4, Ch 6, 1.1 Application 1.1.2.

1. 3. 2 The Regulations for classification and the assignment of class notations are given in Pt 1, Ch 2 Classification Regulations to which reference should be made.

1. 4 Information required

1. 4. 1 In addition to the information required by Pt 3, Ch 1, 5 Information required, the position and arrangement of trawl gear and deck machinery and location of insulated compartments are to be indicated.

1. 5 Symbols and definitions

1. 5. 1 he Rule length, L, is the distance, in metres, on the classification waterline from the fore side of the stem to the after side of the rudder post, or to the centre of the rudder stock if there is no rudder post. L is to be not less than 96 per cent, and need not be greater than 97 per cent, of the extreme length on the classification waterline.

1. 5. 2 Breadth B, is the greatest moulded breadth, in metres.

1. 5. 3 Depth D, is measured, in metres, at the middle of the length, L from the base line to top of the deck beam at side on the uppermost continuous deck.

1. 5. 4 The classification waterline in single deck ships is the waterline taken perpendicular to the plane of the transverse bulkheads located at $0.85D$ from the base line amidships, or at the maximum operational draught amidships, whichever is the greater. In two-deck ships, it is the waterline located at the maximum operational draught, but if this is unknown, it may be taken at 50 mm below the lower deck. If a load line is required by a National Authority, the classification waterline is the summer load waterline.

1. 5. 5 Keel line is the line parallel to the slope of the keel intersecting the top of the keel at amidships, or the line of intersection of the inside of shell plating with the keel where a bar keel is fitted.

1. 5. 6 Base line is a line parallel to the classification waterline and intersecting the keel line at amidships.

1. 5. 7 Draught T, is the distance in metres, between the classification waterline and the base line amidships.

1. 5. 8 The block coefficient C_b is to be taken at the classification waterline.

1. 5. 9 The following symbols are also applicable to this Chapter:

k = material factor, *See* Pt 4, Ch 1, 1.5, Symbols and definitions

l_e = effective length of stiffening member, in metres, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3 Structural idealisation

s = spacing of stiffeners, in mm

s_b = $470 + \frac{L}{0.6}$ with minimum limitation at ends as defined in Pt 3, Ch 5, Table 5. 3. 1: Shell and deck plating for fore end structure and Pt 3, Ch 6 Aft End Structure, Table 6. 3. 1: Shell plating aft for aft end structure

s_1 = s, but not less than s_b

t = thickness of plating, in mm

Z = section modulus of stiffening member, in cm^3, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3 Structural idealisation

PART

4

CHAPTER **6** **Trawlers and Fishing Vessels**

SECTION **2** **Protection**

2. 1 Protection of steelwork

2. 1. 1 Where wood sheathing is fitted, the material is to be of good quality, well seasoned and free from sapwood, and the thickness is to be not less than 65 mm. The plank widths should not normally exceed 150 mm. Thwartship planks are to be laid at the ends of deckhouses and at break of deck. Fastenings are to be sunk below the surface of the planking and covered with turned dowels, and the whole to be thoroughly bedded in a suitable composition. All weather decks are to be caulked and payed.

2. 1. 2 Where gutter waterways are fitted, the bar forming the inner edge of the waterway is to be not less than 7.5 mm thick.

2. 1. 3 Welded studs are to be not less than 9.5 mm diameter, and are to be coated with suitable composition before the planking is laid. Bolts used instead of studs may be 12.5 mm diameter galvanised. If the steel deck is penetrated for bolts, the deck is to be hose tested in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 8 Superstructures, Deckhouses and Bulwarks.

2. 2 Protection of cargo

2. 2. 1 When a fuel oil bunker or double bottom carrying fuel oil, or a lubricating oil tank, is adjacent to a fish hold, the relevant requirements of Pt 4, Ch 3, 4 Panting and strengthening of bottom forward are to be complied with.

2. 2. 2 Compartments used for the processing of fish, or for temporary storage during or while awaiting processing, need not comply with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 6, 2.2 Protection of cargo 2.2.1, but the construction of the bulkheads, decks and insulation, if any, should be such as to minimise the risk of oil leakage.

PART

4

CHAPTER **6** **Trawlers and Fishing Vessels**

SECTION **3** **Longitudinal strength**

3. 1 General

3. 1. 1 The longitudinal strength standard is to comply with the relevant requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4 Longitudinal Strength.

3. 1. 2 The requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4, 8.3 Loading instrument regarding loading instruments are not applicable to trawlers and fishing vessels.

PART

4

CHAPTER **6** **Trawlers and Fishing Vessels**

SECTION **4** **Deck structure**

4. 1 Deck plating

4. 1. 1 The thickness of deck plating is to be not less than that required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 4 Deck structure. Under the trawl winch, windlass, mast, centre and side bollards and gallows, the plating thickness is to be not less than:

$$t = (0.04L + 7.5)\ \text{mm}$$

where L is to be taken not less than 30 m.

4. 1. 2 When a raised deck is fitted, adequate scarfing is to be arranged at the step.

4. 2 Factory deck beams

4. 2. 1 The section modulus of the beams of factory decks under fish handling spaces is to be not less than that required by Table 1. 4. 5: Strength/weather, cargo and accommodation deck beams in Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships, with h_2 equal to 2 m, but extra strengthening may be required in way of heavy items of machinery or equipment.

PART

4

CHAPTER **6** **Trawlers and Fishing Vessels**

SECTION **5** **Shell envelope plating**

5. 1 Shell plating

5. 1. 1 The thickness of shell plating is to be not less than that required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 5 Shell envelope plating but in no case is it to be less than the following:

$$\text{For } L > 70m \; t = (5.5 + 0.033L)\sqrt{\frac{ks_1}{s_b}}mm$$

$$\text{For } L > 70m \; t = (6.5 + 0.033L)\sqrt{\frac{ks_1}{s_b}}mm$$

5. 1. 2 For single deck side trawlers the thickness derived from the formulae in Pt 4, Ch 6, 5.1 Shell plating 5.1.1 is to be increased by 10 per cent.

5. 1. 3 When nets or control wires are in contact with the ship's side, such as below the gallows in a side trawler, the side shell plating is to be increased by 40 per cent.

5. 1. 4 Where a bar keel is fitted, the breadth of the garboard strake is to be not less than 760 mm, and the thickness is to be 10 per cent greater than the bottom shell.

5. 1. 5 The thickness of the bottom shell plating is to be increased by 10 per cent where intercostal girders are not fitted.

5. 1. 6 For increase to sheerstrake at the break of a raised deck, *See* Pt 4, Ch 1, 5 Shell envelope plating.

5. 1. 7 Cope irons are to be fitted under gallows or any other area where excessive wear could occur.

PART

4

CHAPTER 6 Trawlers and Fishing Vessels

SECTION 6 Shell envelope framing

6. 1 Transverse side framing

6. 1. 1 The section modulus of the side frames of single deck trawlers and fishing vessels need not be greater than 80 per cent of the modulus required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 6 Shell envelope framing, but in no case is the depth of the frame to be less than 60 mm. Where not specified the draught is to be taken as not less than 0.85D.

6. 1. 2 For two deck trawlers and two deck fishing vessels and all vessels requiring a load line, the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 6 Shell envelope framing are to be complied with.

6. 1. 3 The section modulus of frames in the fore peak is to be the greater of the following:

a. 10 per cent greater than that required by Pt 3, Ch 5, 4 Shell envelope framing.

b. $Z=(45D-212)$ cm^3.

6. 1. 4 The section modulus of frames in the aft end region is to be not less than that required by Pt 3, Ch 6, 3 Shell envelope plating.

6. 1. 5 Where frames are stopped at watertight flats they are to be bracketed.

PART

4

CHAPTER **6** **Trawlers and Fishing Vessels**

SECTION **7** **Watertight bulkheads**

7. 1 Collision bulkheads

7. 1. 1 Consideration will be given to proposals for the collision bulkhead to be positioned further aft than 0.08*L* from the fore end of the classification waterline, provided that bow damage will not result in excessive trim forward.

PART

4

CHAPTER 6 Trawlers and Fishing Vessels

SECTION 8 Stern ramp, and cruiser and transom sterns

8. 1 Stern ramp

8. 1. 1 The thickness of plating of the stern ramp is to be not less than:

t = 0.025s mm or 10 mm, whichever is the greater.

8. 1. 2 The section modulus of stiffeners is to be not less than:

$Z = 0.019sl_e^2$ cm^3

8. 2 Cruiser and transom sterns

8. 2. 1 Cruiser and transom sterns are to have frames of the size required for peaks, and are to be additionally stiffened by web frames when required. The depth of plate floors is to be not less than that given in Pt 4, Ch 1, 7 Single bottom structure, and the floors are to be associated with a suitable system of girders.

PART

4

CHAPTER **6** **Trawlers and Fishing Vessels**

SECTION **9** **Strengthening of bottom forward**

9. 1 General

9. 1. 1 The requirements of Pt 3, Ch 5, 1 General are to be applied except when the forward draught contemplated for any sea-going condition is equal to or greater than $0.03L$ in which case the bottom shell plating in the region to be strengthened may be taken as:

$$t = 0.00818sfL^{1/4}k^{1/2}$$

where the symbols are as defined in Table 5. 1. 1: Additional strengthening of bottom forward in Pt 4, Ch 5 Barges and Pontoons.

This thickness derivation may be adopted for both longitudinal and transverse framing.

PART

4

CHAPTER **7 Bulk Carriers**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**1656**
	1. 1	General	1656
	1. 2	Application	1656
	1. 3	General class notations	1657
	1. 4	Class notation for CSR bulk carriers	1658
	1. 5	Class notation for non-CSR bulk carriers	1659
	1. 6	Information required for CSR bulk carriers	1660
	1. 7	Information required for non-CSR bulk carriers	1661
	1. 8	Symbols and definitions	1661
SECTION 2	**Materials and protection**		**1663**
	2. 1	Materials and grades of steel	1663
	2. 2	Protection of steelwork	1663
SECTION 3	**Longitudinal strength**		**1664**
	3. 1	General	1664
	3. 2	Hull vertical bending stresses for flooded conditions	1664
	3. 3	Shear stresses for flooded conditions	1665
	3. 4	Flooded conditions	1665
SECTION 4	**Deck structure**		**1667**
	4. 1	General	1667
	4. 2	Deck plating	1667
	4. 3	Main cargo hatchway openings	1667
	4. 4	Deck supporting structure	1668
SECTION 5	**Shell envelope plating**		**1669**
	5. 1	General	1669
	5. 2	Bottom shell	1669
	5. 3	Side shell	1669

SECTION 6 Shell envelope framing 1670
6. 1 Longitudinal stiffening 1670
6. 2 Transverse stiffening 1670
6. 3 Primary supporting structure 1676
SECTION 7 Topside tank structure 1678
7. 1 General 1678
7. 2 Bulkhead plating 1678
7. 3 Bulkhead stiffeners 1679
7. 4 Shell and deck structure 1680
7. 5 Primary supporting structure 1680
7. 6 Structural details 1680
SECTION 8 Double bottom structure 1681
8. 1 General 1681
8. 2 Carriage of heavy cargoes 1683
8. 3 Carriage of heavy cargoes with specified or alternate holds empty 1683
8. 4 Ships to be classed '100A1 bulk carrier, strengthened for heavy cargoes, any hold may be empty, ESP' 1683
8. 5 Ballast ducts 1684
8. 6 Structural details in way of double bottom tank and hopper tank knuckle 1684
8. 7 Combined double bottom/hopper tank and topside tank 1685
8. 8 Allowable hold loading in the flooded condition 1685
SECTION 9 Hopper side tank structure 1692
9. 1 General 1692
9. 2 Sloped bulkhead plating 1692
9. 3 Sloped bulkhead stiffeners 1692
9. 4 Shell and bilge stiffeners 1693
9. 5 Tank end bulkheads 1693
9. 6 Primary supporting structure 1693
9. 7 Structural details 1693
SECTION 10 Bulkheads 1695
10. 1 General 1695
10. 2 Bulkheads supported by stools 1695
10. 3 Structural details in way of holds confined to dry cargoes 1696
10. 4 Vertically corrugated transverse watertight bulkheads – Application and definitions 1696

10. 5 Vertically corrugated transverse watertight bulkheads – Scantling assessment 1697
10. 6 Vertically corrugated transverse bulkheads – Support structure at ends 1707
SECTION 11 Direct calculation 1710
11. 1 Application 1710
11. 2 Procedures 1710
SECTION 12 Steel hatch covers 1711
12. 1 General 1711
12. 2 Stiffener arrangement 1712
12. 3 Closing arrangements 1712
12. 4 Load model 1713
12. 5 Allowable stress 1714
12. 6 Effective cross-sectional area of panel flanges for primary supporting members 1714
12. 7 Local net plate thickness 1715
12. 8 Net scantlings of secondary stiffeners 1715
12. 9 Net scantlings of primary supporting members 1716
12. 10 Hatch cover plating 1716
12. 11 Hatch cover secondary stiffeners 1717
12. 12 Web panels of hatch cover primary supporting members 1720
12. 13 Deflection limit and connections between hatch cover panel 1720
SECTION 13 Hatch coamings 1721
13. 1 General 1721
13. 2 Load model 1721
13. 3 Local net plate thickness 1721
13. 4 Net scantlings of longitudinal and transverse secondary stiffeners 1722
13. 5 Net scantlings of coaming stays 1722
13. 6 Local details 1723
SECTION 14 Forecastles 1724
14. 1 Arrangement 1724
14. 2 Construction 1725

PART

4

CHAPTER **7 Bulk Carriers**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 7. 3. 1: Permeability and bulk density factors 1665
Table 7. 6. 1: Shell framing 1671
Table 7. 8. 1: Strengthening for heavy cargo requirements 1682
Table 7. 9. 1: Hopper tank primary structure 1693
Table 7. 10. 1: Flooding head 1699
Table 7. 10. 2: Bulkhead pressure and force 1701
Table 7. 10. 3: Resultant pressure and force 1702
Table 7. 10. 4: Permissible shear and buckling stresses 1705
Table 7. 12. 1: Corrosion addition t_c 1711
Table 7. 12. 2: Permissible stresses 1714
Table 7. 12. 3: Number of half waves 1719

PART

4

CHAPTER **7 Bulk Carriers**

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 7. 1. 1: CSR-BC Applicability 1657
Figure 7. 6. 1: Diagrammatic arrangement of end brackets 1674
Figure 7. 6. 2: Supporting brackets in topside and hopper tanks 1675
Figure 7. 6. 3: Typical arrangement of intercostal brackets supporting asymmetric side shell frames in No. 1 hold 1676
Figure 7. 6. 4: Hold frame supporting structures at fore end of No. 1 cargo hold 1677
Figure 7. 8. 1: Intermediate brackets at knuckle 1684
Figure 7. 8. 2: Connection at intersection of double bottom and hopper 1686
Figure 7. 8. 3: Loading 1687
Figure 7. 8. 4: Double bottom structure 1689
Figure 7. 8. 5: Double bottom breadth 1691
Figure 7. 10. 1: Cargo hold dimensions 1697
Figure 7. 10. 2: Dimensions of bulkhead corrugation angles 1698
Figure 7. 10. 3: Scantling assessment 1699
Figure 7. 10. 4: Symmetric shedder plates 1703
Figure 7. 10. 5: Asymmetric shedder plates 1703
Figure 7. 10. 6: Symmetric gusset/shedder plates 1704
Figure 7. 10. 7: Asymmetric gusset/shedder plates 1705
Figure 7. 10. 8: Width of shelf plate 1708
Figure 7. 10. 9: Partial penetration welding 1709
Figure 7. 13. 1: Typical coaming stays 1723
Figure 7. 14. 1: Forecastle arrangement 1724

PART

4

CHAPTER **7** **Bulk Carriers**

SECTION **1** **General**

1. 1 General

1. 1. 1 This Chapter applies to sea-going self propelled ships, constructed generally with single deck, double bottom, hopper side tanks and topside tanks and with single or double side skin construction in the cargo length area, and intended primarily for the carriage of bulk dry cargoes.

1. 1. 2 A 'bulk carrier of single side skin construction' is defined as a bulk carrier where one or more cargo holds are bound by the side shell only, or by two watertight boundaries, one of which is the side shell, which are less than 1000 mm apart.

1. 1. 3 The term 'bulk carrier of double side skin construction' is defined as a bulk carrier where all cargo holds are bound by two watertight boundaries, one of which is the side shell, which are greater than or equal to 1000 mm apart at any location within the hold length.

1. 1. 4 The ACSPlus Guidelines for the hull construction of ships are detailed in Pt 3, Ch 16 ACSPlus Guidelines for the Design, Construction and Lifetime Care of Ships and the classification notations and descriptive notes associated with these procedures are given in Pt 1, Ch 2, 3 Surveys - General.

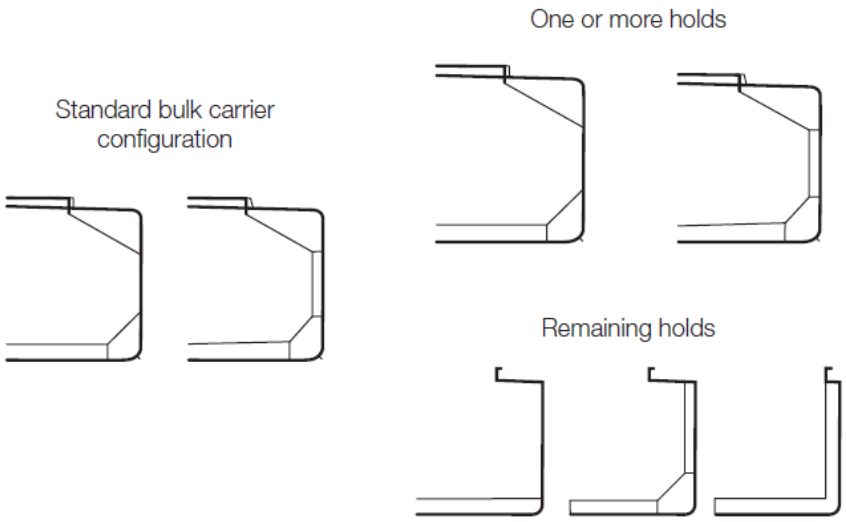
1. 1. 5 The attention of Owners, Masters and Cargo Shippers is drawn to the IMO Code of Safe Practice for Solid Bulk Cargoes when shipping these cargoes. Attention is also drawn to any relevant statutory requirements of the National Authority of the country in which the ship is to be registered, and any special requirements of the Port Authorities at the ports of loading and discharge.

1. 1. 6 The Regulations for classification and the assignment of class notations are given in Pt 1, Ch 2 Classification Regulations to which reference should be made.

1. 2 Application

1. 2. 1 Single skin and double skin bulk carriers with length, L , greater than or equal to 90 m with structural configuration as shown in Figure 7. 1. 1: CSR-BC Applicability are defined as '*CSR Bulk Carriers*' and are to comply with Pt 4, Ch 7, 1.4, Class notation for CSR bulk carriers.

Figure 7. 1. 1: CSR-BC Applicability



1. 2. 2 Single skin and double skin bulk carriers other than those described in Pt 4, Ch 7, 1.2 Application 1.2.1 are defined as '*Non- CSR Bulk Carriers*' and are to comply with Pt 4, Ch 7, 1.5, Class notation for non-CSR bulk carriers.

1. 3 General class notations

1. 3. 1 Class notations applicable to CSR bulk carriers are defined as follows:

- **CSR**

Identifies the bulk carrier as being compliant with the *IACS Common Structural Rules for Bulk Carriers and Oil Tankers (CSR);*.

- **ESP**

Identifies the bulk carrier as being subject to an Enhanced Survey Programme as detailed in Pt 1, Ch 3, 3 Intermediate Surveys - Hull and machinery requirements and Pt 1, Ch 3, 6 Special Survey - Bulk carriers - Hull requirements, *See also* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.12.

1. 3. 2 Class notations applicable to non-CSR bulk carriers are defined as follows:

- **Strengthened for heavy cargoes**

For bulk carriers with scantlings complying with Pt 4, Ch 7, 8.2, Carriage of heavy cargoes;

- **ESP**

Identifies the bulk carrier as being subject to an Enhanced Survey Programme as detailed in Pt 1, Ch 3, 3 Intermediate Surveys - Hull and machinery requirements and Pt 1, Ch 3, 6 Special Survey - Bulk carriers - Hull requirements, *See also* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.12;

- **ESN**

Identifies the bulk carrier as having been assessed for enhanced survivability with respect to flooding. Scantlings and arrangements are to comply with Pt 4, Ch 7, 3.1 General 3.1.2, Pt 4, Ch 7, 8.8, Allowable hold loading in the flooded condition and Pt 4, Ch 7, 10.4, Vertically corrugated transverse watertight bulkheads – Application and definitions.

1. 4 Class notation for CSR bulk carriers

1. 4. 1 In general, CSR bulk carriers less than 150 m in length are to comply with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 7, 1.6 Information required for CSR bulk carriers, Pt 3, Ch 2 Materials and the *IACS Common Structural Rules* (CSR) and will be eligible for one of the following mandatory class notations:

a. **100A1 bulk carrier, CSR, any holds may be empty, ESP**. This class notation is normally assigned to a ship designed to carry dry bulk cargoes of cargo density 1.0 tonne/m^3 and above, with an approved arrangement of loaded holds such that any hold may be empty at the full loaded draught.

b. **100A1 bulk carrier, CSR, hold, nos. 1, 2 ... may be empty, ESP**. This class notation is normally assigned to a ship designed to carry dry bulk cargoes of cargo density 1.0 tonne/m^3 and above with specified holds empty at maximum draught.

c. **100A1 bulk carrier, CSR, ESP**. This class notation will be assigned to a ship designed to carry dry bulk cargoes of cargo density less than 1.0 tonne/m^3.

1. 4. 2 In general, CSR bulk carriers equal to or greater than 150 m in length are to comply with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 7, 1.6 Information required for CSR bulk carriers, Pt 3, Ch 2 Materials and the *IACS Common Structural Rules* (CSR) and will be eligible for one of the following mandatory class notations:

a. **100A1 bulk carrier, CSR, BC-A, hold, nos. 1, 2 … may be empty, GRAB [X] ESP**. This class will be assigned for bulk carriers designed to carry dry bulk cargoes of cargo density 1.0 tonne/m^3 and above with specified holds empty at maximum draught.

b. **100A1 bulk carrier, CSR, BC-B, GRAB [X], ESP**. This class will be assigned for bulk carriers designed to carry dry bulk cargoes of cargo density 1.0 tonne/m^3 and above with all cargo holds loaded.

c. **100A1 bulk carrier, CSR, BC-C, ESP**. This class will be assigned for bulk carriers designed to carry dry bulk cargoes of cargo density less than 1.0 tonne/m^3 with all cargo holds loaded.

1. 4. 3 The following additional notations and annotations are to be provided giving further detailed description of limitations to be observed during operation as a consequence of the design loading condition applied during the design.

- **Notations:**

a. (**maximum cargo density (in tonnes/m^3)**) For notations **BC-A** and **BC-B** if the maximum cargo density is less than 3.0 tonnes/m^3,

(**no MP**) For all notations when the vessel has not been designed for loading and unloading in multiple ports in accordance with the conditions specified in *IACS Common Structural Rules* (CSR), Pt 1, Ch 4, Sec 8, 4.2.2:

GRAB [X] where the net thickness of inner bottom, lower strake of hopper tank sloping plate and transverse lower stool plating comply with *IACS Common Structural Rules* (CSR), Pt 2, Ch 1, 6 for **BC-A** and **BC-B**, *See IACS Common Structural Rules (CSR)*, Pt 1, Ch 1, Sec 1, 3.2.1;

- **Annotations:**

(allowed combination of specified empty holds). For notation **BC-A**.

1. 4. 4 The ACSPlus notation **CM** is mandatory for CSR bulk carriers greater than 150 m in length, *See* Pt 4, Ch 7, 1.5 Class notation for non-CSR bulk carriers 1.5.7.

1. 4. 5 Optional notations indicating compliance with specific requirements of Pt 4, Ch 7, 3 Longitudinal strength to Pt 4, Ch 7, 14 Forecastles on a voluntary basis may also be assigned.

1. 5 Class notation for non-CSR bulk carriers

1. 5. 1 In general, non-CSR Bulk Carriers are to comply with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 7, 1.5 Class notation for non-CSR bulk carriers 1.5.2 to Pt 4, Ch 7, 1.5 Class notation for non-CSR bulk carriers 1.5.10 and will be eligible for one of the following mandatory class notations:

a. **100A1 bulk carrier, ESP**.

b. **100A1 bulk carrier, strengthened for heavy cargoes, ESP**. This class notation will be assigned to a ship when the double bottom structure has been specially strengthened in accordance with the requirements of Table 7. 8. 1: Strengthening for heavy cargo requirements.

c. **100A1 bulk carrier, strengthened for heavy cargoes, hold, nos. 1, 2 ... may be empty, ESP**. This class notation is normally assigned to a ship which has been specially strengthened for heavy cargoes, *See* Pt 4, Ch 7, 1.5 Class notation for non-CSR bulk carriers 1.5.1.b, so as to enable the ship to be fully loaded with an approved arrangement of empty holds, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 7, 1.5 Class notation for non-CSR bulk carriers 1.5.10 and Pt 4, Ch 7, 1.4 Class notation for CSR bulk carriers 1.4.3.

d. **100A1 bulk carrier, strengthened for heavy cargoes, any holds may be empty, ESP**. This class notation is normally assigned to a ship which has been specially strengthened for heavy and ore cargoes, with an approved arrangement of loaded holds such that any hold may be empty at the full loaded draught.

1. 5. 2 Plans and information are to be submitted in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 7, 1.7, Information required for non-CSR bulk carriers.

1. 5. 3 Requirements are also given for special strengthening for heavy cargoes, *See* Pt 4, Ch 7, 8.2, Carriage of heavy cargoes.

1. 5. 4 The scantlings and arrangements of the cargo region are to be as specified in this Chapter in Pt 4, Ch 7, 2 Materials and protection to Pt 4, Ch 7, 14 Forecastles. The requirements are intended to cover the midship region, but also apply, with suitable modification, to the taper regions forward and aft in way of cargo spaces.

1. 5. 5 The ACSPlus notation **CM** is mandatory for non-CSR bulk carriers greater than 150 m in length, *See* Pt 4, Ch 7, 1.5 Class notation for non-CSR bulk carriers 1.5.7.

1. 5. 6 Where the length of the ship is greater than 190 m, or where the structural arrangements are considered such as to necessitate it, the scantlings of the primary supporting structure are to be assessed by direct calculation and the ACSPlus notations **SDA**, **FDA** and **CM** are mandatory, *See* Pt 4, Ch 7, 1.5 Class notation for non-CSR bulk carriers 1.5.7 and Pt 4, Ch 7, 11 Direct calculation.

1. 5. 7 The 'ACSPlus Guidelines' for the hull construction of ships are detailed in Pt 3, Ch 16 ACSPlus Guidelines for the Design, Construction and Lifetime Care of Ships and the classification notations and descriptive notes associated with these procedures are given in Pt 1, Ch 2, 2 Character of classification and class notations.

1. 5. 8 The 'Structural Design Assessment' (**SDA**), 'Fatigue Design Assessment' (**FDA**) and 'Construction Monitoring' (**CM**) Guidelines detailed in the *ACSPlus Guidelines Manual*, published by ACS, are mandatory for non-CSR bulk carriers greater than 190 m in length and for other non-CSR bulk carriers of abnormal hull form, or of unusual structural configuration or complexity *See* Pt 4, Ch 7, 1.1 General 1.1.5 and Pt 4, Ch 7, 11 Direct calculation.

1. 5. 9 Where the class notation referred to in Pt 4, Ch 7, 1.5 Class notation for non-CSR bulk carriers 1.5.1.d is assigned such that any hold may be empty at the full draught the following items are to be considered and the corresponding requirements complied with:

a. Longitudinal strength calculations are to be carried out for all the operational fully loaded, non-homogeneous, part loaded, heavy cargo conditions, and these conditions included in the approved Loading Manual, *See* Pt 4, Ch 7, 3 Longitudinal strength. Envelopes of the still

water bending moments and the shear forces covering these conditions are also to be submitted.

b. The double bottom structure in each hold is to satisfy the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 7, 8.4 Ships to be classed '100A1 bulk carrier, strengthened for heavy cargoes, any hold may be empty, ESP'.

c. The arrangement and scantlings of cross-deck structure between the upper deck cargo hatchways, *See* Pt 4, Ch 7, 4.1 General 4.1.2.

d. Transverse bulkheads in holds, *See* Pt 4, Ch 7, 10.1 General 10.1.4.

e. For main cargo hatchway openings the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 7, 4.3 Main cargo hatchway openings 4.3.1 are to be complied with.

1. 5. 10 Where appropriate, other cargoes or particular loading arrangements will be included in the class notation. When the class notation referred to in Pt 4, Ch 7, 1.5 Class notation for non-CSR bulk carriers 1.5.1.c is to be assigned for other combinations of empty and loaded holds, for example where it is the intention to load fully any two adjoining holds with adjacent holds empty in sea-going or short voyage conditions, the longitudinal and local strength aspects will be specially considered, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 7, 4.1 General 4.1.2. In addition, permissible weights of cargo in each hold or pair of adjacent holds, plotted against ship's draught likely to be incurred, are to be included in the ship's approved Loading Manual.

1. 5. 11 The scantlings of structural items may be determined by direct calculation.

1. 5. 12 The additional requirements for bulk carriers for the alternate carriage of oil cargo and dry bulk cargo are given in Pt 4, Ch 9, 11 Ships for alternate carriage of oil cargo and dry bulk cargo. When complying with the requirements of this Chapter, such ships may be excluded from all requirements and notations pertaining to vessels with length, *L*, greater than or equal to 150 m. The requirements of Pt 4, Ch 7, 1.5 Class notation for non-CSR bulk carriers 1.5.8 are however to be complied with.

1. 6 Information required for CSR bulk carriers

1. 6. 1 Plans and supporting documents/calculations are to be submitted for approval in accordance with the requirements of the CSR.

1. 6. 2 In addition, where not already required by the CSR, plans and supporting documents/calculations are to be submitted for approval as required by Pt 3, Ch 1, 5.2 Plans and supporting calculations.

1. 6. 3 A Ship Construction File (SCF) is to be provided on board of the ship containing information to facilitate inspection/survey, repair and maintenance. As a minimum it is to include documentation and plans in accordance with the requirements of the CSR.

1. 6. 4 For CSR bulk carriers subject to *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea Chapter II-1 - Construction - Structure, subdivision and stability, machinery and electrical installations Part A-1 - Structure of ships Regulation 3-10 – Goal-based ship construction standards for bulk carriers and oil tankers*, the SCF is to be provided instead in accordance with the requirements specified therein in SOLAS and for these goal-based standard ships an SCF contents list is to be prepared and submitted for approval.

1. 6. 5 These SCFs are also to include the documentation and plans as listed in Pt 3, Ch 1, 5.3 Plans to be supplied to the ship, where not already required by the CSR or *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea Chapter II-1 - Construction - Structure, subdivision and stability, machinery and electrical installations Part A-1 - Structure of ships Regulation 3-10 – Goal-based ship construction standards for bulk carriers and oil tankers*.

1. 6. 6 In all cases, as required by the CSR, *Pt 1, Ch 13 Ship in Operation - Renewal Criteria,* the mid-ship section plan to be supplied on board the ship is to include the minimum required hull girder sectional properties. Sectional properties are to be provided for transverse sections within the cargo length, i.e. each cargo hold, and are to include:

- sectional properties as defined in CSR, *Pt 1, Ch 5, 1 Strength Characteristics of Hull Girder Transverse Sections;*
- the defined section modulus at Deck and at Bottom calculated with the gross offered thickness;
- the sectional area of the defined Deck and Bottom Zones calculated with the gross offered thickness; and
- the sectional area of the defined Neutral Axis Zone calculated with the gross offered thickness minus 0.5 *t*c.

1. 7 Information required for non-CSR bulk carriers

1. 7. 1 In addition to the information and plans required by Pt 3, Ch 1, 5 Information required, the following are to be submitted:

- Cargo loadings on decks, hatchways and inner bottom if these are to be in excess of Rule, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 5 Design loading.
- The maximum pressure head in service on tanks, also details of any double bottom tanks interconnected with hopper and topside tanks.
- Details of the proposed depths of any partial fillings where water ballast or liquid cargo is intended to be carried in the holds.
- Details of loading arrangements where combinations of empty and loaded holds are envisaged, and where it is the intention to load fully any two adjoining holds with adjacent holds empty in sea-going or short voyage conditions.

1. 7. 2 Additional information required for bulk carriers of length, *L*, 150 m or above:

- The bulk cargo density to be used in the design homogeneous loading condition at scantling draught with all holds, including hatchways, being 100 per cent full.
- The maximum bulk cargo density the ship is designed to carry.
- The maximum bulk cargo weight to be carried in each hold.
- Tables or curves indicating the change of cargo hold volume as a function of height above moulded baseline.

1. 8 Symbols and definitions

1. 8. 1 The following symbols and definitions are applicable to this chapter unless otherwise stated: *L, B, D, T* as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6 Definitions

k_L, k = higher tensile steel factor, *See* Pt 3, Ch 2, 1 Materials of construction

l = overall length of stiffening member, in metres, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3 Structural idealisation

l_e = effective length of stiffening member, in metres, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3 Structural idealisation

s = spacing of secondary stiffeners, in mm

t = thickness of plating, in mm

C = stowage rate, in m^3/tonne, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 3, 5 Design loading

I = inertia of stiffening member, in cm^4, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3 Structural idealisation

M_H = the actual cargo mass in a cargo hold corresponding to a homogenously loaded condition at maximum draught

M_{Full} = the cargo mass in a cargo hold corresponding to cargo with virtual density (homogenous mass/hold cubic capacity, minimum 1.0 tonne/m^3) filled to the top of the hatch coaming. M_{Full} is in no case to be less than M_H

M_{HD} = the maximum cargo mass allowed to be carried in a cargo hold according to design Loading conditions with specified holds empty at maximum draught

R = sin θ

S = spacing, or mean spacing, of primary members, in metres

Z = section modulus of stiffening member, in cm^3, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3 Structural idealisation

ρ = relative density (specific gravity) of liquid carried in a tank, and is not to be taken less than 1.025

θ = roll angle, in degrees

sin θ = $\left(0.45 + 0.1\frac{L}{B}\right)\left(0.54 - \frac{L}{1270}\right)$

PART

4

CHAPTER **7** **Bulk Carriers**

SECTION **2** **Materials and protection**

2. 1 Materials and grades of steel

2. 1. 1 Materials and grades of steel are to comply with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 2 Materials.

2. 2 Protection of steelwork

2. 2. 1 For the protection of steelwork, in addition to the requirements specified in Pt 4, Ch 1, 2 Materials and protection and Pt 3, Ch 2, 3 Corrosion protection the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 7, 2.2 Protection of steelwork 2.2.2 are to be complied with.

2. 2. 2 All internal and external surfaces of hatch coamings and hatch covers, and all internal surfaces of the cargo holds, except where excluded below, are to have an efficient protective coating (epoxy coating or equivalent) applied in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. In the selection of coating, due consideration is to be given to the intended cargo conditions in service. Areas which may remain uncoated are:

a. The inner bottom plating.
b. The hopper tank sloping plating between the intersection with the inner bottom plating and a line approximately 300 mm below the toe of the side shell frame end brackets.

2. 2. 3 For the notation `**strengthened for regular discharge by heavy grabs'**, *See* Pt 3, Ch 9, 7 Bottom strengthening for loading and unloading aground.

PART

4

CHAPTER **7** **Bulk Carriers**

SECTION **3** **Longitudinal strength**

3. 1 General

3. 1. 1 Longitudinal strength calculations are to be made in accordance with the requirements given in Pt 3, Ch 4 Longitudinal Strength and Pt 4, Ch 7, 1.5 Class notation for non-CSR bulk carriers 1.5.9 and Pt 4, Ch 7, 1.5 Class notation for non-CSR bulk carriers 1.5.10 where appropriate.

3. 1. 2 Longitudinal strength calculations for the flooded conditions defined in Pt 4, Ch 7, 3.2, Hull vertical bending stresses for flooded conditions to Pt 4, Ch 7, 3.4 Flooded conditions are to be applied for bulk carriers which satsify all of the following criteria:

- Single skin construction, or double skin construction where any part of the longitudinal bulkhead is located within B/5 or 11.5 m, whichever is less, inboard from the ship's side at right angles to the centreline at the assigned summer load line.
- Length, L, of 150 m or above.
- Intended for the carriage of cargoes having bulk densities of 1.0 tonne/m^3 or above.

3. 2 Hull vertical bending stresses for flooded conditions

3. 2. 1 The maximum hull vertical bending stresses in the flooded condition at deck, σ_{Df}, and keel, σ_{Bf}, for use in Pt 3, Ch 4 Longitudinal Strength are given by the following, using the appropriate combination of bending moments to give sagging and hogging stresses:

$$\sigma_{Df} = \frac{|M_{sf} + 0.8M_w| \times 10^{-3}}{Z_D} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

$$\sigma_{Bf} = \frac{|M_{sf} + 0.8M_w| \times 10^{-3}}{Z_B} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

Where

M_{sf} = maximum still water bending moment in the flooded condition, in kN m, at the section under consideration, *See* Pt 4, Ch 7, 3.4 Flooded conditions

M_w = design hull vertical wave bending moment, in kN m, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5 Hull bending strength at the section under consideration

Z_D, Z_B = actual hull section moduli, in m^3, at strength deck and keel respectively, at the section under consideration.

3. 2. 2 The maximum values of σ_{Df} and σ_{Bf} are to be used in Pt 3, Ch 4 Longitudinal Strength.

3. 3 Shear stresses for flooded conditions

3. 3. 1 The shear stress, τ_{Af}, in the flooded condition to be used in Pt 3, Ch 4, 6 Hull shear strength, is to be taken as:

$$\tau_{Af} = 100Az\frac{|Q_s f| + 0.8Q_w|}{I\delta_i} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

Where

Az = the first moment, in cm^3, about the neutral axis, of the area of the effective longitudinal members between the vertical level under consideration and the vertical extremity of the effective longitudinal members, taken at the section under consideration

Q_{sf} = maximum hull still water shear force, in kN, in the flooded condition at the section under consideration

Q_w = design hull wave shear force, in kN, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 4, 6.3 Design wave shear force at the section under consideration

I = moment of inertia of the hull about the horizontal neutral axis, in cm^4, at the longitudinal section under consideration

δ_i = defined in Pt 3, Ch 4, 6.5 Permissible still water shear force.

3. 4 Flooded conditions

3. 4. 1 For the relevant loading conditions specified in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.3, Design still water bending moments and Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.4, Minimum hull section modulus, each cargo hold is to be considered individually flooded up to the equilibrium waterline. The shear forces and still water bending moments are to be calculated for the most severe flooded conditions which will significantly load the ship's structure. Harbour conditions, docking conditions afloat, loading and unloading transitory conditions in port and loading conditions encountered during ballast water exchange need not be considered.

3. 4. 2 In calculating the weight of ingressed water into the cargo hold under consideration, the permeabilities and bulk densities given in Table 7. 3. 1: Permeability and bulk density factors are to be used.

Table 7. 3. 1: Permeability and bulk density factors

Hold condition	Permeability (*See* Note 1)	Bulk density (tonne/m^3)
Empty cargo space	0.95	-
Volume left in loaded cargo spaces above any cargo	0.95	-
Iron ore cargo	0.3(*See* Note 2)	3.0
Cement	0.3(*See* Note 2)	1.3

Note *1.* Bulk cargo permeability is defined as the ratio of the voids within the cargo mass to the volume occupied by the cargo.

Note *2.* More specific information relating to the bulk cargo may be used where available, but permeabilities are not to be less than those given above.

Note *3.* For packed cargo, the actual density of the cargo is to be used with a permeability of zero.

3. 4. 3 In calculating the strength of the ship's structure in the flooded condition it is to be assumed that the ship's structure will remain fully effective in resisting the applied loads.

PART

4

CHAPTER **7** **Bulk Carriers**

SECTION **4** **Deck structure**

4. 1 General

4. 1. 1 Longitudinal framing is, in general, to be adopted outside line of openings. The arrangement of structure between hatches is to be such as to ensure continuity of the main deck structure to resist athwartship forces, and transverse stiffening is to be arranged. For and aft knuckles in cross deck strip plating between hatches should be arranged close to longitudinal girders or supported by brackets.

4. 1. 2 In the case of large bulk carriers with narrow deck strips between hatchways, or where it is the intention to load any two adjoining holds with adjacent holds fully empty for a sea-going condition or for bulk carriers to be classed `any hold may be empty', the cross deck scantlings will be specially considered.

4. 1. 3 The requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 4 Deck structure are to be applied, together with the requirements of this Section.

4. 1. 4 The *ACSPlus FDA Guideline, Structural Detail Design Guide* (SDDG), indicates recommended structural design configurations in critical areas, for the deck structure outside the line of openings and between hatches.

4. 2 Deck plating

4. 2. 1 Where the difference between the thickness of plating inside and outside the line of main hatches exceeds 12 mm, a transitional plate of thickness equivalent to the mean of the adjacent plate thicknesses is to be fitted. The plate thickness outside the line of hatches is to be continued inboard between hatches beyond the end of the hatch corner curvature, to ensure that the chamfered plating is clear of the corner tangent point.

4. 3 Main cargo hatchway openings

4. 3. 1 The following requirements apply to bulk carriers with vertically corrugated transverse bulkheads in cargo holds having one or more of the following characteristics:

a. $B \geq 40$ m

b. $\frac{b}{w} \geq 2.2$

b = breadth of deck opening

w = width of cross deck strip

B = moulded breadth of ship

c. A structural arrangement where the hatch side coaming and deck opening are arranged inboard of the topside tank.

d. All bulk carriers to be classed **100A1 bulk carrier, strengthened for heavy cargoes, any hold may be empty, ESP**.

4. 3. 2 The corners of main cargo hatchways in the strength deck are to be rounded with a radius not less than $\frac{1}{20}$ of the breadth of the opening, with a maximum radius of 1000 mm.

4. 3. 3 Insert plates are to be fitted at the corners having a thickness not less than 25 per cent greater than the adjacent deck thickness outside the line of openings, with a minimum increase of 5 mm, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 7, 4.3 Main cargo hatchway openings 4.3.4.

The corner inserts are to be extended transversely into the cross deck plating for a minimum distance equal to 0.075*b*, where *b*, is the breadth of deck opening.

4. 3. 4 For the extreme corners of the end hatchways of the cargo region furthest from amidships the thickness of the corner insert plates is to be not less than 60 per cent greater than the adjacent deck thickness outside the line of openings.

4. 4 Deck supporting structure

4. 4. 1 For the scantlings of deck longitudinals and transverses in way of topside tanks, *See* Pt 4, Ch 7, 7.4 Shell and deck structure and Pt 4, Ch 7, 7.5 Primary supporting structure, respectively.

PART

4

CHAPTER **7** **Bulk Carriers**

SECTION **5** **Shell envelope plating**

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 Longitudinal framing is, in general, to be adopted at the bottom, but special consideration will be given to proposals for transverse framing in this region. The side shell may be longitudinally or transversely framed.

5. 1. 2 The requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 5 Shell envelope plating are to be applied together with the requirements of this Section.

5. 2 Bottom shell

5. 2. 1 The thickness of the bottom shell plating below loaded holds may be required to be increased for local strength considerations.

5. 3 Side shell

5. 3. 1 The thickness of the side shell plating may be required to be increased for shear forces to satisfy the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 7, 3.2 Hull vertical bending stresses for flooded conditions 3.2.1.

5. 3. 2 The thickness of the side shell plating located between the hopper and topside tanks of single skin bulk carriers is to be not less than:

$$t = \sqrt{L} \text{ mm}$$

PART

4

CHAPTER **7** **Bulk Carriers**

SECTION **6** **Shell envelope framing**

6. 1 Longitudinal stiffening

6. 1. 1 Side frames of all single skin bulk carriers with a hopper are to comply with Pt 4, Ch 7, 6.2, Transverse stiffening and Pt 4, Ch 7, 6.3 Primary supporting structure.

6. 1. 2 Side frames and end brackets of all double skin bulk carriers are to comply with Pt 4, Ch 1, 6 Shell envelope framing.

6. 1. 3 Side frames and end brackets of other structural configurations will be specially considered.

6. 1. 4 The end connections for the longitudinal stiffening are to satisfy the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 10, 3 Secondary member end connections, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 7, 7.6 Structural details 7.6.1 and Pt 4, Ch 7, 9.7 Structural details 9.7.1.

6. 1. 5 The arrangements at the intersections of continuous secondary and primary members are to satisfy the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 10, 5.2, Arrangements at intersections of continuous secondary and primary members and Pt 4, Ch 1, 6.2, Longitudinal stiffening.

6. 2 Transverse stiffening

6. 2. 1 The modulus and inertia of main and topside tank frames in the midship region are to comply with the requirements given in Table 7. 6. 1: Shell framing. Arrangements of main frames in holds in association with web frames are not recommended in view of the vulnerability to cargo handling damage. Where such web frames are proposed the arrangements and scantlings will be specially considered.

6. 2. 2 Main frames in the cargo and ballast holds are to have a web thickness not less than:

a. In general:

$t_{min} = 7 + 0.03L$ mm,

or 13 mm whichever is the lesser

b. In the foremost hold:

$t_{min} = 1.15(7 + 0.03L)$ mm,

or 15 mm whichever is the lesser

where L is the Rule length, in metres.

6. 2. 3 The web depth to thickness ratio of the frames is not to be greater than:

$60\sqrt{k}$, for symmetric sections

$50\sqrt{k}$, for asymmetric sections

The breadth to thickness ratio of the flange outstand is not to be greater than:

$10\sqrt{k}$

6. 2. 4 The upper and lower end brackets of the main frames in the cargo and ballast holds are to satisfy the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 7, 6.2 Transverse stiffening 6.2.5 to Pt 4, Ch 7, 6.2 Transverse stiffening 6.2.14 inclusive, based on the mild steel section modulus Z in cm^3, derived from Table 7. 6. 1: Shell framing, or the equivalent mild steel section modulus for higher tensile steel frames.

6. 2. 5 The lengths of the arms of the brackets, measured as shown in Figure 7. 6. 1: Diagrammatic arrangement of end brackets, are not to be less than:

a. Frame connection to hopper tank.

Athwartship arm:

$$\text{Dry cargo hold } l_a = 32.43\sqrt{Z}\ \text{mm}$$

$$\text{Ballast hold } l_a = 32.43(\sqrt{Z} - 7.5)\text{mm}$$

Vertical arm:

$$\text{Dry cargo hold } l_v = 27.6\sqrt{Z}\ \text{mm}$$

$$\text{Ballast hold } l_v = 27.6(\sqrt{Z} - 9.0)\text{mm}$$

b. Frame connection to topside tank

Athwartship arm:

$$\text{Dry cargo hold } l_a = 30.0\sqrt{Z}\ \text{mm}$$

$$\text{Ballast hold } l_a = 30.0(\sqrt{Z} - 9.0)\text{mm}$$

Vertical arm:

$$\text{Dry cargo hold } l_v = 26.85\sqrt{Z}\ \text{mm}$$

$$\text{Ballast hold } l_v = 26.85(\sqrt{Z} - 11.0)\text{mm}$$

In no case are the bracket arm lengths to be taken less than $0.125H$, where H is as defined in Table 7. 6. 1: Shell framing.

Table 7. 6. 1: Shell framing

Location	Modulus, in cm^3	Inertia, in cm^4
(1) Main frames in dry cargo holds	Z=3.50$skh_{T1}H^2$x10^{-3}	$I = \frac{3.2}{k}HZ$
(2) Main frames in cargo holds used for water ballast	The greater of the following: (a) Z= 1.15x modulus given in (1) (b) $Z = 6.7skh_4H^2 \times 10^{-3}$	$I = \frac{3.2}{k}HZ$
(3) Transverse frames in topside wing tanks	The greater of the following: (a) 1.15xZ as given in location (1) of Table 1. 6. 3: Shell framing (transverse) (b) As required by Pt 4, Ch 7, 7.3 Bulkhead stiffeners 7.3.1 for the sloped bulkhead stiffeners	$I = \frac{3.2}{k}HZ$

Symbols

D, T, s, k = as defined in Pt 4, Ch 7, 1.7 Information required for non-CSR bulk carriers 1.7.1

h_{T1} = head, in metres, at middle of H

= $C_W \left(1 - \frac{h_6}{D-T}\right) F_\lambda$ in metres, for frames where the mid-length of frame is above the summer load waterline,

= $\left(1 - \frac{h_6}{D-T}\right)$ is not to be taken less than 0.7

= (h6 + $C_W \left(1 - \frac{h_6}{2T}\right)'('F_\lambda$, in metres, where the mid-length of frame is below the summer load waterline

h_4 = head, in metres, measured from the middle of H to the deck at side, or half the distance from the middle of H to the top of the overflow, whichever is greater.

h_6 = vertical distance in metres, from the summer load waterline at draught T to the mid-length of H

C_w = a wave head, in metres

= $7.71 \times 10^{-2}\ e^{-0.0044L}$

= where e = base of natural logarithms 2.7183

F_λ = 1.0 for $L \leq 200$m

= (1.0+0.0023(L-200)) for L>200 m

H = length overall of frame, in metres, but is to be taken not less than 2.5 m

6. 2. 6 The section modulus of the frame and bracket or integral bracket, and associated shell plating at the location marked Z_a in Figure 7. 6. 1: Diagrammatic arrangement of end brackets is to be not less than 2.0Z.

In addition, the minimum depth of the frame and bracket or integral bracket at the location indicated in Figure 7. 6. 1: Diagrammatic arrangement of end bracketsis to be not less than 1.5d.

6. 2. 7 The upper and lower integral or separate brackets are to have a web thickness not less than the as built web thickness of the side frame. In addition, the lower bracket thickness is to be not less than:

t = t_{min}+2 mm, where t_{min} is derived from Pt 4, Ch 7, 6.2 Transverse stiffening 6.2.2

The toes of the brackets are to be designed to avoid notch effects by making the upper and lower toes concave or otherwise tapering them off, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 10, 5.1 Continuity and alignment 5.1.7.

6. 2. 8 Except as indicated in Pt 4, Ch 7, 6.2 Transverse stiffening 6.2.9, frames are to be fabricated symmetrical sections with integral upper and lower brackets.

The side frame face plate is to be curved (not knuckled) at the connection with the end brackets. The radius of curvature, r, is to be not less than:

$$r = \frac{0.4 b_{2f}}{t_f} \text{ mm}$$

Where

b_f = breadth of the bracket face plate, in mm

t_f = thickness of the bracket face plate, in mm

The brackets are to be arranged with soft toes and the frame section face bar tapered symmetrically to the toes with a taper rate not exceeding 1 in 3. Where the free edge of the bracket is hollowed out, it is to be stiffened or increased in size to ensure that the section modulus of the bracket through the throat is not less than that of the required straight edged bracket.

6. 2. 9 In ships of length, L, less than 190 m, mild steel fabricated frames may be asymmetric and fitted with separate brackets. Brackets are to be arranged with soft toes. The free edges of the brackets are to be stiffened as follows:

a. Where a flange is fitted, its breadth, b_f, is to be not less than:

$$b_f = 40\left(1 + \frac{Z}{1000}\right) \text{mm}$$

or 50 mm, whichever is the greater

The flange is to be tapered at the ends with a taper rate not exceeding 1 in 3.

b. Where the edge is stiffened by a welded face flat, the cross-sectional area of the face flat is to be not less than:
   i. $0.009 b_f t$ cm^2 for offset edge stiffening
   ii. $0.014 b_f t$ cm^2 for symmetrically placed stiffening

Where

t = web thickness of bracket, in mm

c. The face plate is to be tapered at the ends with a taper rate not exceeding 1 in 3.

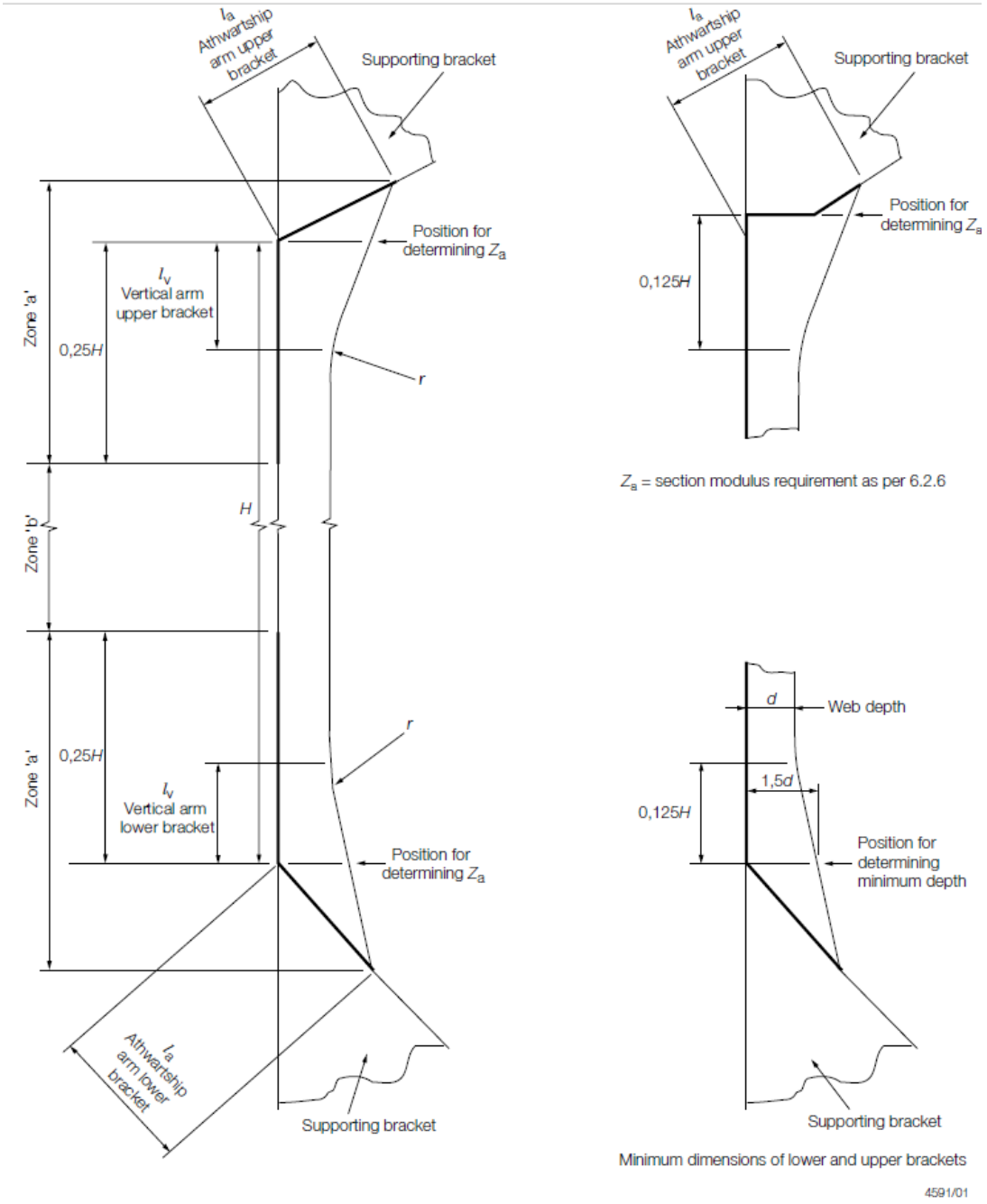
6. 2. 10 For mild steel construction with separate brackets where the frames are lapped on to the bracket, the length of the overlap is to be adequate to provide for the required area of welding to achieve equivalent strength.

6. 2. 11 Double continuous welding is to be adopted for the connections of frames and brackets to side shell, hopper and topside tank plating and web to face plates. For this purpose, the following weld factors are to be adopted:

- 0.44 in Zone 'a' and
- 0.40 in Zone ' b′, *See* Figure 7. 6. 1: Diagrammatic arrangement of end brackets.

Where the hull form is such that an effective fillet weld cannot be made, edge preparation of the web of the frame and bracket may be required, in order to ensure the required efficiency of the weld connection.

Figure 7. 6. 1: Diagrammatic arrangement of end brackets



6. 2. 12 Continuity of the frames is to be maintained by supporting brackets, *See* Figure 7. 6. 2: Supporting brackets in topside and hopper tanks, in the topside and hopper tanks. The design of end connections and their supporting structure is to be such as to provide adequate resistance to rotation and displacement of the joint. For this purpose, in the hopper and topside tanks, the thickness of the supporting brackets (which must align with the hold main frame brackets) is to be not less than the following:

a. Lower brackets (in hopper tank):

t = t_{min} + 0.5 mm, where t_{min} is derived from Pt 4, Ch 7, 6.2 Transverse stiffening 6.2.2 or

t = 9.0 mm

whichever is the greater.

b. Upper brackets (in topside tank):

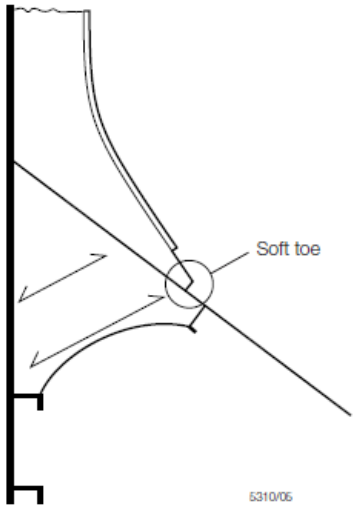
t = t_{min}, where t_{min} is derived from Pt 4, Ch 7, 6.2 Transverse stiffening 6.2.2 or

t = 9.0 mm

whichever is the greater.

The size and arrangement of stiffening of the supporting brackets will be specially considered. Where the toe of the hold frame bracket is situated on or in close proximity to the first longitudinal from the shell of the hopper or topside tank sloped bulkheads, the supporting brackets are to be extended to the next longitudinal. This extension is to be achieved by enlarging the supporting bracket or by fitting an intercostal flat bar stiffener the same depth as the longitudinal and connected to the webs of the longitudinals.

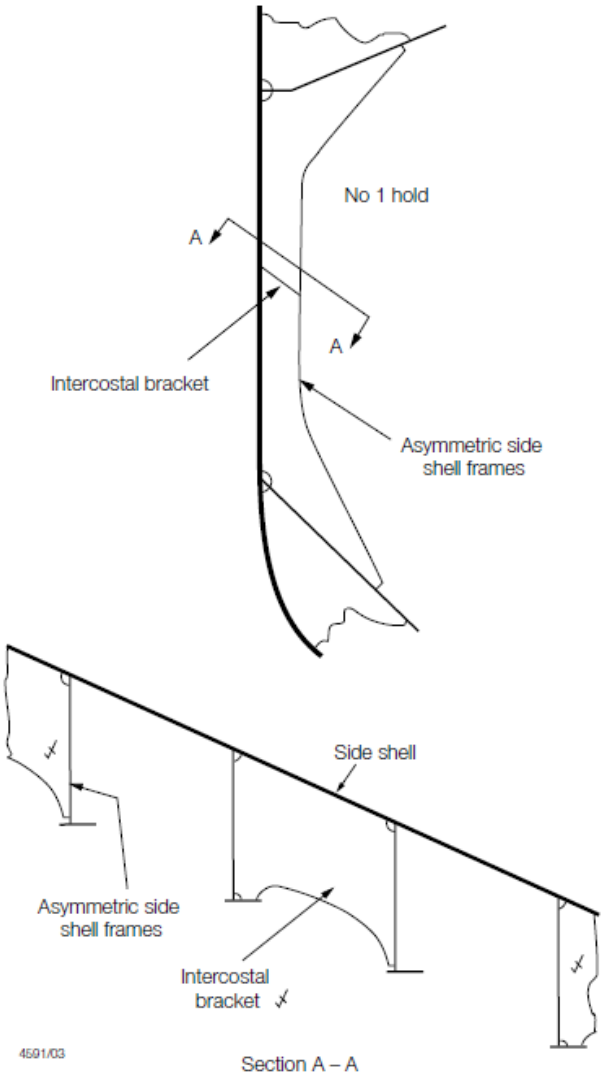
Figure 7. 6. 2: Supporting brackets in topside and hopper tanks



6. 2. 13 The requirements are to be maintained throughout the cargo hold region. However, in the forward and aft cargo holds where the shape becomes finer because of the ship form, increased requirements may be necessary and each case will be specially considered.

6. 2. 14 In way of the foremost hold, side frames of asymmetric section are to be effectively supported by intercostal brackets, *See*Figure 7. 6. 3: Typical arrangement of intercostal brackets supporting asymmetric side shell frames in No. 1 hold.

Figure 7. 6. 3: Typical arrangement of intercostal brackets supporting asymmetric side shell frames in No. 1 hold



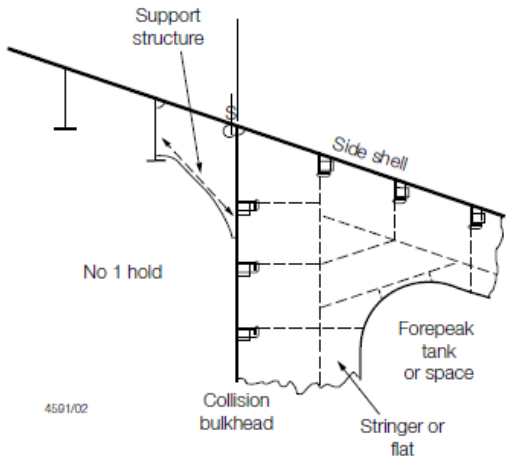
6. 2. 15 The hold side shell frame adjacent to the collision bulkhead is to be suitably strengthened. As an alternative, at least two supporting structures are to be fitted which align with the forepeak stringers or flats, *See* Figure 7. 6. 4: Hold frame supporting structures at fore end of No. 1 cargo hold. The supporting structures are to have adequate cross-sectional shear resisting area at their connections to the hold frame.

6. 2. 16 Detail design guidelines for connection of side shell frames to hopper and topside tank plating are shown in the *ACSPlus FDA Guideline, Structural Detail Design Guide* (SDDG).

6. 3 Primary supporting structure

6. 3. 1 For the requirements for primary supporting structure, *See* Pt 4, Ch 7, 7.5 Primary supporting structure and Pt 4, Ch 7, 9.6 Primary supporting structure.

Figure 7. 6. 4: Hold frame supporting structures at fore end of No. 1 cargo hold



PART

4

CHAPTER **7** **Bulk Carriers**

SECTION **7** **Topside tank structure**

7. 1 General

7. 1. 1 Requirements are given in this Section for longitudinal or transverse framing in the topside tank, but, in general, the deck is to be longitudinally framed. The sloped bulkhead is to be of plane construction with the associated stiffening arranged inside or outside the tank.

7. 1. 2 The buckling requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4, 7 Hull buckling strength are also to be satisfied.

7. 1. 3 Recommended examples of structural design configurations around the transverse ring web of the topside tank can be *Seen* in the *ACSPlus FDA Guideline, Structural Detail Design Guide* (SDDG).

7. 2 Bulkhead plating

7. 2. 1 The thickness of the sloped bulkhead, tank end bulkhead, and diaphragm, if fitted, is to be the greater of the following:

a. For watertight bulkheads, the thickness, t, as derived from in Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships for a deep tank bulkhead using a head, h_4, in metres, determined as follows:

$h_4 = h_0 \cos\theta + Rb_1$ or

= the greater of the distance from a point one-third of the height of the plate above its lower edge to the top of the tank, or half the distance to the top of the overflow

whichever is the greater, or

b. $t = 7.5\text{mm}$

In no case, however, is the thickness of the sloped bulkhead and diaphragm to be taken less than:

i. $\text{t} = 0.012s$ mm, or

$$\text{t} = 0.012s\sqrt{\frac{F_D}{k_D}} \text{ mm}$$

whichever is the greater

Where

k_D = the higher tensile steel factor equal to k_L value for deck material

F_D = as defined in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.7 Local reduction factors

R = as defined in Pt 4, Ch 7, 1.8 Symbols and definitions 1.8.1

h_o = the vertical distance, in metres, from a point one third of the height of the plate from the lower edge to the highest point of the tank excluding hatchway

b_1 = the larger horizontal distance, in metres, from the tank corner at top of tank either side to point of plate under consideration.

7. 2. 2 The thickness of the top strake of the sloped bulkhead, including the vertical plate attached to deck, may be required to be increased to form an effective girder below the deck. In general, this plate is to be not less in thickness than 60 per cent of the thickness of the deck plate outside the line of openings nor less than:

a. $t = 0.018s$ mm, or

b. $t = 0.018s\sqrt{\frac{F_0}{k_D}}mm$

whichever is the greater.

7. 2. 3 The thickness of the transverse wash bulkhead, where fitted, is to be not less than:

t = $0.012s$ mm or 7.5 mm

= whichever is the greater.

7. 3 Bulkhead stiffeners

7. 3. 1 The section modulus of longitudinal or transverse stiffeners on the sloped bulkhead or watertight diaphragms, if fitted, is to be not less than:

$Z = 0.01skh_4l_e^2$ cm^3

Where

$h_4 = h_0\cos\theta + Rb_1$

= the greater of the distance, in metres, from the middle of the effective length to the top of the tank, or half the distance to the top of the overflow, or

= 1.5 m

= whichever is the greatest

R = as defined in Pt 4, Ch 7, 1.7 Information required for non-CSR bulk carriers 1.7.1

h_o = the vertical distance, in metres, from the mid-point of span of the stiffener to the highest point of the tank excluding hatchway

b_1 = the larger horizontal distance, in metres, from the tank corner at top of tank, either side to midpoint of span.

7. 3. 2 Where the bulkhead stiffening is fitted on the hold side of the sloped bulkhead, suitable arrangements are to be made to prevent tripping.

7. 3. 3 The scantlings of stiffeners on tank end bulkheads are to be not less than those given in Table 1. 9. 1: Watertight and deep tank bulkhead scantlings of Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships for deep tanks, using h as defined in Pt 4, Ch 7, 7.3 Bulkhead stiffeners 7.3.1.

7. 3. 4 The section modulus of stiffeners of non-watertight fore and aft diaphragms, or transverse wash bulkheads is to be not less than 50 per cent of that required by Pt 4, Ch 7, 7.3 Bulkhead stiffeners 7.3.3. The stiffeners are to be bracketed at both ends.

7. 3. 5 Tank end bulkheads are generally to be in line with the main hold bulkheads.

7. 4 Shell and deck structure

7. 4. 1 The scantlings of shell and deck longitudinals are to comply with Pt 4, Ch 7, 7.3 Bulkhead stiffeners 7.3.1. The scantlings must also satisfy the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 7, 7.6 Structural details 7.6.1.

7. 4. 2 The scantlings of side shell frames are to comply with Pt 4, Ch 7, 6.2, Transverse stiffening.

7. 5 Primary supporting structure

7. 5. 1 The section modulus and inertia of deck, shell and bulkhead transverses or stringers are to be not less than:

$$Z = 7.5kShl_e^2\ cm^3$$

$$I = \frac{2.5}{k} l_e Z cm^4$$

using h as defined in Pt 4, Ch 7, 7.3 Bulkhead stiffeners 7.3.1. The scantlings of shell and deck members must also satisfy the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships for dry cargo holds.

7. 5. 2 Primary transverse members are, in general, to be spaced not more than 3.8 m apart where the length, L, is 100 m or less, and $(0.006\mathrm{L} + 3.2)$ m apart for lengths greater than 100 m.

7. 5. 3 Transverses are to be arranged in line with the primary structure at ends of hatchways, or equivalent scarfing arranged. Where the sloped bulkhead or side shell is transversely framed, arrangements are to be made to ensure effective continuity at the ends of the deck transverse.

7. 5. 4 Where non-watertight transverse diaphragms are arranged instead of open transverses, the thickness of plating is to be in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 7, 7.2 Bulkhead plating 7.2.3. The diaphragms are to be efficiently stiffened.

7. 6 Structural details

7. 6. 1 Bracket/diaphragm connections at the bottom of the topside tank are to be of sufficient size and thickness to provide effective rigidity, and care is to be taken to ensure alignment with brackets at the heads of the side frames in the holds, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 7, 6.2 Transverse stiffening 6.2.12. The shell and sloped bulkhead longitudinals supporting the diaphragms are to be derived using the span taken between transverses.

7. 6. 2 For ships where $\mathrm{L} \geq 300$ m a fore and aft diaphragm extending vertically from the deck to the sloping plating of the topside tank is to be arranged at about the half-width of the tank.

7. 6. 3 Where longitudinal framing is fitted to the side shell, a bracket may be required in way of a rounded gunwale, approximately halfway between transverses and extending to the adjacent shell and deck longitudinal.

PART

4

CHAPTER **7** **Bulk Carriers**

SECTION **8** **Double bottom structure**

8. 1 General

8. 1. 1 The double bottom is, in general, to be longitudinally framed, but special consideration will be given to proposals for a transverse framing system.

8. 1. 2 The requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 8 Double bottom structure are to be applied, together with the requirements of this Section, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 7, 2.2 Protection of steelwork 2.2.3.

8. 1. 3 Where the double bottom tanks are interconnected with double skin side tanks or combined hopper and top-side tanks, the double bottom scantlings are also to satisfy the requirements of Table 7. 8. 1: Strengthening for heavy cargo requirements (3)(c), (3)(d), (4)(c) and (4)(d) for ballast holds and (3)(c) and (4)(c) in way of dry cargo holds, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 1, 6.2, Longitudinal stiffening.

8. 1. 4 The requirements given in Pt 4, Ch 7, 8.8, Allowable hold loading in the flooded condition are to be applied to bulk carriers which satisfy the following criteria:

- Single skin construction, or double skin construction where any part of the longitudinal bulkhead is located within B/5 or 11.5 m, whichever is less, inboard from the ship's side at right angles to the centreline at the assigned summer load line.
- Length, L, of 150 m or above.
- Intended for the carriage of cargoes having bulk densities of 1.0 tonne/m^3 or above.

8. 1. 5 For all bulk carriers where bulk cargoes are discharged by grabs the maximum recommended unladen weight of the grab corresponding to the approved inner bottom plating thickness is to be calculated using the following formulae:

$$P = \left(\frac{S}{k}\right)^2 \frac{10^d}{1.775} \text{ tonnes}$$

Where

$$d = \frac{40.875(t - 1.5)\sqrt{k} + 344.5}{S} - 5.7633$$

P = unladen grab weight, in tonnes

s = spacing of inner bottom longitudinal, in mm

k = higher tensile steel factor as defined in Pt 4, Ch 7, 1.8 Symbols and definitions 1.8.1

t = thickness of inner bottom plating, in mm

The maximum recommended unladen weight of the grab rounded up to the next tonne above, is to be recorded in the Loading Manual (*See also* Pt 3, Ch 4, 8.2 Loading Manual 8.2.4.e), and does not preclude the use of heavier grabs. It is intended as an indication to the Builders, Owners and operators of the increased risk of local damage and the possibility of accelerated diminution of the plating thickness if grabs heavier than this are used regularly to discharge cargo.

8. 1. 6 Detail design guidelines for stiffeners connecting inner bottom and bottom longitudinals are shown in the *ACSPlus FDA Guideline, Structural Detail Design Guide* (SDDG).

Table 7. 8. 1: Strengthening for heavy cargo requirements

Symbols	Item	Requirement
L, l_e, D, T, s, S, k, Z and t as defined in Pt 4, Ch 7, 1.8 Symbols and definitions 1.8.1 C_1 = a factor varying from 1.0 at $\frac{D}{2}$ to $\frac{75}{225-150F_B}$ at base line of ship C = stowage rate, in m³/tonne, and is defined as the volume of the hold excluding volume contained within the depth of the cargo hatchway divided by the weight of cargo stowed in the hold. The value is not to be taken greater than 0.865 F_B as defined in Pt 3, Ch 4, 3.7 Local reduction factors R and θ as defined in Pt 4, Ch 7, 1.8, Symbols and definitions H = height from tank top, position under consideration, to deck at side amidships, in metres Y_1 = distance from $\frac{D}{2}$ to tank top, in metres h_0 = for plating and stiffeners the vertical distance, in metres, from the inner bottom to the highest point of the tank excluding hatchway b_1 = the larger horizontal distance, in metres, from the tank corner at top of tank either side to the point of plate or stiffener under consideration	(1) Double bottom floors	The spacing of floors, generally, is not to exceed 2.5 m. Scantlings are to comply with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 8.5, Floors
	(2) Double bottom side girders	The spacing of side girders, generally, is not to exceed 3.7 m. Scantlings are to comply with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 8.3,, Girders
	(3) Inner bottom plating, See Note 3	The thickness of the inner bottom plating in the holds is to be not less than required by the greatest of the following: (a) $t = 0.00136(s + 660)\sqrt[4]{k^2LT} + 5mm$ or (b) $t = 0.00455s\sqrt{\frac{Hk}{C}}$mm, or (c) Where the double bottom tanks are interconnected with double skin side tanks or combined hopper and topside tanks the scantlings are also to satisfy the requirements for deep tanks in Table 1. 9. 1: Watertight and deep tank bulkhead scantlings in Chapter 1, with the load head $h_1 = h_0\cos\theta + Rb_1$ m (d) In way of ballast holds the scantlings are also to satisfy the requirements for deep tanks in Table 1. 9. 1: Watertight and deep tank bulkhead scantlings in Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships, with the load head h in metres, measured to the deck at centre, but *See also* Pt 3, Ch 9, 7 Bottom strengthening for loading and unloading aground if protection against heavy grabs is desired.

	(4) Inner bottom longitudinals *See* Notes 1 and 2	The section modulus of inner bottom longitudinals is to be not less than the greatest of the following: (a) Z = 85 per cent of the Rule value for bottom longitudinals as given in Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships , or (b) $Z = \frac{0.0083sl_e^2HC_1k}{\left(1-0.233\frac{Y_1}{D}\right)C}$cm^3 or (c) Where the double bottom tanks are interconnected with double skin side tanks or combined hopper and topside tanks Z=0.0073$skh_4l_e^2$ cm^3 where h_4=$h_0$cosθ+Rb_1 m. Z is not to be less than the requirements for deep tanks in Table 1. 9. 1: Watertight and deep tank bulkhead scantlings in Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships, with the load head h_4, in metres, measured to the highest point of the topside tank, or side tank, or (d) In way of ballast holds the section modulus of the longitudinals is to be not less than required for deep tanks in Table 1. 9. 1: Watertight and deep tank bulkhead scantlings in Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships, with the load head h_4, in metres, measured to the deck at centre
Note *1.* If plate girders are fitted alternatively with built or rolled sections, the section modulus as given in (4)(b) may be reduced by 10 per cent. **Note** *2.* Consideration will be given to the fitting of struts in way of double bottom tanks in ships with homogeneous loading. The arrangement and scantlings are, in general, to be confirmed by direct calculation. **Note** *3. See also* Pt 4, Ch 7, 8.1 General 8.1.5 for the maximum recommended unladen weight of the grab corresponding to the approved inner bottom plating thickness.		

8. 2 Carriage of heavy cargoes

8. 2. 1 When the notation `strengthened for heavy cargoes' is to be assigned, the requirements of Table 7. 8. 1: Strengthening for heavy cargo requirements are to be complied with.

8. 3 Carriage of heavy cargoes with specified or alternate holds empty

8. 3. 1 For ships strengthened for heavy cargoes and having a class notation permitting specified or alternate holds to be empty, the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 7, 8.2 Carriage of heavy cargoes 8.2.1 are to be complied with. In addition the scantlings and arrangements of the primary structure are to be confirmed by additional calculations, *See* Pt 4, Ch 7, 11.1 Application.

8. 4 Ships to be classed '100A1 bulk carrier, strengthened for heavy cargoes, any hold may be empty, ESP'

8. 4. 1 For ships to be classed **'100A1 bulk carrier, strengthened for heavy cargoes, any hold may be empty, ESP'**, the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 7, 8.2 Carriage of heavy cargoes 8.2.1 and Pt 4, Ch 7, 8.3 Carriage of heavy cargoes with specified or alternate holds empty 8.3.1 are to be complied

with. In addition the value for C, the stowage rate in m^3/tonne, as defined in Table 7. 8. 1: Strengthening for heavy cargo requirements, is not be taken greater than 0.60 for each hold.

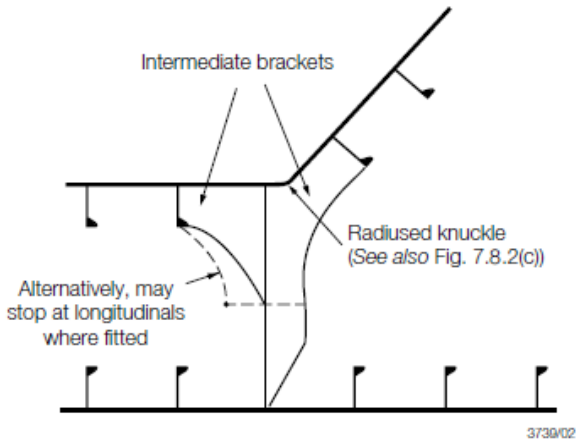
8. 5 Ballast ducts

8. 5. 1 Where ballast ducts are arranged in lieu of suction and/or filling pipes, the scantlings will be approved as suitable for a specified equivalent static head of water. This head must not be exceeded in service, and details of methods to ensure this are to be submitted. The continuity of the floors is to be maintained in way of the ducts.

8. 6 Structural details in way of double bottom tank and hopper tank knuckle

8. 6. 1 In all dry holds where the double bottom tank and hopper tank knuckle is of radiused construction and the floor spacing is 2.5 m or greater brackets shown as in Figure 7. 8. 1: Intermediate brackets at knuckle are to be arranged mid-length between floors in way of the intersection. The brackets are to be attached to the adjacent inner bottom and hopper longitudinals. The thickness of the brackets is to be in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 1, 8.5 Floors 8.5.3 but need not exceed 15 mm. This requirement does not apply where the double bottom tank and hopper tank knuckle is of welded construction.

Figure 7. 8. 1: Intermediate brackets at knuckle



8. 6. 2 In way of floodable holds, two intermediate bracket arrangements, as shown in Figure 7. 8. 1: Intermediate brackets at knuckle, are to be provided in all cases where the hopper to double bottom knuckle is radiused and are, in general, to be located at each frame space. Where the double bottom tank and hopper tank knuckle is of welded construction, a single intermediate bracket arrangement, as shown inFigure 7. 8. 1: Intermediate brackets at knuckle, is to be provided only when the floor spacing is greater than 2.5 m.

8. 6. 3 The connections at the intersection are to be as follows:

a. Where of welded construction the corner scallops in floors and transverses are to be omitted, or closed by welded collars where arranged for purposes of construction. In such cases to ensure satisfactory welding of the collars the radius of the scallops should not be less than 150 mm, *See*Figure 7. 8. 2: Connection at intersection of double bottom and hopper. Alternatively the scallop may be retained on the hopper tank side provided gusset plates are arranged in line with the inner bottom plating, *See*Figure 7. 8. 2: Connection at intersection of double bottom and hopper.

b. Where of radiused construction the corner scallops are to be omitted, and full penetration welding is to be arranged locally for the connection to the inner bottom plating. The centre of the flange is not to be greater than 70 mm from the side girder, *See*Figure 7. 8. 2: Connection at intersection of double bottom and hopper

8. 6. 4 Detail design guidelines for the connection of hopper tank sloping plating to inner bottom plating are shown in the *ACSPlus FDA Guideline, Structural Detail Design Guide* (SDDG).

8. 7 Combined double bottom/hopper tank and topside tank

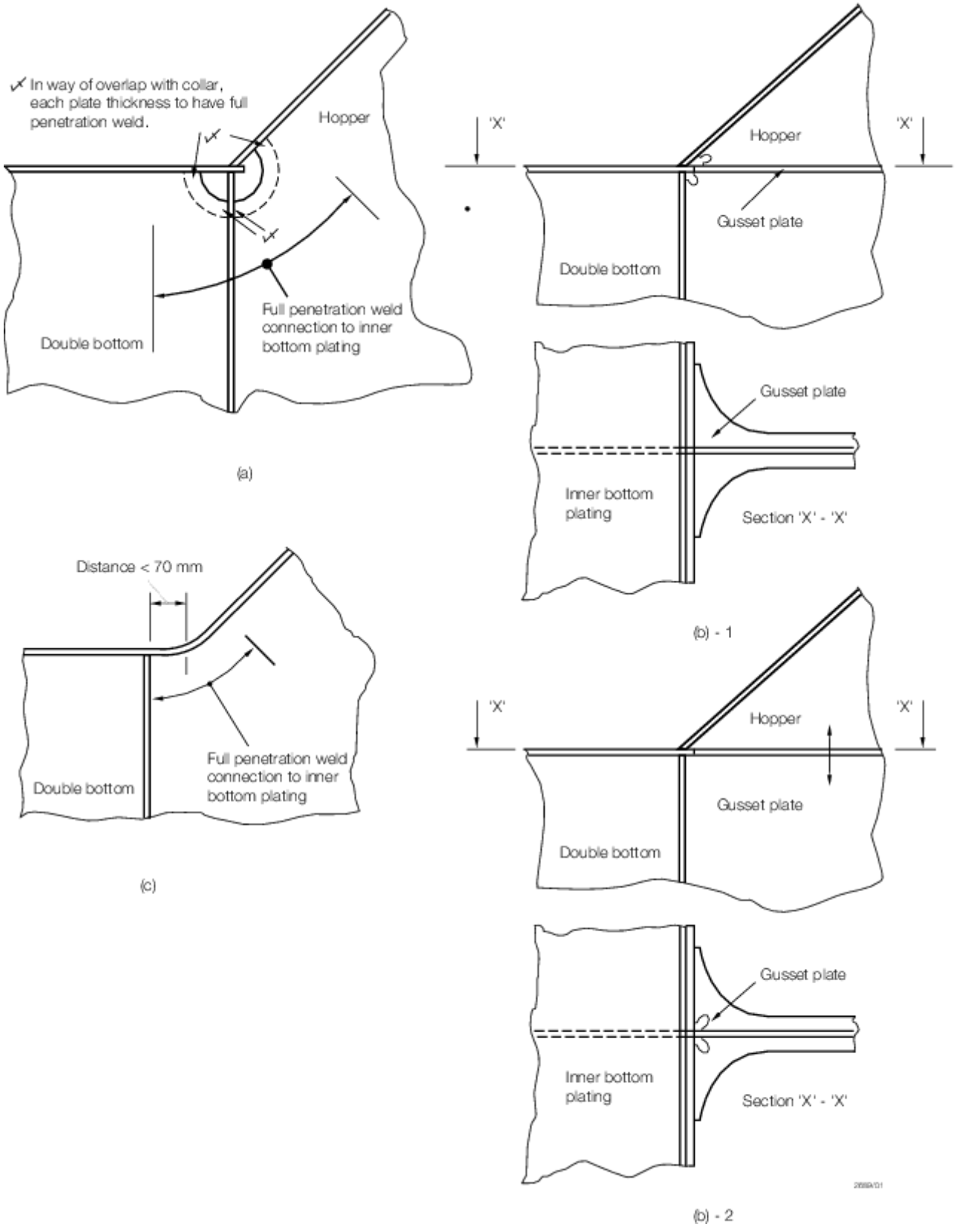
8. 7. 1 Where a double bottom/hopper tank is interconnected with a topside tank the dimensions of the connecting trunks or pipes, and the air/overflow pipe(s) and the type of closing appliance are to comply with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 13, 12 Air, overflow and sounding pipes.

8. 8 Allowable hold loading in the flooded condition

8. 8. 1 The requirements of this sub-Section are to be applied as defined in Pt 4, Ch 7, 8.1 General 8.1.4.

8. 8. 2 The maximum load which may be carried in each cargo hold in combination with flood water is to be determined for the most severe homogeneous, non-homogeneous and packed cargo conditions contained in the Loading Manual. The maximum density of cargo intended to be carried in each condition is to be used.

Figure 7. 8. 2: Connection at intersection of double bottom and hopper



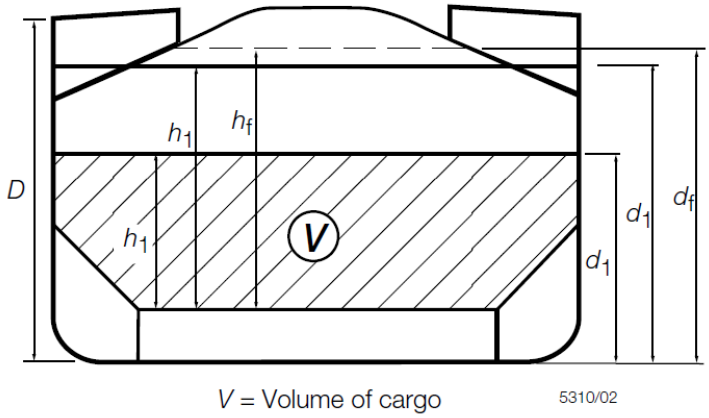
8. 8. 3 The ship is to be assumed immersed to the draught, T_F, in metres, in way of the flooded cargo hold under consideration. The flooding head, h_f, *See*Figure 7. 8. 3: Loading, is to be taken as the distance, in metres, measured vertically with the ship in the upright position, from the inner bottom to position, d_f, in metres, from the baseline given by:

a. In general:
   i. $d_f = D$ for the foremost hold
b. $d_f = 0.9D$ for other holds
c. For ships less than 50 000 tonnes deadweight with Type B freeboard:
   i. $d_f = 0.95D$ for the foremost hold
   ii. $d_f = 0.85D$ for other holds

Where

D = distance, in metres, from the baseline to the freeboard deck at side amidships.

Figure 7. 8. 3: Loading



8. 8. 4 For this application, the double bottom is defined as the structure bounded by the transverse bulkhead lower stools (or bulkhead plating if no lower stools are fitted) and the hopper sides. The floors and girders immediately in way of these structures are excluded.

8. 8. 5 The determination of shear strength required for the permissible load assessment in Pt 4, Ch 7, 8.8 Allowable hold loading in the flooded condition 8.8.9, is to be performed using the net plate thickness, t_{net}, for the floors and girders:

$$t_{net} = t - t_c$$

Where

t = as built thickness, in mm

t_c = thickness deduction for corrosion, in mm, generally to be taken as 2.5 mm.

8. 8. 6 Shear capacity of the double bottom is defined as the sum of the shear strengths for:

a. all the floors adjacent to both hoppers, less one half the strength of the floors adjacent to each lower stool (or transverse bulkhead if no lower stool is fitted), *See*Figure 7. 8. 4: Double bottom structure, and
b. all the girders adjacent to the lower stools (or transverse bulkheads if no lower stool is fitted).

Where a girder or floor terminates without direct attachment to the boundary stool or hopper side girder, its shear capacity is to include only that for the effectively connected end.

8. 8. 7 The shear strengths, S_{f1}, of floors adjacent to hoppers, and S_{f2}, of floors in way of openings in bays nearest to the hoppers, are as follows:

$S_{f1} = 0.001\ A_f \tau_p / \eta_1 \text{kN}$

$S_{f2} = 0.001 A_{fh} \tau_p / \eta_2 \text{kN}$

Where

A_f = net sectional area, in mm^2, of floor panel adjacent to hopper

$A_{f,h}$ = net sectional area, in mm^2, of floor panel in way of opening in the bay closest to hopper

η_1 = 1.10

η_2 = 1.20 generally

= 1.10 where appropriate reinforcement is fitted in way of the opening

σ_0 = specified minimum yield stress, in N/mm^2

τ_p = permissible shear stress, to be taken equal to the lesser of:

$\tau_0 = \frac{\sigma_0}{\sqrt{3}}$ N/mm^2 and

$\tau_c = \frac{162\sigma 0.6_0}{(s_1/t_{net})0.8}$ N/mm$_2$

Where

s_1 = spacing of stiffening members, in mm, for the panel under consideration

t_{net} = net thickness, in mm, of the panel under consideration.

For floors adjacent to the stools (or bulkhead plating if no lower stools are fitted), τ_p may be taken as $\frac{\sigma_0}{\sqrt{3}}$ N/mm^2.

8. 8. 8 The shear strengths S_{g1}, of girders adjacent to transverse bulkhead lower stools (or transverse bulkheads if no lower stools are fitted), and S_{g2}, of girders in way of the largest openings in bays nearest to the lower stools (or transverse bulkheads if no lower stools are fitted), are as follows:

$S_{g1} = 0.001 \text{Ag} \tau_p / \eta_1 \text{kN}$

$S_{g2} = 0.001\ A_{g,h} \tau_p / \eta_2 \text{kN}$

Where

$\boldsymbol{A_g}$ = net sectional area, in mm^2, of the girder adjacent to transverse bulkhead lower stool (or transverse bulkhead, if no lower stool is fitted)

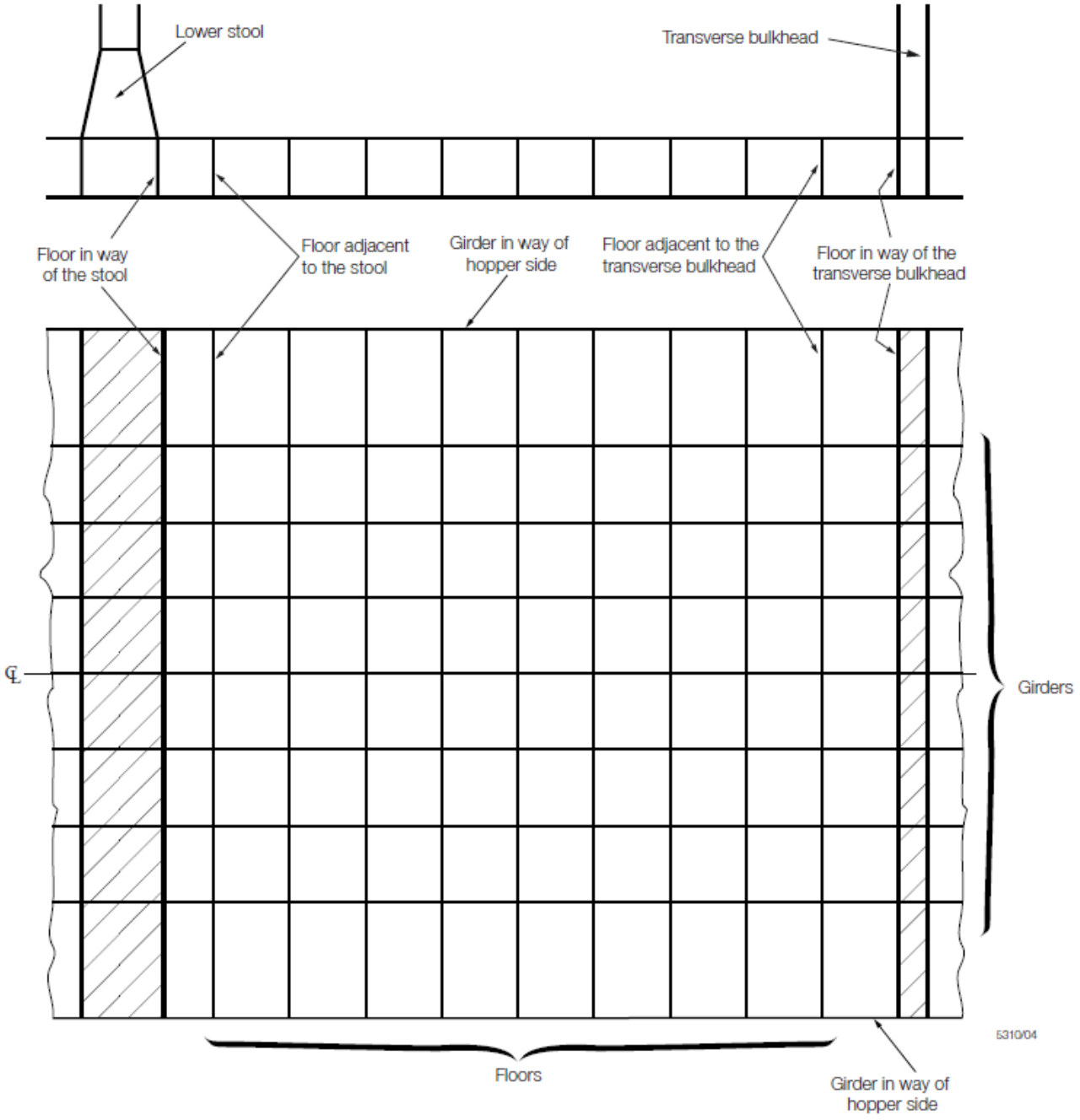
$\boldsymbol{A_{g,h}}$ = net sectional area, in mm^2, of the girder in way of the largest openings in the bays closest to the transverse bulkhead lower stool (or transverse bulkhead if no lower stool is fitted)

$\boldsymbol{\eta_1}$ = 1.10

$\boldsymbol{\eta_2}$ = 1.15 generally

= 1.10 where appropriate reinforcement is fitted in way of the opening.

Figure 7. 8. 4: Double bottom structure



8. 8. 9 The permissible cargo hold loading, W_p, is given by:

$$W_p = g\rho_c V/F_c \text{kN}$$

Where

d_f, D = as defined in Pt 4, Ch 7, 8.8 Allowable hold loading in the flooded condition 8.8.3

g = gravitational constant, 9.81 m/sec^2

Where

h_f = flooding head, in metres, as defined in Pt 4, Ch 7, 8.8 Allowable hold loading in the flooded condition 8.8.3

h_1 = $\frac{X}{\rho_c g}$ where Y is in kN/m^2

n = number of floors between transverse bulkhead lower stools or transverse bulkheads, if no lower stools are fitted

s = spacing, in metres, of double bottom longitudinals adjacent to hoppers

$A_{DB,e}$ = $\left[\sum_{i=1}^{n}\right] S_i(B_{DB} - s)$

$A_{DB,h}$ = $\left[\sum_{i=1}^{n}\right] S_i B_{DB,i}$

B_{DB} = breadth of double bottom, in metres, between hoppers *See* Figure 7. 8. 5: Double bottom breadth

$B_{DB,h}$ = distance, in metres, between openings *See* Figure 7. 8. 5: Double bottom breadth

$B_{DB,i}$ = (B_{DB}-s) for floors where shear strength is given by S_{f1}

= $B_{DB,h}$ for floors where shear strength is given by S_{f2}

C_e = shear capacity of the double bottom, in kN (tonne- f), as defined in Pt 4, Ch 7, 8.8 Allowable hold loading in the flooded condition 8.8.6, considering for each floor, the shear strength S_{f1}, *See* Pt 4, Ch 7, 8.8 Allowable hold loading in the flooded condition 8.8.7, and for each girder, the lesser of the shear strengths S_{g1} and S_{g2}, *See* Pt 4, Ch 7, 8.8 Allowable hold loading in the flooded condition 8.8.8

C_h = shear capacity of the double bottom, in kN (tonne- f), as defined in Pt 4, Ch 7, 8.8 Allowable hold loading in the flooded condition 8.8.6, considering for each floor, the lesser of the shear strengths S_{f1} and S_{f2}, *See* Pt 4, Ch 7, 8.8 Allowable hold loading in the flooded condition 8.8.7, and for each girder, the lesser of the shear strengths S_{g1} and S_{g2}, *See* Pt 4, Ch 7, 8.8 Allowable hold loading in the flooded condition 8.8.8

F_c = 1.1 in general

= 1.05 for steel mill products

S_i = spacing of ith floor, in metres

T_F = $d_f - 0.1D$

V = volume, in m^3, occupied by cargo at a level h_1

X = the lesser of X_1 and X_2 for bulk cargoes and

X = X_1 for steel mill products

Where

X_1 = $\frac{Y+\rho g(T_F-h_f)}{1+\left(\frac{\rho}{\rho_c}\right)(\mu-1)}$ where Y is in kN/m^2

X_2 = $Y + \rho g(\ T_F - h_f\mu)$ where Y is in kN/m^2

Y = the lesser of Y_1 and Y_2 given by:

Y_1 = $\frac{C_b}{A_{DB,h}}$

Where

Y_2 = $\frac{C_e}{A_{DB,e}}$

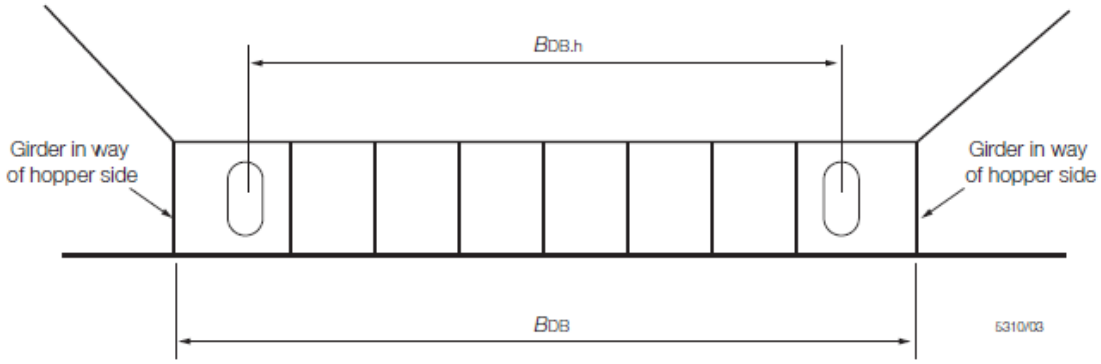
μ = permeability of cargo but need not exceed 0.3

= 0.0 for steel mill products

ρ = density of sea water, 1.025 tonne/m^3

ρ_c = cargo density, in tonne/m^3 (bulk density for bulk cargoes and actual cargo density for steel mill products).

Figure 7. 8. 5: Double bottom breadth



PART

4

CHAPTER **7** **Bulk Carriers**

SECTION **9** **Hopper side tank structure**

9. 1 General

9. 1. 1 Provision is made in this Section for longitudinal framing of the hopper side tank, but proposals for transverse framing will be specially considered.

9. 1. 2 Where oil cargoes are carried the scantlings of the sloped bulkhead are to comply with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 7, 10.2 Bulkheads supported by stools.

9. 1. 3 For ships to be classed **'100A1 bulk carrier, strengthened for heavy cargoes, any hold may be empty, ESP'**, the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 7, 9.2, Sloped bulkhead plating, Pt 4, Ch 7, 9.3 Sloped bulkhead stiffeners and Pt 4, Ch 7, 9.6 Primary supporting structure are to be complied with. In addition the value for C, the stowage rate in m^3/tonne, as defined in Table 7. 8. 1: Strengthening for heavy cargo requirements, is not be taken greater than 0.60 for each hold.

9. 1. 4 The buckling requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4, 7 Hull buckling strength are also to be satisfied.

9. 1. 5 The *ACSPlus FDA Guideline, Structural Detail Design Guide* (SDDG), indicates recommended details of structural design configurations around the transverse ring web of the hopper tank.

9. 2 Sloped bulkhead plating

9. 2. 1 The thickness of the sloped bulkhead plating is to be as required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 8.4 Inner bottom plating and stiffening 8.4.1 but based on actual spacing of sloped bulkhead stiffeners.

9. 2. 2 Where the ship is regularly discharged by grabs and the optional notation for heavy grabs is not desired (*See* Pt 3, Ch 9, 7 Bottom strengthening for loading and unloading aground), the increase in thickness, as required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 2.2, Protection of steelwork, is to be tapered from the inner bottom knuckle to nil at the top corner of the tank.

9. 2. 3 Where a `strengthened for heavy cargo notation' is desired, in addition to Pt 4, Ch 7, 9.2 Sloped bulkhead plating 9.2.2 the thickness of the sloped bulkhead plating is also to comply with the requirements of Table 7. 8. 1: Strengthening for heavy cargo requirements (3)(b) using the actual spacing of stiffeners and with H, in metres, measured vertically from a point one third of each plate width from its lower edge to the upper deck at side.

9. 2. 4 Where the hopper tanks are interconnected with the topside tanks, or in way of ballast holds, the plating is also to comply with the requirements of Table 7. 8. 1: Strengthening for heavy cargo requirements (3)(c) and (3)(d), whichever is appropriate.

9. 3 Sloped bulkhead stiffeners

9. 3. 1 The scantlings of sloped bulkhead stiffeners are to be as required for inner bottom longitudinals, *See* Pt 4, Ch 7, 8 Double bottom structure. In ships strengthened for heavy cargoes, the scantlings of the stiffeners are to be derived from Table 7. 8. 1: Strengthening for heavy cargo requirements

using a head for heavy cargo measured vertically from the mid-point of the effective length to the underside of the topside tank sloped bulkhead. Where the hopper tanks are interconnected with the topside tanks, or in way of ballast holds, the scantlings of the stiffeners are also to comply with the requirements of Table 7. 8. 1: Strengthening for heavy cargo requirements(4)(c) and (4)(d), whichever is appropriate. For higher tensile steel longitudinals the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 6.2 Longitudinal stiffening 6.2.3 are to be complied with where applicable, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 7, 9.7 Structural details 9.7.1.

9. 4 Shell and bilge stiffeners

9. 4. 1 The scantlings of the shell and bilge longitudinals are to comply with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 6 Shell envelope framing.

9. 5 Tank end bulkheads

9. 5. 1 The scantlings of tank end bulkheads are to comply with the requirements for deep tanks in Table 1. 9. 1: Watertight and deep tank bulkhead scantlings. Where the hopper tanks are interconnected with the topside tanks, the scantlings are to be derived, using the load head h_4, in metres, from Table 7. 8. 1: Strengthening for heavy cargo requirements (3)(c) and (4)(c), as appropriate.

9. 6 Primary supporting structure

9. 6. 1 Transverses supporting longitudinal stiffening are to comply with the requirements of , and are to be in line with the double bottom floors.

9. 7 Structural details

9. 7. 1 Bracket/diaphragms at the top of the hopper tank are to be of sufficient size and thickness to provide effective rigidity, and care is to be taken to ensure alignment with brackets at the bottom of the side frames in the holds. The shell and sloped bulkhead longitudinals supporting the diaphragms are to be derived using the span taken between transverses, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 7, 6.2 Transverse stiffening 6.2.11.

Table 7. 9. 1: Hopper tank primary structure

Item	Modulus, in cm^3	Inertia, in cm^4
(1) Bottom and side shell transverses	$Z = 11.71\rho k S h_1 l_e^2$	$I = \frac{2.5}{k} l_e Z$
(2) Sloped bulkhead transverses	The greater of: (a) $Z = 11.71\rho k S h_1 l_e^2$ (b) $Z = 6.6 \frac{k S H_H l_e^2}{c} \tan$	$I = \frac{2.5}{k} l_e Z$ $I = \frac{1.85}{k} l_e Z$
Symbols		

S, k, l_e, Z, I, ρ = as defined in Pt 4, Ch 7, 1.7 Information required for non-CSR bulk carriers 1.7.1

h = distance, in metres, from the mid-point of the effective length to the upper deck at side

h_1 = the greater of the distance, in metres, from the midpoint of the effective length to the top of the tank or half the distance, in metres, to the top of the overflow, or in way of cargo oil or ballast holds: the distance from the tank top to the deck at centre, or where the hopper tank is interconnected with the topside tank: the load head h_4, as derived from Table 7. 8. 1: Strengthening for heavy cargo requirements (4)(c), whichever is the greatest

C = stowage rate, in m^3/tonne, as defined in Table 7. 8. 1: Strengthening for heavy cargo requirements. For bulk carriers without the notation `strengthened for heavy cargoes', the value to be used is 1.39 $m^3$/tonne. For bulk carriers with the notation `strengthened for heavy cargoes', the actual stowage rate is to be used, but the value is not to be taken greater than 0.865 m^3/tonne.

H_H = distance, in metres, measured vertically from the mid-point of the effective length to the underside of the topside tank sloped bulkhead

PART

4

CHAPTER **7** **Bulk Carriers**

SECTION **10** **Bulkheads**

10. 1 General

10. 1. 1 The requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 9 Bulkheads are to be applied, together with the requirements of this Section.

10. 1. 2 Where vertically corrugated transverse watertight bulkheads are fitted, the scantlings and arrangements are also to satisfy the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 7, 10.4, Vertically corrugated transverse watertight bulkheads – Application and definitions. Other transverse watertight bulkhead types will be specially considered.

10. 1. 3 In way of ballast holds, the scantlings are to satisfy the requirements of Table 1. 9. 1: Watertight and deep tank bulkhead scantlings in Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships for deep tanks with the load head, h_4, in metres, taken to the deck at centre. This includes the scantlings of vertically corrugated and double plate transverse bulkheads supported by stools. In addition, the thickness of corrugations is to be not less than given by Pt 4, Ch 7, 10.5 Vertically corrugated transverse watertight bulkheads – Scantling assessment 10.5.8 for watertight corrugated bulkheads. Alternatively, the scantlings may be based on direct calculations which are to be submitted.

10. 1. 4 All bulk carriers to be classed **'100A1 bulk carrier, strengthened for heavy cargoes, any hold may be empty, ESP'** are to be arranged with top and bottom stools. The requirements of Pt 4, Ch 7, 10.2 Bulkheads supported by stools are to be complied with as appropriate.

10. 2 Bulkheads supported by stools

10. 2. 1 The stools are to be reinforced with plate diaphragms or deep webs, and in bottom stools the diaphragms are to be aligned with double bottom side girders. Continuity is also to be maintained between the diaphragms and the bulkhead corrugations for 90° corrugations.

10. 2. 2 The sloping plate of bottom stools is to be aligned with double bottom floors. Particular attention is to be given to the through thickness properties of the inner bottom plating and continuity at the connection to the inner bottom, and to the through thickness properties of the bottom stool shelf plate, *See* Ch 3, 8 Plates with specified through thickness properties of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials regarding requirements for plates with specified through thickness properties.

10. 2. 3 An efficient system of reinforcement is to be arranged in line with the hold transverse bulkheads or bulkhead stools at the intersection with the sloped plating of the hopper and topside tanks. The reinforcement fitted in the tanks is to consist of girders or intercostal bulb plate or equivalent stiffeners fitted between, and connected to, the sloped bulkhead longitudinals.

10. 2. 4 The shelf plates of the bulkhead stools are to be arranged to align with the longitudinals in the hopper and topside tanks. Where sloping shelf plates are fitted to stools, suitable scarfing is to be arranged in way of the connections of the stools to the adjoining structures.

10. 2. 5 The *ACSPlus FDA Guideline, Structural Detail Design Guide* (SDDG), indicates recommended structural design configurations in the critical areas of the lower stool and of the upper boundaries.

10. 3 Structural details in way of holds confined to dry cargoes

10. 3. 1 In dry cargo holds where transverse bulkheads are arranged without bottom stools, the stiffeners and brackets of plane bulkheads, and rectangular corrugations of corrugated bulkheads, are to be aligned with floors and inner bottom longitudinals. In the case of non-rectangular corrugations, the flanges are to be aligned with floors, but consideration will be given to the fitting of a substantial transverse girder in place of one of the floors.

10. 3. 2 Where transverse corrugated bulkheads are arranged without top stools, transverse beams are to be arranged under the deck in way.

10. 4 Vertically corrugated transverse watertight bulkheads – Application and definitions

10. 4. 1 Where corrugated transverse watertight bulkheads are fitted, the scantlings are to be determined in accordance with the following requirements.

10. 4. 2 For ships of length, L, 190 m or above, the vertically corrugated transverse bulkheads are to be fitted with a bottom stool and, generally, with a top stool below the deck. The requirements of Pt 4, Ch 7, 10.6 Vertically corrugated transverse bulkheads – Support structure at ends are to be complied with as appropriate.

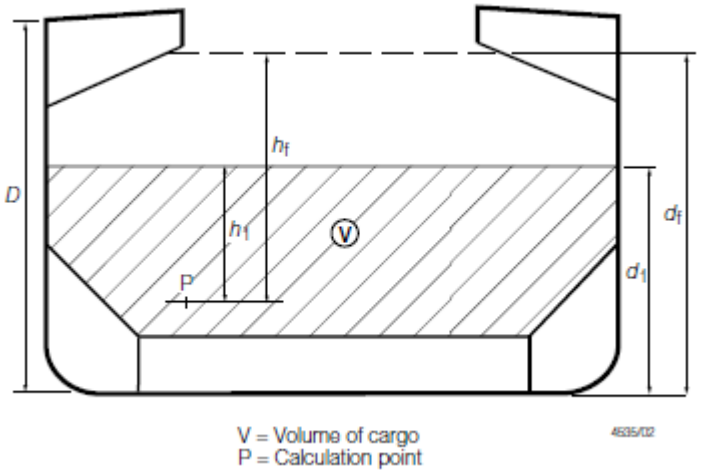
10. 4. 3 The loads to be considered as acting on the bulkheads are those given by the combination of cargo loads with those induced by the flooding of one hold adjacent to the bulkhead under consideration. The most severe combinations of cargo induced loads and flooding loads are to be used for the determination of the scantlings of each bulkhead, depending on the specified design loading conditions:

a. homogeneous loading conditions,
b. non-homogeneous loading conditions (excluding part loading conditions associated with multi-port loading and unloading),
c. packed cargo conditions (such as steel mill products).

The individual flooding of loaded and empty holds is to be considered, but the pressure used in the assessment is not to be less than that obtained for flood water alone. Holds containing packed cargo are to be treated as empty holds.

10. 4. 4 The cargo surface is to be taken as horizontal and at a distance d_1, in metres, from the base line, *See* Figure 7. 10. 1: Cargo hold dimensions, where d_1 is calculated taking into account the cargo properties and the hold dimensions. Unless the ship is designed to carry only cargo of bulk density greater than or equal to 1.78 tonne/m^3 in non-homogeneous loading conditions, the maximum mass of cargo which may be carried in the hold is to be taken as filling that hold to the upper deck level at centreline. A permeability, μ, of 0.3 and angle of repose, ψ, of 35° is to be assumed for this application.

Figure 7. 10. 1: Cargo hold dimensions



10. 4. 5 An homogeneous load condition is defined as one where the ratio between the highest and the lowest filling levels, d_1, in adjacent holds does not exceed 1.20. For this purpose, where a loading condition includes cargoes of different densities, equivalent filling levels are to be calculated for all holds on the basis of a single reference value of cargo density, which can be the minimum to be carried.

10. 4. 6 The permeability, μ, may be taken as 0.3 for ore, coal and cement cargoes. The bulk density and angle of repose, ψ, may generally be taken as 3.0 tonne/m^3 and 35° respectively for iron ore and 1.3 tonne/m^3 and 25° respectively for cement.

10. 4. 7 The flooding head, h_f, *See* Figure 7. 10. 1: Cargo hold dimensions, is the distance, in metres, measured vertically with the ship in the upright position, from the location *P*, under consideration, to a position d_f, in metres, from the base line as given in Table 7. 10. 1: Flooding head.

10. 4. 8 In considering a flooded hold, the total load is to be taken as that of the cargo and flood water at the appropriate permeability. Where there is empty volume above the top of the cargo, this is to be taken as flooded to the level of the flooding head.

10. 4. 9 Corrugations may be constructed of flanged plates or fabricated from separate flange and web plates, which may be of different thicknesses. The corrugation angle is to be not less than 55°, *See* Figure 7. 10. 2: Dimensions of bulkhead corrugation angles.

10. 4. 10 The term net plate thickness is used to describe the calculated minimum thickness of plating of the web, t_w, or flange, t_f. The plate thickness to be fitted is the net plate thickness plus a corrosion addition of 3.5 mm.

10. 5 Vertically corrugated transverse watertight bulkheads – Scantling assessment

10. 5. 1 The bending moment *M*, in kNm, for the bulkhead corrugations is given by:

$$M = \frac{Fl}{8}$$

Where

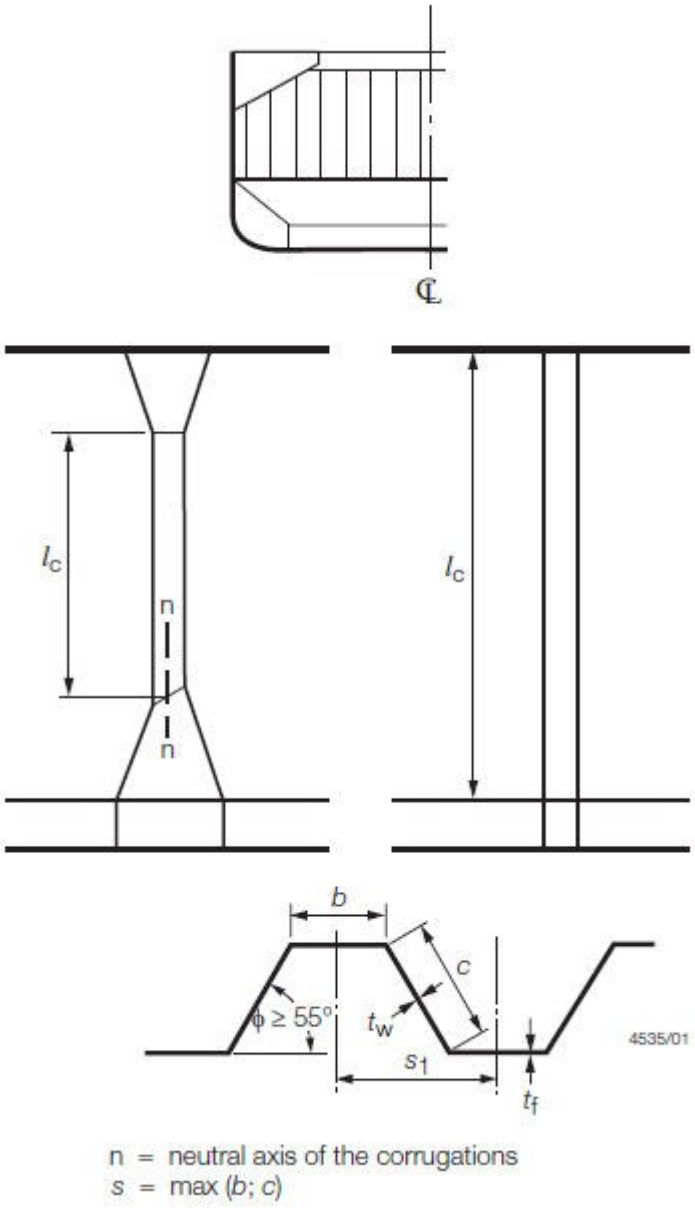
l = span of the corrugation, in metres, to be measured between the internal ends of the bulkhead upper and lower stools in way of the neutral axis of the corrugations or, where no stools are fitted, from inner bottom to deck, *See* Figure 7. 10. 2: Dimensions of bulkhead corrugation angles and Figure 7. 10. 3: Scantling assessment. The lower end of the upper stool is not to be taken greater than a distance from the deck at the centreline equal to:

= 3 times the depth of the corrugation, in general, or

= 2 times the depth of the corrugation, for rectangular stools

F = resultant force, in kN, *See* Table 7. 10. 3: Resultant pressure and force.

Figure 7. 10. 2: Dimensions of bulkhead corrugation angles



n = neutral axis of the corrugations
s = max (b; c)

10. 5. 2 The shear force, Q, in kN at the lower end of the bulkhead corrugation is given by:

$$Q = 0.8F$$

where F is defined in Pt 4, Ch 7, 10.5 Vertically corrugated transverse watertight bulkheads – Scantling assessment 10.5.1.

Table 7. 10. 1: Flooding head

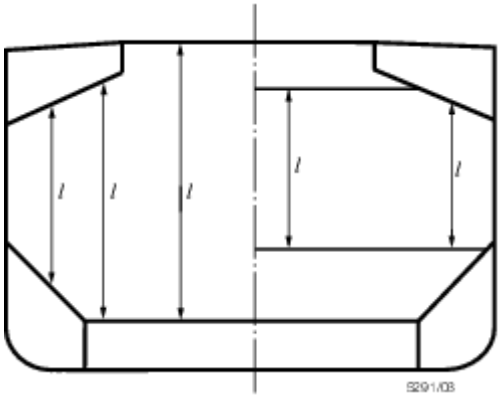
Item	Bulkhead location	Bulk carriers with Type B freeboard and deadweight < 50 000 tonnes	Other bulk carriers
I (1)	Between holds 1 and 2	$d_f = 0.95D$	$d_f = D$
	Elsewhere	$d_f = 0.85D$	$d_f = 0.9D$
II (1)	Between holds 1 and 2	$d_f = 0.9D$	$d_f = 0.95D$
	Elsewhere	$d_f = 0.8D$	$d_f = 0.85D$

Note *1.* Item **II** is to be used for non-homogeneous loading conditions where the bulk cargo density is less than 1.78 tonne/m^3.

Otherwise, Item **I** is to be used.

Note *2.* D = distance, in metres, from the base line to the freeboard deck at side amidships, *See* Fig 7.10.1.

Figure 7. 10. 3: Scantling assessment



10. 5. 3 The section modulus of the corrugations is to be calculated using net plate thicknesses. At the lower end, the following requirements apply:

a. An effective width of compression flange, b_{ef}, not greater than given in Pt 4, Ch 7, 10.5 Vertically corrugated transverse watertight bulkheads – Scantling assessment 10.5.7, is to be used.

b. Where corrugation webs are not supported by local brackets below the shelf plate (or below the inner bottom if no lower stool is fitted), they are to be assumed 30 per cent effective in bending. Otherwise, the full area of web plates may be used, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 7, 10.5 Vertically corrugated transverse watertight bulkheads – Scantling assessment 10.5.3.e.

c. Where effective shedder plates are fitted, *See* Figure 7. 10. 4: Symmetric shedder plates and Figure 7. 10. 5: Asymmetric shedder plates, the net area of the corrugation flange plates, in cm^2, may be increased by the lesser of:

$$2.5b\sqrt{(t_t t_{sh})} \text{ and } 2.5bt_f$$

Where

b = width of corrugation flange, in metres, *See* Figure 7. 10. 2: Dimensions of bulkhead corrugation angles

t_f = net flange plate thickness, in mm

t_{sh} = net shedder plate thickness, in mm

A shedder plate is considered effective when it:

- is not knuckled; and
- is welded to the corrugations and the lower stool shelf plate by one-side penetration welds or equivalent; and
- has a minimum slope of 45° and lower edges in line with the stool side plating; and
- has a thickness not less than 0.75 times the thickness of the corrugation flanges; and
- has material properties at least equal to those of the corrugation flanges.

d. Where effective gusset plates are fitted, *See* Figure 7. 10. 6: Symmetric gusset/shedder plates and Figure 7. 10. 7: Asymmetric gusset/shedder plates the net area of the corrugation flange plates, in cm^2, may be increased by:

$$7h_g t_f$$

Where

h_g = height of the gusset plate, in metres, but is not to be taken greater than $\frac{10}{7}s_{gu}$

t_f = net flange plate thickness, in mm

s_{gu} = width of the gusset plate, in metres

A gusset plate is considered effective when it:

- is fitted in combination with an effective shedder plate as defined in Pt 4, Ch 7, 10.5 Vertically corrugated transverse watertight bulkheads – Scantling assessment 10.5.3.c; and
- has height not less than half the flange plate width; and
- is fitted in line with the stool side plating; and
- has thickness and material properties at least equal to those of the flanges; and
- is welded to the top of the lower stool by full penetration welds and to the corrugations and shedder plates by one-side penetration welds or equivalent.

e. Where the corrugation is welded to a sloping stool shelf plate, set at an angle of not less than 45° to the horizontal, the corrugation webs may be taken as fully effective in bending. Where the slope is less than 45°, the effectiveness is to be assessed by linear interpolation between fully effective at 45° and the appropriate value from Pt 4, Ch 7, 10.5 Vertically corrugated transverse watertight bulkheads – Scantling assessment 10.5.3.b at 0°. Where effective gusset plates are also fitted, the area of the flange plates may be increased in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 7, 10.5 Vertically corrugated transverse watertight

bulkheads – Scantling assessment 10.5.3.d. No increase is permitted in the case where shedder plates are fitted without gussets.

Table 7. 10. 2: Bulkhead pressure and force

Item	Pressure, kN/m^2 (tonne-f/m^2)	Force, kN (tonne-f)
(1) In non-flooded bulk cargo holds	$p_c = g\rho_c h_1 \tan^2\theta$ $(p_c = g\rho_c h_1 \tan^2\theta)$	$F_c = 0.5\rho_c g s_1 (d_1 - h_{DB} - h_{LS})^2 \tan^2\theta$ $(F_c = 0.5\rho_c s_1 (d_1 - h_{DB} - h_{LS})^2 \tan^2\theta)$
(2) In flooded bulk cargo holds, when $d_f \geq d_1$ (a) For positions between d_1 and d_f from base line	$p_{cf} = g\rho h_f$ $(p_{cf} = \rho h_f)$	$F_{cf} = 0.5 s_1 \big(\rho g (d_f - d_1)^2 + (\rho g (d_f - d_1) + p_{le})(d_1 - h_{DB} - h_{LS})\big)$
(b) For positions at a distance lower than d_f from base line	$p_{cf} = g(\rho h_f + (\rho_c - \rho(1-\mu))h_c \tan^2\theta$ $(p_{cf} = (\rho h_f + (\rho_c - \rho(1-\mu))h_1 \tan^2\theta)$	$\big(F_{cf} = 0.5 s_1 \big(\rho (d_f - d_1)^2 + (\rho (d_f - d_1) + p_{le})(d_1 - h_{DB} - h_{LS})\big)\big)$
(3) In flooded bulk cargo holds, when $d_f < d_1$ (a) For positions between d_1 and d_f from base line	$p_{cf} = g\rho_c h_1 \tan^2\theta$ $(p_{cf} = \rho_c h_1 \tan^2\theta)$	$F_{cf} = 0.5 s_1 \big(\rho_c g (d_1 - d_f)^2 \tan^2\theta + (\rho_c g (d_1 - d_f)\tan^2\theta + p_{le})(d_f - h_{DB} - h_{LS})\big)$
(b) For positions at a distance lower than d_f from base line	$p_{cf} = g(\rho h_f + (\rho_c h_1 - \rho(1-\mu)h_f)\tan^2\theta)$ $(p_{cf} = (\rho h_f + (\rho_c h_1 - \rho(1-\mu)h_f)\tan^2\theta))$	$\big(F_{cf} = 0.5 s_1 \big(\rho_c (d_1 - d_f)^2 \tan^2\theta + (\rho_c (d_1 - d_f)\tan^2\theta + p_{le})(d_f - h_{DB} - h_{LS})\big)\big)$
(4) In flooded empty holds	$p_f = g\rho h_f$ $(p_f = \rho h_f)$	$F_f = 0.5 s_1 \rho g (d_f - h_{DB} - h_{LS})^2$ $(F_f = 0.5 s_1 \rho (d_f - h_{DB} - h_{LS})^2)$
Symbols		

d_f *See* Pt 4, Ch 7, 10.4 Vertically corrugated transverse watertight bulkheads – Application and definitions 10.4.7

d_1 = vertical distance, in metres, from the base line to the top of the cargo, *See* Figure 7. 10. 1: Cargo hold dimensions

g = gravitational constant, 9.81 m/sec^2

h_{DB} = height of double bottom, in metres

h_f = flooding head, *See* Pt 4, Ch 7, 10.4 Vertically corrugated transverse watertight bulkheads – Application and definitions 10.4.7

h_{LS} = mean height of lower stool, in metres

h_1 = vertical distance, in metres, from the calculation point to the top of the cargo, *See* Figure 7. 10. 1: Cargo hold dimensions

p_c, p_{cf}, p_f = pressure on the bulkhead at the point under consideration, in kN/m^2

p_{le} = pressure at the lower end of the corrugation, in kN/m^2

s_1 = spacing of the corrugations, in metres, *See* Figure 7. 10. 2: Dimensions of bulkhead corrugation angles

ρ = density of sea water = 1.025 tonne /m^3

ρ_c = bulk cargo density, in tonne/m^3

θ = $45° - (\psi/2)$

ψ = angle of repose of the cargo, in degrees

μ = permeability of cargo, *See* Pt 4, Ch 7, 10.4 Vertically corrugated transverse watertight bulkheads – Application and definitions 10.4.6

Table 7. 10. 3: Resultant pressure and force

Loading condition	Resultant pressure kN/m^2	Resultant force kN
Homogeneous	$p_r = p_{cf} - 0.8p_c$	$F = F_{cf} - 0.8F_c$
Non-homogeneous	$p_r = p_{cf}$	$F = F_{cf}$
Flood water alone (adjacent holds empty)	$p_r = p_f$	$F = F_f$
Note For symbols, *See* Table 7. 10. 2: Bulkhead pressure and force.		

10. 5. 4 The section modulus of corrugations at cross-sections other than the lower end is to be calculated with fully effective webs and an effective compression flange width, b_{ef} not greater than given in Pt 4, Ch 7, 10.5 Vertically corrugated transverse watertight bulkheads – Scantling assessment 10.5.7.

Figure 7. 10. 4: Symmetric shedder plates

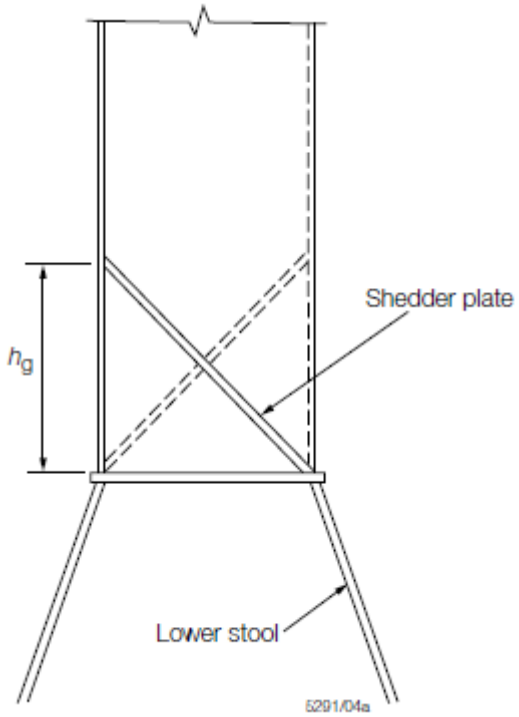


Figure 7. 10. 5: Asymmetric shedder plates

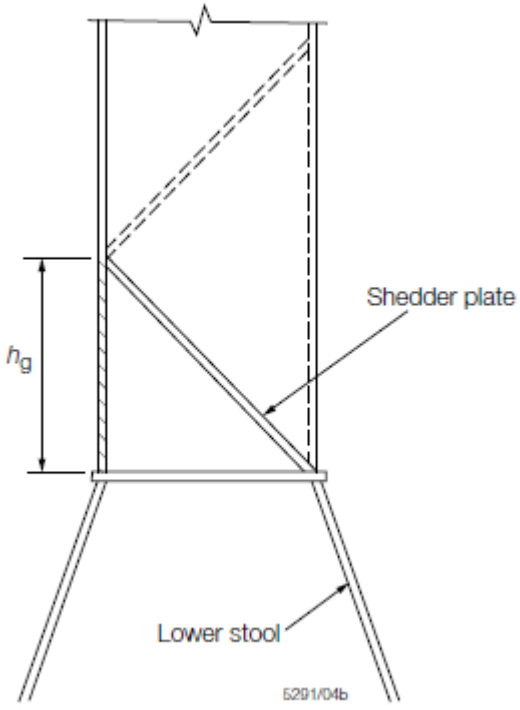
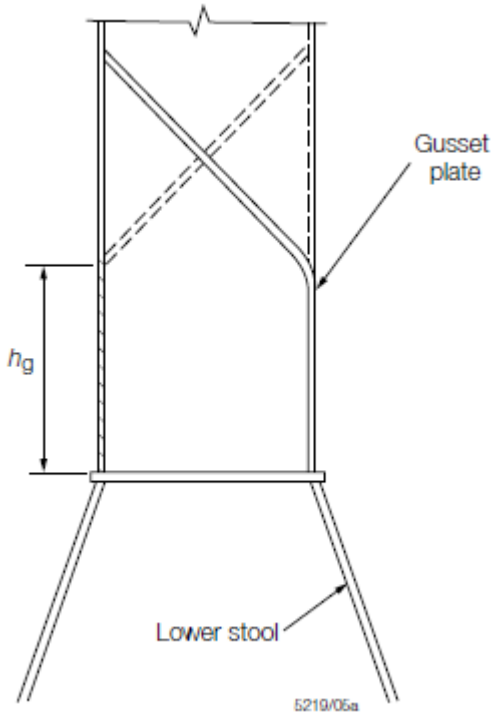


Figure 7. 10. 6: Symmetric gusset/shedder plates



10. 5. 5 The bending capacity of the bulkhead corrugations is to comply with the following relationship:

$$\frac{1000M}{0.5Z_{le}\sigma_{p,le} + Z_m\sigma_{p,m}} \leq 0.95$$

Where

M = bending moment, in kNm, *See* Pt 4, Ch 7, 10.5 Vertically corrugated transverse watertight bulkheads – Scantling assessment 10.5.1

Z_{le} = section modulus at the lower end of the corrugations, in cm^3

Z_m = section modulus at mid-span of the corrugations, in cm^3

$\sigma_{p,le}$ = permissible bending stress at the lower end of the corrugations, in N/mm^2

$\sigma_{p,m}$ = permissible bending stress at mid-span of the corrugations, in N/mm^2

In the above expression Z_{le}, in cm^3, is not to be taken greater than Z'_{le} where

$$Z'_{le} = Z_g + \left(\frac{1000Qh_g - 0.5h_g^2 s_1 p_g}{\sigma_{p,le}}\right)$$

and Z_m is not to exceed the lesser of $1.15Z_{le}$ and $1.15Z'_{le}$

Where

h_g = height of the gusset plate, in metres

p_g = resultant pressure calculated in way of the middle of the shedder or gusset plates as appropriate, in kN/m^2

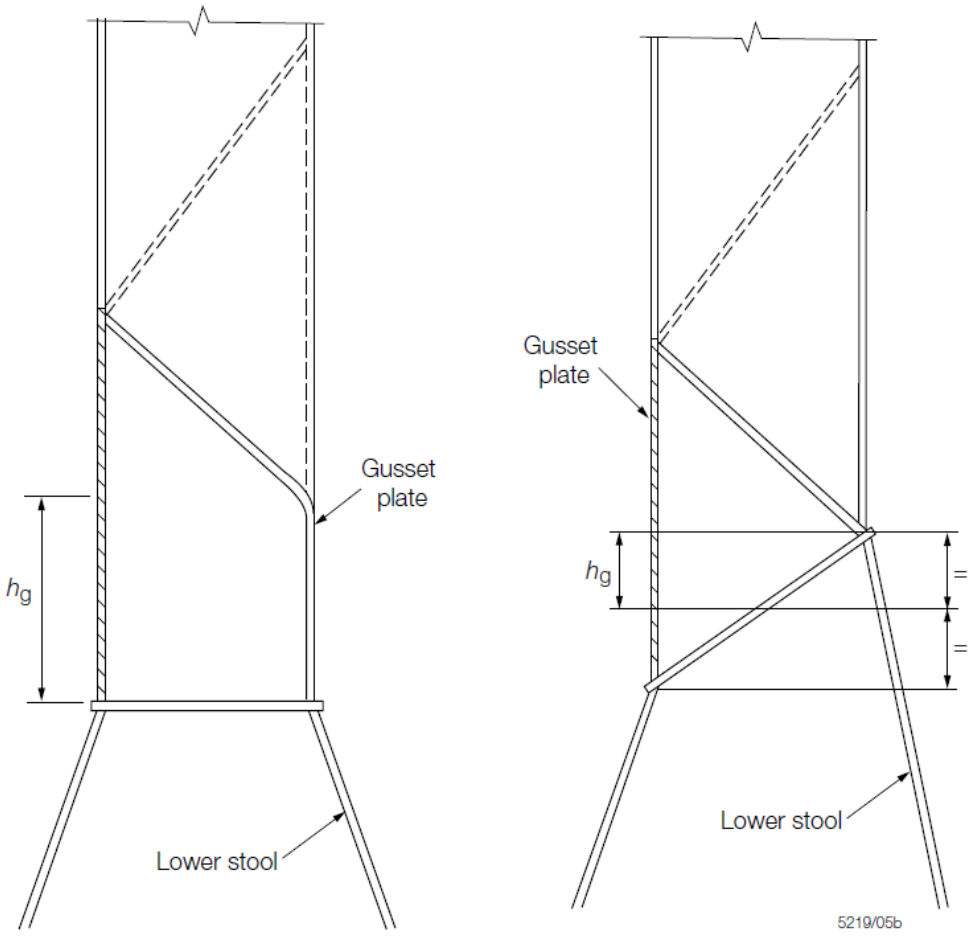
s_1 = spacing of the corrugations, in metres

Q = shear force, in kN, *See* Pt 4, Ch 7, 10.5 Vertically corrugated transverse watertight bulkheads – Scantling assessment 10.5.2

Where

Z_g = section modulus of the corrugations in way of the upper end of shedder or gusset plates as appropriate, in cm^3.

Figure 7. 10. 7: Asymmetric gusset/shedder plates



10. 5. 6 The applied shear stress, in N/mm^2, is determined by dividing the shear force derived from Pt 4, Ch 7, 10.5 Vertically corrugated transverse watertight bulkheads – Scantling assessment 10.5.2 by the shear area of the corrugation, calculated using the net plate thickness. The shear area is to be reduced to account for non- perpendicularity between the corrugation webs and flanges. In general, the reduced area may be obtained by multiplying the web sectional area by sin φ, where φ is the angle between the web and the flange, *See* Figure 7. 10. 2: Dimensions of bulkhead corrugation angles. The applied shear stress is not to exceed the permissible shear stress or the shear buckling stress given in Table 7. 10. 4: Permissible shear and buckling stresses.

Table 7. 10. 4: Permissible shear and buckling stresses

Bending, N/mm^2	Shear, N/mm^2	Shear buckling, N/mm^2

$\sigma_p = \sigma_0$	$\tau_p = 0.5\sigma_0$	$\tau_{cr} = \tau_E$ when $\tau_E \leq \frac{\tau_0}{2}$ $= \tau_0\left(1 - \frac{\tau_0}{4\tau_E}\right)$ when $\tau_E \leq \frac{\tau_0}{2}$

Symbols

b = width of corrugation flange, in metres, *See* Figure 7. 10. 2: Dimensions of bulkhead corrugation angles

c = width of corrugation web, in metres, *See* Figure 7. 10. 2: Dimensions of bulkhead corrugation angles

t_f = net flange plate thickness, in mm

t_w = web plate net thickness, in mm

E = modulus of elasticity

= 206 000 N/mm^2

σ_0 = specified minimum yield stress, in N/mm^2

$\tau_E = 5.706E(t_w/1000c)^2$ N/mm^2

$\tau_0 = \frac{\sigma_0}{\sqrt{3}}$N/mm^2

10. 5. 7 The width of the compression flange, in metres, to be used for calculating the effective modulus is:

$$b_{ef} = C_{et}b$$

Where

C_{ef} = $\frac{2.25}{\beta} - \frac{1.25}{\beta^2}$ for $\beta > 1.25$

C_{ef} = 1.0 for $\beta \leq 1.25$

β = $10^3\left(\frac{b}{t_f}\right)\sqrt{\frac{\sigma_0}{E}}$

Other symbols are as defined in Table 7. 10. 4: Permissible shear and buckling stresses.

10. 5. 8 The corrugation flange and web local net plate thickness are not to be less than:

$$t = 14.9s_w\sqrt{1.05\frac{p_r}{\sigma_0}} \text{ mm}$$

Where

s_w = plate width, in metres, to be taken equal to the width of the corrugation flange or web, whichever is the greater

p_r = resultant pressure, in kN/m^2, as defined in Table 7. 10. 3: Resultant pressure and force, at the lower edge of each strake of plating. The net thickness of the lowest strake is to be determined using the resultant pressure at the top of the lower stool, (or at the inner bottom, if no lower stool is fitted), or at the top of the shedders, if effective shedder or gusset and shedder plates are fitted

σ_0 = specified minimum yield stress of the material, in N/mm^2.

10. 5. 9 For built-up corrugations, where the thickness of the flange and of the web are different, the net thickness of the narrower plating is to be not less than:

$$t_n = 14.9 s_n \sqrt{1.05 \frac{p_r}{\sigma_0}} \text{ mm}$$

Where

s_n = width of the narrower plating, in metres.

The net thickness, in mm, of the wider plating is not to be taken less than the greater of:

$$t_{wp} = 14.9 s_w \sqrt{1.05 \frac{p_r}{\sigma_0}} \text{ mm or}$$

$$t_{wp} = \sqrt{\frac{462 s_w^2 P_r}{\sigma_0} - t_{np}^2} \text{ mm}$$

Where

t_{np} ≤ actual net thickness of the narrower plating but not greater than:.

$$14.9 s_w \sqrt{1.05 \frac{p_r}{\sigma_0}} \text{ mm}$$

10. 5. 10 The required thickness of plating is the net thickness plus the corrosion addition given in Pt 4, Ch 7, 10.4 Vertically corrugated transverse watertight bulkheads – Application and definitions 10.4.10.

10. 5. 11 Scantlings required to meet the bending and shear strength requirements at the lower end of the bulkhead corrugation are to be maintained for a distance of 0.15l from the lower end, where l is as defined in Pt 4, Ch 7, 10.5 Vertically corrugated transverse watertight bulkheads – Scantling assessment 10.5.1. Scantlings required to meet the bending requirements at mid-height are to be maintained to a location no greater than 0.3l from the top of the corrugation. The section modulus of the remaining upper part of the corrugation is to be not less than 0.75 times that required for the middle part, corrected for differences in yield stress.

10. 6 Vertically corrugated transverse bulkheads – Support structure at ends

10. 6. 1 The requirements of Pt 4, Ch 7, 10.2 Bulkheads supported by stools are to be complied with as applicable, together with the following.

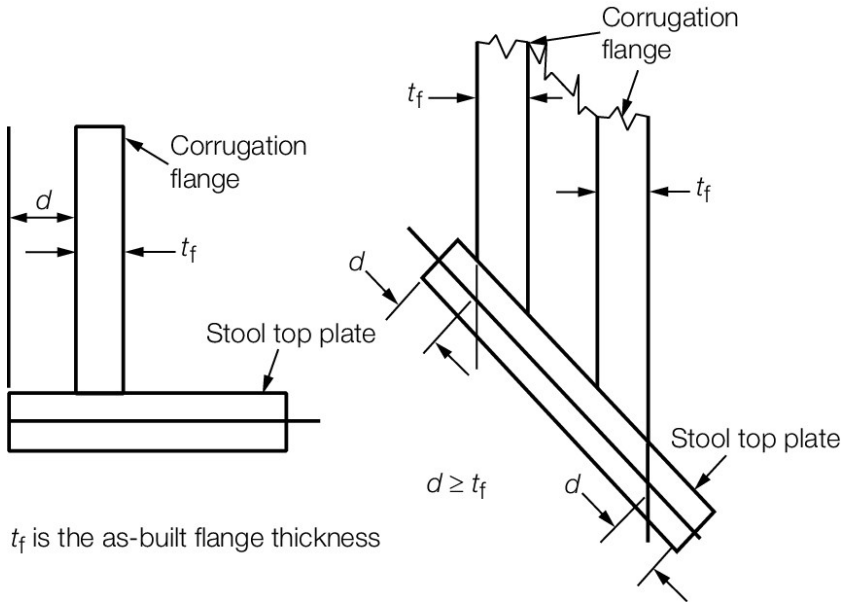
10. 6. 2 **Lower stool**:

a. The height of the lower stool is generally to be not less than three times the depth of the corrugations.

b. The thickness and steel grade of the stool shelf plate are to be not less than those required for the bulkhead plating above.

c. The thickness and steel grade of the upper portion of vertical or sloping stool side plating, within the depth equal to the corrugation flange width from the stool top, are to be not less than the flange plate thickness and steel grade needed to meet the bulkhead requirements at the lower end of the corrugation.
d. The thickness of the stool side plating and the section modulus of the stool side stiffeners are to be not less than those required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 9 Bulkheads for a plane transverse bulkhead and stiffeners using the greater of the pressures determined from the head, h_4, in Table 1. 9. 1: Watertight and deep tank bulkhead scantlings and the expressions given in Table 7. 10. 2: Bulkhead pressure and force.
e. The ends of stool side vertical stiffeners are to be attached to brackets at the upper and lower ends of the stool.
f. The width of the shelf plate is to be in accordance with Figure 7. 10. 8: Width of shelf plate.
g. The stool bottom is to have a width not less than 2.5 times the mean depth of the corrugation.
h. Scallops in the brackets and diaphragms in way of connections to the stool shelf plate are to be avoided.
i. Where corrugations are terminated on the bottom stool, corrugations are to be connected to the stool top plate by full penetration welds. The stool side plating is to be connected to the stool top plate and the inner bottom plating by either full penetration or partial penetration welds, *See* Figure 7. 10. 9: Partial penetration welding. The supporting floors are to be connected to the inner bottom by either full penetration or partial penetration welds.

Figure 7. 10. 8: Width of shelf plate



10. 6. 3 **Upper stool**:

a. The upper stool, where fitted, is to have a height generally between two and three times the depth of corrugations.
b. Rectangular stools are to have a height generally equal to twice the depth of corrugations, measured from the deck level and at hatch side girder.
c. The upper stool is to be properly supported by girders or deep brackets between the adjacent hatch-end beams.
d. The width of the shelf plate is generally to be the same as that of the lower stool shelf plate.
e. The upper end of a non-rectangular stool is to have a width not less than twice the depth of corrugations.

f. The thickness and steel grade of the shelf plate are to be the same as those of the bulkhead plating below.

g. The thickness of the lower portion of stool side plating is to be not less than 80 per cent of that required for the upper part of the bulkhead plating where the same materials are used.

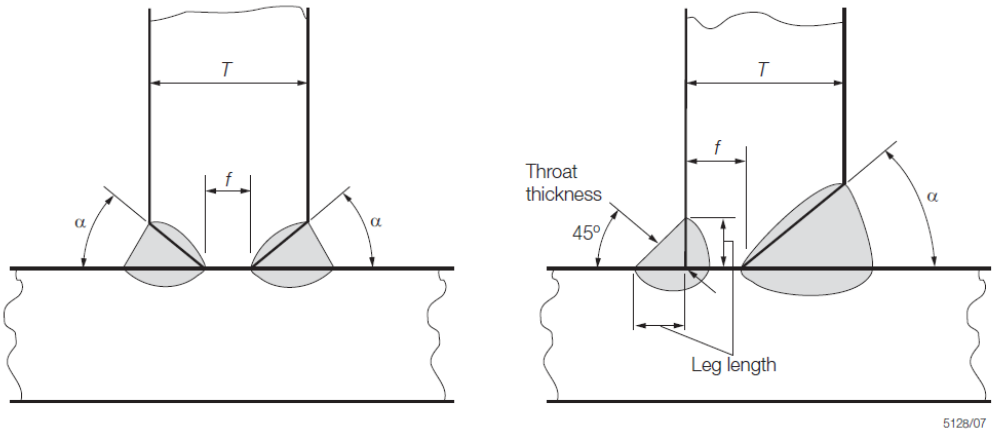
h. The thickness of the stool side plating and the section modulus of the stool side stiffeners are to be not less than those required by Ch 1.9 for plane transverse bulkheads and stiffeners using the greater of the pressures determined from the head, h_4, in Table 1. 9. 1: Watertight and deep tank bulkhead scantlings and the expressions given in Table 7. 10. 2: Bulkhead pressure and force.

i. Where vertical stiffening is fitted, the ends of stool side stiffeners are to be attached to brackets at the upper and lower end of the stool.

j. Diaphragms are to be fitted inside the stool, in line with, and effectively attached to, longitudinal deck girders extending to the hatch end coaming girders for effective support of the corrugated bulkhead.

k. Scallops in the brackets and diaphragms in way of the connection to the stool shelf plate are to be avoided.

Figure 7. 10. 9: Partial penetration welding



Root face f = 3 mm to $T/3$ mm
Groove angle α = 40 to 60
Throat thickness = } See Pt 3, Ch 10
Leg length = }

10. 6. 4 If no upper stool is fitted, two transverse reinforced beams are to be fitted in line with the corrugation flanges.

10. 6. 5 If no bottom stool is fitted, the corrugation flanges are to be in line with the supporting floors. Corrugations are to be connected to the inner bottom plating by full penetration welds. The thickness and steel grades of the supporting floors are to be at least equal to those provided for the corrugation flanges. The plating of supporting floors is to be connected to the inner bottom by either full penetration or deep penetration welds, *See* . The cut-outs for connections of the inner bottom longitudinals to double bottom floors are to be closed by collar plates. The supporting floors are to be connected to each other by suitably designed shear plates.

10. 6. 6 Stool side plating is to align with the corrugation flanges. Stool side vertical stiffeners and their brackets in the lower stool are to align with the inner bottom longitudinals to provide appropriate load transmission between these stiffening members. The lower stool side plating is not to be knuckled.

10. 6. 7 The design of local details is to take into account the transfer of the bulkhead forces and moments to the boundary structures and particularly to the double bottom and cross-deck structures.

PART

4

CHAPTER **7 Bulk Carriers**

SECTION **11 Direct calculation**

11. 1 Application

11. 1. 1 Direct calculations are to be employed in derivation of scantlings where required by the preceding Sections of this Chapter or by related provisions included in Pt 3 Ship Structures (General).

11. 1. 2 Direct calculation methods are also generally to be used where additional calculations are required by the Rules in respect of unusual structural arrangements.

11. 2 Procedures

11. 2. 1 For details of ACS's direct calculation procedures *See* Pt 3, Ch 1, 2 Direct calculations. For requirements concerning use of other calculation procedures, *See* Pt 3, Ch 1, 3 Equivalents.

PART

4

CHAPTER **7 Bulk Carriers**

SECTION **12 Steel hatch covers**

12. 1 General

12. 1. 1 These requirements apply to hatch covers on exposed decks in Position 1, *See* Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.6 Position 1 and Position 2 6.6.1, and are in addition to the following requirements:

a. Pt 3, Ch 11, 4.2 Steel covers − Clamped and gasketed 4.2.14, Pt 3, Ch 11, 4.2 Steel covers − Clamped and gasketed 4.2.16, Pt 3, Ch 11, 4.2 Steel covers − Clamped and gasketed 4.2.17, Pt 3, Ch 11, 4.2 Steel covers − Clamped and gasketed 4.2.25, Pt 3, Ch 11, 4.2 Steel covers − Clamped and gasketed 4.2.27, and Pt 3, Ch 11, 4.2 Steel covers − Clamped and gasketed 4.2.29.

b. Pt 3, Ch 11, 4.2 Steel covers − Clamped and gasketed 4.2.5 for the vertical weather pressure load case and cargo load, if carried on the hatch covers.
Note When cargo is carried on the hatch covers, Pt 3, Ch 11, 4.2 Steel covers − Clamped and gasketed 4.2.8 to Pt 3, Ch 11, 4.2 Steel covers − Clamped and gasketed 4.2.10 are also to be complied with. Cargo loads are to be in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.3 Load model 2.3.4 and Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.3 Load model 2.3.5. Pt 4, Ch 8, 11.2, Direct calculations is to be considered for compliance with Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.4 Allowable stress and deflection 2.4.1, Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.4 Allowable stress and deflection 2.4.2, Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.5 Local net plate thickness 2.5.1, Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.8 Net scantling of secondary stiffeners 2.8.1, Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.8 Net scantling of secondary stiffeners 2.8.4, Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.8 Net scantling of secondary stiffeners 2.8.5, Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.9 Net scantling of primary supporting members 2.9.1 and Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.9 Net scantling of primary supporting members 2.9.2. The vertical weather design load needs not to be combined with the cargo load.

c. For hatch covers subject to wheel loading or helicopter landing, Pt 3, Ch 9, 3 Decks loaded by wheeled vehicles and Pt 3, Ch 9, 5 Helicopter landing areas are to be complied with.

12. 1. 2 The net plate thickness, t_{net}, is the calculated minimum thickness of the plating and stiffeners. The required thickness is the net thickness plus a corrosion addition, t_c, given in Table 7. 12. 1: Corrosion addition tc.

Table 7. 12. 1: Corrosion addition t_c

Hatch cover type	t_c, in mm
(a) Single skin	2.0
(b) Pontoon (double skin)	
(i) for the top and bottom plating	2.0
(ii) for the internal structures	1.5

12. 1. 3 Material for the hatch covers is to be steel according to the requirements for ship's hull.

12. 2 Stiffener arrangement

12. 2. 1 The secondary stiffeners and primary supporting members of the hatch covers are to be continuous over the breadth and length of the hatch covers, as far as practical. When this is impractical, sniped end connections are not to be used and appropriate arrangements are to be adopted to ensure sufficient load carrying capacity.

12. 2. 2 The spacing of primary supporting members parallel to the direction of secondary stiffeners is not to exceed $\frac{1}{3}$ of the span of primary supporting members.

12. 3 Closing arrangements

12. 3. 1 Panel hatch covers are to be secured by appropriate devices (bolts, wedges or similar) suitably spaced alongside the coamings and between cover elements.

12. 3. 2 Arrangement and spacing are to be determined with due attention to the effectiveness for weather-tightness, depending upon the type and the size of the hatch cover, as well as on the stiffness of the cover edges between the securing devices.

12. 3. 3 The net sectional area of each securing device is not to be less than:

$$A = 1.4a/f \text{ cm}^2$$

Where

a = spacing in m of securing devices, not being taken less than 2 m

f = $(\sigma_Y/235)^e$

σ_Y = specified minimum upper yield stress in N/mm^2 of the steel used for fabrication, not to be taken greater than 70 per cent of the ultimate tensile strength

e = 0.75 for $\sigma_Y > 235$

= 1.0 for $\sigma_Y \leq 235$

12. 3. 4 Rods or bolts are to have a net diameter not less than 19 mm for hatchways exceeding 5 m^2 in area.

12. 3. 5 Between cover and coaming and at cross-joints, a packing line force sufficient to obtain weathertightness is to be maintained by the securing devices. For packing line forces exceeding 5 N/mm, the cross section area is to be increased in direct proportion. The packing line force is to be specified.

12. 3. 6 The cover edge stiffness is to be sufficient to maintain adequate sealing pressure between securing devices. The moment of inertia, $\boldsymbol{I}$, of edge elements is not to be less than:

$$I = 6pa^4 \text{ cm}^4$$

Where

p = packing line pressure in N/mm, minimum 5 N/mm

a = spacing in m of securing devices.

12. 3. 7 Securing devices are to be of reliable construction and securely attached to the hatchway coamings, decks or covers. Individual securing devices on each cover are to have approximately the same stiffness characteristics.

12. 3. 8 Where rod cleats are fitted, resilient washers or cushions are to be incorporated.

12. 3. 9 Where hydraulic cleating is adopted, a positive means is to be provided to ensure that it remains mechanically locked in the closed position in the event of failure of the hydraulic system.

12. 3. 10 Hatch covers are to be effectively secured, by means of stoppers, against transverse and longitudinal forces (acting on the forward end) arising from a pressure of 175 kN/m^2.

12. 3. 11 The equivalent stress:

- in stoppers and their supporting structures; and
- calculated in the throat of the stopper welds; is not to exceed the allowable value of $0.8\sigma_Y$.

12. 4 Load model

12. 4. 1 The pressure, p, in kN/m^2, acting on the hatch covers is given by:

a. For ships of length 100 m or greater, for hatchways located on the freeboard deck, p is to be the greater of 34.3 or the following:

$$p = 34.3 + \frac{p_{FP} - 34.3}{0.25}\left(0.25 - \frac{x}{L}\right)$$

Where a hatchway is located in position 1 and at least one superstructure standard height higher than the freeboard deck, the pressure p may be 34.3 kN/m^2.

b. For ships less than 100 m in length, for hatchways located at the freeboard deck, p is to be the greater of $0.195L + 14.9$ or the following:

$$p = 15.8 + \frac{L}{3}\left(1 - \frac{5}{3}\frac{x}{L}\right) - 3.6\frac{x}{L}$$

Where two or more panels are connected by hinges, each individual panel is to be considered separately.

p_{FP} = pressure at the forward perpendicular

Where

$= 49.1 + (L - 100)a$

a = 0.0726 for type B freeboard ships

= 0.356 for ships with reduced freeboard

L = Freeboard length, in metres, as defined in *Regulation 3 - Definitions of terms used in the Annexes* of Annex I to the 1966 Load Line Convention as modified by the Protocol of 1988, to be taken not greater than 340 m

x = distance, in metres, of the mid length of the hatch cover under examination from the forward end of L.

c. For weather deck covers for holds which may be flooded and used as ballast tanks and holds in OBO, ore or oil and similar types of ship, the pressure p, in kN/m^2, due to the internal load for a member and position under consideration is to be taken as:

$p = 5.53Y\sin\ q\text{kN/m}^2$

Where

$$\sin q = \left(0.45 + \frac{L}{10B}\right)\left(0.54 - \frac{L}{1270}\right)$$

q = roll angle, in degrees, but need not exceed 25° and is not to be taken as less than 22°

Y = transverse distance, in metres, from the side coaming at the coaming top to the member and position under consideration. Both sides of roll are to be considered.

In way of holds for oil cargo, a load equivalent to the inert gas pressure is to be applied over the full breadth of the cover and added to the load corresponding to the liquid pressure. However, where the rolling angle has been determined by direct calculations, the load may be derived accordingly.

12. 5 Allowable stress

12. 5. 1 The normal and shear stresses calculated for the net section hatch cover structures are not to exceed the values given in Table 7. 12. 2: Permissible stresses.

Table 7. 12. 2: Permissible stresses

Failure mode	Permissible stress, in N/mm^2
Bending	σ_a = . $0.80\sigma_F$
Shear	τ_a = $0.46\sigma_F$
Symbols	
σ_F	= minimum upper yield stress, in N/mm^2

12. 5. 2 The normal stress in compression of the attached flange of primary supporting members is not to exceed 0.8 times the critical buckling stress of the structure according to the buckling check as given in Pt 4, Ch 7, 12.10 Hatch cover plating, Pt 4, Ch 7, 12.11 Hatch cover secondary stiffeners and Pt 4, Ch 7, 12.12 Web panels of hatch cover primary supporting members.

12. 5. 3 The stresses in hatch covers that are designed as a grillage of longitudinal and transverse primary supporting members are to be determined by a grillage or a FE analysis. When such an analysis is used the secondary stiffeners are not to be included in the attached flange area of the primary members.

12. 5. 4 When calculating the stresses σ and τ as defined in Table 7. 12. 2: Permissible stresses, the net scantlings are to be used.

12. 6 Effective cross-sectional area of panel flanges for primary supporting members

12. 6. 1 The effective flange area, A_f, in cm^2, of the attached plating, to be considered for the yielding and buckling checks of primary supporting members, when calculated by means of a beam or grillage model, is obtained as the sum of the effective flange areas of each side of the girder web as appropriate:

$$A_f = \sum_{nf} \left(10 b_{ef} t\right)$$

Where

nf = 2 if attached plate flange extends on both sides of girder web

= 1 if attached plate flange extends on one side of girder web only

t = net thickness of considered attached plate, in mm

b_{ef} = effective breadth of attached plate flange on each side of girder web, in metres

= b_p, but not to be taken greater than 0.165ℓ

b_p = half distance between the considered primary supporting member and the adjacent one, in metres

l = span of primary supporting members, in metres.

12. 7 Local net plate thickness

12. 7. 1 The local net plate thickness of the hatch cover top plating is to be not less than:

$$t = F_p 15.8s\sqrt{\frac{p}{0.95\sigma_F}}$$

or 1 per cent of the spacing of the stiffeners or 6 mm, whichever is greater

Where

F_p = factor for combined membrane and bending response

= 1.50 in general

= $1.90\sigma/\sigma_a$, where $\sigma/\sigma_a \geq 0.8$, for the attached plate flange of primary supporting members

s = stiffener spacing, in metres

p = pressure, in kN/m^2, as defined in Pt 4, Ch 7, 12.4 Load model

σ = as defined in Pt 4, Ch 7, 12.9 Net scantlings of primary supporting members

σ_a = as defined in Pt 4, Ch 7, 12.5 Allowable stress.

12. 7. 2 For double skin hatch covers, when the lower plating is taken into account as a strength member of the hatch cover, the local net plate thickness of the hatch cover bottom plating is to be not less than:

t = $6.5s$ mm, or

t = 5.0 mm, whichever is the greater

Where

s = stiffener spacing, in metres.

12. 8 Net scantlings of secondary stiffeners

12. 8. 1 The required minimum section modulus, Z, in cm^3, of secondary stiffeners of the hatch cover top plate, based on stiffener net member thickness, is given by:

$$Z = \frac{1000 l^2 sp}{12\sigma_a}$$

Where

l = secondary stiffener span, in metres, to be taken as the spacing, in metres, of primary supporting members or the distance between a primary supporting member and the edge support, as applicable. When brackets are fitted at both ends of all secondary stiffener spans, the secondary stiffener span may be reduced by an amount equal to $\frac{2}{3}$ of the minimum bracket arm length, but not greater than 10 per cent of the gross span, for each bracket

s = secondary stiffener spacing, in metres

p = pressure, in kN/m^2, as defined in Pt 4, Ch 7, 12.4 Load model

σ_a = as defined in Pt 4, Ch 7, 12.5 Allowable stress.

12. 8. 2 The net section modulus of the secondary stiffeners is to be determined based on an attached plate width assumed equal to the stiffener spacing.

12. 9 Net scantlings of primary supporting members

12. 9. 1 The section modulus and web thickness of primary supporting members, based on member net thickness, are to be such that the normal stress σ in both flanges and the shear stress τ, in the web, do not exceed the allowable values σ_a and τ_a, respectively, defined in Pt 4, Ch 7, 12.5 Allowable stress.

12. 9. 2 The breadth of the primary supporting member flange is to be not less than 40 per cent of their depth for laterally unsupported spans greater than 3.0 m. Tripping brackets attached to the flange may be considered as a lateral support for primary supporting members.

12. 9. 3 The flange outstand is not to exceed 15 times the flange thickness.

12. 10 Hatch cover plating

12. 10. 1 The compressive stress, σ, in N/mm^2, in the hatch cover plate panels, induced by the bending of primary supporting members parallel to the direction of secondary stiffeners, is not to exceed 0.8 times the critical buckling stress σ_{C1}, to be evaluated as defined below:

$\sigma_{C1} = \sigma_{E1}$ when $\sigma_{E1} \leq \sigma_F/2$

$= \sigma_F[1 - \sigma_F/(4\sigma_{E1})]$ when $\sigma_{E1} > \sigma_F/2$

Where

σ_F = minimum upper yield stress, in N/mm^2, of the material

$\sigma_{E1} = 3.6E\left(\frac{t}{1000_s}\right)^2$

E = modulus of elasticity, in N/mm^2

$= 2.06 \times 10^5$ for steel

t = net thickness, in mm, of plate panel

s = spacing of secondary stiffeners, in metres

12. 10. 2 The mean compressive stress σ in each of the hatch cover plate panels, induced by the bending of primary supporting members perpendicular to the direction of secondary stiffeners, is not to exceed 0.8 times the critical buckling stress σ_{C2}, to be evaluated as defined below:

$\sigma_{C2} = \sigma_{E2}$ when $\sigma_{E2} \leq \sigma_F/2$

$= \sigma_F[1 - \sigma_F/(4\sigma_{E2})]$ when $\sigma_{E2} > \sigma_F/2$

Where

σ_F = minimum upper yield stress, in N/mm^2, of the material

σ_{E2} = $0.9mE\left(\frac{t}{1000s_s}\right)^2$

m = $c\left[1+\left(\frac{S_s}{l_s}\right)^2\right)\right]^2 \frac{2.1}{\psi+1.1}$

E = modulus of elasticity, in N/mm^2

= 2.06×10^5 for steel

t = net thickness of plate panel, in mm

s_s = length of the shorter side of the plate panel, in metres

l_s = length of the longer side of the plate panel, in metres

Ψ = ratio between smallest and largest compressive stress

c = 1.3 when plating is stiffened by primary supporting members

= 1.21 when plating is stiffened by secondary stiffeners of angle or T type

= 1.1 when plating is stiffened by secondary stiffeners of bulb type

= 1.05 when plating is stiffened by flat bar.

12. 10. 3 The biaxial compressive stress in the hatch cover panels, when calculated by means of FEM shell element model, is to comply with Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.11 Buckling strength of hatch cover structures 2.11.2, using S=1.25.

12. 11 Hatch cover secondary stiffeners

12. 11. 1 The compressive stress σ, in N/mm^2, in the top flange of secondary stiffeners, induced by the bending of primary supporting members parallel to the direction of secondary stiffeners, is not to exceed 0.8 times the critical buckling stress σ_{CS}, to be evaluated as defined below:

$\sigma_{CS} = \sigma_{ES}$ when $\sigma_{ES} \leq \sigma_F/2$

$= \sigma_F[1 - \sigma_F/(4\sigma_{ES})]$ when $\sigma_{ES} > \sigma_F/2$

Where

σ_F = minimum upper yield stress, in N/mm^2, of the material

σ_{ES} = ideal elastic buckling stress, in N/mm^2, of the secondary stiffener

= minimum between σ_{E3} and σ_{E4}

σ_{E3} = $0.001EI_a/(Al^2)$

E = modulus of elasticity, in N/mm^2

= 2.06x10^5 for steel

I_a = moment of inertia of the secondary stiffener, including a top flange equal to the spacing of secondary stiffeners, in cm^4

A = cross-sectional area of the secondary stiffener, including a top flange equal to the spacing of secondary stiffeners, in cm^2

l = span of the secondary stiffener, in metres

σ_{E4} = $\frac{\pi^2 EI_w}{10^4 I_p l^2}\left(m^2 + \frac{K}{m^2}\right) + 0.385E\frac{I_t}{I_p}$

K = $\frac{Cl^4}{\pi^4 EI_w}10^6$ m

m = number of half waves, given in Table 7. 12. 3: Number of half waves

I_w = sectorial moment of inertia (warping constant) of the secondary stiffener about its connection with the plating, in cm^6

= $\frac{h_w^3 t_w^3}{36}10^{-6}$ for flat bar secondary stiffeners

= $\frac{t_f b_f^3 h_w^2}{12}10^{-6}$ 'Tee' secondary stiffeners

= $\frac{b_f h^2 w^3}{12(b_f+h_w)^2}[t_f(b_f^2 + 2b_f h_w + 4h_w^2) + 3t_w b_f h_w]10^{-6}$

= for angles and bulb secondary stiffeners

I_p = polar moment of inertia of the secondary stiffener about its connection with the plating, in cm^4

= $\frac{h_w^3 t_w}{3}10^{-4}$ for flat bar secondary stiffeners

= $\left(\frac{h_w^3 t_w}{3} + h_w^2 b_f t_f\right)10^{-4}$

= for flanged secondary stiffeners

I_t = St.Venant's moment of inertia of the secondary stiffener without top flange, in cm^4

= $\frac{h_w^3 t_w}{3} 10^{-4}$ for flat secondary stiffeners

= $\frac{1}{3}\left[h_w t_w^3 + b_f t_f^3 \left(1 - 0.63\frac{t_f}{b_f}\right)\right] 10^{-4}$

= for flanged secondary stiffeners

h_w, t_w = height and net thickness of the secondary stiffener, respectively, in mm

b_f, t_f = width and net thickness of the secondary stiffener bottom flange, respectively, in mm

s = spacing of secondary stiffeners, in metres

C = spring stiffness exerted by the hatch cover top plating

= $\frac{k_p E t_p^3}{3s\left[1 + \frac{1.33 k_p h_w t_p^3}{1000 s t_w^3}\right]} 10^{-3}$

k_p = $1-\eta_p$ to be taken not less than zero; for flanged secondary stiffeners, k_p need not be taken less than 0.1

η_p = $\frac{\sigma}{\sigma_{E1}}$

σ = as defined in Pt 4, Ch 7, 12.9 Net scantlings of primary supporting members

σ_{E1} = as defined in Pt 4, Ch 7, 12.10 Hatch cover plating

t_p = net thickness of the hatch cover plate panel, in mm.

Table 7. 12. 3: Number of half waves

K	m
$0 < K < 4$	1
$4 < K < 36$	2
$36 < K < 144$	3
$(m-1)^2 m^2 < K \leq m^2 (m+1)^2$	m

12. 11. 2 For flat bar secondary stiffeners and buckling stiffeners, the ratio h/t_w is to be not greater than $15k^{0.5}$

h, t_w = height and net thickness of the stiffener, respectively

k = $235/\sigma_F$

σ_F = minimum upper yield stress, in N/mm^2, of the material.

12. 12 Web panels of hatch cover primary supporting members

12. 12. 1 This check is to be carried out for the web panels of primary supporting members formed by web stiffeners or by the crossing with other primary supporting members, the face plate (or the bottom cover plate) or the attached top cover plate.

12. 12. 2 The shear stress τ in the hatch cover primary supporting members web panels is not to exceed 0.8 times the critical buckling stress τ_C, to be evaluated as defined below:

$\tau_C = \tau_E$ when $\tau_E \leq \tau_F/2$

$= \tau_F[1 - \tau_F/(4\tau_E)]$ when $\tau_E > \tau_F/2$

Where

σ_F = minimum upper yield stress of the material, in N/mm^2

τ_F = $\dfrac{\sigma_F}{\sqrt{3}}$

τ_E = $0.9k_tE\left(\dfrac{t_{pr,n}}{1000d}\right)^2$

E = modulus of elasticity, in N/mm^2

= 2.06×10^5 for steel

$t_{pr,n}$ = net thickness of primary supporting member, in mm

k_t = $5.35 + 4.0/(a/d)^2$

a = greater dimension of web panel of primary supporting member, in metres

d = smaller dimension of web panel of primary supporting member, in metres.

12. 12. 3 For primary supporting members parallel to the direction of secondary stiffeners, the actual dimensions of the panels are to be considered.

12. 12. 4 For primary supporting members perpendicular to the direction of secondary stiffeners or for hatch covers built without secondary stiffeners, a presumed square panel of dimension d is to be taken for the determination of the stress τ_C. In such a case, the average shear stress τ between the values calculated at the ends of this panel is to be considered.

12. 13 Deflection limit and connections between hatch cover panel

12. 13. 1 Load bearing connections between the hatch cover panels are to be fitted with the purpose of restricting the relative vertical displacements.

12. 13. 2 The vertical deflection of primary supporting members is to be not more than $0.0056l$, where l is the greatest span of primary supporting members.

PART

4

CHAPTER **7** **Bulk Carriers**

SECTION **13** **Hatch coamings**

13. 1 General

13. 1. 1 The height and construction of forward and side hatch coamings are to comply with the following requirements. All hatch coamings are to comply with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 11, 5.1 General 5.1.1, Pt 3, Ch 11, 5.1 General 5.1.4, Pt 3, Ch 11, 5.2, Construction 5.2.1, Pt 3, Ch 11, 5.2 Construction 5.2.2, Pt 3, Ch 11, 5.2 Construction 5.2.4 to Pt 3, Ch 11, 5.2 Construction 5.2.12, Pt 3, Ch 11, 5.2 Construction 5.2.16 to Pt 3, Ch 11, 5.2 Construction 5.2.18 and Pt 3, Ch 11, 5.4 Rest bars in hatchways 5.4.1.

13. 1. 2 For the structure of hatch coamings and coaming stays, the corrosion addition t_c is to be 1.5 mm.

13. 1. 3 Material for the hatch coamings is to be steel according to the requirements for the ship's hull.

13. 1. 4 The secondary stiffeners of the hatch coamings are to be continuous over the breadth and length of the hatch coamings.

13. 2 Load model

13. 2. 1 The pressure p_{coam}, on hatch coamings is to be taken as 220 kN/m^2.

13. 3 Local net plate thickness

13. 3. 1 The local net plate thickness, t, in mm, of the hatch coaming plating is to be the greater of 9.5 mm or the following:

$$t = 14.9s\sqrt{\frac{p_{\text{coum}}}{\sigma_{\text{a, coam}}}}S_{\text{coam}}$$

Where

s = secondary stiffener spacing, in metres

P_{coam} = pressure, in kN/m^2, as defined in Pt 4, Ch 7, 13.2 Load model 13.2.1

S_{coam} = safety factor to be taken equal to 1.15

$\sigma_{a,coam}$ = $0.95\sigma_F$.

σ_F = minimum upper yield stress, in N/mm^2, of the material.

13. 4 Net scantlings of longitudinal and transverse secondary stiffeners

13. 4. 1 The required section modulus, Z, in cm^3, of the longitudinal or transverse secondary stiffeners of the hatch coamings, based on net member thickness, is given by:

$$Z = \frac{1000 S_{coam} l^2 s p_{coam}}{m c_p \sigma_{a,coam}}$$

Where

m = 16 in general

= 12 for the end spans of stiffeners sniped at the coaming corners

S_{coam} = safety factor to be taken equal to 1.15

l = span of secondary stiffeners, in metres

s = spacing of secondary stiffeners, in metres

p_{coam} = pressure in kN/m^2 as defined in Pt 4, Ch 7, 13.2 Load model 13.2.1

c_p = ratio of the plastic section modulus to the elastic section modulus of the secondary stiffeners with an attached plate breadth equal to 40t, where t is the plate net thickness, in mm

= 1.16 in the absence of more precise evaluation

$\sigma_{a,coam}$ = $0.95\sigma_F$

σ_F = minimum upper yield stress, in N/mm^2, of the material.

13. 5 Net scantlings of coaming stays

13. 5. 1 The required minimum section modulus, Z, in cm^3, and web thickness, t_w, in mm of coaming stays designed as beams with flange connected to the deck or sniped and fitted with a bracket (*See* Figure 7. 13. 1: Typical coaming stays, Type A and B) at their connection with the deck, based on member net thickness, are given by:

$$Z = \frac{1000 H_c^2 s p_{coam}}{2\sigma_{a,coam}}$$

$$t_w = \frac{1000 H_c^s p_{coum}}{h\tau_{a,coam}}$$

Where

H_C = stay height, in metres

s = stay spacing, in metres

h = stay depth at the connection with the deck, in mm

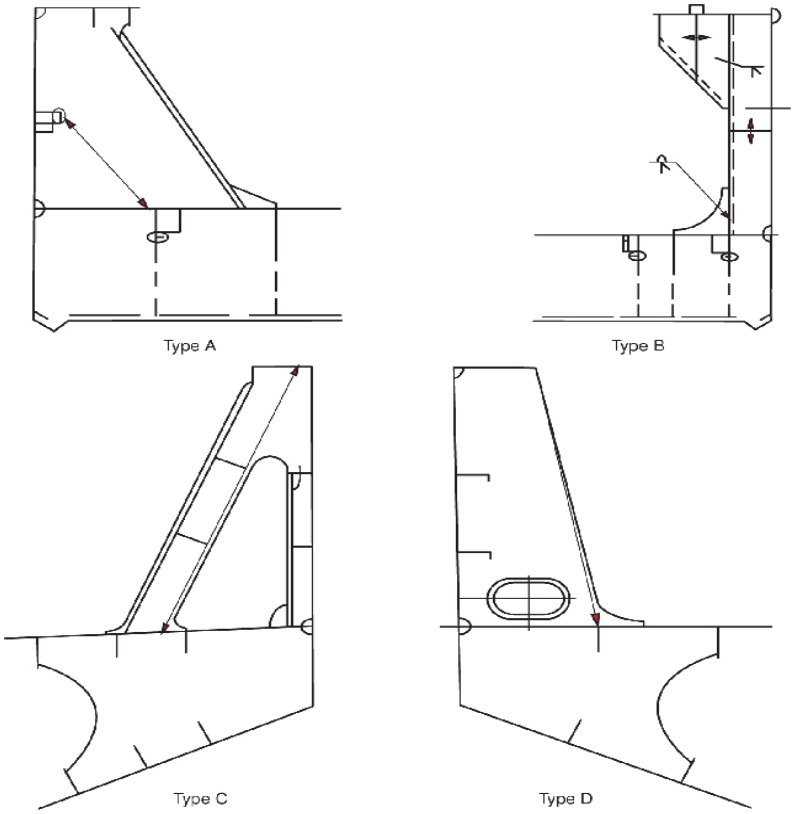
p_{coam} = pressure, in kN/m^2, as defined in Pt 4, Ch 7, 13.2 Load model 13.2.1

$\sigma_{a,coam}$ = $0.95\sigma_F$

$t_{a,coam}$ = $0.5\sigma_F$

σ_F = minimum upper yield stress, in N/mm^2, of the material.

Figure 7. 13. 1: Typical coaming stays



13. 5. 2 For calculating the section modulus of coaming stays, their face plate area is to be taken into account only when it is welded with full penetration welds to the deck plating and adequate underdeck structure is fitted to support the stresses transmitted by it.

13. 5. 3 For other designs of coaming stays, such as those shown in Figure 7. 13. 1: Typical coaming stays Type C and D, the stress levels in 12.5 apply and are to be checked at the highest stressed locations.

13. 6 Local details

13. 6. 1 The design of local details is to comply with Pt 3, Ch 11, 5 Hatch coamings for the purpose of transferring the pressures on the hatch covers to the hatch coamings and, through them, to the deck structures below. Hatch coamings and supporting structures are to be adequately stiffened to accommodate the loading from hatch covers, in longitudinal, transverse and vertical directions.

13. 6. 2 Underdeck structures are to be checked against the load transmitted by the stays, adopting the same allowable stresses specified in Pt 4, Ch 7, 13.5 Net scantlings of coaming stays 13.5.1.

13. 6. 3 Double continuous welding is to be adopted for the connections of stay webs with deck plating and the weld throat is to be not less than $0.44t_W$, where t_W is the gross thickness of the stay web.

13. 6. 4 Toes of stay webs are to be connected to the deck plating with deep penetration double bevel welds extending over a distance not less than 15 per cent of the stay width.

PART

4

CHAPTER **7** **Bulk Carriers**

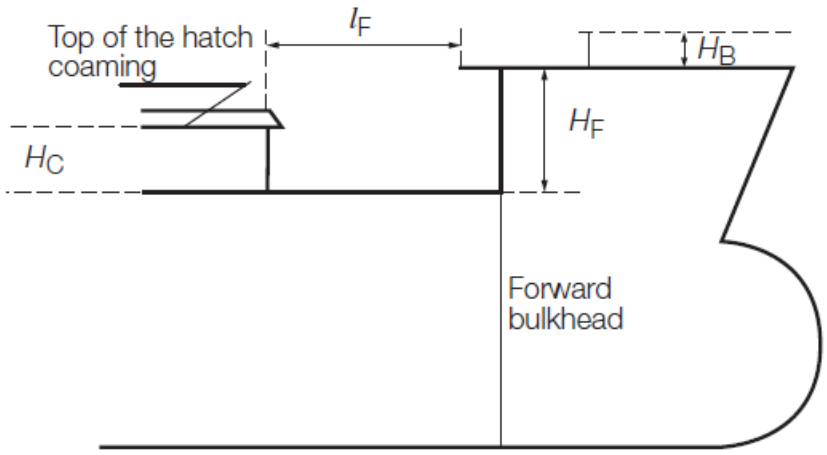
SECTION **14** **Forecastles**

14. 1 Arrangement

14. 1. 1 An enclosed forecastle is to be fitted on the freeboard deck.

14. 1. 2 The aft bulkhead of the forecastle is to be fitted in way or aft of the forward bulkhead in the foremost cargo hold. *See* Figure 7. 14. 1: Forecastle arrangement. However, if this requirement hinders hatch cover operation, the aft bulkhead of the forecastle may be fitted forward of the forward bulkhead of the foremost cargo hold provided the forecastle length is not less than 7 per cent of ship length abaft the forward perpendicular where the ship length and forward perpendicular are defined in the *International Convention on Load Lines 1966* and its Protocol of 1988.

Figure 7. 14. 1: Forecastle arrangement



14. 1. 3 The forecastle height H_F, in metres, above the main deck is to be not less than the greater of:

- the standard height of a superstructure as specified in the *Load Lines, 1966/1988 - International Convention on Load Lines, 1966, as Amended by the Protocol of 1988* ; or
- H_C+0.5 m

14. 1. 4 All points of the aft edge of the forecastle deck are to be located at a distance:

$$l_f < 5\sqrt{(H_F - H_C)}$$

from the hatch coaming, *See* Figure 7. 14. 1: Forecastle arrangement.

14. 1. 5 A breakwater is not to be fitted on the forecastle deck with the purpose of protecting the hatch coaming or hatch covers. If fitted for other purposes, it is to be located such that its upper edge at centre line is not less than:

$$H_B/\tan\ 20^\circ$$

forward of the aft edge of the forecastle deck.

Where

H_B = the height, in metres, of the breakwater above the forecastle, *See*Figure 7. 14. 1: Forecastle arrangement.

14. 2 Construction

14. 2. 1 The construction of the forecastle is to comply with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 8, 4 Forecastles.

PART

4

CHAPTER **8 Container Ships**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**1731**
	1. 1	Application and definitions	1731
	1. 2	Structural configuration	1732
	1. 3	Class notations	1732
	1. 4	Information required	1732
	1. 5	Symbols and definitions	1733
SECTION 2	**Materials**		**1734**
	2. 1	Materials	1734
	2. 2	Protection of steelwork	1734
	2. 3	Requirements for use of thick steel plates	1734
SECTION 3	**Longitudinal strength**		**1739**
	3. 1	General	1739
	3. 2	Longitudinal strength	1739
	3. 3	Combined longitudinal and torsional strength	1739
SECTION 4	**Deck structure**		**1740**
	4. 1	General	1740
	4. 2	Primary supporting structure	1740
	4. 3	Deck plating and stiffeners	1740
	4. 4	Cross decks	1740
	4. 5	Deck openings	1741
	4. 6	Local reinforcement	1741
	4. 7	Support for container corner seats	1742
SECTION 5	**Shell envelope plating**		**1743**
	5. 1	General	1743
	5. 2	Bottom shell and bilge	1743
	5. 3	Side shell and sheerstrake	1743

SECTION 6 Shell envelope framing 1744
6. 1 General 1744
6. 2 Side shell primary supporting structure 1744
6. 3 Side stringers in double skin construction 1744
6. 4 Transverse webs in double skin construction 1744
6. 5 Minimum thickness of transverse webs/side stringers in double skin construction 1745
SECTION 7 Double bottom structure 1746
7. 1 General 1746
7. 2 Double bottom primary supporting structure 1746
7. 3 Inner bottom plating and stiffening 1746
7. 4 Girders 1746
7. 5 Floors 1747
7. 6 Support for containers 1747
SECTION 8 Longitudinal bulkheads 1749
8. 1 General 1749
8. 2 Side shell primary supporting structure 1749
8. 3 Plating and stiffeners 1749
8. 4 Support for container corner seats 1749
SECTION 9 Transverse bulkheads 1750
9. 1 General 1750
9. 2 Transverse watertight/non-watertight bulkhead primary supporting structure 1750
9. 3 Transverse watertight bulkheads 1750
9. 4 Transverse non-watertight mid-hold bulkheads 1750
SECTION 10 Hatch coamings and support for hatch covers 1751
10. 1 Hatch coamings 1751
10. 2 Support for inboard edges of hatch covers by girders 1751
10. 3 Support for hatch cover fittings 1751
SECTION 11 Hatch covers 1753
11. 1 General 1753
11. 2 Direct calculations 1753
11. 3 Dispensation of weathertight gaskets 1756
11. 4 Omission of hatch covers 1757
SECTION 12 Strengthening for wave impact loads 1758
12. 1 General 1758

SECTION 13 Container stowage systems 1761
13. 1 Cell guide systems 1761
13. 2 Stowage on decks/hatch covers 1761
13. 3 Ergonomic container lashing 1761
SECTION 14 Direct calculation 1762
14. 1 Procedures for calculation of combined longitudinal and torsional strength 1762
14. 2 Procedures for verification of primary structure scantlings 1762
14. 3 Procedures for verification of structural response due to whipping, springing and fatigue 1762
SECTION 15 Requirements for ships with large deck openings 1765
15. 1 Application 1765
15. 2 Symbols and definitions 1765
15. 3 Design loadings 1765
15. 4 Combined stress 1769
15. 5 Permissible stress 1772
SECTION 16 Longitudinal strength calculations 1774
16. 1 Longitudinal extent of strength assessment 1774
16. 2 Symbols 1774
16. 3 Corrosion margin and net thickness 1775
16. 4 Permissible still water bending moments and shear forces 1778
16. 5 Hull moment of inertia 1778
16. 6 Design vertical wave bending moments 1778
16. 7 Design vertical wave shear force 1780
16. 8 Permissible hull girder stresses 1782
16. 9 Hull girder stresses 1782
16. 10 Buckling strength assessment 1784
16. 11 Hull girder ultimate strength 1787

PART

4

CHAPTER **8 Container Ships**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 8. 2. 1: Preventative measures to be used in design and construction for thick steel plates 1735
Table 8. 4. 1: Cross deck plating 1741
Table 8. 7. 1: Permissible stress values 1747
Table 8. 12. 1: Critical shear buckling stress for web plating of primary support structure 1759
Table 8. 14. 1: Summary of direct calculation analysis requirements for container ships 1763
Table 8. 15. 1: Distribution of wave bending moments 1766
Table 8. 15. 2: Distribution of horizontal wave bending moments and hydrodynamic torques 1767
Table 8. 15. 3: Static cargo torque distribution factor 1769
Table 8. 15. 4: Permissible stress 1772
Table 8. 16. 1: Values of corrosion addition factor 1775
Table 8. 16. 2: Corrosion addition for one side of a structural member 1776
Table 8. 16. 3: Combination of still water and wave bending moments and shear forces 1783
Table 8. 16. 4: Load calculation points (LCP) for plate buckling assessment 1786

PART

4

CHAPTER **8 Container Ships**

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 8. 1. 1: Structural configuration 1731

Figure 8. 2. 1: Upper flange longitudinal structural members 1736

Figure 8. 2. 2: Minimum offset between block-to-block butt welds of the hatch side coaming and those of the upper deck staggered 1737

Figure 8. 2. 3: Crack arrest hole in way of the block-to-block butt weld at the region where hatch side coaming weld meets the deck weld 1738

Figure 8. 11. 1: Forces due to container loads 1754

Figure 8. 11. 2: Partial loading of a container hatch cover 1755

Figure 8. 11. 3: Lifting forces at a hatch cover 1756

Figure 8. 15. 1: Sign conventions for hull girder loads 1767

Figure 8. 15. 2: Combined stress diagram for deck - Oblique sea 1773

Figure 8. 16. 1: Net sectional properties of supporting members 1777

Figure 8. 16. 2: Projected area ADK and vertical distance $_{zf}$ 1779

Figure 8. 16. 3: Distribution of vertical wave bending moment Mw along the ship length 1780

Figure 8. 16. 4: Distribution of vertical shear force Qw along the ship length 1782

Figure 8. 16. 5: Example of failure state limit curve and stress multiplication factor at failure 1785

Figure 8. 16. 6: Load calculation points for plate buckling 1786

Figure 8. 16. 7: Bending moment M versus curvature X 1788

PART

4

CHAPTER **8** **Container Ships**

SECTION **1** **General**

1. 1 Application and definitions

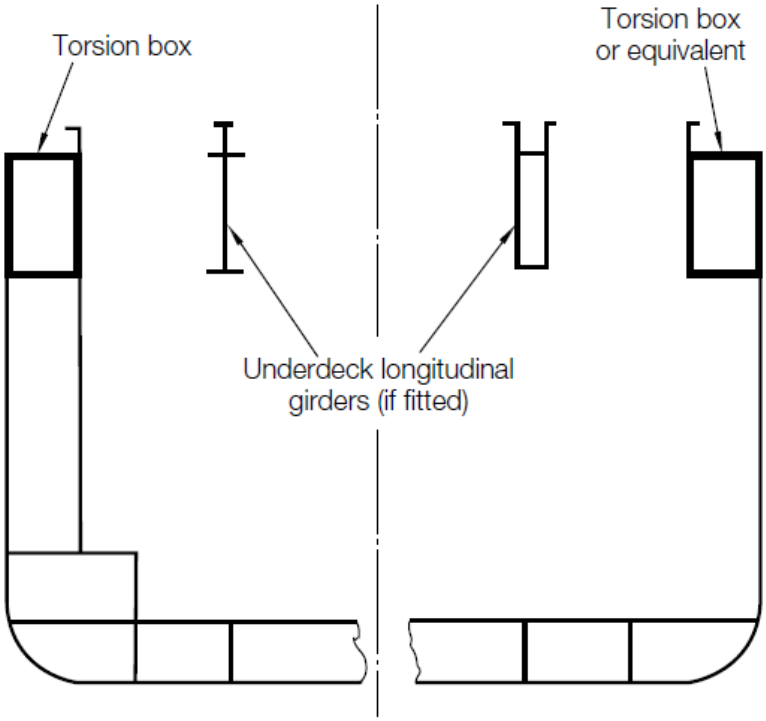
1. 1. 1 A **container ship** is defined as a ship designed exclusively for the carriage of containers in holds and on deck. Containers in holds are normally stowed within cellular guide systems.

1. 1. 2 The term ‘narrow side structures’ applies where the breadth of hatch opening exceeds 90 per cent of the breadth of the ship.

1. 1. 3 Other terms used to describe the various structural components of container ships are generally indicated in *ACSPlus FDA Guideline*, *Structural Detail Design Guide*.

1. 1. 4 Scantlings and arrangements of container ships are to be as required by Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships, except as otherwise indicated in this Chapter.

Figure 8. 1. 1: Structural configuration



1. 2 Structural configuration

1. 2. 1 Figure 8. 1. 1: Structural configuration shows the typical structural configuration of a container ship covered by the requirements of this Chapter. The typical configuration includes:

a. An efficient torsion box girder or equivalent structure at the topsides comprising strength deck, side shell, inner skin and a second deck. The space within the torsion box is often utilised as an underdeck access passageway.
b. Single or double skin side construction with or without bilge box.
c. Double bottom.
d. Continuous or discontinuous hatch coamings.
e. Optional continuous deck girders to support hatch covers.

1. 2. 2 For container ships which do not conform to the above configuration, the application of this Chapter will be specially considered

1. 3 Class notations

1. 3. 1 In general, ships complying with the requirements of this Chapter will be eligible to be classed **100A1 Container Ship**.

1. 3. 2 'ACSPlus Guidelines' for the hull construction of ships are detailed in Pt 3, Ch 16 ACSPlus Guidelines for the Design, Construction and Lifetime Care of Ships and the associated notations and descriptive notes are given in Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.2 Character symbols.

1. 3. 3 The ACSPlus notations **SDA** (Structural Design Assessment) and subsequently **CM** (Construction Monitoring) are mandatory for container ships with a beam greater than 32 m or a length greater than 150 m or where the type, size and structural configuration demand, including container ships with narrow side structures, abnormal hull form or unusual structural configuration or complexity.

1. 3. 4 For large container ships, the effects of whipping and springing on the structural integrity are to be addressed. The ACSPlus notations **WDA** (Whipping Design Assessment) and **FDA SPR** (Springing Fatigue Assessment) are mandatory for ships that meet the application criteria specified in Pt 4, Ch 8, 14.3, Procedures for verification of structural response due to whipping, springing and fatigue, *See also* Table 8. 14. 1: Summary of direct calculation analysis requirements for container ships.

1. 3. 5 The ACSPlus notations **SDA, FDA, FDA SPR, WDA** may be applied on a voluntary basis. In which case all the requirements of the relevant procedures and supporting procedures are to be applied.

1. 4 Information required

1. 4. 1 In addition to the information and plans required by Pt 3, Ch 1, 5 Information required, the following are to be submitted:

a. Details of overlap arrangement of steps in decks and longitudinal bulkheads.
b. Details of outline stowage arrangement of containers.
c. Details of design container stack weights.
d. Details of cell guides and supporting structure indicating the position of guides relative to hatch corners, and attachment to structural members.
e. Details of reinforcement to structure in way of container corners/supports.
f. Details of reinforcement to structure in way of lashing bridges where fitted.
g. Details showing the location of all openings in decks within the cargo holds.
h. Details of longitudinal girders supporting hatch coamings where fitted.
i. Detailed arrangements for crack arrest design, *See* Pt 4, Ch 8, 2.3, Requirements for use of thick steel plates.

1. 5 Symbols and definitions

1. 5. 1 The following symbols and definitions are applicable to this Chapter unless otherwise stated:
L, L_{pp}, B, D, T, V, C_b as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6 Definitions

e = base of natural logarithms, 2.7183

k_L, k = higher tensile steel factor, *See* Pt 3, Ch 2, 1 Materials of construction

s = spacing of secondary stiffeners, in mm

s_1 = spacing of secondary stiffeners, but is not to be taken less than $470 + 1.67L$ mm

t = thickness of plating, in mm

L_1 = L but need not be taken greater than 190 m.

PART

4

CHAPTER **8** **Container Ships**

SECTION **2** **Materials**

2. 1 Materials

2. 1. 1 Materials are to comply with Pt 3, Ch 2 Materials.

2. 1. 2 Attention is drawn to the specific requirements for container ship hatch corners in Table 2. 2. 1: Buckling factors of safety, λ, Note 1 in Pt 3, Ch 2 Materials.

2. 2 Protection of steelwork

2. 2. 1 In addition to the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 2, 3 Corrosion protection the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 2.2 Protection of steelwork 2.2.3 may also be applied.

2. 3 Requirements for use of thick steel plates

2. 3. 1 This Section provides the requirements for crack arrest design to reduce the risk of brittle fractures in container ships where thick steel plates are applied for longitudinal structural members within the cargo hold region.

2. 3. 2 This Section is to be applied to container ships where the steel plates for longitudinal structural members exceed a thickness of 50 mm but are not greater than 100 mm. Special consideration is required for plates with a thickness exceeding 100 mm.

2. 3. 3 This Section applies to plates having specified minimum yield strength of 355, 390 and 460 N/mm^2. Steels and weldments are to comply with the toughness requirements of Ch 3 Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars, Ch 11 Approval of Welding Consumables and Ch 12 Welding Qualifications of Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials.

2. 3. 4 The approach in this Section generally applies to the erection block-to-block joints. Appropriate measures are to be considered to prevent large scale fracture of the hull girder in anticipation of the following:

a. Crack initiation in the block-to-block butt weld joint in either the hatch side coaming or upper deck. Crack propagates along the butt weld joint without deviation.
b. Crack initiation in the block-to-block butt weld joint in either the hatch side coaming or upper deck. Crack propagates away from the butt weld joint running into base metal.
c. Crack initiation in any welded joint, for example in way of attachment welds, and deviates away from the butt weld joint running into base metal.

2. 3. 5 The detailed arrangements for crack arrest design are to be submitted for approval.

2. 3. 6 A number of measures are given in Table 8. 2. 1: Preventative measures to be used in design and construction for thick steel plates which are considered to be acceptable means of addressing the cases given in Pt 4, Ch 8, 2.3,, Requirements for use of thick steel plates 2.3.4. A range of thicknesses is shown for the different strength grades of steel. Where the maximum as-built

thickness of the hatch coaming top plate and side plate falls within this range, measures are to be selected as shown in the Table. If the as-built thickness of the hatch coaming top plate and side plate is below the values contained in the Table, then additional measures are not necessary regardless of the thickness and yield strength of the upper deck plating. The application of these measures is described in Pt 4, Ch 8, 2.3 Requirements for use of thick steel plates 2.3.7 to Pt 4, Ch 8, 2.3 Requirements for use of thick steel plates 2.3.11.

2. 3. 7 Where Measure 1 is required in Table 8. 2. 1: Preventative measures to be used in design and construction for thick steel plates, 100 per cent ultrasonic testing in accordance with Ch 13, 2.12 Non-destructive examination of welds of Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials, both application and acceptance criteria, is to be carried out on all block-to-block butt joints of all upper flange longitudinal structural members in the cargo hold region. Upper flange longitudinal structural members include the topmost strakes of the inner hull/bulkhead, the sheer strake, main deck, coaming plate, coaming top plate, and all attached longitudinal stiffeners. These members are defined in Figure 8. 2. 1: Upper flange longitudinal structural members.

Table 8. 2. 1: Preventative measures to be used in design and construction for thick steel plates

Nominal yield strength (N/mm^2)	Thickness of hatch coaming plating *See* Note 3 (mm)	Measure, *See* Note 1				
		1	2	3	4 *See* Note 2	5 *See* Note 2
355	50<t≤85	Not required	Not required	Not required	Not required	Not required
	85<t≤100	Required	Not required	Not required	Not required	Not required
390	50<t≤85	Required	Not required	Not required	Not required	Not required
	85<t≤100	Required	Required	Required	Not required	Not required
460	50 <t≤85	Required	Required	Required	Not required	Not required
	85<t≤100	Required	Required	Required	Not required	Not required

Key to measures:

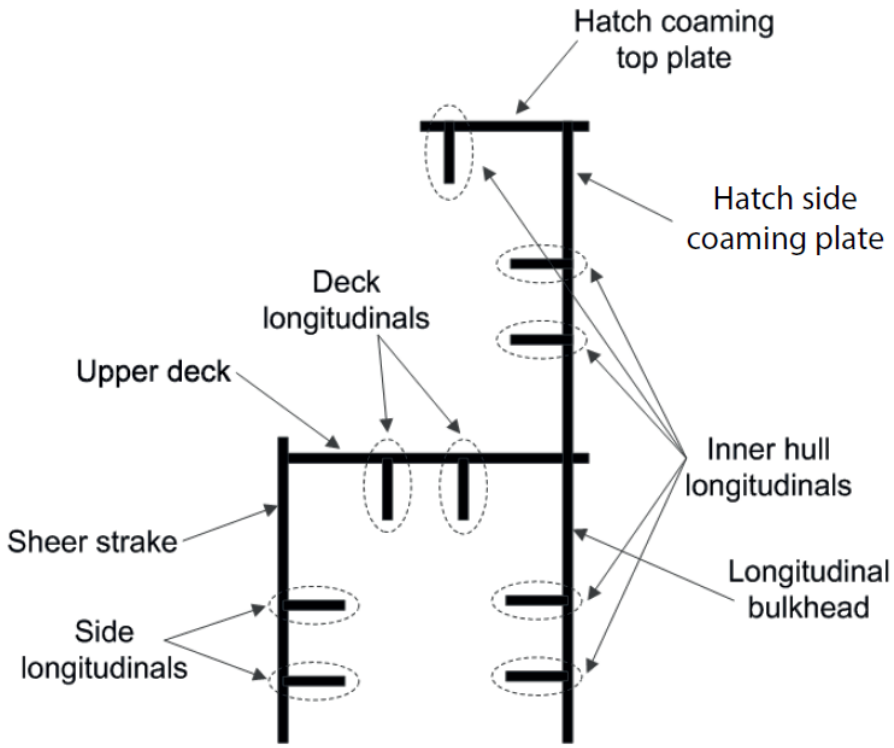
Measure 1:	NDE during construction on all upper flange longitudinal members, *See* Pt 4, Ch 8, 2.3 Requirements for use of thick steel plates 2.3.7
Measure 2:	Block shift, crack arrest insert plates, crack arrest holes and enhanced NDE, *See* Pt 4, Ch 8, 2.3,, Requirements for use of thick steel plates 2.3.8
Measure 3:	Crack arrest steel for the upper deck, *See* Pt 4, Ch 8, 2.3 Requirements for use of thick steel plates 2.3.9
Measure 4:	Periodic in-service NDE, *See* Pt 4, Ch 8, 2.3 Requirements for use of thick steel plates 2.3.10
Measure 5:	Tough welds, *See* Pt 4, Ch 8, 2.3 Requirements for use of thick steel plates 2.3.11

Note 1. Measures are to be applied where 'Required' is shown.

Note 2. Measures 4 and 5 are only required where enhanced NDE during construction has been applied as part of Measure 2

Note 3. Hatch coaming plating includes side plating and top plating

Figure 8. 2. 1: Upper flange longitudinal structural members



2. 3. 8 Where Measure 2 is required in Table 8. 2. 1: Preventative measures to be used in design and construction for thick steel plates, the following are considered to be acceptable examples of brittle crack arrest design for the case given in Pt 4, Ch 8, 2.3 Requirements for use of thick steel plates 2.3.4.a:

a. Where the block-to-block butt welds of the hatch side coaming plate and those of the upper deck are staggered, this offset is to be greater than or equal to 300 mm. This offset distance is defined in Figure 8. 2. 2: Minimum offset between block-to-block butt welds of the hatch side coaming and those of the upper deck staggered. Brittle crack arrest steel, as defined in Pt 4, Ch 8, 2.3 Requirements for use of thick steel plates 2.3.12, is to be provided for the hatch side coaming plate.

b. Where crack arrest holes are provided in way of the block-to-block butt welds at the region where the hatch side coaming weld meets the deck weld, *See* Figure 8. 2. 3: Crack arrest hole in way of the block-to-block butt weld at the region where hatch side coaming weld meets the deck weld, the corners of the crack arrest holes located where the hatch side coaming joints meet the deck weld are to be specially assessed for fatigue strength. The fatigue strength is also to be assessed at the location where the block-to-block butt weld intersects the crack arrest hole. Brittle crack arrest steel, as defined in Pt 4, Ch 8, 2.3 Requirements for use of thick steel plates 2.3.12, is to be provided for the hatch side coaming plate.

c. Where higher crack arrest steel insert plates such as SUF (Surface Layer with Ultras-Fine grain) steel or equivalent, or weld metal inserts with high crack arrest toughness properties

are provided in way of the block-to-block butt welds at the region where hatch side coaming weld meets the deck weld. Brittle crack arrest steel, as defined in Pt 4, Ch 8, 2.3 Requirements for use of thick steel plates 2.3.12, is to be provided for the hatch side coaming plate.

d. As an alternative to the provision of crack arrest steel for the hatch coaming side plate stipulated in Pt 4, Ch 8, 2.3 Requirements for use of thick steel plates 2.3.8.a, Pt 4, Ch 8, 2.3 Requirements for use of thick steel plates 2.3.8.b and Pt 4, Ch 8, 2.3 Requirements for use of thick steel plates 2.3.8.c, enhanced non-destructive examination can be carried out in association with stricter acceptance criteria. The acceptance criteria are to be determined through the means of an engineering critical assessment (ECA) to be carried out in accordance with Chapter 2 of the *ACSPlus Guidelines for the Use of Enhanced NDE in Container Ships*,and the enhanced NDE is to be carried out in accordance with Chapter 3 of the *ACSPlus Guideline for the Use of Enhanced NDE in Container Ships*. Other mechanical means of crack arrest such as block shift, crack arrest insert plates and crack arrest holes are still to be fitted. This approach also requires a programme of non-destructive testing during the lifetime of the ship, *See* Pt 4, Ch 8, 2.3 Requirements for use of thick steel plates 2.3.10. The weld toughness of the block to block butt welds of the hatch coaming side plate, hatch coaming top plate and upper deck is to be as required by Pt 4, Ch 8, 2.3,, Requirements for use of thick steel plates 2.3.8 and EGW welding is not permitted.

Figure 8. 2. 2: Minimum offset between block-to-block butt welds of the hatch side coaming and those of the upper deck staggered

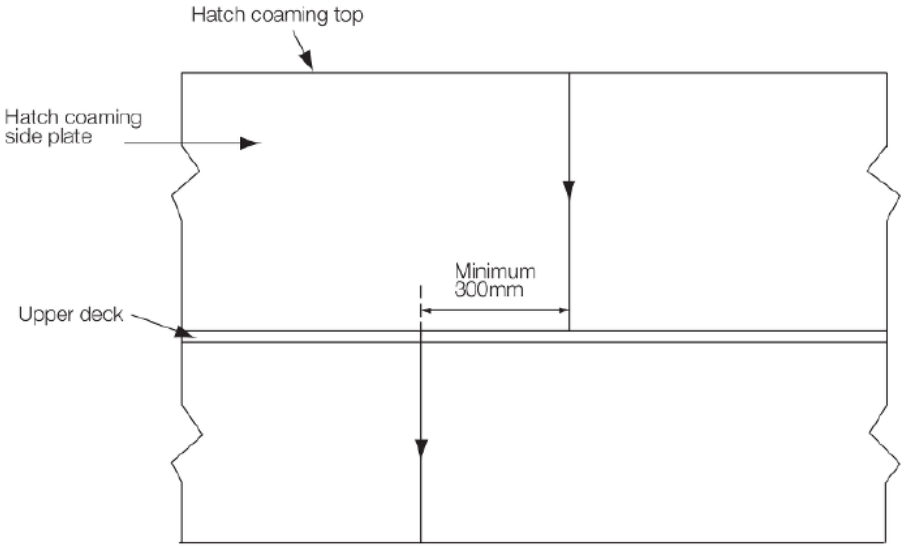
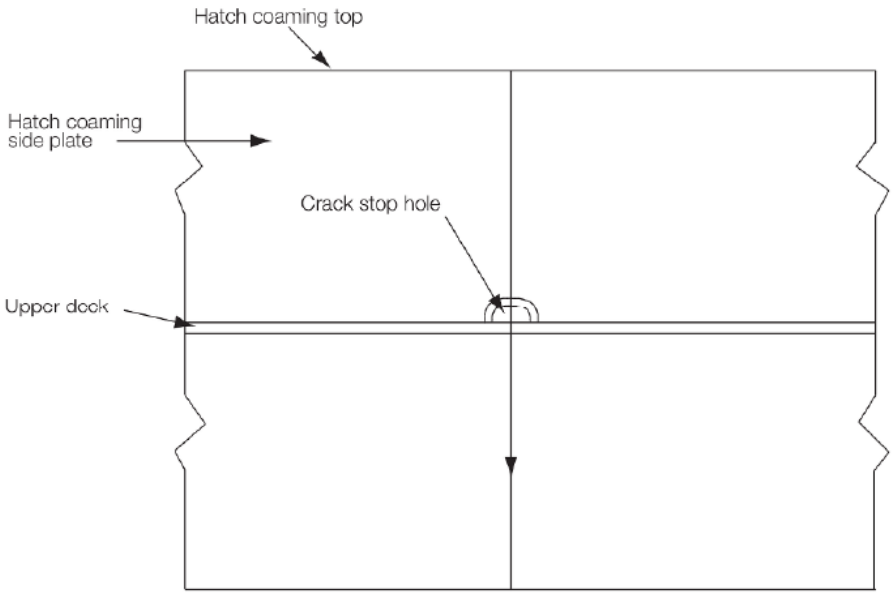


Figure 8. 2. 3: Crack arrest hole in way of the block-to-block butt weld at the region where hatch side coaming weld meets the deck weld



2. 3. 9 Where Measure 3 is required in Table 8. 2. 1: Preventative measures to be used in design and construction for thick steel plates for the cases given in Pt 4, Ch 8, 2.3 Requirements for use of thick steel plates 2.3.4.b and Pt 4, Ch 8, 2.3 Requirements for use of thick steel plates 2.3.4.c, the use of brittle crack arrest steel, as defined in Pt 4, Ch 8, 2.3 Requirements for use of thick steel plates 2.3.12, for the upper deck along the cargo hold region is considered to be an acceptable means to arrest a brittle crack initiating from the coaming side and top plate and propagating into the structure below.

2. 3. 10 Where Measure 4 is required in Table 8. 2. 1: Preventative measures to be used in design and construction for thick steel plates, periodic NDE during service is to be carried out in accordance with Chapter 3 of the *ACSPlus Guideline for the Use of Enhanced NDE in Container Ships*.

2. 3. 11 Where Measure 5 is required in Table 8. 2. 1: Preventative measures to be used in design and construction for thick steel plates, the block to block butt welds of the hatch coaming side plate, hatch coaming top plate and upper deck are to have a minimum crack tip opening displacement (CTOD) value of 0.18 mm. The CTOD tests to confirm the CTOD value are to be carried out to the satisfaction of ACS.

2. 3. 12 Brittle crack arrest steel is to be in accordance with Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials, Ch 3, 3 Higher strength steels for ship and other structural applications.

2. 3. 13 Where higher crack arrest steel or weld inserts are proposed, as given in Pt 4, Ch 8, 2.3 Requirements for use of thick steel plates 2.3.8.c, the specific properties or grades of material are to be agreed with ACS.

PART

4

CHAPTER **8** **Container Ships**

SECTION **3** **Longitudinal strength**

3. 1 General

3. 1. 1 Longitudinal strength calculations are to be carried out in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 8, 3.2 Longitudinal strength and Pt 4, Ch 8, 3.3 Combined longitudinal and torsional strength 3.3.1

3. 1. 2 Alternatively the values and distributions of wave induced loads may be derived by direct calculation in accordance with ACSPlus *Guidance Notes on the Assessment of Global Design Loads of Large Container Ships and Other Ships Prone to Whipping and Springing.*

3. 1. 3 For ships of abnormal hull form, or for ships of unusual structural configuration or complexity, the values and distributions of wave induced loads are to be agreed with ACS. ACS may decide to mandate the application of the ACSPlus notations; **SDA, FDA, FDA SPR** or **WDA**.

3. 2 Longitudinal strength

3. 2. 1 Longitudinal strength calculations are to be made in accordance with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 8, 16 Longitudinal strength calculations and the additional notes contained in this Section and Pt 4, Ch 8, 14 Direct calculation.

3. 2. 2 The wave vertical bending moments and shear forces given in Pt 4, Ch 8, 16 Longitudinal strength calculations apply to mono-hull displacement ships in unrestricted service and are limited to ships meeting the following criteria:

a. $65\ \text{m} \leq \text{L} \leq 500\ \text{m}$
b. $5 \leq \text{L/B} \leq 9$
c. $2 \leq \text{B/T} \leq 6$
d. $0.55 \leq C_{\text{B}} \leq 0.9$

For ships which do not meet the above criteria, the wave vertical bending moments and shear forces are to be specially considered.

3. 2. 3 In order to determine the local reduction factors, F_{D} and F_{B}, longitudinal strength calculations are to be made in accordance with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4 Longitudinal Strength where M_{w} is to be calculated in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 8, 16.6, Design vertical wave bending moments.

3. 2. 4 For operation in sheltered water or short voyages, *See* Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.2 Design vertical wave bending moments 5.2.3 and Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.4 Minimum hull section modulus 5.4.3 where M_{w} is to be calculated in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 8, 16.6, Design vertical wave bending moments.

3. 3 Combined longitudinal and torsional strength

3. 3. 1 The strength of the ship to resist a combination of longitudinal and torsional loads is to be determined in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 8, 15.1 Application.

PART

4

CHAPTER 8 Container Ships

SECTION 4 Deck structure

4. 1 General

4. 1. 1 The requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 4 Deck structure are to be complied with as modified by this Section.

4. 1. 2 The strength deck is to be longitudinally framed throughout the region of container holds for ships where$L \geq 100$m.

4. 1. 3 Lower decks/side stringers are to be efficiently scarfed into the machinery space, and the fore end and aft end structure.

4. 1. 4 The *ACSPlus FDA Guideline*, *Structural Detail Design Guide (SDDG)*, indicates recommended examples of structural design configurations in critical areas of deck structures.

4. 2 Primary supporting structure

4. 2. 1 Where decks form part of the primary support structures described in Pt 4, Ch 8, 6.2 Side shell primary supporting structure and Pt 4, Ch 8, 9.2 Transverse watertight/non-watertight bulkhead primary supporting structure the scantlings of the decks are to be verified by direct calculation procedures in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 8, 14.2 Procedures for verification of primary structure scantlings.

4. 3 Deck plating and stiffeners

4. 3. 1 Strength/weather deck scantlings outside the line of hatch openings are to satisfy the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 8, 3 Longitudinal strength and Pt 4, Ch 8, 4.2 Primary supporting structure, and are to be not less than required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 4.2 Deck plating and Pt 4, Ch 1, 4.3 Deck stiffening.

4. 3. 2 Within the cargo holds, strength/weather/second deck scantlings inside the line of hatch openings are to satisfy the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 8, 3 Longitudinal strength, Pt 4, Ch 8, 4.2 Primary supporting structure and Pt 4, Ch 8, 4.4, Cross decks.

4. 3. 3 Other deck scantlings are to satisfy the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 8, 3 Longitudinal strength, Pt 4, Ch 8, 4.2 Primary supporting structure and Pt 4, Ch 1, 4 Deck structure as appropriate.

4. 4 Cross decks

4. 4. 1 The width and scantlings of cross-deck strips are to satisfy the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 8, 4.2 Primary supporting structure. The thickness, t, of cross-deck strips is to comply with the requirements of Table 8. 4. 1: Cross deck plating.

Table 8. 4. 1: Cross deck plating

Location	Minimum thickness, in mm
At strength deck	The greater of the following: (a) $t = 0.012\ s_1$ (b) $t = 10 + 0.01L_1$
At second deck	The greater of the following: (a) $t = 0.012\ s_1$ but need not exceed 12 (b) $t = 8.0$
Symbols	
s_1 and L_1 as defined in Pt 4, Ch 8, 1.5 Symbols and definitions 1.5.1.	

4. 4. 2 The thickness may require to be increased locally in way of access openings.

4. 4. 3 Where the difference between the thickness of plating inside and outside the line of main hatchway openings exceeds 25 mm, a single transition plate is to be fitted at the end of the cross deck strip. The thickness of the transition plate is to be equal to the mean of the adjacent plate thicknesses.

4. 4. 4 The scantlings of cross-deck stiffeners are to comply with Pt 4, Ch 1, 4 Deck structure.

4. 4. 5 For initial design purposes the width of the cross deck strips, w, forming a transverse bulkhead top box (or equivalent) can be estimated according to the following formula:

w = $32.5B + 400$, or 1000mm, whichever is the greater

where B is given in Pt 4, Ch 8, 1.5 Symbols and definitions 1.5.1.

4. 5 Deck openings

4. 5. 1 The corners of main hatchway openings are generally to be rounded. However, corners with negative radii, or parabolic or elliptic profiles will be specially considered.

4. 5. 2 The design of hold corners including deck thickness and corner profile is to comply with either Pt 4, Ch 8, 4.5 Deck openings 4.5.3 or Pt 4, Ch 8, 4.5 Deck openings 4.5.4.

4. 5. 3 The design of hatch corners is to be verified by direct calculations, *See* Pt 4, Ch 8, 14.1 Procedures for calculation of combined longitudinal and torsional strength 14.1.1.

4. 5. 4 Alternatively, where the design of hatch corners has not been verified by direct calculations:

a. The outboard radius of main hatchway openings at strength deck level is, in general, to be not less than 35 per cent of the width of the cross-deck strip indicated in Pt 4, Ch 8, 4.4 Cross decks 4.4.5 with a minimum of 300 mm.

b. The radius of the hatch corners of the main hatchway openings adjacent to the engine room is to be made as large as practicable, with a radius of approximately $40B$ mm.

c. Insert plates at main hatch corners are to have an increased thickness above the adjacent plating outside the line of hatchways of 15 per cent in way of the container holds, and 25 per cent in container holds at engine room bulkheads. The minimum increase is to be not less than 4.0 mm, nor need exceed 7.0 mm, and the minimum fore and aft extent is to be 1.0 m from the edge of the openings.

4. 6 Local reinforcement

4. 6. 1 Attention is to be paid to structural continuity, and abrupt changes of shape, section or plate thickness are to be avoided, particularly in highly stressed areas. Arrangements in way of openings are to be such as to minimise the creation of stress concentrations.

4. 6. 2 In general, large access openings are not to be arranged in the strength deck outside the line of main hatchways in the region of container holds.

4. 6. 3 Small openings, such as those for ventilation pipes or scuppers, are to be kept clear of hold corners, ends of longitudinal hatch coamings, ends of cross-deck strips and other critical locations.

4. 7 Support for container corner seats

4. 7. 1 In general, local stiffening is to be fitted under seats for container supports.

4. 7. 2 The design of attachments to the strength deck is to minimise the effects of stress concentration, and consideration is to be given to the strength and grade of welding consumable used, *See*, Ch 13, 2.2 Welding consumables 2.2.2 of Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials.

4. 7. 3 The strength of support arrangements is to be verified in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 14, 4 Ship structure.

4. 7. 4 Doubler plates are not to be utilised in connections subject to tensile loads.

PART

4

CHAPTER **8** **Container Ships**

SECTION **5** **Shell envelope plating**

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 The requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 5 Shell envelope plating are to be applied, together with the requirements of this Section.

5. 1. 2 The bottom shell is, in general, to be longitudinally framed for ships where L>=100 m.

5. 1. 3 The side shell may be longitudinal or transversely framed, except in way of the topside torsion box which is, in general, to be longitudinally framed.

5. 2 Bottom shell and bilge

5. 2. 1 The thickness of the bottom shell plating is to satisfy the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 8, 3 Longitudinal strength and Pt 4, Ch 8, 7.2 Double bottom primary supporting structure and is to be not less than required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 5.3 Bottom shell and bilge.

5. 2. 2 In regions where transverse framing is adopted, particularly towards the end of the ship, the buckling stability of the plating will be specially considered.

5. 3 Side shell and sheerstrake

5. 3. 1 The thickness of the side shell and sheerstrake plating is to satisfy the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 8, 3 Longitudinal strength and Pt 4, Ch 8, 6.2 Side shell primary supporting structure and is to be not less than required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 5.4 Side shell.

5. 3. 2 At positions where high shear forces are present, local increases in thickness may be required.

5. 3. 3 The difference in thickness between the sheerstrake and shell plating below is not to exceed 25 mm.

PART

4

CHAPTER **8** **Container Ships**

SECTION **6** **Shell envelope framing**

6. 1 General

6. 1. 1 The requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 6 Shell envelope framing are to be applied, together with the requirements of this Section.

6. 1. 2 The *ACSPlus FDA Guideline*, *Structural Detail Design Guide (SDDG)* indicates recommended examples of configurations for end connections of shell envelope longitudinals.

6. 2 Side shell primary supporting structure

6. 2. 1 A primary supporting structure for side shell envelope framing is to be provided of either single or double skin construction. This normally consists of a combination of vertical transverse webs and horizontal side stringers/decks.

6. 2. 2 Transverse webs supporting side shell envelope framing are to be arranged in line with the floors in the double bottom to ensure continuity of transverse strength.

6. 2. 3 The scantlings of double skin primary structure, including thickness of side shell envelope plating, are to be verified by direct calculations in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 8, 14.2 Procedures for verification of primary structure scantlings.

6. 2. 4 The scantlings of single skin primary structure are to comply with Pt 4, Ch 1, 6.4 Primary supporting structure. Alternatively the scantlings are to be verified by direct calculations in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 8, 14.2 Procedures for verification of primary structure scantlings.

6. 3 Side stringers in double skin construction

6. 3. 1 The scantlings of side stringers are to satisfy the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 8, 3 Longitudinal strength, Pt 4, Ch 8, 6.2 Side shell primary supporting structure and Pt 4, Ch 8, 6.5 Minimum thickness of transverse webs/side stringers in double skin construction.

6. 3. 2 In addition, the scantlings of watertight side stringers are to satisfy the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 9 Bulkheads.

6. 4 Transverse webs in double skin construction

6. 4. 1 The scantlings of transverse webs are to satisfy the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 8, 6.2 Side shell primary supporting structure and Pt 4, Ch 8, 6.5 Minimum thickness of transverse webs/side stringers in double skin construction.

6. 4. 2 Transverse webs are to be efficiently stiffened, and the thickness increased locally where necessary on account of high shear stress.

6. 4. 3 Where, towards the end of the ship, the width of transverse webs reduces from that assumed in the direct calculations, the thickness may require to be increased locally.

6. 5 Minimum thickness of transverse webs/side stringers in double skin construction

6. 5. 1 Transverse webs and side stringers are to have a thickness, t, not less than:

$t = 7.5 + 0.015L$ or 9 mm, whichever is the lesser.

PART

4

CHAPTER **8** **Container Ships**

SECTION **7** **Double bottom structure**

7. 1 General

7. 1. 1 The double bottom is, in general, to be longitudinally framed for ships where $L \geq 100$ m.

7. 1. 2 Longitudinally framed double bottoms are to comply with Pt 4, Ch 1, 8.2, General and the contents of this Section.

7. 1. 3 Transversely framed double bottoms are to comply with Pt 4, Ch 1, 8 Double bottom structure.

7. 1. 4 The *ACSPlus FDA Guideline*, *Structural Detail Design Guide (SDDG)*, indicates recommended examples of structural design configurations in critical areas of the double bottom.

7. 2 Double bottom primary supporting structure

7. 2. 1 The primary supporting structure formed by the double bottom comprises inner bottom plating, floors, longitudinal girders and bottom shell plating.

7. 2. 2 The scantlings of this primary structure are to be verified by direct calculations in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 8, 14.2 Procedures for verification of primary structure scantlings.

7. 2. 3 Where, towards the end of the ship, the depth of double bottom structure webs is reduced from that assumed in the direct calculations, the thickness may require to be increased locally.

7. 2. 4 Where mid-hold or quarter-length-of-hold supports for the double bottom structure are arranged, these are to take the form of an efficiently stiffened transverse box or open section structure, *See* Pt 4, Ch 8, 9.4 Transverse non-watertight mid-hold bulkheads.

7. 3 Inner bottom plating and stiffening

7. 3. 1 The scantlings of the inner bottom are to satisfy the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 8, 3 Longitudinal strength and Pt 4, Ch 8, 7.2 Double bottom primary supporting structure and are to be not less than required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 8.4, Inner bottom plating and stiffening as modified by this sub-Section.

7. 3. 2 The requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 8.4 Inner bottom plating and stiffening 8.4.2 need not be applied to container ships.

7. 3. 3 In applying Pt 4, Ch 1, 8.4 Inner bottom plating and stiffening 8.4.5, the Rule value of bottom longitudinals may be calculated assuming $F_{sb} = 1.05$.

7. 4 Girders

7. 4. 1 Girders are, in general, to be arranged under container corner seatings.

7. 4. 2 The scantlings of watertight centreline/side girders are to satisfy the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 8, 3 Longitudinal strength and Pt 4, Ch 8, 7.2 Double bottom primary supporting structure and are to be not less than required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 8.3,, Girders.

7. 4. 3 The scantlings of non-watertight centreline/side girders are to satisfy the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 8, 3 Longitudinal strength and Pt 4, Ch 8, 7.2 Double bottom primary supporting structure.

7. 4. 4 For double bottoms having a depth greater than 1.6 m, additional longitudinal stiffening may have to be introduced in order to ensure the buckling stability of the girders.

7. 5 Floors

7. 5. 1 Plate floors are to be fitted under watertight bulkheads, non-watertight bulkheads/mid-hold supports, under container corners at hold quarter length locations and at other locations to ensure that the maximum spacing does not, in general, exceed 3.8 m. Proposals for floor spacings greater than 3.8 m are to be supported by direct calculations agreed with ACS.

7. 5. 2 The scantlings of watertight floors are to satisfy the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 8, 7.2 Double bottom primary supporting structure and are to be not less than required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 8.5, Floors.

7. 5. 3 The thickness, t, of non-watertight floors is to satisfy the requirements of 7.2 and is to be not less than:

$t = 6 + 0.03L$ or 12 mm, whichever is the lesser.

7. 5. 4 Non-watertight floor stiffeners are to be fitted at approximately the same spacing as the bottom longitudinals. The scantlings are to satisfy the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 10 Welding and Structural Details.

7. 5. 5 Docking brackets, or equivalent, are to be fitted in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 1, 8.5 Floors 8.5.3.

7. 6 Support for containers

7. 6. 1 In general, local stiffening is to be fitted to double bottom floors or girders under container corner seatings in order to ensure the effective transmission of load.

7. 6. 2 Such stiffening normally takes the form of additional brackets with suitable extensions to adjacent stiffening members. The scantlings of the adjacent stiffening members may require to be increased depending on the arrangements proposed.

7. 6. 3 Attention is drawn to the benefit of direct support in order to minimise the effect of eccentric loading on the support brackets.

7. 6. 4 The scantlings of these arrangements may be determined utilising simple beam models to verify the shear and bending strength. Based on static container loads, the stresses induced in the structure are not to exceed the permissible values stated in Table 8. 7. 1: Permissible stress values. Alternative more complex assessment methods are to be agreed with ACS.

7. 6. 5 In general, doubling members or equivalent structures are to be attached to the inner bottom to distribute the load from container corners into the supporting structure. Doubler plates are to have well-rounded corners.

Table 8. 7. 1: Permissible stress values

	Permissible stress, N/mm^2
Normal stress (bending, tension, compression)	$0.67\sigma_o$
Shear stress	$0.4\sigma_o$

Combined stress	$0.86\sigma_o$
Symbols	
σ_o = specified minimum yield stress, in N/mm^2	

PART

4

CHAPTER **8** **Container Ships**

SECTION **8** **Longitudinal bulkheads**

8. 1 General

8. 1. 1 The requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 9 Bulkheads are to be applied, together with the requirements of this Section.

8. 1. 2 Longitudinal bulkheads may be transversely or longitudinally framed, except in way of the topside torsion box which is, in general, to be longitudinally framed.

8. 1. 3 Longitudinal bulkheads are to be maintained continuous in way of the machinery space where this is situated between container holds and as far forward and aft as practicable.

8. 1. 4 The scarfing arrangements in way of the steps are to be sufficient to ensure an efficient overlap of the inner skin bulkheads.

8. 1. 5 The *ACSPlus FDA Guideline*, *Structural Detail Design Guide (SDDG)*, indicates recommended examples of structural design configurations in critical areas of the double side skin structures.

8. 2 Side shell primary supporting structure

8. 2. 1 Where the longitudinal bulkhead forms the inner skin of the side shell primary supporting structure the thickness of longitudinal bulkhead plating is to be verified by direct calculations as described in Pt 4, Ch 8, 14.2 Procedures for verification of primary structure scantlings.

8. 3 Plating and stiffeners

8. 3. 1 The scantlings of longitudinal bulkheads are to satisfy the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 8, 3 Longitudinal strength and Pt 4, Ch 8, 8.2 Side shell primary supporting structure and are to be not less than required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 9 Bulkheads.

8. 3. 2 Openings in the upper parts of longitudinal bulkheads are to have shapes which minimise stress concentrations and are to be framed to ensure adequate buckling stability.

8. 3. 3 The difference in thickness between the top strake and the bulkhead plating below is not to exceed 25 mm.

8. 4 Support for container corner seats

8. 4. 1 Where direct support for 20 ft containers by the longitudinal bulkhead is required at the mid length of a cell arranged for 40 ft containers, adequate stiffening is to be fitted in order to ensure the effective transmission of load.

8. 4. 2 The strength of these arrangements is to be verified in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 14, 4 Ship structure.

PART

4

CHAPTER **8** **Container Ships**

SECTION **9** **Transverse bulkheads**

9. 1 General

9. 1. 1 The requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 9 Bulkheads are to be applied, together with the requirements of this Section.

9. 1. 2 Watertight transverse bulkheads may be vertically or horizontally framed.

9. 1. 3 The *ACSPlus FDA Guideline*, *Structural Detail Design Guide (SDDG)*, indicates recommended examples of structural design configurations in critical areas of transverse bulkhead structures.

9. 2 Transverse watertight/non-watertight bulkhead primary supporting structure

9. 2. 1 The primary supporting structure of transverse bulkheads normally comprises a grillage of vertical webs and horizontal stringers/decks.

9. 2. 2 Vertical webs are to be fitted in line with double bottom girders.

9. 2. 3 The scantlings of transverse bulkhead primary structure including bulkhead plating are to be verified by direct calculations as described in Pt 4, Ch 8, 14.2 Procedures for verification of primary structure scantlings.

9. 2. 4 The scantlings are to be adequate for the static and dynamic loads imposed on the structure by the container stowage arrangements.

9. 3 Transverse watertight bulkheads

9. 3. 1 The thickness of the transverse bulkhead plating is to satisfy the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 8, 9.2 Transverse watertight/non-watertight bulkhead primary supporting structure and is to be not less than required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 9.2, Watertight and deep tank bulkheads for watertight bulkheads.

9. 3. 2 In general, a transverse box structure or equivalent is to be arranged at upper deck level.

9. 3. 3 In certain cases, a transverse box structure at the inner bottom may also be required.

9. 4 Transverse non-watertight mid-hold bulkheads

9. 4. 1 Where non-watertight bulkheads are arranged in conjunction with the double bottom mid-hold support, a transverse box is to be arranged at strength deck level.

9. 4. 2 Non-watertight bulkhead scantlings are to satisfy the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 8, 9.2 Transverse watertight/non-watertight bulkhead primary supporting structure and Pt 4, Ch 1, 4.4, Deck supporting structure for a non-watertight pillar bulkhead.

PART

4

CHAPTER **8 Container Ships**

SECTION **10 Hatch coamings and support for hatch covers**

10. 1 Hatch coamings

10. 1. 1 Scantlings of hatch coamings are to comply with Pt 3, Ch 11, 5 Hatch coamings in addition to the requirements of this Section.

10. 1. 2 Continuous side coamings are to be effectively scarfed into the deckhouse structure or gradually tapered at ends, as applicable. The scantlings are also to satisfy the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 8, 3 Longitudinal strength.

10. 1. 3 The scantlings of transverse hatch coamings forming part of a transverse bulkhead top box are also to satisfy the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 8, 9.2 Transverse watertight/non-watertight bulkhead primary supporting structure.

10. 1. 4 The *ACSPlus FDA Guideline*, *Structural Detail Design Guide (SDDG)*, indicates examples of recommended structural design configurations in critical areas of the hatch side coamings.

10. 2 Support for inboard edges of hatch covers by girders

10. 2. 1 Where longitudinal underdeck girders are fitted at deck level to support the hatch covers the requirements of this sub-Section are to be complied with.

10. 2. 2 The girders may take the form of open or closed box sections and these should align with webs on the transverse bulkheads to form a continuous ring structure.

10. 2. 3 The girders are, in general, to be continuous throughout the container hold area, including the engine room where this is situated between container holds.

10. 2. 4 Special attention is to be given to the intersection of the girders with transverse box girders and the integration into the fore end, aft end and machinery space structures.

10. 2. 5 Where girders are integrated into the cross-deck strips, inserts plates with integral gussets are to be incorporated. The inserts are to have a thickness not less than that of the girder top and bottom plates, as appropriate. The radius of main hatchway openings in way of ends of hatch girders at upper deck level is, in general, to be not less than 20 per cent of the width of the cross-deck strip indicated inPt 4, Ch 8, 4.4 Cross decks 4.4.5 with a minimum of 250 mm.

10. 2. 6 Scantlings of girders are to comply with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 4 Deck structure.

10. 3 Support for hatch cover fittings

10. 3. 1 The width of hatch coaming top plates is to be suitable to accommodate the hatch covers and associated fittings.

10. 3. 2 Local stiffening is to be fitted below hatch cover supporting devices and in some cases the thickness of the coaming in way may need to be increased, (*See also* Pt 3, Ch 11, 4.2 Steel covers − Clamped and gasketed 4.2.3 and Pt 3, Ch 11, 5.2 Construction 5.2.12).

PART

4

CHAPTER **8 Container Ships**

SECTION **11 Hatch covers**

11. 1 General

11. 1. 1 The requirements of Pt 3, Ch 11 Closing Arrangements for Shell, Deck and Bulkheads are to be complied with in addition to the requirements of this Section.

11. 1. 2 The primary structure of hatch covers normally consists of an arrangement of deep beams and girders including hatch cover top plating.

11. 1. 3 For hatch covers subjected to point loads from containers, the primary structure scantlings are to be verified by direct calculation in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 8, 11.2, Direct calculations.

11. 1. 4 Local stiffening is to be arranged below container corners. The substructures of container foundations are to be designed for cargo and container loads according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.3, Load model, applying the permissible stresses according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.4 Allowable stress and deflection 2.4.1.

11. 2 Direct calculations

11. 2. 1 Direct calculations are to be based on 2D or 3D finite element analysis. Simplified boundary constraints may be applied in the modelling, provided this does not compromise the overall structural response.

11. 2. 2 The loads defined in Pt 4, Ch 8, 11.2 Direct calculations 11.2.3 and Pt 4, Ch 8, 11.2 Direct calculations 11.2.5 are to be applied where containers are stowed on the hatch cover.

11. 2. 3 The load P in kN, applied at each corner of a container stack, and resulting from heave and pitch (i.e. ship in upright condition) is to be determined as follows:

$$P = 9.81\frac{M}{4}(1 + a_v)$$

Where

a_v = acceleration addition according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.3 Load model 2.3.4

M = maximum designed mass of container stack, in t

11. 2. 4 The loads applied at each corner of a container stack, and resulting from heave, pitch, and the ship's rolling motion (i.e. ship in heeled condition) are to be determined as follows, *See* Figure 8. 11. 1: Forces due to container loads:

$$A_z = 9.81\frac{M}{2}(1 + a_v)\left(0.45 - 0.42\frac{h_m}{b}\right) \text{kN}$$

$$B_z = 9.81\frac{M}{2}(1 + a_v)\left(0.45 + 0.42\frac{h_m}{b}\right)\text{kN}$$

$$B_y = 2.4M\text{kN}$$

The loads due to single forces resulting from heave and pitch are also to be considered, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.3 Load model 2.3.5, where

a_v = acceleration addition according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.3 Load model 2.3.4

b = distance between midpoints of foot points, in metres

h_m = designed height of centre of gravity of stack above hatch cover top, in metres, may be calculated as weighted mean value of the stack, where the centre of gravity of each tier is assumed to be located at the centre of each container,

= $\Sigma(z_i m_i)/M$

Z_i = distance from the hatch cover top to the centre of i^{th} container, in metres

m_i = mass of i^{th} container, in t

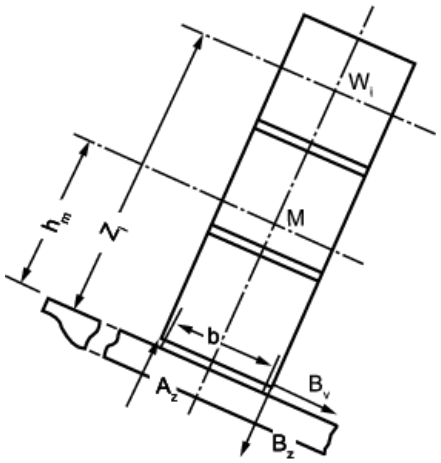
A_z, B_z = support forces in z-direction at the forward and aft stack corners, in kN

B_y = support force in y-direction at the forward and aft stack corners, in kN

M = maximum designed mass of container stack, in t.

When strength of the hatch cover structure is assessed by grillage analysis according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 2.11, Buckling strength of hatch cover structures h_m and z_i need to be taken above the hatch cover supports. Force By does not need to be considered in this case. Values of A_z and B_z applied for the assessment of hatch cover strength are to be shown in the drawings of the hatch covers. It is recommended that container loads as calculated above are considered as maximum load limits for foot point loads of container stacks in the calculations of cargo securing (container lashings).

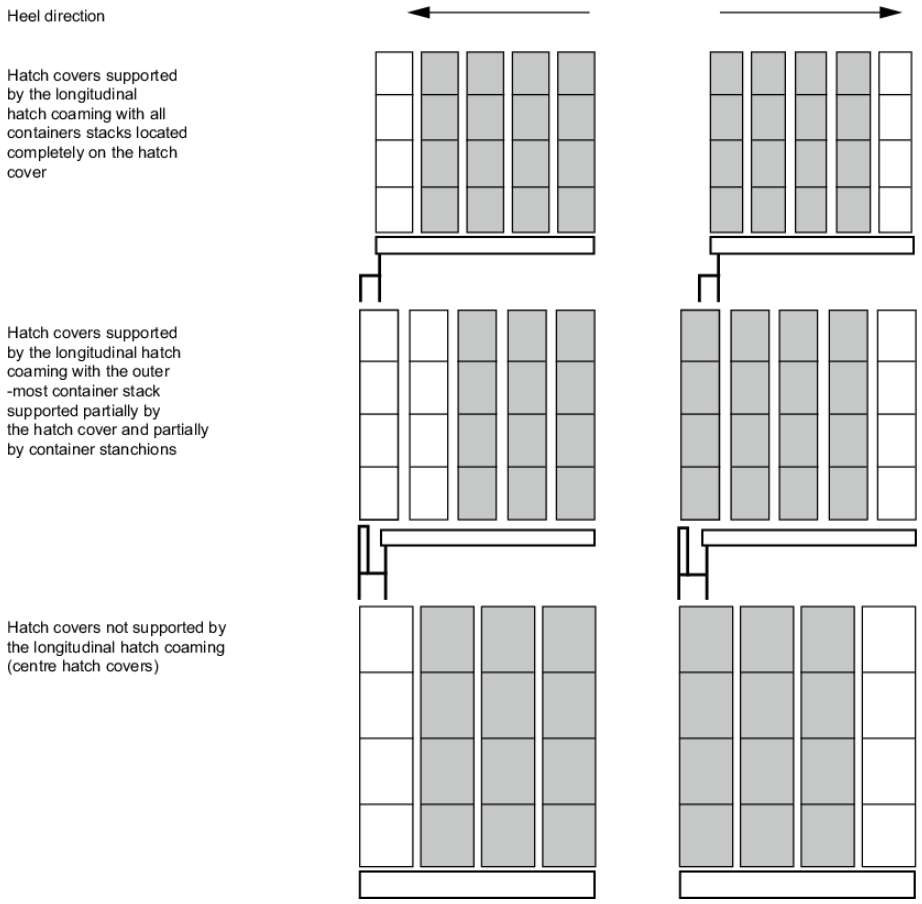
Figure 8. 11. 1: Forces due to container loads



11. 2. 5 Load cases defined in Pt 4, Ch 8, 11.2 Direct calculations 11.2.3 and Pt 4, Ch 8, 11.2 Direct calculations 11.2.4 are also to be considered for partial non-homogeneous loading which may occur in practice, e.g. where specified container stack places are empty. For each hatch cover, the heel directions as shown in are to be considered.

The load case *partial loading of container hatch covers* can be evaluated using a simplified approach, where the hatch cover is loaded without the outermost stacks that are located completely on the hatch cover. If there are additional stacks that are supported partially by the hatch cover and partially by container stanchions, then the loads from these stacks are also to be neglected. *See* Figure 8. 11. 2: Partial loading of a container hatch cover. In addition, in order to consider the maximum loads in the vertical hatch cover supports, the case where only the stack locations that are partially supported by the hatch cover and partially supported by container stanchions are left empty is to be assessed. Partial load cases where container stack positions other than those shown in Figure 8. 11. 2: Partial loading of a container hatch cover are left empty are to be considered.

Figure 8. 11. 2: Partial loading of a container hatch cover



11. 2. 6 The securing devices of hatch covers, onto which cargo is to be lashed, are to be designed for the lifting forces resulting from loads according to Pt 4, Ch 8, 11.2 Direct calculations 11.2.4, *See* Figure 8. 11. 2: Partial loading of a container hatch cover. Unsymmetrical loadings, which may occur in practice, are to be considered. Under these loadings, the equivalent stress in the securing devices is not to exceed:

$$\sigma_v = \frac{150}{k_1} \text{ in N/mm}^2$$

Where

$$k_1 = \left(\frac{235}{\sigma_o}\right)^e$$

σ_o = minimum yield stress, in N/mm^2, of the material but not to be taken greater than 0.7 σ_m

σ_m = minimum specified tensile strength, in N/mm^2, of the material

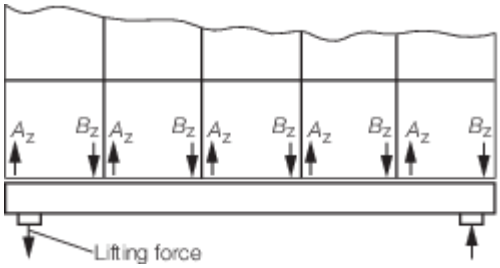
e = 0.75 for $\sigma_0 > 235$ N/mm^2

= 1.0 for $\sigma_0 \leq 235$ N/mm^2

Special consideration may be given for the omission of anti-lifting devices for non-weathertight hatch covers.

The partial load cases given in Pt 4, Ch 8, 11.2 Direct calculations 11.2.5 may not cover all unsymmetrical loadings, critical for hatch cover lifting.

Figure 8. 11. 3: Lifting forces at a hatch cover



11. 2. 7 Where hatch covers are arranged for carrying containers and mixed stowage is allowed, i.e. a 40' container stowed on top of two 20' containers, the foot point forces at the fore and aft end of the hatch cover are not to be higher than those resulting from the design stack weight for 40' containers, and the foot point forces at the middle of the cover are not to be higher than those resulting from the design stack weight for 20' containers. Particular attention is to be paid to the deflections of hatch covers. Furthermore, the possible contact of deflected hatch covers with in-hold cargo is to be considered.

11. 3 Dispensation of weathertight gaskets

11. 3. 1 For hatch covers of cargo holds solely for the transport of containers, upon request by the Owners and subject to compliance with the requirements of this Section, the fitting of weathertight gaskets according to Pt 3, Ch 11, 4.4 Packing material may be dispensed with.

11. 3. 2 The hatchway coamings are not to be less than 600 mm in height.

11. 3. 3 The exposed deck on which the hatch covers are located is situated above a depth H(x). H(x) is to be shown to comply with the following criteria:

H(x) = $\geq T_{fb} + f_b + h$, in metres

Where

T_{fb} = draught, in metres, corresponding to the assigned summer load line

f_b = minimum required freeboard, in metres, determined in accordance with ICLL Reg. 28 as modified by further regulations, as applicable

h = 4.6 m for $\frac{x}{L} \leq 0.75$

= 6.9 m for $\frac{x}{L} > 0.75$

11. 3. 4 Labyrinths, gutter bars or equivalents are to be fitted proximate to the edges of each panel in way of the coamings. The clear profile of these openings is to be kept as small as possible.

11. 3. 5 Where a hatch is covered by several hatch cover panels, the clear opening of the gap in between the panels is to be not wider than 50 mm.

11. 3. 6 The labyrinths and gaps between hatch cover panels shall be considered as unprotected openings with respect to the requirements of intact and damage stability calculations.

11. 3. 7 Bilge alarms are to be provided in each hold fitted with non-weathertight covers.

11. 3. 8 Furthermore, Chapter 3 of IMO *MSC/Circular.1087 – Guidelines for Partially Weathertight Hatchway Covers on board Containerships – (Adopted on 18 June 2003)* is to be referred to concerning the stowage and segregation of containers containing dangerous goods.

11. 4 Omission of hatch covers

11. 4. 1 Proposals for the omission of hatch covers will be specially considered. Such proposals are to include details, established by model tests or alternative means, of the quantity of water likely to ingress the cargo holds under the worst sea-going and weather conditions, and the means by which it is to be efficiently and safely discharged. The proposals will also require to be agreed by the National Authority in order that an exemption from the Load Line Convention requirements for hatch covers may be obtained.

PART

4

CHAPTER **8 Container Ships**

SECTION **12 Strengthening for wave impact loads**

12. 1 General

12. 1. 1 The scantlings of plating, stiffeners of forward and after portions of the hull are to be increased for protection against bow flare and wave impact pressure in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 2, 4.3, Strengthening for wave impact loads and Pt 4, Ch 2, 5.2, Strengthening for wave impact loads.

12. 1. 2 The scantlings of the primary support structure are to be adequate to resist the application of the Rule slamming load, P_{bf}, as defined in Pt 4, Ch 2, 4.2 Bow flare and wave impact pressures 4.2.1, over an area A_{sl}, as shown in Figure 2. 5. 2: Mean spacing between primary members, Scm, and the extents of wave impact pressure gbfh and gbfv in Pt 4, Ch 2 Ferries, Roll On-Roll Off Ships and Passenger Ships. The loaded area, A_{sl}, is a rectangle with a horizontal extent, g_{bfh}, and vertical extent, g_{bfv}, taken as follows:

$$g_{bfh} = 4 \text{ m}$$

$$g_{bfv} = \frac{8}{\sin \beta_p \sqrt{8K_{bf}}} \text{m}$$

Where

K_{bf} and β_p are given in Pt 4, Ch 2, 4.2 Bow flare and wave impact pressures 4.2.1.

12. 1. 3 To satisfy Pt 4, Ch 8, 12.1 General 12.1.2, the scantlings of web frames supporting side longitudinals or side stringers supporting transverse frames are to comply with the following:

a. Section modulus not to be less than:

$$Z = 3.75 f_{\text{rpc}} \gamma_Z k h_s q v l_e^2 \text{ cm}^3$$

b. Web area not to be less than:

$$A = 0.20 f_{rpc} \gamma_A k h_s q v l e^2 \text{ cm}^2$$

$$=$$ where

h_s = wave impact head, in metres, as defined in Pt 4, Ch 2, 4.3 Strengthening for wave impact loads 4.3.2.

$$=$$ and

$$f_{\text{rpc}} = \frac{P}{3.05 V_3}$$

$$= \left(\frac{H}{2.27 V_3}\right)$$

P = is the maximum propulsion shaft power in kW for which the machinery is classed, *See* Pt 5, Ch 1, 3 Operating conditions

H = is the maximum propulsion shaft power in HP for which the machinery is classed, *See* Pt 5, Ch 1, 3 Operating conditions

V = is the speed, in knots as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6 Definitions

= γ_A and γ_Z are strength factors dependent on the load position:

= for $q < 1$: $\gamma_A = q^3 - 2q^2 + 2$ and $\gamma_Z = 3q^3 - 8q^2 + 6q$

= for $q = 1$: $\gamma_A = 1 \gamma_Z = 1$

q = $\frac{u}{l_e}$ but ≤ 1

= for web frames

u = is the minimum of g_{bfv} or l_e

v = is the minimum of g_{bfh} or S_{cm}

= for side stringers

u = is the minimum of g_{bfh} or l_e

v = is the minimum of g_{bfv} or S_{cm}

l_e = is the effective length of the primary member, in metres

S_{cm} = is the mean spacing between primary members along the plating, in metres, *See* Figure 2. 5. 2: Mean spacing between primary members, Scm, and the extents of wave impact pressure gbfh and gbfv in Pt 4, Ch 2 Ferries, Roll On-Roll Off Ships and Passenger Ships

= g_{bfv} and g_{bfh} are defined in Pt 4, Ch 8, 12.1 General 12.1.2

c. Web plating is to be adequately stiffened to resist shear buckling as required by Table 8. 12. 1: Critical shear buckling stress for web plating of primary support structure.

Table 8. 12. 1: Critical shear buckling stress for web plating of primary support structure

$\tau_A \leq \tau_{CRB}$

where

τ_{CRB} = τ_E N/mm^2 when $\tau_E \leq \frac{\tau_0}{2}$

τ_{CRB} = $\tau_0 \left(1 - \frac{\tau_0}{4\tau_E}\right)$ N/mm^2 when $\tau_E > \frac{\tau_0}{2}$

where

τ_E = $3.6\left[1.335 + \left(\frac{s}{1000S}\right)^2\right] E \left(\frac{\tau_p}{s}\right)^2$ N/mm^2

Symbols

τ_A	=	design shear stress for the web panel in N/mm^2 corresponding to the worst combination of application of the slamming load P_{bf} on the patch area A_{sl}
τ_{CRB}	=	critical buckling stress in shear, N/mm^2 corrected for yielding effects
τ_0	=	$\frac{\sigma_0}{\sqrt{3}}$
σ_o	=	specified minimum yield stress, in N/mm^2
τ_E	=	elastic critical buckling stress in shear, in N/mm^2
s	=	length of longer panel edge, in mm (generally the spacing of web stiffeners)
S	=	length of smaller panel edge, in metres (generally the web depth)
E	=	modulus of elasticity, in N/mm^2
	=	206000 N/mm^2 for steel
τ_p	=	as built thickness of primary member web plating, in mm

PART

4

CHAPTER **8 Container Ships**

SECTION **13 Container stowage systems**

13. 1 Cell guide systems

13. 1. 1 Where cell guide systems are fitted to support containers in holds or on deck, they are to comply with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 14, 7 Container securing arrangements for stowage using cell guides.

13. 2 Stowage on decks/hatch covers

13. 2. 1 Strength of support structures for pads/pedestals under container corners, lashing equipment and lashing bridges is to comply with Pt 3, Ch 14, 4 Ship structure.

13. 3 Ergonomic container lashing

13. 3. 1 A ship designed to carry containers that is provided with safe access and securing arrangements in accordance with the *Rules for Ergonomic Container Lashing,* will be eligible to be assigned the special features notation **ECL** (Ergonomic Container Lashing), with supplementary descriptor.

PART

4

CHAPTER **8** **Container Ships**

SECTION **14** **Direct calculation**

14. 1 Procedures for calculation of combined longitudinal and torsional strength

14. 1. 1 For container ships as defined in Pt 4, Ch 8, 1.3 Class notations 1.3.3, longitudinal strength calculations are to be made in accordance with Parts A and B of ACSPlus SDA Procedure for container ships, *See also* Table 8. 14. 1: Summary of direct calculation analysis requirements for container ships.

14. 1. 2 The global, primary and local structure scantlings are to be assessed using the vertical and horizontal wave bending moments and shear forces and torsional wave moments derived using non-linear ship motion analysis based on equivalent design sea state methods where one or more of the following conditions applies:

a. B > 60 m

b. L > 425 m

The methodology to calculate the non-linear ship motion wave loads is given in ACSPlus *Guidance Notes on the Assessment of Global Design Loads of Large Container Ships and Other Ships Prone to Whipping and Springing*.

14. 2 Procedures for verification of primary structure scantlings

14. 2. 1 For container ships as defined in Pt 4, Ch 8, 1.3 Class notations 1.3.3, the strength of the ship's primary structure scantlings of double bottom, side and transverse bulkheads is to be assessed in accordance with Part C of *ACSPlus SDA Guideline for container ships.* The vertical wave bending moments are to be calculated in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 8, 16.6, Design vertical wave bending moments. All other hull girder loads are to be calculated in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 8, 3.3, Combined longitudinal and torsional strength.

14. 2. 2 For other container ships the method for analysis of primary structure of double bottom, side structure and transverse bulkheads is to be agreed with ACS.

14. 3 Procedures for verification of structural response due to whipping, springing and fatigue

14. 3. 1 The ACSPlus notations **WDA1** and **WDA2** are mandatory for container ships as indicated in Table 8. 14. 1: Summary of direct calculation analysis requirements for container ships, and where the ultimate strength of the hull girder is assessed against the extreme wave bending moments including whipping and wave impact loads, in accordance with ACSPlus Guideline *Global Design Loads of Container Ships and Other Ships Prone to Whipping and Springing:*

Table 8. 14. 1: Summary of direct calculation analysis requirements for container ships

Rule requirement *See* Note 1	Rule reference	ACSPlus notation	Application criteria. If any of the following criteria apply then the appropriate analysis is required					
			Length criteria	Any of $\|f_{fs}\| > 1.55$ or $f_{bow} > 1.85$	$f_c > f_{sp}$	Deck or hatch side coaming steel grade ≥ HT47	Bottom steel grade ≥ HT36 *See* Note 5	Breadth criteria
ACSPlus SDA Guideline for container ships	Pt 4, Ch 8, 1.3 Class notations 1.3.3	**SDA**	L>150	—	—	—	—	B>32
Non-linear ship motion analysis to calculate combined vertical, horizontal and torsional loads	Pt 4, Ch 8, 14.1 Procedures for calculation of combined longitudinal and torsional strength 14.1.2	—	L>425	—	—	—	—	B>60
Fatigue assessment	Pt 4, Ch 8, 14.3 Procedures for verification of structural response due to whipping, springing and fatigue 14.3.2	**FDA** (*See* Note 3)	L>350	—	L>250	Yes	Yes	—
Whipping assessment Level 1 *See Note 4*	Pt 4, Ch 8, 14.3 Procedures for verification of structural response due to whipping, springing and fatigue 14.3.1	**WDA1**	—	—	—	—	—	B>32
Whipping assessment Level 2 *See Note 4*	Pt 4, Ch 8, 14.3 Procedures for verification of structural response due to whipping, springing and fatigue 14.3.1	**WDA2**	L>350	L>275	—	Yes	Yes	—
Springing assessment *See* Note 2	Pt 4, Ch 8, 14.3 Procedures for verification of structural response due to whipping, springing and fatigue 14.3.2	**FDA SPR**	L>50	—	L>250	Yes	Yes	—
Symbols and definitions								
f_{fs} is defined in Pt 4, Ch 8, 16.6 Design vertical wave bending moments 16.6.1								

f_{bow} is defined in Pt 4, Ch 8, 16.6 Design vertical wave bending moments 16.6.3

f_c is a wave encounter frequency at which it is expected that springing will become important

$$= \frac{1.3}{2\pi}\left(1 + \frac{1.3V}{2g}\right) Hz$$

f_{sp} is the natural frequency of the 2 node hull girder vertical bending mode in Hz. This can be very approximately calculated as:

$$= \left(\frac{1.1}{\pi L^2}\right)\sqrt{\frac{EI10^5}{1.8BT_dC_b}} Hz$$

V = speed in knots as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1 Principal particulars 6.1.10

E = Young's modulus in N/mm^2
= $206000\ \mathrm{N/mm^2}$ for steel

I = midship moment of inertia in m^4, *See* Pt 3, Ch 4 Longitudinal Strength

T_d = design (normal standard operating) draught, in metres

C_b, L, and B are given in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6 Definitions.

Note *1* The stated rule requirements may be deemed applicable to ships that do not meet the application criteria but where the structural configuration is such as to necessitate them.

Note *2* The results of the springing assessment may also need a fatigue assessment procedure to be undertaken.

Note *3* If ACSPlus notation **FDA** is to be assigned, the requirements of ACSPlus FDA Guideline are to be complied with; this may require calculations additional to those implied by Pt 4, Ch 8, 14.3 Procedures for verification of structural response due to whipping, springing and fatigue 14.3.2.

Note 4 A Level 2 Whipping Assessment may be carried out instead of a Level 1 Whipping Assessment at the Owner's request. Where a level 2 Whipping Assessment is undertaken, a Level 1 Whipping Assessment need not be carried out.

Note 5 This is applicable only when a bottom steel grade greater than or equal to HT36 is needed to satisfy the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 8, 16 Longitudinal strength calculations.

14. 3. 2 The ACSPlus notation **FDA SPR** is mandatory for container ships as indicated in Table 8. 14. 1: Summary of direct calculation analysis requirements for container ships, and where the fatigue performance of the hull girder taking into account the effects from springing, is assessed in accordance with *ACSPLus Guideline Global Design Loads of Container Ship and Other Ships Prone to Whipping and Springing*, which also makes reference to *ACSPlus FDA Guideline*.

PART

4

CHAPTER 8 Container Ships

SECTION 15 Requirements for ships with large deck openings

15. 1 Application

15. 1. 1 The combined stresses due to vertical bending moment, horizontal bending moment and torque are to be calculated as described in this Section.

15. 2 Symbols and definitions

15. 2. 1 The following symbols and definitions are applicable to this Section unless otherwise stated:

Z_Y = actual hull section modulus about the transverse neutral axis at the position considered, in m^3

Z_Z = actual hull section modulus about the vertical neutral axis at the position considered, in m^3

ε = shear centre distance below baseline, may be taken as the maximum shear centre distance below baseline of the ship in the midship region, in metres. ε is taken as positive where the shear centre is below the baseline

M_S = design still water bending moment at the section under consideration, in kN m

σ_C = combined stress at the position considered.

15. 3 Design loadings

15. 3. 1 The design vertical wave bending moments, M_{WC1} and M_{WC2}, at any position along the ship is defined as:

M_{WC1} = $0.0505C_0C_{31}L^2B(C_b + 0.7)$kNm

M_{WC2} = $0.0505C_0C_{32}L^2B(C_b + 0.7)$kNm

C_{31}, C_{32} = vertical wave bending moment distribution coefficients depending on the longitudinal position from A.P. as defined in Table 8. 15. 1: Distribution of wave bending moments

C_0 = $11.65\left(0.6 + 0.0942\left(\frac{L}{100} - 1\right)\right)$

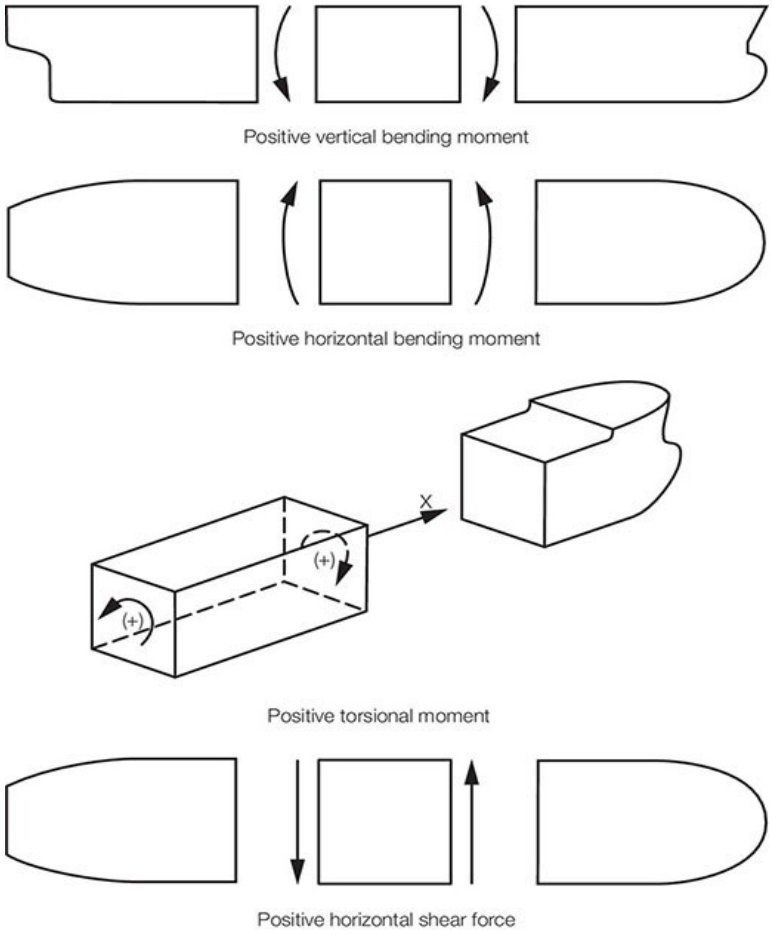
L, B, C_b are given in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6 Definitions.

The sign convention is given in Figure 8. 15. 1: Sign conventions for hull girder loads

Table 8. 15. 1: Distribution of wave bending moments

Position		C_{31}	C_{32}
Station	0 (A.P.)	0.000	0.000
	1	0.062	0.018
	2	0.158	0.017
	3	0.305	-0.008
	4	0.460	-0.058
	5	0.611	-0.137
	6	0.732	-0.235
	7	0.817	-0.350
	8	0.850	-0.458
	9	0.836	-0.548
	$10(\text{mid} - L_{\text{pp}})$	0.780	-0.607
	11	0.683	-0.615
	12	0.555	-0.571
	13	0.415	-0.498
	14	0.275	-0.404
	15	0.165	-0.302
	16	0.085	-0.208
	17	0.041	-0.132
	18	0.022	-0.074
	19	0.010	-0.028
	20 (F. P.)	0.000	-0.000
Note Intermediate values are to be determined by linear interpolation.			

Figure 8. 15. 1: Sign conventions for hull girder loads



15. 3. 2 The design horizontal wave bending moments, M_{HC1} and M_{HC2}, at any position along the ship are defined as:

M_{HC1} = $0.2063C_0C_{41}L^2T(C_b + 0.7)$kNm

M_{HC2} = $0.2063C_0C_{42}L^2T(C_b + 0.7)$kNm

C_{41}, C_{42} = horizontal wave bending moment distribution coefficients depending on the longitudinal position from A.P. as defined in Table 8. 15. 2: Distribution of horizontal wave bending moments and hydrodynamic torques

C_0 is defined in Pt 4, Ch 8, 15.3 Design loadings 15.3.1
L, T ,C_b are given in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6 Definitions.
The sign convention is given in Figure 8. 15. 1: Sign conventions for hull girder loads.

Table 8. 15. 2: Distribution of horizontal wave bending moments and hydrodynamic torques

Position	C_{41}	C_{42}	C_{51}	C_{52}	K_{31}	K_{32}
Station 0 (A.P.)	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000
1	–0.016	0.010	–0.289	0.235	0.101	–0.113

2	–0.046	0.046	–0.456	0.525	0.211	–0.304
3	–0.097	0.119	–0.455	0.754	0.276	–0.486
4	–0.154	0.228	–0.342	0.910	0.277	–0.659
5	–0.208	0.369	–0.184	0.988	0.214	–0.804
6	–0.242	0.533	–0.022	1.000	0.089	–0.860
7	–0.247	0.699	0.169	0.944	–0.083	–0.801
8	–0.217	0.846	0.323	0.851	–0.268	–0.662
9	–0.153	0.948	0.439	0.727	–0.422	–0.404
$10(\text{mid} - L_{\text{pp}})$	–0.072	0.997	0.522	0.585	–0.485	–0.090
11	0.014	0.985	0.562	0.443	–0.447	0.232
12	0.087	0.915	0.544	0.288	–0.338	0.483
13	0.136	0.802	0.472	0.111	–0.227	0.734
14	0.158	0.657	0.260	–0.011	–0.094	0.913
15	0.151	0.502	–0.074	–0.121	0.067	0.998
16	0.123	0.349	–0.366	–0.082	0.185	0.952
17	0.083	0.214	–0.385	0.039	0.245	0.821
18	0.043	0.106	–0.198	0.062	0.220	0.627
19	0.013	0.034	–0.075	0.052	0.133	0.326
20 (F.P.)	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000

Note Intermediate values are to be determined by linear interpolation.

15. 3. 3 The design hydrodynamic torques, M_{WTC1} and M_{WTC2}, at any position along the ship are defined as:

$M_{\text{WTC1}} = M_{\text{WTCB1}} + M_{\text{WTCQ1}}$

$M_{\text{WTCB1}} = 0.0728C_0C_{51}LB^2(C_b + 0.7)\text{kNm}$

$M_{\text{WTCQ1}} = -(0.65T + \varepsilon)\text{Q}_{\text{HC1}}\text{kNm}$

$M_{\text{WTC2}} = M_{\text{WTCB2}} + M_{\text{WTCQ2}}$

$M_{\text{WTCB2}} = 0.0728C_0C_{52}LB^2(C_b + 0.7)\text{kNm}$

$M_{\text{WTCQ2}} = -(0.65T + \text{E})\text{Q}_{\text{HC2}}\text{kNm}$

C_{51}, C_{52} = hydrodynamic torque distribution coefficients depending on the longitudinal position from A.P. as defined in Table 8. 15. 2: Distribution of horizontal wave bending moments and hydrodynamic torques

C_0 is defined in Pt 4, Ch 8, 15.3 Design loadings 15.3.1

$Q_{\text{HC1}} = 0.8683\text{C}_0K_{31}LT(C_\text{b} + 0.7)\text{kN}$

$Q_{\text{HC2}} = 0.8683\text{C}_0K_{32}LT(C_\text{b} + 0.7)\text{kN}$

K_{31}, K_{32} = horizontal wave shear force distribution coefficients depending on the longitudinal position from A.P. as defined in Table 8. 15. 2: Distribution of horizontal wave bending moments and hydrodynamic torques

L, B, T, C_b, are given in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6 Definitions.

ε is given in Pt 4, Ch 8, 15.2 Symbols and definitions 15.2.1

The sign convention is given in Figure 8. 15. 1: Sign conventions for hull girder loads.

15. 3. 4 The value and distribution of static cargo torque, M_{STC}, are to be specified by the designer based on the intended operation of the ship and are not to be less than minimum design value of static cargo torque. The minimum design value of static cargo torque, M_{STC}, at any position along the ship is defined as:

M_{STC} = $15.7C_6B(\eta_s\eta_t + 0.7N_{sd}N_{td})$kNm

η_s = the maximum number of stacks of containers over the breadth of the cargo hold

η_t = the maximum number of tiers of containers in the cargo hold amidships, excluding containers above the main deck or on the hatch covers

C_6 = distribution coefficient depending on the length, L_{pp}, as defined in Table 8. 15. 3: Static cargo torque distribution factor

N_{sd} = the maximum number of stacks of containers over the breadth, B, on hatch covers or above the main deck

N_{td} = the number of tiers of containers on hatch covers or above the main deck amidships, excluding containers in cargo holds

B is given in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6 Definitions.

Table 8. 15. 3: Static cargo torque distribution factor

Position		Factor C_6
Station	0 (A. P.)	0.0
	5	1.0
	15	1.0
	20 (F. P.)	0.0
Note Intermediate values are to be determined by linear interpolation.		

15. 4 Combined stress

15. 4. 1 Combined stress calculations are to be carried out at least at the following positions along the length of the ship:

a. At the forward and aft ends of the engine room.
b. At the forward and aft ends of the deck-house for multi-island designs.
c. At the forward and aft transverse bulkhead positions of each cargo bay.
d. At the forward and aft transverse bulkhead of fuel oil deep tanks.
e. At any other sections where there are significant changes in cross-section properties.

15. 4. 2 The combined stress, σ_c, is to be less than the permissible stress given in Table 8. 15. 4: Permissible stress. σ_c, is to be taken as the greatest magnitude of the following stresses:

σ_{c1} = $\sqrt{(\sigma_1 - (1-f)\sigma_{WC1})^2 + (\sigma_2 - (1-f)\sigma_{WC2})^2} + \sigma_{SC} - |\sigma_{STC}|$

σ_{c2} = $\sqrt{(\sigma_1 - (1-f)\sigma_{WC1})^2 + (\sigma_2 - (1-f)\sigma_{WC2})^2} + \sigma_{SC} - |\sigma_{STC}|$

σ'_{c1} = $\sqrt{(\sigma'_1 - (1-f)\sigma_{WC1})^2 + (\sigma'_2 - (1-f)\sigma_{WC2})^2} + \sigma_{SC} - |\sigma_{STC}|$

σ'_{c2} = $-\sqrt{(\sigma'_1 - (1-f)\sigma_{WC1})^2 + (\sigma'_2 - (1-f)\sigma_{WC2})^2} + \sigma_{SC} - |\sigma_{STC}|$

where

σ_1 = $\sigma_{WC1} + \sigma_{HC1} + \sigma_{WTC1}$

σ_2 = $\sigma_{WC2} + \sigma_{HC2} + \sigma_{WTC2}$

σ'_1 = $\sigma_{WC1} - \sigma_{HC1} - \sigma_{WTC1}$

σ'_2 = $\sigma_{WC2} - \sigma_{HC2} - \sigma_{WTC2}$

For σ_{C1}

f = $\left|f_{fH}\right|$ if $M_{WC} \geq 0, f = \left|f_{fS}\right|$ if $M_{WC} > 0$

f = $\left|f_{fH}\right|$ if $M_{WC} \leq 0, f = \left|f_{fS}\right|$ if $M_{WC} > 0$

where

M_{WC} = $M_{WC1}\frac{\sigma_1}{\sqrt{\sigma_1^2 + \sigma_2^2}} + M_{WC2}\frac{\sigma_2}{\sqrt{\sigma_1^2 + \sigma_2^2}}$

For σ'_{C1}

f = $\left|f_{fH}\right|$ if $M_{WC'} \geq 0, f = \left|f_{fS}\right|$ if $M_{WC'} > 0$

For σ'_{C2}

f = $\left|f_{fH}\right|$ if $M_{WC'} \leq 0, f = \left|f_{fS}\right|$ if $M_{WC'} > 0$

where

M_{WC}' = $M_{WC1}\frac{\sigma'_1}{\sqrt{\sigma_1'^2 + \sigma_2'^2}} + M_{WC2}\frac{\sigma'_2}{\sqrt{\sigma_1'^2 + \sigma_2'^2}}$

σ_{SC} = longitudinal stress due to hogging or sagging design still water bending moment M_s

σ_{WC1}, σ_{WC2} = longitudinal stress due to vertical wave bending moments

σ_{HC1}, σ_{HC2} = longitudinal stress due to horizontal wave bending moments

σ_{STC} = longitudinal warping stress due to static cargo torque

σ_{WTC1}, σ_{WTC2} = longitudinal warping stress due to hydrodynamic torques

f_{fH}, f_{fS} = hogging and sagging vertical bending moment correction factors calculated in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 8, 16.6 Design vertical wave bending moments 16.6.1

M_{WC1}, M_{WC2} = vertical bending moments defined in Pt 4, Ch 8, 15.3, Design loadings 15.3.1 at the longitudinal position considered

other symbols are as defined in Pt 4, Ch 8, 15.3, Design loadings and Pt 4, Ch 8, 15.4 Combined stress.

15. 4. 3 For ships with a beam greater than 32 m, longitudinal stresses are to be calculated using a finite element model of the entire hull in accordance with Part A of the *ACSPlus SDA Guideline* for container ships.

15. 4. 4 For ships with a beam less than or equal to 32 m, the longitudinal stresses may be obtained as follows:

$$\sigma_{SC} = \frac{M_s}{Z_y} \times 10^{-3} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

$$\sigma_{WC} = \frac{M_{wC}}{Z_y} \times 10^{-3} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

$$\sigma_{HC1} = C_7 \frac{M_{HCl}}{Z_z} \times 10^{-3} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

$$\sigma_{HC2} = C_7 \frac{M_{HC2}}{Z_z} \times 10^{-3} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

σ_{WTC1}, σ_{WTC2} and σ_{STC} are to be evaluated by approved calculation procedures.

C_7 = coefficient for shear lag depending on vertical location of the point under consideration

= 0.6 at inboard edge of strength deck

= 1.0 at base line

= intermediate positions by interpolation

Z_y and Z_z are given in Pt 4, Ch 8, 15.2 Symbols and definitions 15.2.1.

15. 4. 5 At each section the stresses are to be calculated on the port and starboard sides, at:

a. the inboard edge of the strength deck;
b. the point on the bilge where the combined stress is greatest; and
c. the top of continuous hatch coaming (where fitted).

15. 4. 6 Where the ship's length is greater than 425 m or the ship's beam is greater than 60 m, the vertical wave bending moments, horizontal wave bending moments and hydrodynamic torques are to be obtained from a direct calculation method. Alternatively, the hull stresses may be obtained using a probabilistic approach response-based analysis method considering the ship's responses in wave environment. The analysis method is to be agreed with ACS.

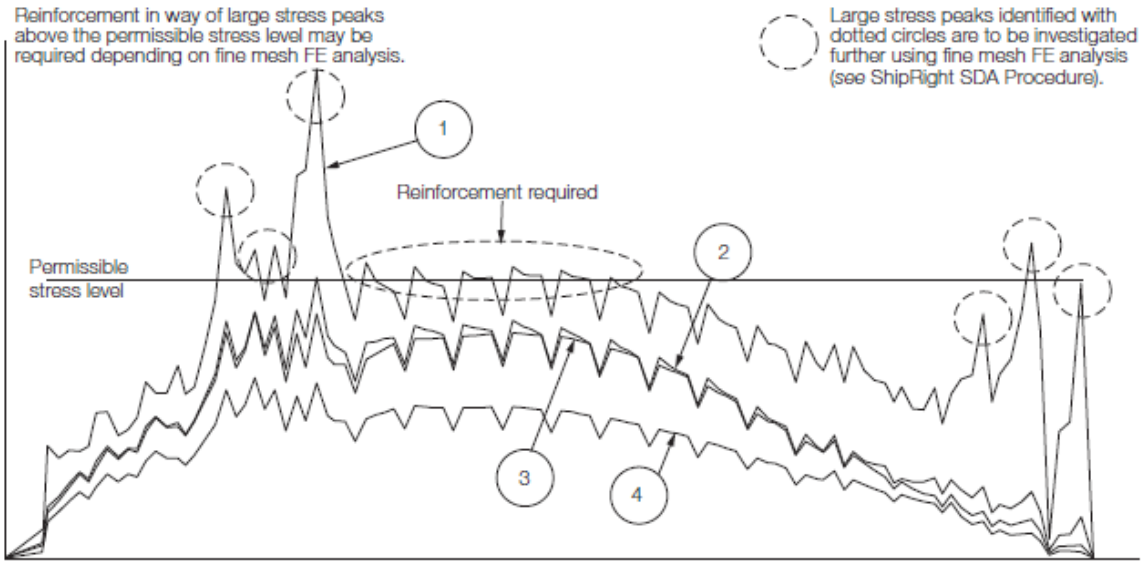
15. 5 Permissible stress

Table 8. 15. 4: Permissible stress

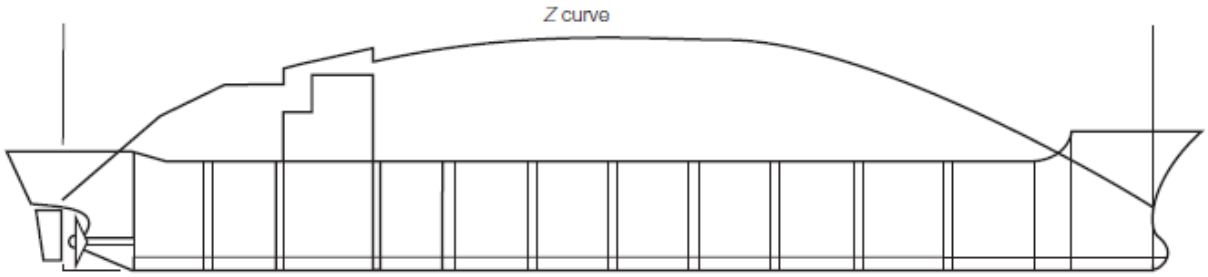
Position	Permissible combined stress, N/mm^2
Top of continuous hatch coaming	$\sigma_c = \frac{175}{K_L}$
Elsewhere	$\sigma_c = \frac{157}{K_L}$

15. 5. 1 The maximum tensile or compressive combined stress σ_c at any position along the length is not to be more than indicated in Table 8. 15. 4: Permissible stress.

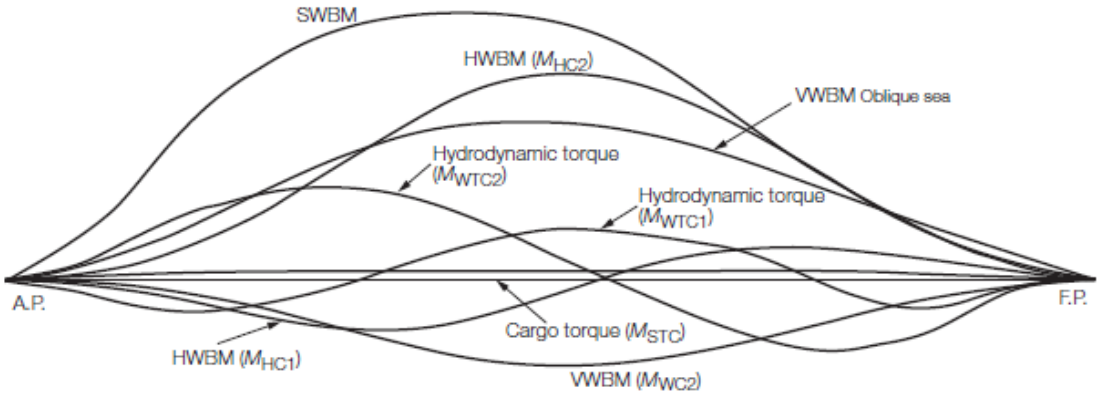
Figure 8. 15. 2: Combined stress diagram for deck - Oblique sea



(a) Longitudinal stress distributions at top of hatch coaming showing contributions from:
1) still water bending moment + vertical wave bending moment + static cargo torque + horizontal wave bending moment and hydrodynamic torque
2) still water bending moment + vertical wave bending moment + static cargo torque
3) still water bending moment + vertical wave bending moment
4) still water bending moment



(b) Ship Profile and Section modulus



(c) Oblique Sea longitudinal distribution of vertical and horizontal bending moments and torques

NOTES
1. These diagrams are for illustration only and are not to scale.
2. A similar diagram is to be prepared for the bottom structure.

PART

4

CHAPTER **8 Container Ships**

SECTION **16 Longitudinal strength calculations**

16. 1 Longitudinal extent of strength assessment

16. 1. 1 The stiffness, yield strength, buckling strength and hull girder strength assessment are to be carried out with due consideration given to locations where there are significant changes in the hull cross-section.

16. 2 Symbols

16. 2. 1 The symbols used in this Section are defined as follows:

C_w = Waterplane coefficient at scantling draught T, to be taken as:

C_w = $A_W/(LB)$

A_w = Waterplane area at scantling draught T, in m^2

E = Modulus of elasticity, in N/mm^2

M_s = Design still water bending moment, sagging (negative) and hogging (positive), in kNm

$\overline{M_s}$ = Maximum permissible still water bending moment, sagging (negative) and hogging (positive), in kNm, to be taken negative or positive according to the convention given in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.3 Design still water bending moments 5.3.2

M_w = Design hull vertical wave bending moment, sagging (negative) and hogging (positive), in kNm, to be taken negative or positive according to the convention given Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.3 Design still water bending moments 5.3.2

M_U = Hull girder ultimate bending moment capacity, in kNm

Q_s = Design hull still water shear force, in kN, to be taken as negative or positive according to the convention given in Pt 3, Ch 4, 6.4 Design still water shear force 6.4.2

$\overline{Q_s}$ = Permissible hull still water shear force, in kN.

Q_w = Design hull wave shear force, in kN, to be taken as negative or positive according to the convention given in Pt 3, Ch 4, 6.4 Design still water shear force 6.4.2

q_v = Shear flow along the cross-section under consideration

I_{net} = Net vertical hull girder moment of inertia at the cross-section under consideration, in m^4, to be determined using net scantlings as defined in Table 8. 16. 3: Combination of still water and wave bending moments and shear forces

σ_{HG} = Hull girder bending stress, in N/mm^2

τ_{HG} = Hull girder shear stress, in N/mm^2

z = Vertical co-ordinate of location under consideration, in m

z_n = Distance from baseline to the horizontal neutral axis, in m

16. 3 Corrosion margin and net thickness

16. 3. 1 The strength is to be assessed using the net thickness approach for all scantlings.

16. 3. 2 The net thickness of the plates, webs and flanges is obtained as follows:

$$t_{net} = t_{as_built} - t_{vol_add} - \alpha t_c$$

Where

t_{net} = Net thickness, in mm

t_{as_built} = As built thickness, in mm

t_{vol_add} = Voluntary addition, in mm

α = is given in Table 8. 16. 1: Values of corrosion addition factor

Table 8. 16. 1: Values of corrosion addition factor

Structural requirement	Property/analysis type	Corrosion addition factor, α
Strength assessment	Section properties	0.5
Buckling strength	Section properties (stress determination)	0.5
	Buckling capacity	1.0
Hull girder ultimate strength	Section properties	0.5
	Buckling/collapse capacity	0.5

16. 3. 3 Where voluntary additions are to be applied, they are to be clearly indicated on the plans.

16. 3. 4 The total corrosion addition for both sides of a structural member is obtained as follows:

$$t_c = (t_{c1} + t_{c2}) + t_{res}$$

Where

t_{c1} , t_{c2} re given in Pt 4, Ch 8, 16.3 Corrosion margin and net thickness 16.3.6

t_{res} = reserve thickness, in mm, to be taken as 0.5 mm

16. 3. 5 For an internal member within a given compartment, the total corrosion addition is obtained as follows:

$$t_c = (2t_{c1}) + t_{res}$$

16. 3. 6 The corrosion addition of a stiffener is to be determined based on the compartment in which it is located, *See* Pt 4, Ch 8, 16.3 Corrosion margin and net thickness 16.3.6

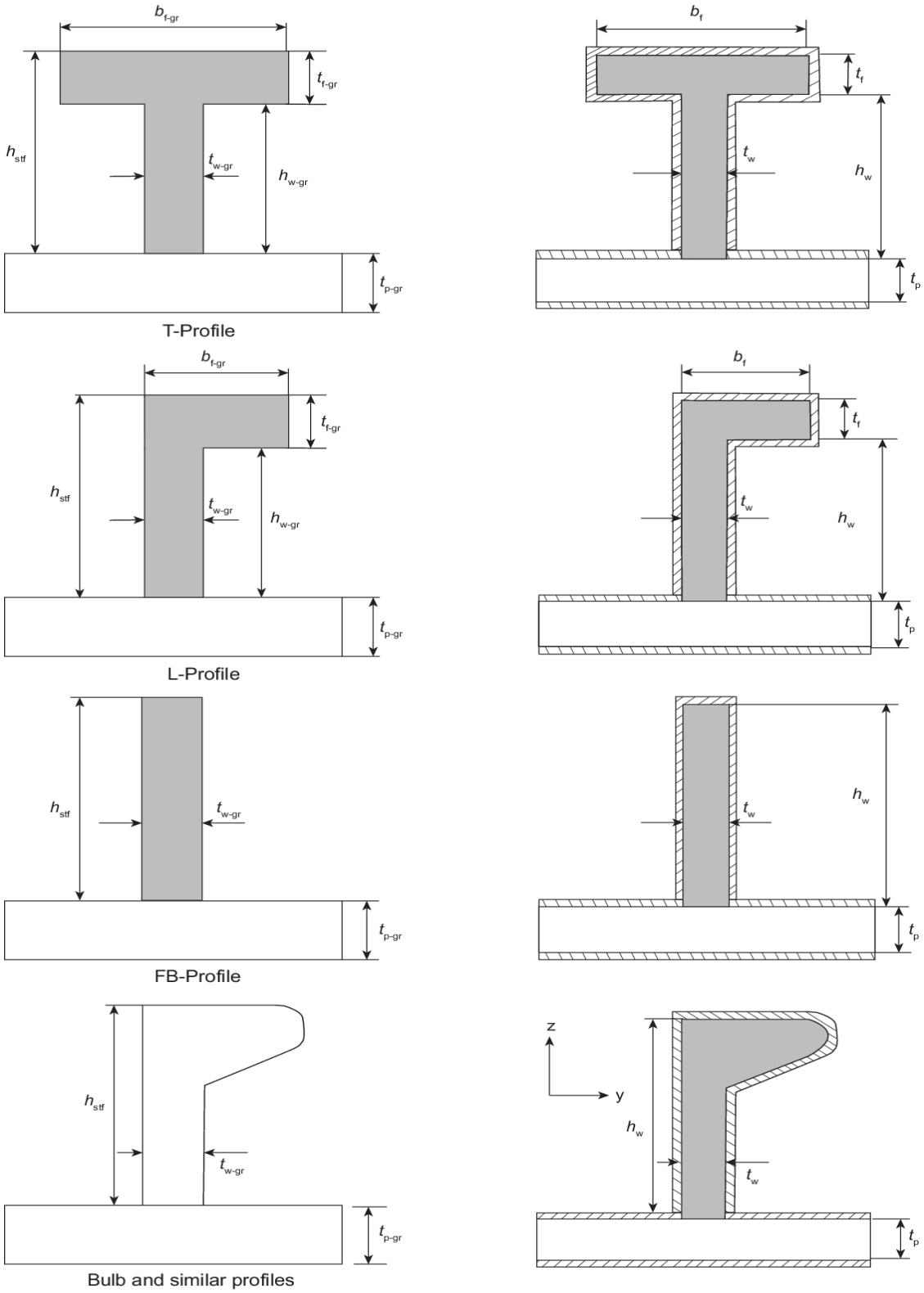
Table 8. 16. 2: Corrosion addition for one side of a structural member

Compartment type	One side corrosion addition t_c or t_{c2} in mm
Exposed to sea water	1.0
Exposed to atmosphere	1.0
Ballast water tank	1.0
Void and dry spaces	0.5
Fresh water, fuel oil and lube oil tank	0.5
Accommodation spaces	0.0
Container holds	1.0
Compartment types not mentioned above	0.5

16. 3. 7 The net section modulus, moment of inertia and shear area properties of a supporting member are to be calculated using the net dimension of the attached plate, web and flange as defined in Figure 8. 16. 1: Net sectional properties of supporting members

16. 3. 8 The net cross-sectional area, the moment of inertia about the axis parallel to the attached plate and the associated neutral axis are to be determined through applying a corrosion magnitude of deducted from the surface of the profile cross-section.

Figure 8. 16. 1: Net sectional properties of supporting members



16. 4 Permissible still water bending moments and shear forces

16. 4. 1 The permissible still water bending moments, M_s in kNm, and still water shear forces, Q_s in kNm, are to be calculated at each section along the ship's length for design loading conditions as specified in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.3, Design still water bending moments.

16. 5 Hull moment of inertia

16. 5. 1 The hull section moment of inertia about the transverse neutral axis, at any position along the ship, is to be not less than the following for both hogging and sagging cases (*See also* Table 8. 16. 3: Combination of still water and wave bending moments and shear forces):

$$I_{ne1} \geq 1.55L|M_s + M_w| \times 10^{-7} m^4$$

16. 6 Design vertical wave bending moments

16. 6. 1 The appropriate hogging or sagging design hull vertical wave bending moment, at any position along the ship, may be taken as follows:

$$M_w = 1.5 f_1 f_2 L^3 C_3 C_w \left(\frac{B}{L}\right)^{0.8} K_f$$

Where

f_1 is the ship service factor, to be taken as 0.85

C_W and C_3 are given in Pt 4, Ch 8, 16.2 Symbols 16.2.1 and Pt 4, Ch 8, 16.6 Design vertical wave bending moments 16.6.2 respectively

f_2 is the hogging,f_{fH} , or the sagging, f_{fS} correction factor

f_{fH} is the hogging (positive) moment correction factor and is to be taken as:

$f_{fH} = 0.3\frac{C_b}{C_w}\sqrt{T}$ not to be taken greater than 1.1

f_{fS} is the sagging (negative) moment correction factor and is to be taken as:

$f_{fS} = 4.5\frac{1+0.2 f_{bow}}{C_w\sqrt{C_b}L^{0.3}}$, not to be taken less than 1.0

f_{bow} and K_f are given in Pt 4, Ch 8, 16.6, Design vertical wave bending moments 16.6.3 and Pt 4, Ch 8, 16.6 Design vertical wave bending moments 16.6.4 respectively

K_f is given in Pt 4, Ch 8, 16.6 Design vertical wave bending moments 16.6.4

B and L are given in Pt 4, Ch 8, 1.5, Symbols and definitions

16. 6. 2 The wave parameter, C_3, is to be taken as:

$$C_3 = 1 - 0.50\left(1 - \sqrt{\frac{L}{L_4}}\right)^{2.2} \text{ for } \quad L \leq L_4$$

$$C_3 = 1 - 0.45\left(\sqrt{\frac{L}{L_4}} - 1\right)^{1.7} \quad for\ L > L_4$$

Where

$$L_4 = 315C_w^{-1.3}$$

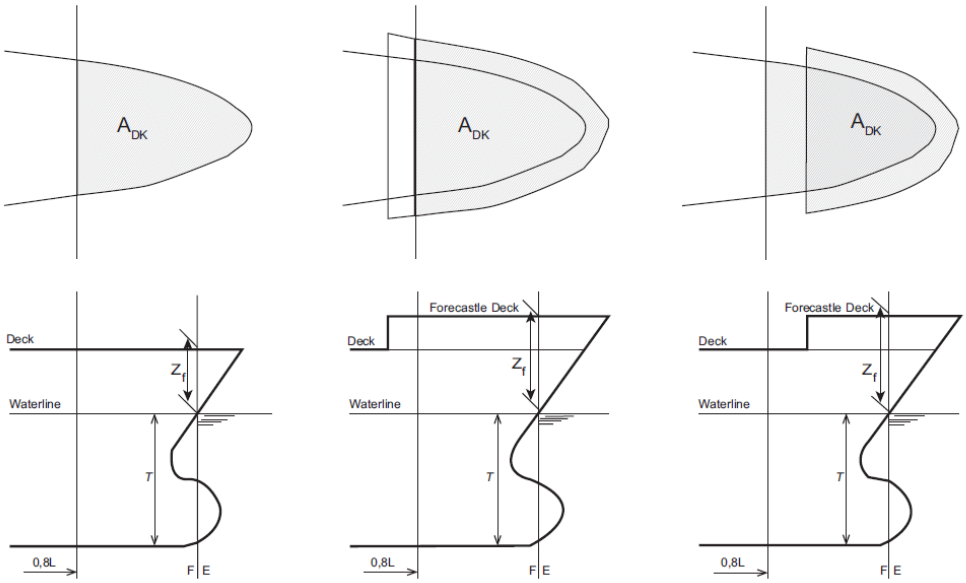
16. 6. 3 The bow flare shape, f_{bow} coefficient is to be taken as:

$$f_{bow} = \frac{A_{DK} - A_{WL}}{0.2Lz_f}$$

Where:

- A_{DK} is the projected area in the horizontal plane of the uppermost deck, in m^2, including the forecastle deck, if any, forward of 0.8L from the AP, *See also* Figure 8. 16. 2: Projected area ADK and vertical distance zf. Any other structures, e.g. plated bulwark, are to be excluded.
- $A_{WL}$is the waterplane area, in m^2, at draught T, forward of 0.8L from the AP
- z_f is the vertical distance, in m, from the waterline at draught T, to the uppermost deck at side (or forecastle deck), measured at the FP, *See also* Figure 8. 16. 2: Projected area ADK and vertical distance zf. Any other structures, e.g. plated bulwark, are to be excluded.

Figure 8. 16. 2: Projected area ADK and vertical distance zf



16. 6. 4 The distribution of the vertical wave bending moment, K_f , is to be taken as:

a. Hogging (positive) moments, *See also* Figure 8. 16. 3: Distribution of vertical wave bending moment Mw along the ship length

K_f = 0 at aft end of L

= 0.15 at 0.1 L

= 1.0 between 0.35 L and 0.55 L

= 0.25 at 0.8 L

= 0 at forward end of L

b. Sagging (negative) moments, *See also Fig 8.16.3*

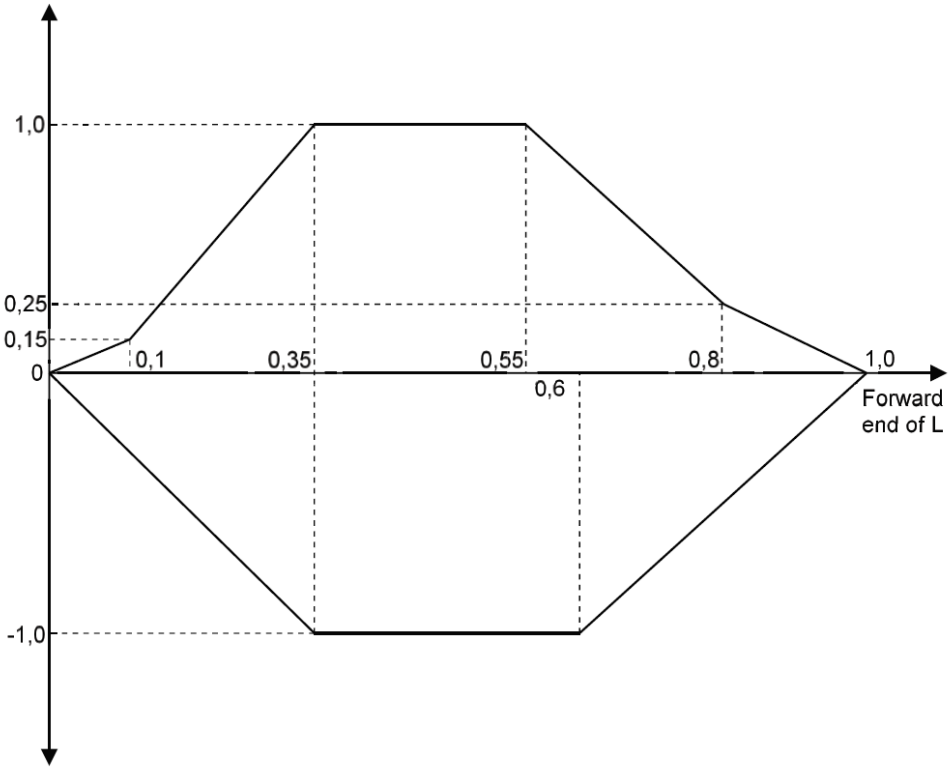
K_f = 0 at aft end of L

= -1.0 between 0.35 L and 0.6 L

= 0 at forward end of L

Intermediate values are to be obtained by linear interpolation.

Figure 8. 16. 3: Distribution of vertical wave bending moment Mw along the ship length



16. 7 Design vertical wave shear force

16. 7. 1 The design hull wave shear force,Q_w , at any position along the ship is to be taken as:

$$Q_w = K_f f_1 L^2 C_3 C_w \left(\frac{B}{L}\right)^{0.8}$$

Where

f_1 = ship service factor, to be taken as 0.85

C_w, C_3 and K_f are defined in Pt 4, Ch 8, 16.2, Symbols, Pt 4, Ch 8, 16.7 Design vertical wave shear force 16.7.2 and Pt 4, Ch 8, 16.7 Design vertical wave shear force 16.7.3 respectively B and L are given in Pt 4, Ch 8, 1.5 Symbols and definitions 1.5.1

16. 7. 2 The wave parameter, C_3, is to be taken as:

$$C_3 = 1 - 1.50\left(1 - \sqrt{\frac{L}{L_4}}\right)^{2.2} \quad f\text{or } L \le L_4$$

$$C_3 = 1 - 0.45\left(\sqrt{\frac{L}{L_4}} - 1\right)^{1.7} \quad f\text{or } L > L_4$$

Where

$$L_4 = 330C_w^{-1.3}$$

16. 7. 3 The distribution of the wave shear force, K_f, is to be taken as follows, *See also* Figure 8. 16. 4: Distribution of vertical shear force Qw along the ship length.

a. Positive shear force

K_f = 0 at aft end of L

K_f = $5.2(0.3 + 0.7f_{fH})$ between $0.2L$ and $0.3L$

K_f = 4.0 between $0.4L$ and $0.55L$

K_f = $5.7(0.25 + 0.75f_{fS})$ between $0.65L$ and $0.85L$

K_f = 0 at forward end of L

b. Negative shear force

K_f = $1.3(0.3 + 0.7f_{fS})$ at aft end of L

K_f = $5.2(0.3 + 0.7f_{fS})$ between $0.15L$ and $0.3L$

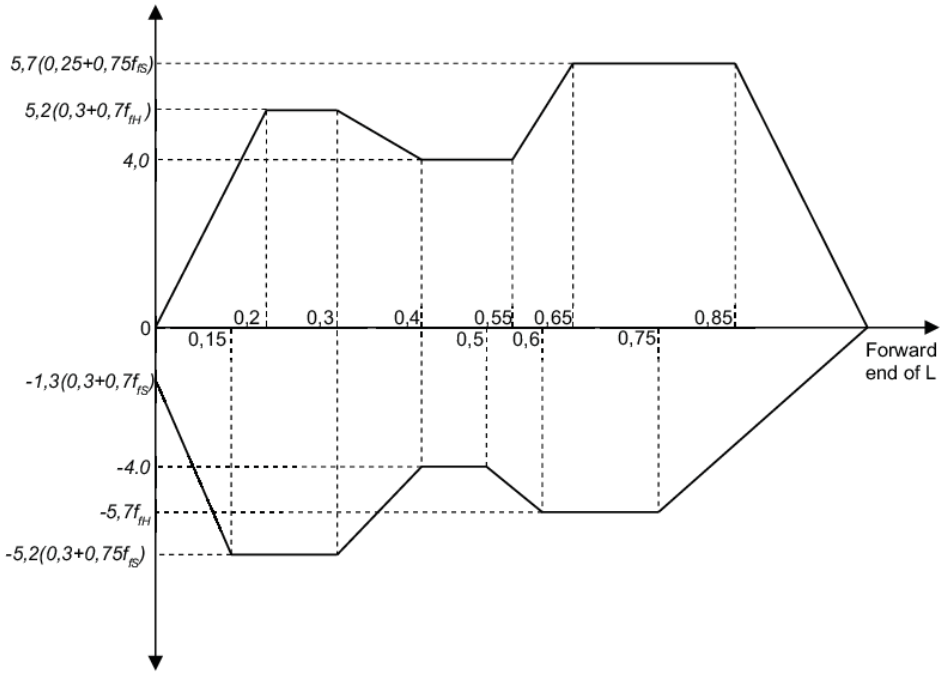
K_f = -4.0 between $0.4L$ and $0.5L$

K_f = $-5.7f_{fH}$ between $0.65L$ and $0.75L$

K_f = 0 at forward end of L

Intermediate values of K_f to be obtained by linear interpolation.
f_{fH} and f_{fS} are as defined in Pt 4, Ch 8, 16.6 Design vertical wave bending moments 16.6.1.

Figure 8. 16. 4: Distribution of vertical shear force Qw along the ship length



16. 8 Permissible hull girder stresses

16. 8. 1 The permissible combined (still water plus wave) stress for hull vertical bending, σ, is given by:

$$\sigma = \frac{190}{k,_L} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

16. 8. 2 The permissible shear stress, τ, is given by:

$$\tau = \frac{120}{k,_L} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

16. 9 Hull girder stresses

16. 9. 1 The hull girder bending stresses, σ_G, in N/mm^2 are to be determined for the section under consideration for the load cases given in Table 8. 16. 3: Combination of still water and wave bending moments and shear forces at the following locations:

a. At bottom.
b. At deck.
c. At top of hatch coaming.
d. At any point where there is a change of steel yield strength.

$$\sigma_G = \frac{\gamma_s M_s + \gamma_w M_w}{I_{net}} (z - z_n) \times 10^{-3}$$

Where

M_w and M_s are defined in Table 8. 16. 3: Combination of still water and wave bending moments and shear forces.

γ_s, γ_w are partial safety factors to be taken as:

γ_s = 1.0

γ_w = 1.0

And:

- I_{net} z and z_n is given in Pt 4, Ch 8, 16.2 Symbols 16.2.1

16. 9. 2 The hull girder shear stresses, τ_G, in N/mm^2 are to be determined for the section under consideration for the load cases given in Table 8. 16. 3: Combination of still water and wave bending moments and shear forces for all structural elements which contribute to the shear strength capability of the ship.

$$\tau_G = \frac{\gamma_s Q_s + \gamma_w Q_w}{t_{net}/q_v} \times 10^3$$

Where

Q_w and Q_s are defined in Table 8. 16. 3: Combination of still water and wave bending moments and shear forces.

γ_s, γ_w are partial safety factors to be taken as:

γ_s = 1.0

γ_w = 1.0

- q_v is calculated in accordance with the *ACSPlus Guideline Additional calculation procedures for longitudinal strength*

And:

- t_{net} is given in Pt 4, Ch 8, 16.2 Symbols 16.2.1

Table 8. 16. 3: Combination of still water and wave bending moments and shear forces

Load case	Bending moment		Shear force		
	Still water, M_s	Wave, M_w	Location, x	Still water, Q_s	Wave, Q_w
Hogging	M_{smax}	M_{wmax}	$x \leq 0.5L$	Q_{smax}	Q_{wmax}
			$x > 0.5L$	Q_{smin}	Q_{wmin}
Sagging	M_{smin}	M_{wmin}	$x \leq 0.5L$	Q_{smin}	Q_{wmin}
			$x > 0.5L$	Q_{smax}	Q_{wmax}
Symbols					
M_{smax} = positive still water bending moment at the cross-section under consideration					

M_{smin} = negative still water bending moment at the cross-section under consideration

M_{wmax} = wave bending moment at the cross-section under consideration, to be taken as the positive value of M_w as defined in Pt 4, Ch 8, 16.6 Design vertical wave bending moments 16.6.1

M_{wmin} = wave bending moment at the cross-section under consideration, to be taken as the negative value of M_w as defined in Pt 4, Ch 8, 16.6 Design vertical wave bending moments 16.6.1

Q_{smax} = positive still water shear force at the cross-section under consideration

Q_{smin} = negative still water shear force at the cross-section under consideration taken as

Q_{wmax} = maximum value of the wave shear force at the cross-section under consideration, to be taken as the positive value of Q_w as defined in Pt 4, Ch 8, 16.7 Design vertical wave shear force 16.7.1

Q_{wmin} = minimum value of the wave shear force at the cross-section under consideration, to be taken as the negative value of Q_w as defined in Pt 4, Ch 8, 16.7 Design vertical wave shear force 16.7.1

x = longitudinal coordinate or a location under consideration

16. 9. 3 The hull girder stresses for the two load cases (hogging and sagging) defined in Pt 4, Ch 8, 16.9 Hull girder stresses 16.9.1 and Pt 4, Ch 8, 16.9 Hull girder stresses 16.9.2 are to meet the following criteria:

$\sigma_{HG} < \sigma$

$\tau_{\mathrm{HG}} < \tau$

is the permissible combined bending stress as defined in Pt 4, Ch 8, 16.8 Permissible hull girder stresses 16.8.1

is the permissible shear stress as defined in Pt 4, Ch 8, 16.8 Permissible hull girder stresses 16.8.2

16. 10 Buckling strength assessment

16. 10. 1 The following requirements apply to plate panels and longitudinal stiffeners subject to hull girder bending and shear stresses.

16. 10. 2 The acceptance criteria for the buckling assessment are defined as follows:

$\eta_{\mathrm{act}} \leq 1$

Where:

η_{act} is the maximum utilisation factor

16. 10. 3 The utilisation factor, η_{act}, is given by:

$$\eta_{\mathrm{act}} = \frac{1}{\gamma_c}$$

Where:

γ_c is the stress multiplication factor at failure, *See* Figure 8. 16. 5: Example of failure state limit curve and stress multiplication factor at failure.

16. 10. 4 Failure state limits are defined in *ACSPlus Guideline Additional calculation procedures for longitudinal strength* for the following items:

a. Elementary plate panels
b. Overall stiffened panels
c. Longitudinal stiffeners

Each failure limit state is defined by an equation and, γ_c, is to be determined such that it satisfies the equation.

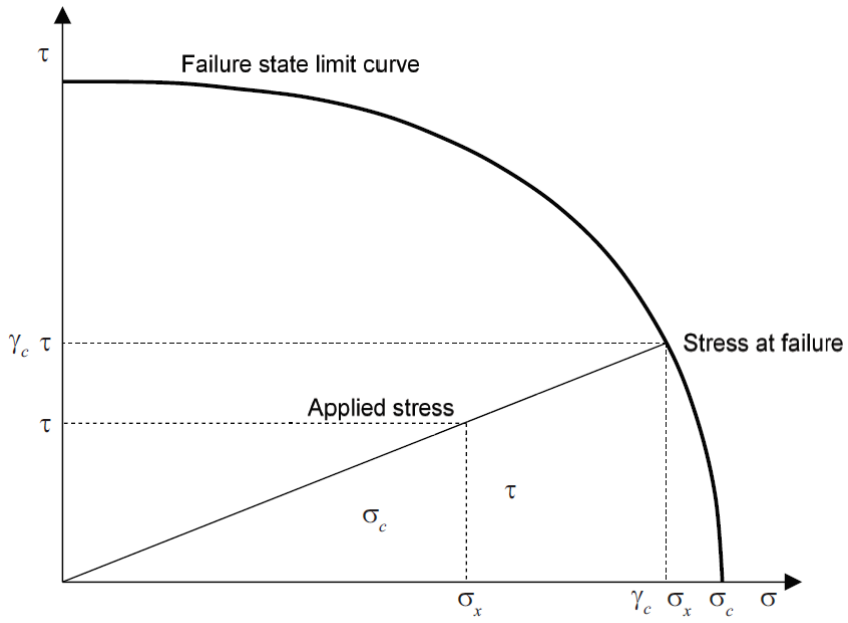
16. 10. 5 The stress multiplication factor at failure, γ_c, of a structural member is to be determined for any combination of longitudinal and shear stress, *See* Figure 8. 16. 5: Example of failure state limit curve and stress multiplication factor at failure.

Where:

σ_x τ_x is the applied stress combination for buckling given in Pt 4, Ch 8, 16.10, Buckling strength assessment

σ_c τ_c is the critical buckling stress obtained in accordance with the *ACSPlus Guideline Additional calculation procedures for longitudinal strength* for the stress combination for buckling σ and τ

Figure 8. 16. 5: Example of failure state limit curve and stress multiplication factor at failure



16. 10. 6 The following two stress combinations are to be considered for each of the load cases defined in Pt 4, Ch 8, 16.9 Hull girder stresses 16.9.1. The stresses are to be derived at the load calculation points defined in Pt 4, Ch 8, 16.10 Buckling strength assessment 16.10.7 and Pt 4, Ch 8, 16.10 Buckling strength assessment 16.10.8

a. Longitudinal framing

Stress combination 1 with:

$\sigma_x = \sigma_{HG}$

$\sigma_y = 0$

$\tau = 0.7\tau_{HG}$

Stress combination 2 with:

$\sigma_x = 0.7\sigma_{HG}$

$\sigma_y = 0$

$\tau = \tau_{HG}$

b. Transverse framing

Stress combination 1 with:

$\sigma_x = 0$

$\sigma_y = \sigma_{HG}$

$\tau = 0.7\tau_{HG}$

Stress combination 2 with:

$\sigma_x = 0$

$\sigma_y = 0.7\sigma_{HG}$

$\tau = \tau_{HG}$

16. 10. 7 The hull girder stresses for elementary plate panels are to be calculated at the load calculation points defined in Pt 4, Ch 8, 16.10 Buckling strength assessment 16.10.8.

16. 10. 8 The hull girder stresses for longitudinal stiffeners are to be calculated at the following load calculation points:

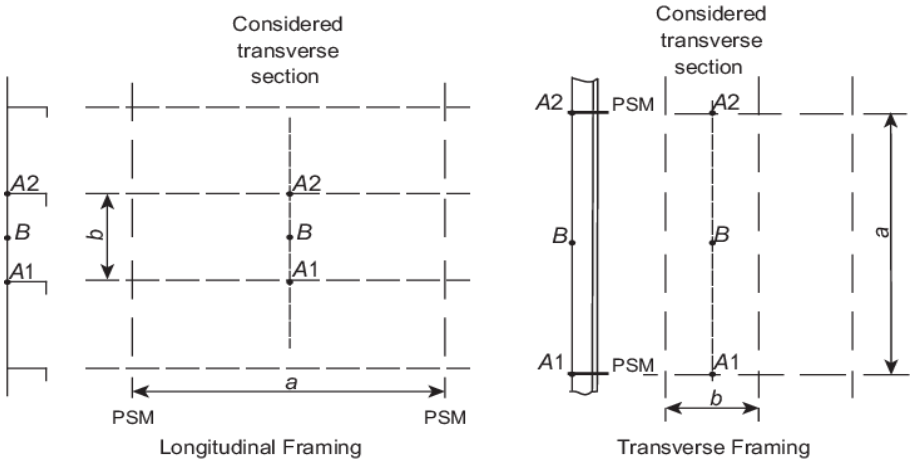
a. At the mid length of the stiffener under consideration

b. At the intersection point between the stiffener and its attached plate

Table 8. 16. 4: Load calculation points (LCP) for plate buckling assessment

LCP coordinates	Hull girder bending stress	Hull girder shear stress
x coordinate	Mid length of the elementary plate panel (EPP)	
y coordinate	Both upper and lower ends of the EPP, points A1 and A2 in Figure 8. 16. 6: Load calculation points for plate buckling	Mid-point of EPP, point B in Figure 8. 16. 6: Load calculation points for plate buckling
z coordinate	Distance from baseline to load calculation point	

Figure 8. 16. 6: Load calculation points for plate buckling



16. 11 Hull girder ultimate strength

16. 11. 1 The hull girder ultimate strength assessment is to be carried out for ships with a length L greater than or equal to 150 m.

16. 11. 2 The acceptance criteria given in Pt 4, Ch 8, 16.11 Hull girder ultimate strength 16.11.8, are applicable to intact ships only.

16. 11. 3 The hull girder ultimate bending capacity,M_U , is defined as the maximum bending moment capacity of the hull girder beyond which the hull structure collapses.

16. 11. 4 The hull girder ultimate bending capacity is to be checked for the load cases defined in Table 8. 16. 3: Combination of still water and wave bending moments and shear forces.

16. 11. 5 The ultimate bending moment capacities of a hull girder transverse section, in hogging and sagging conditions, are defined as the maximum values of the curve of bending moment M versus the curvature X of the transverse section considered

where:
M_{UH} is the hogging condition
M_{US} is the sagging condition
The curvature X is positive for the hogging condition and negative for the sagging condition, *See* Figure 8. 16. 7: Bending moment M versus curvature X

16. 11. 6 The hull girder ultimate bending capacity, M_U, is to be calculated using the incremental-iterative method as given in *Chapter 4 of ACSPlus Guideline Additional calculation procedures for longitudinal strength*.

16. 11. 7 The vertical hull girder bending moment, M in hogging and sagging conditions, to be considered in the ultimate strength check is to be taken as:

$$M = \gamma_s M_s + \gamma_w M_w$$

Where

M_s = permissible still water bending moment, in kNm, as defined in Pt 4, Ch 8, 16.4 Permissible still water bending moments and shear forces 16.4.1

M_w = vertical wave bending moment, in kNm, as defined in Pt 4, Ch 8, 16.6 Design vertical wave bending moments 16.6.1

γ_s = partial safety factor for the still water bending moment, to be taken as 1.0

γ_w = partial safety factor for the vertical wave bending moment, to be taken as 1.2

16. 11. 8 The hull girder ultimate bending capacity at any hull transverse section is to satisfy the following criteria:

$$M \leq \frac{M_U}{\gamma_M \gamma_{DB}}$$

Where

M = vertical bending moment, in kNm, as defined in Pt 4, Ch 8, 16.11 Hull girder ultimate strength 16.11.7

M_U = hull girder ultimate bending moment capacity, in kNm, as defined in Pt 4, Ch 8, 16.11 Hull girder ultimate strength 16.11.6

γ_M = partial safety factor covering material, geometric and strength prediction uncertainties, to be taken as 1.05

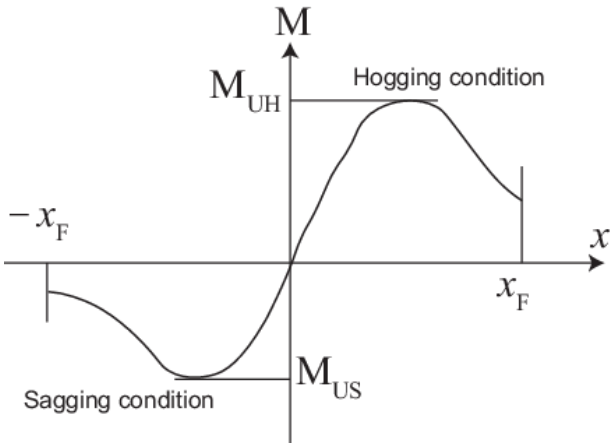
γ_{DB} = partial safety factor covering the effect of double bottom bending, to be taken as:

γ_{DB} = 1.15 for hogging condition درونRull؟ست اضافه سطر تا 2

γ_{DB} = 1.0 for sagging condition

For cross-sections where the double bottom breadth of the inner bottom is less than that at amidships or where the double bottom structure differs from that at amidships (e.g. engine room sections), the factor, γ_{DB}, for the hogging condition may be specially considered.

Figure 8. 16. 7: Bending moment M versus curvature X



PART

4

CHAPTER **9 Double Hull Oil Tankers**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**1795**
	1. 1	General	1795
	1. 2	Application and ship arrangement	1797
	1. 3	Class notation and applicable Rules for CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers	1801
	1. 4	Class notation and applicable Rules for non-CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers	1802
	1. 5	General definitions and symbols	1803
	1. 6	Information required for CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers	1805
	1. 7	Information required for Non-CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers	1806
SECTION 2	**Materials and protection**		**1807**
	2. 1	General	1807
	2. 2	Corrosion protection coatings for salt-water ballast spaces	1807
	2. 3	Aluminium structure, fittings and paint	1807
	2. 4	Other materials	1807
SECTION 3	**Longitudinal strength**		**1809**
	3. 1	General	1809
	3. 2	Symbols	1809
	3. 3	Loading conditions	1809
SECTION 4	**Hull envelope plating**		**1811**
	4. 1	General	1811
	4. 2	Symbols	1811
	4. 3	Deck plating	1814
	4. 4	Sheerstrake	1815
	4. 5	Shell plating	1815
	4. 6	Bilge plating	1815
	4. 7	Keel	1816

4. 8 Taper of higher tensile steel 1816
4. 9 Thicknesses at ends of erections 1816
4. 10 Deck openings 1816
4. 11 Shell openings 1817
4. 12 Superstructures 1817
SECTION 5 Hull framing 1818
5. 1 General 1818
5. 2 Symbols 1818
5. 3 Deck, side and bottom longitudinals 1820
5. 4 Bilge longitudinals and brackets 1822
5. 5 Deck longitudinals outside $0.4L$ amidships 1822
5. 6 Stability of longitudinals 1823
5. 7 Connections of longitudinals 1823
5. 8 Openings in longitudinals 1823
5. 9 Transverse side frames 1824
SECTION 6 Inner hull, inner bottom and longitudinal oiltight bulkheads 1825
6. 1 General 1825
6. 2 Symbols 1826
6. 3 Inner hull and longitudinal bulkheads 1828
6. 4 Longitudinal corrugated bulkheads 1829
6. 5 Inner bottom 1829
6. 6 Hopper side tank 1830
6. 7 Connections 1830
SECTION 7 Transverse oiltight bulkheads 1831
7. 1 General 1831
7. 2 Symbols 1832
7. 3 Corrugated bulkheads 1833
7. 4 Bulkheads supported by stools 1833
7. 5 Connections 1834
SECTION 8 Non-oiltight bulkheads 1835
8. 1 General 1835
8. 2 Symbols 1835
8. 3 Scantlings 1837
8. 4 Connections 1838
SECTION 9 Primary members supporting longitudinal framing 1839
9. 1 General 1839

9. 2 Symbols 1839
9. 3 Girders and floors in double bottom 1840
9. 4 Vertical webs and horizontal girders in wing ballast tanks and hopper spaces 1842
9. 5 Deck transverses and girders 1842
9. 6 Cross-ties 1842
9. 7 Primary members supporting oiltight bulkheads 1843
9. 8 Primary members supporting non-oiltight bulkheads 1844
SECTION 10 Construction details and minimum thickness 1845
10. 1 Symbols 1845
10. 2 Compartment minimum thickness 1845
10. 3 Geometric properties and proportions of members 1846
10. 4 Continuity of primary members 1846
10. 5 Primary member web plate stiffening 1846
10. 6 Inertia and dimensions of stiffeners 1848
10. 7 Application of stiffening requirements 1849
10. 8 Stiffening of continuous longitudinal girders 1849
10. 9 Stiffening of vertical webs on transverse bulkheads 1850
10. 10 Double bottom girders in way of docking supports 1850
10. 11 Lateral stability of primary members 1850
10. 12 Openings in web plating 1851
10. 13 Brackets connecting primary members 1851
10. 14 Arrangements at intersections of continuous secondary and primary members 1852
SECTION 11 Ships for alternate carriage of oil cargo and dry bulk cargo 1853
11. 1 Application 1853
11. 2 Class notations 1853
11. 3 Structural configuration and ship arrangement 1853
11. 4 Bulkheads in way of dry/oil cargo holds 1855
11. 5 Bulkheads in wing tanks of ore or oil carriers 1855
11. 6 Cofferdam bulkheads 1855
11. 7 Hatchways 1855
11. 8 Hatch coamings 1856
SECTION 12 Cargo temperatures 1857
12. 1 General 1857
12. 2 Loading and carriage of heated cargoes 1857

12. 3 Low temperature cargoes 1857
SECTION 13 Access arrangements and closing appliances 1858
13. 1 General 1858
13. 2 Access to spaces in the cargo area 1858
SECTION 14 Direct calculations 1860
14. 1 Application 1860
14. 2 Procedures 1860

PART

4

CHAPTER **9 Double Hull Oil Tankers**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 9. 1. 1: Cargo tank boundary requirements 1796

Table 9. 1. 2: Oil cargoes suitable for carriage in oil tankers, *See* Note 1 1796

Table 9. 1. 3: Structural arrangement 1798

Table 9. 1. 4: Permissible length of cargo tanks, *See* Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.2 Application and ship arrangement 1.2.20 1801

Table 9. 4. 1: Hull envelope plating - minimum thickness, in mm 1813

Table 9. 5. 1: Values of F_1 1820

Table 9. 5. 2: Values of F_2 1821

Table 9. 5. 3: Determination of b_1 1822

Table 9. 6. 1: Inner hull and longitudinal oiltight bulkhead scantlings 1825

Table 9. 6. 2: Values of F_1 1828

Table 9. 6. 3: Values of F_2 1828

Table 9. 7. 1: Transverse oiltight bulkhead scantlings 1831

Table 9. 9. 1: Vertical web on longitudinal bulkhead coefficient 1843

Table 9. 10. 1: Maximum web thickness for stiffener inertia 1848

Table 9. 10. 2: Coefficients for stiffener inertia 1850

PART

4

CHAPTER **9 Double Hull Oil Tankers**

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 9. 1. 1: Cargo tank boundary lines for oil tankers having double bottom and double side tank arrangements (*See* Table 9. 1. 1: Cargo tank boundary requirements)..... 1800

Figure 9. 1. 2: Cargo tank boundary lines for oil tankers having double bottom arrangement (*See* Table 9. 1. 1: Cargo tank boundary requirements)..... 1800

Figure 9. 1. 3: Cargo tank boundary lines for oil tankers having mid-deck arrangement (*See* Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.2 Application and ship arrangement 1.2.18)..... 1801

Figure 9. 1. 4: Structural and spatial terminology 1805

Figure 9. 4. 1: Hull envelope plating - Itemisation of parts (*See* Table 9. 4. 1: Hull envelope plating - minimum thickness, in mm) 1811

Figure 9. 5. 1: Definition of b f and b f_1..... 1820

Figure 9. 6. 1: Illustration of b_1 determination 1828

Figure 9. 8. 1: Horizontal girder..... 1837

Figure 9. 9. 1: Wing tank construction..... 1841

Figure 9. 10. 1: Key to application requirements 1847

Figure 9. 10. 2: Primary member end brackets..... 1852

Figure 9. 11. 1: Structural configuration..... 1854

PART

4

CHAPTER **9** **Double Hull Oil Tankers**

SECTION **1** **General**

1. 1 General

1. 1. 1 This Chapter applies primarily to the arrangements and scantlings within the cargo tank region of sea-going tankers having integral cargo tanks, for the carriage of oil having a flash point not exceeding 60°C (closed-cup test), in association with the class notation indicated in Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.3 Class notation and applicable Rules for CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers 1.3.1 or Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.4,, Class notation and applicable Rules for non-CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers 1.4.1. Except as indicated in Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.1 General 1.1.2, Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.1 General 1.1.3 and Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.1 General 1.1.4, the cargo spaces are to be bounded by side and bottom dedicated water ballast tanks or void spaces constituting a double hull for the ship, *See* Table 9. 1. 1: Cargo tank boundary requirements.

1. 1. 2 Double side tanks may be dispensed with for tankers of less than 5000 tonnes deadweight where each cargo tank capacity does not exceed 700 m^3, *See* Table 9. 1. 1: Cargo tank boundary requirements.

1. 1. 3 Double bottom tanks may be dispensed with for tankers of 5000 tonnes deadweight or greater subject to compliance with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.2 Application and ship arrangement 1.2.18.

1. 1. 4 Double bottoms and double sides may be dispensed with for vessels less than 600 tonnes deadweight, *See* Table 9. 1. 1: Cargo tank boundary requirements.

1. 1. 5 Where only oils having flash points exceeding 60°C are to be carried, the Rule requirements and class notation will be modified accordingly the additional class notation '**F.P.** exceeding 60°C' will be entered in the *Register Book*.

1. 1. 6 Oil cargoes listed in Table 9. 1. 2: Oil cargoes suitable for carriage in oil tankers, See Note 1 are those which are generally envisaged as being carried in ships classed in accordance with this Chapter.

1. 1. 7 The scantlings and arrangements of tankers intended for cargoes other than oil will be specially considered in relation to the characteristics of the cargo, and the class notation will be modified accordingly. A full list of such cargoes for a particular ship, with special requirements as applicable, can be provided by ACS on application. Special consideration will also be given to the carriage of cargoes with a relative density greater than 1.025, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.3, Class notation and applicable Rules for CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers and Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.4, Class notation and applicable Rules for non-CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers.

1. 1. 8 The Regulations for classification and assignment of the above notations and other notations, as appropriate to the arrangements, scantlings and service are provided for in Pt 1, Ch 2, 2 Character of classification and class notations.

Table 9. 1. 1: Cargo tank boundary requirements

Deadweight (DWT) tonnes	Minimum double side width (d_s) metres	Minimum double bottom depth (d_b) metres
DWT ≥ 5000	$d_s = 0.5 + \frac{DWT}{20000}$ or 2.0 whichever is the lesser, but not less than 1.0	$d_b = \frac{B}{15}$ or $d_b = 2.0$ whichever is the lesser, but not less than 1.0
600≤DWT<5000	$d = 0.4 + \frac{2.4DWT}{20000}$ or $d_s = 0.76$ whichever is the greater, *See* Note 2	$d_b = \frac{B}{15}$ or $d_b = 0.76$ whichever is the greater,
DWT < 600	$d_s = 0$	$d_b = 0$

Note *1*. The symbols *DWT*, d_s and d_b are defined in 1.5.

Note *2*. Where each cargo tank capacity does not exceed 700 m^3, the value of d_s is taken as 0 and the inner bottom line is to run parallel to the line of the midship flat of bottom as shown in Figure 9. 1. 1: Cargo tank boundary lines for oil tankers having double bottom and double side tank arrangements (See Table 9. 1. 1: Cargo tank boundary requirements).

Note *3*. Where the double bottom tank is fitted, the centre girder depth is to be not less than as required by Pt 4, Ch 9, 9.3 Girders and floors in double bottom 9.3.3.

Table 9. 1. 2: Oil cargoes suitable for carriage in oil tankers, *See* Note 1

Asphalt solutions	**Gasoline Blending Stocks**
Blending Stocks	Alkylates – fuel
Roofers Flux	Reformates
Straight Run Residue	Polymer – fuel
Oils	**Gasolines**
Clarified	Casinghead (natural)
Crude Oil	Automotive
Mixtures containing crude oil	Aviation Straight Run
Diesel Oil	Fuel Oil No. 1 (Kerosene)
Fuel Oil No. 4	Fuel Oil No. 1-D

Fuel Oil No. 5	Fuel Oil No. 2
Fuel Oil No. 6	Fuel Oil No. 2-D
Residual Fuel Oil	
Road Oil	**Jet Fuels**
Transformer Oil	JP-1 (Kerosene)
Lubricating Oils and Blending Stocks	JP-3 JP-4
Mineral Oil	JP-5 (Kerosene, Heavy)
Motor Oil	Turbo Fuel
Penetrating Oil	Kerosene
Spindle Oil	Mineral Spirit
Turbine Oil	
	Naphtha
Distillates	Solvent
Straight Run	Petroleum
Flashed Feed Stocks	Heartcut Distillate Oil
Gas Oil	
Cracked	

Note *1.* This list of oils is taken from Appendix 1 to Annex 1 of the MARPOL Convention. Special consideration will be given to the carriage of oil cargoes not included in the above list.

1. 2 Application and ship arrangement

1. 2. 1 Double hull tankers with length, *L*, greater than or equal to 150 m with structural configuration as shown in Table 9. 1. 3: Structural arrangement are defined as 'CSR Oil Tankers' and are to comply with Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.3, Class notation and applicable Rules for CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers.

1. 2. 2 The applicable Rules for double hull tankers with length, *L*, greater than or equal to 150 m of unusual hull form or structural arrangements will be specially considered.

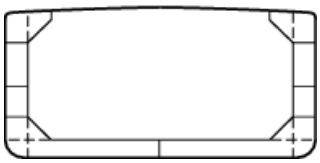
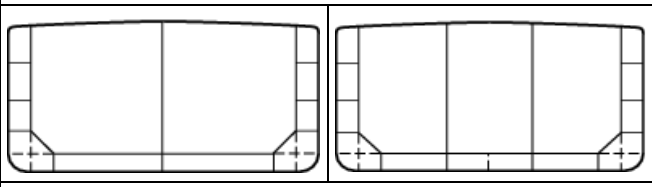
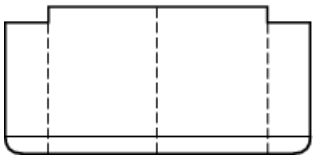
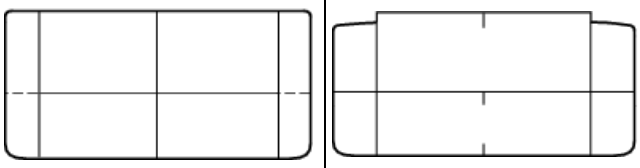
1. 2. 3 Double hull tankers with length, *L*, less than 150 m are defined as 'Non-CSR Oil Tankers' and are to comply with Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.4, Class notation and applicable Rules for non-CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers.

1. 2. 4 Any dry tanks, or tanks intended for water ballast and thus empty in the loaded condition, are to be so arranged that they cannot be used for any other purpose.

1. 2. 5 Cofferdams are to be provided at the forward and after ends of the oil cargo spaces; cofferdams are to be at least 760 mm in length and are to cover the whole area of the end bulkheads of the cargo spaces.

1. 2. 6 A pump-room, fuel oil bunker or water ballast tank will be accepted in lieu of a cofferdam.

Table 9. 1. 3: Structural arrangement

Arrangement	Typical configuration	$L<150$	$L\geq150$
No longitudinal bulkhead		Non CSR	CSR (specially considered)
One or two longitudinal bulkhead(s)		Non CSR	CSR
Trunk deck in association with longitudinal bulkhead(s) (*See* Ch 10.6)		Non CSR	CSR
Double deck in association with a centreline bulkhead		Non CSR	CSR (specially considered)
Mid-deck in association with a centreline bulkhead or centreline girders		Non CSR	CSR (specially considered)

1. 2. 7 Where the lower portion of the pump-room is recessed into the machinery space, the height of the recess is not, in general, to exceed one-third of the moulded depth above the keel, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 15, 1 General requirements.

1. 2. 8 Where a compartment or tank, such as a fore peak tank, forms a cofferdam, access is to be from the open deck. Alternatively, any space through which it is necessary to pass in order to obtain access is to conform to the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 14 Electrical equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres or in the presence of combustible dusts. Engine or electrically driven pumps are not to be sited in the space containing the access to such cofferdams.

1. 2. 9 A cofferdam is also to be arranged between a cargo oil tank and accommodation spaces, and between cargo oil tanks and spaces containing electrical equipment, other than spaces where the only items of electrical equipment are lighting fittings complying with Pt 6, Ch 2, 14 Electrical equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres or in the presence of combustible dusts. Where a corner to corner situation occurs, protection may be formed by a diagonal plate across the corner. The scantlings and testing arrangements are to comply with Rule requirements for cofferdam bulkheads, and arrangements are to be made to enable the space to be filled with water ballast to assist in gas freeing, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 15, 3 Cargo handling system. Suitable corrosion protection, drainage and gas-freeing arrangements are to be provided to such spaces.

1. 2. 10 Passages or tunnels passing through, or adjacent to, a cargo oil tank and not separated from it by a cofferdam, are to be provided with mechanical ventilation, and any access is to be from the open deck.

1. 2. 11 Arrangements are to be provided to enable double bottom and vertical wing tanks to be filled with water ballast to assist in gas freeing these tanks, *See* Pt 5, Ch 15, 3 Cargo handling system.

1. 2. 12 Fittings within cargo tanks and pump-rooms are to be securely fastened to the structure.

1. 2. 13 Accommodation, control and service spaces are to be located clear of the cargo tank region such that a single failure of deck or bulkhead will not allow cargo fumes into these spaces. Navigation positions, where fitted above the cargo tank region, are to be separated from the cargo tank deck by means of an open space with a height of at least 2.0 m.

1. 2. 14 Where spill retainment flats are fitted at the sides of the weather deck, separate arrangements are to be provided for freeing the deck of oil and water respectively, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 10, 5.1 Continuity and alignment 5.1.1.

1. 2. 15 Alternative arrangements which are proposed as being equivalent to the Rules will receive individual consideration, taking into account any relevant National Authority requirements.

1. 2. 16 Reference should also be made to the relevant Regulations of the *International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea, 1974* and applicable amendments.

1. 2. 17 Cargo spaces are to be bounded by double bottom and double side tanks or void spaces such that the distance between the cargo tank boundary and the shell plating is not less than that given in Table 9. 1. 1: Cargo tank boundary requirements and Figure 9. 1. 1: Cargo tank boundary lines for oil tankers having double bottom and double side tank arrangements (See Table 9. 1. 1: Cargo tank boundary requirements), except as otherwise specified in Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.2 Application and ship arrangement 1.2.18 and Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.2 Application and ship arrangement 1.2.19. Cargo or fuel oil are not to be carried in double bottom or double side tanks.

1. 2. 18 Where *DWT*≥ 5000 tonnes, double bottom tanks as required by Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.2 Application and ship arrangement 1.2.17 may be dispensed with, provided the following requirements are complied with:

a. The cargo height, h_c, in contact with the bottom shell plating is to be not greater than:

$$h_c = \frac{1.025T_{\mathrm{m}} - 10.2P_{\mathrm{v}}}{1.1\rho}$$

where the symbols are defined in Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.6 Information required for CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers.

b. Where a mid-deck dividing the cargo oil tanks into upper and lower spaces is arranged, it is to be located at a height of not less than the lesser of $\frac{B}{6}$ or 6 m, but

c. not more than 0.6D, above the base line.

d. Below a level 1.5d_b above the base line, the cargo tank boundary line may be vertical down to the bottom shell plating as shown in Figure 9. 1. 3: Cargo tank boundary lines for oil tankers having mid-deck arrangement (See Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.2 Application and ship arrangement 1.2.18).

1. 2. 19 Alternative arrangements which are equivalent to Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.2 Application and ship arrangement 1.2.17 will receive individual consideration, taking into account any relevant National Authority requirements.

1. 2. 20 The length of each cargo tank is not to exceed 10 m or the appropriate value obtained from Table 9. 1. 4: Permissible length of cargo tanks, See Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.2 Application and ship arrangement 1.2.20, whichever is the greater.

1. 2. 21 Where DWT ≥ 5000 tonnes, the cargo pump-room shall be provided with a double bottom such that at any cross-section the depth of each double bottom tank or space shall be such that the distance d_c, as defined in 1.5, is not

less than the lesser of $\frac{B}{15}$ and 2 m

d_c is in no case to be less than 1 m.

In the case of cargo pump-rooms whose bottom plate is located above the base line by at least the minimum height required, there will be no need for a double bottom construction in way of the cargo pump-room.

1. 2. 22 Notwithstanding the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.2 Application and ship arrangement 1.2.21, above, where the flooding of the cargo pump-room would not render the ballast or cargo pumping system inoperative, a double bottom need not be fitted.

Figure 9. 1. 1: Cargo tank boundary lines for oil tankers having double bottom and double side tank arrangements (*See* Table 9. 1. 1: Cargo tank boundary requirements)

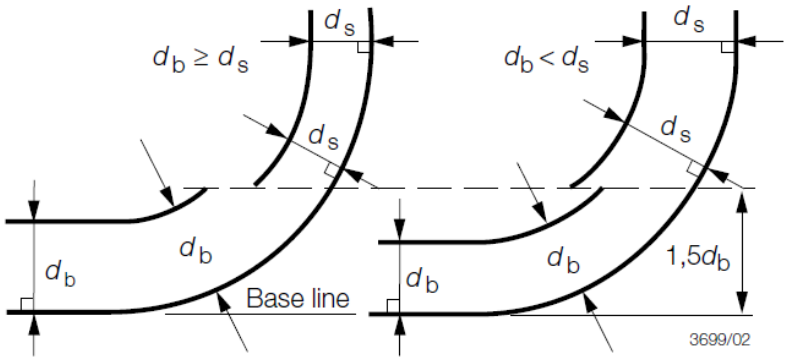


Figure 9. 1. 2: Cargo tank boundary lines for oil tankers having double bottom arrangement (*See* Table 9. 1. 1: Cargo tank boundary requirements)

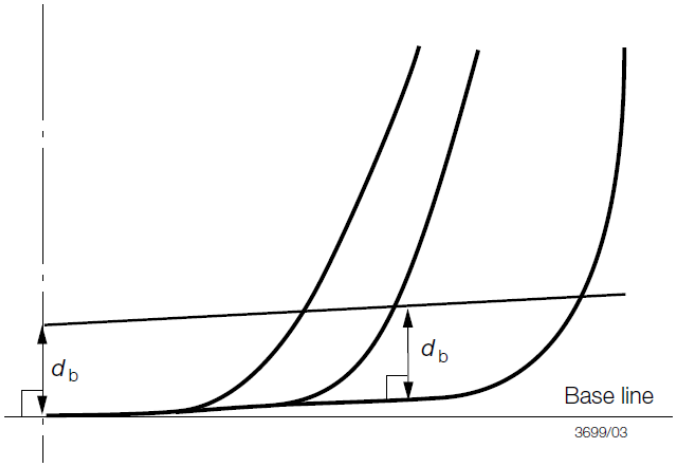


Figure 9. 1. 3: Cargo tank boundary lines for oil tankers having mid-deck arrangement (*See* Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.2 Application and ship arrangement 1.2.18)

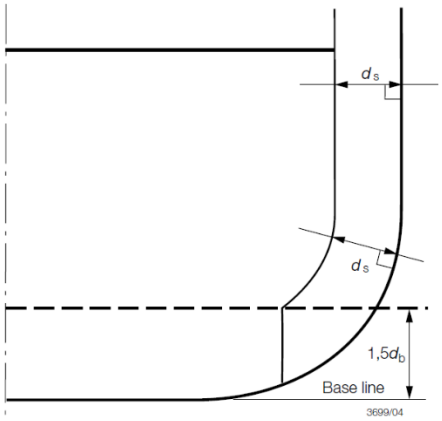


Table 9. 1. 4: Permissible length of cargo tanks, *See* Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.2 Application and ship arrangement 1.2.20

Number of longitudinal bulkheads inside cargo tanks	One (on centreline)		Two	Three (one on centreline)	Where no longitudinal bulkhead is arranged or where longitudinal bulkheads are perforated across breadth of cargo tanks
Length of wing cargo tank	$\left(0.25\frac{b_i}{B}+0.15\right)L_L$		$0.2L_L$	$0.2L_L$	$\left(0.5\frac{b_i}{B}+0.1\right)L_L$ or $0.2L_L$ whichever is the lesser
Length of centre tank	$_i \geq 0.2B$	—	$0.2L_L$	$0.2L_L$ port and starboard	
	$b_i \geq 0.2B$	—	$\left(0.5\frac{b_i}{B}+0.1\right)L_L$	$\left(0.25\frac{b_i}{B}+0.15\right)L_L$ port and starboard	
Note The symbols L_L, B and b_i are defined in Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.5, General definitions and symbols.					

1. 3 Class notation and applicable Rules for CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers

1. 3. 1 In general, CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers are to comply with Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.3 Class notation and applicable Rules for CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers 1.3.2 to Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.3 Class notation and applicable Rules for CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers 1.3.7 and the *IACS Common Structural Rules for Bulk Carriers and Oil Tankers (CSR)* for the draught required and will be eligible to be classed **100A1 Double Hull Oil Tanker CSR, ESP**.

1. 3. 2 Class notations applicable to CSR double hull oil tankers are defined as follows:

- **CSR**

Identifies the double hull oil tanker as being compliant with the *IACS Common Structural Rules (CSR)*

- **ESP**

  Identifies the double hull oil tanker as being subject to an Enhanced Survey Programme as detailed in Pt 1, Ch 3, 3 Intermediate Surveys - Hull and machinery requirements and Pt 1, Ch 3, 7 Special Survey - Oil tankers (including ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships) - Hull requirements, *See also* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.12.

1. 3. 3 Materials are to comply with the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials. Corrosion protection is to comply with Pt 3, Ch 2, 3 Corrosion protection and Ch 15 Corrosion Prevention of Pt 2.

1. 3. 4 The rudder and rudder stock are to comply with Pt 3, Ch 13, 2 Rudders.

1. 3. 5 Ice strengthening is to be in accordance with Pt 8 Rules for Ice and Cold Operations.

1. 3. 6 The ACSPlus notation CM is mandatory for CSR double hull oil tankers greater than 150 m in length, *See* Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.4 Class notation and applicable Rules for non-CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers 1.4.6.

1. 3. 7 The 'ACSPlus Guideline' for the hull construction of ships are detailed in Pt 3, Ch 16 ACSPlus Guidelines for the Design, Construction and Lifetime Care of Ships and the classification notations and descriptive notes associated with these procedures are given in Pt 1, Ch 2, 2 Character of classification and class notations.

1. 4 Class notation and applicable Rules for non-CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers

1. 4. 1 In general, non-CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers are to comply with Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.4 Class notation and applicable Rules for non-CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers 1.4.2 to Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.4 Class notation and applicable Rules for non-CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers 1.4.8 for the draught required and will be eligible to be classed **100A1 Double Hull Oil Tanker, ESP**.

1. 4. 2 The notation **ESP** serves to identify the ship as being subject to an Enhanced Survey Programme as detailed in Pt 1, Ch 3, 3 Intermediate Surveys - Hull and machinery requirements and Pt 1, Ch 3, 7 Special Survey - Oil tankers (including ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships) - Hull requirements, *See also* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.12.

1. 4. 3 At the Owner's request, the notation **MARPOL 20.1.3** may be appended to the notation**100A1 Double Hull Oil Tanker** for vessels not meeting the minimum double side width (d_s) requirements of Table 9. 1. 1: Cargo tank boundary requirements but which comply with MARPOL Annex I, Regulation 20.1.3.

1. 4. 4 At the Owners request, the notation **MARPOL 21.1.2** may be appended to the notation **100A1 Double Hull Oil Tanker** for vessels of less than 5000 tonnes deadweight which have a double hull in accordance with MARPOL Annex I, Regulation 21.1.2.

1. 4. 5 The ACSPlus notation CM is mandatory for non-CSR double hull oil tankers greater than 150 m in length, *See* Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.4 Class notation and applicable Rules for non-CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers 1.4.6.

1. 4. 6 Where the length of the ship is greater than 190 m, or where the structural arrangements are considered such as to necessitate it, the scantlings of the primary supporting structure are to be assessed by direct calculation and the ACSPlus notations **SDA, FDA** and **CM** are mandatory, *See* Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.4 Class notation and applicable Rules for non-CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers 1.4.6 and Pt 4, Ch 9, 14 Direct calculations.

1. 4. 7 The 'ACSPlus Guideline' for the hull construction of ships are detailed in Pt 3, Ch 16 ACSPlus Guidelines for the Design, Construction and Lifetime Care of Ships and the classification notations and descriptive notes associated with these procedures are given in Pt 1, Ch 2, 2 Character of classification and class notations.

1. 4. 8 The disposition of transverse bulkheads is to comply with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 3, 4 Bulkhead requirements, as applicable to ships with machinery located aft.

1. 4. 9 Arrangements and scantlings forward and aft of the cargo tank region are to comply with Pt 3, Ch 5 Fore End Structure, Pt 3, Ch 6 Aft End Structure and Pt 3, Ch 7 Machinery Spaces. The remaining requirements of Part 3 are also to be complied with as appropriate to the intended arrangements.

1. 4. 10 Arrangements pertaining to gangways, bulwarks and rails are to comply with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 8 Superstructures, Deckhouses and Bulwarks.

1. 4. 11 The structural configurations may include one or more of the arrangements shown in Table 9. 1. 3: Structural arrangement. These provisions do not preclude the fitting of additional bulkheads or the perforation of longitudinal bulkheads.

1. 4. 12 The bottom shell, inner bottom and deck are generally to be framed longitudinally in the cargo tank region where the ship length, L, exceeds 75 m. However, consideration will be given to alternative proposals for ships of special design.

1. 4. 13 The side shell, inner hull bulkheads and longitudinal bulkheads are generally to be longitudinally framed where the ship length, L, exceeds 150 m, but alternative proposals, taking account of resistance to buckling, will be considered.

1. 4. 14 Where the side shell is longitudinally framed, the inner hull bulkheads are to be similarly constructed.

1. 4. 15 Provided the ship length, L, does not exceed 200 m the longitudinal bulkheads may be horizontally corrugated. Vertically corrugated centreline bulkheads may also be considered on the basis of direct calculations.

1. 4. 16 In general, the primary member scantlings will require to be determined by direct calculation, *See also* Table 9. 1. 3: Structural arrangement.

1. 4. 17 Alternative arrangements, which are proposed as being equivalent to the Rules, will receive individual consideration. Particular attention is to be paid to deflection of members and to the ability of the structure to resist buckling. Where necessary, additional calculations will be required.

1. 4. 18 For additional requirements for single hull oil tankers, *See* Pt 4, Ch 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers.

1. 4. 19 The scantlings of structural items may be determined by direct calculation.

1. 5 General definitions and symbols

1. 5. 1 The following symbols and definitions are applicable to this chapter unless otherwise stated:

L, L_L, B, D, T as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6 Definitions.

d_c = the height between the ship's base line and the bottom of the cargo pump-room, in metres

DWT = deadweight, in tonnes, at the summer load waterline

b = the width of plating supported by the primary or secondary member, in metres or mm respectively

b_e = the effective width, in metres, of end brackets as determined from Pt 3, Ch 3, 3 Structural idealisation

b_i = minimum distance from side shell to inner hull/outer longitudinal bulkhead of the tank in question measured inboard at right angles to the centreline at the summer load waterline, in metres, *See* Table 9. 1. 4: Permissible length of cargo tanks, See Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.2 Application and ship arrangement 1.2.20

d_b = the distance, in metres, between the bottom of the cargo tanks and the moulded line of the bottom shell plating measured at right angles to the bottom shell plating as shown in Table 9. 1. 1: Cargo tank boundary requirements and Table 9. 1. 2: Oil cargoes suitable for carriage in oil tankers, See Note 1

d_s = the distance, in metres, between the cargo tank boundary and the moulded line of the side shell plating measured at any cross-section at right angles to the side shell as shown in Figure 9. 1. 1: Cargo tank boundary lines for oil tankers having double bottom and double side tank arrangements (See Table 9. 1. 1: Cargo tank boundary requirements) and Figure 9. 1. 3: Cargo tank boundary lines for oil tankers having mid-deck arrangement (See Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.2 Application and ship arrangement 1.2.18)

h = the load height applied to the item under consideration, in metres

k_L, k = higher tensile steel factors. For the determination of these factors, *See* Pt 3, Ch 2, 1 Materials of construction. For mild steel, k_L, k may be taken as 1.0

l_e = effective length, in metres, of the primary or secondary member, measured between effective span points. For determination of span points, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3 Structural idealisation

s = spacing of secondary members, in mm

t = thickness of plating, in mm

I = the moment of inertia, in cm^4, of a primary or secondary member, in association with an effective width of attached plating determined in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 3, 3 Structural idealisation

L_1 = length of ship, in metres, but need not be taken greater than 190 m

P_v = pressure/vacuum relief valve positive setting, in bar

T_m = minimum operating moulded draught of the ship at amidships under any expected cargo loading condition, in metres

Z = the section modulus, in cm^3, of the primary or secondary member, in association with an effective width of attached plating determined in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 3, 3 Structural idealisation

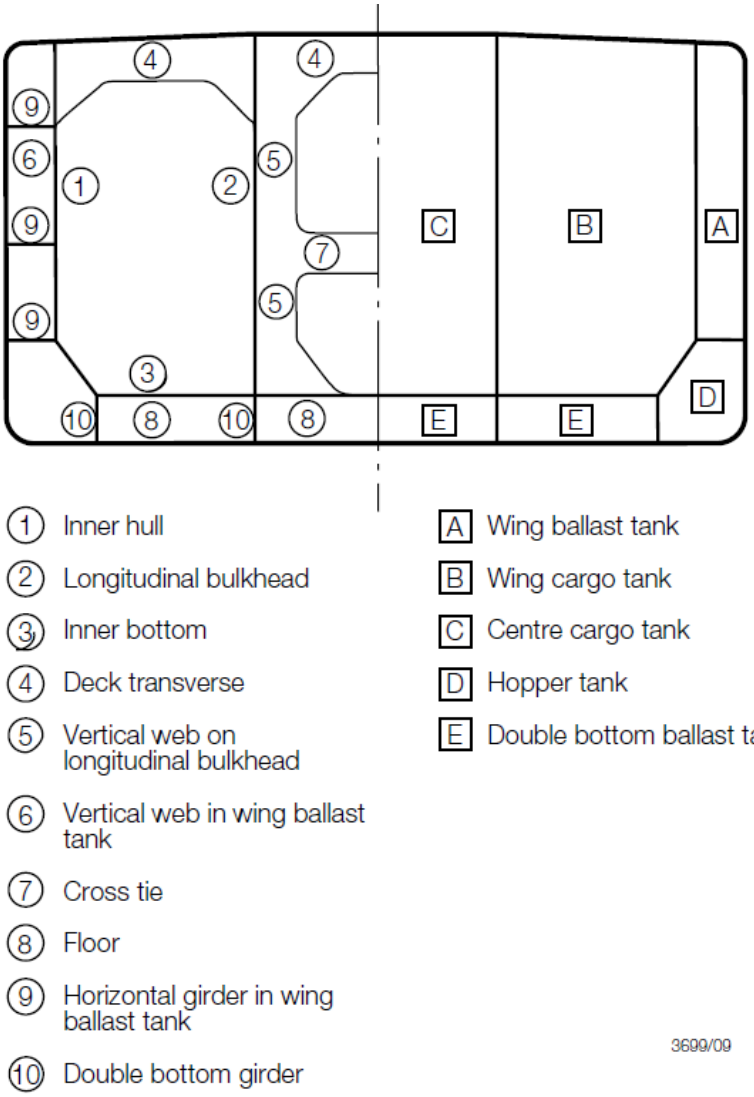
ρ = maximum cargo density, in t/m^3.

1. 5. 2 Where symbols not defined in Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.5 General definitions and symbols 1.5.1 are used these are defined at the head of the Section concerned.

1. 5. 3 For oil tankers of double hull configuration the main structural and spatial terminology within the cargo length, as used in this Chapter, is shown in Figure 9. 1. 4: Structural and spatial terminology.

1. 5. 4 The expression ‘primary member’ as used in this Chapter is defined as a girder, floor, transverse, vertical web, stringer, cross-tie or buttress. ‘Secondary members’ are supporting members other than primary members.

Figure 9. 1. 4: Structural and spatial terminology



1. 6 Information required for CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers

1. 6. 1 Plans and supporting documents/calculations are to be submitted for approval in accordance with the requirements of the CSR.

1. 6. 2 In addition, where not already required by the CSR, plans and supporting documents/calculations are to be submitted for approval as required by Pt 3, Ch 1, 5.2 Plans and supporting calculations.

1. 6. 3 A Ship Construction File (SCF) is to be provided on board of the ship containing information to facilitate inspection/survey, repair and maintenance. As a minimum it is to include documentation and plans in accordance with the requirements of the CSR.

1. 6. 4 For CSR double hull oil tankers subject to *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea Chapter II-1 - Construction - Structure, subdivision and stability, machinery and electrical installations Part A-1 - Structure of ships Regulation 3-10 – Goal-based ship construction standards for bulk carriers and oil tankers*, the SCF is to be provided instead in accordance with the requirements specified therein in *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea* and for these goal-based standard ships an SCF contents list is to be prepared and submitted for approval.

1. 6. 5 These SCFs are also to include the documentation and plans as listed in Pt 3, Ch 1, 5.3 Plans to be supplied to the ship, where not already required by the CSR or *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea Chapter II-1 - Construction - Structure, subdivision and stability, machinery and electrical installations Part A-1 - Structure of ships Regulation 3-10 – Goal-based ship construction standards for bulk carriers and oil tankers*.

1. 6. 6 In all cases, as required by the CSR, *Pt 1, Ch 13 Ship in Operation - Renewal Criteria,* the mid-ship section plan to be supplied on board the ship is to include the minimum required hull girder sectional properties. Sectional properties are to be provided for transverse sections within the cargo length, i.e. each cargo hold, and are to include:

- sectional properties as defined in CSR, *Pt 1, Ch 5, 1 Strength Characteristics of Hull Girder Transverse Sections;*
- the defined section modulus at Deck and at Bottom calculated with the gross offered thickness;
- the sectional area of the defined Deck and Bottom Zones calculated with the gross offered thickness; and
- the sectional area of the defined Neutral Axis Zone calculated with the gross offered thickness minus 0.5 *t*c.

1. 7 Information required for Non-CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers

1. 7. 1 In addition to the plans required by Pt 3, Ch 1, 5 Information required, plans showing the connections for all longitudinals and other framing members and arrangements at intersections of transverse and longitudinal framing are also to be submitted.

1. 7. 2 Any dry tanks, or tanks for water ballast only, are to be indicated on the principal structural and arrangement plans.

1. 7. 3 The information required by Pt 3, Ch 4, 4 Information required is to be forwarded as soon as possible and preferably when the midship section is submitted.

1. 7. 4 A docking plan is to be submitted for consideration of strength requirements in association with the intended docking condition.

1. 7. 5 A plan showing the location of all openings in the deck is to be submitted. Where it is intended to provide holes in the deck for staging wires, these holes are also to be shown. Full particulars of the proposed closing arrangements for all deck openings are to be submitted.

1. 7. 6 Information is required indicating the equipment provided for the acceptable means of access to meet the minimum requirements for Close-up Surveys, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 9, 13.2 Access to spaces in the cargo area 13.2.8, Pt 4, Ch 9, 13.2 Access to spaces in the cargo area 13.2.9 and Pt 1, Ch 3, 7 Special Survey - Oil tankers (including ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships) - Hull requirements.

1. 7. 7 A diagrammatic plan verifying compliance with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.2 Application and ship arrangement 1.2.17 or Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.2 Application and ship arrangement 1.2.18 as appropriate is to be submitted.

PART

4

CHAPTER 9 **Double Hull Oil Tankers**

SECTION 2 **Materials and protection**

2. 1 General

2. 1. 1 Materials, grades of steel and protection of materials are to comply with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 2 Materials and Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials.

2. 2 Corrosion protection coatings for salt-water ballast spaces

2. 2. 1 The requirements of Pt 3, Ch 2, 3.6 Application of coatings and alternative means of protection and Ch 15 Corrosion Prevention of Pt 2 *Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials* are to be complied with.

2. 3 Aluminium structure, fittings and paint

2. 3. 1 Aluminium may, under certain circumstances give rise to incendive sparking on impact with steel, the following requirements are therefore to be complied with:

a. Aluminium fittings in tanks used for the carriage of oil and in cofferdams and pump-rooms are to be avoided wherever possible.

b. Where fitted, aluminium fittings, units and supports, in tanks used for the carriage of oil, cofferdams and pump-rooms are to satisfy the requirements specified in Pt 3, Ch 2, 3 Corrosion protection for aluminium anodes.

c. The danger of mistaking aluminium anodes for zinc anodes must be emphasised. This gives rise to increased hazard if aluminium anodes are inadvertently fitted in unsuitable locations.

d. The underside of heavy portable aluminium structures such as gangways, etc. is to be protected by means of hard plastic or wood cover in order to avoid the creation of smears when dragged or rubbed across steel, which if subsequently struck, may create an incendive spark. It is recommended that such protection be permanently and securely attached to the structures.

2. 3. 2 For permissible locations of aluminium anodes, *See* Pt 3, Ch 2, 3.4 Aluminium and magnesium anodes.

2. 3. 3 Paint containing aluminium should not be used in positions where cargo vapours may accumulate unless it has been shown by appropriate tests that the paint to be used does not increase the incendive sparking hazard. Tests need not be performed for coatings containing less than 10 per cent aluminium by weight.

2. 4 Other materials

2. 4. 1 The suitability of coatings and their compatibility with intended cargoes are the responsibility of the Builder and the Owner. ACS will, however, require the confirmation of the coating

manufacturers that coatings which are used to protect the cargo tank structure are in order for the list of defined cargoes. A copy of the coating manufacturer's product resistance list is to be placed on board.

2. 4. 2 Attention is drawn to the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 11, 7.1 Materials 7.1.4 in respect of compatibility of cargoes and hatch packing materials. The packing material is to be resistant to both the liquids and vapours to which it is exposed.

2. 4. 3 Some plastics and rubbers are unsuitable for certain cargoes other than oil. In such cases the manufacturer's advice should be sought.

2. 4. 4 Some materials or their alloys are unsuitable for certain cargoes other than oil. Where such cargoes are to be carried, the use of these materials is not permitted in locations where they may come into contact with the cargo or its vapours, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.1 General 1.1.7.

PART

4

CHAPTER 9 Double Hull Oil Tankers

SECTION 3 Longitudinal strength

3. 1 General

3. 1. 1 The longitudinal strength standard is to comply with the relevant requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4 Longitudinal Strength.

3. 1. 2 The readout points for loading instruments, fitted in accordance with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4, 8.3 Loading instrument, are to be positioned at the transverse bulkheads. In general, except when the instrument calculates the maximum values between readout points, the spacing of readout points within the cargo tank length is not to exceed five per cent of the ship length with intermediate points arranged between bulkheads as necessary.

3. 2 Symbols

3. 2. 1 The symbols used in this Section are defined in Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.5, General definitions and symbols.

3. 3 Loading conditions

3. 3. 1 The loading conditions which are to be included in the Loading Manual and examined for longitudinal strength are given in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5 Hull bending strength.

3. 3. 2 The Loading Manual is to contain the calculated still water bending moments and shear forces for the conditions proposed and the maximum permissible values calculated in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 4 Longitudinal Strength.

3. 3. 3 The strengthening of bottom forward derived in accordance with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 5, 1 General is to be based on the minimum draught forward obtained using segregated ballast tanks only, without recourse to ballasting of cargo tanks.

3. 3. 4 Where bottom forward strengthening has not been arranged, at least one ballast departure and one ballast arrival condition providing for a forward draught of at least $0.045L$ is to be included in the Loading Manual, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 5, 1.5 Strengthening of bottom forward.

3. 3. 5 Where part-load conditions are proposed with a forward draught less than that for which the bottom forward arrangements and scantlings have been approved, the Loading Manual is to provide for the addition of ballast in segregated ballast tanks only as necessary to attain the required draught in heavy weather.

3. 3. 6 Conditions which provide for wing and centre cargo tanks abreast to be filled, with adjacent wing and centre cargo tanks empty, should, in general, be avoided. Similarly, conditions which provide for differential loading of port and starboard wing cargo tanks with centre cargo tanks empty should also be avoided. Where such conditions are contemplated, they will be subject to special consideration which may involve additional calculation in respect of the resultant effects on transverse strength and centre tank cross-tie.

3. 3. 7 Where a double bottom tank is omitted in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.3 Class notation and applicable Rules for CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers 1.3.7 a minimum operating draught T_m is to be indicated on the midship section plan, the Loading Manual and Loading Instrument.

3. 3. 8 Tanks intended for water ballast are to be indicated in the Loading Manual.

3. 3. 9 Where loading conditions having partially filled tanks are contemplated, attention is drawn to the need to ensure that the scantlings of the boundary bulkheads are capable of withstanding the loads imposed by the movement of liquid in the tanks, *See* Pt 4, Ch 9, 6.1 General 6.1.2, Pt 4, Ch 9, 7.1 General 7.1.2 and Pt 4, Ch 9, 14.2 Procedures 14.2.2.

PART

4

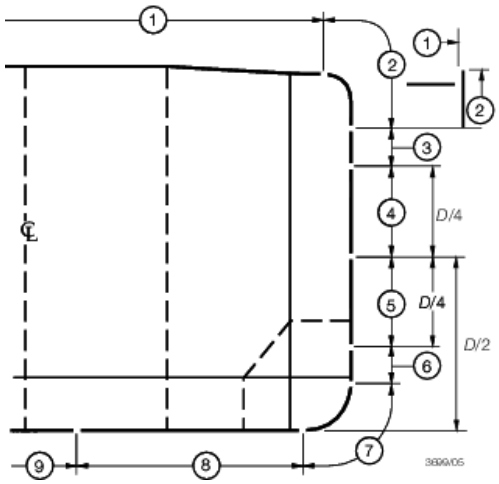
CHAPTER **9** **Double Hull Oil Tankers**

SECTION **4** **Hull envelope plating**

4. 1 General

4. 1. 1 The thickness of hull envelope plating amidships is to be as necessary to comply with the hull section modulus, shear strength and buckling requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4 Longitudinal Strength, but is to be not less than as shown in Table 9. 4. 1: Hull envelope plating - minimum thickness, in mm for the parts itemised in Figure 9. 4. 1: Hull envelope plating - Itemisation of parts (See Table 9. 4. 1: Hull envelope plating - minimum thickness, in mm). Panel stability is also to be confirmed by direct calculation taking account of shear stress and direct stresses derived from both transverse and longitudinal strength investigation.

Figure 9. 4. 1: Hull envelope plating - Itemisation of parts (*See* Table 9. 4. 1: Hull envelope plating - minimum thickness, in mm)



4. 1. 2 For requirements in respect of structural details, bilge keels, attachments, etc. *See* Pt 3, Ch 10 Welding and Structural Details. In addition the *ACSPlus FDA Guideline, Structural Detail Design Guide* (SDDG), indicates recommended structural design configurations for double hull tanker structural details to assess and improve the relative fatigue life performance of the details in critical areas.

4. 2 Symbols

4. 2. 1 The symbols used in this Section are defined as follows:

F_D, F_B = as defined in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.7 Local reduction factors

F_M = the greater of F_D or F_B

$$J = 1720.5\sqrt{\frac{1-\frac{1}{\alpha}}{\sigma_o}} f \text{ for } \alpha \leq 2$$

$$(J = 549.3\sqrt{\frac{1-\frac{1}{\alpha}}{\sigma_o}} f \text{ for } \alpha \leq 2)$$

$$J = 860.7\sqrt{\frac{\alpha}{\sigma_o}} f \text{ for } \alpha > 2$$

$$(J = 274.8\sqrt{\frac{\alpha}{\sigma_o}} f \text{ for } \alpha > 2)$$

s = spacing, in mm, of longitudinals or transverse frames. Except where indicated in the text, s is not to be taken less than:

$$470 + \frac{L}{0.6} \text{ mm}$$

- or 700 mm whichever is the lesser. For limitations in end regions, *See* Pt 3, Ch 5, 3 Shell envelope plating and Pt 4, Ch 6, 3 Longitudinal strength

C_w = a wave head, in metres

= $7.71 \times 10^{-2} L e^{-0.0044L}$

where

e = base of natural logarithms 2.7183

R_B = bilge radius, in mm, as defined in Table 1. 5. 2: Bottom shell and bilge plating in Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships

S = overall span of frame, in mm, measured between deck and bottom support points or to, or between, stringers, where fitted

T_1 = T but to be taken not less than $0.05L$ m

α = $\frac{\sigma_o}{\sigma_c}$

σ_c = maximum compressive hull vertical bending stress, in N/mm^2 given by σ_D and σ_B as defined in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.6 Permissible hull vertical bending stresses 5.6.1 as appropriate

= For ships of normal design, not exceeding 90 metres in length, the value of maximum compressive hull vertical bending stress may be determined as follows:

= at strength deck

= $\sigma_B = 654LB\frac{Z_{min}}{Z_B}\sigma \times 10^{-6} \text{N/mm}^2$

= at keel

= $\sigma_B = 654LB\frac{Z_{min}}{Z_B}\sigma \times 10^{-6}\text{N/mm}^2$

= where Z_{min}, Z_D, Z_B and σ are in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 4, 5 Hull bending strength

σ_o = specified minimum yield stress, in N/mm^2

h_{T1} = $T + C_w$ m but need not be taken greater than $1.36T$

h_{T2} = $T + 0.5C_w$ m but need not be taken greater than $1.2T$

= For longitudinally framed bottom and bilge plating T is to be taken as T_1

Other symbols are defined in Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.5, General definitions and symbols.

Table 9. 4. 1: Hull envelope plating - minimum thickness, in mm

Longitudinally framed	Item	Item No. *See* Fig. 9.4.1	Transversely framed, *See* Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.3, Class notation and applicable Rules for CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers for limits of application
$t = \frac{s}{J} + 2.0$ mm *See* Note 1	Deck	1	*See* Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.3, Class notation and applicable Rules for CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers
$t = \frac{s}{J} + 2.0$ mm or $t = 0.0042s\sqrt{h_{T1}k}$ whichever is the greater *See* Note 1	Sheerstrake and gunwale	2	$t = \frac{0.00085\ s}{1+\left(\frac{s}{S}\right)^2}(0.083\ L_1 + 10)\sqrt{\frac{F_B}{k_L}}$ *See* Note 6 or $t = 0.0042s\sqrt{h_{T1}k}$ whichever is the greater *See* Note 1
$t = 0.001s(0.059\ L_1 + 7)\sqrt{\frac{F_B}{k_L}}$ *See* Notes 6 and 7 or $t = 0.0042s\sqrt{h_{T1}k}$ whichever is the greater *See* Note 1	Side shell above mid-depth	3	$t = \frac{0.00085\ s}{1+\left(\frac{s}{S}\right)^2}(0.083\ L_1 + 10)\sqrt{\frac{F_D}{k_L}}$ *See* Notes 6 and 7 or $t = 0.0042s\sqrt{h_{T1}k}$ whichever is the greater *See* Note 1
		4	$t = 0.001s(0.059\ L_1 + 7)\sqrt{\frac{F_M}{k_L}}$ *See* Notes 6 and 7 or $t = 0.0051s\sqrt{h_{T1}k}$ whichever is the greater *See* Note 1
$t = 0.001s(0.059\ L_1 + 7)\sqrt{\frac{F_B}{k_L}}$ *See* Notes 6 and 7 But not less than:	Side shell below mid-depth	5	

(a) $t = 0.0042s\sqrt{h_{T1}k}$ at mid-depth (b) $t = 0.0054s\sqrt{\frac{h_{T2}k}{2 - F_B}}$ mm at upper turn of bilge *See* Notes 1 and 2	Intermediate thickness by interpolation Intermediate thickness by interpolation		6	$t = \frac{0.00085\ s}{1 + \left(\frac{s}{S}\right)^2}(0.083\ L_1 + 10)\sqrt{\frac{F_B}{k_L}}$ *See* Notes 2, 6 and 7 or $t = 0.0056_s\sqrt{\frac{h_{T2}k}{1.8 - F_B}}$ mm whichever is the greater *See* Note 1
$t = \frac{s}{J} + 2.0$ mm or $t = 0.0052s\sqrt{\frac{h_{T2}k}{1.8 - F_B}}$ mm whichever is the greater *See* Note 1	Bilge (*See* Note 4)	7	$t = \frac{0.00085\ s}{1 + \left(\frac{s}{S}\right)2}(0.083\ L_l + 10)\sqrt{\frac{F_B}{k_L}}$ *See* Notes 6 and 7 or $t = 0.0063_s\sqrt{\frac{h_{T2}k}{1.8 - F_B}}$ mm whichever is the greater *See* Note 1
	Bottom shell	8	*See* Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.3, Class notation and applicable Rules for CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers
As for item 8, +2mm, but need not exceed $25\sqrt{k}mm$	Keel	9	

Note *1*. The thickness is also to satisfy the buckling requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4, 7 Hull buckling strength.

Note *2*. The thickness of side shell plating need not exceed that which would be required for the bottom shell using the spacing of the side shell longitudinals.

Note *3*. In no case is the plating thickness to be less than the cargo tank minimum value given in Pt 4, Ch 9, 10 Construction details and minimum thickness, or the basic shell end thickness for taper given in Pt 3, Ch 5 Fore End Structure and Pt 3, Ch 6 Aft End Structure.

Note *4*. *See also* Pt 4, Ch 9, 4.6 Bilge plating 4.6.2 concerning plating thickness where longitudinal framing is fitted at bottom and side, but omitted in way of bilge.

Note *5*. Keel thickness is in no case to be less than that of the adjacent bottom shell plating.

Note *6*. Where separate maximum sagging and hogging still water bending moments are assigned, F_D may be based on the sagging moment and F_B on the hogging moment.

Note *7*. Outside the Rule minimum region of higher tensile steel as defined in Pt 3, Ch 3, 2.6 Vertical extent of higher tensile steel 2.6.1 the value of k_L may be taken as 1.0.

4. 3 Deck plating

4. 3. 1 The midship thickness of deck plating is to be maintained for 0.4*L* amidships and tapered outside this region in association with the deck longitudinals in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 9, 5.5 Deck longitudinals outside 0.4L amidships. The midship thickness may, however, be required over an increased extent if it is shown to be necessary by the bending moment curves. Where partial filling

of the tanks is contemplated the deck plating is also to comply with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 9, 6.1 General 6.1.2.

4. 3. 2 For ships not exceeding 200 m in length, the deck thickness outside 0.4L amidships is to be not less than $\frac{s}{80}$ at any point within the cargo tank region. For lengths of 250 m and over, the thickness is to be not less than $\frac{s}{70}$. Intermediate values are to be obtained by interpolation. For the purpose of this paragraph, the minimum value of s given in Pt 4, Ch 9, 4.2 Symbols 4.2.1 is not to be applied.

4. 3. 3 The plating thickness outside 0.4L amidships is to be not less than:

$$t = \frac{s}{J} + 2.0 \text{ mm}$$

Where

J = is defined in Pt 4, Ch 9, 4.2 Symbols 4.2.1 using σ_o of the plating at the location under consideration.

4. 4 Sheerstrake

4. 4. 1 The midship sheerstrake thickness is to be maintained for 0.4L amidships and tapered outside this region as provided for in Pt 3, Ch 5 Fore End Structure and Pt 3, Ch 6 Aft End Structure. In the taper region, however, the sheerstrake thickness need not exceed the adjacent deck or shell thickness, whichever is the greater.

4. 4. 2 The width of sheerstrake for 0.4L amidships is to be not less than that required by Table 2. 2. 1: Material classes and grades.

4. 4. 3 Where a rounded sheerstrake is incorporated, the radius is not, in general, to be less than 15 times the thickness. The radius is to be made by careful cold rolling or bending.

4. 5 Shell plating

4. 5. 1 The midship thicknesses of side and bottom shell plating are to be maintained for 0.4L amidships and tapered outside this region as provided for in Pt 3, Ch 5 Fore End Structure and Pt 3, Ch 6 Aft End Structure. The midship thicknesses may be required over an increased extent if it is shown to be necessary by the bending moment or shear force curves.

4. 5. 2 The requirements of Pt 3, Ch 5 Fore End Structure are to be complied with in respect of the thickness of bottom shell forward.

4. 6 Bilge plating

4. 6. 1 The midship thickness of the bilge plating is to be maintained for 0.4L amidships and tapered outside this region as provided for in Pt 3, Ch 5 Fore End Structure and Pt 3, Ch 6 Aft End Structure.

4. 6. 2 Where longitudinal bottom and side framing is adopted, but longitudinals are omitted between the upper and lower extremities of the bilge radius, the bilge thickness is to be not less than $\frac{R_B F_B}{165 k_L}$ in addition to the required minimum thickness derived from Table 9. 4. 1: Hull envelope plating - minimum thickness, in mm. The spacing of transverse supports associated with such an arrangement is to comply with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 9, 5.4 Bilge longitudinals and brackets.

4. 6. 3 Where bilge longitudinals are omitted, the plating thickness outside 0.4L amidships will be considered in relation to the support derived from the hull form and internal stiffening

arrangements. Due regard will be taken of the possibility of increased loading in the forward region.

4. 7 Keel

4. 7. 1 The midship keel thickness is to be maintained throughout the cargo tank region, except as required by Table 9. 4. 1: Hull envelope plating - minimum thickness, in mm, Note 5.

4. 7. 2 The width of the keel over the cargo tank region is to be not less than:

$70B$ mm but need not exceed 1800 mm and is to be not less than 750 mm.

4. 8 Taper of higher tensile steel

4. 8. 1 Where higher tensile steel is used amidships and mild steel at the ends, the thickness of bottom shell, bilge and sheerstrake is to be tapered as provided for in Pt 3, Ch 3 Structural Design, Pt 3, Ch 5 Fore End Structure and Pt 3, Ch 6 Aft End Structure.

4. 8. 2 Higher tensile steel deck plating is to be tapered in association with attached longitudinals as provided for in Pt 4, Ch 9, 5.5 Deck longitudinals outside 0.4L amidships.

4. 9 Thicknesses at ends of erections

4. 9. 1 The deck plating thickness at the poop front is to extend into the poop for a distance at least equal to one-third of the breadth, B.

4. 9. 2 If the poop front extends to within $0.25L$ of amidships, the sheerstrake and the stringer plate at the break are to be increased by 20 per cent. No increase is required if the poop front is $0.3L$ from amidships or greater. The increase at intermediate lengths is to be obtained by interpolation and is to be applied to the tapered thickness of the sheerstrake and stringer plate.

4. 9. 3 Where the poop extends to within $0.3L$ of amidships and the enclosed machinery opening extends to within $\frac{B}{3}$ of the poop front and has a width exceeding one half of the breadth of the ship at the poop front, the thickness of deck plating may require to be increased. The forward corners of the casing opening are to be well rounded.

4. 10 Deck openings

4. 10. 1 Openings in the deck are to be kept to the minimum number consistent with operational requirements.

4. 10. 2 Plate panels in which openings are cut are to be adequately stiffened, where necessary, against compression and shear buckling.

4. 10. 3 The corners of all openings are to be well rounded, and the edges smooth.

4. 10. 4 Where the stress concentration factor in way of the opening exceeds 2.4, edge reinforcement is generally to be fitted. This is normally to be in the form of a spigot of adequate dimensions, but alternative arrangements will be considered.

4. 10. 5 Alternatively, the shape of the opening is to be such that a stress concentration factor of 2.4 is not exceeded.

4. 10. 6 In this respect, reinforcement will not, in general, be required in way of:

a. elliptical openings having their major axis fore and aft and ratios of length to breadth not less than 2 to 1, or

b. openings of other shapes, provided it has been shown by suitable tests that the stress concentration factor does not exceed 2.4.

4. 10. 7 Circular openings of diameter up to 325 mm will also be accepted, provided that they are situated at such a distance from any other opening that there is an intervening width of plating of not less than five times the diameter of the smaller of the two openings.

4. 10. 8 Where within 0.4*L* amidships deck openings have a total breadth or shadow area breadth in one transverse section that exceeds the limitation given in Pt 3, Ch 3, 3.4 Calculation of hull section modulus 3.4.6 and Pt 3, Ch 3, 3.4 Calculation of hull section modulus 3.4.7, compensation will be required to restore the excess. This is generally to be arranged by increasing the deck plate thickness, but other proposals will be considered.

4. 10. 9 Where a deck longitudinal is cut in way of an opening, within 0.4*L* amidships, compensation is to be arranged to ensure full continuity of area.

4. 10. 10 The area of any edge reinforcement which may be required is not to be taken into account in determining the required sectional area of compensation unless such reinforcement is designed to absorb the loadings from cut longitudinals in way of opening.

4. 10. 11 Increased scantlings and/or compensation may also be required for large openings outside 0.5*L* amidships, or where openings are close to breaks of superstructure or other areas of high stress in any location on the ship.

4. 10. 12 Where small diameter threaded openings for staging wires are arranged on the upper deck, they are to be located clear of the other openings and similar areas of stress concentration. Care is to be taken to ensure a gradual transition at the thread ends and the edges of the holes are to be smooth. The closing arrangements are to be as required by Pt 4, Ch 9, 13 Access arrangements and closing appliances.

4. 11 Shell openings

4. 11. 1 Sea inlets in pump-rooms situated within 0.4*L* amidships, are, if practicable, to be fitted clear of the bilge radius. All openings are to be arranged so as to minimise discontinuity of transverse frames, longitudinals or bilge keels. Compensation is to be provided for all openings within 0.4*L* amidships and may also be required for openings in the vicinity of the poop front. The compensation should, if possible, take the form of an insert plate rather than a doubler.

4. 11. 2 If openings are not circular or oval, the corners are to be rounded with as large a radius as practicable.

4. 12 Superstructures

4. 12. 1 The thickness of plating forming the deck and sides of forecastles and poops is to be as required by Pt 3, Ch 5 Fore End Structure, Pt 3, Ch 6 Aft End Structure and Pt 3, Ch 8 Superstructures, Deckhouses and Bulwarks.

PART

4

CHAPTER **9** **Double Hull Oil Tankers**

SECTION **5** **Hull framing**

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 In the cargo tank region, the scantlings of deck, bottom and side longitudinals, and of transverse side framing, where fitted, are to be in accordance with the requirements of this Section.

5. 1. 2 Longitudinal and transverse framing members outside the cargo tank region are to comply with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 5, 4 Shell envelope framing, Pt 3, Ch 6, 4 Shell envelope framing and Pt 3, Ch 7 Machinery Spaces, as appropriate to their location.

5. 1. 3 Outside the cargo tank region the structure is to be scarfed into the end structure as provided for in Pt 3, Ch 5 Fore End Structure, Pt 3, Ch 6 Aft End Structure and Pt 3, Ch 7 Machinery Spaces.

5. 2 Symbols

5. 2. 1 The symbols used in this Section are defined as follows:

b_f = the width of the face plate, in mm, of the side longitudinal under consideration, *See* Figure 9. 5. 1: Definition of b f and b f1

b_{f1} = the minimum distance, in mm, from the edge of the face plate of the side longitudinal under consideration to the centre of the web plate, *See* Figure 9. 5. 1: Definition of b f and b f1

b_1 = the value as defined in Table 9. 5. 3: Determination of b1

c_1 = $\frac{60}{225-165F_D}$ at deck

= 1.0 at $\frac{D}{2}$

= $\frac{75}{225-150F_B}$ at base line of ship intermediate values of c_1 by interpolation

c_2 = $\frac{165}{345-180F_D}$ at deck

= 1.0 at $\frac{D}{2}$

= $\frac{165}{345-180F_B}$ at base line of ship intermediate values of c_2 by interpolation

d_w = depth of web, in mm

h = distance of longitudinal below deck at side, in metres. For deck longitudinals, h=0

h_o = the distance, in metres, from the mid-point of span of the stiffener to the highest point of tank, excluding hatchway

h_1 = $\left(h_o + \frac{D_1}{8}\right)$, but in no case to be taken less than $\frac{L_1}{56}$ m or $(0.01L_1 + 0.7)$ m, whichever is the greater, and need not be taken greater than $\left(0.75D + \frac{D_1}{8}\right)$ for bottom longitudinals

h_2 = distance, in metres, from mid-point of span of transverse side frame to deck at side measured at mid-length of tank, but to be taken not less than 2.5 m

h_3 = h_0+Rb_1, but need not be taken greater than $(0.75D + Rb_1)$ for bottom longitudinals

l_e = effective length, in metres, of longitudinals measured between span points, but to be taken not less than 1.5 m in double bottom and 2.5 m elsewhere. For determination of span points, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3 Structural idealisation.

t_f = thickness of flange, in mm

t_s = thickness of the bilge shell plating, in mm

t_w = thickness of web, in mm

$D1$ = D, in metres, but is to be taken not less than 10 and need not be taken greater than 16

F_B = as defined in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.7 Local reduction factors

F_D = as defined in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.7 Local reduction factors

F_1 = a factor determined from Table 9. 5. 1: Values of F1

F_2 = a factor determined from Table 9. 5. 2: Values of F2

R = sinθ

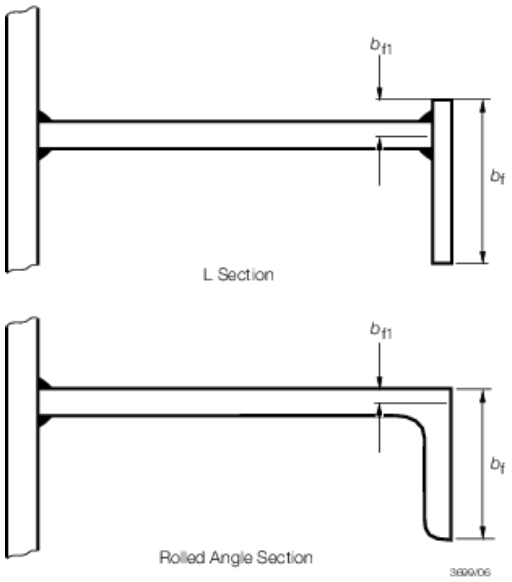
= where θ is the roll angle, in degrees

= and $\sin\ \theta = \left(0.45 + 0.1\frac{L}{B}\right)\left(0.54 - \frac{L}{1270}\right)$

R_B = bilge radius, in mm, as defined in Table 1. 5. 2: Bottom shell and bilge plating in Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships

Other symbols are defined in Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.5, General definitions and symbols

Figure 9. 5. 1: Definition of b f and b f1



5. 3 Deck, side and bottom longitudinals

5. 3. 1 The modulus of longitudinals within the cargo tank region, except as provided for in Pt 4, Ch 9, 5.3 Deck, side and bottom longitudinals 5.3.2 and Pt 4, Ch 9, 5.5 Deck longitudinals outside 0.4L amidships is to be not less than the greater of the following:

a. $Z = 0.056\, skh_1 le^2 F_1\ F_s cm^3$, or

b. $Z = 0.0051 skh_3 l_e^2\ F_2\ cm^3$

where F_1 and F_2 values are as given in Table 9. 5. 1: Values of F1 and Table 9. 5. 2: Values of F2 and F_s is a fatigue factor to be taken as follows:

F_s = $\frac{l.l}{k}\left[1 - \frac{2b_{f1}}{b_f}(1-k)\right]$ at $0.6D$ above the base line

= 1.0 at upper deck at side and at the base line, intermediate values by linear interpolation

For flat bars and bulb plates $\frac{b_{f1}}{t_{f1}}$ may be taken as 0.5

The modulus of side longitudinals need not exceed that of a bottom longitudinal having the same spacing and configuration.

Table 9. 5. 1: Values of F_1

Item	F_1
Deck longitudinals and side longitudinals above $\frac{D}{2}$	$\frac{Dc_1}{4D + 20h}$
Side longitudinal and bottom longitudinals below $\frac{D}{2}$	$\frac{Dc_1}{25D - 20h}$
Note Minimum $F_1 = 0.12$	

Table 9. 5. 2: Values of F_2

Item	F_2
Deck longitudinals and side longitudinals above $\frac{D}{2}$	$\frac{Dc_2}{D + 2.18h}$
Side longitudinal and bottom longitudinals below $\frac{D}{2}$	$\frac{Dc_2}{3.18D - 2.18h}$
Note Minimum $F_2 = 0.73$	

5. 3. 2 The modulus of bottom longitudinals is to satisfy the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 9, 5.3 Deck, side and bottom longitudinals 5.3.1 or Table 1. 6. 1: Shell framing (longitudinal) (3) in Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships, whichever is the greater.

5. 3. 3 The section modulus given is that of the longitudinal and associated plating, for the extent of the associated plating, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3.2 Geometric properties of section 3.2.3. The webs and flanges are to comply with the minimum thickness requirements of Pt 4, Ch 9, 10 Construction details and minimum thickness.

5. 3. 4 Where the spacing of transverses exceeds 5.5 m, the scantlings of side and bottom longitudinals in way of bulkheads and primary members, including end connections, are to be verified by direct calculation.

5. 3. 5 The side and bottom longitudinal scantlings derived from Pt 4, Ch 9, 5.3 Deck, side and bottom longitudinals 5.3.1 and Pt 4, Ch 9, 5.3 Deck, side and bottom longitudinals 5.3.2, using the midship thickness of plating, are to extend throughout the cargo tanks. Where the shell plating is inclined at an angle to the horizontal longitudinal axis of greater than 10°, the span of the longitudinals is to be measured along the member. Where the shell plating is inclined at an angle to the vertical axis of greater than 10°, the spacing of longitudinals is to be measured along the chord between members. Where the angle of attachment of side longitudinals clear of amidships varies by 20° or more from a line normal to the plane of the shell, the properties of the section are to be determined about an axis parallel to the attached plating. Angles of slope greater than 40° are to be avoided.

5. 3. 6 Fabricated longitudinals having the face plate welded to the underside of the web, leaving the edge of the web exposed, are not recommended for shell, inner hull or longitudinal bulkhead longitudinals. Where it is proposed to fit such sections, a symmetrical arrangement of connection to transverse members is to be incorporated. This can be achieved by fitting backing brackets on the opposite side of the transverse web or bulkhead. The primary member web stiffener and backing bracket are to be lapped to the longitudinal. Recommended examples of such backing structure can be *See*n in the *ACSPlus FDA Guideline, Structural Detail Design Guide* (SDDG).

5. 3. 7 Where partial filling of the tanks is also contemplated the deck longitudinals are to comply with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 9, 6.1 General 6.1.2.

5. 3. 8 Stiffeners and brackets on vertical webs in wing ballast tanks, where fitted on one side and connected to higher tensile steel longitudinals between the base line and 0.8D above the base line, are to have their heels well radiused to reduce stress concentrations. Where a symmetrical arrangement is fitted, i.e. bracket or stiffening on both sides, and they are connected to higher tensile steel longitudinals, the toes of the stiffeners or brackets are to be well radiused. Alternative arrangements will be considered if supported by appropriate fatigue life assessment calculations.

5. 3. 9 Where higher tensile steel side longitudinals pass through transverse bulkheads in the cargo area, well radiused brackets of the same material are to be fitted on both the fore and after side of the connection between the upper turn of bilge and 0.8D above the base line. Particular attention should be given to ensuring the alignment of these brackets. Alternative arrangements will be considered if supported by appropriate fatigue life assessment calculations.

Table 9. 5. 3: Determination of b_1

Item No.	Structural arrangement	Location	Value of b_1, metres
1	Where wing and double bottom ballast tanks port and starboard are interconnected	(a) Bottom longitudinals	The greater horizontal distance from ship side to the longitudinal
		(b) Side longitudinals	Breadth of ship
		(c) Deck longitudinals	(i) In way of cargo tanks and inboard ballast tanks, the greater horizontal distance from tank corner at top of tank to longitudinal, either side (ii) In way of wing ballast tanks, the greater horizontal distance from ship side to longitudinal, either side
2	Where wing ballast tanks port and starboard are separate	(a) Bottom longitudinals	The horizontal distance from ship side to longitudinal
		(b) Side longitudinals	Width of wing ballast tank

5. 4 Bilge longitudinals and brackets

5. 4. 1 The scantlings of bilge longitudinals are to be graduated between those required for the bottom and lowest side longitudinals.

5. 4. 2 Where bilge longitudinals are omitted, the spacing of transverses or equivalent bilge brackets must not exceed:

$$8 \times 10^6 \frac{t_s^2}{DR_B} \sqrt{\frac{t_s}{R_B}} \text{mm}$$

Where no intermediate brackets are fitted between transverses, the spacing between the two outermost bottom longitudinals and between the two lowest side longitudinals is not to exceed one-third of the bilge radius or 40 times the local shell thickness, whichever is the greater.

5. 4. 3 Attention is drawn to Pt 4, Ch 9, 4.6 Bilge plating 4.6.2 and Pt 4, Ch 9, 4.6 Bilge plating 4.6.3 concerning bilge plating thickness where longitudinals are omitted.

5. 5 Deck longitudinals outside 0.4*L* amidships

5. 5. 1 Within the cargo tank region, deck longitudinals may be gradually tapered outside 0.4*L* amidships in association with the deck plating, on the basis of area and modulus. For the requirements, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 2.5 Taper requirements for hull envelope and Table 3. 2. 1: Taper requirements for hull envelope, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 9, 5.3 Deck, side and bottom longitudinals 5.3.5.

5. 5. 2 The midship spacing of longitudinals is, in general, to be maintained throughout the cargo tank region. The plating thickness and longitudinal depth and thickness are not to be increased at any point in the direction of the taper of area towards the ends of the ship, other than as may be required for compensation for openings. Changes of longitudinal section are, in general, to be avoided.

5. 5. 3 Attention is also drawn to Pt 4, Ch 9, 5.3 Deck, side and bottom longitudinals 5.3.3, which is to be complied with, where necessary, by maintaining a constant deck plating thickness in way of the ends of the cargo tank region.

5. 5. 4 Where the spacing of transverses in cargo tanks is not constant and variations in longitudinal scantlings are contemplated to suit differing spans, individual consideration will be given to the taper arrangements.

5. 6 Stability of longitudinals

5. 6. 1 The lateral and torsional stability of longitudinals together with web and flange buckling criteria are to be verified in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 4, 7 Hull buckling strength.

5. 6. 2 In addition, the following requirements are to be satisfied:

a. Flat bar longitudinal

i. when continuous at bulkheads

$$\frac{d_w}{t_w} \leq 18\sqrt{k_L}$$

ii. when non-continuous at bulkheads

$$\frac{d_w}{t_w} \leq 15\sqrt{k_L}$$

b. Built sections

i. $\frac{d_w}{t_w} \leq 60\sqrt{k_L}$

ii. $\frac{b_f}{t_f} \leq 15$ for asymmetric sections

iii. $\frac{b_f}{t_f} \leq 30$ for symmetric sections.

5. 7 Connections of longitudinals

5. 7. 1 Connections of longitudinals to bulkheads are to provide adequate fixity and continuity of longitudinal strength. *See also* the *ACSPlus FDA Guideline, Structural Detail Design Guide* (SDDG), for recommended design details in critical areas.

5. 7. 2 Where the length of the ship exceeds 150 m, the longitudinals within 0.1*D* of the bottom and deck are to be continuous through the transverse bulkheads. Higher tensile steel longitudinals are to be continuous irrespective of ship length. Alternative arrangements will be individually considered.

5. 7. 3 Longitudinals are to be connected to transverse primary members as required by Pt 3, Ch 10, 5.2, Arrangements at intersections of continuous secondary and primary members.

5. 8 Openings in longitudinals

5. 8. 1 In general, closely spaced scallops are not permitted in longitudinals within the range of cargo tanks except in way of ballast pipe suctions, reinforcement in these areas will be specially considered.

5. 8. 2 Small air and drain holes, cut-outs at erection butts and similar widely spaced openings are, in general, to be not less than 200 mm clear of the toes of end brackets, intersections with primary supporting members and other areas of high stress. All openings are to be well rounded with smooth edges.

5. 8. 3 Drain holes in higher tensile steel longitudinals attached to higher tensile steel plating are to be elliptical in shape or of equivalent design to minimise stress concentrations. The opening is generally to be located clear of the welded connection to the plating, but where a flush opening is essential for drainage the weld connection is to end in a soft toe.

5. 8. 4 Small circular air holes may be arranged in higher tensile steel deck longitudinals.

5. 8. 5 Isolated openings spaced greater than 1 metre apart need not be taken into account in calculating the section modulus of the longitudinal, provided that the depth does not exceed 10 per cent of the web depth, or 75 mm, whichever is the greater, but in no case more than 25 per cent of the depth of the longitudinal.

5. 8. 6 Where the depths given in Pt 4, Ch 9, 5.8 Openings in longitudinals 5.8.5 are exceeded, the arrangements are to be such as will minimise resultant stress concentration.

5. 9 Transverse side frames

5. 9. 1 For limits of application of transverse side framing, *See* Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.3, Class notation and applicable Rules for CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers.

5. 9. 2 The section modulus of transverse side frames is to be not less than:

$Z = 0.01025 k s h_2 l e^2$ cm^3, where side webs are fitted;

or

$Z = 0.012 k s h_2 l_e^2$ cm^3, where side webs are not fitted.

5. 9. 3 The size of the frame is to be governed by the maximum modulus derived from the appropriate formula in Pt 4, Ch 9, 5.9 Transverse side frames 5.9.2, and is to be maintained for the full depth of the ship.

5. 9. 4 The section modulus given is that of the frame and associated side shell plating. The frame is to comply with the minimum thickness requirements of Pt 4, Ch 9, 10 Construction details and minimum thickness.

5. 9. 5 The inertia of transverse side frames is to be not less than:

In the forward $0.15L$: $I = 3.5 l_e Z$ cm^4

Elsewhere: $I = 3.2 l_e Z$ cm^4.

PART

4

CHAPTER 9 **Double Hull Oil Tankers**

SECTION 6 **Inner hull, inner bottom and longitudinal oiltight bulkheads**

6. 1 General

6. 1. 1 The inner hull, inner bottom and longitudinal bulkheads are generally to be longitudinally framed. Longitudinal bulkheads may be plane or horizontally corrugated. Centreline longitudinal bulkheads may also be vertically corrugated, *See* Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.4 Class notation and applicable Rules for non-CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers 1.4.15. Scantlings of inner hull and longitudinal oiltight bulkheads are to be in accordance with Table 9. 6. 1: Inner hull and longitudinal oiltight bulkhead scantlings and panel stability is also to be confirmed from primary structure direct calculations. The calculation is to take account of the shear stress and direct stresses derived from both the transverse and longitudinal strength investigations.

Table 9. 6. 1: Inner hull and longitudinal oiltight bulkhead scantlings

Item	Horizontally stiffened/Vertically stiffened
(1) Plating thicknesses including corrugations (mm) *See* Notes 1 and 7	(a) Within 0.1D of the deck: $t=t_0$ (b) Within 0.1D of the bottom shell: $t = \frac{t_0}{\sqrt{2-F_B}}$ (but not less than t_1) (c) Elsewhere: $t=t_1$ *See* Note 6 (d) But not less than $t = 0.0009s(0.059L_1 + 7)$
(2) Stiffener modulus (cm^3) *See* Notes 3 and 4	(a) Horizontally stiffened: (i) $Z = 0.056\mathrm{kh}_2\mathrm{Sl}_e^2F_1$ whichever is the greater (ii) $Z = 0.0051\mathrm{kh}_4\mathrm{Sl}_e^2F_2$ whichever is the greater (b) Vertically stiffened: $Z = 0.0067\mathrm{kSl}_e^2h_5$
(3) Corrugation properties *See* Note 7	(a) Modulus (cm^3): $Z = 0.0085ph_5l_e^2k$ (b) Inertia (cm^4):

	$I = 0.032ph_s le^3$

Note *1.* The plating thicknesses are not to be less than as necessary to comply with the buckling requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4, 7 Hull buckling strength.

Note *2.* The section modulus given by the formula is that of the stiffener and associated plating or of the corrugation over pitch, *p*.

Note *3.* For vertical stiffeners, the ratio of web depth to web thickness is not to exceed 60 $\sqrt{k}$ for stiffeners with flanges or face plates, and 18 $\sqrt{k}$ for flat bars. Horizontal stiffeners are to comply with Pt 4, Ch 9, 5.6 Stability of longitudinals.

Note *4.* The minimum thickness criteria given in Pt 4, Ch 9, 10 Construction details and minimum thickness are also to be complied with and the stiffener web thickness is to be sufficient to withstand the imposed shear forces.

Note *5.* The minimum moment of inertia represented by item 3(b) of the Table is not to be reduced on account of higher tensile steel being incorporated.

Note *6.* In applying item 1(c) of the Table, it is necessary to calculate values of t_0 for plate panels within 0.4*D* each side of mid-depth, take the minimum value, t_m, and then determine value of t_1.

Note *7.* For vertically corrugated centreline longitudinal bulkheads *See also* Table 1. 9. 2: Symmetrical corrugations and double plate bulkheads (additional requirements) in Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships for deep tanks.

6. 1. 2 Where tanks are intended to be partially filled, the scantlings and structural arrangements of the boundary bulkheads are to be capable of withstanding the loads imposed by the movement of liquid in the tanks. The magnitude of the predicted loadings, together with the scantling calculations, may require to be submitted.

6. 2 Symbols

6. 2. 1 The symbols used in this Section are defined as follows:

b_1 = the greater horizontal distance, in metres, from a point one third of the height of the strake above its lower edge or mid-point of the stiffener span, to the corners at the top of the tank on either side.

Where the angle α is less than $\left(32.5 - \frac{L}{20}\right)$ degrees, the distance is measured to the widest point of the tank, *See* Figure 9. 6. 1: Illustration of b1 determination.

α = angle, in degrees, as indicated in .

c_1 = $\frac{60}{225-165F_D}$ at deck

= 1.0 at $\frac{D}{2}$

= $\frac{75}{225-150F_B}$ at base line of ship

intermediate values of c_1 by interpolation

c_2 = $\frac{165}{345-180F_D}$ at deck

= 1.0 at $\frac{D}{2}$

= $\frac{165}{345-180F_B}$ at base line of ship

intermediate values of c_2 by interpolation

h = load height, in metres measured vertically as follows:

(a) For bulkhead plating, the distance from a point one third of the height of the plate panel above its lower edge to the highest point of the tank, excluding hatchway

(b) for bulkhead stiffeners or corrugations, the distance from the mid-point of span of the stiffener or corrugation to the highest point of the tank, excluding hatchway

h_1 = $\left(h + \frac{D_1}{8}\right)$, but not less than $0.72(h + Rb_1)$

h_2 = $\left(h + \frac{D_1}{8}\right)$, in metres, but in no case to be taken less than $\frac{L_1}{56}$m or $(0.01L_1 + 0.7)$m, whichever is the greater

h_3 = distance of longitudinal below deck at side, in metres, but is not to be less than 0

h_4 = $h + Rb_1$

h_5 = h_2 but is to be not less than $0.55h_4$

l_e = effective length, in metres, of longitudinals measured between span points, but is not to be taken less than 2.5 m. For determination of span points, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3 Structural idealisation

p = pitch of symmetrical corrugations, in mm

s = spacing, in mm, of bulkhead stiffeners for plane bulkheads. In case of symmetrical corrugations, s is to be taken as b or c in Figure 3. 3. 1: Corrugation dimensions in Pt 3, Ch 3 Structural Design, whichever is the greater

t_0 = $0.005s\sqrt{kh_1}$

t_1 = $t_0\left(0.84 + 0.16\left(\frac{t_m}{t_0}\right)^2\right)$

t_m = minimum value of t_0 within $0.4D$ each side of mid-depth of bulkhead

D_1 = D, in metres, but is to be taken not less than 10 and need not be taken greater than 16

F_B = as defined in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.7 Local reduction factors

F_D = as defined in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.7 Local reduction factors

F_1 = a factor determined from Table 9. 6. 2: Values of F1

F_2 = a factor determined from Table 9. 6. 3: Values of F2

R = $\sin\theta$

where θ is the roll angle, in degrees

and $\sin\theta = \left(0.45 + 0.1\frac{L}{B}\right)\left(0.54 - \frac{L}{1270}\right)$

Other symbols are defined in Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.5, General definitions and symbols.

Figure 9. 6. 1: Illustration of b_1 determination

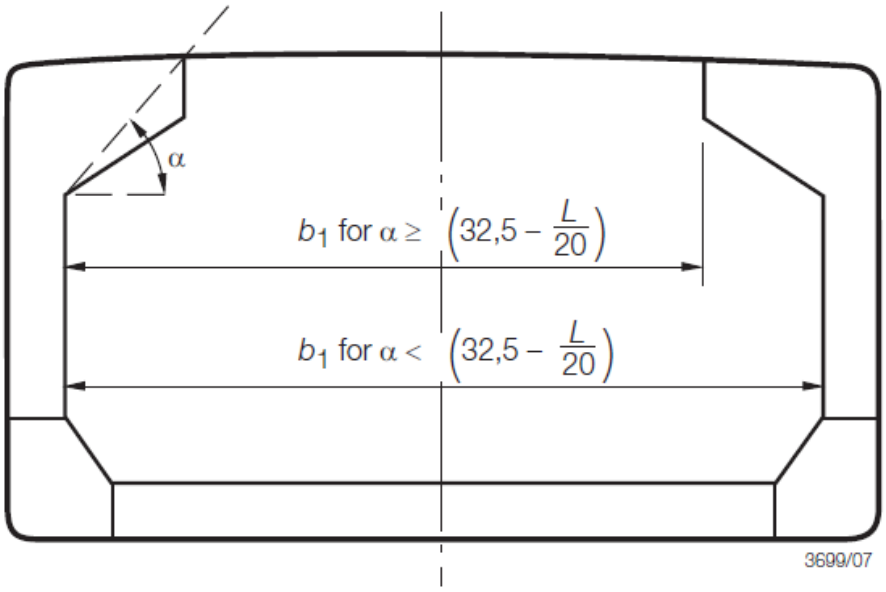


Table 9. 6. 2: Values of F_1

Longitudinal bulkhead longitudinals	F_1
Above $\frac{D}{2}$,	$\frac{Dc_1}{4D + 20h_3}$
Below $\frac{D}{2}$	$\frac{Dc_1}{25D - 20h_3}$
Note Minimum F_1=0.12	

Table 9. 6. 3: Values of F_2

Longitudinal bulkhead longitudinals	F_2
Above $\frac{D}{2}$	$\frac{Dc_2}{D + 2.18h_3}$
Below $\frac{D}{2}$	$\frac{Dc_2}{3.18D - 2.18h_3}$
Note Minimum F_2=0.73	

6. 3 Inner hull and longitudinal bulkheads

6. 3. 1 Inner hull and longitudinal bulkheads are to extend as far forward and aft as practicable and are to be effectively scarfed into the adjoining structure.

6. 3. 2 Longitudinal bulkheads only may be perforated provided suitable account is taken of the applied shear forces. Proposals to fit perforated longitudinal bulkheads in cargo tanks will be individually

considered. *See also* Pt 4, Ch 9, 7.1, General concerning penetration of pump-room, cofferdam and cargo tank bulkheads.

6. 3. 3 The thickness of inner hull and longitudinal bulkhead plating required by Table 9. 6. 1: Inner hull and longitudinal oiltight bulkhead scantlings is to be maintained throughout the cargo tank length, with the exception of item (1)(a) which may be gradually tapered outside 0.4L amidships to cargo tank minimum thickness or as required by item (1)(c), whichever is the greater, at 0.075L from the ends.

6. 3. 4 The bulkhead plating thicknesses throughout the cargo tank length are to be increased as necessary to attain compliance with the shear strength requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4, 6 Hull shear strength.

6. 3. 5 For conditions which provide for wing and centre cargo tanks abreast to be filled, with adjacent cargo tanks fore and aft empty, the thickness of longitudinal bulkheads is to comply with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 9, 8.3 Scantlings 8.3.2.d and Pt 4, Ch 9, 8.3 Scantlings 8.3.2.e, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 9, 3.3 Loading conditions 3.3.6.

6. 3. 6 Where bulkheads are penetrated by cargo or ballast piping, the structural arrangements in way are to be capable of withstanding the loads imparted to the bulkheads by the hydraulic forces in the pipes. The requirements for cargo and ballast piping is given in Pt 5, Ch 15, 2.5 Air and sounding pipes and Pt 5, Ch 15, 3 Cargo handling system.

6. 3. 7 Openings in horizontal stiffeners are to comply with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 9, 5.8 Openings in longitudinals.

6. 4 Longitudinal corrugated bulkheads

6. 4. 1 Where horizontally corrugated bulkheads are adopted the angle of corrugation is to be not less than 40°.

6. 4. 2 In ships exceeding 150 m in length the upper and lower strakes of the longitudinal bulkhead are to be plane for a distance of 0.1D from the deck and bottom.

6. 4. 3 Corrugations are to be aligned, and stiffening arrangements on plane members are to be arranged to give adequate support in way of flanges of abutting corrugations. Where both the longitudinal and transverse bulkheads are horizontally corrugated, the arrangements at intersections are to be designed to facilitate attachment and maintain continuity.

6. 4. 4 Where asymmetrical girders or webs are fitted to corrugated bulkheads, the angle of corrugation is not to exceed 60°.

6. 5 Inner bottom

6. 5. 1 The inner bottom is to be longitudinally framed and the inner bottom plating thickness is to be not less than the greater of:

a. $t = \frac{t_0}{\sqrt{2-F_B}}$ mm, or

b. deep tank requirements of Table 1. 9. 1: Watertight and deep tank bulkhead scantlings in Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships.

6. 5. 2 The section modulus of inner bottom longitudinals is to be in accordance with Table 9. 6. 1: Inner hull and longitudinal oiltight bulkhead scantlings or deep tank requirements of Table 1. 9. 1: Watertight and deep tank bulkhead scantlings in Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships, whichever is the greater, and the unsupported span may extend to the spacing between plate floors.

6. 5. 3 Buckling resistance to longitudinal and transverse stresses in the inner bottom is to be confirmed by direct calculation, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 4, 7 Hull buckling strength.

6. 5. 4 Transverse continuity of inner bottom is to be maintained outboard of inner hull, *See* Pt 4, Ch 9, 6.6 Hopper side tank 6.6.3. Recommended details are shown in the *ACSPlus FDA Guideline, Structural Detail Design Guide* (SDDG).

6. 5. 5 Particular attention is to be given to the through thickness properties and continuity at the connection of bulkhead stools to the inner bottom. For requirements for plates with specified through thickness properties, *See* Ch 3, 8 Plates with specified through thickness properties of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials.

6. 5. 6 Connection of inner bottom longitudinals to plate floor is to satisfy the requirements given in Pt 3, Ch 10, 5.2, Arrangements at intersections of continuous secondary and primary members.

6. 6 Hopper side tank

6. 6. 1 Where a hopper side tank is fitted the sloping bulkhead plating and attached longitudinals are to be as required by Table 9. 6. 1: Inner hull and longitudinal oiltight bulkhead scantlings.

6. 6. 2 A transverse is to be arranged in the hopper tank in line with each double bottom plate floor, to ensure continuity of transverse strength.

6. 6. 3 Particular attention is to be paid to the continuity of the inner bottom plating into the hopper side tank. Scarfing brackets are to be fitted in the hopper in line with the inner bottom at each transverse. These brackets are to be arranged each side of the transverse.

6. 6. 4 Knuckles in the hopper tank plating are to be supported by side girders and stringers or by a deep longitudinal.

6. 6. 5 Detail design guidelines for connections in way of hopper tank knuckles are shown in the *ACSPlus FDA Guideline, Structural Detail Design Guide* (SDDG).

6. 7 Connections

6. 7. 1 Horizontal and vertical stiffeners are to be connected to supporting primary members as required by Pt 3, Ch 10, 5.2, Arrangements at intersections of continuous secondary and primary members.

6. 7. 2 Stiffeners are to be bracketed or otherwise efficiently connected at their ends to provide adequate fixity, as required by Pt 3, Ch 10 Welding and Structural Details.

6. 7. 3 Connections of horizontal stiffeners to transverse bulkheads are to provide adequate fixity and continuity of longitudinal strength. Horizontal stiffeners are to be continuous through bulkheads as required by Pt 4, Ch 9, 5.7 Connections of longitudinals, for longitudinals.

6. 7. 4 Where inner hulls, longitudinal and transverse bulkheads are horizontally stiffened, consideration will be given to the stability of the arrangements at intersections. Additional calculations may be required.

PART

4

CHAPTER **9** **Double Hull Oil Tankers**

SECTION **7** **Transverse oiltight bulkheads**

7. 1 General

7. 1. 1 Transverse oiltight bulkheads may be plane or with corrugations arranged horizontally or vertically. Scantlings are to be in accordance with Table 9. 7. 1: Transverse oiltight bulkhead scantlings, except as otherwise provided for in this Section. The arrangement of stiffening is to be such as will efficiently support loads transmitted by end connections of inner hull, longitudinal bulkhead, shell and deck longitudinals. The thickness of bulkhead plating is also to be confirmed by direct calculation in respect of panel stability. The calculation is to take account of the shear stresses and direct stresses derived from both the transverse and longitudinal strength investigations.

7. 1. 2 Where tanks are intended to be partially filled, the scantlings and structural arrangements of the boundary bulkheads are to be capable of withstanding the loads imposed by the movement of liquid in the tanks. The magnitude of the predicted loadings, together with the scantling calculations, may require to be submitted.

7. 1. 3 The scantlings of water ballast tank and cofferdam bulkheads not forming the boundary of a cargo tank are to be as required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 9 Bulkheads for deep tanks. Where the bulkheads are boundaries of `U' shaped tanks, the scantlings are also to be confirmed by the requirements of this Section.

Table 9. 7. 1: Transverse oiltight bulkhead scantlings

Item	Horizontally stiffened	Vertically stiffened
(1) Plating thickness (mm)	$t = 0.0044 s f \sqrt{k h_1}$	
(a) Generally, including corrugations *See also* item 3 (b) But not less than:		
For the upper 3/4 of the bulkhead *See* Note 5	$t = \frac{a}{\left(95 + 20\frac{a}{b}\right)\sqrt{k}}$	$t = \frac{a}{\left(85 + 30\left(\frac{a}{b}\right)^2\right)\sqrt{k}}$
For the lower 1/4 of the bulkhead *See* Note 5	$t = \frac{a}{\left(80 + 20\frac{a}{b}\right)\sqrt{k}}$	$t = \frac{a}{\left(73 + 27\left(\frac{a}{b}\right)^2\right)\sqrt{k}}$
(2) Stiffener modulus (cm^3)	$Z = 0.0067 k s S_1^2 h_2$	
(3) Corrugation properties (a) Modulus (cm^3)	$Z = 0.0085 p h_2 l_e^2 k$	

(b) Inertia (cm^4) *See* Note 4	$I = 0.032ph_2l_e3$

Note *1.* The section modulus given by the formula is that of the stiffeners and associated plating or of the corrugation over pitch p.

Note *2.* The ratio of web depth to web thickness is not to exceed $60\sqrt{k}$ for stiffeners with flanges or face plates and $18\sqrt{k}$ for flat bars.

Note *3.* The minimum thickness criteria given in Pt 4, Ch 9, 10 Construction details and minimum thickness are also to be complied with, and the stiffener web thickness is to be sufficient to withstand the imposed shear forces.

Note *4.* The minimum moment of inertia required by item 3(b) of the Table is not to be reduced on account of higher tensile steel being incorporated.

Note *5.* For vertically corrugated bulkheads *See* Table 1. 9. 2: Symmetrical corrugations and double plate bulkheads (additional requirements) in Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships for deep tanks.

7. 1. 4 Where the pump-room acts as a cofferdam, a bulkhead which does not form part of the boundary of a cargo tank or a fuel oil bunker may be of watertight bulkhead scantlings in accordance with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 9 Bulkheads provided that an inert gas system is fitted in the cargo tanks, and the corresponding notation provided for in Pt 1, Ch 2, 2 Character of classification and class notations is assigned.

7. 1. 5 Where penetration of the cofferdam or pump-room bulkheads is permitted by the Rules, the integrity of the bulkhead is to be maintained, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 13, 2 Construction and installation, Pt 5, Ch 15, 3 Cargo handling system and Pt 6, Ch 2, 14 Electrical equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres or in the presence of combustible dusts.

7. 1. 6 Where bulkheads are penetrated by cargo or ballast piping, the structural arrangements in way are to be capable of withstanding the loads imparted to the bulkheads by the hydraulic forces in the pipes.

7. 1. 7 Special consideration will be given to any proposals to fit permanent repair/maintenance access openings with oiltight covers in cargo tank bulkheads. Attention is drawn to the existence of National Authority Regulations concerning load line and oil outflow aspects of such arrangements.

7. 2 Symbols

7. 2. 1 The symbols used in this Section are defined as follows:

a = the lesser dimension of an unstiffened plate panel, in mm

b = the greater dimension of an unstiffened plate panel, in mm

b_1 = the greater horizontal distance, in metres, from the centre of the plate panel or mid-point of the stiffener span to the corners at the top of the tank on either side.

f = $1.1 - \frac{s}{2500S_1}$ but not to be taken greater than 1.0

h = load height, in metres measured vertically as follows:

a. for bulkhead plating, the distance from a point one-third of the height of the plate panel above its lower edge to the highest point of the tank, excluding hatchway

b. for bulkhead stiffeners or corrugations, the distance from the mid-point of span of the stiffener or corrugation to the highest point of the tank, excluding hatchway

h_1 = $h + \frac{D_1}{8}$ but not less than $0.72(h + Rb_1)$

h_2 = $h + \frac{D_1}{8}$ but not less than $0.55(h + Rb_1)$

p = pitch of symmetrical corrugations, in mm

s = spacing, in mm, of bulkhead stiffeners or the breadth, in mm, of flange or web, whichever is the greater, of symmetrical corrugations

D_1 = D, in metres, but is to be taken not less than 10 and need not be taken greater than 16

R = sinθ

where θ is the roll angle, in degrees

and $\sin\ \theta = \left(0.45 + 0.1\frac{L}{B}\right)\left(0.54 - \frac{L}{1270}\right)$

S_1 = spacing of primary members, in metres. For the span at top, span may be reduced by the depth of deck longitudinal.

Other symbols are defined in Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.5, General definitions and symbols

7. 3 Corrugated bulkheads

7. 3. 1 Where corrugated bulkheads are adopted the angle of corrugation is to be not less than 40°, *See* Figure 3. 3. 1: Corrugation dimensions in Pt 3, Ch 3 Structural Design.

7. 3. 2 Where transverse bulkheads are vertically corrugated, adequate resistance to transverse compressive forces is to be provided by horizontal stringers or equivalent.

7. 3. 3 Where transverse bulkheads are horizontally corrugated, the span of the corrugations should not, in general, exceed 5.0 m. Consideration is to be given to providing an efficient connection between the corrugations and the inner hull and longitudinal bulkhead stiffeners including local reinforcement where necessary.

7. 3. 4 Corrugations are to be aligned and stiffening arrangements on plane members are to be arranged to give adequate support in way of flanges of abutting corrugations. Where both the longitudinal and transverse bulkheads are horizontally corrugated, the arrangements at intersections are to be designed to facilitate attachment and maintain continuity.

7. 3. 5 Where asymmetrical girders or webs are fitted to corrugated bulkheads, the angle of corrugation is not to exceed 60°.

7. 3. 6 Where corrugated bulkheads on stools are adopted, attention is to be paid to the design of end connection. The arrangements are to be in accordance with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 9, 7.4, Bulkheads supported by stools.

7. 3. 7 Where vertically corrugated bulkheads are proposed without stools both flanges are to be adequately supported at deck and inner bottom. Proposals will be specially considered. Particular attention is to be given to the through thickness properties of the inner bottom plating and continuity at the connection to the inner bottom. For the requirements for plates with specified through thickness properties, *See* Ch 3, 8 Plates with specified through thickness properties of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials.

7. 4 Bulkheads supported by stools

7. 4. 1 The scantlings of vertically corrugated and double plate bulkheads supported by stools are generally to be confirmed by direct calculations which are to be submitted.

7. 4. 2 In addition the scantlings are to be determined in accordance with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 9.2 Watertight and deep tank bulkheads 9.2.1 for deep tank bulkheads with the load head h_4, in metres, measured to the highest point of the tank, excluding hatchway, but is not to be taken less than $0.44(h_4+Rb_1)$.

7. 4. 3 The sloping stool plate thickness adjacent to the corrugation is to be not less than the thickness of the corrugation flange at mid span as required by Pt 4, Ch 9, 7.4 Bulkheads supported by stools 7.4.1 and Pt 4, Ch 9, 7.4 Bulkheads supported by stools 7.4.2. Where the plate thickness is increased locally, the vertical extent is to be not less than the width of the flange of the corrugation.

7. 4. 4 The stools are to be reinforced with plate diaphragms or deep webs, and in bottom stools the diaphragms are to be aligned with double bottom side girders. Continuity is also to be maintained between the diaphragms and the webs of bulkhead corrugations as far as practicable.

7. 4. 5 Additional double bottom girders are to be arranged extending at least to the first plate floor adjacent to the bulkhead each side and, in general, are to be spaced not more than 3.8 m apart.

7. 4. 6 The sloping plate of bottom stools is to be aligned with double bottom floors. Particular attention is to be given to the through thickness properties of the inner bottom plating and continuity at the connection to the inner bottom, and to the through thickness properties of the bottom stool shelf plate. For requirements for plates with specified through thickness properties *See* Ch 3, 8 Plates with specified through thickness properties of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials.

7. 4. 7 An efficient system of reinforcement is to be arranged in line with the tank transverse bulkheads or bulkhead stools at the intersection with the sloped plating of the double bottom hopper tanks and topside tanks. The reinforcement fitted in the tanks is to consist of girders or intercostal bulb plate or equivalent stiffeners fitted between and connected to the sloped bulkhead longitudinals.

7. 4. 8 The shelf plates of the bulkhead stools are to be arranged to align with the longitudinals in the double bottom hopper tank and topside tanks. Where sloping shelf plates are fitted to stools suitable scarfing is to be arranged in way of the connections of the stools to the adjoining structures.

7. 4. 9 The arrangement of stools and adjacent structure common with the cargo tank is to be designed to avoid pockets in which gas could collect.

7. 5 Connections

7. 5. 1 Horizontal and vertical stiffeners are to be connected to supporting primary members as required by Pt 3, Ch 10, 5.2, Arrangements at intersections of continuous secondary and primary members.

7. 5. 2 Stiffeners are to be bracketed or otherwise efficiently connected at their ends to provide adequate fixity.

7. 5. 3 Arrangements and scantlings of end brackets for vertical stiffeners are to be as required by Pt 3, Ch 10 Welding and Structural Details.

7. 5. 4 Horizontal stiffener end brackets are generally to satisfy the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 10 Welding and Structural Details. However, the length of the bracket arm at the side shell, inner hull and longitudinal bulkhead longitudinals is, in general, not to exceed the depth of the longitudinal. In order to provide the necessary weld connection, consideration may require to be given to fitting brackets on both sides of the bulkhead or to welding the stiffener to the longitudinal. The arrangements are also to be such as to maintain transverse continuity at intersections. Examples can be *See*n in the *ACSPlus FDA Guideline, Structural Detail Design Guide*, (SDDG), published by ACS.

PART

4

CHAPTER **9** **Double Hull Oil Tankers**

SECTION **8** **Non-oiltight bulkheads**

8. 1 General

8. 1. 1 The requirements of this Section are applicable to longitudinal and transverse wash bulkheads, where fitted. Proposals to fit perforated longitudinal bulkheads in cargo tanks will be individually considered, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.3, Class notation and applicable Rules for CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers.

8. 1. 2 Wash bulkheads are generally to be of plane construction, horizontally or vertically stiffened, having an area of perforations not less than 10 per cent of the total area of the bulkhead. The perforations are to be so arranged that the efficiency of the bulkhead as a support is not impaired.

8. 1. 3 Where tanks are intended to be partially filled, the scantlings and structural arrangements of the wash bulkheads are to be capable of withstanding the loads imposed by the movement of liquid in the tanks. The magnitude of the predicted loads, together with the scantling calculations, may require to be submitted.

8. 2 Symbols

8. 2. 1 The symbols used in this Section are defined as follows:

a = the horizontal length of the plate panel, in mm

a_T = the cross-sectional area of the vertical web on longitudinal bulkhead and associated bulkhead plating over one transverse space, in cm^2

b_i = half the distance, in metres, between members supporting floors as shown in Figure 9. 8. 1: Horizontal girder

b_L = half the distance, in metres, between members supporting horizontal girder, adjacent to the bulkhead under consideration, as shown in Figure 9. 8. 1: Horizontal girder

b_T = overall breadth of tank, in metres

D_1 = D, in metres, but is to be taken not less than 10 and need not be taken greater than 16

D_L = the depth of the longitudinal bulkhead, including double bottom girder, in metres

d_L = the distance, in metres, from the top of the longitudinal bulkhead to the centre of the plate panel under consideration and need not be taken greater than the distance to the bracket toe of the double bottom transverse primary member

h = the distance, in metres, from the centre of the load on the horizontal girder to $\frac{D_1}{8}$ m above the highest point of the tank, excluding the hatchway

d_H = the mean depth of horizontal girders at the longitudinal bulkhead, in metres, including the depth of the end brackets as shown in Figure 9. 8. 1: Horizontal girder

l_G = the distance, in metres, from the horizontal girders to the adjacent horizontal primary member below

t_3 = $\frac{(Q_{SL}+Q_{sw})}{D_L \tau}$mm

Q_s, Q_w = as defined in Pt 3, Ch 4, 6.1 Symbols

τ = $\frac{110}{k_L}$ N/mm^2

Q_{SL} = the maximum still water shear force on the longitudinal bulkhead, in kN, of the loading condition in question.

= Where two longitudinal bulkheads are fitted, Q_{SL} may be taken as:

= $Q_{sL} = 0.34Q_s$

= Where one longitudinal bulkhead is fitted, Q_{SL} may be taken as:

= $Q_{sL} = 0.40Q_s$

= Q_{SL} may also be derived by direct calculation to determine the distribution of shear force between the shell, inner hull and longitudinal bulkheads.

Q_{SW} = design wave shear force on the longitudinal bulkhead, in kN.

= Where two longitudinal bulkheads are fitted, Q_{SW} may be taken as:

= $Q_{sw} = 0.20Q_w$

= Where one longitudinal bulkhead is fitted, Q_{SW} may be taken as:

= $Q_{sw} = 0.28Q_w$

l_T = overall length of tank, in metres

F_d = $W_h S b_i \frac{d_L}{D_L}$

l_b = the distance between the transverse bulkheads (oiltight or non-oiltight) adjacent to the bulkhead under consideration, in metres

S = spacing of the double bottom transverse primary members, in metres

T_p = the maximum operating draught of ship, in metres, where the tank with non-oiltight bulkhead is empty.

W_h = $T_p + 0.023Le^{-0.0044\,L}$

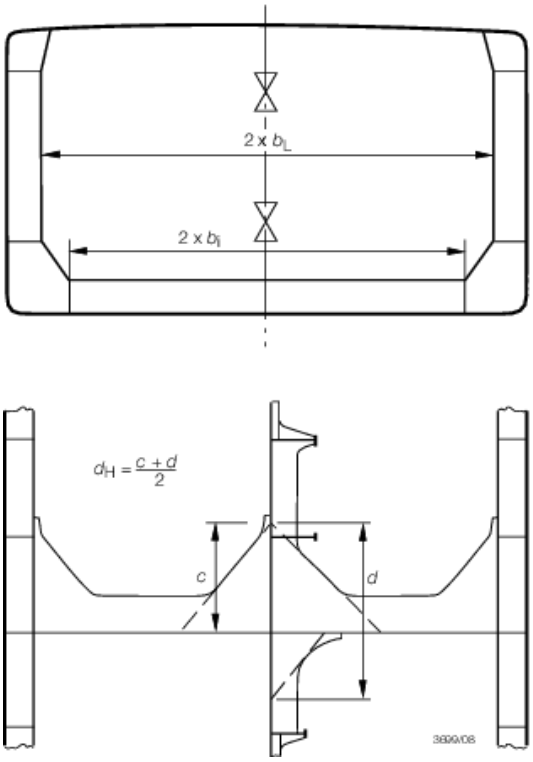
α = $\frac{s}{a}$, but not to be taken greater than 1.0

Other symbols are defined in Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.5, General definitions and symbols.

8. 3 Scantlings

8. 3. 1 The thickness of plating may be the compartment minimum, *See* Pt 4, Ch 9, 10 Construction details and minimum thickness, except as given in Pt 4, Ch 9, 8.3, Scantlings 8.3.2 and Pt 4, Ch 9, 8.3 Scantlings 8.3.4.

Figure 9. 8. 1: Horizontal girder



8. 3. 2 Where non-oiltight **longitudinal** wash bulkheads support a bottom primary member, the following additional requirements are to be met:

a. The area of perforation is to be not greater than 25 per cent of the total area of the bulkhead, and consideration is to be given to the disposition and geometry of the perforations so that the shear rigidity of the bulkhead is a maximum.

b. The net section area of the bulkhead is to be not less than 0.135 l_T b_T D cm^2.

c. The plating thickness is to comply with Table 9. 6. 1: Inner hull and longitudinal oiltight bulkhead scantlings (1)(d).

d. The thickness of longitudinal bulkhead plating and web plating of the vertical web on longitudinal bulkhead is generally to be not less than:

$$t = 0.026 \frac{s}{1+\alpha^2} \sqrt{\frac{F_d}{a_T}} \text{mm}$$

e. The thickness of the longitudinal bulkheads supporting a transverse bulkhead horizontal girder is in general to be not less than:

i. $t = \frac{0.0437 h l_G b_L k}{d_H} + \frac{0.892 t_3 k}{k_L}$ mm

ii. $t = 0.0011 s(0.059 L_1 + 7)$ mm

whichever is the greater.

f. The thickness is also to satisfy the buckling requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4, 7 Hull buckling strength.

g. The increased thickness is to extend over the end bracket and buttress of the horizontal girder down to a distance of $0.5l_G$.

8. 3. 3 The section modulus of longitudinal wash bulkhead stiffeners is to be not less than, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 4, 7 Hull buckling strength:

$$Z = 0.0036\left(0.54 - \frac{L}{1270}\right) b_T k_S S^2 \ cm^3$$

8. 3. 4 Where non-oiltight **transverse** wash bulkheads support a primary fore and aft bottom centreline girder, the following additional requirements are to be met:

a. The area of perforation is to be not greater than 25 per cent of the total area of the bulkhead, and consideration is to be given to the disposition and geometry of the perforations so that the shear rigidity of the bulkhead is a maximum.

b. The net section area of the bulkhead is to be not less than $0.135 l_b b_T D$ cm^2.

c. The plating thickness is to comply with Table 9. 7. 1: Transverse oiltight bulkhead scantlings (1)(b). In no case is either panel dimension to exceed 180 times the thickness required by this sub-paragraph or by Pt 4, Ch 9, 8.3 Scantlings 8.3.1, whichever is the greater.

8. 3. 5 The section modulus of transverse wash bulkhead stiffeners is to be not less than:

$$Z = 0.1215 k s l_{e^2} \frac{l_b}{L} \ cm^3$$

8. 4 Connections

8. 4. 1 Stiffeners are to be bracketed or otherwise efficiently connected at their ends and to primary supporting members, in accordance with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 10 Welding and Structural Details.

PART

4

CHAPTER **9** **Double Hull Oil Tankers**

SECTION **9** **Primary members supporting longitudinal framing**

9. 1 General

9. 1. 1 These requirements are applicable to ships having structural arrangements in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.4, Class notation and applicable Rules for non-CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers.

9. 1. 2 The minimum thickness and constructional detail requirements of Pt 4, Ch 9, 10 Construction details and minimum thickness are also to be complied with.

9. 1. 3 The scantlings of primary members are, in general, to be determined from direct calculations carried out in accordance with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 9, 14 Direct calculations or in accordance with the requirements of this Section or the relevant Sections of Pt 4, Ch 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers. The direct calculations are to be submitted with the plans for confirmatory purposes, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.4 Class notation and applicable Rules for non-CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers 1.4.6.

9. 2 Symbols

9. 2. 1 The symbols used in this Section are defined as follows:

b_{e1}, b_{e2} = effective end bracket leg length, in metres, at each end of the member, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3 Structural idealisation

d_{DB} = Rule depth of centre girder, in mm

h_c = vertical distance from the centre of the cross-ties to deck at side amidships, in metres

h_s = distance between the lower span point of the vertical web and the moulded deck line at centreline, in metres

l_b = the distance, in metres, between the transverse bulkheads (oiltight or non-oiltight) adjacent to the bulkhead under consideration

l_c = one-half the vertical distance, in metres, between the centres of the adjacent cross-ties or between the centre of the adjacent cross-tie and the centre of the adjacent bottom or deck transverse, or double bottom, *See* Figure 9. 9. 1: Wing tank construction

s = spacing of transverses, in metres

A_c = cross sectional area of the cross-tie material which is continuous over the span of the cross-tie in cm^2

l_c = least moment of inertia of the cross-tie in cm^4

S_c = length of cross-tie, in metres, measured as follows:

- **(a)** For centre tank cross-ties: S_c is the distance between the face plates of the vertical webs on the longitudinal bulkheads.
- **(b)** For wing tank cross-ties: S_c is the distance between the face plate of the vertical web on the longitudinal bulkhead and the inner hull

S_s = span of the vertical web, in metres, and is to be measured between end span points, *See* Figure 9. 9. 1: Wing tank construction.

Other symbols are defined in Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.5, General definitions and symbols.

9. 3 Girders and floors in double bottom

9. 3. 1 Girders are to be arranged at the centreline or duct keel, at the hopper side and in way of longitudinal bulkheads and bulkhead stools. Plate floors are to be arranged in way of transverse bulkheads and bulkhead stools.

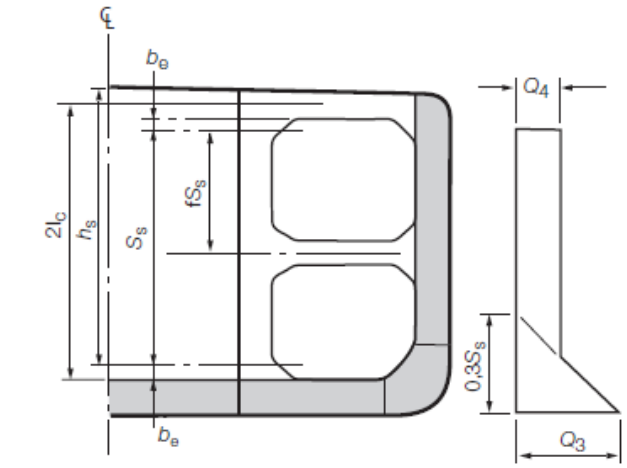
9. 3. 2 In way of vertically corrugated transverse bulkheads supported by stools, additional girders are to be arranged extending at least to the first plate floor adjacent to the bulkhead each side and spaced not more than 3.8 m apart, *See* Pt 4, Ch 9, 7.4 Bulkheads supported by stools 7.4.5.

9. 3. 3 The centre girder is to have a depth of not less than that given by:

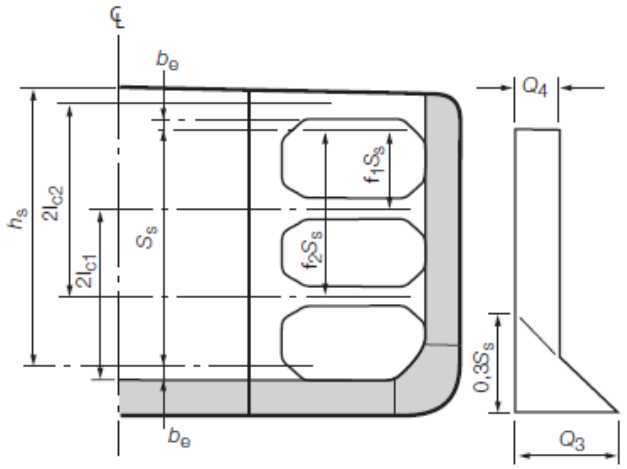
$$d_{DB} = 28B + 205\sqrt{T}\ mm$$

The height of the double bottom is also to satisfy the requirements given in Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.3, Class notation and applicable Rules for CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers.

Figure 9. 9. 1: Wing tank construction



(a) One cross-tie



(b) Two cross-ties

NOTE : $Q_3 = 9{,}81K_4\, h_s\, s\, S_s$ kN

$Q_4 = 9{,}81K_5\, h_s\, s\, S_s$ kN

3837/02

9. 3. 4 Thickness of floors and girders is to be confirmed by means of a direct calculation. Due account is to be taken of access and other openings. The minimum thickness however, is to be not less than that given by:

a. Centre girder or duct keel:

$t = (0.008d_{DB} + 1.0)\sqrt{k}$ mm

b. Floors and side girders:

$t = (0.007d_{DB} + 1.0)\sqrt{k}$ mm but need not exceed $12.0\sqrt{k}$mm.

9. 3. 5 The scantlings of plating and stiffeners of longitudinal girders are not to be less than necessary to comply with the buckling requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4, 7 Hull buckling strength.

9. 3. 6 Floors and girders forming the boundaries of tanks are also to satisfy the requirements of tank bulkheads given in Pt 4, Ch 1, 9 Bulkheads.

9. 3. 7 Provision is to be made for the free passage of air and water from all parts of the tanks to the air pipes and suctions, account being taken of the pumping rates required. Adequate access is also to be provided to all parts of the double bottom. The edges of all openings are to be smooth. The size of the opening should not, in general, exceed 50 per cent of the double bottom depth, unless edge reinforcement is provided. In way of ends of floors and fore and aft girders at transverse bulkheads, the number and size of openings are to be kept to a minimum, and the openings are to be circular or elliptical. Edge stiffening may be required in these positions.

9. 3. 8 For ships intended to load or unload while aground, *See* Pt 3, Ch 9, 7 Bottom strengthening for loading and unloading aground.

9. 3. 9 The structure of girders and duct keels is to be sufficient to withstand the forces imposed by dry-docking the ship, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 9, 10.10, Double bottom girders in way of docking supports.

9. 4 Vertical webs and horizontal girders in wing ballast tanks and hopper spaces

9. 4. 1 The width of the double skin side structure is to comply with the requirements given in Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.3, Class notation and applicable Rules for CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers.

9. 4. 2 Vertical webs are to be arranged in line with the floors in the double bottom to ensure continuity of transverse strength.

9. 4. 3 A horizontal girder is to be arranged at the top of the hopper space and is to be located close to the knuckle between the hopper and inner hull. Where additional longitudinal girders are provided to satisfy access requirements in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 9, 13.2 Access to spaces in the cargo area 13.2.8, these are to be arranged in line with horizontal girders on the transverse bulkhead and wing tank cross-ties where these are fitted.

9. 4. 4 The scantlings of vertical webs and horizontal girders are to be determined by means of direct calculations and due account is to be taken of openings in the structure, *See also* the buckling requirements in Pt 3, Ch 4, 7 Hull buckling strength for horizontal girders.

9. 4. 5 Access openings are to be kept clear of other small openings and are to have smooth edges. Edge stiffening is also to be arranged in regions of high shear stress.

9. 5 Deck transverses and girders

9. 5. 1 Deck transverses are to be arranged in line with the vertical webs at the side and vertical transverses at longitudinal bulkheads, where fitted, to ensure continuity of transverse structure.

9. 5. 2 Deck girders are to be supported at transverse bulkheads by vertical webs or equivalent.

9. 5. 3 The scantlings of deck transverses and girders are to be determined by means of direct calculations or, alternatively, in accordance with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 10, 2.8 Deck transverses and Pt 4, Ch 10, 2.9 Deck girders.

9. 6 Cross-ties

9. 6. 1 Cross-ties, where fitted, may be of plate or sectional material and are to have an area and least moment of inertia to satisfy the following:

$$A_c \geq \frac{0.765 l_c h_c s k}{\left(1 - \frac{0.45 S_c}{r\sqrt{k}}\right)} \quad cm^2$$

Where

$$r = \sqrt{\frac{I_c}{A_c}} \text{cm}.$$

(As a first approximation the area and inertia of the cross-tie may be calculated in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 10, 2.10 Cross-ties 2.10.1.)

9. 6. 2 The scantlings of the webs and flanges of cross-ties are also to be confirmed by means of direct calculation.

9. 6. 3 Design of end connections is to be such that the area of the welding, including vertical brackets, where fitted, is to be not less than the minimum cross-sectional area of the cross-tie derived from Pt 4, Ch 9, 9.6 Cross-ties 9.6.1. To achieve this, full penetration welding may be required and thickness of brackets may require further consideration. Attention is to be given to the full continuity of area of the backing structure on the vertical webs and within the wing ballast tank. Particular attention is also to be paid to the welding at the toes of all vertical end brackets on the cross-tie.

9. 7 Primary members supporting oiltight bulkheads

9. 7. 1 The scantlings of primary members supporting oiltight bulkheads are, in general, to be determined by means of direct calculation, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 9, 9.7 Primary members supporting oiltight bulkheads 9.7.4 and Pt 4, Ch 9, 9.7 Primary members supporting oiltight bulkheads 9.7.5.

9. 7. 2 Alternatively, the scantlings of vertical webs and horizontal girders on transverse bulkheads are to be determined in accordance with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 10, 4 Primary members supporting oiltight bulkheads

9. 7. 3 Where longitudinal oiltight bulkheads are fitted, vertical webs are to be arranged in line with the deck transverses and the double bottom floors. Particular attention is to be paid to the alignment of the bulkhead web end brackets with the double bottom floors.

9. 7. 4 The section modulus of vertical webs on longitudinal bulkheads in ships with one or two longitudinal bulkheads is to be not less than:

$$Z = K_3 s h_s S_s^2 k \text{ cm}^3$$

where K_3 is given in Table 9. 9. 1: Vertical web on longitudinal bulkhead coefficient.

Table 9. 9. 1: Vertical web on longitudinal bulkhead coefficient

Number of cross- ties	K_3	K_4	K_5	Range of application
1	2.16	$0.455 - 0.316\varphi$	0.103	$0.5 \le \varphi \le 0.7$
2	1.88	$0.441 - 0.267\varphi_1$	$0.498\varphi_2 - 0.249$	$0.4 \le \varphi_1 \le 0.5$ $0.65 \le \varphi_2 \le 0.8$

9. 7. 5 In ships with two longitudinal bulkheads, the net sectional area of the web at any section is not to be less than:

$$A = 0.12 Q_x k \ cm^2$$

where Q_x is calculated from shear force diagrams constructed as shown in Figure 9. 9. 1: Wing tank construction. For this purpose the values of K_4 and K_5 and the range of application are given in Table 9. 9. 1: Vertical web on longitudinal bulkhead coefficient.

9. 7. 6 The moment of inertia of vertical webs on longitudinal bulkheads is to be not less than:

$$I = \frac{7.5}{k} S_s Z cm^4$$

9. 7. 7 Where horizontal girders and vertical webs on transverse bulkheads do not form part of a ring structure, they are to be arranged with substantial end brackets forming a buttress extending to the adjacent vertical web or transverse. The shear and combined stresses in the buttress arrangements are to be examined.

9. 7. 8 Where the cross-ties are omitted from the transverse ring in the wing or centre tanks adjacent to the transverse bulkhead, the design of the horizontal girder, end buttress and vertical webs is to take account of the loads imposed and the deflection of the structure.

9. 7. 9 Where, in ships exceeding 150 m in length, the longitudinal bulkhead is corrugated, the transverses are generally to be symmetrical on both sides of the bulkhead, and the scantlings may require to be increased to limit deflection.

9. 8 Primary members supporting non-oiltight bulkheads

9. 8. 1 These requirements are applicable to primary members supporting non-oiltight transverse bulkheads. Where non-oiltight longitudinal bulkheads are proposed, the requirements for primary members will be individually considered.

9. 8. 2 Direct calculation procedures will generally be required where non-oiltight bulkhead primary members will interact with, or tend to support, the primary bottom, longitudinal bulkhead or side structure, and in other cases where warranted by structural design features. In general the section modulus of horizontal girders is to be not less than:

$$Z = 145\ kbl_e^2 \frac{l_b}{L}\ cm^3$$

9. 8. 3 When determining the width of plating supported and the effective breadth for calculating the section modulus, no deduction is to be made on account of perforations.

PART

4

CHAPTER 9 Double Hull Oil Tankers

SECTION 10 Construction details and minimum thickness

10. 1 Symbols

10. 1. 1 The symbols used in this Section are defined as follows:

For the primary member:

10.5 = depth of member web, in mm

s_t = spacing of tripping or docking brackets on the web of the member, in metres

t_w = thickness of member web, in mm

S_w = spacing of members, in metres

For the primary member web stiffener:

d = depth of web plate panel, in mm

l_s = span of stiffeners between effective support points, in metres

s = spacing of stiffeners on the web, in mm

A_s = cross-sectional area of the web stiffener and associated web plating, in cm^2

I_s = moment of inertia of the web stiffener and associated web plating, in cm^4

For the primary member end bracket, *See* Figure 9. 10. 1: Key to application requirements:

d_b = arm length, in metres

l_b = effective length of the free edge, in metres

t_b = thickness of the end bracket plating, in mm

A_b = cross-sectional area of the end bracket edge stiffeners and associated plating, in cm^2

I_b = moment of inertia of the end bracket edge stiffeners and associated plating, in cm^4

Other symbols are defined in Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.5, General definitions and symbols.

10. 2 Compartment minimum thickness

10. 2. 1 Within the cargo tank region, including wing ballast tanks and cofferdams at the ends of or between cargo tanks, the thickness of primary member webs and face plates, hull envelope and bulkhead plating is to be not less than:

t = $2.15L^{0.3}$ mm, or

t = 7.5 mm

whichever is the greater.

10. 2. 2 The minimum thickness of secondary members is to be determined as above, but need not exceed 11.0 mm.

10. 2. 3 In pump-rooms the minima apply to shell, deck, longitudinal bulkhead and associated longitudinals. For other items solely within the pump-room, including transverse bulkheads separating the adjacent machinery spaces from the pump-room, the minima may be reduced by 1.0 mm, subject to a lower limit of 7.5 mm.

10. 2. 4 Within the fore peak tank, minimum thicknesses are to be in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 9, 10.2 Compartment minimum thickness 10.2.1 and Pt 4, Ch 9, 10.2 Compartment minimum thickness 10.2.2 reduced by 1.0 mm but are to be not less than 7.5 mm.

10. 3 Geometric properties and proportions of members

10. 3. 1 The depth of the web of any primary member is to be not less than 2.5 times the depth of the cut-outs for the passage of secondary members, except where compensation is arranged to provide satisfactory resistance to deflection and shear buckling in the web.

10. 3. 2 The area of material in the face plate of any primary member structure is not to exceed:

$0.00667 d_w t_w cm^2$

nor is it to be less than:

$0.00417 s_t d_w cm^2$

10. 3. 3 The geometric properties of rolled stiffeners and built sections are to be calculated in association with an effective width of attached plating in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 3, 3 Structural idealisation.

10. 4 Continuity of primary members

10. 4. 1 Primary members are to be so arranged as to ensure effective continuity of strength throughout the range of tank structure. Abrupt changes of depth or section are to be avoided. Where members abut on both sides of a bulkhead or on other members, arrangements are to be made to ensure that they are in alignment.

10. 4. 2 The members are to have adequate end fixity, lateral support and web stiffening, and the structure is to be arranged to minimise hard spots or other sources of stress concentration. Openings are to have well rounded corners and smooth edges and are to be located having regard to the stress distribution and buckling strength of the plate panel.

10. 5 Primary member web plate stiffening

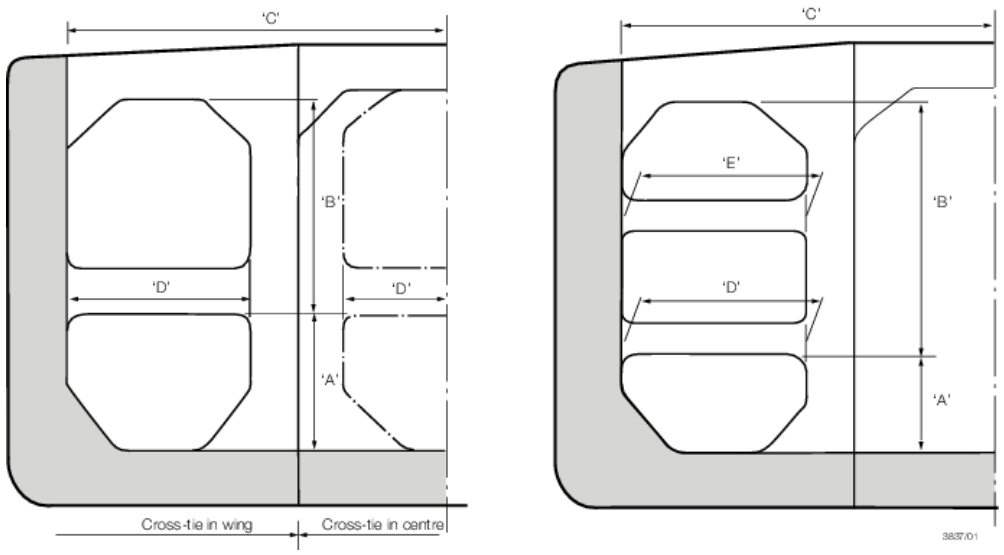
10. 5. 1 The webs of primary members are to be supported and stiffened in accordance with the following requirements, which are designated as requirements `A', `B', `C', `D' and `E'. The application of these requirements is detailed in Pt 4, Ch 9, 10.7 Application of stiffening requirements, and the corresponding locations indicated in Figure 9. 10. 1: Key to application requirements. Where webs are slotted for the passage of secondary members, the web stiffeners are to be arranged to provide adequate support for the loads transmitted, *See* Pt 3, Ch 10, 5.2, Arrangements at intersections of continuous secondary and primary members. Where direct calculations are carried out in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.1 General 1.1.8 and Pt 4, Ch 9, 14 Direct calculations, other stiffening arrangements will be accepted subject to compliance with the maximum permissible

stress and plate panel buckling criteria given in the *ACSPlus SDA Guideline, Guidance Notes on Direct Calculations: Primary Structure of Tankers*.

10. 5. 2 Where higher tensile steel is used for the primary members, the maximum spacing of stiffeners given in this Section is to be multiplied by $\sqrt{k}$.

10. 5. 3 In addition to these stiffeners, tripping brackets as required by Pt 4, Ch 9, 10.11 Lateral stability of primary members are also to be fitted.

Figure 9. 10. 1: Key to application requirements



10. 5. 4 For requirement `A' stiffening:

a. The thickness, t_w of the web is to be not less than $\frac{s}{80}$

b. Stiffening is generally to be fitted normal to the face plate of the member, but the stiffeners parallel to the face plate will be required when the web depth, d_w, exceeds a value, d_{max} which is to be taken as:

$for\ s \leq 55t_w\ d_{max} = 3s$

$for\ s > 55t_w\ d_{max} = \frac{45st_w}{s-40t_w}$

c. Where stiffening parallel to the face plate is required, the distance from the face plate of the member to the nearest stiffener is not to exceed $65t_w$. Further stiffeners are to be fitted at similar spacing so that the distance between the last stiffener and the shell or bulkhead plating does not exceed d_{max}. In way of end brackets to transverse bulkhead primary structure, stiffeners are to be fitted normal to the face plate of the member so that web plate panel dimensions parallel to the face plate do not exceed $80t_w$.

10. 5. 5 For requirement `B' stiffening:

a. The thickness, t_w of the web is to be not less than $\frac{s}{80}$

b. Stiffening is generally to be fitted normal to the face plate of the member, but stiffeners parallel to the face plate will be required when the web depth, d_w, exceeds a value d_{max}, which is to be taken as:

$for\ s \leq 70t_w\ d_{max} = 3s$

$for\ s > 70t_w\ d_{max} = \frac{48st_w}{s-54t_w}$

c. Where stiffening parallel to the face plate is required, the distance from the face plate of the member to the nearest stiffener is not to exceed $80t_w$. Further stiffeners are to be fitted at

similar spacing so that the distance between the last stiffener and the shell or bulkhead plating does not exceed d_{max}.

10. 5. 6 For requirement `C' stiffening:

a. Stiffening is generally to be fitted normal to the face plate of the member in line with alternate secondary members, but stiffeners parallel to the face plate will be required, when the web depth, d_w exceeds a value, d_{max} which is to be taken as:
$for\ s \leq 76t_w\ d_{\max} = 3s$
$for\ s > 76t_w\ d_{\max} = \frac{48st_w}{s-60t_w}$

b. Where stiffening parallel to the face plate is required, the distance from the face plate of the member to the nearest stiffener is not to exceed $90t_w$. Further stiffeners are to be fitted at similar spacing so that the distance between the last stiffener and the deck plating does not exceed d_{max}.

10. 5. 7 For requirement `D' stiffening:

a. Stiffening parallel to the face plate will be required such that the distance between the stiffener and face plate, or between two stiffeners, does not exceed:
$80t_w$ where $L \leq 90$ m
$55t_w$ where $L \geq 190$ m
with intermediate values by interpolation.

b. Brackets are to be fitted to support the face plates and stiffeners.

10. 5. 8 For requirement `E' stiffening:

a. Stiffening parallel to the face plate will be required such that the distance between the stiffener and face plate, or between two stiffeners, does not exceed:
$85t_w$ where $L \leq 90$ m
$60t_w$ where $L \geq 190$ m
with intermediate values by interpolation.

b. Brackets are to be fitted to support the face plates and stiffeners.

10. 6 Inertia and dimensions of stiffeners

10. 6. 1 The moment of inertia is to be not less than:

a. For stiffeners normal to the primary member face plate:

$$I_s = pst_w{}^3 \times 10^{-4} cm^4$$

Where t_w need not be greater than the values in Table 9. 10. 1: Maximum web thickness for stiffener inertia and p is to be obtained from Table 9. 10. 2: Coefficients for stiffener inertia.

b. For stiffeners parallel to the primary member face plate:

On transverses, webs and stringers

$$I_s = 2l_s^2 A_S cm^4$$

On longitudinal deck, side and double bottom girders, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 4, 7 Hull buckling strength

$$I_s = 2.85l_s^2 A_S cm^4$$

Table 9. 10. 1: Maximum web thickness for stiffener inertia

Requirement	Web thickness t_w, in mm

`A'	$\frac{s}{55}$
`B' and `C'	$\frac{s}{70}$
`D'	$\frac{s}{80}$ where $L \leq 90$ m $\frac{s}{55}$ where $L \leq 190$ m Intermediate values by interpolation.
`E'	$\frac{s}{85}$ where $L \leq 90$ m $\frac{s}{60}$ where $L \leq 190$ m Intermediate values by interpolation.

10. 6. 2 Where stiffeners are fitted in both directions, the inertia of the stiffeners parallel to the face plate of the member is to be not less than that of the stiffeners fitted normally.

10. 6. 3 The depth of web stiffeners is to be not less than 75 mm.

10. 6. 4 Where flat bar stiffeners are used, the ratio of depth to thickness is not to exceed $18\sqrt{k}$.

10. 7 Application of stiffening requirements

10. 7. 1 The requirements as detailed in Pt 4, Ch 9, 10.5 Primary member web plate stiffening and Pt 4, Ch 9, 10.6 Inertia and dimensions of stiffeners are to be applied in the following locations, *See also* Figure 9. 10. 1: Key to application requirements.

a. For transverses at longitudinal bulkhead:
Requirement `A' stiffening is to extend at least as far as the lower surface of the lower cross-tie. Elsewhere, requirement `B' stiffening is to be fitted.

b. For deck transverses:
Requirement `C' stiffening is to be fitted.

c. For stringers and horizontal girders on bulkheads:
Requirement `A' stiffening is to extend for a distance from each end of 20 per cent of the span of the stringer or girder, but at least beyond the toes of the end brackets. Elsewhere, requirement `B' stiffening is to be fitted.

d. For cross-ties:
Cross-ties are to be suitably stiffened to prevent buckling and twisting. Requirement `D' stiffening is to be fitted to the lower or to a single cross-tie. Requirement `E' stiffening is to be fitted to the upper cross-ties where two cross-ties are arranged.

e. For shell stringers and vertical webs in fore peak:
Requirement `A' stiffening is to extend the full length of the member.

10. 7. 2 The application of stiffening requirements to transverse structures where no cross-ties are fitted and within double hull structures are to be based on the results of direct calculation and will be specially considered.

10. 8 Stiffening of continuous longitudinal girders

10. 8. 1 The webs of continuous longitudinal deck and double bottom girders are to be stiffened longitudinally. Particular attention is to be given to the stiffening of docking girders, *See also* the buckling requirements in Pt 3, Ch 4, 7 Hull buckling strength.

Table 9. 10. 2: Coefficients for stiffener inertia

Aspect ratio of plate panel, $\frac{s}{d}$	1.0 or more	0.9	0.8	0.7	0.6	0.5	0.4	0.3 or less
p	1.5	2.1	2.9	4.2	6.1	9.2	14.6	30.0

Note *1.* Intermediate values by interpolation.

Note *2.* The depth of panel, d, used in calculating aspect ratio may be measured from the face of the secondary member to which the primary member web stiffener is attached.

10. 8. 2 The stiffeners on deck girders are to be spaced not more than $55t_w$ mm apart except in way of vertical webs and end brackets, where the spacing is not to exceed $45t_w$ mm. Alternatively, a combination of parallel stiffeners at $55t_w$ mm spacing and normal stiffeners at $45t_w$ mm spacing may be adopted. Particular attention is to be given to the stiffening of the docking girder.

10. 8. 3 The application of stiffening requirements to girders within double hull structures is to be based on the results of direct calculation, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 9, 10.10 Double bottom girders in way of docking supports 10.10.1.

10. 8. 4 The moment of inertia of the stiffeners is to comply with Pt 4, Ch 9, 10.6 Inertia and dimensions of stiffeners.

10. 9 Stiffening of vertical webs on transverse bulkheads

10. 9. 1 Vertical webs are to be fitted with stiffeners parallel to the face plate of the web and spaced not more than $60t_w$ mm apart. Stiffeners normal to the face plate are to be fitted when a vertical web supports horizontal stiffeners on transverse bulkheads. The length of stiffener is to be sufficient to distribute the load transmitted, and the connection between web stiffener and bulkhead stiffener is to comply with the relevant requirements of Pt 3, Ch 10, 5.2, Arrangements at intersections of continuous secondary and primary members.

10. 9. 2 The moment of inertia of the stiffeners is to comply with Pt 4, Ch 9, 10.6 Inertia and dimensions of stiffeners.

10. 10 Double bottom girders in way of docking supports

10. 10. 1 Additional vertical stiffeners may be required on the bottom panels of the girder to resist docking pressures.

10. 11 Lateral stability of primary members

10. 11. 1 Tripping brackets are generally to be fitted close to the toes of end brackets, in way of cross-ties and elsewhere, so that the spacing between brackets does not exceed the lesser of 4.5 m or 15 times the width of the face plate (20 times in the case of deck transverses). Arrangements in way of the intersections of primary members are to be such as to prevent tripping. A closer spacing of brackets may be required to be adopted with asymmetrical face plates.

10. 11. 2 To maintain continuity of strength, substantial horizontal and vertical brackets are to be fitted to transverses or stringers at ends of cross-ties. Horizontal brackets are to be aligned with the cross-tie face plates, and vertical end brackets are to be aligned with the cross-tie web.

10. 11. 3 Wide face plates may require additional support between brackets.

10. 11. 4 In the fore peak tank, if the angle between the normal to the shell plating and the vertical webs exceeds 20°, tripping brackets are to be fitted at the toes of end brackets and elsewhere, such that their spacing does not exceed 3 m.

10. 12 Openings in web plating

10. 12. 1 Where openings are cut in the webs of primary supporting members, the greatest dimension of the opening is not to exceed 20 per cent of the web depth. The openings are to be kept equidistant from the corners of notches for frames and stiffeners. In the case of webs supporting single skin structures the openings are to be located so that the edges are not less than 40 per cent of web depth from the face plate. Openings are to be suitably framed where required.

10. 12. 2 In way of cross-ties and their end connections lightening holes are not to be cut in horizontal girders on the ship's side and longitudinal bulkheads, in symmetrical webs nor in vertical webs on longitudinal bulkheads and wing ballast tanks.

10. 12. 3 Holes cut in primary longitudinal members within 0.1D of the deck and bottom are, in general, to be reinforced as required by Pt 4, Ch 9, 4.10 Deck openings. Access holes may be cut in deep transverses and girders with suitable compensation to provide satisfactory resistance to deflection and shear buckling in the web.

10. 12. 4 All holes are to have smooth edges and are to be kept well clear of notches and the toes of brackets.

10. 12. 5 Small air and drain holes cut in primary members are to be kept clear of the toes of brackets and are to be well rounded with smooth edges. Where holes are cut in primary longitudinal members in areas of high stress, or where primary members are of higher tensile steel, they are to be elliptical, or equivalent, to minimise stress concentration.

10. 12. 6 Where holes are cut for heating coils, the lower edge of the hole is to be not less than 100 mm from the inner bottom. Where large notches are cut in the transverses for the passage of longitudinal framing, adjacent to openings for heating coils, the longitudinal notches are to be collared. Examination of the buckling strength of the web plate panel between notches for longitudinals may be required.

10. 13 Brackets connecting primary members

10. 13. 1 The arm length of brackets connecting primary supporting members should, in general, be not less than the depth of the member web, nor exceed 1.5 times the web depth. The two arms should be of approximately equal lengths.

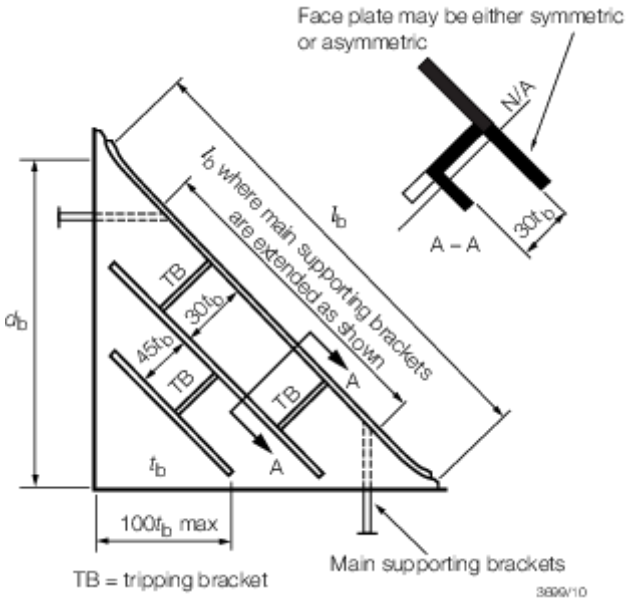
10. 13. 2 In a ring system where the end bracket is integral with the webs of the members, and the face plate is carried continuously along the edges of the members and the bracket, the full area of the largest face plate is to be maintained to the mid-point of the bracket and gradually tapered to the smaller face plates. Butts in face plates are to be kept well clear of the toes of brackets. Where a wide face plate abuts on a narrower one, the taper is generally not to exceed 1 in 4. Where a thick face plate abuts against a thinner one, if the difference in thickness exceeds 3 mm, the taper on thickness is not to exceed 1 in 3.

10. 13. 3 The thickness of separate end brackets is generally to be not less than that of the thicker of the primary member webs being connected, but may be required to be increased locally at the toes. The bracket is to extend to adjacent tripping brackets, stiffeners or other support points. Bracket toes are to be well radiused. Where the bracket is attached to a corrugated bulkhead, suitable arrangements are to be made to dissipate the load at the bracket toe. Details of the welding to be used is way of toes separate brackets are to be submitted, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 10, 5.1 Continuity and alignment 5.1.7.

10. 13. 4 Brackets are to be fitted with suitable face plates and stiffeners. The maximum distance from the face plate to the first parallel stiffener is to be 30t_b. Subsequent stiffeners lying parallel to the face

may be spaced not more than $45t_b$ apart. The maximum arm length for an unstiffened triangular panel is $100t_b$, *See* Figure 9. 10. 2: Primary member end brackets. The depth of stiffeners is to be not less than 75 mm, and their moment of inertia is to comply with 10.6.

Figure 9. 10. 2: Primary member end brackets



10. 13. 5 The area of discontinuous face plates is generally to be about 80 per cent of the area of the face plates of the adjacent members. However, where the stiffener adjacent to the face plate is of increased size, consideration will be given to the face area required. In addition, the following expression is to be satisfied:

$$\sqrt{\frac{I_b}{A_b}} \geq 2l_b$$

10. 13. 6 The ends of discontinuous face plates are to be well tapered. The taper may be 1 in 3, but where the width of the face plate exceeds 500 mm, a taper not less than 1 in 4 is generally to be adopted. Stiffeners adjacent to the face plate should be tapered 1 in 2, and other stiffeners may be cut at 45.

10. 13. 7 Face plates and web stiffeners are to be suitably supported against tripping, *See* Figure 9. 10. 2: Primary member end brackets.

10. 13. 8 In the case of very large brackets with heavy face plates, it is recommended that the effective span, l_b, be reduced by extending the primary member main supporting brackets to provide lateral stability to the face plate, *See* Figure 9. 10. 2: Primary member end brackets.

10. 14 Arrangements at intersections of continuous secondary and primary members

10. 14. 1 For details and connections of collars, *See* Pt 3, Ch 10, 5.2, Arrangements at intersections of continuous secondary and primary members.

PART

4

CHAPTER 9 **Double Hull Oil Tankers**

SECTION 11 **Ships for alternate carriage of oil cargo and dry bulk cargo**

11. 1 Application

11. 1. 1 The requirements of this Section apply to ships intended to carry oil in bulk with a flash point not exceeding 60° (closed-cup test) or dry bulk cargo alternatively.

11. 1. 2 In addition to this Chapter the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 7 Bulk Carriers and Pt 4, Ch 11 Ore Carriers are also to be complied with as applicable. Particular attention is drawn to the minimum thickness requirements of Pt 4, Ch 9, 10 Construction details and minimum thickness.

11. 2 Class notations

11. 2. 1 Ships complying with the requirement of this section will be eligible for one of the following class notations, as applicable.

a. **100A1 Oil or Bulk Carrier, ESP**
b. **100A1 Oil or Bulk Carrier strengthened for heavy cargoes, holds ... may be empty, ESP**
c. **100A1 Oil or Bulk Carrier strengthened for heavy cargoes, any hold may be empty, ESP**
d. **100A1 Ore or Oil Carrier, ESP**.

11. 2. 2 The notation **ESP** serves to identify the ship as being subject to an Enhanced Survey Programme as detailed in Pt 1, Ch 3, 3 Intermediate Surveys - Hull and machinery requirements and Pt 1, Ch 3, 6 Special Survey - Bulk carriers - Hull requirements and Pt 1, Ch 3, 7 Special Survey - Oil tankers (including ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships) - Hull requirements, *See also* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.12.

11. 2. 3 The above notations assume that dry cargoes and oil cargoes will not be carried simultaneously. However, oil may be retained in slop tanks when the ship is carrying dry cargo, provided that these tanks comply with the requirements of the Rules. Gas freeing, inerting, and isolating by approved arrangements of the remaining tanks and holds before loading ore or other dry cargoes is the responsibility of the Owner and is to be in accordance with National and Port Authority requirements.

11. 2. 4 The Regulations for classification and the assignment of class notations are given in Pt 1, Ch 2 Classification Regulations to which reference should be made.

11. 3 Structural configuration and ship arrangement

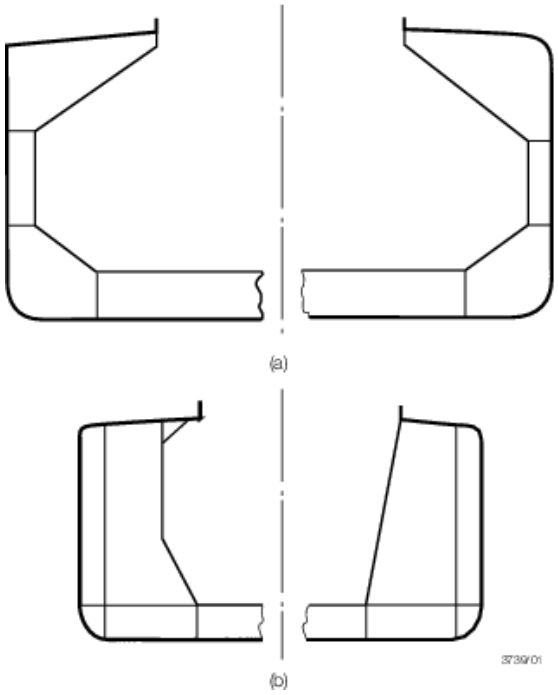
11. 3. 1 The requirements contained in this Section apply to the following ship types:

a. Oil or bulk carrier with a basic structural configuration having a single deck hull and which includes, a double skin side structure, double bottom, hopper side tanks and topside tanks fitted below the upper deck. A typical cross-section is indicated in Figure 9. 11. 1: Structural

configuration. However, consideration will be given to other arrangements on the basis of the requirements of this Section. The requirements of Pt 4, Ch 7 Bulk Carriers are to be applied.

b. Ore or oil carrier with a basic structural configuration having a single deck hull and which includes, a double skin side structure, two longitudinal bulkheads, and a double bottom throughout the centre hold and wing tanks. A typical cross-section is indicated in Figure 9. 11. 1: Structural configuration. The requirements of Pt 4, Ch 11 Ore Carriers are to be applied.

Figure 9. 11. 1: Structural configuration



11. 3. 2 Where oil residues are to be retained on board, slop tanks of sufficient capacity to meet MARPOL requirements are to be provided and are to be separated from adjacent spaces by cofferdams which are to be capable of being flooded, except where the adjacent space is used as a pump-room, ballast tank, or a fuel oil bunker tank, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.2, Application and ship arrangement 1.2.2, Pt 5, Ch 15, 1.9 Non-sparking fans for hazardous areas and SOLAS Reg. II-2 *Part D - Escape*.

11. 3. 3 Arrangements are to be provided for the mechanical ventilation of cargo spaces and any enclosed spaces adjacent to cargo spaces, *See* Pt 5, Ch 15, 3 Cargo handling system. Similar arrangements are to be provided for cargo oil ducts which are used as pipe tunnels when the ship is carrying dry cargo, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 9, 11.3 Structural configuration and ship arrangement 11.3.5.

11. 3. 4 Openings which may be used for cargo operations, for example in the bottom of topside tanks, are not permitted in bulkheads and decks separating oil cargo spaces from other spaces not designed and equipped for the carriage of oil cargoes unless such openings are equipped with alternative approved means to ensure equivalent integrity.

11. 3. 5 For the requirements of ducts for cargo oil lines below decks on ore or oil carriers, *See* Pt 5, Ch 15, 3.3 Cargo piping system.

11. 3. 6 For the requirements for access arrangements to pipe tunnels and spaces in the cargo area, *See* Pt 4, Ch 9, 13 Access arrangements and closing appliances.

11. 4 Bulkheads in way of dry/oil cargo holds

11. 4. 1 In way of cargo oil holds, the scantlings of the cargo space boundaries are to comply with Pt 4, Ch 9, 11.4 Bulkheads in way of dry/oil cargo holds 11.4.2 and Pt 4, Ch 9, 11.4 Bulkheads in way of dry/oil cargo holds 11.4.6.

11. 4. 2 The scantlings of vertically corrugated and double plate transverse bulkheads supported by stools are to be determined in accordance with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 9, 7.4 Bulkheads supported by stools 7.4.1, Pt 4, Ch 9, 7.4 Bulkheads supported by stools 7.4.2 and Pt 4, Ch 7, 10.2 Bulkheads supported by stools. In general, the bulkheads are to have stiffening or corrugations arranged vertically, supported by top and bottom end stools. Alternative arrangements will, however, be considered.

11. 4. 3 The longitudinal bulkheads including bulkhead forming inner hull, and the sloped bulkheads of the topside and double bottom tanks are to comply with Pt 4, Ch 9, 6 Inner hull, inner bottom and longitudinal oiltight bulkheads. However, in way of cargo holds b_1 is to be taken as the horizontal distance from the plate or longitudinal under consideration to the vertical projection of the hatch side furthest away from the bulkhead. For longitudinal framing the determination of the span point may be in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 3, 3 Structural idealisation. The scantlings of the sloped bulkhead of the double bottom hopper tanks in way of the dry cargo holds are to be not less than the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 7, 9 Hopper side tank structure.

11. 4. 4 The arrangement of stools and adjacent structure common with dry cargo holds is to be designed to avoid pockets in which gas could collect.

11. 4. 5 Where the form of construction used for transverse bulkheads in wing tanks is different from that used in centre holds, arrangements are to be made to ensure continuity of transverse strength through the longitudinal bulkhead.

11. 4. 6 Where partial filling of centre holds with liquid is contemplated, the scantlings and structural arrangements of the boundary bulkheads are to be capable of withstanding the loads imposed by the movement of liquid in the holds. The magnitude of the predicted loadings, together with the scantling calculations, may require to be submitted.

11. 5 Bulkheads in wing tanks of ore or oil carriers

11. 5. 1 Oiltight bulkheads in wing tanks of ore or oil carriers, *See* Pt 4, Ch 9, 11.3 Structural configuration and ship arrangement 11.3.1.b are to comply with the requirements for transverse oiltight bulkhead plating, stiffening and primary structure given in Pt 4, Ch 9, 7 Transverse oiltight bulkheads and Pt 4, Ch 9, 9 Primary members supporting longitudinal framing.

11. 5. 2 Non-oiltight bulkheads in wing tanks are to comply with the requirements given in Pt 4, Ch 9, 8 Non-oiltight bulkheads and Pt 4, Ch 9, 9 Primary members supporting longitudinal framing. The bulkhead plating is to be suitably reinforced in way of double bottom scarfing arrangements and the ends of centre hold deck transverses. Openings in wing tank bulkheads are to be kept clear of these areas.

11. 6 Cofferdam bulkheads

11. 6. 1 The scantlings of cofferdam bulkheads not forming the boundary of a cargo space are to be as required by Pt 4, Ch 9, 7 Transverse oiltight bulkheads.

11. 7 Hatchways

11. 7. 1 The scantlings of the cargo hold hatch coamings are to comply with Pt 3, Ch 11, 5 Hatch coamings and the cargo hold hatch covers with Pt 3, Ch 11, 2 Steel hatch covers and Pt 4, Ch 7, 12 Steel hatch covers.

11. 7. 2 Where cargo holds are intended to be partly filled the hatch covers may require to be additionally strengthened, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 9, 11.4 Bulkheads in way of dry/oil cargo holds 11.4.6.

11. 7. 3 Slop tank hatches and cleaning openings are only permitted on open deck. Unless these openings are closed with a watertight bolted plate, the locking arrangements are to be under the control of a responsible officer.

11. 8 Hatch coamings

11. 8. 1 The height and construction of hatch coamings are to comply with Pt 3, Ch 11, 5 Hatch coamings and Pt 4, Ch 7, 13 Hatch coamings.

PART

4

CHAPTER **9** **Double Hull Oil Tankers**

SECTION **12** **Cargo temperatures**

12. 1 General

12. 1. 1 This Section applies to the carriage of heated and low temperature cargoes in vessels having a structural configuration as shown in Table 9. 1. 3: Structural arrangement and Figure 9. 11. 1: Structural configuration.

12. 2 Loading and carriage of heated cargoes

12. 2. 1 Where cargoes are to be loaded or carried at temperatures above 80°C, temperature distribution investigations and thermal stress calculations are to be submitted. These are to be carried out using the highest cargo temperature during any part of the voyage, including loading and unloading.

12. 2. 2 The calculations are to give the resultant stresses on the hull structure, based on a sea temperature of 0°C and an air temperature of 5°C. Any proposals for reinforcement of the hull structure and/or limitation of the still water bending moment for heated cargo conditions are to be submitted.

12. 2. 3 Submitted proposals are to take account of non-uniform loading patterns with resultant variations in temperature distribution, where applicable.

12. 3 Low temperature cargoes

12. 3. 1 The hull structural and engineering systems permit cargoes to be loaded down to –10°C. For low temperature operations, *See* Pt 8 Rules for Ice and Cold Operations.

PART

4

CHAPTER 9 Double Hull Oil Tankers

SECTION 13 Access arrangements and closing appliances

13. 1 General

13. 1. 1 For requirements in respect of coamings and closing of deck openings, *See* Pt 3, Ch 11, 7 Tanker access arrangements and closing appliances.

13. 1. 2 Openings in cargo oil tanks are not to be located in enclosed spaces.

13. 1. 3 Ladders and

platforms in cargo tanks, pump-rooms and cofferdams are to be securely fastened to the structure, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 9, 2.3 Aluminium structure, fittings and paint.

13. 2 Access to spaces in the cargo area

13. 2. 1 Access to cofferdams, vertical wing and double bottom ballast tanks, cargo tanks and other spaces in the cargo area shall be direct from the open deck and such as to ensure their complete inspection. Access to double bottom tanks in way of cargo oil tanks, where wing ballast tanks are omitted, is to be provided by trunks from the exposed deck led down the bulkhead. Alternative proposals will, however, be considered provided the integrity of the inner bottom is maintained. Access to double bottom spaces may also be through a cargo pump-room, pump-room, deep cofferdam, pipe tunnel or similar compartments, subject to consideration of ventilation aspects.

13. 2. 2 Where a duct keel or pipe tunnel is fitted, and access is normally required for operational purposes, access is to be provided at each end and at least one other location at approximately mid-length. Access is to be directly from the exposed deck. Where an after access is to be provided from the pump-room to the duct keel, the access manhole from the pump-room to the duct keel is to be provided with an oiltight cover plate. Access is not to be via the engine room. Mechanical ventilation is to be provided and such spaces are to be adequately ventilated prior to entry. A notice-board is to be fitted at each entrance to the pipe tunnel stating that before any attempt is made to enter, the ventilating fan must have been in operation for an adequate period. In addition, the atmosphere in the tunnel is to be sampled by a reliable gas monitor, and where an inert gas system is fitted in cargo tanks, an oxygen monitor is to be provided.

13. 2. 3 In ships for the alternate carriage of oil cargo and dry bulk cargo where the boundary of a slop tank is part of a cargo pump-room bulkhead, any openings from the cargo pump-room to the double bottom, pipe tunnel or other enclosed space are to be provided with a gastight bolted cover.

13. 2. 4 Every double bottom space is to be provided with separate access without passing through other neighbouring double bottom spaces.

13. 2. 5 Where the tanks are of confined or cellular construction, two separate means of access from the weather deck are to be provided, one to be provided at either end of the tank space.

13. 2. 6 For access through horizontal openings, hatches or manholes, the dimensions are to be sufficient to allow a person wearing a self-contained air-breathing apparatus and protective equipment to

ascend or descend any ladder without obstruction and also to provide a clear opening to facilitate the hoisting of an injured person from the bottom of the space. The minimum clear opening is to be not less than 600 mm x 600 mm.

13. 2. 7 At least one horizontal access opening of 600 mm x 800 mm clear opening is to be fitted in each horizontal girder in the vertical wing ballast space and weather deck to assist in rescue operations.

13. 2. 8 For access through vertical openings, or manholes providing passage through the length and breadth of the space, the minimum clear opening is to be not less than 600 mm x 800 mm at a height of not more than 600 mm from the bottom shell plating unless gratings or other footholds are provided.

13. 2. 9 For oil tankers of less than 5000 tonnes DWT smaller dimensions may be approved by the National Administration concerned in special circumstances, if the ability to traverse such openings or to remove an injured person can be proved to the satisfaction of the Administration.

13. 2. 10 In double hull construction with the wing ballast tanks having restricted access through the vertical transverse webs, permanent arrangements are to be provided within the tanks to permit access for inspection at all heights in each bay. These arrangements which should comprise fixed platforms or other means are to provide sufficiently close access to carry out Close-Up Surveys as defined in Pt 1, Ch 3, 7 Special Survey - Oil tankers (including ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships) - Hull requirements, using limited portable equipment where appropriate. Details of these arrangements are to be submitted for approval.

13. 2. 11 On very large tankers it is recommended that consideration be given to providing permanent facilities for staging the interior of cargo tanks situated within the cargo tank region and of large tanks elsewhere. Suitable provisions would be:

- Staging which can be carried on board and utilised in any tank, including power-operated lift or platform systems.
- Enlargement of structural members to form permanent, safe platforms, e.g. bulkhead longitudinals widened to form stringers (in association with manholes through primary members).
- Provision of inspection/rest platforms at intervals down the length of access ladders.
- Provision of manholes in upper deck for access to staging in cargo tanks.

13. 2. 12 Attention is drawn to Pt 4, Ch 9, 7.1 General 7.1.7, concerning provision of manholes in transverse bulkheads.

PART

4

CHAPTER **9** **Double Hull Oil Tankers**

SECTION **14** **Direct calculations**

14. 1 Application

14. 1. 1 Direct calculations are to be carried out for the derivation of scantlings where they are required by the preceding Sections of this Chapter or by related provisions included in Pt 3 Ship Structures (General).

14. 1. 2 Direct calculation methods are also generally to be used where additional calculations are required by the Rules in respect of unusual structural arrangements.

14. 2 Procedures

14. 2. 1 For details of ACS's direct calculation procedures, *See* Pt 3, Ch 1, 2 Direct calculations. For requirements concerning use of other calculation procedures, *See* Pt 3, Ch 1, 3 Equivalents.

14. 2. 2 Details of direct calculation procedures for determining the scantlings of boundary bulkheads for partially filled tanks are given in *ACSPlus SDA Guideline, Sloshing loads and Scantling Assessment*.

PART

4

CHAPTER **10 Single Hull Oil Tankers**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**1865**
	1. 1	Application	1865
	1. 2	Class notations	1865
SECTION 2	**Primary members supporting longitudinal framing**		**1866**
	2. 1	General	1866
	2. 2	Symbols	1866
	2. 3	Structural arrangements	1867
	2. 4	Bottom structure coefficients	1867
	2. 5	Bottom transverses	1868
	2. 6	Bottom girders	1868
	2. 7	Side transverses	1869
	2. 8	Deck transverses	1873
	2. 9	Deck girders	1874
	2. 10	Cross-ties	1874
	2. 11	Double bottom girders and floors	1874
SECTION 3	**Primary members supporting transverse side framing**		**1875**
	3. 1	General	1875
	3. 2	Symbols	1875
	3. 3	Structural arrangements	1875
	3. 4	Scantlings	1876
SECTION 4	**Primary members supporting oiltight bulkheads**		**1877**
	4. 1	General	1877
	4. 2	Symbols	1877
	4. 3	Structural arrangements	1877
	4. 4	Scantlings	1878
SECTION 5	**Primary members supporting non-oiltight bulkheads**		**1879**

5. 1 General 1879
5. 2 Symbols 1879
5. 3 Direct calculations 1879
5. 4 Scantlings and arrangements 1879
SECTION 6 Trunked construction 1880
6. 1 General 1880
6. 2 Symbols 1880
6. 3 Structural arrangements 1881
6. 4 Trunk scantlings 1881
6. 5 Modification to hull scantlings 1882
SECTION 7 Construction details and minimum thickness 1884
7. 1 Symbols 1884
7. 2 Compartment minimum thickness 1884
7. 3 Geometric properties and proportions of members 1884
7. 4 Continuity of primary members 1884
7. 5 Primary member web plate stiffening 1885
7. 6 Inertia and dimensions of stiffeners 1886
7. 7 Application of stiffening requirements 1887
7. 8 Stiffening of continuous longitudinal girders 1888
7. 9 Stiffening of vertical webs on transverse bulkheads 1888
7. 10 Docking brackets on bottom centreline girder 1888
7. 11 Lateral stability of primary members 1888
7. 12 Openings in web plating 1889
7. 13 Brackets connecting primary members 1889
7. 14 Arrangements at intersections of continuous secondary and primary members 1889

4

CHAPTER **10 Single Hull Oil Tankers**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 10. 2. 1: Bottom structure coefficients 1869
Table 10. 2. 2: Side transverse cofficients 1873
Table 10. 3. 1: Requirements for stringers 1875
Table 10. 7. 1: Maximum web thickness for stiffener inertia 1887
Table 10. 7. 2: Coefficient for stiffener inertia 1887

4

CHAPTER **10 Single Hull Oil Tankers**

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 10. 2. 1: Bottom transverses 1871
Figure 10. 2. 2: Bottom centreline girder 1872
Figure 10. 2. 3: Wing tank construction 1873
Figure 10. 4. 1: Horizontal girders 1878
Figure 10. 6. 1: Equivalent depth 1880
Figure 10. 6. 2: Primary structure 1882
Figure 10. 6. 3: Hull envelope plating - Itemisation of parts 1883
Figure 10. 7. 1: Key to application requirements 1885

PART

4

CHAPTER 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers

SECTION 1 General

1. 1 Application

1. 1. 1 The requirements specified in Pt 4, Ch 9 Double Hull Oil Tankers are applicable to small conventional single hull oil tankers where relevant, together with the additional requirements of this Chapter.

1. 1. 2 For tankers intended to load or unload whilst aground, *See* Pt 3, Ch 9, 7 Bottom strengthening for loading and unloading aground.

1. 2 Class notations

1. 2. 1 Sea-going ships complying with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 9 Double Hull Oil Tankers, where relevant, together with the additional requirements of this Chapter will be eligible to be classed **100A1 Oil Tanker, ESP**.

1. 2. 2 The Notation **ESP** serves to identify the ships as being subject to an Enhanced Survey Programme as detailed in Pt 1, Ch 3, 3 Intermediate Surveys - Hull and machinery requirements and Pt 1, Ch 3, 7 Special Survey - Oil tankers (including ore/oil ships and ore/bulk/oil ships) - Hull requirements, *See also* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2 Character of classification and class notations.

PART

4

CHAPTER 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers

SECTION 2 Primary members supporting longitudinal framing

2. 1 General

2. 1. 1 These requirements are applicable to the following structural arrangements for ships with two longitudinal bulkheads:

a. Centre tank structure:

i. Primary supporting centreline girder between oiltight transverse bulkheads, in association with up to five transverses.

ii. Bottom transverses spanning between longitudinal bulkheads in association with a non-primary centreline docking girder.

iii.Double bottom.

b. Wing tank structure:

i. Transverse ring structure consisting of bottom, side shell, longitudinal bulkhead and deck transverses and incorporating one cross-tie or no cross-ties in tankers not exceeding 75 m in length.

ii. Double bottom.

2. 1. 2 The requirements are also applicable to structural arrangements incorporating a single longitudinal bulkhead located on the ship's centreline without cross-ties, for tankers not exceeding 75 m in length.

2. 1. 3 The minimum thickness and constructional detail requirements of Pt 4, Ch 10, 7 Construction details and minimum thickness are to be complied with. Particular attention is to be paid to the design of end connections between primary members and buttresses. The shear and combined stress levels in these connections are to be examined and should be within the limits specified in *ACSPlus SDA Guideline - Guidance Notes on Direct Calculations*.

2. 2 Symbols

2. 2. 1 The symbols used in this Section are defined as follows:

b_{e1}, b_{e2} = effective end bracket leg length, in metres, at each end of the member, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3 Structural idealisation

b_T = overall breadth of tank, in metres

h_b = 0.75D+2.45 m

h_c = vertical distance from the centre of the cross-tie to deck at side amidships, in metres

h_s = distance between the lower span point of the side transverse and the moulded deck line at side, in metres

l_c = one-half the vertical distance, in metres, between the cross tie and the centre of the adjacent bottom or deck transverse, or double bottom, *See* Figure 10. 2. 3: Wing tank construction

l_T = overall length of tank, in metres

s = spacing of transverses, in metres

A = net sectional area of the web including end bracket where applicable, in cm^2

I_G = moment of inertia of the girder, in cm^4

I_T = moment of inertia of the transverse, in cm^4

Q_x = shear force at the actual section under consideration, obtained from shear force diagrams constructed as indicated, in kN

S_c = length of cross-tie between the face plates on the vertical transverse webs at the cross ties, in metres

S_G = span of girder, in metres, and is in no case to be taken less than (l_T−1.8s) metres

S_s = span of the side transverses, in metres, and is to be measured between end span points, *See* Figure 10. 2. 3: Wing tank construction

S_T = span of transverses, in metres

2. 2. 2 Other symbols are defined in Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.6 Information required for CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers.

2. 3 Structural arrangements

2. 3. 1 The spacing of transverses is not to exceed 3.6 m.

2. 3. 2 Where a trunk is fitted, the scantlings of primary members are to be modified as required by Pt 4, Ch 10, 6 Trunked construction.

2. 4 Bottom structure coefficients

2. 4. 1 Where a primary supporting bottom centreline girder is fitted, in a single bottom, the requirements for the girder and transverses may be derived using bending moment and shear force coefficients K_1 and K_2 determined from Table 10. 2. 1: Bottom structure coefficients. To obtain the coefficients, the following factors are required:

$$\alpha = \frac{l_T - S_G}{2s}$$

$$\beta = \frac{S_G^3 l_T}{S_T^3 l_G}$$

Initially, an estimated value of the ratio $\frac{I_T}{I_G}$ may be used, and an iterative process adopted to obtain the final required values.

2. 4. 2 Where bottom transverses are fitted in association with a non-primary centreline girder the coefficients for the transverse are to be taken as:

K_1 = 0.083

K_2 = 0.50

For the requirements for the non-primary girder, *See* Pt 4, Ch 10, 2.6, Bottom girders.

2. 4. 3 In ships with one longitudinal bulkhead, the coefficient for the bottom transverse is to be taken as:

a. K_1=0.177.

2. 5 Bottom transverses

2. 5. 1 The section modulus of bottom transverses is to be not less than:

$$Z = 62K_1, h_b S_T^2 k \text{ cm}^3$$

2. 5. 2 In ships with two longitudinal bulkheads, the depth of the bottom transverse web plate is to be not less than $0.2S_T$ and the net sectional area of the web at any section, including vertical end connections, is to be not less than:

$$A = 0.12Q_x k \ cm^2$$

where Q_x is calculated from shear force diagrams constructed as shown in Figure 10. 2. 1: Bottom transverses. For end connections, Q_x is to be determined by projection of the shear force diagram as indicated.

2. 5. 3 The moment of inertia of bottom transverses is to be not less than:

$$I = \frac{10.5}{k} S_T Z \ cm^4$$

2. 6 Bottom girders

2. 6. 1 The section modulus of the primary centreline bottom girder, where fitted, is to be not less than:

$$Z = 31K_1 b_T S_G h_b sk \ \ cm^3$$

2. 6. 2 The net sectional area of the web at any section, including vertical end connections, is to be not less than:

$$A = 0.12Q_x k \ \ cm^3$$

where Q_x is calculated from a shear force diagram constructed as shown in Figure 10. 2. 2: Bottom centreline girder. For end connections, Q_x is to be determined by projection of the shear force diagram as indicated.

2. 6. 3 In a single bottom the section modulus and web area of a non-primary centreline docking girder are to be not less than:

Z = $3.6b_T Ds^2 k$ cm^3

A = $0.3b_T Dsk$ cm^2

The scantlings of this girder may, however, be required to be increased, depending upon the docking condition and support arrangements, details of which are to be submitted. Consideration may be required to be given to restricting the level of ballast tank filling for docking purposes. The loads are to be specially considered when wing tanks are ballasted for docking.

2. 6. 4 Consideration will be given to alternative methods of stiffening in way of the keel blocks when accompanied by supporting calculations.

2. 6. 5 In way of the vertical centreline web and centreline supports to horizontal girders of transverse bulkheads, the docking girder is to be increased in depth and scantlings as necessary to provide an effective support.

2. 7 Side transverses

2. 7. 1 The section modulus of side transverses in ships with one or two longitudinal bulkheads is to be not less than:

$$Z = K_3 s h_s S_s^2 k \ cm^3$$

where K_3 is given in Table 10. 2. 2: Side transverse cofficients

Table 10. 2. 1: Bottom structure coefficients

(a) 1 GIRDER, 2 TRANSVERSES												
β	Girder											
	K_1						K_2					
	α						α					
	0.0	0.2	0.4	0.6	0.8	1.0	0.0	0.2	0.4	0.6	0.8	1.0
0.02	0.210	0.210	0.195	0.175	0.125	0.0	1.000	1.000	1.000	1.000	1.000	1.000
0.04	0.210	0.210	0.195	0.175	0.125	0.0	0.960	0.960	0.980	1.000	1.000	1.000
0.06	0.210	0.210	0.195	0.170	0.125	0.0	0.940	0.940	0.960	0.980	1.000	1.000
0.08	0.205	0.205	0.190	0.167	0.125	0.0	0.920	0.920	0.940	0.970	1.000	1.000
0.10	0.200	0.200	0.185	0.165	0.125	0.0	0.900	0.900	0.920	0.960	0.990	1.000
0.20	0.180	0.180	0.170	0.150	0.120	0.0	0.800	0.820	0.860	0.920	0.980	1.000
0.40	0.150	0.150	0.150	0.135	0.115	0.0	0.670	0.730	0.760	0.840	0.950	1.000
0.60	0.130	0.130	0.135	0.125	0.110	0.0	0.580	0.630	0.690	0.790	0.910	1.000
0.80	0.120	0.120	0.120	0.120	0.105	0.0	0.520	0.540	0.630	0.730	0.880	1.000
1.00	0.100	0.100	0.115	0.115	0.100	0.0	0.460	0.500	0.580	0.680	0.850	1.000
Transverses												
0.02	0.022	0.022	0.022	0.022	0.021	0.020	0.255	0.255	0.255	0.255	0.250	0.250
0.04	0.023	0.023	0.023	0.022	0.021	0.020	0.263	0.263	0.257	0.255	0.250	0.250
0.06	0.025	0.025	0.023	0.022	0.021	0.020	0.265	0.265	0.263	0.260	0.250	0.250
0.08	0.026	0.026	0.024	0.023	0.021	0.020	0.270	0.270	0.267	0.260	0.253	0.250
0.10	0.027	0.027	0.025	0.023	0.022	0.020	0.275	0.275	0.270	0.263	0.255	0.250
0.20	0.033	0.033	0.029	0.026	0.023	0.020	0.300	0.300	0.285	0.272	0.257	0.250
0.40	0.041	0.041	0.036	0.032	0.025	0.020	0.330	0.330	0.307	0.287	0.265	0.250
0.60	0.047	0.047	0.041	0.036	0.026	0.020	0.355	0.355	0.325	0.302	0.273	0.250
0.80	0.051	0.051	0.045	0.038	0.028	0.020	0.370	0.370	0.342	0.315	0.278	0.250
1.00	0.054	0.054	0.048	0.041	0.030	0.020	0.385	0.385	0.355	0.327	0.285	0.250
(b) 1 GIRDER, 3 TRANSVERSES												
β	Girder											
	K1						K2					
	α						α					
	0.0	0.2	0.4	0.6	0.8	1.0	0.0	0.2	0.4	0.6	0.8	1.0
0.02	0.290	0.290	0.290	0.270	0.200	0.120	1.400	1.400	1.500	1.500	1.500	1.500
0.04	0.290	0.290	0.290	0.270	0.200	0.120	1.400	1.400	1.500	1.500	1.500	1.500
0.06	0.290	0.290	0.290	0.260	0.200	0.120	1.380	1.400	1.500	1.500	1.500	1.500
0.08	0.280	0.280	0.280	0.250	0.195	0.115	1.340	1.370	1.470	1.470	1.480	1.500
0.10	0.275	0.275	0.275	0.240	0.190	0.115	1.320	1.340	1.420	1.440	1.460	1.480
0.20	0.245	0.245	0.245	0.220	0.175	0.105	1.180	1.210	1.280	1.330	1.380	1.450
0.40	0.200	0.200	0.200	0.185	0.160	0.090	0.970	1.030	1.080	1.200	1.280	1.420
0.60	0.170	0.170	0.170	0.170	0.145	0.080	0.840	0.900	0.960	1.110	1.210	1.380
0.80	0.150	0.150	0.150	0.150	0.135	0.075	0.740	0.800	0.870	1.040	1.150	1.330
1.00	0.135	0.135	0.135	0.135	0.125	0.070	0.680	0.740	0.810	0.960	1.100	1.300

Transverses												
0.02	0.025	0.025	0.024	0.023	0.022	0.022	0.258	0.258	0.257	0.252	0.252	0.252
0.04	0.026	0.026	0.025	0.024	0.023	0.023	0.267	0.267	0.267	0.262	0.262	0.260
0.06	0.028	0.028	0.026	0.026	0.025	0.024	0.275	0.275	0.275	0.270	0.270	0.265
0.08	0.030	0.030	0.028	0.028	0.026	0.026	0.285	0.285	0.280	0.272	0.272	0.272
0.10	0.032	0.032	0.029	0.029	0.028	0.027	0.292	0.292	0.287	0.277	0.275	0.275
0.20	0.040	0.040	0.037	0.035	0.033	0.032	0.325	0.325	0.315	0.310	0.300	0.282
0.40	0.052	0.052	0.049	0.046	0.041	0.039	0.372	0.372	0.360	0.345	0.332	0.320
0.60	0.059	0.059	0.057	0.054	0.048	0.045	0.405	0.405	0.392	0.375	0.357	0.342
0.80	0.065	0.065	0.063	0.059	0.053	0.049	0.425	0.425	0.415	0.390	0.377	0.360
1.00	0.069	0.069	0.066	0.063	0.056	0.052	0.440	0.440	0.432	0.415	0.395	0.375
(c) 1 GIRDER, 4 TRANSVERSES												
β	Girder											
	K1						K2					
	α						α					
	0.0	0.2	0.4	0.6	0.8	1.0	0.0	0.2	0.4	0.6	0.8	1.0
0.02	0.370	0.350	0.330	0.315	0.275	0.215	1.890	1.890	1.920	1.940	1.960	1.990
0.04	0.370	0.350	0.330	0.315	0.275	0.215	1.870	1.870	1.900	1.930	1.940	1.960
0.06	0.360	0.350	0.330	0.310	0.270	0.205	1.820	1.820	1.870	1.890	1.920	1.940
0.08	0.350	0.340	0.320	0.300	0.260	0.200	1.760	1.800	1.820	1.840	1.880	1.920
0.10	0.340	0.330	0.315	0.290	0.255	0.195	1.700	1.750	1.790	1.830	1.860	1.900
0.20	0.300	0.300	0.275	0.260	0.230	0.180	1.500	1.580	1.630	1.700	1.780	1.820
0.40	0.240	0.240	0.230	0.220	0.200	0.155	1.240	1.300	1.400	1.540	1.620	1.700
0.60	0.200	0.200	0.200	0.200	0.175	0.135	1.060	1.120	1.250	1.400	1.500	1.600
0.80	0.175	0.175	0.175	0.175	0.165	0.120	0.940	1.000	1.150	1.270	1.420	1.520
1.00	0.150	0.150	0.150	0.150	0.150	0.105	0.850	0.920	1.050	1.200	1.340	1.460
Transverses												
0.02	0.025	0.025	0.024	0.024	0.023	0.023	0.255	0.255	0.255	0.255	0.253	0.250
0.04	0.027	0.026	0.026	0.025	0.025	0.024	0.272	0.270	0.268	0.266	0.260	0.255
0.06	0.029	0.029	0.028	0.027	0.026	0.025	0.282	0.280	0.275	0.272	0.270	0.263
0.08	0.031	0.031	0.030	0.028	0.028	0.027	0.292	0.287	0.285	0.280	0.275	0.270
0.10	0.033	0.033	0.032	0.030	0.029	0.028	0.300	0.295	0.290	0.285	0.280	0.275
0.20	0.042	0.041	0.039	0.037	0.035	0.033	0.335	0.325	0.320	0.313	0.307	0.300
0.40	0.053	0.051	0.050	0.047	0.044	0.041	0.380	0.372	0.362	0.352	0.342	0.330
0.60	0.061	0.059	0.057	0.054	0.050	0.047	0.412	0.405	0.387	0.376	0.365	0.355
0.80	0.066	0.065	0.062	0.058	0.054	0.051	0.435	0.425	0.412	0.400	0.382	0.370
1.00	0.070	0.068	0.065	0.062	0.058	0.055	0.450	0.437	0.427	0.412	0.395	0.385
(d) 1 GIRDER, 5 TRANSVERSES												
β	Girder											
	K1						K2					
	α						α					
	0.0	0.2	0.4	0.6	0.8	1.0	0.0	0.2	0.4	0.6	0.8	1.0
0.02	0.455	0.440	0.410	0.380	0.345	0.300	2.330	2.350	2.370	2.400	2.420	2.450
0.04	0.445	0.430	0.410	0.380	0.345	0.300	2.310	2.340	2.360	2.380	2.410	2.440
0.06	0.430	0.415	0.395	0.370	0.340	0.295	2.250	2.290	2.300	2.340	2.380	2.400
0.08	0.415	0.400	0.385	0.365	0.330	0.290	2.180	2.230	2.280	2.290	2.340	2.360
0.10	0.400	0.390	0.375	0.355	0.320	0.280	2.110	2.170	2.200	2.240	2.300	2.320
0.20	0.345	0.340	0.330	0.315	0.285	0.250	1.840	1.920	2.000	2.040	2.130	2.180
0.40	0.270	0.265	0.265	0.265	0.235	0.200	1.500	1.600	1.700	1.790	1.900	1.970

0.60	0.220	0.220	0.220	0.220	0.200	0.165	1.280	1.380	1.500	1.610	1.650	1.840
0.80	0.185	0.185	0.185	0.185	0.175	0.140	1.140	1.230	1.370	1.500	1.620	1.740
1.00	0.165	0.165	0.165	0.165	0.160	0.125	1.040	1.140	1.280	1.420	1.540	1.650
Transverses												
0.02	0.025	0.025	0.025	0.024	0.024	0.023	0.265	0.265	0.263	0.260	0.257	0.255
0.04	0.028	0.028	0.028	0.027	0.026	0.025	0.280	0.280	0.275	0.270	0.267	0.265
0.06	0.031	0.031	0.030	0.029	0.028	0.027	0.290	0.287	0.284	0.280	0.277	0.275
0.08	0.034	0.034	0.033	0.032	0.031	0.030	0.303	0.300	0.295	0.290	0.287	0.283
0.10	0.037	0.036	0.036	0.034	0.033	0.032	0.312	0.309	0.305	0.300	0.297	0.292
0.20	0.046	0.046	0.045	0.043	0.043	0.041	0.352	0.349	0.343	0.337	0.330	0.325
0.40	0.060	0.058	0.057	0.055	0.054	0.053	0.405	0.402	0.393	0.383	0.378	0.375
0.60	0.068	0.067	0.065	0.064	0.063	0.061	0.435	0.432	0.426	0.417	0.412	0.407
0.80	0.073	0.072	0.071	0.069	0.068	0.067	0.455	0.452	0.446	0.440	0.436	0.432
1.00	0.077	0.076	0.074	0.073	0.071	0.070	0.470	0.467	0.461	0.455	0.450	0.445

Figure 10. 2. 1: Bottom transverses

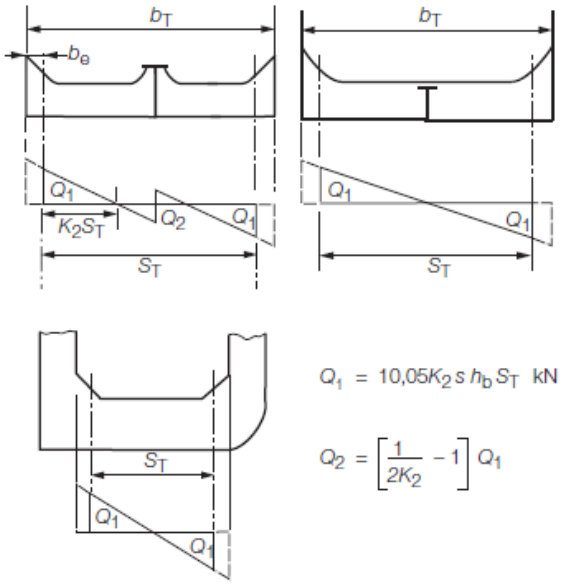
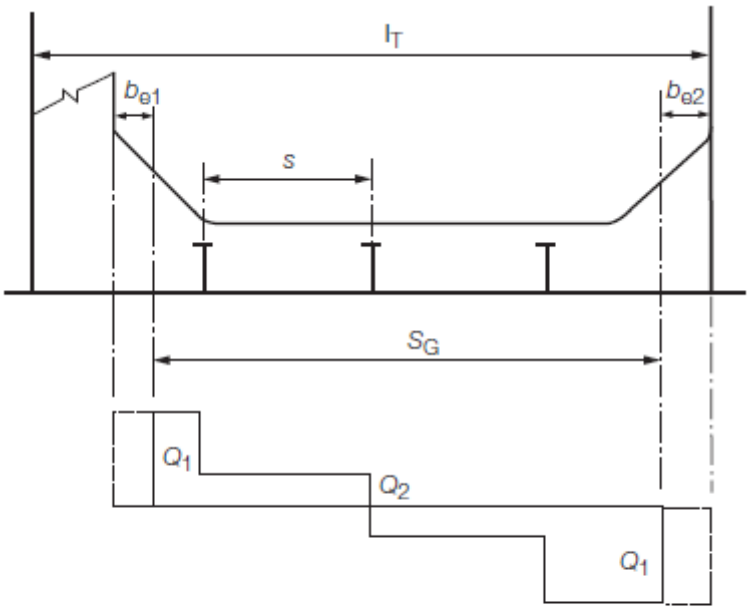


Figure 10. 2. 2: Bottom centreline girder



$$Q_1 = 5{,}025 K_2 h_b s b_T \text{ kN}$$

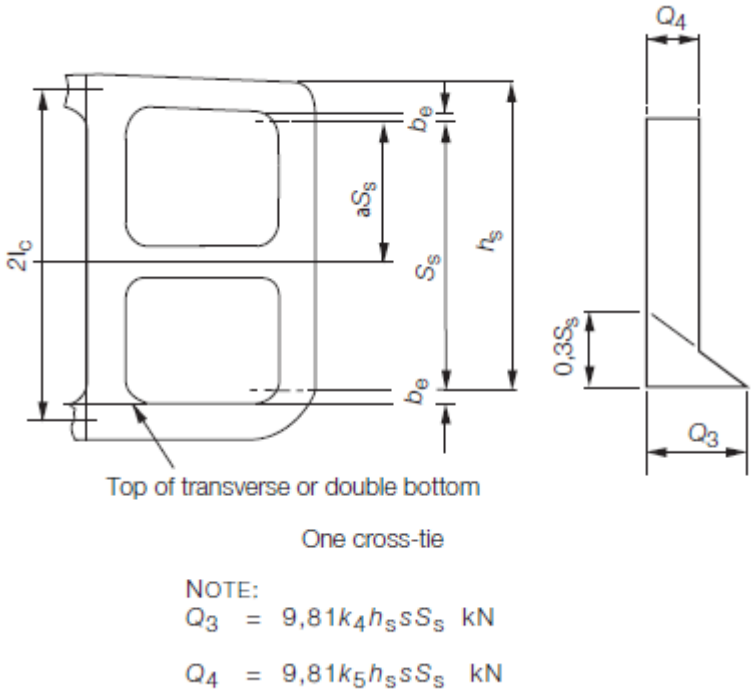
$$Q_2 = \left[\frac{l_T - 3s}{l_T - s}\right] Q_1$$

2. 7. 2 In ships with two longitudinal bulkheads, the net sectional area of the web at any section is to be not less than:

$$A = 0.12 Q_x k \ cm^2$$

where Q_x is calculated from shear force diagrams constructed as shown in Figure 10. 2. 3: Wing tank construction. For this purpose the values of K_4 and K_5 and the range of application is given in Table 10. 2. 2: Side transverse cofficients.

Figure 10. 2. 3: Wing tank construction



NOTE:

$Q_3 = 9{,}81k_4h_sSS_s$ kN

$Q_4 = 9{,}81k_5h_sSS_s$ kN

2. 7. 3 The moment of inertia of side transverses is to be not less than:

$$I = \frac{7.5}{k}S_sZ\ cm^4$$

2. 8 Deck transverses

2. 8. 1 The section modulus of deck transverses is to be not less than:

$$Z = 53.75(0.0269sL + 0.8)(S_T + 1.83)k\ \ cm^3$$

Where a continuous deck girder is fitted, the term S_T in the above formula is to be replaced by $\frac{S_T}{2}$.

Table 10. 2. 2: Side transverse cofficients

Number of cross-ties	K_3	K_4	K_5	Range of application
0	8	Not applicable		$L \leq 75$ m, *See* Pt 4, Ch 10, 2.3 Structural arrangements
1	2.16	0.455-0.316α	0.103	$0.5 \leq \alpha \leq 0.7$

2. 8. 2 The net sectional area of the web is to satisfy the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 10, 2.5 Bottom transverses 2.5.2 using a head, $h_b = \frac{L_1}{56}$m.

2. 8. 3 The moment of inertia of the transverses is to be not less than:

$$I = \frac{7.5}{k}S_TZ\ cm^4$$

2. 9 Deck girders

2. 9. 1 Where a continuous deck centreline girder supporting deck transverses is fitted, it is to have a section modulus not less than:

$$Z = 0.0476 S_G^2 b_T L k \ \ cm^3$$

2. 9. 2 The net sectional area of the web is to satisfy the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 10, 2.6 Bottom girders 2.6.2 using a head, $h_b = \frac{L_1}{56}$ m.

2. 9. 3 In way of the vertical centreline web on transverse bulkheads, the continuous deck girder is to be increased in depth and scantlings as necessary to provide an effective support.

2. 9. 4 Where an intercostal deck girder is fitted, it is to have a depth not less than 50 per cent of the depth of the deck transverse and the area of the face flat is to be not less than that of the transverse.

2. 9. 5 In way of the vertical centreline web and centreline supports to horizontal girder on transverse bulkheads, the intercostal deck girder may be required to be increased in depth and scantlings to provide an effective support.

2. 10 Cross-ties

2. 10. 1 Cross-ties, where fitted, may be of plate or sectional material and are to have an area and least moment of inertia not less than:

$$A = (64 + 1.035 l_c h_c s) k \text{ cm}^2$$
$$I = 2.45 l_c h_c S_c^2 \quad cm^4$$

2. 10. 2 Design of end connections is to be such that the area of the welding, including vertical brackets, where fitted, is to be not less than the minimum cross-sectional area of the cross tie derived from Pt 4, Ch 10, 2.10 Cross-ties 2.10.1. To achieve this full penetration may be required and thickness of brackets may require further consideration. Attention is to be given to the full continuity of area of the backing structure on the transverses. Particular attention is also to be paid to the welding at the toes of all vertical end brackets on the cross-tie.

2. 11 Double bottom girders and floors

2. 11. 1 The scantlings of girder and floors are to satisfy the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 8.3,, Girders and Pt 4, Ch 1, 8.5, Floors respectively for longitudinally framed ships.

PART

4

CHAPTER **10** **Single Hull Oil Tankers**

SECTION **3** **Primary members supporting transverse side framing**

3. 1 General

3. 1. 1 The requirements of this Section are applicable to side stringers and transverse webs associated with transverse framing.

3. 1. 2 The minimum thickness and constructional detail requirements of Pt 4, Ch 10, 7 Construction details and minimum thickness are to be complied with.

3. 2 Symbols

3. 2. 1 The symbols used in this Section are defined as follows:

h_1 = head, in metres, from stringer to highest point of tank excluding hatchway, but not less than 2.5 m

Q_x = shear force at the actual section under consideration, obtained from shear force diagrams constructed as indicated, in kN (tonne-f)

S_1 = span, in metres, of the horizontal girder measured between span points, but to be taken not less than the lesser of$(1.2 + 0.02L)$m or 3m.

3. 2. 2 Other symbols are defined in Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.6 Information required for CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers.

3. 3 Structural arrangements

3. 3. 1 Side shell stringers are to be fitted as required by Table 10. 3. 1: Requirements for stringers. Alternatively, the number of stringers may be derived by direct calculation, particular regard being given to secondary bending effects on the frames supported.

Table 10. 3. 1: Requirements for stringers

Ship depth, in metres	Number of stringers
D ≤ 6.0	0
6.0 < D ≤ 7.5	1
7.5 < D ≤ 11.0	2

3. 3. 2 Where the spacing of bulkheads (oiltight or non-oiltight) exceeds 15 m, side transverses are to be fitted in line with each bottom transverse.

3. 3. 3 Where side transverses are not required, bottom transverses are to be adequately supported at the side shell and longitudinal bulkhead, and the lower side stringer is to be suitably buttressed from the bottom transverse.

3. 3. 4 Cross-ties, where fitted, are to comply with the requirements of 2.10 and are, in general, to be aligned with the stringers.

3. 3. 5 Where the ship is fitted with a trunk, the scantlings as given in this Section are to be modified as required by Pt 4, Ch 10, 6 Trunked construction.

3. 4 Scantlings

3. 4. 1 The section modulus of side stringers is to be not less than:

$$Z = 10bh_1S_1^2k\ cm^3$$

3. 4. 2 The net sectional area of the web at any section is to be not less than:

$$A = 0.12Q_xk\ cm^2$$

where Q_x is calculated from a shear force diagram constructed using the shear force at the span point, Q_1 given by the following:

$$Q_1 = 5.03sh_1S_1 \text{ kN}$$

3. 4. 3 The moment of inertia of the stringer is to be not less than:

$$I = S_1Z\frac{7.5}{k}\ cm^4.$$

3. 4. 4 Where side transverses supporting side stringers are fitted, they are to have a section modulus not less than that required by Pt 4, Ch 10, 2.7 Side transverses. Where the side transverse does not support side stringers, the section modulus required by Pt 4, Ch 10, 2.7 Side transverses may be reduced by 20 per cent.

PART

4

CHAPTER **10 Single Hull Oil Tankers**

SECTION **4 Primary members supporting oiltight bulkheads**

4. 1 General

4. 1. 1 These requirements are applicable to ships having two longitudinal bulkheads, and to ships not exceeding 75 m in length having one longitudinal bulkhead located on the centreline of the ship.

4. 1. 2 The minimum thickness and construction detail requirements of Pt 4, Ch 10, 7 Construction details and minimum thickness are to be complied with. Particular attention is to be paid to the design of end connections between primary members and buttresses. Where considered necessary, the shear and combined stresses in the connections may require to be examined and the scantlings and stiffening increased.

4. 2 Symbols

4. 2. 1 The symbols used in this Section are defined as follows:

h = the distance from the centre of the load on the member to a point 2.45 m above the highest point of the tank, excluding the hatchway, in metres

Q_x = shear force at the actual section under consideration, obtained from shear force diagrams constructed as indicated, in kN.

4. 2. 2 Other symbols are defined in Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.6 Information required for CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers.

4. 3 Structural arrangements

4. 3. 1 Where horizontal girders and vertical webs do not form part of a ring structure, they are to be arranged with substantial end brackets forming a buttress extending to the adjacent vertical web or transverse.

4. 3. 2 Where the cross-ties are omitted from the transverse ring in the wing tank adjacent to the bulkhead, the design of the horizontal girder, of the end buttress and of the transverse is to take account of the loads imposed and the deflection of the structure.

4. 3. 3 The spacing of transverses on longitudinal bulkheads is not to exceed 3.6 m.

4. 3. 4 Where, on ships with transverse side framing, transverses are required by Pt 4, Ch 10, 3 Primary members supporting transverse side framing, vertical webs are also to be fitted in line on the longitudinal bulkhead. Where such vertical webs are not required the lower horizontal girder on the bulkhead is to be suitably buttressed from the bottom transverses.

4. 4 Scantlings

4. 4. 1 The scantlings of vertical webs on longitudinal bulkheads are to be as required for side transverses by Pt 4, Ch 10, 2 Primary members supporting longitudinal framing.

4. 4. 2 The section modulus of vertical webs on transverse bulkheads and of horizontal girders is to be not less than:

$$Z = 8bhl_e^2k \quad cm^3$$

4. 4. 3 The net sectional area of the web at any section is to be not less than:

$$A = 0.12Q_xk\ cm^2$$

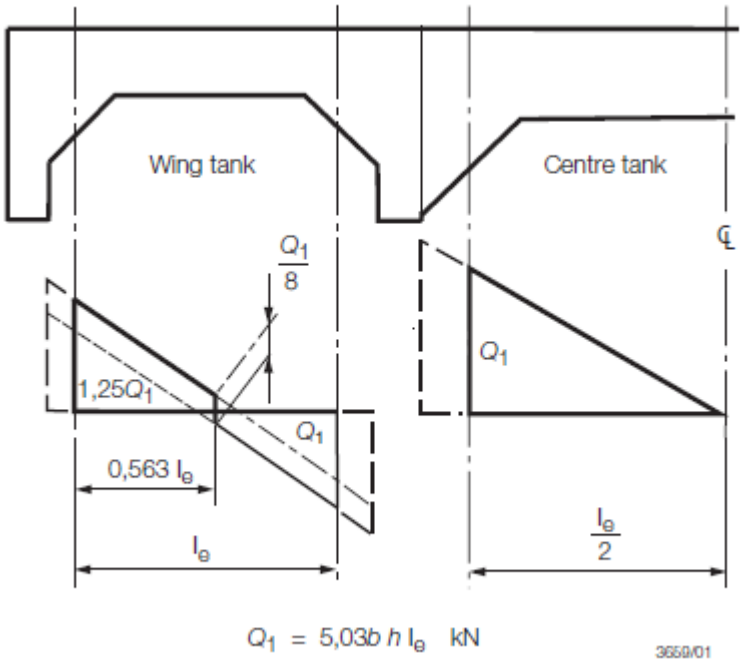
where Q_x is the shear force at the section. For the horizontal girders on ships with two longitudinal bulkheads, Q_x is calculated from shear force diagrams as shown in Figure 10. 4. 1: Horizontal girders. For end connections, Q_x is to be determined by projection of the shear force diagrams as indicated.

4. 4. 4 The moment of inertia of vertical webs and horizontal girders is to be not less than:

$$I = \frac{10.5}{k} l_e Z\ cm^4$$

4. 4. 5 For the calculation of section modulus, the minimum span of horizontal girders on longitudinal bulkheads is to be taken as not less than the lesser of$(1.2 + 0.02L)$ m or 3 m.

Figure 10. 4. 1: Horizontal girders



4. 4. 6 Where a trunk is fitted, the scantlings of primary members are to be modified as required by Pt 4, Ch 10, 6 Trunked construction.

PART

4

CHAPTER **10** **Single Hull Oil Tankers**

SECTION **5** **Primary members supporting non-oiltight bulkheads**

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 These requirements are applicable to primary members supporting non-oiltight transverse bulkheads. Where non-oiltight longitudinal bulkheads are proposed, the requirements for the primary members will be individually considered.

5. 1. 2 The minimum thickness and constructional detail requirements of Pt 4, Ch 10, 7 Construction details and minimum thickness are to be complied with.

5. 2 Symbols

5. 2. 1 The symbol, l_b, used in this Section is defined as follows:

l_b = the distance, in metres, between the transverse bulkheads (oiltight or non-oiltight) adjacent to the bulkhead under consideration.

5. 2. 2 Other symbols are defined in Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.6 Information required for CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers.

5. 3 Direct calculations

5. 3. 1 Direct calculation procedures will generally be required where the non-oiltight bulkhead primary members will interact with, or tend to support, the primary bottom, longitudinal bulkhead or side structure, and in other cases where warranted by structural design features.

5. 4 Scantlings and arrangements

5. 4. 1 The section modulus of vertical webs is to be not less than that required for a vertical web on an oiltight transverse bulkhead in the same position, *See* Pt 4, Ch 10, 4 Primary members supporting oiltight bulkheads, multiplied by the factor $\left(0.3 + 2\frac{l_b}{L}\right)$.

5. 4. 2 The section modulus of horizontal girders is to be not less than:

$$Z = 145\, kbl_e^2 \frac{l_b}{L} \quad cm^3$$

5. 4. 3 When determining the width of plating supported and the effective breadth for calculating the section modulus, no deduction is to be made on account of perforations.

PART

4

CHAPTER **10 Single Hull Oil Tankers**

SECTION **6 Trunked construction**

6. 1 General

6. 1. 1 The requirements of this Section are additional to those of Pt 4, Ch 10, 1 General to Pt 4, Ch 10, 5 Primary members supporting non-oiltight bulkheads.

6. 1. 2 Where a trunk is fitted it is to extend over the full length of the cargo tanks and is to be effectively scarfed into the main hull structure.

6. 1. 3 The minimum thickness and constructional detail requirements of Pt 4, Ch 10, 7 Construction details and minimum thickness are also to be complied with.

6. 2 Symbols

6. 2. 1 The symbols used in this Section are defined as follows:

b_t = breadth of trunk, in metres

h_t = height of trunk, in metres, above the deck at the trunk side. Where the trunk top has excess camber, the value of h_t will be considered.

D_1 = equivalent depth of ship and is to be taken as:

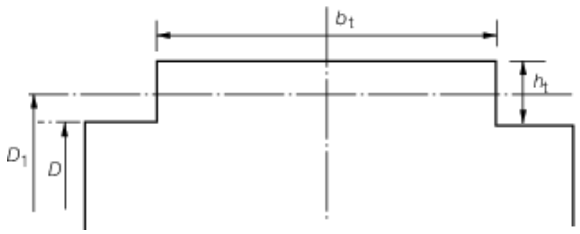
$$D + 0.6\frac{b_1 h_1}{B} \text{ where } \frac{b_1}{B} \leq 0.8 \text{ and}$$

$$D + h_t\left(2.6\frac{b_t}{B} - 1.6\right), \text{ where } \frac{b_t}{B} > 0.8$$

(*See* Figure 10. 6. 1: Equivalent depth).

6. 2. 2 Other symbols are defined in Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.6 Information required for CSR Double Hull Oil Tankers.

Figure 10. 6. 1: Equivalent depth



6. 3 Structural arrangements

6. 3. 1 The trunk deck and sides are to be longitudinally framed, and the transverse primary members are to be aligned with the deck transverses.

6. 3. 2 Particular attention is to be given to the arrangements in way of the connection of the trunk side to the deck at side. The construction is to be such as to ensure adequate rigidity and continuity of strength.

6. 3. 3 Typical arrangements of primary structure are shown diagrammatically in Figure 10. 6. 2: Primary structure, which also indicates the effective spans to be used in the determination of scantlings.

6. 3. 4 Where the trunk primary stiffening is fitted externally, individual consideration will be given to the arrangement and scantlings.

6. 3. 5 Where longitudinal stiffening is fitted externally to the trunk, tripping brackets are to be fitted to maintain lateral stability in way of transverse bulkheads and elsewhere as necessary.

6. 3. 6 Extension brackets and web stiffeners or equivalent arrangements are to be provided at the forward and after ends of the trunk to ensure full continuity of strength from the trunk into hull and superstructures.

6. 3. 7 Where the carriage of heated cargoes is contemplated and, in particular, bituminous cargoes, special attention is to be given to the alignment of the scarfing arrangements and softening of the extension bracket toes at the trunk ends to alleviate the effects of thermal stressing.

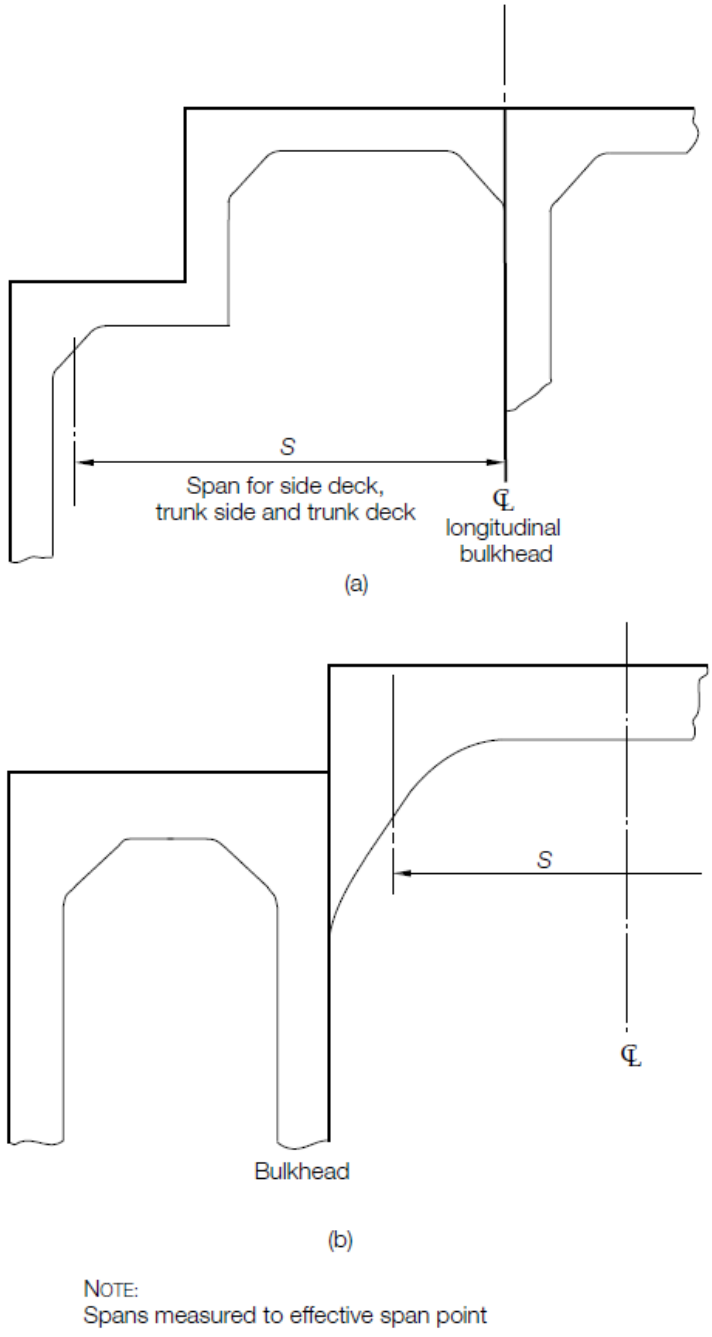
6. 4 Trunk scantlings

6. 4. 1 The thickness of the trunk top and side plating is to be not less than as required by Pt 4, Ch 9, 4 Hull envelope plating for hull envelope plating, the item numbers for these being as given in Figure 10. 6. 3: Hull envelope plating - Itemisation of parts.

6. 4. 2 The section modulus of trunk longitudinals is to be not less than as required by Pt 4, Ch 9, 5 Hull framing for deck longitudinals.

6. 4. 3 The section modulus and moment of inertia of the transverses is to be not less than as required by Pt 4, Ch 10, 2.8 Deck transverses for deck transverses.

Figure 10. 6. 2: Primary structure



NOTE:
Spans measured to effective span point

6. 5 Modification to hull scantlings

6. 5. 1 The thickness of the deck plating outboard of the trunk side is to be that necessary to obtain the required hull section modulus, but is to be not less than that required by Pt 4, Ch 9, 4 Hull envelope plating multiplied by the factor

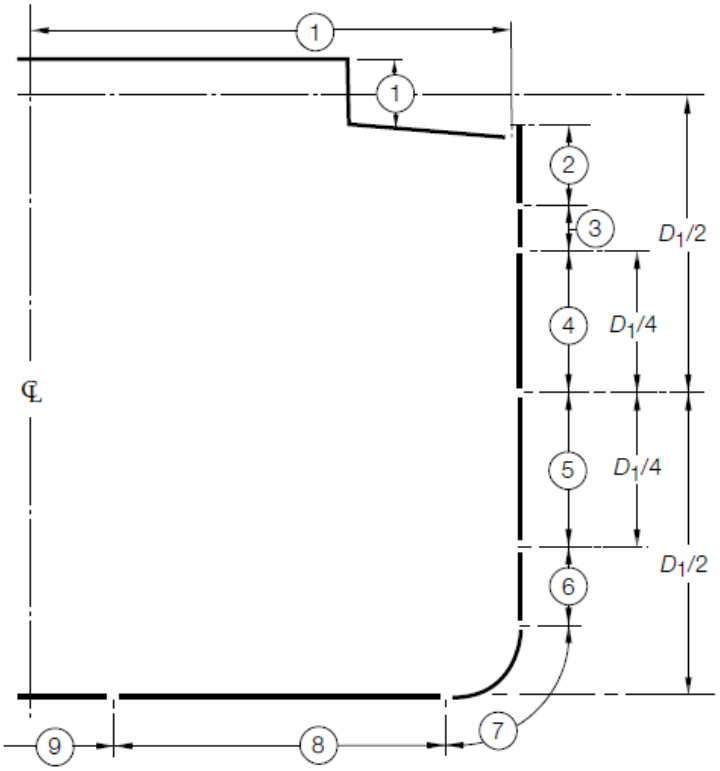
$$\frac{2BD}{2BD + b_t h_t}.$$

6. 5. 2 The scantlings of the shell plating, framing, primary structure and bulkheads are to be determined on the basis of the equivalent ship depth D_1, i.e. where the depth, D, enters into the calculation or structural arrangement it is to be replaced by D_1.

6. 5. 3 The head to the deck at side is to be increased by $(D_1 - D)$.

6. 5. 4 The head to the highest point of the tank is to be replaced by the actual distance to the highest point of the tank, reduced by the amount $(D + h_t - D_1)$.

Figure 10. 6. 3: Hull envelope plating - Itemisation of parts



PART

4

CHAPTER 10 Single Hull Oil Tankers

SECTION 7 Construction details and minimum thickness

7. 1 Symbols

7. 1. 1 The symbols used in this Section are defined in Pt 4, Ch 9, 10.1 Symbols.

7. 2 Compartment minimum thickness

7. 2. 1 The requirements of Pt 4, Ch 9, 10.2, Compartment minimum thickness are also applicable to small conventional single hull tankers.

7. 3 Geometric properties and proportions of members

7. 3. 1 The depth of the web of any primary member is to be not less than 2.5 times the depth of the cut-outs for the passage of secondary members, except where compensation is arranged to provide satisfactory resistance to deflection and shear buckling in the web.

7. 3. 2 The area of material in the face plate of any primary member is not to exceed:

$$0.00667 d_w t_w \ cm^2$$

nor is it to be less than:

$0.0167 s_1 d_w \ cm^2$ for the bottom centreline girder

$0.00417 s_t d_w \ cm^2$ elsewhere.

7. 3. 3 The geometric properties of rolled stiffeners and built sections are to be calculated in association with an effective width of attached plating in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 3, 3 Structural idealisation.

7. 4 Continuity of primary members

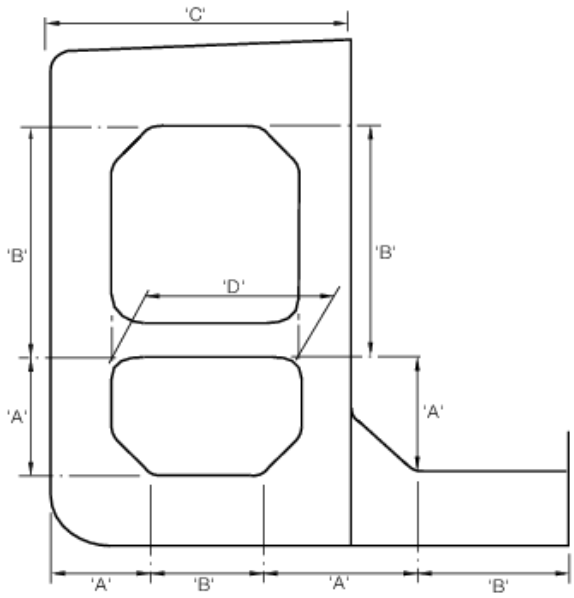
7. 4. 1 Primary members are to be so arranged as to ensure effective continuity of strength throughout the range of tank structure. Abrupt changes of depth or section are to be avoided. Where members abut on both sides of a bulkhead or on other members, arrangements are to be made to ensure that they are in alignment.

7. 4. 2 The members are to have adequate end fixity, lateral support and web stiffening, and the structure is to be arranged to minimize hard spots or other sources of stress concentration. Openings are to have well rounded corners and smooth edges and are to be located having regard to the stress distribution and buckling strength of the plate panel.

7. 5 Primary member web plate stiffening

7. 5. 1 The webs of primary members are to be supported and stiffened in accordance with the following requirements, which are designated as requirements `A', `B', `C' and `D'. The application of these requirements is detailed in Pt 4, Ch 10, 7.5 Primary member web plate stiffening, and the corresponding locations indicated in Figure 10. 7. 1: Key to application requirements. Where webs are slotted for the passage of secondary members, the web stiffeners are to be arranged to provide adequate support for the loads transmitted, *See* Pt 3, Ch 10, 5.2, Arrangements at intersections of continuous secondary and primary members.

Figure 10. 7. 1: Key to application requirements



7. 5. 2 Where higher tensile steel is used for the primary members, the maximum spacing of stiffeners given in this Section is to be multiplied by $\sqrt{k}$.

7. 5. 3 In addition to these stiffeners, tripping brackets as required by Pt 4, Ch 9, 10.11 Lateral stability of primary members are also to be fitted.

7. 5. 4 For requirement `A' stiffening:

a. The thickness, t_w of the web is to be not less than $\frac{s}{80}$

b. Stiffening is generally to be fitted normal to the face plate of the member, but the stiffeners parallel to the face plate will be required when the web depth, d_w, exceeds a value, d_{max} which is to be taken as:

$$for\ s \leq 55t_w\ d_{\max} = 3s$$

$$for\ s > 55t_w\ d_{\max} = \frac{45st_w}{s-40t_w}$$

c. Where stiffening parallel to the face plate is required, the distance from the face plate of the member to the nearest stiffener is not to exceed $65t_w$. Further stiffeners are to be fitted at similar spacing so that the distance between the last stiffener and the shell or bulkhead plating does not exceed d_{max}. In way of end brackets to transverse bulkhead primary structure, stiffeners are to be fitted normal to the face plate of the member so that web plate panel dimensions parallel to the face plate do not exceed $80t_w$.

7. 5. 5 For requirement `B` stiffening:

a. The thickness, t_w of the web is to be not less than $\frac{s}{85}$

b. Stiffening is generally to be fitted normal to the face plate of the member, but stiffeners parallel to the face plate will be required when the web depth, d_w, exceeds a value d_{max}, which is to be taken as:

$$for\ s \leq 70t_w\ d_{\max} = 3s$$

$$for\ s > 70t_w\ d_{\max} = \frac{48st_w}{s-54t_w}$$

c. Where stiffening parallel to the face plate is required, the distance from the face plate of the member to the nearest stiffener is not to exceed $80t_w$. Further stiffeners are to be fitted at similar spacing so that the distance between the last stiffener and the shell or bulkhead plating does not exceed d_{max}.

7. 5. 6 For requirement `C' stiffening:

a. Stiffening is generally to be fitted normal to the face plate of the member in line with alternate secondary members, but stiffeners parallel to the face plate will be required, when the web depth, d_w exceeds a value, d_{max} which is to be taken as:

$$for\ s \leq 76t_w\ d_{\max} = 3s$$

$$for\ s > 76t_w\ d_{\max} = \frac{48st_w}{s-60t_w}$$

b. Where stiffening parallel to the face plate is required, the distance from the face plate of the member to the nearest stiffener is not to exceed $90t_w$. Further stiffeners are to be fitted at similar spacing so that the distance between the last stiffener and the deck plating does not exceed d_{max}.

7. 5. 7 For requirement `D' stiffening:

a. Stiffening parallel to the face plate will be required such that the distance between the stiffener and face plate, or between two stiffeners, does not exceed:

$80t_w$ where $L \leq 90$ m

$55t_w$ where $L \geq 190$ m

with intermediate values by interpolation.

b. Brackets are to be fitted to support the face plates and stiffeners.

7. 6 Inertia and dimensions of stiffeners

7. 6. 1 The moment of inertia is to be not less than:

a. For stiffeners normal to the primary member face plate:

$$I_s = pst_{w^3} \times 10^{-4}\ cm^4$$

Where t_w need not be greater than the values in Table 10. 7. 1: Maximum web thickness for stiffener inertia and p is to be obtained from Table 10. 7. 2: Coefficient for stiffener inertia.

b. For stiffeners parallel to the primary member face plate:

On transverses, webs and stringers

$$I_s = 2l_sA_s^2\ \ cm^4$$

On longitudinal deck and bottom girders

$$I_s = 2.85l_sA_s^2\ \ cm^4$$

Table 10. 7. 1: Maximum web thickness for stiffener inertia

Requirement	Web thickness t_w, in mm
`A'	$\frac{s}{55}$
`B' and `C'	$\frac{s}{70}$
`D'	$\frac{s}{80}$ where $L \leq 90$ m, *See Note* $\frac{s}{60}$ where $L \leq 190$ m, *See Note*
Note Intermediate values by interpolation	

7. 6. 2 Where stiffeners are fitted in both directions, the inertia of the stiffeners parallel to the face plate of the member is to be not less than that of the stiffeners fitted normally.

7. 6. 3 The depth of web stiffeners is to be not less than 75 mm.

7. 6. 4 Where flat bar stiffeners are used, the ratio of depth to thickness is not to exceed $18\sqrt{k}$.

Table 10. 7. 2: Coefficient for stiffener inertia

Aspect ratio of plate panel, $\frac{s}{d}$	1.0 or more	0.9	0.8	0.7	0.6	0.5	0.4	0.3 or less
p	1.5	2.1	2.9	4.2	6.1	9.2	14.6	30.0

Note *1.* Intermediate values by interpolation.

Note *2.* The depth of panel, *d*, used in calculating aspect ratio may be measured from the face of the secondary member to which the primary member web stiffener is attached.

7. 7 Application of stiffening requirements

7. 7. 1 The requirements as detailed in Pt 4, Ch 10, 7.5 Primary member web plate stiffening and Pt 4, Ch 10, 7.6 Inertia and dimensions of stiffeners are to be applied in the following locations, *See also* Figure 10. 7. 1: Key to application requirements.

a. For bottom transverses:
In the centre tank requirement `A' stiffening is to extend for 20 per cent of the breadth of the tank from the longitudinal bulkhead, but at least beyond the toe of the end bracket. In the wing tank, requirement `A' stiffening is to extend at least as far as the toes of the end brackets from the longitudinal bulkhead and the shell. Elsewhere, requirement `B' stiffening is to be fitted.

b. For transverses at side shell and longitudinal bulkhead:
Requirement `A` stiffening is to extend at least as far as the lower surface of the lower cross-tie. Elsewhere, requirement `B` stiffening is to be fitted.

c. For deck transverses:
Requirement `C' stiffening is to be fitted.

d. For stringers and horizontal girders:
Requirement `A' stiffening is to extend for a distance from each end of 20 per cent of the span of the stringer or girder, but at least beyond the toes of the end brackets. Elsewhere, requirement `B' stiffening is to be fitted.

e. For cross-ties:

Cross-ties are to be suitably stiffened to prevent buckling and twisting. Requirement `D' stiffening is to be fitted.

f. For shell stringers and vertical webs in fore peak:
Requirement `A' stiffening is to extend the full length of the member.

7. 7. 2 The application of stiffening requirements to transverse wing structures in wing tanks where no cross-ties are fitted is to be based on the results of direct calculation and will be specially considered.

7. 8 Stiffening of continuous longitudinal girders

7. 8. 1 The webs of continuous longitudinal deck and bottom girders are to be stiffened parallel to the girder face plate.

7. 8. 2 The stiffeners are to be spaced not more than $55t_w$ mm apart except in way of vertical webs and end brackets, where the spacing is not to exceed $45t_w$ mm. Alternatively, a combination of parallel stiffeners at $55t_w$ mm spacing and normal stiffeners at $45t_w$ mm spacing may be adopted. Particular attention is to be given to the stiffening of the docking girder.

7. 8. 3 The moment of inertia of stiffeners is to comply with Pt 4, Ch 10, 7.6 Inertia and dimensions of stiffeners.

7. 9 Stiffening of vertical webs on transverse bulkheads

7. 9. 1 Vertical webs are to be fitted with stiffeners parallel to the face plate of the web and spaced not more than $60t_w$ mm apart. Stiffeners normal to the face plate are to be fitted when a vertical web supports horizontal stiffeners on transverse bulkheads. The length of stiffener is to be sufficient to distribute the load transmitted, and the connection between web stiffener and bulkhead stiffener is to comply with the relevant requirements of Pt 3, Ch 10, 5.2, Arrangements at intersections of continuous secondary and primary members.

7. 9. 2 The moment of inertia of the stiffeners is to comply with Pt 4, Ch 10, 7.6 Inertia and dimensions of stiffeners.

7. 10 Docking brackets on bottom centreline girder

7. 10. 1 Stiffened docking brackets are to be fitted on both sides of the bottom centreline girder, midway between transverses, and are to be connected to a suitable bottom shell longitudinal. The bracket on one side is to be connected to the face plate of the girder but the other may be stopped at a suitable horizontal stiffener.

7. 10. 2 Additional vertical stiffeners may be required on the bottom panels of the girder to resist docking pressures.

7. 11 Lateral stability of primary members

7. 11. 1 Tripping brackets are generally to be fitted close to the toes of end brackets, in way of cross-ties and elsewhere, so that the spacing between brackets does not exceed the lesser of 4.5 m or 15 times the width of the face plate (20 times in the case of deck transverses). Arrangements in way of the intersections of primary members are to be such as to prevent tripping. A closer spacing of brackets may be required to be adopted with asymmetrical face plates.

7. 11. 2 To maintain continuity of strength, substantial horizontal and vertical brackets are to be fitted to transverses or stringers at ends of cross-ties. Horizontal brackets are to be aligned with the cross-tie face plates, and vertical end brackets are to be aligned with the cross-tie web.

7. 11. 3 Tripping brackets are to be connected to the face plate of the bottom transverses. Elsewhere, other than for docking girders, the bracket is to be connected to the face plate whenever the unsupported width of the latter exceeds 150 mm. Where the width of symmetrically placed face plates exceeds 400 mm, a small bracket is to be fitted opposite, and in line with, the tripping bracket. Equivalent support arrangements are to be provided for cross-tie face plates. Particular attention is to be paid to the support of continuous face plates in way of the radius at toes of brackets.

7. 11. 4 Wide face plates may require additional support between brackets.

7. 11. 5 In the fore peak tank, if the angle to the normal of the shell plating and the vertical webs exceeds 20°, double tripping brackets are to be fitted to the web at about midspan, but in no case greater than 3.0 m apart.

7. 12 Openings in web plating

7. 12. 1 Where openings are cut in the webs of primary supporting members, the greatest dimension of the opening is not to exceed 20 per cent of the web depth. The opening is to be located so that the edges are not less than 40 per cent of the web depth from the face, and are equidistant from the corners of notches for frames or stiffeners. Openings are to be suitably framed where required.

7. 12. 2 Lightening holes are not to be cut in horizontal girders on the ship's side and longitudinal bulkheads, in symmetrical webs nor in side transverses and vertical webs in way of cross-ties and their end connections.

7. 12. 3 Holes cut in primary longitudinal members within $0.1D$ of the deck and bottom are, in general, to be reinforced as required by Pt 4, Ch 9, 4.10 Deck openings. Access holes may be cut in deep transverses and girders with suitable compensation to provide satisfactory resistance to deflection and shear buckling in the web.

7. 12. 4 All holes are to have smooth edges and are to be kept well clear of notches and the toes of brackets.

7. 12. 5 Small air and drain holes cut in primary members are to be kept clear of the toes of brackets and are to be well rounded with smooth edges. Where holes are cut in primary longitudinal members of higher tensile steel, they are to be elliptical or equivalent to minimize stress concentration.

7. 12. 6 Where holes are cut for heating coils, the lower edge of the hole is to be not less than 100 mm from the inside of the shell plating. Where large notches are cut in the transverses for the passage of longitudinal framing, adjacent to openings for heating coils, the longitudinal notches are to be collared. Examination of the buckling strength of the web plate panel between notches for longitudinals may be required.

7. 13 Brackets connecting primary members

7. 13. 1 The requirements of Pt 4, Ch 9, 10.13 Brackets connecting primary members are also applicable to small conventional single hull tankers.

7. 14 Arrangements at intersections of continuous secondary and primary members

7. 14. 1 For details and connections of collars, *See* Pt 3, Ch 10, 5.2, Arrangements at intersections of continuous secondary and primary members.

PART

4

CHAPTER **11 Ore Carriers**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**1894**
	1. 1	Application	1894
	1. 2	Structural configuration and ship arrangement	1894
	1. 3	Class notation	1895
	1. 4	Symbols and definitions	1896
SECTION 2	**Materials and protection**		**1898**
	2. 1	Materials and grades of steel	1898
	2. 2	Corrosion protection coating for salt-water ballast spaces	1898
SECTION 3	**Longitudinal strength**		**1899**
	3. 1	General	1899
SECTION 4	**Hull envelope plating**		**1900**
	4. 1	General	1900
	4. 2	Deck plating in way of ore hatchways	1900
	4. 3	Hatchways	1900
	4. 4	Hatch coamings	1900
SECTION 5	**Hull framing**		**1901**
	5. 1	General	1901
	5. 2	Symbols	1901
	5. 3	Bottom longitudinals in double bottom tanks	1902
	5. 4	Deck structure in way of centre hold	1902
	5. 5	Primary and secondary members inside line of ore hatchways	1902
SECTION 6	**Double bottom construction**		**1903**
	6. 1	General	1903
	6. 2	Arrangement	1903
SECTION 7	**Longitudinal bulkheads**		**1904**
	7. 1	General	1904

SECTION 8 Transverse bulkheads 1906
8. 1 General 1906
8. 2 Transverse watertight bulkheads in wing tanks 1906
8. 3 Transverse watertight bulkheads in centre holds 1906
8. 4 Non-watertight bulkheads 1906
SECTION 9 Primary structure in wing tanks 1907
9. 1 Bottom transverses 1907
9. 2 Side transverses 1907
9. 3 Cross ties in wing tanks 1907
9. 4 Deck transverses 1909
9. 5 Cross-ties 1909
9. 6 Primary members supporting bulkheads 1909
9. 7 Scarfing of double bottom 1910
9. 8 Construction details and minimum thickness 1910
SECTION 10 Structural details 1911
10. 1 Intersection of continuous secondary and primary members 1911
SECTION 11 Direct calculations 1912
11. 1 Application 1912
11. 2 Procedures 1912
SECTION 12 Forecastles 1913
12. 1 General 1913
SECTION 13 Single pass loading 1914
13. 1 Scope and application 1914
13. 2 Information required 1914
13. 3 Definitions 1914
13. 4 Cargo loading conditions for design assessment 1915
13. 5 Design assessment 1915
13. 6 Ballast arrangements 1915
13. 7 Loading manual 1915
13. 8 Loading computer 1915

PART

4

CHAPTER **11 Ore Carriers**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 11. 7. 1: Longitudinal and transverse bulkhead scantlings for ore loading 1904

PART

4

CHAPTER **11 Ore Carriers**

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 11. 1. 1: Typical cross-section 1894

PART

4

CHAPTER **11 Ore Carriers**

SECTION **1 General**

1. 1 Application

1. 1. 1 This Chapter applies to the arrangements and scantlings within the cargo region of sea-going ore carriers, intended for the carriage of ore in centre holds.

1. 1. 2 The requirements of Pt 4, Ch 9 Double Hull Oil Tankers are to be applied to ore carriers, except as required by the provisions of this Chapter.

1. 1. 3 The scantlings of structural items may be determined by direct calculation. Where the length of the ship exceeds 150 m, the scantlings of the primary supporting structure and the fatigue performance of structural details are to be assessed in accordance with the relevant ACSPlus Guidelines, *See* Pt 4, Ch 11, 1.3 Class notation 1.3.5. In such cases, the calculations are to be submitted for approval.

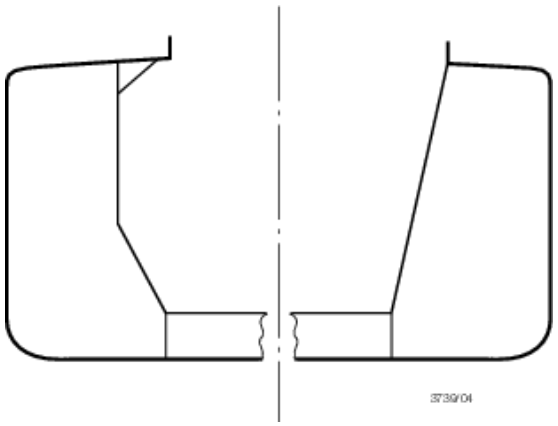
1. 1. 4 The additional requirements for ore-carriers for the alternate carriage of oil cargo and dry bulk cargo are given in Pt 4, Ch 9, 11 Ships for alternate carriage of oil cargo and dry bulk cargo.

1. 1. 5 Ore carriers with a deadweight greater than 200 000 tonnes are to comply with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 11, 13 Single pass loading.

1. 2 Structural configuration and ship arrangement

1. 2. 1 The requirements contained in the Chapter apply to single deck ships with machinery aft, having two longitudinal bulkheads and a double bottom throughout the centre hold. A typical cross-section is indicated in Figure 11. 1. 1: Typical cross-section.

Figure 11. 1. 1: Typical cross-section



1. 2. 2 The bottom, and the deck outside the line of ore hatchways, are to be framed longitudinally within the cargo region. The side shell and longitudinal bulkheads are generally to be framed longitudinally where the length of the ship exceeds 150 m, but alternative proposals will be specially considered. Inside the line of openings, the deck is to be transversely framed.

1. 2. 3 The notation **Strengthened to carry cargoes which may liquefy (IMSBC Group A)** is only applicable to ore carriers having a conventional structural configuration with cargo holds bounded by two longitudinal bulkheads widely separated from the side shell, *See* Figure 11. 1. 1: Typical cross-section.

1. 3 Class notation

1. 3. 1 Sea-going ships complying with the requirements of this Chapter and other relevant Rule requirements for the draught required will be eligible to be classed **100A1 ore carrier, ESP**.

1. 3. 2 The notation **ESP** serves to identify the ship as being subject to an Enhanced Survey Programme as detailed in Pt 1, Ch 3, 3 Intermediate Surveys - Hull and machinery requirements and Pt 1, Ch 3, 6 Special Survey - Bulk carriers - Hull requirements, *See also* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.12.

1. 3. 3 Where a vessel is built in accordance with the requirements detailed in this Section, the vessel will be eligible for the notation **Strengthened to carry cargoes which may liquefy (IMSBC Group A)**. The requirements in this Section do not allow the loading of cargo with moisture content in excess of the transportable moisture limit (TML), as defined in the IMSBC Code, but instead make allowance for the rise in moisture content of the cargo above the TML after loading. Attention is drawn to Section 7.3.2.1 of the IMSBC Code.

1. 3. 4 The notation **Strengthened to carry cargoes which may liquefy (IMSBC Group A)** serves to identify the ship as being specially constructed for loads from Group A cargoes, as defined in the IMSBC Code.

The loading condition cargo density, ρ_c, applicable to this notation is not to be less than the virtual homogeneous load density as calculated based on M_{Full} at maximum draught, *See* Pt 4, Ch 7, 1.8, Symbols and definitions. The virtual cargo density is calculated based on homogeneous cargo at maximum draught.

The density is to be agreed between the Owner and the Builder and is to be noted in the Loading Manual in this form: 'Carriage of cargo with moisture content above TML shall only be undertaken if the cargo density is above <density> t/m^3'.

To be eligible for this notation additional calculations are required to assess stresses from liquefied cargo. The following structures are to be assessed:

a. Longitudinal bulkheads using one of the following cargo density cases:
   i. Assessment using virtual cargo density, i.e. fully filled:
      - According to Table 9. 6. 1: Inner hull and longitudinal oiltight bulkhead scantlings with the following considerations:
      - load height, h, measured up to the highest point of the hold; and
      - the results are to be corrected for density by applying a factor of $\rho_c/1.025$ to the load height.
   ii. Assessment using cargo density higher than the virtual cargo density, i.e. partially filled:
      - According to Table 9. 6. 1: Inner hull and longitudinal oiltight bulkhead scantlings with the following considerations:
      - load height, h, measured up to the height of the cargo in the hold;
      - horizontal distance, b_1, measured from the calculation point to the centreline as the filling level allows. When the level of the liquefied cargo is above the hold corner after the ship is heeled over, b_1 is to be specially considered to ensure a correct increased load height, $h+Rb_1$, in the heeled state with roll angle θ; and

- the results are to be corrected for density by applying a factor of $\rho_c/1.025$ to the load height.

b. Transverse bulkheads using one of the following cargo density cases:
   i. Assessment using virtual cargo density, i.e. fully filled:
      - According to Table 9. 7. 1: Transverse oiltight bulkhead scantlings with the following considerations:
      - load height, *h,* measured to the highest point of the hold; and
      - the results are to be corrected for density by applying a factor of $\rho_c/1.025$ to the load height.
   ii. Assessment using cargo density higher than the virtual cargo density, i.e. partially filled:
      - According to Table 9. 7. 1: Transverse oiltight bulkhead scantlings with the following considerations:
      - load height, *h*, measured up to the height of the cargo in the hold;
      - horizontal distance, b_1, measured from the calculation point to the centreline as the filling level allows. When the level of the liquefied cargo is above the hold corner after the ship is heeled over, b_1 is to be specially considered to ensure a correct increased load height, $h+Rb_1$, in the heeled state with roll angle θ; and
      - the results are to be corrected for density by applying a factor of $\rho_c/1.025$ to the load height.

c. Intersection of continuous secondary and primary members according to Pt 3, Ch 10, 5.2, Arrangements at intersections of continuous secondary and primary members using loads in the same Section from Table 10. 5. 1: Total load transmitted to connection of secondary members *(3)(b)(iii)* in Pt 3 Ship Structures (General) with K_c=1.

d. Cross ties in wing tanks as per requirements for primary structure in this Chapter.

e. Lower stool as per requirements for Pt 4, Ch 11, 1.3 Class notation 1.3.4.c transverse bulkheads.

Additionally, the vessel is to be designed in accordance with *ACSPlus SDA Guideline for Primary Structures of Ore Carriers*.

1. 3. 5 Where the length of the ship is greater than 150 m, or where the structural arrangements are considered such as to necessitate it, the scantlings of the primary supporting structure are to be assessed by direct calculation and the ACSPlus notations **SDA**, **FDA** and **CM** are mandatory, *See* Pt 4, Ch 11, 1.3 Class notation 1.3.7 and Pt 4, Ch 11, 11 Direct calculations.

1. 3. 6 For ore carriers where an assessment of multiple port loading and unloadinghas been carried out in accordance with the relevant ACSPlus Guidelines and the ACSPlus notation **SDA** has been assigned, an optional ACSPlus notation **MP** can be assigned.

1. 3. 7 The 'ACSPlus Guidelines' for the hull construction of ships are detailed in Pt 3, Ch 16 ACSPlus Guidelines for the Design, Construction and Lifetime Care of Ships and the classification notations and descriptive notes associated with these procedures are given in Pt 1, Ch 2, 2 Character of classification and class notations.

1. 3. 8 The Regulations for classification and the assignment of class notations are given in Pt 1, Ch 2, 2 Character of classification and class notations.

1. 4 Symbols and definitions

1. 4. 1 The following symbols and definitions are applicable to this Chapter unless otherwise stated:

L, *B*, *D*, *T* as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6 Definitions.

b = the width of plating supported by the primary member, in metres or mm

h = the load head, in metres, applied to the item under consideration

k = higher tensile steel factor. For the determination of this factor, *See* Pt 3, Ch 2, 1 Materials of construction. For mild steel k may be taken as 1.0

l_e = effective length of primary or secondary member, in metres, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3 Structural idealisation.

s = spacing, in mm, of secondary members

Z = the section modulus, in cm^3, of the primary or secondary member, in association with an effective width of attached plating determined in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 3, 3 Structural idealisation.

1. 4. 2 The expression `primary member' as used in this Chapter is defined as a girder, transverse, vertical web, stringer, cross-tie, buttress or double bottom floor. `Secondary members' are supporting members other than primary members.

PART

4

CHAPTER **11 Ore Carriers**

SECTION **2 Materials and protection**

2. 1 Materials and grades of steel

2. 1. 1 Materials, grades of steel and protection of materials are to comply with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 2 Materials, and the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials.

2. 2 Corrosion protection coating for salt-water ballast spaces

2. 2. 1 The requirements of Pt 3, Ch 2, 3.6 Application of coatings and alternative means of protection and Ch 15 Corrosion Prevention of the Pt 2 *Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials* are to be complied with.

PART

4

CHAPTER **11 Ore Carriers**

SECTION **3 Longitudinal strength**

3. 1 General

3. 1. 1 The longitudinal strength standard is to comply with the relevant requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4 Longitudinal Strength.

3. 1. 2 For ships of length≥150 m, with holds where any part of the longitudinal bulkhead is located within B/5 or 11.5 m, whichever is less, inboard from the ship's side at right angles to the centreline at the assigned summer load line, the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 7, 3 Longitudinal strength are also to be applied.

PART

4

CHAPTER 11 Ore Carriers

SECTION 4 Hull envelope plating

4. 1 General

4. 1. 1 The requirements for hull envelope plating as given for oil tankers in Pt 4, Ch 9, 4 Hull envelope plating are to be applied, except as provided for in this Section.

4. 2 Deck plating in way of ore hatchways

4. 2. 1 The arrangement and scantlings of deck plating inside the line of ore hatchways and in way of ore hatchway corners are to be in accordance with the requirements for bulk carriers given in Pt 4, Ch 7, 4 Deck structure.

4. 3 Hatchways

4. 3. 1 The scantlings of the cargo hold hatch covers are to comply with Pt 3, Ch 11, 2 Steel hatch covers and Pt 4, Ch 7, 12 Steel hatch covers.

4. 4 Hatch coamings

4. 4. 1 The height and construction of hatch coamings are to comply with Pt 4, Ch 7, 13 Hatch coamings.

4. 4. 2 Wire rope grooving in way of cargo hold openings is to be prevented by fitting suitable protection, such as halfround bars, on the hatch side girders (upper portion of top-side tank plates), hatch end beams, and the upper portion of hatch coamings.

PART

4

CHAPTER **11 Ore Carriers**

SECTION **5 Hull framing**

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 The framing requirements given for oil tankers in Pt 4, Ch 9, 5 Hull framing are to be applied, except as provided for in this Section.

5. 1. 2 Lateral buckling of longitudinal and transverse ordinary stiffeners is to be assessed in the following areas in association with a factor of safety of not less than 1.15 (allowable utilisation factor to be reduced by at least 1/1.15 = 0.87). Details are to be submitted:

- hatchway coaming;
- inner bottom;
- sloped stiffened panel of topside tanks (if any);
- longitudinal bulkhead;
- top stool and bottom stool of transverse bulkhead (if any) and
- stiffened transverse bulkhead (if any).

5. 2 Symbols

5. 2. 1 The symbols used in this Section are defined as follows:

h = load height, in metres, on the weather deck for primary and secondary members between ore hatchways

= 1.8 for secondary members forward of 0.075L from F. P.

= 4.2 + 2.04E for primary members forward of 0.075L from F. P.

= 1.5 between 0.075L and 0.12L from F. P.

= 1.2 + 2.04E elsewhere

= where $E = \frac{0.0914+0.003L}{D-T} - 0.15$ but not to be greater than 0.147

K_1 = 1.6 in the forward $0.12L$

= 1.06 elsewhere

K_2 = 0.00054 in the forward $0.075L$

= 0.00033 elsewhere.

5. 2. 2 Other symbols are defined in Pt 4, Ch 11, 1.4 Symbols and definitions.

5. 3 Bottom longitudinals in double bottom tanks

5. 3. 1 The section modulus of bottom longitudinals in the double bottom in the centre hold is to satisfy the requirements of in Chapter 1.

5. 3. 2 In general, the span of longitudinals in the double bottom in the centre hold is not to exceed 2.5 m or $0.01L$, whichever is the greater, and the span in the wing tanks is not to exceed the greater of 3.6 m or $0.02L$.

5. 4 Deck structure in way of centre hold

5. 4. 1 Where the hatch coamings are situated inboard of the longitudinal bulkhead, the deck between the two is to be fitted with suitably supported longitudinals complying with Pt 4, Ch 9, 5 Hull framing.

5. 5 Primary and secondary members inside line of ore hatchways

5. 5. 1 The section modulus of secondary members between hatches is to be not less than:

$$Z = \mathrm{k}(K_1 TD + K_2 hBl_e^2 s)\mathrm{cm}^3$$

but need not exceed twice the value given by the second term within the brackets in the formula.

5. 5. 2 The section modulus of primary members between hatches is to be not less than:

$$Z = 5.46\mathrm{kbhl}_e^2\ \mathrm{cm}^3$$

Forward of $0.075L$ from the forward perpendicular, the depth of the primary member is to be not less than twice that of the secondary member supported.

5. 5. 3 Particular attention is to be paid to the scarfing of deck beams into the structure outside the line of openings. Substantial brackets or equivalent arrangements are to be provided.

PART

4

CHAPTER **11 Ore Carriers**

SECTION **6 Double bottom construction**

6. 1 General

6. 1. 1 The double bottom depth and scantlings are to be as required by Pt 4, Ch 7, 8 Double bottom structure for the double bottom structure of a bulk carrier to which the notation `strengthened for heavy cargoes' is to be assigned. However, where Pt 4, Ch 11, 3.1 General 3.1.2 is not applicable, the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 7, 8.8, Allowable hold loading in the flooded condition need not be applied. The required depth of double bottom and scantlings of double bottom structure are to be verified by direct calculation. The calculation is to be submitted.

6. 1. 2 Where the proposed depth of double bottom exceeds 1.5 times the Rule minimum depth given in Pt 4, Ch 1, 8 Double bottom structure, the scantlings of the floors and girders may be required to be increased to ensure adequate resistance to buckling.

6. 1. 3 The thickness of inner bottom plating in the cargo hold is to be not less than required by Pt 4, Ch 7, 8 Double bottom structure for ships having the notation `**strengthened for heavy cargoes**'.

6. 1. 4 For all vessels intended to be unloaded by grabs, the thickness of inner bottom plating is to meet the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 9, 8.2 Inner bottom plating 8.2.1 for a maximum design grab weight specified and recorded in the Loading Manual. For vessels of deadweight >200 000 tonnes, the design grab weight is not to be less than 25 tonnes.

6. 1. 5 Where the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 11, 6.1 General 6.1.4 are met the descriptive note '**holds suitable for unloading by grabs**' may be employed. Where the design grab weight is 25 tonnes or more the notation '**strengthened for regular discharge by heavy grabs**' may be assigned.

6. 2 Arrangement

6. 2. 1 In way of the cargo hold a centreline girder is to be fitted and side girders spaced not more than 3.8 m apart are generally to be arranged in way of transverse bulkheads. The side girders are to extend at least to the first plate floor adjacent to the bulkhead each side. The outboard side girder is to be continuous, forming the lower part of the longitudinal bulkhead.

6. 2. 2 Plate floors are to be fitted in line with each transverse in the wing tanks and in way of transverse bulkhead stools. Additional floors are to be so arranged that the spacing of floors does not exceed 2.5 m or 0.01L, whichever is the greater.

6. 2. 3 Attention is to be given to structural continuity and alignment between double bottom structure and transverses in wing tanks, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 11, 9.7 Scarfing of double bottom.

6. 2. 4 Alternative arrangements will be considered on the basis of the results of direct calculations.

PART

4

CHAPTER **11 Ore Carriers**

SECTION **7 Longitudinal bulkheads**

7. 1 General

7. 1. 1 The requirements for longitudinal oiltight bulkheads given in Pt 4, Ch 9, 6 Inner hull, inner bottom and longitudinal oiltight bulkheads and Pt 4, Ch 9, 9 Primary members supporting longitudinal framing are to be applied, together with the additional requirements of this Section.

7. 1. 2 Longitudinal bulkhead scantlings are to be additionally assessed against ore loading in accordance with Table 11. 7. 1: Longitudinal and transverse bulkhead scantlings for ore loading.

Table 11. 7. 1: Longitudinal and transverse bulkhead scantlings for ore loading

Item	Longitudinal and transverse bulkhead
Plate thickness including corrugations (mm)	$t = 0.004sf\sqrt{\frac{K_c Hk}{C}} + 3.5$ mm
Modulus of rolled and built stiffeners, and symmetrical corrugations (cm^3)	$Z = \frac{skK_c Hl_e^2}{22C\gamma(\omega_1 + \omega_2 + 2)}\ cm^3$
Symbols	

= s, S, k, l as defined in Pt 4, Ch 1, 1.5 Symbols and definitions 1.5.1

f = $1.1 - s/2500S$ but not to be taken greater than 1.0

l_e = effective length of stiffening member, in metres, and for bulkhead stiffeners, to be taken as $l - e1 - e2$

γ = 1.4 for rolled or built sections and double plate bulkheads

= 1.6 for flat bars

= 1.1 for symmetrical corrugations of deep tank bulkheads

= 1.0 for symmetrical corrugations of watertight bulkheads

ω_e = as defined in Table 1. 9. 3: Bulkhead end constraint factors in Chapter 1, *See also* Figure 1. 9. 1: End connections. Where applicable the value of M_2 is to be taken as

$$= \frac{K_c H s l^2}{22C}$$

K_c = ore pressure coefficient, to be taken as $\cos^2 \alpha + (1 - \sin \psi) \sin^2 \alpha$ for inner side (hopper tank, transverse and longitudinal bulkheads, lower stool, vertical upper stool, etc.), and where:

K_c = 0 for top side tank, upper deck and sloped upper stool یک سطر در Rullوجود دارد

α = angle, in degrees, between panel considered and the horizontal plane

ψ = assumed angle of repose, in degrees, of bulk cargo (considered drained and removed); in the absence of more precise evaluation to be taken as ψ=35° for iron ore

H = height, from position under consideration to deck at side amidships, in metres

C = stowage rate, in m^3/tonne, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 3, 5.2 Symbols. For vessels where Pt 4, Ch 11, 1.1 Application 1.1.5 is applicable, C is to include the cargo overshoot specified in Pt 4, Ch 11, 13.4 Cargo loading conditions for design assessment 13.4.1.e

7. 1. 3 Longitudinal bulkheads on ore carriers are to be plane with rolled or fabricated longitudinal stiffeners. The bulkhead may be sloped to form a hopper shape in the lower part of the hold or over its full depth.

7. 1. 4 Where the upper part of the bulkhead is vertical and the lower part sloped to form a hopper shape, the thickness of the bulkhead plating in way of the knuckle may be required to be increased to resist transverse compressive buckling stresses. The knuckle is to be arranged in way of a longitudinal.

7. 1. 5 The thickness of the lowest strake of sloped bulkhead plating is also to comply with inner bottom requirements as given in Pt 4, Ch 11, 6.1 General 6.1.3. Where this provision results in an increase in thickness, the latter may be gradually tapered above the lowest strake to the required longitudinal bulkhead thickness at the position of the knuckle, or at a point one third of the depth of the bulkhead above the inner bottom, whichever is the lower.

PART

4

CHAPTER **11 Ore Carriers**

SECTION **8 Transverse bulkheads**

8. 1 General

8. 1. 1 Where the form of construction used for transverse bulkheads in wing tanks is different from that used in centre holds, arrangements are to be made to ensure continuity of transverse strength through the longitudinal bulkhead.

8. 2 Transverse watertight bulkheads in wing tanks

8. 2. 1 The requirements for transverse bulkhead plating, stiffening and primary structure given in Pt 4, Ch 1, 9 Bulkheads for deep tank bulkheads are to be applied.

8. 3 Transverse watertight bulkheads in centre holds

8. 3. 1 Scantlings are to comply with Pt 4, Ch 1, 9 Bulkheads and assessed against ore loading in accordance with Table 11. 7. 1: Longitudinal and transverse bulkhead scantlings for ore loading. Transverse corrugated bulkhead scantlings may be determined by direct calculations but are not to be less than required by the watertight bulkhead requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 9 Bulkheads.

8. 3. 2 For ships where the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 11, 3.1 General 3.1.2 are applicable, the requirements for transverse hold bulkheads given for the carriage of dry bulk cargoes in Pt 4, Ch 7, 10 Bulkheads are also to be applied.

8. 3. 3 In general, the bulkheads are to have stiffening or corrugations arranged vertically, supported by top and bottom end stools. Alternative arrangements will, however, be considered.

8. 3. 4 Where inner bottom plating is increased as required by Pt 4, Ch 11, 6.1 General 6.1.4, the lower part of the transverse bulkhead should also be increased in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 9, 8.4 Transverse bulkhead plating 8.4.1.

8. 3. 5 For vessels eligible for the notation **Strengthened to carry cargoes which may liquefy (IMSBC Group A)**, the plate thickness of corrugated bulkheads in any cargo hold shall be determined based on differential pressure between liquefied cargo and dry cargo in the adjacent hold.

8. 4 Non-watertight bulkheads

8. 4. 1 Non-watertight bulkheads in wing tanks are to comply with the requirements given in Pt 4, Ch 9, 8 Non-oiltight bulkheads and Pt 4, Ch 9, 9.8 Primary members supporting non-oiltight bulkheads.

8. 4. 2 The bulkhead plating is to be suitably reinforced in way of double bottom scarfing arrangements and the ends of centre hold deck transverses. Openings in wing tank bulkheads are to be kept clear of these areas.

PART

4

CHAPTER 11 Ore Carriers

SECTION 9 Primary structure in wing tanks

9. 1 Bottom transverses

9. 1. 1 The scantlings of the bottom transverses are to be determined by means of direct calculations or, alternatively, in accordance with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 10, 2.5, Bottom transverses.

9. 2 Side transverses

9. 2. 1 The scantlings of the side transverses are to be determined by means of direct calculations or, alternatively, in accordance with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 10, 2.7 Side transverses.

9. 3 Cross ties in wing tanks

9. 3. 1 Cross ties in wing tanks are to comply with requirements in Pt 4, Ch 9, 9 Primary members supporting longitudinal framing.

9. 3. 2 Cross ties in wing tanks of vessels eligible for the notation **Strengthened to carry cargoes which may liquefy (IMSBC Group A)** are to comply with the requirements in:

- Pt 4, Ch 9, 9.3 Girders and floors in double bottom 9.3.3;
- Pt 4, Ch 9, 9.3 Girders and floors in double bottom 9.3.4; and
- Pt 4, Ch 9, 9.3 Girders and floors in double bottom 9.3.5.
- *ACSPlus Additional Design Guideline (ADG), Guideline for Assessment of Ore Carriers filled with Liquefied Cargoes*.

9. 3. 3 Actual wing tank cross tie area, A_{cl}, in cm^2, is to satisfy:

$$A_{cl} \geq f_{liq} A_c$$

Where

A_c = Area of cross tie, in cm^2, *See* Pt 4, Ch 11, 9.5 Cross-ties 9.5.1

f_{liq} = $0.5 + \frac{f_{lc}}{2.025C}$ and is not to be taken less than 1.0.

Where

C = stowage rate, in m^3/t

The stowage rate is defined in Table 11. 7. 1: Longitudinal and transverse bulkhead scantlings for ore loading but need not take into account the cargo overshoot defined in Pt 4, Ch 11, 13.4 Cargo loading conditions for design assessment 13.4.1.e.

f_p = 1.0

If the cargo density of the intended loading condition is higher than the virtual cargo density , *See* Pt 4, Ch 11, 1.3, Class notation 1.3.4, then f_{lc} is the be taken as (*See also* Pt 4, Ch 11, 1.3, Class notation 1.3.4):

f_p = $\frac{Ch_p\rho_p}{h_c}$ but is not to be taken less than 0.0 and need not be taken greater than 1.0.

Where

ρ_p = the loading condition cargo density (*See* Pt 4, Ch 11, 1.3, Class notation 1.3.4), in t/m^3

h_p = the vertical distance from the centre of the cross tie to the level cargo surface, in m, with the loading condition density in an upright condition. The determination of cargo surface height need not take into account the cargo overshoot defined in Pt 4, Ch 11, 13.4 Cargo loading conditions for design assessment 13.4.1.e.

h_c = the vertical distance from the centre of the cross-ties to deck at side amidships, in metres.

وجود داردRullتعدادی سطر در

9. 3. 4 Cross tie flange thickness t_f, in mm, is not to be less than:

$$t_f \geq \frac{b_f}{24\sqrt{kf_a}}$$

Where

f_a = $\frac{A_{cl}}{f_{liq}A_c}$

A_{cl} = actual wing tank cross tie area, in cm^2

A_c = wing tank cross tie area in cm^2, *See* Pt 4, Ch 11, 9.5 Cross-ties 9.5.1

f_{liq} = scantling factor for cargo with moisture level exceeding TML, *See* Pt 4, Ch 9, 9.3 Girders and floors in double bottom 9.3.3

b_f = flange breadth of cross tie, in mm.

9. 3. 5 Length of cross tie, S_c, as defined in Pt 4, Ch 9, 9.2 Symbols 9.2.1, is to be less than or equal to l_{perm}:

$$S_c \leq l_{perm}$$

Where

l_{perm} = permissible length of cross tie, in metres, from the torsional buckling aspect:

$$= \frac{0.038 b_f \sqrt{kf}}{\sqrt{1 + \frac{d_w t_w}{6 b_f t_f}}}$$

f_a = $\frac{A_{cl}}{f_{liq} A_c}$

A_{cl} = actual wing tank cross tie area, in cm^2

A_c = wing tank cross tie area in cm^2, *See* Pt 4, Ch 11, 9.5 Cross-ties 9.5.1

f_{liq} = scantling factor for cargo with moisture level exceeding TML, *See* Pt 4, Ch 9, 9.3 Girders and floors in double bottom 9.3.3

d_w = web depth of cross tie, in mm

t_w = web thickness of cross tie, in mm

b_f = flange breadth of cross tie, in mm

t_f = flange thickness of cross tie, in mm

9. 4 Deck transverses

9. 4. 1 The scantlings of the deck transverses are to be determined by means of direct calculations or, alternatively, in accordance with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 10, 2.8 Deck transverses.

9. 5 Cross-ties

9. 5. 1 The scantlings and arrangement of the cross-ties are to be determined by means of direct calculations or, alternatively, in accordance with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 9, 9.6, Cross-ties.

9. 6 Primary members supporting bulkheads

9. 6. 1 The scantlings of primary members supporting bulkheads are, in general, to be determined by means of direct calculation, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 11, 9.6 Primary members supporting bulkheads 9.6.3, Pt 4, Ch 11, 9.6 Primary members supporting bulkheads 9.6.4 and Pt 4, Ch 11, 9.6 Primary members supporting bulkheads 9.6.5.

9. 6. 2 Vertical webs are to be arranged in line with deck transverses and the double bottom floors. Particular attention is to be paid to the alignment of the bulkhead web end brackets with the double bottom floors.

9. 6. 3 The section modulus of vertical webs on longitudinal bulkheads is to be as required by Pt 4, Ch 9, 9.7 Primary members supporting oiltight bulkheads 9.7.4.

9. 6. 4 The net sectional area of the web at any section is to be as required by Pt 4, Ch 9, 9.7 Primary members supporting oiltight bulkheads 9.7.5.

9. 6. 5 The moment of inertia of vertical webs on longitudinal bulkheads is to be as required by Pt 4, Ch 9, 9.7 Primary members supporting oiltight bulkheads 9.7.6.

9. 7 Scarfing of double bottom

9. 7. 1 The inner bottom plating is to be extended into the wing tank in the form of a horizontal diaphragm, arranged to ensure a smooth structural transition in way of transverse primary members and to maintain longitudinal continuity. The diaphragms are to be of sufficient width to provide effective scarfing of the inner bottom into the wing tank structure.

9. 7. 2 Floors intermediate between transverses are to be backed in the wing tanks by substantial vertical brackets extending transversely over at least three bottom longitudinal spaces and vertically to a sufficient height above the horizontal diaphragms to provide effective support for the double bottom structure.

9. 8 Construction details and minimum thickness

9. 8. 1 The construction details are to comply with the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 10, 7 Water cooler refrigeration units with the exception of lateral stability of primary members which is to be as required by Pt 4, Ch 9, 10.11 Lateral stability of primary members.

9. 8. 2 The minimum thickness is to be as required by Pt 4, Ch 9, 10.2, Compartment minimum thickness.

PART

4

CHAPTER **11 Ore Carriers**

SECTION **10 Structural details**

10. 1 Intersection of continuous secondary and primary members

10. 1. 1 For vessels eligible for the notation **Strengthened to carry cargoes which may liquefy (IMSBC Group A),** the arrangement at the intersection of longitudinal stiffeners on the longitudinal bulkhead and hopper plate with transverse primary members are to comply with Pt 3, Ch 10, 5.2, Arrangements at intersections of continuous secondary and primary members and Table 10. 5. 1: Total load transmitted to connection of secondary members with K_c=1.0.

PART

4

CHAPTER **11 Ore Carriers**

SECTION **11 Direct calculations**

11. 1 Application

11. 1. 1 Direct calculations are to be employed in the derivation of scantlings where required by the preceding Sections of this Chapter or by related provisions included in Pt 3 Ship Structures (General).

11. 1. 2 Direct calculation methods are also generally to be used where additional calculations are required by the Rules in respect of unusual arrangements.

11. 1. 3 For complex structural arrangements, e.g. a double plate transverse bulkhead with stool in a centre hold, associated with plane wing tank bulkheads supported by stringers and buttresses, an investigation of bottom primary structure over a full cargo hold length and three-dimensional analysis of the transverse bulkhead structure will generally be required, taking account of applied longitudinal hull bending effects.

11. 1. 4 The cross-deck structure is to be verified as being capable of supporting transverse compressive stresses resulting from lightship weight, deadweight, hydrostatic and wave loads. For ore carriers that are designed to operate with an asymmetrical loading condition, or large ore carriers with $B \geq 40$ m or $b/w \geq 2.2$, the wave loads should take account of hydrodynamic torque in an oblique sea. The cross-deck structure is to comprise the hatch coamings and beams, the plating and attached stiffeners and the upper stool. Non-corrugated bulkhead plating may also be included

where

B = moulded breadth, in metres

b = breadth of the deck hatch openings, in metres

w = width of the cross-deck strip between hatchways, in metres.

11. 2 Procedures

11. 2. 1 For details of ACS's direct calculation procedures, *See* Pt 3, Ch 1, 2 Direct calculations. For requirements concerning use of other calculation procedures, *See* Pt 3, Ch 1, 3 Equivalents.

11. 2. 2 Where appropriate to the structural configuration, the direct calculation procedures for tanker primary structure, *See* Pt 4, Ch 9, 14 Direct calculations, will be adapted for application to ore carriers.

PART

4

CHAPTER **11 Ore Carriers**

SECTION **12 Forecastles**

12. 1 General

12. 1. 1 A forecastle is to be fitted in accordance with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 7, 14 Forecastles.

PART

4

CHAPTER **11 Ore Carriers**

SECTION **13 Single pass loading**

13. 1 Scope and application

13. 1. 1 The requirements of this Section are to be applied to all ore carriers with a deadweight greater than 200 000 tonnes. The requirements are for single pass loading where the maximum permissible cargo intake per cargo hold may be loaded in a single loading pour.

13. 2 Information required

13. 2. 1 In addition to the plans required for submission by Pt 3, Ch 1, 5.2 Plans and supporting calculations and as detailed in the applicable Chapters, the following information is also to be submitted:

a. Maximum permissible cargo in each cargo hold.

b. Cargo mass curves for a single and adjacent hold loadings taking into account the cargo overshoot defined in Pt 4, Ch 11, 13.4 Cargo loading conditions for design assessment 13.4.1.e.

c. One or more cargo loading sequences intended for single pass loading, *See* Pt 4, Ch 11, 13.2, Information required 13.2.2.

d. Details of ballast and deballast piping arrangements and pumping capacity.

e. Specification of loading computer.

13. 2. 2 The cargo loading sequences as required by Pt 4, Ch 11, 13.2 Information required 13.2.1.c are to include the following:

a. Start and end times of each cargo pour and the intended loading rate.

b. Start and end times of each deballasting operation and the intended discharge rate.

c. Intermediate points (in time) during pours and between pours. In general, the interval between intermediate points is not to be greater than 1 hour.

d. The ship's loading condition, including the ship's draughts at the fore and aft perpendiculars, amount of cargo in each hold and amount of ballast in each tank, and the still water bending moments and shear forces, are to be provided for each point (in time) of the loading operation specified in Pt 4, Ch 11, 13.2, Information required 13.2.2, Pt 4, Ch 11, 13.2 Information required 13.2.2.b and Pt 4, Ch 11, 13.2 Information required 13.2.2.c.

13. 3 Definitions

13. 3. 1 **Pour**. A pour is defined by the start and finish of loading of a cargo hold. A pour finishes when the loading equipment changes position to a new cargo hold.

13. 3. 2 **Overshooting**. Overshooting is to be taken as the consequence of mistiming the loading of cargo, resulting in cargo overloading.

13. 4 Cargo loading conditions for design assessment

13. 4. 1 For the purpose of the design assessment, the following conditions are assumed:

a. Cargo loading and deballasting operations are coordinated, with the deballast capacity and arrangement of the vessel designed to accommodate the specified loading sequences.

b. The cargo is distributed symmetrically in a hold space.

c. Deballasting is carried out for each pair of symmetrical port and starboard tanks simultaneously, so that each pair of symmetrical port and starboard ballast tanks contain equal amounts of water ballast throughout deballasting operations.

d. To improve deballasting and stripping, the trim of the ship is to be, in general, by the stern throughout the cargo loading operation.

e. A cargo overshoot per cargo hold is taken as 10 per cent of the maximum permissible hold cargo mass or 3000 tonnes, whichever is the lesser, but not less than 5 per cent of the maximum permissible hold cargo weight, in any case. A higher cargo overshoot may be specially considered.

f. Loading more than one cargo hold simultaneously in a single pass, i.e. simultaneous filling of two or more holds, will be specially considered. The specific loading conditions are to be submitted for appraisal in addition to the condition(s) for standard single-pass loading.

13. 5 Design assessment

13. 5. 1 The following criteria are to be complied with in all cargo loading sequences:

a. Still water bending moment and shear force are within the allowable limits.

b. Single hold loading is within the allowable hold mass curve.

c. Two adjacent holds loading are within the allowable hold mass curve.

13. 5. 2 Arrangements and scantlings of local stiffeners and plating within the cargo hold region are to comply with Pt 4, Ch 11, 1 General to Pt 4, Ch 11, 12 Forecastles with consideration of the maximum permissible cargo mass per hold in the loading manual and the cargo overshoot specified in Pt 4, Ch 11, 13.4 Cargo loading conditions for design assessment 13.4.1.e.

13. 5. 3 The primary structure and plating within the cargo hold region are to be assessed in accordance with the *ACSPlus SDA Guideline for Ore Carriers*.

13. 6 Ballast arrangements

13. 6. 1 The deballasting capacity of the vessel, including arrangement of ballast tanks, pumps and relevant piping system, is to be sufficient for the loading operations as agreed in the approved loading plan.

13. 6. 2 A smaller diameter stripping system with separate main and branch lines may need to be provided in order to achieve the required deballasting capacity.

13. 7 Loading manual

13. 7. 1 All loading sequences of single pass loading, maximum loading rates and ballast pumping details are to be submitted for approval and included in the Loading Manual. Loading conditions at intermediate points as described in Pt 4, Ch 11, 13.2 Information required 13.2.2.c need not be included in the Loading Manual.

13. 8 Loading computer

13. 8. 1 The ship is to be installed with sensors for remote measurement of water ballast, fuel oil and ship's draughts.

13. 8. 2 In addition, it is recommended that an interface with the onboard loading computer, connecting to the installed sensors detailed in Pt 4, Ch 11, 13.8 Loading computer 13.8.1, is to be provided to check the ship's condition during loading and unloading.

PART

4

CHAPTER **12 Dredging and Reclamation Craft**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**1922**
	1. 1	Application	1922
	1. 2	Stability	1923
	1. 3	Class notations	1923
	1. 4	Information required	1924
	1. 5	Symbols	1925
	1. 6	Requirements for dredgers operating at reduced freeboards	1926
SECTION 2	**Longitudinal strength**		**1927**
	2. 1	General	1927
	2. 2	Loading conditions	1927
	2. 3	Hull bending strength	1927
	2. 4	Design vertical wave bending moments	1928
	2. 5	Permissible still water bending moment for dredging conditions	1928
	2. 6	Calculation of hull section modulus	1928
	2. 7	Hull shear strength	1929
SECTION 3	**Deck structure**		**1930**
	3. 1	Deck plating	1930
	3. 2	Deck stiffening	1930
	3. 3	zeck supporting structure	1930
SECTION 4	**Shell envelope plating**		**1931**
	4. 1	Keel	1931
	4. 2	Bottom shell	1931
	4. 3	Operating aground	1931
	4. 4	Bottom openings	1931
	4. 5	Ships with chines	1932
	4. 6	Side shell	1932

4. 7 Swim ends 1932
SECTION 5 Shell envelope framing 1933
5. 1 Longitudinal stiffening 1933
5. 2 Transverse stiffening 1933
5. 3 Primary supporting structure at sides 1933
SECTION 6 Bottom structure 1936
6. 1 General 1936
6. 2 Single bottoms transversely framed 1936
6. 3 Single bottoms longitudinally framed 1936
6. 4 Double bottom - General 1937
6. 5 Double bottom with transverse framing 1937
6. 6 Double bottom with longitudinal framing 1938
SECTION 7 Bottom strengthening for operating aground 1939
7. 1 Application 1939
SECTION 8 Spoil space and well structure 1941
8. 1 Symbols and definitions 1941
8. 2 General 1941
8. 3 Spoil space and well boundaries 1942
8. 4 Cross members 1944
8. 5 Pillars within hoppers 1945
8. 6 Continuous coamings 1945
SECTION 9 Watertight bulkheads 1947
9. 1 Arrangements of bulkheads 1947
SECTION 10 Exposed casings 1948
10. 1 Scantlings and access 1948
SECTION 11 Dredging machinery seats and dredging gear 1949
11. 1 Dredging machinery seats 1949
11. 2 Dredging gear 1949
SECTION 12 Ladder wells 1950
12. 1 Transverse strength at deck 1950
SECTION 13 Fenders 1951
13. 1 Fenders and reinforcement in way 1951
SECTION 14 Rudders 1952
14. 1 Rudders on bucket dredgers 1952
SECTION 15 Spoil space weirs and overflows 1953
15. 1 General 1953

SECTION 16 Scuppers and sanitary discharges and side scuttles 1954
16. 1 General 1954
SECTION 17 Split hopper dredgers and barges 1955
17. 1 Symbols and definitions 1955
17. 2 Hull bending strength 1955
17. 3 Separation arrangements 1956
17. 4 Hinge pins 1958
SECTION 18 Direct calculations 1959
18. 1 Application 1959
18. 2 Procedures 1959

PART

4

CHAPTER **12 Dredging and Reclamation Craft**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 12. 2. 1: Ship service factors f_1 and f_{wd} 1928
Table 12. 5. 1: Longitudinal stiffening 1933
Table 12. 5. 2: Primary supporting structure at sides 1934
Table 12. 7. 1: Bottom strengthening for operating aground 1939
Table 12. 8. 1: Effective specific gravity 1941
Table 12. 8. 2: Definition of c for longitudinal framing 1943

PART

4

CHAPTER **12 Dredging and Reclamation Craft**

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 12. 17. 1: Split hulled vessels 1957
Figure 12. 17. 2: Split hopper dredger 1957

PART

4

CHAPTER 12 Dredging and Reclamation Craft

SECTION 1 General

1. 1 Application

1. 1. 1 This Chapter applies, in general, to manned or unmanned self-propelled or non-self-propelled ships defined as follows:

a. Dredgers designed to operate wholly or generally for the purpose of raising spoil such as mud, silt, gravel, clay, sand or similar substances, general rubbish or ore, minerals, etc. for the bed of the sea, rivers, lakes, canals or harbours, etc. The dredged material may be placed in suitably designed holds or similar spaces within the ship.

b. Hopper dredgers, designed to raise spoil, as described in Pt 4, Ch 12, 1.1, Application 1.1.1, and so arranged that the dredged material may be placed in one or more hoppers within the ship. For the purpose of this definition, a hopper is a hold or other space designed to carry dredged spoil and also arranged to enable such spoil to be discharged through doors or valves in the bottom of the ship. Spaces arranged to be unloaded by means of conveyor belts, suction pipes or similar gear are not to be regarded as hoppers unless adequate bottom doors or valves are also fitted.

c. Split hopper dredgers, which are designed similarly to that described in Pt 4, Ch 12, 1.1 Application 1.1.1.b but arranged such that the spoil is discharged through the bottom of the ship by means of the split hull being separated using hinges and actuating devices.

d. Reclamation craft, reclamation ships, etc. which work in a manner similar to dredgers but draw their spoil from dredging craft and discharge it ashore.

e. Hopper barges designed to carry spoil or dredged material in hoppers within the ship. For the definition of a hopper, *See* Pt 4, Ch 12, 1.1 Application 1.1.1.b.

f. Split hopper barges, which are designed similarly to that described in Pt 4, Ch 12, 1.1 Application 1.1.1.e but arranged such that the spoil is discharged through the bottom of the ship by means of the split hull being separated using hinges and actuating devices.

1. 1. 2 The scantlings and arrangements are to be as required by Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships, except as otherwise specified in this Chapter.

1. 1. 3 Where bottom dump doors or valves are fitted, hatch covers are not required. Proposals for the omission of hatch covers where bottom dump doors or valves are not fitted will be specially considered.

1. 1. 4 Ships which have their machinery placed on a shallow raft, rather than within a hull, will have their scantlings specially considered. Dredgers which resemble drilling rigs, or similar offshore structures, in their design or mode of operation will be considered under the Rules for such structures.

1. 1. 5 Ships of unusual form or proportions, or intended for unusual dredging methods, will receive individual consideration on the basis of the general standards of the Rules.

1. 1. 6 The requirements provide for transverse and longitudinal framing of the structure. In general, the midship region scantlings are to extend over the full length of hoppers and holds. The extent is to be not less than 0.4L amidships, and may need to be increased if the design and loading conditions of a particular ship result in its maximum bending moment occurring other than at amidships.

1. 2 Stability

1. 2. 1 Attention is drawn to the thixotropic properties of certain types of dredged material which, as a result of the ship's motions, can cause the spoil to shift within spoil spaces, resulting in undesirable changes in trim or angles of heel. This can be particularly dangerous in ships with closed top spaces.

1. 3 Class notations

1. 3. 1 In general, ships complying with the requirements of this Chapter will be eligible for one of the following classes:

a. **100A1 dredger**. This class will be assigned to ships as defined in Pt 4, Ch 12, 1.1, Application 1.1.1.

b. **100A1 hopper dredger**. This class will be assigned to ships as defined in Pt 4, Ch 12, 1.1 Application 1.1.1.b.

c. **100A1 split hopper dredger**. This class will be assigned to ships as defined in Pt 4, Ch 12, 1.1 Application 1.1.1.c

d. **100A1 reclamation craft**. This class will be assigned to ships as defined in Pt 4, Ch 12, 1.1 Application 1.1.1.d.

e. **100A1 hopper barge**. This class will be assigned to ships as defined in Pt 4, Ch 12, 1.1 Application 1.1.1.e.

f. **100A1 split hopper barge**. This class will be assigned to ships as defined in Pt 4, Ch 12, 1.1 Application 1.1.1.f.

1. 3. 2 The class notations will be assigned to ships based on the following:

a. The class notations in Pt 4, Ch 12, 1.3, Class notations 1.3.1 will be assigned to ships which are intended to make unrestricted sea-going voyages, either as part of their work or while transferring from one work area to another as part of their normal operations and have also been designed to perform dredging operations in defined dredging service areas.

b. Where dredger types listed in Pt 4, Ch 12, 1.3 Class notations 1.3.1.a, Pt 4, Ch 12, 1.3 Class notations 1.3.1.b and Pt 4, Ch 12, 1.3 Class notations 1.3.1.c perform dredging operations at reduced freeboards, resulting in a dredging draught (T_m) greater than the summer draught and without a dredging service area restriction, the class notation will be extended as follows: **'dredging draught T_m of … metres in sea states with H_s <... metres'** and will be subject to special requirements of National Authorities, *See* Pt 4, Ch 12, 1.6 Requirements for dredgers operating at reduced freeboards 1.6.1.

c. Where dredger types listed in Pt 4, Ch 12, 1.3 Class notations 1.3.1.a, Pt 4, Ch 12, 1.3 Class notations 1.3.1.b and Pt 4, Ch 12, 1.3 Class notations 1.3.1.c perform dredging operations at reduced freeboards, resulting in a dredging draught (T_m) greater than the summer draught but with a dredging service area limited to within 21 nautical miles from shore, the class notation will be extended as follows: **'dredging within 21 miles from shore at a dredging draught T_m of … metres'** and will be subject to special requirements of National Authorities, *See* Pt 4, Ch 12, 1.6 Requirements for dredgers operating at reduced freeboards 1.6.1 and Pt 4, Ch 12, 1.6 Requirements for dredgers operating at reduced freeboards 1.6.2.

d. Where requested, the assignment of more than one dredging draught may be considered, i.e. **'dredging at draught T_{m1}…'** and **'dredging at draught T_{m2}…'** , etc. provided agreement is

obtained from the National Authorities and the applicable requirements of this Chapter are complied with.

1. 3. 3 Ships intended to be operated only in suitable areas or conditions which have been agreed by the Committee, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.6, Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.7, Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.8 and Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.10, will receive individual consideration on the basis of the Rules with respect to the environmental conditions agreed for the design basis and approval. In particular, dredgers complying with the requirements of this Chapter and Pt 3, Ch 13, 7 Equipment for the reduced equipment requirements, will be eligible to be classed:

a. **A1 dredger protected waters service**, *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.6, or **100A1 dredger with service restriction notation**.

whichever is applicable. Hopper dredgers, split hopper dredgers, reclamation craft, hopper barges and split hopper barges would be considered similarly.

1. 3. 4 Where a ship complying with the requirements of this Chapter has the bottom structure additionally strengthened for operating aground in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 12, 7 Bottom strengthening for operating aground, it will be eligible for the special feature notation `bottom strengthened for operating aground'.

1. 3. 5 In addition to the above notations, an appropriate descriptive note may be entered in the *Register Book* indicating the type of dredging or reclamation craft (*See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.6 Class notations (refrigerated cargo installations (RMC), controlled atmosphere (CA) systems and carriage of refrigerated containers (CRC)) 2.6.1), e.g. `trailing suction dredger', `cutter suction dredger', `bucket dredger', `grab dredger', `dipper dredger', `self-discharging sand dredger', etc.

1. 3. 6 The Regulations for classification and assignment of class notations are given in Pt 1, Ch 2 Classification Regulations to which reference should be made.

1. 4 Information required

1. 4. 1 In addition to the information and plans required by Pt 3, Ch 1, 5 Information required details of the following are to be submitted:

- Sections through hoppers, wells, pump-rooms and dredging machinery spaces.
- Hopper, hold and well bulkheads and associated weirs.
- Scarfing arrangements at hopper, hold and well ends.
- Hinges, actuating and locking arrangements, together with supporting structure, weld connection details and calculations of design forces for split hull separation devices.
- Deckhouse and deckhouse support structure.
- Outline arrangement and main scantlings of `A' frames, gantries, positioning spuds, hopper doors and similar items, the strength and integrity of which directly affect the hull structure of the vessel. Support structure in way of `A' frames, positioning spuds and other dredging structures. Seats of dredging machinery and pumps. If dredging equipment is stored during voyages, plans of any special arrangements for dismantling, storage and reassembly. Sufficient particulars of static and dynamic loading for these items are to accompany the details to enable verification of the strength and effectiveness of the supporting ship structure.
- A full set of stability data which is to be placed on board the ship, *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 3 Surveys - General.
- Calculations of hull girder still water bending moment and shear force where applicable, *See* Pt 4, Ch 12, 2.1 General 2.1.1, for the proposed loading conditions, including densities of

spoil. When the still water bending moment and block coefficient are being calculated, any water within spoil spaces should be regarded as added weight, whilst that in dredging ladder wells and spud wells should be regarded as lost buoyancy.

1. 5 Symbols

1. 5. 1 The following symbols and definitions are applicable to this Chapter unless otherwise stated:

B = breadth, in metres, defined as the greatest moulded breadth excluding any localised bulge on the hull associated with the attachment or handling of the dredging gear

C_b = the moulded block coefficient at draught T but is to be taken as not less than 0.6. The block coefficient is to be determined using the length, L. Spoil spaces should be regarded as added weight, whilst dredging ladder wells and spud wells should be regarded as lost buoyancy

C_{bm} = the moulded block coefficient at the dredging draught T_m, but is to be taken as not less than 0.6. The block coefficient is to be determined using length, L. Spoil spaces should be regarded as added weight, whilst dredging ladder wells and spud wells should be regarded as lost buoyancy

D = moulded depth, in metres, to the uppermost continuous deck

L = Rule length, in metres, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6 Definitions for ships classed for unrestricted service. For ships classed **A1 protected waters service** where the load waterline is not required to be determined by the International Load Line Convention method, the length is to be measured on the deepest waterline at which the ship is designed to operate. On sea-going vessels with unusual stern arrangement, or with unusual bow arrangement associated with a dredging draught in excess of the summer load line draught, the length, L, will be specially considered

M_s = design still water bending moment, in kNm, at draught, T, or less

$\overline{M_s}$ = maximum permissible still water bending moment, in kNm, at draught, T, or less

M_{sm} = design still water bending moment, in kNm, under dredging conditions at draught, T_m

$\overline{M_{sm}}$ = maximum permissible still water bending moment, in kNm, under dredging conditions at draught, T_m

M_w = design hull vertical wave bending moment amidships, in kN m, *See* Pt 4, Ch 12, 2.4 Design vertical wave bending moments 2.4.1

T = summer draught, in metres, as established by the method described in the International Load Line Convention, measured from top of keel amidships

T_m = maximum dredging draught, in metres, at which the ship is designed to operate. It is to be measured amidships from the top of keel and is to be taken not less than T, *See* Pt 4, Ch 12, 15.1 General 15.1.4

ρ = relative density (specific gravity) which, in general, is to be taken not less than 1.86, or as derived from the stowage rate of spoil. This stowage rate of dredged spoil is to be determined from the maximum spoil weight at dredging draught and volume of spoil space up to the sill of the uppermost overflow weir. The value used in the calculations of scantlings is to be clearly marked on the relevant plans

Hogging bending moments are positive.

1. 5. 2 For symbols not defined in this Chapter, *See* Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships.

1. 6 Requirements for dredgers operating at reduced freeboards

1. 6. 1 Requirements of IMO DR 68 *Guidelines for the Operation of Dredgers at Reduced Freeboards* are to be complied with.

1. 6. 2 The dredger is to be of a self discharging type and equipped with bottom valves. When the ship is operating at a reduced freeboard, i.e. 1/2 or 1/3 of its summer freeboard, the capacity of these bottom valves, or a part thereof, is to be sufficient to obtain the summer freeboard by discharging the appropriate amount of cargo within 8 minutes (IMO DR 68 refers).

1. 6. 3 Where the class notation **'dredging draft T_m of … metres in sea states with H_s<… metres'** is assigned, the Master is to be provided with suitable information on the actual situation of the sea conditions and the forecast in terms of significant wave heights.

PART

4

CHAPTER 12 Dredging and Reclamation Craft

SECTION 2 Longitudinal strength

2. 1 General

2. 1. 1 Longitudinal strength calculations are to be made in accordance with the relevant requirements given in Pt 3, Ch 4 Longitudinal Strength, except as indicated in this Section.

2. 2 Loading conditions

2. 2. 1 Details are to be submitted of the following loading conditions for examination of longitudinal strength:

a. Homogeneous load conditions (including details of densities of spoil) for both departure and arrival at draught, T, and maximum dredging draught, T_m, where this exceeds T, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 12, 15.1 General 15.1.4.

b. Part loaded conditions (including details of densities of spoil) and ballast conditions for both departure and arrival.

c. Any specified non-homogeneous load conditions.

2. 2. 2 If any dredging equipment has to be unshipped, lowered or otherwise specially arranged or stowed before the ship proceeds on a sea-going voyage, this fact is to be indicated on the longitudinal strength information required to be submitted and is also to be clearly stated in the final Loading Manual supplied to the ship.

2. 2. 3 For loading conditions, and any other preparations required to permit ships with a notation specifying some service limitation to undertake a sea-going voyage, either from port or building to service area or from one service area to another, *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 1 Conditions for classification.

2. 2. 4 Where a ship is arranged with two spoil spaces account is to be taken in the calculation of the still water bending moment of either one of these spaces being empty, unless such loading is specifically precluded in the Loading Manual supplied to the ship.

2. 2. 5 The requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4, 8.3 Loading instrument regarding loading instruments are not applicable to dredging and reclamation craft.

2. 3 Hull bending strength

2. 3. 1 Hull bending strength standards are to comply with the relevant requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4 Longitudinal Strength, taking account of the contents of Pt 4, Ch 12, 2.4, Design vertical wave bending moments and Pt 4, Ch 12, 2.5 Permissible still water bending moment for dredging conditions.

2. 3. 2 For split hopper dredgers or barges, due account is to be taken of the lateral forces and moments on each half hull which are exerted by the pressure of the spoil and dynamic wave loading, *See* Pt 4, Ch 12, 17.2 Hull bending strength.

2. 4 Design vertical wave bending moments

2. 4. 1 For the transit conditions at draught T, the design vertical wave bending moment at amidships, M_w, is to be determined from Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.2, Design vertical wave bending moments with the ship service factor, f_1, given in Table 12. 2. 1: Ship service factors f1 and fwd.

2. 4. 2 For the dredging conditions at draught T_m, the design hull vertical wave bending moment at amidships, M_{wd}, is given by the following expression:

$$M_{wd} = f_{wd} f_2 M_{wo}$$

where
T_m is the dredging draught and is not to be taken less than draught, T
M_{wo} is determined from Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.2, Design vertical wave bending moments, using C_{bm} in place of C_b
f_2 is given in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.2, Design vertical wave bending moments
f_1 and f_{wd} are defined in Table 12. 2. 1: Ship service factors f1 and fwd.

Table 12. 2. 1: Ship service factors f_1 and f_{wd}

Class Notation	f_1	f_{wd}
+100A1…, dredging draught T_m of … metres in sea states with H_s <... metres	1.00	f_{uds}
+100 A1…, dredging within 21 miles from shore at a dredging draught T_m of … metres	0.75	0.60
+A1…, Protected waters service	0.65	0.35
Symbols		
f_{uds} = $2.2H_sL^{-0.48}$, not to be taken less than 0.35 nor greater than 1 H_s = significant wave height for the dredging operations at the considered dredging draught T_m		
Note The wave reduction factors may only be used for dredgers complying with the applicable requirements of Pt 4, Ch 12, 1.6 Requirements for dredgers operating at reduced freeboards 1.6.1.		

2. 5 Permissible still water bending moment for dredging conditions

2. 5. 1 The maximum permissible still water bending moment, M_{sm} , for dredging conditions where draught T_m exceeds T is not to exceed:

$$|\bar{M}_{sm}| = |\bar{M}_s + f_L f_2 M_{wo} - M_{wd}| \; kN\,m$$

where M_{wd} is defined in Pt 4, Ch 12, 2.4 Design vertical wave bending moments 2.4.2.
Where applicable, the relevant loading conditions are to be included in the final Loading Manual, *See* Pt 4, Ch 12, 15.1 General 15.1.4 and Pt 3, Ch 4, 8.1 General.

2. 6 Calculation of hull section modulus

2. 6. 1 The hull midship section modulus is to be calculated in accordance with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 3, 3.4, Calculation of hull section modulus taking account of Pt 4, Ch 12, 2.6 Calculation of

hull section modulus 2.6.2 and Pt 4, Ch 12, 2.6 Calculation of hull section modulus 2.6.3. *See also* Pt 4, Ch 12, 17.1 Symbols and definitions for split hull arrangements.

2. 6. 2 Centreline box keels within the hopper spaces may normally be regarded as 100 per cent effective provided that they are effectively scarfed to the vertical keels or equivalent structure at each end of the hopper spaces.

2. 6. 3 Where a long superstructure or deckhouse is fitted extending within the midship region, the requirements for longitudinal strength in the hull and erection will be specially considered.

2. 7 Hull shear strength

2. 7. 1 Special attention is to be paid to the actual shear forces at the spoil space end bulkheads. The inclusion of the effective thickness of longitudinal bulkheads, centre box keel plating and other longitudinal material at these positions, will be considered in relation to the arrangement of structure proposed.

2. 7. 2 For ships classed **A1 protected waters service**, *See* Pt 4, Ch 12, 4.6 Side shell 4.6.1.

2. 7. 3 The vertical wave shear forces, Q_w, are to be calculated in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 4, 6 Hull shear strength. In dredging conditions, where the dredging draught T_m is greater than T, K_2 may be taken as f_{wd}.

PART

4

CHAPTER 12 Dredging and Reclamation Craft

SECTION 3 Deck structure

3. 1 Deck plating

3. 1. 1 Dredgers, hopper dredgers and hopper barges classed for unrestricted service are to have the minimum thicknesses required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 4 Deck structure increased by 2 mm for those areas of the strength deck outside line of openings which are exposed to the weather.

3. 1. 2 Ships classed **100A1 extended protected waters service** are to have the minimum thicknesses required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 4 Deck structure for all strength deck plating outside line of openings. The minimum value of s, used in the formulae, may be taken as 550 mm.

3. 1. 3 Ships classed **A1 protected waters service** may have the minimum thicknesses as given in Pt 4, Ch 1, 4 Deck structure for all strength deck plating outside line of openings reduced by 1 mm, with an overall minimum of 5 mm. The minimum value of s, used in the formulae, may be taken as 550 mm.

3. 1. 4 Strength deck plating within the line of openings in the midship region, and for $0.075L$ from the ends, is to have a thickness not less than:

$$t = 0.01s \text{ mm}$$

3. 1. 5 The deck plating thickness and supporting structure may be required to be reinforced in those areas of deck which are liable to be subjected to regular, heavy, impact loads such as could occur when maintaining or inspecting large items of dredging gear, etc. It is recommended that consideration be given to increasing the plating thickness in these areas to:

$$t = 0.02s \text{ mm}$$

$$= \text{with a minimum}$$

$$t = 10 \text{ mm}$$

3. 2 Deck stiffening

3. 2. 1 The scantlings of deck beams or longitudinals are to comply with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 4.3 Deck stiffening.

3. 3 zeck supporting structure

3. 3. 1 The scantlings of the deck supporting structure are to comply with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 4.4, Deck supporting structure.

PART

4

CHAPTER **12 Dredging and Reclamation Craft**

SECTION **4 Shell envelope plating**

4. 1 Keel

4. 1. 1 On ships over 50 m in length, where there is a centreline well, or where hopper doors are fitted on the ship's centreline, i.e. where no centreline box keel is fitted in a hopper, a keel strake is to be fitted on each side of the well or hopper door opening, dependent upon the proposed docking arrangements for the ship. The width of each keel strake is to be not less than half that required for a centreline keel nor less than 400 mm. The thickness of each keel strake is to be not less than the thickness required for a centreline keel in Pt 4, Ch 1, 5.2 Keel.

4. 2 Bottom shell

4. 2. 1 The minimum thickness of bottom shell plating amidships on hopper dredgers and hopper barges classed for unrestricted service is to be 15 per cent greater than that required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 5.3 Bottom shell and bilge. The thickness of bottom shell plating on ships classed **A1 protected waters service** is to be not less than:

$$t = (5sL\sqrt{D} \times 10^{-5} + 5)\text{mm}$$

or that required for Pt 4, Ch 1, 5.3 Bottom shell and bilge, whichever is the lesser, but with an overall minimum thickness of 6 mm.

4. 2. 2 Where hoppers extend outside $0.4L$ amidships, the thicknesses required for the bottom shell amidships are to be maintained for at least two frame spaces beyond the ends of the hoppers before being tapered to the end thicknesses.

4. 3 Operating aground

4. 3. 1 For ships intended to operate aground, *See* Pt 4, Ch 12, 7 Bottom strengthening for operating aground.

4. 4 Bottom openings

4. 4. 1 The corners of hopper door openings and of bucket and ladder wells are generally to be parabolic or elliptical on all ships where L is greater than 50 m, and should generally be rounded on smaller ships. On ships where L is greater than 90 m, the arrangement of hopper and well corners within $0.5L$ amidships should generally be as required for deck hatch corners. The sealing arrangements for hopper doors may lie within the line of the corners, provided that the construction is such as to avoid high stress concentrations in the structure.

4. 5 Ships with chines

4. 5. 1 On ships arranged with two chines each side, the bilge plating should generally be calculated from the bottom plating formulae. On hard chine ships, flanged chines will not generally be approved, but where a chine is formed by knuckling the shell plating, the radius of curvature, measured on the inside of the plate, is to be not less than 10 times the plate thickness. Where a solid round chine bar is fitted, the bar diameter is to be not less than 50 mm or three times the thickness of the thickest abutting plate, whichever is the greater. Where welded chines are used, the welding is to be built up as necessary to ensure that the shell plating thickness is maintained across the weld.

4. 6 Side shell

4. 6. 1 The thickness of the side shell is to be in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 1, 5.4 Side shell. On ships classed **A1 protected waters service** the thickness of the side shell throughout, including at ends, may be reduced by 20 per cent from that required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 5.4 Side shell and Pt 3, Ch 5 Fore End Structure and Pt 3, Ch 6 Aft End Structure as appropriate, provided that the combined shear stress does not exceed 110 N/mm^2.

4. 6. 2 Where high compressive loads occur in the sheerstrake, the thickness may be required to be increased to minimise the likelihood of buckling.

4. 7 Swim ends

4. 7. 1 The plating of swim ends is to have a thickness not less than that required for the bottom shell up to the waterline at draught T, *See also* Table 12. 7. 1: Bottom strengthening for operating aground. It is to have a thickness not less than that required for side shell in the areas more than 1.0 m above the waterline at draught T_m. In intermediate areas the thickness may be tapered from the bottom to the side shell requirements.

PART

4

CHAPTER **12 Dredging and Reclamation Craft**

SECTION **5 Shell envelope framing**

5. 1 Longitudinal stiffening

5. 1. 1 The scantlings of bottom and side shell longitudinals are to comply with the requirements given in Table 12. 5. 1: Longitudinal stiffening.

5. 1. 2 For ships intended to operate aground, *See* Pt 4, Ch 12, 7 Bottom strengthening for operating aground.

5. 2 Transverse stiffening

5. 2. 1 For bottom structure with transverse framing, *See* Pt 4, Ch 12, 6 Bottom structure.

5. 2. 2 For ships intended to operate aground, *See* Pt 4, Ch 12, 7 Bottom strengthening for operating aground.

5. 2. 3 The scantlings of side frames amidships are to be in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 1, 6 Shell envelope framing for ships classed for unrestricted service or **100A1 extended protected waters service**. The modulus of side frames may be reduced by eight per cent for ships classed **A1 protected waters service**.

5. 3 Primary supporting structure at sides

5. 3. 1 The spacing of transverses supporting side longitudinals is generally to be in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 1, 6.4 Primary supporting structure, but is not to exceed 4.0 m.

5. 3. 2 Transverses supporting side longitudinals are to comply with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 6.4 Primary supporting structure, except for ships classed with a service restriction notation and all ships classed **A1 protected waters service**, where the requirements are given in Table 12. 5. 2: Primary supporting structure at sides.

5. 3. 3 In way of transverse framing, web frames may be required in way of hopper cross members. Alternative arrangements may be submitted for consideration.

5. 3. 4 The end connections of side transverses and web frames to deck and bottom transverses abreast of spoil spaces are to be arranged to prevent shear buckling of the members' webs.

5. 3. 5 For wash bulkheads fitted in lieu of web frames abreast spoil spaces, *See* Pt 4, Ch 12, 8.3 Spoil space and well boundaries 8.3.6.

Table 12. 5. 1: Longitudinal stiffening

Position of longitudinals	Modulus

(1) Bottom	$Z = \frac{l_e^2 sHkc}{K_1} cm^3$ **Where** l_e = effective span of longitudinals, in metres, and is to be taken as not less than 1.85m except as provided for in Pt 4, Ch 12, 6.3 Single bottoms longitudinally framed 6.3.1
	= In way of single bottoms
	$H = D$
	= In way of double bottoms
	$H = D$ on ships classed **100A1** or **100A1 extended protected waters service**
	= T_m for ships classed **A1 protected waters service**
	c = a factor varying from 1.0 at $\frac{D}{2}$ to $\frac{2060}{3620-1560F_B}$ at bottom, intermediate values by interpolation. For ships with hogging still water bending moments in loaded conditions and for split hull vessels, c=1.0
	F_B = as defined in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.1 Symbols
	K_1 = 120 on ships classed **100A1** or **100A1 extended protected waters service**
	= 150 on ships classed **A1 protected waters service**
	k = higher tensile steel factor, *See* Pt 3, Ch 2, 1 Materials of construction
(2) Side shell	(a) For ships classed **100A1** or **100A1 extended protected waters service** The minimum modulus of side longitudinals is to be in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 1, 6.2, Longitudinal stiffening. (b) For ships classed **A1 protected waters service** The modulus required by (a) and reduced by 5 per cent
(3) Bilge	The scantlings of bilge longitudinals are to be graduated between those required for the bottom longitudinals and the lowest side longitudinals

Table 12. 5. 2: Primary supporting structure at sides

Symbols	Item	Requirement
h= vertical distance from mid-point of span to deck at side, in metres		All ships classed

l_e=	effective length of supporting member, in metres, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3 Structural idealisation	Transverses supporting side longitudinals amidships	**100A1 extended protected waters service**: $Z = 9.5Shl_e^2$ cm^3
			All ships classed **A1 protected waters service:** $Z = 9.0She^2$ cm^3
I=	moment of inertia of supporting member, in cm^4, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3 Structural idealisation		
S=	spacing, or mean spacing, of supporting member, in metres	Transverses and web frames supporting side longitudinals abreast of spoil spaces	Inertia of not less than: $I = 2.5l_eZ$ cm^4
Z=	section modulus of supporting member, in cm^3, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3 Structural idealisation		

PART

4

CHAPTER 12 Dredging and Reclamation Craft

SECTION 6 Bottom structure

6. 1 General

6. 1. 1 This Section provides for longitudinal or transverse framing of the bottom structure of ships with single or double bottoms.

6. 1. 2 For ships intended to operate aground, *See* Pt 4, Ch 12, 7 Bottom strengthening for operating aground.

6. 2 Single bottoms transversely framed

6. 2. 1 The scantlings of single bottom floors, extending for the full width of the ship, are to be in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 1, 7 Single bottom structure irrespective of the length of the ship. Floors below dredging pumps or similar items which could induce large concentrated loads or large dynamic forces, may be required to be of increased strength. Floors may be recessed locally in way of dredging pumps, etc. provided that suitable compensation is arranged.

6. 2. 2 The spacing of intercostals and longitudinal side girders is to be such as to ensure continuity of strength at bulkheads, ends of spoil spaces and wells and at ends of machinery seats so far as practicable, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 1, 7 Single bottom structure. An intercostal is to be fitted in the buoyancy space abreast hopper openings when the distance between the hopper opening and the ship's side exceeds 4.0 m.

6. 2. 3 Abreast of dredging wells and spoil spaces the minimum depth of floor at its inboard end is to be not less than:

$$d_w = 20(B + l_e + 2T_m)\text{mm}$$

The thickness of the web and area of the face plate are to be as required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 7.2 Girders and floors.

6. 3 Single bottoms longitudinally framed

6. 3. 1 The spacing of transverses is to be in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 12, 5.3 Primary supporting structure at sides 5.3.1, and are to be supplemented by the following arrangements of brackets:

a. On the ship's centreline, or on each side of dredging wells where there is no structure on the centreline, the brackets are to be spaced not more than 1.25 m apart and are to extend outboard to the first longitudinal, port and starboard. The longitudinals supported by the brackets may be calculated using a nominal transverse spacing of 1.6 m.

b. On ships where the side are transversely framed, the brackets are to be fitted at every frame and are to extend inboard to the first longitudinal on the flat of bottom. This longitudinal is to be based on a span equal to the spacing of the transverses.

c. The thickness of these intermediate brackets is to be not less than:

$$t = \left(0.25B + 1.85\sqrt{T_{\mathrm{m}}}\right)mm$$

6. 3. 2 In areas of high shear loading, the thickness and stiffening of the web plates on transverses, etc. may have to be increased. The depth of transverses is to be not less than 2.5 times the depth of the slot for the bottom longitudinals, and thickness of the web plates is to be not less than 8 mm.

6. 3. 3 Bottom transverses in spoil space side buoyancy tanks in way of cross-ties are to have a depth, d, of not less than:

$$d = 28B + 205\sqrt{T_{\mathrm{m}}}\ mm$$

Their arrangement, scantlings and end connections are to be such as to provide proper continuity of strength across the ship. The transverses are to be fitted with stiffeners in way of every shell longitudinal. The stiffeners should, in general, be equivalent to flat bars with a depth one-eighth of the transverse at that point and a thickness not less than the thickness of the transverse.

6. 4 Double bottom - General

6. 4. 1 Self-propelled dredgers and reclamation ships of more than 500 tons gross and intended for International voyages are to be provided with a double bottom extending from the collision bulkhead to the after peak bulkhead, as far as this is practicable and compatible with the design and proper working of the ship.

6. 4. 2 A double bottom need not be fitted in way of watertight compartments used exclusively for the carriage of liquids provided the safety of the ship, in the event of bottom damage, is not thereby impaired.

6. 4. 3 The double bottom may, however, be interrupted locally, or fitted with wells in way of dredging pumps and other equipment. Where such openings are large, their scantlings and arrangements will be specially considered.

6. 4. 4 The scantlings are to be in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 1, 8 Double bottom structure except for the following:

a. The Rule thickness of centre girders may be reduced by 2.0 mm on ships classed **A1 protected waters service**.
b. The Rule thickness of side girders may be reduced by 1.0 mm on ships classed **100A1 extended protected waters service**.
c. The scantlings of floors, longitudinals and plating supporting the bottom of spaces intended to carry spoil are to be determined in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 12, 8 Spoil space and well structure.

6. 5 Double bottom with transverse framing

6. 5. 1 Plate floors may be fitted at every frame or may be spaced not more than 3.0 m apart with the shell and inner bottom plating between these floors supported by bracket floors. However, plate floors are to be fitted at every frame in the following areas:

a. As required for Pt 4, Ch 1, 8.5, Floors.
b. Below spaces from which dredged material will be discharged by grabs.
c. In main propulsion and dredging machinery rooms and in peak tanks.
d. For three frame spaces at ends of spoil spaces and dredging wells.

6. 6 Double bottom with longitudinal framing

6. 6. 1 In locations other than below spaces intended for dredged spoil the section modulus of inner bottom longitudinals is to be not less than:

$$Z = \frac{l_e^2 sHkc}{K_1} cm^3$$

Where

l_e = effective span of longitudinals, in metres, and is to be taken as not less than 1.85 m

s = spacing of longitudinals, in mm

H = height, in metres, from the tank top to the deck at side, (but need not exceed T_m on ships classed **A1 protected waters service**)

c = as defined in Table 12. 5. 1: Longitudinal stiffening

K_1 = 120 in machinery spaces on ships classed **100A1**

= 150 otherwise.

k = higher tensile steel factor, *See* Pt 3, Ch 2, 1 Materials of construction.

6. 6. 2 The section modulus of longitudinals below spaces intended for dredged spoil is to comply with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 12, 8.3 Spoil space and well boundaries 8.3.7.

6. 6. 3 The spacing of transverses is generally to be as for dry cargo ships but is not to exceed 4.0 m. Below main dredging machinery the transverses are generally to be spaced not more than 1.0 m apart.

6. 6. 4 The ends of longitudinal girders under dredging machinery are to be tapered off or efficiently scarfed into other longitudinal structural items.

PART

4

CHAPTER 12 Dredging and Reclamation Craft

SECTION 7 Bottom strengthening for operating aground

7. 1 Application

7. 1. 1 The scantlings of bottom structure are to comply with the requirements given in Table 12. 7. 1: Bottom strengthening for operating aground.

7. 1. 2 Unless otherwise specified by the Owner, it should be assumed that non-self-propelled dredging and reclamation craft are to operate aground.

Table 12. 7. 1: Bottom strengthening for operating aground

Item	Requirement	
The following requirements are to be applied to the bottom structure upon which the ship is likely to be supported whilst aground		
(1) Bottom shell, keel and swim end plating	Thickness to be increased by 20% over the minimum requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 5 Shell envelope plating, with a minimum of 8 mm	
(2) Bottom longitudinals	Scantlings as required by Table 12. 5. 1: Longitudinal stiffening (1) taking K_1=74 and c=1.0	
(3) Bilge longitudinals (where fitted)	Scantlings to be the same as bottom longitudinals	
	Transverse framing	Longitudinal framing
(4) Primary stiffening in way of single bottoms, *See* Notes 1 and 2	(a) Floors to be fitted at every frame with vertical stiffeners spaced, in general, not more than 1.25 m apart (b) Side girders to be spaced not more than 2.2 m apart and intermediate 100 mm x 10 mm bulb plate longitudinals, or equivalent, fitted	(a) The spacing of transverses or floors is, in general, not to exceed 2.5 m outboard of wells or 1.85 m elsewhere (b) The panel size nearest the shell plating of web plates of transverses or floors is, in general, not to exceed 80t x 80t where t is the actual web thickness (c) Side girders to be spaced not more than 2.2 m apart
(5) Primary stiffening in way of double bottoms, *See* Notes 1 and 2	(a) Plate floors are to be fitted at every frame with vertical stiffeners spaced, in general, not more than 1.25 m apart	(a) The spacing of plate floors is, in general, not to exceed 1.85 m

	(b) Side girders to be spaced not more than 2.5 m apart and intermediate 100 mm x 10 mm bulb plate longitudinals, or equivalent, fitted (c) Where the span of floors between a hopper space and the ship's side exceeds 3.75 m, a longitudinal girder is to be fitted	(b) Side girders to be spaced not more than 2.5 m apart

Note *1.* The scantlings of floors, girders and transverses are to be determined in accordance with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 12, 6 Bottom structure.

Note *2.* The number and size of holes in floors, girder and transverses are to be kept to a minimum, *See* Pt 4, Ch 1, 8 Double bottom structure.

PART

4

CHAPTER 12 Dredging and Reclamation Craft

SECTION 8 Spoil space and well structure

8. 1 Symbols and definitions

8. 1. 1 The symbols used in this Section are defined as follows:

ρ_{ef} = effective specific gravity to be taken, as defined in Table 12. 8. 1: Effective specific gravity

h = load head, in metres, measured vertically as follows:

a. For plating, the distance from a point one-third of the height of the plate above its lower edge to the sill of the uppermost overflow weir.

b. For stiffeners or girders, the distance from the middle of the effective length to the sill of the uppermost overflow weir.

l_e = effective length of stiffening members, in metres, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 3 Structural idealisation

s = spacing of stiffeners, in mm

t = plate thickness, in mm

A_1 = cross-sectional area of flange or stiffener, in cm^2, including coaming plating.

Table 12. 8. 1: Effective specific gravity

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Effective specific gravity less than or equal to 1.4</td><td colspan="2">Effective specific gravity greater than 1.4</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">ρ≤1.4</td><td colspan="2">ρ>1.4</td></tr>
<tr><td>for vertical boundaries</td><td>for boundaries which have an angle, a with the horizontal plane</td></tr>
<tr><td>$\rho_{ef} = 1.4$</td><td>$\rho_{ef} = 1.4$</td><td>$\rho_{ef} = 1.4 + (\rho - 1.4)(\cos\ \alpha)^2$</td></tr>
</table>

8. 1. 2 Other symbols are defined in Pt 4, Ch 12, 1.5 Symbols 1.5.1.

8. 2 General

8. 2. 1 This Section provides for:

a. horizontally and vertically stiffened boundary bulkheads to hoppers, and holds intended for dredged spoil, to ladder wells and to spud wells,
b. protection against flooding in the event of the ladder well or adjacent bottom plating being damaged by objects dredged up by bucket dredgers, and
c. continuity of transverse strength in spoil spaces and wing tanks abreast of spoil spaces.

8. 2. 2 As an alternative to the requirements of this section regarding primary structure, scantlings may be derived on the basis of direct calculation methods, *See* Pt 4, Ch 12, 18 Direct calculations.

8. 2. 3 **Continuity of strength.** Arrangements are to be made to ensure continuity of strength at the ends of longitudinal and well side bulkheads. In general, the design should be such that the bulkheads are connected to bottom and deck girders by means of large, suitably shaped brackets arranged to give a good stress flow at their junctions with both the girders and the bulkheads.

8. 2. 4 **Ladder well cofferdams.** Ladder wells of trailing suction dredgers are to be isolated from the remainder of the dredger's structure by local cofferdams at least 600 mm wide, or are to be otherwise protected to prevent serious flooding due to the well side plating being breached by the ladder structure should this be damaged in service. Ladder wells of bucket dredgers are to be isolated by cofferdams, the extent and widths of which are to be sufficient to contain any damage to the well side bulkheads or bottom shell plating that could result from the impact of large objects brought up in the dredge buckets. In way of the buckets the cofferdam may be extended outboard in the form of a local watertight double bottom.

8. 3 Spoil space and well boundaries

8. 3. 1 The plating thickness of spoil space boundaries is to be not less than the following:

t = $0.0046 s f\sqrt{khp_{ef}} + 3.0$ mm, or

t = 8.5 mm, whichever is the greater

In the case of grab dredgers the minimum thickness is to be 10 mm. These thickness requirements also apply to the plating of watertight box keels and inner bottom plating. The value of ρ_{ef} used in the calculations and the height(s) of the overflow weir(s) are to be clearly shown on the midship section plan.

8. 3. 2 Attention is drawn to the high rate of wear that can occur on spoil space boundaries, and it is recommended that an additional corrosion allowance of 3.0 mm be added on areas subject to particularly onerous conditions. Where such an allowance is added, the fact is to be marked on the relevant plans.

8. 3. 3 The thickness of plating forming the sides and ends of bucket ladder wells is to be not less than:

$$t = \left(0.0055_s\sqrt{T_m + 3.0}\right)\text{mm}$$

In no case, however, is the side plating to have a thickness less than 12 mm nor is the well end plating to have a thickness less than 8.5 mm. Plating forming the boundaries of suction pipe ladder wells is generally to be as required for shell plating. Corrosion allowance on well end plating below bucket ladders may be 2.0 mm.

8. 3. 4 The thickness of spoil space and ladder well bulkheads may be required to be increased where high shear forces are present.

8. 3. 5 Bulkheads forming the boundaries of spud wells are to be of increased strength. Each case will be considered on its merits, but in general such bulkheads should have a thickness of not less than 12 mm.

8. 3. 6 Where non-watertight bulkheads are fitted in the side buoyancy tanks, the thickness of the plating is to be not less than:

a. t = 6.5 mm, or

b. t = $(5.35 + 0.024L)$mm

whichever is the greater. Where the bulkhead is in the form of a wash bulkhead, the openings should be so arranged that, in general, the distance from lightening holes to any slots cut to accommodate side shell or bulkhead longitudinals is at least equal to 1.5 times the depth of the slot. The edges of large openings are to be stiffened.

8. 3. 7 The section modulus of framing on spoil space boundaries is to be not less than:

$$Z = \frac{0.0113\rho_{ef} sh\ l_e^2 kc}{\gamma} cm^3$$

Where

c = as defined in Pt 4, Ch 12, 8.3 Spoil space and well boundaries 8.3.7 for longitudinal framing

= 1.0 for transverse framing

γ = 1.4 for rolled or built sections

= 1.6 for flat bars.

ρ_{ef} = effective specific gravity, *See* Pt 4, Ch 12, 8.1 Symbols and definitions 8.1.1

k = higher tensile steel factor, *See* Pt 3, Ch 2, 1 Materials of construction

The section modulus of longitudinals below $\frac{D}{2}$ is to be taken not less than the value obtained at $\frac{D}{2}$.

Table 12. 8. 2: Definition of c for longitudinal framing

Symbols	Location	c, *See* Note 2
F_B as defined in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.1 Symbols	$0.8D\ \frac{D}{2}$ and above	1.0
	$At\ \frac{D}{2}$	0.85
	0.2D above base (*See* Note 1)	$\frac{550}{1590 - 1040F_B}$
	Base line (*See* Note 1)	$\frac{2060}{3620 - 1560F_B}$

Note *1.* For ships with hogging still water bending moments in loaded conditions and for split hull vessels, c=1.0.

Note *2.* Intermediate values are to be calculated by linear interpolation.

8. 3. 8 The section modulus of stiffeners bounding wells and deep tanks is to satisfy the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 9.2, Watertight and deep tank bulkheads.

8. 3. 9 For non-watertight bulkheads, the modulus of the stiffeners may be 50 per cent of that required for intact bulkheads. The stiffeners are to be bracketed at top and bottom.

8. 3. 10 Structure supporting spud well plating and bulkheads below, and in way of, `A' frames and dredging machinery supports, is to be of substantial construction, account being taken of the dynamic loads likely to occur with the dredging machinery in operation.

8. 3. 11 Horizontal girders supporting stiffeners on spoil space and ladder well boundaries are, in general, to have scantlings as required by Pt 4, Ch 1, 9.2, Watertight and deep tank bulkheads for deep tanks, with ρ and h as defined in Pt 4, Ch 12, 1.5 Symbols 1.5.1 and Pt 4, Ch 12, 8.1 Symbols and definitions 8.1.1 respectively and with span, l_e for horizontal girders supporting vertical stiffeners on longitudinal bulkheads, measured between bulkhead bracket and bulkhead bracket, i.e. ignoring any struts which may be fitted between spoil space girder and shell stringer. Alternatively, the section modulus of these horizontal girders may be reduced by 40 per cent from the formula value if struts are fitted on alternate frames between the spoil space girder and a shell stringer. These struts should generally be horizontal and are to have a sectional area as required for pillars by Pt 4, Ch 1, 4.4, Deck supporting structure with ρ as defined in Pt 4, Ch 1, 1.5 Symbols and definitions 1.5.1 and h measured from the inboard end of the strut to the height defined in Pt 4, Ch 12, 8.1 Symbols and definitions 8.1.1. Web frames and girders are to have scantlings as required by Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships, with ρ and h as defined in Pt 4, Ch 12, 1.5 Symbols 1.5.1 and Pt 4, Ch 12, 8.1 Symbols and definitions 8.1.1 respectively.

8. 4 Cross members

8. 4. 1 Cross-members are to be fitted within the hopper space in line with the bottom and side shell transverses and with the bulkheads in the side buoyancy spaces. Where the spacing between the cross-members exceeds 4 m, the scantlings of all primary members contributing to the continuity of the transverse strength in the spoil space are to be verified by direct calculations, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 1, 2.2 Submission of direct calculations. Where a box keel is fitted on the centreline, webs are to be fitted within the box keel to ensure proper continuity of strength across the ship in way of the hopper cross-member. The webs required within centreline watertight box keels may have a thickness 3.5 mm less than that required for the hopper cross-members with which they are associated, but their minimum thickness is to be not less than 6.5 mm.

8. 4. 2 The upper edge of the hopper lower cross-members should, in general, be a height of not less than $\frac{D}{4}$ above the keel in ships with the number 100 in their character of classification. The lower edge should be as low as practicable after allowing for the proper design of hopper doors, suction passages, etc. Lower cross-members may be fabricated from flat plate suitably stiffened or may take the form of a hollow box, generally of triangular cross-section.

8. 4. 3 The scantlings of box-type cross-members should be determined from the requirements for hopper bulkheads where applicable. When flat plate lower cross-members are fitted, the thickness of the web is to be not less than:

$$t = (0.7B + 3)\text{mm or } 8.5\text{ mm}$$

whichever is the greater.

8. 4. 4 The cross-sectional area of the cross-member web after deducting access openings, lightening holes, etc. is to be not less than:

$$A = 6h_w S_M \text{cm}^2$$

Where

h_w = height, in metres, of the uppermost hopper overflow weir above the keel

S_M = spacing of the cross-member webs, in metres.

8. 4. 5 The upper edge of the cross-member is to be stiffened by means of a tube having an outside diameter not less than:

$$\delta = 30l_s \text{ mm}$$

Where

l_s = span, in metres, of the upper edge of the cross-member (to the centreline box girder if fitted), and a thickness equal to the minimum required cross-tie web thickness, or by an equivalent flange or structure. The lower edge of the cross-member is also to be suitably stiffened.

8. 4. 6 The cross-member web is to be fitted with stiffeners, spaced not more than $80t$ mm apart having a modulus of not less than:

$$Z = 0.04sl_e^2 \text{ cm}^3$$

8. 4. 7 The transverse strength of primary structural members, such as upper and lower cross members and wing tank bulkheads, forming transverse ring systems are to be verified by direct calculations, e.g. finite element calculations on the basis of loads arising from hydrostatic, wave, spoil pressure and loadings on closing appliances of bottom openings. The stresses are in general not to exceed the following values:

Bending+axial stress (σ_b)	$130/k$ N/mm^2
Shear stress (T)	$70/k$ N/mm^2
Combined stress	$180/k$ N/mm^2

= where

k = higher tensile steel factor, *See* Pt 3, Ch 2, 1 Materials of construction.

8. 5 Pillars within hoppers

8. 5. 1 Pillars are generally to comply with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 1, 4.4, Deck supporting structure, account being taken of the maximum forces that can be applied by rams or other gear fitted for the purpose of activating hopper doors or valves.

8. 6 Continuous coamings

8. 6. 1 Continuous coamings are to have a plate thickness of not less than 8.5 mm. A minimum thickness of 10 mm is recommended for coamings on grab dredgers. Where the depth of the coaming exceeds $80t$, the plating is to be stiffened by one or more horizontal members so spaced that the width of the upper panel of plating does not exceed $65t$ and the width(s) of the lower panel(s) do(es) not exceed $80t$.

8. 6. 2 Where the coaming is stiffened with flat bar members, the members are to have a breadth not less than $0.04S_s$ and a thickness not less than 0.05 times their breadth, or 8.5 mm, whichever is the greater. They are to have a minimum inertia of:

$$I = 2S_s^2A_1 \text{ cm}^4$$

Where

= A_1 and I include the coaming plating for mid-panel above to mid-panel below the stiffener, and

S_s = spacing of the brackets required by this sub-Section, in metres.

= Where stiffeners other than flat bars are used, they are to have at least the same minimum thickness and inertia as required for flat bars.

8. 6. 3 The upper edge of the coaming is to be stiffened by a fabricated flange, box girder or equivalent structure having a width not less than $0.05S_s$ and an inertia not less than:

$$I = 2.86S_s^2A_1 \text{ cm}^4$$

Where

= A_1 and I include the coaming plating down to mid-panel below

= The thickness and/or attachments of the stiffening member are to be such as to minimise any likelihood of local instability under compression loading.

8. 6. 4 The coamings are to be supported by substantial brackets spaced generally not more than 3.0 m apart where the coamings have a height of more than 600 mm, nor more than 2.5 m where the coamings have a height of more than 1.0 m but on longitudinally framed ships the brackets are to be arranged in way of each deck transverse. Additional brackets may be required in way of the ends of hopper upper cross-ties, especially those which themselves support hopper door operating rams or similar equipment.

8. 6. 5 The ends of continuous coamings are to be well scarfed into the ship's structure at the ends of spoil spaces. Unless longitudinal deckhouse bulkheads are fitted in this area, the coamings are to be extended beyond the end of the spoil space opening for a distance of at least one frame space, or 1.5 times the coaming height, whichever is the greater.

PART

4

CHAPTER **12 Dredging and Reclamation Craft**

SECTION **9 Watertight bulkheads**

9. 1 Arrangements of bulkheads

9. 1. 1 The number of watertight bulkheads is to be not less than that required for dry cargo ships, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 4 Bulkhead requirements. Their positioning is to be such that one extends the full width of the ship at each end of the spoil spaces, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 12, 8.2 General. Proposals to dispense with one or more of the watertight bulkheads in that part of the ship in way of spoil spaces may be submitted for consideration. In particular, watertight bulkheads need not be fitted within spoil spaces and an increased spacing of bulkheads in the spaces abreast of spoil spaces will generally be accepted provided that:

a. Suitable structural compensation is arranged; and
b. the stability is checked in the damaged condition.

PART

4

CHAPTER **12 Dredging and Reclamation Craft**

SECTION **10 Exposed casings**

10. 1 Scantlings and access

10. 1. 1 Exposed casings on ships classed **A1 protected waters service** are to have scantlings as required for deckhouses on dry cargo ships classed **100A1**. On ships classed **100A1**, where T_m equals or exceeds the draught corresponding to a Type 'B-60' ship freeboard, direct access is not permitted to the machinery spaces (including dredging pump-rooms) from the freeboard deck. Doors may be fitted in exposed casing bulkheads, provided that they lead to a space which is of equivalent strength to the casing and is separated from the machinery space by a second watertight door.

PART

4

CHAPTER **12 Dredging and Reclamation Craft**

SECTION **11 Dredging machinery seats and dredging gear**

11. 1 Dredging machinery seats

11. 1. 1 The seats supporting the main dredging machinery are to be at least as substantial as those required for the main propulsion machinery for dry cargo ships, *See* Pt 3, Ch 7, 6 Engine seatings. Continuity between the longitudinal and transverse members of main engine seats and the ship's bottom structure is to be arranged where practicable. Where floors are cut away below dredging pumps, they are to be fitted with face bars, and special care is to be taken to minimise stress-raising details and to ensure good workmanship.

11. 2 Dredging gear

11. 2. 1 Where masts or derrick posts support dredging gear which will be subjected to vibration or other dynamic loads in addition to its true weight, this must be taken into account in the calculations. The dynamic multiplier should be taken between two and three according to the type of machinery and gear used.

PART

4

CHAPTER **12 Dredging and Reclamation Craft**

SECTION **12 Ladder wells**

12. 1 Transverse strength at deck

12. 1. 1 Where ladder wells are incorporated so that the length of the well exceeds 1.5 times the width of the deck remaining on each side of the well, the portions of the ship on each side of the well are to be adequately cross-connected in the region of their free ends, unless the design of the ship renders this impracticable, in which case alternative arrangements are to be made to avoid high stress concentrations at the inboard end of the well.

PART

4

CHAPTER **12 Dredging and Reclamation Craft**

SECTION **13 Fenders**

13. 1 Fenders and reinforcement in way

13. 1. 1 Dredgers designed to work in conjunction with hopper barges are to be fitted with permanent rubbing strakes or fenders extending down to their lowest normal operating waterline. On transversely framed vessels it is recommended that the side structure in way of the lower edge of the fender be reinforced by a stringer and/or cross-ties. It is recommended that, where wooden fenders are fitted to dredgers operating in tropical sea-water, the fenders be cut just above the deepest working waterline and a gap be left sufficient to prevent water soaking up into the fenders.

PART

4

CHAPTER **12 Dredging and Reclamation Craft**

SECTION **14 Rudders**

14. 1 Rudders on bucket dredgers

14. 1. 1 Where bucket dredgers are arranged with bucket ladders at their stern, the ship's rudders are to be kept well clear of the buckets to minimise the likelihood of damage to the rudders by large objects which may be dredged up. For rudder calculations, *See* Pt 3, Ch 13 Ship Control Systems.

PART

4

CHAPTER 12 Dredging and Reclamation Craft

SECTION 15 Spoil space weirs and overflows

15. 1 General

15. 1. 1 All spoil spaces are to be arranged to allow the safe and efficient overboard discharge of excess water in all weather conditions in which the ship is classed to operate. In ships over 90 m in length and in all ships classed for unrestricted service the spoil space overflows are to be arranged via enclosed overflow trunks so designed as to keep the decks of the ship clear of spoil and water.

15. 1. 2 In general, bulwarks are not to be fitted in way of open top spoil spaces on dredging and reclamation craft.

15. 1. 3 Where a ship operates at the maximum draught that could be assigned in accordance with the *International Convention on Load Lines, 1966*, the overflow arrangements fitted should ensure that when the spoil space is loaded, this draught is not exceeded.

15. 1. 4 Where a hopper dredger having releasing arrangements for cargo dumping, e.g. bottom doors, etc. is permitted by an Administration to be assigned a freeboard less than that which could be assigned by the *International Convention on Load Lines, 1966:*

a. The structural strength and bending moments are to be acceptable for the deeper draught indicated, and
b. the dredger is to be operated in a zone of operation and in such weather conditions as are considered appropriate.

15. 1. 5 Adequate arrangements are to be fitted to prevent overloading under any condition of loading having due regard to trim. The size and position of the overflows are to be confirmed by a loading trial, which is to be carried out when the spoil space is loaded with dredgings of the same density as is likely to be loaded in service.

15. 1. 6 The cutting of overflow discharge trunk openings in the sheerstrake is to be avoided wherever practicable. In ships over 70 m in length, spoil space overflow discharge trunk openings are not to be cut within 800 mm of the upper edge of the sheerstrake. They are to have corner radii of not less than 150 mm, and suitable compensation is to be arranged. In no case is a discharge trunk to pierce the sheerstrake in way of discontinuities such as breaks of superstructure.

PART

4

CHAPTER **12** **Dredging and Reclamation Craft**

SECTION **16** **Scuppers and sanitary discharges and side scuttles**

16. 1 General

16. 1. 1 In all areas where mechanical damage might be likely, all side scuttles, scuppers and discharges, including their valves, controls and indicators, are to be well protected. Consideration is to be given to the likelihood of impact damage to scuttles and discharges due to barges coming alongside, and to scuppers becoming blocked by sand or other spoil which may spill onto the decks or other areas being drained.

16. 1. 2 Consideration will be given to requests for relaxation of requirements relating to scuttles, scuppers and discharges on ships classed **A1 protected waters service**.

PART

4

CHAPTER **12 Dredging and Reclamation Craft**

SECTION **17 Split hopper dredgers and barges**

17. 1 Symbols and definitions

17. 1. 1 The symbols used in this Section are defined as follows:

H = height of spoil above base line, in metres

H_s = depth of hopper seal, in metres

L_h = length of hopper well, in metres

M_H = design horizontal bending moment in hopper side wall, in kN m. A moment giving rise to tensile stress in the side shell is to be taken as positive

P = net pressure per metre ship length resulting from the spoil pressure and the hydrostatic load, *See* Figure 12. 17. 2: Split hopper dredger

= $4.9(p(H - H_s)^2 - 1.025(T - H_s)^2)\text{kN/m}$

S_h = span between the centres of hinges, in metres

17. 1. 2 Other symbols are defined in Pt 4, Ch 12, 1.5 Symbols 1.5.1.

17. 2 Hull bending strength

17. 2. 1 The modulus of the cross-section of the vessel is to be not less than that required by Pt 4, Ch 12, 2.3 Hull bending strength 2.3.1. In addition, the combined stress σ_c, at any point on the cross-section of one half hull, is not to exceed the permissible combined stress σ given in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.5 Permissible still water bending moments. The combined stress at any point on the cross-section is to be determined from the following expression:

$$\sigma_c = \left(\frac{M_N}{Z_N} + \frac{M_p}{Z_p}\right) \times 10^{-3} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

Where

M_N = $\pm M_V \cos\varphi \pm M_H \sin\varphi \text{kNm}$

M_p = $\pm M_H \cos\varphi \pm M_v \sin\varphi \text{kNm}$

M_V = $\pm 0.5(M_s + M_w)\text{kNm}$

where the still water bending moments hogging and sagging are to be combined with the appropriate wave bending moment to give a total moment, M_V, hogging (positive) and sagging (negative)

M_w is defined in Pt 4, Ch 12, 1.5 Symbols 1.5.1.

f_1 = ship service factor, *See* Table 12. 2. 1: Ship service factors f1 and fwd

$M_H = 0.125PL_h(2S_h - L_h) \pm M_L$kNm

$M_L = 0.286f_1L^2B$kNm

$P = 4.9(\rho(H - H_s)^2 - 1.025(T - H_s)^2)$kNm

Account is to be taken of the sign of individual bending moment component in the determination of M_N, M_p, M_V and M_H

I_{NN} = second moment of area of the section of one half hull for all longitudinal continuous material above principal axis NN, in m^4

I_{PP} = second moment of area of the section of one half hull for all longitudinal continuous material about principal axis PP, in m^4

$Z_p = \frac{I_{PP}}{y_P}$ in m^3, the modulus of section to a point y_P m, from the principal axis PP

$Z_N = \frac{I_{NN}}{y_N}$ in m^3, the modulus of section to a point y_N m, from the principal axis NN

φ = angle of rotation of the principal axis NN with respect to the global horizontal axis YY, in degrees

See also Figure 12. 17. 1: Split hulled vessels.

17. 2. 2 The combined stress for dredging conditions where draught T_m exceeds T, is not to exceed the permissible combined stress, $\sigma_c$obtained from Pt 4, Ch 12, 17.2 Hull bending strength 17.2.1.

The combined stress is to be obtained from the expression for σ_c given in Pt 4, Ch 12, 17.2 Hull bending strength 17.2.1, substituting the following expression of M_V:

$$M_V = \pm 0.5(M_{sm} + M_{wd})\text{kNm}$$

Where

M_{wd} = $0.56f_2M_{wo}$ and M_{wo} is determined from Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.2, Design vertical wave bending moments, using C_{bm} in place of C_b and f_2 is given in Pt 3, Ch 4, 5.2, Design vertical wave bending moments.

17. 3 Separation arrangements

17. 3. 1 Hinges, actuating and locking devices provided to facilitate separation of the split hulls to discharge spoil are to be of efficient design and of adequate strength and scantlings to ensure safe discharge operations. Hydraulic rams or other actuating devices are to have sufficient power to ensure controlled opening operations and to achieve closing of the hulls in all anticipated weather conditions.

17. 3. 2 Locking devices are to be of a suitable design and strength to ensure that accidental separation of the hulls cannot occur due to ship motions and vibrations.

17. 3. 3 Hinge pin gudgeons are to be efficiently connected to the hull structure by means of brackets or equivalent and effectively integrated with local structure which is to be suitably reinforced. Suitable reinforcement is to be fitted to local hull structure in way of anchorages for rams and locking devices to ensure efficient transmission of loading from these devices into the hull.

Figure 12. 17. 1: Split hulled vessels

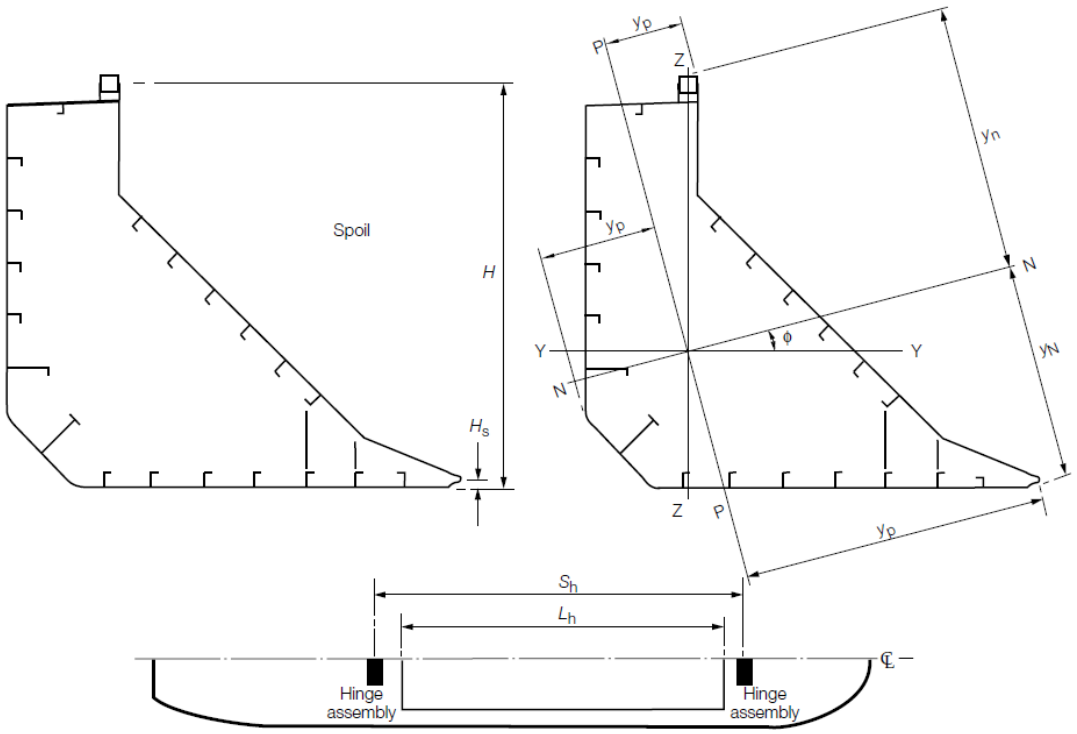
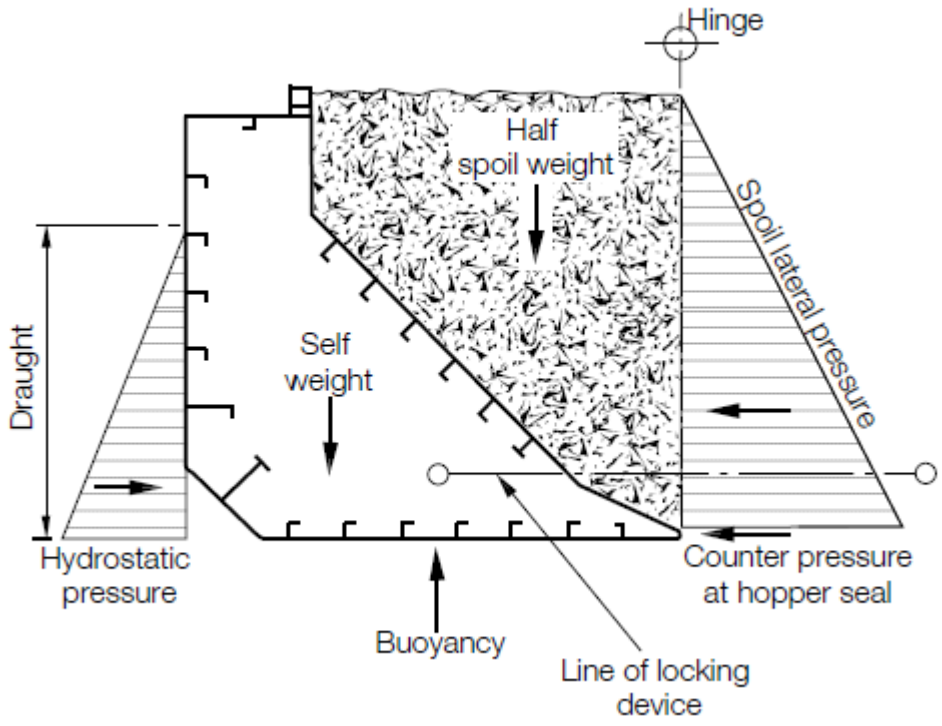


Figure 12. 17. 2: Split hopper dredger



17. 3. 4 The forces acting on hinges, actuating mechanisms and locking devices are to be determined by direct calculations based on the maximum combination of loading which can be expected in any

service condition. In general, this will require the resolution of the static and dynamic systems of force acting on the hulls taking due account of the relative locations of hinges, actuating mechanisms and locking devices. Figure 12. 17. 2: Split hopper dredger illustrates a typical arrangement of hinges and mechanisms together with associated static loads. In general, one half of the load acting on one half hull may be assumed to act on the forward hinge assembly and one half on the after hinge assembly.

17. 4 Hinge pins

17. 4. 1 The diameter of the hinge pins is to be determined using the maximum resultant shear force acting on the pin cross-section in conjunction with an average shear stress not exceeding $\frac{62}{k}\ N/mm^2$.

In no case is the diameter of the hinge pin to be less than that calculated from the following expression:

$$D_p = 20\sqrt{\frac{L^{0.5}BDk}{n}}\ mm$$

k = higher tensile steel factor, *See* Pt 3, Ch 2, 1 Materials of construction

n = the number of pin cross-sections resisting shear forces

and L, B and D are defined in Pt 4, Ch 12, 1.5 Symbols 1.5.1.

17. 4. 2 Where arrangements are such that hinge pins are subjected to significant bending, the diameter of the pins will be specially considered.

PART

4

CHAPTER 12 Dredging and Reclamation Craft

SECTION 18 Direct calculations

18. 1 Application

18. 1. 1 Direct calculations may be used to assess the scantlings of primary structure in spoil spaces and adjacent structure.

18. 1. 2 Direct calculations may be required to be submitted in respect of unusual structural arrangements.

18. 2 Procedures

18. 2. 1 Methods applied for direct calculations of scantlings will be given individual consideration dependent on the particular structural configuration, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 1, 3.1 Alternative arrangements and scantlings.

PART

5

Main and Auxiliary Machinery

CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1	**General Requirements for the Design and Construction of Machinery**		**1968**
	SECTION 1	General	1972
	SECTION 2	Plans and particulars	1974
	SECTION 3	Operating conditions	1975
	SECTION 4	Machinery room arrangements	1979
	SECTION 5	Trials	1982
	SECTION 6	Quality Assurance Scheme for Machinery	1984
	SECTION 7	Spare gear for machinery installations	1987
CHAPTER 2	**Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engines**		**1988**
	SECTION 1	General requirements	1995
	SECTION 2	Materials and Components	2004
	SECTION 3	Crankshaft Design	2010
	SECTION 4	Electronically controlled engines	2030
	SECTION 5	Construction and welded structures	2033
	SECTION 6	Turning gear	2035
	SECTION 7	Control and monitoring of main, auxiliary and emergency engines	2036
	SECTION 8	Piping	2047
	SECTION 9	Starting arrangements	2050
	SECTION 10	Safety arrangements	2053
	SECTION 11	Factory Acceptance Test and Shipboard Trials of Engines	2057
	SECTION 12	Turbochargers	2064
	SECTION 13	Air compressors	2067
	SECTION 14	Type testing – General	2073
	SECTION 15	Type testing – General	2075
	SECTION 16	Cross-references	2083
CHAPTER 3	**Steam Turbines**		**2084**
	SECTION 1	Plans and particulars	2088

SECTION 2 Materials 2089
SECTION 3 Design and construction 2090
SECTION 4 Safety arrangements 2093
SECTION 5 Emergency arrangements 2094
SECTION 6 Control and monitoring of main and auxiliary steam turbines 2095
SECTION 7 Tests and equipment 2098
SECTION 8 Cross-references 2100
CHAPTER 4 Gas Turbines 2101
SECTION 1 General requirements 2105
SECTION 2 Particulars to be submitted 2106
SECTION 3 Materials 2108
SECTION 4 Design and construction 2109
SECTION 5 Piping systems 2112
SECTION 6 Starting arrangements 2114
SECTION 7 Tests 2116
SECTION 8 Control, alarm and safety systems 2117
CHAPTER 5 Gearing 2120
SECTION 1 Plans and particulars 2125
SECTION 2 Plans and particulars 2126
SECTION 3 Design 2127
SECTION 4 Construction 2144
SECTION 5 Tests 2146
SECTION 6 Control and monitoring 2148
SECTION 7 Cross-reference 2149
CHAPTER 6 Main Propulsion Shafting 2150
SECTION 1 Plans and particulars 2153
SECTION 2 Materials 2154
SECTION 3 Design 2155
SECTION 4 Control and Monitoring 2163
SECTION 5 Approval of alloy steel used for intermediate shaft material 2165
CHAPTER 7 Propellers 2167
SECTION 1 Plans and particulars 2170
SECTION 2 Materials 2172
SECTION 3 Design 2174
SECTION 4 Fitting of propellers 2181
SECTION 5 Control and monitoring 2182

CHAPTER 8 Shaft Vibration and Alignment 2184
SECTION 1 General 2188
SECTION 2 Torsional vibration 2189
SECTION 3 Axial vibration 2196
SECTION 4 Lateral vibration 2198
SECTION 5 Shaft alignment 2199
CHAPTER 9 Podded Propulsion Units 2202
SECTION 1 Scope 2206
SECTION 2 General requirements 2208
SECTION 3 Materials 2213
SECTION 4 Structure design and construction requirements 2214
SECTION 5 Machinery design and construction requirements 2218
SECTION 6 Electrical equipment 2224
SECTION 7 Control engineering systems 2226
SECTION 8 Testing and trials 2229
SECTION 9 Installation, maintenance and replacement procedures 2230
CHAPTER 10 Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels 2231
SECTION 1 General requirements 2237
SECTION 2 Cylindrical shells and drums subject to internal pressure 2243
SECTION 3 Spherical shells subject to internal pressure 2253
SECTION 4 Dished ends subject to internal pressure 2254
SECTION 5 Dished ends subject to internal pressure 2262
SECTION 6 Standpipes and branches 2265
SECTION 7 Boiler tubes subject to internal pressure 2267
SECTION 8 Headers 2269
SECTION 9 Flat surfaces and flat tube plates 2275
SECTION 10 Flat plates and ends of vertical boilers 2282
SECTION 11 Furnaces subject to external pressure 2285
SECTION 12 Boiler tubes subject to external pressure 2291
SECTION 13 Tubes welded at both ends and bar stays for cylindrical boilers 2292
SECTION 14 Construction 2293
SECTION 15 Mountings and fittings for cylindrical and vertical boilers, steam generators, pressurised thermal liquid and pressurised hot water heaters 2298
SECTION 16 Mountings and fittings for water tube boilers 2304
SECTION 17 Hydraulic tests 2307

SECTION 18 Control and monitoring 2308
CHAPTER 11 Other Pressure Vessels 2312
SECTION 1 General requirements 2315
SECTION 2 Cylindrical shells and drums subject to internal pressure 2320
SECTION 3 Spherical shells subject to internal pressure 2322
SECTION 4 Dished ends subject to internal pressure 2323
SECTION 5 Dished ends for Class 3 pressure vessels 2326
SECTION 6 Conical ends subject to internal pressure 2327
SECTION 7 Standpipes and branches 2329
SECTION 8 Construction 2330
SECTION 9 Mountings and fittings 2333
SECTION 10 Hydraulic tests 2335
SECTION 11 Plate heat exchangers 2336
CHAPTER 12 Piping Design Requirements 2337
SECTION 1 General 2342
SECTION 2 Carbon and low alloy steels 2346
SECTION 3 Copper and copper alloys 2364
SECTION 4 Cast iron 2367
SECTION 5 Plastic pipesn 2369
SECTION 6 Valves 2376
SECTION 7 Flexible hoses 2377
SECTION 8 Hydraulic tests on pipes and fittings 2380
SECTION 9 Piping for LPG/LNG carriers, gas fuelled ships and classed refrigeration systems 2383
SECTION 10 Austenitic and duplex stainless steels 2387
SECTION 11 Appendix - Guidance notes on metal pipes for water services 2388
CHAPTER 13 Ship Piping Systems 2392
SECTION 1 General requirements 2397
SECTION 2 Construction and installation 2400
SECTION 3 Drainage of compartments, other than machinery spaces 2405
SECTION 4 Bilge drainage of machinery spaces 2409
SECTION 5 Sizes of bilge suction pipes 2412
SECTION 6 Pumps on bilge service and their connections 2414
SECTION 7 Piping systems and their fittings 2416
SECTION 8 Additional requirements for bilge drainage and cross-flooding arrangements for passenger ships 2419

SECTION 9 Additional requirements relating to fixed pressure water spray fire-extinguishing systems 2421
SECTION 10 Drainage arrangements for ships not fitted with propelling machinery 2422
SECTION 11 Ballast system 2423
SECTION 12 Air, overflow and sounding pipes 2424
SECTION 13 Additional requirements for drainage and pumping arrangements for bulk carriers 2431
SECTION 14 Water ingress detection arrangements 2432
CHAPTER 14 Machinery Piping Systems 2435
SECTION 1 General requirements 2440
SECTION 2 Fuel oil - General requirements 2441
SECTION 3 Fuel oil burning arrangements 2447
SECTION 4 Fuel oil pumps, pipes, fittings, tanks, etc. 2451
SECTION 5 Steam piping systems 2456
SECTION 6 Boiler feed water, condensate and thermal fluid circulation systems 2459
SECTION 7 Engine cooling water system 2462
SECTION 8 Lubricating oil systems 2465
SECTION 9 Hydraulic systems 2470
SECTION 10 Low pressure compressed air systems 2472
SECTION 11 Multi-engined ships 2475
SECTION 12 Control, alarm and safety systems of machinery 2476
CHAPTER 15 Piping Systems for Oil Tankers 2481
SECTION 1 General requirements 2484
SECTION 2 Piping systems for bilge, ballast, fuel oil, etc. 2491
SECTION 3 Cargo handling system 2494
SECTION 4 Cargo tank venting, purging and gas-freeing 2498
SECTION 5 Cargo tank level gauging equipment 2502
SECTION 6 Cargo heating arrangements 2503
SECTION 7 Inert gas systems on Tankers of 8000 tonnes DWT and above 2505
CHAPTER 16 Water Jet Systems 2511
SECTION 1 General requirements 2514
SECTION 2 General requirements 2515
SECTION 3 Design requirements 2519
SECTION 4 Piping systems 2524
SECTION 5 Control and monitoring 2525

SECTION 6 Electrical systems 2526
SECTION 7 Inspection, testing and fitting of water jets 2527
SECTION 8 Installation, maintenance and replacement 2529
CHAPTER 17 Requirements for Fusion Welding of Pressure Vessels and Piping 2530
SECTION 1 General 2533
SECTION 2 Manufacture and workmanship of fusion welded pressure vessels 2534
SECTION 3 Repairs to welds on fusion welded pressure vessels 2536
SECTION 4 Post-weld heat treatment of pressure vessels 2537
SECTION 5 Welded pressure pipes 2538
SECTION 6 Non-Destructive Examination 2539
CHAPTER 18 Integrated Propulsion Systems 2540
SECTION 1 General requirements 2541
SECTION 2 Machinery arrangements 2543
SECTION 3 Control arrangements 2544
CHAPTER 19 Steering Systems 2548
SECTION 1 General 2551
SECTION 2 Performance 2555
SECTION 3 Construction and design 2557
SECTION 4 Steering control systems 2560
SECTION 5 Electric power circuits, electric control circuits, monitoring and alarms 2562
SECTION 6 Emergency power 2565
SECTION 7 Testing and trials 2566
SECTION 8 Additional requirements 2568
SECTION 9 'Guidelines' for the acceptance of non-duplicated rudder actuators for tankers, chemical tankers and gas carriers of 10 000 tons gross and upwards but of less than 100 000 tons deadweight 2570
CHAPTER 20 Azimuth Thrusters 2573
SECTION 1 General requirements 2576
SECTION 2 Performance 2577
SECTION 3 Construction and design 2579
SECTION 4 Control engineering arrangements 2582
SECTION 5 Electrical equipment 2583
SECTION 6 Testing and trials 2584
CHAPTER 21 Requirements for Condition Monitoring and Condition-Based Maintenance Systems 2585

SECTION 1 Requirements for Condition Monitoring and Condition-Based Maintenance Systems 2586
CHAPTER 22 Propulsion and Steering Machinery Redundancy 2589
SECTION 1 General requirements 2591
SECTION 2 Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA) 2594
SECTION 3 Machinery arrangements 2596
SECTION 4 Control arrangements 2598
SECTION 5 Separate machinery spaces * (star) Enhancement 2599
SECTION 6 Testing and trials 2601
CHAPTER 23 Additional Requirements for Passenger Ships 2602
SECTION 1 General 2603
SECTION 2 Safe return to port 2607
SECTION 3 Qualitative failure analysis for propulsion, steering and essential services 2610
SECTION 4 Orderly evacuation and abandonment after a casualty 2612
SECTION 5 Verification, testing and trials 2614
CHAPTER 24 Emissions Abatement Plant for Combustion Machinery 2616
SECTION 1 General 2619
SECTION 2 Functional requirements 2623
SECTION 3 Information to be submitted 2624
SECTION 4 Materials 2628
SECTION 5 Hull construction 2629
SECTION 6 Mechanical equipment 2632
SECTION 7 Pumping and piping 2635
SECTION 8 Pressure vessels 2637
SECTION 9 Electrical and control equipment 2638
SECTION 10 Storage and use of chemicals 2641
SECTION 11 SOx emissions abatement plant 2643
SECTION 12 NOx emissions abatement plant 2645
CHAPTER 25 Ballast Water Treatment System and Installation 2646
SECTION 1 General 2649
SECTION 2 Functional requirements 2651
SECTION 3 Performance requirements 2652
SECTION 4 Documentation required for appraisal 2653
SECTION 5 Materials 2655
SECTION 6 Risk-based studies 2656

SECTION 7 Piping systems 2658
SECTION 8 Mechanical equipment and components 2659
SECTION 9 Electrotechnical Systems 2660
SECTION 10 Structural and Space categorisation requirements 2661
SECTION 11 System arrangement requirements 2663
SECTION 12 Fire safety requirements 2665

PART

5

CHAPTER 1

General Requirements for the Design and Construction of Machinery

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**1972**
	1. 1	Machinery and equipment to be constructed under survey	1972
	1. 2	Survey for classification	1973
	1. 3	Alternative approach for product assurance	1973
	1. 4	Deviations from the Rules	1973
SECTION 2	**Plans and particulars**		**1974**
	2. 1	Plans	1974
	2. 2	Materials	1974
	2. 3	Welding	1974
SECTION 3	**Operating conditions**		**1975**
	3. 1	Availability for operation	1975
	3. 2	Fuel	1975
	3. 3	Power ratings	1975
	3. 4	Definitions	1976
	3. 5	Ambient reference conditions	1976
	3. 6	Ambient operating conditions	1976
	3. 7	Inclination of ship	1977
	3. 8	Power conditions for generator sets	1977
	3. 9	Astern power	1978
	3. 10	Machinery interlocks	1978
SECTION 4	**Machinery room arrangements**		**1979**
	4. 1	Accessibility	1979
	4. 2	Machinery fastenings	1979
	4. 3	Resilient mountings	1979
	4. 4	Resin chocks	1980

4. 5 Ventilation 1980
4. 6 Fire protection 1980
4. 7 Means of escape 1980
4. 8 Communications 1980
4. 9 Category A machinery spaces 1981
SECTION 5 Trials 1982
5. 1 Inspection 1982
5. 2 Sea trials 1982
SECTION 6 Quality Assurance Scheme for Machinery 1984
6. 1 General 1984
6. 2 Definitions 1984
6. 3 QAM Scheme Arrangements 1985
6. 4 Acceptance of purchased materials, components and equipment . 1985
SECTION 7 Spare gear for machinery installations 1987
7. 1 Application 1987
7. 2 Guidance for spare parts 1987

PART

5

CHAPTER 1

General Requirements for the Design and Construction of Machinery

CONTENTS

Table 1. 3. 1: Ambient operating conditions 1976
Table 1. 3. 2: Inclination of ship 1977

PART

5

CHAPTER 1

General Requirements for the Design and Construction of Machinery

SECTION

Scope

The Chapters in this Part cover the construction and installation of main propulsion and auxiliary machinery systems, together with their associated equipment, boilers, pressure vessels, pumping and piping arrangements and steering gear fitted in classed ships.

PART

5

CHAPTER 1 **General Requirements for the Design and Construction of Machinery**

SECTION 1 **General**

1. 1 Machinery and equipment to be constructed under survey

1. 1. 1 Unless an alternative approach for product assurance has been approved by ACS (*See* Pt 5, Ch 1, 1.3 Alternative approach for product assurance), all items of machinery and equipment in ships built under Special Survey are to be surveyed at the manufacturer's works. The Surveyor is to be satisfied that the workmanship is of a suitable standard and that the components are suitable for the intended purpose and duty. Examples of such items are:

- Main propulsion engines including their associated gearing, flexible couplings, scavenge blowers and superchargers.
- Boilers supplying steam for propulsion or for services essential for the safety or the operation of the ship at sea, including superheaters, economisers, desuperheaters, steam heated steam generators and steam receivers. All other boilers having working pressures exceeding 0.34 MPa, and having heating surfaces greater than 4.65 m^2.
- Auxiliary engines which are the source of power for services essential for safety or for the operation of the ship at sea.
- Steering machinery.
- Athwartship thrust units, their prime movers and control mechanisms.
- All pumps necessary for the operation of main propulsion and essential machinery, e.g. boiler feed, cooling water circulating, condensate extraction, fuel oil and lubricating oil pumps.
- All heat exchangers necessary for the operation of main propulsion and essential machinery, e.g. air, water and lubricating oil coolers, fuel oil and feed water heaters, de-aerators and condensers, evaporators and distiller units.
- Air compressors, air receivers and other pressure vessels necessary for the operation of main propulsion and essential machinery. Any other unfired pressure vessels for which plans are required to be submitted as detailed in Pt 5, Ch 11, 1.6, Plans.
- All pumps essential for safety of the ship, e.g. fire, bilge and ballast pumps.
- Valves and other components intended for installation in pressure piping systems having working pressures exceeding 0.7 MPa.
- Alarm and control equipment as detailed in Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems.

- Electrical equipment and electrical propelling machinery as detailed in Pt 6, Ch 2 Electrical Engineering.

1. 2 Survey for classification

1. 2. 1 The Surveyors are to examine and test the materials and workmanship from the commencement of work until the final test of the machinery under full power working conditions. Any defects, etc. are to be indicated as early as possible. On completion, the Surveyors will submit a report and if this is found to be satisfactory by the Committee a certificate will be granted and an appropriate notation will be assigned in accordance with Pt 1, Ch 2 Classification Regulations.

1. 3 Alternative approach for product assurance

1. 3. 1 ACS will be prepared to give consideration to the adoption of an approach for product assurance, utilising regular and systematic audits of an organisations's arrangements for assuring product quality as an alternative to the direct survey of individual items.

1. 3. 2 Alternative approaches for product assurance are to be approved by ACS. In order to obtain approval, the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 1, 6 Quality Assurance Scheme for Machinery or the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials, Ch 1, 2.4 Materials Quality Scheme are to be complied with. Proposals for equivalent approaches are to be submitted for consideration.

1. 3. 3 Where manufacturers are approved by ACS under an alternative approach for product assurance (e.g. QAM, MQS, PVS), the intervention arrangements agreed under the scheme shall ensure that the relevant Rule requirements and corresponding certification requirements are met.

1. 4 Deviations from the Rules

1. 4. 1 Any proposal to deviate from the requirements of the Rules will be specially considered.

PART

5

CHAPTER 1 **General Requirements for the Design and Construction of Machinery**

SECTION 2 **Plans and particulars**

2. 1 Plans

2. 1. 1 Before the work is commenced, plans in triplicate of all machinery items, as detailed in the Chapters giving the requirements for individual systems, are to be submitted for consideration. The particulars of the machinery, including power ratings, grade(s) of fuel and design calculations, where applicable, necessary to verify the design, are also to be submitted. Any subsequent modifications are subject to approval before being put into operation. It will not be necessary for plans and particulars to be submitted for each ship, provided the basis plans for the engine size and type have previously been approved as meeting the requirements of these Rules. Any alterations to basis design materials or manufacturing procedure are to be re-submitted for consideration.

2. 2 Materials

2. 2. 1 The materials used in the construction are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials. Materials for which provision is not made therein may be accepted, provided that they comply with an approved specification and such tests as may be considered necessary.

2. 2. 2 Materials used in the construction of machinery and its installation are not to contain asbestos.

2. 3 Welding

2. 3. 1 Welding consumables, plant and equipment are to be in accordance with the requirements specified in Ch 13, 1.8 Welding equipment and welding consumables of the Rules for Materials.

2. 3. 2 Welding procedures and welder qualifications are to be tested and qualified in accordance with the requirements specified in Ch 12 Welding Qualifications of the Rules for Materials.

2. 3. 3 Production weld tests are to be carried out where specified in the subsequent Chapters of these Rules.

2. 3. 4 All finished welds are to be subjected to non-destructive examination in accordance with the requirements specified in Ch 13, 2.12 Non-destructive examination of welds of the Rules for Materials and or the requirements specified in the subsequent chapters of these Rules.

PART

5

CHAPTER 1 **General Requirements for the Design and Construction of Machinery**

SECTION 3 **Operating conditions**

3. 1 Availability for operation

3. 1. 1 The design and arrangement are to be such that the machinery can be started and controlled on board ship, without external aid.

3. 1. 2 Machinery is to be capable of operating at defined power ratings with a range of fuel grades specified by the engine, boiler or machinery manufacturer and agreed by the Owner/Operator.

3. 1. 3 Machinery is to be capable of operating satisfactorily in accordance with the manufacturer's stated operating conditions within an operational profile specified for the ship by the Owner/Operator and agreed by the manufacturer/system designer.

3. 2 Fuel

3. 2. 1 The flash point (closed cup test) of fuel oil for use in ships classed for unrestricted service is, in general, to be not less than 60°C.

3. 2. 2 For emergency generator engines, fuel having a flash point of not less than 43°C may be used.

3. 2. 3 Fuels with flash points lower than 60°C, but not less than 43°C unless specially approved, may be used in ships intended for service restricted to geographical limits where it can be ensured that the temperature of the machinery and boiler spaces will always be 10°C below the flash point of the fuel. In such cases, safety precautions and the arrangements for storage and pumping will be specially considered.

3. 2. 4 The use of fuel having a lower flash point than specified in Pt 5, Ch 1, 3.2 Fuel 3.2.1 to Pt 5, Ch 1, 3.2 Fuel 3.2.3 as applicable may be permitted provided that such fuel is not stored in any machinery space and the arrangements for the complete installation are specially approved.

3. 2. 5 For engines operating on `boil-off' vapours from the cargo, *See* ACS *Rules for Ships for Liquefied Gases*.

3. 3 Power ratings

3. 3. 1 In the Chapters where the dimensions of any particular component are determined from shaft power, P, in kW (H, in shp), and revolutions per minute, R, the values to be used are to be derived from the following:

- For main propelling machinery, the maximum shaft power and corresponding revolutions per minute giving the maximum torque for which the machinery is to be classed.

- For auxiliary machinery, the maximum continuous shaft power and corresponding revolutions per minute which will be used in service.

3. 4 Definitions

3. 4. 1 Main propulsion engines and turbines are defined as those which drive main propelling machinery directly or indirectly through mechanical shafting and which may also drive electrical generators to provide power for auxiliary services. Auxiliary engines and turbines are defined as those coupled to electrical generators which provide power for auxiliary services, for electrical main propulsion motors or a combination of both.

3. 4. 2 Units and formulae included in the Rules are shown in SI units followed by metric units in brackets, where appropriate.

3. 4. 3 Where the metric version of shaft power, i.e. (shp), appears in the Rules, 1 shp is equivalent to 75 kgf m/s or 0.735 kW.

3. 4. 4 3.4.4 Pressure gauges may be calibrated in MPa, where:
1 MPa = 10 bar = 1 N/mm^2 = 10.2 kgf/cm^2.

3. 5 Ambient reference conditions

3. 5. 1 The rating for classification purposes of main and essential auxiliary machinery intended for installation in sea-going ships to be classed for unrestricted (geographical) service is to be based on a total barometric pressure of 1000 mb, an engine room ambient temperature or suction air temperature of 45°C, a relative humidity of 60 per cent and sea-water temperature or, where applicable, the temperature of the charge air coolant at the inlet of 32°C. The equipment manufacturer is not expected to provide simulated ambient reference conditions at a test bed.

3. 5. 2 In the case of a ship to be classed for restricted service, the rating is to be suitable for the temperature conditions associated with the geographical limits of the restricted service, *See* Pt 1, Ch 2 Classification Regulations.

3. 6 Ambient operating conditions

3. 6. 1 Main and essential auxiliary machinery and equipment is to be capable of operating satisfactorily under the conditions shown in Table 1. 3. 1: Ambient operating conditions.

3. 6. 2 Where it is intended to allow for operation in ambient temperatures outside those shown in Table 1. 3. 1: Ambient operating conditions, the permissible temperatures and associated periods of time are to be specified and details are to be submitted for consideration. Propelling and essential auxiliary machinery, *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.8 Descriptive notes 2.8.1, is to retain a continuous level of functional capability under these conditions and any level of degraded performance is to be defined. Operation under these circumstances is not to be the cause of damage to equipment in the system and is additionally to be acceptable to the National Authority of the country in which the ship is to be registered.

Table 1. 3. 1: Ambient operating conditions

Air		
Installations, Components	Location, arrangement	Temperature range (°C)
	In enclosed spaces	0 to +45, *See* Note 1
Machinery and electrical installations	On machinery component, boilers. In spaces subject to higher and lower temperatures	According to specific local conditions, *See* Note 2

	On the open deck	–25 to +45, *See* Note 1
Water		
Coolant		Temperature (°C)
Sea-water or charge air coolant inlet to charge air cooler		–2 to +32, *See* Notes 1 and 3

Note *1.* For ships intended to be classed for restricted service, a deviation from the temperatures stated may be considered.

Note *2.* Details of local environmental conditions are stated in Annex B of IEC 60092: *Electrical installations in ships – Part 101: Definitions and general requirements.*

Note *3.* Charge air cooling arrangements utilising re-circulated cooling to maintain temperatures in a different range are accepted where the machinery and equipment operation is not degraded with a primary supply of cooling in the temperature range stated in this Table.

3. 7 Inclination of ship

3. 7. 1 Main and essential auxiliary machinery is to operate satisfactorily under the conditions as shown in Table 1. 3. 2: Inclination of ship.

3. 7. 2 Any proposal to deviate from the angles given in Table 1. 3. 2: Inclination of ship will be specially considered taking into account the type, size and service conditions of the ship.

3. 7. 3 The dynamic angles of inclination in Table 1. 3. 2: Inclination of ship may be exceeded in certain circumstances dependent upon ship type and operation. The Shipbuilder is, therefore, to ensure that the machinery is capable of operating under these angles of inclination.

Table 1. 3. 2: Inclination of ship

	Angle of inclination, degrees, *See* Note 1			
Installations, components	Athwartships		Fore-and-aft	
	Static	Dynamic	Static	Dynamic
Main and auxiliary machinery essential to the propulsion and safety of the ship	15	22.5	5 *See* Note 2	7.5
Emergency machinery and equipment fitted in accordance with Statutory Requirements	22.5 *See* Note 3	22.5 *See* Note 3	10	10

Note *1.* Athwartships and fore-and-aft inclinations may occur simultaneously.

Note *2.* Where the length of the ship exceeds 100 m, the fore-and-aft static angle of inclination may be taken as: $\frac{500}{L}$ degrees

where L = length of ship, in metres.

Note *3.* In ships for the carriage of liquefied gas and of liquid chemicals the emergency machinery and equipment fitted in accordance with Statutory Requirements is also to remain operable with the ship flooded to a final athwartships inclination to a maximum angle of 30°.

3. 8 Power conditions for generator sets

3. 8. 1 Auxiliary engines coupled to electrical generators are to be capable under service conditions of developing continuously the power to drive the generators at full rated output (kW) and in the case

of reciprocating internal combustion engines and gas turbines, of developing for a short period (15 minutes) an overload power of not less than 110 per cent of full rated output, *See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 9.2 Air receiver capacity. In the case of reciprocating internal combustion engines, they are to be tested at works trials as required by Table 2. 11. 2: Scope of shipboard trials for engines in Pt 5, Ch 2 Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engines.

3. 8. 2 Engine builders are to satisfy the Surveyors by tests on individual engines that the above requirements, as applicable, can be complied with, due account being taken of the difference between the temperatures under test conditions and those referred to in Pt 5, Ch 1, 3.5 Ambient reference conditions. Alternatively, where it is not practicable to test the engine/generator set as a unit, type tests (e.g. against a brake) representing a particular size and range of engines may be accepted. With engines and gas turbines any fuel stop fitted is to be set to permit the short period overload power of not less than 10 per cent above full rated output (kW) being developed.

3. 9 Astern power

3. 9. 1 In order to maintain sufficient manoeuvrability and secure control of the ship in all normal circumstances, the main propulsion machinery is to be capable of reversing the direction of thrust so as to bring the ship to rest from the maximum service speed. The main propulsion machinery is to be capable of maintaining in free route astern at least 70 per cent of the ahead revolutions corresponding to the maximum continuous ahead power for which the vessel is classed.

3. 9. 2 Where steam turbines are used for main propulsion, they are to be capable of maintaining in free route astern at least 70 per cent of the ahead revolutions corresponding to the maximum continuous ahead power for which the vessel is classed for a period of at least 15 minutes.

3. 10 Machinery interlocks

3. 10. 1 Interlocks are to be provided to prevent any operation of engines or turbines under conditions that could cause a hazard to the machinery and personnel. These are to include ‘turning gear engaged’, ‘low lubricating oil pressure’, where oil pressure is essential for the prevention of damage during start up, ‘shaft brake engaged’ and where machinery is not available due to maintenance or repairs. The interlock system is to be arranged to be ‘fail safe’.

3. 10. 2 Where machinery is provided with manual turning gear, warning devices or notices may be provided as an alternative to interlocks as required by Pt 5, Ch 1, 3.10 Machinery interlocks 3.10.1.

PART

5

CHAPTER 1 **General Requirements for the Design and Construction of Machinery**

SECTION 4 **Machinery room arrangements**

4. 1 Accessibility

4. 1. 1 Accessibility, for attendance and maintenance purposes, is to be provided for machinery plants.

4. 2 Machinery fastenings

4. 2. 1 Bedplates, thrust seatings and other fastenings are to be of robust construction, and the machinery is to be securely fixed to the ship's structure to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

4. 3 Resilient mountings

4. 3. 1 The dynamic angles of inclination in Table 1. 3. 2: Inclination of ship may be exceeded in certain circumstances dependent upon ship type and operation. The Shipbuilder is, therefore, to ensure that the vibration levels of flexible pipe connections, shaft couplings and mounts remain within the limits specified by the component manufacturer for the following conditions:

a. Maximum dynamic inclinations to be expected during service;
b. Start-stop operation; and
c. The natural frequencies of the system.

Due account is to be taken of any creep that may be inherent in the mount.

4. 3. 2 For equipment of installed power greater than 375 kW, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.6 Definitions 1.6.10.b, a calculation report is to be submitted to demonstrate that the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 1, 4.3 Resilient mountings 4.3.1 are met. The calculation report is to include as a minimum:

a. A plan showing the arrangement of the machinery including mounts, exhaust bellows, and flexible couplings and pipe connections, as applicable; and
b. Maximum allowable loads and deflections and any appropriate type approval documentation for each flexible element (resilient mounts, exhaust gas bellows, flexible couplings and any other applicable flexible pipe connections) for the conditions identified in Pt 5, Ch 1, 4.3 Resilient mountings 4.3.1; and
c. Calculations including natural frequencies and maximum expected loads and deflections of each flexible element (resilient mounts, exhaust gas bellows, flexible couplings and any other applicable flexible pipe connections) for the conditions identified in Pt 5, Ch 1, 4.3 Resilient mountings 4.3.1.

4. 3. 3 Chocks are to be fitted, together with positive means to ensure that manufacturers' limits for lateral or vertical motion are not exceeded. Where resilient mounts are approved for collision loading, then the extent of any additional chocking that may be required will be specially considered. Suitable means are to be provided to accommodate the propeller thrust.

4. 3. 4 Mounts are to be shielded from the possible detrimental effects of oil and, where appropriate, paint and other contaminants.

4. 3. 5 Shafting, piping connections and electrical cable connections are to be provided with sufficient flexibility to accommodate expected movements. Particular attention should be paid to exhaust bellows and the effectiveness of flexible couplings.

4. 4 Resin chocks

4. 4. 1 Synthetic resin compounds used as materials for chocks under machinery components for which alignment is critical, e.g. main engine, gearbox and auxiliary installations where the engine and generator do not share a common baseplate, are to be of a type approved by ACS.

4. 4. 2 The resin chock materials referred to in Pt 5, Ch 1, 4.4 Resin chocks 4.4.1 are to be tested in accordance with Ch 14, 2.11 Machinery chocking compounds (resin chocks) of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials.

4. 4. 3 Materials for chocks are to be approved for the maximum service temperature that the chock will experience.

4. 4. 4 The use of resin for chocking gas turbine casings or similar high temperature applications will be specially considered.

4. 5 Ventilation

4. 5. 1 All spaces including engine and cargo pump spaces, where flammable or toxic gases or vapours may accumulate, are to be provided with adequate ventilation under all conditions.

4. 5. 2 Machinery spaces of category A shall be adequately ventilated so as to ensure that when machinery or boilers therein are operating at full power in all weather conditions, including heavy weather, a sufficient supply of air is maintained to the spaces for the safety and comfort of personnel and the operation of the machinery. Any other machinery space shall be adequately ventilated, as appropriate for the purpose of that machinery space.

4. 6 Fire protection

4. 6. 1 All surfaces of machinery where the surface temperature may exceed 220°C and where impingement of flammable liquids may occur are to be effectively shielded to prevent ignition. Where insulation covering these surfaces is oil-absorbing or may permit penetration of oil, the insulation is to be encased in steel or equivalent.

4. 7 Means of escape

4. 7. 1 For means of escape from machinery spaces, *See* SOLAS 1974 as amended Regulation II-2/ *4.1 Means of escape on passenger ships* or *4.2 Means of escape on cargo ships*, as applicable.

4. 8 Communications

4. 8. 1 Two independent means of communication are to be provided between the bridge and engine room control station from which the engines are normally controlled, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2 Essential features for control, alarm, monitoring and safety systems .

4. 8. 2 One of these means is to visually indicate the order and response, both at the engine room control station and on the bridge.

4. 8. 3 At least one means of communication is to be provided between the bridge and any other control position(s) from which the propulsion machinery may be controlled.

4. 9 Category A machinery spaces

4. 9. 1 'Machinery spaces of Category A' are those spaces and trunks to such spaces which contain:

a. internal combustion machinery used for main propulsion; or

b. internal combustion machinery used for purposes other than main propulsion where such machinery has in the aggregate a total power output of not less than 375 kW; or

c. any oil-fired boiler or fuel oil unit.

PART

5

CHAPTER 1 **General Requirements for the Design and Construction of Machinery**

SECTION 5 **Trials**

5. 1 Inspection

5. 1. 1 Tests of components and trials of machinery, as detailed in the Chapters giving the requirements for individual systems, are to be carried out to the satisfaction of the Surveyors.

5. 2 Sea trials

5. 2. 1 For all types of installation, the sea trials are to be of sufficient duration, and carried out under normal manoeuvring conditions, to prove the machinery under power. The trials are also to demonstrate that any vibration which may occur within the operating speed range is acceptable.

5. 2. 2 The trials are to include demonstrations of the following:

a. The adequacy of the starting arrangements to provide the required number of starts of the main engines.

b. The ability of the machinery to reverse the direction of thrust of the propeller in sufficient time, under normal manoeuvring conditions, and so bring the ship to rest from maximum service speed. Results of the trials to be recorded.

c. The ability to permit astern running at 70 per cent of the full power ahead revolutions corresponding to the maximum continuous ahead power for which the vessel is classed.

d. In steam turbine installations, the ability to permit astern running at 70 per cent of the ahead revolutions corresponding to the maximum continuous ahead power for which the vessel is classed. This astern trial need only be of 15 minutes' duration, but may be extended to 30 minutes at the Surveyor's discretion. To avoid overheating of the turbine due to the effects of ‘windage’ and friction, the astern trial is not to exceed 30 minutes or the manufacturer’s recommendation.

5. 2. 3 Main propulsion systems are to undergo tests to demonstrate the astern response characteristics. The tests are to be carried out over at least the manoeuvring range of the propulsion system and from all control positions. A test plan is to be provided by the yard and accepted by the Surveyor. If specific operational characteristics have been defined by the manufacturer, then these are to be included in the test plan.

5. 2. 4 The reversing characteristics of the propulsion plant, including the blade pitch control system of controllable pitch propellers, are to be demonstrated and recorded during trials.

5. 2. 5 Where controllable pitch propellers are fitted, the free route astern trial is to be carried out with the propeller blades set in the full pitch astern position. Where emergency manual pitch setting facilities are provided, their operation is to be demonstrated to the satisfaction of the Surveyors.

5. 2. 6 In geared installations, prior to full power sea trials, the gear teeth are to be suitably coated to demonstrate the contact markings, and on conclusion of the sea trials all gears are to be opened up sufficiently to permit the Surveyors to make an inspection of the teeth. The marking is to indicate freedom from hard bearing, particularly towards the ends of the teeth, including both ends of each helix where applicable. The contact is to be not less than that required by Pt 5, Ch 5, 4.2 Accuracy of gear cutting and alignment or Pt 5, Ch 5, 5.2 Meshing tests, as applicable.

5. 2. 7 The following information is to be available on board for the use of the master and designated personnel:

- The results of trials to determine stopping times, ship headings and distance;
- For ships having multiple propellers, the results of trials to determine the ability to navigate and manoeuvre with one or more propellers inoperative.
- For ships having a single propulsor driven by multiple engines or electric motors, the results of trials to determine the ability to navigate and manoeuvre with the largest engine or electric motor inoperative.

5. 2. 8 Where the ship is provided with supplementary means for manoeuvring or stopping, the effectiveness of such means are to be demonstrated and recorded as referred to in Pt 5, Ch 1, 5.2 Sea trials 5.2.7.

5. 2. 9 The stopping distance achieved when ship is initially proceeding ahead with a speed of at least 90 per cent of the ship's speed corresponding to 85 per cent of the maximum rated propulsion power should not exceed 15 ship lengths after the astern order has been given. However, if the displacement of the ship makes this criterion impracticable then in no case should the stopping distance exceed 20 ship lengths.

5. 2. 10 For main propulsion systems with reversing gears, controllable pitch propellers or electric propeller drive, running astern is not to lead to the overload of propulsion machinery.

5. 2. 11 All trials are to be to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

PART

5

CHAPTER 1 **General Requirements for the Design and Construction of Machinery**

SECTION 6 **Quality Assurance Scheme for Machinery**

6. 1 General

6. 1. 1 The Quality Assurance Scheme for Machinery (QAM Scheme) is an alternative to direct survey and certification of machinery components and equipment required by the Rules. Under the QAM Scheme ACS will consider the extent to which manufacturing processes and control procedures ensure conformity of that machinery to Rules, technical specifications and any other applicable standards or codes.

6. 1. 2 This QAM Scheme is applicable to items manufactured under closely controlled conditions. The products for which the QAM Scheme is applicable are provided in ACS's ACSPlus Procedure *Approval of a Manufacturer according to the Quality Assurance Scheme for Machinery*.

6. 1. 3 The QAM Scheme does not reduce the test requirements to be carried out in accordance with ACS's Rules.

6. 2 Definitions

6. 2. 1 The following definitions apply in the context of this Section:

6. 2. 2 QAM Scheme audit

An audit, conducted by ACS at the manufacturer's, or their supplier's or subcontractor's, works, of their products and/or processes, which may include direct survey, in order to provide confidence that products are manufactured, tested and inspected in accordance with ACS's Rules. Periodicity of surveillance audits is as agreed in the QAM Scheme Certification Schedule, *See* ACS's ACSPlus Procedure *Approval of a Manufacturer according to the Quality Assurance Scheme for Machinery*.

6. 2. 3 Assessment

A review, conducted by ACS, of evidence gained through a number of sources, such as documentation, submitted by the manufacturer, supplier or subcontractor, and regular QAM Scheme audit reports, in order to verify that products are manufactured, tested and inspected in accordance with the Rules.

6. 2. 4 Manufacturer

A company who contracts to supply components or equipment products to a customer or user and applies for approval under the QAM Scheme.

6. 2. 5 Supplier

A company who contracts to supply materials, components or equipment products to the Manufacturer applying for approval under the QAM Scheme.

6. 2. 6 Sub-contractor

A company who contracts to deliver a service to a supplier or manufacturer under the agreed QAM Scheme arrangements.

6. 3 QAM Scheme Arrangements

6. 3. 1 A manufacturer may apply to be approved under the QAM Scheme where the following requirements are met:

a. The manufacturer has a quality management system which has been certified as meeting the requirements of ISO 9001, or industry-specific equivalent standard, by a certification body accredited by a member of the International Accreditation Forum and recognised by ACS.
b. The manufacturer has processes in place suitable for the products to be certified under the QAM Scheme.
c. The manufacturer has a satisfactory and documented history of quality performance in the supply of products for which certification under the QAM Scheme is requested.

6. 3. 2 The scope and arrangements for survey, identification and certification of products covered by the QAM Scheme are to be agreed with ACS and will be detailed in a Scheme Certification Schedule. Survey will be based on a technical audit approach, focussing on product realisation. Direct survey may also be used where it is considered appropriate to do so.

6. 3. 3 The QAM Scheme procedures given in ACS's ACSPlus Procedure *Approval of a Manufacturer according to the Quality Assurance Scheme for Machinery* are to be complied with.

6. 3. 4 Where ACS is satisfied that the manufacturer meets all of the requirements of the QAM Scheme, and that it is appropriate for the products being manufactured, ACS will issue the manufacturer with a QAM Scheme Certificate which will list products covered.

6. 3. 5 ACS reserves the right to carry out unscheduled audits, with appropriate notice, at the manufacturer's works or their suppliers' and sub-contractors' works.

6. 3. 6 Once every three years, a full re-certification assessment of QAM Scheme compliance, including an audit of the manufacturer's works, will be conducted by ACS.

6. 3. 7 The manufacturer is to advise ACS of changes to the product, processes, suppliers or subcontractors which would affect compliance with the QAM Scheme or ACS's Rules. Any deviations from the approved plans or specifications are to be reported to ACS and written approval obtained prior to dispatch of the items.

6. 3. 8 Where it is considered that the manufacturer no longer meets the approval requirements for the QAM Scheme, the QAM Scheme Certificate will be suspended. In these circumstances, the manufacturer will be notified in writing of ACS's reasons for suspension of the scheme and the manufacturer will revert to direct survey and issue of ACS certificates.

6. 3. 9 **QAM Scheme product certificates** Where the manufacturer is approved according to the QAM Scheme, they will be entitled to issue 'QAM Scheme product certificates'. These certificates are to clearly detail the product being certified and are to be validated by an authorised representative of the manufacturer. The certificates are to be countersigned by ACS to certify that the Rule requirements for that product are being met.

6. 4 Acceptance of purchased materials, components and equipment

6. 4. 1 The manufacturer is to establish and maintain procedures and controls to ensure compliance with ACS's requirements for certification of products from its suppliers. The manufacturer is to ensure that purchased products that are required to be certified in accordance with Ch 3 Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars to Ch 10 Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring of the Rules for

Materials are made at works which have been approved by ACS for the type and grade of product being supplied. The manufacturer's system for control of purchased products is to be based on one or a combination of the following alternatives:

a. Product certification by ACS at the supplier's works in accordance with the requirements of the Rules.
b. Product certification by a supplier separately approved by ACS under the QAM Scheme or other ACS Quality Scheme covering those products.
c. Product certification by the supplier in accordance with quality processes for control of suppliers of purchased products included within the scope of the manufacturer's QAM Scheme approval. These quality schemes are to ensure compliance with Rule requirements for the purchased products.

6. 4. 2 **Manufacturers' certificates issued under the QAM Scheme**

Where the manufacturer's system for control of purchased products from suppliers is based on paragraph Pt 5, Ch 1, 6.4 Acceptance of purchased materials, components and equipment 6.4.1.c and Surveyors have confirmed that ACS Rules are being satisfied, in lieu of ACS Certificates for purchased products, the manufacturer will be permitted to accept 'Manufacturers' certificates issued under the QAM Scheme'. The certificates must bear the QAM Scheme mark and the following statement:

"This certificate is issued under the arrangements authorised by Asia Classification Society(operating entity, e.g. EMEA) in accordance with the requirements of the Quality Assurance Scheme for Machinery and Scheme number, QAM……."

PART

5

CHAPTER 1 **General Requirements for the Design and Construction of Machinery**

SECTION 7 **Spare gear for machinery installations**

7. 1 Application

7. 1. 1 Adequate spare parts for the propelling and essential auxiliary machinery, together with the necessary tools for maintenance and repair, are to be readily available for use.

7. 1. 2 The spare parts to be supplied and their location is to be the responsibility of the Owner, but they must take into account the design and arrangement of the machinery and the intended service and operation of the ship. Account must also be taken of the recommendations of the manufacturers and any applicable statutory requirement of the country of registration of the ship.

7. 2 Guidance for spare parts

7. 2. 1 For general guidance purposes, spare parts for main and auxiliary machinery installations are shown in the ACS's *Spare Gear Guidance* located on Class Direct.

PART

5

CHAPTER **2** **Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engines**

CONTENTS

SECTION 3	**Crankshaft Design**		**2010**
	3. 1	Application	2010
	3. 2	Scope	2010
	3. 3	Information to be submitted	2011
	3. 4	Symbols	2013
	3. 5	Calculation of alternating stresses due to bending moments and radial forces – assumptions	2018
	3. 6	Calculation of bending stresses	2019
	3. 7	Calculation of torsional stresses	2021
	3. 8	Stress concentration factors	2022
	3. 9	Additional bending stress	2025
	3. 10	Equivalent alternating stress	2026
	3. 11	Fatigue strength	2026
	3. 12	Acceptability criteria	2028
	3. 13	Shrink fit of semi-built crankshafts	2028
SECTION 4	**Electronically controlled engines**		**2030**
	4. 1	General	2030
	4. 2	Risk-based analysis	2030
	4. 3	Control engineering systems	2032
	4. 4	Software	2032
SECTION 5	**Construction and welded structures**		**2033**
	5. 1	Crankcases	2033
	5. 2	Welded joints	2033
	5. 3	Materials and construction	2033
	5. 4	Post-weld heat treatment	2034
	5. 5	Inspection	2034
SECTION 6	**Turning gear**		**2035**

6. 1 General requirements 2035
SECTION 7 Control and monitoring of main, auxiliary and emergency engines 2036
7. 1 General 2036
7. 2 Main engine governors 2036
7. 3 Auxiliary and emergency engine governors 2037
7. 4 Overspeed protective devices 2038
7. 5 Unattended machinery 2039
7. 6 Engines for propulsion purposes 2039
7. 7 Auxiliary engines 2043
7. 8 Emergency engines 2045
SECTION 8 Piping 2047
8. 1 Fuel oil, hydraulic and high pressure oil systems 2047
8. 2 Additional requirements for fuel oil, hydraulic and high pressure oil systems for ships 2048
8. 3 Exhaust systems 2048
8. 4 Starting air pipe systems and safety fittings 2049
SECTION 9 Starting arrangements 2050
9. 1 Dead ship condition starting arrangements 2050
9. 2 Air receiver capacity 2051
9. 3 Electric starting 2051
9. 4 Additional requirements for electric starting for non-SOLAS cargo vessels 2051
9. 5 Starting of the emergency source of power 2051
9. 6 Engine control, alarm monitoring and safety system power supplies 2052
SECTION 10 Safety arrangements 2053
10. 1 Relief valves 2053
10. 2 Number of relief valves 2054
10. 3 Size of relief valves 2054
10. 4 Vent pipes 2054
10. 5 Warning notice 2055
10. 6 Crankcase access and lighting 2055
10. 7 Fire-extinguishing system for scavenge manifolds 2055
10. 8 Oil mist detection 2055
SECTION 11 Factory Acceptance Test and Shipboard Trials of Engines 2057
11. 1 Safety 2057
11. 2 General 2057

11. 3 Works trials (factory acceptance test) 2058
11. 4 Shipboard trials 2061
SECTION 12 Turbochargers 2064
12. 1 General 2064
12. 2 Works testing and inspection 2064
12. 3 Certification 2065
12. 4 Matching with engine 2065
SECTION 13 Air compressors 2067
13. 1 General requirements 2067
13. 2 Plans and particulars 2067
13. 3 Materials 2067
13. 4 Design and Construction 2068
13. 5 Testing 2070
13. 6 Safety arrangements and monitoring 2070
13. 7 Crankcase relief valves 2070
13. 8 Number of crankcase relief valves 2071
13. 9 Size of crankcase relief valves 2071
13. 10 Vent pipes 2072
SECTION 14 Type testing – General 2073
14. 1 Engines 2073
14. 2 Turbochargers 2073
14. 3 Crankcase explosion relief valves 2073
14. 4 Crankcase oil mist detection system 2074
SECTION 15 Type testing – General 2075
15. 1 General 2075
15. 2 Submission requirements 2075
15. 3 Risk analysis 2076
15. 4 Design requirements 2077
15. 5 Gas piping 2078
15. 6 Charge air system 2079
15. 7 Exhaust system 2079
15. 8 Crankcase 2079
15. 9 Gas ignition in the cylinder 2080
15. 10 Gas admission valves 2080
15. 11 DF engines 2080
15. 12 GF engines 2080

15. 13 Pre-mixed engines 2080
15. 14 Control, monitoring, alarm and safety systems 2081
SECTION 16 Cross-references 2083

PART

5

CHAPTER **2** **Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engines**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 2. 3. 1: Crankshaft variables for SCF calculation 2023
Table 2. 3. 2: Crankshaft variable boundaries for analytical SCF calculation 2023
Table 2. 3. 3: Additional bending stresses 2026
Table 2. 7. 1: Engines for propulsion purposes: Alarms and slow-downs 2039
Table 2. 7. 2: Engines for propulsion purposes: Automatic shutdowns 2042
Table 2. 7. 3: Auxiliary engines: Alarms and safeguards 2043
Table 2. 7. 4: Emergency engines: Alarms and safeguards 2045
Table 2. 11. 1: Scope of works trials for engines 2058
Table 2. 11. 2: Scope of shipboard trials for engines 2061
Table 2. 13. 1: Angle between cylinders 2069
Table 2. 15. 1: Plans and particulars to be submitted 2075
Table 2. 15. 2: Monitoring and safety system functions for DF and GF engines 2081

PART

5

CHAPTER **2** **Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engines**

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 2. 3. 1: Designation of cylinders 2012
Figure 2. 3. 2: Articulated-type connecting rod 2012
Figure 2. 3. 3: Crank dimensions for overlapped crankshaft 2015
Figure 2. 3. 4: Crank dimensions for crankshaft without overlap 2016
Figure 2. 3. 5: Crankpin section through the oil bore 2016
Figure 2. 3. 6: Crankthrow of semi-built crankshaft 2016
Figure 2. 3. 7: Stress concentration factors in crankshaft fillets 2017
Figure 2. 3. 8: Stress concentration factors and stress distribution at the edges of oil drillings 2017
Figure 2. 3. 9: Bending moment and shear force for in-line engine crankthrows 2018
Figure 2. 3. 10: Bending moment and shear force for V engine crankthrows 2019
Figure 2. 7. 1: Reference values for maximum possible sudden power increase (four-stroke engines) 2038

PART

5

CHAPTER 2 Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engines

SECTION Scope

Engines providing power for services essential to the safety of the vessel are to be constructed under survey and in accordance with the requirements of this Chapter (*See also* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.4 Class notations (machinery) 2.4.1).

The requirements of this Chapter are applicable to reciprocating internal combustion engines operating on liquid, gas or dual fuel for main propulsion and essential auxiliary services (hereinafter referred to as engines). Pt 5, Ch 2, 3 Crankshaft Design is not applicable to auxiliary engines having powers of less than 110 kW.

For the purposes of this Chapter engine type, expressed by the manufacturer/licensor's designation, is defined by:

a. the bore and stroke;
b. the method of injection (i.e. direct injection, indirect injection, pilot injection);
c. the fuel pump and injection system (independent line to fuel oil valve, common rail);
d. the valve and injection operation (by cams or electronically controlled);
e. the fuel(s) used (liquid, dual-fuel, gaseous, etc.);
f. the working cycle (4-stroke, 2-stroke);
g. the gas exchange (naturally aspirated, turbocharged, etc.);
h. the method of turbocharging (pulsating system, constant pressure system);
i. the charging air cooling system (with or without intercooler, number of stages);
j. cylinder arrangement (in-line, vee, etc.);
k. the maximum continuous power per cylinder (or maximum continuous brake mean effective pressure) at maximum continuous speed;
l. the manufacturer and type of governor (and control system if applicable) fitted.

A complete engine includes the control system, turbocharger(s) and all ancillary systems and equipment referred to in this Chapter that are used for operation of the engine for which there are rule requirements; this includes systems allowing the use of different fuel types.

Arrangements for dual fuel engines will be specially considered.

Primary exhaust gas emissions abatement plant (where fitted) is to meet the requirements of this Chapter; additionally, it is to meet the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 24 Emissions Abatement Plant for Combustion Machinery. Where secondary exhaust gas emissions abatement systems are fitted to engines, they are to meet the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 24 Emissions Abatement Plant for Combustion Machinery.

PART

5

CHAPTER 2 Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engines

SECTION 1 General requirements

1. 1 Application

1. 1. 1 The requirements of this Chapter are applicable to reciprocating internal combustion engines operating on liquid, gas or dual fuel for main propulsion and essential auxiliary services (hereinafter referred to as engines). Pt 5, Ch 2, 3 Crankshaft Design is not applicable to auxiliary engines having powers of less than 110 kW.

1. 1. 2 Engines providing power for services essential to the safety of the vessel are to be constructed under survey and in accordance with the requirements of this Chapter (*See also* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.4 Class notations (machinery) 2.4.1).

1. 2 Scope

1. 2. 1 For the purposes of this Chapter engine type, expressed by the manufacturer/licensor's designation, is defined by:

a. the bore and stroke;
b. the method of injection (i.e. direct injection, indirect injection, pilot injection);
c. the fuel pump and injection system (independent line to fuel oil valve, common rail);
d. the valve and injection operation (by cams or electronically controlled);
e. the fuel(s) used (liquid, dual-fuel, gaseous, etc.);
f. the working cycle (4-stroke, 2-stroke);
g. the gas exchange (naturally aspirated, turbocharged, etc.);
h. the method of turbocharging (pulsating system, constant pressure system);
i. the charging air cooling system (with or without intercooler, number of stages);
j. cylinder arrangement (in-line, vee, etc.);
k. the maximum continuous power per cylinder (or maximum continuous brake mean effective pressure) at maximum continuous speed;
l. the manufacturer and type of governor (and control system if applicable) fitted.

1. 2. 2 A complete engine includes the control system, turbocharger(s) and all ancillary systems and equipment referred to in this Chapter that are used for operation of the engine for which there are rule requirements; this includes systems allowing the use of different fuel types.

1. 2. 3 Arrangements for dual fuel engines will be specially considered.

1. 2. 4 Primary exhaust gas emissions abatement plant, e.g. Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR), (where fitted), is to meet the requirements of this Chapter; additionally, it is to meet the applicable requirements of Pt 5, Ch 24 Emissions Abatement Plant for Combustion Machinery. Where secondary exhaust gas emissions abatement plants are fitted to engines, e.g. Scrubbers and Selective Catalytic Reduction (SCR), they are to meet the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 24 Emissions Abatement Plant for Combustion Machinery.

1. 3 Approval process

1. 3. 1 All engines intended for installation on an ACS Class ship are to be Type Approved by ACS (*See* ACS Type Approval System Procedure TA14 for details of the ACS Type Approval process).

1. 3. 2 Each complete engine, as defined in Pt 5, Ch 2, 1.2 Scope, intended for installation on an ACS Classed vessel, is to have an ACS Engine Certificate.

1. 3. 3 For the first engine of a type, the type approval process and the engine certification process may be performed simultaneously.

1. 3. 4 To apply for an ACS Engine Certificate, the following are to be submitted:

a. a list of all documents identified in the 'for information' and 'for appraisal' columns of Table 2. 1. 1: Plans and particulars to be submitted with the relevant drawing numbers and revision status. This list is to cross-reference the approved plans previously submitted as part of the engine Type Approval and identify any plans that have been modified.

b. where there is a licensor/licen*See* arrangement, the list required by Pt 5, Ch 2, 1.3 Approval process 1.3.4.a is to cross-reference the drawings submitted by the designer as part of the engine Type Approval. This list is to identify all changes where the approved design has been modified by the licen*See*. Where the licen*See* proposes design modifications to components, a statement is to be made confirming the licensor's acceptance of the proposed changes. If designer/licensor's acceptance is not confirmed, the engine is to be regarded as a different type and is subject to the complete appraisal and type approval process.

c. all documents with changes from the approved design are to be submitted for review/appraisal.

d. In all cases the complete set of endorsed documents and the list referenced in Pt 5, Ch 2, 1.3 Approval process 1.3.4.a, which are to be provided by the manufacturer, will be required by the Surveyor(s) attending the manufacturer's works. Where a licen*See*/licensor arrangement is in place, this set of documents may be a combination of licensor and licen*See* documents.

1. 3. 5 An ACS Engine Certificate is issued upon satisfactory completion of engine assembly, with associated component testing (*See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 2 Materials and Components) and factory acceptance testing (*See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 11 Factory Acceptance Test and Shipboard Trials of Engines) or, issued in accordance with the alternative approach for product assurance approved by ACS, *See* Pt 5, Ch 1, 1.3 Alternative approach for product assurance.

1. 3. 6 For appraisal of emergency generator engines and turbochargers additional submissions are required. *See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 1.4 Submission requirements 1.4.4 and Pt 5, Ch 2, 1.4 Submission requirements 1.4.5 as applicable.

1. 4 Submission requirements

1. 4. 1 The plans and information are to be submitted as required in Table 2. 1. 1: Plans and particulars to be submitted and Pt 5, Ch 2, 1.4 Submission requirements 1.4.2 to Pt 5, Ch 2, 1.4 Submission requirements 1.4.7 as applicable.

Table 2. 1. 1: Plans and particulars to be submitted

.	For information (X indicates reason for submission)	For appraisal
Engine particulars (ACS Form 2073 with general engine and ancillaries information, Project Guide, Marine Installation Manual), *See* Note 1	X	

Material specifications of principal components with information on non-destructive material tests and pressure tests		X
Engine cross-section	X	
Engine longitudinal section	X	
Engine frames, welding drawings, *See* Notes 2 and 3		X
Main engine foundation and holding down and securing arrangements	X (metal chocks)	X (non-metallic chocks)
Bedplate and crankcase of cast design	X	
Bedplate and crankcase of welded design, with welding details and welding instructions, *See* Notes 2 and 3		X
Bedplate/oil sump welding drawings, *See* Note 2		X
Thrust bearing assembly, *See* Note 4	X	
Thrust shaft or intermediate shaft (if integral with engine)		X
Thrust bearing bedplate of welded design, with welding details and welding instructions, *See* Note 2		X
Frame (*See* Note 3), framebox *See* Note 3 and gearcase of cast construction	X	
Tie rod	X	
Connecting rod, assembly, *See* Note 5	X	
Crosshead, assembly, *See* Note 5	X	
Piston rod, assembly, *See* Note 5	X	
Piston, assembly, *See* Note 5	X	
Piston head	X	
Cylinder jacket/ block of cast construction, *See* Note 3	X	
Cylinder cover, assembly, *See* Note 5	X	
Cylinder liner	X	
Counterweights (if not integral with crankshaft), including fastening	X	
Crankshaft, details (for each crankthrow)		X
Crankshaft, assembly (for each crankthrow)		X
Crankshaft calculations (*See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 3 Crankshaft Design)	X	
Camshaft drive, assembly, *See* Note 5	X	
Flywheel or turning-wheel	X	
Shaft coupling interface arrangement including dimensions and material details		X
Details of shielding and insulation of exhaust pipes and other parts operating at an elevated temperature, which might be impinged by flammable fluid(s) as a result of a system failure	X	
Schematic layout or other equivalent documents for the engine, *See* Note 6:		
• Starting and control air systems		X
• Fuel system		X
• Lubricating oil system		X

• Cooling water system		X
• Hydraulic systems		X
• Engine control and safety system		X
High pressure fuel injection pump assembly	X	
High pressure parts for fuel oil injection system, *See* Note 7		X
Shielding arrangements for high pressure piping - fuel, hydraulic & flammable oils (*See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 8.1 Fuel oil, hydraulic and high pressure oil systems 8.1.4)		X
Fastening arrangements for main bearings	X	
Fastening arrangements for cylinder heads and exhaust valve (two stroke design)	X	
Fastening arrangements for connecting rods	X	
Vibration dampers/detuners and moment compensators	X	
Construction and arrangement of vibration dampers	X	
Details of mechanical joints of piping systems		X
Oil mist detection and/or alternative arrangements		X
Construction of accumulators for electronically controlled engine		X
Construction of common accumulators for electronically controlled engine		X
Construction of accumulators for hydraulic oil and fuel oil		X
Arrangement and details of the crankcase explosion relief valve where applicable (*See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 10 Safety arrangements)		X
Calculation results for crankcase explosion relief valves (*See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 10 Safety arrangements)		X
Construction and arrangements of hydraulic systems for actuation of sub-systems:		
• Control valves, high-pressure pumps, pipes and accumulators	X	
• Drive for high pressure pumps	X	
• Valve bodies, if applicable	X	
For engine control, alarm monitoring and safety systems, the plans and information required by Pt 5, Ch 2, 1.4,, Submission requirements 1.4.3 , *See* Note 8		X
Generator test results that state the engine maximum load steps which satisfy the quality of power supply requirements specified in Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.7 Design and construction		X
Planned operating profiles for the vessel at sea and during manoeuvring as agreed with the Operators		X
List of sub-contractors for main parts	X	
Operation and service manuals, *See* Note 9	X	
Risk-based analysis (for engine control system), *See* Note 10	X	

Test program resulting from risk-based analysis (for engine control system), *See* Note 10		X
Production specifications for castings and welding procedures	X	
Evidence of quality control system for engine design, production and in-service maintenance, *See* Notes 5 and 11	X	
Type approval certification for environmental tests of control components, *See* Note 12	X	
Details of the engine type test program and the type test report, *See* Note 13		X
Engine test schedule (FAT & shipboard trials, *See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 1.4 Submission requirements 1.4.2)		X
Documentation verifying compliance with inclination limits (*See* Pt 5, Ch 1, 3.7 Inclination of ship)		X
Combustion pressure-displacement relationship		X
Plans and details for dead ship condition starting arrangements, *See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 9.1, Dead ship condition starting arrangements		X

Note *1.* *ACS* Form 2073 will be supplied on application. Note that the turbochargers, if required to be type approved, are to have plans and particulars submitted as detailed in Pt 5, Ch 2, 1.4 Submission requirements 1.4.5.

Note *2.* For approval of materials and weld procedure specifications. The weld procedure specification is to include details of pre- and post-weld heat treatment, weld consumables and fit-up conditions.

Note *3.* For each cylinder for which dimensions and details differ.

Note *4.* If integral with engine and not integrated in the bedplate.

Note *5.* Including identification of components to ensure traceability in accordance with the Rules for Materials.

Note *6.* Details of the system so far as supplied by the engine manufacturer such as: main dimensions, operating media and maximum working pressures.

Note *7.* The documentation to contain specifications for pressures, pipe dimensions and materials.

Note *8.* The submission is to include a general overview of the operating principles, supported by schematics explaining the functionality of individual systems and sub-systems. The information is to relate to the engine capability and functionality under defined operating and emergency conditions such as recovery from a failure or malfunction, with particular reference to the functioning of programmable electronic systems and any sub-systems. The information is also to indicate if the engine has different modes of operation, such as to limit exhaust gas emissions and/or to run under an economic fuel consumption mode or any other mode that is electronically controlled.

Note *9.* Operational manuals are to contain maintenance requirements (servicing and repair) including details of any special tools and gauges that are to be used with their fitting/settings together with any test requirements on completion of maintenance. They are to include a description of each system's particulars and include reference to the functioning of sub-systems.

Note *10.* Where engines rely on hydraulic, pneumatic or electronic control of fuel injection and/or valves, the risk-based analysis is to address the mechanical, pressure containing, electrical, electronic and programmable electronic systems and arrangements that support the operation of the engine. It is to demonstrate that failure of the control system will not result in the operation of the engine being degraded beyond acceptable performance criteria for the engine and that suitable risk mitigation has been achieved in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 2, 4.2, Risk-based analysis.

Note *11.* Including quality plan for sourcing, traceability, design, installation and testing of all components used in the fuel and hydraulic oil systems installed with the engine.

Note *12.* Tests are to demonstrate the ability of the control, protection and safety equipment to function as intended under the specified testing conditions as per ACS Type Approval Test Specification Number 1.

Note *13.* The type test report may be submitted shortly after the conclusion of the type test. For electronically controlled engines evidence of type testing of the engine with the programmable electronic system, or a proposed factory acceptance test plan at the engine builders with the programmable electronic system functioning, is to be submitted to verify the functionality and behaviour under normal operating and fault conditions of the programmable electronic control system.

1. 4. 2 A schedule of testing at engine packager's or system integrator's facility, pre-sea trial commissioning and sea trials is to be submitted. The test schedules are to identify all modes of engine operation and the sea trials are to include typical port manoeuvres under the intended engine operating modes. The schedule is to include:

a. testing and trials to demonstrate that the engine is capable of operating as described in Table 2. 1. 1: Plans and particulars to be submitted, Note 10;
b. tests to verify that the response of the complete mechanical, hydraulic, electrical and electronic system is as predicted for the intended operational modes; and
c. testing required to verify the conclusions of the risk-based analysis.

The scope of these tests is to be agreed with ACS based on the risk-based analysis.

1. 4. 3 In addition to the applicable plans and particulars required by Pt 6, Ch 1, 1.2 Documentation required for design review the following information for control, alarm, monitoring and safety systems relating to the operation of an electronically controlled engine is to be submitted:

a. Engine configuration details, *See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 4.3 Control engineering systems 4.3.2.
   i. Local and remote means to carry out system configuration.
   ii. Engine builder procedures for undertaking configuring.
   iii. Roles and responsibilities for configuration (e.g. Engine builder, engine packager, system integrator or other nominated party) with accompanying schedule.
   iv. Configurable settings and parameters (including those not to be modified from a default value).
   v. Configuration for propulsion, auxiliary or emergency engine application.
b. Software quality plans, including configuration management documents.
c. Software safety evidence.
d. Software conformity assessment report.

Configuration records are to be maintained and are to be made available to the Surveyor at testing and trials and on request in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 1, 1.1 General 1.1.4 and Pt 6, Ch 1, 7.1 General 7.1.3.

1. 4. 4 Emergency generator engine plans, information and test schedules, required for design appraisal, are to be in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems.

1. 4. 5 For turbochargers, the following plans and particulars are to be submitted. The submission requirements vary depending on the category of the turbocharger; category A, B and C turbochargers are defined in Pt 5, Ch 2, 12.1 General 12.1.2:

a. Category A (on request):
   i. Turbocharger specification including type, compression ratio and operating condition.
   ii. Cross-sectional drawing with principal dimensions and names of components.
   iii. Containment test report.
   iv. Test program.
b. Category B:
   i. Turbocharger specification including type of turbine and compressor, compression ratio, bearing and cooling method.
   ii. Cross-sectional drawing with principal dimensions and materials of housing components for containment evaluation.
   iii. Documentation of containment in the event of disc fracture.
   iv. Operational data and limitations, i.e.:
      - Maximum permissible operating speed (rpm)
      - Alarm level for over-speed
      - Maximum permissible exhaust gas temperature before turbine
      - Alarm level for exhaust gas temperature before turbine
      - Minimum lubrication oil inlet pressure
      - Lubrication oil inlet pressure low alarm set point
      - Maximum lubrication oil outlet temperature
      - Lubrication oil outlet temperature high alarm set point
      - Maximum permissible vibration levels, i.e. self- and externally generated vibration (Alarm levels may be equal to permissible limits but are not to be reached when operating the engine at 110 per cent power or at any approved intermittent overload beyond 110 per cent.)

i. Arrangement of lubrication system, all variants within a range.
ii. A list of main current suppliers and subcontractors for rotating parts and an operation and maintenance manual.
iii. Type test reports.

b. Category C:
i. Plans and particulars as for Category B.
ii. Drawings of the housing and rotating parts (shaft, wheels, blades and nozzle) including details of blade fixing for turbine and compressor.
iii. Material specifications (including density, Poisson's ratio, range of chemical composition and mechanical properties (at room temperature), and high-temperature strength characteristics as well as creep rate and rupture strength for the design service life (parts subject to 450 degrees Celsius or more)) of all parts mentioned above including details of the material and quality control system to be used for these parts.
iv. Welding details and welding procedure of above mentioned parts, if applicable.
v. Documentation* of safe torque transmission when the disc is connected to the shaft by an interference fit.
vi. Information on expected lifespan, considering creep, low cycle fatigue and high cycle fatigue.
vii. Operation and maintenance manuals*.
viii. Arrangements of cooling system.

Note * Documentation is to be provided applicable to two representative sizes in a generic range of turbochargers.

1. 4. 6 Where considered necessary ACS may require additional documentation to be submitted.

1. 4. 7 The following information is to be submitted to ACS for acceptance of oil mist detection equipment and alarm arrangements:

a. Description of oil mist detection equipment and system including alarms.
b. Copy of the test house report in accordance with the requirements of Test Specification No. 4 – *Type testing of reciprocating internal combustion engines and associated ancillary equipment. See also* Pt 5, Ch 2, 14.4 Crankcase oil mist detection system.
c. Schematic layout of engine oil mist detection arrangements showing location of detectors/sensors and piping arrangements and dimensions.
d. Maintenance and test manual which is to include the following information:
i. Intended use of equipment and its operation;
ii. Functionality tests to demonstrate that the equipment is operational and that any faults can be identified and corrective actions notified;
iii. Maintenance routines and spare parts recommendations;
iv. Limit setting and instructions for safe limit levels; and
v. Where necessary, details of configurations in which the equipment is and is not to be used.

1. 4. 8 Where engine components are subject to autofrettage, the following information is to be submitted (*See also* Pt 5, Ch 2, 2.4 Autofrettage):

a. Drawings and other related documents/information for products to be subjected to autofrettage, including material grade and dimensions.
b. Details of product quality assurance processes.
c. Place of manufacture and details of external providers of products subjected to autofrettage.
d. A report detailing how repeatability and reliability of autofrettage process are achieved. This is to include the following:
i. Method of autofrettage
ii. Method to control extent of autofrettage
iii. Calibration of the autofrettage system
iv. Details of how the critical parameters affecting product characteristics are controlled.

e. Method for recording results and list of data that is recorded.
f. Finished component and/or system testing.

PART

5

CHAPTER **2** **Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engines**

SECTION **2** **Materials and Components**

2. 1 Crankshaft Materials

2. 1. 1 The specified minimum tensile strength of castings and forgings for crankshafts is to be selected within the following general limits:

a. Carbon and carbon-manganese steel castings –400 to 550 N/mm^2
b. Carbon and carbon-manganese steel forgings (normalised and tempered) -400 to 600 N/mm^2
c. Carbon and carbon-manganese steel forgings (quenched and tempered) -not exceeding 700 N/mm^2
d. Alloy steel castings - not exceeding 700 N/mm^2
e. Alloy steel forgings - not exceeding 1000 N/mm^2
f. Spheroidal or nodular graphite iron castings -370 to 800 N/mm^2.

2. 1. 2 Where it is proposed to use alloy castings, micro alloyed or alloy steel forgings or iron castings, details of the chemical composition, heat treatment and mechanical properties are to be submitted for approval.

2. 2 Testing and inspection

2. 2. 1 Materials and components for engines are to be manufactured, tested and documented in accordance with Table 2. 2. 1: Summary of testing and associated documentation for engine componentsunder a quality control system that is suitable for the actual engine types to be certified by ACS. *See also* Pt 5, Ch 2, 2.2 Testing and inspection 2.2.4 and the applicable requirements specified in the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials.

2. 2. 2 Where an ACS quality scheme is in place (*See* Pt 5, Ch 1, 1.3 Alternative approach for product assurance), the testing and documentation requirements in Table 2. 2. 1: Summary of testing and associated documentation for engine components will be in accordance with a specific ACS quality scheme certification schedule identifying the tests, intervention requirements and associated documentation including types of certificates that are to be issued.

2. 2. 3 The testing and inspection in Table 2. 2. 1: Summary of testing and associated documentation for engine components is to be documented by the manufacturer (e.g. manufacturer certified materials testing or manufacturer issued NDT report as applicable), except where ACS intervention is explicitly required, in which case an ACS Component Certificate is to be issued which confirms conformity with the Rule requirements, with tests carried out on either the finished component itself, or on samples taken from earlier stages in the production of the component, as applicable.

2. 2. 4 Where an ACS material certificate is specified for components listed in Table 2. 2. 1: Summary of testing and associated documentation for engine components, the material is to be from an ACS approved manufacturer, and manufactured within the scope of approval of that manufacturer, except where explicitly stated otherwise in other Parts and Chapters of the Rules.

2. 2. 5 The manufacturer is not exempted from responsibility for any relevant tests and inspections of those parts for which documentation is not explicitly requested by ACS. Manufacturers are to be equipped in such a way that all materials and components can be consistently produced to the required standard. This includes production and assembly lines, machining units, special tools and devices, assembly and testing rigs as well as all lifting and transportation devices.

2. 2. 6 Where Table 2. 2. 1: Summary of testing and associated documentation for engine components states that a test report is required, this is to be issued by the manufacturer and provided for review by the Surveyor. The report is to identify the samples from the current production batch that have been tested and inspected to confirm that the component complies with all applicable requirements.

2. 2. 7 Where a manufacturer's document (test certificate or NDT report) is required in Table 2. 2. 1: Summary of testing and associated documentation for engine components, this is to be issued by the manufacturer and provided for review by the Surveyor. The document is to comply with the requirements of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials, Ch 1, 3.1 General 3.1.3.c or Ch 1, 5.5 Non-destructive examination reports 5.5.1 as applicable and is to identify the tests and inspections that have been carried out on the finished component itself or, where applicable, on samples taken from earlier stages in the production of the component.

2. 2. 8 Components and materials not specified in Table 2. 2. 1: Summary of testing and associated documentation for engine components or of novel design will be specially considered upon submission of their details.

Table 2. 2. 1: Summary of testing and associated documentation for engine components

Part	Material properties *See* Note 2	Non-destructive examination	Hydraulic testing *See* Note 4	Dimensional inspection *See* Note 3	Visual inspection	Applicable to engines	Final document to be issued
Welded bedplate	W (C + M)	W (UT + CD)	-	-	ACS(V) fit-up + post-welding	All	ACS Component Certificate
Bearing transverse girders (cast steel)	W (C + M)	W (UT + CD)	-	-	ACS(V)	All	ACS Component Certificate
Welded frame box *See* Note 5	W (C + M)	W (UT + CD)	-	-	ACS(V) fit-up + post-welding	All	ACS Component Certificate
Cylinder block (grey cast iron or speroidal graphite cast iron)	-	-	W (P) *See* Note 6	-	-	>400kW/cylinder	W Hydraulic Test Certificate
Welded cylinder frames *See* Note 5	W (C + M)	W (UT + CD)	-	-	ACS(V) fit-up + post-welding	Crosshead	ACS Component Certificate
Engine block (grey cast iron)	-	-	W (P) *See* Note 6	-	-	>400kW/cylinder	W Hydraulic Test Certificate
Engine block (spheroidal graphite cast iron)	W (M)	-	W (P) *See* Note 6	-	-	>400kW/cylinder	W Material Properties Certificate W Hydraulic Test Certificate

Cylinder liner	W (C + M)	-	W (P) *See* Note 6	-	-	B>300mm	W Material Properties Certificate W Hydraulic Test Certificate
Cylinder head (grey cast iron or spheroidal graphite cast iron)	-	-	W (P)	-	-	B>300mm	W Hydraulic Test Certificate
Cylinder head (cast steel)	W (C + M)	W (UT + CD)	W (P)	-	ACS(V)	B>300mm	ACS Component Certificate
Cylinder head (forged)	W (C + M)	W (UT + CD)	W (P)	-	ACS(V)	B>300mm	ACS Component Certificate
Piston crown (cast steel)	W (C + M)	W (UT + CD)	-	-	ACS(V)	B>400mm	ACS Component Certificate
Piston crown (forged)	W (C + M)	W (UT + CD)	-	-	ACS(V)	B>400mm	ACS Component Certificate
Crankshaft (one piece)	ACS(C + M)	W (UT + CD)	-	W	ACS(V) (Random, of fillets and oil bores)	All	ACS Component Certificate
Semi-built crankshaft (crankthrow, forged main journal and journals with flange)	ACS(C + M)	W (UT + CD)	-	W	ACS(V) (Random, of fillets and shrink fittings)	All	ACS Component Certificate
Exhaust gas valve cage	-	-	W (P)	-	-	Crosshead	W Hydraulic Test Certificate
Piston rod	LR(C + M)	W (UT + CD)	-	-	ACS(V) (Random)	Crosshead B>400mm	ACS Component Certificate
Crosshead pin	ACS(C + M)	W (UT + CD)	-	-	ACS(V) (Random)	Crosshead	ACS Component Certificate
Connecting rod with cap	ACS(C + M)	W (UT + CD)	-	W	ACS(V) (Random, of all surfaces in particular those shot peened)	All	ACS Component Certificate
Crankshaft coupling bolts	ACS(C + M)	W (UT + CD)	-	W	ACS(V) (Random, of interference fit)	All	ACS Component Certificate
Bolts and studs for cylinder heads, crossheads, main bearings and connecting rods *See* Note 8	W (C + M)	W (UT + CD)	-	TR [thread making for connecting rods]	-	B>300mm	W Material Properties Certificate W Non-Destructive Examination Report W Test Report

Tie rod *See* Note 9	W (C + M)	W (UT + CD)	-	TR [thread making]	ACS(V) (Random)	Crosshead	ACS Component Certificate
High pressure fuel injection system – pump body (pressure side) *See* Notes 10 and 11	W/(C + M)	-	W (Lesser of P or *p*+30 MPa TR (Lesser of P or *p*+30 MPa)	-	-	B>300mm B≤300mm	W Material Properties Certificate W Hydraulic Test Certificate or Test Report. *See* Note 14
High pressure fuel injection system – valves *See* Note 10	-	-	W (Lesser of P or *p*+30 MPa) TR (Lesser of P or *p*+30 MPa)	-	-	B>300mm B≤300mm	W Hydraulic Test Certificate or Test Report. *See* Note 14
High pressure fuel injection pipes including common rail *See* Note 10	W (C + M)	-	W (Lesser of P or *p*+30 MPa) TR (Lesser of P or *p*+30 MPa)	-	-	B>300mm B≤300mm	W Material Properties Certificate W Hydraulic Test Certificate or Test Report.*See* Note 14
High pressure common servo oil system	W (C + M)	-	W (Lesser of P or *p*+30 MPa) TR (Lesser of P or P+30 MPa)	-	-	B>300mm B≤300mm	W Material Properties Certificate W Hydraulic Test Certificate or Test Report.*See* Note 14
Coolers, both sides *See* Note 12	W (C + M)	-	W (P)	-	-	B>300mm	W Material Properties Certificate W Hydraulic Test Certificate. *See* Note 14
Accumulator	W (C + M)	-	W (Lesser of P or *p*+30 MPa)	-	-	Accumulators with a capacity >0.5l	W Material Properties Certificate W Hydraulic Test Certificate. *See* Note 14
Piping, pumps, actuators, etc., for hydraulic drive of valves, if applicable	W (C + M)	-	W (P)	-	-	>800kW/cylinder	W Material Properties Certificate W Hydraulic Test Certificate. *See* Note 14
Engine-driven pumps (oil, water, fuel, bilge) excluding those listed separately above	-	-	W (P)	-	-	>800kW/cylinder	W Hydraulic Test Certificate. *See* Note 14

Bearings (main, crosshead, and crankpin) *See* Note 13	TR [C]	TR [UT]	-	W	-	>800kW/cylinder	TR Material Properties TR Non-Destructive Examination Report W Inspection Certificate

SYMBOLS:

B = Bore dimension, refers to engine cylinder bores		*p* = Maximum working pressure of item concerned
C = Chemical composition analysis		P = Pressure test at 1.5*p*
M = Mechanical property analysis		V = Visual examination of accessible surfaces
UT = Ultrasonic testing (*See* Note 1)		ACS( ) = Test/inspection to be certified by ACS
CD = Crack detection by MPI or DPT (*See* Note 7)		TR[ ] = Test report required for process in brackets (*See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 2.2 Testing and inspection 2.2.6)
W ( ) = Test/inspection to be certified by manufacturer		

Note 1. Ultrasonic testing is not required for components manufactured from cast iron.

Note 2. Material properties include chemical composition and mechanical properties, as identified in the table above. Where mechanical testing is required this is to include testing of surface treatment, such as surface hardening (hardness, depth and extent), peening and rolling (extent and applied force) as applicable. Mechanical tests are to be conducted after the final heat treatment has been applied.

Note 3. Dimensional inspection, including assessment of surface condition.

Note 4. Hydraulic testing is applied on the water/oil side of the component. The full lengths of cooling spaces are to be tested, where applicable. Where design or testing features may require modification of these test requirements, special consideration may be given.

Note 5. Where welding is carried out, welding and welder qualifications are to be carried out in accordance with the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials, Ch 12 Welding Qualifications.

Note 6. Hydraulic testing is also required for those parts filled with cooling water and having the function of containing the water which is in contact with the cylinder or cylinder liner.

Note 7. Magnetic particle testing is to be carried out on ferro-magnetic materials, penetrant testing is only to be carried out on non-ferritic materials. Visual examination alone is considered insufficient. Magnetic particle and dye penetrant testing are to be carried out when the forgings are in the finished machined condition.

Note 8. *See also* Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials, Ch 5, 3.5 Non-destructive examination 3.5.1 for detailed non-destructive examination requirements for other bolts and studs.

Note 9. Magnetic particle testing of tie rods may be confined to the threaded portions and the adjacent material over a length equal to that of the thread.

Note 10. Where components are subjected to an autofrettage process accepted by ACS (*See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 2.4 Autofrettage), the component pressure test may be omitted. The assembled system containing such components is to be shown, where practicable, to be pressure-tight as required for hydraulic systems.

Note 11. Pumps used in jerk or timed pump systems only need to have the assembled high pressure containing components hydraulically tested.

Note 12. Material and component certification for accumulators or coolers which are classed as pressure vessels are dependent on the operating pressure and temperature, *See* Pt 5, Ch 11, 1.5, Classification of fusion welded pressure vessels and Pt 5, Ch 11, 1.7 Materials. Charge air coolers are only to be tested on the water side.

Note 13. Ultrasonic testing is required to prove full adhesion between base material and bearing metal.

Note 14. Material certification requirements for pumps and piping components are dependent on the operating pressure and temperature. Requirements given in this table apply except where alternative requirements are explicitly given elsewhere in the Rules. *See* Pt 5, Ch 12, 1.7 Materials.

2. 3 Alignment gauges

2. 3. 1 All main and auxiliary engines exceeding 220 kW (300 shp) are to be provided with an alignment gauge which may be either a bridge weardown gauge, or a micro-meter clock gauge for use between the crankwebs. Only one micrometer clock gauge need be supplied for each ship provided the gauge is suitable for use on all engines.

2. 4 Autofrettage

2. 4. 1 Manufacturers, and external providers of products or services, who carry out autofrettage of engine components, are to apply an approach for product assurance that is accepted by ACS.

2. 4. 2 Documentation for the autofrettage process and the associated approach for product assurance is to be submitted in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 2, 1.4 Submission requirements 1.4.7.

2. 4. 3 Testing carried out as part of the approach for product assurance is to confirm that the autofrettage process has not detrimentally affected the components and demonstrate that the prescriptive Rule requirements for pressure containment have been met, *See* Table 2. 2. 1: Summary of testing and associated documentation for engine components

PART

5

CHAPTER 2 Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engines

SECTION 3 Crankshaft Design

3. 1 Application

3. 1. 1 Pt 5, Ch 2, 3 Crankshaft Design is not applicable to auxiliary engines having powers of less than 110 kW.

3. 2 Scope

3. 2. 1 The formulae given in this Section are applicable to solid or semi-built crankshafts of forged or cast steel, having a main support bearing adjacent to each crankpin.

3. 2. 2 This section uses the statically determinate method; alternative methods, including a fully documented stress analysis, will be considered.

3. 2. 3 Calculations are to be carried out for the maximum continuous power rating for all designed operating conditions.

3. 2. 4 Designs of crankshafts not included in this scope will be subject to special consideration.

3. 2. 5 Where a crankshaft design involves the use of surface treated fillets, or when fatigue parameter influences are tested, or when working stresses are measured, the relevant documents with calculations/analysis are to be submitted to ACS.

3. 2. 6 The design of crankshafts is based on an evaluation of safety against fatigue in the highly stressed areas. The calculation is also based on the assumption that the areas exposed to highest stresses are:

- fillet transitions between the crankpin and web as well as between the journal and web; and
- outlets of crankpin oil bores.

3. 2. 7 When the journal diameter is equal to or larger than the crankpin diameter, the outlets of main journal oil bores are to be formed in a similar way to the crankpin oil bores, otherwise separate documentation of fatigue safety will be specially considered.

3. 2. 8 Calculation of crankshaft strength consists initially in determining the nominal alternating bending (*See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 3.6, Calculation of bending stresses) and nominal alternating torsional stresses (*See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 3.7, Calculation of torsional stresses) which when multiplied by the appropriate stress concentration factors (SCF) (*See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 3.8, Stress concentration factors), result in an equivalent alternating stress (uniaxial stress) (*See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 3.10 Equivalent alternating stress). This equivalent alternating stress is then compared with the fatigue strength of the selected crankshaft material (*See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 3.11, Fatigue strength). This comparison will show whether or not the crankshaft concerned is dimensioned adequately (*See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 3.12 Acceptability criteria).

3. 2. 9 Further information and guidance on crankshaft design is provided in the ACS's *Guidance Notes for the Calculation of Stress Concentration Factors, Fatigue Enhancement Methods and Evaluation of Fatigue Tests.*

3. 3 Information to be submitted

3. 3. 1 For the calculation of crankshafts, the documents and particulars listed below are required. This information is provided by completing ACS Form 2073 and submitting the applicable plans required in Table 2. 1. 1: Plans and particulars to be submitted:

- crankshaft drawing (which must contain all data in respect of the geometrical configurations of the crankshaft);
- type designation and kind of engine (in-line engine or V-type engine with adjacent connecting rods, forked connecting rod or articulated-type connecting rod);
- operating and combustion method (2-stroke or 4-stroke cycle/direct injection, precombustion chamber, etc.);
- number of cylinders;
- output power at maximum continuous rating (MCR), in kW;
- output speed at maximum continuous power, in rpm;
- maximum firing pressure, P_{max}, in MPa;
- mean indicated pressure, in MPa;
- charge air pressure (before inlet valves or scavenge ports, whichever applies), in MPa;
- digitised gas pressure/crank angle cycle for MCR (presented at equidistant intervals at least every 5° CA);
- mean piston speed;
- compression ratio;
- vee angle α_v, in degrees;
- firing order numbered from driving end, *See* Figure 2. 3. 1: Designation of cylinders;
- direction of rotation;
- cylinder diameter, in mm;
- piston stroke, in mm;
- centre of gravity of connecting rod from large end centre, in mm;
- radius of gyration of connecting rod, in mm;
- length of connecting rod between bearing centres, L_H, in mm;
- mass of single crankweb (indicate if webs either side of pin are of different mass values), in kg;
- centre of gravity of crankweb mass from shaft axis, in mm;
- mass of counterweights fitted (for complete crankshaft) indicate positions fitted, in kg;
- centre of gravity of counterweights (for complete crankshaft) measured from shaft axis, in mm;

- all individual reciprocating masses acting on one crank, in kg;
- crankshaft material specification(s) (according to ISO, EN, DIN, AISI, etc.);
- mechanical properties of material (minimum values obtained from longitudinal test specimens):
    - tensile strength, in N/mm^2
    - yield strength, in N/mm^2
    - reduction in area at break, percentage
    - elongation, percentage
- method of manufacture (free form forged, continuous grain flow forged, drop-forged, etc.; with description of the forging process);
- for semi-built crankshafts – minimum and maximum diametral interference, in mm; and
- particulars of alternating torsional stress calculations, *See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 3.7, Calculation of torsional stresses.

Figure 2. 3. 1: Designation of cylinders

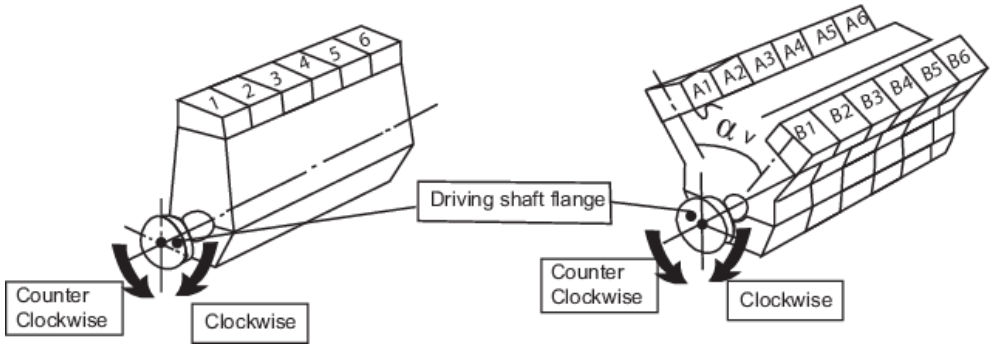
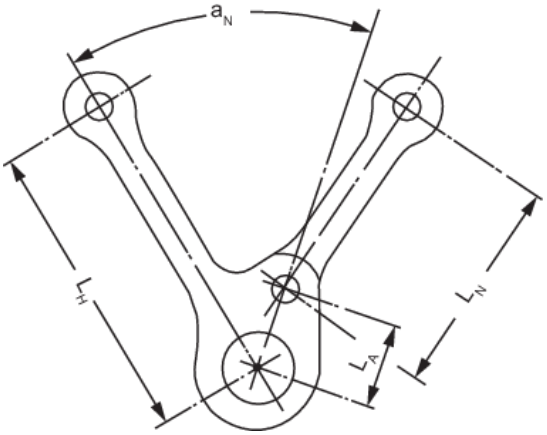


Figure 2. 3. 2: Articulated-type connecting rod



3. 3. 2 The following information is also required for appraisal of the crankshaft (not contained in Form 2073):

- for engines with articulated-type connecting rod (*See* Figure 2. 3. 2: Articulated-type connecting rod);
    - distance to link point L_A, in mm
    - link angle α_N, in degrees

- connecting rod length L_N, in mm

- firing interval (if applicable) i.e. if not evenly distributed
- mass of connecting rod (including bearings), in kg;
- mass of piston (including piston rod and crosshead where applicable), in kg;
- every surface treatment affecting fillets or oil holes shall be specified so as to enable calculation according to Chapter 2 of the ACS *Guidance Notes for Crankshaft SCF Calculation using Finite Element Method;*

  - this is to include Crankshaft fatigue enhancement factors K_1 and K_2 where applicable.
- maximum alternating torsional stress τ_a (N/mm^2)
- mechanical properties of material (minimum values obtained from longitudinal test specimens), in addition to the information listed above:
- Impact energy K_V, in Joules.

3. 4 Symbols

3. 4. 1 For the purposes of this Chapter the following symbols apply, *See also;*

- Figure 2. 3. 3: Crank dimensions for overlapped crankshaft
- Figure 2. 3. 4: Crank dimensions for crankshaft without overlap
- Figure 2. 3. 5: Crankpin section through the oil bore and
- Figure 2. 3. 6: Crankthrow of semi-built crankshaft

B = transverse breadth of web, in mm

D = crankpin diameter, in mm

D_A = the outside diameter of web or twice the minimum distance between centre-line of journals and outer contour of web, whichever is less, in mm

D_{BH} = diameter of axial bore in crankpin, in mm

D_{BG} = diameter of axial bore in journal, in mm

D_G = journal diameter, in mm

D_o = diameter of radial oil bore in crankpin, in mm

D_s = shrink diameter of main journal in web, in mm

E = pin eccentricity

E_m = Young's modulus of crankshaft material, in N/mm^2

F = area related to cross-section of web, in mm^2

K_e = bending stress factor (considers the influence of adjacent crank and bearing restraint)

K = fatigue enhancement factor ($K = K_1.K_2$)

K_1 = fatigue enhancement factor due to manufacturing process

K_2 = fatigue enhancement factor due to surface treatment

L_s = length of shrink fit, in mm

M_{BON} = alternating bending moment calculated at the outlet of crankpin oil bore

M_{BRFN} = alternating bending moment related to the centre of the web, in Nm

M_{TN} = maximum alternating torque, in Nm

M_{Tmax} = maximum value of the torque, in Nm

M_{Tmin} = minimum value of the torque, in Nm

Q_{RFN} = alternating radial force related to the web, in N

R_H, R_G = fillet radius at junction of web and pin or journal, in mm

S = pin overlap, in mm $S = \frac{D+D_G}{2} - E$

T_H, T_G = recess of pin or journal fillet radius into web measured from web face, in mm

W = axial thickness of web, in mm

W_{eqw} = xection modulus related to cross-section of web, in mm^3

W_e = section modulus related to cross-section of axially bored crankpin, in mm^3

W_p = polar section modulus related to cross-section of axially bored crankpin or bored journal, in mm^3

y = distance between the adjacent generating lines of journal and pin, in mm

Note For $y \geq 0.05D_S$, where y is less than $0.1D_S$, special consideration is to be given to the effect of the stress due to the shrink fit on the fatigue strength at the crankpin fillet.

α_B = bending stress concentration factor for crankpin fillet

α_T = torsional stress concentration factor for crankpin fillet

β_B = bending stress concentration factor for main journal fillet

Note α_B and β_B are defined as the ratio of the maximum equivalent stress (von Mises) occurring in the fillets under bending load, to the nominal bending stress related to the web cross-section. *See* Figure 2. 3. 7: Stress concentration factors in crankshaft fillets.

β_Q = compression stress concentration factor for main journal fillet

Note β_Q is defined as the ratio of the maximum equivalent stress (von Mises) occurring in the fillet due to the radial force, to the nominal compressive stress related to the web cross-section.

β_T = torsional stress concentration factor for main journal fillet

Note Note. α_T and β_T are defined as the ratio of the maximum equivalent shear stress occurring in the fillets under torsional load, to the nominal torsional stress related to the axially bored crankpin or journal cross-section. *See* Figure 2. 3. 7: Stress concentration factors in crankshaft fillets.

γ_B = bending stress concentration factor for outlet of crankpin oil bore

γ_T = torsional stress concentration factor for outlet of crankpin oil bore

Note γ_B and γ_T are defined as the ratio of the maximum principal stress occurring at the outlet of the crankpin oil-hole under bending and torsional loads respectively, to the corresponding nominal stress related to the axially bored crankpin cross section. *See* Figure 2. 3. 8: Stress concentration factors and stress distribution at the edges of oil drillings.

σ_{add} = additional bending stress due to misalignment and bedplate deformation as well as due to axial and bending vibrations, in N/mm^2

σ_B = specified minimum UTS of crankshaft material, in N/mm^2

σ_{BFN} = nominal alternating bending stress related to the web, in N/mm^2

σ_{BG} = alternating bending stress in journal fillet, in N/mm^2

σ_{BH} = alternating bending stress in crankpin fillet, in N/mm^2

σ_{BO} = alternating bending stress in the outlet of the oil bore, in N/mm^2

σ_{BON} = nominal alternating bending stress in the outlet of the oil bore related to the crankpin diameter, in N/mm^2

σ_{QFN} = nominal alternating compressive stress due to radial force related to the web, in N/mm^2

σ_{DW} = allowable fatigue strength of crankshaft, in N/mm^2

σ_{SP} = minimum yield strength of material for journal pin, in N/mm^2

σ_{SW} = minimum yield strength of material for crankweb, in N/mm^2

σ_{TO} = alternating torsional stress in the outlet of the crankpin oil bore, in N/mm^2

σ_y = equivalent alternating stress for crankpin fillet, journal fillet or outlet of crankpin oil bore as applicable, in N/mm^3

τ_H = alternating torsional stress in crankpin fillet, in N/mm^2

τ_G = alternating torsional stress in journal fillet, in N/mm^2

τ_N = calculated nominal alternating torsional stress referred to crankpin or journal (as applicable), in N/mm^2

τ_a = manufacturer stated crankshaft half range torsional stress limit, in N/mm^2

Figure 2. 3. 3: Crank dimensions for overlapped crankshaft

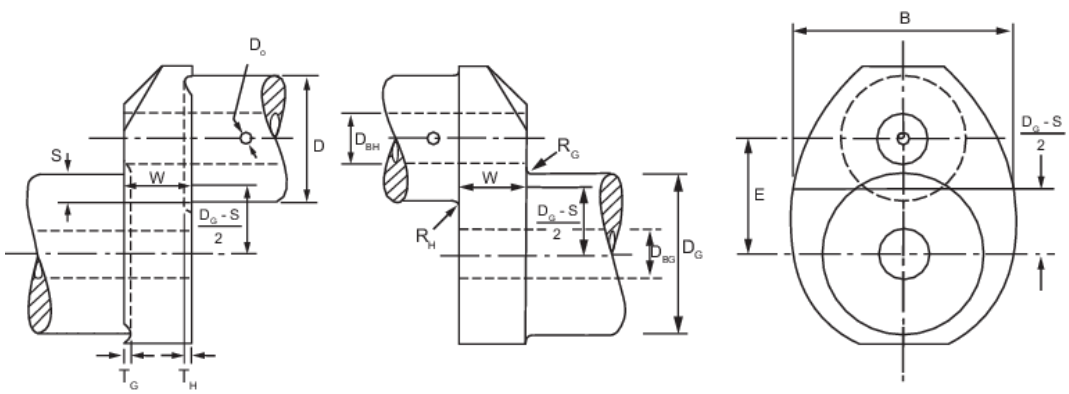


Figure 2. 3. 4: Crank dimensions for crankshaft without overlap

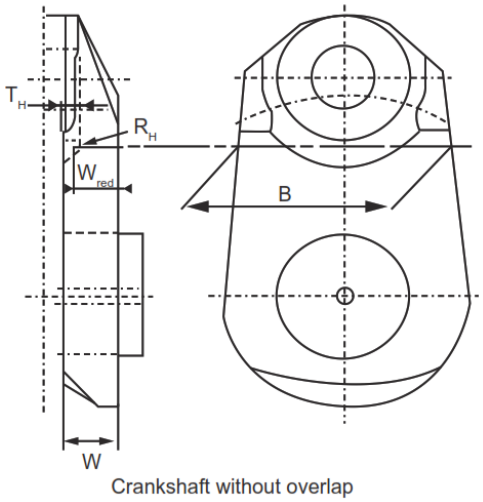


Figure 2. 3. 5: Crankpin section through the oil bore

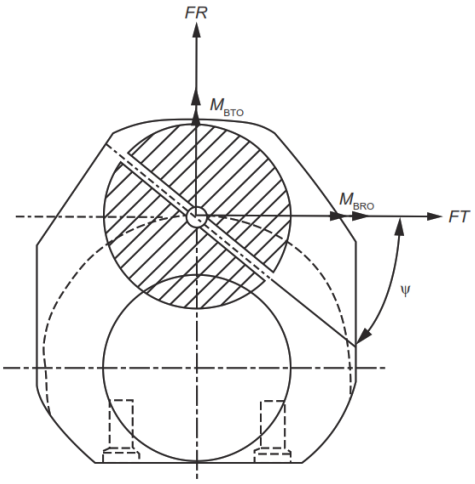


Figure 2. 3. 6: Crankthrow of semi-built crankshaft

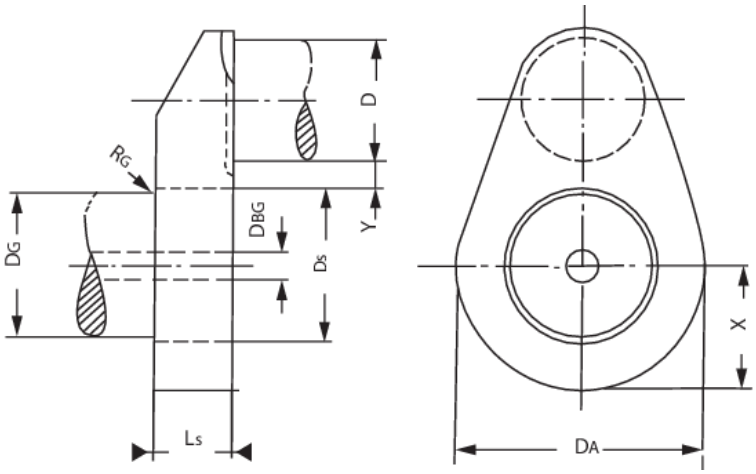
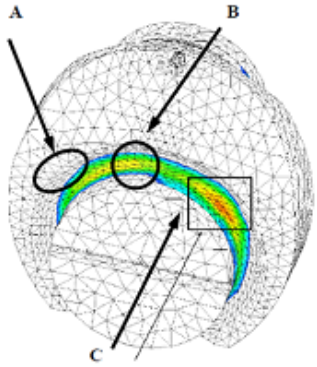


Figure 2. 3. 7: Stress concentration factors in crankshaft fillets



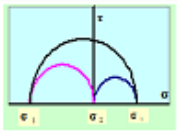
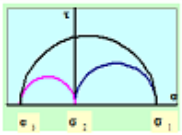
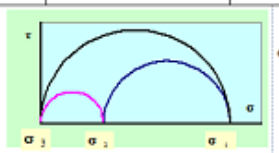
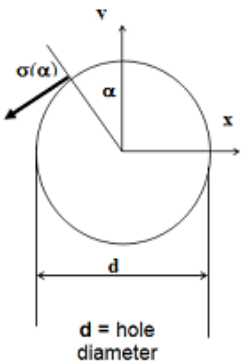
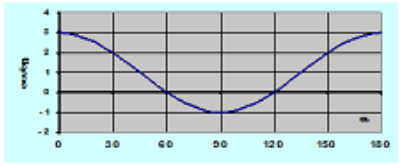
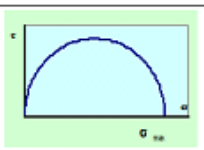
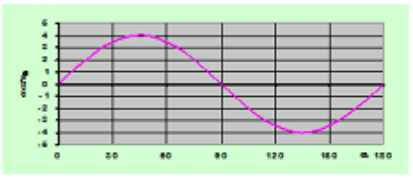
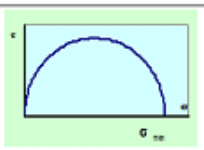
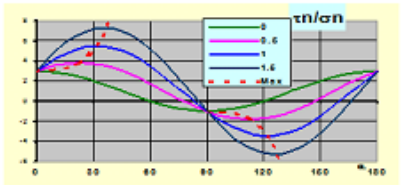
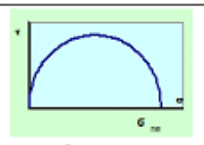
Stress Type	Stress	Max $\|\sigma_3\|$	Max σ_1	
Torsional loading	Location of maximal stresses	*A*	*C*	*B*
	Typical principal stress system Mohr's circle diagram with $\sigma_2 = 0$			
		$\|\sigma_3\| > \sigma_1$	$\sigma_1 > \|\sigma_3\|$	$\sigma_1 \approx \|\sigma_3\|$
	Equivalent stress and **S.C.F.**	$\tau_{equiv} = \frac{\sigma_1 - \sigma_3}{2}$ $S.C.F. = \frac{\tau_{equiv}}{\tau_n}$ for α_T, β_T		
Bending loading	Location of maximal stresses	*B*	*B*	*B*
	Typical principal stress system Mohr's circle diagram with $\sigma_3 = 0$		$\sigma_2 \neq 0$	
	Equivalent stress and **S.C.F.**	$\sigma equiv = \sqrt{\sigma_1^2 + \sigma_2^2 - \sigma_1 . \sigma_2}$ $S.C.F. = \frac{\sigma equiv}{\sigma_n}$ for $\alpha_B, \beta_B, \beta_Q$		

Figure 2. 3. 8: Stress concentration factors and stress distribution at the edges of oil drillings



Stress type	Nominal stress tensor	Uniaxial stress distribution around the edge	Mohr's circle diagram
Tension	$\begin{bmatrix} \sigma_n & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$	$\sigma_\alpha = \sigma_n \gamma_B / 3 [1+2 \cos(2\alpha)]$ 	 $\gamma_B = \sigma_{max}/\sigma_n$ for $\alpha = k\pi$
Shear	$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & \tau_n \\ \tau_n & 0 \end{bmatrix}$	$\sigma_\alpha = \gamma_T \tau_n \sin(2\alpha)$ 	 $\gamma_T = \sigma_{max}/\tau_n$ for $\alpha = \frac{\pi}{4} + k\frac{\pi}{2}$
Tension + shear	$\begin{bmatrix} \sigma_n & \tau_n \\ \tau_n & 0 \end{bmatrix}$	$\sigma_\alpha = \frac{\gamma_B}{3}\sigma_n\left\{1+2\left[\cos(2\alpha)+\frac{3}{2}\frac{\gamma_T}{\gamma_B}\frac{\tau_n}{\sigma_n}\sin(2\alpha)\right]\right\}$ 	 $\sigma_{max} = \frac{\gamma_B}{3}\sigma_n\left[1+2\sqrt{1+\frac{9}{4}\left(\frac{\gamma_T}{\gamma_B}\frac{\tau_n}{\sigma_n}\right)^2}\right]$ for $\alpha = \frac{1}{2}tg^{-1}\left(\frac{3\gamma_T\tau_n}{2\gamma_B\sigma_n}\right)$

3. 5 Calculation of alternating stresses due to bending moments and radial forces – assumptions

3. 5. 1 The calculation is based on a statically determined system, composed of a single crankthrow supported in the centre of adjacent main journals and subject to gas and inertia forces. The bending length is taken as the length between the two main bearing midpoints (distance L_3, *See* Figure 2. 3. 9: Bending moment and shear force for in-line engine crankthrows and Figure 2. 3. 10: Bending moment and shear force for V engine crankthrows.

3. 5. 2 The bending moments, M_{BR} and M_{BT}, are calculated in the relevant section based on triangular bending moment diagrams due to the radial component F_R and tangential component F_T of the connecting-rod force, respectively (*See* Figure 2. 3. 9: Bending moment and shear force for in-line engine crankthrows). For crankthrows with two connecting-rods acting upon one crankpin the relevant bending moments are obtained by superposition of the two triangular bending moment diagrams according to phase (*See* Figure 2. 3. 10: Bending moment and shear force for V engine crankthrows).

Figure 2. 3. 9: Bending moment and shear force for in-line engine crankthrows

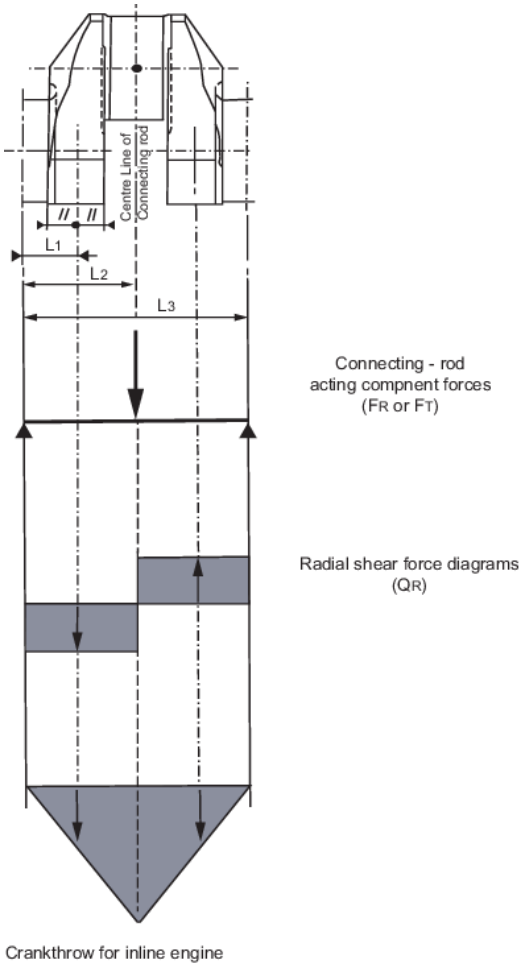
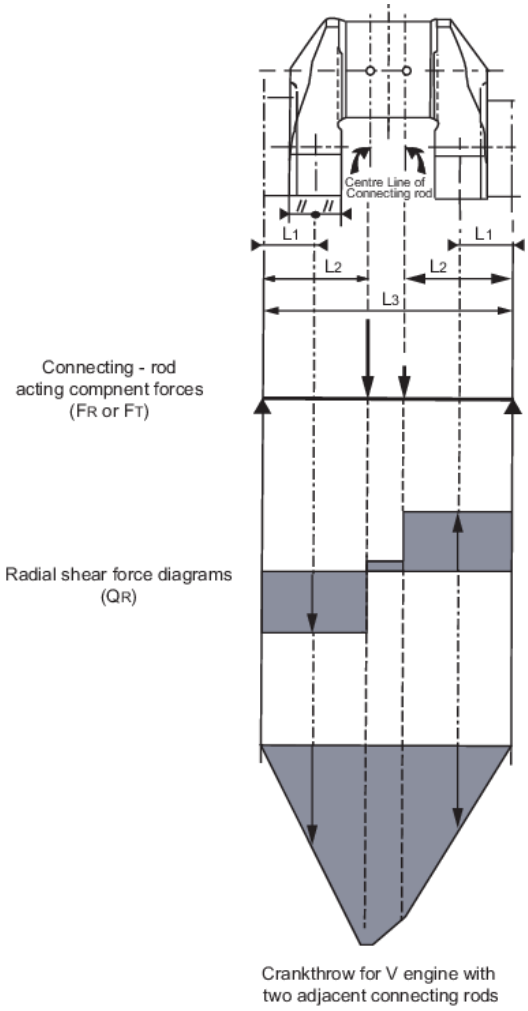


Figure 2. 3. 10: Bending moment and shear force for V engine crankthrows



3. 5. 3 The bending moment M_{BRF} and the radial force Q_{RF} are taken as acting in the centre of the solid web (distance L_1) and are derived from the radial component of the connecting-rod force. The alternating bending and compressive stresses due to bending moments and radial forces are to be related to the cross-section of the crankweb. This reference section results from the web thickness W and the web width B (*See* Figure 2. 3. 3: Crank dimensions for overlapped crankshaft and Figure 2. 3. 4: Crank dimensions for crankshaft without overlap). Mean stresses are neglected.

3. 5. 4 The two relevant bending moments for bending acting on the outlet of crankpin oil bores are taken in the crankpin cross-section through the oil bore. *See* Figure 2. 3. 9: Bending moment and shear force for in-line engine crankthrows and Figure 2. 3. 10: Bending moment and shear force for V engine crankthrows. M_{BRO} is the bending moment of the radial component of the connecting-rod force and M_{BTO} is the bending moment of the tangential component of the connecting-rod force. The alternating stresses due to these bending moments are to be related to the cross-sectional area of the axially bored crankpin. Mean bending stresses are neglected.

3. 6 Calculation of bending stresses

3. 6. 1 The radial and tangential forces due to gas and inertia loads acting upon the crankpin at each connecting-rod position are to be calculated over one working cycle. Using the forces calculated over one working cycle and taking into account of the distance from the main bearing midpoint, the time curve of the bending moments, M_{BRF}, M_{BRO} and M_{BTO}, and radial forces, Q_{RF}, as defined

in Pt 5, Ch 2, 3.5 Calculation of alternating stresses due to bending moments and radial forces – assumptions 3.5.2 and Pt 5, Ch 2, 3.5 Calculation of alternating stresses due to bending moments and radial forces – assumptions 3.5.3 are then calculated.

3. 6. 2 Nominal bending stresses are referred to the web bending modulus.

3. 6. 3 In case of V-type engines, the bending moments – progressively calculated from the gas and inertia forces – of the two cylinders acting on one crankthrow are superposed according to phase. Different designs (forked connecting-rod, articulated-type connecting-rod or adjacent connecting-rods) shall be taken into account.

3. 6. 4 Where there are cranks of different geometrical configurations in one crankshaft, the calculation is to cover all crank variants.

3. 6. 5 The decisive alternating values will then be calculated according to:

$$X_N = \pm\frac{1}{2}(X_{max} - X_{min})$$

where

X_N is considered as the alternating force, moment or stress

X_{max} is the maximum value within one working cycle

X_{min} is the minimum value within one working cycle

3. 6. 6 Nominal alternating bending and compressive stresses in web cross-section are calculated as follows:

$$\sigma_{BFN} = \pm\frac{M_{BRFN}}{W_{eqw}} 10^3 K_e \text{ N/mm}^2$$

$$\sigma_{QFN} = \pm\frac{Q_{RFN}}{F} K_e \text{ N/mm}^2$$

Where

M_{BRFN} = $\pm\frac{1}{2}(X_{BRF\,max} - X_{BRF\,min})$ Nm

W_{eqw} = $\frac{BW^2}{6}$ mm^3

K_e = 0.8 for crosshead engines

= 1.0 for trunk piston engines

Q_{RFN} = $\pm\frac{1}{2}(Q_{RF\,max} - Q_{RF\,min})$ Nm

F = BW mm^2

3. 6. 7 Nominal alternating bending stress in the outlet of the crankpin oil bore is calculated as follows:

$$\sigma BON = \pm\frac{M_{BON}}{W_e} 10^3 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

where

M_{BON} is taken as the ½ range value $M_{BON} = \pm 1/2(M_{BOmax} - M_{BOmin})$

and

M_{BO} = (M_{BTO} cosψ + M_{BRO} sinψ), ψ = angular position in degrees, *See* Figure 2. 3. 5: Crankpin section through the oil bore

M_{BRO} = bending moment of the radial component of the connecting-rod force

M_{BTO} = bending moment of the tangential component of the connecting-rod force

W_e = $\frac{\pi}{32}\left(\frac{D^4 - D_{BH}^4}{D}\right) mm^3$

3. 6. 8 Alternating bending stresses for the crankpin fillet and journal fillet are calculated as follows:

a. For the crankpin fillet:

$$\sigma_{BH} = \pm(\alpha_b \quad \sigma_{BFN})\text{N/mm}^2$$

where α_B is calculated according to Pt 5, Ch 2, 3.8 Stress concentration factors 3.8.6.a

b. For the journal fillet:

$$\sigma_{BG} = \pm(\beta_B\sigma_{BFN} + \beta_Q\sigma_{QFN})\text{N/mm}^2$$

where

β_B is calculated according to Pt 5, Ch 2, 3.8 Stress concentration factors 3.8.7.a

β_Q is calculated according to Pt 5, Ch 2, 3.8 Stress concentration factors 3.8.7.b

3. 6. 9 Alternating bending stresses for the outlet of the crankpin oil bore are calculated as follows:

$$\sigma_{BO} = \pm(\gamma_B\sigma_{BON})\text{N/mm}^2$$

where

γ_B is calculated according to Pt 5, Ch 2, 3.8 Stress concentration factors 3.8.8.a

3. 7 Calculation of torsional stresses

3. 7. 1 The nominal alternating torsional stress, τ_n, is to be taken into consideration. The value is to be derived from forced-damped vibration calculations of the complete dynamic system. Alternative methods will be given consideration. The engine designer is to advise the maximum level of alternating vibratory stress that is permitted (τ_a).

3. 7. 2 τ_a or τ_n(as applicable) is to be applied as a limiting value for the torsional vibration assessment required by Pt 5, Ch 8, 2 Torsional vibration.

3. 7. 3 Nominal alternating torsional stress is calculated as follows:

$$\tau_n = \pm\frac{M_{TN}}{W_p}10^3\text{N/mm}^2$$

where

$$M_{TN} = \pm\frac{1}{2}(M_{Tmax} - M_{Tmin})\text{Nm}$$

$W_p = \frac{\pi}{16}\left(\frac{D^4 - D_{BH}^4}{D}\right)\text{mm}^3$ for the crankpin, or $W_p = \frac{\pi}{16}\left(\frac{D_G^4 - D_{BG}^4}{D_c}\right)\text{mm}^3$ for the jornal

τ_N is to be ascertained from assessment of the torsional vibration calculations where the maximum and minimum torques are determined for every mass point of the complete dynamic system and for the entire speed range by means of a harmonic synthesis of the forced vibrations from the first order up to and including the 15th order for 2-stroke cycle engines and from the 0.5th order up to and including the 12th order for 4-stroke cycle engines. Whilst doing so, allowance must be made for the damping that exists in the system and for unfavourable conditions (misfiring in one of the cylinders when no combustion occurs but only on the compression cycle). The speed step calculation shall be selected in such a way that any resonance found in the operational speed range of the engine shall be detected.

3. 7. 4 For the purpose of the crankshaft assessment, the nominal alternating torsional stress considered in calculations is to be the highest calculated value, according to the method described in Pt 5, Ch 2, 3.7 Calculation of torsional stresses 3.7.3, occurring at the most torsionally loaded mass point of the crankshaft system.

3. 7. 5 The approval of the crankshaft will be based on the installation having the largest nominal alternating torsional stress (but not exceeding the maximum figure specified by the engine manufacturer). For each installation it is to be ensured by calculation that the maximum approved nominal alternating torsional stress is not exceeded. *See* Pt 5, Ch 8, 2 Torsional vibration.

3. 7. 6 Alternating torsional stresses for the crankpin fillet, the journal fillet and the outlet of the crankpin oil bore are calculated as follows.

a. Maximum alternating torsional stress in crankpin fillet:

$$\tau_H = \pm(\alpha_T \tau_N) \mathrm{N/mm^2}$$

where

α_T is calculated according to Pt 5, Ch 2, 3.8 Stress concentration factors 3.8.6.b.

b. Maximum alternating torsional stress in the journal fillet (not applicable to semi-built crankshafts):

$$\tau_G = \pm(\beta_T \tau_N) \mathrm{N/mm^2}$$

where

β_T is calculated according to Pt 5, Ch 2, 3.8 Stress concentration factors 3.8.7.c.

c. Maximum alternating torsional stress in the outlet of the crankpin oil bore:

$$\sigma_{TO} = \pm(\gamma_T \tau_N) \mathrm{N/mm^2}$$

where

γ_T is calculated according to Pt 5, Ch 2, 3.8 Stress concentration factors 3.8.8.b.

3. 8 Stress concentration factors

3. 8. 1 Stress concentration factors (SCF) are to be calculated using the analytical formulae outlined in this Section.

3. 8. 2 Crankshaft variables to be used in calculating the geometric stress concentrations factors are shown in Table 2. 3. 1: Crankshaft variables for SCF calculation, their limits of applicability are shown in Table 2. 3. 2: Crankshaft variable boundaries for analytical SCF calculationTable 2. 3. 2: Crankshaft variable boundaries for analytical SCF calculation.

3. 8. 3 Where the geometry of the crankshaft is outside the boundaries (*See* Table 2. 3. 2: Crankshaft variable boundaries for analytical SCF calculation) of the analytical SCF the calculation method detailed in Chapter 1 of ACS *Guidance Notes for Crankshaft SCF Calculation using Finite Element Method* may be undertaken.

3. 8. 4 Where reliable experimental measurements and/or calculations are available, which can allow direct assessment of SCF, these can be used. The relevant documents and their analysis are to be submitted for consideration in order to demonstrate their equivalence. This is always to be performed when dimensions are outside the boundaries shown in Table 2. 3. 2: Crankshaft variable boundaries for analytical SCF calculation.

3. 8. 5 Chapters 1 and 3 of ACS *Guidance Notes for Crankshaft SCF Calculation using Finite Element Method* describe how finite element (FE) analyses can be used for the calculation of the SCF. Care needs to be taken to avoid mixing equivalent (von Mises) stresses and principal stresses.

Table 2. 3. 1: Crankshaft variables for SCF calculation

Variable	Function
r	$= R_H/D$ for crankpin fillet $= R_G/D$ for journal fillet
s	$= S/D$
w	$= W/D$ crankshafts with overlap $= W_{red}/D$ crankshafts without overlap
b	$= B/D$
d_o	$= D_O/D$
d_G	$= D_{BG}/D$
d_H	$= D_{BH}/D$
t_H	$= T_H/D$
t_G	$= T_G/D$

Table 2. 3. 2: Crankshaft variable boundaries for analytical SCF calculation

Lower bound	Variable	Upper bound
	s	≤ 0.5
$0.2 \leq$	w	≤ 0.8
$1.1 \leq$	b	≤ 2.2
$0.03 \leq$	r	≤ 0.13
$0 \leq$	d_G	≤ 0.8
$0 \leq$	d_H	≤ 0.8
$0 \leq$	d_o	≤ 0.2

Notes

The lower bound of s can be extended down to large negative values provided that:

If calculated f(recess) < 1, then the factor f(recess) is not to be considered (f(recess) = 1)

If $s < -0.5$ then $f(s,w)$ and $f(r,s)$ are to be evaluated replacing actual value of s by –0.5.

3. 8. 6 Crankpin SCF are calculated as follows:

a. Bending

$$\alpha_B = 2.6914\text{f(s,w)}.\text{f(w)}.\text{f(b)}.\text{f(r)}.\text{f(dG)}.\text{f(d}_\text{H}\text{)}.\text{f(recess)}$$

where

$$\text{f(s,w)} = -4.1883 + 29.2004\text{w} - 77.5925\text{w}^2 + 91.9454w^3 - 40.0416\text{w}^4 + (1-\text{s})(9.5440 - 58.3480\text{w} + 159.3415\text{w}^2 - 192.5846\text{w}^3 + 85.2916\text{w}^4) + (1-\text{s})^2(-3.8399 + 25.0444\text{w} - 70.5571\text{w}^2 + 87.0328\text{w}^3 - 39.1832\text{w}^4)$$

$$\text{f(w)} = 2.1790\text{w}^{0.7171}$$

$$\text{f(b)} = 0.684 - 0.0077\text{b} + 0.1473\text{b}^2$$

$$\text{f(r)} = 0.2081\text{r}^{(-0.5231)}$$

$$\text{f(d}_\text{G}\text{)} = 0.9993 + 0.27\text{d}_\text{G} - 1.0211\text{d}_\text{G}^2 + 0.5306\text{d}_\text{G}^3$$

$$\text{f(d}_\text{H}\text{)} = 0.9978 + 0.3145\text{d}_\text{H} - 1.5241\text{d}_\text{H}^2 + 2.4147\text{d}_\text{H}^3$$

$$\text{f(recess)} = 1 + (\text{t}_\text{H} + \text{t}_\text{G})(1.8 + 3.2s)$$

b. Torsion

$$\alpha_\text{T} = 0.8\text{f(r,s)}.\text{f(b)}.\text{f(w)}$$

where

$$f(r,s) = r^{(-0.322 + 0.1015\,(1-s))}$$

$$\text{f(b)} = 7.8955 - 10.654\text{b} + 5.3482\text{b}^2 - 0.857\text{b}^3$$

$$\text{f(w)} = \text{w}^{(-0.145)}$$

3. 8. 7 Journal fillet SCF are calculated as follows (not applicable to semi-built crankshafts):

a. Bending

$$\beta_B = 2.7146 f_\text{B}(s,w) \cdot f_\text{B}(w) \cdot f_\text{B}(b) \cdot f_\text{B}(r) \cdot f_\text{B}(d_\text{G}) \cdot f_\text{B}(d_\text{H}) \cdot f\,\text{(recess)}$$

where

$$\text{f(s,w)} = -4.1883 + 29.2004\text{w} - 77.5925\text{w}^2 + 91.9454w^3 - 40.0416\text{w}^4 + (1-\text{s})(9.5440 - 58.3480\text{w} + 159.3415\text{w}^2 - 192.5846\text{w}^3 + 85.2916\text{w}^4) + (1-\text{s})^2(-3.8399 + 25.0444\text{w} - 70.5571\text{w}^2 + 87.0328\text{w}^3 - 39.1832\text{w}^4)$$

$$\text{f}_\text{B}\text{(s,w)} = -1.7625 + 2.9821w - 1.5276w^2 + (1-s)(5.1169 - 5.8089w + 3.1391w^2) + (1-s)^2(-2.1567 + 2.3297w - 1.2952w^2)$$

$$\text{f}_\text{B}\text{(w)} = 2.2422\text{W}^{0.7548}$$

$$\text{f}_\text{B}\text{(b)} = 0.5616 + 0.1197b + 0.1176b^2$$

$$\text{f}_\text{B}\text{(r)} = 0.1908r^{(-0.5568)}$$

$$\text{f}_\text{B}\text{(d}_\text{G}\text{)} = 1.0012 - 0.6441\text{d}_\text{G} + 1.2265\text{d}_\text{G}^2$$

$$f_B(d_H) = 1.0022 - 0.1903d_H + 0.0073d_H^2$$

$$f(recess) = 1 + (t_H + t_G)(1.8 + 3.2s)$$

b. Compression due to the radial force:

$$\beta_Q = 3.0128 f_Q(s) \cdot f_Q(w) \cdot f_Q(b) \cdot f_Q(r) \cdot f_Q(d_H) \cdot \text{frecess}$$

where

$$f_Q(s) = 0.4368 + 2.1630(1 - s) - 1.5212(1 - s)^2$$

$$f_Q(w) = \frac{w}{0.0637 + 0.9369w}$$

$$f_Q(b) = b - 0.5$$

$$f_Q(r) = 0.5331r^{(-0.2038)}$$

$$f_Q(d_H) = 0.9937 - 1.1949d_H + 1.7373d_H^2$$

$$f(recess) = 1 + (t_H + t_G)(1.8 + 3.2s)$$

c. Torsion

β_T = α_T if the diameters and fillet radii of crankpin and journal are the same, or

β_T = $0.8f(r,s).f(b).f(w)$ if crankpin and journal diameters and/or radii are of different sizes

where

$f(r,s)$, $f(b)$ and $f(w)$ are to be determined in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 2, 3.8 Stress concentration factors 3.8.6.b, however, the radius of the journal fillet is to be related to the journal diameter: $r = \frac{R_G}{D_G}$

3. 8. 8 Crankpin oil bore SCF for radially drilled oil holes are calculated as follows:

a. Bending

$$\gamma_B = 3 - 5.88d_0 + 34.6d_0^2$$

b. Torsion

$$\gamma_T = 4 - 6d_0 + 30d_0^2$$

3. 9 Additional bending stress

3. 9. 1 In addition to the alternating bending stresses in fillets (*See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 3.6 Calculation of bending stresses 3.6.8) further bending stresses due to misalignment and bedplate deformation as well as due to axial and bending vibrations are to be considered by applying α_{add} as given by Table 2. 3. 3: Additional bending stresses.

Table 2. 3. 3: Additional bending stresses

Type of engine	σ_{add}
Crosshead engines	± 30 N/mm^2 (*See* Note 1)
Trunk piston engines	± 10 N/mm^2
Note 1. The additional stress of ±30 N/mm^2 is composed of two components: an additional stress of ±20 N/mm^2 resulting from axial vibration an additional stress of ±10 N/mm^2 resulting from misalignment/bedplate deformation	

3. 9. 2 It is recommended that a value of ±20 N/mm^2 be used for the axial vibration component for assessment purposes where axial vibration calculation results of the complete dynamic system (engine/shafting/gearing/propeller) are not available. Where axial vibration calculation results of the complete dynamic system are available, the calculated figures can be used instead.

3. 10 Equivalent alternating stress

3. 10. 1 In the fillets, bending and torsion lead to two different biaxial stress fields which can be represented by a von Mises equivalent stress with the additional assumptions that bending and torsion stresses are time phased and the corresponding peak values occur at the same location (*See* Figure 2. 3. 7: Stress concentration factors in crankshaft fillets). As a result the equivalent alternating stress is to be calculated for the crankpin fillet as well as for the journal fillet by using the von Mises criterion.

3. 10. 2 At the oil hole outlet, bending and torsion lead to two different stress fields which can be represented by an equivalent principal stress equal to the maximum of principal stress resulting from combination of these two stress fields with the assumption that bending and torsion are time phased (*See* Figure 2. 3. 8: Stress concentration factors and stress distribution at the edges of oil drillings).

3. 10. 3 The above two different ways of equivalent stress evaluation both lead to stresses which can be compared to the same fatigue strength value of crankshaft assessed according to the von Mises criterion.

3. 10. 4 Equivalent alternating stress, σ_v, is defined as:

a. For the crankpin fillet:

$$\sigma_v = \pm\sqrt{(\sigma_{BG} + \sigma_{add})^2 + 3\tau_G^2}\ \text{N/mm}^2$$

b. For the journal fillet:

$$\sigma_v = \pm\sqrt{(\sigma_{BH} + \sigma_{add})^2 + 3\tau_H^2}\ \text{N/mm}^2$$

c. For the outlet of crankpin oil bore:

$$\sigma_v = \pm\frac{1}{3}\sigma_{BO}\left[1 + 2\sqrt{1 + \frac{9}{4}\left(\frac{\sigma_{TO}}{\sigma_{BO}}\right)^2}\right]\ \text{N/mm}^2$$

3. 11 Fatigue strength

3. 11. 1 The fatigue strength is to be understood as that value of equivalent alternating stress (Von Mises) which a crankshaft can permanently withstand at the most highly stressed points. The fatigue strength can be evaluated by means of the following formulae:

a. Related to the crankpin diameter:

$$\sigma_{DW} = \pm K(0.42\sigma_B + 39.3)\left[0.264 + 1.073D^{-0.2} + \frac{785 - \sigma_B}{4900} + \frac{196}{\sigma_E}\sqrt{\frac{1}{R_X}}\right]\ \text{N/mm}^2$$

with

R_X = R_H in the fillet area

R_X = $D_o/2$ in the oil bore area

b. Related to the journal diameter:

$$\sigma_{DW} = \pm K(0.42\sigma_B + 39.3)\left[0.264 + 1.073D_G^{-0.2} + \frac{785 - \sigma_B}{4900} + \frac{196}{\sigma_E}\sqrt{\frac{1}{R_G}}\right] \text{N/mm}^2$$

Where

$$K = K_1 K_2$$

K_1 = fatigue endurance factor appropriate to the manufacturing process

= 1.05 for continuous grain flow forged or drop-forged crankshafts

= 1.0 for free form forged crankshafts (without continuous grain flow)

= 0.93 for cast steel crankshafts with cold rolling treatment in fillet area manufactured by companies using an ACS approved cold rolling process

K_2 = fatigue enhancement factor for surface treatment. These treatments are to be applied to the fillet radii

A value for K_2 will be assigned upon application by the engine designers. Full details of the process, together with the results of full scale fatigue tests will be required to be submitted for consideration *See ACS Guidance note - Guidance for the evaluation of Crankshaft Fatigue Tests*. Alternatively, the following values may be taken (surface hardened zone to include fillet radii):

K_2 = 1.15 for induction hardened

= 1.25 for nitrided

Where a value of K_1 or K_2 greater than unity is to be applied, details of the manufacturing process are to be submitted. An enhanced K_1 factor will be considered, subject to special approval of the manufacturing specification. *See Materials and Qualification Procedures for Ships, Book E, Procedure MQPS 5-2*.

3. 11. 2 The formulae in Pt 5, Ch 2, 3.11 Fatigue strength 3.11.1 are subject to geometry limits. The junction of the oil hole with the crankpin or main journal surface is to be formed with an adequate radius and smooth surface finish down to a minimum depth equal to 1.5 times the oil bore diameter and for calculation purposes R_H, R_G or R_X are to be taken as not less than 2 mm.

3. 11. 3 Fatigue strength calculations or, alternatively, fatigue test results determined by experiment based either on full size crankthrow (or crankshaft), or on specimens taken from a full size crankthrow, may be required to demonstrate acceptability. The experimental procedure for fatigue evaluation of specimens and fatigue strength of crankshaft assessment are to be submitted for approval by ACS. The procedure is to include as a minimum: method, type of specimens, number of specimens (or crankthrows), number of tests, survival probability, and confidence number. *See also* ACS *Guidance for the Evaluation of Crankshaft Fatigue Tests.*

3. 11. 4 When journal diameter is equal or larger than the crankpin diameter, the outlets of main journal oil bores are to be formed in a similar way to the crankpin oil bores, otherwise separate fatigue strength calculations or, alternatively, fatigue test results may be required.

3. 11. 5 Only surface treatment processes approved by ACS are permitted. Guidance for calculation of surface treated fillets and oil bore outlets is presented in Chapter 2 of the ACS *Guidance Notes for Crankshaft SCF Calculation using Finite Element Method*.

3. 12 Acceptability criteria

3. 12. 1 The sufficient dimensioning of a crankshaft is confirmed by a comparison of the equivalent alternating stress and the fatigue strength. The acceptability factor, Q, is to be greater than or equal to 1.15 for the crankpin fillet, the journal fillet and the outlet of crankpin oil bore:

$$Q = \frac{\sigma_{DW}}{\sigma_V}$$

3. 13 Shrink fit of semi-built crankshafts

3. 13. 1 The following formulae are applicable to crankshafts assembled by shrinking main journals into the crankwebs, *See also* Figure 2. 3. 6: Crankthrow of semi-built crankshaft.

3. 13. 2 In general, the radius of transition, R_G, between the main journal diameter, D_G, and the shrink diameter, D_S, is to be not less than $0.015D_G$ or $0.5(D_S - D_G)$ where the greater value is to be considered.

3. 13. 3 Deviations from these parameters will be specially considered.

3. 13. 4 The maximum permissible internal diameter in the journal pin is to be calculated in accordance with the following formula, this condition serves to avoid plasticity in the hole of the journal pin:

$$D_{BG} = D_s \sqrt{1 - \frac{4000 S_R M_{max}}{\mu \pi D_S^2 L_S \sigma_{SP}}} \text{ mm}$$

where

S_R = safety factor against slipping; however, a value of not less than 2 is to be taken unless documented by experiments.

M_{max} = absolute maximum value of the torque M_{Tmax} in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 2, 3.13 Shrink fit of semi-built crankshafts 3.13.7, in Nm

μ = coefficient for static friction; however, a value of not greater than 0.2 is to be taken unless documented by experiments.

3. 13. 5 The actual oversize Z of the shrink fit must be within the limits Z_{min} and Z_{max} calculated in accordance Pt 5, Ch 2, 3.13 Shrink fit of semi-built crankshafts 3.13.7 and Pt 5, Ch 2, 3.13 Shrink fit of semi-built crankshafts 3.13.8. When Pt 5, Ch 2, 3.13 Shrink fit of semi-built crankshafts 3.13.4 cannot be complied with, then the calculated values of Z_{min} and Z_{max} are not applicable due to multizone-plasticity problems. In such cases Z_{min} and Z_{max} are to be established from FEM calculations.

3. 13. 6 The minimum required diametral Interference is to be taken as the greater of:

$$Z_{min} \geq \frac{\sigma_{SW} D_S}{E_m} \text{mm}$$

and

$$Z_{min} \geq \frac{4000}{\mu\pi} \frac{S_R M_{max}}{E_m D_S L_S} \frac{1 - Q_A^2 Q_S^2}{(1 - Q_A^2)(1 - Q_S^2)} \text{ mm}$$

where

Q_A = shaft ratio, $Q_A = \frac{D_S}{D_A}$

Q_S = web ratio, $Q_S = \frac{D_{BG}}{D_S}$

3. 13. 7 The maximum diametral interference is not to be greater than:

$$Z_{max} \leq D_S \left(\frac{Q_{SW}}{E_m} + \frac{0.8}{1000} \right) \text{mm}$$

This condition serves to restrict the shrinkage induced mean stress in the fillet.

3. 13. 8 Reference marks are to be provided on the outer junction of the crankwebs with the journals.

PART

5

CHAPTER **2** **Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engines**

SECTION **4** **Electronically controlled engines**

4. 1 General

4. 1. 1 The requirements of this Section are applicable to engines for propulsion, auxiliary or emergency power purposes with programmable electronic systems implemented and used to control fuel injection timing and duration, and which may also control combustion air or exhaust systems. The requirements of this Section also apply to programmable electronic systems used to control other functions (e.g. starting and control air, cylinder lubrication etc.) where essential for the operation of the engine.

4. 1. 2 These engines may be of the crosshead or trunk piston type. They generally have no direct camshaft driven fuel systems, but have common rail fuel/hydraulic arrangements and may have hydraulic actuating systems for the functioning of the exhaust systems.

4. 1. 3 The operation of these engines relies on the effective monitoring of a number of parameters such as crank angle, engine speed, temperatures and pressures using programmable electronic systems to provide the services essential for the operation of the engine such as fuel injection, air inlet, exhaust and speed control.

4. 1. 4 Details of proposals to deviate from the requirements of this Section are to be submitted and will be considered on the basis of a technical justification produced by the Enginebuilder.

4. 1. 5 Each engine is to be configured for the specified performance and is to satisfy the relevant requirements for propulsion, auxiliary or emergency engines.

4. 1. 6 During the life of the engine details, of any proposed changes to control, alarm, monitoring or safety systems which may affect safety and the reliable operation of the engine are to be submitted to ACS for approval.

4. 2 Risk-based analysis

4. 2. 1 An analysis is to be carried out in accordance with relevant standards acceptable to ACS to demonstrate compliance with the applicable requirements of this sub-Section appropriate to the engine application. The analysis is to be a risk-based consideration of engine operation and ship and personnel safety, and is to demonstrate adequate risk mitigation through fault tolerance and/or reliability in accordance with the specified criteria in Pt 5, Ch 2, 4.2 Risk-based analysis 4.2.2 to Pt 5, Ch 2, 4.2 Risk-based analysis 4.2.4 relevant to the engine application.

4. 2. 2 For ships with a single main propulsion engine, a Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA), or alternative recognised analysis of system reliability, is to be carried out and is to demonstrate that an electronic control system failure:

a. will not result in the loss of the ability to provide the services essential for the operation of the engine, *See* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.5 Control systems, general requirements 2.5.7 and Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.13

Programmable electronic systems - Additional requirements for essential services and safety critical systems 2.13.2;

b. will not affect the normal operation of the services essential for the operation of the engine other than those services dependent upon the failed part, *See* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.14 Programmable electronic systems – Additional requirements for integrated systems 2.14.4 and Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.14 Programmable electronic systems – Additional requirements for integrated systems 2.14.5; and

c. will not leave either the engine, or any equipment or machinery associated with the engine, or the ship in an unsafe condition, *See* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.3 Alarm systems, general requirements 2.3.13, Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.4 Safety systems, general requirements 2.4.5, Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.5 Control systems, general requirements 2.5.3, Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.10 Programmable electronic systems - General requirements 2.10.3, Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.10 Programmable electronic systems - General requirements 2.10.4 and Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.14 Programmable electronic systems – Additional requirements for integrated systems 2.14.5.

4. 2. 3 A risk-based analysis is to be carried out for:

a. main engines on ships with multiple main engines or other means of providing propulsion power; and/or

b. auxiliary engines intended to drive electric generators forming the ship's main source of electrical power or otherwise providing power for essential services.

The analysis is to demonstrate that adequate hazard mitigation has been incorporated in electronically controlled engine systems or the overall ship installation with respect to personnel safety and providing propulsion power and/or power for essential services for the safety of the ship. Arrangements satisfying the criteria of Pt 5, Ch 2, 4.2 Risk-based analysis 4.2.2 will also be acceptable.

4. 2. 4 For engines for emergency power purposes, a risk-based analysis is to be carried out to demonstrate that the design incorporates adequate hazard mitigation such that the likelihood of an electronic control system failure resulting in the loss of the ability to provide emergency power when required has been reduced to a level considered acceptable by ACS and that means are provided to detect failures and permit personnel to restore engine availability to operate on demand. Failures which would result in engine failure and/or damage or loss of availability are to be identified and the report is to include documentation of:

a. component reliability evidence;
b. failure detection and alarms; and
c. failure response required to restore engine availability and maintain personnel safety.

4. 2. 5 The risk-based analysis report is to:

a. Identify the standards used for analysis and system design.
b. Identify the engine, its purpose and the associated objectives of the analysis.
c. Identify any assumptions made in the analysis.
d. Identify the equipment, system or sub-system and the mode of operation.
e. Identify potential failure modes and their causes.
f. Evaluate the local effects (e.g. fuel injection failure) and the effects on the system as a whole (e.g. loss of propulsion power) of each failure mode.
g. Identify measures for reducing the risks associated with each failure mode (e.g. system design, failure detection and alarms, redundancy, quality control procedures for sourcing, manufacture and testing, etc.).
h. Identify trials and testing necessary to prove conclusions.

4. 2. 6 At sub-system level it is acceptable to consider failure of equipment items and their functions, e.g. failure of a pump to produce flow or pressure head. It is not required that the failure of components within that pump be analysed, and failure need only be dealt with as a cause of failure of the pump.

4. 3 Control engineering systems

4. 3. 1 Control, alarm, monitoring, safety and programmable electronic systems are to comply with Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems as applicable.

4. 3. 2 The engine control, alarm monitoring and safety systems are to be configured to comply with the relevant requirements (e.g. operating profile, alarms, shutdowns, etc.) of this Chapter and Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems for an engine for main, auxiliary or emergency power purposes. Details of the engine configuration are to be submitted for consideration, *See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 1.4,, Submission requirements 1.4.3.

4. 4 Software

4. 4. 1 Software lifecycle activities are to be carried out in accordance with an acceptable quality management system, *See* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.13 Programmable electronic systems - Additional requirements for essential services and safety critical systems 2.13.2 and Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.13 Programmable electronic systems - Additional requirements for essential services and safety critical systems 2.13.7.

4. 4. 2 Appropriate safety related processes, methods, techniques and tools are to be applied to software development and maintenance by the Enginebuilder. Selection and application of techniques and measures in accordance with Annex A of IEC 61508-3, *Functional safety of electrical/electronic/programmable electronic systems: Software requirements*, or other relevant standards or codes acceptable to ACS, will generally be acceptable.

4. 4. 3 To demonstrate compliance with Pt 5, Ch 2, 4.4 Software 4.4.1 and Pt 5, Ch 2, 4.4 Software 4.4.2:

a. software quality plans and safety evidence are to be submitted for consideration, *See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 1.4 Submission requirements 1.4.3.b; and

b. an assessment inspection of the Enginebuilder's completed development is to be carried out by ACS. The inspection is to be tailored to verify application of the standards and codes used in software safety assurance accepted by ACS.

PART

5

CHAPTER 2 Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engines

SECTION 5 Construction and welded structures

5. 1 Crankcases

5. 1. 1 Crankcases and their doors are to be of robust construction to withstand anticipated crankcase pressures that may arise during a crankcase explosion, taking into account the installation of explosion relief valves required by Pt 5, Ch 2, 10 Safety arrangements and the doors are to be securely fastened so that they will not be readily displaced by a crankcase explosion.

5. 2 Welded joints

5. 2. 1 Bedplates and major components of engine structures are to be made with a minimum number of welded joints.

5. 2. 2 Double welded butt joints are to be adopted wherever possible in view of their superior fatigue strength.

5. 2. 3 Girder and frame assemblies should, so far as possible, be made from one plate or slab, shaped as necessary, rather than by welding together a number of small pieces.

5. 2. 4 Steel castings are to be used for parts which would otherwise require complicated weldments.

5. 2. 5 Care is to be taken to avoid stress concentrations such as sharp corners and abrupt changes in section.

5. 2. 6 Joints in parts of the engine structure which are stressed by the main gas or inertia loads are to be designed as continuous full strength welds and for complete fusion of the joint. They are to be so arranged that, in general, welds do not intersect, and that welding can be effected without difficulty and adequate inspection can be carried out. Abrupt changes in plate section are to be avoided and where plates of substantially unequal thickness are to be butt welded, the thickness of the heavier plate is to be gradually tapered to that of the thinner plate. Tee joints are to be made with full bevel or equivalent weld preparation to ensure full penetration.

5. 2. 7 In single plate transverse girders the castings for main bearing housings are to be formed with web extensions which can be butt welded to the flange and vertical web plates of the girder. Stiffeners in the transverse girder are to be attached to the flanges by full penetration welds.

5. 3 Materials and construction

5. 3. 1 Plates, sections, forgings and castings are to be of welding quality in accordance with the requirements of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials, and with a carbon content generally not exceeding 0.23 per cent. Steels with higher carbon contents may be approved subject to satisfactory results from welding procedure tests.

5. 3. 2 Welding is to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of Ch 13 Requirements for Welded Construction of the Rules for Materials, using welding procedures and welders that have been qualified in accordance with Ch 12 Welding Qualifications of the Rules for Materials.

5. 3. 3 Before welding is commenced the component parts of bedplates and framework are to be accurately fitted and aligned.

5. 3. 4 The welding is to be carried out in positions free from draughts and is to be downhand (flat) wherever practicable. Welding consumables are to be suitable for the materials being joined. Preheating is to be adopted when heavy plates or sections are welded. The finished welds are to have an even surface and are to be free from undercutting.

5. 3. 5 Welds attaching bearing housings to the transverse girders are to have a smooth contour and, if necessary, are to be made smooth by grinding.

5. 4 Post-weld heat treatment

5. 4. 1 Bedplates are to be given a stress relieving heat treatment except engine types where the bedplate as a whole is not subjected to direct loading from the cylinder pressure. For these types, only the transverse girder assemblies need be stress relieved.

5. 4. 2 Stress relieving is to be carried out by heating the welded structure uniformly and slowly to a temperature between 580°C and 620°C, holding that temperature for not less than one hour per 25 mm of maximum plate thickness and thereafter allowing the structure to cool slowly in the furnace.

5. 4. 3 Omission of post-weld heat treatment of bedplates and their sub-assemblies will be considered on application by the engine builder with supporting evidence in accordance with Ch 13, 2.10 Post-weld heat treatment 2.10.6 of the Rules for Materials.

5. 5 Inspection

5. 5. 1 Welded engine structures are to be examined during fabrication, special attention being given to the fit of component parts of major joints prior to welding.

5. 5. 2 Inspection of welds is to be in accordance with the requirements of Ch 13, 1.11 Non-destructive examination of welds of the Rules for Materials.

5. 5. 3 Welds in transverse girder assemblies are to be crack detected by an approved method to the satisfaction of the Surveyors. Other joints are to be similarly tested if required by the Surveyors.

PART

5

CHAPTER **2** **Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engines**

SECTION **6** **Turning gear**

6. 1 General requirements

6. 1. 1 Turning gear is to be provided for all engines to facilitate operating and maintenance regimes as required by the manufacturer.

6. 1. 2 The turning gear for all main propulsion engines is to be power-driven and is to be continuously rated at a value to ensure protection to the weakest part of the machinery. Alternative proposals may be made subject to special consideration.

6. 1. 3 The turning gear for auxiliary engines may be hand operated (manual) except where this is not practicable, in which case the provision of Pt 5, Ch 2, 6.1 General requirements 6.1.2 is to be complied with.

6. 1. 4 The turning gear for all engines is to be fitted with safety interlocks which prevent engine operation when engaged, *See* Pt 5, Ch 1, 3.10 Machinery interlocks. Indication of engaged/not engaged is to be provided at all start positions.

6. 1. 5 The remote control device of power-driven turning gear is to be so designed that power is removed from the turning gear when the operating switch is released.

6. 1. 6 Means are to be provided to secure the turning gear when disengaged.

6. 1. 7 Overload protection arrangements are to be provided to prevent damage to the electric motor and the turning gear train.

PART

5

CHAPTER 2 **Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engines**

SECTION 7 **Control and monitoring of main, auxiliary and emergency engines**

7. 1 General

7. 1. 1 Control engineering systems are to be in accordance with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems.

7. 1. 2 Oil mist detection or bearing temperature monitoring (or equivalent device in accordance with SOLAS II-1, *Regulation 47 - Fire precautions*, 47.2) fitted as required by Pt 5, Ch 2, 10.8,, Oil mist detection 10.8.1 are to operate as follows:

a. For trunk piston engines, automatic shutdown of the engine is to occur when oil mist or high bearing temperature is detected.

b. For crosshead engines, automatic slow-down is to occur when oil mist or high bearing temperature is detected.

c. Where arrangements are made to override the automatic slow-down or shutdown due to high oil mist or bearing temperature, the override is to be independent of other overrides.

d. Where the bearing temperature monitoring method is chosen, all bearings in the crankcase are to be monitored where practicable, e.g. main, crankpin, crosshead.

e. Where engine bearing temperature monitors or equivalent devices in accordance with SOLAS II-1, *Regulation 47 - Fire precautions*, 47.2 are provided for the prevention of the build-up of oil mist that may lead to a potentially explosive condition within the crankcase, details are to be submitted for consideration. The submission is to demonstrate that the arrangements are equivalent to those provided by oil mist detection, *See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 10.8 Oil mist detection 10.8.15.

Where required, for each trunk piston engine, one oil mist detector (or engine bearing temperature monitoring system or equivalent device) having two independent outputs for initiating the alarm and shutdown would satisfy the requirement for independence between alarm and shutdown systems.

7. 1. 3 All main and auxiliary engines intended for essential services are to be provided with means of indicating the lubricating oil pressure supply to them. Where such engines are of more than 37 kW (50 shp), audible and visual alarms are to be fitted to give warning of an appreciable reduction in pressure of the lubricating oil supply. Further, these alarms are to be actuated from the outlet side of any restrictions, such as filters, coolers, etc.

7. 2 Main engine governors

7. 2. 1 An efficient governor is to be fitted to each main engine so adjusted that the speed does not exceed that for which the engine is to be classed by more than 15 per cent.

7. 2. 2 Engines coupled to electrical generators which are the source of power for main electric propulsion motors are to comply with the requirements for auxiliary engines in respect of governors and overspeed protection devices.

7. 2. 3 When electronic speed governors of main internal combustion engines form part of a remote control system, they are to comply with the following conditions:

a. If lack of power to the governor may cause changes in the present speed and direction of thrust of the propeller, which consequently compromises safe operation of the vessel, then backup power supply is to be provided;
b. Local control of the engines is always to be possible. A means to effect safe transfer of control to the local control position and then control the engine is to be available in all normal and reasonably fore*See*able abnormal conditions;
c. In addition, electronic speed governors and their actuators are to be Type Approved in accordance with ACS's *Type Approval System Test Specification Number 1*.

7. 3 Auxiliary and emergency engine governors

7. 3. 1 Prime movers for driving generators of the main and emergency sources of electrical power are to be fitted with a speed governor which will prevent transient frequency variations in the electrical network in excess of ±10 per cent of the rated frequency, with a recovery time to steady state conditions not exceeding 5 seconds, when the maximum electrical step load is switched on or off.

7. 3. 2 In the case when a step load equivalent to the rated output of a generator is switched off, a transient speed variation in excess of 10 per cent of the rated speed may be acceptable, provided that this does not cause the intervention of the overspeed device as required by Pt 5, Ch 2, 7.4 Overspeed protective devices.

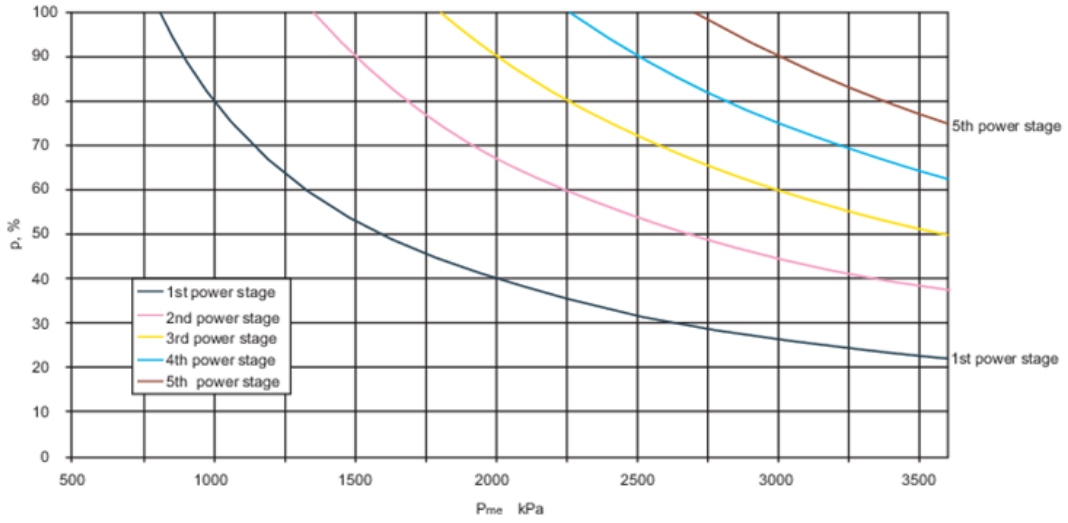
7. 3. 3 At all loads between no load and rated power, the permanent speed variation should not be more than ±5 per cent of the rated speed.

7. 3. 4 Prime movers are to be selected in such a way that they will meet the load demand within the ship's power distribution system. Application of electrical load should be possible with two load steps and must be such that prime movers, running at no load, can suddenly be loaded to 50 per cent of the rated power of the generator followed by the remaining 50 per cent after an interval sufficient to restore the speed to steady state. Steady state conditions should be achieved in not more than 5 seconds. Steady state conditions are those at which the envelope of speed variation does not exceed +1 per cent of the declared speed at the new power.

7. 3. 5 Application of electrical load in more than two load steps can only be permitted if the conditions within the ship's power distribution system permit the use of such prime movers which can only be loaded in more than two load steps (*See* Figure 2. 7. 1: Reference values for maximum possible sudden power increase (four-stroke engines)) and provided that this is already allowed for at the design stage. This is to be verified in the form of system specifications to be approved and to be demonstrated at ship's trials. In this case, due consideration is to be given to:

a. The power required for the electrical equipment to be automatically switched on after black-out and to the sequence in which it is connected.
b. Where generators are to be operated in parallel and where the power has to be transferred from one generator to another in the event of any one generator being switched off.

Figure 2. 7. 1: Reference values for maximum possible sudden power increase (four-stroke engines)



P_{me} : mean effective pressure at declared power

P : power increase referred to declared power at site conditions

7. 3. 6 Emergency generator sets are to comply with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 2, 7.3 Auxiliary and emergency engine governors 7.3.1 to Pt 5, Ch 2, 7.3 Auxiliary and emergency engine governors 7.3.3 even when:

a. their total consumer load is applied suddenly; or

b. their total consumer load is applied in steps, subject to:

- the total load being supplied within 45 seconds of power failure on the main switchboard;
- the maximum step load being declared and demonstrated;
- the power distribution system being designed such that the declared maximum step loading is not exceeded, and;
- the compliance of time delays and loading sequence with the above being demonstrated at ship's trials.

7. 3. 7 For a.c. generating sets operating in parallel, the governing characteristics of the prime movers shall be such that within the limits of 20 per cent and 100 per cent total load, the load on any generating set will not normally differ from its proportionate share of the total load by more than 15 per cent of the rated power of the largest machine, or 25 per cent of the rated power of the individual machine in question, whichever is the less. For an a.c. generating set intended to operate in parallel, facilities are to be provided to adjust the governor sufficiently finely to permit an adjustment of load not exceeding 5 per cent of the rated load at normal frequency.

7. 3. 8 For generator set voltage control requirements *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 9.4 Generator control.

7. 3. 9 For quality of power supplies (QPS) requirements *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.8 Quality of power supplies.

7. 4 Overspeed protective devices

7. 4. 1 Each main engine developing 220kW (300 shp) or over which can be declutched or which drives a controllable pitch propeller, and also each auxiliary engine developing 220 kW (300 shp) and over for driving an electric generator, is to be fitted with an approved overspeed protective device.

7. 4. 2 The overspeed protective device, including its driving mechanism, is to be independent of the governor required by Pt 5, Ch 2, 7.2 Main engine governors or Pt 5, Ch 2, 7.3, Auxiliary and

emergency engine governors and is to be so adjusted that the speed does not exceed that for which the engine and its driven machinery are to be classed by more than 20 per cent for main engines and 15 per cent for auxiliary engines.

7. 5 Unattended machinery

7. 5. 1 Where main and auxiliary engines are fitted with automatic or remote controls so that under normal operating conditions they do not require any manual intervention by the operators, they are to be provided with the alarms and safety arrangements required by Pt 5, Ch 2, 7.5, Unattended machinery to Pt 5, Ch 2, 7.7 Auxiliary engines, as appropriate. Alternative arrangements which provide equivalent safeguards will be considered.

7. 5. 2 Where machinery is arranged to start automatically or from a remote control station, interlocks are to be provided to prevent start-up under conditions which could cause a hazard to the machinery.

7. 5. 3 Where machinery specified in this Section is required to be provided with a standby pump, the standby pump is to start automatically if the discharge pressure from the working pumps falls below a predetermined value.

7. 5. 4 Where a first stage alarm together with a second stage alarm and automatic shutdown of machinery are required in the relevant Tables of this Section, the sensors and circuits utilised for the second stage alarm and automatic shutdown are to be independent of those required for the first stage alarm.

7. 5. 5 Means are to be provided to prevent leaks from high pressure fuel oil injection piping for main and auxiliary engines dripping or spraying onto hot surfaces or into machinery air inlets. Such leakage is to be collected and, where practicable, led to a collector tank(s) fitted in a safe position. An alarm is to be provided to indicate that leakage is taking place. These requirements may also be applicable to high pressure hydraulic oil piping, depending upon the location.

7. 6 Engines for propulsion purposes

7. 6. 1 Alarms and safeguards are indicated in Pt 5, Ch 2, 7.6 Engines for propulsion purposes 7.6.2 to Pt 5, Ch 2, 7.6 Engines for propulsion purposes 7.6.8 and Table 2. 7. 1: Engines for propulsion purposes: Alarms and slow-downs and Table 2. 7. 2: Engines for propulsion purposes: Automatic shutdowns.

Table 2. 7. 1: Engines for propulsion purposes: Alarms and slow-downs

Item	Alarm	Note
Lubricating oil sump level	Low	Engines
Lubricating oil inlet pressure*	1st stage low	Engines. Slow-down
Lubricating oil inlet temperature*	High	Engines
Lubricating oil filters differential pressure	High	—
Activation of oil mist detection arrangements (or activation of the temperature monitoring systems or equivalent devices of: - the engine main, crank and crosshead bearing oil outlet; or - the engine main, crank and crosshead bearing)	High	For crosshead engines, automatic slow-down. For trunk-piston engines, *See* Table 2. 7. 2: Engines for propulsion purposes: Automatic shutdowns *See also* Pt 5, Ch 2, 7.1 General 7.1.2.

Cylinder lubricator flow	Low	One sensor per lubricator unit on crosshead engines. Slow down.
Thrust bearing temperature*	High	Slow-down
Piston coolant inlet pressure	Low	If a separate system. Slow-down
Piston coolant outlet temperature*	High	Per cylinder (if a separate system). Slow-down
Piston coolant outlet flow*	Low	Per cylinder (if a separate system)
Cylinder coolant inlet pressure or flow*	Low	Slow-down (automatic on trunk piston engines)
Cylinder coolant outlet temperature*	1st stage high	Per cylinder (if a separate system). Slow-down (automatic on trunk piston engines)
Engine cooling water system – oil content	High	Required for crosshead engines where engine cooling water used in oil/water heat exchangers
Sea-water cooling pressure	Low	—
Fuel valve coolant pressure	Low	If a separate system
Fuel valve coolant temperature	High	If a separate system
Fuel oil pressure from booster pump	Low	—
Fuel oil temperature or viscosity*	High and Low	Heavy oil only
Fuel oil high pressure piping*	Leakage	*See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 7.5 Unattended machinery 7.5.5
Common rail fuel oil pressure	Low	—
Common rail servo oil pressure	Low	—
Charge air cooler outlet temperature	High	Trunk piston engines
Scavenge air temperature (fire)	High	Per cylinder (2-stoke engines). Slow-down
Scavenge air receiver water level	High	—
Exhaust gas temperature*	High	Per cylinder. Slow-down (automatic on trunk piston engines), *See* Note 5
Exhaust gas temperature deviation from average*	High	Per cylinder, *See* Note 5
Turbocharger speed	High	Category B and C turbochargers, *See* Notes 11 and 12
Turbocharger exhaust gas inlet temperature*	High	Category B and C turbochargers, *See* Notes 6 and 12
Turbocharger lubricating oil inlet pressure	Low	Only for forced lubrication systems on category B and C turbochargers, *See* Notes 7, 10 and 12

Turbocharger lubricating oil outlet temperature	High	Category C turbochargers, if not a forced system, oil temperature near each bearing, *See* Notes 7 and 12
Starting air pressure*	Low	Before engine manoeuvring valve
Control air pressure	Low	—
Direction of rotation	Wrong way	Reversible engines, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 2, 7.6 Engines for propulsion purposes 7.6.7
Automatic start of engine	Failure	*See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 7.6 Engines for propulsion purposes 7.6.7
Electrical starting battery charge level	Low	—
Feed water or water/thermal fluid forced circulation flow (if fitted)	Low	*See* Pt 5, Ch 14, 6.2 Feed and circulation pumps 6.2.7 and Note 8
Uptake temperature	High	To monitor for soot fires. *See* Notes 8 and 9

Note *1.* Where 'per cylinder' appears in this Table, suitable sensors may be situated on manifold outlets for trunk piston engines.

Note *2.* For engines and gearing of 1500 kW or less, only the items marked* are required.

Note *3.* Common sensors are acceptable for alarms and slow-down functions.

Note *4.* Except where stated otherwise in the Table, slow-down may be effected by either manual or automatic means, by reduction of speed or power as appropriate.

Note *5.* For trunk piston engine power <500 kW/cylinder, a common sensor for exhaust gas manifold temperature may be fitted.

Note *6.* Alarm and indication of the exhaust gas temperature at turbocharger inlet may be waived if alarm and indication for individual exhaust gas temperature is provided for each cylinder and the alarm level is set to a value specified by the turbocharger manufacturer. For Category B turbochargers, the exhaust gas temperature may be alternatively monitored at the turbocharger outlet provided that the correlation between inlet and outlet temperatures is established and verified and the alarm level is set to a correspondingly safe level for the turbine.

Note *7.* Where the outlet temperature for each bearing cannot be measured due to the design, details of alternative proposals in accordance with the turbocharger manufacturer's instructions may be submitted for consideration.

Note *8.* Alarm only required when an exhaust gas economiser/boiler/thermal oil heater is fitted.

Note *9.* Alternatively, details of an appropriate fire detection system are to be submitted for consideration.

Note *10.* Separate sensors are to be provided if the lubrication oil system of the turbocharger is not integrated with the lubrication oil system of the engine or if it is separated by a throttle or pressure reduction valve from the engine lubrication oil system. Where the turbocharger is provided with a self-contained lubricating oil system integrated with the turbocharger, lubricating oil inlet pressure need not be monitored.

Note 11. Where multiple turbochargers are activated sequentially, speed monitoring is not required for the turbocharger(s) being activated last in the sequence, provided that all turbochargers share the same intake air filter and they are not fitted with waste gates.

Note 12. *See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 12.1 General 12.1.2 for details of turbocharger categorisations.

Table 2. 7. 2: Engines for propulsion purposes: Automatic shutdowns

Item	Alarm	Note
Lubricating oil inlet pressure	2nd stage low	Automatic shutdown of engines, *See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 7.5 Unattended machinery 7.5.4
Activation of oil mist detection arrangements (or activation of the temperature monitoring systems or equivalent devices of: - the engine main and crank bearing oil outlet; or - the engine main and crank bearing)	High	For trunk piston engines, automatic shutdown. For crosshead engines, *See* Table 2. 7. 2: Engines for propulsion purposes: Automatic shutdowns. *See also* Pt 5, Ch 2, 7.1 General 7.1.2.
Cylinder coolant outlet temperature	2nd stage high	Automatic shutdown of trunk piston engines, *See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 7.5 Unattended machinery 7.5.4

Overspeed	High	Automatic shutdown of engine, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 2, 7.4 Overspeed protective devices. Details of alternative proposals in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions may be submitted for consideration

7. 6. 2 Alarms are to operate for the fault conditions shown in Table 2. 7. 1: Engines for propulsion purposes: Alarms and slow-downs. Where applicable, indication is to be given at the relevant control stations that the speed or power of the main propulsion engine(s) is to be manually reduced or has been reduced automatically.

7. 6. 3 Alarms are to operate, and automatic shutdown of machinery is to occur for the fault conditions shown in Table 2. 7. 2: Engines for propulsion purposes: Automatic shutdowns.

7. 6. 4 The following engine services are to be fitted with automatic temperature controls so as to maintain steady state conditions throughout the normal operating range of the propulsion engine(s).

a. Lubricating oil supply.
b. Fuel oil supply, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 2, 7.6 Engines for propulsion purposes 7.6.5.
c. Piston coolant supply, where applicable.
d. Cylinder coolant supply, where applicable.
e. Fuel valve coolant supply, where applicable.

7. 6. 5 The fuel oil supply may be fitted with an automatic control for viscosity instead of the temperature control required by Pt 5, Ch 2, 7.6 Engines for propulsion purposes 7.6.4.

7. 6. 6 Indication of the starting air pressure is to be provided at each control station from which it is possible to start the main propulsion engine(s).

7. 6. 7 The number of automatic consecutive attempts which fail to produce a start is to be limited to three. For reversible engines which are started and stopped for manoeuvring purposes, means are to be provided to maintain sufficient starting air in the air receivers. For electric starting, *See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 9.3, Electric starting.

7. 6. 8 Prolonged running in a restricted speed range is to be prevented automatically or, alternatively, an indication of restricted speed ranges is to be provided at each control station.

7. 7 Auxiliary engines

7. 7. 1 Alarms and safeguards are indicated in Table 2. 7. 3: Auxiliary engines: Alarms and safeguards.

Table 2. 7. 3: Auxiliary engines: Alarms and safeguards

Item	Alarm	Note
Lubricating oil inlet temperature	High	—
Lubricating oil inlet pressure	1st stage low	—
	2nd stage low	Automatic shutdown of engine, *See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 7.5 Unattended machinery 7.5.4

Activation of oil mist detection arrangements (or activation of the temperature monitoring systems or equivalent devices of: - the engine main and crank bearing oil outlet; or - the engine main and crank bearing)	High	Automatic shutdown of engine, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 2, 7.1 General 7.1.2
Fuel oil high pressure piping	Leakage	*See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 7.5 Unattended machinery 7.5.5
Coolant outlet temperature (for engines >220 kW)	1st stage high	—
	2nd stage high	Automatic shutdown of engine, *See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 7.5 Unattended machinery 7.5.4
Coolant pressure or flow	Low	—
Fuel oil temperature or viscosity	High and Low	Heavy oil only
Overspeed	High	Automatic shutdown of engine, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 2, 7.4 Overspeed protective devices. Details of alternative proposals in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions may be submitted for consideration
Common rail servo oil pressure	Low	—
Common rail fuel oil pressure	Low	—
Starting air pressure	Low	—
Electrical starting battery charge level	Low	—
Exhaust gas temperature (for engines >500 kW/cylinder)	High	Per cylinder.
Feed water or water/thermal fluid forced circulation flow (if fitted)	Low	*See* Pt 5, Ch 14, 6.2 Feed and circulation pumps 6.2.7 and Note 3
Uptake temperature	High	To monitor for soot fires. *See* Notes 3 and 4
Turbocharger speed	High	Category B and C turbochargers, *See* Notes 7 and 9
Turbocharger exhaust gas inlet temperature	High	Category B and C turbochargers, *See* Notes 8 and 9
Turbocharger lubricating oil outlet temperature	High	Category C turbochargers, if not a forced system, oil temperature near each bearing, *See* Notes 6 and 9
Turbocharger lubrication oil inlet pressure	Low	Only for forced lubrication systems on category B and C turbochargers, *See* Notes 5, 6 and 9

Note *1.* For emergency engines, including engines used for the emergency source of electrical power required by *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea*, *See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 7.8 Emergency engines.

Note *2.* The arrangements are to comply with the requirements of the National Authority concerned.

Note *3.* Alarm only required when an exhaust gas economiser/boiler/thermal oil heater is fitted.

Note *4.* Alternatively, details of an appropriate fire detection system are to be submitted for consideration.

Note 5. Separate sensors are to be provided if the lubrication oil system of the turbocharger is not integrated with the lubrication oil system of the engine or if it is separated by a throttle or pressure-reduction valve from the engine lubrication oil system.

Note *6.* Where outlet temperature from each bearing cannot be monitored due to the engine/turbocharger design alternative arrangements may be accepted. Continuous monitoring of inlet pressure and inlet temperature in combination with specific intervals for bearing inspection in accordance with the turbocharger manufacturer's instructions may be accepted as an alternative.

Note 7. Where multiple turbochargers are activated sequentially, speed monitoring is not required for the turbocharger(s) being activated last in the sequence, provided that all turbochargers share the same intake air filter and they are not fitted with waste gates.

Note 8. Alarm and indication of the exhaust gas temperature at the turbocharger inlet is not required if alarm and indication for individual exhaust gas temperature are provided for each cylinder and the alarm level is set to a value specified by the turbocharger manufacturer. For Category B turbochargers, the exhaust gas temperature may be alternatively monitored at the turbocharger outlet provided that correlation between inlet and outlet temperatures is established and verified and the alarm level is set to a correspondingly safe level for the turbine.

Note 9. *See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 12.1 General 12.1.2 for details of turbocharger categorisations.

7. 7. 2 For engines operating on heavy fuel oil, automatic temperature or viscosity controls are to be provided.

7. 8 Emergency engines

7. 8. 1 Alarms and safeguards required are indicated in Table 2. 7. 4: Emergency engines: Alarms and safeguards.

Table 2. 7. 4: Emergency engines: Alarms and safeguards

Item	Alarm for engine power <220 kW	Alarm for engine power >220kW	Note
Fuel oil leakage from pressure pipes	Leakage	Leakage	*See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 7.5 Unattended machinery 7.5.5
Lubricating oil temperature	—	High	—
Lubricating oil pressure	Low	Low	—
Activation of oil mist detection arrangements (or activation of the temperature monitoring systems or equivalent devices of: - the engine main and crank bearing oil outlet; or - the engine main and crank bearing)	—	High	*See* Note
Coolant pressure or flow	—	Low	—

Coolant temperature (can be air)	High	High	—
Overspeed	—	High	Automatic shutdown
Note For engines having a power of more than 2250 kW or a cylinder bore of more than 300 mm.			

7. 8. 2 The safety and alarm systems are to be designed to 'fail safe'. The characteristics of the 'fail safe' operation are to be evaluated on the basis not only of the system and its associated machinery, but also the complete installation, as well as the ship.

7. 8. 3 Regardless of the engine output power, if shutdowns additional to those specified in Table 2. 7. 4: Emergency engines: Alarms and safeguards are provided except for the overspeed shutdown, they are to be automatically overridden when the engine is in automatic or remote control mode during navigation.

7. 8. 4 Grouped alarms of at least those items listed in Table 2. 7. 4: Emergency engines: Alarms and safeguards are to be arranged on the bridge.

7. 8. 5 In addition to the fuel oil control from outside the space, a local means of engine shutdown is to be provided.

7. 8. 6 Local indications of at least those items listed in Table 2. 7. 4: Emergency engines: Alarms and safeguards are to be provided within the same space as the engines and are to remain operational in the event of failure of the alarm and safety systems.

PART

5

CHAPTER **2** **Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engines**

SECTION **8** **Piping**

8. 1 Fuel oil, hydraulic and high pressure oil systems

8. 1. 1 Fuel oil and hydraulic oil piping systems arrangements are to comply with Pt 5, Ch 12 Piping Design Requirements and Pt 5, Ch 14 Machinery Piping Systems as applicable.

8. 1. 2 Engine fuel system components are to be designed to accommodate the maximum peak pressures experienced in service. Where fuel injection pumps are fitted, particular attention is to be given to the fuel injection pump supply and spill line piping which may be subject to high-pressure pulses from the pump. Connections on such piping systems should be chosen to minimise the risk of pressurised fuel oil leaks. Fatigue analysis may be considered necessary to establish the suitability of the piping system components for the pressures and fluctuating stresses that the pipe system may be subject to in normal service.

8. 1. 3 On engines used for propulsion, where fuel oil and hydraulic oil pressure pumps are fitted, and these are essential for engine operation, not less than two fuel oil and two hydraulic oil pressure pumps are to be provided and arranged such that failure of one pump does not render the other pump(s) inoperative. Each fuel oil pump and hydraulic oil pump is to be capable of supplying the quantity of oil for engine operation at its maximum continuous rating and arranged ready for immediate use.

8. 1. 4 External high-pressure fuel delivery piping between the fuel injection pump or high-pressure fuel pumps and fuel injectors is to be protected with a jacketed piping system capable of containing leakage and/or spray of flammable fluid from a high-pressure line failure. The jacketed piping arrangements are to be approved, *See* Table 2. 1. 1: Plans and particulars to be submitted. The protection of high-pressure fuel pipes on common rail fuel systems will be specially considered.

8. 1. 5 The protection required by Pt 5, Ch 2, 8.1 Fuel oil, hydraulic and high pressure oil systems 8.1.4 is to prevent fuel oil or fuel oil mist from reaching a source of ignition on the engine or its surroundings. Suitable drainage arrangements are to be made for draining any fuel oil leakage one or more collector tank(s) fitted in a safe position. These tanks are to be separate from any tank used to collect other oils such as lube oil or hydraulic oil to prevent cross contamination. An alarm is to be provided to indicate that leakage is taking place. The collector tank arrangement is to be approved.

8. 1. 6 Hydraulic oil pressure piping between the high-pressure hydraulic pumps and hydraulic actuators is to be protected with a jacketed piping system or suitable enclosure capable of containing hydraulic oil leakage from a high-pressure pipe failure. Where flammable oils are used in high-pressure systems to operate exhaust valves, the oil pipe lines between the high-pressure oil pump and actuating oil pistons are to be protected with a jacketed piping system capable of preventing oil spray from a high-pressure line failure.

8. 1. 7 All lubricating and hydraulic oil pipes, and fuel oil pipes that are not jacketed or enclosed, are to be suitably installed and screened to avoid oil spray or leakage onto hot surfaces, *See also* Pt 5,

Ch 14, 2.9 Precautions against fire 2.9.2, Pt 5, Ch 14, 8.15 Precautions against fire 8.15.2 and Pt 5, Ch 14, 9.7 Precaution against fire 9.7.2 as applicable.

8. 1. 8 Where flammable oils are used in high-pressure actuating systems, a fatigue analysis is to be carried out in accordance with a suitable standard and all anticipated pressure, pulsation and vibration loads are to be considered. The analysis is to demonstrate that the design and arrangements are such that the likelihood of failure is as low as reasonably practicable. The analysis is to identify all assumptions made and standards to be applied during manufacture and testing of the system. Any potential weak points which may develop due to incorrect construction or assembly are also to be identified.

8. 1. 9 Accumulators and associated high-pressure piping are to be designed, manufactured and tested in accordance with a standard applicable to the maximum pressure and temperature rating of the system.

8. 1. 10 For high-pressure oil containing and mechanical power transmission systems, the quality plan for sourcing, design, installation and testing of components is to address the following issues (*See* Table 2. 1. 1: Plans and particulars to be submitted, Note 11):

a. Design and manufacturing standard(s) applied.
b. Materials used for construction of key components and their sources.
c. Details of the quality control system applied during manufacture and testing.
d. Details of type approval, type testing or approved type status assigned to the machinery or equipment.
e. Details of installation and testing recommendations for the machinery or equipment.

8. 2 Additional requirements for fuel oil, hydraulic and high pressure oil systems for ships

8. 2. 1 Vessels of less than 500 gross tons and which are not required to comply with the *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea*, are to be capable of maintaining adequate manoeuvring capability.

8. 2. 2 Where multi-engined installations are supplied from the same fuel source, means of isolating the fuel supply and spill piping to individual engines is to be provided. These means of isolation are not to affect the operation of the other engines and are to be operable from a position not rendered inaccessible by a fire on any of the engines.

8. 3 Exhaust systems

8. 3. 1 Where the surface temperature of the exhaust pipes and silencer may exceed 220°C, they are to be water cooled or efficiently lagged to minimise the risk of fire and to prevent damage by heat. Where lagging covering the exhaust piping system including flanges is oil-absorbing or may permit penetration of oil, the lagging is to be encased in sheet metal or equivalent. In locations where the Surveyor is satisfied that oil impingement could not occur, the lagging need not be encased.

8. 3. 2 Where the exhausts of two or more engines are led to a common silencer or exhaust gas-heated boiler or economiser, an isolating device is to be provided in each exhaust pipe.

8. 3. 3 For alternatively fired furnaces of boilers using exhaust gases and fuel oil, the exhaust gas inlet pipe is to be provided with an isolating device and interlocking arrangements whereby fuel oil can only be supplied to the burners when the isolating device is closed to the boiler.

8. 3. 4 In two-stroke main engines fitted with exhaust gas turbo-blowers which operate on the impulse system, provision is to be made to prevent broken piston rings entering the turbine casing and causing damage to blades and nozzle rings.

8. 3. 5 Where the exhaust is led overboard near the waterline, the exhaust system shall be so designed as to prevent water from entering the engine exhaust manifold through wave or wake action, both when the engine is in operation or shutdown. The system shall also be designed to prevent ingress of water at the angles of inclination as shown in Pt 5, Ch 1, 3.7 Inclination of ship.

8. 3. 6 Where the exhaust is cooled by water spray, the exhaust pipes are to be self-draining overboard. Suitable measures shall be taken to prevent inadvertent closure of drain valves where this may lead to sprayed water entering the engine. Means shall be provided to prevent water from flowing back into the engine when the engine is stopped.

8. 3. 7 Exhaust systems having components sensitive to heat shall be fitted with a high temperature alarm after water injection. This alarm shall be integrated into the ship's alarm system.

8. 3. 8 Exhaust pipes penetrating the shell below the bulkhead deck shall be provided with a shipside valve or other approved positive means of closure at the shell to prevent back-flooding into the hull through a damaged exhaust system.

8. 3. 9 The exhaust system shall be designed such that the exhaust back-pressure is within the allowable limits stated by the engine manufacturer under all expected operating conditions.

8. 4 Starting air pipe systems and safety fittings

8. 4. 1 In designing the compressed air installation, care is to be taken that the compressor air inlets will be located in an atmosphere reasonably free from oil vapour or, alternatively, an air duct from outside the machinery space is to be led to the compressors.

8. 4. 2 The air discharge pipe from the compressors is to be led direct to the starting air receivers. Provision is to be made for intercepting and draining oil and water in the air discharge for which purpose a separator or filter is to be fitted in the discharge pipe between compressors and receivers.

8. 4. 3 The starting air pipe system from receivers to main and auxiliary engines is to be entirely separate from the compressor discharge pipe system. Stop valves on the receivers are to permit slow opening to avoid sudden pressure rises in the piping system. Valve chests and fittings in the piping system are to be of ductile material.

8. 4. 4 Drain valves for removing accumulations of oil and water are to be fitted on compressors, separators, filters and receivers. In the case of any low-level pipelines, drain valves are to be fitted to suitably located drain pots or separators.

8. 4. 5 The starting air piping system is to be protected against the effects of explosions by providing an isolating non-return valve or equivalent at the starting air supply to each engine.

8. 4. 6 In direct reversing engines bursting discs or flame arresters are to be fitted at the starting valves on each cylinder; in non-reversing and auxiliary engines at least one such device is to be fitted at the supply inlet to the starting air manifold on each engine. The fitting of bursting discs or flame arresters may be waived in engines where the cylinder bore does not exceed 230 mm.

8. 4. 7 Alternative safety arrangements may be submitted for consideration.

PART

5

CHAPTER **2** **Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engines**

SECTION **9** **Starting arrangements**

9. 1 Dead ship condition starting arrangements

9. 1. 1 Means are to be provided to ensure that machinery can be brought into operation from the dead ship condition without external aid.

9. 1. 2 Dead ship condition for the purpose of Pt 5, Ch 2, 9.1 Dead ship condition starting arrangements 9.1.1 is to be understood to mean a condition under which the main propulsion plant, boilers and auxiliaries are not in operation. In restoring propulsion, no stored energy for starting and operating the propulsion plant is assumed to be available. Additionally, neither the main source of electrical power nor other essential auxiliaries is assumed to be available for starting and operating the propulsion plant.

9. 1. 3 Where the emergency source of power is an emergency generator which fully complies with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2 Electrical Engineering, this generator may be used for restoring operation of the main propulsion plant, boilers and auxiliaries where any power supplies necessary for engine operation are also protected to a similar level as the starting arrangements.

9. 1. 4 Where there is no emergency generator installed or an emergency generator does not comply with Pt 6, Ch 2 Electrical Engineering, the arrangements for bringing main and auxiliary machinery into operation are to be such that the initial charge of starting air or initial electrical power and any power supplies for engine operation can be developed on board ship without external aid. If for this purpose an emergency air compressor or an electric generator is required, these units are to be powered by a hand-starting engine or a hand-operated compressor. The arrangements for bringing main and auxiliary machinery into operation are to have capacity such that the starting energy and any power supplies for engine operation are available within 30 minutes of a dead ship condition.

9. 1. 5 For cargo ships of less than 500 gross tons and which are not required to comply with the *International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea, 1974*, as amended (SOLAS 74), alternative arrangements to those specified in Pt 5, Ch 2, 9.1 Dead ship condition starting arrangements 9.1.3 or Pt 5, Ch 2, 9.1 Dead ship condition starting arrangements 9.1.4 may be proposed for consideration. Details of the alternative arrangements are to be included in the plans and details required by Table 2. 1. 1: Plans and particulars to be submitted and are to demonstrate that the arrangements provide for starting from the dead ship condition and are in accordance with any applicable statutory requirements of the National Authority of the country in which the ship is to be registered.

9. 1. 6 Reciprocating air compressors intended for starting main engines and auxiliary engines providing essential services are to comply with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 2, 13 Air compressors.

9. 2 Air receiver capacity

9. 2. 1 Where the main engine is arranged for air starting the total air receiver capacity is to be sufficient to provide without replenishment, not less than 12 consecutive starts of the main engine, alternating between ahead and astern if of the reversible type and not less than 6 consecutive starts if of the non-reversible type. At least two air receivers of approximately equal capacity are to be provided. For scantlings and fittings of air receivers, *See* Pt 5, Ch 12 Piping Design Requirements.

9. 2. 2 For multi-engine installations, the number of starts required for each engine are to be as follows:

a. Two engines through common reduction gearing: 6 starts per engine for fixed pitch propeller/propellers; 3 starts per engine for controllable pitch propeller/ propellers.
b. Three engines or more through common reduction gearing: 3 starts per engine.

9. 2. 3 No engine is to have fewer than 3 starts for any arrangement. For electric propulsion arrangements, a minimum of 3 starts per engine with a minimum capacity of 12 starts of the largest start air consumption engine in total are required.

9. 3 Electric starting

9. 3. 1 Where main engines are fitted with electric starters, two batteries are to be fitted. Each battery is to be capable of starting the engines when cold and the combined capacity is to be sufficient without recharging to provide the number of starts of the main engines as required by Pt 5, Ch 2, 9.2 Air receiver capacity. In other respects batteries are to comply with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 11 Electric cables, optical fibre cables and busbar trunking systems (busways).

9. 3. 2 Electric starting arrangements for auxiliary engines are to have two separate batteries or be supplied by separate circuits from the main engine batteries when such are provided. Where one of the auxiliary engines only is fitted with an electric starter one battery will be acceptable.

9. 3. 3 The combined capacity of the batteries for starting the auxiliary engines is to be sufficient for at least three starts for each engine.

9. 3. 4 Engine starting batteries are to be used only for the purposes of starting the engines and for the engines' own control, alarm, monitoring and safety arrangements. Means are to be provided to ensure that the stored energy in the batteries is maintained at a level required to start the engines, as defined in Pt 5, Ch 2, 9.3 Electric starting 9.3.1 and Pt 5, Ch 2, 9.3 Electric starting 9.3.3.

9. 3. 5 Where engines are fitted with electric starting batteries, an alarm is to be provided for low battery charge level.

9. 4 Additional requirements for electric starting for non-SOLAS cargo vessels

9. 4. 1 For cargo vessels of less than 500 gross tons which are not required to comply with the *International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea, 1974*, as amended (SOLAS 74), the emergency source of electrical power may be used as one of the sources of energy required by Pt 5, Ch 2, 9.3 Electric starting 9.3.1 or Pt 5, Ch 2, 9.3 Electric starting 9.3.2 for electric starting. Where the emergency source of electrical power is an accumulator battery and it is to be used for electric starting, it is to have the additional capacity required to ensure emergency supplies are not compromised and is to be adequately protected and suitably located for use in an emergency.

9. 5 Starting of the emergency source of power

9. 5. 1 Emergency generators are to be capable of being readily started in their cold conditions down to a temperature of 0°C. If this is impracticable, or if lower temperatures are likely to be encountered,

consideration is to be given to the provision and maintenance of heating arrangements, so that ready starting will be assured.

9. 5. 2 Each emergency generator that is arranged to be automatically started is to be equipped with an approved starting system having two independent sources of stored energy, each of which is sufficient for at least three consecutive starts. When hand (manual) starting is demonstrated to be effective, only one source of stored energy need be provided. However, this source of stored energy is to be protected against depletion below the level required for starting.

9. 5. 3 Provision is to be made to maintain continuously the stored energy at all times, and for this purpose:

a. Electrical and hydraulic starting systems are to be maintained from the emergency switchboard.

b. Compressed air starting systems may be maintained by the main or auxiliary compressed air receivers, through a suitable non-return valve, or by an emergency air compressor energised by the emergency switchboard.

c. All these starting, charging and energy storing devices are to be located in the emergency generator room. These devices are not to be used for any purpose other than the operation of the emergency generator.

9. 5. 4 When automatic starting is not required by the Rules and where it can be demonstrated as being effective, hand (manual) starting is permissible, such as manual cranking, inertial starters, manual hydraulic accumulators, powder charge cartridges.

9. 5. 5 When hand (manual) starting is not practicable, the provisions under Pt 5, Ch 2, 9.5 Starting of the emergency source of power 9.5.2 and Pt 5, Ch 2, 9.5 Starting of the emergency source of power 9.5.3 are to be complied with except that starting may be manually initiated.

9. 5. 6 Electric starting arrangements are also to satisfy Pt 5, Ch 2, 9.3 Electric starting 9.3.2 to Pt 5, Ch 2, 9.3 Electric starting 9.3.5.

9. 6 Engine control, alarm monitoring and safety system power supplies

9. 6. 1 Power supplies are to be arranged so that power for electrically powered control, alarm, monitoring and safety systems required for engine starting and operation will remain available in the event of a failure. Power is to remain available to permit starting attempts for the number of starts specified by this Section for each individual source of stored energy.

9. 6. 2 Where adequate battery and charging capacity exists, an engine starting battery may be used as one source of electrical power required by Pt 5, Ch 2, 9.6 Engine control, alarm monitoring and safety system power supplies 9.6.1.

9. 6. 3 An alarm is to be activated in the event of failure of a power supply and, where applicable, low battery charge level. Manual power supply changeover facilities are permitted.

PART

5

CHAPTER **2 Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engines**

SECTION **10 Safety arrangements**

10. 1 Relief valves

10. 1. 1 Scavenge spaces in open connection with cylinders are to be provided with explosion relief valves.

10. 1. 2 Crankcases are to be provided with lightweight spring-loaded valves or other quick-acting and self-closing devices to relieve the crankcases of pressure in the event of an internal explosion and to prevent any inrush of air thereafter. The valves are to be designed and constructed to open quickly and be fully open at a pressure not greater than 0.02 MPa.

10. 1. 3 The valve lids are to be made of ductile material capable of withstanding the shock of contact with stoppers at the full open position.

10. 1. 4 Each valve is to be fitted with a flame arrester that permits flow for crankcase pressure relief and prevents the passage of flame following a crankcase explosion. The valves are to be type tested in a configuration that represents the installation arrangements that will be used on an engine and in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 2, 14.3 Crankcase explosion relief valves. The valves are to be positioned on engines to minimise the possibility of danger and damage arising from emission of the crankcase atmosphere. Where shielding from the emissions is fitted to a valve, the valve is to be type tested to demonstrate that the shielding does not adversely affect the operational effectiveness of the valve.

10. 1. 5 The valves are to be provided with a copy of the manufacturer's installation and maintenance manual for the size and type of valve being supplied for installation on a particular engine. The manual is to contain the following information:

- Description of valve with details of function and design limits.
- Copy of type test certification.
- Installation instructions.
- Maintenance and in service instructions to include testing and renewal of any sealing arrangements.
- Actions required after a crankcase explosion.

10. 1. 6 A copy of the installation and maintenance manual required by Pt 5, Ch 2, 10.1 Relief valves 10.1.5 is to be provided on board the ship.

10. 1. 7 Plans showing details and arrangements of the relief valves are to be submitted for approval, *See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 1.4, Submission requirements.

10. 1. 8 The valves are to be provided with suitable markings that include the following information:

- Name and address of manufacturer.
- Designation and size.

- Month/Year of manufacture.
- Approved installation orientation.

10. 2 Number of relief valves

10. 2. 1 Internal combustion engines having a cylinder bore of 200 mm and above or a crankcase volume of 0.6 m^3 and above shall be provided with crankcase explosion relief valves.

10. 2. 2 In engines having cylinders exceeding 200 mm but not exceeding 250 mm bore, at least two relief valves are to be fitted; each valve is to be located at or near the ends of the crankcase. Where the engine has more than eight crankthrows an additional valve is to be fitted near the centre of the engine.

10. 2. 3 In engines having cylinders exceeding 250 mm but not exceeding 300 mm bore, at least one relief valve is to be fitted in way of each alternate crankthrow with a minimum of two valves. For engines having 3, 5, 7, 9, etc. crankthrows, the number of relief valves is not to be less than 2, 3, 4, 5, etc. respectively.

10. 2. 4 In engines having cylinders exceeding 300 mm bore at least one valve is to be fitted in way of each main crankthrow.

10. 2. 5 Additional relief valves are to be fitted for separate spaces on the crankcase, such as gear or chaincases for camshaft or similar drives, when the gross volume of such spaces exceeds 0.6 m^3.

10. 3 Size of relief valves

10. 3. 1 The combined free area of the crankcase relief valves fitted on an engine is to be not less than 115 cm^2/m^3 based on the volume of the crankcase.

10. 3. 2 The free area of each relief valve is to be not less than 45 cm^2.

10. 3. 3 The free area of the relief valve is the minimum flow area at any section through the valve when the valve is fully open.

10. 3. 4 In determining the volume of the crankcase for the purpose of calculating the combined free area of the crankcase relief valves, the volume of the stationary parts within the crankcase may be deducted from the total internal volume of the crankcase.

10. 4 Vent pipes

10. 4. 1 Through ventilation, and any arrangement which could produce a flow of external air within the crankcase, is in principle not permitted except for trunk piston type dual fuel engines where crankcase ventilation is to be provided. Where crankcase vent or breather pipes are fitted, they are to be made as small as practicable and/or as long as possible to minimise the inrush of air after an explosion. Vents or breather pipes from crankcases of main engines are to be led to a safe position on deck or other approved position.

10. 4. 2 If provision is made for the extraction of gases from within the crankcase, e.g. for oil mist detection purposes, the vacuum within the crankcase is not to exceed 25 mm of water.

10. 4. 3 Lubricating oil drain pipes from engine sump to drain tank are to be submerged at their outlet ends. Where two or more engines are installed, vent pipes, if fitted, and lubrication oil drain pipes are to be independent to avoid intercommunication between crankcases.

10. 5 Warning notice

10. 5. 1 A warning notice is to be fitted in a prominent position, preferably on a crankcase door on each side of the engine, or alternatively at the engine room control station. This warning notice is to specify that whenever overheating is suspected in the crankcase, the crankcase doors or sight holes are not to be opened until a reasonable time has elapsed after stopping the engine, sufficient to permit adequate cooling within the crankcase.

10. 6 Crankcase access and lighting

10. 6. 1 Where access to crankcase spaces is necessary for inspection purposes, suitably positioned rungs or equivalent arrangements are to be provided as considered appropriate.

10. 6. 2 When interior lighting is provided it is to be flameproof in relation to the interior and details of which are to be submitted for approval. No wiring is to be fitted inside the crankcase.

10. 7 Fire-extinguishing system for scavenge manifolds

10. 7. 1 Crosshead type engine scavenge spaces in open connection with cylinders are to be provided with approved fixed or portable fire-extinguishing arrangements which are to be independent of the fire-extinguishing system of the engine room.

10. 8 Oil mist detection

10. 8. 1 Oil mist detection, or engine bearing temperature monitors are to be provided:

a. When arrangements are fitted to override the automatic shutdown for excessive reduction of the lubricating oil supply pressure.
b. For engines of 2250 kW and above or having cylinders of more than 300 mm bore.

10. 8. 2 Where crankcase oil mist detection arrangements are fitted, they are to be of a type approved by ACS, tested in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 2, 14.4 Crankcase oil mist detection system and comply with Pt 5, Ch 2, 10.8 Oil mist detection 10.8.3 to Pt 5, Ch 2, 10.8 Oil mist detection 10.8.16.

10. 8. 3 The oil mist detection system and arrangements are to be installed in accordance with the engine designer's and oil mist detection equipment manufacturer's instructions/recommendations. The following particulars are to be included in the instructions:

a. A schematic layout of the engine oil mist detection and alarm system showing locations of engine crankcase sample points and cabling/piping arrangements together with pipe dimensions to the detector.
b. Evidence of study to justify the selected locations of sample points and sample extraction rate (if applicable) in consideration of the crankcase arrangements and geometry and the predicted crankcase atmosphere where oil mist can accumulate.
c. The manufacturer's maintenance and test manual.
d. Information relating to type or in-service testing of the engine with engine protection system test arrangements having approved types of oil mist detection equipment.

10. 8. 4 A copy of the oil mist detection equipment maintenance and test manual required by Pt 5, Ch 2, 10.8 Oil mist detection 10.8.3 is to be provided on board ship.

10. 8. 5 Oil mist detection and alarm information is to be capable of being read from a safe location away from the engine.

10. 8. 6 In the case of multi engine installations, each engine is to be provided with individual, dedicated oil mist detection arrangements and alarm(s).

10. 8. 7 Oil mist detection and alarm systems are to be capable of being tested on the test bed and on board when the engine is at a standstill and when the engine is running at normal operating conditions in accordance with test procedures that are acceptable to ACS.

10. 8. 8 Alarms and safeguards for the oil mist detection system are to be in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems as applicable.

10. 8. 9 The oil mist detection arrangements are to provide an alarm indication in the event of a fore*See*able functional failure in the equipment and installation arrangements. *See* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.4 Safety systems, general requirements 2.4.5.

10. 8. 10 The oil mist detection system is to provide an indication that any lenses fitted in the equipment and used in determination of the oil mist level have been partially obscured to a degree that will affect the reliability of the information and alarm indication.

10. 8. 11 Where oil mist detection equipment includes the use of programmable electronic systems, the arrangements are to be in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems as applicable.

10. 8. 12 Schematic layouts showing details and arrangements of oil mist detection and alarm systems are to be submitted. *See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 1.4, Submission requirements.

10. 8. 13 The equipment together with detectors is to be tested when installed on the test bed and on board ship to demonstrate that the detection and alarm system functions correctly. The testing arrangements are to be to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

10. 8. 14 Where sequential oil mist detection arrangements are provided, the sampling frequency and time is to be as short as reasonably practicable.

10. 8. 15 Where alternative methods are provided for the prevention of the build-up of oil mist that may lead to a potentially explosive condition within the crankcase, detailed information is to be submitted for consideration. The information is to include:

a. Engine particulars – type, power, speed, stroke, bore and crankcase volume.
b. Details of arrangements designed to prevent the build up of potentially explosive conditions within the crankcase, e.g. bearing temperature monitoring, oil splash temperature monitoring, crankcase pressure monitoring, and recirculation arrangements.
c. Evidence to demonstrate that the arrangements are effective in preventing the build up of potentially explosive conditions together with details of in-service experience.
d. Operating instructions and the maintenance and test instructions.

10. 8. 16 Where it is proposed to use the introduction of inert gas into the crankcase to minimise a potential crankcase explosion, details of the arrangements are to be submitted for consideration.

PART

5

CHAPTER 2 **Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engines**

SECTION 11 **Factory Acceptance Test and Shipboard Trials of Engines**

11. 1 Safety

11. 1. 1 Before any test is carried out, all relevant equipment for the safety of attending personnel is to be made available by the manufacturer/shipyard and is to be operational. This is to include crankcase explosive conditions protection, overspeed protection and any other shutdown function.

11. 1. 2 The overspeed protective device is to be set to a value which is not higher than the overspeed value that was demonstrated during the type test for that engine. This set point is to be verified by the Surveyor.

11. 1. 3 The low-pressure gas fuel piping on the engine is to be verified as gastight prior to the engine being started.

11. 2 General

11. 2. 1 Engines which are to be subjected to trials on the test bed at the manufacturer's works and under attendance by the Surveyor(s) are to be tested in accordance with the scope of works trials specified in Pt 5, Ch 2, 11.3 Works trials (factory acceptance test) . The scope of the trials is to be agreed between ACS and the manufacturer prior to testing.

11. 2. 2 Where multiple engines of the same design are manufactured, a quality assurance approach to approval may be applied if the manufacturer meets the requirements of and is registered on the Quality Assurance Scheme for Machinery (QAM). (*See* Pt 5, Ch 1, 6 Quality Assurance Scheme for Machinery).

11. 2. 3 Before any official testing the engines are to be run in as prescribed by the engine manufacturer.

11. 2. 4 Adequate test bed facilities for loads as required in Table 2. 11. 1: Scope of works trials for engines are to be provided. All fluids used for testing purposes such as fuel, lubrication oil and cooling water are to be suitable for the purpose intended, e.g. they are to be clean, and if necessary pre-heated to achieve the recommended operating temperature. This applies to all fluids used temporarily or repeatedly for testing purposes only.

11. 2. 5 Survey of the engine is to include:

a. Jacketing of high-pressure fuel oil lines including the system used for the detection of leakage.
b. Screening of pipe connections in piping containing flammable liquids.
c. Insulation of hot surfaces by taking random temperature readings that are to be compared with corresponding readings obtained during the type test. This is to be done while running at the maximum approved rating for the actual application. Use of contact thermometers may be accepted at the discretion of the attending Surveyor. If the insulation is modified subsequently to the Type Approval Test, ACS may request more enhanced temperature measurements as

required by the ACS's Type Approval Test Specification No. 4, Section 10.2.7 (Fire Protection Measures).

These surveys are normally to be made during the works trials but at the discretion of ACS parts of these surveys may be postponed to the shipboard testing.

11. 2. 6 Where the type test was not carried out on the complete engine, as described in the scope of this chapter, integration tests are to be conducted as part of the works or shipboard trials to confirm satisfactory operation of the complete engine. This includes satisfactory functioning on all fuel types on which the engine is to operate. *See also* Pt 5, Ch 2, 11.4 Shipboard trials 11.4.6.

11. 2. 7 For the duration of the acceptance test, no interventions or adjustments will be made to the machinery under test.

11. 3 Works trials (factory acceptance test)

11. 3. 1 The purpose of the works trials is to verify design parameters such as power, fire protection and prevention arrangements, adherence to approved limits (e.g. maximum pressure) and functionality, and to establish reference values or base lines for later reference in the operational phase.

11. 3. 2 During testing the environmental conditions are to be recorded, including ambient air temperature, ambient air pressure and atmospheric humidity.

11. 3. 3 For each trial condition the parameters to be recorded include: Power and speed; Fuel index, both gas and fuel oil as applicable (or equivalent reading); Gas pressure and temperature; Maximum combustion pressures; Exhaust gas temperature before turbine and from each cylinder (or from manifold, *See* Note 5 in Table 2. 7. 1: Engines for propulsion purposes: Alarms and slow-downs); Charge air temperature and pressure, and turbocharger speed (only for category B and C turbochargers).

11. 3. 4 For all stages of the works trials the pertaining operation values are to be measured and recorded by the engine manufacturer. All results are to be compiled in an acceptance protocol to be issued by the engine manufacturer. Where the engine designer requires through life monitoring of crankshaft deflections, such measurements are also to be taken before and after works acceptance trials in accordance with the engine designer's requirements.

11. 3. 5 In each case given in Table 2. 11. 1: Scope of works trials for engines, all measurements conducted at the various trial conditions are to be carried out at steady operating conditions. The readings for MCR, i.e. 100 per cent power (rated maximum continuous power at corresponding rpm) are to be taken twice at an interval of at least 30 minutes. For all trial conditions provision should be made for time needed by the Surveyor to carry out visual inspections.

11. 3. 6 Calibration records for the instrumentation are, upon request, to be presented to the attending Surveyor.

Table 2. 11. 1: Scope of works trials for engines

Main engines driving propellers and waterjets		
Trial condition	Duration	Note
100 per cent power (rated power) at rated engine speed, *R*	≥ 60 minutes	-
110 per cent power at engine speed corresponding to 1.032**R*	15 minutes	Or after having reached steady conditions, whichever is shorter, *See* Notes 1and 4
Approved intermittent overload (if applicable)	—	Testing for duration to be agreed with the manufacturer

90 per cent (of normal continuous power), 75 per cent, 50 per cent and 25 per cent power	—	Engine speed in accordance with the nominal propeller curve, sequence to be selected by the manufacturer
Reversing manoeuvres (if applicable)	—	—
Testing of governor and independent overspeed protective device	—	*See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 7 Control and monitoring of main, auxiliary and emergency engines
Shutdown device	—	*See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 7 Control and monitoring of main, auxiliary and emergency engines
Engines driving generators for electric propulsion or driving generators for auxiliary purposes		
Trial condition	Duration	Note
100 per cent power (rated power) at rated engine speed, *R*	≥ 60 minutes	-
110 per cent power	15 minutes	Or after having reached steady conditions *See* Note 2. For auxiliary engines, *See* Note 1
75 per cent, 50 per cent and 25 per cent power and idle run	—	*See* Note 2
Start-up tests	—	—
Testing of governor and independent overspeed protective device	—	*See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 7.3, Auxiliary and emergency engine governors
Shutdown device	—	*See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 7.4 Overspeed protective devices
Propulsion engines driving power take off (PTO) generator		
Trial condition	Duration	Note
100 per cent power (rated power) at rated engine speed, *R*	≥ 60 minutes	—
110 per cent power	15 minutes	Or after having reached steady conditions, *See* Note 3
Approved intermittent overload (if applicable)	—	Testing for duration to be agreed with the manufacturer
90 per cent (or normal continuous power), 75 per cent, 50 per cent and 25 per cent power	—	Engine speed in accordance with the nominal propeller curve or at constant speed *R*, sequence to be selected by the manufacturer
Engines driving mechanical auxiliaries		
Trial condition	Duration	Note
100 per cent power (rated power) at rated engine speed, *R*	≥ 30 minutes	—
110 per cent power	15 minutes	Or after having reached steady conditions, *See* Note 1
Approved intermittent overload (if applicable)	—	Testing for duration to be agreed with the manufacturer

75 per cent, 50 per cent and 25 per cent power	—	Engine speed in accordance with the nominal power consumption curve, sequence to be selected by the manufacturer

Note *1*. After running on the test bed, the fuel delivery system of main and auxiliary engines is normally to be so adjusted that overload power cannot be given in service unless intermittent overload power is approved by ACS, in which case the limit is to be adjusted to that power. The setting of the restriction is to be made as applicable to the intended fuel. Any restriction settings, and other changes to the engine's fuel injection equipment required for operation on special fuels, are to be recorded and included by the engine manufacturer.

Note *2*. After running on the test bed, the fuel delivery system of diesel engines driving generators is to be adjusted so that full power plus a 10 per cent margin for transient regulation can be given in service after installation on board. The transient overload capability is required so that the required transient governing characteristics are achieved also at 100 per cent loading of the engine, and so that the protection system utilised in the electric distribution system can be activated before the engine stalls.

Note 3. After running on the test bed, the fuel delivery system of propulsion engines also driving power take off (PTO) generators is to be adjusted so that full power plus a margin for transient regulation can be given in service after installation on board. The transient overload capability is required so that the electrical protection of downstream system components is activated before the engine stalls. This margin may be 10 per cent of the engine power but at least 10 per cent of the PTO power.

Note 4. Only required once for each different engine/turbocharger configuration.

11. 3. 7 Alternatives to the detailed tests may be agreed between the manufacturer and ACS when the overall scope of tests is found to be equivalent. The scope of the trials may be expanded depending on the engine application, service experience, or other relevant reasons. Dual fuel (DF) engines using low pressure methane shall be tested in both fuel oil and gas mode as applicable.

11. 3. 8 Turbocharger surge margin for propulsion engines is to be demonstrated as required by Pt 5, Ch 2, 12.4 Matching with engine 12.4.2.

11. 3. 9 For electronically controlled engines:

a. factory acceptance tests in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 2, 1.4,, Submission requirements 1.4.3;
b. integration tests are to be made to verify that the response of the complete mechanical, hydraulic and electronic system is as predicted for all intended operational modes and the tests considered as a system are to be carried out at the works. If such tests are technically unfeasible at the works, then these tests may be conducted during sea trial; and
c. verification of engine configuration, *See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 4.3 Control engineering systems 4.3.2, and that the approved software quality plans, including the software configuration management process, are to be applied.

11. 3. 10 Gas fuel (GF) only and DF engines using low pressure methane are to undergo integration tests to verify correct operation of the complete mechanical, hydraulic and electronic system for all intended operational modes. The scope of these tests is to be agreed with ACS and is to be based on the results of the risk analysis required in Pt 5, Ch 2, 15.3 Risk analysis. Tests are to include, but not be limited to:

- failure of ignition (spark ignition or pilot injection systems), for one-cylinder unit;
- failure of a cylinder gas supply valve;
- failure of the combustion (to be detected by e.g. misfiring, knocking, exhaust temperature deviation, etc.);
- abnormal gas pressure;

- abnormal gas temperature.

The above tests may be carried out by simulation or other alternative methods subject to special consideration and agreement by ACS.

11. 3. 11 Checks of components to be presented for inspection after the works trials are left to the discretion of the Surveyor.

11. 3. 12 The testing of exhaust gas emissions is to comply with *MARPOL - International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships* as applicable.

11. 4 Shipboard trials

11. 4. 1 The purpose of the shipboard testing is to verify compatibility with power transmission and driven machinery in the system, safety, control and auxiliary systems necessary for the engine and integration of engine/shipboard control systems, as well as other items that had not been dealt with in the FAT (Factory Acceptance Testing).

11. 4. 2 After installation on board, engines are to undergo shipboard trials as specified in Table 2. 11. 2: Scope of shipboard trials for engines. The scope of the trials may be expanded depending on the engine application, service experience or other relevant reasons, and is to be agreed between the ACS Surveyor and the Shipyard prior to testing.

Table 2. 11. 2: Scope of shipboard trials for engines

Main engines driving fixed-pitch propeller or waterjet (*See* Note 1)		
Trial condition	Duration	Note
At rated engine speed, *R*	≥ 4 hours	–
At engine speed corresponding to normal continuous power	≥ 2 hours	–
At engine speed corresponding to 1.032**R*	30 minutes	Where the engine adjustment permits, *See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 11.2 General 11.2.7
Approved intermittent overload (if applicable)	-	Testing for duration as agreed with the manufacturer
Minimum engine speed to be determined	–	–
Starting and reversing manoeuvres	–	*See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 9 Starting arrangements and Pt 5, Ch 2, 13 Air compressors (*See* Note 5)
Reverse direction of propeller rotation is to be demonstrated (during the dock or sea trials)	10 minutes	*See also* Pt 5, Ch 2, 11.4 Shipboard trials 11.4.7 and Pt 5, Ch 2, 11.4 Shipboard trials 11.4.8
Control, monitoring, alarms and safety systems	–	Operation to be demonstrated
Where imposed, test to ensure engine can pass safely through barred speed range	–	*See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 11.4 Shipboard trials 11.4.7 and Pt 5, Ch 2, 11.4 Shipboard trials 11.4.8 for additional requirements in the case of a barred speed range
Main engines driving controllable pitch propellers		
Trial condition	Duration	Note
At 100 per cent power	≥ 4 hours	*See* Note 2
Approved intermittent overload (if applicable)	–	Testing for duration as agreed with the manufacturer
With reverse pitch suitable for manoeuvring	–	*See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 11.4 Shipboard trials 11.4.7 and Pt 5, Ch 2, 11.4 Shipboard trials 11.4.8 for additional requirements in the case of a barred speed range

Control, monitoring, alarm and safety systems	–	Operation to be demonstrated
Engine(s) driving generator(s) for electrical propulsion and/or main power supply		
Trial condition	Duration	Note
100 per cent power (rated electrical power of generator)	≥ 60 minutes	*See* Notes 3 and 4
110 per cent power (rated electrical power of generator)	≥ 10 minutes	*See* Note 4
Starting manoeuvres	–	*See* Note 5
Control, monitoring, alarm and safety systems	–	Operation to be demonstrated
Demonstration of the generator prime movers' and governors' ability to handle load steps	–	*See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 7.3, Auxiliary and emergency engine governors
Propulsion engines driving power take off (PTO) generator		
Trial condition	Duration	Note
100 per cent engine power (MCR) at corresponding speed, *R*	≥ 4 hour	–
100 per cent propeller branch power at engine speed, *R* (unless already covered above)	2 hours	–
100 per cent PTO branch power at engine speed, *R*	≥ 1 hour	–
Control, monitoring, alarm and safety systems	-	Operation to be demonstrated
Engines driving mechanical auxiliaries		
Trial condition	Duration	Note
100 per cent engine power (MCR) at corresponding speed, *R*	≥ 30 minutes	–
Approved intermittent overload (if applicable)	–	Testing for duration as approved
Control, monitoring, alarm and safety systems	–	Operation to be demonstrated

Note *1.* For main propulsion engines driving reversing gears, the tests for main engines driving fixed-pitch propellers apply as appropriate.

Note *2.* Controllable pitch propellers are to be tested with various propeller pitches. The 100 per cent power test is to be conducted at rated engine speed *R* with a propeller pitch set of MCR (or to the maximum achievable power if 100 per cent cannot be reached).

Note *3.* The tests are to be performed at rated speed with a constant governor setting.

Note *4.* Tests are to be based on the rated electrical powers of the electric propulsion motors.

Note 5. Starting manoeuvres are to be carried out in order to verify the capacity of the starting media. The ability of reversible engines to be operated in the reverse direction is to be demonstrated. *See* Pt 5, Ch 1, 3.9 Astern power.

11. 4. 3 Engines driving electrical generators are to be tested either:

a. at 100 per cent electrical power for at least 60 minutes and 110 per cent of rated electrical power of the generator for at least 10 minutes; or

b. During the electrical propulsion plant test which requires testing with 100 per cent propulsion power (i.e. total electric motor capacity for propulsion) by distributing the power on as few generators as possible. The duration of this test is to be sufficient to reach stable operating temperatures of all rotating machines or for at least 4 hours.

11. 4. 4 Trials are to include demonstration of engine control, monitoring, alarm and safety system operation to confirm that they have been provided, installed and configured as intended and in accordance with the relevant requirements for main, auxiliary or emergency engines except items already verified during the works trials.

11. 4. 5 For electronically controlled engines:

a. shipboard tests in accordance with the approved schedule, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 2, 1.4,, Submission requirements 1.4.3; and

b. verification of engine configuration, *See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 4.3 Control engineering systems 4.3.2 and Pt 5, Ch 2, 1.4,, Submission requirements 1.4.3.a, and that the approved software quality plans, including the software configuration management process, are to be applied.

11. 4. 6 The suitability of an engine to burn residual or other special fuels is to be demonstrated, where the machinery installation is arranged to burn such fuels in service. DF or multi-fuel engines are to be tested on all fuels that the engine is specified to use. Where engines operate on a mix of different fuels then this is to be demonstrated. *See also* Pt 6, Ch 1, 7.2 Unattended machinery space operation - UMS notation 7.2.1.

11. 4. 7 For both manual and automatic engine control systems, acceleration and deceleration through any barred speed range, is to be demonstrated. The transit times are to be equal or less than the times stated in the approved documentation and are to be recorded. This also applies when passing through the barred speed range in reverse rotational direction, especially during the stopping test. The ship's draft and speed during all these demonstrations are to be recorded. Where a controllable pitch propeller is fitted, the pitch is also to be recorded.

11. 4. 8 The engine is to be checked for stable running (steady fuel index) at both upper and lower borders of the barred speed range. Steady fuel index means an oscillation range less than five per cent of the effective stroke (idle to full index).

11. 4. 9 In addition to the tests listed in Table 2. 11. 2: Scope of shipboard trials for engines, other tests may also be required by statutory regulations (e.g. the testing of exhaust gas emissions is to comply with *MARPOL - International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships* as applicable)

PART

5

CHAPTER **2** **Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engines**

SECTION **12** **Turbochargers**

12. 1 General

12. 1. 1 Turbochargers are to be approved, either separately or as a part of an engine.

12. 1. 2 The requirements escalate with the size of the turbochargers. The parameter for size is the engine power (at MCR) supplied by a group of cylinders served by the actual turbocharger, e.g. for a V-engine with one turbocharger for each bank, the size is half of the total engine power. Turbochargers are categorised in three groups depending on served power by cylinder groups with:

a. Category A: ≤ 1000 kW
b. Category B: > 1000 kW and ≤ 2500 kW
c. Category C: > 2500 kW

12. 1. 3 Plans and particulars are to be submitted as required by Pt 5, Ch 2, 1.4 Submission requirements 1.4.5.

12. 1. 4 Alarms and slowdowns for turbochargers are required as listed in Table 2. 7. 1: Engines for propulsion purposes: Alarms and slow-downs and Table 2. 7. 3: Auxiliary engines: Alarms and safeguards.

12. 1. 5 Turbochargers are to be designed for the operating conditions defined in Pt 5, Ch 1, 3 Operating conditions. The component lifetime and the alarm level for speed are to be based on 45°C air inlet temperature.

12. 1. 6 Category B and C turbochargers (new turbocharger types or developments of existing types) are to be Type approved. A Type test, *See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 14.2 Turbochargers, is to be carried out on a standard unit taken from the assembly line and is to be witnessed by the Surveyor.

12. 1. 7 The air inlet of turbochargers is to be fitted with a filter.

12. 2 Works testing and inspection

12. 2. 1 ACS Surveyors are to be provided with free access to the manufacturer's works to inspect at random the quality control measures and to witness the tests required by Pt 5, Ch 2, 12.2 Works testing and inspection 12.2.2 as deemed necessary, and to have free access to all control records and subcontractor's certificates.

12. 2. 2 Each individual unit is to be tested in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 2, 12.2 Works testing and inspection 12.2.3 to Pt 5, Ch 2, 12.2 Works testing and inspection 12.2.8. For category C turbochargers these tests are to be conducted under survey unless an alternative approach for product assurance has been approved by ACS. For category B turbochargers the testing is to be documented by manufacturer's certificate. For category A turbochargers, test results, documented by manufacturer's certificate, are only required if specifically requested by ACS.

12. 2. 3 Rotating parts of the turbocharger's blower are to be marked for easy identification with the corresponding certificate. Component identification is to be in accordance with the Rules for Materials.

12. 2. 4 Material tests (chemical composition and mechanical properties) and dimensional inspection, of the rotating parts and casing are to confirm compliance with the approved design and material specifications (*See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 1.4 Submission requirements 1.4.5). Testing and inspection of turbocharger casings and rotor shafts are to comply with the requirements of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials as applicable.

12. 2. 5 Cooling spaces are to be hydraulically tested to 0.4 MPa gauge or 1.5 times maximum working pressure, whichever is higher.

12. 2. 6 Rotating parts are to be subjected to ultrasonic testing and surface crack detection (magnetic particle testing is to be carried out on ferro-magnetic materials, penetrant testing is only to be carried out on non-ferritic materials). Ultrasonic testing is not required for components manufactured from cast iron.

12. 2. 7 All rotors are to be dynamically balanced on final assembly.

12. 2. 8 All compressor wheels are to be overspeed tested for three minutes at either 20 per cent above the alarm level speed at room temperature, or 10 per cent above alarm level speed at 45°C inlet temperature when tested in the actual housing with the corresponding pressure ratio. The overspeed test may be waived for forged wheels that are individually controlled by an approved non-destructive method, this test will not be waived for wheels of the unit to be type tested.

12. 3 Certification

12. 3. 1 Turbochargers are to be delivered with:

a. Category B turbochargers: A manufacturer's certificate, which states the applicable type approval, including production assessment.
b. Category C turbochargers: An ACS certificate or ACS Quality Scheme Product Certificate as applicable, which states the applicable Type Approval and ACS Quality Scheme reference, if applicable.

12. 3. 2 Where the manufacturer operates an alternative approach for product assurance approved by ACS the periodic audits will include specific focus on:

a. Chemical composition of material for the rotating parts.
b. Mechanical properties of the material of a representative specimen for the rotating parts and the casing.
c. UT and crack detection of rotating parts.
d. Dimensional inspection of rotating parts.
e. Rotor dynamic balancing.
f. Hydraulic testing of cooling spaces as per Pt 5, Ch 2, 12.2 Works testing and inspection 12.2.5.
g. Overspeed test of all compressor disks as per Pt 5, Ch 2, 12.2 Works testing and inspection 12.2.8.

12. 3. 3 The above certification and test requirements also apply to replacement rotating parts and casing.

12. 4 Matching with engine

12. 4. 1 Turbochargers are to have a compressor characteristic that allows the engine on which it is installed to operate without surging during all operating conditions. For abnormal, but permissible, operation conditions, such as misfiring and sudden load reduction, no continuous surging is to occur.

Note Surging and continuous surging are defined as follows: Surging means any phenomenon which results in a high pitch vibration of an audible level or explosion-like noise from the scavenger area of the engine. Continuous surging means that surging happens repeatedly and not only once.

12. 4. 2 Category C turbochargers used on propulsion engines are to be tested to ensure an adequate operating margin without surge occurring during the engine works trials as specified below. These tests may be waived if successfully tested earlier on an identical configuration of engine and turbocharger (including same nozzle rings).

a. For trunk piston engines the following are to be performed without indication of surging:
   i. With maximum continuous power and speed (i.e. 100 per cent), the speed is to be reduced with constant torque (fuel index) down to 90 per cent power.
   ii. With 50 per cent power at 80 per cent speed (i.e. propeller characteristic for fixed pitch), the speed is to be reduced to 72 per cent while keeping constant torque (fuel index).

b. For crosshead engines the surge margin is to be demonstrated by at least one of the following methods:
   i. The engine working characteristic established at workshop testing of the engine is to be plotted into the compressor chart of the turbocharger (established in a test rig). There is to be at least a 10 per cent surge margin in the full load range, i.e. the working flow is to be at least 10 per cent above the theoretical (mass) flow at the surge limit (at no pressure fluctuations).
   ii. Sudden fuel shut-off to at least one cylinder is to not result in continuous surging and the turbocharger(s) is/are to stabilise at the new load within 20 seconds. For applications with more than one turbocharger the fuel is to be shut-off to the cylinders immediately upstream of each turbocharger. This test is to be performed at two different engine loads:
      - The maximum power permitted with one cylinder misfiring.
      - The engine load corresponding to a charge air pressure of about 0.06 MPa (but without auxiliary blowers running).

   iii. Sudden power reduction from 100 per cent to 50 per cent of the maximum continuous power is not to result in continuous surging and the turbocharger(s) is/are to be stabilised at the new load within 20 seconds.

PART

5

CHAPTER **2 Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engines**

SECTION **13 Air compressors**

13. 1 General requirements

13. 1. 1 The requirements of this Section are applicable to reciprocating air compressors intended for starting main engines and auxiliary engines providing essential services.

13. 1. 2 Two or more air compressors are to be fitted having a total capacity, together with a topping-up compressor where fitted, capable of charging the air receivers within 1 hour from atmospheric pressure, to the pressure sufficient for the number of starts required by Pt 5, Ch 2, 9.2 Air receiver capacity. At least one of the air compressors is to be independent of the main propulsion unit and the capacity of the main air compressors is to be approximately equally divided between them. The capacity of an emergency compressor which may be installed to satisfy the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 2, 9.1, Dead ship condition starting arrangements is to be ignored.

13. 1. 3 The compressors are to be so designed that the temperature of the air discharged to the starting air receivers will not substantially exceed 93°C in service. A small fusible plug or an alarm device operating at 121°C is to be provided on each compressor to give warning of excessive air temperature. The emergency air compressor is excepted from these requirements.

13. 1. 4 Each compressor is to be fitted with a safety valve so proportioned and adjusted that the accumulation with the outlet valve closed will not exceed 10 per cent of the maximum working pressure. The casings of the cooling water spaces are to be fitted with a safety valve or bursting disc so that ample relief will be provided in the event of the bursting of an air cooler tube. It is recommended that compressors be cooled by fresh water.

13. 1. 5 Each compressor is to be fitted with an alarm for failure of the lubricating oil supply which will initiate an automatic shutdown.

13. 2 Plans and particulars

13. 2. 1 Detailed plans, particulars, dimensional drawings and material specifications for compressor crankshafts are to be submitted. Plans and particulars for other parts and calculations where applicable are to be submitted to ACS upon request.

13. 2. 2 Where compressors of a special type or design are proposed, the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 15 Refrigeration Systems and Equipment Serving Provision Stores and Air-Conditioning Installations are to be applied.

13. 3 Materials

13. 3. 1 The specified minimum tensile strength of castings and forgings for compressor crankshafts are to be within the limits given in Pt 5, Ch 2, 2.1 Crankshaft Materials 2.1.1 and for grey cast iron to be not less than 300 N/mm^2.

13. 3. 2 Where it is proposed to use materials outside the ranges specified in Pt 5, Ch 2, 13.3 Materials 13.3.1, details of the chemical composition, heat treatment and mechanical properties are to be submitted for approval.

13. 3. 3 For compressors crankshafts with a calculated crank pin diameter equal to or greater than 50 mm, materials for components are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of the ACS Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials and Table 2. 2. 1: Summary of testing and associated documentation for engine components. For calculated crank pin diameters less than 50 mm, a manufacturers' certificate may be accepted, *See* Ch 1, 3.1 General 3.1.3.c of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials.

13. 4 Design and Construction

13. 4. 1 A fully documented fatigue strength analysis is to be submitted indicating a factor of safety of 1.5 at the design loads based on a suitable fatigue strength criterion. Alternatively, the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 2, 13.4 Design and Construction 13.4.2 to Pt 5, Ch 2, 13.4 Design and Construction 13.4.6 may be used.

13. 4. 2 The diameter, d_p, of a compressor crankshaft is to be not less than d, determined by the following formula, when all cranks on the shaft are located between two main bearings only:

$$d = V_c \left(\frac{10 D^2 p Z}{78.5} \left(\frac{S}{16} + \frac{ab}{a+b} \right) \right)^{1/3} \text{ mm}$$

where

a = distance between inner edge of one main bearing and the centreline of the crankpin nearest the centre of the span, in mm

b = distance from the centreline of the same crankpin to the inner edge of the adjacent main bearing, in mm

$a+b$ = span between inner edges of main bearings, in mm

d_p = proposed minimum diameter of crankshaft, in mm

p = design pressure, in MPa g, as defined in Pt 5, Ch 12, 1.3 Design symbols 1.3.1

D = diameter of cylinder, in mm

S = length of stroke, in mm

V_c = 1.0 for shafts having one cylinder per crank, or

= 1.05 for 90° between adjacent cylinders on the same crankpin

= 1.18 for 60° between adjacent cylinders on the same crankpin

= 1.25 for 45° between adjacent cylinders on the same crankpin

for the shaft and cylinder arrangements as detailed in Table 2. 13. 1: Angle between cylinders

$$Z = \frac{560}{\sigma_u + 160}$$ for steel

$$Z = \frac{700}{\sigma_u + 260 - 0.059 d_p}$$ for spheroidal or nodular graphite cast iron

$$Z = \frac{700}{\sigma_u + 260 - 0.069 d_p}$$ for grey cast iron

σ_u = specified minimum tensile strength of crankshaft material, in N/mm^2.

Table 2. 13. 1: Angle between cylinders

Number of crankpins	Number of cylinders per crank	Angle between cylinders, in degrees		
1 or 2	2	45	60	90
3	2	45	60	—
4	2	45	60	—
1	3	45	60	90
2	3	45	60	—
3	3	45	—	—
1	4	45	60	—
2	4	45	—	—

13. 4. 3 Where the shaft is supported additionally by a centre bearing, the diameter is to be evaluated from the half shaft between the inner edges of the centre and outer main bearings. The diameter so found for the half shaft is to be increased by six per cent for the full length shaft diameter.

13. 4. 4 The dimensions of crankwebs are to be such that Bt^2 is to be not less than given by the following formulae:

$0.4d^3$ for the web adjacent to the bearing
$0.75d^3$ for intermediate webs

where

B = breadth of web, in mm

d = minimum diameter of crankshaft as required by Pt 5, Ch 2, 13.4 Design and Construction 13.4.2, in mm

t = axial thickness of web which is to be not less than $0.45d$ for the web adjacent to the bearing, or $0.60d$ for intermediate webs, in mm.

13. 4. 5 Fillets at the junction of crankwebs with crankpins or journals are to be machined to a radius not less than $0.05d$. Smaller fillets, but of a radius not less than $0.025d$, may be used provided the diameter of the crankpin or journal is not less than cd,

where

c = $1.1 - 2\frac{r}{d}$ but to be taken as not less than 1.0

d = minimum diameter of crankshaft as required by Pt 5, Ch 2, 13.4 Design and Construction 13.4.2, in mm

r = fillet radius, in mm.

13. 4. 6 Fillets and oil holes are to be rounded to an even contour and smooth finish.

13. 4. 7 An oil level sight glass or oil level indicator is to be fitted to the crankcase.

13. 4. 8 The crankcases of compressors are to be designed to withstand a pressure equal to the maximum working pressure of the system.

13. 4. 9 Compressors with shaft power exceeding 500 kW are to have torsional vibration analysis determined in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 8, 2 Torsional vibration as applicable.

13. 4. 10 The cooler dimensions for sea-water cooled stage air coolers are to be based on an inlet temperature of not less than 32°C. Where fresh water cooling is used, the cooling water inlet temperature is not to be greater than 40°C.

13. 4. 11 The cooler dimensions for air cooled stage air coolers are to be based on an air temperature of not less than 45°C.

13. 4. 12 The piping to and from the air compressor is to be arranged to prevent condensation from entering the cylinders.

13. 5 Testing

13. 5. 1 Cast iron crankshafts for air compressors are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials, Ch 7, 5 Iron castings for crankshafts. Crankshafts for air compressors manufactured from other materials are to be tested in accordance with the applicable requirements of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials. Ultrasonic testing is not required for components manufactured from cast iron.

13. 5. 2 Cylinders, covers and liners of air compressors are to be subjected to hydraulic pressure tests at 1.5 times the final pressure of the stage concerned.

13. 5. 3 The compressed air chambers of the intercoolers and aftercoolers of air compressors are to be subjected to hydraulic pressure tests at 1.5 times the final pressure of the stage concerned.

13. 5. 4 Manufacturer's certification for materials and pressure testing will be accepted for air compressors with a calculated crankpin diameter of less than 50 mm.

13. 5. 5 After construction, all compressors are to be subjected to a running test to the satisfaction of the attending Surveyor.

13. 6 Safety arrangements and monitoring

13. 6. 1 Air compressors are to be arranged and located so as to minimise the intake of air contaminated by oil or water.

13. 6. 2 Where one compressor stage comprises several cylinders which can be shut off individually, each cylinder shall be equipped with a safety valve and a pressure gauge.

13. 6. 3 After the final stage, all air compressors are to be equipped with a water trap and after cooler. The water traps, after coolers and the compressed air spaces between the stages are to be provided with discharge devices at their lowest points.

13. 6. 4 Each compressor stage shall be fitted with a suitable pressure gauge, the scale of which must indicate the relevant maximum permissible working pressure.

13. 7 Crankcase relief valves

13. 7. 1 In compressors having cylinders not exceeding 200 mm bore or having a crankcase gross volume not exceeding 0.6 m^3, crankcase relief valves may be omitted.

13. 7. 2 Crankcases are to be provided with lightweight spring-loaded valves or other quick-acting and self-closing devices to relieve the crankcases of pressure in the event of an internal explosion and to prevent any inrush of air thereafter. The valves are to be designed and constructed to open quickly and be fully open at a pressure not greater than 0.02 MPa.

13. 7. 3 The valve lids are to be made of ductile material capable of withstanding the shock of contact with stoppers at the full open position.

13. 7. 4 Each valve is to be fitted with a flame arrester that permits flow for crankcase pressure relief and prevents the passage of flame following a crankcase explosion.

13. 7. 5 The valves are to be provided with a copy of the manufacturer's installation and maintenance manual for the size and type of valve being supplied. The manual is to contain the following information:

a. Description of valve with details of function and design limits.
b. Copy of type test certification.
c. Installation instructions.
d. Maintenance and in-service instructions to include testing and renewal of any sealing arrangements.
e. Actions required after a crankcase explosion.

13. 7. 6 A copy of the installation and maintenance manual required by Pt 5, Ch 2, 13.7 Crankcase relief valves 13.7.5 is to be provided on board the ship.

13. 7. 7 Plans showing details and arrangements of the crankcase relief valves are to be submitted for approval, *See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 1.4, Submission requirements.

13. 7. 8 The valves are to be provided with suitable markings that include the following information:

a. Name and address of manufacturer.
b. Designation and size.
c. Month/Year of manufacture.
d. Approved installation orientation.

13. 8 Number of crankcase relief valves

13. 8. 1 In compressors having cylinders exceeding 200 mm but not exceeding 250 mm bore, at least two relief valves are to be fitted; where more than one relief valve is required, the valves are to be located at or near the ends of the crankcase.

13. 8. 2 In compressors having cylinders exceeding 250 mm but not exceeding 300 mm bore, at least one relief valve is to be fitted in way of each alternate crankthrow with a minimum of two valves. For compressors having 3, 5, 7, 9, etc. crankthrows, the number of relief valves is not to be less than 2, 3, 4, 5, etc. respectively.

13. 8. 3 In compressors having cylinders exceeding 300 mm bore, at least one valve is to be fitted in way of each main crankthrow.

13. 8. 4 Additional relief valves are to be fitted for separate spaces on the crankcase, such as gear or chain cases, when the gross volume of such spaces exceeds 0.6 m^3.

13. 9 Size of crankcase relief valves

13. 9. 1 The combined free area of the crankcase relief valves fitted on a compressor is to be not less than 115 cm^2/m^3 based on the volume of the crankcase.

13. 9. 2 The free area of each relief valve is to be not less than 45 cm^2.

13. 9. 3 The free area of the relief valve is the minimum flow area at any section through the valve when the valve is fully open.

13. 9. 4 In determining the volume of the crankcase for the purpose of calculating the combined free area of the crankcase relief valves, the volume of the stationary parts within the crankcase may be deducted from the total internal volume of the crankcase.

13. 10 Vent pipes

13. 10. 1 Where crankcase vent or breather pipes are fitted, they are to be made as small as practicable and/or as long as possible to minimise the inrush of air after an explosion.

PART

5

CHAPTER **2 Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engines**

SECTION **14 Type testing – General**

14. 1 Engines

14. 1. 1 New engine types or developments of existing types are to be subjected to an agreed programme of type testing to complement the design appraisal and review of documentation.

14. 1. 2 Requirements for type testing of engines are contained within the ACS Type Approval System, Test Specification No. 4 – *Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engines and Associated Ancillary Equipment*. In all cases the type test specification is to be agreed with ACS.

14. 1. 3 Type testing specifications for other auxiliary systems are to be submitted for approval if they are to be tested separately from the engine.

14. 1. 4 Wherever practical, type tests are to be conducted with the engine control systems operational in the approved configuration, *See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 1.4, Submission requirements and Pt 5, Ch 2, 4.3 Control engineering systems 4.3.2. Configuration management documents that satisfy the requirements of ISO 10007 or an equivalent national or international standard, are to be reviewed at testing for validity and referenced in the type test report.

14. 1. 5 In addition to type testing against the requirements of Test Specification No. 4, engines may also be submitted for approval against recognised international or national standards. Where this additional testing and appraisal is carried out satisfactorily it will be stated on the Type Approval Certificate.

14. 1. 6 A type test carried out for a particular type of engine at any place of manufacture will be accepted for all engines of the same type built by the licen*See* or the licensor, subject to each place of manufacture being found to meet ACS requirements for conformity of production.

14. 2 Turbochargers

14. 2. 1 Requirements for type testing of category B and C turbochargers are contained within the ACS Type Approval System, *Test Specification No. 4 – Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engines and Associated Ancillary Equipment*. In all cases the type test specification and testing plan are to be agreed with ACS.

14. 3 Crankcase explosion relief valves

14. 3. 1 14.3.1 Requirements for type testing of crankcase explosion relief valves are contained within the ACS Type Approval System, *Test Specification No. 4 – Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engines and Associated Ancillary Equipment*. In all cases the type test specification is to be agreed with ACS.

14. 3. 2 The test specification is only applicable to explosion relief valves fitted with flame arresters. Where internal oil wetting of a flame arrester is a design feature of an explosion relief valve,

alternative testing arrangements that demonstrate compliance with these requirements may be proposed by the manufacturer. The alternative testing arrangements are to be submitted to ACS for appraisal.

14. 4 Crankcase oil mist detection system

14. 4. 1 Requirements for type testing of crankcase oil mist detection systems are contained within the ACS Type Approval System, *Test Specification No. 4 – Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engines and Associated Ancillary Equipment*. In all cases the type test specification is to be agreed with ACS.

14. 4. 2 This test specification is also applicable to oil mist detection systems intended for gear cases.

14. 4. 3 The approval of one type of detection equipment may be used to qualify other devices having identical construction details. Proposals are to be submitted for consideration.

14. 4. 4 Acceptance of crankcase oil mist detection equipment is at the discretion of ACS based on the appraisal of plans and particulars and the test house report of the results of type testing. *See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 1.4 Submission requirements 1.4.7.

PART

5

CHAPTER 2 **Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engines**

SECTION 15 **Type testing – General**

15. 1 General

15. 1. 1 Sections Pt 5, Ch 2, 15.1 General to Pt 5, Ch 2, 15.14 Control, monitoring, alarm and safety systems detail the requirements for trunk piston internal combustion engines supplied with low pressure (less than 1 MPa) natural gas (methane) as fuel. Engines may be either dual fuel engines (hereinafter referred to as DF engines) or gas fuel only engines (hereinafter referred to as GF engines).

15. 1. 2 The requirements apply to engines in which gas is introduced either into the air inlet manifold, scavenge space or cylinder air inlet channel port or mixed with air before the turbocharger ('pre-mixed engines') and the gas/air mixture in the cylinder is ignited by the combustion of a certain amount of fuel (pilot injection) or by extraneous ignition (sparking plug).

15. 1. 3 The requirements apply to, but are not limited to, engines for mechanical propulsion and generating sets intended for main propulsion and auxiliary applications in single engine or multi-engine installations.

15. 1. 4 In addition to the requirements described in this Chapter, the requirements relating to engines in the following Rule sets are also to be satisfied:

- *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk,* and
- *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships using Gases or other Low-flashpoint Fuels,*

15. 1. 5 Type testing requirements are given in ACS's *Type Approval System Test Specification Number 4*.

15. 1. 6 Factory acceptance test and shipboard trial requirements are given in Pt 5, Ch 2, 11 Factory Acceptance Test and Shipboard Trials of Engines.

15. 2 Submission requirements

15. 2. 1 The plans and particulars are to be submitted as required in Table 2. 15. 1: Plans and particulars to be submitted in addition to those required in Pt 5, Ch 2, 1.4 Submission requirements 1.4.1.

Table 2. 15. 1: Plans and particulars to be submitted

Document	For information (X indicates required submission)	For appraisal
For both DF and GF engines:		

• Schematic layout or other equivalent documents of gas system on the engine		X
• Gas piping system (including double-walled arrangement where applicable)		X
• Parts for gas admission system, *See* Note 1		X
• Arrangement of explosion relief valves (crankcase, *See* Note 2), charge air manifold, exhaust gas manifold) as applicable		X
• List of certified safe equipment and evidence of relevant certification		X
• Safety concept, *See* Note 3	X	
• Report of the risk analysis, *See* Note 4	X	
• Gas specification	X	
For DF engine only:		
• Schematic layout or other equivalent documents of fuel oil system (main and pilot fuel systems) on the engine		X
• Shielding of high pressure fuel pipes for pilot fuel system, assembly		X
• High pressure parts for pilot fuel oil injection system, *See* Note 1		X
For GF engine only:		
• Ignition system		X
Note 1. The documentation to contain specification of pressures, pipe dimensions and materials. **Note** 2. If required in Pt 5, Ch 2, 1.4 Submission requirements 1.4.1 **Note** 3. *See Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships using Gases or other Low-flashpoint Fuels, Part A-1, Part A-1 5.6 Regulations for ESD-protected machinery spaces ACS 5.6-02*. **Note** 4. *See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 15.3 Risk analysis		

15. 2. 2 Where considered necessary to verify the requirements of this Chapter have been satisfied, ACS may request further documents to be submitted.

15. 3 Risk analysis

15. 3. 1 A risk analysis shall be carried out by the engine manufacturer to:

- identify any reasonably fore*See*able normal and abnormal failures which may lead to the presence of gas in components or locations not designed for such purpose;
- evaluate the consequences including rupture, fire or explosion;
- identify the failure detection method where necessary;
- identify the corrective measures where the risk cannot be eliminated:
  - in the system design, such as redundancies and safety devices, monitoring or alarm provisions which permit restricted operation of the system;
  - in the system operation, such as, but not limited to, initiation of the redundancy and activation of an alternative mode of operation.

15. 3. 2 Risk analysis shall be undertaken to a recognised standard, e.g. ISO 31010:2009, and documented in accordance with ACS's *ACSPlus Procedure for Risk Based Designs (RBD)* and associated annexes.

15. 3. 3 Only single failures shall be considered at one time. Both detectable and non-detectable failures shall be considered. Failures of any component directly caused by a single failure of another component shall also to be considered (i.e. consequence failures).

15. 3. 4 The risk analysis for the engine is to include, but not be limited to:

- failure of the gas-related systems or components, in particular, gas piping and its enclosure, where provided, and cylinder gas supply valves. It shall be noted that failures of the gas supply components not located directly on the engine, such as valves and other components of the gas valve unit (GVU), are not to be considered in the analysis.
- failure of the ignition system (fuel oil pilot injection or sparking plugs).
- failure of the air to fuel ratio control system (charge air by-pass, gas pressure control valve, etc.).
- for engines where gas is injected upstream of the turbocharger compressor, failure of a component likely to result in a source of ignition (hot spots).
- failure of the gas combustion or abnormal combustion (misfiring, knocking).
- failure of the engine monitoring, control and safety systems. Where engines incorporate electronic control systems, a Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (F.M.E.A) is to be carried out in accordance with Note 10 in Table 2. 1. 1: Plans and particulars to be submitted.
- abnormal presence of gas in engine components (e.g. air inlet manifold and exhaust manifold of DF or GF engines) and in the external systems connected to the engines (e.g. exhaust duct).
- changes of operating modes for DF engines.
- hazard potential for crankcase fuel gas accumulation, for engines where the underside of the piston is in direct communication with the crankcase, *See Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships using Gases or other Low-flashpoint Fuels Pt A-1, 10.3 Regulations for internal combustion engines of piston type 10.3.1.2*.

15. 3. 5 The risk analysis for the engine shall also take into account the impact of the following external events:

- a gas leakage downstream of the GVU. The GVU is a set of manual shut-off valves, actuated shut-off and venting valves, gas pressure sensors and transmitters, gas temperature sensors and transmitters, gas pressure control valve and gas filter used to control the gas supply to each gas consumer. It also includes a connection for inert gas purging.
- the safety of the engine in case of an externally activated emergency shutdown or blackout, when running on gas;
- the interactions between the gas fuel system and the engine;
- failures in systems external to the engine that impact safe engine operation, such as ship fuel storage or fuel gas supply systems. This may require action from the engine control and monitoring system in the event of an alarm or fault condition.

15. 4 Design requirements

15. 4. 1 The allowable gas composition limits for the engine and the minimum and (if applicable) maximum methane number shall be specified by the manufacturer.

15. 4. 2 Components containing or likely to contain gas shall be designed to:

- minimise the risk of fire and explosion so as to demonstrate an equivalent level of safety to an oil-fuelled engine;
- mitigate the consequences of a possible explosion, through adequate strength of the component(s) or the fitting of suitable pressure relief devices of an approved type.

See:

- *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships using Gases or other Low-flashpoint Fuels, Pt A-1 10 Power Generation Including Propulsion and Other Gas Consumers;* or
- *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk*.

15. 4. 3 Discharge from pressure relief devices shall prevent the passage of flame to the machinery space and be arranged such that the discharge does not endanger personnel or damage other engine components or systems.

15. 4. 4 Relief devices shall be fitted with a flame arrester,

See:

- *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships using Gases or other Low-flashpoint Fuels, Pt A-1*, *10.3 Regulations for internal combustion engines of piston type*; or
- *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk*.

15. 5 Gas piping

15. 5. 1 Engine-mounted gas piping shall be designed in accordance with:

- *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships using Gases or other Low-flashpoint Fuels, Pt A-1 7 Material and General Pipe Design*; or
- *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk*.

15. 5. 2 Pipes and equipment on the engine containing fuel gas are to be considered as hazardous area Zone 0, whereas the space between the gas fuel piping and the wall of the outer pipe or duct is defined as hazardous area Zone 1,

See:

- *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships using Gases or other Low-flashpoint Fuels, Part A-1, 12.5 Hazardous area zones*

15. 5. 3 Double wall gas piping systems on the engine are to be arranged in accordance with:

- *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships using Gases or other Low-flashpoint Fuels, Part A-1, 9.6 Regulations for fuel supply to consumers in gas-safe machinery spaces*; or
- *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk.*

15. 5. 4 Double wall pipes or ducts are to be designed in accordance with:

- *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships using Gases or other Low-flashpoint Fuels, Part A-1, 9.8 Regulations for the design of ventilated duct, outer pipe against inner pipe gas leakage;* and

- *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships using Gases or other Low-flashpoint Fuels, Part A-1, 7.4 Regulations for materials 7.4.1.4; or*
- *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk.*

15. 5. 5 For a ventilated double wall gas pipes on the engine, the ventilation inlet shall be located in accordance with:

- *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships using Gases or other Low-flashpoint Fuels, Part A-1*, *13.8 Regulations for ducts and double pipes 13.8.3*; or
- *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk.*

15. 5. 6 The pipe or duct is to be pressure tested to ensure gastight integrity and to show that it can withstand the expected maximum pressure at gas pipe rupture in accordance with:

- Pt 5, Ch 12, 8.1, Hydraulic tests before installation on board

15. 5. 7 Single wall piping is only acceptable for engines intended to be installed in emergency shutdown (ESD)-protected machinery spaces or an appropriate ducting arrangement provided, in accordance with:

- *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships using Gases or other Low-flashpoint Fuels, Part A-1, 5.4 Machinery space concepts 5.4.1.2* and *Part A-1 5.6 Regulations for ESD-protected machinery spaces*; and
- *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships using Gases or other Low-flashpoint Fuels, Part A-1, 9.6 Regulations for fuel supply to consumers in gas-safe machinery spaces 9.6.2.*

15. 6 Charge air system

15. 6. 1 The charge air system on the engine shall be designed in accordance with:

- Pt 5, Ch 2, 15.4 Design requirements 15.4.2

15. 6. 2 Engines designed for single engine installations providing power for propulsion or other essential services shall be capable of continued operation after opening of the pressure relief valves. ACS is to be advised of any reduction in output power following such an event which is to be stated in the operating manuals.

15. 7 Exhaust system

15. 7. 1 The exhaust gas system on the engine shall be designed in accordance with:

- Pt 5, Ch 2, 15.4 Design requirements 15.4.2.

15. 7. 2 Single engine installations are to comply with:

- Pt 5, Ch 2, 15.6 Charge air system 15.6.2.

15. 8 Crankcase

15. 8. 1 Crankcase explosion relief valves shall be installed in accordance with:

- Pt 5, Ch 2, 10.1, Relief valves to Pt 5, Ch 2, 10.3 Size of relief valves. *See also Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships using Gases or other Low-flashpoint Fuels,* Pt A-1 10.3 Regulations for internal combustion engines of piston type 10.3.1.2.

15. 8. 2 For maintenance purposes, a connection, or other means, shall be provided for crankcase inerting, and ventilating and gas concentration measurement.

15. 9 Gas ignition in the cylinder

15. 9. 1 The requirements are as described in:

- *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships using Gases or other Low-flashpoint Fuels, Pt A-1 10.3 Regulations for internal combustion engines of piston type*; or
- *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk*.

15. 10 Gas admission valves

15. 10. 1 Gas admission valves, which control gas supply to the cylinder(s) according to the cylinder's (cylinders') actual gas demand. They shall be suitably certified safe for use in zone 1. Where gas admission valves are not rated for zone 1 use, it shall be documented that they are suitable for safe use in the proposed application. Documentation and analysis is to be based on IEC 60079-10-1 or IEC 60092-502. Evidence of suitability is to be submitted for consideration.

15. 11 DF engines

15. 11. 1 DF engines shall be arranged to use either fuel oil or gas fuel for the main fuel charge and with pilot fuel oil for ignition. They are to be arranged for immediate changeover from gas use to fuel oil use. In the case of changeover to either fuel supply, the engines are to be capable of continuous operation using the alternative fuel supply without interruption to the supply of power.

15. 11. 2 Changeover to from fuel oil to gas shall be only possible at a power level where it can be done reliably and safely as demonstrated through testing.

15. 11. 3 Changeover from gas to fuel oil shall always be possible at all power levels.

15. 11. 4 Changeover from and to gas operation shall be automatic but manual interruption shall always be possible.

15. 11. 5 In case of a gas shut-off, the engines shall be capable of continuous operation on fuel oil only.

15. 11. 6 Gas admittance to the combustion chamber shall not be possible without operation of the pilot oil injection. Pilot oil injection shall be monitored using fuel oil pressure and combustion parameters.

15. 12 GF engines

15. 12. 1 In case of failure of the spark ignition, the engine is to be shut down unless the failure can be limited to one cylinder, in which case the gas supply to the affected cylinder is to be immediately shut-off, the reliability and safety of which is to be considered in the risk analysis and demonstrated through testing.

15. 13 Pre-mixed engines

15. 13. 1 Inlet manifolds, turbochargers, charge air coolers, etc. are to be regarded as parts of the fuel gas supply system. Failures of these components are likely to result in a gas leakage and are to be considered in the risk analysis (*See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 15.3 Risk analysis).

15. 13. 2 Flame arresters are to be installed before each cylinder head, unless otherwise justified in the risk analysis, considering the design parameters of the engine including, but not limited to, the gas

concentration in the charge air system and the path length of the gas-air mixture in the charge air system.

15. 14 Control, monitoring, alarm and safety systems

15. 14. 1 The engine control system is to be independent and separate from the safety system.

15. 14. 2 The gas supply valves are to be controlled by the engine control system or by the engine gas demand.

15. 14. 3 Combustion is to be monitored on an individual cylinder basis. Where poor combustion is detected on an individual cylinder, gas operation is to be allowed in accordance with the conditions specified in:

- *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships using Gases or other Low-flashpoint Fuels, Pt A-1 10.3 Regulations for internal combustion engines of piston type10.3.1.6.*

Where monitoring of combustion for each individual cylinder is not practicable due to engine size and design, common combustion monitoring will be subject to consideration by ACS.

15. 14. 4 Unless the risk analysis required in Pt 5, Ch 2, 15.3 Risk analysis proves otherwise, the monitoring and safety system functions for DF or GF engines are to be provided in accordance with Table 2. 15. 2: Monitoring and safety system functions for DF and GF engines in addition to the general monitoring and safety system functions given in:

- *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships using Gases or other Low-flashpoint Fuels, Pt A-1, 15.11 Regulations on safety functions of fuel supply systems.*

For DF engines, Table 2. 15. 2: Monitoring and safety system functions for DF and GF engines shall only be applied to gas mode.

Table 2. 15. 2: Monitoring and safety system functions for DF and GF engines

Parameter	Alarm	Automatic activation of the double block and bleed valves	Automatic switching over to fuel oil mode (*See* Note 1)	Engine shutdown
Abnormal pressures in the gas fuel supply line	X	X	X	X (*See* Note 5)
Gas fuel supply systems – malfunction	X	X	X	X (*See* Note 5)
Pilot fuel injection or spark ignition systems – malfunction	X	X (*See* Note 2)	X	X (*See* Notes 2 and 5)
Exhaust gas temperature after each cylinder – high	X	X (*See* Note 2)	X	X (*See* Notes 2 and 5)
Exhaust gas temperature after each cylinder, deviation from average – low (*See* Note 3)	X	X (*See* Note 2)	X	X (*See* Notes 2 and 5)
Cylinder pressure or ignition – failure, including misfiring, knocking and unstable combustion	X	X(*See* Notes 2 and 4)	X(*See* Note 4)	X(*See* Notes 2, 4 and 5)
Oil mist concentration in crankcase or bearing temperature– high (*See* Note 6)	X	X		X
Pressure in the crankcase – high(*See* Note 4)	X	X	X	
Engine stops – any cause	X	X		

Failure of the control-actuating medium and bleed valves	X	X	X	

Note 1. DF engine only, when running in gas mode.

Note 2. For GF engines, the double block-and-bleed valves and the engine shutdown may not be activated in case of specific failures affecting only one cylinder, provided that the concerned cylinder shall be individually shut off, and the safe operation of the engine in such conditions is demonstrated by the risk analysis.

Note 3. Required only if necessary for the detection of misfiring.

Note 4. In the case where the failure can be corrected by an automatic mitigation, only the alarm may be activated. If the failure persists after a given time, the safety actions are to be activated. The time period to activate safety actions shall be demonstrated to ACS.

Note 5. GF engine only.

Note 6. Where required by Pt 5, Ch 2, 10.8, Oil mist detection.

PART

5

CHAPTER 2 Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engines

SECTION 16 Cross-references

The pumping arrangements, including cooling water and lubricating oil systems, are to comply with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 14 Machinery Piping Systems.
For spare gear, *See* Pt 5, Ch 1, 7 Spare gear for machinery installations.

PART

5

CHAPTER 3 Steam Turbines

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**Plans and particulars**		**2088**
	1. 1	Plans	2088
SECTION 2	**Materials**		**2089**
	2. 1	General	2089
	2. 2	Materials for forgings	2089
SECTION 3	**Design and construction**		**2090**
	3. 1	General	2090
	3. 2	Welded components	2090
	3. 3	Stress raisers	2091
	3. 4	Shrunk-on rotor discs	2091
	3. 5	Vibration	2091
	3. 6	External influences	2091
	3. 7	Steam supply and water system	2091
	3. 8	Turning gear	2092
SECTION 4	**Safety arrangements**		**2093**
	4. 1	Low vacuum and overpressure protective devices	2093
	4. 2	Bled steam connections	2093
	4. 3	Steam strainers	2093
SECTION 5	**Emergency arrangements**		**2094**
	5. 1	Lubricating oil failure	2094
	5. 2	Single screw ships	2094
	5. 3	Single main boiler	2094
SECTION 6	**Control and monitoring of main and auxiliary steam turbines**		**2095**
	6. 1	General	2095
	6. 2	Overspeed protective devices	2095
	6. 3	Speed governors	2095

6. 4 Unattended machinery 2095
6. 5 Steam turbine machinery for propulsion purposes 2096
6. 6 Auxiliary steam turbines 2097
SECTION 7 Tests and equipment 2098
7. 1 Stability testing of turbine rotors 2098
7. 2 Balancing 2098
7. 3 Hydraulic tests 2098
7. 4 Indicators for movement 2099
7. 5 Weardown gauges 2099
SECTION 8 Cross-references 2100
8. 1 The pumping arrangements, including cooling water and lubricating oil systems, are to comply with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 13 Ship Piping Systems and Pt 5, Ch 14 Machinery Piping Systems. 2100

PART

5

CHAPTER 3 Steam Turbines

LIST OF TABLES

Table 3. 6. 1: Steam turbine machinery: Alarms and safeguards 2096
Table 3. 6. 2: Auxiliary engines and auxiliary steam turbines: Alarms and safeguards 2097

PART

5

CHAPTER 3 **Steam Turbines**

SECTION **Scope**

The requirements of this Chapter are applicable to steam turbines for main propulsion and also, where powers exceed 110 kW (150 shp), to those for essential auxiliary services.

PART

5

CHAPTER 3 **Steam Turbines**

SECTION 1 **Plans and particulars**

1. 1 Plans

1. 1. 1 The following plans are to be submitted for consideration, together with particulars of materials, maximum shaft powers and revolutions per minute, *See* Pt 5, Ch 1, 3.3 Power ratings. The pressures and temperatures applicable at maximum shaft power and under the emergency conditions of Pt 5, Ch 3, 5.2 Single screw ships are to be stated or indicated on the plans.

- General arrangement.
- Sectional assembly.
- Rotors and couplings.
- Casings.

1. 1. 2 For the emergency conditions of Pt 5, Ch 3, 5.3 Single main boiler, full particulars of the means proposed for emergency propulsion are to be submitted.

1. 1. 3 Where rotors and castings are of welded construction, details of the welded joints are also to be submitted for consideration.

1. 1. 4 In general, plans for auxiliary turbines need not be submitted.

PART

5

CHAPTER **3 Steam Turbines**

SECTION **2 Materials**

2. 1 General

2. 1. 1 In the selection of materials, consideration is to be given to their creep strength, corrosion resistance and scaling properties at working temperatures to ensure satisfactory performance and long life under service conditions.

2. 1. 2 Grey cast iron is not to be used for temperatures exceeding 260°C.

2. 2 Materials for forgings

2. 2. 1 Turbine rotors and discs are to be of forged steel. For carbon and carbon-manganese steel forgings, the specified minimum tensile strength is to be selected within the limits of 400 and 600 N/mm^2 (41 and 61 kgf/mm^2). For alloy steel rotor forgings, the specified minimum tensile strength is to be selected within the limits of 500 and 800 N/mm^2 (51 and 82 kgf/mm^2). For discs and other alloy steel forgings, the specified minimum tensile strength is to be selected within the limits of 500 and 1000 N/mm^2 (51 and 102 kgf/mm^2).

2. 2. 2 For alloy steels, details of the proposed chemical composition, heat treatment and mechanical properties are to be submitted for approval.

2. 2. 3 When it is proposed to use material of higher tensile strength, full details are to be submitted for approval.

PART

5

CHAPTER 3 **Steam Turbines**

SECTION 3 **Design and construction**

3. 1 General

3. 1. 1 In the design and arrangement of turbine machinery, adequate provision is to be made for the relative thermal expansion of the various turbine parts, and special attention is to be given to minimising casing and rotor distortion under all operating conditions.

3. 1. 2 Turbine bearings are to be so disposed and supported that lubrication is not adversely affected by heat flow from adjacent hot parts of the turbine. Effective means are to be provided for intercepting oil leakage and preventing oil from reaching high temperature glands and casings and steam pipes. Drainage openings and drain pipes from oil baffle pockets are to be sufficiently large to prevent excessive accumulation and leakage of oil.

3. 2 Welded components

3. 2. 1 Turbine rotors, cylinders and associated components fabricated by means of welding will be considered for acceptance if constructed by firms whose works are properly equipped to undertake welding to equivalent standards, for rotors and cylinders respectively, to those required by the Rules for Class 1 and Class 2/1 welded pressure vessels, *See* Pt 5, Ch 17, 1 General to Pt 5, Ch 17, 6 Non-Destructive Examination.

3. 2. 2 Welding is to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of Ch 13, 4 Specific requirements for fusion welded pressure vessels of the Rules for Materials, using welding procedures and welders that have been qualified in accordance with Ch 12 Welding Qualifications of the Rules for Materials.

3. 2. 3 Before work is commenced, manufacturers are to submit for consideration details of proposed welding procedures and their proposals for routine examination of joints by non-destructive means.

3. 2. 4 Materials used in the construction of turbine rotors, cylinders, diaphragms, condensers, etc. are to be of welding quality.

3. 2. 5 Where it is proposed to construct rotors from two or more forged components joined by welding, full details of the chemical composition, mechanical properties and heat treatment of the materials, together with particulars of the welding consumables, an outline of the welding procedure, method of fabrication and heat treatment, are to be submitted for consideration.

3. 2. 6 Joints in rotors and major joints in cylinders are to be designed as full-strength welds and for complete fusion of the joint.

3. 2. 7 Adequate preheating is to be employed for mild steel cylinders and components and where the metal thickness exceeds 44 mm, and for all low alloy steel cylinders and components and for any part where necessitated by joint restraint.

3. 2. 8 Stress relief heat treatment is to be applied to all cylinders and associated components on completion of the welding of all joints and attached structures. For details of stress relief procedure, temperature and duration, *See* Ch 13, 4.11 Basic requirements for post-weld heat treatment of fusion welded pressure vessels of the Rules for Materials.

3. 2. 9 For all welded components, weld procedure tests are to be in accordance with Ch 12, 2.7 Destructive tests for steel butt welds of the Rules for Materials.

3. 2. 10 Production weld tests are to be performed according to the requirements of Ch 13, 4.5 General requirements for routine weld production tests of the Rules for Materials.

3. 3 Stress raisers

3. 3. 1 Smooth fillets are to be provided at abrupt changes of section of rotors, spindles, discs, blade roots and tenons. The rivet holes in blade shrouds are to be rounded and radiused on top and bottom surfaces, and tenons are to be radiused at their junction with blade tips. Balancing holes in discs are to be well rounded and polished.

3. 3. 2 Surveyors are to be satisfied as to the workmanship and riveting of blades to shroud bands, and that the blade tenons are free from cracks, particularly with high tensile blade material. Test samples are to be sectioned and examined, and pull-off tests made if considered necessary by the Surveyors.

3. 4 Shrunk-on rotor discs

3. 4. 1 Main turbine rotor discs fitted by shrinking are to be secured with keys, dowels or other approved means.

3. 5 Vibration

3. 5. 1 Care is to be taken in the design and manufacture of turbine rotors, rotor discs and blades to ensure freedom from undue vibration within the operating speed range. Consideration of blade vibration should include the effect of centrifugal force, blade root fixing, metal temperature and disc flexibility where appropriate.

3. 5. 2 For the vibration and alignment of main propulsion systems formed by the turbines geared to the line shafting, *See* Pt 5, Ch 8 Shaft Vibration and Alignment.

3. 6 External influences

3. 6. 1 Pipes and ducts connected to turbine casings are to be so designed that no excessive thrust loads or moments are applied by them to the turbines. Gratings and any fittings in way of sliding feet or flexible-plate supports are to be so arranged that casing expansion is not restricted. Where main turbine seatings incorporate a tank structure, consideration is to be given to the temperature variation of the tank in service to ensure that turbine alignment will not be adversely affected.

3. 7 Steam supply and water system

3. 7. 1 In the arrangement of the gland sealing system, the pipes are to be made self-draining and every precaution is to be taken against the possibility of condensed steam entering the glands and turbines. The steam supply to the gland sealing system is to be fitted with an effective drain trap. In the air ejector re-circulating water system, the connection to the condenser is to be so located that water cannot impinge on the L.P. rotor or casing.

3. 8 Turning gear

3. 8. 1 Turning gear is to be provided for all turbines to facilitate operating and maintenance regimes as required by the manufacturer.

3. 8. 2 The turning gear for all propulsion turbines is to be power-driven and if electric, is to be continuously rated.

3. 8. 3 The turning gear for auxiliary turbines may be hand operated (manual) except where this is not practicable, in which case the provision of Pt 5, Ch 3, 3.8 Turning gear 3.8.2 is to be complied with.

3. 8. 4 The turning gear for all turbines is to be fitted with safety interlocks which prevent steam valve actuation for turbine operation when engaged, *See* Pt 5, Ch 1, 3.9 Astern power. Indication of engaged / not engaged is to be provided at all start positions.

3. 8. 5 The remote control device of power-driven turning gear is to be so designed that power is removed from the turning gear when the operating switch is released.

3. 8. 6 Means are to be provided to secure the turning gear when disengaged.

PART

5

CHAPTER **3 Steam Turbines**

SECTION **4 Safety arrangements**

4. 1 Low vacuum and overpressure protective devices

4. 1. 1 In order to provide a warning, due to excessive pressure, to personnel in the vicinity of the exhaust ends of main turbines, sentinel relief valves are to be provided at the exhaust ends or other approved positions. The relief valve discharge outlets are to be visible and suitably guarded if necessary. Where a low vacuum cut-out device is provided, the sentinel relief valve at the L.P. exhaust may be omitted.

4. 1. 2 In order to provide a warning, due to excessive pressure, to personnel in the vicinity of the exhaust ends of auxiliary turbines, sentinel relief valves are to be provided at the exhaust ends. The relief valve discharge outlets are to be visible and suitably guarded if necessary. Low vacuum or overpressure cut-out devices, as appropriate, are also to be provided for auxiliary turbines not installed with their own condensers.

4. 2 Bled steam connections

4. 2. 1 Non-return or other means, which will prevent steam and water returning to the turbines, are to be fitted in bled steam connections.

4. 3 Steam strainers

4. 3. 1 Efficient steam strainers are to be provided close to the inlets to ahead and astern high pressure turbines, or alternatively at the inlets to the manoeuvring valves.

PART

5

CHAPTER 3 **Steam Turbines**

SECTION 5 **Emergency arrangements**

5. 1 Lubricating oil failure

5. 1. 1 Arrangements are to be made for the steam to the ahead propulsion turbines to be automatically shut off in the event of failure of the lubricating oil pressure; however, steam is to be made available at the astern turbine for braking purposes in such an emergency, *See* Pt 5, Ch 14 Machinery Piping Systems for emergency oil supply.

5. 1. 2 Auxiliary turbine arrangements are to be such that steam supply is automatically shut-off in the event of failure of the lubricating oil pressure.

5. 2 Single screw ships

5. 2. 1 In single screw ships fitted with cross compound steam turbine installations in which two or more turbines are separately coupled to the same main gear wheel, the arrangements are to be such as to enable safe navigation when the steam supply is led direct to the L.P. turbine and either the H.P or L.P. turbine can exhaust direct to the condenser. Adequate arrangements and controls are to be provided for these emergency operating conditions so that the pressure and temperature of the steam will not exceed those which the turbines and condenser can safely withstand.

5. 2. 2 The necessary pipes and valves or fittings for these arrangements are to be readily available and properly marked. A fit up test of all combinations of pipes and valves is to be performed prior to the first sea trials.

5. 2. 3 The permissible power/speeds of the operating turbines(s) when operating without one of the turbines (all combinations) is to be specified and information provided on board.

5. 2. 4 The operation of the turbines under emergency conditions is to be assessed for the potential influence on shaft alignment and gear teeth loading conditions.

5. 3 Single main boiler

5. 3. 1 Ships intended for unrestricted service, fitted with steam turbines and having a single main boiler, are to be provided with means to ensure emergency propulsion in the event of failure of the main boiler.

PART

5

CHAPTER 3 **Steam Turbines**

SECTION 6 **Control and monitoring of main and auxiliary steam turbines**

6. 1 General

6. 1. 1 Control engineering systems are to be in accordance with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems.

6. 1. 2 All main and auxiliary steam turbines intended for essential services are to be provided with means of indicating the lubricating oil pressure supply to them. Where such turbines are of more than 37 kW (50 shp), audible and visual alarms are to be fitted to give warning of an appreciable reduction in pressure of the lubricating oil supply. Further, these alarms are to be actuated from the outlet side of any restrictions, such as filters, coolers, etc.

6. 2 Overspeed protective devices

6. 2. 1 An overspeed protective device is to be provided for main and auxiliary turbines to shut off the steam automatically and prevent the maximum designed speed being exceeded by more than 15 per cent.

6. 2. 2 Where two or more turbines of a compound main turbine installation are separately coupled to the same main gear wheel, and one overspeed protective device is provided, this is to be fitted to the L.P. ahead turbine. Hand trip gear for shutting off the steam in an emergency is to be provided at the manoeuvring platform.

6. 3 Speed governors

6. 3. 1 Where a turbine installation incorporates a reverse gear, electric transmission or reversible propeller, a speed governor in addition to, or in combination with, the overspeed protective device is to be fitted, and is to be capable of controlling the speed of the unloaded turbine without bringing the overspeed protective device into action.

6. 3. 2 Auxiliary turbines intended for driving electric generators are to be fitted with speed governors which, with fixed settings, are to control the speed within 10 per cent momentary variation and 5 per cent permanent variation when full load is suddenly taken off or put on. The permanent speed variations of alternating current machines intended for parallel operations are to equalise within a tolerance of ±0.5 per cent.

6. 4 Unattended machinery

6. 4. 1 Where machinery steam turbines are fitted with automatic or remote controls so that under normal operating conditions they do not require any manual intervention by the operators, they are to be provided with the alarms and safety arrangements required by Pt 5, Ch 3, 6.4, Unattended

machinery to Pt 5, Ch 3, 6.6 Auxiliary steam turbines, as appropriate. Alternative arrangements which provide equivalent safeguards will be considered.

6. 4. 2 Where machinery is arranged to start automatically or from a remote control station, interlocks are to be provided to prevent start-up under conditions which could hazard the machinery.

6. 4. 3 Where machinery specified in this Section is required to be provided with a standby pump, the standby pump is to start automatically if the discharge pressure from the working pumps falls below a predetermined value.

6. 4. 4 Where a first stage alarm together with a second stage alarm and automatic shutdown of machinery are required in the relevant Tables of this Section, the sensors and circuits utilised for the second stage alarm and automatic shutdown are to be independent of those required for the first stage alarm.

6. 5 Steam turbine machinery for propulsion purposes

6. 5. 1 Alarms and safeguards are indicated in Pt 5, Ch 3, 6.5 Steam turbine machinery for propulsion purposes 6.5.2 toPt 5, Ch 3, 6.5 Steam turbine machinery for propulsion purposes 6.5.6 and Table 3. 6. 1: Steam turbine machinery: Alarms and safeguards.

Table 3. 6. 1: Steam turbine machinery: Alarms and safeguards

Item	Alarm	Note
Lubricating oil pressure	1st stage low	—
	2nd stage low	Automatic shutdown, *See* Pt 5, Ch 3, 6.4 Unattended machinery 6.4.4
Lubricating oil temperature	High	—
Lubricating oil sump level	Low	—
Lubricating oil filters differential pressure	High	—
Bearing temperatures or bearing oil outlet temperature	High	—
Astern turbine temperature	High	—
Gland steam pressure	High and Low	—
Thrust bearing temperature	High	—
Sea-water pressure or flow	Low	—
Turbine vibration	High	
Axial movement of turbine rotor	High	Shutdown or speed reduction or turbine(s)
Main condenser vacuum	Low	
Main condenser condensate level	High	
Overspeed	High	*See* Pt 5, Ch 3, 6.2 Overspeed protective devices

6. 5. 2 Audible and visual alarms are to operate, and indication is to be given at the relevant control stations to stop or reduce the speed of the turbine(s) for the following fault conditions:

a. Excessive turbine vibration.

b. Excessive axial movement of turbine rotor.
c. Low vacuum in main condenser.
d. High condensate level in main condenser.

6. 5. 3 Reduction of speed may be effected by either manual or automatic control.

6. 5. 4 Means are to be provided to prevent the risk of thermal distortion of the turbines, by automatic steam spinning, when the shaft is stopped in the manoeuvring mode. An audible and visual alarm is to be provided at the relevant control stations when the shaft has been stopped for a predetermined time.

6. 5. 5 The following turbine services are to be fitted with automatic controls so as to maintain steady state conditions throughout the normal operating range of the propulsion turbine(s):

a. Lubricating oil supply temperature.
b. Condenser condensate level.
c. Gland steam pressure.

6. 5. 6 Prolonged running in a restricted speed range is to be prevented automatically, or alternatively, indication of restricted speed ranges is to be provided at each control station.

6. 6 Auxiliary steam turbines

6. 6. 1 Alarms and safeguards are indicated in Table 3. 6. 2: Auxiliary engines and auxiliary steam turbines: Alarms and safeguards.

Table 3. 6. 2: Auxiliary engines and auxiliary steam turbines: Alarms and safeguards

Item	Alarm	Note
Lubricating oil inlet temperature	High	—
Lubricating oil inlet pressure	1st stage low	—
	2nd stage low	Automatic shutdown of turbine, *See* Pt 5, Ch 3, 6.4 Unattended machinery 6.4.4
Condenser vacuum	Low	Automatic shutdown of turbine, *See* Pt 5, Ch 3, 6.4 Unattended machinery 6.4.4
Axial displacement of rotor	High	
Overspeed	High	*See* Pt 5, Ch 3, 6.2 Overspeed protective devices

PART

5

CHAPTER **3** **Steam Turbines**

SECTION **7** **Tests and equipment**

7. 1 Stability testing of turbine rotors

7. 1. 1 All solid forged H.P. turbine rotors intended for main propulsion service where the inlet steam temperature exceeds 400°C are to be subjected to at least one thermal stability test. This requirement is also applicable to rotors constructed from two or more forged components joined by welding. The test may be carried out at the forge or turbine builders' works:

a. after heat treatment and rough machining of the forging; or
b. after final machining; or
c. after final machining and blading of the rotor.

The stabilising test temperature is to be not less than 28°C above the maximum steam temperature to which the rotor will be exposed, and not more than the tempering temperature of the rotor material. For details of a recommended test procedure and limits of acceptance, *See* Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials. Other test procedures may be adopted if approved.

7. 1. 2 Where main turbine rotors are subjected to thermal stability tests at both forge and turbine builders' works, the foregoing requirements are applicable to both tests. It is not required that auxiliary turbine rotors be tested for thermal stability, but, if such tests are carried out, the requirement for main turbine rotors will be generally applicable.

7. 2 Balancing

7. 2. 1 All rotors as finished-bladed and complete with half-coupling are to be dynamically balanced to the Surveyor's satisfaction, in a machine of sensitivity appropriate to the size of rotor.

7. 3 Hydraulic tests

7. 3. 1 Manoeuvring valves are to be tested to twice the working pressure. The nozzle boxes of impulse turbines are to be tested to 1.5 times the working pressure.

7. 3. 2 The cylinders of all turbines are to be tested to 1.5 times the working pressure in the casing, or to 0.2 MPa, whichever is the greater.

7. 3. 3 For test purposes, the cylinders may be sub-divided with temporary diaphragms for distribution of test pressures.

7. 3. 4 Condensers are to be tested in the steam space to 0.1 MPa. The water space is to be tested to the maximum pressure which the pump can develop at ship's full draught with the discharge valve closed plus 0.07 MPa, with a minimum test pressure of 0.2 MPa. Where the operating conditions are not known, the test pressure is to be not less than 0.34 MPa, *See* Pt 5, Ch 14 Machinery Piping Systems.

7. 4 Indicators for movement

7. 4. 1 Indicators for determining the axial position of rotors relative to their casings, and for showing the longitudinal expansion of casings at the sliding feet, if fitted, are to be provided for main turbines. The latter indicators should be fitted at both sides and be readily visible.

7. 5 Weardown gauges

7. 5. 1 Main and auxiliary turbines are to be provided with bridge weardown gauges for testing the alignment of the rotors.

PART

5

CHAPTER **3** **Steam Turbines**

SECTION **8** **Cross-references**

8. 1 The pumping arrangements, including cooling water and lubricating oil systems, are to comply with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 13 Ship Piping Systems and Pt 5, Ch 14 Machinery Piping Systems.

For lists of spare gear to be carried, *See* Pt 5, Ch 1, 7 Spare gear for machinery installations.

PART

5

CHAPTER **4** **Gas Turbines**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General requirements**		**2105**
	1. 1	Application	2105
	1. 2	Standard reference conditions	2105
	1. 3	Power ratings	2105
	1. 4	Gas turbine type approval	2105
	1. 5	Inclination of vessel	2105
SECTION 2	**Particulars to be submitted**		**2106**
	2. 1	Plans and information	2106
SECTION 3	**Materials**		**2108**
	3. 1	Materials for forgings	2108
	3. 2	Material tests and inspection	2108
SECTION 4	**Design and construction**		**2109**
	4. 1	General	2109
	4. 2	Vibration	2109
	4. 3	Containment	2109
	4. 4	Intake and exhaust ducts	2109
	4. 5	External influences	2110
	4. 6	Corrosive deposits	2110
	4. 7	Acoustic enclosures	2110
	4. 8	Thermal insulation	2111
	4. 9	Welded construction	2111
	4. 10	Turning gear	2111
SECTION 5	**Piping systems**		**2112**
	5. 1	General	2112
	5. 2	Fuel oil systems	2112
	5. 3	Lubricating oil systems	2112

5. 4 Cooling systems 2113
SECTION 6 Starting arrangements 2114
6. 1 General 2114
6. 2 Purging before ignition 2114
6. 3 Air starting 2114
6. 4 Electric starting 2114
6. 5 Hydraulic starting 2115
SECTION 7 Tests 2116
7. 1 Dynamic balancing 2116
7. 2 Hydraulic testing 2116
7. 3 Overspeed tests 2116
SECTION 8 Control, alarm and safety systems 2117
8. 1 General 2117
8. 2 Overspeed protection and shutdown system 2117
8. 3 Power turbine inlet over-temperature control 2117
8. 4 Flameout 2117
8. 5 Lubricating oil system 2117
8. 6 Hand trip arrangement 2118
8. 7 Fire detection, alarm and extinguishing systems 2118
8. 8 Unattended machinery 2118
8. 9 Gas turbine machinery 2118

PART

5

CHAPTER 4 **Gas Turbines**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 4. 8. 1: Gas turbine machinery: Alarms and safeguards 2118

PART

5

CHAPTER 4 **Gas Turbines**

SECTION **Scope**

The requirements of this Chapter are applicable to gas turbines for main propulsion and also, where powers exceed 110 kW (150 shp), to those for essential auxiliary services. The requirements do not apply to exhaust gas turbo-blowers.

Approval will be in respect of the mechanical integrity of the gas turbine (including gas generator and power turbine), intake and exhaust ducting configuration, acoustic enclosure configuration (where appropriate), fuel, lubricating oil and starter systems, control alarm and monitoring systems and other critical support systems.

Type approval of the gas turbine bare engine will be required as part of the approval process for first of type.

Primary exhaust gas emissions abatement plant (where fitted) is to meet the requirements of this Chapter; additionally, it shall meet those of Pt 5, Ch 24 Emissions Abatement Plant for Combustion Machinery. Where secondary exhaust gas emissions abatement systems are fitted to gas turbines, they are to meet the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 24 Emissions Abatement Plant for Combustion Machinery.

PART

5

CHAPTER **4** **Gas Turbines**

SECTION **1** **General requirements**

1. 1 Application

1. 1. 1 This Chapter is to be read in conjunction with Pt 5, Ch 1 General Requirements for the Design and Construction of Machinery *General Requirements for the Design and Construction of Machinery*, Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems *Control Engineering Systems*, and Pt 6, Ch 2 Electrical Engineering *Electrical Engineering* .

1. 2 Standard reference conditions

1. 2. 1 Where power, efficiency, heat rate or specific consumption refer to standard conditions (ISO 2314), conditions are to be:

a. for the intake air at the compressor flange (compressor intake flare):

- a total pressure of 101.3 kPa;
- an ambient temperature of 15°C;
- a relative humidity of 60 per cent; and

b. for the exhaust at the turbine exhaust flange (or recuperator outlet):

- a static pressure of 101.3 kPa.

1. 3 Power ratings

1. 3. 1 Where the dimensions of any particular component are determined from shaft power, P, in kW, and revolutions per minute, R, the values are those defined in Pt 5, Ch 1 General Requirements for the Design and Construction of Machinery.

1. 4 Gas turbine type approval

1. 4. 1 New gas turbine types or developments of existing types are to be type approved in accordance with ACS' *Type Approval System Procedure – Test Specification GT04*.

1. 4. 2 Where a gas turbine type has subsequently proved satisfactory in service with a number of applications, a maximum power uprating of 10 per cent may be considered without a further complete design re-assessment and type test.

1. 5 Inclination of vessel

1. 5. 1 Gas turbines are to operate satisfactorily under the conditions of inclinations as shown in Table 1. 3. 2: Inclination of ship.

PART

5

CHAPTER 4 **Gas Turbines**

SECTION 2 **Particulars to be submitted**

2. 1 Plans and information

2. 1. 1 The following plans are to be submitted for consideration:

- Casings.
- Combustion chambers, intercoolers and heat exchangers.
- Compressor and gas generator rotating components.
- Control engineering systems, *See* Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems.
- Cooling and sealing air arrangements for compressor and gas generator components: Schematic only.
- Cooling water system: Schematic only, where applicable.
- Fuel systems: Schematic only.
- Gas turbine unit acoustic enclosure, if applicable, including ventilation and drainage systems: Schematic only.
- Inlet and exhaust ducting arrangement.
- Lubricating oil systems: Schematic only.
- Nozzles, blades and blade attachments.
- Fuel oil systems: Schematic only.
- Power turbine components.
- Rotors, bearings and couplings.
- Sectional assembly.
- Securing arrangement, including details of resilient mounts, where applicable.
- Starting system: Schematic only.

2. 1. 2 The following information and calculations, where applicable, are to be submitted:

a. Operational requirements:

- Proposed field of application and operational limitations.
- Power/speed operational envelope.
- Calculations and information for short-term high power operation.
- Operation and maintenance manuals including the declared lives of critical components and overhaul schedules recommended by the manufacturer.

b. Calculations of the critical speeds of blade and rotor vibration, giving full details of the basic assumptions, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 4, 4.3 Containment 4.3.1.
c. Analysis of the effect of rotor blade release together with details of operating experience, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 4, 4.3 Containment 4.3.2.
d. High temperature characteristics of the materials, including (at working temperatures) the associated creep rate and rupture strength for the designed service life, fatigue strength, corrosion resistance and scaling properties.
e. Material requirements:
    - Particulars of heat treatment, including stress relief.
    - Material specifications covering the listed components together with details of any surface treatments, non-destructive testing and hydraulic tests.
f. The most onerous pressures and temperatures to which each component may be subjected are to be indicated on plans or provided as part of the design specification.
g. Calculations of the steady state stresses, including the effect of stress raisers, etc. in the compressor and turbine rotors and blading at the maximum speed and temperature in service. Such calculations are to indicate the designed service life and be accompanied, where possible, by test results substantiating the limiting criteria.
h. Details of calculations and tests to establish the service life of other stressed or safety critical components, including bearings, seals, couplings and gearing. Calculations and tests are to take account of all relevant environmental factors including the particular type of service and fuel intended to be used.
i. Mounting requirements:
    - Securing arrangements, including details of resilient mounts.
    - Calculations concerning the amplitude and frequency of vibration associated with resilient type mountings.
j. A Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA).
k. Miscellaneous:
    - Design standard of intake filtration for water particulate and corrosive marine salts.
    - Details of compressor washing system.
    - Fuel specification.

2. 1. 3 Components fabricated by means of welding will be considered for acceptance if constructed by firms whose works are properly equipped to undertake welding of the standards appropriate to the components. Details are to be submitted for consideration.

2. 1. 4 Before work is commenced, manufacturers are to submit for consideration details of proposed welding procedures and their proposals for routine examination of joints by non-destructive means.

2. 1. 5 The manufacturer's proposals for testing the gas turbine are to be submitted for consideration and are to include rotor balancing techniques, methods of determining the soundness of pressure casings and heat exchanger tests, *See* Pt 5, Ch 4, 1 General requirements.

PART

5

CHAPTER **4** **Gas Turbines**

SECTION **3** **Materials**

3. 1 Materials for forgings

3. 1. 1 Details of materials for rotors and discs are to be submitted for approval.

3. 2 Material tests and inspection

3. 2. 1 Components are to be tested in accordance with the relevant requirements of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials (hereinafter referred to as the Rules for Materials).

3. 2. 2 For components of novel design, special consideration will be given to the material test and non-destructive testing requirements.

PART

5

CHAPTER 4 **Gas Turbines**

SECTION 4 **Design and construction**

4. 1 General

4. 1. 1 All parts of compressors, turbines, etc. are to have clearances and fits consistent with adequate provision for the relative thermal expansion of the various components. Provision is to be made to limit the distortion of the casing and rotor under all normal operating conditions.

4. 1. 2 Gas generator and power turbine bearings are to be so disposed and supported that lubrication is not adversely affected by heat flow from adjacent hot parts. Effective means are to be provided for intercepting oil leakage and preventing oil from reaching high temperature glands and casings.

4. 2 Vibration

4. 2. 1 The design and manufacture of compressor and turbine rotors, rotor discs and rotor blades are to ensure freedom from undue vibration within the full operating speed range. Where critical speeds are found by calculation to occur within the operating speed range, vibration tests may be required in order to verify the calculations, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 8 Shaft Vibration and Alignment.

4. 2. 2 Vibration monitoring is to form an integral part of the gas turbine safety and control system. The vibration monitoring system is to be capable of detecting the out-of-balance of major parts with means being provided to shutdown the gas turbine, before an over-critical situation occurs, i.e. multiple rotor blade or disc release.

4. 3 Containment

4. 3. 1 Gas turbines and power turbines are to be designed and installed, so far as is practicable, to contain debris in the event of rotor blade release.

4. 3. 2 In the event of a major component failure, when the turbine casing may not contain the debris; fuel oil, lubricating oil and other potentially hazardous systems or equipment are, where practicable, to be located outside of the plane of high speed rotating parts. This requirement also applies to fire detection and extinction equipment, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 4, 5 Piping systems.

4. 3. 3 Gas turbine ancillaries containing flammable products are to be segregated or protected from high temperature areas.

4. 4 Intake and exhaust ducts

4. 4. 1 Air intakes are to be designed and located to minimise the possibility of ingestion of harmful objects. Means are also to be provided for detecting and preventing icing up of air intakes.

4. 4. 2 Suitable intake filtration is to be provided to control the ingestion of water, particulate and corrosive marine salts within the gas turbine manufacturer's specified limits.

4. 4. 3 Where an air intake enclosure forms the connection between the ship's downtake and the gas turbine installation, a suitable alarm function is to be provided to give warning when an unacceptable air intake pressure loss is reached at the air inlet (bellmouth) of the gas turbine.

4. 4. 4 Intakes are to be designed such that material cannot become detached due to air flow or corrosion. Fixing bolts and fastenings are to be positively locked so that they cannot work loose.

4. 4. 5 Multi-engine installations are to have separate intakes and exhausts so arranged as to prevent induced circulation through a stopped gas turbine unit.

4. 4. 6 The arrangement of the exhaust duct is to be such as to prevent, under normal conditions of ship motion and atmospheric conditions, exhaust gases being drawn into machinery spaces, air conditioning systems and intakes.

4. 4. 7 Where the exhaust is led overboard near the waterline, means are to be provided to prevent water from being siphoned back into the gas turbine. Where the exhaust is cooled by water spray, the exhaust pipes are to be self-draining overboard. Erosion/corrosion-resistant shut-off flaps or other devices are to be fitted on the hull side shell or pipe end with suitable arrangements made to prevent water flooding the machinery space.

4. 5 External influences

4. 5. 1 Pipes and ducting connected to casings are to be so designed that they apply no excessive loads or moments to the compressors and turbines.

4. 5. 2 Platform gratings and fittings in way of the supports are to be so arranged that casing expansion is not restricted.

4. 5. 3 Where the gas turbine seating incorporates a tank structure, any temperature variation of the tank in service is not to adversely affect the gas generator and power turbine alignment.

4. 5. 4 For machinery fastening arrangements, including resilient mounting, *See* Pt 5, Ch 1 General Requirements for the Design and Construction of Machinery.

4. 6 Corrosive deposits

4. 6. 1 Means are to be provided for periodic removal of salt deposits and atmospheric contaminants from blading and internal surfaces.

4. 7 Acoustic enclosures

4. 7. 1 Acoustic enclosures, where fitted, are to be provided with an access door, adequate internal lighting and one or more observation windows to allow the viewing of critical parts of the gas turbine.

4. 7. 2 A suitable ventilation system, designed to maintain all components within their safe working temperature under all operating conditions is to be provided.

4. 7. 3 The ventilation system is to be fitted with shut-off flaps arranged to close automatically upon activation of the enclosure's fire detection and extinguishing system.

4. 7. 4 Acoustic enclosure fire safety arrangements are to comply with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems and the *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea* as amended (SOLAS 74), *See also* Pt 5, Ch 4, 8.7 Fire detection, alarm and extinguishing systems 8.7.1.

4. 8 Thermal insulation

4. 8. 1 Where surfaces of the gas generator, power turbine and exhaust volute exceed a temperature of 220°C during operation, these are to be suitably insulated and clad to minimise the risk of fire and prevent damage by heat to adjacent components, *See* Pt 5, Ch 4, 5.1 General 5.1.5.

4. 9 Welded construction

4. 9. 1 Welding is to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of Ch 13 Requirements for Welded Construction of the Rules for Materials, using welding procedures and welders that have been qualified in accordance with Ch 12 Welding Qualifications of the Rules for Materials.

4. 9. 2 Stress relief heat treatment is to be applied to all cylinders, rotors and associated components on completion of all welding, *See* Pt 5, Ch 17 Requirements for Fusion Welding of Pressure Vessels and Piping.

4. 10 Turning gear

4. 10. 1 Gas generator turning gear is to be provided to facilitate operating and maintenance regimes as required by the manufacturer.

4. 10. 2 The turning gear may be hand operated (manual) except where this is not practicable. If electrically driven, the motor is to be continuously rated.

4. 10. 3 The turning gear is to be fitted with safety interlocks which prevent engine operation when engaged, *See* Pt 5, Ch 1, 3.9 Astern power. Indication of engaged / not engaged is to be provided at all start positions.

4. 10. 4 The remote control device of power-driven turning gear is to be so designed that power is removed from the turning gear when the operating switch is released.

4. 10. 5 If permanently attached, means are to be provided to secure the turning gear when disengaged.

PART

5

CHAPTER **4** **Gas Turbines**

SECTION **5** **Piping systems**

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 Gas turbine piping systems are, in general, to comply with the requirements given in Pt 5, Ch 12 Piping Design Requirements and Pt 5, Ch 14 Machinery Piping Systems, due regard being paid to the particular type of installation. For the burning of compressed natural gas, *See* the *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk*.

5. 1. 2 The materials and/or their surface treatment used for the storage and distribution of fuel oil are to be selected such that they do not introduce contamination or modify the properties of the fuel.

5. 1. 3 Corrosion resistant materials are to be used in all fuel pipes between the treatment and combustion systems.

5. 1. 4 Suitable fuel treatment systems, including filtration and centrifuging, are to be provided to control the level of water and particulate contamination within the engine manufacturer's specified limits.

5. 1. 5 The gas turbine design and construction is to minimise the possibility of a fire fed by fuel or lubricating oil leaks.

5. 1. 6 In dual-fuel applications, provision is to be made for automatic isolation of both primary and standby fuel supplies to the engine in the event of a fire.

5. 2 Fuel oil systems

5. 2. 1 Fuel oil arrangements are to comply with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 14 Machinery Piping Systems.

5. 2. 2 All external high pressure fuel oil delivery lines between the pressure fuel pumps and fuel metering valves are to be protected with a jacketed piping system capable of containing fuel from a high pressure line failure to prevent fuel oil or fuel oil mist from reaching a source of ignition on the engine or its surroundings.

5. 2. 3 Suitable arrangements are to be made for draining any fuel oil leakage from the protection required by Pt 5, Ch 4, 5.2 Fuel oil systems 5.2.2 and to prevent contamination of the lubricating oil by fuel oil. An alarm is to be provided to indicate that leakage is taking place.

5. 2. 4 At least two filters are to be fitted in the fuel oil supply lines to the gas turbine and be so arranged that any filter may be cleaned without interrupting the supply of filtered fuel oil to the gas turbine.

5. 3 Lubricating oil systems

5. 3. 1 Lubricating oil arrangements are to comply with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 14 Machinery Piping Systems.

5. 3. 2 Where the lubricating oil for gas turbines is circulated under pressure, provision is to be made for the efficient filtration of the oil. At least two filters are to be fitted in the lubricating oil supply lines to the gas turbine and be so arranged that any filter may be cleaned without interrupting the supply of filtered lubricating oil to the gas turbine.

5. 4 Cooling systems

5. 4. 1 Cooling water arrangements are to comply with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 14 Machinery Piping Systems, where appropriate.

PART

5

CHAPTER 4 **Gas Turbines**

SECTION 6 **Starting arrangements**

6. 1 General

6. 1. 1 Equipment for initial starting of gas turbines is to be provided and arranged such that the necessary initial charge of starting air, hydraulic or electrical power can be developed on board the ship without external aid. If, for this purpose, an emergency air compressor or electric generator is required, these units are to be power-driven by manually-started engines, except in the case of small installations where a hand-operated compressor of approved capacity may be accepted.

6. 1. 2 Alternatively, other devices of approved type may be accepted as a means of providing the initial start.

6. 1. 3 Where the integrity of the starting system is susceptible to overspeed conditions, appropriate alarm and/or trip functions are to be provided, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems.

6. 2 Purging before ignition

6. 2. 1 Means are to be provided to clear all parts of the gas turbine of the accumulation of fuel oil or for purging gaseous fuel before ignition commences on starting, or recommences after failure to start. The purge is to be of sufficient duration to displace at least three times the volume of the exhaust system.

6. 3 Air starting

6. 3. 1 Where the gas turbine is arranged for air starting, the total air receiver capacity is to be sufficient to provide, without replenishment, not less than six consecutive starts. At least two air receivers of approximately equal capacity are to be provided to satisfy the plant air start requirements. For scantlings and fittings of air receivers, *See* Pt 5, Ch 11 Other Pressure Vessels.

6. 3. 2 For multi-engine installations, three consecutive starts per engine are required.

6. 4 Electric starting

6. 4. 1 Where the gas turbine is fitted with electric starters powered from batteries, two batteries are to be fitted. Each battery is to be capable of starting the gas turbine and the combined capacity is to be sufficient without recharging to provide the number of starts required by Pt 5, Ch 4, 6.3 Air starting 6.3.1 or Pt 5, Ch 4, 6.3 Air starting 6.3.2.

6. 4. 2 The requirements for battery installations are given in Pt 6, Ch 2 Electrical Engineering.

6. 5 Hydraulic starting

6. 5. 1 Where the gas turbine is arranged for hydraulic starting, the capacity of the power pack is to be sufficient to provide the number of starts of the gas turbine as required by Pt 5, Ch 4, 6.3 Air starting 6.3.1 or Pt 5, Ch 4, 6.3 Air starting 6.3.2.

PART

5

CHAPTER **4 Gas Turbines**

SECTION **7 Tests**

7. 1 Dynamic balancing

7. 1. 1 All compressor and turbine rotors as finished-bladed and complete with all relevant parts such as half-couplings, are to be dynamically balanced in accordance with the manufacturer's specification in a machine of sensitivity appropriate to the size of rotor.

7. 2 Hydraulic testing

7. 2. 1 Where design permits, casings are to be tested to a hydraulic pressure equal to 1.5 times the highest pressure in the casing during normal operation, or 1.5 times the pressure during starting, whichever is the higher. For test purposes, if necessary, the casings may be subdivided with temporary diaphragms for distribution of test pressure. Where the operating temperature exceeds 300°C the test pressure is to be suitably corrected.

7. 2. 2 Where hydraulic testing is impracticable, 100 per cent non-destructive tests by ultrasonic or radiographic methods are to be carried out on all casing parts with satisfactory results. Where ultrasonic tests have been carried out, the manufacturer is to provide documentary evidence that ultrasonic examination has been carried out by an approved operator and that there were no indications of defects which could be expected to have a prejudicial effect on the operational performance of the gas turbine.

7. 2. 3 The shell and tube arrangement of intercoolers and heat exchangers are to be tested to 1.5 times their maximum working pressure.

7. 3 Overspeed tests

7. 3. 1 Before installation, it is to be satisfactorily demonstrated that the gas turbine is capable of safe operation for five minutes at 5 per cent above the nominal setting of the overspeed protective device, or 15 per cent above the maximum design speed, whichever is the higher.

7. 3. 2 Where it is impracticable to overspeed the complete installation, each compressor and turbine rotor completely bladed and with all relevant parts such as half-couplings, are to be overspeed-tested individually at the appropriate speed.

PART

5

CHAPTER 4 Gas Turbines

SECTION 8 Control, alarm and safety systems

8. 1 General

8. 1. 1 Control alarm and safety systems are to comply with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems.

8. 1. 2 All gas turbines intended for essential services are to be provided with means of indicating the lubricating oil pressure supply to them. Where such turbines are of more than 37 kW (50 shp), audible and visual alarms are to be fitted to give warning of an appreciable reduction in pressure of the lubricating oil supply. Further, these alarms are to be actuated from the outlet side of any restrictions, such as filters, coolers, etc.

8. 2 Overspeed protection and shutdown system

8. 2. 1 The gas turbine is to be protected against overspeed by the provision of a suitable device(s) capable of shutting-down the gas turbine safely before a dangerous overspeed condition occurs.

8. 3 Power turbine inlet over-temperature control

8. 3. 1 The power turbine is to be protected against over-temperature by the provision of a suitable device(s) capable of controlling the temperature within acceptable limits or shutting-down the gas turbine safely to prevent damage.

8. 4 Flameout

8. 4. 1 Indication is to be provided for identifying poor combustion from each combustion chamber, flame-out and failure to ignite conditions, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 4, 6.2 Purging before ignition 6.2.1.

8. 5 Lubricating oil system

8. 5. 1 Means are to be provided to accurately determine the pressure and temperature of the lubricating oil supply to the various parts of the gas generator and power turbine, and scavenge oil and return systems to ensure safe operation.

8. 5. 2 Means are to be provided to ensure that the temperature of the lubrication oil supply is automatically controlled to maintain steady-state conditions throughout the normal operating range of the gas turbine.

8. 5. 3 Where the oil supply to the power turbine is fed from a separate supply system, similar arrangements to those detailed above are to be provided.

8. 6 Hand trip arrangement

8. 6. 1 Means are to be provided, at both the local and remote control/operating positions, to manually initiate the shutdown of the gas turbine in an emergency.

8. 7 Fire detection, alarm and extinguishing systems

8. 7. 1 The gas turbine installation is to be provided with a fire detection, alarm and extinguishing system. The requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems and the *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea* as amended (SOLAS 74) are to be complied with.

8. 8 Unattended machinery

8. 8. 1 Where gas turbines are fitted with automatic or remote controls so that under normal operating conditions they do not require any manual intervention by the operators, they are to be provided with the alarms and safety arrangements required by Pt 5, Ch 4, 8.8, Unattended machinery to Pt 5, Ch 4, 8.9, Gas turbine machinery as appropriate. Alternative arrangements which provide equivalent safeguards will be considered.

8. 8. 2 Where machinery is arranged to start automatically or from a remote control station, interlocks are to be provided to prevent start-up under conditions which could hazard the machinery.

8. 8. 3 Where machinery specified in this Section is required to be provided with a standby pump, the standby pump is to start automatically if the discharge pressure from the working pumps falls below a predetermined value.

8. 8. 4 Where a first stage alarm together with a second stage alarm and automatic shutdown of machinery are required in the relevant Tables of this Section, the sensors and circuits utilised for the second stage alarm and automatic shutdown are to be independent of those required for the first stage alarm. ACS will consider alternative arrangements which provide an equivalent level of safety.

8. 9 Gas turbine machinery

8. 9. 1 Alarms and safeguards are indicated in Pt 5, Ch 4, 8.9 Gas turbine machinery 8.9.2 to Pt 5, Ch 4, 8.9 Gas turbine machinery 8.9.4 and Table 4. 8. 1: Gas turbine machinery: Alarms and safeguards.

Table 4. 8. 1: Gas turbine machinery: Alarms and safeguards

Item	Alarm	Note
Overspeed	High	Automatic shutdown *See also* Pt 5, Ch 4, 8.2 Overspeed protection and shutdown system
Power turbine inlet temperature	1st stage high	Automatic power reduction
	2nd stage high	Automatic shutdown *See also* Pt 5, Ch 4, 8.3 Power turbine inlet over-temperature control
Flame failure	Failure	Automatic shutdown, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 4, 8.4 Flameout
Failure to ignite	Failure	Automatic shutdown, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 4, 8.4 Flameout
Lubricating oil pressure	1st stage low	—

	2nd stage low	Automatic shutdown, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 4, 8.5 Lubricating oil system
Lubricating oil temperature	High	*See also* Pt 5, Ch 4, 8.5 Lubricating oil system
Lubricating oil filter differential pressure	High	—
Scavenge oil temperature	High	—
Scavenge oil pressure	Low	Automatic shutdown
Bearing temperature	High	—
Turbine vibration	1st stage high	—
	2nd stage high	Automatic shutdown, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 4, 4.2 Vibration
Fuel oil supply pressure	Low	—
Fuel oil supply temperature	High	—
Fuel oil leakage	High	*See also* Pt 5, Ch 4, 5.2, Fuel oil systems
Automatic starting	Failure	Automatic shutdown
Control system	Failure	Automatic shutdown
Air intake pressure	Low	*See also* Pt 5, Ch 4, 4.4 Intake and exhaust ducts 4.4.4
Feed water or water/thermal fluid forced circulation flow (if fitted)	Low	*See* Pt 5, Ch 14, 6.2 Feed and circulation pumps 6.2.7 and Note 4
Uptake temperature	High	To monitor for soot fires. *See* Notes 4 and 5

Note *1.* For two-stage alarms, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 4, 8.8 Unattended machinery 8.8.4.

Note *2.* For requirements on purging before ignition, *See* Pt 5, Ch 4, 6.2 Purging before ignition 6.2.1.

Note *3.* Where a requirement for disabling the automatic protection and safety system devices for machinery and engineering systems has been defined by the Owner, the consequences of using the disabling arrangements are to be established and included in the operations procedures and orders provided on board ship. Details of any disabling arrangements are to be submitted to ACS for consideration in each instance.

Note *4.* Alarm is required only when suitable for operation on residual fuel grades and an exhaust gas economiser/boiler/thermal oil heater is fitted.

Note *5.* Alternatively, details of an appropriate fire detection system are to be submitted for consideration.

8. 9. 2 The following turbine services are to be fitted with automatic temperature controls so as to maintain steady state conditions throughout the normal operating range of the turbine:

a. Lubricating oil supply.
b. Fuel oil supply, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 4, 8.9 Gas turbine machinery 8.9.3.
c. Exhaust gas.

8. 9. 3 The fuel oil supply may be fitted with an automatic control for viscosity instead of the temperature control required by Pt 5, Ch 4, 8.9 Gas turbine machinery 8.9.2.

8. 9. 4 A means of manually shutting off the fuel in an emergency is to be provided at the manoeuvring station.

PART

5

CHAPTER 5 Gearing

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**Plans and particulars**		**2125**
	1. 1	Gearing plans	2125
	1. 2	Material specifications	2125
SECTION 2	**Plans and particulars**		**2126**
	2. 1	Material properties	2126
	2. 2	Non-destructive tests	2126
SECTION 3	**Design**		**2127**
	3. 1	Symbols	2127
	3. 2	Tooth form	2131
	3. 3	Tooth loading factors	2131
	3. 4	Tooth loading for surface stress	2134
	3. 5	Tooth loading for bending stress	2136
	3. 6	Factors of safety	2142
	3. 7	Design of enclosed gear shafting	2142
SECTION 4	**Construction**		**2144**
	4. 1	Gearcases	2144
	4. 2	Accuracy of gear cutting and alignment	2144
	4. 3	Gearcases	2144
SECTION 5	**Tests**		**2146**
	5. 1	Balance of gear pinions and wheels	2146
	5. 2	Meshing tests	2146
	5. 3	Backlash	2147
	5. 4	Alignment	2147
SECTION 6	**Control and monitoring**		**2148**
	6. 1	General	2148
	6. 2	Unattended machinery	2148

SECTION 7 Cross-reference 2149

7. 1 For lubricating oil systems, *See* Pt 5, Ch 14 Machinery Piping Systems. 2149

PART

5

CHAPTER 5 Gearing

LIST OF TABLES

Table 5. 3. 1: Values of K_A 2131
Table 5. 3. 2: Values of K_y 2131
Table 5. 3. 3: Values of K_1 2132
Table 5. 3. 4: Values of C_{ZR} 2136
Table 5. 3. 5: Values of Z_x 2136
Table 5. 3. 6: Values of endurance limit for Hertzian contact stress, $\sigma_{H\,lim}$ 2136
Table 5. 3. 7: Factors of safety 2136
Table 5. 3. 8: Values of endurance limit for bending stress, $\sigma_{F\,lim}$ 2138
Table 5. 3. 9: Values of deep tooth factor, Y_{DT} 2141
Table 5. 3. 10: Slip-layer thickness, $\boldsymbol{\rho}'$ 2141
Table 5. 5. 1: No load tooth contact marking 2146
Table 5. 5. 2: Full load tooth contact marking 2147
Table 5. 6. 1: Main and auxiliary gear units: Alarms and safeguards 2148

PART

5

CHAPTER **5** **Gearing**

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 5. 3. 1: Normal tooth section 2139
Figure 5. 3. 2: External tooth forms 2140

PART

5

CHAPTER 5 Gearing

SECTION Scope

The requirements of this Chapter, except where otherwise stated are applicable to oil engine gearing for main propulsion purposes and for engine gearing for driving auxiliary machinery which is essential for the safety of the ship or for safety of persons on board where the transmitted powers exceed 220 kW (300 shp) for propulsion drives, and 110 kW (150 shp) for auxiliary drives. Alternatively calculations using the methods defined in ISO 6336 – *Calculation of load capacity of spur and helical gears*, will be considered. In any mesh, the terms pinion and wheel refer to the smaller and larger gear respectively. For turbine gearing the loading factors K_A, $K_{F\alpha}$, $K_{F\beta}$, $K_{H\alpha}$, $K_{H\beta}$ and K_γ will be considered. Bevel gears will be specially considered on the basis of a conversion to equivalent helical gears. For torsional vibration requirements, *See* Pt 5, Ch 8, 2.3, Scope of calculations.

PART

5

CHAPTER 5 Gearing

SECTION 1 Plans and particulars

1. 1 Gearing plans

1. 1. 1 Particulars of the gearing are to be submitted with the plans for all propulsion gears and for auxiliary gears where the transmitted power exceeds 110 kW (150 shp), as follows:

a. Plans and information demonstrating conformance with the applicable Rules and Standards as stated in scope.
b. Shaft power and revolution for each pinion.
c. Number of teeth in each gear.
d. Reference diameters.
e. Helix angles at reference diameters.
f. Normal pitches of teeth at reference diameters.
g. Tip diameters.
h. Root diameters.
i. Face widths and gaps, where applicable.
j. Pressure angles of teeth (normal or transverse) at reference diameters.
k. Accuracy grade Q in accordance with ISO 1328 or an equivalent Standard.
l. Surface texture of tooth flanks and roots.
m. Minimum backlash.
n. Centre distance.
o. Basic rack tooth form.
p. Protuberance and final machining allowance.
q. Details of post hobbing processes, if any.
r. Details of tooth flank corrections, if adopted.
s. Case depth for surface-hardened teeth.
t. Shrinkage allowance for shrunk-on rims and hubs.
u. Type of coupling proposed for engine applications.

1. 2 Material specifications

1. 2. 1 Specifications for materials of pinions, pinion sleeves, wheel rims, gear wheels, and quill shafts, giving chemical composition, heat treatment and mechanical properties, are to be submitted for approval with the plans of gearing.

1. 2. 2 Where the teeth of a pinion or gear wheel are to be surface hardened, i.e. carburised, nitrided, tufftrided or induction-hardened, the proposed specification and details of the procedure are to be submitted for approval.

PART

5

CHAPTER 5 **Gearing**

SECTION 2 **Plans and particulars**

2. 1 Material properties

2. 1. 1 In the selection of materials for pinions and wheels, consideration is to be given to their compatibility in operation. Except in the case of low reduction ratios, for gears of through-hardened steels, provision is also to be made for a hardness differential between pinion teeth and wheel teeth. For this purpose, the specified minimum tensile strength of the wheel rim material is not to be more than 85 per cent of that of the pinion.

2. 1. 2 Subject to Pt 5, Ch 5, 2.1 Material properties 2.1.1, the specified minimum tensile strength is to be selected within the following limits:

Pinion and pinion sleeves	550 to 1050 N/mm^2 (56 to 107 kgf/mm^2)
Gear wheels and rims	400 to 850 N/mm^2 (41 to 87 kgf/mm^2)

A tensile strength range is also to be specified and is not to exceed 120 N/mm^2 (12 kgf/mm^2) when the specified minimum tensile strength is 600 N/mm^2 (61 kgf/mm^2) or less. For higher strength steels, the range is not to exceed 150 N/mm^2 (15 kgf/mm^2).

2. 1. 3 Unless otherwise agreed, the full specified minimum tensile strength of the core is to be 800 N/mm^2 (82 kgf/mm^2) for induction-hardened or nitrided gearing and 750 N/mm^2 (76 kgf/mm^2) for carburised gearing.

2. 1. 4 For nitrided gearing, the full depth of the hardened zone is to be not less than 0.5 mm and the hardness is to be not less than 500 HV for a depth of 0.25 mm.

2. 2 Non-destructive tests

2. 2. 1 An ultrasonic examination is to be carried out on all gear blanks where the finished diameter of the surfaces, where teeth will be cut, is in excess of 200 mm.

2. 2. 2 Magnetic particle or liquid penetrant examination is to be carried out on all surface-hardened teeth. This examination may also be requested on the finished machined teeth of through-hardened gears.

PART

5

CHAPTER **5 Gearing**

SECTION **3 Design**

3. 1 Symbols

3. 1. 1 For the purposes of this Chapter the following symbols apply:

a = centre distance, in mm

b = face width, in mm

b = face width, in mm

d = reference diameter, in mm

d_a = tip diameter, in mm

d_{an} = virtual tip diameter, in mm

d_{bn} = virtual base diameter, in mm

d_{en} = virtual diameter to the highest point of single tooth pair contact, in mm

d_f = root diameter, in mm

d_{fn} = virtual root diameter, in mm

d_n = virtual reference diameter, in mm

d_s = shrink diameter, in mm

d_w = pitch circle diameter, in mm

f_{ma} = tooth flank misalignment due to manufacturing errors, in μm

f_{pb} = maximum base pitch deviation of wheel, in μm

f_{Sh} = tooth flank misalignment due to wheel and pinion deflections, in μm

f_{Sho} = intermediary factor for the determination of f_{Sh}

g_α = length of line of action for external gears, in mm:

$$= 0.5\sqrt{(d_{a1}^2 - d_{b1}^2)} + 0.5\sqrt{(d_{a2}^2 - d_{b2}^2)} - a \sin \alpha_{tw}$$

for internal gears

$= 0.5\sqrt{(d_{a1}^2 - d_{b1}^2)} - 0.5\sqrt{(d_{a2}^2 - d_{b2}^2)} + a \sin \alpha_{tw}$

h = total depth of tooth, in mm

h_{ao} = basic rack addendum of tool, in mm

h_F = bending moment arm for root stress, in mm

h_W = sum of actual tooth addenda of pinion and wheel, in mm

m_n = normal module, in mm

n = rev/min of pinion

q = machining allowances, in mm

q_s = notch parameter

q' = intermediary factor for the determination of C_γ

u = gear ratio $= \frac{number\ of\ teeth\ in\ wheel}{number\ of\ teeth\ in\ pinion} \geq 1$

v = linear speed at pitch circle, in m/s

x = addendum modification coefficient

y_α = running in allowance, in μm

y_β = running in allowance, in μm

z = number of teeth

z_n = virtual number of teeth

$= \frac{z}{cos^2\beta_b cos\beta}$

C_γ = tooth mesh stiffness (mean total mesh stiffness per unit face width), in N/mm μm

F_t = nominal tangential tooth load, in N

$= \frac{P}{nd} 19.098 \times 10^6$

F_β = total tooth alignment deviation (maximum value specified), in μm

$F_{\beta x}$ = actual longitudinal tooth flank deviation before running in, in μm

$F_{\beta y}$ = actual longitudinal tooth flank deviation after running in, in μm

HV = Vickers hardness number

K_A = application factor

$K_{F\alpha}$ = transverse load distribution factor

$K_{F\beta}$ = longitudinal load distribution factor

$K_{H\alpha}$ = transverse load distribution factor

$K_{H\beta}$ = longitudinal load distribution factor

K_{v} = dynamic factor

$K_{v\alpha}$ = dynamic factor for spur gears

$K_{v\beta}$ = dynamic factor for helical gears

K_{γ} = load sharing factor

P = transmitted power, in kW

P_{r} = radial pressure at shrinkage surface, in N/mm^2

P_{ro} = protuberance of tool, in mm

R_{a} = surface roughness − arithmetical mean deviation (C.L.A.) as determined by an instrument having a minimum wavelength cut-off of 0.8 mm and for a sampling length of 2.5 mm, in μm

S_{pr} = residual undercut left by protuberance in mm

S_{Fmin} = minimum factor of safety for bending stress

S_{Fn} = tooth root chord in the critical section, in mm

S_{Hin} = minimum factor of safety for Hertzian contact stress

S_{R} = rim thickness of gears, in mm

Y_{B} = rim thickness factor

Y_{D} = design factor

Y_{DT} = deep tooth factor

Y_{F} = tooth form factor

Y_{RrelT} = relative surface finish factor

Y_{S} = stress correction factor

Y_{ST} = stress correction factor (relevant to the dimensions of the standard reference test gears)

Y_{x} = size factor

Y_{β} = helix angle factor

$Y_{\delta relT}$ = relative notch sensitivity factor

Z_{E} = material elasticity factor

Z_{H} = zone factor

Z_{R} = surface finish factor

Z_{V} = velocity factor

Z_{X} = size factor

Z_{β} = helix angle factor

Z_ϵ = contact ratio factor

α_{en} = pressure angle at the highest point of single tooth contact, in degrees

α_n = normal pressure angle at reference diameter, in degrees

α_t = transverse pressure angle at reference diameter, in degrees

α_{tw} = transverse pressure angle at pitch circle diameter, in degrees

α_{Fen} = angle for application of load at the highest point of single tooth contact, in degrees

β = helix angle at reference diameter, in degrees

β_b = helix angle at base diameter, in degrees

γ = intermediary factor for the determination of f_{Sh}

ϵ_α = transverse contact ratio

$$= \frac{g_\alpha \cos\,\beta}{\pi m_n \cos\,\alpha_t}$$

$\epsilon_{\alpha n}$ = virtual transverse contact ratio

ϵ_β = overlap ratio

$$= \frac{b \sin\,\beta}{\pi m_n}$$

ϵ_γ = total contact ratio

ρ_{ao} = tip radius of tool, in mm

ρ_c = relative radius of curvature at pitch point, in mm

$$= \frac{\text{asin}\,\alpha_{tw} u}{\cos\,\beta_b (1+u)^2}$$

ρ_F = tooth root fillet radius at the contact of the 30° tangent, in mm

σ_y = yield or 0.2 per cent proof stress, in N/mm^2

σ_B = ultimate tensile strength, in N/mm^2

σ_F = bending stress at tooth root, in N/mm^2

$\sigma_{F\,lim}$ = endurance limit for bending stress in N/mm^2

σ_{FP} = allowable bending stress at the tooth root, in N/mm^2

σ_H = Hertzian contact stress at the pitch circle, in N/mm^2

$\sigma_{H\,lim}$ = endurance limit for Hertzian contact stress, in N/mm^2

σ_{HP} = allowable Hertzian contact stress, in N/mm^2

Subscript:

1 = pinion

2 = wheel

0 = tool.

3. 2 Tooth form

3. 2. 1 The tooth profile in the transverse section is to be of involute shape, and the roots of the teeth are to be formed with smooth fillets of radii not less than $0.25m_n$.

3. 2. 2 All sharp edges left on the tips and ends of pinion and wheel teeth after hobbing and finishing are to be removed.

3. 3 Tooth loading factors

3. 3. 1 For values of application factor, K_A *See* Table 5. 3. 1: Values of KA.

Table 5. 3. 1: Values of K_A

Main and auxiliary gears	K_A
Main propulsion engine reduction gears:	
Hydraulic coupling or equivalent on input	1.10
High elastic coupling on input	1.30
Other coupling	1.50
Auxiliary gears:	
Electric and engine drives with hydraulic coupling or equivalent on input	1.00
Engine drives with high elastic coupling on input	1.20
Engine drives with other couplings	1.40

3. 3. 2 Load sharing factor, K_γ. When a gear drives two or more mating gears where the total transmitted load is not evenly distributed between the individual meshes, a factor, K_γ, is to be applied. K_γ is defined as the ratio between the maximum load through an actual path and the evenly shared load. This is to be determined by measurements. Where a value cannot be determined in such a way, the values in Table 5. 3. 1: Values of KA may be considered:

Table 5. 3. 2: Values of K_y

	K_y
Spur Gear	1.0
Epicyclic Gears	
• Up to 3 planetary gears	1.0
• 4 planetary gears	1.2
• 5 planetary gears	1.3
• 6 planetary gears and over	1.4

3. 3. 3 Dynamic factor, K_v, is to be calculated as follows when all the following conditions are satisfied:

$$\frac{vz_1}{100}\sqrt{\frac{u^2}{1+u^2}} < 10 \text{ m/s}$$

- spur gears ($\beta = 0°$) and helical gears with $\beta \leq 30°$

- pinion with relatively low number of teeth, $z_1 < 50$
- solid disc wheels or heavy steel gear rim

Or this method may also be applied to all types of gears if:

$$\frac{vz_1}{100}\sqrt{\frac{u^2}{1+u^2}} < 3 \text{ m/s}$$

And to helical gears where $\beta > 30°$

a. For spur gears and for helical gears with $\epsilon_\beta \geq 1$:

$$K_v = 1 + \left(\frac{K_1}{K_A \frac{F_t}{b}} + K_2\right)\frac{VZ_1}{100}K_3\sqrt{\frac{u^2}{1+u^2}}$$

Where $K_A F_t/b$ is less than 100 N/mm, the value 100 N/mm is to be used.
Numerical values for the factor K_1 are to be as specified in the Table 5. 3. 3: Values of K1.

Table 5. 3. 3: Values of K_1

	K_1 ISO accuracy Grade					
	3	**4**	**5**	**6**	**7**	**8**
Spur Gears	2.1	3.9	7.5	14.9	26.8	39.1
Helical Gears	1.9	3.5	6.7	13.3	23.9	34.8

For all accuracy grades the factor K_2 is to be in accordance with the following:

- for spur gears $K_2 = 0.0193$
- for helical gears $K_2 = 0.0087$

Factor K_3 is to be in accordance with the following:

$$\text{If } \frac{vz^1}{100}\sqrt{\frac{u^2}{1+u^2}} \leq 0.2 \text{ then } K_3 = 2.071 - 0.357\frac{vz_1}{100}\sqrt{\frac{u^2}{1+u^2}}$$

$$\text{If } \frac{vz^1}{100}\sqrt{\frac{u^2}{1+u^2}} > 0.2 \text{ then } K_3 = 2.071 - 0.357\frac{vz_1}{100}\sqrt{\frac{u^2}{1+u^2}}$$

a. For helical gears with overlap ratio $\epsilon_\beta < 1$, the value K_v is to be determined by linear interpolation between values determined for spur gears ($K_{v\alpha}$) and helical gears ($K_{v\beta}$) in accordance with:

$$K_v = K_{v\alpha} - \epsilon\beta(K_{v\alpha} - K_{v\beta})$$

$K_{v\alpha}$ is the K_v value for spur gears, in accordance with (a)
$K_{v\beta}$ is the K_v value for helical gears, in accordance with (b)

3. 3. 4 Longitudinal load distribution factors, $K_{H\beta}$ and $K_{F\beta}$:

$$K_{H\beta} = 1 + \frac{bF_{\beta y}C\gamma}{2F_t K_A K_\gamma K_V}$$

Calculated values of $K_{H\beta}$>2 are to be reduced by improved accuracy and helix correction as necessary:

where

$F_{\beta y}$ = $F_{\beta x} - y_\beta$ **and**

$F_{\beta x}$ = $1.33 f_{\mathrm{Sh}} + f_{\mathrm{ma}}$

f_{ma} = $2/3 \mathrm{F}_\beta$ at the design stage, or

f_{ma} = $1/3 \mathrm{F}_\beta$ where helix correction has been applied

f_{Sh} = $f_{\mathrm{Sho}} \frac{F_{\mathrm{t}} K_{\mathrm{A}} K_\gamma K_{\mathrm{V}}}{b}$ where

f_{Sho} = $23\gamma 10^{-3} \mu\mathrm{m}\ \mathrm{mm/N}$ for gears without helix correction and without end relief, or

f_{Sho} = $16\gamma 10^{-3} \mu\mathrm{m}\ \mathrm{mm/N}$ for gears without helix correction but with end relief, where

γ = $(\frac{b}{d_1})^2$, for single helical and spur gears

γ = $3(\frac{b}{2d_1})^2$, for double helical gears

The following minimum values are applicable, these also being the values where helix correction has been applied:

f_{Sho} = 10×10^{-3} µm mm/N for helical gears, or

= 5×10^{-3} µm mm/N for spur gears

For through-hardened steels and surface hardened steels running on through-hardened steels:

$$y_\beta = \frac{320}{\sigma_{\mathrm{H}} lim} F_{\beta \mathrm{x}} \text{ when}$$

$$y_\beta \leq \frac{12800}{\sigma_{\mathrm{H}} \mathrm{lim}} \mu m, \text{ and}$$

For surface hardened steels, when

$$y_\beta = 0.15 F_{\beta x}$$
$$y_\beta \leq 6 \mu m$$
$$K_{F\beta} = K_{H\beta}^n$$

where

$$\mathrm{n} = \frac{(\frac{b}{h})^2}{1 + \frac{b}{h} + (\frac{b}{h})^2}$$

Note *1.* $\frac{b}{h}$ is to be taken as the smaller of $\frac{b_1}{h_1}$ or $\frac{b_2}{h_2}$

Note *2.* For double helical gears $\frac{b}{2}$ is to be substituted for *b* in the equation for *n*.

3. 3. 5 Transverse load distribution factors, $K_{H\alpha}$ and $K_{F\alpha}$

a. Values $K_{H\alpha}$ and $K_{F\alpha}$ for gears with total contact ratio $\epsilon_\gamma \leq 2$

$$K_{H\alpha} = K_{F\alpha} = \frac{\varepsilon_\gamma}{2}\{0.9 + \frac{0.4C_\gamma(f_{pb} - y_\alpha)b}{F_t K_A K_\gamma K_v K_{H\beta}}\}$$

b. Values $K_{H\alpha}$ and $K_{F\alpha}$ for gears with total contact ratio $\epsilon_\gamma > 2$

$$K_{H\alpha} = K_{F\alpha} = 0.9 + 0.4\sqrt{\frac{2(\varepsilon_\gamma - 1)}{\varepsilon_\gamma}}\{\frac{C_\gamma(f_{pb} - y_\alpha)b}{F_t K_A K_\gamma K_v K_{H\beta}}\}$$

Limiting conditions for $K_{H\alpha}$

If $K_{H\alpha} > \frac{\varepsilon_\gamma}{\varepsilon_a Z_\varepsilon^2}$ when calculated in accordance with (a) or (b), then $K_{H\alpha} = \frac{\varepsilon_\gamma}{\varepsilon_a Z_\varepsilon^2}$

If $K_{H\alpha} < 1$ when calculated in accordance with (a) or (b), then $K_{H\alpha} = 1$

Limiting conditions for $K_{F\alpha}$:

If $K_{F\alpha} > \frac{\varepsilon_\gamma}{0.25\varepsilon_\alpha + 0.75}$ when calculated in accordance with (a) or (b), then $K_{F\alpha} = \frac{\varepsilon_\gamma}{0.25\varepsilon_{\gamma\alpha} + 0.75}$

If $K_{F\alpha} < 1$ when calculated in accordance with (a) or (b), then $K_{F\alpha} = 1$

where

When tip relief is applied f_{pb} is to be half of the maximum specified value:

$y_\alpha = \frac{160}{\sigma_{H}lim} f_{pb}$ for through-hardened steels, when

$$y_\alpha \leq \frac{6400}{\sigma_{H\,lim}}\mu\text{m and}$$

$y_\alpha = 0.075 f_{pb}$ for surface hardened steels, when

$$y_\alpha \leq 3\mu\text{m}$$

When pinion and wheel are manufactured from different materials:

$y_\alpha = \frac{y_{\alpha 1} + y_{\alpha 2}}{2}$

3. 3. 6 Tooth mesh stiffness, C_γ:

$$C_\gamma = \frac{0.8}{q'}\cos\beta(0.75\epsilon_a + 0.25)\text{N/mm}\mu\text{m}$$

where

$$q' = 0.04723 + \frac{0.1551}{z_{n1}} + \frac{0.25791}{z_{n2}} - 0.00635x_1 - \frac{0.11654x_1}{z_{n1}} - 0.00193x_2 - \frac{0.24188x_2}{z_{n2}} + 0.00529x_1^2 + 0.00182\,x_2^2$$

For internal gears $z_{n2} = \infty$

Other calculations methods for C_γ will be specially considered.

3. 4 Tooth loading for surface stress

3. 4. 1 The Hertzian contact stress, σ_H, at the pitch circle is not to exceed the allowable Hertzian contact stress, σ_{HP}.

$$\sigma_H = Z_H Z_E Z_\varepsilon Z_\beta\sqrt{\frac{F_t(u+1)}{d_1 bu}K_A K_\gamma K_v K_{H\beta} K_{H\alpha}}\text{ and}$$

$\sigma_{\mathrm{HP}} = \frac{\sigma_{\mathrm{H}}\mathrm{lim}\ Z_R Z_V Z_X}{S_{\mathrm{H}} min}$ for the pinion / wheel combination

Where

$$Z_H = \sqrt{\frac{2\cos\ \beta_b}{\cos^2\ \alpha_t \tan\ \alpha_{tw}}}$$

$Z_E = 189.8$ for steel

Z_ε, contact ratio factor is to be calculated as follows:
for helical gears:

$$Z_\epsilon = \sqrt{\frac{4-\varepsilon_\alpha}{3}\left(1-\varepsilon_\beta\right)+\frac{\varepsilon_\beta}{\varepsilon_\alpha}} \quad \text{for} \quad 3_\beta < 1 \quad \text{and}$$

$$Z_\epsilon = \sqrt{\frac{1}{\varepsilon_\alpha}} \quad \text{for} \quad 3_\beta \geq 1$$

for spur gears:

$$Z_\epsilon = \sqrt{\frac{4-\epsilon_\alpha}{3}}, Z_\beta = \sqrt{\frac{1}{\cos\beta}}, \ Z_{\mathrm{R}} = \left(\frac{3}{R_{\mathrm{Z10}}}\right)^{\mathrm{C}} \ \mathrm{ZR}$$

Where

$$R_{\mathrm{Z}} = \frac{\mathrm{R_{z1}} + \mathrm{R_{Z2}}}{2}$$

The peak-to-valley roughness determined for the pinion R_{z1} and for the wheel R_{z2} are mean values for the peak-to-valley roughness R_z measured on several tooth flanks.

$$R_{\mathrm{Z10}} = \mathrm{R_Z}\sqrt[3]{\frac{10}{\rho_{\mathrm{red}}}}$$

relative radius of curvature:

$$\rho_{\mathrm{red}} = \frac{\rho_1 \rho_2}{\rho_1 + \rho_2}$$

where:

$$\rho_{1.2} = 0.5 \cdot d_{\mathrm{b1.2}} \cdot \tan\ \alpha_{\mathrm{tw}}$$

For internal gears, d_b has a negative sign.
If R_a, the surface roughness of the tooth flanks is given then the following approximation may be applied:

$$R_a = \frac{R_z}{6}$$

C_{ZR} is to be taken from Table 5. 3. 4: Values of CZR.

$$Z_v = 0.88 + 0.23\left(0.8 + \frac{32}{v}\right)^{-0.5}$$

For values of Z_x, *See* Table 5. 3. 5: Values of Zx.
$\sigma_{H\,lim}$, *See* Table 5. 3. 6: Values of endurance limit for Hertzian contact stress, σH lim.
$S_{H\,min}$, *See* Table 5. 3. 7: Factors of safety.

Table 5. 3. 4: Values of C_{ZR}

$\sigma_{H\,lim}$	C_{ZR}
$\sigma_{Hlim} < 850$ N/mm^2	0.1500
850 N/mm^2 ≤ $\sigma_{H\,lim} \leq 1200$ N/mm^2	= 0.32-0.0002 σ_{Hlim}
$\sigma_{Hlim} > 1200$ N/mm^2	0.080

Table 5. 3. 5: Values of Z_x

Pinion heat treatment		Z_x
Carburised andinduction-hardened	$m_n \leq 10$ $10 < m_n < 30$ $30 \leq m_n$	1.00 1.05 - 0.005m_n 0.9
Nitrided	$m_n < 7.5$ $7.5 < m_n < 30$ $30 \leq m_n$	1.00 1.08 - 0.011m_n 0.75
Through- hardened	All modules	1.00

Table 5. 3. 6: Values of endurance limit for Hertzian contact stress, $\sigma_{H\,lim}$

Heat treatment		$\sigma_{H\,lim}$ N/mm^2
Pinion	**Wheel**	
Through-hardened	Through-hardened	$0.46\sigma_{B2} + 255$
Surface-hardened	Through-hardened	$0.42\sigma_{B2} + 415$
Carburised, nitrided orinduction-hardened	Soft bath nitrided(Tufftrided)	1000
Carburised, nitrided orinduction-hardened	Induction-hardened	0.88 HV_2 + 675
Carburised ornitrided	Nitrided	1300
Carburised	Carburised	1500

Table 5. 3. 7: Factors of safety

	S_{Hmin}	S_{Fmin}
Main propulsion gears	1.4	1.8
Auxiliary gears	1.15	1.40

3. 5 Tooth loading for bending stress

3. 5. 1 The bending stress at the tooth root, σ_F is not to exceed the allowable tooth root bending stress σ_{FP}

$$\sigma_F = \frac{F_t}{bm_n} Y_F Y_S Y_\beta Y_B Y_{DT} K_A K_\gamma K_v K_{F\alpha} K_{F\beta} \quad \text{N/mm}^2$$

$$\sigma_{FP} = \frac{\sigma_{F\,lim} Y_{ST} Y_{\delta\,rel\,T} Y_{R\,rel\,T} Y_X}{S_{F\,min}\, Y_D} \quad \text{N/mm}^2$$

For values of $S_{F\,min}$, *See* Table 5. 3. 7: Factors of safety.
$\sigma_{F\,lim}$, *See* Table 5. 3. 8: Values of endurance limit for bending stress, σF lim.
Stress correction factor $Y_{ST} = 2$.

3. 5. 2 Tooth form factor, Y_F:

$$Y_F = \frac{6\frac{h_F}{m_n}\cos\,\alpha_{F\,en}}{\left(\frac{S_{Fn}}{m_n}\right)^2\cos\,\alpha_n}$$

where h_F, α_{Fen} and S_{Fn} are shown in Figure 5. 3. 1: Normal tooth section.

$$\frac{S_{Fn}}{m_n} = z_n \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{3} - v\right) + \sqrt{3}\left(\frac{G}{\cos v} - \frac{\rho_{ao}}{m_n}\right)$$

where

$$v = \frac{2G}{z_n}\tan\,v - H$$

$$G = \frac{\rho_{ao}}{m_n} - \frac{h_{ao}}{m_n} + X$$

$$H = \frac{2}{z_n}\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \frac{E}{m_n}\right) - \frac{\pi}{3}$$

$$E = \frac{\pi}{4}m_n - h_{ao}\tan\,\alpha_n + \frac{S_{pr}}{\cos\alpha_n} - (1 - \sin\alpha_n)\frac{\rho_{ao}}{\cos\alpha_n}$$

E, h_{ao}, α_n, S_{pr} and ρ_{ao} are shown in Figure 5. 3. 2: External tooth forms

$$\frac{\rho_F}{m_n} = \frac{\rho_{ao}}{m_n} + \frac{2G^2}{\cos\,v(z_n\cos^2\,v - 2G)}$$

$$d_{en} = \frac{2z}{|z|}\{[\sqrt{\left(\frac{dan}{2}\right)^2 - \left(\frac{d_{bn}}{2}\right)^2} - \frac{\pi\,d\cos\beta\cos\alpha_n}{|z|}(\varepsilon_{an} - 1)]^2 + \left(\frac{d_{bn}}{2}\right)^2\}^{\frac{1}{2}}$$

where

$$d_{an} = d_n + d_a - d$$

$$d_n = \frac{d}{\cos^2\beta_b}$$

$$d_{bn} = d_n\cos\,\alpha_n$$

$$\varepsilon_{an} = \frac{\epsilon_a}{\cos^2\beta_b}$$

$$\gamma_e = \frac{\pi}{2} + 2x\tan\,\alpha_n}{z_n} + \text{inv}.\alpha_n - \text{inv}.\alpha_{en}$$

where

$$\alpha_{\mathrm{en}} = \arccos \frac{d_{\mathrm{bn}}}{d_{\mathrm{en}}}$$

$$\frac{h_{\mathrm{F}}}{m_{\mathrm{n}}} = \frac{1}{2}[(\cos \gamma_{\mathrm{e}} - \sin \gamma_{\mathrm{e}} \tan \alpha_{\mathrm{Fen}}) \frac{d_{\mathrm{en}}}{m_{\mathrm{n}}} - z_{\mathrm{n}} \cos (\frac{\pi}{3} - \mathrm{v}) - \frac{G}{\cos \mathrm{v}} + \frac{\rho_{ao}}{m_{\mathrm{n}}}]$$

where

$$\alpha_{\mathrm{F\,en}} = \alpha_{\mathrm{en}} - \gamma_e$$

Table 5. 3. 8: Values of endurance limit for bending stress, $\sigma_{F\,lim}$

Heat treatment	$\sigma_{F\,lim}$ N/mm²
Through-hardened carbon steel	$0.09\sigma_B + 150$
Through-hardened alloy steel	$0.1\sigma_B + 185$
Soft bath nitrided (Tufftrided)	330
Induction hardened	0.35 HV + 125
Gas nitrided	390
Carburised A	450
Carburised B	410
Note *1.* A is applicable for Cr Ni Mo carburising steels. **Note** *2.* B is applicable for other carburising steels.	

3. 5. 3 For internal tooth forms the form factor is calculated, as an approximation, for a substitute gear rack with the form of the basic rack in the normal section, but having the same tooth depth as the internal gear:

$$\frac{S_{Fn2}}{m_n} = 2\left[\frac{\pi}{4} + \tan \alpha \left(\frac{h_{ao2} - \rho_{ao2}}{m_n}\right) + \left(\frac{r_{ao2} - S_{pr}}{m_n \cos \alpha_n}\right)\right]\left[\frac{\rho_{ao2}}{m_n} \cos \frac{\pi}{6}\right]$$

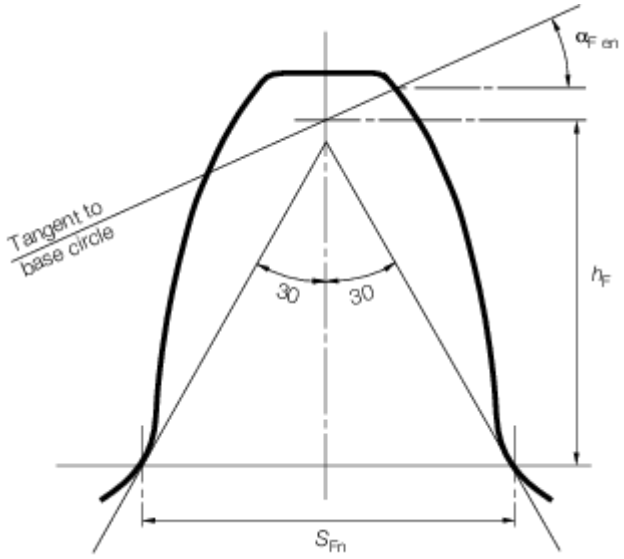
$$\frac{h_{F2}}{m_n} = \frac{d_{en2} - d_{fn2}}{2m_n} - \left[\frac{\pi}{4} + \left(\frac{h_{ao2}}{m_n} - \frac{d_{en2} - d_{\mathrm{fn2}}}{2m_2}\right) \tan \alpha_n\right] \tan \alpha_n - \frac{\rho_{ao2}}{m_n}\left(1 - \sin \frac{\pi}{6}\right)$$

where α_{Fen} is taken as being equal to α_n

$$\rho_{F2} = \frac{\rho_{ao2}}{2}$$

d_{en2} is calculated as d_{en} for external gears, and

Figure 5. 3. 1: Normal tooth section



NOTE: For helical gears the normal section is taken with the virtual number of teeth

3. 5. 4 Stress concentration factor, Y_s

$$Y_s = (1.2 + 0.13L)q_s^{(\frac{1}{1.21+2.3/L})}$$

where

$$L = \frac{s_{Fn}}{h_F}$$

$$q_s = \frac{s_{Fn}}{2_{pf}}$$

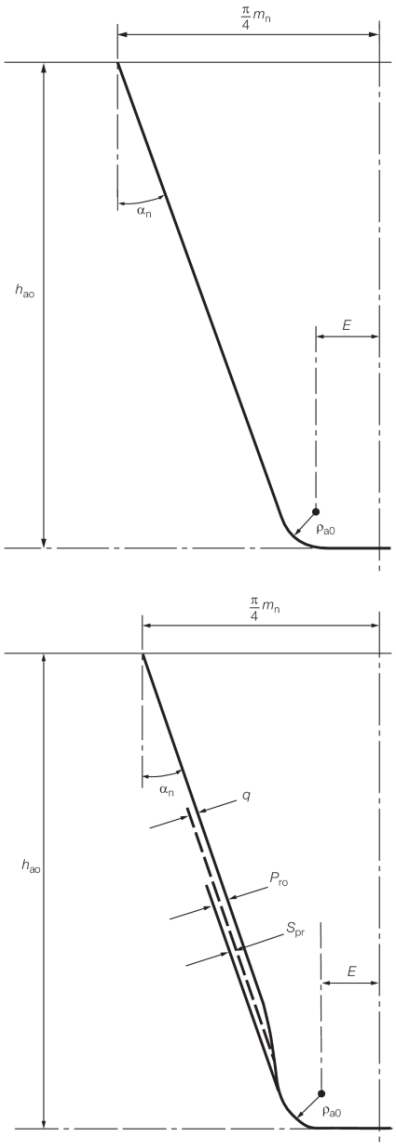
when $q_s < 1$ the value of Y_s is to be specially considered.
The formula for Y_s is applicable to external gears with $\alpha_n = 20°$ but may be used as an approximation for other pressure angles and internal gears.

3. 5. 5 Helix angle factor Y_β

$$Y_\beta = 1 - (\varepsilon_\beta \frac{\beta}{120}) \text{ , if } \varepsilon_\beta > 1 \text{ let } \varepsilon_\beta = 1$$

but $Y_b \geq 1 - 0.25\ 3_b \geq 0.75$.

Figure 5. 3. 2: External tooth forms



Notes:

1. Dimensions shown on rack profile of tooth

2. $S_{pr} = P_{ro} - q$

3. 5. 6 Rim thickness factor, Y_B

Factor Y_B is to be determined as follows:

a. For external gears

$$\text{If } S_R/h \geq 1.2 \text{ then } Y_B = 1$$

$$\text{If } 0.5 < S_R/h < 1.2 \text{ then } Y_B = 1.6 \cdot \ln\left(2.242\frac{h}{S_R}\right)$$

Where

S_R = rim thickness of external gears, mm

The case $S_R/h \leq 0.5$ is to be avoided.

b. For internal gears

$$\text{If } S_R/m_n \geq 3.5 \text{ then } Y_B = 1$$

If $1.75 < S_R/m_n < 3.5$ then $Y_B = 1.15 \cdot \ln\left(8.324 \frac{m_n}{S_R}\right)$

where

S_R = rim thickness of internal gears, mm

The case $S_R / m_n \leq 1.75$ is to be avoided.

3. 5. 7 Deep tooth factor Y_{DT}

The deep tooth factor, Y_{DT}, adjusts the root stress to take into account high precision gears and contact ratios within the range of virtual contact ratio $2.05 \leq \epsilon_{\alpha n} \leq 2.05$ where:

$$\epsilon_{an} = \frac{\epsilon_\alpha}{\cos^2 \beta_b}$$

Factor Y_{DT} is to be determined from Table 5. 3. 9: Values of deep tooth factor, YDT:

Table 5. 3. 9: Values of deep tooth factor, Y_{DT}

	Y_{DT}
ISO Accuracy Grade ≤ 4 and $\epsilon_{\alpha n} > 2.5$	0.7
ISO Accuracy Grade ≤ 4 and $2.05 < \epsilon_{\alpha n} \leq 2.5$	$2.366 - 0.666 \cdot \epsilon_{\alpha n}$
In all other cases	1.0

3. 5. 8 Relative notch sensitivity factor, $Y_{\delta\, rel\, T}$

$$Y_{\delta relT} = \frac{1 + \sqrt{0.2\rho'(1 + 2q_s)}}{1 + \sqrt{1.2\rho'}}$$

ρ' = slip-layer thickness is to be taken from Table 5. 3. 10: Slip-layer thickness, $\boldsymbol{\rho'}$

Table 5. 3. 10: Slip-layer thickness, $\boldsymbol{\rho'}$

Material		ρ', (mm)
Case-hardened steels, flame or induction-hardened steels		0.0030
Through-hardened steels, yield point R_e =	500 N/mm^2	0.0281
	600 N/mm^2	0.0194
	800 N/mm^2	0.0064
	1000 N/mm^2	0.0014
Nitrided steels		0.1005
Note: The given values of ρ' can be interpolated for values of R_e not stated above		

3. 5. 9 Relative surface finish factor, $Y_{R\, rel\, T}$

Y_{RrelT} = $1.674 - 0.529\ (6R_a + 1)^{0.1}$ for through-hardened, carburised and induction hardened steels, and

Y_{RrelT} = $4.299 - 3.259\ (6R_a + 1)^{0.005}$ for nitrided steels.

3. 5. 10 Size factor, Y_x

Y_x = 1.00, when $m_n \leq 5$

Y_x = $1.03 - 0.006 m_n$ for through hardened steels

Y_x = 0.85, when $m_n \geq 30$

Y_x = $1.05 - 0.01m_n$ for surface-hardened steels

Y_x = 0.80, when $m_n \geq 25$.

3. 5. 11 Design factor, Y_D

Y_D = 0.83 for gears treated with a controlled shot peening process

Y_D = 1.5 for idler gears

Y_D = 1.25 for shrunk on gears, or

Y_D = $1 + \frac{0.2d_s^2 dP_r b}{F_t \sigma_{Flim}(d_f^2 - d_s^2)}$, otherwise

Y_D = 1.00.

3. 6 Factors of safety

3. 6. 1 Factors of safety are shown in Table 5. 3. 7: Factors of safety.

3. 7 Design of enclosed gear shafting

3. 7. 1 This sub-Section is applicable to solid shafting enclosed within the gearcase of single input/single output gearing. Alternative configurations and hollow shaft designs, final gear wheel shafts and thrust shafts are to be in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.3, Final gear wheel shafts and Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.4 Thrust shafts respectively.

3. 7. 2 The diameter of the enclosed gear shafting adjacent to the pinion or wheel is to be not less than the greater of d_b or d_t, where:

$$d_b = 365\left(\frac{PL}{Rd_w S_b}\right)^{1/3}\left(1 + \left(\frac{\tan\alpha_n}{\cos\beta} + \frac{\tan\beta d_w}{L}\right)^2\right)^{1/6}$$

$$d_t = 365\left(\frac{P}{RS_s}\right)^{1/3}$$

where

S_b = $45 + 0.24\ (\sigma_u - 400)$ and

S_s = $42 + 0.09\ (\sigma_u - 400)$

L = span between shaft bearing centres, in mm

α_n = normal pressure angle at the gear reference diameter, in degrees

β = helix angle at the gear reference diameter, in degrees

d_w = pitch circle diameter of the gear teeth, in mm

σ_u = specified minimum tensile strength of the shaft material, in N/mm^2.

Note P in kW and R in rpm are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 1, 3.3 Power ratings.
Numerical value used for σ_u is not to exceed 800 N/mm^2 for gear and thrust shafts.

3. 7. 3 For the purposes of the above it is assumed that the pinion or wheel is mounted symmetrically spaced between bearings.

3. 7. 4 Outside a length equal to the required diameter at the pinion or wheel, the diameter may be reduced, if applicable, to that required for d_t.

3. 7. 5 For bevel gear shafts, where a bearing is located adjacent to the gear section, the diameter of the shaft is be not less than d_t. Where a bearing is not located adjacent to the gear the diameter of the shaft will be specially considered.

PART

5

CHAPTER **5 Gearing**

SECTION **4 Construction**

4. 1 Gearcases

4. 1. 1 Gear wheels and pinions

4. 1. 2 Where castings are used for wheel centres, any radial slots in the periphery are to be fitted with permanent chocks before shrinking-on the rim.

4. 1. 3 Where bolts are used to secure side plates to rim and hub, the bolts are to be a tight fit in the holes and the nuts are to be suitably locked by means other than welding.

4. 1. 4 Where welding is employed in the construction of wheels, the welding procedure is to be approved by the Surveyors before work is commenced. For this purpose, welding procedure approval tests are to be carried out with satisfactory results. Such tests are to be representative of the joint configuration and materials. Wheels are to be stress relieved after welding. All welds are to have a satisfactory surface finish and contour. Magnetic particle or liquid penetrant examination of all important welded joints is to be carried out to the satisfaction of the Surveyors.

4. 1. 5 In general, arrangements are to be made so that the interior structure of the wheel may be examined. Alternative proposals will be specially considered.

4. 2 Accuracy of gear cutting and alignment

4. 2. 1 The machining accuracy (Q grade) of pinions and wheels is to be demonstrated to the satisfaction of the Surveyors. For this purpose records of measurements should be available for review by Surveyors on request.

4. 2. 2 Where allowance has been given for end relief or helix correction the normal shop meshing tests are to be supplemented by tooth alignment traces or other approved means to demonstrate the effectiveness of such modifications.

4. 3 Gearcases

4. 3. 1 Gearcases and their supports are to be designed sufficiently stiff such that misalignment at the mesh due to movements of the external foundations and the thermal effects under all conditions of service do not disturb the overall tooth contact.

4. 3. 2 For gearcases fabricated by fusion welding the carbon content of steels should generally not exceed 0.23 per cent. Steels with higher carbon content may be approved subject to satisfactory results from weld procedure tests.

4. 3. 3 Gearcases are to be stress relief heat treated on completion of all welding.

4. 3. 4 Inspection openings are to be provided at the peripheries of gearcases to enable the teeth of pinions and wheels to be readily examined. Where the construction of gearcases is such that sections of

the structure cannot readily be moved for inspection purposes, access openings of adequate size are also to be provided at the ends of the gearcases to permit examination of the structure of the wheels. Their attachment to the shafts is to be capable of being examined by removal of bearing caps or by equivalent means.

PART

5

CHAPTER **5** **Gearing**

SECTION **5** **Tests**

5. 1 Balance of gear pinions and wheels

5. 1. 1 All rotating elements, (e.g. pinion and wheel shaft assemblies and coupling parts), are to be appropriately balanced.

5. 1. 2 The permissible residual unbalance, U, is defined as follows:

$$U = \frac{60m}{N} \times 10^3 \text{g mm} \quad \text{for} \quad N \leq 3000$$

$$U = \frac{24m}{N} \times 10^3 \text{gmm} \quad \text{for} \quad N > 3000$$

where

m = mass of rotating element, kg

N = maximum service rev/min of the rotating element.

5. 1. 3 Where the size or geometry of a rotating element precludes measurement of the residual unbalance, a full speed running test of the assembled gear unit at the manufacturer's works will normally be required to demonstrate satisfactory operation.

5. 2 Meshing tests

5. 2. 1 Initially, meshing gears are to be carefully matched on the basis of the accuracy measurements taken. The alignment is to be demonstrated in the workshop by meshing in the gearbox without oil clearance in the bearings. Meshing is to be carried out with the gears locating in their light load positions and a load sufficient to overcome pinion weight and axial movement is to be imposed.

5. 2. 2 The gears are to be suitably coated to demonstrate the contact marking. The marking is to reflect the accuracy grade specified and end relief of helix correction, where these have been applied.

5. 2. 3 For gears without helix correction the marking is to be not less than shown in Table 5. 5. 1: No load tooth contact marking.

Table 5. 5. 1: No load tooth contact marking

ISO accuracy grade	Contact marking area
Q ≤ 5	40%h_w for 50% b and 20%h_w for a further 40%b
Q ≥ 6	40%h_w for 35% b and 20%h_w for a further 35%b

Note *1.* Where b is face width and h_w is working tooth depth.

Note *2.* For spur gears the values of h_w should be increased by a further 10%.

5. 2. 4 For gears with end relief of helix correction the marking is to correspond to the designed no load contact pattern.

5. 2. 5 A permanent record is to be made of the meshing contact for purpose of checking the alignment when installed on board ship.

5. 2. 6 The full load tooth contact marking is to be not less than shown in Table 5. 5. 2: Full load tooth contact marking.

Table 5. 5. 2: Full load tooth contact marking

ISO accuracy grade	Contact marking area
Q ≤ 5	70%h_w for 60% b and 50%h_w for a further 30%b
Q ≥ 6	60%h_w for 45% b and 40%h $_w$ for a further 35%b
Note *1.* Where b is face width and h_w is working tooth depth. **Note** *2.* For spur gears the values of h_w should be increased by a further 10%.	

5. 3 Backlash

5. 3. 1 The normal backlash between any pair of gears should not be less than:

$$\frac{a \cdot \alpha_n}{90000} + 0.1 \text{ mm}$$

5. 3. 2 The normal backlash is not to exceed three times the value calculated in Pt 5, Ch 5, 5.3 Backlash 5.3.1.

5. 4 Alignment

5. 4. 1 Reduction gears with sleeve bearings, for main and auxiliary purposes are to be provided with means for checking the internal alignment of the various elements in the gearcases.

5. 4. 2 In the case of separately mounted reduction gearing for main propulsion, means are to be provided by the gear manufacturer to enable the Surveyors to verify that no distortion of the gearcase has taken place, when chocked and secured to its seating on board ship.

5. 4. 3 Further requirements are given in Pt 5, Ch 8, 5 Shaft alignment.

PART

5

CHAPTER 5 **Gearing**

SECTION 6 **Control and monitoring**

6. 1 General

6. 1. 1 Control engineering systems are to be in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems.

6. 1. 2 All main and auxiliary gear units intended for essential services are to be provided with means of indicating the lubricating oil pressure supply to them. Audible and visual alarms are to be fitted to give warning of an appreciable reduction in pressure of the lubricating oil supply. Further, these alarms are to be actuated from the outlet side of any restrictions, such as filters, coolers, etc.

6. 2 Unattended machinery

6. 2. 1 Where machinery is fitted with automatic or remote controls so that under normal operating conditions it does not require any manual intervention by the operators, it is to be provided with the alarms and safety arrangements required by Pt 5, Ch 5, 6.2 Unattended machinery, as appropriate. Alternative arrangements which provide equivalent safeguards will be considered.

6. 2. 2 Where machinery specified in this Section is required to be provided with a standby pump, the standby pump is to start automatically if the discharge pressure from the working pumps falls below a predetermined value.

6. 2. 3 Where a first stage alarm together with a second stage alarm and automatic shutdown of machinery are required in the relevant Tables of this Section, the sensors and circuits utilised for the second stage alarm and automatic shutdown are to be independent of those required for the first stage alarm.

6. 2. 4 Alarms and safeguards are indicated in Table 5. 6. 1: Main and auxiliary gear units: Alarms and safeguards.

Table 5. 6. 1: Main and auxiliary gear units: Alarms and safeguards

Item	Alarm	Note
Lubricating oil sump level	Low	—
Lubricating oil inlet pressure *	1st stage low	Slow-down
Lubricating oil inlet pressure *	2nd stage low	Automatic shutdown
Lubricating oil inlet temperature *	High	—
Thrust bearing temperature *	High	Slow-down
Note For transmitted powers of 1500 kW or less, only the items marked * are required.		

PART

5

CHAPTER **5** **Gearing**

SECTION **7** **Cross-reference**

7. 1 For lubricating oil systems, *See* Pt 5, Ch 14 Machinery Piping Systems.

PART

5

CHAPTER 6 Main Propulsion Shafting

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**Plans and particulars**		**2153**
	1. 1	Shafting plans	2153
SECTION 2	**Materials**		**2154**
	2. 1	Materials for shafts	2154
	2. 2	Ultrasonic tests	2154
SECTION 3	**Design**		**2155**
	3. 1	Intermediate shafts	2155
	3. 2	Gear quill shafts	2156
	3. 3	Final gear wheel shafts	2156
	3. 4	Thrust shafts	2156
	3. 5	Screwshafts and tube shafts	2157
	3. 6	Hollow shafts	2157
	3. 7	Couplings and transitions of diameters	2158
	3. 8	Coupling bolts	2158
	3. 9	Bronze or gunmetal liners on shafts	2159
	3. 10	Keys and keyways	2160
	3. 11	Propellers	2160
	3. 12	Sternbushes	2161
	3. 13	Vibration and alignment	2162
SECTION 4	**Control and Monitoring**		**2163**
	4. 1	Screwshaft Condition Monitoring (SCM)	2163
SECTION 5	**Approval of alloy steel used for intermediate shaft material**		**2165**
	5. 1	Application	2165
	5. 2	Torsional fatigue test	2165
	5. 3	Materials requirements	2166

PART

5

CHAPTER 6 **Main Propulsion Shafting**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 6. 4. 1: Alarm and safeguard for water lubricated bearings 2164
Table 6. 5. 1: Test Condition 2165
Table 6. 5. 2: Cleanliness requirements 2166

PART

5

CHAPTER 6 **Main Propulsion Shafting**

SECTION **Scope**

The requirements of this Chapter relate, in particular, to formulae for determining the diameters of shafting for main propulsion installations, but requirements for couplings, coupling bolts, keys, keyways, sternbushes and other associated components are also included. The diameters may require to be modified as a result of alignment considerations and vibration characteristics, *See* Pt 5, Ch 8 Shaft Vibration and Alignment, or the inclusion of stress raisers, other than those contained in this Chapter.

Alternative calculation methods for determining the diameters of shafting for main propulsion and their permissible torsional stresses will be considered by ACS. Any alternative calculation method is to include all relevant loads on the complete dynamic shafting system under all permissible operating conditions. Consideration is to be given to the dimensions and arrangements of all shaft connections. Moreover, an alternative calculation method is to take into account design criteria for continuous and transient operating loads (dimensioning for fatigue strength) and for peak operating loads (dimensioning for yield strength). The fatigue strength analysis may be carried out separately for different load assumptions, for example as given below.

Shafts complying with the applicable Rules in Pt 5, Ch 6 Main Propulsion Shafting and Pt 5, Ch 8 Shaft Vibration and Alignment satisfy the following:

a. Low cycle fatigue criterion (typically $<10^4$), i.e. the primary cycles represented by zero to full load and back to zero, including reversing torque if applicable. This is addressed by the formulas in Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.1, Intermediate shafts, Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.5, Screwshafts and tube shafts and Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.6 Hollow shafts.

b. High cycle fatigue criterion (typically $>>10^7$), i.e. torsional vibration stresses permitted for continuous operation as well as reverse bending stresses and the accumulated fatigue due to torsional vibration when passing through a barred speed range or any other transient condition with associated stresses beyond those permitted for continuous operation. This is addressed by the formulas in Pt 5, Ch 8, 2.5 Limiting stress in propulsion shafting. The influence of reverse bending stresses is addressed by the safety margins inherent in the formulas from Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.1, Intermediate shafts, Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.5, Screwshafts and tube shafts and Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.6 Hollow shafts.

PART

5

CHAPTER **6 Main Propulsion Shafting**

SECTION **1 Plans and particulars**

1. 1 Shafting plans

1. 1. 1 The following plans, together with the necessary particulars of the machinery, including the maximum power and revolutions per minute, are to be submitted for consideration before the work is commenced:

- Final gear shaft.
- Thrust shaft.
- Intermediate shafting.
- Tube shaft, where applicable.
- Screwshaft.
- Screwshaft oil gland.
- Sternbush.
- Couplings.
- Coupling bolts.
- Flexible coupling.
- Cardan shafts.

1. 1. 2 The specified minimum tensile strength of each shaft is to be stated.

1. 1. 3 In addition, a shafting arrangement plan indicating the relative positions of the main engines, flywheel, flexible coupling, gearing, thrust block, line shafting and bearings, sterntube, `A' bracket and propeller, as applicable, is to be submitted for information.

PART

5

CHAPTER **6** **Main Propulsion Shafting**

SECTION **2** **Materials**

2. 1 Materials for shafts

2. 1. 1 The specified minimum tensile strength of forgings for shafts is to be selected within the following general limits:

a. Carbon and carbon-manganese steel − 400 to 760 N/mm^2 (41 to 77.5 kgf/mm^2). *See also* Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.5 Screwshafts and tube shafts.

b. Alloy steel − not exceeding 800 N/mm^2 (82 kgf/mm^2).

2. 1. 2 Where it is proposed to use alloy steel, details of the chemical composition, heat treatment and mechanical properties are to be submitted for approval.

2. 1. 3 Where shafts may experience vibratory stresses close to the permissible stresses for transient operation, the materials are to have a specified minimum tensile strength of 500 N/mm^2 (51 kgf/mm^2).

2. 1. 4 Where materials with greater specified or actual tensile strengths than the limitations given above are used, reduced shaft dimensions or higher permissible vibration stresses are not acceptable when derived from the formulae used in Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.1, Intermediate shafts, Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.5, Screwshafts and tube shafts, Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.6 Hollow shafts and Pt 5, Ch 8, 2.5 Limiting stress in propulsion shafting unless, for intermediate shafts only, it is verified that the materials exhibit a similar fatigue life to conventional steels through compliance with the requirements in Pt 5, Ch 6, 5 Approval of alloy steel used for intermediate shaft material.

2. 1. 5 Components are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials.

2. 2 Ultrasonic tests

2. 2. 1 Ultrasonic tests are required on shaft forgings where the diameter is 250 mm or greater.

PART

5

CHAPTER **6** **Main Propulsion Shafting**

SECTION **3** **Design**

3. 1 Intermediate shafts

3. 1. 1 The diameter, d, of the intermediate shaft is to be not less than determined by the following formula:

$$d = Fk\sqrt[3]{\frac{P}{R}\left(\frac{560}{\sigma_u + 160}\right)} \text{ mm}$$

where

k = 1.0 for shafts with integral coupling flanges complying with Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.7 Couplings and transitions of diameters or with shrink fit couplings, *See* Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.1 Intermediate shafts 3.1.4

= 1.10 for shafts with keyways in tapered or cylindrical connections, where the fillet radii in the transverse section of the bottom of the keyway are to be not less than $0.0125d$

= 1.10 for shafts with transverse or radial holes where the diameter of the hole (d_h) is not greater than $0.3d$

= 1.20 for shafts with longitudinal slots *See* Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.1 Intermediate shafts 3.1.6

F = 95 for turbine installations, electric propulsion installations and engine installations with slip type couplings

= 100 for other engine installations

P and R are defined in Pt 5, Ch 1, 3.3 Power ratings (losses in gearboxes and bearings are to be disregarded)

σ_u = specified minimum tensile strength of the shaft material, in N/mm^2, *See* Pt 5, Ch 6, 2.1 Materials for shafts 2.1.3.

After a length of $0.2d$ from the end of a keyway, transverse hole or radial hole and $0.3d$ from the end of a longitudinal slot, the diameter of the shaft may be gradually reduced to that determined with $k = 1.0$.

3. 1. 2 For shafts with design features other than stated in Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.1 Intermediate shafts 3.1.1, the value of k will be specially considered.

3. 1. 3 The Rule diameter of the intermediate shaft for engines, turbines and electric propelling motors may be reduced by 3.5 per cent for ships classed exclusively for smooth water service, and by 1.75 per cent for ships classed exclusively for service on the Great Lakes.

3. 1. 4 For shrink fit couplings k refers to the plain shaft section only. Where shafts may experience vibratory stresses close to the permissible stresses for continuous operation, an increase in diameter to the shrink fit diameter is to be provided, e.g. a diameter increase of 1 to 2 per cent and a blending radius as described in Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.7 Couplings and transitions of diameters.

3. 1. 5 Keyways are in general not to be used in installations with a barred speed range.

3. 1. 6 The application of k = 1.20 is limited to shafts with longitudinal slots having a length of less than $0.8d_o$ and a width greater than $0.15d_o$ and a diameter of central hole d_i of less than $0.7d_o$ *See* Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.6 Hollow shafts. The end rounding of the slot is not to be less than half the width. An edge rounding should preferably be avoided as this increases the stress concentration slightly. The values of c_K , *See* Table 8. 2. 1: Ck factors in Pt 5, Ch 8 Shaft Vibration and Alignment, are valid for 1, 2 and 3 slots, i.e. with slots at 360, 180 and 120 degrees apart respectively.

3. 2 Gear quill shafts

3. 2. 1 The diameter of the quill shaft is to be not less than given by the following formula:

$$\text{Diameter of quill shaft} = 101\sqrt[3]{\frac{P400}{R\sigma_u}}\text{mm}$$

where
P and R are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 1, 3.3 Power ratings.

σ_u = specified minimum tensile strength of the material, in N/mm^2 but is not to exceed 1100 N/mm^2.

3. 3 Final gear wheel shafts

3. 3. 1 Where there is only one pinion geared into the final wheel, or where there are two pinions which are set to subtend an angle at the centre of the shaft of less than 120 degrees, the diameter of the shaft at the final wheel and the adjacent journals is to be not less than 1.15 times that required for the intermediate shaft.

3. 3. 2 Where there are two pinions geared into the final wheel opposite, or nearly opposite, to each other, the diameter of the shaft at the final wheel and the adjacent journals is to be not less than 1.1 times that required for the intermediate shaft.

3. 3. 3 In both Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.3 Final gear wheel shafts 3.3.1 and Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.3 Final gear wheel shafts 3.3.2, abaft the journals, the shaft may be gradually tapered down to the diameter required for an intermediate shaft determined according to Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.1, Intermediate shafts, where σ_u is to be taken as the specified minimum tensile strength of the final wheel shaft material, in N/mm^2.

3. 4 Thrust shafts

3. 4. 1 The diameter at the collars of the thrust shaft transmitting torque, or in way of the axial bearing where a roller bearing is used as a thrust bearing, is to be not less than that required for the intermediate shaft in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.1, Intermediate shafts with a k value of 1.10. Outside a length equal to the thrust shaft diameter from the collars, the diameter may be tapered down to that required for the intermediate shaft with a k value of 1.0. For the purpose of the foregoing calculations, σ_u is to be taken as the minimum tensile strength of the thrust shaft material, in N/mm^2.

3. 5 Screwshafts and tube shafts

3. 5. 1 The diameter, d_p of the screwshaft immediately forward of the forward face of the propeller boss or, if applicable, the forward face of the screwshaft flange, is to be not less than determined by the following formula:

$$d_p = 100k\sqrt[3]{\frac{P}{R}\left(\frac{560}{\sigma_u + 160}\right)} \quad \text{mm}$$

where

k = 1.22 for a shaft carrying a keyless propeller fitted on a taper, or where the propeller is attached to an integral flange, and where the shaft is fitted with a continuous liner, a coating of an approved type, or is oil lubricated and provided with an approved type of oil sealing gland

= 1.26 for a shaft carrying a keyed propeller and where the shaft is fitted with a continuous liner, a coating of an approved type, or is oil lubricated and provided with an approved type of oil sealing gland

P and R are defined in Pt 5, Ch 1, 3.3 Power ratings, (losses in gearboxes and bearings are to be disregarded)

σ_u = specified minimum tensile strength of the shaft material, in N/mm^2 but is not to be taken as greater than 600 N/mm^2. *See* Pt 5, Ch 6, 2.1 Materials for shafts 2.1.3

3. 5. 2 The diameter, d_p of the screwshaft determined in accordance with the formula in Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.5 Screwshafts and tube shafts is to extend over a length not less than that to the forward edge of the bearing immediately forward of the propeller or 2.5d_p whichever is the greater.

3. 5. 3 The diameter of the portion of the screwshaft and tube shaft, forward of the length required by Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.5 Screwshafts and tube shafts to the forward end of the forward sterntube seal, is to be determined in accordance with the formula in Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.5 Screwshafts and tube shafts with a k value of 1.15. The change of diameter from that determined with k = 1.22 or 1.26 to that determined with k = 1.15 should be gradual, *See* Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.7 Couplings and transitions of diameters.

3. 5. 4 Screwshafts which run in sterntubes and tube shafts may have the diameter forward of the forward sterntube seal gradually reduced to the diameter of the intermediate shaft. Abrupt changes in shaft section at the screwshaft/tube shaft to intermediate shaft couplings are to be avoided *See* Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.7 Couplings and transitions of diameters.

3. 5. 5 Unprotected screwshafts and tube shafts of corrosion-resistant material will be specially considered.

3. 5. 6 For shafts of non-corrosion-resistant materials which are exposed to sea-water, the diameter of the shaft is to be determined in accordance with the formula in Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.5 Screwshafts and tube shafts with a k value of 1.26 and σ_u taken as 400 N/mm^2.

3. 6 Hollow shafts

3. 6. 1 Where the thrust, intermediate and tube shafts and screwshafts have central holes, the outside diameters of the shafts are to be not less than given by the following formula:

$$d_o = d^3 \sqrt{\frac{1}{\left[1 - \left(\frac{d_i}{d_o}\right)^4\right]}}$$

where

d_o = outside diameter, in mm

d = Rule size diameter of solid shaft, in mm

d_i = diameter of central hole, in mm.

However, where the diameter of the central hole does not exceed 0.4 times the outside diameter, no increase over Rule size need be provided.

3. 7 Couplings and transitions of diameters

3. 7. 1 The minimum thicknesses of the coupling flanges are to be equal to the diameters of the coupling bolts at the face of the couplings as required by Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.8, Coupling bolts and, for this purpose, the minimum tensile strength of the bolts is to be taken as equivalent to that of the shafts. For intermediate shafts, thrust shafts and the inboard end of the screwshaft, the thickness of the coupling flange is in no case to be less than 0.20 of the diameter of the intermediate shaft as required by Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.1, Intermediate shafts.

3. 7. 2 The fillet radius at the base of the coupling flange is to be not less than 0.08 of the diameter of the shaft at the coupling but, in the case of crankshafts, the fillet radius at the centre coupling flanges may be 0.05 of the diameter of the shaft at the coupling. The fillets are to have a smooth finish and are not to be recessed in way of nut and bolt heads.

3. 7. 3 Where the propeller is attached by means of a flange, the thickness of the flange is to be not less than 0.25 of the actual diameter of the adjacent part of the screwshaft. The fillet radius at the base of the coupling flange is to be not less than 0.125 of the diameter of the shaft at the coupling.

3. 7. 4 All couplings which are attached to shafts are to be of approved dimensions.

3. 7. 5 Where couplings are separate from the shafts, provision is to be made to resist the astern pull.

3. 7. 6 Where a coupling is shrunk on to the parallel portion of a shaft or is mounted on a slight taper, e.g. by means of the oil pressure injection method, full particulars of the coupling including the interference fit are to be submitted for special consideration.

3. 7. 7 Transitions of diameters are to be designed with either a smooth taper or a blending radius. In general, a blending radius equal to the change in diameter is recommended.

3. 8 Coupling bolts

3. 8. 1 Close tolerance fitted bolts transmitting shear are to have a diameter, at the joining faces of the couplings not less than given by the following formula:

$$\text{Diameter of coupling bolts} = \sqrt{\frac{240}{nD}\frac{10^6}{\sigma_u}\frac{P}{R}} \quad \text{mm}$$

where

n = number of bolts in the coupling

D = pitch circle diameter of bolts, in mm

σ_u = specified minimum tensile strength of bolts, in N/mm^2

P and R = are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 1, 3.3 Power ratings.

3. 8. 2 At the joining faces of couplings, other than within the crankshaft and at the thrust shaft/crankshaft coupling, the Rule diameter of the coupling bolts defined inPt 5, Ch 6, 3.8 Coupling bolts 3.8.1 may be reduced by 5.2 per cent for ships classed exclusively for smooth water service, and 2.6 per cent for ships classed exclusively for service on the Great Lakes.

3. 8. 3 Where dowels or expansion bolts are fitted to transmit torque in shear they are to comply with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.8 Coupling bolts 3.8.1. The expansion bolts are to be installed, and the bolt holes in the flanges are to be correctly aligned, in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3. 8. 4 The minimum diameter of tap bolts or of bolts in clearance holes at the joining faces of coupling flanges, pretensioned to 70 per cent of the bolt material yield strength value, is not to be less than:

$$d_R = 1.348\sqrt{\left(\frac{120\,10^6\,\mathrm{FP}(1+C)}{RD}+Q\right)\frac{1}{n\sigma_y}}$$

where d_R is taken as the lesser of:

a. Mean of effective (pitch) and minor diameters of the threads.

b. Bolt shank diameter away from threads. (Not for waisted bolts which will be specially considered.)

P and R are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 1, 3.3 Power ratings.

F = 2.5 where the flange connection is not accessible from within the ship

= 2.0 where the flange connection is accessible from within the ship

C = ratio of vibratory/mean torque values at the rotational speed being considered

D = pitch circle diameter of bolt holes, in mm

Q = external load on bolt in N (+ve tensile load tending to separate flange, –ve)

N = number of tap or clearance bolts

σ_y = bolt material yield stress in N/mm^2.

3. 8. 5 Consideration will be given to those arrangements where the bolts are pretensioned to loads other than 70 per cent of the material yield strength.

3. 8. 6 Where clamp bolts are fitted they are to comply with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.8 Coupling bolts 3.8.4 and are to be installed, and the bolt holes in the flanges correctly aligned, in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3. 9 Bronze or gunmetal liners on shafts

3. 9. 1 The thickness, t, of liners fitted on screwshafts or on tube shafts, in way of the bushes, is to be not less, when new, than given by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{D+230}{32}\ \mathrm{mm}$$

where

t = thickness of the liner, in mm

D = diameter of the screwshaft or tube shaft under the liner, in mm.

3. 9. 2 The thickness of a continuous liner between the bushes is to be not less than $0.75t$.

3. 9. 3 Continuous liners should preferably be cast in one piece.

3. 9. 4 Where liners consist of two or more lengths, these are to be butt welded together. In general, the lead content of the gunmetal of each length forming a butt welded liner is not to exceed 0.5 per cent. The composition of the electrodes or filler rods is to be substantially lead-free.

3. 9. 5 The circumferential butt welds are to be of multi-run, full penetration type. Provision is to be made for contraction of the weld by arranging for a suitable length of the liner containing the weld, if possible about three times the shaft diameter, to be free of the shaft. To prevent damage to the surface of the shaft during welding, a strip of heat resisting material covered by a copper strip should be inserted between the shaft and the liner in way of the joint. Other methods for welding this joint may be accepted if approved. The welding is to be carried out by an approved method and to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

3. 9. 6 Each continuous liner or length of liner is to be tested by hydraulic pressure to 0.2 MPa after rough machining.

3. 9. 7 Liners are to be carefully shrunk on, or forced on, to the shafts by hydraulic pressure. Pins are not to be used to secure the liners.

3. 9. 8 Effective means are to be provided for preventing water from reaching the shaft at the part between the after end of the liner and the propeller boss.

3. 10 Keys and keyways

3. 10. 1 Round ended or sled-runner ended keys are to be used, and the keyways in the propeller boss and cone of the screwshaft are to be provided with a smooth fillet at the bottom of the keyways. The radius of the fillet is to be at least 0.0125 of the diameter of the screwshaft at the top of the cone. The sharp edges at the top of the keyways are to be removed.

3. 10. 2 Two screwed pins are to be provided for securing the key in the keyway, and the forward pin is to be placed at least one-third of the length of the key from the end. The depth of the tapped holes for the screwed pins is not to exceed the pin diameter, and the edges of the holes are to be slightly bevelled.

3. 10. 3 The distance between the top of the cone and the forward end of the keyway is to be not less than 0.2 of the diameter of the screwshaft at the top of the cone.

3. 10. 4 The effective sectional area of the key in shear, is to be not less than $\frac{d^3}{2.6d_1}$ mm^2

where

d = diameter, in mm, required for the intermediate shaft determined in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.1, Intermediate shafts, based on material having a specified minimum tensile strength of 400 N/mm^2 and $k = 1$

d_1 = diameter of shaft at mid-length of the key, in mm.

3. 11 Propellers

3. 11. 1 For keyed and keyless propellers, *See* Pt 5, Ch 7 Propellers.

3. 12 Sternbushes

3. 12. 1 The length of the bearing in the sternbush next to and supporting the propeller is to be as follows:

a. For water lubricated bearings which are lined with lignum vitae, rubber composition or staves of approved plastics material, the length is to be not less than four times the diameter required for the screwshaft under the liner.

b. For water lubricated bearings lined with two or more circumferentially spaced sectors of an approved plastics material, in which it can be shown that the sectors operate on hydrodynamic principles, the length of the bearing is to be such that the nominal bearing pressure will not exceed 0.55 MPa. The length of the bearing is to be not less than twice its diameter.

c. For oil lubricated bearings of synthetic material the flow of lubricant is to be such that overheating, under normal operating conditions, cannot occur. The acceptable nominal bearing pressure will be considered upon application and is to be supported by the results of an agreed test programme. In general, the length of the bearing is not to be less than 2.0 times the rule diameter of the shaft in way of the bearing.

d. For bearings which are white-metal lined, oil lubricated and provided with an approved type of oil sealing gland, the length of the bearing is to be approximately twice the diameter required for the screwshaft and is to be such that the nominal bearing pressure will not exceed 0.8 MPa. The length of the bearing is to be not less than 1.5 times its diameter.

e. For bearings of cast iron and bronze which are oil lubricated and fitted with an approved oil sealing gland, the length of the bearing is, in general, to be not less than four times the diameter required for the screwshaft.

f. For bearings which are grease lubricated, the length of the bearing is to be not less than four times the diameter required for the screwshaft.

3. 12. 2 Forced water lubrication is to be provided for all bearings lined with rubber or plastics and for those bearings lined with lignum vitae where the shaft diameter is 380 mm or over. The supply of water may come from a circulating pump or other pressure source. Flow indicators are to be provided for the water service to plastics and rubber bearings. The water grooves in the bearings are to be of ample section and of a shape which will be little affected by weardown, particularly for bearings of the plastics type.

3. 12. 3 Bearings of synthetic material are to be supplied finished machined to design dimensions within a rigid bush. Means are to be provided to prevent rotation of the lining within the bush during operation.

3. 12. 4 Synthetic materials for application as water lubricated stern tube bearings are to be approved in accordance with Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials, Ch 14, 2.13 Sterntube bearings 2.13.1.

3. 12. 5 All sternbushes are to be adequately secured in the sterntube/housings.

3. 12. 6 The shut-off valve or cock controlling the supply of water is to be fitted direct to the after peak bulkhead, or to the sterntube where the water supply enters the sterntube forward of the bulkhead.

3. 12. 7 Oil sealing glands fitted in ships classed for unrestricted service must be capable of accommodating the effects of differential expansion between hull and line of shafting in sea temperatures ranging from arctic to tropical. This requirement applies particularly to those glands which span the gap and maintain oiltightness between the sterntube and the propeller boss.

3. 12. 8 Where a tank supplying lubricating oil to the sternbush is fitted, it is to be located above the load waterline and is to be provided with a low level alarm device in the engine room.

3. 12. 9 Where sternbush bearings are oil lubricated, provision is to be made for cooling the oil by maintaining water in the after peak tank above the level of the sterntube or by other approved means.

3. 12. 10 Means for ascertaining the temperature of the sternbush bearings are to be provided, e.g. monitoring of the temperature of the oil in the sterntube.

3. 12. 11 Where there is compliance with the terms of Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.12 Sternbushes 3.12.1.c and Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.12 Sternbushes 3.12.1.d to the Surveyor's satisfaction, a screwshaft will be assigned the notation **OG** in the *Supplement to the Register Book* for Periodical Survey purposes, *See* Pt 1, Ch 3 Periodical Survey Regulations.

3. 12. 12 Screwshafts which are grease lubricated are not eligible for the **OG** notation.

3. 12. 13 Where an ***IWS** (In-Water Survey) notation is to be assigned, *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.11, for water lubricated bearings means are to be provided for ascertaining the clearance in the sternbush with the vessel afloat.

3. 13 Vibration and alignment

3. 13. 1 For the requirements for torsional, axial and lateral vibration, and for alignment of the shafting, *See* Pt 5, Ch 8 Shaft Vibration and Alignment.

PART

5

CHAPTER **6** **Main Propulsion Shafting**

SECTION **4** **Control and Monitoring**

4. 1 Screwshaft Condition Monitoring (SCM)

4. 1. 1 For vessels where the ACSPlus descriptive note SCM (Screwshaft Condition Monitoring) is requested the requirements in either Pt 5, Ch 6, 4.1, Screwshaft Condition Monitoring (SCM) 4.1.2 or Pt 5, Ch 6, 4.1, Screwshaft Condition Monitoring (SCM) 4.1.3 are to be satisfied.

4. 1. 2 Oil lubricated bearings:

a. Arrangements are to be provided to allow analysis of the lubricating oil. Oil samples are to be taken under service conditions and are to be representative of the oil within the sterntube, sampling arrangements are to meet the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 14, 8.12 Lubricating oil contamination 8.12.6.

b. Bearing temperature sensor arrangement is to be designed with either:
   i. sufficient redundancy in the event of failure of one sensing element and/or its associated cabling; or
   ii. means to allow replacement of a damaged sensor without requiring dry-docking or divers.

c. Facilities are to be provided for measurement of bearing weardown.

d. Approved oil glands that are capable of being replaced without removal of the propeller or withdrawal of the screwshaft are to be fitted.

4. 1. 3 Water lubricated bearings:

a. An approved means of monitoring and recording variations in the flow rate of lubricating water using two independent sensors is to be provided.

b. An approved means of monitoring and recording variations in the shaft power transmission is to be provided.

c. The maximum permitted weardown of the sternbush is to be indicated by the manufacturer. The maximum weardown allowance is to include both the absolute maximum permitted weardown and the weardown at which it is recommended to carry out an inspection and maintenance. An approved means of monitoring bearing wear is to be provided. An alignment analysis considering both the newly installed clearance and the proposed absolute maximum allowable weardown, demonstrating that the system will operate satisfactorily within these two limits, is to be submitted and approved.

d. For open loop systems the manufacturer is to submit information regarding the required standard of lubricating water filtration and lubricating water filters or separators are to be fitted which are able to achieve this requirement. The lubricating water supply is to be fitted with either continuous water sediment measuring equipment; turbidity monitoring equipment or an ACS approved extractive sampling and testing procedure.

e. Where a closed cycle water system is used, arrangements are to allow analysis of the water for at least the following parameters:
   i. Chloride content.

ii. Bearing material and metal particles content.
Water samples are to be representative of the water circulating within the sterntube.

f. The shaft is to either be constructed of corrosion resistant material or protected with a corrosion resistant protective liner or coating approved by ACS. Where a protective liner or coating is used, this is to meet the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.9 Bronze or gunmetal liners on shafts and a means of assessing the condition of this liner is to be submitted and approved.

g. Glands are to be capable of being replaced without withdrawal of the screwshaft.

h. There is to be a shaft starting/clutch engagement block to inhibit starting the shaft until lubricating water flow has been established. This is to only act as a starting block; for lubricating water flow alarm *See* Table 6. 4. 1: Alarm and safeguard for water lubricated bearings.

i. Alternative arrangements are subject to special consideration.

Table 6. 4. 1: Alarm and safeguard for water lubricated bearings

Item	Alarm	Note
Lubricating water flow	Low	*See* Pt 5, Ch 6, 4.1 Screwshaft Condition Monitoring (SCM) 4.1.3.h

PART

5

CHAPTER 6 **Main Propulsion Shafting**

SECTION 5 **Approval of alloy steel used for intermediate shaft material**

5. 1 Application

5. 1. 1 The requirements of Pt 5, Ch 6, 5 Approval of alloy steel used for intermediate shaft material are, in addition to the requirements of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials, Ch 5, 3 Forgings for shafting and machinery, to be applied to the approval of alloy steel which has a minimum specified tensile strength greater than 800 N/mm^2, but, not exceeding 950 N/mm^2 intended for use as intermediate shaft material.

5. 2 Torsional fatigue test

5. 2. 1 A torsional fatigue test is to be performed to verify that the material exhibits a similar fatigue life to conventional steels. The torsional fatigue strength of the material is to be equal to or greater than the permissible torsional vibration stress τ_c given by the formulae in Pt 5, Ch 8, 2.5 Limiting stress in propulsion shafting.

5. 2. 2 The test is to be carried out with notched and unnotched specimens respectively. For calculation of the stress concentration factor of the notched specimen, fatigue strength reduction factor β should be evaluated in consideration of the severest torsional stress concentration factor in the design criteria.

5. 2. 3 Test procedures are to be in accordance with Section 10 of ISO 1352 and the test conditions applied are to be in accordance with Table 6. 5. 1: Test Condition . Mean surface roughness is to be less than 0.2µm Ra with the absence of localised machining marks verified by visual examination at low magnification (x20) as required by Section 8.4 of ISO 1352.

Table 6. 5. 1: Test Condition

Loading type	Torsion
Stress ratio	R = -1
Load waveform	Constant amplitude sinusoidal
Evaluation	S-N curve
Number of cycles for test termination	1 x 10^7

5. 2. 4 The measured torsional fatigue strength for continuous operation, τ_c, and torsional fatigue strength for transient operation, τ_t, are to be equal to or greater than the values given by the following formulae:

$$\tau_c \geq \frac{\sigma_u + 160}{6} \cdot C_k \cdot C_d \text{ for } r = 0$$

$$\tau_t \geq 1.7 \cdot \tau_c \cdot \frac{1}{\sqrt{C_k}}$$

Where

C_k = a factor for different shaft design features, *See* Table 8. 2. 1: Ck factors, Pt 5, Ch 8, 2.4 Symbols and definitions 2.4.4

C_d = size factor, *See* Pt 5, Ch 8, 2.4 Symbols and definitions 2.4.1

σ_u = specified minimum tensile strength of the shaft material, in N/mm^2

r = speed ratio, N/N$_s$, *See* Pt 5, Ch 8, 2.4 Symbols and definitions 2.4.1

5. 3 Materials requirements

5. 3. 1 The steels are to have a degree of cleanliness as shown in Table 6. 5. 2: Cleanliness requirements when tested according to ISO 4967 method A. Representative samples are to be obtained from each heat of forged or rolled products.

Table 6. 5. 2: Cleanliness requirements

Inclusion group	Series	Limiting chart diagram index l
Type A	Fine	1
	Thick	1
Type B	Fine	1.5
	Thick	1
Type C	Fine	1
	Thick	1
Type D	Fine	1
	Thick	1
Type DS	-	1

PART

5

CHAPTER **7** **Propellers**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**Plans and particulars**		**2170**
	1. 1	Details to be submitted	2170
SECTION 2	**Materials**		**2172**
	2. 1	Castings	2172
SECTION 3	**Design**		**2174**
	3. 1	Minimum blade thickness	2174
	3. 2	Keyless propellers	2176
SECTION 4	**Fitting of propellers**		**2181**
	4. 1	Propeller boss	2181
	4. 2	Shop tests of keyless propellers	2181
	4. 3	Final fitting of keyless propellers	2181
SECTION 5	**Control and monitoring**		**2182**
	5. 1	General	2182
	5. 2	Unattended machinery	2182
	5. 3	Controllable pitch propellers and transverse thrust units	2182

PART

5

CHAPTER **7** **Propellers**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 7. 2. 1: Materials for propellers..... 2172
Table 7. 5. 1: Controllable pitch propellers and transverse thrust units: Alarms and safeguards..... 2182

PART

5

CHAPTER **7** **Propellers**

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 7. 1. 1: Definition of skew angle 2171

PART

5

CHAPTER **7** **Propellers**

SECTION **1** **Plans and particulars**

1. 1 Details to be submitted

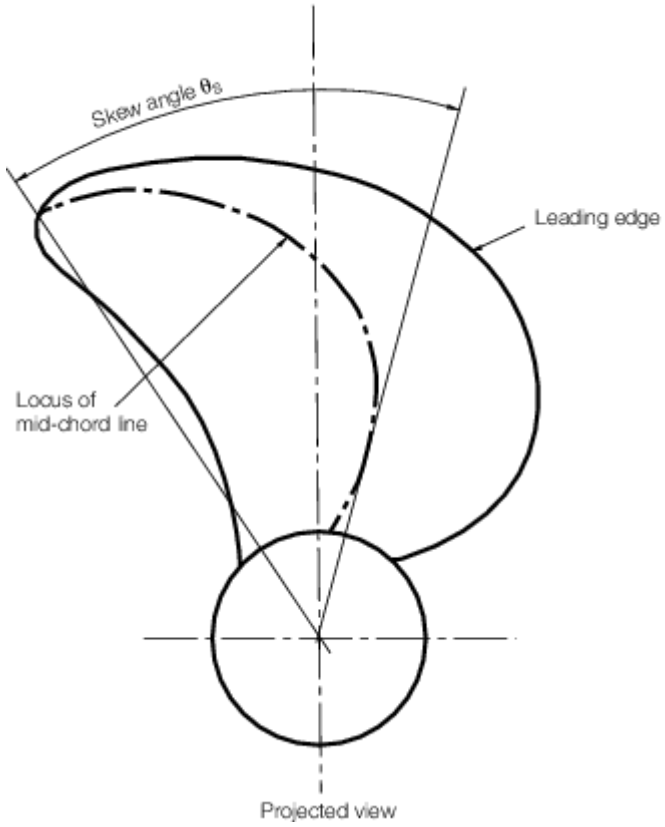
1. 1. 1 A plan, in triplicate, of the propeller is to be submitted for approval, together with the following particulars using the symbols shown:

a. Maximum blade thickness of the expanded cylindrical section considered, T, in mm.
b. Maximum shaft power, *See* Pt 5, Ch 1, 3.3 Power ratings, P, in kW (H, in shp).
c. Estimated ship speed at design loaded draught in the free running condition at maximum shaft power and corresponding revolutions per minute, *See* Pt 5, Ch 7, 1.1 Details to be submitted 1.1.1.b and Pt 5, Ch 7, 1.1 Details to be submitted 1.1.1.d.
d. Revolutions per minute of the propeller at maximum power, R.
e. Propeller diameter, D, in metres.
f. Pitch at 25 per cent radius (for solid propellers only), $P_{0.25}$, in metres.
g. Pitch at 35 per cent radius (for controllable pitch propellers only), $P_{0.35}$, in metres.
h. Pitch at 60 per cent radius $P_{0.6}$, in metres.
i. Pitch at 70 per cent radius $P_{0.7}$, in metres.
j. Length of blade section of the expanded cylindrical section at 25 per cent radius (for solid propellers only), $L_{0.25}$, in mm.
k. Length of blade section of the expanded cylindrical section at 35 per cent radius (for controllable pitch propellers only) $L_{0.35}$, in mm.
l. Length of blade section of the expanded cylindrical section at 60 per cent radius, $L_{0.6}$, in mm.
m. Rake at blade tip measured at shaft axis (backward rake positive, forward rake negative), A, in mm.
n. Number of blades, N.
o. Developed area ratio, B.
p. Material: type and specified minimum tensile strength.
q. θ_s, skew angle, in degrees, *See* Figure 7. 1. 1: Definition of skew angle.
r. Connection of propeller to shaft — details of fit, push-up, securing, etc.

1. 1. 2 For propellers having a skew angle equal to or greater than 50°, in addition to the particulars detailed in Pt 5, Ch 7, 1.1, Details to be submitted 1.1.1, details are to be submitted of:

a. Full blade section details at each radial station defined for manufacture.
b. A detailed blade stress computation supported by the following hydrodynamic data for the ahead mean wake condition and when absorbing full power:
   i. Radial distribution of lift and drag coefficients, section inflow velocities and hydrodynamic pitch angles.
   ii. Section pressure distributions calculated by either an advised inviscid or viscous procedure.

Figure 7. 1. 1: Definition of skew angle



1. 1. 3 For blades of fixed pitch propellers with skew angle of 30° or greater, the stresses in the propeller blade during astern operation are not to exceed 80 per cent of the propeller blade material proof stress. Consideration is to be given to failure conditions and a factor of safety of 1.5 is to be attained using an acceptable fatigue failure criteria. Documentary evidence confirming that these criteria are satisfied is to be submitted.

1. 1. 4 The maximum skew angle of a propeller blade is defined as the angle, in projected view of the blade, between a line drawn through the blade tip and the shaft centreline and a second line through the shaft centreline which acts as a tangent to the locus of the mid-points of the helical blade sections, *See* Figure 7. 1. 1: Definition of skew angle.

1. 1. 5 Where propellers and similar devices of unusual design are intended for more than one operating regime, such as towing or trawling, then a detailed blade stress calculation for each operating condition, indicating the rotational and ship speed, is to be submitted for consideration.

1. 1. 6 Where it is proposed to fit the propeller to the screwshaft without the use of a key, plans of the boss, tapered end of screwshaft, propeller nut and, where applicable, the sleeve, are to be submitted.

1. 1. 7 Where a sleeve is fitted, details of the proposed type of material and mechanical properties are also to be submitted.

1. 1. 8 In cases where the ship has been the subject of model wake field tests, a copy of the results is to be submitted.

PART

5

CHAPTER **7** **Propellers**

SECTION **2** **Materials**

2. 1 Castings

2. 1. 1 Castings for propellers and propeller blades are to comply with the requirements of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials (hereinafter referred to as the Rules for Materials). The specified minimum tensile strength is to be not less than stated in Table 7. 2. 1: Materials for propellers.

2. 1. 2 Where it is proposed to use materials which are not included in Table 7. 2. 1: Materials for propellers, details of the chemical composition, mechanical properties and density are to be submitted for approval.

Table 7. 2. 1: Materials for propellers

Material	SI Units			Metric Units		
	Specified minimum tensile strength	*G* Density	*U* Allowable stress	Specified minimum tensile strength	*G* Density	*U* Allowable stress
	N/mm^2	g/cm^3	N/mm^2	kgf/mm^2	g/cm^3	kgf/mm^2
Grey cast iron	250	7.2	17.2	25	7.2	1.75
Spheroidal or nodular graphite cast iron	400	7.3	20.6	41	7.3	2.1
Carbon steels	400	7.9	20.6	41	7.9	2.1
Low alloy steels	440	7.9	20.6	45	7.9	2.1
13% chromium stainless steels	540	7.7	41	55	7.7	4.2
Chromium-nickel austenitic						
stainless steel	450	7.9	41	46	7.9	4.2
Duplex stainless steels	590	7.8	41	60	7.8	4.2
Grade Cu 1						
Manganese bronze (high tensile brass)	440	8.3	39	45	8.3	4.0
Grade Cu 2						

Ni-Manganese bronze (high tensile brass)	440	8.3	39	45	8.3	4.0
Grade Cu 3						
Ni-Aluminium bronze	590	7.6	56	60	7.6	5.7
Grade Cu 4						
Mn-Aluminium bronze	630	7.5	46	64	7.5	4.7

2. 1. 3 Spheroidal cast iron load transmitting components of controllable pitch mechanisms, are to be manufactured, tested and certified in accordance with Ch 7 Iron Castings of the Rules for Materials and have an elongation of not less than 12 per cent.

PART

5

CHAPTER **7** **Propellers**

SECTION **3** **Design**

3. 1 Minimum blade thickness

3. 1. 1 For propellers having a skew angle of 25° or less, as defined in Pt 5, Ch 7, 1.1 Details to be submitted 1.1.4, the minimum blade thickness, T, of the propeller blades at 25 per cent radius for solid propellers, 35 per cent radius for controllable pitch propellers, neglecting any increase due to fillets, and at 60 per cent radius, is to be not less than:

$$T = \frac{KCA}{EFULN} + 100\sqrt{\frac{3150MP}{EFRULN}} \text{ mm}$$

$$\left(T = \frac{KCA}{9.81EFULN} + 27.4\sqrt{\frac{3150MH}{EFRULN}} \text{ mm}\right)$$

where

L = $L_{0.25}$, $L_{0.35}$, or $L_{0.6}$, as appropriate

K = $\dfrac{GBD^3R^2}{675}$

G = density, in g/cm^3, *See* Table 7. 2. 1: Materials for propellers

U = allowable stress, in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2) *See* Pt 5, Ch 7, 3.1 Minimum blade thickness 3.1.2, Pt 5, Ch 7, 3.1 Minimum blade thickness 3.1.3, Pt 5, Ch 7, 3.1 Minimum blade thickness 3.1.4, and Table 7. 2. 1: Materials for propellers

E = $\dfrac{\text{actual face modulus}}{0.09T^2L}$

For aero foil sections with and without trailing edge washback, E may be taken as 1.0 and 1.25 respectively

$$\begin{cases} C = 1.0 \\ F = \dfrac{P_{0.25}}{D} + 0.8 \\ M = 1.0 + \dfrac{3.75D}{P_{0.7}} + 2.8\dfrac{P_{0.25}}{D} \end{cases}$$ for solid propellers at 25 per cent radius

$$\begin{cases} C = 1.4 \\ F = \dfrac{P_{0.35}}{D} + 1.6 \\ M = 1.35 + \dfrac{5D}{P_{0.7}} + 2.6\dfrac{P_{0.35}}{D} \end{cases}$$ for controllable pitch propellers at 35 per cent radius

$$\begin{cases} C = 1.6 \\ F = \dfrac{P_{0.6}}{D} + 4.5 \\ M = 1.35 + \dfrac{5D}{P_{0.7}} + 1.35\dfrac{P_{0.6}}{D} \end{cases}$$ for all propellers at 60 per cent radius

3. 1. 2 The fillet radius between the root of a blade and the boss of a propeller is to be not less than the Rule thickness of the blade or equivalent at this location. Composite radiused fillets or elliptical fillets which provide a greater effective radius to the blade are acceptable and are to be preferred. Where fillet radii of the required size cannot be provided, the value of

U is to be multiplied by $\left(\frac{r}{T}\right)^{0.2}$

where

r = proposed fillet radius at the root, in mm

T = Rule thickness of the blade at the root, in mm

Where a propeller has bolted-on blades, consideration is also to be given to the distribution of stress in the palms of the blades. In particular, the fillets of recessed bolt holes and the lands between bolt holes are not to induce stresses which exceed those permitted at the outer end of the fillet radius between the blade and the palm.

3. 1. 3 For propellers having skew angles of greater than 25°, but less than 50°, the mid-chord thickness, $T_{sk0.6}$, at the 60 per cent radius is to be not less than:

$$T_{sk0.6} = 0.54T_{0.6}\sqrt{1 + 0.1\,\theta_s}\ \text{mm}$$

The mid-chord thickness, $T_{sk\ root}$, at 25 or 35 per cent radius, neglecting any increase due to fillets, is to be not less than:

$$T_{sk\ root} = 0.75T_{root}\sqrt[4]{1 + 0.1\theta_s}\text{mm}$$

where

θ_s = proposed skew angle as defined in Pt 5, Ch 7, 1.1 Details to be submitted 1.1.4

$T_{0.6}$ = thickness at 60 per cent radius, calculated by Pt 5, Ch 7, 3.1 Minimum blade thickness 3.1.1, in mm

T_{root} = thickness at 25 per cent radius or 35 per cent radius, calculated by Pt 5, Ch 7, 3.1 Minimum blade thickness 3.1.1, in mm

The thicknesses at the remaining radii are to be joined by a fair curve and the sections are to be of suitable aerofoil section.

3. 1. 4 Results of detailed calculations where carried out, are to be submitted.

3. 1. 5 For cases where the composition of the propeller material is not specified in Table 7. 2. 1: Materials for propellers, or where propellers of the cast irons and carbon and low alloy steels shown in this Table are provided with an approved method of cathodic protection, special consideration will be given to the value of U.

3. 1. 6 The value U may be increased by 10 per cent for twin screw and outboard propellers of triple screw ships.

3. 1. 7 Where the design of a propeller has been based on analysis of reliable wake survey data in conjunction with a detailed fatigue analysis and is deemed to permit scantlings less than required by Pt 5, Ch 7, 3.1 Minimum blade thickness 3.1.1 or Pt 5, Ch 7, 3.1 Minimum blade thickness 3.1.3, a detailed stress computation for the blades is to be submitted for consideration.

3. 2 Keyless propellers

3. 2. 1 The symbols used in Pt 5, Ch 7, 3.2 Keyless propellers 3.2.2 (oil injection method of fitting) and Pt 5, Ch 7, 3.2 Keyless propellers 3.2.3 (dry fitting cast iron sleeve) are defined as follows:

d_1 = diameter of the screwshaft cone at the mid-length of the boss or sleeve, in mm

d_2 = outside diameter of the sleeve at its mid- length, in mm

d_3 = outside diameter of the boss at its mid-length, in mm

d_i = bore diameter of screwshaft, in mm

h = $\frac{2}{E_2}[\frac{1}{k_1^2-1}), k_1 = \frac{d_2}{d_1}, k_2 = \frac{d_3}{d_2}, k_3 = \frac{d_3}{d_1}, l = \frac{d_i}{d_1}$

p_1 = $\frac{2M}{A_1\theta_1V_1}(-1+\sqrt{1+V_1(\frac{F_1^2}{M^2}+1)})$

p_2 = $\frac{2M}{A_2\theta_2V_2}\left(-1+\sqrt{1+V_2(\frac{F_2^2}{M^2}+1)}\right)$

p_{10} = $\frac{2M}{A_1\theta_1V_1}\left(-1+\sqrt{1+V_1(\frac{F_{10}^2}{M^2}+1)}\right)$

p_{20} = $\frac{2M}{A_2\theta_2V_2}\left(-1+\sqrt{1+V_2(\frac{F_{20}^2}{M^2}+1)}\right)$

A_1 = contact area of fitting at screwshaft, in mm^2

A_2 = contact area of fitting at outside of sleeve, in mm^2

B_1 $\frac{1}{E_2}(\frac{k_1^2+1}{k_1^2-1}+v_2)+\frac{1}{E_1}(\frac{1+l^2}{1-l^2}-v_1)$

B_2 $\frac{1}{E_3}(\frac{k_2^2+1}{k_2^2-1}+v_3)+\frac{1}{E_2}(\frac{k_1^2+1}{k_1^2-1}-v_2)$

B_3 $\frac{1}{E_3}(\frac{k_3^2+1}{k_3^2-1}+v_3)+\frac{1}{E_1}(\frac{1+l^2}{1-l^2}-v_1)$

C = 0 for turbine installations

= $\frac{\text{vibratory torque at the maximum service speed}}{\text{mean torque at the maximum service speed}}$

for oil engine installations

E_1 = modulus of elasticity of screwshaft material, in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2)

E_2 = modulus of elasticity of sleeve material, in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2)

E_3 = modulus of elasticity of propeller material, in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2)

F_1 = $\frac{2Q}{d_1}(1+C)$

F_2 = $\frac{2Q}{d_2}(1+C)$

F_{10} = $\frac{2Q}{d_1}\left(1+C+\frac{I_f}{100}\right)$

F_{20} = $\frac{2Q}{d_2}\left(1+C+\frac{I_f}{100}\right)$

I_f = percentage increase for Ice Class 1D and 1E, obtained from Table 2. 5. 1: Increase for main engine shafting and propellers in Pt 8, Ch 2.5

M = propeller thrust, in N (kgf)

Q = mean torque corresponding to P (H) and R as defined in Pt 5, Ch 1, 3.3 Power ratings, in N mm (kgf mm)

T_1 = temperature at time of fitting propeller on shaft,in °C

T_2 = temperature at time of fitting sleeve into boss, in °C

V_1 = $0.51(\frac{\mu_1}{\theta_1})^2 - 1$

V_2 = $0.51(\frac{\mu_2}{\theta_2})^2 - 1$

Y = $B_1B_2 - h^2k_1^2$

α_1 = coefficient of linear expansion of screwshaft material, in mm/mm/°C

α_2 = coefficient of linear expansion of sleeve material, in mm/mm/°C

α_3 = coefficient of linear expansion of propeller material, in mm/mm/°C

θ_1 = taper of the screwshaft cone, but is not to exceed $l/15$ on the diameter, i.e. $\theta_1 \leq l/15$

θ_2 = taper of the outside of the sleeve

μ_1 = coefficient of friction for fitting of boss assembly on shaft

= 0.13 for oil injection method of fitting

μ_2 = coefficient of friction for fitting sleeve into the boss

ν_1 = Poisson's ratio for screwshaft material

ν_2 = Poisson's ratio for sleeve material

ν_3 = Poisson's ratio for propeller material

Consistent sets of units are to be used in all formulae.

3. 2. 2 Where it is proposed to fit a keyless propeller by the oil shrink method, the pull-up, δ on the screwshaft is to be not less than:

$$\delta_T = \frac{d_1}{\theta_1}(p_1 B_3 + (\alpha_3 - \alpha_1)(35 - T_1))\text{mm}$$

or, where Ice Class notation is required, the greater of δ_T or δ_O, where

$$\delta_O = \frac{d_1}{\theta_1}(p_{10} B_3 - (\alpha_3 - \alpha_1)T_1)\text{ mm}$$

The yield stress or 0.2 per cent proof stress, σ_o of the propeller material is to be not less than:

$$\sigma_o = \frac{1.4}{B_3}\left(\frac{\theta_1 \delta_p}{d_1} + T_1(\alpha_3 - \alpha_1)\right)\frac{\sqrt{3k_3^4 + 1}}{k_3^2 - 1}\text{N/mm}^2(\text{kgf/mm}^2)$$

where

δ_p = proposed pull-up at the fitting temperature

The start point load, *W*, to determine the actual pull-up is to be not less than:

$$W = A_1\left(0.002 + \frac{\theta_1}{20}\right)\left(p_1 + \frac{18}{B_3}(\alpha_3 - \alpha_1)\right)\text{N(kgf)}$$

3. 2. 3 Where a cast iron sleeve is first fitted to the bore of the propeller boss by an interference fit, the push-up load of the sleeve into the boss, W_2, is to be not less than:

$$W_{2T} = \frac{A_2}{B_2}\left(\mu_2 + \frac{\theta_2}{2}\right)\left(B_2 p_2 - h p_1 + (\alpha_3 - \alpha_2)(35 - T_2)\right)\text{N(kgf)}$$

or, where Ice Class notation is required, the greater of W_{2T} or W_{20}

where

$$W_{20} = \frac{A_2}{B_2}\left(\mu_2 + \frac{\theta_2}{2}\right)(B_2 p_{20} - h p_{10} - (\alpha_3 - \alpha_2)T_2)\text{ N(kgf)}$$

The pull-up of the sleeve in the boss at the fitting temperature is to be in accordance with the following formula:

$$\delta_2 = \frac{W_2 B_2 d_2}{A_2(\mu_2 + \frac{\theta_2}{2})\theta_2}\text{ mm}$$

The push-up load, W_1, of the combined boss and sleeve on a steel screwshaft is to be not less than:

$$W_{1T} = A_1\left(\mu_1 + \frac{\theta_1}{2}\right)\left(p_1 + \frac{hk_1^2}{Y}(\alpha_3 - \alpha_2)(35 - T_1)\right)\text{N(kgf)}$$

or where Ice Class notation is required, the greater of W_{1T} or W_{10} where

$$W_{10} = A_1\left(\mu_1 + \frac{\theta_1}{2}\right)\left(p_{10} - \frac{hk_1^2}{Y}(\alpha_3 - \alpha_2)T_1\right)\text{N(kgf)}$$

The push-up distance of the combined boss and sleeve on a steel screwshaft is to be in accordance with the following formula:

$$\delta_1 = \frac{W_1 d_1 Y}{A_1 B_2 \theta_1 (\mu_1 + \frac{\theta_1}{2})}\text{mm}$$

3. 2. 4 Where a cast iron sleeve is fitted into the boss by means of Araldite, the conditions are to satisfy those of Pt 5, Ch 7, 3.2 Keyless propellers 3.2.3 except that the value of W_2 is to be taken as equivalent to:

$$W_2 = A_2\left(0.25 + \frac{\theta_2}{2}\right)\left(P_A + \frac{(\alpha_3 - \alpha_2)(18 - T_2)}{B_2}\right)\text{N(kgf)}$$

where

P_A = 3.5 N/mm^2

P_A = 0.35 kgf/mm^2)

3. 2. 5 For the triple element keyless propeller, the yield stress or 0.2 per cent proof stress of the propeller material, σ_o is to be not less than:

$$\sigma_o = 1.4p_3\frac{\sqrt{3k_2^4 + 1}}{k_2^2 - 1}\text{N/mm}^2\text{(kgf/mm}^2\text{)}$$

Where

$$p_3 = \frac{W_1 h}{A_1 B_2\left(\mu_1 + \frac{\theta_1}{2}\right)} + \frac{W_2}{A_2\left(\mu_2 + \frac{\theta_2}{2}\right)} + \frac{\alpha_3 - \alpha_2}{B_2}\left(T_2 + \frac{h^2 k_1^2}{Y}T_1\right)$$

3. 2. 6 Where the sleeve is manufactured of material having an elongation in excess of five per cent, the yield point or 0.2 per cent proof stress of the sleeve material, σ_o is to be not less than:

$$\sigma_o = \frac{1.6}{k_1^2 - 1}\sqrt{3k_1^4(p_3 - p_5)^2 + (p_3 k_1^2 - p_5)^2}\ \text{N/mm}^2\text{(kgf/mm}^2\text{)}$$

Or

$$\sigma_o = \frac{1.6}{k_1^2 - 1}\sqrt{3k_1^4(p_4 - p_6)^2 + (p_4 k_1^2 - p_6)^2}\ \text{N/mm}^2\text{(kgf/mm}^2\text{)}$$

Where

$$p_4 = p_3 - \frac{35B_1}{Y}(\alpha_3 - \alpha_2)$$

$$p_5 = \frac{W_1}{A_1(\mu_1 + \frac{\theta_1}{2})} + \frac{hk_1^2}{Y}(\alpha_3 - \alpha_2)T_1$$

$$p_6 = p_5 - \frac{35hk_1^2}{Y}(a_3 - \alpha_2)$$

3. 2. 7 Where the sleeve is manufactured of material having an elongation not more than five per cent, the minimum specified ultimate tensile strength σ_u, based on the ruling section, is to be not less than:

$$\sigma_u = \frac{2.4}{k_1^2 - 1}\left(p_5\left(\frac{5k_1^2 + 3}{4}\right) - 2 \quad {}_3k_1^2\right) \text{N/mm}^2(\text{kgf/mm}^2)$$

Or

$$\sigma_u = \frac{2.4}{k_1^2 - 1}\left(p_6\left(\frac{5k_1^2 + 3}{4}\right) - 2p_4k_1^2\right) \text{N/mm}^2(\text{kgf/mm}^2)$$

3. 2. 8 Where it is proposed to use a sleeve manufactured from a material other than cast iron, full details are to be submitted for consideration.

PART

5

CHAPTER 7 **Propellers**

SECTION 4 **Fitting of propellers**

4. 1 Propeller boss

4. 1. 1 The propeller boss is to be a good fit on the screwshaft cone. The forward edge of the bore of the propeller boss is to be rounded to about a 6 mm radius. In the case of keyed propellers, the length of the forward fitting surface is to be about one diameter and where the fitting is by means of a hydraulic nut, the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 7, 4.2 Shop tests of keyless propellers and Pt 5, Ch 7, 4.3 Final fitting of keyless propellers where appropriate, are applicable.

4. 2 Shop tests of keyless propellers

4. 2. 1 The bedding of the propeller, or the sleeve where applicable with the shaft is to be demonstrated in the shop to the satisfaction of the Surveyors. Sufficient time is to be allowed for the temperature of the components to equalise before bedding. Alternative means for demonstrating the bedding of the propeller will be considered.

4. 2. 2 Means are to be provided to indicate the relative axial position of the propeller boss on the shaft taper.

4. 3 Final fitting of keyless propellers

4. 3. 1 After verifying that the propeller and shaft are at the same temperature and the mating surfaces are clean and free from oil or grease, the propeller is to be fitted on the shaft to the satisfaction of the Surveyors. The propeller nut is to be securely locked to the shaft.

4. 3. 2 Permanent reference marks are to be made on the propeller boss, nut and shaft to indicate angular and axial positioning of the propeller. Care is to be taken in marking the inboard end of the shaft taper to minimise stress raising effects.

4. 3. 3 The outside of the propeller boss is to be hard stamped with the following details:

a. For the oil injection method of fitting, the start point load and the axial pull-up at 0°C and 35°C.

b. For the dry fitting method, the push-up load at 0°C and 35°C.

4. 3. 4 A copy of the fitting curve relative to temperature and means for determining any subsequent movement are to be placed on board.

PART

5

CHAPTER 7 **Propellers**

SECTION 5 **Control and monitoring**

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 Control engineering systems are to be in accordance with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems.

5. 2 Unattended machinery

5. 2. 1 Where controllable pitch propellers are fitted with automatic or remote controls so that under normal operating conditions they do not require any manual intervention by the operators, they are to be provided with the alarms and safety arrangements required by Pt 5, Ch 7, 5.2 Unattended machinery to Pt 5, Ch 7, 5.3, Controllable pitch propellers and transverse thrust units, as appropriate. Alternative arrangements which provide equivalent safeguards will be considered.

5. 2. 2 Where machinery specified in this Section is required to be provided with a standby pump, the standby pump is to start automatically if the discharge pressure from the working pumps falls below a predetermined value.

5. 3 Controllable pitch propellers and transverse thrust units

5. 3. 1 Alarms and safeguards are indicated in Pt 5, Ch 7, 5.3 Controllable pitch propellers and transverse thrust units 5.3.2 to Pt 5, Ch 7, 5.3 Controllable pitch propellers and transverse thrust units 5.3.5 and Table 7. 5. 1: Controllable pitch propellers and transverse thrust units: Alarms and safeguards. For azimuth thrusters, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 20 Azimuth Thrusters.

Table 7. 5. 1: Controllable pitch propellers and transverse thrust units: Alarms and safeguards

Item	Alarm	Note
Hydraulic system pressure	Low	—
Hydraulic oil supply tank level	Low	—
Hydraulic oil temperature	High	Where an oil cooler is fitted
Power supply to the control system between the remote control station and hydraulic actuator	Failure	*See* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.5 Control systems, general requirements 2.5.2

5. 3. 2 For controllable pitch propellers for main propulsion, a standby or alternative power source of actuating medium for controlling the pitch of the propelling blades is to be provided. Automatic start of the standby pump supplying hydraulic power for pitch control is to be provided.

5. 3. 3 Controllable pitch propellers for main propulsion are to be provided with indications of shaft speed, direction and magnitude of thrust and propeller pitch as a measure of the propeller blade or actuator movement at each station from which it is possible to control shaft speed or propeller pitch.

5. 3. 4 Where transverse thrust units are remotely controlled, means are to be provided at the remote control station to stop the propulsion unit.

5. 3. 5 Transverse thrust units are to be provided with indications of direction and magnitude of thrust and propeller pitch at each station from which it is possible to control the propeller pitch.

PART

5

CHAPTER **8** **Shaft Vibration and Alignment**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**2188**
	1. 1	Basic requirements	2188
	1. 2	Resilient mountings	2188
	1. 3	Flexible couplings	2188
SECTION 2	**Torsional vibration**		**2189**
	2. 1	General	2189
	2. 2	Particulars to be submitted	2189
	2. 3	Scope of calculations	2190
	2. 4	Symbols and definitions	2190
	2. 5	Limiting stress in propulsion shafting	2192
	2. 6	Generator sets	2193
	2. 7	Other auxiliary machinery systems	2193
	2. 8	Other machinery components	2193
	2. 9	Measurements	2194
	2. 10	Vibration monitoring	2194
	2. 11	Restricted speed and/or power ranges	2194
	2. 12	Tachometer accuracy	2195
	2. 13	Governor control	2195
SECTION 3	**Axial vibration**		**2196**
	3. 1	General	2196
	3. 2	Particulars to be submitted	2196
	3. 3	Calculations	2196
	3. 4	Measurements	2197
	3. 5	Restricted speed ranges	2197
	3. 6	Vibration monitoring	2197
SECTION 4	**Lateral vibration**		**2198**

4. 1 General 2198
4. 2 Particulars to be submitted 2198
4. 3 Calculations 2198
4. 4 Measurements 2198
SECTION 5 Shaft alignment 2199
5. 1 General 2199
5. 2 Particulars to be submitted for approval – Shaft alignment calculations 2199
5. 3 Shaft alignment procedures 2200
5. 4 Design and installation criteria 2200
5. 5 Measurements 2201
5. 6 Flexible couplings 2201

PART

5

CHAPTER **8** **Shaft Vibration and Alignment**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 8. 2. 1: C_k factors 2191

PART

5

CHAPTER 8 Shaft Vibration and Alignment

SECTION Scope

The requirements of this Chapter are applicable to the following systems:

a. Main propulsion systems formed by oil engines, turbines or electric motors, directly driven or geared to the shafting.

b. Machinery driven at constant speed by oil engines, developing 110 kW and over, for essential auxiliary services including generator sets which are the source of power for main electric propulsion motors.

Unless otherwise advised, it is the responsibility of the Shipbuilder as main contractor to ensure, in co-operation with the Enginebuilders, that the information required by this Chapter is prepared and submitted.

PART

5

CHAPTER 8 **Shaft Vibration and Alignment**

SECTION 1 **General**

1. 1 Basic requirements

1. 1. 1 The systems are to be free from excessive torsional, axial, lateral and linear vibration, and are to be aligned in accordance with accepted tolerances and taking into account the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 8, 5.5 Measurements.

1. 1. 2 System designs are to take account of the potential effects of engine and component malfunction and variability in characteristic values such as stiffness and damping of flexible couplings and dampers or engine misfire conditions.

1. 1. 3 Where torques, stresses or amplitudes are found to exceed the limits for continuous operation, restrictions in speed and/or power will be imposed.

1. 1. 4 Where significant changes are subsequently made to a dynamic system which has been approved, (e.g. by changing the original design parameters of the prime movers and/or propulsion shafting system, or by fitting a propeller or flexible coupling of different design from the previous), revised calculations may require to be submitted for consideration. Details of all such changes are to be submitted.

1. 2 Resilient mountings

1. 2. 1 For resilient mountings, *See* Pt 5, Ch 1, 4.3, Resilient mountings.

1. 3 Flexible couplings

1. 3. 1 Where the shafting system incorporates flexible couplings, the effects of such couplings on the various modes of vibration are to be considered, *See* Pt 5, Ch 8, 2 Torsional vibration, Pt 5, Ch 8, 3 Axial vibration and Pt 5, Ch 8, 4 Lateral vibration.

PART

5

CHAPTER **8** **Shaft Vibration and Alignment**

SECTION **2** **Torsional vibration**

2. 1 General

2. 1. 1 In addition to the shafting complying with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 1 General Requirements for the Design and Construction of Machinery to Pt 5, Ch 7 Propellers and Pt 5, Ch 20 Azimuth Thrusters (where applicable), approval is also dependent on the torsional vibration characteristics of the complete shafting system(s) being found satisfactory.

2. 1. 2 Further to the Scope of this Chapter, the requirements of this Section are applicable:

a. to ships that are required to comply with the *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea* , as amended, (SOLAS); and

b. for all other ships where any one main engine has a power output exceeding 500 kW.

2. 2 Particulars to be submitted

2. 2. 1 Torsional vibration calculations, showing the mass elastic values, associated natural frequencies and an analysis of the vibratory torques and stresses for the full dynamic system.

2. 2. 2 Particulars of the division of power and utilisation, throughout the speed range, for turbines, multi-engine or other combined power installations, and those with power take-off systems. For multi-engined installations, special considerations associated with the possible variations in the mode of operation and phasing of engines.

2. 2. 3 Enginebuilder's harmonic torque data used in the torsional vibration calculations, *See* Pt 5, Ch 8, 2.3 Scope of calculations 2.3.3.

2. 2. 4 Details of operating conditions encountered in service for prolonged periods, e.g. idling speed, range of trawling revolutions per minute, combinator characteristics for installations equipped with controllable pitch propellers.

2. 2. 5 Details, obtained from the manufacturers, of the principal characteristics of machinery components such as dampers and couplings, confirming their capability to withstand the effects of vibratory loading including, where appropriate, heat dissipation. Evidence that the data which is used to represent the characteristics of components, which has been quoted from other sources, is supported by a programme of physical measurement and control.

2. 2. 6 Where installations include electric motors, generators or non-integral pumps, drawings showing the principal dimensions of the shaft, together with manufacturer's estimates of mass moment of inertia for the rotating parts.

2. 2. 7 Details of vibration or performance monitoring proposals where required.

2. 3 Scope of calculations

2. 3. 1 Calculations are to be carried out, by recognised techniques, for the full dynamic system formed by the engines, turbines, motors, generators, flexible couplings, gearing, shafting and propeller, where applicable, including all branches.

2. 3. 2 Calculations are to give due consideration to the potential deviation in values used to represent component characteristics due to manufacturing/service variability.

2. 3. 3 The calculations carried out on engine systems are to be based on the Enginebuilders' harmonic torque data. The calculations are to take account of the effects of engine malfunctions commonly experienced in service, such as a cylinder not firing (i.e. no injection but with compression) giving rise to the highest torsional vibration stresses in the shafting. Calculations are also to take account of a degree of imbalance between cylinders, which is characteristic of the normal operation of an engine under service conditions.

2. 3. 4 Whilst limits for torsional vibration stress in crankshafts are no longer stated explicitly, calculations are to include estimates of crankshaft stress at all designated operating/service speeds, as well as at any major critical speed.

2. 3. 5 Calculations are to take into account the possible effects of excitation from propeller rotation. Where the system shows some sensitivity to this phenomenon, propeller excitation data for the installation should be used as a basis for calculation, and submitted.

2. 3. 6 Where the torsional stiffness of flexible couplings varies with torque, frequency or speed, calculations should be representative of the appropriate range of effective dynamic stiffness.

2. 4 Symbols and definitions

2. 4. 1 The symbols used in this Section are defined as follows:

d = minimum diameter of shaft considered, in mm

d_i = diameter of internal bore, in mm

k = the factor used in determining minimum shaft diameter, defined in Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.1 Intermediate shafts 3.1.1 and Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.5 Screwshafts and tube shafts

r = ratio N/N_s or N_c/N_s whichever is applicable

C_d = a size factor defined as $0.35 + 0.93d^{-0.2}$

C_k = a factor for different shaft design features, *See* Table 8. 2. 1: Ck factors

N = engine speed, in rev/min

N_c = critical speed, in rev/min

N_s = maximum continuous engine speed, in rev/min, or, in the case of constant speed generating sets, the full load speed, in rev/min

Q_s = rated full load mean torque

σ_u = specified minimum tensile strength of the shaft material, in N/mm^2

τ_c = permissible stress due to torsional vibrations for continuous operation, in N/mm^2

τ_t = permissible stress due to torsional vibrations for transient operation, in N/mm^2

e = slot width, in mm

l = slot length, in mm.

2. 4. 2 Alternating torsional vibration stresses are to be based on half-range amplitudes of stress resulting from the alternating torque (which is superimposed on the mean torque) representing the synthesis of all harmonic orders present.

Table 8. 2. 1: C_k factors

Intermediate shafts with	
Integral coupling flange and straight sections	1.0
Shrink fit coupling	1.0
Keyway, tapered connection	0.60
Keyway, cylindrical connection	0.45
Radial hole	0.50
Longitudinal slot	0.30 (*See* Pt 5, Ch 8, 2.4 Symbols and definitions 2.4.4)
Thrust shafts external to engines	
On both sides of thrust collar	0.85
In way of axial bearing where a roller bearing is used as a thrust bearing	0.85
Propeller shafts	
Flange mounted or keyless taper fitted propellers	0.55
Key fitted propellers	0.55
Between forward end of aft most bearing and forward sterntube seal	0.80
Note The determination of C_k – factors for shafts other than shown in this Table will be specially considered by ACS.	

2. 4. 3 All vibration stress limits relate to the synthesis or measurement of total nominal torsional stress and are to be based on the plain section of the shafting neglecting stress raisers.

2. 4. 4 For a longitudinal slot C_k=0.3 is applicable within the dimension limitations given in Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.1 Intermediate shafts 3.1.6. If the slot dimensions are outside these limitations, or if the use of another C_k is desired, the actual stress concentration factor (*scf*) is to be documented or determined from Pt 5, Ch 8, 2.4 Symbols and definitions 2.4.5 or by direct application of FE calculation , in which case:

$$C_k = \frac{1.45}{scf}$$

Note that the *scf* is defined as the ratio between the maximum local principal stress and $\sqrt{3}$ times the nominal torsional stress (determined for the bored shaft without slots).

2. 4. 5 **Stress concentration factor of slots.** The stress concentration factor (*scf*) at the ends of slots can be determined by means of the following empirical formulae:

$$scf = \alpha_{t(hole)} + 0.8\frac{\frac{(l-e)}{d}}{\sqrt{\left(1-\frac{d_i}{d}\right)\frac{e}{d}}}$$

This formula applies to:

- Slots at 120 or 180 or 360 degrees apart.
- Slots with semicircular ends. A multi-radii slot end can reduce the local stresses, but this is not included in this empirical formula.
- Slots with no edge rounding (except chamfering), as any edge rounding increases the *scf* slightly.

$\alpha_{t(hole)}$ represents the stress concentration of radial holes and can be determined as:

$$\alpha_{t(hole)} = 2.3 - 3\frac{e}{d} + 15\left(\frac{e}{d}\right)^2 + 10\left(\frac{e}{d}\right)^2\left(\frac{d_i}{d}\right)^2$$

where, in this context, *e*=hole diameter, in mm (this is independent of slot width)
or simplified to $\alpha_{t(hole)}$=2.3.

2. 5 Limiting stress in propulsion shafting

2. 5. 1 The following stress limits apply to intermediate shafts, thrust shafts and to screwshafts fully protected from sea water. For screwshafts, the limits apply to the minimum sections of the portions of the screwshaft as defined in Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.5, Screwshafts and tube shafts.

2. 5. 2 In the case of unprotected screwshafts, special consideration will be given.

2. 5. 3 In no part of the propulsion shafting system may the alternating torsional vibration stresses exceed the values of τ_c for continuous operation, and τ_t for transient running, given by the following formulae:

For $r < 0.9$:

$$\tau_c = \frac{\sigma_u + 160}{18} C_k C_d (3 - 2r^2) \text{ N/mm}^2$$

And where $r < 0.8$:

$$\tau_t = \pm 1.7 \tau_c \frac{1}{\sqrt{C_k}} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

For $0.9 \leq r \leq 1.05$:

$$\tau_c = \frac{\sigma_u + 160}{18} C_k C_d 1.38 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

2. 5. 4 In general, the tensile strength of the steel used is to comply with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 6, 2 Materials. For the calculation of the permissible limits of stresses due to torsional vibration, σ_u is not to be taken as more than 800 N/mm^2 in the case of alloy steel intermediate shafts, or 600 N/mm^2 in the case of carbon and carbon-manganese steel intermediate, thrust and propeller shafts unless, for intermediate shafts only, it is verified that the materials exhibit a similar fatigue life to conventional steels through compliance with the requirements in Pt 5, Ch 6, 5 Approval of alloy steel used for intermediate shaft material.

2. 5. 5 Where the scantlings of coupling bolts and straight shafting differ from the minimum required by the Rules, special consideration will be given.

2. 6 Generator sets

2. 6. 1 Natural frequencies of the complete set are to be sufficiently removed from the firing impulse frequency at the full load speed, particularly where flexible couplings are interposed between the engine and generator.

2. 6. 2 Within the speed limits of $0.95N_s$ and $1.05N_s$ the vibration stresses in the transmission shafting are not to exceed the values given by the following formula:

$$\tau_c = \pm (21 - 0.014d) \text{ N/mm}^2.$$

2. 6. 3 Vibration stresses in the transmission shafting due to critical speeds which have to be passed through in starting and stopping, are not to exceed the values given by the following formula:

$$\tau_t = 5.5\tau_c.$$

2. 6. 4 The amplitudes of the total vibratory inertia torques imposed on the generator rotors are to be limited to $\pm$ 2.0 Q_s in general, or to $\pm$ 2.5Q_s for close-coupled revolving field alternating current generators, over the speed range from $0.95N_s$ to $1.05N_s$. Below $0.95N_s$ the amplitudes are to be limited to $\pm$ 6.0Q_s. Where two or more generators are driven from one engine, each generator is to be considered separately in relation to its own rated torque.

2. 6. 5 The rotor shaft and structure are to be designed to withstand these magnitudes of vibratory torque. Where it can be shown that they are capable of withstanding a higher vibratory torque, special consideration will be given.

2. 6. 6 In addition to withstanding the vibratory conditions over the speed range from $0.95N_s$ to $1.05N_s$, flexible couplings, if fitted, are to be capable of withstanding the vibratory torques and twists arising from transient criticals and short-circuit currents.

2. 6. 7 In the case of alternating current generators, resultant vibratory amplitudes at the rotor are not to exceed $\pm$ 3.5 electrical degrees under both full load working conditions and the malfunction condition mentioned in Pt 5, Ch 8, 2.3 Scope of calculations 2.3.3.

2. 7 Other auxiliary machinery systems

2. 7. 1 The relevant requirements of Pt 5, Ch 8, 2.6 Generator sets 2.6.1, Pt 5, Ch 8, 2.6 Generator sets 2.6.2 and Pt 5, Ch 8, 2.6 Generator sets 2.6.3 are also applicable to other machinery installations such as pumps or compressors with the speed limits being taken as $0.95N_s$ to $1.10N_s$.

2. 8 Other machinery components

2. 8. 1 **Torsional vibration dampers.** The use of dampers or detuners to limit vibratory stress due to resonances which occur within the range between $0.85N_s$ and $1.05N_s$ are to be considered. If fitted, these should be of a type which makes adequate provision for dissipation of heat. Where necessary, performance monitoring may be required.

2. 8. 2 **Flexible couplings:**

a. Flexible couplings included in an installation are to be capable of transmitting the mean and vibratory loads without exceeding the makers' recommended limits for angular amplitude or heat dissipation.

b. Where calculations indicate that the limits recommended by the manufacturer may be exceeded under misfiring conditions, a suitable means is to be provided for detecting and indicating misfiring. Under these circumstances power and/or speed restrictions may be required. Where machinery is non-essential, disconnection of the branch containing the coupling would be an acceptable action in the event of misfiring.

2. 8. 3 **Gearing:**

a. The torsional vibration characteristics are to comply with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 8, 2.3, Scope of calculations. The sum of the mean and of the vibratory torque should not exceed four-thirds of the full transmission torque, at MCR, throughout the speed range. In cases where the proposed transmission torque loading on the gear teeth is less than the maximum allowable, special consideration will be given to the acceptance of additional vibratory loading on the gears.
b. Where calculations indicate the possibility of torque reversal, the operating speed range is to be determined on the basis of observations during sea trials.

2. 9 Measurements

2. 9. 1 Where calculations indicate that the limits for torsional vibration within the range of working speeds are exceeded, measurements, using an appropriate technique, may be taken from the machinery installation for the purpose of approval of torsional vibration characteristics, or determining the need for restricted speed ranges, and the confirmation of their limits.

2. 9. 2 Where differences between calculated and measured levels of stress, torque or angular amplitude arise, the stress limits are to be applied to the stresses measured on the completed installation.

2. 9. 3 The method of measurement is to be appropriate to the machinery components and the parameters which are of concern. Where shaft stresses have been estimated from angular amplitude measurements, and are found to be close to limiting stresses as defined in Pt 5, Ch 8, 2.5 Limiting stress in propulsion shafting, strain gauge techniques may be required. When measurements are required, detailed proposals are to be submitted.

2. 10 Vibration monitoring

2. 10. 1 Where calculations and/or measurements have indicated the possibility of excessive vibratory stresses, torques or angular amplitudes in the event of a malfunction, vibration or performance monitoring, directly or indirectly, may be required.

2. 11 Restricted speed and/or power ranges

2. 11. 1 Restricted speed and/or power ranges will be imposed to cover all speeds where the stresses exceed the limiting values, τ_c, for continuous running, including one cylinder misfiring conditions if intended to be continuously operated under such conditions. For controllable pitch propellers with the possibility of individual pitch and speed control, both full and zero pitch conditions are to be considered. Similar restrictions will be imposed, or other protective measures required to be taken, where vibratory torques or amplitudes are considered to be excessive for particular machinery items. At each end of the restricted speed range the engine is to be stable in operation.

2. 11. 2 The restricted speed range is to take account of the tachometer speed tolerances at the barred speeds.

2. 11. 3 Critical responses which give rise to speed restrictions are to be arranged sufficiently removed from the maximum revolutions per minute to ensure that, in general, at $r = 0.8$ the stress due to the upper flank does not exceed τ_c.

2. 11. 4 Provided that the stress amplitudes due to a torsional critical response at the borders of the barred speed range are less than τ_c under normal and stable operating conditions the speed restriction derived from the following formula may be applied:

$$\frac{16}{18-r}N_c \text{ to } \frac{18-r}{16}N_c \quad \text{inclusive.}$$

2. 11. 5 Where calculated vibration stresses due to criticals below $0.8N_s$ marginally exceed τ_c or where the critical speeds are sharply tuned, the range of revolutions restricted for continuous operation may be reduced.

2. 11. 6 In cases where the resonance curve of a critical speed has been derived from measurements, the range of revolutions to be avoided for continuous running may be taken as that over which the measured vibration stresses are in excess of τ_c, having regard to the tachometer accuracy.

2. 11. 7 Where restricted speed ranges under normal operating conditions are imposed, notice boards are to be fitted at the control stations stating that the engine is not to be run continuously between the speed limits obtained as above, and the engine tachometers are to be marked accordingly.

2. 11. 8 Where vibration stresses approach the limiting value τ_t, the range of revolutions restricted for continuous operation may be extended. The notice boards are to indicate that this range must be passed through rapidly.

2. 11. 9 For excessive vibratory torque, stress or amplitude in other components, based on Pt 5, Ch 8, 2.8 Other machinery components 2.8.1 to Pt 5, Ch 8, 2.8 Other machinery components 2.8.3, the limits of any speed/power restriction are to be such as to maintain acceptable levels during continuous operation.

2. 11. 10 Where the restrictions are imposed for the contingency of an engine malfunction or component failure, the limits are to be entered in the machinery Operating Manual.

2. 11. 11 Restricted speed ranges in one-cylinder misfiring conditions on ships with single engine propulsion are to enable safe navigation whereby sufficient propulsion power is available to maintain control of the ship.

2. 11. 12 There are to be no restricted speed ranges imposed above a speed ratio of r = 0.8 under normal operating conditions.

2. 12 Tachometer accuracy

2. 12. 1 Where restricted speed ranges are imposed as a condition of approval, the tachometer accuracy is to be checked against the counter readings, or by equivalent means, in the presence of the Surveyors to verify that it reads correctly within ± 2 per cent in way of the restricted range of revolutions.

2. 13 Governor control

2. 13. 1 Where there is a significant critical response above and close to the maximum service speed, consideration is to be given to the effect of temporary overspeed.

PART

5

CHAPTER **8** **Shaft Vibration and Alignment**

SECTION **3** **Axial vibration**

3. 1 General

3. 1. 1 For all main propulsion shafting systems, the Shipbuilders are to ensure that axial vibration amplitudes are satisfactory throughout the speed range. Where natural frequency calculations indicate significant axial vibration responses, sufficiently wide restricted speed ranges will be imposed. Alternatively, measurements may be used to determine the speed ranges at which amplitudes are excessive for continuous running.

3. 2 Particulars to be submitted

3. 2. 1 The results of calculations, together with recommendations for any speed restrictions found necessary.

3. 2. 2 Enginebuilder's recommendation for axial vibration amplitude limits at the non-driving end of the crankshaft or at the thrust collar.

3. 2. 3 Estimate of flexibility of the thrust bearing and its supporting structure.

3. 2. 4 The requirement for calculations to be submitted may be waived upon request provided evidence of satisfactory service experience of similar dynamic installations is submitted.

3. 3 Calculations

3. 3. 1 Calculations of axial vibration natural frequency are to be carried out using appropriate techniques, taking into account the effects of flexibility of the thrust bearing, for shaft systems where the propeller is:

a. Driven directly by a reciprocating internal combustion engine.

b. Driven via gears, or directly by an electric motor, and where the total length of shaft between propeller and thrust bearing is in excess of 60 times the intermediate shaft diameter.

3. 3. 2 Where an axial vibration damper is fitted, the calculations are to consider the effect of a malfunction of the damper.

3. 3. 3 For those systems as defined in Pt 5, Ch 8, 3.3 Calculations 3.3.1.b the propeller speed at which the critical frequency occurs may be estimated using the following formula:

$$\frac{0.98}{N}\left(\frac{ab}{a+b}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \quad \text{rev/min}$$

where

a = $\frac{E}{Gl^2}(66.2 + 97.5A - 8.88A^2)^2$ $(\mathrm{C/min})^2$

b = $91.2\frac{k}{M_e}(\mathrm{c/min})^2$

d = internal diameter of shaft, in mm

k = estimated stiffness at thrust block bearing, in N/m

l = length of shaft line between propeller and thrust bearing, in mm

m = mass of shaft line considered, in kg

= $0.785(D^2 - d^2)Gl$

A = $\frac{m}{M}$

D = outside diameter of shaft, taken as an average over length l, in mm

E = modulus of elasticity of shaft material, in N/mm^2

G = density of shaft material, in kg/mm^3

M = dry mass of propeller, in kg

M_e = $M(A + 2)$

N = number of propeller blades

Where the results of this method indicate the possibility of an axial vibration resonance in the vicinity of the maximum service speed, calculations using a more accurate method will be required.

3. 4 Measurements

3. 4. 1 Where calculations indicate the possibility of excessive axial vibration amplitudes within the range of working speeds under normal or malfunction conditions, measurements are required to be taken from the shafting system for the purpose of determining the need for restricted speed ranges.

3. 5 Restricted speed ranges

3. 5. 1 The limits of any speed restriction are to be such as to maintain axial amplitudes within recommended levels during continuous operation.

3. 5. 2 Limits of speed restriction, where required, may be determined by calculation or on the basis of measurement.

3. 5. 3 Where a speed restriction is imposed for the contingency of a damper malfunction, the speed limits are to be entered in the machinery Operating Manual and regular monitoring of the axial vibration amplitude is required. Details of proposals for monitoring are to be submitted.

3. 6 Vibration monitoring

3. 6. 1 Where a vibration monitoring system is to be specified, details of proposals are to be submitted.

PART

5

CHAPTER **8** **Shaft Vibration and Alignment**

SECTION **4** **Lateral vibration**

4. 1 General

4. 1. 1 For all main propulsion shafting systems, the Shipbuilders are to ensure that lateral vibration characteristics are satisfactory throughout the speed range.

4. 2 Particulars to be submitted

4. 2. 1 Calculations of the lateral vibration characteristics of shafting systems having supports outboard of the hull or incorporating cardan shafts are to be submitted.

4. 3 Calculations

4. 3. 1 The calculations in Pt 5, Ch 8, 4.2 Particulars to be submitted 4.2.1, taking account of bearing, oil-film (where applicable) and structural dynamic stiffnesses, are to investigate the excitation frequencies giving rise to all critical speeds which may result in significant amplitudes within the speed range, and are to indicate relative deflections and bending moments throughout the shafting system.

4. 3. 2 The calculated natural frequencies of the system are to be compared to both the shaft rotational orders and propeller blade passing frequencies. Where cardan shafts are fitted, the shaft second rotational orders are also to be considered.

4. 3. 3 Requirements for calculations may be waived upon request provided evidence of satisfactory service experience of similar dynamic installations is submitted.

4. 4 Measurements

4. 4. 1 Where calculations indicate the possibility of significant lateral vibration responses within the range of ± 20 per cent of M.C.R. speed, measurements using an appropriate recognised technique may be required to be taken from the shafting system for the purpose of determining the need for restricted speed ranges.

4. 4. 2 The method of measurement is to be appropriate to the machinery arrangement and the modes of vibration which are of concern. When measurements are required, detailed proposals are to be submitted in advance.

PART

5

CHAPTER **8** **Shaft Vibration and Alignment**

SECTION **5** **Shaft alignment**

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 Shaft alignment calculations are to be carried out for main propulsion shafting rotating at propeller speed, including the crankshaft of direct drive systems or the final reduction gear wheel on geared installations. The Builder is to make available shaft alignment procedures detailing the proposed alignment method and checks for these arrangements.

5. 2 Particulars to be submitted for approval – Shaft alignment calculations

5. 2. 1 Shaft alignment calculations are to be submitted to ACS for approval for the following shafting systems:

a. All geared installations, where the screwshaft has a diameter of 300 mm or greater in way of the aftmost bearing.
b. All geared installations with multiple input/single output, regardless of shaft diameter.
c. All direct drive installations which incorporate three or fewer bearings supporting the intermediate and screwshaft aft of the prime mover.
d. Where prime movers in a direct drive installation or shaftline bearings are installed on resilient mountings.
e. All systems where the screwshaft has a diameter of 800 mm or greater in way of the aftmost bearing.

5. 2. 2 The shaft alignment calculations are to take into account the:

a. thermal displacements of the bearings between cold static and hot dynamic machinery conditions;
b. buoyancy effect of the propeller immersion due to the ship's operating draughts;
c. effect of predicted hull deformations over the range of the ship's operating draughts, where known;
d. effect of filling the aft peak ballast tank upon the bearing loads, where known;
e. gear forces, where appropriate, due to prime-mover engagement on multiple input/single output installations. For multiple input systems, consideration is to be given to each possible combination of inputs;
f. propeller offset thrust effects;
g. maximum allowed bearing weardown, for water or grease-lubricated sterntube bearings, and its effect on the bearing loads.

5. 2. 3 The shaft alignment calculations are to state the:

a. expected bearing loads at light and normal ballast, fully loaded and any other draughts deemed to be part of the ship's operating profile, for the machinery in cold and hot, static and dynamic conditions;
b. bearing influence coefficients and the deflection, slope, bending moment and shear force along the shaftline;
c. details of propeller offset thrust;
d. details of proposed slope-bore of the aftermost sterntube bearing, where applicable;
e. manufacturer's specified limits for bending moment and shear force at the shaft couplings of the gearbox/prime movers;
f. estimated bearing weardown rates for water or grease-lubricated sterntube bearings;
g. expected hull deformation effects and their origin, *viz*. whether finite element calculations or measured results from sister or similar ships have been used;
h. anticipated thermal rise of prime movers and gearing units between cold static and hot running conditions; and
i. manufacturer's allowable bearing loads.

5. 3 Shaft alignment procedures

5. 3. 1 A shaft alignment procedure is to be made available for review and for the information of the attending surveyors for all main propulsion installations detailing, as a minimum,

a. expected bearing loads at light and normal ballast, fully loaded and any other draughts deemed to be part of the ship's operating profile, for the machinery in cold and hot, static and dynamic conditions;
b. maximum permissible loads for the proposed bearing designs;
c. design bearing offsets from the straight line;
d. design gaps and sags;
e. location and loads for the temporary shaft supports;
f. expected relative slope of the shaft and the bearing in the aftermost sterntube bearing;
g. details of slope-bore of the aftermost sterntube bearing, where applied;
h. proposed bearing load measurement technique and its estimated accuracy;
i. jack correction factors for each bearing where the bearing load is measured using a specified jacking technique;
j. proposed shaft alignment acceptance criteria, including the tolerances; and
k. flexible coupling alignment criteria.

5. 4 Design and installation criteria

5. 4. 1 For main propulsion installations, the shafting is to be aligned to give, in all conditions of ship loading and machinery operation, bearing load distribution satisfying the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 8, 5.4 Design and installation criteria 5.4.2.

5. 4. 2 Design and installation of the shafting is to satisfy the following criteria:

a. The Builder is to position the bearings and construct the bearing seatings to minimise the effects of hull deflections under any of the ship's operating conditions with the aim of optimising the bearing load distribution.
b. Relative slope between the propeller shaft and the aftermost sterntube bearing is, in general, not to exceed 3 x 10^{-4} rad in the static condition..
c. Sterntube bearing loads are to satisfy the requirements of Ch 6.3.12.
d. Evidence is to be provided to ACS demonstrating that bearings of synthetic material have been verified as being within the tolerance stated by the bearing manufacturer for diameter, ovality, and straightness after installation.

e. Bearings of synthetic material are to be verified as being within tolerance for ovalilty and straightness, circumferentially and longitudinally, after installation.
f. The sterntube forward bearing static load is to be sufficient to prevent unloading in all static and dynamic operating conditions, including the transient conditions experienced during manoeuvring turns and during operation in heavy weather.
g. Intermediate shaft bearings' loads are not to exceed 80 per cent of the bearing manufacturer's allowable maximum load, for plain journal bearings, based on the bearing projected area.
h. Equipment manufacturer’s bearing loads are to be within the manufacturer's specified limits, i.e. prime movers, gearing.
i. Resulting shear forces and bending moments are to meet the equipment manufacturer's specified coupling conditions.
j. The manufacturer's radial, axial and angular alignment limits for the flexible couplings are to be maintained.

5. 5 Measurements

5. 5. 1 The system bearing load measurements are to be carried out to verify that the design loads have been achieved. In general the measurements will be carried out by the jack-up measurement technique using calibrated equipment.

5. 5. 2 For the first vessel of a new design an agreed programme of static shaft alignment measurements is to be carried out in order to verify that the shafting has been installed in accordance with the design assumptions and to verify the design assumptions in respect of the hull deflections and the effects of machinery temperature changes. The programme is to include static bearing load measurements in a number of selected conditions. Depending on the ship type and the operational loading conditions that are achievable prior to and during sea trials these should include, where practicable, combinations of light ballast cold, full ballast cold, full ballast hot and full draught hot with aft peak tank empty and full.

5. 5. 3 For vessels of an existing design or similar to an existing design where evidence of satisfactory service experience is submitted for consideration and for subsequent ships in a series a reduced set of measurements may be accepted. In such cases the minimum set of measurements is to be sufficient to verify that the shafting has been installed in accordance with the design assumptions and are to include at least one cold and one hot representative condition.

5. 5. 4 Where calculations indicate that the system is sensitive to changes in alignment under different service conditions, the shaft alignment is to be verified by measurements during sea trials using an approved strain gauge technique.

5. 6 Flexible couplings

5. 6. 1 Where the shafting system incorporates flexible couplings, the effects of such couplings on the various modes of vibration are to be considered, *See* Pt 5, Ch 8, 2 Torsional vibration, Pt 5, Ch 8, 3 Axial vibration and Pt 5, Ch 8, 4 Lateral vibration.

PART

5

CHAPTER **9** **Podded Propulsion Units**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**Scope**		**2206**
	1. 1	General	2206
SECTION 2	**General requirements**		**2208**
	2. 1	Pod arrangement	2208
	2. 2	Plans and information to be submitted	2208
	2. 3	Pod internal atmospheric conditions	2210
	2. 4	Global loads	2210
	2. 5	Failure Modes and Effects Analysis (FMEA)	2211
	2. 6	Ice Class requirements	2212
	2. 7	Condition Monitoring	2212
SECTION 3	**Materials**		**2213**
	3. 1	General	2213
SECTION 4	**Structure design and construction requirements**		**2214**
	4. 1	Pod structure	2214
	4. 2	Hull support structure	2215
	4. 3	Direct calculations	2217
SECTION 5	**Machinery design and construction requirements**		**2218**
	5. 1	General	2218
	5. 2	Gearing	2218
	5. 3	Propulsion shafting	2218
	5. 4	Propeller	2220
	5. 5	Bearing lubrication system	2220
	5. 6	Steering system	2220
	5. 7	Ventilation and cooling systems	2222
	5. 8	Pod drainage requirements	2222
	5. 9	Hydraulic actuating systems	2223

SECTION 6 Electrical equipment 2224
6. 1 General 2224
6. 2 Slip ring assemblies 2224
SECTION 7 Control engineering systems 2226
7. 1 General 2226
7. 2 Monitoring and alarms 2227
SECTION 8 Testing and trials 2229
8. 1 General 2229
SECTION 9 Installation, maintenance and replacement procedures 2230
9. 1 General 2230

PART

5

CHAPTER 9 Podded Propulsion Units

LIST OF TABLES

Table 9. 4. 1: Podded propulsion unit – Fabricated structure requirements 2214
Table 9. 4. 2: Direct calculation maximum permissible stresses for steel fabricated structures 2216
Table 9. 7. 1: Additional alarms and safeguards for podded propulsion units 2227

PART

5

CHAPTER 9 Podded Propulsion Units

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 9. 1. 1: Podded propulsion unit 2207
Figure 9. 2. 1: Pod co-ordinate system 2210
Figure 9. 4. 1: Hull support structure 2216

PART

5

CHAPTER **9** **Podded Propulsion Units**

SECTION **1** **Scope**

1. 1 General

1. 1. 1 This Chapter applies to podded propulsion units where used for propulsion, dynamic positioning duty or as the sole means of steering.

1. 1. 2 For the purposes of these Rules, a podded propulsion unit is any propulsion or manoeuvring device that is external to the normal form of the ship's hull and houses a propeller powering device.

1. 1. 3 The requirements of this Chapter relate to podded propulsion units powered by electric propulsion motors, (and are in addition to the requirements for Electric Propulsion in Pt 6, Ch 2, 16 Electric propulsion and other relevant Sections). Podded propulsion units with other drive arrangements will be subject to individual consideration.

1. 1. 4 The structural requirements stated in Pt 5, Ch 9, 4.1, Pod structure, Pt 5, Ch 9, 4.2, Hull support structure and Pt 5, Ch 9, 4.3, Direct calculations relate to podded propulsion units having a pod body with single supporting strut with or without an integral slewing ring arrangement, *See* Figure 9. 1. 1: Podded propulsion unit. Novel and unconventional arrangements will be subject to individual consideration. In such cases, the designers are advised to contact ACS in the early stages of the design for advice on the manner and content of design information required for formal classification appraisal.

1. 1. 5 The aft end structures associated with podded installations are to be examined with respect to potential slamming, *See* Pt 4, Ch 2 Ferries, Roll On-Roll Off Ships and Passenger Ships.

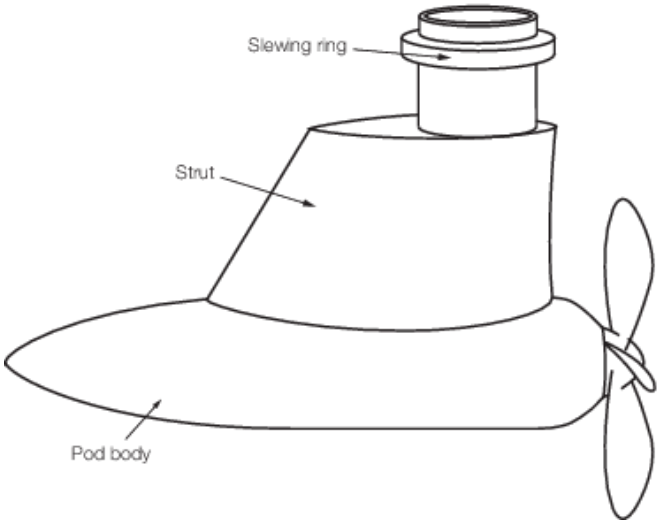
1. 1. 6 It is the shipbuilder's responsibility to ensure that all installed equipment is suitable for operation in the location and under all anticipated environmental conditions associated with the design of the ship which is to include temperature, humidity, vibration and impulsive accelerations.

1. 1. 7 The design of a podded propulsor system is to take into account a range of operating conditions which are to include the following:

- All ahead seagoing conditions up to and including the maximum rated output of the podded propulsor while maintaining a steady course under fore*See*able sea and wind conditions.
- The ability of the ship to change direction rapidly at the declared steering angles with the ship running at maximum ahead service speed.
- Executing a steady turning manoeuvre with a tactical diameter not greater than 5L and advance not greater than 4.5L whilst maintaining a power corresponding to the test speed, where L is the length measured between the aft and forward perpendiculars. Test speed is defined as a speed of at least 90 per cent of the ship's speed corresponding to 85 per cent of the maximum rated power of the podded propulsor.
- Changing heading, manoeuvring in and out of harbour both ahead and astern, at slow speeds, stationary and starting from rest in fore*See*able current and wind conditions.

- Berthing manoeuvres in the case of azimuthing podded propulsion units.
- Rapid acceleration and deceleration manoeuvres where the ship's operating profile demands this capability.
- Holding stationary positions over-ground under different conditions.
- Stopping manoeuvre as required by Pt 5, Ch 1, 5.2, Sea trials.
- Manoeuvring in ice where ice class is required.

Figure 9. 1. 1: Podded propulsion unit



PART

5

CHAPTER **9** **Podded Propulsion Units**

SECTION **2** **General requirements**

2. 1 Pod arrangement

2. 1. 1 In general, for a ship to be assigned an unrestricted service notation, a minimum of two podded propulsion units are to be provided where these form the sole means of propulsion. For vessels where a single podded propulsion unit is the sole means of propulsion, an evaluation of a detailed engineering and safety justification will be conducted by ACS, *See* Pt 5, Ch 9, 2.2 Plans and information to be submitted 2.2.2 This evaluation process will include the appraisal of a Failure Modes and Effects Analysis (FMEA) to verify that sufficient levels of redundancy and monitoring are incorporated in the podded propulsion unit's essential support systems and operating equipment.

2. 2 Plans and information to be submitted

2. 2. 1 In addition to the plans required by Pt 5, Ch 5 Gearing, Pt 5, Ch 6 Main Propulsion Shafting, Pt 5, Ch 7 Propellers, Pt 5, Ch 8 Shaft Vibration and Alignment, Pt 5, Ch 14 Machinery Piping Systems and Pt 5, Ch 19 Steering Systems, and Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems and Pt 6, Ch 2 Electrical Engineering, the following plans and information are required to be submitted for appraisal:

a. Description of the ship’s purpose/capabilities together with the pod’s intended operational modes in support of these capabilities.
b. Power transmitted at MCR condition (shaft power and rpm) and other maximum torque conditions, e.g. bollard pull.
c. Maximum transient thrust, torque and other forces and moments experienced during all envisaged operating modes as permitted by the steering and propulsor drive control systems.
d. Details of the electric propulsion motor short-circuit torque and motor air gap tolerance.
e. Sectional assembly in the Z-X plane, *See* Figure 9. 2. 1: Pod co-ordinate system.
f. Specifications of materials and NDE procedures for components essential for propulsion and steering operation to include propulsion shaft and slewing ring bearings, gearing and couplings, *See* Pt 5, Ch 9, 3.1 General.
g. The declared steering angle limits are to be stated by manufacturer for each podded propulsion unit;
h. Details of intended manoeuvring capability of the ship in each operating condition. (To be declared by the shipyard, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 9, 5.6 Steering system 5.6.2)
i. Design loads for both the pod structure and propeller together with podded propulsion unit design operating modes (*See* Pt 5, Ch 9, 2.4 Global loads 2.4.1, Pt 5, Ch 9, 5.3 Propulsion shafting 5.3.7, Pt 5, Ch 9, 5.6 Steering system 5.6.9 and Pt 5, Ch 9, 5.6 Steering system 5.6.10).
j. Supporting data and direct calculation reports. This is to include, where applicable, an assessment of anticipated global accelerations acting on the ship's machinery and equipment which may potentially affect the reliable operation of the propulsion system for all fore*See*able

seagoing and operating conditions. Typically, this may include response to slamming, extreme ship motions and pod interaction. *See also* Pt 5, Ch 9, 1.1 General 1.1.5.

k. Structural component details including: strut, pod body, bearing supports, bearing end caps, ship's structure in way of podded propulsion unit integration and a welding Table showing a key to weld symbols used on the plans specifying weld size, type, preparation and heat treatment. The information should include the following:
   - Detailed drawings showing the structural arrangement, dimensions and scantlings.
   - Welding and structural details.
   - Connections between structural components (bolting).
   - Casting's chemical and mechanical properties.
   - Forging's chemical and mechanical properties.
   - Material grades for plate and sections

l. Nozzle structure, its support arrangements, together with related calculations for all permitted operating conditions where the propeller operates in a nozzle (duct), *See* Pt 3, Ch 13, 3 Fixed and steering nozzles.

m. Propeller shaft bearing mounting and housing arrangement details, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 9, 5.3 Propulsion shafting 5.3.6

n. Details of propeller shaft and steering bearings, where roller bearings are used supporting calculations are to be submitted, *See* Pt 5, Ch 9, 5.3 Propulsion shafting 5.3.7 and Pt 5, Ch 9, 5.6 Steering system 5.6.10.

o. Propeller shaft seal details.

p. Details of propeller shaft and pod steering securing/locking and means of aligning the securing/locking arrangements.

q. Cooling systems piping system schematic.

r. Details of any lubricating oil conditioning systems (filtering/cooling/heating) and control arrangements necessary to ensure the continuous availability of the required lubricating oil quality to the propeller shaft bearings.

s. Details of installed condition monitoring equipment.

t. Details of the derivation of any duty factor used in the design of the steering gears.

u. Identification of any potentially hazardous atmospheric conditions together with details of how the hazard will be countered, this should include a statement of the maximum anticipated air temperature within the pod during full power steady state operation, *See* Pt 5, Ch 9, 2.3, Pod internal atmospheric conditions

v. Where provided, access and closing arrangements for pod unit inspection and maintenance.

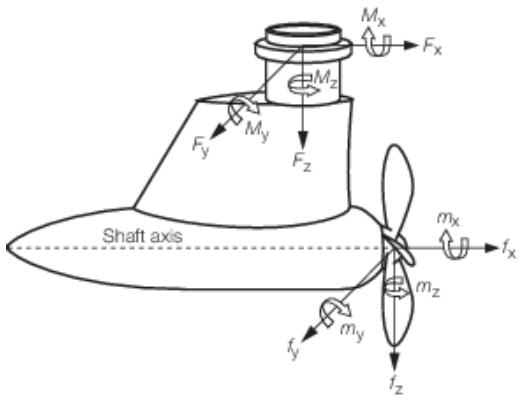
w. Heat balance calculations for pods having an electric propulsion motor but no active cooling system, *See* Pt 5, Ch 9, 5.7 Ventilation and cooling systems 5.7.4.

x. Details of proposed testing and trials required by Pt 5, Ch 9, 8 Testing and trials.

y. Details of emergency steering and pod securing arrangements. *See* Pt 5, Ch 9, 5.3 Propulsion shafting 5.3.11.

z. Quality plan for electronic control systems and electrical actuating systems.

Figure 9. 2. 1: Pod co-ordinate system



2. 2. 2 Where an engineering and safety justification report is required, the following supporting information is to be submitted:

- A Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA), *See* Pt 5, Ch 9, 2.5, Failure Modes and Effects Analysis (FMEA).
- Design standards and assumptions.
- Limiting operating parameters.
- A statement and evidence in respect of the anticipated reliability of any non-duplicated components.

2. 2. 3 Recommended installation, inspection, maintenance and component replacement procedures (*See also* Pt 5, Ch 9, 4.1 Pod structure 4.1.2). This is to include any in-water/underwater engineering procedures where recommended by the pod manufacturer. *See also* Pt 5, Ch 9, 5.5 Bearing lubrication system 5.5.7 andPt 5, Ch 9, 9 Installation, maintenance and replacement procedures.

2. 3 Pod internal atmospheric conditions

2. 3. 1 Machinery and electrical equipment installed within the pod unit are to be suitable for operation, without degraded performance, at the maximum anticipated air temperature and humidity conditions within the pod unit with the pod operating at its maximum continuous rating in sea water of not less than 32°C after steady state operating conditions have been achieved.

2. 3. 2 Precautions are to be taken to prevent as far as reasonably practicable the possibility of danger to personnel and damage to equipment arising from the development of hazardous atmospheric conditions within the pod unit. Circumstances that may give rise to these conditions are to be identified and the counter measures taken are to be defined.

2. 4 Global loads

2. 4. 1 The overall strength of the podded propulsion unit structure is to be based upon the maximum anticipated in-service loads, including, the effects of ship manoeuvring and of ship motion (*See* Pt 3, Ch 14, 1.7 Symbols and definitions, in Pt 3, Ch 14 Cargo Securing Arrangements). This is to include the effects of any pod to pod and/or pod to ship hydrodynamic interference effects. The designer is to supply the following maximum load and moment values to which the unit may be subjected with a description of the operating conditions at which they occur.

- F_x, Force in the longitudinal direction;
- F_y, Force in the transverse direction;

- F_z, self weight, in water, augmented by the ship's pitch and heave motion and flooded volume where applicable, *See* Pt 3, Ch 14 Cargo Securing Arrangements;
- M_x, moment at the slewing ring about the pod unit's global longitudinal axis;
- M_y, moment at the slewing ring about the pod unit's global transverse axis;
- M_z, moment at the slewing ring about the pod unit's vertical axis (maximum dynamic duty steering torque on steerable pods).

The directions of the X, Y and Z axes, with the origin at the centre of the slewing ring, are shown in Figure 9. 2. 1: Pod co-ordinate system.

2. 4. 2 Where the maximum forces and moments defined in Pt 5, Ch 9, 2.4 Global loads 2.4.1 cannot be accurately calculated, then, an estimate of these loadings is to be stated together with an assessment of the associated error tolerances for the sequences of permitted design manoeuvres, *See* Pt 5, Ch 9, 1.1 General 1.1.7. Typically this will include emergency astern manoeuvres, zig zag manoeuvres and pod interaction. Such estimates are to be defined on a load versus pod angle basis. In the case of pod to pod and/or pod to ship hydrodynamic interaction effects these, must be defined for the most severely affected propulsor.

2. 4. 3 Where control systems are installed to limit the operation of the podded drive to defined angles at defined ship speeds, this information may be taken into consideration when determining the pod unit loading.

2. 4. 4 Where pod units are fixed about their Z axis, then maximum global loads, to be used as the basis of the structural appraisal, are to be determined for inflows in 5 degree increments between the extremes of anticipated inflow angle during manoeuvring with ship at full speed and maximum propeller thrust.

2. 4. 5 The podded propulsor is to be capable of withstanding a blade root failure due to fatigue occurring at the maximum rated output of the podded propulsor without initiating a failure in other parts of the propulsor system.

2. 5 Failure Modes and Effects Analysis (FMEA)

2. 5. 1 An FMEA is to be carried out where a single podded propulsion unit is the vessel's sole means of propulsion, *See* Pt 5, Ch 9, 2.1 Pod arrangement 2.1.1. The FMEA is to identify components where a single failure could cause loss of all propulsion and/or steering capability and the proposed arrangements for preventing and mitigating the effects of such a failure. The assessment required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 16.2 System design and arrangement 16.2.2 may be considered for demonstrating the acceptability of the proposed design for propulsion power purposes.

2. 5. 2 The FMEA is to be carried out using the format presented in Table 22. 2. 1: Failure Mode and Effects Analysis in Pt 5, Ch 22 Propulsion and Steering Machinery Redundancy or an equivalent format that addresses the same reliability issues. Analyses in accordance with IEC 60812, *Analysis techniques for system reliability – Procedure for failure mode and effects analysis (FMEA)*, or IMO MSC Resolution 36(63) *Annex 4 - Procedures for Failure Mode and Effects Analysis* – Procedures for Failure Mode and Effects Analysis, would be acceptable.

2. 5. 3 The FMEA is to be organised in terms of equipment and function. The effects of item failures at a stated level and at higher levels are to be analysed to determine the effects on the system as a whole. Actions for mitigation of the effects of failure are to be determined, *See* Pt 5, Ch 9, 2.5 Failure Modes and Effects Analysis (FMEA) 2.5.1.

2. 5. 4 The FMEA is to:

a. identify the equipment or sub-system and mode of operation;
b. identify potential failure modes and their causes;
c. evaluate the effects on the system of each failure mode;

d. identify measures for reducing the risks associated with each failure mode;
e. identify measures for preventing failure; and
f. identify trials and testing necessary to prove conclusions.

2. 5. 5 At sub-system level it is acceptable, for the purpose of these Rules, to consider failure of equipment items and their functions, e.g. failure of a pump to produce flow or pressure head. It is not required that the failure of components within that pump be analysed. In addition, their failure need only be dealt with as a cause of failure of the pump.

2. 5. 6 Where FMEA is used for consideration of systems that depend on software-based functions for control or coordination, the analysis is to investigate failure of the functions rather than a specific analysis of the software code itself.

2. 6 Ice Class requirements

2. 6. 1 Where an ice class notation is included in the class of a ship, additional requirements as detailed in Pt 8 Rules for Ice and Cold Operations are to be complied with as applicable.

2. 7 Condition Monitoring

2. 7. 1 Where Thruster Condition Monitoring (**ThCM**) ACSPlus descriptive note has been requested, refer to *ACSPlus Procedure Machinery Planned Maintenance and Condition Monitoring*, Section 8.

PART

5

CHAPTER **9** **Podded Propulsion Units**

SECTION **3** **Materials**

3. 1 General

3. 1. 1 The materials used for major structural and machinery components are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials (hereinafter referred to as the Rules for Materials). These components include hull support structure, pod body, pod strut, shafting and propellers.

3. 1. 2 Components of novel design or components manufactured from materials not covered by the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials are to be subject to evaluation and approval by ACS prior to manufacture.

3. 1. 3 Material specifications, *See* Pt 5, Ch 9, 2.2 Plans and information to be submitted 2.2.1.f, for propulsion shaft and slewing ring bearings, gearing and couplings are to be approved by ACS prior to manufacture. The specification is to include details of the grade of material, including the target range of chemical composition that is to be reported on the certificate, the required mechanical properties, heat treatment details including temperatures and hold times, details of necessary non-destructive examinations including acceptance levels. Additionally, any steel cleanness or microstructure requirements are to be included. These components are to be manufactured under survey.

3. 1. 4 For propulsion shaft rolling element bearings, the amount of retained austenite is to be determined and is not to exceed 4 per cent for nominally bainitic structures.

3. 1. 5 Where load carrying threaded fasteners screw directly into structural castings, the integrity of the casting is to be such that there is no porosity or shrinkage in the area of the connection.

PART

5

CHAPTER 9 **Podded Propulsion Units**

SECTION 4 **Structure design and construction requirements**

4. 1 Pod structure

4. 1. 1 Podded unit struts and pod bodies may be of cast, forged or fabricated construction or a combination of these construction methods.

4. 1. 2 Means are to be provided to enable the shaft, bearings and seal arrangements to be examined in accordance with ACS's requirements and the manufacturer's recommendations.

4. 1. 3 When high tensile steel fasteners are used as part of the structural arrangement and there is a risk that these fasteners may come into contact with sea-water, carbon-manganese and low alloy steels with a specified tensile strength of greater than 950 N/mm^2 are not to be used due to the risk of hydrogen embrittlement.

4. 1. 4 For steerable pod units, an integral slewing ring is to be arranged at the upper extremity of the strut to provide support for the slewing bearing.

4. 1. 5 The strut is to have a smooth transition from the upper mounting to the lower hydrodynamic sections.

4. 1. 6 For fabricated structures, vertical and horizontal plate diaphragms are to be arranged within the strut and, where necessary, secondary stiffening members are to be arranged.

4. 1. 7 Pod unit structure scantling requirements are shown in Table 9. 4. 1: Podded propulsion unit – Fabricated structure requirements. Where the scantling requirements in Table 9. 4. 1: Podded propulsion unit – Fabricated structure requirements cannot be satisfied, direct calculations carried out in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 9, 4.3, Direct calculations may be considered.

Table 9. 4. 1: Podded propulsion unit – Fabricated structure requirements

Location	Requirement	Notes
Strut external shell plating	Thickness, in mm, is to be not less than: $t = 0.0063sf(h_7k)^{0.5}$	The minimum thickness of plating diaphragms and primary webs within the strut is to be not less than the Rule requirement for the strut external plating. For internal diaphragms, panel stiffening is to be provided where the ratio of spacing to plate thickness (s/t) exceeds 100. Where there are no secondary members, s is to be replaced by S.
Strut primary framing	The section modulus in cm^3 is to be not less than: $z = 7.75h_7l^2e^{Sk}$	This does not apply to full breadth plate diaphragms.
Strut secondary stiffening	The section in cm^3 is to be not less than: $z = 0.0056h_7l^2e^{s\,K}$	This does not apply to full breadth plate diaphragms.

Cylindrical pod body external shell plating	Thickness, in mm, is to be not less than: $t = 3.0R_g(h_7k)^{0.5}$	Not to be less than the Rule basic shell end thickness from Table 3. 2. 1: Taper requirements for hull envelope in Pt 3, Ch 3, 2 Rule structural concepts

Symbols

f = panel aspect ratio correction factor = [1.1 – s/(2500S)]
h_7 = $(T + C_w + 0.014V^2)$
k = local higher tensile steel factor, as in Pt 3, Ch 2 Materials
l_e = effective span of the member under consideration, in metres
s = the frame spacing of secondary members, in mm
C_w = design wave amplitude, in metres, as in Pt 4, Ch 1, 1.5 Symbols and definitions
R_g = mean radius of pod body tube, in metres
S = the spacing of primary members, in metres
T = the vessel scantling draft, in metres, as in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1 Principal particulars
V = ship service speed, in knots, as in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1 Principal particulars.

4. 1. 8 The connection between the strut and the pod body should generally be effected through large radiused fillets in cast pod units or curved plates in fabricated pod units.

4. 1. 9 The structural response under the most onerous combination of loads is not to exceed the normal operational requirements of the propulsion or steering system components.

4. 1. 10 For cast pod structures, the elongation of the material on a gauge length of $5.65\sqrt{S_0}$ is to be not less than 12 per cent where S_o is the actual cross sectional area of the test piece.

4. 1. 11 In castings, sudden changes of section or possible constriction to the flow of metal during casting are to be avoided. All fillets are to have adequate radii, which should, in general, be not less than 75 mm.

4. 1. 12 Castings are to comply with the requirements of Ch 4 Steel Castings or Ch 7 Iron Castings of the Rules for Materials.

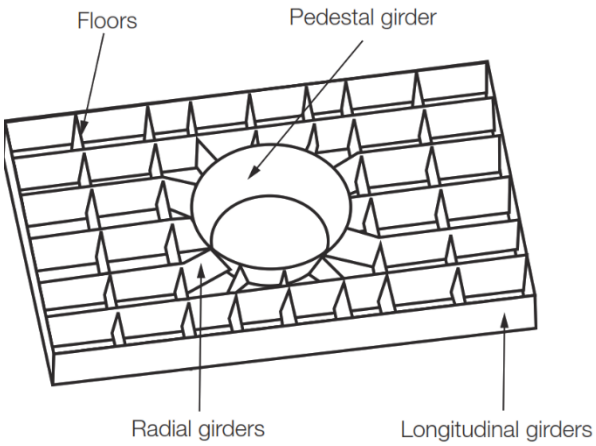
4. 2 Hull support structure

4. 2. 1 For supporting the main slewing bearing outer races, a system of primary structural members is to be provided in order to transfer the maximum design loads and moments from the podded propulsion unit into the ship's hull without undue deflection. Due account is also to be taken of the loads induced by the maximum ship's motions in the vertical direction resulting from combined heave and pitch motion of the ship. Account is also to be taken of any manoeuvring conditions that are likely to give rise to high mean or vibratory loadings induced by the podded propulsion unit. *See* Pt 5, Ch 9, 2.2 Plans and information to be submitted 2.2.1.c.

4. 2. 2 The hull support structure in way of the slewing bearing should be sufficiently stiff that the bearing manufacturer's limits on seating flatness are not exceeded due to hull flexure as a consequence of the loads defined under Pt 5, Ch 9, 4.2 Hull support structure 4.2.1.

4. 2. 3 Generally, the system of primary members is to comprise a pedestal girder directly supporting the slewing ring and bearing. The pedestal girder is to be integrated with the ship's structure by means of radial girders and transverses aligned at their outer ends with the ship's bottom girders and transverses, *See* Figure 9. 4. 1: Hull support structure Proposals to use alternative arrangements that provide an equivalent degree of strength and rigidity may be submitted for appraisal.

Figure 9. 4. 1: Hull support structure



4. 2. 4 The ship's support structure in way of the podded unit may be of double or single bottom construction. Generally, podded drives should be supported where practical within a double bottom structure; however final acceptance of the supporting arrangements will be dependent upon satisfying the stress criteria set out in Table 9. 4. 2: Direct calculation maximum permissible stresses for steel fabricated structures, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 9, 4.3 Direct calculations 4.3.5.

Table 9. 4. 2: Direct calculation maximum permissible stresses for steel fabricated structures

	Permissible stress values	
Location	Podded drive structure	Podded drive/hull interface
X-Y shear stress	$0.26\sigma_o$	$0.35\sigma_o$
Direct stress due to bending	$0.33\sigma_o$	$0.63\sigma_o$
Von Mises stress	$0.40\sigma_o$	$0.75\sigma_o$
Localised Von Mises peak stresses	σ_o	σ_o
Symbols		
σ_o = minimum yield strength of the material		
Note *1.* The values stated above are intended to give an indication of the levels of stress in the pod and ship structure for the maximum loads which could be experienced during normal service. **Note** *2.* If design is based on extreme or statistically low probability loads, then proposals to use alternative acceptance stress criteria may be considered.		

4. 2. 5 The shell envelope plating and tank top plating in way of the aperture for the podded drive (i.e. over the extent of the radial girders shown in Figure 9. 4. 1: Hull support structure) are to be increased by 50 per cent over the Rule minimum thickness to provide additional local stiffness and robustness. However the thickness of this plating is not to be less than the actual fitted thickness of the surrounding shell or tank top plating.

4. 2. 6 The scantlings of the primary support structure in way of the podded drive are to be based upon the limiting design stress criteria specified in Table 9. 4. 2: Direct calculation maximum permissible stresses for steel fabricated structures, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 9, 4.3 Direct calculations 4.3.5 Primary member scantlings are, however, not to be less than those required by Pt 3, Ch 6, 5 Single and double bottom structure

4. 2. 7 The pedestal girder is to have a thickness not less than the required shell envelope minimum Rule thickness in way. Where abutting plates are of dissimilar thickness then the taper requirements of Pt 3, Ch 10, 2 Welding are to be complied with.

4. 2. 8 In general, full penetration welds are to be applied at the pedestal girder boundaries and in way of the end connections between the radial girders and the pedestal girder. Elsewhere, for primary members, double continuous fillet welding is to be applied using a minimum weld factor of 0.34.

4. 3 Direct calculations

4. 3. 1 Finite element or other direct calculation techniques may be employed in the verification of the structural design. The mesh density used is to be sufficient to accurately demonstrate the response characteristics of the structure and to provide adequate stress and deflection information. A refined mesh density is to be applied to geometry transition areas and those locations where high localised stress or stress gradients are anticipated.

4. 3. 2 Model boundary constraints are generally to be applied in way of the slewing ring/ship attachment only.

4. 3. 3 The loads applied to the mathematical model, *See* Pt 5, Ch 9, 2.4 Global loads 2.4.1, are to include the self weight, dynamic acceleration due to ship motion, hydrodynamic loads, hydrostatic pressure, propeller forces and shaft bearing support forces. In situations where a pod can operate in the flooded conditions or where flooding of a pod adds significant mass to the pod, details are to be included.

4. 3. 4 Based on the most onerous combination of normal service loading conditions, the stress criteria shown in Table 9. 4. 2: Direct calculation maximum permissible stresses for steel fabricated structures are not to be exceeded. *See also* Pt 5, Ch 9, 2.2 Plans and information to be submitted 2.2.1.c.

4. 3. 5 Where the structural design is based on a fatigue assessment and the stress criteria shown in Table 9. 4. 2: Direct calculation maximum permissible stresses for steel fabricated structures are not applicable, details of cumulative load history and stress range together with the proposed acceptance criteria are to be submitted for consideration.

4. 3. 6 For cast structures, the localised von Mises stress should not exceed 0.6 times the nominal 0.2 per cent proof or yield stress of the material for the most onerous design condition.

PART

5

CHAPTER 9 Podded Propulsion Units

SECTION 5 Machinery design and construction requirements

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 The requirements detailed in Chapter 1 are applicable.

5. 1. 2 Means are to be provided whereby normal operation of the podded propulsion system can be sustained or readily restored if one of the supporting auxiliaries becomes inoperative, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 9, 2.1 Pod arrangement 2.1.1. Consideration shall be given to the malfunctioning of:

- sources of lubricating oil pressure,
- sources of cooling,
- hydraulic, pneumatic or electrical means for control of the podded propulsor.

5. 2 Gearing

5. 2. 1 If gearing is used in the propulsion system then the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 5 Gearing are applicable.

5. 3 Propulsion shafting

5. 3. 1 In addition to meeting the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 6 Main Propulsion Shafting and Pt 5, Ch 8 Shaft Vibration and Alignment, the pod propulsion shafting supporting an electric motor is to be sufficiently stiff that both static and dynamic shaft flexure are within the motor manufacturer's limits for all envisaged operating conditions.

5. 3. 2 There is to be no significant lateral vibration response that may cause damage to the shaft seals within ±20 per cent of the running speed range. For vibration analysis computations the influence of the slewing ring and shaft bearing stiffnesses together with the contribution from the seating stiffnesses are to be included in the calculation procedures.

5. 3. 3 As an alternative to the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 6 Main Propulsion Shafting, a fatigue strength analysis of shafting components indicating a factor of safety of 1.5 at the design loads based on a suitable fatigue failure criterion may be submitted for consideration. The effects of stress concentrations, material properties and operating environment are to be taken into account.

5. 3. 4 With the exception of the propeller connection (requirements stated in Pt 5, Ch 7 Propellers) couplings relying on friction are to have a factor of safety of 2.5 against slippage at the maximum rated torque. In order to reduce the possibility of fretting, a grip stress of not less than 20 N/mm^2 is to be attained.

5. 3. 5 The effects of motor short-circuit torque on the shafting system should not prevent continued operation once the fault has been rectified.

5. 3. 6 The arrangement of shaft bearings is to take account of shaft thermal expansion, misalignment of bearings, shaft slope through the bearings and manufacturing tolerances. Additionally, the influence of the pod deflection on the shaft bearing alignment is to be considered under the most onerous mechanical and hydrodynamic loading conditions.

5. 3. 7 Propeller shaft roller bearing life calculations are to take account of the following loadings:

- Shaft, motor, propeller and other shaft appendages' weights;
- Forces due to ship's motion;
- The propeller-generated forces and moments about the three Cartesian axes related to the shaft; f_x , f_y , f_z, m_x, m_y, m_z, *See* Figure 9. 2. 1: Pod co-ordinate system;
- Variance of propeller-generated forces and moments with pod azimuth angle. This load variance should take account of the motor control characteristics;
- Forces due to pod rotation, including gyroscopic forces;
- A predicted azimuth service profile for the pod indicating the proportion of time spent at various azimuth angles;
- Loads due to hydrodynamic interaction between pods;
- Any additional loads experienced during operation in ice conditions (for Ice Class notations);
- Where validation of the above loadings is available, detailed calculations must demonstrate that the bearing life when operating at the normal duty profile will comfortably exceed the time between 5-yearly surveys. Parameters used to justify the bearing life, i.e. those related to oil cleanliness, viscosity limits and material quality are to be quoted.

5. 3. 8 Where detailed validation of the loadings identified in Pt 5, Ch 9, 5.3 Propulsion shafting 5.3.7. is not available, the calculations for roller bearings are to indicate a bearing life greater than 65000 hours at the maximum continuous rating of the podded drive taking into account the azimuth angle duty cycle. Any parameters used to justify this life, i.e. those related to oil cleanliness, water contamination and viscosity limits are to be quoted. Proposals for the use of a shaft bearing of life less than 65000 hours will be considered on application with details of alleviating factors and supporting documentation; however, this bearing life must exceed the time between surveys.

5. 3. 9 The design of the shaft line bearings is to take account of the maximum and minimum operating temperatures likely to be encountered during both a voyage cycle and, more widely, during the ship's operational life. Furthermore, any anticipated temperature distributions through the bearing components and structures are to be included in the design calculations.

5. 3. 10 Means are to be provided for detecting shaft bearing deterioration. Where rolling element shaft bearings are used in single pod applications or in pods where the motor power exceeds 6 MW, vibration monitoring of the shaft bearings is to be provided. The bearing monitoring system is to be suitable for the local bearing conditions and is to be able to differentiate from other vibration sources such as propeller cavitation or ship motions.

5. 3. 11 In multi-podded propulsor systems or ships having at least one pod in association with other propulsion devices and where the individual pod installed power is greater than 5MW, means are to be provided to hold the propeller for an inoperable unit stationary whilst the other pod(s) propel the vessel at a manoeuvring speed of not less than 7 knots. Operating instructions displayed at the holding mechanism's operating position are to include a direction to inform the bridge of any limitation in ships speed required as a result of the holding mechanism being activated.

5. 3. 12 Shaft seals for maintaining the watertight integrity of the pod are to be Type Approved to a standard acceptable to ACS. The seals are to be designed to withstand the extremes of operation for which they are intended and this is to include extremes of temperature, vibration, pressure and shaft movement.

5. 3. 13 In single pod installations, the integrity of shaft seals is to be evaluated on the basis of a double failure. In such installations, seal duplication is to be used with indication of failure of one seal being provided.

5. 4 Propeller

5. 4. 1 The requirements of Pt 5, Ch 7 Propellers are to be complied with.

5. 4. 2 Where propeller scantlings have been determined by a detailed fatigue analysis, based on reliable wake survey data as described in Pt 5, Ch 7, 3.1 Minimum blade thickness 3.1.7 a factor of safety of 1.5 against suitable fatigue failure criteria is to be demonstrated. The effects of fillet stress concentrations, residual stress, fluctuating loads and material properties are to be taken into account.

5. 5 Bearing lubrication system

5. 5. 1 The bearing lubrication system is to be arranged to provide a sufficient quantity of lubricant of a quality, viscosity and temperature acceptable to the bearing manufacturer under all ship operating conditions.

5. 5. 2 In addition to the requirements detailed in this Section, the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 14, 8.1 General requirements, Pt 5, Ch 14, 8.5 Emergency supply for propulsion turbines and propulsion turbo-generators, Pt 5, Ch 14, 8.7 Filters and Pt 5, Ch 14, 8.9 Cleanliness of pipes and fittings are to be complied with.

5. 5. 3 For systems employing forced lubrication, the sampling points required by Pt 5, Ch 14, 8.13 Deep tank valves and their control arrangements 8.13.6 are to be located such that the sample taken is representative of the oil present at the bearing.

5. 5. 4 For lubricating oil systems employing gravity feed, the arrangements are to be such as to permit oil sampling and oil changes in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions for the safe and reliable operation of the propulsion system.

5. 5. 5 Where continuous operation of the lubricating oil system is essential for the pod to operate at its maximum continuous rating, a standby pump in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 14, 8.2 Pumps 8.2.2 is to be provided. In such systems, provision is to be made for the efficient filtration of the oil. The filters are to be capable of being cleaned without stopping the pod.

5. 5. 6 here bearings are grease lubricated, means are to be provided for collecting waste grease to enable analysis for particulates and water. The arrangements for collecting waste grease are to be in accordance with the pod manufacturer’s recommendations. Alternative arrangements which demonstrate that bearings are satisfactorily lubricated will be considered.

5. 5. 7 Pipework conveying lubricating oil is to be sited such that any possible leakage from joints will not impinge on electrical equipment, hot surfaces or other sources of ignition, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 13, 2.9 Miscellaneous requirements 2.9.3

5. 5. 8 The procedures for flushing the lubrication system are to be defined. This procedure is to embrace the following conditions:

a. Initial installation.
b. Post maintenance situations.
c. Major dry-docking refits.

See Pt 5, Ch 9, 9 Installation, maintenance and replacement procedures.

5. 6 Steering system

5. 6. 1 The requirements of Pt 5, Ch 19 Steering Systems are to be complied with where applicable.

5. 6. 2 The arrangement of podded propulsion units is to be such that the ship can be satisfactorily manoeuvred to a declared performance capability. The operating conditions covered are to include the following:

a. Maximum continuous shaft power/speed to the propeller in the ahead condition at the declared steering angles and sea conditions.
b. Manoeuvring speeds of the propeller shaft in the ahead and astern direction at the declared steering angles and sea conditions.
c. The stopping manoeuvre described in Pt 5, Ch 1, 5.2 Sea trials 5.2.2.b.
d. All astern running conditions for the ship.
e. Manoeuvring in ice where ice class is required.

5. 6. 3 Where more than one podded propulsion unit is fitted, Pt 5, Ch 19, 2.1 General 2.1.2 is considered to be met when:

a. Each podded propulsion unit fulfils the requirements for main steering gear (*See* Pt 5, Ch 9, 5.6, Steering system 5.6.4); and
b. Each podded propulsion unit is provided with the ability to be positioned and locked in a neutral position after a single failure of its power unit(s) and actuator(s). These arrangements are to be of sufficient strength to hold the podded propulsion unit in position at the ship's manoeuvring speed to be taken as not less than 7 knots, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 9, 5.3 Propulsion shafting 5.3.11. Instructions displayed at the locking mechanism's operating position are to include a directive to inform the bridge of any limitation in ship's speed required as a result of the securing mechanism being activated.

5. 6. 4 The main steering gear is to be:

a. Of adequate strength and capable of hanging direction of the podded propulsion unit from one side to the other in accordance with the declared steering angle limits at an average rotational speed of not less than 2.3 deg/s with the ship running ahead at maximum ahead service speed which shall be demonstrated in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 9, 8 Testing and trials; and
b. Operated by power; and
c. So designed that they will not be damaged at maximum astern speed.

5. 6. 5 The auxiliary steering gear is to be:

a. Capable of being brought speedily into action in an emergency; and
b. Of adequate strength and capable of changing the direction of the ship's podded propulsion unit from one side to the other in accordance with the declared steering angle limits at an average rotational speed of not less than 0.5 deg/s, with the ship running ahead at one half of the maximum ahead service speed or 7 knots, whichever is the greater; and
c. Operated by power for ships having propulsion power of more than 2500 kW per podded propulsion unit and for all ships, where it is necessary to meet the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 9, 5.6 Steering system 5.6.5.b.

5. 6. 6 For vessels with more than one steerable podded propulsion unit, auxiliary steering gear need not be fitted provided that each podded propulsion unit is capable of being supplied by two identical power units (the podded propulsion unit may be supplied by shared or dedicated power units) and:

a. In cargo ships, each podded propulsion unit is capable of satisfying the requirements in Pt 5, Ch 9, 5.6 Steering system 5.6.4.a while operating with all power units;
b. In passenger ships, each podded propulsion unit is capable of satisfying the requirements in Pt 5, Ch 9, 5.6 Steering system 5.6.4.a while any one of the power units is out of operation;

Each of the podded propulsion units is arranged so that after a single failure in its piping or in one of the power units, ship steering capability (but not individual steering system operation) can be maintained or speedily regained (e.g. by the possibility of positioning the failed steering system in a neutral position in an emergency, if needed). Consideration will be given to alternative arrangements providing equivalence can be demonstrated.

5. 6. 7 The steering gear for podded units used for dynamic positioning applications with an associated class notation, is to be capable of a rotational speed of not less than 9 deg/s.

5. 6. 8 Steering arrangements, other than of the hydraulic type, may be accepted provided that there are means of limiting the maximum torque to which the steering arrangement may be subjected.

5. 6. 9 Geared arrangements employed for steering are to consider the following conditions:

- A design maximum dynamic duty steering torque, M_z, *See* Pt 5, Ch 9, 2.4 Global loads 2.4.1;
- A static duty ($\leq 10^3$ load cycles) steering torque. The static duty steering torque should not be less than M_w, the maximum torque which can be generated by the steering gear mechanism.

The minimum factors of safety, as derived using ISO 6336 Calculation of load capacity of spur and helical gears, or a recognised National Standard, are to be 1.5 on bending stress and 1.0 on Hertzian contact stress. The use of a duty factor in the dynamic duty strength calculations is acceptable but the derivation of such a factor, based on percentage of time spent at a percentage of the maximum working torque, should be submitted to ACS for consideration and acceptance.

5. 6. 10 Slewing ring bearing capacity calculations are to take account of:

- Pod weight in water;
- Gyroscopic forces from the propeller and motor;
- Hydrodynamic loads on pod; and
- Forces due to ship's motions.

The calculations are to demonstrate that the factor of safety against the maximum combination of the above forces is not less than 2. The calculations are to be carried out in accordance with a suitable declared standard.

5. 6. 11 Means of allowing the condition of the slewing gears and bearings to be assessed are to be provided.

5. 7 Ventilation and cooling systems

5. 7. 1 Means are to be provided to ensure that air used for motor cooling purposes is of a suitable temperature and humidity as well as being free from harmful particles.

5. 7. 2 Cooling water supplies are to comply with Pt 5, Ch 14, 7 Engine cooling water systems. *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 9.6 Machine enclosure

5. 7. 3 On single podded installations, a standby cooling arrangement of the same capacity as the main cooling system, is to be provided and available for immediate use.

5. 7. 4 For pods having an electric propulsion motor but no active cooling system, heat balance calculations as required by Pt 5, Ch 9, 2.2 Plans and information to be submitted 2.2.1.w are to demonstrate that the pod unit and associated systems are able to function satisfactorily over all operating conditions, *See* Pt 5, Ch 1, 3.5 Ambient reference conditions

5. 8 Pod drainage requirements

5. 8. 1 Unless the electrical installation is suitable for operation in a flooded space, means are to be provided to ensure that leakage from shaft bearings or the propeller seal do not reach the motor windings, or other electrical components. Account is to be taken of cooling air flow circulating within the pod unit.

5. 8. 2 Where the design of a pod space has a requirement to be maintained in a dry condition, two independent means of drainage are to be provided so that liquid leakage may be removed from the pod unit at all design angles of heel and trim, *See* Pt 5, Ch 1, 3.6 Ambient operating conditions

5. 8. 3 Pipework conveying leakage from the pod is to be sited such that any leakage from joints will not impinge on electrical equipment, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 13, 2.9 Miscellaneous requirements 2.9.3

5. 9 Hydraulic actuating systems

5. 9. 1 Hydraulic actuating systems are to comply with Pt 5, Ch 14, 9 Hydraulic systems and Pt 5, Ch 19, 3 Construction and design as applicable.

PART

5

CHAPTER 9 **Podded Propulsion Units**

SECTION 6 **Electrical equipment**

6. 1 General

6. 1. 1 The electrical installation is to be designed, constructed and installed in accordance with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2 Electrical Engineering.

6. 1. 2 Components, including, but not limited to control equipment, sensors, slip rings and cable connections are to withstand the vibration levels as specified by a relevant International or National Standard acceptable to ACS. Selection of an acceptable standard will be dependent on the intended operational profile of the ship.

6. 1. 3 Means are to be provided to prevent electrical currents flowing across shaft bearings, which may cause their premature failure.

6. 1. 4 Steering gear electrical systems are to comply with Pt 5, Ch 19, 5 Electric power circuits, electric control circuits, monitoring and alarms.

6. 1. 5 Details are to be submitted to demonstrate the suitability of cables and busbars intended to operate at temperatures exceeding 95°C, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 7.2 Busbars 7.2.2 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 11.4 Operating temperature 11.4.3.

6. 2 Slip ring assemblies

6. 2. 1 Where slip rings are incorporated in the design, the details of the following are to be submitted for consideration:

a. temperature rise test reports;
b. maximum permitted temperature ratings and design operating temperatures for materials;
c. where applicable, arrangements for forced air or liquid cooling;
d. for data communication link slip rings, evidence to demonstrate compliance with Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.11 Data communication links 2.11.3;
e. suitability for use under the conditions of vibration expected to arise in normal operation;
f. evidence of satisfactory operation under the normal angles of inclination given in Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.10 Inclination of ship;
g. cable securing arrangements; and
h. evidence of electromagnetic compatibility of control, alarm and safety systems with power circuits.

6. 2. 2 Where forced cooling is used on slip rings, an alarm is to be initiated to indicate the failure of the forced cooling and it is to be possible to operate the slip ring at a reduced power level defined by the Manufacturer in the event of failure of the forced cooling.

6. 2. 3 Slip ring assemblies are to be provided with an enclosure with a degree of protection of at least IP23, according to IEC60529: Degrees of protection provided by enclosures (IP Code).

6. 2. 4 Adequate provisions are to be taken to ensure that personnel are not endangered if an arc fault occurs within the slip ring assembly, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 8.1 General 8.1.1.

6. 2. 5 Tests at the slip ring assembly manufacturers works are to include type and routine tests according to IEC 60092-501: *Electrical installations in ships – Part 501: Special features – Electric propulsion plant*.

PART

5

CHAPTER **9** **Podded Propulsion Units**

SECTION **7** **Control engineering systems**

7. 1 General

7. 1. 1 Control engineering arrangements are to be in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems.

7. 1. 2 Steering gear control, monitoring and alarm systems are to comply with Pt 5, Ch 19, 4 Steering control systems and Pt 5, Ch 19, 5 Electric power circuits, electric control circuits, monitoring and alarms.

7. 1. 3 Steering control is to be provided for podded drives from the navigating bridge and locally.

7. 1. 4 An indication of the angular position of the podded propulsion unit(s) and the magnitude of the thrust is to be provided at each station from which it is possible to control the direction of thrust. This indication is to be independent of the steering control system.

7. 1. 5 Emergency Stop Functions are to be provided at the remote control station(s), independent of the podded drive control system, to stop each podded drive in an emergency. *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 16.4 Propulsion control 16.4.7.

7. 1. 6 Where programmable electronic equipment is used to prevent loads exceeding those for which the system has been designed (*See* Pt 5, Ch 9, 2.4 Global loads 2.4.3), then either:

a. A fully independent hard wired backup is to be provided; or
b. The software is to be certified in accordance with ACS's Software Conformity Assessment System – Assessment Module GEN1 and have an independent solution showing redundancy with design diversity, etc. *See* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.13, Programmable electronic systems - Additional requirements for essential services and safety critical systems of the Rules.

7. 1. 7 Where a propulsion system which includes a podded propulsor unit is controlled by a series of interactive and integrated programmable electronic systems, then these are to comply with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.13, Programmable electronic systems - Additional requirements for essential services and safety critical systems of the Rules.

7. 1. 8 For electronic control systems and electrical actuating systems, an overall quality plan for sourcing, design, installation and testing is to address the following issues:

a. Standard(s) applied.
b. Details of the quality control system applied during manufacture and testing.
c. Details of type approval, type testing or approved type status assigned to the equipment.
d. Details of installation and testing recommendations for the equipment.
e. Details of any local and/or remote diagnostic arrangements where assessment and alteration of control parameters can be made which can affect the operation of the podded propulsor unit.
f. Software lifecycle activities, including configuration management and arrangements for software upgrades.

7. 1. 9 The quality plan referred to in Pt 5, Ch 9, 7.1 General 7.1.8 to identify the process for verification of the functional outputs from the electronic control systems with particular reference to system integrity, consistency, security against unauthorised changes to software and maintaining the outputs within acceptable tolerances of stated performance for safe and reliable operation of the podded propulsor unit.

7. 1. 10 For the permitted range of operating conditions, the control system is to be capable of protecting the podded propulsor from experiencing mechanical loads that may initiate damage while permitting the desired manoeuvres to take place.

7. 2 Monitoring and alarms

7. 2. 1 The requirements for alarms and monitoring arrangements are to be in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 19, 5.3 Monitoring and alarms and Table 9. 7. 1: Additional alarms and safeguards for podded propulsion units. These alarms are in addition to the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 16 Electric propulsion.

Table 9. 7. 1: Additional alarms and safeguards for podded propulsion units

Item	Alarm	Note
Podded drive azimuth angle	—	Indicator, *See* Pt 5, Ch 9, 7.1 General 7.1.4
Propulsion motors	Power supply failure	To be indicated on the navigating bridge
Propulsion motor power limitation or automatic reduction	Activated	*See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 16.4 Propulsion control 16.4.9
Hydraulic oil system pressure	Low	To be indicated on the navigating bridge
Bearing temperature	1st stage high 2nd stage high	For grease lubricated bearings. Propulsion motor is to safely shut down automatically to prevent damage.
Motor temperature	High	*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 16.1 General 16.1.3
Lubricating oil supply pressure	Low	If separate forced lubrication for shaft bearings; to be indicated on the navigating bridge
Lubricating oil temperature	1st stage high 2nd stage high	*See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 16.6 Protection of propulsion system 16.6.9 Propulsion motor is to safely shut down automatically to prevent damage Independent oil level inspection is required
Lubricating oil tank level for motor bearings	Low	
Water in lubricating oil for motor bearings	High	Required for single podded propulsion units only
Motor cooling air inlet temperature	High	
Motor cooling air outlet temperature	High	
Motor cooling air flow	Low	
Motor cooling air humidity	High	For closed air systems
Shaft bearing vibration monitoring	High	*See* Pt 5, Ch 9, 5.3 Propulsion shafting 5.3.10. Monitoring is to allow bearing condition to be gauged using trend analysis
Shaft sealing	Failure	*See* Pt 5, Ch 9, 5.3 Propulsion shafting 5.3.13
Dry space water pump operation	Abnormal	Alarm set to indicate a frequency or duration exceeding that which would normally be expected

Dry space water level	1st stage high 2nd stage high	— Propulsion motor is to shut down automatically, *See* Note
Slip ring forced cooling	Failure	*See* Pt 5, Ch 9, 6.2 Slip ring assemblies 6.2.2
Note The second stage dry space water level high alarm is not needed where the electrical equipment installed within the pod is suitable for operation in flooded spaces, *See* Pt 5, Ch 9, 5.8 Pod drainage requirements 5.8.1.		

7. 2. 2 Alarms specified in Table 9. 7. 1: Additional alarms and safeguards for podded propulsion units are to be in accordance with the alarm system specified by Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems, Pt 6, Ch 2 Electrical Engineering, Pt 6, Ch 3 Refrigerated Cargo Installations.

7. 2. 3 Sensors for control, monitoring and alarm systems required by the Rules and located within the pod are to be duplicated in order that a single sensor failure does not inhibit system functionality.

7. 2. 4 Pod unit dry space pumping arrangements are to function automatically in the event of a high liquid level being detected in the pod unit.

7. 2. 5 Spaces intended to be dry are to be provided with arrangements to indicate water ingress in accordance withPt 5, Ch 9, 7.2 Monitoring and alarms 7.2.6 and Table 9. 7. 1: Additional alarms and safeguards for podded propulsion units.

7. 2. 6 The number and location of dry space level detectors are to be such that accumulation of liquids will be detected at all design angles of heel and trim.

7. 2. 7 Condition monitoring arrangements are not to interface with the operation of safety systems which may cause slow-down or shutdown of the propulsion system. *See also* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.6 Bridge control for main propulsion machinery 2.6.8.

PART

5

CHAPTER **9** **Podded Propulsion Units**

SECTION **8** **Testing and trials**

8. 1 General

8. 1. 1 The following requirements are to be complied with:

- Pt 5, Ch 1, 5.2, Sea trials for sea trials.
- Pt 5, Ch 19, 7.2 Trials for steering trials.

In addition, the functional capability specified in Pt 5, Ch 9, 5.6 Steering system 5.6.2 is to be demonstrated to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

8. 1. 2 The actual values of steering torque are to be verified during sea trials to confirm that the design maximum dynamic duty torque has not been exceeded.

8. 1. 3 Electric motor cooling systems are to be verified, as far as possible, to ensure that they are capable of limiting the extremes of ambient temperature to those specified in Pt 5, Ch 9, 2.3 Pod internal atmospheric conditions 2.3.1.

8. 1. 4 Any trials and testing identified from the FMEA report, *See* Pt 5, Ch 9, 2.5 Failure Modes and Effects Analysis (FMEA) 2.5.4.f are also to be carried out.

PART

5

CHAPTER 9 **Podded Propulsion Units**

SECTION 9 **Installation, maintenance and replacement procedures**

9. 1 General

9. 1. 1 All podded propulsion units are to be supplied with a copy of the manufacturer's installation and maintenance manual that is pertinent to the actual equipment.

9. 1. 2 The manual required by Pt 5, Ch 9, 9.1 General 9.1.1 is to be placed on board and is to contain the following information:

a. Description of the podded propulsion unit with details of function and design operating limits. This is also to include details of support systems such as lubrication, cooling and condition monitoring arrangements.

b. Identification of all components together with details of any that have a defined maximum operating life.

c. Instructions for installation of unit(s) on board ship with details of any required specialised equipment.

d. Instructions for commissioning at initial installation and following maintenance.

e. Maintenance and service instructions to include inspection/renewal of bearings, seals, motors, slip rings and other major components. This is also to include component fitting procedures, special environmental arrangements, clearance and push-up measurements and lubricating oil treatment where applicable.

f. Actions required in the event of fault/failure conditions being detected.

g. Precautions to be taken by personnel working during installation and maintenance.

PART

5

CHAPTER **10** **Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General requirements**		**2237**
	1. 1	Application	2237
	1. 2	Definition of symbols	2237
	1. 3	Design pressure	2238
	1. 4	Metal temperature	2238
	1. 5	Classification of fusion welded pressure vessels	2239
	1. 6	Plans	2239
	1. 7	Materials	2240
	1. 8	Allowable stress	2240
	1. 9	Joint factors	2241
	1. 10	Pressure parts of irregular shape	2241
	1. 11	Adverse working conditions	2241
	1. 12	Furnace explosion prevention	2242
	1. 13	Exhaust gas economiser/boiler arrangements	2242
SECTION 2	**Cylindrical shells and drums subject to internal pressure**		**2243**
	2. 1	Minimum thickness	2243
	2. 2	Efficiency of ligaments between tube holes	2243
	2. 3	Compensating effect of tube stubs	2247
	2. 4	Unreinforced openings	2249
	2. 5	Reinforced openings	2250
SECTION 3	**Spherical shells subject to internal pressure**		**2253**
	3. 1	Minimum thickness	2253
SECTION 4	**Dished ends subject to internal pressure**		**2254**
	4. 1	Minimum thickness	2254
	4. 2	Shape factors for dished ends	2256

4. 3 Dished ends with unreinforced openings 2257
4. 4 Flanged openings in dished ends 2258
4. 5 Location of unreinforced and flanged openings in dished ends 2258
4. 6 Dished ends with reinforced openings 2258
4. 7 Torispherical dished ends with reinforced openings 2261
SECTION 5 Dished ends subject to internal pressure 2262
5. 1 General 2262
5. 2 Minimum thickness 2262
SECTION 6 Standpipes and branches 2265
6. 1 Minimum thickness 2265
SECTION 7 Boiler tubes subject to internal pressure 2267
7. 1 Minimum thickness 2267
7. 2 Tube bending 2268
SECTION 8 Headers 2269
8. 1 Circular section headers 2269
8. 2 Rectangular section headers 2269
8. 3 Toroidal furnace headers 2272
8. 4 Header ends 2272
SECTION 9 Flat surfaces and flat tube plates 2275
9. 1 Stayed flat surfaces 2275
9. 2 Combustion chamber tube plates under compression 2280
9. 3 Girders for combustion chamber top plates 2280
9. 4 Flat plate margins 2281
SECTION 10 Flat plates and ends of vertical boilers 2282
10. 1 Tube plates of vertical boilers 2282
10. 2 Horizontal shelves of tube plates forming part of the shell 2283
10. 3 Dished and flanged ends for vertical boilers 2283
10. 4 Flat crowns of vertical boilers 2284
SECTION 11 Furnaces subject to external pressure 2285
11. 1 Maximum thickness 2285
11. 2 Corrugated furnaces 2285
11. 3 Plain furnaces, flue sections and combustion chamber bottoms 2285
11. 4 Plain furnaces of vertical boilers 2286
11. 5 Hemispherical furnaces 2287
11. 6 Dished and flanged ends for supported vertical boiler furnaces 2288
11. 7 dished and flanged ends for unsupported vertical boiler furnaces . 2288

11. 8 Ogee rings 2289
11. 9 Uptakes of vertical boilers 2289
SECTION 12 Boiler tubes subject to external pressure 2291
12. 1 Tubes 2291
SECTION 13 Tubes welded at both ends and bar stays for cylindrical boilers 2292
13. 1 Loads on tubes welded at both ends and bar stays 2292
SECTION 14 Construction 2293
14. 1 Access arrangements 2293
14. 2 Torispherical and semi-ellipsoidal ends 2294
14. 3 Hemispherical ends 2294
14. 4 Welded-on flanges, butt welded joints and fabricated branch pieces 2295
14. 5 Welded attachments to pressure vessels 2296
14. 6 Fitting of tubes in water tube boilers 2297
SECTION 15 Mountings and fittings for cylindrical and vertical boilers, steam generators, pressurised thermal liquid and pressurised hot water heaters 2298
15. 1 General 2298
15. 2 Safety valves 2298
15. 3 Waste steam pipes 2300
15. 4 Adjustment and accumulation tests 2301
15. 5 Stop valves 2301
15. 6 Water level indicators 2301
15. 7 Low water level fuel shut-off and alarm 2301
15. 8 Feed check valves 2302
15. 9 Pressure gauges 2302
15. 10 Blow-down and scum valves 2302
15. 11 Sampling valve or cock 2302
15. 12 Additional requirements for shell-type exhaust gas heated economisers 2302
SECTION 16 Mountings and fittings for water tube boilers 2304
16. 1 General 2304
16. 2 Safety valves 2304
16. 3 Safety valve settings 2304
16. 4 Waste steam pipes 2305
16. 5 Accumulation tests 2305
16. 6 Water level indicators 2305
16. 7 Low water level fuel shut-off and alarm 2306

16. 8 Feed check valves and water level regulators 2306
SECTION 17 Hydraulic tests 2307
17. 1 General 2307
17. 2 Mountings 2307
SECTION 18 Control and monitoring 2308
18. 1 General 2308
18. 2 Unattended machinery 2308
18. 3 Main, auxiliary and other boilers 2308

PART

5

CHAPTER 10 **Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 10. 5. 1: Values of K as a function of ψ and r_i/D_o 2263
Table 10. 7. 1: Minimum thickness of tubes 2267
Table 10. 12. 1: Thickness of plain tubes under external pressure 2291
Table 10. 14. 1: Limiting design conditions for flanges 2296
Table 10. 18. 1: Main, auxiliary and other boilers: Alarms and safeguards 2308

PART

5

CHAPTER 10 **Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels**

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 10. 2. 1: Regular drilling 2244
Figure 10. 2. 2: Irregular drilling 2245
Figure 10. 2. 3: Spacing of holes on a diagonal line 2246
Figure 10. 2. 4: Regular saw-tooth patten of holes 2246
Figure 10. 2. 5: Regular staggering of holes 2247
Figure 10. 2. 6: Efficiency of ligaments between holes 2248
Figure 10. 2. 7: Compensation of welded tube stubs 2249
Figure 10. 2. 8: Compensation of welded tube stubs 2249
Figure 10. 2. 9: Compensation for welded standpipes or branches in cylindrical shells 2252
Figure 10. 4. 1: Shape factor 2255
Figure 10. 4. 2: Typical dished ends 2257
Figure 10. 4. 3: Opening in dished ends 2259
Figure 10. 4. 4: Limits of reinforcement 2259
Figure 10. 5. 1: Conical ends and conical reducing sections 2263
Figure 10. 8. 1: Rectangular section headers 2270
Figure 10. 8. 2: Typical methods of attachment of header end closures 2273
Figure 10. 8. 3: Toroidal furnace headers 2274
Figure 10. 9. 1: Typical attachement of unflanged flat end plates to shell 2276
Figure 10. 9. 2: Typical attachment of firebox, combustion chamber stays and bar stays 2277
Figure 10. 9. 3: Typical attachment of bar stays 2278
Figure 10. 9. 4: Detail of weld for tube 2278
Figure 10. 11. 1: Furnace, flue and combustion chamber stiffeners 2286
Figure 10. 11. 2: Effective length, L, for use in 11.4 2288
Figure 10. 14. 1: Typical attachments of dished ends to cylindrical shells 2294
Figure 10. 14. 2: Attachment of hemispherical end to cylindrical shell 2295
Figure 10. 14. 3: Typical examples of welded flange connections 2296
Figure 10. 14. 4: Typical acceptable methods of attaching branches and pads 2297

PART

5

CHAPTER **10** **Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels**

SECTION **1** **General requirements**

1. 1 Application

1. 1. 1 The requirements of this Chapter are applicable to fusion welded pressure vessels and their mountings and fittings, for the following uses:

a. Production or storage of steam.
b. Heating of pressurised hot water above 120°C.
c. Heating of pressurised thermal liquid.

The formulae in this Chapter may be used for determining the thickness of seamless pressure vessels using a joint factor of 1.0. Seamless pressure vessels are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of Ch 5 Steel Forgings of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials (hereinafter referred to as the Rules for Materials).

1. 1. 2 The scantlings of coil type heaters with pumped circulation, which are fired or heated by exhaust gas, are to comply with the appropriate requirements of this Chapter.

1. 1. 3 Where exhaust gas emissions abatement equipment is fitted to steam raising plant, it is to meet the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 24 Emissions Abatement Plant for Combustion Machinery.

1. 2 Definition of symbols

1. 2. 1 The symbols used in the various formulae in Pt 5, Ch 10, 2 Cylindrical shells and drums subject to internal pressure to Pt 5, Ch 10, 8 Headers, unless otherwise stated, are defined as follows and are applicable to the specific part of the pressure vessel under consideration:

d = diameter of hole or opening, in mm

p = design pressure, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.3 Design pressure, in MPa

r_i = inside knuckle radius, in mm

r_o = outside knuckle radius, in mm

s = pitch, in mm

t = minimum thickness, in mm

D_i = inside diameter, in mm

D_o = outside diameter, in mm

J = joint factor applicable to welded seams, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.9 Joint factors, or ligament efficiency between tube holes (expressed as a fraction, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 2.2, Efficiency of ligaments between tube holes)

R_i = inside radius, in mm

R_o = outside radius, in mm

T = design temperature, in °C

σ = allowable stress, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.8, Allowable stress, in N/mm^2.

1. 2. 2 Where reference is made to calculated or actual plate thickness for the derivation of other values, these thicknesses are to be minus the standard Rule corrosion allowance of 0.75 mm, if not so stated.

1. 3 Design pressure

1. 3. 1 The design pressure is the maximum permissible working pressure and is to be not less than the highest set pressure of any safety valve.

1. 3. 2 The calculations made to determine the scantlings of the pressure parts are to be based on the design pressure, adjusted where necessary to take account of pressure variations corresponding to the most severe operational conditions.

1. 3. 3 It is desirable that there should be a margin between the normal pressure at which the boiler or pressure vessel operates and the lowest pressure at which any safety valve is set to lift, to prevent unnecessary lifting of the safety valve.

1. 4 Metal temperature

1. 4. 1 The metal temperature, T, used to evaluate the allowable stress, σ, is to be taken as the actual mean wall metal temperature expected under operating conditions for the pressure part concerned, and is to be stated by the manufacturer when plans of the pressure parts are submitted for consideration.

1. 4. 2 The following values are to be regarded as the minimum:

a. For fired steam boilers, T, is to be taken as not less than 250°C.

b. For steam heated generators, secondary drums of double evaporation boilers, steam receivers and pressure parts of fired pressure vessels, not heated by hot gases and adequately protected by insulation, T, is to be taken as the maximum temperature of the internal fluid.

c. For pressure parts heated by hot gases, T, is to be taken as not less than 25°C in excess of the maximum temperature of the internal fluid.

d. For boiler, superheater, reheater and economiser tubes, T, is to be taken as indicated in Pt 5, Ch 10, 7.1 Minimum thickness 7.1.2.

e. For combustion chambers of the type used in horizontal wet-back boilers, T, is to be taken as not less than 50°C in excess of the maximum temperature of the internal fluid.

f. For furnaces, fireboxes, rear tube plates of dry-back boilers and pressure parts subject to similar rates of heat transfer, T, is to be taken as not less than 90°C in excess of the maximum temperature of the internal fluid.

1. 4. 3 In general any parts of boiler drums or headers not protected by tubes, and exposed to radiation from the fire or to the impact of hot gases, are to be protected by a shield of good refractory material or by other approved means.

1. 4. 4 Drums and headers of thickness greater than 35 mm are not to be exposed to combustion gases having an anticipated temperature in excess of 650°C unless they are efficiently cooled by closely arranged tubes.

1. 5 Classification of fusion welded pressure vessels

1. 5. 1 For Rule purposes, pressure vessels with fusion welded seams are graded as Class 1 if they comply with the following conditions:

a. For pressure parts of fired steam boilers, fired thermal liquid heaters and exhaust gas heated shell type steam boilers where the design pressure exceeds 0.34 MPa.

b. For pressure parts of steam heated steam generators and separate steam receivers where the design pressure exceeds 1.13 MPa, or where the pressure, in MPa, multiplied by the internal diameter of the shell, in mm, exceeds 1442.

1. 5. 2 For Rule purposes, pressure vessels with fusion welded seams, used for the production or storage of steam, the heating of pressurised hot water above 120°C or the heating of pressurised thermal liquid not included in Class 1 are graded as Class 2/1 and 2/2.

1. 5. 3 Pressure vessels which are constructed in accordance with Class 2/1 or Class 2/2 standards (as indicated above) will, if manufactured in accordance with requirements of a superior class, be approved with the scantlings appropriate to that class.

1. 5. 4 Pressure vessels which have only circumferential fusion welded seams, will be considered as seamless with no class being assigned. Preliminary weld procedure tests and non-destructive examination for the circumferential seam welds should be carried out for the equivalent class as determined by Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.5 Classification of fusion welded pressure vessels 1.5.1 and Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.5 Classification of fusion welded pressure vessels 1.5.2.

1. 5. 5 In special circumstances relating to service conditions, materials, operating temperature, the carriage of dangerous gases and liquids, etc. it may be required that certain pressure vessels be manufactured in accordance with the requirements of a superior class.

1. 5. 6 Details of heat treatment, non-destructive examination and routine tests (where required) are given in Ch 13 Requirements for Welded Construction of the Rules for Materials.

1. 5. 7 Hydraulic testing is required for pressure vessels of Class 1, 2/1 and 2/2.

1. 6 Plans

1. 6. 1 Plans of boilers, superheaters and economisers are to be submitted in triplicate for consideration. When plans of water tube boilers are submitted for approval, particulars of the safety valves and their disposition on boilers and superheaters, together with the estimated pressure drop through the superheaters, are to be stated. The pressures proposed for the settings of boiler and superheater safety valves are to be indicated on the boiler plan.

1. 6. 2 Plans, in triplicate, showing full constructional features of fusion welded pressure vessels and dimensional details of the weld preparation for longitudinal and circumferential seams and attachments, together with particulars of the welding consumables and of the mechanical properties of the materials, are to be submitted before construction is commenced.

1. 6. 3 Plans, in triplicate, showing details of the air flow through the combustion chamber, boiler furnace and boiler uptake spaces, including measures taken to assure effective purging in all of the spaces, are to be submitted for consideration. *See also* Pt 5, Ch 10, 18.3, Main, auxiliary and other boilers and Pt 5, Ch 14, 12.2 Thermal fluid heaters.

1. 6. 4 Plans, in triplicate, showing all areas of refractory material in the combustion chamber and boiler furnace spaces, are to be submitted for consideration. *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.12 Furnace explosion prevention 1.12.1.

1. 6. 5 Calculations, in triplicate, showing that a minimum of 4 air changes of the combustion chamber, boiler furnace and boiler uptake spaces will be achieved during automatic purging operations, with details of the forced draft fans and arrangements of air flow from fan intake to flue outlet, are to be submitted for consideration, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.12 Furnace explosion prevention 1.12.1.

1. 6. 6 Calculations, in triplicate, are to be submitted showing that the ventilation of machinery spaces containing boilers is adequate for the air consumers within the space with an unimpaired air supply, in accordance with the equipment manufacturer's recommendations, under operating conditions as defined in Ch 1, Pt 5, Ch 1, 4.5 Ventilation 4.5.2.

1. 7 Materials

1. 7. 1 Materials used in the construction are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials.

1. 7. 2 The specified minimum tensile strength of carbon and carbon-manganese steel plates, pipes, forgings and castings is to be within the following general limits:

a. For seamless, Class 1, Class 2/1 and Class 2/2 fusion welded pressure vessels: 340 to 520 N/mm^2.
b. For boiler furnaces, combustion chambers and flanged plates: 400 to 520 N/mm^2.

1. 7. 3 The specified minimum tensile strength of low alloy steel plates, pipes, forgings and castings is to be within the general limits of 400 to 500 N/mm^2 and pressure vessels made in these steels are to be either seamless or Class 1 fusion welded.

1. 7. 4 he specified minimum tensile strength of boiler and superheater tubes is to be within the following general limits:

a. Carbon and carbon-manganese steels: 320 to 460 N/mm^2.
b. Low alloy steels: 400 to 500 N/mm^2.

1. 7. 5 Where it is proposed to use materials other than those specified in the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials, details of the chemical compositions, heat treatment and mechanical properties are to be submitted for approval. In such cases the values of the mechanical properties used for deriving the allowable stress are to be subject to agreement by ACS.

1. 7. 6 Where a fusion welded pressure vessel is to be made of alloy steel, and approval of the scantlings is required on the basis of the high temperature properties of the material, particulars of the welding consumables to be used, including typical mechanical properties and chemical composition of the deposited weld metal, are to be submitted for approval.

1. 8 Allowable stress

1. 8. 1 The term `allowable stress', σ, is the stress to be used in the formulae for the calculation of scantlings of pressure parts.

1. 8. 2 The allowable stress, σ, is to be the lowest of the following values:

$$\sigma = \frac{E_t}{1.5}, \sigma = \frac{R_{20}}{2.7}, \sigma = \frac{S_R}{1.5}$$

where

E_t = specified minimum lower yield stress or 0.2 per cent proof stress at temperature, T

R_{20} = specified minimum tensile strength at room temperature

S_R = average stress to produce rupture in 100 000 hours at temperature, T

T = metal temperature, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.4 Metal temperature.

1. 8. 3 The allowable stress for steel castings is to be taken as 80 per cent of the value determined by the method indicated in Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.8 Allowable stress 1.8.2, using the appropriate values for cast steel.

1. 8. 4 Where steel castings, which have been tested in accordance with the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials, are also subjected to non-destructive tests, consideration will be given to increasing the allowable stress using a factor up to 90 per cent in lieu of the 80 per cent referred to in Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.8 Allowable stress 1.8.3. Particulars of the non-destructive test proposals are to be submitted for consideration.

1. 9 Joint factors

1. 9. 1 The following joint factors are to be used in the equations in Pt 5, Ch 10, 2 Cylindrical shells and drums subject to internal pressure to Pt 5, Ch 10, 8 Headers, where applicable. Fusion welded pressure parts are to be made in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 17 Requirements for Fusion Welding of Pressure Vessels and Piping.

Class of pressure vessel	Joint factor
Class 1	1.0
Class 2/1	0.85
Class 2/2	0.75

1. 9. 2 The longitudinal and circumferential joints for all classes of pressure vessels for the purposes of this Chapter are to be butt joints. For typical acceptable methods of attaching dished ends, *See* Figure 10. 14. 1: Typical attachments of dished ends to cylindrical shells.

1. 10 Pressure parts of irregular shape

1. 10. 1 Where pressure parts are of such irregular shape that it is impracticable to design their scantlings by the application of formulae in Pt 5, Ch 10, 2 Cylindrical shells and drums subject to internal pressure to Pt 5, Ch 10, 8 Headers, the suitability of their construction is to be determined by hydraulic proof test of a prototype or by agreed alternative method.

1. 11 Adverse working conditions

1. 11. 1 Where working conditions are adverse, special consideration may be required to be given to increasing the scantlings derived from the formulae. In this connection, where necessary, account should also be taken of any excess of loading resulting from:

a. impact loads, including rapidly fluctuating pressures,
b. weight of the vessel and normal contents under operating and test conditions,
c. superimposed loads such as other pressure vessels, operating equipment, insulation, corrosion-resistant or erosion-resistant linings and piping,
d. reactions of supporting lugs, rings, saddles or other types of supports, or
e. the effect of temperature gradients on maximum stress.

1. 12 Furnace explosion prevention

1. 12. 1 The design of combustion chamber and furnace arrangements is to incorporate measures to minimise the risk of explosion as far as practicable. Measures are to be taken to prevent the accumulation of flammable gases in spaces which may not effectively be reached by purging air. Measures are to be taken to minimise heat retaining surfaces e.g. refractory which can become sources of ignition in the furnace and uptakes.

1. 13 Exhaust gas economiser/boiler arrangements

1. 13. 1 The design of exhaust gas economisers/boilers of the plain or extended surface fin tube types is to be compatible with the installed engine design parameters. The parameters which influence the build up of soot deposits and overheating such as fuel, exhaust gas temperature and efflux velocity are to be considered in the design of the exhaust gas economiser/boiler for use with the installed engine, in order to minimise the risk of fire and breakdown during operation.

1. 13. 2 A Design Statement demonstrating compliance with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.13 Exhaust gas economiser/boiler arrangements 1.13.1 or alternative means of preventing the accumulation of soot or overheating, such as the use of exhaust gas bypass ducting with automatic flap valve arrangements and/or effective soot prevention and cleaning systems, is to be submitted for approval.

PART

5

CHAPTER **10** **Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels**

SECTION **2** **Cylindrical shells and drums subject to internal pressure**

2. 1 Minimum thickness

2. 1. 1 Minimum thickness, t, of a cylindrical shell is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{pR_{\mathrm{i}}}{10\sigma J - 0.5\mathrm{p}} + 0.75\mathrm{mm}$$

where

t, p, R_{i} and σ are defined in Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.2 Definition of symbols,

J = efficiency of ligaments between tube holes or other openings in the shell or the joint factor of the longitudinal joints (expressed as a fraction). *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.9 Joint factors or Pt 5, Ch 10, 2.2, Efficiency of ligaments between tube holes, whichever applies. In the case of seamless shells clear of tube holes or other openings, $J = 1.0$.

2. 1. 2 The formula in Pt 5, Ch 10, 2.1 Minimum thickness 2.1.1 is applicable only where the resulting thickness does not exceed half the internal radius, i.e. where R_{o} is not greater than $1.5R_{\mathrm{i}}$.

2. 1. 3 Irrespective of the thickness determined by the above formula, t is to be not less than:

a. 6.0 mm for cylindrical shell plates.

b. For tube plates, such thickness as will give a minimum parallel seat of 9.5 mm, or such greater width as may be necessary to ensure tube tightness, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 14.6 Fitting of tubes in water tube boilers.

2. 2 Efficiency of ligaments between tube holes

2. 2. 1 Where tube holes are drilled in a cylindrical shell in a line or lines parallel to its axis, the efficiency, J, of the ligaments is to be determined as in Pt 5, Ch 10, 2.2 Efficiency of ligaments between tube holes 2.2.2, Pt 5, Ch 10, 2.2 Efficiency of ligaments between tube holes 2.2.3 and Pt 5, Ch 10, 2.2 Efficiency of ligaments between tube holes 2.2.4.

2. 2. 2 **Regular drilling.** Where the distance between adjacent tube holes is constant, *See* Figure 10. 2. 1: Regular drilling,

$$J = \frac{s - d}{s}$$

where

d = the mean effective diameter of the tube holes, in mm, after allowing for any serrations, counterboring or recessing, or the compensating effect of the tube stub. *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 2.3 Compensating effect of tube stubs and Pt 5, Ch 10, 2.4, Unreinforced openings.

s = pitch of tube holes, in mm.

2. 2. 3 **Irregular drilling.** Where the distance between centres of adjacent tube holes is not constant, *See* Figure 10. 2. 2: Irregular drilling:

$$J = \frac{s_1 + s_2 - 2d}{s_1 + s_2}$$

where

d = is as defined in Pt 5, Ch 10, 2.2 Efficiency of ligaments between tube holes 2.2.2

s_1 = the shorter of any two adjacent pitches, in mm

s_2 = the longer of any two adjacent pitches, in mm.

2. 2. 4 When applying the formula in Pt 5, Ch 10, 2.2 Efficiency of ligaments between tube holes 2.2.3, the double pitch ($s_1 + s_2$) chosen is to be that which makes J, a minimum, and in no case is s_2 to be taken as greater than twice s_1.

Figure 10. 2. 1: Regular drilling

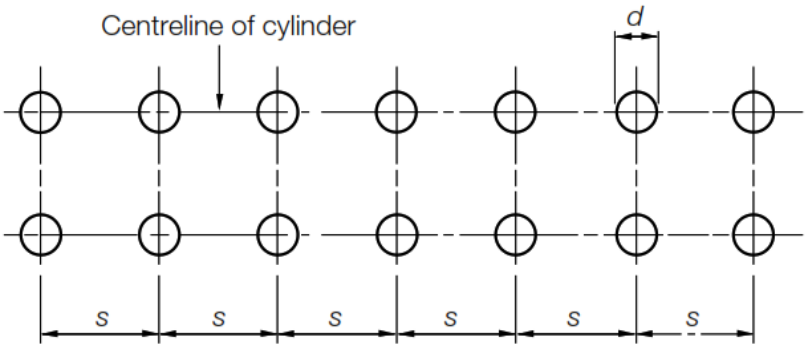
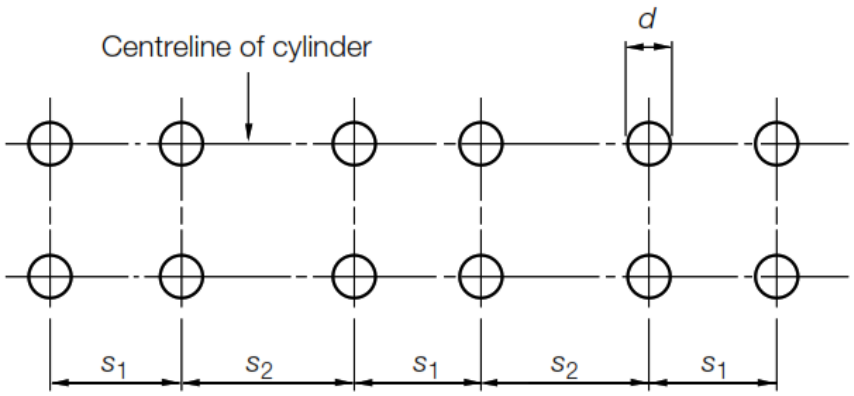


Figure 10. 2. 2: Irregular drilling



2. 2. 5 Where the circumferential pitch between tube holes measured on the mean of the external and internal drum or header diameters is such that the circumferential ligament efficiency determined by the formulae in Pt 5, Ch 10, 2.2 Efficiency of ligaments between tube holes 2.2.2 and Pt 5, Ch 10, 2.2 Efficiency of ligaments between tube holes 2.2.3 is less than one-half of the ligament efficiency on the longitudinal axis, *J* in Pt 5, Ch 10, 2.1, Minimum thickness is to be taken as twice the circumferential efficiency.

2. 2. 6 Where tube holes are drilled in a cylindrical shell along a diagonal line with respect to the longitudinal axis, the efficiency, *J*, of the ligaments is to be determined as in Pt 5, Ch 10, 2.2 Efficiency of ligaments between tube holes 2.2.7.

2. 2. 7 For spacing of tube holes on a diagonal line as shown in Figure 10. 2. 3: Spacing of holes on a diagonal line, or in a regular saw-tooth pattern as shown in Figure 10. 2. 4: Regular saw-tooth patten of holes, *J* is to be determined from the formula in Pt 5, Ch 10, 2.2 Efficiency of ligaments between tube holes 2.2.8, where *a* and *b*, as shown in Figure 10. 2. 3: Spacing of holes on a diagonal line and Figure 10. 2. 4: Regular saw-tooth patten of holes, are measured, in mm, on the median line of the plate, and *d*, is as defined in Pt 5, Ch 10, 2.2 Efficiency of ligaments between tube holes 2.2.2.

2. 2. 8 For tube holes on a diagonal line:

$$J = \frac{2}{A + B + \sqrt{(A - B)^2 + 4C^2}}$$

where

$$A = \frac{\cos^2 \alpha + 1}{2\left(1 - \frac{d\cos\alpha}{a}\right)}$$

$$B = 0.5\left(1 - \frac{d\cos\alpha}{a}\right)(\sin^2 \alpha + 1)$$

$$C = \frac{\sin \alpha \cos \alpha}{2\left(1 - \frac{d\cos\alpha}{a}\right)}$$

$$\cos \alpha = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + \frac{b^2}{a^2}}}$$

$$\sin \alpha = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1+\frac{a^2}{b^2}}}$$

α = angle between centreline of cylinder and centreline of diagonal holes.

Figure 10. 2. 3: Spacing of holes on a diagonal line

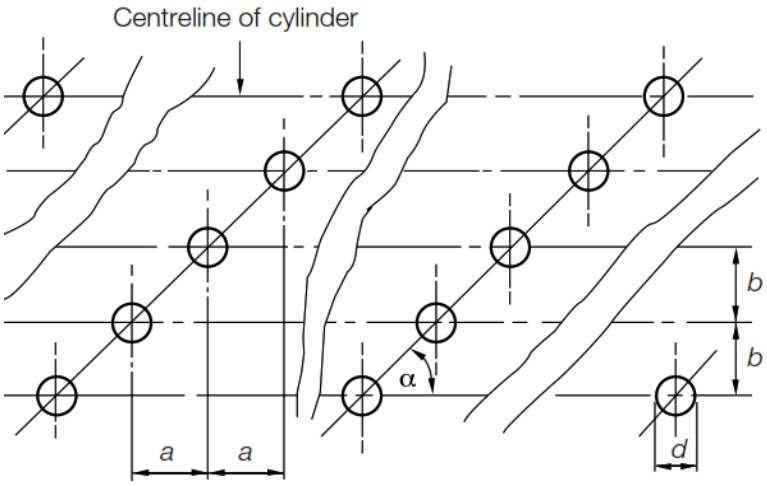
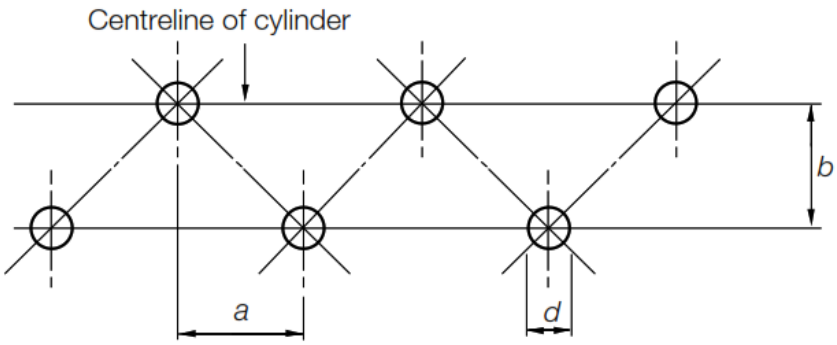


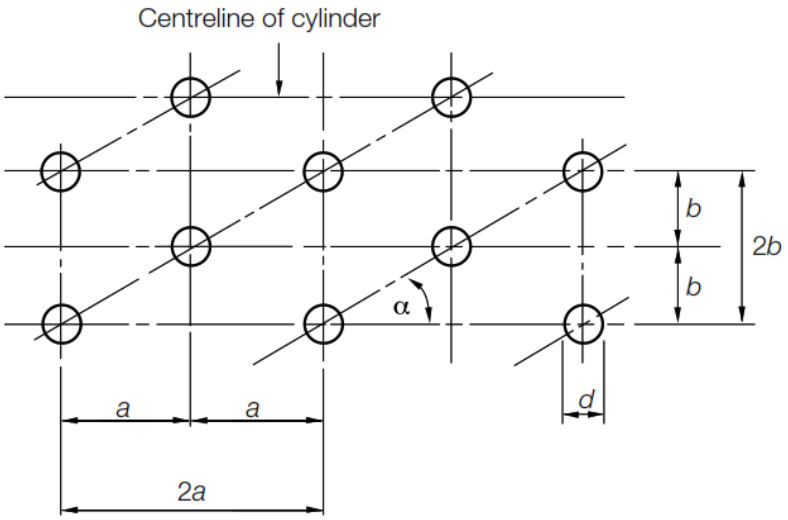
Figure 10. 2. 4: Regular saw-tooth patten of holes



2. 2. 9 For regularly staggered spacing of tube holes as shown in Figure 10. 2. 5: Regular staggering of holes, the smallest value of the efficiency, *J*, of all ligaments (longitudinal, circumferential and diagonal) is obtained from Figure 10. 2. 7: Compensation of welded tube stubs The calculated minimum thickness is to satisfy 7.1, where *a* and *b*, as shown in Figure 10. 2. 5: Regular staggering of holes, are measured, in mm, on the median line of the plate, and *d* is as defined in Pt 5, Ch 10, 2.2 Efficiency of ligaments between tube holes 2.2.2.

2. 2. 10 For irregularly spaced tube holes whose centres do not lie on a straight line, the formula in Pt 5, Ch 10, 2.2 Efficiency of ligaments between tube holes 2.2.3 is to apply, except that an equivalent longitudinal width of the diagonal ligament is to be used. An equivalent longitudinal width is that width which gives, using the formula in Pt 5, Ch 10, 2.2 Efficiency of ligaments between tube holes 2.2.2, the same efficiency as would be obtained using the formula in Pt 5, Ch 10, 2.2 Efficiency of ligaments between tube holes 2.2.8 for the diagonal ligament in question.

Figure 10. 2. 5: Regular staggering of holes



2. 3 Compensating effect of tube stubs

2. 3. 1 Where a drum or header is drilled for tube stubs fitted by strength welding, either in line or in staggered formation, the effective diameter of holes is to be taken as:

$$d_e = d_a - \frac{A}{t}$$

where

d_e = the equivalent diameter of the hole, in mm

d_a = the actual diameter of the hole, in mm

t = the thickness of the shell, in mm

A = the compensating area provided by each tube stub and its welding fillets, in mm^2.

2. 3. 2 The compensating area, A, is to be measured in a plane through the axis of the tube stub parallel to the longitudinal axis of the drum or header and is to be calculated as follows, *See* Figure 10. 2. 7: Compensation of welded tube stubs The calculated minimum thickness is to satisfy 7.1 and Figure 10. 2. 8: Compensation of welded tube stubs The calculated minimum thickness is to satisfy 7.1:

- The cross-sectional area of the stub, in excess of that required by Pt 5, Ch 10, 7.1, Minimum thickness for the minimum tube thickness, from the interior surface of the shell up to a distance, b, from the outer surface of the shell;
- plus the cross-sectional area of the stub projecting inside the shell within a distance, b, from the inner surface of the shell;
- plus the cross-sectional area of the welding fillets inside and outside the shell;

where

$$b = \sqrt{d_a t_b}$$

t_b = actual thickness of tube stub, in mm.

2. 3. 3 Where the material of the tube stub has an allowable stress lower than that of the shell, the compensating cross-sectional area of the stub is to be multiplied by the ratio:

$$\frac{\text{allowable stress of stub at design metal temperature}}{\text{allowable stress of shell at design metal temperature}}$$

Figure 10. 2. 6: Efficiency of ligaments between holes

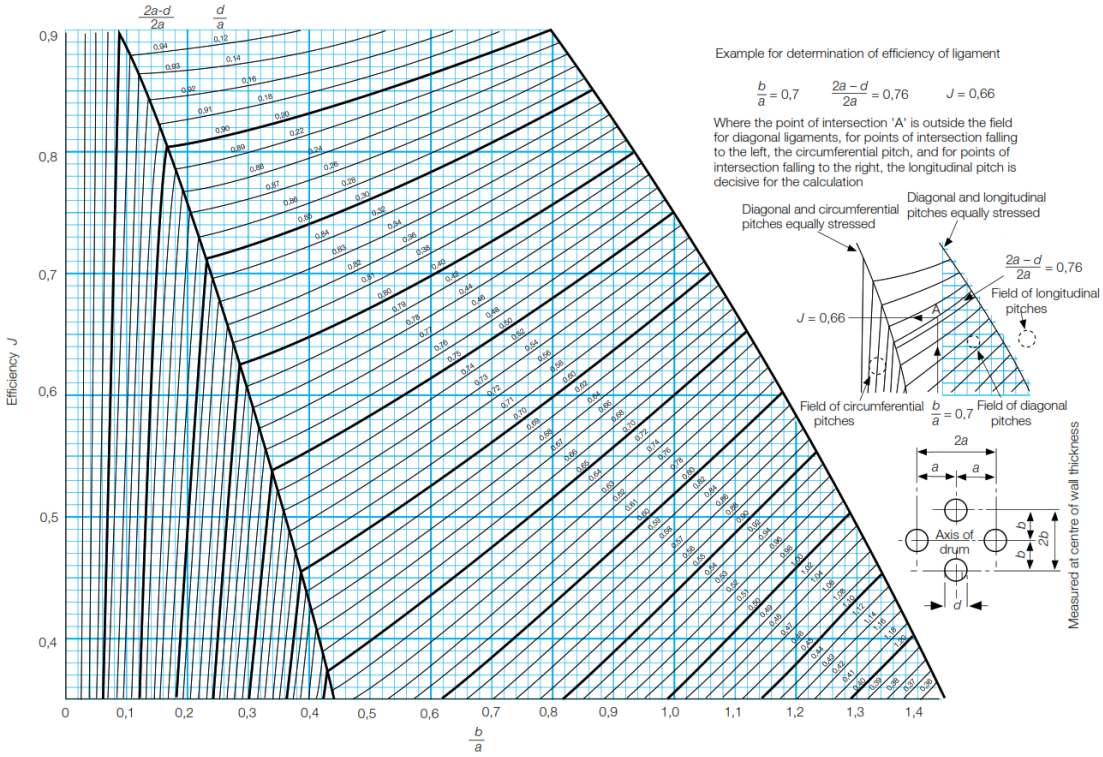
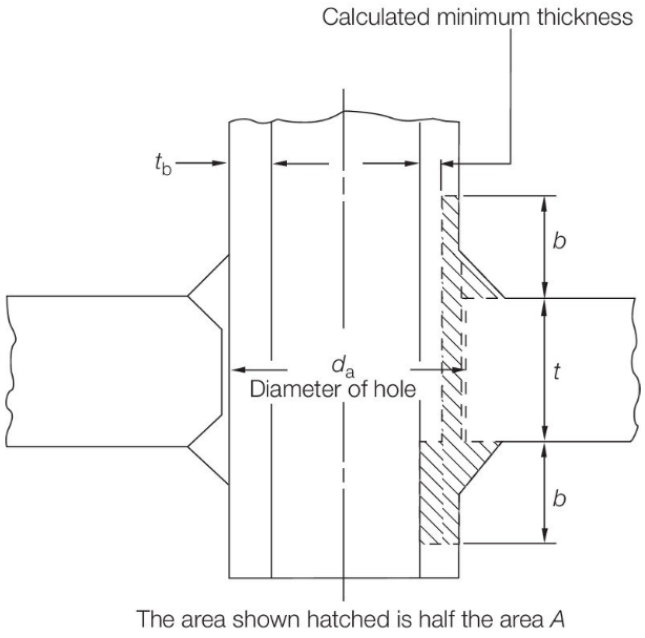
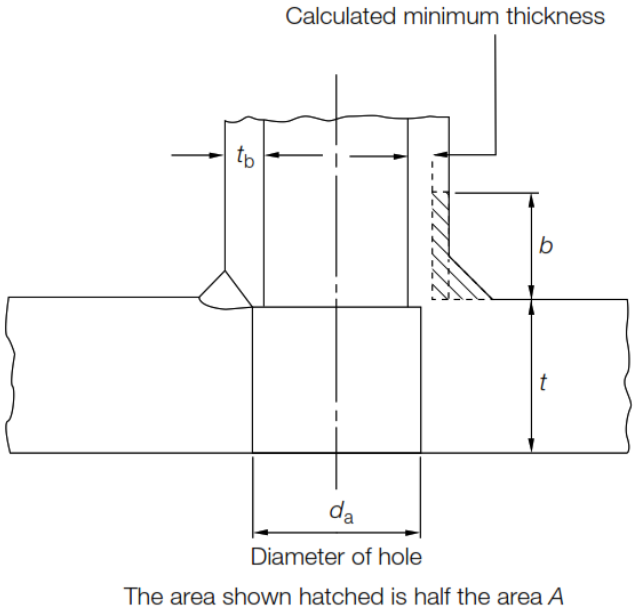


Figure 10. 2. 7: Compensation of welded tube stubs



The calculated minimum thickness is to satisfy 7.1

Figure 10. 2. 8: Compensation of welded tube stubs



The calculated minimum thickness is to satisfy 7.1

2. 4 Unreinforced openings

2. 4. 1 Openings in a definite pattern, such as tube holes, may be designed in accordance with the Rules for ligaments in Pt 5, Ch 10, 2.2, Efficiency of ligaments between tube holes, provided that the diameter of the largest hole in the group does not exceed that permitted by Pt 5, Ch 10, 2.4 Unreinforced openings 2.4.2.

2. 4. 2 The maximum diameter, d, of any unreinforced isolated openings is to be determined by the following formula:

$$d = 8.08[D_o t(1-K)]^{1/3} \quad \text{in} \quad \text{mm}$$

The value of K to be used is calculated from the following formula:

$$K = \frac{pD_o}{18.2\sigma t} \text{ but is not to be taken as greatert han 0, 99}$$

where

p, D_o and σ are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.2 Definition of symbols

t = actual thickness of shell, in mm.

2. 4. 3 For elliptical or oval holes, d, for the purposes of Pt 5, Ch 10, 2.4 Unreinforced openings 2.4.2, refers to the major axis when this lies longitudinally or to the mean of the major and minor axes when the minor axis lies longitudinally.

2. 4. 4 No unreinforced opening is to exceed 200 mm in diameter.

2. 4. 5 Holes may be considered isolated if the centre distance between two holes on the longitudinal axis of a cylindrical shell is not less than:

$$d + 1.1\sqrt{Dt}\text{ , With a minumum } 5d$$

where

d = diameter of openings in shell (mean diameter if dissimilarly sized holes involved)

D = mean diameter of shell

t = actual thickness of shell

Where the centre distance is less than so derived, the holes are to be fully compensated.
Where two holes are offset on a diagonal line, the diagonal efficiency from Figure 10. 2. 6: Efficiency of ligaments between holes may be used to derive an equivalent longitudinal centre distance for the purposes of this paragraph.

2. 5 Reinforced openings

2. 5. 1 Openings larger than those permitted by Pt 5, Ch 10, 2.4, Unreinforced openings are to be compensated in accordance with Figure 10. 2. 9: Compensation for welded standpipes or branches in cylindrical shells (a) or (b). The following symbols are used in Figure 10. 2. 9: Compensation for welded standpipes or branches in cylindrical shells (a) and (b):

t_s = calculated thickness of a shell without joint or opening or corrosion allowance, in mm

t_d = thickness calculated in accordance with 7.1 without corrosion allowance, in mm

t_a = actual thickness of shell plate without corrosion allowance, in mm

t_b = actual thickness of standpipe without minus tolerances and corrosion allowance, in mm

t_r = thickness of added reinforcement, in mm

D_i = internal diameter of cylindrical shell, in mm

d_o = diameter of hole in shell, in mm

L = width of added reinforcement not exceeding D, in mm

C = $\sqrt{d_o t_b}$ in mm

D = $\sqrt{D_i t_a}$ and is not to exceed $0.5d_o$, in mm

σ = shell plate allowable stress, N/mm^2

σ_p = standpipe allowable stress, N/mm^2

σ_r = added reinforcement allowable stress, N/mm^2

σ_w = weld metal allowable stress, N/mm^2

Note

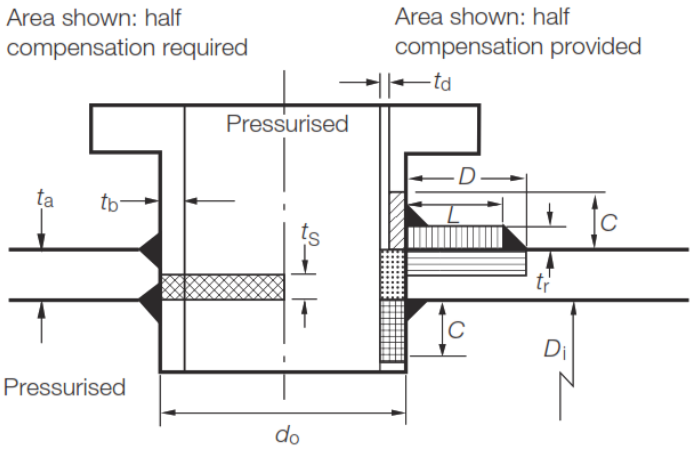
σ_p, σ_r and σ_w = are not to be taken as greater than σ.

2. 5. 2 For elliptical or oval holes, the dimension on the meridian of the shell is to be used for d_o in Pt 5, Ch 10, 2.5 Reinforced openings 2.5.1.

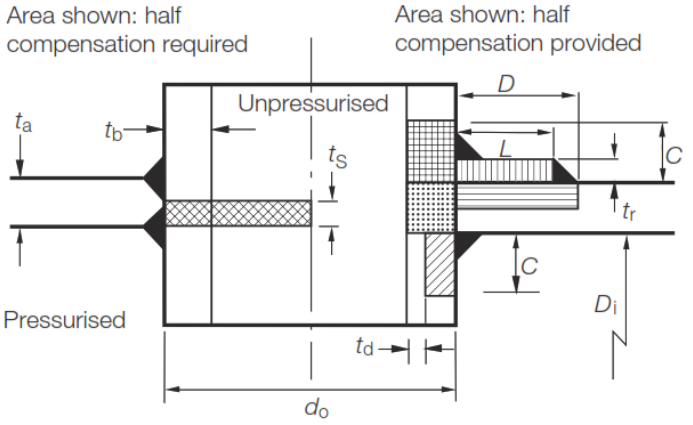
2. 5. 3 Compensation is to be distributed equally on either side of the centreline of the opening.

2. 5. 4 The welds attaching standpipes and reinforcing plates to the shell are to be of sufficient size to transmit the full strength of the reinforcing areas and all other loadings to which they may be subjected.

Figure 10. 2. 9: Compensation for welded standpipes or branches in cylindrical shells



(a) Standpipes or branches



(b) Insert pieces for internal doors

Compensation required:

A_1 = ▨ $= d_o\, t_S$ mm²

Compensation provided:

A_2 = ▤ $= 2D\,(t_a - t_S)$ mm²

A_3 = ▦ $= 2\,t_b\,t_a\,\frac{\sigma_p}{\sigma}$ mm²

A_4 = ▦ $= 2C\,t_b\,\frac{\sigma_p}{\sigma}$ mm²

A_5 = ▨ $= 2C\,(t_b - t_d)\,\frac{\sigma_p}{\sigma}$ mm²

A_6 = ▥ $= 2L\,t_r\,\frac{\sigma_r}{\sigma}$ mm²

A_7 = ◣ = (Area of fillet welds) $\frac{\sigma_w}{\sigma}$ mm²

$$A_2 + A_3 + A_4 + A_5 + A_6 + A_7 \geq A_1$$

2665/12

PART

5

CHAPTER **10** **Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels**

SECTION **3** **Spherical shells subject to internal pressure**

3. 1 Minimum thickness

3. 1. 1 The minimum thickness of a spherical shell is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{pR_{\mathrm{i}}}{20\sigma J - 0.5\mathrm{p}} + 0.75 \quad \mathrm{mm}$$

where t, p, R_{i}, σ and J are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.2 Definition of symbols.

3. 1. 2 The formula in Pt 5, Ch 10, 3.1 Minimum thickness 3.1.1 is applicable only where the resulting thickness does not exceed half the internal radius.

3. 1. 3 Openings in spherical shells requiring compensation are to comply, in general, with Pt 5, Ch 10, 2.5, Reinforced openings, using the calculated and actual thicknesses of the spherical shell as applicable.

PART

5

CHAPTER **10** **Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels**

SECTION **4** **Dished ends subject to internal pressure**

4. 1 Minimum thickness

4. 1. 1 The thickness, t, of semi-ellipsoidal and hemispherical unstayed ends, and the knuckle section of torispherical ends, dished from plate, having pressure on the concave side and satisfying the conditions listed below, is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{pD_oK}{20\sigma J} + 0.75 \text{ mm}$$

where

t, p, D_o, σ and J are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.2 Definition of symbols

K = a shape factor, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 4.2 Shape factors for dished ends and Figure 10. 4. 1: Shape factor.

4. 1. 2 For semi-ellipsoidal ends:

the external height, $H \geq 0.18\ D_o$

where

D_o = the external diameter of the parallel portion of the end, in mm.

4. 1. 3 For torispherical ends:

the internal radius, $R_i \leq D_o$

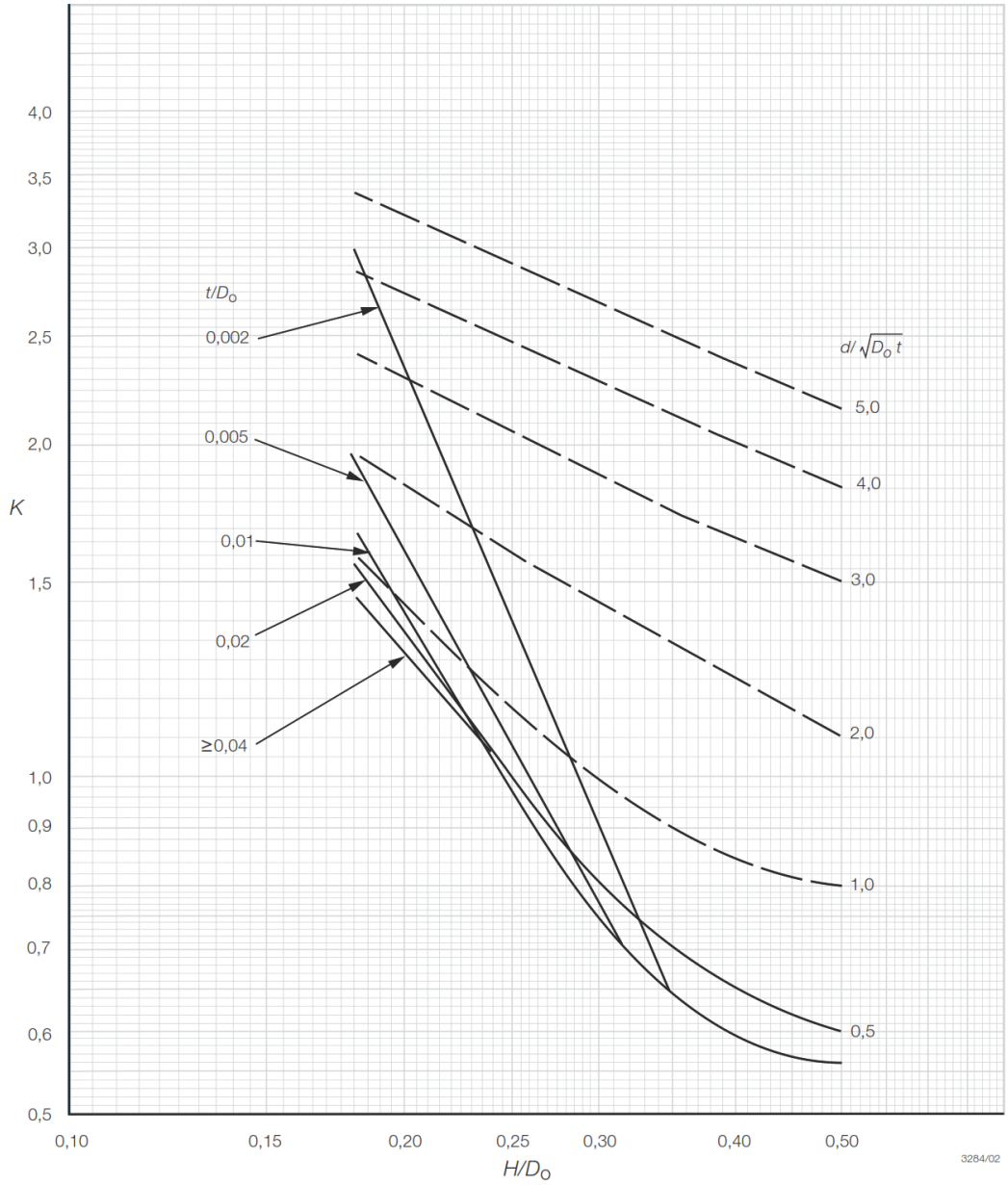
the internal knuckle radius, $R_i \geq 0.1D_o$

the internal knuckle radius, $R_i \geq 3t$

the external height, $H \geq 0.18D_o$ and is determined as follows:

$$H = R_o - \sqrt{(R_o - 0.5D_o)(R_o + 0.5D_o - 2r_o)}$$

Figure 10. 4. 1: Shape factor



4. 1. 4 In addition to the formula in Pt 5, Ch 10, 4.1 Minimum thickness 4.1.1 the thickness, t, of a torispherical head, made from more than one plate, in the crown section is to be not less than that determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{pR_i}{20\sigma J - 0.5p} + 0.75\text{mm}$$

where

t, p, R_i, σ and J are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.2 Definition of symbols.

4. 1. 5 The thickness required by Pt 5, Ch 10, 4.1 Minimum thickness 4.1.1 for the knuckle section of a torispherical head is to extend past the common tangent point of the knuckle and crown radii into

the crown section for a distance not less than $0.5\sqrt{R_1 t}$ mm, before reducing to the crown thickness permitted by Pt 5, Ch 10, 4.1 Minimum thickness 4.1.4,

where

t = the required thickness from Pt 5, Ch 10, 4.1 Minimum thickness 4.1.1.

4. 1. 6 In all cases, H, is to be measured from the commencement of curvature, *See* Figure 10. 4. 2: Typical dished ends.

4. 1. 7 The minimum thickness of the head, t, is to be not less than 6.0 mm.

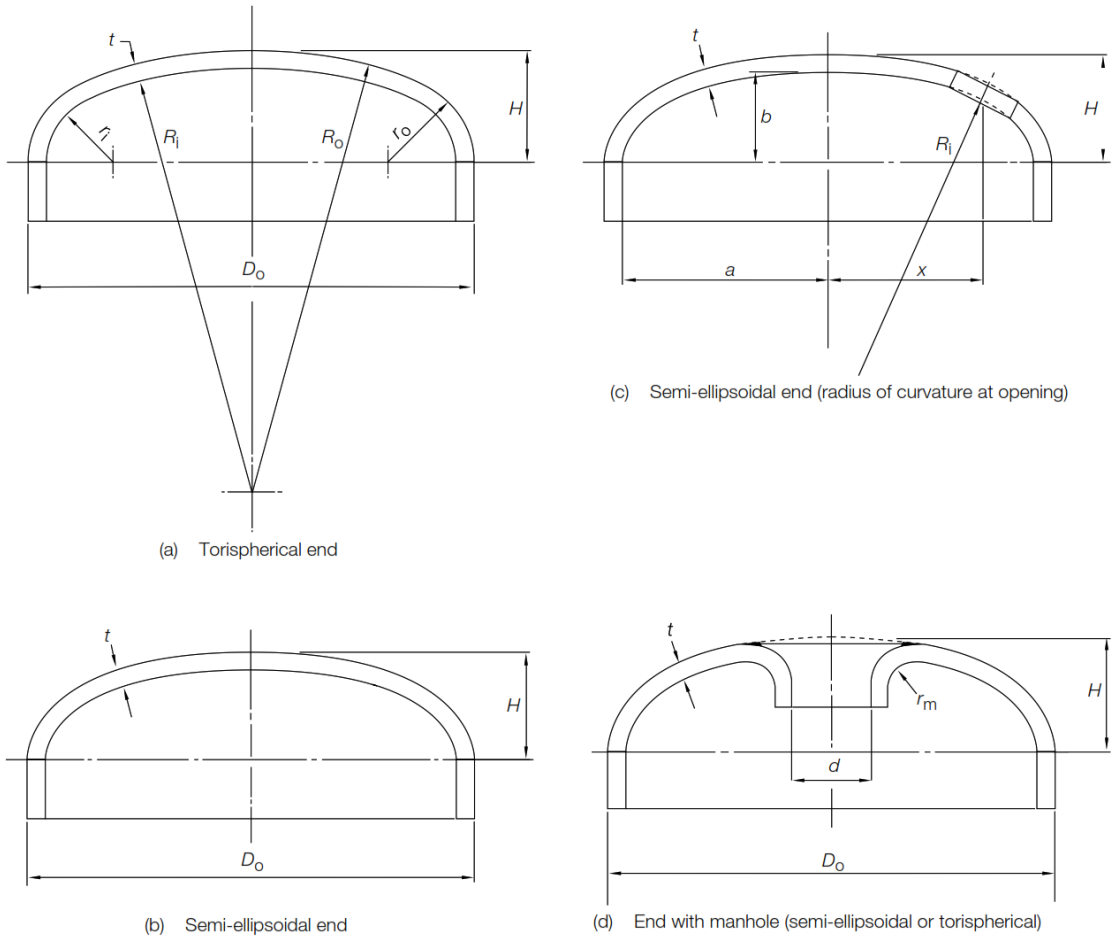
4. 1. 8 For ends which are butt welded to the drum shell, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.8, Allowable stress, the thickness of the edge of the flange for connection to the shell is to be not less than the thickness of an unpierced seamless or welded shell, whichever is applicable, of the same diameter and material and determined by Pt 5, Ch 10, 2.1, Minimum thickness.

4. 2 Shape factors for dished ends

4. 2. 1 The shape factor, K, to be used in Pt 5, Ch 10, 4.1 Minimum thickness 4.1.1 is to be obtained from the curves in Figure 10. 4. 1: Shape factor, and depends on the ratio of height to diameter $\frac{H}{D_0}$.

4. 2. 2 The lowest curve in the series provides the factor, K, for plain (i.e. unpierced) ends. For lower values of $\frac{H}{D_0}$, K depends upon the ratio of thickness to diameter, $\frac{t}{D_0}$, as well as on the ratio $\frac{H}{D_0}$ and a trial calculation may be necessary to arrive at the correct value of K.

Figure 10. 4. 2: Typical dished ends



4. 3 Dished ends with unreinforced openings

4. 3. 1 Openings in dished ends may be circular, obround or approximately elliptical.

4. 3. 2 The upper curves in Figure 10. 4. 1: Shape factor provide values of K, to be used in Pt 5, Ch 10, 4.1 Minimum thickness 4.1.1, for ends with unreinforced openings. The selection of the correct curve depends on the value $\frac{d}{\sqrt{D_o t}}$ and trial calculation is necessary to select the correct curve,

where

d = the diameter of the largest opening in the end plate, in mm (in the case of an elliptical opening, the larger axis of the ellipse)

t = minimum thickness, after dishing, in mm

D_o = outside diameter of dished end, in mm.

4. 3. 3 The following requirements must in any case be satisfied:

$$\frac{t}{D_o} \leq 0.1$$
$$\frac{d}{D_o} \leq 0.7$$

4. 3. 4 From Figure 10. 4. 1: Shape factor for any selected ratio of $\frac{H}{D_0}$ the curve for unpierced ends gives a value for $\frac{d}{\sqrt{D_o t}}$ as well as for *K*. Openings giving a value of $\frac{d}{\sqrt{D_o t}}$ not greater than the value so obtained may thus be pierced through an end designed as unpierced without any increase in thickness.

4. 4 Flanged openings in dished ends

4. 4. 1 The requirements in Pt 5, Ch 10, 4.3 Dished ends with unreinforced openings apply equally to flanged openings and to unflanged openings cut in the plate of an end. No reduction may be made in end plate thickness on account of flanging.

4. 4. 2 Where openings are flanged, the radius, r_m of the flanging is to be not less than 25 mm, *See* Figure 10. 4. 2: Typical dished ends. The thickness of the flanged portion may be less than the calculated thickness.

4. 5 Location of unreinforced and flanged openings in dished ends

4. 5. 1 Unreinforced and flanged openings in dished ends are to be so arranged that the distance from the edge of the hole to the outside edge of the plate and the distance between openings are not less than those shown in Figure 10. 4. 3: Opening in dished ends.

4. 6 Dished ends with reinforced openings

4. 6. 1 Where it is desired to use a large opening in a dished end of less thickness than would be required by Pt 5, Ch 10, 4.3 Dished ends with unreinforced openings, the end is to be reinforced. This reinforcement may consist of a ring or standpipe welded into the hole, or of reinforcing plates welded to the outside and/or inside of the end in the vicinity of the hole, or a combination of both methods, *See* Figure 10. 4. 4: Limits of reinforcement. Forged reinforcements may be used.

Figure 10. 4. 3: Opening in dished ends

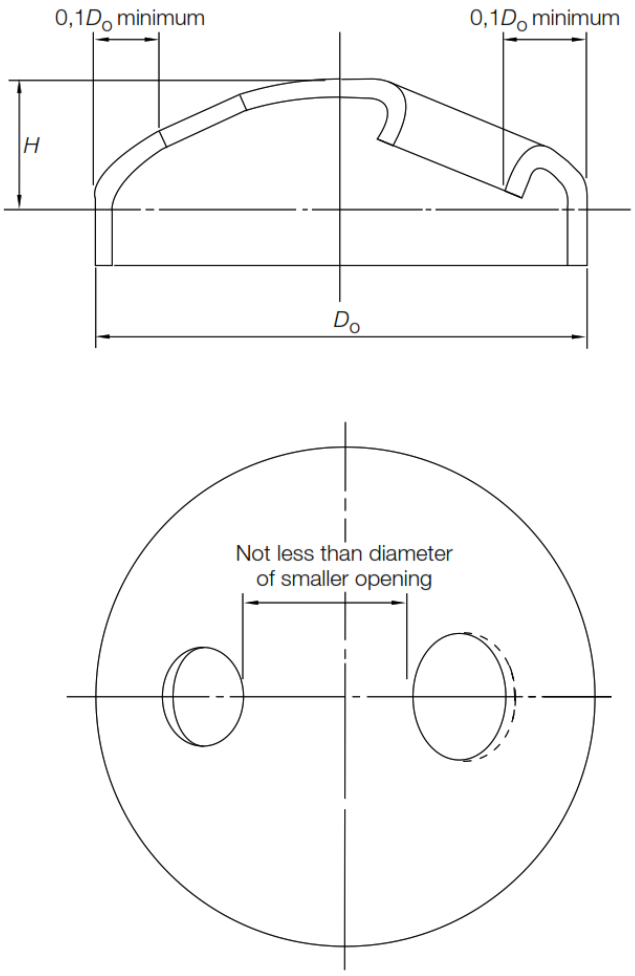
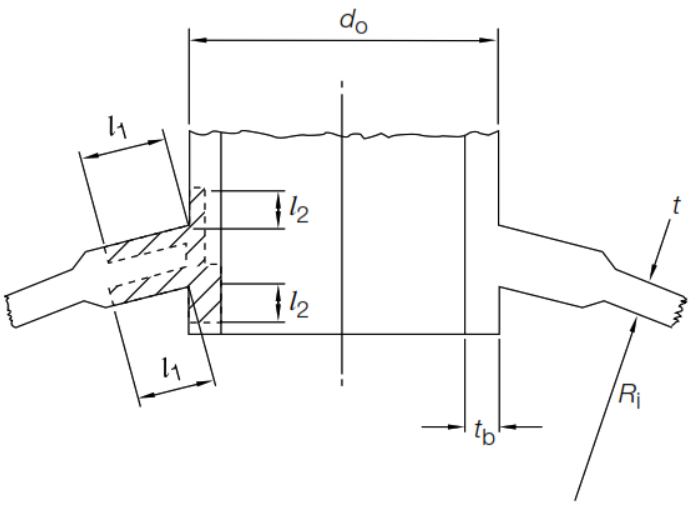


Figure 10. 4. 4: Limits of reinforcement



$l_1 = \sqrt{2R_i t}$ or $0{,}5d_o$ whichever is the lesser

l_2 is not to exceed $\sqrt{d_o t_b}$

4. 6. 2 Reinforcing material with the following limits may be taken as effective reinforcement:

a. The effective width, l_1 of reinforcement is not to exceed $\sqrt{2R_i t}$ or $0.5d_o$ whichever is the lesser.

b. The effective length, l_2 of a reinforcing ring is not to exceed $\sqrt{d_0 t_b}$

where

R_i = the internal radius of the spherical part of a torispherical end, in mm, or

R_i = internal radius of the meridian of the ellipse at the centre of the opening, of a semi-ellipsoidal end, in mm, and is given by the following formula:

$$= \frac{[a^4 - x^2(a^2 - b^2)]^{\frac{3}{2}}}{a^4 b}$$

c = where *a, b* and *x* are shown in Figure 10. 4. 2: Typical dished ends

d_o = external diameter of ring or standpipe, in mm

l_1 and l_2 = are shown in Figure 10. 4. 4: Limits of reinforcement

t_b = actual thickness of ring or standpipe, in mm.

4. 6. 3 The shape factor, *K*, for a dished end having a reinforced opening can be read from Figure 10. 4. 1: Shape factor using the value obtained from:

$$\frac{d_o - \frac{A}{t}}{\sqrt{D_o t}} \text{ instead of from } \frac{d}{\sqrt{D_o t}}$$

where

A = the effective cross-sectional area of reinforcement and is to be twice the area shown shaded on Figure 10. 4. 4: Limits of reinforcement.

As in Pt 5, Ch 10, 4.3 Dished ends with unreinforced openings, a trial calculation is necessary in order to select the correct curve.

4. 6. 4 The area shown in Figure 10. 4. 4: Limits of reinforcement is to be obtained as follows:

- Calculate the cross-sectional area of reinforcement both inside and outside the end plate within the length, l_1.
- plus the full cross-sectional area of that part of the ring or standpipe which projects inside the end plate up to a distance, l_2.
- plus the full cross-sectional area of that part of the ring or standpipe which projects outside the internal surface of the end plate up to a distance, l_2 and deduct the sectional area which the ring or standpipe would have if its thickness were as calculated in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 10, 7.1, Minimum thickness.

4. 6. 5 If the material of the ring or the reinforcing plates has an allowable stress value lower than that of the end plate, then the effective cross-sectional area, *A*, is to be multiplied by the ratio:

$$\frac{\text{allowable stress of reinforcing plate at design temperature}}{\text{allowable stress of endplateat designt emperature}}$$

4. 7 Torispherical dished ends with reinforced openings

4. 7. 1 If an opening and its reinforcement are positioned entirely within the crown section, the compensation requirements are to be as for a spherical shell, using the crown radius as the spherical shell radius. Otherwise the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 10, 4.6 Dished ends with reinforced openings are to be applied.

PART

5

CHAPTER **10** **Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels**

SECTION **5** **Dished ends subject to internal pressure**

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 Conical ends and conical reducing sections, as shown in Figure 10. 5. 1: Conical ends and conical reducing sections, are to be designed in accordance with the equations given in Pt 5, Ch 10, 5.2, Minimum thickness.

5. 1. 2 Connections between cylindrical shell and conical sections and ends should preferably be by means of a knuckle transition radius. Typical permitted details are shown in Figure 10. 5. 1: Conical ends and conical reducing sections. Alternatively, conical sections and ends may be butt welded to cylinders without a knuckle radius where the change in angle of slope, ψ, between the two sections under consideration does not exceed 30°.

5. 1. 3 Conical ends may be constructed of several ring sections of decreasing thickness, as determined by the corresponding decreasing diameter.

5. 2 Minimum thickness

5. 2. 1 The minimum thickness, t, of cylinder, knuckle and conical section at the junction and within the distance, L, from the junction is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{pD_oK}{20\sigma J} + 0.75\text{mm}$$

where

t, p, σ and J are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.2 Definition of symbols,

K = a factor, taking into account the stress in the knuckle, *See* Table 10. 5. 1: Values of K as a function of ψ and ri/Do.

D_o = outside diameter, in mm, of the conical section or end, *See* Figure 10. 5. 1: Conical ends and conical reducing sections.

5. 2. 2 If the distance of a circumferential seam from the knuckle or junction is not to be less than L, then J is to be taken as 1.0; otherwise J is to be taken as the weld joint factor appropriate to the circumferential seam,

where

L = distance, in mm, from the knuckle or junction within which meridional stresses determine the required thickness, *See* Figure 10. 5. 1: Conical ends and conical reducing sections

$$= 0.5\sqrt{\frac{D_0 t}{\cos\psi}}$$

r_i = inside radius of transition knuckle, in mm, which is to be taken as $0.01D_c$ in the case of conical sections without knuckle transition.

ψ = difference between angle of slope of two adjoining conical sections, *See* Figure 10. 5. 1: Conical ends and conical reducing sections.

Figure 10. 5. 1: Conical ends and conical reducing sections

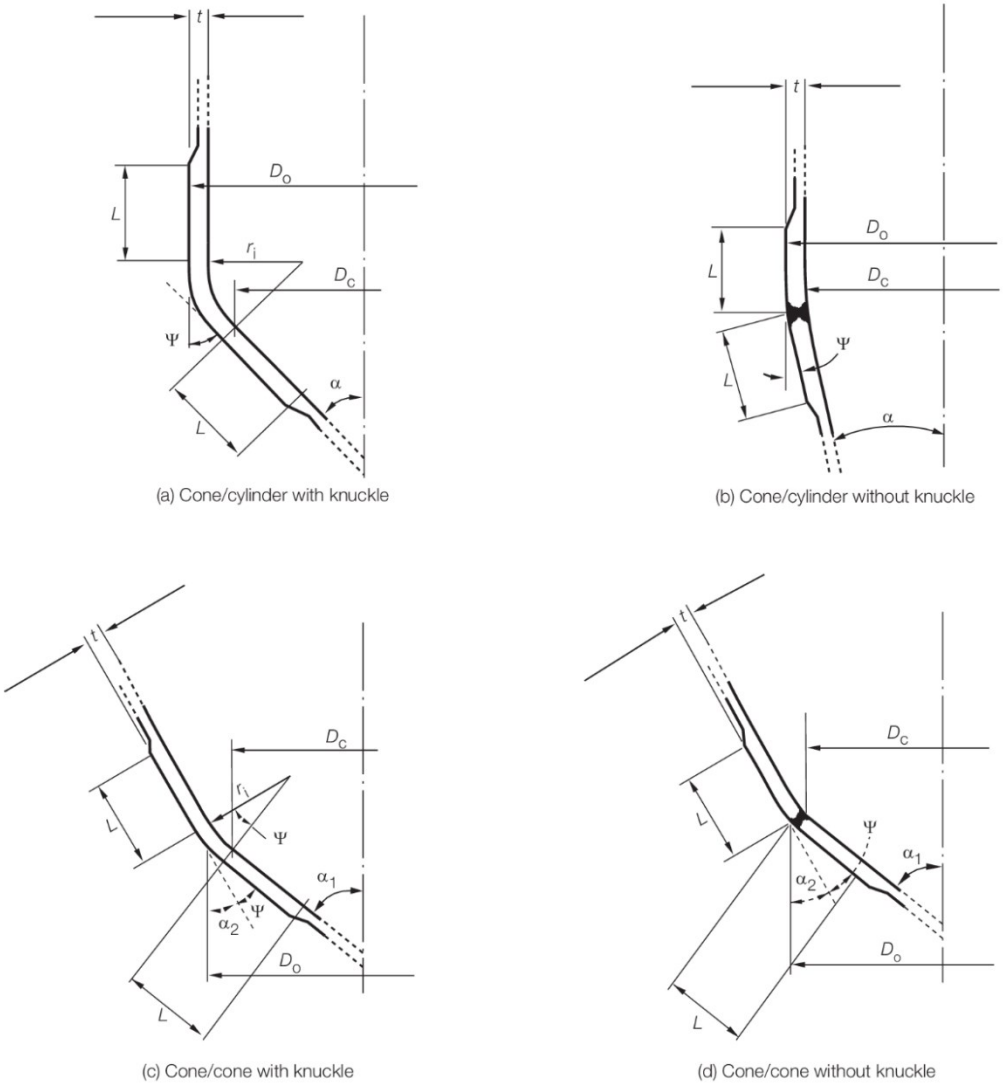


Table 10. 5. 1: Values of K as a function of ψ and r_i/D_o

	Values of K for r_i/D_o ratios of											
ψ	0.01	0.02	0.03	0.04	0.06	0.08	0.10	0.15	0.20	0.30	0.40	0.50

10°	0.70	0.65	0.60	0.60	0.55	0.55	0.55	0.55	0.55	0.55	0.55	0.55
20°	1.00	0.90	0.85	0.80	0.70	0.65	0.60	0.55	0.55	0.55	0.55	0.55
30°	1.35	1.20	1.10	1.00	0.90	0.85	0.80	0.70	0.65	0.55	0.55	0.55
45°	2.05	1.85	1.65	1.50	1.30	1.20	1.10	0.95	0.90	0.70	0.55	0.55
60°	3.20	2.85	2.55	2.35	2.00	1.75	1.60	1.40	1.25	1.00	0.70	0.55
75°	6.80	5.85	5.35	4.75	3.85	3.50	3.15	2.70	2.40	1.55	1.00	0.55

5. 2. 3 The minimum thickness, t, of those parts of conical sections not less than a distance, L, from the junction with a cylinder or other conical section is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{pD_c}{(20\sigma J - p)} \frac{1}{\cos \alpha} + 0.75\text{mm}$$

where

D_c = inside diameter, in mm of conical section or end at the position under consideration, *See* Figure 10. 5. 1: Conical ends and conical reducing sections

α, α_1, α_2 = angle of slope of conical section (at the point under consideration) to the vessel axis, *See* Figure 10. 5. 1: Conical ends and conical reducing sections.

5. 2. 4 The greater of the two thicknesses determined by the formulae in Pt 5, Ch 10, 5.2 Minimum thickness 5.2.1 and Pt 5, Ch 10, 5.2 Minimum thickness 5.2.3 is to apply at the junction or knuckle and within the limits of reinforcement.

5. 2. 5 The thickness of conical sections having an angle of inclination to the vessel axis of more than 75° is to be determined as for a flat plate.

PART

5

CHAPTER 10 **Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels**

SECTION 6 **Standpipes and branches**

6. 1 Minimum thickness

6. 1. 1 The minimum wall thickness of standpipes and branches is to be not less than that determined by Pt 5, Ch 10, 7.1, Minimum thickness increased by the addition of a corrosion allowance of 0.75 mm, making such additions as may be necessary on account of bending, static loads and vibration. The wall thickness, however, is to be not less than:

$t = 0.015D_o + 3.2$ mm

This thickness need only be maintained for a length, L, from the outside surface of the vessel, but need not extend past the first connection, butt weld or flange, where:

$$L = 3.5\sqrt{D_o t}\ \text{mm}$$

where t and D_o are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.2 Definition of symbols.

6. 1. 2 For boilers having a working pressure exceeding 5 MPa and safety valves of full lift or full bore type, the thickness of the branch pipe carrying the superheater or drum safety valves is to be not less than:

$$t = \frac{1}{\sigma}\left[1.7d + \frac{DWK}{1.3d^2}\right]\text{mm}$$

where t and σ are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.2 Definition of symbols

d = inside diameter of branch, in mm

D = inside diameter of safety valve discharge, in mm

K = 2 for superheater safety valves

= 1 for drum safety valves

W = total valve throughput, in kg/h.

6. 1. 3 The offset from the centreline of the waste steam pipe to the centreline of the safety valve is not to exceed four times the outside diameter of the safety valve discharge pipe. The waste steam pipe system is to be supported and arrangements made for expansion such that no direct loading is imposed on the safety valve chests and the effects of vibration are to be minimised.

6. 1. 4 The pipe or header which carries the superheater safety valve is to be suitably thickened but is to be not less than the thickness required for the branch for a distance of $\sqrt{D_2 t}$ on either side of the opening,

where

t = thickness required for the branch

D_2 = inside diameter of the pipe or header.

6. 1. 5 Except as required by Pt 5, Ch 10, 6.1 Minimum thickness 6.1.4, in no case need the wall thickness exceed the minimum shell thickness as required by Pt 5, Ch 10, 2.1, Minimum thickness, Pt 5, Ch 10, 3.1, Minimum thickness or Pt 5, Ch 10, 4.1, Minimum thickness, as applicable.

6. 1. 6 Where a standpipe or branch is connected by screwing, the thickness is to be measured at the root of the thread.

6. 1. 7 For boiler, superheater or economiser tubes, the minimum thickness of the drum or the header connection or tube stub is to be calculated as part of the tube in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 10, 7.1, Minimum thickness.

PART

5

CHAPTER **10** **Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels**

SECTION **7** **Boiler tubes subject to internal pressure**

7. 1 Minimum thickness

7. 1. 1 The minimum wall thickness of straight tubes subject to internal pressure is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{pD_o}{20\sigma + p} \text{ mm}$$

where t, p, D_o and σ are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.2 Definition of symbols.

Note *1.* Provision must be made for minus tolerances where necessary and also in cases where abnormal corrosion or erosion is expected in service. For bending allowances, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 7.2 Tube bending.

Note *2.* Thickness is in no case to be less than the minimum shown in Table 10. 7. 1: Minimum thickness of tubes.

Table 10. 7. 1: Minimum thickness of tubes

Normal outside diameter of tube, in mm	Minimum thickness, in mm
≤ 38	1.75
> 38 > 50	2.16
≤ 50 ≤ 70	2.40
> 70 ≤ 75	2.67
> 75 ≤ 95	3.05
>95 ≤ 100	3.28
> 100 ≤ 125	3.50

7. 1. 2 The minimum thickness of boiler, superheater, reheater and economiser tubes is to be determined by using the design stress appropriate to the mean wall temperature, which will be considered to be the metal temperature. Unless it is otherwise agreed between the manufacturer and ACS, the metal temperature used to decide the value of σ for these tubes is to be determined as follows:

a. The calculation temperature for boiler tubes is to be taken as not less than the saturated steam temperature, plus 25°C for tubes mainly subject to convection heat, or plus 50°C for tubes mainly subject to radiant heat.

b. The calculation temperature for superheater and reheater tubes is to be generally taken as not less than the steam temperature expected in the part being considered, plus 35°C for tubes mainly subject to convection heat. For tubes mainly subject to radiant heat the calculation

temperature is generally to be taken as not less than the steam temperature expected in the part being considered, plus 50°C, but the actual metal temperature expected is to be stated when submitting plans.

c. The calculation temperature for economiser tubes is to be taken as not less than 35°C in excess of the maximum temperature of the internal fluid.

7. 1. 3 The minimum thickness of downcomer tubes and pipes which form an integral part of the boiler and which are not exposed to combustion gases is to comply with the requirements for steam pipes.

7. 2 Tube bending

7. 2. 1 Where boiler, superheater, reheater and economiser tubes are bent, the resulting thickness of the tubes at the thinnest part is to be not less than that required for straight tubes, unless it can be demonstrated that the method of forming the bend results in no decrease in strength at the bend. The manufacturer is to demonstrate in connection with any new method of tube bending that this condition is satisfied.

7. 2. 2 Tube bending, and subsequent heat treatment, where necessary, is to be carried out as to ensure that residual stresses do not adversely affect the strength of the tube for the design purpose intended.

Cross-references

For details of manholes, sight holes and doors, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 14.1 Access arrangements.

For details of tube holes and fitting of tubes, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 14.6 Fitting of tubes in water tube boilers.

PART

5

CHAPTER **10** **Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels**

SECTION **8** **Headers**

8. 1 Circular section headers

8. 1. 1 The minimum thickness of circular section headers is to be calculated in accordance with the formula for cylindrical shells in Pt 5, Ch 10, 2.1, Minimum thickness.

8. 2 Rectangular section headers

8. 2. 1 The thickness of the flat walls of rectangular section headers is to be determined at the centre of the sides, at all the lines of holes and at the corners. The minimum required is to be the greatest thickness determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{pn}{20\sigma J} + \sqrt{\frac{0.4Y_p}{\sigma J_1}} + 0.75 \text{ mm}$$

where

t, p and σ are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.2 Definition of symbols

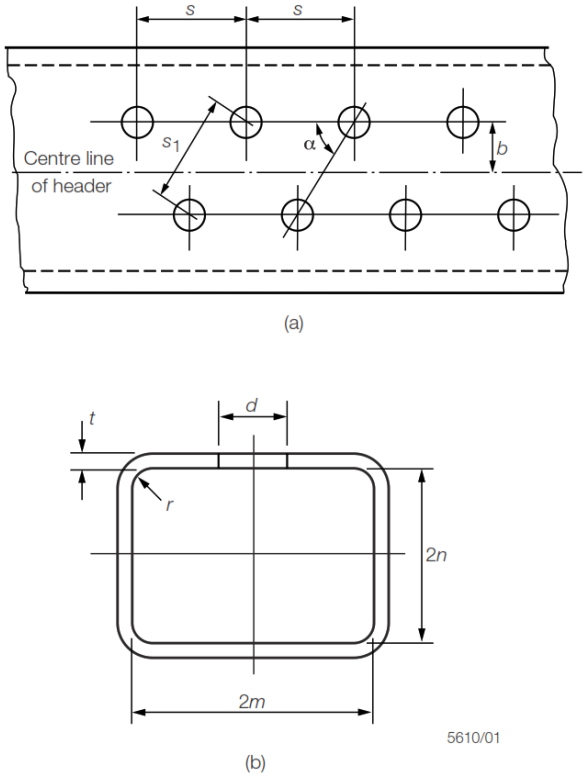
n = one half of the internal width of the wall perpendicular to that under consideration, in mm, *See* Figure 10. 5. 1: Conical ends and conical reducing sections

J = ligament efficiency for membrane stresses determined in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 10, 8.2 Rectangular section headers 8.2.3

J_1 = ligament efficiency for bending stresses determined in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 10, 8.2 Rectangular section headers 8.2.3

Y = a coefficient determined in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 10, 8.2 Rectangular section headers 8.2.2. In all cases if the value of Y is negative, the sign is to be ignored.

Figure 10. 8. 1: Rectangular section headers



8. 2. 2 The coefficient Y for use in Pt 5, Ch 10, 8.2 Rectangular section headers 8.2.1 is to be determined as follows:

a. at the centre of the side with internal width, 2 m:

$$Y = \frac{1}{3}\left(\frac{m^3 + n^3}{m + n}\right) - \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{m}^2$$

where

m = one half of the internal width of the wall under consideration, in mm, *See* Figure 10. 5. 1: Conical ends and conical reducing sections

b. at a line of holes parallel to the longitudinal axis of the header on the wall of width, 2 m:

$$Y = \frac{1}{3}\left(\frac{m^3 + n^3}{m + n}\right) - \frac{m^2 - b^2}{2}$$

where

b = distance from the centre of the holes to the centreline of the wall, in mm, *See* Figure 10. 5. 1: Conical ends and conical reducing sections

c. to check the effect of the off-set on a staggered hole arrangement where the holes are positioned equidistant from the centreline of the wall:

$$Y = \cos\alpha \left\{ \frac{1}{3}\left(\frac{m^3 + n^3}{m+n}\right) - \frac{m^2}{2} \right\}$$

where

α = the angle subtended by the diagonal ligament on the longitudinal ligament, *See* Figure 10. 8. 2: Typical methods of attachment of header end closures

d. at the corners:

$$Y = \frac{1}{3}\left(\frac{m^3 + n^3}{m+n}\right)$$

8. 2. 3 The ligament efficiencies J and J_1 are to be determined as follows:

a. for a line of holes parallel to the longitudinal axis of the header:

$$J = \frac{s-d}{s}$$

Symbols are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 10, 8.2 Rectangular section headers 8.2.4.

b. for the diagonals:

$$J = \frac{s_1 - d}{s_1}$$

Symbols are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 10, 8.2 Rectangular section headers 8.2.4.

c. for a line of holes parallel to the longitudinal axis of the header:

$$J_1 = \frac{s-d}{s} \text{ when } d < 0.6m$$

Or

$$J_1 = \frac{s-0.6m}{s} \text{ when } d \geq 0.6m$$

Symbols are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 10, 8.2 Rectangular section headers 8.2.4.

d. for the diagonals:

$$J_1 = \frac{s_1 - \mathrm{d}}{s_1} \text{ when } d < 0.6\,m$$

Or

$$J_1 = \frac{s_1 - 0.6m}{s_1} \text{ when } d \geq 0.6m$$

Symbols are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 10, 8.2 Rectangular section headers 8.2.4.

8. 2. 4 Symbols, as used in Pt 5, Ch 10, 8.2 Rectangular section headers 8.2.3, are defined as follows:

d = diameter of the hole in the header, in mm

= m, s and s_1, in mm, are as shown in Figure 10. 8. 1: Rectangular section headers.

8. 2. 5 In the case of elliptical holes the value of d to be used in the equations for J and J_1 is to be the inside dimension of the hole measured parallel to the longitudinal axis of the header. For evaluating the two limiting values of d in the equations for J_1, the value of d is to be the inside dimension of the hole measured perpendicular to the longitudinal axis of the header.

8. 2. 6 The internal corner radius, r, is to be not less than one third of the mean of the nominal thicknesses of the two sides, but in no case to be less than 6.5 mm.

8. 3 Toroidal furnace headers

8. 3. 1 The minimum thickness of a toroidal header forming the lower end of a waterwall furnace, and supporting the weight of the boiler and water, is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = A + \sqrt{A^2 + \frac{4M}{JS\sigma}} + 0.75\text{mm}$$

where

A = $\frac{pr}{30J\sigma}$ mm

= t, p and σ are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.2 Definition of symbols

d_e = equivalent diameter of the tube hole in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 10, 2.3 Compensating effect of tube stubs

r = inside radius of toroid circular cross section, in mm, *See* Figure 10. 8. 3: Toroidal furnace headers

J = ligament efficiency of tube holes around toroid

= $\frac{S - d_e}{S}$

S = pitch of tubes around the toroid, in mm

M = $\frac{Wr}{3} - \frac{pd^2r}{40}$ Nmm

W = imposed loading on each water wall tube due to the weight of the boiler and water, in N

d = minimum diameter of the tube hole in the toroid, in mm

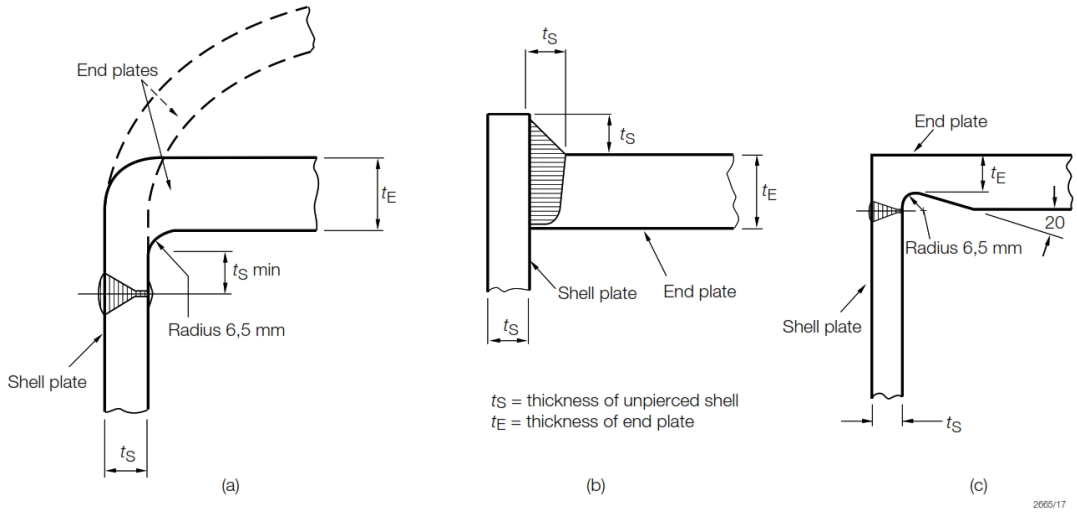
The calculation is to be performed at design pressure using the allowable stress at saturation temperature, and also at zero pressure using the allowable stress at 100°C.

8. 4 Header ends

8. 4. 1 The shape and thickness of ends forged integrally with the bodies of headers are to be the subject of special consideration.

8. 4. 2 Where sufficient experience of previous satisfactory service of headers with integrally forged ends cannot be shown, the suitability of a proposed form of end is to be proved in accordance with the provisions of Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.10 Pressure parts of irregular shape.

Figure 10. 8. 2: Typical methods of attachment of header end closures



8. 4. 3 Ends attached by welding are to be designed as follows:

- Dished ends: these are to be in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 10, 4.1, Minimum thickness.
- Flat ends: the minimum thickness of flat end plates is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = d_i \sqrt{\frac{pC}{\sigma}} + 0.75 \text{ mm}$$

where p and σ are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.2 Definition of symbols.

t = minimum thickness of end plate, in mm

d_i = internal diameter of circular header or least width between walls of rectangular header, in mm

C = a constant depending on method of end attachment, *See* Figure 10. 8. 2: Typical methods of attachment of header end closures.

- For end plates welded as shown in Figure 10. 8. 2: Typical methods of attachment of header end closures (a):

C = 0.019 for circular headers

= 0.032 for rectangular headers.

- For end plates welded as shown in Figure 10. 8. 2: Typical methods of attachment of header end closures (b) and (c):

C = 0.028 circular headers

= 0.040 for rectangular headers.

8. 4. 4 Where flat end plates are bolted to flanges attached to the ends of headers, the flanges and end plates are to be in accordance with recognised pipe flange standards.

8. 4. 5 Openings in flat plates are to be compensated in accordance with Figure 10. 2. 9: Compensation for welded standpipes or branches in cylindrical shells, with the value of A_1 the compensation required, calculated as follows:

$$A_1 = \frac{d_o}{2.4} t_f \text{ mm}$$

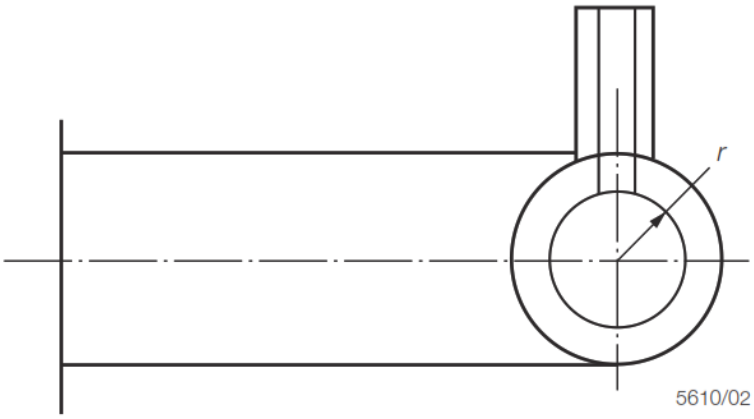
where

d_o = diameter of hole in flat plate, in mm

t_f = required thickness of the flat plate in the area under consideration, in mm, calculated in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 10, 8.4 Header ends 8.4.3 or Pt 5, Ch 10, 9.1 Stayed flat surfaces 9.1.6, as applicable, without corrosion allowance

Limit D = $0.5\ d_o$.

Figure 10. 8. 3: Toroidal furnace headers



PART

5

CHAPTER **10** **Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels**

SECTION **9** **Flat surfaces and flat tube plates**

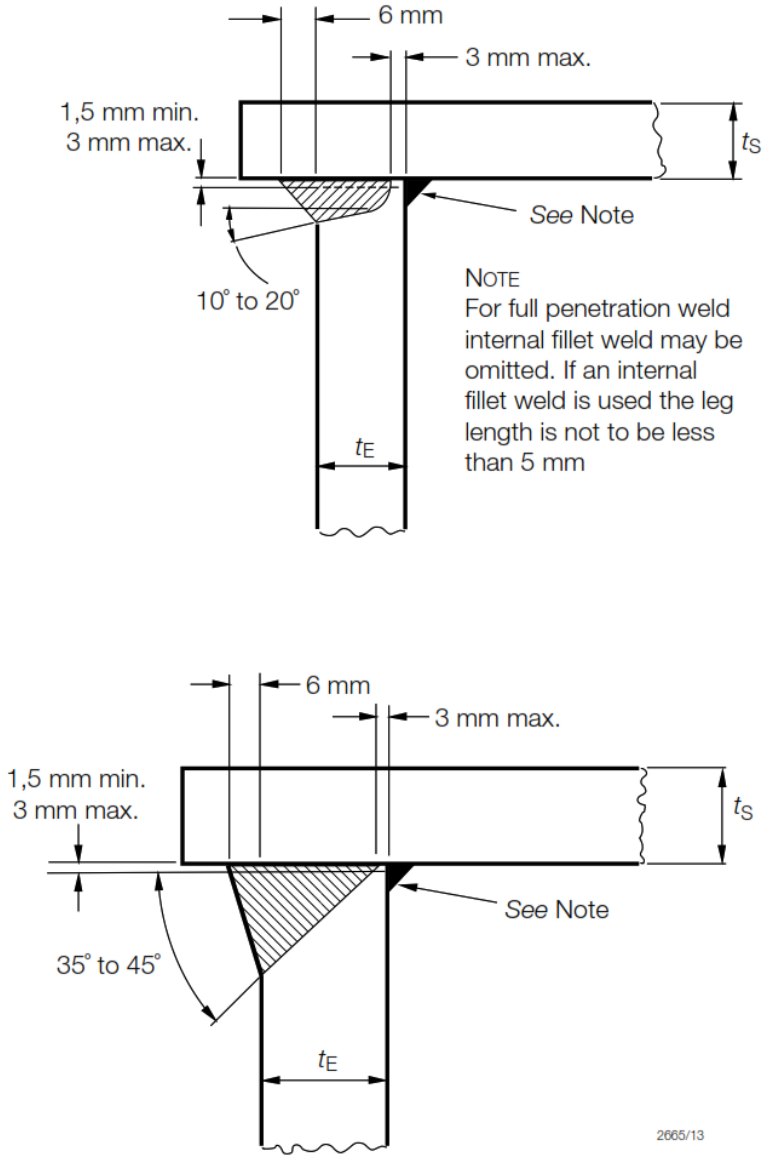
9. 1 Stayed flat surfaces

9. 1. 1 Where flat end plates are flanged for connection to the shell, the inside radius of flanging is to be not less than 1.75 times the thickness of the plate, with a minimum of 38 mm.

9. 1. 2 Where combustion chamber or firebox plates are flanged for connection to the wrapper plate, the inside radius of flanging is to be equal to the thickness of the plate, with a minimum of 25 mm.

9. 1. 3 Where unflanged flat plates are connected to the shell by welding, typical methods of attachment are shown in Figure 10. 9. 1: Typical attachement of unflanged flat end plates to shell . Similar forms of attachment may be used where unflanged combustion chamber or firebox plates are connected to the wrapper plate by welding.

Figure 10. 9. 1: Typical attachement of unflanged flat end plates to shell



t_S = thickness of cylindrical shell
t_E = thickness of flat end

9. 1. 4 Where the flange curvature is a point of support, this is to be taken at the commencement of curvature, or at a line distant 3.5 times the thickness of the plate from the outside of the plate, whichever is nearer to the flange.

9. 1. 5 Where a flat plate is welded directly to a shell or wrapper plate, the point of support is to be taken at the inside of the shell or wrapper plate.

9. 1. 6 The thickness, t, of those portions of flat plates supported by stays and around tube nests is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = C\sqrt{\frac{p}{\sigma}} + 0.75\text{mm}$$

where t, p and σ are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.2 Definition of symbols

d = diameter of the largest circle which can be drawn through at least three points of support. At least one point of support must lie on one side of any diameter of the circle

C = a constant, dependent on the method of support as detailed in Pt 5, Ch 10, 9.1 Stayed flat surfaces 9.1.7. Where various forms of support are used, C is to be the mean of the values for the respective methods adopted.

9. 1. 7 The value of C in the formula in Pt 5, Ch 10, 9.1 Stayed flat surfaces 9.1.6 is to be as follows:

a. Where plain bar stays are strength welded into the plates as shown in Figure 10. 9. 2: Typical attachment of firebox, combustion chamber stays and bar stays

C = 0.134

b. Where plain bar stays pass through holes in the plates and are fitted on the outside with washers as shown in Figure 10. 9. 3: Typical attachment of bar stays

C = 0.12 where the diameter of the washer is 3.5 times the diameter of the stay

C = 0.113 where the diameter of the washer is 0.67 times the pitch of the stays.

c. Where the flat plate is flanged for attachment to the shell, flue, furnace or wrapper or, alternatively, is welded directly to shell, flue, furnace or wrapper, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 9.1 Stayed flat surfaces 9.1.4 and Pt 5, Ch 10, 9.1 Stayed flat surfaces 9.1.5:

C = 0.113

d. Where the support is a gusset stay

C = 0.134

e. Where the support is a tube secured as shown in Figure 10. 9. 4: Detail of weld for tube

C = 0.144.

Figure 10. 9. 2: Typical attachment of firebox, combustion chamber stays and bar stays

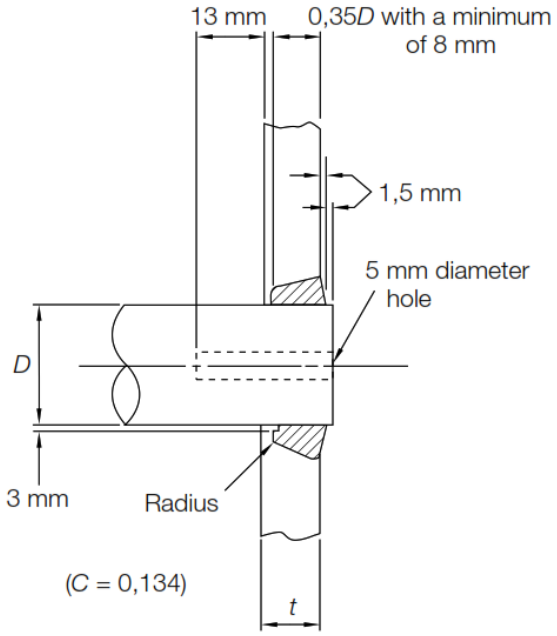
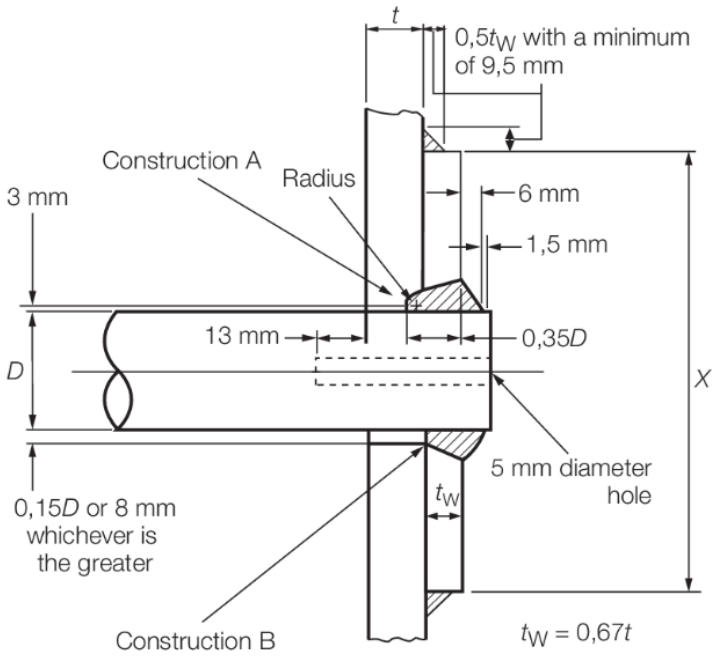


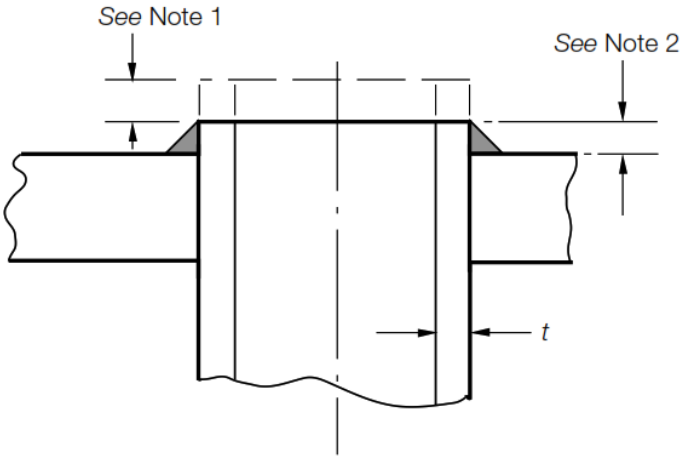
Figure 10. 9. 3: Typical attachment of bar stays



Method of construction 'A' or 'B' may be used, except where t_W<0,35D, construction 'A' is to be used.

where X=3,5D, C=0,12;
where X=0,67 x pitch of stays, C=0,113

Figure 10. 9. 4: Detail of weld for tube



NOTE :

1. The ends of the tubes are to be dressed flush with the welds when exposed to flame. When not exposed to flame the ends of the tubes may extend a maximum of 10 mm beyond the weld.

2. 3 mm minimum, but stress in weld due to nominal flat plate load carried by the tube not to exceed 70 N/mm^2 An equivalent recessed weld may be used.

3. Weld stress area is to be based on the weld throat area.

9. 1. 8 Where tubes are fixed by expanding only, sufficient tubes welded at both ends in accordance with are to be provided within the tube nest to comply with Pt 5, Ch 10, 9.1 Stayed flat surfaces 9.1.6, to carry the flat plate loading within the tube nest. Tubes welded in accordance with Figure 10. 9. 4: Detail of weld for tube are also to be provided in the boundary rows in sufficient numbers to carry the flat plate loading outside the tube areas.

9. 1. 9 In the case of small boilers with a single tube nest of expanded tubes which does not exceed an area of 0.65 m^2, welded tubes need not be fitted provided the tubes are beaded at the inlet end. In this instance the support afforded by the expanded tubes is not to be taken to extend beyond the line enclosing the outer surfaces of the tubes except that, between the outside of the nest and the attachment of the end plate to shell, there may be an unsupported width equal to the flat plate margin, as given by the formula in Pt 5, Ch 10, 9.4 Flat plate margins 9.4.1. The required tube plate thickness within such a tube nest is to be determined using the formula in Pt 5, Ch 10, 9.1 Stayed flat surfaces 9.1.6, where:

C = 0.154

d = four times the mean pitch, in mm, of the expanded tubes in the nest.

9. 1. 10 The thickness, t, of any tube plate in the tube area is to be not less than that required for the surrounding plate determined by Pt 5, Ch 10, 9.1 Stayed flat surfaces 9.1.6 and in no case less than:

a. 12.5 mm where the diameter of the tube hole does not exceed 50 mm, or
b. 14 mm where the diameter of the tube hole is greater than 50 mm.

9. 1. 11 Alternative methods of support will be specially considered.

9. 1. 12 The spacing of tube holes is to be such that the minimum width, b, in mm of any ligament between tube holes is not less than:

for expanded tubes:

$b = 0.125d + 12.5$ mm

for welded tubes:

$b = 0.125d + 8$ mm

where d = diameter of the hole drilled in the plate, in mm.

9. 1. 13 Where a flat plate has a manhole or sight hole and the opening is strengthened by flanging, the total depth, H, of the flange, measured from the outer surface of the plate, is to be not less than:

$$H = \sqrt{tW}$$

where

t = thickness of plate, in mm

H = depth of flange, in mm

W = minor axis of manhole or sight hole, in mm.

9. 1. 14 Where the flat top plates of combustion chambers are supported by welded-on girders, the equation in Pt 5, Ch 10, 9.1 Stayed flat surfaces 9.1.6 is to apply as follows:

a. In the case of welded-on girders provided with waterways

$C = 0.144$

$d = \sqrt{X^2 + Y^2}$

X = width of waterway in the girder plus the thickness of the girder, in mm

Y = pitch of girders, in mm.

b. In the case of continuously welded-on girders

C = 0.175

d = D

D = distance between inside faces of girders, in mm.

9. 2 Combustion chamber tube plates under compression

9. 2. 1 The thickness of combustion chamber tube plates under compression due to the pressure on the top plate, based on a compressive stress not exceeding 96 N/mm^2 is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{pWs}{1930(s-d)} \text{ mm}$$

where t and p are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.2 Definition of symbols

d = internal diameter of the plain tubes, in mm

s = pitch of tubes, in mm, measured horizontally where tubes are chain pitched, or diagonally where the tubes are staggered pitched and the diagonal pitch is less than the horizontal pitch

W = internal width of the combustion chamber, in mm, measured from tube plate to back chamber plate.

9. 3 Girders for combustion chamber top plates

9. 3. 1 The formula in Pt 5, Ch 10, 9.3 Girders for combustion chamber top plates 9.3.2 is applicable to plate girders welded to the top combustion chamber plate by means of a full penetration weld.

9. 3. 2 The thickness of steel plate girders supporting the tops of combustion chambers is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{0.32pl^2s}{d^2R_{20}} \text{ mm}$$

where t and p are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.2 Definition of symbols

d = effective depth of girder, in mm

l = length of girder measured internally from tube plate to back chamber plate, in mm

s = pitch of the girders, in mm

R_{20} = specified minimum tensile strength of the girder plate, in N/mm^2.

9. 4 Flat plate margins

9. 4. 1 The width of margin, b, of a flat plate which may be regarded as being supported by the shell, furnaces or flues to which the flat plate is attached is not to exceed that determined by the following formula:

$$b = C(t - 0.75)\sqrt{\frac{\sigma}{p}} \text{ mm}$$

where p and σ are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.2 Definition of symbols

t = thickness of the flat plate, in mm

b = width of margin, in mm

C = 3.12.

9. 4. 2 Where an unflanged flat plate is welded directly to the shell, furnaces or flues and it is not practicable to effect the full penetration weld from both sides of the flat plate, the constant C used in the formula in Pt 5, Ch 10, 9.4 Flat plate margins 9.4.1 is to be:

C = 2.38.

9. 4. 3 In the case of plates which are flanged, the margin is to be measured from the commencement of curvature of flanging, or from a line 3.5 times the thickness of the plate measured from the outside of the plate, whichever is nearer to the flange.

9. 4. 4 Where the flat plate is not flanged for attachment to the shell, furnaces or flues, the margin is to be measured from inside of the shell or the outside of the furnaces or flues, whichever is applicable.

9. 4. 5 In no case is the diameter D, in mm, of the circle forming the boundary of the margin supported by the uptake of a vertical boiler to be greater than determined by the following formula:

$$D = \sqrt{\frac{345A}{p} + d^2}$$

where p is as defined in Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.2 Definition of symbols

d = external diameter of uptake, in mm

d_i = internal diameter of uptake, in mm

A = cross-sectional area of the uptake tube material,

i.e. $\frac{\pi}{4}\left(\mathrm{d}^2 - \mathrm{d}_\mathrm{i}^2\right)\mathrm{mm}^2$.

PART

5

CHAPTER **10** **Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels**

SECTION **10** **Flat plates and ends of vertical boilers**

10. 1 Tube plates of vertical boilers

10. 1. 1 Where vertical boilers have a nest or nests of horizontal tubes, so that there is direct tension on the tube plates due to the vertical load on the boiler ends or to their acting as horizontal ties across the shell, the thickness of the tube plates in way of the outer rows of tubes is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{2pD}{JR_{20}} + 0.75\text{mm}$$

where t and p are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.2 Definition of symbols

D = twice the radial distance of the centre of the outer row of tube holes from the axis of the shell, in mm

J = efficiency of ligaments between tube holes in the outer vertical rows (expressed as a fraction)

$$= \frac{s - d}{s}$$

R_{20} = specified minimum tensile strength of tube plate, in N/mm^2

d = diameter of tube holes, in mm

s = vertical pitch of tubes, in mm.

10. 1. 2 Each alternate tube in the outer vertical rows of tubes is to be a tube welded at both ends as shown in Figure 10. 9. 4: Detail of weld for tube. Further, the arrangement of tubes in the nests is to be such that the thickness of the tube plates meets the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 10, 9.1, Stayed flat surfaces.

10. 1. 3 Where the vertical height of the tube plates between the top and bottom shelves exceeds 0.65 times the internal diameter of the boiler, the staying of the tube plates, and the scantlings of the tube plates and shell plates to which the sides of the tube plates are connected, will require to be specially considered. It is recommended, however, that for this type of boiler the vertical height of the tube plates between the top and bottom shelves should not exceed 1.25 times the internal diameter of the boiler.

10. 2 Horizontal shelves of tube plates forming part of the shell

10. 2. 1 For vertical boilers of the type referred to in Pt 5, Ch 10, 10.1 Tube plates of vertical boilers, in order to withstand vertical load due to pressure on the boiler ends, the horizontal shelves of the tube plates are to be supported by gussets in accordance with the following formula:

$$C = \frac{10AD_{\mathrm{i}}p}{t}$$

where

p = design pressure, in MPa

t = thickness of the tube plate, in mm

A = maximum horizontal dimension of the shelf from the inside of the shell plate to the outside of the tube plate, in mm

D_{i} = inside diameter of the boiler, in mm.

10. 2. 2 For the combustion chamber tube plate the minimum number of gussets is to be:

1 gusset, where C exceeds 255 000
2 gussets, where C exceeds 350 000
3 gussets where C exceeds 420 000.

10.2.3 For the smokebox tube plate the minimum number of gussets is to be:

1 gusset where C exceeds 255 000
2 gussets where C exceeds 470 000.

10. 2. 3 The shell plates to which the sides of the tube plates are connected are to be not less than 1.6 mm thicker than is required by the formula applicable to shell plates with continuous circularity, and where gussets or other stays are not fitted to the shelves, the strength of the parts of the circumferential seams at the top and bottom of these plates from the outside of one tube plate to the outside of the other, is to be sufficient to withstand the whole load on the boiler end with a factor of safety of not less than 4.5 related to R_{20} (where R_{20} is the specified minimum tensile strength of the shell plates, in N/mm^2).

10. 3 Dished and flanged ends for vertical boilers

10. 3. 1 The minimum thickness, t, of dished and flanged ends for vertical boilers which are subject to pressure on the concave side and are supported by central uptakes is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{10pR_{\mathrm{i}}}{13\sigma} + 0.75\mathrm{mm}$$

where t, p, R_{i} and σ are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.2 Definition of symbols.

10. 3. 2 The inside radius of curvature, R_{i}, of the end plate is to be not greater than the external diameter of the cylinder to which it is attached.

10. 3. 3 The inside knuckle radius, r_{i}, *See* Figure 10. 4. 2: Typical dished ends (a), of the arc joining the cylindrical flange to the spherical surface of the end is to be not less than four times the thickness of the end plate, and in no case less than 65 mm.

10. 3. 4 The inside radius of curvature of flange to uptake is to be not less than twice the thickness of the end plate, and in no case less than 25 mm.

10. 3. 5 If the dished end has a manhole, the opening is to be strengthened by flanging. The total depth, H, of the flange, measured from the outer surface of the plate on the minor axis, is to be not less than

$$H = \sqrt{tW}$$

where

t = thickness of the flange, in mm

H = depth of flange, in mm

W = minor axis of the manhole, in mm.

10. 4 Flat crowns of vertical boilers

10. 4. 1 The minimum thickness of flat crown plates of vertical boilers is to be determined as in Pt 5, Ch 10, 9.1, Stayed flat surfaces; d and C are defined as follows:

- Where the crown is supported by an uptake only,

d = diameter, in mm, of the largest circle which can be drawn between the connections to the shell or firebox and uptake, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 9.1 Stayed flat surfaces 9.1.1 to Pt 5, Ch 10, 9.1 Stayed flat surfaces 9.1.5

C = 0.161

- Where bar stays are fitted in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 10, 9.1 Stayed flat surfaces 9.1.6 and Pt 5, Ch 10, 9.1 Stayed flat surfaces 9.1.7:

d = diameter of the largest circle which can be drawn through at least three points of support, in mm

C = the mean of the values for the respective points of support through which the circle passes.

PART

5

CHAPTER **10** **Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels**

SECTION **11** **Furnaces subject to external pressure**

11. 1 Maximum thickness

11. 1. 1 Furnaces, plain or corrugated, are not to exceed 22.5 mm in thickness.

11. 2 Corrugated furnaces

11. 2. 1 The minimum thickness, t, of corrugated furnaces is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{pD_o}{C} + 0.75\text{mm}$$

where p is as defined in Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.2 Definition of symbols

t = thickness of the furnace plate measured at the bottom of the corrugations, in mm

C = 1060 for Fox, Morison and Deighton corrugations

= 1130 for Suspension Bulb corrugations

D_o = external diameter of the furnace measured at the bottom of the corrugations, in mm.

11. 3 Plain furnaces, flue sections and combustion chamber bottoms

11. 3. 1 The minimum thickness, t, between points of substantial support, of plain furnaces or furnaces strengthened by stiffening rings, of flue sections and of the cylindrical bottoms of combustion chambers is to be determined by the following formulae the greater of the two thicknesses obtained being taken:

$$t = \sqrt{\frac{pD_o(L+610)}{102400}} + 0.75 \text{ mm}$$

$$t = \frac{CpD_o}{1100} + \frac{L}{320} + 0.75\text{mm}$$

where t and p are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.2 Definition of symbols

C = $\frac{2x}{x+\sigma}$ or 0.85 whichever is the greater

D_o = external diameter of the furnace, flue or combustion chamber, in mm

L = length of section between the centres of points of substantial support, in mm

= x and σ are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 10, 11.7 Dished and flanged ends for unsupported vertical boiler furnaces 11.7.1.

11. 3. 2 Where stiffeners are used for strengthening plain cylindrical furnaces, or combustion chambers, the second moment of area, I, of the stiffener is to be determined by the following formula:

$$I = \frac{pD_0^3 L}{13.3 \times 10^6} \text{ mm}^4$$

where p is as defined in Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.2 Definition of symbols

D_o = external diameter of the furnace flue or combustion chamber, in mm

L = length of section between the centres of points of substantial support, in mm

For proportion of stiffening rings, *See* Figure 10. 11. 1: Furnace, flue and combustion chamber stiffeners.

11. 4 Plain furnaces of vertical boilers

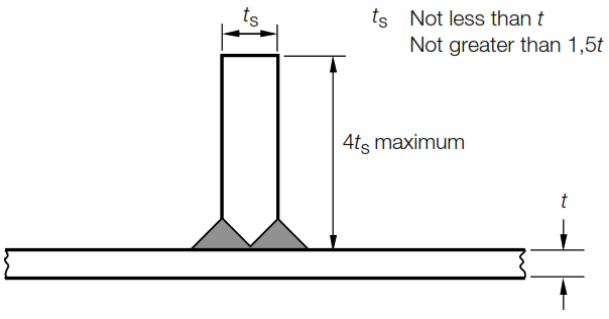
11. 4. 1 The thickness of plain furnaces not exceeding 2000 mm in external diameter is to be determined by the formulae given in Pt 5, Ch 10, 11.3 Plain furnaces, flue sections and combustion chamber bottoms 11.3.1, the greater of the two thicknesses being taken:

where

D_o = external diameter of the furnace, in mm. Where the furnace is tapered, the diameter to be taken for calculation purposes is to be the mean of that at the top and that at the bottom where it meets the substantial support from flange, ring or row of stays

L = effective length, in mm, of the furnace between the points of substantial support as indicated in Figure 10. 11. 2: Effective length, L, for use in 11.4.

Figure 10. 11. 1: Furnace, flue and combustion chamber stiffeners



11. 4. 2 For furnaces under 760 mm in external diameter, the thickness is to be not less than 8 mm, and for furnaces 760 mm in external diameter and over, the thickness is to be not less than 9.5 mm.

11. 4. 3 A circumferential row of stays connecting the furnace to the shell will be considered to provide substantial support to the furnace, provided that:

- The diameter of the stay is not less 22.5 mm or twice the thickness of the furnace, whichever is the greater.
- The pitch of the stays at the furnace does not exceed 14 times the thickness of the furnace.

11. 5 Hemispherical furnaces

11. 5. 1 The minimum thickness, *t*, of unsupported hemispherical furnaces subject to pressure on the convex surface is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{CpR_o}{608} + 0.75\text{mm}$$

where *t* and *p* are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.2 Definition of symbols

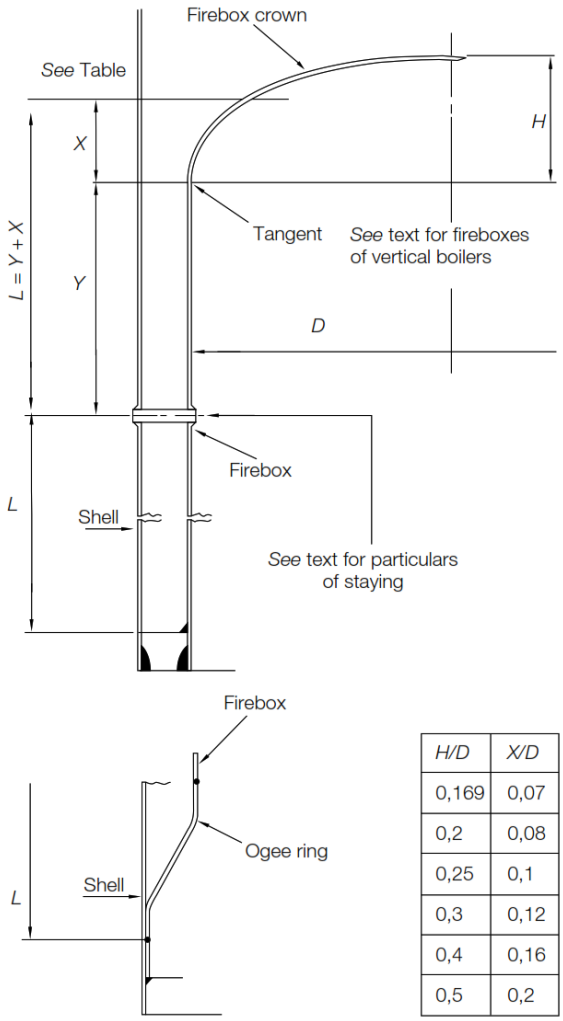
= *x* and σ are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 10, 11.7 Dished and flanged ends for unsupported vertical boiler furnaces 11.7.1

C = $\frac{2x}{x+\sigma}$ or 0.85 whichever is greater

$\boldsymbol{R_o}$ = outer radius of curvature of the furnace, in mm.

11. 5. 2 In no case is the maximum thickness to exceed 22.5 mm or the ratio $\frac{R_o}{t-0.75}$ to exceed 100.

Figure 10. 11. 2: Effective length, L, for use in 11.4



H/D	X/D
0,169	0,07
0,2	0,08
0,25	0,1
0,3	0,12
0,4	0,16
0,5	0,2

11. 6 Dished and flanged ends for supported vertical boiler furnaces

11. 6. 1 The minimum thickness, t, of dished and flanged ends for vertical boiler furnaces that are subject to pressure on the convex side and are supported by central uptakes, is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{pR_o}{10\sigma} + 0.75\text{mm}$$

where t, p, R_o and σ are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.2 Definition of symbols.

11. 6. 2 The inside radius of dishing and flanging are to be as required by Pt 5, Ch 10, 10.3 Dished and flanged ends for vertical boilers.

11. 7 dished and flanged ends for unsupported vertical boiler furnaces

11. 7. 1 The minimum thickness, t, of dished and flanged ends for vertical boiler furnaces that are subject to pressure on the convex side and are without support from stays of any kind, is to be determined by the following formula, but is in no case to be less than the thickness of the firebox:

$$t = \frac{CpR_o}{660} + 0.75\text{mm}$$

where t and p are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.2 Definition of symbols.

x = specified minimum lower yield stress or 0.2 per cent proof stress in N/mm^2 at a temperature 90°C above the saturated steam temperature corresponding to the design pressure for carbon and carbon manganese steel with a specified minimum tensile strength of 400 N/mm^2

C = $\frac{2x}{x+\sigma}$ or 0.85 whichever is the greater

R_o = outside radius of the crown plate, in mm

= (in no case is $\frac{R_o}{t}$ to exceed 88)

σ = specified minimum lower yield stress or 0.2 per cent proof stress in N/mm^2 at a temperature 90°C above the saturated steam temperature corresponding to the design pressure for the steel actually used

11. 7. 2 The inside radius of curvature, R_i, of the end plate is to be not greater than the external diameter of the cylinder to which it is attached.

11. 7. 3 The inside knuckle radius, r_i, *See* Figure 10. 4. 2: Typical dished ends (a), of the arc joining the cylindrical flange to the spherical surface of the end is to be not less than four times the thickness of the end plate and in no case less than 65 mm.

11. 8 Ogee rings

11. 8. 1 The minimum thickness, t, of the ogee ring which connects the bottom of the furnace to the shell of a vertical boiler and sustains the whole vertical load on the furnace is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \sqrt{\frac{pD_i(D_i - D_o)}{9900}} + 0.75\text{mm}$$

where t and p are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.2 Definition of symbols

D_i = inside diameter of boiler shell, in mm

D_o = outside diameter of the lower part of the furnace where it joins the ogee ring, in mm.

11. 8. 2 Proposals to use a flat plate annular ring which connects the bottom of the furnace to the shell of a vertical boiler and sustains any unbalanced vertical load on the furnace will be the subject of special consideration.

11. 9 Uptakes of vertical boilers

11. 9. 1 The minimum thickness, t, of internal uptakes of vertical boilers is to be determined by the following formulae, the greater of the two thicknesses obtained being taken:

$$t = \sqrt{\frac{pD_o(L + 610)}{102400}} + 4 \text{ mm}$$

$$t = \frac{pD_o}{1100} + \frac{L}{320} + 4 \text{ mm}$$

where t and p are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.2 Definition of symbols

D_o = external diameter of uptake, in mm

L = length of uptake between the centres of points of substantial support, in mm.

PART

5

CHAPTER **10** **Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels**

SECTION **12** **Boiler tubes subject to external pressure**

12. 1 Tubes

12. 1. 1 The thickness of tubes is to be in accordance with Table 10. 12. 1: Thickness of plain tubes under external pressure for the appropriate outside diameter and design pressure.

Table 10. 12. 1: Thickness of plain tubes under external pressure

Outside diameter, in mm											Thickness, in mm
38	44.5	51	57	63.5	70	76	82.5	89	95	102	
				Design pressure, in MPa							
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	2.69	2.52	5.89
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	2.62	2.41	2.28	2.14	5.38
—	—	—	—	—	—	2.41	2.21	2.07	1.93	1.79	4.88
—	—	—	2.76	2.48	2.28	2.07	1.93	1.79	1.66	1.59	4.47
—	2.93	2.55	2.28	2.07	1.89	1.73	1.59	1.48	1.37	1.27	4.06
2.66	2.28	2.07	1.79	1.59	1.48	1.31	1.24	1.14	1.03	0.96	3.66
2.03	1.69	1.48	1.31	1.21	1.10	0.96	0.89	0.82	0.76	0.69	3.25
1.48	1.24	1.07	0.96	0.86	0.76	—	—	—	—	—	2.95

12. 1. 2 Tubes may be welded at both ends, welded at the inlet end and expanded at the outlet end, or expanded at both ends. In addition to expanding, tubes may be bell mouthed or beaded at the inlet end. Where tubes are welded, the weld detail is to be as shown in Figure 10. 9. 4: Detail of weld for tube and the tubes are to be expanded into the tube plates in addition to welding, except as permitted by Pt 5, Ch 10, 12.1 Tubes 12.1.3.

12. 1. 3 For tubes of thickness greater than 6.0 mm, expanding in addition to welding is not required if a recessed weld of depth not less than the tube thickness is provided.

PART

5

CHAPTER **10** **Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels**

SECTION **13** **Tubes welded at both ends and bar stays for cylindrical boilers**

13. 1 Loads on tubes welded at both ends and bar stays

13. 1. 1 Each tube or bar stay is to be designed to carry its due proportion of the load on the plates which it supports.

13. 1. 2 For a tube or bar stay, the net area to be supported is to be the area, in mm^2, enclosed by the lines bisecting at right angles the lines joining the stay and the adjacent points of support, less the area of any tubes or stays enclosed. In the case of a tube or bar stay in the boundary rows, the support afforded by the flat plate margin, where applicable, should be taken into account. Where flat margins overlap stays are not required.

13. 1. 3 The thickness of tubes welded at both ends to tube plates is to be such that the longitudinal stress due to the flat plate loading does not exceed 70 N/mm^2.

13. 1. 4 Tubes may be welded into the boiler after post-weld heat treatment has been carried out.

13. 1. 5 The permissible longitudinal stress in combustion chamber bar stays or similar stays where an end is heated by flame, is not to exceed 70 N/mm^2, and the diameter of this type of bar stay is not to be less than 19 mm.

13. 1. 6 The permissible longitudinal stress in longitudinal bar stays not subject to heating, is not to exceed 20 per cent of the minimum specified tensile strength, in N/mm^2, and the diameter of this type of bar stay is not to be less than 25 mm.

PART

5

CHAPTER **10** **Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels**

SECTION **14** **Construction**

14. 1 Access arrangements

14. 1. 1 In watertube boilers, manholes are to be provided in all drums of sufficient size to allow access for internal examination and cleaning, and for fitting and expanding the tubes. In the case of headers for water walls, superheaters or economisers, and of drums which are too small to permit entry, sight holes or mudholes sufficiently large and numerous for these purposes are to be provided.

14. 1. 2 Cylindrical boilers are to be provided, where possible with means for ingress to permit examination and cleaning of the inner surfaces of plates and tubes exposed to flame. Where the boilers are too small to permit this, there are to be sight holes and mudholes sufficiently large and numerous to allow the inside to be satisfactorily cleaned.

14. 1. 3 Where the cross tubes of vertical boilers are large, there is to be a sight hole in the shell opposite to one end of each tube sufficiently large to allow the tube to be examined and cleaned. These sight holes are to be in positions accessible for that purpose.

14. 1. 4 Manholes in cylindrical shells should preferably have their shorter axes arranged longitudinally.

14. 1. 5 Doors for manholes, mudholes and sight holes are to be formed from steel plate or other approved construction, and all jointing surfaces are to be machined.

14. 1. 6 Doors of the internal type are to be provided with spigots which have a clearance of not more than 1.5 mm all round, i.e. the axes of the opening are not to exceed those of the door by more than 3 mm. The width of the manhole gasket seat is to be not less than 16 mm.

14. 1. 7 Doors of the internal type for openings not larger than 230 mm x 180 mm need be fitted with one stud only, which may be forged integral with the door. Doors for openings larger than 230 mm x 180 mm are to be fitted with two studs or bolts. The strength of the attachment to the door is to be not less than the strength of the stud or bolt.

14. 1. 8 The crossbars or dogs for doors are to be of steel.

14. 1. 9 For smaller circular openings in headers and similar fittings, an approved type of plug may be used.

14. 1. 10 Circular flat cover plates may be fitted to raised circular manhole frames not exceeding 400 mm diameter, and for an approved design pressure not exceeding 1.8 MPa.

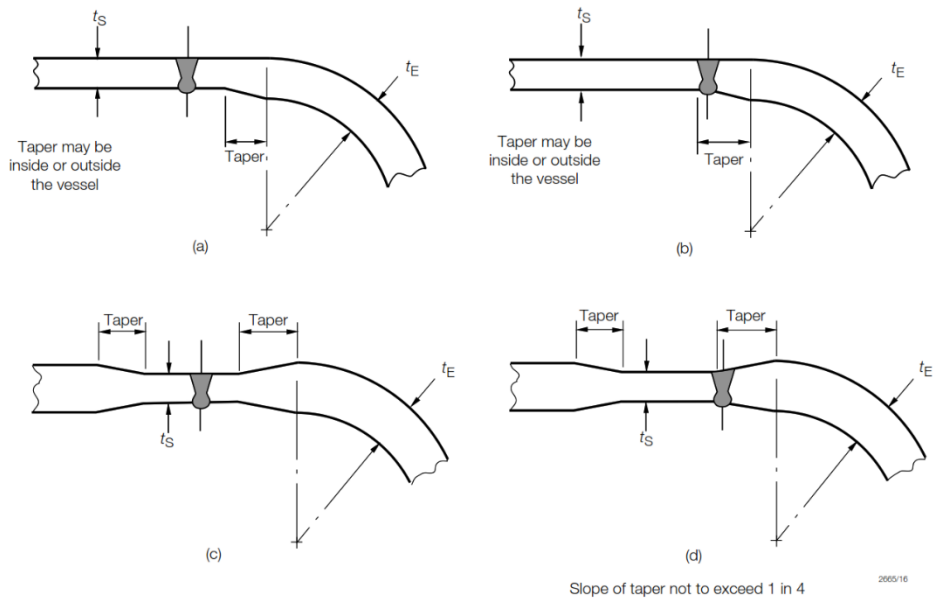
14. 1. 11 External circular flat cover plates are to be in accordance with a recognised National Standard.

14. 2 Torispherical and semi-ellipsoidal ends

14. 2. 1 For typical acceptable types of attachment for dished ends to cylindrical shells, *See* Figure 10. 14. 1: Typical attachments of dished ends to cylindrical shells.

14. 2. 2 Where the difference in thickness is the same throughout the circumference, the thicker plate is to be reduced in thickness by machining to a taper for a distance not less than four times the offset, so that the two plates are of equal thickness at the position of the circumferential weld. A parallel portion may be provided between the end of the taper and weld edge preparation; alternatively, if so desired, the width of the weld may be included as part of the smooth taper of the thicker plate.

Figure 10. 14. 1: Typical attachments of dished ends to cylindrical shells

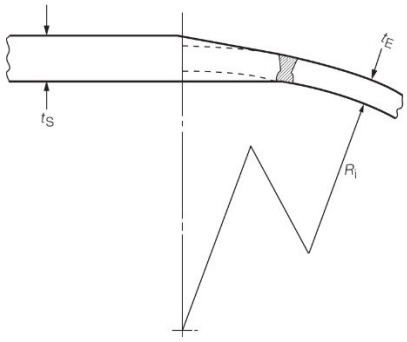


14. 2. 3 The thickness of the plates at the position of the circumferential weld is to be not less than that of an unpierced cylindrical shell of seamless or welded construction, whichever is applicable, of the same diameter and material, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 4.1, Minimum thickness.

14. 3 Hemispherical ends

14. 3. 1 Where hemispherical ends are butt welded to cylindrical shells, the thickness of the shell is to be reduced by taper to that of the end, and the centre of the hemisphere is to be so located that the entire tapered portion of the shell and the butt weld are within the hemisphere, *See* Figure 10. 14. 2: Attachment of hemispherical end to cylindrical shell.

Figure 10. 14. 2: Attachment of hemispherical end to cylindrical shell



14. 3. 2 If the hemispherical end is provided with a parallel portion, the thickness of this portion is to be not less than that of a seamless or welded shell, whichever is applicable, of the same diameter and material.

14. 4 Welded-on flanges, butt welded joints and fabricated branch pieces

14. 4. 1 Flanges may be cut from plates or may be forged or cast. Hubbed flanges are not to be machined from plate. Flanges are to be attached to branches by welding. Alternative methods of flange attachment will be subject to special consideration.

14. 4. 2 The types of welded-on flanges are to be suitable for the pressure, temperature and service for which the branches are intended.

14. 4. 3 Flange attachments and pressure-temperature ratings in accordance with materials and design of recognised Standards will be accepted.

14. 4. 4 Typical examples of welded-on flange connections are shown in Figure 10. 14. 3: Typical examples of welded flange connections (a) to (f), and limiting design conditions for the flange types are shown in Table 10. 14. 1: Limiting design conditions for flanges. In Figure 10. 14. 3: Typical examples of welded flange connections t is the minimum Rule thickness of the standpipe or branch.

14. 4. 5 Welded-on flanges are not to be a tight fit on the branch. The maximum clearance between the bore of the flange and the outside diameter of the branch is to be 3 mm at any point, and the sum of the clearances diametrically opposite is not to exceed 5 mm.

14. 4. 6 Where butt welds are employed in the attachment of flange type (a), or in the construction of standpipes or branch pieces, the adjacent pieces are to be matched at the bores. This may be effected by drifting, roller expanding or machining, provided the pipe wall is not reduced below the designed thickness. If the parts to be joined differ in wall thickness, the thicker wall is to be gradually tapered to that of the thinner at the butt joint.

14. 4. 7 Welding may be carried out by means of the shielded metal arc, inert gas metal arc, oxy-acetylene or other approved process, but in general, oxy-acetylene welding is suitable only for flange type (a) and is not to be applied to branches exceeding 100 mm diameter or 9.5 mm thick. The welding is to be carried out in accordance with the appropriate paragraphs of Pt 5, Ch 17 Requirements for Fusion Welding of Pressure Vessels and Piping.

14. 4. 8 Threaded sleeve joints complying with Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.8 Socket weld joints 2.8.1 may be used on the steam and water piping of small oil fired package boilers of the once through coil type, used for auxiliary or domestic purposes, where the feed pump capacity limits the output.

14. 4. 9 Socket weld joints are not to be used where fatigue, severe erosion, crevice corrosion or stress corrosion is expected to occur, for example, blow down, drain, scum and chemical dosing connections.

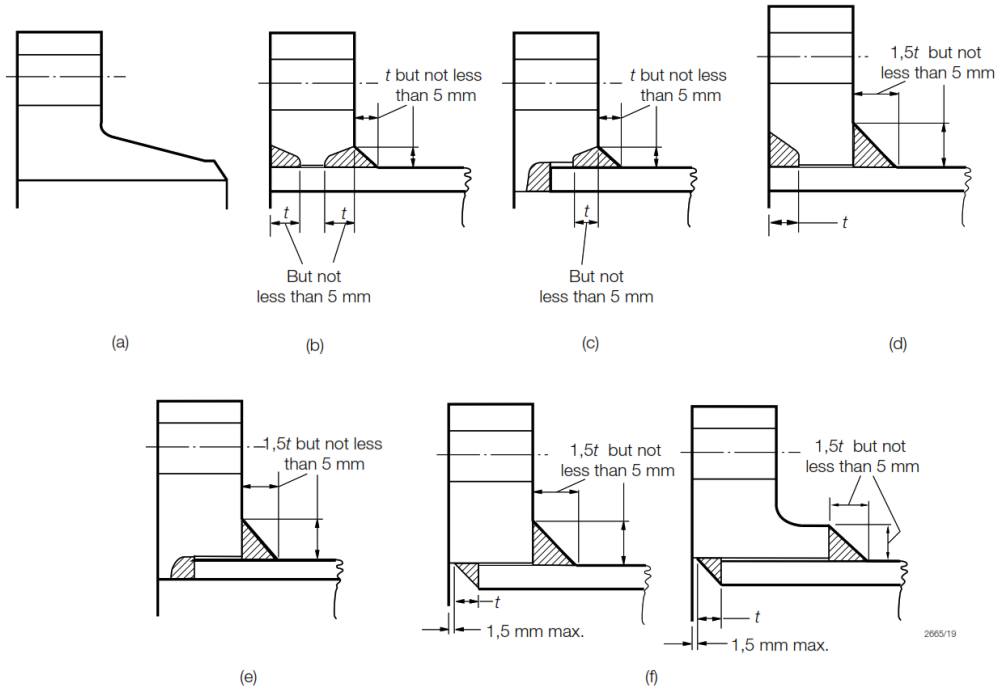
14. 5 Welded attachments to pressure vessels

14. 5. 1 Unless the actual thickness of the shell or end is at least twice that required by calculation for a seamless shell or end, whichever is applicable, doubling plates with well rounded corners are to be fitted in way of attachments such as lifting lugs, supporting brackets and feet, to minimise load concentrations on pressure shells and ends. Compensating plates, pads, brackets and supporting feet are to be bedded closely to the surface before being welded, and are to be provided with a `tell-tale' hole not greater than 9.5 mm in diameter, open to the atmosphere to provide for the release of entrapped air during heat treatment of the vessel, or as a means of indicating any leakage during hydraulic testing and in service, *See* Pt 5, Ch 17 Requirements for Fusion Welding of Pressure Vessels and Piping.

14. 5. 2 For acceptable methods of attaching standpipes, branches, compensating plates and pads, *See* Figure 10. 14. 4: Typical acceptable methods of attaching branches and pads. Alternative methods of attachment may be accepted provided details are submitted for consideration.

14. 5. 3 Where fillet welds are used to attach standpipes or set-in pads, there are to be equal sized welds both inside and outside the vessel, *See* Figure 10. 14. 4: Typical acceptable methods of attaching branches and pads (a) and (l). The leg length of each of the fillet welds is to be not less than 1.4 times the actual thickness of the thinner of the parts being joined.

Figure 10. 14. 3: Typical examples of welded flange connections



't' is the minimum Rule thickness of standpipe or branch

Table 10. 14. 1: Limiting design conditions for flanges

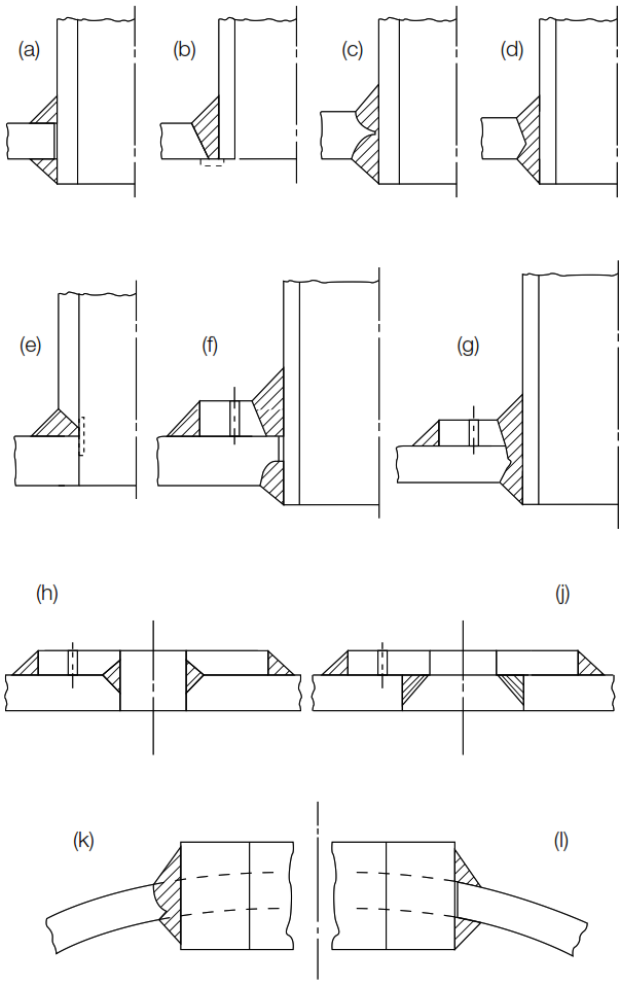
Flange type	Maximum pressure	Maximum temperature	Maximum pipe o.d.	Minimum pipe bore
		°C	mm	mm
(a)	Pressure-temperature ratings to be in accordance with a recognised standard	No restriction	No restriction	No restriction
(b)	Pressure-temperature ratings to be in accordance with a recognised standard	No restriction	168.3 for alloy steels*	No restriction

(c)	Pressure-temperature ratings to be in accordance with a recognised standard	No restriction	168.3 for alloy steels*	75
(d)	Pressure-temperature ratings to be in accordance with a recognised standard	425	No restriction	No restriction
(e)	Pressure-temperature ratings to be in accordance with a recognised standard	425	No restriction	75
(f)	Pressure-temperature ratings to be in accordance with a recognised standard	425	No restriction	No restriction
* No restriction for carbon steels				

14. 6 Fitting of tubes in water tube boilers

14. 6. 1 The tube holes in drums or headers are to be formed in such a way that the tubes can be effectively tightened in them. Where the tube ends are not normal to the tube plates, there is to be a neck or belt of parallel seating of at least 13 mm in depth, measured in a plane through the axis of the tube at the holes. Where the tubes are practically normal to their plates, this parallel seating is to be not less than 9.5 mm in depth.

Figure 10. 14. 4: Typical acceptable methods of attaching branches and pads



14. 6. 2 Tubes are to be carefully fitted in the tube holes and secured by means of welding, expanding and belling or by other approved methods. Tubes are to project through the neck or belt of parallel seating by at least 6 mm and where they are secured from drawing out by means of bellmouthing only, the included angle of belling is to be not less than 30°.

PART

5

CHAPTER 10 **Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels**

SECTION 15 **Mountings and fittings for cylindrical and vertical boilers, steam generators, pressurised thermal liquid and pressurised hot water heaters**

15. 1 General

15. 1. 1 Valves over 38 mm diameter are to be fitted with outside screws, and the covers are to be secured by bolts or studs. All valves are to be arranged to shut with a right-hand (clockwise) motion of the wheels.

15. 1. 2 All valves and cocks connected to the boiler are to be such that it is *See*n without difficulty whether they are open or shut. Where boiler mountings are secured by studs, the studs are to have a full thread holding in the plate for a length of at least one diameter.

15. 1. 3 Where a superheater is fitted which can be shut off from the boiler, it is to be provided with a separate safety valve fitted with easing gear. The valve as regards construction is to comply with the regulations for ordinary safety valves, but the easing gear may be fitted to be workable from the stokehold only. The superheater is also to be fitted with a drain valve or cock to free it from water when necessary.

15. 1. 4 Safety valve chests and other boiler and superheater mountings subjected to pressures exceeding 1.3 MPa or to steam temperatures exceeding 220°C, and boiler blow-down fittings, are to be made of steel or other approved material.

15. 2 Safety valves

15. 2. 1 Boilers and steam generators are to be fitted with not less than two safety valves, each having a minimum internal diameter of 25 mm, but those having a total heating surface of less than 50 m^2 may have one valve not less than 50 mm diameter. Small oil fired package boilers of the once through coil type used for auxiliary or domestic purposes, where the feed pump capacity limits the output, may have one safety valve not less than 19 mm internal diameter, or two safety valves with internal diameters not less than 16 mm, provided the capacity is in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 10, 15.2 Safety valves 15.2.11.

15. 2. 2 The valves, spindles, springs and compression screws are to be so encased and locked or sealed that the safety valves and pilot valves, after setting to the working pressure, cannot be tampered with or overloaded in service.

15. 2. 3 Valves are to be so designed that in the event of fracture of springs they cannot lift out of their seats.

15. 2. 4 Easing gear is to be provided for lifting the safety valves and is to be operable by mechanical means at a safe position from the boiler or engine room platforms.

15. 2. 5 Safety valves are to be made with working parts having adequate clearances to ensure complete freedom of movement.

15. 2. 6 Valve seats are to be effectively secured in position. Any adjusting devices which control discharge capacity are to be positively secured so that the adjustment will not be affected when the safety valves are dismantled at surveys.

15. 2. 7 All the safety valves of each boiler and steam generator may be fitted in one chest, which is to be separate from any other valve chest and is to be connected directly to the shell by a strong and stiff neck, the passage through which is to be of cross-sectional area not less than the aggregate area of the safety valves in the chest in the case of full lift valves, and one-half of that area in the case of other valves. For the meaning of aggregate area, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 15.2 Safety valves 15.2.11.

15. 2. 8 For each safety valve, an individual unrestricted drain is to be provided. The drain pipe is to be fitted to the lowest part of the discharge side of the safety valve; it is to be below the level of the valve seat and is to be independently led with a continuous fall to a place where the high temperature steam and/or condensate can discharge, visibly clear of the boilers and where it cannot cause injury. No valves or cocks are to be fitted to these drain pipes. The bore of the drain pipes is not to be less than 19 mm. Where a drain pipe of 19 mm is impracticable, smaller drain pipes may be considered.

15. 2. 9 To avoid the accumulation of condensate on the outlet side of the safety valves, the discharge pipes and/or safety valve housings are to be fitted with drainage arrangements from the lowest part, directed with continuous fall to a position clear of the economiser where it will not pose a threat to either personnel or machinery. No valves or cocks are to be fitted in the drainage arrangements. The drainage arrangements required by Pt 5, Ch 10, 15.2 Safety valves 15.2.8 may be accepted as meeting these requirements where the arrangements comply with this paragraph.

15. 2. 10 Full particulars of the proposed arrangements are to be submitted for consideration.

15. 2. 11 The designed discharge capacities of the safety valves on each boiler and steam generator are to be found from the following formulae:

Saturated steam safety valves:

$$E = \frac{AC(10p + 1.03)}{98.1}$$

Superheated steam safety valves:

$$E = \frac{AC(10p + 1.03)}{98.1}\sqrt{\frac{V_S}{V_H}}$$

Where

p = set pressure, in MPa gauge

A = for ordinary, high lift or improved high lift safety valves, the aggregate area, in mm^2, of the orifices through the seatings of the valves, neglecting the area of guides and other obstructions

= for full lift safety valves, the net aggregate area, in mm^2, through the seats after deducting the area of the guides or other obstructions when the valves are fully lifted

C = 4.8 for valves of ordinary type having a minimum lift of $\frac{D}{24}$

= 7.2 for valves of high lift type, having a minimum lift of $\frac{D}{16}$

= 9.6 for valves of improved high lift type having a minimum lift of $\frac{D}{12}$

= 19.2 for valves of full lift type having a minimum lift of $\frac{D}{4}$

D = bore of valve seat, in mm

E = the maker's specified peak load evaporation, in kg/hour (including all evaporation from water walls, integral, or steaming economisers and other heating surfaces in direct communication with the boiler)

V_H = specific volume of superheated steam (m^3/kg)

V_S = specific volume of saturated steam (m^3/kg).

15. 2. 12 When the discharge capacity of a safety valve of approved design has been established by type tests, carried out in the presence of the Surveyors or by an independent authority recognised by ACS, on valves representative of the range of sizes and pressures intended for marine application, consideration will be given to the use of a constant higher than C= 19.2, based on 90 per cent of the measured capacity up to a maximum of C = 45 for full lift safety valves.

15. 2. 13 Pressurised thermal liquid and pressurised hot water heaters are to be provided with a safety relief device. The safety valve is to be designed and constructed in accordance with a relevant National or International Standard acceptable to ACS.

15. 3 Waste steam pipes

15. 3. 1 For ordinary, high lift and improved high lift type valves, the cross-sectional area of the waste steam pipe and passages leading to it is to be at least 10 per cent greater than the aggregate area of the safety valves as used in the formulae in Pt 5, Ch 10, 15.2 Safety valves 15.2.11. For full lift and other approved valves of high discharge capacity, the cross-sectional area of the waste steam pipe and passages is to be not less than 0.1C times the aggregate valve area.

15. 3. 2 The cross-sectional area of the main waste steam pipe is to be not less than the combined cross-sectional areas of the branch waste steam pipes leading thereto from the boiler safety valves.

15. 3. 3 Waste steam pipes are to be led to the atmosphere and are to be adequately supported and provided with suitable expansion joints, bends or other means to relieve the safety valve chests of undue loading.

15. 3. 4 The scantlings of waste steam pipes and silencers are to be suitable for the maximum pressure to which the pipes may be subjected in service, and in any case not less than 1 MPa.

15. 3. 5 Silencers fitted to waste steam pipes are to be so designed that the clear area through the baffle plates is not less than that required for the pipes.

15. 3. 6 The safety valves of each exhaust gas heated economiser and exhaust gas heated boiler which may be used as an economiser are to be provided with entirely separate waste steam pipes.

15. 3. 7 External drains and exhaust steam vents to atmosphere are not to be led to waste steam pipes.

15. 3. 8 It is recommended that a scale trap and means for cleaning be provided at the base of each waste steam pipe.

15. 4 Adjustment and accumulation tests

15. 4. 1 All safety valves are to be set under steam to a pressure not greater than the approved pressure of the boiler. As a working tolerance the setting is acceptable provided the valves lift at not more than 103 per cent of the approved design pressure. During a test of 15 minutes with the stop valves closed and under full firing conditions the accumulation of pressure is not to exceed 10 per cent of the design pressure. During this test no more feed water is to be supplied than is necessary to maintain a safe working water level.

15. 5 Stop valves

15. 5. 1 One main stop valve is to be fitted to each boiler and secured directly to the shell. There are to be as few auxiliary stop valves as possible so as to avoid piercing the boiler shell more than is absolutely necessary.

15. 5. 2 Where two or more boilers are connected together:

- Stop valves of self-closing or non-return type are to be fitted.
- Essential services are to be capable of being supplied from at least two boilers.

15. 6 Water level indicators

15. 6. 1 Every boiler designed to contain water at a specified level is to be fitted with at least two means for indicating its water level, at least one of which is to be a direct reading gauge glass. The other means is to be either an additional gauge glass or an approved equivalent device. The required water level indicators are to be independent of each other.

15. 6. 2 Where a pair of gauge glasses are set at different levels to provide an extended range of water level indication they will only be considered as one water level indicator.

15. 6. 3 An approved equivalent device for level indication may derive its level input signal from one of the low water level detection systems required by Pt 5, Ch 10, 15.7 Low water level fuel shut-off and alarm 15.7.1 provided that in the event of a power supply failure to that system an alarm is initiated and the fuel oil supply to the burners, or any other fuel used to fire the boiler, is automatically shut-off. The fuel supply shut-off will only be required if the power supply failure results in the direct reading gauge glass being the only functioning water level indicator.

15. 6. 4 The water gauges are to be readily accessible and placed so that the water level is clearly visible. The lowest visible parts of water gauges are to be situated at the lowest safe working level.

15. 6. 5 The level of the highest part of the effective heating surfaces, e.g. combustion chamber top of a horizontal boiler and the furnace crown of a vertical boiler, is to be clearly marked in a position adjacent to the glass water gauge.

15. 6. 6 The cocks of all water gauges are to be operable from positions free from danger in the event of the glass breaking.

15. 7 Low water level fuel shut-off and alarm

15. 7. 1 Every fired boiler designed to contain water at a specified level is to be fitted with two systems of water level detection which are to be independent of each other, and which will operate an alarm and shut-off automatically the fuel supply to the burners, or any other fuel used to fire the boiler,

when the water level falls to a predetermined low level. These level detectors, in addition, may be used for other functions, e.g. high level alarm, feed pump control, etc.

15. 8 Feed check valves

15. 8. 1 Two feed check and stop valves, connected to separate feed lines, are to be provided for all main and auxiliary boilers which are required for essential services. The feed check and stop valves may be connected to a single standpipe at the shell. In the case of steam/steam generators one feed check valve is acceptable provided steam for essential services is simultaneously available from another source.

15. 9 Pressure gauges

15. 9. 1 Each boiler is to be provided with a separate steam pressure gauge.

15. 9. 2 The gauges are to be placed where they are easily read.

15. 10 Blow-down and scum valves

15. 10. 1 Each boiler is to be fitted with at least one blow-down valve.

15. 10. 2 The blow-down valve is to be attached, wherever practicable, direct to the lower part of the boiler. Where it is not practicable to attach the blow-down valve directly, a steel pipe supported from the boiler may be fitted between the boiler and valve.

15. 10. 3 The blow-down valve and its connections to the sea need not be more than 38 mm, and is to be not less than 19 mm internal diameter. For cylindrical boilers the size of the valve may be generally 0.0085 times the diameter of the boiler.

15. 10. 4 Blow-down valves and scum valves (where the latter are fitted) of two or more boilers may be connected to one common discharge, but where thus arranged there are to be screw-down non-return valves fitted for each boiler to prevent the possibility of the contents of one boiler passing to another.

15. 10. 5 For blow-down valves or cocks on the ship's side and attachments, *See* Pt 5, Ch 13, 2 Construction and installation.

15. 11 Sampling valve or cock

15. 11. 1 Each boiler is to be provided with a sampling valve or cock secured direct to the boiler in a convenient position. The valve or cock is not to be on the water gauge standpipe.

15. 12 Additional requirements for shell-type exhaust gas heated economisers

15. 12. 1 The requirements of Pt 5, Ch 10, 15.12 Additional requirements for shell-type exhaust gas heated economisers are applicable to shell-type exhaust gas heated economisers that are intended to be operated in a flooded condition and that may be isolated from the steam plant system.

15. 12. 2 The design and construction of shell-type economisers are to pay particular attention to the welding, heat treatment and inspection arrangements at the tube plate connection to the shell.

15. 12. 3 Every shell-type exhaust gas heated economiser is to be provided with a means of indicating the internal pressure. A means of indicating the internal pressure is to be located so that the pressure can be easily read from any position from which the pressure may be controlled.

15. 12. 4 Every shell type economiser is to be provided with removable lagging at the circumference of the tube end plates to enable ultrasonic examination of the tube plate to shell connection.

15. 12. 5 Every economiser is to be provided with arrangements for pre-heating and de-aeration, and addition of water treatment or combination thereof, to control the quality of feed water to within the manufacturer's recommendations.

15. 12. 6 The manufacturer is to provide operating instructions for each economiser which is to include reference to:

- Feed water treatment and sampling arrangements.
- Operating temperatures – exhaust gas and feed water temperatures.
- Operating pressure.
- Inspection and cleaning procedures.
- Records of maintenance and inspection.
- The need to maintain adequate water flow through the economiser under all operating conditions.
- Periodical operational checks of the safety devices to be carried out by the operating personnel and to be documented accordingly.
- Procedures for using the exhaust gas economiser in the dry condition.
- Procedures for monitoring, cleaning, maintenance and overhaul of safety valves.
- Emergency operating procedures.

PART

5

CHAPTER 10 **Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels**

SECTION 16 **Mountings and fittings for water tube boilers**

16. 1 General

16. 1. 1 Mountings and fittings not mentioned in this Section are to be in accordance with the requirements in Pt 5, Ch 10, 15 Mountings and fittings for cylindrical and vertical boilers, steam generators, pressurised thermal liquid and pressurised hot water heaters.

16. 2 Safety valves

16. 2. 1 Water tube boilers are to be fitted with not less than two safety valves of area and design in general accordance with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 10, 15.2, Safety valves.

16. 2. 2 Each saturated steam drum and each superheater are to be provided with at least one safety valve.

16. 2. 3 Where the superheater forms an integral part of the boiler, the relieving capacity of the superheater safety valve(s), based on the reduced pressure at the superheater outlet, may be included as part of the total relieving capacity required for the boiler. As some National Authorities limit the proportion of the superheater safety valve relieving capacity which may be credited towards the total capacity for the boiler, builders should give attention to any relevant Statutory Requirements of the National Authority of the country in which the ship is to be registered.

16. 2. 4 The boiler and superheater valves are to be so disposed and proportioned between saturated steam drum and superheater outlet that the superheater will be protected from overheating under all service conditions, including an emergency stop of the ship at full power.

16. 2. 5 Where it is proposed to fit full bore safety valves operated by independent pilot valves, the arrangements are to be submitted for consideration. The pipes connecting pilot valves and main valves are to be of ample bore and wall thickness to minimise the possibility of obstruction and damage.

16. 2. 6 Where it is impracticable to attach safety valves directly to the superheater, the valves are to be located as near as possible thereto and fitted to a branch piece connected to the superheater outlet pipe.

16. 2. 7 In high temperature installations the drains from safety valves are to be led to a tank or other place where high temperature steam can be safely discharged.

16. 3 Safety valve settings

16. 3. 1 All boiler and superheater safety valves are to be set under steam to their respective working pressures, which are not to be greater than the approved design pressure of the boiler. As a working tolerance the setting is acceptable provided the valves lift at not more than 103 per cent of the approved pressure.

16. 3. 2 In the setting of superheater safety valves, allowance is to be made for the pressure drop through the superheater so that under discharge conditions the pressure in the boiler will not exceed the approved boiler pressure.

16. 3. 3 In no case is the superheater safety valve setting to exceed by more than three per cent the pressure for which the steam piping is approved.

16. 4 Waste steam pipes

16. 4. 1 The waste steam pipe and passages leading to it from the safety valves are to be in general accordance with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 10, 15.3 Waste steam pipes.

16. 4. 2 In installations operating with a high degree of superheat, consideration is to be given to the high temperatures which waste steam pipes, silencers and surrounding spaces will attain when the superheater safety valves are blowing during accumulation tests and in service, adequate protection against heat effects is to be provided to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

16. 4. 3 Waste steam pipes are to be led well clear of electric cables and any parts or structures sensitive to heat or likely to distort; the pipes are to be insulated where necessary. In these installations each boiler should have a separate waste steam pipe system to atmosphere, with supporting and expansion arrangements such that no direct loading is imposed on the safety valve chests.

16. 5 Accumulation tests

16. 5. 1 Tests for accumulation of pressure are to be carried out with the stop valve closed and under full firing conditions for a period not exceeding seven minutes. The accumulation is not to exceed 10 per cent of the design pressure.

16. 5. 2 Where accumulation tests might endanger the superheaters, consideration will be given in cases of fired boilers to the omission of these tests, provided that application is made when the boiler plan and sizes of safety valves are submitted for approval, and that the safety valves are of an approved type for which the capacity has been established by test in the presence of the Surveyors or an approved independent authority, or for which ACS is satisfied, by long experience of accumulation tests, that the capacity is adequate. When it is agreed to waive accumulation tests, it will be required that the valve makers provide a certificate for each safety valve, stating its rated capacity at the approved working conditions of the boilers and that the boiler makers provide a certificate for each boiler stating its maximum evaporation.

16. 5. 3 The safety valves are to be found satisfactory in operation under working conditions during the trials of the machinery on board ship.

16. 6 Water level indicators

16. 6. 1 Every boiler designed to contain water at a specified level is to be fitted with at least two means for indicating its water level, at least one of which is to be a direct reading gauge glass. The other means is to be either an additional gauge glass or an approved equivalent device. The required water level indicators are to be independent of each other.

16. 6. 2 Where a pair of gauge glasses are set at different levels to provide an extended range of water level indication they will only be considered as one water level indicator.

16. 6. 3 An approved equivalent device for level indication may derive its level input signal from one of the low water level detection systems required by Pt 5, Ch 10, 16.7 Low water level fuel shut-off and alarm 16.7.1 provided that, in the event of a power supply failure to that system, an alarm is initiated and the fuel oil supply to the burners, or any other fuel used to fire the boiler, is automatically shut-off. The fuel supply shut-off will only be required if the power supply failure results in the direct reading gauge glass being the only functioning water level indicator.

16. 6. 4 Where a steam and water drum exceeding 4 m in length is fitted athwartships, two glass water gauges are to be fitted in suitable positions, one near each end of the drum.

16. 6. 5 The position of the glass water gauge of boilers in which the tubes are entirely drowned when cold is to be such that water is just showing in the glass when the water level in the steam drum is just above the top of the uppermost tubes when the boiler is cold.

16. 6. 6 In boilers, the tubes of which are not entirely drowned when cold, the glass water gauges are to be placed, to the Surveyor's satisfaction, in the positions which have been found by experience to indicate satisfactorily that the water content is sufficient for safety when the boiler is worked under all service conditions.

16. 7 Low water level fuel shut-off and alarm

16. 7. 1 Every fired boiler designed to contain water at a specified level is to be fitted with two systems of water level detection which are to be independent of each other, and which will operate an alarm and shut off automatically the fuel supply to the burners when the water level falls to a predetermined low level. These level detectors may be used for other functions, e.g. high level alarm, feed pump control, etc.

16. 7. 2 Any proposals to depart from these requirements in the case of small auxiliary boilers will be the subject of special consideration.

16. 7. 3 *See* Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems for requirements for control, alarm and safety systems, and additional requirements for unattended operation.

16. 8 Feed check valves and water level regulators

16. 8. 1 Two feed check and stop valves, connected to separate feed lines, are to be provided for each boiler and are to be attached, wherever practicable, direct to the boiler or to an economiser which forms an integral part of the boiler.

16. 8. 2 Where the arrangements necessitate the use of a common inlet pipe on the economiser for both main and auxiliary feed systems, this pipe is to be as short as practicable, and the arrangements of check valves are to be such that either feed line can be effectively isolated without interruption of the feed water supply to the boiler.

16. 8. 3 At least one of the feed water systems is to be fitted with an approved feed water regulator whereby the water level in the boilers is controlled automatically. *See* Pt 5, Ch 14, 6 Boiler feed water, condensate and thermal fluid circulation systems for arrangements and details of boiler feed systems.

16. 8. 4 The feed check valves are to be fitted with efficient gearing, whereby they can be satisfactorily worked from the stokehold floor, or other convenient position.

16. 8. 5 Standpipes on boilers, for feed inlets, are to be designed with an internal pipe to prevent direct contact between the feed pipe and the boiler shell or end plates with the object of minimising thermal stresses in these plates. Similar arrangements are to be provided for desuperheater and other connections where significant temperature differences occur in service.

PART

5

CHAPTER **10** **Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels**

SECTION **17** **Hydraulic tests**

17. 1 General

17. 1. 1 Boilers and pressure vessels, together with their components are to withstand the following hydraulic tests without any sign of weakness or defect.

17. 1. 2 Having regard to the variation in the types and design of boilers, the hydraulic test may be carried out by either of the methods indicated below:

a. boilers are to be tested on completion to a pressure 1.5 times the approved design pressure, or

b. where construction permits, all components of the boiler are to be tested on completion of the work including heat treatment to 1.5 times the design pressure. In the case of components such as drums or headers, which are to be drilled for tube holes, the test may be before drilling the tube holes, but is to be after the attachment of standpipes, stubs and similar fittings and also after heat treatment has been carried out. Where all the components have been tested as above, each completed boiler after assembly is to be tested to 1.25 times the design pressure.

17. 2 Mountings

17. 2. 1 All boiler mountings are to be subjected to a hydraulic test of twice the approved design pressure with the exception of feed check valves and other mountings connected to the main feed system which are to be tested to 2.5 times the approved boiler design pressure, or twice the maximum pressure which can be developed in the feed line in normal service, whichever is greater.

PART

5

CHAPTER 10 **Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels**

SECTION 18 **Control and monitoring**

18. 1 General

18. 1. 1 Control engineering systems are to be in accordance with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems.

18. 2 Unattended machinery

18. 2. 1 Where boilers are fitted with automatic or remote controls so that under normal operating conditions they do not require any manual intervention by the operators, they are to be provided with the alarms and safety arrangements required by Pt 5, Ch 10, 18.2, Unattended machinery to Pt 5, Ch 10, 18.3, Main, auxiliary and other boilers, as appropriate. Alternative arrangements which provide equivalent safeguards will be considered.

18. 2. 2 Where machinery is arranged to start automatically or from a remote control station, interlocks are to be provided to prevent start-up under conditions which could hazard the machinery.

18. 2. 3 Where machinery specified in this Section is required to be provided with a standby pump, the standby pump is to start automatically if the discharge pressure from the working pumps falls below a predetermined value.

18. 2. 4 Where a first stage alarm together with a second stage alarm and automatic shutdown of machinery are required in the relevant Tables of this Section, the sensors and circuits utilised for the second stage alarm and automatic shutdown are to be independent of those required for the first stage alarm.

18. 3 Main, auxiliary and other boilers

18. 3. 1 Alarms and safeguards are indicated in Pt 5, Ch 10, 18.3 Main, auxiliary and other boilers 18.3.2 to Pt 5, Ch 10, 18.3 Main, auxiliary and other boilers 18.3.9 and Table 10. 18. 1: Main, auxiliary and other boilers: Alarms and safeguards.

Table 10. 18. 1: Main, auxiliary and other boilers: Alarms and safeguards

Item	Alarm	Note
Water level*	Low	Two water level sensors are to be provided, each to operate independently, and automatically to shut off the fuel oil to the burners and operate alarms, *See* Notes 1 to 3 and 5
Water level	1st stage high	—

	2nd stage high	Where applicable, automatic closure of turbine steam inlet valves, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 18.2 Unattended machinery 18.2.4
Steam drum or superheater outlet pressure*	High and Low	—
Superheated steam temperature	High	—
De-superheated steam temperature*	High	—
Feed water or water forced circulation flow (if fitted)	Low	Fuel oil to burners to be shut off automatically, *See* Notes 5 and 6
Feed water pH	Low	When automatic dosing of feed water fitted
Feed water salinity	High	Fitted in boiler feed system
Feed water temperature	Low	When automatic temperature control fitted
Combustion air pressure*	Low	Fuel oil burners to be shut of automatically in operation or not released during start up, *See* Note 5. Purge sequences to be inhibited, *See* Pt 5, Ch 14, 3.1 Oil burning units 3.1.9
Fuel oil pressure*	Low	—
Fuel oil temperature or viscosity*	High and Low	Heavy oil only
Fuel oil atomising steam/air pressure	Low	—
Burner flame*	Failure	Each burner to be monitored. Fuel oil to burner(s) to be shut off automatically, *See* Pt 5, Ch 14, 3.1 Oil burning units 3.1.11 and Pt 5, Ch 14, 3.1 Oil burning units 3.1.12 and Note 5
Flame monitoring device(s)*	Failure	*See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 18.3 Main, auxiliary and other boilers 18.3.7 and Note 5
Igniter power supply*	Failure	Each igniter to be checked before fuel oil is supplied to burner, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 18.3 Main, auxiliary and other boilers 18.3.6 and Note 5
Forced draft fan*	Power failure	Fuel oil to burners to be shut off automatically. Control using alternative arrangements is to remain available, *See* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.5 Control systems, general requirements 2.5.7
Air registers and dampers (including those in the uptake)*	Not fully open	Purge sequence to be inhibited, *See* Pt 5, Ch 14, 3.1 Oil burning units 3.1.9
Control system*	Power failure	Fuel oil burners to be shut off automatically. Control using alternative arrangement is to remain available, *See* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.5 Control systems, general requirements 2.5.7
Uptake temperature	High	Where economiser and/or gas air heaters are integral with the boiler and also for independent exhaust gas boilers/economisers, to monitor for soot fires. *See* Note 7

Note *1.* For dual-evaporation boilers, the primary circuit is to be fitted with two independent low water level detectors which will operate alarms and shut off the fuel oil to the burners automatically. The secondary circuit is to be fitted with one low water level detector which will operate alarms and shut off the fuel oil to the burners automatically. Additionally one high water level alarm is to be fitted on the secondary circuit which may be operated by the same detector as that provided for low water level detection.

Note *2.* Only one independent system of low water level detection, alarm and automatic fuel oil shut-off need be fitted in the case of small forced circulation or re-circulation coiled water tube `package' type boilers when evaporation is less than 2900 kg/hr or the heating surface is less than 100 m^2.

Note *3.* Where two level sensors are provided these may be used for other functions, e.g. high level alarm, level control, trip systems, etc.

Note *4.* For boilers not supplying steam for propulsion or for services essential for the safety or operation of the ship at sea, only the items marked * are required.

Note *5.* These safeguards are to remain operative during automatic, manual and emergency operation.

Note *6.* For exhaust gas economisers/boilers requiring feed water or forced water circulation, the low flow alarm is to be fitted with provision to override the alarm if the exhaust gas economiser/boiler is to be operated in the dry condition. *See also* Pt 5, Ch 14, 6.2 Feed and circulation pumps 6.2.5.

Note *7.* Alternatively, details of an appropriate fire detection system are to be submitted for consideration.

18. 3. 2 The following boiler services are to be fitted with automatic controls so as to maintain steady state conditions throughout the normal operating range of the boiler:

a. Combustion system.
b. Fuel oil supply temperature or viscosity, heavy oil only.
c. Boiler drum water level.
d. De-aerator water level, where applicable.
e. Superheated steam pressure, where applicable.
f. Superheated steam temperature, where applicable.
g. De-superheated steam pressure, where applicable.
h. De-superheated steam temperature, where applicable.

18. 3. 3 Safety systems and overrides are to comply with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.4 Safety systems, general requirements 2.4.8.

18. 3. 4 Burner controls are to be arranged such that light off is only possible at the minimum firing rate compatible with flame establishment. If ignition is set to occur at a fuel rich condition then the burner is to revert to the correct operating air/fuel ratio on establishment of a stable flame.

18. 3. 5 Where water level indicators are dependent upon an external power supply, the fuel oil supply to the burners is to be automatically shut off in the event of power or signal failure.

18. 3. 6 Arrangements are to be such that burner fuel oil valve(s) do not open:

a. prior to completion of required warm up times for residual fuel oil; or
b. when the power supply to the igniter has failed, as applicable; or
c. until a pilot flame is established, as applicable; or
d. prior to the completion of furnace purging, *See* Pt 5, Ch 14, 3.1 Oil burning units 3.1.7.

18. 3. 7 Arrangements for flame failure detection are to be provided with self-monitoring capabilities which ensure that the flame detector is not erroneously indicating the presence of a flame. In the event of failure being detected by these self-monitoring capabilities:

- an alarm is to be activated;
- in the event of loss of flame detection capability for a burner;
- fuel oil to the burner is to be shut off automatically; and

- an alarm is to be activated.

18. 3. 8 Where established as necessary by Pt 5, Ch 14, 3.1 Oil burning units 3.1.8, means are to be provided to prevent starting of the ignition sequence following multiple flame failures until completion of the identified lock-out period.

18. 3. 9 Following burner shutdown, the furnace is to be purged automatically for at least the required pre-purging time. In the event of shutdown due to activation of a required safeguard, this purging is to be manually initiated.

PART

5

CHAPTER **11 Other Pressure Vessels**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General requirements**		**2315**
	1. 1	Application	2315
	1. 2	Definition of symbols	2315
	1. 3	Design pressure	2316
	1. 4	Metal temperature	2316
	1. 5	Classification of fusion welded pressure vessels	2316
	1. 6	Plans	2317
	1. 7	Materials	2317
	1. 8	Allowable stress	2318
	1. 9	Joint factors	2318
	1. 10	Pressure parts of irregular shape	2319
	1. 11	Adverse working conditions	2319
	1. 12	Alternative standards for design	2319
SECTION 2	**Cylindrical shells and drums subject to internal pressure**		**2320**
	2. 1	Minimum thickness	2320
SECTION 3	**Spherical shells subject to internal pressure**		**2322**
	3. 1	Minimum thickness	2322
SECTION 4	**Dished ends subject to internal pressure**		**2323**
	4. 1	Minimum thickness	2323
SECTION 5	**Dished ends for Class 3 pressure vessels**		**2326**
	5. 1	Minimum thickness	2326
SECTION 6	**Conical ends subject to internal pressure**		**2327**
	6. 1	General	2327
	6. 2	Minimum thickness	2327
SECTION 7	**Standpipes and branches**		**2329**
	7. 1	Minimum thickness	2329

SECTION 8 Construction 2330
8. 1 Access arrangements 2330
8. 2 Torispherical and semi-ellipsoidal ends 2330
SECTION 9 Mountings and fittings 2333
9. 1 General 2333
9. 2 Receivers containing pressurised gases 2333
SECTION 10 Hydraulic tests 2335
10. 1 General 2335
10. 2 Mountings 2335
SECTION 11 Plate heat exchangers 2336
11. 1 General 2336

PART

5

CHAPTER **11 Other Pressure Vessels**

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 11. 8. 1: Typical attachment of dished ends to cylindrical shell 2331

PART

5

CHAPTER **11 Other Pressure Vessels**

SECTION **1 General requirements**

1. 1 Application

1. 1. 1 The requirements of this Chapter are applicable to fusion welded pressure vessels, including process pressure vessels, and heat exchangers, intended for marine purposes but not included in Pt 5, Ch 10 Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels. The equations in this Chapter may be used for determining the thickness of seamless pressure vessels using a joint factor of 1.0. Seamless pressure vessels are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of Ch 5 Steel Forgings of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials. For the construction and design of pressure vessels and plate heat exchangers for liquefied gas or chemical cargo applications, *See* the *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk* or the *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquid Chemicals in Bulk* or the *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships using Gases or other Low-flashpoint Fuels* as applicable.

1. 1. 2 Where the required design criteria for pressure vessels are not indicated within this Chapter, the relevant Sections of Pt 5, Ch 10 Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels are applicable.

1. 1. 3 Seamless pressure vessels are to be manufactured in accordance with the requirements of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials where applicable.

1. 1. 4 For the use of alternative design standards for pressure vessels and heat exchanges *See* Pt 5, Ch 11, 1.12 Alternative standards for design

1. 2 Definition of symbols

1. 2. 1 The symbols used in the various formulae in Pt 5, Ch 11, 2 Cylindrical shells and drums subject to internal pressure to Pt 5, Ch 11, 7 Standpipes and branches inclusive, unless otherwise stated, are defined as follows, and are applicable to the specific part of the pressure vessel under consideration:

d = diameter of hole, or opening, in mm

p = design pressure, *See* Pt 5, Ch 11, 1.3 Design pressure, in MPa

r_i = inside knuckle radius, in mm

r_o = outside knuckle radius, in mm

s = pitch, in mm

t = minimum thickness, in mm

D_i = inside diameter, in mm

D_o = outside diameter, in mm

J = joint factor applicable to welded seams, *See* Pt 5, Ch 11, 1.9 Joint factors, or ligament efficiency between tube holes (expressed as a fraction, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 2.2, Efficiency of ligaments between tube holes)

R_i = inside radius, in mm

R_o = outside radius, in mm

T = design temperature, in °C

σ = allowable stress, *See* Pt 5, Ch 11, 1.8, Allowable stress, in N/mm^2.

1. 2. 2 Where reference is made to calculated or actual plate thickness for the derivation of other values, these thicknesses are to be minus the standard Rule corrosion allowance of 0.75 mm, if not so stated.

1. 3 Design pressure

1. 3. 1 The design pressure is the maximum permissible working pressure, and is to be not less than the highest set pressure of any relief valve.

1. 3. 2 Calculations made to determine the scantlings of the pressure parts are to be based on the design pressure, adjusted where necessary to take account of pressure variations corresponding to the most severe operational conditions.

1. 3. 3 It is desirable that there should be a margin between the normal pressure at which the pressure vessel operates and the lowest pressure at which any relief valve is set to lift, to prevent unnecessary lifting of the relief valve.

1. 4 Metal temperature

1. 4. 1 The metal temperature, T, used to evaluate the allowable stress, σ, is to be taken as the actual metal temperature expected under operating conditions for the pressure part concerned, and is to be stated by the manufacturer when plans of the pressure parts are submitted for consideration.

1. 4. 2 The design temperature, T, for calculation purposes is to be not less than 50°C.

1. 5 Classification of fusion welded pressure vessels

1. 5. 1 For Rule purposes, pressure vessels are graded as Class 1 where the shell thickness exceeds 38 mm.

1. 5. 2 For Rule purposes, pressure vessels are graded as Class 2/1 and Class 2/2 if they comply with the following conditions:

a. where the design pressure exceeds 1.72 MPa, or
b. where the metal temperature exceeds 150°C, or
c. where the design pressure, in MPa, multiplied by the actual thickness of the shell, in mm, exceeds 15.7, or
d. where the shell thickness does not exceed 38 mm.

1. 5. 3 For Rule purposes, Class 3 pressure vessels are to have a maximum shell thickness of 16 mm, and are pressure vessels not included in Classes 1, 2/1 or 2/2.

1. 5. 4 Pressure vessels which are constructed in accordance with Classes 2/1, 2/2 or 3 standards (as indicated above) will, if manufactured in accordance with the requirements of superior Class, be approved with the scantlings appropriate to that Class.

1. 5. 5 Pressure vessels which have only circumferential fusion welded seams, will be considered as seamless with no Class being assigned. Preliminary weld procedure tests and non-destructive examination for the circumferential seam welds should be carried out for the equivalent Class as determined by Pt 5, Ch 11, 1.5 Classification of fusion welded pressure vessels 1.5.1, Pt 5, Ch 11, 1.5 Classification of fusion welded pressure vessels 1.5.2 and Pt 5, Ch 11, 1.5 Classification of fusion welded pressure vessels 1.5.3.

1. 5. 6 In special circumstances relating to service conditions, materials, operating temperature, the carriage of dangerous gases and liquids, etc. it may be required that certain pressure vessels be manufactured in accordance with the requirements of a superior Class.

1. 5. 7 Details of heat treatment, non-destructive examination and routine tests (where required) are given in Ch 13 Requirements for Welded Construction of the Rules for Materials.

1. 5. 8 Hydraulic testing is required for all Classes of pressure vessels.

1. 5. 9 For a full definition of Classes of pressure vessels relating to boilers and associated pressure vessels, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 1 General requirements.

1. 6 Plans

1. 6. 1 Plans of pressure vessels are to be submitted in triplicate for consideration where all the conditions in Pt 5, Ch 11, 1.6 Plans 1.6.1 or Pt 5, Ch 11, 1.6 Plans 1.6.1.b are satisfied:

a. The vessel contains vapours or gases, e.g. air receivers, hydrophore or similar vessels and gaseous CO_2 vessels for fire-fighting, and

$$pV > 60$$
$$p > 0.1$$
$$V > 100$$

V = volume (litres) of gas or vapour space

b. The vessel contains liquefied gases, or flammable liquids

$$p > 0.7$$
$$V > 100$$

V = volume (litres)

- p is as defined in Pt 5, Ch 11, 1.2 Definition of symbols 1.2.1.

1. 6. 2 Plans of full constructional features of the vessel and dimensional details of the weld preparations for longitudinal and circumferential seams and attachments, together with particulars of the welding consumables and of the mechanical properties of the materials, are to be submitted before construction is commenced.

1. 7 Materials

1. 7. 1 Materials used in the construction of Class 1, 2/1 and 2/2 pressure vessels are to be manufactured, tested and certified in accordance with the requirements of the Rules for Materials. Materials used in the construction of Class 3 pressure vessels may be in accordance with the requirements of an acceptable national or international specification. The manufacturer's certificate will be accepted in lieu of ACS material certificate for such materials.

1. 7. 2 The specified minimum tensile strength of carbon and carbon-manganese steel plates, pipes, forgings and castings is to be within the general limits of 340 to 520 N/mm^2:

1. 7. 3 The specified minimum tensile strength of low alloy steel plates, pipes, forgings and castings is to be within the general limits of 400 to 500 N/mm^2, and pressure vessels made in these steels are to be either seamless or Class 1 fusion welded.

1. 7. 4 Where it is proposed to use materials other than those specified in the Rules for Materials, details of the chemical compositions, heat treatment and mechanical properties are to be submitted for approval. In such cases, the values of the mechanical properties used for deriving the allowable stress are to be subject to agreement by ACS.

1. 8 Allowable stress

1. 8. 1 The term `allowable stress', σ, is the stress to be used in the formulae for the calculation of scantlings of pressure parts.

1. 8. 2 The allowable stress, σ, is to be the lowest of the following values:

$$\sigma = \frac{E_t}{1.5}, \sigma = \frac{R_{20}}{2.7}, \sigma = \frac{S_R}{1.5}$$

where

E_t = specified minimum lower yield stress or 0.2 per cent proof stress at temperature, T, for carbon and carbon-manganese steels. In the case of austenitic steels, the 1.0 per cent proof stress at temperature, T, is to be used

R_{20} = specified minimum tensile strength at room temperature

S_R = average stress to produce rupture in 100 000 hours at temperature, T

T = metal temperature, *See* Pt 5, Ch 11, 1.4 Metal temperature.

1. 8. 3 The allowable stress for steel castings is to be taken as 80 per cent of the value determined by the method indicated in Pt 5, Ch 11, 1.8 Allowable stress 1.8.2 using the appropriate values for cast steel.

1. 8. 4 Where steel castings, which have been tested in accordance with the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials are also subjected to non-destructive tests, consideration will be given to increasing the allowable stress using a factor up to 90 per cent in lieu of the 80 per cent referred to in Pt 5, Ch 11, 1.8 Allowable stress 1.8.3. Particulars of the non-destructive test proposals are to be submitted for consideration.

1. 9 Joint factors

1. 9. 1 The following joint factors are to be used in the equations in Pt 5, Ch 11, 2 Cylindrical shells and drums subject to internal pressure, where applicable. Fusion welded pressure parts are to be made in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 17 Requirements for Fusion Welding of Pressure Vessels and Piping.

Class of pressure vessel	Joint factor
Class 1	1.0
Class 2/1	0.85
Class 2/2	0.75
Class 3	0.60

1. 9. 2 The longitudinal joints for all Classes of vessels are to be butt joints. Circumferential joints for Class 1 vessels are also to be butt welds. Circumferential joints for Classes 2/1, 2/2 and 3 vessels should also be butt joints with the following exceptions:

a. Circumferential joints for Classes 2/1, 2/2 and 3 vessels may be of the joggle type provided neither plate at the joints exceeds 16 mm thickness.

b. Circumferential joints for Class 3 vessels may be of the lap type provided neither plate at the joint exceeds 16 mm thickness nor the internal diameter of the vessel exceeds 610 mm.

For typical acceptable methods of attaching flat ends *See* Figure 10. 8. 2: Typical methods of attachment of header end closures and Figure 10. 9. 1: Typical attachement of unflanged flat end plates to shell in Chapter 10.

For typical acceptable methods of attaching dished ends *See* Figure 11. 8. 1: Typical attachment of dished ends to cylindrical shell.

1. 9. 3 Where a pressure vessel is to be made of alloy steel, particulars of the welding consumables to be used, including typical mechanical properties and chemical composition of the deposited weld metal, are to be submitted for approval.

1. 10 Pressure parts of irregular shape

1. 10. 1 Where pressure parts are of such irregular shape that it is impracticable to design their scantlings by the application of the formula in Pt 5, Ch 11, 2 Cylindrical shells and drums subject to internal pressure, the suitability of their construction is to be determined by hydraulic proof test of a prototype or by an agreed alternative method.

1. 11 Adverse working conditions

1. 11. 1 Where working conditions are adverse, special consideration may require to be given to increasing the scantlings derived from the formulae. In this connection, where necessary, account should also be taken of any excess of loading resulting from:

a. impact loads, including rapidly fluctuating pressures,

b. weight of the vessel and normal contents under operating and test conditions,

c. superimposed loads, such as other pressure vessels, operating equipment, insulation, corrosion-resistant or erosion-resistant linings and piping,

d. reactions of supporting lugs, rings, saddles or other types of supports, or

e. the effect of temperature gradients on maximum stress.

1. 12 Alternative standards for design

1. 12. 1 Pressure vessels and heat exchangers designed in accordance with an appropriate and established National or International Code or Standard considered acceptable by ACS may be accepted subject to agreement.

1. 12. 2 The Code or standard is to fully address the proposed design and provide for an overall level of safety equivalent to that provided by the Rules which is to be established and agreed with ACS.

1. 12. 3 For designs already addressed within the Rules, corrosion allowances, wall thicknesses for pressure boundaries and hydrostatic test pressures are to be in accordance with the relevant requirements of the Rules irrespective of the requirements of the Code or standard.

1. 12. 4 The allowable design stress is to be in accordance with the Code or Standard but is not to exceed allowable design stress within the Rules.

1. 12. 5 The requirements in the Rules for materials are to be satisfied.

1. 12. 6 The mixing of different parts of Codes and Standards is not permitted.

PART

5

CHAPTER **11** **Other Pressure Vessels**

SECTION **2** **Cylindrical shells and drums subject to internal pressure**

2. 1 Minimum thickness

2. 1. 1 The minimum thickness, t, of a cylindrical shell is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{pR_i}{10\sigma J - 0.5p} + 0.75\text{mm}$$

where

t, p, R_i = and σ are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 11, 1.2, Definition of symbols

J = the joint factor of the longitudinal joints (expressed as a fraction). *See* Pt 5, Ch 11, 1.9 Joint factors in the case of seamless shells clear of openings J = 1.0.

2. 1. 2 The formula in Pt 5, Ch 11, 2.1 Minimum thickness 2.1.1 is applicable only where the resulting thickness does not exceed half the internal radius, i.e. where R_o is not greater than 1.5 R_i.

2. 1. 3 Irrespective of the thickness determined by the formula in Pt 5, Ch 11, 2.1 Minimum thickness 2.1.1, t is to be not less than $3 + \frac{D_i}{1500}$ mm, where D_i is as defined in Pt 5, Ch 11, 1.2, Definition of symbols. The minimum thickness permitted for vessels manufactured in corrosion resistant steels will be the subject of special consideration.

PART

5

CHAPTER **11 Other Pressure Vessels**

SECTION **Cross-references**

For efficiency of ligaments between tube holes, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 2.2, Efficiency of ligaments between tube holes.
For compensating effect of tube stubs, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 2.3 Compensating effect of tube stubs.
For unreinforced openings, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 2.4, Unreinforced openings.
For reinforced openings, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 2.5, Reinforced openings.

PART

5

CHAPTER 11 Other Pressure Vessels

SECTION 3 Spherical shells subject to internal pressure

3. 1 Minimum thickness

3. 1. 1 The minimum thickness, t, of a spherical shell is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{pR_i}{20\sigma J - 0.5p} + 0.75\text{mm}$$

where

t, p, R_i, σ and J = are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 11, 1.2, Definition of symbols.

3. 1. 2 The formula in Pt 5, Ch 11, 3.1 Minimum thickness 3.1.1 is applicable only where the resulting thickness does not exceed half the internal radius.

3. 1. 3 Irrespective of the thickness determined by the formula in Pt 5, Ch 11, 3.1 Minimum thickness 3.1.1, t is to be not less than $3 + \frac{D_i}{1500}$ mm, where D_i is as defined in Pt 5, Ch 11, 1.2, Definition of symbols. The minimum thickness permitted for vessels manufactured in corrosion resistant steels will be the subject of special consideration.

3. 1. 4 Openings in spherical shells requiring compensation are to comply, in general, with Pt 5, Ch 10, 2.5, Reinforced openings, using the calculated and actual thickness of the spherical shell as applicable.

PART

5

CHAPTER **11 Other Pressure Vessels**

SECTION **4 Dished ends subject to internal pressure**

4. 1 Minimum thickness

4. 1. 1 The thickness, *t*, of semi-ellipsoidal and hemispherical unstayed ends, and the knuckle section of torispherical ends, dished from plate, having pressure on the concave side and satisfying the conditions listed below, is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{pD_oK}{20\sigma J} + 0.75 \text{ mm}$$

where

t, p, D_o, σ and J = are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 11, 1.2, Definition of symbols

K = a shape factor, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 4.2 Shape factors for dished ends and Figure 10. 4. 1: Shape factor.

4. 1. 2 For semi-ellipsoidal ends:
the external height, $H \geq 0.18D_o$

Where

D_o = the external diameter of the parallel portion of the end, in mm.

4. 1. 3 For torispherical ends:
the internal radius, $R_i \leq D_o$
the internal knuckle radius, $r_i \geq 0.1D_o$
the internal knuckle radius, $r_i \geq 3t$
the external height, $H \geq 0.18D_o$, and is determined as follows:

$$H = R_o - \sqrt{(R_o - 0.5D_o)(R_o + 0.5D_o - 2r_o)}$$

4. 1. 4 In addition to the formula in Pt 5, Ch 11, 4.1 Minimum thickness the thickness, *t*, of a torispherical head, made from more than one plate, in the crown section, is to be not less than that determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{pR_i}{20\sigma J - 0.5p} + 0.75\text{mm}$$

where

t, p, R_i, σ, and J are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 11, 1.2, Definition of symbols.

The thickness required by Pt 5, Ch 11, 4.1 Minimum thickness for the knuckle section of a torispherical head is to extend past the common tangent point of the knuckle and crown radii into the crown section for a distance not less than $0.5\sqrt{R_i t}$ mm, before reducing to the crown thickness permitted by Pt 5, Ch 11, 4.1 Minimum thickness

Where

t = the required thickness from Pt 5, Ch 11, 4.1 Minimum thickness.

4. 1. 5 In all cases, H is to be measured from the commencement of curvature, shown in Figure 10. 4. 2: Typical dished ends.

4. 1. 6 The minimum thickness of the head, t, is in no case to be less than $3 + D_i/1500$ mm, where D_i is as defined in Pt 5, Ch 11, 1.2, Definition of symbols. The minimum thickness permitted for vessels manufactured in corrosion resistant steels will be the subject of special consideration.

4. 1. 7 For ends which are butt welded to the drum shell, *See* Pt 5, Ch 11, 1.9 Joint factors, the thickness of the edge of the flange for connection to the shell is to be not less than the thickness of an unpierced seamless or welded shell, whichever is applicable, of the same diameter and material and determined by Pt 5, Ch 11, 2.1, Minimum thickness.

PART

5

CHAPTER **11 Other Pressure Vessels**

SECTION

Cross-references

For shape factors for dished ends, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 4.2 Shape factors for dished ends.
For dished ends with unreinforced openings, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 4.3 Dished ends with unreinforced openings.
For flanged openings in dished ends, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 4.4 Flanged openings in dished ends.
For location of unreinforced and flanged openings in dished ends, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 4.5 Location of unreinforced and flanged openings in dished ends.
For dished ends with reinforced openings, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 4.6 Dished ends with reinforced openings and Pt 5, Ch 10, 4.7 Torispherical dished ends with reinforced openings.

PART

5

CHAPTER **11 Other Pressure Vessels**

SECTION **5 Dished ends for Class 3 pressure vessels**

5. 1 Minimum thickness

5. 1. 1 As an alternative to the formula in Pt 5, Ch 11, 4.1 Minimum thickness, for Class 3 vessels only, the minimum thickness, t, of a torispherical unstayed end dished from plate and having pressure on the concave or convex side is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{pR_i}{CS}$$

where

t, p, and R_i = are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 11, 1.2, Definition of symbols

C = 2.57 for ends concave to pressure

= 1.65 for ends convex to pressure

S = specified minimum tensile strength of plate, in N/mm^2, which should be not less than 410 N/mm^2.

5. 1. 2 The inside radius of curvature, R_i, of the end plate is to be not greater than the external diameter of the cylinder to which it is attached.

5. 1. 3 The inside knuckle radius, r_i, of the arc joining the cylindrical flange to the spherical surface of the end is to be not less than four times the thickness of the end plate, and in no case less than 65 mm.

5. 1. 4 Ends convex to pressure are not to be used for vessels exceeding 610 mm internal diameter.

5. 1. 5 Where the end is provided with a flanged manhole, the thickness of the end, in mm, determined by Pt 5, Ch 11, 5.1 Minimum thickness 5.1.1, is to be increased by 3 mm, and the total depth, H, of the manhole flange, measured from the outer surface of the plate on the minor axis, is to be not less than:

$$H = \sqrt{t_1 W}$$

Where

t_1 = required thickness of the plate, in mm

H = depth of flange, in mm

W = minor axis of the manhole, in mm.

PART

5

CHAPTER **11 Other Pressure Vessels**

SECTION **6 Conical ends subject to internal pressure**

6. 1 General

6. 1. 1 Conical ends and conical reducing sections, as shown in Figure 10. 5. 1: Conical ends and conical reducing sections in Pt 5, Ch 10 Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels, are to be designed in accordance with the equations given in Pt 5, Ch 11, 6.2 Minimum thickness.

6. 1. 2 Connections between cylindrical shell and conical sections and ends should preferably be by means of a knuckle transition radius. Typical permitted details are shown in Figure 10. 5. 1: Conical ends and conical reducing sections in Pt 5, Ch 10 Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels. Alternatively, conical sections and ends may be butt welded to cylinders without a knuckle radius when the change in angle of slope, ψ, between the two sections under consideration does not exceed 30°.

6. 1. 3 Conical ends may be constructed of several ring sections of decreasing thickness as determined by the corresponding decreasing diameter.

6. 2 Minimum thickness

6. 2. 1 The minimum thickness, t, of the cylinder, knuckle and conical section at the junction and within the distance L from the junction is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{pD_oK}{20\sigma J} + 0.75 \text{ mm}$$

where

t, p, σ and J are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 11, 1.2, Definition of symbols

D_o = outside diameter, in mm of the conical section or end, *See* Figure 10. 5. 1: Conical ends and conical reducing sections

K = a factor, taking into account the stress in the knuckle, *See* .

6. 2. 2 If the distance of a circumferential seam from the knuckle or junction is not less than L, then J is to be taken as 1.0; otherwise J is to be taken as the weld joint factor appropriate to the circumferential seam,

Where

r_1 = inside radius of transition knuckle, in mm, which is to be taken as $0.01D_c$ in the case of conical sections without knuckle transition

L = distance, in mm, from knuckle or junction within which meridional stresses determine the required thickness, *See* Figure 10. 5. 1: Conical ends and conical reducing sections in Pt 5, Ch 10 Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels

$$= 0.5\sqrt{\frac{D_o t}{\cos\psi}}$$

ψ = difference between angle of slope of two adjoining conical sections, *See* Figure 10. 5. 1: Conical ends and conical reducing sections in Pt 5, Ch 10 Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels.

6. 2. 3 The minimum thickness, t, of those parts of conical sections not less than a distance L from the junction with a cylinder or other conical section, is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{pD_c}{20\sigma J - p}\frac{1}{\cos\alpha} + 0.75\text{mm}$$

where

D_c = inside diameter, in mm, of conical section or end at the position under consideration, *See* Figure 10. 5. 1: Conical ends and conical reducing sections in Pt 5, Ch 10 Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels

α, α_1, α_2 = angle of slope of conical section (at the point under consideration) to the vessel axis, *See* Figure 10. 5. 1: Conical ends and conical reducing sections in Pt 5, Ch 10 Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels.

6. 2. 4 The thickness of conical sections having an angle of inclination to the vessel axis of more than 75° is to be determined as for a flat plate.

PART

5

CHAPTER **11 Other Pressure Vessels**

SECTION **7 Standpipes and branches**

7. 1 Minimum thickness

7. 1. 1 The minimum wall thickness, t, of standpipes and branches is to be not less than the greater of the two values determined by the following formulae, making such additions as may be necessary on account of bending, static loads and vibrations:

$$t = \frac{pD_o}{20\sigma + p} + 0.75\text{mm}, \quad \text{or}$$
$$t = 0.015\text{D}_\text{o} + 3.2\text{mm}$$

where

t, p, D_o and σ are defined in Pt 5, Ch 11, 1.2, Definition of symbols.

7. 1. 2 If the second formula applies, the thickness need only be maintained for a length, L, from the outside surface of the vessel, but need not extend past the first connection, butt weld or flange, where:

$$L = 3.5\sqrt{D_o t}\ \text{mm}$$

7. 1. 3 In no case need the wall thickness exceed the minimum shell thickness as required by Pt 5, Ch 11, 2.1, Minimum thickness, Pt 5, Ch 11, 3.1, Minimum thickness or Pt 5, Ch 11, 4.1, Minimum thickness as applicable.

PART

5

CHAPTER **11 Other Pressure Vessels**

SECTION **8 Construction**

8. 1 Access arrangements

8. 1. 1 Pressure vessels are to be so made that the internal surfaces may be examined. Wherever practicable, the openings for this purpose are to be sufficiently large for access and for cleaning the inner surfaces.

8. 1. 2 Manholes in cylindrical shells should preferably have their shorter axes arranged longitudinally.

8. 1. 3 Doors for manholes and sightholes are to be formed from steel plate or of other approved construction, and all jointing surfaces are to be machined.

8. 1. 4 Doors of the internal type are to be provided with spigots which have a clearance of not more than 1.5 mm all round, i.e. the axes of the opening are not to exceed those of the door by more than 3 mm. The width of the manhole gasket seat is not to be less than 16 mm.

8. 1. 5 Doors of the internal type for openings not larger than 230 x 180 mm need be fitted with only one stud, which may be forged integral with the door. Doors for openings larger than 230 mm x 180 mm are to be fitted with two studs or bolts. The strength of the attachment to the door is not to be less than the strength of the stud or bolt.

8. 1. 6 The crossbars or dogs for doors are to be of steel.

8. 1. 7 External circular flat cover plates are to be in accordance with a Recognised Standard.

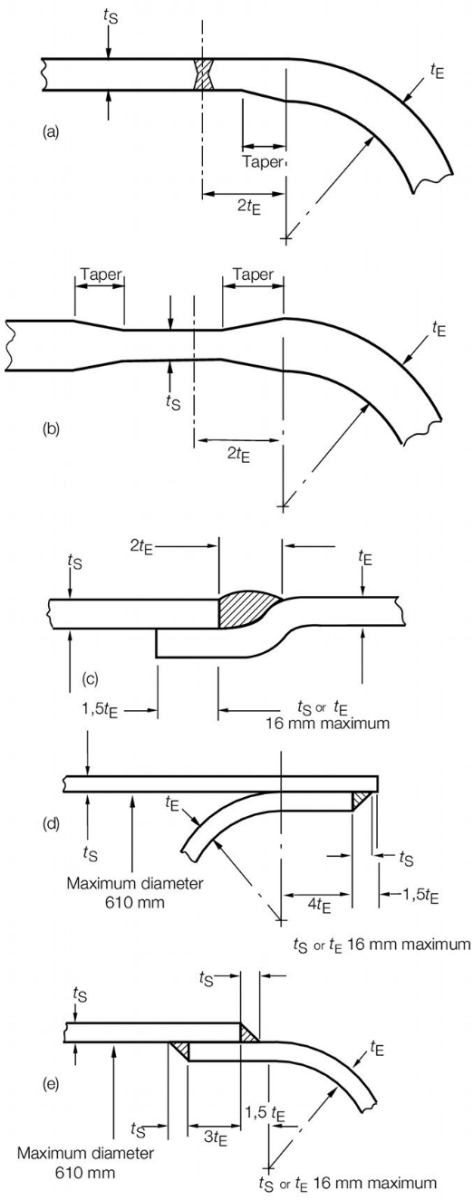
8. 2 Torispherical and semi-ellipsoidal ends

8. 2. 1 For typical acceptance types of attachment for dished ends to cylindrical shells, *See* Figure 11. 8. 1: Typical attachment of dished ends to cylindrical shell. Types (d) and (e) are to be made a tight fit in the cylindrical shell.

8. 2. 2 Where the difference in thickness is the same throughout the circumference, the thicker plate is to be reduced in thickness by machining to a taper for a distance not less than four times the offset, so that the two plates are of equal thickness at the position of the circumferential weld. A parallel portion may be provided between the end of the taper and the weld edge preparation; alternatively, if so desired, the width of the weld may be included as part of the smooth taper of the thicker plate.

8. 2. 3 The thickness of the plates at the position of the circumferential weld is to be not less than that of an unpierced cylindrical shell of seamless or welded construction, whichever is applicable, of the same diameter and material, *See* Pt 5, Ch 11, 2.1, Minimum thickness.

Figure 11. 8. 1: Typical attachment of dished ends to cylindrical shell



Type of end attachment	Acceptable for
(a) and (b)	All classes
(c)	2/1, 2/2 and 3
(d) and (e)	Class 3 only

2665/23

PART

5

CHAPTER **11 Other Pressure Vessels**

SECTION **Cross-references**

For hemispherical ends, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 14.3 Hemispherical ends.
For openings in flat ends, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 8.4, Header ends.
For unstayed circular flat end plates, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 8.4, Header ends.
For welded-on flanges, butt joints and fabricated branch pieces, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 14.4, Welded-on flanges, butt welded joints and fabricated branch pieces.
For welded attachments to pressure vessels, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 14.5 Welded attachments to pressure vessels.

PART

5

CHAPTER **11 Other Pressure Vessels**

SECTION **9 Mountings and fittings**

9. 1 General

9. 1. 1 Each pressure vessel or system is to be fitted with a stop valve situated as close as possible to the shell.

9. 1. 2 Adequate arrangements are to be provided to prevent over-pressure of any part of a pressure vessel which can be isolated. Pressure gauges are to be fitted in positions where they can be easily read.

9. 1. 3 Adequate arrangements are to be provided for draining and venting the separate parts of each pressure vessel.

9. 2 Receivers containing pressurised gases

9. 2. 1 Each air receiver is to be fitted with a drain arrangement at its lowest part, permitting oil and water to be blown out.

9. 2. 2 Each receiver which can be isolated from a relief valve is to be provided with a suitable fusible plug to discharge the contents in case of fire. The melting point of the fusible plug is to be approximately 150°C, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 11, 9.2 Receivers containing pressurised gases 9.2.3 and Pt 5, Ch 11, 9.2 Receivers containing pressurised gases 9.2.4.

9. 2. 3 Where a fixed system utilising fire-extinguishing gas is fitted, to protect a machinery space containing an air receiver(s), fitted with a fusible plug, it is recommended that the discharge from the fusible plug be piped to the open deck.

9. 2. 4 Receivers used for the storage of air for the control of remotely operated valves are to be fitted with relief valves and not fusible plugs.

PART

5

CHAPTER 11 Other Pressure Vessels

SECTION Cross-references

For starting air pipe systems and safety fittings, *See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 8 Piping.
For mountings for liquefied gas vessels, *See* the *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk*.

PART

5

CHAPTER **11 Other Pressure Vessels**

SECTION **10 Hydraulic tests**

10. 1 General

10. 1. 1 Pressure vessels covered by this Chapter are to be tested on completion to a pressure, p_T, determined by the following formula, without showing signs of weakness or defect:

$$p_T = 0.13\frac{\sigma_{50}t}{\sigma_T(t-0.75)}p \text{ but in no case is to exceed; } 0.15\frac{t}{(t-0.75)}p.$$

where

p = design pressure, in MPa

p_T = test pressure, in MPa

t = nominal thickness of shell as indicated on the plan, in mm

σ_T = allowable stress at design temperature, in N/mm^2

σ_{50} = allowable stress at 50°C, in N/mm^2.

10. 2 Mountings

10. 2. 1 Mountings are to be subjected to a hydraulic test of twice the approved design pressure.

PART

5

CHAPTER **11 Other Pressure Vessels**

SECTION **11 Plate heat exchangers**

11. 1 General

11. 1. 1 Plate heat exchangers are to be classed as follows. Class 2 where either of the following conditions apply:

a. the maximum metal design temperature is 150°C or greater, or

b. design pressure is 1.72 MPa or greater.

Class 3 in all other cases.

11. 1. 2 Where the design temperature is equal to or lower than minus 10°C, a higher class is to apply.

PART

5

CHAPTER **12 Piping Design Requirements**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**2342**
	1. 1	Application	2342
	1. 2	Definitions	2342
	1. 3	Design symbols	2342
	1. 4	Design pressure	2343
	1. 5	Design temperature	2343
	1. 6	Classes of piping systems and components	2343
	1. 7	Materials	2345
SECTION 2	**Carbon and low alloy steels**		**2346**
	2. 1	Carbon and low alloy steel pipes, valves and fittings	2346
	2. 2	Wrought steel pipes and bends	2346
	2. 3	Pipe joints - General	2350
	2. 4	Steel pipe flanges	2351
	2. 5	Screwed-on flanges	2351
	2. 6	Welded-on flanges, butt welded joints and fabricated branch pieces	2351
	2. 7	Loose flanges	2353
	2. 8	Socket weld joints	2354
	2. 9	Welded sleeve joints	2354
	2. 10	Threaded sleeve joints and threaded couplings	2355
	2. 11	Fittings having threaded end connections	2356
	2. 12	Other mechanical couplings	2356
	2. 13	Non-destructive testing	2361
	2. 14	Carbon dioxide (CO_2) fire-extinguishing system piping	2361
SECTION 3	**Copper and copper alloys**		**2364**
	3. 1	Copper and copper alloy pipes, valves and fittings	2364
	3. 2	Heat treatment	2366

SECTION 4 Cast iron 2367
4. 1 Spheroidal or nodular graphite cast iron 2367
4. 2 Grey cast iron 2367
SECTION 5 Plastic pipesn 2369
5. 1 General 2369
5. 2 Design and performance criteria 2369
5. 3 Design strength 2370
5. 4 Fire performance criteria 2370
5. 5 Additional fire performance criteria applicable to ships 2371
5. 6 Electrical conductivity 2374
5. 7 Manufacture and quality control 2374
5. 8 Construction and installation 2374
5. 9 Additional requirements for testing plastic pipes for ships 2375
SECTION 6 Valves 2376
6. 1 Design requirements 2376
SECTION 7 Flexible hoses 2377
7. 1 General 2377
7. 2 Applications 2378
7. 3 Design requirements 2378
7. 4 Testing 2379
SECTION 8 Hydraulic tests on pipes and fittings 2380
8. 1 Hydraulic tests before installation on board 2380
8. 2 Testing after assembly on board 2381
SECTION 9 Piping for LPG/LNG carriers, gas fuelled ships and classed refrigeration systems 2383
9. 1 Scope 2383
9. 2 Application 2383
9. 3 Classes of piping system and components 2383
9. 4 Materials 2384
9. 5 Valves and piping components independent of temperature 2384
9. 6 Valves for cryogenic temperature service 2384
9. 7 Valves for refrigeration service 2385
9. 8 Expansion bellows 2385
9. 9 Pressure testing of piping and other piping components 2386
9. 10 Equipment documentation 2386
9. 11 Relief valves for LPG/LNG cargo and deck tanks 2386

SECTION 10 Austenitic and duplex stainless steels 2387
10. 1 Pipe thickness 2387
SECTION 11 Appendix - Guidance notes on metal pipes for water services 2388
11. 1 General 2388
11. 2 Materials 2388
11. 3 Steel pipes 2389
11. 4 Copper and copper alloy pipes 2389
11. 5 Flanges 2389
11. 6 Water velocity 2390
11. 7 Fabrication and installation 2390
11. 8 Metal pipes for fresh water services 2390

PART

5

CHAPTER 12 Piping Design Requirements

LIST OF TABLES

Table 12. 1. 1: Maximum pressure and temperature conditions for Class II and III piping systems ... 2344

Table 12. 1. 2: Maximum conditions for pipes, valves and fittings for which manufacturer's materials test certificate is acceptable ... 2345

Table 12. 2. 1: Carbon and carbon-manganese steel pipes ... 2347

Table 12. 2. 2: Alloy steel pipes ... 2347

Table 12. 2. 3: Values of c for steel pipes ... 2348

Table 12. 2. 4: Minimum thickness for steel pipes ... 2349

Table 12. 2. 5: Limiting design conditions for flange types ... 2352

Table 12. 2. 6: Limiting design conditions for threaded sleeve joints and threaded couplings ... 2355

Table 12. 2. 7: Application of mechanical joints ... 2358

Table 12. 2. 8: Application of mechanical joints depending on class of piping ... 2360

Table 12. 2. 9: Minimum thickness for steel pipes for CO2 fire-extinguishing ... 2362

Table 12. 3. 1: Copper and copper alloy pipes ... 2365

Table 12. 3. 2: Minimum thickness for copper and copper alloy pipes ... 2365

Table 12. 5. 1: Fire endurance requirements ... 2371

Table 12. 10. 1: Minimum thickness for austenitic and duplex stainless steel pipes ... 2387

PART

5

CHAPTER 12 Piping Design Requirements

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 12. 1. 1: Classes of piping system 2344
Figure 12. 2. 1: Screwed-on flange 2351
Figure 12. 2. 2: Typical welded-on flanges 2352
Figure 12. 2. 3: Loose flange arrangements 2354
Figure 12. 2. 4: Examples of mechanical joints (Part 1) 2357
Figure 12. 2. 5: Examples of mechanical joints (Part 2) 2358

PART

5

CHAPTER **12 Piping Design Requirements**

SECTION **1 General**

1. 1 Application

1. 1. 1 The requirements of this Chapter apply to the design and construction of piping systems, including pipe fittings forming parts of such systems.

1. 1. 2 The materials used for pipes, valves and fittings are to be suitable for the medium and the service for which the piping is intended.

1. 1. 3 The piping systems for LPG and LNG carriers, gas fuelled ships and classed refrigeration systems are to comply with the relevant Sections of this Chapter where applicable and the additional requirements in Pt 5, Ch 12, 9 Piping for LPG/LNG carriers, gas fuelled ships and classed refrigeration systems as well as the requirements contained in the *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk* (hereinafter referred to as the Rules for Ships for Liquefied Gases).

1. 1. 4 The cargo piping systems for chemical tankers are to comply with the relevant Sections of this Chapter where applicable, except where there are specific alternative or additional requirements provided in the *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquid Chemicals in Bulk*.

1. 2 Definitions

1. 2. 1 **Piping system** includes pipes and fittings such as expansion joints, valves, pipe joints, support arrangements, flexible tube lengths, etc. and components in direct connection with the piping such as pumps, heat exchangers, air receivers, independent tanks, etc.

1. 3 Design symbols

1. 3. 1 The symbols used in this Chapter are defined as follows:

a = percentage negative manufacturing tolerance on thickness

c = corrosion allowance, in mm

d = inside diameter of pipe, in mm, *See* Pt 5, Ch 12, 1.3 Design symbols 1.3.3

e = weld efficiency factor, *See* Pt 5, Ch 12, 1.3 Design symbols 1.3.4

p = design pressure, in MPa, *See* Pt 5, Ch 12, 1.4 Design pressure

p_t = hydraulic test pressure, in MPa

t = the minimum thickness of a straight pipe, in mm, including corrosion allowance and negative tolerance, where applicable

t_b = the minimum thickness of a straight pipe to be used for a pipe bend, in mm, including bending allowance, corrosion allowance and negative tolerance, where applicable

D = outside diameter of pipe, in mm, *See* Pt 5, Ch 12, 1.3 Design symbols 1.3.2

R = radius of curvature of a pipe bend at the centreline of the pipe, in mm

T = design temperature, in °C, *See* Pt 5, Ch 12, 1.5 Design temperature

σ = maximum permissible design stress, in N/mm^2 (kgf/cm^2).

1. 3. 2 The outside diameter, D, is subject to manufacturing tolerances, but these are not to be used in the evaluation of formulae.

1. 3. 3 The inside diameter, d, is not to be confused with nominal size, which is an accepted designation associated with outside diameters of standard rolling sizes.

1. 3. 4 The weld efficiency factor, e, is to be taken as 1 for seamless and electric resistance and induction welded steel pipes. Where other methods of pipe manufacture are proposed, the value of e will be specially considered.

1. 4 Design pressure

1. 4. 1 The design pressure, p, is the maximum permissible working pressure and is to be not less than the highest set pressure of the safety valve or relief valve.

1. 4. 2 In water tube boiler installations, the design pressure for steam piping between the boiler and integral superheater outlet is to be taken as the design pressure of the boiler, i.e. not less than the highest set pressure of any safety valve on the boiler drum. For piping leading from the superheater outlet, the design pressure is to be taken as the highest set pressure of the superheater safety valves.

1. 4. 3 The design pressure of feed piping and other piping on the discharge from pumps is to be taken as the pump pressure at full rated speed against a shut valve. Where a safety valve or other protective device is fitted to restrict the pressure to a lower value than the shut valve load, the design pressure is to be the highest set pressure of the device.

1. 4. 4 For design pressure of steering gear components and piping, *See* Pt 5, Ch 19, 3.1 General 3.1.5.

1. 5 Design temperature

1. 5. 1 The design temperature is to be taken as the maximum temperature of the internal fluid, but in no case is it to be less than 50°C.

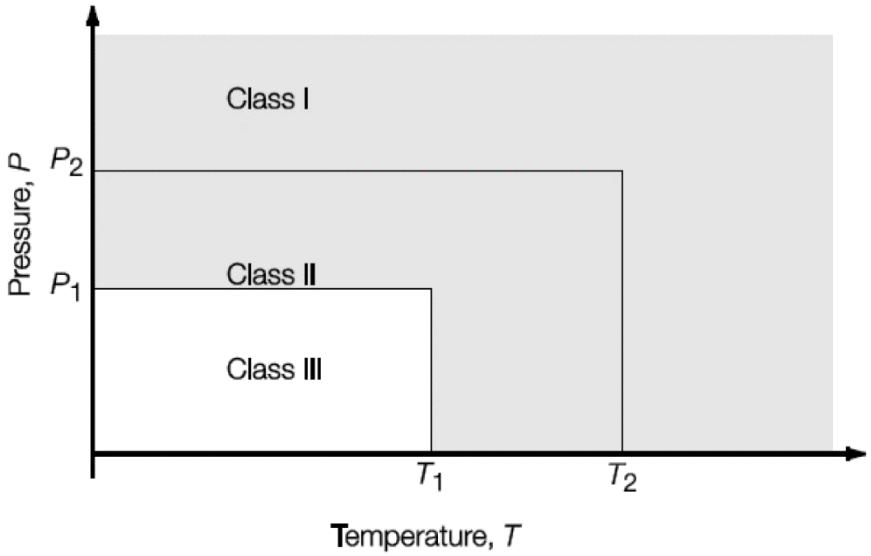
1. 5. 2 In the case of pipes for superheated steam, the temperature is to be taken as the designed operating steam temperature for the pipeline, provided that the temperature at the superheater outlet is closely controlled. Where temperature fluctuations exceeding 15°C above the designed temperature are to be expected in normal service, the steam temperature to be used for determining the allowable stress is to be increased by the amount of this excess.

1. 6 Classes of piping systems and components

1. 6. 1 Pressure piping systems are divided into three classes for the purpose of assigning appropriate testing requirements, types of joints to be adopted, heat treatment and weld procedure.

1. 6. 2 Dependent on the service for which they are intended, Class II and III pipes are not to be used for design pressure or temperature conditions in excess of those shown in Table 12. 1. 1: Maximum pressure and temperature conditions for Class II and III piping systems. Where either the maximum design pressure or temperature exceeds that applicable to Class II pipes, Class I pipes are to be used. To illustrate this, *See* Figure 12. 1. 1: Classes of piping system.

Figure 12. 1. 1: Classes of piping system



Note: T_1 and P_1 correspond to the maximum temperatures and pressures for a class III piping system and T_2 and P_2 to these for a Class II piping system depending on the service.

Table 12. 1. 1: Maximum pressure and temperature conditions for Class II and III piping systems

Piping system	Class II		Class III	
	P_2	T_2	P_1	T_1
	MPa	°C	MPa	°C
Steam	1.6	300	0.7	170
Thermal oil	1.6	300	0.7	150
Flammable Liquids, *See* Note 1	1.6	150	0.7	60
Other media, *See* Note 2	4	300	1.6	200
Cargo oil	4	300	1.6	200
Note *1.* Flammable liquids include fuel oil, lubricating oil and flammable hydraulic oil. **Note** *2.* Including water, air, gases, non-flammable hydraulic oil.				

1. 6. 3 In addition to the pressure piping systems in Table 12. 1. 1: Maximum pressure and temperature conditions for Class II and III piping systems, Class III pipes may be used for open ended piping, e.g. overflows, vents, boiler waste steam pipes, open ended drains, sounding pipes etc.

1. 6. 4 Class II and III pipes are not to be used for toxic media.

1. 6. 5 Class I pipes are generally required for corrosive media. Class II pipes may be used for corrosive media where special safeguards for reducing the potential for leakage and limiting its consequences are provided, e.g. the use of pipe ducts, shielding, screening, etc. in such a way that a leakage will not cause a potential hazard or damage to surrounding areas. Class III pipes are not to be used for corrosive media. Materials used for piping for corrosive media are to be specially considered.

1. 6. 6 For piping systems or components using cast iron, *See* Pt 5, Ch 12, 4 Cast iron.

1. 7 Materials

1. 7. 1 Materials for metallic castings and forgings of Class I and Class II piping systems are to be produced at a works approved by ACS and are to be tested in accordance with the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials (commonly referred to as the Rules for Materials).

1. 7. 2 The Manufacturer's materials certificate will be accepted in lieu of an ACS materials certificate for Class III piping systems and for all other classes of piping and associated components where the maximum design conditions are less than the values shown in Table 12. 1. 2: Maximum conditions for pipes, valves and fittings for which manufacturer's materials test certificate is acceptable. *See* Ch 1, 3.1 General 3.1.3.c of the Rules for Materials.

1. 7. 3 The manufacturer's certificate for materials for ship-side valves and fittings and valves on the collision bulkhead equal to or less than 500 mm nominal diameter will be accepted in lieu of ACS's materials certificate where the valves and fittings are in accordance with a recognised National Standard applicable to the intended application and are manufactured and tested in accordance with the appropriate requirements of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials.

Table 12. 1. 2: Maximum conditions for pipes, valves and fittings for which manufacturer's materials test certificate is acceptable

Material	DN = nominal diameter, mm p_w = working pressure, MPa
When the working temperature is less than 300°C: Carbon and low alloy steel, austenitic stainless steel and cast iron (spheroidal or nodular)	$DN < 50$ or $p_w \times DN < 250$
Copper alloy intended for a working temperature of less than 200°C	$DN < 50$ or $p_w \times DN < 150$

PART

5

CHAPTER **12 Piping Design Requirements**

SECTION **2 Carbon and low alloy steels**

2. 1 Carbon and low alloy steel pipes, valves and fittings

2. 1. 1 Materials for Class I and Class II piping systems, also for ship-side valves and fittings and valves on the collision bulkhead, are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the appropriate requirements of Pt 5, Ch 12, 1.7 Materials of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials.

2. 1. 2 Materials for Class III piping systems are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of acceptable national specifications. Pipes having forge butt welded longitudinal seams are not to be used for fuel oil systems, for heating coils in oil tanks, or for pressures exceeding 0.4 MPa. The manufacturer's certificate will be acceptable and is to be provided for each consignment of material. *See* Ch 1, 3.1 General 3.1.3.c of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials.

2. 1. 3 Steel pipes, valves and fittings may be used within the temperature limits indicated in Table 12. 1. 1: Maximum pressure and temperature conditions for Class II and III piping systems and Table 12. 2. 2: Alloy steel pipes. Where rimming steel is used for pipes manufactured by electric resistance or induction welding processes, the design temperature is limited to 400°C, *See* Ch 6, 3 Welded pressure pipes of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials.

2. 2 Wrought steel pipes and bends

2. 2. 1 The maximum permissible design stress, σ, is to be taken as the lowest of the following values:

$$\sigma = \frac{E_t}{1.6}, \sigma = \frac{R_{20}}{2.7}, \sigma = \frac{S_R}{1.6}$$

where

E_t = specified minimum lower yield or 0.2 per cent proof stress at the design temperature; in the case of stainless steel, the 1.0 per cent proof stress at design temperature is to be used

R_{20} = specified minimum tensile strength at ambient temperature

S_R = average stress to produce rupture in 100 000 hours at the design temperature

Values of the maximum permissible design stress, σ, obtained from the properties of the steels specified in Ch 6 Steel Pipes and Tubes of the Rules for Materials are shown in Table 12. 2. 1: Carbon and carbon-manganese steel pipes and Table 12. 2. 2: Alloy steel pipes. For intermediate

values of specified minimum strengths and temperatures, values of the permissible design stress may be obtained by interpolation.

2. 2. 2 Where it is proposed to use, for high temperature service, alloy steels other than those detailed in Table 12. 2. 2: Alloy steel pipes particulars of the tube sizes, design conditions and appropriate national or proprietary material specifications are to be submitted for consideration.

Table 12. 2. 1: Carbon and carbon-manganese steel pipes

Specified minimum tensile strength, N/mm² (kgf/mm²)	Maximum permissible stress, N/mm² (kgf/cm²)						
	Maximum design temperature, °C						
	50	100	150	200	250	300	
320 (33)	107 (1091)	105 (1070)	99 (1010)	92 (938)	78 (795)	62 (632)	
360 (37)	120 (1224)	117 (1193)	110 (1122)	103 (1050)	91 (928)	76 (775)	
410 (42)	136 (1387)	131 (1336)	124 (1264)	117 (1193)	106 (1081)	93 (948)	
460 (47)	151 (1540)	146 (1489)	139 (1417)	132 (1346)	122 (1244)	111 (1132)	
490 (50)	160 (1632)	156 (1591)	148 (1509)	141 (1438)	131 (1336)	121 (1234)	
	Maximum design temperature, °C						
	350	400	410	420	430	440	450
320 (33)	57 (581)	55 (561)	55 (561)	54 (551)	54 (551)	54 (551)	49 (500)
360 (37)	69 (704)	68 (693)	68 (693)	68 (693)	64 (653)	56 (571)	49 (500)
410 (42)	86 (877)	84 (857)	79 (806)	71 (724)	64 (653)	56 (571)	49 (500)
460 (47)	101 (1030)	99 (1010)	98 (999)	85 (876)	73 (744)	62 (632)	53 (540)
490 (50)	111 (1132)	109 (1111)	98 (999)	85 (867)	73 (744)	62 (632)	53 (540)

Table 12. 2. 2: Alloy steel pipes

Type of steel	Specified minimum tensile strength, N/mm² (kgf/mm²)	Maximum permissible stress, N/mm² (kgf/cm²)									
		Maximum design temperature, °C									
		50	100	200	300	350	400	440	450	460	470
1 Cr 1/2 Mo	440 (46)	159 (1621)	150 (1530)	137 (1397)	114 (1162)	106 (1081)	102 (1040)	101 (1030)	101 (1030)	100 (1020)	99 (1010)
2 1/4 Cr 1 Mo annealed	410 (42)	76 (775)	67 (683)	57 (581)	50 (510)	47 (479)	45 (459)	44 (449)	43 (438)	43 (438)	42 (428)
2 1/4 Cr 1 Mo normalised and tempered *See* Note 1	490 (50)	167 (1703)	163 (1662)	153 (1550)	144 (1468)	140 (1428)	136 (1387)	130 (1326)	128 (1305)	127 (1295)	116 (1183)

2 1/4 Cr 1 Mo normalised and tempered *See* Note 2	490 (50)	167 (1703)	163 (1662)	153 (1560)	144 (1468)	140 (1428)	136 (1387)	130 (1326)	122 (1244)	114 (1162)	105 (1071)
1/2 Cr 1/2 Mo 1/4 V	460 (47)	166 (1693)	162 (1652)	147 (1499)	120 (1224)	115 (1173)	111 (1132)	106 (1081)	105 (1071)	103 (1050)	102 (1040)
		Maximum design temperature, °C									
		480	490	500	510	520	530	540	550	560	570
1 Cr 1/2 Mo	440 (46)	98 (999)	97 (989)	91 (928)	76 (775)	62 (632)	51 (520)	42 (428)	34 (347)	27 (275)	22 (224)
2 1/4 Cr 1 Mo annealed	410 (42)	42 (428)	42 (428)	41 (418)	41 (418)	41 (418)	40 (408)	40 (408)	40 (408)	37 (377)	32 (326)
2 1/4 Cr 1 Mo normalised and tempered *See* Note 1	490 (50)	106 (1081)	96 (979)	86 (877)	76 (775)	67 (683)	58 (591)	49 (500)	43 (438)	37 (377)	32 (326)
2 1/4 Cr 1 Mo normalised and tempered *See* Note 2	490 (50)	96 (979)	88 (897)	79 (806)	72 (734)	64 (653)	56 (571)	49 (500)	43 (438)	37 (377)	32 (326)
1/2 Cr 1/2 Mo 1/4 V	460 (47)	101 (1030)	99 (1010)	97 (989)	94 (959)	82 (836)	72 (734)	62 (632)	53 (540)	45 (459)	37 (377)

Note *1.* Maximum permissible stress values applicable when the tempering temperature does not exceed 750 °C.

Note *2.* Maximum permissible stress values applicable when the tempering temperature exceeds 750 °C.

2. 2. 3 The minimum thickness, t, of straight steel pipes is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \left(\frac{pD}{20\sigma e + p} + c\right)\frac{100}{100 - a}\text{mm}$$

$$(t = \left(\frac{pD}{2\sigma e + p} + c\right)\frac{100}{100 - a}\text{mm})$$

where

p, D, e and a are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 12, 1.3 Design symbols 1.3.1

c = is obtained from Table 12. 2. 2: Alloy steel pipes

σ = is defined in Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.2 Wrought steel pipes and bends 2.2.1 and obtained from Table 12. 2. 1: Carbon and carbon-manganese steel pipes or Table 12. 2. 2: Alloy steel pipes

For pipes passing through tanks, an additional corrosion allowance is to be added to take account of external corrosion; the addition will depend on the external medium and the value is to be in accordance with Table 12. 2. 3: Values of c for steel pipes. Where the pipes are efficiently protected, the corrosion allowance may be reduced by not more than 50 per cent.

Table 12. 2. 3: Values of c for steel pipes

Piping service	*c* mm

Superheated steam systems	0.3
Saturated steam systems	0.8
Steam coil systems in cargo tanks	2.0
Feed water for boilers in open circuit systems	1.5
Feed water for boilers in closed circuit systems	0.5
Blow down (for boilers) systems	1.5
Compressed air systems	1.0
Hydraulic oil systems	0.3
Lubricating oil systems	0.3
Fuel oil systems	1.0
Cargo oil systems	2.0
Refrigerating plants	0.3
Fresh water systems	0.8
Sea-water systems in general	3.0

2. 2. 4 The minimum thickness, t_b, of a straight steel pipe to be used for a pipe bend is to be determined by the following formula, except where it can be demonstrated that the use of a thickness less than t_b would not reduce the thickness below t at any point after bending:

$$t_b = [(\frac{pD}{20\sigma e + p})(1 + \frac{D}{2.5R}) + c]\frac{100}{100 - a}\text{mm}$$

$$(t_b = [(\frac{pD}{2\sigma e + p})(1 + \frac{D}{2.5R}) + c]\frac{100}{100 - a}\text{mm})$$

where p, D, R, e and a are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 12, 1.3 Design symbols 1.3.1

σ and c are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.2 Wrought steel pipes and bends 2.2.3. In general, R is to be not less than $3D$.

2. 2. 5 Where the minimum thickness calculated by Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.2 Wrought steel pipes and bends 2.2.3 or Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.2 Wrought steel pipes and bends 2.2.4 is less than that shown in Table 12. 2. 4: Minimum thickness for steel pipes, the minimum nominal thickness for the appropriate standard pipe size shown in the Table is to be used. No allowance is required for negative tolerance, corrosion or reduction in thickness due to bending on this nominal thickness. For larger diameters, the minimum thickness will be considered. For threaded pipes, where permitted, the minimum thickness is to be measured at the bottom of the thread.

2. 2. 6 For sounding pipes, except those for cargo tanks with cargo having a flash point of less than 60°C, the minimum thickness is intended to apply to the part outside the tank.

2. 2. 7 For air, bilge, ballast, fuel, overflow, sounding and venting pipes as listed in Table 12. 2. 4: Minimum thickness for steel pipes, where the pipes are efficiently protected against corrosion, the thickness may be reduced by not more than 1 mm.

Table 12. 2. 4: Minimum thickness for steel pipes

External diameter, D, in mm	Pipes in general, in mm	Venting, overflow and sounding pipes for structural tanks, in mm	Bilge, ballast and general sea-water pipes, in mm	Bilge, air, overflow and sounding pipes through ballast and fuel tanks, ballast lines through fuel tanks and fuel lines through ballast tanks, in mm	Air, overflow and sounding pipes for fuel oil tanks passing through cargo holds of bulk carriers, in mm
10.2-12	1.6	-	-	-	-
13.5-19	1.8	-	-	-	-
20	2.0	-	-	-	-
21.3-25	2.0	-	3.2	-	-
26.9-33.7	2.0	-	3.2	-	-

38-44.5	2.0	4.5	3.6	6.3	-
48.3	2.3	4.5	3.6	6.3	-
51-63.5	2.3	4.5	4.0	6.3	6.3
70	2.6	4.5	4.0	6.3	6.3
76.1-82.5	2.6	4.5	4.5	6.3	7.6
88.9-108	2.9	4.5	4.5	7.1	8.0
114.3-127	3.2	4.5	4.5	8.0	8.8
133-139.7	3.6	4.5	4.5	8.0	8.8
152.4-168.3	4.0	4.5	4.5	8.8	8.8
177.8	4.5	5.0	5.0	8.8	8.8
193.7	4.5	5.4	5.4	8.8	8.8
219.1	4.5	5.9	5.9	8.8	12.5
244.5-273	5.0	6.3	6.3	8.8	12.5
298.5-368	5.6	6.3	6.3	8.8	12.5
406.4-457.2	6.3	6.3	6.3	8.8	12.5

Note The pipe diameters and wall thicknesses given in the Table are based on common International Standards. Diameter and thickness according to other National or International Standards will be considered.

2. 2. 8 The internal diameter for bilge, venting and overflow pipes listed in Table 12. 2. 4: Minimum thickness for steel pipes is to be not less than 50 mm. The internal diameter for sounding pipes is to be not less than 32 mm.

2. 3 Pipe joints - General

2. 3. 1 Joints in pressure pipelines may be made by:

- Screwed-on or welded-on bolted flanges, *See* Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.5 Screwed-on flanges and Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.6 Welded-on flanges, butt welded joints and fabricated branch pieces.
- Butt welds between pipes or between pipes and valve chests or other fittings, *See* Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.6 Welded-on flanges, butt welded joints and fabricated branch pieces.
- Socket weld joints, *See* Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.8, Socket weld joints.
- Welded sleeve joints, *See* Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.9, Welded sleeve joints.
- Threaded sleeve joints, *See* Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.10 Threaded sleeve joints and threaded couplings
- Threaded connections, *See* Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.11 Fittings having threaded end connections
- Mechanical couplings, *See* Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.12, Other mechanical couplings
- Special types of joints that have been shown to be suitable for the design conditions. Details are to be submitted for consideration.

2. 3. 2 The dimensions and materials of flanges, gaskets and bolting, and the pressure − temperature rating of bolted flanges in pressure pipelines, are to be in accordance with National or other established Standards.

2. 3. 3 With the welded pressure piping systems referred to in Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.3 Pipe joints - General 2.3.1 it is desirable that a few flanged joints be provided at suitable positions to facilitate installation, cold `pull up' and inspection at Periodical Surveys.

2. 3. 4 Piping with joints is to be adequately adjusted, aligned and supported. Supports or hangers are not to be used to force alignment of piping at the point of connection.

2. 3. 5 Pipes passing through, or connected to, watertight decks are to be continuous or provided with an approved bolted or welded connection to the deck or bulkhead.

2. 3. 6 Consideration will be given to accepting joints in accordance with a recognised National Standard which is applicable to the intended service and media conveyed.

2. 4 Steel pipe flanges

2. 4. 1 Flanges may be cut from plates or may be forged or cast. The material is to be suitable for the design temperature. Flanges may be attached to the pipes by screwing and expanding or by welding. Alternative methods of flange attachment may be accepted provided details are submitted for consideration.

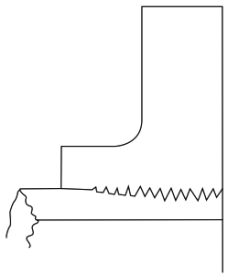
2. 4. 2 Flange attachments to pipes and pressure − temperature ratings in accordance with National or other approved Standards will be accepted.

2. 5 Screwed-on flanges

2. 5. 1 Where flanges are secured by screwing, as indicated in Figure 12. 2. 1: Screwed-on flange, the pipe and flange are to be screwed with a vanishing thread and the diameter of the screwed portion of the pipe over the thread is not to be appreciably less than the outside diameter of the unscrewed pipe. After the flange has been screwed hard home the pipe is to be expanded into the flange.

2. 5. 2 The vanishing thread on a pipe is to be not less than three pitches in length, and the diameter at the root of the thread is to increase uniformly from the standard root diameter to the diameter at the top of the thread. This may be produced by suitably grinding the dies, and the flange should be tapered out to the same formation.

Figure 12. 2. 1: Screwed-on flange



2. 5. 3 Such screwed and expanded flanges may be used for steam for a maximum design pressure of 3 MPa and a maximum design temperature of 370°C and for feed for a maximum design pressure of 5 MPa.

2. 6 Welded-on flanges, butt welded joints and fabricated branch pieces

2. 6. 1 The types of welded-on flanges are to be suitable for the pressure, temperature and service for which the pipes are intended.

2. 6. 2 Typical examples of welded-on flange attachments are shown in Figure 12. 2. 2: Typical welded-on flanges, and limiting design conditions for flange types (a) to (f) are shown in Table 12. 2. 5: Limiting design conditions for flange types.

Figure 12. 2. 2: Typical welded-on flanges

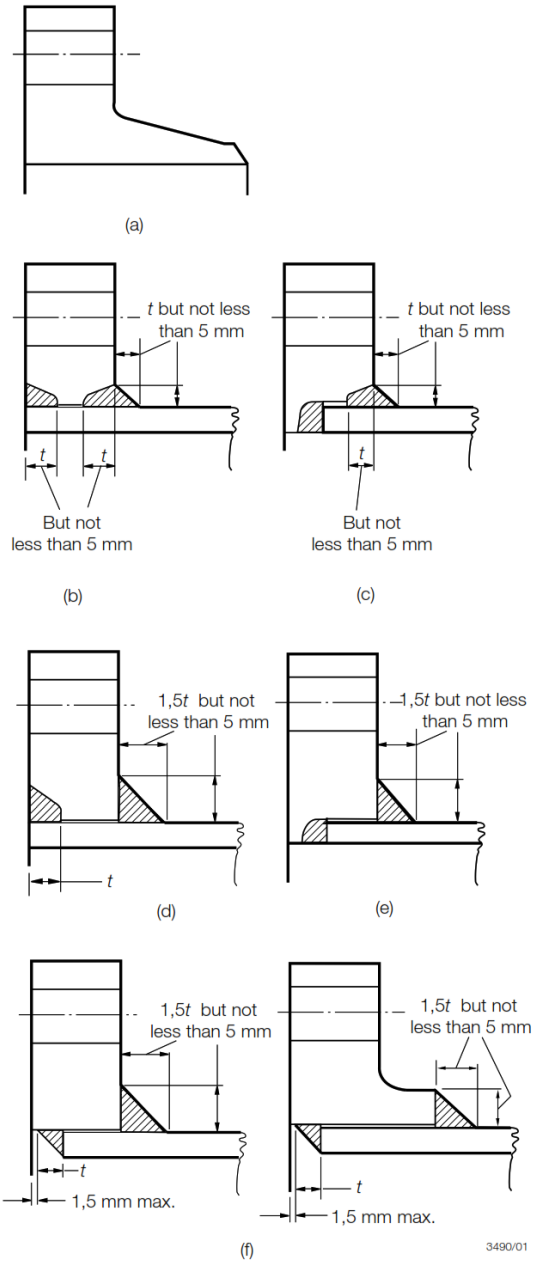


Table 12. 2. 5: Limiting design conditions for flange types

Flange type	Maximum pressure	Maximum temperature,	Maximum pipe o.d.,	Minimum pipe bore,
		in °C	in mm	in mm
(a)	Pressure-temperature ratings to be in accordance with a Recognised Standard	No restriction	No restriction	No restriction
(b)	Pressure-temperature ratings to be in accordance with a Recognised Standard	No restriction	168.3 for alloy steels*	No restriction
(c)	Pressure-temperature ratings to be in accordance with a Recognised Standard	No restriction	168.3 for alloy steels*	75

(d)	Pressure-temperature ratings to be in accordance with a Recognised Standard	425	No restriction	No restriction
(e)	Pressure-temperature ratings to be in accordance with a Recognised Standard	425	No restriction	75
(f)	Pressure-temperature ratings to be in accordance with a Recognised Standard	425	No restriction	No restriction
* No restriction for carbon steels				

2. 6. 3 Butt welded joints are generally to be of the full penetration type and are to meet the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 13 Ship Piping Systems of the Rules for Materials.

2. 6. 4 Welded-on flanges are not to be a tight fit on the pipes. The maximum clearance between the bore of the flange and the outside diameter of the pipe is to be 3 mm at any point, and the sum of the clearances diametrically opposite is not to exceed 5 mm.

2. 6. 5 Where butt welds are employed in the attachment of flange type (a), in pipe-to-pipe joints or in the construction of branch pieces, the adjacent pieces are to be matched at the bores. This may be effected by drifting, roller expanding or machining, provided that the pipe wall is not reduced below the designed thickness. If the parts to be joined differ in wall thickness, the thicker wall is to be gradually tapered to the thickness of the thinner at the butt joint. The welding necks of valve chests are to be sufficiently long to ensure that the valves are not distorted as the result of welding and subsequent heat treatment of the joints.

2. 6. 6 Where backing rings are used with flange type (a) they are to fit closely to the bore of the pipe and should be removed after welding. The rings are to be made of the same material as the pipes or of mild steel having a sulphur content not greater than 0.05 per cent.

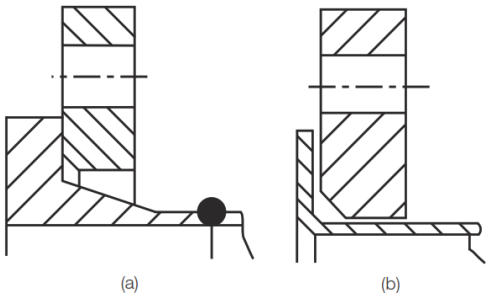
2. 6. 7 Branches may be attached to pressure pipes by means of welding provided that the pipe is reinforced at the branch by a compensating plate or collar or other approved means, or, alternatively, that the thickness of pipe and branch is increased to maintain the strength of the pipe. These requirements also apply to fabricated branch pieces.

2. 6. 8 Welding may be carried out by means of the shielded metal arc, inert gas metal arc, oxy-acetylene or other approved process, but in general oxy-acetylene welding is suitable only for flange type (a) and is not to be applied to pipes exceeding 100 mm diameter or 9.5 mm thick. The welding is to be carried out in accordance with the appropriate paragraphs of Pt 5, Ch 17 Requirements for Fusion Welding of Pressure Vessels and Piping.

2. 7 Loose flanges

2. 7. 1 Loose flange designs as shown in Figure 12. 2. 3: Loose flange arrangements may be used provided they are in accordance with a recognised National or International Standard.

Figure 12. 2. 3: Loose flange arrangements



2. 7. 2 Loose flange designs where the pipe end is flared as shown in Figure 12. 2. 3: Loose flange arrangements (b) are only to be used for water pipes and on open ended lines.

2. 8 Socket weld joints

2. 8. 1 Socket weld joints may be used in Class III systems with carbon steel pipes of any outside diameter. Socket weld fittings are to be of forged steel and the material is to be compatible with the associated piping. In particular cases, socket weld joints may be permitted for piping systems of Class I and II having outside diameter not exceeding 88.9 mm. Such joints are not to be used where fatigue, severe erosion or crevice corrosion is expected to occur or where toxic or asphyxiating media are conveyed, other than for carbon dioxide fire-extinguishing distribution piping, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 10, 14.4 Welded-on flanges, butt welded joints and fabricated branch pieces 14.4.9.

2. 8. 2 The thickness of the socket weld fittings is to meet the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.2 Wrought steel pipes and bends 2.2.3 but is to be not less than 1.42 times the nominal thickness of the pipe or tube in order to satisfy the throat thickness requirement in Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.8 Socket weld joints 2.8.3. The diametrical clearance between the outside diameter of the pipe and the bore of the fitting is not to exceed 0.8 mm, and a gap of approximately 1.5 mm is to be provided between the end of the pipe and the bottom of the socket. *See also* Ch 13, 5.2 Manufacture and workmanship 5.2.9 of the Rules for Materials.

2. 8. 3 The leg lengths of the fillet weld connecting the pipe to the socket weld fitting are to be such that the throat dimension of the weld is not less than the nominal thickness of the pipe or tube.

2. 8. 4 As an alternative to the general dimensional requirements in Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.8 Socket weld joints 2.8.2 and Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.8 Socket weld joints 2.8.3, consideration will be given to socket weld joints in accordance with a recognised National or International Standard.

2. 8. 5 Socket weld joints may be used in carbon dioxide fire-extinguishing system distribution piping only as permitted by Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.14, Carbon dioxide (CO2) fire-extinguishing system piping.

2. 9 Welded sleeve joints

2. 9. 1 Welded sleeve joints may be used in Class III systems with carbon steel pipes of any outside diameter. In particular cases, welded sleeve joints may be permitted for piping systems of Class I and II having outside diameter not exceeding 88.9 mm. Such joints are not to be used where fatigue, severe erosion or crevice corrosion is expected to occur or where toxic or asphyxiating media, other than for carbon dioxide fire-extinguishing distribution piping, are conveyed.

2. 9. 2 Welded sleeve joints are not to be used in the following locations:

- Bilge pipes in way of deep tanks.
- Cargo oil piping outside of the cargo area for bow or stern loading/discharge.

- Air and sounding pipes passing through cargo tanks.

2. 9. 3 Welded sleeve joints may be used in piping systems for the storage, distribution and utilisation of fuel oil, lubricating or other flammable oil systems in machinery spaces provided they are located in readily visible and accessible positions. *See also* Pt 5, Ch 14, 2.9 Precautions against fire 2.9.2.

2. 9. 4 Welded sleeve joints may be used in carbon dioxide fire-extinguishing system distribution piping only as permitted by Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.14, Carbon dioxide (CO2) fire-extinguishing system piping.

2. 9. 5 Welded sleeve joints are not to be used at deck/bulkhead penetrations that require continuous pipe lengths.

2. 9. 6 Welded sleeve joints are not to be used below the bulkhead deck in scupper pipes as detailed in Pt 3, Ch 12, 4.2 Closing appliances 4.2.6 unless the scupper pipes are provided with an automatic non-return valve at the shell. Where this is not practical, welded sleeve joints may be accepted provided that they are kept to a minimum and located as close as possible to the underside of the bulkhead deck.

2. 9. 7 The thickness of the sleeve is to satisfy the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.2 Wrought steel pipes and bends 2.2.3 and Table 12. 2. 4: Minimum thickness for steel pipes but is to be not less than 1.42 times the nominal thickness of the pipe in order to satisfy the throat thickness requirement in Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.9 Welded sleeve joints 2.9.8. The radial clearance between the outside diameter of the pipe and the internal diameter of the sleeve is not to exceed 1 mm for pipes up to a nominal diameter of 50 mm, 2 mm for pipes up to a nominal diameter of 200 mm and 3 mm for pipes of larger nominal diameter. The pipe ends are to be separated by a clearance of approximately 2 mm at the centre of the sleeve.

2. 9. 8 The sleeve material is to be compatible with the associated piping and the leg lengths of the fillet weld connecting the pipe to the sleeve are to be such that the throat dimension of the weld is not less than the nominal thickness of the pipe or tube.

2. 9. 9 The minimum length of the sleeve is to conform to the following formula:

$$L_{\mathrm{si}} = 0.14D + 36$$

where

L_{si} is the length of the sleeve

D is defined in Pt 5, Ch 12, 1.3 Design symbols 1.3.1.

2. 9. 10 As an alternative to the general dimensional requirements in Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.9 Welded sleeve joints 2.9.7 to Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.9 Welded sleeve joints 2.9.9, consideration will be given to welded sleeve joints in accordance with a recognised National or International Standard.

2. 10 Threaded sleeve joints and threaded couplings

2. 10. 1 Threaded sleeve joints and threaded couplings, in accordance with National or other established Standards, may be used with carbon steel pipes within the limits given in Table 12. 2. 6: Limiting design conditions for threaded sleeve joints and threaded couplings. Such joints are not to be used where fatigue, severe erosion or crevice corrosion is expected to occur or where flammable or toxic media is conveyed.

Table 12. 2. 6: Limiting design conditions for threaded sleeve joints and threaded couplings

Thread type	Outside pipe diameter, in mm		
	Class I	Class II	Class III

Tapered thread	<33.7	<60.3	<60.3
Parallel thread	-	-	<60.3
KEY			
-	Application is not allowed		

2. 11 Fittings having threaded end connections

2. 11. 1 Fittings such as valves, strainers and similar components having threaded end connections may be used in piping systems. Subject to the restrictions given in Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.10 Threaded sleeve joints and threaded couplings for threaded sleeve joints and threaded couplings.

2. 11. 2 In piping systems conveying flammable or toxic liquids, consideration will be given to instrumentation fittings having threaded connections with suitable sealing arrangements up to a size of DN15.

2. 12 Other mechanical couplings

2. 12. 1 Pipe unions, compression couplings, and or slip-on joints, as shown in Figure 12. 2. 4: Examples of mechanical joints (Part 1) and Figure 12. 2. 5: Examples of mechanical joints (Part 2), may be used if Type Approved for the service conditions and the intended application. The Type Approval is to be based on the results of testing of the actual joints. The acceptable use for each service is indicated in Table 12. 2. 7: Application of mechanical joints and dependence upon the Class of piping, with limiting pipe dimensions, is indicated in Table 12. 2. 8: Application of mechanical joints depending on class of piping.

Figure 12. 2. 4: Examples of mechanical joints (Part 1)

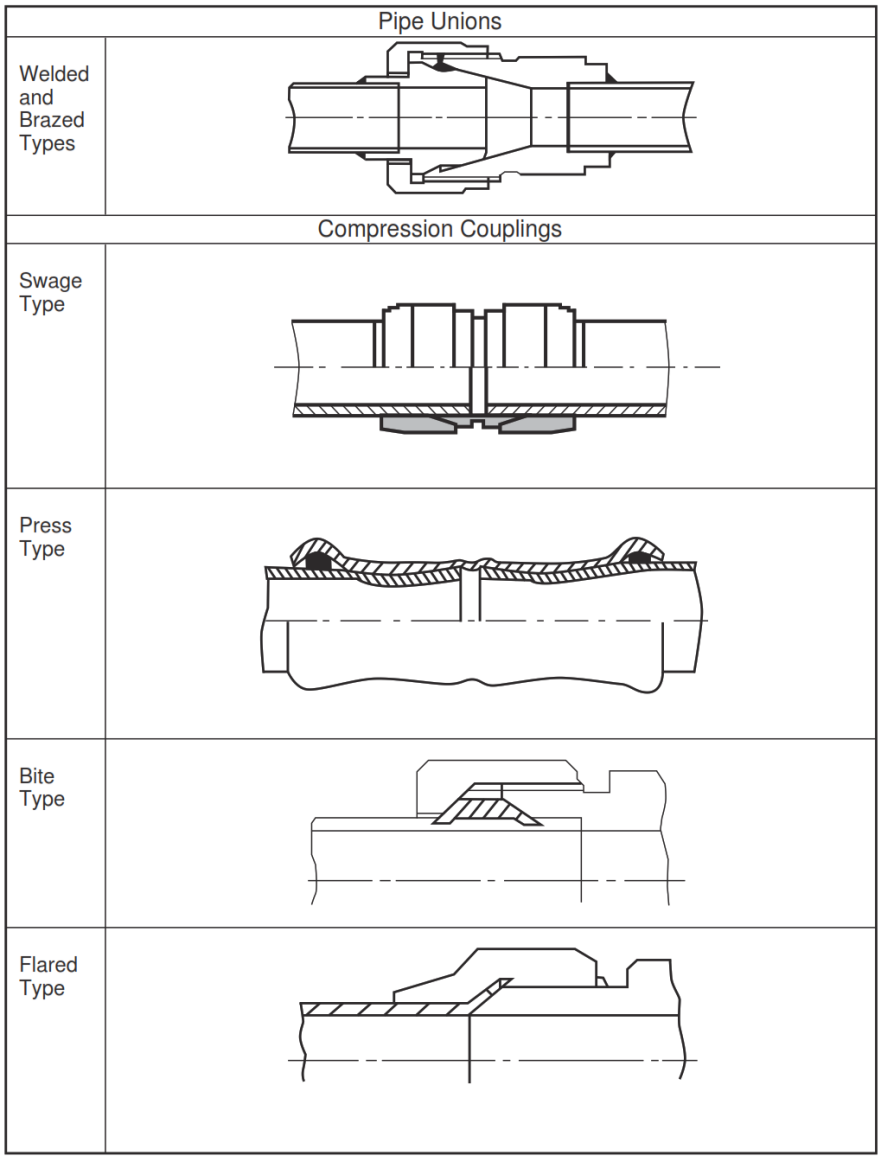


Figure 12. 2. 5: Examples of mechanical joints (Part 2)

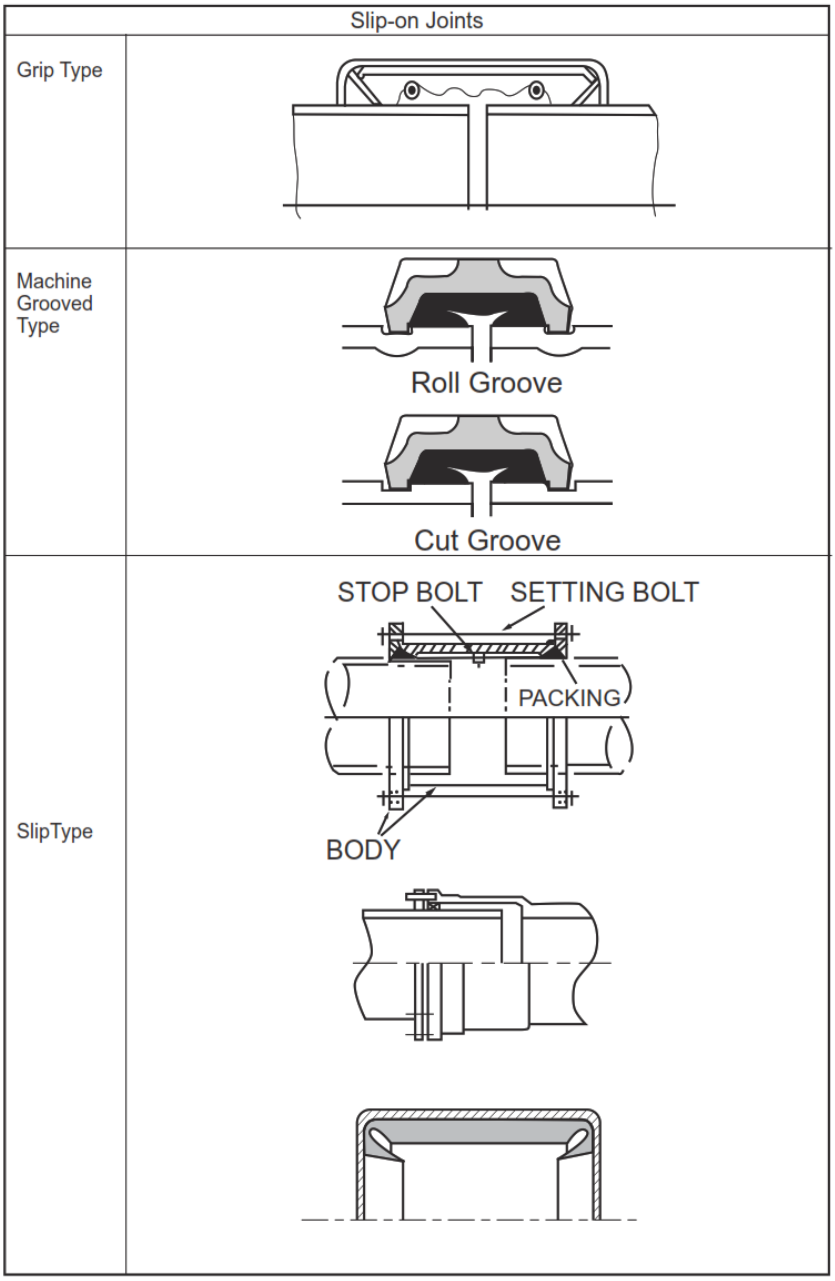


Table 12. 2. 7: Application of mechanical joints

Systems	Type of connections		
	Pipe unions	Compression couplings	Slip-on joints
Flammable fluids (Flash point <60°)			
Cargo oil lines *See* Note 4	+	+	+
Crude oil washing lines *See* Note 4	+	+	+
Vent lines *See* Note 3	+	+	+3
Inert gas			

Water seal effluent lines	+	+	+
Scrubber effluent lines	+	+	+
Main lines *See* Notes 2 & 4	+	+	+
Distribution lines *See* Note 4	+	+	+
Flammable fluids (Flash point > 60°)			
Cargo oil lines *See* Note 4	+	+	+5
Fuel oil lines *See* Notes 2 & 3	+	+	+
Lubricating oil lines *See* Notes 2 & 3	+	+	+
Hydraulic oil *See* Notes 2 & 3	+	+	+
Thermal oil *See* Notes 2 & 3	+	+	+
Sea-water			
Bilge lines *See* Note 1	+	+	+
Water filled fire-extinguishing systems, e.g. sprinkler systems *See* Note 3	+	+	+
Non-water filled fire-extinguishing systems, e.g. foam, drencher systems *See* Note 3	+	+	+
Fire main (not permanently filled) *See* Note 3	+	+	+
Ballast system *See* Note 1	+	+	+
Cooling water system *See* Note 1	+	+	+
Tank cleaning services	+	+	+
Non-essential systems	+	+	+
Fresh water			
Cooling water system *See* Note 1	+	+	+
Condensate return *See* Note 1	+	+	+
Non-essential system	+	+	+
Sanitary/Drains/Scuppers			
Deck drains (internal) *See* Note 6	+	+	+
Sanitary drains	+	+	+
Scuppers and discharge (overboard)	+	+	-
Sounding/vent			
Water tanks/Sewage tanks/Dry spaces	+	+	+
Oil tanks (f.p.> 60°C) *See* Notes 2 & 3	+	+	+
Miscellaneous			
Starting/Control air *See* Note 1	+	+	-
Service air (non-essential)	+	+	+
Brine	+	+	+
CO_2 system *See* Note 1	+	+	-
Steam	+	+	+ *See* Note 5
KEY + Application is allowed - Application is not allowed			

Note *1*. Mechanical joints that include any components which readily deteriorate in case of fire, are to be of an approved fire-resistant type when fitted in machinery spaces of category A. Mechanical couplings fitted on the 'bilge main' in machinery spaces of category A are to be of steel or equivalent material.

Note *2*. Slip-on joints are not accepted inside machinery spaces of category A or accommodation spaces. They may be acceptable in other machinery spaces provided the joints are located in easily visible and accessible positions.

Note *3*. Mechanical joints are to be of an approved fire-resistant type except when they are fitted on open decks having little or no fire risk as defined in SOLAS II-2/Reg. 9.2.3.3.2.2(10).

Note *4*. Mechanical joints that include any components which readily deteriorate in case of fire are to be of an approved fire-resistant type when fitted in pump rooms and on open decks.

Note *5*. *See* Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.12 Other mechanical couplings 2.12.10

Note 6. Mechanical joints are only permitted above bulkhead deck of passenger ships and freeboard deck of cargo ships.

Table 12. 2. 8: Application of mechanical joints depending on class of piping

Types of joints	Classes of piping systems		
	Class I	Class II	Class III
Pipe unions			
Welded and brazed type	+(OD ≤ 60.3 mm)	+(OD ≤ 60.3 mm)	+
Compression couplings			
Swage type	+	+	+
Bite type	+(OD ≤ 60.3 mm)	+(OD ≤ 60.3 mm)	+
Typical compression type	+(OD≤ 60.3mm)	+(OD≤ 60.3mm)	+
Flared type	+(OD ≤ 60.3 mm)	+(OD ≤ 60.3 mm)	+
Press type	-	-	+
Slip-on joints			
Machine grooved type	+	+	+
Grip type	-	+	+
Slip type	-	+	+
KEY + Application is allowed - Application is not allowed			

2. 12. 2 Where the application of mechanical joints results in a reduction in pipe wall thickness due to the use of bite type rings or other structural elements, this is to be taken into account in determining the minimum wall thickness of the pipe to withstand the design pressure.

2. 12. 3 Materials of mechanical joints are to be compatible with the piping material and internal and external media.

2. 12. 4 Mechanical joints for pressure pipes are to be tested to a burst pressure of 4 times the design pressure. For design pressures above 20 MPa the required burst pressure will be specially considered.

2. 12. 5 Mechanical joints, which in the event of damage could cause fire or flooding, are not to be used in piping sections directly connected to the ship's side below the bulkhead deck of passenger ships and freeboard deck of cargo ships or tanks containing flammable fluids.

2. 12. 6 The mechanical joints are to be designed to withstand internal and external pressure as applicable and where used in suction lines are to be capable of operating under vacuum.

2. 12. 7 The number of mechanical joints in flammable fluid systems is to be kept to a minimum. In general, flanged joints are to conform to a recognised standard.

2. 12. 8 Generally, slip-on joints are not to be used in pipelines in cargo holds, tanks, and other spaces which are not easily accessible. Application of these joints inside tanks may only be accepted where the medium conveyed is the same as that in the tanks.

2. 12. 9 Usage of slip type slip-on joints as the main means of pipe connection is not permitted except for cases where compensation of axial pipe deformation is necessary.

2. 12. 10 Restrained slip-on joints are permitted in steam pipes with a design pressure of 1 MPa or less on the weather decks of oil and chemical tankers to accommodate axial pipe movement, *See* Pt 5, Ch 13, 2.7 Provision for expansion.

2. 12. 11 Mechanical joints are to be tested in accordance with the test requirements of ACS's Type Approval Test Specification Number 2, as relevant to the service conditions and the intended application. The programme of testing is to be agreed with ACS.

2. 13 Non-destructive testing

2. 13. 1 For details of non-destructive tests on piping systems, other than hydraulic tests, *See* Ch 13, 5.5 Non-destructive examination of the Rules for Materials.

2. 14 Carbon dioxide (CO_2) fire-extinguishing system piping

2. 14. 1 The piping for carbon dioxide fire-extinguishing systems is to comply with the requirements of Chapter 5 - Fixed Gas Fire-Extinguishing Systems of the FSS Code, as applicable. For purposes of Classification, any use of the word 'Administration' in the Regulation is to be taken to mean ACS.

2. 14. 2 Materials for the distribution manifolds between the carbon dioxide storage bottles and the discharge valves to each section and associated pipes, valves and fittings of high pressure systems are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements for Class I piping systems. Pipes are to meet the minimum wall thickness requirements of Table 12. 2. 9: Minimum thickness for steel pipes for CO2 fire-extinguishing and the manifold system is to be hydraulically tested to a pressure of 19 MPa. A high pressure system is defined as a system where the carbon dioxide is stored at ambient temperature.

Materials for the distribution manifolds between the carbon dioxide storage vessel(s) and the discharge valves to each section and associated pipes, valves and fittings of low pressure systems are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements for Class II piping systems and the manifold system is to be hydraulically tested to a pressure of 3.3 MPa. A low pressure system is defined as a system where the carbon dioxide is stored at a working pressure in the range of 1.8 to 2.2 MPa.

2. 14. 3 Piping downstream of the distribution valve(s) for high pressure systems is to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements for Class II piping and is to meet the minimum wall thickness requirements of Table 12. 2. 9: Minimum thickness for steel pipes for CO2 fire-extinguishing. After installation the distribution system is to be leak tested at a pressure of 0.6 MPa.

Piping downstream of the distribution valve(s) for low pressure systems is to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements for Class III piping. After installation the distribution system is to be leak tested at a pressure of 0.6 MPa. Class III piping may be used for open ended distribution piping downstream of the distribution valve(s) of high pressure systems where agreed by ACS and where meeting the minimum wall thickness requirements of Table 12. 2. 9: Minimum

thickness for steel pipes for CO2 fire-extinguishing and where a minimum of ten per cent of the piping is hydraulically tested at a pressure of 12.5 MPa. This testing is to be carried out before installation.

Table 12. 2. 9: Minimum thickness for steel pipes for CO2 fire-extinguishing

External diameter *D*, in mm	Minimum thickness, in mm	
	From bottles to distribution station	From distribution station to nozzles
21.3 - 26.9	3.2	2.6
30 - 48.3	4	3.2
51 - 60.3	4.5	3.6
63.5 - 76.1	5	3.6
82.5 - 88.9	5.6	4
101.6	6.3	4
108 - 114.3	7.1	4.5
127	8	4.5
133 - 139.7	8	5
152.4 - 168.3	8.8	5.6

Note 1. Pipes are to be galvanized at least inside, except those fitted in the engine room where galvanizing may not be required at the discretion of ACS. Effects of galvanising shall be taken into account in the relevant calculations e.g. volume flow.

Note 2. For threaded pipes, where allowed, the minimum wall thickness is to be measured at the bottom of the thread.

Note 3. The external diameters and thicknesses have been selected from ISO Recommendations R336 for smooth welded and seamless steel pipes. Diameter and thickness according to other national or international standards may be accepted.

Note 4. For larger diameters the minimum wall thickness will be subject to special consideration by ACS. Note 5. In general the minimum thickness is the nominal wall thickness and no allowance need be made for negative tolerance or reduction in thickness due to bending.

2. 14. 4 Any part of the carbon dioxide fire-extinguishing system piping is to be of galvanised steel or of corrosion resistant steel. Where full penetration butt welding is used, the pipe is to be protected against corrosion in the area of the weld seam after welding. The process for protecting the pipe internally against corrosion is to be of an approved type. All pipes are to be arranged to be self-draining. Where pipes are to be led into refrigerated spaces, this is subject to special consideration. The ends of distribution pipes downstream of the distribution valve(s) are to extend at least 50 mm beyond the last nozzle and are to be fitted with a dirt trap consisting of an open ended tee with a capped nipple.

2. 14. 5 If it is necessary for carbon dioxide pipes to pass through accommodation spaces, the pipe is to be seamless and is to meet the requirements for Class II pipes. Joints are to be made only by welding and the pipes are to be hydraulically tested after installation at a pressure of 5 MPa.

2. 14. 6 The following means are permitted for making joints on carbon dioxide fire-extinguishing system piping ;

a. Full penetration butt welding, where the pipe is galvanised, *See* Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.14 Carbon dioxide (CO2) fire-extinguishing system piping 2.14.4.
b. Couplings as permitted by Table 12. 2. 7: Application of mechanical joints.
c. Cone connections.
d. Tapered threaded joints , where allowed by Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.14 Carbon dioxide (CO2) fire-extinguishing system piping 2.14.10 and where meeting the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.14 Carbon dioxide (CO2) fire-extinguishing system piping 2.14.10.
e. Flanged joints.
f. Socket weld joints to acceptable National Standards and where allowed by Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.14 Carbon dioxide (CO2) fire-extinguishing system piping 2.14.7 and where meeting the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.14 Carbon dioxide (CO2) fire-extinguishing system piping 2.14.9.
g. Welded sleeve joints may be used where allowed by Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.14 Carbon dioxide (CO2) fire-extinguishing system piping 2.14.8 and where meeting the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.14 Carbon dioxide (CO2) fire-extinguishing system piping 2.14.9.

2. 14. 7 Socket weld joints of an approved type may be used downstream of the distribution valve(s), provided that the requirements for materials and limitations on outside diameter applicable for Class II piping are applied.

2. 14. 8 Welded sleeve joints of an approved type may be used within the protected space, provided that the requirements for materials and limitations on outside diameter applicable for Class II piping are applied.

2. 14. 9 Where socket weld joints or welded sleeve joints are utilised, the pipes in way of the welded joints are to be adequately supported and the joints are to be located where they are visible. Where welding is to be carried out *in situ*, the piping is to be kept clear of adjacent structures to allow sufficient access for preheating and welding, which is to be carried out in accordance with approved procedures.

2. 14. 10 Threaded joints are only allowed inside the protected spaces and in carbon dioxide bottles storage rooms. They should have no exposed screw threads and any sealing medium should be selected as to ensure no protrusions or debris might be produced in the pipe.

PART

5

CHAPTER **12 Piping Design Requirements**

SECTION **3 Copper and copper alloys**

3. 1 Copper and copper alloy pipes, valves and fittings

3. 1. 1 Materials for Class I and Class II piping systems, also for ship-side valves and fittings and valves on the collision bulkhead, are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of Ch 9 Copper Alloys of the Rules for Materials, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 12, 1.7 Materials.

3. 1. 2 Materials for Class III piping systems are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of acceptable National Specifications. The manufacturer's certificate will be acceptable and is to be provided for each consignment of material. *See* Ch 1, 3.1 General 3.1.3.c of the Rules for Materials.

3. 1. 3 Pipes are to be seamless, and branches are to be provided by cast or stamped fittings, pipe pressings or other approved fabrications.

3. 1. 4 Brazing and welding materials are to be suitable for the operating temperature and for the medium being carried. All brazing and welding are to be carried out to the satisfaction of the Surveyors.

3. 1. 5 In general, the maximum permissible service temperature of copper and copper alloy pipes, valves and fittings is not to exceed 200°C for copper and aluminium brass, and 300°C for copper-nickel. Cast bronze valves and fittings complying with the requirements of Ch 9 Copper Alloys of the Rules for Materials may be accepted up to 260°C.

3. 1. 6 The minimum thickness, t, of straight copper and copper alloy pipes is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \left(\frac{pD}{20\sigma + p} + c\right)\frac{100}{100 - a}\text{mm}$$

$$\left(t = \left(\frac{pD}{2\sigma + p} + c\right)\frac{100}{100 - a}\text{mm}\right)$$

where

p, D and a = are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 12, 1.3 Design symbols 1.3.1

c = corrosion allowance

= 0.8 mm for copper, aluminium brass, and copper-nickel alloys where the nickel content is less than 10 per cent

= 0.5 mm for copper-nickel alloys where the nickel content is 10 per cent or greater

= 0 where the media are non-corrosive relative to the pipe material

σ = maximum permissible design stress, in N/mm² (kgf/cm²), from Table 12. 3. 1: Copper and copper alloy pipes. Intermediate values of stresses may be obtained by linear interpolation.

3. 1. 7 The minimum thickness, t_b, of a straight seamless copper or copper alloy pipe to be used for a pipe bend is to be determined by the formula below, except where it can be demonstrated that the use of a thickness less than t_b would not reduce the thickness below t at any point after bending:

$$t_b = \left[\left(\frac{pD}{20\sigma + p}\right)\left(1 + \frac{D}{2.5R}\right) + c\right]\frac{100}{100 - a}\text{mm}$$

$$\left(t_b = \left[\left(\frac{pD}{2\sigma + p}\right)\left(1 + \frac{D}{2.5R}\right) + c\right]\frac{100}{100 - a}\text{mm}\right)$$

where

p, D, R and a = are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 12, 1.3 Design symbols 1.3.1

σ and c = are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 12, 3.1 Copper and copper alloy pipes, valves and fittings 3.1.6. In general, R is to be not less than $3D$.

Table 12. 3. 1: Copper and copper alloy pipes

Pipe material	Condition of supply	Specified minimum tensile strength, N/mm² (kgf/mm²)	Permissible stress, N/mm² (kgf/cm²)									
			Maximum design temperature, °C									
			50	75	100	125	150	175	200	225	250	275	300
Copper	Annealed	220 (22)	41.2 (420)	41.2 (420)	40.2 (410)	40.2 (410)	34.3 (350)	27.5 (280)	18.6 (190)	—	—	—	—
Aluminium brass	Annealed	320 (33)	78.5 (800)	78.5 (800)	78.5 (800)	78.5 (800)	78.5 (800)	51.0 (520)	24.5 (250)	—	—	—	—
90/10 Copper-nickel-iron	Annealed	270 (28)	68.6 (700)	68.6 (700)	67.7 (690)	65.7 (670)	63.7 (650)	61.8 (630)	58.8 (600)	55.9 (570)	52.0 (530)	48.1 (490)	44.1 (450)
70/30 Copper-nickel	Annealed	360 (37)	81.4 (830)	79.4 (810)	77.5 (790)	75.5 (770)	73.5 (750)	71.6 (730)	69.6 (710)	67.7 (690)	65.7 (670)	63.7 (650)	61.8 (630)

3. 1. 8 Where the minimum thickness calculated by Pt 5, Ch 12, 3.1 Copper and copper alloy pipes, valves and fittings 3.1.6 or Pt 5, Ch 12, 3.1 Copper and copper alloy pipes, valves and fittings 3.1.7 is less than shown in Table 12. 3. 2: Minimum thickness for copper and copper alloy pipes, the minimum nominal thickness for the appropriate standard pipe size shown in the Table is to be used. No allowance is required for negative tolerance or reduction in thickness due to bending on this nominal thickness. For threaded pipes, where permitted, the minimum thickness is to be measured at the bottom of the thread.

Table 12. 3. 2: Minimum thickness for copper and copper alloy pipes

Standard pipe sizes (outside diameter), in mm			Minimum overriding nominal thickness, in mm	
			Copper	Copper alloy
8	to	10	1.0	0.8

12	to	20	1.2	1.0
25	to	44.5	1.5	1.2
50	to	76.1	2.0	1.5
88.9	to	108	2.5	2.0
133	to	159	3.0	2.5
193.7	to	267	3.5	3.0
273	to	457.2	4.0	3.5
		508	4.5	4.0

3. 2 Heat treatment

3. 2. 1 Pipes which have been hardened by cold bending are to be suitably heat treated on completion of fabrication and prior to being tested by hydraulic pressure. Copper pipes are to be annealed and copper alloy pipes are to be either annealed or stress relief heat treated.

PART

5

CHAPTER **12 Piping Design Requirements**

SECTION **4 Cast iron**

4. 1 Spheroidal or nodular graphite cast iron

4. 1. 1 Spheroidal or nodular graphite iron may be accepted for bilge, ballast and cargo oil piping.

4. 1. 2 Spheroidal or nodular graphite iron castings for pipes, valves and fittings in Class II and Class III piping systems are to be made in a grade having a specified minimum elongation not less than 12 per cent on a gauge length of $5.65\sqrt{S_o}$, where S_o is the actual cross-sectional area of the test piece.

4. 1. 3 Castings for Class II systems, also for ship-side valves and fittings and valves on the collision bulkhead, are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of Ch 7 Iron Castings of the Rules for Materials.

4. 1. 4 Castings for Class III systems are to comply with the requirements of acceptable national specifications. A manufacturer's certificate will be accepted and is to be provided for each consignment of material for Class III systems, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 12, 1.7 Materials and Ch 1, 3.1 General 3.1.3.c of the Rules for Materials.

4. 1. 5 Proposals for the use of this material in Class I piping systems will be specially considered, but in no case is the material to be used in systems where the design temperature exceeds 350°C.

4. 1. 6 Where the elongation is less than the minimum required by Pt 5, Ch 12, 4.1 Spheroidal or nodular graphite cast iron 4.1.2, the material is, in general, to be subject to the same limitations as grey cast iron.

4. 2 Grey cast iron

4. 2. 1 Grey cast iron pipes, valves and fittings will, in general, be accepted in Class III piping systems except as stated in Pt 5, Ch 12, 4.2 Grey cast iron 4.2.3.

4. 2. 2 Grey cast iron is not to be used for pipes, valves and other fittings handling media having temperatures above 220°C or for piping subject to pressure shock, excessive strains or vibrations.

4. 2. 3 Grey cast iron is not to be used for the following:

- Pipes for steam systems and fire extinguishing systems.
- Pipes, valves and fittings for boiler blow-down systems and other piping systems subject to shock or vibration.
- Ship-side valves and fittings, *See* Pt 5, Ch 13, 2.5, Ship-side valves and fittings (other than those on scuppers and sanitary discharges).
- Valves fitted on the collision bulkhead, *See* Pt 5, Ch 13, 3.5 Fore and after peaks.
- Bilge lines in tanks.

- Piping system components in flammable oil systems where the design pressure exceeds 0.7 MPa or the design operating temperature is greater than 60°C.
- Valves fitted to tanks containing flammable oil under static pressure.
- Valve chests and fittings for starting air systems, *See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 8.4 Starting air pipe systems and safety fittings 8.4.4.
- Manifolds and their valves and fittings on tankers that connect to cargo-handling hoses.

4. 2. 4 Castings for Class III piping systems are to comply with acceptable National Specifications.

PART

5

CHAPTER **12 Piping Design Requirements**

SECTION **5 Plastic pipesn**

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 Proposals to use plastic pipes in shipboard piping systems will be considered in relation to the properties of the materials, the operating conditions, the intended service and location. Details are to be submitted for approval. Special consideration will be given to any proposed service for plastic pipes not mentioned in these Rules.

5. 1. 2 Plastic pipes and fittings will, in general, be accepted in Class III piping systems. Proposals for the use of plastic in Class I and Class II piping systems will be specially considered.

5. 1. 3 For Class I, Class II and any Class III piping systems for which there are Rule requirements, the pipes are to be of a type which has been approved by ACS.

5. 1. 4 For domestic and similar services where there are no Rule requirements, the pipes need not be of a type which has been approved by ACS. However, the fire safety aspects, as referenced in Pt 5, Ch 12, 5.4 Fire performance criteria and Pt 5, Ch 12, 5.5 Additional fire performance criteria applicable to ships, are to be considered.

5. 1. 5 The use of plastic pipes may be restricted by statutory requirements of the National Authority of the country in which the vessel is to be registered.

5. 2 Design and performance criteria

5. 2. 1 Pipes and fittings are to be of robust construction and are to comply with an acceptable National or International standard, consistent with the intended use. Particulars of pipes, fittings and joints are to be submitted for consideration.

5. 2. 2 The design and performance criteria of all piping systems, independent of service or location, are to meet the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 12, 5.3 Design strength.

5. 2. 3 Depending on the service and location, the fire safety aspects, such as fire endurance, flame spread, smoke generation, toxicity and fire protection coatings, are to meet the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 12, 5.4 Fire performance criteria and Pt 5, Ch 12, 5.5 Additional fire performance criteria applicable to ships.

5. 2. 4 Plastic piping, connections and fittings are to be electrically conductive when:

a. carrying fluids capable of generating electrostatic charges; or
b. passing through hazardous zones and spaces, regardless of the fluid being conveyed.
c. Suitable precautions against the build-up of electrostatic charges are to be provided in accordance with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 12, 5.6 Electrical conductivity.

5. 3 Design strength

5. 3. 1 The strength of pipes is to be determined by hydrostatic pressure tests to failure on representative sizes of pipe. The strength of fittings is to be not less than the strength of the pipes.

5. 3. 2 The nominal internal pressure, p_{Ni}, of the pipe is to be determined by the lesser of the following:

$$p_{Ni} \leq 2.5\, p_{st}$$
$$p_{Ni} \leq 4\, p_{lt}$$

where

p_{st} = short term hydrostatic test failure pressure, in MPa

p_{lt} = long term hydrostatic test failure pressure (100 000 hours), in MPa

Failure pressures obtained over a reduced period and extrapolated in accordance with a recognised National or International Standard will be specially considered.

5. 3. 3 In service, the pipe is not to be subjected to a pressure greater than p_{Ni}.

5. 3. 4 The nominal external pressure, p_{Ne}, of the pipe, defined as the maximum total of internal vacuum and external static pressure head to which the pipe may be subjected, is to be determined by the following:

$$p_{Ne} \leq \frac{p_{col}}{3}$$

where

p_{col} = pipe collapse pressure, in MPa

5. 3. 5 p_{col} is not to be less than 0.3 MPa.

5. 3. 6 Piping is to meet the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 12, 5.3 Design strength over the range of service temperature which will be experienced in service.

5. 3. 7 High temperature limits and pressure reductions relative to nominal pressures are to be in accordance with a recognised standard, but in each case the maximum working temperature is to be at least 20°C lower than the minimum temperature for deflection under load of the resin or plastic material without reinforcement. The minimum heat distortion temperature is not to be less than 80°C. *See* also Ch 14, 4 Plastic pipes and fittings of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials.

5. 3. 8 Where it is proposed to use plastic piping in low temperature services, design strength testing is to be made at a temperature 10°C lower than the minimum working temperature.

5. 3. 9 The selection of plastic materials for piping is to take account of other factors such as impact resistance, ageing, fatigue, erosion resistance, fluid absorption and material compatibility such that the design strength of the piping is not reduced below that required by these Rules.

5. 3. 10 Design strength values may be verified experimentally or by a combination of testing and calculation methods.

5. 4 Fire performance criteria

5. 4. 1 Where a fire protective coating of pipes and fittings is necessary for achieving the fire endurance standards required, the coating is to be resistant to products likely to come into contact with the piping and be suitable for the intended application.

5. 4. 2 The materials used for plastic pipes, except those fitted on open decks and within tanks, cofferdams, void spaces, pipe tunnels and ducts are to have low flame spread characteristics.

5. 4. 3 The materials used for plastic pipes within accommodation, service and control spaces are not to be capable of producing excessive quantities of smoke and toxic products that may be a hazard to personnel within those spaces.

5. 5 Additional fire performance criteria applicable to ships

5. 5. 1 Where plastic pipes are used in systems essential to the safe operation of the vessel, or for containing combustible liquids or sea water where leakage or failure could result in fire or in the flooding of watertight compartments, the pipes and fittings, including couplings with flexible internal seals, are to be of a type which has been fire endurance tested in accordance with the requirements of Table 12. 5. 1: Fire endurance requirements.

Table 12. 5. 1: Fire endurance requirements

	Location										
	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K
CARGO (FLAMMABLE CARGOES f.p. ≤ 60°C)											
1 Cargo lines	N/A	N/A	L1	N/A	N/A	0	N/A	0[10]	0	N/A	L1[2]
2 Crude oil washing lines	N/A	N/A	L1	N/A	N/A	0	N/A	0[10]	0	N/A	L1[2]
3 Vent lines	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	0	N/A	0[10]	0	N/A	X
INERT GAS											
4 Water seal effluent line	N/A	N/A	0[1]	N/A	N/A	0[1]	0[1]	0[1]	0[1]	N/A	0
5 Scrubber effluent line	0[1]	0[1]	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	0[1]	0[1]	N/A	0
6 Main line	0	0	L1	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	0	N/A	L1[6]
7 Distribution lines	N/A	N/A	L1	N/A	N/A	0	N/A	N/A	0	N/A	L1[2]
FLAMMABLE LIQUIDS (f.p. > 60°C)											
8 Cargo lines	X	X	L1	X	X	N/A[3]	0	0[10]	0	N/A	L1
9 Fuel oil	X	X	L1	X	X	N/A[3]	0	0	0	L1	L1
10 Lubricating oil	X	X	L1	X	X	N/A	N/A	N/A	0	L1	L1
11 Hydraulic oil	X	X	L1	X	X	0	0	0	0	L1	L1
SEA WATER [1]											
12 Bilge main and branches	L1[7]	L1[7]	L1	X	X	N/A	0	0	0	N/A	L1
13 Fire main and water spray	L1	L1	L1	X	N/A	N/A	N/A	0	0	X	L1
14 Foam system	L1	L1	L1	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	0	L1	L1
15 Sprinkler system	L1	L1	L3	X	N/A	N/A	N/A	0	0	L3	L3
16 Ballast	L3	L3	L3	L3	X	0[10]	0	0	0	L2	L2
17 Cooling water, essential services	L3	L3	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	0	0	N/A	L2
18 Tank cleaning services fixed machines	N/A	N/A	L3	N/A	N/A	0	N/A	0	0	N/A	L3[2]

19 Non-essential systems	0	0	0	0	0	N/A	0	0	0	0	0
FRESH WATER											
20 Cooling water essential services	L3	L3	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	0	0	0	L3	L3
21 Condensate return	L3	L3	L3	0	0	N/A	N/A	N/A	0	0	0
22 Non-essential systems	0	0	0	0	0	N/A	0	0	0	0	0
SANITARY/DRAINS/SCUPPERS											
23 Deck drains (internal)	L1[4]	L1[4]	N/A	L1[4]	0	N/A	0	0	0	0	0
24 Sanitary drains (internal)	0	0	N/A	0	0	N/A	0	0	0	0	0
25 Scuppers and discharges (overboard)	0[1.8]	0[1.8]	0[1.8]	0[1.8]	0[1.8]	0	0	0	0	0[1.8]	0
SOUNDING/AIR											
26 Water tanks/dry spaces	0	0	0	0	0	0[10]	0	0	0	0	0[11]
27 Oil tanks (f.p. > 60°C)	X	X	X	X	X	X[3]	0	0[10]	0	X	X
ENGINE EXHAUSTS											
28 Main line	0[1]	0[1]	N/A	N/A	0[1]	N/A	N/A	N/A	0[1]	N/A	L1
29 Drain line	0[1]	0[1]	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
MISCELLANEOUS											
30 Control air	L1[5]	L1[5]	L1[5]	L1[5]	L1[5]	N/A	0	0	0	L1[5]	L1[5]
31 Service air (non-essential)	0	0	0	0	0	N/A	0	0	0	0	0
32 Brine	0	0	N/A	0	0	N/A	N/A	N/A	0	0	0
31 Auxiliary low pressure steam (≤ 0.7 MPa)	L2	L2	0[9]	0[9]	0[9]	0	0	0	0	0[9]	0[9]

LOCATION DEFINITIONS

Location		Definition
A	Machinery spaces of Category A	Machinery spaces of Category A as defined in *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea Chapter II-2 - Construction - Fire protection, fire detection and fire extinction*/3.19.
B	Other machinery spaces and pump rooms	Spaces, other than Category A machinery spaces and cargo pump rooms, containing propulsion machinery, boilers, steam and internal combustion engines, generators and major electrical machinery, pumps, oil filling stations, refrigerating, stabilising, ventilation and air-conditioning machinery, and similar spaces, and trunks to such spaces.
C	Cargo pump rooms	Spaces containing cargo pumps and entrances and trunks to such spaces.

D	Ro-Ro cargo holds	Ro-Ro cargo holds are Ro-Ro cargo spaces and special category spaces as defined in *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at SeaChapter II-2 - Construction - Fire protection, fire detection and fire extinction*/3.14 and *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at SeaChapter II-2 - Construction - Fire protection, fire detection and fire extinction*/3.18.
E	Other dry cargo holds	All spaces other than Ro-Ro cargo holds used for non-liquid cargo and trunks to such spaces.
F	Cargo tanks	All spaces used for liquid cargo and trunks to such spaces.
G	Fuel oil tanks	All spaces used for fuel oil (excluding cargo tanks) and trunks to such spaces.
H	Ballast water tanks	All spaces used for ballast water and trunks to such spaces.
I	Cofferdams, voids, etc.	Cofferdams and voids are those empty spaces between two bulkheads separating two adjacent compartments.
J	Accommodation, service	Accommodation spaces, service spaces and control stations as defined in *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at SeaChapter II-2 - Construction - Fire protection, fire detection and fire extinction*/3.10, *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea Chapter II-2 - Construction - Fire protection, fire detection and fire extinction*/3.12 and *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea Chapter II-2 - Construction - Fire protection, fire detection and fire extinction*/3.22.
K	Open decks	Open deck spaces, as defined in *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea Chapter II-2 - Construction - Fire protection, fire detection and fire extinction*/26.2.2(5).
ABBREVIATIONS		
L1	Fire endurance test in dry conditions, 60 minutes, *IMO Resolution A.753(18) - Guidelines for the Application of Plastic Pipes on Ships - (adopted on 4 November 1993)Amended by Resolution MSC.313(88) Appendix 1 - Test Method for Fire Endurance Testing of Plastic Piping in the Dry Condition*.	
L2	Fire endurance test in dry conditions, 30 minutes, *IMO Resolution A.753(18) - Guidelines for the Application of Plastic Pipes on Ships - (adopted on 4 November 1993)Amended by Resolution MSC.313(88) Appendix 1 - Test Method for Fire Endurance Testing of Plastic Piping in the Dry Condition*	
L3	Fire endurance test in wet conditions, 30 minutes, *IMO Resolution A.753(18) - Guidelines for the Application of Plastic Pipes on Ships - (adopted on 4 November 1993)Amended by Resolution MSC.313(88) Appendix 2 - Test Method for Fire Endurance Testing of Water-Filled Plastic Piping*.	
0	No fire endurance test required.	
N/A	Not applicable.	
X	Metallic materials having a melting point greater than 925°C.	
Note 1. Where non-metallic piping is used, remotely controlled valves are to be provided at vessel's side (valve is to be controlled from outside space).		
Note 2. Remote closing valves are to be provided at the cargo tanks.		
Note 3. When cargo tanks contain flammable liquids with f.p. > 60°C, '0' may replace 'N/A' or 'X'.		
Note 4. For drains serving only the space concerned, '0' may replace 'L1'.		
Note 5. When controlling functions are not required by the Rules or statutory requirements, '0' may replace 'L1'.		
Note 6. For pipes between machinery space and deck water seal, '0' may replace 'L1'.		
Note 7. For passenger vessels, 'X' is to replace 'L1'.		

Note 8. Scuppers serving open decks in positions 1 and 2, as defined in *Regulation 13 - Position of hatchways, doorways and ventilators* of the *Load Lines, 1966/1988 - International Convention on Load Lines, 1966, as Amended by the Protocol of 1988*, should be 'X' throughout unless fitted at the upper end with a means of closing capable of being operated from a position above the freeboard deck in order to prevent downflooding.
Note 9. For essential services, 'X' is to replace '0'.
Note 10. For tankers where compliance with *MARPOL - International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships Annex I of MARPOL 73/78Regulations for the Prevention of Pollution by Oil*, Regulation 19.3.6 is required, 'N/A' is to replace '0'.
Note 11. Air and sounding pipes on open deck are to be of substantial construction, *See* Pt 5, Ch 13, 2.1 Materials 2.1.2.

5. 6 Electrical conductivity

5. 6. 1 Where a piping system is required to be electrically conductive for the control of static electricity, the resistance per unit length of the pipe, bends, elbows, fabricated branch pieces, etc. is not to exceed 0.1 MΩ/m.

5. 6. 2 Where a piping system is required to be electrically conductive for the control of static electricity, electrical continuity is to be maintained across the joints and fittings and the system is to be earthed. The resistance to earth from any point in the piping system is not to exceed 1 MΩ. *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.13 Bonding for the control of static electricity.

5. 7 Manufacture and quality control

5. 7. 1 All materials for plastic pipes and fittings are to be approved by ACS, and are in general to be tested in accordance with Ch 14, 4 Plastic pipes and fittings of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials. For pipes and fittings not employing hand lay up techniques, the hydrostatic pressure test required by Ch 14, 4.9 Hydraulic test of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials may be replaced by testing carried out in accordance with the requirements stipulated in a recognised National or International Standard, consistent with the intended use for which the pipe or fittings are manufactured, provided that there is an effective quality system in place complying with the requirements of Ch 14, 4.4 Quality assurance of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials and the testing is completed to the satisfaction of the ACS Surveyor.

5. 7. 2 The material manufacturer's test certificate, based on actual tested data, is to be provided for each batch of material.

5. 7. 3 Plastic pipes and fittings are to be manufactured at a works approved by ACS in accordance with agreed quality control procedures which shall be capable of detecting at any stage (e.g. incoming material, production, finished article, etc.) deviations in the material, product or process.

5. 7. 4 Plastic pipes are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with Ch 14, 4 Plastic pipes and fittings of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials. For Class III piping systems the pipe manufacturer's test certificate may be accepted in lieu of an ACS Certificate and is to be provided for each consignment of pipe.

5. 8 Construction and installation

5. 8. 1 All pipes are to be adequately but freely supported. Suitable provision is to be made for expansion and contraction to take place without unduly straining the pipes.

5. 8. 2 Pipes may be joined by mechanical couplings or by bonding methods such as welding, laminating and adhesive bonding.

5. 8. 3 Where bonding systems are used, the manufacturer or installer shall provide a written procedure covering all aspects of installation, including temperature and humidity conditions. The bonding procedure is to be approved by ACS.

5. 8. 4 The person carrying out the bonding is to be qualified. Records are to be available to the Surveyor for each qualified person showing the bonding procedure and performance qualification, together with dates and results of the qualification testing.

5. 8. 5 Conditions during installation, such as temperature and humidity, which may affect the strength of the finished joints, are to be in accordance with the agreed bonding procedure.

5. 8. 6 The required fire endurance level of the pipe is to be maintained in way of pipe supports, joints and fittings, including those between plastic and metallic pipes.

5. 8. 7 Where piping systems are arranged to pass through watertight bulkheads or decks, provision is to be made for maintaining the integrity of the bulkhead or deck by means of metallic bulkhead or deck pieces. The bulkhead or deck pieces are to be of substantial construction and suitably protected against corrosion and so constructed to be of a strength equivalent to the intact bulkhead; attention is drawn to Pt 5, Ch 12, 5.8 Construction and installation 5.8.1, details of the arrangements are to be submitted for approval.

5. 8. 8 Pipes or other fittings attached directly to the plating of tanks and to bulkheads, which are required to be of watertight construction, are to be secured by means of studs screwed through the plating or by tap bolts, and not by bolts passing through clearance holes. Alternatively, the studs or the bulkhead or tank pieces may be welded to the plating.

5. 9 Additional requirements for testing plastic pipes for ships

5. 9. 1 Where a piping system is required to be electrically conductive, tests are to be carried out in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 12, 5.6 Electrical conductivity.

5. 9. 2 The hydraulic testing of pipes and fittings is to be in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 12, 8 Hydraulic tests on pipes and fittings.

5. 9. 3 In the case of pipes intended for essential services each qualified person is, at the place of construction, to make at least one test joint, representative of each type of joint to be used. The joined pipe section is to be tested to an internal hydrostatic pressure of four times the design pressure of the pipe system and the pressure held for not less than one hour, with no leakage or separation of joints. The bonding procedure test is to be witnessed by the Surveyor.

PART

5

CHAPTER **12 Piping Design Requirements**

SECTION **6 Valves**

6. 1 Design requirements

6. 1. 1 The design, construction and operational capability of valves is to be in accordance with an acceptable National or International Standard appropriate to the piping system. Where valves are not in accordance with an acceptable standard, details are to be submitted for consideration. Where valves are fitted, the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 12, 6.1 Design requirements 6.1.2 are to be satisfied.

6. 1. 2 Valves are to be made of steel, cast iron, copper alloy, or other approved material suitable for the intended purpose.

6. 1. 3 Valves having isolation or sealing components sensitive to heat are not to be used in spaces where leakage or failure caused by fire could result in fire spread, flooding or the loss of an essential service.

6. 1. 4 Where valves are required to be capable of being closed remotely in the event of fire, the valves, including their controlgear, are to be of steel construction or of an acceptable fire tested design.

6. 1. 5 Valves are to be arranged for clockwise closing and are to be provided with indicators showing whether they are open or shut unless this is readily obvious. Legible nameplates are to be fitted.

6. 1. 6 Valves are to be so constructed as to prevent the possibility of valve covers or glands being slackened back or loosened when the valves are operated.

6. 1. 7 Valves are to be used within their specified pressure and temperature rating for all normal operating conditions, and are to be suitable for the intended purpose.

6. 1. 8 Valves intended for submerged installation are to be suitable for both internal and external media. Spindle sealing is to prevent ingress of external media at the maximum external pressure head expected in service.

PART

5

CHAPTER **12 Piping Design Requirements**

SECTION **7 Flexible hoses**

7. 1 General

7. 1. 1 A flexible hose assembly is a short length of metallic or non-metallic hose normally with prefabricated end fittings ready for installation.

7. 1. 2 For the purpose of approval for the applications in Pt 5, Ch 12, 7.2, Applications, details of the materials and construction of the hoses, and the method of attaching the end fittings together with evidence of satisfactory prototype testing, are to be submitted for consideration.

7. 1. 3 The use of hose clamps and similar types of end attachments are not to be used for flexible hoses in piping systems for steam, flammable media, starting air systems or for sea-water systems where failure may result in flooding. In other piping systems, the use of hose clamps may be accepted where the working pressure is less than 0.5 MPa and provided that there are two clamps at each end connection.

7. 1. 4 Flexible hoses are to be limited to a length necessary to provide for relative movement between fixed and flexibly mounted items of machinery/equipment or systems.

7. 1. 5 Flexible hoses are not to be used to compensate for misalignment between sections of piping.

7. 1. 6 Flexible hose assemblies are not to be installed where they may be subjected to torsional deformation (twisting) under normal operating conditions.

7. 1. 7 The number of flexible hoses in piping systems mentioned in this Section is to be kept to a minimum and to be limited for the purpose stated in Pt 5, Ch 12, 7.2 Applications 7.2.1.

7. 1. 8 Where flexible hoses are intended for conveying flammable fluids in piping systems that are in close proximity to hot surfaces, electrical installation or other sources of ignition, the risk of ignition due to failure of the hose assembly and subsequent release of fluids is to be mitigated as far as practicable by the use of screens or other suitable protection.

7. 1. 9 Flexible hoses are to be installed in clearly visible and readily accessible locations.

7. 1. 10 The installation of flexible hose assemblies is to be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and use limitations with particular attention to the following:

a. Orientation.
b. End connection support (where necessary).
c. Avoidance of hose contact that could cause rubbing and abrasion.
d. Minimum bend radii.

7. 1. 11 Flexible hoses are to be permanently marked by the manufacturer with the following details:

a. Hose manufacturer's name or trademark.
b. Date of manufacture (month/year).
c. Designation type reference.
d. Nominal diameter.

e. Pressure rating
f. Temperature rating.

Where a flexible hose assembly is made up of items from different manufacturers, the components are to be clearly identified and traceable to evidence of prototype testing.

7. 2 Applications

7. 2. 1 Short joining lengths of flexible hoses complying with the requirements of this Section may be used, where necessary, to accommodate relative movement between various items of machinery connected to permanent piping systems. The requirements of this Section may also be applied to temporarily-connected flexible hoses or hoses of portable equipment.

7. 2. 2 Rubber or plastics hoses, with integral cotton or similar braid reinforcement, may be used in fresh and sea-water cooling systems. In the case of sea-water systems, where failure of the hoses could give rise to the danger of flooding, the hoses are to be suitably enclosed, as indicated in Pt 5, Ch 13, 2.7 Provision for expansion.

7. 2. 3 Rubber hoses, with single, double or more closely woven integral wire braid or other suitable material reinforcement, or convoluted metal pipes with wire braid protection, may be used in bilge, ballast, compressed air, fresh water, sea-water, fuel oil, lubricating oil, Class III steam, hydraulic and thermal oil systems. Flexible hoses of plastics materials for the same purposes, such as Teflon or Nylon, which are unable to be reinforced by incorporating closely woven integral wire braid are to have suitable material reinforcement as far as practicable. Where rubber or plastics hoses are used for fuel oil supply to burners, the hoses are to have external wire braid protection in addition to the integral wire braid. Flexible hoses for use in steam systems are to be of metallic construction.

7. 2. 4 Flexible hoses are not to be used in high pressure fuel oil injection systems.

7. 2. 5 The requirements in this section for flexible hose assemblies are not applicable to hoses intended to be used in fixed fire-extinguishing systems.

7. 3 Design requirements

7. 3. 1 Flexible hose assemblies are to be designed and constructed in accordance with recognised National or International Standards acceptable to ACS.

7. 3. 2 Flexible hoses are to be complete with approved end fittings in accordance with manufacturer's specification. End connections which do not have flanges are to comply with Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.12, Other mechanical couplings as applicable and each type of hose/fitting combination is to be subject to prototype testing to the same standard as that required by the hose with particular reference to pressure and impulse tests.

7. 3. 3 Flexible hose assemblies intended for installation in piping systems where pressure pulses and/or high levels of vibration are expected to occur in service, are to be designed for the maximum expected impulse peak pressure and forces due to vibration. The tests required by Pt 5, Ch 12, 7.4 Testing are to take into consideration the maximum anticipated in-service pressures, vibration frequencies and forces due to installation.

7. 3. 4 Flexible hose assemblies constructed of non-metallic materials intended for installation in piping systems for flammable media, and sea-water systems where failure may result in flooding, are to be of fire-resistant type. Non-metallic flexible hoses used for sea water systems and flammable media, except fuel oil, installed on open decks having little or no fire risk as defined in SOLAS II-2/Reg. 9.2.3.3.2.2(10) are not required to be of fire-resistant type. Fire resistance is to be demonstrated by testing to ISO 15540 and ISO 15541.

7. 3. 5 Flexible hose assemblies are to be suitable for the intended location and application, taking into consideration ambient conditions, compatibility with fluids under working pressure and

temperature conditions consistent with the manufacturer's instructions and any other applicable requirements in the Rules.

7. 4 Testing

7. 4. 1 Acceptance of flexible hose assemblies is subject to satisfactory prototype testing. Prototype test programmes for flexible hose assembles are to be submitted by the manufacturer and are to be sufficiently detailed to demonstrate performance in accordance with the specified Standards.

7. 4. 2 For a particular hose type complete with end fittings, the tests, as applicable, are to be carried out on different nominal diameters for pressure, burst, impulse and fire resistance in accordance with the requirements of the relevant Standard. The following Standards are to be used as applicable:

- ISO 6802 – *Rubber and plastics hoses and hose assemblies with wire reinforcements – Hydraulic impulse test with flexing*.
- ISO 6803 – *Rubber or plastics hoses and hose assemblies – Hydraulic – pressure impulse test without flexing*.
- ISO 15540 – *Ships and marine technology – Fire resistance of hose assemblies – Test methods*.
- ISO 15541 – *Ships and marine technology – Fire resistance of hose assemblies – Requirements for test bench*.
- ISO 10380 – *Pipework – Corrugated metal hoses and hose assemblies*.

Other Standards may be accepted where agreed by ACS.

7. 4. 3 All flexible hose assemblies are to be satisfactorily prototype burst tested to an International Standard* to demonstrate they are able to withstand a pressure of not less than four times the design pressure without indication of failure or leakage.

Note * The International Standards, e.g. EN or SAE for burst testing of non-metallic hoses, require the pressure to be increased until burst without any holding period at 4 x Maximum Working Pressure.

PART

5

CHAPTER **12 Piping Design Requirements**

SECTION **8 Hydraulic tests on pipes and fittings**

8. 1 Hydraulic tests before installation on board

8. 1. 1 All Class I and II pipes and their associated fittings are to be tested by hydraulic pressure to the Surveyor's satisfaction. Further, all steam, feed, compressed air and fuel oil pipes, together with their fittings, are to be similarly tested where the design pressure is greater than 0.7 MPa. The test is to be carried out after completion of manufacture and before installation on board and, where applicable, before insulating and coating.

8. 1. 2 Where the design temperature does not exceed 300°C, the test pressure is to be 1.5 times the design pressure, as defined in Pt 5, Ch 12, 1.4 Design pressure.

8. 1. 3 Where testing of systems or sub-systems following final assembly is specified, in addition to the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 12, 8.1 Hydraulic tests before installation on board 8.1.2the lowest applicable pressure as defined in this sub- Section is to be used for testing.

8. 1. 4 For steel pipes and integral fittings for use in systems where the design temperature exceeds 300°C, the test pressure is to be as follows:

a. For carbon and carbon-manganese steel pipes, the test pressure is to be twice the design pressure, as defined in Pt 5, Ch 12, 1.4 Design pressure.

b. For alloy steel pipes, the test pressure is to be determined by the following formula, but need not exceed 2*p*:

$$p_t = 1.5\frac{\sigma_{100}}{\sigma}p \text{ bar (kgf/cm}^2\text{)}$$

where p_t, and p are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 12, 1.3 Design symbols 1.3.2

σ = permissible stress for the design temperature, in N/mm^2, as stated in Table 12. 2. 2: Alloy steel pipes.

σ_{100} = permissible stress for 100°C, in N/mm^2, as stated in Table 12. 2. 2: Alloy steel pipes.

8. 1. 5 Where alloy steels not included in Table 12. 2. 2: Alloy steel pipes are used, the permissible stresses will be specially considered, as indicated in Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.2 Wrought steel pipes and bends 2.2.2.

8. 1. 6 Consideration will be given to the reduction of the test pressure to not less than 1.5*p*, where it is necessary to avoid excessive stress in way of bends, branches, etc.

8. 1. 7 Valves and fittings non-integral with the piping system, intended for Classes I and II, are to be tested in accordance with recognised standards, but to not less than 1.5 times the design pressure. Where design features are such that modifications to the test requirements are necessary, alternative proposals for hydraulic tests are to be submitted for special consideration.

8. 1. 8 For requirements relating to valves and cocks intended to be fitted on the ship's side below the load water line, *See* Pt 5, Ch 13, 2.5 Ship-side valves and fittings (other than those on scuppers and sanitary discharges) 2.5.10.

8. 1. 9 In no case is the membrane stress to exceed 90 per cent of the yield stress at the testing temperature.

8. 2 Testing after assembly on board

8. 2. 1 Heating coils in tanks, gas fuel and fuel oil piping are to be tested by hydraulic pressure, after installation on board, to 1.5 times the design pressure but in no case to less than 0.4 MPa.

8. 2. 2 Where pipes specified in Pt 5, Ch 12, 8.1 Hydraulic tests before installation on board 8.1.1 are butt welded together during assembly on board, they are to be tested by hydraulic pressure in accordance with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 12, 8.1, Hydraulic tests before installation on board after welding. The pipe lengths may be insulated, except in way of the joints made during installation and before the hydraulic test is carried out.

8. 2. 3 The hydraulic test required by Pt 5, Ch 12, 8.2 Testing after assembly on board 8.2.2 may be omitted provided non-destructive tests by ultrasonic or radiographic methods are carried out on the entire circumference of all butt welds with satisfactory results. Where ultrasonic tests have been carried out, the manufacturer is to provide the Surveyor with a signed statement confirming that ultrasonic examination has been carried out by an approved operator and that there were no indications of defects which could be expected to have a prejudicial effect on the service performance of the piping.

8. 2. 4 Where bilge pipes are accepted in way of double bottom tanks or deep tanks, *See* Pt 5, Ch 13, 7.9 Bilge pipes in way of double bottom tanks and Pt 5, Ch 13, 7.10 Bilge pipes in way of deep tanks, the pipes after fitting are to be tested by hydraulic pressure to the same pressure as the tanks through which they pass.

PART

5

CHAPTER 12 Piping Design Requirements

SECTION Cross-reference

See also Pt 5, Ch 13, 2.10 Testing after installation for testing after installation.

PART

5

CHAPTER **12 Piping Design Requirements**

SECTION **9 Piping for LPG/LNG carriers, gas fuelled ships and classed refrigeration systems**

9. 1 Scope

9. 1. 1 This Section is applicable to piping systems installed in LPG/LNG carriers, gas fuelled ships and classed refrigeration systems for the following pipes and piping system components:

a. Pipework – stainless steel, carbon steel and copper.
b. Valves – normal and cryogenic service (below minus 55°C).
c. Bellows – normal and cryogenic service (below minus 55°C).
d. Pipe fittings – elbows, reducers, tee connections, etc.
e. Ancillary fittings – weldolets, threadolets, thermopockets.

9. 1. 2 The following piping systems are covered by this Section:

a. LPG/LNG cargo systems – normal cargo operations.
b. LPG/LNG cargo systems – cargo gas to reliquefaction system.
c. LNG cargo systems – gas burning and *Use of Cargo as Fuel*.
d. LNG Regasification system – high and low pressure.
e. Cargo Reliquefaction system – nitrogen or mixed refrigerant.
f. Refrigeration – independent plant used in cascade systems.
g. Gas storage and supply systems for gas fuelled ships.

9. 2 Application

9. 2. 1 The requirements of this Section apply to pipes and piping system components, such as valves, elbows and bellows, which are to be used on gas carriers, gas fuelled ships or classed refrigeration/reliquefaction systems. The requirements are also applicable to other gas cargo services such as regasification systems and gas combustion units, and are in addition to those contained in both the Rules for Ships for Liquefied Gases and relevant Sections of this Chapter where appropriate.

9. 3 Classes of piping system and components

9. 3. 1 The material requirements for piping systems vary depending on the Class of the piping system. The Class of the piping system is dependent on the design pressure or temperature of the system and the pipe material used, *See* Pt 5, Ch 12, 1.6 Classes of piping systems and components.

9. 3. 2 Table 12. 1. 1: Maximum pressure and temperature conditions for Class II and III piping systems shows piping systems containing LPG/LNG, cargo or fuel gas as the conveyed medium are to be treated as 'Flammable liquids'. These piping systems are to be categorised as Class II. Vapour lines

are also to be categorised as Class II systems but the upper limit on pressure may be increased to 4 MPa gauge in accordance with the 'Other media'. Where higher design pressures are applied, such as in a regasification system, liquid lines above 1.6 MPa gauge and vapour lines above 4 MPa gauge are to be categorised as Class I. All open ended pipes, such as vent lines and pipes inside the cargo tanks may be categorised as Class III, provided that the temperature of the cargo at the pressure relief valve setting is not colder than minus 55°C.

9. 3. 3 For reliquefaction and refrigeration systems the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 12, 1.6 Classes of piping systems and components are to be applied. Nitrogen and non-toxic or nonflammable refrigerants are to be considered under the 'Other media' heading. Refrigeration systems containing ammonia are to be considered as Class I systems irrespective of the operational pressure.

9. 4 Materials

9. 4. 1 Stainless steel pipes, valves and fittings for welded fabrication are to be grades 304L, 316L, 321 or 347 in accordance with Ch 6, 5 Stainless steel pressure pipes of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials. For non-welded fabrications the grades 304 and 316 may be accepted.

9. 4. 2 The materials used in Class I and Class II systems are to be produced at a works approved by ACS. Testing is to be in accordance with the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials and the *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk* or Table ACS 7.1 and ACS 7.4 in Chapter 7.4 Regulations for materials of the *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships using Gases or other Low-flashpoint Fuels*.

9. 4. 3 For stainless steel pipes, valve castings and forgings, a manufacturer's certificate is acceptable where the intended service temperature is not colder than minus 55°C and:

- $DN < 50$ or
- $DN \leq 150$ and $DN \times P < 2500$

Where:
DN = nominal diameter, mm
P = design pressure, in MPa gauge
In all other cases, an ACS materials certificate is required.

9. 5 Valves and piping components independent of temperature

9. 5. 1 For valves and piping components fitted in the cargo piping system of LPG/LNG gas carriers, each type of valve and piping component is to have evidence of satisfactory type testing.

9. 6 Valves for cryogenic temperature service

9. 6. 1 Each size and type of valve intended to be used at a working temperature below –55°C shall be approved. Approval is based upon prototype testing and assessment of the design for compliance with a recognised national or international standard acceptable to ACS.

9. 6. 2 The tightness test required by *Process Pressure Vessels and Liquid, Vapour and Pressure Piping Systems* of the Rules for Ships for Liquefied Gases is to be conducted in accordance with a recognised National or International Code or Standard.

9. 7 Valves for refrigeration service

9. 7. 1 For valves intended for installation in a refrigeration system with a nominal diameter equal to or less than 150 mm, a manufacturer's certificate is acceptable. The certificate is to include details of the maximum working pressure and test pressure, and sufficient information for the ACS Surveyor to assess the suitability of the equipment for the intended use. Each size and type of valve is to be supplied with its own certificate and is to be signed by a responsible person in the manufacturer's quality control department.

9. 7. 2 Valves with nominal diameters above 150 mm are to be supplied with a ACS materials certificate in accordance with the Rules for Materials.

9. 7. 3 Where valves are fitted to pressure vessels, the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 10 Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels and Pt 5, Ch 11 Other Pressure Vessels are applicable for the Class of pressure vessel. Mountings for liquefied gas pressure vessels are to comply with the Rules for Ships for Liquefied Gases. Any acceptance of manufacturer's certification in other Sections of this Chapter is not applicable to the valves fitted to pressure vessels in Ch 10 Electrical Installations and the Rules for Ships for Liquefied Gases.

9. 7. 4 Any valve fitted directly onto a pressure vessel is to be considered a mounting and is required to be hydraulically pressure tested to twice the approved design pressure. *See* Pt 5, Ch 11, 10.2 Mountings 10.2.1.

9. 8 Expansion bellows

9. 8. 1 The following plans and particulars are to be submitted:

a. Dimensioned drawings of each type of bellows.
b. Design calculations to show that the bellows are suitable for the intended design conditions, carried out to EJMA (Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association) standards (latest edition) or equivalent.
c. A proposed type test program covering the tests detailed in *Process Pressure Vessels and Liquid, Vapour and Pressure Piping Systems* of the Rules for Ships for Liquefied Gases.
d. Calculations to EJMA standards may be accepted, together with sample testing detailed above, in order to cover the entire size range for the type.

9. 8. 2 In accordance with *5.3 Type tests on piping components* of the Rules for Ships for Liquefied Gases, the requirements for type testing in Pt 5, Ch 12, 9.8 Expansion bellows 9.8.3 are to be performed on each type of expansion bellows intended for use on LPG/LNG piping.

9. 8. 3 For each type of expansion bellows, an element of the bellows, not pre-compressed, is to be pressure tested at not less than five times the design pressure without bursting. This test is to be conducted at room temperature on each 'type' of element and need not be the complete bellows unit. A test on one element can cover other sized bellows with the same cross-sectional bellows form. The design pressure is to be at least 1 MPa gauge; bellows fitted to safety valves and vent lines may have a minimum design pressure of not less than the lower of 0.5 MPa gauge or 10 times the relief valve set pressure in accordance with *Process Pressure Vessels and Liquid, Vapour and Pressure Piping Systems* of the Rules for Ships for Liquefied Gases. The required test duration is not to be less than 5 minutes.

9. 8. 4 A pressure test is to be performed on each type of expansion joint complete with all the accessories such as flanges, stays and articulations, at twice the design pressure at the extreme displacement conditions recommended by the manufacturer without permanent deformation. The test is to be undertaken at the minimum design temperature, unless the bellows material is stainless steel for which this test may be carried out at ambient temperature. The test duration is to be 30 minutes unless otherwise agreed with ACS.

9. 8. 5 A cyclic thermal movement test, replicating the cooling down and warming up cycle which occurs during cargo loading and discharge, is to be performed on a complete expansion joint, by the application of representative external deflection resulting in bellow movement. This is to successfully withstand at least as many cycles, under the conditions of pressure, temperature, axial movement, rotational movement and transverse movement, as it will encounter in actual service. The number of cycles is to be estimated by the builder and depends on the ship's intended trading pattern and life expectancy. As a minimum, testing to 7000 cycles is to be carried out. The test is to be carried out at between 2-5 cycles per second. Testing at ambient temperature is permitted when this testing is at least as severe as testing at the service temperature. The maximum movements on the horizontal and vertical axis are to be provided by the builders and obtained from their stress analysis; however, the test can be extended to any value which is greater than that expected, or to the maximum deflection for which the bellows unit is suitable. Movements in the test need not be in both horizontal and vertical directions; but the horizontal-vertical box diagonal distance may be used. NDE testing is required after cyclic testing.

9. 8. 6 A cyclic fatigue test, representing ship deformation, is to be performed on a complete expansion joint, without internal pressure, by simulating the bellows movement corresponding to a compensated pipe length, for at least 2000000 cycles at a frequency not higher than 5 Hz. NDE is required after cyclic testing. This test is only required when, due to the piping arrangement, ship deformation loads are actually experienced.

9. 9 Pressure testing of piping and other piping components

9. 9. 1 Pressure testing is to be undertaken in accordance with specific Rule requirements relating to the system in which the component is to be located.

9. 9. 2 The duration for which pressure tests are to be held is to be in conjunction with an applicable and recognised code or standard acceptable to ACS.

9. 10 Equipment documentation

9. 10. 1 A certificate is required for each piping component supplied to be fitted in a Class I or Class II system. This certification is required for each size and type of equipment delivered. A single certificate may cover a number of valves, provided that they are of the same type and size, and serial numbers have been included on the certificate. If the piping components are part of a system fitted to a skid or packaged unit, then the complete skid may be supplied with a single certificate stating that the package has been constructed using approved materials, approved and tested in accordance with ACS Rule requirements.

9. 11 Relief valves for LPG/LNG cargo and deck tanks

9. 11. 1 Relief valves fitted to cargo tanks and deck tanks are to be of a type tested design. Type testing is to include:

- flow or capacity verification to a recognised Standard acceptable to the Administration;
- cryogenic testing when operating at design temperatures colder than minus 55°C;
- seat tightness testing to a recognised Standard or manufacturers' procedure acceptable to the Administration; and
- pressure testing of pressure-containing parts to at least 1.5 times the design pressure.

9. 11. 2 The materials used for construction of relief valves fitted to cargo tanks and deck tanks are to be produced in a works approved by ACS and be provided with a ACS Material Certificate.

PART

5

CHAPTER **12 Piping Design Requirements**

SECTION **10 Austenitic and duplex stainless steels**

10. 1 Pipe thickness

10. 1. 1 The minimum thickness of austenitic stainless steel pipes is to be determined from the formula given in Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.2 Wrought steel pipes and bends 2.2.1 and either Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.2 Wrought steel pipes and bends 2.2.3 or Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.2 Wrought steel pipes and bends 2.2.4. Values of 1.0 per cent proof stress and tensile strength of the material for use in the formula in Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.2 Wrought steel pipes and bends 2.2.1 may be obtained from Table 6. 5. 2: Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes in Ch 6 Steel Pipes and Tubes of the Rules for Materials.

10. 1. 2 In no case is the thickness of austenitic stainless steel pipes to be less than that shown in Table 12. 10. 1: Minimum thickness for austenitic and duplex stainless steel pipes.

Table 12. 10. 1: Minimum thickness for austenitic and duplex stainless steel pipes

Standard pipe sizes (outside diameter) in mm	Min. thickness in mm
8.0 to 10.0	0.8
10.2 to 17.2	1.0
21.3 to 48.3	1.6
60.3 to 88.9	2.0
114.3 to 168.3	2.3
219.1	2.6
273.0	2.9
323.9 to 406.4	3.6
over 406.4	4.0
Note: Diameters and thicknesses according to national or international standards may be accepted.	

PART

5

CHAPTER **12 Piping Design Requirements**

SECTION **11 Appendix - Guidance notes on metal pipes for water services**

11. 1 General

11. 1. 1 These guidance notes, except where it is specifically stated, apply to sea-water piping systems.

11. 1. 2 In addition to the selection of suitable materials, careful attention should be given to the design details of the piping system and the workmanship in fabrication, construction and installation of the pipework in order to obtain maximum life in service.

11. 2 Materials

11. 2. 1 Materials used in sea-water piping systems include:

- Galvanised steel.
- Austenitic and duplex stainless steel, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 12, 11.3 Steel pipes 11.3.4.
- Steel pipes lined with rubber, plastics or stoved coatings.
- Copper.
- 90/10 copper-nickel-iron.
- 70/30 copper-nickel.
- Aluminium brass.
- Bronze.

11. 2. 2 Selection of materials should be based on:

- the ability to resist general and localised corrosion, such as pitting, impingement attack and cavitation throughout all the flow velocities likely to be encountered;
- compatibility with the other materials in the system, such as valve bodies and casings, (e.g. in order to minimise bimetallic corrosion);
- the ability to resist selective corrosion, e.g. dezincification of brass, dealuminification of aluminium brass and graphitisation of cast iron;
- the ability to resist stress corrosion and corrosion fatigue; and
- the amenability to fabrication by normal practices.

11. 3 Steel pipes

11. 3. 1 Steel pipes should be protected against corrosion, and protective coatings should be applied on completion of all fabrication, i.e. bending, forming and welding of the steel pipes.

11. 3. 2 Welds should be free from lack of fusion and crevices. The surfaces should be dressed to remove slag and spatter and this should be done before coating. The coating should be continuous around the ends of the pipes and on the faces of flanges.

11. 3. 3 Galvanising the bores and flanges of steel pipes as protection against corrosion is common practice, and is recommended as the minimum protection for pipes in sea-water systems, including those for bilge and ballast service.

11. 3. 4 Austenitic and duplex stainless steel pipes are not recommended for salt-water services in polluted waters or where stagnant conditions exist as they are prone to pitting. Austenitic stainless steel pipes grades 316L or 317L and duplex stainless steels grades S31803 or S32750 may give satisfactory service in water circulating systems for clean flowing seawater.

11. 3. 5 Rubber lined pipes are effective against corrosion and suitable for higher water velocities. The rubber lining should be free from defects, e.g. discontinuities, pinholes, etc. and it is essential that the bonding of the rubber to the bore of the pipe and flange face is sound. Rubber linings should be applied by firms specialising in this form of protection.

11. 3. 6 The foregoing comments on rubber lined pipes also apply to pipes lined with plastics.

11. 3. 7 Stove coating of pipes as protection against corrosion should only be used where the pipes will be efficiently protected against mechanical damage.

11. 4 Copper and copper alloy pipes

11. 4. 1 Copper pipes are particularly susceptible to perforation by corrosion/erosion and should only be used for low water velocities and where there is no excessive local turbulence.

11. 4. 2 Aluminium brass and copper-nickel-iron alloy pipes give good service in reasonably clean sea-water. For service with polluted river or harbour waters, copper-nickel-iron alloy pipes with at least 10 per cent nickel are preferable. Alpha-brasses, i.e. those containing 70 per cent or more copper, must be inhibited effectively against dezincification by suitable additions to the composition. Alpha beta-brasses, (i.e. those containing less than 70 per cent copper), should not be used for pipes and fittings.

11. 4. 3 New copper alloy pipes should not be exposed initially to polluted water. Clean sea-water should be used at first to allow the metals to develop protective films. If this is not available the system should be filled with inhibited town mains water.

11. 5 Flanges

11. 5. 1 Where pipes are exposed to sea-water on both external and internal surfaces, flanges should be made, preferably, of the same material. Where sea-water is confined to the bores of pipes, flanges may be of the same material or of less noble metal than that of the pipe, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 12, 2.3, Pipe joints - General.

11. 5. 2 Fixed or loose type flanges may be used. The fixed flanges should be attached to the pipes by fillet welds or by capillary silver brazing. Where welding is used, the fillet weld at the back should be a strength weld and that in the face, a seal weld.

11. 5. 3 Inert gas shielded arc welding is the preferred process but metal arc welding may be used on copper-nickel-iron alloy pipes.

11. 5. 4 Mild steel flanges may be attached by argon arc welding to copper-nickel-iron pipes and give satisfactory service, provided that no part of the steel is exposed to the sea-water.

11. 5. 5 Where silver brazing is used, strength should be obtained by means of the bond in a capillary space over the whole area of the mating surfaces. A fillet braze at the back of the flange or at the face is undesirable. The alloy used for silver brazing should contain not less than 49 per cent silver.

11. 5. 6 The use of a copper-zinc brazing alloy is not permitted.

11. 6 Water velocity

11. 6. 1 Water velocities should be carefully assessed at the design stage and the materials of pipes, valves, etc. selected to suit the conditions.

11. 6. 2 The water velocity in copper pipes should not exceed 1 m/s.

11. 6. 3 The water velocity in the pipes of the materials below should normally be not less than about 1 m/s in order to avoid fouling and subsequent pitting, but should not be greater than the following:

- Galvanised steel 3.0 m/s
- Aluminium brass 3.0 m/s
- 90/10 copper-nickel-iron 3.5 m/s
- 70/30 copper-nickel 5.0 m/s

11. 7 Fabrication and installation

11. 7. 1 Attention should be given to ensuring streamlined flow and reducing entrained air in the system to a minimum. Abrupt changes in the direction of flow, protrusions into the bores of pipes and other restrictions of flow should be avoided. Branches in continuous flow lines should be set at a shallow angle to the main pipe, and the junction should be smooth.

11. 7. 2 Pipe bores should be smooth and clean.

11. 7. 3 Jointing should be flush with the bore surfaces of pipes and misalignment of adjacent flange faces should be reduced to a minimum.

11. 7. 4 Pipe bends should be of as large a radius as possible, and the bore surfaces should be smooth and free from puckering at these positions. Any carbonaceous films or deposits formed on the bore surfaces during the bending processes should be carefully removed. Organic substances are not recommended for the filling of pipes for bending purposes.

11. 7. 5 The position of supports should be given special consideration in order to minimise vibration and ensure that excessive bending moments are not imposed on the pipes.

11. 7. 6 Systems should not be left idle for long periods, especially where the water is polluted.

11. 7. 7 Strainers should be provided at the inlet to sea-water systems.

11. 8 Metal pipes for fresh water services

11. 8. 1 Mild steel or copper pipes are normally satisfactory for service in fresh water applications. Hot fresh water, however, may promote corrosion in mild steel pipes unless the hardness and pH of the water are controlled.

11. 8. 2 Water with a slight salt content should not be left stagnant for long periods in mild steel pipes. Low salinity and the limited supply of oxygen in such conditions promote the formation of black iron oxide, and this may give rise to severe pitting. Where stagnant conditions are unavoidable, steel pipes should be galvanised, or pipes of suitable non-ferrous material used.

11. 8. 3 Copper alloy pipes should be treated to remove any carbonaceous films or deposits before the tubes are put into service.

11. 8. 4 Brass fittings and flanges in contact with water should be made of an alpha-brass effectively inhibited against dezincification by suitable additions to the composition.

11. 8. 5 Aluminium brass has been widely used as material for heat exchanger and condenser tubes, but its use in `once through' systems is not recommended since, under certain conditions, it is prone to pitting and cracking.

PART

5

CHAPTER **13 Ship Piping Systems**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General requirements**		**2397**
	1. 1	Application	2397
	1. 2	Prevention of progressive flooding in damage condition	2397
	1. 3	Plans and particulars	2398
SECTION 2	**Construction and installation**		**2400**
	2. 1	Materials	2400
	2. 2	Pipe wall thickness	2400
	2. 3	Valves − Installation and control	2400
	2. 4	Attachment of valves to watertight plating	2401
	2. 5	Ship-side valves and fittings (other than those on scuppers and sanitary discharges)	2401
	2. 6	Piping systems − Installation	2402
	2. 7	Provision for expansion	2402
	2. 8	Piping in way of refrigerated chambers	2402
	2. 9	Miscellaneous requirements	2403
	2. 10	Testing after installation	2403
SECTION 3	**Drainage of compartments, other than machinery spaces**		**2405**
	3. 1	General	2405
	3. 2	Cargo holds	2405
	3. 3	Holds and deep tanks for alternative carriage of liquid or dry cargo	2406
	3. 4	Tanks and cofferdams	2406
	3. 5	Fore and after peaks	2406
	3. 6	Spaces above fore peaks, after peaks and machinery spaces	2407
	3. 7	Maintenance of integrity of bulkheads	2407
SECTION 4	**Bilge drainage of machinery spaces**		**2409**
	4. 1	General	2409

4. 2 Machinery space with double bottom 2409
4. 3 Machinery space without double bottom 2409
4. 4 Additional bilge suctions 2409
4. 5 Separate machinery spaces 2410
4. 6 Machinery space – Emergency bilge drainage 2410
4. 7 Tunnel drainage 2411
SECTION 5 Sizes of bilge suction pipes 2412
5. 1 Main bilge line 2412
5. 2 Branch bilge suctions to cargo and machinery spaces 2412
5. 3 Direct bilge suctions, other than emergency suctions 2413
5. 4 Main bilge line − Tankers and similar ships 2413
5. 5 Distribution chest branch pipes 2413
5. 6 Tunnel suction 2413
SECTION 6 Pumps on bilge service and their connections 2414
6. 1 Number of pumps 2414
6. 2 General service pumps 2414
6. 3 Capacity of pumps 2414
6. 4 Self-priming pumps 2415
6. 5 Pump connections 2415
6. 6 Direct bilge suctions 2415
SECTION 7 Piping systems and their fittings 2416
7. 1 Main bilge line suctions 2416
7. 2 Prevention of communication between compartments 2416
7. 3 Isolation of bilge system 2416
7. 4 Machinery space suctions − Mud boxes 2417
7. 5 Hold and other compartment suctions – Strum boxes 2417
7. 6 Bilge wells 2417
7. 7 Tail pipes 2417
7. 8 Location of fittings 2417
7. 9 Bilge pipes in way of double bottom tanks 2417
7. 10 Bilge pipes in way of deep tanks 2418
7. 11 Hold bilge non-return valves 2418
7. 12 Blanking arrangements 2418
SECTION 8 Additional requirements for bilge drainage and cross-flooding arrangements for passenger ships 2419
8. 1 Location of bilge pumps and bilge main 2419

8. 2 Prevention of communication between compartments in the event of damage 2419
8. 3 Arrangement and control of bilge valves 2420
8. 4 Cross-flooding arrangements 2420
SECTION 9 Additional requirements relating to fixed pressure water spray fire-extinguishing systems 2421
9. 1 Bilge drainage requirements 2421
SECTION 10 Drainage arrangements for ships not fitted with propelling machinery 2422
10. 1 Pumps 2422
10. 2 Ships with auxiliary power 2422
SECTION 11 Ballast system 2423
11. 1 Stand-by arrangements for ballast pumping 2423
11. 2 Integrated cargo and ballast systems 2423
11. 3 Anti-heeling arrangements 2423
SECTION 12 Air, overflow and sounding pipes 2424
12. 1 Definitions 2424
12. 2 Materials 2424
12. 3 Nameplates 2424
12. 4 Air pipes 2424
12. 5 Termination of air pipes 2424
12. 6 Gauze diaphragms 2425
12. 7 Air pipe closing appliances 2425
12. 8 size of air pipes 2426
12. 9 Overflow pipes 2426
12. 10 Air and overflow systems 2427
12. 11 Sounding arrangements 2427
12. 12 Termination of sounding pipes 2428
12. 13 Short sounding pipes 2428
12. 14 Elbow sounding pipes 2428
12. 15 Striking plates 2429
12. 16 Sizes of sounding pipes 2429
SECTION 13 Additional requirements for drainage and pumping arrangements for bulk carriers 2431
13. 1 General requirements 2431
13. 2 Dewatering capability 2431
SECTION 14 Water ingress detection arrangements 2432
14. 1 General requirements 2432

14. 2 Water ingress detection arrangements in bulk carriers 2432
14. 3 Water ingress detection arrangements in single hold cargo ships . 2433
14. 4 Flooding detection systems in passenger ships..... 2433

PART

5

CHAPTER **13 Ship Piping Systems**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 13. 10. 1: Sizes of hand pumps..... 2422

PART

5

CHAPTER **13 Ship Piping Systems**

SECTION **1 General requirements**

1. 1 Application

1. 1. 1 The requirements of this Chapter apply to piping systems on all types of ship except where otherwise stated.

1. 1. 2 Whilst the requirements satisfy the relevant regulations of the *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea*, and applicable amendments, attention should be given to any relevant regulations of the *MARPOL - International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships*, and applicable amendments, where these impact the design or construction of piping systems. Attention should also be given to any relevant statutory requirements of the National Authority of the country in which the ship is to be registered.

1. 1. 3 Consideration will be given to special cases or to arrangements which are equivalent to those required by these Rules. Consideration will also be given to the pumping arrangements of small ships and ships to be assigned class notations for restricted or special services.

1. 1. 4 Piping design is to comply with Pt 5, Ch 12 Piping Design Requirements as applicable.

1. 2 Prevention of progressive flooding in damage condition

1. 2. 1 For ships to which subdivision and damage stability requirements apply, precautions are to be taken to prevent progressive flooding between compartments resulting from damage to piping systems. For this purpose, piping systems are to be located inboard of the assumed extent of damage applicable to the ship type.

1. 2. 2 Where it is not practicable to locate piping systems as required by Pt 5, Ch 13, 1.2 Prevention of progressive flooding in damage condition 1.2.1, the following precautions are to be taken:

a. Bilge suction pipes are to be provided with non-return valves of approved type.
b. Other piping systems are to be provided with shut-off valves capable of being operated from positions accessible in the damage condition, or from above the bulkhead deck where required by the Rules.

These valves are to be located in the compartment containing the open end or in a suitable position such that the compartment may be isolated in the event of damage to the piping system.

1. 2. 3 Where subdivision and damage stability requirements apply and where penetration of watertight divisions by pipes, ducts, trunks or other penetrations is necessary, arrangements are to be made to maintain the watertight integrity.

1. 3 Plans and particulars

1. 3. 1 The following plans (in diagrammatic form) and particulars are to be submitted for approval. Additional plans should not be submitted unless the arrangements are of a novel or special character affecting classification:

a. Arrangements of air pipes and closing devices for all tanks and enclosed spaces.
b. Sounding arrangements for all tanks, enclosed spaces and cargo holds.
c. Arrangements of level alarms fitted in tanks, cargo holds, machinery spaces, pump rooms and any other spaces.
d. Arrangements of any cross flooding or heeling tank systems.
e. Bilge drainage arrangements for all compartments which are to include details of location, number and capacity of pumping units on bilge service. In the case of passenger ships, the bilge pump numeral, as defined in the *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea* , and applicable amendments are to be stated, together with the number of flooded compartments which the ship is required to withstand under damage conditions.
f. Ballast filling and drainage arrangements: a schematic piping drawing showing connection of the ballast water treatment system to the ballast filling and drainage arrangement is to be submitted.
g. Fuel oil filling, transfer, relief and spill/drainage arrangements.
h. Tank overflow arrangements.
i. Blanking arrangements for bilge and ballast piping systems for bulk carriers having floodable holds.
j. Isolation arrangements for bilge systems where cargo holds are intended for the carriage of dangerous goods.
k. Details verifying compliance with the sizing of air pipes required by Pt 5, Ch 13, 12.8, Size of air pipes.
l. Arrangements of fuel oil piping in connection with oil burning installations and oil fired galleys.
m. Arrangements of fuel oil burning units for boilers and thermal fluid heaters.
n. Arrangement of boiler feed system.
o. Arrangements of thermal fluid circulation systems.
p. Arrangement of compressed air systems for main and auxiliary services.
q. Arrangements of lubricating oil systems.
r. Arrangements of flammable liquids used for control and heating systems.
s. Arrangements of power transmission systems for services essential for safety or for the operation of the ship at sea.
t. Arrangements of cooling water systems for main and auxiliary services.
u. Fuel oil settling service and other fuel oil tanks not forming part of the ship's structure and lubricating and hydraulic oil tanks with a capacity of 500 litres or more, not forming part of the ship's structure.
v. Arrangements and dimensions of all steam pipes where the design pressure or temperature exceeds 1.6 MPa or 300°C, respectively, and the outside diameter exceeds 76.1 mm, with details of flanges, bolts and weld attachments, and particulars of the material of pipes, flanges, bolts and electrodes.
w. Details verifying compliance with the capacity of the fuel oil treatment plant required by Pt 5, Ch 14, 3.9 Fuel oil treatment for supply to main and auxiliary engines and gas turbines 3.9.1.
x. Details verifying compliance of demands on low pressure air systems by supplying essential services as required by Pt 5, Ch 14, 10.1 General 10.1.3.
y. For water ingress detection arrangements, *See* Pt 5, Ch 13, 14 Water ingress detection arrangements, plans and information in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 1, 1.2, Documentation required for design review and, additionally, general arrangement plans showing the spaces

provided with water ingress detectors, installed equipment locations and cable routes. Details of National Administration approvals are to be included.

PART

5

CHAPTER **13 Ship Piping Systems**

SECTION **2 Construction and installation**

2. 1 Materials

2. 1. 1 Except where otherwise stated in this Chapter, pipes, valves and fittings are to be made of steel, cast iron, copper, copper alloy, or other approved material suitable for the intended service.

2. 1. 2 Where applicable, the materials are to comply with the relevant requirements of Pt 5, Ch 12 Piping Design Requirements.

2. 1. 3 Materials sensitive to heat, such as aluminium, lead or plastics, are not to be used in systems essential to the safe operation of the ship, or for containing combustible liquids or sea-water where leakage or failure could result in fire or in the flooding of watertight compartments, *See* Pt 5, Ch 12 Piping Design Requirements for plastic pipes.

2. 1. 4 Aluminium alloy pipes are not acceptable for fire extinguishing pipes unless they are suitably protected against the effect of heat. The proposed use of aluminium alloy with appropriate insulation will be considered when it has been demonstrated that the arrangements provide equivalent structural and integrity properties compared to steel. In open and exposed locations where the insulation material is likely to suffer from mechanical damage suitable protection is to be provided.

2. 2 Pipe wall thickness

2. 2. 1 The minimum nominal wall thickness of steel, copper and copper alloy pipes are to be in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 12 Piping Design Requirements.

2. 2. 2 Special consideration will be given to the wall thicknesses of pipes made of materials other than steel, copper and copper alloy.

2. 3 Valves – Installation and control

2. 3. 1 Valves and cocks are to be fitted in places where they are at all times readily accessible, unless otherwise specifically mentioned in the Rules. Valves in cargo oil and ballast systems may be fitted inside tanks, subject to Pt 5, Ch 13, 2.3 Valves – Installation and control 2.3.2.

2. 3. 2 All valves which are provided with remote control are to be arranged for local manual operation, independent of the remote operating mechanism. For shipside valves and valves on the collision bulkhead, the means for local manual operation are to be permanently attached. For submerged valves in cargo oil and ballast systems, as permitted by Pt 5, Ch 13, 2.3 Valves – Installation and control 2.3.1, local manual operation may be by extended spindle or a portable hand pump. Where manual operation is by hand pump, the control lines to each submerged valve are to incorporate quick coupling connections, as close to the valve actuator as practicable, to allow easy connection of the hand pump. Not less than two hand pumps are to be provided.

2. 3. 3 In case of valves which are required by the Rules to be provided with remote control, opening and/or closing of the valves by local manual means is not to render the remote control system inoperable.

2. 4 Attachment of valves to watertight plating

2. 4. 1 Valve chests, cocks, pipes or other fittings attached direct to the plating of tanks, and to bulkheads, flats or tunnels which are required to be of watertight construction, are to be secured by means of studs or tap bolts screwed through bulkhead pieces welded to the plating, and not by bolts passing through clearance holes. For tanks, the stud or tap bolt holes are not to penetrate the plating.

2. 4. 2 For requirements relating to valves on the collision bulkhead, *See* Pt 5, Ch 13, 3.5 Fore and after peaks 3.5.4.

2. 5 Ship-side valves and fittings (other than those on scuppers and sanitary discharges)

2. 5. 1 All sea inlet and overboard discharge pipes are to be fitted with valves or cocks secured direct to the shell plating, or to the plating of fabricated steel water boxes attached to the shell plating. These fittings are to be secured by studs or tap bolts screwed into heavy steel pads welded to the plating. The stud or tap bolt holes are not to penetrate the plating.

2. 5. 2 Alternatively, distance pieces of short, rigid construction, and made of approved material may be fitted between the valves and the shell plating. Distance pieces of steel may be welded to the shell plating. Details of the welded connections and of fabricated steel water boxes are to be submitted.

2. 5. 3 Valves for ship-side applications are to be installed such that the section of piping immediately inboard of the valve can be removed without affecting the watertight integrity of the hull.

2. 5. 4 Gratings are to be fitted at all openings in the ship's side for sea inlet valves and inlet water boxes. The net area through the gratings is to be not less than twice that of the valves connected to the sea inlets, and provision is to be made for clearing the gratings by use of low pressure steam or compressed air, *See* Pt 5, Ch 13, 2.5 Ship-side valves and fittings (other than those on scuppers and sanitary discharges) 2.5.9.

2. 5. 5 Blow-down valves or cocks secured direct to the shell plating are to be fitted with a protection ring through which the spigot is to pass, the ring being on the outside of the shell plating. Where alternative forms of attachment are proposed, details are to be submitted for consideration.

2. 5. 6 Blow-down valves or cocks on the ship's side are to be fitted in accessible positions above the level of the working platform, and are to be provided with indicators showing whether they are open or shut. Cock handles are not to be capable of being removed unless the cocks are shut, and, if valves are fitted, the hand wheels are to be suitably retained on the spindle.

2. 5. 7 Sea inlet and overboard discharge valves and cocks are in all cases to be fitted in easily accessible positions and, so far as practicable, are to be readily visible. Indicators are to be provided local to the valves and cocks, showing whether they are open or shut. Provision is to be made for preventing any discharge of water into lifeboats. The valve spindles are to extend above the lower platform, and the hand wheels of the main cooling water sea inlet and emergency bilge suction valves are to be situated not less than 460 mm above this platform.

2. 5. 8 Ship-side valves and fittings, if made of steel or other approved material with low corrosion resistance, are to be suitably protected against wastage.

2. 5. 9 The scantlings of valves and valve stools fitted with steam or compressed air clearing connections are to be suitable for the maximum pressure to which the valves and stools may be subjected.

2. 5. 10 Valves, cocks and distance pieces, intended for installation on the ship's side below the load waterline, are to be tested by hydraulic pressure to not less than 0.5 MPa.

2. 5. 11 For sea connections for ships having notation for ice navigation, *See* Pt 8, Ch 2, 3.3 Ship-side valves, Pt 8, Ch 2, 3.5 Main propulsion and essential auxiliary engines and Pt 8, Ch 2, 11.21 Sea inlets and cooling water systems.

2. 6 Piping systems – Installation

2. 6. 1 Bilge, ballast and cooling water suction and discharge pipes are to be permanent pipes made in readily removable lengths with flanged joints, except as mentioned in Pt 5, Ch 13, 7.10 Bilge pipes in way of deep tanks, and are to be efficiently secured in position to prevent chafing or lateral movement. For joints in fuel oil piping systems, *See* Pt 5, Ch 14, 4.5 Pipes conveying oil and Pt 5, Ch 14, 4.6, Low pressure pipes.

2. 6. 2 Where lack of space prevents the use of normal circular flanges, details of the alternative methods of joining the pipes are to be submitted.

2. 6. 3 Long or heavy lengths of pipes are to be supported by bearers so that no undue load is carried by the flanged connections of the pumps or fittings to which they are attached.

2. 7 Provision for expansion

2. 7. 1 Suitable provision for expansion is to be made, where necessary, in each range of pipes.

2. 7. 2 Where expansion pieces are fitted, they are to be of an approved type and are to be protected against over extension and compression. The adjoining pipes are to be suitably aligned, supported, guided and anchored. Where necessary, expansion pieces of the bellows type are to be protected against mechanical damage.

2. 7. 3 Expansion pieces of an approved type incorporating special quality oil resistant rubber or other suitable synthetic material may be used in cooling water lines in machinery spaces. Where fitted in sea-water lines, they are to be provided with guards which will effectively enclose, but not interfere with, the action of the expansion pieces and will reduce to the minimum practicable any flow of water into the machinery spaces in the event of failure of the flexible elements. Where the provision of guards is not practicable, consideration will be given to alternative arrangements which provide an equivalent level of protection. Proposals to use such fittings in water lines for other services, including:

- ballast lines in machinery spaces, in duct keels and inside double bottom water ballast tanks, and
- bilge lines inside duct keels only,

will be specially considered when plans of the pumping systems are submitted for approval.

2. 7. 4 For requirements relating to flexible hoses, *See* Pt 5, Ch 12 Piping Design Requirements.

2. 8 Piping in way of refrigerated chambers

2. 8. 1 All pipes, including scupper pipes, air pipes and sounding pipes which pass through chambers intended for the carriage or storage of refrigerated produce are to be well insulated.

2. 8. 2 Where the pipes referred to in Pt 5, Ch 13, 2.8 Piping in way of refrigerated chambers 2.8.1 pass through chambers intended for temperatures of 0°C or below, they are also to be insulated from the steel structure, except in positions where the temperature of the structure is mainly controlled by the external temperature and will normally be above freezing point. Pipes passing through a deckplate within the ship side insulation, where the deck is fully insulated below and has an insulation ribband on top, are to be attached to the deck plating. In the case of pipes adjacent to the shell plating, metallic contact between the pipes and the shell plating or frames is to be arranged so far as practicable.

2. 8. 3 The air refreshing pipes to and from refrigerated compartments need not, however, be insulated from the steel work.

2. 9 Miscellaneous requirements

2. 9. 1 All pipes situated in cargo spaces, fish holds, chain lockers or other positions where they are liable to mechanical damage are to be efficiently protected.

2. 9. 2 Wash deck pipes and discharge pipes from the pumps to domestic water tanks are not to be led through cargo holds. Any proposed departure from this requirement is to be submitted for consideration.

2. 9. 3 So far as practicable, pipelines, including exhaust pipes from oil engines, are not to be led in the vicinity of switchboards or other electrical appliances in positions where the drip or escape of liquid, gas or steam from joints or fittings could cause damage to the electrical installation. Where it is not practicable to comply with these requirements, drip trays or shields are to be provided as found necessary. Short sounding pipes to tanks are not to terminate near electrical appliances, *See* Pt 5, Ch 13, 12.13 Short sounding pipes 12.13.2.

2. 10 Testing after installation

2. 10. 1 After installation on board, all steam, hydraulic, compressed air and other piping systems covered by Pt 5, Ch 13, 1.3 Plans and particulars 1.3.1, together with associated fittings which are under internal pressure, are to be subjected to a running test at the intended maximum working pressure.

PART

5

CHAPTER **13 Ship Piping Systems**

SECTION **Cross-reference**

For guidance on metal pipes for water services, *See* Pt 5, Ch 12, 11 Appendix - Guidance notes on metal pipes for water services.

PART

5

CHAPTER **13 Ship Piping Systems**

SECTION **3 Drainage of compartments, other than machinery spaces**

3. 1 General

3. 1. 1 All ships are to be provided with efficient pumping plant having the suctions and means for drainage so arranged that any water within any compartment of the ship, or any watertight section of any compartment, can be pumped out through at least one suction when the ship is on an even keel and is either upright or has a list of not more than 5°. For this purpose, wing suctions will generally be necessary, except in short, narrow compartments where one suction can provide effective drainage under the above conditions.

3. 1. 2 In passenger ships, the pumping plant is to be capable of draining any watertight compartment under all practicable conditions after a casualty, whether the ship is upright or listed.

3. 1. 3 In the case of dry compartments, the suctions required by Pt 5, Ch 13, 3.1 General 3.1.1 are, except where otherwise stated, to be branch bilge suctions, i.e. suctions connected to a main bilge line.

3. 1. 4 For drainage arrangements of non-self-propelled ships, *See* Pt 5, Ch 13, 10 Drainage arrangements for ships not fitted with propelling machinery.

3. 1. 5 For additional drainage arrangements on ferries and Roll on-Roll off ships, *See* Pt 4, Ch 2, 9.9 Watertightness and drainage.

3. 1. 6 For a normally inaccessible small void compartment such as an echo sounding compartment, which is accessed from within a normally inaccessible space such as a forepeak tank, alternative drainage arrangements to those required by Pt 5, Ch 13, 3.1 General 3.1.1 may be considered. For such arrangements, a warning notice is to be located in a prominent position specifying the precautions to be taken prior opening the manhole of the small void compartment. Means are to be provided to indicate flooding of the compartment without opening, such as fitting indicator plugs to the manhole. Drainage arrangements are to be submitted to ACS for approval.

3. 2 Cargo holds

3. 2. 1 In ships having only one hold, and this over 30 m in length, bilge suctions are to be fitted in suitable positions in the fore and after sections of the hold.

3. 2. 2 Where close ceiling or continuous gusset plates are fitted over the bilges, arrangements are to be made whereby water in a hold compartment may find its way to the suction pipes.

3. 2. 3 Where the inner bottom plating extends to the ship's side, the bilge suctions are to be led to wells placed at the wings. If the tank top plating has inverse camber, a well is also to be fitted at the centreline, but in the case of trawlers and fishing vessels, a single well fitted at the centre may be accepted. For capacity and construction of bilge wells, *See* Pt 5, Ch 13, 7.6 Bilge wells.

3. 2. 4 For drainage arrangements from refrigerated cargo spaces, *See* Pt 6, Ch 3, 4.19 Drainage from refrigerated spaces.

3. 2. 5 For cargo holds having non-weathertight hatch covers or where hatch covers have been omitted, drainage arrangements are to take into account the effects of additional water ingress into the hold(s). High level bilge alarms are to be provided in cargo holds having non-weathertight hatch covers or where hatch covers have been omitted, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 8, 11 Hatch covers.

3. 2. 6 Drainage arrangements of cargo holds intended for the carriage of flammable or toxic liquids are to be designed to prevent inadvertent drainage of such products through machinery space piping systems.

3. 3 Holds and deep tanks for alternative carriage of liquid or dry cargo

3. 3. 1 Where holds and deep tanks are intended for the alternative carriage of liquid or dry cargo, the drainage arrangements are to be in accordance with the following:

a. For dry cargoes, Pt 5, Ch 13, 3.1, General and Pt 5, Ch 13, 3.2, Cargo holds.
b. For water ballast, fuel oil or cargo oil having a flash point of 60°C or above, Pt 5, Ch 13, 3.4 Tanks and cofferdams.
c. For cargo oil having a flash point below 60°C, Pt 5, Ch 15 Piping Systems for Oil Tankers.

3. 3. 2 For blanking arrangements of filling and suction pipes, *See* Pt 5, Ch 13, 7.12 Blanking arrangements.

3. 4 Tanks and cofferdams

3. 4. 1 All tanks (including double bottom tanks), whether used for water ballast, fuel oil or liquid cargoes, are to be provided with suction pipes, led to suitable power pumps, from the after end of each tank.

3. 4. 2 In general, the drainage arrangements are to be in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 13, 3.1, General. However, where the tanks are divided by longitudinal watertight bulkheads or girders into two or more tanks, a single suction pipe, led to the after end of each tank, will normally be acceptable.

3. 4. 3 Similar drainage arrangements are to be provided for cofferdams, except that the suctions may be led to the main bilge line.

3. 4. 4 The pumping arrangements for tanks that are intended to carry cargo oil having a flash point of 60°C or above, are also to comply with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 14, 2 Fuel oil - General requirements, Pt 5, Ch 14, 3 Fuel oil burning arrangements and Pt 5, Ch 14, 4 Fuel oil pumps, pipes, fittings, tanks, etc., as far as they are applicable.

3. 5 Fore and after peaks

3. 5. 1 Fuel oil, lubrication oil and other flammable liquids are not to be carried in forepeak tanks.

3. 5. 2 Where the peaks are used as tanks, a power pump suction is to be led to each tank, except in the case of small tanks used for the carriage of domestic fresh water, where hand pumps may be used.

3. 5. 3 Where the peaks are not used as tanks, and main bilge line suctions are not fitted, drainage of both peaks may be effected by hand pump suctions, provided that the suction lift is well within the capacity of the pumps and in no case exceeds 7.3 m. In the case of trawlers and fishing vessels, drainage of the after peak may be effected by means of a self-closing cock fitted in a well lighted and readily accessible position.

3. 5. 4 Except as permitted by Pt 5, Ch 13, 3.5 Fore and after peaks 3.5.5, the collision bulkhead may be pierced below the bulkhead deck of passenger ships and the freeboard deck of cargo ships by not more than one pipe for dealing with the contents of the fore peak. The pipe is to be provided with

a screw-down valve capable of being operated from an accessible position above the bulkhead deck of passenger ships and the freeboard deck of cargo ships, the chest being secured to the bulkhead inside the fore peak. An indicator is to be provided to show whether the valve is open or closed. The valves may be fitted on the after side of the collision bulkhead, provided that the valve is readily accessible under all service conditions and the space in which it is located is not a cargo space. Alternatively, for cargo ships, the pipe may be fitted with a butterfly valve suitably supported by a seat or flanges and capable of being operated from above the freeboard deck.

3. 5. 5 Where the fore peak is divided into two compartments, the collision bulkhead may be pierced below the bulkhead deck of passenger ships and the freeboard deck of cargo ships by two pipes (i.e. one for each compartment) provided there is no practical alternative to the fitting of a second pipe. Each pipe is to be fitted and controlled as in Pt 5, Ch 13, 3.5 Fore and after peaks 3.5.4.

3. 6 Spaces above fore peaks, after peaks and machinery spaces

3. 6. 1 Provision is to be made for the drainage of the chain locker and watertight compartments above the fore peak tank by hand or power pump suctions.

3. 6. 2 Steering gear compartments or other small enclosed spaces situated above the after peak tank are to be provided with suitable means of drainage, either by hand or power pump bilge suctions.

3. 6. 3 Subject to special approval of any applicable subdivision requirements, compartments referred to in Pt 5, Ch 13, 3.6 Spaces above fore peaks, after peaks and machinery spaces 3.6.2 that are adequately isolated from the adjacent 'tween decks, may be drained by scuppers of not less than 38 mm bore, discharging to the tunnel (or machinery space in the case of ships with machinery aft) and fitted with self-closing cocks situated in well lighted and visible positions.

3. 6. 4 In case of trawlers and fishing vessels, accommodation spaces which overhang the machinery space, may also be drained as in Pt 5, Ch 13, 3.6 Spaces above fore peaks, after peaks and machinery spaces 3.6.3.

3. 6. 5 For drainage of the fore and after peaks, *See* Pt 5, Ch 13, 3.5, Fore and after peaks.

3. 7 Maintenance of integrity of bulkheads

3. 7. 1 The intactness of the machinery space bulkheads, and of tunnel plating required to be of watertight construction, is not to be impaired by the fitting of scuppers discharging to machinery space or tunnels from adjacent compartments which are situated below the bulkhead deck. These scuppers may, however, be led into a strongly constructed scupper drain tank situated in the machinery space or tunnel, but closed to these spaces and drained by means of a suction of appropriate size led from the main bilge line through a screw-down non-return valve.

3. 7. 2 The scupper tank air pipe is to be led to above the bulkhead deck, and provision is to be made for ascertaining the level of water in the tank.

3. 7. 3 Where one tank is used for the drainage of several watertight compartments, the scupper pipes are to be provided with screw-down non-return valves.

3. 7. 4 No drain valve or cock is to be fitted to the collision bulkhead. Drain valves or cocks are not to be fitted to other watertight bulkheads if alternative means of drainage are practicable.

3. 7. 5 Where drain valves or cocks are fitted to bulkheads other than the collision bulkhead, as permitted by Pt 5, Ch 13, 3.7 Maintenance of integrity of bulkheads 3.7.4, the drain valves or cocks are to be at all times readily accessible and are to be capable of being shut off from positions above the bulkhead deck. Indicators are to be provided to show whether the drains are open or shut. These arrangements are not permissible in passenger ships.

3. 7. 6 Bilge drain valves or cocks may be used for draining accommodation spaces and the after dry peak of trawlers and fishing vessels as stated in Pt 5, Ch 13, 3.6 Spaces above fore peaks, after peaks and machinery spaces 3.6.4 and Pt 5, Ch 13, 3.5 Fore and after peaks 3.5.3.

3. 7. 7 For drainage of stern compartment, *See* Pt 5, Ch 13, 3.6, Spaces above fore peaks, after peaks and machinery spaces.

PART

5

CHAPTER **13 Ship Piping Systems**

SECTION **4 Bilge drainage of machinery spaces**

4. 1 General

4. 1. 1 The bilge drainage arrangements in the machinery space are to comply with Pt 5, Ch 13, 3.1, General, except that the arrangements are to be such that any water which may enter this compartment can be pumped out through at least two bilge suctions when the ship is on an even keel, and is either upright or has a list of not more than 5°. One of these suctions is to be a branch bilge suction, i.e. a suction connected to the main bilge line, and the other is to be a direct bilge suction, i.e. a suction led direct to an independent power pump. Examples of the necessary arrangements are detailed in Pt 5, Ch 13, 4.2, Machinery space with double bottom and Pt 5, Ch 13, 4.3 Machinery space without double bottom.

4. 1. 2 In passenger ships, the drainage arrangements are to be such that machinery spaces can be pumped out under all practical conditions after a casualty, whether the ship is upright or listed.

4. 2 Machinery space with double bottom

4. 2. 1 Where the double bottom extends the full length of the machinery space and forms bilges at the wings, it will be necessary to provide one branch and one direct bilge suction at each side.

4. 2. 2 Where the double bottom plating extends the full length and breadth of the compartment, one branch bilge suction and one direct bilge suction are to be led to each of two bilge wells, situated one at each side.

4. 2. 3 For capacity and construction of bilge wells, *See* Pt 5, Ch 13, 7.6 Bilge wells.

4. 3 Machinery space without double bottom

4. 3. 1 Where there is no double bottom and the rise of floor is not less than 5°, one branch and one direct bilge suction are to be led to accessible positions as near the centreline as practicable.

4. 3. 2 In ships where the rise of floor is less than 5°, and in all passenger ships, additional bilge suctions are to be provided at the wings.

4. 4 Additional bilge suctions

4. 4. 1 Additional bilge suctions may be required for the drainage of depressions in the tank top formed by crankpits, or other recesses, by tank tops having inverse camber or by discontinuity of the double bottom.

4. 4. 2 In ships in which the propelling machinery is situated at the after end of the ship, it will generally be necessary for bilge suctions to be fitted in the forward wings as well as in the after end of the

machinery space, but each case will be dealt with according to the size and structural arrangements of the compartment.

4. 4. 3 In ships propelled by electrical machinery, special means are to be provided to prevent the accumulation of bilge water under the main propulsion generators and motors.

4. 5 Separate machinery spaces

4. 5. 1 Where the machinery space is divided by watertight bulkheads to separate the boiler room(s), or auxiliary engine room(s) from the main engine room, the number and position of the branch bilge suctions in the boiler room(s) or auxiliary engine room(s) are to be the same as for cargo holds.

4. 5. 2 In addition to the branch bilge suctions, required by Pt 5, Ch 13, 4.5 Separate machinery spaces 4.5.1, at least one independent power pump direct bilge suction is to be fitted in each compartment. Similar provision is to be made in separate motor rooms of electrically propelled ships.

4. 5. 3 In passenger ships, each independent bilge pump is to have a direct bilge suction from the space in which it is situated, but not more than two such suctions are required in any one space. Where two or more such suctions are provided, there is to be at least one suction on each side of the space.

4. 6 Machinery space – Emergency bilge drainage

4. 6. 1 In addition to the bilge suctions detailed in Pt 5, Ch 13, 4.1 General, an emergency bilge suction is to be provided in each main machinery space. This suction is to be led to the main cooling water pump from a suitable low level in the machinery space and is to be fitted with a screw-down non-return valve having the spindle so extended that the hand wheel is not less than 460 mm above the bottom platform.

4. 6. 2 Where two or more cooling water pumps are provided, each capable of supplying cooling water for normal power, only one pump need be fitted with an emergency bilge suction.

4. 6. 3 In ships with steam propelling machinery, the suction is to have a diameter of at least two-thirds that of the pump suction. In other ships, the suction is to be the same size as the suction branch of the pump.

4. 6. 4 Where main cooling water pumps are not suitable for bilge pumping duties, the emergency bilge suction is to be led to the largest available power pump, which is not a bilge pump detailed in Pt 5, Ch 13, 6.1, Number of pumps and Pt 5, Ch 13, 6.2, General service pumps. This pump is to have a capacity not less than that required for a bilge pump and the bilge suction is to be the same size as that of the pump suction branch.

4. 6. 5 Where the pump to which the emergency bilge suction is connected is of the self-priming type, the direct bilge suction on the same side of the ship as the emergency suction may be omitted, except in passenger ships.

4. 6. 6 Emergency bilge suction valve nameplates are to be marked `For emergency use only'.

4. 6. 7 Where **UMS** (Unattended Machinery Space) notation is to be assigned, the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, 4.7 Bilge level detection 4.7.2 are not applicable for valves serving an emergency bilge system, provided that:

a. the emergency bilge valve is normally maintained in a closed position;
b. a non-return device is installed in the emergency bilge piping; and
c. the emergency bilge suction piping is located inboard of a shell valve that is fitted with the control arrangements complying with Pt 6, Ch 1, 4.7 Bilge level detection 4.7.2.

4. 7 Tunnel drainage

4. 7. 1 The tunnel well is to be drained by a suction from the main bilge line. In all ships, including passenger ships, this well may extend to the outer bottom.

4. 7. 2 Where the tank top in the tunnel slopes down from aft to forward, a bilge suction is to be provided at the forward end of the tunnel, in addition to the tunnel well suction required by Pt 5, Ch 13, 4.7 Tunnel drainage 4.7.1.

PART

5

CHAPTER **13 Ship Piping Systems**

SECTION **5 Sizes of bilge suction pipes**

5. 1 Main bilge line

5. 1. 1 The diameter, d_m, of the main bilge line is to be not less than required by the following formula, to the nearest 5 mm, but in no case is the diameter to be less than that required for any branch bilge suction:

$$d_m = 1.68\sqrt{L_m(B + D)} + 25\text{mm}$$

where

d_m = internal diameter of main bilge line, in mm

B = greatest moulded breadth of ship or maximum breadth of cargo hold for ore carriers, in metres

D = moulded depth to bulkhead deck, in metres

L_m = Rule length of ship as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1, Principal particulars, in metres, for ships other than passenger ships

= Load line length of ship as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1, Principal particulars in metres, for passenger ships.

5. 2 Branch bilge suctions to cargo and machinery spaces

5. 2. 1 The diameter, d_b, of branch bilge suction pipes to cargo and machinery spaces is to be not less than required by the following formula, to the nearest 5 mm, but in no case is the diameter of any suction to be less than 50 mm:

$$d_b = 2.15\sqrt{C(B + D)} + 25 \text{ mm}$$

where

d_b = internal diameter of branch bilge suction, in mm

C = length of compartment, in metres, and

B and D = are as defined in Pt 5, Ch 13, 5.1 Main bilge line 5.1.1.

5. 3 Direct bilge suctions, other than emergency suctions

5. 3. 1 The direct bilge suctions in the main engine room, and the direct bilge suctions in large separate boiler rooms, motor rooms of electrically propelled ships and auxiliary engine rooms are not to be of a diameter less than that required for the main bilge line.

5. 3. 2 Where the separate machinery spaces are of small dimensions, the sizes of the direct bilge suctions to these spaces will be specially considered.

5. 3. 3 For sizes of emergency bilge suctions, *See* Pt 5, Ch 13, 4.6 Machinery space – Emergency bilge drainage.

5. 4 Main bilge line – Tankers and similar ships

5. 4. 1 In oil tankers and similar ships, where the engine room pumps do not deal with bilge drainage outside the machinery space, the diameter of the main bilge line may be less than that required by the formula in Pt 5, Ch 13, 5.1 Main bilge line 5.1.1, provided that the cross-sectional area is not less than twice that required for the branch bilge suctions in the machinery space.

5. 5 Distribution chest branch pipes

5. 5. 1 The area of each branch pipe connecting the bilge main to a distribution chest is to be not less than the sum of the areas required by the Rules for the two largest branch bilge suction pipes connected to that chest, but need not be greater than that required for the main bilge line.

5. 6 Tunnel suction

5. 6. 1 The bilge suction pipe to the tunnel well is to be not less than 65 mm bore, except in ships not exceeding 60 m in length, in which case it may be 50 mm bore.

PART

5

CHAPTER **13 Ship Piping Systems**

SECTION **6 Pumps on bilge service and their connections**

6. 1 Number of pumps

6. 1. 1 For ships other than passenger ships, at least two power bilge pumping units are to be provided in the machinery space. In ships of 90 m in length and under, one of these units may be worked from the main engines and the other is to be independently driven. In larger ships both units are to be independently driven.

6. 1. 2 Each unit may consist of one or more pumps connected to the main bilge line, provided that their combined capacity is adequate.

6. 1. 3 In ships other than passenger ships, a bilge ejector in combination with a high pressure sea-water pump may be accepted as a substitute for an independent bilge pump as required by Pt 5, Ch 13, 6.1 Number of pumps 6.1.1.

6. 1. 4 Special consideration will be given to the number of pumps for small ships and, in general, if there is a class notation restricting a small ship to harbour or river service, a hand pump may be accepted in lieu of one of the bilge pumping units.

6. 1. 5 For passenger ships, at least three power bilge pumps are to be provided, one of which may be operated from the main engines. Where the bilge pump numeral as derived from *Regulation 35-1 - Bilge pumping arrangements* of Chapter II-1 of the *International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea, 1974*, and applicable amendments, is 30 or more, one additional independent power pump is to be provided.

6. 1. 6 For location of pumps on passenger ships, *See* Pt 5, Ch 13, 8.1 Location of bilge pumps and bilge main.

6. 2 General service pumps

6. 2. 1 The bilge pumping units, or pumps, required by Pt 5, Ch 13, 6.1, Number of pumps may also be used for ballast, fire or general service duties of an intermittent nature, but they are to be immediately available for bilge duty when required, *See also* SOLAS 1974 as amended Reg. II-2/C,*Regulation 10 - Fire fighting*, as applicable.

6. 3 Capacity of pumps

6. 3. 1 Each bilge pumping unit, or bilge pump in the case of passenger ships, is to be connected to the main bilge line and is to be capable of giving a speed of water through the Rule size of main bilge pipe of not less than 122 m/min.

6. 3. 2 The capacity of each bilge pumping unit or bilge pump is to be not less than required by the following formula:

$$Q = \frac{5.75}{10^3} d_m^2$$

where

d_m = Rule internal diameter of main bilge line, in mm

Q = capacity, in m^3/hour.

6. 3. 3 In ships other than passenger ships, where one bilge pumping unit is of slightly less than Rule capacity, the deficiency may be made good by an excess capacity of the other unit. In general, the deficiency is to be limited to 30 per cent.

6. 4 Self-priming pumps

6. 4. 1 All power pumps which are essential for bilge services are to be of the self-priming type, unless an approved central priming system is provided for these pumps. Details of this system are to be submitted.

6. 4. 2 Cooling water pumps having emergency bilge suctions need not be of the self-priming type.

6. 4. 3 For requirements regarding emergency bilge suctions, *See* Pt 5, Ch 13, 4.6 Machinery space – Emergency bilge drainage.

6. 5 Pump connections

6. 5. 1 The connections at the bilge pumps are to be such that one unit may continue in operation when the other unit is being opened up for overhaul.

6. 5. 2 Pumps required for essential services are not to be connected to a common suction or discharge chest or pipe unless the arrangements are such that the working of any pumps so connected is unaffected by the other pumps being in operation at the same time.

6. 6 Direct bilge suctions

6. 6. 1 The direct bilge suctions in the machinery space(s) are to be led to independent power pump(s), and the arrangements are to be such that these direct suctions can be used independently of the main bilge line suctions.

PART

5

CHAPTER **13 Ship Piping Systems**

SECTION **7 Piping systems and their fittings**

7. 1 Main bilge line suctions

7. 1. 1 Suctions from the main bilge line, i.e. branch bilge suctions, are to be arranged to draw water from any hold, compartment, watertight section or machinery compartment of the ship, excepting small spaces such as those mentioned in Pt 5, Ch 13, 3.1 General 3.1.6, Pt 5, Ch 13, 3.5, Fore and after peaks and Pt 5, Ch 13, 3.6, Spaces above fore peaks, after peaks and machinery spaces, where manual pump suctions are accepted, and are not to be of smaller diameter than that required by the formula in Pt 5, Ch 13, 5.2 Branch bilge suctions to cargo and machinery spaces 5.2.1, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 13, 7.4 Machinery space suctions − Mud boxes 7.4.1 and Pt 5, Ch 13, 7.5 Hold and other compartment suctions – Strum boxes 7.5.1. For special arrangements for oil tankers, *See* Pt 5, Ch 15 Piping Systems for Oil Tankers.

7. 1. 2 Where passenger or cargo ships are of a design having enclosed car decks or cargo spaces located on the bulkhead deck or on the freeboard deck special consideration will be given to the drainage arrangements where any fixed pressure water spray system is fitted, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 12, 4.1, General and Pt 5, Ch 13, 9.1 Bilge drainage requirements.

7. 2 Prevention of communication between compartments

7. 2. 1 The arrangement of valves, cocks and their connections is to be such as to prevent the possibility of one watertight compartment being placed in communication with another, or of dry cargo spaces, machinery spaces or other dry compartments being placed in communication with the sea or with tanks. For this purpose, screw-down non-return valves are to be provided in the following fittings:

- Bilge valve distribution chests.
- Bilge suction hose connections, whether fitted direct to the pump or on the main bilge line.
- Direct bilge suctions and bilge pump connections to main bilge line.

7. 3 Isolation of bilge system

7. 3. 1 Bilge pipes which are required for draining cargo or machinery spaces are to be entirely distinct from sea inlet pipes or from pipes which may be used for filling or emptying spaces where water or oil is carried. This does not, however, exclude a bilge ejection connection, a connecting pipe from a pump to its suction valve chest, or a deep tank suction pipe suitably connected through a changeover device to a bilge, ballast or oil line.

7. 4 Machinery space suctions – Mud boxes

7. 4. 1 Suctions for bilge drainage in machinery spaces and tunnels, other than emergency suctions, are to be led from easily accessible mud boxes fitted with straight tail pipes to the bilges and having covers secured in such a manner as to permit their being expeditiously opened or closed. Strum boxes are not to be fitted to the lower ends of these tail pipes or to the emergency bilge suctions.

7. 5 Hold and other compartment suctions – Strum boxes

7. 5. 1 The open ends of bilge suctions in holds and other compartments outside machinery spaces and tunnels such as cofferdams and tanks other than those permanently arranged for the carriage of fresh water, water ballast, fuel oil or liquid cargo and for which other efficient means of pumping are provided are to be enclosed in strum boxes having perforations of not more than 10 mm diameter, whose combined area is not less than twice that required for the suction pipe. The boxes are to be so constructed that they can be cleared without breaking any joint of the suction pipe.

7. 6 Bilge wells

7. 6. 1 Bilge wells required by Pt 5, Ch 13, 3.2 Cargo holds 3.2.3 and Pt 5, Ch 13, 4.2 Machinery space with double bottom 4.2.2 are to be formed of steel plates and are to be not less than 0.15m^3 capacity. In small compartments, steel bilge hats of reasonable capacity may be fitted.

7. 6. 2 In passenger ships, the depth of bilge wells in double bottom tanks will be specially considered.

7. 6. 3 Where access manholes to bilge wells are necessary, they are to be fitted as near to the suction strums as practicable.

7. 7 Tail pipes

7. 7. 1 The distance between the foot of all bilge tail pipes and the bottom of the bilge well is to be adequate to allow a full flow of water and to facilitate cleaning.

7. 8 Location of fittings

7. 8. 1 Bilge valves, cocks and mud boxes are to be fitted at, or above, the machinery space and tunnel platforms. Where it is not practicable to avoid the fittings being situated at the starting platform or in passageways, they may be situated just below the platform, provided readily removable traps or covers are fitted and nameplates indicate the presence of these fittings.

7. 8. 2 Where relief valves are fitted to pumps having sea connections, these valves are to be fitted in readily visible positions above the platform. The arrangements are to be such that any discharge from the relief valves will also be readily visible.

7. 9 Bilge pipes in way of double bottom tanks

7. 9. 1 Bilge suction pipes are not to be led through double bottom tanks if it is possible to avoid doing so.

7. 9. 2 Bilge pipes which have to pass through these tanks are to have a wall thickness in accordance with Table 12. 2. 4: Minimum thickness for steel pipes. (The thickness of pipes made from material other than steel will be specially considered).

7. 9. 3 Expansion bends, not glands, are to be fitted to these pipes within the tanks, and the pipes are to be tested, after installation, to the same pressure as the tanks through which they pass.

7. 10 Bilge pipes in way of deep tanks

7. 10. 1 In way of deep tanks, bilge pipes should preferably be led through pipe tunnels but, where this is not done, the pipes are to be of steel, having a wall thickness in accordance with Table 12. 2. 4: Minimum thickness for steel pipes in Pt 5, Ch 12 Piping Design Requirements, with welded joints or heavy flanged joints. The number of joints is to be kept to a minimum. Consideration will be given to pipes made from materials other than steel, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 12, 5 Plastic pipes.

7. 10. 2 Expansion bends, not glands, are to be fitted to these pipes within the tanks, and the open ends of the bilge suction pipes in the holds are to be fitted with non-return valves of the special type approved for use in holds, *See* Pt 5, Ch 13, 7.11 Hold bilge non-return valves 7.11.1.

7. 10. 3 The pipes are to be tested, after installation, to a pressure not less than the maximum head to which the tanks can be subjected in service.

7. 11 Hold bilge non-return valves

7. 11. 1 Where non-return valves are fitted to the open ends of bilge suction pipes in cargo holds in order to decrease the risk of flooding, they are to be of an approved type which does not offer undue obstruction to the flow of water.

7. 12 Blanking arrangements

7. 12. 1 In case of deep tanks and cargo holds which may be used for either water ballast or dry cargo, provision is to be made for blank flanging the water ballast filling and suction pipes when the tank or hold is being used for the carriage of dry cargo, and for blank flanging the bilge suction pipes when the tank or hold is being used for the carriage of water ballast. Change-over devices may be used for this purpose.

7. 12. 2 For arrangements when fuel oil or cargo oil (having a flash point of 60°C or above) is carried in deep tanks, *See* Pt 5, Ch 14, 4.14 Deep tanks for the alternative carriage of oil, water ballast or dry cargo.

7. 12. 3 Where a ship is designed for the alternative carriage of dry cargo or oil having a flash point below 60°C, the blanking arrangements will be specially considered.

PART

5

CHAPTER **13 Ship Piping Systems**

SECTION **8 Additional requirements for bilge drainage and cross-flooding arrangements for passenger ships**

8. 1 Location of bilge pumps and bilge main

8. 1. 1 In passenger ships, the power bilge pumps required by Pt 5, Ch 13, 6.1 Number of pumps 6.1.5 are to be placed, if practicable, in separate watertight compartments which will not readily be flooded by the same damage. If the engines and boilers are in two or more watertight compartments, the bilge pumps are to be distributed throughout these compartments so far as is possible.

8. 1. 2 In passenger ships of 91.5 m or more in length, or having a bilge pump numeral of 30 or more (*See* Pt 5, Ch 13, 6.1 Number of pumps 6.1.5), the arrangements are to be such that at least one power pump will be available for use in all ordinary circumstances in which the ship may be flooded at sea. *See also* SOLAS 1974, as amended, Chapter II-1, *Regulation 35-1 - Bilge pumping arrangements*. This requirement will be satisfied if:

- one of the pumps is an emergency pump of a submersible type having a source of power situated above the bulkhead deck, or
- the pumps and their sources of power are so disposed throughout the length of the ship that, under any conditions of flooding which the ship is required by statutory regulation to withstand, at least one pump in an undamaged compartment will be available.

8. 1. 3 The bilge main is to be so arranged that no part is situated nearer the side of the ship than $\frac{B}{5}$, measured at right angles to the centreline at the level of the deepest sub-division load line, where B is the breadth of the ship.

8. 1. 4 Where any bilge pump or its pipe connection to the bilge main is situated outboard of the $\frac{B}{5}$ line, then a non-return valve is to be provided in the pipe connection at the junction with the bilge main. The emergency bilge pump and its connections to the bilge main are to be so arranged that they are situated inboard of the $\frac{B}{5}$ line.

8. 2 Prevention of communication between compartments in the event of damage

8. 2. 1 Provision is to be made to prevent the compartment served by any bilge suction pipe being flooded, in the event of the pipe being severed, or otherwise damaged by collision or grounding in any other compartment. For this purpose, where the pipe is at any part situated nearer the side of the ship than $\frac{B}{5}$ or in a duct keel, a non-return valve is to be fitted to the pipe in the compartment containing the open end.

8. 3 Arrangement and control of bilge valves

8. 3. 1 All the distribution boxes, valves and cocks in connection with the bilge pumping arrangements are to be so arranged that, in the event of flooding, one of the bilge pumps may be operative on any compartment. If there is only one system of pipes common to all pumps, the necessary valves or cocks for controlling the bilge suctions must be capable of being operated from the bulkhead deck. Where, in addition to the main bilge pumping system, an emergency bilge pumping system is provided, it is to be independent of the main system and so arranged that a pump is capable of operating on any compartment under flooding conditions; in this case, only the valves and cocks necessary for the operation of the emergency system need be capable of being operated from above the bulkhead deck.

8. 3. 2 All valves and cocks mentioned in Pt 5, Ch 13, 8.3 Arrangement and control of bilge valves 8.3.1 which can be operated from above the bulkhead deck are to have their controls at their place of operation clearly marked and provided with means to indicate whether they are open or closed.

8. 4 Cross-flooding arrangements

8. 4. 1 here divided deep tanks or side tanks are provided with cross-flooding arrangements to limit the angle of heel after side damage, the arrangements are to be self-acting where practicable. In any case, where controls to cross-flooding fittings are provided, they are to be operable from above the bulkhead deck.

PART

5

CHAPTER **13 Ship Piping Systems**

SECTION **9 Additional requirements relating to fixed pressure water spray fire-extinguishing systems**

9. 1 Bilge drainage requirements

9. 1. 1 Where arrangements for cooling cargo, Ro-Ro or special category spaces below the bulkhead or freeboard deck, or fire-fighting by means of fixed spraying nozzles or by flooding of these spaces with water are provided, the following provisions are to apply, *See also* IMO guidelines (*MSC.1/Circular.1320 – Guidelines for the Drainage of Fire-Fighting Water From Closed Vehicle and Ro-Ro Spaces and Special Category Spaces of Passenger and Cargo Ships – (11 June 2009)*):

a. The drainage system is to be sized to remove no less than 125 per cent of the combined capacity of both the water spraying system pumps and the required number of fire hose nozzles.

b. The drainage system valves are to be operable from outside the protected space at a position in the vicinity of the extinguishing system controls.

c. Adequately sized bilge wells are to be located at the side shell of the ship at a distance from each other of not more than 40 m in each watertight compartment, the bilge wells should be uniformly distributed fore and aft, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 12, 4.1 General 4.1.4 and Pt 4, Ch 2, 11.2 Openings in main vehicle deck. For cargo ships only, if this is not possible, the free surface effect on the ship's stability is to be determined and submitted to the Flag Administration for appraisal.

9. 1. 2 If drainage of vehicle or cargo spaces is by gravity, the drainage is to be led directly overboard or to a closed drain tank. If led overboard the scuppers are to comply with Pt 3, Ch 12, 4.1 General 4.1.3. If led to a closed drain tank, this tank is to be located outside the machinery spaces and provided with a vent pipe leading to a safe location on the open deck. *See also* Pt 4, Ch 2, 11.2 Openings in main vehicle deck.

9. 1. 3 Drainage from a cargo space into bilge wells in a lower space is only permitted if that space satisfies the same requirements as the cargo space above.

9. 1. 4 On ships with closed vehicle spaces, ro-ro spaces and special category spaces, means are to be provided to prevent the blockage of drainage systems from these spaces.

PART

5

CHAPTER **13** **Ship Piping Systems**

SECTION **10** **Drainage arrangements for ships not fitted with propelling machinery**

10. 1 Pumps

10. 1. 1 Where auxiliary power is not provided, hand pumps are to be fitted, in number and position, as may be required for the efficient drainage of the ship.

10. 1. 2 In general, one hand pump is to be provided for each compartment. Alternatively, two hand pumps connected to a bilge main, having at least one branch to each compartment, are to be provided.

10. 1. 3 For unmanned pontoons and as an alternative to Pt 5, Ch 13, 10.1 Pumps 10.1.1 and Pt 5, Ch 13, 10.1 Pumps 10.1.2, two portable pumps are to be provided together with suitable suction and discharge hoses as applicable. This equipment is to be either stored on board the pontoon or carried on board an attending tug.

10. 1. 4 The pumps are to be capable of being worked from the upper deck or from positions above the load waterline which are at all times readily accessible. The suction lift is not to exceed 7.3 m and is to be well within the capacity of the pump.

10. 1. 5 The sizes of the hand pumps are to be not less than those given in Table 13. 10. 1: Sizes of hand pumps. Where the ship is closely sub-divided into small watertight compartments, 50 mm bore suctions will be accepted.

Table 13. 10. 1: Sizes of hand pumps

Tonnage under upper deck	Diameter of barrel of bucket pump mm	Bore of suction pipe of bucket pumps and semi-rotary pumps mm
Not exceeding 500 tons	100	50
Above 500 tons but not exceeding 1000 tons	115	57
Above 1000 tons but not exceeding 2000 tons	125	65
Above 2000 tons	140	70

10. 2 Ships with auxiliary power

10. 2. 1 In ships in which auxiliary power is available on board, power pump suctions are to be provided for dealing with the drainage of tanks and of the bilges of the principal compartments.

10. 2. 2 The pumping arrangements are to be as required for self-propelled ships, so far as these requirements are applicable, duly modified to suit the size and service of the ship.

10. 2. 3 Details of the pumping arrangements are to be submitted for special consideration.

PART

5

CHAPTER **13 Ship Piping Systems**

SECTION **11 Ballast system**

11. 1 Stand-by arrangements for ballast pumping

11. 1. 1 Where ballasting/de-ballasting is required for ship operation or trading purposes stand-by ballast pumping arrangements are to be provided, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 13, 6.2 General service pumps 6.2.1 and Pt 5, Ch 15, 2.4 Drainage of ballast tanks and void spaces within the range of the cargo tanks 2.4.4.

11. 2 Integrated cargo and ballast systems

11. 2. 1 Where ballast and cargo systems share power supplies and/or control engineering systems, the additional requirements of this sub-Section apply.

11. 2. 2 A failure is not to prevent operation of the ballast system by other means.

11. 2. 3 Controls to stop the cargo system, including normal controls and emergency stop and safety shutdowns, are not to prevent operation of the ballast system.

11. 3 Anti-heeling arrangements

11. 3. 1 Where tanks are provided with anti-heeling arrangements to limit the angle of heel during loading, at least one shut-off valve in the anti-heeling cross pipe or channel between the tanks shall automatically close in the event of failure of power supply to the anti-heeling pump.

PART

5

CHAPTER **13 Ship Piping Systems**

SECTION **12 Air, overflow and sounding pipes**

12. 1 Definitions

12. 1. 1 Reference to cargo oil in this Section is to be taken to mean cargo oil which has a flash point 60°C or above (closed cup test).

12. 2 Materials

12. 2. 1 Air, overflow and sounding pipes are to be made of steel or other approved material. For use of plastic pipes of approved type, *See* Pt 5, Ch 12 Piping Design Requirements.

12. 2. 2 The portions of air, overflow and sounding pipes fitted above the weather deck are to be of steel or equivalent material.

12. 3 Nameplates

12. 3. 1 Nameplates are to be affixed to the upper ends of all air and sounding pipes.

12. 4 Air pipes

12. 4. 1 Air pipes are to be fitted to all tanks, cofferdams, tunnels and other compartments which are not fitted with alternative ventilation arrangements.

12. 4. 2 The air pipes are to be fitted at the opposite end of the tank to that which the filling pipes are placed and/or at the highest part of the tank. Where the tank top is of unusual or irregular profile, special consideration will be given to the number and position of the air pipes.

12. 4. 3 For a normally inaccessible small void compartment such as an echo sounding compartment, which is accessed from within a normally inaccessible space such as a forepeak tank, alternative air pipe arrangements to those required by Pt 5, Ch 13, 12.4 Air pipes 12.4.1 may be considered. For such arrangements, a warning notice is to be located in a prominent position specifying the precautions to be taken prior opening the manhole and entering the small void compartment. Ventilation arrangements are to be submitted to ACS for approval.

12. 4. 4 For unmanned pontoons not fitted with auxiliary power and where portable pumps are provided in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 13, 10.1 Pumps 10.1.3, void spaces need not be provided with air pipes or any other means of ventilation. In this case, a warning notice is to be placed in a prominent position specifying the precautions to be taken prior to opening a manhole of a void space.

12. 5 Termination of air pipes

12. 5. 1 Air pipes to double bottom tanks, deep tanks extending to the shelll plating, or tanks which can be run up from the sea are to be led to above the bulkhead deck. Air pipes to fuel oil and cargo oil

tanks, cofferdams and all tanks which can be pumped up are to be led to the open. For height of air pipes above deck, *See* Pt 3, Ch 12, 3 Air and sounding pipes.

12. 5. 2 Air pipes from storage tanks containing lubricating or hydraulic oil may terminate in the machinery space, provided that the open ends are so situated that issuing oil cannot come into contact with electrical equipment or heated surfaces. Air pipes from heated lubricating oil tanks are to be led to the open.

12. 5. 3 The open ends of air pipes to fuel oil and cargo oil tanks are to be situated where no danger will be incurred from issuing oil vapour when the tank is being filled.

12. 5. 4 The location and arrangement of air pipes for fuel oil service, settling and lubricating oil tanks are to be such that in the event of a broken vent pipe, this does not directly lead to the risk of ingress of sea-water or rainwater.

12. 5. 5 For special requirements for the termination of air pipes on ferries, *See* Pt 3, Ch 12, 3 Air and sounding pipes and Pt 4, Ch 2, 11 Miscellaneous openings.

12. 6 Gauze diaphragms

12. 6. 1 The open ends of air pipes to fuel oil and cargo oil tanks are to be furnished with a wire gauze diaphragm of incorrodible material which can be readily removed for cleaning or renewal.

12. 6. 2 Where wire gauze diaphragms are fitted at air pipe openings, the area of the opening through the gauze is to be not less than the cross-sectional area required for the pipe, *See* Pt 5, Ch 13, 12.8, Size of air pipes.

12. 7 Air pipe closing appliances

12. 7. 1 The closing appliances fitted to tank air pipes in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 12, 3 Air and sounding pipes are to be of an automatic opening type which will allow the free passage of air or liquid to prevent the tanks being subjected to a pressure or vacuum greater than that for which they are designed, and prevent the free entry of water into the tanks.

12. 7. 2 Air pipe closing devices are to be type a tested in accordance with the test requirements of ACS's Type Approval Test Specification Number 2. The flow characteristic of the closing device is to be determined using water, *See* Pt 5, Ch 13, 12.8 Size of air pipes 12.8.1 and Pt 5, Ch 13, 12.8 Size of air pipes 12.8.2.

12. 7. 3 Wood plugs and other devices which can be secured closed are not to be fitted at the outlets.

12. 7. 4 Air pipe automatic closing devices shall be so designed that they will withstand both ambient conditions as indicated in Pt 5, Ch 1, 3.5 Ambient reference conditions and Pt 5, Ch 1, 3.6 Ambient operating conditions and designed working conditions, and be suitable for use at inclinations up to and including ±40°.

12. 7. 5 Air pipe automatic closing devices shall be constructed to allow inspection of the closure and the inside of the casing as well as changing the seals.

12. 7. 6 Efficient ball or float seating arrangements are to be provided for the closures. Bars, cages or other devices are to be provided to prevent the ball or float from contacting the inner chamber in its normal state, and made in such a way that the ball or float is not damaged when subjected to liquid impact due to a tank being overfilled.

12. 7. 7 Air pipe automatic closing devices are to be self-draining.

12. 7. 8 The clear area through an air pipe closing device in the open position shall be at least equal to the area of the inlet.

12. 7. 9 In the case of air pipe closing devices of the float type, suitable guides are to be provided to ensure unobstructed operation under all working conditions of heel and trim as specified in Pt 5, Ch 13, 12.7 Air pipe closing appliances 12.7.4.

12. 7. 10 The maximum allowable tolerances for wall thickness of floats shall not exceed ±10 per cent of thickness.

12. 7. 11 The inner and the outer chambers of an automatic air pipe head are to be of a minimum thickness of 6 mm. Where side covers are provided, and their function is integral to providing functions of the closing device as outlined in Pt 5, Ch 13, 12.7 Air pipe closing appliances 12.7.1, they shall have a minimum wall thickness of 6 mm. If the air pipe head can meet the tightness test in ACS's Type Approval Test Specification Number 2 without the side covers attached, then the side covers are not considered to be integral to the closing device, in which case a wall thickness less than 6 mm will be accepted.

12. 7. 12 Casings of air pipe closing devices are to be of approved metallic materials, adequately protected against corrosion.

12. 7. 13 For galvanised steel air pipe heads, the zinc coating is to be applied by the hot method and the thickness is to be 70 to 100 microns.

12. 7. 14 For areas of the head susceptible to erosion (e.g. those parts directly subjected to ballast water impact when the tank is being pressed up, such as the inner chamber area above the air pipe plus an overlap of 10° or more either side) an additional harder coating should be applied. This is to be an aluminium-bearing epoxy, or other equivalent coating, applied over the zinc.

12. 7. 15 Closures and seats made of non-metallic materials are to be compatible with the media intended to be carried in the tank and to sea-water, and suitable for operating at ambient temperatures between –25°C and 85°C.

12. 8 size of air pipes

12. 8. 1 For every tank which can be filled by the ship's pumps, the total cross-sectional area of the air pipes and the design of the air pipe closing devices is to be such that when the tank is overflowing at the maximum pumping capacity available for the tank, it will not be subjected to a pressure greater than that for which it is designed.

12. 8. 2 In all cases, whether a tank is filled by ship's pumps or other means, the total cross-sectional area of the air pipes is to be not less than 25 per cent greater than the effective area of the respective filling pipe.

12. 8. 3 Where tanks are fitted with cross-flooding connections, the air pipes are to be of adequate area for these connections.

12. 8. 4 Air pipes are to be not less than 50 mm bore.

12. 9 Overflow pipes

12. 9. 1 For all tanks which can be filled by the ship's pumps or by shore pumps, overflow pipes are to be fitted where:

a. The total cross-sectional area of the air pipe is less than that required by Pt 5, Ch 13, 12.8, Size of air pipes.

b. The pressure head corresponding to the height of the air pipe is greater than that for which the tank is designed.

12. 9. 2 In the case of fuel oil and lubricating oil tanks, the overflow pipe is to be led to an overflow tank of adequate capacity or to a storage tank having a space reserved for overflow purposes. Suitable means are to be provided to indicate when overflow is occurring, or when the contents reach a predetermined level in the tanks.

12. 9. 3 Overflow pipes are to be self-draining under normal conditions of trim.

12. 9. 4 Where overflow sight glasses are provided, they are to be in a vertically dropping line and designed such that the oil does not impinge on the glass. The glass is to be of heat resisting quality, adequately protected from mechanical damage and well lit.

12. 10 Air and overflow systems

12. 10. 1 Where a combined air or overflow system is fitted, the arrangement is to be such that in the event of any one of the tanks being bilged, tanks situated in other watertight compartments of the ship cannot be flooded from the sea through combined air pipes or the overflow main. For this purpose, it will normally be necessary to lead the overflow pipe to a point close to the bulkhead deck.

12. 10. 2 Where tanks vent via a common tank, such as an overflow tank, extending to the shell plating, flooding of this tank as a result of damage to the shell plating is not to render the entire venting system inoperable.

12. 10. 3 In the case of trawlers and fishing vessels, the arrangement is to be such that in the event of any one of the tanks being bilged, the other tanks cannot be flooded from the sea through the combined air pipes or the overflow main.

12. 10. 4 Where overflow from tanks which are used for the alternative carriage of oil and water ballast are connected to an overflow system, arrangements are to be made to prevent water ballast overflowing into tanks containing oil, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 14, 4.14 Deep tanks for the alternative carriage of oil, water ballast or dry cargo.

12. 10. 5 Where a common overflow main is provided, the main is to be sized to allow any two tanks connected to that main to overflow simultaneously.

12. 11 Sounding arrangements

12. 11. 1 Provision is to be made for sounding all tanks and the bilges of those compartments which are not at all times readily accessible. The soundings are to be taken as near the suction pipes as practicable.

12. 11. 2 Bilges of compartments which are not at all times readily accessible are to be provided with sounding pipes.

12. 11. 3 Where fitted, sounding pipes are to be as straight as practicable, and if curved to suit the structure of the ship, the curvature must be sufficiently easy to permit the ready passage of the sounding rod or chain.

12. 11. 4 Sounding devices of approved type may be used in lieu of sounding pipes for sounding tanks. These devices are to be tested, after fitting on board, to the satisfaction of the Surveyors.

12. 11. 5 Where gauge glasses are used for indicating the level of liquid in tanks containing lubricating oil, fuel oil or other flammable liquid, the glasses are to be of the flat type of heat-resisting quality, adequately protected from mechanical damage, and fitted with self-closing valves at the lower ends and at the top ends if these are connected to the tanks below the maximum liquid level.

12. 11. 6 If means of sounding, other than a sounding pipe, is fitted in any ship for indicating the level of liquid in tanks containing fuel oil, lubricating oil or other flammable liquid, failure of such means or over filling of the tank should not result in the release of tank contents.

12. 11. 7 In passenger ships, sounding devices for fuel oil tanks, lubricating oil tanks and other tanks which may contain flammable liquids are to be of a type which does not require penetration below the top of the tank.

12. 11. 8 For a normally inaccessible small void compartment such as an echo sounding compartment, which is accessed from within a normally inaccessible space such as a forepeak tank, alternative

sounding arrangements to those required by Pt 5, Ch 13, 12.11 Sounding arrangements 12.11.1 may be considered. For such arrangements, a warning notice is to be located in a prominent position specifying precautions to be taken prior opening the manhole of the small void compartment. Means are to be provided to indicate flooding of the compartment without opening, such as fitting indicator plugs to the manhole. Sounding arrangements are to be submitted to ACS for approval.

12. 12 Termination of sounding pipes

12. 12. 1 Sounding pipes are to be led to positions above the bulkhead deck which are at all times accessible and, in the case of fuel oil tanks, cargo oil tanks, lubricating oil tanks and tanks containing other flammable oils, the sounding pipes are to be led to safe positions on the open deck.

12. 12. 2 For closing requirements, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 12, 3 Air and sounding pipes.

12. 13 Short sounding pipes

12. 13. 1 In machinery spaces and tunnels, in circumstances where it is not practicable to extend the sounding pipes as mentioned in Pt 5, Ch 13, 12.12 Termination of sounding pipes, short sounding pipes extending to well lighted, readily accessible positions above the platform may be fitted to double bottom tanks. Where such pipes serve tanks containing fuel oil or other flammable liquid, an additional sounding device of approved type is to be fitted. An additional sounding device is not required for lubricating oil tanks. Any proposal to terminate in the machinery space, sounding pipes to tanks, other than double bottom tanks, will be the subject of special consideration.

12. 13. 2 Short sounding pipes to fuel oil, cargo oil (flash point not less than 60°C), lubricating oil tanks and other flammable oil tanks (flash point not less than 60°C) are to be fitted with cocks having parallel plugs with permanently attached handles, so loaded that, on being released, they automatically close the cocks. In addition, a small diameter self-closing test cock is to be fitted below the cock mentioned above in order to ensure that the sounding pipe is not under a pressure of oil before opening-up the sounding cock. Provision is to be made to ensure that discharge of oil through this test cock does not present an ignition hazard. An additional small diameter self-closing test cock is not required for lubricating oil tanks.

12. 13. 3 As a further precaution against fire, such sounding pipes are to be located in positions as far removed as possible from any heated surface or electrical equipment and, where necessary, effective shielding is to be provided in way of such surfaces and/or equipment.

12. 13. 4 In ships that are required to be provided with a double bottom, short sounding pipes, where fitted to double bottom tanks, are in all cases to be provided with self-closing cocks as described in Pt 5, Ch 13, 12.13 Short sounding pipes 12.13.2.

12. 13. 5 Where a double bottom is not required to be fitted, short sounding pipes to tanks other than oil tanks are to be fitted with shut-off cocks or with screw caps attached to the pipes by chains.

12. 13. 6 In passenger ships, short sounding pipes are permissible only for sounding cofferdams and double bottom tanks situated in a machinery space, and are in all cases to be fitted with self-closing cocks as described in Pt 5, Ch 13, 12.13 Short sounding pipes 12.13.2.

12. 14 Elbow sounding pipes

12. 14. 1 Elbow sounding pipes are not to be used for deep tanks unless the elbows and pipes are situated within closed cofferdams or within tanks containing similar liquids. They may, however, be fitted to other tanks and may be used for sounding bilges, provided that it is not practicable to lead them direct to the tanks or compartments, and subject to any subdivision and damage stability requirements that may apply, *See* Pt 5, Ch 13, 1.2 Prevention of progressive flooding in damage condition 1.2.1.

12. 14. 2 The elbows are to be of heavy construction and adequately supported.

12. 14. 3 In passenger ships, elbow sounding pipes are not permissible.

12. 15 Striking plates

12. 15. 1 Striking plates of adequate thickness and size are to be fitted under open-ended sounding pipes.

12. 15. 2 Where slotted sounding pipes having closed ends are employed, the closing plugs are to be of substantial construction.

12. 16 Sizes of sounding pipes

12. 16. 1 Sounding pipes are to be not less than 32 mm bore.

12. 16. 2 All sounding pipes, whether for compartments or tanks, which pass through refrigerated spaces or the insulation thereof, in which the temperatures contemplated are 0°C or below, are to be not less than 65 mm bore, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 13, 2.8 Piping in way of refrigerated chambers 2.8.1 for insulation.

PART

5

CHAPTER **13 Ship Piping Systems**

SECTION **Cross-references**

For `Ice Class' requirements, *See* Pt 8 Rules for Ice and Cold Operations.
For venting and gauging equipment for cargo tanks in oil tankers, *See* Pt 5, Ch 15, 4 Cargo tank venting, purging and gas-freeing and Pt 5, Ch 15, 5 Cargo tank level gauging equipment.
For control engineering equipment, *See* Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems.
For requirements relating to scuppers and sanitary discharges, *See* Pt 3, Ch 12 Ventilators, Air Pipes and Discharges.

PART

5

CHAPTER **13 Ship Piping Systems**

SECTION **13 Additional requirements for drainage and pumping arrangements for bulk carriers**

13. 1 General requirements

13. 1. 1 Arrangements for drainage and pumping are to be in accordance with the requirements of SOLAS 1974 as amended, Chapter XII, *Regulation 13 - Availability of pumping systems1*.

13. 1. 2 On bulk carriers, the means for draining and pumping ballast tanks forward of the collision bulkhead and bilges of dry spaces any part of which extends forward of the foremost cargo hold are to be capable of being brought into operation from a readily accessible enclosed space, the location of which is accessible from the navigation bridge or propulsion machinery control positions without traversing exposed freeboard or superstructure decks. Where pipes serving such tanks or bilges pierce the collision bulkhead, valve operation by means of remotely operated actuators may be accepted, as an alternative to the valve control specified in Pt 5, Ch 13, 3.5 Fore and after peaks 3.5.4, provided that the location of such valve controls complies with this requirement.

13. 2 Dewatering capability

13. 2. 1 The dewatering system for ballast tanks located forward of the collision bulkhead, and for bilges of dry spaces any part of which extends forward of the foremost cargo hold, is to be designed to remove water from the forward spaces at a rate of not less than $320A$ m^3/h, where A is the crosssectional area in m^2 of the largest air pipe or ventilator pipe connected from the exposed deck to a closed forward space that is required to be dewatered by these arrangements.

PART

5

CHAPTER **13 Ship Piping Systems**

SECTION **14 Water ingress detection arrangements**

14. 1 General requirements

14. 1. 1 Equipment for detecting the ingress of water in bulk carriers is to be fitted in accordance with the requirements of SOLAS 1974 as amended, Chapter XII, *Regulation 12 - Hold, ballast and dry space water ingress alarms*.

14. 1. 2 Equipment for detecting the ingress of water in single hold cargo ships is to be fitted in accordance with the requirements of SOLAS 1974 as amended, Chapter II-1, *Regulation 25 - Water level detectors on single hold cargo ships other than bulk carriers*.

14. 1. 3 Flooding detection systems in passenger ships carrying 36 persons or more are to be fitted in accordance with the requirements of SOLAS 1974 as amended, Chapter II-1, *Regulation 22-1 - Flooding detection systems for passenger ships carrying 36 or more persons*.

14. 1. 4 Alarm and indicators specified in Pt 5, Ch 13, 14.2 Water ingress detection arrangements in bulk carriers to Pt 5, Ch 13, 14.4, Flooding detection systems in passenger ships are to be provided on the navigation bridge and, for passenger ships, additionally in the safety centre if located in a separate space from the navigation bridge.

14. 1. 5 Equipment required by Pt 5, Ch 13, 14.1 General requirements 14.1.2 to Pt 5, Ch 13, 14.1 General requirements 14.1.4 is to satisfy the applicable requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems.

14. 1. 6 Pt 6, Ch 1, 1.4 Control, alarm and safety equipment 1.4.1 details applicable requirements for Survey at the manufacturer's works. At the initial installation and during each subsequent Complete Survey of Machinery alarm systems or Special Survey, the operation of the ingress detection arrangements is to be demonstrated to the satisfaction of the ACS Surveyor.

14. 1. 7 Where alternative arrangements to those required by Pt 5, Ch 13, 14.1 General requirements 14.1.2 to Pt 5, Ch 13, 14.1 General requirements 14.1.4 are proposed, evidence is to be submitted for consideration by ACS that demonstrates:

- water ingress will be detected in all areas considered necessary to reliably detect flooding of watertight spaces;
- responsible personnel will be effectively notified in the event of water ingress to allow for planned response; and
- acceptance by the National Administration with which the ship is registered.

14. 2 Water ingress detection arrangements in bulk carriers

14. 2. 1 Bulk carriers are to be fitted with water level detectors:

a. in each cargo hold, giving audible and visual alarms, one when the water level above the inner bottom in any hold reaches a height of 0.5 m and another at a height not less than 15 per cent of the depth of the cargo hold but not more than 2 m. The water level detectors are to be fitted in the aft end of each cargo hold. For cargo holds which are used for water ballast, an alarm overriding device may be installed. The visual alarms are to clearly discriminate between the two different water levels detected in each hold;
b. in any ballast tank forward of the collision bulkhead required by Pt 3, Ch 3, 4 Bulkhead requirements, giving an audible and visual alarm when the liquid in the tank reaches a level not exceeding 10 per cent of the tank capacity. An alarm overriding device may be installed to be activated when the tank is in use; and
c. in any dry or void space other than a chain cable locker, any part of which extends forward of the foremost cargo hold, giving an audible and visual alarm at a water level of 0.1 m above the deck. Such alarms need not be provided in enclosed spaces the volume of which does not exceed 0.1 per cent of the ship's maximum displacement volume.

14. 3 Water ingress detection arrangements in single hold cargo ships

14. 3. 1 Ships having a length, *L*, of less than 80 m and a single cargo hold below the freeboard deck or cargo holds below the freeboard deck which are not separated by at least one bulkhead made watertight up to that deck, are to be fitted in such space or spaces with water level detectors.

14. 3. 2 The water level detectors required by Pt 5, Ch 13, 14.3 Water ingress detection arrangements in single hold cargo ships 14.3.1 are to:

a. give an audible and visual alarm when the water level above the inner bottom in the cargo hold reaches a height of not less than 0.3 m, and another when such level reaches not more than 15 per cent of the mean depth of the cargo hold; and
b. be fitted at the aft end of the hold, or above its lowest part where the inner bottom is not parallel to the designed waterline. Where webs or partial watertight bulkheads are fitted above the inner bottom, the installation of additional detectors is to be considered.

14. 3. 3 The water level detectors required by Pt 5, Ch 13, 14.3 Water ingress detection arrangements in single hold cargo ships 14.3.1 need not be fitted in ships complying with Pt 5, Ch 13, 14.2 Water ingress detection arrangements in bulk carriers, or in ships having watertight side compartments each side of the cargo hold length which extend vertically at least from inner bottom to freeboard deck.

14. 4 Flooding detection systems in passenger ships

14. 4. 1 Passenger ships for 36 persons or more are to be provided with a flooding detection system for watertight spaces below the bulkhead deck.

14. 4. 2 The flooding detection system required by Pt 5, Ch 13, 14.4 Flooding detection systems in passenger ships 14.4.1 is to be fitted in all watertight spaces below the bulkhead deck that:

a. have a volume, in cubic metres, that is more than the ship’s moulded displacement per centimetre immersion at deepest subdivision draught; or
b. have a volume more than 30 cubic metres, whichever is the greater.

14. 4. 3 Any watertight spaces that are individually equipped with a liquid level monitoring system (such as fresh water, ballast water, fuel, etc.), including an indicator panel or other means of monitoring at the navigation bridge, and the safety centre if located in a separate space from the navigation bridge, are excluded from the requirements of this sub-Section.

14. 4. 4 The number and location of flooding detection sensors is to be sufficient to ensure that any substantial water ingress into a watertight space requiring a flooding detection system is detected

under reasonable angles of trim and heel. To accomplish this, flooding detection sensors are to be installed as indicated below:

a. **Vertical location** – sensors are to be installed as low as practical in the watertight space;
b. **Longitudinal location** – in watertight spaces located forward of the mid-length sensors are generally to be installed at the forward end of the space; and in watertight spaces located aft of the mid-length, sensors are generally to be installed at the aft end of the space. For watertight spaces located in the vicinity of the midlength, consideration is to be given to the appropriate longitudinal location of the sensor. In addition, any watertight space of length more than 20 per cent of the ship's subdivision length or with arrangements that would seriously restrict the longitudinal flow of water is to be provided with sensors at both the forward and aft ends; and
c. **Transverse location** – sensors are generally to be installed at the centreline of the space (or alternatively at both the port and starboard sides). In addition, any watertight space that extends the full breadth of the ship or with arrangements that would seriously restrict the transverse flow of water is to be provided with sensors at both the port and starboard sides.

14. 4. 5 Where a watertight space extends in height over more than one deck, there is to be at least one flooding detection sensor at each deck level. This provision is not applicable in cases where a continuous flood level monitoring system is installed.

14. 4. 6 Consideration may be given to the number and location of flooding detection sensors in watertight spaces with unusual arrangements or in other cases where these requirements would not achieve the intended purpose, *See* Pt 5, Ch 13, 14.1 General requirements 14.1.7.

PART

5

CHAPTER **14 Machinery Piping Systems**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General requirements**		**2440**
	1. 1	General	2440
SECTION 2	**Fuel oil - General requirements**		**2441**
	2. 1	Flash point	2441
	2. 2	Special fuels	2441
	2. 3	Fuel oil sampling	2442
	2. 4	Ventilation	2442
	2. 5	Boiler insulation and air circulation in boiler room	2442
	2. 6	Funnel dampers	2443
	2. 7	Heating arrangements	2443
	2. 8	Temperature indication	2443
	2. 9	Precautions against fire	2443
	2. 10	Fuel oil contamination	2444
	2. 11	Tanks and cofferdams	2445
SECTION 3	**Fuel oil burning arrangements**		**2447**
	3. 1	Oil burning units	2447
	3. 2	Gravity feed	2448
	3. 3	Starting-up unit	2448
	3. 4	Steam connections to burners	2449
	3. 5	Burner arrangements	2449
	3. 6	Quick-closing valve	2449
	3. 7	Spill arrangements	2449
	3. 8	Alternately-fired furnaces	2449
	3. 9	Fuel oil treatment for supply to main and auxiliary engines and gas turbines	2449
	3. 10	Booster pumps	2450
	3. 11	Booster pumps when operating in emissions control areas	2450

3. 12 Fuel valve cooling pumps 2450
3. 13 Oil-fired galleys 2450
SECTION 4 Fuel oil pumps, pipes, fittings, tanks, etc. 2451
4. 1 Transfer pumps 2451
4. 2 Control of pumps 2451
4. 3 Relief valves on pumps 2451
4. 4 Pump connections 2451
4. 5 Pipes conveying oil 2451
4. 6 Low pressure pipes 2452
4. 7 Valves and cocks 2452
4. 8 Valves on deep tanks and their control arrangements 2452
4. 9 Water drainage from settling tanks 2453
4. 10 Relief valves on oil heaters 2453
4. 11 Filling arrangements 2453
4. 12 Transfer arrangements − Passenger ships 2453
4. 13 Alternative carriage of fuel oil and water ballast 2453
4. 14 Deep tanks for the alternative carriage of oil, water ballast or dry cargo 2453
4. 15 Separation of cargo oils from fuel oil 2454
4. 16 Fresh water piping 2454
4. 17 Separate fuel oil tanks 2454
4. 18 Fuel oil service tanks 2455
4. 19 Arrangements for fuels with a flash point between 43°C and 60°C 2455
SECTION 5 Steam piping systems 2456
5. 1 Provision for expansion 2456
5. 2 Drainage 2456
5. 3 Soot cleaning drains 2456
5. 4 Pipes in way of holds 2456
5. 5 Reduced pressure lines 2457
5. 6 Steam for fire-extinguishing in cargo holds 2457
SECTION 6 Boiler feed water, condensate and thermal fluid circulation systems 2459
6. 1 Feed water piping 2459
6. 2 Feed and circulation pumps 2459
6. 3 Harbour feed pumps 2459
6. 4 Condensate pumps 2460
6. 5 Reserve feed water 2460

SECTION 7 Engine cooling water system 2462
7. 1 Main supply 2462
7. 2 Standby supply 2462
7. 3 Selection of standby pumps 2462
7. 4 Relief valves on main cooling water pumps 2463
7. 5 Sea inlets 2463
7. 6 Strainers 2463
SECTION 8 Lubricating oil systems 2465
8. 1 General requirements 2465
8. 2 Pumps 2465
8. 3 Control of pumps 2465
8. 4 Relief valves on pumps 2465
8. 5 Emergency supply for propulsion turbines and propulsion turbo-generators 2466
8. 6 Maintenance of bearing lubrication 2466
8. 7 Filters 2466
8. 8 Filling arrangements 2466
8. 9 Cleanliness of pipes and fittings 2467
8. 10 Pipes conveying oil 2467
8. 11 Lubricating oil drain tank 2467
8. 12 Lubricating oil contamination 2467
8. 13 Deep tank valves and their control arrangements 2467
8. 14 Separate oil tanks 2468
8. 15 Precautions against fire 2468
SECTION 9 Hydraulic systems 2470
9. 1 General 2470
9. 2 System arrangements 2470
9. 3 Relief valves on pumps 2470
9. 4 Pipes conveying oil 2471
9. 5 Filling arrangements 2471
9. 6 Separate oil tanks 2471
9. 7 Precaution against fire 2471
SECTION 10 Low pressure compressed air systems 2472
10. 1 General 2472
10. 2 Compressors and reducing valves/stations 2472
10. 3 Air receivers 2473

10. 4 Distribution system 2473
10. 5 Pneumatic remote control valves 2473
10. 6 Control arrangements 2474
SECTION 11 Multi-engined ships 2475
11. 1 General 2475
SECTION 12 Control, alarm and safety systems of machinery 2476
12. 1 General 2476
12. 2 Thermal fluid heaters 2476
12. 3 Incinerators 2478
12. 4 Miscellaneous machinery 2478

PART

5

CHAPTER **14 Machinery Piping Systems**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 14. 4. 1: Plate thickness of separate fuel oil tanks 2454
Table 14. 12. 1: Thermal fluid heaters: Alarms and safeguards 2476
Table 14. 12. 2: Incinerators: Alarms and safeguards 2478
Table 14. 12. 3: Miscellaneous machinery: Alarms and safeguards 2479

PART

5

CHAPTER **14 Machinery Piping Systems**

SECTION **1 General requirements**

1. 1 General

1. 1. 1 In addition to the requirements detailed in this Chapter, the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 13, 1 General requirements and Pt 5, Ch 13, 2 Construction and installation are to be complied with, where applicable.

1. 1. 2 The requirements of Pt 5, Ch 13, 3 Drainage of compartments, other than machinery spaces are also to be complied with, so far as they are applicable, for the drainage of tanks, oily bilges and cofferdams, etc.

1. 1. 3 The requirements of Pt 5, Ch 14, 2 Fuel oil - General requirements and Pt 5, Ch 14, 4 Fuel oil pumps, pipes, fittings, tanks, etc. are to be complied with, as far as they are applicable, for all flammable liquids.

PART

5

CHAPTER **14 Machinery Piping Systems**

SECTION **2 Fuel oil - General requirements**

2. 1 Flash point

2. 1. 1 The flash point (closed cup test) of fuel oil for use in ships classed for unrestricted service is, in general, to be not less than 60°C. For emergency generator engines a flash point of not less than 43°C is permissible.

2. 1. 2 The use of fuel oil having a flash point of less than 60° but not less than 43° may be permitted for emergency generators, emergency fire pumps, engines and auxiliary machines which are not located in machinery spaces subject to the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 14, 4.19 Arrangements for fuels with a flash point between 43°C and 60°C.

2. 1. 3 The use of fuel having a lower flash point than specified in Pt 5, Ch 14, 2.1 Flash point 2.1.1 or Pt 5, Ch 14, 2.1 Flash point 2.1.2 may be permitted in cargo ships provided that such fuel is not stored in any machinery space and the arrangements for the complete installation are specially approved.

2. 1. 4 Fuel oil in storage tanks is not to be heated to a temperature exceeding 10°C below its flash point. Higher temperatures will be considered for fuel oil stored in settling and service tanks where:

a. The tanks are vented to a safe position outside the engine-room and, as in the case of all fuel oil tanks, the ends of the ventilation pipes are fitted with gauze diaphragms.
b. Openings in the drainage systems of tanks containing heated fuel oil are located in spaces where no accumulation of oil vapours at temperatures close to the flash point can occur.
c. The length of vent pipes from such tanks and/or a cooling device is sufficient for cooling oil vapours to below 60°C, or the outlet of the vent pipes is located at least 3 m from sources of ignition.
d. There is no source of ignition in the vicinity of openings in the drainage systems.
e. There are no openings from the vapour space of the fuel tanks into machinery spaces other than bolted manhole covers.
f. Enclosed spaces are not located directly over such fuel tanks, except for vented cofferdams.
g. Electrical equipment is not fitted in the vapour space of tanks unless it meets the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.3 Selection of equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres 14.3.4 for electrical equipment in zone 0 explosive atmospheres.

2. 1. 5 The temperature of any heating medium is not to exceed 220°C.

2. 2 Special fuels

2. 2. 1 When it is desired to carry a quantity of fuel having a flash point below 43°C for special services, e.g. aviation spirit for use in helicopters, full particulars of the proposed arrangements are to be submitted for special consideration. For helicopter refuelling, as a minimum, the requirements of SOLAS 1974 as amended II-2/G, *Regulation 18 - Helicopter facilities* will apply.

2. 2. 2 For the burning of gas fuel in liquefied gas tanker/carriers, *See* the *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk* (hereinafter referred to as the *Rules for Ships for Liquefied Gases*).

2. 2. 3 Where it is proposed to use fuel for main or auxiliary engines in ships other than given in the *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk,* the relevant requirements of the *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships using Gases or other Low-flashpoint Fuels* are to be complied with. Full particulars of the proposed arrangements are to be submitted for special consideration. Attention is to be given to any relevant statutory requirements of the National Authority of the country in which the ships are to be registered.

2. 3 Fuel oil sampling

2. 3. 1 Sampling points are to be provided within the fuel oil system. The design and location of sampling points is to enable samples of fuel oil to be taken easily and in a safe manner.

2. 3. 2 The position of a sampling point is to be such that the sample of the fuel oil is representative of the fuel oil quality at its location within the system, e.g. by ensuring steady state flow past the sampling point.

Note Samples taken from sounding pipes and tank drain cocks are not considered to be representative of the tank's contents.

2. 3. 3 Sampling points are to be located so as to reduce the possibility of fuel oil coming into contact with any heated surface or electrical equipment under reasonably fore*See*able operating conditions and therefore shall be positioned as far away as possible from such surfaces or equipment. Where contact is still likely, positions are to be shielded from any heated surface or electrical equipment. The shielding shall be sturdy enough to endure leaks, splashes or spray under design pressure of the fuel oil supply line.

2. 3. 4 A sampling point or points shall be provided:

a. Taking into account different fuel oil grades being used for the fuel oil combustion machinery item;
b. Downstream of the in-use fuel oil service tank; and
c. As close to the fuel oil combustion machinery as safely feasible taking into account the type of fuel oil, flow-rate, temperature, and pressure behind the selected sampling point.

2. 3. 5 The sampling arrangements within the machinery space are to be capable of safely providing samples when the machinery is running and are to be provided with isolating valves and cocks of the self-closing type.

2. 4 Ventilation

2. 4. 1 The spaces in which the fuel oil burning appliances and the fuel oil settling and service tanks are fitted are to be well ventilated and easy to access.

2. 5 Boiler insulation and air circulation in boiler room

2. 5. 1 The boilers are to be suitably lagged. The clearance spaces between the boilers and tops of the double bottom tanks, and between the boilers and the sides of the storage tanks in which fuel oil and cargo oil is carried, are to be adequate for the free circulation of the air necessary to keep the temperature of the stored oil sufficiently below its flash point.

2. 5. 2 Where water tube boilers are installed, there is to be a space of at least 760 mm between the tank top and the underside of the pans forming the bottom of the combustion spaces.

2. 5. 3 Smoke-box doors are to be shielded and well fitting, and the uptake joints made gastight. Where the surface temperature of the uptakes may exceed 220°C, they are to be efficiently lagged to minimise the risk of fire and to prevent damage by heat. Where lagging covering the uptakes, including flanges, is oil-absorbing or may permit penetration of oil, the lagging is to be encased in sheet metal or equivalent. In locations where the Surveyor is satisfied that oil impingement could not occur, the lagging need not be encased.

2. 6 Funnel dampers

2. 6. 1 Dampers which are capable of completely closing the gas passages are not to be fitted to inner funnels of ships equipped for burning fuel oil only. In ships burning oil or coal alternatively, dampers may be retained, if they are provided with a suitable device whereby they may be securely locked in the fully open position.

2. 7 Heating arrangements

2. 7. 1 Where steam is used for heating fuel oil, cargo oil or lubricating oil, in bunkers, tanks, heaters or separators, the exhaust drains are to discharge the condensate into an observation tank in a well lighted and accessible position where it can be readily *See*n whether or not it is free from oil, *See* Pt 5, Ch 15, 6.4 Heating circuits.

2. 7. 2 Where hot water is used for heating, means are to be provided for detecting the presence of oil in the return lines from the heating coils.

2. 7. 3 Where it is proposed to use any heating medium other than steam or hot water, full particulars of the proposed arrangements are to be submitted for special consideration.

2. 7. 4 The heating pipes in contact with oil are to be of iron, steel, approved aluminium alloy or approved copper alloy, and, after being fitted on board, are to be tested by hydraulic pressure in accordance with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 12, 8.1 Hydraulic tests before installation on board.

2. 7. 5 Where electric heating elements are fitted means are to be provided to ensure that all elements are submerged at all times when electric current is flowing and that their surface temperature cannot exceed 220°C.

2. 8 Temperature indication

2. 8. 1 Tanks and heaters in which oil is heated are to be provided with suitable means for ascertaining the temperature of the oil. Where thermometers or temperature sensing devices are not fitted in blind pockets, a warning notice, in raised letters, is to be affixed adjacent to the fittings stating `Do not remove unless tank/heater is drained'.

2. 8. 2 Controls are to be fitted to limit oil temperatures in oil storage and service tanks in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 14, 2.1 Flash point 2.1.4 and in oil heaters to the maximum approved operating temperature, *See* Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems.

2. 9 Precautions against fire

2. 9. 1 Fuel oil tanks and fuel oil filters are not to be situated immediately above boilers or other highly heated surfaces, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 1, 4.6 Fire protection.

2. 9. 2 Fuel oil pipes are not to be installed above or near high temperature equipment. Fuel oil pipes should also be installed and screened or otherwise suitably protected to avoid oil spray or oil leakages onto hot surfaces, into machinery air intakes, or other sources of ignition such as electrical equipment. Pipe joints are to be kept to a minimum, and where provided are to be of a

type acceptable to ACS. Pipes are to be led in well lit and readily visible positions, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 2, 8 Piping.

2. 9. 3 Pumps, filters and heaters are to be located to avoid oil spray or oil leakages onto hot surfaces or other sources of ignition, or onto rotating machinery parts. Where necessary, shielding is to be provided and the arrangements are to allow easy access for routine maintenance.

2. 9. 4 The design of filter and strainer arrangements is to be such as to avoid the possibility of them being opened inadvertently when under pressure. This may be achieved by either mechanically preventing the pressurised filter from being opened or by providing pressure gauges which clearly indicate which filter is under pressure. In either case, suitable means for pressure release are to be provided, with drain pipes led to a safe location.

2. 9. 5 The arrangement and location of short sounding pipes to oil tanks are to be in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 13, 12.13, Short sounding pipes. For alternative sounding arrangements, *See* Pt 5, Ch 13, 12.11 Sounding arrangements.

2. 9. 6 Water service pipes and hoses are to be fitted in order that the floor plates and tank top or shell plating in way of boilers, fuel oil apparatus or deep storage tanks in the engine and boiler spaces can at any time be flushed with sea-water.

2. 9. 7 So far as is practicable, the use of wood is to be avoided in the engine rooms, boiler rooms and tunnels of ships burning fuel oil.

2. 9. 8 Drip trays are to be fitted at the furnace mouths to intercept oil escaping from the burners, and under all other fuel oil appliances which are required to be opened up frequently for cleaning or adjustment.

2. 9. 9 Oil-tight drip trays of ample size having suitable drainage arrangements are to be provided at pipes, pumps, valves and other fittings where there is a possibility of leakage. Valves should be located in well lighted and readily visible positions. Drip trays will not be required where pumps, valves and other fittings are placed in special compartments either inside or outside the machinery space with approved overall drainage arrangements or for valves which are so positioned that any leakage will drain directly into the bilges, *See* Pt 5, Ch 14, 2.9 Precautions against fire 2.9.2.

2. 9. 10 Where drainage arrangements are provided from collected leakages, they are to be led to a suitable oil drain tank not forming part of an overflow system.

2. 9. 11 Separate fuel oil tanks are to be placed in an oil-tight spill tray of ample size having drainage arrangements leading to a drain tank of suitable size, *See* Pt 5, Ch 14, 4.17, Separate fuel oil tanks.

2. 9. 12 Where level switches are used below the tank top, they are to be contained in a steel enclosure or other enclosures which provide equivalent protection against fire.

2. 10 Fuel oil contamination

2. 10. 1 The materials and/or their surface treatment used for the storage and distribution of fuel oil are to be selected such that they do not introduce contamination or modify the properties of the fuel. The use of copper or zinc compounds in fuel oil distribution and utilisation piping is not permitted except for small diameter pipes in low pressure systems, *See* Pt 5, Ch 14, 4.6 Low pressure pipes 4.6.1.

2. 10. 2 For prevention of ingress of water into fuel oil tanks via air pipes, *See* Pt 5, Ch 13, 12.5 Termination of air pipes 12.5.4.

2. 10. 3 The piping arrangements for fuel oil are to be separate and distinct from those intended for lubricating oil systems to prevent contamination of fuel oil by lubricating oil.

2. 10. 4 Piping arrangements or alternative means are to be provided to ensure that distillates (i.e. gas oils/diesel grades) are to be kept separate and distinct from residual grades, up to the service tanks required by Pt 5, Ch 14, 4.18 Fuel oil service tanks, in order to prevent cross-contamination. Cross-

connection is permitted between separate arrangements in the event of failure of a designated item of equipment.

2. 11 Tanks and cofferdams

2. 11. 1 Tanks containing fuel oil are to be separated from passenger, crew and baggage compartments by a division of all-welded steel construction capable of withstanding a head of water at least 1.5 m greater than the maximum service head or by a cofferdam.

PART

5

CHAPTER **14 Machinery Piping Systems**

SECTION **Cross-references**

For requirements regarding refrigerated cargo spaces in way of oil storage tanks, *See* Pt 6, Ch 3, 4 Refrigeration plant, pipes, valves and fittings.

PART

5

CHAPTER **14 Machinery Piping Systems**

SECTION **3 Fuel oil burning arrangements**

3. 1 Oil burning units

3. 1. 1 All oil burning equipment is to be capable of operating at defined power/rating levels where specified by the Owner/Operator. Confirmation by the manufacturer of this capability is to be provided to ACS including the specified power/rating parameters, and operating and maintenance regimes. *See also* Pt 5, Ch 1, 3.1 Availability for operation 3.1.2.

3. 1. 2 Where steam is required for the main propelling engines, or where steam or thermal oil is required for auxiliary machinery for essential services, or for heating of heavy fuel oil and is generated by burning fuel oil under pressure, there are to be not less than two oil burning units. For auxiliary boilers, a single oil burning unit may be accepted, provided that alternative means, such as an exhaust gas boiler or composite boiler, are available for supply of essential services. Where the oil burning unit is not of the monobloc type (i.e. separate register and oil supply unit), each oil burning unit is to comprise a pressure pump, suction filter, discharge filter and, when required, a heater.

3. 1. 3 In installations consisting of two or more oil burning units, the number, arrangement and capacity of such units is to be capable of supplying sufficient fuel to allow the steam to be generated or thermal oil heated, as applicable to provide essential services with any one unit out of action.

3. 1. 4 Unit pressure pumps are to be entirely separate from the feed, bilge or ballast systems.

3. 1. 5 In dual fuel oil burning systems for boilers which are primarily designed for operation with residual fuel oil grades, arrangements are to be such that atomising steam cannot be used in combination with distillate fuel oil grades where the burner arrangements have not been designed for such use.

3. 1. 6 In all dual fuel oil burning systems for boilers, the manufacturer of the combustion equipment is to ensure that the full system, including control and monitoring systems, is capable of continuous operation in all conditions for each fuel grade.

3. 1. 7 Whenever the fuel oil burning units are stopped, shut-off arrangements for fuel oil to the units are to be provided as follows:

a. If the supply fuel oil is under pressure during shut-off to oil burning units, duplicated shut-off valves in series are to be fitted. Arrangements are to be such to allow manual testing for leakage from each of the valves in the installed condition, the test arrangement is to be such to prevent inadvertent operation, and any discharges are to be led to a safe position to ensure that discharge of leakage oil does not present an ignition hazard.

b. If arrangements are such that fuel oil pressure is released through drainage during fuel oil shut-off to oil burning units, a single shut-off device may be accepted subject to approval by ACS.

3. 1. 8 When combined air and fuel/steam/air combustion systems are used for multiple boiler installations, they are to be such that single boiler operation will not be adversely affected by the operation of another boiler system at any time.

3. 1. 9 Arrangements are to be such that furnace prepurging is completed prior to any burner ignition sequence. The purge time is to be based on a minimum of 4 air changes of the combustion chamber, furnace and uptake spaces. The purge timing is to take account of the air flow rate and the sequence is not to commence until all air registers and dampers, as applicable, are fully open and the forced draft fans are operating.

3. 1. 10 The effect of multiple light-off failures is to be assessed and the need to lock out further ignition sequences established. The manufacturer's recommended procedures are to be followed before further attempts to ignite the boiler are made. These procedures are to be displayed at the ignition control positions and included in the warning notice required by Pt 5, Ch 14, 3.1 Oil burning units 3.1.11.

3. 1. 11 Means are to be provided so that, in the event of flame failure, the fuel oil supply to the burner(s) is shut-off automatically, and an alarm is given, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 18.3 Main, auxiliary and other boilers, Pt 5, Ch 14, 12.2, Thermal fluid heaters and Pt 5, Ch 14, 12.3, Incinerators, as applicable.

3. 1. 12 It is to be demonstrated to the Surveyor's satisfaction during trials that burner shut-off times due to flame failure comply with the following requirements, and details of the procedures and means used to set this time interval are to be submitted for consideration:

a. The time interval at burner start up between the burner fuel oil valve(s) being opened and then closed in the event of flame failure is to be long enough to allow a stable flame to be established and detected under normal operational circumstances, but is to be set to minimise the quantity of fuel oil delivered to the furnace and the possibility of subsequent damage as a result of unintended ignition.

b. The time interval between flame failure detection and closing of burner fuel oil valve(s) is to be long enough to prevent shutdown due to incorrect detection of a flame failure under normal operational circumstances, but is to be set to minimise the quantity of unburned fuel oil delivered to the furnace and the possibility of subsequent damage as a result of unintended ignition.

3. 1. 13 A warning notice is to be fitted in a prominent position at every oil burning unit local manual control station which specifies that burners operated with manual or local overrides in use are only to be ignited after sufficient purging of the furnace and of any additional precautions required when operating in this condition.

3. 2 Gravity feed

3. 2. 1 In systems where oil is fed to the burners by gravity, duplex filters are to be fitted in the supply pipeline to the burners and so arranged that one filter can be opened up when the other is in use.

3. 3 Starting-up unit

3. 3. 1 A starting-up fuel oil unit, including an auxiliary heater and hand pump, or other suitable starting-up device, which does not require power from shore, is to be provided.

3. 3. 2 Alternatively, where auxiliary machinery requiring compressed air or electric power is used to bring the boiler plant into operation, the arrangements for starting such machinery are to comply with Pt 5, Ch 2, 9.1 Dead ship condition starting arrangements.

3. 4 Steam connections to burners

3. 4. 1 Where burners are provided with steam purging and/or atomising connections, the arrangements are to be such that fuel oil cannot find its way into the steam system in the event of valve leakage.

3. 5 Burner arrangements

3. 5. 1 The burner arrangements are to be such that a burner cannot be withdrawn unless the fuel oil supply to that burner is shut off, and that the oil cannot be turned on unless the burner has been correctly coupled to the supply line.

3. 6 Quick-closing valve

3. 6. 1 A quick-closing master valve is to be fitted to the oil supply to each boiler manifold, suitably located so that the valve can be readily operated in an emergency, either directly or by means of remote control, having regard to the machinery arrangements and location of controls.

3. 7 Spill arrangements

3. 7. 1 Provision is to be made, by suitable non-return arrangements, to prevent oil from spill systems being returned to the burners when the oil supply to these burners has been shut off.

3. 8 Alternately-fired furnaces

3. 8. 1 For alternately-fired furnaces of boilers using exhaust gases and fuel oil, the exhaust gas inlet pipe is to be provided with an isolating device and interlocking arrangements whereby fuel oil can only be supplied to the burners when the isolating device is closed to the boiler.

3. 9 Fuel oil treatment for supply to main and auxiliary engines and gas turbines

3. 9. 1 A suitable fuel treatment plant that may include filtration, centrifuging and/or coalescing is to be provided to reduce the level of water and particulate contamination of the fuel oil to within the engine or gas turbine manufacturer's limits for inlet to the combustion system. The capacity and arrangements of the treatment plant is to be suitable for ensuring availability of treated fuel oil for the maximum continuous demand of the propulsion and electrical generating plant.

3. 9. 2 Two or more treatment systems are to be provided as part of the fuel treatment plant such that failure of one system will not render the other system(s) inoperative. Arrangements are to ensure that the failure of a treatment system will not interrupt the supply of clean fuel oil to engines or gas turbines used for propulsion and electrical generating purposes where treatment plant is installed between fuel oil service tanks and the inlet to the combustion system. Any treatment equipment in the system is to be capable of being cleaned without interrupting the flow of treated fuel to supply the combustion system.

3. 9. 3 Centrifuges used for fuel oil treatment are to be type tested for their intended usage when installed on board a ship in accordance with a standard acceptable to ACS.

3. 9. 4 Where heating of the fuel oil is required for the efficient functioning of the fuel oil treatment plant, a minimum of two heating units are to be provided. Each heating unit is to be of sufficient capacity to raise and maintain the required temperature of the fuel oil for the required delivery flow rate.

3. 9. 5 Heating units may be in circuit with separate treatment systems or provided with connections such that any heating unit can be connected to any treatment system.

3. 9. 6 Where heating of the fuel oil is required for combustion, not less than two pre-heaters are to be provided, each with sufficient capacity to raise the temperature of the fuel to provide a viscosity suitable for combustion.

3. 9. 7 Filters and/or coalescers are to be fitted in the fuel oil supply lines to each engine and gas turbine to ensure that only suitably filtered oil is fed to the combustion system. The arrangements are to be such that any unit can be cleaned without interrupting the supply of filtered oil to the combustion system.

3. 10 Booster pumps

3. 10. 1 Where an fuel oil booster pump is fitted, which is essential to the operation of the main engine, a standby pump is to be provided.

3. 10. 2 The standby pump is to be connected ready for immediate use but where two or more main engines are fitted, each with its own pump, a complete spare pump may be accepted provided that it is readily accessible and can easily be installed.

3. 11 Booster pumps when operating in emissions control areas

3. 11. 1 Ships intending to use Heavy Fuel Oil (HFO) or Marine Diesel Oil (MDO) when operating outside emissions control areas and low sulphur marine fuels having a low viscosity when operating inside emission control areas are to meet the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 14, 3.11 Booster pumps when operating in emissions control areas 3.11.2 or Pt 5, Ch 14, 3.11 Booster pumps when operating in emissions control areas 3.11.3.

3. 11. 2 The fuel oil booster pumps which are fitted in compliance with 3.10 are acceptable for use in emissions control areas where these pumps are each suitable to operate on low sulphur marine fuels at the required capacity for normal operation of propulsion machinery.

3. 11. 3 When the fuel oil booster pumps which are fitted in compliance with Pt 5, Ch 14, 3.10, Booster pumps are suitable to operate on low sulphur marine fuels but one pump alone is not capable of delivering these fuels at the required capacity, two pumps may operate in parallel to achieve the required capacity for normal operation of propulsion machinery. In this case, one additional (third) pump is to be provided. The additional pump shall, when operating in parallel with one of the pumps in Pt 5, Ch 14, 3.10, Booster pumps, be suitable for and capable of delivering these fuels at the required capacity for normal operation of the propulsion machinery.

3. 12 Fuel valve cooling pumps

3. 12. 1 Where pumps are provided for fuel valve cooling, the arrangements are to be in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 14, 3.10, Booster pumps.

3. 13 Oil-fired galleys

3. 13. 1 The fuel oil tank is to be located outside the galley and is to be fitted with approved means of filling and venting.

3. 13. 2 The fuel supply to the burners is to be controlled from a position which will always be accessible in the event of a fire occurring in the galley.

3. 13. 3 The galley is to be well ventilated.

3. 13. 4 When liquefied petroleum gas is used, bottles are to be stored on the open deck or in a well ventilated space which only opens to the open deck.

PART

5

CHAPTER **14 Machinery Piping Systems**

SECTION **4 Fuel oil pumps, pipes, fittings, tanks, etc.**

4. 1 Transfer pumps

4. 1. 1 Where a power driven pump is necessary for transferring fuel oil, a standby pump is to be provided and connected ready for use, or, alternatively, emergency connections may be made to one of the unit pumps or to another suitable power driven pump.

4. 2 Control of pumps

4. 2. 1 The power supply to all independently driven fuel oil transfer and pressure pumps is to be capable of being stopped from a position outside the space which will always be accessible in the event of fire occurring in the compartment in which they are situated, as well as from the compartment itself.

4. 3 Relief valves on pumps

4. 3. 1 All pumps which are capable of developing a pressure exceeding the design pressure of the system are to be provided with relief valves. Each relief valve is to be in closed circuit, i.e. arranged to discharge back to the suction side of the pump and to effectively limit the pump discharge pressure to the design pressure of the system.

4. 4 Pump connections

4. 4. 1 Valves or cocks are to be interposed between the pumps and the suction and discharge pipes, in order that any pump may be shut off for opening up and overhauling.

4. 5 Pipes conveying oil

4. 5. 1 Pipes conveying oil under pressure are to be of seamless steel or other approved material having flanged or welded joints, and are to be placed in sight above the platform in well lighted and readily accessible parts of the machinery spaces. The number of flanged joints is to be kept to a minimum.

4. 5. 2 Where pipes convey heated oil under pressure the flanges are to be machined, and the jointing material, which is to be impervious to oil heated to 150°C, is to be the thinnest possible, so that flanges are practically metal to metal. The scantlings of the pipes and their flanges are to be suitable for a pressure of at least 1.37 MPa or for the design pressure, whichever is the greater.

4. 5. 3 The short joining lengths of pipes to the burners from the control valves at the boiler may have cone unions, provided these are of specially robust construction.

4. 5. 4 Flexible hoses of approved material and design may be used for the burner pipes, provided that spare lengths, complete with couplings, are carried on board.

4. 5. 5 For requirements relating to flexible hoses, *See* Pt 5, Ch 12, 7 Flexible hoses.

4. 6 Low pressure pipes

4. 6. 1 Transfer, suction and other low pressure oil pipes and all pipes passing through oil storage tanks are to be made of cast iron or steel, having flanged joints suitable for a working pressure of not less than 0.69 MPa. The flanges are to be machined and the jointing material is to be impervious to oil. Where the pipes are 25 mm bore or less, they may be of seamless copper or copper alloy, except those which pass through oil storage tanks. Oil pipes within the engine and boiler spaces are to be fitted where they can be readily inspected and repaired.

4. 6. 2 For requirements regarding bilge pipes in way of double bottom tanks and deep tanks, *See* Pt 5, Ch 13, 7.9 Bilge pipes in way of double bottom tanks and Pt 5, Ch 13, 7.10 Bilge pipes in way of deep tanks.

4. 7 Valves and cocks

4. 7. 1 Valves, cocks and their pipe connections are to be so arranged that oil cannot be admitted into tanks which are not structurally suitable for the carriage of oil or into tanks which can be used for the carriage of fresh water.

4. 7. 2 All valves and cocks forming part of the fuel oil installation are to be capable of being controlled from readily accessible positions which, in the engine and boiler spaces, are to be above the working platform, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 13, 2.3, Valves − Installation and control.

4. 7. 3 Every fuel oil suction pipe from a double bottom tank is to be fitted with a valve or cock.

4. 8 Valves on deep tanks and their control arrangements

4. 8. 1 Every fuel oil suction pipe from a storage, settling and daily service tank situated above the double bottom, and every fuel oil levelling pipe within the boiler room or engine room, is to be fitted with a valve or cock secured to the tank.

4. 8. 2 The valves and cocks mentioned in Pt 5, Ch 14, 4.8 Valves on deep tanks and their control arrangements 4.8.1 are to be capable of being closed locally and from positions outside the space in which the tank is located. The remote controls are to be accessible in the event of fire occurring in the deep tank's space. Instructions for closing the valves or cocks are to be indicated at the valves and cocks and at the remote control positions.

4. 8. 3 The control for remote operation of the valve on the emergency generator fuel tank is to be in a separate location from the controls for the remote operation of other valves for tanks located in machinery spaces.

4. 8. 4 In the case of tanks of less than 500 litres capacity, consideration will be given to the omission of remote controls.

4. 8. 5 Every fuel oil suction pipe which is led into the engine and boiler spaces, from a tank situated above the double bottom outside these spaces, is to be fitted in the machinery space with a valve controlled as in Pt 5, Ch 14, 4.8 Valves on deep tanks and their control arrangements 4.8.2, except where the valve on the tank is already capable of being closed from an accessible position above the bulkhead deck.

4. 8. 6 Where the filling pipes to deep oil tanks are not connected to the tanks near the top, they are to be provided with non-return valves at the tanks or with valves or cocks fitted and controlled as in Pt 5, Ch 14, 4.8 Valves on deep tanks and their control arrangements 4.8.2.

4. 9 Water drainage from settling tanks

4. 9. 1 Settling tanks are to be provided with means for draining water from the bottom of the tanks.

4. 9. 2 If settling tanks are not provided, the fuel oil bunkers or daily service tanks are to be fitted with water drains.

4. 9. 3 Open drains for removing the water from oil tanks are to be fitted with valves or cocks of self-closing type, and suitable provision is to be made for collecting the oily discharge.

4. 10 Relief valves on oil heaters

4. 10. 1 Relief valves are to be fitted on the oil side of heaters and are to be adjusted to operate at a pressure of 0.34 MPa above that of the supply pump relief valve, *See* Pt 5, Ch 14, 4.3 Relief valves on pumps. The discharge from the relief valves is to be led to a safe position.

4. 11 Filling arrangements

4. 11. 1 Filling stations are to be isolated from other spaces and are to be efficiently drained and ventilated.

4. 11. 2 Provision is to be made against over-pressure in the filling pipelines, and any relief valve fitted for this purpose is to discharge to an overflow tank or other safe position.

4. 12 Transfer arrangements – Passenger ships

4. 12. 1 In passenger ships, provision is to be made for the transfer of fuel oil from any fuel oil storage or settling tank to any other fuel oil storage or settling tank in the event of fire or damage.

4. 13 Alternative carriage of fuel oil and water ballast

4. 13. 1 Where it is intended to carry fuel oil and water ballast in the same compartments alternatively, the valves or cocks connecting the suction pipes of these compartments with the ballast pump and those connecting them with the fuel oil transfer pump are to be so arranged that the oil may be pumped from any one compartment by the fuel oil pump at the same time as the ballast pump is being used on any other compartment. In passenger ships the arrangement will require to be specially approved.

4. 13. 2 Where settling or service tanks are fitted, each having a capacity sufficient to permit 12 hours normal service without replenishment, the above requirement may be dispensed with.

4. 13. 3 Attention is drawn to the statutory regulations issued by National Authorities in connection with the *Annex I of MARPOL 73/78Regulations for the Prevention of Pollution by Oil*

4. 14 Deep tanks for the alternative carriage of oil, water ballast or dry cargo

4. 14. 1 In the case of deep tanks which can be used for the carriage of fuel oil, cargo oil, water ballast or dry cargo, provision is to be made for blank flanging the oil and water ballast filling and suction pipes, also the steam heating coils if retained in place, when the tank is used for dry cargo, and for blank flanging the bilge suction pipes when the tanks are used for oil or water ballast.

4. 14. 2 If the deep tanks are connected to an overflow system, the arrangements are to be such that liquid or vapour from other tanks cannot enter the deep tanks when dry cargo is carried in them.

4. 15 Separation of cargo oils from fuel oil

4. 15. 1 Pipes conveying vegetable oils or similar cargo oils are not to be led through fuel oil tanks, nor are fuel oil pipes to be led through tanks containing these cargo oils. For requirements regarding provision of cofferdams between oil and water tanks, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 4.7 Separation and protection of tanks.

4. 16 Fresh water piping

4. 16. 1 Pipes in connection with compartments used for storing fresh water are to be separate and distinct from any pipes which may be used for oil or oily water, and are not to be led through tanks which contain oil, nor are oil pipes to be led through fresh water tanks.

4. 17 Separate fuel oil tanks

4. 17. 1 Where separate fuel oil tanks are permitted, their construction is to be in accordance with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 14, 4.17 Separate fuel oil tanks 4.17.2 to Pt 5, Ch 14, 4.17 Separate fuel oil tanks 4.17.6, *See also* SOLAS as amended *2.2.3 Oil fuel tanks .3.2*.

4. 17. 2 In general, the minimum thickness of the plating of service, settling and other oil tanks, where they do not form part of the structure of the ship, is to be 5 mm, but in the case of very small tanks, the minimum thickness may be 3 mm.

4. 17. 3 For rectangular steel tanks of welded construction, the plate thicknesses are to be not less than those indicated in Table 14. 4. 1: Plate thickness of separate fuel oil tanks. The stiffeners are to be of approved dimensions.

Table 14. 4. 1: Plate thickness of separate fuel oil tanks

	Head from bottom of tank to top of overflow pipe, metres				
Thickness of plate, mm	2.5	3.0	3.7	4.3	4.9
	Breadth of panel, mm				
5	585	525	—	—	—
6	725	645	590	—	—
7	860	770	700	650	—
8	1000	900	820	750	700
10	1280	1140	1040	960	900

4. 17. 4 The dimension given in Table 14. 4. 1: Plate thickness of separate fuel oil tanks for the breadth of the panel is the maximum distance allowable between continuous lines of support, which may be stiffeners, wash-plates or the boundary of the tank.

4. 17. 5 Where necessary, stiffeners are to be provided, and if the length of the stiffener exceeds twice the breadth of the panel, transverse stiffeners are also to be fitted, or, alternatively, tie bars are to be provided between stiffeners on opposite sides of the tank.

4. 17. 6 On completion, the tanks are to be tested by a head of water equal to the maximum to which the tanks may be subjected, but not less than 2.4 m above the crown of the tank. Testing is to be carried out with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 9, Sec 9

4. 17. 7 Separate fuel oil tanks may be permitted on the open deck in the cargo area of oil and chemical tankers, carrying liquid cargoes having a flashpoint not exceeding 60°C and/or toxic liquid cargoes for which toxic vapour detection is specified in column “k” of the table of *Chapter 17 Summary of minimum requirements* of the *IBC Code - International Code for the Construction and Equipment of Ships Carrying Dangerous Chemicals in BulkAmended by Resolution*

MEPC.225(64), subject to spill and fire safety considerations. Air and sounding pipes of separate fuel oil tanks are to comply with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 15, 2.5, Air and sounding pipes.

4. 18 Fuel oil service tanks

4. 18. 1 A fuel oil service tank is a fuel oil tank which contains only the required quality of fuel ready for immediate use.

4. 18. 2 Two fuel oil service tanks, for each type of fuel used on board, necessary for propulsion and generator systems, are to be provided. Each tank is to have a capacity for at least eight hours' operation, at sea, at maximum continuous rating of the propulsion plant and/or generating plant associated with that tank.

4. 18. 3 The arrangement of fuel oil service tanks is to be such that one tank can continue to supply fuel oil when the other is being cleaned or opened up for repair.

4. 18. 4 For ships of less than 500 gross tonnage, the capacity of each fuel oil service tank required by 4.18.2 may be less than for eight hours operation, where the class notation includes a service restriction.

4. 19 Arrangements for fuels with a flash point between 43°C and 60°C

4. 19. 1 Fuel oil tanks other than those in double bottom compartments shall be located outside 'Category A' machinery spaces, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 3, 4.7 Separation and protection of tanks.

4. 19. 2 Provisions are to be made for the measurement of fuel oil temperature at the pump suction pipe.

4. 19. 3 Stop valves are to be provided at the inlet and outlet side of fuel oil strainers.

4. 19. 4 Pipe joints shall be either welded or spherical type union joints.

PART

5

CHAPTER **14 Machinery Piping Systems**

SECTION **5 Steam piping systems**

5. 1 Provision for expansion

5. 1. 1 In all steam piping systems, provision is to be made for expansion and contraction to take place without unduly straining the pipes.

5. 1. 2 Where expansion pieces are used, particulars are to be submitted.

5. 1. 3 For installation requirements regarding expansion pieces, *See* Pt 5, Ch 13, 2.7, Provision for expansion.

5. 2 Drainage

5. 2. 1 The slope of the pipes and the number and position of the drain valves or cocks are to be such that water can be efficiently drained from any portion of the steam piping system when the ship is in normal trim and is either upright or has a list of up to 5°.

5. 2. 2 Arrangements are to be made for ready access to the drain valves or cocks.

5. 2. 3 For the drainage of boiler and exhaust gas economiser safety valves, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 15.2 Safety valves 15.2.8.

5. 3 Soot cleaning drains

5. 3. 1 The capacity of the drains from exhaust gas economisers/boilers is to be sufficient to remove all wash water or condensate generated by installed washing systems and arrangements are to be such that engines and turbochargers are protected from wash water or condensate drainage from the washing system.

5. 3. 2 Adequate arrangements are to be made for the collection and disposal of the waste water generated during periodic water washing of the exhaust gas economiser/boiler. Details are to be submitted for approval.

5. 4 Pipes in way of holds

5. 4. 1 In general, steam pipes are not to be led through spaces which may be used for cargo, but where it is impracticable to avoid this arrangement, plans are to be submitted for consideration. The pipes are to be efficiently secured and insulated, and well protected from mechanical damage. Pipe joints are to be as few as practicable and preferably butt welded.

5. 4. 2 If these pipes are led through shaft tunnels, pipe tunnels in way of cargo holds or through duct keels, they are to be efficiently secured and insulated.

5. 5 Reduced pressure lines

5. 5. 1 Pipelines which are situated on the low pressure side of reducing valves, and which are not designed to withstand the full pressure at the source of supply, are to be fitted with pressure gauges and with relief valves having sufficient discharge capacity to protect the piping against excessive pressure.

5. 6 Steam for fire-extinguishing in cargo holds

5. 6. 1 Where steam is used for fire-extinguishing in cargo holds provision is to be made to prevent damage to cargo by leakage of steam or by drip.

5. 6. 2 Details of the proposed precautionary measures are to be submitted.

PART

5

CHAPTER **14 Machinery Piping Systems**

SECTION **Cross-references**

For steam heating arrangements for fuel oil, cargo oil or lubricating oil, *See* Pt 5, Ch 14, 2.7 Heating arrangements.

PART

5

CHAPTER **14 Machinery Piping Systems**

SECTION **6 Boiler feed water, condensate and thermal fluid circulation systems**

6. 1 Feed water piping

6. 1. 1 Two separate means of feed are to be provided for all main and auxiliary boilers which are required for essential services. In the case of steam/steam generators, one means of feed will be accepted provided steam for essential services is available simultaneously from another source.

6. 2 Feed and circulation pumps

6. 2. 1 Two or more feed pumps are to provided of sufficient capacity to supply the boilers under full load conditions with any one pump out of action.

6. 2. 2 Feed pumps may be worked from the main engines or may be independently driven, but at least one of the pumps required in Pt 5, Ch 14, 6.2 Feed and circulation pumps 6.2.1 is to be independently driven.

6. 2. 3 In twin screw ships in which there is only one independent feed pump, each main engine is to be fitted with a feed pump. Where all the feed pumps are independently driven, the pumps are to be connected to deal with the condensate from both engines or from either engine.

6. 2. 4 Independent feed pumps required for feeding the main boilers are to be fitted with automatic regulators for controlling their output.

6. 2. 5 The arrangement of forced water/thermal fluid circulation pumps for exhaust gas economisers/boilers/ thermal heaters is to be such that where required, the flow through the exhaust gas economiser/boiler/thermal heater is to be established prior to engine start up. Where applicable, provision is to be made to allow for operation in the dry condition.

6. 2. 6 The forced circulation flow required by Pt 5, Ch 14, 6.2 Feed and circulation pumps 6.2.5 is to be maintained on completion of engine shutdown for a sufficient duration in accordance with the exhaust gas economiser/ boiler/thermal heater manufacturer's instructions. Details of arrangements are to be submitted for approval.

6. 2. 7 Where arrangements are such that exhaust gas economisers/boilers/thermal heaters require forced water /thermal fluid circulation, standby pumps are to be fitted, *See* Pt 5, Ch 4, 8.8 Unattended machinery 8.8.3.

6. 3 Harbour feed pumps

6. 3. 1 Where main-engine driven feed pumps are fitted and there is only one independent feed pump, a harbour feed pump or an injector is to be fitted to provide the second means of feed to the boilers which are in use when the main engines are not working. This requirement need not be complied with in the case of trawlers and fishing vessels.

6. 3. 2 The harbour feed pump required by Pt 5, Ch 14, 6.3 Harbour feed pumps 6.3.1 may be used for general service, provided that it is not connected to tanks containing oil, or to tanks, cofferdams and bilges which may contain oily water.

6. 3. 3 The valves on the suction pipes from the hotwell or condenser and the feed drain tank or filter are to be of the non-return type.

6. 4 Condensate pumps

6. 4. 1 Two or more extraction pumps are to be provided for dealing with the condensate from the main and auxiliary condensers, at least one of which is to be independently driven. Where one of the independent feed pumps is fitted with direct suctions from the condensers and a discharge to the feed tank, it may be accepted for this purpose.

6. 4. 2 Valves and cocks

6. 4. 3 Feed and condensate pumps are to be provided with valves or cocks, interposed between the pumps and the suction and the discharge pipes, so that any pump may be opened up for overhaul while the others continue in operation.

6. 5 Reserve feed water

6. 5. 1 All ships fitted with boilers are to be provided with storage space for reserve feed water, the structural and piping arrangements being such that this water cannot be contaminated by oil or oily water, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 4.7 Separation and protection of tanks for structural arrangements.

6. 5. 2 For main boilers, one or more evaporators, of adequate capacity, are also to be provided.

PART

5

CHAPTER **14 Machinery Piping Systems**

SECTION **Cross-references**

For feed water level regulators for water tube boilers, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 16.8 Feed check valves and water level regulators.

PART

5

CHAPTER **14 Machinery Piping Systems**

SECTION **7 Engine cooling water system**

7. 1 Main supply

7. 1. 1 Provision is to be made for an adequate supply of cooling water to the main propelling machinery and essential auxiliary engines, also to the lubricating oil and fresh water coolers and air coolers for electric propelling machinery, where these coolers are fitted. The cooling water pump(s) may be worked from the engines or be driven independently.

7. 1. 2 In the case of main steam turbine installations, a sea inlet scoop arrangement may replace the main sea-water circulating pump, subject to the conditions stated in Pt 5, Ch 14, 7.2 Standby supply 7.2.2.c.

7. 2 Standby supply

7. 2. 1 Provision is also to be made for a separate supply of cooling water from a suitable independent pump of adequate capacity.

7. 2. 2 The following arrangements are acceptable depending on the purpose for which the cooling water is intended:

a. Where only one main engine is fitted, the standby pump is to be connected ready for immediate use.

b. Where more than one main engine is fitted, each with its own pump, a complete spare pump of each type may be accepted.

c. Where a sea inlet scoop arrangement is fitted, and there is only one independent condenser circulating pump, a further pump, or a connection to the largest available pump suitable for circulation duties, is to be fitted to provide the second means of circulation when the ship is manoeuvring. The pump is to be connected ready for immediate use.

d. Where fresh water cooling is employed for main and/or auxiliary engines, a standby fresh water pump need not be fitted if there are suitable emergency connections from a salt water system.

e. Where each auxiliary is fitted with a cooling water pump, standby means of cooling need not be provided. Where, however, a group of auxiliaries is supplied with cooling water from a common system, a standby cooling water pump is to be provided for this system. This pump is to be connected ready for immediate use and may be a suitable general service pump.

7. 3 Selection of standby pumps

7. 3. 1 When selecting a pump for standby purposes, consideration is to be given to the maximum pressure which it can develop if the overboard discharge valve is partly or fully closed and, when necessary, condenser doors, water boxes, etc. are to be protected by an approved device against

inadvertent over-pressure. *See* Pt 5, Ch 3, 7.3 Hydraulic tests for the hydraulic test pressure which condensers are required to withstand.

7. 4 Relief valves on main cooling water pumps

7. 4. 1 Where cooling water pumps can develop a pressure head greater than the design pressure of the system, they are to be provided with relief valves on the pump discharge to effectively limit the pump discharge pressure to the design pressure of the system. For location of relief valves *See* Pt 5, Ch 13, 7.8 Location of fittings.

7. 5 Sea inlets

7. 5. 1 Not less than two sea inlets are to be provided for the pumps supplying the sea-water cooling system, one for the main pump and one for the standby pump. Alternatively, the sea inlets may be connected to a suction line available to main and standby pumps.

7. 5. 2 Where standby pumps are not connected ready for immediate use, *See* Pt 5, Ch 14, 7.2 Standby supply 7.2.2.b, the main pump is to be connected to both sea inlets.

7. 5. 3 Cooling water pump sea inlets are to be low inlets and one of them may be the ballast pump or general service pump sea inlet.

7. 5. 4 The auxiliary cooling water sea inlets are preferably to be located one on each side of the ship.

7. 6 Strainers

7. 6. 1 Where sea-water is used for the direct cooling of the main engines and essential auxiliary engines, the cooling water suction pipes are to be provided with strainers which can be cleaned without interruption to the cooling water supply.

PART

5

CHAPTER **14 Machinery Piping Systems**

SECTION **Cross-references**

For guidance on metal pipes for water services, *See* Pt 5, Ch 12, 11 Appendix - Guidance notes on metal pipes for water services.

PART

5

CHAPTER **14 Machinery Piping Systems**

SECTION **8 Lubricating oil systems**

8. 1 General requirements

8. 1. 1 The arrangements for storage, distribution and utilisation of lubricating oils are to comply with the requirements of this Section.

8. 2 Pumps

8. 2. 1 Where lubricating oil for the main engine(s) is circulated under pressure, a standby lubricating oil pump is to be provided where the following conditions apply:

a. The lubricating oil pump is independently driven and the total output of the main engine(s) exceeds 370 kW(500 shp).

b. One main engine with its own pump is fitted and the output of the engine exceeds 370 kW (500 shp).

c. More than one main engine each with its own lubricating oil pump is fitted and the output of each engine exceeds 370 kW (500 shp).

8. 2. 2 The standby pump is to be of sufficient capacity to maintain the supply of oil for normal conditions with any one pump out of action. The pump is to be fitted and connected ready for immediate use, except that where the conditions referred to in Pt 5, Ch 14, 8.2 Pumps 8.2.1.c apply a complete spare pump may be accepted. In all cases satisfactory lubrication of the engines is to be ensured while starting and manoeuvring.

8. 2. 3 Similar provisions to those of Pt 5, Ch 14, 8.2, Pumps 8.2.1 and Pt 5, Ch 14, 8.2 Pumps 8.2.2 are to be made where separate lubricating oil systems are employed for piston cooling, reduction gears, oil operated couplings and controllable pitch propellers, unless approved alternative arrangements are provided.

8. 2. 4 Independently driven pumps of rotary type are to be fitted with a non-return valve on the discharge side of the pump.

8. 3 Control of pumps

8. 3. 1 The power supply to all independently driven lubricating oil transfer and pressure pumps is to be capable of being stopped from a position outside the space, which will always be accessible in the event of fire occurring in the compartment in which they are situated, as well as from the compartment itself.

8. 4 Relief valves on pumps

8. 4. 1 All lubricating oil pumps which are capable of developing a pressure exceeding the design pressure of the system are to be provided with relief valves or equivalent. Each relief valve is to

be in closed circuit, i.e. arranged to discharge back to the suction side of the pump, thereby limiting the pump discharge pressure to the design pressure of the system.

8. 4. 2 Where centrifugal type lubricating oil pumps are fitted, pressure relief valves will not be required, provided that pipes, valves and fittings are suitable for the greater of the design pressure or pump non-delivery pressure.

8. 5 Emergency supply for propulsion turbines and propulsion turbo-generators

8. 5. 1 A suitable emergency supply of lubricating oil is to be arranged to come automatically into use in the event of a failure of the supply from the pump.

8. 5. 2 The emergency supply may be obtained from a gravity tank containing sufficient oil to maintain adequate lubrication for not less than six minutes, and, in the case of propulsion turbo-generators, until the unloaded turbine comes to rest from its maximum rated running speed.

8. 5. 3 Alternatively, the supply may be provided by the standby pump or by an emergency pump. These pumps are to be so arranged that their availability is not affected by a failure in the power supply.

8. 5. 4 For automatic shutdown arrangements of main turbines in the event of failure of the lubrication system, *See* Pt 5, Ch 3, 5.1 Lubricating oil failure and Pt 5, Ch 4, 8 Control, alarm and safety systems.

8. 6 Maintenance of bearing lubrication

8. 6. 1 The arrangements for lubricating bearings and for draining crankcase and other oil sumps of main and auxiliary engines, gearcases, electric generators, motors, and other running machinery are to be so designed that lubrication will remain efficient with the ship inclined under the conditions as shown in Pt 5, Ch 1, 3.7 Inclination of ship.

8. 6. 2 For details of the requirements relating to the lubrication of bearings of electric generators and motors, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.10 Inclination of ship and Pt 5, Ch 14, 8 Lubricating oil systems.

8. 7 Filters

8. 7. 1 Where the lubricating oil for main propelling engines is circulated under pressure, provision is to be made for the efficient filtration of the oil. The filters are to be capable of being cleaned without stopping the engine or reducing the supply of filtered oil to the engine. Proposals for an automatic by-pass for emergency purposes in high speed engines are to be submitted for special consideration.

8. 7. 2 In the case of propulsion turbines and their gears, arrangements are to be made for the lubricating oil to pass through magnetic strainers and fine filters. Generally, the openings in the filter elements are to be not coarser than required by the manufacturer of the turbines, especially for the supply to turbine thrust bearings.

8. 7. 3 Centrifuges used for lubricating oil treatment are to be type tested for a ship in accordance with a national or international standard acceptable to ACS.

8. 8 Filling arrangements

8. 8. 1 Filling stations are to be isolated from other spaces and are to be efficiently drained and ventilated.

8. 9 Cleanliness of pipes and fittings

8. 9. 1 Extreme care is to be taken to ensure that lubricating oil pipes and fittings, before installation, are free from scale, sand, metal particles and other foreign matter.

8. 10 Pipes conveying oil

8. 10. 1 Pipes conveying lubricating oil under pressure are to be of seamless steel or other approved material having flanged or welded joints, and are to be placed in sight above the platform in well lit and readily accessible parts of the machinery spaces. The number of flanged joints is to be kept to a minimum.

8. 10. 2 For requirements relating to flexible hoses, *See* Pt 5, Ch 12, 7 Flexible hoses.

8. 11 Lubricating oil drain tank

8. 11. 1 Where an engine lubricating oil drain tank extends to the bottom shell plating in ships that are required to be provided with a double bottom, a shut-off valve is to be fitted in the drainpipe between the engine casing and the double bottom tank. This valve is to be capable of being closed from an accessible position above the level of the lower platform.

8. 12 Lubricating oil contamination

8. 12. 1 The materials used in the storage and distribution of lubricating oil are to be selected such that they do not introduce contaminants or modify the properties of the oil. The use of cadmium or zinc in lubricating oil systems where they may normally come into contact with the oil is not permitted.

8. 12. 2 Arrangements are to be made for each forced lubrication system, renovation system, ready to use tank(s) and their associated rundown lines to drain tanks to be flushed after system installation and prior to running of machinery. The flushing arrangements are to be in accordance with the equipment manufacturer's procedures and recommendations.

8. 12. 3 For prevention of ingress of water into lubricating oil tanks via air pipes, *See* Pt 5, Ch 13, 12.5 Termination of air pipes 12.5.4.

8. 12. 4 The design and construction of engine and gear box piping arrangements are to prevent contamination of engine lubricating oil systems by leakage of cooling water or from bilge water where engines or gearboxes are partly installed below the lower platform. Where flexibility is required to accommodate movement between the engine and sump tank, any flexible joint assembly is to be of an approved type suitable for its intended application.

8. 12. 5 Where there is a permanently attached oil filling pipe and cap provided for an engine or other item of machinery, provision is to be made for the topping up oil to safely pass through a suitable strainer to prevent unwanted matter getting into the lubricating oil system. The caps are to be capable of being secured in the closed position.

8. 12. 6 Sampling points are to be provided that enable samples of lubricating oil to be taken in a safe manner. The sampling arrangements are to have the capability to provide samples when machinery is running and are to be provided with valves and cocks of the self-closing type and located in positions as far removed as possible from any heated surface or electrical equipment.

8. 13 Deep tank valves and their control arrangements

8. 13. 1 The requirements for remote operation on valves on deep tank suction pipes may be waived where the valves are closed during normal operation.

8. 13. 2 Remotely operated valves on lubricating oil deep tank suctions should not be of the quick-closing type where inadvertent use would endanger the safe operation of the main propulsion and essential auxiliary machinery.

8. 13. 3 Every lubricating oil suction pipe from a storage, settling and service tank situated above the double bottom, and every oil levelling pipe within the engine room, is to be fitted with a valve or cock secured to the tank.

8. 13. 4 Valves and cocks are to be capable of being closed locally and from positions outside the space in which the tank is located. The remote controls are to be accessible in the event of fire occurring in the deep tank's space. Instructions for closing the valves or cocks are to be indicated at the valves and cocks and at the remote control positions.

8. 13. 5 In the case of tanks of less than 500 litres, capacity, consideration will be given to the omission of remote controls.

8. 13. 6 Every lubricating oil suction pipe which is led into the engine space from a tank situated above the double bottom outside this space is to be fitted in the machinery space with a valve controlled as in Pt 5, Ch 14, 8.13 Deep tank valves and their control arrangements 8.13.4, except where the valve on the tank is already capable of being closed from an accessible position above the bulkhead deck.

8. 13. 7 Where the filling pipes to deep lubricating oil tanks are not connected to the tanks near the top, they are to be provided with non-return valves at the tanks or with valves or cocks, fitted and controlled as in Pt 5, Ch 14, 8.13 Deep tank valves and their control arrangements 8.13.4.

8. 14 Separate oil tanks

8. 14. 1 On completion, the tanks are to be tested by a head of water equal to the maximum to which the tanks may be subjected.

8. 15 Precautions against fire

8. 15. 1 Lubricating oil tanks and filters are not to be situated immediately above boilers or other highly heated surfaces.

8. 15. 2 Lubricating oil pipes are not to be installed above or near high-temperature equipment. Lubricating oil pipes should also be installed and screened or otherwise suitably protected, to avoid oil spray or oil leakages on to hot surfaces, into machinery air intakes, or other sources of ignition such as electrical equipment. Pipe joints are to be kept to a minimum and where provided are to be of a type acceptable to ACS. Pipes are to be led in well lit and readily visible positions.

8. 15. 3 Pumps, filters and heaters are to be located to avoid lubricating oil spray or leakage on to hot surfaces or other sources of ignition, or on to rotating machinery parts. Where necessary, shielding is to be provided and the arrangements are to allow easy access for routine maintenance. The design of filter and strainer arrangements is to be such as to avoid the possibility of them being opened inadvertently when under pressure. This may be achieved either by mechanically preventing the pressurised filter from being opened or by providing pressure gauges which clearly indicate which filter is under pressure. In either case, suitable means for pressure release are to be provided, with drain pipes led to a safe location.

PART

5

CHAPTER **14 Machinery Piping Systems**

SECTION **Cross-references**

For air, sounding pipes and gauge glasses, *See* Pt 5, Ch 13, 11 Ballast system.
For separation of lubricating oil tanks from fuel tanks, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 4.7 Separation and protection of tanks.

PART

5

CHAPTER **14 Machinery Piping Systems**

SECTION **9 Hydraulic systems**

9. 1 General

9. 1. 1 The requirements of this Section are applicable to flammable oils employed under pressure in power transmission, control, actuating and heating systems, and hydraulic media in systems which are providing essential services.

9. 1. 2 The arrangements for storage, distribution and utilisation of hydraulic and flammable oils employed in the systems defined in Pt 5, Ch 14, 9.1 General 9.1.1 are to comply with the requirements of this Section.

9. 2 System arrangements

9. 2. 1 Hydraulic fluids are to be suitable for the intended purpose under all operating service conditions.

9. 2. 2 Materials used for all parts of hydraulic seals are to be compatible with the working fluid at the appropriate working temperature and pressure.

9. 2. 3 Provision is to be made for hand operation of the systems in an emergency, unless an acceptable alternative is available.

9. 2. 4 Where hydraulic securing arrangements are applied, the system is to be capable of being locked in the closed position so that in the event of hydraulic system failure the securing arrangements will remain locked.

9. 2. 5 Where pilot operated non-return valves are fitted to hydraulic cylinders for locking purposes, the valves are to be connected directly to the actuating cylinder(s) without intermediate pipes or hoses.

9. 2. 6 Hydraulic circuits for securing and locking of bow, inner, stern or shell doors are to be arranged such that they are isolated from other hydraulic circuits when securing and locking devices are in the closed position. For requirements relating to hydraulic steering gear arrangements *See* Pt 5, Ch 19, 3 Construction and design.

9. 2. 7 Suitable oil collecting arrangements for leaks shall be fitted below hydraulic valves and cylinders.

9. 3 Relief valves on pumps

9. 3. 1 All pumps which are capable of developing a pressure exceeding the design pressure of the system are to be provided with relief valves. Each relief valve is to be in closed circuit, i.e. arranged to discharge back to the suction side of the pump and effectively to limit the pump discharge pressure to the design pressure of the system.

9. 4 Pipes conveying oil

9. 4. 1 Pipes conveying hydraulic oil under pressure are to be of seamless steel or other approved material having flanged or welded joints, and are to be placed in sight above the platform in well lit and readily accessible parts of the machinery spaces. The number of flanged joints is to be kept to a minimum.

9. 4. 2 For requirements relating to flexible hoses, *See* Pt 5, Ch 12, 7 Flexible hoses.

9. 5 Filling arrangements

9. 5. 1 Filling stations are to be isolated from other spaces and are to be efficiently drained and ventilated.

9. 6 Separate oil tanks

9. 6. 1 On completion, the tanks are to be tested by a head of water equal to the maximum to which the tanks may be subjected.

9. 7 Precaution against fire

9. 7. 1 Hydraulic oil tanks and filters are not to be situated immediately above boilers or other highly heated surfaces.

9. 7. 2 Hydraulic oil pipes are not to be installed above or near high-temperature equipment. Hydraulic oil pipes should also be installed and screened or otherwise suitably protected, to avoid oil spray or oil leakages on to hot surfaces, into machinery air intakes, or other sources of ignition such as electrical equipment. Pipe joints are to be kept to a minimum and where provided are to be of a type acceptable to ACS. Pipes are to be led in well lit and readily visible positions.

9. 7. 3 Pumps, filters and heaters are to be located to avoid hydraulic oil spray or leakage on to hot surfaces or other sources of ignition or on to rotating machinery parts. Where necessary, shielding is to be provided and the arrangements are to allow easy access for routine maintenance. The design of filter and strainer arrangements is to be such as to avoid the possibility of them being opened inadvertently when under pressure. This may be achieved either by mechanically preventing the pressurised filter from being opened or by providing pressure gauges which clearly indicate which filter is under pressure. In either case, suitable means for pressure release are to be provided, with drain pipes led to a safe location.

PART

5

CHAPTER **14 Machinery Piping Systems**

SECTION **10 Low pressure compressed air systems**

10. 1 General

10. 1. 1 The requirements of this Section are applicable to low pressure (LP) compressed air systems intended for essential pneumatic control and instrumentation purposes. The documentation required by Pt 5, Ch 13, 1.3 Plans and particulars 1.3.1 is to provide information to demonstrate compliance with Pt 5, Ch 14, 10.1 General 10.1.2.

10. 1. 2 Low pressure compressed air systems are to produce and distribute cooled compressed air throughout the ship to supply all pneumatic control and instrumentation systems where the air pressure requirements are typically 0.3 to 1 MPa. LP compressed air systems may include air compressors, oil/water separators, filters, dryers, distribution lines and air receivers.

10. 1. 3 The design of LP compressed air systems is to be capable of providing a continuous flow of air to meet the demands of all essential services under all ambient conditions. This demand may include the use of intermittently used equipment that is part of the ship's equipment, such as power tools for machinery maintenance, testing equipment and line cleaning. Compressed air systems used for diesel engine or gas turbine starting are to comply with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 2, 13 Air compressors and Pt 5, Ch 4, 6 Starting arrangements as applicable.

10. 1. 4 User equipment requirements for the quality of compressed air in terms of dewpoint (dryness), oil content and solid particle count are to be recognised in the selection and configuration of compressors, equipment, filters and dryers which are included in the system.

10. 1. 5 Configuration arrangements of LP compressed air systems may consist of:

a. Dedicated LP air compressors and LP air receivers with a distribution system for LP users; or
b. Supply from the starting air system to dedicated air pressure reducing valves/cross-over stations feeding into a distribution system for LP users.

10. 2 Compressors and reducing valves/stations

10. 2. 1 Where LP air is not derived from the starting air system, at least two LP air compressors are to be provided. The output of any one compressor is to match the total demand of all essential users. The system is to be arranged for auto-start of the compressors and means are to be provided to indicate if any compressor is operating longer and more frequently than the manufacturer’s recommended operating periods.

10. 2. 2 If only one LP air compressor is to be provided, a cross connection to the starting air system is to be made via a reducing valve/cross-connection station.

10. 2. 3 Where LP air is derived only from the starting air system, at least two means of supplying air to the LP air system are to be provided. Each of the two means of supplying air is to have sufficient capability of supplying the total demand on the LP air system with one of the means out of action.

10. 2. 4 Where the starting air system is fitted with an auxiliary compressor it is to be capable of continuous running and to be capable of maintaining the stored capacity of starting compressed air in the air receivers as required by Pt 5, Ch 2, 13 Air compressors and Pt 5, Ch 4, 6 Starting arrangements whilst also supplying essential LP services.

10. 2. 5 Where the starting air system is designed to maintain sufficient compressed air for LP services and engine starting arrangements, an additional auxiliary compressor will not be required.

10. 3 Air receivers

10. 3. 1 The LP air system and any associated air receivers are to be configured to provide sufficient stored energy to supply LP compressed air without the pressure in the system falling below a level that is insufficient for the operation of all essential users. *See also* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.5 Control systems, general requirements 2.5.7.

10. 3. 2 All air receivers are to comply with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 11 Other Pressure Vessels as applicable.

10. 3. 3 Stop valves on air receivers are to permit slow opening to avoid sudden pressure rises in the piping system.

10. 4 Distribution system

10. 4. 1 Drain pots with drain valves are to be provided throughout the distribution system at all low points.

10. 4. 2 Pipelines that are situated on the low pressure side of reducing valves/stations and that are not designed to withstand the full pressure of the source supply, are to be provided with pressure gauges and with relief valves having sufficient capacity to protect the piping against excessive pressure.

10. 4. 3 In-line filters capable of being cleaned/changed without interrupting the flow of filtered air are to be fitted in the system.

10. 5 Pneumatic remote control valves

10. 5. 1 Where valves, which are required by the Rules to be capable of being closed from outside a machinery space in the event of a fire, have pneumatic closing arrangements, a dedicated air receiver is to be fitted to supply compressed air to the valves. This air receiver is to be located outside the machinery space.

10. 5. 2 The air receiver is to be maintained fully charged from the main LP air system via a non-return valve located at the air receiver inlet which is to be locked in the open position.

10. 5. 3 In the case of passenger ships, a permanently attached hand-operated air compressor capable of charging the air receiver is to be provided in the space in which the air receiver is located.

10. 5. 4 The capacity of the air receiver is to be sufficient to operate all valves and any other essential supplies such as ventilation flaps without replenishment.

10. 5. 5 Where valves, which are required by the Rules to be capable of being operated in the event of a flooding, are pneumatically operated, the arrangements are to comply with Pt 5, Ch 14, 10.5 Pneumatic remote control valves 10.5.6.

10. 5. 6 A compressor is to be fitted to supply compressed air to the valves. This compressor is to be accessible and operable in the flooding condition. Where valves are required by the Rules to be operable from above the bulkhead deck, the compressor is to be located above the bulkhead deck. Consideration shall be given to alternative arrangements which are equivalent to those required by the Rules.

10. 6 Control arrangements

10. 6. 1 The control, alarm and monitoring systems are to comply with Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems.

PART

5

CHAPTER **14 Machinery Piping Systems**

SECTION **11 Multi-engined ships**

11. 1 General

11. 1. 1 This Section is applicable to ships of less than 500 gross tons and which are not required to comply with the *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea* , as amended (SOLAS 74), and that have multi-engine installations for propulsion purposes.

11. 1. 2 For vessels in which the propulsion systems are independent and the propulsion system prime movers are also fully independent of each other such that in the event of the failure of one of the sources of propulsion power the vessels will retain the capability of safely manoeuvring under all conditions of service, the following may not be required:

a. Spare fuel oil booster pump stipulated in Pt 5, Ch 14, 3.10 Booster pumps 3.10.2.

b. Spare lubricating oil pump stipulated in Pt 5, Ch 14, 8.2 Pumps 8.2.1.c, Pt 5, Ch 14, 8.2 Pumps 8.2.2 and Pt 5, Ch 14, 8.2 Pumps 8.2.3.

c. Spare cooling water pump stipulated in Pt 5, Ch 14, 7.2 Standby supply 7.2.2.b.

PART

5

CHAPTER **14 Machinery Piping Systems**

SECTION **12 Control, alarm and safety systems of machinery**

12. 1 General

12. 1. 1 Where machinery is fitted with automatic or remote controls so that under normal operating conditions it does not require any manual intervention by the operators, it is to be provided with the alarms and safety arrangements required by Pt 5, Ch 14, 12.2, Thermal fluid heaters to Pt 5, Ch 14, 12.4, Miscellaneous machinery, as appropriate. Alternative arrangements which provide equivalent safeguards will be considered.

12. 1. 2 Where machinery is arranged to start automatically or from a remote control station, interlocks are to be provided to prevent start-up under conditions which could hazard the machinery.

12. 1. 3 Where machinery specified in this Section is required to be provided with a standby pump, the standby pump is to start automatically if the discharge pressure from the working pumps falls below a predetermined value.

12. 1. 4 Where a first stage alarm together with a second stage alarm and automatic shutdown of machinery are required in the relevant Tables of this Section, the sensors and circuits utilised for the second stage alarm and automatic shutdown are to be independent of those required for the first stage alarm.

12. 2 Thermal fluid heaters

12. 2. 1 Alarms and safeguards are indicated in Pt 5, Ch 14, 12.2 Thermal fluid heaters 12.2.2 to Pt 5, Ch 14, 12.2 Thermal fluid heaters 12.2.8 and Table 14. 12. 1: Thermal fluid heaters: Alarms and safeguards.

Table 14. 12. 1: Thermal fluid heaters: Alarms and safeguards

Item	Alarm	Note
Expansion tank level*	Low	Fuel oil burners to be shut off automatically
Thermal fluid flow	Low	Fuel oil burners to be shut off automatically, *See* Note 5
Thermal fluid pressure	Low	Fuel oil burners to be shut off automatically
Thermal fluid outlet temperature*	1st stage high	—
	2nd stage high	Fuel oil burners to be shut off automatically, *See* Pt 5, Ch 14, 12.1 General 12.1.4
Combustion air pressure*	Low	Fuel oil burners to be shut off automatically in operation or not released during start-up, *See* Note 3. Purge sequence to be inhibited *See* Pt 5, Ch 14, 3.1 Oil burning units 3.1.9
Fuel oil pressure*	Low	—

Fuel oil temperature or viscosity*	High and low	Heavy oil only
Fuel oil atomising steam/air pressure	Low	—
Burner flame*	Failure	Each burner to be monitored. Fuel oil to burner to be shut off automatically, *See* Pt 5, Ch 14, 3.1 Oil burning units 3.1.11 to Pt 5, Ch 14, 3.1 Oil burning units 3.1.12 , and Note 3
Flame monitoring device(s)*	Failure	*See* Pt 5, Ch 14, 12.2 Thermal fluid heaters 12.2.6 and Note 3
Igniter power supply*	Failure	Each igniter to be checked before fuel oil is supplied to burner(s), *See* Pt 5, Ch 14, 12.2 Thermal fluid heaters 12.2.5 and Note 3
Forced draft fan*	Power failure	Fuel oil burners to be shut off automatically in operation or not released during start-up, *See* Note 3
Air register and dampers (including those in the uptake)*	Not fully open	Purge sequence to be inhibited, *See* Pt 5, Ch 14, 3.1 Oil burning units 3.1.9
Control system*	Power failure	Fuel oil burners to be shut off automatically. Control using alternative arrangement is to remain available, *See* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.5 Control systems, general requirements 2.5.7
Uptake temperature	High	To monitor for soot fires. Fuel oil to the burner is to be shut off, *See* Notes 4 and 6

Note *1.* Special consideration may be given to the requirements for oil-fired hot water heaters.

Note *2.* For heaters not supplying thermal oil for services essential for the safety or the operation of the ship at sea, only the items marked* are required.

Note *3.* These safeguards are to remain operative during automatic, manual and emergency operation.

Note *4.* Alarm and fuel oil shut-off is only required where exhaust gas economisers/boilers are fitted.

Note *5.* For exhaust gas economisers/boilers requiring thermal fluid forced circulation, the low flow alarm is to be fitted with provision to override the alarm if the exhaust gas economiser/boiler is to be operated in the dry condition. *See also* Pt 5, Ch 14, 6.2 Feed and circulation pumps 6.2.5.

Note *6.* Alternatively, details of an appropriate fire detection system are to be submitted for consideration.

12. 2. 2 The standby pumps for fuel oil and thermal fluid circulation are to start automatically when the discharge pressure from the working pump falls below a predetermined value. The standby pumps for thermal fluid circulation are to start before shut-off due to low thermal fluid pressure, *See* Table 14. 12. 1: Thermal fluid heaters: Alarms and safeguards, is activated.

12. 2. 3 The following heater services are to be fitted with automatic controls so as to maintain steady state conditions throughout the operating range of the heater:

a. Combustion system.
b. Fuel oil supply temperature or viscosity (heavy oil only).
c. Thermal fluid temperature.

12. 2. 4 Burner controls are to be arranged such that light-off is only possible at the minimum firing rate compatible with flame establishment. If ignition is set to occur at a fuel rich condition then the burner is to revert to the correct operating air/fuel ratio on establishment of a stable flame.

12. 2. 5 Arrangements are to be such that burner fuel oil valve(s) do not open:

a. prior to completion of required warm up times for residual fuel oil; or
b. when the power supply to the igniter has failed, as applicable; or

c. until a pilot flame is established, as applicable; or
d. prior to the completion of furnace purging, *See* Pt 5, Ch 14, 3.1 Oil burning units 3.1.7.

12. 2. 6 Arrangements for flame failure detection are to be provided with self-monitoring capabilities which ensure that the flame detector is not erroneously indicating the presence of a flame. In the event of failure being detected by these self-monitoring capabilities:

- an alarm is to be activated;
- In the event of loss of flame detection capability for a burner;
- fuel oil to the burner is to be shut off automatically; and
- an alarm is to be activated.

12. 2. 7 Where established as necessary by Pt 5, Ch 14, 3.1 Oil burning units 3.1.8, means are to be provided to prevent starting of the ignition sequence following multiple flame failures until completion of the identified lock-out period.

12. 2. 8 Following burner shutdown, the furnace is to be purged automatically for at least the required pre-purging time. In event of shutdown due to activation of a required safeguard, this purging is to be manually initiated.

12. 3 Incinerators

12. 3. 1 Alarms and safeguards are indicated in Pt 5, Ch 14, 12.3 Incinerators 12.3.2, Pt 5, Ch 14, 12.3 Incinerators 12.3.3 and Table 14. 12. 2: Incinerators: Alarms and safeguards.

Table 14. 12. 2: Incinerators: Alarms and safeguards

Item	Alarm	Note
Fuel oil temperature or viscosity	High and low	Heavy oil and sludge
Fuel oil pressure	Low	—
Combustion air pressure	Low	Fuel oil and/or sludge to burners to be shut off automatically
Burner flame and ignition	Failure	Fuel oil and/or sludge to burners to be shut off automatically, *See* Note
Furnace temperature	High	Fuel oil and/or sludge to burners to be shut off automatically
Furnace temperature	Low	If applicable
Exhaust temperature	High	—
Note Combustion spaces are to be purged automatically before re-ignition takes place in the event of a flame-out on all burners.		

12. 3. 2 Where arrangements are provided to introduce solid waste into the furnace, these are to be such that there is no risk of a fire hazard.

12. 3. 3 The combustion temperature is to be controlled to ensure that all liquid and solid waste is efficiently burned without exceeding predetermined temperature limits.

12. 4 Miscellaneous machinery

12. 4. 1 Alarms and safeguards are indicated in Pt 5, Ch 14, 12.4 Miscellaneous machinery 12.4.2 to Pt 5, Ch 14, 12.4 Miscellaneous machinery 12.4.6 and Table 14. 12. 3: Miscellaneous machinery: Alarms and safeguards.

Table 14. 12. 3: Miscellaneous machinery: Alarms and safeguards

Item	Alarm	Note
Exhaust gas temperature after water injection	High	*See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 8.3 Exhaust systems 8.3.6
Sterntube lubricating oil tank level	Low	—
Sterntube bearing temperature (oil lubricated)	High	—
Coolant tanks level	Low	—
Fuel oil service tanks level	High and low	Where a common overflow tank is fitted, a high level alarm in the common overflow tank may be accepted
Fuel oil service tanks temperature	High	Where heating arrangements are fitted
Fuel oil settling tanks temperature	High	Where heating arrangements are fitted
Sludge tanks level	High	—
Feed water tanks level	Low	Service tank only
Purifier water seal broken	Fault	—
Purifier oil inlet temperature	High	—
Air compressor lubricating oil	Failure	Automatic shutdown
Air compressor discharge air temperature	High	—
Hydraulic control system pressure	Low	—
Pneumatic control system pressure	Low	—
Oil heater temperature	High	—
Control environmental conditions	Abnormal	*See also* Pt 6, Ch 1, 1.4 Control, alarm and safety equipment 1.4.3

12. 4. 2 **Dual fuel systems**. Oil and gas dual-fired systems for boilers and engines are to be provided with indication to show which fuel is in use.

12. 4. 3 **Lifts**. For details of alarms and safeguards for lifts classed by ACS, reference is to be made to ACS's *Code for Lifting Appliances in a Marine Environment*.

12. 4. 4 **Oil heaters**. Fuel oil or lubricating oil heaters are to be fitted with a high temperature alarm which may be incorporated in the temperature control system. In addition to the temperature control system, an independent sensor with manual reset is to be fitted, which will automatically cut off the heating supply in the event of excessively high temperatures or loss of flow, except where the maximum temperature of the heating medium remains limited to a value below 220°C.

12. 4. 5 **Oil tank electric heating**. Fuel oil and lubricating oil tanks that are provided with electric heating elements are to be fitted with a high temperature alarm, which may be incorporated in the temperature control system, a low level alarm and an additional low level sensor to cut off the power supply at a level above that at which the heating element would be exposed.

12. 4. 6 **Fuel oil tanks**. Means are to be provided to eliminate the possibility of overflow from fuel oil service tanks into the machinery space and to safeguard against overflow of oil from fuel oil

service tanks through the air pipe. *See* Pt 5, Ch 13 Ship Piping Systems regarding the termination of air pipes.

PART

5

CHAPTER 15 Piping Systems for Oil Tankers

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General requirements**		**2484**
	1. 1	Application	2484
	1. 2	Plans and particulars	2484
	1. 3	Materials	2485
	1. 4	Design	2485
	1. 5	Hazardous zones and spaces	2485
	1. 6	Cargo pump-room	2485
	1. 7	Arrangements for fixed hydrocarbon gas detection systems in double hull and double bottom spaces of oil tankers	2486
	1. 8	Cargo pump-room ventilation	2487
	1. 9	Non-sparking fans for hazardous areas	2487
	1. 10	Slop tanks	2488
	1. 11	Steam connections to cargo tanks	2489
SECTION 2	**Piping systems for bilge, ballast, fuel oil, etc.**		**2491**
	2. 1	Pumping arrangements at ends of ship outside hazardous zones and spaces	2491
	2. 2	Cargo pump-room drainage	2491
	2. 3	Deep cofferdam drainage	2491
	2. 4	Drainage of ballast tanks and void spaces within the range of the cargo tanks	2492
	2. 5	Air and sounding pipes	2492
	2. 6	Ballast piping in pump-room double bottoms	2492
	2. 7	Fore peak ballast tank	2493
SECTION 3	**Cargo handling system**		**2494**
	3. 1	General	2494
	3. 2	Cargo pumps	2494
	3. 3	Cargo piping system	2495

3. 4 Terminal fittings at cargo loading stations 2495
3. 5 Bow or stern loading and discharge arrangements 2495
3. 6 Connections to cargo tanks 2496
3. 7 Remote control valves 2496
3. 8 Cargo handling controls 2496
SECTION 4 Cargo tank venting, purging and gas-freeing 2498
4. 1 Cargo tank venting 2498
4. 2 Cargo tank purging and/or gas-freeing 2500
4. 3 Venting, purging and gas measurement of double hull and double bottom spaces 2500
4. 4 Gas measurement 2501
SECTION 5 Cargo tank level gauging equipment 2502
5. 1 General 2502
5. 2 Restricted sounding device 2502
5. 3 Closed sounding devices 2502
SECTION 6 Cargo heating arrangements 2503
6. 1 General 2503
6. 2 Blanking arrangements 2503
6. 3 Heating medium 2503
6. 4 Heating circuits 2503
6. 5 Temperature indication 2504
SECTION 7 Inert gas systems on Tankers of 8000 tonnes DWT and above 2505
7. 1 General 2505
7. 2 Gas supply 2505
7. 3 Venting arrangements 2505
7. 4 Unattended machinery 2506
7. 5 Instrumentation and alarms 2506
7. 6 Installation and tests 2507
7. 7 Nitrogen generator systems 2507
7. 8 Nitrogen/inert gas systems fitted for purposes other than inerting required by SOLAS Reg. II-2/4.5.5.1 2509

PART

5

CHAPTER 15 Piping Systems for Oil Tankers

LIST OF TABLES

Table 15. 1. 1: Alarms and safety arrangements 2485
Table 15. 7. 1: Inert gas systems – Alarms and safeguards 2506
Table 15. 7. 2: Nitrogen generator systems – Alarms and safeguards 2507

PART

5

CHAPTER 15 Piping Systems for Oil Tankers

SECTION 1 General requirements

1. 1 Application

1. 1. 1 The requirements of this Chapter are additional to those of Pt 5, Ch 13 Ship Piping Systems and are applicable to ships which are intended for the carriage of oil in bulk.

1. 1. 2 The requirements are based on the assumption that the ships are of normal tanker type having the main propelling machinery aft. Departures from this arrangement will require special consideration.

1. 1. 3 The requirements are primarily intended for ships which are to carry flammable liquids having a flash point not exceeding 60°C (closed-cup test).

1. 1. 4 Where ships are intended to carry specific cargoes which are non-flammable or which have a flash point exceeding 60°C, the requirements will be modified, where necessary, to take account of the lesser hazards associated with the cargoes.

1. 1. 5 For list of cargoes which can be carried in oil tankers, *See* Table 9. 1. 2: Oil cargoes suitable for carriage in oil tankers, See Note 1 in Pt 4, Ch 9 Double Hull Oil Tankers.

1. 2 Plans and particulars

1. 2. 1 In addition to the plans and particulars required in Pt 5, Ch 13 Ship Piping Systems, the following plans (in a diagrammatic form) are to be submitted for consideration:

- Pumping arrangement at the fore and aft ends and drainage of cofferdams and pump-rooms.
- General arrangement of cargo piping in tanks and on deck.
- General arrangement of cargo tank vents. The plan is to indicate the type and position of the vent outlets from any superstructure, erection, air intake, etc.
- Arrangement of inert gas piping system together with details of inert gas generating plant including all control and monitoring devices.
- Piping arrangements for cargo oil (F.P. 60°C or above, closed-cup test).
- Ventilation arrangements of cargo and/or ballast pump-rooms and other enclosed spaces which contain cargo handling equipment.
- Arrangements for venting, purging and gas measurement for double hull and double bottom spaces.
- Details of alarms and safety arrangements required by Pt 5, Ch 15, 1.6,, Cargo pump-room, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2 Essential features for control, alarm, monitoring and safety systems .

1. 3 Materials

1. 3. 1 All materials used in the cargo pumping and piping systems are to be suitable for use with the intended cargoes and, where applicable, they are to comply with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 12 Piping Design Requirements.

1. 3. 2 The requirements of Pt 5, Ch 15, 1.3 Materials 1.3.1 are also applicable to other piping systems which may come into contact with cargo.

1. 4 Design

1. 4. 1 All piping, valves and fittings are to be suitable for the maximum pressure to which the system can be subjected.

1. 4. 2 Piping subject to pressure is to be of seamless or other approved type, and is to comply with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 12 Piping Design Requirements.

1. 5 Hazardous zones and spaces

1. 5. 1 Engines, or any other equipment which could constitute a possible source of ignition, are not to be situated within cargo tanks, pump-rooms, cofferdams or other spaces liable to contain petroleum or other explosive vapours, or in spaces or zones immediately adjacent to cargo oil or slop tanks. The temperature of steam, or other fluid, in pipes (or heating coils) in these spaces is not to exceed 220°C. On gas tankers and chemical tankers, the maximum temperature is not to exceed that of the required temperature class of electrical equipment in the cargo area.

1. 5. 2 For definition of hazardous zones and spaces and requirements for electrical equipment within such spaces, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.2 Hazardous areas.

1. 5. 3 For the requirements for earthing and bonding of pipework for the control of static electricity, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.13 Bonding for the control of static electricity.

1. 6 Cargo pump-room

1. 6. 1 Control engineering systems are to be in accordance with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems.

1. 6. 2 Cargo pump-rooms are to be totally enclosed and are to have no direct communication with machinery spaces. For bilge drainage arrangements in pump-room, *See* Pt 5, Ch 15, 2.2, Cargo pump-room drainage.

1. 6. 3 Pump-rooms are to be situated within, or adjacent to the cargo tank area and are to be provided with ready means of access from the open deck, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 9, 13 Access arrangements and closing appliances.

1. 6. 4 In cargo pump-rooms any drain pipes from steam or exhaust pipes from the steam cylinders of the pumps are to terminate well above the level of the bilges.

1. 6. 5 Alarms and safety arrangements are to be provided as indicated in Pt 5, Ch 15, 1.6, Cargo pump-room 1.6.6 and Table 15. 1. 1: Alarms and safety arrangements. These requirements are applicable to pump-rooms where pumps for cargo, such as cargo pumps, stripping pumps, pumps for slop tanks, pumps for COW or similar pumps are provided and not for pump-rooms intended solely for ballast transfer. *See also* Pt 5, Ch 15, 1.6 Cargo pump-room 1.6.7.

Table 15. 1. 1: Alarms and safety arrangements

Item	Alarm	Note

Temperature sensing of bulkhead shaft glands, bearings and pump casings	High *See* Note 1	Cargo, ballast and stripping pumps
Bilge level Hydrocarbon concentration	High High*See* Note 2	— > 10% LEL
Note *1.* The alarm signals shall trigger continuous visual and audible alarms in the cargo control room or the pump control station. **Note** *2.* This alarm signal shall trigger a continuous audible and visual alarm in the pump-room, cargo control room, engine control room and bridge.		

1. 6. 6 A system for continuously monitoring the concentrations of hydrocarbon gases within the cargo pump-room is to be fitted. Monitoring points are to be located in positions where potentially dangerous concentrations may be readily detected. Gas analysing units with non-safe-type measuring equipment may be located outside cargo areas (e.g. in cargo control room, navigation bridge or engine room when mounted on the forward bulkhead) provided that:

a. sampling lines do not pass through gas safe spaces, except where permitted by Pt 5, Ch 15, 1.6 Cargo pump-room 1.6.6.e;
b. the gas sampling pipes are fitted with flame arresters. Sample gas is to be led to the atmosphere with outlets arranged in a safe location, in the open atmosphere;
c. bulkhead penetrations of sample pipes between safe and dangerous areas are of an approved type. A manual isolating valve is to be fitted in each of the sampling lines at the bulkhead in the safe area;
d. the gas detection equipment including sampling piping, sampling pumps, solenoid valves and analysing units, are located in a fully enclosed steel cabinet, with a gasketed door, monitored by its own sampling point. At gas concentrations above 30 per cent LEL inside the steel cabinet, the entire gas-analysing unit is to be automatically shutdown; and
e. where the cabinet cannot be arranged on the bulkhead, sample pipes are to be of steel or other equivalent material and without detachable connections, except for the connection points for isolating valves at the bulkhead and analysing units. The sample pipes are to be led by their shortest route.

Sequential sampling is acceptable as long as it is dedicated for the pump-room only, including exhaust ducts, and the detection equipment is capable of monitoring from each sampling head location at intervals not exceeding 30 minutes.

1. 6. 7 Where items of equipment other than described in Table 15. 1. 1: Alarms and safety arrangements are located in the pump-room and are driven by shafts passing through bulkheads, the potential risk of ignition of hydrocarbon gas is to be assessed and proposals for mitigation submitted to ACS for consideration.

1. 7 Arrangements for fixed hydrocarbon gas detection systems in double hull and double bottom spaces of oil tankers

1. 7. 1 In accordance with SOLAS 1974, as amended, Ch II-2/B, Reg. 4. *5.7 Gas measurement and detection*, double hull and double bottom spaces of oil tankers with a deadweight of 20 000 tonnes and above that are not provided with a constant operative inerting system (COIS) are to be provided with a fixed hydrocarbon gas detection system.

1. 7. 2 Where a fixed hydrocarbon gas detection system is required by Pt 5, Ch 15, 1.7 Arrangements for fixed hydrocarbon gas detection systems in double hull and double bottom spaces of oil tankers 1.7.1, it is to be of an approved type and it is to meet the requirements of Chapter 16 - Fixed Hydrocarbon Gas Detection Systems of the *FSS Code - Fire Safety Systems – Resolution MSC.98(73)* .

1. 7. 3 Where a constant operative inerting systems (COIS) is provided in lieu of fixed hydrocarbon detection the arrangements are to be submitted for consideration.

1. 8 Cargo pump-room ventilation

1. 8. 1 Cargo pump-rooms and other closed spaces which contain cargo handling equipment, and to which regular access is required during cargo handling operations, are to be provided with permanent ventilation systems of the mechanical extraction type.

1. 8. 2 The ventilation system is to be capable of being operated from outside the compartment being ventilated and a notice to be fixed near the entrance stating that no person is to enter the space until the ventilation system has been in operation for at least 15 minutes.

1. 8. 3 The ventilation systems are to be capable of 20 air changes per hour, based on the gross volume of the pump-room or space.

1. 8. 4 The ventilation ducting is to be arranged to permit extraction from the vicinity of the pump-room bilges, immediately above the transverse floor plates or bottom longitudinals. An emergency intake is also to be arranged in the ducting at a height of 2 m above the pump-room lower platform and is to be provided with a damper capable of being opened or closed from the weather deck and lower platform level. An arrangement involving a specific ratio of areas of upper emergency and lower main ventilation openings, which can be shown to result in at least the required number of air changes through the lower inlets, can be accepted without the use of dampers. When the lower inlets are sealed off, owing to flooding of the bilges, then at least 75 per cent of the required number of air changes is to be obtainable through the upper inlets. Means are to be provided to ensure the free flow of gases through the lower platform to the duct intakes.

1. 8. 5 Protection screens of not more than 13 mm square mesh are to be fitted in outside openings of ventilation ducts, and ventilation intakes are to be so arranged as to minimise the possibility of recycling hazardous vapours from any ventilation discharge opening. Vent exits are to be arranged to discharge to a safe place on the open deck and comply with the requirements ofPt 5, Ch 15, 1.8 Cargo pump-room ventilation 1.8.6.

1. 8. 6 The vent exits from pump-rooms are to discharge at least 3 m above deck, and from the nearest air intakes or openings to accommodation and enclosed working spaces, and from possible sources of ignition.

1. 8. 7 The ventilation is to be interlocked to the lighting system (except emergency lighting) such that the cargo pump-room lighting may only come on when the ventilation is in operation. Failure of the ventilation system shall not cause the lighting to go out.

1. 9 Non-sparking fans for hazardous areas

1. 9. 1 The air gap between impeller and housing of the fan is to be not less than 0.1 of the impeller shaft bearing diameter or 2 mm whichever is the larger, subject also to compliance with Pt 5, Ch 15, 1.9 Non-sparking fans for hazardous areas 1.9.2.e. Generally, however, the air gap need be no more than 13 mm.

1. 9. 2 The following combinations of materials are permissible for the impeller and the housing in way of the impeller:

a. impellers and/or housings of non-metallic material, due regard being paid to the elimination of static electricity,
b. impellers and housings of non-ferrous metals,
c. impellers and housings of austenitic stainless steel,
d. impellers of aluminium alloys or magnesium alloys and a ferrous housing provided that a ring of suitable thickness of non-ferrous material is fitted in way of the impeller,
e. any combination of ferrous impellers and housings with not less than 13 mm tip clearance,

f. any combination of materials for the impeller and housing which are demonstrated as being spark-proof by appropriate rubbing tests.

1. 9. 3 The following combinations of materials for impellers and housing are not considered spark-proof and are not permitted:

a. impellers of an aluminium alloy or magnesium alloy and a ferrous housing, irrespective of tip clearance,

b. impellers of a ferrous material and housings made of an aluminium alloy, irrespective of tip clearance,

c. any combination of ferrous impeller and housing with less than 13 mm tip clearance, other than permitted by Pt 5, Ch 15, 1.9 Non-sparking fans for hazardous areas 1.9.2.c.

1. 9. 4 Electrostatic charges both in the rotating body and the casing are to be prevented by the use of antistatic materials (i.e. materials having an electrical resistance between 5 x 10^4 ohms and 10^8 ohms), or special means are to be provided to avoid dangerous electrical charges on the surface of the material.

1. 9. 5 Type tests on the complete fan are to be carried out to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

1. 9. 6 Protection screens of not more than 13 mm square mesh are to be fitted in the inlet and outlet of ventilation ducts to prevent the entry of objects into the fan housing.

1. 9. 7 The installation of the ventilation units on board is to be such as to ensure the safe bonding to the hull of the units themselves.

1. 10 Slop tanks

1. 10. 1 The requirements in Pt 5, Ch 15, 1.10 Slop tanks 1.10.2 to Pt 5, Ch 15, 1.10 Slop tanks 1.10.7 are applicable to ships intended for the carriage of ore or oil when oil residues are to be retained in the slop tanks and the ship is otherwise gas free, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 9, 11.3 Structural configuration and ship arrangement.

1. 10. 2 Slop tanks are to be provided with an approved independent venting system, *See* Pt 5, Ch 15, 4 Cargo tank venting, purging and gas-freeing.

1. 10. 3 At least two portable instruments are to be available on board for gas detection.

1. 10. 4 Means are to be provided for isolating the piping connecting the pump-room with the slop tanks. The means of isolation is to consist of a valve followed by a spectacle flange or a spool piece with appropriate blank flanges. This arrangement is to be located adjacent to the slop tanks, but where this is unreasonable or impracticable it may be located within the pump-room directly after the piping penetrates the bulkhead. A separate permanently installed pumping and piping arrangement is to be provided for discharging the contents of the slop tanks directly to the open deck for transfer to shore reception facilities when the ship is in the dry cargo mode. When this transfer system is used for slop transfer in dry cargo mode, it shall have no connection to other systems. Separation by means of removal of spool pieces may be accepted.

1. 10. 5 Adequate ventilation is to be provided for spaces surrounding slop tanks, *See also* Pt 4, Ch 9, 11.3 Structural configuration and ship arrangement.

1. 10. 6 Warning notices are to be erected at suitable points detailing precautions to be observed prior to the ship loading or unloading, or when the ship is carrying dry cargo with liquid in the slop tanks.

1. 10. 7 In order to satisfy the requirements of certain National and/or Terminal Authorities, it may be necessary to provide an inert gas system for blanketing the slop tank contents.

1. 11 Steam connections to cargo tanks

1. 11. 1 Where steaming out and/or fire-extinguishing connections are provided for cargo tanks or cargo pipe lines, they are to be fitted with valves of the screw-down non-return type. The main supply to these connections is to be fitted with a master valve placed in a readily accessible position clear of the cargo tanks.

PART

5

CHAPTER **15 Piping Systems for Oil Tankers**

SECTION **Cross-references**

See Pt 6, Ch 1, 3 Ergonomics of control stations for alarm system requirements.

PART

5

CHAPTER **15 Piping Systems for Oil Tankers**

SECTION **2 Piping systems for bilge, ballast, fuel oil, etc.**

2. 1 Pumping arrangements at ends of ship outside hazardous zones and spaces

2. 1. 1 The pumping arrangements in the machinery space and at the forward end of the ship are to comply with the requirements for general cargo ships, in so far as they are applicable, and with the special requirements detailed in this Section.

2. 1. 2 Bilge, ballast and fuel oil lines, etc. which are connected to pumps, tanks or compartments at the ends of the ship outside hazardous zones and spaces, are not to pass through cargo tanks or have any connections to cargo tanks or cargo piping. No objection will be made to these lines being led through ballast tanks or void spaces within the range of the cargo tanks.

2. 1. 3 The fuel oil bunkering system is to be entirely separate from the cargo handling system.

2. 1. 4 Where non-permanent connections are required in piping systems between non-hazardous and hazardous spaces, two means of isolation are to be provided. One of these means is to provide positive separation by means of a removable spool piece or flexible hose, and blank flanges are to be fitted. The other is to be a non-return valve, or similar, in accordance with an acceptable National or International Standard that is appropriate for the design conditions of the piping system. The non-return valve and removable piece are to be located within the existing hazardous spaces. A notice is also to be provided located in a prominent position adjacent to the means of isolation, clearly indicating that the spool piece or flexible hose is to be removed, and blanking flanges are to be fitted, when the piping is not in use. The removable spool piece is to be clearly identified (labelled/painted in a distinctive colour) and stowed close to its working position.

2. 2 Cargo pump-room drainage

2. 2. 1 Provision is to be made for the bilge drainage of the cargo pump-rooms by pump or bilge ejector suctions. The cargo pumps or cargo stripping pumps may be used for this purpose, provided that the bilge suctions are fitted with screw-down non-return valves and, in addition, an isolating valve or cock is fitted on the pump connection to the bilge chest. The pump-room bilges of small tankers may be drained by means of a hand pump having a 50 mm bore suction. Pump-room suctions are not to enter machinery spaces.

2. 3 Deep cofferdam drainage

2. 3. 1 Cofferdams, which are required to be provided at the fore and aft ends of the cargo spaces in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.2 Application and ship arrangement are to be provided with suitable drainage arrangements. Examples of acceptable arrangements are detailed in Pt 5, Ch 15, 2.3 Deep cofferdam drainage 2.3.2 and Pt 5, Ch 15, 2.3 Deep cofferdam drainage 2.3.3.

2. 3. 2 Where deep cofferdams can be filled with water ballast, a ballast pump in the main engine room may be used for emptying the after cofferdam. Where fitted, a ballast pump in a forward pump-room may be used for emptying the forward cofferdam. In each case, the suctions are to be led direct to the pump and not to a pipe system.

2. 3. 3 Where intended to be dry compartments, after cofferdams adjacent to the pump-room may be drained by a cargo pump, provided that isolating arrangements are fitted in the bilge system as required by Pt 5, Ch 15, 2.2 Cargo pump-room drainage 2.2.1; forward cofferdams may be drained by a bilge and ballast pump in a forward pump-room. Alternatively, cofferdams may be drained by bilge ejectors or, in the case of small ships, by hand pumps.

2. 3. 4 Cofferdams are not to have any direct connections to the cargo tanks or cargo lines.

2. 4 Drainage of ballast tanks and void spaces within the range of the cargo tanks

2. 4. 1 Ballast tanks and void spaces within the range of the cargo tanks are not to be connected to cargo pumps, or have any connections to the cargo system. A separate ballast/bilge pump is to be provided for dealing with the contents of these spaces. This pump is to be located in the cargo pump-room or other suitable space within the range of the cargo tanks.

2. 4. 2 Ballast pumps shall be provided with suitable arrangements to ensure efficient suction from ballast tanks.

2. 4. 3 Where submerged water ballast pumps are fitted, they are to be located in separate compartments on opposite sides of the ship such that, in the event of hull damage due to grounding or collision, the risk of total loss of ballast pumping capability is minimised.

2. 4. 4 Ballast piping is not to pass through cargo tanks and is not to be connected to cargo oil piping. Provision may, however, be made for emergency discharge of water ballast by means of a portable spool connection to a cargo oil pump and where this is arranged, a non-return valve is to be fitted in the ballast suction to the cargo oil pump.

2. 4. 5 Consideration will be given to connecting double bottom and/or wing tanks, which are in the range of the cargo tanks, to pumps in the machinery space where the tanks are completely separated from the cargo tanks by cofferdams, heating ducts or containment spaces, etc.

2. 5 Air and sounding pipes

2. 5. 1 Deep cofferdams at the fore and aft ends of the cargo spaces and other tanks or cofferdams within the range of the cargo tanks, which are not intended for cargo, are to be provided with air and sounding pipes led to the open deck. The air pipes are to be fitted with gauze diaphragms at their outlets.

2. 5. 2 The air and sounding pipes required by Pt 5, Ch 15, 2.5 Air and sounding pipes 2.5.1 are not to pass through cargo tanks.

2. 5. 3 On oil tankers of less than 5000 tonnes deadweight, where wing ballast tanks or spaces are not required, the sounding and air pipes to double bottom spaces below cargo tanks may pass through the cargo tanks. However, the pipes are to be of heavy gauge steel, and they are to be in continuous lengths or with welded joints.

2. 6 Ballast piping in pump-room double bottoms

2. 6. 1 Ballast piping is permitted to be located within the cargo pump-room double bottom provided any damage to that piping does not render the ship's ballast and cargo pumps, located in the cargo pump-room, ineffective.

2. 7 Fore peak ballast tank

2. 7. 1 The fore peak tank can be ballasted with the system serving other ballast tanks within the cargo area, provided that:

a. the fore peak tank is considered as a hazardous area;

b. the vent pipe openings are located on open deck at an appropriate distance from sources of ignition. In this respect, the hazardous zones distances are to be defined in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.2 Hazardous areas;

c. means are provided, on the open deck, to allow measurement of flammable gas concentrations within the fore peak tank by a suitable portable instrument;

d. the sounding arrangement to the fore peak tank is direct from open deck; and

e. the access to the fore peak tank is direct from open deck; alternatively, indirect access from the open deck to the fore peak tank through an enclosed space may be accepted, provided that:
i. in case the enclosed space is separated from the cargo tanks by cofferdams, the access is through a gas-tight bolted manhole located in the enclosed space and a warning sign is to be provided at the manhole, stating that the fore peak tank may only be opened after it has been proven to be gas free, or any electrical equipment which is not certified safe in the enclosed space is isolated.
ii. where the enclosed space has a common boundary with the cargo tanks and is therefore a hazardous area, the enclosed space is to be well ventilated.

PART

5

CHAPTER **15 Piping Systems for Oil Tankers**

SECTION **3 Cargo handling system**

3. 1 General

3. 1. 1 A complete system of piping and pumps is to be fitted for dealing with the cargo.

3. 1. 2 Standby means for pumping out each cargo tank are to be provided.

3. 1. 3 Where cargo tanks are provided with single deep well pumps, or submerged pumps, it will be necessary to provide alternative means for emptying the tanks in the event of the failure of a pump. Portable submersible pumps may be provided on board for this purpose, but the arrangements are to be such that a portable pump could be safely introduced into a full or part-full tank. Details of the arrangements are to be submitted.

3. 1. 4 Provision is to be made for the gas freeing of the cargo oil tanks when the cargo has been discharged, and for the ventilation and gas freeing of all compartments adjacent to cargo oil tanks. It is recommended that arrangements be provided to enable double bottom tanks situated below cargo tanks to be filled with water ballast to assist in the gas freeing of these tanks, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 15, 7.3, Venting arrangements 7.3.2.

3. 1. 5 At least two portable instruments are to be available on board for gas detection.

3. 1. 6 Cargo tank access hatches and all other openings to cargo tanks, such as ullage and tank cleaning openings and restricted sounding devices, *See* Pt 5, Ch 15, 5.2 Restricted sounding device, are to be located on the weather deck.

3. 2 Cargo pumps

3. 2. 1 Pumps for the purpose of filling or emptying the cargo oil tanks are to be used exclusively for this purpose, except as provided in Pt 5, Ch 15, 2.2 Cargo pump-room drainage 2.2.1. They are not to have any connections to compartments outside the range of cargo oil tanks.

3. 2. 2 Means are to be provided for stopping the cargo oil pumps from a position outside the pump-rooms, as well as at the pumps.

3. 2. 3 The pumps are to be provided with effective relief valves which are to be in closed circuit, i.e. discharging to the suction side of the pumps. Alternative proposals to safeguard against over-pressure on the discharge side of the pump will be specially considered.

3. 2. 4 Where cargo pumps are driven by shafting which passes through a pump-room bulkhead or deck, gastight glands are to be fitted to the shaft at the pump-room plating. The glands are to be efficiently lubricated from outside the pump-room. The seal parts of the glands are to be of materials that will not initiate sparks. The glands are to be of an approved type and are to be attached to the bulkhead in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 13, 2.4 Attachment of valves to watertight plating. Where a bellows piece is incorporated in the design, it is to be hydraulically tested to 0.34 MPa before fitting.

3. 2. 5 Where cargo pumps are driven by hydraulic motors which are located inside cargo tanks, the design is to be such that contamination of the operating medium with cargo liquid cannot take place under normal operating conditions. The arrangements are to comply with Pt 5, Ch 15, 3.7 Remote control valves 3.7.7 and Pt 5, Ch 15, 3.7 Remote control valves 3.7.8, in so far as they are applicable.

3. 3 Cargo piping system

3. 3. 1 Cargo piping and similar piping to cargo tanks are not to pass through ballast tanks.

3. 3. 2 Cargo pipes are not to pass through tanks or compartments which are outside the cargo tank area.

3. 3. 3 Means are to be provided to enable the contents of the cargo lines pumps to be drained to a cargo tank or other suitable tank. Where drain tanks are fitted in pump-rooms, they are to be of the closed type with air and sounding pipes led to the open deck.

3. 3. 4 Expansion joints of approved type or bends are to be provided, where necessary, in the cargo pipe lines.

3. 3. 5 Expansion pieces of an approved type, incorporating oil resistant rubber or other suitable material, may be accepted in cargo piping, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 13, 2.7 Provision for expansion 2.7.2.

3. 3. 6 In combination carriers where cargo wing tanks are provided, cargo oil lines below deck are to be installed inside these tanks. However, ACS may permit cargo oil lines to be placed in special ducts which are to be capable of being adequately cleaned and ventilated to the satisfaction of ACS's Surveyors. Where cargo wing tanks are not provided cargo oil lines below deck are to be placed in special ducts.

3. 3. 7 Means are to be provided for keeping deck spills away from accommodation and service areas. This may be accomplished by means of a 300 mm coaming extending from side to side. Special consideration shall be given to the arrangements associated with stern loading.

3. 4 Terminal fittings at cargo loading stations

3. 4. 1 Terminal pipes, valves and other fittings in the cargo loading and discharging lines to which shore installation hoses are directly connected, are to be of steel or approved ductile material. They are to be of robust construction and strongly supported, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 15, 1.3, Materials and Pt 5, Ch 15, 1.4 Design.

3. 4. 2 A manually operated shut-off valve is to be fitted to each shore loading/discharging connection.

3. 4. 3 Drip pans for collecting cargo residues in cargo lines and hoses are to be provided beneath pipe and hose connections in the manifold area.

3. 5 Bow or stern loading and discharge arrangements

3. 5. 1 Where a ship is arranged for bow and/or stern loading and discharge of cargo outside the cargo tank area, the pipe lines and related piping and equipment forward and/or aft of the cargo area are to have only welded joints and are to be provided with spectacle flanges or removable spool pieces, where branched off from the main line, and a blank flange at the bow and/or stern end connections, irrespective of the number and type of valves in the line.

3. 5. 2 The spaces within 4.5 m of flanged connections to, or valves or drip trays associated with, discharge manifolds are to be considered as hazardous spaces with regard to electrical or incendive equipment, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.10 Requirements for tankers intended for the carriage in bulk.

3. 6 Connections to cargo tanks

3. 6. 1 Where cargo tanks are provided with direct filling connections, the loading pipes are to be led to as low a level as practicable inside the tank.

3. 6. 2 Where cargo suction and/or filling lines are led through cargo tanks, or through other spaces situated below the weather deck, the connection to each tank is to be provided with a valve situated inside the tank, and capable of being operated from the deck. In the case of cargo tanks which are located adjacent to below-deck pump-rooms, or pipe tunnels, the deck operated valves may be located in these spaces at the bulkhead. In any case, not less than two isolating shut-off valves are to be provided in the pipe lines between the tanks and the cargo pumps.

3. 7 Remote control valves

3. 7. 1 Valves on deck and in pump-rooms which are provided with remote control, are, in general, to be arranged for local manual operation independent of the remote operating mechanism, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 13, 2.3 Valves − Installation and control 2.3.2 and Pt 5, Ch 13, 2.3 Valves − Installation and control 2.3.3.

3. 7. 2 Where the valves and their actuators are located inside the cargo tanks, two separate suctions are to be provided in each tank, or alternative means of emptying the tank, in the event of a defective actuator, are to be provided.

3. 7. 3 All actuators are to be of a type which will prevent the valves from opening inadvertently in the event of the loss of pressure in the operating medium. Indication is to be provided at the remote control station showing whether the valve is open or shut.

3. 7. 4 Materials of construction of the actuators and piping inside the cargo tanks are to be suitable for use with the intended cargo.

3. 7. 5 Compressed air is not to be used for operating actuators inside cargo tanks.

3. 7. 6 The actuator operating medium in hydraulic systems is to have a flash point of 60°C or above (closed-cup test) and is to be compatible with the intended cargoes.

3. 7. 7 The design of the actuators is to be such that contamination of the operating medium with cargo liquid cannot take place under normal operating conditions.

3. 7. 8 Where the operating medium is oil, or other fluid, the supply tank is to be located as high as practicable above the level of the top of the cargo tanks, and all actuator supply lines are to enter the cargo tanks through the highest part of the tanks. Furthermore, the supply tank is to be of the closed type with an air pipe led to a safe space on the open deck and fitted with a flameproof wire gauze diaphragm at its open end. This tank is also to be fitted with a high and low level audible and visual alarm. The requirements of this paragraph need not be complied with if the actuators and piping are located external to the cargo tanks.

3. 7. 9 It is recommended that for remote control valves not arranged for manual operation, emergency means be provided for operating the valve actuators in the event of damage to the main hydraulic circuits on deck. In the case of valves located inside cargo tanks, this could be achieved by ensuring that the supply lines to the actuators are led vertically inside the tanks from deck, and that connections, with necessary isolating valves, are provided on deck for coupling to a portable pump carried on board.

3. 8 Cargo handling controls

3. 8. 1 Electrical measuring, monitoring control and communication circuits located in hazardous spaces are to be in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.3, Selection of equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres, appropriate to the defined hazardous zone.

3. 8. 2 The handling controls and instruments are to be arranged for safe and easy operation. They may be grouped at a number of control stations or at one main control station.

3. 8. 3 A satisfactory means of communication is to be provided between cargo handling stations, open deck, the bridge and the machinery space.

3. 8. 4 The cargo handling controls and instrumentation are, so far as possible, to be separate from the propulsion and auxiliary machinery controls and instrumentation.

PART

5

CHAPTER **15 Piping Systems for Oil Tankers**

SECTION **4 Cargo tank venting, purging and gas-freeing**

4. 1 Cargo tank venting

4. 1. 1 The venting systems of cargo tanks are to be entirely distinct from the air pipes of the other compartments of the ship. The arrangements and position of openings in the cargo tank deck from which emission of flammable vapours can occur are to be such as to minimise the possibility of flammable vapours being admitted to enclosed spaces containing a source of ignition, or collecting in the vicinity of deck machinery and equipment which may constitute an ignition hazard.

4. 1. 2 The venting arrangements are to be so designed and operated as to ensure that neither pressure nor vacuum in cargo tanks exceeds design parameters and are to be such as to provide for:

a. the flow of the small volumes of vapour, air or inert gas mixtures caused by thermal variations in a cargo tank in all cases through pressure/vacuum valves; and

b. the passage of large volumes of vapour, air or inert gas mixtures during cargo loading and ballasting, or during discharging.

c. a secondary means of allowing full flow relief of vapour, air or inert gas mixtures to prevent overpressure or underpressure in the event of failure of the arrangements in Pt 5, Ch 15, 4.1 Cargo tank venting 4.1.2.b. In addition, the secondary means shall be capable of preventing overpressure or underpressure in the event of damage to, or inadvertent closing of, the means of isolation required in Pt 5, Ch 15, 4.1 Cargo tank venting 4.1.4 and Pt 5, Ch 15, 4.1 Cargo tank venting 4.1.5. Alternatively, pressure sensors may be fitted to monitor the pressure in each tank protected by the arrangement required in Pt 5, Ch 15, 4.1 Cargo tank venting 4.1.2.b, with a monitoring system in the ship's cargo control room or the position from which cargo operations are normally carried out. Such monitoring equipment is also to provide an alarm facility, which is activated by detection of overpressure or underpressure conditions within a tank.

4. 1. 3 The venting arrangements in each cargo tank may be independent or combined with other cargo tanks and may be incorporated into the inert gas piping.

4. 1. 4 Where the arrangements are combined with other cargo tanks either stop valves or other acceptable means are to be provided to isolate each cargo tank. Where stop valves are fitted, they are to be provided with locking arrangements which are to be under the control of the responsible ship's officer.

4. 1. 5 There is to be a clear visual indication of the operational status of the valves, or other acceptable means. Where tanks have been isolated, it is to be ensured that the relevant isolating valves are opened before cargo loading or ballasting or discharging of those tanks is commenced. Any isloation is to continue to permit the flow caused by thermal variations in a cargo tank in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 15, 4.1, Cargo tank venting 4.1.2.

4. 1. 6 If cargo loading and ballasting or discharging of a cargo tank or cargo tank group, which is isolated from a common venting system is intended, that cargo tank or cargo tank group is to be fitted with

a means for over-pressure or under-pressure protection as required in Pt 5, Ch 15, 4.1 Cargo tank venting 4.1.2.c.

4. 1. 7 The venting arrangements are to be connected to the top of each cargo tank and are to be self-draining to the cargo tanks under all normal conditions of trim and list of the ship. Where it may not be possible to provide self-draining lines permanent arrangements are to be provided to drain the vent lines to a cargo tank.

4. 1. 8 The venting system is to be provided with devices to prevent the passage of flame into the cargo tanks. The design, testing and locating of these devices are to comply with recognised International Standards.

4. 1. 9 Ullage openings are not to be used for pressure equalisation and they should be fitted with self-losing tightly sealing covers. Flame arrestors and screens are not permitted in these openings.

4. 1. 10 Provision is to be made to guard against liquid rising in the venting system to a height which would exceed the design head of cargo tanks. This is to be accomplished by overflow control systems, or other equivalent means, e.g. overfill alarms, together with gauging devices and cargo tank filling procedures but not spill valves which are not considered equivalent to an overflow system. The system for guarding against liquid rising to a height which would exceed the design head of cargo tanks is to be independent of the gauging devices.

4. 1. 11 Openings for pressure release required by Pt 5, Ch 15, 4.1, Cargo tank venting 4.1.2 are to:

a. have as great a height as is practicable above the cargo tank deck to obtain maximum dispersal of flammable vapours but in no case less than 2 m above the cargo tank deck, and
b. be arranged at the furthest distance practicable but not less than 5 m from the nearest air intakes and openings to enclosed spaces containing a source of ignition and from deck machinery, chain locker openings and equipment which may constitute an ignition hazard.

4. 1. 12 Pressure/vacuum valves required by Pt 5, Ch 15, 4.1, Cargo tank venting 4.1.2 may be provided with a by-pass arrangement when they are located in a vent main or masthead riser. Where such an arrangement is provided there are to be suitable indicators to show whether the by-pass is open or closed.

4. 1. 13 Vent outlets for cargo loading, discharging and ballasting required by Pt 5, Ch 15, 4.1 Cargo tank venting 4.1.2.b are to:

a. permit the free flow of vapour mixtures or alternatively, permit the throttling of the discharge of the vapour mixtures to achieve a velocity of not less than 30 m/sec;
b. be so arranged that the vapour mixture is discharged vertically upwards;
c. where the method is by free flow of vapour mixtures, be such that the outlet is not less than 6 m above the cargo tank deck or fore and aft gangway if situated within 4 m of the gangway and located not less than 10 m measured horizontally from the nearest air intakes and openings to enclosed spaces containing a source of ignition and from deck machinery, chain locker openings and equipment which may constitute an ignition hazard;
d. where the method is by high velocity discharge, be located at a height not less than 2 m above the cargo tank deck and not less than 10 m measured horizontally from the nearest air intakes and openings to enclosed spaces containing a source of ignition and from deck machinery, chain locker openings and equipment which may constitute an ignition hazard. These outlets are to be provided with high velocity devices of an approved type; and
e. be designed on the basis of the maximum designed loading rate multiplied by a factor of at least 1.25 to take account of gas evolution, in order to prevent the pressure in any cargo tank from exceeding the design pressure. The master is to be provided with information regarding the maximum permissible loading rate for each cargo tank and in the case of combined venting systems, for each group of cargo tanks.

4. 1. 14 Pressure/vacuum valves are to be set at a positive pressure of not more than 0.02 MPa above atmospheric and a negative pressure of not more than 0.007 MPa below atmospheric. Higher

positive pressures not exceeding 0.07 MPa gauge may be permitted in specially designed integral tanks.

4. 1. 15 In combination carriers the arrangements to isolate slop tanks containing oil or residues from other cargo tanks are to consist of blank flanges which will remain in position at all times when cargoes other than liquid cargoes referred to in Pt 5, Ch 15, 1.10, Slop tanks are carried.

4. 2 Cargo tank purging and/or gas-freeing

4. 2. 1 Arrangements for purging and/or gas-freeing are to be such as to minimise the hazards due to the dispersal of flammable vapours in the atmosphere and to flammable mixtures in cargo tank, thus the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 15, 4.2 Cargo tank purging and/or gas-freeing 4.2.2 to Pt 5, Ch 15, 4.2 Cargo tank purging and/or gas-freeing 4.2.4 are to be complied with, as applicable.

4. 2. 2 When the ship is provided with an inert gas system the cargo tanks are first to be purged in accordance with the provisions of Pt 5, Ch 15, 7.3, Venting arrangements 7.3.2 until the concentration of hydrocarbon vapours in the cargo tanks has been reduced to less than two per cent by volume. Thereafter gas freeing may take place at the cargo tank deck level.

4. 2. 3 When the ship is not provided with an inert gas system, the operation is to be such that the flammable vapour is initially discharged either:

a. through the vent outlets as specified in Pt 5, Ch 15, 4.1 Cargo tank venting 4.1.13, or
b. through outlets at least 2 m above the cargo tank deck level with a vertical efflux velocity of at least 30 m/sec. maintained during gas freeing operation, or
c. through outlets at least 2 m above the cargo tank deck level with a vertical efflux velocity of at least 20 m/sec. and which are protected by suitable devices to prevent the passage of flame.

4. 2. 4 When the flammable vapour concentration at the outlet has been reduced to 30 per cent of the lower flammable limit, gas-freeing may thereafter be continued at the cargo tank deck level.

4. 3 Venting, purging and gas measurement of double hull and double bottom spaces

4. 3. 1 Double hull and double bottom spaces are to be fitted with suitable connections for the supply of air.

4. 3. 2 On tankers required to be fitted with inert gas systems:

a. double hull spaces are to be fitted with suitable connections for the supply of inert gas;
b. where such spaces are connected to a permanently fitted inert gas distribution system, means are to be provided to prevent hydrocarbon gases from the cargo tanks entering the double hull spaces through the system;
c. where such spaces are not permanently connected to an inert gas distribution system, appropriate means are to be provided to allow connection to the inert gas main.

4. 3. 3 When selecting portable instruments for measuring oxygen and flammable vapour, due attention is to be given to their use in combination with the fixed gas sampling line systems referred to in Pt 5, Ch 15, 4.3 Venting, purging and gas measurement of double hull and double bottom spaces 4.3.4.

4. 3. 4 Where the atmosphere in double hull spaces cannot be reliably measured using flexible gas sampling hoses, such spaces are to be fitted with permanent gas sampling lines. The configuration of such line systems is to be adopted to the design of such spaces.

4. 3. 5 The materials of construction and the dimensions of gas sampling lines are to be such as to prevent restriction. Where plastics materials are used, they are to be electrically conductive.

4. 4 Gas measurement

4. 4. 1 All tankers are to be equipped with at least two portable instruments for measuring per cent LEL of hydrocarbon concentrations in air.

4. 4. 2 All tankers are to be equipped with at least two portable oxygen analysers.

4. 4. 3 For tankers fitted with an inert gas system two portable gas detectors capable of measuring flammable vapour concentrations in inerted atmospheres are to be provided.

4. 4. 4 Suitable means are to be provided for the calibration of gas measurement instruments.

PART

5

CHAPTER 15 Piping Systems for Oil Tankers

SECTION 5 Cargo tank level gauging equipment

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 Each cargo tank is to be fitted with suitable means for ascertaining the liquid level in the tank in accordance with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 15, 5.2 Restricted sounding device and Pt 5, Ch 15, 5.3 Closed sounding devices.

5. 2 Restricted sounding device

5. 2. 1 Sounding pipes or other approved devices, which may permit a limited amount of vapour to escape to atmosphere when being used, would be accepted for those tanks which are not required to be fitted with closed sounding devices, *See* Pt 5, Ch 15, 5.3 Closed sounding devices. The devices are to be so designed as to minimise the sudden release of vapour or liquid under pressure and the possibility of liquid spillage on deck. Means are also to be provided for relieving tank pressure before the device is operated.

5. 2. 2 Separate ullage openings may be fitted as a reserve means for sounding cargo tanks.

5. 2. 3 Arrangements which permit the escape of vapour to the atmosphere are not to be fitted in enclosed spaces.

5. 3 Closed sounding devices

5. 3. 1 In all tankers fitted with a fixed inert gas system, the cargo tanks are to be fitted with closed sounding devices of an approved type, which do not permit the escape of cargo to the atmosphere when being used.

5. 3. 2 Proposals to use indirect sounding or measuring devices which do not penetrate the tank plating will be specially considered.

PART

5

CHAPTER **15 Piping Systems for Oil Tankers**

SECTION **6 Cargo heating arrangements**

6. 1 General

6. 1. 1 Where heating systems are provided for the cargo tanks, the arrangements are to comply with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 15, 6.2 Blanking arrangements to Pt 5, Ch 15, 6.5 Temperature indication.

6. 2 Blanking arrangements

6. 2. 1 Spectacle flanges of spool pieces are to be provided in the heating medium supply and return pipes to the cargo heating system, at a suitable position within the cargo area, so that lines can be blanked off in circumstances where the cargo does not require to be heated or where the heating coils have been removed from the tanks. Alternatively, blanking arrangements may be provided for each tank heating circuit.

6. 3 Heating medium

6. 3. 1 Where a combustible liquid is used as the heating medium it is to have a flash point of 60°C or above (closed-cup test).

6. 3. 2 In general, the temperature of the heating medium is not to exceed 220°C, *See* Pt 5, Ch 15, 1.5 Hazardous zones and spaces.

6. 4 Heating circuits

6. 4. 1 The heating medium supply and return lines are not to penetrate the cargo tank plating, other than at the top of the tank, and the main supply lines are to be run above the weather deck.

6. 4. 2 Isolating shut-off valves or cocks are to be provided at the inlet and outlet connections to the heating circuit(s) of each tank, and means are to be provided for regulating the flow.

6. 4. 3 Where steam or water is employed in the heating circuits, the returns are to be led to an observation tank which is to be in a well ventilated and well lighted part of the machinery space remote from the boilers.

6. 4. 4 Where a thermal oil is employed in the heating circuits, the arrangements will be specially considered but, in any case, they are to be such that contamination of the thermal oil with cargo liquid cannot take place under normal operating conditions. In general, the arrangements are, at least, to comply with Pt 5, Ch 15, 3.7 Remote control valves 3.7.8, in so far as they are applicable.

6. 4. 5 In any heating system, a higher pressure is to be maintained within the heating circuit than the maximum pressure head which can be exerted by the contents of the cargo tank on the circuit. Alternatively, when the heating circuit is not in use, it may be drained and blanked.

6. 5 Temperature indication

6. 5. 1 Means are to be provided for measuring the cargo temperature. Where overheating could result in a dangerous condition, an alarm system which monitors the cargo temperature is to be provided.

PART

5

CHAPTER **15 Piping Systems for Oil Tankers**

SECTION **7 Inert gas systems on Tankers of 8000 tonnes DWT and above**

7. 1 General

7. 1. 1 An inert gas system complying with the applicable requirements of Chapter 15 - Inert Gas Systems of the *FSS Code - Fire Safety Systems – Resolution MSC.98(73)* as amended by *Resolution MSC.367(93) – Amendments to the International Code for Fire Safety Systems (FSS Code) – (Adopted on 22 May 2014)* , is to be fitted on tankers of 8000 tonnes DWT and above. For purposes of classification any use of the word ”Administration” in the Regulation is to be taken as meaning ACS. *See* Pt 5, Ch 15, 7.7, Nitrogen generator systems for additional requirements for inert gas systems utilising nitrogen.

7. 1. 2 Ships complying with these requirements will be eligible for the additional notation **IGS** in the *Register Book*, *See* Pt 1, Ch 2 Classification Regulations.

7. 1. 3 Throughout this Section the term `cargo tank' includes also `slop tanks'. For definition of Machinery spaces of Category `A', *See SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea Chapter II-2 - Construction - Fire protection, fire detection and fire extinction/ Part A - General*.

7. 2 Gas supply

7. 2. 1 The inert gas may be treated flue gas from the main or auxiliary boiler(s) gas turbine(s), or from a separate inert gas generator. In all cases, automatic combustion control, capable of producing suitable inert gas under all service conditions, is to be fitted.

7. 3 Venting arrangements

7. 3. 1 The arrangements for the venting of all vapours displaced from the cargo tanks during loading and ballasting are to comply with Pt 5, Ch 15, 4 Cargo tank venting, purging and gas-freeing and are to consist of either one or more mast risers, or a number of high velocity vents. The inert gas supply mains may be used for such venting.

7. 3. 2 The arrangements for inerting, purging or gas freeing of empty tanks as required in by 2.2.1.2.1 to .3 of Chapter 15 - Inert Gas Systemsof the *FSS Code - Fire Safety Systems – Resolution MSC.98(73)*, as amended by *Resolution MSC.367(93) – Amendments to the International Code for Fire Safety Systems (FSS Code) – (Adopted on 22 May 2014)* are to be such that the accumulation of hydrocarbon vapours in pockets formed by the internal structural members in a tank is minimised and that:

a. on individual cargo tanks the gas outlet pipe, if fitted, is to be positioned as far as practicable from the inert gas/air inlet and in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 15, 4 Cargo tank venting, purging

and gas-freeing. The inlet of such outlet pipes may be located either at deck level or at not more than 1 m above the bottom of the tank;

b. the cross-sectional area of such gas outlet pipes referred to in Pt 5, Ch 15, 7.3, Venting arrangements 7.3.2 is to be such that an exit velocity of at least 20 m/s can be maintained when any three tanks are being simultaneously supplied with inert gas. Their outlets are to extend not less than 2 m above deck level;

c. each gas outlet referred to in Pt 5, Ch 15, 7.3 Venting arrangements 7.3.2.b is to be fitted with suitable blanking arrangements;

7. 3. 3 One or more pressure-vacuum breaking devices are to be provided to prevent the cargo tanks from being subject to:

a. a positive pressure in excess of the test pressure of the cargo tank if the cargo were to be loaded at the maximum rated capacity and all other outlets were left shut; and

b. a negative pressure in excess of 700 mm water gauge if cargo were to be discharged at the maximum rated capacity of the cargo pumps and the inert gas blowers were to fail.

Such devices shall be installed on the inert gas main unless they are installed in the venting system required by Pt 5, Ch 15, 4 Cargo tank venting, purging and gas-freeing or on individual cargo tanks.

7. 3. 4 The location and design of the devices referred to in Pt 5, Ch 15, 7.3 Venting arrangements 7.3.3 are to be in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 15, 4 Cargo tank venting, purging and gas-freeing.

7. 4 Unattended machinery

7. 4. 1 Where inert gas generators are fitted with automatic or remote controls so that under normal operating conditions they do not require any manual intervention by the operators, they are to be provided with the alarms and safety arrangements required by Pt 5, Ch 15, 7.4 Unattended machinery 7.4.2, Pt 5, Ch 15, 7.4 Unattended machinery 7.4.3, Pt 5, Ch 15, 7.5 Instrumentation and alarms and Pt 5, Ch 15, 7.7, Nitrogen generator systems, as appropriate. Alternative arrangements which provide equivalent safeguards will be considered.

7. 4. 2 Where machinery is arranged to start automatically or from a remote control station, interlocks are to be provided to prevent start-up under conditions which could hazard the machinery.

7. 4. 3 Where machinery specified in Pt 5, Ch 15, 7.4 Unattended machinery 7.4.1 and Pt 5, Ch 15, 7.4 Unattended machinery 7.4.2 is required to be provided with a standby pump, the standby pump is to start automatically if the discharge pressure from the working pumps falls below a predetermined value.

7. 5 Instrumentation and alarms

7. 5. 1 Alarms and safeguards are to be provided in accordance with *2.2.4 Indicators and alarms* and *2.3.2 Indicators and alarms* of the *FSS Code - Fire Safety Systems – Resolution MSC.98(73)* as amended by *Resolution MSC.365(93) – Amendments to the International Convention For the Safety of Life at Sea, 1974, as amended – (Adopted on 22 May 2014)* and Table 15. 7. 1: Inert gas systems – Alarms and safeguards.

Table 15. 7. 1: Inert gas systems – Alarms and safeguards

Item	Alarm	Note
Combustion air pressure to oil burner	Low	1
Fuel oil pressure	Low	-
Fuel oil temperature or viscosity	High and Low	3

Burner flame and ignition	Failure	1.2
Cooling water temperature	High	-
Automatic control system power supply	Failure	-

Note *1* Combustion spaces are to be purged automatically before re-ignition takes place in the event of a flame out on all burners.

Note *2* Fuel oil to burner to be shut off automatically.

Note *3* Heavy oil only.

Note *4* Additional alerts and shutdowns may be necessary as determined through risk-mitigating activities in response to the completed Risk-Based Analysis (e.g. FMECA) for the inert gas generator.

7. 5. 2 Inert gas generators are to be fitted with an automatic combustion control system so as to maintain steady state conditions throughout the operating range of the generator.

7. 5. 3 *See also* Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems for requirements for control, alarm and safety systems.

7. 6 Installation and tests

7. 6. 1 The inert gas system, including alarms and safety devices, is to be installed on board and tested under working conditions to the satisfaction of the Surveyors.

7. 7 Nitrogen generator systems

7. 7. 1 The following requirements apply where a nitrogen generator system is fitted on board Tankers of 8000 tonnes DWT and above. For the purpose, the inert gas is to be produced by separating air into its component gases by passing compressed air through a bundle of hollow fibres, semi-permeable membranes or adsorber materials.

7. 7. 2 Alarms and safeguards are to be provided in accordance with *2.2.4 Indicators and alarms* and *2.3.2 Indicators and alarms* of the *FSS Code - Fire Safety Systems – Resolution MSC.98(73)* as amended by *Resolution MSC.365(93) – Amendments to the International Convention For the Safety of Life at Sea, 1974, as amended – (Adopted on 22 May 2014)* and Table 15. 7. 2: Nitrogen generator systems – Alarms and safeguards.

Table 15. 7. 2: Nitrogen generator systems – Alarms and safeguards

Item	Alarm	Note
Oxygen content	High	1, 2, 3
Power supply to oxygen content monitoring instrumentation downstream of Nitrogen generator	Failure	1

Note *1* To be fitted in the machinery space and cargo control room, where provided.

Note *2* Oxygen content not to exceed 5% with automatic discharge to atmosphere where this is exceeded, *See* Pt 5, Ch 15, 7.7 Nitrogen generator systems 7.7.5.

Note *3* Automatic shutdown of inert gas generating system.

Note *4* The Table contains the minimum list of alerts and shutdowns for an inert gas generator and is in addition to *2.2.4 Indicators and alarms* and *2.4.2 Indicators and alarms* of the *FSS Code - Fire Safety Systems – Resolution MSC.98(73)* as amended by *Resolution MSC.365(93) – Amendments to the International Convention For the Safety of Life at Sea, 1974, as amended – (Adopted on 22 May 2014)*; additional alerts and shutdowns may be necessary as determined through risk-mitigating activities in response to the completed Risk-Based Analysis (e.g. FMECA) for the inert gas generator.

7. 7. 3 In addition to the applicable requirements of Chapter 15 - Inert Gas Systems, as amended by *Resolution MSC.367(93) – Amendments to the International Code for Fire Safety Systems (FSS Code) – (Adopted on 22 May 2014)* , the nitrogen generator system is to comply with *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at SeaChapter II-2 - Construction - Fire protection, fire detection and fire extinction/ 5.3 Cargo tank venting*, *5.6 Inerting, purging and gas-freeing* and *6 Protection of cargo tank structure against pressure or vaccuum in tankers*.

7. 7. 4 A nitrogen generator consisting of a feed air treatment system and any number of membrane or adsorber modules in parallel is to be capable of delivering nitrogen to the cargo tanks at the rate required by paragraph 2.2.1.2.4 of Chapter 15 - Inert Gas Systems of the *FSS Code - Fire Safety Systems – Resolution MSC.98(73)* as amended by *Resolution MSC.367(93) – Amendments to the International Code for Fire Safety Systems (FSS Code) – (Adopted on 22 May 2014)* .

7. 7. 5 The nitrogen generator is to be capable of delivering high purity nitrogen with an oxygen content in accordance with paragraph 2.2.1.2.5 of Chapter 15 - Inert Gas Systems of the *FSS Code - Fire Safety Systems – Resolution MSC.98(73)*, as amended by *Resolution MSC.367(93) – Amendments to the International Code for Fire Safety Systems (FSS Code) – (Adopted on 22 May 2014)* . In addition to meeting the venting requirements of paragraph 2.2.2.4 of Chapter 15 - Inert Gas Systems of the *FSS Code - Fire Safety Systems – Resolution MSC.98(73)*, as amended by *Resolution MSC.367(93) – Amendments to the International Code for Fire Safety Systems (FSS Code) – (Adopted on 22 May 2014)* , the system is to be fitted with automatic means to discharge "off-spec" gas to the atmosphere during start-up and abnormal operation.

7. 7. 6 The system is to be provided with one or more compressors to generate enough positive pressure to be capable of delivering the total volume of gas required by 2.2.1.2 of the *FSS Code - Fire Safety Systems – Resolution MSC.98(73)*, as amended by *Resolution MSC.367(93) – Amendments to the International Code for Fire Safety Systems (FSS Code) – (Adopted on 22 May 2014)* . Where two compressors are provided, the total required capacity of the system is preferably to be divided equally between the two compressors, and in no case is one compressor to have a capacity less than 1/3 of the total capacity required.

7. 7. 7 Where the nitrogen system includes a nitrogen storage tank which has sufficient capacity to deliver the total volume of gas required by 2.2.1.2 of the *FSS Code - Fire Safety Systems – Resolution MSC.98(73)*, as amended by *Resolution MSC.367(93) – Amendments to the International Code for Fire Safety Systems (FSS Code) – (Adopted on 22 May 2014)* , in the event of failure of a compressor a single compressor may be accepted provided that sufficient spares are carried on board to enable the failure to be rectified by the ship's crew. The list of spare parts required is to be supplied by the manufacturer and supported by a reliability analysis of the specific system submitted to and verified by ACS. The size of the nitrogen storage tank is to be specified.

7. 7. 8 The feed air treatment system fitted to remove free water, particles and traces of oil from the compressed air as required by 2.4.1.2 of Chapter 15 - Inert Gas Systems of the *FSS Code - Fire Safety Systems – Resolution MSC.98(73)* , as amended by *Resolution MSC.367(93) – Amendments to the International Code for Fire Safety Systems (FSS Code) – (Adopted on 22 May 2014)* , is also to maintain the specification temperature.

7. 7. 9 The oxygen-enriched air from the nitrogen generator and the nitrogen-product enriched gas from the protective devices of the nitrogen receiver are to be arranged to discharge to a safe location on the open deck. This safe location needs to address the two types of discharges separately.

For oxygen-enriched air from the nitrogen generator, safe locations on the open deck are:

- outside of hazardous areas as defined by Pt 6, Ch 2, 13.5 Discharge lighting;
- not within 3 m of areas traversed by personnel;
- not within 6 m of air intakes for machinery and all ventilation inlets.

For nitrogen-product enriched gas from the protective devices of the nitrogen receiver, safe locations on the open deck are:

- not within 3 m of areas traversed by personnel;
- not within 6 m of air intakes for machinery and all ventilation inlets/outlets.

7. 7. 10 In order to permit maintenance, means of isolation are to be fitted between the generator and the receiver.

7. 8 Nitrogen/inert gas systems fitted for purposes other than inerting required by SOLAS Reg. II-2/4.5.5.1

7. 8. 1 This section applies to systems fitted on oil tankers to which *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea Chapter II-2 - Construction - Fire protection, fire detection and fire extinction*/4.5.5.1 does not apply.

7. 8. 2 The requirements given in Chapter 15 - Inert Gas Systems, 2.2.2, 2.2.4, 2.4.1 and 2.4.2 of the *FSS Code - Fire Safety Systems – Resolution MSC.98(73)*, as amended by *Resolution MSC.367(93) – Amendments to the International Code for Fire Safety Systems (FSS Code) – (Adopted on 22 May 2014)* , apply to the systems as applicable.

7. 8. 3 The requirements of Pt 5, Ch 15, 7.7, Nitrogen generator systems apply except Pt 5, Ch 15, 7.7 Nitrogen generator systems 7.7.1, Pt 5, Ch 15, 7.7 Nitrogen generator systems 7.7.3, Pt 5, Ch 15, 7.7 Nitrogen generator systems 7.7.4, Pt 5, Ch 15, 7.7 Nitrogen generator systems 7.7.6 and Pt 5, Ch 15, 7.7 Nitrogen generator systems 7.7.7.

7. 8. 4 Materials used in inert gas systems are to be suitable for their intended purpose in accordance with the ACS Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials.

7. 8. 5 All the equipment is to be installed on board and tested under working conditions to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

7. 8. 6 The two non-return devices as required by paragraph 2.2.3.1.1 of Chapter 15 - Inert Gas Systems of the *FSS Code - Fire Safety Systems – Resolution MSC.98(73)* , as amended by *Resolution MSC.367(93) – Amendments to the International Code for Fire Safety Systems (FSS Code) – (Adopted on 22 May 2014)* are to be fitted in the inert gas main. The non-return devices are to comply with 2.2.3.1.2 and 2.2.3.1.3 of Chapter 15 - Inert Gas Systems of the *FSS Code - Fire Safety Systems – Resolution MSC.98(73)*, as amended by *Resolution MSC.367(93) – Amendments to the International Code for Fire Safety Systems (FSS Code) – (Adopted on 22 May 2014)* ; however, where the connections to the cargo tanks, to the hold spaces or to cargo piping are not permanent, the non-return devices required by paragraph 2.2.3.1.1 of Chapter 15 - Inert Gas Systems of the *FSS Code - Fire Safety Systems – Resolution MSC.98(73)*, as amended by *Resolution MSC.367(93) – Amendments to the International Code for Fire Safety Systems (FSS Code) – (Adopted on 22 May 2014)* , may be substituted by two non-return valves.

PART

5

CHAPTER **15 Piping Systems for Oil Tankers**

SECTION **Cross-references**

For vapour detection, *See also* the *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquid Chemicals in Bulk*.

PART

5

CHAPTER **16 Water Jet Systems**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General requirements**		**2514**
	1. 1	General	2514
SECTION 2	**General requirements**		**2515**
	2. 1	Water jet arrangement	2515
	2. 2	Plans to be submitted	2515
	2. 3	Calculations and information	2516
	2. 4	Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA)	2518
SECTION 3	**Design requirements**		**2519**
	3. 1	General	2519
	3. 2	Shaftline	2519
	3. 3	Shaft support system and guide vanes	2520
	3. 4	Impeller	2520
	3. 5	Stator	2521
	3. 6	Tunnel and securing arrangements	2521
	3. 7	Nozzle/steering arrangements	2522
	3. 8	Bolts	2523
SECTION 4	**Piping systems**		**2524**
	4. 1	General	2524
SECTION 5	**Control and monitoring**		**2525**
	5. 1	General	2525
	5. 2	Monitoring and alarms	2525
SECTION 6	**Electrical systems**		**2526**
	6. 1	Installation and distribution arrangements	2526
SECTION 7	**Inspection, testing and fitting of water jets**		**2527**
	7. 1	General	2527
	7. 2	Shop tests and installation of water jet systems	2527

7. 3 Sea trial requirement 2528
SECTION 8 Installation, maintenance and replacement 2529
8. 1 General 2529

5

CHAPTER **16 Water Jet Systems**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 16. 5. 1: Alarms 2525

PART

5

CHAPTER **16 Water Jet Systems**

SECTION **1 General requirements**

1. 1 General

1. 1. 1 For the purposes of these Rules, a water jet propulsion unit is described as a machine which takes in water, by means of a suitable inlet and conduit and accelerates the mass of water using an impeller and nozzle to form a jet propulsion system. The water jet system comprises the unit and its associated actuation and control devices. The detail of the prime mover is excluded but not its effect on the water jet system.

1. 1. 2 This Chapter defines the requirements for the design and service life of marine water jet propulsion systems and is to be read in conjunction with the General Requirements for the Design and Construction of Machinery in Pt 5, Ch 1 General Requirements for the Design and Construction of Machinery.

1. 1. 3 The requirements for a fixed or steerable water jet propulsion system rated at 500 kW and above, which is integral with the ship's hull structure and forms a means of main propulsion, are detailed in this Chapter. This includes support arrangements, controls and the systems necessary to maintain operation and functionality of the water jet unit.

1. 1. 4 These requirements relate to water jets driven by axial or mixed flow pumps. Where units driven by radial flow pumps or inducers are proposed, details are to be submitted for consideration.

PART

5

CHAPTER **16 Water Jet Systems**

SECTION **2 General requirements**

2. 1 Water jet arrangement

2. 1. 1 In general, for a ship to be assigned an unrestricted service notation, a minimum of two water jet systems are to be provided where these form the sole means of propulsion. For ships where a single water jet system is the sole means of propulsion or steering, a detailed engineering and safety justification is to be evaluated by ACS, *See* Pt 5, Ch 16, 2.3 Calculations and information 2.3.22. This evaluation process will include a risk assessment analysis using a recognised technique to verify that sufficient levels of redundancy and monitoring are incorporated in the water jet unit's essential support systems and operating equipment.

2. 1. 2 water jet propulsion units are to be capable of continuous operation between their maximum and minimum output power rating at specified operating conditions, *See* Pt 5, Ch 1, 3 Operating conditions and within the operational service profiles defined by Pt 5, Ch 16, 2.3 Calculations and information 2.3.11 and Pt 5, Ch 16, 2.3 Calculations and information 2.3.12.

2. 1. 3 It is the Shipbuilder's responsibility to ensure that all of the installed equipment is suitable for operation in the location and under the environmental conditions defined in Pt 5, Ch 1 General Requirements for the Design and Construction of Machinery. Where anticipated environmental conditions are outside these limits or where additional conditions are to be considered, such as vibration and impulsive accelerations, requirements and details of compliance are to be submitted to ACS.

2. 2 Plans to be submitted

2. 2. 1 Plans and information as detailed below and in Pt 5, Ch 16, 2.3, Calculations and information and Pt 5, Ch 16, 2.4 Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA), are to be submitted for consideration.

2. 2. 2 General arrangement plans showing details of the following:

a. Shafting assembly indicating bearing positions.
b. Steering assembly.
c. Reversing assembly.
d. Shaft sealing arrangement assembly.
e. Longitudinal section of the complete water jet unit.

2. 2. 3 Detailed and dimensioned plans indicating scantlings, materials of construction and where applicable surface finish of the following:

a. Arrangement of the system, including the intended method of attachment to the hull and building-in, tunnel geometry, shell openings, method of stiffening, reinforcement, etc.
b. All torque transmitting components, including the shafting system, impeller and stator if fitted.

c. Steering components, together with a description and line diagram of the control circuit. This is to include steerable exit water jet nozzles where fitted.
d. Components of the retractable buckets where these are used for providing astern thrust.
e. The bearing or bearings absorbing the thrust and supporting the impeller, together with the method of lubrication.
f. Details of any shafting support or guide vanes used in the water jet system.

2. 2. 4 Schematic plans of the lubrication and hydraulics required for steering/reversing systems, together with pipe material, relief valves and the working pressures required.

2. 2. 5 The declared steering angle limits are to be stated by the manufacturer for each steerable water jet system.

2. 3 Calculations and information

2. 3. 1 Strength calculations based on fatigue considerations incorporating the maximum continuous torque rating and the most 'onerous' operating condition, *See* Pt 5, Ch 16, 2.3 Calculations and information 2.3.12, including any short-term high power operation, and including the effects of mean and fluctuating loads, transitory loadings, residual stress allowances, and stress raisers, for the following components:

a. Impeller, stator and any bolting arrangements supporting propulsion or steering loads.
b. Shaft supports and coupling arrangements.
c. Inlet guide vanes, if fitted.
d. Steering components, including the lugs of steerable nozzles where fitted.
e. Retractable buckets and associated mechanisms which are used to provide astern thrust. A calculation of the hydrodynamic transient loads is to be made for each design and is to include the full ahead to full astern condition. The calculation procedure used is to be supported, where possible, with full scale or model test data, or satisfactory service experience, to validate the design method.

2. 3. 2 Calculations supporting the connection method of the impeller to the shaft, including details of the fit, push-up, securing, bolting arrangements, etc. In addition, where lengths of shafts are joined using couplings of the shrunk element type, full particulars of the method of achieving the grip force.

2. 3. 3 Calculations relating to the design of the shaftline as evidence of compliance with Pt 5, Ch 6 Main Propulsion Shafting.

2. 3. 4 Torsional vibration calculations of the complete dynamic system in accordance with the relevant requirements included in Pt 5, Ch 8 Shaft Vibration and Alignment.

2. 3. 5 Shaft lateral vibration calculations where required by Pt 5, Ch 8 Shaft Vibration and Alignment.

2. 3. 6 Calculations of the tunnel strength and supporting structure.

2. 3. 7 A calculation to determine the stresses within the impeller blade.

2. 3. 8 A calculation of the blade natural frequency for the impeller blades.

2. 3. 9 A calculation of the relative blade passing frequency between the rotor and stator blades.

2. 3. 10 The value of the fluctuating stresses during one revolution of the impeller and from transient loadings.

2. 3. 11 Details of the power/speed range of operation, indicating the maximum continuous torque rating, together with the associated thrusts; this information may be presented in the form of a characteristic curve for the water jet.

2. 3. 12 The water jet thrust for the assessment of the strength condition being considered is to be as follows:

a. For ships which are intended to operate predominantly in a free-running condition and at steady service conditions, the water jet thrust is to correspond to the absorption of the maximum continuous shaft power and corresponding revolutions per minute, giving the maximum torque for which the shaft system is approved.
b. For ships which are designed for several operating conditions, the maximum thrust associated with these conditions and the absorption of the corresponding power, in addition to the maximum continuous powering condition, are to be used in the calculation.
c. The justification for the thrust selected is to be submitted for consideration in the approval process and this is to include the ship type and the ship speed at the conditions considered.

2. 3. 13 A justification that the water jet system will meet the self-priming criteria, *See* Pt 5, Ch 16, 3.1 General 3.1.6.

2. 3. 14 Specifications of materials and NDE procedures for components essential for propulsion and steering operation and, in the case of the impeller and stator, the yield strength and the fatigue characteristics of the material intended for their manufacture.

2. 3. 15 A detailed weld specification where an impeller has welded blades.

2. 3. 16 Full details of the means of corrosion protection in the case of carbon or carbon manganese steel shafts. Alternatively, where it is proposed to use composite shafts, details of the connections at flanges, materials, resin, lay-up procedures, quality control procedures and documentary evidence of fatigue endurance strength is to be provided.

2. 3. 17 Dry impeller mass and polar moment of inertia.

2. 3. 18 The prime mover type and designation.

2. 3. 19 Details of the control engineering aspects of the system design in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems.

2. 3. 20 The tolerance specification, agreed between the manufacturer and the Shipbuilder or Owner, to which the components of the unit are to be manufactured is to be defined, together with a justification.

2. 3. 21 Details of the water jet's loading reactions together with the positions of application within the hull and is to include the maximum applied thrust, tunnel pressures, moments and forces imposed on the ship.

2. 3. 22 The water jet unit's rated flow and head.

2. 3. 23 Where an engineering and safety justification report is required, the following supporting information is to be submitted:

- A Failure Mode and Effects Analysis report (FMEA), *See* Pt 5, Ch 16, 2.4 Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA).
- Design standards and assumptions.
- Limiting operating parameters.
- A statement and evidence in respect of the anticipated reliability of any non-duplicated components.

2. 3. 24 Recommended installation, inspection, maintenance and component replacement procedures. This is to include any in-water engineering procedures where recommended by the water jet manufacturer.

2. 3. 25 All transient loads which the steering unit is likely to experience from manoeuvring, accelerating, decelerating and the sea conditions.

2. 4 Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA)

2. 4. 1 An FMEA is to be carried out where a single water jet system is the ship's sole means of propulsion, *See* Pt 5, Ch 16, 2.2 Plans to be submitted 2.2.3. The FMEA is to identify components where a single failure could cause the loss of all propulsion and/or steering capability, and the proposed arrangements for preventing and mitigating the effects of such a failure.

2. 4. 2 The FMEA is to be carried out using the format presented in Table 22. 2. 1: Failure Mode and Effects Analysis in Chapter 22 or an equivalent format that addresses the same reliability issues. Analyses in accordance with IEC 60812 *Analysis for System Reliability – Procedure for Failure Mode and Effects Analysis*, or the IMO Code of Safety for High Speed Craft, 2000, Annex 4 – *Procedures for Failure Mode and Effects Analysis*, would be acceptable.

2. 4. 3 The FMEA is to be organised in terms of equipment and function. The effects of item failures at a stated level and at higher levels are to be analysed to determine these effects on the system as a whole. Actions for mitigation of the effects of failure are to be determined, *See* Pt 5, Ch 16, 2.4 Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA) 2.4.1.

2. 4. 4 The FMEA is to:

a. identify the equipment or sub-system and mode of operation;
b. identify potential failure modes and their causes;
c. evaluate the effects on the system of each failure mode;
d. identify measures for reducing the risks associated with each failure mode;
e. identify measures for preventing failure; and
f. identify trials and testing necessary to prove conclusions.

2. 4. 5 At sub-system level it is acceptable, for the purpose of these Rules, to consider failure of equipment items and their functions. It is not required that the failure of components within that equipment item be analysed, *See* Pt 5, Ch 22, 2.1 General 2.1.5.

2. 4. 6 Where a FMEA is used for consideration of systems that depend on software-based functions for control or co-ordination, the analysis is to investigate failure of the functions rather than a specific analysis of the software code itself.

PART

5

CHAPTER **16 Water Jet Systems**

SECTION **3 Design requirements**

3. 1 General

3. 1. 1 The arrangement of water jet units is to be such that the ship can be satisfactorily manoeuvred to a declared performance capability. The operating conditions covered are to include the following:

a. Maximum continuous shaft power/speed to the impeller in the ahead condition at the declared steering angles and conditions.

b. Manoeuvring speeds of the impeller shaft and/or reversing mechanism in the ahead and astern direction at the declared steering angles and sea conditions.

c. The stopping manoeuvre described in Pt 5, Ch 1, 5.2 Sea trials 5.2.2.b.

d. Astern running conditions for the ship.

3. 1. 2 The mean loadings are those loadings induced by the water jet absorbing the mean torque supplied by the prime mover.

3. 1. 3 Fluctuating loads are defined as those loads which occur during one revolution of the impeller due to cyclic variations. For example, the spatial flow variations and torsional vibration at nominally steady state operating conditions.

3. 1. 4 Transient loads are defined as those loadings resulting from acceleration and deceleration of the ship, manoeuvring, seaway conditions and other similar forms of loading. This also includes any significant back-pressure effects developed from the operation of the reversing bucket, if fitted.

3. 1. 5 To ensure self-priming of the water jet unit, the shaft centreline of the unit is to be lower than the light draught static waterline of the ship. In cases where this is either impracticable or undesirable, the distance of the impeller shaft centreline above the ship's light draught waterline is to be less than or equal to 10 per cent of the pump inlet diameter.

3. 1. 6 Provision is to be made to allow for the in-service visual inspection of the complete blade surfaces of both the impeller and stator blades using either a direct visual or borescope inspection technique.

3. 2 Shaftline

3. 2. 1 The diameter of the shaftline components are to comply with Pt 5, Ch 6 Main Propulsion Shafting. For calculation purposes the shaft carrying the impeller is to be taken as equivalent to a screwshaft.

3. 2. 2 Where it is proposed to use carbon or carbon manganese steel shafts which may be in contact with seawater, these are to be protected.

3. 2. 3 The diameter of unprotected screwshafts of corrosion-resistant material is not to be less than that given in Pt 11, Ch 2, 4.4 Screwshafts and tube shafts 4.4.7 of the *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Special Service Craft*.

3. 2. 4 The use of composite shafts is permitted, *See* Pt 5, Ch 16, 2.3 Calculations and information 2.3.16.

3. 2. 5 Where lengths of shafts are joined using couplings of the shrunk element type, a factor of safety, based upon the mean plus the vibratory and transient torques, against slippage of 2.0 is to be achieved for couplings which are located inboard and 2.5 for couplings which are located outboard.

3. 2. 6 Where shaftline components are bolted together, a factor of safety of 1.5 is to be achieved for the design of the bolted connection when considered in the context of the mean, fluctuating and transitory loadings.

3. 2. 7 If a keyed fitting of the impeller to the shaft is contemplated, then the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.10 Keys and keyways are to be satisfied.

3. 2. 8 Where it is proposed to fit a keyless impeller, the fitting is to comply with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 7, 3.2 Keyless propellers, as applicable, excluding the requirements for Ice Class. Use of the words 'propeller' and 'screwshaft' are to be taken as meaning 'impeller' and 'impellershaft' respectively.

3. 3 Shaft support system and guide vanes

3. 3. 1 In cases where the shaft requires support from the tunnel walls ahead of the impeller or, alternatively, where guide vanes are required to assist the flow around a bend in the ducting system, the supports or guide vanes are to be suitably aligned to the flow and have suitably rounded leading and trailing edges or be of an aerofoil section.

3. 3. 2 In general, the fillet radius should be greater than or equal to the maximum thickness of the vane or support at that location. Smaller radii may be considered for which the results of an approved measurement programme or calculation procedure are to be submitted. In all cases, a factor of safety of at least 1.5 is to be demonstrated for the maximum designed operating conditions.

3. 3. 3 A facility for the inspection of the supports or guide vanes is to be provided which will allow either direct visual or borescope inspection of these components and their transition to other members.

3. 4 Impeller

3. 4. 1 A calculation to determine the stresses within the impeller blades is to be carried out, which takes into account the mean blade loading, fluctuating loadings, transient loads and centrifugal force. The computations may be accomplished by either classical methods or numerical analysis. Designs of water jet systems which have been based on a combination of computational fluid dynamics and finite element methods will be considered. However, it will be necessary to demonstrate to the satisfaction of ACS that the formulation of the methods used has been correlated with previous full scale measurement or other calculation experience.

3. 4. 2 For the purposes of the calculation required by this sub-Section, the fluctuating stresses during one revolution of the impeller is to be taken as 20 per cent of the maximum mean stress, and the stresses from transient loadings are to be taken as 15 per cent of the hydrodynamic mean stress, unless otherwise specified by the designer.

3. 4. 3 The fatigue assessment of the impeller blades is to be based on the stress in the root sections, excluding the influence of the blade root fillets. This assessment is to include the following components:

- the maximum stresses derived from the mean loading, including both the hydrodynamic and centrifugal components;
- the amplitude of the fluctuating stresses during one revolution of the impeller;
- the stresses derived from transient loading and an allowance for any residual stresses in the material.

It is permissible to combine the variable components of stress in a linear fatigue damage accumulation assessment procedure. A factor of safety of at least 1.5 against fatigue failure is to be demonstrated for the maximum continuous rating condition or any other more onerous condition, *See* Pt 5, Ch 16, 3.1 General 3.1.1.

3. 4. 4 In general, the fillet radius is to be greater than the maximum thickness of the impeller blade at that location. Composite radiused fillets or elliptical fillets which provide an improved stress concentration factor are preferred.

3. 4. 5 Where an impeller has bolted-on blades, consideration is to be given to the distribution of stress in the palms of the blade and in the boss and bolting arrangements.

3. 4. 6 Where an impeller has welded blades the welds are to be of the full penetration type or of equivalent strength. Where laser welding is to be used, details are to be submitted for consideration.

3. 4. 7 The blades are to be provided with hydrodynamically faired leading and trailing edges which may be either of simple radius or of a more complex aerofoil edge form. The tip clearance, whilst being kept to a minimum for hydrodynamic purposes, is to be sufficient to allow for any transient vibrational behaviour, axial shaft movement or differential thermal expansion.

3. 4. 8 A calculation of the blade natural frequency for the impeller blades is to be undertaken. The fundamental natural frequency in water of the blade is to be shown to lie outside any expected excitation frequencies within a speed range of the water jet unit and up to 10 per cent above the maximum impeller speed.

3. 5 Stator

3. 5. 1 The stator blades, where fitted, are to be designed to be capable of withstanding the combined hydrodynamic mean, fluctuating, transient and mechanical loads, including any loads transmitted via shaft bearings, developed by the unit and reacted through the blades when the impeller is absorbing full power. Consideration is to be given to situations when the vessel is either free running or in a condition specified by Pt 5, Ch 16, 3.1 General 3.1.1 or undergoing stopping, accelerating or decelerating manoeuvres. A factor of safety against mechanical failure by yielding of the blades of 1.5 is to be demonstrated.

3. 5. 2 In general, the fillet radius is to be greater than the maximum thickness of the blade at that location. Composite radiused fillets or elliptical fillets which provide improved stress concentration factors are preferred.

3. 5. 3 If the stator ring comprises a segmented assembly, then consideration is also to be given to the distribution of stress in the various adjacent members of the overall assembly.

3. 5. 4 A calculation of the relative blade passing frequency between the rotor and stator blades is to demonstrate that this does not coincide with the natural frequency of the stator blades over the speed range of the water jet unit and up to 10 per cent above maximum impeller speed.

3. 5. 5 The stator blades are to be provided with hydrodynamically faired leading edges which may have either a simple radius or a more complex aerofoil edge form.

3. 5. 6 Where the stator blading assembly forms part of the nozzle, the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 16, 3.7, Nozzle/steering arrangements are to be considered in association with those for the stator assembly.

3. 6 Tunnel and securing arrangements

3. 6. 1 The tunnel is to be adequately supported, framed and fully integrated into the hull structure. The critical locations and integrity of the supports and framing are to be as specified in the FMEA and agreed by the Shipbuilder and ACS.

3. 6. 2 The tunnel and supporting structure scantlings are to be not less than the Rule requirements for the surrounding structure. The strength of the hull structure in way of tunnel(s) is to be maintained. The structure is to be adequately reinforced and compensated as necessary. All openings are to be suitably reinforced and have radiused corners.

3. 6. 3 Consideration is to be given to providing the inlet to the tunnel with a suitable guard to prevent the ingress of large objects into the rotodynamic machinery. The dimensions of this guard, if fitted, are to strike a balance between undue efficiency loss due to flow restriction and viscous losses, the size of object allowed to pass and the susceptibility to clog with weed and other flow-restricting matter.

3. 6. 4 The inlet profile of the tunnel is to be designed so as to provide a smooth uptake of the water over the range of vessel operating trims and avoid significant separation and/or cavitation of the flow which may then pass downstream into the rotating machinery.

3. 6. 5 Design consideration is to take account of pressures which could develop as a result of a duct blockage as well as in relation to the axial location of rotating parts.

3. 6. 6 The strength of the tunnel and supporting structure are to be examined by direct calculation procedures.

3. 7 Nozzle/steering arrangements

3. 7. 1 The requirements of Pt 5, Ch 19 Steering Systems are to be complied with where applicable

3. 7. 2 Where more than one steerable water jet is fitted, Pt 5, Ch 19, 2.1 General 2.1.2 is considered to be met when:

a. Each steerable water jet fulfils the requirements for main steering gear (*See* Pt 5, Ch 16, 3.7,, Nozzle/steering arrangements 3.7.3), and

b. Each of the steering systems is provided with the ability to position and lock the steerable water jet in a neutral position after a failure of its power unit(s) and actuator(s). These arrangements are to be of sufficient strength to hold the steerable water jet in position at the ship's manoeuvring speed to be taken as not less than 7 knots. Instructions displayed at the locking mechanism’s operating position are to include a directive to inform the bridge of any limitation in ship's speed required as a result of the securing mechanism being activated.

3. 7. 3 The main steering gear is to be:

a. Of adequate strength and capable of changing direction of the steerable water jet from one side to the other in accordance with the declared steering angle limits at an average rotational speed of not less than 2.3 deg/s with the ship running ahead at maximum ahead service speed which shall be demonstrated in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 19, 7.2, Trials; and

b. Operated by power; and

c. So designed that they will not be damaged at maximum astern speed.

3. 7. 4 The auxiliary steering gear is to be:

a. Capable of being brought speedily into action in an emergency; and

b. Of adequate strength and capable of changing the direction of the ship’s water jet nozzles from one side to the other in accordance with the declared steering angle limits at an average rotational speed of not less than 0.5 deg/s, with the ship running ahead at one half of the maximum ahead service speed or 7 knots, whichever is the greater; and

c. Operated by power for ships having propulsion power of more than 2500 kW per water jet unit and for all ships, where it is necessary to meet the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 16, 3.7 Nozzle/steering arrangements 3.7.4.b.

3. 7. 5 For vessels with more than one steerable water jet, auxiliary steering gear need not be fitted provided that each steerable water jet is capable of being supplied by two identical power units (the steerable water jet may be supplied by shared or dedicated power units) and:

a. In cargo ships, each steerable water jet is capable of satisfying the requirements in Pt 5, Ch 16, 3.7 Nozzle/steering arrangements 3.7.3.a while operating with all power units;

b. In passenger ships, each steerable water jet is capable of satisfying the requirements in Pt 5, Ch 16, 3.7 Nozzle/steering arrangements 3.7.3.a while any one of the power units is out of operation;

Each of the steerable water jets is arranged so that after a single failure in its piping or in one of the power units, ship steering capability (but not individual steering system operation) can be maintained or speedily regained (e.g. by the possibility of positioning the failed steering system in a neutral position in an emergency, if needed). Consideration will be given to alternative arrangements providing equivalence can be demonstrated.

3. 7. 6 Nozzles can be either of a fixed or steerable form. The design of the nozzle is to take into account fully the change in pressure distribution along its inner surface together with the other mechanical loads (e.g. stator assembly loads) and transient loads caused by the flow-directing attachments which may be reacted through the body of the nozzle. In this analysis the changes to the pressure distribution caused by transient manoeuvres are to be considered.

3. 7. 7 In addition to the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 19 Steering Systems, the steering mechanism and bucket are to be capable of maintaining the manoeuvrability of the ship in terms of turning circle, zig-zag and stopping requirements within the limits defined by IMO *Resolution MSC.137(76) - Standards for Ship Manoeuvrability - (adopted on 4 December 2002)*.

3. 7. 8 Consideration is to be given to all transient loads which the steering unit is likely to experience from manoeuvring, accelerating, decelerating and the sea conditions.

3. 7. 9 The nozzle/bucket is to be given mechanical protection by the Shipbuilder from other impact damage such as collision.

3. 8 Bolts

3. 8. 1 Detailed consideration and analysis is to be given to essential bolting arrangements in critical locations as specified in the FMEA and where indicated by the manufacturer or Shipbuilder and agreed by ACS. These are to include; bolts used in the securing of blades or guide vanes, assembly of the unit in the ship and any conduit components.

PART

5

CHAPTER **16 Water Jet Systems**

SECTION **4 Piping systems**

4. 1 General

4. 1. 1 The piping systems for a water jet unit are to comply with the general requirements of Pt 5, Ch 12 Piping Design Requirements.

4. 1. 2 Lubricating and hydraulic oil systems and standby arrangements are to comply with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 14 Machinery Piping Systems; in addition, steering hydraulic systems are to comply with the applicable requirements of Pt 5, Ch 19 Steering Systems.

PART

5

CHAPTER **16 Water Jet Systems**

SECTION **5 Control and monitoring**

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 In addition to this Section, the control engineering systems are to comply with Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems.

5. 1. 2 For water jets used as the only means of propulsion and steering, a standby or alternative power source for the actuating device that controls the angular position and/or the reversing angle is to be provided. Automatic start of the standby pump supplying hydraulic power for steering and reversing is to be provided.

5. 1. 3 Means are to be provided at each control station to stop each water jet.

5. 2 Monitoring and alarms

5. 2. 1 In addition to the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 19 Steering Systems, alarms and monitoring requirements are indicated in Pt 5, Ch 16, 5.2 Monitoring and alarms 5.2.2 to Pt 5, Ch 16, 5.2 Monitoring and alarms 5.2.4 and Table 16. 5. 1: Alarms.

Table 16. 5. 1: Alarms

Item	Alarm	Note
Hydraulic system pressure	Low	—
Hydraulic oil supply tank level	Low	—
Hydraulic oil temperature	High	Where an oil cooler is fitted
Lubricating oil temperature	High	—
Lubricating oil pressure	Low	In forced lubrication systems
Lubricating oil tank level	Low	Where a tank is provided
Ratio of jet rpm/vessel speed	High	Only if installed power per jet >4 MW
Control system failure	Fault	Includes follow-up failure of steering or reversing system
Control system power supply	Failure	—

5. 2. 2 An indication of the angular position of the nozzle is to be provided at each station from which it is possible to control the direction of thrust from the units.

5. 2. 3 An indication of both the required and actual reversing bucket position is to be provided at each station from which it is possible to control the reversal of thrust.

5. 2. 4 All alarms associated with water jet unit faults are to be indicated individually at the control stations and in accordance with the alarm system specified by Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems.

PART

5

CHAPTER **16 Water Jet Systems**

SECTION **6 Electrical systems**

6. 1 Installation and distribution arrangements

6. 1. 1 The electrical installation is to comply with the relevant sections of Pt 6, Ch 2 Electrical Engineering.

6. 1. 2 Water jet auxiliaries and controls are to be served by individual circuits. Services that are duplicated are to be separated throughout their length as widely as practicable and without the use of common feeders, transformers, converters, protective devices or control circuits.

PART

5

CHAPTER **16 Water Jet Systems**

SECTION **7 Inspection, testing and fitting of water jets**

7. 1 General

7. 1. 1 The finished impeller is to be statically balanced on completion of the manufacturing process and meet the requirements of ISO 1940 or an alternative standard acceptable to ACS. In the case where the blade tip speed is greater than 60 m/s, dynamic balancing is required unless otherwise agreed by the manufacturer and ACS.

7. 1. 2 The following tests, markings and inspections are to be carried out in the presence of the Surveyor:

a. The balancing of the impeller or the blades.
b. Non-destructive examination of the impeller blades and the principal component parts of the propulsion system; *See* Ch 4, 8 Stainless steel castings for austenitic stainless steels and Ch 8, 3 Aluminium alloy castings for aluminium alloys of the Rules for Materials.
c. The quality of the fit of the impeller boss on the shaft taper.
d. The fitting of the impeller to the shaft and its subsequent functional testing.
e. The finished surfaces of the impeller boss, conical bores, fillets, cones and blade surfaces are to be shown to conform to the tolerances specified on the impeller drawing.

7. 1. 3 Bolts and nuts in critical locations, as specified in the FMEA and where indicated by the manufacturer or Shipbuilder and agreed by ACS, are to be equipped with adequate securing arrangements to the satisfaction of the ACS Surveyor.

7. 2 Shop tests and installation of water jet systems

7. 2. 1 The completed water jet unit is to undergo a tightness test in which an internal hydrostatic pressure of 0.15 MPa above the maximum working pressure of the unit is to be applied.

7. 2. 2 In cases where the impeller is fitted to the shaft using an interference fit, the bedding of the impeller with the shaft is to be demonstrated in the shop to the satisfaction of the ACS Surveyor. Sufficient time is to be allowed for the temperature of the components to equalise before bedding. A contact marking between the bore of the impeller boss and the shaft surface of better than 80 per cent is to be demonstrated when the contact marking ink is spread thinly on the surface of the shaft. Alternative means for demonstrating the bedding of the impeller will be considered.

7. 2. 3 Means are to be provided to indicate the relative axial position of the impeller boss on the shaft. Permanent reference marks are to be made on the impeller boss, shaft and any nut to indicate angular and axial positioning of the impeller. Care is to be taken in marking the inboard end of the shaft taper to minimise stress-raising effects.

7. 2. 4 A copy of the fitting curve relative to temperature and means for determining any subsequent movement are to be placed on board.

7. 2. 5 The impeller running clearances are to be checked following the installation of the unit in the ship.

7. 2. 6 The thrust bearing clearances in the water jet system are to be verified against the required design values. This is to be done following the installation of the unit in the ship.

7. 2. 7 The piping systems are to be adequately flushed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and the final levels of contamination recorded. Similarly, pressure testing of the piping systems is to comply with Pt 5, Ch 12 Piping Design Requirements.

7. 3 Sea trial requirement

7. 3. 1 The following requirements are to be complied with:

- Pt 5, Ch 1, 5.2, Sea trials for sea trials.
- Pt 5, Ch 19, 7.2, Trials for steering trials.

In addition, the general design capability specified in Pt 5, Ch 16, 3.1 General 3.1.1 is to be demonstrated to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

7. 3. 2 The control systems relating to the correct functioning of the water jet are to be the subject of harbour and then sea trials. Demonstration of the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems is required and the design combinations of control functions are to be undertaken during the trials programme.

7. 3. 3 On sea trials and under free running conditions the relationship between ship speed and impeller rotational speed is to be verified against the water jet's design basis.

7. 3. 4 Any trials and testing identified from the FMEA report, *See* Pt 5, Ch 16, 2.4 Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA) 2.4.4, are to be carried out.

PART

5

CHAPTER **16 Water Jet Systems**

SECTION **8 Installation, maintenance and replacement**

8. 1 General

8. 1. 1 All water jet system propulsion units are to be provided with a copy of the manufacturer's installation and maintenance manual that is pertinent to the actual equipment. *See* Pt 5, Ch 16, 2.3 Calculations and information 2.3.24.

8. 1. 2 The manual required by Pt 5, Ch 16, 8.1 General 8.1.1 is to be placed on board and is to contain the following information:

a. Description of the water jet propulsion system with details of function and design operating limits. This is also to include details of support systems such as lubrication, cooling and condition monitoring arrangements.

b. Identification of all components together with details of any that have a defined maximum operating life.

c. Instructions for installation of the system on board ship with details of any required specialised equipment.

d. Instructions for commissioning at initial installation and following maintenance.

e. Maintenance and service instructions to include inspection/ renewal of bearings and sealing arrangements. This is also to include component fitting procedures, clearance measurements and lubricating oil treatment where applicable.

f. Actions required in the event of fault/failure conditions being detected.

g. Precautions to be taken by personnel working during installation and maintenance.

PART

5

CHAPTER **17** **Requirements for Fusion Welding of Pressure Vessels and Piping**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**2533**
	1. 1	Scope	2533
	1. 2	General requirements for welding plant and welding quality	2533
	1. 3	Manufacture and workmanship of fusion welded pressure vessels	2533
SECTION 2	**Manufacture and workmanship of fusion welded pressure vessels**		**2534**
	2. 1	General requirements	2534
	2. 2	Materials of construction	2534
	2. 3	Tolerances for cylindrical shells	2534
SECTION 3	**Repairs to welds on fusion welded pressure vessels**		**2536**
	3. 1	General	2536
SECTION 4	**Post-weld heat treatment of pressure vessels**		**2537**
	4. 1	General	2537
SECTION 5	**Welded pressure pipes**		**2538**
	5. 1	General	2538
	5. 2	Welding workmanship	2538
SECTION 6	**Non-Destructive Examination**		**2539**
	6. 1	General	2539

PART

5

CHAPTER 17 **Requirements for Fusion Welding of Pressure Vessels and Piping**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 17. 2. 1: Tolerances for cylindrical shells 2534
Table 17. 2. 2: Circumferential tolerances 2535

PART

5

CHAPTER 17 **Requirements for Fusion Welding of Pressure Vessels and Piping**

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 17. 2. 1: Tolerances for cylindrical shells 2535

PART

5

CHAPTER 17 **Requirements for Fusion Welding of Pressure Vessels and Piping**

SECTION 1 **General**

1. 1 Scope

1. 1. 1 The requirements of this Chapter apply to the welding of pressure vessels and process equipment, heating and steam raising boilers and pressure pipes. The allocation of Class is determined from the design criteria referenced in Chapters Pt 5, Ch 10, Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels, Pt 5, Ch 11 Other Pressure Vessels and Pt 5, Ch 12 Piping Design Requirements.

1. 1. 2 Fusion welded pressure vessels will be accepted only if manufactured by firms equipped and competent to undertake the quality of welding required for the Class of vessel proposed. For Class 1, 2/1 and 2/2 pressure vessels, the manufacturer's works are to be approved in accordance with the requirements specified in *Materials and Qualification Procedures for Ships*, Book A Procedure MQPS 0-4.

1. 1. 3 For pressure vessels which only have circumferential seams, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.5 Classification of fusion welded pressure vessels 1.5.4 and Pt 5, Ch 11, 1.5 Classification of fusion welded pressure vessels 1.5.5

1. 2 General requirements for welding plant and welding quality

1. 2. 1 In the first instance, and before work is commenced, the Surveyors are to be satisfied that the required quality of welding is attainable with the proposed welding plant, equipment and procedures in accordance with the guidelines specified in *Materials and Qualification Procedures for Ships Book A, Procedure 0-4*.

1. 2. 2 All welding is to be in accordance with the requirements specified in Ch 13 Requirements for Welded Construction of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials (hereinafter referred to as the Rules for Materials).

1. 3 Manufacture and workmanship of fusion welded pressure vessels

1. 3. 1 Pressure vessels are to be constructed and examined in accordance with the requirements specified in Ch 13 Requirements for Welded Construction of the Rules for Materials, unless more stringent requirements are specified.

PART

5

CHAPTER 17 **Requirements for Fusion Welding of Pressure Vessels and Piping**

SECTION 2 **Manufacture and workmanship of fusion welded pressure vessels**

2. 1 General requirements

2. 1. 1 Prior to commencing construction, the design of the vessel is to be approved where required by Pt 5, Ch 10, 1.6 Plans and Pt 5, Ch 11, 1.6 Plans.

2. 1. 2 Pressure vessels will be accepted only if manufactured by firms that have been assessed and approved in accordance with MQPS 0-4.

2. 2 Materials of construction

2. 2. 1 Where the construction requires post weld heat treatment, consideration should be given to certifying the material after subjecting the test pieces to a simulated heat treatment.

2. 3 Tolerances for cylindrical shells

2. 3. 1 Measurements are to be made to the surface of the parent plate and not to a weld, fitting or other raised part.

2. 3. 2 In assessing the out-of-roundness of pressure vessels, the difference between the maximum and minimum internal diameters measured at one cross-section is not to exceed the amount given in Table 17. 2. 1: Tolerances for cylindrical shells.

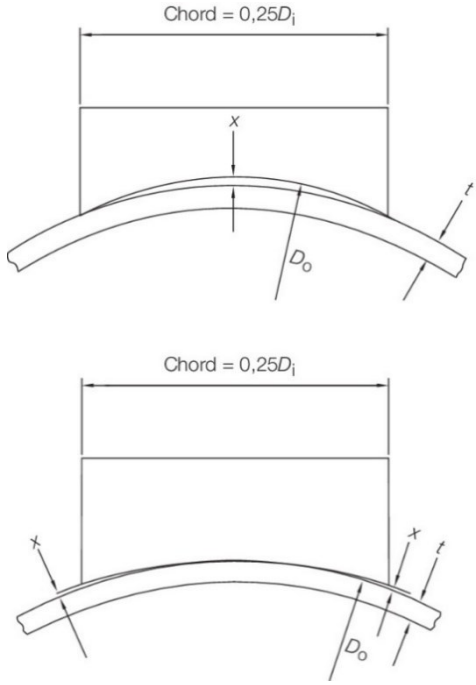
Table 17. 2. 1: Tolerances for cylindrical shells

Nominal internal diameter of vessel in mm	Difference between maximum and minimum diameters	Maximum departure from designed form
≤ 300		1.2 mm
> 300 ≤ 460		1.6 mm
> 460 ≤ 600		2.4 mm
> 600 ≤ 900	1.0 per cent of internal diameter	3.2 mm
> 900 ≤ 1220		4.0 mm
> 1220 ≤ 1520		4.8 mm
> 1520 ≤ 1900		5.6 mm
> 1900 ≤ 2300		6.4 mm
> 2300 ≤ 2670	19 mm	7.2 mm

> 2670 ≤ 3950		8.0 mm
> 3950 ≤ 4650	19 mm	0.2 per cent of internal diameter
> 4650	0.4 per cent of internal diameter	

2. 3. 3 The profile measured on the inside or outside of the shell, by means of a gauge of the designed form of the shell, and having a chord length equal to one-quarter of the internal diameter of the vessel, is not to depart from the designed form by more than the amount given in Table 17. 2. 1: Tolerances for cylindrical shells. This amount corresponds to *x* in Figure 17. 2. 1: Tolerances for cylindrical shells.

Figure 17. 2. 1: Tolerances for cylindrical shells



2. 3. 4 Shell sections are to be measured for out-of-roundness, either when laid flat on their sides or when set up on end. When the shell sections are checked while lying on their sides, each measurement for diameter is to be repeated after turning the shell through 90° about its longitudinal axis. The two measurements for each diameter are to be averaged, and the amount of out-of-roundness calculated from the average values so determined.

2. 3. 5 Where there is any local departure from circularity due to the presence of flats or peaks at welded seams, the departure from designed form shall not exceed that of Table 17. 2. 1: Tolerances for cylindrical shells.

2. 3. 6 The external circumference of the completed shell is not to depart from the calculated circumference (based upon nominal inside diameter and the actual plate thickness) by more than the amounts given in Table 17. 2. 2: Circumferential tolerances.

Table 17. 2. 2: Circumferential tolerances

Outside diameter (nominal inside diameter plus twice actual plate thickness), in mm	Circumferential tolerance
300 to 600 inclusive	±5 mm
Greater than 600	±0.25 per cent

PART

5

CHAPTER 17 **Requirements for Fusion Welding of Pressure Vessels and Piping**

SECTION 3 **Repairs to welds on fusion welded pressure vessels**

3. 1 General

3. 1. 1 Repairs to welds on fusion welded pressure vessels are to be in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 13 of the Rules for Materials.

PART

5

CHAPTER 17 **Requirements for Fusion Welding of Pressure Vessels and Piping**

SECTION 4 **Post-weld heat treatment of pressure vessels**

4. 1 General

4. 1. 1 Post-weld heat treatment of fusion welded pressure vessels are to be in accordance with the requirements of Ch 13 Requirements for Welded Construction of the Rules for Materials.

PART

5

CHAPTER 17 **Requirements for Fusion Welding of Pressure Vessels and Piping**

SECTION 5 **Welded pressure pipes**

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 Fabrication of pipework is to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of Ch 13, 5 Specific requirements for pressure piping of the Rules for Materials.

5. 2 Welding workmanship

5. 2. 1 Preheating is to be effected by a method which ensures uniformity of temperature at the joint. The method of heating and the means adopted for temperature control are to be to the satisfaction of the Surveyors.

5. 2. 2 All welding is to be performed in accordance with the approved welding procedures in this Section by welders who are qualified for the materials, joint types and welding processes employed.

5. 2. 3 Welding without filler metal is generally not permitted for welding of duplex stainless steel materials.

5. 2. 4 All welds in high pressure and high temperature pipelines are to have a smooth surface finish and even contour; if necessary, they are to be made smooth by grinding.

5. 2. 5 Check tests of the quality of the welding are to be carried out periodically at the discretion of the Surveyors.

PART

5

CHAPTER **17** **Requirements for Fusion Welding of Pressure Vessels and Piping**

SECTION **6** **Non-Destructive Examination**

6. 1 General

6. 1. 1 Non-Destructive Examination (NDE) of pressure vessels and piping is to be performed in accordance with the requirements of Ch 13, 4 Specific requirements for fusion welded pressure vessels and Ch 13, 5 Specific requirements for pressure piping of the Rules for Materials.

PART

5

CHAPTER 18 Integrated Propulsion Systems

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General requirements**		**2541**
	1. 1	General	2541
	1. 2	Plans	2541
SECTION 2	**Machinery arrangements**		**2543**
	2. 1	Main propulsion machinery	2543
	2. 2	Supply of electric power and essential services	2543
	2. 3	Controllable pitch propellers	2543
SECTION 3	**Control arrangements**		**2544**
	3. 1	Bridge control	2544
	3. 2	Alarm system	2544
	3. 3	Communication	2545
	3. 4	Engine starting safeguards	2545
	3. 5	Operational safeguards	2545
	3. 6	Automatic control of essential services	2546
	3. 7	Local control	2547

PART

5

CHAPTER 18 Integrated Propulsion Systems

SECTION 1 General requirements

1. 1 General

1. 1. 1 This Chapter applies to both cargo ships and passenger ships and is in addition to other relevant Chapters of the Rules.

1. 1. 2 The Rules contained in this Chapter cover machinery arrangements and control systems necessary for operating essential machinery from a (centralised) control station on the bridge under normal seagoing and manoeuvring conditions, but do not signify that the machinery space may be operated unattended.

1. 1. 3 In general, ships complying with the requirements of this Chapter will be eligible for the machinery class notation **IP**, *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.4 Class notations (machinery).

1. 1. 4 The details of control systems will vary with the type of machinery being controlled, and special consideration will be given to each case.

1. 2 Plans

1. 2. 1 **Control systems.** Where control systems are applied to essential machinery or equipment the following plans are to be submitted in triplicate:

- Details of operating medium, i.e. pneumatic, hydraulic or electric including standby sources of power.
- Description of operation with explanatory diagrams.
- Line diagrams of control circuits.
- List of monitored points.
- List of control points.
- List of alarm points.
- Test schedule including test facilities provided.

1. 2. 2 Plans for the control systems of the following machinery are to be submitted:

- Main propelling machinery, including all auxiliaries essential for propulsion.
- Controllable pitch propellers.
- Electric generating plant.
- Evaporating and distilling systems for use with main steam machinery.
- Steam raising plant for essential services.

1. 2. 3 **Alarm systems.** Details of the overall alarm system linking the machinery space control station with the bridge control station are to be submitted.

1. 2. 4 **Control stations.** Details of bridge and machinery space control stations are to be submitted, e.g. control panels and consoles.

1. 2. 5 **Machinery configurations.** Plans showing the general arrangement of the machinery space, together with the layout and configuration of the main propulsion and essential machinery, are to be submitted.

PART

5

CHAPTER **18 Integrated Propulsion Systems**

SECTION **2 Machinery arrangements**

2. 1 Main propulsion machinery

2. 1. 1 The main propulsion machinery may be engines, turbines or electric motors but the configuration of the propulsion system and its relationship with other essential equipment is to comply with the remaining requirements of this Section.

2. 1. 2 The main propulsion machinery is to drive one of the generators required by Pt 5, Ch 18, 2.2 Supply of electric power and essential services 2.2.2. This generator is to be capable of supplying the essential electrical load under all normal sea-going and manoeuvring conditions.

2. 1. 3 Standby machinery is to be provided capable of being readily connected to the main propulsion system so as to provide emergency propulsion. This standby machinery is to be capable of connection so as to provide an alternative drive to the generator required in Pt 5, Ch 18, 2.1 Main propulsion machinery 2.1.2. It need not provide power to both systems simultaneously, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 18, 2.2 Supply of electric power and essential services 2.2.2.

2. 2 Supply of electric power and essential services

2. 2. 1 Continuity of electrical power supply and essential services are to be ensured under all normal sea-going and manoeuvring conditions without manual intervention in the machinery space. Methods by which this may be achieved include automatic start-up of generating sets and essential pumps or manual start-up of these services from the bridge.

2. 2. 2 Generating sets and converting sets are to be sufficient to ensure the operation of services essential for the propulsion and safety of the ship even when one generating set or converting set is out of service.

2. 3 Controllable pitch propellers

2. 3. 1 For propulsion systems with controllable pitch propellers a standby or alternative power source for the actuating medium for controlling the pitch of the propeller blades is to be provided.

PART

5

CHAPTER **18 Integrated Propulsion Systems**

SECTION **3 Control arrangements**

3. 1 Bridge control

3. 1. 1 Means are to be provided to ensure satisfactory control of propulsion from the bridge in both the ahead and astern directions when operating on either the main or standby engine(s).

3. 1. 2 Instrumentation to indicate the following is to be fitted on the bridge and at any other station from which the propulsion machinery may be controlled:

a. Propeller speed.
b. Direction of rotation of the propeller for a fixed pitch propeller.
c. Pitch position for a controllable pitch propeller.
d. Direction and magnitude of thrust.
e. Clutch position, where applicable.

3. 1. 3 An alarm is to operate in the event of a failure of the power supply to the bridge control system.

3. 1. 4 Emergency Stop Functions, independent of the bridge control system, are to be provided on the bridge to enable the watchkeeping officer to stop the main propulsion machinery in an emergency.

3. 2 Alarm system

3. 2. 1 An alarm system is to be provided to indicate faults in essential machinery and control systems in accordance with this Chapter.

3. 2. 2 Machinery faults are to be indicated at the control stations on the bridge and in the machinery space.

3. 2. 3 In the event of a machinery fault occurring, the alarm system is to be such that the watchkeeping officer on the bridge is made aware of the following.

a. A machinery fault has occurred.
b. The machinery fault is being attended to, and
c. The machinery fault has been rectified. (Alternative means of communication between the bridge control station and the machinery control station may be used for this function.)

3. 2. 4 The alarm system should be designed with self-monitoring properties. As far as practicable, any fault in the alarm system should cause it to fail to the alarm condition.

3. 2. 5 The alarm system should be capable of being tested during normal machinery operation.

3. 2. 6 Failure of the power supply to the alarm system is to be indicated as a separate fault alarm.

3. 2. 7 Alarm indication is to be both audible and visual. If arrangements are made to silence audible alarms they are not to extinguish visual alarms.

3. 2. 8 The acceptance of an alarm on the bridge is not to silence the audible alarm in the machinery space.

3. 2. 9 Machinery alarms should be distinguishable from other audible alarms, e.g. fire, carbon dioxide.

3. 2. 10 Acknowledgement of visual alarms is to be clearly shown.

3. 2. 11 If the audible alarm has been silenced and a second fault occurs before the first has been rectified, the audible alarm is again to operate. To assist in the detection of transient faults which are subsequently self-correcting, fleeting alarms should lock-in until accepted.

3. 3 Communication

3. 3. 1 Two means of communication are to be provided between the bridge and the control station in the machinery space. One of these means may be the bridge control system; the other is to be independent of the main electrical power supply.

3. 3. 2 The bridge, machinery space control station and any other control position from which the propulsion machinery can be controlled are to be fitted with means to indicate which station is in command.

3. 3. 3 Change-over between control stations is to be possible under all normal sea-going and manoeuvring conditions without affecting the speed or direction of propulsion. This change-over may be effected only with the acceptance of the station taking control.

3. 4 Engine starting safeguards

3. 4. 1 Where it is possible to start a main propulsion or auxiliary engine from the bridge, an indication that sufficient starting air pressure is available is to be provided on the bridge.

3. 4. 2 The number of automatic consecutive attempts which fail to produce a start is to be limited to safeguard sufficient starting air pressure, or, in the case of electric starting, a sufficient charge level in the batteries.

3. 4. 3 An alarm is to be provided for low starting air pressure, set at a limit which will still permit engine starting operations.

3. 4. 4 Where propulsion or auxiliary engines are started from the bridge, interlocks are to be provided to prevent starting of the engine under conditions which could hazard the machinery. These are to include `turning gear engaged', `low lubricating oil pressure' and `shaft brake engaged'.

3. 5 Operational safeguards

3. 5. 1 Means are to be provided to prevent the machinery and shafting being subjected to excessive torque or other detrimental mechanical and thermal overloads.

3. 5. 2 Prolonged running in a restricted speed range is to be prevented automatically or, alternatively, an indication of restricted speed ranges is to be provided at each control station.

3. 5. 3 For ships propelled by steam turbines the risk of thermal distortion of the turbines is to be prevented by automatic steam spinning when the shaft is stopped in the manoeuvring mode. An audible and visual alarm is to operate on the bridge and in the machinery space when the shaft has been stopped for two minutes.

3. 5. 4 In the case of lubricating oil systems for main propulsion and standby engine(s), the engine(s) is to be stopped automatically on failure of the lubricating oil supply. The circuit and sensor employed for this automatic shut-down are to be additional to the alarm circuit and sensor required by Pt 5, Ch 14, 8 Lubricating oil systems. Where means are provided to override the automatic shut-down required by this paragraph, the arrangements are to be such as to preclude inadvertent operation. Visual indication of operation of the override is to be fitted.

3. 5. 5 In the case of engines, oil mist monitoring is to be provided for crankcase protection where arrangements are fitted to override the automatic stop for failure of the lubricating oil supply.

3. 5. 6 Boilers with automatic controls which under normal operating conditions do not require any manual intervention by the operators are to be provided with safety arrangements which automatically shut-off the fuel oil to all the burners in the event of either low water level or combustion air failure. Fuel oil is to be shut-off automatically to any burner in the event of flame failure.

3. 5. 7 Arrangements are to be provided to automatically stop propulsion gas turbines for the following fault conditions:

a. Overspeed, *See* Pt 5, Ch 4, 4 Design and construction.
b. High exhaust temperature, *See* Pt 5, Ch 4, 3 Materials.
c. Flame failure, or
d. Excessive vibration.

3. 5. 8 Where standby pumps are arranged to start automatically in the event of low discharge pressure from the working pump an alarm is to be given to indicate when the standby pump has started.

3. 6 Automatic control of essential services

3. 6. 1 All control systems for essential services are to be stable throughout the operating range of the main propulsion machinery.

3. 6. 2 The temperature of the following is to be automatically controlled within normal operating limits:

Engines:

a. Lubricating oil to the main engine and/or auxiliary engines.
b. Fuel oil − temperature or viscosity.
c. Piston coolant, where applicable.
d. Cylinder coolant main and auxiliary engines, where applicable.
e. Fuel valve coolant, where applicable.

Steam plant:

f. Lubricating oil to main engine and/or auxiliary engines.
g. Fuel oil to burners − temperature or viscosity.
h. Superheated steam.
i. External de-superheated steam.

Gas turbines:

j. Lubricating oil to main engine and auxiliary engines.
k. Fuel oil − temperature or viscosity.
l. Exhaust gas.

3. 6. 3 The pressure of the following is to be automatically controlled within normal operating limits:

Steam plant:

a. Superheated steam.
b. Fuel oil.
c. External de-superheated steam system(s).
d. Gland steam.
e. Reduced steam ranges.

3. 6. 4 The level of the following is to be automatically controlled within normal operating limits:

Steam plant:

a. Boiler drum level.
b. De-aerator level.
c. Condenser level.

3. 6. 5 Boilers essential for the propulsion of the vessel are to be provided with an automatic combustion control system.

3. 7 Local control

3. 7. 1 The arrangements are to be such that essential machinery can be operated with the system of bridge control or any automatic controls out of action. Alternatively, the control systems should have sufficient redundancy so that failure of the control equipment in use does not render essential machinery inoperative.

PART

5

CHAPTER **19 Steering Systems**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**2551**
	1. 1	Application	2551
	1. 2	Definitions	2551
	1. 3	General	2552
	1. 4	Plans	2552
	1. 5	Materials	2552
	1. 6	Rudder, rudder stock, tiller and quadrant	2553
SECTION 2	**Performance**		**2555**
	2. 1	General	2555
	2. 2	Performance requirements for rudder-type steering systems	2555
	2. 3	Rudder angle limiters	2556
SECTION 3	**Construction and design**		**2557**
	3. 1	General	2557
	3. 2	Components	2558
	3. 3	Valve and relief valve arrangements	2558
	3. 4	Flexible hoses	2559
SECTION 4	**Steering control systems**		**2560**
	4. 1	General	2560
SECTION 5	**Electric power circuits, electric control circuits, monitoring and alarms**		**2562**
	5. 1	Electric power circuits	2562
	5. 2	Electric control circuits	2563
	5. 3	Monitoring and alarms	2563
SECTION 6	**Emergency power**		**2565**
	6. 1	General	2565
SECTION 7	**Testing and trials**		**2566**
	7. 1	Testing	2566

7. 2 Trials 2566

SECTION 8 Additional requirements 2568

8. 1 For tankers, chemical tankers, or gas carriers of 10 000 tons gross and upwards and every other ship of 70 000 tons gross and upwards . 2568

8. 2 For tankers, chemical tankers or gas carriers of 10 000 tons gross and upwards 2568

8. 3 For tankers, chemical tankers or gas carriers of 10 000 tons gross and upwards but of less than 100 000 tons deadweight 2568

SECTION 9 'Guidelines' for the acceptance of non-duplicated rudder actuators for tankers, chemical tankers and gas carriers of 10 000 tons gross and upwards but of less than 100 000 tons deadweight 2570

9. 1 Materials 2570

9. 2 Design 2570

9. 3 Construction details 2571

9. 4 Non-destructive testing 2572

9. 5 Testing 2572

9. 6 Additional requirements for steering gear fitted to ships with Ice Class notations 2572

PART

5

CHAPTER **19 Steering Systems**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 19. 1. 1: Connection of tiller to stock 2553
Table 19. 5. 1: Alarms 2563

PART

5

CHAPTER **19 Steering Systems**

SECTION **1 General**

1. 1 Application

1. 1. 1 The requirements of this Chapter apply to the design and construction of steering systems.

1. 1. 2 Whilst the requirements satisfy the relevant regulations of the *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea* as amended, and the IMO Protocol of 1978, attention should be given to any relevant statutory requirements of the National Authority of the country in which the ship is to be registered.

1. 1. 3 Consideration will be given to other cases, or to arrangements which are equivalent to those required by the Rules.

1. 2 Definitions

1. 2. 1 **Steering gear control system** means the equipment by which orders are transmitted from the navigating bridge to the steering gear power units. Steering gear control systems comprise transmitters, receivers, hydraulic control pumps and their associated motors, motor controllers, piping and cables.

1. 2. 2 **Main steering gear** means the machinery, rudder actuator(s), the steering gear power units, if any, and ancillary equipment and the means of applying torque to the rudder stock (e.g. tiller or quadrant) necessary for effecting movement of the rudder for the purpose of steering the ship under normal service conditions.

1. 2. 3 **Steering gear power unit** means:

a. in the case of electric steering gear, an electric motor and its associated electrical equipment;
b. in the case of electrohydraulic steering gear, an electric motor and its associated electrical equipment and connected pump;
c. in the case of other hydraulic steering gear, a driving engine and connected pump.

1. 2. 4 **Auxiliary steering gear** means the equipment other than any part of the main steering gear necessary to steer the ship in the event of failure of the main steering gear but not including the tiller, quadrant or components serving the same purpose.

1. 2. 5 **Power actuating system** means the hydraulic equipment provided for supplying power to turn the rudder stock, comprising a steering gear power unit or units, together with the associated pipes and fittings, and a rudder actuator. The power actuating systems may share common mechanical components, i.e. tiller quadrant and rudder stock, or components serving the same purpose.

1. 2. 6 **Maximum ahead service speed** means the maximum service speed which the ship is designed to maintain, at the summer load waterline at maximum propeller RPM and corresponding engine MCR.

1. 2. 7 **Rudder actuator** means the components which convert directly hydraulic pressure into mechanical action to move the rudder.

1. 2. 8 **Maximum working pressure** means the maximum expected pressure in the system when the steering gear is operated to comply with Pt 5, Ch 19, 2.2 Performance requirements for rudder-type steering systems 2.2.1.a.

1. 2. 9 **Steering system** means a complete system of sub-systems and equipment capable of steering the ship including: the rudder (or podded propulsion unit, azimuth thruster, steerable water jet as applicable), main steering gear, auxiliary steering gear and steering gear control system.

1. 2. 10 **Declared steering angle limits** are the operational limits in terms of maximum steering angle, or equivalent, according to manufacturer's guidelines for safe operation, also taking into account the vessels speed or propeller torque/speed or other limitation

1. 3 General

1. 3. 1 The steering gear is to be secured to the seating by fitted bolts, and suitable chocking arrangements are to be provided. The seating is to be of substantial construction.

1. 3. 2 The steering gear compartment is to be:

a. readily accessible and, as far as practicable, separated from machinery spaces; and
b. provided with suitable arrangements to ensure working access to steering gear machinery and controls. These arrangements are to include handrails and gratings or other non-slip surfaces to ensure suitable working conditions in the event of hydraulic fluid leakage.

1. 4 Plans

1. 4. 1 Before starting construction, the steering gear machinery plans, specifications and calculations are to be submitted. The plans are to give:

a. Details of scantlings and materials of all load bearing and torque transmitting components and hydraulic pressure retaining parts together with proposed rated torque and all relief valve settings.
b. Schematic of the hydraulic system(s), together with pipe material, relief valves and working pressures.
c. Details of control and electrical aspects.

1. 5 Materials

1. 5. 1 All components used in the steering system are to be of sound reliable construction to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

1. 5. 2 All components transmitting mechanical forces to the rudder stock are to be tested according to the requirements of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials (hereinafter referred to as the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials).

1. 5. 3 Ram cylinders; pressure housings of rotary vane type actuators, hydraulic power piping, valves, flanges and fittings; and all steering gear components transmitting mechanical forces to the rudder stock (such as tillers, quadrants, or similar components) are to be of steel or other approved ductile material, duly tested in accordance with the requirements of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials. In general, such material is to have an elongation of not less than 12 per cent nor a tensile strength in excess of 650 N/mm^2. Special consideration will be given to the acceptance of grey cast iron for valve bodies and redundant parts with low stress levels.

1. 5. 4 Where appropriate, consideration will be given to the acceptance of non-ferrous material.

1. 6 Rudder, rudder stock, tiller and quadrant

1. 6. 1 For the requirements of rudder and rudder stock, *See* Pt 3, Ch 13, 2 Rudders.

1. 6. 2 For the requirements of tillers and quadrants including the tiller to stock connection, *See* Table 19. 1. 1: Connection of tiller to stock.

1. 6. 3 In bow rudders having a vertical locking pin operated from the deck above, positive means are to be provided to ensure that the pin can be lowered only when the rudder is exactly central. In addition, an indicator is to be fitted at the deck to show when the rudder is exactly central.

1. 6. 4 The factor of safety against slippage, S (i.e. for torque transmission by friction) is generally based on

$$S = \frac{\text{the torque transmissible by friction}}{M}$$

where M is the maximum torque at the relief valve pressure which is generally equal to the design torque as specified by the steering gear manufacturer.

1. 6. 5 For conical sections, S is based on the following equation:

$$S = \frac{\mu A \sigma_r}{\sqrt{(W + A\sigma_r\theta)^2 + Q^2}}$$

where

A = interfacial surface area, in mm^2

W = weight of rudder and stock, if applicable, when tending to separate the fit, in N

Q = shear force $= \frac{2M}{d_m}$ in N

where

d_m in mm is the mean contact diameter of tiller/stock interface and M in Nmm is defined in Pt 5, Ch 19, 1.6 Rudder, rudder stock, tiller and quadrant 1.6.4

θ = cone taper half angle in radians (e.g. for cone taper 1:10, $\theta = 0.05$)

μ = coefficient of friction

σ_r = radial interfacial pressure or grip stress, in N/mm^2.

Table 19. 1. 1: Connection of tiller to stock

Item	Requirements
(1) Dry fit - tiller to stock, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 19, 1.6 Rudder, rudder stock, tiller and quadrant 1.6.4 and Pt 5, Ch 19, 1.6 Rudder, rudder stock, tiller and quadrant 1.6.5	(a) or keyed connection, factor of safety against slippage, $S = 1.0$ The maximum stress in the fillet radius of the tiller keyway should not exceed the yield stress For conical sections, the cone taper should be ≤ 1:10 (b) For keyless connection, factor of safety against slippage, $S = 2.0$ The maximum equivalent von Mises stress should not exceed the yield stress For conical sections, the cone taper should be ≤ 1:15 (c) Coefficient of friction (maximum) = 0.17 (d) Grip stress not to be less than 20 N/mm^2

(2) Hydraulic fit - tiller to stock, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 19, 1.6 Rudder, rudder stock, tiller and quadrant 1.6.4 and Pt 5, Ch 19, 1.6 Rudder, rudder stock, tiller and quadrant 1.6.5	(a) For keyed connection, factor of safety against slippage, $S = 1.0$ The maximum stress in the fillet radius of the tiller keyway should not exceed the yield stress For conical sections, the cone taper should be ≤ 1:10 (b) For keyless connection, factor of safety against slippage, $S = 2.0$ The maximum equivalent von Mises stress should not exceed the yield stress For conical sections, the cone taper should be ≤ 1:15 (c) Coefficient of friction (maximum) = 0.14 (d) Grip stress not to be less than 20 N/mm^2
(3) Ring locking assemblies fit - tiller to stock, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 19, 1.6 Rudder, rudder stock, tiller and quadrant 1.6.3	(a) Factor of safety against slippage, $S = 2.0$ The maximum equivalent von Mises stress should not exceed the yield stress (b) Coefficient of friction = 0.12 (c) Grip stress not to be less than 20 N/mm^2 Shim to be fitted between two halves before machining to take rudder stock, then removed prior to fitting Minimum thickness of shim, For 4 connecting bolts: $t_s = 0.0014\ \delta_t$ mm For 6 connecting bolts: $t_s = 0.0012\ \delta_t$ mm Key(s) to be fitted Diameter of bolts, $$\delta_{tb} = \frac{0.60\delta_t}{\sqrt{n_{tb}}}\ \text{mm}$$ A predetermined setting-up load equivalent to a stress of approximately 0.7 of the yield strength of the bolt material should be applied to each bolt on assembly. A lower stress may be accepted provided that two keys, complying with item (5), are fitted. Distance from centre of stock to centre of bolts should generally be equal to $$\delta_t\left(1.0 + \frac{0.30}{\sqrt{n_{tb}}}\right)\text{mm}$$ Thickness of flange on each half of the bolted tiller $\geq \frac{0.66\delta_t}{\sqrt{n_{tb}}}$ mm
(4) Bolted tiller and quadrant (this arrangement could be accepted provided the proposed rudder stock diameter in way of tiller does not exceed 350 mm diameter), *See* symbols	
(5) Key/keyway, *See* symbols	Effective sectional area of key in shear $\geq 0.25\delta_t^2$ mm^2 Key thickness ≥ 0.17 δ_t mm Keyway is to extend over full depth of tiller and is to have a rounded end. Keyway root fillets are to be provided with suitable radii to avoid high local stress
(6) Section modulus - tiller arm (at any point within its length about vertical axis), *See* symbols	To be not less than the greater of: $$z_{TA} = \frac{0.15\delta_t^3(b_T - b_s)}{1000b_T}\ \text{cm}^3$$ $$Z_{TA} = \frac{0.06\ \delta_t^3(b_T - 0.9\ \delta_t)}{1000b_T}\text{cm}^3$$ If more than one arm fitted, combined modulus is to be not less than the greater of (a) or (b) For solid tillers, the breadth to depth ratio is not to exceed 2
(7) Boss, *See* symbols	Depth of boss ≥ δ_t Thickness of boss in way of tiller ≥ 0.4 δ_t

Symbols

b_s = distance between the section of the tiller arm under consideration and the centre of the rudder stock, in mm

b_T and b_s are to be measured with zero rudder angle

b_T = distance from the point of application of the load on the tiller to the centre of the rudder stock, in mm

n_{tb} = number of bolts in the connection flanges, but generally not to be taken greater than six

t_s = thickness of shim for machining bolted tillers and quadrants, in mm

Z_{TA} = section modulus of tiller arm, in cm^3

δ_t = Rule rudderstock diameter in way of tiller, *See* Pt 3, Ch 13 Ship Control Systems

δ_{tb} = diameter of bolts securing bolted tillers and quadrants, in mm

PART

5

CHAPTER **19 Steering Systems**

SECTION **2 Performance**

2. 1 General

2. 1. 1 Main and auxiliary steering gear for rudder-type steering systems are to meet the performance requirements in Pt 5, Ch 19, 2.2, Performance requirements for rudder-type steering systems. Steering performance on ships fitted with steerable podded propulsion systems is to comply with Pt 5, Ch 16, 3.7, Nozzle/steering arrangements in addition to the requirements of this Chapter, as applicable. Steering performance on ships fitted with steerable water jet systems is to comply with Pt 5, Ch 16, 3.7, Nozzle/steering arrangements in addition to the requirements of this Chapter, as applicable. Steering performance on ships fitted with azimuth thruster systems is to comply with Pt 5, Ch 20, 2.1, General in addition to the requirements of this Chapter, as applicable.

2. 1. 2 Unless the main steering arrangements for ship directional control comprise two or more identical power units, in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 19, 2.1 General 2.1.4 or Pt 5, Ch 19, 8.1 For tankers, chemical tankers, or gas carriers of 10 000 tons gross and upwards and every other ship of 70 000 tons gross and upwards 8.1.1, every ship is to be provided with main steering arrangements and auxiliary steering arrangements in accordance with the requirements of the Rules. The main and auxiliary steering arrangements are to be so arranged that the failure of one of them will not render the other one inoperative.

2. 1. 3 The main and auxilairy steering gear is to be:

a. Arranged to re-start automatically when power is restored after power failure;
b. Capable of being brought into operation from a position on the navigating bridge. In the event of a power failure to any one of the steering gear power units, an audible and visual alarm is to be given on the navigating bridge;
c. Arranged so that transfer between units can be readily effected.

2. 1. 4 Where the steering arrangements are such that more than one power or control system can be simultaneously operated, the risk of hydraulic locking caused by a single failure is to be considered.

2. 1. 5 A means of communication is to be provided between the navigating bridge and the steering gear compartment.

2. 1. 6 Steering gear, other than of the hydraulic type, will be accepted provided the standards are considered equivalent to the requirements of this Section.

2. 1. 7 Manually operated gears are only acceptable when the operation does not require an effort exceeding 16 kg under normal conditions.

2. 2 Performance requirements for rudder-type steering systems

2. 2. 1 The main steering gear is to be:

a. Of adequate strength and capable of putting the rudder over from 35° on one side to 35° on the other side with the ship at its deepest sea-going draught and running ahead at maximum ahead service speed and under the same conditions, from 35° on either side to 30° on the other side in not more than 28 seconds which shall be demonstrated in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 19, 7.2, Trials; and
b. Operated by power where necessary to meet the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 19, 2.2 Performance requirements for rudder-type steering systems 2.2.1.a and in any case when the Rules excluding strengthening for navigation in ice, require a rudder stock over 120 mm diameter in way of the tiller; and
c. So designed that they will not be damaged at maximum astern speed; however, this design requirement need not be proved by trials at maximum astern speed and maximum rudder angle.

2. 2. 2 The auxiliary steering gear is to be:

a. Capable of being brought speedily into action in an emergency; and
b. Of adequate strength and capable of putting the rudder over from 15° on one side to 15° on the other side in not more than 60 seconds with the ship at its deepest sea-going draught and running ahead at one half of the maximum ahead service speed or 7 knots, whichever is the greater; and
c. Operated by power where necessary to meet the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 19, 2.2 Performance requirements for rudder-type steering systems 2.2.2.b and in any case when the Rules, excluding strengthening for navigation in ice, require a rudder stock over 230 mm diameter in way of the tiller.

2. 2. 3 Where the main steering gear comprises two or more identical power units, auxiliary steering arrangements need not be fitted, provided that:

a. In cargo ships, the main steering gear is capable of operating the ship's rudder as required by Pt 5, Ch 19, 2.2 Performance requirements for rudder-type steering systems 2.2.1.a while operating with all power units;
b. In passenger ships, the main steering gear is capable of operating the ship's rudder as required by Pt 5, Ch 19, 2.2 Performance requirements for rudder-type steering systems 2.2.1.a while any one of the power units is out of operation;
c. The main steering gear are arranged so that after a single failure in its piping system or in one of the power units the defect can be isolated so that steering capability can be maintained or speedily regained.

2. 3 Rudder angle limiters

2. 3. 1 Power-operated steering gears are to be provided with positive arrangements, such as limit switches, for stopping the gear before the rudder stops are reached. These arrangements are to be synchronised with the gear itself and not with the steering gear control.

PART

5

CHAPTER **19 Steering Systems**

SECTION **3 Construction and design**

3. 1 General

3. 1. 1 Rudder actuators other than those covered by Pt 5, Ch 19, 8.3 For tankers, chemical tankers or gas carriers of 10 000 tons gross and upwards but of less than 100 000 tons deadweight and the `Guidelines' are to be designed in accordance with the relevant requirements of Pt 5, Ch 11 Other Pressure Vessels for Class I pressure vessels (notwithstanding any exemptions for hydraulic cylinders).

3. 1. 2 Accumulators, if fitted, are to comply with the relevant requirements of Pt 5, Ch 11 Other Pressure Vessels.

3. 1. 3 The welding details and welding procedures are to be approved. All welded joints within the pressure boundary of a rudder actuator or connecting parts transmitting mechanical loads are to be full penetration type or of equivalent strength.

3. 1. 4 The construction is to be such as to minimise local concentrations of stress.

3. 1. 5 The design pressure for calculations to determine the scantlings of piping and other steering gear components subjected to internal hydraulic pressure shall be at least 1.25 times the maximum working pressure to be expected under the operational conditions specified in Pt 5, Ch 19, 2.2 Performance requirements for rudder-type steering systems 2.2.1.a taking into account any pressure which may exist in the low pressure side of the system. Fatigue criteria may be applied for the design of piping and components, taking into account pulsating pressures due to dynamic loads, *See* Pt 5, Ch 19, 9 'Guidelines' for the acceptance of non-duplicated rudder actuators for tankers, chemical tankers and gas carriers of 10 000 tons gross and upwards but of less than 100 000 tons deadweight.

3. 1. 6 For the rudder actuator, the permissible primary general membrane stress is not to exceed the lower of the following values:

$$\frac{\sigma_B}{A} \text{ or } \frac{\sigma_y}{B}$$

where

σ_B = specified minimum tensile strength of material at ambient temperature

σ_y = specified minimum yield stress or 0.2 per cent proof stress of the material, at ambient temperature

A and *B* are given by the following Table:

	Wrought steel	*Cast steel*	*Nodular cast iron*
A	3.5	4	5

B 1.7 2 3

3. 2 Components

3. 2. 1 Special consideration is to be given to the suitability of any essential component which is not duplicated. Any such essential component shall, where appropriate, utilise anti-friction bearings such as ball bearings, roller bearings or sleeve bearings which shall be permanently lubricated or provided with lubrication fittings.

3. 2. 2 All steering gear components transmitting mechanical forces to the rudder stock, which are not protected against overload by structural rudder stops or mechanical buffers, are to have a strength at least equivalent to that of the rudder stock in way of the tiller.

3. 2. 3 Actuator oil seals between non-moving parts, forming part of the external pressure boundary, are to be of the metal upon metal type or of an equivalent type.

3. 2. 4 Actuator oil seals between moving parts, forming part of the external pressure boundary, are to be duplicated, so that the failure of one seal does not render the actuator inoperative. Alternative arrangements providing equivalent protection against leakage may be accepted.

3. 2. 5 Piping, joints, valves, flanges and other fittings are to comply within the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 12 Piping Design Requirements for Class I piping systems components. The design pressure is to be in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 19, 3.1 General 3.1.5.

3. 2. 6 Hydraulic power operated steering gear are to be provided with the following :

a. Arrangements to maintain the cleanliness of the hydraulic fluid taking into consideration the type and design of the hydraulic system;
b. A fixed storage tank having sufficient capacity to recharge at least one power actuating system including the reservoir, where the main steering gear is required to be power operated. The storage tank is to be permanently connected by piping in such a manner that the hydraulic systems can be readily recharged from a position within the steering gear compartment and provided with a contents gauge.

3. 3 Valve and relief valve arrangements

3. 3. 1 For vessels with non-duplicated actuators, isolating valves are to be fitted at the connection of pipes to the actuator, and are to be directly fitted on the actuator.

3. 3. 2 Arrangements for bleeding air from the hydraulic system are to be provided, where necessary.

3. 3. 3 Relief valves are to be fitted to any part of the hydraulic system which can be isolated and in which pressure can be generated from the power source or from external forces. The settings of the relief valves is not to exceed the design pressure. The valves are to be of adequate size and so arranged as to avoid an undue rise in pressure above the design pressure.

3. 3. 4 Relief valves for protecting any part of the hydraulic system which can be isolated, as required by Pt 5, Ch 19, 3.3 Valve and relief valve arrangements 3.3.3 are to comply with the following:

a. The setting pressure is not to be less than 1.25 times the maximum working pressure.
b. the minimum discharge capacity of the relief valve(s) is not to be less than 110 per cent of the total capacity of the pumps which can deliver through it (them).

Under such conditions the rise in pressure is not to exceed 10 per cent of the setting pressure. In this regard, due consideration is to be given to extreme fore*See*n ambient conditions in respect of oil viscosity.

3. 4 Flexible hoses

3. 4. 1 Hose assemblies approved by ACS may be installed between two points where flexibility is required but are not to be subjected to torsional deflection (twisting) under normal operating conditions. In general, the hose should be limited to the length necessary to provide for flexibility and for proper operation of machinery, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 12, 7 Flexible hoses.

3. 4. 2 Hoses should be high pressure hydraulic hoses according to recognised Standards and suitable for the fluids, pressures, temperatures and ambient conditions in question.

3. 4. 3 Burst pressure of hoses is to be not less than four times the design pressure.

PART

5

CHAPTER **19 Steering Systems**

SECTION **4 Steering control systems**

4. 1 General

4. 1. 1 The steering control system is to comply with Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems.

4. 1. 2 Steering gear control is to be provided:

a. For the main steering gear, both on the navigating bridge and in the steering gear compartment;

b. Where the main steering gear is arranged according to Pt 5, Ch 19, 2.1 General 2.1.4, by two independent control systems, both operable from the navigating bridge. This does not require duplication of the steering wheel or steering lever. Where the control system consists of a hydraulic telemotor, a second independent system need not be fitted, except in a tanker, chemical tanker or gas carrier of 10 000 gross tonnage and upwards;

c. For the auxiliary steering gear, in the steering gear compartment and, if power operated, it shall also be operable from the navigating bridge and is to be independent of the control system for the main steering gear.

d. Where the steering gear is so arranged that more than one control system can be simultaneously operated, the risk of hydraulic locking caused by single failure is to be considered.

4. 1. 3 Any main and auxiliary steering gear control system operable from the navigating bridge is to comply with the following:

a. Means are to be provided in the steering gear compartment for disconnecting any control system operable from the navigating bridge from the steering gear it serves;

b. The system is to be capable of being brought into operation from a position on the navigating bridge.

4. 1. 4 The angular position of the rudder shall:

a. If the main steering gear is power operated, be indicated on the navigating bridge. The rudder angle indication is to be independent of the steering gear control system;

b. Be recognisable in the steering gear compartment.

4. 1. 5 Appropriate operating instructions with a block diagram showing the changeover procedures for steering gear control systems and steering gear actuating systems are to be permanently displayed in the wheelhouse and in the steering gear compartment.

4. 1. 6 Arrangements for failure detection are to be provided with self-monitoring capabilities. In the event of failure being detected, an audible and individual visual alarm is to be initiated on the navigating bridge. *See* Pt 5, Ch 19, 5.3, Monitoring and alarms. Where system failure alarms for hydraulic lock, *See* Table 19. 5. 1: Alarms, are provided, appropriate instructions are to be placed on the navigating bridge to shut down the system at fault.

4. 1. 7 In the event of detecting a control system failure, which is likely to cause uncontrolled rudder movements, *See* Table 19. 5. 1: Alarms, the rudder is to retain its position at the time of failure. Alternatively, consideration will be given to the rudder moving to and retaining a position which is necessary for safe navigation of the vessel or to return to the mid-ship position where technical justification is submitted and is found to be satisfactory.

PART

5

CHAPTER **19** **Steering Systems**

SECTION **5** **Electric power circuits, electric control circuits, monitoring and alarms**

5. 1 Electric power circuits

5. 1. 1 In addition to this section, the control and electrical installation is to comply with Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems and Pt 6, Ch 2 Electrical Engineering.

5. 1. 2 Short-circuit protection, an overload alarm and, in the case of polyphase circuits, an alarm to indicate single phasing is to be provided for each main and auxiliary motor circuit. Protective devices are to operate at not less than twice the full load current of the motor or circuit protected and are to allow excess current to pass during the normal accelerating period of the motors.

5. 1. 3 Where steering gear motor circuits are supplied by converters, consideration will be given to arrangements that provide an equivalent level of safety, reliability, availability and indication to those specified in Pt 5, Ch 19, 5.1 Electric power circuits 5.1.2, provided that technical justification is submitted.

5. 1. 4 The alarms required by Pt 5, Ch 19, 5.1 Electric power circuits 5.1.2 are to be provided on the bridge and in the main machinery space or control room from which the main machinery is normally controlled.

5. 1. 5 Indicators for running indication of each main and auxiliary motor are to be installed on the navigating bridge and at a suitable main machinery control position.

5. 1. 6 A low-level alarm is to be provided for each power actuating system hydraulic fluid reservoir to give the earliest practicable indication of hydraulic fluid leakage. Alarms are to be given on the navigation bridge and in the machinery space where they can be readily observed.

5. 1. 7 Two exclusive circuits are to be provided for each electric or electrohydraulic steering gear arrangement consisting of one or more electric motors.

5. 1. 8 Each of these circuits is to be fed from the main switchboard. One of these circuits may pass through the emergency switchboard.

5. 1. 9 One of these circuits may be connected to the motor of an associated auxiliary electric or electrohydraulic power unit.

5. 1. 10 Each of these circuits is to have adequate capacity to supply all the motors which can be connected to it and which can operate simultaneously.

5. 1. 11 These circuits are to be separated throughout their length as widely as is practicable.

5. 1. 12 For a ship fitted with multiple steering systems, Pt 5, Ch 19, 5.1 Electric power circuits 5.1.6 to Pt 5, Ch 19, 5.1 Electric power circuits 5.1.11 are to be applied to each of the steering systems.

5. 1. 13 In ships of less than 1600 gross tonnage, if an auxiliary steering gear is not electrically powered or is powered by an electric motor primarily intended for other services, the main steering gear

may be fed by one circuit from the main switchboard. Consideration would be given to other protective arrangements than described in Pt 5, Ch 19, 5.1 Electric power circuits 5.1.2, for such a motor primarily intended for other services.

5. 2 Electric control circuits

5. 2. 1 Electric control systems are to be independent and separated as far as is practicable throughout their length.

5. 2. 2 Each main and auxiliary electric control system which is to be operated from the navigating bridge is to comply with the following:

a. It is to be served with electric power by a separate circuit supplied from the associated steering gear power circuit, from a point within the steering gear compartment, or directly from the same section of switchboard busbars, main or emergency, to which the associated steering gear power circuit is connected.

b. Each separate circuit is to be provided with short-circuit protection only.

5. 3 Monitoring and alarms

5. 3. 1 Alarms and monitoring requirements are indicated in Pt 5, Ch 19, 5.3 Monitoring and alarms 5.3.2 and Table 19. 5. 1: Alarms.

Table 19. 5. 1: Alarms

Item	Alarm	Note
Rudder position	—	Indication, *See* Pt 5, Ch 19, 4.1 General 4.1.4
	Failure	*See* Pt 5, Ch 19, 5.3 Monitoring and alarms 5.3.3
Earthing on AC and DC circuits	Fault	If galvanically isolated from the ship's network
Data communication	Error	Where the data deviates from expected value, sequence or timing
Steering gear power units, power	Failure	—
Steering gear motors	Overload, Single phase	For alarm and running indication locations,*See* Pt 5, Ch 19, 5.1 Electric power circuits 5.1.4 and Pt 5, Ch 19, 5.1 Electric power circuits 5.1.5
Control system	Failure	*See* Pt 5, Ch 19, 5.3 Monitoring and alarms 5.3.3
Control system power	Failure	—
Steering gear hydraulic oil tank level	Low	Each reservoir to be monitored. For alarm locations, *See* Pt 5, Ch 19, 5.1 Electric power circuits 5.1.6
Auto pilot	Failure	Running indication
Hydraulic oil temperature	High	Where oil cooler is fitted
Hydraulic lock	Fault	Where more than one system (either power or control) can be operated simultaneously each system is to be monitored, *See* Note
Hydraulic oil filter differential pressure	High	When oil filters are fitted

This alarm is to identify the system at fault and to be activated when (for example):

- position of the variable displacement pump control system does not correspond with given order; or
- incorrect position of 3-way full flow valve or similar in constant delivery pump system is detected.

5. 3. 2 The alarms described in Table 19. 5. 1: Alarms are to be indicated on the navigating bridge and the additional locations described and are to be in accordance with the alarm system specified by Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.3, Alarm systems, general requirements.

5. 3. 3 Steering control systems are to be monitored and an audible and visual alarm is to be initiated on the navigation bridge in the event of:

- failure of the control system, including command and feedback circuits; or
- unacceptable deviation between the rudder order and actual rudder position and/or unacceptable delay in response to changes in the rudder order.

PART

5

CHAPTER **19 Steering Systems**

SECTION **6 Emergency power**

6. 1 General

6. 1. 1 The requirements of Pt 5, Ch 19, 6.1, General apply to steering systems with:

a. A rudder-type steering system where the rudder stock is required to be over 230 mm diameter in way of the tiller, excluding strengthening for navigation in ice; or

b. Steerable podded propulsion units or steerable water jet systems where the power per propulsion unit exceeds 2500 kW and the podded propulsion unit or steerable water jet has a proven steering capability due to vessel velocity even when propulsion power has failed.

6. 1. 2 An alternative power supply, sufficient at least to supply the steering system which comply with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 19, 2.2 Performance requirements for rudder-type steering systems 2.2.3 and also its associated control system and the steering angle indicator, is to be provided automatically, within 45 seconds, either from the emergency source of electrical power or from an independent source of power located in the steering gear compartment. This independent source of power shall be used only for this purpose.

6. 1. 3 In every ship of 10 000 gross tonnage and upwards, the alternative power supply shall have a capacity for at least 30 minutes of continuous operation and in any other ship for at least 10 minutes.

6. 1. 4 Where the alternative power source is a generator, or an engine driven pump, starting arrangements are to comply with the requirements relating to the starting arrangements of emergency generators.

PART

5

CHAPTER **19 Steering Systems**

SECTION **7 Testing and trials**

7. 1 Testing

7. 1. 1 The requirements of the Rules relating to the testing of Class 1 pressure vessels, piping, and related fittings including hydraulic testing apply.

7. 1. 2 After installation on board the vessel the steering gear is to be subjected to the required hydrostatic and running tests.

7. 1. 3 Each type of power unit pump is to be subjected to a type test. The type test shall be for a duration of not less than 100 hours, the test arrangements are to be such that the pump may run in idling conditions, and at maximum delivery capacity at maximum working pressure. During the test, idling periods are to be alternated with periods at maximum delivery capacity at maximum working pressure. The passage from one condition to another should occur at least as quickly as on board. During the whole test no abnormal heating, excessive vibration or other irregularities are permitted. After the test, the pump is to be opened out and inspected. Type tests may be waived for a power unit which has been proven to be reliable in marine service.

7. 2 Trials

7. 2. 1 The steering gear is to be tested on the trial trip in order to demonstrate to the Surveyor's satisfaction that the requirements of the Rules have been met. The trial is to include the operation of the following:

a. The steering gear:

- For the main steering gear trial, the propeller pitch of controllable pitch propellers is to be at the maximum design pitch approved for the maximum continuous ahead RPM;
- If the ship cannot be tested at the deepest draught, then the loading condition can be accepted on the conditions that either the rudder is fully submerged (at zero speed waterline) and the vessel is in an acceptable trim condition, or the rudder torque at the trial loading condition has been reliably predicted and extrapolated to the full load condition, to the satisfaction of the Administration. In any case, for the main steering gear trial, the speed of the ship corresponding to the maximum continuous revolutions of main engine and maximum design pitch applies;
- Depending on the steering system type the performance required by the following is to be demonstrated:

  i. Where a rudder type steering system is fitted *See* Pt 5, Ch 19, 2.2 Performance requirements for rudder-type steering systems 2.2.1.a and Pt 5, Ch 19, 2.2 Performance requirements for rudder-type steering systems 2.2.1.b

  ii. Where a podded propulsion steering system is fitted *See*

Pt 5, Ch 9, 5.6 Steering system 5.6.4.a and
Pt 5, Ch 9, 5.6 Steering system 5.6.5.b

iii. Where a water jet steering system is fitted *See*
Pt 5, Ch 16, 3.7 Nozzle/steering arrangements 3.7.3.a, and
Pt 5, Ch 16, 3.7 Nozzle/steering arrangements 3.7.4.b

iv. Where an azimuth thruster steering system is fitted *See*
Pt 5, Ch 20, 2.1 General 2.1.4.a
Pt 5, Ch 20, 2.1 General 2.1.5.b

b. The steering gear power units, including transfer between steering gear power units;
c. The isolation of one power actuating system, checking the time for regaining steering capability;
d. The hydraulic fluid recharging system;
e. The emergency power supply required by Pt 5, Ch 19, 6.1 General 6.1.2;
f. The steering gear controls, including transfer of control and local control;
g. The means of communication between the steering gear compartment and the wheelhouse, also the engine room, if applicable;
h. The alarms and indicators;
i. Where the steering gear is designed to avoid hydraulic locking this feature shall be demonstrated.

Test items Pt 5, Ch 19, 7.2 Trials 7.2.1.d, Pt 5, Ch 19, 7.2 Trials 7.2.1.g, Pt 5, Ch 19, 7.2 Trials 7.2.1.h and Pt 5, Ch 19, 7.2 Trials 7.2.1.i may be effected at the dockside.

7. 2. 2 The ability of the machinery to reverse the direction of thrust in sufficient time and bring the ship to rest within a reasonable distance from maximum ahead service speed is to be demonstrated and recorded.

7. 2. 3 The stopping times, ship headings and distances recorded on trials, together with the results of trials to determine the ability of ships having multiple propulsion/steering arrangements to navigate and manoeuvre with one or more of these devices inoperative, shall be available on board for the use of the Master or designated personnel.

PART

5

CHAPTER **19 Steering Systems**

SECTION **8 Additional requirements**

8. 1 For tankers, chemical tankers, or gas carriers of 10 000 tons gross and upwards and every other ship of 70 000 tons gross and upwards

8. 1. 1 The main steering gear is to comprise two or more identical power units complying with provisions of Pt 5, Ch 19, 2.2 Performance requirements for rudder-type steering systems 2.2.3.

8. 2 For tankers, chemical tankers or gas carriers of 10 000 tons gross and upwards

8. 2. 1 Subject to Pt 5, Ch 19, 8.3 For tankers, chemical tankers or gas carriers of 10 000 tons gross and upwards but of less than 100 000 tons deadweight the following are to be complied with:

a. The main steering gear is to be so arranged that in the event of loss of steering capability due to a single failure in any part of one of the power actuating systems of the main steering gear, excluding the tiller, quadrant or components serving the same purpose, or seizure of the rudder actuators, steering capability is to be regained in not more than 45 seconds after the loss of one power actuating system.

b. The main steering gear is to comprise either:

i. two independent and separate power actuating systems, each capable of meeting the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 19, 2.2 Performance requirements for rudder-type steering systems 2.2.1.a; or

ii. at least two identical power actuating systems which, acting simultaneously in normal operation, are capable of meeting the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 19, 2.2 Performance requirements for rudder-type steering systems 2.2.1.a. Where necessary to comply with these requirements, inter-connection of hydraulic power actuating systems is to be provided. Loss of hydraulic fluid from one system is to be capable of being detected and the defective system automatically isolated so that the other actuating system or systems remain fully operational.

c. Steering gears other than of the hydraulic type are to achieve equivalent Standards.

8. 3 For tankers, chemical tankers or gas carriers of 10 000 tons gross and upwards but of less than 100 000 tons deadweight

8. 3. 1 Solutions other than those set out in Pt 5, Ch 19, 8.2 For tankers, chemical tankers or gas carriers of 10 000 tons gross and upwards 8.2.1 which need not apply the single failure criterion to the rudder actuator or actuators, may be permitted provided that an equivalent safety Standard is achieved and that:

a. Following loss of steering capability due to a single failure of any part of the piping system or in one of the power units, steering capability is regained within 45 seconds; and

b. Where the steering gear includes only a single rudder actuator special consideration is given to stress analysis for the design including fatigue analysis and fracture mechanics analysis, as appropriate, the material used, the installation of sealing arrangements and the testing and inspection and provision of effective maintenance. In consideration of the foregoing, regard will be given to the `Guidelines' in Pt 5, Ch 19, 9 'Guidelines' for the acceptance of non-duplicated rudder actuators for tankers, chemical tankers and gas carriers of 10 000 tons gross and upwards but of less than 100 000 tons deadweight.

8. 3. 2 Manufacturers of steering gear who intend their product to comply with the requirements of the `Guidelines' are to submit full details when plans are forwarded for approval.

PART

5

CHAPTER **19** **Steering Systems**

SECTION **9** **'Guidelines' for the acceptance of non-duplicated rudder actuators for tankers, chemical tankers and gas carriers of 10 000 tons gross and upwards but of less than 100 000 tons deadweight**

9. 1 Materials

9. 1. 1 Parts subject to internal hydraulic pressure or transmitting mechanical forces to the rudder-stock are to be made of duly tested ductile materials complying with recognised Standards. Materials for pressure retaining components are to be in accordance with recognised pressure vessel Standards. These materials are not to have an elongation less than 12 per cent nor a tensile strength in excess of 650 N/mm^2.

9. 2 Design

9. 2. 1 **Design pressure.** The design pressure should be assumed to be at least equal to the greater of the following:

a. 1.25 times the maximum working pressure to be expected under the operating conditions required in Pt 5, Ch 19, 2.2 Performance requirements for rudder-type steering systems 2.2.1.a.

b. The relief valve(s) setting.

9. 2. 2 **Analysis.** In order to analyse the design the following are required:

a. The manufacturers of rudder actuators should submit detailed calculations showing the suitability of the design for the intended service.

b. A detailed stress analysis of pressure retaining parts of the actuator should be carried out to determine the stresses at the design pressure.

c. Where considered necessary because of the design complexity or manufacturing procedures, a fatigue analysis and fracture mechanics analysis may be required. In connection with these analyses, all fore*See*n dynamic loads should be taken into account. Experimental stress analysis may be required in addition to, or in lieu of, theoretical calculations depending upon the complexity of the design.

9. 2. 3 **Dynamic loads for fatigue and fracture mechanics analysis.** The assumption for dynamic loading for fatigue and fracture mechanics analysis where required by Pt 5, Ch 19, 3.1 General 3.1.5, Pt 5, Ch 19, 8.3 For tankers, chemical tankers or gas carriers of 10 000 tons gross and upwards but of less than 100 000 tons deadweight and Pt 5, Ch 19, 9.2 Design 9.2.2 are to be submitted for appraisal. Both the case of high cycle and cumulative fatigue are to be considered.

9. 2. 4 **Allowable stresses.** For the purpose of determining the general scantlings of parts of rudder actuators subject to internal hydraulic pressure the allowable stresses should not exceed:

$$\sigma_m \leq f,$$
$$\sigma_l \leq 1.5f,$$
$$\sigma_b \leq 1.5f,$$
$$\sigma_l + \sigma_b \leq 1.5f,$$
$$\sigma_m + \sigma_b \leq 1.5f$$

where

$$f = \text{the lesser of } \frac{\sigma_B}{A} \text{ or } \frac{\sigma_y}{B}$$

σ_b = equivalent primary bending stress

σ_m = equivalent primary general membrane stress

σ_y = specified minimum yield stress or 0.2 per cent proof stress of material at ambient temperature

σ_B = specified minimum tensile strength of material at ambient temperature

σ_l = equivalent primary local membrane stress

A and *B* are as follows:

	Wrought steel	*Cast steel*	*Nodular cast iron*
A	4	4.6	5.8
B	2	2.3	3.5

9. 2. 5 **Burst test.** Pressure retaining parts not requiring fatigue analysis and fracture mechanics analysis may be accepted on the basis of a certified burst test and the detailed stress analysis required by Pt 5, Ch 19, 9.2 Design 9.2.2 need not be provided.

The minimum bursting pressure should be calculated as follows:

$$P_b = PA\frac{\sigma_{Ba}}{\sigma_B}$$

where

A = as from table in Pt 5, Ch 19, 9.2 Design 9.2.4

P = design pressure as defined in Pt 5, Ch 19, 9.2 Design 9.2.1

P_b = minimum bursting pressure

σ_B = tensile strength as defined in Pt 5, Ch 19, 9.2 Design 9.2.4

σ_{Ba} = actual tensile strength.

9. 3 Construction details

9. 3. 1 **General.** The construction should be such as to minimise local concentrations of stress.

9. 3. 2 **Welds.**

a. The welding details and welding procedures should be approved.

b. All welded joints within the pressure boundary of a rudder actuator or connection parts transmitting mechanical loads should be full penetration type or of equivalent strength.

9. 3. 3 **Oil seals.** Oil seals forming part of the external pressure boundary are to comply with Pt 5, Ch 19, 3.2 Components 3.2.3 and Pt 5, Ch 19, 3.2 Components 3.2.4.

9. 3. 4 **Isolating valves** are to be fitted at the connection of pipes to the actuator, and should be directly mounted on the actuator.

9. 3. 5 **Relief valves** for protecting the rudder actuator against over-pressure as required in Pt 5, Ch 19, 3.3 Valve and relief valve arrangements 3.3.3 are to comply with the following:

a. The setting pressure is not to be less than 1.25 times the maximum working pressure expected under operating conditions required by Pt 5, Ch 19, 2.2 Performance requirements for rudder-type steering systems 2.2.1.a.

b. The minimum discharge capacity of the relief valve(s) is to be not less than 110 per cent of the total capacity of all pumps which provide power for the actuator. Under such conditions the rise in pressure should not exceed 10 per cent of the setting pressure. In this regard due consideration should be given to extreme fore*See*n ambient conditions in respect of oil viscosity.

9. 4 Non-destructive testing

9. 4. 1 The rudder actuator should be subjected to suitable and complete non-destructive testing to detect both surface flaws and volumetric flaws. The procedure and acceptance criteria for non-destructive testing should be in accordance with requirements of recognised Standards. If found necessary, fracture mechanics analysis may be used for determining maximum allowable flaw size.

9. 5 Testing

9. 5. 1 Tests, including hydrostatic tests, of all pressure parts at 1.5 times the design pressure should be carried out subject to any limitations imposed by valves and other components. Where additional testing of systems or subsystems following final assembly is required, the test pressure may be subject to any limitations imposed by valves and other components.

9. 5. 2 When installed on board the ship, the rudder actuator should be subjected to a hydrostatic test at the pressure defined in Pt 5, Ch 19, 9.5 Testing 9.5.1 and a running test.

9. 6 Additional requirements for steering gear fitted to ships with Ice Class notations

9. 6. 1 *See* Pt 3, Ch 9 Special Features.

PART

5

CHAPTER **20 Azimuth Thrusters**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General requirements**		**2576**
	1. 1	Application	2576
	1. 2	Plans	2576
	1. 3	Condition Monitoring	2576
SECTION 2	**Performance**		**2577**
	2. 1	General	2577
SECTION 3	**Construction and design**		**2579**
	3. 1	Materials	2579
	3. 2	Design	2579
	3. 3	Steering gear elements	2580
	3. 4	Components	2581
SECTION 4	**Control engineering arrangements**		**2582**
	4. 1	General	2582
	4. 2	Monitoring and alarms	2582
SECTION 5	**Electrical equipment**		**2583**
	5. 1	General	2583
	5. 2	Generating arrangements	2583
	5. 3	Distribution arrangements	2583
	5. 4	Auxiliary supplies	2583
SECTION 6	**Testing and trials**		**2584**
	6. 1	General	2584

PART

5

CHAPTER **20 Azimuth Thrusters**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 20. 4. 1: Alarms for control systems 2582

PART

5

CHAPTER **20 Azimuth Thrusters**

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 20. 3. 1: Steerable thruster 2580

PART

5

CHAPTER **20 Azimuth Thrusters**

SECTION **1 General requirements**

1. 1 Application

1. 1. 1 This Chapter applies to azimuth or rotatable thruster units, for propulsion or D.P. duty which transmit a power greater than 220 kW used as the sole means of steering and are in addition to the relevant requirements of Pt 5, Ch 19 Steering Systems.

1. 1. 2 In general, for a vessel to be assigned an unrestricted service notation a minimum of two azimuth thruster units are to be provided where these form the sole means of propulsion. Where a single thruster installation is proposed, it will be subject to special consideration.

1. 2 Plans

1. 2. 1 The following additional plans are to be submitted for consideration together with particulars of materials and the maximum shaft power and revolutions per minute:

- Sectional assembly including nozzle ring structure, nozzle support struts, etc.
- Shafts, gears and couplings.
- Steering mechanisms with details of ratings.
- Bearing specifications.
- Schematic piping systems.

1. 2. 2 The declared steering angle limits are to be stated by manufacturer for each azimuth thruster.

1. 3 Condition Monitoring

1. 3. 1 Where Thruster Condition Monitoring (**ThCM**) ACSPlus descriptive note has been requested, refer to *ACSPlus Procedure Machinery Planned Maintenance and Condition Monitoring*, Section 8.

PART

5

CHAPTER **20 Azimuth Thrusters**

SECTION **2 Performance**

2. 1 General

2. 1. 1 The arrangement of azimuth thrusters is to be such that the ship can be satisfactorily manoeuvred to a declared performance capability. The operating conditions covered are to include the following:

a. Maximum continuous shaft power/speed to the propeller in the ahead condition at the declared steering angles and conditions.

b. Manoeuvring speeds of the propeller shaft and/or reversing mechanism in the ahead and astern direction at the declared steering angles and sea conditions.

c. The stopping manoeuvre described in Pt 5, Ch 1, 5.2,, Sea trials 5.2.2.

d. Astern running conditions for the ship.

2. 1. 2 The requirements of Pt 5, Ch 19 Steering Systems are to be complied with where applicable.

2. 1. 3 Where more than one azimuth thruster is fitted, Pt 5, Ch 19, 2.1 General 2.1.2 is considered to be met when:

a. Each azimuth thruster fulfils the requirements for main steering gear (*See* Pt 5, Ch 20, 2.1,, General 2.1.4); and

b. Each azimuth thruster is provided with the ability to position and lock the azimuth thruster in a neutral position after a failure of its own power unit(s) and actuator(s). These arrangements are to be of sufficient strength to hold the azimuth thruster in position at the ship's manoeuvring speed to be taken as not less than 7 knots. Instructions displayed at the locking mechanism’s operating position are to include a directive to inform the bridge of any limitation in ship's speed required as a result of the securing mechanism being activated.

2. 1. 4 The main steering gear is to be:

a. Of adequate strength and capable of changing direction of the azimuth thruster from one side to the other in accordance with the declared steering angle limits at an average rotational speed of not less than 2.3 deg/s with the ship running ahead at maximum ahead service speed which shall be demonstrated in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 9, 8 Testing and trials; and

b. Operated by power; and

c. So designed that they will not be damaged at maximum astern speed.

2. 1. 5 The auxiliary steering gear is to be:

a. Capable of being brought speedily into action in an emergency; and

b. Of adequate strength and capable of changing the direction of the ship’s azimuth thrusters from one side to the other in accordance with the declared steering angle limits at an average rotational speed of not less than 0.5 deg/s, with the ship running ahead at one half of the maximum ahead service speed or 7 knots, whichever is the greater; and

c. Operated by power for ships having propulsion power of more than 2500 kW per thruster unit and for all ships, where it is necessary to meet the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 20, 2.1 General 2.1.5.b.

2. 1. 6 For vessels with more than one azimuthing thruster auxiliary steering gear need not be fitted provided that each azimuth thruster is capable of being supplied by two identical power units (the azimuth thruster may be supplied by shared or dedicated power units) and:

a. In cargo ships, each azimuth thruster is capable of satisfying the requirements in Pt 5, Ch 20, 2.1 General 2.1.4.a while operating with all power units;

b. In passenger ships, each azimuth thruster is capable of satisfying the requirements in Pt 5, Ch 20, 2.1 General 2.1.4.a while any one of the power units is out of operation;

Each of the azimuth thrusters is arranged so that after a single failure in its piping or in one of the power units, ship steering capability (but not individual steering system operation) can be maintained or speedily regained (e.g. by the possibility of positioning the failed steering system in a neutral position in an emergency, if needed). Consideration will be given to alternative arrangements providing equivalence can be demonstrated.

2. 1. 7 The steering gear for azimuth thrusters used for dynamic positioning applications with an associated class notation, is to be capable of a rotational speed of not less than 9 deg/s.

PART

5

CHAPTER **20 Azimuth Thrusters**

SECTION **3 Construction and design**

3. 1 Materials

3. 1. 1 Specification for materials of gears, shafts, couplings and propeller, giving chemical composition, heat treatment and mechanical properties are to be submitted for approval.

3. 1. 2 Specification for materials for the stock, struts, etc. are to be submitted for approval.

3. 1. 3 Where an ice class notation is included in the class of a ship, additional requirements are applicable as detailed in Pt 8 Rules for Ice and Cold Operations and Pt 3, Ch 9 Special Features.

3. 2 Design

3. 2. 1 The requirements detailed in Pt 5, Ch 1 General Requirements for the Design and Construction of Machinery, Pt 5, Ch 5 Gearing, Pt 5, Ch 6 Main Propulsion Shafting, Pt 5, Ch 7 Propellers, Pt 5, Ch 8 Shaft Vibration and Alignment, Pt 5, Ch 9 Podded Propulsion Units, Pt 5, Ch 14 Machinery Piping Systems and Pt 5, Ch 19 Steering Systems are to be complied with where applicable.

3. 2. 2 For steerable thrusters with a nozzle, the equivalent rudder stock diameter in way of tiller, used in Table 19. 1. 1: Connection of tiller to stock in Chapter 19, is to be determined as follows:

$$\delta_t = 26.03\sqrt[3]{(V+3)^2 A_N x_P}\ mm$$

where

V = maximum service speed, in knots, which the ship is designed to maintain under thruster operation

A_N = projected nozzle area, in m^2, and is equal to the length of the nozzle multiplied by the mean external vertical height of the nozzle and

x_P = horizontal distance from the centreline of the steering tube to the centre of pressure, in metres. The position of the centre of pressure is determined for both ahead and astern cases fromPt 3, Ch 13, 2.7 Rudder torque for rudder blades without cut-outs 2.7.1.

The corresponding maximum turning moment, M_T, is to be determined as follows:

M_T = turning moment for conical couplings and is to be taken as the greatest of M_F, M_A or M_W

M_F = $P_L x_P \times 10^6$ N mm (kgf mm) in the ahead condition

M_A = $P_L x_P \times 10^6$ N mm (kgf mm) in the astern condition

M_W = the torque generated by the steering gear at the maximum working pressure supplied by the manufacturer, in N mm (kgf mm). M_W is not to exceed the greater of $3.0M_F$ or $3.0M_A$

P_L = lateral force on rudder acting at centre of pressure, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 13, 2.6 Rudder force 2.6.1 (where A_R equals $2A_N$), in kN (tonne-f).

3. 2. 3 The nozzle structure is to be in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 13, 3 Fixed and steering nozzles.

3. 2. 4 In addition to the requirements of Table 13. 3. 1: Nozzle construction, in Pt 3, Ch 13 Ship Control Systems, the scantlings of the nozzle stock or steering tube are to be such that the section modulus against transverse bending at any section xx is not less than:

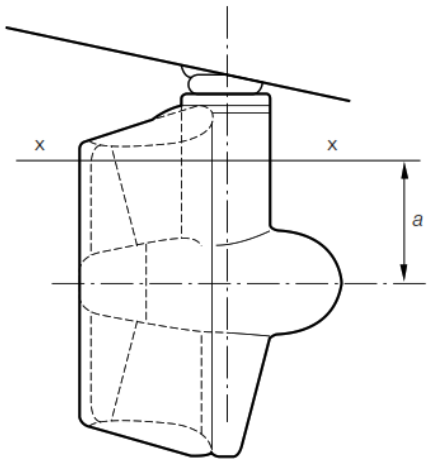
$$Z = 1.73\sqrt{(V+3)^4 A_N^2 X_P + \frac{2a^2}{4} T_M^2 10^4}\ \text{cm}^3$$

where

a = dimension, in metres, as shown in Figure 20. 3. 1: Steerable thruster

T_M = maximum thrust of the thruster unit in tonnes

Figure 20. 3. 1: Steerable thruster



3. 2. 5 The scantlings of nozzle connections or struts will be specially considered. In the case of certain high powered ships, direct calculation may be required.

3. 2. 6 For steerable thrusters without a nozzle the scantlings in way of the tiller will be specially considered.

3. 3 Steering gear elements

3. 3. 1 These gears are to be considered for the following conditions:

- a design maximum dynamic duty steering torque;
- a static duty ($\leq 10^3$ load cycles) steering torque, and the static duty steering torque should be not less than M_T.

Values for the above should be submitted together with the plans.

3. 4 Components

3. 4. 1 The hydraulic power operating systems for each azimuth thruster are to be provided with the following:

a. arrangements to maintain the cleanliness of the hydraulic fluid, taking into consideration the type and design of the hydraulic system;

b. a fixed storage tank having sufficient capacity to recharge at least one azimuth power actuating system including the reservoir. The piping from the storage tank is to be permanent and arranged in such a manner as to allow recharging from within the thruster space.

PART

5

CHAPTER **20 Azimuth Thrusters**

SECTION **4 Control engineering arrangements**

4. 1 General

4. 1. 1 Except where indicated in this Section the control engineering systems are to be in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems.

4. 1. 2 Steering control is to be provided for the azimuth thrusters from the navigating bridge, the main machinery control station and locally.

4. 1. 3 An indication of the angular position of the thruster(s) and the magnitude of the thrust are to be provided at each station from which it is possible to control the direction of thrust.

4. 1. 4 Means are to be provided at the remote control station(s) to stop each thrust unit.

4. 2 Monitoring and alarms

4. 2. 1 Alarms and monitoring requirements are indicated in Pt 5, Ch 20, 4.2 Monitoring and alarms 4.2.2 and Table 20. 4. 1: Alarms for control systems.

Table 20. 4. 1: Alarms for control systems

Item	Alarm	Note
Thruster azimuth	-	Indicator, *See* Pt 5, Ch 20, 4.1 General 4.1.3
Steering motor	Power failure, single phase	Also running indication on bridge and at machinery control station
Propulsion motor	Overload, power failure	Also running indication on bridge and at machinery control station
Control system power	Failure	
Hydraulic oil supply tank level	Low	
Hydraulic oil system pressure	Low	
Hydraulic oil system temperature	High	Where oil cooler is fitted
Hydraulic oil filters differential pressure	High	Where oil filters are fitted
Lubricating oil supply	Low	If separate forced lubrication

4. 2. 2 The alarms described in Table 20. 4. 1: Alarms for control systems are to be indicated individually on the navigating bridge and in accordance with the alarm system specified by Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.3, Alarm systems, general requirements.

PART

5

CHAPTER **20 Azimuth Thrusters**

SECTION **5 Electrical equipment**

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 The electrical installation is to be designed, constructed and installed in accordance with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 20, 5.2 Generating arrangements to Pt 5, Ch 20, 5.4 Auxiliary supplies.

5. 1. 2 Where the thruster units are electrically driven the relevant requirements, including surveys, of Pt 6, Ch 2 Electrical Engineering are to be complied with.

5. 2 Generating arrangements

5. 2. 1 Where a central power generation system is employed, the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 16.3 Power requirements 16.3.5 are to be complied with.

5. 2. 2 The generating and distribution system is to be so arranged that after any single failure, steering capability can be maintained or regained within a period not exceeding 45 seconds, and the effectiveness of the steering after such a fault will not be reduced by more than 50 per cent. This may be achieved by the parallel operation of two or more generating sets, or alternatively when the electrical requirements may be met by one generating set in operation, on loss of power, the automatic starting and connection to the switchboard of a standby set, provided that this set can restart and run a thruster with its auxiliaries.

5. 2. 3 The failure of one thruster unit or its control system is not to render any other thruster inoperative.

5. 3 Distribution arrangements

5. 3. 1 Thruster auxiliaries and controls are to be served by individual circuits. Services that are duplicated are to be separated throughout their length as widely as is practicable and without the use of common feeders, transformers, converters, protective devices or control circuits.

5. 4 Auxiliary supplies

5. 4. 1 Where the auxiliary services and thruster units are suppied from a common source, the following requirements are to be complied with:

a. the voltage regulation and current sharing requirements defined in Pt 6, Ch 2, 9.4 Generator control 9.4.2 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 9.4 Generator control 9.4.7 are to be maintained over the full range of power factors that may occur in service,

b. auxiliary equipment and services are to operate with any waveform distortion introduced by converters without deleterious effect. (This may be achieved by the provision of suitably filtered/converted supplies).

PART

5

CHAPTER **20 Azimuth Thrusters**

SECTION **6 Testing and trials**

6. 1 General

6. 1. 1 The requirements detailed in Pt 5, Ch 1 General Requirements for the Design and Construction of Machinery, Pt 5, Ch 5 Gearing and Pt 5, Ch 19 Steering Systems are to be complied with and, in addition, the performance specified in Pt 5, Ch 20, 2.1 General 2.1.6 is to be demonstrated to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

6. 1. 2 The actual values of steering torque should be verified during sea trials to confirm that the design maximum dynamic duty torque has not been exceeded.

PART

5

CHAPTER **21** **Requirements for Condition Monitoring and Condition-Based Maintenance Systems**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1 Requirements for Condition Monitoring and Condition-Based Maintenance Systems 2586

1. 1 Scope 2586

1. 2 Plans and particulars 2586

1. 3 General requirements for condition monitoring systems 2587

1. 4 Requirements for systems providing control, alarm and safety functions 2587

1. 5 Requirements for systems providing machinery condition related information as part of condition-based maintenance systems 2588

1. 6 Requirements for maintenance systems using predictive techniques 2588

PART

5

CHAPTER 21 **Requirements for Condition Monitoring and Condition-Based Maintenance Systems**

SECTION 1 **Requirements for Condition Monitoring and Condition-Based Maintenance Systems**

1. 1 Scope

1. 1. 1 The requirements of this Chapter are applicable to condition monitoring and condition-based maintenance systems which:

a. provide control, alarm or safety functions for essential machinery and equipment (*See* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.1 General 2.1.1) in accordance with manufacturers recommendations; or

b. provide machinery condition related information as part of a machinery planned maintenance scheme for use as an alternative to machinery and equipment surveys required by the Regulations (*See* Pt 1, Ch 3 Periodical Survey Regulations) in accordance with ACS's ACSPlus procedures.

1. 1. 2 Condition monitoring systems which deviate from the requirements of this Section but provide an equivalent level of performance may be submitted to ACS for consideration.

1. 1. 3 The requirements of this Section and ACS's *ACSPlus Procedures for Machinery Planned Maintenance and Condition Monitoring* are to be applied to condition monitoring systems where the assignment of the **ACSPlus(MPMS(CM))** descriptive note is requested.

1. 1. 4 The requirements of this Section and ACS's *ACSPlus Procedures for Machinery Planned Maintenance and Condition Monitoring* are to be applied to machinery condition-based maintenance systems that make use of predictive techniques where the assignment of the **ACSPlus(MPMS(PT))** descriptive note is requested in addition to the **MPMS(CM))** descriptive note.

1. 2 Plans and particulars

1. 2. 1 The information and plans required to be submitted are as specified in the relevant Chapters of Pt 5 Main and Auxiliary Machinery and Pt 6 Control, Electrical, Refrigeration and Fire applicable to the particular machinery and where specified in this Chapter.

1. 2. 2 In addition to information required by Pt 5, Ch 21, 1.2 Plans and particulars 1.2.1, the documents listed in the *ACSPlus Procedures for Machinery Planned Maintenance and Condition Monitoring* are to be submitted to ACS for consideration.

1. 2. 3 Equipment type approval reports providing evidence of compliance with Pt 5, Ch 21, 1.3 General requirements for condition monitoring systems 1.3.1 and Pt 5, Ch 21, 1.3 General requirements for condition monitoring systems 1.3.2 are to be submitted.

1. 2. 4 Additional information and plans providing evidence of compliance with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 21, 1.3 General requirements for condition monitoring systems 1.3.3, Pt 5, Ch 21, 1.4 Requirements for systems providing control, alarm and safety functions 1.4.1 and Pt 5, Ch 21, 1.3 General requirements for condition monitoring systems 1.3.9 are to be submitted.

1. 3 General requirements for condition monitoring systems

1. 3. 1 Condition monitoring equipment is to be capable of providing the service for which it is intended and is to satisfy the relevant requirements for condition monitoring equipment in ACS's Type Approval System.

1. 3. 2 Condition monitoring equipment is to be suitable for the environment in which it is intended to operate and is to satisfy the relevant requirements for environmental testing in ACS's Type Approval System, *Test specification No.1*.

1. 3. 3 The installation of condition monitoring equipment in spaces and locations in which flammable mixtures are liable to collect, e.g. ,areas containing flammable gas or vapour and/or combustible dust, is to be minimised as far as is practicable and is to satisfy the relevant requirements for the use of electrical equipment in flammable atmospheres in Pt 6, Ch 2, 14 Electrical equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres or in the presence of combustible dusts.

1. 3. 4 Where permanently installed condition monitoring systems are used, the cables are to comply with the relevant Sections of Pt 6, Ch 2, 11 Electric cables, optical fibre cables and busbar trunking systems (busways) and the piping systems are to comply with relevant Sections of Pt 5, Ch 12 Piping Design Requirements and Pt 5, Ch 13 Ship Piping Systems.

1. 3. 5 Where the system is based on programmable electronic systems, the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, 3.6 Displays 3.6.3 are to be complied with.

1. 3. 6 Portable condition monitoring equipment is to be maintained and calibrated in accordance with a recognised National or International Standard to ensure the accuracy of the readings obtained. The standard is to include the issue of calibration certificates by a recognised test house in accordance with a recognised National or International Standard for instrument calibration. Copies of calibration certificates are to be retained on board and referenced on all condition monitoring reports submitted as part of the onboard condition monitoring program. Portable equipment used in hazardous areas is to be of a safe type suitable for use in the appropriate hazardous zone.

1. 3. 7 Measuring points are to be clearly identified in the submission and proposals to ensure repeatability of measurements are to be included.

1. 3. 8 The condition monitoring equipment is, as far as is practicable, to be located and installed such that it is accessible for maintenance and survey.

1. 3. 9 The condition monitoring equipment is to be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and to the satisfaction of the ACS Surveyor.

1. 3. 10 Boilers and pressure vessels are not eligible for reduced survey intervention based on condition monitoring.

1. 4 Requirements for systems providing control, alarm and safety functions

1. 4. 1 In addition to the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 21, 1.3, General requirements for condition monitoring systems, condition monitoring equipment which provides control, alarm or safety functions for essential machinery and equipment is also to satisfy the relevant requirements for control, alarm

and safety systems in Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems and the installation of electrical equipment in Pt 6, Ch 2 Electrical Engineering.

1. 5 Requirements for systems providing machinery condition related information as part of condition-based maintenance systems

1. 5. 1 In addition to the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 21, 1.3, General requirements for condition monitoring systems, condition monitoring equipment which provides condition related information as part of a machinery planned maintenance scheme for use as an alternative to machinery and equipment surveys required by the Regulations is also to satisfy the relevant requirements of ACS's *ACSPlus Procedures for Machinery Planned Maintenance and Condition Monitoring*.

1. 5. 2 Where condition monitoring data is used as part of a condition-based maintenance system, persons interpreting data and making diagnostic decisions are to be suitably competent, in accordance with ISO 18436 or an equivalent recognised National Standard. Evidence of competence, including training certificates of those providing analysis and data interpretation, are to be submitted and held on board. These certificates are to be made available to ACS on request for audit and survey purposes.

1. 5. 3 The condition monitoring equipment is, as far as is practicable, to be located and installed such that it is accessible for maintenance and survey.

1. 5. 4 Limiting parameters (alarms and warnings) are to be based on the manufacturer's guidelines, or a recognised International Standard.

1. 6 Requirements for maintenance systems using predictive techniques

1. 6. 1 Machinery maintenance systems which make use of predictive techniques, when being used as an alternative to machinery and equipment surveys required by the Regulations, are also to satisfy the requirements of this Section and the relevant requirements of ACS's *ACSPlus Procedures for Machinery Planned Maintenance and Condition Monitoring.*

PART

5

CHAPTER **22 Propulsion and Steering Machinery Redundancy**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General requirements**		**2591**
	1. 1	General	2591
	1. 2	Plans and information	2592
SECTION 2	**Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA)**		**2594**
	2. 1	General	2594
SECTION 3	**Machinery arrangements**		**2596**
	3. 1	Main propulsion machinery	2596
	3. 2	Steering machinery	2596
	3. 3	Electrical power supply	2596
	3. 4	Essential services for machinery	2597
	3. 5	Fuel oil storage and transfer systems	2597
SECTION 4	**Control arrangements**		**2598**
	4. 1	General	2598
	4. 2	Bridge control	2598
SECTION 5	**Separate machinery spaces * (star) Enhancement**		**2599**
	5. 1	General	2599
	5. 2	Machinery arrangements	2599
	5. 3	Electrical power supply	2599
	5. 4	Essential services for machinery	2599
	5. 5	Bilge drainage arrangements	2600
	5. 6	Fuel oil storage	2600
	5. 7	FMEA	2600
SECTION 6	**Testing and trials**		**2601**
	6. 1	Sea trials	2601

PART

5

CHAPTER 22 Propulsion and Steering Machinery Redundancy

LIST OF TABLES

Table 22. 2. 1: Failure Mode and Effects Analysis 2594

PART

5

CHAPTER 22 Propulsion and Steering Machinery Redundancy

SECTION 1 General requirements

1. 1 General

1. 1. 1 This Chapter states the requirements for ships having machinery redundancy, and are in addition to the relevant requirements in other relevant Sections of these Rules.

1. 1. 2 The requirements, which are optional, cover machinery arrangements and control systems necessary for ships which have propulsion and steering systems configured such that, in the event of a single failure of a system or item of active equipment, *See* Pt 5, Ch 22, 1.1 General 1.1.3, the ship will retain the ability to use available installed prime mover capacity and installed propulsion systems that are unaffected by the failure. The ship is also to retain steering capability at a service speed of not less than seven knots. The requirements also cover machinery arrangements where the propulsion and steering systems are installed in separate compartments such that, in the event of a loss of one compartment, the ship will retain availability of propulsion power and manoeuvring capability.

1. 1. 3 For the purpose of this Chapter, items of active equipment are those which have a defined function for operation of a propulsion or steering system, such as but not limited to:

- Prime movers, i.e. engines, electric motors, steam turbines and gas turbines;
- Generators and their excitation equipment;
- Transformers and converters;
- Gearing and shafting systems;
- Propulsion devices, i.e. propellers, water jets and thrusters;
- Pumps;
- Valves (where power actuated);
- Fuel treatment plant;
- Coolers/heaters;
- Filters;

Piping and electrical cables connecting items of active equipment are not considered to be active.

1. 1. 4 Requirements additional to these Rules may be imposed by the Flag State with whom the ship is registered and/or by the Administration within whose territorial jurisdiction the ship is intended to operate.

1. 1. 5 Pt 5, Ch 22, 2 Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA), Pt 5, Ch 22, 3 Machinery arrangements and Pt 5, Ch 22, 4 Control arrangements state the applicable requirements for arrangements necessary to maintain availability of propulsion and manoeuvring capability, in the event of a

single failure in equipment. Ships complying with the applicable requirements of Pt 5, Ch 22, 2 Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA) to Pt 5, Ch 22, 4 Control arrangements will be eligible for the machinery class notation **PMR** or **PMRL** (Propulsion Machinery Redundancy), **SMR** or **SMRL** (Steering Machinery Redundancy) or **PSMR** or **PSMRL** (Propulsion and Steering Machinery Redundancy), which will be recorded in the *Register Book*.

Note The additional **L** character to **PMR**, **SMR** and **PSMR** notations indicates a limited capability.

1. 1. 6 Pt 5, Ch 22, 5 Separate machinery spaces * (star) Enhancement states the additional requirements necessary to maintain availability of propulsion and manoeuvring capability where machinery is installed in separate compartments and the loss of any one compartment due to fire or flooding has been addressed. Ships complying with the applicable requirements of Pt 5, Ch 22, 2 Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA) to Pt 5, Ch 22, 5 Separate machinery spaces * (star) Enhancement of this Chapter will be eligible for the machinery class notation **PMR** ✭ or **PMRL** ✭ (Propulsion Machinery Redundancy in separate machinery spaces), **SMR** ✭ or **SMRL** ✭ (Steering Machinery Redundancy in separate machinery spaces) or **PSMR** ✭ or **PSMRL** ✭ (Propulsion and Steering Machinery Redundancy in separate machinery spaces) which will be recorded in the *Register Book*.

1. 1. 7 For assignment of **PSMR** or **PSMR** ✭ machinery class notations, the ship is to retain the ability to use not less than 50 per cent of the installed prime mover capacity and not less than 50 per cent of the installed propulsion systems and retain steering capability at a service speed of not less than seven knots in the event of a single failure of a system or item of equipment.

1. 1. 8 Where the ship does not comply with 1.1.7 but can retain a service speed of not less than seven knots using available installed prime mover capacity and propulsion systems (which may be less than 50 per cent) following a failure of a system or item of equipment, machinery class notations **PSMRL** or **PSMRL** ✭ may be assigned. The available installed prime mover capacity and installed propulsion systems are to be identified and included in Pt 5, Ch 22, 1.2 Plans and information 1.2.7.

1. 2 Plans and information

1. 2. 1 In addition to the plans and information required by Pt 5 Main and Auxiliary Machinery and Pt 6 Control, Electrical, Refrigeration and Fire, the information detailed in Pt 5, Ch 22, 1.2 Plans and information 1.2.2 to Pt 5, Ch 22, 1.2 Plans and information 1.2.6 is also to be submitted.

1. 2. 2 **Machinery spaces**. Plans showing the general arrangement of the machinery spaces, together with a description of the propulsion system, main and emergency electrical power supply systems and steering arrangements are to be submitted. The plans are to indicate segregation and access arrangements for machinery spaces and associated control rooms/stations.

1. 2. 3 **Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA)**. For the propulsion systems, electrical power supplies, essential services, control systems and steering arrangements, a FMEA report is to be submitted and is to address the requirements identified in Pt 5, Ch 22, 2 Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA) and Pt 5, Ch 22, 5 Separate machinery spaces * (star) Enhancement.

1. 2. 4 **Manoeuvring capability**. An assessment of the ships' ahead and astern manoeuvring capability, under the following operating conditions, is to be submitted:

a. Where only 50 per cent or less of the installed prime mover capacity and 50 per cent or less of the installed propulsion systems are available.
b. Where the steering capability requirements described in Pt 5, Ch 22, 3.2 Steering machinery 3.2.1 are available.

IMO Resolution MSC 137(76) – *Standards for Ship Manoeuvrability*, provides guidance, on standard manoeuvres required in an assessment of the manoeuvrability of ships.

1. 2. 5 **Testing and trials procedures**. A schedule of testing and trials to demonstrate that the ship is capable of being operated with machinery functioning as described in Pt 5, Ch 22, 4.2, Bridge control is to be submitted. In addition, any testing programme that may be necessary to prove the conclusions of the FMEA is to be submitted.

1. 2. 6 **Operating Manuals**. Operating Manuals are to be submitted for information and provided on board. The manuals are to include the following information:

a. Particulars of machinery and control systems.
b. General description of systems for propulsion and steering.
c. Operating instructions for all machinery and control systems used for propulsion and steering.
d. Procedures for dealing with the situations identified in the FMEA report.

1. 2. 7 **Installed prime mover capacity and installed propulsion systems**. A schedule of the propulsion systems and their operating capacity and capability under normal and fore*See*able failure conditions is to be submitted.

PART

5

CHAPTER **22 Propulsion and Steering Machinery Redundancy**

SECTION **2 Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA)**

2. 1 General

2. 1. 1 An FMEA is to be carried out in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 22, 2.1 General 2.1.2 to Pt 5, Ch 22, 2.1 General 2.1.7 for the propulsion systems, electrical power supply systems and steering systems to demonstrate that a single failure in active equipment or loss of an associated sub-system, *See* Pt 5, Ch 22, 1.1 General 1.1.3, will not cause loss of all propulsion and/or steering capability as required by a class notation. Typical sub-systems include associated control and monitoring arrangements, data communications, power supplies (electrical, hydraulic or pneumatic), fuel, lubricating, cooling, etc.

2. 1. 2 The FMEA is to be carried out using the format presented in Table 22. 2. 1: Failure Mode and Effects Analysis or an equivalent format that addresses the same safety issues. Analyses in accordance with IEC 60812, *Analysis techniques for system reliability – Procedure for failure mode and effects analysis (FMEA)* or IMO MSC Resolution 36(63) Annex 4 – *Procedures for Failure Mode and Effects Analysis*, would be acceptable.

2. 1. 3 The FMEA is to be organised in terms of equipment and function. The effects of item failures at a stated level and at higher levels are to be analysed to determine the effects on the system as a whole. Actions for mitigation are to be determined.

2. 1. 4 The FMEA is to:

a. identify the equipment or sub-system, mode of operation and the equipment;
b. identify potential failure modes and their causes;
c. evaluate the effects on the system of each failure mode;
d. identify measures for reducing the risks associated with each failure mode; and
e. identify trials and testing necessary to prove conclusions.

2. 1. 5 At sub-system level it is acceptable, for the purpose of these Rules, to consider failure of equipment items and their functions, e.g. failure of a pump to produce flow or pressure head. It is not required that the failure of components within that pump be analysed. In addition, their failure need only be dealt with as a cause of failure of the pump.

2. 1. 6 Where FMEA is used for consideration of systems that depend on software-based functions for control or co-ordination, the analysis is to investigate failure of the functions rather than a specific analysis of the software code itself.

Table 22. 2. 1: Failure Mode and Effects Analysis

Project: **Failure Mode and Effects Analysis**										
System:				Element:						Sheet No:
Item No.	Component Description	Function	Mode of Operation	Failure Mode	Failure Cause	Failure Detection	Effect of Failure	Severity	Corrective Action	Remarks

							On Item	On System			

Note The 'severity category' is to be in accordance with the following:

(a) Catastrophic; (b) Hazardous; (c) Major; or d Minor.

2. 1. 7 The FMEA is to establish that in the event of a single failure:

a. for **PSMR** and **PSMR** ⋆ notations, that the ship will retain not less than 50 per cent of the installed prime mover capacity and not less than 50 per cent of the installed propulsion systems and retain steering capability;
b. for **PMR** and **PMR** ⋆ notations, that the ship will retain not less than 50 per cent of the installed prime mover capacity and not less than 50 per cent of the installed propulsion systems;
c. for **SMR** and **SMR** ⋆ notations, that the steering capability remains available;
d. for **PSMRL** ⋆ notation, that the ship will retain the ability to use available installed prime mover capacity and installed propulsion systems that are not directly affected by the failure and retain steering capability at a service speed of not less than seven knots; and
e. for **PMRL** ⋆ notation, that the ship will retain the ability to use available installed prime mover capacity and installed propulsion systems that are not directly affected by the failure.

PART

5

CHAPTER **22 Propulsion and Steering Machinery Redundancy**

SECTION **3 Machinery arrangements**

3. 1 Main propulsion machinery

3. 1. 1 For **PSMR**, **PSMR***, **PMR** and **PMR*** notations, independent main propulsion systems are to be provided so that the ship will retain not less than 50 per cent of the prime mover capacity and not less than 50 per cent of the installed propulsion systems in the event of a single failure of a system or active item of equipment, *See* Pt 5, Ch 22, 1.1 General 1.1.3. In the event of a single failure in equipment, the remaining system(s) is to be capable of maintaining a service speed of not less than seven knots and, for **PSMR** and **PSMR** ★ notations, give adequate manoeuvring capability, *See* Pt 5, Ch 22, 1.2 Plans and information 1.2.4.

3. 1. 2 For **PMRL**, **PSMRL**, **PMRL** ★ and **PSMRL** ★ notations, independent main propulsion systems are to be provided so that there remains the ability to use the remaining available installed prime mover capacity and installed propulsion systems following a single failure of a system or item of equipment. In the event of a single failure in equipment, the remaining system(s) is to be capable of maintaining a manoeuvring speed and, for **PSMRL** and **PSMRL** ★ notations, give adequate manoeuvring capability, *See* Pt 5, Ch 22, 1.2 Plans and information 1.2.4.

3. 2 Steering machinery

3. 2. 1 For **PSMR**, **PSMR** ★, **SMR** and **SMR** ★ notations, independent steering systems for manoeuvring the ship are to be installed, such that steering capability will continue to be available in the event of any of the following:

a. Single failure in the steering gear equipment.
b. Loss of power supply or control system to any steering system.

3. 3 Electrical power supply

3. 3. 1 The main busbars of the switchboard supplying the propulsion machinery and essential services are to be capable of being isolated by a multi-pole linked circuit breaker, disconnector, or switch-disconnector into at least two independent sections.

3. 3. 2 In the event of the loss of one section or failure of the power supply from one generator, there is to be continuity of sufficient electrical power to supply essential services such that the available installed prime mover capacity and installed propulsion systems will continue to have the ability of functioning at their operational capability where **PSMRL**, **PSMRL** ★, **PMRL** and **PMRL** ★ notations are required. *See* Pt 5, Ch 22, 3.2 Steering machinery 3.2.1 for steering machinery requirements.

3. 3. 3 In the event of the loss of one section or failure of the power supply from one generator, there is to be continuity of sufficient electrical power to supply essential services such that the ship will retain not less than 50 per cent of the prime mover capacity and not less than 50 per cent of the

installed propulsion systems where **PSMR**, **PSMR** ★, **PMR** and **PMR** ★ notations are required. *See* Pt 5, Ch 22, 3.2 Steering machinery 3.2.1 for steering machinery requirements.

3. 3. 4 For ships capable of operating with one service generator connected to the switchboard, arrangements are to be such that a standby generator will automatically start and connect to the switchboard on loss of the service generator. Sequential starting of essential services is to be provided.

3. 3. 5 For ships operating with two or more generator sets in service connected to the switchboard, arrangements are to be such that, in the event of loss of one generator, the remaining set(s) is to be adequate for the continuity of essential services supplied from that switchboard. This may be achieved by preferential tripping of non-essential services. Alternatively, arrangements can be such that a standby generator will start automatically and connect to the switchboard on loss of one of the generator sets in service.

3. 4 Essential services for machinery

3. 4. 1 Services essential for the operation of the propulsion machinery, steering and the supply of electrical power are to be arranged so to that the ship will retain not less than 50 per cent of the prime mover capacity and 50 per cent of the installed propulsion systems and retain steering capability in the event of a single failure in any of the services, where required by the respective class notations.

3. 5 Fuel oil storage and transfer systems

3. 5. 1 The arrangements for the storage of fuel oil bunkers are to ensure that there is an adequate supply of existing fuel oil on board to allow sufficient time for a shore-based quality analysis of new bunkers, in accordance with ISO 8217 *Petroleum Products – Fuels (Class F) Specification of Marine Fuels* prior to use.

3. 5. 2 Provision is to be made to enable samples of fuel oil to be taken at the bunkering manifolds.

PART

5

CHAPTER **22 Propulsion and Steering Machinery Redundancy**

SECTION **4 Control arrangements**

4. 1 General

4. 1. 1 This Section states the requirements for the installation of control, alarm and safety systems but does not signify that machinery spaces may be operated unattended. For unattended machinery space operation, compliance with Pt 6, Ch 1, 4 Unattended machinery space(s) - UMS notation is also required.

4. 1. 2 The control, alarm and safety systems required in Pt 5, Ch 22, 4.2, Bridge control are to comply with Pt 6, Ch 1, 2 Essential features for control, alarm, monitoring and safety systems .

4. 2 Bridge control

4. 2. 1 The controls, alarms, instrumentation and safeguards required in Pt 5, Ch 22, 4.2 Bridge control 4.2.2 to Pt 5, Ch 22, 4.2 Bridge control 4.2.6 are to be provided on the bridge.

4. 2. 2 For **PSMR**, **PSMR** ⋆, **PMR** and **PMR** ⋆ notations, means are to be provided to ensure satisfactory control of propulsion in both the ahead and astern directions when all main propulsion systems are functioning and when one propulsion system is not available.

4. 2. 3 For **PSMR**, **PSMR** ⋆, **SMR** and **SMR** ⋆ notations, means are to be provided to ensure satisfactory control of steering when all steering systems are functioning and when any one steering system is not available.

4. 2. 4 Where required by Pt 5, Ch 22, 5.4 Essential services for machinery 5.4.3, isolation of essential services is to be carried out either automatically or manually from the bridge. Indication of the status of isolation arrangements is to be provided.

4. 2. 5 Instrumentation to indicate the operational status of running and standby machinery is to be provided for the propulsion systems, the supply of electrical power, steering systems and other essential services.

4. 2. 6 Alarms are to be provided in the event of:

a. A fire in any machinery compartment.

b. A high bilge level in any machinery compartment. Irrespective of the assignment of the **UMS** notation, the bilge level detection system and arrangements for automatically pumping bilges, if applicable, are to comply with Pt 6, Ch 1, 4.7, Bilge level detection.

PART

5

CHAPTER **22** **Propulsion and Steering Machinery Redundancy**

SECTION **5** **Separate machinery spaces * (star) Enhancement**

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 This Section states the additional requirements where propulsion and steering machinery are installed in separate compartments such that, in the event of the loss of one compartment, the ship will retain availability of propulsion power and manoeuvring capability.

5. 1. 2 The machinery arrangements, control arrangements and FMEA required by Pt 5, Ch 22, 2 Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA) to Pt 5, Ch 22, 4 Control arrangements, together with testing and trials requirements in Pt 5, Ch 22, 6 Testing and trials, are to be complied with in addition to Pt 5, Ch 22, 5.2 Machinery arrangements to Pt 5, Ch 22, 5.7 FMEA.

5. 2 Machinery arrangements

5. 2. 1 The main propulsion machinery is to be arranged in not less than two compartments such that, in the event of the loss of one compartment, propulsion power and/or manoeuvring capability will continue to be available, where required by the respective class notations.

5. 2. 2 The steering systems are to be arranged in not less than two separate compartments, such that steering capability will continue to be available in the event of the loss of one compartment, where required by the respective class notations.

5. 3 Electrical power supply

5. 3. 1 The generating sets and converting sets required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 2 Main source of electrical power are to be arranged so that they are located in at least two separate machinery compartments.

5. 3. 2 The independent sections of the switchboard required by Pt 5, Ch 22, 3.3 Electrical power supply 3.3.1 are to be arranged in not less than two separate compartments.

5. 3. 3 In the event of the loss of one compartment, there is to be continuity of sufficient electrical power to supply essential services, such that propulsion power and steering capability will continue to be available.

5. 4 Essential services for machinery

5. 4. 1 Services essential for the operation of the propulsion machinery, steering and the supply of electrical power are to be arranged, so that propulsion power and steering capability are maintained in the event of the loss of one machinery compartment.

5. 4. 2 The design of systems which may have a common source, such as those used for supplying fuel oil, lubricating oil, fresh and sea-water cooling, ventilation of compartments and engine starting

energy, is to ensure continuous availability of supply in the event of the loss of any one compartment. Where applicable, continuous availability of heating services, fuel oil and water treatments is also to be provided. *See* Pt 5, Ch 22, 3.5 Fuel oil storage and transfer systems and Pt 5, Ch 22, 5.6 Fuel oil storage for fuel oil storage and transfer systems.

5. 4. 3 Where essential services are arranged so that they may supply machinery in another compartment, means of isolation from that compartment is to be provided.

5. 4. 4 Where pumps for essential services are arranged to supply more than one compartment, standby pumps for the same supplies are to be provided in a different compartment. The standby pumps are to be arranged to start automatically if the discharge pressure from the working pumps falls below a predetermined value.

5. 5 Bilge drainage arrangements

5. 5. 1 The independent power pumps for bilge drainage are to be located in two separate watertight compartments. Each pump is to be capable of draining any compartment. Means of isolation from other compartments is to be provided.

5. 5. 2 In addition to the independent power pumps installed to comply with Pt 5, Ch 22, 5.5 Bilge drainage arrangements 5.5.1, an emergency bilge drainage arrangement is to be provided in each main propulsion machinery space.

5. 5. 3 Each separate machinery compartment is to be provided with at least one independent power pump direct bilge suction.

5. 6 Fuel oil storage

5. 6. 1 The fuel oil service tanks required by Pt 5, Ch 14, 4.18 Fuel oil service tanks are to be located in separate compartments.

5. 6. 2 Provision is to be made to ensure that fuel oil preparation and transfer arrangements to the fuel oil service tanks are continuously available in the event of the loss of any one compartment, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 22, 5.4 Essential services for machinery 5.4.2.

5. 7 FMEA

5. 7. 1 The FMEA required by Pt 5, Ch 22, 2.1 General 2.1.1 for the propulsion systems, electrical power supplies, essential services, control systems and steering arrangements is also to address the following:

a. Fire in a machinery space or control room.
b. Flooding of any watertight compartment which could affect propulsion or steering capability.
c. Separation of machinery spaces.

PART

5

CHAPTER **22 Propulsion and Steering Machinery Redundancy**

SECTION **6 Testing and trials**

6. 1 Sea trials

6. 1. 1 In addition to the requirements for sea trials in Pt 5, Ch 1, 5.2, Sea trials, trials are to be carried out to demonstrate that when the ship is operating 50 per cent of the prime mover capacity and 50 per cent of the installed propulsion systems, a speed of not less than 7 knots can be maintained with adequate steering capability, where required by the respective class notations.

6. 1. 2 Trials are to be carried out to demonstrate the ship's steering capability in accordance with the assessment required by Pt 5, Ch 22, 1.2 Plans and information 1.2.4 with one steering system out of action.

6. 1. 3 Where the FMEA report has identified the need to prove the conclusions, testing and trials are to be carried out as necessary to investigate the following:

a. The effect of a specific component failure.
b. The effectiveness of automatic/manual isolation systems.
c. The behaviour of any interlocks that may inhibit operation of essential systems.

6. 1. 4 During sea trials, the operational envelope(s) is to be determined under the conditions detailed in Pt 5, Ch 22, 3.1 Main propulsion machinery 3.1.1 and/or Pt 5, Ch 22, 3.2 Steering machinery 3.2.1, as required for the class notation.

PART

5

CHAPTER 23 Additional Requirements for Passenger Ships

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**2603**
	1. 1	Scope and application	2603
	1. 2	Definitions	2603
	1. 3	General requirements and risk management	2604
	1. 4	Plans and information	2605
SECTION 2	**Safe return to port**		**2607**
	2. 1	General	2607
SECTION 3	**Qualitative failure analysis for propulsion, steering and essential services**		**2610**
	3. 1	General	2610
	3. 2	Analysis objectives	2610
	3. 3	Analysis scope	2611
SECTION 4	**Orderly evacuation and abandonment after a casualty**		**2612**
	4. 1	General	2612
SECTION 5	**Verification, testing and trials**		**2614**
	5. 1	General	2614
	5. 2	Trials	2614

PART

5

CHAPTER 23 Additional Requirements for Passenger Ships

SECTION 1 General

1. 1 Scope and application

1. 1. 1 The requirements of this Chapter are additional for passenger ships and are related to machinery and equipment providing services necessary to support safe return to port under the ship's own propulsion in the event of flooding or after a fire and to support orderly evacuation and abandonment in the event of a fire.

1. 1. 2 The requirements of this Chapter are restricted to machinery and equipment specifically addressed by relevant engineering systems Rules.

1. 1. 3 The requirements of Pt 5, Ch 23, 3.2 Analysis objectives 3.2.2 are applicable to all passenger ships.

1. 1. 4 The requirements of Pt 5, Ch 23, 1 General to Pt 5, Ch 23, 5 Verification, testing and trials of this Chapter are applicable to passenger ships having a length of 120 m or more, or having three or more main vertical zones.

1. 1. 5 The requirements of this Chapter should be read in conjunction with ACS's ACSPlus Procedure **SRtP**. Where the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 23, 2 Safe return to port and Pt 5, Ch 23, 4 Orderly evacuation and abandonment after a casualty of this Chapter and ACSPlus **SRtP** are complied with, the vessel will be assigned the Descriptive Note **SRtP**.

Note Vessels as described by Pt 5, Ch 23, 1.1 Scope and application 1.1.4 but without the Descriptive Note should also be appraised using the ACSPlus Procedure **SRtP** Appendices 1 and 2 unless otherwise advised.

1. 1. 6 The performance of machinery and equipment for services referred to in the relevant SOLAS Regulations that are not specifically addressed by relevant engineering systems Rules are not considered (e.g. basic services to safe areas, radiocommunications, navigation systems, etc.). However, these services are to be considered in terms of:

a. the supply of electrical power in accordance with SOLAS 1974, as amended; and
b. protection provided to machinery and equipment described in Pt 5, Ch 23, 1.1 Scope and application 1.1.2 (e.g. fire suppression measures in spaces containing propulsion machinery).

1. 1. 7 These requirements do not address operational decisions on the actual use of machinery and equipment in the event of flooding or fire (e.g. the use of propulsion and steering in a flooding damage condition).

1. 2 Definitions

1. 2. 1 For the purposes of this Chapter, 'the relevant SOLAS Regulations' refers to SOLAS 1974, as amended:

a. Chapter II-1/B-1, *Regulation 8-1 - System capabilities and operational information after a flooding casualty on passenger ships*, ;
b. Chapter II-2/G, *Regulation 21 - Casualty threshold, safe return to port and safe areas*, ; and
c. Chapter II-2/G, *Regulation 22 - Design criteria for systems to remain operational after a fire casualty*, . Pt 5, Ch 23, 1.2, Definitions 1.2.1 and Pt 5, Ch 23, 1.2 Definitions 1.2.1.b apply for Pt 5, Ch 23, 2 Safe return to port and Pt 5, Ch 23, 3 Qualitative failure analysis for propulsion, steering and essential services, Pt 5, Ch 23, 1.2 Definitions 1.2.1.c applies for Pt 5, Ch 23, 4 Orderly evacuation and abandonment after a casualty.

1. 2. 2 For the purposes of this Chapter, 'relevant engineering systems Rules' refers to this Part (i.e. Pt 5 Main and Auxiliary Machinery), Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems and Pt 6, Ch 2 Electrical Engineering.

1. 2. 3 The 'casualty threshold' in the context of a fire includes:

a. loss of space of origin up to the nearest 'A' class boundaries, which may be a part of the space of origin, if the space of origin is protected by a fixed fire extinguishing system; or
b. loss of the space of origin and adjacent spaces up to the nearest 'A' class boundaries, which are not part of the space of origin.

1. 2. 4 Ship lengths and main vertical zones considered are to be as defined by Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1 Principal particulars 6.1.8 and SOLAS 1974, as amended Chapter II-2/A, *Regulation 3 - Definitions*, respectively.

1. 2. 5 'Safe areas' are those that will be available, during a ship's return to port under its own propulsion after a casualty that does not exceed the casualty threshold stipulated, to provide the basic services to ensure that the health of passengers and crew is maintained.

1. 2. 6 For the purposes of this Chapter, 'reversionary control stations' are those control stations provided for use during safe return to port and orderly evacuation and abandonment to satisfy the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 23, 2 Safe return to port and Pt 5, Ch 23, 4 Orderly evacuation and abandonment after a casualty in the event of the normal control station being subject to fire damage or flooding.

1. 2. 7 A 'failure' is the termination of the ability of an item to perform a required function. For the purposes of Pt 5, Ch 23, 3 Qualitative failure analysis for propulsion, steering and essential services:

a. failures result from a fault in a component or system such that it cannot perform an intended or required function, including faults resulting from fire or flooding damage;
b. 'common cause failures' are those failures which will cause more than one item to fail simultaneously, or within a sufficiently short period of time as to have the effect of simultaneous failures; and
c. 'consequential failures' are secondary failures caused by the effects of a primary failure, i.e. where the occurrence of a failure leads directly to further failures.

1. 3 General requirements and risk management

1. 3. 1 For passenger ships having a length of 120 m or more, or having 3 or more main vertical zones, it is the responsibility of the Shipbuilder to ensure that the arrangement of the ship's machinery and equipment as described in Pt 5, Ch 23, 1.1 Scope and application 1.1.2 are sufficient for the intended operating modes and to support the provision of the services that the National Administration has determined to be necessary for:

a. the ship's safe return to port under its own propulsion, *See* Pt 5, Ch 23, 2 Safe return to port:
   i. after a casualty that does not exceed the casualty threshold; or
   ii. when the ship is subject to flooding of any single watertight compartment; and/or

b. supporting the orderly evacuation and abandonment of the ship if the casualty threshold is exceeded, *See* Pt 5, Ch 23, 4 Orderly evacuation and abandonment after a casualty.

This necessitates activities, which will normally be risk based, to determine the machinery and equipment needed to remain operational for a period of time to satisfy the requirements of the relevant SOLAS Regulations to the satisfaction of the National Administration. These activities are to be carried out prior to the submission of plans in accordance with this Chapter.

1. 3. 2 The activities referred to in Pt 5, Ch 23, 1.3 General requirements and risk management 1.3.1 may be conducted at the same time, or in conjunction with, activities to determine the criteria that the National Administration specify as necessary to achieve overall compliance with the relevant SOLAS Regulations. The ship's intended operational routes and/or service restrictions may be considered when establishing criteria.

1. 3. 3 It is the responsibility of the Shipbuilder to ensure that watertight and fire divisions, fire-fighting systems and bulkhead decks shown on the plans are those approved by the National Administration.

1. 3. 4 Where alternatives to the requirements of this Chapter are proposed, details demonstrating that the machinery and engineering systems comply with the relevant SOLAS Regulations are to be submitted for consideration.

1. 4 Plans and information

1. 4. 1 In addition to the plans and information otherwise required by relevant engineering systems Rules, the plans and information detailed in Pt 5, Ch 23, 1.4 Plans and information 1.4.2 are to be submitted.

1. 4. 2 The analysis report described in Pt 5, Ch 23, 3.1, General 3.1.5 that includes the following information:

a. identification of any applicable standards used for analysis of the design;
b. description of the analysis team and their roles for information only;
c. identification of the objectives of the analysis, including any National Administration acceptance criteria;
d. identification of assumptions made in the analysis;
e. description of intended system function under normal conditions and in the event of fire or flooding;
f. identification of the equipment, system or sub-system and mode of operation, including the design plans and information considered;
g. identification of casualty scenarios, probable failure modes and acceptable deviations from the intended or required function;
h. evaluation of the local effects and the effects on the overall installation of each failure mode as applicable;
i. identification of the worst case scenario in the event of a fire casualty or flooding, as described in Pt 5, Ch 23, 2.1, General 2.1.1, and an assessment of the ship's ahead and astern manoeuvring capability under these conditions (IMO *Resolution MSC.137(76) - Standards for Ship Manoeuvrability - (adopted on 4 December 2002)*, provides standards to assess the manoeuvrability of ships); and
j. trials, testing and other activities necessary to verify compliance with Pt 5, Ch 23, 3 Qualitative failure analysis for propulsion, steering and essential services. The final report described in Pt 5, Ch 23, 3.1 General 3.1.5.b is to be submitted once the proposed design is finalised.

1. 4. 3 Description of intended system function under normal conditions and in the event of fire or flooding for the services referred to in Pt 5, Ch 23, 2 Safe return to port and Pt 5, Ch 23, 4 Orderly evacuation and abandonment after a casualty.

1. 4. 4 Details of analyses conducted to assess the availability of services referred to in Pt 5, Ch 23, 2 Safe return to port and Pt 5, Ch 23, 4 Orderly evacuation and abandonment after a casualty in the event of fire or flooding.

1. 4. 5 Details of National Administration criteria (*See also* Pt 5, Ch 23, 1.3 General requirements and risk management 1.3.1), including:

a. service speed, manoeuvring capability and time period of operation and ship range for ship return to port under its own propulsion;
b. systems determined to be vital to damage control efforts;
c. identification of required internal communications arrangements; and
d. identification of navigation light circuits to be capable of operation during return to port.

1. 4. 6 General arrangement plans of the ship showing the location of machinery and equipment, piping systems, cables and controls stations to be employed for:

a. each of the services described in Pt 5, Ch 23, 2.1, General 2.1.2, Pt 5, Ch 23, 2.1 General 2.1.3, and Pt 5, Ch 23, 4.1, General 4.1.2; and
b. the provision of electrical power described in Pt 5, Ch 23, 2.1 General 2.1.4 and Pt 5, Ch 23, 4.1 General 4.1.3.

The plans are to identify:

c. watertight compartments and the bulkhead deck; and
d. for passenger ships having a length of 120 m or more or having three or more main vertical zones:
   i. safe areas in the context of a casualty; and
   ii. casualty threshold 'A' class structural fire protection boundaries.

The plans are to indicate segregation and fire/flooding protection measures and access arrangements for machinery spaces and associated control stations. These plans are also to be made available to the Surveyor on board.

1. 4. 7 A functional description of the system configurations and intended systems operation in the event of a fire or flooding casualty for the services referred to in Pt 5, Ch 23, 2 Safe return to port to Pt 5, Ch 23, 4 Orderly evacuation and abandonment after a casualty. This is to include reversionary control stations and required internal communications. A copy is to be provided on board.

1. 4. 8 Identification and details:

a. equipment designed to operate in flooded spaces or under fire conditions; and/or
b. other flooding or fire protection measures.

1. 4. 9 A schedule of normal and emergency operating loads on the electrical system for the different expected operating conditions and services described in Pt 5, Ch 23, 2 Safe return to port to Pt 5, Ch 23, 4 Orderly evacuation and abandonment after a casualty.

1. 4. 10 Details identifying the auxiliary systems required for the operation and control of machinery and equipment to provide the services described in Pt 5, Ch 23, 2 Safe return to port to Pt 5, Ch 23, 4 Orderly evacuation and abandonment after a casualty.

1. 4. 11 Details of time period of operation and ship range and service speed corresponding to fuel storage capacity available in the event of fire or flooding scenarios.

1. 4. 12 A schedule of activities, including testing and trials, to verify that the ship is capable of providing the services described in Pt 5, Ch 23, 2 Safe return to port to Pt 5, Ch 23, 4 Orderly evacuation and abandonment after a casualty.

PART

5

CHAPTER **23 Additional Requirements for Passenger Ships**

SECTION **2 Safe return to port**

2. 1 General

2. 1. 1 Consistent with the requirements of the relevant SOLAS Regulations, this Section provides design criteria for machinery and equipment described in Pt 5, Ch 23, 1.1 Scope and application 1.1.2 to remain operational for the ship's safe return to port under its own propulsion, in the event of:

a. a fire casualty that does not exceed the casualty threshold; or

b. flooding of any single watertight compartment.

2. 1. 2 When fire damage from a casualty does not exceed the casualty threshold or when the ship is subject to flooding of any single watertight compartment, machinery and equipment essential for the following services are to remain operational in the remaining part of the ship not affected by fire or flooding:

a. **propulsion systems and their necessary auxiliaries and control systems**. Propulsion machinery and auxiliary machinery essential for the propulsion of the ship at a service speed and range/distance acceptable to the National Administration for return to port under its own propulsion, *See* Pt 5, Ch 23, 3 Qualitative failure analysis for propulsion, steering and essential services;

b. **steering systems and steering-control systems**. Steering systems and steering-control systems sufficient to provide manoeuvring capability acceptable to the National Administration for return to port under its own propulsion, *See* Pt 5, Ch 23, 3 Qualitative failure analysis for propulsion, steering and essential services;

c. **systems for transfer and service of fuel oil**. Systems for internal transfer and service of fuel oil capable of fuel supply to active propulsion and power generation equipment;

d. **bilge and ballast system**. The bilge pumping systems, and all associated equipment essential for its operation, in all spaces not directly affected by the casualty, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 13 Ship Piping Systems and Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.7 Valve control systems;

e. **flooding detection systems**. *See also* Pt 5, Ch 13, 14 Water ingress detection arrangements;

f. **internal communications**. The means of communication required by:

i. Pt 5, Ch 1, 4.8 Communications, Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.2 Control stations for machinery 2.2.2 and/or Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.6 Bridge control for main propulsion machinery 2.6.3 between the bridge and machinery main and subsidiary control stations and engineer's accommodation; and

ii. Pt 5, Ch 19, 2.1 General 2.1.5 between the navigating bridge and the steering gear compartment;

necessary for operation of machinery and equipment, or otherwise identified by the National Administration to be required, during a ship's return to port under its own propulsion; and

g. **navigation lights**. Electric circuit protection, controls and failure alarms for lights specified by the National Administration to be capable of operation, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 15.6 Navigation lights.

2. 1. 3 In addition to the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.16 Operation under fire conditions and Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.17 Operation under flooding conditions, when fire damage from a casualty does not exceed the casualty threshold or when the ship is subject to flooding of any single watertight compartment, machinery and equipment essential for the following services are to remain operational in the remaining part of the ship not affected by fire or flooding:

a. for **internal communication**:
   i. general emergency alarm system. This is in addition to the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 18.2 General emergency alarm system;
   ii. public address system. This is in addition to the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 18.3 Public address system; and
   iii. from the safety centre as required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 17.9 Safety centre on passenger ships 17.9.1;

   where identified by the National Administration to be required to satisfy the relevant SOLAS Regulations for communication between the bridge, engineering spaces, safety centre, fire-fighting and damage control teams, and for passenger and crew notification and mustering;

b. for **fire main systems** where supplied by electrically driven fire pumps, the pumps (and electrical equipment essential for their operation) are to be located and arranged such that operating capability will be available in the event of any main vertical zones being directly affected by the casualty. This is in addition to the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 17.4 Fire pumps;

c. for **fixed fire-extinguishing systems**:
   i. for automatic sprinkler systems where supplied by electrically driven pumps, the pumps are to be located and arranged such that operating capability will be available in all spaces not directly affected by the casualty. This is in addition to the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 17.2 Automatic Sprinkler, fire detection and fire alarm systems;
   ii. for electrically driven refrigeration units for carbon dioxide fire-extinguishing systems, the units are to be located and arranged such that operating capability will be available in all spaces not directly affected by the casualty. This is in addition to the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 17.5 Fixed gas fire-extinguishing systems; and
   iii. electrically operated fire-extinguishing media release alarms in spaces not directly affected by the casualty. This is in addition to the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 17.5 Fixed gas fire-extinguishing systems.

d. the fire detection and alarm system in all spaces not directly affected by the casualty. This is in addition to the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.8 Fire detection and fire alarm systems and Pt 6, Ch 2, 17.1 Fire detection and fire alarm systems ;

e. power-operated watertight doors in spaces not directly affected by the casualty. This is in addition to the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 19.1 Watertight doors;

f. lighting of safe areas and escape route or electrically powered low location lighting. This is in addition to the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2 Electrical Engineering, Pt 6, Ch 2, 3 Emergency source of electrical power, Pt 6, Ch 2, 5.4 Insulated distribution systems, Pt 6, Ch 2, 5.7 Lighting circuits, Pt 6, Ch 2, 18.1 Emergency lighting and Pt 6, Ch 2, 18.4 Escape route or low location lighting (LLL); and

g. other systems required by relevant engineering systems Rules that the National Administration has determined to be vital to damage control efforts.

2. 1. 4 When fire damage from a casualty does not exceed the casualty threshold or when the ship is subject to flooding of any single watertight compartment, electrical power, where required, is to be available and sustainable for the following services:

   i. those required by Pt 5, Ch 23, 2.1, General 2.1.2;
   ii. navigational systems, including navigation lights, required by the National Administration to be capable of operation during return to port (*See also* Pt 7, Ch 9 Navigational Arrangements and Integrated Bridge Systems for relevant classification notations);

iii. internal communication required during a ship's return to port under its own propulsion. Where applicable, charging power for portable means of communication is to be included;
iv. external communication (for communicating via the GMDSS or the VHF Marine and Air Band distress frequencies even if the main GMDSS equipment is lost);
v. fire pumps for the fire main system not directly affected by the casualty;
vi. fixed fire-extinguishing systems (gaseous and water) designed to protect an entire space in all spaces not directly affected by the casualty;
vii. fire detection and alarm system in all spaces not directly affected by the casualty;
viii. power-operated watertight and semi-watertight doors;
ix. systems and equipment intended to support the provision of services to safe areas;
x. other systems that the National Administration has determined to be vital to damage control efforts; and
xi. other fixed electrically powered loads intended to be operated during return to port.

The electrical power available is to be at least sufficient to supply the machinery and equipment specified by the National Administration as necessary and any additional loads identified in (l) during a ship's return to port under its own propulsion with due regard to such services as may be operated simultaneously.

2. 1. 5 Auxiliary and support systems (e.g. engine-room ventilation, lighting of spaces outside safe areas not affected by the casualty, etc.) required for the operation and control of machinery and equipment required to operate in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 23, 2.1, General 2.1.2 and Pt 5, Ch 23, 2.1 General 2.1.3 and to provide electrical power in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 23, 2.1 General 2.1.4 are to remain operational.

2. 1. 6 Fuel oil stores, machinery and equipment are to have sufficient capacity to permit the services required by Pt 5, Ch 23, 2.1, General 2.1.2 to Pt 5, Ch 23, 2.1 General 2.1.5 to be provided for a time period of operation, ship range/distance and service speed acceptable to the National Administration for the ship's return to port under its own propulsion.

2. 1. 7 To satisfy Pt 5, Ch 23, 2.1, General 2.1.2 to Pt 5, Ch 23, 2.1 General 2.1.6, machinery and equipment is to be provided, constructed, segregated and arranged such that the services specified may be provided safely and effectively in the event of potential damage to machinery and equipment as a result of a fire that does not exceed the casualty threshold or flooding of any single watertight compartment, including control, safety, alarm and monitoring equipment and control stations.

2. 1. 8 A description of the intended system function in the event of fire or flooding for the services referred to in this Section are to be submitted for consideration, *See* Pt 5, Ch 23, 1.4 Plans and information 1.4.2 and Pt 5, Ch 23, 1.4 Plans and information 1.4.3. A risk based analysis is to be conducted in accordance with standards acceptable to ACS to assess the availability of services required by this Section (for propulsion and steering, *See* Pt 5, Ch 23, 3 Qualitative failure analysis for propulsion, steering and essential services; for other services, *See* Pt 5, Ch 23, 1.4 Plans and information 1.4.4 and Pt 5, Ch 23, 3.3 Analysis scope 3.3.4).

PART

5

CHAPTER **23 Additional Requirements for Passenger Ships**

SECTION **3 Qualitative failure analysis for propulsion, steering and essential services**

3. 1 General

3. 1. 1 A qualitative risk based failure analysis is to be conducted in accordance with this Section to assess compliance with the analysis objectives.

3. 1. 2 The analysis is to assess the magnitude and consequences of various types of potential hazards in the design that might lead to failure to fulfil the analysis objective(s) stated in Pt 5, Ch 23, 3.2, Analysis objectives. The following are to be considered during the analysis:

a. analysis facilitation;
b. these Rules;
c. relevant statutory regulations and National Administration criteria;
d. the ship design;
e. the intended ship operation; and
f. the relevant machinery, equipment and systems.

3. 1. 3 Those conducting the analysis and their roles are to be recorded in the analysis report.

3. 1. 4 Requirements specified by the National Administration to satisfy the relevant SOLAS Regulations for the ship's propulsion and steering during return to port, *See* Pt 5, Ch 23, 2.1, General 2.1.2, are to be identified in the analysis report, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 23, 1.3 General requirements and risk management 1.3.1.

3. 1. 5 The analysis is to be documented, *See* Pt 5, Ch 23, 1.4 Plans and information 1.4.2, and two reports are to be submitted:

a. a preliminary analysis, after the initial arrangements of different compartments and propulsion and steering arrangements are known, to permit an assessment of compliance with this Section. This is to include an assessment of propulsion and steering capability in the event of a failure, fire or flooding in any compartment casualty; and then
b. a final report on the design, documenting compliance with this Section, that includes a detailed assessment of machinery and equipment required to provide propulsion and steering safely and effectively in accordance with the applicable requirements of Pt 5, Ch 23, 2.1, General 2.1.2.

3. 2 Analysis objectives

3. 2. 1 For passenger ships having a length of 120 m or more, or having 3 or more main vertical zones, the analysis is to:

a. assess, identify and record the effects of failure in propulsion and steering equipment and systems after a fire casualty or flooding as described in Pt 5, Ch 23, 2.1, General 2.1.1 and Pt 5, Ch 23, 2.1 General 2.1.1.b; and
b. verify compliance with Pt 5, Ch 23, 2.1, General 2.1.2) and Pt 5, Ch 23, 2.1 General 2.1.2.b.

3. 2. 2 For other passenger ships, the analysis is to assess, identify and record the effects of failure in propulsion and steering equipment in any space.

3. 3 Analysis scope

3. 3. 1 The analysis is to consider the propulsion and steering machinery, equipment and other associated systems and equipment which might impair the availability of propulsion and steering.

3. 3. 2 To consider the effects of fire or flooding, the analysis is to address the installed locations of relevant equipment and systems.

3. 3. 3 The analysis is to include assessment of potential common cause failures and consequential failures when analysing system redundancy intended to maintain propulsion and/or steering in the event of a failure.

3. 3. 4 Where the analysis scope is extended to additionally consider other services and verify additional compliance with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 23, 2 Safe return to port and/or Pt 5, Ch 23, 4 Orderly evacuation and abandonment after a casualty, details may be submitted, *See* Pt 5, Ch 23, 1.4 Plans and information 1.4.3 and Pt 5, Ch 23, 1.4 Plans and information 1.4.4.

PART

5

CHAPTER **23 Additional Requirements for Passenger Ships**

SECTION **4 Orderly evacuation and abandonment after a casualty**

4. 1 General

4. 1. 1 Consistent with the requirements of the relevant SOLAS Regulations, this Section provides design criteria for machinery and equipment described in Pt 5, Ch 23, 1.1 Scope and application 1.1.2 to remain operational, thereby supporting orderly evacuation and abandonment of the ship in the event of a fire that exceeds the casualty threshold.

4. 1. 2 In addition to the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.16 Operation under fire conditions, when any one main vertical zone is unserviceable due to fire, machinery and equipment essential for the provision of the following emergency services are to remain operational in the remaining part of the ship not affected by fire:

a. for **fire main systems** where supplied by electrically driven fire pumps, the pumps (and electrical equipment essential for their operation) are to be located and arranged such that operating capability will be available in all main vertical zones not directly affected by the casualty. This is in addition to the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 17.4 Fire pumps;

b. for **internal communication**:

i. general emergency alarm system. This is in addition to the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 18.2 General emergency alarm system;

ii. public address system. This is in addition to the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 18.3 Public address system; and

iii.from the safety centre as required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 17.9 Safety centre on passenger ships 17.9.1;

where identified by the National Administration to be required to satisfy SOLAS 1974 as amended, Chapter II-2/G, *3 Systems* for communication in support of fire-fighting and/or for passenger and crew notification and evacuation;

c. for **bilge systems**, the bilge pumping systems, and all associated equipment essential for its operation, in all spaces not directly affected by the casualty to permit the removal of fire-fighting water. This is in addition to the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 13 Ship Piping Systems and Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.7 Valve control systems; and

d. lighting of escape routes, assembly stations and at embarkation stations of life-saving appliances and electrically powered low location lighting. This is in addition to the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2 Electrical Engineering, Pt 6, Ch 2, 3 Emergency source of electrical power, Pt 6, Ch 2, 5.4 Insulated distribution systems, Pt 6, Ch 2, 5.7 Lighting circuits, Pt 6, Ch 2, 18.1 Emergency lighting and Pt 6, Ch 2, 18.4 Escape route or low location lighting (LLL).

4. 1. 3 When any one main vertical zone is unserviceable due to fire, electrical power, where required, is to be available and sustainable for the following services:

a. those required by Pt 5, Ch 23, 4.1, General 4.1.2;
b. other required means of internal communications systems not addressed by Pt 5, Ch 23, 4.1 General 4.1.2.b;
c. means of external communications provided to communicate via the GMDSS or the VHF Marine and Air Band distress frequencies even if the main GMDSS equipment is lost;
d. guidance systems for evacuation not addressed by Pt 5, Ch 23, 4.1 General 4.1.2.d;
e. life-saving appliances and arrangements;
f. other systems that the National Administration has determined to be necessary to comply with SOLAS 1974 as amended, Chapter II-2/G, *3 Systems* ; and
g. other fixed electrically powered loads intended to be operated during evacuation and abandonment.

The electrical power available is to be at least sufficient to supply the machinery and equipment specified by the National Administration as necessary to support orderly evacuation and abandonment with due regard to such services as may be operated simultaneously.

4. 1. 4 Machinery and equipment required to satisfy this sub-Section is to be capable of operation for at least 3 hours based on the assumption of no damage outside the unserviceable main vertical zone. System operation within the unserviceable main vertical zones is not required.

4. 1. 5 A description of the intended system function in the event of fire for the services referred to in this Section is to be submitted for consideration, *See* Pt 5, Ch 23, 1.4 Plans and information 1.4.3. A risk based analysis is to be conducted in accordance with standards acceptable to ACS to assess the availability of services required by this Section, *See* Pt 5, Ch 23, 1.4 Plans and information 1.4.4 and Pt 5, Ch 23, 3.3 Analysis scope 3.3.4.

PART

5

CHAPTER **23 Additional Requirements for Passenger Ships**

SECTION **5 Verification, testing and trials**

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 Activities, including testing and trials, are to be carried out to verify that the services described in Pt 5, Ch 23, 2 Safe return to port and Pt 5, Ch 23, 4 Orderly evacuation and abandonment after a casualty may be provided in the event of fire or flooding to the satisfaction of ACS, *See* Pt 5, Ch 23, 1.1 Scope and application 1.1.5 andPt 5, Ch 23, 1.4 Plans and information 1.4.12. These activities are to include at least those in Pt 5, Ch 23, 5.1 General 5.1.2 and Pt 5, Ch 23, 5.1, General 5.1.3.

5. 1. 2 System Capability Testing is to be carried out to verify the ability of each essential system to provide capabilities in line with the design criteria. This testing is to be completed during harbour acceptance trials and sea trials, to the satisfaction of ACS.

5. 1. 3 Scenario testing is to be carried out, verifying the ability of all the essential systems to provide the required capabilities under the identified fire and flooding casualties, taking full account of interaction and dependencies between the essential systems. Tests can be performed during harbour acceptance trials; however, certain scenarios will be required to be tested under sea-going conditions, where performance can only be properly verified during trials at sea (e.g. navigational systems, manoeuvrability, etc.). Testing of at least six scenarios is to be completed and is to include at least:

a. loss of a Main Vertical Zone;
b. casualty that results in the largest reduction in propulsion power;
c. casualty that results in the largest reduction in steering capability;
d. casualty that results in the most manual actions;
e. casualty with the highest fire risk/load; and
f. casualty affecting the greater number of essential systems.

Note It is acceptable that scenarios Pt 5, Ch 23, 5.1 General 5.1.3.b, Pt 5, Ch 23, 5.1 General 5.1.3.c, Pt 5, Ch 23, 5.1 General 5.1.3.d, Pt 5, Ch 23, 5.1 General 5.1.3.e and Pt 5, Ch 23, 5.1 General 5.1.3.emay be covered by the same test if applicable.

5. 1. 4 The above testing is to verify:

a. The effect of a specific component failure.
b. The effectiveness of automatic/manual isolation systems.
c. The behaviour of any interlocks that may inhibit operation of essential systems.

5. 2 Trials

5. 2. 1 In addition to the requirements for sea trials in Pt 5, Ch 1, 5.2, Sea trials, trials are to be carried out to demonstrate that an acceptable service speed and steering capability for return to port can be achieved in the event of fire or flooding, *See* Pt 5, Ch 23, 2.1, General 2.1.2, Pt 5, Ch 23, 2.1

General 2.1.2.b andPt 5, Ch 23, 5.1, General 5.1.3. The operational envelope(s) under the failure conditions is(are) to be determined.

PART

5

CHAPTER **24** **Emissions Abatement Plant for Combustion Machinery**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**2619**
	1. 1	Scope	2619
	1. 2	Class notation and descriptive note	2619
SECTION 2	**Functional requirements**		**2623**
	2. 1	Functional requirements of emissions abatement plant	2623
SECTION 3	**Information to be submitted**		**2624**
	3. 1	General	2624
	3. 2	Materials and hull construction	2625
	3. 3	Chemical substances	2625
	3. 4	Mechanical equipment	2626
	3. 5	Pressure vessels	2626
	3. 6	Pumping and piping	2626
	3. 7	Electrical and control equipment	2627
SECTION 4	**Materials**		**2628**
	4. 1	General	2628
SECTION 5	**Hull construction**		**2629**
	5. 1	General	2629
	5. 2	Location service and control spaces	2630
	5. 3	Integrity of water and gastightness between compartments	2631
	5. 4	Plant support structure	2631
SECTION 6	**Mechanical equipment**		**2632**
	6. 1	General	2632
	6. 2	By-pass or equivalent arrangements	2633
	6. 3	Shared emissions abatement plant	2633
	6. 4	Maintenance of back-pressure	2633

6. 5 Protection of combustion machinery 2633
SECTION 7 Pumping and piping 2635
7. 1 General 2635
SECTION 8 Pressure vessels 2637
8. 1 General 2637
SECTION 9 Electrical and control equipment 2638
9. 1 General 2638
SECTION 10 Storage and use of chemicals 2641
10. 1 Sodium hydroxide solution 2641
10. 2 Sodium bicarbonate 2642
10. 3 Ammonia solution 2642
SECTION 11 SOx emissions abatement plant 2643
11. 1 General 2643
SECTION 12 NOx emissions abatement plant 2645
12. 1 General 2645

PART

5

CHAPTER **24** **Emissions Abatement Plant for Combustion Machinery**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 24. 9. 1: Machinery emissions to air abatement plant: alarms and safeguards..... 2639

PART

5

CHAPTER **24** **Emissions Abatement Plant for Combustion Machinery**

SECTION **1** **General**

1. 1 Scope

1. 1. 1 The requirements of this Chapter apply to machinery and equipment fitted to combustion machinery in order to reduce emissions produced by the combustion of fuel. Such machinery and equipment is hereinafter referred to as emissions abatement plant.

The requirements are intended to ensure that the emissions abatement plant is safe to operate and maintain and, additionally, where the combustion machinery provides power for essential services, that failure of the emissions abatement plant does not result in an unacceptable loss or degradation of those essential services.

The requirements are applicable to emissions abatement plant making use of both primary techniques, which reduce emissions by controlling the combustion process or removing pollutants prior to combustion, e.g. Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR), and to secondary emissions abatement techniques which reduce emissions from the exhaust gas after combustion, e.g. scrubbers and Selective Catalytic Reduction (SCR). Emissions abatement plant making use of primary techniques is also to satisfy the applicable requirements of Pt 5, Ch 2 Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engines (*See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 1.2 Scope 1.2.4).

It should be noted that these requirements do not provide for the reliability or redundancy necessary to ensure continued operation of the emissions abatement plant, and thereby compliance with relevant emissions requirements, following failure of any machinery, equipment or components associated with the emissions abatement plant.

1. 2 Class notation and descriptive note

1. 2. 1 Ships complying with the relevant SO_x emissions abatement plant requirements of this Chapter will be eligible for assignment of the **EGCS()** machinery notation. This notation is to be assigned with one of the following associated notations depending on the type of SO_x emissions abatement plant that is installed on board, e.g. scrubber:

- **(Open)** Open loop wet scrubber installed with no capacity to operate in zero discharge mode;
- **(Closed)** Closed loop wet scrubber installed only capable of operating in zero discharge mode;
- **(Hybrid)** The installed wet scrubber is able to operate in both open loop and closed loop modes; or
- **(Dry)** Dry scrubber installed.

The **EGCS()** notation indicates that the SO_x emissions abatement plant has been designed, constructed, arranged, installed and tested in accordance with ACS's Rules and Regulations.

Application of the EGCS() notation does not infer that the installation meets applicable statutory emissions regulations. Where the installed SO_x emissions abatement plant is not intended to reduce the emissions produced by all fuel oil combustion machinery, excluding shipboard incinerators fitted on board that are required to comply with other statutory emissions regulations and machinery used for emergency purposes such as emergency generators, the notation '**Partial**' is to be appended to the **EGCS** notation, e.g. **EGCS(Open, Partial)**.

1. 2. 2 Ships complying with relevant SO_x emissions abatement plant requirements of this Chapter may be eligible for the Exhaust Gas Cleaning System Ready (**EGCS-R()**) descriptive note. This descriptive note may be assigned when aspects of design and construction are prepared for installation of SO_x emissions abatement plant for combustion machinery, e.g. scrubber. This is not an ACS class notation and is provided solely for information.

EGCS-R() Assigned to ships with the extension of one or more of the following associated characters shown in brackets, detailing the aspects of design and construction that are in accordance with ACS's Rules and Regulations in force on the date of 'contract for construction':
A Preliminary assessment of the proposed SO_x emissions abatement plant including its arrangement on board has been completed satisfactorily;
S Enhanced structural reinforcement and structural modifications necessary for the function of the proposed SO_x emissions abatement plant have been fitted under survey. For open loop systems this includes any necessary enlargement of sea chests and fitting of additional sea water inlets for future use;
T The relevant tank(s) needed for operation of the proposed SO_x emissions abatement plant (e.g. chemical and/or residue storage tanks as applicable) have been installed under survey in accordance with approved design.
Where the proposed SO_x emissions abatement plant is not intended to reduce the emissions produced by all fuel oil combustion machinery, excluding shipboard incinerators fitted on board that are required to comply with other statutory emissions regulations and machinery used for emergency purposes such as emergency generators, the notation **'Partial'** is to be appended to the **EGCS** descriptive note with applicable characters, e.g. **EGCS-R(A, Partial)**, **EGCS-R(A, Closed, Partial, T)**, as appropriate. Further appraisal against the ACS requirements at the time of installation followed by testing under survey will be required when the emissions abatement plant is to be installed. Application of the **EGCS-R()** descriptive note does not infer that the proposed installation will meet the statutory requirements for emissions regulation.

1. 2. 3 The following are to be submitted to achieve **EGCS-R** descriptive note with applicable associated characters:

a. **EGCS-R(A)** 'Preliminary assessment'

- Vessel general arrangement;
- General arrangement of SO_x emissions abatement plant illustrating the locations of SO_x emissions abatement machinery and tanks with respect to machinery, control and service spaces;
- Exhaust system arrangement (showing necessary modifications for installation of the proposed SO_x emissions abatement system);
- Arrangement and capacity of tanks for storage of chemicals, sludge and residue as necessary;
- Information on the operational requirements of the proposed SO_x emissions abatement plant with respect to sea water demand and additional chemical requirements as applicable;
- Electrical system requirements including details of how the proposed system is to be incorporated into the vessels electrical system; and
- Preliminary studies for vessel loadline and stability taking the proposed SO_x emissions abatement plant installation into account.

b. **EGCS-R(S)** 'Structural reinforcement fitted'
- Full details of the structural reinforcement required to support the proposed SO_x emissions abatement plant are to be submitted. This should include details of the proposed plant type, size, location and loadings (dynamic and static) to allow verification of the submitted structural design and calculations for the plant support arrangements.

c. **EGCS-R(T)** 'Tank installed'
- Plans and information required for **EGCS-R(S)** descriptive note;
- Structural plans for tanks to be installed, and any additional support arrangements where necessary for independent tanks, in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 1, 2 Direct calculations;
- Full details of the materials proposed for construction of the tank(s);
- Details of the flammability, toxicity, corrosivity and reactivity of any chemicals to be stored in the tanks. This is to include effluent and sludge associated with the SO_x emissions abatement plant, and the corrosivity of wash water for wet scrubbing systems;
- Details of air and sounding pipes to tanks containing chemicals, substances and effluent; and
- Details of arrangements for loading, storage, transfer and disposal of chemicals, by-products or waste products. This is to include allowable maximum and minimum storage temperatures for substances which are sensitive to temperature.

1. 2. 4 Ships complying with the relevant NO_x emissions abatement plant requirements of this Chapter will be eligible for assignment of the **EGCN()** machinery notation. This notation is to be supplemented by the following associated notation(s) depending on the type of NO_x emissions abatement plant that is installed on board, e.g. SCR:

- **(SCR)** Selective Catalytic Reduction installed.

1. 2. 5 Ships complying with particular NO_x emissions abatement plant requirements of this Chapter may be eligible for the Exhaust Gas Cleaning for NO_x Ready **(EGCN-R())** descriptive note. This descriptive note may be assigned when aspects of design and construction are prepared for installation of NO_x emissions abatement plant for combustion machinery, e.g. SCR. This is not an ACS class notation and is provided solely for information.

EGCN-R() Assigned to ships with the extension of one or more of the following associated characters shown in brackets, detailing the aspects of design and construction that are in accordance with ACS's Rules and Regulations in force on the date of 'contract for construction':
A Preliminary assessment of the proposed NO_x emissions abatement plant including its arrangement on board has been completed satisfactorily;
S Enhanced structural reinforcement and structural modifications necessary for the function of the proposed NO_x emissions abatement plant have been fitted under survey;
T The relevant tank(s) needed for operation of the proposed NO_x emissions abatement plant (e.g. chemical tanks) have been installed under survey in accordance with approved design.

1. 2. 6 The following are to be submitted to achieve **EGCN-R()** descriptive note with applicable associated characters:

a. **EGCN-R(A)** 'Preliminary assessment'
- Vessel general arrangement;
- General arrangement of NO_x emissions abatement plant illustrating the locations of NO_x emissions abatement machinery and tanks with respect to machinery, control and service spaces;
- Exhaust system arrangement (showing necessary modifications for installation of the proposed NO_x emissions abatement plant);

- Arrangement and capacity of tanks for storage of chemicals;
- Information on the operational requirements of the proposed NO_x emissions abatement plant with respect to additional chemical requirements as applicable;
- Electrical system requirements including details of how the proposed system is to be incorporated into the vessel's electrical system; and
- Preliminary studies for vessel Load Line and stability taking the proposed NO_x emissions abatement plant installation into account.

b. **EGCN-R(S)** 'Structural reinforcement fitted'

- Full details of the structural reinforcement required to support the proposed NO_x emissions abatement plant are to be submitted. This should include details of the proposed plant type, size, location and loadings (dynamic and static) to allow verification of the submitted structural design and calculations for the plant support arrangements.

c. **EGCN-R(T)** 'Tank installed'

- Plans and information required for **EGCN-R(S)** descriptive note;
- Structural plans for tanks to be installed, and any additional support arrangements where necessary for independent tanks, in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 1, 2 Direct calculations;
- Full details of the materials proposed for construction of the tank(s);
- Details of the flammability, toxicity, corrosivity and reactivity of any chemicals to be stored in the tanks. This is to include effluent associated with the NO_x emissions abatement plant;
- Details of air and sounding pipes to tanks containing chemicals, substances and effluent; and
- Details of arrangements for loading, storage, transfer and disposal of chemicals, by-products or waste products. This is to include allowable maximum and minimum storage temperatures for substances which are sensitive to temperature.

1. 2. 7 Where a primary NO_x emissions abatement plant is fitted to the ship's engine(s), e.g. EGR, the ship will be eligible for the assignment of the **EGCN()** machinery notation with the following notation, subject to complying with the applicable requirements given in Pt 5, Ch 2 Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engines and this Chapter:

- **(EGR)** Exhaust Gas Recirculation installed.

PART

5

CHAPTER **24** **Emissions Abatement Plant for Combustion Machinery**

SECTION **2** **Functional requirements**

2. 1 Functional requirements of emissions abatement plant

2. 1. 1 Emissions abatement plant is to be capable of operating at the stated maximum operating limits of the combustion machinery to which it is connected. Where the machinery installation is configured such that it is not intended to operate all the combustion machinery connected to the emissions abatement plant simultaneously in normal operating conditions, this will be subject to special consideration and supported by the submission required by Pt 5, Ch 24, 3.1 General 3.1.2.

2. 1. 2 Operation and maintenance of the emissions abatement plant is not to present a hazard to the ship's occupants or to the environment.

2. 1. 3 Failure of the emissions abatement plant is not to present a hazard to the ship's occupants or any other hazard other than untreated emissions to the environment.

2. 1. 4 Where the emissions abatement plant is connected to combustion machinery providing power for essential services, failure of, or the inability to operate, the emissions abatement plant is not to prevent the combustion machinery from delivering sufficient power to those essential services so as to ensure the safe operation of the ship.

2. 1. 5 Any discharges to water from the emissions abatement plant are to be in accordance with the requirements of National and International Regulations, as applicable.

PART

5

CHAPTER 24 **Emissions Abatement Plant for Combustion Machinery**

SECTION 3 **Information to be submitted**

3. 1 General

3. 1. 1 The information required by this Section and the information required by Pt 3, Ch 1, 2 Direct calculations is to be submitted.

3. 1. 2 A description of the emissions abatement plant and the abatement technique(s) used. This is to include details of the proposed combustion machinery operating configurations where using a common emissions abatement plant for multiple exhaust gas inlet streams and any limitations on the operation of combustion machinery connected to the emissions abatement plant.

3. 1. 3 Where emissions abatement plant makes use of more than one abatement technique, e.g. separate means for reducing NO_x and SO_x, details demonstrating their compatibility with the combustion machinery and with each other.

3. 1. 4 Diagram showing the process flows.

3. 1. 5 A list of system main components and associated ancillaries.

3. 1. 6 Details of the hazards associated with operation and maintenance and reasonably fore*See*able failure of the emissions abatement plant and the means by which they are mitigated in accordance with the requirements given in Pt 5, Ch 24, 6 Mechanical equipment. The details of impact on the operation of essential services due to failure of the emissions abatement plant and proposed mitigation measures are to be submitted. .

3. 1. 7 Details of any fuel treatments, fuel additives or fuel emulsification used as a primary means of emissions abatement from combustion machinery, together with a manufacturer's letter confirming the suitability of combustion machinery to operate with such treatments and additives. Details are to include evidence that materials, fuel filtration and arrangements for the control of viscosity and temperature have been suitably modified, along with evidence of the suitability of fuel pumps and fuel valves for the treated fuel, with particular attention to viscosity, lubricity and stability, as applicable.

3. 1. 8 Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) and details for handling of hazardous and non-hazardous chemicals used in the emissions abatement plant in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 24, 6.1 General 6.1.7.

3. 1. 9 Testing procedures for installation and commissioning trials.

3. 1. 10 Where failure of components and equipment in the emissions abatement plant will affect essential services, appropriate certification for such components and equipment shall be submitted as agreed with ACS.

3. 1. 11 Exhaust back-pressure calculations in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 24, 6.4 Maintenance of back-pressure.

3. 2 Materials and hull construction

3. 2. 1 Details of the materials proposed for all types of construction.

3. 2. 2 Plans showing the foundation and attachments of emissions abatement plant to the ship structure, including scantlings, and welding details.

3. 2. 3 Full details of the structural reinforcement required to support the proposed emissions abatement plant are to be submitted, including plant type, size, location and loadings (dynamic and static) to allow verification of the submitted structural design and calculations for the plant support arrangements.

3. 3 Chemical substances

3. 3. 1 Details of the flammability, toxicity, corrosivity and reactivity of any chemicals used, together with details of any exothermic and hazardous reactions, particularly with regard to sea water. This is to include effluent and sludge associated with emissions abatement plant.

3. 3. 2 General arrangement of spaces where toxic or flammable liquids, gases, dusts or vapours are stored or may accumulate, indicating the hatches and other access openings.

3. 3. 3 Details of arrangements for loading, storage, transfer and disposal of chemicals, by-products or waste products. This is to include allowable maximum and minimum storage temperatures for substances which are sensitive to temperature.

3. 3. 4 General arrangement showing spaces maintained at an over-pressure to prevent the ingress of gases, dusts or vapours.

3. 3. 5 Details and arrangements of blowdown and bleedoff systems, where applicable, including quantities of chemicals, substances and effluents and the capacity and working pressure of tanks and receivers installed for the reception of such substances and effluents.

3. 3. 6 Arrangements for purging, gas freeing, inerting or otherwise rendering safe of the emissions abatement plant and storage facilities for chemicals, effluent and by-products associated with the plant.

3. 3. 7 The flow and return flow of chemicals, substances, effluent or by-products, including:

a. Substance supply and product discharge, with details of the arrangements showing the location of shut-off valves and of the control and indicating stations.
b. The process plant parameters and analysis of conditions under which emergency shutdown will be initiated.
c. Measures to eliminate risk of process fluid reverse flows which could present a risk to propulsion engines, auxiliary engines and essential services.
d. The proposed emergency procedures for controlled shutdown of the plant, i.e. depressurising, isolating and the arrangements for the continued operation of the essential services necessary to allow for such controlled shutdown under the emergency conditions identified in Pt 5, Ch 24, 3.3 Chemical substances 3.3.7.b, as applicable.

3. 3. 8 Proposals for the decontamination of the emissions abatement plant compartments for installations using chemicals, substances and/or producing effluent or byproducts or where there is a possibility of generating hazardous substances during the operation of plant. These proposals are to include both normal operating requirements for decontamination (such as for carrying out maintenance) and post-incident decontamination.

3. 3. 9 Arrangement for the detection of liquids, gas and vapours where such substances could present a fire, explosion or health hazard.

3. 4 Mechanical equipment

3. 4. 1 Details of mechanical equipment associated with the emissions abatement plant to be installed.

3. 4. 2 Details of any safety and pressure-relief devices and their discharge arrangements.

3. 4. 3 Plans showing the materials of construction, working pressures and temperatures, maximum and minimum exhaust gas flows, fuel quality parameters, maximum and minimum flow rates of any water, fluids, chemicals or substances required by the process, maximum effluent or by-product discharge rate resulting from the process.

3. 4. 4 Details of the arrangements for protecting the emissions abatement plant, its tanks and vessels against temperature, over-pressure and vacuum. Details are to include consideration of storage temperature requirements and, where applicable, tanks are to be maintained within the temperature limits of the chemicals and substances they contain so as to avoid risks of boiling, stress corrosion, freezing and other temperature-sensitive processes.

3. 4. 5 Details of the by-pass arrangements or, where considered unnecessary, evidence demonstrating that the emissions abatement plant is capable of continued operation with the expected gas flows. Evidence is to include conditions where the emissions abatement plant is in a shutdown condition, both as a result of emergency conditions and when shut down for normal operational reasons. This is to be supported by detailed proposals demonstrating material suitability and is to ensure that, where there is a risk of blockage, this can be monitored so as to ensure that remedial action can be taken before blockage presents a risk to both propulsion and auxiliary engine and emissions abatement plant operations.

3. 5 Pressure vessels

3. 5. 1 Plans of any pressure vessels, including details of the support of the vessels. Diagrammatic plans for systems associated with emissions abatement process equipment as required by Pt 5, Ch 10, Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels and Pt 5, Ch 11 Other Pressure Vessels, as applicable.

3. 5. 2 Details of the safety and pressure-relief devices and their discharge arrangements.

3. 5. 3 Stress calculations taking into account the ship linear and angular accelerations, roll and pitch amplitudes, ship flexure and wind loads, appropriate to any condition which may normally arise at sea.

3. 6 Pumping and piping

3. 6. 1 Plans of the emissions abatement plant piping systems, showing the materials of construction, scantlings, support and expansion arrangements, together with the calculations.

3. 6. 2 Diagrammatic plans for systems associated with emissions abatement process equipment, as required by Pt 5, Ch 12 Piping Design Requirements, Pt 5, Ch 13 Ship Piping Systems and Pt 5, Ch 14 Machinery Piping Systems of the Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships, as applicable.

3. 6. 3 Plans showing the arrangement and dimensions of main exhaust pipes, with details of flanges, bolts and weld attachments and particulars of the materials of the pipes, flanges, bolts and welding consumables.

3. 6. 4 Details of the safety and pressure-relief devices and their discharge arrangements.

3. 6. 5 Details of air and sounding pipes to tanks containing chemicals, substances and effluent.

3. 6. 6 The arrangements for the storage on board the ship, and the disposal, of bilge and effluent from the emissions abatement plant spaces, giving particular consideration to the risk of flooding as a result of emissions abatement plant failure. Recognition is to be given to the requirements of the

appropriate National Authority. An inspection and maintenance schedule is to be submitted, describing the items such as, but not limited to, inspection procedures for coating, pipe corrosion and their inspection intervals.

3. 7 Electrical and control equipment

3. 7. 1 General arrangement plan of the process plant, showing the location of the major items of electrical equipment.

3. 7. 2 Line diagram of the installation(s), indicating the rating of the various items of rotating machinery, converters and transformers.

3. 7. 3 Arrangement plans and circuit diagrams of the switchboards.

3. 7. 4 General arrangement plan of the process plant, showing the location of electrical equipment in hazardous zones.

3. 7. 5 A schedule of safe-type electrical equipment located in hazardous zones, giving details of the type of equipment employed, the certifying authority and the certificate number.

3. 7. 6 Line diagrams of any control system(s) fitted.

3. 7. 7 General arrangement plan of the process plant, showing the locations of items of control equipment and the locations of hazardous zones.

3. 7. 8 Schedule of the parameters which are monitored and controlled, including alarms and shutdown devices.

PART

5

CHAPTER **24** **Emissions Abatement Plant for Combustion Machinery**

SECTION **4** **Materials**

4. 1 General

4. 1. 1 The materials used in the construction of the emissions abatement plant and any associated chemical and effluent storage tanks are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials or a relevant National or International Standard acceptable to ACS.

4. 1. 2 The materials used for wet scrubbers, selective catalytic reduction reactors, piping and tanks associated with such equipment (including chemicals, washwater and sludge) are to be constructed of corrosion-resistant material which is suitable for the chemicals, substances and effluents, and the expected operating temperatures and pressures associated with the process. Where it is proposed to use a corrosion-resistant lining or coating in lieu of corrosion resistant materials, then such lining and coatings are to be confirmed as being suitable for the expected operating temperatures and pressures, and corrosive properties of the chemicals, substances and effluents associated with the process, *See* Pt 5, Ch 24, 3.3 Chemical substances 3.3.1.

PART

5

CHAPTER **24** **Emissions Abatement Plant for Combustion Machinery**

SECTION **5** **Hull construction**

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 The hull structure is to comply with the relevant requirements of Pt 3 Ship Structures (General) and Pt 4 Ship Structures (Ship Types), except where stated otherwise in this Section.

5. 1. 2 The location of substance and effluent tanks structures within the ship's hull are to comply with *Chapters 2* and *4* of the Rules for Ships for Liquid Chemicals. Alternative proposals demonstrating equivalent or increased protection against damage in the event of collision or grounding may be considered.

5. 1. 3 Substance and effluent tanks are to be protected from mechanical damage. This may be achieved either by installation in spaces where there are no cargo or vehicle movements and where no heavy lifting operations are expected, or by mechanical protection, if installed in spaces where such operations may take place.

5. 1. 4 Where necessary, the probable temperature variations during operations and the thermal stress considerations are to be stated. Where it is necessary either to heat or cool chemical storage tanks, the arrangements are to utilise either pipe coils or ducts for circulating a heating or cooling medium within the chemical storage tank or a heat exchanger through which the chemical and a heating or cooling medium is circulated. Active heating and cooling systems are to have the capacity to maintain the chemical in the designated tank within the specified temperature limits, *See* Pt 5, Ch 24, 3.3 Chemical substances 3.3.3, Pt 5, Ch 24, 3.4 Mechanical equipment 3.4.4 and Pt 5, Ch 24, 7.1 General 7.1.9 under the following conditions:

	Heating systems	Cooling systems
Seawater temperature	0°C	32°C
Air temperature	5°C	45°C

Note Heating or cooling media are to be suitable for use with the specific chemical, and consideration is to be given to the surface temperature of heating coils or ducts to avoid dangerous reactions from localised overheating or overcooling of chemicals. Heating or cooling systems are to be provided with valves to isolate the system for each tank and to allow manual regulation of flow along with a means for measuring the temperature.

5. 1. 5 Where independent tanks are used for chemical substances, these are to be arranged so as to contain spillage. This may be achieved by using a double skinned storage tank, by means of a spill containment bund or by placing the tank in a dedicated compartment. Where a bund is to be used, it is to comply with the following:

a. the bund is dimensioned so as to contain the maximum contents of the tank at the angles of inclination required for main and auxiliary machinery in Table 1. 3. 2: Inclination of ship in Pt 5, Ch 1 General Requirements for the Design and Construction of Machinery; or

b. there is a drain arrangement meeting the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 24, 5.1 General 5.1.7. If the tank is located in a dedicated compartment then the compartment is to contain no equipment other than that required by the tank with permanent access and floor plates positioned above the liquid level if the tank were to discharge its full contents into the compartment. Any valves, equipment and emergency stop functions are to be operable from outside this compartment and are to meet the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 24, 5.2 Location service and control spaces.

Tanks and spill containment arrangements are to be fitted with alarms and safeguards, in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 24, 9.1 General 9.1.11.

5. 1. 6 Proposals are to be made for the dimensioning of containment arrangements, relative to the potential leakage which may require containment. Where it is not practicable to contain the potential leakage fully and where this leakage can pose a hazard to personnel, proposals are to be submitted, demonstrating that leakage will be transferred to a suitable retention tank, and the means of transfer shall be capable of operating in a dead ship condition and shall be fitted with a flow detection alarm, in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 24, 9.1 General 9.1.11.

5. 1. 7 Chemical storage tanks and any other tanks which may contain liquids hazardous to personnel are to be arranged such that residues and slops can be pumped out, drained or otherwise removed from the tank without exposing personnel.

5. 1. 8 Chemical storage tanks containing substances which are categorised as a safety hazard in Chapter 17 of the Rules for Ships for Liquid Chemicals (designated by letter “S” in column d) are subject to special consideration where they are located in the same space as essential services, e.g. main combustion machinery and equipment. These tanks are to form part of the ship’s structure and the area of the tank boundary common with the machinery spaces is to be kept to a minimum as required for fuel oil tanks, as far as practicable. Tanks for chemical substances are not to be situated where spillage or leakage therefrom can constitute a hazard by dripping or spraying onto combustibles or hot surfaces.

5. 1. 9 Arrangements for venting and gas freeing chemical tanks required by emissions abatement plant are to meet the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 13, 12 Air, overflow and sounding pipes and they are to be independent of the air pipes and venting systems of other tanks and/or compartments of the ship. Sounding pipes are to be led to the safe position on the open deck. Alternatively, sounding devices of approved type may be used in lieu of sounding pipes. Tank venting systems are to minimise the possibility of chemical vapour accumulating on the decks, entering accommodation, service and machinery spaces, and control stations and, in the case of flammable vapours, entering or collecting in spaces or areas containing sources of ignition. Tank venting systems are to be arranged to prevent entrance of water into the chemical tanks. The venting systems shall be connected to the top of each chemical tank. As far as practicable, they are to be self-draining back to the chemical tanks under all normal operational conditions of list and trim.

5. 1. 10 Tank vent piping connected to tanks constructed of corrosion-resistant material, or to tanks which are lined or coated to provide corrosion resistance, are to be similarly lined or coated, or constructed of corrosion-resistant material.

5. 2 Location service and control spaces

5. 2. 1 Where flammable or toxic chemicals, gases or vapours are present, as identified in Pt 5, Ch 24, 3.3 Chemical substances 3.3.1 and Pt 5, Ch 24, 3.3 Chemical substances 3.3.2, service and control stations essential to the operation of the plant are to meet the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 24, 9.1 General 9.1.4, and should, wherever possible, be located so that access thereto is from a defined safe space. If such a location is not possible, the station is to be specially ventilated.

5. 2. 2 Arrangements are to be made in spaces occupied by emissions abatement plant, in order that substances which are flammable, corrosive, toxic or likely to present a hazard due to reaction when mixed are kept separate unless they are fully contained within a part of the emissions abatement plant which has been designed for the safe mixing of such substances.

5. 3 Integrity of water and gastightness between compartments

5. 3. 1 Where integrity of water or gastightness is required between compartments containing the plant, it is to be maintained in way of pipe tunnels or duct keels where these traverse such compartments.

5. 3. 2 Installations and the spaces in which they are installed are to be, in all cases, compliant with applicable National and International requirements for prevention, detection and extinction of fire.

5. 4 Plant support structure

5. 4. 1 Decks and other structures supporting the plant are, in general, to comply with the requirements of Pt 3 Ship Structures (General). Such structures can, however, be considered on the basis of an agreed uniformly distributed loading in association with local loads at plant support points, provided that adequate transverse strength of the ship is maintained.

PART

5

CHAPTER 24 **Emissions Abatement Plant for Combustion Machinery**

SECTION 6 **Mechanical equipment**

6. 1 General

6. 1. 1 Emissions abatement plant associated with engines, gas turbine and boilers is to comply with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 2 Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engines, Pt 5, Ch 4 Gas Turbines and Pt 5, Ch 10, Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels respectively, as applicable.

6. 1. 2 The mounting arrangements for the equipment is to be capable of withstanding the forces and moments stated in Pt 5, Ch 24, 5.4 Plant support structure and *Vol 2, Pt 12, Ch 1, 5.5 Loading due to wave-induced motions*.

6. 1. 3 The design is to take account of the risk of fire or explosion hazards which may arise from deposition of chemicals, unburnt fuel, particulates or any by-products of chemical reactions which may arise during normal operation.

6. 1. 4 The emissions abatement plant is to be capable of being started in a hot condition without risk of failure due to thermal shock or alternatively is to be provided with a means to inhibit hot starting.

Where the emissions abatement plant is capable of being started in a hot condition then it is to be:

a. Constructed of materials which can accommodate the thermal stresses associated with hot starting, this is to be supported by submitting test reports for the materials of construction which provide evidence that the materials can accommodate these thermal stresses. Any internal instrumentation and devices essential to the operation of the emissions abatement plant, such as level switches, pressure and temperature sensors, are also to be suitable for starting the emissions abatement plant hot and dry; this is to be demonstrated by product test reports; or

b. Provided with a soft start which prevents thermal shock. This may be achieved by a by-pass arrangement or by water flow control.

6. 1. 5 Safety or pressure-relief devices are to discharge to a place which will not present a hazard to the ship's occupants or to any machinery.

6. 1. 6 Where bursting discs or rupture panels are used as safety and pressure-relief devices, these are to be dimensioned and designed in accordance with a recognised National or International Standard.

6. 1. 7 Where it can be expected that there will be deposition of materials, caking and waste, arrangements are to be provided for the safe cleaning of such systems.

6. 1. 8 Where there is a possibility of operating conditions in the system falling below the dew point temperature of any gases or vapours present in the system, suitable drains are to be provided to permit the discharge of any condensate formed.

6. 2 By-pass or equivalent arrangements

6. 2. 1 The emissions abatement plant is to be provided with a by-pass capable of transmitting the minimum and maximum exhaust gas flows from the combustion machinery to which it is connected. Where a by-pass is considered unnecessary, the emissions abatement plant is to be capable of safely transmitting the minimum and maximum exhaust gas flows with the emissions abatement plant out of operation, such that the combustion machinery to which it is connected can continue to operate.

6. 2. 2 Where a by-pass is fitted, there is to be a flow path for exhaust gas at all times. The essential services shall not be impacted during the by-pass operation.

6. 2. 3 A means of measuring differential pressure across the emissions abatement plant is to be provided.

6. 2. 4 The by-pass valves are to be remotely operated from the control station. In the event of failure or loss of power to the actuator(s), by-pass valves shall fail to the open position.

6. 2. 5 An interlock arrangement is to be provided to ensure by-pass valves are open prior to blocking exhaust gas flow into the emissions abatement plant.

6. 2. 6 The activation of by-pass mode is to be automatic for conditions which activate a shutdown of the emissions abatement plant, *See* Table 24. 9. 1: Machinery emissions to air abatement plant: alarms and safeguards, to ensure that essential services are not impacted.

6. 3 Shared emissions abatement plant

6. 3. 1 Where emissions abatement plant is connected to more than one engine or source of exhaust gas, valves or equivalent means of isolating the exhaust systems of individual engines from common manifolds are to be provided to prevent reverse flow of exhaust gas into the exhaust manifolds of engines which have been shut down.

6. 3. 2 Where isolating valves are fitted, a means to verify the effectiveness of the isolation is to be provided.

6. 4 Maintenance of back-pressure

6. 4. 1 The exhaust back-pressure, after installation of emissions abatement plant, is to remain within the allowable limits stated by engine and combustion machinery manufacturers under all expected operating conditions, unless it is intended to operate the system at a negative pressure by means of an induced draught fan.

6. 4. 2 Where an induced draught fan is fitted to maintain the required exhaust back-pressure, a fan failure is not to prevent the combustion machinery from operating.

6. 4. 3 Where the emissions abatement plant is fed from multiple exhaust gas inlet streams, the back-pressure is to be maintained within the allowable limits provided by engine machinery manufacturers for all engine or combustion machinery operating configurations.

6. 4. 4 Emissions abatement plant in which both a scrubber and SCR are fitted together in series in an exhaust piping system will be subject to special consideration.

6. 5 Protection of combustion machinery

6. 5. 1 Measures are to be implemented to ensure that water from the emissions abatement plant cannot flow back into engine turbocharger(s) or other machinery.

6. 5. 2 Means are to be provided for protecting critical engine components from foreign object damage resulting from failure of, or damage to, the emissions abatement plant. Where such damage is considered unlikely, evidence is to be submitted accordingly.

6. 5. 3 Where chemicals or substances are injected into the exhaust gas stream before turbocharger(s) or emissions abatement plant are fitted, this is not to present a risk of damage, chemical attack or performance degradation to the turbocharger(s) or engine(s) or machinery with which they are associated.

6. 5. 4 Where fuel treatments, additives or emulsification are used as a primary means of abating exhaust emissions, machinery is to be compatible with such additives, treatments and emulsified fuel.

6. 5. 5 Where exhaust gas is recirculated as a means of emissions abatement, e.g. EGR, the recirculated exhaust gas is not to cause fouling and corrosion of critical engine components and scavenge air temperature is to be maintained at a level which does not adversely affect engine performance.

6. 5. 6 Where a wet scrubber is used to clean and cool recirculated exhaust gas, the scrubber is to satisfy the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 24, 11.1 General 11.1.8.

PART

5

CHAPTER **24** **Emissions Abatement Plant for Combustion Machinery**

SECTION **7** **Pumping and piping**

7. 1 General

7. 1. 1 Pipe work and transfer systems which may carry chemical substances are to meet the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 12 Piping Design Requirements, Pt 5, Ch 13 Ship Piping Systems and Pt 5, Ch 14 Machinery Piping Systems, as applicable. Pipe joints for chemical substances which are categorised as a safety hazard in *Chapter 17* of the *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquid Chemicals in Bulk* (designated by letter "S" in column d) are to be butt-welded, except in way of valves or equipment, and Class I piping systems are to be used regardless of design pressure in storage, handling and supply systems. Where it is proposed to apply corrosion resistant lining to steel pipe systems then such lining is to be confirmed as being suitable for the application, in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 24, 4.1 General 4.1.2. The elasticity of the lining is not to be less than that of the supporting boundary material.

7. 1. 2 Pipe systems carrying sea-water or fresh water are to meet the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 12 Piping Design Requirements, Pt 5, Ch 13 Ship Piping Systems and Pt 5, Ch 14 Machinery Piping Systems. Where there is a risk of fresh water or sea-water systems becoming contaminated with process chemicals, substances or effluent, pipe systems are to comply with Pt 5, Ch 24, 7.1, General 7.1.1.

7. 1. 3 Chemical transfer and control arrangements are to be provided with a stop-valve, capable of being manually operated on each tank filling and discharge line, which where practicable is to be attached directly to the tank plating. Additionally, a stop valve is to be provided at each chemical-hose loading connection. Where there is a possibility of gravity discharge of the tank contents in the event of a pipe or valve failure then the stop valve is to be of the quick shut-off type and where the chemical is categorised as a safety hazard in *Chapter 17* of the *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquid Chemicals in Bulk* (designated by letter "S" in column d), the stop valve is to be remotely operated and be capable of local manual closure. The closure of the valve shall not impact the operation of essential services.

7. 1. 4 Bilge and effluent pumping and piping systems in the emissions abatement plant spaces are to be constructed of material suitable for any chemicals or substances used by the emissions abatement plant, effluent that is produced or any combination of substances on board which might result from accidental admixture.

7. 1. 5 Arrangements are to be provided for the control of the bilge and effluent pumping and piping system. They are to be installed in the emissions abatement plant spaces from within these spaces and also from a position outside the spaces.

7. 1. 6 Bilge and effluent pumping and piping systems for hazardous materials should, wherever possible, be installed in the space associated with the particular hazard. Alternative arrangements will be subject to special consideration.

7. 1. 7 Where chemicals or wash water are injected into exhaust piping, or where wash water may drain into exhaust piping, the exhaust piping is to be constructed of materials suitable for such chemicals and wash water, *See* Pt 5, Ch 24, 3.3 Chemical substances 3.3.1. and Pt 5, Ch 24, 4.1 General 4.1.2.

7. 1. 8 Where filters are used, they are to be capable of being safely cleaned and maintained without impacting essential services.

7. 1. 9 Where applicable, tanks are to be maintained within the temperature limits of the chemicals and substances they contain so as to avoid risks of boiling, stress corrosion, freezing and other temperature-sensitive processes.

7. 1. 10 The loading or discharge connections associated with chemical substances are to be located on the open deck away from sources of ignition and arranged such that a spill or any leakage at loading or discharge connections would not result in chemical substances contacting or mixing with other incompatible materials; alternative arrangements will be subject to special consideration. Drip trays having means of drainage to the dedicated residue or overflow tank are to be provided.

7. 1. 11 The overboard discharge is to be independent of other systems and arranged in such a way as to prevent the discharge water from being drawn into sea suctions for other pipe systems.

7. 1. 12 Where the emissions abatement plant is fed from multiple exhaust streams, gas inlet piping is to have separate inlets unless arranged with suitable by-pass arrangements to prevent any impact on essential services in the event of failure. The inlets are also to have suitable arrangements to prevent exhaust backflow down any of the exhaust gas inlets.

PART

5

CHAPTER 24 **Emissions Abatement Plant for Combustion Machinery**

SECTION 8 **Pressure vessels**

8. 1 General

8. 1. 1 Pressure vessels are to be in accordance with the requirements of the relevant Sections of Pt 5, Ch 10, Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels or Pt 5, Ch 11 Other Pressure Vessels as applicable, or with agreed Codes and specifications normally used for similar plants in land installations, suitably modified and/or adapted for the marine environment.

PART

5

CHAPTER **24** **Emissions Abatement Plant for Combustion Machinery**

SECTION **9** **Electrical and control equipment**

9. 1 General

9. 1. 1 Electrical system(s) associated with emissions abatement plant are to meet the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2 Electrical Engineering.

9. 1. 2 Control system(s) associated with the emissions abatement plant are to meet the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems.

9. 1. 3 Electrical and control equipment associated with the emissions abatement plant is to be compatible with any chemicals used and meet the requirements of Chapter 10 of the Rules for Ships for Liquid Chemicals.

9. 1. 4 Where flammable or toxic chemicals, gases or vapours are present, as identified in Pt 5, Ch 24, 3.3 Chemical substances 3.3.1 and Pt 5, Ch 24, 3.3 Chemical substances 3.3.2, or where there is a possibility that flammable gases and vapours can be produced as a result of deviations from normal operation, the defining of hazardous zones is to be in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 14 Electrical equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres or in the presence of combustible dusts.

9. 1. 5 For the detection of gas and vapours, a gas detection system is to be fitted which is to activate at a concentration corresponding to the substance safe occupational level. The locations of the detectors are to be determined relative to the layouts of the individual spaces and are to be indicated on the plan submission required by Pt 5, Ch 24, 3.3 Chemical substances 3.3.9. Where gas detection equipment is not appropriate, e.g. for substances not emitting gases or vapours, alternative proposals are to be submitted to ensure the safety of persons from exposure to such substances.

9. 1. 6 Process tanks which form part of the operating loop of any emissions abatement equipment are to have a high level alarm, in accordance with Table 24. 9. 1: Machinery emissions to air abatement plant: alarms and safeguards. Effluent tanks which are not part of the normal process loop and which are used for storage of effluent or substances prior to discharge from the vessel are to be protected, in accordance with Table 24. 9. 1: Machinery emissions to air abatement plant: alarms and safeguards.

9. 1. 7 Tank alarm and shutdown sensors are to be positioned at a point which ensures a system shutdown before the tank overflows, based on the maximum design flow rates and shutdown response time. Where a low level is identified as presenting a risk to crew or machinery, tanks are to have a low level alarm and a low level shutdown. These are to be positioned so as to operate before a low level results in a hazardous condition, based on system design flow rates and a system shutdown response time.

9. 1. 8 An emergency stop function is to be provided, which is to:

- Close remote shut-off valves on chemical tank(s) (where applicable, *).

- Stop chemical feed pump(s) (where applicable*).
- Where fitted, open exhaust gas cleaning by-pass valve.
- Stop scrubber water pumps and close scrubber water inlet valve (where applicable).

Note * Not required for emissions abatement plant utilising urea solution, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 24, 7.1 General 7.1.3. Systems using other media are to be considered on a case-by-case basis.

9. 1. 9 The emergency stop function is to be capable of being actuated from the machinery control room, the navigating bridge and from within compartments containing exhaust gas cleaning plant. In order to mitigate the risk of chemical release, spaces containing chemical storage tanks or chemical pumping equipment are to have an emergency stop which is to shut down the chemical supply to the emissions abatement plant. Other parts of the emissions abatement plant such as wash water pumps need only be stopped by this emergency stop where loss of chemical injection could result in further risks arising from operating the plant without chemical injection. This is to form part of the submission required in Pt 5, Ch 24, 3.1 General 3.1.6.

9. 1. 10 Alarms and safeguards are to be provided for the critical system parameters in order to avoid danger to crew and machinery. As a minimum, the alarms and safeguards listed in Table 24. 9. 1: Machinery emissions to air abatement plant: alarms and safeguards are to be fitted. Where these Rules require alarms and also trip protection to be fitted, the alarm and trip are to be independent of each other.

9. 1. 11 Where emissions abatement plant makes use of chemical substances, a means of monitoring abnormal flows of such chemicals is to be provided.

Table 24. 9. 1: Machinery emissions to air abatement plant: alarms and safeguards

Item	Alarm	Note
Exhaust gas outlet temperature	High	
Exhaust gas inlet temperature	High	
Exhaust gas inlet temperature	Low	Only for selective catalytic reduction
Differential pressure across abatement plant unit	High	
Abatement plant by-pass valve in exhaust duct	Valve movement	*See* Note 1
Machinery exhaust duct isolating valve	Valve movement	*See* Note 2
Wet emissions abatement unit overboard discharge valve	Closed	Emissions abatement plant is to be shut down automatically, *See* Note 6
Wet emissions abatement unit overflow line flow detection	Flow present	Emissions abatement plant is to be shut down automatically, *See* Note 6
Wet emissions abatement water pressure	Low	
Wet emissions abatement unit water level	1st Stage high	
Wet emissions abatement unit water level	2nd Stage high	Emissions abatement plant is to be shut down automatically, *See* Note 6
Chemical feed flow	High	Chemical feed pump is to be shut down automatically
Chemical feed flow	1st Stage low	
Chemical feed flow	2nd Stage low	Chemical feed pump is to be shut down automatically
Process tank level	1st Stage high	*See* Note 3
Process tank level	2nd Stage high	Emissions abatement plant is to be shut down automatically, *See* Note 3
Chemical storage tank level	1st Stage high	
Chemical storage tank level	2nd Stage high	

Chemical storage tank level	Low	
Chemical storage tank temperature	High	*See* Note 4
Chemical storage tank temperature	Low	*See* Note 4
Chemical tank containment bund level	High	Tank outlet remote shut-off valve is to close automatically, *See* Note 5
Chemical tank containment drain line flow detection	Flow present	Tank outlet remote shut-off valve is to close automatically, *See* Note 5
Exhaust gas recirculating fan failure	Failure	
Recirculating exhaust gas temperature return to engine	High	
Induced draught fan failure	Failure	Where fitted

Note *1.* Only where a by-pass valve is fitted, *See* Pt 5, Ch 24, 3.3 Chemical substances 3.3.5. This valve shall open to the by-pass position as part of the unit shutdown logic.

Note *2.* Only where fitted, *See* Pt 5, Ch 24, 5.1, General.

Note *3.* The process tank is any tank forming part of a wet abatement system flow loop or effluent tanks which receive bleed-off from the main flow loop, or such tanks not forming part of the system flow loop but which are essential for operation of the system, including those on exhaust gas recirculating installations, *See* Pt 5, Ch 24, 11.1 General 11.1.8. Where low level can present a hazard, process tanks are also to have low level protection.

Note *4.* Where chemical substances are to be kept within a defined temperature range, alarms will be fitted, based on the allowable temperature range, *See* Pt 5, Ch 24, 5.1 General 5.1.2 and Pt 5, Ch 24, 7.1 General 7.1.9.

Note *5.* Chemical spillage detection alarm will depend on the means of spill containment fitted, *See* Pt 5, Ch 24, 5.1 General 5.1.2.

Note *6.* Wet emissions abatement unit shall include such systems fitted as part of the exhaust gas recirculating installations.

PART

5

CHAPTER **24** **Emissions Abatement Plant for Combustion Machinery**

SECTION **10** **Storage and use of chemicals**

10. 1 Sodium hydroxide solution

10. 1. 1 Chemical storage tanks that contain sodium hydroxide (NaOH) solution (e.g. 50 per cent aqueous solution) are to comply with the requirements given in Pt 5, Ch 24, 10.1 Sodium hydroxide solution 10.1.2 to Pt 5, Ch 24, 10.1 Sodium hydroxide solution 10.1.18.

10. 1. 2 Chemical storage tanks are to be arranged to contain any leakage and to prevent any leakage from coming into contact with heated surfaces, e.g. use drip/spill trays leading to a closed tank, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 24, 5.1 General 5.1.5 and Pt 5, Ch 24, 5.1 General 5.1.6.

10. 1. 3 Chemical storage tanks are to be protected from excessively high or low temperatures. Depending on the operational area of the ship, this may necessitate the fitting of heating and/or cooling systems in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 24, 5.1 General 5.1.4.

10. 1. 4 The chemical storage tank location is to be in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 24, 5.1 General 5.1.8.

10. 1. 5 Where chemical storage tanks are integrated, the following are to be considered during the design and construction:

- These tanks shall be designed and constructed as integral part of the hull (e.g. double bottom, wing tanks);
- These tanks shall be coated with appropriate anti-corrosion coating or shall be made of adequate corrosion resistant materials and cannot be located adjacent to any fuel oil and fresh water tank;
- These tanks shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the structural requirements applicable to hull and primary support members described in Pt 5, Ch 24, 5 Hull construction; and
- These tanks shall be included in the ship's stability calculation.

10. 1. 6 The chemical storage tank piping is to meet the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 24, 7.1, General 7.1.1.

10. 1. 7 Pipes or other tank penetrations are to be provided with manual shut-off valves attached to the tank in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 24, 7.1 General 7.1.3.

10. 1. 8 The chemical storage tank piping and venting systems are to be independent of other ship service piping and/or systems as defined in Pt 5, Ch 24, 5.1 General 5.1.9.

10. 1. 9 The chemical storage tank piping systems are not to be located in accommodation, service spaces or control stations.

10. 1. 10 Piping systems, tanks and other components which will come into contact with the chemical are to be of a non-combustible material, suitable for the intended chemical and application.

10. 1. 11 Where chemical storage tanks are installed in closed compartments, the compartments are to be served by an effective mechanical ventilation system providing not less than six air changes per hour, which is independent from the ventilation system of accommodation, service spaces or control stations.

10. 1. 12 The ventilation system is to be capable of being controlled from outside the compartment and is to be in continuous operation except when the chemical storage tank is empty and has been thoroughly air purged.

10. 1. 13 The vent pipes of the chemical storage tank are to terminate in an area on the weather deck with no ignition hazard. The tank venting system is to be arranged to prevent entrance of water into the chemical storage tank.

10. 1. 14 The chemical storage tanks are to be arranged so that they can be emptied, purged and vented.

10. 1. 15 Where a chemical storage tank is located within an engine room, a separate ventilation system defined in Pt 5, Ch 24, 10.1 Sodium hydroxide solution 10.1.8 is not required when the general ventilation system for the space is arranged so as to provide an effective movement of air in the vicinity of the storage tank, and is to be maintained in operation continuously except when the storage tank is empty and has been thoroughly air purged.

10. 1. 16 In the event of a ventilation failure, an audible and visual alarm is to be provided outside the compartment adjacent to each point of entry and inside the compartment, together with a warning notice requiring the use of such ventilation.

10. 1. 17 Each chemical storage tank is to be provided with alarms and safeguards in accordance with Table 24. 9. 1: Machinery emissions to air abatement plant: alarms and safeguards.

10. 1. 18 For the protection of personnel, the ship is to have suitable personnel protective equipment on board such as, but not limited to, aprons, gloves, boots and safety goggles. Eyewash and safety showers are to be provided in locations where chemical contact is most likely to occur. The location (e.g. near chemical storage tank, loading area, etc.) and number of these eyewash stations and safety showers are to be derived from the detailed installation arrangements.

10. 2 Sodium bicarbonate

10. 2. 1 Sodium bicarbonate powder shall be stored in a compatible chemical storage tank in a cool, dry, well-ventilated area away from any incompatible materials such as acids.

10. 2. 2 Suitable personnel protection shall be provided in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 24, 10.1 Sodium hydroxide solution 10.1.18.

10. 3 Ammonia solution

10. 3. 1 Chemical storage tanks that contain urea-based ammonia (e.g. 40 per cent urea with 60 per cent water solution), hereinafter referred to as urea solution, as a reductant, are to comply with the requirements given in Pt 5, Ch 24, 10.1 Sodium hydroxide solution 10.1.2 to Pt 5, Ch 24, 10.1 Sodium hydroxide solution 10.1.18.

10. 3. 2 In addition to Pt 5, Ch 24, 10.1 Sodium hydroxide solution 10.1.3, the physical storage conditions recommended by applicable and recognised standards (such as ISO 18611-3) are to be taken into account to avoid any impairment of urea solution during storage.

10. 3. 3 Aqueous ammonia (with a concentration of 28 per cent of ammonia or less by weight) and anhydrous ammonia (with a concentration of 99.5 per cent of ammonia or greater by weight) are not to be used as a reductant unless it can be demonstrated that the use of urea solution is not practicable in which case the requirements for its safe loading, carriage and use are to be derived from a risk-based analysis. Agreement from Flag Administration shall also be required for anhydrous ammonia in addition to the risk-based analysis.

PART

5

CHAPTER **24** **Emissions Abatement Plant for Combustion Machinery**

SECTION **11** **SOx emissions abatement plant**

11. 1 General

11. 1. 1 The requirements given in this Section are specific to SO_x emissions abatement plant and are in addition to the requirements given in Pt 5, Ch 24, 1 General to Pt 5, Ch 24, 10 Storage and use of chemicals.

11. 1. 2 In addition to the information and plans required in Pt 5, Ch 24, 3 Information to be submitted, the following are to be submitted for consideration:

- Details of the maximum and minimum ambient and sea water temperatures within which the emissions abatement plant is designed to operate, and maximum and minimum ambient air temperature and humidity where relevant, i.e. where operation is temperature or humidity dependent.
- Details of the corrosivity of wash water for wet scrubbing systems, e.g. specific gravity, temperature, pH, and presence of polluting substances such as oil content and turbidity.
- The Pitting Resistance Equivalent Number (PREN) is to be confirmed when stainless steels or nickel-based alloys are used for the wet scrubbing system containing wash water.
- For scrubber towers, a Manufacturer's Certificate for materials and welding details including procedure.
- Details on storage and use of sodium bicarbonate powder used in dry scrubbers, *See* Pt 5, Ch 24, 10.2 Sodium bicarbonate.

11. 1. 3 In addition to the requirements given in Pt 5, Ch 24, 5 Hull construction for the ship integration, the scrubber tower materials are to satisfy Pt 5, Ch 24, 4.1 General 4.1.1 and welding is to be in accordance with Ch 12 Welding Qualifications and Ch 13 Requirements for Welded Construction of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials.

11. 1. 4 Where the mass distribution of a scrubber tower is such that the centre of mass differs significantly from the centre of gravity, due account of this is to be taken in the calculation of the forces and moments at the support positions, e.g. due to wave-induced motions, *See* Pt 4, Ch 4, 5.3 Equipment supporting arrangements loads and permissible stresses 5.3.1.

11. 1. 5 The integrity of the weather deck is to be maintained. Where items of a scrubber tower penetrate the weather deck and are intended to constitute the structural barrier to prevent the ingress of water to spaces below the freeboard deck, their structural strength is to be equivalent to the Rule requirements for this purpose. Otherwise, such items are to be enclosed in superstructures or deckhouses fully complying with the Rules.

11. 1. 6 Mounting arrangements are to take account of forces and moments generated at the supports. Mounting arrangements are to take account of thermal expansion and contraction.

11. 1. 7 Access is to be provided for inspection and checking of mountings, fittings, controls and pressure-relief devices.

11. 1. 8 Closed loop wet scrubbers are to have natural gravity fall drainage from the wet sump of the scrubber to the process tank or circulating pump suction, with the drain line dimensioned to accommodate 125 per cent of the maximum pumping capacity of the installed water pump(s). No valves are to be fitted to the drain line from the scrubber sump to the process tank, unless it can be demonstrated that the arrangements prevent the possibility of the scrubber filling with water and a reverse flow into the engine exhaust duct. Where a valve is fitted to this line, the system is to be protected as for the overboard discharge valve of an open loop system, in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 24, 9.1 General 9.1.10.

11. 1. 9 For open loop wet scrubbers, the overboard discharge valve and any other sea water valves downstream of the scrubber are to be protected in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 24, 9.1 General 9.1.10. The sea suction valve(s) are also to have position indicators which are to give remote indication of valve position. The scrubber is to be mounted above the waterline under all operating conditions to prevent seawater ingress into the scrubber from the natural flow.

11. 1. 10 In order to prevent the reverse flow of water into engines, boilers and other machinery, wet scrubbing systems (open loop and closed loop) are to be fitted with an overflow line. This overflow is to be dimensioned to accommodate 125 per cent of maximum capacity of installed water pumps and is to have no impairment to flow. This overflow line is to be directed to the process tank in closed loop or hybrid installations and is to be directed overboard on open loop installations. The overboard discharge is to have an effective means of preventing reverse flow of sea water. Alternative arrangements to prevent the risk of reverse flow are subject to special consideration.

11. 1. 11 Overboard discharge connections from scrubbers are to be positioned below the lowest operating waterline and are to be internally protected from effluent-induced corrosion.

11. 1. 12 The chemical storage tank requirements for NaOH solution stated in Pt 5, Ch 24, 10.1, Sodium hydroxide solution are applicable for closed loop wet scrubbers and hybrid scrubbers whereas for sodium bicarbonate power used in dry scrubbers the requirements stated in Pt 5, Ch 24, 10.2 Sodium bicarbonate are applicable.

11. 1. 13 Where a scrubber tower is installed or intended to be installed, attention is drawn to the stability considerations and other applicable requirements of the National Authority with whom the ship is registered.

PART

5

CHAPTER **24** **Emissions Abatement Plant for Combustion Machinery**

SECTION **12** **NOx emissions abatement plant**

12. 1 General

12. 1. 1 The requirements given in Pt 5, Ch 24, 1 General to Pt 5, Ch 24, 10 Storage and use of chemicals are applicable to NO_x emissions abatement plant unless otherwise stated.

12. 1. 2 The requirements for reductants used in SCR are given in Pt 5, Ch 24, 10.3 Ammonia solution.

PART

5

CHAPTER **25 Ballast Water Treatment System and Installation**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**2649**
	1. 1	Purpose and Scope	2649
	1. 2	Definitions	2649
	1. 3	Class notation	2650
SECTION 2	**Functional requirements**		**2651**
	2. 1	General	2651
SECTION 3	**Performance requirements**		**2652**
	3. 1	General	2652
SECTION 4	**Documentation required for appraisal**		**2653**
	4. 1	Ballast Water Treatment System appraisals	2653
	4. 2	Ballast Water Treatment System ship specific installation appraisal	2654
SECTION 5	**Materials**		**2655**
	5. 1	General	2655
SECTION 6	**Risk-based studies**		**2656**
	6. 1	Purpose	2656
	6. 2	Risk assessment of BWTS	2656
	6. 3	Risk assessment of BWTS installation	2657
	6. 4	Assessment of alternative BWTS designs	2657
SECTION 7	**Piping systems**		**2658**
	7. 1	General	2658
	7. 2	Side stream piping	2658
SECTION 8	**Mechanical equipment and components**		**2659**
	8. 1	General	2659
	8. 2	Filtering units	2659
	8. 3	Other components	2659
SECTION 9	**Electrotechnical Systems**		**2660**

9. 1 General 2660
SECTION 10 Structural and Space categorisation requirements 2661
10. 1 Structural requirements 2661
10. 2 Ballast tanks requirements 2661
10. 3 Chemical storage tank requirements 2661
10. 4 BWTS space categorisation requirements 2661
SECTION 11 System arrangement requirements 2663
11. 1 General 2663
11. 2 By-pass and isolation 2663
11. 3 Ballast arrangement between hazardous and non-hazardous area 2663
11. 4 Ballast water sampling/analysis unit 2664
SECTION 12 Fire safety requirements 2665
12. 1 General 2665

PART

5

CHAPTER 25 Ballast Water Treatment System and Installation

LIST OF TABLES

Table 25. 10. 1: Space categorisation and installation requirements 2662

PART

5

CHAPTER 25 Ballast Water Treatment System and Installation

SECTION 1 General

1. 1 Purpose and Scope

1. 1. 1 The purpose of this Chapter is to provide Rule requirements for machinery and equipment used to prevent transfer of harmful aquatic organisms and pathogens within ballast water and sediment. Such machinery and associated equipment is hereinafter referred to as the Ballast Water Treatment System (BWTS).

1. 1. 2 The Rules are intended to ensure that the design, construction and installation of the BWTS achieve a level of safety which is acceptable to ACS and, additionally, to ensure that a failure of the BWTS will not affect the operation of essential services.

1. 1. 3 These requirements do not address the environmental performance of the BWTS, which is subject to the national and international statutory requirements. Operators are responsible for ensuring compliance with the relevant ballast water discharge standards and sediment controls.

1. 1. 4 Where risk-based studies identify further risk mitigation measures in addition to the specific requirements in the Rules then such measures are to be implemented.

1. 2 Definitions

1. 2. 1 Where any of the terms contained within this Section are used within this Chapter, their meaning is to be as defined in Pt 5, Ch 25, 1.2 Definitions 1.2.2 to Pt 5, Ch 25, 1.2 Definitions 1.2.17

1. 2. 2 **Area -** area means a defined location on board the ship. An area can be on open deck. An area can be open, semi-enclosed or enclosed. An area can be a space below deck. An area can be hazardous or non-hazardous.

1. 2. 3 **Ballast Water Treatment System –** is the arrangement in place for the purpose of treating ballast water, collecting samples, and analysing discharge (if fitted). It includes piping and fittings, equipment, treatment techniques and an electrical and control system.

1. 2. 4 **Concentrated treatment** – is the accumulation of treatment medium or its by-product (e.g. chemicals, other reactive materials, dissolved gases, etc.).

1. 2. 5 **Dangerous gas –** refers to any gas which may develop an explosive and/or toxic atmosphere, e.g. hydrogen (H_2), hydrogen sulphide (H_2S), hydrocarbon gas, ozone (O_3), chlorine (Cl_2), chlorine dioxide (ClO_2), etc.

1. 2. 6 **Hazardous material** – a substance, in the form of liquid, solid or gaseous state, solely or in combination with other material, which promotes danger to environment or human life.

1. 2. 7 **Hazardous area -** as defined in Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.2 Hazardous areas.

1. 2. 8 **Reactive material** – a substance, used in ballast water treatment, which has potential for rapid oxidation or for undergoing a chemical reaction when in contact with other substances.

1. 2. 9 **Risk -** the combination of the likelihood of a potentially dangerous event and its consequence. Likelihood may be expressed as a probability or a frequency.

1. 2. 10 **Risk assessment-** is the evaluation of likelihood and consequence, together with a judgement on the significance of the result. *See* IEC/ISO 31010: *Risk management, risk assessment techniques*.

1. 2. 11 **Side stream piping arrangement** – is an arrangement in place to use a portion of ballast water from main ballast line or sea water from other sources (typically less than 10 per cent of ballast line capacity). The purpose for this arrangement is to produce a concentrated treatment (*See* Pt 5, Ch 25, 1.2 Definitions 1.2.4) that is then applied to the rest of the ballast capacity.

1. 2. 12 **Accommodation spaces -** are those spaces used for public spaces, corridors, lavatories, cabins, offices, hospitals, cinemas, game and hobby rooms, barber shops, pantries containing no cooking appliances and similar spaces.

1. 2. 13 **Cargo area -** is that part of the ship that contains cargo holds, cargo tanks, slop tanks and cargo pump-rooms including pump-rooms, cofferdams, ballast and void spaces adjacent to cargo tanks and also deck areas throughout the entire length and breadth of the part of the ship over the above-mentioned spaces.

1. 2. 14 **Machinery spaces of category A -** are those spaces and trunks to such spaces which contain either:

a. internal combustion machinery used for main propulsion;
b. internal combustion machinery used for purposes other than main propulsion where such machinery has in the aggregate a total power output of not less than 375 kW; or
c. any oil-fired boiler or fuel oil unit, or any oil-fired equipment other than boilers, such as inert gas generators, incinerators, etc.

1. 2. 15 **Other machinery spaces -** are spaces containing propulsion machinery, boilers, fuel oil units, steam and internal combustion engines, generators and major electrical machinery, oil filling stations, refrigerating, stabilizing, ventilation and air conditioning machinery, and similar spaces, and trunks to such spaces.

1. 2. 16 **Service spaces -** are those spaces used for galleys, pantries containing cooking appliances, lockers, mail and specie rooms, store rooms, workshops other than those forming part of the machinery spaces, and similar spaces and trunks to such spaces.

1. 2. 17 **Special category spaces -** are those enclosed vehicle spaces above and below the bulkhead deck, into and from which vehicles can be driven and to which passengers have access. Special category spaces may be accommodated on more than one deck provided that the total overall clear height for vehicles does not exceed 10 m.

1. 3 Class notation

1. 3. 1 **BWTS** notation assigned to ships with a BWTS which is approved and installed in accordance with ACS's Rules and Regulations.

1. 3. 2 **BWTS*** notation assigned to ships with a BWTS which is Type Approved in accordance with ACS's Type Approval procedures and approved and installed in accordance with ACS's Rules and Regulations.

PART

5

CHAPTER **25 Ballast Water Treatment System and Installation**

SECTION **2 Functional requirements**

2. 1 General

2. 1. 1 Failure of the Ballast Water Treatment System (BWTS) is not to impair or restrict ballasting or de-ballasting operations.

2. 1. 2 Failure of the BWTS is not to impair essential services as defined by, but not limited to, Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.6 Definitions.

2. 1. 3 The BWTS is not to present a hazard to the personnel, the ship or the environment during normal operation or in the event of fore*See*able failure.

PART

5

CHAPTER **25 Ballast Water Treatment System and Installation**

SECTION **3 Performance requirements**

3. 1 General

3. 1. 1 The BWTS is to be able to treat the ballast capacity of the vessel. The ballast capacity shall be described either in terms of flowrate or volume depending on the type of BWTS.

3. 1. 2 Where it is possible that a vacuum may occur in the ballast line, a suitable means of protection is to be provided, e.g. Pressure/Vacuum (P/V) valves or breather valves. For such ballast lines from ballast tanks in hazardous areas, P/V or breather valve outlets are to be led to an area on open deck with no ignition hazard.

3. 1. 3 Ballast water system pressure drop due to the BWTS is to be compensated, as required, to ensure that operation of the ballast water system is not compromised.

3. 1. 4 Where the BWTS, or its associated equipment, is in use for purposes other than that required by Pt 5, Ch 25, 1.1 Purpose and Scope 1.1.1, means should be provided to ensure that the BWTS is readily available for the primary purpose of treating ballast water.

3. 1. 5 The BWTS arrangement, including treatment units, filtration units, electrical and control units, sampling arrangements, neutralising units with associated piping and fittings, structural arrangements and hazardous area classification, where applicable, shall be subjected to appraisal and be acceptable to ACS.

3. 1. 6 By-pass and isolation arrangements are to be provided for BWTS as required in Pt 5, Ch 25, 11.2 By-pass and isolation.

3. 1. 7 The design of BWTS equipment is to minimise the risk of fire, overheating, explosion and asphyxiation hazards arising from the use and/or production of chemicals and other substances. *See* Pt 5, Ch 25, 9.1 General 9.1.6.

3. 1. 8 The build-up of hazardous material in ballast pipes and in ballast tanks is to be prevented.

3. 1. 9 Ballast tank coatings are not to be affected by the prolonged exposure to any hazardous materials that may be released into the ballast water.

PART

5

CHAPTER **25 Ballast Water Treatment System and Installation**

SECTION **4 Documentation required for appraisal**

4. 1 Ballast Water Treatment System appraisals

4. 1. 1 The documents listed in Pt 5, Ch 25, 4.1 Ballast Water Treatment System appraisals 4.1.2 to Pt 5, Ch 25, 4.1 Ballast Water Treatment System appraisals 4.1.9 are to be submitted for appraisal of the ballast water treatment system (BWTS).

4. 1. 2 A description of the BWTS and the treatment technique(s) used. This is to include the proposed treatment unit configurations, method of integration with the ship's ballast system and specific requirements for ancillary systems.

4. 1. 3 Functional description of the BWTS including the system operational concept and system description details.

4. 1. 4 Process Flow Diagram (PFD) of the BWTS.

4. 1. 5 Material specification for all items used in the construction of the BWTS including temperature and pressure ratings.

4. 1. 6 Details of flammability, toxicity and reactivity of chemicals to be made available along with the instructions for storage, handling and fire-fighting.

4. 1. 7 Arrangement plans and circuit diagrams of the switchboards and line diagrams of any control and safety system(s) fitted.

4. 1. 8 Report of risk-based studies, as applicable, *See* Pt 5, Ch 25, 6.2, Risk assessment of BWTS.

4. 1. 9 Documents, plans and information, as listed in the following Rules, are to be submitted:

a. For control systems:

i. Details of control, alarm and safety systems as required by Pt 6, Ch 1, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.2

ii. Details of programmable electronic systems as required by Pt 6, Ch 1, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.5

iii. Plans showing the details and location of control stations as required by Pt 6, Ch 1, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.7

iv. Details of instrumentation and control cabling as required by Pt 6, Ch 1, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.9

v. For BWTS which are to be installed in hazardous areas:

vi. Details, plans and arrangements required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 14 Electrical equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres or in the presence of combustible dusts

vii. A schedule of equipment for use in explosive atmospheres as required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.9

b. Type Approval Certification where required by the ACS Rules, *See* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2 Essential features for control, alarm, monitoring and safety systems .

4. 2 Ballast Water Treatment System ship specific installation appraisal

4. 2. 1 The documents listed in Pt 5, Ch 25, 4.2 Ballast Water Treatment System ship specific installation appraisal 4.2.2 to Pt 5, Ch 25, 4.2 Ballast Water Treatment System ship specific installation appraisal 4.2.11 are to be submitted for appraisal of the installation of a ballast water treatment system (BWTS) on board an ACS classed ship, in addition to details of the BWTS required by Pt 5, Ch 25, 4.1 Ballast Water Treatment System appraisals 4.1.3, Pt 5, Ch 25, 4.1 Ballast Water Treatment System appraisals 4.1.6 and Pt 5, Ch 25, 4.1 Ballast Water Treatment System appraisals 4.1.9

4. 2. 2 Piping and Instrumentation Diagram (P&ID) of the ballast system, showing the proposed integration with the BWTS and ancillary systems connected to the BWTS, including cross-connections.

4. 2. 3 For retrofit installations, in addition to Pt 5, Ch 25, 4.2 Ballast Water Treatment System ship specific installation appraisal 4.2.2, existing ballast system's P&IDs are to be submitted along with details of any modifications required, such as cross-connection, tank construction, air vent, overflow lines, hull penetration, etc.

4. 2. 4 Material specification, temperature and pressure ratings of piping, valves and fittings used to integrate treatment unit(s) and associated equipment into the ballast system.

4. 2. 5 Details of by-pass arrangement or, where a by-pass arrangement is not fitted, evidence demonstrating the ability of the ship's ballast system to continue in operation at full capacity regardless of the BWTS's condition.

4. 2. 6 General arrangement of the ship showing layout of the BWTS installation, including major items of electrical equipment.

4. 2. 7 A copy of risk-based study report conducted for the BWTS, *See* Pt 5, Ch 25, 4.1 Ballast Water Treatment System appraisals 4.1.8.

4. 2. 8 Schedule of mechanical equipment to be located in hazardous area.

4. 2. 9 Details of electrical equipment and hazardous area installation as listed in the following Rules respectively:

a. Details and arrangements of electrical equipment required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.2, Documentation required for design review 1.2.2, Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.2.b, Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.2.d, Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.2.e, Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.2.e and Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.2.g

b. Details of the location and arrangement of hazardous area zones as required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.8.

4. 2. 10 Fire detection, extinction and suppression arrangements of compartment(s) where the BWTS and associated chemicals are stored/in use, as applicable. This is to include specific extinguishing requirements and compatibility with materials/chemicals used.

4. 2. 11 In addition to the above, for a BWTS meant to be installed in tankers or a BWTS which generates or uses hazardous material, the following plans are required to be submitted:

a. Ventilation system plans, including airlocks, pipe penetrations and general construction details, if the BWTS is meant to be placed in a dedicated room, *See* Pt 5, Ch 25, 10.4, BWTS space categorisation requirements. The ship's plans are to indicate hazardous area configuration, if any.

b. Plans for ventilation system and electrical and mechanical equipment ratings are to be submitted if the BWTS is meant to be placed in the cargo pump room.

c. A water tightness test report is to be submitted for the equipment which is to be used in a submerged or semi-submerged condition.

PART

5

CHAPTER **25 Ballast Water Treatment System and Installation**

SECTION **5 Materials**

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 Material used for the Ballast Water Treatment System (BWTS) is to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirement of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials.

5. 1. 2 Where the BWTS uses hazardous or reactive materials then the proposed materials for construction are to be suitable for their intended use. Such materials are subject to special consideration and are to be considered in the risk-based studies, *See* Pt 5, Ch 25, 6 Risk-based studies.

5. 1. 3 Materials used for chemical storage tanks and associated piping systems are to be resistant to such chemicals and constructed in accordance with the *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquid Chemicals in Bulk* (hereinafter referred to as the Rules for Ships for Liquid Chemicals), as applicable.

5. 1. 4 Non-metallic materials which do not comply with the fire endurance test requirements given in Pt 5, Ch 12, 5.4 Fire performance criteria, may be used in BWTS provided that the system can be remotely isolated from other ship systems by isolation valves which are of steel construction, including the remote actuator, or of an acceptable fire tested design. The control of isolation valves is to be designed in accordance with the characteristics of fail-safe operation.

PART

5

CHAPTER **25 Ballast Water Treatment System and Installation**

SECTION **6 Risk-based studies**

6. 1 Purpose

6. 1. 1 The purpose of the risk-based studies is to:

a. Evaluate the safety of the BWTS.
b. Evaluate the safety of the integration of the BWTS with the ballast system and other ship's systems.
c. Specially consider system designs which deviate from the requirements of ACS Rules.

6. 1. 2 The risk-based studies are to be undertaken in accordance with ACS's ACSPlus procedure, *Risk Based Designs* and associated annexes

6. 1. 3 The risk-based studies are to be undertaken to an acceptable industry or international standard (e.g. ISO 31010 *Risk management – Risk assessment techniques*), *See* Pt 5, Ch 25, 6.2 Risk assessment of BWTS 6.2.1.

6. 1. 4 Risk-based studies for ship specific installation are required (*See* Pt 5, Ch 25, 6.3, Risk assessment of BWTS installation),

a. if the system arrangement deviates from the requirements for installation of this Chapter, or
b. if the Risk assessment of the BWTS, *See* Pt 5, Ch 25, 6.2, Risk assessment of BWTS, identifies a need for further studies at the installation phase.

6. 2 Risk assessment of BWTS

6. 2. 1 The risk assessment is to identify the hazards associated with operation and maintenance of the BWTS under all normal and reasonably fore*See*able abnormal conditions including but not limited to system integrity, leakage scenarios and accumulation of hazardous materials.

6. 2. 2 The risk assessment is to consider any risk of scaling the BWTS to suit the different treatment capacities. It is to consider, but not be limited to, the effects of treatment techniques, by-products and neutralisation methods, as applicable.

6. 2. 3 The risk assessment is to consider risks, in general, which may occur when integrating the BWTS into the ship's ballast water system and associated systems as outlined in Pt 5, Ch 25, 6.3 Risk assessment of BWTS installation 6.3.2.

6. 2. 4 The risk assessment is to demonstrate that an appropriate level of safety is achieved; the risk acceptability criteria are to be defined by the risk-based study and are to be acceptable to ACS.

6. 2. 5 A risk assessment may identify further safety measures in addition to those specifically stated in the Rules.

6. 2. 6 BWTS using treatment methods such as heat, low pressure boiling, ultraviolet irradiation etc. are to comply with the applicable requirements in this Chapter.

6. 2. 7 BWTS using treatment methods which use or produce harmful or dangerous substances such as biocides, ozone, chlorine, hydrogen, etc. are to be subject to a risk assessment.

6. 3 Risk assessment of BWTS installation

6. 3. 1 The risk assessment is to identify hazards associated with operation and maintenance of the BWTS in a ship specific environment, under all normal and reasonably fore*See*able abnormal conditions. *See* Pt 5, Ch 25, 6.2 Risk assessment of BWTS 6.2.1, Pt 5, Ch 25, 6.2 Risk assessment of BWTS 6.2.2 and Pt 5, Ch 25, 6.2 Risk assessment of BWTS 6.2.3.

6. 3. 2 The risk assessment is to focus on, but not be limited to, risks which may affect safety of persons and the reliable operation of essential services associated with operation of the BWTS under all normal and abnormal conditions. As a minimum the following are to be considered:

- effects on ballast tank coatings;
- effects on existing piping, fittings and valves;
- hazardous area classification;
- structural strength and integrity of hull;
- fail-safe condition, location and arrangement of isolation valves;
- accumulation of flammable or toxic gases;
- storage and handling of chemicals or reactive materials.

6. 3. 3 The risk assessment is to demonstrate that an appropriate level of safety is achieved and that the reliability of essential services is improved or remains unchanged. For risk acceptability criteria, *See* Pt 5, Ch 25, 6.2 Risk assessment of BWTS 6.2.4.

6. 3. 4 The risk assessment may identify further safety measures in addition to those specifically stated in the Rules.

6. 4 Assessment of alternative BWTS designs

6. 4. 1 Alternative BWTS designs which deviate from these Rules are subject to special consideration and may be accepted by ACS where supported by a risk assessment which demonstrates an equivalent level of safety to that which would be achieved by application of these Rules.

6. 4. 2 The risk assessment is to include an analysis of the BWTS as indicated in Pt 5, Ch 25, 6.2, Risk assessment of BWTS and Pt 5, Ch 25, 6.3, Risk assessment of BWTS installation, as applicable.

6. 4. 3 The risk assessment may identify the requirement for safety measures in addition to those specifically stated in the Rules.

PART

5

CHAPTER **25 Ballast Water Treatment System and Installation**

SECTION **7 Piping systems**

7. 1 General

7. 1. 1 Manufacturing, testing and integration of piping and fittings are to be in accordance with the *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships* , Pt 5, Ch 12 Piping Design Requirements, Pt 5, Ch 13 Ship Piping Systems, Pt 5, Ch 14 Machinery Piping Systems and Pt 5, Ch 15 Piping Systems for Oil Tankers.

7. 1. 2 Piping systems which carry chemical substances are to meet the requirements of the Rules for Ships for Liquid Chemicals. Use of non-metallic materials will be specifically considered.

7. 1. 3 Piping systems which carry sea water or fresh water are to meet the requirements as per Pt 5, Ch 25, 7.1 General 7.1.1. Where there is a risk of a water system becoming contaminated with hazardous materials (e.g. process chemicals, reactive materials or by-products), piping systems are to comply with Pt 5, Ch 25, 7.1 General 7.1.2 as applicable.

7. 1. 4 Piping systems utilising plastic pipes are to meet the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 12 Piping Design Requirements.

7. 1. 5 Piping systems utilised for handling active/reactive materials are to be separate and distinct from each other and the ship's piping systems.

7. 2 Side stream piping

7. 2. 1 Side stream piping is to meet the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 25, 7.1, General and the piping which carries concentrated treatment is also to meet the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 25, 7.2 Side stream piping 7.2.2 to Pt 5, Ch 25, 7.2 Side stream piping 7.2.5.

7. 2. 2 Material for side stream piping is to be non-reactive with the water properties and substances used in the system.

7. 2. 3 Pipe joints are to be of welded type except for connections to shut-off valves, double-walled pipes, or pipes in ducts equipped with mechanical exhaust ventilation.

7. 2. 4 Side stream piping is to be designed to minimise pipe length and number of connections. Alternatively it is to be demonstrated that risk of leakage is limited and the formation of toxic or flammable atmosphere is prevented.

7. 2. 5 Side stream piping is to be protected against mechanical damage.

PART

5

CHAPTER **25 Ballast Water Treatment System and Installation**

SECTION **8 Mechanical equipment and components**

8. 1 General

8. 1. 1 Air, sounding and overflow arrangement associated with BWTS are to comply with the requirement of Pt 5, Ch 13, 11 Ballast system and Pt 5, Ch 13, 12 Air, overflow and sounding pipes respectively.

8. 1. 2 Modification to ballast tank, air and overflow system, air pipe closing appliances and other systems and equipment is subject to special approval, *See* Pt 5, Ch 25, 10 Structural and Space categorisation requirements.

8. 1. 3 Chemical injection lines, concentrated treatment injection lines, inert gas injection lines and sampling point are to be of a rigid construction and be properly supported.

8. 1. 4 Risk of leakage from degassing equipment is to be prevented. Vent arrangements are to be directed to an area on open deck with no ignition hazard.

8. 1. 5 Degassing equipment shall be made of a suitable material. Non-metallic materials may be allowed for components inside degassing equipment subjected to special consideration.

8. 1. 6 Degassing equipment shall be arranged to ensure any hydrogen present is at a concentration less than the 4 per cent Lower Explosive Limit (LEL) before venting. Failure of such arrangement is to activate BWTS shutdown.

8. 2 Filtering units

8. 2. 1 Filters to be sized to the maximum flow rate of the ballast system.

8. 2. 2 Filters arranged in line with the ballast system are to be provided with redundancy.

8. 2. 3 Filter casings are to satisfy the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 11 Other Pressure Vessels, as applicable, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 25, 5.1 General 5.1.1.

8. 2. 4 Where filters are provided with a by-pass arrangement as per Pt 5, Ch 25, 11.2 By-pass and isolation, above requirements Pt 5, Ch 25, 8.2 Filtering units 8.2.2 and Pt 5, Ch 25, 8.2 Filtering units 8.2.3 may be exempted.

8. 3 Other components

8. 3. 1 Inert gas systems are to meet the technical requirements of Pt 5, Ch 15, 7 Inert gas systems on Tankers of 8000 tonnes DWT and above, as applicable.

8. 3. 2 Ozone generators, electro chlorination units, electrolysis units, oxygen generators, electrodialytic units, ultraviolet units, ultrasonic units, coagulation units, other treatment units and ancillaries are to be constructed to recognised industrial, National or International Standards acceptable to ACS.

PART

5

CHAPTER **25 Ballast Water Treatment System and Installation**

SECTION **9 Electrotechnical Systems**

9. 1 General

9. 1. 1 Control, ALERT and SAFETY systems are to be in accordance with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems.

9. 1. 2 Electrical engineering systems are to be in accordance with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2 Electrical Engineering.

9. 1. 3 A gas detection system with audible and visual alarm is to be provided for spaces, where dangerous gas could be present. For flammable atmospheres, the BWTS shutdown is to be activated at a flammable concentration of not more than 60 per cent of LEL. The alarm is also to be provided on the bridge, at manned ballast water control station(s) and in the engine control room, as applicable. Audible and visual alarm signals are to be activated both locally and at the control station(s) when the flammable concentration reaches a pre-set value, which should not be higher than 30 per cent of the LEL of the product concerned.

9. 1. 4 Gas detection equipment is to be designed, installed and tested in accordance with *IEC 60079-29-2: Explosive atmospheres* Part 29-2*: Gas detectors — Selection, installation, use and maintenance of detectors for flammable gases and oxygen*, and is to be suitable for the gases to be detected.

9. 1. 5 Failure of a BWTS power or control system is not to render the BWTS hazardous and is not to affect the operation of essential services.

9. 1. 6 Active or passive monitoring systems with alarm and safeguards are to be provided to mitigate risks and to ensure the safety of the ship and its occupants.

9. 1. 7 Failure of power or control systems is not to impair or restrict the by-pass or isolation arrangements or alternatively, it is to be demonstrated that fail-safe arrangement of valves is available to ensure the function of by-pass and isolation arrangements.

9. 1. 8 By-pass and isolation valves are to be provided with position indicators to give remote indication of valve positions.

9. 1. 9 Activation of by-pass or isolation arrangements is to activate an alarm in all stations from which the ballast water operations are controlled and on the navigating bridge, and be automatically recorded in control equipment.

9. 1. 10 Electric and electronic components are not to be installed in a hazardous area unless they are of certified safe type for use in the area. Cable penetrations of decks and bulkheads are to be sealed when a pressure difference between the areas is to be maintained.

9. 1. 11 Deviation from normal working pressure in ballast tanks is to activate an alarm and is to shut down the BWTS. The pressure at which shutdown is to occur is to be set in accordance with the tank manufacturer's recommendations.

PART

5

CHAPTER **25 Ballast Water Treatment System and Installation**

SECTION **10 Structural and Space categorisation requirements**

10. 1 Structural requirements

10. 1. 1 The structural requirements are to comply with the relevant ACS Rules and statutory requirements as applicable and separately approved. Consideration is to be given to BWTS space boundaries, fire integrity, hull penetrations and chemical storage tank constructions, if fitted.

10. 2 Ballast tanks requirements

10. 2. 1 Ballast tanks which could be subjected to over or under pressure are to be fitted with P/V valves and a means of pressure measurement.

10. 3 Chemical storage tank requirements

10. 3. 1 A means of controlling overflow is to be provided for the chemical storage tanks. Arrangements are to comply with the Rules for Ships for Liquid Chemicals.

10. 3. 2 Tanks for chemicals which react in a hazardous manner with other chemicals, residues or mixtures, are to:

a. be segregated from such other tanks by means of a cofferdam, void space, cargo pump-room, pump-room, empty tank, or tank containing a mutually compatible chemical;
b. have separate pumping and piping systems which shall not pass through other tanks containing such chemicals, unless encased in a tunnel;
c. have separate tank venting systems.

10. 3. 3 The tank and associated gauging requirements indicated in the *Chapter 17 Summary of minimum requirements*, columns f, g, h and j are to be complied with, as applicable to the chemicals being carried.

10. 3. 4 Secondary containment is to be provided for all free standing chemical storage tanks. Special consideration is to be given to storage tanks situated in high fire risk areas such as machinery spaces of category A.

10. 3. 5 Chemical storage tanks are to have sufficient strength and to be constructed in such a manner that maintenance and inspection can be easily performed.

10. 4 BWTS space categorisation requirements

10. 4. 1 BWTS location, and ventilation requirements for spaces containing BWTS are to be in accordance with the requirements of Table 25. 10. 1: Space categorisation and installation requirements.

Table 25. 10. 1: Space categorisation and installation requirements

	BWTS which generates or uses hazardous material (i.e. Electro chlorination, chemical injection, ozone, etc.)[3]	BWTS which does not generate or use hazardous material (UV reactor, ultra sound, mechanical filtration)
Machinery space of category A	Fitted with mechanical ventilation providing at least six (6) air changes per hour	Provide with adequate ventilation
Other machinery spaces		
Accommodation space	Not allowed to install	Not allowed to install
Cargo area[2]	Fitted with mechanical ventilation providing at least six (6) air changes per hour	Provide with adequate ventilation
Weather deck[2]		
Service spaces[2]	Not allowed to install[1]	Not allowed to install[1]
Special category space[2]		

Note *1* May be allowed to install subjected to special consideration, *See* Pt 5, Ch 25, 6.3, Risk assessment of BWTS installation

Note *2* Installation space in hazardous area is to be fitted with mechanical ventilation system providing at least twenty (20) air changes per hour or as complying with relevant requirements, i.e. IEC60092-502, IBC code, IGC code, etc. whichever is greater.

Note *3* For BWTS using ozone generators or electro chlorination with degassing equipment, six (6) are to be replaced with twenty (20) air changes per hour. BWTS shutdown is to be activated upon failure of the ventilation system.

10. 4. 2 For BWTS which generates or uses hazardous materials, the following mitigation measures of Pt 5, Ch 25, 10.4 BWTS space categorisation requirements 10.4.3 to Pt 5, Ch 25, 10.4 BWTS space categorisation requirements 10.4.5 are to be complied with, as applicable.

10. 4. 3 Where failure of the BWTS may result in release of hazardous material (e.g. toxic, flammable, etc.), gas detection is to be provided. The BWTS is to be shut down on detection of a gas concentration that is recognised as hazardous, *See* Pt 5, Ch 25, 9.1 General 9.1.3.

10. 4. 4 For the location of audible and visual alarms, *See* Pt 5, Ch 25, 9.1 General 9.1.3.

10. 4. 5 Where failure of the BWTS may result in release of hazardous material of flammable nature, electrical equipment is to comply with the requirements ofPt 6, Ch 2, 14 Electrical equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres or in the presence of combustible dusts.

PART

5

CHAPTER **25 Ballast Water Treatment System and Installation**

SECTION **11 System arrangement requirements**

11. 1 General

11. 1. 1 The BWTS arrangement is to satisfy the requirements of this Section as applicable.

11. 2 By-pass and isolation

11. 2. 1 The BWTS is to be provided with by-pass and isolation valves as necessary in order that it can be isolated from the ballast water system and any other essential services to which it may be connected without impairing ballast water flow.

11. 2. 2 By-pass and isolation valves are to be provided with remote means of operation and are also to comply with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 12, 6.1 Design requirements 6.1.3 andPt 5, Ch 12, 6.1 Design requirements 6.1.4 and Pt 5, Ch 13, 2.3, Valves − Installation and control.

11. 2. 3 By-pass and isolation valves are to be placed in easily accessible positions.

11. 2. 4 The by-pass and isolation arrangement are to meet Electrotechnical requirements of Pt 5, Ch 25, 9.1, General as applicable

11. 3 Ballast arrangement between hazardous and non-hazardous area

11. 3. 1 The transfer of ballast water from hazardous to non-hazardous areas is not permitted except for sampling, *See* Pt 5, Ch 25, 11.4 Ballast water sampling/analysis unit. Ballast arrangements on ships carrying liquefied gases in bulk will be subject to special consideration.

11. 3. 2 Non-hazardous areas are not to be rendered hazardous by the use of the BWTS or its connections with the ballast system.

11. 3. 3 Ballast water piping for the discharge of ballast tanks hazardous areas is not to be connected with the ballast water piping serving tanks in non-hazardous areas.

11. 3. 4 Ballast water piping serving tanks in non-hazardous areas may be used to fill the ballast tanks in hazardous areas, provided that an appropriate isolation arrangement is applied. Means of appropriate isolation are as follows:

a. two screw-down check valves in series with a spool piece; or
b. two screw-down check valves in series with a liquid seal which is at least 1.5 m in depth; or
c. double block and bleed valves and a non-return valve.

11. 3. 5 All piping connections between non-hazardous area and hazardous areas are to be led above main deck level.

11. 4 Ballast water sampling/analysis unit

11. 4. 1 The ballast water sampling analysis unit is to be installed within a gas-tight enclosure and provided with mechanical ventilation. The ventilation outlet is to be led to an area on open deck with no ignition hazard.

11. 4. 2 Sampling pipes are to be provided with remotely-operated stop valves installed within the gas tight enclosure.

11. 4. 3 Pipes are to be manufactured from steel or equivalent.

11. 4. 4 Sampling return pipes are to be provided with non-return valves, water seals or equivalent arrangement, installed on the hazardous area side of the return pipe in order to prevent backflow.

11. 4. 5 Sampling pipes are to be provided with stop valves installed close to the penetration of the bulkhead within the non-hazardous area. A warning notice stating, 'Keep valve closed when not performing sampling' is to be posted near the valves.

11. 4. 6 Sampling pipes are to have an internal diameter which is the minimum standard diameter necessary to achieve the functional requirements of the sampling system.

11. 4. 7 The sampling/analysis unit is to be installed as close to the bulkhead as possible, and the length of the measuring pipe in any non-hazardous area is to be as short as possible.

11. 4. 8 Sampling pipes are to be provided with safety valves installed on the hazardous area side of each sampling pipe.

11. 4. 9 Sampling piping is to be protected against mechanical damage.

11. 4. 10 The ballast water sampling/analysis unit is to meet Electrotechnical requirements of Pt 5, Ch 25, 9.1, Generalas applicable.

PART

5

CHAPTER **25 Ballast Water Treatment System and Installation**

SECTION **12 Fire safety requirements**

12. 1 General

12. 1. 1 Spaces containing BWTS are to be provided with fixed fire detection and fire alarm systems complying with the International Code for Fire Safety Systems. As a minimum, the following spaces are to be covered:

- chemical storage spaces;
- treatment unit spaces;
- electrical equipment spaces;
- other spaces, if identified in Section *6 Risk-based studies*.

12. 1. 2 Fire suppression techniques and medium are to be compatible with the chemicals and gases associated with the BWTS installed. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) should be available and prominently displayed for all chemicals and gases employed in the ballast treatment process.

12. 1. 3 Where the BWTS is installed in an independent compartment, the compartment is to be:

a. provided with fire integrity equivalent to machinery space of category A or other machinery spaces as applicable; and
b. positioned outside of any combustible, corrosive, toxic, or hazardous areas unless otherwise specifically approved.

PART

6

Control, Electrical, Refrigeration and Fire

CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1 Control Engineering Systems 2668

SECTION 1 General requirements 2671

SECTION 2 Essential features for control, alarm, monitoring and safety systems 2677

SECTION 3 Ergonomics of control stations 2689

SECTION 4 Unattended machinery space(s) - UMS notation 2693

SECTION 5 Machinery operated from a centralised control station - CCS notation 2696

SECTION 6 Integrated computer control - ICC notation 2698

SECTION 7 Trialsr 2700

CHAPTER 2 Electrical Engineering 2702

SECTION 1 General requirements 2712

SECTION 2 Main source of electrical power 2733

SECTION 3 Emergency source of electrical power 2735

SECTION 4 External source of electrical power 2737

SECTION 5 Supply and distribution 2738

SECTION 6 System design – Protection 2744

SECTION 7 Switchgear and controlgear assemblies 2750

SECTION 8 Protection from electric arc hazards within electrical equipment 2757

SECTION 9 Rotating machines 2759

SECTION 10 Converter equipment 2767

SECTION 11 Electric cables, optical fibre cables and busbar trunking systems (busways) 2771

SECTION 12 Batteries 2785

SECTION 13 Equipment - Heating, lighting and accessories 2793

SECTION 14 Electrical equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres or in the presence of combustible dusts 2795

SECTION 15 Navigation and manoeuvring systems 2806
SECTION 16 Electric propulsion 2809
SECTION 17 Fire safety systems 2813
SECTION 18 Crew and passenger emergency safety systems 2818
SECTION 19 Ship safety systems 2821
SECTION 20 Lightning conductors 2825
SECTION 21 Testing and trials 2826
SECTION 22 Spare gear 2831
SECTION 23 Ergonomic Lighting Design – ELD optional notation 2832
SECTION 24 Hybrid electrical power systems 2835
CHAPTER 3 Refrigerated Cargo Installations 2862
SECTION 1 General requirements 2866
SECTION 2 Design criteria 2870
SECTION 3 Refrigerating machinery and refrigerant storage compartments 2874
SECTION 4 Refrigeration plant, pipes, valves and fittings 2877
SECTION 5 Refrigeration plant, pipes, valves and fittings 2890
SECTION 6 Electrical installation 2891
SECTION 7 Instrumentation, control, alarm, safety and monitoring systems 2892
SECTION 8 Personnel safety equipment and systems 2895
SECTION 9 Refrigerated cargo spaces 2897
SECTION 10 Container ships fitted with refrigerating plant to supply cooled air to insulated containers in holds 2900
SECTION 11 Acceptance trials 2902
CHAPTER 4 Fire Protection, Detection and Extinction Requirements 2904
SECTION 1 General 2906
SECTION 2 Fire detection, protection and extinction 2908

PART

6

CHAPTER 1 Control Engineering Systems

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General requirements**		**2671**
	1. 1	General	2671
	1. 2	Documentation required for design review	2671
	1. 3	Documentation required for supporting evidence	2673
	1. 4	Control, alarm and safety equipment	2674
	1. 5	Alterations and additions	2674
	1. 6	Definitions	2675
SECTION 2	**Essential features for control, alarm, monitoring and safety systems**		**2677**
	2. 1	General	2677
	2. 2	Control stations for machinery	2677
	2. 3	Alarm systems, general requirements	2678
	2. 4	Safety systems, general requirements	2679
	2. 5	Control systems, general requirements	2680
	2. 6	Bridge control for main propulsion machinery	2680
	2. 7	Valve control systems	2681
	2. 8	Fire detection and fire alarm systems	2681
	2. 9	Fixed water-based local application fire-fighting systems	2682
	2. 10	Programmable electronic systems - General requirements	2683
	2. 11	Data communication links	2684
	2. 12	Additional requirements for wireless data communication links	2685
	2. 13	Programmable electronic systems - Additional requirements for essential services and safety critical systems	2686
	2. 14	Programmable electronic systems – Additional requirements for integrated systems	2687
SECTION 3	**Ergonomics of control stations**		**2689**
	3. 1	Objectives	2689
	3. 2	Control station layout	2689

3. 3 Physical environment 2690
3. 4 Operator interface 2691
3. 5 Controls 2691
3. 6 Displays 2691
SECTION 4 Unattended machinery space(s) - UMS notation 2693
4. 1 General 2693
4. 2 Alarm system for machinery 2693
4. 3 Bridge control for main propulsion machinery 2694
4. 4 Control stations for machinery 2694
4. 5 Fire detection alarm system 2694
4. 6 Fixed water-based local application fire-fighting systems 2694
4. 7 Bilge level detection 2694
4. 8 Supply of electric power, general 2694
SECTION 5 Machinery operated from a centralised control station - CCS notation 2696
5. 1 General requirements 2696
5. 2 Centralised control station for machinery 2696
SECTION 6 Integrated computer control - ICC notation 2698
6. 1 General 2698
6. 2 General requirements 2698
6. 3 Operator stations 2699
SECTION 7 Trialsr 2700
7. 1 General 2700
7. 2 Unattended machinery space operation - UMS notation 2700
7. 3 Operation from a centralised control station - CCS notation 2701
7. 4 Record of trials 2701

PART

6

CHAPTER **1** **Control Engineering Systems**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 1. 3. 1: Specific lighting levels 2690

PART

6

CHAPTER 1 Control Engineering Systems

SECTION 1 General requirements

1. 1 General

1. 1. 1 This Chapter applies to all ships intended to be classed with ACS, and is in addition to other relevant Sections of the Rules.

1. 1. 2 Control engineering systems are to:

- provide control of required services and habitability requirements during defined operational conditions. This is to include, but is not limited to, power generation, propulsion and their associated services;
- provide control of the engineering systems necessary to ensure availability of essential and emergency safety systems during all normal and reasonably fore*See*able abnormal conditions;
- provide control of the engineering systems necessary to ensure transitional power supplies remain available;
- be suitably protected against damage to itself under fault conditions and to prevent injury to personnel; and
- not fail in a way which may cause machinery and systems located in hazardous areas to create additional fire or explosion risk.

1. 1. 3 Control engineering systems on passenger ships are, in addition to the requirements of this Chapter, to comply with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 23 Additional Requirements for Passenger Ships, as applicable.

1. 1. 4 ACS will be prepared to give consideration to special cases or to arrangements which are equivalent to the Rules. For unconventional designs, *See also* Pt 7, Ch 14 Requirements for Machinery and Engineering Systems of Unconventional Design .

1. 2 Documentation required for design review

1. 2. 1 The documentation described in Pt 6, Ch 1, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.2 to Pt 6, Ch 1, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.9 is to be submitted for design review.

1. 2. 2 Where control, alarm, monitoring and safety systems are intended for the machinery or equipment as defined in Pt 6, Ch 1, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.3 the following are to be submitted:

- Description of operation with explanatory diagrams.
- Line diagrams of control circuits.

- List of monitored points.
- List of control points.
- Details of alarms and warnings to be presented by the user interface, including:

  i. an approach to category assignments which is in accordance with the IMO *Code on Alerts and Indicators, 2009* ; and
  ii. for alarms required by these Rules, the intended operator response and the message to be presented.
- Test schedules (for both works testing and sea trials) which should include methods of testing (for example, simulation testing) and test facilities provided, *See* Pt 6, Ch 1, 1.4 Control, alarm and safety equipment 1.4.1.
- Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA) where required by other sections of the Rules.
- List of safety functions and details of any overrides, including consequences of use, *See* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.4 Safety systems, general requirements 2.4.8 and Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.6 Bridge control for main propulsion machinery 2.6.8.

1. 2. 3 Plans for the control, alarm, monitoring and safety systems of the following are to be submitted:

- Air compressors.
- Bilge and ballast systems.
- Cargo pumping systems for tankers.
- Cargo and ballast pumps in hazardous areas.
- Cargo tank, cargo hold, ballast tank and void space instrumentation where such arrangements are specified by other sections of the Rules (e.g. water ingress detection, gas detection).
- Controllable pitch propellers.
- Electric generating plant.
- Lithium battery system installations, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.2, Documentation required for design review 1.2.17.
- Fixed water based local application fire-fighting systems, *See* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.9, Fixed water-based local application fire-fighting systems.
- Incinerators.
- Inert gas generators.
- Main propelling machinery including essential auxiliaries.
- Miscellaneous machinery or equipment (where control, alarm, monitoring and safety systems are specified by other Sections of the Rules).
- Fuel oil transfer and storage systems.
- Steam raising plant. (Boilers and their ancillary equipment.)
- Steering gear.
- Thermal fluid heaters.
- Transverse thrust units.
- Valve position indicating systems.

- Waste-heat boiler.
- Water jets for propulsion purposes.
- Windlasses.

1. 2. 4 **System operational concept.** A description of the intended operation of the control, alarm, monitoring and safety systems for the main and auxiliary machinery, and other systems essential for the propulsion and safety of the ship. This description is to include a demonstration that the design provides an effective means of operation and control for all ship operating conditions.

1. 2. 5 **Alarm systems.** Details of the overall alarm system linking the main control station, subsidiary control stations, the bridge area and accommodation are to be submitted.

1. 2. 6 **Programmable electronic systems.** In addition to the documentation required by Pt 6, Ch 1, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.2 the following is to be submitted:

a. System requirements specification.
b. System functional description.
c. System integration plan, *See* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.14 Programmable electronic systems – Additional requirements for integrated systems 2.14.2.
d. Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA), *See* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.14 Programmable electronic systems – Additional requirements for integrated systems 2.14.5.
e. Details of the hardware configuration in the form of a system block diagram, including input/output schedules.
f. Hardware certification details, *See* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.10 Programmable electronic systems - General requirements 2.10.5 and Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.13 Programmable electronic systems - Additional requirements for essential services and safety critical systems 2.13.3.
g. Software production plans, including applicable procedures, *See* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.10 Programmable electronic systems - General requirements 2.10.20.
h. Factory acceptance, integration and sea trial test schedules for hardware and software.
i. Details of data storage arrangements, *See* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.10 Programmable electronic systems - General requirements 2.10.10 and Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.13 Programmable electronic systems - Additional requirements for essential services and safety critical systems 2.13.6.

1. 2. 7 For wireless data communication equipment:

a. Details of manufacturer's installation and maintenance recommendations;
b. network plan with arrangement and type of aerials and identification of location;
c. specification of wireless communication system protocols and management functions, *See* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.12 Additional requirements for wireless data communication links 2.12.4; and
d. details of radio frequency and power levels, including details of those permitted by the National Administration.

1. 2. 8 Plans showing the location and details of control stations, e.g. control panels and consoles. Location and details of controls and displays on each panel. Detailed user interface specifications. A general arrangement plan of control rooms showing the position of consoles, handrails, operator area, lighting, door and window arrangements. Drawing of Heating, Ventilation, and Air Conditioning (HVAC) systems including vent arrangements.

1. 2. 9 **Fire detection systems.** Plans showing the system operation, and the type and location of all machinery space fire detector heads, manual call points and the fire detector indicator panel(s) are to be submitted. The plans are to indicate the position of the fire detectors in relation to significant items of machinery, ventilation and extraction openings.

1. 3 Documentation required for supporting evidence

1. 3. 1 For optical fibre data communication systems:

a. details of manufacturer's installation and maintenance recommendations;
b. data communications network diagram; and
c. details of the minimum power levels required to maintain the correct operation of the data communications system, which is to include an allowance for the effects of optical fibre degradation due to aging.

1. 4 Control, alarm and safety equipment

1. 4. 1 Equipment associated with control, alarm and safety systems as defined in Pt 6, Ch 1, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.3 are to be surveyed at the manufacturers' works in accordance with the approved test schedule *See* Pt 6, Ch 1, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.2, and the inspection and testing are to be to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

1. 4. 2 Equipment used in control, alarm and safety systems is to be suitable for its intended purpose, and accordingly, whenever practicable, be selected from the *List of Type Approved Products* published by ACS. A copy of the *Procedure for ACS Type Approval System* will be supplied on application. For fire detection alarm systems, *See* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.8 Fire detection and fire alarm systems 2.8.3 and for programmable electronic systems, *See* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.10 Programmable electronic systems - General requirements 2.10.5 and Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.13 Programmable electronic systems - Additional requirements for essential services and safety critical systems 2.13.3.

1. 4. 3 Where equipment requires a controlled environment, an alternative means is to be provided to maintain the required environment in the event of a failure of the normal air conditioning system, *See also* Table 14. 12. 3: Miscellaneous machinery: Alarms and safeguards in Pt 5, Ch 14.

1. 4. 4 Assessment of performance parameters, such as accuracy, repeatability, etc. are to be in accordance with an acceptable National or International Standard, e.g. IEC 60051: *Direct acting indicating analogue electrical measuring instruments and their accessories* (all parts).

1. 4. 5 Special consideration will be given to arrangements that comply with a relevant and acceptable National or International Standard, such as IEC 60092-504:*Electrical Installations in ships – Part 504: Special features – Control and instrumentation*.

1. 5 Alterations and additions

1. 5. 1 When an alteration or addition to the approved system(s) is proposed, plans are to be submitted for approval. The alterations or additions are to be carried out under survey and the installation and testing are to be to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

1. 5. 2 Details of proposed software modifications are to be submitted for consideration. Modifications are to be undertaken in accordance with defined modification processes which are part of the supplier's or system integrator's quality management system. The following documentation is to be submitted:

a. Project-specific software modification plan.
b. An impact analysis which identifies the effect(s) of the proposed modification. The results of the analysis are to be used to inform the extent of verification and validation that is to be applied. This analysis is to consider both the local impact and, where applicable, the system level impact of the modification.
c. Configuration management records that satisfy the requirements of ISO 10007, to demonstrate the traceability of the proposed modification.
d. Factory acceptance, integration and sea trial test schedules as determined by the impact analysis in Pt 6, Ch 1, 1.5 Alterations and additions 1.5.2.b.
e. Updated documentation as detailed in Pt 6, Ch 1, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.5.

1. 5. 3 Verification and validation activities are to demonstrate that the modified functionality performs as expected and that the modification has not unintentionally modified functionality outside the scope of the modification.

1. 5. 4 Software versions are to be uniquely identified by number, date or other appropriate means. Modifications are not to be made without also changing the version identifier. A record of changes to the system since the original issue (and their identification) is to be maintained and made available to the ACS Surveyor on request.

1. 6 Definitions

1. 6. 1 An Emergency Stop (E-Stop) is a safeguard instigated by a single human action. It requires a stop of all movement within the controlled system as rapidly as possible to prevent a hazard occurring or to reduce an existing hazard to persons, machinery or the vessel.

1. 6. 2 An Emergency Trip (E-Trip) is a safeguard instigated by a single human action and means the disconnection of fuel, electrical, hydraulic or other power source from the controlled system to prevent a hazard occurring or to reduce an existing hazard to persons, machinery or the vessel. Movement within the system may be allowed to continue.

1. 6. 3 An Emergency Stop Function may be either an Emergency Stop or Emergency Trip, as appropriate to the system and risk being controlled.

1. 6. 4 Alarm System: a system which will alert relevant personnel to faults, abnormal situations and other conditions requiring attention in the machinery and the safety and control systems.

1. 6. 5 Control System: a system which responds to input signals from the process and/or operator and generates output signals causing the equipment under control to operate in the desired manner.

1. 6. 6 Failure: a loss of the ability of a structure, system or element to function within acceptance criteria.

1. 6. 7 Fail safe: a system design such that, when a failure occurs, the system reverts to the least hazardous state.

1. 6. 8 A reasonably fore*See*able abnormal condition is an event, incident or failure that:

- has happened and could happen again;
- is planned for (e.g. emergency actions cover such a situation, maintenance is undertaken to prevent it, etc.).

They should be identified by:

- using analysis processes that were capable of revealing abnormal conditions;
- employing a mix of personnel including competent safety / risk professionals and those with relevant domain knowledge and understanding to apply the processes;
- referencing relevant events and historic data; and
- documenting the results of the analysis.

1. 6. 9 Safety System: a designated system that:

- implements the required safety functions necessary to achieve or maintain a safe state for the equipment under control; and
- is intended to achieve, on its own or with other safety systems, the necessary safety needed for the required safety functions.

1. 6. 10 Safe State: the state of equipment under control when safety is achieved. For some situations, a safe state only exists so long as the equipment under control is continuously controlled. Such continuous control may be for a short or indefinite period.

1. 6. 11 System: a set of elements which interact according to a design, where an element of a system can be another system, called a sub-system, which may be a controlling system or a controlled system, and may include hardware, software and human interaction.

1. 6. 12 Sub-system: identifiable part of a system, which may perform a specific function or set of functions.

1. 6. 13 Programmable electronic equipment: physical component where software is installed.

1. 6. 14 Software module: a module is a standalone piece of code that provides specific and closely coupled functionality.

1. 6. 15 Simulation tests: system testing where simulation tools replace parts or all of the equipment, or where parts of the communication network and lines are replaced with simulation tools.

PART

6

CHAPTER **1** **Control Engineering Systems**

SECTION **2** **Essential features for control, alarm, monitoring and safety systems**

2. 1 General

2. 1. 1 Systems complying with ISO 17894, *Ships and marine technology – Computer applications – General principles for the development and use of programmable electronic systems in marine applications*, may be accepted as meeting the requirements of this Section, in which case evidence of compliance is to be submitted for consideration.

2. 2 Control stations for machinery

2. 2. 1 A system of alarm and warning displays and controls is to be provided which readily ensures identification of faults in the machinery and satisfactory supervision of related equipment by duty personnel. This may be provided at a main control station or, alternatively at subsidiary control stations. In the latter case, a master alarm display is to be provided at the main control station showing which of the subsidiary control stations is indicating a fault condition.

2. 2. 2 At the main control station (if provided) or close to the subsidiary stations (if fitted) means of communication with the bridge area, the accommodation for engineering personnel and, if necessary, the machinery space are to be provided.

2. 2. 3 Where operator interfaces are installed in the wheelhouse, illumination should not interfere with night vision. All illumination and lighting of instruments, keyboards and controls are to be adjustable to zero illumination, except for lighting for visual indication of alarms and the controls of dimmers, which are to remain readable.

2. 2. 4 Provision is to be made at the main control station, or subsidiary control stations as appropriate, for the operation of an engineers' alarm which is to be clearly audible in the engineers' accommodation.

2. 2. 5 Provision is to be made at the main control station and any other subsidiary control station from which the main propulsion and auxiliary machinery or associated equipment may be controlled to indicate which station is in control.

2. 2. 6 Control of machinery and associated equipment is to be possible only from one station at a time.

2. 2. 7 Changeover between control stations is to be arranged so that it may only be effected with the acceptance of the station taking control. The system is to be provided with interlocks or other suitable means to ensure effective transfer of control.

2. 3 Alarm systems, general requirements

2. 3. 1 Machinery, safety and control system faults are to be indicated at the relevant control stations to advise duty personnel of a fault condition. The presence of unrectified faults is to be clearly indicated at all times.

2. 3. 2 Alarms and warnings associated with machinery and equipment required to satisfy this sub-Section are to be categorised according to the urgency and type of response required by the crew, as described in the IMO *Code on Alerts and Indicators, 2009* . The assignment of a category to each alert is to be evaluated on the basis not only of the machinery or equipment being monitored, but also the complete installation. Categories not included in an alarm system may be omitted from the system design. Details of alternative alert management proposals supported with evidence of service experience may be submitted for consideration by ACS.

2. 3. 3 Where the facility to provide messages in association with alarms and warnings exists, messages accompanying alarms and warnings are to describe the condition and indicate the intended response required by the crew.

2. 3. 4 Where the facility to provide messages in association with alarms and warnings exists messages of different categories are to be clearly distinguishable from each other. Alarms associated with machinery, safety and control system faults are to be clearly distinguishable from other alarms (e.g. fire, general alarm).

2. 3. 5 Where alarms are displayed as group alarms provision is to be made to identify individual alarms at the main control station (if fitted) or alternatively at subsidiary control stations.

2. 3. 6 All alarms are to be both audible and visual. If arrangements are made to silence audible signals they are not to extinguish visual indications.

2. 3. 7 Acknowledgement of visual alarms is to be clearly indicated.

2. 3. 8 Acknowledgement of alarms at positions outside a machinery space is not to silence the audible signal or extinguish the visual indication in that machinery space.

2. 3. 9 If an alarm has been acknowledged and a second fault occurs prior to the first being rectified, audible signals and visual indications are again to operate. Where alarms are displayed at a local panel adjacent to the machinery and with arrangements to provide a group or common fault alarm in the control room, the occurrence of a second fault prior to the first alarm being rectified need only be displayed at the local panel; however, the group alarm is to be re-initiated. Unacknowledged alarms on monitors are to be distinguished by either flashing text or a flashing marker adjacent to the text. A change of colour will not in itself be sufficient to distinguish between acknowledged and unacknowledged alarms.

2. 3. 10 For the detection of transient faults which are subsequently self-correcting, alarms are required to lock in until accepted.

2. 3. 11 The alarm system is to be arranged with automatic changeover to a standby power supply in the event of a failure of the normal power supply. Where an alarm system could be adversely affected by an interruption in power supply, changeover to the standby power supply is to be achieved without a break.

2. 3. 12 Failure of any power supply to the alarm system is to operate an audible and visual alarm.

2. 3. 13 The alarm system should be designed with self-monitoring properties. Insofar as practicable, any fault in the alarm system should cause it to fail to the alarm condition.

2. 3. 14 The alarm system is to be capable of being tested during normal machinery operation, *See* Pt 6, Ch 1, 7.1 General 7.1.2.

2. 3. 15 The alarm system is to be designed as far as practicable to function independently of control and safety systems such that a failure or malfunction in these systems will not prevent the alarm system from operating.

2. 3. 16 Disconnection or manual overriding of any part of the alarm system is to be clearly indicated.

2. 3. 17 When alarm systems are provided with means to adjust their set point, the arrangements are to be such that the final settings can be readily identified.

2. 3. 18 Where monitors are provided at the station in control and, if fitted, in the duty engineer's accommodation, they are to provide immediate display of new alarm information regardless of the information display page currently selected. This may be achieved by provision of a dedicated alarm monitor, a dedicated area of screen for alarms or other suitable means.

2. 3. 19 Where practicable, alarms displayed on monitors are to be displayed in the order in which they occur. Alarms requiring manual shutdown or slow-down action are to be given visual prominence.

2. 4 Safety systems, general requirements

2. 4. 1 Safety systems are to operate automatically in case of serious faults endangering the machinery, so that:

a. normal operating conditions are restored, e.g. by the starting of standby machinery, or
b. the operation of the machinery is temporarily adjusted to the prevailing conditions, e.g. by reducing the output of the machinery, or
c. the machinery is protected from critical conditions by shutting off the fuel or power supplies thereby stopping the machinery.

2. 4. 2 The safety system required by Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.4 Safety systems, general requirements 2.4.1.c is to be designed as far as practicable to operate independently of the control and alarm systems, such that a failure or malfunction in the control and alarm systems will not prevent the safety system from operating, *See* Pt 5, Ch 14, 12.1 General 12.1.4.

2. 4. 3 For safety systems required by Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.4 Safety systems, general requirements 2.4.1.(a) and Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.4 Safety systems, general requirements 2.4.1.b complete independence from other control systems is not necessary.

2. 4. 4 Safety systems for different items of the machinery plant are to be arranged so that failure of the safety system of one part of the plant will not interfere with the operation of the safety system in another part of the plant.

2. 4. 5 The safety system is to be designed to `fail safe'. The characteristics of the `fail safe' operation are to be evaluated on the basis not only of the safety system and its associated machinery, but also the complete installation. Failure of a safety system is to initiate an audible and visual alarm.

2. 4. 6 When a safety system is activated, an audible and visual alarm is to be provided to indicate the cause of the safety action.

2. 4. 7 The safety system is to be manually reset before the relevant machinery can be restarted.

2. 4. 8 Where arrangements are provided for overriding a safety system, they are to be such that inadvertent operation is prevented. Visual indication is to be given at the relevant control station(s) when a safety override is operated. The consequences of overriding a safety system are to be established and documented.

2. 4. 9 The safety system is to be arranged with automatic changeover to a standby power supply in the event of a failure of the normal power supply.

2. 4. 10 Failure of any power supply to a safety system is to operate an audible and visual alarm.

2. 4. 11 When safety systems are provided with means to adjust their set point, the arrangements are to be such that the final settings can be readily identified.

2. 4. 12 As far as practicable, the safety system required by Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.4 Safety systems, general requirements 2.4.1.b is to be arranged to effect a rapid reduction in speed or power.

2. 5 Control systems, general requirements

2. 5. 1 Control systems for machinery operations are to be stable throughout their operating range.

2. 5. 2 Failure of any power supply to a control system is to operate an audible and visual alarm.

2. 5. 3 Control systems should be designed to `fail safe'. The characteristics of the `fail safe' operation are to be evaluated on the basis not only of the control system and its associated machinery, but also the complete installation.

2. 5. 4 The control system is to be designed such that normal operation of the controls cannot induce detrimental mechanical or thermal overloads in the machinery.

2. 5. 5 Remote or automatic controls are to be provided with suitable instrumentation at the relevant control stations to ensure effective control by duty personnel and to indicate that the system is functioning correctly.

2. 5. 6 When control systems are provided with means to adjust their sensitivity or set point, the arrangements are to be such that the final settings can be readily identified.

2. 5. 7 Failure of a control system is not to result in the loss of ability to provide essential services by alternative means. This may be achieved by manual control or redundancy within the control system or redundancy in machinery and equipment, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.13 Programmable electronic systems - Additional requirements for essential services and safety critical systems 2.13.2. Instrumentation is to be provided at local manual control stations to ensure effective operation of the machinery by duty personnel.

2. 6 Bridge control for main propulsion machinery

2. 6. 1 Means are to be provided to ensure satisfactory control of propulsion from the bridge in both the ahead and astern directions.

2. 6. 2 The following indications are to be provided on the bridge:

a. Propeller speed.
b. Direction of rotation of propeller for a fixed pitch propeller or pitch position for a controllable pitch propeller, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 7, 5.3 Controllable pitch propellers and transverse thrust units.
c. Direction and magnitude of thrust.
d. Clutch position, where applicable.
e. Shaft brake position, where applicable.

2. 6. 3 The propeller speed, direction of rotation and, if applicable, the propeller pitch are to be controlled from the bridge under all sea-going and manoeuvring conditions.

2. 6. 4 Remote control of the propulsion machinery is to be from only one control station at any one time, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.2 Control stations for machinery 2.2.6. Main propulsion control units on the navigating bridge may be interconnected. Means are to be provided at the control station to ensure smooth transfer of control between the bridge and other control stations.

2. 6. 5 Means of control, independent of the bridge control system, are to be provided on the bridge to enable the watchkeeper to stop the propulsion machinery in an emergency.

2. 6. 6 Audible and visual alarms are to operate on the bridge and in the alarm system required by Pt 6, Ch 1, 4.2 Alarm system for machinery if any power supply to the bridge control system fails. Where practicable, the preset speed and direction of thrust are to be maintained until corrective action is taken.

2. 6. 7 Two means of communication are to be provided between the bridge and the main control station in the machinery space. One of these means may be the bridge control system; the other is to be

independent of the main electrical power supply, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.2 Control stations for machinery 2.2.2 and Pt 5, Ch 1, 4 Machinery room arrangements.

2. 6. 8 Automation systems are to be designed in a manner such that a threshold warning of impending or imminent slow-down or shutdown of the propulsion system is given to the officer in charge of the navigational watch in time to assess navigational circumstances in an emergency. In particular, the systems are to control, monitor, report, alert and take safety action to slow down or stop propulsion while providing the officer in charge of the navigational watch an opportunity to intervene manually, except for those cases where manual intervention will result in total failure of the engine and/or propulsion equipment within a short time, for example, in the case of overspeed.

2. 7 Valve control systems

2. 7. 1 Where cargo, bilge, ballast, fuel oil transfer and sea valves for engine services are operated by remote or automatic control, the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.7 Valve control systems 2.7.2 to Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.7 Valve control systems 2.7.5 are to be satisfied.

2. 7. 2 Failure of control system power or actuator power is not to permit a valve to move to an unsafe condition.

2. 7. 3 Positive indication is to be provided at the remote control station for the service to show the actual valve position or alternatively that the valve is fully open or closed.

2. 7. 4 Equipment located in places which may be flooded is to be capable of operating when submerged.

2. 7. 5 A secondary means of operating the valves, which may be by local manual control, is to be provided.

2. 7. 6 For requirements applicable to closing appliances on scuppers and sanitary discharges, *See* Pt 3, Ch 12, 4.2 Closing appliances. For power supplies on passenger ships, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 3.3, Emergency source of electrical power in passenger ships.

2. 8 Fire detection and fire alarm systems

2. 8. 1 Fire detection and fire alarm systems are to comply with Chapter 9 – Fixed fire detection and fire alarm systems of the *Fire Safety Systems Code* (FSS Code), SOLAS Chapter II-2 Part C, *Regulation 7 - Detection and alarm* and the requirements in this Section.

2. 8. 2 For cargo ships of less than 500 GT, the provisions of this Section are intended to apply to new ships, as far as reasonable and practicable, or as required by the relevant National Administration.

2. 8. 3 Fire detection control units, indicating panels, detector heads, manual call points and short-circuit isolation units are to satisfy the requirements of the Type Approval Test Specification Number 1 given in ACS's Type Approval System for an environmental category appropriate for the locations in which they are intended to operate.

2. 8. 4 When fire detectors are provided with means to adjust their sensitivity, the arrangements are to be such that the set point can be fixed and readily identified.

2. 8. 5 When it is intended that a particular loop is to be temporarily switched off, this state is to be clearly indicated at the fire detection indicating panels.

2. 8. 6 When it is intended that a particular detector(s) is (are) to be temporarily switched off locally, this state is to be clearly indicated at the local position. Reactivation of the detector(s) is to be performed automatically after a preset time.

2. 8. 7 It is to be demonstrated to the Surveyor's satisfaction that detector heads are located in accordance with *FSS Code - Fire Safety Systems – Resolution MSC.98(73)* Section 2.4.2.1.

2. 8. 8 In passenger ships, the fixed fire detection and fire alarm systems are to be capable of remotely and individually identifying each detector and manually operated call point.

2. 8. 9 For electrical engineering requirements, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 17.1 Fire detection and fire alarm systems.

2. 9 Fixed water-based local application fire-fighting systems

2. 9. 1 Where fixed water-based local application firefighting systems are installed in accordance with *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea* as amended Ch. II-2, Part C, Regulation 10, *5 Fire extinguishing arrangements in machinery spaces*, arrangements are to be in accordance with this sub-Section.

2. 9. 2 Systems are to be available for immediate use and arranged for manual activation from inside and outside the protected space. *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 17.3 Fixed water-based local application fire-fighting systems 17.3.4.

2. 9. 3 The activation of a system is not to result in loss of electrical power or reduction of the manoeuvrability of the ship and is not to require confirmation of space evacuation or sealing, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 17.3 Fixed water-based local application fire-fighting systems 17.3.11.

2. 9. 4 System zones and protected areas are to be arranged to allow essential services to be provided by machinery and/or equipment located outside areas affected by direct spray or extended water in the event of a system activation, where the machinery and/or equipment is duplicated or otherwise replicated to provide redundancy.

2. 9. 5 A control panel is to be provided for managing actions such as opening of valves, starting of pumps and initiation of alarms and warnings and processing information from detectors. This panel is to be independent of the fire detection control unit required by Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.8, Fire detection and fire alarm systems.

2. 9. 6 Alarms are to be initiated upon activation of a system and are to indicate the specific zone activated at the control panel.

2. 9. 7 A failure in a manual system activation switch circuit is not to prevent system activation using other installed manual system activation switches or, where installed, automatic activation. The means of activation are to be provided with self-monitoring facilities which will activate an alarm at an attended control station in the event of failure detection.

2. 9. 8 Where *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea* requires the system, additionally, to be capable of automatic release, the arrangements are to be in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.9 Fixed water-based local application fire-fighting systems 2.9.9to Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.9 Fixed water-based local application fire-fighting systems 2.9.12 .

2. 9. 9 A minimum of two fire detectors are to be provided for each protected area. One is to be a flame detector and the other is to be a smoke or heat detector, as considered appropriate to the nature of the risk and ambient conditions. The system is to be activated upon detection by two of the detectors. A fault in one detector is to initiate an alarm at an attended control station and is not to inhibit activation of the system under the control of the other detector or manually.

2. 9. 10 The fire detectors are to be arranged (located, oriented, guarded, etc.) to ensure that a fire in one protected area will not result in the inadvertent automatic activation of a system for another protected area. Guards or barriers provided to comply with this requirement are not to reduce the ability to detect a fire in the protected area.

2. 9. 11 A fire detection alarm system panel in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.8, Fire detection and fire alarm systems may be used for receiving fire detection signals. Separate loops are not required provided that the address of the initiating device can be identified at the control panel. The received signals are then to be sent to the control panel required by Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.9 Fixed water-based local application fire-fighting systems 2.9.5 for processing and action.

2. 9. 12 The system's fire detection systems and control units are to be type approved in accordance with *Test Specification Number 1* given in ACS's *Type Approval System* for an environmental category appropriate for the locations in which they are intended to operate.

2. 10 Programmable electronic systems - General requirements

2. 10. 1 The requirements of this sub-section are to be complied with where control, alarm, moinitoring or safety systems incorporate programmable electronic equipment. Systems for essential services and safety critical applications, systems incorporating shared data communication links and systems which are integrated are to comply with the additional requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.11, Data communication links, Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.13, Programmable electronic systems - Additional requirements for essential services and safety critical systems and Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.14, Programmable electronic systems – Additional requirements for integrated systems as applicable. For systems complying with ISO 17894, *Ships and marine technology – Computer applications – General principles for the development and use of programmable electronic systems in marine applications*, *See* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.12, Additional requirements for wireless data communication links.

2. 10. 2 Where programmable electronic systems share resources, any components that can affect the ability to provide effectively required control, alarm or safety functions are to fulfil the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.10, Programmable electronic systems - General requirements to Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.14, Programmable electronic systems – Additional requirements for integrated systems related to providing those required functions.

2. 10. 3 Programmable electronic equipment is to revert to a defined safe state on initial start-up or re-start in the event of failure.

2. 10. 4 In the event of failure of any programmable electronic equipment, the system, and any other system to which it is connected, is to fail to a defined safe state or maintain safe operation, as applicable.

2. 10. 5 Programmable electronic equipment is to be certified by a recognised authority as suitable for the environmental conditions in which it is intended to operate, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.13 Programmable electronic systems - Additional requirements for essential services and safety critical systems 2.13.3.

2. 10. 6 Emergency stop functions are to be hard-wired and independent of any programmable electronic equipment. Alternatively, the system providing emergency stop functions is to comply with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.13 Programmable electronic systems - Additional requirements for essential services and safety critical systems 2.13.2 and/or Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.13 Programmable electronic systems - Additional requirements for essential services and safety critical systems 2.13.8.

2. 10. 7 Programmable electronic equipment is to be provided with self-monitoring capabilities such that hardware and functional failures will initiate an audible and visual alarm in accordance with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.3 Alarm systems, general requirements and, where applicable, Pt 6, Ch 1, 4.2 Alarm system for machinery. Hardware failure indications are to enable faults to be identifiable at least down to the level of the lowest replaceable unit and the self-monitoring capabilities are to ensure that diagnostic information is readily available.

2. 10. 8 Means are to be provided to recover or replace data required for safe and effective system operation lost as a result of component failure. The submission required by Pt 6, Ch 1, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.6 is to address reinstatement of system operation following data loss.

2. 10. 9 System configuration, programs and data are to be protected against loss or corruption in the event of failure of any power supply. For essential services and safety critical systems, *See* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.13 Programmable electronic systems - Additional requirements for essential services and safety critical systems 2.13.6.

2. 10. 10 Where it is necessary to store data required for system operation in volatile memory, a back-up power supply is to be provided that prevents data loss in the event of loss of the normal power supply. The submission required by Pt 6, Ch 1, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.6 is to include details of any routine maintenance necessary and the measures necessary to restore system operation in the event of data loss as a result of power supply failure.

2. 10. 11 Back-up power supplies required by Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.10 Programmable electronic systems - General requirements 2.10.10 are to be rated to supply the connected load for a defined period of time that allows sufficient time to restore the supply in the event of loss of the normal power supply as a result of failure of a main source of electrical power. This period is not to be less than 30 minutes.

2. 10. 12 Where regular battery replacement is required to maintain the availability of volatile memory back-up power supply required by Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.10 Programmable electronic systems - General requirements 2.10.10, these are to be included in the schedule of batteries required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.15 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 12.7 Recording of batteries for emergency and essential services, irrespective of battery type and size. Applicable entries in this schedule are to note that these batteries are not for safety critical systems or essential or emergency services.

2. 10. 13 Access to system configuration, programs and data is to be restricted by physical and/or logical means providing effective security against unauthorised alteration, both for local and remote access.

2. 10. 14 Where date and time information is required by the equipment, this is to be provided by means of a battery backed clock with restricted access for alteration. Date and time information is to be fully represented and utilised.

2. 10. 15 Displays and controls are to be protected against liquid ingress due to spillage.

2. 10. 16 Display units are to comply with the requirements of an acceptable National or International Standard, e.g. IEC 60950-1: *Information technology equipment – Safety - Part 1: General requirements*, in respect of emission of ionising radiation.

2. 10. 17 Where systems detect fault conditions, any affected mimic diagrams are to ensure that the status of unreliable and incorrect data is clearly identified.

2. 10. 18 Multi-function displays and controls are to be duplicated and interchangeable where used for the control or monitoring of more than one system, machinery item or item of equipment. At least one unit at the main control station is to be supplied from an independent uninterruptable power system (UPS).

2. 10. 19 The number of multi-function display and control units provided at the main control station and their power supply arrangements are to be sufficient to ensure continuing safe operation in the event of failure of any unit or any power supply.

2. 10. 20 Software lifecycle activities, e.g. design, development, supply and maintenance, are to be carried out in accordance with an acceptable quality management system which has lifecycle models suitable to the nature of the software project, considering its size, complexity, safety, risk and integrity. Project specific software quality plans are to be submitted. These are to demonstrate that the provisions of ISO/IEC 90003: Software engineering – *Guidelines for the application of ISO 9001:2008 to computer software*, or equivalent, are incorporated. The plans are to define responsibilities for the lifecycle activities, including verification, validation, software module testing and, integration with other components or systems and security policies to be applied.

2. 11 Data communication links

2. 11. 1 Where control, alarm or safety systems use shared data communication links to transfer data, the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.11 Data communication links 2.11.2 to Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.11 Data communication links 2.11.10 are to be complied with. The requirements apply to local area networks, fieldbuses and other types of data communication link which make use of a shared medium to transfer control, alarm or safety related data between distributed programmable electronic equipment or systems.

2. 11. 2 Data communication is to be automatically restored within 45 seconds in the event of a single component failure. Upon restoration, priority is to be given to updating safety critical data and control, alarm and safety related data for essential services. Components comprise all items

required to facilitate data communication, including cables, switches, repeaters, software components and power supplies.

2. 11. 3 Loss of a data communication link is not to result in the loss of ability to operate any essential service by alternative means, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.12 Additional requirements for wireless data communication links 2.12.2.

2. 11. 4 The properties of the data communication link, (e.g. bandwidth, access control method, etc.), are to ensure that all connected systems will operate in a safe, stable and repeatable manner under all operating conditions. The latency of control, alarm and safety related data is not to exceed two seconds.

2. 11. 5 Protocols are to ensure the integrity of control, alarm and safety related data, and provide timely recovery of corrupted or invalid data.

2. 11. 6 Means are to be provided to monitor performance and identify hardware and functional failures. An audible and visual alarm is to operate in accordance with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.3 Alarm systems, general requirements and, where applicable, Pt 6, Ch 1, 4.2 Alarm system for machinery in the event of a failure of an active or standby component.

2. 11. 7 System self-monitoring capabilities are to be arranged to initiate transition to a defined safe state for the complete installation in the event of data communication failure, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.5 Control systems, general requirements 2.5.3.

2. 11. 8 Means are to be provided to prevent unintended connection or disconnection of any equipment where this may affect the performance of any other systems in operation.

2. 11. 9 Data cables are to comply with the applicable requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 11 Electric cables, optical fibre cables and busbar trunking systems (busways). Other media will be subject to special consideration.

2. 11. 10 The installation is to provide adequate protection against mechanical damage and electromagnetic interference.

2. 11. 11 Components are to be located with appropriate segregation such that the risk of mechanical damage or electromagnetic interference resulting in the loss of both active and standby components is minimised. Duplicated data communication links are to be routed to give as much physical separation as is practical.

2. 12 Additional requirements for wireless data communication links

2. 12. 1 The requirements of this sub-Section are in addition to Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.11, Data communication links and apply to systems incorporating wireless data communication links.

2. 12. 2 Wireless data communication links are not to be used for safety critical systems or essential services that are required for the propulsion or safety of the ship, except as permitted by Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.12 Additional requirements for wireless data communication links 2.12.3.

2. 12. 3 For services not required to operate continuously, wireless data communication links may be considered where an alternative means of operation can be brought into action within an acceptable period of time.

2. 12. 4 Wireless data communication is to employ recognised international wireless communication system protocols that incorporate the following:

a. Message integrity: fault prevention, detection, diagnosis and correction, ensuring that the received message is not corrupted or altered when compared to the transmitted message.
b. Configuration and device authentication: is to permit connection only of devices that are included in the system design.
c. Message encryption: protection of the confidentiality and/or criticality of the data content.

d. Security management: protection of network assets and prevention of unauthorised access to network assets.

2. 12. 5 The wireless system is to comply with the radio frequency and power level requirements of the International Telecommunications Union and any requirements of the National Administration with which the ship is registered.

2. 12. 6 Compliance with different port state and local regulations pertaining to the use of radio-frequency transmission that would prohibit the operation of a wireless data communication link, due to frequency and power level restrictions, is not addressed by these requirements and is the responsibility of the Owner and Operator.

2. 13 Programmable electronic systems - Additional requirements for essential services and safety critical systems

2. 13. 1 The requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.13 Programmable electronic systems - Additional requirements for essential services and safety critical systems 2.13.2 to Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.13 Programmable electronic systems - Additional requirements for essential services and safety critical systems 2.13.10 are to be complied with where control, alarm, mointoring or safety systems for essential services, as defined by Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.6, Definitions, or safety critical systems, incorporate programmable electronic equipment.

a. Safety critical systems are those which provide functions intended to protect persons from physical hazards (e.g. fire, explosion, etc.), or to prevent mechanical damage which may result in the loss of an essential service (e.g. main engine low lubricating oil pressure shutdown).

b. Applications that are not essential services may also be considered to be safety critical (e.g. domestic boiler low water level shutdown).

2. 13. 2 Alternative means of safe and effective operation are to be provided for essential services and, wherever practicable, these are to be provided by a fully independent hard-wired back-up system. Where these alternative means are not independent of any programmable electronic equipment, the software is to satisfy the requirements of ACS's *Software Conformity Assessment System - Assessment Module GEN1*.

2. 13. 3 Items of programmable electronic equipment used to implement control, alarm or safety functions are to be Type Approved in accordance with ACS's *Type Approval System Test Specification Number 1* , Type approval to an alternative and relevant National or International Standard may be submitted for consideration.

2. 13. 4 The system is to be configured such that control, alarm and safety function groups are independent. A failure of the system is not to result in the loss of more than one of these function groups. Proposals for alternative arrangements providing an equivalent level of safety will be subject to special consideration.

2. 13. 5 For essential services, the system is to be arranged to operate automatically from an alternative power supply in the event of a failure of the normal supply.

2. 13. 6 Volatile memory is not to be used to store data required for:

- an essential service or safety critical functions; or
- ensuring safety or preventing damage, including during start-up or re-start.

Alternative proposals which demonstrate that an equivalent level of system integrity will be achieved may be submitted for consideration.

2. 13. 7 Failure of any power supply is to initiate an audible and visual alarm in accordance with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.3 Alarm systems, general requirements and, where applicable, Pt 6, Ch 1, 4.2 Alarm system for machinery.

2. 13. 8 Where it is intended that the programmable electronic system implements an emergency stop function or safety critical functions, the software is to satisfy the requirements of ACS's *Software Conformity Assessment System - Assessment Module GEN1*. Alternative proposals providing an equivalent level of system integrity will be subject to special consideration, e.g. fully independent hard-wired back-up system, redundancy with design diversity, etc.

2. 13. 9 Control, alarm and safety related information is to be displayed in a clear, unambiguous and timely manner, and, where applicable, is to be given visual prominence over other information on the display.

2. 13. 10 Means of access to safety critical functions are to be dedicated to the intended function and readily distinguishable.

2. 14 Programmable electronic systems – Additional requirements for integrated systems

2. 14. 1 The requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.14 Programmable electronic systems – Additional requirements for integrated systems 2.14.2 to Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.14 Programmable electronic systems – Additional requirements for integrated systems 2.14.7 apply to integrated systems providing control, alarm or safety functions in accordance with the Rules, including systems capable of independent operation interconnected to provide co-ordinated functions or common user interfaces. Examples include integrated machinery control, alarm and monitoring systems, power management systems and safety management systems providing a grouping of fire, passenger, crew or ship safety functions, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 17 Fire safety systems to Pt 6, Ch 2, 19 Ship safety systems.

2. 14. 2 System integration is to be managed by a single designated party, and is to be carried out in accordance with a defined procedure identifying the roles, responsibilities and requirements of all parties involved. This procedure is to be submitted for consideration where the integration involves control functions for essential services or safety functions including fire, passenger, crew, and ship safety.

2. 14. 3 The system requirements specification, *See* Pt 6, Ch 1, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.6, is to identify the allocation of functions between modules of the integrated system, and any common data communication protocols or interface standards required to support these functions.

2. 14. 4 Reversionary modes of operation are to be provided to ensure safe and graceful degradation in the event of one or more failures. In general, the integrated system is to be arranged such that the failure of one part will not affect the functionality of other parts, except those that require data from the failed part.

2. 14. 5 Where the integration involves control functions for essential services or safety functions, including fire, passenger, crew, and ship safety, a Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA) is to be carried out in accordance with IEC 60812*: Analysis techniques for system reliability – Procedure for failure mode and effects analysis (FMEA)*, or an equivalent and acceptable National or International Standard and the report and worksheets submitted for consideration. The FMEA is to demonstrate that the integrated system will 'fail-safe', *See* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.4 Safety systems, general requirements 2.4.5 and Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.5 Control systems, general requirements 2.5.3, and that essential services in operation will not be lost or degraded beyond acceptable performance criteria where specified by these Rules.

2. 14. 6 The quantity and quality of information presented to the operator are to be managed to assist situational awareness in all operating conditions. Excessive or ambiguous information that may adversely affect the operator's ability to reason or act correctly is to be avoided, but information needed for corrective or emergency actions is not to be suppressed or obscured in satisfying this requirement.

2. 14. 7 Where information is required by the Rules or by National Administration requirements to be continuously displayed, the system configuration is to be such that the information may be viewed without manual intervention, e.g. the selection of a particular screen page or mode of operation. *See also* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.10 Programmable electronic systems - General requirements 2.10.16.

PART

6

CHAPTER 1 **Control Engineering Systems**

SECTION 3 **Ergonomics of control stations**

3. 1 Objectives

3. 1. 1 In order to take account of operator tasks at control stations, enhance usability and reduce human error, the layout arrangements are to comply with the requirements set out in Pt 6, Ch 1, 3.2 Control station layout.

3. 1. 2 In order to establish a working environment that has minimum distractions, is sufficiently comfortable, helps maintain vigilance and maximises communication amongst operators at main control stations, the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, 3.3, Physical environment are to be complied with.

3. 1. 3 The requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, 3.4 Operator interface apply to operator interfaces for essential engineering systems located either locally, remotely or within the main control room. The requirements are intended to enhance the usability of systems and equipment, reduce human error, enhance situational awareness and support safe and effective monitoring and control under normal and abnormal modes of operation.

3. 2 Control station layout

3. 2. 1 Control stations are to provide sufficient space and access for the intended number of operators in the expected operating conditions.

3. 2. 2 Local control stations are to be positioned to minimise the risk of harm to the operator.

3. 2. 3 Controls, displays and indicators are to be both logically and physically grouped, according to their function.

3. 2. 4 Where a function may be accessed from more than one interface, the arrangement of displays and controls is to be consistent.

3. 2. 5 Frequently used controls and displays are to be within easy reach and visible to the operator from the normal working position.

3. 2. 6 Controls and displays used infrequently and which may be used in an emergency are to be clearly identifiable, clearly visible, easily accessible and positioned to allow safe operability.

3. 2. 7 The relationship of a control with a display is to be immediately apparent.

3. 2. 8 The relationship of controls and displays with the equipment under control is to be immediately apparent.

3. 2. 9 There is to be adequate spacing between controls and between controls and obstructions.

3. 2. 10 Controls and their associated displays are to be located such that the information on the displays can be easily read during the operation of the controls.

3. 2. 11 Indicators related to controls are to be visible during their operation.

3. 2. 12 Instruments are to face the operator's intended working position.

3. 3 Physical environment

3. 3. 1 Control stations are to be positioned as far, as practicable, away from, or insulated against, sources of structurally transmitted vibration and noise, such as ventilation fans, engine intake fans and other noise sources.

3. 3. 2 In general, noise levels are to comply with IMO *Resolution MSC.337(91) – Adoption of the Code on Noise Levels on Board Ships – (Adopted on 30 November 2012)The Annex below is consolidated into Resolution MSC.337(91)* , and take into account IMO Res. A.343(IX), *Recommendation on Methods of Measuring Noise Levels at Listening Posts.*

3. 3. 3 Where provided, the heating, ventilation and air conditioning system is to be capable of maintaining the temperature between 18°C and 27°C.

3. 3. 4 The flow of air from heating or air conditioning systems is not to be guided directly to the operator, or means are to be provided to adjust the direction of airflow from those systems.

3. 3. 5 Lighting is to be located to avoid glare from working and display surfaces, and is to be flicker-free. Surfaces are to have a non-reflective or matt finish.

3. 3. 6 Placement of controls, displays and indicators are to consider the position of light sources relative to the operator, with respect to reflections and evenness of lighting.

3. 3. 7 Where a transparent cover is fitted over a control, display or indicator, it is to be designed to minimise reflections.

3. 3. 8 The level of lighting is to be sufficient to enable operation of user interfaces. Lighting levels in accordance with Table 1. 3. 1: Specific lighting levels will be considered to satisfy this requirement.

Table 1. 3. 1: Specific lighting levels

Work area	Ideal Lux	Minimum Lux
General Lighting	540	220
Control room consoles (front)	540	320
Control room consoles (rear)	325	110
Local operating panels	540	320
Remote operating panels	540	320

3. 3. 9 Seating provided for use at control stations is to allow for varying height and/or reach needs of operators. Seating arrangements are to minimise the need for twisting and/or turning motions by the operator.

3. 3. 10 Physical hazards, e.g. sharp edges, protuberances and trip hazards, are to be avoided.

3. 3. 11 Sufficient handrails or equivalent are to be fitted to enable operators to move and stand safely in rough seas.

3. 3. 12 Work surfaces are to be capable of withstanding oils and solvents common to ships and are to be easy to clean.

3. 4 Operator interface

3. 4. 1 The design of the operator interface is to permit the satisfactory monitoring, control and supervision of the machinery and equipment.

3. 4. 2 Information is to be presented to the operator consistently, both within and between different interfaces, *See* Pt 6, Ch 1, 3.6 Displays 3.6.2 to Pt 6, Ch 1, 3.6 Displays 3.6.4.

3. 4. 3 The response of the machinery and equipment to operator input is to be consistent between interfaces for the same function.

3. 4. 4 isual, audible or mechanical feedback is to be provided to indicate that operator input has been acknowledged.

3. 4. 5 Functions requested by the operator are to be confirmed by the displays on completion.

3. 4. 6 Indications and documentation are to be in English or the language of the crew.

3. 5 Controls

3. 5. 1 Operator inputs are to be checked for errors, for example, out of range data or incorrect actions, and the operator is to be alerted when they occur.

3. 5. 2 Means are to be provided to correct wrong inputs or commands rapidly and safely.

3. 5. 3 Assistance is to be provided to the operator to recover from operator errors, for example, through advisory screens where the automation system has this facility.

3. 5. 4 Operator confirmation is to be provided for any control action that could affect the safety of the ship, i.e. they should not rely on single keystrokes.

3. 5. 5 The purpose of each control is to be clearly indicated. Where standard symbols have been internationally adopted, they should be used.

3. 5. 6 The settings of mechanical controls are to be immediately evident.

3. 5. 7 The means of operation of mechanical controls is to be consistent with expectations.

3. 5. 8 Controls or combined controls and indicators are to be distinguishable from indicators.

3. 5. 9 Where control is provided by touch screens, the soft keys are to be of a sufficient size for operation in areas where vibration occurs or gloves are likely to be worn.

3. 5. 10 Where virtual keypads/keyboards or dialogue boxes are used on touch screens, they are not to obscure status or alarm areas of the display.

3. 5. 11 Keyboards are to be divided logically into functional areas. Alphanumeric, paging and specific system keys are to be grouped separately.

3. 5. 12 Controls that affect the safe operation of the ship should be arranged so as to minimise the possibility of inadvertent operation.

3. 6 Displays

3. 6. 1 The displays and indicators are to present the operator with clear, timely and relevant information.

3. 6. 2 Graphical symbols and colour coding are to be consistent. The graphical symbols of display functions are to be in accordance with a recognised International Standard, for example, ISO 14617 (all parts): *Graphical symbols for diagrams*. Colour coding of functions and signals is to be in accordance with a recognised International Standard, for example, ISO 2412: *Shipbuilding – Colours of indicator lights*.

3. 6. 3 The symbols used in mimic diagrams for the services listed in Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.6 Definitions 1.6.1, are to be consistent across all displays.

3. 6. 4 The display of information is to be consistent with respect to screen layout and arrangement of information.

3. 6. 5 Flashing of information is to be reserved for unacknowledged alerts or transient states, for example, valve moving.

3. 6. 6 The functions supported by a display are to be clearly indicated. For displays that can support multiple functions, it is to be possible to select the display associated with the primary function or an overview by a simple operator action.

3. 6. 7 The operating mode of the machinery and equipment is to be clearly indicated.

3. 6. 8 In general, indications provided by instrumentation which are displayed digitally are not to change more frequently than twice per second.

3. 6. 9 To indicate an increasing value in a single direction, on a fixed circular scale, the pointer is to move clockwise. If the pointer is fixed, the scale is to move anticlockwise to indicate an increase in value.

3. 6. 10 To indicate an increasing value on a horizontal linear scale, the pointer is to move from left to right. On a vertical linear scale, the pointer is to move upwards to indicate an increase in value.

3. 6. 11 The pointer is not to obscure the numbers on the scale.

3. 6. 12 Alphanumeric data, text, symbols and other graphical information is to be readable from relevant operator positions under lighting conditions, as specified in Pt 6, Ch 1, 3.3 Physical environment 3.3.8. Character height in millimetres is to be not less than three and a half times the reading distance in metres and character width is to be 0.7 times the character height.

3. 6. 13 A simple sans-serif character font is to be used in displays. In descriptive text, lower case letters are to be used, where appropriate, as opposed to capitals, to improve readability.

3. 6. 14 Where information related to the safe operation of machinery and equipment is provided, it is to be continuously available to the operator.

3. 6. 15 Failures are to be indicated in a clear and unambiguous manner. Sufficient information is to be provided for the operator to identify the cause of the failure.

PART

6

CHAPTER 1 **Control Engineering Systems**

SECTION 4 **Unattended machinery space(s) - UMS notation**

4. 1 General

4. 1. 1 Where it is proposed to operate the following machinery in an unattended space, no matter what period is envisaged, the controls, alarms and safeguards required by Pt 5 Main and Auxiliary Machinery, together with those given in Pt 6, Ch 1, 4.2 Alarm system for machinery are to be provided:

a. Air compressors.
b. Controllable pitch propellers and transverse thrust units.
c. Electric generating plant.
d. Inert gas generators.
e. Incinerators.
f. Main propelling machinery including essential auxiliaries.
g. Fuel oil transfer and storage systems (purifiers and oil heaters).
h. Steam raising plant (boilers and their ancillary equipment).
i. Thermal fluid heaters.
j. Waste heat boilers.

4. 2 Alarm system for machinery

4. 2. 1 An alarm system which will provide warning of faults in the machinery is to be installed. The system is to satisfy the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.3 Alarm systems, general requirements.

4. 2. 2 Audible and visual indication of machinery alarms is to be relayed to the engineers' accommodation so that engineering personnel are made aware that a fault has occurred.

4. 2. 3 The engineers' alarm required by Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.2 Control stations for machinery 2.2.4 is to be activated automatically in the event that a machinery alarm or warning has not been acknowledged in the space within a predetermined time.

4. 2. 4 Audible and visual indication of machinery alarms is to be relayed to the navigating bridge control station in such a way that the navigating officer of the watch is made aware when:

a. a machinery fault has occurred;
b. the machinery fault is being attended to; and
c. the machinery fault has been rectified.

Alternative means of communication between the bridge area, accommodation for engineering personnel and machinery spaces will be considered.

4. 2. 5 Group alarms may be arranged on the bridge to indicate machinery faults, but alarms associated with faults requiring speed or power reduction or the automatic shutdown of propulsion machinery are to be identified by separate group alarms or by individual alarms.

4. 3 Bridge control for main propulsion machinery

4. 3. 1 A bridge control system for the main propulsion machinery is to be fitted. The system is to satisfy the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.6, Bridge control for main propulsion machinery.

4. 4 Control stations for machinery

4. 4. 1 A control station(s) is to be provided in the space and on the bridge which satisfies the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.2, Control stations for machinery.

4. 5 Fire detection alarm system

4. 5. 1 An automatic fire detection system is to be fitted in the space together with an audible and visual alarm system. The system is to satisfy the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.8, Fire detection and fire alarm systems .

4. 6 Fixed water-based local application fire-fighting systems

4. 6. 1 Where fixed water-based local application fire-fighting systems are installed, they are to satisfy the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.9, Fixed water-based local application fire-fighting systems.

4. 6. 2 Fixed water-based local application fire-fighting systems are to be capable of automatic release in accordance with *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea*, *Chapter II-2 - Construction - Fire protection, fire detection and fire extinction*, *Part C - Suppression of fire*,*Regulation 10 - Fire fighting*.

4. 7 Bilge level detection

4. 7. 1 An alarm system is to be provided to warn when liquid in machinery space bilges has reached a predetermined level, and is to comply with Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.3 Alarm systems, general requirements. This level is to be sufficiently low to prevent liquid from overflowing from the bilges onto the tank top. The number and location of detectors are to be such that accumulation of liquids will be detected at all angles of heel and trim. In ships above 2000 gross tons there are to be two independent systems of bilge level detection in the machinery space, arranged such that each branch bilge as required by Pt 5, Ch 13 Ship Piping Systems is provided with a level detector.

4. 7. 2 Local or remote controls of any valve within the space serving a sea inlet, a discharge below the waterline, a bilge injection or a direct bilge system, should be so sited as to be readily accessible and to allow adequate time for operation in case of influx of water to the space, having regard to the time which could be taken to reach and operate such controls; *See also* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.7, Valve control systems and Pt 5, Ch 13, 2 Construction and installation and Pt 5, Ch 13, 4 Bilge drainage of machinery spaces.

4. 7. 3 Where the bilge pumps are arranged to start automatically, means are to be provided to indicate if the influx of liquids is greater than the pump capacity or, if the pump is operating more frequently than would be expected. Special attention should be given to oil pollution prevention requirements.

4. 8 Supply of electric power, general

4. 8. 1 For ships operating with one generator set in service, arrangements are to be such that a standby generator will automatically start and connect to the switchboard in as short a time as practicable, but in any case within 45 seconds, on loss of the service generator. For ships operating with two or more generator sets in service, arrangements are to be such that on loss of one generator the remaining one(s) are to be adequate for continuity of essential services. For the detailed

requirements of these arrangements, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 2.2, Number and rating of generators and converting equipment.

PART

6

CHAPTER 1 **Control Engineering Systems**

SECTION 5 **Machinery operated from a centralised control station - CCS notation**

5. 1 General requirements

5. 1. 1 Where it is proposed to operate the machinery as listed in Pt 6, Ch 1, 4.1 General 4.1.1 with the continuous supervision from a centralised control station, the control station is to be such that the machinery operation will be as effective as it would be under direct supervision.

5. 1. 2 The arrangements are to be such that corrective actions can be taken at the control station in the event of machinery faults, e.g. stopping of machinery, starting of standby machinery, adjustment of operating parameters, etc. These actions may be effected by either remote manual or automatic control.

5. 1. 3 The controls, alarms and safeguards required by Pt 5 Main and Auxiliary Machinery and by Pt 6, Ch 1, 4.7 Bilge level detection together with a fire detection system satisfying the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.8, Fire detection and fire alarm systems are to be provided. However, the automatic operation of machinery and certain safeguards required by Pt 6, Ch 1, 3 Ergonomics of control stations may be omitted.

5. 1. 4 Additional requirements for controls, alarms and safeguards are given in Pt 6, Ch 1, 5.2, Centralised control station for machinery.

5. 2 Centralised control station for machinery

5. 2. 1 A centralised control station which satisfies the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, 5.2 Centralised control station for machinery 5.2.2to Pt 6, Ch 1, 5.2 Centralised control station for machinery 5.2.7 is to be provided at a suitable location.

5. 2. 2 A system of alarm displays and controls is to be provided which readily ensures identification of faults in the machinery and satisfactory supervision of related equipment. The alarm and control systems are to satisfy the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.3 Alarm systems, general requirements and Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.5, Control systems, general requirements, as applicable.

5. 2. 3 Indication of all essential parameters necessary for the safe and effective operation of the machinery is to be provided, e.g. temperatures, pressures, tank levels, speeds, powers, etc.

5. 2. 4 Indication of the operational status of running and standby machinery is to be provided.

5. 2. 5 At the centralised control station, means of communication with the bridge area, the accommodation for engineering personnel and, if necessary, the machinery space are to be provided.

5. 2. 6 In addition to the communication required by Pt 6, Ch 1, 5.2 Centralised control station for machinery 5.2.5, a second means of communication is to be provided between the bridge and the

centralised control station. One of these means is to be independent of the main electrical power supply, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 1 General Requirements for the Design and Construction of Machinery.

5. 2. 7 Arrangements are to be provided in the centralised control station so that the normal supply of electrical power may be restored in the event of failure.

PART

6

CHAPTER **1** **Control Engineering Systems**

SECTION **6** **Integrated computer control - ICC notation**

6. 1 General

6. 1. 1 Integrated Computer Control class notation **ICC** may be assigned where an integrated computer system in compliance with Pt 6, Ch 1, 6.1 General provides fault tolerant control and monitoring functions for one or more of the following services:

a. Propulsion;
b. Electrical generation and distribution (power management systems);
c. Cargo and ballast.

6. 1. 2 A Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA) is to be carried out in accordance with IEC 60812: *Analysis techniques for system reliability – Procedure for failure mode and effects analysis (FMEA)* and the report and worksheets submitted for consideration. *See also* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.14 Programmable electronic systems – Additional requirements for integrated systems 2.14.5. The FMEA is to demonstrate that control and monitoring functions required by Pt 6, Ch 1, 6.2, General requirements will remain available at each operator station in the event of a single fault of the integrated computer control system, including input error, without adverse effect on the service(s).

6. 1. 3 Special consideration will be given to integrated computer control systems for other applications, except where these are addressed by other control engineering class notations. In particular, *See* Pt 7, Ch 9 Navigational Arrangements and Integrated Bridge Systems for requirements of the optional class notation **IBS**– Integrated Bridge Navigation Systems.

6. 2 General requirements

6. 2. 1 The integrated computer control system is to comply with the programmable electronic system requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.10, Programmable electronic systems - General requirements to Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.13, Programmable electronic systems - Additional requirements for essential services and safety critical systems and the control and monitoring requirements of the Rules applicable to particular equipment, machinery or systems.

6. 2. 2 Alarm displays are to be provided, in compliance with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.3 Alarm systems, general requirements, which ensure ready identification of faults in the equipment under control.

6. 2. 3 Alarm and indication functions required by Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.4, Safety systems, general requirements are to be provided by the integrated computer control system in response to the activation of any safety function for associated machinery. Systems providing the safety functions are in general to be independent of the integrated computer system. *See also* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.13 Programmable electronic systems - Additional requirements for essential services and safety critical systems 2.13.7.

6. 2. 4 Controls are to be provided, in compliance with Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.5, Control systems, general requirements, to ensure the safe and effective operation of equipment and response to faults, e.g.

stopping, starting, adjustment of parameters, etc. Indication of operational status and other such parameters necessary to satisfy this requirement, is to be provided for all equipment under control by the integrated computer control system.

6. 3 Operator stations

6. 3. 1 Each operator station allowing control of equipment is to be provided with a minimum of two multi-function display and control units. The number of units is to be sufficient to allow simultaneous access to control and monitoring functions required by Pt 6, Ch 1, 6.2 General requirements 6.2.2 to Pt 6, Ch 1, 6.2 General requirements 6.2.4. *See also* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.10 Programmable electronic systems - General requirements 2.10.10 to Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.10 Programmable electronic systems - General requirements 2.10.16.

6. 3. 2 Each multi-function display and control unit is to include a monitor, keyboard and tracker ball. Alternative arrangements will be considered where these enable each unit to be configured by the user to provide required control or monitoring functions.

6. 3. 3 Where the integrated computer control system is arranged such that control and monitoring functions may be accessed at more than one operator station, the selected mode of operation of each station (e.g. in control, standby, etc.) is to be clearly indicated. *See also* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.2, Control stations for machinery.

6. 3. 4 Means of communication are to be provided between operator stations and any other stations from which the equipment may be controlled. The arrangements are to be permanently installed and are to remain operational in the event of failure of the main electrical power supply to the integrated control system.

PART

6

CHAPTER 1 **Control Engineering Systems**

SECTION 7 **Trialsr**

7. 1 General

7. 1. 1 Before a new installation (or any alteration or addition to an existing installation) is put into service, trials are to be carried out. These trials are in addition to any acceptance tests which may have been carried out at the manufacturers' works and are to be based on the approved test schedules list as required by Pt 6, Ch 1, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.2. In the case of new construction it will be expected that most of these trials will be carried out before the official sea trials of the ship. During sea trials, system dynamic tests are to be carried out to demonstrate overall satisfactory performance of the control engineering installation.

7. 1. 2 Means are to be provided to facilitate testing during normal machinery operation, e.g. by the provision of three-way test valves or equivalent.

7. 1. 3 Acceptance tests and trials for programmable electronic systems are to include verification of software lifecycle activities appropriate to the stage in the system's lifecycle at the time of system examination. The documentation required by Pt 6, Ch 1, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.6 is to be in accordance with the current configuration and the testing and trials are to address software modifications and configuration management procedures to the Surveyor’s satisfaction.

7. 1. 4 Wireless data communication links are to be operational and tested during trials. Tests are to demonstrate that radio-frequency transmission does not interfere with the operation of equipment required by this Chapter or other Sections of the Rules and does not itself malfunction as a result of electromagnetic interference during expected operating conditions. Reversionary modes are to be activated to demonstrate continued safe and effective operation in the event of fault conditions.

7. 1. 5 Before installation of programmable electronic systems programs, data and the physical medium used for installation on the vessel are to be scanned for viruses and malicious software. Results of the scan are to be documented, kept with the software registry and be available to the Surveyor on request.

7. 2 Unattended machinery space operation - UMS notation

7. 2. 1 In addition to the tests required by Pt 6, Ch 1, 7.1, General the suitability of the installation for operation in the unattended mode is to be demonstrated during sea trials over a four to six hour period observing the following:

a. Occurring alarms and the frequency of operation both during steady steaming and under manoeuvring conditions using bridge control.

b. Any intervention by personnel in the operation of the machinery.

7. 3 Operation from a centralised control station - CCS notation

7. 3. 1 In addition to the tests required by Pt 6, Ch 1, 7.1, General, the suitability of the installation for operation from the centralised control station is to be demonstrated during sea trials.

7. 4 Record of trials

7. 4. 1 Two copies of the alarm and control equipment test schedules signed by the Surveyor and Builder are to be provided on completion of the survey. One copy is to be placed on board the vessel and the other submitted to ACS.

PART

6

CHAPTER 2 Electrical Engineering

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General requirements**		**2712**
	1. 1	General	2712
	1. 2	Documentation required for design review	2712
	1. 3	Documentation required for supporting evidence	2717
	1. 4	Surveys	2719
	1. 5	Additions or alterations	2720
	1. 6	Definitions	2720
	1. 7	Design and construction	2723
	1. 8	Quality of power supplies	2724
	1. 9	Ambient reference and operating conditions	2725
	1. 10	Inclination of ship	2726
	1. 11	Location and construction	2726
	1. 12	Earthing of non-current carrying parts	2728
	1. 13	Bonding for the control of static electricity	2729
	1. 14	Alarms	2729
	1. 15	Labels, signs and notices	2730
	1. 16	Operation under fire conditions	2730
	1. 17	Operation under flooding conditions	2731
	1. 18	Protection of electrical equipment against the effects of lightning strikes	2732
	1. 19	Programmable electronic systems	2732
SECTION 2	**Main source of electrical power**		**2733**
	2. 1	General	2733
	2. 2	Number and rating of generators and converting equipment	2733
	2. 3	Starting arrangements	2734
	2. 4	Prime mover governors	2734

2. 5 Main propulsion driven generators not forming part of the main source of electrical power 2734

SECTION 3 Emergency source of electrical power 2735

3. 1 General 2735

3. 2 Emergency source of electrical power in all ship types 2735

3. 3 Emergency source of electrical power in passenger ships 2735

3. 4 Emergency source of electrical power in cargo ships 2736

3. 5 Starting arrangements 2736

3. 6 Prime mover governor 2736

3. 7 Sources of Energy for Radio installation 2736

SECTION 4 External source of electrical power 2737

4. 1 Temporary external supply 2737

4. 2 Permanent external supply 2737

SECTION 5 Supply and distribution 2738

5. 1 Systems of supply and distribution 2738

5. 2 Essential services 2739

5. 3 Isolation and switching 2739

5. 4 Insulated distribution systems 2740

5. 5 Earthed distribution systems 2741

5. 6 Diversity factor 2741

5. 7 Lighting circuits 2741

5. 8 Motor circuits 2742

5. 9 Motor control 2742

5. 10 Harmonic distortion measurement 2742

5. 11 Harmonic filtering 2743

SECTION 6 System design – Protection 2744

6. 1 General 2744

6. 2 Protection against short-circuit 2745

6. 3 Protection against overload 2745

6. 4 Protection against earth faults 2746

6. 5 Circuit-breakers 2746

6. 6 Fuses 2746

6. 7 Circuit-breakers requiring back-up by fuse or other device 2747

6. 8 Protection of generators 2747

6. 9 Load management 2748

6. 10 Feeder circuits 2748

6. 11 Motor circuits 2748
6. 12 Protection of transformers 2748
6. 13 Harmonic filters 2749
SECTION 7 Switchgear and controlgear assemblies 2750
7. 1 General requirements 2750
7. 2 Busbars 2750
7. 3 Circuit-breakers 2750
7. 4 Contactors 2751
7. 5 Creepage and clearance distances 2751
7. 6 Degree of protection 2753
7. 7 Distribution boards 2753
7. 8 Earthing of high-voltage switchboards 2754
7. 9 Fuses 2754
7. 10 Handrails or handles 2754
7. 11 Instruments for alternating current generators 2754
7. 12 Instrument scales 2755
7. 13 Labels 2755
7. 14 Protection 2755
7. 15 Wiring 2755
7. 16 Position of switchboards 2755
7. 17 Switchboard auxiliary power supplies 2756
7. 18 Testing 2756
7. 19 Disconnectors and switch-disconnectors 2756
SECTION 8 Protection from electric arc hazards within electrical equipment 2757
8. 1 General 2757
8. 2 Hazard identification and assessment 2757
8. 3 Calculations to be submitted 2757
8. 4 Testing and trials 2758
SECTION 9 Rotating machines 2759
9. 1 General requirements 2759
9. 2 Rating 2762
9. 3 Temperature rise 2762
9. 4 Generator control 2762
9. 5 Overloads 2764
9. 6 Machine enclosure 2765
9. 7 Direct current machines 2765

9. 8 Survey and testing 2765
SECTION 10 Converter equipment 2767
10. 1 Transformers 2767
10. 2 Semiconductor converters 2768
10. 3 Uninterruptible power systems 2769
SECTION 11 Electric cables, optical fibre cables and busbar trunking systems (busways) 2771
11. 1 General 2771
11. 2 Testing 2772
11. 3 Voltage rating 2772
11. 4 Operating temperature 2773
11. 5 Construction 2773
11. 6 Conductor size 2774
11. 7 Correction factors for cable current rating 2777
11. 8 Installation of electric and optical fibre cables 2778
11. 9 Mechanical protection of cables 2780
11. 10 Cable support systems 2780
11. 11 Penetration of bulkheads and decks by cables 2781
11. 12 Installation of electric and optical fibre cables in protective casings 2782
11. 13 Non-metallic cable support systems, protective casings and fixings 2782
11. 14 Single-core electric cables for alternating current 2783
11. 15 Electric cable ends 2783
11. 16 Joints and branch circuits in cable systems 2784
11. 17 Busbar trunking systems (bustrunks) 2784
SECTION 12 Batteries 2785
12. 1 General 2785
12. 2 Design and construction 2786
12. 3 Location 2788
12. 4 Installation 2789
12. 5 Thermal management and ventilation 2790
12. 6 Charging facilities 2791
12. 7 Recording of batteries for emergency and essential services 2792
SECTION 13 Equipment - Heating, lighting and accessories 2793
13. 1 Heating and cooking equipment 2793
13. 2 Lighting - General 2793

13. 3 Incandescent lighting 2793
13. 4 Fluorescent lighting 2794
13. 5 Discharge lighting 2794
13. 6 Socket outlets and plugs 2794
13. 7 Enclosures 2794
SECTION 14 Electrical equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres or in the presence of combustible dusts 2795
14. 1 General 2795
14. 2 Hazardous areas 2796
14. 3 Selection of equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres 2798
14. 4 Selection of equipment for use in the presence of combustible dusts 2799
14. 5 Installation of electrical equipment 2801
14. 6 Semi-enclosed spaces 2801
14. 7 Ventilation 2801
14. 8 Pressurisation 2801
14. 9 Cable and cable installation 2802
14. 10 Requirements for tankers intended for the carriage in bulk 2803
14. 11 Requirements for ships for the carriage of liquefied gases in bulk 2803
14. 12 Requirements for ships intended for the carriage of other flammable liquid cargoes in bulk 2803
14. 13 Special requirements for ships with spaces for carrying vehicles with fuel in their tanks, for their own propulsion 2803
14. 14 Special requirements for ships intended for the carriage of dangerous goods and materials hazardous only in bulk 2804
14. 15 Requirements for ships with spaces for storing paint 2805
SECTION 15 Navigation and manoeuvring systems 2806
15. 1 Steering gear 2806
15. 2 Thruster systems for steering 2806
15. 3 Thruster systems for dynamic positioning 2806
15. 4 Thruster systems for manoeuvring 2806
15. 5 Transverse thrust units 2807
15. 6 Navigation lights 2807
15. 7 Navigational aids 2808
SECTION 16 Electric propulsion 2809
16. 1 General 2809
16. 2 System design and arrangement 2809

16. 3 Power requirements 2809
16. 4 Propulsion control 2810
16. 5 Harmonic filtering for propulsion 2811
16. 6 Protection of propulsion system 2811
16. 7 Instruments 2812
SECTION 17 Fire safety systems 2813
17. 1 Fire detection and fire alarm systems 2813
17. 2 Automatic Sprinkler, fire detection and fire alarm systems 2813
17. 3 Fixed water-based local application fire-fighting systems 2813
17. 4 Fire pumps 2815
17. 5 Fixed gas fire-extinguishing systems 2815
17. 6 Fire safety stops 2816
17. 7 Fire doors 2816
17. 8 Fire dampers 2816
17. 9 Safety centre on passenger ships 2817
17. 10 Electrically powered air compressors for breathing air cylinders 2817
SECTION 18 Crew and passenger emergency safety systems 2818
18. 1 Emergency lighting 2818
18. 2 General emergency alarm system 2818
18. 3 Public address system 2819
18. 4 Escape route or low location lighting (LLL) 2820
SECTION 19 Ship safety systems 2821
19. 1 Watertight doors 2821
19. 2 Stern and side shell doors and bow and inner doors 2822
19. 3 Subdivision doors on vehicle decks 2824
19. 4 Bilge pumps 2824
SECTION 20 Lightning conductors 2825
20. 1 General 2825
SECTION 21 Testing and trials 2826
21. 1 Testing 2826
21. 2 Trials 2827
21. 3 High voltage cables 2829
21. 4 On-line partial discharge testing of high voltage rotating machines for essential services 2829
21. 5 Hazardous areas 2830
21. 6 Optical Fibre Communications Systems 2830

SECTION 22 Spare gear 2831
22. 1 General 2831
SECTION 23 Ergonomic Lighting Design – ELD optional notation 2832
23. 1 Objectives 2832
23. 2 Positioning and installation 2832
23. 3 Luminance distribution 2832
23. 4 Glare 2833
23. 5 Location of lighting controls and outlets 2833
23. 6 Night vision 2833
SECTION 24 Hybrid electrical power systems 2835
24. 1 Scope 2835
24. 2 Characters of classification and class notations (machinery special features) 2835
24. 3 Definitions 2836
24. 4 Hybrid electrical power system performance - System functional requirements 2842
24. 5 Hybrid electrical power system performance - System performance targets 2843
24. 6 Hybrid electrical power system performance - Dependability principles 2843
24. 7 Hybrid electrical power system performance - Main source of electrical power 2844
24. 8 Hybrid electrical power system performance - Emergency source of electrical power 2844
24. 9 Hybrid electrical power system performance - External source of electrical power 2845
24. 10 Hybrid electrical power system performance - Electrical power supply to ship propulsion and ship positioning systems 2845
24. 11 Hybrid electrical power system components - Source of electrical power 2846
24. 12 Hybrid electrical power system components - Store of electrical energy 2847
24. 13 Hybrid electrical power system components - Consumer of electrical power 2848
24. 14 Hybrid electrical power system components - Combined sources of electrical power, stores of electrical energy and consumers of electrical power 2849
24. 15 Hybrid electrical power system components - Distribution system 2849
24. 16 Hybrid electrical power system components - Energy management 2851

24. 17 Transversal requirements 2853
24. 18 Power system development and integration - General 2854
24. 19 Power system development and integration - System operational concept 2855
24. 20 Power system development and integration - Operating modes 2855
24. 21 Power system development and integration - Consumer categorisation 2855
24. 22 Power system development and integration - System components 2856
24. 23 Power system development and integration - Energy flows 2856
24. 24 Power system development and integration - Power system analysis 2856
24. 25 Power system development and integration - Safety functions 2857
24. 26 Power system development and integration - Risk assessment 2858
24. 27 Power system development and integration - System Failure Modes and Effects Analysis (FMEA) 2858
24. 28 Power system development and integration - Operating instructions 2860
24. 29 Power system development and integration - Operator training 2860
24. 30 Power system development and integration - Through-life accountability 2860
24. 31 Verification requirements 2861
24. 32 Testing and trials 2861

PART

6

CHAPTER 2 Electrical Engineering

LIST OF TABLES

Table 2. 1. 1: Inclination of ship 2726
Table 2. 1. 2: Electric system: Alarms and safeguards 2730
Table 2. 1. 3: Character height and viewing distance 2730
Table 2. 7. 1: Minimum clearance distances 2752
Table 2. 7. 2: Minimum creepage distances 2753
Table 2. 9. 1: Limits of temperature rise of machines cooled by air 2763
Table 2. 11. 1: Electric cables 2772
Table 2. 11. 2: Maximum rated conductor temperature 2773
Table 2. 11. 3: Electric cable current ratings, normal operation, based on ambient 45°C 2775
Table 2. 11. 4: Electric cable current ratings, r.m.s. short-circuit current 2776
Table 2. 11. 5: Correction factors 2777
Table 2. 11. 6: Minimum internal radii of bends in cables for fixed wiring 2778
Table 2. 11. 7: Maximum spacing for supports or fixings for securing cables 2781
Table 2. 12. 1: Lithium battery system: alarms and safeguards 2786
Table 2. 13. 1: Lamps and lampholders 2793
Table 2. 14. 1: Zone classification for types of protection associated with optical fibre transmission systems 2799
Table 2. 16. 1: Electric propulsion equipment: Alarms and safeguards 2812
Table 2. 21. 1: Test voltage 2826
Table 2. 21. 2: Test voltage and minimum insulation 2827
Table 2. 21. 3: Test requirements on lithium battery systems 2827

PART

6

CHAPTER 2 Electrical Engineering

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 2. 24. 1: Source of electrical power 2837
Figure 2. 24. 2: Store of electrical energy 2838
Figure 2. 24. 3: Consumer of electrical power 2838
Figure 2. 24. 4: Combined source and consumer of electrical power 2839
Figure 2. 24. 5: Combined source of electrical power and store of electrical energy 2840
Figure 2. 24. 6: Combined store of electrical energy and consumer of electrical power 2840
Figure 2. 24. 7: Combined store of electrical energy and source and consumer of electrical power .. 2841
Figure 2. 24. 8: Role of system integration activities 2842

PART

6

CHAPTER 2 Electrical Engineering

SECTION 1 General requirements

1. 1 General

1. 1. 1 The requirements of this Chapter apply to passenger ships and cargo ships except where otherwise stated.

1. 1. 2 Whilst these requirements are considered to meet those of the *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea* , and applicable amendments, attention should also be given to any relevant Statutory Regulations of the National Administration of the country in which the ship is to be registered. Compliance with the Statutory Regulations of the National Administration may be accepted as meeting the requirements of the *International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea, 1974*, and applicable amendments.

1. 1. 3 Electrical services required to maintain the ship in a normal sea-going, operational and habitable condition are to be capable of being maintained without recourse to the emergency source of electrical power.

1. 1. 4 Electrical services essential for safety are to be maintained under declared normal and reasonably fore*See*able abnormal conditions.

1. 1. 5 The safety of passengers, crew and ship from electrical hazards is to be ensured.

1. 1. 6 Electrical installations on passenger ships are, in addition to the requirements of this Chapter, to comply with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 23 Additional Requirements for Passenger Ships,as applicable.

1. 1. 7 ACS will be prepared to give consideration to special cases or to arrangements which are equivalent to the Rules. For unconventional designs, *See also* Pt 7, Ch 14 Requirements for Machinery and Engineering Systems of Unconventional Design . Consideration will also be given to electrical arrangements of small ships and ships to be assigned class notation for restricted or special services.

1. 2 Documentation required for design review

1. 2. 1 The documentation described in Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.2 to Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.18.h is to be submitted for design review.

1. 2. 2 Single line diagrams of main, emergency and transitional power and lighting systems which are to include:

a. ratings of machines, transformers, batteries and semiconductor converters;
b. all feeders connected to the main and emergency switchboards;
c. section boards and distribution boards;
d. insulation type, size and current loadings of cables;
e. make, type and rating of circuit breakers and fuses;

f. details of harmonic filters (where fitted); and
g. details of power supply arrangements used for control systems.

1. 2. 3 A functional description of operation of the main, emergency and transitional electrical power systems, which is to include:
a. the operating philosophy of the main, emergency and transitional electrical power systems under normal and reasonably fore*See*able abnormal conditions;
b. degraded modes of operation;
c. load management and load sharing philosophy
d. protection philosophy.
e. harmonic filters where fitted, including harmonic analysis, the permitted modes of operation for maintaining the harmonic distortion within acceptable limits, and the effect on harmonic distortion of the failure of any combination of harmonic filters, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.8 Quality of power supplies 1.8.3 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.8 Quality of power supplies 1.8.4; and
f. guidance indicating the safe operating modes of the electrical power system under both normal and failure conditions of the harmonic filters where fitted.

1. 2. 4 An earthing philosophy document that defines the basic approach to be taken for earthing the electrical power systems and all electrical loads.

1. 2. 5 Simplified diagrams of generator circuits, inter-connector circuits and feeder circuits showing:
a. protective devices, e.g. short-circuit, overload, reverse power protection;
b. instrumentation and synchronising devices;
c. preference tripping;
d. remote stops and fire safety stops; and
e. earth fault indication/protection.

1. 2. 6 Calculations of short-circuit currents at main, emergency and transitional switchboards and section boards including those fed from transformers, details of circuitbreaker and fuse operating times and discrimination curves showing compliance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 6.1, General and Pt 6, Ch 2, 11.6 Conductor size 11.6.2.

1. 2. 7 Where required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 8.1 General 8.1.1, the hazards resulting from electric arcs within electrical equipment and their consequences for personnel are to be identified, and at least the following supporting evidence is to be submitted:
a. system design;
b. operating philosophies, e.g. manual or automatic control, local or remote operation;
c. general arrangement plans for switchboards, section boards and distribution boards, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.3 Documentation required for supporting evidence 1.3.4;
d. general arrangement plans for the space in which the electrical equipment to be assessed are located showing:
i. access to adjacent spaces;
ii. the location of the electrical equipment;
iii. ventilation arrangements for air conditioning and/or the extraction of smoke, gas and vapours resulting from electric arcs; and
iv. positions within the space in which the electrical equipment is located where personnel will be performing tasks, e.g. switching, equipment maintenance, instrument observation or cleaning, or where personnel could reasonably be expected to enter;
e. calculations in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 8.3 Calculations to be submitted;
f. system operating procedures; and
g. details of defined additional safety measures to be taken during activities.

1. 2. 8 For ships in which explosive gas atmospheres and/or combustible dusts occur, a general arrangement of the ship showing hazardous zones and spaces, as defined within Pt 6, Ch 2, 14 Electrical equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres or in the presence of combustible dusts,

is to be submitted. Where the explosive gas or combustible dust is not associated with the ship's cargo, arrangement drawings for the hazardous locations only may be submitted in place of the complete ship general arrangement.

1. 2. 9 A schedule of electrical equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres or in the presence of combustible dusts giving details, as appropriate, of:

a. type of equipment;
b. type of protection, e.g. Ex `d';
c. apparatus group, e.g. IIB;
d. temperature class, e.g. T3;
e. enclosure ingress protection, e.g. IP55;
f. certifying authority;
g. certificate number;
h. location of equipment.

Details may be included on arrangement drawings for the hazardous locations, in place of a separate schedule. Where uncertified equipment is permitted by Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.3, Selection of equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres or Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.4, Selection of equipment for use in the presence of combustible dusts or the Rules relevant to the specific type of ship, details of other documentation confirming Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.9.b to Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.9.d may be submitted in place of those listed under Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.9.f and Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.9.g.

1. 2. 10 For ships with electrical propulsion systems, a functional description is to be provided which includes:

a. the operating philosophy of the propulsion control systems under normal and reasonably fore*See*able abnormal operating conditions;
b. degraded modes of operation;
c. protection philosophy;
d. earthing philosophy; and
e. harmonic analysis, including loss of harmonic filters. *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.3 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.8 Quality of power supplies 1.8.3 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.8 Quality of power supplies 1.8.4.

1. 2. 11 Simplified circuit diagram of electrical propulsion system (where fitted) giving details of:

a. ratings of electrical machines, transformers, batteries, harmonic filters, dynamic braking assemblies and semiconductor converters;
b. lubrication and cooling arrangements, where provided;
c. insulation type, size and current loadings of cables;
d. make, type and rating of circuit-breakers and fuses;
e. instrumentation and protective devices;
f. earth fault indication/protection;
g. propulsion control systems, and the procedures used to ensure that there is satisfactory control of the design in relation to the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 16.4 Propulsion control; and
h. harmonic filters and analysis.

1. 2. 12 Details of electrically-operated fire, ship, crew and passenger emergency safety systems which are to include typical single line diagrams and arrangements, showing main vertical and, where applicable, horizontal fire zones, spaces along the ship bottom that are not fitted with a double bottom and the location of equipment and cable routes, including identification of relevant high fire risk areas, to be employed for:

a. emergency lighting;
b. accommodation fire detection, alarm and extinction systems;

c. fixed water-based local application fire-fighting systems;
d. public address system;
e. general emergency alarm;
f. watertight doors, bow, stern and shell doors and other electrically operated closing appliances; and
g. low location lighting.

Note A general arrangement plan of the complete ship showing the main vertical fire zones, spaces along the ship bottom that are not fitted with a double bottom and the location of equipment and cable routes, including identification of relevant high fire risk areas, for the above systems, is to be made available for the use of the Surveyor on board.

1. 2. 13 Evidence of the suitability of electrical and electronic equipment for use in protected areas and adjacent areas, as required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 17.3 Fixed water-based local application fire-fighting systems 17.3.8 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 17.3 Fixed water-based local application fire-fighting systems 17.3.9, including a schedule of electrical and electronic equipment located in protected areas and adjacent areas, and general arrangement plans showing the coverage of the protected areas and adjacent areas. *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.11, Location and construction.

1. 2. 14 For battery installations, arrangement plans and calculations are to show compliance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 12.5, Thermal management and ventilation.

1. 2. 15 A schedule of batteries fitted for use for emergency and essential services, giving details of:

- type and manufacturer's type designation;
- voltage and ampere-hour rating;
- location;
- equipment and/or system(s) served;
- maintenance/replacement cycle dates;
- date(s) of maintenance and/or replacement; and
- for replacement batteries in storage, the date of manufacture and shelf life; with accompanying battery replacement procedure documentation to show compliance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 12.7 Recording of batteries for emergency and essential services.

Note The above includes all batteries fitted as part of an uninterruptible power system (UPS) used for any essential or emergency services.

1. 2. 16 For high voltage rotating machines, type test reports for stator insulation systems, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 9.1 General requirements 9.1.15.

1. 2. 17 **Lithium battery systems**. In addition to the plans and information required by Pt 6, Ch 1, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.2, the following information is also to be submitted:

a. System functional description including all operating modes (i.e. charging, discharging, standby, backup, peak shaving, etc.), safety functions and their hierarchy, and expected battery system behaviour in case of malfunction.
b. Technical description detailing how safety information from type testing has been considered in the actual installation design.
c. Integration plan for the battery system with the vessel power distribution and charging arrangements.
d. Line diagrams of the battery system control and power distribution, including switchgear, protective devices, controlgear and emergency trip (E-Trip) as well as interfaces to external systems.
e. A Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA) and mitigation strategy, which is to be carried out for the lithium battery system installation as a whole in accordance with IEC 60812:

Analysis techniques for system reliability – Procedure for failure mode and effects analysis (FMEA), or an equivalent and acceptable National or International Standard and the report and worksheets are to be submitted for consideration.

f. Arrangement plans of any HVAC, ventilation, cooling systemand drains for the battery space.

g. Fire detection, alarm and extinguishing system (including portable fire-fighting appliances) plans for the battery space.

h. A schedule of electrical equipment for use in the battery space and HVAC, ventilation and cooling system giving details of the appropriate type of protection for the temperature class and gas group of the potential gases. Copies of appropriate certification are to be submitted for consideration.

i. Arrangement plans for electrical equipment showing cable routes associated with the battery system, power distribution and E-Trip.

j. General arrangement plan showing hazardous zones for the battery space, including the HVAC, ventilation, cooling system and drains.

k. Fire integrity plans for the battery space (including penetrations drawings), contiguous spaces and means of escape from the battery space.

1. 2. 18 For ships with hybrid electrical power systems as detailed in Pt 6, Ch 2, 24 Hybrid electrical power systems the following documentation is to be submitted for design review either uniquely or integrated with other submitted information.

Information required for all hybrid electrical power systems:

a. A functional description of the electrical distribution systems and equipment that details compliance with the performance criteria and system capability and functionality under defined normal and reasonably fore*See*able abnormal conditions including:
   i. degraded modes of operation;
   ii. load management and load sharing philosophy;
   iii. earthing philosophy;
   iv. system electrical protection philosophy;
   v. system stability; and
   vi. converter switching actions.

b. Definition of system performance targets (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.5 Hybrid electrical power system performance - System performance targets);

c. Definition of dependability principles (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.6, Hybrid electrical power system performance - Dependability principles);

d. Calculations supporting the size and rating of stores of electrical energy (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.6 Hybrid electrical power system performance - Dependability principles 24.6.7);

e. Risk assessment in support of there being no dedicated emergency source of power when this is proposed (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.8 Hybrid electrical power system performance - Emergency source of electrical power 24.8.2);

f. Details of any arrangements for external sources of power to charge onboard stores of electrical energy (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.9 Hybrid electrical power system performance - External source of electrical power 24.9.4);

g. Voltage rate of rise times for pulse width modulated converters (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.11 Hybrid electrical power system components - Source of electrical power 24.11.6);

h. Risk assessment in support of active fault current limiting devices when this is proposed (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.15 Hybrid electrical power system components - Distribution system 24.15.11);

i. Technical description of energy management functionality (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.16 Hybrid electrical power system components - Energy management 24.16.8);

j. Technical description of arrangements for power quality monitoring (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.17 Transversal requirements 24.17.6);

k. Power system integration procedure (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.18, Power system development and integration - General);

l. System operational concept (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.19 Power system development and integration - System operational concept);
m. Technical description of operating modes (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.20 Power system development and integration - Operating modes);
n. Validated specifications of system components (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.22 Power system development and integration - System components);
o. Results of energy flow analysis (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.23, Power system development and integration - Energy flows);
p. Results of power system analysis (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.24, Power system development and integration - Power system analysis);
q. Definition of safety functions (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.25 Power system development and integration - Safety functions);
r. System FMEA (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.27 Power system development and integration - System Failure Modes and Effects Analysis (FMEA));
s. System operating instructions (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.28 Power system development and integration - Operating instructions);
t. Description and verification of ship-specific Operator training needs (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.29, Power system development and integration - Operator training); and
u. Description of through-life system integration roles and responsibilities (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.30 Power system development and integration - Through-life accountability).

Additional information required for Hybrid Power (+) notation systems:

v. Dependability assessment (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.6, Hybrid electrical power system performance - Dependability principles);
w. Technical description of arrangements for automatic earth fault location (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.15 Hybrid electrical power system components - Distribution system 24.15.14);
x. Technical description of arrangements for power quality degradation detection (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.15 Hybrid electrical power system components - Distribution system 24.15.23);
y. Technical description of additional energy management functionality (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.16 Hybrid electrical power system components - Energy management 24.16.8);
z. Validation, verification and results of energy flow simulation (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.23 Power system development and integration - Energy flows 24.23.3);
aa. Validation, verification and results of power system simulation (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.24 Power system development and integration - Power system analysis 24.24.4);
bb. Risk assessment study when required (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.26 Power system development and integration - Risk assessment); and
cc. Evidence of ship-specific Operator training verification (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.29 Power system development and integration - Operator training 24.29.2).

1. 3 Documentation required for supporting evidence

1. 3. 1 The documentation and particulars in Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.3 Documentation required for supporting evidence 1.3.2 to Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.3 Documentation required for supporting evidence 1.3.11.b.iii are to be submitted as supporting evidence.

1. 3. 2 Plans for all cables that pass through atria or equivalent spaces, and for vertical runs in trunks or other restricted spaces. The information supplied is to show compliance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 11.8 Installation of electric and optical fibre cables 11.8.13.

1. 3. 3 In order to establish compliance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.11 Location and construction 1.11.4 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 5.1 Systems of supply and distribution 5.1.4, a general arrangement plan of the ship showing the location of major items of electrical equipment, for example:

- main and emergency generators;

- transitional source of supply (where fitted);
- switchboards;
- section boards and distribution boards supplying essential and emergency services;
- emergency batteries;
- motors for emergency services;
- propulsion motors;
- propulsion transformers;
- propulsions semiconductor converters;
- dynamic braking equipment;
- reactors;
- harmonic filters; and
- cable routes between these items of equipment.

1. 3. 4 Arrangement plans of main and emergency switchboards, section boards and documentation that demonstrates that creepage and clearance distances are in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 7.5, Creepage and clearance distances. The form factor of internal separation of low voltage switchgear and controlgear assemblies is to be in accordance with IEC 61439-2: *Low-voltage switchgear and controlgear assemblies* — Part 2*: Power switchgear and controlgear assemblies*, or an alternative acceptable and relevant national Standard. The form factor is to be stated, and the arrangement plans are to show how the form factor has been achieved.

1. 3. 5 Schedule of normal and emergency operating loads on the system estimated for the different operating conditions expected. The following details are to be provided to meet this requirement:

a. a description of the expected operating profiles (e.g. the number of generating sets connected when manoeuvring at sea, etc.), including that required by Part 5 Table 2. 1. 1: Inclination of ship; and

b. a schedule of the normal and emergency operating loads, which is to state the kilowatt rating of each load and a load factor between 0 and 1 that reflects:
   i. the duty cycle of the load; and
   ii. the proportion of its maximum rating at which the load is expected to operate.

1. 3. 6 In order to establish compliance with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.7 Design and construction 1.7.3, when requested, evidence is to be submitted to demonstrate the suitability of electrical equipment for its intended purpose in the conditions in which it is expected to operate.

1. 3. 7 For non-metallic cable support systems or protective casings, test evidence, details of installation procedures and manufacturer's recommendations that show compliance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 11.13 Non-metallic cable support systems, protective casings and fixings.

1. 3. 8 Details of, and arrangements in, the spaces in which the lighting is required to satisfy the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 23 Ergonomic Lighting Design – ELD optional notation Ergonomic Lighting Design (EDL) optional notation.

1. 3. 9 Evidence demonstrating the compatibility of the converter, cable and motor combinations to be used for the provision of essential services. Particular attention is to be given the suitability of the insulation systems used with respect to the convertor impulse magnitudes and voltage rise times, and their implications for partial discharge.

1. 3. 10 For high voltage a.c. rotating machines rated at above 3.6 kV, an inspection and test plan is required which enables the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 9.8 Survey and testing 9.8.7 to be assessed.

1. 3. 11 **Lithium battery systems**. In addition to the plans and information required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.2, Documentation required for design review 1.2.17, the following information is also to be submitted:

a. Document outlining the operational limitations for the battery system.

b. Operation, maintenance and training manuals for the battery system are to be kept on board including:

i. Manual that describes the standard operating, maintenance and emergency procedures for the system;

ii. Testing procedures including Annual Survey test requirements (*See* Table 2. 21. 3: Test requirements on lithium battery systems);

iii. Through-life management plan for the battery system, including disposal.

1. 4 Surveys

1. 4. 1 Electrical propelling machinery and associated equipment together with auxiliary services essential for the safety of the ship are to be installed in accordance with the relevant requirements of this Chapter, surveyed and have tests witnessed by the Surveyors.

1. 4. 2 The following equipment, where intended for use for essential and emergency services, is to be surveyed by the Surveyors during manufacture and testing:

- Converting equipment of 100 kW and over;
- Rotating machines of 100 kW and over;
- Switchboards and section boards; and
- UPS units of 50 kVA and over.

1. 4. 3 For electric propulsion systems, in addition to the equipment listed in Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.4 Surveys 1.4.2, the following equipment is to be surveyed by the Surveyors during manufacture and testing:

- dynamic braking assemblies, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 16.6 Protection of propulsion system 16.6.8;
- exciters;
- filters;
- reactors;
- pre-magnetisation transformers; and
- slip ring assemblies.

1. 4. 4 For refrigerating cargo installations having an **RMC** notation, motors are to be tested and certificates furnished by the manufacturer. Motors of 100 kW or over are to be surveyed by the Surveyors during manufacture and testing.

1. 4. 5 All other electrical equipment, not specifically referenced in Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.4 Surveys 1.4.2 to Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.4 Surveys 1.4.4, intended for use for essential or emergency services is to be supplied with a manufacturer's works test certificate showing compliance with the constructional Standard(s) as referenced by the relevant requirements of this Chapter.

1. 4. 6 Alternative approach for product assurance;

a. ACS will be prepared to give consideration to the adoption of an approach for product assurance, utilising regular and systematic audits of an organisation’s arrangements for assuring product quality, as an alternative to the direct survey of individual items.

b. Alternative approaches for product assurance are to be approved by ACS. In order to obtain approval, the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 1, 6 Quality Assurance Scheme for Machinery or Ch 1, 2.4 Materials Quality Scheme of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and

Certification of Materials are to be complied with. Proposals for equivalent approaches are to be submitted for consideration.

1. 5 Additions or alterations

1. 5. 1 No addition, temporary or permanent, is to be made to the approved load of an existing installation until it has been ascertained that the current carrying capacity and the condition of the existing equipment including cables and switchgear are adequate for the increased load.

1. 5. 2 Plans are to be submitted for consideration, and the alterations or additions are to be carried out under the survey, and to the satisfaction of the Surveyors.

1. 5. 3 When it is proposed to replace permanently installed secondary valve-regulated sealed batteries with vented batteries, details are to be submitted for consideration to ensure continued safety in the presence of the products of electrolysis and evaporation being allowed to escape freely from the cells to the atmosphere. These details are to demonstrate that there will be adequate ventilation in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 12.5 Thermal management and ventilation 12.5.9 and that the location and installation requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 12.3, Location and Pt 6, Ch 2, 12.4, Installation are complied with.

1. 5. 4 Proposed modifications to the electrical protection settings are to be developed in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 6.1 General 6.1.4 and plans submitted are also to address the updating of approved version of the details required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.5 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.6.

1. 5. 5 Where it is intended to replace an existing incandescent lamp type navigation light with a light emitting diode type navigation light, details are to be submitted for consideration that demonstrate compliance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 15.6, Navigation lights. Light emitting diode type navigation lights failure detection arrangements are to satisfy the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 15.6 Navigation lights 15.6.5 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 15.6 Navigation lights 15.6.6.

1. 6 Definitions

1. 6. 1 Essential services are those necessary for the propulsion and safety of the ship, such as the following:

- air compressors for oil engines;
- air pumps;
- automatic sprinkler systems;
- ballast pumps;
- bilge pumps;
- circulating and cooling water pumps;
- communication systems;
- condenser circulating pumps;
- electric propulsion equipment;
- electric starting systems for engines;
- extraction pumps;
- fans for forced draught to boilers;
- feed water pumps;

- fire detection and alarm systems;
- fuel valve cooling pumps;
- hydraulic pumps for controllable pitch propellers and those serving essential services here listed that would otherwise be directly electrically driven;
- lubricating oil pumps;
- inert gas fans and scrubber and deck seal pumps;
- lighting systems for those parts of the ship normally accessible to and used by personnel and passengers;
- liquefied gas cargo handling;
- navigational aids where required by Statutory Regulations;
- navigation lights and special purpose lights where required by Statutory Regulations;
- fuel oil pumps and fuel oil burning units;
- oil separators;
- pumps for fire-extinguishing systems;
- scavenge blowers;
- steering gear;
- thrusters needed for the propulsion and safety of the ship to be considered as essential services;
- valves which are required to be remotely operated;
- ventilating fans for engine and boiler rooms;
- watertight doors, shell doors and other electrical operated closing appliances;
- windlasses;
- power sources and supply systems for supplying the above services; and
- steam raising plant, where steam is required for other essential services.

1. 6. 2 Services such as the following are considered necessary for minimum comfortable conditions of habitability:

- cooking;
- heating;
- domestic refrigeration;
- mechanical ventilation;
- sanitary and fresh water.

1. 6. 3 Services such as the following, which are additional to those in Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.6 Definitions 1.6.1, and Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.6 Definitions 1.6.2, are considered necessary to maintain the ship in a normal sea-going operational and habitable condition:

- cargo handling and cargo care equipment;
- hotel services, other than those required for habitable conditions;
- thrusters, other than those for dynamic positioning.

1. 6. 4 A `high voltage' is a voltage exceeding 1000 V a.c. or 1500 V d.c. between conductors, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.5 Additions or alterations 1.5.3.

1. 6. 5 A `switchboard' is a switchgear and controlgear assembly for the control of power generated by a source of electrical power and its distribution to electrical consumers.

1. 6. 6 A `section board' is a switchgear and controlgear assembly for controlling the supply of electrical power from a switchboard and distributing it to other section boards, distribution boards or final sub-circuits.

1. 6. 7 A `distribution board' is an assembly of one or more protective devices arranged for the distribution of electrical power to final sub-circuits.

1. 6. 8 A `final sub-circuit' is that portion of a wiring system extending beyond the final overcurrent device of a board.

1. 6. 9 `Special category spaces' are those enclosed spaces above or below the bulkhead deck intended for the carriage of motor vehicles with fuel, for their own propulsion, in their tanks, into and from which such vehicles can be driven, and to which passengers have access. Special category spaces may be accommodated on more than one deck provided that the total overall clear height for vehicles does not exceed 10 m.

1. 6. 10 `Machinery spaces of Category A' are those spaces and trunks to such spaces which contain:

a. internal combustion machinery used for main propulsion; or
b. internal combustion machinery used for purposes other than main propulsion where such machinery has in the aggregate a total power output of not less than 375 kW; or
c. any oil-fired boiler or fuel oil unit.

1. 6. 11 'Dead ship condition' means that the entire machinery installation, including the power supply, is out of operation and that the auxiliary services for bringing the main propulsion systems into operation (e.g. compressed air, starting current from batteries, etc.) and for the restoration of the main power supply are not available. Means are to be available to start the emergency generator at all times, *See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 9.5 Starting of the emergency source of power.

1. 6. 12 Protected space is a machinery space where a fixed water-based local application fire-fighting system is installed.

1. 6. 13 Protected areas are areas within a protected space which are protected by a fixed water-based local application fire-fighting system.

1. 6. 14 Adjacent areas are areas, other than protected areas, exposed to direct spray or other areas where water may extend when a fixed water-based local application firefighting system is activated.

1. 6. 15 For emergency services and their emergency power supplies required to be capable of being operated under fire conditions, ‘high fire risk areas’ are:

a. machinery spaces, as defined by SOLAS 1974 as amended, *Chapter II-2 - Construction - Fire protection, fire detection and fire extinction*;
b. spaces containing fuel treatment equipment;
c. galleys and pantries containing cooking appliances;
d. laundries containing drying equipment;
e. hazardous zones and spaces; and
f. for passenger ships carrying more than 36 passengers:
i. public spaces containing furniture and furnishings of other than restricted fire risk and having a deck area of 50 m^2 or more;
ii. barber shops and beauty parlours; and
iii.saunas.

Requests to exempt spaces identified in Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.6 Definitions 1.6.15.f may be considered when evidence is submitted that demonstrates emergency services will remain available in the

event of a fire in the space (e.g. studies of fire protection measures, installation locations, system redundancy, etc.).

1. 6. 16 An 'electric arc' is an electrical discharge or a short-circuit through ionised air caused by isolation or insulation integrity failure.

1. 6. 17 'Incident energy' is the amount of energy impressed on a surface, a certain distance from the source, generated during an electric arc event.

1. 6. 18 A 'secondary lithium cell' is a cell where electrical energy is derived from the insertion/extraction reactions of lithium ions or oxidation/reduction of lithium between the negative electrode and the positive electrode. These may be combined in 'cell blocks' consisting of a group of cells connected together in a parallel configuration.

1. 6. 19 A 'battery module' is an energy storage device comprising one or more electrically connected cells or cell blocks. The battery module can include protective and monitoring devices.

1. 6. 20 A 'battery pack' is an energy storage device comprising one or more electrically connected cells, cell blocks or modules. The battery pack can include protective devices and control and monitoring systems which communicate with the battery management system.

1. 6. 21 A 'battery management system (BMS)' is an electronic system which monitors and manages the state of a cell, battery module or battery pack in order to maintain the battery system in a safe operating state and protect against overcharging, overcurrent and overheating and communicates with an external charge/discharger controller.

1. 6. 22 A 'lithium battery system' is a system comprising one or more lithium battery modules or packs incorporated in a fixed installation together with means of isolation, a cooling system (if provided) and has an associated BMS.

1. 6. 23 'State of charge (SOC)' is the available capacity in a battery expressed as a percentage of rated capacity.

1. 6. 24 'State of health (SOH)' reflects the general condition of a battery expressed as a percentage of its ability to deliver the specified performance compared with that of a new battery.

1. 6. 25 'Battery space' is the space or compartment in which a battery is installed.

1. 7 Design and construction

1. 7. 1 Electrical propelling machinery and associated equipment together with equipment for services essential for the propulsion and safety of the ship are to be constructed in accordance with the relevant requirements of this Chapter.

1. 7. 2 The design and installation of other equipment is to be such that risk of fire due to its failure is minimised. It is, as a minimum, to comply with a National or International Standard revised where necessary for ambient conditions.

1. 7. 3 Electrical equipment is to be suitable for its intended purpose and accordingly, whenever practicable, be selected from the *List of Type Approved Products* published by ACS. A copy of the Procedure for ACS Type Approval System will be supplied on application.

1. 7. 4 Permanently installed electrical and electronic equipment that are capable of generating electromagnetic interference, which can interfere with the proper functionality of essential services or services upon which they depend, are to be designed, constructed and installed in accordance with the guidelines and recommendations of one of the following standard(s), as appropriate to its location:

a. IEC 60533 - *Electrical and electronic installations in ships - Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC)*; or

b. IEC 60945 - *Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems – General requirements – Methods of testing and required test results*; or

c. ACS Type Approval System – Test Specification Number 1;
d. Alternative national or international standard(s) acceptable to ACS.

1. 7. 5 For areas susceptible to deluge or submersion, cable entries are to prevent water ingress. In general, cable entries are to be in accordance with IEC 60092-101: *Electrical Installations in Ships – Part 101: Definitions and General Requirements*.

1. 8 Quality of power supplies

1. 8. 1 All electrical equipment supplied from the main and emergency sources of electrical power and electrical equipment for essential and emergency services supplied from d.c. sources of electrical power is to be so designed and manufactured that it is capable of operating satisfactorily under normally occurring variations of voltage and frequency.

1. 8. 2 Unless specified otherwise, a.c electrical equipment is to operate satisfactorily with the following simultaneous variations, from their nominal value, when measured at the consumer input terminals:

a. voltage:
   i. permanent variations +6% –10%
   ii. transient variations due to step changes in load ±20%
   iii. recovery time 1.5 seconds
b. frequency:
   i. permanent variations ±5per cent
   ii. transient variations due to step changes in load ±10%
   iii. recovery time 5 seconds
   iv. A maximum rate of change of frequency not exceeding ±1.5 Hz per second during cyclic frequency fluctuations.

1. 8. 3 Unless specified otherwise, the total harmonic distortion (THD) of the voltage waveform at any a.c switchboard or section-board is not to exceed 8% of the fundamental for all frequencies up to 50 times the supply frequency and no voltage at a frequency above 25 times supply frequency is to exceed 1.5% of the fundamental of the supply voltage. THD is the ratio of the rms value of the harmonic content to the rms value of the fundamental, expressed in per cent and may be calculated using the expression:

$$THD = \frac{\sqrt{\Sigma_{h=2}^{\infty} V_h^2}}{V_1} \times 100$$

where

V_h = rms amplitude of a harmonic voltage of order h

V_1 = rms amplitude of the fundamental voltage.

1. 8. 4 Where a higher value of THD is specified, all installed equipment and systems are to be designed for the higher specified limit. This relaxation on the limit is to be documented in the harmonic distortion calculation report.

1. 8. 5 Unless specified otherwise, d.c. electrical equipment is to operate satisfactorily with the following simultaneous variations from their nominal value, when measured at the consumer input terminals:

a. When supplied by d.c. generator(s) or a rectified a.c. supply:

Voltage tolerance (continuous)	±10%
Voltage cyclic variation deviation	5%

Voltage ripple	10%

(a.c. rms over steady state o.c. voltage)

b. When supplied by batteries:
   i. Equipment connected to the batteries during charging: Voltage tolerance +30%, –25%;
   ii. Equipment not connected to batteries during charging: Voltage tolerance +20%, –25per cent.
   iii. Different voltage variations as determined by the charging/discharging characteristics, including ripple voltage from the charging device, may be considered. When battery chargers/battery combinations are used as d.c. power supply systems adequate measures are to be taken to keep the voltage within the specified limits during charging, boost charging and discharging of the battery.

1. 9 Ambient reference and operating conditions

1. 9. 1 The rating for classification purposes of essential electrical equipment intended for installation in ships to be classed for unrestricted (geographical) service is to be based on an engine room ambient temperature of 45°C, and a sea-water temperature at the inlet of 32°C. The equipment manufacturer is not expected to provide simulated ambient reference conditions at a test bed.

1. 9. 2 In the case of a ship to be classed for restricted service, the rating is to be suitable for the ambient conditions associated with the geographical limits of the restricted service, *See* Pt 1, Ch 2 Classification Regulations.

1. 9. 3 Main and essential auxiliary machinery and equipment is to operate satisfactorily under the conditions shown in Pt 5, Ch 1, 3.6 Ambient operating conditions. Electrical equipment satisfying alternative ambient operating condition requirements for installation on ships contained in an acceptable and relevant National or International Standard may be considered to satisfy this requirement.

Note Details of local environmental conditions are stated in Annex B of IEC 60092-101-2002: *Electrical installations in ships – Part 101: Definitions and general requirements*.

1. 9. 4 Where electrical equipment is installed within environmentally controlled spaces, the ambient temperature for which the equipment is suitable for operation at its rated capacity may be reduced to a value not less than 35°C provided:

- the equipment is not for use for emergency services and is located outside of machinery space(s);
- temperature control is achieved by at least two cooling units so arranged that, in the event of loss of one cooling unit, for any reason, the remaining unit(s) will be capable of satisfactorily maintaining the design temperature;
- the equipment is able to be initially set to work safely within a 45°C ambient temperature until such a time that the lesser ambient temperature may be achieved; the cooling equipment is to be rated for an ambient temperature of not less than 45°C; and
- alarms are provided, at a continually attended control station, to indicate any malfunction of the cooling units.

See also Pt 6, Ch 1, 1.4 Control, alarm and safety equipment 1.4.3.

1. 9. 5 Where equipment is to comply with Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.9 Ambient reference and operating conditions 1.9.4, it is to be ensured that electrical cables for their entire length are adequately rated for the maximum ambient temperature to which they are exposed along their length.

1. 9. 6 Equipment used for cooling and maintaining the lesser ambient temperature in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.9 Ambient reference and operating conditions 1.9.4 are considered essential services and are to satisfy the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 5.2, Essential services.

1. 10 Inclination of ship

1. 10. 1 Emergency and essential electrical equipment is to operate satisfactorily under the conditions as shown in Table 2. 1. 1: Inclination of ship.

1. 10. 2 In ships for the carriage of liquefied gas the emergency source of electrical power is also to remain operable under the conditions described in the *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk* (hereinafter referred to as the Rules for Ships for Liquefied Gases). In ships for the carriage of liquid chemicals the emergency source of electrical power is also to remain operable under the conditions described in the *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquid Chemicals in Bulk* (hereinafter referred to as the Rules for Ships for Liquid Chemicals).

1. 10. 3 Any proposal to deviate from the angles given in Table 2. 1. 1: Inclination of ship will be specially considered taking into account the type, size and service of the ship.

Table 2. 1. 1: Inclination of ship

Installations, components	Angle of inclination, degrees, *See* Note 2			
	Athwartships		Fore-and-aft	
	static	dynamic	static	dynamic
Essential electrical equipment	15	22.5	5 *See* Note 3	7.5
Safety systems, e.g. emergency power installations, crew and passenger safety systems Switchgear, electrical and electronic appliances *See* Note 1	22.5 *See* Note 4	22.5 *See* Note 4	10	10

Note *1.* No undesired switching operations or operational changes may occur.

Note *2.* Athwartships and fore-and-aft inclinations may occur simultaneously.

Note *3.* Where the length of the ship exceeds 100 m, the fore-and-aft static angle of inclination may be taken as: $\frac{500}{L}$ degrees , where L = Rule length, in metres *See* Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1, Principal particulars.

Note *4.* In ships for the carriage of liquefied gas and of liquid chemicals the emergency source of electrical power is to remain operable with the ship flooded to a final athwartships inclination to a maximum angle of 30 degrees, in accordance with statutory requirements.

1. 10. 4 The dynamic angles of inclination in Table 2. 1. 1: Inclination of ship may be exceeded in certain circumstances dependent upon ship type and operation. The Shipbuilder is, therefore, to ensure that the electrical equipment is capable of operating under these angles of inclination.

1. 11 Location and construction

1. 11. 1 All electrical equipment is to be constructed or selected, and installed such that:

a. live parts cannot be inadvertently touched, unless they are supplied at the safety voltage specified in Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.12 Earthing of non-current carrying parts 1.12.2.h;

b. it does not cause injury when handled or touched in the normal manner; and

c. it is unaffected by any water, steam or oil and oil vapour to which it is likely to be exposed.

Electrical equipment having, as a minimum, the degrees of protection as specified in IEC 60092-201: *Electrical Installations In Ships* – Part 2*01: System Design – General* for the relevant location will satisfy these requirements.

1. 11. 2 Laser light sources for optical fibre systems are to be constructed in accordance with IEC 60825-1, *Safety of laser products – Part 1: Equipment classification and requirements*. Acceptance of alternative standards will be subject to consideration by ACS.

1. 11. 3 Optical fibre communication systems are to be constructed in accordance with IEC 60825-2, *Safety of laser products* – Part 2*: Safety of optical fibre communication systems*. Acceptance of alternative standards will be subject to consideration by ACS.

1. 11. 4 Switchboards, section boards and distribution boards supplying essential and emergency services, as well as cables from the respective generators to and between these boards, are to be arranged to avoid areas of high fire risk and elevated temperatures, for example, in close proximity to incinerators and boilers.

1. 11. 5 Electrical equipment, as far as is practicable, is to be located:

a. such that it is accessible for the purpose of maintenance and survey;
b. clear of flammable material;
c. in spaces adequately ventilated to remove the waste heat liberated by the equipment under full load conditions, at the ambient conditions specified in Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.9, Ambient reference and operating conditions;
d. where flammable gases cannot accumulate. If this is not practicable, electrical equipment is to be of the appropriate 'safe-type', *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 14 Electrical equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres or in the presence of combustible dusts;
e. where it is not exposed to the risk of mechanical injury or damage from water, steam or oil.

1. 11. 6 Equipment design and the choice of materials are to reduce the likelihood of fire, ensuring that:

a. where the electrical energised part can cause ignition and fire, it is contained within the bounds of the enclosure of the electrotechnical product;
b. the design, material(s) and construction of the enclosure minimises, as far as is practicable, any internal ignition causing ignition of adjacent materials; and
c. where surfaces of the electrotechnical products can be exposed to external fire, they do not, as far as practicable, contribute to the fire growth.

Note Compliance with IEC 60695: *Fire hazard testing*(all parts), or an alternative and acceptable Standard, will satisfy this requirement.

1. 11. 7 Insulating materials and insulated windings are to be resistant to tracking, moisture, sea air, oil and oil vapour unless special precautions are taken to protect them.

1. 11. 8 The minimum creepage and clearance distances provided for electrical connections, terminals and similar bare live parts are to be in accordance with a relevant International or National Standard for the equipment or apparatus concerned. In cases where the rated voltage is outside that given in the Standard or where no Standard is available, the minimum creepage and clearance distances provided are to be in accordance with 7.5. Details of alternatives proposals including supporting design rationale and demonstration may be submitted for consideration.

1. 11. 9 Studs, screw-type or spring-type clamp terminations, satisfactory for the normal operating currents and voltages, are to be provided in electrical equipment for the connection of external cable, or busbar conductors, as appropriate, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 11.15 Electric cable ends. There is to be adequate space and access for the terminations.

1. 11. 10 The design of equipment is to enable ease of access to all parts requiring inspection or replacement in service.

1. 11. 11 Equipment is not to remain alive through the control circuits and/or pilot lamps when switched off by the control switch. This does not apply to synchronising switches and/or plugs.

1. 11. 12 The operation of all electrical equipment and the lubrication arrangements are to be efficient under such conditions of vibration and shock as arise in normal practice.

1. 11. 13 All nuts, screws and clamping devices used in connection with current-carrying, supporting and working parts are to be provided with means to ensure that they cannot work loose by vibration and shock as arise in normal practice.

1. 11. 14 To allow ease of access, connectors are to be spaced far enough apart to permit connection and disconnection. At test points, adequate clearance is to be provided between connection points and controls to provide access for testing.

1. 11. 15 Conductors and equipment are to be placed at such a distance from the magnetic compasses, or are to be so disposed, that the interfering magnetic field is negligible when circuits are switched on and off.

1. 11. 16 Where electrical power is used for propulsion, the equipment is to be so arranged that it will operate satisfactorily in the event of partial flooding by bilge water above the tank top up to the bottom floor plate level, under the normal angles of inclination given in Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.10 Inclination of ship for essential electrical equipment, *See* Pt 5, Ch 13 Ship Piping Systems.

1. 12 Earthing of non-current carrying parts

1. 12. 1 Except where exempted by Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.12, Earthing of non-current carrying parts 1.12.2, all non-current-carrying exposed metal parts of electrical equipment and cables are to be earthed for personnel protection against electric shock. Bonding of non-current carrying exposed metal parts is to give a substantially equal potential and a sufficiently low earth fault loop impedance to ensure correct operation of protective devices.

1. 12. 2 The following parts may be exempted from the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.12 Earthing of non-current carrying parts 1.12.1,:

a. lamp-caps, where suitably shrouded;
b. shades, reflectors and guards supported on lampholders or light fittings constructed of, or shrouded in, non-conducting material;
c. metal parts on, or screws in or through, non-conducting materials, which are separated by such material from current-carrying parts and from earthed non-current carrying parts in such a way that in normal use they cannot become live or come into contact with earthed parts;
d. apparatus which is constructed in accordance with the principle of double insulation;
e. bearing housings which are insulated in order to prevent circulation of current in the bearings;
f. clips for fluorescent lamps;
g. cable clips and short lengths of pipes for cable protection;
h. apparatus supplied at a safety voltage not exceeding 50 V d.c. or 50 V a.c., between conductors, or between any conductor and earth in a circuit isolated from the supply. Autotransformers are not to be used for the purpose of achieving the alternating current voltage;
i. apparatus or parts of apparatus which although not shrouded in insulating material is nevertheless otherwise so guarded that it cannot be touched and cannot come in contact with exposed metal.

1. 12. 3 Where extraneous-conductive parts (i.e. parts not forming part of the electrical installation and liable to introduce an electric potential) are not bonded by separate earthing conductors, details are to be submitted that demonstrate that a permanent, metal-to-metal connection of negligible impedance, which will not degrade due to corrosion or vibration, will be achieved.

1. 12. 4 Armouring, braiding and other metal coverings of cables are to be effectively earthed. Where the armouring, braiding and other metal coverings are earthed at one end only, they are to be adequately protected and insulated at the unearthed end with the insulation being suitable for the maximum voltage that may be induced. *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.9 Cable and cable installation 14.9.3 for earthing of cables in hazardous zones or spaces.

1. 12. 5 The electrical continuity of all metal coverings of cables throughout the length of the cable, particularly at joints and tappings, is to be ensured.

1. 12. 6 Metal parts of portable appliances, other than current-carrying parts and parts exempted by Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.12, Earthing of non-current carrying parts 1.12.2 are to be earthed by means of an earth-continuity conductor in the flexible cable or cord through the associated plug and socket-outlet.

1. 12. 7 Earthing conductors are to be of copper or other corrosion-resistant material and be securely installed and protected where necessary against damage and also, where necessary, against electrolytic corrosion. Connections are to be so secured that they cannot work loose under vibration.

1. 12. 8 The nominal cross-section areas of copper earthing conductors for electrical equipment are, in general to be equal to the cross-section of the current-carrying conductor up to 16 mm^2, with a minimum of 1.5 mm^2. Above this figure they are to be equal to at least half the cross-section of the current-carrying conductor with a minimum of 16 mm^2.

1. 12. 9 The nominal cross-section areas of copper earthing conductors for armouring, braiding and other metal coverings of cables are, in general, to be equal to the equivalent crosssection of the armouring, braiding and other metal coverings with a minimum of 1.5 mm^2.

1. 12. 10 Earthing conductors of materials other than copper are to have a conductance not less than that specified for an equivalent copper earthing conductor.

1. 12. 11 The connection of the earthing conductor to the hull of the ship is to be made in an accessible position, and is to be secured by a screw or stud of a diameter appropriate for the size of earthing conductor, but not less than 6 mm, which is to be used for this purpose only. Bright metallic surfaces at the contact areas are to be ensured immediately before the nut or screw is tightened and, where necessary, the joint is to be protected against electrolytic corrosion. The connection is to remain unpainted.

1. 13 Bonding for the control of static electricity

1. 13. 1 Bonding straps for the control of static electricity are required for cargo tanks, process plant and piping systems, for flammable products and solids liable to release flammable gas and/or combustible dust, which are not permanently connected to the hull of the ship either directly or via their bolted or welded supports and where the resistance between them and the hull exceeds 1 MΩ.

1. 13. 2 Where bonding straps are required for the control of static electricity, they are to be robust, that is, having a cross-sectional area of at least 10 mm^2, and are to comply with Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.12 Earthing of non-current carrying parts 1.12.7 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.12 Earthing of non-current carrying parts 1.12.11.

1. 14 Alarms

1. 14. 1 Where alarms are required by this Chapter they are to be arranged in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.3 Alarm systems, general requirements. Sound signal equipment, fire and general alarm bells are not required to be supplemented by visual indications, except in areas having high levels of background noise, such as machinery spaces.

1. 14. 2 The alarms in this Chapter are additional to those required by Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems. They may however form part of the alarm system that is required by Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems.

1. 14. 3 Cables for emergency alarms and their power sources are to be in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.16, Operation under fire conditions.

1. 14. 4 Electrical equipment and cables for emergency alarms are to be so arranged that the loss of alarms in any one area due to localised fire, collision, flooding or similar damage is minimised, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.16, Operation under fire conditions and Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.17 Operation under flooding conditions.

1. 14. 5 Electric system: Alarms and safeguards are indicated in Table 2. 1. 2: Electric system: Alarms and safeguards.

Table 2. 1. 2: Electric system: Alarms and safeguards

Item	Alarm	Note
Busbar voltage	High and low	–
Busbar frequency	Low	–
Operation of load shedding	Warning	–
Generator cooling air temperature	High	For closed air circuit water-cooled machines

1. 15 Labels, signs and notices

1. 15. 1 Labels, signs and notices required by this Chapter are to be positioned in clearly visible locations which will not be obscured.

1. 15. 2 Labels, signs and notices are to be easy to read under the expected operating conditions. Character height in accordance with Table 2. 1. 3: Character height and viewing distance will be considered to satisfy this requirement.

Table 2. 1. 3: Character height and viewing distance

Viewing distance (mm)	Minimum character height (mm)
Less than 500	2.3
500 – 1000	4.7
1000 – 2000	9.4
2000 – 4000	19
4000 – 8000	38

1. 15. 3 Controls, indicators and displays required by this Chapter are to be labelled to indicate their function. Labels are to be positioned in a manner that associates the label with the item being labelled.

1. 15. 4 Labels, signs and notices are to use short, clear messages. In general, warning signs and notices are to comprise:

- a signal word to convey the gravity of the risk (e.g. Danger, Warning or Caution);
- a statement of the nature and/or consequence of the hazard; and
- wherever practical, an instruction giving appropriate behaviour to avoid the hazard.

1. 16 Operation under fire conditions

1. 16. 1 As a minimum, the following emergency services and their emergency power supplies, are required to be capable of being operated under fire conditions:

- Control and power systems to power-operated fire doors and status indication for all fire doors.
- Control and power systems to power-operated watertight doors and their status indication.

- Emergency lighting.
- Fire and general emergency alarms.
- Fire detection systems.
- Fire-extinguishing systems and fire-extinguishing media release alarms.
- Fire safety stops, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 17.6 Fire safety stops.
- Low location lighting, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 18.4 Escape route or low location lighting (LLL) 18.4.3.
- Public address systems.
- Emergency fire pump.

1. 16. 2 Where cables for the emergency services listed in Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.16 Operation under fire conditions 1.16.1 pass through high fire risk areas, main vertical or horizontal fire zones other than those which they serve, they are to be so arranged that a fire in any of these areas or zones does not affect the operation of the emergency service in any other area or zone. This may be achieved either by:
   - cables being of a fire resistant type complying with Pt 6, Ch 2, 11.5 Construction 11.5.3, and at least extending from the main control/monitoring panel to the nearest local distribution panel serving the relevant area or zone; or
   - there being at least two-loops/radial distributions run as widely apart as is practicable and so arranged that in the event of damage by fire at least one of the loops/radial distributions remains operational.

1. 16. 3 Where the cables for the power supplies for the emergency services listed in Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.16 Operation under fire conditions 1.16.1 pass through high fire risk areas, main vertical or horizontal fire zones other than those which they serve, they are to be of a fire resistant type complying with Pt 6, Ch 2, 11.5 Construction 11.5.3, extending at least to the local distribution panel serving the relevant area or zone.

1. 16. 4 Fire resistant electrical cables for the emergency services listed in Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.16 Operation under fire conditions 1.16.1, including their power supplies, are to be run as directly as is practicable, having regard to any special installation requirements, for example those concerning minimum bend radii.

1. 16. 5 In addition to Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.11 Location and construction 1.11.6, materials used for electrical equipment, cables and accessories within passenger accommodation areas are not to be capable of producing excessive quantities of smoke and toxic products.

1. 16. 6 NOTE:

Compliance with IEC 60695: *Fire hazard testing* (all parts) , or an alternative and acceptable Standard, will satisfy this requirement.

1. 17 Operation under flooding conditions

1. 17. 1 Flooding of spaces along the ship bottom that are not fitted with a double bottom is not to result in the loss of the ability to provide electrically operated fire, ship, crew and passenger emergency safety systems outside of the spaces.

1. 17. 2 Installation of electrical equipment necessary to provide fire, ship, crew and passenger emergency safety systems in spaces along the ship bottom not fitted with a double bottom is to be avoided, wherever practical. Where it is proposed to install electrical equipment, including cabling, necessary to provide fire, ship, crew and passenger emergency safety systems in such spaces,

evidence is to be submitted to demonstrate that required emergency services will be available in other spaces in the event of flooding of the space not fitted with a double bottom.

1. 18 Protection of electrical equipment against the effects of lightning strikes

1. 18. 1 Precautions are to be taken to protect essential electronic equipment that may be susceptible to damage from voltage pulses attributable to the secondary effects of lightning. This may be achieved by suitable design and/or the use of additional protective devices, such as surge arrestors. Resultant induced voltages may be further reduced by the use of earthed metallic screened cables. *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 20 Lightning conductors.

1. 19 Programmable electronic systems

1. 19. 1 Where programmable electronic systems are implemented and used to control the electrical installation, or to provide safety functions in accordance with the requirements of this Chapter (e.g. electric propulsion, circuit-breaker settings, switchgear and controlgear controllers, etc.), the arrangements are to satisfy the applicable requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.10, Programmable electronic systems - General requirements to Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.14, Programmable electronic systems – Additional requirements for integrated systems.

1. 19. 2 Where Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.19 Programmable electronic systems 1.19.1 applies, proposed modifications to software and acceptance testing and trials are to be in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 1, 1.5, Alterations and additions and Pt 6, Ch 2, 7 Switchgear and controlgear assemblies as applicable.

PART

6

CHAPTER **2** **Electrical Engineering**

SECTION **2** **Main source of electrical power**

2. 1 General

2. 1. 1 The main source of electrical power is to comply with the requirements of this Section and SOLAS Ch II-1, Part D, *Regulation 41 - Main source of electrical power and lighting systems* and *Regulation 42 - Emergency source of electrical power in passenger ships* without recourse to the emergency source of electrical power.

2. 2 Number and rating of generators and converting equipment

2. 2. 1 Under sea-going conditions, the number and rating of service generating sets and converting sets, such as transformers and semi-conductor converters, when any one generating set or converting set is out of action, are:

a. to be in accordance with SOLAS Ch II-1, Part D, *Regulation 41 - Main source of electrical power and lighting systems*, Section 1.2 and to be sufficient to ensure operation of cargo refrigeration machinery of ships having an **RMC** notation and the container socket outlets and ventilation system of container ships having a **CRC** notation. *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 16.3 Power requirements 16.3.5 for electric propulsion systems;

b. to have sufficient reserve capacity to permit the starting of the largest motor without causing any motor to stall or any device to fail due to excessive voltage drop on the system;

c. to be capable of providing the electrical services necessary to start the main propulsion machinery from a dead ship condition in accordance with SOLAS Ch II-1, Part D, *Regulation 41 - Main source of electrical power and lighting systems*, Section 1.4.

2. 2. 2 The arrangement of the ship's main source of power is to be such that the operation of electrical services including cargo refrigeration machinery of ships having an RMC notation is to be in accordance with SOLAS Ch II-1, Part D *Regulation 41 - Main source of electrical power and lighting systems*, Section 1.3.

2. 2. 3 Where the electrical power requirement to maintain the ship in a normal operational and habitable condition is usually supplied by one generating set, arrangements are to be provided to prevent overloading of the running generator, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 6.9, Load management. On loss of power there is to be provision for automatic starting and connecting to the main switchboard of the standby set in as short a time as practicable, but in any case within 45 seconds, and automatic sequential restarting of essential services, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.6 Definitions 1.6.1., in as short a time as is practicable. In addition ships are to comply with SOLAS Ch II-1, Part D, *Regulation 41 - Main source of electrical power and lighting systems*, Section 5

Note Where the prime mover starting time will result in exceeding this starting and connection time, details are to be submitted for consideration.

2. 3 Starting arrangements

2. 3. 1 The starting arrangements of the generating sets prime movers are to comply with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 2, 9 Starting arrangements as applicable.

2. 3. 2 Where the emergency source of electrical power is required to be used to restore propulsion from a 'dead ship condition' it is to be in accordance with SOLAS Ch II-1, Part D, *Regulation 42 - Emergency source of electrical power in passenger ships*, Section 3.4, in addition to supplying those services in Pt 6, Ch 2, 3.3 Emergency source of electrical power in passenger ships 3.3.1, for passenger ships and Pt 6, Ch 2, 3.4 Emergency source of electrical power in cargo ships 3.4.1 for cargo ships. *See* Pt 5, Ch 2, 9.1 Dead ship condition starting arrangements 9.1.1 for dead ship condition starting arrangements.

2. 4 Prime mover governors

2. 4. 1 The governing accuracy of the generating sets prime movers is to meet the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 2, 7.3 Auxiliary and emergency engine governors .

2. 4. 2 The maximum electrical step load switched on or off is not to cause the frequency variation of the electrical supply to exceed the parameters given in Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.8 Quality of power supplies 1.8.2.

2. 5 Main propulsion driven generators not forming part of the main source of electrical power

2. 5. 1 Generators and generator systems having the ship's propulsion machinery as their prime mover but not forming part of the ship's main source of electrical power may be used whilst the ship is at sea to supply electrical services required for normal operational and habitable conditions provided that the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 2.5 Main propulsion driven generators not forming part of the main source of electrical power 2.5.2 to Pt 6, Ch 2, 2.5 Main propulsion driven generators not forming part of the main source of electrical power 2.5.4 are satisfied.

2. 5. 2 Within the declared operating range of the generators and/or generator system, the specified voltage and frequency variations of the Rules are to be met.

2. 5. 3 Where there is remote control of the propulsion machinery, arrangements are to ensure that essential machinery power supplies are maintained during manoeuvring conditions in order to prevent a blackout situation.

2. 5. 4 In addition to the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 2.2 Number and rating of generators and converting equipment 2.2.3, arrangements are to be fitted to automatically start one of the generators forming the main source of power should the frequency variations exceed those permitted by the Rules.

PART

6

CHAPTER **2** **Electrical Engineering**

SECTION **3** **Emergency source of electrical power**

3. 1 General

3. 1. 1 The requirements of this Section apply to passenger and cargo ships to be classed for unrestricted service. They do not apply to cargo ships of less than 500 tons gross tonnage.

3. 1. 2 For ships assigned a Service Restriction Notation in accordance with Pt 1, Ch 2 Classification Regulations, a lesser period than the 36 hour period and 18 hour period specified in Pt 6, Ch 2, 3.3, Emergency source of electrical power in passenger ships and Pt 6, Ch 2, 3.4, Emergency source of electrical power in cargo ships respectively may be considered, but not less than 12 hours.

3. 1. 3 The emergency source of power for cargo ships of less than 500 tons gross tonnage will be the subject of special consideration.

3. 2 Emergency source of electrical power in all ship types

3. 2. 1 All ships are to comply with the requirements as described in SOLAS II-1, Part D, *Regulation 40 - General* and *Regulation 41 - Main source of electrical power and lighting systems* except where expressly provided.

3. 2. 2 Where compliance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 3.2 Emergency source of electrical power in all ship types 3.2.1 is not practicable, details of the proposed design and arrangements are to be submitted for consideration in accordance with SOLAS II-1. Part F, *Regulation 55 Alternative design and arrangements*.

3. 3 Emergency source of electrical power in passenger ships

3. 3. 1 Passenger ships are to comply with the requirements as described in SOLAS II-1, Part D, *Regulation 42 - Emergency source of electrical power in passenger ships* and *Regulation 42-1 - Supplementary emergency lighting for ro-ro passenger ships* as applicable.

3. 3. 2 In passenger ships, supplementary lighting is to be provided in all cabins to indicate clearly the exit so that occupants will be able to find their way to the door as described in SOLAS II-1, Part D,*Regulation 41 - Main source of electrical power and lighting systems*.

3. 3. 3 Where compliance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 3.3 Emergency source of electrical power in passenger ships 3.3.1 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 3.3 Emergency source of electrical power in passenger ships 3.3.2 is not practicable, details of the proposed design and arrangements are to be submitted for consideration in accordance with SOLAS II-1, Paft F, *Regulation 55 Alternative design and arrangements*.

3. 4 Emergency source of electrical power in cargo ships

3. 4. 1 Cargo ships are to comply with the requirements as described in SOLAS II-1, Part D, *Regulation 43 - Emergency source of electrical power in cargo ships*.

3. 4. 2 Where compliance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 3.4 Emergency source of electrical power in cargo ships 3.4.1 is not practicable, details of the proposed design and arrangements are to be submitted for consideration in accordance with SOLAS II-1, Part F, *Regulation 55 Alternative design and arrangements*.

3. 5 Starting arrangements

3. 5. 1 Where the emergency source of power is a generator, the starting arrangements are to comply with the requirements given in SOLAS II-1, Part D, *Regulation 44 - Starting arrangements for emergency generating sets*.

3. 6 Prime mover governor

3. 6. 1 Where the emergency source of power is a generator, the governor is to comply with Pt 6, Ch 2, 2.4 Prime mover governors.

3. 7 Sources of Energy for Radio installation

3. 7. 1 The sources of energy required for each radio installation as required by SOLAS 1974 as amended, *Chapter IV*, *Part C - Ship requirements*, are to comply with SOLAS 1974 as amended, *Chapter IV*, Part C, *Regulation 13 - Sources of energy*.

PART

6

CHAPTER 2 **Electrical Engineering**

SECTION 4 **External source of electrical power**

4. 1 Temporary external supply

4. 1. 1 Where arrangements are made for the supply of electricity from a source on shore or elsewhere, a connection box is to be installed in a position suitable for the convenient reception of flexible cables from the external source and containing a circuit-breaker or isolating switch and fuses and terminals including one earthed, of ample size and suitable shape to facilitate a satisfactory connection of three-phase external supplies with earthed neutrals.

4. 1. 2 Suitable cables, permanently fixed, are to be provided, connecting the terminals in the connection box to a linked switch and/or a circuit-breaker at the main switchboard. An indicator is to be provided at the main switchboard in order to show when the cables are energised.

4. 1. 3 Means are to be provided for checking the phase sequence of the incoming supply.

4. 1. 4 At the connection box a notice is to be provided giving full information on the system of supply, the normal voltage and frequency of the installation's system and the procedure for carrying out the connection.

4. 1. 5 Alternative arrangements may be submitted for consideration. *See also* Pt 7, Ch 13 On-shore Power Supplies for class notation **OPS**.

4. 2 Permanent external supply

4. 2. 1 Details are to be submitted.

PART

6

CHAPTER **2** **Electrical Engineering**

SECTION **5** **Supply and distribution**

5. 1 Systems of supply and distribution

5. 1. 1 The following systems of generation and distribution are acceptable, other than for tankers intended for the carriage in bulk of oil, liquefied gases and other hazardous liquids having a flash point not exceeding 60°C (closed-cup test):

a. d.c., two-wire,
b. a.c., single-phase, two-wire;
c. a.c., three-phase;
   i. three-wire;
   ii. four-wire with neutral solidly earthed but without hull return.

5. 1. 2 For tankers intended for the carriage in bulk of oil, liquefied gases and other hazardous liquids having a flash point not exceeding 60°C (closed-cup test) only the following systems of generation and distribution are acceptable:

a. d.c., two-wire, insulated;
b. a.c., single-phase, two-wire, insulated;
c. a.c., three-phase, three-wire, insulated;
d. earthed systems, a.c. or d.c., limited to areas outside any hazardous space or zone, and arranged so that no current arising from an earth-fault in any part of the system could pass through a hazardous space or zone;
e. earthed systems, complying with Pt 6, Ch 2, 5.1 Systems of supply and distribution 5.1.1 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 5.5 Earthed distribution systems 5.5.7, provided the Government of the Flag State permits such an arrangement in accordance with the *'Equivalents'* provisions of SOLAS *Chapter I - General provisions*, Regulation 5, *See* Ch 1, 1.4 Equivalents of the Rules for Ships for Liquid Chemicals and/or the the Rules for Ships for Liquefied Gases, as appropriate, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.1 General 14.1.2.

Earthed intrinsically safe circuits are permitted to pass into and through hazardous spaces and zones.

5. 1. 3 System voltages for both alternating current and direct current in general are not to exceed:

- 15 000 V for generation and power distribution;
- 500 V for cooking and heating equipment permanently connected to fixed wiring;
- 250 V for lighting, heaters in cabins and public rooms, and other applications not mentioned above.

Voltages above these will be the subject of special consideration.

5. 1. 4 The arrangement of the main system of supply is to be such that a fire or other casualty in any space containing the main source of electrical power, associated converting equipment, if any, the

main switchboard and the main lighting switchboard will not render inoperable any emergency service, other than those located within the space where the fire or casualty has occurred.

5. 1. 5 The main switchboard is to be so placed relative to the main source of power that, as far as is practicable, the integrity of the main system of supply will be affected only by a fire or other casualty in one space.

5. 1. 6 The arrangement of the emergency system of supply is to be such that a fire or other casualty in spaces containing the emergency source of electrical power, associated converting equipment, if any, the emergency switchboard and the emergency lighting switchboard, will not cause loss of services required to maintain the propulsion and safety of the ship.

5. 1. 7 Distribution systems required in an emergency are to be so arranged that a fire in any one main fire zone, as defined by SOLAS 1974 as amended *Regulation 3 - Definitions*, will not interfere with the emergency distribution in any other such zone.

5. 2 Essential services

5. 2. 1 Essential services that are required by Pt 5 Main and Auxiliary Machinery to be duplicated are to be served by individual circuits, separated in their switchboard or section board and throughout their length as widely as is practicable without the use of common feeders, protective devices, control circuits or controlgear assemblies, so that any single fault will not cause the loss of both services.

5. 2. 2 Where Pt 6, Ch 2, 5.2 Essential services 5.2.1 is applicable the main busbars of the switchboard, or section boards, are to be capable of being split, by a multipole linked circuit breaker, disconnector or switch-disconnector, into at least two independent sections, each supplied by at least one generator, either directly or through a converter. The essential services are to be equally divided, as far as is practicable, between the independent sections.

5. 2. 3 Where Pt 6, Ch 2, 5.2 Essential services 5.2.2 is applicable provision is to be made to transfer to a temporary circuit those essential services which are not required to be, and have not been, duplicated in the event of loss of their normal section of switchboard or section-board.

5. 3 Isolation and switching

5. 3. 1 The incoming and outgoing circuits from every switchboard or section board are to be provided with a means of isolation and switching to permit each circuit to be switched off:

a. on load;
b. for mechanical maintenance;
c. in an emergency to prevent or remove danger.

In addition the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 5.3 Isolation and switching 5.3.2 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 5.3 Isolation and switching 5.3.3 are to be complied with.

5. 3. 2 Isolation and switching is to be by means of a circuit-breaker or switch arranged to open and close simultaneously all insulated poles. Where a switch is used as the means of isolation and switching, it is to be capable of:

a. switching off the circuit on load;
b. withstanding, without damage, the overcurrents which may arise during overloads and short-circuit.

In addition, these requirements do not preclude the provision of single pole control switches in final sub-circuits, for example light switches. For circuit-breakers, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 6.5, Circuit-breakers and Pt 6, Ch 2, 7.3 Circuit-breakers.

5. 3. 3 Provision is to be made, in accordance with one of the following, to prevent any circuit being inadvertently energised:

a. the circuit-breaker or switch can be withdrawn, or locked in the open position;
b. the operating handle of the circuit-breaker or switch can be removed;
c. the circuit fuses, where fitted, can be readily removed and retained by authorised personnel.

5. 3. 4 Where arrangements are in place for automatic changeover between two or more supplies of electrical power in the event of failure of one supply, the arrangements are to be such that a fault in one feeder does not result in the loss of all supplies to the automatic changeover switch.

5. 3. 5 Where a section board, distribution board or item of equipment can be supplied by more than one circuit, a switching device is to be provided to permit each incoming circuit to be isolated and the supply transferred to the alternative circuit. In addition, the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 5.3 Isolation and switching 5.3.6 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 5.3 Isolation and switching 5.3.7 are to be complied with.

5. 3. 6 The switching device required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 5.3 Isolation and switching 5.3.5 is to be situated within or adjacent to the section board, distribution board or item of equipment. Where necessary, interlocking arrangements are to be provided to prevent circuits being inadvertently energised.

5. 3. 7 A notice is to be fixed to any section board, distribution board or item of equipment to which Pt 6, Ch 2, 5.3 Isolation and switching 5.3.5 applies warning personnel before gaining access to live parts of the need to open the appropriate circuit-breakers or switches, unless an interlocking arrangement is provided so that all circuits concerned are isolated before access is gained.

5. 3. 8 Tankers designed in accordance with IEC 60092-502: *Electrical installations in ships – Part 502: Tankers – Special features* , *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.1 General 14.1.2, are to meet the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 5.3, Isolation and switching of that Standard.

5. 3. 9 Where high voltage equipment is contained in a room or protected area which also forms its enclosure, the access door(s) of the space is to be so interlocked that it cannot be opened until:

- the high voltage supply(ies) to the equipment is switched off;
- the equipment and its cable(s) are earthed down to dissipate stored energy sufficient to ensure personnel safety.

5. 3. 10 The access to the space(s) described in Pt 6, Ch 2, 5.3 Isolation and switching 5.3.9 are to be suitably marked to indicate the danger of high voltage.

5. 4 Insulated distribution systems

5. 4. 1 A device(s) is to be installed for every insulated distribution system, whether primary or secondary, for power, heating and lighting circuits, to continuously monitor the insulation level to earth and to operate an alarm in the engine control room, or equivalent attended position, in the event of an abnormally low level of insulation resistance, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 1, 4.2 Alarm system for machinery.

5. 4. 2 Where any insulated lower voltage system is supplied through transformers from a high voltage system, adequate precautions are to be taken to prevent the low voltage system being charged by capacitive leakage from the high voltage system.

5. 4. 3 Tankers designed in accordance with IEC 60092-502: *Electrical installations in ships – Part 502: Tankers – Special features* (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.1 General 14.1.2) are to meet the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 5.3, Isolation and switching of that Standard.

5. 4. 4 Where filters are fitted, for example to reduce EMC susceptibility, these are not to cause distribution systems to be unintentionally connected to earth.

5. 5 Earthed distribution systems

5. 5. 1 No fuse, non-linked switch or non-linked circuit-breaker is to be inserted in an earthed conductor. Any switch or circuit-breaker fitted is to operate simultaneously in the earthed conductor and the insulated conductors. These requirements do not preclude the provision (for test purposes) of an isolating link to be used only when the other conductors are isolated.

5. 5. 2 For high voltage systems, where the earthed neutral system of generation and primary distribution is used, earthing is to be through an impedance in order to limit the total earth fault current to a magnitude which does not exceed that of the three phase short-circuit current for which the generators are designed.

5. 5. 3 Generator neutrals may be connected in common, provided that the third harmonic content of the voltage waveform of each generator does not exceed five per cent.

5. 5. 4 Where a switchboard is split into sections operated independently or where there are separate switchboards, neutral earthing is to be provided for each section or for each switchboard. Means are to be provided to ensure that the earth connection is not removed when generators are isolated.

5. 5. 5 A means of isolation is to be fitted in the earthing connection of each generator so that generators can be completely isolated for maintenance.

5. 5. 6 All earthing impedances are to be connected to the hull. The connections to the hull are to be so arranged that any circulating currents in the earth connections do not interfere with radio, radar, communication and control equipment circuits.

5. 5. 7 Tankers designed in accordance with IEC 60092-502: *Electrical installations in ships – Part 502: Tankers – Special features* (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.1 General 14.1.2) are to meet the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 5.3, Isolation and switching of that Standard.

5. 6 Diversity factor

5. 6. 1 Circuits supplying two or more final sub-circuits are to be rated in accordance with the total connected load subject, where justified, to the application of a diversity factor. Where spare ways are provided on a section or distribution board, an allowance for future increase of load is to be added to the total connected load before application of any diversity factor.

5. 6. 2 A diversity factor may be applied to the calculation for size of cable and rating of switchgear and fusegear, taking into account the duty cycle of the connected loads and the frequency and duration of any motor starting loads.

5. 6. 3 For winches and crane motors the diversity factor is to be calculated and submitted when required.

5. 7 Lighting circuits

5. 7. 1 Lighting circuits are to be supplied by final sub-circuits separate from those for heating and power. This does not preclude the supply from a lighting circuit supplying a single fixed appliance, such as a cabin fan, a dry shaver, a wardrobe or anti-condensation heater, taking a maximum current of 2 A.

5. 7. 2 Lighting for the following spaces is to be supplied from at least two final sub-circuits in such a way that failure of one of the circuits does not leave the space in darkness. One of these circuits may be an emergency circuit provided it is normally energised.

- Spaces that are required to be lit for the safe working of the ship, such as control stations, normal working spaces, etc.
- Spaces where there may be a hazard due to movement of crew, passengers and/or equipment, such as in corridors, working passage ways, stairways leading to boat decks, public rooms, etc.

- Spaces where there may be a hazard due to moving machinery and hot parts, such as in machinery spaces, workshops, large galleys, laundries, etc.

5. 7. 3 Lighting for enclosed hazardous spaces is to be supplied from at least two final sub-circuits to permit light from one circuit to be retained while maintenance is carried out on the other. One of these circuits may be an emergency circuit, provided it is normally energised in which case the arrangements are to comply with Pt 6, Ch 2, 3 Emergency source of electrical power.

5. 7. 4 Emergency lighting is to be fitted in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 3 Emergency source of electrical power, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 18 Crew and passenger emergency safety systems.

5. 7. 5 Lighting of unattended spaces, such as cargo spaces, is to be controlled by multipole linked switches situated outside such spaces. Provision is to be made for the complete isolation of these circuits, and locking the means of control in the off position.

5. 7. 6 Where lighting circuits in the cargo pump-rooms of tankers are also used for emergency lighting, and have been interlocked with the ventilation, the interlocking arrangements are:

- not to cause the lighting to go out following a failure of the ventilation system; and
- not to prevent operation of the emergency lighting following the loss of the main source of electrical power.

5. 8 Motor circuits

5. 8. 1 separate final sub-circuit is to be provided for every motor for essential services, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.6 Definitions 1.6.1,.

5. 9 Motor control

5. 9. 1 Every electric motor is to be provided with efficient means for starting and stopping so placed as to be easily operated by the person controlling the motor. Every motor above 0.5 kW is to be provided with control apparatus as given in Pt 6, Ch 2, 5.9 Motor control 5.9.2.

5. 9. 2 Means to prevent undesired restarting after a stoppage due to low volts or complete loss of volts are to be provided. This does not apply to motors where a dangerous condition might result from the failure to restart automatically, e.g. steering gear motor.

5. 9. 3 Means for automatic disconnection of the supply in the event of excess current due to mechanical overloading of the motor are to be provided, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 6.11 Motor circuits.

5. 9. 4 Motor controlgear is to be suitable for the starting current and for the full load rated current of the motor.

5. 10 Harmonic distortion measurement

5. 10. 1 The requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 5.10 Harmonic distortion measurement apply to electrical distribution systems that include harmonic filters. This requirement applies both to high voltage and low voltage busbars. *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 6.13, Harmonic filters. Harmonic filters associated with frequency drives for individual applications (i.e. pump motors) are excluded from the following requirements.

5. 10. 2 Means are to be provided to continuously monitor the levels of harmonic distortion experienced on the main busbars and to operate an alarm in the engine control room, or equivalent attended position, in the event that the harmonic distortion exceeds the acceptable limits, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 1, 4.2 Alarm system for machinery.

5. 10. 3 Where the engine room is provided with automation systems to continuously monitor the levels of harmonic distortion experienced on the main busbars, this reading is to be logged electronically;

otherwise it is to be measured annually and after any modification to the craft electrical distribution system or associated consumers and recorded in the engine log book for future inspection by the Surveyor.

5. 11 Harmonic filtering

5. 11. 1 The requirements in this Section apply to systems provided with harmonic filters. They apply in particular to, but are not limited to, electrical propulsion systems and are in addition to the requirements for harmonic filters in Pt 6, Ch 2, 6.13, Harmonic filters.

5. 11. 2 Filters used to control harmonic distortion are to keep the distortion within acceptable limits at the main supply. *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.8, Quality of power supplies.

5. 11. 3 The service life of the harmonic filter is to be declared, and details are to be included in the harmonic calculation report.

5. 11. 4 The temperature rating of the harmonic filter is to allow for the increased heating effect of the harmonic distortion.

5. 11. 5 The construction of cabinets for harmonic filters shall be in accordance with the standards for main switchboards, where applicable. *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 7 Switchgear and controlgear assemblies.

5. 11. 6 The modes of operation of the electrical distribution system for which harmonic distortion levels at the main switchboard busbars are maintained within the acceptable limits during normal operation are to be defined by the system integrator.

5. 11. 7 Harmonic distortion calculations are to include levels of harmonic distortion expected in normal operation and in the event of a failure of a harmonic filter or the failure of any combination of harmonic filters. *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 21.2, Trials.

PART

6

CHAPTER 2 Electrical Engineering

SECTION 6 System design – Protection

6. 1 General

6. 1. 1 Installations are to be protected against overcurrents including short-circuits, and other electrical faults. The tripping/fault clearance times of the protective devices are to provide complete and co-ordinated protection to ensure:

a. availability of essential and emergency services under fault conditions through discriminative action of the protective devices; as far as practicable the arrangements are also to secure the availability of other services;

b. elimination of the fault to reduce damage to the system and hazard of fire.

6. 1. 2 Short-circuit and overload protection are to be provided in each non-earthed line of each system of supply and distribution, unless exempted under the provisions of any paragraph in this Section.

6. 1. 3 The protection of circuits is to be such that a fault in a circuit does not cause the interruption of supplies used to provide emergency or essential services other than those dependent on the circuit where the fault occurred. For circuits used to provide essential services which need not necessarily be in continuous operation to maintain propulsion and steering but which are necessary for maintaining the vessel's safety, arrangements that ensure that a fault in a circuit does not cause the sustained interruption of supply to healthy circuits may be accepted. Such arrangements are to ensure the supply to healthy circuits is automatically re-established in sufficient time after a fault in a circuit.

6. 1. 4 Protection systems are to be developed using a systematic design procedure incorporating verification and validation methods to ensure successful implementation of the requirements above. Details of the procedures used are to be submitted when requested. An approved copy of the details required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.5 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.6 is to be retained on board and made available to the Surveyor on request. Access to protection relays setpoints is to be restricted, such that they will generally only be adjusted by authorised personnel to avoid accidental operation. A record is to be kept of the initial setpoints and any subsequent changes made to them. These details are to be made available to the Surveyor on request.

6. 1. 5 Short-circuit protection is to be provided for each source of power and at each point at which a distribution circuit branches into two or more subsidiary circuits.

6. 1. 6 Where protection for generator power circuits is provided at the associated switchboard, the cabling between generator and switchboard is to be of a type, and installed in a manner such as to minimise the risk of short-circuit.

6. 1. 7 Protection for battery circuits is to be provided at a position external and adjacent to the battery compartments. Where arrangements comply with Pt 6, Ch 2, 12.3 Location 12.3.5, the protection may be installed at a suitable location in the battery compartment.

6. 1. 8 Protection may be omitted from the following:

a. Engine starting battery circuits.
b. Circuits for which it can be shown that the risk resulting from spurious operation of the protective device may be greater than that resulting from a fault.

6. 1. 9 Short-circuit protection may be omitted from cabling or wiring to items of equipment internally protected against short-circuit or where it can be shown that they are unlikely to fail to a short-circuit condition and where the cabling or wiring is installed in a manner such as to minimise the risk of short-circuit.

6. 1. 10 Overload protection may be omitted from the following:
a. one line of circuits of the insulated type;
b. circuits supplying equipment incapable of being overloaded, or overloading the associated supply cable, under normal conditions, and unlikely to fail to an overload condition.

6. 2 Protection against short-circuit

6. 2. 1 Protection against short-circuit currents is to be provided by circuit-breakers or fuses.

6. 2. 2 The rated short-circuit making and breaking capacity of every protective device is to be adequate for the prospective fault level at its point of installation; the requirements for circuit-breakers and fuses are detailed in Pt 6, Ch 2, 6.5, Circuit-breakers and Pt 6, Ch 2, 6.6 Fuses respectively.

6. 2. 3 The prospective fault current is to be calculated for the following set of conditions:
a. all generators, motors and, where applicable, all transformers, connected as far as permitted by any interlocking arrangements;
b. a fault of negligible impedance close up to the load side of the protective device.

6. 2. 4 In the absence of precise data, the prospective fault current may be taken to be:
a. for alternating current systems at the main switchboard: $10 \times$ f. l. c. (rated full load current) for each generator that may be connected, or, if the subtransient direct axis reactance, $X"_d$, of each generator is known,

$$\frac{\text{f.l.c.}}{\text{X}''_{\text{d}}(\text{p. u.})}$$

for each generator, and $3 \times$ f. l. c. for motors simultaneously in service.
The value derived from the above is an approximation to the r.m.s. symmetrical fault current; the peak asymmetrical fault current may be estimated to be 2.5 times this figure (corresponding to a fault power factor of approximately 0.1).
b. battery-fed direct current systems at the battery terminals:
i. 15 times ampere hour rating of the battery for vented lead-acid cells, or of alkaline type intended for discharge at low rates corresponding to a battery duration exceeding three hours, or
ii. 30 times ampere hour rating of the battery for sealed lead-acid cells having a capacity of 100 Ampere hours or more, or of alkaline type intended for discharge at high rates corresponding to a battery duration not exceeding three hours and,
iii. $6 \times$ f. l. c. for motors simultaneously in service (if applicable).

6. 3 Protection against overload

6. 3. 1 The characteristics of protective devices provided for overload protection are to ensure that cabling and electrical machinery are protected against overheating resulting from mechanical or electrical overload.

6. 3. 2 Fuses of a type intended for short-circuit protection only (e.g. high-voltage fuses or fuses complying with IEC 60269-1: *Low-voltage fuses – Part 1: General requirements*, of type 'a') are not to be used for overload protection.

6. 4 Protection against earth faults

6. 4. 1 Every distribution system that has an intentional connection to earth, by way of an impedance, is to be provided with a means to continuously monitor and indicate the current flowing in the earth connection.

6. 4. 2 If the current in the earth connection exceeds 5 A there is to be an alarm and the fault current is to be automatically interrupted or limited to a safe value.

6. 4. 3 The rated short-circuit capacity of any device used for interrupting earth fault currents is to be not less than the prospective earth fault current at its point of installation.

6. 4. 4 Insulated neutral systems with harmonic distortion of the voltage waveform, which may result in earth fault currents exceeding the level given in Pt 6, Ch 2, 6.4 Protection against earth faults 6.4.2 because of capacitive effects, are to be provided with arrangements to isolate the faulty circuit(s).

6. 5 Circuit-breakers

6. 5. 1 Circuit-breakers for alternating current systems are to satisfy the following conditions:

a. the r.m.s. symmetrical breaking current for which the device is rated is to be not less than the r.m.s. value of the a.c. component of the prospective fault current, at the instant of contact separation (i.e. first half cycle, or time of interruption where an intentional time delay is provided to ensure suitability);

b. the peak asymmetrical making current for which the device is rated is not to be less than the peak value of the prospective fault current at the first half cycle, allowing for maximum asymmetry;

c. the power factor at which the device short-circuit ratings are assigned is to be no greater than that of the prospective fault current; alternatively for high voltage, the rated percentage d.c. component of the short-circuit breaking current of the device is to be not less than that of the prospective fault current.

6. 5. 2 Circuit-breakers for d.c. systems are to have a breaking current not less than the initial prospective fault current. The time constant of the fault current is not to be greater than that for which the circuit-breaker was tested.

6. 5. 3 The fault ratings considered in Pt 6, Ch 2, 6.5 Circuit-breakers 6.5.1 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 6.5 Circuit-breakers 6.5.2, are to be assigned on the basis that the device is suitable for further use after fault clearance.

6. 5. 4 Circuit-breaker selection is, and ratings are, to be in accordance with the relevant requirements of IEC 60092- 202: *Electrical installations in ships* – Part 2*02: System design – Protection*. Alternative methods acceptable to ACS of selecting suitable circuit-breakers may be considered.

6. 5. 5 Where parallel filter circuits are to be used the current imbalance is to be monitored;

6. 6 Fuses

6. 6. 1 Fuses for a.c. systems are to have a breaking current rating not less than the initial r.m.s. value of the a.c. component of the prospective fault current.

6. 6. 2 Fuses for d.c. systems are to have a d.c. breaking current rating not less than the initial value of the prospective fault current.

6. 7 Circuit-breakers requiring back-up by fuse or other device

6. 7. 1 The use of a circuit-breaker having a short-circuit current capacity less than the prospective short-circuit current at the point of installation is permitted, provided that it is preceded by a device having at least the necessary short-circuit capacity. The generator circuit-breakers are not to be used for this purpose.

6. 7. 2 The same device may back-up more than one circuit-breaker provided that no essential or emergency service is supplied from there, or that any such service is duplicated by arrangements unaffected by tripping of the device.

6. 7. 3 The combination of back-up device and circuit-breaker is to have a short-circuit performance at least equal to that of a single circuit-breaker satisfying the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 6.5, Circuit-breakers.

6. 7. 4 Evidence of testing of the combination is to be submitted for consideration; alternatively, consideration may be given to arrangements where it can be shown that:

a. the takeover current, above which the back-up device would clear a fault, is not greater than the rated short-circuit breaking capacity of the circuit-breaker and;
b. the characteristics of the back-up device, and the prospective fault level, are such that the peak fault current rating of the circuit-breaker cannot be exceeded and;
c. the Joule integral of the let-through current of the back-up device does not exceed that corresponding to the rated breaking current and opening time of the circuit-breaker.

6. 8 Protection of generators

6. 8. 1 The protective gear required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 6.8 Protection of generators 6.8.2 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 6.8 Protection of generators 6.8.3 is to be provided as a minimum.

6. 8. 2 Generators not arranged to run in parallel are to be provided with a circuit-breaker arranged to open simultaneously, in the event of short-circuit, overload or under-voltage, all insulated poles. In the case of generators rated at less than 50 kW, a multipole linked switch with a fuse, complying with Pt 6, Ch 2, 5.3 Isolation and switching 5.3.2, in each insulated pole will be acceptable.

6. 8. 3 Generators arranged to operate in parallel are to be provided with a circuit-breaker arranged to open simultaneously, in the event of a short-circuit, an overload or an under-voltage, all insulated poles. This circuit-breaker is to be provided with reverse power protection with time delay, selected or set within the limits of 2% to 15% of full load to a value fixed in accordance with the characteristics of the prime mover; a fall of 50% in the applied voltage is not to render the reverse power mechanism inoperative, although it may alter the amount of reverse power required to open the breakers.

6. 8. 4 The generator circuit-breaker short-circuit and overload tripping arrangements, or fuse characteristics, are to be such that the machine's thermal withstand capability is not exceeded.

6. 8. 5 All high-voltage generators and low-voltage generators having a capacity of 1500 kVA or above are to be equipped with a protective device which, in the event of a short-circuit in the generator or in the cables between the generator and its circuit-breaker, will instantaneously open the circuit-breaker and de-excite the generator.

6. 8. 6 The voltage and time delay settings of the under-voltage release mechanism(s) required by:

- Pt 6, Ch 2, 6.8 Protection of generators 6.8.2 and
- Pt 6, Ch 2, 6.8 Protection of generators 6.8.3

are to be chosen to maintain the discriminative action detailed in Pt 6, Ch 2, 6.1, General

6. 9 Load management

6. 9. 1 Arrangements are to be made to disconnect automatically, after an appropriate time delay, circuits of the following categories, when the generator(s) is/are overloaded, sufficient to ensure the connected generating set(s) is/are not overloaded:

a. non-essential circuits;
b. circuits feeding services for habitability, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.6 Definitions 1.6.2;
c. in cargo ships, circuits for cargo refrigeration.

Note For emergency generators *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 3.3 Emergency source of electrical power in passenger ships 3.3.1 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 3.4 Emergency source of electrical power in cargo ships 3.4.1 as applicable.

6. 9. 2 If required, this load switching may be carried out in one or more stages, in which case the non-essential circuits are to be included in the first group to be disconnected.

6. 9. 3 The load management of power systems supplying electric propulsion motors is to satisfy the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 16.3, Power requirements.

6. 9. 4 Consideration is to be given to providing means to inhibit automatically the starting of large motors, or the connection of other large loads, until sufficient generating capacity is available to supply them.

6. 10 Feeder circuits

6. 10. 1 Isolation and protection of each feeder circuit is to be ensured by a multipole circuit-breaker or linked switch with a fuse in each insulated conductor. Protection is to be in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 6.2 Protection against short-circuit and Pt 6, Ch 2, 6.3 Protection against overload. The protective devices are to allow excess current to pass during the normal accelerating period of motors.

6. 11 Motor circuits

6. 11. 1 Motors of rating exceeding 0.5 kW and all motors for essential services are to be protected individually against overload and short-circuit. For motors which for essential services are duplicated, the overload protection may be replaced by an overload alarm; arrangements for steering gear motors are to comply with Pt 6, Ch 2, 15.1, Steering gear.

6. 11. 2 Protection for both the motor and its supply cable may be provided by the same device, provided that due account is taken of any differences between ratings of cable and motor.

6. 11. 3 Where operation of an item of equipment is dependent upon a number of motors, consideration may be given to the provision of a common means of short-circuit protection.

6. 11. 4 For motors for intermittent service, the characteristics of the arrangements for overload protection are to be chosen in relation to the load factor(s) of the motor(s).

6. 11. 5 Where fuses are used to protect polyphase motor circuits, means are to be provided to protect the motor from unacceptable overcurrent in the case of single phasing.

6. 12 Protection of transformers

6. 12. 1 Short-circuit protection for transformers is to be provided by circuit-breakers or fuses in the primary circuit and in addition, overload protection is to be provided either in the primary or secondary circuit.

6. 12. 2 Arrangements are to be made to prevent the primary windings of transformers being inadvertently energised from their secondary side when disconnected from their source supply.

6. 13 Harmonic filters

6. 13. 1 Harmonic filters' final sub-circuits are to be protected individually and individually on each phase against overload and short-circuit. The activation of the protection arrangement in a single phase shall result in automatic disconnection of the complete filter.

6. 13. 2 A current imbalance detection system is to be installed; it is to be independent from the protection specified in Pt 6, Ch 2, 6.13 Harmonic filters 6.13.1.

6. 13. 3 An alarm is to be initiated in the event of protective device operation or current unbalance that could lead to failure of harmonic filter.

6. 13. 4 Current imbalance circuits are to be 'fail safe'. The characteristics of the 'fail safe' operation are to be evaluated not only on the basis of the system and its associated machinery, but also the complete installation, as well as the ship.

6. 13. 5 The reconnection of harmonic filters is to require manual intervention.

6. 13. 6 Individual harmonic filter capacitors are to be provided with a pressure relief valve or overpressure disconnector to protect against damage from rupture where pressure build-up within hermetically sealed capacitors may occur.

PART

6

CHAPTER **2** **Electrical Engineering**

SECTION **7** **Switchgear and controlgear assemblies**

7. 1 General requirements

7. 1. 1 Switchgear and controlgear assemblies and their components are to comply with the following standards, as appropriate for the nominal voltage and, amended where necessary for ambient temperature and other environmental conditions:

a. IEC 61439: *Low-voltage switchgear and controlgear assemblies* (relevant parts);

b. IEC 62271-200: *High-voltage switchgear and controlgear* – Part 2*00: AC metal-enclosed switchgear and controlgear for rated voltages above 1 kV and up to and including 52 kV;*

c. IEC 62271-201: *High-voltage switchgear and controlgear* — Part 2*01: AC insulation-enclosed switchgear and controlgear for rated voltages above 1 kV and up to and including 52 kV*;

d. IEC 60092-503: *Electrical installations in ships – Part 503: Special features – AC supply systems with voltages in the range of above 1 kV up to and including 15 kV*;

e. IEC 60255: *Measuring relays and protection equipment*; or

f. an acceptable and relevant National Standard.

In addition, the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 7.2 Busbarsto Pt 6, Ch 2, 7.19 Disconnectors and switch-disconnectors are to be complied with.

7. 2 Busbars

7. 2. 1 Busbars and their connections are to be of copper or aluminium, all connections being so made as to inhibit corrosion/oxidisation between current-carrying mating faces, which may result in poor electrical contact giving rise to overheating. Busbars and their supports are to be designed to withstand the mechanical stresses which may arise during short-circuits. A test report or calculation to verify the short-circuit withstand strength of the busbar system is to be submitted for consideration when required.

7. 2. 2 For bare conductors, where no precautions are taken against surface oxidisation, the temperature rise limit at rated normal current is not to exceed 45°C. Where suitable precautions are taken against surface oxidisation, e.g. by using silver, nickel or tin coated terminations, a temperature rise limit not exceeding 60°C is permitted. Where the busbar temperature rises are above 45°C it is to be ensured that there is no adverse effect on equipment adjacent to and/or connected to the busbars and that the temperature rise limits of any materials in contact with the busbars are not exceeded. A test report or calculation to verify the rated current assigned to the busbar system is to be submitted for consideration when required.

7. 3 Circuit-breakers

7. 3. 1 Circuit-breakers are to comply with one of the following standards amended where necessary for ambient temperature:

a. IEC 60947-2: *Low-voltage switchgear and controlgear* – Part 2*: Circuit-breakers*; or
b. IEC 62271-100:*High-voltage switchgear and controlgear – Part 100: Alternating current circuit-breakers*; or
c. an acceptable and relevant National Standard.

Type test reports to verify the characteristics of a circuit-breaker are to be submitted for consideration when required.

7. 3. 2 Circuit-breakers are to be capable of isolation.

7. 3. 3 Circuit-breakers are to be of the trip free type and, where applicable, be fitted with anti-pumping control.

7. 3. 4 High-voltage circuit-breakers are to be of the withdrawable type or with equivalent means or arrangements permitting safe maintenance whilst the busbars are live.

7. 3. 5 Where the means of setting adjustable protection characteristics are not durably marked and locked in position and cannot be visually inspected (e.g. electronic storage), the settings of characteristics are to be recorded and a copy of the records included in the details retained on board, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 6.1 General 6.1.4.

7. 3. 6 Air circuit-breakers for essential or emergency services and rated at 800 A and above are to have a cumulative count kept of the switching operations of the electrical contacts. This count, along with the manufacturer's details for the circuit-breaker, including the maximum number of switching operations for the electrical contacts, is to be retained on board. These details are to be made available to the Surveyor on request.

7. 4 Contactors

7. 4. 1 High-voltage contactors are to comply with one of the following standards amended where necessary for ambient temperature:

a. IEC 62271-106: *High-voltage switchgear and controlgear – Part 106: Alternating current contactors, contactor-based controllers and motor-starters; or*
b. an acceptable and relevant National Standard.

Type test reports to verify the characteristics of a contactor are to be submitted for consideration when required.

7. 4. 2 High-voltage contactors are to be of the withdrawable type or with equivalent means or arrangements permitting safe maintenance whilst the busbars are live.

7. 5 Creepage and clearance distances

7. 5. 1 The shortest distances between conductive parts and between conductive parts and earth, in air or along the surface of an insulating material, are to be suitable for the rated voltage having regard to:

- the nature of the insulating material;
- the transient over voltages developed by switching and fault conditions; and
- the environment into which the assembly will be installed.

Each assembly type is to be subjected to an impulse voltage test in accordance with its constructional Standard or, alternatively, the minimum distances for bare conductive parts in switchgear and controlgear assemblies given in Table 2. 7. 1: Minimum clearance distances are to be used.

Table 2. 7. 1: Minimum clearance distances

Nominal voltage (V)	Minimum clearance distance (mm)		
	Verified assemblies, *See* Note 2		Non-verified assemblies
	Main switchboards	Other switchgear and controlgear	Main switchboards and other switch and controlgear
≤250 (*See* Note 1)	8	8	15
≤690 (*See* Note 1)	8	8	20
≤1000 (*See* Note 1)	8	8	25
<3300	32	26	55
<6600	60	50	90
<11000	100	80	120
≤15000	*See* Note 3	*See* Note 3	160

Note *1* For assemblies installed in spaces where the pollution degree is > 3, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 7.5 Creepage and clearance distances 7.5.2.

Note *2* For the verification requirements for a verified assembly refer to IEC 61439-2.

Note *3* Clearance distances with reference to the applicable relevant National or International Standards, are to be submitted for approval, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.3 Documentation required for supporting evidence 1.3.4.

7. 5. 2 For assemblies with a rated voltage of up to and including 1kV, the requirement of Pt 6, Ch 2, 7.5 Creepage and clearance distances 7.5.1 may be met by complying with IEC 60092-302 *Electrical installations in ships – Part 302: Low-voltage switchgear and controlgear assemblies.*

- Table 2. 7. 1: Minimum clearance distances and Table 2. 7. 2: Minimum creepage distances indicate the minimum clearance and creepage distances normally allowed.
- For assemblies installed in spaces where the environmental conditions are in excess of pollution degree 3 (that is conductive pollution occurs or dry, non conductive pollution occurs which is expected to be conductive due to condensation) as defined in IEC 61439-1, *Low-voltage switchgear and controlgear assemblies – Part 1: General requirements*; the clearance distances for non-verified assemblies are to be used.
- A minimum creepage distance of 16 mm is permitted for assemblies verified in accordance with the requirements of IEC 61439-2, *Low-voltage switchgear and controlgear assemblies* – Part 2*: Power switchgear and controlgear assemblies.*
- An alternative relevant National or International Standard may be used when an acceptable justification is submitted as part of the documentation required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.3 Documentation required for supporting evidence 1.3.4.

7. 5. 3 For assemblies with a rated voltage above 1kV, the requirement of Pt 6, Ch 2, 7.5 Creepage and clearance distances 7.5.1 may be met by complying with IEC 60092-503 *Electrical installations in ships – Part 503: Special features – AC supply systems with voltages in the range of above 1 kV up to and including 15 kV*.

- Table 2. 7. 1: Minimum clearance distances and Table 2. 7. 2: Minimum creepage distances indicate the minimum clearance and creepage distances normally allowed.
- For main switchboards rated at above 1kV, a minimum clearance distance of 25 mm is required for busbars and other bare conductors.

- An alternative relevant National or International Standard may be used when an acceptable justification is submitted as part of the documentation required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.3 Documentation required for supporting evidence 1.3.4.

Table 2. 7. 2: Minimum creepage distances

Nominal voltage (V)	Minimum creepage distance (mm)	
	Main switchboards	Other switchgear and controlgear
≤250 (*See* Note 1)	20	20
≤690 (*See* Note 1)	25	25
≤1000 (*See* Note 1)	35	35
<3300	48	*See* Note 2
<6600	90	70
<11, 000	150	120
≤15, 000	*See* Note 2	*See* Note 2

Note *1* For verified assemblies a minimum creepage distance of 16 mm is permitted for LV switchboards, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 7.5 Creepage and clearance distances 7.5.2.

Note *2* Creepage distances, with reference to the applicable relevant National or International Standards, are to be submitted for approval, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.3 Documentation required for supporting evidence 1.3.3.

7. 5. 4 Suitable shrouding or barriers are to be provided in way of connections to equipment, where necessary, to maintain the minimum distances in Table 2. 7. 1: Minimum clearance distances.

7. 6 Degree of protection

7. 6. 1 Low voltage assemblies where the rated voltage between conductors or to earth exceeds 55 V a.c. or 250 V d.c. are to be of the deadfront or enclosed type. High-voltage assemblies are to be of the enclosed type.

7. 6. 2 Where switchboards or section boards are required to comply with Pt 6, Ch 2, 5.2 Essential services 5.2.2, barriers are to be installed to provide protection for the independent sections against contamination due to the products of arcing, which may result in a fault.

7. 6. 3 Segregation between low-voltage and high-voltage circuits and equipment installed within common assemblies is to be in accordance with IEC 62271-1: *High-voltage switchgear and controlgear – Part 1: Common specifications*.

7. 7 Distribution boards

7. 7. 1 Distribution boards are to be suitably enclosed unless they are installed in a cupboard or compartment to which only authorised persons have access in which case the cupboard may serve as an enclosure, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 7.16 Position of switchboards 7.16.4.

7. 8 Earthing of high-voltage switchboards

7. 8. 1 High-voltage switchboards are to be provided with suitable means to earth isolated circuits so that they are discharged and so maintained that they are safe to touch.

7. 8. 2 Protective shutters associated with withdrawable parts are to be clearly marked to indicate the incoming and outgoing circuits and bus tie connections. The colour coding shall be as follows:

- Incoming (busbar side) – red;
- Outgoing (circuit side) – yellow; and
- Bus ties – red

7. 9 Fuses

7. 9. 1 Fuses are to comply with one of the following Standards amended where necessary for ambient temperature:

a. IEC 60269 (all parts): *Low-voltage fuses* ;
b. IEC 60282-1: *High-voltage fuses – Part 1: Current-limiting fuses*;
c. acceptable and relevant National Standard for enclosed current-limiting fuses.

Type test reports to verify the characteristics of a fuse are to be submitted for consideration when required.

7. 10 Handrails or handles

7. 10. 1 All main and emergency switchboards are to be provided with an insulated handrail or insulated handles suitably fitted on the front of the switchboard. Where access to the rear is required, a horizontal insulated handrail is to be suitably fitted on the rear of the switchboard.

7. 11 Instruments for alternating current generators

7. 11. 1 For alternating current generators not operated in parallel, each generator is to be provided with at least one voltmeter, one frequency meter, and one ammeter with an ammeter switch to enable the current in each phase to be read, or an ammeter in each phase. Generators above 50 kVA are also to be provided with a wattmeter.

7. 11. 2 For alternating current generators operated in parallel, each generator is to be provided with a wattmeter, and one ammeter with an ammeter switch to enable the current in each phase to be read, or an ammeter in each phase.

7. 11. 3 For paralleling purposes, two voltmeters, two frequency meters and two synchronising devices, of which one at least is to be a synchroscope or a set of lamps are to be provided. One voltmeter and one frequency meter are to be connected to the busbars, the other voltmeter and frequency meter are to be switched to enable the voltage and frequency of any generator to be measured. Where the electrical power requirement to maintain the ship in a normal operational and habitable condition is usually supplied by two or more generators operating in parallel, the two synchronising devices are to be independent of each other, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 2.2 Number and rating of generators and converting equipment 2.2.1.

7. 11. 4 The indicators and displays required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 7.11 Instruments for alternating current generators 7.11.1 to Pt 6, Ch 2, 7.11 Instruments for alternating current generators 7.11.3 are to be located and arranged such that they may be viewed at a single operating position. Where manual paralleling is provided, it is to be possible to adjust voltage and frequency at this position; generators are to have controls to adjust their voltage and frequency located at the single operating position. Access to voltage adjustment is to be restricted, such that it will generally only be used by authorised personnel to avoid accidental operation.

7. 11. 5 Where the indications of voltage, frequency, current and power are displayed digitally, the indications are to be separately displayed.

7. 12 Instrument scales

7. 12. 1 The upper limit of the scale of every voltmeter is to be approximately 120% of the nominal voltage of the circuit, and the nominal voltage is to be clearly indicated.

7. 12. 2 The upper limit of the scale of every ammeter is to be approximately 130% of the normal rating of the circuit in which it is installed. Normal full load is to be clearly indicated.

7. 12. 3 Kilowatt meters for use with alternating current generators which may be operated in parallel are to be capable of indicating 15% reverse power.

7. 12. 4 Where the indications provided by the instrumentation required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 7.11, Instruments for alternating current generators are displayed digitally, nominal voltage, over voltage, over current and reverse power indications are to be indicated by an appropriate means. The information provided is to be clearly visible and immediately available.

7. 12. 5 In general, indications provided by instrumentation which are displayed digitally are not to change more frequently than twice per second.

7. 13 Labels

7. 13. 1 The identification of individual circuits and their devices is to be made on labels of durable material. The ratings of fuses and settings of protective devices are also to be indicated. Section and distribution boards are to be marked with the rated voltage.

7. 14 Protection

7. 14. 1 *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 6 System design – Protection.

7. 15 Wiring

7. 15. 1 Insulated wiring connecting components are to be stranded, flame retardant and manufactured in accordance with a relevant and acceptable National Standard.

7. 16 Position of switchboards

7. 16. 1 An unobstructed space not less than 1 m wide is to be provided in front of switchboards and section boards. When switchboards and section boards contain withdrawable equipment the unobstructed space is to be not less than 0.4 m wide with this equipment in its fully withdrawn position.

7. 16. 2 Where necessary, the space at the rear of switchboards and section boards is to be ample to permit maintenance and in general not less than 0.6 m except that this may be reduced to 0.5 m in way of stiffeners or frames.

7. 16. 3 The spaces defined in Pt 6, Ch 2, 7.16 Position of switchboards 7.16.1 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 7.16 Position of switchboards 7.16.2 are to have non-slip surfaces. Where access to live parts within switchboards and section boards is normally possible the surface is, in addition, to be electrically insulated.

7. 16. 4 So far as is practicable, pipes are not be installed directly above or in front of or behind switchboards, section boards and distribution boards. If such placing is unavoidable, suitable protection is to be provided in these positions, *See* Pt 5, Ch 13, 2 Construction and installation.

7. 16. 5 For switchgear and controlgear assemblies, for rated voltages above 1 kV, arrangements are to be made to protect personnel in the event of gases or vapours escaping under pressure as the result of arcing due to an internal fault. Where personnel may be in the vicinity of the equipment when it is energised, this may be achieved by an assembly that has been tested in accordance with Annex A of IEC 62271-200:2011: *High-voltage switchgear and controlgear* – Part 2*00: AC metal-enclosed switchgear and controlgear for rated voltages above 1 kV and up to and including 52 kV* and qualified for classification **IAC** (internal arc classification).

7. 17 Switchboard auxiliary power supplies

7. 17. 1 Where the operation of a protective device relies upon a power supply, an alarm is to be provided to indicate failure of the power supply, unless its failure causes automatic tripping of the protected circuit.

7. 18 Testing

7. 18. 1 Tests in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 7.18 Testing 7.18.2to Pt 6, Ch 2, 7.18 Testing 7.18.4are to be satisfactorily carried out on all assemblies, complete or in sections, at the manufacturer's premises, and a test report issued by the manufacturer, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.4 Surveys 1.4.2.

7. 18. 2 A high voltage test, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 21 Testing and trials.

7. 18. 3 Calibration of protective devices and indicating instruments is to be verified by means of current and/or voltage injection.

7. 18. 4 Demonstration of the satisfactory operation of protection circuits, control circuits and interlocks by means of simulated functional tests.

7. 18. 5 For switchgear and controlgear assemblies, for rated voltages above 1 kV, type tests are to be carried out, in accordance with Annex A of IEC 62271-200:2011: *High-voltage switchgear and controlgear* – Part 2*00: AC metal-enclosed switchgear and controlgear for rated voltages above 1 kV and up to and including 52 kV* and IAC (internal arc classification) assigned, to verify that the assembly will withstand the effects of an internal arc occurring within the enclosure at a prospective fault level equal to, or in excess of, that of the installation.

7. 19 Disconnectors and switch-disconnectors

7. 19. 1 Disconnectors, switch-disconnectors and their components are to comply with one of the following standards, amended where necessary for ambient temperature and other environmental conditions:

a. IEC 60947–3: *Low-voltage switchgear and controlgear – Part 3: Switches, disconnectors, switch-disconnectors and fuse-combination units*;
b. IEC 62271-102: *High-voltage switchgear and controlgear – Part 102: High-voltage alternating current disconnectors and earthing switches*;
c. acceptable and relevant National Standard.

Type test reports to verify the characteristics of a disconnector or switch-disconnector are to be submitted for consideration when required.

PART

6

CHAPTER 2 **Electrical Engineering**

SECTION 8 **Protection from electric arc hazards within electrical equipment**

8. 1 General

8. 1. 1 An assessment is to be carried out in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 8.2 Hazard identification and assessment 8.2.1 for all electrical equipment within which an arcing fault could occur, such as:

- harmonic filters;
- motor starter panels;
- semiconductor converters;
- switchboards, section boards and distribution boards; or
- transformers.

8. 2 Hazard identification and assessment

8. 2. 1 An assessment is to be carried out to identify the hazards and their consequences for personnel resulting from electric arcs within the electrical equipment identified in Pt 6, Ch 2, 8.1 General 8.1.1. The purpose of the assessment is to demonstrate that the design incorporates adequate measures to reduce the risk of injury to personnel should an arcing fault occur within the electrical equipment, and that this will help to ensure both personnel and ship safety.

Details of the following are to be submitted:

a. each task to be performed, e.g. switching, equipment maintenance, instrument observation or cleaning;
b. the hazards to personnel that could result from an electric arc occurring during each task, and the hazards to personnel that could result from the electric arc;
c. the methods to be used to help to prevent electric arcs; and
d. the methods to be used to protect personnel from hazards resulting from electric arcs within electrical equipment.

8. 3 Calculations to be submitted

8. 3. 1 The following calculations are to be conducted and used in the hazard identification and assessment:

a. calculations of the maximum current that would flow through an electric arc between each conductor and its adjacent conductor, and between each conductor and the exposed conductive parts of the enclosure, in the case of an arcing fault;

b. the maximum incident energy at the intended working distance in the case of an arcing fault; and
c. the distance from each conductor at which the incident energy would be 5 Joules (1.2 calories) per centimetre squared in the case of an arcing fault when the enclosure door is open.

These calculations may be made in accordance with a relevant Standard acceptable to ACS, for example, IEEE Standard 1584, *IEEE Guide for Performing Arc-Flash Hazard Calculations*.

8. 4 Testing and trials

8. 4. 1 It is to be demonstrated that, where provided, arrangements to detect arcing faults function correctly.

PART

6

CHAPTER **2** **Electrical Engineering**

SECTION **9** **Rotating machines**

9. 1 General requirements

9. 1. 1 In addition to the requirements of this Section, rotating machines are to comply with the relevant requirements of the following standards, amended where necessary for ambient temperature, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.9, Ambient reference and operating conditions:

a. IEC 60034 *Rotating electrical machines* (all parts); and
b. IEC 60092: *Electrical installations in ships* (all parts)*;* or
c. an alternative International or National Standard acceptable to ACS.

9. 1. 2 The insulation systems of electrical rotating machines used for essential services are to be tested following the principles detailed in IEC 60505, *Evaluation and qualification of electrical insulations systems*, or an equivalent International or National Standard acceptable to ACS.

9. 1. 3 For all the rotating machines a manufacturer's test certificate is to be provided, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.4 Surveys 1.4.2 to Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.4 Surveys 1.4.4.

9. 1. 4 All machines of 100 kW and over, intended for essential services, are to be surveyed by the Surveyor during manufacture and test, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.4 Surveys 1.4.6.

9. 1. 5 Shaft materials for rotating machines for essential services are to comply with the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials and be manufactured under ACS survey for the following applications:

a. shaft material for dynamic positioning and electric propulsion motors;
b. shaft material for main engine driven generators where the shaft is part of the propulsion shafting; and
c. shaft material for machines with power ratings of 250 kW or greater.

Shaft material for machines with power ratings less than 250 kW is to have a manufacturer's certificate as detailed in Ch 1 General Requirements of the Rules for Materials.

9. 1. 6 Where welding is applied to shafts of machines for securing arms or spiders, stress relieving is to be carried out after welding. The finalised assembly is to be visually examined by the Surveyors, crack detection carried out by an appropriate method and the finished welds found sound and free from cracks.

9. 1. 7 The rotating parts of machines are to be so balanced that when running at any speed in the normal working range the vibration does not exceed the levels of IEC 60034-14: *Rotating electrical machines – Part 14: Mechanical vibration of certain machines with shaft heights 56 mm and higher – Measurement, evaluation and limits of vibration severity*.

9. 1. 8 The lubrication arrangement for bearings are to be effective under all operating conditions including the maximum ship inclinations defined by Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.10 Inclination of ship and there are to be effective means provided to ensure that lubricant does not reach the machine windings or other conductors and insulators.

9. 1. 9 Means are to be taken to prevent the ill effects of the flow of currents circulating between the shaft and machine bearings or bearings of connected machinery.

9. 1. 10 Alternating current machines are to be constructed such that, under any operating conditions, they are capable of withstanding the effects of a sudden short-circuit at their terminals without damage.

9. 1. 11 Propulsion motors, and generators that form part of electrical propulsion systems, are to have at least one embedded temperature detector (ETD) in each phase of the machine winding in locations which may be subjected to the highest temperature. Where there are two coil sides per slot the ETD's are to be located between the insulated coil sides in the slot, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 16.1 General 16.1.3.

9. 1. 12 A high bearing temperature alarm is to be provided for generators of 100 kW and above, and electric propulsion motors, which are supplied with forced lubrication, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 16.6 Protection of propulsion system 16.6.12 for second stage high temperature safe shutdown to prevent damage.

9. 1. 13 A low lubricating oil pressure alarm is to be provided for generators and electric propulsion motors that are supplied with forced lubrication.

9. 1. 14 A high lubricating oil temperature alarm is to be provided for electric propulsion motors that are supplied with forced lubrication, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 16.6 Protection of propulsion system 16.6.12 for second stage high temperature shutdown to prevent damage

9. 1. 15 For high voltage machines, the stator insulation system is to be of a type that has undergone design qualification testing in accordance with the applicable requirements of the following International Standards, or relevant alternatives acceptable to ACS, to demonstrate its suitability for the operating voltage:

a. IEC 60034-18-31, *Rotating electrical machines – Part 18-31: Functional evaluation of insulation systems – Test procedures for form-wound windings – Thermal evaluation and classification of insulation systems used in rotating machines*;
b. IEC 60034-18-32, *Rotating electrical machines – Part 18-32: Functional evaluation of insulation systems – Test procedures for form-wound windings – Evaluation by electrical endurance*;
c. IEC 60034-18-34, *Rotating electrical machines – Part 18-34: Functional evaluation of insulation systems – Test procedures for form-wound windings – Evaluation of thermomechanical endurance of insulation systems*`;
d. IEC 60034-27-3, *Dielectric dissipation factor measurement on stator winding insulation of rotating electrical machines*.

Test samples are to be representative in terms of the number and size of conductors, coil construction and the combination of materials and manufacturing process.

9. 1. 16 The reference insulation system, against which the test samples in Pt 6, Ch 2, 9.1 General requirements 9.1.15 is to be validated, is to be have been demonstrated to be suitable for use in the environmental conditions that the finished machine will be exposed to in service. Documented evidence of such suitability is to be available to the ACS Surveyor, at the time these tests are conducted.

9. 1. 17 ample coils for use in the machines detailed in Pt 6, Ch 2, 9.1 General requirements 9.1.15 are to be type tested and subsequently routinely tested in accordance with the following International Standards, or relevant alternatives acceptable to ACS. The interval between routine tests is to be agreed with ACS, and testing is to be witnessed by an ACS Surveyor:

a. IEC 60034-27-3, *Dielectric dissipation factor measurement on stator winding insulation of rotating electrical machines*; and
b. IEC 60034-15: *Rotating electrical machines – Part 15: Impulse voltage withstand levels of form-wound stator coils for rotating a.c. machines*, with power-frequency voltage withstand testing conducted.

Test samples are to be representative in terms of the number and size of conductors, coil construction, and the combination of materials and manufacturing process.

9. 1. 18 For coils manufactured using global vacuum pressure impregnated systems, the test samples required in Pt 6, Ch 2, 9.1 General requirements 9.1.15 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 9.1 General requirements 9.1.17 are to be:

a. in their finished, impregnated state;
b. manufactured in accordance with documented production quality control processes and procedures.

9. 1. 19 Converter-fed high voltage machines intended for essential or emergency services are to be designed for the in service operating conditions originating from the converter. These are to include as a minimum, but are not limited to:

a. maximum peak voltage and rise times;
b. maximum voltage gradient;
c. pulse repetition rate;
d. voltage reflections; and
e. fault conditions.

9. 1. 20 The insulation system of the high voltage machine referred to in Pt 6, Ch 2, 9.1 General requirements 9.1.19 is to be type tested and its suitability verified for use with the converter.

9. 1. 21 The completed stator of high voltage rotating machines to be used for essential services are to be tested for partial discharge in accordance with IEC 60034-27-1, *Rotating electrical machines* Part 27*-1: Off-line partial discharge measurements on the winding insulation* or an alternative standard acceptable to ACS. Copies of the test reports are to be provided to the Surveyor on request.

9. 1. 22 For high voltage rotating machines to be used for essential services, suitable access is to be provided which will enable visual inspections of the stator and field windings for signs of damage. Boroscopic and/or endoscopic inspection techniques may be used where appropriate. Areas to be capable of inspection are to include, but are not limited to:

- drive and non-drive ends of the machine;
- stator/core: core laminations; stator wedges; stator bars; space blocks; end windings and connection rings; flux shield; instrumentation;
- field/frame: field wedges; retaining ring; coil end turns.

9. 1. 23 Where the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 9.1 General requirements 9.1.22 cannot be achieved, a means of connecting partial discharge monitoring equipment is to be installed. The means of connection is to enable OFF-LINE periodic testing in accordance with the recommendations of the rotating machine manufacturer and IEC 60034-27-1, *Rotating electrical machines* Part 27*-1: Off-line partial discharge measurements on the winding insulation* or an alternative standard acceptable to ACS. Alternatively, the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 9.1 General requirements 9.1.24 may be applied.

9. 1. 24 Where it is intended to install on-line partial discharge monitoring equipment, the high voltage rotating machine installation is to be provided with a means of connection which will enable the safe connection of the equipment once the rotating machine is in service. The means of connection is to enable on-line through-life testing in accordance with the recommendations of the rotating machine manufacturer and one of the following standards:

a. on-line testing:
   i. PD IEC/TS 60034-27-2, *Rotating electrical machines* Part 27*-2: On-line partial discharge measurements on the stator winding insulation of rotating electrical machines*;
   ii. DD IEC/TS 61934: *Electrical insulating materials and systems – Electrical measurement of partial discharges (PD) under short rise time and repetitive voltage impulses*; or
b. an alternative International or National Standard acceptable to ACS.

9. 1. 25 Converter-fed low voltage propulsion machines are to have insulation systems complying with Pt 6, Ch 2, 9.1 General requirements 9.1.19 where the waveforms are non-sinusoidal or transients exceed 1 kV.

9. 2 Rating

9. 2. 1 Generators, including their excitation systems, and continuously rated motors are to be suitable for continuous duty at their full rated output at maximum cooling air or water temperature for an unlimited period, without the limits of temperature rise in Pt 6, Ch 2, 9.3 Temperature rise being exceeded. Generators are to be capable of an overload power of not less than 10% at their rated power factor for a period of 15 minutes without injurious heating. Other machines are to be rated in accordance with the duty which they have to perform and, when tested under rated load conditions, the temperature rise is not to exceed the values in Pt 6, Ch 2, 9.3 Temperature rise.

9. 2. 2 When a rotating machine is connected to a supply system with harmonic distortion the rating of the machine is to allow for the increased heating effect of the harmonic loading.

9. 2. 3 The design and construction of smoke extraction fan motors are to be suitable for the ambient temperature and operating time required. Type test reports to verify the performance of the electric motor are to be submitted for consideration.

9. 3 Temperature rise

9. 3. 1 The limits of temperature rise specified in Table 2. 9. 1: Limits of temperature rise of machines cooled by air, are based on the cooling air temperature and cooling water temperature given in Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.9, Ambient reference and operating conditions.

9. 3. 2 If it is known that the temperature of cooling medium exceeds the values given in Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.9, Ambient reference and operating conditions the permissible temperature rise is to be reduced by an amount equal to the excess temperature of the cooling medium.

9. 3. 3 If it is known that the temperature of cooling medium will be permanently less than the values given in Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.9, Ambient reference and operating conditions the permissible temperature rise may be increased by an amount equal to the difference between the declared temperature and that given in Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.9, Ambient reference and operating conditions up to a maximum of 15°C.

9. 4 Generator control

9. 4. 1 Each alternating current generator, unless of the self-regulating type, is to be provided with automatic means of voltage regulation; voltage build-up is not to require an external source of power. Provision is to be made to safeguard the distribution system should there be a failure of the voltage regulating system resulting in a high voltage.

9. 4. 2 The voltage regulation of any alternating current generator with its regulating equipment is to be such that at all loads, from zero to full load at rated power factor, the rated voltage is maintained within ±2.5% under steady conditions. There is to be provision at the voltage regulator to adjust the generator no load voltage.

9. 4. 3 Generators, and their excitation systems, when operating at rated speed and voltage on no-load are to be capable of absorbing the suddenly switched, balanced, current demand of the largest motor or load at a power factor not greater than 0.4 with a transient voltage dip which does not exceed 15% of rated voltage. The voltage is to recover to rated voltage within a time not exceeding 1.5 seconds.

Table 2. 9. 1: Limits of temperature rise of machines cooled by air

Limits of temperature rise of machines cooled by air, °C								
Part of machine			Method of temperature measurement	Insulation class				
				A	E	B	F	H
1.	(a)	a.c. windings of machines having output of 5000 kVA or more	ETD	55	–	75	95	115
			R	50	-	70	90	110
	(b)	a.c. windings of machines having output of less than 5000 kVA	ETD	55	–	80	100	115
			R	50	65	70	95	110
2.	Windings of armatures having commutators		R	50	65	70	95	115
			T	40	55	60	75	95
3.	Field windings of a.c. and d.c. machines having d.c. excitation other than those in item 4		R	50	65	70	95	115
			T	40	55	60	75	95
4.	(a)	Field windings of synchronous machines with cylindrical rotors having d.c. excitation	R	–	–	80	100	125
	(b)	Stationary field windings of d.c. machines having more than one layer	R	50	65	70	95	115
			T	40	55	60	75	95
	(c)	Low resistance field windings of a.c. and d.c. machines and compensating windings of d.c. machines having more than one layer	R, T	50	65	70	90	115
	(d)	Single-layer windings of a.c. and d.c. machines with exposed bare or varnished metal surfaces and single-layer compensating windings of d.c. machines	R, T	55	70	80	100	125
5.	Permanently short-circuited insulated windings		T	50	65	70	90	115
6.	Permanently short-circuited uninsulated windings		T	The temperature rise of these parts shall in no case reach such a value that there is a risk to any insulation or other materials on adjacent parts or to the item itself				
7.	Magnetic cores and other parts not in contact with windings		T					
8.	Magnetic cores and other parts in contact with windings		T	50	65	70	90	110
9.	Commutators and slip-rings open and enclosed		T	50	60	70	80	90

Note *1.* Where water cooled heat exchangers are used in the machine cooling circuit the temperature rises are to be measured with respect to the temperature of the cooling water at the inlet to the heat exchanger and the temperature rises given in this Table shall be increased by 10°C provided the inlet water temperature does not exceed the values given in Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.9, Ambient reference and operating conditions.

Note *2.* T = thermometer method

R = resistance method

ETD = embedded temperature detector.

Note *3.* Temperature rise measurements are to use the resistance method whenever practicable.

Note *4.* The ETD method may only be used when the ETD's are located between coil sides in the slot.

9. 4. 4 The transient voltage rise at the terminals of a generator is not to exceed 20% of rated voltage when rated kVA at a power factor not greater than 0.8 is thrown off.

9. 4. 5 Generators and their voltage regulation systems are to be capable of maintaining, without damage, under steady state short-circuit conditions a current of at least three times the full load rated current for a duration of at least two seconds or where precise data is available for the duration of any time delay which may be provided by a tripping device for discrimination purposes.

9. 4. 6 Generators required to run in parallel are to be stable from no load (kW) up to the total combined full load (kW) of the group, and load sharing is to be such that the load on any generator does not normally differ from its proportionate share of the total load by more than 15% of the rated output (kW) of the largest machine or 25% of the rated output (kW) of the individual machine, whichever is less.

9. 4. 7 When generators are operated in parallel, the kVA loads of the individual generating sets are not to differ from the proportionate share of the total kVA load by more than 5% of the rated kVA output of the largest machines.

9. 5 Overloads

9. 5. 1 Machines are to withstand on test, without injury, the following occasional overloads:

a. **Generators**. An excess current of 50% for 30 seconds after attaining the temperature rise corresponding to rated current, the terminal voltage being maintained as near the rated value as possible. The foregoing does not apply to the overload torque capacity of the prime mover.

b. **Motors.** At rated speed or, in the case of a range of speeds, at the highest and lowest speeds, under gradual increase of torque, the appropriate excess torque given below. Synchronous motors and synchronous induction motors are required to withstand the excess torque without falling out of synchronism and without adjustment of the excitation circuit preset at the value corresponding to rated load:

d.c. motors	50% for 15 seconds;
polyphase a.c.	
synchronous motors	50% for 15 seconds;
polyphase a.c.	
synchronous	
induction motors	35% for 15 seconds;
polyphase a.c.	
induction motors	60% for 15 seconds.

c. **Propulsion machines.** The overload tests for propulsion machines will be specially considered for each installation.

d. **Windlasses.** For the design and testing of windlass electric motors, *See* Pt 3, Ch 13, 8 Anchor windlass design and testing.

9. 6 Machine enclosure

9. 6. 1 Where liquid-cooled heat exchangers are used in the machine cooling circuit there is to be provision to detect leakage of the liquid, and the system is to be arranged so as to prevent the entry of liquid into the machine.

9. 7 Direct current machines

9. 7. 1 The final running position of brushgear is to be clearly and permanently marked.

9. 7. 2 Direct current machines are to work with fixed brush setting from no load to the momentary overload specified without injurious sparking.

9. 8 Survey and testing

9. 8. 1 On machines for essential services tests are to be carried out and a certificate furnished by the manufacturer. The tests are to include temperature rise, momentary overload, high voltage, and commutation. The insulation resistance and the temperature at which it was measured are to be recorded, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.4 Surveys 1.4.2 to Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.4 Surveys 1.4.4

9. 8. 2 In the case of duplicate machines, type tests of temperature rise, excess current and torque and commutation taken on a machine identical in rating and in all other essential details may be accepted in conjunction with abbreviated tests on each machine. Type tests for propulsion machines will be specially considered, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 16 Electric propulsion. For the abbreviated tests, each machine is to be run and is to be found electrically and mechanically sound and is to have a high voltage test and insulation resistance recorded.

9. 8. 3 A high voltage test, in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 21 Testing and trials, is to be applied to new machines, preferably at the conclusion of the temperature rise test. Where both ends of each phase are brought out to accessible separate terminals each phase is to be tested separately.

9. 8. 4 Survey during manufacture, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.4, Surveys, is to be conducted prior to testing of the completed machine and is to include inspection of rotor and stator assemblies to assess compliance with the constructional requirements of the relevant standards and this Section.

9. 8. 5 For high voltage machines, a description of rotor and stator insulation system application procedures (taping, impregnation, pressing and curing, etc.) with application process records, including details of checks and tests conducted to verify successful application, is to be made available to the ACS Surveyor during manufacture, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 9.1 General requirements 9.1.15.

9. 8. 6 Routine impulse tests are to be carried out on the coils of high voltage machines in accordance with IEC 60034- 15:*Rotating electrical machines – Part 15: Impulse voltage withstand levels of form-wound stator coils for rotating a.c. machines*, in order to demonstrate a satisfactory withstand level of the inter-turn insulation to voltage surges. The test is to be carried out on all coils after they have been inserted in the slots and after wedging and bracing. Each coil shall be subjected to at least five impulses of injected voltage, the peak value of the injected voltage being given by the formula:

$$V_{\text{peak}} = 2.45V$$

Where

V = rated line voltage r.m.s.

Alternative proposals to demonstrate the withstand level of inter-turn insulation will be considered.

9. 8. 7 The partial discharge characteristics of high voltage a.c. rotating machines for essential services rated at above 3.6 kV are to be measured and recorded in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 21.4, On-line partial discharge testing of high voltage rotating machines for essential services.

PART

6

CHAPTER **2 Electrical Engineering**

SECTION **10 Converter equipment**

10. 1 Transformers

10. 1. 1 Paragraphs Pt 6, Ch 2, 10.1 Transformers 10.1.2 to Pt 6, Ch 2, 10.1 Transformers 10.1.14 apply to transformers rated for 5 kVA upwards.

10. 1. 2 Transformers are to comply with the requirements of the following standards:

a. IEC 60076 (all parts): *Power transformers* (all parts);

b. IEC 60092-503: *Electrical installations in ships – Part 503: Special features – AC supply systems with voltages in the range of above 1 kV up to and including 15 kV;* or

c. an acceptable and relevant National Standard amended where necessary for ambient temperature, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.9, Ambient reference and operating conditions.

10. 1. 3 Transformers may be of the dry type, encapsulated or liquid-filled type.

10. 1. 4 The temperature rise of the winding of transformers above the ambient temperatures given in Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.9, Ambient reference and operating conditions, when measured by resistance during continuous operation at the maximum rating, is not to exceed:

a. For dry type transformers, air cooled:
insulation of Class A - 50°C
insulation of Class E - 60°C
insulation of Class B - 70°C
insulation of Class F - 90°C
insulation of Class H - 110°C

b. For liquid filled transformers:
50°C - where air provides cooling of the fluid
65°C - where water provides cooling of the fluid.

10. 1. 5 When a transformer is connected to a supply system with harmonic distortion, the rating of the transformer is to allow for the increased heating effect of the harmonic loading. Special attention is to be given to transformers connected for the purpose of reducing harmonic distortion.

10. 1. 6 The inherent regulation of transformers at their rated output is to be such that the total voltage drop to any point in the installation does not exceed that allowed by Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.8, Quality of power supplies.

10. 1. 7 Transformers, except those for motor starting, are to be double wound.

10. 1. 8 Liquid fillings for transformers are to be non-toxic and of a type which does not readily support combustion. Liquid filled transformers are to have a pressure relief device with an alarm and there is to be a suitable means provided to contain any liquid which may escape from the transformer due to the operation of the relief device or damage to the tank.

10. 1. 9 All transformers are to be capable of withstanding for two seconds, without damage, the thermal and mechanical effects of a short-circuit at the terminals of any winding.

10. 1. 10 When forced cooling is used, whether air or liquid, there is to be monitoring of the cooling medium and transformer winding temperatures with an alarm should these exceed preset limits. There are to be arrangements so that the load may be reduced to a level commensurate with the cooling available.

10. 1. 11 When oil-immersed transformers are used, there is to be monitoring for low oil level with an alarm when pre-set limits are crossed. There are to be arrangements so that the load may be reduced to a level commensurate with the cooling available.

10. 1. 12 Transformers for propulsion power are to be provided with arrangements such that, in the event of excessive winding temperature, an alarm is initiated and:

- the load is reduced to a level commensurate with the cooling arrangements; or
- automatic shutdown of the transformer occurs.

10. 1. 13 Where liquid-cooled heat exchangers are used in transformer cooling circuits, there is to be provision to detect leakage of the liquid, and the system is to be arranged so as to prevent the entry of liquid into the transformer.

10. 1. 14 The following tests are to be carried out on all transformers at the manufacturer's works, and a certificate of tests issued by the manufacturer, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.4 Surveys 1.4.2 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.4 Surveys 1.4.3:

a. measurement of winding resistances, voltage ratio, impedance voltage, short-circuit impedance, insulation resistance, load loss, no load loss and current;
b. dielectric tests;
c. temperature rise test on one transformer of each size and type; and
d. where evidence of compliance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 10.1 Transformers 10.1.9 is not submitted for consideration, short-circuit withstand on one transformer of each size and type.

10. 2 Semiconductor converters

10. 2. 1 The requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 10.2 Semiconductor converters 10.2.2 to Pt 6, Ch 2, 10.2 Semiconductor converters 10.2.18 apply to semiconductor converters rated for 5 kW upwards.

10. 2. 2 Semiconductor converters are to comply with the requirements of IEC 60146 (all parts): *Semiconductor converters*, or an acceptable and relevant National Standard amended where necessary for ambient temperature, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.9, Ambient reference and operating conditions.

10. 2. 3 Semiconductor static power converters are to be rated for the required duty having regard to peak loads, system transients and overvoltage.

10. 2. 4 Converter equipment may be air or liquid cooled and is to be so arranged that it cannot remain loaded unless effective cooling is maintained. Alternatively the load may be automatically reduced to a level commensurate with the cooling available.

10. 2. 5 Liquid cooled converter equipment:

a. is to be provided with leakage alarms;
b. is to be provided with a suitable means to contain any liquid which may leak from the system, preventing the liquid from causing further electrical failures or damage;
c. where the semiconductors and other current carrying parts are in direct contact with the cooling liquid, the system is to be provided with:
   i. suitable coolant resistivity/ conductivity monitoring;
   ii. an alarm at the relevant control station, which is to be initiated if the resistivity/ conductivity values exceed agreed limits; and

d. used for main propulsion is to have a shutdown to prevent damage to the converter if the cooling liquid exceeds agreed safe limits of resistivity/ conductivity. *See also* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.6 Bridge control for main propulsion machinery 2.6.8.

10. 2. 6 Where forced cooling is used there is to be temperature monitoring of the heated cooling medium with an alarm and shutdown when the temperature exceeds a preset value.

10. 2. 7 Cooling fluids are to be non-toxic and of low flammability.

10. 2. 8 Converter equipment is to be so arranged that the semiconductor devices, fuses, control and firing circuit boards may be readily removed from the equipment for repair or replacement.

10. 2. 9 Test and monitoring facilities are to be provided to permit identification of control circuit faults and faulty components.

10. 2. 10 Protection devices fitted for converter equipment protection are to ensure that, under fault conditions, the protective action of circuit-breakers, fuses or control systems is such that there is no further damage to the converter or the installation.

10. 2. 11 Converter equipment, including any associated transformers, reactors, capacitors and filters, if provided, is to be so arranged that the harmonic distortion, and voltage spikes, introduced in to the ships electrical system are within the limits of Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.8 Quality of power supplies 1.8.3 or restricted to a lower level necessary to ensure that it causes no malfunction of equipment connected to the electrical installation.

10. 2. 12 Overvoltage spikes or oscillations caused by commutation or other phenonema, are not to result in the supply voltage waveform deviating from a superimposed equivalent sine wave by more than 10% of the maximum value of the equivalent sine wave.

10. 2. 13 When converter equipment is operated in parallel, load sharing is to be such that under normal operating conditions overloading of any unit does not occur and the combination of paralleled equipment is stable throughout the operating range.

10. 2. 14 When converter equipment has parallel circuits there is to be provision to ensure that the load is distributed uniformly between the parallel paths.

10. 2. 15 Transformers, reactors, capacitors and other circuit devices associated with converter equipment, or associated filters, are to be suitable for the distorted voltage and current waveforms to which they may be subjected and filter circuits are to be provided with facilities to ensure that their capacitors are discharged before the circuits are energised.

10. 2. 16 Any regenerated power developed during the operation of converter equipment is not to result in disturbances to the supply system voltage and frequency which exceeds the limits of Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.8, Quality of power supplies.

10. 2. 17 Where control systems form an integral part of semiconductor equipment, they are to be designed and manufactured with regard to the environmental conditions to which they will be exposed in service and their performance is to be demonstrated during the test and trials programme.

10. 2. 18 Tests at the manufacturer's works of converter equipment and any associated reactors or filters are to include the high voltage test of Pt 6, Ch 2, 21.1, Testing a temperature rise test, on one of each size and type of converter equipment, and such other tests as may be necessary to demonstrate the suitability of the equipment for its intended duty. Details of tests are to be submitted for consideration when required, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.4 Surveys 1.4.2.

10. 3 Uninterruptible power systems

10. 3. 1 The requirements of this sub-Section apply to all uninterruptible power systems (UPS) intended to maintain essential services or provide emergency services. This sub- Section is in addition to the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 10.1, Transformers to Pt 6, Ch 2, 10.2, Semiconductor converters and Pt 6, Ch 2, 12 Batteries, as applicable.

10. 3. 2 UPS units are to be constructed in accordance with IEC 62040: *Uninterruptible power systems (UPS)* (all parts), or an acceptable and relevant National or International Standard.

10. 3. 3 The operation of a UPS is not to depend upon external services.

10. 3. 4 The type of UPS unit employed, whether off-line, line-interactive or on-line, is to be appropriate to the power supply requirements of the connected load equipment.

10. 3. 5 An external bypass, that is hardwired and manually operated, is to be provided for UPS to allow isolation of UPS for safety during maintenance and maintain continuity of load power.

10. 3. 6 UPS units are to be monitored and an audible and visual alarm is to be initiated in the navigating bridge or the engine control room, or an equivalent attended location for:

- power supply failure (voltage and frequency) to the connected load;
- earth fault;
- operation of battery protective device;
- battery discharge; and
- bypass in operation for on-line UPS units.

10. 3. 7 UPS units required to provide emergency services are to be suitably located for use in an emergency.

10. 3. 8 UPS units utilising valve-regulated sealed batteries may be located in compartments with standard marine or industrial electrical equipment provided that the arrangements comply with Pt 6, Ch 2, 12.3 Location 12.3.5. Ventilation arrangements in accordance with IEC 62040-1: *Uninterruptible power systems (UPS) – Part 1: General and safety requirements for UPS*, or an acceptable and relevant National or International Standard, may be considered to satisfy the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 12.5 Thermal management and ventilation 12.5.10.

10. 3. 9 Output power is to be maintained for the duration required for the connected equipment.

10. 3. 10 The UPS battery capacity is, at all times, to be capable of supplying the designated loads for the time specified. Where it is proposed that additional circuits are connected to the UPS unit, details verifying that the UPS unit has adequate capacity are to be submitted for consideration, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.5, Additions or alterations.

10. 3. 11 On restoration of the input power, the rating of the charge unit is to be sufficient to recharge the batteries while maintaining the output supply to the load equipment.

10. 3. 12 Tests at the manufacturer's works or after installation on board are to include such tests necessary to demonstrate, to the Surveyor's satisfaction, the suitability of the UPS unit for its intended duty and location. As a minimum the following tests are required:

- a temperature rise test;
- battery capacity test;
- a ventilation rate test of both the equipment housing and the space into which it is to be located, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 12.5, Thermal management and ventilation; and
- functional testing, including operation of alarms.

Details of tests are to be submitted for consideration when required, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.4 Surveys 1.4.2.

10. 3. 13 Where the supply is to be maintained without a break following a power input failure, this is to be verified after installation by practical testing.

PART

6

CHAPTER **2** **Electrical Engineering**

SECTION **11** **Electric cables, optical fibre cables and busbar trunking systems (busways)**

11. 1 General

11. 1. 1 The requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 11.1, General to Pt 6, Ch 2, 11.16 Joints and branch circuits in cable systems apply to all electric and optical fibre cables for fixed wiring unless otherwise exempted. The requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 11.17 Busbar trunking systems (bustrunks) apply to busbar trunking systems (busways) where they are used in place of electric cables.

11. 1. 2 Electric cables for fixed wiring are to be designed, manufactured and tested in accordance with the relevant IEC Standard stated in Table 2. 11. 1: Electric cables or an adequate and relevant National Standard.

11. 1. 3 Details of optical fibre cables for fixed installation are to be submitted to assess compliance with applicable international or National Standards. These are to include:

- Flame retardancy;
- Fire resistance (if applicable);
- Smoke density;
- Halogen content;
- Mechanical properties;

Suitability for use in the marine environment.

11. 1. 4 Electric cables for electric propulsion systems are to be Type Approved in accordance with ACS's *Type Approval System Test Specification Number 3* or, alternatively, surveyed by the Surveyors during manufacture and testing to assess compliance with the applicable International or National Standards and application of an acceptable quality management system, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.4 Surveys 1.4.6.

11. 1. 5 Provided that adequate flexibility of the finished cable is assured, conductors of nominal cross-section area 2.5 mm^2 and less need not be stranded.

11. 1. 6 Electric and optical fibre cables for non-fixed applications are to comply with a relevant national or international Standard.

11. 1. 7 For the purpose of this Section, pipes, conduits, trunking or any other system for the additional mechanical protection of cables are hereafter referred to under the generic name 'protective casings'.

11. 1. 8 Electrical cables for telecommunications and data transfer are, whenever practicable, to be selected in accordance with the recommendations of IEC TR 60092-370: *Guidance on the selection of cables for telecommunication and data transfer including radio-frequency cables*.

Table 2. 11. 1: Electric cables

Application	IEC Standard	Title
General constructional and testing requirements	60092–350	*Electrical Installations* in ships – Part 350: General construction and test methods of power, control and instrumentation cables for shipboard and offshore applications
Fixed power and control circuits	60092–353	*Electrical Installations* in ships – Part 353: Power cables for rated voltages 1 kV and 3 kV
Fixed power circuits	60092–354	*Electrical Installations* in ships – Part 354: Single- and three-core power cables with extruded solid insulation for rated voltages 6 kV (Um = 7.2 kV) up to 30 kV (Um = 36 kV)
Instrumentation, control and communication circuits up to 60 V	60092-370	*Electrical Installations* in ships – Part 370: Guidance on the selection of cables for telecommunication and data transfer including radio-frequency cables
Control circuits and instrumentation up to 250 V	60092–376	*Electrical Installations* in ships – Part 376: Cables for control and instrumentation circuits 150/250 V (300 V)
Mineral insulated	60702 (all parts)	Mineral insulated cables and their terminations with a rated voltage not exceeding 750 V

11. 2 Testing

11. 2. 1 Routine tests, consisting of at least:

a. measurement of electrical resistance of conductors;
b. high voltage test, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 21 Testing and trials;
c. insulation resistance measurement;
d. for high voltage cables, partial discharge tests are to be made in accordance with the requirements of IEC 60885-2: *Electrical test methods for electric cables* – Part 2*: Partial discharge tests*, or an acceptable and relevant National Standard, at the manufacturer's works prior to despatch; and
e. for optical fibres, an attenuation loss (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 21.6, Optical Fibre Communications Systems).

Evidence of successful completion of routine tests is to be provided by the manufacturer, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 11.1 General 11.1.4.

11. 2. 2 Particular, special and type tests are to be made, when required, in accordance with the requirements of the relevant publication or National Standard referred to in Pt 6, Ch 2, 11.1 General 11.1.2 and a test report issued by the manufacturer.

11. 3 Voltage rating

11. 3. 1 The rated voltage of any electric cable is to be not lower than the nominal voltage of the circuit for which it is used. The maximum sustained voltage of the circuit is not to exceed the maximum voltage for which the cable has been designed.

11. 3. 2 Electric cables used in unearthed systems are to be suitably rated to withstand the additional stresses imposed on the insulation due to an earth fault.

11. 4 Operating temperature

11. 4. 1 The maximum rated conductor temperature of the insulating material for normal operation is to be at least 10°C higher than the maximum ambient temperature liable to be produced in the space where the cable is installed.

11. 4. 2 The maximum rated conductor temperatures for normal and short-circuit operation, for the insulating materials included within the standards referred to in Pt 6, Ch 2, 11.1 General 11.1.2 is not to exceed the values stated in Table 2. 11. 2: Maximum rated conductor temperature.

Table 2. 11. 2: Maximum rated conductor temperature

Type of insulating compound	Maximum rated conductor temperature, °C		
	Abbreviated designation	Normal operation	Short-circuit
Elastomeric or thermosetting, based upon:			
Ethylene-propylene rubber or similar (EPM or EPDM)	EPR	90	250
High modulus or hard grade ethylene propylene rubber	HEPR	90	250
Cross-linked polyethylene	XLPE	90	250
Cross-linked polyolefin material for halogen-free cables	HF90	90	250
Silicone rubber	S95	95	350

11. 4. 3 Electric cables constructed of an insulating material not included in Table 2. 11. 2: Maximum rated conductor temperature are to be rated in accordance with the National Standard chosen in compliance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 11.1 General 11.1.2.

11. 5 Construction

11. 5. 1 Electric and optical fibre cables are to be at least of a flame-retardant type. IEC 60332-1-2: *Tests on electric and optical fibre cables under fire conditions – Part 1-2: Test for vertical flame propagation for a single insulated wire or cable – Procedure for 1 kW pre-mixed flame*, will be acceptable.

11. 5. 2 Exemption from the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 11.5 Construction 11.5.1 for applications such as radio frequency or digital communication systems, which require the use of particular types of cable, will be subject to special consideration.

11. 5. 3 Where electric and optical fibre cables are required to be of a `fire resistant type', they are in addition to be easily distinguishable and comply with the performance requirements of the appropriate part of IEC 60331: *Tests for electric cables under fire conditions – Circuit integrity,* when tested with a minimum flame application time of 90 minutes, as follows:

- IEC 60331-1:*Tests for electric cables under fire conditions – Circuit integrity – Part 1: Test method for fire with shock at a temperature of at least 830 degrees C for cables of rated voltage up to and including 0.6/1.0 kV and with an overall diameter exceeding 20 mm*;
- IEC 60331-2: *Tests for electric cables under fire conditions – Circuit integrity* – Part 2*: Test method for fire with shock at a temperature of at least 830 Degrees C for cables of rated voltage up to and including 0.6/1.0 kV and with an overall diameter not exceeding 20 mm*;
- IEC 60331-21: *Tests for electric cables under fire conditions – Circuit integrity* – Part 2*1: Procedures and requirements – Cables of rated voltage up to and including 0.6/1.0 kV*;

- IEC 60331-23: *Tests for electric cables under fire conditions – Circuit integrity* – Part 23*: Procedures and requirements – Electric data cables*; or
- IEC 60331-25: *Tests for electric cables under fire conditions – Circuit integrity* – Part 25*: Procedures and requirements – Optical fibre cables*.

11. 5. 4 Where electric or optical fibre cables are installed in locations exposed to the weather, in damp and in wet situations, in machinery compartments, refrigerated spaces or exposed to harmful vapours including oil vapour they are to have the conductor insulating materials or optical fibres enclosed in an impervious sheath of material appropriate to the expected ambient conditions.

11. 5. 5 Where electric or optical fibre cables are installed in locations which are totally submerged for extended periods of time, they are to have the conductor insulating materials or fibres enclosed in an impervious sheath of material appropriate to the expected submerged conditions and duration.

11. 5. 6 Where it is required that the construction of electric or optical fibre cables includes metallic sheaths, armouring or braids, they are to be provided with an overall impervious sheath or other means to protect the metallic elements against corrosion, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 11.8 Installation of electric and optical fibre cables 11.8.10 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 11.8 Installation of electric and optical fibre cables 11.8.11.

11. 5. 7 Where cables are installed in an area where contamination by oil is likely to occur, the oversheath is to be of an enhanced oil resistance grade.

11. 5. 8 Where single core electric cables are used in circuits rated in excess of 20 Amps and are armoured the armour is to be of a non-magnetic material.

11. 5. 9 Electric cables are to be constructed such that they are capable of withstanding the mechanical and thermal effects of the maximum short-circuit current which can flow in any part of the circuit in which they are installed, taking into consideration not only the time/current characteristics of the circuit protective device but also the peak value of the prospective short-circuit current. Where electric cables are to be used in circuits with a maximum short-circuit current in excess of 70 kA, evidence is to be submitted for consideration when required demonstrating that the cable construction can withstand the effects of the short-circuit current.

11. 5. 10 All high voltage electric cables are to be readily identified by suitable marking.

11. 6 Conductor size

11. 6. 1 The maximum continuous load carried by a cable is not to exceed its continuous current rating. It is to be chosen such that the maximum rated conductor temperature for normal operation for the insulation is not exceeded. In assessing the current rating the correction factors in Pt 6, Ch 2, 11.7, Correction factors for cable current rating may be applied as required.

11. 6. 2 The cross-sectional area of the conductors is to be sufficient to ensure that, under short-circuit conditions, the maximum rated conductor temperature for short-circuit operation is not exceeded, taking into consideration the time current characteristics of the circuit protective device and the peak value of the prospective short-circuit current.

11. 6. 3 The cable current ratings given in Table 2. 11. 3: Electric cable current ratings, normal operation, based on ambient 45°C and Table 2. 11. 4: Electric cable current ratings, r.m.s. short-circuit current are based on the maximum rated conductor temperatures given in Table 2. 11. 2: Maximum rated conductor temperature. When cable sizes are selected on the basis of precise evaluation of current rating based upon experimental and calculated data, details are to be submitted for consideration. Alternative short-circuit temperature limits, other than those given in Table 2. 11. 4: Electric cable current ratings, r.m.s. short-circuit current, may be applied using the data provided in:

- IEC 60724: *Short-circuit temperature limits of electric cables with rated voltages of 1kV (Um=1.2kV) and 3kV (Um=3.6kV);* or

- IEC 60986: *Short-circuit temperature limits of electric cables with rated voltages from 6kV (Um=7.2kV) and up to 30kV (Um=36kV).*

Alternative short-circuit temperature limits provided in an acceptable and relevant National Standard may also be considered.

11. 6. 4 The cross-sectional area of the conductors is to be sufficient to ensure that at no point in the installation will the voltage variations stated in Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.8, Quality of power supplies be exceeded when the conductors are carrying the maximum current under their normal conditions of service.

11. 6. 5 The size of earth conductors is to comply with Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.12 Earthing of non-current carrying parts 1.12.8.

Table 2. 11. 3: Electric cable current ratings, normal operation, based on ambient 45°C

Nominal cross-section (mm^2)	Continuous r.m.s. current rating, in amperes					
	Elastomeric (90°C)			Elastomeric or thermosetting, based on silicon rubber (95°C)		
	Single Core	2 core	3 or 4 core	Single Core	2 core	3 or 4 core
0.75	15	13	11	17	14	12
1	18	15	13	20	17	14
1.25	21	18	14	23	20	16
1.5	23	20	16	26	22	18
2	28	24	19	31	26	22
2.5	30	26	21	32	27	22
3.5	37	32	26	39	33	28
4	40	34	28	43	37	30
5.5	49	42	35	52	44	37
6	52	44	36	55	47	39
8	62	53	44	66	56	46
10	72	61	50	76	65	53
14	88	75	62	94	80	66
16	96	82	67	102	87	71
22	117	100	82	124	106	87
25	127	108	89	135	115	95
30	142	121	100	151	128	106
35	157	133	110	166	141	116
38	165	140	116	175	149	122
50	196	167	137	208	177	146
60	220	187	154	233	198	163
70	242	206	169	256	218	179
80	263	224	184	278	237	195
95	293	249	205	310	264	217

100	302	257	212	320	272	224
120	339	288	237	359	305	251
125	348	295	243	368	313	258
150	389	331	272	412	350	288
185	444	377	311	470	400	329
200	466	396	326	494	420	346
240	522	444	365	553	470	387
300	601	511	421	636	541	445

Table 2. 11. 4: Electric cable current ratings, r.m.s. short-circuit current

Nominal cross-section (mm^2)	Fault current (kA) at 250°C			Fault current (kA) at 350°C		
	1 s duration	0.5 s duration	0.1 s duration	1 s duration	0.5 s duration	0.1 s duration
0.75	0.1	0.2	0.3	0.1	0.2	0.4
1	0.1	0.2	0.5	0.2	0.2	0.5
1.25	0.2	0.3	0.6	0.2	0.3	0.7
1.5	0.2	0.3	0.7	0.3	0.4	0.8
2	0.3	0.4	0.9	0.3	0.5	1.1
2.5	0.4	0.5	1.1	0.4	0.6	1.4
3.5	0.5	0.7	1.6	0.6	0.8	1.9
4	0.6	0.8	1.8	0.7	1.0	2.2
5.5	0.8	1.1	2.5	0.9	1.3	3.0
6	0.9	1.2	2.7	1.0	1.5	3.2
8	1.1	1.6	3.6	1.4	1.9	4.3
10	1.4	2.0	4.5	1.7	2.4	5.4
14	2.0	2.8	6.3	2.4	3.4	7.6
16	2.3	3.2	7.2	2.7	3.9	8.7
22	3.1	4.5	10.0	3.8	5.3	11.9
25	3.6	5.1	11.3	4.3	6.0	13.5
30	4.3	6.1	13.6	5.1	7.3	16.2
35	5.0	7.1	15.8	6.0	8.5	18.9
38	5.4	7.7	17.2	6.5	9.2	20.6
50	7.2	10.1	22.6	8.6	12.1	27.1
60	8.6	12.1	27.1	10.3	14.5	32.5
70	10.0	14.2	31.7	12.0	16.9	37.9
80	11.4	16.2	36.2	13.7	19.4	43.3
95	13.6	19.2	43.0	16.3	23.0	51.4
100	14.3	20.2	45.2	17.1	24.2	54.1
120	17.2	24.3	54.3	20.5	29.0	64.9

125	17.9	25.3	56.6	21.4	30.2	67.6
150	21.5	30.4	67.9	25.7	36.3	81.2
185	26.5	37.4	83.7	31.7	44.8	100.1
200	28.6	40.5	90.5	34.2	48.4	108.2
240	34.3	48.6	108.6	41.1	58.1	129.9
300	42.9	60.7	135.7	51.3	72.6	162.3

11. 6. 6 The cross-sectional area of conductors used in circuits supplying cyclic or non-continuous loads is to be sufficient to ensure that the cables maximum rated conductor temperature for normal operation is not exceeded when the conductors are operating under their normal conditions of service, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 11.7 Correction factors for cable current rating 11.7.4.

11. 7 Correction factors for cable current rating

11. 7. 1 The correction factors of Pt 6, Ch 2, 11.7 Correction factors for cable current rating 11.7.2 to Pt 6, Ch 2, 11.7 Correction factors for cable current rating 11.7.5 provide a guide for general applications in assessing a current rating. A more precise evaluation based upon experimental and calculated data may be submitted for consideration.

11. 7. 2 **Bunching of cables.** Where more than six electric cables, which may be expected to operate simultaneously at their full rated capacity, are laid close together in a cable bunch in such a way that there is an absence of free air circulation around them, a correction factor of 0.85 is to be applied. Signal cables may be exempted from this requirement.

11. 7. 3 **Ambient temperature.** The current ratings of Table 2. 11. 4: Electric cable current ratings, r.m.s. short-circuit current are based on an ambient temperature of 45°C. For other values of ambient temperature the correction factors shown in Pt 6, Ch 2, 11.7 Correction factors for cable current rating 11.7.3 are to be applied.

Table 2. 11. 5: Correction factors

Insulation material	Correction factor for ambient air temperature of °C										
	35	40	45	50	55	60	65	70	75	80	85
Elastomeric or thermosetting (90°C)	1.10	1.05	1.00	0.94	0.88	0.82	0.74	0.67	0.58	0.47	—
Elastomeric or thermosetting, based on silicone rubber (95°C)	1.10	1.05	1.00	0.95	0.89	0.84	0.77	0.71	0.63	0.55	0.45

11. 7. 4 **Short time duty.** When the load is not continuous, i.e. operates for periods of half an hour or one hour and the periods of no load are longer than three times the cable's time constant, T in minutes, the cable's continuous rating may be increased by a duty factor, calculated in accordance with:

$$\text{Duty factor} = \sqrt{\frac{1.12}{1 - e^{\frac{-t_s}{T}}}}$$

When the load is not continuous, is repetitive and has periods of no-load less than three times the cable's time constant, so that the cable has insufficient time to cool down between the applications of load, the cable's continuous rating may be increased by an intermittent factor, calculated in accordance with:

$$\text{Intermittent factor} = \sqrt{\frac{1 - e^{\frac{-t_p}{T}}}{1 - e^{\frac{-t_s}{T}}}}$$

where

t_p = the intermittent period, in minutes, i.e. the total period of load and no-load before the cycle is repeated

T = $0.245d^{1.35}$ where d is the overall diameter of the cable, in mm

t_s = the service time of the load current in minutes

11. 7. 5 **Diversity.** Where cables are used to supply two or more final sub-circuits account may be taken of any diversity factors which may apply, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 5.6 Diversity factor.

11. 8 Installation of electric and optical fibre cables

11. 8. 1 Electric and optical fibre cable runs are to be as far as practicable fixed in straight lines and in accessible positions.

11. 8. 2 Bends in fixed electric and optical fibre cable runs are to be in accordance with the cable manufacturer's recommendations. The minimum internal radius of bend for the installation of fixed electric cables is to be chosen according to the construction and size of the cable and is not to be less than the values given in Table 2. 11. 6: Minimum internal radii of bends in cables for fixed wiring.

11. 8. 3 The manufacturer's tensile load limit of the optical fibre is not to be exceeded during installation.

11. 8. 4 The manufacturer's minimum bend radii for optical fibres is not to be exceeded during installation.

11. 8. 5 Pre- and post-installation tests are to be conducted on optical fibre cables as detailed in Pt 6, Ch 2, 21.6, Optical Fibre Communications Systems.

11. 8. 6 The installation of electric and optical fibre cables across expansion joints in any structure is to be avoided. Where this is not practicable, a loop of electric cable of length sufficient to accommodate the expansion of the joint is to be provided. For electric cables, the internal radius of the loop is to be at least 12 times the external diameter of the cable. For optical fibre cables, the internal radius of the loop is to meet the manufacturers' minimum recommendations.

11. 8. 7 Electric and optical fibre cables for essential and emergency services are to be arranged, so far as is practicable, to avoid galleys, machinery spaces and other enclosed spaces and high fire risk areas except as is necessary for the service being supplied. Such cables are also, so far as reasonably practicable, to be routed clear of bulkheads to preclude their being rendered unserviceable by heating of the bulkheads that may be caused by a fire in an adjacent space.

11. 8. 8 Electric cables having insulating materials with different maximum rated conductor temperatures are to be so installed that the maximum rated conductor temperature for normal operation of each cable is not exceeded.

11. 8. 9 Electric and optical fibre cables having a protective covering which may damage the covering of other cables are not to be bunched with those other cables.

Table 2. 11. 6: Minimum internal radii of bends in cables for fixed wiring

Cable construction		

Insulation	Outer covering	Overall diameter of cable	Minimum internal radius of bend (times overall diameter of cable)
Elastomeric 600/1000 V and below	Metal sheathed Armoured and braided	Any	6*D*
	Other finishes	≤25mm > 25 mm	4*D* 6*D*
Mineral	Hard metal sheathed	Any	6*D*
Elastomeric above 600/1000 V	Any	Any	12*D*
– single core			
– multicore	Any	Any	9*D*

11. 8. 10 Cables having an exposed metallic screen, braid or armour are to be installed in such a manner that galvanic corrosion by contact with other metals is prevented. Sufficient measures are also to be taken to prevent damage to exposed galvanised coatings during installation.

11. 8. 11 Protection is to be provided for cable oversheaths in areas where cables are likely to be exposed to damaging substances under normal circumstances or areas where the spillage or release of harmful substances is likely.

11. 8. 12 Electric and optical fibre cables are to be as far as practicable installed remote from sources of heat. Where installation of cables near sources of heat cannot be avoided and where there is consequently a risk of damage to the cables by heat, suitable shields, insulation or other precautions are to be installed between the cables and the heat source. The free air circulation around the cables is not to be impaired.

11. 8. 13 Where electric and optical fibre cables are installed in bunches, provision is to be made to limit the propagation of fire. This requirement is considered satisfied when cables of the bunch have been tested in accordance with the requirements of IEC 60332-3-22: *Tests on electric and optical fibre cables under fire conditions – Part 3-22: Test for vertical flame spread of vertically-mounted bunched wires or cables – Category A*, and are installed in the same configuration(s) as are used for the test(s). If the cables are not so installed, information is to be submitted to demonstrate satisfactorily that suitable measures have been taken to ensure that an equivalent limit of fire propagation will be achieved for the configurations to be used. Particular attention is to be given to cables in:

- atria or equivalent spaces; and
- vertical runs in trunks and other restricted spaces.

In addition, cables that comply with the requirements of IEC 60332-3-22 are also required to meet the requirements of IEC 60332-1-2: *Tests on electric and optical fibre cables under fire conditions – Part 1-2: Test for vertical flame propagation for a single insulated wire or cable – Procedure for 1 kW pre-mixed flame*.

11. 8. 14 Electric and optical fibre cables are not to be coated or painted with materials which may adversely affect their sheath or their fire performance.

11. 8. 15 Where electric and optical fibre cables are installed in refrigerated spaces they are not to be covered with thermal insulation but may be placed directly on the face of the refrigeration chamber, provided that precautions are taken to prevent the electric cables being used as casual means of suspension.

11. 8. 16 All metal coverings of electric and optical fibre cables are to be earthed in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.12, Earthing of non-current carrying parts.

11. 8. 17 High voltage cables may be installed as follows:

a. in the open, (e.g. on carrier plating), when they are to be provided with a continuous metallic sheath or armour which is effectively bonded to earth to reduce danger to personnel. The metallic sheath or armour may be omitted provided that the cable sheathing material has a longitudinal electric resistance high enough to prevent sheath currents which may be hazardous to personnel;

b. contained in earthed metallic protective casings when the cables may be as in Pt 6, Ch 2, 11.8, Installation of electric and optical fibre cables 11.8.17 or the armour or metal sheath may be omitted. In the latter case care is to be taken to ensure that protective casings are electrically continuous and that short lengths of cable are not left unprotected.

11. 8. 18 High voltage electric cables are not to be run in the open through accommodation spaces.

11. 8. 19 High-voltage electric cables are to be segregated from electric cables operating at lower voltages.

11. 8. 20 Electric and optical fibre cables are to be, so far as reasonably practicable, installed remote from sources of mechanical damage. Where necessary the cables are to be protected in accordance with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 11.9 Mechanical protection of cables.

11. 8. 21 Electric and optical fibre cables with the exception of those for portable appliances and those installed in protective casings are to be fixed securely in accordance with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 11.10 Cable support systems.

11. 8. 22 Electric and optical fibre cables serving any essential services and any glands through which they pass must be able to withstand flooding for a period of 36 hours, based on the water pressure that may occur at the location.

11. 8. 23 Where electric and optical fibre cables penetrate bulkheads and decks the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 11.11 Penetration of bulkheads and decks by cables are to be complied with.

11. 8. 24 Where electric and optical fibre cables are installed in protective casings the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 11.12 Installation of electric and optical fibre cables in protective casings are to be complied with.

11. 8. 25 a.c. wiring is to be carried out using multicore cables wherever reasonably practicable. Where it is necessary to install single core electric cables for alternating current circuits in excess of 20 Amps the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 11.14 Single-core electric cables for alternating current are to be complied with, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 11.5 Construction 11.5.8.

11. 9 Mechanical protection of cables

11. 9. 1 Electric cables exposed to risk of mechanical damage are to be protected by suitable protective casings unless the protective covering (e.g. armour or sheath) is sufficient to withstand the possible cause of damage.

11. 9. 2 Electric cables installed in spaces where there is exceptional risk of mechanical damage such as holds, storage spaces, cargo spaces, etc. are to be suitably protected by metallic protective casings, even when armoured, unless the ship's structure affords adequate protection.

11. 9. 3 Metal protective casings are to be efficiently protected against corrosion, and effectively earthed in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.12, Earthing of non-current carrying parts.

11. 10 Cable support systems

11. 10. 1 Electric cables are to be effectively supported and secured, without being damaged, to the ship's structure, either indirectly by a cable support system, or directly by means of clips, saddles or straps to bulkheads etc. *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 11.8 Installation of electric and optical fibre cables 11.8.7.

11. 10. 2 Cable support systems, which may be in the form of trays or plates, separate support brackets, hangers or ladder racks, together with their fixings and accessories, are to be robust and are to be of corrosion-resistant material or suitably corrosion inhibited before erection. The cable support system is to be effectively secured to the ship's structure, the spacing of the fixings taking account of the probability of vibration and any heavy external forces, e.g. where located in areas subject to impact by sea-water.

11. 10. 3 The distances between the points at which the cable is supported (e.g. distances between ladder rungs, support brackets, hangers, etc.) are to be chosen according to the construction of cable (i.e. size and rigidity) and the probability of vibration and are to be generally in accordance with those given in Table 2. 11. 7: Maximum spacing for supports or fixings for securing cables.

Table 2. 11. 7: Maximum spacing for supports or fixings for securing cables

External diameter of cable		Non-armoured cables	Armoured cables
exceeding	not exceeding		
mm	mm	mm	mm
–	8	200	250
8	13	250	300
13	20	300	350
20	30	350	400
30	-	400	450

11. 10. 4 Where the cables are laid on top of their support system, the spacings of fixings may be increased beyond those given in Table 2. 11. 7: Maximum spacing for supports or fixings for securing cables, but should take account of the probability of movement and vibration and in general is not to exceed 900 mm. This relaxation is not to be applied where cables can be subjected to heavy external forces, e.g. where they are run on, or above, open deck or in areas subject to impact by sea-water.

11. 10. 5 Single core electric cables are to be firmly fixed, using supports of strength adequate to withstand forces corresponding to the values of the peak prospective short-circuit current.

11. 11 Penetration of bulkheads and decks by cables

11. 11. 1 Where electric and optical fibre cables pass through watertight, fire insulated or gastight bulkheads or decks separating hazardous zones or spaces from non-hazardous zones or spaces, the arrangements are to be such as to ensure the integrity of the bulkhead or deck is not impaired. The arrangements chosen are to ensure that the cables are not adversely affected.

11. 11. 2 Where cables pass through non-watertight bulkheads or structural steel, the holes are to be bushed with suitable material. If the steel is at least 6 mm thick, adequately rounded edges may be accepted as the equivalent of bushing.

11. 11. 3 Electric and optical fibre cables passing through decks are to be protected by deck tubes or ducts.

11. 11. 4 Where cables pass through thermal insulation they are to do so at right angles, in tubes sealed at both ends.

11. 12 Installation of electric and optical fibre cables in protective casings

11. 12. 1 Protective casings are to be mechanically continuous across joints and effectively supported and secured to prevent damage to the electric or optical fibre cables.

11. 12. 2 Protective casings are to be suitably smooth on the interior and have their ends shaped or bushed in such a manner as not to damage the cables.

11. 12. 3 The internal radius of bends of protective casings are to be not less than that required for the largest cable installed therein, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 11.8 Installation of electric and optical fibre cables 11.8.2.

11. 12. 4 The space factor (ratio of the sum of the cross sectional areas corresponding to the external diameters of the cables to the internal cross-sectional area of the protective casings) is not to exceed 0.4.

11. 12. 5 Where necessary, ventilation openings are to be provided at the highest and lowest points of protective casings to permit air circulation and to prevent accumulation of water.

11. 12. 6 Expansion joints are to be provided in protective casings where necessary.

11. 12. 7 Protective casings containing high voltage electric cables are not to contain other electric or optical fibre cables and are to be clearly identified, defining their function and voltage.

11. 13 Non-metallic cable support systems, protective casings and fixings

11. 13. 1 Where it is proposed to use non-metallic cable support systems, protective casings or fixings, the additional requirements of this sub-Section apply. For high voltage installations, metallic protective casings are required where Pt 6, Ch 2, 11.8 Installation of electric and optical fibre cables 11.8.17.b applies.

11. 13. 2 Non-metallic cable support systems and protective casings are to be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. The support systems and protective casings are to have been tested in accordance with an acceptable test procedure for:

a. ambient operating temperatures;
b. safe working load;
c. impact resistance;
d. flame retardancy;
e. smoke and toxicity; and
f. use in explosive gas atmospheres or in the presence of combustible dusts, electrical conductivity;

with satisfactory results.

11. 13. 3 Non-metallic cable support systems, protective casings and fixings installed on the open deck are to be protected from degradation caused by exposure to solar radiation.

11. 13. 4 Where the cable support system, protective casing or fixings are manufactured from a material other than metal, suitable supplementary metallic fixings or straps spaced at regular distances are to be provided such that, in the event of a fire or failure, the cable support system, protective casing and the affixed cables are prevented from falling and causing an injury to personnel and/or an obstruction to any escape route. Alternatively, the cables may be routed away from such areas.

11. 13. 5 The load on non-metallic cable support systems or protective casings is not to exceed the tested safe working load.

11. 13. 6 When a cable support system or protective casing is secured by means of clips or straps manufactured from a material other than metal the fixings are to be supplemented by suitable

metal clips or straps spaced at regular distances each not exceeding 2 m and, for non-metallic cable support systems or protective casings, that used during safe working load testing.

11. 13. 7 Non-metallic fixings are to be flame retardant in accordance with the requirements of IEC 60092-101: *Electrical installations in ships – Part 101: Definitions and general requirements*, or an alternative relevant National or International Standard.

11. 14 Single-core electric cables for alternating current

11. 14. 1 When installed in protective casings, electric cables belonging to the same circuit are to be installed in the same casing, unless the casing is of non-magnetic material.

11. 14. 2 Cable clips are to include electric cables of all phases of a circuit unless the clips are of non-magnetic material.

11. 14. 3 Single-core cables of the same circuit are to be in contact with one another, as far as possible. In any event the distance between adjacent electric cables is not to be greater than one cable diameter.

11. 14. 4 If single-core cables of current rating greater than 250 A are installed near a steel bulkhead, the clearance between the cables and the bulkhead is to be at least 50 mm unless the cables belonging to the same a.c. circuit are installed in trefoil formation.

11. 14. 5 Magnetic material is not to be used between single core cables of a group. Where cables pass through steel plates, all the conductors of the same circuit are to pass through a plate or gland, so made that there is no magnetic material between the cables, and the clearance between the cables and the magnetic material is not to be less than 75 mm, unless the cables belonging to the same a.c. circuit are installed in trefoil formation.

11. 14. 6 Electric cables are to be installed such that the induced voltages, and any circulating currents, in the sheath or armour are limited to safe values.

11. 15 Electric cable ends

11. 15. 1 Where screw-clamp or spring-clamp type terminations are used in electrical apparatus for external cable connections, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.11 Location and construction 1.11.9, cable conductors of the solid or stranded type may be inserted directly into the terminals. Where flexible conductors are used, a suitable termination is to be fitted to the cable conductor to prevent 'whiskering' of the strands.

11. 15. 2 If compression type conductor terminations are used on the cable ends, they are to be of a size to match the conductor and to be made with a compression type tool with the dies selected to suit the termination and conductor sizes and having a ratchet action to ensure completion of the compression action.

11. 15. 3 Soldered sockets may be used in conjunction with non corrosive fluxes provided that the maximum conductor temperature at the joint, under short-circuit conditions, does not exceed 160°C.

11. 15. 4 High voltage cables of the radial field type (i.e. having a conducting layer to control the electric field within the insulation) are to have terminations which provide electrical stress control.

11. 15. 5 Electric cables having hygroscopic insulation (e.g. mineral insulated) are to have their ends sealed against ingress of moisture.

11. 15. 6 Cable terminations are to be of such a design and dimensions that the maximum current likely to flow through them will not result in degradation of the contacts or damage to insulation as the result of overheating.

11. 15. 7 The fixing of conductors in terminals at joints and at tappings is to be capable of withstanding the thermal and mechanical effects of short-circuit currents.

11. 16 Joints and branch circuits in cable systems

11. 16. 1 If a joint is necessary it is to be carried out so that all conductors or fibres are adequately secured, insulated and protected from atmospheric action. The flame retardant properties of the cable are to be retained, the continuity of metallic sheath, braid or armour is to be maintained and the current carrying capacity or transmission of data through the cable is not to be impaired.

11. 16. 2 Tappings (branch circuits) are to be made in suitable boxes of such a design that the conductors and fibres remain suitably insulated, protected from atmospheric action and fitted with terminals or busbars of dimensions appropriate to the current rating.

11. 16. 3 Tappings and splices of optical fibre cables are to be made in accordance with the manufacturers' recommendations and to be provided with appropriate fittings. In addition they are to be located within suitably designed enclosures to ensure that the protection of the optical fibres is maintained.

11. 16. 4 Cables of a fire resistant type, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 11.5 Construction 11.5.3 are to be installed so that they are continuous throughout their length without any joints or tappings.

11. 17 Busbar trunking systems (bustrunks)

11. 17. 1 Where busbar trunking systems are used in place of electric cables, they are to comply with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 11.17 Busbar trunking systems (bustrunks) 11.17.2 to Pt 6, Ch 2, 11.17 Busbar trunking systems (bustrunks) 11.17.6, in addition to the applicable requirements in Pt 6, Ch 2, 7 Switchgear and controlgear assemblies.

11. 17. 2 The busbar trunking, or enclosure system, is to have a minimum ingress protection of IP54, according to IEC60529: *Degrees of protection provided by enclosures* (IP Code).

11. 17. 3 The internal and external arrangements of the busbar trunking, or enclosure system, are to ensure that the fire and/or watertight integrity of any structure through which it passes is not impaired.

11. 17. 4 Where the busbar trunking system is employed for circuits on and below the bulkhead deck, arrangements are to be made to ensure that circuits on other decks are not affected in the event of partial flooding under the normal angles of inclination given in Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.10 Inclination of ship for essential electrical equipment.

11. 17. 5 Supports and accessories are to be robust and are to be of corrosion-resistant material or suitably corrosion inhibited before erection. The support system is to effectively secure the busbar trunking system to the ship's structure.

11. 17. 6 hen accessories are fixed to the busbar system by means of clips or straps manufactured from a material other than metal, the fixings are to be supplemented by suitable metal clips or straps, such that, in the event of a fire or failure, the accessories are prevented from falling and causing injury to personnel and/or an obstruction to any escape route. Alternatively, the busbar system may be routed away from such areas.

PART

6

CHAPTER **2 Electrical Engineering**

SECTION **12 Batteries**

12. 1 General

12. 1. 1 The requirements of this Section apply to aqueous and non-aqueous permanently installed secondary batteries of the vented and valve-regulated sealed type such that the following goal and functional requirements are achieved:

- **Goal**

  Safe energy storage and dependable supply of power to consumers.

- **Functional requirements**

  Reasonably fore*See*able hazards external to the battery shall be identified and managed.

  Reasonably fore*See*able hazards internal within the battery shall be identified and managed.

12. 1. 2 A vented battery is one in which the cells have a cover provided with an opening through which the products of electrolysis and evaporation are allowed to escape freely from the cells to the atmosphere.

12. 1. 3 A valve-regulated sealed battery is one in which the cells are closed but have an arrangement (valve) which allows the escape of gas if the internal pressure exceeds a predetermined value. The electrolyte cannot normally be replaced.

12. 1. 4 The following Sections apply to lead acid, nickel cadmium and lithium cell chemistries. Where other chemistries are to be used, the ACSPlus *Procedure Assessment of Risk Based Designs* is to be followed.

12. 1. 5 Lithium battery systems are to satisfy the requirements of ACS's *Type Approval System Test Specification Number 5*. Alternative arrangements may be subject to special consideration.

12. 1. 6 Lithium battery management systems are to satisfy the requirements of ACS's *Type Approval System Test Specification Number 1*. Alternative arrangements may be subject to special consideration.

12. 1. 7 Where the lithium battery total system installation is less than 20 kWh then it is to be housed in a gastight steel enclosure with a gastight ventilation duct leading to a safe space on open deck and is to be suitable for withstanding the temperatures and pressures generated in the worst case thermal runaway condition. The battery system is to satisfy the requirements of ACS's *Type Approval System Test Specification Number 5*, or an equivalent and acceptable National or International Standard, amended where necessary for a battery space ambient temperature of 45°C. Alternative arrangements will be subject to special consideration.

12. 1. 8 The following Sections apply to lithium battery system installations of a total system capacity of 20 kWh or greater and are in addition to those applicable in other Parts of these Rules:

- Pt 6, Ch 2, 12.1 General 12.1.9;

- Pt 6, Ch 2, 12.2 Design and construction 12.2.2 to Pt 6, Ch 2, 12.2 Design and construction 12.2.6;
- Pt 6, Ch 2, 12.3 Location 12.3.12;
- Pt 6, Ch 2, 12.4 Installation 12.4.5 to Pt 6, Ch 2, 12.4 Installation 12.4.11;
- Pt 6, Ch 2, 12.5 Thermal management and ventilation 12.5.8 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 12.5 Thermal management and ventilation 12.5.12;
- Pt 6, Ch 2, 21.1 Testing 21.1.6

12. 1. 9 For lithium battery system installations of nominal voltages exceeding 1500 V d.c. the ACS *ACSPlusProcedure Assessment of Risk Based Designs* is to be followed.

12. 1. 10 Additional requirements may be imposed by the National Administration with which the ship is registered and/or by the Administration within whose territorial jurisdiction the ship is intended to operate. Where any such requirements exist, in the event of a conflict with the requirements herein the requirements of the National Administration will generally take precedence.

12. 1. 11 Integration of a lithium battery system that satisfies a ship's main power demand into the ship's electrical power system is to be in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 24 Hybrid electrical power systems.

12. 2 Design and construction

12. 2. 1 Batteries are to be constructed so as to prevent spilling of the electrolyte due to motion and to minimise the emission of electrolyte spray.

12. 2. 2 A Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA) is to be carried out for the lithium battery system installation and is to consider the effects of failure upon safety and dependability of the lithium battery system installation, taking account of reasonably fore*See*able internal and external failures such that the goal and functional requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 12.1 General 12.1.1 are achieved and is to include but is not limited to the following:

a. overpressure, fire and explosion;
b. electrical short circuit due to leakage of cell electrolyte or mechanical impact;
c. venting out flammable and toxic gases;
d. rupture of the casing of cell, battery module, battery pack or battery system with exposure of internal components; and
e. ingress of water into the battery space from cooling system leak, fire suppression system release and/or adjacent areas.

No single failure is to directly result in conditions more arduous than those under which the battery system has been type tested or in the hidden loss of any monitoring and control, alarm or safety function (either automatic or manual) on which the battery system installation depends for its safe operation.

12. 2. 3 The casing of a lithium cell and/or battery module is to incorporate a pressure relief function(s) that will prevent overpressure, rupture or explosion of the battery module enclosure (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 21 Testing and trials).

12. 2. 4 The lithium battery management system is to continuously monitor the condition of cells, battery modules or battery packs and to maintain them within their specified safe operating region. As a minimum the alarms and safeguards as indicated in Table 2. 12. 1: Lithium battery system: alarms and safeguards are to be provided:

Table 2. 12. 1: Lithium battery system: alarms and safeguards

Item	Alarm	Note

Cell voltage*	High	Automatic termination of the cell charge current. *See* Notes 1 and 5
	Low	Per cell. Automatic prevention of cell discharge. *See* Notes 2 and 5
Cell temperature*	1st stage high	Per sensor. *See* Notes 4 and 5
	2nd stage high	Per sensor. Automatic shutdown of battery system. *See* Notes 4 and 5
	Low	Automatic charge and discharge current limitation. *See* Notes 3 and 4
Charge current of the battery cells	High	Automatic reduction of charge/discharge current. *See* Note 3
Communication failure between battery management system and external charge controller system	Failure	Automatic shutdown of battery system *See* Note 6
Battery management system	Failure	Automatic shutdown of battery system
Temperature sensor	Failure	Automatic shutdown of battery system
Voltage sensor	Failure	Automatic shutdown of battery system
Emergency trip*	Active	Automatic shutdown of battery system *See* Note 5
Insulation resistance	Low	-

Note 1. Cell voltage is to be maintained below the cell manufacturer specified upper limit charge voltage.

Note 2. Cell voltage is to be maintained above the cell manufacturer specified lower limit discharge voltage.

Note 3. Cell charge/discharge current is to be controlled within cell manufacturer specified current limits.

Note 4. Cell temperature is to be controlled within the cell manufacturer specified temperature limits.

Note 5. For lithium batteries used as an emergency source of power, only items marked * are to initiate automatic shutdown.

Note 6. For lithium batteries used as an emergency source of power, communication failure is to automatically stop and prevent charging.

Note 7. Automatic shutdown of battery system includes termination of battery charging and discharging and disconnection from electrical distribution network.

12. 2. 5 A fully independent hard-wired means to disconnect the battery system in an emergency from power distribution is to be provided. This emergency trip is to be located outside of the battery space and situated such that it will remain accessible in the event of an emergency inside the battery space and is to initiate an audible and visual alarm at the relevant control stations to advise duty personnel of the emergency condition.

12. 2. 6 For lithium battery system installations the following is to be measured and displayed at control stations relevant to the system in which the battery system is installed:

a. State of charge (SOC) and state of health (SOH) are to be displayed at relevant control stations and on the navigating bridge.

b. System alarms are to be displayed at relevant control stations and at least a common alarm displayed on the navigating bridge.

12. 3 Location

12. 3. 1 Vented batteries connected to a charging device with a power output of more than 2 kW, calculated from the maximum obtainable charging current and the nominal voltage of the battery, are to be housed in an adequately ventilated compartment assigned to batteries only, or in an adequately ventilated suitable box on open deck.

12. 3. 2 Vented batteries connected to a charging device with a power output within the range 0.2 kW to 2 kW, calculated from the maximum obtainable charging current and the nominal voltage of the battery, are to be installed in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 12.3,, Location 12.3.1, or may be installed within a well ventilated machinery or similar space.

12. 3. 3 Vented batteries connected to a charging device with a power output of less than 0.2 kW, calculated from the maximum obtainable charging current and the nominal voltage of the battery, may be installed in an open position or in a battery box in any suitable space.

12. 3. 4 Where more than one charging device is installed for any battery or group of batteries in one location, the total power output is to be used to determine the installation requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 12.3,, Location 12.3.1, Pt 6, Ch 2, 12.3 Location 12.3.2 or Pt 6, Ch 2, 12.3 Location 12.3.3.

12. 3. 5 Valve-regulated sealed batteries may be located in compartments with standard marine or industrial electrical equipment provided that the ventilation requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 12.5 Thermal management and ventilation 12.5.11 and the charging requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 12.6 Charging facilities 12.6.4 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 12.6 Charging facilities 12.6.5 are complied with. Equipment that may produce arcs, sparks or high temperatures in normal operation is not to be in close proximity to battery vent plugs or pressure relief valve outlets.

12. 3. 6 Where lead-acid and nickel-cadmium batteries are installed in the same compartment precautions are to be taken, such as the provision of screens, to prevent possible contamination of electrolytes.

12. 3. 7 Where batteries may be exposed to the risk of mechanical damage, or falling objects, they are to be suitably protected.

12. 3. 8 Batteries installed in crew and passenger cabins, together with their associated corridors, are to be of the hermetically sealed type.

12. 3. 9 A permanent notice prohibiting smoking and the use of naked lights or equipment capable of creating a source of ignition is to be prominently displayed adjacent to the entrances of all compartments containing batteries.

12. 3. 10 Only electrical equipment necessary for operational reasons and for the provision of lighting is to be installed in compartments provided in compliance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 12.3,, Location 12.3.1, the compartment ventilation exhaust ducts and zones within a 1.5 m radius of the ventilation outlet(s). Such electrical equipment is to be certified for group IIC gases and temperature Class T1 in accordance with the applicable parts of IEC 60079: *Explosive atmospheres*, or an acceptable and relevant National Standard.

12. 3. 11 A permanent notice is to be prominently displayed adjacent to battery installations advising personnel that replacement batteries are to be of an equivalent performance type. For valve-regulated sealed batteries, the notice is to advise of the requirement for replacement batteries to be suitable with respect to products of electrolysis and evaporation being allowed to escape from cells to the atmosphere, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.5 Additions or alterations 1.5.3.

12. 3. 12 The lithium battery space is to be separate from other spaces and compartments, is not to be located forward of the collision bulkhead and is not to be contiguous to the boundaries of machinery spaces of Category A or those spaces containing the main source of electrical power, associated transforming equipment (if any) or the main switchboard. The boundaries of the lithium battery space are to be part of a vessel structure or enclosures and provided with 'A-60' insulation of the bulkhead unless the space is adjacent to spaces of negligible fire risk such as cofferdams, void spaces or similar, in which case consideration may be given to reducing the insulation to 'A-0'. Penetrations through these boundaries are to be protected to the same fire protection standard.

Special consideration will be made for a ship not built of steel or equivalent material. All other safety systems within the lithium battery spaces are to be in accordance with the requirements of this Section or, if not made explicit, at least equivalent to those of a machinery space of Category A.

12. 4 Installation

12. 4. 1 Batteries are to be arranged such that each cell or crate of cells is accessible from the top and at least one side and it is to be ensured that they are suitably secured to move with the ship's motion.

12. 4. 2 The materials used in the construction of a battery rack or stand are to be resistant to the battery electrolyte or suitably protected by paint or a coating.

12. 4. 3 Measures are to be taken to minimise the effect of any electrolyte spillage and leakage, for example the use of rubber capping around the top of the cells and the provision of a tray of electrolyte-resistant material below the cells, unless the deck is suitably protected with paint or a coating.

12. 4. 4 The interiors of all compartments for batteries, including crates, trays, boxes, shelves and other structural parts therein, are to be of an electrolyte-resistant material or suitably protected, for example with paint or a coating.

12. 4. 5 Battery systems are to be installed in accordance with manufacturer’s recommendations taking account of the results of the FMEA study.

12. 4. 6 The lithium battery space and the crates, trays, boxes, shelves and other structural parts therein are to be designed and constructed such that the structural integrity of the battery space will not be compromised in the event of a lithium fire.

12. 4. 7 The lithium battery space is to be fitted with suitable fixed detectors in accordance with manufacturer’s recommendations and which are capable of providing early identification of a fire or thermal runaway condition. Early identification is to include high cell temperature or detection of electrolyte solvent vapours and a combination of smoke and heat detectors. When activated, the fire detection system is to initiate an alarm to the relevant control stations and on the navigating bridge and is to initiate the automatic isolation of electric systems within the lithium battery space, except as described below, and activate the fixed fire-fighting system.

12. 4. 8 In the event that a fire or thermal runaway condition is identified, the battery monitoring system is to initiate protective features such as automatic safe isolation of the batteries. Ventilation necessary for extraction of gases, active cooling systems, and thermal/safety monitoring and alarm are to be continued prior to, during and after an overheating or fire event. Failure of the monitoring system is to be alarmed to the ship's safety system and is to result in the battery system automatically reverting to a defined safe state.

12. 4. 9 An appropriate water-based fixed fire-fighting system in accordance with *SOLAS II-2, Part C*, *Regulation 10 - Fire fighting 10.4.1.1.3* and the manufacturer’s recommendation is to be provided for the lithium battery space. The fixed fire-fighting system is to be suitable for heat removal, boundary cooling and/or extinguishing for the duration that the heat and/or gas release are present. Fixed fire-fighting systems using a medium other than water which provide equivalent heat removal, boundary cooling and/or extinguishing for the duration that the heat and/or gas release is present can be taken into consideration provided that appropriate fire tests have been conducted. In particular, the fire-extinguishing media are to be chosen as appropriate for the specific type and characteristics of fire fore*See*n.

12. 4. 10 The fixed fire-fighting control system is to be located outside the battery space, be activated automatically and be capable of manual activation. In addition to the fixed fire-fighting system, the battery space is to be provided with a minimum of two (2) portable and suitable fire-extinguishers located outside the space at or near the entrance(s). The number and position of hydrants are to be such that at least two jets of water not emanating from the same hydrant, each from a single length of hose, can reach any part of the lithium battery space. Such hydrants are to

be positioned in close proximity to the lithium battery space. Any part of the fire-fighting system which crosses through the lithium battery space without serving it is to be avoided.

12. 4. 11 The fire detection and alarm systems are to be in accordance with the recommendations of the battery manufacturer and the following sub-Sections of these Rules:

- Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.8, Fire detection and fire alarm systems ;
- Pt 6, Ch 2, 17.1 Fire detection and fire alarm systems

12. 4. 12 The technical description detailed in Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.17.b is to consider the actual battery system installation and its integration into the ship, including but not limited to the following:

- arrangement of battery compartment (location, including fire risk of adjacent spaces/compartments, fire burden from equipment other than batteries, heat sources, etc.);
- temperature control arrangements for the battery space and their contribution to system safety;
- ventilation arrangements to prevent concentrations of gasses within the space in case of uncontrolled thermal runaway;
- hazardous area(s) requirements;
- reasonable gas tightness of ventilation ducting;
- fire integrity of the space;
- the use of fire extinguishing arrangements for cooling in the case of uncontrolled thermal runaway.

The FMEA referenced in Pt 6, Ch 2, 12.2 Design and construction 12.2.2 should address any additional failure modes identified during the preparation of this technical description.

12. 4. 13 The lithium battery space is to be provided with two means of escape, at least one independent of any watertight door and leading to a safe position outside the space. One of the escapes is to be suitable for the passage of a stretcher. At each entrance/exit an emergency escape breathing device (EEBD) is to be provided. Where the maximum travel distance to the door within the lithium battery space is less than 5 m, a single means of escape is acceptable. The lithium battery space is not to be considered as part of an escape route (primary or secondary) from any other accommodation, control, service space, machinery space of Category 'A' and high fire risk area such as a garage, paint store, etc.

12. 5 Thermal management and ventilation

12. 5. 1 Battery compartments and boxes are to be ventilated to avoid accumulation of dangerous concentrations of flammable gas.

12. 5. 2 Where a battery compartment ventilator is required to be fitted with a closing device in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 12, 2.3 Closing appliances 2.3.9, a warning notice clearly stating the purpose of the closing device, for example:

'This closing device is to be kept open and only closed in the event of a fire or flooding – Explosive gas atmosphere'

is to be provided at the closing device to mitigate the possibility of inadvertent closing of the ventilator. Furthermore, means to lock the battery compartment ventilators in the open position are to be provided.

12. 5. 3 Ducted natural ventilation may be employed for battery installations connected to a charging device with a power output of 2 kW or less, provided the exhaust duct can be run directly from the top of the compartment or box to the open air above, with no part of the duct more than 45°

from the vertical. A suitable opening is also to be provided below the level of the top of the batteries, so as to ensure a free ventilation air flow. The ventilation duct is to have an area not less than 50 cm^2 for every 1 m^3 of battery compartment or box volume.

12. 5. 4 Where natural ventilation is impracticable or insufficient, mechanical ventilation is to be provided, with the air inlet located near the floor and the exhaust at the top of the compartment.

12. 5. 5 Mechanical exhaust ventilation complying with Pt 6, Ch 2, 12.5 Thermal management and ventilation 12.5.9 is to be provided for battery installations connected to a charging device with a total maximum power output of more than 2 kW. Also, to minimise the possibility of oxygen enrichment, compartments and spaces containing batteries with boost charging facilities are to be provided with mechanical exhaust ventilation irrespective of the charging device power output.

12. 5. 6 The ventilation system for battery compartments and boxes, other than boxes located on open deck or in spaces to which Pt 6, Ch 2, 12.3 Location 12.3.2, Pt 6, Ch 2, 12.3 Location 12.3.3 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 12.3 Location 12.3.5 refer, is to be separate from other ventilation systems. The exhaust ducting is to be led to a location in the open air, where any gases can be safely diluted, away from possible sources of ignition and openings into spaces where gases may accumulate.

12. 5. 7 Fan motors associated with exhaust ducts from battery compartments are to be placed external to the ducts and the compartments.

12. 5. 8 Ventilating fans for battery compartments are to be so constructed and be of material such as to minimise risk of sparking in the event of the impeller touching the casing, and are to be suitable for the potentially hazardous and corrosive gases produced in a thermal runaway condition. Non-metallic impellers are to be of an anti-static material.

12. 5. 9 Battery boxes are to be provided with sufficient ventilation openings located so as to avoid accumulation of flammable gas whilst preventing the entrance of rain or spray.

12. 5. 10 The ventilation arangements for all installations of vented type batteries are to be such that the quantity of air expelled is at least equal to:

$$Q = 110In$$

where

n = number of cells in series

I = maximum current delivered by the charging equipment during gas formation, but not less than 25% of the maximum obtainable charging current in amperes

Q = quantity of air expelled in litres/hr.

12. 5. 11 The ventilation rate for compartments containing valve-regulated sealed batteries may be reduced to 25% of that given in Pt 6, Ch 2, 12.5 Thermal management and ventilation 12.5.10.

12. 5. 12 Thermal management of the lithium battery space is to be assessed, including the criticality of any cooling systems required to ensure reliable operation and to prevent thermal runaway within the marine environment. *See also* Pt 6, Ch 1, 1.4 Control, alarm and safety equipment 1.4.3.

12. 6 Charging facilities

12. 6. 1 Charging facilities are to be provided for all secondary batteries such that they may be completely charged from the completely discharged state in a reasonable time having regard to the service requirements.

12. 6. 2 Suitable means including an ammeter and a voltmeter, are to be provided for controlling and monitoring charging of batteries, and to protect them against discharge into the charging circuits.

12. 6. 3 For floating circuits or any other conditions where the load is connected to the battery whilst it is on charge, the maximum battery voltage is not to exceed the safe value for any connected apparatus.

12. 6. 4 Where valve-regulated sealed batteries are installed, the charging facilities are to incorporate independent means such as overvoltage protection to prevent gas evolution in excess of the manufacturer's design quantity.

12. 6. 5 Boost charge facilities, where provided, are to be arranged such that they are automatically disconnected should the battery compartment ventilation system fail.

12. 7 Recording of batteries for emergency and essential services

12. 7. 1 schedule of batteries fitted for use for essential and emergency services is to be compiled and maintained.

12. 7. 2 Procedures are to be put in place and documented to ensure that, where batteries are replaced, they are of an equivalent performance type, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.5 Additions or alterations 1.5.3.

12. 7. 3 When additions or alterations are proposed to the existing batteries for essential and emergency services, the schedule and replacement procedure documentation are to be updated to reflect the proposed installation and submitted in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.5 Additions or alterations 1.5.2.

12. 7. 4 The schedule and replacement procedure documentation are to be made available to the ACS Surveyor on request.

PART

6

CHAPTER **2 Electrical Engineering**

SECTION **13 Equipment - Heating, lighting and accessories**

13. 1 Heating and cooking equipment

13. 1. 1 The construction of heaters is to give a degree of protection according to IEC 60529: *Degrees of protection provided by enclosures (IP Code)*, or an acceptable and relevant National Standard, suitable for the intended location.

13. 1. 2 Heating elements are to be suitably guarded.

13. 1. 3 Heating and cooking equipment is to be installed such that adjacent bulkheads and decks are not subjected to excessive heating.

13. 2 Lighting - General

13. 2. 1 Lampholders are to be constructed of flame retarding non-hygroscopic materials.

13. 2. 2 Lighting fittings are to be so arranged as to prevent temperature rises which overheat or damage surrounding materials. They must not impair the integrity of fire divisions.

13. 3 Incandescent lighting

13. 3. 1 Tungsten filament lamps and lampholders are to be in accordance with Table 2. 13. 1: Lamps and lampholders.

Table 2. 13. 1: Lamps and lampholders

Designation		Maximum lamp rating		Maximum lampholder current, A
		Voltage, V	Power, W	
Screw cap lamps				
	E40	250	3000	16
	E27	250	200	4
	E14	250	15	2
	E10	24	-	2
Bayonet cap lamps				
	B22	250	200	4
	B15d	250	15	2
	B15s	55	15	2

Tubular fluorescent lamps				
	G13	250	115	-
	G5	250	80	-
Note Other lamp types are to be in accordance with IEC 60092-306: *Electrical installations in ships - Part 306: Equipment - Luminaires and lighting accessories*.				

13. 3. 2 Lampholders of type E40 are to be provided with a means of locking the lamp in the lampholder.

13. 4 Fluorescent lighting

13. 4. 1 Fluorescent lamps and lampholders are to be in accordance with Table 2. 13. 1: Lamps and lampholders.

13. 4. 2 Fittings, reactors, capacitors and other auxiliaries are not to be mounted on surfaces which are subject to high temperatures. If mounted separately they are additionally to be enclosed in an earthed conductive casing.

13. 4. 3 Where capacitors of 0.5 microfarads and above are installed, means are to be provided to promptly discharge the capacitors on disconnection of the supply.

13. 5 Discharge lighting

13. 5. 1 Discharge lamps operating in excess of 250 V are only acceptable as fixed fittings. Warning notices calling attention to the voltage are to be permanently displayed at points of access to the lamps and where otherwise necessary.

13. 6 Socket outlets and plugs

13. 6. 1 The temperature rise on the live parts of socket outlet and plugs is not to exceed 30°C. Socket outlets and plugs are to be so constructed that they cannot be readily short-circuited whether the plug is in or out, and so that a pin of the plug cannot be made to earth either pole of the socket outlet.

13. 6. 2 All socket outlets of current rating in excess of 16 A are to be provided with a switch, and be interlocked such that the plug cannot be inserted or withdrawn when the switch is in the 'on' position.

13. 6. 3 Where it is necessary to earth the non-current carrying parts of portable or transportable equipment, an effective means of earthing is to be provided at the socket outlet.

13. 6. 4 On weather decks, galleys, laundries, machinery spaces and all wet situations socket outlets and plugs are to be effectively shielded against rain and spray and are to be provided with means of maintaining this quality after removal of the plug.

13. 7 Enclosures

13. 7. 1 Enclosures for the containing and mounting of electrical accessories are to be of metal, effectively protected against corrosion, or of flame retardant insulating materials.

PART

6

CHAPTER 2 Electrical Engineering

SECTION 14 Electrical equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres or in the presence of combustible dusts

14. 1 General

14. 1. 1 The installation of electrical equipment in spaces and locations in which flammable mixtures are liable to collect, e.g. areas containing flammable gas or vapour and/or combustible dust, is to be minimised.

14. 1. 2 In order to eliminate potential sources of ignition from spaces and locations in which flammable mixtures are liable to collect such hazardous areas are to be identified and electrical equipment within these areas is to be selected and installed in accordance with the requirements of this Section.

14. 1. 3 Spaces and locations are considered as hazardous in the presence of any of the following:

a. spaces or tanks containing either:
   i. flammable liquid having a flashpoint (closed-cup test) not exceeding 60°C and below;
   ii. flammable liquid having a flashpoint exceeding 60°C, heated or raised by ambient conditions to a temperature within 15°C of its flashpoint; or
   iii. flammable gas;

b. piping systems or equipment containing fluid defined by (a) and having flanged joints or glands or other openings through which leakage of fluid may occur under normal operating conditions;

c. spaces containing coal, grain or other solids liable to release flammable gas and/or combustible dust;

d. spaces containing dangerous goods in packaged form, of the following Classes as defined in the IMDG Code: 1(with the exception of goods in division 1.4, compatibility group S), 2.1 (inclusive of applicable gas bottles for onboard use), 3 (FP<23°C), 6.1 (FP<23°C) and 8 (FP<23°C);

e. piping systems or equipment associated with processes (such as electro-chlorination) generating flammable gas as a by-product and having openings from which the gas may escape under normal operating conditions; or

f. piping systems or equivalent containing flammable liquids not defined by (a), having flanged joints, glands or other openings through which leakage of fluid in the form of a mist or fine spray may occur under normal operating conditions.

Note FP means flashpoint (closed-cup test).

14. 1. 4 Equipment that is to be installed in an area where explosive gases can be present is to be selected in accordance with both Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.3, Selection of equipment for use in explosive gas

atmospheres and Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.4, Selection of equipment for use in the presence of combustible dusts.

14. 1. 5 Equipment that is to be installed in an area where combustible dusts can be present is to be selected in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.4, Selection of equipment for use in the presence of combustible dusts.

14. 1. 6 For permanent secondary battery installations, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 12 Batteries.

14. 2 Hazardous areas

14. 2. 1 Hazardous areas and sources of hazard for ships intended for the carriage in bulk of oil cargoes, liquefied gases, other flammable liquid cargoes, the special requirements for ships with spaces for carrying vehicles with fuel in their tanks for their own propulsion, the special requirements for ships intended for the carriage of dangerous goods and materials hazardous only in bulk and the requirements for ships with spaces for storing paint, are defined (either directly, or by reference to other documents) in Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.10 Requirements for tankers intended for the carriage in bulk to Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.15 Requirements for ships with spaces for storing paint .

14. 2. 2 Hazardous areas associated with flammable liquids or gases are classified into zones based upon the frequency of the occurrence and duration of an explosive gas atmosphere, as follows:

- **zone 0**: an area in which an explosive atmosphere is present continuously or for long periods or frequently
- **zone 1**: an area in which an explosive atmosphere consisting of a mixture with air of flammable substances in the form of gas, vapour or mist is likely to occur in normal operation occasionally
- **zone 2**: an area in which an explosive atmosphere consisting of a mixture with air of flammable substances in the form of gas, vapour or mist is not likely to occur in normal operation but, if it does occur, will persist for a short period only.

See IEC 60079-10–1: *Explosive atmospheres – Part 10-1: Classification of areas – Explosive gas atmospheres.*.

14. 2. 3 Hazardous areas associated with solid substances or packaged liquids to which Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.14 Special requirements for ships intended for the carriage of dangerous goods and materials hazardous only in bulk applies are classified into zones based upon the frequency of the occurrence and duration of an explosive atmosphere due to the presence of gas and/or combustible dust, as follows:

- **hazardous area**: area in which an explosive atmosphere is likely to occur in normal operation (comparable with **zone 1**)
- **extended hazardous area**: area in which an explosive atmosphere is not likely to occur in normal operation and, if it does occur, is likely to do so only infrequently and will exist for a short period only (comparable with **zone 2**).

See IEC 60092-506:*Electrical Installation in ships – Part 506: Special features – Ships carrying specific dangerous goods and materials hazardous only in bulk*. An explosive atmosphere may exist due to gas and/or combustible dust.

14. 2. 4 The following areas are regarded as hazardous, **zone 0**:

a. the interiors of those spaces, tanks, piping systems and equipment defined by Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.1 General 14.1.3.a and Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.1 General 14.1.3.b; and

b. enclosed, unventilated spaces containing pipework or equipment defined by Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.1 General 14.1.3.b and Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.1 General 14.1.3.e.

14. 2. 5 The following areas are regarded as hazardous, **zone 1**:

a. unventilated spaces separated by a single bulkhead or deck from a cargo defined by Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.1 General 14.1.3.a;
b. ventilated spaces containing pipework or equipment defined by Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.1 General 14.1.3.b and Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.1 General 14.1.3.e;
c. zones within a 3 m radius of ventilation outlets, hatches or doorways or other openings into spaces defined by Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.2 Hazardous areas 14.2.5.a or Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.2 Hazardous areas 14.2.5.b, vapour having a density relative to that of air of more than 0.75, the hazardous zone is considered to extend.
d. zones on open deck within 3 m of the ventilation outlets of cargo tanks defined in Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.1 General 14.1.3.a, which permit the flow of small volumes of vapour or gas mixtures caused by thermal variation;
e. zones within a 3 m radius of flanged joints, or glands or other openings defined by Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.1 General 14.1.3.b;
f. zones within a 1.5 m radius of flanged joints, or glands or other openings defined by Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.1 General 14.1.3.e and Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.1 General 14.1.3.f;
g. zones within a 3 m radius of bunds or barriers intended to contain spillage of liquids defined by Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.1 General 14.1.3.a;
h. zones on open deck within a 1.5 m radius of any opening into a space defined by Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.2 Hazardous areas 14.2.5.a;
i. enclosed or semi-enclosed spaces with direct opening into a **zone 1** hazardous location.
j. interiors of chemical lockers, gas cylinder stores and other such spaces, as defined by Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.1 General 14.1.3.d, containing dangerous goods for on-board use. This includes, but is not limited to, paints, gas cylinders, chemicals and small quantities of fuel.
k. zones within a 1.5 m radius of ventilation inlets or other openings serving spaces defined by Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.2 Hazardous areas 14.2.5.b; and
l. zones on open deck within a vertical cylinder of unlimited height and 6 m radius centred upon the centre of the outlet, and within a hemisphere of 6 m radius below the outlet which permit the flow of large volumes of vapour or gas mixtures during loading/discharging/ballasting

14. 2. 6 The following areas are regarded as hazardous, **zone 2**;

a. ventilated spaces separated by a single bulkhead or deck from a **zone 0** space;
b. zones on open deck extending 1.5 m beyond those defined by Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.2 Hazardous areas 14.2.5.c, Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.2 Hazardous areas 14.2.5.e, Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.2 Hazardous areas 14.2.5.f, Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.2 Hazardous areas 14.2.5.g or Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.2 Hazardous areas 14.2.5.h;
c. zones on open deck extending 2 m beyond those defined by Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.2 Hazardous areas 14.2.5.d;
d. zones on open deck extending 4 m beyond those defined by Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.2 Hazardous areas 14.2.5.i; and
e. enclosed or semi-enclosed spaces with direct opening into a **zone 2** hazardous location.

14. 2. 7 Vertical and horizontal extent of hazardous zones defined by Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.2,, Hazardous areas 14.2.5 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.2 Hazardous areas 14.2.6 is to be considered with reference to density relative to air of flammable gas or vapour encountered. *See* IEC 60079-10-1: *Explosive atmospheres – Part 10-1: Classification of areas – Explosive gas atmospheres.*

14. 2. 8 Consideration may also be given to hazardous areas and sources of hazard defined in accordance with IEC 60079-10-1: *Explosive atmospheres – Part 10-1: Classification of areas – Explosive gas atmospheres* and/or IEC 60079-10-2: *Explosive atmospheres — Part 10-2: Classification of areas – Combustible dust atmospheres.*

14. 3 Selection of equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres

14. 3. 1 When equipment is to be installed in areas where an explosive gas atmosphere may be present, it is generally to be of a type providing protection against ignition of the gases encountered and compliant with the relevant Parts of IEC 60079: *Explosive atmospheres*, or an acceptable and relevant National Standard, unless permitted otherwise by Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.3 Selection of equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres 14.3.4, Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.3,, Selection of equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres 14.3.5 or Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.3 Selection of equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres 14.3.6.

14. 3. 2 The equipment protection type permitted depends on the hazardous area where the equipment is to be located, as defined in Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.2, Hazardous areas. For certain locations on the ship other requirements may limit installations to specific equipment types and/or particular applications.

14. 3. 3 Equipment for **zone 0** or **zone 1**, with the exception of simple apparatus as defined in Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.3 Selection of equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres 14.3.4 or Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.3,, Selection of equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres 14.3.5, is to be certified by a National or other appropriate authority. Equipment without independent certification may be considered for installation in **zone 2**.

14. 3. 4 In **zone 0**, the following may be considered:

a. intrinsically safe, category ‘a’ (Ex ‘ia’); or
b. simple apparatus (for example thermocouples, photocells, strain gauges, junction boxes, switching devices), included in intrinsically safe circuits of category ‘ia’, compliant with IEC 60079-14: *Explosive atmospheres – Part 14: Electrical installations design, selection and erection*.

14. 3. 5 In **zone 1**, the following may be considered:

a. equipment permitted within **zone 0**;
b. intrinsically safe, category ‘b’ (Ex ‘ib’);
c. simple apparatus as defined above, included in intrinsically safe circuits of category ‘ib’;
d. increased safety (Ex ‘e’);
e. flameproof (Ex ‘d’);
f. pressurised enclosure (Ex ‘p’);
g. powder filled (Ex ‘q’); or
h. encapsulated (Ex ‘m’).

14. 3. 6 In **zone 2**, the following may be considered:

a. equipment permitted within **zone 1**;
b. type of protection ‘n’ or ‘N’;
c. equipment such as control panels, protected by purging and pressurisation and capable of being verified by inspection as meeting the requirements of IEC 60079-2: *Explosive atmospheres* – Part 2*: Equipment protection by pressurized enclosures "p"*; or
d. radio aerials having robust construction, meeting the relevant requirements of IEC 60079-15: *Explosive atmospheres – Part 15: Equipment protection by type of protection "n"*. Additionally, in the case of transmitter aerials, it is to be shown, by detailed study or measurement, or by limiting the peak radiated power and field strength to 1 W and 30 V/m, respectively, that they present negligible risk of inducing incendive sparking in adjacent structures or equipment.

14. 3. 7 Equipment having type of protection ‘ia’, ‘ib’, or ‘d’, is to be of a Group (IIA, IIB or IIC) meeting or exceeding that required for safe operation in the presence of any gas or vapour that can be present, or is to be certified specifically for such gases or vapours.

14. 3. 8 All equipment is to be of a temperature classification (T1 to T6) that confirms, or is to be assessed so as to confirm, that its maximum surface temperature will not reach the ignition temperature of any gas or vapour, or mixture of gases or vapours, which can be present. The surface temperature considered may be that of an internal or external part, according to the type of protection of the equipment.

14. 3. 9 Where optical fibre transmission equipment located in a hazardous or non-hazardous area provides energy to, or passes optical energy through, a hazardous area with an explosive gas atmosphere, then:

a. The protection type to be appropriate to the zone classification, as detailed in Table 2. 14. 1: Zone classification for types of protection associated with optical fibre transmission systems.
b. The optical energy levels in **zone 0** and **1**, including fault conditions, are to be limited to 5 mW/mm^2 or 35 mW for constant wave and 0.1 mJ/mm^2 pulsed.
c. The optical energy levels in **zone 2**, including fault conditions, are to be limited to 10 mW/mm2 or 35 mW for constant wave and 0.5 mJ/mm^2 pulsed, and
d. Pulsed sources with a pulse interval less than 5 seconds, are to be considered constant wave sources.

14. 3. 10 Consideration may also be given to other types of protection, selected in accordance with the requirements of;

a. IEC 60079-14: *Explosive atmospheres – Part 14: Electrical installations design, selection and erection*, or
b. Arrangements complying with IEC 60092-502: *Electrical installations in ships – Part 502: Tankers – Special features, See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.10 Requirements for tankers intended for the carriage in bulk to Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.12 Requirements for ships intended for the carriage of other flammable liquid cargoes in bulk.

Table 2. 14. 1: Zone classification for types of protection associated with optical fibre transmission systems

Zone	Type of protection level	Associated requirements
0	'op is', Inherently safe optical radiation, 'op sh', Protected fibre optic media with ignition capable beam interlocked with fibre breakage	Safe with two faults additional mechanical protection required
1	'op is', Inherently safe optical, radiation 'op pr', Protected fibre optic media with ignition capable beam 'op sh', Protected fibre optic media with ignition capable beam interlocked with fibre breakage	Safe with single fault additional mechanical protection required additional mechanical protection not necessarily required
2	'op is', inherently safe optical radiation, 'op pr', Protected fibre optic media with ignition capable beam 'op sh', Protected fibre optic media with ignition capable beam interlocked with fibre breakage	Safe in normal operation additional mechanical protection not necessarily required additional mechanical protection not necessarily required

14. 4 Selection of equipment for use in the presence of combustible dusts

14. 4. 1 Where equipment is to be installed in **hazardous areas**, as defined by Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.2 Hazardous areas 14.2.3, associated with the presence of combustible dusts, it is, to be of a type certified by a National or other appropriate authority for the combustible dusts and, additionally, any explosive gases encountered.

14. 4. 2 Where optical fibre transmission equipment located in a **hazardous area**, **extended hazardous area** or non-hazardous area provides energy to, or passes optical energy through, a hazardous area with combustible dusts, then the optical energy levels are to be:

a. restricted in **hazardous area** to 5 mW/mm^2 or 35 mW maximum for constant wave sources or 0.1 mJ/mm^2 for pulsed sources;

b. restricted in **extended hazardous area** to 10 mW/mm^2 or 35 mW maximum, for constant wave sources or 0.5 mJ/mm^2 for pulsed sources;

c. where a pulsed source has a pulse interval less than 5 seconds, it is to be considered constant wave source.

14. 4. 3

14. 4. 4 Electrical equipment for use in **hazardous areas** is to be designed and installed to minimise the accumulation of dust which may interfere with the safe dissipation of heat from the enclosure.

14. 4. 5 Where equipment is to be installed in **extended hazardous areas**, as defined by Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.2 Hazardous areas 14.2.3, associated with the presence of combustible dust and, additionally, any explosive gases encountered, the following may be considered:

a. equipment permitted within a **hazardous area** as defined in Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.4 Selection of equipment for use in the presence of combustible dusts 14.4.1;

b. equipment having degree of protection IP5X, or better, and having a surface temperature under normal operating conditions, but in the absence of a combustible dust layer, not exceeding two-thirds of the minimum ignition temperature in degrees Celsius of the combustible dust/air mixture(s) that can be present and appropriate for any explosive gases encountered; and

c. equipment of a type which ensures absence of sparks or arcs and hot spots during normal operation.

14. 4. 6 Where equipment certified for combustible dusts is not available, consideration will be given to the use of equipment complying as a minimum, with the following requirements provided no explosive gases will be present:

a. the enclosure is to be at least dust protected (IP5X) having, when tested in accordance with IEC 60529, an ingress of fine dust within the enclosure not exceeding 10 g per m^3 of free air space, and

b. the surface temperature of the equipment, under normal operating conditions, but in the absence of a combustible dust layer, is not to exceed two-thirds of the minimum ignition temperature in degrees Celsius of the combustible dust/air mixture(s) that can be present, or

c. the equipment is to be certified intrinsically safe “ia” or “ib” having a temperature classification ensuring compliance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.3 Selection of equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres 14.3.5.b, or

d. pressurised and operated in accordance with procedures ensuring, prior to its re-energisation, the absence of combustible dust within the enclosure following loss of pressurisation and consequent shutdown, and having surface temperature complying with (b), or

e. simple apparatus included in intrinsically safe circuits or radio aerials, complying with Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.3,, Selection of equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres 14.3.5 or Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.3 Selection of equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres 14.3.6 respectively.

14. 4. 7 Consideration may also be given to other types of protection, selected in accordance with the requirements of:

a. IEC 60079-14: *Explosive atmospheres – Part 14: Electrical installations design, selection and erection*; or

b. arrangements complying with IEC 60092-506: *Electrical Installation in ships – Part 506: Special features – Ships carrying specific dangerous goods and materials hazardous only in bulk*.

14. 5 Installation of electrical equipment

14. 5. 1 The method of installation and application of electrical equipment suitable for use in explosive gas atmospheres or in the presence of combustible dusts is to be in accordance with:

a. IEC 60079-14: *Explosive atmospheres – Part 14: Electrical installations design, selection and erection*; or
b. the National code of practice relevant to the standard with which the equipment complies.

14. 5. 2 The ambient temperature range for which the equipment is certified is to be taken to be –20°C to 40°C, unless otherwise stated, and account is to be taken of this when assessing the suitability of the equipment for the auto-ignition temperature of the gases and combustible dusts encountered.

14. 5. 3 Any special requirements laid down by the equipment certification documentation are also to be observed.

14. 5. 4 All switches and protective devices from which electrical equipment located in hazardous areas is supplied are to be located in non-hazardous areas. Where it is not practicable to locate the switches and protective devices in non- hazardous area, then the applicable requirements of this section are to be applied to that equipment.

14. 5. 5 All switches and protective devices from which electrical equipment located in hazardous areas is supplied are to interrupt all poles or phases.

14. 5. 6 Electrical equipment in hazardous areas, switches and protective devices are to be clearly labelled for identification purposes.

14. 6 Semi-enclosed spaces

14. 6. 1 Semi-enclosed spaces are considered to be spaces limited by decks and/or bulkheads in such a manner that the natural conditions of ventilation are different from those obtained on open deck.

14. 7 Ventilation

14. 7. 1 Natural or mechanical ventilation is to be provided for hazardous enclosed or semi-enclosed areas in order to prevent accumulation of explosive gas atmosphere, leaving no areas of stagnant air. Ventilation rates are to be calculated based on IEC 60079-10-1: *Explosive atmospheres – Part 10-1: Classification of areas – Explosive gas atmospheres*.

14. 7. 2 Where the rate of ventilation air flow, in relation to the maximum rate of release of flammable substances reasonably to be expected under normal conditions, is sufficient to prevent the concentration of flammable substances approaching their lower explosive limit, consideration may be given to regarding as non-hazardous, the space, ventilation and other openings into it, and the zone around the equipment contained within.

14. 7. 3 An alarm is to be provided on the navigating bridge, engine control room, and where applicable, cargo control room to indicate any loss of the required ventilation capacity.

14. 8 Pressurisation

14. 8. 1 A space having access to a hazardous area defined as **zone 1** or **zone 2** may be regarded as non-hazardous if all following requirements are met:

a. access is by means of an air-lock, having gastight steel doors, the inner of which as a minimum, is self-closing without any hold-back arrangement;
b. it is maintained at an overpressure (minimum 0.25 mbar) relative to the external hazardous area by ventilation from a non-hazardous area;
c. the relative air pressure within the space is continuously monitored and so arranged that:
i. in the event of loss of overpressure, an alarm is given;
ii. the electrical supply to all equipment not of a type suitable for **zone 1** is automatically disconnected;
iii. where the disconnection of equipment could introduce a hazard, an alarm may be given, in lieu of automatic disconnection, upon loss of overpressure; and
iv. a means of manual disconnection of electrical equipment not of a type suitable for **zone 1**, capable of being controlled from an attended station, is to be provided in conjunction with an agreed operational procedure; and
v. where the means of disconnection, capable of being controlled from an attended station, is located within the space then it is to be of a type suitable for **zone 1**;
d. any electrical equipment required to operate upon loss of overpressure, lighting fittings (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 5.7 Lighting circuits 5.7.3) and equipment within the air-lock, is to be of a type suitable for **zone 1**; and
e. means are to be provided to prevent electrical equipment, other than of a type suitable for **zone 1**, being energised until the atmosphere within the space is made safe, by air changes of at least 10 times the capacity of the space.

14. 8. 2 A space having access to a hazardous area defined as **zone 2** may be regarded as non-hazardous if all following requirements are met:

a. access is by means of a self-closing gastight steel door without any hold-back arrangement;
b. it is maintained at an overpressure (minimum 0.25 mbar) relative to the external hazardous area by ventilation from a non-hazardous area;
c. the relative air pressure within the space is continuously monitored and so arranged that:
i. in the event of loss of overpressure, an alarm is given; and
ii. a means of manual disconnection of electrical equipment not of a type suitable for **zone 2,** capable of being controlled from an attended station, is to be provided; where the means of disconnection, capable of being controlled from an attended station, is located within the space then it is to be of a type suitable for **zone 2**;
d. any electrical equipment required to operate upon loss of overpressure (e.g. lighting fittings, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 5.7 Lighting circuits 5.7.3), is to be of a type suitable for **zone 2**; and
e. means are to be provided to prevent electrical equipment, other than of a type suitable for **zone 2**, being energised until the atmosphere within the space is made safe, by air changes of at least 10 times the capacity of the space.

14. 9 Cable and cable installation

14. 9. 1 Electric cables are not, as far as is practicable, to be installed in hazardous areas, except where serving equipment installed within the area. Through runs of cable may be accepted in locations classified as **zone 1** or **zone 2**, where alternative routes are impracticable.

14. 9. 2 In addition to the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 11 Electric cables, optical fibre cables and busbar trunking systems (busways), cables for circuits that are not intrinsically safe, which are located in hazardous areas, or which may be exposed to cargo oil, oil vapour or gas, are to be either:

a. armoured or braided for earth detection, or
b. otherwise adequately protected against mechanical or chemical damage, within **zone 2** or non-hazardous locations only, or

c. as otherwise specifically permitted elsewhere within this Section, or
d. mineral insulated with copper sheath.

14. 9. 3 Armouring, braiding and other metal coverings of cables installed in hazardous areas are to be effectively earthed at least at both ends.

14. 9. 4 Where there is risk of intermittent contact between armour and exposed metalwork, non-metallic impervious sheath is to be applied over metallic armour of cables.

14. 9. 5 Cables associated with intrinsically safe circuits are to be used only for such circuits. They are to be physically separated from cables associated with non-intrinsically safe circuits, e.g. neither installed in the same protective casing nor secured by the same fixing clip. Consideration may be given to other arrangements complying with IEC 60079-14: *Explosive atmospheres– Part 14: Electrical installations design, selection and erection*.

14. 9. 6 In **zone 0**, cable joints may only be used in intrinsically safe circuits.

14. 9. 7 Cable runs in **zone 1** or **zone 2** are, where practicable, to be uninterrupted. Where discontinuities cannot be avoided, cable joints are to:

- be made in an enclosure with a type of protection appropriate to the location; or
- provided the joint is not subject to mechanical stress, be epoxy filled, compound-filled or sleeved with heat-shrunk tubing, in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

14. 10 Requirements for tankers intended for the carriage in bulk

14. 10. 1 *See* IEC 60092: *Electrical installations in ships – Part 502: Tankers – Special features*.

14. 11 Requirements for ships for the carriage of liquefied gases in bulk

14. 11. 1 *See* the Rules for Ships for Liquefied Gases.

14. 12 Requirements for ships intended for the carriage of other flammable liquid cargoes in bulk

14. 12. 1 *See* Electrical Installations of the Rules for Ships for Liquid Chemicals.

14. 13 Special requirements for ships with spaces for carrying vehicles with fuel in their tanks, for their own propulsion

14. 13. 1 **Passenger ships with special category spaces below the bulkhead deck for carrying vehicles:** electrical equipment fitted within the space and within the exhaust ventilation trunking for the space, is to be of a type acceptable for **zone 1**.

14. 13. 2 **Passenger ships with special category spaces above the bulkhead deck for carrying vehicles:**

a. electrical equipment fitted within a height of 45 cm above the vehicle deck, or any platform on which vehicles are carried, or within the exhaust ventilation trunking for the space, is to be of a type acceptable for **zone 1**;
b. electrical equipment situated elsewhere within the space is to be of a type acceptable for **zone 2**, or is to have an enclosure of ingress protection rating of at least IP55, *See* IEC 60529: *Degrees of protection provided by enclosures (IP Code)*. Smoke and gas detector heads are exempt from this requirement.

14. 13. 3 **Passenger ships with cargo spaces, other than special category spaces, for carrying vehicles and cargo ships with closed ro-ro cargo spaces for carrying vehicles**:

a. except where exempted by (b) electrical equipment fitted within the space and within the exhaust ventilation trunking for the space is to be of a type acceptable for **zone 1**;

b. where the ventilation system required by *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea as amended, Chapter II-2, Regulation 20 - Protection of vehicle, special category and ro-ro spaces, 20.3.1.1* is arranged to operate continuously and is sufficient to provide at least ten air changes per hour, whenever vehicles are on board, electrical equipment above a height of 45 cm from the vehicle deck, or any platform on which vehicles are carried, is to be of a type acceptable for **zone 2**, or is to have an enclosure of ingress protection rating of at least IP 55.

14. 13. 4 **Vehicle carriers with spaces for carrying vehicles with compressed natural gas in their tanks, for their own propulsion:**

- electrical equipment fitted within the space and within any ventilation trunking for the space, is to be of a type acceptable for **zone 1**. *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.3 Selection of equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres 14.3.7.

14. 13. 5 **Vehicle carriers with spaces for carrying vehicles with compressed hydrogen in their tanks for their own propulsion:**

- electrical equipment fitted within the space and within any ventilation trunking for the space, is to be of a type acceptable for **zone 1**. *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.3 Selection of equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres 14.3.7.

14. 14 Special requirements for ships intended for the carriage of dangerous goods and materials hazardous only in bulk

14. 14. 1 Electrical equipment essential for the safety and operation of the ship is to be of a type providing protection against ignition of the gases and/or dusts that can be present, selected in accordance with IEC 60092-506: *Electrical installations in ships – Part 506: Special features – Ships carrying specific dangerous goods and materials hazardous only in bulk*.

14. 14. 2 In addition to the requirements of IEC 60092- 506: *Electrical installations in ships – Part 506: Special features – Ships carrying specific dangerous goods and materials hazardous only in bulk*, pipes such as ventilation and bilge pipes, having ends opening into a **hazardous area** are to be considered a **hazardous area**. Enclosed spaces such as pipe tunnels and bilge pump-rooms containing such pipes and with equipment and components such as pumps, valves and flanges are to be considered as **extended hazardous areas** unless protected by overpressure.

14. 14. 3 Electrical equipment not essential for the safety or operation of the ship and which is not of a type providing protection against ignition of the gases and/or dusts that can be present is to be completely disconnected and protected against unauthorised re-connection. Disconnection is to be made outside the hazardous areas and be effected with isolating links or lockable switches.

14. 14. 4 Electrical equipment and all cables, including through runs and terminating cables, are to be protected against mechanical damage. Cables are to be either enclosed in screwed heavy gauge steel drawn or seam-welded and galvanised conduit, or protected by electrically continuous metal sheathing or metallic wire armour braid or tape.

14. 14. 5 Cable penetrations of decks and bulkheads are to be sealed against the passage of gas or vapour.

14. 15 Requirements for ships with spaces for storing paint

14. 15. 1 In order to eliminate potential sources of ignition in paint stores, electrical equipment is to be selected as follows:

a. electrical equipment fitted within the space and within the exhaust ventilation trunking for the space is to be of a type acceptable for **zone 1**;

b. electrical equipment situated within 1 m of inlet and exhaust ventilation openings or within 3 m of exhaust mechanical ventilation outlets is to be of a type acceptable for **zone 2**, or is to have an enclosure of ingress protection rating of at least IP55 and maximum surface temperature equivalent to temperature class T3, *See* IEC 60529, *Classification of Degrees of Protection Provided by Enclosures. See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.11 Location and construction 1.11.1 for degrees of protection required for equipment on open deck.

14. 15. 2 A space having access to a paint store may be regarded as non-hazardous if fulfilling all of the following conditions:

a. access is by means of a self-closing gastight steel door without any hold-back arrangement;

b. the paint store is ventilated from a non-hazardous area and;

c. warning notices are fitted adjacent to the paint store entrance warning of flammable liquids contained in paint store.

Note A watertight door may be considered as being gastight.

14. 15. 3 The relevant group and temperature class for electrical equipment in hazardous zones are, respectively, IIB and T3.

PART

6

CHAPTER **2 Electrical Engineering**

SECTION **15 Navigation and manoeuvring systems**

15. 1 Steering gear

15. 1. 1 The requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 15.1 Steering gear 15.1.2 to Pt 6, Ch 2, 15.1 Steering gear 15.1.5 are to be read in conjunction with those in Pt 5, Ch 19, 4 Steering control systems and Pt 5, Ch 19, 5 Electric power circuits, electric control circuits, monitoring and alarms.

15. 1. 2 Two exclusive circuits, fed from the main source of electrical power and each having adequate capacity to supply all the motors which may be connected to it simultaneously are to be provided for each electric or electrohydraulic steering gear arrangement consisting of one or more electric motors. One of these circuits may pass through the emergency switchboard, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 19, 6 Emergency power.

15. 1. 3 The motor of an associated auxiliary electric or electrohydraulic power unit may be connected to one of the circuits supplying the main steering gear.

15. 1. 4 Any main and auxiliary steering gear electrical control system and steering gear motors operable from the navigational bridge are to comply with SOLAS Ch II-1, Part C, *Regulation 29 - Steering gear1*, Section 8 and SOLAS Ch II, Part C, *Regulation 29 - Steering gear1* Section 5.

15. 1. 5 In ships of less than 1600 gross tonnage, if an auxiliary steering gear is not electrically powered or is powered by an electric motor primarily intended for other services, the main steering gear may be fed by one circuit from the main switchboard. Consideration would be given to other protective arrangements other than described in Pt 6, Ch 2, 15.1 Steering gear 15.1.4 for such a motor primarily intended for other services.

15. 2 Thruster systems for steering

15. 2. 1 Where azimuth or rotatable thruster units, used as the sole means of steering, are electrically driven the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 20, 5.1 General are to be complied with.

15. 3 Thruster systems for dynamic positioning

15. 3. 1 For ships having a **DP** notation the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 4 Dynamic Positioning Systems are to be complied with.

15. 4 Thruster systems for manoeuvring

15. 4. 1 Where a thruster unit is fitted solely for the purpose of manoeuvring, and is electrically driven, its starting and operation is not to cause the loss of any essential services.

15. 4. 2 In order to ensure that the thruster system is not tripped inadvertently whilst manoeuvring the ship, overload protection in the form of an alarm is to be provided for the electric motor and any associated supply converters, in lieu of tripping.

15. 4. 3 The thruster unit electric motor is not to be disconnected as part of a load management switching operation.

15. 5 Transverse thrust units

15. 5. 1 Where transverse thrust units are remotely controlled, means are to be provided at the remote control station to stop the propulsion unit.

15. 5. 2 Transverse thrust units are to be provided with indications of direction and magnitude of thrust and propeller pitch at each station from which it is possible to control justify the propeller pitch.

15. 6 Navigation lights

15. 6. 1 Navigation lights are to be connected separately to a distribution board reserved for this purpose only and accessible to the officer of the watch. This distribution board is to be connected directly or through transformers to the emergency source of electrical power in compliance with, for passenger ships, Pt 6, Ch 2, 3.3 Emergency source of electrical power in passenger ships 3.3.1 or, for cargo ships, Pt 6, Ch 2, 3.4 Emergency source of electrical power in cargo ships 3.4.1. An alarm is to be activated in the event of failure of a power supply from the distribution board.

15. 6. 2 Each navigation light is to be controlled and protected in each insulated pole by a switch and fuse or circuit-breaker mounted on the distribution board.

15. 6. 3 Provision is to be made on the navigating bridge for the navigation lights to be transferred to an alternative circuit fed from the main source of electrical power.

15. 6. 4 Each navigation light is to be provided with an automatic indicator giving audible and/or visual indication of failure of the light. If an audible device alone is fitted, it is to be connected to an independent source of supply, e.g. a battery, with means provided to test this supply. If a visual signal is used connected in series with the navigation light, means are to be provided to prevent extinction of the navigation light due to failure of the signal. The requirements of this paragraph do not apply to tugs, trawlers and similar small vessels.

15. 6. 5 For navigation lights using light emitting diodes (consisting of multiple light sources) means to ensure that the overall luminous intensity of the navigation light is sufficient are to be provided in addition to the alarm to indicate the complete loss of the navigation light illumination required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 15.6 Navigation lights 15.6.4. For replacement navigation lights, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.5 Additions or alterations 1.5.5.

15. 6. 6 To satisfy Pt 6, Ch 2, 15.6 Navigation lights 15.6.5, an audible and visual alarm is to be activated to notify the Officer of the Watch when the luminous intensity of the light reduces below the level required by the IMO *Convention on the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea*. Alternative measures to ensure continuing acceptable performance of navigation lights using light emitting diodes may be considered that are in accordance with:

- IMO *Resolution MSC.253(83) - Adoption of the Performance Standards for Navigation Lights, Navigation Light Controllers and Associated Equipment - (Adopted on 8 October 2007)*, and
- EN 14744, *Inland navigation vessels and sea-going vessels – Navigation light*, or a relevant National or International Standard.

Where alternative measures are proposed that require verification by personnel of the luminous intensity of navigation lights using light emitting diodes, details of the inspection implementation

in the ship's safety management system and acceptance by the National Administration are to be submitted for consideration.

15. 6. 7 Navigation light power supply units installed to convert, control and/or monitor the distribution board power supply required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 15.6 Navigation lights 15.6.1 above for connection to the light source(s) (e.g. for LED type navigation lights) are, in the event of a short-circuit on the unit output, to disconnect or limit the supply to prevent further damage and activate an alarm.

15. 6. 8 Navigation light power supply units are to be self-checking, detecting failures of the unit itself and activating an alarm. These are to include:

- detection of system lock-ups (program hangs);
- means to detect failure of navigation light switching command input circuits or links; and
- means to detect failure of the navigation light monitoring arrangements required to provide the alarms required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 15.6 Navigation lights 15.6.4 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 15.6 Navigation lights 15.6.5, as applicable.

15. 6. 9 The navigation light power supply failure alarms required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 15.6 Navigation lights 15.6.1 are not to be displayed as a group alarm. Other navigation light alarms may be grouped for each navigation light where means are provided for personnel to determine the cause of the alarm. Activation of more than one of the navigation light alarms as a result of a single failure is to be prevented.

15. 6. 10 Any statutory requirements of the country of registration are to be complied with and may be accepted as an alternative to the above.

15. 7 Navigational aids

15. 7. 1 Navigational aids as required by SOLAS are to be fed from the emergency source of electrical power, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 3.3 Emergency source of electrical power in passenger ships 3.3.1 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 3.4 Emergency source of electrical power in cargo ships 3.4.1.

15. 7. 2 For ships having a notation **NAV1** navigational aids are to have an alternative supply fed from the main source of electrical power, independent of the emergency switchboard, with automatic changeover facilities.

PART

6

CHAPTER **2 Electrical Engineering**

SECTION **16 Electric propulsion**

16. 1 General

16. 1. 1 Where the arrangements permit a propulsion motor to be connected to a generating plant having a continuous rating greater than the motor rating, means are to be provided to limit the continuous input to the motor to a value not exceeding the continuous full load torque for which the motor and shafts are approved.

16. 1. 2 The ventilation and cooling systems for electrical propulsion equipment are to be provided with monitoring devices arranged to operate an alarm if the temperature of the heated cooling medium exceeds a predetermined safe value. *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 10.2 Semiconductor converters 10.2.5.

16. 1. 3 The embedded temperature detectors required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 9.1 General requirements 9.1.11 are to be arranged to operate an alarm if the temperature exceeds a predetermined safe value.

16. 1. 4 Propulsion motors, generators and converters are to be provided with means to prevent the accumulation of moisture and condensate when operating at low power levels, or when idle.

16. 2 System design and arrangement

16. 2. 1 In general, for a ship to be assigned an unrestricted service notation, it is to have two independently driven propellers or other propulsion devices, each connected with at least one electric motor, where these form the sole means of propulsion.

16. 2. 2 For vessels where a propulsion device driven by electric motors is proposed as the sole means of propulsion, at least two effective, independent electric propulsion motors are to be provided and the system is to be designed in accordance with Pt 7, Ch 14 Requirements for Machinery and Engineering Systems of Unconventional Design . The risk management is to identify components where a failure could cause loss of propulsion power or other essential services and the proposed arrangements for preventing and mitigating the effects of such a failure.

16. 3 Power requirements

16. 3. 1 The propulsion system is to have sufficient power for manoeuvring the vessel and for going astern. With the ship travelling at its maximum service speed the propulsion equipment is to be capable of stopping and reversing the ship in an agreed time.

16. 3. 2 The propulsion system is to have adequate torque and power margins for all operating conditions including manoeuvring and rough weather with due regard to propeller and ship characteristics.

16. 3. 3 The electric power for the propulsion system may be derived from generating sets dedicated to propulsion duty or from a central power generation plant which serves both propulsion and ship service loads.

16. 3. 4 Where propulsion power is derived from a central, common, power plant the control system is to ensure a safe distribution of power between propulsion and ship services, with tripping of non-essential loads and/or reduction in propulsion power if necessary.

16. 3. 5 Where a central power generation system is employed the number and rating of generator sets is to be such that with one set out of action the remaining sets are capable of providing all essential and normal ship service loads whilst maintaining an effective level of propulsion power.

16. 3. 6 Where, in a central power generation system, the electrical power requirements are normally supplied by two or more generating sets operating in parallel, on sudden loss of power from one set, the rating of the remaining set(s) in service is to be sufficient to ensure uninterrupted operation of essential services and an effective level of propulsion power.

16. 3. 7 Where a central power generation system is employed, means are to be provided to connect available generator sets to meet the power requirement of the electric propulsion system. Arrangements are to be in place to prevent generator sets being automatically disconnected during ship manoeuvres.

16. 3. 8 Where forced cooling is used on propulsion motors it is to be possible to operate the motor at a defined reduced power level in the event of failure of the forced cooling.

16. 3. 9 Total harmonic distortion of the a.c. voltage waveform up to 10% on electric propulsion circuits, not directly connected to the main source of electrical power, may be considered where details are submitted which demonstrate that the equipment and systems are capable of operating under such conditions.

16. 4 Propulsion control

16. 4. 1 Propulsion control systems are to be stable throughout their normal operating range and arranged to attenuate any effects of cyclic propeller load fluctuations caused by wave action.

16. 4. 2 Step-less control of propeller speed, and/or pitch, from zero to full power ahead or astern is to be provided.

16. 4. 3 The control system is to ensure that there is no dangerous overspeeding of propulsion motors upon loss of load.

16. 4. 4 Interlocks are to be provided in the control system to ensure that ahead and astern circuits are not energised simultaneously.

16. 4. 5 Any single fault in either the propulsion machine excitation or power distribution systems is not to result in a total loss of propulsion power.

16. 4. 6 Control, alarm and safety systems for the propulsion system are to satisfy the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems.

16. 4. 7 Each control station is to be provided with an emergency stop function for the propulsion motors. The emergency stop function is to be independent of the normal control system.

16. 4. 8 The control system is to limit the propulsion power if the power available from the generator(s) is not sufficient to supply the demand level of propulsion power. In the event of a power limitation, there is to be a visual indication at the control stations.

16. 4. 9 Means are to be provided to identify the cause of propulsion motor power limitation or automatic reduction (e.g. excessive load torque, cooling failure, high temperature, power availability).

16. 4. 10 Local controls are to be provided, independent of any remote or automatic system, to permit effective control of the propulsion equipment.

16. 4. 11 Control systems are not to share hardware or data communication links with control, safety and alarm systems not associated with propulsion control, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.11, Data communication links.

16. 4. 12 The factory acceptance test (FAT) of the propulsion control and power management system is to be carried out according to a FAT program acceptable to ACS. A reduced FAT program for subsequent vessels in a series is subject to agreement by ACS.

16. 5 Harmonic filtering for propulsion

16. 5. 1 The requirements in this Section apply to systems provided with harmonic filters and are in addition to the requirements for harmonic filters in Pt 6, Ch 2, 5.11 Harmonic filtering and Pt 6, Ch 2, 6.13, Harmonic filters.

16. 5. 2 In the event of filter circuit failure, continued safe operation of the propulsion system is to be possible by following appropriate procedures, as specified by the manufacturer and/or system integrator. These procedures are to include any operational limitations, and they are to be kept on-board and made available to the Surveyor on request.

16. 6 Protection of propulsion system

16. 6. 1 Provision is to be made for protection against severe overloads, and electrical faults likely to result in damage to plant.

16. 6. 2 Propulsion motors are to be capable of withstanding, without damage, the thermal and mechanical effects of a short-circuit at the terminals.

16. 6. 3 Electric motors of podded propulsion units, and/or having permanent magnet excitation, are to be provided with a protective device which, in the event of a short-circuit in the motor or in the cables between the motor and its circuit-breaker, will instantaneously open the circuit-breaker and, in motors with electromagnetic excitation, de-excite the motor. Motors with permanent magnet main excitation are to be provided with means to prevent further damage as a result of continued rotation after disconnection (e.g. shaft brake).

16. 6. 4 Safeguards for protecting propulsion equipment against damage resulting from earth faults are to be as specified by the equipment manufacturer. Where the fault current flowing is liable to cause damage to the electrical equipment there are to be arrangements for interrupting the current automatically.

16. 6. 5 For the protection of electrical equipment and cables against overvoltages means are to be provided for limiting the induced voltage when field windings, and other inductive circuits are opened. Protective resistors and devices are to be sized to cater for the likely extreme operating conditions.

16. 6. 6 An alarm is to be initiated when the excitation system of electric generators providing propulsion power is overloaded such that damage due to heating could occur in the generator or its cabling.

16. 6. 7 Where, on stopping or reversing the propeller, regenerated energy is produced by the propulsion motor this is not to cause a dangerous increase of speed in the prime mover or a dangerous overvoltage condition on the supply system. Where a central power generation system is used then the voltage and frequency fluctuations are not to exceed the limits given in Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.8, Quality of power supplies.

16. 6. 8 Dynamic braking resistors are to be suitably rated for their expected operation.

16. 6. 9 Propulsion converters are to be capable of withstanding, without damage, the thermal and mechanical effects of a short-circuit at the terminals or connection to a propulsion motor with a stalled or locked rotor.

16. 6. 10 Loss of flow of air or liquid cooling of propulsion converters, where used, is to initiate an alarm at an attended control position. Loss of flow of air or liquid cooling is not to result in immediate damage to the propulsion converter, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 10.2 Semiconductor converters 10.2.4.

16. 6. 11 The system integrator is to determine the protection co-ordination required for high voltage propulsion transformers. Where primary protection is to be the only means of protection, then evidence demonstrating that this is sufficient is to be submitted for consideration, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 6.12 Protection of transformers 6.12.1.

16. 6. 12 Alarms and safeguards for electric propulsion equipment are indicated in Table 2. 16. 1: Electric propulsion equipment: Alarms and safeguards.

Table 2. 16. 1: Electric propulsion equipment: Alarms and safeguards

Item	Alarm	Note
Electric propulsion equipment ventilation and cooling medium temperature	High	*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 16.1 General 16.1.2 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 16.3 Power requirements 16.3.8
Electric propulsion transformer winding temperature	High	*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 10.1 Transformers 10.1.12
Electric propulsion generator excitation	Overload	*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 16.6 Protection of propulsion system 16.6.6
Electric propulsion generators and motors winding temperature	High	*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 16.1 General 16.1.3
Electric propulsion generator and motor bearing temperature	1st stage high 2nd stage high	*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 9.1 General requirements 9.1.12 Safe shutdown to prevent damage
Electric propulsion generator and motor lubricating oil supply pressure	Low	*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 9.1 General requirements 9.1.13
Electric propulsion generator and motor lubricating oil temperature	1st stage high 2nd stage high	*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 9.1 General requirements 9.1.14 Safe shutdown to prevent damage

16. 7 Instruments

16. 7. 1 The main control station is to be provided with the following instruments:

a. a.c. systems:
   i. an ammeter for each generator, propulsion motor and propulsion transformer primary; voltmeter, wattmeter and frequency meter for each generator and ammeter for each excitation circuit; and
   ii. a temperature indicator for each generator, propulsion transformer and propulsion motor windings and bearings, the indicator is to read stator winding temperature of the rotating machines, and cooling system temperature.
b. d.c. systems:
   i. a voltmeter and ammeter for each generator and propulsion motor; and
   ii. an ammeter for each excitation circuit.

16. 7. 2 Each control station is to be provided with instruments to indicate:

a. propeller speed;
b. direction of rotation for a fixed pitch propeller or pitch position for a controllable pitch propeller;
c. visual indication of power limitation; and
d. indication of station in control.

PART

6

CHAPTER **2 Electrical Engineering**

SECTION **17 Fire safety systems**

17. 1 Fire detection and fire alarm systems

17. 1. 1 Fire detection and fire alarm systems are to comply with Chapter 9 of the *Fire Safety Systems Code* (FSS Code), SOLAS Chapter II-2, Part C, *Regulation 7 - Detection and alarm* and the requirements in this Section.

17. 1. 2 In passenger ships, a section of detectors and manually operated call points shall not be situated in more than one main vertical or horizontal zone, except on cabin balconies.

17. 2 Automatic Sprinkler, fire detection and fire alarm systems

17. 2. 1 Automatic sprinkler, fire detection and fire alarm systems are to comply with Chapter 8 - Automatic Sprinkler, Fire Detection and Fire Alarm Systems of the FSS Code. *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.16, Operation under fire conditions.

17. 3 Fixed water-based local application fire-fighting systems

17. 3. 1 Fixed water-based local application fire-fighting systems are to comply with SOLAS, Chapter II-2, Part C, *Regulation 10 - Fire fighting*, Section 5.6 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 17.3 Fixed water-based local application fire-fighting systems 17.3.2 to Pt 6, Ch 2, 17.3 Fixed water-based local application fire-fighting systems 17.3.13.

17. 3. 2 The fire detection, control and alarm systems are to be provided with an emergency source of electrical power required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 3.3, Emergency source of electrical power in passenger ships or Pt 6, Ch 2, 3.4, Emergency source of electrical power in cargo ships and are also to be connected to the main source of electrical power. Separate feeders, reserved solely for this purpose, with automatic changeover facilities located in, or adjacent to, the main control panel are to be provided.

17. 3. 3 Failure of any power supply is to operate an audible and visual alarm. *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.14 Alarms and Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.15 Labels, signs and notices.

17. 3. 4 Means to activate a system are to be located at easily accessible positions inside and outside the protected space. Arrangements inside the space are to be situated such that they will not be cut off by a fire in the protected areas and are suitable for activation in the event of escape. Where it is proposed to install local activation means outside of the protected space, details are to be submitted for consideration.

17. 3. 5 As far as is practicable, electrical and electronic equipment is not to be located within protected areas or adjacent areas.

17. 3. 6 High voltage equipment and their enclosures are not to be installed in protected areas or adjacent areas. For high voltage generators enclosures which cannot be fully located outside of adjacent

areas due to close proximity, a technical justification, including proposed degree of protection ratings that are normally not to be lower that IP54, may be submitted for consideration that demonstrates the overall safety of the installation in the event of system operation.

17. 3. 7 In addition to the degree of protection requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.11 Location and construction 1.11.1, electrical and electronic equipment enclosures located within protected areas and within adjacent areas are to provide adequate protection in the event of system operation.

17. 3. 8 To demonstrate compliance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 17.3 Fixed water-based local application fire-fighting systems 17.3.7, evidence of the suitability of electrical and electronic equipment for use in protected areas and adjacent areas is to be submitted in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.13. The evidence is to demonstrate that additional precautions have been taken, where necessary, in respect of:

a. satisfying Pt 6, Ch 2, 17.3 Fixed water-based local application fire-fighting systems 17.3.5 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 17.3 Fixed water-based local application fire-fighting systems 17.3.6;
b. personnel protection against electric shock;
c. cooling airflow, where necessary, for equipment required to operate during system operation; and
d. maintenance requirements for equipment before return to operation following system activation.

Any test evidence submitted is to consider the overall installation, including equipment types, system configuration and nozzles and the potential effects of airflows in the protected space.

17. 3. 9 The evidence required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 17.3 Fixed water-based local application fire-fighting systems 17.3.8 is to demonstrate the safe and effective operation of the overall arrangements in the event of system operation. This evidence is to demonstrate that exposure to system spray and/or water:

- cannot result in loss of essential services (e.g. unintended activation of automatic machinery shutdown);
- cannot result in loss of availability of emergency services;
- will not affect the continued safe and effective operation of electrical and electronic equipment required to operate during the required period of system operation;
- does not present additional electrical or fire hazards; and
- would require only identified readily replaceable components to be repaired or replaced.

The installation of electrical and electronic equipment required to provide essential or emergency services in enclosures with a degree of protection less than IP44 within areas exposed to direct spray is to be acceptable to ACS, and evidence of suitability is to be submitted accordingly.

17. 3. 10 Fixed water-based local application fire-fighting system electrically driven pumps may be shared with:

- equivalent automatic sprinkler systems;
- equivalent main machinery space fire-fighting systems; or
- local fire-fighting systems for deep-fat cooking equipment;

provided that the shared use is accepted by the National Administration as complying with applicable statutory regulations and the arrangements comply with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 17.3 Fixed water-based local application fire-fighting systems 17.3.11 to Pt 6, Ch 2, 17.3 Fixed water-based local application fire-fighting systems 17.3.13.

17. 3. 11 Shared electrically driven sea-water pumps are to be served by not less than two circuits reserved solely for this purpose, one fed from the main source of electrical power and one from the

emergency source of electrical power. Such feeders are to be connected to an automatic changeover switch situated near the pumps and the switch is to be normally closed to the feeder from the main source of electrical power. No other switches are permitted in the feeders. The switches on the main and emergency switchboards are to be clearly labelled and normally kept closed.

17. 3. 12 Failure of a component in the power and control system is not to result in a reduction of the total available pump capacity below that required by any of the areas which the system is required to protect. For equivalent automatic sprinkler systems, a failure is not to prevent automatic release or reduce sprinkler pump capacity by more than 50%.

17. 3. 13 Where fire-fighting systems share fire-fighting pumps, failure of one system is not to prevent activation of the pumps by any other system.

17. 4 Fire pumps

17. 4. 1 When the emergency fire pump is electrically driven, the power is to be supplied by a source other than that supplying the main fire pumps. This source is to be located outside the machinery spaces containing the main fire pumps and their source of power and drive units.

17. 4. 2 The cables to the emergency fire pump are not to pass through the machinery spaces containing the main fire pumps and their source of power and drive units. The cables are to be of a fire-resistant type where they pass through other high fire risk areas.

17. 5 Fixed gas fire-extinguishing systems

17. 5. 1 Where there are electrically operated fixed gas fire-extinguishing systems, they are to comply with Chapter 5 - Fixed Gas Fire-Extinguishing Systems of the FSS Code.

17. 5. 2 Where there are electrically driven refrigeration units for carbon dioxide fire-extinguishing systems, one unit is to be supplied by the main source of electrical power and the other unit from the emergency source of electrical power.

17. 5. 3 Each electrically driven carbon dioxide refrigerating unit is to be arranged for automatic operation in the event of loss of the alternative unit.

17. 5. 4 Where it is required that alarms be provided to warn of the release of a fire-extinguishing medium, and these are electrically operated;

- they are to be provided with an emergency source of electrical power, as required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 3.3, Emergency source of electrical power in passenger ships or Pt 6, Ch 2, 3.4, Emergency source of electrical power in cargo ships;
- also connected to the main source of electrical power, with automatic changeover facilities located in, or adjacent to, the fire-extinguishing media release panel, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.14 Alarms; and
- Failure of any power supply is to operate an audible and visual alarm, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.14 Alarms and Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.16, Operation under fire conditions

17. 5. 5 The opening of the fire-extinguishing media control cabinet door, or panel, for any purpose other than for the release of the fire-extinguishing media, is not to cause the loss of any essential services, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.6 Definitions 1.6.1,.

17. 6 Fire safety stops

17. 6. 1 In order to limit the fire growth potential in every space of the ship, means for controlling the air supply to the spaces and flammable liquids within the spaces are to comply with SOLAS Chapter II-2, Part B, *Regulation 5 - Fire growth potential*.

17. 6. 2 In passenger ships, the control and indication arrangements at the central control station are to comply with SOLAS Chapter II-2, Part A, *Regulation 3 - Definitions*.

17. 6. 3 In passenger ships and cargo ships, to which SOLAS 1974 as amended applies, exhaust ducts from main laundries, drying rooms and galley ranges are to be fitted with additional remote-control arrangements as required by SOLAS, Chapter II-2, Part C, *Regulation 9 - Containment of fire*, Section 7.

17. 6. 4 To control flammable liquids, a means of stopping all fuel oil, lubricating oil, hydraulic oil, cargo oil and thermal oil pumps, oil purifiers from outside the spaces being served is to be provided. The position is not to be cut off in the event of a fire.

17. 6. 5 Means of cutting off all electrical power to the galley except lighting circuits, in the event of a fire, is to be provided outside the galley exits, at positions which will not readily be rendered inaccessible by such a fire. Consideration may be given to relaxing this requirement for supplies to equipment not used for heating or cooking (e.g. alarm and clock systems) that do not present an electrical shock risk to fire-fighting personnel.

17. 6. 6 Following activation of any fire safety stops, a manual reset is to be provided in order to restart the associated equipment.

17. 6. 7 Fire safety stop systems are to be designed on the fail safe principle or alternatively the power supplies to, and the circuits of, the fire safety stop systems are to be continuously monitored and an alarm initiated in the event of a fault. Cables are to be of a fire-resistant type, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 11.5 Construction 11.5.3. *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 5.2 Essential services 5.2.1.

17. 7 Fire doors

17. 7. 1 The electrical power required for the control, indication and alarm circuits of fire doors is to be provided by an emergency source of electrical power as required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 3.3, Emergency source of electrical power in passenger ships. In passenger ships carrying more than 36 passengers an alternative supply fed from the main source of electrical power, with automatic change over facilities, is to be provided at the central control station. Failure of any power supply is to operate an audible and visual alarm, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.14 Alarms and Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.16, Operation under fire conditions.

17. 7. 2 The control and indication systems for the fire doors are to be designed on the fail-safe principle with the release system having a manual reset.

17. 8 Fire dampers

17. 8. 1 The electrical power required for the control and indication circuits of fire dampers is to be supplied from the emergency source of electrical power, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.16, Operation under fire conditions.

17. 8. 2 The control and indication systems for the fire dampers are to be designed on the fail-safe principle with the release system having a manual reset.

17. 8. 3 In passenger ships and cargo ships, to which SOLAS 1974 as amended applies, where electrically operated fire dampers are fitted in main laundries, drying rooms and galley ranges, they are to be as required by SOLAS, Ch II-2, Part C, *Regulation 9 - Containment of fire*, Section 7.

17. 9 Safety centre on passenger ships

17. 9. 1 Safety centres on passenger ships are to comply with SOLAS Chapter II-2, Part G, *Regulation 23 - Safety centre on passenger ships*.

17. 9. 2 Operation, control and/or monitoring facilities provided at the safety centre are additional to any dedicated facilities required at other locations by the Rules or the National Administration.

17. 9. 3 Where arrangements are operated, controlled and/or monitored from the safety centre in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 17.9 Safety centre on passenger ships 17.9.2, they are to comply with the relevant requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, 2 Essential features for control, alarm, monitoring and safety systems in respect of control, alarm and programmable electronic systems.

17. 10 Electrically powered air compressors for breathing air cylinders

17. 10. 1 In passenger ships carrying more than 36 passengers where electrically powered air compressors are installed they are to be in accordance with SOLAS, Chapter II-2, Part C, *Regulation 10 - Fire fighting*, Section 10.2.6.1.

PART

6

CHAPTER **2 Electrical Engineering**

SECTION **18 Crew and passenger emergency safety systems**

18. 1 Emergency lighting

18. 1. 1 For the purpose of this Section emergency lighting, transitional emergency lighting and supplementary emergency lighting are hereafter referred to under the generic name `emergency lighting'.

18. 1. 2 Emergency lighting provided in compliance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 3 Emergency source of electrical power is to be arranged so that a fire or other casualty in the spaces containing the emergency source of electrical power, associated transforming equipment and the emergency lighting switchboard does not render the main lighting system inoperative.

18. 1. 3 The level of illumination provided by the emergency lighting is to be adequate to permit safe evacuation in an emergency, having regard to the possible presence of smoke, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 18.4 Escape route or low location lighting (LLL).

18. 1. 4 The locations identified in *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea Chapter II-1 - Construction - Structure, subdivision and stability, machinery and Electrical Installations*, *Part D - Electrical installations*, *Regulation 41 - Main source of electrical power and lighting systems*, *Regulation 42 - Emergency source of electrical power in passenger ships* and *Regulation 43 - Emergency source of electrical power in cargo ships*, and the exits from accommodation spaces and service spaces, as defined by *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea Chapter II-2 - Construction - Fire protection, fire detection and fire extinction*, *Part A - General Regulation 3 - Definitions* are to be illuminated by emergency lighting.

18. 1. 5 Switches are not to be installed in the final sub-circuits to emergency light fittings unless the light fittings are serving normally unmanned spaces (e.g. storage-rooms, cold rooms, etc.), or they are normally required to be extinguished for operational reasons (e.g. for night visibility from the navigating bridge). Where switches are fitted they are to be accessible only to ship's crew with provision made to ensure that the emergency lighting is energised when such spaces are manned and/or during emergency conditions.

18. 1. 6 Where emergency lighting fittings are connected to dimmers, provision is to be made, upon the loss of the main lighting, to automatically restore them to their normal level of illumination.

18. 1. 7 Fittings are to be specially marked to indicate that they form part of the emergency lighting system.

18. 2 General emergency alarm system

18. 2. 1 An electrically operated bell or klaxon or air-operated whistle with independent air supply or other equivalent warning system installed in addition to the ship's whistle or siren, for sounding the general emergency alarm signal is to comply with the *LSA Code - International Life-Saving Appliance Code – Resolution MSC.48(66)* and with the requirements of this Section, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.14 Alarms and Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.16, Operation under fire conditions.

18. 2. 2 The main and emergency sources of supply to the general emergency alarm system shall be in accordance with LSA Code , Chapter VII, *7.2 General alarm and public address system*. For General emergency alarm systems refer to the *IMO Code on Alerts and Indicators, 2009*, *4 General*.

18. 2. 3 In conjunction with the *IMO Code on Alerts and Indicators, 2009 4 General* the general emergency alarm distribution system is to be so arranged that a fire or casualty in any one main vertical zone, as defined by SOLAS Chapter II-2, Part A, *Regulation 3 - Definitions*, other than the zone in which the public address control station is located, will not interfere with the distribution in any other such zone.

18. 2. 4 There are to be segregated cable routes to public rooms, alleyways, stairways, control stations and on passenger ships on open decks, so arranged that any single electrical fault, localised fire or casualty will not cause the loss of the facility to sound the general emergency alarm in any public rooms, alleyways, stairways, control stations and on passenger ships on open decks, albeit at a reduced capacity.

18. 2. 5 Where the special alarm fitted to summon the crew, operated from the navigation bridge, or fire control station, forms part of the ship's general alarm system, it is to be capable of being sounded independently of the alarm to the passenger spaces.

18. 2. 6 The sound pressure levels are to be measured during a practical test and documented, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 21.2, Trials.

18. 3 Public address system

18. 3. 1 Public address systems on passenger ships and cargo ships used to sound the general emergency alarm or the fire-alarm are to comply with SOLAS Ch III, Part B, *Regulation 6*, Sections 4 and 5, the *LSA Code - International Life-Saving Appliance Code – Resolution MSC.48(66) ,Code on Alerts and Indicators, 2009* , and the requirements of this Section.

18. 3. 2 The public address system is to be provided with an emergency source of electrical power in accordance with SOLAS Ch III, Part B,*Regulation 6* , Section 5.4 with automatic changeover facilities located adjacent to the public address system. Failure of any power supply is to operate an audible and visual alarm, in accordance with LSA Code, *Chapter VII - Other Life-Saving Appliances* and *Code on Alerts and Indicators, 2009* , *4 General*.

18. 3. 3 The public address system is to have multiple amplifiers having their power supplies so arranged that a single fault will not cause the loss of the facility to broadcast emergency announcements in public rooms, alleyways, stairways and control stations, albeit at a reduced capacity, for passenger vessels it is to be in accordance with *MSC/Circular.808 – Recommendation on Performance Standards for Public Address Systems on Passenger Ships, Including Cabling – (Adopted on 30 June 1997)*, Sections 2.5 - 2.7.

18. 3. 4 The public address distribution system is to be so arranged that a fire or casualty in any one main vertical zone, as defined by SOLAS 1974 as amended Reg II-2/A, *Regulation 3 - Definitions*, other than the zone in which the public address control station is located, will not interfere with the distribution in any other such zone.

18. 3. 5 There are to be at least two cable routes, sufficiently separated throughout their length, to public rooms, alleyways, stairways and control stations so arranged that any single electrical fault, fire or casualty will not cause the loss of the facility to broadcast emergency announcements in any public rooms, alleyways, stairways, and control stations, albeit at a reduced capacity. Refer to SOLAS *Chapter III - Life-saving appliances and arrangements*.

18. 3. 6 Amplifiers are to be continuously rated for the maximum power that they are required to deliver into the system for audio and, where alarms are to be sounded through the public address system, for tone signals.

18. 3. 7 Loudspeakers are to be continuously rated for their proportionate share of amplifier output and protected against short-circuits and passenger vessels are to be in compliance with *MSC/Circular.808 – Recommendation on Performance Standards for Public Address Systems on Passenger Ships, Including Cabling – (Adopted on 30 June 1997)*.

18. 3. 8 Amplifiers and loudspeakers are to be selected and arranged to prevent feedback and other interference. There are also to be means to automatically override any volume controls, so as to ensure the specified sound pressure levels are met. In addition the requirements of MSC Circular 808 for passenger vessels are required.

18. 3. 9 Where the public address system is used for sounding the general emergency alarm and the fire-alarm, the requirements as per *IMO Code on Alerts and Indicators, 2009,5 Audible Presentation of Alerts and Calls* and *5 Audible Presentation of Alerts and Calls* are to be met.

18. 3. 10 Where more than one alarm is to be sounded through the public address system, the requirements are in accordance with *Code on Alerts and Indicators, 2009 5 Audible Presentation of Alerts and Calls*.

18. 3. 11 The sound pressure levels are to be measured during a practical test using speech and, where applicable, tone signals, and documented, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 21.2, Trials.

18. 4 Escape route or low location lighting (LLL)

18. 4. 1 The escape route or low location lighting (LLL) required by SOLAS 1974, as amended Pt D, Ch II-2, *Regulation 13 - Means of escape*, 3.2.5.1, where satisfied by electric illumination, is to comply with the requirements of this sub-Section. The positional marking of lighting or photo luminescent strip indicators is to be in accordance with SOLAS Ch II-2 Pt D, *Regulation 13 - Means of escape*, 3.2.5.1.

18. 4. 2 The LLL system is to be provided with an emergency source of electrical power as required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 3.3, Emergency source of electrical power in passenger ships and also be connected to the main source of electrical power, with automatic changeover facilities located adjacent to the control panel, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.16, Operation under fire conditions.

18. 4. 3 The power supply arrangements to the LLL are to be arranged so that a single fault or a fire in any one fire zone or deck does not result in loss of the lighting in any other zone or deck. This requirement may be satisfied by the power supply circuit configuration, use of fire-resistant cables complying with Pt 6, Ch 2, 11.5 Construction 11.5.3, and/or the provision of suitably located power supply units having integral batteries adequately rated to supply the connected LLL for a minimum period of 60 minutes, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 12.3 Location 12.3.8. Manual activation is to be in accordance with *IMO Resolution A.752(18) – Guidelines for the Evaluation, Testing and Application of Low-Location Lighting on Passenger Ships – (Adopted on 4 November 1993)*.

18. 4. 4 For the recommendation of performance and installation of lights and lighting assemblies refer to ISO Standard 15370:2001 *Ships and marine technology - Low location lighting on passenger ships*.

PART

6

CHAPTER **2 Electrical Engineering**

SECTION **19 Ship safety systems**

19. 1 Watertight doors

19. 1. 1 Power operated sliding watertight doors including power supply, power supply availability, control, indication and alarm circuits for passenger ships are to comply with SOLAS Ch II-1, Regulation 13.7.1 to 13.7.8.

19. 1. 2 The enclosures of electrical components including their electric control cables for passenger ships are to be in compliance with SOLAS Ch II-1, Regulation 13.7.6

19. 1. 3 For passenger ships, an audible alarm and where required supplemented by a visual signal at the door when the watertight doors are operated from remote is to be in accordance with SOLAS Ch II-1, Regulation 13.7.1.6.

19. 1. 4 For the necessity of a centralised operating console located on the navigation bridge on passenger vessels, it is to comply with SOLAS Ch II-1, Regulation 13.8.1 to 13.8.3.

19. 1. 5 The sliding watertight doors on cargo ships are to comply with the following requirements:

a. SOLAS Ch II-1, Regulation 13-1 - Openings in watertight bulkheads and internal decks in cargo ships.

b. Provisions are to be made as follows:

i. The electrical power required for power-operated sliding watertight doors is to be separate from any other power circuit and supplied from the emergency switchboard either directly or by a dedicated distribution board situated above the bulkhead deck. The associated control, indication and alarm circuits are to be supplied from the emergency switchboard either directly or by a dedicated distribution board situated above the bulkhead deck.

ii. A single failure in the power operating or control system of power-operated sliding watertight doors is not to result in a closed door opening or preventing the hand operation of any door.

iii. Availability of the power supply is to be continuously monitored at a point in the electrical circuit adjacent to the door operating equipment. Loss of any such power supply is to activate an audible and visual alarm at the central operating console on the navigating bridge.

iv. Electrical power, control, indication and alarm circuits are to be protected against fault in such a way that a failure in one door circuit will not cause a failure in any other door circuit. Short-circuits or other faults in the alarm or indicator circuits of a door are not to result in a loss of power operation of the door. Arrangements are to be such that leakage of water into the electrical equipment located below the bulkhead deck will not cause the door to open.

v. The enclosures of electrical components necessarily situated below the bulkhead deck are to provide suitable protection against the ingress of water with ratings as defined in IEC 60529: Degrees of protection provided by enclosures (IP Code), or an acceptable and relevant National Standard, are as follows:

1. Electrical motors, associated circuits and control components, protected to IPX7 Standard.
2. Door position indicators and associated circuit components protected to IPX8 Standard, where the water pressure testing of the enclosures is to be based on the pressure that can occur at the location of the component during flooding for a period of 36 hours.
3. Door movement warning signals, protected to IPX6 Standard.

vi. Watertight door electrical controls including their electric cables are to be kept as close as is practicable to the bulkhead in which the doors are fitted and so arranged that the likelihood of them being involved in any damage which the ship can sustain is minimised.

vii. An audible alarm, distinct from any other alarm in the area, is to sound whenever the door is closed remotely by power, and sound for at least five seconds but no more than ten seconds before the door begins to move and is to continue sounding until the door is completely closed. The audible alarm is to be supplemented by an intermittent visual signal at the door and in areas where the noise level exceeds 85 dB(A).

viii. Sliding watertight doors on cargo ships are to be capable of being remotely closed from the bridge and are also to be operable locally from each side of the bulkhead. Indicators are to be provided at the control position showing whether the doors are open or closed, and an audible alarm is to be provided at the door closure.

19. 2 Stern and side shell doors and bow and inner doors

19. 2. 1 The requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 19.2,, Stern and side shell doors and bow and inner doors 19.2.2 to Pt 6, Ch 2, 19.2 Stern and side shell doors and bow and inner doors 19.2.14 apply to all stern and side shell doors, bow doors and inner doors, giving access to vehicle decks, and subdivision doors, in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 2, 9 Subdivision structure on vehicle deck, on all ships except where otherwise stated in Pt 6, Ch 2, 19.2 Stern and side shell doors and bow and inner doors 19.2.11 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 19.2 Stern and side shell doors and bow and inner doors 19.2.12.

19. 2. 2 A notice is to be displayed at the operating panel stating that the door is to be fully closed, secured and locked preferably before, or immediately the ship leaves the berth and that this operation is to be entered in the ship's log.

19. 2. 3 Control positions are to be provided with a system of warning indicator lights. The system is to provide positive indication that the door is fully closed, secured and locked. The indication arrangements are to be 'fail-safe' such that in the event of a fault the system cannot incorrectly indicate that the doors are fully closed, secured or locked.

19. 2. 4 The indication system is to be arranged such that it functions independently of any system for door operation, securing and locking.

19. 2. 5 The electrical power supply for the indication system is to be independent of any electrical power supply for operating, securing and locking the doors.

19. 2. 6 The indication system is to be fed from two exclusive circuits, one from the main source of electrical power and one from the emergency source of electrical power with automatic changeover facilities located adjacent to the panel. Loss of either active or standby power supply is to initiate an audible and visual alarm on the navigation bridge.

19. 2. 7 The indicator panel is to be provided with a lamp test function. It is not to be possible to turn off the indication lights at the panel. Dimming facilities may be provided, but the indications are to remain clearly readable under all operating lighting conditions.

19. 2. 8 Means are to be provided to prevent unauthorised operation of the doors and associated securing and locking devices.

19. 2. 9 Detection of door position and securing and locking device status is to be by direct sensing of proximity, contact or equivalent, not inferred from actuator positions. Sensors are to be protected against ice formation, mechanical damage and water ingress to be not less than IPX6 Standard as defined in IEC 60529: *Degrees of protection provided by enclosures (IP Code)*, or an acceptable and relevant National Standard.

19. 2. 10 Where a strongback or equivalent independent secondary means of securing an inwardly opening door is required, these need not be monitored by the indication system providing their correct positioning can be easily observed from the control position.

19. 2. 11 Doors with a clear opening area of 12 m^2 or greater are to be provided with closing devices operable from a remote control position. Doors which are located partly or totally below the freeboard deck with a clear opening area greater than 6 m^2 are to be provided with an arrangement for remote control from a position above the freeboard deck. This remote control is to provide centralised control for:

a. The closing and opening of the doors.
b. Associated securing and locking devices.

19. 2. 12 Bow doors and inner doors, giving access to vehicle decks, and subdivision doors are to be provided with an arrangement for remote control from a position above the freeboard deck, providing centralised control for:

a. the closing and opening of the doors; and
b. associated securing and locking devices.

19. 2. 13 The location of the remote control panel is to be such that door operation can be easily observed by the operator or by other suitable means such as closed circuit television. Where remote control is required, television surveillance or other such means may satisfy this requirement.

19. 2. 14 A drainage system is to be arranged in the area between bow door and ramp or, where no ramp is fitted, between the bow door and inner door. The system is to be equipped with an audible alarm function on the navigation bridge being set off when the water levels in these areas exceed 0.5 m.

19. 2. 15 The additional requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 19.2 Stern and side shell doors and bow and inner doors 19.2.16 to Pt 6, Ch 2, 19.2 Stern and side shell doors and bow and inner doors 19.2.22 apply to stern and side shell doors in the boundaries of special category spaces or ro-ro cargo spaces through which such spaces may be flooded, and to bow doors and inner doors. For cargo ships, where no part of the door is below the uppermost waterline and the area of the door opening is not greater than 6 m^2, the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 19.2 Stern and side shell doors and bow and inner doors 19.2.16to Pt 6, Ch 2, 19.2 Stern and side shell doors and bow and inner doors 19.2.22 need not be applied.

19. 2. 16 An indicator panel is to be located on the navigating bridge, providing separate visual indications of the position of each door and the status of their associated securing/locking devices.

19. 2. 17 The indication system is to be provided with a 'harbour/sea voyage' mode selection function, with means of operation located on or adjacent to the navigating bridge indication panel. The selected mode is to be displayed on all indicator panels. An audible alarm is to be initiated on the navigating bridge if the ship leaves the harbour with any door not fully closed or not fully secured. Where practical, the alarm should be initiated immediately the ship leaves the berth. Audible alarms are to be silenced in the 'harbour' mode. Visual indications are to remain operational in either mode.

19. 2. 18 An audible and visual alarm is to be given on the navigation bridge in the event of any fault within the indication system.

19. 2. 19 An audible and visual alarm is to be initiated on the navigation bridge and the engine control room, or an equivalent attended position, in the event of leakage through the doors.

19. 2. 20 Television surveillance arrangements are to be provided to enable the positions of bow doors and inner doors, and a sufficient number of their closing devices, to be monitored from the navigation bridge and the engine control room, or an equivalent attended position. The television surveillance

arrangements are also to allow leakage through the bow doors and inner doors to be assessed from the same positions in the event of leakage through the doors. Special consideration is to be given to the lighting and contrasting colour of objects under surveillance.

19. 2. 21 For passenger ships, television surveillance arrangements are to be provided to allow leakage through stern and side shell doors below the freeboard deck to be assessed from the navigation bridge and the engine control room, or equivalent attended position.

19. 2. 22 The electrical power supply for surveillance lighting is to be independent of any electrical power supply for operating, securing and locking the doors.

19. 3 Subdivision doors on vehicle decks

19. 3. 1 Where subdivision doors are provided on passenger ship vehicle decks in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 2, 9 Subdivision structure on vehicle deck, the control and monitoring arrangements for these doors are to generally comply with Pt 6, Ch 2, 19.2, Stern and side shell doors and bow and inner doors.

19. 4 Bilge pumps

19. 4. 1 Where the bilge pumps for the holds of open-top container ships are electrically driven one pump is to be supplied from the emergency switchboard, the remaining pumps are to be supplied from the main source of electrical power, independent of the emergency switchboard.

PART

6

CHAPTER **2 Electrical Engineering**

SECTION **20 Lightning conductors**

20. 1 General

20. 1. 1 In order to minimise the risks of damage to the ship and its electrical installation due to lightning, ships having non-metallic masts or topmasts are to be fitted with lightning conductors in accordance with the applicable requirements of IEC 60092-401: *Electrical Installations in ships - Part 401: Installation and test of completed installation* or an alternative and relevant National Standard.

PART

6

CHAPTER 2 Electrical Engineering

SECTION 21 Testing and trials

21. 1 Testing

21. 1. 1 Tests in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 21.1 Testing 21.1.2 are to be satisfactorily carried out on all electrical equipment, complete or in sections, at the manufacturer's premises and a test report issued by the manufacturer.

21. 1. 2 A high voltage at any frequency between 25 and 100Hz is to be applied between:

a. all current carrying parts connected together and earth;
b. all current carrying parts of opposite polarity or phase.

For rotating machines the value of test voltage is to be 1000 V plus 2 x rated voltage with a minimum of 2000 V, and for other electrical equipment, it is to be in accordance with Table 2. 21. 1: Test voltage. Items of equipment included in the assembly for which a test voltage lower than the above is specified may be disconnected during the test and tested separately at the appropriate lower test voltage. The test is to be commenced at a voltage of about one-third the test voltage and is to be increased to full value as rapidly as is consistent with its value being indicated by the measuring instrument. The full test voltage is then to be maintained for 1 minute, and then reduced to one-third full value before switching off. The assembly is considered to have passed the test if no disruptive discharge occurs.

21. 1. 3 When it is desired to make additional high voltage tests on equipment which has already passed its tests, the voltage of such additional tests is to be 80% of the test voltage the equipment has already passed.

Table 2. 21. 1: Test voltage

Rated voltage, U_n U_n V	Test voltage a.c. (r.m.s.), V
$U_n \leq 60$	500
$60 < U_n \leq 1000$	$2 \times U_n + 1000$
$1000 < U_n \leq 2500$	6500
$2500 < U_n \leq 3500$	10000
$3500 < U_n \leq 7200$	20000
$7200 < U_n \leq 12000$	28000
$12000 < U_n \leq 15000$	38000

21. 1. 4 Immediately after the high voltage test, the insulation resistance is to be measured using a direct current insulation tester, between:

a. all current-carrying parts connected together and earth;
b. all current-carrying parts of different polarity or phase.

The minimum values of test voltage and insulation resistance are given in Table 2. 21. 2: Test voltage and minimum insulation.

Table 2. 21. 2: Test voltage and minimum insulation

Rated voltage U_n V	Minimum voltage of the tests, V	Minimum insulation resistance, $M\Omega$
$U_n \leq 250$	$2 \times U_n$	1
$250 < U_n \leq 1000$	500	1
$1000 < U_n \leq 7200$	1000	$\frac{U_n}{1000} + 1$
$7200 < U_n \leq 15000$	5000	$\frac{U_n}{1000} + 1$

21. 1. 5 Tests in accordance with the Standard with which the equipment complies may be accepted as an alternative to the above.

21. 1. 6 Tests at the manufacturers' works and trials after installation on board are to include such tests necessary to demonstrate, to the Surveyor's satisfaction, the suitability and safety of the lithium battery system for its intended duty and location. As a minimum, the tests listed in Table 2. 21. 3: Test requirements on lithium battery systems are required:

Table 2. 21. 3: Test requirements on lithium battery systems

Item	Tests	Trials
Discharge performance validation	X	
Capacity validation test *	X	X
Internal d.c. resistance test	X	
Overcharge control test	X	
Cell balancing functional test	X	
Sensor failures test	X	
SOC validation test *	X	X
SOH validation test *	X	X
High voltage test	X	
Insulation resistance test	X	
Emergency trip functional test *	X	X
Over-temperature protection test	X	X
Over-voltage protection test	X	X
Under-voltage protection test	X	X
Communication failure between BMS and external charge control system test *	X	X
Pressure relief valve test	X	
Additional safety functions tests and trials of the battery management system	X	X
Note . Items marked * are required to be tested annually.		

21. 2 Trials

21. 2. 1 Before a new installation, or any alteration or addition to an existing installation, is put into service the applicable trials in Pt 6, Ch 2, 21.2 Trials 21.2.2 to Pt 6, Ch 2, 21.2 Trials 21.2.7 are to be carried out. These trials are in addition to any acceptance tests which may have been carried out at the manufacturer's works and are to be to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

21. 2. 2 The insulation resistance is to be measured of all electrical power circuits and electrical equipment, using a direct current insulation tester, between:

a. all current-carrying parts connected together and earth and, so far as is reasonably practicable;
b. all current-carrying parts of different polarity or phase;

The minimum values of test voltage and insulation resistance are given in Table 2. 21. 2: Test voltage and minimum insulation. The installation may be subdivided and appliances may be disconnected if initial tests produce results less than these figures.

21. 2. 3 Tests are to be made to verify the effectiveness of:

a. earth continuity conductor;
b. the earthing of non-current-carrying exposed metal parts of electrical equipment and cables not exempted by Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.12, Earthing of non-current carrying parts 1.12.2;
c. bonding for the control of static electricity.

21. 2. 4 It is to be demonstrated that the Rules have been complied with in respect of:

a. satisfactory performance of each generator throughout a run at full rated load;
b. temperature of joint, connections, circuit-breakers and fuses;
c. the operation of engine governors, synchronising devices, overspeed trips, reverse-current, reverse-power and over-current trips and other safety devices;
d. voltage regulation of every generator when full rated load is suddenly thrown off and when starting the largest motor connected to the system;
e. voltage drop at the worst case condition;
f. harmonic distortion of the voltage waveform. Where harmonic filters are installed the calculation results provided by the system integrator are to be verified by the Surveyor. Simulation on trials of harmonic filter failure that would result in THD levels calculated to be higher than the acceptable limit are to be avoided. *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 5.11 Harmonic filtering.
g. satisfactory parallel operation, and kW and KVA load sharing of all generators capable of being operated in parallel at all loads up to normal working load;
h. all essential and other important equipment are to be operated under service conditions, though not necessarily at full load or simultaneously, for a sufficient length of time to demonstrate that they are satisfactory;
i. propulsion equipment is to be tested under working conditions and operated in the presence of the Surveyors and to their satisfaction. The equipment is to have sufficient power for going astern to secure proper control of the ship in all normal circumstances. In passenger ships the ability of the machinery to reverse the direction of thrust of the propeller in sufficient time, under normal manoeuvring conditions, and so bring the ship to rest from maximum ahead service speed, is to be demonstrated at the sea trial; and
j. the operation of the propulsion system with the harmonic filter removed from circuit is to be verified in accordance with the design intent, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 16.5 Harmonic filtering for propulsion 16.5.2; any operational and functional limitations are to be documented and details retained on board; and
k. operation of power management for electric propulsion.

21. 2. 5 Measurements are to be taken as part of the trials specified in Pt 6, Ch 2, 21.2 Trials 21.2.4.c, Pt 6, Ch 2, 21.2 Trials 21.2.4.d, Pt 6, Ch 2, 21.2 Trials 21.2.4.e and Pt 6, Ch 2, 21.2 Trials 21.2.4.f to verify that the installation will provide a quality of power supply in accordance with the values listed in Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.8, Quality of power supplies.

21. 2. 6 Satisfactory load management in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 6.9, Load management is to be demonstrated. The demonstration is to include verification that the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.8, Quality of power supplies will be met following disconnection of a generator under all defined operating profiles as agreed with the operators.

21. 2. 7 It is to be demonstrated by practical tests that the Rules have been complied with in respect of fire, crew and passenger emergency and ship safety systems.

21. 2. 8 On completion of the general emergency alarm system and the public address system tests, the Surveyor is to be provided with two copies of the test schedule, detailing the measured sound pressure levels. Such schedules are to be signed by the Surveyor and the Builder.

21. 3 High voltage cables

21. 3. 1 Before a new high voltage cable installation, or an addition to an existing installation, is put into service a voltage withstand test is to be satisfactorily carried out on each completed cable and its accessories. The test is to be carried out after the insulation resistance test required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 21.2 Trials 21.2.2 and may use either an a.c. voltage at power frequency or a d.c. voltage.

21. 3. 2 When an a.c. voltage withstand test is carried out, the voltage is to be not less than the normal operating voltage of the cable and it is to be maintained for a minimum of 24 hours.

21. 3. 3 When a d.c. voltage withstand test is carried out, the voltage is to be not less than:

a. 1.6 ($2.5U_o$ + 2 kV) for cables of rated voltages (U_o) up to and including 3.6 kV, or

b. $4.2U_o$ for higher rated voltages

where U_o is the rated power frequency voltage between conductor and earth or metallic screen, for which the cable is designed.

The test voltage is to be maintained for a minimum of 15 minutes. After completion of the test the conductors are to be connected to earth for a sufficient period in order to remove any trapped electrical charge. An insulation resistance test in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 21.2 Trials 21.2.2 is then to be repeated.

21. 4 On-line partial discharge testing of high voltage rotating machines for essential services

21. 4. 1 Where on-line partial discharge monitoring equipment is installed for the monitoring of high voltage rotating machines used to provide essential services, the method used is to be appropriate for the design and application of the rotating machine, and conducted and recorded in accordance with:

a. PD IEC/TS 60034-27-2:2012, *Rotating electrical machines* Part 27*-2: On-line partial discharge measurements on the stator winding insulation of rotating electrical machines*;

b. DD IEC/TS 61934:2011, *Electrical insulating materials and systems – Electrical measurement of partial discharges (PD) under short rise time and repetitive voltage impulses*; or

c. an alternative International or National Standard acceptable to ACS.

21. 4. 2 The partial discharge measurement method used is to be acceptable to the rotating machine manufacturer. Particular attention is to be given to ensuring that:

- the test voltage and frequency (i.e. a.c., or ultra-low frequency and voltage level), and method selected are to be compatible with the insulation systems; and
- the tests do not over stress or cause accelerated ageing of the insulation system.

21. 4. 3 The test reports required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 21.4 On-line partial discharge testing of high voltage rotating machines for essential services 21.4.1 are to:

- record the method and equipment used in sufficient detail to ensure that the tests can be repeated consistently throughout the service life of the rotating machine; and
- include, but are not limited to, the details recommended by the test standard to be applied.

21. 4. 4 Where partial discharge monitoring equipment has been installed in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 21.4 On-line partial discharge testing of high voltage rotating machines for essential services 21.4.1, to enable through-life trend analysis:

a. measurements are to be recorded at harbour acceptance trials or sea trials to baseline the partial discharge characteristics of the rotating machine, and then repeated annually; and

b. a copy of the test reports and data is to be retained on board and made available to the Surveyor on request.

21. 5 Hazardous areas

21. 5. 1 All electric equipment located in hazardous areas is to be examined to ensure that it is of a type permitted by the Rules, has been installed in compliance with its certification, and that the integrity of the protection concept has not been impaired.

21. 5. 2 Alarms and interlocks associated with pressurised equipment and the ventilation of spaces located in hazardous areas are to be tested for correct operation.

21. 6 Optical Fibre Communications Systems

21. 6. 1 The attenuation loss of single-mode optical fibre is to be tested prior to installation in accordance with IEC 61280: *Fibre-optic communication subsystem test procedures Part 4-2: Installed cable plant – Single-mode attenuation and optical return loss measurement*. The test is to be recorded in accordance with the standard. The documentation is to be retained on board and made available to the Surveyor on request. Acceptance of alternative standards will be subject to consideration by ACS.

21. 6. 2 The attenuation loss of multi-mode optical fibre is to be tested prior to installation in accordance with IEC 61280: *Fibre optic communication subsystem test procedures – Part 4-1: Installed cable plant — Multimode attenuation measurement*. The test is to be recorded in accordance with the standard. The documentation is to be retained on board and made available to the Surveyor on request. Acceptance of alternative standards will be subject to consideration by ACS.

21. 6. 3 The tests required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 21.6 Optical Fibre Communications Systems 21.6.1 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 21.6 Optical Fibre Communications Systems 21.6.2 are to be repeated after installation using the same method as used for the pre-installation test. The test is to be recorded in accordance with the standard; the documentation is to be retained on board and made available to the Surveyor on request. Acceptance of alternative standards will be subject to consideration by ACS.

21. 6. 4 The results of the testing required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 21.6 Optical Fibre Communications Systems 21.6.3 are to be validated against the communication system design specification to ensure that adequate optical power will be transmitted for correct system operation, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.10.

PART

6

CHAPTER **2 Electrical Engineering**

SECTION **22 Spare gear**

22. 1 General

22. 1. 1 It is recommended that adequate spares, together with the tools necessary for maintenance, or repair, be carried. The spares are to be determined by the Owner according to the design and intended service. The maintenance of the spares is the responsibility of the Owner.

PART

6

CHAPTER 2 **Electrical Engineering**

SECTION 23 **Ergonomic Lighting Design – ELD optional notation**

23. 1 Objectives

23. 1. 1 The requirements in this Section are applicable where the optional class notation for ergonomic lighting design is requested.

23. 1. 2 The design and installation of indoor lighting is to facilitate visual task performance, safety and visual comfort. In order to achieve this goal the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 23,.2 Positioning and installation to Pt 6, Ch 2, 23.6, Night vision are to be complied with.

23. 1. 3 The requirements in this Section do not address emergency or navigational lighting.

23. 2 Positioning and installation

23. 2. 1 In order to meet the ergonomic requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 23,.2 Positioning and installation to Pt 6, Ch 2, 23.6, Night vision the positioning and installation of lights is to comply with Pt 6, Ch 2, 23.2 Positioning and installation 23.2.2 to Pt 6, Ch 2, 23.2 Positioning and installation 23.2.11.

23. 2. 2 Natural lighting through the use of windows and doors is to be provided as far as practicable.

23. 2. 3 Lights are to be positioned, as far as practicable, in the same horizontal plane and arranged symmetrically to produce a uniform level of illumination.

23. 2. 4 Lights are to be positioned so as to reduce bright spots and shadows as far as possible.

23. 2. 5 Lights are to be positioned taking account of structures such as beams and columns etc. so the lighting is not blocked by these items.

23. 2. 6 Lights are not to be positioned in locations which would result in limited illumination.

23. 2. 7 Lights are to be positioned taking account of air-conditioning vents or fans, fire detectors, water sprinklers etc. so the lighting is not blocked by these items.

23. 2. 8 The position of lights configured to strips or tubes is, as far as practicable, to be at right angles to an operator's line of sight while the operator is located at their typical duty station.

23. 2. 9 Any physical hazards that provide a risk to operator safety are to be appropriately illuminated.

23. 2. 10 The positioning of lights is to consider the transfer of heat to adjacent surfaces.

23. 2. 11 Lights are to be positioned in locations that are easy to reach for lamp replacement or maintenance.

23. 3 Luminance distribution

23. 3. 1 In order to provide even, fatigue-free illumination the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 23.3 Luminance distribution 23.3.2 toPt 6, Ch 2, 23.3 Luminance distribution 23.3.6 are to be complied with.

23. 3. 2 The light levels falling on the plane in which a task is performed are to be suitable for the type of task, i.e. they are to consider the variation in the working planes.

23. 3. 3 Sharp contrasts in illumination levels across an operator task or working plane are to be avoided, as far as possible.

23. 3. 4 Sharp contrasts in illumination levels between an operator task area and the immediate surround and general background area are to be avoided, as far as possible.

23. 3. 5 Where required, local lighting for operational tasks is to be provided in addition to general lighting.

23. 3. 6 Lighting is to be free of perceived flicker.

23. 4 Glare

23. 4. 1 In order to minimise glare (to avoid dazzle, discomfort and fatigue) the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 23.4 Glare 23.4.2 to Pt 6, Ch 2, 23.4 Glare 23.4.6 are to be complied with.

23. 4. 2 Lights are to be positioned so as to reduce, as far as possible, glare or high brightness reflections from working and display surfaces.

23. 4. 3 Lights are to be positioned so as to provide even illumination and minimal glare on controls, displays and indicators.

23. 4. 4 Where necessary, suitable blinds and shading devices are to be used to prevent glare.

23. 4. 5 Surfaces are to have a non-reflective or matt finish in order to reduce the likelihood of indirect glare.

23. 4. 6 Where a transparent cover is fitted over a control, display or indicator, it is to be designed to minimise reflections.

23. 5 Location of lighting controls and outlets

23. 5. 1 In order to allow convenient use of lighting the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 23.5 Location of lighting controls and outlets 23.5.2 to Pt 6, Ch 2, 23.5 Location of lighting controls and outlets 23.5.6 are to be complied with.

23. 5. 2 The lighting system is to be easily maintained and operated by personnel.

23. 5. 3 Lighting is to be controllable locally in accommodation and working areas, except where this conflicts with safety requirements.

23. 5. 4 Light switches are to be fitted in safe positions for personnel.

23. 5. 5 The mounting height of switches is to be such that personnel can reach switches with ease.

23. 5. 6 Power outlets are to be provided where temporary, local, task lighting will be required, except in hazardous areas.

23. 6 Night vision

23. 6. 1 In order to maintain night vision and facilitate safety during hours of darkness the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 23.6 Night vision 23.6.2 toPt 6, Ch 2, 23.6 Night vision 23.6.4 are to be complied with.

23. 6. 2 Lighting on the ship's superstructure is to be directed away from, and shaded to prevent direct illumination of, the bridge windows and lookout points.

23. 6. 3 Instrument lighting is to be such that the operator can read dials and indicators without impediment of night vision.

23. 6. 4 Lighting of instruments, keyboards and controls is to be adjustable down to zero, except for the lighting of alarm and warning indicators and the controls of dimmers, which are to remain readable.Section 24 Hybrid electrical power systems

PART

6

CHAPTER **2 Electrical Engineering**

SECTION **24 Hybrid electrical power systems**

24. 1 Scope

24. 1. 1 The requirements of this Section are applicable to ships having a main source of electrical power which is provided by hybrid electrical power generation and distribution systems within which the main electrical power demand is supplied by two or more different types of power source or by stored electrical energy.

24. 1. 2 These requirements apply to the design, construction and integration of hybrid electrical power systems, their sub-systems, machinery and equipment.

24. 1. 3 These requirements apply to hybrid electrical power systems which provide the main source of electrical power and exceptionally, where permitted by the National Administration, the emergency source of electrical power.

24. 1. 4 In addition to these requirements National Administrations may impose further requirements. Where such requirements conflict with these requirements, the requirements of the National Administration will take precedence.

24. 1. 5 These requirements are additional to the applicable requirements of the ACS's Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships.

24. 2 Characters of classification and class notations (machinery special features)

24. 2. 1 Ships complying with the mandatory requirements of this Section will be assigned the **Hybrid Power** machinery special features notation.

24. 2. 2 Ships complying with both the mandatory requirements and the additional optional requirements of this Section will be assigned the **Hybrid Power (+)** machinery special features notation.

24. 2. 3 **Hybrid Power**: Assigned to ships with an electrical power system including a combination of two or more different types of power source or utilising stored electrical energy to satisfy the ship's main power demand. The system and its component parts are in accordance with the existing applicable requirements of the Rules and the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 24 Hybrid electrical power systems.

24. 2. 4 **Hybrid Power (+)**: Assigned to ships meeting the requirements for **Hybrid Power** and the additional optional requirements for **Hybrid Power (+)** specified within Pt 6, Ch 2, 24 Hybrid electrical power systems. The additional optional requirements aim to provide for enhanced performance of the electrical power system achieved through the consideration of system simulation, system integration and dependability of the electrical power system during normal or reasonably fore*See*able abnormal operation.

24. 3 Definitions

24. 3. 1 Hybrid electrical power system: A ship's electrical power system comprising sources, stores, consumers and distribution of electrical power together with their associated controls within which electrical power is provided by two or more different types of power source or utilising stored electrical energy to satisfy the ship's main power demand.This definition is independent of:

a. the type of distribution system (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.3 Definitions 24.3.8);
b. the types and ratings of source, their physical location and time duration of connection to the ship's power system;
c. the types of store;
d. the types of connected consumer; and
e. the presence or otherwise of electric propulsion.

24. 3. 2 Reasonably fore*See*able abnormal condition: A reasonably fore*See*able abnormal condition is an operation, event, incident or failure that:

a. has happened and could happen again;
b. has not happened but is considered possible. Where the likelihood is considered extremely unlikely or the consequences are trivial, and no further prevention or mitigation action is to be taken, then this is to be justified; and
c. is planned for (e.g. emergency actions cover such a situation, maintenance is undertaken to prevent it).

They should be identified by:

d. using analysis processes that are capable of revealing abnormal conditions;
e. employing a mix of personnel including designers, Operators, persons who carry out maintenance and competent safety/risk professionals with relevant domain knowledge and understanding to apply the processes;
f. referencing relevant events and historic data; and
g. documenting the results of the analysis.

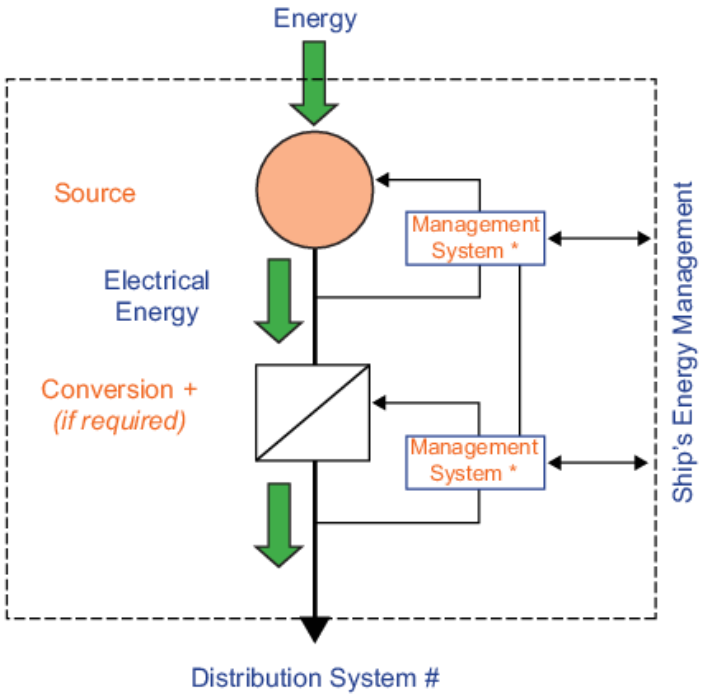
24. 3. 3 Source of electrical power: A source of electrical power produces electrical power from an energy source such that its output may be connected to ship's electrical power distribution system (*See* Figure 2. 24. 1: Source of electrical power). It includes:

a. Dedicated conversion where conversion is the changing of an output with respect to its input and may include change of form (e.g. a.c. to d.c. or d.c. to a.c.), change in magnitude (e.g. of voltage, current or frequency), change in phase or change in reference (e.g. through galvanic isolation);
b. Management systems perform monitoring, control, protection and safety functions that are likely to be connected to higher level ship wide supervisory systems: and
c. Systems providing control, alarm, monitoring and safety functions such as control panel, governor, automatic voltage regulator (AVR) and emergency shutdown (ESD) system for a reciprocating engine or gas turbine generator.

This definition of source of electrical power is independent of:

d. the type of source (e.g. rotating generator, waste heat recovery system, wind generator, solar panel, fuel cell, photovoltaic array);
e. the type of distribution system (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.3 Definitions 24.3.8); and
f. the application of the source (e.g. main/additional/emergency/transitional source of power).

Figure 2. 24. 1: Source of electrical power

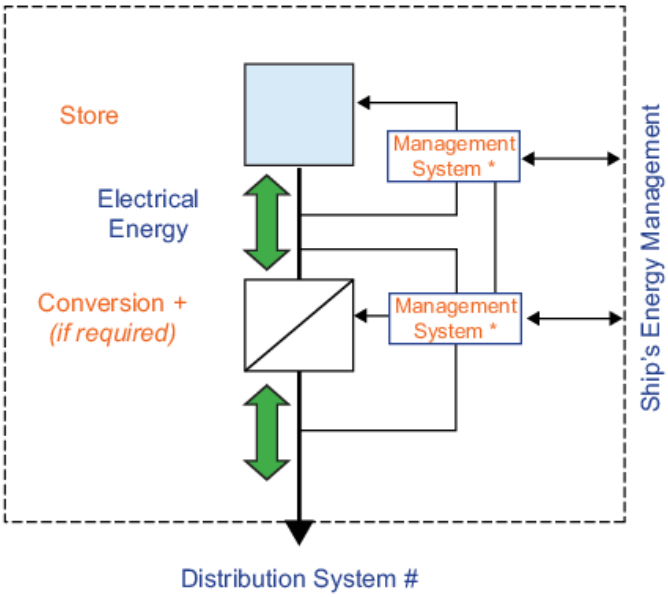


24. 3. 4 Additional source of electrical power: An additional source of power is a source of electrical power not forming part of the ship's main source of power that is rated to supply a proportion of the ship's main power demand at any time either continuously or for an accepted period of time, e.g. an energy storage device or a power take-off that is not rated for or capable of permanent operation.

24. 3. 5 Store of electrical energy: A store of electrical energy receives, stores and discharges energy through a single point of common coupling with the distribution system (*See* in Figure 2. 24. 2: Store of electrical energy). It includes management systems and any required dedicated conversion as defined in Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.3 Definitions 24.3.3.This definition is independent of:

a. the method of energy storage;
b. the type of store (e.g. battery, capacitor);
c. the type of distribution system (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.3 Definitions 24.3.8); and
d. the application of the store (e.g. power source, load smoothing, peak shaving, dynamic response, power backup).

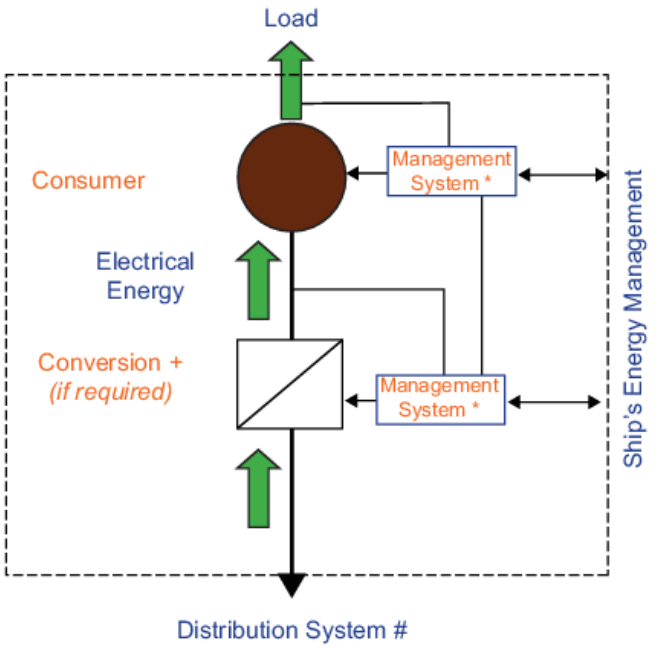
Figure 2. 24. 2: Store of electrical energy



24. 3. 6 Consumer of electrical power: A consumer of electrical power takes its input from the distribution system and delivers useful work through its associated load (*See* Figure 2. 24. 3: Consumer of electrical power). It includes management systems and any required dedicated conversion as defined in Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.3 Definitions 24.3.3. Consumers are present in any electrical power system and are not unique to hybrid electrical power systems. The definition is provided here for completeness. This definition is independent of:

a. the type of load or the purpose for which it is installed; and
b. the type or physical form of distribution system.

Figure 2. 24. 3: Consumer of electrical power



24. 3. 7 Combined sources/stores/consumers of electrical power: A combined source/store/consumer of electrical power provides multiple functions as defined in Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.3 Definitions 24.3.4 to Pt

6, Ch 2, 24.3 Definitions 24.3.7 in a single functional arrangement (some examples are shown in Figure 2. 24. 4: Combined source and consumer of electrical power to Figure 2. 24. 7: Combined store of electrical energy and source and consumer of electrical power). They include management systems and any required dedicated conversion as defined in Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.3 Definitions 24.3.3.

Figure 2. 24. 4: Combined source and consumer of electrical power to Figure 2. 24. 7: Combined store of electrical energy and source and consumer of electrical power depict building blocks that may be encountered in a hybrid electrical power system. These do not represent complete systems, are provided for illustration purposes only and are not exhaustive with further permutations being viable.

Figure 2. 24. 4: Combined source and consumer of electrical power

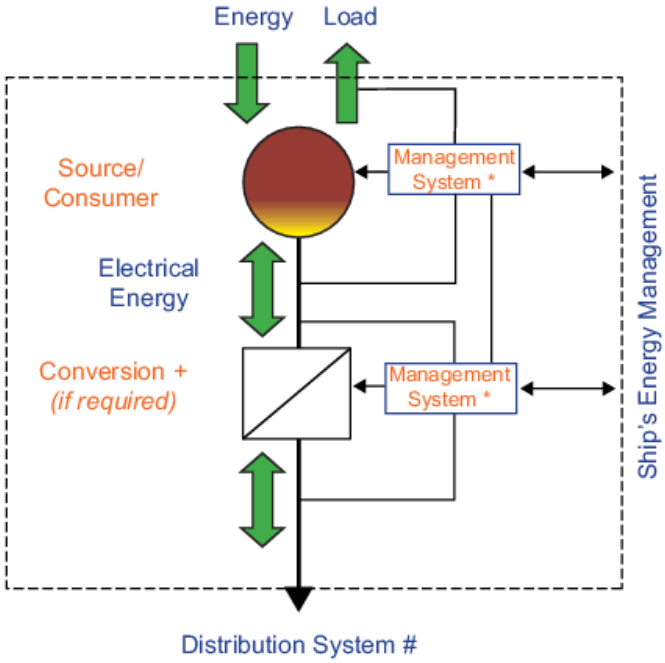


Figure 2. 24. 5: Combined source of electrical power and store of electrical energy

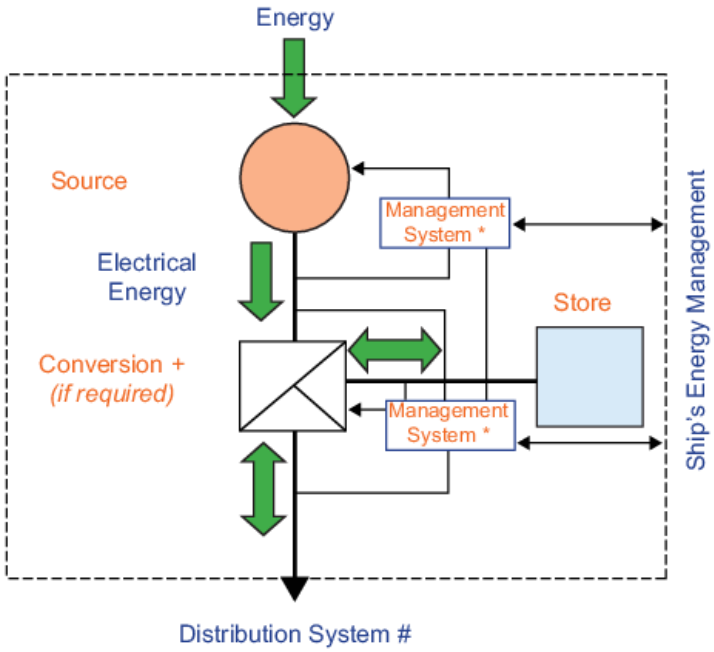


Figure 2. 24. 6: Combined store of electrical energy and consumer of electrical power

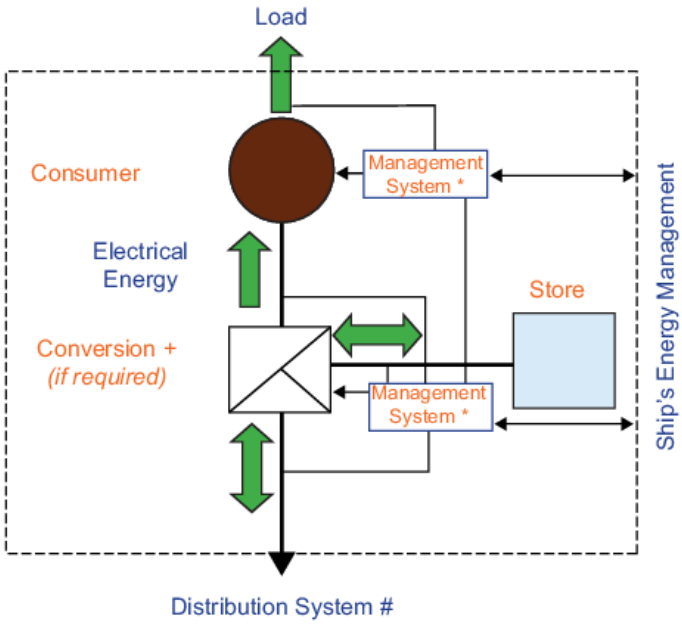
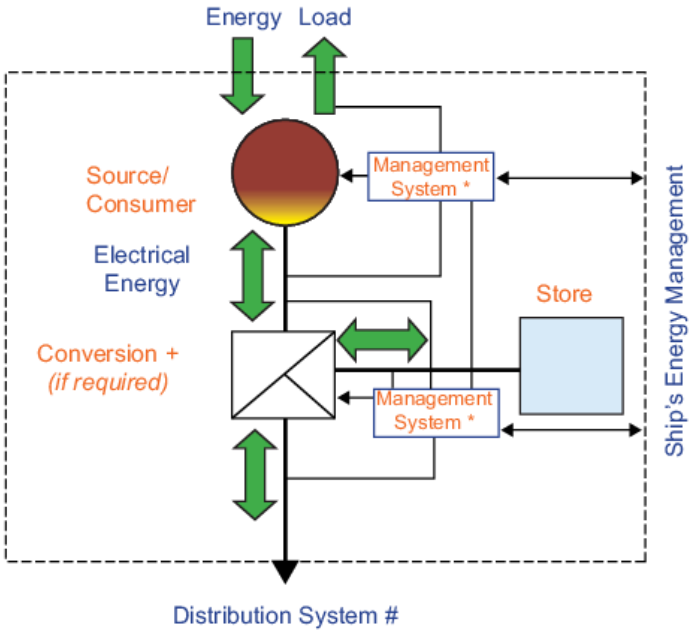


Figure 2. 24. 7: Combined store of electrical energy and source and consumer of electrical power



24. 3. 8 Distribution system: The distribution system provides the interconnection between, protection of and isolation of:

- sources (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.3 Definitions 24.3.3 to Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.3 Definitions 24.3.4),
- stores (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.3 Definitions 24.3.5),
- consumers (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.3 Definitions 24.3.7) and
- combinations thereof (*See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.3 Definitions 24.3.7).

It includes management systems (e.g. power management) and any required dedicated conversion as described in Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.3 Definitions 24.3.3. There are no constraints on its type (e.g. a.c. or d.c.), magnitude (e.g. voltage and/or frequency), nature (e.g. fixed or variable), architecture (e.g. tree, radial, zonal), physical form or on the number of variants within a ship.

24. 3. 9 Energy management: Energy management functionality provides the overall control, monitoring, protection and safety functions that are necessary to deliver dependable electrical power from the hybrid electrical power system in all operating modes and under both normal and reasonably fore*See*able abnormal conditions. It comprises supervisory functions that integrate the management systems of the components (sources, stores, consumers, distribution systems) from which the hybrid system is constructed and may be implemented as a stand-alone system or as distributed functionality across a number of systems.

Energy management is focused on energy flow and is typically model based, predictive in nature, inclusive of optimisation functionality and employing the principles of health and condition monitoring at system level (e.g. as described in *ACSPlus Procedure for the Approval of Digital Health Management Systems*). Energy management functionality is considered additional to the functionality of a conventional power management system as described in IEC 60092-504, *Electrical installations in ships, Part 504: Automation, control and instrumentation*, Section 9.4.

24. 3. 10 Power system integration: Power system integration comprises those system level activities that are required to be undertaken to design and develop, build and then operate and maintain safely through life a dependable ship's hybrid electrical power system including its constituent components (shown pictorially in Figure 2. 24. 8: Role of system integration activities). At each

phase of a project power system integration is managed by a single designated party and is carried out in accordance with a defined procedure identifying the roles, responsibilities and requirements for all parties involved.

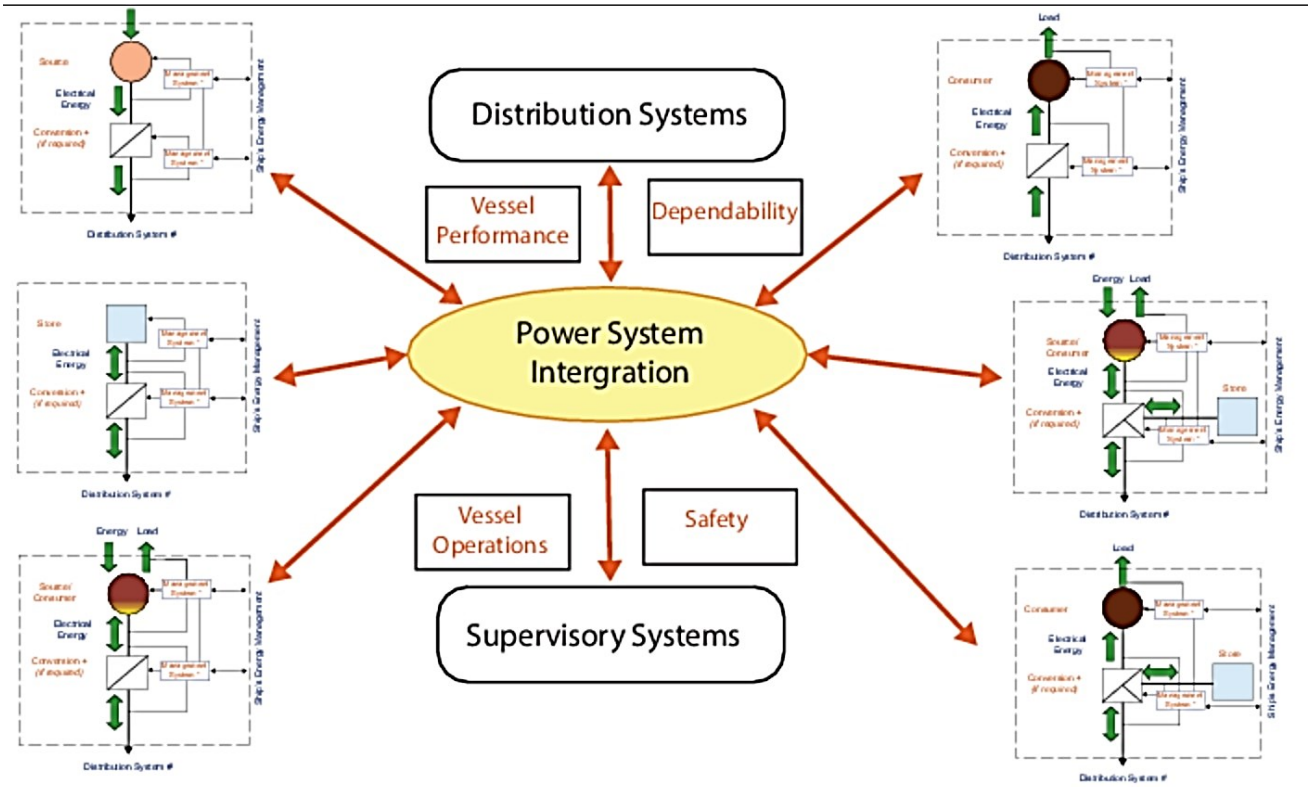


Figure 2. 24. 8: Role of system integration activities

24. 3. 11 Dependability: Dependability is as defined in IEC 60050(191), *Quality vocabulary – Part 3: Availability, reliability and maintainability terms – Section 3.2*: *Glossary of international terms*. It is the collective term used to describe the availability performance and its influencing factors: reliability performance, maintainability performance and maintenance support performance as agreed with ACS.

24. 4 Hybrid electrical power system performance - System functional requirements

24. 4. 1 To provide sufficient electrical power of appropriate dependability to supply the required essential services, habitability requirements and those services required to maintain the ship in a normal sea-going and operational state during defined operational conditions without recourse to the emergency electrical supply.

24. 4. 2 Damage and injury: To provide electrical systems and equipment with suitable protection under fault conditions to prevent the following:

a. injury to onboard personnel;
b. damage to the equipment itself; and
c. damage to equipment connected to it.

24. 4. 3 On ships with electric propulsion, to provide sufficient electrical power necessary for an effective and agreed level of propulsion power during all normal and reasonably fore*See*able abnormal operational conditions.

24. 5 Hybrid electrical power system performance - System performance targets

24. 5. 1 For **Hybrid Power** notation the performance of the system is to be such that in the event of a single failure operation of the system may be interrupted but is to be recoverable to a defined state bounded by time and magnitude.

24. 5. 2 For **Hybrid Power (+)** notation the performance of the system is to be such that in the event of a single failure operation of the system is to be uninterrupted with any degradation of performance agreed between the designers and Owners.

24. 5. 3 The hybrid electrical power system performance targets in all modes of operation are to be defined and agreed between the designers and Owners.

24. 5. 4 The electrical system design maximum and minimum operating voltage and input frequency together with acceptable limits of excursions are to be specified by the system designer and are to be in compliance with the requirements of the Rules.

24. 5. 5 Specific consideration is to be given to time-based performance targets for systems in which stored electrical energy supplies any part of the ship's main power demand.

24. 5. 6 Methods of verification of actual performance against targets are to be defined and are to cover all phases of the lifecycle.

24. 6 Hybrid electrical power system performance - Dependability principles

24. 6. 1 The hybrid electrical power system dependability principles are to be defined and agreed between the designers and Owners consistent with the requirements for **Hybrid Power** or **Hybrid Power (+)** notation.

24. 6. 2 The principles are to cover defined operating modes, all normal and reasonably fore*See*able abnormal operating and fault conditions and are to specifically consider the fault ride-through capability of the system.

24. 6. 3 The principles are to cover failures in active components of any of the sources, stores, consumers, distribution system and energy management forming the hybrid electrical power system. Such components may include, but are not restricted to, the following:

a. Prime movers (e.g. auxiliary engines);
b. Generators and their excitation equipment;
c. Gearing;
d. Pumps;
e. Fans;
f. Switchgear and controlgear, including their assemblies;
g. Thrusters; and
h. Valves (where power actuated).

24. 6. 4 Consideration is to be given to other enabling systems not part of the hybrid electrical power system whose failure or degradation could affect correct functioning of the hybrid electrical power system (e.g. lubrication, cooling and ventilation systems).

24. 6. 5 The continuity of supply to essential and emergency safety systems is to be maintained, in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 2 Main source of electrical power.

24. 6. 6 Arrangements are to ensure that the supply of essential services is not disrupted by the unavailability of the largest source of electrical power and are to be in accordance with a clearly described, documented and agreed redundancy design intent.

24. 6. 7 The size and rating of electrical energy stores is to be appropriate for the specified lifetime when subjected to in-service cyclic loading. Calculations supporting this assessment are to be provided to ACS.

24. 6. 8 For **Hybrid Power (+)** a hybrid electrical power system dependability assessment is to be undertaken and submitted to ACS. The objectives of the assessment are to:

- demonstrate the dependability of the system during all normal and reasonably fore*See*able abnormal conditions; and
- demonstrate that an appropriate level of dependability is achieved that is commensurate with that agreed between the designers and Owners.

The assessment shall be undertaken to a recognised standard that is acceptable to ACS (e.g. IEC 60300-3-1, *Dependability management Part 3-1: Application guide – Analysis techniques for dependability – Guide on methodology*).

24. 7 Hybrid electrical power system performance - Main source of electrical power

24. 7. 1 The main source of electrical power is to comply with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 2 Main source of electrical power.

24. 7. 2 Any type of source of electrical power as detailed in these hybrid electrical power system Rules may, subject to the approval of ACS, be considered as having equivalent function to that of a generating set as described in, but not limited to, Pt 6, Ch 2, 2 Main source of electrical power.

24. 7. 3 Sources of electrical power not forming part of the ship's main source of electrical power may be used as an additional source of electrical power to supply electrical services required for normal operational and habitable conditions provided that:

a. The quality of power supplies meets the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.17 Transversal requirements 24.17.3; and
b. Automatic arrangements are provided to start and connect within a period not exceeding 45 seconds one of the sources forming the main source of electrical power in the event of a single failure or the quality of power supplies exceeding limits.

24. 8 Hybrid electrical power system performance - Emergency source of electrical power

24. 8. 1 The emergency source of electrical power is to comply with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 3 Emergency source of electrical power.

24. 8. 2 For ships with a specified service notation as defined in Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull), where it is proposed that a dedicated emergency source of electrical power and its associated transitional source of power will not be provided, the main source of electrical power and associated equipment is to meet the following requirements:

a. Sources providing the main source of electrical power are to be:
   i. separated and located in two or more compartments that are not contiguous with each other;
   ii. self-contained and arranged to be independent such that each system can operate without recourse to the other main source(s) including power distribution and any associated auxiliary and ancillary converting equipment and control systems;

iii. arranged such that a fire, flood or casualty in any one of the compartments will not affect the electrical power distribution from the other(s), or to the services required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 3 Emergency source of electrical power;

iv. capable of being started automatically on loss of the power supplied by the other main source(s) of electrical power and supplying the essential services as quickly as is safe and practicable subject to a maximum of 45 seconds, or provided with a transitional source of emergency electrical power;

v. arranged to allow for maintenance at sea of any one source without affecting the ability to comply with these requirements; and

vi. provided with starting arrangements compliant with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 2, 9.5 Starting of the emergency source of power.

b. Where these Rules specify that a service is required to be connected to both the main and emergency source of electrical power or is to be connected to the emergency switchboard, then these services are to be served by at least two individual circuits from the separated main sources of electrical power with arrangements to transfer between the two sources. The supplies are to be separated in their switchboard and throughout their length as widely as is practicable without the use of common feeders, protective devices, control circuits or controlgear assemblies so that any single fault will not cause the loss of both supplies.

c. Provision is to be made for periodic testing to demonstrate services required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 3 Emergency source of electrical power can be supplied automatically following the loss of one main source of electrical power.

d. To demonstrate compliance with these requirements a risk assessment of the electrical, mechanical, piping arrangements, cooling arrangements and any other sub-systems whose failure or degradation could have an impact on the performance of the system is to be carried out demonstrating that a single point failure such as a fire or flooding within a space would not render the systems incapable of supplying those services required in an emergency or other reasonably fore*See*able abnormal event. The assessment is to be undertaken to a recognised standard that is acceptable to ACS (e.g. ISO 31010, *Risk management – Risk assessment techniques*) and in accordance with *ACSPlus Procedure Assessment of Risk Based Designs and associated annexes*.

24. 9 Hybrid electrical power system performance - External source of electrical power

24. 9. 1 Ships utilising an external source of power are to comply with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 4 External source of electrical power.

24. 9. 2 Arrangements for d.c. external sources are to comply with a recognised standard that is acceptable to ACS.

24. 9. 3 Onshore power supplies and their connection are to comply with Pt 7, Ch 13 On-shore Power Supplies.

24. 9. 4 Ships using an external source of power to charge onboard stores of electrical energy will be specifically considered by ACS. Details of the arrangements and their interfaces to ship systems are to be submitted.

24. 10 Hybrid electrical power system performance - Electrical power supply to ship propulsion and ship positioning systems

24. 10. 1 Ships with electric propulsion are to comply with the relevant power requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 16.3, Power requirements.

24. 10. 2 Ships with electrically driven azimuthing thrusters are to comply with the relevant power requirements of Pt 5, Ch 20, 5.2 Generating arrangements 5.2.2.

24. 10. 3 Ships with dynamic positioning systems are to comply with the relevant power requirements of Pt 7, Ch 4 Dynamic Positioning Systems

24. 10. 4 Passenger ships are to comply with the relevant power requirements of Pt 5, Ch 23 Additional Requirements for Passenger Ships and the *ACSPlus Procedure for Assigning the SRtP Descriptive Note*.

24. 10. 5 Ships with optional notations for propulsion and steering redundancy are to comply with the relevant power requirements of Pt 5, Ch 22, 3.3 Electrical power supply.

24. 10. 6 Ships with the optional notation for integrated propulsion systems are to comply with the relevant power requirements of Pt 5, Ch 18, 2 Machinery arrangements.

24. 11 Hybrid electrical power system components - Source of electrical power

24. 11. 1 The main source of electrical power is to comply with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 2 Main source of electrical power.

24. 11. 2 The emergency source of electrical power is to comply with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 3 Emergency source of electrical power.

24. 11. 3 External sources of electrical power are to comply with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 4 External source of electrical power.

24. 11. 4 Additional sources of electrical power as defined in Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.3 Definitions 24.3.4 are to comply with the requirements of this Chapter.

24. 11. 5 Rotating electrical generators within sources of electrical power are to comply with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 9 Rotating machines.

24. 11. 6 Converters within power sources are to comply with Pt 6, Ch 2, 10.2, Semiconductor converters and the following requirements:

a. Converters are to be selected to withstand the voltage ripple levels present on the distribution system. For every system, the following voltage parameters are to be defined:
   i. maximum non-repetitive peak;
   ii. maximum repetitive peak; and
   iii. maximum repetitive peak-to-peak.
b. Where pulse width modulation converters are to be used, the voltage rate of rise times are to be determined, the results recorded and submitted to ACS. Rotating machinery, surge protective devices, cable insulation and motor windings are to be designed accordingly.
c. Converters may be of conversion type a.c./a.c., d.c./a.c., a.c./d.c., d.c./d.c., and of the controlled (e.g. active front end (AFE)) or non-controlled type (e.g. diode supply unit (DSU)).
d. Converters are to be provided with visual status indication at their associated control stations to include, but not be limited to:
   i. Power available at the input;
   ii. Power at output;
   iii. Temperature; and
   iv. Overload.

If certain indicators and alerts are not applicable, sufficient evidence to support the claim is to be submitted for consideration by ACS. Additional indicators, alerts and shutdowns may be necessary as determined through the system Failure Modes and Effects Analysis (FMEA) required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.27 Power system development and integration - System Failure Modes and Effects Analysis (FMEA).

e. Converters supplying electrical power to the distribution system and consumers are to be capable of delivering the required currents for the time required to enable current-time discrimination of protective devices to operate. The electrical output of the converter is to be automatically restored following fault clearance.

f. Converter software is to satisfy the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, 2 Essential features for control, alarm, monitoring and safety systems

g. Converters are to be capable of handling voltage and current spikes from the distribution system under all normal and reasonably fore*See*able abnormal conditions without sustaining any damage or tripping.

h. Converters supplying essential services are to automatically restart and connect to the distribution system after a blackout as specified in Pt 6, Ch 2, 2.2, Number and rating of generators and converting equipment.

i. Where converters are equipped with internal capacitors which can contribute significantly to the short-circuit level of the system, the contribution is to be included in the design of the protection and distribution system.

j. The risk of converter component damage due to inrush currents is to be minimised by appropriate management of these currents during transient events and after short circuit.

k. Where capacitors are connected to a converter output, the output is to be charged by the converter or by external chargers to a level which will minimise the risk of damage to the capacitors before connecting them to the distribution system.

l. Converters arranged to operate in parallel are to be capable of stable load sharing up to maximum continuous load and inclusive of any temporary overloads within their design rating.

m. Where converters are arranged to provide protection against electrical faults a disconnector or switch disconnector is to be provided to enable safe isolation of the converter from its incoming supplies.

n. Converters are to be protected from permanent physical damage as a result of short circuits or overload currents on their input and output terminals.

o. Converters are to have a ride-through capability to manage system transients including the effects of fault clearance in the distribution system that is consistent with the dependability requirements of the system.

p. Converters are to be provided with appropriate filters to ensure the required quality of power supply at both their input and output. In the event of filter circuit failure, continued safe operation of the hybrid electrical power system is to be possible by following specified procedures as described in operation procedures. These procedures are to include any operational limitations, and they are to be kept on board, maintained in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.18 Power system development and integration - General 24.18.3 and made available to the Surveyor on request.

24. 12 Hybrid electrical power system components - Store of electrical energy

24. 12. 1 Functional requirements: To provide sufficient stored electrical energy as a component of the main source of power to supply services during normal and reasonably fore*See*able abnormal and emergency conditions.

24. 12. 2 Batteries of the vented and valve-regulated sealed type and lithium batteries are to comply with Pt 6, Ch 2, 12 Batteries.

24. 12. 3 Power converters within stores of electrical energy as illustrated in Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.3 Definitions 24.3.5 are to comply with the relevant requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.11 Hybrid electrical power system components - Source of electrical power 24.11.6.

24. 12. 4 For consideration as a component of the main source of power on a ship with a specified service notation as defined in Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) and subject to approval of the National Administration a store of electrical energy is to:

a. Comply with Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.7, Hybrid electrical power system performance - Main source of electrical power;
b. Have a minimum capacity at any stage of its lifecycle sufficient for its contribution to the main source of power that is necessary to achieve the specified service requirements;
c. Be provided via energy management functionality with remote indication of state of charge (available capacity in a store expressed as a percentage of rated capacity) and state of health (general condition of a store expressed as a percentage of its ability to deliver the specified performance compared with that of a new store);
d. Have a primary purpose of supplying the ship's main power demand. Details of any secondary purpose including but not limited to optimising performance (e.g. load smoothing, peak shaving), improving stability (e.g. dynamic response) or providing transitional power are to be provided to ACS; and
e. Be capable of being restored from a dead-ship condition with no dependence on other systems or electrical supplies. Details of alternative arrangements may be submitted for consideration by ACS.

24. 12. 5 For consideration as an additional source of power a store of electrical energy is to:

a. Comply with Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.7 Hybrid electrical power system performance - Main source of electrical power 24.7.3;
b. Be provided via energy management functionality with remote indication of state of charge (available capacity in a store expressed as a percentage of rated capacity) and state of health (general condition of a store expressed as a percentage of its ability to deliver the specified performance compared with that of a new store); and
c. Have a primary purpose of supplying the ship's main power demand. Details of any secondary purpose including but not limited to optimising performance (e.g. load smoothing, peak shaving), improving stability (e.g. dynamic response) or providing transitional power are to be provided to ACS.

24. 12. 6 For application as an emergency source of power a store of electrical energy is to comply with Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.8, Hybrid electrical power system performance - Emergency source of electrical power

24. 12. 7 Electrical energy storage devices connected to and charged by the distribution system are to be protected against the defined effects of electrical faults in the system.

24. 12. 8 Energy stores connected to and charged by the distribution system are to be so located and provided with arrangements allowing for the safe isolation of their terminals and the reduction of voltages to a safe level during maintenance or provided with alternative arrangements providing an equivalent level of safety which will be subject to special consideration.

24. 12. 9 Energy stores are to be connected to the distribution system by protection devices which include but are not limited to overcurrent and short circuit protection. The protective devices used are to be selective, ensuring faults are not transmitted further, independent of the direction of current flow.

24. 13 Hybrid electrical power system components - Consumer of electrical power

24. 13. 1 Functional requirements: To convert electrical power supplied from the hybrid power generation and distribution system into useful work.

24. 13. 2 Rotating machines within consumers of electrical power are to comply with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 9 Rotating machines.

24. 13. 3 Converters within consumers of electrical power are to comply with the relevant requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.11 Hybrid electrical power system components - Source of electrical power 24.11.6.

24. 13. 4 Where a converter is arranged to step down voltage to provide a lower voltage supply to consumers than that of the power system, then arrangements are to be provided to ensure the lower voltage distribution consumers are not subjected to voltage variations, including fast transients, outside their safe operating regions.

24. 13. 5 Consumers employing loads characterised by constant power characteristics connected to the distribution system through a converter are to be evaluated with respect to ensuring the stability of the power system as part of the power system analysis detailed in Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.24, Power system development and integration - Power system analysis.

24. 14 Hybrid electrical power system components - Combined sources of electrical power, stores of electrical energy and consumers of electrical power

24. 14. 1 Functional requirements: To provide the combined functional requirements of each of the elements (sources, stores, consumers) from which the combination is constructed.

24. 14. 2 Where a single functional or physical assembly contains a combination of source, store or consume functions, then it is to comply with the requirements of each applicable function as detailed in Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.11, Hybrid electrical power system components - Source of electrical power to Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.13 Hybrid electrical power system components - Consumer of electrical power.

24. 15 Hybrid electrical power system components - Distribution system

24. 15. 1 Functional requirements:

a. To provide a dependable interconnection between sources, stores and consumers of electrical power; and
b. To distribute electrical power safely to consumers.

24. 15. 2 Arrangements for isolation and switching are to be provided which are to enable safe isolation of faults and for maintenance.

24. 15. 3 Distribution systems supplying consumers through converters are to provide galvanic isolation and ground separation.

24. 15. 4 In addition to the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 5.3, Isolation and switching, systems are to comply with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.15 Hybrid electrical power system components - Distribution system 24.15.5 to Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.15 Hybrid electrical power system components - Distribution system 24.15.13.

24. 15. 5 Where consumers are supplied via converters which are connected to both sides of a distribution system that is capable of being split, arrangements are to be provided to eliminate the risk of current being supplied back to the distribution system for example through flyback diodes.

24. 15. 6 Converters connecting sources, stores and consumers connected to the distribution system are to facilitate the connection and removal of sources, stores and consumers in a stable manner with the electrical power system in operation.

24. 15. 7 Converters are to be designed to prevent damage to the converter when switching under load.

24. 15. 8 Where essential services are required by Pt 5 Main and Auxiliary Machinery to be duplicated, these are to be served by individual circuits, separated in their switchboard or section board and throughout their length as widely as is practicable without the use of common feeders, protective

devices, control circuits or controlgear assemblies, so that any single fault will not cause the loss of both services.

24. 15. 9 The distribution system is to be split into at least two independent systems each capable of independent operation or is to be separated by protection devices that are selective, ensuring faults are not transmitted further, and operate independent of the direction of current flow.

24. 15. 10 The distribution system is to be protected against electrical faults including short circuit, overload, earth fault, differential current, under/over voltage, under/over frequency, power quality, current and voltage imbalance and arc fault in compliance with the relevant requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 6 System design – Protection and Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.15 Hybrid electrical power system components - Distribution system 24.15.11 to Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.15 Hybrid electrical power system components - Distribution system 24.15.14.

24. 15. 11 Active components may be used for the limitation of fault currents subject to verification in a real environment of the performance of the component under all normal and reasonably fore*See*able abnormal operating and fault conditions and subject to establishment of effective surveillance and periodic test procedures during operation and maintenance in the ship's operating manuals to verify the component is capable of performing its intended function. An isolation device is to be provided within the component and this is to be tripped automatically in the event of the component operating. A risk assessment of the component is to be undertaken to a recognised standard that is acceptable to ACS (e.g. ISO 31010, *Risk management – Risk assessment techniques*) and in accordance with *ACSPlus Procedure Assessment of Risk Based Designs* and associated annexes.

24. 15. 12 Where energy management functionality provides protection against incorrect or unexpected energy flows between the sources, stores and consumers forming part of the hybrid electrical power system the sensors used for this purpose in the distribution system are to be independent of those used for control, monitoring and safety systems.

24. 15. 13 Where a bi-directional flow of power may occur, the distribution system is to withstand the power variations being introduced. The level of bi-directional flow allowed is to be specified by the system designer.

24. 15. 14 For **Hybrid Power (+)** notation facilities are to be provided for automatic detection of the location of insulation breakdown with respect to earth of equipment and distribution systems to a level determined by the integrator consistent with the system's dependability targets and agreed with the designers and Owners.

24. 15. 15 For either notation, switchgear and controlgear are to comply with the relevant requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 7 Switchgear and controlgear assemblies.

24. 15. 16 Power converters within distribution systems are to comply with the relevant requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.11 Hybrid electrical power system components - Source of electrical power 24.11.6.

24. 15. 17 Where fuses are implemented to limit the fault current in the converter, the activation of the protection is not to influence redundant consumers or cause loss of other single consumers as required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 5.2, Essential services.

24. 15. 18 Fuses used to protect distribution converters are to be of the bolted type. Where alternative arrangements are proposed, it is to be demonstrated that protection system's selectivity is not adversely affected as a result of an increased connection resistance.

24. 15. 19 For each section of a d.c. bus there is to be at least one voltmeter per section. An ammeter is to be provided for each converter supplying a d.c. bus. Similar arrangements are to be provided for screen-based displays.

24. 15. 20 The meters required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.15 Hybrid electrical power system components - Distribution system 24.15.19 are to be located and arranged such that they may be viewed at a single operating position. In addition, meters may be required at additional locations to mitigate

hazards identified by the risk assessment required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.27 Power system development and integration - System Failure Modes and Effects Analysis (FMEA).

24. 15. 21 Power quality assessments are to consider the detection and impacts of circulating currents such as may exist through capacitive coupling in semiconductor converters.

24. 15. 22 Constant current distribution systems will be subject to special consideration and are not covered by these Rules.

24. 15. 23 For **Hybrid Power (+)** notation warnings of degrading power quality are to be provided and in the event of power quality exceeding prescribed limits automatic isolation and reconfiguration of the power system is to occur as agreed between the designers and Owners.

24. 16 Hybrid electrical power system components - Energy management

24. 16. 1 Functional requirements:

a. To ensure that sufficient energy is available to satisfy the main power demand under all fore*See*able operational conditions.

b. To inform Operators as soon as reasonably practicable of deviations from normal operation of the hybrid electrical power system under all normal and reasonably fore*See*able abnormal operational conditions.

c. To initiate immediate corrective action on detection of component faults in the hybrid electrical power system that present a danger, reducing the risk to a level that is acceptable to ACS.

d. To provide functionality beyond the scope of conventional power management that is necessary for the control, monitoring, protection and dependability of the hybrid electrical power system.

24. 16. 2 Programmable electronic systems used to provide energy management functionality, or to provide safety functions, are to have arrangements which satisfy the applicable requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, 2 Essential features for control, alarm, monitoring and safety systems .

24. 16. 3 Proposed modifications to software, including parameter changes, and during acceptance testing and trials are to be in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 1, 1.5, Alterations and additions as applicable.

24. 16. 4 Loss of energy management functionality is not to compromise the supply of main power, the safety of the ship, the hybrid electrical power system, or its components.

24. 16. 5 Energy management functionality is to include, but not be limited to, the following:

a. Control (of the complete system and of each of its sub-systems):
   i. Hybrid electrical power system operating mode selection and transition;
   ii. Connection and disconnection of sources, stores and consumers to the distribution system in response to operating conditions and prevailing loads;
   iii. Connection and disconnection of distribution system sections;
   iv. Load allocation to and sharing between sources;
   v. Load restriction of consumers;
   vi. Energy flow management;
   vii. Distribution system a.c. voltage and frequency and d.c. voltage; and
   viii. Control functions required by sources, stores, consumers or distribution system that are necessary for their operation under all reasonably fore*See*able normal, abnormal and fault conditions.

b. Alarm and monitoring:
   i. Mode transition status;
   ii. Connection status of sources, stores, consumers and distribution system sections;

iii. Energy flows within the hybrid electrical power system and between its constituent parts;
iv. Power quality as detailed in Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.17 Transversal requirements 24.17.3; and
v. For stores, state of charge and state of health as defined in Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.12 Hybrid electrical power system components - Store of electrical energy 24.12.4 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.12 Hybrid electrical power system components - Store of electrical energy 24.12.5.

c. Protection and safety:
i. Blackout prevention;
ii. Blackout recovery;
iii. Detection of abnormal or unexpected energy flow as described in Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.15 Hybrid electrical power system components - Distribution system 24.15.13; and
iv. Safety functions required by sources, stores, consumers or distribution system that are necessary for their safe operation.

24. 16. 6 Overall ship-wide energy management functionality is to be integrated and coordinated with the functionality of the local management systems as described in Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.3, Definitions for each of the components (sources, stores, consumers, combinations, distribution system) of the hybrid electrical power system and is to ensure safe operation of the ship under all normal and reasonably fore*See*able abnormal operating and fault conditions.

24. 16. 7 Additional energy management functionality for **Hybrid Power (+)** notation is to consider, but not be limited to, the following. The level of functionality supplied is to be consistent with the enhanced performance and dependability required by the system.

a. Control (of the complete system and of each divisible element):
i. Automatic configuration of the power system based on predicted energy flow;
ii. Automatic system isolation and reconfiguration such that, in the event of a single failure in electrical power sources, stores, distribution system or associated control systems, the impact on the operational performance of the ship is as agreed with ACS and there is no impact on the ship's ability to complete its mission;
iii. System performance optimisation, independent of primary control functions covering emissions, efficiency, availability, reliability or operating cost; and
iv. Control of stores with load smoothing, peak shaving, dynamic response or other optimisation capability.

b. Alarm and monitoring:
i. Degradation of power quality;
ii. Remaining time for continued operation of the power system at current operating conditions and levels of power consumption. This may take the form of a real-time performance capability plot;
iii. System performance covering energy consumption, emissions, efficiency, availability, reliability or operating cost; and
iv. Health and condition of hybrid electrical power system components including the effects of ageing on electrical energy storage devices.

c. Protection and safety:
i. Automatic isolation and reconfiguration of the power system on detection of abnormal energy flow;
ii. Consequence analysis determining the remaining time for continued operation of the power system under stated operating and load conditions following the most significant single failure. This may take the form of an onboard off-line simulation derived from, or an integral element of, the simulation described in Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.23 Power system development and integration - Energy flows 24.23.3; and
iii. Automatic detection of faults detailed in the system level FMEA with display of mitigating actions.

24. 16. 8 A description of functionality including also any functions not described in Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.16 Hybrid electrical power system components - Energy management 24.16.5 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.16 Hybrid electrical power system components - Energy management 24.16.7 is to be submitted.

24. 17 Transversal requirements

24. 17. 1 All electrical equipment is to prevent injury to personnel or damage to other equipment and is to be suitably protected against damage to itself under normal, reasonably fore*See*able abnormal and fault conditions.

24. 17. 2 The supply of electrical power sufficient for the correct operation of electrical services for essential equipment and habitable conditions is to be maintained:

a. during all normal and reasonably fore*See*able abnormal operating and fault conditions;
b. irrespective of the direction of the propulsion shaft rotation; and
c. without any requirement to revert to emergency supplies.

24. 17. 3 Hybrid electrical power systems are to provide a power quality as required by;

- Pt 5, Ch 2, 7.3 Auxiliary and emergency engine governors ,
- Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.8, Quality of power supplies,
- Pt 6, Ch 2, 2.4 Prime mover governors and
- Pt 6, Ch 2, 9.4 Generator control

during all normal and reasonably fore*See*able abnormal operating and fault conditions.

24. 17. 4 A.c. and d.c. systems are during all normal and reasonably fore*See*able abnormal operating and fault conditions to provide a quality of power as required by a recognised National or International Standard specified by the power system integrator that is acceptable to ACS.

24. 17. 5 All components of, or connected to, the distribution system are to be designed and validated for operation across the full range of power quality conditions detailed in Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.17 Transversal requirements 24.17.2 to Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.17 Transversal requirements 24.17.4.

24. 17. 6 The key parameters of power quality as determined by the system integrator with agreement of the Owner and as applicable to the type of electrical power system are to be monitored and recorded for each individually operable section of the distribution system. An alarm is to be raised at a monitored operating station in the event of power quality exceeding limits determined by the system integrator in compliance with the power quality requirements of the Rules. A description of the arrangements provided is to be submitted.

24. 17. 7 For either notation, all electrical equipment is to comply with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2 Electrical Engineering including:

a. General requirements - Pt 6, Ch 2, 1 General requirements including fire, electric shock, ignition, radiation and environment;
b. Creepage and clearance - Pt 6, Ch 2, 7.5, Creepage and clearance distances;
c. Arc - Pt 6, Ch 2, 8 Protection from electric arc hazards within electrical equipment; and
d. Explosive atmospheres - Pt 6, Ch 2, 14 Electrical equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres or in the presence of combustible dusts.

24. 17. 8 The choice of materials and components of construction, as well as the design, location and ship installation, are to be made according to the environmental, maintenance and operating conditions in order to maintain the continued function of the equipment during all normal and reasonably fore*See*able abnormal conditions and to reduce the risk of:

- injury to onboard personnel;
- damage to the equipment the system is contained within or adjacent equipment and systems;

- damage to adjacent equipment and systems; and
- damage to the ship.

24. 17. 9 Where applicable, equipment and components are to be selected from the list of ACS type approved products satisfying the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, 1.4, Control, alarm and safety equipment and Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.13, Programmable electronic systems - Additional requirements for essential services and safety critical systems.

24. 17. 10 Electrical equipment is to be used within its designed operating parameters, such as current, voltage, power, charging rate, energy storage, etc. to prevent:

a. a hazard occurring; and
b. the equipment affecting safety functions.

24. 17. 11 All electrical equipment supplied from the main and emergency sources of electrical power and electrical equipment for essential and emergency services is to be selected to operate satisfactorily under the variations of voltage and ripple frequencies which may be present in the system.

24. 17. 12 Cables and busbars are to be selected and installed in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 11 Electric cables, optical fibre cables and busbar trunking systems (busways).

24. 17. 13 Transformers within the hybrid electrical power system are to comply with the relevant requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 10.1, Transformers.

24. 17. 14 Interlocks or an alternative acceptable to ACS are to be provided which will prevent access to capacitors until their voltage level has reduced to below the safe extra low voltage level (50 V); this is to ensure safety of personnel during maintenance.

24. 18 Power system development and integration - General

24. 18. 1 The activities specified in Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.19 Power system development and integration - System operational concept to Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.31 Verification requirements are to be undertaken to deliver and maintain a safe and dependable hybrid electrical power system throughout its development, detail design, construction, integration, verification and acceptance. Procedures are to be made available detailing how these activities will be maintained during ship operation, maintenance and disposal.

24. 18. 2 The activities should be based on the principles of the following five levels with measures adopted at each level being, as far as practicable, independent of each other:

a. Prevention of abnormal operation and failures though design and high quality in construction, operating rules and normal operating procedures;
b. Control of abnormal operation and detection of failures through control, limiting and protection systems, monitoring/surveillance features and abnormal/emergency operating procedures;
c. Control of hazards within the system design to protect against escalation to an incident or accident through engineered safety features and emergency operating procedures;
d. In support of and coordinated by the Owner and ship designer, control of severe ship or infrastructure conditions that may exceed the system design intent including prevention of hazard progression and mitigation of hazardous consequences through complementary procedures and hazard management; and
e. In support of and coordinated by the Owner and ship designer, mitigation of accident consequences through emergency response.

The system designer is to ensure adoption of principles (a) to (c) during the development and integration of the hybrid electrical power system providing evidence to ACS through the documentation that is submitted for design review as detailed in Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.2, Documentation required for design review 1.2.18.

24. 18. 3 At each phase of a project integration activities are to be managed by a suitably competent single designated party and are to be carried out in accordance with a defined procedure identifying the roles, responsibilities and requirements of all parties involved.

24. 18. 4 Where the designated party changes during a project, then there is to be a full and auditable transfer of necessary integration information between the parties.

24. 18. 5 Systems engineering processes are to comply with *ISO 15288 Systems and Software Engineering – System Life Cycle Processes* or an acceptable equivalent National or International Standard.

24. 19 Power system development and integration - System operational concept

24. 19. 1 The system operational concept is to be defined including a description of how the control, alarm and safety systems for the hybrid electrical power system provide effective means for operation and control during all defined ship operational conditions.

24. 19. 2 The system operational concept is to detail the capability, functionality and modes of operation under defined operating and emergency conditions and is to be agreed between the designers and Owners.

24. 19. 3 The system operational concept is to be submitted for design review.

24. 20 Power system development and integration - Operating modes

24. 20. 1 Operating modes for the hybrid electrical power system are to be defined and agreed between the designers and Owners.

24. 20. 2 Modes are to cover all normal and reasonably fore*See*able abnormal operating and fault conditions.

24. 20. 3 Modes are to be compatible with the ship's overall operating modes.

24. 20. 4 The sequence of transition between operating modes is to be defined for all reasonably fore*See*able normal and abnormal operating and fault conditions.

24. 20. 5 A technical description is to be produced specifying for each of the ship's possible operating modes:

a. the type of each electrical power source used to supply the distribution system, such as a.c. generators, d.c. generators, converter, batteries, fuel cells and photovoltaics;
b. the operating mode of each electrical power source such as constant voltage, constant current or variable voltage;
c. the configuration of the electrical distribution system, including the earthing and protection strategies to be used; and
d. the worst-case failure design intent.

24. 21 Power system development and integration - Consumer categorisation

24. 21. 1 Consumers supplied with electrical power from the hybrid electrical power system are to be categorised according to their function and the services that they provide in accordance with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.6, Definitions.

24. 22 Power system development and integration - System components

24. 22. 1 The specifications for all components of the hybrid electrical power system (sources, stores, consumers, distribution system, energy management) are to be validated by the system designer for completeness and correctness in respect of the component's integration into the overall power system. Validated specifications are to be submitted to ACS.

24. 22. 2 Details of the following are to be specified:

a. Operating modes and the transition between them;
b. Control and monitoring functions;
c. Mechanical components which might affect the hybrid notation (e.g. cooling units with piping arrangements, pumps, valves, etc.);
d. Safety functions;
e. Failure modes;
f. Isolation;
g. Initial and through-life verification of conformance; and
h. Human element.

24. 23 Power system development and integration - Energy flows

24. 23. 1 Energy flows within the hybrid electrical power system are to be determined for all operating modes and all normal and reasonably fore*See*able abnormal operating and fault conditions.

24. 23. 2 The impact of transition between modes on energy flow is to be considered.

24. 23. 3 For **Hybrid Power (+)** notation energy flow is to be modelled by a dynamic simulation that can be exercised under normal, reasonably fore*See*able abnormal operating and fault conditions and that is maintained for the life of the ship. This simulation may be deployed on board as described in Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.16 Hybrid electrical power system components - Energy management 24.16.7 in support of off-line consequence analysis.

24. 23. 4 Simulation tools are to conform to appropriate National or International Standards relevant to their use and are to have been validated in an equivalent application.

24. 23. 5 The dynamic simulation is to be verified against the energy flows encountered during the ship's real performance to the extent that this is reasonably practicable.

24. 23. 6 Proprietary simulation tools not conforming to an appropriate National or International Standard will be subject to special consideration. This consideration will include:

a. Pedigree of the underlying modelling platform on which the simulation is built;
b. Qualitative assessment of the simulation's functional capabilities and model behaviours;
c. Configuration management of the simulation model, its architecture, functional blocks and the parameters on which it is based;
d. Prior quantitative assessment of the simulation's performance in a similar application; and
e. An engineering justification that the validation and verification of the simulation is sufficient to enable its application in all normal and reasonably fore*See*able abnormal operating and fault conditions.

24. 24 Power system development and integration - Power system analysis

24. 24. 1 The hybrid electrical power system is to be analysed for its electrical performance under all defined operating modes and all normal and reasonably fore*See*able abnormal operating and fault conditions.

24. 24. 2 The analysis is to include, but not be limited to:

a. Fault levels under short circuit conditions;
b. Fault flows under short circuit and overload conditions;
c. Protection device operation, discrimination and coordination;
d. Quality of power supplies;
e. Steady state performance;
f. Transient performance;
g. Earth fault currents;
h. Resonance; and
i. Common mode and circulating currents.

24. 24. 3 Information regarding the expected resistance, inductance and capacitance in the system and the installed components is to be provided as part of the analysis study as required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.2, Documentation required for design review. The values chosen are to be based upon the component tolerances which result in the worst case for each aspect of the analysis and are to be updated with actual values when determined from component, sub-system or system test.

24. 24. 4 For **Hybrid Power (+)** notation the analysis is to be by a dynamic simulation that can be exercised under all normal, abnormal and fault conditions, that is maintained for the life of the ship and that can be exercised to verify operation of the protection system including:

a. Short circuit, single or multiple phases/poles;
b. Overload;
c. Overcurrent;
d. Current imbalance;
e. Voltage imbalance;
f. Zone protection;
g. Arc fault;
h. Earth fault;
i. Under/over voltage;
j. Under/over frequency;
k. Harmonic content;
l. Quality of power supplies including degradation detection;
m. Energy flow including any regeneration by consumers;
n. Resonance and stability;
o. Transient impact of fault detection, clearance and isolation;
p. Transient impact of sources, stores and consumers being tripped or shut down;
q. Transient impact of load changes, both increase and decrease; and
r. Load sharing imbalance.

24. 24. 5 Simulation tools are to conform to appropriate National or International Standards relevant to their use and are to have been validated in an equivalent application.

24. 24. 6 The dynamic simulation is to be verified against the ship's real performance to the extent that this is reasonably practicable.

24. 25 Power system development and integration - Safety functions

24. 25. 1 Safety functions related to the hybrid electrical power system and its constituent parts are to be clearly defined covering their purpose, their functionality and their location.

24. 25. 2 Safety functions are to comply with Pt 6, Ch 1, 2 Essential features for control, alarm, monitoring and safety systems .

24. 25. 3 Safety functions including ESD, emergency stop and reversionary control procedures for the hybrid electrical power system are to be defined, fully documented and made available to the Operators, maintainers and regulatory authorities.

24. 26 Power system development and integration - Risk assessment

24. 26. 1 Where the hybrid electrical power system introduces new technologies or topologies not covered by the current Rules and Regulations then a risk assessment study is to be carried out.

24. 26. 2 A formal method acceptable to ACS is to be used to determine if new or significantly greater hazards than those normally associated with the ship electrical power system that would be mitigated by compliance with the Rules and Regulations have been introduced (e.g. a preliminary hazard analysis or a structured checklist approach (HAZID) in accordance with ISO 31010, *Risk management – Risk assessment techniques*).

24. 26. 3 Where the results of this formal method establish that new hazards or exist, the risk assessment study is to be undertaken to a recognised standard that is acceptable to ACS (e.g. ISO 31010, *Risk management – Risk assessment techniques*) and in accordance with *ACSPlus Procedure Assessment of Risk Based Designs* and the associated annexes.

24. 26. 4 The objectives of the study are to:

a. identify potential deviations from the intended operation of the hybrid electrical power system;
b. identify the causes of each deviation, and the consequences for safety and dependability;
c. list safeguards to minimise causes and consequences; and
d. determine and recommend if further safeguards should be considered.

24. 26. 5 The scope of the study is to consider normal operation, start-up, normal shutdown, non-use and emergency shutdown of the hybrid electrical power system.

24. 26. 6 The risk assessment technique(s) selected are to be appropriate for their intended use and are to be accepted by ACS.

24. 27 Power system development and integration - System Failure Modes and Effects Analysis (FMEA)

24. 27. 1 An overall hybrid electrical power system FMEA is to be undertaken. The objectives of the analysis are to identify:

a. potential failures;
b. consequences of failure on the hybrid electrical power system and on ship operations;
c. means to eliminate or prevent failure; and
d. means to eliminate or minimise consequences.

24. 27. 2 The analysis may identify the requirement for safety measures in addition to those specifically stated in these Rules. Where additional safety measures are identified, evidence is to be provided that demonstrates how they are implemented and validated.

24. 27. 3 As a minimum, the scope of the analysis is to consider the ‘fail safe’ condition, location and arrangement of the critical system elements.

24. 27. 4 The analysis is to be undertaken to a recognised standard (e.g. IEC 60812, *Analysis techniques for system reliability – Procedure for failure mode and effects analysis (FMEA)*), or an equivalent and acceptable National or International Standard.

24. 27. 5 The FMEA is to consider but not be limited to:

a. Hidden faults that are not annunciated to or evident to the Operator where a second subsequent fault can directly result in a significant failure and hazardous condition;

b. Fore*See*able inadvertent operation of the hybrid electrical power system;
c. Failure to complete transition sequences (e.g. change of operating mode or response to a fault including its detection, clearance, isolation and reconfiguration);
d. Items which can be dormantly failed and unavailable to perform their intended operation on demand (e.g. normal to backup changeover systems or standby start systems);
e. Enabling systems not part of the hybrid electrical power system (e.g. fuel supply, lubrication, cooling and ventilation systems) whose failure could affect correct functioning of the hybrid electrical power system;
f. Sensor and feedback errors in programmable electronic systems;
g. Parameter corruption in programmable electronic systems (e.g. incorrect scaling factors, control rates, alarm thresholds or trip levels);
h. Common cause effects in programmable electronic systems (e.g. network storms in networked systems, power supply faults, time dependent errors in operating systems with the potential to concurrently impact multiple redundant control or monitoring systems);
i. Common cause effects in electrical power systems (e.g. power quality outside expected range or multiple earth faults in a parallel connected system);
j. Consequential failures resulting from a single failure that are to be considered as an integral part of the single failure; and
k. The viability of the role of the human in the detection and mitigation of faults.

24. 27. 6 Examples of devices in which hidden failures can occur that are detrimental to the dependability of a hybrid electrical power system include but are not limited to:

a. Protection devices – protection relays, dead-bus sensing;
b. Automatic isolation devices;
c. Circuit breaker open/close/trip functions;
d. Fault/current limitation devices;
e. Arc detection;
f. Load shedding devices;
g. Safety devices;
h. Fault detection systems;
i. Alternator current boost systems;
j. Interlocks and inter-trips;
k. Automatic change-over systems, transfer and dual-feed arrangements;
l. Stand-by start arrangements;
m. Transducers/sensors – giving an incorrect output;
n. Slow processors (e.g. watchdog functions);
o. UPS backed-up supplies; and
p. Active failures of control systems – working but not doing what was intended,

24. 27. 7 Hybrid electrical power system failure modes identified through the FMEA that could impact the safe operation and performance of any component of the system (source/store/consumer/combination/distribution system/energy management) are to be notified to, and acknowledged by, the party accountable for the safety of the component through an auditable process.

24. 27. 8 Component failure modes that could impact the safe operation and performance of the hybrid electrical power system are to be notified to, and acknowledged by, the hybrid electrical power system integrator through an auditable process.

24. 27. 9 For **Hybrid Power (+)** notation FMEAs for each of the key components of the system may be requested by ACS in support of the system FMEA.

24. 28 Power system development and integration - Operating instructions

24. 28. 1 Operating Manuals are to be provided on board and submitted for information where requested by ACS. The manuals are to include, but not be limited to, the following information:

a. Particulars and a description of the systems;
b. Operating instructions for the equipment and systems (including fire isolation aspects);
c. Maintenance instructions for the installed arrangements, including procedures to prevent injury from electric shock and arc flash;
d. Software configuration management procedures which are to include a list of all versions of the software installed in the system, and the settings, values of system or equipment specific configuration parameters; and
e. Output from the risk assessment processes that is necessary for the safe operation of the system under all normal and reasonably fore*See*able abnormal operating conditions.

24. 28. 2 Overall hybrid electrical power system operating instructions are to be verified by the system designer for their completeness and correctness in all operating modes and for all fore*See*able normal and abnormal operating and fault conditions. The verified instructions are to be submitted to ACS.

24. 28. 3 Consistency between the overall system instructions and those for each component of the system is to be confirmed by the system designer.

24. 28. 4 All mitigating actions arising from the FMEA that require manual intervention are to be confirmed as included in the operating instructions.

24. 28. 5 Procedures for reversionary (e.g. manual) control of the hybrid electrical power system are to be included and are to be verified during practical operation.

24. 29 Power system development and integration - Operator training

24. 29. 1 Training needs specific to the ship and necessary for its safe operation are to be identified and documented in the ship's operating manual.

24. 29. 2 For **Hybrid Power (+)** notation any ship-specific Operator training is to be verified by the system designer for its completeness and correctness in all operating modes and for all fore*See*able normal and abnormal operating and fault conditions with evidence of verification submitted to ACS.

24. 30 Power system development and integration - Through-life accountability

24. 30. 1 The activities detailed in Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.18, Power system development and integration - General to Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.29, Power system development and integration - Operator training are to be maintained throughout the whole lifecycle of a ship and are to be verified at Periodic Survey.

24. 30. 2 Proposed changes to the hybrid electrical power system including its components that may impact on system safety or dependability are to be formally reviewed and accepted by the system integrator before their incorporation with details submitted to ACS.

24. 30. 3 For **Hybrid Power (+)** notation details of incidents arising during any and all operations of the hybrid electrical power system that has, or could have, resulted in a hazardous consequence for people, platform or the environment are to be monitored.

24. 31 Verification requirements

24. 31. 1 Compliance with the requirements in Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.2, Documentation required for design review 1.2.18 is deemed to satisfy the functional requirements and performance requirements above.

24. 32 Testing and trials

24. 32. 1 Testing and trials in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 21 Testing and trials are to be carried out as applicable.

24. 32. 2 Where required by the ACS's Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships items are to be constructed under survey.

24. 32. 3 Materials are to be approved, manufactured and tested in accordance with a standard acceptable to ACS.

24. 32. 4 The fault ride-through capability of the system is to be demonstrated during practical tests on the system.

24. 32. 5 Quality of power supply testing of the system and the components is to be carried out to prove the equipment is capable of operating under the variations specified by the hybrid electrical power system integrator and accepted by ACS for all normal and reasonably fore*See*able abnormal operating conditions.

24. 32. 6 Where considered necessary by ACS, additional testing may be required.

24. 32. 7 Satisfactory operation and load testing of the hybrid electrical power system in harbour and during sea trials are to be witnessed by ACS.

24. 32. 8 Measurements are to be taken as part of the trials to verify that the installation will provide a quality of power supply in accordance with the values declared by the hybrid electrical power system integrator as described in Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.17, Transversal requirements.

24. 32. 9 For **Hybrid Power (+)** notation additional trials are to be carried out to:

a. Verify that the system delivers the determined levels of performance as described in Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.5 Hybrid electrical power system performance - System performance targets;
b. Verify that the system fulfils the redundancy principles defined by the hybrid electrical power system integrator as described in Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.6, Hybrid electrical power system performance - Dependability principles;
c. Verify the correct operation of the additional energy management functionality described in Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.16, Hybrid electrical power system components - Energy management;
d. Verify that the system performs in accordance with its simulation(s) as described in Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.23, Power system development and integration - Energy flows and Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.24, Power system development and integration - Power system analysis; and

Verify the findings of the FMEA analysis detailed in Pt 6, Ch 2, 24.27 Power system development and integration - System Failure Modes and Effects Analysis (FMEA) and the response of the system to simulated failures.

PART

6

CHAPTER 3 Refrigerated Cargo Installations

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General requirements**		**2866**
	1. 1	Application	2866
	1. 2	Plans and particulars	2866
	1. 3	Materials	2868
	1. 4	Equipment to be constructed under survey	2868
	1. 5	Type approved equipment	2868
	1. 6	Notation and temperature conditions	2869
	1. 7	Novel arrangements and design	2869
	1. 8	Heat balance tests	2869
	1. 9	Controlled atmosphere (CA) systems	2869
	1. 10	Spare gear and refrigerant charge	2869
SECTION 2	**Design criteria**		**2870**
	2. 1	General	2870
	2. 2	Refrigerants and classes of pipes	2870
	2. 3	Refrigeration units	2871
	2. 4	Refrigeration capacity	2871
	2. 5	Design pressures	2872
	2. 6	Insulation	2873
SECTION 3	**Refrigerating machinery and refrigerant storage compartments**		**2874**
	3. 1	General	2874
	3. 2	Arrangements for compartments housing machinery using ammonia	2874
	3. 3	Gas storage compartments	2876
	3. 4	Compartments housing carbon dioxide containing equipment	2876
SECTION 4	**Refrigeration plant, pipes, valves and fittings**		**2877**
	4. 1	General requirements for refrigerating compressors	2877
	4. 2	Reciprocating compressors	2878

4. 3 Screw compressors 2880
4. 4 Pressure vessels and heat exchangers 2880
4. 5 Condensers, oil coolers and evaporators 2881
4. 6 Liquid receivers 2881
4. 7 Oil separators 2881
4. 8 Air coolers and cooling grids 2882
4. 9 Refrigerant pumps 2882
4. 10 Condenser cooling water pumps 2882
4. 11 Piping systems 2883
4. 12 Joints 2884
4. 13 Liquid level indicators 2884
4. 14 Automatic expansion valves 2884
4. 15 Overpressure protection devices 2884
4. 16 Filters, driers and moisture indicators 2887
4. 17 Purging devices 2887
4. 18 Piping in way of refrigerated spaces 2887
4. 19 Drainage from refrigerated spaces 2887
4. 20 Corrosion protection of metal fixtures 2888
4. 21 Pressure testing at manufacturers' works 2888
4. 22 Pressure test after installation on board ship 2888

SECTION 5 Refrigeration plant, pipes, valves and fittings 2890

5. 1 General 2890
5. 2 Ammonia vapour detection and alarm equipment 2890

SECTION 6 Electrical installation 2891

6. 1 General 2891
6. 2 Electrical equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres 2891

SECTION 7 Instrumentation, control, alarm, safety and monitoring systems 2892

7. 1 Instrumentation 2892
7. 2 Control, alarm and safety systems 2892
7. 3 emperature monitoring and recording 2893

SECTION 8 Personnel safety equipment and systems 2895

8. 1 Personnel safety equipment 2895
8. 2 Personnel warning systems 2895

SECTION 9 Refrigerated cargo spaces 2897

9. 1 Airtightness of refrigerated spaces 2897
9. 2 Insulation systems 2897

9. 3 Access plugs and panels 2898
9. 4 Air circulation and distribution 2899
9. 5 Air refreshing arrangements 2899
9. 6 Heating arrangements for fruit cargoes 2899
SECTION 10 Container ships fitted with refrigerating plant to supply cooled air to insulated containers in holds 2900
10. 1 General 2900
10. 2 Additional information and plans 2900
10. 3 Air coolers 2900
10. 4 Air duct systems 2901
10. 5 Duct air leakage and distribution tests 2901
10. 6 Cell air-conditioning arrangements 2901
SECTION 11 Acceptance trials 2902
11. 1 Tests after completion 2902
11. 2 Thermographic survey 2902
11. 3 Acceptance tests 2902
11. 4 Sea trials 2903
11. 5 Reporting of tests 2903

PART

6

CHAPTER 3 Refrigerated Cargo Installations

LIST OF TABLES

Table 3. 2. 1: Primary refrigerants and their class of pipe 2870
Table 3. 2. 2: Pressure limits 2872
Table 3. 4. 1: Angle between cylinders 2879
Table 3. 4. 2: Test pressure 2888

PART

6

CHAPTER 3 Refrigerated Cargo Installations

SECTION 1 General requirements

1. 1 Application

1. 1. 1 The requirements of this Chapter apply to the refrigerated cargo installations of refrigerated cargo ships, refrigerated container ships, fish factory ships, fishing vessels, fruit juice carriers, and the reliquefaction/refrigerating plant of liquefied gas carriers and chemical carriers or tankers, where an **RMC** notation is requested.

1. 1. 2 Ships with refrigerated cargo installations which are approved, installed and tested in accordance with these requirements will be eligible for the applicable class notation specified in Pt 1, Ch 2 Classification Regulations.

1. 1. 3

1. 1. 4 The requirements for the refrigeration equipment and systems necessary for provision stores and air conditioning are specified in Pt 7, Ch 15 Refrigeration Systems and Equipment Serving Provision Stores and Air-Conditioning Installations.

1. 2 Plans and particulars

1. 2. 1 The following plans and particulars, as applicable, and any others which may be specially requested for the **refrigerating plant and systems**, are to be submitted in triplicate for approval, before construction is commenced:

a. Schematic plans, including full particulars of piping and instrumentations, for:
   i. primary and secondary refrigeration systems;
   ii. air cooler defrosting arrangements;
   iii. gas reliquefaction systems; and
   iv. condenser cooling water systems.

b. Detailed dimensioned plans and material specifications for:
   i. reciprocating compressor crankshaft and crankcase, where exposed to refrigerant pressure;
   ii. rotary-type compressor rotors and casing;
   iii. condensers shell and tube and plate type;
   iv. evaporators shell and tube and plate type;
   v. air coolers;
   vi. arrangement of air cooling pipe grids and construction method;
   vii. liquid receivers;
   viii. oil separators; and
   ix. any other pressure vessels, *See* Pt 5, Ch 11, 1.6 Plans 1.6.1.

a. General arrangement of refrigerating machinery compartment in elevation and plan, showing location and arrangement of the plant, ventilation details and location of temperature sensors and vapour detectors.

c. Details of automatic controls, alarms and safety systems, *See* Pt 6, Ch 3, 1.1 Application.
d. Details of level indicators.
e. Where provision is made for the manufacture and/or storage of inert gas in liquid form, details of the storage vessel insulation arrangements and the reliquefaction equipment and piping system are to be submitted.
f. Capacity calculations for pressure relief valves and/or bursting discs, and discharge pipe pressure drop calculations, *See* Pt 6, Ch 3, 4.15 Overpressure protection devices 4.15.5 to Pt 6, Ch 3, 4.15 Overpressure protection devices 4.15.21.
g. Programme of tests to be conducted on completion of the installation, *See* Pt 6, Ch 3, 11 Acceptance trials.

1. 2. 2 The following plans and particulars, as applicable, and any others which may be specially requested for **refrigerated cargo spaces**, are to be submitted in triplicate for approval, before work is commenced:

a. Specification of proposed insulation envelope system, including physical, thermal and fire properties.
b. General arrangement of insulated refrigerated spaces in elevation and plan.
i. The plans are to be to a scale adequate for the measurement of the external surfaces and the deck and bulkhead edges.
ii. Dimensions and spacing of frames, beams and stiffeners, and details of other steel work intruding into the insulation and within the spaces, are to be shown.
iii. Fuel oil and liquid cargo tanks adjacent to or below the refrigerated spaces are to be shown, and whether heating arrangements are provided for such tanks are to be indicated.
iv. Ventilating and air-conditioning trunks, and ducts passing through refrigerated spaces are to be shown.
v. The plans are to include a diagram showing the position of the spaces in relation to other parts of the ship if this is not otherwise apparent.
c. Plans showing:
i. the thicknesses and methods of attachment of the insulation and linings on all surfaces including girders, hatch coamings and pillars; and
ii. details of prefabricated panels and their fixings, vapour barriers, insulated doors and hatch access, bilge and manhole plugs and their frames.
d. Methods of attachment of air cooling grids (if fitted) are to be indicated.
e. Size and position of refrigerated space pressure equalising devices, where fitted, *See* Pt 6, Ch 3, 9.2 Insulation systems 9.2.12 and Pt 6, Ch 3, 9.2 Insulation systems 9.2.13.
f. Arrangements of the drainage system, and sounding and air pipes that pass through the refrigerated spaces.
g. Arrangements of air ducts and distribution systems within the refrigerated spaces (including method of cooling spaces within hatch coamings), and air cooler spaces showing location of the coolers and their fans and drive motors.
h. Details of temperature indicating, and recording and sensing equipment, and arrangement of sensors within the refrigerated spaces.

1. 2. 3 Single copies of the following plans and particulars are to be submitted:

- ACS Data Sheet for refrigerated cargo installations (ACS Form 3905).
- Specification of proposed refrigerating system and auxiliary equipment, including the refrigerating capacities of the compressors, condensers, evaporators and air coolers.
- Heat load calculations at all design operating conditions justifying the refrigerating capacity which is to be installed.

1. 3 Materials

1. 3. 1 Steel plating used in ship construction is to be of an appropriate grade corresponding to the proposed temperature notation, *See* Pt 3, Ch 2, 2.2 Refrigerated spaces.

1. 3. 2 Materials used in the construction of the refrigerating equipment and associated systems are to be generally manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials.

1. 3. 3 Where it is proposed to use materials other than those specified in the Rules for Materials, details of the chemical compositions, heat treatment and mechanical properties are to be submitted for approval. In such cases the values of the mechanical properties used for deriving the allowable stress are to be subject to agreement with ACS.

1. 3. 4 All materials used in refrigerating equipment and systems are to be suitable for use with the selected refrigerants. This includes joints, sealing materials and lubricants. For example, the following materials and refrigerants are not to be combined:

- Copper with ammonia.
- Magnesium with fluorinated hydrocarbons.
- Zinc with ammonia or fluorinated hydrocarbons.

1. 3. 5 For ammonia systems, the condensers/evaporators are to be manufactured in titanium or a suitable grade of stainless steel.

1. 4 Equipment to be constructed under survey

1. 4. 1 All major items of equipment are to be surveyed at the manufacturer's works. The workmanship is to be to the Surveyor's satisfaction and the Surveyor is to be satisfied that the components are suitable for the intended purpose and duty. Examples of such units are:

- Crankshafts, crankcases, rotor shafts and casings for all compressors.
- Condensers.
- Evaporators (secondary refrigerant coolers).
- Air coolers.
- Pressure vessels (e.g. liquid receivers, surge drums, suction separators, intercoolers, oil separators).
- Cooling water pumps for condensers.
- Valves and other components intended for installation in pressure piping systems having a maximum working pressure greater than 0.7 MPa.
- Thermal insulating panels (factory made).

1. 5 Type approved equipment

1. 5. 1 Where it is proposed to use components (e.g. compressors, condensers, oil separators) which have valid ACS Type Approval or General Approval Certificates, the types and model numbers of the components are to be stated. Plans of components that have been so approved need not be re-submitted.

1. 6 Notation and temperature conditions

1. 6. 1 The class notation assigned will state the minimum temperature or a temperature range approved by the Committee for the installation with the maximum sea temperature stated, e.g. `✠ ACS RMC to maintain temperature(s) of minus 29°C to plus 14°C with sea temperature plus 32°C maximum'.

1. 6. 2 For refrigerated installations aboard container ships with approved refrigerating plant and arrangements to supply refrigerated air through ducting to insulated containers, the class notation assigned will additionally specify the maximum number and characteristics of the containers for which the plant is approved, e.g. `to supply refrigerated air at temperatures of minus 25°C to plus 14°C to 800 certified insulated containers with an average thermal transmittance per container of 27 W/K with sea temperature plus 32°C maximum'.

1. 6. 3 For reliquefaction or refrigerating plants aboard liquefied gas carriers, the notation assigned will state the minimum cargo temperature for which the installation is approved, unless otherwise qualified, *See ACS III.3 Class notation (refrigerated installations)* of the Rules for Ships for Liquefied Gases.

1. 6. 4 On application from an Owner, consideration will be given by the Committee to an alternative temperature notation being assigned to that appearing in the *Register Book*.

1. 7 Novel arrangements and design

1. 7. 1 Where the proposed construction of the refrigerating plant or refrigerated spaces or chambers is novel in design or involves the use of unusual material, special tests may be required, and a suitable class notation may be assigned when the Committee considers this necessary.

1. 8 Heat balance tests

1. 8. 1 A heat balance test will be required as prescribed in Pt 6, Ch 3, 11 Acceptance trials on a classed installation, or one being considered for reclassification, when extensive repairs or alterations have been carried out, or when the Surveyors consider that an amended temperature condition should be assigned.

1. 9 Controlled atmosphere (CA) systems

1. 9. 1 Where it is intended to install a CA system on a vessel intended for classification, the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 1 Controlled Atmosphere Systems are to be complied with.

1. 9. 2 Where a **CA** notation is requested by an Owner, it is a prerequisite that the refrigeration installation be assigned an **RMC** notation.

1. 10 Spare gear and refrigerant charge

1. 10. 1 It is recommended that adequate spares, together with the tools necessary for maintenance, or repair, be carried. The spares are to be determined by the Owner according to the design and intended service. The maintenance of the spares is the responsibility of the Owner.

1. 10. 2 For systems complying with Pt 6, Ch 3, 2.5 Design pressures 2.5.6 sufficient carbon dioxide is to be carried on board to allow the refrigeration system to be fully recharged. In addition, adequate reserve supplies of refrigerant are to be carried for maintenance purposes. The replacement refrigerant is to be stored in containers complying with Pt 6, Ch 3, 3.3 Gas storage compartments 3.3.5.

PART

6

CHAPTER 3 **Refrigerated Cargo Installations**

SECTION 2 **Design criteria**

2. 1 General

2. 1. 1 The proposed refrigerating plant, insulation and refrigerants are to be suitable for achieving the designed notation temperature. The refrigerating machinery and all components are to operate satisfactorily under the conditions listed in Table 1. 3. 1: Ambient operating conditions in Pt 5, Ch 1 General Requirements for the Design and Construction of Machinery.

2. 1. 2 The properties of steel materials used in refrigerated holds are to be suitable for the proposed notation temperature.

2. 2 Refrigerants and classes of pipes

2. 2. 1 These Rules are applicable to the primary refrigerants in Table 3. 2. 1: Primary refrigerants and their class of pipe.

2. 2. 2 Attention is to be given to any statutory requirements, regarding the use of refrigerants, of the National Authority of the country in which the ship is to be registered.

Table 3. 2. 1: Primary refrigerants and their class of pipe

Refrigerant	Type	Composition	Class of Pipe		
			Class I	Class II	Class III
R–717 (Ammonia)	NH_3	-	X	-	-
R–22	HCFC	-	-	X	-
R-290 (Propane)	HC	-	-	X	
R-600a (Isobutane)	HC	-	-	X	-
R-134a	HFC	-	-	-	X
R-407C	Blend	R-32, R-125, R-134a	-	X	-
R-410A	Blend	R-32, R-125	-	X	-
R-507A	Blend	R-125, R-143a	-	X	-
R-404A	Blend	R-134a, R-125, R-143a	-	X	-
R-744 (Carbon Dioxide)	CO_2	-	*See* Pt 6, Ch 3, 2.5 Design pressures 2.5.6		

Note *1.* HCFC - Hydrochlorofluorocarbon.

Note *2.* HFC - Hydrofluorocarbons.

Note *3.* HC – Hydrocarbon.

Note *4.* In view of increasing world-wide restrictive legislation and phasing out of the refrigerants R-22, it is recommended that this refrigerant should not be used in any new installation.

Note *5.* Although ozone depleting and global warming potentials are not included in these Rules for Classification, these effects are important and need to be considered when selecting the refrigerant for a particular application.

2. 2. 3 Within the parameters of pressures, temperatures, toxic nature and flammability, the class of pipe to be used with various refrigerants is shown in Table 3. 2. 1: Primary refrigerants and their class of pipe.

2. 2. 4 Design conditions as applicable to the classes of pipes are defined in Pt 5, Ch 12, 1.5 Design temperature.

2. 2. 5 The materials of Class I and Class II piping systems are to be manufactured at a works approved by ACS and tested in accordance with the appropriate requirements of Rules for Materials. Particular attention is drawn to Ch 6, 4 Ferritic steel pressure pipes for low temperature service, of the Rules for Materials, where testing requirements for pipes used for low temperature service are given.

2. 2. 6 The materials of Class III piping system are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of acceptable National Specifications. The manufacturer's test certificate will be acceptable and is to be provided for each consignment of materials.

2. 2. 7 Particulars of refrigerating systems using refrigerants other than those listed will be given special consideration.

2. 3 Refrigeration units

2. 3. 1 A refrigerating unit is considered to comprise a compressor, its driving motor and one condenser. Where a secondary refrigerant, such as brine, is employed, the unit is also to include an evaporator (secondary refrigerant cooler) and a brine pump.

2. 3. 2 Two or more compressors driven by a single motor, or having only one condenser or evaporator (secondary refrigerant cooler) are to be regarded as one unit.

2. 3. 3 The refrigerating units of a classed cargo installation are to be completely independent of any refrigerating machinery associated with air-conditioning plant, or any domestic refrigerated installation, or any process plant, unless full details of any proposal have been submitted and approved.

2. 4 Refrigeration capacity

2. 4. 1 The refrigeration capacity provided is to be sufficient to maintain the temperatures specified in the class notation when operating 24 hours per day with one unit on standby. The plant is to be able to cool down a complete cargo to its carrying temperature within the time specified by the manufacturer. The standby unit may be considered as an operating unit during the cooling down period of a non-precooled cargo. In order to compensate for deterioration of machinery and insulation over the life of the installation, the equipment is to be designed to have at least five per cent excess capacity over that required for maximum design output.

2. 4. 2 The proposals of both machinery and insulating contractors will be evaluated by ACS in determining the theoretical capabilities of the equipment to maintain the duty temperatures. ACS

will advise the contractors after appraisal of the specification and plans if it is considered that additional refrigeration or insulating effect is required, but the temperature assigned on completion of the capacity heat balance test will be determined from the actual results of the test.

2. 4. 3 Where the units are not connected in common to all refrigerated chambers, the equipment serving each group of chambers is to comply with Pt 6, Ch 3, 2.4 Refrigeration capacity 2.4.1.

2. 4. 4 In the case of installations having a large number of small units arranged to serve individual chambers or groups of chambers, the question of standby capacity will be specially considered.

2. 4. 5 Where only two refrigerating units are fitted, the working parts are to be interchangeable.

2. 4. 6 Where a refrigerating plant is provided for sub-cooling the liquid refrigerant of other units, but is not arranged for cooling the cargo chambers independently, it will not be regarded as a unit.

2. 5 Design pressures

2. 5. 1 The design pressure of the system will be regarded as equal to its maximum working pressure.

2. 5. 2 The maximum working pressure is the maximum permissible pressure within the system (or part system) in operation or at rest. No relief valve is to be set to a pressure higher than the maximum working pressure.

2. 5. 3 The design pressure of the low pressure side of the system is to be the saturated vapour pressure of the refrigerant at plus 46°C. Due regard is to be taken of defrosting arrangements which may cause a higher pressure to be imposed on the low pressure system.

2. 5. 4 The minimum design pressure of the high pressure side of the system (P_{dh}), is to be $1.11 \times P_b$, where P_b is an allowance for the compressor high pressure cut-out. P_b is to be at least equal to $1.11 \times P_a$, where P_a is the condenser working pressure, when operating in tropical zones and equates to the saturation pressure at 46°C.

2. 5. 5 Design pressures (MPa g) applicable to refrigerants are to be not less than the values given in Table 3. 2. 2: Pressure limits when condensers are sea-water cooled. The design pressure for other refrigerants and condensing arrangements is to be agreed with ACS.

2. 5. 6 Due to the low critical temperature of carbon dioxide it is inappropriate to determine the design pressure in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 3, 2.5 Design pressures 2.5.3. The proposed design pressure for a carbon dioxide system is to be stated, taking account of the maximum working pressure and the maximum pressure at rest conditions. Where the maximum pressure at rest condition is maintained by the fitting of a supplementary refrigeration unit, condensing the vapour in a holding vessel, supporting calculation is to be provided to show that this can be undertaken with a local ambient temperature of 45°C. The holding vessel is to be thermally insulated to prevent the operation of the relief devices within a 24 hour period after stopping the supplementary refrigeration unit at an ambient temperature of 45°C and an initial pressure equal to the starting pressure of the refrigeration unit. Pt 6, Ch 3, 2.5 Design pressures 2.5.7

2. 5. 7 Where a carbon dioxide system is designed for hot gas defrosting, due regard is to be given to the possibility of a higher pressure being imposed on the low pressure system. The design pressure for this section of the system shall be 10% above the maximum pressure experienced during defrosting.

Table 3. 2. 2: Pressure limits

Refrigerant	Pressure (MPa g)	
	High	Low
R-717	2.12	1.72
R-22	2.06	1.67
R-290	1.81	1.47
R-600a	0.64	0.52

R-134a	1.34	1.09
R-407C	2.35	1.90
R-410A	3.314	2.99
R-507A	2.53	2.05
R-404A	2.48	2.01
R-744	*See* Pt 6, Ch 3, 2.5 Design pressures 2.5.6	

2. 6 Insulation

2. 6. 1 Properties of materials used for thermal insulation are to be verified against known standards for the following parameters, as applicable, to ensure that they are adequate for the intended service. The test results are to be made available to ACS for approval:

- Closed cell content.
- Density.
- Mechanical properties.
- Thermal expansion.
- Abrasion.
- Cohesion.
- Thermal conductivity.
- Resistance to fire and flame spread.
- Ageing.
- Bonding (adhesive and cohesive strength).

2. 6. 2 Where the *in situ* foam type of insulation is proposed, full details of the process are to be submitted for approval.

2. 6. 3 Where applicable, having regard to their location and environmental conditions, insulation materials are to be:

- suitably resistant to fire;
- suitably resistant to the spreading of flame;
- adequately protected against penetration of water vapour; and
- adequately protected against mechanical damage.

PART

6

CHAPTER 3 **Refrigerated Cargo Installations**

SECTION 3 **Refrigerating machinery and refrigerant storage compartments**

3. 1 General

3. 1. 1 Refrigerating machinery is to be located in a well ventilated compartment. In general, the arrangements are to be such that all components of the refrigerating machinery can be readily opened up for inspection or replacement. Space is to be provided for the withdrawal and renewal of the tubes in `shell-and-tube' type evaporators (brine coolers) and condensers. Proposals for alternative arrangements are to be submitted for consideration. *See* Pt 6, Ch 3, 3.2, Arrangements for compartments housing machinery using ammonia for refrigerating machinery using ammonia.

3. 1. 2 Refrigerating machinery using toxic and/or flammable refrigerants is to be located outside the main machinery space in a separate gastight compartment.

3. 1. 3 Where the refrigerating machinery is located in a separate gastight compartment, outside the main machinery space, this compartment is to be equipped with effective mechanical ventilation to provide 30 air changes per hour based upon the total volume of the space. The mechanical ventilation is to have two main controls, one of which is to be operable from a place outside the compartment.

3. 1. 4 Refrigerating machinery using non-toxic and non-flammable refrigerants will not, in general, be required to be located in a separate compartment outside the main machinery space.

3. 1. 5 Openings for pipes, electrical cables and other fittings in the bulkheads and deck are to be fitted with gastight seals.

3. 1. 6 Ammonia piping is not to pass through accommodation spaces.

3. 2 Arrangements for compartments housing machinery using ammonia

3. 2. 1 Where ammonia refrigerant is used, the refrigerating machinery shall be installed in a dedicated gastight compartment. *See also* Pt 6, Ch 3, 3.2 Arrangements for compartments housing machinery using ammonia 3.2.9.

3. 2. 2 The compartment containing ammonia refrigerating machinery and any access ways are to be provided with independent mechanical ventilation capable of:

- removing the heat generated by the equipment installed in the compartment;
- maintaining the atmosphere in the compartment at acceptable vapour threshold levels under normal operating conditions; and
- disposing of ammonia vapour safely and quickly in the event of a major leakage.

3. 2. 3 The ventilation system is to be of the negative pressure type where abnormal stoppages of the extraction fans activate an audible and visual alarm.

3. 2. 4 Compartments containing ammonia refrigerating machinery, including process vessels, are to be provided with:

- a negative ventilation system, independent of ventilation systems serving other spaces, having a capacity of not less than 30 air changes per hour based upon the total volume of the space. Other suitable arrangements which ensure an equivalent effectiveness may be considered;
- fresh air inlets, located at a low level in the machinery compartment and arranged so as to provide a supply of fresh air and to minimise the possibility of re-cycling the exhaust air from the outlet;
- exhaust outlets, located at a high level and arranged so as to promote good air distribution throughout the compartment;
- a fixed ammonia detector system with alarms inside and outside the compartment;
- water screens above all access doors, operable manually from outside the compartment in all ambient conditions;
- an independent bilge system;
- where the charge is greater than 50 kg, emergency body shower and eye wash facilities shall be installed locally outside the compartment. The water for the shower is to be thermostatically controlled so as to avoid low temperature shock.

3. 2. 5 Compartments are to have at least two access doors, opening outwards, one of which is to be an emergency exit giving direct access to the open deck. The doors are to be fitted with an easily operated opening mechanism to facilitate rapid escape in an emergency. In the case of small compartments where more than one door would be impractical, the emergency exit only is to be provided.

3. 2. 6 At least two sets of self-contained breathing apparatus and protective clothing are to be provided, readily available in the vicinity of the compartment but external to the area of risk. *See* Pt 6, Ch 3, 8.1 Personnel safety equipment 8.1.4.

3. 2. 7 The location of the exhaust duct, from the compartment or area, is to be free from obstruction and be such as not to cause danger. Where practicable, they are to be 10 m, where practicable, in the horizontal direction from other ventilation intakes and openings to accommodation and other enclosed areas, and at least 2 m above the surrounding deck.

3. 2. 8 Ventilation fans are not to produce a source of vapour ignition in either the ventilated compartment/area or ventilation system. Ventilation fans and fan ducts, in way of fans only, are to be of non-sparking construction.

3. 2. 9 In the case of ammonia plants on fishing ships under 55 m overall length, or ammonia plants with a charge of ammonia not greater than 25 kg, the refrigerating machinery may be located in the main machinery space provided it complies with the following requirements:

- The entrance to the machinery space is properly illuminated and marked and has warning signs permanently posted.
- The area where the ammonia machinery is installed is served by a hood with a negative ventilation system, so as not to permit any leakage of ammonia dissipating into other areas.
- A water spray system is provided for the area.
- Coamings, of not less than 150 mm in height, are installed around the ammonia machinery area.
- A fixed ammonia detector system with alarms inside and outside the main machinery space is provided.

- Means are provided for stopping the ammonia compressor prime movers from a position outside the machinery space.
- At least two sets of self-contained breathing apparatus and protective clothing are to be provided readily available in the vicinity of the compartment but external to the area of risk. *See* Pt 6, Ch 3, 8.1 Personnel safety equipment 8.1.4.
- Air intakes of other machinery are located away from the ammonia machinery area as far as is practicable.

3. 3 Gas storage compartments

3. 3. 1 Portable steel cylinders containing reserve supplies of refrigerant are to be stored in a well ventilated compartment reserved solely for this purpose.

3. 3. 2 The compartment is to be provided with a mechanical ventilation system providing 10 air changes per hour and is to have at least one door opening outwards giving direct access to open deck.

3. 3. 3 Bulk storage tanks holding more than 150 kg of replacement carbon dioxide are to be located in a separate compartment. The compartment is to be provided with a mechanical ventilation system having a minimum capacity of 6 air changes per hour. The ventilation system exhaust ducting is to remove air from the base of the compartment. The compartment is to be fitted with a gas tight access door opening outward.

3. 3. 4 The compartment is to be provided with a refrigerant vapour detection system.

3. 3. 5 The compartment is to be provided with suitable water drainage arrangements not connected with the main machinery spaces.

3. 3. 6 Steel storage cylinders are to be of an approved type, supplied by the refrigerant manufacturer and are to be filled to a level suitable for an ambient temperature of plus 46°C.

3. 3. 7 The compartment is to be provided with racks to facilitate secure stowage of the cylinders.

3. 4 Compartments housing carbon dioxide containing equipment

3. 4. 1 Self closing gas tight access doors are to be provided between each compartment and the dedicated escape routes. *See* Pt 6, Ch 3, 5.1 General 5.1.5.

3. 4. 2 In compartments which are normally occupied and where the volume of ventilation required by Pt 6, Ch 3, 3.1 General 3.1.3 is not desirable, such as production areas on fishing vessels, a negative pressure ventilation system, capable of 10 air changes per hour, is required to be fitted. This ventilation system is to be automatically activated when, in the event of a leak the concentration of carbon dioxide reaches a predetermined level but in no case higher than the threshold limit value of 5.000 ppm.

PART

6

CHAPTER 3 Refrigerated Cargo Installations

SECTION 4 Refrigeration plant, pipes, valves and fittings

4. 1 General requirements for refrigerating compressors

4. 1. 1 New compressor types or developments of existing types are to be subjected to an agreed programme of type testing to complement the design appraisal and review of documentation.

4. 1. 2 Where it is proposed to treat the bearing surfaces either by local hardening or by chromium plating, then these processes are to be confined to the bearing area and not extended to the fillets. Particulars of the process are to be submitted.

4. 1. 3 Where ball or roller bearings are incorporated, they are to have a minimum life expectancy of 25 000 running hours, for the application in question.

4. 1. 4 A check valve is to be fitted to each compressor discharge.

4. 1. 5 Where off-loading devices are incorporated, arrangements are to be provided which indicate the extent of the off-loading being effected.

4. 1. 6 A pressure relief valve and/or safety disc is to be fitted between each compressor and its gas delivery stop valve in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 3, 4.15 Overpressure protection devices 4.15.5 and Pt 6, Ch 3, 4.15 Overpressure protection devices 4.15.6.

4. 1. 7 Stop valves are to be provided on compressor suctions and discharges.

4. 1. 8 Suction strainers and lubricating oil filters are to be provided and so arranged that they are easily accessible for cleaning or renewal of the filter elements, without substantial loss of refrigerant or lubricating oil.

4. 1. 9 The correct direction of rotation is to be permanently indicated.

4. 1. 10 Where any hermetic or semi-hermetic compressor has the electric motor cooled by the circulating refrigerant, the following arrangements are to be provided:

a. Refrigeration circuits are to contain no more than one hermetic or semi-hermetic compressor.
b. Every compressor motor is to be fitted with a thermal cut-out device to protect the motor against overheating.
c. In each refrigeration circuit containing a hermetic or semi-hermetic compressor, suitable arrangements shall be provided to remove debris and contaminants resulting from a motor failure. *See* Pt 6, Ch 3, 4.16 Filters, driers and moisture indicators 4.16.1.
d. The pressure envelope of any hermetic or semi-hermetic compressor exposed to the refrigerant pressure is to be designed and constructed in accordance with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 11 and Ch 17 as applicable. Plans are to be submitted for consideration as required by Pt 5, Ch 11, 1.6, Plans.

4. 2 Reciprocating compressors

4. 2. 1 The specified minimum tensile strength of castings and forgings for crankshafts is to be selected within the following general limits:

a. Carbon and carbon-manganese steel castings - 400 to 550 N/mm^2.
b. Carbon and carbon-manganese steel forgings (normalised and tempered) - 400 to 600 N/mm^2.
c. Carbon and carbon-manganese steel forgings (quenched and tempered) - not exceeding 700 N/mm^2.
d. Alloy steel castings - not exceeding 700 N/mm^2.
e. Alloy steel forgings - not exceeding 1000 N/mm^2.
f. Spheroidal or nodular graphite iron castings - 370 to 800 N/mm^2.
g. Grey iron castings - not less than 300 N/mm^2.

4. 2. 2 Where it is proposed to use materials outside the ranges specified in Pt 6, Ch 3, 4.2 Reciprocating compressors 4.2.1, details of the chemical composition, heat treatment and mechanical properties are to be submitted for approval.

4. 2. 3 Materials for components of reciprocating compressors such as crankshafts, pistons, piston rods, crank cases, etc. are to be produced at a works approved by ACS and in general to be tested in accordance with the Rules for Materials.

4. 2. 4 A fully documented fatigue strength analysis is to be submitted indicating a factor of safety of 1.5 at the design loads based on a suitable fatigue strength criteria. Alternatively, the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 3, 4.2 Reciprocating compressors 4.2.5 to Pt 6, Ch 3, 4.2 Reciprocating compressors 4.2.9 may be used.

4. 2. 5 The diameter, d, of a compressor crankshaft using one of the refrigerants detailed in Pt 6, Ch 3, 2.5, Design pressures, is to be not less than that determined by the following formula, when all cranks are located between two main bearings:

$$d = V_c \left(\frac{D^2 p Z}{7.85} \left(\frac{S}{16} + \frac{ab}{a+b} \right) \right)^{1/3} \text{ mm}$$

where

a = distance between inner edge of one main bearing and the centreline of the crankpin nearest the centre of the span, in mm

b = distance from the centreline of the same crankpin to the inner edge of the adjacent main bearing, in mm

$a + b$ = span between inner edges of main bearings, in mm

d_p = proposed minimum diameter of crankshaft, in mm

p = design pressure, in MPa g, as defined in Pt 6, Ch 3, 2.5, Design pressures

D = diameter of cylinder, in mm

S = length of stroke, in mm

V_c = 1.0 for shafts having one cylinder per crank, or

= 1.05 for 90° between adjacent cylinders on the same crankpin

= 1.18 for 60° between adjacent cylinders on the same crankpin

= 1.25 for 45° between adjacent cylinders on the same crankpin

= for the shaft and cylinder arrangements as detailed in Table 3. 4. 1: Angle between cylinders

Z = $\frac{560}{\sigma_u+160}$ for steel

Z = $\frac{700}{\sigma_u+260-0.059d_p}$ for spheroidal or nodular graphite cast iron

Z = $\frac{700}{\sigma_u+260-0.069d_p}$ for grey cast iron

σ_u = specified minimum tensile strength of crankshaft material, in N/mm^2.

4. 2. 6 Where the shaft is supported additionally by a centre bearing, the diameter is to be evaluated from the half shaft between the inner edges of the centre and outer main bearings. The diameter so found for the half shaft is to be increased by six per cent for the full length shaft diameter.

Table 3. 4. 1: Angle between cylinders

Number of crankpins	Number of cylinders per crank	Angle between cylinders, in degrees		
1 or 2	2	45	60	90
3	2	45	60	-
4	2	45	60	-
1	3	45	60	90
2	3	45	60	-
3	3	45	-	-
1	4	45	60	-
2	4	45	-	-

4. 2. 7 The dimensions of crankwebs are to be such that Bt^2 is to be not less than given by the following formulae:

= $0.4d^3$, for the web adjacent to the bearing

= $0.75d^3$, for intermediate webs where a single intermediate web is common to two adjacent crankthrows

where

B = breadth of web, in mm

d = minimum diameter of crankshaft as required by Pt 6, Ch 3, 4.2 Reciprocating compressors 4.2.5, in mm

t = axial thickness of web which is to be not less than $0.45d$ for the web adjacent to the bearing, or $0.60d$ for intermediate webs, in mm.

4. 2. 8 Fillets at the junction of crankwebs with crankpins or journals are to be machined to a radius not less than $0.05d$. Smaller fillets, but of a radius not less than $0.025d$, may be used provided the diameter of the crankpin or journal is not less than cd,

where

c = $1.1 - 2\frac{r}{d}$ but to be taken as not less than 1.0

d = minimum diameter of crankshaft as required by Pt 6, Ch 3, 4.2 Reciprocating compressors 4.2.5, in mm

r = fillet radius, in mm.

4. 2. 9 Fillets and oil holes are to be rounded to an even contour and smooth finish.

4. 2. 10 An oil level sight glass is to be fitted to the crankcase.

4. 2. 11 Compressors with cylinder bores in excess of 50 mm diameter are to be provided with arrangements to relieve high cylinder pressures such as would result from `hydraulic lock' (i.e. liquid refrigerant in the cylinders). Alternatively the provision of positive means to prevent liquid refrigerant reaching the compressor may be accepted.

4. 2. 12 The crankcases of trunk piston compressors are to be designed to withstand a pressure equal to the maximum working pressure of the system. The crankcases of compressors of the crosshead type which are substantially isolated from the refrigerant circuit may be designed for lower pressures but are to be provided with relief valves adjusted to lift at a pressure not exceeding the design pressure, and discharging to a safe place.

4. 2. 13 A crankcase heater, arranged to be energised when the compressor is stopped, is to be provided.

4. 3 Screw compressors

4. 3. 1 For screw-type compressors, the materials of the rotors and casings are to be produced, and the manufacture is to be carried out, at a works approved by ACS, and in general, they are to be tested in accordance with the Rules for general machinery forgings.

4. 3. 2 The rotor casing is to be designed for the maximum pressure to which it may be subjected, *See* Pt 6, Ch 3, 2.5, Design pressures.

4. 3. 3 Where gearing is fitted to increase the rotor speed and also to locate the rotors, the gearing is to comply with Pt 5, Ch 5 Gearing. The manufacturer's maximum allowable tolerances for clearances and backlash between mating rotors are to be stated.

4. 4 Pressure vessels and heat exchangers

4. 4. 1 The term `pressure vessel' will normally apply to receivers and heat exchangers, and does not include any of the following:

- Compressors.
- Liquid refrigerant pumps.
- Pipes and their fittings.

The use of plate heat exchangers will be specially considered on submission of plans, and special tests may be required.

4. 4. 2 Fusion welded steel pressure vessels exposed to the pressure of the refrigerants are to be constructed in accordance with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 11 Other Pressure Vessels and Pt 5, Ch 17 Requirements for Fusion Welding of Pressure Vessels and Piping. Plans are to be submitted for consideration if required by Pt 5, Ch 11, 1.6, Plans.

4. 4. 3 Where ammonia is the refrigerant, the pressure vessels are to be constructed to at least Class 2/1 requirements.

4. 4. 4 Pressure vessels for the containment of primary refrigerants for use in conventional refrigeration circuits where the pressure/saturation temperature relationship applies are not required to be low temperature impact tested unless the design temperature is lower than minus 40°C.

4. 4. 5 Pressure vessels are to be thermally insulated to an extent which will minimise condensation of moisture from the surrounding atmosphere. The insulation is to be provided with an efficient vapour barrier and adequately protected from mechanical damage. Prior to applying the insulation, the steel surfaces are to be suitably protected against corrosion.

4. 4. 6 Each pressure vessel which may contain liquid refrigerant and which is capable of being isolated is to be protected with overpressure relief devices, *See* Pt 6, Ch 3, 4.15, Overpressure protection devices.

4. 5 Condensers, oil coolers and evaporators

4. 5. 1 In order to minimise the risk of corrosion, where the refrigerant is ammonia, the material interface between the primary refrigerant and cooling water or secondary refrigerant is to be of a suitable grade of stainless steel. Carbon-manganese steel with a suitable inhibitor would also be acceptable.

4. 5. 2 Space is to be provided for the withdrawal and replacement of condenser and evaporator tubes, *See* Pt 6, Ch 3, 3.1 General 3.1.1.

4. 5. 3 Where ammonia is used as the refrigerant, the refrigerating plant is to comply with the following additional requirements:

a. Automatic air purgers are to be provided, with their discharges being led through water before venting to atmosphere.
b. The cooling water returns from sea-water cooled condensers are not to be led into the main machinery spaces.
c. Fresh water condenser cooling systems are to be provided with pH meters to activate audible and visual alarms in the event of an ammonia leak.

4. 6 Liquid receivers

4. 6. 1 Primary refrigerating systems are to be provided with liquid receivers with sufficient capacity to hold the complete refrigerant charge to prevent emission of the refrigerant to the atmosphere during servicing or repairs.

4. 6. 2 Alternatively, in systems using a secondary refrigerant, with a number of units, smaller receivers may be used provided the system includes a common storage receiver with sufficient capacity to hold at least the primary refrigerant charge from two units. The common receiver is to be provided with the necessary crossover connections to facilitate transfer of refrigerant to and from each unit in the system.

4. 7 Oil separators

4. 7. 1 Oil separators are to be provided at compressor discharges and are to be fitted with a control arrangement to enable the separated oil to be returned to the compressor crankcase. Wire gauze used in separators is to be sufficiently robust and well supported.

4. 8 Air coolers and cooling grids

4. 8. 1 Refrigerated spaces may be cooled by air coolers or cooling grids on the ceiling, bulkheads, and sides. In order to minimise the dehydration of the cargo and the frosting of the air coolers or cooling grids, the installation is to be designed to maintain the required notation temperatures with a minimum of difference between the refrigerant and space temperatures.

4. 8. 2 Individual spaces are to have a minimum of two independent air coolers, each comprising one or more fans and one or more refrigerant circuits in a single casing and with isolating valves. Alternatively, multiple circuits each with their own fan(s), in a single cooler casing may each be regarded as a separate cooler, provided stop valves are fitted so that each circuit may be isolated.

4. 8. 3 For refrigerated spaces having a net volume of 300 m^3 or less, a single cooler with one circuit will be accepted.

4. 8. 4 The refrigeration capacity of the air cooler arrangement is to be such that the notation temperature conditions can be maintained with any one independent cooler or circuit out of action. The capacities of the fans are also to be such that they can maintain the required air flow rates (*See also* Pt 6, Ch 3, 9.4 Air circulation and distribution) and uniform air temperature throughout the refrigerated spaces, when part or fully loaded with cargo, with any one cooler or fan out of action.

4. 8. 5 Air cooler fan motors are to be suitably enclosed to withstand the effects of moisture.

4. 8. 6 Means are to be provided for effectively defrosting air coolers. Air coolers are to be provided with trays of suitable depth arranged to collect all condensate. The trays are to be provided with drains at their lowest points to enable the condensate to be drained away when the refrigerated spaces are in service. Provision is to be made for the prevention of freezing of the condensate.

4. 8. 7 Air coolers are to be located such that when the refrigerated spaces are loaded with cargo, adequate space is provided for the inspection, servicing and renewal of controls, valves, fans and fan motors.

4. 8. 8 The cooling grids in each refrigerated space are to be arranged in not less than two sections, and each section is to be fitted with valves so that it can be shut off. The notation temperature conditions are to be capable of being maintained with any one section isolated. For spaces having a net volume of 300 m^3 or less, a single section will be acceptable.

4. 8. 9 Steel air cooler circuits and cooling grids are to be suitably protected against external corrosion.

4. 9 Refrigerant pumps

4. 9. 1 Pumped primary and/or secondary refrigerant systems are to have a minimum of two pumps. Each pump is to be capable of operating on all cargo chambers and maintaining full duty with any one pump out of operation.

4. 9. 2 Primary and, where appropriate, secondary refrigerant pumps are to be provided with pressure relief valves, *See* Pt 6, Ch 3, 4.15 Overpressure protection devices 4.15.13.

4. 10 Condenser cooling water pumps

4. 10. 1 At least two separate condenser cooling water pumps are to be installed. One of the pumps may be considered as a standby pump and may be used for other purposes, provided that it is of adequate capacity and its use on other services does not interfere with the supply of cooling water to the condensers.

4. 10. 2 Not less than two sea inlets are to be provided supplying sea-water to the pumps for condenser cooling. It is recommended that one of the sea inlets be provided on the port side and the other on the starboard side. The sea inlets are to be fitted in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 13, 2.6 Piping systems − Installation.

4. 10. 3 The cooling water pumps and sea inlets are to be suitably valved and cross-connected with each condenser.

4. 10. 4 Suitable spring-loaded safety valves are to be provided in each cooling water circuit, *See* Pt 6, Ch 3, 4.15 Overpressure protection devices 4.15.13.

4. 11 Piping systems

4. 11. 1 All piping, valves and fittings are to be suitable for the maximum pressure to which the system can be subjected and are to comply with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 12 Piping Design Requirements.

4. 11. 2 Pipework for Ammonia (R–717) is to comply with Class 1 requirements.

4. 11. 3 In addition to visual examination of pipe welds, non-destructive examination of pipe welds is to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of Ch 13 Requirements for Welded Construction of the Rules for Materials, to the satisfaction of the Surveyors.

4. 11. 4 All steel pipework on the low temperature part of the system is to be protected against external corrosion. Protective coatings are to be removed from pipe surfaces to a distance of not less than 50 mm either side of the joint weld preparations prior to welding. On completion of welding and testing a protective coating is to be applied.

4. 11. 5 Where brine is the secondary refrigerant, piping and tanks should not be galvanised on the brine side. If any parts of the brine system have been galvanised, the brine cooling and return tanks are to be provided with a ventilating pipe or pipes led to the atmosphere in a location where no damage will arise from the gas discharged. The ventilation pipes are to be fitted with wire gauze diaphragms which can be readily renewed.

4. 11. 6 Copper piping is to be manufactured in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 12, 3 Copper and copper alloys except in the case of small air coolers having finned pipes of sizes not greater than 19 mm outside diameter, and which have been fabricated under workshop conditions. The finned pipes may have a minimum wall thickness of 0.5 mm when used with R–22 and R–134a refrigerants.

4. 11. 7 Where the use of plastic pipe is proposed in a secondary refrigerant system (e.g. brine), it is to be in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 12, 5 Plastic pipes.

4. 11. 8 Pipelines are to have ample provision for expansion and contraction in service conditions. In general, expansion bends are to be used for this purpose. However, the use of metallic expansion bellows will be accepted provided test data is produced showing satisfactory strength and fatigue properties under the appropriate conditions.

4. 11. 9 All pipelines are to be fully supported and secured so as to prevent vibration. Flexible hoses may be used, where necessary, to prevent transmission of vibration provided the documentation in Pt 6, Ch 3, 4.11 Piping systems 4.11.8 is provided. Flexible hoses are to be of a type which has been approved by ACS, *See* Pt 5, Ch 12, 7 Flexible hoses.

4. 11. 10 Pipework, which may contain low temperature refrigerant, except within secondary refrigerant cooler rooms, is to be thermally insulated to an extent which will minimise condensation of moisture. Insulation in pre-formed sections is recommended. If *in situ* foamed insulation is employed, pre-production testing on site is to be carried out to the satisfaction of the Surveyor, using a `mock-up' representative of the system to be employed.

4. 11. 11 All pipe insulation is to be provided with an efficient vapour barrier, care being taken to ensure that it is not interrupted in way of supports, valves, etc. Also adequate protection of insulation surfaces from mechanical damage is to be provided.

4. 11. 12 Where refrigerating piping is embedded in the cargo chamber insulation, the locations of the pipe joints are to be marked on the outside of the insulation lining.

4. 12 Joints

4. 12. 1 Butt welded pipe joints are to be employed as far as practicable. Socket welded pipe joints are acceptable up to 25 mm diameter. Flanged or other joints are to be kept to a minimum and, in general, are to be restricted to connections with items of machinery or components which may have to be removed for maintenance purposes. Connections to valves are normally to be welded unless they are of a type, or in a position, which precludes *in situ* maintenance.

4. 12. 2 Pipe connections to fittings (e.g. gauge lines, level controls) which are likely to be subjected to heavy corrosion, are to be of heavy gauge construction, or be made from suitable corrosion resistant materials.

4. 13 Liquid level indicators

4. 13. 1 Where liquid level indicators of the `*See*-through' variety are used they are to be of the flat plate type incorporating glass (or equivalent material) of heat resistant grade.

4. 13. 2 All level indicators are to be provided with automatic shut-off devices and isolating valves. Plate-type sight glasses which form an integral part of the component in which they are mounted (e.g. compressor crankcases, pressure vessels) are exempt from this requirement.

4. 13. 3 All level indicators are to be suitable for the system maximum working pressure and tested accordingly.

4. 14 Automatic expansion valves

4. 14. 1 Refrigerating systems with automatic expansion valves are also to be provided with efficient hand expansion valves and the arrangement is to be such that the automatic expansion valves can be by-passed and isolated.

4. 14. 2 As an alternative, duplicate automatic expansion valves may be fitted, each valve to be capable of the required duty and operable with the other out of action.

4. 15 Overpressure protection devices

4. 15. 1 Refrigeration systems are to be provided with relief devices, but it is important to avoid circumstances which would bring about an inadvertent discharge of refrigerant to the atmosphere. The system is to be so designed that pressure due to fire conditions will be safely relieved.

4. 15. 2 Pressure relief devices are to be mounted in such a way that it is not possible to isolate them from the part of the system which they are protecting except that, where duplicated, a changeover valve may be fitted which will allow either device to be isolated for maintenance purposes without it being possible to shut off the other device at the same time.

4. 15. 3 Relief discharge is to be led to a safe place above deck away from personnel accesses and air intakes. Discharge piping should be designed to preclude ingress of water, dirt or debris which may cause the equipment to malfunction.

4. 15. 4 For ammonia systems, discharge from relief valves is to be led through water before venting to the atmosphere. Vapour detectors are to be provided in the discharge pipes to activate audible and visual alarms in the event of a leakage of ammonia.

4. 15. 5 A pressure relief valve and/or bursting disc is to be fitted between each positive displacement compressor and its gas delivery stop valve, the discharge being led to the suction side of the compressor. The flow capacity of the valve or disc is to exceed the full load compressor capacity on the particular refrigerant at the maximum potential suction pressure. For these internal relief valves, servo-operated valves will be accepted. Where the motive power for the compressor does not exceed 10 kW, the pressure relief valve and/or bursting disc may be omitted.

4. 15. 6 Compressors protected by bursting discs are to be provided with automatic shutdown in the event of high discharge temperatures.

4. 15. 7 Each compressor is to be provided with automatic shutdown in the event of high discharge pressure. For refrigeration systems where the maximum working pressure is less than or equal to 4 MPa the automatic shutdown is to operate at a pressure in excess of normal operating pressure but no greater than 0.9 of the maximum working pressure. For refrigeration systems where the maximum working pressure is greater than 4 MPa the automatic shutdown is to operate at a pressure in excess of normal operating pressure but no greater than 0.95 of the maximum working pressure.

4. 15. 8 Each pressure vessel which may contain liquid refrigerant and which is capable of being isolated by means of stop or automatic control or check valves is to be protected by two pressure relief valves or two bursting discs, or one of each, controlled by a changeover device.

4. 15. 9 Pressure vessels which are interconnected by pipework without valves, so that they cannot be isolated from each other, may be regarded as a single pressure vessel for this purpose, provided that the interconnecting pipework does not prevent effective venting of any vessel.

4. 15. 10 Omission of one of the specified relief devices and the changeover device, as required by Pt 6, Ch 3, 4.15 Overpressure protection devices 4.15.8, will be allowed where:

- vessels are of less than 300 litres internal gross volume; or
- vessels discharge into the low pressure side by means of a relief valve; or
- vessels operating using only cargo gas and, which can be independently isolated and gas freed during normal cargo operations provided that a shelf spare is carried.

4. 15. 11 Sections of systems and components which could become full of liquid between closed valves are to be provided with pressure relief devices relieving to a suitable point in the refrigerant circuit.

4. 15. 12 Refrigerant pumps are to be provided with pressure relief valves on the discharge side, which may relieve to the suction side, or to another suitable location.

4. 15. 13 Suitable spring-loaded safety valves are to be provided on the cooling liquid side of condensers and the brine side of evaporators where the pressure from any pump or expansion of the liquid in the circuit could exceed the design pressure of the system or any component forming part of the cooling system.

4. 15. 14 Relief valves are to be adjusted and bursting discs so selected that they relieve at a pressure not greater than the design pressure of the system, as defined in Pt 6, Ch 3, 2.5, Design pressures.

4. 15. 15 When satisfactorily adjusted, relief valves are to be protected against tampering or interference by a wire with a lead seal or similar arrangement.

4. 15. 16 Valves which are arranged to discharge to the low pressure side of the system are to be substantially independent of back pressure and are to be of a type which has been approved by ACS.

4. 15. 17 The minimum required discharge capacity related to air of the pressure relief device for each pressure vessel is to be determined as follows:

$$C = D L f$$

where

C = minimum required discharge capacity related to air of each relief device, in kg/s

D = outside diameter of the vessel, in metres

L = length of the vessel, in metres

f =	factor which is dependent on the refrigerant:
R–717 (Ammonia)	0.041
R-22, R-134a, R-407C	0.131
R-290 (Propane), R-600a (Isobutane)	0.082
R-410A, R-404A, R-507A	0.203
R-744 (Carbon dioxide) (when used on the low side of a cascade system)	0.082.

4. 15. 18 The rated discharge capacity of the pressure relief valves expressed in kg/s of air is to be determined in accordance with an appropriate recognised National Standard such as *ISO 5149 Mechanical Refrigeration Systems used for Cooling and Heating – Safety Requirements.*

4. 15. 19 The rated discharge capacity of a bursting disc discharging to atmosphere under critical flow conditions is to be determined by the following formula:

$$d = 85.75\sqrt{10\frac{C}{P}}\,\text{mm}$$

where

d = minimum diameter of free aperture of bursting disc, in mm

C = minimum required air equivalent discharge capacity, in kg/s, *See* Pt 6, Ch 3, 4.15 Overpressure protection devices 4.15.17

P = 1.1 × maximum working pressure, *See* Pt 6, Ch 3, 2.5, Design pressures.

4. 15. 20 The bore of the discharge pipe shall be at least the same bore as the relieving device outlet. The size of a common discharge line serving two or more pressure relieving devices which may discharge simultaneously shall be based on the sum of their outlet areas. Where discharge lines are long or where the outlets of two or more pressure relieving devices are connected into a common line, the discharge piping shall be sized such that the back pressure at full relief rate does not exceed 10% of the relief valve set pressure.

4. 15. 21 Due account is to be taken of the reaction force on a relief valve or on discharge piping during discharge and adequate support provided.

4. 15. 22 As carbon dioxide can form a solid powder at atmospheric pressure, there is a possibility that relief devices will choke if vented directly to atmosphere. The method used to guard against the formation of powder is to be submitted for consideration.

4. 15. 23 In carbon dioxide systems, overpressure protection is to be fitted to pipelines or components which can be isolated in a liquid full condition. Pressure relief devices are to be arranged such as to vent vapour at all times.

4. 15. 24 In cascade systems where carbon dioxide is used in combination with ammonia, the effects of carbon dioxide leaking into the ammonia side are to be considered. It may be desirable to design the ammonia system to either withstand the design pressure on the carbon dioxide side or have relief arrangements to safely deal with the additional vapour produced if a leak occurs.

4. 16 Filters, driers and moisture indicators

4. 16. 1 Suitable filters are to be provided in the refrigerant gas lines to compressors and in the liquid lines to refrigerant flow controls. Wire gauze used in filters is to be sufficiently robust and well-supported. A filter may be combined with the oil separator required by Pt 6, Ch 3, 4.7 Oil separators 4.7.1. Stop valves are to be provided to allow for servicing of filters. After first commissioning of the system, the filters should be examined to confirm that elements remain intact and not collapsed.

4. 16. 2 Refrigerant filters, driers and moisture indicators are to be fitted in halocarbon refrigerant systems, and the arrangement is to be such that filters and driers can be by-passed, isolated and opened up without interrupting plant operations.

4. 17 Purging devices

4. 17. 1 Where the operating pressure of the low pressure system may be below atmospheric, a purging device is to be provided, the discharge from which is to be led to a safe place above deck.

4. 18 Piping in way of refrigerated spaces

4. 18. 1 All sounding pipes, whether for compartments or tanks, which pass through refrigerated spaces or the insulation thereof, in which the temperatures contemplated are 0°C or below, are to be not less than 65 mm bore. The pipework is to be in accordance with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 12 Piping Design Requirements and Pt 5, Ch 13, 2.9 Miscellaneous requirements.

4. 18. 2 Sounding pipes to oil compartments are not to terminate within refrigerated spaces or in their air cooler spaces, or are these pipes to terminate in enclosed spaces from which access is provided to refrigerated spaces or their air cooler spaces.

4. 18. 3 All pipes, including scupper pipes, air pipes and sounding pipes that pass through refrigerated spaces are to be insulated.

4. 18. 4 Where the pipes referred to in Pt 6, Ch 3, 4.18 Piping in way of refrigerated spaces 4.18.3 pass through chambers intended for temperatures of 0°C or below, they are also to be insulated from the steel structure, except in positions where the temperature of the structure is mainly controlled by the external temperature and will normally be above freezing point. Pipes passing through a deck plate within the ship side insulation, where the deck is fully insulated below and has an insulation ribband on top, are to be attached to the deck plating. In the case of pipes adjacent to the shell plating, metallic contact between the pipes and the shell plating or frames is to be avoided so far as practicable.

4. 18. 5 The air refreshing pipes to and from refrigerated spaces need not, however, be insulated from the steelwork.

4. 19 Drainage from refrigerated spaces

4. 19. 1 Provision is to be made for the continuous drainage of the inside of all refrigerated spaces and cooler trays. The pipework is to be in accordance with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 12 Piping Design Requirements and Pt 5, Ch 13, 3.2 Cargo holds.

4. 19. 2 All drain pipes from the refrigerated spaces and cooler trays are to be fitted with liquid sealed traps, which are to be of adequate depth and readily accessible for cleaning and refilling with brine. The pipes from lower spaces situated on the tank tops are also to be fitted with bilge non-return valves.

4. 19. 3 Where drains from separate refrigerated spaces join a common main, the branch pipes are each to be provided with a liquid sealed trap.

4. 19. 4 Sluices, scuppers or drain pipes which would permit drainage from compartments outside the refrigerated spaces into the bilges of the latter are not to be fitted.

4. 19. 5 Screwed plugs or other means for blanking off scuppers, draining chambers and cooler trays are not to be fitted. If, however, it is specially desired to provide means for temporarily closing these scuppers, they may be fitted with shut-off valves.

4. 20 Corrosion protection of metal fixtures

4. 20. 1 All steel bolts, nuts, hangers, brackets and fixtures which support or secure cooling appliances, piping insulation, meat rails, linings and prefabricated insulated panels, etc. are to be suitably protected against corrosion.

4. 21 Pressure testing at manufacturers' works

4. 21. 1 Components intended for use with a primary refrigerant are to be subject to strength and leak pressure tests as detailed in Table 3. 4. 2: Test pressure.

Table 3. 4. 2: Test pressure

		Test pressure, MPa g	
Component		Strength test	Leakage test
1.	Pressure vessels	*See* Pt 5, Ch 11 Other Pressure Vessels	1.0*p*
2.	Compressor cylinders/crankcase/casing	1.5*p*	1.0*p*
3.	Valves & fittings	2.0*p*	1.0*p*
4.	Pressure piping, fabricated headers, air coolers, etc.	1.5*p*	1.0*p*
Note *p* is the design pressure as defined in Pt 6, Ch 3, 2.5, Design pressures.			

4. 21. 2 Component strength pressure tests are to be hydraulic or where suitable safety measures are taken, may be pneumatic. The latter is to be carried out with a suitable dry inert gas.

4. 21. 3 Component leakage pressure tests are to be carried out only after completion of satisfactory strength pressure tests. Pneumatic pressure is to be applied using a suitable dry inert gas.

4. 21. 4 Components for use with a secondary refrigerant or cooling water are to be hydraulically tested to 1.5 times the design pressure, but in no case less than 0.35 MPa g.

4. 22 Pressure test after installation on board ship

4. 22. 1 For primary refrigerant piping welded in place, strength pressure tests of the welds are to be carried out at a test pressure of 1.5*p*. This will normally take the form of a pneumatic test since hydraulic testing media such as water are not acceptable due to their incompatibility with the primary refrigerants and the difficulty of removing all traces from a completed system.

4. 22. 2 Pneumatic pressure tests are to be carried out using a suitable inert gas. All pneumatic tests are potentially dangerous and due precautions are to be observed.

4. 22. 3 Where pneumatic tests are prohibited by relevant authorities, the tests required by Pt 6, Ch 3, 4.22 Pressure test after installation on board ship 4.22.2 may be omitted provided non-destructive tests by ultrasonic or radiographic methods are carried out with satisfactory results on the entire circumference of all butt welds not tested in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 3, 4.11 Piping systems 4.11.3. Where ultrasonic tests have been carried out, the manufacturer is to provide the Surveyor with a signed statement confirming that ultrasonic examination has been carried out by an

approved operator and that there were no indications of defects which could be expected to have a prejudicial effect on the service performance of the piping.

4. 22. 4 After completion of the test required by Pt 6, Ch 3, 4.22 Pressure test after installation on board ship 4.22.1, Pt 6, Ch 3, 4.22 Pressure test after installation on board ship 4.22.2 or Pt 6, Ch 3, 4.22 Pressure test after installation on board ship 4.22.3, a leak pressure test is to be carried out using a suitable inert gas at a pressure equal to the design pressure, in the presence of the Surveyor.

4. 22. 5 Secondary refrigerant piping welded in place is to be hydraulically tested to 1.5 times the design pressure, but in no case less than 0.35 MPa g.

PART

6

CHAPTER 3 **Refrigerated Cargo Installations**

SECTION 5 **Refrigeration plant, pipes, valves and fittings**

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 A fixed refrigerant detection system is to be provided in the refrigerating machinery compartment or space, the discharge pipes from pressure relief valves, ventilation outlet ducts, and the cargo chambers, where appropriate.

5. 1. 2 The alarm system is to comply with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems and, as a minimum requirement, the system is to activate at a low-level concentration to give warning of refrigerant leaks, and a high-level concentration corresponding to the refrigerant's safe occupational level.

5. 1. 3 Detection equipment is to be so designed that it may be readily tested and calibrated, and failure of the equipment is to initiate an alarm.

5. 1. 4 The location of the detectors is to be determined relative to the layouts of the individual compartments and machinery spaces and are to be indicated on the plan submission.

5. 1. 5 For carbon dioxide systems, spaces such as machinery rooms, storage compartments, production areas on fishing vessels and valve stations, where leakage may occur, are to be fitted with detectors. Welded pipelines passing through passageways or access ducts are not considered possible leakage areas.

5. 1. 6 Audible and visual alarms are to be activated, located both inside and outside the affected space. The alarms are to be readily identifiable and be visible and audible in all locations within the space housing the refrigeration equipment.

5. 2 Ammonia vapour detection and alarm equipment

5. 2. 1 A fixed detector system for ammonia is to comply with the requirements contained in Pt 6, Ch 3, 5.2 Ammonia vapour detection and alarm equipment 5.2.2.

5. 2. 2 The location of the detectors is to be determined relative to the layouts of the individual spaces and are to be indicated on the plan submission required by Pt 6, Ch 3, 1.2 Plans and particulars.

5. 2. 3 Ammonia vapour detectors are to be provided in the refrigeration machinery compartment, associated access ways, the exhaust duct, the ammonia store room and the discharge pipes from pressure relief valves.

5. 2. 4 Sufficient detectors are to be provided to monitor the total areas of the above spaces.

5. 2. 5 For vapour detection in relief valve discharge pipes, *See* Pt 6, Ch 3, 4.15 Overpressure protection devices 4.15.4.

5. 2. 6 Details of the refrigerant detector set points and operational philosophy are to be submitted for consideration.

PART

6

CHAPTER 3 **Refrigerated Cargo Installations**

SECTION 6 **Electrical installation**

6. 1 General

6. 1. 1 Where the refrigerating machinery is to be electrically driven, the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 2 Main source of electrical power are to be complied with, as applicable.

6. 1. 2 The generating capacity available for the refrigerated installation is to be sufficient to supply power to the installation during cooling down of a complete cargo to, and maintenance of, the notation temperature conditions in all refrigerated spaces at the Rule maximum ambient and sea-water temperatures.

6. 1. 3 Electrical equipment is not to be installed in spaces in which ammonia refrigerant is used or stored unless it is essential for operational purposes. Where electrical equipment is installed in such spaces the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 3, 6.2 Electrical equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres are to be complied with.

6. 2 Electrical equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres

6. 2. 1 Lighting fittings are to be of a certified safe-type and be arranged on at least two independent final branch circuits. Switches and protective devices are to interrupt all lines or phases and are to be located outside the space.

6. 2. 2 Where electric motors driving ventilation fans are located within the spaces, within ventilation ducts, or within three metres of ventilation openings, they are to be of a certified safe-type.

6. 2. 3 Monitoring control and alarm systems which are required to operate under conditions of ammonia leakage are to be of a certified safe-type.

6. 2. 4 Electrical equipment which is not of a certified safe-type is to de-energise automatically if the ammonia concentration within the space exceeds 1.0% by volume.

PART

6

CHAPTER 3 **Refrigerated Cargo Installations**

SECTION 7 **Instrumentation, control, alarm, safety and monitoring systems**

7. 1 Instrumentation

7. 1. 1 All compressors are to be provided with the following instrumentation and automatic shutdowns:

- Indication of suction pressure (saturated temperature), including intermediate stage, when applicable.
- Indication of discharge pressure (saturated temperature), including intermediate stage when applicable.
- Indication of lubricating oil pressure.
- Indication of cumulative running hours (screw compressors).
- Automatic shutdown in the event of low lubricating oil pressure.
- Automatic shutdown in the event of high discharge pressure, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 3, 4.15 Overpressure protection devices 4.15.7.
- Automatic shutdown in the event of low suction pressure.

7. 1. 2 The automatic safety equipment is to be designed to fail safe and the arrangements are to be such that the compressors can be operated manually with the equipment out of action, in accordance with the relevant requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems.

7. 1. 3 For installations greater than 25 kW the following instrumentation, additional to that required by Pt 6, Ch 3, 7.1 Instrumentation 7.1.1, is to be provided:

- Indication of lubricating oil temperature.
- Indication of cooling water outlet temperature.
- Indication of cumulative running hours (reciprocating compressors).
- Indication of suction and discharge temperatures.

7. 2 Control, alarm and safety systems

7. 2. 1 Where the refrigerating system is fitted with automatic or remote controls, so that under normal operating conditions no manual intervention by the operators is required, it is to be provided with the alarms required by Pt 6, Ch 3, 7.2 Control, alarm and safety systems 7.2.2 and Pt 6, Ch 3, 7.2 Control, alarm and safety systems 7.2.3 in accordance with the relevant requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems.

7. 2. 2 Alarms are to be initiated in the event of the following compressor fault conditions:

- High discharge pressure.
- Low suction pressure.
- Low oil pressure.
- High discharge temperature.
- High oil temperature.
- Motor shutdown.

7. 2. 3 Alarms are also to be initiated in the event of the following fault conditions:

- Failure of condenser cooling water pumps.
- High condenser cooling water outlet temperature.
- Failure of air cooler fans.
- High and low refrigerated air delivery temperatures.
- High secondary refrigerant temperatures.
- Failure of secondary refrigerant pump.
- Failure of air refreshing fans.
- Low level in secondary refrigerant header tank.

7. 3 emperature monitoring and recording

7. 3. 1 Temperature sensors are to be of a type which has been approved by ACS. The number of sensors and their locations are to be such as to give a true measurement of the temperatures within the refrigerated spaces and of the cooler delivery and return air temperatures.

7. 3. 2 At least one automatic recorder is to be provided for the remote monitoring and continuous recording of air temperatures within the refrigerated spaces, and delivery and return air temperatures of individual air coolers. Where only one recorder is installed, at least one sensor in each refrigerated space or in its air distribution system is to be connected to a separate remote temperature indicating instrument.

7. 3. 3 Where the equipment controlling the temperature of the air delivered from the air coolers is equipped with a temperature indicator, this indicator will be given consideration as a standby instrument.

7. 3. 4 In the case of freezer fishing vessels, where the catch is frozen on board and stored in a refrigerated space, thermometer(s) hung within each space(s) will be accepted as the standby temperature indicator, provided the space is accessible at all times.

7. 3. 5 Automatic temperature recorders and temperature indicators are to be of a type which has been approved by ACS and, where appropriate, are to be in accordance with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems. Approval will be granted on the basis of compliance with Pt 6, Ch 3, 7.3 Temperature monitoring and recording 7.3.6 and Pt 6, Ch 3, 7.3 Temperature monitoring and recording 7.3.7, together with satisfactory environmental testing in accordance with the requirements of ACS's Type Approval System. This is to include low temperature testing at the class notation minimum temperatures for any components which may be installed in environments subject to temperatures below ambient.

7. 3. 6 All temperature instrumentation is to be accurate to within ±0.15°C of the true temperature in the range minus 3°C to plus 15°C , and to ±0.3°C in other parts of the range and is to register to 0.1 of a degree Celsius.

7. 3. 7 Where the installation is intended for the carriage of frozen cargo only, the readings need only be accurate to within ±0.5°C of the true temperature, throughout the range.

7. 3. 8 A spirit-in-glass thermometer is to be carried on board for checking purposes, which is to be calibrated to a recognised National Standard.

7. 3. 9 Thermometer tubes with their flanges and covers are to be insulated from the deck plating, and on weather decks they are to be so arranged that water will not run down the tubes when temperatures are being taken.

7. 3. 10 The inside diameter of thermometer tubes is to be not less than 50 mm, and the tubes are not to be in contact with cold decks.

7. 3. 11 Where thermometer tubes pass through compartments other than those which they serve, they are to be efficiently insulated.

PART

6

CHAPTER 3 **Refrigerated Cargo Installations**

SECTION 8 **Personnel safety equipment and systems**

8. 1 Personnel safety equipment

8. 1. 1 Access doors, and hatches to the refrigerated spaces and air cooler spaces are to be provided with an external locking arrangement.

8. 1. 2 Access ways to the refrigerated space are to be designed to facilitate escape in emergencies, and the removal of stretcher-borne personnel.

8. 1. 3 Access ways and air cooler spaces are to be provided with an independent lighting system in accordance with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 5.7 Lighting circuits 5.7.2 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 5.7 Lighting circuits 5.7.4, with the means of locking the switches in the `on' position.

8. 1. 4 Where ammonia is used in refrigerating systems, the following items of safety equipment are to be provided as a minimum, and positioned in accessible protected storage (e.g. locked glass fronted cabinets) located outside the machinery compartment:

- Two sets of ammonia protective clothing (including helmet, boots and gloves).
- Two portable battery powered hand lamps (to be of certified safe-type).
- Two sets of self-contained breathing apparatus (compressed air).
- Two full face mask respirators.
- Two fire-resistant life-lines.
- Two firemen's axes.
- Two heavy duty adjustable spanners.
- Two wheel wrenches.
- Irrigation facilities or eye wash bottles containing an eye wash solution, distilled water or non-carbonated mineral water.
- Hand or foot-operated douches providing a copious supply of clean water, located outside the compartment's doors. *See* Pt 6, Ch 3, 3.2 Arrangements for compartments housing machinery using ammonia 3.2.4.

8. 2 Personnel warning systems

8. 2. 1 A system to monitor the well-being of crew members entering refrigerated spaces is to be provided.

8. 2. 2 The system is to be such that at a predetermined time, after initiation, the crew member(s) receives warning that the Surveyors must indicate their well-being by accepting the warning.

8. 2. 3 The system is to be designed and arranged such that only an authorised person has access for enabling and disabling it and setting the appropriate intervals, and such that it cannot be operated in an unauthorised manner.

8. 2. 4 It is to be possible to acknowledge the warning by means of illuminated switches situated near the access doors or hatches of each refrigerated space or chambers within the space.

8. 2. 5 In the event that the crew member(s) fails to respond and accept the warning within an agreed specified time, the system is to immediately initiate an alarm on the bridge and in the engineers' accommodation. Manual initiation of the alarm system from the refrigerated spaces is to be possible at any time.

8. 2. 6 The system is to comply with the relevant requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems.

PART

6

CHAPTER **3** **Refrigerated Cargo Installations**

SECTION **9** **Refrigerated cargo spaces**

9. 1 Airtightness of refrigerated spaces

9. 1. 1 The envelopes of individual refrigerated spaces, enclosing each temperature zone, are to be sufficiently airtight to prevent infiltration of water vapour and cross-contaminating odours. Each envelope is to be hose-tested for tightness before the insulation is installed. Alternative proposals to test with gas or air under pressure will be considered.

9. 1. 2 Hatch closing appliances, access doors, side loading doors, bilge and manhole plugs forming part of an insulated envelope are to be made airtight and, where exposed to ambient conditions, are to be provided with a double seal.

9. 1. 3 Ventilators, ducts or pipes passing through refrigerated spaces to other compartments are to be made airtight and efficiently insulated. Particular attention is to be given to insulation linings forming surfaces of air ducts. Ventilators to refrigerated spaces, if fitted, are to be provided with airtight closing appliances.

9. 1. 4 Refrigeration pipes passing through bulkheads or decks of refrigerated chambers or spaces are not to be in direct contact with the steelwork. The temperature of the ship's steelwork close to low temperature refrigeration piping must not be lower than that acceptable for the steel grade, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 2, 2.2 Refrigerated spaces. The airtightness of the bulkheads and decks is to be maintained and, where the pipes pass through watertight decks and bulkheads, the fittings and packing of the glands are to be both fire resisting and watertight.

9. 2 Insulation systems

9. 2. 1 Steelwork and fittings are to be clean and dry, and suitably coated to prevent corrosion, before insulation is applied.

9. 2. 2 *In situ* insulation and insulating panels are to be of a type that has been approved by ACS and accordingly, whenever practicable, be selected from the *List of Type Approved Products* published by ACS. A copy of the *Procedure for ACS Type Approval System* will be supplied on application. Prefabricated panels, with an organic foam core and metal or similar cladding both sides, are also to be manufactured under survey at a works approved by ACS. Organic foam materials are to be certified as self-extinguishing. All materials are to be free from odour likely to cause taint.

9. 2. 3 The thickness of insulation over all surfaces and the manner in which it is supported are to be in accordance with the approved specification and plan.

9. 2. 4 The insulation is to be efficiently packed and, where it is of slab form, the joints are to be butted closely together and staggered. Where it is intended to use a foamed *in situ* type of insulation, full details of the process are to be submitted for approval before the work commences and pre-production testing on site is to be carried out to the satisfaction of the Surveyor, using a `mock-up' representative of the system to be employed. Prefabricated panels are to be of a design such that, when erected, continuity of the insulation envelope is maintained without any gaps. Gaps

between panels or insulation slabs are to be filled with insulating material to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

9. 2. 5 The inner surfaces of insulation envelopes are to be clad with a suitable lining, such as marine grade aluminium or plywood, or equivalent material which is:

- impermeable;
- able to withstand wear and tear and the flexing of the ship's structure without fracture at the notation temperatures;
- non-corrosive, non-rotting; and
- free from odour likely to cause taint.

Where prefabricated panels are employed the outer surfaces are also to be clad with a suitable lining.

9. 2. 6 Insulation linings are to be constructed and fitted so that they are airtight and provide an effective vapour barrier. The means of joining prefabricated panels are to have sufficient mechanical strength to maintain a vapour barrier on the inner and outer faces. All joints, including corner, deck, deckhead and tank top intersections are to be sealed with a suitable flexible, water vapour resistant sealant or gasket. Special care is necessary where air ducts are embedded in the insulation, and where refrigeration pipes, air refreshing ducts, fan supports, fixtures, etc. protrude through the linings.

9. 2. 7 Hatch covers and plugs, access doors, manhole plugs, bilge limbers and plugs forming part of the insulated envelope are to be constructed of, or covered with, a suitable lining material.

9. 2. 8 Insulation linings and air screens, together with supports, are to be strong enough to withstand the loads imposed by either refrigerated or general cargo.

9. 2. 9 Successive coatings impervious to oil are to be applied before insulating the exposed plating of tank tops and bulkheads protecting tanks containing oil. The total thickness of the required coating will depend on the construction of the tank, the composition of the coating used and the method of application.

9. 2. 10 If the cargo to be loaded on the tank top insulation could cause damage to the lining, then additional protection is to be provided in way of the hatch and 0.6 m beyond. The protection may be of either a permanent or temporary nature.

9. 2. 11 Where the insulation is to support fork lift trucks, the strength of the lining and its supports is to be demonstrated. A sample of the insulation, approximately 4 m × 4 m, is to be prepared and tested by a fully loaded fork lift truck with a gross weight of 6.5 tons on one axle with a wheel pitch of 1450 mm, having single wheeled pneumatic tyres. The truck is to be driven and manoeuvred over the sample to the satisfaction of the Surveyors.

9. 2. 12 Prefabricated panel systems are to be fitted with suitable pressure equalising devices to prevent damage which may be caused by under or over pressure resulting from the defrosting of coolers, rapid changes in pressure on the inner and outer faces of the panels or rapid cooling of the chamber.

9. 2. 13 The pressure equalising devices are to be so designed as to allow the passage of air in either direction, but remain effectively closed until the pressure differential reaches a value of 10 mm water column. Heating is to be provided to protect the mechanism from freezing.

9. 3 Access plugs and panels

9. 3. 1 Insulated plugs are to be provided in the insulation where required for easy access to the bilges, bilge suction strum boxes, cooler and chamber drains and tank manhole lids. Removable panels are to be provided for access to tank air and sounding pipes and drains.

9. 3. 2 Tank top insulation in way of manholes and bilge hats is to be provided with a liquid-tight steel coaming to prevent *See*page into the insulation.

9. 3. 3 Manholes are not permitted in the bulkheads of fuel oil tanks which form part of the cargo space envelope.

9. 4 Air circulation and distribution

9. 4. 1 When frozen cargo is carried, provision is to be made for the adequate circulation of air between the frozen cargo and all the insulation lining surfaces.

9. 4. 2 When cooled cargo is carried, of a type which may generate heat or emit gas, provision is to be made for the adequate circulation of air through all the stow.

9. 4. 3 There is to be adequate air flow between cargo and cooling grids, where fitted.

9. 4. 4 The air distribution arrangements are to be such that the required circulation rate and uniform distribution can be achieved when the space is part or fully loaded with cargo. The arrangement is also to be capable of maintaining uniform air temperature throughout the space with any one fan, or air cooler, or cooling grid circuit out of action, *See* Pt 6, Ch 3, 4.8 Air coolers and cooling grids.

9. 5 Air refreshing arrangements

9. 5. 1 Where spaces are intended for the carriage of refrigerated cargoes requiring controlled ventilation, means are to be provided for air refreshening. The positions of the air inlets are to be carefully selected to minimise the possibility of contaminated air entering the spaces. Chambers or spaces are to be provided with separate inlet and discharge vents. Each vent is to have a positive airtight valve capable of closing onto a seat. It is recommended that a distance of at least 3 m is maintained between inlet and exhaust vents.

9. 6 Heating arrangements for fruit cargoes

9. 6. 1 Where the class notation includes the symbol ‡ for the carriage of fruit cargoes, facilities for heating the refrigerated spaces are to be provided to maintain the carrying temperatures when the temperatures outside the spaces are lower.

PART

6

CHAPTER 3 **Refrigerated Cargo Installations**

SECTION 10 **Container ships fitted with refrigerating plant to supply cooled air to insulated containers in holds**

10. 1 General

10. 1. 1 Classed installations designed to supply refrigerated air to insulated `porthole' containers in holds aboard container ships are to comply with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 3, 1 General requirements to Pt 6, Ch 3, 9 Refrigerated cargo spaces and Pt 6, Ch 3, 11 Acceptance trials, so far as they are applicable, and the special requirements of this Section.

10. 1. 2 The classed refrigerating installation is to include the refrigerating machinery, air coolers, supply and return air ducting, and the flexible couplings between containers and the duct system. Where the arrangements are such that cell air conditioning is essential to the carriage of the containers, the air conditioning equipment and (if fitted) the insulation of the hold, deckheads, sides and tank tops are to be included in the classification.

10. 2 Additional information and plans

10. 2. 1 In addition to those requirements detailed in Pt 6, Ch 3, 1 General requirements which are also applicable to refrigerated container ships, the following information is to be submitted before the work commences:

- Details of air coolers.
- Details of the design of ducting proposed, including joints, connections, insulation, vapour sealing and linings.
- Details of cell air conditioning arrangements and components.
- Details of couplings between ducting and containers, including operating arrangements.

10. 3 Air coolers

10. 3. 1 Air ducts supplying more than ten standard 20 ft containers or five standard 40 ft containers are to have a single air cooler with multiple circuits or two independent coolers. The individual circuits or coolers are to be provided with stop valves so that each circuit or cooler may be readily isolated.

10. 3. 2 The refrigeration capacity of the air cooler arrangement is to be such that the temperature conditions can be maintained with any one circuit or independent cooler out of action.

10. 3. 3 For air ducts supplying ten standard 20 ft containers or five standard 40 ft containers or less, a single cooler with one circuit will be acceptable.

10. 4 Air duct systems

10. 4. 1 The air ducts, together with all branches and couplings, supplying refrigerated air to insulated containers in holds, are to be made airtight. For design purposes, however, an air leakage rate of 0.5% of total volume flow at the design pressure for each duct is to be taken.

10. 4. 2 Where air ducting is insulated on the internal surfaces, provision is to be made to prevent retention of odour which may taint subsequent cargo.

10. 4. 3 Couplings are to be of a type that has been approved by ACS. Prototypes are to be tested under all operating conditions, witnessed by the Surveyors, to demonstrate that they extend, retract and separate satisfactorily from a `container end wall' at the minimum temperature condition. When operated by means of air pressure they are to be supplied with air sufficiently dry to avoid ice formation. The air supply lines are to be strength pressure tested to 1.5 × design pressure.

10. 5 Duct air leakage and distribution tests

10. 5. 1 Air leakage tests on at least 10% of ducting, selected at random, are to be carried out to the satisfaction of the Surveyors before the insulation is applied. The Surveyors may require further testing to demonstrate airtightness of ducting. The air leakage from each duct will depend on several factors and, while complete airtightness should be the objective, the air leakage rate for design purposes is not to exceed 0.5% of total volume flow at the design pressure of 250 Pa.

10. 5. 2 In the case of prefabricated ducts, the prototype is to be subjected to air distribution, heat leakage and air leakage tests. Each production duct is to be tested for air leakage and is not to exceed the prototype test results by more than five per cent. Additionally, one duct in 50 or part thereof is to be tested for heat leakage and the results are not to exceed the prototype test results by more than 10%.

10. 5. 3 In all cases when prefabricated sections are assembled on board, the tests as detailed in Pt 6, Ch 3, 10.5 Duct air leakage and distribution tests 10.5.2, are to be carried out aboard the ship.

10. 5. 4 On application from the Owner, the air leakage tests on air ducts installed aboard the ship, as detailed in Pt 6, Ch 3, 10.5 Duct air leakage and distribution tests 10.5.1, may be omitted provided that:

- the installation is designed with at least 20% surplus refrigerating capacity, or
- assignment of a temperature notation for the installation be deferred until verified by a thermal balance test to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

10. 5. 5 All ducts are to be tested for air distribution to the containers, at the manufacturer's works, by measuring the flow of air from the supply couplings while the fan is operated at full speed against the designed pressure. The air flow at each coupling is to meet the specified figure within ±5%.

10. 5. 6 Systems comprising rigid prefabricated ducts complete with coolers and fans are to be tested for air distribution at the place of manufacture. The remaining tests are to be carried out aboard the ship.

10. 6 Cell air-conditioning arrangements

10. 6. 1 The cell air-conditioning equipment and ducting, and/or insulation of the holds, deckheads, sides and tank tops, is to be such as to maintain a uniform temperature throughout the cell and to ensure the ship's steelwork is maintained above the minimum temperature acceptable for the steel grade, *See also* Pt 3, Ch 2, 2.2 Refrigerated spaces.

PART

6

CHAPTER 3 Refrigerated Cargo Installations

SECTION 11 Acceptance trials

11. 1 Tests after completion

11. 1. 1 On completion of construction, the acceptance tests prescribed in Pt 6, Ch 3, 11.3, Acceptance tests 11.3.1 are to be carried out to verify the correct functioning of the installation and its ability to maintain the lowest notation temperature conditions required for the assignment of the intended class notation. The proposed test schedules, which should include methods of testing and test facilities provided, are to be submitted for approval before these acceptance tests are started.

11. 2 Thermographic survey

11. 2. 1 The insulated envelope of refrigerated cargo ships and, where applicable, fish factory ships, fishing vessels, fruit juice carriers and container ships is to be scanned using a thermal imaging camera. The main purpose of carrying out the infra-red scan is to verify the efficiency of the insulation system.

11. 2. 2 During the course of, or prior to, the acceptance trials all inner insulated surfaces, including tank tops, bulkheads, `tween decks, insulated hatches, coamings and weather decks are to be subject to an infra-red scan.

11. 2. 3 Where internal obstructions preclude an internal scan, it is to be carried out externally.

11. 2. 4 The scan is to be conducted with the `tween deck and main holds in total darkness and with air coolers/cooling grids isolated and all heat sources disconnected. The temperature difference, cargo hold to ambient air or sea-water temperature, is to be 15 K or more.

11. 2. 5 Any deficiencies or abnormalities revealed are to be investigated and repaired to the extent considered necessary by the Surveyor.

11. 3 Acceptance tests

11. 3. 1 The acceptance tests (*See also* Pt 6, Ch 3, 11.3 Acceptance tests 11.3.2 and Pt 6, Ch 3, 11.3 Acceptance tests 11.3.3) are to comprise the following:

a. Verification of control, alarm, safety and refrigerant detection systems.
b. Test simulating failure of selected components such as compressors, fans and pumps, to verify correct functioning of alarm and systems in service.
c. Verification of accuracy, calibration and functioning of temperature control, monitoring and recording instrumentation.
d. Verification of air cooler fan outputs running at maximum speed, and air circulation rates and distribution arrangements in individual refrigerated spaces or chambers. The latter is to be undertaken firstly with all coolers in operation and secondly with any one cooler or fan out of action.

e. Verification of air refreshing and heating arrangements.
f. Verification of personnel safety devices and warning systems in refrigerated spaces.
g. Refrigeration and thermal balance tests to demonstrate the capability of the combined refrigerating plant and insulation envelope to maintain the lowest notation temperature to be assigned.
h. Refrigeration tests for refrigerated container ships carrying `porthole' type insulated containers. If the prescribed thermal balance tests cannot be carried out due to the number of insulated containers available in the shipyard being inadequate, then, alternatively, the following separate tests will be accepted:
   i. Compressor capacity test.
   ii. Duct heat leakage test on at least 20% of the insulated ducting selected at random.
   iii. Cell heat leakage test.
i. Thermographic scan to be carried out as required by Pt 6, Ch 3, 11.2 Thermographic survey.

11. 3. 2 Where a number of identical installations are constructed for the same Owner and by the same shipyard, the refrigeration and thermal balance tests required in Pt 6, Ch 3, 11.3 Acceptance tests 11.3.1.g, need only be carried out on two of the series, provided the results are satisfactory.

11. 3. 3 Where the cells of `porthole' type insulated containers are not insulated, a heat leakage test will be required on the first ship of the series only.

11. 4 Sea trials

11. 4. 1 Where the class notation includes the symbol ‡ for the carriage of fruit, or the symbol ‡ is to be assigned to a fishing vessel the following records are to be kept during the first loaded voyage:

a. **Refrigerated cargo or container ships:**
Refrigerating machinery logs and temperature records for the refrigerated cargo spaces or containers, demonstrating the installation's capability to cool down the full cargo of fruit and maintain the notation temperature conditions.

b. **Fishing vessels:**
Refrigerating machinery and freezing equipment logs and temperature records for the refrigerated cargo spaces, demonstrating the installation's capability to freeze the catch and maintain the notation temperature conditions.

11. 5 Reporting of tests

11. 5. 1 On completion of the tests prescribed in Pt 6, Ch 3, 11.1 Tests after completion, two copies of the test schedule for the refrigerated cargo installation, giving details of all recorded data and thermal heat balance results, signed by the Surveyor and Builder are to be provided. One copy is to be placed on board the ship and the other submitted to ACS.

11. 5. 2 At the end of the first loaded voyage a copy of the logs and temperature records requested in Pt 6, Ch 3, 11.4 Sea trials 11.4.1.a and Pt 6, Ch 3, 11.4 Sea trials 11.4.1.b, as applicable, signed by the ship's Chief Engineer, are to be submitted to ACS.

PART

6

CHAPTER 4

Fire Protection, Detection and Extinction Requirements

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**2906**
	1. 1	Application	2906
SECTION 2	**Fire detection, protection and extinction**		**2908**
	2. 1	General provisions	2908
	2. 2	Definitions	2908
	2. 3	Surveys and maintenance	2909
	2. 4	Requirements	2909

PART

6

CHAPTER 4 **Fire Protection, Detection and Extinction Requirements**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 4. 2. 1: General fire detection, protection and extinction requirements 2909

PART

6

CHAPTER 4 **Fire Protection, Detection and Extinction Requirements**

SECTION 1 **General**

1. 1 Application

1. 1. 1 Cargo ships of 500 gross tons or more, all passenger ships and gas and chemical tankers on international voyages, where provision is made within International Conventions, are to be provided with the fire safety measures required by the *International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea*, 1974, as amended (*SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea*). Fishing vessels of 45 m freeboard length and over are to be provided with the fire safety measures required by the Torremolinos Protocol of 1993 relating to the *Torremolinos International Convention for the Safety of Fishing Vessels*, 1977 (Torremolinos Protocol).

1. 1. 2 Cargo ships of 500 gross tons or more, all passenger ships, and gas and chemical tankers, employed on national voyages are to comply with the fire safety measures prescribed and approved by the Government of the Flag State.

1. 1. 3 It is the responsibility of the Government of the Flag State to give effect to the fire protection, detection and extinction requirements of Pt 6, Ch 4, 1.1 Application 1.1.1 and Pt 6, Ch 4, 1.1 Application 1.1.2. However, ACS will undertake to do this in cases where:

a. contracting Governments have authorised ACS to apply the requirements of *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea* or the Torremolinos Protocol and issue the appropriate certification on their behalf; or
b. the Government of the Flag State is not a signatory to *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea* or the Torremolinos Protocol; or
c. the ship or fishing vessel is to be classed for restricted or special service in national waters for which the Government of the Flag State has no national requirements. In such cases, ACS will apply the fire safety measures required by *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea* or the Torremolinos Protocol, as appropriate.

However, due consideration will be given to arrangements deemed to provide an equivalent level of fire safety, taking due cognisance of the circumstances of the restricted or special service.

1. 1. 4 Pt 6, Ch 4, 2 Fire detection, protection and extinction of this Chapter, which is within the spirit of the International Convention and Protocol requirements for ships of Convention size, is applicable to cargo ships of less than 500 gross tons (where not covered by International Conventions), fishing vessels of 12 m registered length and over but less than 45 m freeboard length, and ships not fitted with propelling machinery.

1. 1. 5 Consideration will be given to the acceptance of fire safety measures prescribed and approved by the Government of the Flag State in lieu of Pt 6, Ch 4, 1.1 Application 1.1.4.

1. 1. 6 Special consideration, consistent with the fire hazard involved, will be given to construction or arrangement features not covered by this Chapter.

1. 1. 7 Cargo ships of less than 500 gross tons intended for the carriage of dangerous goods are to comply with SOLAS 1974 as amended *Regulation 19 - Carriage of dangerous goods1*.

PART

6

CHAPTER **4** **Fire Protection, Detection and Extinction Requirements**

SECTION **2** **Fire detection, protection and extinction**

2. 1 General provisions

2. 1. 1 The provisions of these requirements, are intended to apply to new and, as far as reasonable and practicable, or as found necessary by the relevant Administration, to existing cargo ships of less than 500 gt.

2. 1. 2 It should be remembered that the *IBC Code - International Code for the Construction and Equipment of Ships Carrying Dangerous Chemicals in BulkAmended by Resolution MEPC.225(64) and 2014 IGC Code - International Code for the Construction and Equipment of Ships Carrying Liquefied Gases in Bulk* are applicable to such ships regardless of size including those of less than 500 gt.

2. 2 Definitions

2. 2. 1 The terms, used in these requirements are as defined in *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea* 1974 (as amended).

2. 2. 2 The term Gross Tonnage (gt) is as defined in IMO Resolutions A.493 (XII), calculated in accordance with the 1969 Tonnage Convention and the interim scheme applicable to ships with keels laid up to 18 July 1994 in accordance with IMO Resolution A.494 (XII).

2. 2. 3 **Service area definitions**

2. 2. 4 'Unrestricted service' means a ship engaged on international voyages.

2. 2. 5 'Restricted service' is broken down into two broad categories (a) ships operating coastal or specified operating areas (b) ships operating within protected or extended protected waters.

a. **Specified coastal service**. Service along a coast, the geographical limits of which are to be defined and for a distance out to sea generally not exceeding 20 nautical miles, unless some other distance is specified for 'coastal service' by the Administration with which the ship is registered, or by the Administration of the coast off which it is operating. A typical example might be 'Indonesian coastal service'.
Specified operating or service areas may be service between two or more ports or other geographical features, or service within a defined geographical area such as 'Red Sea Service', 'Piraeus to Thessaloniki and Islands within the Aegean Sea'.

b. **Protected water service**. Service in sheltered water adjacent to sand banks, reefs, breakwaters to other coastal features, and in sheltered water between islands.
Extended protected water service. Service in protected waters and also short distances (generally less than 15 nautical miles) beyond protected waters in 'reasonable weather'.

2. 3 Surveys and maintenance

2. 3. 1 The hull, machinery and all equipment required for safety aspects of every ship should be constructed and installed so as to be capable of being regularly maintained to ensure that they are at all times, in all respects, satisfactory for the ship's intended service.

2. 3. 2 A competent authority should arrange for appropriate surveys of the required equipment relating to fire safety aspects during construction and, at regular intervals after completion, generally as prescribed within Chapter I of *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea* (as amended). Such surveys should be carried out by the Society classing the ship or the Flag State.

2. 3. 3 The condition of the structural fire protection and fire safety related equipment shall be maintained to conform with the provisions of the requirements to ensure that the ship, in these respects, will remain fit to proceed to sea without danger to the ship or persons on board. The hull structure and machinery do not form part of these requirements but should be similarly surveyed and maintained.

2. 4 Requirements

2. 4. 1 Table 4. 2. 1: General fire detection, protection and extinction requirements details the various mimimum fire protection, detection and extinction arrangements that are required depending on the vessel's intended service area.

Table 4. 2. 1: General fire detection, protection and extinction requirements

Fire-fighting	Unrestricted	Restricted	Protected
1 FIRE PUMPS			
Ships greater than 150 gt			
Independently driven power pumps	1	1	1
Power pumps	1	1	—
Hand pumps	—	—	1
Ships less than 150 gt			
Independently driven power pumps	—	—	—
Power pumps	1	1	1
Hand pumps	1	1	—
2 FIRE HYDRANTS			
Sufficient number and so located that at least one powerful water jet can reach any normally accessible part of ship	X	X	X
3 FIRE HOSES (Length >15 m)	≥3	≥3	≥2
With couplings and nozzles			
4 FIRE NOZZLES			
Dual purpose (spray/jet) with 12 mm jet and integral shut-off	X	X	X
Jet may be reduced to 10mm and shut-off omitted for hand pump hoses			
5 PORTABLE FIRE-EXTINGUISHERS			
Accommodation and service spaces	≥3	≥3	≥2

Boiler rooms, etc.	≥2	≥2	≥2
Machinery spaces (one extinguisher per 375 kW of internal combustion engine power)	≥2 ≤6	≥2 ≤6	≥2 ≤6
Cargo pump-rooms			
(capacity 9 l. fluid or equivalent)	≥2	≥2	≥2
6 NON-PORTABLE FIRE-EXTINGUISHERS IN MACHINERY SPACES			
Ships greater than 150 gt	1	1	—
Ships greater than 350 gt	—	—	1
(capacity 45 l. fluid or equivalent)			
7 FIXED FIRE-EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS SHIPS GREATER THAN 350 gt			
Category A machinery spaces	X	X	—
Cargo pump-rooms	X	X	—
8 CARGO TANK PROTECTION			
Mobile foam appliances	X	X	X
9 FIREMAN'S OUTFIT			
Ships greater than 150 gt			
complete outfit	≥2	≥2	≥2
Ships less than 150 gt			
complete outfit	≥1	≥1	—
Fireman's axe	—	—	1
10 MEANS OF ESCAPE			
Accommodation and service spaces	2	2	2
Machinery spaces	≥1	≥1	≥1
Cargo pump-rooms	1	1	1
11 STRUCTURAL FIRE PROTECTION WHEEL HOUSE AND MACHINERY SPACES			
Separation from adjacent spaces of negligible fire risk	A-0	A-0	A-0
Separation from other adjacent spaces	A-60	A-30	A-0
Escape routes	B-0	B-0	B-0

PART

7

Other Ship Types and Systems

CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1	**Controlled Atmosphere Systems**		**2915**
	SECTION 1	General requirements	2917
	SECTION 2	Plans and documentation	2918
	SECTION 3	CA zones and adjacent spaces	2920
	SECTION 4	Gas systems	2922
	SECTION 5	Relative humidity (RH)	2924
	SECTION 6	Electrical installation	2925
	SECTION 7	Control instrumentation and alarms	2926
	SECTION 8	Safety requirements	2928
	SECTION 9	Inspection and testing on completion	2929
CHAPTER 2	**Ships with Installed Process Plant for Chemicals, Liquified Gases and Related Products**		**2931**
	SECTION 1	Introduction	2934
	SECTION 2	Class notations	2937
	SECTION 3	Plans and particulars	2939
	SECTION 4	Materials	2944
	SECTION 5	Process plant characteristics	2945
	SECTION 6	Hull construction	2946
	SECTION 7	Mechanical equipment for the process plant	2950
	SECTION 8	Boilers and other pressure vessels for the process plant	2952
	SECTION 9	Pumping and piping systems for the process plant	2954
	SECTION 10	Firing arrangements of steam boilers, fired pressure vessels, heaters, reformers, etc.	2956
	SECTION 11	Electrical equipment for the process plant	2958
	SECTION 12	Control engineering for the process plant	2959
	SECTION 13	Plant blowdown systems	2960
	SECTION 14	Plant flare gas systems	2961

SECTION 15 Supply and discharge arrangements for feedstock and product 2962
SECTION 16 Ventilation of the process plant and other spaces associated with the process plant operation 2963
SECTION 17 Gas detection 2965
SECTION 18 Fire protection, detection and extinction 2967
CHAPTER 3 Fire-fighting Ships 2969
SECTION 1 General 2971
SECTION 2 Construction 2974
SECTION 3 Fire-extinguishing 2975
SECTION 4 Fire protection 2977
SECTION 5 Lighting 2978
CHAPTER 4 Dynamic Positioning Systems 2979
SECTION 1 General 2980
SECTION 2 Class notation DP(CM) 2983
SECTION 3 Class notation DP(AM) 2987
SECTION 4 Class notation DP(AA) 2988
SECTION 5 Class notation DP(AAA) 2990
SECTION 6 Performance Capability Rating (PCR) 2992
SECTION 7 Testing 2993
CHAPTER 5 Ships Equipped for Oil Recovery Operations 2994
SECTION 1 General 2996
SECTION 2 Oil recovery 2998
SECTION 3 Ship structure 2999
SECTION 4 Machinery arrangements 3001
SECTION 5 Electrical equipment 3003
SECTION 6 Fire protection and extinction 3008
SECTION 7 Operating Manual 3010
CHAPTER 6 Arrangements for Offshore Loading 3011
SECTION 1 General 3012
SECTION 2 Arrangements 3014
SECTION 3 Positioning, monitoring and control arrangements 3015
SECTION 4 Fire protection, detection and extinction 3017
SECTION 5 Piping systems 3018
SECTION 6 Trials and testing 3020
CHAPTER 7 Title_chapter_7 3021
SECTION 1 Title_section_1 3024

CHAPTER 8 Positional Mooring and Thruster-Assisted Positional Mooring Systems 3025
SECTION 1 General 3029
SECTION 2 Environmental criteria - Forces and motions 3032
SECTION 3 Mooring system - design and analysis 3034
SECTION 4 Mooring equipment 3037
SECTION 5 Anchor winches and windlasses 3040
SECTION 6 Electrical and control equipment 3045
SECTION 7 Thruster-assisted positional mooring 3047
SECTION 8 Thruster-assisted mooring - Classification notation requirements 3048
SECTION 9 Trials 3050
CHAPTER 9 Navigational Arrangements and Integrated Bridge Systems 3051
SECTION 1 General requirements 3055
SECTION 2 Physical conditions 3058
SECTION 3 Workstations 3064
SECTION 4 Systems 3067
SECTION 5 Integrated Bridge Navigation System – IBS notation 3070
SECTION 6 Trials 3076
CHAPTER 10 Carriage of Refrigerated Containers 3077
SECTION 1 Trials 3079
SECTION 2 Plans and documentation 3082
SECTION 3 Ventilation and hold temperature 3084
SECTION 4 Electrical, including container plug-in sockets 3087
SECTION 5 Instrumentation, control and alarm systems 3089
SECTION 6 Hold access and maintenance access arrangements 3090
SECTION 7 Water cooler refrigeration units 3091
SECTION 8 Deck-stowed refrigerated containers 3092
SECTION 9 Inspection and testing on completion 3093
SECTION 10 Spare gear 3095
CHAPTER 11 Arrangements and Equipment for Environmental Protection (ECO Class Notation) 3096
SECTION 1 General requirements 3100
SECTION 2 Minimum requirements 3105
SECTION 3 Supplementary characters 3112
SECTION 4 Survey requirements 3118
CHAPTER 12 Passenger and Crew Accommodation Comfort 3120
SECTION 1 General requirements 3124

SECTION 2 Noise 3127
SECTION 3 Vibration 3132
SECTION 4 Testing 3134
SECTION 5 Noise and vibration survey reporting 3138
SECTION 6 Non-periodical survey requirements 3140
SECTION 7 Referenced Standards 3141
CHAPTER 13 On-shore Power Supplies 3142
SECTION 1 General's 3145
SECTION 2 Essential features 3148
SECTION 3 Electrical Connection 3149
SECTION 4 Electrical System 3154
SECTION 5 Control and monitoring 3158
SECTION 6 Testing, trials and surveys 3162
CHAPTER 14 Requirements for Machinery and Engineering Systems of Unconventional Design 3164
SECTION 1 Requirements for machinery and engineering systems of unconventional design 3165
CHAPTER 15 Refrigeration Systems and Equipment Serving Provision Stores and Air-Conditioning Installations 3172
SECTION 1 General requirements 3175
SECTION 2 Construction and installation 3177
SECTION 3 Refrigerating machinery and refrigerant storage compartment arrangements 3182
SECTION 4 Refrigerant detection systems 3184
SECTION 5 Control and monitoring and electrical power arrangements 3185
SECTION 6 Personnel safety equipment and systems 3187
SECTION 7 Testing and trials 3189
CHAPTER 16 Towing Winch Emergency Release Systems 3190
SECTION 1 Towing winch emergency release systems - goal-based framework 3192
SECTION 2 Towing winch emergency release systems - scope and definitions 3194
SECTION 3 Emergency release system requirements 3195
SECTION 4 Validation of requirements for emergency release systems 3197

PART

7

CHAPTER 1 Controlled Atmosphere Systems

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General requirements**		**2917**
	1. 1	General	2917
	1. 2	Novel arrangements and design	2917
	1. 3	Definitions	2917
SECTION 2	**Plans and documentation**		**2918**
	2. 1	Plans of CA zones and adjacent spaces	2918
	2. 2	Gas supply system	2918
	2. 3	Humidifiers	2918
	2. 4	Control equipment	2919
	2. 5	Electrical	2919
	2. 6	Testing	2919
SECTION 3	**CA zones and adjacent spaces**		**2920**
	3. 1	Air-tightness of CA zones	2920
	3. 2	CA zone protection	2920
	3. 3	Gas freeing of CA zones	2920
	3. 4	Ventilation of adjacent spaces	2921
SECTION 4	**Gas systems**		**2922**
	4. 1	General	2922
	4. 2	Location	2922
	4. 3	Gas supply	2922
	4. 4	Gas supply compartment ventilation and alarm	2923
SECTION 5	**Relative humidity (RH)**		**2924**
	5. 1	Humidification	2924
SECTION 6	**Electrical installation**		**2925**
	6. 1	General	2925
SECTION 7	**Control instrumentation and alarms**		**2926**

7. 1 General 2926
7. 2 Gas systems 2926
7. 3 Gas analysers and sampling 2927
7. 4 Gas sensors 2927
SECTION 8 Safety requirements 2928
8. 1 Personnel safety 2928
SECTION 9 Inspection and testing on completion 2929
9. 1 General 2929
9. 2 Gas supply and sampling systems 2929
9. 3 Air-tightness of CA zones 2929
9. 4 Gas system performance 2930
9. 5 Gas freeing 2930
9. 6 Safety, alarms and instrumentation 2930

PART

7

CHAPTER 1 Controlled Atmosphere Systems

SECTION 1 General requirements

1. 1 General

1. 1. 1 The requirements of this Chapter apply to refrigerated cargo ships where a Controlled Atmosphere **(CA)** notation is requested.

1. 1. 2 The requirements are additional to the classification requirements for refrigerated cargo installations contained in Pt 6, Ch 3 Refrigerated Cargo Installations.

1. 1. 3 Ships provided with CA systems which are approved, installed and tested in accordance with the following requirements will be eligible for the applicable class notation specified in Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.6 Class notations (refrigerated cargo installations (RMC), controlled atmosphere (CA) systems and carriage of refrigerated containers (CRC)) 2.6.2.

1. 1. 4 An example of a typical class notation on a refrigeration installation classed with ACS, fitted with a CA system built under Special Survey, would be:

✠ACS's RMC to maintain a temperature -29°C to +14°C with sea temperature 35°C maximum.

✠CA (1-12% O_2, 0-25% CO_2) RH

1. 2 Novel arrangements and design

1. 2. 1 Where the proposed construction of the CA system, or CA zones, is novel in design, or involves the use of unusual materials or equivalent arrangements to those specified in the following sections, special tests may be required, and a suitable descriptive note may be assigned.

1. 3 Definitions

1. 3. 1 **CA zone** means one or more cargo chambers enclosed in an air-tight envelope.

1. 3. 2 **Gas** means a suitable gaseous mixture to retard the metabolic process of fresh products.

1. 3. 3 **Gas system** means a system which controls the levels of oxygen and/or carbon dioxide.

1. 3. 4 **Adjacent space** means an enclosed space adjoining a CA zone separated by watertight bulkheads or decks penetrated by pipes, cables, ducts, doors, `tween deck, etc.

PART

7

CHAPTER **1 Controlled Atmosphere Systems**

SECTION **2 Plans and documentation**

2. 1 Plans of CA zones and adjacent spaces

2. 1. 1 The following plans and particulars of the CA zones and adjacent spaces are to be submitted in triplicate for approval before construction is commenced:

a. Capacity plan.
b. Location and installation of CA equipment.
c. Arrangement of CA zones in elevation and plan view.
d. Access arrangement.
e. Arrangement and use of spaces adjacent to CA zones.
f. Details of securing weather deck and `tween deck hatch lids.
g. Details of securing gratings in way of hatch lids.
h. Details of weather deck and access hatch seals.
i. Door seals, scuppers, pipes, cables and ducts penetrating the decks, bulkheads, etc. together with proposed design conditions in the CA zones.
j. Specified leakage rate and proposals for its measurement.
k. Location of sampling points for CA gas and/or sensors in the CA zones and adjacent spaces.
l. Details of the gas supply piping system.
m. Details of gas freeing arrangements including fans, valves, ducts and any interlocks.
n. Details of pressure/vacuum valves for protecting devices in CA zones, location of outlets from P/V valves and capacity calculations.
o. Details of security locks provided on entry to the hatch and manhole covers, and doors leading to CA zones and adjacent spaces.
p. Arrangements of ventilation systems for the gas generator compartment and other adjacent spaces adjoining CA zones.

2. 2 Gas supply system

2. 2. 1 The following plans and particulars of the gas supply system, etc. are to be submitted in triplicate for approval, before construction is commenced:

a. Schematic arrangements of the proposed gas supply systems and, where applicable, details of compressors, pressure vessels, membranes, storage tanks, gas cylinders, control and relief valves and safety arrangements, including pressure set points of alarm and safety devices.
b. Capacities of gas supply systems at different oxygen and carbon dioxide levels, if applicable.

2. 3 Humidifiers

2. 3. 1 Where applicable, the following plans and particulars of the humidification system, etc. are to be submitted in triplicate for approval, before construction is commenced:

a. Specification and capacity of the system.
b. Principles of operation and control of relative humidities under different operating conditions.
c. Details of proposed equipment, nozzles, pads, heaters, pumps, steam generator, compressors, water tanks, etc.
d. Layouts of the equipment and the positioning of sensors and controls.

2. 4 Control equipment

2. 4. 1 The following plans and details of the control, alarm and safety systems for CA zones, gas supply compartment and other adjacent spaces, are to be submitted in triplicate before construction is commenced:

a. Line diagrams of all control circuits.
b. List of monitored, control and alarm points.
c. Details of computer systems, if fitted.
d. Location of control panels and consoles.
e. Controls of all valves and dampers fitted to CA zones.
f. Details of oxygen and carbon dioxide analysers and arrangements for calibration.
g. Relative humidity (RH) sensors and details of calibration.
h. Details of alarm system, including location of central control panel and audible and visual warning devices.

2. 5 Electrical

2. 5. 1 In addition to the applicable requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.2, Documentation required for design review, the following information and plans specific to the installed CA system are to be submitted in triplicate for approval, before construction is commenced:

a. Main power supply arrangement to the CA system.
b. Single-line diagram of the CA system which is to include rating of electrical machines, insulation type, size and current loading of cables and make, type and rating of protective devices.
c. A schedule of normal operating loads of CA system, estimated for the different operating conditions expected.

2. 6 Testing

2. 6. 1 Details of the testing programme are to be submitted, including instrumentation to be used with range and calibration.

PART

7

CHAPTER 1 Controlled Atmosphere Systems

SECTION 3 CA zones and adjacent spaces

3. 1 Air-tightness of CA zones

3. 1. 1 The CA zones are to be made air-tight in accordance with the requirements in Pt 7, Ch 1, 9.3 Air-tightness of CA zones. Particular attention is to be paid to sealing of hatches, plugs and access doors in each CA zone. Double seals are to be fitted to each opening.

3. 1. 2 Openings for pipes, ducts, cables, sensors, sampling lines and other fittings passing through the decks and bulkheads are to be suitably sealed and made air-tight.

3. 1. 3 The liquid sealed traps from bilges and drains from the cooler trays are to be deep enough to withstand, when filled with liquid which will not evaporate or freeze, the design pressure in each CA zone when taking account of the ship's motion.

3. 1. 4 Air refreshing inlets and outlets are to be provided with isolating arrangements.

3. 2 CA zone protection

3. 2. 1 Means are to be provided to protect CA zones against the effect of overpressure or vacuum.

3. 2. 2 At least two P/V valves are to be fitted in each CA zone. They are to be set for the design conditions of the CA zone.

3. 2. 3 Consideration will be given to the use of a single valve in combination with other suitable means of overpressure or vacuum protection.

3. 2. 4 The proposed P/V valves for each zone are to be of adequate size to release any excess pressure and to relieve the vacuum at maximum cooling rate.

3. 2. 5 P/V valve discharges are to be located at least 2 m above deck and 10 m away from any ventilation inlets. Discharge piping is to be arranged to preclude ingress of water, dirt or debris which may cause the equipment to malfunction.

3. 2. 6 Pressure sensors are to be installed in locations necessary to monitor pressure of all CA zones. Pressure sensors are to be installed away from fans, air inlets and outlets.

3. 3 Gas freeing of CA zones

3. 3. 1 The arrangements for gas freeing of CA zones are to be capable of purging all parts of the zone to ensure a safe atmosphere.

3. 3. 2 Cargo air cooling fans and the air refreshing arrangements may be used for gas freeing operations.

3. 3. 3 Gas freeing outlets are to be led to a safe place in the atmosphere 2 m above the deck, away from accommodation spaces and intakes of the fans for accommodation.

3. 4 Ventilation of adjacent spaces

3. 4. 1 Deckhouses and other adjacent spaces which require to be entered regularly are to be fitted with a positive pressure type mechanical ventilation system with a capacity of at least 10 air changes per hour capable of being controlled from outside these spaces.

3. 4. 2 Adjacent spaces not normally entered are to be provided with a mechanical ventilation system which can be permanent or portable to gas free the space prior to entry.

3. 4. 3 Ventilation inlets are to be arranged so as to minimise recycling any gas and are to be at least 10 m in the horizontal direction away from the ventilation outlets.

PART

7

CHAPTER **1 Controlled Atmosphere Systems**

SECTION **4 Gas systems**

4. 1 General

4. 1. 1 Means are to be provided to achieve and maintain the required oxygen and/or carbon dioxide levels in the CA zones. This may be accomplished by the use of stored gas, portable or fixed gas generating equipment or other equivalent arrangements. The arrangements are to be such that a single failure will not cause a complete loss of gas supply to the CA zones.

4. 1. 2 The gas system is to have sufficient capacity to make good any gas loss from the CA zones and to maintain a positive pressure in all CA zones.

4. 1. 3 The gas system is also to be able to:

a. Deliver gas at 125% of the specified flow rate with two compressors operating.
b. Maintain the specified gas levels in all CA zones when operating 24 hours per day with one unit on stand-by.

4. 1. 4 Air intakes are to be located to ensure that contaminated air is not drawn into the compressors.

4. 1. 5 Where it is intended to supply gas by means of stored gas bottles, the arrangements are to be such that depleted bottles may be readily and safely disconnected and charged bottles readily connected.

4. 2 Location

4. 2. 1 Fixed gas generating equipment, gas bottles or portable gas generators are to be located in a compartment reserved solely for their use. Such compartments are to be separated by a gastight bulkhead and/or deck from accommodation, service and control station spaces. Access to such compartments is to be only from the open deck.

4. 2. 2 Gas piping systems are not to be led through accommodation, service and machinery spaces or control stations.

4. 3 Gas supply

4. 3. 1 The gas systems are to be designed so that the pressure which they can exert on any CA zone will not exceed the design pressure of the zone.

4. 3. 2 During initial operation, arrangements are to be made to vent the gas outlets from each generator to the atmosphere. All vents from gas generators are to be led to a safe location on the open deck.

4. 3. 3 Where gas generators use positive displacement compressors, a pressure relief device is to be provided to prevent excess pressure being developed on the discharge side of the compressor.

4. 3. 4 Suitable arrangements are to be provided to enable the supply main to be connected to an external supply.

4. 3. 5 Where it is intended that gas systems are to be operated unattended, the required CA zone environment is to be automatically controlled.

4. 3. 6 Means of controlling inadvertent release of nitrogen into CA zones, such as locked valves, are to be provided.

4. 4 Gas supply compartment ventilation and alarm

4. 4. 1 The gas supply compartment is to be fitted with a mechanical extraction ventilation system providing a rate of at least 20 air changes per hour based on the total empty volume of the compartment.

4. 4. 2 Ventilation ducts from the gas generator/supply compartment are not to be led through accommodation, service and machinery spaces or control stations.

4. 4. 3 The air outlet duct is to be led to a safe place on the open deck.

4. 4. 4 The gas supply compartment is to be provided with a low oxygen alarm system.

PART

7

CHAPTER **1 Controlled Atmosphere Systems**

SECTION **5 Relative humidity (RH)**

5. 1 Humidification

5. 1. 1 Where a humidification system is fitted, the following requirements are to be complied with:

a. The supply of fresh water for humidification is to be such as to minimise the risk of corrosion and contamination of the cargo.

b. To prevent damage or blockage in the humidification system caused by water freezing, the air, steam or water pipelines in the cargo chambers are to be installed to facilitate ease of drainage and are to be provided with suitable heating arrangements.

PART

7

CHAPTER 1 **Controlled Atmosphere Systems**

SECTION 6 **Electrical installation**

6. 1 General

6. 1. 1 In addition to the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2 Electrical Engineering, the following requirements are to be complied with:

a. The electrical power for the CA plant is to be provided from a separate feeder circuit from the main switchboard.

b. Under sea-going conditions, the number and rating of service generators are to be sufficient to supply the cargo refrigeration machinery and CA equipment in addition to the ship's essential services, when any one generating set is out of action.

PART

7

CHAPTER **1** **Controlled Atmosphere Systems**

SECTION **7** **Control instrumentation and alarms**

7. 1 General

7. 1. 1 An alarm system for monitoring the atmosphere in CA zones is to be installed which may be integral with the machinery space alarm system as required by Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.3 Alarm systems, general requirements.

7. 1. 2 Where alarms are displayed as group alarms in the main machinery space alarm system, provision is to be made to identify individual alarms at the refrigerated cargo control station.

7. 1. 3 The pressure in each CA zone is to be monitored and an alarm initiated when the pressure is too high or too low.

7. 1. 4 Where the **RH** notation is to be assigned, humidity sensors are to be installed in each of the CA zones and are to initiate an alarm when the relative humidity (RH) falls below or exceeds the predetermined set values.

7. 1. 5 Gas sensors or analysers are to be provided to monitor gas content in CA zones, *See* Pt 7, Ch 1, 7.3 Gas analysers and sampling and Pt 7, Ch 1, 7.4 Gas sensors.

7. 1. 6 Gas analysers and sensors are to be calibrated automatically once in every 24 hours. An alarm is to be initiated if accuracy is outside tolerance limits.

7. 1. 7 Direct readout of the gas quality within any CA zone is to be available to the operating staff on demand.

7. 1. 8 At least one automatic recorder is to be provided for the remote monitoring and recording of O_2 and CO_2 levels in each CA zone.

7. 1. 9 Alarms are to be initiated in the event of O_2 or CO_2 levels in each CA zone falling below or exceeding the predetermined set values.

7. 2 Gas systems

7. 2. 1 Where air compressors are to be used for gas production, alarms are to be initiated for the following conditions:

- High lubricating oil temperature.
- High differential pressure across the filters.
- Electric supply failure.

The compressors are to shutdown automatically in the event of:

- High discharge air temperature.
- High discharge air pressure.

- Low lubricating oil pressure.
- High pressure in CA zone.

7. 2. 2 Instrumentation is to be fitted for indicating continuously:

a. Gas pressure.
b. Gas temperature.
c. Gas content.
d. Gas flow.

7. 3 Gas analysers and sampling

7. 3. 1 Where analysers are fitted, at least two analysers for oxygen and carbon dioxide having a tolerance of ±0.1% by volume are to be provided to determine the content of the circulated gas within the CA zones.

7. 3. 2 Two separate sampling points are to be located in each CA zone and one sampling point in each of the adjacent spaces. The arrangements are to be such as to prevent water condensing and freezing in the sampling lines under normal operating conditions. Filters are to be provided at the inlet to sampling point lines.

7. 3. 3 Arrangements of the gas sampling points are to be such as to facilitate representative sampling of the gas in the space.

7. 3. 4 Where gas is extracted from the CA zones via a sampling tube to analysers outside the space, the sample gas is to be discharged safely to the open deck.

7. 3. 5 Provision is to be made for gas sampling by means of portable equipment as required by Pt 7, Ch 1, 9.6 Safety, alarms and instrumentation 9.6.3.

7. 3. 6 The sampling frequency is to be at least once per hour.

7. 4 Gas sensors

7. 4. 1 Where sensors are fitted, at least two sensors for each of O_2 and CO_2, having a tolerance of ±0.1% are to be installed in each CA zone to monitor gas levels.

7. 4. 2 Gas sensors may be used for indication and alarm.

PART

7

CHAPTER **1 Controlled Atmosphere Systems**

SECTION **8 Safety requirements**

8. 1 Personnel safety

8. 1. 1 CA zones are to be clearly labelled with `Caution' and `Danger' signs to alert personnel.

8. 1. 2 Entry hatch and manhole covers, doors leading to the CA zones and adjacent spaces are to be fitted with acceptable security-type locks and alarms activated when covers and doors are opened. The alarms are to be placed in a manned location.

8. 1. 3 All doors and access hatches to CA zones which may be under pressure are to open outwards and are to be fitted with secondary catches to prevent injury or damage during opening.

8. 1. 4 At least two portable oxygen sensors are to be provided to sample the oxygen level in all CA zones and adjacent spaces.

8. 1. 5 A means of communication is to be provided between CA zones and an attended location on deck.

8. 1. 6 Medical first aid equipment, including at least one set of oxygen resuscitation equipment, is to be provided on board.

PART

7

CHAPTER 1 Controlled Atmosphere Systems

SECTION 9 Inspection and testing on completion

9. 1 General

9. 1. 1 CA system trials are to be witnessed on board by the ACS Surveyor, before the system is put into service and before a certificate is issued. These trials are in addition to any tests which may have been carried out at the manufacturer's works.

9. 1. 2 An Operating and Safety Manual for the guidance of the ship's staff is to be provided, covering the following topics:

a. Principal information on the use of CA.
b. Complete description of the CA installation on board.
c. Hazards of low oxygen atmospheres and consequential effects on human life.
d. Countermeasures when exposed to low oxygen atmospheres.
e. Instructions for operation, maintenance and calibration of all gas detectors.
f. Instructions for use of portable oxygen analysers with alarm for personal protection.
g. Prohibition of entry to spaces under CA.
h. Loading instructions prior to injection of gas.
i. Procedure for checking security of CA zones, doors and access hatches prior to injection of gas.
j. Gas freeing procedure for all CA zones.
k. Procedure for checking atmosphere of CA zones before entry.

9. 2 Gas supply and sampling systems

9. 2. 1 The gas supply main and branches are to be pressure and leak tested. The test pressures are to be 1.5 and 1.0 times the design pressure respectively.

9. 2. 2 All gas sampling lines are to be leak tested using a vacuum or overpressure method.

9. 3 Air-tightness of CA zones

9. 3. 1 Air-tightness of each CA zone is to be tested and the results entered on the certificate. The measured leakage rate of each zone is to be compared with the specified value.

9. 3. 2 Either a constant pressure method or a pressure decay method is to be used to determine the degree of air-tightness.

9. 3. 3 If the constant pressure method is used, the test is to be carried out at the design pressure of the CA zones.

9. 3. 4 If the pressure decay method is used, the time for the pressure to drop from 350 Pa to 150 Pa is to be measured and the leakage is to be calculated using the following formula:

$$A.L. = \frac{7.095 \times V}{t}$$

where

$A.L.$ = air leakage, in m^3/h

V = volume of zone, in m^3

t = time, in seconds

7.095 = constant for 200 Pa pressure decay.

During this test, adjacent zones are to be kept at atmospheric pressure.

9. 4 Gas system performance

9. 4. 1 Capability of the gas system to supply the gas at the specified flow rate and condition is to be verified by tests.

9. 4. 2 If the notation conditions cannot be verified during testing, assignment of the notation is to be deferred until log book entries confirm the achievement of the specified conditions in every CA zone during a loaded passage.

9. 5 Gas freeing

9. 5. 1 The gas freeing arrangements are to be tested to demonstrate that they are effective.

9. 6 Safety, alarms and instrumentation

9. 6. 1 The control, alarm and safety systems are to be tested to demonstrate overall satisfactory performance of the control engineering installation. Testing is also to take account of the electrical power supply arrangements, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.3 Alarm systems, general requirements.

9. 6. 2 Locking arrangements of all CA zones and adjacent spaces where gas may accumulate, provision of warning notices at all entrances to such spaces, communication arrangements and operation of alarms, controls, etc. are to be examined.

9. 6. 3 The provision of portable gas detectors and personnel oxygen monitors are to be verified by the ACS Surveyor. Suitable calibrated instruments for measuring the levels of O_2, CO_2 and humidity, gas pressure and gas flow to the CA zones, are to be provided for testing. Their accuracy is to be verified.

PART

7

CHAPTER **2**

Ships with Installed Process Plant for Chemicals, Liquified Gases and Related Products

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**Introduction**		**2934**
	1. 1	Scope	2934
	1. 2	General	2934
	1. 3	Classification of ship	2935
	1. 4	Certification of process plant	2935
SECTION 2	**Class notations**		**2937**
	2. 1	Ship notations	2937
	2. 2	Additional notations	2937
	2. 3	Special mooring and linking arrangements	2937
SECTION 3	**Plans and particulars**		**2939**
	3. 1	General	2939
	3. 2	Hull construction	2939
	3. 3	Process plant	2940
	3. 4	Mechanical equipment associated with the process plant	2941
	3. 5	Boilers and other pressure vessels associated with the process plant	2941
	3. 6	Pumping and piping systems associated with the process plant	2942
	3. 7	Electrical equipment for the process plant	2942
	3. 8	Control equipment for the process plant	2943
	3. 9	Fire protection, detection and extinction	2943
SECTION 4	**Materials**		**2944**
	4. 1	General	2944
SECTION 5	**Process plant characteristics**		**2945**
	5. 1	Design	2945
	5. 2	separation from ship machinery	2945
SECTION 6	**Hull construction**		**2946**

6. 1 General 2946
6. 2 Location of accommodation, service and control spaces 2946
6. 3 Integrity of gastightness between compartments 2946
6. 4 Cofferdams 2947
6. 5 Access and openings to spaces 2947
6. 6 Longitudinal strength 2947
6. 7 Plant support structure 2947
6. 8 Loading due to wave-induced motions 2948
6. 9 Additional loads 2948
6. 10 Allowable stresses in support structure 2948
6. 11 Integrity of weather deck 2949
6. 12 Equipment 2949
6. 13 Gangways and freeing arrangements 2949
SECTION 7 Mechanical equipment for the process plant 2950
7. 1 General 2950
7. 2 Safety precautions 2950
7. 3 Inspection and installation 2951
SECTION 8 Boilers and other pressure vessels for the process plant 2952
8. 1 General 2952
8. 2 Construction and installation 2952
8. 3 Safety devices 2952
SECTION 9 Pumping and piping systems for the process plant 2954
9. 1 General 2954
9. 2 Process plant piping systems 2954
9. 3 Lubricating oil and fuel oil piping 2954
9. 4 Gas fuel supply systems 2954
9. 5 Air and sounding pipes 2954
9. 6 Bilge and effluent arrangements 2955
SECTION 10 Firing arrangements of steam boilers, fired pressure vessels, heaters, reformers, etc. 2956
10. 1 General 2956
10. 2 Design and construction 2956
SECTION 11 Electrical equipment for the process plant 2958
11. 1 Design of installation 2958
11. 2 Equipment suitability for environment 2958
11. 3 Hazardous zones 2958

11. 4 Certified safe-type equipment 2958
11. 5 Survey and testing 2958
SECTION 12 Control engineering for the process plant 2959
12. 1 Design of installation 2959
12. 2 Equipment 2959
12. 3 Survey and testing 2959
SECTION 13 Plant blowdown systems 2960
13. 1 General 2960
SECTION 14 Plant flare gas systems 2961
14. 1 General 2961
SECTION 15 Supply and discharge arrangements for feedstock and product 2962
15. 1 General 2962
15. 2 Emergency procedures 2962
SECTION 16 Ventilation of the process plant and other spaces associated with the process plant operation 2963
16. 1 General 2963
16. 2 Design and construction 2963
16. 3 Air inlets and discharges 2964
16. 4 Installation and inspection 2964
SECTION 17 Gas detection 2965
17. 1 General 2965
17. 2 Design and construction 2965
17. 3 Installation 2966
SECTION 18 Fire protection, detection and extinction 2967
18. 1 General 2967
18. 2 Design arrangements 2967

PART

7

CHAPTER 2 **Ships with Installed Process Plant for Chemicals, Liquified Gases and Related Products**

SECTION 1 **Introduction**

1. 1 Scope

1. 1. 1 This Chapter is intended for the classification of self-propelled or non-self-propelled ships with specialised structures which have plant installed on board for the processing of chemicals, liquefied gases and related products, where permitted by the Flag Administration, and which fall into one of the following environmental categories:

a. Ships which have plants operable while navigating at sea.
b. Ships which have plants operable at sea, but only while the ship is attached to an offshore mooring facility.
c. Ships which can navigate at sea, but whose plants are intended to be operated only while the ships are in harbour or similarly protected waters.
d. Specialised ships, including pontoons, barges and similar structures which are designed as sea transportation vehicles to carry non-operative process plants, but which are specially constructed to be fully supported by the sea bed when the plants are operative.

1. 1. 2 Each category in Pt 7, Ch 2, 1.1 Scope 1.1.1 may include provision for the storage of the products used in the process or processes concerned.

1. 2 General

1. 2. 1 The Rules are framed on the understanding that ships will not be operated in environmental conditions more severe than those agreed for the design basis and approval, without the prior agreement of ACS.

1. 2. 2 Except as indicated in this Chapter, the hull, propulsion machinery, auxiliary machinery, equipment for essential services of the ship, *Electrical Installations* and control engineering systems are to comply with the relevant Sections of Parts Pt 3 Ship Structures (General), Pt 4 Ship Structures (Ship Types), Pt 5 Main and Auxiliary Machinery and Pt 6 Control, Electrical, Refrigeration and Fire, the *Rules for Ships for the Carriage of Liquid Chemicals in Bulk* and the *Rules for Ships for Liquefied Gases*, where applicable. Hulls made of reinforced or prestressed concrete will be specially considered.

1. 2. 3 The additional hull structural requirements for Category 3 ships to enable them to be satisfactorily grounded on prepared foundations will be specially considered. Full details of the intended foundations and the local conditions at the site are to be submitted for use in assessing the hull structural capability, etc.

1. 2. 4 Where the process plant is intended to operate in close proximity to bulk storage of feedstocks and/or products, further consideration may be necessary in addition to that contained in this

Chapter, particularly with regard to the provision of effective separation, methods of storage, loading and discharging arrangements.

1. 2. 5 For ships of all categories in Pt 7, Ch 2, 1.1 Scope 1.1.1 except Category 1A, provision is to be made for purging, gas freeing, inerting or otherwise rendering safe the plant and process storage facilities before the ship proceeds to sea or changes location. The provisions to be adopted, if any, when a ship of Category 1A enters harbour will be specially considered.

1. 2. 6 In addition to the requirements for periodical surveys, a general examination of the ship, machinery and process plant is to be carried out by ACS's Surveyors before and after a ship, of any category other than 1A, changes location. Every precaution is to be taken to ensure safety during such examination.

1. 2. 7 Requirements additional to those of this Chapter may be imposed by the National Authority with whom the ship is registered and/or by the Administration within whose territorial jurisdiction the process plant is intended to operate.

1. 3 Classification of ship

1. 3. 1 A ship built in accordance with the requirements of this Chapter, or in accordance with requirements equivalent thereto, will be assigned an appropriate class in the *Register Book*, as indicated in Pt 7, Ch 2, 2, Class notations, and will continue to be classed so long as it is found, upon examination at the prescribed surveys, to be maintained in a safe and efficient condition, *See also* Pt 7, Ch 2, 1.4 Certification of process plant 1.4.6.

1. 3. 2 For each category described in Pt 7, Ch 2, 1.1 Scope 1.1.1, classification covers the hull, containment systems for stored products, propulsion machinery, auxiliary machinery used for essential services, and equipment necessary to maintain a suitable environment within which the plant may safely operate.

1. 3. 3 In general, classification will not be extended to the process plant itself, and the classification requirements do not relate to the specialised machinery, equipment and associated piping, etc. which is solely concerned with the production operations, except where the design and/or arrangements of such equipment and piping may affect the safety of the vessel.

1. 3. 4 When reliquefaction plant is installed, and the plant and equipment are in accordance with the requirements of the *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk,* consideration will be given to classing the plant in accordance with Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.6 Class notations (refrigerated cargo installations (RMC), controlled atmosphere (CA) systems and carriage of refrigerated containers (CRC)).

1. 4 Certification of process plant

1. 4. 1 Process plant will be required to be certified by ACS, and a note to the effect that this has been carried out will be appended to the class notation in the *Register Book.*

1. 4. 2 The certificate will include a brief description of the process plant, indicating the chemical(s) processed and the end products.

1. 4. 3 The certificate of the plant will cease to be valid if a significant alteration is made to the plant or the arrangements on board without the written approval of ACS. This provision does not exclude the direct replacement of any item by a substitute part which has been approved and tested by ACS.

1. 4. 4 The process plant will be required to be surveyed by ACS's Surveyors at intervals to be prescribed by the Committee, dependent on the process involved.

1. 4. 5 The class notation for the ship will, in general, state that the process plant is not classed but certificated by ACS and periodically surveyed by ACS's Surveyors.

1. 4. 6 The maintenance of the class of the ship while the plant is in operation will be dependent upon a valid certificate and the plant being found, upon examination at the prescribed surveys, to be maintained in a safe and efficient condition.

1. 4. 7 The plant certificate is not to be taken as a recommendation for, or an approval of, the process or processes.

PART

7

CHAPTER 2 **Ships with Installed Process Plant for Chemicals, Liquified Gases and Related Products**

SECTION 2 **Class notations**

2. 1 Ship notations

2. 1. 1 Ships of Category 1A, which have chemical process plants designed to operate while the ship is navigating at sea, will be eligible to be classed `100A1 Chemical Process Factory', *See also* Pt 7, Ch 2, 1.4 Certification of process plant 1.4.5.

2. 1. 2 Ships of Category 1B, which have chemical plants designed for operation at sea while the ship is specially moored, anchored or otherwise linked to the shore, sea bed or other stationary vessel or structure, will be eligible to be classed `100A1 (T) moored (oil, ammonia, etc.) processing (tanker, barge, etc.) for service at . . .', *See also* Pt 7, Ch 2, 1.4 Certification of process plant 1.4.5.

2. 1. 3 Ships of Category 2, which have chemical plants installed and designed for operation while the ship is in harbour, will be eligible to be classed `100A(T) chemical process plant installed − for operation only when moored in harbour', *See also* Pt 7, Ch 2, 1.4 Certification of process plant 1.4.5.

2. 1. 4 Specialised ships of Category 3 which have chemical plants designed to operate only while the ship is fully supported on the sea bed, will be eligible to be classed `A chemical process plant pontoon/platform − to be operated only when grounded on prepared foundations at...', *See also* Pt 7, Ch 2, 1.4 Certification of process plant 1.4.5.

2. 2 Additional notations

2. 2. 1 A special chemical cargoes notation may be assigned to ships where raw materials or products are stored or retained on board in bulk.

2. 2. 2 The Committee may append details of process, product storage, safety or other particulars to the notation as it considers necessary.

2. 2. 3 Ships of Category 1B or 2 which have process plants installed solely for the purposes of the physical liquefaction of impure feedstock gases at low temperatures and the storage of the purified liquefied gases (where the chemical treatment of the impurities is an incidental process) will be assigned additional notations to those stated in Pt 7, Ch 2, 2.1 Ship notations 2.1.2 or Pt 7, Ch 2, 2.1 Ship notations 2.1.3 such as `for liquefaction and storage of methane, etc. in independent tanks Type B, etc. − maximum pressure − minimum temperature'.

2. 3 Special mooring and linking arrangements

2. 3. 1 Where the process plant is operable only when the ship is specially moored, anchored or otherwise linked to the shore, sea bed or other stationary vessel, and the equipment and/or other linking arrangements and components have been approved by the Committee as suitable and sufficient

for the intended service, an equipment character, T, will be assigned in addition, or as an alternative, to the equipment character 1, as appropriate.

2. 3. 2 For the purpose of the Rules, the word `linked' is to be taken to include spuds, retractable legs, floating or submerged pipelines connecting directly to the ship, ship to shore electrical connections, etc. which restrain the ship in its operating position, or which require such restraint to be applied and the failure of which could hazard the ship.

PART

7

CHAPTER **2** **Ships with Installed Process Plant for Chemicals, Liquified Gases and Related Products**

SECTION **3** **Plans and particulars**

3. 1 General

3. 1. 1 Before the work is commenced, plans in triplicate, together with the relevant information as detailed in this Section, are to be submitted for consideration. Any subsequent modifications are subject to approval before being put into operation.

3. 1. 2 Any alterations to basic design, construction, materials, manufacturing procedure, equipment, fittings or arrangements of the process are to be re-submitted for approval.

3. 1. 3 For Category 1 ships, the plant is to be capable of sustaining an emergency condition at full operating temperatures and pressures with the hull statically listed to an angle of 22.5°and statically trimmed to an angle of 10° beyond the maximum normal operating trim. These angles may be modified by the Committee in particular cases as it considers necessary. The stress calculations for the plant and the supporting structure are to take account of this condition. Wind loads need not be considered to be acting during this emergency condition.

3. 1. 4 For Category 2 ships, the plant is to be capable of sustaining an emergency condition at full operating temperatures and pressures with the hull statically listed to an angle of 15° and statically trimmed to an angle of 5° beyond the maximum normal operating trim. These angles may be modified by the Committee in particular cases as it considers necessary. The stress calculations for the plant and the supporting structure are to take account of this condition. Wind loads need not be considered to be acting during this emergency condition.

3. 2 Hull construction

3. 2. 1 For all categories of ship, the plans and information detailed in Pt 7, Ch 2, 3.2 Hull construction 3.2.2 are to be submitted, in addition to those required by the Rules for Ships for Liquid Chemicals or *Rules for Ships for Liquefied Gases*, as applicable.

3. 2. 2 Plans showing the general arrangement of the ship are to be submitted, giving the location of the following:

- Hatches and other openings to enclosed plant spaces and adjacent cofferdams.
- Doors, hatches, ventilation and other openings to crew accommodation, stations essential for operation at sea, control stations, store rooms and workshops.
- Coated tanks or tanks constructed of special material.
- Additional structure associated with the plant above the deck.
- Proposed grouping of areas within the plant for segregation purposes.

3. 2. 3 Plans for mooring, anchoring and linking, as applicable, together with relevant wind and sea data are to be submitted for information.

3. 2. 4 Plans outlining the containment arrangements in the event of an accident, together with all relevant information, are to be submitted.

3. 2. 5 Particulars of the marine environment and safety arrangements associated with the process plant are to be submitted, including:

- Arrangements for preventing the ingress of water into the ship or structure where process plant and equipment protrude through the weather deck.
- Proposed emergency flooding procedures and their control.

3. 2. 6 Particulars of the proposed storage arrangements of hazardous and/or toxic substances, feedstocks and products in bulk, on the ship or structure, are to be submitted.

3. 3 Process plant

3. 3. 1 A description of the expected method of operation of the process plant and a diagram showing the process flow are to be submitted.

3. 3. 2 General arrangement plans of the process plant showing the hazardous and safe zones and spaces are to be submitted, indicating the following:

- Spaces where toxic gases or vapours may accumulate.
- Spaces where flammable gases or vapours may accumulate.
- Areas maintained at an over-pressure to prevent the ingress of such gases or vapours.

3. 3. 3 Details of the flammability, toxicity, corrosivity and reactivity of the substances entering, being processed and leaving, or stored in, each compartment, together with details of any exothermic and hazardous reactions particularly with regard to sea-water and other materials normally found in the marine environment, are to be submitted.

3. 3. 4 Plans of the layout of the process plant indicating the hatches and other openings to enclosed plant spaces and cofferdams are to be submitted.

3. 3. 5 Details and arrangements of the blow-down systems, including quantities of materials and the capacity and working pressure of the containers installed for the reception of the materials to be blown down, are to be submitted.

3. 3. 6 Proposals for de-watering blow-down tanks in which hot oils and/or chemicals are discharged are to be submitted.

3. 3. 7 Proposals for the purging, gas freeing, inerting or otherwise rendering safe of the process plant and storage facilities are to be submitted.

3. 3. 8 Particulars of the arrangements for protecting the process plant systems and vessels against temperature, over-pressure and vacuum are to be submitted.

3. 3. 9 Proposals for the disposal of hazardous or toxic gases and liquid effluents during normal plant operation, including any proposed flare systems, are to be submitted.

3. 3. 10 Particulars of the proposals for isolating the ship or structure from the shore installation and/or lightering ships or vessels, where applicable, and from the supply of fuel to boilers, etc. in the process plant and the return flow of chemicals or process effluent, are to be submitted, including:

- Feedstock supply and product discharge, with details of the arrangements showing the location of shut-off valves and of the control and indicating stations.

- The process plant parameters and analysis of transient conditions under which emergency shutdown will be initiated and the time estimated to obtain a safe environment.
- The proposed emergency procedures for controlled shutdown of the process plant, i.e. depressurising, inerting, etc. and the arrangements for the continued operation of the essential services necessary to allow for such controlled shutdown under the emergency conditions of Pt 7, Ch 2, 3.1 General 3.1.3 or Pt 7, Ch 2, 3.1 General 3.1.4, as applicable.

3. 3. 11 Plans for the ventilation of process plant compartments are to be submitted, together with the following information:

- Location of hazardous and safe zones and spaces.
- Location of all possible sources of ignition.
- Location of air inlets and outlets.
- Number of complete air changes per hour.
- Estimated maximum and minimum ambient temperatures for the regions in which the plant is to operate.
- Expected heat loss of the process plant to the compartment environment.

3. 3. 12 Particulars of any dust or gas explosion hazard in the enclosed compartments of the process plant are to be submitted.

3. 3. 13 Proposals for the decontamination of the process plant compartments are to be submitted.

3. 3. 14 Proposals for the detection of vapour or gas and of oxygen deficiency in the process plant compartments are to be submitted.

3. 4 Mechanical equipment associated with the process plant

3. 4. 1 A list of mechanical equipment associated with the process plant, with the exception of any boilers and other pressure vessels, to be installed in the ship or structure is to be submitted.

3. 4. 2 Details of safety and relief devices and their discharge arrangements are to be submitted.

3. 4. 3 When required, in order to facilitate inspection, plans showing the materials of construction, working pressures and temperatures, maximum power and revolutions per minute, as applicable, are to be submitted before the work is commenced.

3. 4. 4 Calculations of the torsional vibration characteristics of the shafting systems, where applicable, are to be submitted in accordance with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 8 Shaft Vibration and Alignment.

3. 5 Boilers and other pressure vessels associated with the process plant

3. 5. 1 Plans of the boilers and other pressure vessels, including the proposals for the support of the vessels, are to be submitted.

3. 5. 2 Details of the safety and relief devices and their discharge arrangements are to be submitted.

3. 5. 3 Stress calculations are to be submitted, taking into account the ship linear and angular accelerations, roll and pitch amplitudes, ship flexure and wind loads appropriate to any condition which may normally arise at sea. Where applicable, calculations for the emergency condition in Pt 7, Ch 2, 3.1 General 3.1.3 or Pt 7, Ch 2, 3.1 General 3.1.4 are to be submitted. Due consideration

is to be given to the effects of thermal expansion and contraction on the support points of the vessels.

3. 5. 4 Outline plans of all types of fired equipment, ventilation arrangements with projected casing temperatures, uptake arrangements, gas and/or fuel oil burning arrangements and controls are to be submitted.

3. 6 Pumping and piping systems associated with the process plant

3. 6. 1 Plans of the process plant piping systems, showing the materials of construction, scantlings, support and expansion arrangements, together with the calculations, are to be submitted for consideration.

3. 6. 2 The following diagrammatic plans for systems associated with the process plant are to be submitted, in addition to those required by Pt 5, Ch 13 Ship Piping Systems and Pt 5, Ch 15 Piping Systems for Oil Tankers or the Rules for Ships for Liquefied Gases, as applicable:

- The Shipbuilder's plan of the general pumping arrangements, including air and sounding pipes and any cross flooding pipes and fittings.
- Pumping arrangements at the fore and aft ends, drainage of cofferdams and process spaces.
- Bilge, ballast and fuel oil pumping arrangements in the process plant machinery space, including the capacities of the pumps on bilge service.
- Arrangement of fuel oil pipes and fittings at settling and service tanks.
- Arrangement of gas and/or fuel oil piping in connection with gas and/or oil burning arrangements.
- Fuel oil overflow systems, where fitted.
- Arrangement of boiler feed system.
- Arrangement of compressed air systems for the process plant.
- Arrangements of lubricating oil and cooling water systems, fuel oil settling, service and other oil tanks not forming part of the ship's structure.

3. 6. 3 Plans showing the arrangement and dimensions of main steam pipes, with details of flanges, bolts and weld attachments and particulars of the materials of the pipes, flanges, bolts and welding consumables, are to be submitted for consideration.

3. 6. 4 Details of the safety and relief devices and their discharge arrangements are to be submitted.

3. 7 Electrical equipment for the process plant

3. 7. 1 Details of the electrical system(s) are to be submitted, including the following:

- A statement quoting the standard or Code of Practice in accordance with which the installation has been designed.
- A statement quoting the standard of design and/or manufacture of electrical equipment, e.g. BS, NEMA, VDE, etc.
- A schedule of the normal operational loads on the system, estimated for the different operating conditions expected.
- Expected range of ambient temperature.

3. 7. 2 The following line diagram plans and particulars are to be submitted:

- General arrangement plan of the process plant showing the location of the major items of electrical equipment.
- Line diagram of the installation(s) indicating the rating of the various items of rotating machinery, converters, transformers and protective devices, together with the types and sizes of cables and the makes and types of protective devices.
- Arrangement plans and circuit diagrams of the switchboards.
- Calculations of short-circuit currents at the main switchboards, sub-switchboards and the secondary side of transformers.
- General arrangement plan of the process plant showing the location of electrical equipment in hazardous zones, together with the Code of Practice on which they are based.
- A schedule of safe-type electrical equipment located in hazardous zones, giving details of the type of equipment employed, the certifying authority and the certificate number.

3. 7. 3 Written confirmation and Works' Test Certificates that all items of electrical equipment comply with the relevant standard or Code of Practice are to be supplied.

3. 8 Control equipment for the process plant

3. 8. 1 Details of the control system(s) are to be submitted, together with the following line diagrams and particulars:

- Line diagrams of any control system(s) fitted.
- General arrangement plan of the process plant showing the locations of items of control equipment and the locations of hazardous zones.
- Schedule of the parameters which are monitored and controlled, including alarms and shutdown devices.

3. 9 Fire protection, detection and extinction

3. 9. 1 Plans of fire protection, detection and extinction arrangements, together with details of the fire and explosion hazards involved, are to be submitted.

PART

7

CHAPTER **2** **Ships with Installed Process Plant for Chemicals, Liquified Gases and Related Products**

SECTION **4** **Materials**

4. 1 General

4. 1. 1 The materials used in the construction are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials and of the Rules for Ships for Liquefied Gases, as applicable. Materials for which provision is not made in those requirements may be accepted, provided that they comply with an approved specification and such tests as may be considered necessary.

4. 1. 2 Materials of construction are to be suitable for the intended service, having regard to the substances, process and temperatures involved. For materials unsuitable for use with certain chemicals, and for the protection of materials, *See* Rules for Ships for Liquid Chemicals.

4. 1. 3 Details of the materials proposed for all types of construction are to be submitted for approval.

PART

7

CHAPTER **2** **Ships with Installed Process Plant for Chemicals, Liquified Gases and Related Products**

SECTION **5** **Process plant characteristics**

5. 1 Design

5. 1. 1 The design and arrangements are to comply with the requirements of this Chapter and with relevant statutory regulations of the National Authority of the country in which the ship or structure is registered and/or in which it is to operate.

5. 1. 2 The process plant is to be designed for normal operation in accordance with recognised and agreed codes suitably modified to take into account the ship-borne environment in all its aspects. Except for emergency conditions, as detailed in Pt 7, Ch 2, 3.1 General 3.1.3 or Pt 7, Ch 2, 3.1 General 3.1.4, the total stress in any component of the plant is not to exceed the code value at the temperature concerned, unless expressly agreed otherwise by ACS, whether the plant is operative or non-operative, when subjected to any possible combination of the following loads:

a. Static and dynamic loads due to wave-induced ship motions.
b. Loads resulting from hull flexural effects at the plant support points.
c. Direct wind loads.
d. Normal process weights and pressures.
e. Thermal loads.

5. 1. 3 For the emergency conditions in Pt 7, Ch 2, 3.1 General 3.1.3 or Pt 7, Ch 2, 3.1 General 3.1.4, the stress levels are to be agreed with ACS.

5. 2 separation from ship machinery

5. 2. 1 Where, during operation, process plant spaces contain or are likely to contain hazardous and/or toxic substances, they are to be kept separate and distinct from the main propulsion and auxiliary machinery and essential ship services, and also the power generating machinery for the process plant.

5. 2. 2 Notwithstanding the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 2, 5.2 Separation from ship machinery 5.2.1, this does not exclude the use of the ship's main, auxiliary and/or essential services, for process plant operation in suitable cases. Where, for reason of hazard, essential ship services have to be duplicated within the process plant space, they are to comply with the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 2, 9 Pumping and piping systems for the process plant and Pt 5 Main and Auxiliary Machinery and Pt 6 Control, Electrical, Refrigeration and Fire, as applicable.

PART

7

CHAPTER **2** **Ships with Installed Process Plant for Chemicals, Liquified Gases and Related Products**

SECTION **6** **Hull construction**

6. 1 General

6. 1. 1 The hull structure is to comply with the relevant requirements of Pt 3 Ship Structures (General) and Pt 4 Ship Structures (Ship Types), except as stated otherwise in this Section. The containment of liquefied gas products is to comply with the *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk*.

6. 1. 2 All chemical product and effluent tank structures and their location relative to the ship's hull are to comply with the *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk,* or with the *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquid Chemicals in Bulk*, as applicable. Where necessary, the probable temperature variations during operations and the thermal stress considerations are to be stated.

6. 1. 3 Materials for the hull structures subjected to low temperature are to comply with Pt 3, Ch 2, 2.2 Refrigerated spaces relating to refrigerated spaces and adjacent structures, or with the Rules for Ships for Liquefied Gases, as applicable.

6. 1. 4 Subdivision and damage stability are not covered by these Rules. However, attention must be given to any relevant statutory regulations of the National Authority of the country in which the ship is to be registered or in which the plant is to be operated.

6. 2 Location of accommodation, service and control spaces

6. 2. 1 All accommodation and other compartments not directly essential to the operation of the plant are to be arranged well clear of plant spaces, and feedstock and product tanks.

6. 2. 2 Service and control stations essential to the operation of the plant must be made `gas-safe' in accordance with internationally accepted codes and standards, and should, wherever possible, be so located that access thereto is from a defined safe space. If such location is not possible, the station is to be specially ventilated.

6. 3 Integrity of gastightness between compartments

6. 3. 1 Where integrity of gastightness is required between compartments containing the plant, this is to be maintained in way of pipe tunnels or duct keels where these traverse such compartments.

6. 4 Cofferdams

6. 4. 1 Cofferdams are to be sited as required by the *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk,* or by the *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquid Chemicals in Bulk*, as applicable, segregating any spaces in which raw materials or products are stored or retained in bulk.

6. 4. 2 Cofferdams are to be arranged around independent tanks containing chemical products or effluents where these are separate from the ship structure, but permanently connected thereto. Such cofferdams are to be mechanically ventilated using portable or permanent systems as required by the Rules for Ships for Liquid Chemicals, and are to be of sufficient size to allow effective inspection of all the tank and ship structure in way.

6. 5 Access and openings to spaces

6. 5. 1 Access openings, windows, side scuttles and ventilation openings to accommodation, service and control stations essential for the operation of the ship, and similar safe spaces are to be located and arranged as required by the *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk,* or by the *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquid Chemicals in Bulk*, as applicable.

6. 5. 2 Arrangements are to be made to provide easy access to, or escape from, plant working spaces. In general, ladders are not to be arranged vertically, and intermediate platforms are to be fitted at vertical intervals of about 6 m. Ladders and platforms are to have guard rails and permanent provision made for attaching hoists for use in emergencies. The arrangements for the emergency hoists are to allow a clear, unobstructed lift to the outside deck.

6. 5. 3 Two separate means of access from the open deck are generally to be provided to the cofferdams required by Pt 7, Ch 2, 6.4 Cofferdams 6.4.1.

6. 6 Longitudinal strength

6. 6. 1 Longitudinal strength calculations are to be made in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 4 Longitudinal Strength for the following conditions, and the Loading Manual required by Pt 3, Ch 4, 8 Loading guidance information is to include this information:

a. **Sea-going conditions:**
These conditions are to take account of the weights and disposition of all ballast, plant items including any working fluids, other substances, spare gear, etc. and any special support bracing where thermal effects are considered, which will be on board during any sea-going condition of the plant appropriate to the category of ship.

b. **Harbour condition:**
This condition is to take account of the weights and disposition of all ballast and plant items, including all working and other substances (in all intended stowage dispositions) and spare gear which will be on board during operation of the plant in harbour.

6. 7 Plant support structure

6. 7. 1 Decks and other structure supporting the plant are, in general, to comply with the requirements of Pt 3 Ship Structures (General). Such structure can, however, be considered on the basis of an agreed uniformly distributed loading in association with local loads at plant support points, provided that adequate transverse strength of the ship is maintained.

6. 7. 2 Where the nature and dispositions of heavy plant items are such that forces on the ship and support structure due to ship motions are significant (whether underway with or without working fluids, or moored with working fluids), calculations of the loading and the structural response are to be submitted. In this respect, the guidance formula for accelerations as given in the *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk* can be used where appropriate. Details of the mass distribution and support points of the plant items are to be submitted in all cases.

6. 7. 3 Where model tests or reliable direct calculation procedures are used to estimate wave-induced responses and which may indicate accelerations and motion amplitudes differing from those arising from the application of the Rules, such values will be taken into account in the approval of support structure.

6. 7. 4 If the vessel is intended for limited service at sea (e.g. a `once only' voyage from port of build to service location), a reduction in the Rule accelerations and motion amplitudes may be permitted. In order to apply such a reduction, details of the intended service limitation should be submitted.

6. 8 Loading due to wave-induced motions

6. 8. 1 In cases where the mass distribution of large columnar plant items is such that the centre of action of the dynamic force differs significantly from the centre of gravity of the item, due account of this is to be taken in the calculation of the forces and moments at the support positions.

6. 9 Additional loads

6. 9. 1 The structure supporting the plant is also to be capable of withstanding forces arising from the following:

a. Wind loads (in all conditions of service and all categories of ships).
b. The angle of static heel arising from the emergency condition referred to in Pt 7, Ch 2, 3.1 General 3.1.3 or Pt 7, Ch 2, 3.1 General 3.1.4, as applicable.
c. For a Category 1 A ship, a collision force acting on the tank corresponding to one-half of the weight of the item with or without working fluids, as appropriate, to the approved sea-going conditions from forward and one-quarter of the weight of the item from aft.
d. For all other categories of ship, a collision force from any horizontal direction of one-fifth of the weight of the item.

6. 9. 2 Wind loading, which is to be applied to the plant items and supporting structure protruding above the weather deck, should be considered to act simultaneously with wave-induced loading. Loadings Pt 7, Ch 2, 6.9 Additional loads 6.9.1.b, Pt 7, Ch 2, 6.9 Additional loads 6.9.1.c and Pt 7, Ch 2, 6.9 Additional loads 6.9.1.d need not be combined with wind loads or wave-induced loads.

6. 10 Allowable stresses in support structure

6. 10. 1 The following stress levels are applicable in conjunction with the loading on the support structure:

a. Support members above or below the weather deck which are not subject to main hull girder loading:

direct stress: $\sigma_a + \sigma_b = 0.6\sigma_y$

shear stress: $\tau = 0.6\tau_y$ or $0.35\sigma_y$ whichever is the smaller

combined stress: $\sigma_c = 0.75\sigma_y = \sqrt{(\sigma_a + \sigma_b)^2 + 3\tau^2}$

where

$\sigma_a + \sigma_b$ = the algebraic sum of the axial and bending stresses at the point under consideration

σ_y = specified minimum tensile yield stress or 0.2% proof stress at room temperature

τ_y = shear yield stress.

b. Support members directly connected to hull structure and subject to transference of loading therefrom:
i. the maximum allowable direct, shear and combined stresses as defined in (a), but with member local loading increased by a factor of 1.30, or
ii. when the stresses in such structure are determined using methods which satisfactorily take into account any ship deflection and load transference in way of supports, no load factor need be applied.

c. Primary members forming an integral ship structural and plant support system:
i. in general, the allowable stresses in such a system will be especially considered on the basis of the degree of refinement employed in the load prediction, structural response and stress analysis methods. Structural response calculations should include the interaction effects of the hull and plant item.

6. 10. 2 In general, all seatings, platform decks, girders and pillars supporting plant items are to be arranged to align with the main hull structure, which is to be suitably reinforced, where necessary, to carry the appropriate loads. Attention should be paid to the capability of the support structure to withstand buckling.

6. 11 Integrity of weather deck

6. 11. 1 The integrity of the weather deck is to be maintained. Where items of plant equipment penetrate the weather deck and are intended to constitute the structural barrier to prevent the ingress of water to spaces below the freeboard deck, their structural strength is to be equivalent to the Rule requirements for this purpose. Otherwise such items are to be enclosed in superstructures or deckhouses fully complying with the Rules. Full details are to be submitted for approval.

6. 12 Equipment

6. 12. 1 Anchors and chain cables for ships navigating at sea are to comply with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 13, 7 Equipment. Special consideration will be given to the equipment required for ships of Categories 1B and 2.

6. 13 Gangways and freeing arrangements

6. 13. 1 Gangways are to be sufficient to provide proper access to all areas necessary for ship safety while the ship is operational and while it is at sea, and are to be to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

6. 13. 2 Freeing ports are to be fitted in accordance with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 8, 5.3 Freeing arrangements.

PART

7

CHAPTER **2** **Ships with Installed Process Plant for Chemicals, Liquified Gases and Related Products**

SECTION **7** **Mechanical equipment for the process plant**

7. 1 General

7. 1. 1 The requirements of this Section are applicable to all types of mechanical equipment associated with the process plant, with the exception of boilers and other pressure vessels.

7. 1. 2 The mechanical plant and equipment is to be designed and constructed in accordance with the relevant Sections of Pt 5 Main and Auxiliary Machinery and Pt 6, Ch 3 Refrigerated Cargo Installations, as applicable, and/or with agreed codes and specifications, suitably modified where necessary to suit shipboard conditions. The design is to be capable of accommodating the forces and moments stated in Pt 7, Ch 2, 6.7 Plant support structure, Pt 7, Ch 2, 6.8 Loading due to wave-induced motions and Pt 7, Ch 2, 6.9, Additional loads, as applicable, generated at the support points.

7. 2 Safety precautions

7. 2. 1 Engines, air compressors and associated air starting piping, concerned with supplying services not essential to the safety of the vessel or structure, are to comply with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 2 Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engines, where applicable.

7. 2. 2 Air intakes for internal combustion engines are to be led from a safe space. Where internal combustion engines, other than gas turbines, are used in association with plant processing flammable substances, the air intakes are to be fitted with an automatic device to prevent overspeeding in the event of accidental ingestion of flammable gases and/or vapours.

7. 2. 3 xhaust pipes from internal combustion engines are to be led well clear of hazardous areas and, where such engines are used in association with plant processing flammable substances, are to be fitted with efficient spark arresters.

7. 2. 4 In general, air compressors are not to be installed in hazardous areas. Where this is not practicable, alternative arrangements may be accepted, provided that the air inlets are trunked or ducted from a safe space and that such trunking/ducting is fitted with gas detectors arranged to give audible and visible alarms and to shutdown the compressor in the event of flammable and/or toxic gas or vapour entering the air inlets.

7. 2. 5 The gas detectors are to be capable of continuously sampling the air supply and are to be so arranged as to prevent cross-communication between hazardous and safe spaces, such as control rooms, etc.

7. 3 Inspection and installation

7. 3. 1 The scope of the inspection to be carried out at the manufacturers' works by the Surveyors is to be agreed before the work is commenced.

7. 3. 2 The mechanical plant and equipment are to be installed to the Surveyor's satisfaction. Proposals to site internal combustion engines in hazardous areas will be the subject of special consideration.

PART

7

CHAPTER **2** **Ships with Installed Process Plant for Chemicals, Liquified Gases and Related Products**

SECTION **8** **Boilers and other pressure vessels for the process plant**

8. 1 General

8. 1. 1 The requirements of this Section are applicable to fired and unfired pressure vessels associated with the process plant.

8. 1. 2 The pressure vessels are to be made in accordance with the requirements of the relevant Sections of Pt 5, Ch 10 Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels or Pt 7, Ch 2, 11 Electrical equipment for the process plant, as applicable, or with agreed codes and specifications normally used for similar plant in land installations suitably modified and/or adapted for the marine environment. The design is to be capable of accommodating the forces and moments stated in Pt 7, Ch 2, 6.7 Plant support structure, Pt 7, Ch 2, 6.8 Loading due to wave-induced motions and Pt 7, Ch 2, 6.9, Additional loads, as applicable, generated at the support points.

8. 1. 3 Stress calculations are to take account of the emergency conditions in Pt 7, Ch 2, 3.1 General 3.1.3 or Pt 7, Ch 2, 3.1 General 3.1.4, as applicable, in addition to the normal operational loadings. Due consideration is to be given to the effects of thermal expansion and contraction on the support points of the vessels.

8. 2 Construction and installation

8. 2. 1 The pressure vessels are to be constructed, installed and tested to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

8. 2. 2 Suitable access is to be provided to the vessels for inspection, including checks on the operation of mountings, fittings, controls and pressure relief devices.

8. 3 Safety devices

8. 3. 1 Where necessary, a test rig is to be supplied to enable the pressure setting of the safety and relief devices to be checked.

8. 3. 2 Where required, an additional pressure relieving device, with sufficient capacity (a) to prevent pressure vessels becoming liquid-full during fire engulfment and/or (b) to discharge vapours generated under fire exposure, is to be fitted in accordance with the relevant *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk*.

8. 3. 3 The arrangement of safety and relief discharges is to be such that there is no possibility of hazardous reaction between the substances involved.

8. 3. 4 Where provision is made for the isolation of safety relief devices from vessels and/or systems for maintenance purposes, not less than two such safety devices are to be fitted.

8. 3. 5 The isolating or blocking valves are to be so arranged that at least one safety relief device will remain in communication with the vessel or system under all conditions.

PART

7

CHAPTER 2 **Ships with Installed Process Plant for Chemicals, Liquified Gases and Related Products**

SECTION 9 **Pumping and piping systems for the process plant**

9. 1 General

9. 1. 1 Arrangements are to be made in the process plant spaces, in order that substances which are flammable, toxic or are likely to present a hazard due to reaction when mixed are kept separate.

9. 2 Process plant piping systems

9. 2. 1 Process plant piping systems are to be designed and constructed in accordance with agreed codes and specifications normally used for similar plants in land installations, suitably modified and/or adapted where necessary to suit the marine environment.

9. 2. 2 Sections of piping which may contain hazardous liquids or gases and which can be isolated are to be suitably protected, *See* Pt 7, Ch 2, 8.3 Safety devices 8.3.2.

9. 3 Lubricating oil and fuel oil piping

9. 3. 1 Lubricating oil and fuel oil pipes, fittings, associated equipment, fuel oil burning arrangements and their materials of construction are to comply with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 14 Machinery Piping Systems, where applicable.

9. 4 Gas fuel supply systems

9. 4. 1 The gas fuel supply systems are to comply with the requirements of the relevant Sections of the *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk,* where applicable.

9. 4. 2 Provision to shut off the gas is to be made in the gas firing supply lines immediately before the lines enter the compartment in which the equipment is installed. The shut-off arrangements are to be of the double block and vent type, and are to be operable at the equipment or the equipment control position and at a position in a safe area remote from the equipment.

9. 5 Air and sounding pipes

9. 5. 1 Details of air and sounding pipes to tanks containing chemical products are to be submitted for approval.

9. 6 Bilge and effluent arrangements

9. 6. 1 The arrangements for the storage on board ship, and the disposal of bilge and effluent from the process plant spaces, are to be submitted for consideration, and due recognition is to be given to the requirements of the appropriate National Authority.

9. 6. 2 Bilge and effluent pumping and piping systems in the process plant spaces are to be constructed of material suitable for the substances processed or produced or any combination of the substances which might result from accidental admixture.

9. 6. 3 Arrangements are to be provided for the control of the bilge and effluent pumping and piping system installed in the process plant spaces from within these spaces and also from a position outside the spaces.

9. 6. 4 The bilge and effluent pumping and piping systems handling hazardous materials should, wherever possible, be installed in the space associated with the particular hazard. Spaces containing pumps and piping systems that take their suction from a hazardous space may also be considered as hazardous spaces where a pipeline is not of an all-welded construction without flanges, valve glands and bolted connections, etc. and the pumps are not totally enclosed.

9. 6. 5 Where, during operation, process plant spaces contain or are likely to contain hazardous and/or toxic substances, they are to be kept separate and distinct from the ship's main bilge pumping and piping system. This does not, however, preclude the use of the ship's main bilge system when the process plant is shutdown, gas freed or otherwise made safe.

9. 6. 6 Pumping and piping systems for the ship services and process plant are to be constructed and installed to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

PART

7

CHAPTER **2** **Ships with Installed Process Plant for Chemicals, Liquified Gases and Related Products**

SECTION **10** **Firing arrangements of steam boilers, fired pressure vessels, heaters, reformers, etc.**

10. 1 General

10. 1. 1 The requirements of this Section are applicable to all types of fired equipment associated with the process plant. The equipment is to be constructed, installed and tested to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

10. 2 Design and construction

10. 2. 1 Details of the design and construction of the fuel gas burning equipment for steam boilers, oil and gas heater furnaces, reformers, etc. are to be in accordance with the *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk,* or with agreed codes and specifications normally used for similar plants in land installations, suitably modified and/or adapted for the marine environment. Ignition of the burners is to be by means of permanently installed igniters, or properly located and interlocked pilot burners and main burners arranged for sequential ignition.

10. 2. 2 Gas or gas/air mixtures having relative densities compared with that of air at the same temperature greater than one are not to be used as fuels for fired pressure vessels situated below deck. Proposals to burn such mixtures above deck will be specially considered in each case.

10. 2. 3 Proposals for the furnace purging arrangements prior to ignition of the burners are to be submitted. Such arrangements are to ensure that any accidental leakage of product liquid or gas into the furnace, from a liquid or gas heating element, or from the accidental ingestion of flammable gases and/or vapours, does not result in hazardous conditions.

10. 2. 4 Compartments containing fired pressure vessels, heaters, reformers, etc. for heating or processing hazardous substances are to be so arranged that the compartment in which the fired equipment is installed is maintained at a higher pressure than the combustion chamber of the equipment. For this purpose, induced draught fans or a closed stokehold system of forced draught may be employed. Alternatively, the fired equipment may be enclosed in a pressurised air casing.

10. 2. 5 The fired equipment is to be suitably lagged. The clearance spaces between the fired equipment and any tanks containing oil are to be not less than 760 mm. The compartments in which the fired equipment is installed are to be provided with an efficient ventilating system.

10. 2. 6 Smoke box and header box doors of fired equipment are to be well-fitting and shielded, and the uptake joints made gastight. Where it is proposed to install dampers in the uptake gas passages of fired equipment, the details are to be submitted. Dampers are to be provided with a suitable device whereby they may be securely locked in the fully open position.

10. 2. 7 Each item of fired equipment is to have a separate uptake to the top of the stack casing. Where it is proposed to install process fired equipment with separately fixed furnaces converging into a convection section common to two or more furnaces and/or a secondary radiant section at the confluence of the fired furnace uptake to the convection section, the proposed arrangements, together with the details of the furnace purging and combustion controls, are to be submitted.

PART

7

CHAPTER **2** **Ships with Installed Process Plant for Chemicals, Liquified Gases and Related Products**

SECTION **11** **Electrical equipment for the process plant**

11. 1 Design of installation

11. 1. 1 Installations are to be designed in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 2 Electrical Engineering, or with a recognised National or International Standard or Code of Practice.

11. 1. 2 Attention must be given to any relevant statutory regulations of the National Authority of the country in which the ship is to be registered or in which the process plant is to be operated.

11. 2 Equipment suitability for environment

11. 2. 1 Electrical equipment is to be constructed so that it is suitable for use in the environmental conditions envisaged, e.g. in areas of high ambient temperature, derating may be necessary.

11. 3 Hazardous zones

11. 3. 1 Where flammable gases and vapours are involved, the defining of hazardous zones is to be in accordance with a National or International Standard or Code of Practice.

11. 4 Certified safe-type equipment

11. 4. 1 Where safe-type equipment is permitted in hazardous zones, e.g.:

- Intrinsically-safe (symbol i),
- Flameproof (symbol d),
- Increased safety (symbol e),
- Pressurised enclosure (symbol p),

such equipment is to be certified for the gases and vapours involved. The construction and type testing are to be in accordance with IEC 60079: *Electrical Apparatus for Explosive Gas Atmospheres*, or an equivalent National Standard.

11. 5 Survey and testing

11. 5. 1 All electrical equipment is to be installed and tested to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

PART

7

CHAPTER **2** **Ships with Installed Process Plant for Chemicals, Liquified Gases and Related Products**

SECTION **12** **Control engineering for the process plant**

12. 1 Design of installation

12. 1. 1 Normal good engineering practice and standards are to be employed in any control system(s) fitted.

12. 1. 2 Due to the wide variety of types of process plant, it is not possible to lay down precise details of control scheme(s), since any control scheme is affected by the nature of, and the operating procedures of, the process plant. A description of the expected method of operation of the process plant is to be submitted.

12. 2 Equipment

12. 2. 1 Control equipment is to be compatible with the materials involved in the plant process.

12. 2. 2 Where flammable gases or vapours are involved, control equipment located in hazardous zones is to be of certified safe-type.

12. 3 Survey and testing

12. 3. 1 Control system(s) are to be installed and tested to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

PART

7

CHAPTER **2** **Ships with Installed Process Plant for Chemicals, Liquified Gases and Related Products**

SECTION **13** **Plant blowdown systems**

13. 1 General

13. 1. 1 Where a liquid blowdown system is provided in the process plant, the design and installation are to make adequate provision for the effects of back pressure in the system and vapour flash off when the pressures of liquids in the blowdown system are reduced.

13. 1. 2 Substances which will react with each other are to be provided with separate systems.

PART

7

CHAPTER **2** **Ships with Installed Process Plant for Chemicals, Liquified Gases and Related Products**

SECTION **14** **Plant flare gas systems**

14. 1 General

14. 1. 1 Details of any flare gas stack system and proposals for installation on board the ships, including safety arrangements, are to be submitted for consideration.

14. 1. 2 The protection zone around the nozzle of the flare gas stack is dependent upon the limiting radiation intensity under all conditions and, also, whether suitable radiation screens are provided. The flare gas stack is to be located so that the nozzle is situated not less than the radius of the protection zone or 50 m, whichever is the greater, from equipment and manned stations, etc.

14. 1. 3 The arrangements are to ensure that combustion of the flare gas is complete and safe at all times.

PART

7

CHAPTER **2** **Ships with Installed Process Plant for Chemicals, Liquified Gases and Related Products**

SECTION **15** **Supply and discharge arrangements for feedstock and product**

15. 1 General

15. 1. 1 Arrangements are to be made to isolate the ship from the supply of feedstock for processing, the supply of fuel oil or gas to boilers, heaters, etc. and the return flow of product, chemicals or process effluent, blow-down or flare gas, etc.

15. 1. 2 The arrangements are to provide for valves installed at the shore connection, where applicable, and on board ship which are to be operable from shut-off control and indicating stations on the ship, on the shore, and at the valves.

15. 2 Emergency procedures

15. 2. 1 Detailed instructions of the emergency shutdown and evacuation procedure are to be posted in a prominent position at the ship and shore control stations, where applicable.

PART

7

CHAPTER 2 **Ships with Installed Process Plant for Chemicals, Liquified Gases and Related Products**

SECTION 16 **Ventilation of the process plant and other spaces associated with the process plant operation**

16. 1 General

16. 1. 1 An efficient means of ventilation is to be provided for all enclosed compartments associated with the operation of the process plant.

16. 1. 2 The capacity of the ventilation systems is to comply with the requirements of the Rules for Ships for Liquefied Gases, the Rules for Ships for Liquid Chemicals, where applicable, or to an acceptable Code of Practice suitably modified and/or adapted where necessary to suit the marine environment. It is to be related to the hazard and/or environmental consideration of manned spaces during normal operation, and take into account additional requirements which may be necessary during start-up procedures.

16. 2 Design and construction

16. 2. 1 Hazardous compartments where flammable and/or toxic substances are being processed or produced are to be arranged for underpressure ventilation, except as stated in Pt 7, Ch 2, 10.2 Design and construction 10.2.4.

16. 2. 2 Safe compartments, including control rooms, are to be arranged for overpressure ventilation.

16. 2. 3 The number and capacity of fans are to be such that the minimum ventilation capacity required in each compartment is maintained at all times, with one unit out of service. If internal combustion engines are proposed, their fuel supply is to be kept separate from any other system. Electric motors are to be supplied by two alternative circuits, each of which is capable of supplying all the motors which are normally connected to that circuit and which are operated simultaneously.

16. 2. 4 The mechanical ventilation system is to be capable of being controlled from a position outside the compartment being ventilated.

16. 2. 5 Reduction of ventilation capacity below the required level should be indicated in the compartment and also in the control room by an audible and visible alarm.

16. 2. 6 The parts of the rotating body and of the casing of each fan situated in a hazardous space are to be made of recognised spark-proof materials. If non-metallic materials are used, they are to have anti-static properties.

16. 2. 7 Ventilation trunking or ducting is to be suitably coated or painted, or made from material suitable for the substances processed or produced, or any combination of the substances which might result from accidental admixture.

16. 3 Air inlets and discharges

16. 3. 1 The air inlets for the ventilation systems are to be located in a designated safe area.

16. 3. 2 The air inlets and discharges of the ventilation system are to be so situated that recirculation of the vented vapours does not occur.

16. 3. 3 The discharges from ventilation systems which may contain vapours that present a hazard due to reaction with each other are to be effectively segregated.

16. 3. 4 The discharges from ventilation systems which may contain hazardous vapours are to be located not less than 10 m from the nearest air intake or opening to accommodation, service and control station spaces or other safe spaces, and from all possible sources of ignition.

16. 3. 5 Air intakes and openings into the accommodation spaces and all service and control station spaces are to be fitted with closing devices. For toxic gases, these devices are to be operable from inside the space.

16. 3. 6 Where it is impracticable to locate a plant service or control station so that any access thereto is from a safe space, the service or control station is to be maintained at an overpressure of not less than 5 mm water gauge above the surrounding spaces. Details of the arrangements to ensure that this pressure differential is maintained are to be submitted.

16. 3. 7 Airlocks for intercompartmental access doors and emergency escape trunks are to have separate ventilation systems so arranged that an overpressure of 5 mm water gauge is maintained above the adjacent compartments. Details of the arrangements to ensure that this pressure differential is maintained are to be submitted.

16. 4 Installation and inspection

16. 4. 1 The ventilation systems are to be installed to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

16. 4. 2 The Surveyors are to be satisfied that the ventilation system is capable of maintaining a safe environment during process plant operation. This may require monitoring over an extended period to prove its effectiveness.

PART

7

CHAPTER **2** **Ships with Installed Process Plant for Chemicals, Liquified Gases and Related Products**

SECTION **17** **Gas detection**

17. 1 General

17. 1. 1 An efficient gas detection system, suitable for the gases and/or vapours being processed or produced, and for the measurement of oxygen levels in the process plant compartments, is to be provided. Gas detector systems are also to comply with the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 2, 17 Gas detection or of Ch 13 Instrumentation and Automation Systems of the Rules for Ships for Liquefied Gases, where applicable.

17. 2 Design and construction

17. 2. 1 The equipment is to consist of a permanently fixed installation and at least two sets of portable equipment suitable for the process or products involved.

17. 2. 2 The position and number of fixed sampling points should be determined with due regard to the density of the gases and/or vapours of the substances processed or produced, and the dilution resulting from compartment ventilation. In each case, a sufficient number of sampling points is to be provided to give efficient selective sequential sampling to maintain a safe environment.

17. 2. 3 Unmanned or closed compartments, such as cofferdams, etc. associated with plant processing or producing flammable or toxic substances, are to have permanently installed sampling points suitable for use with portable detection equipment to be used before entry of the spaces by personnel and thereafter continuously while occupied by them.

17. 2. 4 Arrangements of the sampling point pipe runs are to be such that there is no possibility of hazardous gases and/or vapours entering a safe space. Common sampling lines to the detection equipment are not to be fitted.

17. 2. 5 The permanently installed gas detection system is to give audible and visible alarm, both in the control station and within the compartment, during hazardous conditions.

17. 2. 6 Except where continuous sampling is required (i.e. as in Pt 7, Ch 2, 7.2 Safety precautions 7.2.5), the gas detection equipment should be capable of sampling and analysing from each sampling point at agreed intervals, which are in no case to exceed 30 minutes.

17. 2. 7 The gas detection equipment is to be designed so that it may be readily and regularly tested and calibrated. Suitable equipment and span gas is to be provided for this purpose. In addition, regular checking procedures with portable equipment are to be provided, particularly for closed or unmanned spaces during process plant operation.

17. 2. 8 Where equipment for detecting the specific flammable, toxic or asphyxiate substances which may be present in process plant spaces cannot be provided, full details are to be submitted, including

personnel protection requirements and arrangements for decontaminating such spaces if necessary.

17. 3 Installation

17. 3. 1 The gas detection system is to be installed to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

PART

7

CHAPTER **2** **Ships with Installed Process Plant for Chemicals, Liquified Gases and Related Products**

SECTION **18** **Fire protection, detection and extinction**

18. 1 General

18. 1. 1 The requirements of SOLAS *Chapter II-2 - Construction - Fire protection, fire detection and fire extinction* and the *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk* are to be complied with, so far as they are applicable. Additional protection, consistent with the fire hazard involved, may be required for process plant control stations, and accommodation spaces. For the position of accommodation spaces relative to the process plant, *See* Pt 7, Ch 2, 6.2 Location of accommodation, service and control spaces.

18. 1. 2 Where the design of the process plant is such that it may be operated only while the vessel or floating structure is specially moored, anchored or otherwise linked close to the shore, consideration will be given to a shore-based fire-fighting facility, taking account of the particular hazards involved.

18. 2 Design arrangements

18. 2. 1 Arrangements are to be made in enclosed process plant spaces to prevent contact of dangerously interreactive substances and of flammable materials with sources of ignition. In general, compartments containing process plant are not to exceed 40 m in length, and the boundary bulkheads are to be `A' Class divisions.

18. 2. 2 Where, during operation, process plant spaces or adjacent hazardous zones contain or are likely to contain flammable and/or explosive mixtures, special consideration is to be given to the exclusion of all possible sources of ignition.

18. 2. 3 All heated surfaces, e.g. exhaust pipes, boiler uptakes and steam pipes, are to be effectively lagged or cooled, so that the maximum temperature, °C, of the surfaces is, in general, not to exceed 70% of the auto-ignition temperature, °C, of any substances which may be present in the compartment. In no case is the difference in these temperatures to be less than 50°C.

18. 2. 4 Compartments where a fire hazard exists and which are not continuously manned are to be provided with an approved fire detection system which shall give visible and audible warning of the location of the fire in the control station and, for plant operating at sea (Category 1A), at the navigating bridge control position.

18. 2. 5 The fire main is to be so arranged, and hoses and nozzles provided, that any part of the compartments or structure associated with the process plant can be reached with two powerful jets of water, one of which shall be produced by a single length of hose. The hoses are to be provided with dual-purpose nozzles capable of producing a jet or a spray. Special consideration will be given to an exemption from this requirement in respect of compartments where the use of water would in itself constitute a hazard.

18. 2. 6 Each compartment where the fire hazard so demands is to be provided with an approved fixed fire-extinguishing system capable of extinguishing fires involving the materials present. Operation of such a system at its required output is not to prevent the simultaneous use of the required jets of water from the fire main. Where carbon dioxide systems and Halon systems are fitted, due consideration should be given to the danger of static electricity.

18. 2. 7 An adequate number of portable fire extinguishers are to be provided in each compartment where a fire hazard exists. The number of such extinguishers will be decided in relation to the nature of the hazard and the layout of the compartment, but shall not be less than two, one of which is to be positioned near the entrance. The extinguishing medium is to be considered in relation to the nature of the hazard involved.

18. 2. 8 Means are to be provided for stopping all fans and, where practicable, closing all openings which might admit air to the compartment. Such means should be capable of being operated from a position outside the compartment and not likely to be rendered inaccessible by a fire in the compartment.

18. 2. 9 Means are to be provided for stopping the supply of combustible materials to the compartment in the event of fire.

18. 2. 10 The provision of additional fireman's outfits, each complying with the requirements of *SOLAS Reg. II-2/C, 10 Fire-fighter's outfits*, and the necessity for protective clothing, will be specially considered in relation to the layout of the process plant and the hazards involved.

PART

7

CHAPTER 3 Fire-fighting Ships

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**2971**
	1. 1	Application	2971
	1. 2	Classification and class notations	2971
	1. 3	Surveys	2972
	1. 4	Submission of plans	2972
	1. 5	Definitions	2972
SECTION 2	**Construction**		**2974**
	2. 1	Hull	2974
	2. 2	Sea suctions	2974
	2. 3	Stability	2974
	2. 4	Manoeuvrability	2974
	2. 5	Bunkering	2974
SECTION 3	**Fire-extinguishing**		**2975**
	3. 1	Water monitors	2975
	3. 2	Pumps	2975
	3. 3	Hose stations	2976
	3. 4	Fireman's outfits	2976
	3. 5	Recharging of equipment	2976
SECTION 4	**Fire protection**		**2977**
	4. 1	General	2977
	4. 2	Water spray systems	2977
SECTION 5	**Lighting**		**2978**
	5. 1	General	2978

PART

7

CHAPTER 3 Fire-fighting Ships

LIST OF TABLES

Table 3. 1. 1: Fire-fighting equipment 2971

PART

7

CHAPTER **3** **Fire-fighting Ships**

SECTION **1** **General**

1. 1 Application

1. 1. 1 The requirements of this Chapter apply to ships intended for fire-fighting operations and are additional to those applicable in other Parts.

1. 1. 2 A ship provided with fire protection and fire-fighting equipment in accordance with these Rules will be eligible for an appropriate class notation which will be recorded in the *Register Book.*

1. 1. 3 Requirements additional to these Rules may be imposed by the National Authority with whom the ship is registered and/or by the Administration within whose territorial jurisdiction the fire-fighting ship is intended to operate.

1. 2 Classification and class notations

1. 2. 1 The class notations which may be assigned are:

- `**Fire-fighting ship 1** (total monitor discharge capacity in brackets)',
- `**Fire-fighting ship 2** (total monitor discharge capacity in brackets)',
- `**Fire-fighting ship 3** (total monitor discharge capacity in brackets)',
- `**Fire-fighting ship 1** (total monitor discharge capacity in brackets) **with water spray**',
- `**Fire-fighting ship 2** (total monitor discharge capacity in brackets) **with water spray**',
- `**Fire-fighting ship 3** (total monitor discharge capacity in brackets) **with water spray**'.

1. 2. 2 The notation **Fire-fighting ship 1**, **Fire-fighting ship 2** or **Fire-fighting ship 3** signifies that a ship complies with these Rules and is provided with the appropriate fire-fighting equipment described in Table 3. 1. 1: Fire-fighting equipment, with the total discharge capacity of monitors in m^3/h shown in brackets.

1. 2. 3 The addition of the words `**with water spray**' to the notations referred to in Pt 7, Ch 3, 1.2 Classification and class notations 1.2.1 signifies that a ship is provided with a water spray system, which will provide an effective cooling spray of water over the vertical surfaces of the ship to enable it to approach a burning installation for fire-fighting purposes. The requirements for such a system are set out in Pt 7, Ch 3, 4.2, Water spray systems.

Table 3. 1. 1: Fire-fighting equipment

Equipment	Fire-fighting ship		
	1	2	3
Minimum total pump capacity, m^3/h	2400	7200	10 000
Minimum number of water monitors	2	3	4

Minimum discharge rate per monitor, m^3/h	1200	1800	1800
Minimum height of trajectory of jets of monitors above sea level, metres	45	70	70
Minimum range of monitor jets, m	120	150	150
Minimum fuel capacity for monitors, hours	24	96	96
Number of hose connections each side of ship	4	8	8
Number of fireman's outfits	4	8	8

1. 3 Surveys

1. 3. 1 The arrangements and equipment referred to in this Chapter are to be examined and tested under working conditions on completion of the installation and, subsequently, annually.

1. 4 Submission of plans

1. 4. 1 The following plans and information are to be submitted:

- A general arrangement showing the disposition of all fire-fighting equipment required by this Chapter.
- Details of major items of fire-fighting equipment such as pumps and monitors, including their capacity, range and trajectory of delivery.
- A general arrangement plan showing the disposition of fire divisions and their class.
- Detailed plans of the fire divisions and, where applicable, copies of the certificates of approval for the insulating materials proposed.
- A plan of the construction of the fire doors.
- Plans showing the layout and capacity of the water spray system. Where alternative arrangements to those specified in Pt 7, Ch 3, 4.2, Water spray systems are proposed, evidence is to be submitted to satisfactorily demonstrate that an equivalent level of protection from radiated heat is provided, including details of the environmental conditions in which the ship is intended to operate, *See* Pt 7, Ch 3, 4.2 Water spray systems 4.2.1.
- A plan of the seating arrangements for the water monitors.
- Particulars of the means of keeping the ship in position during fire-fighting operations.
- A plan showing the fire pumps, the fire water main, the hydrants, hoses and hose nozzles and the monitors together with particulars of their delivery capability.
- Details of the fireman's outfits provided.
- Plans of any other fire-fighting systems provided.

1. 5 Definitions

1. 5. 1 `A-60 standard' means a fire-resisting construction of steel or other equivalent material, which is suitably stiffened and so constructed as to be capable of preventing the passage of smoke and flame for the complete period of the one-hour standard fire test. It is to be insulated with approved non-combustible materials, so that the average temperature on the unexposed side will not rise by

more than 139°C above the original temperature, nor will the temperature at any one point, including any joint, rise more than 180°C above the original temperature within 60 minutes.

1. 5. 2 `Steel or other equivalent material'. In this context `equivalent material' means any material which, by itself or due to insulation provided, has structural and integrity properties equivalent to steel at the end of the applicable standard fire test exposure period (e.g. aluminium with appropriate insulation).

1. 5. 3 `The standard fire test' is one in which specimens of the relevant bulkheads or decks, having a surface area of approximately 4.65 m^2 and a height of 2.44 m, resembling as closely as possible the intended construction and including, where appropriate, at least one joint, are exposed in a test furnace to heat on a time-temperature relationship, approximately as follows:

- At the end of the first 5 minutes, 538°C.
- At the end of the first 10 minutes, 704°C.
- At the end of the first 30 minutes 843°C.
- At the end of the first 60 minutes 927°C.

1. 5. 4 A `non-combustible material' means a material which neither burns nor gives off flammable vapours in sufficient quantity for self-ignition when heated to approximately 750°C. Any other material is a `combustible material'.

PART

7

CHAPTER **3 Fire-fighting Ships**

SECTION **2 Construction**

2. 1 Hull

2. 1. 1 The structure of the ship is to be strengthened as necessary to withstand the forces imposed by the fire-extinguishing systems when operating at their maximum capacity.

2. 2 Sea suctions

2. 2. 1 The sea suctions of the fire pumps are to be arranged as low as practicable in the ship's structure to avoid icing or the ingress of oil from the surface of the sea.

2. 2. 2 All sea inlet valves are to be provided with a low pressure steam or compressed air connection for clearing purposes.

2. 3 Stability

2. 3. 1 Each ship is to comply with the draught and stability requirements of the National Authority and is to have on board sufficient stability data to enable the ship to be properly loaded and handled. This data is to take full account of the effect of the monitors when they are operating at their maximum output in all possible directions of use.

2. 4 Manoeuvrability

2. 4. 1 Arrangements are to be provided to enable the ship to maintain position, so that the monitors may be effectively deployed.

2. 5 Bunkering

2. 5. 1 The Owner should ensure that any fuel which may be required while the ship is operating on station can be safely received on board.

PART

7

CHAPTER **3** **Fire-fighting Ships**

SECTION **3** **Fire-extinguishing**

3. 1 Water monitors

3. 1. 1 The minimum number of monitors, their discharge rate, their range and their height of trajectory above sea level are to comply with the requirements of Table 3. 1. 1: Fire-fighting equipment.

3. 1. 2 The monitors are to be so arranged that the required direction, range and height of trajectory can be achieved separately, with the required number of monitors operating simultaneously.

3. 1. 3 The monitors are to be capable of adequate adjustment in the vertical and horizontal direction and are to be so positioned that the jets will be unimpeded within the required range of operation.

3. 1. 4 Means are to be provided for preventing the monitor jets from impinging on the ship's structure and equipment when in external fire fighting mode. Combined systems for high pressure external fire fighting and deck foam fire fighting may be permitted provided consideration is given to monitor position and to the safety of operating pressures when used in deck foam mode and during changeover between modes. Change over between modes is to be by a simple operator action. The combined system is to be capable of simple and rapid operation in either mode.

3. 1. 5 The monitors are to be capable of being activated and manoeuvred by remote control from a protected position providing a good view of the monitors and the operating area of the water jets.

3. 1. 6 The monitors are to be of robust construction and their seating arrangements are to be of adequate strength for all modes of operation, particular attention being paid to shock loading when all the monitors are activated simultaneously.

3. 1. 7 For the class notations **Fire-fighting ship 2** and **Fire-fighting ship 3,** an arrangement with one less monitor than required in Table 3. 1. 1: Fire-fighting equipment may be considered as an equivalent solution. In such cases the total pump capacity is to be as required in Table 3. 1. 1: Fire-fighting equipment. The minimum range of monitor jets and minimum height of trajectory of jets of monitors above sea level are to be 180 m and 110 m, respectively.

3. 2 Pumps

3. 2. 1 The pumps and their piping system which are intended for serving the monitors are not to be available for services other than fire-extinguishing and water spraying. Each pump is to be provided with a dedicated independent sea chest.

3. 2. 2 Where the pumps are used for fixed water spray systems, the piping is to be independent of that supplying the monitors. The water spray systems are to be adequately protected against overpressure.

3. 2. 3 The minimum total pump capacities required are shown in Table 3. 1. 1: Fire-fighting equipment.

3. 2. 4 For assignment of the notations **Fire-fighting ship 2** or **Fire-fighting ship 3** there are to be at least two pumps serving the monitors and they should be of approximately equal capacity. For assignment of the notation **Fire-fighting ship 1** one pump only need be provided.

3. 3 Hose stations

3. 3. 1 Hose stations are to be provided on each side of the ship in accordance with Table 3. 1. 1: Fire-fighting equipment.

3. 3. 2 Each hose station is to be provided with a hydrant, a hose and a nozzle capable of producing a jet or a spray and simultaneously a jet and a spray. The hoses are to be 15 m in length and not less than 38 mm nor more than 65 mm in diameter. Where hose stations are connected to the monitor supply lines, provision is to be made to reduce the water pressure at the hydrants to an amount at which each fire hose nozzle can be safely handled by one man. The water pressure shall be sufficient to produce a water jet throw of at least 12 m.

3. 4 Fireman's outfits

3. 4. 1 The number of fireman's outfits provided, in addition to those provided in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 4, 2 Fire detection, protection and extinction or SOLAS Reg. II-2/C, *10 Fire-fighter's outfits* as applicable is to be in accordance with Table 3. 1. 1: Fire-fighting equipment. They are to be stored in a safe position which is readily accessible from the open deck.

3. 4. 2 The composition of a fireman's outfit is to be as follows:

- Protective clothing of material to protect the skin from heat radiating from the fire and from burns and scalding by steam. The outer surface is to be water-resistant.
- Boots and gloves of rubber or other electrically non-conducting material.
- A rigid helmet providing effective protection against impact.
- An electric safety lamp (hand lantern) of an approved type with a minimum operating period of three hours.
- An axe having an insulated handle.
- A self-contained breathing apparatus, which is to be capable of functioning for a period of at least 30 minutes and having a capacity of at least 1200 litres of free air. Spare, fully charged air bottles are to be provided at the rate of at least one set per required apparatus.
- For each breathing apparatus, a fireproof lifeline of sufficient length and strength is to be provided capable of being attached by means of a snaphook to the harness of the apparatus or to a separate belt, in order to prevent the breathing apparatus becoming detached when the life-line is operated.

3. 5 Recharging of equipment

3. 5. 1 A suitable air compressor for recharging the bottles used in the breathing apparatus of the fireman's outfits is to be provided. It is to be capable of recharging the bottles of the breathing apparatus required to be carried, in accordance with Table 3. 1. 1: Fire-fighting equipment, in a time not exceeding 30 minutes.

PART

7

CHAPTER 3 **Fire-fighting Ships**

SECTION 4 **Fire protection**

4. 1 General

4. 1. 1 In ships which are not provided with a water spray system as described in Pt 7, Ch 3, 4.2, Water spray systems all windows and port lights are to be provided with efficient deadlights or external steel shutters, except in the wheelhouse.

4. 2 Water spray systems

4. 2. 1 Ships which are intended to operate in close proximity to a large fire will require protection from the heat radiated from the fire. Such protection may be afforded by a system which provides a water spray over the surface of the ship, or by a combination of insulation and a water spray system. Alternative arrangements providing an equivalent level of protection may be accepted where it can be demonstrated that such arrangements are effective for the environmental conditions in which the ship is intended to operate.

4. 2. 2 The water spray system is to be a fixed system which is capable of delivering a spray of water over all the exposed external vertical surfaces of the hull in the lightest sea-going condition, including the superstructures and deckhouses and over the monitor position. The water spray system will also be required to cover the areas of deck which form the crowns of machinery spaces and other spaces containing combustible materials.

4. 2. 3 The system is to have a capacity of 10 litres/min per m^2 of the protected area of uninsulated steel and 5 litres/min per m^2 of the protected area which is insulated internally to A-60 standard.

4. 2. 4 The system may be divided into sections, so that it will be possible to enable the closing down of those sections covering surfaces which are not exposed to radiant heat.

4. 2. 5 The nozzles are to be arranged to give an even distribution of water spray over the protected area.

4. 2. 6 The pumping capacity is to be sufficient to supply simultaneously at the required pressure the sections which serve the maximum area which may be exposed to radiant heat from a fire. If the main fire pumps are used for this purpose, they are to be capable of operating this system and the monitors and hose stations simultaneously at the required pressures, *See also* Pt 7, Ch 3, 3.2 Pumps 3.2.2.

4. 2. 7 Deck scuppers and freeing ports are to be of sufficient area to ensure efficient drainage of water from decks and horizontal surfaces in all conditions when the water spray system is in operation.

PART

7

CHAPTER **3** **Fire-fighting Ships**

SECTION **5** **Lighting**

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 Two searchlights should be provided for illuminating the burning structure and facilitate the effective deployment of the water monitors at night.

5. 1. 2 The searchlights are to be capable of providing at a range of 250 m in clear atmospheric conditions a level of illumination of 50 lux within an area of not less than 11 m diameter. They are to be capable of being adjusted in the horizontal and vertical directions.

PART

7

CHAPTER **4** **Dynamic Positioning Systems**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**2980**
	1. 1	Application	2980
	1. 2	Classification notations	2980
	1. 3	Information and plans required to be submitted	2981
SECTION 2	**Class notation DP(CM)**		**2983**
	2. 1	General	2983
	2. 2	Thrusters	2983
	2. 3	Electrical systems	2983
	2. 4	ontrol stations	2984
	2. 5	Control system	2985
SECTION 3	**Class notation DP(AM)**		**2987**
	3. 1	Requirements	2987
SECTION 4	**Class notation DP(AA)**		**2988**
	4. 1	Requirements	2988
SECTION 5	**Class notation DP(AAA)**		**2990**
	5. 1	Requirements	2990
SECTION 6	**Performance Capability Rating (PCR)**		**2992**
	6. 1	Requirements	2992
SECTION 7	**Testing**		**2993**
	7. 1	General	2993

PART

7

CHAPTER 4 Dynamic Positioning Systems

SECTION 1 General

1. 1 Application

1. 1. 1 The requirements of this Chapter apply to ships with installed dynamic positioning systems and are additional to those applicable in other Parts of these Rules.

1. 1. 2 A ship provided with a dynamic positioning system in accordance with these Rules will be eligible for an appropriate class notation which will be recorded in the *Register Book*.

1. 1. 3 Requirements, additional to these Rules may be imposed by the National Administration with whom the ship is registered and/or by the administration within whose territorial jurisdiction it is intended to operate. Where national legislative requirements exist, compliance with such regulations shall also be necessary.

1. 1. 4 For the purpose of these Rules, dynamic positioning means the provision of a hydrodynamic system with automatic and/or manual control capable of maintaining the heading and position of the ship during operation within specified limits and environmental conditions.

1. 1. 5 For the purpose of these Rules, the area of operation is the specified allowable position deviation from a set point, *See* Pt 7, Ch 4, 1.3 Information and plans required to be submitted 1.3.2.

1. 1. 6 Special consideration will be given where the dynamic positioning system is used primarily for purposes other than position keeping, e.g. track following. A descriptive note may be entered in the *Register Book* to this effect.

1. 2 Classification notations

1. 2. 1 Ships complying with the requirements of this Chapter will be eligible for one of the following class notations, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 2 Classification Regulations:

a. **DP(CM)** *See* Pt 7, Ch 4, 2 Class notation DP(CM).
b. **DP(AM)** *See* Pt 7, Ch 4, 3 Class notation DP(AM).
c. **DP(AA)** *See* Pt 7, Ch 4, 4 Class notation DP(AA).
d. **DP(AAA)** *See* Pt 7, Ch 4, 5 Class notation DP(AAA).

1. 2. 2 The notations given in Pt 7, Ch 4, 1.2 Classification notations 1.2.1 may be supplemented with a Performance Capability Rating (**PCR**). This rating indicates the calculated percentage of time that a ship is capable of maintaining heading and position under a standard set of environmental conditions (North Sea), *See* Pt 7, Ch 4, 6 Performance Capability Rating (PCR).

1. 2. 3 Additional descriptive notes may be entered in the *Register Book* indicating the type of position reference system, control system, etc.

1. 2. 4 Where a **DP** notation is not requested, dynamic positioning systems are to be installed in accordance with the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 4, 2 Class notation DP(CM) as far as is practicable.

1. 3 Information and plans required to be submitted

1. 3. 1 The information and plans specified in Pt 7, Ch 4, 1.3 Information and plans required to be submitted 1.3.2 to Pt 7, Ch 4, 1.3 Information and plans required to be submitted 1.3.7 are to be submitted in triplicate. The Operation Manuals specified in Pt 7, Ch 4, 1.3 Information and plans required to be submitted 1.3.9 are to be submitted in a single set.

1. 3. 2 Details of the limits of the area of operation and heading deviations, together with proposals for redundancy and segregation provided in the machinery, *Electrical Installations* and control systems, are to be submitted. These proposals are to take account of the possible loss of performance capability should a component fail or in the event of fire or flooding, *See also* Pt 7, Ch 4, 1.3 Information and plans required to be submitted 1.3.6 and Pt 7, Ch 4, 4 Class notation DP(AA) and Pt 7, Ch 4, 5 Class notation DP(AAA).

1. 3. 3 Where a common power source is utilized for thrusters, details of the total maximum load required for dynamic positioning are to be submitted.

1. 3. 4 Plans of the following, together with particulars of ratings in accordance with the relevant Parts of the Rules, are to be submitted for:

a. Prime movers, gearing, shafting, propellers and thrusters.
b. Machinery piping systems.
c. *Electrical Installations*.
d. Pressure vessels for use with dynamic positioning system.

1. 3. 5 Plans of control, alarm and safety systems, including the following, are to be submitted:

a. Functional block diagrams of the control system(s).
b. Functional block diagrams of the position reference systems and the environmental sensors.
c. Details of the electrical supply to the control system(s), the position reference system(s) and the environmental sensors.
d. Details of the monitoring functions of the controllers, sensors and reference systems, together with a description of the monitoring functions.
e. List of equipment with identification of the manufacturer, type and model.
f. Details of the control stations, e.g. control panels and consoles, including the location of the control stations.
g. Test schedules (for both works testing and sea trials) that are to include the methods of testing and the test facilities provided.

1. 3. 6 For assignment of **DP(AA)** or **DP(AAA)** notation, a Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA) is to be submitted, demonstrating that adequate segregation and redundancy of the machinery, the electrical installation and the control systems have been achieved in order to maintain position in the event of equipment failure (*See* Pt 7, Ch 4, 4 Class notation DP(AA)); or fire or flooding, *See* Pt 7, Ch 4, 5 Class notation DP(AAA). The FMEA is to take a formal and structured approach and is to be performed in accordance with an acceptable and relevant national or international standard, e.g. IEC 60812.

1. 3. 7 Where the DP notation is to be supplemented with a Performance Capability Rating (**PCR**) (*See* Pt 7, Ch 4, 1.2 Classification notations 1.2.2), the following information is to be submitted for assignment of a PCR:

a. Lines plan.
b. General arrangement.
c. Details of thruster arrangement.
d. Thruster powers and thrusts.

1. 3. 8 Details of the intended modes of operation are to be submitted. As a minimum, these are to include:

a. a description of all the intended operating modes;

b. details of the system configuration required for each mode of operation. When applicable, this is to include the configuration needed to meet the FMEA requirements of Pt 7, Ch 4, 1.3 Information and plans required to be submitted 1.3.6; and
c. the procedures which are to be followed in each operating mode during normal and abnormal conditions.

1. 3. 9 A set of the operation and maintenance manuals is to be placed and retained on board the ship.

PART

7

CHAPTER 4 Dynamic Positioning Systems

SECTION 2 Class notation DP(CM)

2. 1 General

2. 1. 1 For assignment of **DP(CM)** notation, the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 4, 2.1 General 2.1.2 and Pt 7, Ch 4, 2.2 Thrusters to Pt 7, Ch 4, 2.5 Control system are to be complied with.

2. 1. 2 Control engineering systems, electrical and piping installations and machinery items are to be designed, constructed, installed and tested in accordance with the relevant requirements of Pt 5 Main and Auxiliary Machinery and Pt 6 Control, Electrical, Refrigeration and Fire.

2. 2 Thrusters

2. 2. 1 Thruster installations are to be designed, constructed, installed and tested in accordance with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 20 Azimuth Thrusters, as applicable.

2. 2. 2 Thruster installations are to be designed to minimize potential interference with other thrusters, sensors, hull or other surfaces, which could be encountered in the service for which the ship is intended.

2. 2. 3 Thruster intakes are to be located at sufficient depth to reduce the possibility of ingesting floating debris and vortex formation.

2. 2. 4 The response and repeatability of thrusters to changes in propeller pitch or propeller speed/direction of rotation are to be suitable for maintaining the area of operation and heading within specified limits.

2. 2. 5 Failure of a thruster system including pitch, azimuth and/or speed control is not to cause an increase in thrust magnitude or change in thrust direction of the failed thruster.

2. 2. 6 Thrusters are to be provided with individual emergency stop systems in the DP control station. The emergency stop system is to be provided with loop monitoring facilities that will initiate an alarm in accordance with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.3 Alarm systems, general requirements. In the event that the loop monitoring alarm is initiated the thruster output is to remain unaltered.

2. 2. 7 Alternative energy storage (e.g. batteries and fly-wheels) may be used as sources of power to thrusters.

2. 3 Electrical systems

2. 3. 1 This Section applies to the electrical generation and distribution system associated with the Dynamic Positioning System, whether this generating system is dedicated to the DP system or forms a central generating arrangement for all loads on the ship.

2. 3. 2 The electrical installation is to be designed, constructed and installed, in accordance with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2 Electrical Engineering, together with the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 4, 2.3 Electrical systems 2.3.3 to Pt 7, Ch 4, 2.3 Electrical systems 2.3.12.

2. 3. 3 Where thrusters are electrically driven, the relevant requirements, including surveys, of Pt 6, Ch 2, 16 Electric propulsion are to be complied with.

2. 3. 4 Essential services are those defined in Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.6, Definitions, as applicable, together with thruster auxiliaries, computers, generator and thruster control equipment, reference systems, environmental sensors and electrically driven thrusters.

2. 3. 5 The number and rating of generator sets, transformers and converter equipment are to be sufficient to ensure the operation of essential services, even when one generating set, transformer or converter equipment is out of action.

2. 3. 6 For electrically driven thruster systems, the generator rating is to be determined by the maximum dynamic positioning load, together with the maximum ancillary load.

2. 3. 7 There are to be arrangements to prevent overloading of the running generator(s). The tripping of non-essential loads and the temporary reduction in the load demands of electrically driven thrusters may form part of these arrangements. The arrangements are to ensure that sudden load changes resulting from single faults or equipment failures do not create a loss of electrical supplies.

2. 3. 8 An alarm is to be initiated when the total electrical load exceeds a preset percentage of the running generator(s) capacity. This alarm is to be adjustable between 50 and 100% of the running capacity and is to be set with regard to the number of generators in service and the effect of the loss of any one generator.

2. 3. 9 On loss of power due to the failure of the operating generator(s), there is to be provision for the automatic starting and connection to the switchboard of a standby set and the automatic sequential restarting of essential services. Consideration may be given to cases where arrangements for automatic re-starting of thrusters would not be practicable. Details are to be submitted in such cases to show that manual means for the immediate re-starting of thrusters would be available at the control station from where the dynamic positioning system would be operated.

2. 3. 10 Any loads that require an uninterrupted electrical power supply are to be provided with uninterruptible power systems (UPS) having a capacity for a minimum of 30 minutes' operation following loss of the main supply. A UPS is to be provided for each control computer system.

2. 3. 11 An indication of the absorbed power and the available on-line generating capacity is to be provided at the main dynamic positioning control station.

2. 3. 12 Essential services are to be served by individual circuits. Essential services that are duplicated are:

a. to be supplied from independent sections of their switchboard or section board;
b. to have their circuits separated throughout their length as widely as is practicable; and
c. not to depend upon common feeders, transformers, converters, protective devices, control circuits or controlgear assemblies to operate.

2. 4 ontrol stations

2. 4. 1 Control stations from which the dynamic positioning system may be operated are to be designed in accordance with sound ergonomic principles, and are to be provided with sufficient instrumentation to provide effective control and indicate that the systems are functioning correctly. Colour schemes and screen layouts are to be selected such that necessary information is readily available and clearly displayed. *See also* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.10, Programmable electronic systems - General requirements for general ergonomic requirements.

2. 4. 2 Control station(s) are to be located such that the operator has a good view of the ship's exterior limits and surrounding area.

2. 4. 3 Indication of the following is to be provided at each station from which it is possible to control the dynamic positioning system:

a. The heading and location of the ship relative to the desired reference point or course.
b. Vectorial thrust output, individual and total.
c. Operational status of position reference systems and environmental sensors.
d. Environmental conditions, e.g. wind speed and direction.
e. Availability status of standby thrusters.

2. 4. 4 At least one position reference system, heading reference sensor and wind sensor are to be provided to ensure that the specified area of operation and heading can be effectively maintained.

2. 4. 5 Position reference systems are to incorporate measurement techniques suitable for the service conditions for which the ship is intended.

2. 4. 6 Where necessary for the correct functioning of a position reference system, a vertical reference sensor is to be provided to correct for the pitch and roll of the ship. There are to be at least as many vertical reference units as there are associated position reference systems.

2. 4. 7 Alarms, in accordance with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.3 Alarm systems, general requirements, are to be provided for the following fault conditions as applicable:

a. When the ship deviates from the area of operation.
b. When the heading exceeds the allowable deviation.
c. Position reference system fault (for each reference system).
d. Heading reference sensor fault.
e. Vertical reference sensor fault.
f. Wind sensor fault.
g. Taut wire excursion limit.
h. Automatic changeover to a standby position reference system or environmental sensor.

A record of the occurrences of alarms and warnings, and of status changes is to be provided.

2. 5 Control system

2. 5. 1 A centralised remote manual control system is to be provided such that changes in the vectorial thrust output may be readily effected by a single operator action.

2. 5. 2 Suitable processing and comparative techniques are to be provided to validate the control system inputs from position and other sensors. Abnormal signal errors revealed by the validity checks are to operate alarms.

2. 5. 3 The control system for dynamic positioning operation is to be stable throughout its operational range and is to meet the specified performance and accuracy criteria.

2. 5. 4 Automatic controls are to be provided to maintain the heading of the ship within specified limits.

2. 5. 5 The allowable deviation from the desired heading is to be adjustable, but should not exceed the specified limits, *See* Pt 7, Ch 4, 1.1 Application 1.1.4. Arrangements are to be provided to fix and identify the set point for the desired heading.

2. 5. 6 Alarms, in accordance with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.3 Alarm systems, general requirements, are to be provided for the following fault conditions:

a. Control computer system fault.
b. Automatic changeover to a standby control computer system, as applicable, *See* Pt 7, Ch 4, 4.1 Requirements 4.1.8.

2. 5. 7 Safeguards are to be implemented to ensure the integrity of the control system by preventing the connection of unauthorised or unapproved devices or systems.

2. 5. 8 Where external forces from mission-related systems (cable laying, pipe laying, mooring, etc.) have a direct impact on DP performance, the influence of these systems is to be considered within the DP control system design:

a. data inputs from the mission-related system are to be provided automatically to the DP control system; and

b. provision is to be made to provide such data inputs into the DP control system manually.

PART

7

CHAPTER **4 Dynamic Positioning Systems**

SECTION **3 Class notation DP(AM)**

3. 1 Requirements

3. 1. 1 For assignment of **DP(AM)** notation the applicable requirements of Pt 7, Ch 4, 2 Class notation DP(CM) together with Pt 7, Ch 4, 3.1 Requirements 3.1.2 to Pt 7, Ch 4, 3.1 Requirements 3.1.6, are to be complied with.

3. 1. 2 An automatic and a manual control system are to be provided and arranged to operate independently, so that failure in one system will not render the other system inoperative. Arrangements for manual control are to satisfy the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 4, 2 Class notation DP(CM) when the automatic system is inoperative.

3. 1. 3 At least two position reference systems suitable for the intended service conditions and incorporating different measurement techniques, are to be provided and arranged, so that a failure in one system will not render the other system inoperative. Special consideration will be given where the use of different techniques would not be practicable during DP operations.

3. 1. 4 At least two heading reference sensors and two wind sensors are to be provided and arranged, so that a failure of one sensor will not render the other sensor(s) inoperative.

3. 1. 5 In the event of a single failure of a position reference, heading reference, or wind sensor, the control systems are to continue operating on signals from the remaining sensors without manual intervention.

3. 1. 6 The area of operation is to be adjustable, but is not to exceed the specified limits based on a percentage of water depth, or as applicable, a defined absolute or relative surface movement. Arrangements are to be provided to fix and identify the set point for the area of operation .

PART

7

CHAPTER **4** **Dynamic Positioning Systems**

SECTION **4** **Class notation DP(AA)**

4. 1 Requirements

4. 1. 1 For assignment of **DP(AA)** notation, the applicable requirements of Pt 7, Ch 4, 2 Class notation DP(CM) and Pt 7, Ch 4, 3 Class notation DP(AM), together with Pt 7, Ch 4, 4.1 Requirements 4.1.2 to Pt 7, Ch 4, 4.1 Requirements 4.1.11 are to be complied with.

4. 1. 2 Power, control and thruster systems and other systems necessary for, or which could affect, the correct functioning of the DP system are to be provided and configured such that a fault in any active component or system will not result in a loss of position. This is to be verified by means of a FMEA, *See* Pt 7, Ch 4, 1.3 Information and plans required to be submitted 1.3.6. Such components may include, but are not restricted to, the following:

a. Prime movers (e.g. auxiliary engines).
b. Generators and their excitation equipment.
c. Gearing.
d. Pumps.
e. Fans.
f. Switchgear and controlgear, including their assemblies.
g. Thrusters.
h. Valves (where power actuated).

Systems which are not part of the DP system but which, in the event of a fault, could affect the correct functioning of the DP system (for example, fire suppression systems, engine ventilation systems, shutdown systems, etc.) are to be included in the FMEA.

4. 1. 3 Cables, pipes and other components essential for correct functioning of the DP system are to be located and protected, where necessary, such that the risk of fire or mechanical damage is minimised.

4. 1. 4 The electrical generation and distribution arrangements are to be isolatable such that at least the minimum number of any duplicated, or otherwise replicated, items required to provide essential services would remain operational in the event of a single fault. Evidence to verify compliance with this requirement is to be submitted for consideration when required; for example, where it is intended to operate with the independent sections required by Pt 7, Ch 4, 2.3 Electrical systems 2.3.12 connected together.

4. 1. 5 Where the independent switchboards or section boards required by Pt 7, Ch 4, 2.3 Electrical systems 2.3.12 are to be connected together, this is to be via two multipole circuit-breakers connected in series. Where alternative arrangements are proposed, these may be accompanied by a technical justification showing compliance with Pt 7, Ch 4, 4.1 Requirements 4.1.4.

4. 1. 6 For electrically driven thruster systems:

a. a reduction in position keeping capability may be accepted, but this is not to result in a loss of position in the environmental conditions in which the DP system is intended to operate; and

b. provision is to be made for the automatic starting, synchronising and load sharing of a non-running generator before the load reaches the alarm level required by Pt 7, Ch 4, 2.3 Electrical systems 2.3.8.

4. 1. 7 Two automatic control systems are to be provided and arranged to operate independently, so that failure in one system will not render the other system inoperative.

4. 1. 8 Control systems are to be arranged such that, in the event of failure of the working control system, the standby system takes control automatically without manual intervention and without any adverse effect of the ship's station keeping performance.

4. 1. 9 At least three position reference systems incorporating at least two different measurement techniques are to be provided and arranged so that a failure in one system will not render the other systems inoperative.

4. 1. 10 At least three heading reference sensors are to be provided and arranged so that a failure of one sensor will not render the other sensors inoperative.

4. 1. 11 The DP system is to incorporate a computer based consequence analysis to determine whether the position of the vessel would remain within the limits set by the operator in the event of a worst case fault. An audible and visual alarm is to be initiated where the consequence analysis determines that the limits would be exceeded. Where applicable to the timescale for safely terminating operations, the consequence analysis is to allow for manual input of predicted environmental conditions.

4. 1. 12 The DP system is to include monitoring of all devices where the FMEA shows that the loss of the device will result in the loss of redundancy provision. Such monitoring is to be provided for all devices where the loss has the potential for failure of equipment to perform an on-demand function, such as protective functions in electrical systems and switchboards, standby equipment, or backup power supplies. The monitoring is to initiate an alarm in accordance with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.3 Alarm systems, general requirements.

PART

7

CHAPTER **4** **Dynamic Positioning Systems**

SECTION **5** **Class notation DP(AAA)**

5. 1 Requirements

5. 1. 1 For assignment of **DP(AAA)** notation, the applicable requirements of Pt 7, Ch 4, 2 Class notation DP(CM), Pt 7, Ch 4, 3 Class notation DP(AM) and Pt 7, Ch 4, 4 Class notation DP(AA), together with Pt 7, Ch 4, 5.1 Requirements 5.1.2 to Pt 7, Ch 4, 5.1 Requirements 5.1.3 are to be complied with.

5. 1. 2 The DP system is to be arranged such that failure of any component or system necessary for the continuing correct functioning of the DP system, or the loss of any one compartment as a result of fire or flooding, will not result in a loss of position. This is to be verified by means of a FMEA. *See* Pt 7, Ch 4, 1.3 Information and plans required to be submitted 1.3.6.

5. 1. 3 Thruster units are to be installed in separate machinery compartments, separated by a watertight A-60 class division.

5. 1. 4 Generating sets, switchboards and associated equipment are to be located in at least two compartments separated by an A–60 class division, so that at least half of the equipment will be available following a fire or similar fault in one of the compartments. If the equipment is located below the operational waterline, the division is also to be watertight. There is to be provision to connect the switchboard sections together by means of circuit-breakers.

5. 1. 5 Duplicated cables and pipes for services essential for the correct functioning of the DP system are not to be routed through the same compartments. If this is not practicable, then they are to be carried in A-60 protected ducts. The termination arrangements are also to take due account of the degree of protection. Alternative arrangements will be considered.

5. 1. 6 Where duplicated cables and pipes for services essential for the correct functioning of the DP system are installed in adjacent compartments, A-60 rated fire protection is to be provided between the spaces. Details of alternative arrangements which demonstrate essential equipment located in an adjacent space will continue to operate satisfactorily and essential services will continue to be available in the event of a fire in the adjacent space may be submitted for consideration.

5. 1. 7 An additional/emergency automatic control unit is to be provided at an emergency control station, in a compartment separate from that for the main control station, and is to be arranged to operate independently from the working and standby control units required by Pt 7, Ch 4, 4.1 Requirements 4.1.8.

5. 1. 8 Arrangements are to be provided such that, in the event of a failure of the working and standby control units, a smooth transfer of control to the emergency control unit may be effected from the emergency control station by manual means.

5. 1. 9 Arrangements are to be provided at the emergency control station so that changes in the resultant vectorial thrust output may be readily effected by a single operator action.

5. 1. 10 The control/indication unit of one of the position reference systems required by Pt 7, Ch 4, 4.1 Requirements 4.1.9 is to be located at the emergency control station. A repeater control/indication unit from this system is to be located at the main control station.

5. 1. 11 One of the heading reference sensors required by Pt 7, Ch 4, 4.1 Requirements 4.1.10 is to be located at the emergency control station.

5. 1. 12 One wind sensor is to directly supply the additional/emergency control unit.

5. 1. 13 The additional/emergency control unit is to be supplied from its own independent UPS, *See* Pt 7, Ch 4, 2.3 Electrical systems 2.3.10.

PART

7

CHAPTER **4** **Dynamic Positioning Systems**

SECTION **6** **Performance Capability Rating (PCR)**

6. 1 Requirements

6. 1. 1 Where the **DP** notation is to be supplemented with a Performance Capability Rating (PCR) (*See* Pt 7, Ch 4, 1.2 Classification notations 1.2.2), the calculation will be carried out using the information specified in Pt 7, Ch 4, 1.3 Information and plans required to be submitted 1.3.7.

6. 1. 2 Two rating numerals are calculated:

a. The first numeral represents the percentage of time that the ship can remain on station when subjected to a set of standard environmental conditions (North Sea fully developed) with all thrusters operating.

b. The second numeral represents the percentage of time that the ship can remain on station when subjected to a set of standard environmental conditions (North Sea fully developed) with the most effective thruster being inoperative.

A typical rating might be (95), (70).

6. 1. 3 In calculating the PCR, the following parameters are considered:

a. Thruster force vectors.

b. Thruster/thruster, thruster/hull and thruster/current interactions.

c. Sea current loads on the ship.

d. Wind force on the ship.

e. Wave drift force on the ship.

6. 1. 4 Where the ship has been subject to alteration or addition, which may affect the performance characteristics of the DP system, the PCR is to be recalculated.

PART

7

CHAPTER **4** **Dynamic Positioning Systems**

SECTION **7** **Testing**

7. 1 General

7. 1. 1 Control units are to be surveyed at the manufacturer's works and are to be tested in accordance with the approved test schedule to the Surveyor's satisfaction, *See* Pt 7, Ch 4, 1.3 Information and plans required to be submitted 1.3.5.g.

7. 1. 2 Before a new installation (or any existing installation, which has been subject to alteration or addition which may affect the performance characteristics of the system) is put into service, sea trials are to be carried out to the approved schedule and to the Surveyor's satisfaction, *See* Pt 7, Ch 4, 1.3 Information and plans required to be submitted 1.3.5.g.

7. 1. 3 The suitability of the dynamic positioning system is to be demonstrated during sea trials, observing the following:

a. Response of the system to simulated failures of major items of control and mechanical equipment, including loss of electrical power, verifying the findings of the FMEA where required.

b. Response of the system under a set of predetermined manoeuvres for changing:

i. Location of area of operation.

ii. Heading of the ship.

c. Continuous operation of the system over a period of four to six hours.

7. 1. 4 Two copies of the dynamic positioning sea trial test schedules, as required by Pt 7, Ch 4, 1.3 Information and plans required to be submitted 1.3.5.g, each signed by the Surveyor and Builder, are to be provided on completion of the survey. One copy is to be placed and retained on board the ship and the other submitted to ACS.

7. 1. 5 Records and data regarding the performance capability of the dynamic positioning system are to be maintained on board the ship and are to be made available at the time of the Annual Survey, *See* Pt 1, Ch 3, 2.2 Annual Surveys 2.2.24.

PART

7

CHAPTER 5 Ships Equipped for Oil Recovery Operations

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**2996**
	1. 1	Application	2996
	1. 2	Classification and class notations	2996
	1. 3	Surveys	2996
	1. 4	Plans and supporting documentation	2996
SECTION 2	**Oil recovery**		**2998**
	2. 1	General	2998
	2. 2	Equipment and deck arrangement	2998
SECTION 3	**Ship structure**		**2999**
	3. 1	Structural arrangement	2999
	3. 2	Scantlings	3000
SECTION 4	**Machinery arrangements**		**3001**
	4. 1	Piping arrangements	3001
	4. 2	Pump room for recovered oil	3001
	4. 3	Ventilation of machinery spaces	3002
	4. 4	Exhaust systems	3002
	4. 5	Miscellaneous	3002
SECTION 5	**Electrical equipment**		**3003**
	5. 1	General	3003
	5. 2	Systems of supply and distribution	3003
	5. 3	Hazardous areas	3003
	5. 4	Ventilation	3005
	5. 5	Pressurisation	3005
	5. 6	Selection of electrical equipment for installation in hazardous areas	3006
SECTION 6	**Fire protection and extinction**		**3008**
	6. 1	Structural fire protection	3008

6. 2 Fire-extinguishing arrangements 3008
6. 3 Fireman's outfits 3009
SECTION 7 Operating Manual 3010
7. 1 General 3010

PART

7

CHAPTER 5 Ships Equipped for Oil Recovery Operations

SECTION 1 General

1. 1 Application

1. 1. 1 The requirements of this Chapter apply to ships equipped to handle, store and transport oil recovered from a spill in emergency situations.

1. 1. 2 For ships of less than 500 gross tons, also fishing vessels of 12 m length and over, but less than 45 m length, and ships not fitted with propelling machinery, the arrangements for fire protection and extinction are to comply with Pt 7, Ch 5, 6 Fire protection and extinction. Consideration will be given to the acceptance of the fire safety measures for oil recovery ships prescribed and approved by the Government of the Flag State.

1. 1. 3 For ships of 500 gross tons and over, also fishing vessels of 45 m length and over, it is the responsibility of the Government of the Flag State to give effect to the fire safety measures, *See* Pt 6, Ch 4, 1.1, Application. Where the Government of the Flag State has no National Requirements for oil recovery ships, ACS will apply the fire safety measures required by Pt 7, Ch 5, 6 Fire protection and extinction for classification purposes.

1. 1. 4 Requirements additional to these Rules may be imposed by the National Authority with whom the ship is registered and/or by the Administration within whose territorial jurisdiction the ship is intended to operate.

1. 2 Classification and class notations

1. 2. 1 A ship complying with the applicable requirements of this Chapter will be eligible for the notation **Oil Recovery** or **Oil Recovery (F.P. >60°C)** as appropriate.

1. 2. 2 A ship dedicated solely to oil recovery duties and complying with the requirements of this Chapter applicable to the **Oil Recovery** notation will be assigned the class notation **Oil Recovery Ship**. The scantlings will be specially considered on the basis of the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 9 Double Hull Oil Tankers.

1. 3 Surveys

1. 3. 1 The arrangements and equipment referred to in this Chapter are to be examined and tested on completion of the installation and, subsequently, annually.

1. 4 Plans and supporting documentation

1. 4. 1 In addition to the supporting documentation required for classification as specified in other Parts of the Rules, details relevant to oil recovery operations are to be submitted.

1. 4. 2 Plans covering the following items are to be submitted for approval:

- Structural support in way of equipment.
- Structural arrangement of recovered oil tanks including access.
- Piping system arrangements for recovered oil including venting.
- Power supply, electrical protection and cabling for oil recovery equipment.
- Hazardous areas and spaces (not applicable for the notation **Oil Recovery (F.P. >60°C)**).
- Electrical equipment located in hazardous areas and spaces (not applicable for the notation **Oil Recovery (F.P. >60°C)**).
- Structural fire protection and extinguishing equipment.

1. 4. 3 The following supporting documents are to be submitted:

- General arrangement of recovery equipment, including portable items, handling facilities, access, ventilation details, arrangement of other openings to hazardous spaces and adjacent compartments, machinery exhaust outlet positions.
- Gas detection equipment specification.
- Operating Manual.

1. 4. 4 The following supporting calculations are to be submitted:

- Deck equipment support structure loadings.
- Schedule of loads on the electrical system for oil recovery operations.

PART

7

CHAPTER 5 Ships Equipped for Oil Recovery Operations

SECTION 2 Oil recovery

2. 1 General

2. 1. 1 The ship is to be capable of performing the following functions at a safe distance from the source of oil spill:

a. Removal of the oil from the surface of the sea.

b. Handling, storage and transportation of the recovered oil.

2. 2 Equipment and deck arrangement

2. 2. 1 The arrangements for collection, handling and transfer of recovered oil are to be such that the probability of oil spill on deck and overflow is minimised and the operation is to be performed as far away from the accommodation spaces as practicable.

2. 2. 2 In way of working areas, hand rails and gratings or other non-slip surfaces are to be provided.

2. 2. 3 Means are to be provided to keep deck spills away from the accommodation and service areas. This may be accomplished by provision of a permanent continuous coaming not less than 150 mm high.

2. 2. 4 For assignment of the notations **Oil Recovery** or **Oil Recovery Ship**, at least two portable instruments are to be available on board for gas detection.

2. 2. 5 For engines used in oil recovery operations, *See* Pt 7, Ch 5, 4.4 Exhaust systems.

2. 2. 6 Masts and derricks, etc. are to comply with the appropriate Sections of Chapters *Ch 2 Derrick Systems and Ch 3 Launch and Recovery Appliances for Survival Craft and Rescue Boats of ACS's Code for Lifting Appliances in a Marine Environment, incorporating Notice No. 1*.

PART

7

CHAPTER **5** **Ships Equipped for Oil Recovery Operations**

SECTION **3** **Ship structure**

3. 1 Structural arrangement

3. 1. 1 The position of bulkheads is to comply with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 3, 4 Bulkhead requirements.

3. 1. 2 Any tanks not utilised during oil recovery operations are to be arranged so that recovered oil cannot be transferred to them inadvertently.

3. 1. 3 In tanks intended for recovered oil, internal obstructions are to be avoided as far as practicable to prevent the entrapment of foreign objects usually present in recovered oil. Adequate drainage openings are to be provided to ensure free flow of residues to assist in cleaning and gas freeing on completion of recovery operations.

3. 1. 4 Tanks used for the storage of recovered oil are to be located outside the accommodation and machinery spaces.

3. 1. 5 Except where permitted by Pt 7, Ch 5, 3.1 Structural arrangement 3.1.6 and Pt 7, Ch 5, 3.1 Structural arrangement 3.1.7, tanks intended for the storage of recovered oil are to be separated from accommodation and machinery spaces by cofferdams. Cofferdams are to be at least one frame spacing in length (600 mm minimum) and are to cover the whole area of the boundary under consideration.

3. 1. 6 A pump room, fuel oil bunker, water ballast tank or other closed space where oil recovery handling equipment is stored will be accepted in lieu of a cofferdam.

3. 1. 7 In the case of a ship not primarily intended for oil recovery operations, where cofferdams are impractical to arrange, tanks arranged adjacent to machinery spaces may be accepted for storage of recovered oil. Acceptance will be conditional upon the tank boundary bulkheads being readily accessible for inspection. The bulkheads are to be carried continuously through joining structure to the top of the tank, where full penetration welding is to be carried out. Such tanks will require to be pressure tested at every Periodical Survey, *See* Table 1. 9. 1: Testing requirements in Pt 3, Ch 1, as applicable to oil tankers. Special consideration will be given to arrangements incorporating double bottom tanks in these locations.

3. 1. 8 All openings to tanks for recovered oil are to be located on the open deck. This includes sounding pipes, vent pipes, and hatches for the deployment of portable pumps and hoses. Suitable access hatches, not less than 600 mm x 600 mm, are to be arranged to facilitate tank cleaning and gas freeing. Dual access hatches, as widely separated as practicable, are to be provided for tanks of a cellular internal structure.

3. 1. 9 Where there is a risk of significant sloshing induced loads, additional strength calculations may be required, *See* Pt 3, Ch 3, 5.4 Design pressure for partially filled tanks.

3. 1. 10 Where recovered oil temperatures are to be increased significantly above 65°C during transit voyages, attention is drawn to Pt 4, Ch 9, 12 Cargo temperatures regarding thermal stress considerations.

3. 2 Scantlings

3. 2. 1 The scantlings and arrangements are, in general, to be as required by Pt 4, Ch 1 General Cargo Ships. If the ship is to perform the duties of a supply ship the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 4 Offshore Support Vessels are also to be complied with, as applicable.

PART

7

CHAPTER **5** **Ships Equipped for Oil Recovery Operations**

SECTION **4** **Machinery arrangements**

4. 1 Piping arrangements

4. 1. 1 Piping arrangements for the recovered oil system are to be located outside machinery spaces and are to have no connections to such spaces.

4. 1. 2 When the ship is in oil recovery mode, means are to be provided to isolate the oil recovery system from any other system to which it may be connected.

4. 1. 3 For assignment of the notations **Oil Recovery** or **Oil Recovery Ship**, ventilation outlets from the recovered oil tanks are to have a minimum height of 2.4 m above deck and be fitted with flame screens. Temporary pipe sections may be used for this purpose. Outlets are to be located not less than a 5 m radius from the nearest air intakes and openings to accommodation and enclosed spaces containing a source of ignition and from deck machinery and equipment which may constitute an ignition hazard.

4. 1. 4 Each recovered oil tank is to be fitted with suitable means of ascertaining the liquid level in the tank. Sounding pipes or other approved devices are acceptable for this purpose.

4. 2 Pump room for recovered oil

4. 2. 1 Pump rooms are to be fitted with a permanent ventilation system of the mechanical extraction type.

4. 2. 2 The ventilation system is to be capable of being operated from outside the compartment being ventilated and a notice is to be fixed near the entrance stating that no person is to enter the space until the ventilation system has been in operation for a specified period, sufficient to achieve at least five air changes based on the gross volume of the space.

4. 2. 3 The ventilation system is to be capable of at least six air changes per hour, based on the gross volume of the space.

4. 2. 4 Protection screens of not more than 13 mm square mesh are to be fitted outside openings of ventilation ducts, and ventilation intakes are to be so arranged as to minimise the possibility of recycling hazardous vapours from any ventilation discharge opening. Vent exhausts are to be arranged to discharge to a safe place on the open deck and comply with the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 5, 4.2 Pump room for recovered oil 4.2.5.

Note If the pump room is designed to recover chemicals listed in *Chapter 17 Summary of minimum requirements* of the *IBC Code - International Code for the Construction and Equipment of Ships Carrying Dangerous Chemicals in BulkAmended by Resolution MEPC.225(64)* the vent exhausts are to be arranged to discharge upwards.

4. 2. 5 The vent exhausts from pump rooms are to discharge at least 3 m above deck, and from the nearest air intakes or openings to accommodation and enclosed working spaces, and from possible sources of ignition.

4. 2. 6 Ventilation fans to be constructed in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 15, 1.8 Cargo pump-room ventilation.

4. 2. 7 Pump rooms are to have no direct communication with machinery spaces.

4. 2. 8 The requirements of Pt 7, Ch 5, 4.2 Pump room for recovered oil 4.2.1 to Pt 7, Ch 5, 4.2 Pump room for recovered oil 4.2.6 are not applicable for assignment of the notation **Oil Recovery (F.P. >60°C)**.

4. 2. 9 Pump rooms for recovered oil on board ships to be assigned the notation **Oil Recovery (F.P. >60°C)** are to satisfy the relevant requirements of Pt 5, Ch 1, 4.5 Ventilation.

4. 2. 10 Bilge drainage of the pump room is to be effected by pumps or bilge ejector suctions. For ships of less than 500 gross tons, the pump room bilge may be drained by a hand pump having a 50 mm bore suction.

4. 3 Ventilation of machinery spaces

4. 3. 1 Where machinery spaces adjacent to recovered oil tanks are permitted by Pt 7, Ch 5, 3.1 Structural arrangement 3.1.7, the ventilation arrangements are to comply with Pt 7, Ch 5, 5.4, Ventilation 5.4.1 and Pt 7, Ch 5, 5.4 Ventilation 5.4.1.b.

4. 4 Exhaust systems

4. 4. 1 For assignment of the notations **Oil Recovery, Oil Recovery Ship** or **Oil Recovery (F.P. >60°C)**, the exhaust lines of engines, boilers and equipment containing sources of ignition and the vents of engine crank cases are to be fitted with suitable spark arrestors.

4. 4. 2 For assignment of the notations **Oil Recovery** or **Oil Recovery Ship**, the exhaust lines of engines, boilers and equipment containing sources of ignition and the vents of engine crank cases are to be led to a position outside any hazardous area as defined in Pt 7, Ch 5, 5.3, Hazardous areas.

4. 4. 3 For assignment of the notation **Oil Recovery (F.P. >60°C)**, the exhaust lines of engines, boilers and equipment containing sources of ignition and the vents of engine crank cases are to be fitted with suitable spark arrestors.

4. 5 Miscellaneous

4. 5. 1 Low sea suctions are to be provided to supply water for the machinery and all fire pumps.

4. 5. 2 Means are to be provided to enable heating coils in recovered oil tanks and adjacent tanks to be blanked off during recovery operations.

4. 5. 3 The heating medium supply and return lines are not to penetrate the recovered oil tank plating, other than at the top of the tank, to reduce the possibility of the recovered oil entering the heating system in the event of a failure of the heating pipework within the tank.

4. 5. 4 If required to facilitate discharge operations, steam returns are to be led to an observation tank which is to be in a well-ventilated and well-lighted part of the machinery space remote from the boilers.

PART

7

CHAPTER **5** **Ships Equipped for Oil Recovery Operations**

SECTION **5** **Electrical equipment**

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 The electrical installation is to comply with the relevant requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2 Electrical Engineering, with the specific exceptions of Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.1, General, Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.3, Selection of equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres, Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.7 Ventilation, Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.8 Pressurisation and Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.10 Requirements for tankers intended for the carriage in bulk, which are replaced by Pt 7, Ch 5, 5.3, Hazardous areas to Pt 7, Ch 5, 5.6, Selection of electrical equipment for installation in hazardous areas of this Chapter.

5. 1. 2 The requirements of Pt 7, Ch 5, 5 Electrical equipment are not applicable for assignment of the notation **Oil Recovery (F.P. >60°C)**.

5. 1. 3 The electrical installations on board ships to be assigned the notation **Oil Recovery (F.P. >60°C)** are to satisfy the relevant requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2 Electrical Engineering.

5. 2 Systems of supply and distribution

5. 2. 1 Only the systems of generation and distribution, listed under Pt 6, Ch 2, 5.1 Systems of supply and distribution 5.1.2, are acceptable.

5. 3 Hazardous areas

5. 3. 1 Hazardous areas associated with oil recovery operations are classified into zones based upon the frequency of the occurrence and duration of an explosive gas atmosphere, as follows:

- **zone 0**: an area in which an explosive atmosphere is present continuously or for long periods or frequently
- **zone 1**: an area in which an explosive atmosphere is likely to occur periodically or occasionally in normal operation
- **zone 2**: an area in which an explosive atmosphere is not likely to occur in normal operation but, if it does occur, will persist for a short period only.

See IEC 60079-10-1: *Explosive atmospheres – Part 10-1: Classification of areas – Explosive gas atmospheres*.

5. 3. 2 The following areas are regarded as hazardous, **zone 0**:

a. The interiors of tanks intended for the storage of recovered oil.
b. The interiors of piping systems intended for the handling of recovered oil.
c. The interiors of equipment containing or contaminated with recovered oil.

d. Unventilated spaces housing piping systems or other equipment containing or contaminated with recovered oil and having flanged joints or glands or other openings from which leakage of fluid may occur under normal operating conditions.

5. 3. 3 The following areas are regarded as hazardous, **zone 1**:

a. Unventilated spaces:
i. separated by a single bulkhead, deck or other tank boundary from the interior of a tank intended for recovered oil, or
ii. having a bulkhead immediately above or below and in line with a bulkhead of a tank intended for recovered oil, unless protected by a diagonal plate in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 9, 1.2 Application and ship arrangement 1.2.9 or the arrangements comply with the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 5, 3.1 Structural arrangement 3.1.7.

b. Ventilated spaces housing piping systems or other equipment containing or contaminated with recovered oil and having flanged joints or glands or other openings from which leakage of fluid may occur under normal operating conditions.

c. Areas on open deck within a 3 m radius of:
i. ventilation outlets of tanks intended for recovered oil; or
ii. inspection hatches permitted to be opened under normal operating conditions of tanks intended for recovered oil; or
iii. any sampling or sounding points of tanks intended for recovered oil; or
iv. any flanged joints, glands or other parts of any equipment containing or contaminated with recovered oil from which leakage may occur under normal operating conditions; or
v. ventilation outlets from spaces described by Pt 7, Ch 5, 5.3 Hazardous areas 5.3.3.a or Pt 7, Ch 5, 5.3 Hazardous areas 5.3.3.b.

Where the hazard results from flammable gas or vapour having a density relative to that of air of more than 0.75, the hazardous zone is considered to extend vertically downward to solid deck, or for a distance of 9 m, whichever is the lesser.

d. Areas on open deck within the confines of, and extending 3 m beyond, any bund or barrier intended to contain a spillage of recovered oil, up to a height of 2.4 m.

e. Areas on open deck within a 1.5 m radius of any opening into a space described by Pt 7, Ch 5, 5.3 Hazardous areas 5.3.3.a or Pt 7, Ch 5, 5.3 Hazardous areas 5.3.3.b.

f. Enclosed or semi-enclosed spaces with direct opening into a **zone 1** hazardous area.

5. 3. 4 The following areas are regarded as hazardous, **zone 2**:

a. Ventilated spaces as defined by Pt 7, Ch 5, 5.3 Hazardous areas 5.3.3.a.

b. Areas on open deck extending 1.5 m beyond those defined by Pt 7, Ch 5, 5.3 Hazardous areas 5.3.3.c to Pt 7, Ch 5, 5.3 Hazardous areas 5.3.3.f.

c. Areas on open deck with unrestricted natural ventilation over all tanks intended for recovered oil, where the tops of the tanks are exposed to the weather, to the full width of the ship plus 3 m fore and aft of the forward-most and aft-most tank bulkhead, up to a height of 0.45 m above the deck or to the height of any bulwarks.

d. Enclosed or semi-enclosed spaces with direct opening into a **zone 2** hazardous area.

5. 3. 5 Vertical and horizontal extent of hazardous areas defined by Pt 7, Ch 5, 5.3,, Hazardous areas 5.3.3 and Pt 7, Ch 5, 5.3, Hazardous areas 5.3.4 is to be additionally considered with reference to density relative to air of flammable gas or vapour encountered. *See* IEC 60079-10-1: *Explosive atmospheres – Part 10-1: Classification of areas – Explosive gas atmospheres.*

5. 3. 6 Consideration may also be given to hazardous areas and sources of hazard defined in accordance with IEC 60079*: 10-1: Explosive atmospheres – Part 10-1: Classification of areas – Explosive gas atmospheres* and the following are to be submitted.

a. Design statement that defines the service profile of the oil recovery ship;

b. A concept of operation (ConOps) document, which is to include:

i. a functional description of how the ship is intended to be operated; and
ii. details of the ship's intended service, including the overall purpose(s), and the maximum duration of oil recovery operations per year;

c. Hazardous area classification data sheets, as required by IEC 60079-10-1: *Explosive atmospheres – Part 10-1: Classification of areas – Explosive gas atmospheres*;
d. Hazardous area plans, indicating the location of hazardous areas, and their openings, access and ventilation arrangements;
e. the hazardous areas classification study is to consider the operation of the oil recovery equipment in reasonably fore*See*able normal and abnormal operations; and
f. Schedule of electrical and mechanical equipment to be located in hazardous areas.

5. 4 Ventilation

5. 4. 1 The extent of any hazardous within an enclosed or semi-enclosed space may be limited to that defined for an equivalent situation on open deck, provided that the ventilation arrangements fulfill all the following conditions:

a. Mechanical ventilation is provided, with the air intake and outlet located outside any hazardous area defined by Pt 7, Ch 5, 5.3 Hazardous areas 5.3.1, ensuring at least 12 air changes per hour, and leaving no region of stagnant air.
b. Ventilation air flow is continuously monitored and so arranged that, in the event of failure of ventilation, an alarm is given at an attended station.

5. 4. 2 An enclosed or semi-enclosed space having a ventilation outlet situated in a hazardous area, as defined under Pt 7, Ch 5, 5.3, Hazardous areas or Pt 7, Ch 5, 5.3 Hazardous areas 5.3.4.c, may be regarded as non-hazardous if fulfilling all the following conditions:

a. The space has mechanical ventilation with the air intake from a non-hazardous area.
b. The ventilation outlet is equipped with a self-closing flap or other suitable means of closure operating automatically on loss of ventilation airflow.
c. The space contains no equipment of a type described in Pt 7, Ch 5, 5.3 Hazardous areas 5.3.2, or vent from or opening into any hazardous space or zone defined by Pt 7, Ch 5, 5.3 Hazardous areas 5.3.1, other than the ventilation outlet under consideration.
d. The space is separated by at least two gastight bulkheads from the interior of any tank intended for recovered oil.

5. 5 Pressurisation

5. 5. 1 A space having access to a hazardous area defined as **zone 1** may be regarded as non-hazardous if all following requirements are met:

a. access is by means of an air-lock, having gastight steel doors, the inner of which, as a minimum, is self-closing without any hold-back arrangement;
b. it is maintained at an overpressure (minimum 0.25 mbar) relative to the external hazardous area by ventilation from a non- hazardous area;
c. the relative air pressure within the space is continuously monitored and so arranged that:
i. in the event of loss of overpressure, an alarm is given;
ii. the electrical supply to all equipment not of a type suitable for **zone 1** is automatically disconnected;
iii. where the disconnection of equipment could introduce a hazard, an alarm may be given, in lieu of automatic disconnection, upon loss of overpressure; and
iv. a means of manual disconnection of electrical equipment not of a type suitable for **zone 1**, capable of being controlled from an attended station, is to be provided in conjunction with an agreed operational procedure; and

v. where the means of disconnection, capable of being controlled from an attended station, is located within the space then it is to be of a type suitable for **zone 1**;

d. any electrical equipment required to operate upon loss of overpressure, lighting fittings and equipment within the air-lock, is to be of a type suitable for **zone 1**;

e. means are to be provided to prevent electrical equipment, other than of a type suitable for **zone 1**, being energised until the atmosphere within the space is made safe, by air changes of at least 10 times the capacity of the space; and

f. it is separated by at least two gastight bulkheads from the interior of any tank intended for recovered oil

5. 5. 2 A space having access to a hazardous area defined as **zone 2** may be regarded as non-hazardous if all following requirements are met:

a. access is by means of a self-closing gastight steel door without any hold-back arrangement;

b. it is maintained at an overpressure (minimum 0.25 mbar) relative to the external hazardous area by ventilation from a non- hazardous area;

c. the relative air pressure within the space is continuously monitored and so arranged that:
i. in the event of loss of overpressure, an alarm is given; and
ii. a means of manual disconnection of electrical equipment not of a type suitable for **zone 2,** capable of being controlled from an attended station, is to be provided; where the means of disconnection, capable of being controlled from an attended station, is located within the space then it is to be of a type suitable for **zone 2**;

d. any electrical equipment required to operate upon loss of overpressure (e.g. lighting fittings), is to be of a type suitable for **zone 2**;

e. means are to be provided to prevent electrical equipment, other than of a type suitable for **zone 2**, being energised until the atmosphere within the space is made safe, by air changes of at least 10 times the capacity of the space; and

f. it is separated by at least two gastight bulkheads from the interior of any tank intended for recovered oil.

5. 5. 3 A space having access to a hazardous area defined as **zone 1** may be regarded as **zone 2** if all following requirements are met:

a. access is by means of a self-closing gastight steel door without any hold-back arrangement;

b. it is maintained at an overpressure relative to the external hazardous area by ventilation from a non-hazardous area;

c. the relative air pressure within the space is continuously monitored and so arranged that:
i. in the event of loss of overpressure, an alarm is given; and;
ii. a means of manual disconnection of electrical equipment not of a type suitable for **zone 1**, capable of being operated from an attended station, is to be provided; where the means of disconnection, capable of being operated from an attended station, is located within the space then it is to be of a type suitable for **zone 1**;

d. any electrical equipment required to operate upon loss of overpressure (e.g. lighting fittings), is to be of a type suitable for **zone 1**; and

e. means are to be provided to prevent electrical equipment, other than of a type suitable for **zone 1**, being energised until the atmosphere within the space is made safe, by air changes of at least 10 times the capacity of the space.

5. 6 Selection of electrical equipment for installation in hazardous areas

5. 6. 1 The installation of electrical equipment in hazardous areas is to be minimised.

5. 6. 2 When electrical equipment is to be installed in hazardous areas,it is to be of a type appropriate for Group IIA, temperature class T3 and compliant with the relevant Parts of IEC 60079: *Explosive atmospheres*, or an acceptable and relevant National Standard, unless permitted otherwise by Pt

7, Ch 5, 5.6 Selection of electrical equipment for installation in hazardous areas 5.6.4, Pt 7, Ch 5, 5.6 Selection of electrical equipment for installation in hazardous areas 5.6.5, or Pt 7, Ch 5, 5.6 Selection of electrical equipment for installation in hazardous areas 5.6.6.

5. 6. 3 Equipment for **zone 0** or **zone 1**, with the exception of simple apparatus as defined in Pt 7, Ch 5, 5.6 Selection of electrical equipment for installation in hazardous areas 5.6.4 or Pt 7, Ch 5, 5.6 Selection of electrical equipment for installation in hazardous areas 5.6.5, is to be certified or approved by a National or other appropriate authority. Equipment without independent certification or approval may be considered for installation in **zone 2**.

5. 6. 4 In **zone 0**, the following may be considered:

a. intrinsically safe, category‘a’ (Ex‘ia’);
b. simple electrical apparatus and components (for example thermocouples, photocells, strain gauges, junction boxes, switching devices), included in intrinsically safe circuits of category ‘ia’,compliant with IEC 60079-14: *Explosive atmospheres — Part 14: Electrical installations design, selection and erection;* and
c. submersible pumps, having at least two independent methods of shutting down automatically in the event of low liquid level.

Note Oil recovery equipment deployed over an oil spill pool is to be appropriate for **zone 0**.

5. 6. 5 In **zone 1**, the following may be considered:

a. apparatus permitted within **zone 0**;
b. intrinsically safe, category‘b’ (Ex‘ib’);
c. simple apparatus as defined above, included in intrinsically safe circuits of category ‘ib’;
d. increased safety (Ex ‘e’);
e. flameproof (Ex ‘d’);
f. pressurised enclosure (Ex ‘p’);
g. powder filled (Ex ‘q’); or
h. encapsulated (Ex ‘m’).

5. 6. 6 In **zone 2**, the following may be considered:

a. apparatus permitted within **zone 1;**
b. type of protection ‘n’ or ‘N’;
c. equipment such as control panels, protected by purging and pressurisation and capable of being verified by inspection as meeting the requirements of IEC60079-2: *Explosive atmospheres* – Part 2*: Equipment protection by pressurized enclosures "p";* or
d. radio aerials having robust construction, meeting the relevant requirements of IEC 60079-15: *Explosiveatmospheres– Part 15: Equipment protection by type of protection "n"*. Additionally, in the case of transmitter aerials, it is to be shown, by detailed study or measurement, or by limiting the peak radiated power and field strength to 1 W and 30 V/m respectively, that they present negligible risk of inducing incendive sparking in adjacent structures or equipment.

5. 6. 7 Consideration may also be given to other types of protection, selected in accordance with the requirements of IEC 60079-14: *Explosive atmospheres – Part 14: Electrical installations design, selection and erection*.

5. 6. 8 Electrical equipment not essential for the safety or operation of the ship and which is not of a type providing protection against ignition of the recovered oil gases is to be completely disconnected and protected against unauthorised re-connection. Disconnection is to be made outside the hazardous areas and be effected with isolating links or lockable switches.

5. 6. 9 Electrical installations in machinery spaces adjacent to recovered oil tanks, where permitted by Pt 7, Ch 5, 3.1 Structural arrangement 3.1.7, are to be of a type described in Pt 7, Ch 5, 5.6 Selection of electrical equipment for installation in hazardous areas 5.6.6 within 0.45 m of the tank bulkhead or the bottom of the space.

PART

7

CHAPTER 5 Ships Equipped for Oil Recovery Operations

SECTION 6 Fire protection and extinction

6. 1 Structural fire protection

6. 1. 1 Where provision is made for heating of the collected oil, the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 5, 6 Fire protection and extinction are applicable for assignment of the notation **Oil Recovery (F.P. >60°C)**. Where there is no provision for heating the collected oil, the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 5, 6 Fire protection and extinction are not applicable for assignment of the notation **Oil Recovery (F.P. >60°C)** in this case the structural fire protection is to be installed as required by the applicable rules for a cargo ship.

6. 1. 2 Exterior boundaries of superstructures and deckhouses enclosing accommodation and service spaces, including any overhanging decks which support such accommodation and service spaces, are to be insulated to `A-60' standard for all parts which face deck areas where there are arrangements for collection, handling and transfer of recovered oil and for a distance 3 m aft or forward thereof.

6. 1. 3 Windows and side scuttles in the exterior boundaries, referred to in Pt 7, Ch 5, 6.1 Structural fire protection 6.1.2, are to be provided with permanently installed inside covers of steel. Aluminium alloy components are not to be used in the construction of the windows and side scuttles.

6. 1. 4 As an alternative to compliance with Pt 7, Ch 5, 6.1 Structural fire protection 6.1.2 and Pt 7, Ch 5, 6.1 Structural fire protection 6.1.3, a fixed water spraying system may be accepted. The system is to be capable of delivering water at a rate of 10 litres/m^2/min. on all boundaries, windows and side scuttles, that would otherwise be required to comply with Pt 7, Ch 5, 6.1 Structural fire protection 6.1.2 and Pt 7, Ch 5, 6.1 Structural fire protection 6.1.3.

6. 2 Fire-extinguishing arrangements

6. 2. 1 Deck areas, where there are arrangements for the collection, handling and transfer of recovered oil, are to be provided with the following fire-extinguishing equipment:

a. Two dry powder fire-extinguishers, each at least 50 kg capacity.

b. At least one portable low expansion foam applicator.

6. 2. 2 The fire-extinguishers are to be located near the working deck identified in Pt 7, Ch 5, 6.2 Fire-extinguishing arrangements 6.2.1 and are to be fitted with discharge hoses.

6. 2. 3 The foam installation is to be capable of applying foam to any part of the working deck. The capacity of any applicator is to be not less than 400 litres/min. of foam solution and the applicator throw in still air conditions is to be not less than 15 m. Sufficient foam concentrate is to be provided for at least 0.4 litres/m^2 of the working deck area with a minimum quantity of 200 litres.

6. 3 Fireman's outfits

6. 3. 1 At least two firemen's outfits, additional to those required by Pt 6, Ch 4, 2 Fire detection, protection and extinction or SOLAS Reg II-2/C, *10 Fire-fighter's outfits* as applicable, are to be provided.

PART

7

CHAPTER **5** **Ships Equipped for Oil Recovery Operations**

SECTION **7** **Operating Manual**

7. 1 General

7. 1. 1 Information regarding the safe use of the ship with respect to the oil recovery and subsequent operations is to be prepared.

7. 1. 2 The Operating Manual is, in general, to contain information regarding procedures for:

a. establishing and maintaining a safe atmosphere in any space(s) liable to become hazardous during oil recovery and subsequent operations;
b. isolation, where necessary, of electrical equipment in zones or spaces considered hazardous during oil recovery and subsequent operations, and in spaces described in Pt 7, Ch 5, 7.1 General 7.1.2 prior to carrying out, or on failure of, the measures required to establish and maintain a safe atmosphere;
c. fire-fighting;
d. gas measurements;
e. recovery and storage of oil;
f. ballasting;
g. transfer of recovered oil;
h. tank cleaning;
i. gas freeing; and
j. contacts in the event of an emergency.

7. 1. 3 For assignment of the notation Oil Recovery (F.P. >60°C), the operating manual is to provide information regarding procedures to monitor and record the flash point of the recovered oil. The procedures are to include guidance for stopping oil recovery operations if the flash point of the recovered oil is 60°C or lower.

PART

7

CHAPTER 6 **Arrangements for Offshore Loading**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**3012**
	1. 1	Application	3012
	1. 2	Class notations	3012
	1. 3	Surveys	3012
	1. 4	Submission of plans and documentation	3012
SECTION 2	**Arrangements**		**3014**
	2. 1	Mooring arrangements	3014
	2. 2	Materials for mooring fittings	3014
	2. 3	Strength of mooring fittings	3014
	2. 4	Enclosed spaces adjacent to manifold connection	3014
SECTION 3	**Positioning, monitoring and control arrangements**		**3015**
	3. 1	General	3015
	3. 2	Control station	3015
	3. 3	Instrumentation	3015
	3. 4	Emergency disconnect arrangements for pipeline and mooring	3015
	3. 5	Communication	3016
SECTION 4	**Fire protection, detection and extinction**		**3017**
	4. 1	General	3017
SECTION 5	**Piping systems**		**3018**
	5. 1	Materials	3018
	5. 2	Piping system design	3018
	5. 3	Piping system testing and non-destructive examination	3019
SECTION 6	**Trials and testing**		**3020**
	6. 1	General	3020

PART

7

CHAPTER 6 **Arrangements for Offshore Loading**

SECTION 1 **General**

1. 1 Application

1. 1. 1 The requirements of this Chapter apply to tankers equipped with bow/stern loading arrangements to facilitate the transfer of cargo oil from offshore loading terminals, such as loading platforms, loading buoys, FPSOs and FSUs, and are additional to those applicable in other Parts of the Rules. These requirements also apply to submerged turret loading systems where applicable.

1. 1. 2 Requirements additional to these Rules may be imposed by the National Authority with whom the ship is registered and/or by the Administration within whose territorial jurisdiction the ship is intended to operate.

1. 1. 3 The materials used are to be suitable for the intended service conditions.

1. 2 Class notations

1. 2. 1 Ships complying with the requirements of this Chapter will be eligible to have one of the following special features notations included in the class notation:

a. Ships fitted with a bow loading system, **BLS**.
b. Ships fitted with a stern loading system, **SLS**.
c. Ships fitted with submerged turret loading systems, **TLS**.

1. 3 Surveys

1. 3. 1 The survey of these items is to be arranged to coincide with hull and machinery surveys, *See* Pt 1, Ch 3 Periodical Survey Regulations.

1. 4 Submission of plans and documentation

1. 4. 1 In addition to the plans and information required by other relevant Sections of the Rules, the plans and information detailed below are to be submitted:

a. **Bow/stern loading:**
Detail drawing(s) showing:
- Cargo loading equipment.
- Manifold position and pipeline connections.
- Mooring equipment layout, including design loads and supporting structure.
- Fire safety arrangements.
- Control station(s).

b. **Systems and arrangements:**

General arrangement. Plans showing the general arrangement of all areas where the piping systems are located, together with ventilation arrangements and details of openings for any enclosed spaces at the fore and/or aft part of the ship.

Diagrammatic arrangement. Plans indicating all piping systems arrangements associated with loading systems between cargo tank area and manifold. The plans are to include details of means of isolation, manifold arrangement, means of draining, inerting, cleaning and gas freeing of the cargo piping. Also details of manifold drip tray arrangements with means of drainage, together with any stripping line arrangements, are to be submitted. If the ship is to be installed with a vapour emission control system, plans showing details of piping arrangements are also to be submitted.

Piping system specification. Piping design information which includes the materials specifications, design pressure, maximum allowable transfer rate, corrosion allowance, and design ambient weather conditions. Also the design forces and moments for which the presentation manifold, together with the terminal flange and associated supporting arrangements have been designed, are to be submitted.

Operating Manuals. Operating Manuals are to be submitted for approval and provided on board. The Manuals are to include the following information:

- Particulars of piping arrangements and control systems.
- Operating criteria.
- Procedures for connecting/disconnecting the cargo hose, isolation arrangements, inerting, cleaning, gas freeing of the pipe line and drainage of the drip tray.
- Procedures to be followed during cargo handling operations. These are to include guidance on procedures to be followed in the event of sudden closure of the terminal valve.
- Detailed communication sequence concerning pre-mooring, mooring, pre-loading, loading and tanker departure phases.

Where the ship is fitted with dynamic positioning and/or a positional mooring system(s), the information required by Pt 7, Ch 4, 1.3 Information and plans required to be submitted 1.3.7 and Pt 7, Ch 8, 1.5 Plans and data submission 1.5.6 is also to be submitted as applicable.

c. **Submerged turret loading:**

Detail drawing(s) showing:

- Arrangement of turret room, including receiving structure, locking mechanism and traction winch equipment with associated supporting structure and design loadings.
- Turret hatch and operating equipment, including hydraulic power pack and control systems, and cargo loading equipment.
- Turret room fire safety arrangements.
- Turret room electrical installations.
- Piping arrangements for all systems associated with the turret loading.

PART

7

CHAPTER 6 Arrangements for Offshore Loading

SECTION 2 Arrangements

2. 1 Mooring arrangements

2. 1. 1 The ship is to be provided with sufficient mooring arrangements, which may be combined with the ship's manoeuvring system, to ensure adequate alignment and security during bow, stern or submerged turret loading operations.

2. 1. 2 The mooring/positioning system is to be arranged to prevent mooring forces being transmitted to the loading line connector.

2. 1. 3 Suitable single point mooring arrangements are indicated in Pt 3, Ch 13, 11 Mooring of ships at single point moorings.

2. 1. 4 Particular attention is to be given to operational requirements and conditions in the design and mounting of securing devices and fittings. Seatings for equipment are to be designed to avoid the formation of pockets or recesses which may lead to excessive corrosion in service.

2. 2 Materials for mooring fittings

2. 2. 1 Where mooring fittings are used as part of a positional mooring system, they are to comply with the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 8 Positional Mooring and Thruster-Assisted Positional Mooring Systems.

2. 3 Strength of mooring fittings

2. 3. 1 The strength of the mooring arrangements associated with the bow/stern loading system is to be considered on the basis of Pt 3, Ch 13, 11 Mooring of ships at single point moorings, and Pt 7, Ch 8 Positional Mooring and Thruster-Assisted Positional Mooring Systems as applicable.

2. 4 Enclosed spaces adjacent to manifold connection

2. 4. 1 In addition to the arrangements required by Pt 7, Ch 6, 4 Fire protection, detection and extinction, the following are to be complied with:

a. Spaces where an explosive gas atmosphere may be present are to be suitably ventilated prior to entry.

b. Spaces required to be entered during normal operations are to be provided with permanent ventilation arrangements capable of being operated from outside the compartment.

2. 4. 2 The ventilation arrangements are to provide a minimum of eight air changes per hour, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 14 Electrical equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres or in the presence of combustible dusts.

PART

7

CHAPTER 6 **Arrangements for Offshore Loading**

SECTION 3 **Positioning, monitoring and control arrangements**

3. 1 General

3. 1. 1 The requirements of this Section are additional to those given in Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems, and Pt 7, Ch 4 Dynamic Positioning Systems and Pt 7, Ch 8 Positional Mooring and Thruster-Assisted Positional Mooring Systems.

3. 1. 2 If the ship is fitted with a dynamic positioning system, it is at least to comply with the DP(AM) requirements, *See* Pt 7, Ch 4 Dynamic Positioning Systems.

3. 2 Control station

3. 2. 1 A control station for offshore loading may be arranged within the bow area or on the navigation bridge. All operations concerning positioning of the ship and monitoring of mooring and loading parameters are to be capable of being performed from this station.

3. 3 Instrumentation

3. 3. 1 Bow/stern mooring instrumentation is to monitor:

a. Mooring line traction.
b. Chain stopper.
c. Data logger system for recording of mooring and load parameters.

3. 3. 2 The mooring system is to be provided with a tension meter capable of continuously indicating the tension during the bow loading operation. Consideration may be given to waiving this requirement for ships fitted with a dynamic positioning system.

3. 3. 3 Bow/stern/submerged turret loading instrumentation is to be provided as follows:

a. Indicator for loading connector coupling position.
b. Cargo valve position indicators.
c. Cargo tank level indicators and high level alarm.
d. A system for automatic transfer of signals from the control and safety system, to enable personnel on the offshore terminal to effect control of cargo transfer pump(s) and closing of valve(s) on the terminal.

3. 4 Emergency disconnect arrangements for pipeline and mooring

3. 4. 1 In addition to any automatic disconnection systems, a manually operated backup emergency disconnection system is to be provided. This system is to make possible individual operation of the chain stopper and coupling by-pass locks located in the bow control station.

3. 4. 2 Where an emergency quick-release system is fitted for the mooring system, an equivalent arrangement is to be provided to release the cargo loading hose outboard of the ship.

3. 5 Communication

3. 5. 1 Main and emergency means of communication are to be provided between the bow control station and the offshore loading terminal. The communication equipment is to be intrinsically-safe.

3. 5. 2 Continuous communication is to be maintained between the control station and the offshore terminal at all times.

PART

7

CHAPTER **6** **Arrangements for Offshore Loading**

SECTION **4** **Fire protection, detection and extinction**

4. 1 General

4. 1. 1 The fire protection and extinction arrangements are to comply with the requirements of the *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea* , as amended, or as required by the National Authority.

4. 1. 2 When ACS is authorised to act on behalf of the National Authority in giving effect to the fire safety measures on non-convention tankers or the application of *SOLAS - International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea* for convention ships, ACS will also apply the *MSC/Circular.474 – Guidelines for Bow and Stern Loading and Unloading Arrangements on Oil Tankers – (Adopted on 9 May 1988)*, dated 19 June 1987.

4. 1. 3 Tankers of less than 500 gross tons will be specially considered.

PART

7

CHAPTER 6 **Arrangements for Offshore Loading**

SECTION 5 **Piping systems**

5. 1 Materials

5. 1. 1 All materials used in the piping systems are to be suitable for use with the intended cargoes and ambient weather conditions, and are to comply with the relevant requirements of Pt 5, Ch 12 Piping Design Requirements and the applicable requirements of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials.

5. 2 Piping system design

5. 2. 1 All piping, valves and fittings are to be suitable for the design operating and environmental conditions.

5. 2. 2 The piping is to comply with the requirements for manufacture, testing and certification of Class II piping systems.

5. 2. 3 The pipelines and associated piping systems and equipment forward and/or aft of the cargo area are to have only full penetration butt welded joints, except at the loading station where valve connections may be flanged. The pipes are not to pass through enclosed spaces and are to be, as far as possible, self-draining.

5. 2. 4 Means of mechanical isolation are to be provided in the cargo area, where any pipes used for cargo handling are branched off from the cargo system. Such isolation is to be as near as possible to the boundary of the aftmost, in the case of stern loading, or forwardmost, in the case of bow loading, cargo tank bulkhead and within the cargo area.

5. 2. 5 A manually operated shut-off terminal valve is to be provided at the manifold. In addition, a blank flange, or equivalent arrangement, is to be provided at the bow and/or stern pipe line end connection.

5. 2. 6 The terminal pipe, valves and other fittings to which the cargo hose is directly connected are to be of steel or other approved ductile material. They are to be of robust construction, adequately supported and suitable for the stated design conditions. Attention is drawn to the *Recommendations for Oil Tanker Manifolds and Associated Equipment*, published by OCIMF.

5. 2. 7 Means of emptying, cleaning, inerting and gas-freeing the pipe lines used for cargo handling are to be provided. The venting arrangements are to be located in the cargo deck area. Isolation similar to that described in Pt 7, Ch 6, 5.2 Piping system design 5.2.4 is also to be provided.

5. 2. 8 A drip tray of adequate size, together with means of drainage, are to be provided at the manifold. Suitable spray shields are to be fitted in way of the terminal manifolds where leakage may occur at valves and pipe joints.

5. 2. 9 Zones on open deck within 3 m of loading manifolds or pipe joints, and within 3 m of the spillage drip tray, are to be regarded as hazardous with regard to machinery or other equipment which

could constitute a possible source of ignition, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.2, Hazardous areas and Pt 6, Ch 2, 14.10 Requirements for tankers intended for the carriage in bulk.

5. 2. 10 Air vent pipes to the tanks and enclosed spaces, and mechanical ventilation outlets are to be located as far as possible, but in no case less than 3 m, from the terminal manifold or the nearest barrier of the spillage drip tray, whichever is closer.

5. 3 Piping system testing and non-destructive examination

5. 3. 1 Testing and non-destructive examination of the piping system is to comply with the relevant requirements for Class II piping.

PART

7

CHAPTER **6 Arrangements for Offshore Loading**

SECTION **6 Trials and testing**

6. 1 General

6. 1. 1 The arrangements and equipment referred to in this Chapter are to be examined and tested on completion of the installation, including calibration of coupling equipment.

6. 1. 2 Examination and testing is to include witnessing of the initial hook-up trials and the implementation of operational procedures for the range of actions covered by the Operating Manual.

PART

7

CHAPTER 7 Title_chapter_7

CONTENTS

This chapter is intentionally left blank.

PART

7

CHAPTER 7 Title_chapter_7

LIST OF TABLES

This chapter is intentionally left blank

PART

7

CHAPTER 7 Title_chapter_7

LIST OF FIGURES

This chapter is intentionally left blank.

PART

7

CHAPTER 7 Title_chapter_7

SECTION 1 Title_section_1

This chapter is intentionally left blank.

PART

7

CHAPTER 8

Positional Mooring and Thruster-Assisted Positional Mooring Systems

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General**		**3029**
	1. 1	Application	3029
	1. 2	Classification notations	3029
	1. 3	Surveys	3030
	1. 4	Definitions	3030
	1. 5	Plans and data submission	3030
SECTION 2	**Environmental criteria - Forces and motions**		**3032**
	2. 1	Limiting environmental criteria	3032
	2. 2	Design environmental criteria	3032
	2. 3	Environmental forces	3033
SECTION 3	**Mooring system - design and analysis**		**3034**
	3. 1	General	3034
	3. 2	Design cases and factors of safety	3034
SECTION 4	**Mooring equipment**		**3037**
	4. 1	Anchors	3037
	4. 2	Fairleads	3037
	4. 3	Stoppers	3038
	4. 4	Anchor lines	3038
SECTION 5	**Anchor winches and windlasses**		**3040**
	5. 1	General	3040
	5. 2	Materials	3040
	5. 3	Brakes	3041
	5. 4	Stoppers	3041
	5. 5	Winch/Windlass performance	3042
	5. 6	Strength	3043

5. 7 Testing 3043
5. 8 Type approval 3044
SECTION 6 Electrical and control equipment 3045
6. 1 General 3045
6. 2 Control stations 3045
6. 3 Alarms 3046
6. 4 Controls 3046
SECTION 7 Thruster-assisted positional mooring 3047
7. 1 General 3047
7. 2 Control systems 3047
SECTION 8 Thruster-assisted mooring - Classification notation requirements 3048
8. 1 Notations 3048
SECTION 9 Trials 3050
9. 1 General 3050

PART

7

CHAPTER **8**

Positional Mooring and Thruster-Assisted Positional Mooring Systems

LIST OF TABLES

Table 8. 3. 1: Minimum anchor line factors of safety 3035
Table 8. 3. 2: Thruster allowance 3036
Table 8. 5. 1: Material grades 3041
Table 8. 5. 2: Design load cases 3043
Table 8. 5. 3: Safety factors for design load cases 3043
Table 8. 5. 4: Works test 3044

PART

7

CHAPTER 8

Positional Mooring and Thruster-Assisted Positional Mooring Systems

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 8. 3. 1: Quasi-static analysis 3035
Figure 8. 4. 1: Minimum operating range and design loading of fairlead 3038

PART

7

CHAPTER 8 **Positional Mooring and Thruster-Assisted Positional Mooring Systems**

SECTION 1 **General**

1. 1 Application

1. 1. 1 The requirements of this Chapter apply to ACS classed ships with positional mooring systems or thruster-assisted positional mooring systems and are additional to those applicable in other Parts of the Rules. The Rules are not intended to apply to vessels which have station-keeping capabilities, but which are not required to remain on station in adverse weather conditions. This normally precludes the Rules being applicable to small ships.

1. 1. 2 Compliance with this Chapter is not mandatory, but ships provided with a positional mooring system or thruster-assisted positional mooring system which do comply will be eligible for an appropriate class notation which will be recorded in the *Register Book* at the specific request of an Owner.

1. 1. 3 The mooring system will be considered for classification with ACS on the basis of operating constraints and procedures specified by the Owner and recorded in the Operations Manual.

1. 1. 4 Requirements, additional to these Rules may be imposed by the National Authority with whom the ship is registered and/or by the administration within whose territorial jurisdiction it is intended to operate.

1. 2 Classification notations

1. 2. 1 Ships provided with a positional mooring system which complies with the requirements of this Chapter will be eligible to have included in the class notation one of the following special features notations:

a. For ships fitted with a positional mooring system:
PM (Positional mooring system); or
PMC (Positional mooring system for mooring in close proximity to other ships or installations. This notation will apply in particular to any ship operating in conjunction with a fixed installation, e.g. crane barge, accommodation unit, maintenance vessel, etc.)

b. For ships fitted with a thruster-assisted positional mooring system:
PM [T1circ] [or [T2circ] or [T3circ]]
Or
PMC [T1circ] [or [T2circ] or [T3circ]]
The numeral in the circled supplementary notation, [T1circ], etc. defines the thruster allowance which may be permitted in the design of the positional mooring system, and is determined by the capacity/redundancy of the thrust/machinery installation, *See* Table 8. 3. 2: Thruster allowance.

1. 2. 2 Additional descriptive notes may be given and entered in the *Register Book* indicating the type of positional mooring system, reference system, control system, limiting environmental criteria, etc.

1. 3 Surveys

1. 3. 1 The positional mooring and thruster-assisted positional mooring systems and their associated equipment are to be examined and tested during construction and under working conditions on completion of the installation. The Periodical Survey of these items is to be arranged to coincide with Hull and Machinery Surveys as required by other Parts of these Rules.

1. 4 Definitions

1. 4. 1 Positional mooring is a method of station keeping by means of multiple anchor lines laid out in catenary array. Each positional mooring system is to consist of the following:

a. Anchors or anchor piles.
b. Anchor lines.
c. Anchor line fittings (shackles, connecting links, wire rope terminations, quick release devices, etc.).
d. Fairleads.
e. Winches or windlasses.
f. Chain or wire rope stoppers.

Where applicable, the structural or mechanical connection of these items to the ship is also considered to be part of the positional mooring system.

1. 4. 2 `Thruster-assisted Mooring' is the use of thrusters and main propulsion, if so designed, to supplement the ship's anchoring system.

1. 5 Plans and data submission

1. 5. 1 The information and plans specified in Pt 7, Ch 8, 1.5 Plans and data submission 1.5.2to Pt 7, Ch 8, 1.5 Plans and data submission 1.5.5 are to be submitted in triplicate. One copy of the Operations Manual referred to in Pt 7, Ch 8, 1.5 Plans and data submission 1.5.6 is to be forwarded for information.

1. 5. 2 Plans and data dealing with positional mooring arrangements and the associated equipment are to be submitted, including the following:

a. Mooring arrangements with details of mooring patterns, anchor lines and fittings, etc.
b. Mooring equipment with details of anchors, fairleads and cable stoppers.
c. Winches or windlasses with details of gearing shafting, brake systems, ratchet and pawl, drum/cable lifter and frame.

1. 5. 3 For thruster-assisted positional mooring systems, plans of the following, together with particulars of ratings, in accordance with the relevant Parts of these Rules are to be submitted for the following:

a. Prime movers, gearing, shafting, propellers and thrust units, *See also* Pt 5, Ch 8 Shaft Vibration and Alignment.
b. Machinery piping systems.
c. Electrical installations.

In addition, details of proposals for the redundancy provided in machinery, electrical installations and control systems are to be submitted. These proposals are to take account of the possible loss of performance capability should a component fail. Where a common power source is utilised for thrusters, details of the total maximum load required for thruster-assist are to be submitted.

1. 5. 4 Plans of control, alarm and safety systems, including the following, are to be submitted:

a. Functional block diagrams of the control system(s).
b. Functional block diagrams of the position reference systems and the environmental sensors.
c. Details of the electrical supply to the control system(s), the position reference system(s) and the environmental sensors.
d. Details of the monitoring functions of the controllers, sensors and reference system, together with a description of the monitoring functions.
e. List of equipment with identification of the manufacturer, type and model.
f. Details of the overall alarm system linking the centralised control station, subsidiary control stations, relevant machinery spaces and operating areas.
g. Details of the control stations, e.g. control panels and consoles, including the location of the control stations.
h. Test schedules which are to include the methods of testing and the test facilities provided.

1. 5. 5 The following supporting plans, data, calculations or documents are to be submitted:

a. General arrangement showing plan views, side elevations and sections of the ship.
b. Design criteria showing operating and survival environment, water depth range and required station keeping limits.
c. Environmental forces on ship showing wind, current and wave drift. These forces are to be verified by direct calculation, model test reports, or full-scale data, etc.
d. Ship motions showing first order wave motions, surge, sway and yaw. Tank test data or equivalent to be provided.
e. Mooring analysis, including computer printout where relevant.
f. Strength calculations for anchors, fairleads, winches/ windlasses, cable stoppers and special fittings.
g. Thruster arrangements for thruster-assist systems, including powers, thrusts and interactions between thrusters, thruster and hull, thruster and current.

1. 5. 6 An Operations Manual for the system is to be placed on board the ship. This Manual is to contain all necessary information and instructions regarding positional mooring and, where relevant, thruster-assisted positional mooring. It would normally also contain descriptions of the following:

- Mooring systems.
- Laying the mooring system.
- Anchor pre-loading.
- Pre-tensioning anchor lines.
- Tension adjustment.
- Winch performance.
- Winch operation.
- Procedure in event of failure or emergency.
- Procedure for operating thrusters.
- Fault-finding procedures for thruster-assist system.

PART

7

CHAPTER 8 **Positional Mooring and Thruster-Assisted Positional Mooring Systems**

SECTION 2 **Environmental criteria - Forces and motions**

2. 1 Limiting environmental criteria

2. 1. 1 Limiting criteria in the form of maximum operating and survival environmental conditions are to be specified by the Owner or Designer.

2. 1. 2 The limiting criteria are to be defined in terms of wind and current speeds, wave heights and periods, and water depth range.

2. 1. 3 As water depth will have a large influence on a ship's mooring capability, the limiting environmental criteria may be varied according to water depth.

2. 1. 4 **Maximum operating conditions** will be those in which the ship is able to carry out its primary operational activities, while anchor line tensions remain within designated operating limits. *See* Pt 7, Ch 8, 3.2 Design cases and factors of safety for required factors of safety in operating conditions.

2. 1. 5 **Survival conditions** are to be based on an average recurrence period of not less than 50 years. The mooring system is to be such that maximum line tensions will be limited in these conditions to designated survival levels. *See* Pt 7, Ch 8, 3.2 Design cases and factors of safety for required factors of safety.

2. 2 Design environmental criteria

2. 2. 1 **Wind.** The design wind speed for wind force determination can normally be taken as the one-hour mean value referenced to 10 m above sea level. Account is to be taken of the variation of wind speed with height above sea level. The wind velocity gradient can be calculated from the following:

$$V_H = V_{10}\left(\frac{H}{10}\right)^{0.125}$$

Where,

V_H = wind velocity at H height above sea level

V_{10} = 1 hour mean wind speed referenced to 10 m above sea level.

2. 2. 2 **Current.** The design current speed is to be taken as the sum of wind-induced and tidal current velocities. For calculation purposes, tidal current velocity can be assumed constant over water depth, and wind-induced current velocity can be taken to reduce linearly from its maximum value at the surface to zero at 50 m below sea level.

2. 2. 3 **Wave.** The significant wave height and period range is to be defined for each relevant design case.

2. 3 Environmental forces

2. 3. 1 In determining environmental forces, it is to be assumed that the defined limiting environment of wind, waves and current will act concurrently. For fixed azimuth mooring systems, these forces are considered to act in the same direction.

2. 3. 2 Environmental loading on the ship (and the corresponding catenary system motions analysis to determine anchor loads and line tensions, etc.) will require to be investigated for a sufficient number of directions to establish the critical cases.

2. 3. 3 It is generally to be assumed that the maximum specified environmental conditions can come from any direction relative to the ship's heading. However, in cases where a ship is to be restricted to specific defined locations, consideration will be given to the acceptance of an environmental rosette (allowing the ship to be headed in the most favourable direction with respect to mooring loads).

2. 3. 4 Where quasi-static methods of analysis are adopted (*See* Pt 7, Ch 8, 3.1 General 3.1.2), at least the wind, current, and mean wave drift forces acting on the ship in the various relevant design conditions are to be calculated or determined. In addition, any significant yawing moments induced by these effects are to be taken into account when carrying out the mooring system motions analysis.

2. 3. 5 Environmental forces and moments can be determined by suitable methods of direct calculation or by model testing. In either case, account must be taken of all significant load generating structural elements or equipment. In the case of wind force and moment determination, all deck structures, fittings, cranes, towers, superstructures, etc. are to be considered, and for current force, account is to be taken of thrusters, nozzles, propellers, etc.

2. 3. 6 First order wave motions − the oscillatory motions of the ship − are to be determined. Surge and sway are the most relevant motions in terms of quasi-static mooring analysis, *See* Pt 7, Ch 8, 3.1 General 3.1.2 and Figure 8. 3. 1: Quasi-static analysis.

2. 3. 7 The first order wave motions of the ship are to be determined from appropriate wave spectra, either by use of tank testing or by suitable direct calculation methods.

2. 3. 8 Account is to be taken of the effects of shallow water on the ship's first order wave motions.

PART

7

CHAPTER 8 **Positional Mooring and Thruster-Assisted Positional Mooring Systems**

SECTION 3 **Mooring system - design and analysis**

3. 1 General

3. 1. 1 The positional mooring system is to be designed to meet the specified limiting environmental criteria (*See* Pt 7, Ch 8, 2.1 Limiting environmental criteria), and any associated operational constraints (restricted offset of ship, etc.) as contained in the Operations Manual.

3. 1. 2 This Section in general, and the anchor line factors of safety in particular, relate principally to the quasi-static approach to mooring analysis. This method of analysis takes wind, current and wave drift forces to be steady effects which will displace the moored ship from its original equilibrium position to a new mean position where the mooring system will have developed sufficient restoring force to `balance' the steady applied force. Wave-induced oscillatory vessel motions take place about this new mean position. In quasi-static analysis, maximum anchor line tensions are taken to occur at the extremity of vessel offset, *See also* Figure 8. 3. 1: Quasi-static analysis.

3. 1. 3 Consideration will be given to the adoption of alternative methods of design for the mooring system, including the use of part-dynamic or full-dynamic analysis techniques. In such cases, factors of safety, etc. will be specially considered.

3. 1. 4 For ships which intend to utilise thruster assistance, as an aid to position-keeping or as a means of reducing anchor line tensions, the extent of thruster allowance which is permitted in calculations is given in Table 8. 3. 2: Thruster allowance.

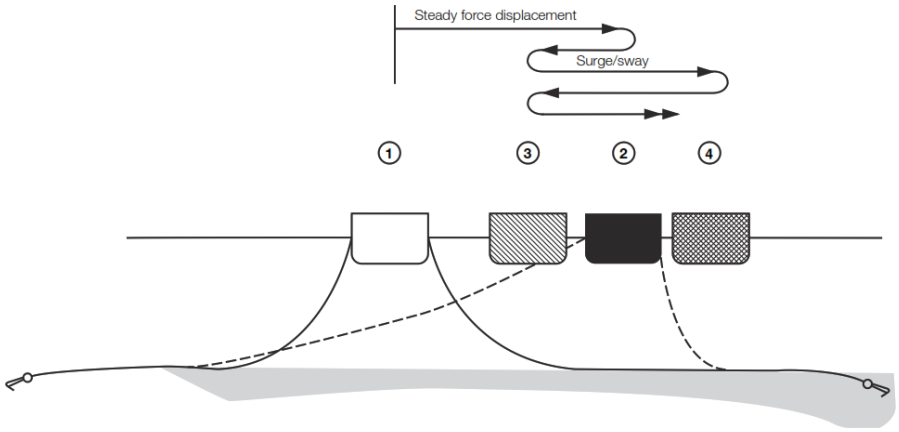
3. 1. 5 Anchor line length is to be sufficient to avoid uplift forces occurring at the anchors in the worst damaged survival condition.

3. 1. 6 Account is to be taken in the mooring analysis of the elastic stretch of anchor lines.

3. 2 Design cases and factors of safety

3. 2. 1 The design cases which require to be considered, and the associated minimum anchor line factors of safety are given in Table 8. 3. 1: Minimum anchor line factors of safety.

Figure 8. 3. 1: Quasi-static analysis



Position 1: Zero environmental force on ship. Anchor lines under pre-tension only

Position 2: New mean position taken up by ship under the action of steady forces - wind, current and wave drift.

Positions 3 & 4: The inner and outer limits of vessel motion at wave frequency.

Maximum quasi-static anchor line tension occurs at position 4.

NOTE Mooring lines and anchor lines omitted in position 3 and position 4 for clarity.

Table 8. 3. 1: Minimum anchor line factors of safety

Design Case	Description	Factor of safety	
		Class notation	
		PM, PM(T1) etc.	**PMC, PMC (T1)**
1	Operating – Intact The ship in an operating mode with its mooring system intact, subject to specified operating constraints (limiting environment and permissible offset of the ship).	2.7	3.0
2	Survival – Intact The ship in survival mode with mooring system intact, subject to maximum (survival) environmental conditions.	1.8	2.0
3	Operating – Damaged As Case 1, but with loss of restraint of any one anchor line, *See also* Note 3.	1.8	2.0
4	Survival – Damaged As Case 2, but with loss restraint of any one anchor line.	1.25	2.0/1.4 (*See* Note 5)
Note *1.* In the context of this Chapter, Cases 1 and 2 ('Intact' Cases) refer to the mooring system with all anchor lines intact. Cases 3 and 4 ('Damaged' Cases) refer to the mooring system with the loss of any one anchor line.			
Note *2.* Anchor line factor of safety $= \frac{\text{Minimum rated break strength}}{\text{Maximum line tension}}$			
Note *3.* The factors of safety given in Table 8. 3. 1: Minimum anchor line factors of safety are to be based on maximum line tensions resulting from steady force offset of the ship, plus maximum first order wave motion. In Design Cases 3 and 4, the factors relate to the ship in its post-damage settled position, following the loss of restraint from an anchor line, (i.e. neglecting transient effects, but *See* Note 4).			

Note *4.* In addition to the 'static' considerations in Design Cases 3 and 4 (*See* Note 3), account is also to be taken of transient vessel motions following anchor or line failure. The motion path taken by the vessel in moving to a new static equilibrium position is to be determined for each line breakage case to ensure that: (a) The ship maintains adequate clearance from any adjacent installation (applicable where **PMC** or **PMC (T1)** etc. notation is to be assigned). A minimum dimensional clearance of 10 m will normally be required. (b) The ship remains within its required operational excursion limits. (c) Successive line failures will not occur. In calculating factors of safety, the maximum anchor line tensions in this case are to be those resulting from the extreme point of transient motion, with the ship subject to steady force and significant wave motion.

Note *5.* The factor of safety of 2.0 applies to critical lines maintaining separation between the moored ship and an adjacent installation.

Table 8. 3. 2: Thruster allowance

Case	Thruster allowance		
	(T1)	**(T2)**	**(T3)**
Operating (Intact)	None	70% of all thrusters, less one	All thrusters, less one
Survival (Intact)	70% of all thrusters	All thrusters	All thrusters
Operating (Damaged)	None	70% of all thrusters, less one	All thrusters, less one
Survival (Damaged)	70% of all thrusters	All thrusters	All thrusters

Note *1.* The conditions for assignment of supplementary notations , **(T1)**, **(T2)** and **(T3)** are defined in Pt 7, Ch 8, 8 Thruster-assisted mooring - Classification notation requirements.

Note *2.* Where all thrusters are permitted, the net effect of all thrusters can be included in calculations.

Note *3.* Where all thrusters except one are permitted, the net effect of all thrusters, less the single most effective one, can be included in calculations.

PART

7

CHAPTER **8** **Positional Mooring and Thruster-Assisted Positional Mooring Systems**

SECTION **4** **Mooring equipment**

4. 1 Anchors

4. 1. 1 Anchors for positional mooring are to be sufficient in number and holding power, and are to have adequate structural strength, for the intended service. It is the Owners'/ Operators' responsibility to ensure adequate anchor holding power for each location or holding ground.

4. 1. 2 The anchors are to be of an approved type. Supporting calculations to verify the structural strength of the anchor under proof test loading are to be submitted.

4. 1. 3 The anchors are to be manufactured in accordance with the requirements of Ch 10 Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials.

4. 1. 4 The anchors are to be proof tested in the manner laid down in Ch 10 Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring of the Rules for Materials. The level of proof test loading for positional mooring anchors is to be the greater of the following:

a. 50% of the minimum rated break strength of the intended anchor line; or
b. the value given in Table 10. 1. 1: Proof load tests for anchors (See Notes 1 and 2) in Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials.

4. 2 Fairleads

4. 2. 1 Fairleads are to be designed to permit free movement of the anchor line in all mooring configurations. Figure 8. 4. 1: Minimum operating range and design loading of fairlead shows the minimum operating range of the fairlead to be considered in conjunction with the design load.

4. 2. 2 Fairleads and their supporting structures are to be designed for a load equivalent to the rated minimum break strength of the anchor line.

4. 2. 3 Maximum allowable stresses for the design criteria given in Pt 7, Ch 8, 4.2 Fairleads 4.2.1 and Pt 7, Ch 8, 4.2 Fairleads 4.2.2 are to be based on the following factors of safety:

Shear	1.89	Factors relate to tensile yield stress
Tension, compression or bending	1.25	Factors relate to tensile yield stress
Combined	1.11	Factors relate to tensile yield stress

$$(\text{combined stress} = \sqrt{\sigma_X^2 + \sigma_Y^2 - \sigma_X\sigma_Y + 3\tau^2})$$

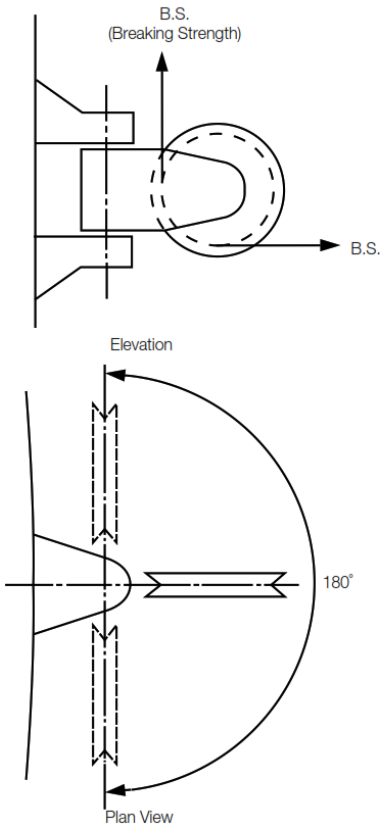
Where σ_X and σ_Y are the combined axial and bending stresses in the X and Y directions respectively and τ is the combined shear stress due to torsion and/or bending in the X-Y plane.

4. 2. 4 Materials and steel grades are generally to comply with the requirements given in Pt 7, Ch 8, 5.2, Materials for Type P components.

4. 2. 5 Chain cable fairleads are to have a minimum of five pockets.

4. 2. 6 Wire rope fairleads are generally to have a minimum diameter of 20 times the wire rope diameter.

Figure 8. 4. 1: Minimum operating range and design loading of fairlead



Fairlead – Minimum Design Range

4. 3 Stoppers

4. 3. 1 Stoppers may require to be provided depending on the winch arrangements, *See* Pt 7, Ch 8, 5 Anchor winches and windlasses.

4. 3. 2 Where stoppers are fitted, they are to comply with Pt 7, Ch 8, 5 Anchor winches and windlasses in respect to mechanical and strength aspects, and Pt 7, Ch 8, 6 Electrical and control equipment for release arrangements.

4. 4 Anchor lines

4. 4. 1 Anchor lines are generally to be of stud link chain cable, steel wire rope or a combination of both. Special consideration will be given to proposals for the use of alternative materials.

4. 4. 2 Stud link chain cable is to be either of unified grade (U2 or U3) meeting the requirements of Ch 10 Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring of the Rules for Materials, or an approved special grade.

4. 4. 3 Wire rope for anchor lines is to have a suitable construction for its purpose (6 x 37 construction with independent wire rope core is generally acceptable).

4. 4. 4 Steel wire ropes are generally to comply with Ch 10, 5 Short link chain cables of the Rules for Materials, or with an equivalent recognised National or International Standard.

4. 4. 5 Wire rope terminal fittings are to comply with an acceptable code or standard. The strength of terminations, connecting fittings, shackles or links is not to be less than that of the anchor line.

PART

7

CHAPTER **8** **Positional Mooring and Thruster-Assisted Positional Mooring Systems**

SECTION **5** **Anchor winches and windlasses**

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 Machinery items are to be constructed, installed and tested in accordance with the relevant requirements of Pt 5 Main and Auxiliary Machinery. For electrical and control equipment, *See* Pt 7, Ch 8, 6 Electrical and control equipment.

5. 2 Materials

5. 2. 1 Materials are generally to comply with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 1, 2.2 Materials.

5. 2. 2 Components have been categorised in this Section as Type P (Primary) and Type S (Secondary) for material selection purposes.

a. **Type P:** Components where failure would result in the loss of a primary function of the winch or windlass, e.g.:
Winch drum.
Windlass cable lifter.
Reduction gears.
Shafts.
Brakes.
Pawl stoppers.
Bedplates.
NOTE: Consideration will be given to designating any of the above components as Type S (*See* below), provided adequate redundancy of operation exists.

b. **Type S:** Secondary, stressed items, not categorised as Type P, and where failure would not result in the loss of a primary winch function.

5. 2. 3 Steel materials for Type P or Type S components are generally to comply with the following Chapters and Sections of the Rules for Materials:

a. Plates and bars: Ch 3 Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars Ch 3, 1 General requirements and Ch 3, 2 Normal strength steels for ship and other structural applications, Ch 3, 3 Higher strength steels for ship and other structural applications or Ch 3, 6 Carbon–manganese and nickel alloy steels for low temperature service, as appropriate.

b. Castings: Ch 4, 1 General requirements and Ch 4, 7 Ferritic steel castings for low temperature service.

c. Forgings: Ch 5, 1 General requirements and Ch 5, 8 Ferritic steel forgings for low temperature service.

Consideration will be given to the acceptance of suitable equivalent National Standards.

5. 2. 4 Material grades are to be selected to provide the necessary notch toughness. *See* Table 8. 5. 1: Material grades for suitable Grades.

5. 2. 5 The requirements of Pt 7, Ch 8, 5.2 Materials 5.2.3 and Pt 7, Ch 8, 5.2 Materials 5.2.4 apply where the minimum design air temperature is within the range 0°C to minus 15°C. Requirements for design temperatures outside this range will be subject to special consideration.

5. 2. 6 For components such as gears, shafts and boltings made from rolled or forged bar materials not subject to welding, the material composition and heat treatment, etc. may be submitted for approval as an alternative to the requirements of Table 8. 5. 1: Material grades.

5. 2. 7 Non-ductile materials are not to be used for torque transmitting items or for those elements subject to tensile/bending stresses.

5. 2. 8 Spheroid graphite iron castings are to comply with Ch 7, 3 Spheroidal or nodular graphite iron castings of the Rules for Materials, Grades 370/17 or 400/12, or to an equivalent National Standard.

5. 2. 9 The use of grey iron castings will be subject to special consideration. Where approved, they are to comply with the requirements of Ch 7, 2 Grey iron castings of the Rules for Materials. This material is not to be used for gear components.

5. 2. 10 Brake lining materials are to be compatible with operating environmental conditions.

5. 3 Brakes

5. 3. 1 Each anchor winch or windlass is required to have one primary braking system and one secondary braking system. The two systems are to operate independently.

5. 3. 2 The braking action of the motor unit may be used for secondary braking purposes where the design is suitable.

5. 3. 3 A residual braking force of at least 50% of the maximum braking force required by Pt 7, Ch 8, 5.5 Winch/Windlass performance 5.5.1 is to be immediately available and automatically applied in the event of a power failure.

5. 4 Stoppers

5. 4. 1 If the winch motor is to be used as a secondary brake, then a stopper is to be provided to take the anchor line load during maintenance of the primary brake.

5. 4. 2 The stopper may be one of two different types – a pawl stopper fitted at the cable lifter/drum shaft, or a stopper acting directly on the anchor line.

5. 4. 3 Where the stopper acts directly on the cable, its design is to be such that the cable will not be damaged by the stopper at a load equivalent to the rated breaking strength of the cable.

5. 4. 4 *See also* Pt 7, Ch 8, 6.2 Control stations 6.2.1 and Pt 7, Ch 8, 6.2 Control stations 6.2.2 for stopper control station requirements, and Pt 7, Ch 8, 6.4 Controls 6.4.5 for emergency release of stoppers.

Table 8. 5. 1: Material grades

Component type	Thickness (mm)	Grade					
		Plate		Castings		Forgings	
		AW (*See* Note 1)	PWHT (*See* Note 2)	AW	PWHT	AW	PWHT
P	$t \leq$	D, DH32, DH36	AH, B	C-Mn	C-Mn	LT20	LT0

	25< t ≤ 50	E, EH32, EH36	DH32, DH36	C-Mn	C-Mn	LT40	LT20
	50 < t ≤ 60	E, EH32, EH36	E, EH32, EH36* *(*See* Note 5)	C-Mn	C-Mn	LT40	LT40 (*See* Note 5)
	60 < t ≤80	LT60 (*See* Note 3)	E, EH32, EH36	$2^1/_4$Ni (*See* Note 3)	C-Mn	LT60 (*See* Note 3)	LT40
	80< t ≤ 100	LT60	LT60 (*See* Note 3)	$2^1/_4$Ni	$2^1/_4$Ni (*See* Note 3)	LT60	LT60 (*See* Note 3)
	100 < t ≤ 130	(*See* Note 4)	LT60	$3^1/_2$Ni	$2^1/_4$Ni	(*See* Note 4)	LT60
	130< t ≤160	$1^1/_2$Ni	(*See* Note 4)	(*See* Note 7)	(*See* Note 7)	$1^1/_2$Ni	(*See* Note 4)
S	t ≤60	DH32, EH36	Not normally applied (*See* Note 6)				
	60< t ≤80	E, EH32, EH36* *(*See* Note 5)					
	80< t ≤ 100	E, EH32, EH36					
	100< t ≤130	LT60 (*See* Note 3)					
	130< t ≤160	LT60					

Note *1.* AW. Without post-weld heat treatment.

Note *2.* PWHT. With post-weld heat treatment or not welded.

Note *3.* Impact test temperature may be raised to –50°C.

Note *4.* Use either $^1/_2$Ni or $1^1/_2$Ni with impact test at –70°C.

Note *5.* Impact test temperature may be raised to –30°C.

Note *6.* If PWHT is used, grades will be specially considered.

Note *7.* To be specially considered.

5. 5 Winch/Windlass performance

5. 5. 1 The primary brake is required to hold a static load equal to the minimum break strength of the anchor line (at the intended outer working layer of wire rope on storage drum winches). The static load capacity of the primary brake can be reduced to 80% of that value when a stopper capable of holding 100% of the breaking strength of the line is fitted.

5. 5. 2 The secondary brake is required to hold a static load equal to 50% of the minimum breaking strength of the anchor line.

5. 5. 3 The anchor winch or windlass is to have adequate dynamic braking capability. The two brake systems in joint operation are to be capable of fully controlling, without overheating, the anchor lines during:

a. all anchor handling operations;
b. adjustment of anchor line tensions. (This is particularly relevant where the mooring system has been designed and sized, on the basis of active adjustment of anchor lines in extreme conditions, to minimise line tensions).

5. 5. 4 *See also* Pt 7, Ch 8, 6.2, Control stations for control of winches, windlasses, stoppers and pawls, and Pt 7, Ch 8, 6.4, Controls for brake fail safe requirements and standby power for operation of brakes and release of stoppers in the event of a failure of normal power supply.

5. 5. 5 The pulling force of the winches or windlasses is to be sufficient to carry out anchor pre-loading on location, to the necessary level. A minimum low-speed pull equal to 40% of the anchor line breaking strength is recommended.

5. 6 Strength

5. 6. 1 Design load cases for the winch or windlass assembly and the stopper when fitted are given in Table 8. 5. 2: Design load cases. The associated maximum allowable stresses are to be based on the factors of safety given in Table 8. 5. 3: Safety factors for design load cases.

Table 8. 5. 2: Design load cases

Load case	Condition	Anchor line load percentage of break strength
1	Winch braked	100% (*See* Note)
2	Stopper engaged	100%
3	Winch pulling	40% or specified duty pull if greater
Note Where stopper is fitted, anchor line load in Case 1 can be taken as brake slipping load, but is not to be less than 80% break strength		

Table 8. 5. 3: Safety factors for design load cases

Stress	Load case	
	1 & 2	3
	Factor of safety	
Shear	1.89	2.5
Tension, compression, bending	1.25	1.67
Combined	1.11	1.43

Note *1.* Factors of safety relate to tensile yield stress.

Note*2.*Combined stress $= \sqrt{\sigma_X^2 + \sigma_Y^2 - \sigma_X\sigma_Y + 3\tau^2}$

Where σ_X and σ_Y are the combined axial and bending stresses in the X and Y directions respectively and τ is the combined shear stress due to torsion and/or bending in the X—Y plane.

5. 7 Testing

5. 7. 1 Works tests are to be carried out in the presence of the Surveyor, on at least one of the winch or windlass units out of the total outfit for the vessel. The tests to be carried out are given in Table 8. 5. 4: Works test. Alternatively, where a prototype winch has been suitably tested, consideration will be given to the acceptance of these results.

Table 8. 5. 4: Works test

Test	Test load
Static brake — Primary	100% Anchor line break strength (or 80% where stopper fitted. *See* Pt 7, Ch 8, 5.5 Winch/Windlass performance 5.5.1)
Static brake — Secondary	50% Anchor line break strength
Stopper (where fitted)	100% Anchor line break strength
Motor stall test	Specified stall load

5. 7. 2 The residual braking capability (*See* Pt 7, Ch 8, 5.5 Winch/Windlass performance 5.5.4) is to be verified.

5. 7. 3 Each winch or windlass is to be tested on board the vessel, in the presence of the Surveyor, to demonstrate that all main aspects, including dynamic brakes, function satisfactorily. The proposed test programme is to be submitted.

5. 8 Type approval

5. 8. 1 Winches or windlasses may be type approved in accordance with ACS's Type Approval Scheme. Where this type approval is obtained, the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 8, 5.7 Testing 5.7.1 may not be applicable.

PART

7

CHAPTER 8 **Positional Mooring and Thruster-Assisted Positional Mooring Systems**

SECTION 6 **Electrical and control equipment**

6. 1 General

6. 1. 1 The electrical installation is to be designed, constructed and installed in accordance with the relevant requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2 Electrical Engineering.

6. 1. 2 Control, alarm and safety systems are to be designed, constructed and installed, in accordance with the relevant requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems, together with the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 8, 6.2, Control stationsto Pt 7, Ch 8, 6.4, Controls.

6. 2 Control stations

6. 2. 1 The operation of winches, windlasses and associated brakes, chainstoppers and pawls is to be controlled locally from weather-protected control stations which provide good visibility of the equipment and associated anchor handling operations.

6. 2. 2 A central control station, which may be located on the bridge or a separate manned control room, is to be provided from which brakes, chainstoppers and pawls can be remotely released.

6. 2. 3 For each anchor winch, the respective local control station is to be provided with a means of indicating the following:

a. Line tension.
b. Length of line paid out.
c. Line speed.

6. 2. 4 The indication required by Pt 7, Ch 8, 6.2, Control stations 6.2.3 and Pt 7, Ch 8, 6.2 Control stations 6.2.3.b is to be repeated to the central control station and, in addition, a means of indicating the following is to be provided at this position:

a. Mooring patterns and anchor line catenaries.
b. Status of winch operation.
c. Position and heading, *See also* Pt 7, Ch 8, 6.4 Controls 6.4.6.
d. Gangway angle and extension, when applicable.
e. Riser angle, when applicable.
f. Wind speed and direction, *See also* Pt 7, Ch 8, 6.4 Controls 6.4.9.

6. 2. 5 Means of voice communication are to be provided between the central control station, each local control station and anchor handling vessels, when applicable.

6. 3 Alarms

6. 3. 1 Alarms are to be provided at the local and central control stations for the following fault conditions:

a. Excessive line tension.
b. Loss of line tension.
c. Excessive gangway angle and extension, when applicable.
d. Excessive riser angle, when applicable.

6. 3. 2 Alarms are to be provided adjacent to the winches and windlasses to warn personnel prior to and during any remote operation.

6. 3. 3 Alarms are to be provided at the central control station for the following fault conditions:

a. When the ship deviates from its predetermined area of operation.
b. When the ship deviates from its predetermined heading limits.

These alarms are to be adjustable, but should not exceed specified limits. Arrangements are to be provided to fix and identify their set points.

6. 4 Controls

6. 4. 1 Adequate controls are to be provided at the local control station for satisfactory operation of the winch(es).

6. 4. 2 The braking system is to be arranged so that the brakes, when applied, are not released in the event of a failure of the normal power supply.

6. 4. 3 Standby power is to be provided to enable winch brakes to be released within 15 seconds in an emergency. The release arrangements are to be operable locally at each winch and from the central control position, and are to be such that the entire anchor line can be lowered in a controlled manner.

6. 4. 4 The standby power is to be such that, during lowering of the anchor line, it is possible to apply the brakes once and then release them again in a controlled manner.

6. 4. 5 Standby power is to be provided, so that any anchor line stoppers or pawl mechanisms may be released from either the local or central control stations up to a line tension equal to the minimum rated break strength of the anchor line. These mechanisms are to be capable of release at the maximum angles of heel and trim under the damage stability and flooding conditions for which the ship is designed.

6. 4. 6 At least one position reference system and one gyrocompass or equivalent is to be provided, when applicable, to ensure the specified area of operation and heading deviation can be effectively monitored.

6. 4. 7 Position reference systems are to incorporate suitable position measurement techniques which may be by means of acoustic devices, radio, radar, taut wire, riser angle, gangway extension and angle or other acceptable means depending on the service conditions for which the ship is intended.

6. 4. 8 A vertical reference sensor is to be provided, if applicable, to measure the pitch and roll of the ship.

6. 4. 9 Means are to be provided to ascertain the wind speed and direction acting on the ship.

PART

7

CHAPTER 8 **Positional Mooring and Thruster-Assisted Positional Mooring Systems**

SECTION 7 **Thruster-assisted positional mooring**

7. 1 General

7. 1. 1 When the positional mooring system is supplemented by thrusters, the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 4 Dynamic Positioning Systems, are to be generally complied with in respect of the machinery, electrical and control engineering arrangements. In applying these requirements, the arrangements for the notations **DP(CM)**, **DP(AM)** and **DP(AA)** may be regarded as equivalent to those for supplementary notations [T1circ] [T2circ] and [T3circ] respectively, unless otherwise stated in this Chapter.

7. 2 Control systems

7. 2. 1 Suitable processing and comparative techniques are to be provided at the central control station to validate the control system inputs, thereby ensuring optimum performance of the thruster-assisted mooring system.

7. 2. 2 Abnormal signal errors revealed by the validity checks required by Pt 7, Ch 8, 7.2 Control systems 7.2.1 are to initiate alarms.

7. 2. 3 The control system is to be stable throughout its operational range and is to meet the specified performance and accuracy criteria.

7. 2. 4 An alarm is to be provided for a control computer system fault.

7. 2. 5 Sufficient instrumentation is to be fitted at the central control station to ensure effective control and indicate that the system is functioning correctly, *See also* Pt 7, Ch 8, 6.2, Control stations.

7. 2. 6 The deviation from the desired heading and/or position is to be adjustable, but should not exceed the specified limits. Arrangements are to be provided to fix and identify the set points for the desired heading and/or position.

PART

7

CHAPTER 8 **Positional Mooring and Thruster-Assisted Positional Mooring Systems**

SECTION 8 **Thruster-assisted mooring - Classification notation requirements**

8. 1 Notations

8. 1. 1 For assignment of notation **(T1)**, the applicable requirements of Pt 7, Ch 8, 6 Electrical and control equipment and Pt 7, Ch 8, 7 Thruster-assisted positional mooring, together with Pt 7, Ch 8, 8.1 Notations 8.1.2, are to be complied with.

8. 1. 2 Centralised automated manual control of the thrusters is to be provided to supplement the position mooring system. The manual control system is to provide output signals to the thrusters, via the manual controller, to change the speed, pitch and azimuth angle, as applicable, thereby optimising line tension, as indicated at the central control station, *See* Pt 7, Ch 8, 6.2 Control stations 6.2.4.

8. 1. 3 For assignment of notation **(T2)**, the applicable requirements of Pt 7, Ch 8, 6 Electrical and control equipment and Pt 7, Ch 8, 7 Thruster-assisted positional mooring, together with Pt 7, Ch 8, 8.1 Notations 8.1.4 to Pt 7, Ch 8, 8.1 Notations 8.1.7 are to be complied with.

8. 1. 4 Automatic and manual control systems are to be provided to supplement the positional mooring systems and arranged to operate independently, so that failure in one system will not render the other system inoperative. *See also* Pt 7, Ch 8, 8.1 Notations 8.1.2 for manual control.

8. 1. 5 The automatic control system is to utilise automatic input(s) from the position reference system, the environmental sensors and line tensions, and automatically provide output signals to the thrusters to change the speed, pitch and azimuth angle, as applicable, thereby optimising line tension.

8. 1. 6 In the event of line failure or failure of the most effective thruster, the ship is to be capable of maintaining its predetermined area of operation and desired heading in the environmental conditions for which the ship is designed and/or classed.

8. 1. 7 Control, alarm and safety systems are to incorporate a computer-based consequence analysis, which may be continuous or at predetermined intervals, and is to analyse the consequence of predetermined failures to verify that the anchor line tensions and position/heading deviations remain within acceptable limits. In the event of a possible hazardous condition arising as a result of the consequence analysis, an alarm is to be initiated at the central control station.

8. 1. 8 For assignment of notation **(T3)**, the applicable requirements of Pt 7, Ch 8, 6 Electrical and control equipment and Pt 7, Ch 8, 7 Thruster-assisted positional mooring, together with Pt 7, Ch 8, 8.1 Notations 8.1.5 to Pt 7, Ch 8, 8.1 Notations 8.1.7 and Pt 7, Ch 8, 8.1 Notations 8.1.9 to Pt 7, Ch 8, 8.1 Notations 8.1.12, are to be complied with.

8. 1. 9 Two automatic control systems are to be provided and arranged to operate independently, so that failure in one system will not render the other system inoperative.

8. 1. 10 In the event of failure of the working system, the standby automatic control system is to be arranged to changeover automatically without manual intervention and without any adverse effect on the ship's station keeping capability. The automatic changeover is to initiate an alarm.

8. 1. 11 At least two position reference systems, as defined by Pt 7, Ch 8, 6.4 Controls 6.4.7, are to be provided.

8. 1. 12 At least two of each of the environmental sensors, as required by Pt 7, Ch 8, 6.4 Controls 6.4.8 and Pt 7, Ch 8, 6.4 Controls 6.4.9, are to be provided.

PART

7

CHAPTER **8** **Positional Mooring and Thruster-Assisted Positional Mooring Systems**

SECTION **9** **Trials**

9. 1 General

9. 1. 1 Before a new installation (or any alteration or addition to an existing installation) is put into service, trials are to be carried out. These trials are in addition to any acceptance tests which may have been carried out at the manufacturers' works and are to be based on the approved test schedules list as required by Pt 7, Ch 8, 1.5 Plans and data submission 1.5.4.h.

9. 1. 2 The suitability of the positional mooring and/or thruster-assisted positional mooring system is to be demonstrated during sea trials, observing the following:

a. Response of the system to simulated failures of major items of control and mechanical equipment, including loss of electrical power.
b. Response of the system under a set of predetermined manoeuvres for changing:
   i. Location of area of operation.
   ii. Heading of the ship.
c. Automatic thruster control and line tension optimisation.
d. Monitoring and consequence analyses.
e. Simulation of line breakage and damping.
f. Continuous operation of the thruster-assisted positional mooring system over a period of four to six hours.

9. 1. 3 Two copies of the test schedules, as required by Pt 7, Ch 8, 1.5 Plans and data submission 1.5.4.h, signed by the Surveyor and Builder, are to be provided on completion of the survey. One copy is to be placed on board the ship and the other submitted to ACS.

PART

7

CHAPTER **9** **Navigational Arrangements and Integrated Bridge Systems**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General requirements**		**3055**
	1. 1	General	3055
	1. 2	Information and plans required to be submitted	3055
	1. 3	Definitions	3056
SECTION 2	**Physical conditions**		**3058**
	2. 1	Bridge and wheelhouse arrangement	3058
	2. 2	Environment	3059
	2. 3	ighting	3060
	2. 4	Windows	3061
	2. 5	Fields of vision	3061
SECTION 3	**Workstations**		**3064**
	3. 1	Navigation workstation	3064
	3. 2	Voyage planning workstation	3066
SECTION 4	**Systems**		**3067**
	4. 1	Alarm and warning systems	3067
	4. 2	Watch safety system	3068
	4. 3	Communications	3068
	4. 4	Power supplies	3068
SECTION 5	**Integrated Bridge Navigation System – IBS notation**		**3070**
	5. 1	General	3070
	5. 2	General requirements	3070
	5. 3	Equipment	3071
	5. 4	Operator interface	3072
	5. 5	Alarm management	3073
	5. 6	Power supplies	3075

SECTION 6 Trials 3076
6. 1 General 3076

PART

7

CHAPTER 9

Navigational Arrangements and Integrated Bridge Systems

LIST OF TABLES

Table 9. 4. 1: Suitable audible signals 3067

PART

7

CHAPTER 9

Navigational Arrangements and Integrated Bridge Systems

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 9. 2. 1: View of sea surface from conning position and navigation workstation 3062
Figure 9. 2. 2: Horizontal field of view from conning position and navigation workstation..... 3062
Figure 9. 2. 3: Field of view from main steering position..... 3062
Figure 9. 2. 4: Field of view from starboard bridge wing 3063
Figure 9. 2. 5: Field of view from workstation other than for navigation 3063

PART

7

CHAPTER 9 **Navigational Arrangements and Integrated Bridge Systems**

SECTION 1 **General requirements**

1. 1 General

1. 1. 1 The requirements of this Chapter apply to ships where an optional class notation for optimizing environment on the bridge for navigational tasks, including periodic operation of the ship under the supervision of a single watchkeeper on the bridge and/or integrated bridge systems, is requested, and are additional to those applicable in other Parts of the Rules.

1. 1. 2 The requirements of this Chapter are based on the understanding that the *International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea* and all other relevant Regulations relating to Radio Communications and Safety of Navigation required by *Chapter IV - Radiocommunications* and *Chapter V - Safety of navigation* respectively of SOLAS are complied with.

1. 1. 3 Requirements additional to those in this Chapter may be imposed by the National Authority with whom the ship is registered and/or by the Administration within whose territorial jurisdiction it is intended to operate.

1. 1. 4 The requirements of this Chapter are framed on the understanding that contingency plans for emergencies are specified and the conditions under which one man watch is permitted are clearly defined in an operations manual which is acceptable to the Administration with which the ship is registered.

1. 1. 5 In general, ships complying with the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 9, 1 General requirements to Pt 7, Ch 9, 4 Systems of this Chapter will be eligible for the notation **NAV1**.

1. 1. 6 Pt 7, Ch 9, 5 Integrated Bridge Navigation System – IBS notation of this Chapter states additional requirements which shall apply where the navigational functions are integrated. In general, ships complying with the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 9, 5 Integrated Bridge Navigation System – IBS notation will be eligible for the notation **IBS**, *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.4 Class notations (machinery). In addition to the assessment of the navigational function integration, the assignment of the notation **IBS** requires that the layout of the bridge and the equipment located on the bridge is to the satisfaction of ACS, *See* Pt 7, Ch 9, 5.2, General requirements 5.2.1.

1. 2 Information and plans required to be submitted

1. 2. 1 The following information and plans are to be submitted in triplicate:

- For programmable electronic systems, the plans required by Pt 6, Ch 1, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.6.
- Details of the intended area of operation of the ship.
- List of navigational equipment detailing manufacturer, and model and National Authority approval (where applicable).

- Functional block diagrams and descriptions of the navigational equipment, internal communications systems and watch safety system indicating their relationship to each other.
- Details of the electrical power supplies to the navigational equipment, internal communications systems, watch safety system, and clear view arrangements.
- A general arrangement of the ship showing the fields of vision from the bridge.
- A general arrangement of the bridge and wheelhouse showing the positions of consoles, panels, handrails, seating, windows and clear view arrangements.
- A profile view of the wheelhouse detailing the inclination of windows, heights of upper and lower edges of windows, and dimensions of consoles.
- Detailed arrangements of consoles and panels showing the layout of equipment.
- Test schedules which should include methods of testing and test facilities provided.
- A schedule of the electrical and electronic equipment referred to in Pt 7, Ch 9, 2.2 Environment 2.2.10 giving details of:
- equipment description;
- manufacturer;
- type and/or model; and
- evidence of electromagnetic compatibility.

1. 3 Definitions

1. 3. 1 The following definitions are applicable to these Rules:

a. **Workstation:**
A position at which one or several tasks, constituting a particular activity, is carried out.

b. **Navigation workstation:**

c. A workstation at which the navigator may carry out all tasks relevant for deciding, executing and maintaining course and speed in relation to waters and traffic. The instrumentation and controls at the navigation workstation should allow the navigator to:
i. analyse the traffic situation;
ii. monitor position, course, track, speed, time, propeller revolutions and pitch, rudder angle, depth of water, rate of turn, and wind speed and direction;
iii. alter course and speed;
iv. effect internal and external communications;
v. give and receive sound signals;
vi. control navigational lights;
vii. monitor and acknowledge navigational alarms and warnings;
viii. confirm his well-being and watch-keeping awareness; and
ix. record navigational data.

d. **Main steering position:**
That part of the navigation workstation where those controls and instrumentation relevant to controlling the ship's course are located.

e. **Conning position:**
A place on the bridge which is used by navigators when commanding, manoeuvring and controlling a ship.

f. **Voyage planning workstation:** A workstation at which the navigator may carry out the following tasks without affecting the actual navigation of the vessel:

i. examine and update charts and other relevant documentation;
ii. plan a voyage as a series of waypoints, courses, speeds and turns;
iii. calculate an estimated time of arrival at various points on the voyage; and
iv. determine and plot the ship's position.

PART

7

CHAPTER 9 **Navigational Arrangements and Integrated Bridge Systems**

SECTION 2 **Physical conditions**

2. 1 Bridge and wheelhouse arrangement

2. 1. 1 The bridge configuration, arrangement of consoles and equipment location are to be such as to enable the officer of the watch to perform navigational tasks and other functions allocated to the bridge, as well as maintain an effective lookout. The following tasks are to be supported:

- navigation and manoeuvring;
- monitoring;
- manual steering;
- docking;
- planning;
- safety;
- communications; and
- conning.

2. 1. 2 Equipment and associated displays and indicators are to be sited at clearly defined workstations.

2. 1. 3 Consoles, including the chart table, are to be positioned, so that the instrumentation they contain is mounted in such a manner as to face a person looking forward. As far as practicable, operating surfaces are to be normal to the operator's line of sight.

2. 1. 4 From other workstations within the wheelhouse it is to be possible to monitor the navigation workstation and to maintain an effective lookout.

2. 1. 5 The main access to the bridge is to be by means of an internal stairway. Secondary external access is also to be provided.

2. 1. 6 Clear passage of at least 700 mm width is to be available to allow movement around the bridge with a minimum of inconvenience. Particular attention is to be paid to the following routes which are to be as direct as possible:

a. From bridge wing to bridge wing, a clear passage of at least 1200 mm in width.
b. Between the internal entrance to the bridge and the route in Pt 7, Ch 9, 2.1 Bridge and wheelhouse arrangement 2.1.6 a clear passage of at least 700 mm in width is to be provided.
c. Between adjacent workstations, a clear passage of at least 700 mm is to be provided.
d. Between the bridge front bulkhead or any consoles and installations placed against the front bulkhead, to any consoles or installations placed away from the bridge front, a clear passage of at least 800 mm is to be provided.

Space necessary for operating at a workstation is to be considered as part of the workstation and is not to be part of the passageway.

2. 1. 7 The clear height between the wheelhouse deck surface covering and the underside of the deckhead is to be at least 2250 mm. The lower edge of deckhead mounted equipment is to be at least 2100 mm in open areas, passageways and at standing workstations.

2. 1. 8 Toilet facilities are to be provided on the bridge or adjacent to the bridge on the bridge deck.

2. 2 Environment

2. 2. 1 The bridge is to be free of physical hazards to personnel. There are to be no sharp edges or protuberances and wheelhouse, bridge wing and upper bridge decks are to be free of trip hazards and have non-slip surfaces whether wet or dry.

2. 2. 2 Sufficient hand-rails or equivalent are to be fitted inside the wheelhouse and around workstations to enable personnel to move or stand safely in bad weather. Protection of stairway openings is to be given special consideration.

2. 2. 3 Provision for seating is to be made in the wheelhouse. Means for securing the seating are to be provided having regard to storm conditions.

2. 2. 4 Glare and reflections from surfaces are to be minimised. In this respect, walls, ceilings, consoles, chart tables and other major fittings are to be provided with a suitable low reflective finish. Arrangements are to be provided to prevent the obscuration of information presented on visual display units and instruments which are fitted with transparent covers.

2. 2. 5 Entrance doors to the wheelhouse are to be securable from the inside, and operable with one hand. Bridge wing doors are not to be self-closing, and are to be provided with means to hold them open. For ships required to comply with the *Rules and Regulations for the Construction and Classification of Ships for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk,* the sealing mechanism of each door is to be such that a rapid and efficient gas and vapour tightening can be ensured.

2. 2. 6 An adequate air conditioning or mechanical ventilation system, together with sufficient heating according to climatic conditions, is to be provided in order to maintain the temperature of the wheelhouse within the range of 14°C to 30°C and the humidity within the range 20% to 60%. The discharge of hot or cold air is not to be directed towards bridge personnel. Control of this system is to be provided in the wheelhouse.

2. 2. 7 The noise level on the bridge is not to interfere with verbal communication, mask audible alarm signals, or be uncomfortable to bridge personnel. In this respect, the ambient noise level in the wheelhouse in good weather is not to exceed 65 dB(A).

2. 2. 8 A sound reception system or alternative means is to allow external sound signals to be heard and their direction determined within the wheelhouse.

2. 2. 9 Permanently installed electrical and electronic equipment is to be installed so that electromagnetic interference does not affect the proper function of the navigational systems and equipment. Installation of the equipment in accordance with the guidelines and recommendations included in IEC 60533: *Electrical and electronic installations in ships – Electromagnetic compatibility*, or an acceptable equivalent Standard, would generally be considered to meet the requirement.

2. 2. 10 Permanently installed electrical and electronic equipment, on the bridge and in the vicinity of the bridge, that is not subject to the approval required by Pt 7, Ch 9, 3.1 Navigation workstation 3.1.13, is to have undergone electromagnetic compatibility testing that demonstrates the equipment satisfies the conducted and radiated emission requirements of:

- IEC 60533: *Electrical and electronic installations in ships – Electromagnetic compatibility; or*

- IEC 60945: *Maritime navigation and radio communication equipment and systems – General requirements – Methods of testing and required test results*.

  Testing in accordance with other appropriate standards is subject to consideration and details are to be submitted.

2. 2. 11 To demonstrate compliance with Pt 7, Ch 9, 2.2 Environment 2.2.10, a schedule of applicable equipment is to be compiled, *See* Pt 7, Ch 9, 1.2 Information and plans required to be submitted 1.2.1. Where it is proposed to add to or modify the equipment referred to in Pt 7, Ch 9, 2.2 Environment 2.2.10 the schedule is to be maintained accordingly, *See also* Pt 7, Ch 9, 6.1 General 6.1.1. A copy of the schedule documentation is to be placed on board the vessel and a copy is to be made available to the ACS Surveyor on request.

2. 2. 12 Passive electromagnetic equipment, considered not liable to cause or be susceptible to electromagnetic disturbances, may be provided with an exemption statement in place of evidence of electromagnetic compatibility for the purposes of Pt 7, Ch 9, 2.2 Environment 2.2.11. Examples of passive electromagnetic equipment include cables, purely resistive loads and batteries.

2. 3 ighting

2. 3. 1 The level of lighting is to enable bridge personnel to perform all bridge tasks, including maintenance and chart and office work, by day and night. Controls, indicators, instruments, keyboards, etc. on the bridge are to be capable of being *See*n in the dark, either by means of internal lighting within the equipment or the wheelhouse lighting system. A satisfactory level of flexibility within the lighting system is to be available to enable the bridge personnel to adjust the lighting in brightness and direction as required in different areas of the bridge and by the needs of individual instruments and controls.

2. 3. 2 All illumination and lighting of instruments, keyboards and controls are to be adjustable down to zero, except the lighting of alarm and warning indicators and the controls of dimmers which are to remain readable.

2. 3. 3 Two separate circuits are to be provided for wheelhouse lighting, such that failure of any one of the circuits does not leave the space in darkness, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 5.7, Lighting circuits.

2. 3. 4 Emergency lighting is to be provided for the wheelhouse, stairways and exits, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 3 Emergency source of electrical power.

2. 3. 5 Lighting used in areas and at items of equipment requiring illumination, whilst the ship is navigating, is to be such that night vision is not impaired, e.g. red lighting. Such lighting is to be arranged, so that it cannot be mistaken for a navigation light by another ship, and to prevent glare and stray image reflections.

2. 3. 6 In order to avoid possible confusion in colour discrimination, red lighting is not to be fitted over chart tables.

2. 3. 7 To avoid unnecessary light sources in the front area of the bridge, only instruments necessary for the safe navigation and manoeuvring of the ship are to be located in this area.

2. 3. 8 Means are to be provided to prevent the sudden flooding of light onto the bridge from alleyways, accommodation areas and the chart table area.

2. 3. 9 Deck and superstructure lights which may impair safe navigation are to be controlled from the bridge.

2. 3. 10 Each navigation light is to be provided with an audible and visual alarm to indicate failure of the light, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 15.6, Navigation lights.

2. 3. 11 Means are to be provided to test alarm and other indicator lamps.

2. 4 Windows

2. 4. 1 All wheelhouse windows are to be constructed of shatterproof toughened glass having a strength commensurate with the degree of exposure of the bridge to storm conditions and complying with a recognised National or International Standard, e.g. ISO 21005, *Ships and marine technology – Thermally toughened safetyglass panes for windows and side scuttles*.

2. 4. 2 Windows are to be as wide as possible and divisions between them are to be kept to a minimum. No division is to be positioned immediately forward of any workstation or on the ship's centreline.

2. 4. 3 To reduce reflections from internal lighting, etc. the bridge windows are to be inclined from the vertical plane top out, at an angle of not less than 10° and not more than 25°. Alternative arrangements will be specially considered.

2. 4. 4 The height of the lower edge of the front windows is to allow a forward view over the bow for a person at the navigation workstation and is not to obstruct any of the required fields of vision, *See* Pt 7, Ch 9, 2.5 Fields of vision. In this respect, the height of the lower edge of the front windows above the deck is to be kept as low as possible and, as far as practicable, is not to be more than 1000 mm above the deck surface.

2. 4. 5 The upper edge of the front windows is to allow a forward view of the horizon for a person with an eyeheight of 1800 mm at the conning position when the ship is pitching in heavy seas and, as far as practicable, is not to be less than 2000 mm above the deck surface.

2. 4. 6 Clear views through the windows in front of the conning position, navigation workstation, and, where applicable, bridge wings are to be provided at all times regardless of weather conditions. At least two windows are to provide such a view.

2. 4. 7 To ensure a clear view in bright sunshine, sunscreens with minimum colour distortion are to be provided. Such screens are to be readily removable and not permanently installed. Polarised and tinted windows are not to be fitted.

2. 4. 8 Heavy duty wipers, preferably provided with an interval function and a fresh water wash, are to be fitted.

2. 4. 9 Efficient cleaning, de-icing and de-misting systems are to be fitted.

2. 4. 10 Suitable safe external access arrangements fitted under the bridge windows are to be provided to enable cleaning in the event of failure of the above systems.

2. 5 Fields of vision

2. 5. 1 It is to be possible to observe all objects necessary for navigation, including other traffic and navigation marks, in any direction from inside the wheelhouse. In this respect there is to be a field of view around the vessel of 360° obtained by an observer moving within the confines of the wheelhouse.

2. 5. 2 The view of the sea surface from the conning position and the navigation workstation is not to be obscured by more than two ship lengths, or 500 m, whichever is less, forward of the bow to 10° on either side, irrespective of the ship's draught, trim and deck cargo, *See* Figure 9. 2. 1: View of sea surface from conning position and navigation workstation.

2. 5. 3 Blind sectors caused by cargo, cargo gear and other obstructions outside the wheelhouse forward of the beam obstructing the view of the sea surface as *Seen* from the conning position and the navigation workstation are not to exceed 10° each. The total arc of blind sectors is not to exceed 20° and the clear sector between blind sectors shall be at least 5°. However, in the view described in the preceding paragraph, each individual blind sector is not to exceed 5°.

2. 5. 4 The horizontal field of vision from the conning position and the navigation workstation is to extend over an arc from more than 22.5° abaft the beam on one side, through forward, to more

than 22.5° abaft the beam on the other side, *See* Figure 9. 2. 2: Horizontal field of view from conning position and navigation workstation.

2. 5. 5 From the main steering position, the field of vision is to extend over an arc from dead ahead to at least 60° on each side, *See* Figure 9. 2. 3: Field of view from main steering position.

2. 5. 6 From each bridge wing, the field of vision is to extend over an arc from at least 45° on the opposite bow through dead ahead and then aft to 180° from dead ahead, *See* Figure 9. 2. 4: Field of view from starboard bridge wing.

Figure 9. 2. 1: View of sea surface from conning position and navigation workstation

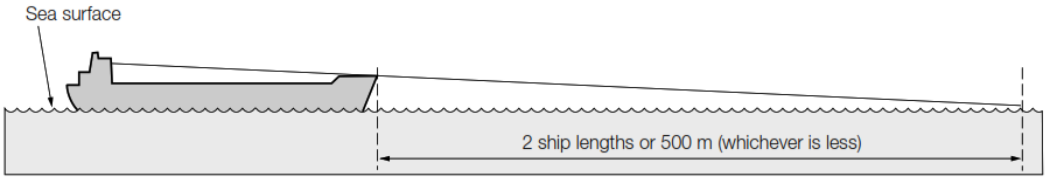


Figure 9. 2. 2: Horizontal field of view from conning position and navigation workstation

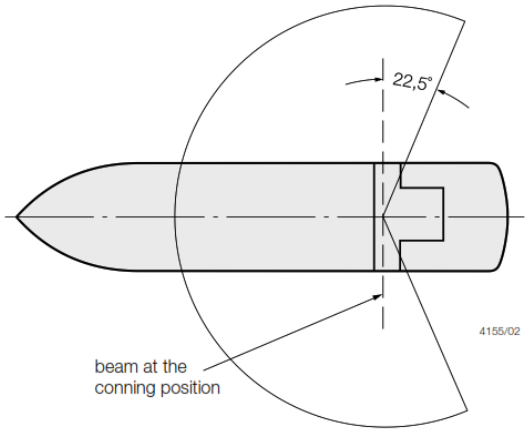


Figure 9. 2. 3: Field of view from main steering position

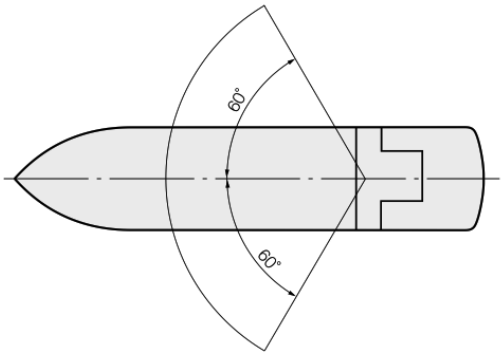
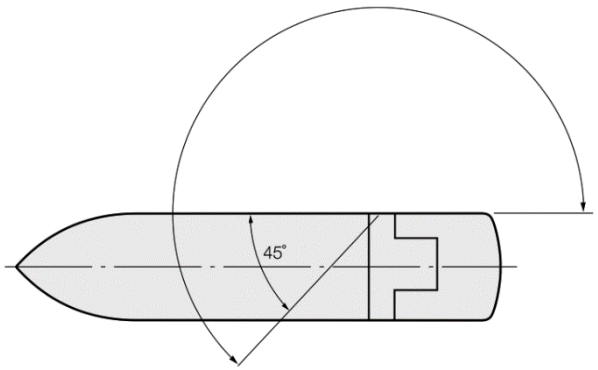


Figure 9. 2. 4: Field of view from starboard bridge wing



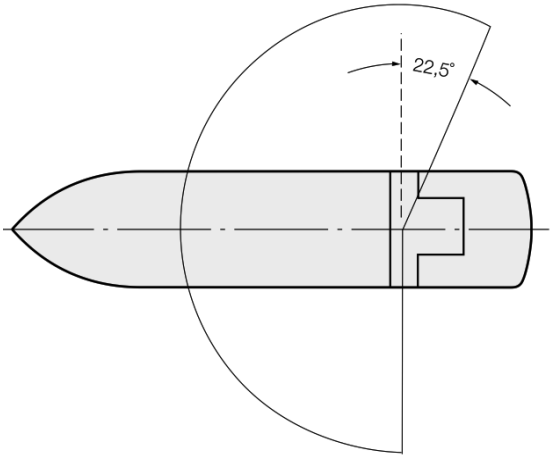
2. 5. 7 There is to be a line of sight from the port wing to the starboard wing through the wheelhouse.

2. 5. 8 The ship's side is to be visible from the bridge wing.

2. 5. 9 From workstations for functions other than navigation, the field of vision is to enable an effective lookout to be maintained and, in this respect, is to extend at least over an arc from 90° on the port bow, through forward, to 22.5° abaft the beam on the starboard side, *See* Figure 9. 2. 5: Field of view from workstation other than for navigation.

2. 5. 10 The height of consoles is not to interfere with the fields of vision defined above and is not to exceed 1350 mm.

Figure 9. 2. 5: Field of view from workstation other than for navigation



PART

7

CHAPTER 9 **Navigational Arrangements and Integrated Bridge Systems**

SECTION 3 **Workstations**

3. 1 Navigation workstation

3. 1. 1 A workstation for navigation is to be arranged to enable efficient operation by one person under normal operating conditions. The workstation area is to be sufficient to allow at least two operators to use the equipment simultaneously. The arrangement of instruments and controls is to allow the use of all instruments and controls necessary for navigating and manoeuvring in any normal working position.

3. 1. 2 An adequate conning position is to be provided close to the forward centre window. If the view in the centreline is obstructed by large masts, cranes, etc. two additional conning positions giving a clear view ahead are to be provided, one on the port side and one on the starboard side of the centreline, no more than 5 m apart. In addition to the conning position, a second position with a view of the area immediately in front of the bridge superstructure is to be provided close to a forward window or, alternatively, the conning position is to be wide enough to accommodate two persons.

3. 1. 3 The main steering position is to be located on the ship's centreline, unless the view ahead is obstructed by large masts, cranes, etc. In this case, the steering position is to be located a distance to starboard of the centreline sufficient to obtain a clear view ahead and special steering references for use by day and night are to be provided, e.g. sighting marks forward.

3. 1. 4 The following facilities are to be provided at the navigation workstation:

- Radar and radar plotting facilities, *See* Pt 7, Ch 9, 3.1 Navigation workstation 3.1.5.
- Position-fixing system displays, *See* Pt 7, Ch 9, 3.1 Navigation workstation 3.1.6.
- Echo sounder display.
- Speed and distance indications, *See* Pt 7, Ch 9, 3.1 Navigation workstation 3.1.11 and Pt 7, Ch 9, 3.1 Navigation workstation 3.1.12.
- Gyrocompass display, *See* Pt 7, Ch 9, 3.1 Navigation workstation 3.1.7.
- Magnetic compass display.
- Wind speed and direction indication.
- Steering controls and indication, *See* Pt 5, Ch 19, 5 Electric power circuits, electric control circuits, monitoring and alarms.
- Rate of turn indication.
- Course/track controls and indications, *See* Pt 7, Ch 9, 3.1 Navigation workstation 3.1.8.

- Main propulsion and thruster controls and indication, *See* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.6, Bridge control for main propulsion machinery and Pt 5, Ch 7, 5.3 Controllable pitch propellers and transverse thrust units.
- Watch safety system acknowledge.
- Watch safety system manual initiation.
- Internal communications system.
- VHF radiotelephone.
- Time indication.
- Window clear view controls.
- Navigation lights controls.
- Whistle control.
- Morse light keys.
- Wheelhouse/equipment lighting controls.
- Automatic ship identification system (AIS) information.
- Sound reception system where fitted, *See* Pt 7, Ch 9, 2.2 Environment 2.2.8.
- Means to cease the distribution of long-range identification and tracking information, where required by SOLAS Ch V, *Regulation 19 - Carriage requirements for shipborne navigational systems and equipment*.

3. 1. 5 Two functionally independent radars or alternative means are to be provided to determine and display the range and bearing of radar transponders and other surface craft, obstructions, buoys, shorelines and navigational marks. One of the radars is to operate in the X-band (9 GHz) and the other is to operate in the S-band (3 GHz).

3. 1. 6 At least two different automatic position-fixing systems giving a continuous display of latitude and longitude are to be provided in the interests of redundancy and diversity. One of these is to be GPS or equivalent. The other is to be a system providing similar global coverage such as GLONASS, where available. When a second GPS receiver is installed to satisfy this requirement, at least one of the receivers is to be provided with differential correction functionality (DGPS) and the receivers are to be arranged to operate independently as far as is practicable.

3. 1. 7 A gyrocompass or alternative means for determining, displaying and transmitting the ship's heading by shipborne, non-magnetic means, is to be provided and is to be clearly readable by the helmsman at the main steering position. The heading information is to be used directly by the radars, radar plotting aids and automatic identification system, *See* Pt 7, Ch 9, 3.1 Navigation workstation 3.1.5 and Pt 7, Ch 9, 3.1 Navigation workstation 3.1.13. The gyrocompass is to be provided with a gyrocompass heading repeater located at the emergency steering position in the steering gear compartment and a gyrocompass bearing repeater allowing bearings to be taken over 360°.

3. 1. 8 An autopilot, track control system or alternative means of automatically maintaining the ship's heading or a straight track is to be provided. At any time, it is to be possible to immediately restore manual control.

3. 1. 9 Heading monitoring is to be provided to monitor the actual heading information by independent heading sources. An off-course warning is to be given if the actual heading of the ship deviates from the set track course beyond a pre-set value. The pre-set off-course warning limit is to be large enough to prevent unnecessary alarms.

3. 1. 10 Where automatic track following is provided, sufficient warning is to be given of the approach of a waypoint, so that, in the event of no acknowledgment from the officer of the watch, there is adequate time for the backup navigator to reach the bridge and accept the change of course.

3. 1. 11 A speed log or alternative means of indicating the ship's speed and distance through water is to be provided. The speed through water measurement is to be used directly by the ARPA as an aid to collision avoidance.

3. 1. 12 A speed log or alternative means of indicating the ship's speed and distance over ground is to be provided, which is to be separate from the device required by Pt 7, Ch 9, 3.1 Navigation workstation 3.1.11. Speed over ground is to be indicated in both the fore-aft and athwartships directions.

3. 1. 13 Navigational systems and equipment are to be of a type approved by the national administration and in conformity with appropriate performance standards not inferior to those adopted by IMO from time to time. Documentary evidence to this effect is to be submitted. *See* SOLAS 1974 as amended, Ch V, *Regulation 18 - Approval, surveys and performance standards of navigational systems and equipment and voyage data recorder*.

3. 1. 14 Where alternative means of fulfilling the navigational requirements are permitted, the means are to be approved by the national administration and in conformity with appropriate performance standards.

3. 2 Voyage planning workstation

3. 2. 1 A voyage planning workstation is to be provided at which the following facilities are available:

- Chart display and information facilities.
- Position-fixing systems.
- Time indication.

3. 2. 2 Time indication at the voyage planning workstation is to be derived from the same system as used at the navigation workstation.

3. 2. 3 An Electronic Chart Display and Information System (ECDIS) is to be provided. Chart tables for paper charts, where provided, are to be large enough to accommodate all chart sizes normally used internationally for maritime traffic and are to have facilities for illuminating the chart, *See also* Pt 7, Ch 9, 2.3 Lighting 2.3.8.

PART

7

CHAPTER 9 **Navigational Arrangements and Integrated Bridge Systems**

SECTION 4 **Systems**

4. 1 Alarm and warning systems

4. 1. 1 Alarms associated with navigation equipment are to be both audible and visual and are to be centralised for efficient identification. Repeater displays may be fitted on the bridge wings and at other appropriate positions on the bridge where necessary.

4. 1. 2 The following alarms are to be provided:

- Closest point of approach.
- Shallow depth.
- Waypoint approaching (where automatic track following is provided).
- Off-course.
- Off-track (where automatic track following is provided).
- Steering alarms, *See* Table 19. 5. 1: Alarms in Pt 5, Ch 19 Steering Systems or Table 20. 4. 1: Alarms for control systems in Pt 5, Ch 20 Azimuth Thrusters, as applicable.
- Navigation light failure alarms, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 15.6, Navigation lights, including Pt 6, Ch 2, 15.6 Navigation lights 15.6.8 for grouping.
- Gyrocompass failure.
- Watch safety system failure.
- Failure of any power supply to the distribution panels referred to in Pt 7, Ch 9, 4.4 Power supplies 4.4.1.

4. 1. 3 Audible signals are to be designed not to startle operators. Suitable types are shown in Table 9. 4. 1: Suitable audible signals.

Table 9. 4. 1: Suitable audible signals

Type	Typical characteristics	Considerations
Buzzer	Low intensity and frequencies	Good alerting in quiet environment without startling
Bell	Moderate intensity and frequencies	Penetrates low frequency noise well, abrupt onset has a high alert value
Chime	Moderate intensity and frequencies	Good in quiet environment, non-startling

Tone	Moderate intensity and limited frequency range	Convenient for intercom transmission, high alert value if intermittent

4. 1. 4 In the event that any alarm initiated by navigation equipment on the navigating bridge has not been acknowledged on the bridge within a period of 30 seconds, a visual and audible alarm is to be initiated immediately to warn the appointed back-up navigator and/or the Master.

4. 1. 5 In the event that the alarm required by Pt 7, Ch 9, 4.1 Alarm and warning systems 4.1.4 is not acknowledged, the system is to initiate an alarm at the locations of further crew members capable of taking corrective actions following a time delay sufficient to allow the Master or back-up navigator to reach the bridge. The time interval is to be adjustable between 90 seconds up to a maximum of 3 minutes. In ships, other than passenger ships, the alarm to warn the further crew members may be initiated at the same time as the alarm to warn the Master and back-up navigator.

4. 1. 6 The functionality specified in Pt 7, Ch 9, 4.1 Alarm and warning systems 4.1.4 and Pt 7, Ch 9, 4.1 Alarm and warning systems 4.1.5 may be incorporated in the watch safety system required by Pt 7, Ch 9, 4.2 Watch safety system, or in another fixed system.

4. 2 Watch safety system

4. 2. 1 A watch safety system satisfying the requirements of the IMO *Resolution MSC.128(75) - Performance Standards for a Bridge Navigational Watch Alarm System (BNWAS) - (adopted on 20 May 2002)* and approved by the national administration is to be provided to monitor the well-being and awareness of the watchkeeper.

4. 2. 2 If, depending upon the shipboard work organisation, the backup navigator may attend locations not connected to the alarm transfer system, a wireless portable device is to be provided enabling both the transfer of alarms and two-way speech communication with the bridge. An audible warning from the portable device is to be provided in the event of loss of the wireless link with the bridge. Alternative arrangements will be considered.

4. 2. 3 Acknowledgement of any alarm is to automatically reset the time interval between warnings. Manual adjustment of controls may also be used for this purpose. Manual adjustment of controls and navigation equipment (*See also* Pt 7, Ch 9, 5.3 Equipment 5.3.14) is to automatically reset the watch safety interval timer. Reset arrangements based on the detection of movement in the bridge are not considered to satisfy this requirement or to confirm well-being and watch-keeping awareness.

4. 3 Communications

4. 3. 1 A telephone system is to be provided to enable two-way speech communication between the wheelhouse and at least the following locations:

- machinery control station space, *See* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.6 Bridge control for main propulsion machinery 2.6.7;
- emergency steering position in the steering gear compartment;
- Master's and Navigating Officers' cabins, offices, mess and public rooms.

4. 3. 2 The bridge is to have priority over the system.

4. 3. 3 A list of extension numbers is to be clearly displayed adjacent to each telephone.

4. 4 Power supplies

4. 4. 1 Local distribution panels are to be provided for all items of electrically operated navigational equipment, the telephone system, the watch safety system and the clear view systems. These

panels are to be supplied by two exclusive circuits, one fed from the main source of electrical power and one fed from an emergency source of electrical power. Each item of equipment is to be individually connected to its distribution panel. The power supplies to the distribution panels are to be arranged with automatic changeover facilities between the two sources, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 15.7 Navigational aids. Failure of any power supply to the distribution panels is to initiate an audible and visual alarm. This alarm should be included in the ship's alarm system, as required by Pt 6, Ch 1, 4.2 Alarm system for machinery, where applicable.

4. 4. 2 The watch safety system and the telephone system are to remain operational during blackout conditions.

4. 4. 3 Following a loss of power which has lasted for 45 seconds or less, all navigation functions are to be readily re-instated. In this respect, all navigational equipment is to recover within five minutes, with minimum operator intervention, by virtue of the emergency source and, where necessary, an uninterruptible power source.

PART

7

CHAPTER 9 **Navigational Arrangements and Integrated Bridge Systems**

SECTION 5 **Integrated Bridge Navigation System – IBS notation**

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 Where it is proposed that the bridge navigation functions are so arranged as to form an integrated bridge system, the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 9, 5.2,, General requirements are to be complied with.

5. 2 General requirements

5. 2. 1 For assignment of the notation **IBS**, in addition to satisfying the other requirements of this Section:

a. the layout of the bridge and the equipment located on the bridge is to satisfy the requirements of a relevant international or national ergonomic or human-centred design Standard or an acceptable equivalent; or

b. the notation **NAV1** is also to be assigned and the layout of the bridge and the equipment on the bridge are to satisfy the requirements Pt 7, Ch 9, 1 General requirements to Pt 7, Ch 9, 4 Systems; or

c. where the bridge is not intended to operate a periodic one man watch, the layout of the bridge and the equipment on the bridge are to satisfy the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 9, 1 General requirementsto Pt 7, Ch 9, 4 Systems, with the exception that the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 9, 4.3 Communications may be relaxed.

5. 2. 2 Where Pt 7, Ch 9, 5.2, General requirements 5.2.1 is applicable, the submissions required by Pt 7, Ch 9, 1.2 Information and plans required to be submitted 1.2.1 are to include evidence demonstrating satisfaction of the requirements of an identified relevant Standard.

5. 2. 3 To satisfy Pt 7, Ch 9, 5.2 General requirements 5.2.2, the evidence submitted is to:

a. be submitted to ACS for assessment, including identification of testing necessary to verify compliance in the submitted test schedules; or

b. include relevant statutory documentation demonstrating compliance with the relevant identified standard to the satisfaction of the National Administration. Such documentation is to be submitted prior to the assignment of the **IBS** notation. This may necessitate co-ordination of classification and statutory Surveys, particularly for new construction, before the **IBS** notation may be assigned.

5. 2. 4 Where Pt 7, Ch 9, 5.2 General requirements 5.2.1.c is applicable, the submissions required by Pt 7, Ch 9, 1.2 Information and plans required to be submitted 1.2.1 are to include plans and information for the consideration of ACS which demonstrate that the applicable requirements of Pt 7, Ch 9, 1 General requirementsto Pt 7, Ch 9, 4 Systems have been satisfied.

5. 2. 5 The design features for computer hardware, local area networks and software required by Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.10, Programmable electronic systems - General requirements, Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.11, Data communication links, Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.13, Programmable electronic systems - Additional requirements for essential services and safety critical systems and Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.14, Programmable electronic systems – Additional requirements for integrated systems respectively are to be complied with. Alarms and warnings associated with hardware and data communication are to be incorporated in the centralised alarm system required by Pt 7, Ch 9, 4.1, Alarm and warning systems.

5. 2. 6 Failure of a part of the integrated bridge navigation system is not to affect other parts except for those that directly depend upon the information from the defective part. Following such a failure, it is to be possible to operate each other part of the system separately.

5. 3 Equipment

5. 3. 1 Two independent gyrocompasses are to be available to provide heading information to the system. The heading signal from each gyrocompass is to be continuously available for display and for providing input to all relevant items of navigational equipment.

5. 3. 2 Only one gyrocompass is to be used by the integrated bridge system at any time for main display and control purposes. The navigating officer is to be able to switch between compasses at any time. The non-selected compass is to be automatically used as the independent heading source for the off-course warning required by Pt 7, Ch 9, 3.1 Navigation workstation 3.1.9.

5. 3. 3 It is to be possible to compare readings from each gyrocompass via the navigation workstation displays.

5. 3. 4 Automatic comparison between the gyrocompasses is to be provided and an alarm given if the difference between heading signals exceeds a pre-set value.

5. 3. 5 The capability to receive and utilise differential GPS corrections (or an equivalent) is to be included in the integrated bridge system.

5. 3. 6 As a minimum, the following information is to be displayed at the navigation workstation via visual display units:

- Steering mode.
- Gyro heading.
- Course to steer.
- Rate of turn.
- Rate of turn order.
- Speed and distance (from log and from GPS).
- Speed order.
- Waypoint bearing, distance and ETA.
- Water depth and alarm setpoint.
- Position fix from each available system.
- Main propulsion and thruster indication, *See* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.6, Bridge control for main propulsion machinery and Pt 5, Ch 7, 5.3 Controllable pitch propellers and transverse thrust units.
- Steering indication, *See* Pt 5, Ch 19, 5 Electric power circuits, electric control circuits, monitoring and alarms.

- Wind speed and direction.
- Time, *See* Pt 7, Ch 9, 3.2 Voyage planning workstation 3.2.2.

5. 3. 7 Additional information such as machinery monitoring, fire detection, cargo control, etc. may also be provided via additional pages on the visual display units.

5. 3. 8 The centralised alarm system and the watch safety system required by Pt 7, Ch 9, 4.1, Alarm and warning systems and Pt 7, Ch 9, 4.2 Watch safety system respectively are to be incorporated as functions of the integrated bridge system and are to be presented to the navigating officer via the conning display. The presentation and display of alarms and warnings is not to mask, obscure or degrade essential information displayed to aid navigational functions and maintain awareness of the navigational information, *See also* Pt 7, Ch 9, 5.5 Alarm management.

5. 3. 9 A route planning capability is to be provided by the integrated bridge system. This is to allow a voyage to be pre-planned as a series of waypoints and turn radii. It is to be possible to edit a voyage plan at any time without affecting route control and monitoring.

5. 3. 10 An automatic track following capability is to be provided in conjunction with the pre-planned route. The position fix used by the system is to be based at least upon GPS or equivalent, and is to be cross-checked by dead-reckoning, based upon speed over ground provided by the ship's log. In areas where differential corrections are available, it is to be possible to utilise these in the track following system.

5. 3. 11 In the event of failure of the track following capability the current heading or rate of turn is to be maintained until manually altered by the navigating officer. The quality of position fix input to the system is to be monitored, *See also* Pt 7, Ch 9, 3.1 Navigation workstation 3.1.10 and Pt 7, Ch 9, 4.1 Alarm and warning systems 4.1.2.

5. 3. 12 The integrated bridge system is to incorporate a display, which combines simultaneously the ECDIS high resolution colour representation of a nautical chart with a continuously updated record of own ship's position, pre-planned track, and radar targets in the vicinity. The entire tactical situation is to be displayed for the navigating officer in such a way that any risk from approaching, overtaking or crossing vessels may be assessed. Factors affecting the vessel's freedom to manoeuvre, such as water depths, channel boundaries, separation zones and other traffic are to be shown on the display.

5. 3. 13 The following alarms are to be provided and included in the centralised alarm system specified by Pt 7, Ch 9, 4.1 Alarm and warning systems 4.1.1:

- Off-track
- Waypoint approaching, *See* Pt 7, Ch 9, 3.1 Navigation workstation 3.1.10.
- Position fix inaccurate/lost.
- Loss of heading input.
- Loss of log input.
- Equipment or sub-system failure.
- Gyro mis-match.

5. 3. 14 Manual adjustment of any of the facilities of the integrated bridge system is to reset automatically the watch safety interval timer.

5. 4 Operator interface

5. 4. 1 Integrated display and control functions are to adopt a consistent man-machine interface philosophy and strategy. Particular consideration is to be paid to symbols, colours, controls, and information priorities.

5. 4. 2 The size, colour and density of text and graphic information displayed on a visual display unit is to be such that it may be read easily from the normal operator position under all operational lighting conditions.

5. 4. 3 Means are to be provided for the manual adjustment of the brightness of each visual display unit.

5. 4. 4 All information is to be presented on a background of high contrast, emitting as little light as possible by night.

5. 4. 5 Paged displays are to be presented in a way which allows the operator to find quickly the information needed. An overview page is to be easily available to remind the operator of the paging system.

5. 4. 6 Pages are to have a standardised format. Particular types of information and functional areas should be presented in a consistent manner, e.g. in the same position on different pages.

5. 4. 7 Each page is to have a unique identifying label on the screen.

5. 4. 8 Keyboards are to be divided logically into areas enabling rapid access to a desired function. Alphanumeric, paging and specific system keys are to be grouped separately and grouping is to be identical at all operator interfaces.

5. 4. 9 Soft keys may be used for display control and operation of systems non-critical to the safe operation of the vessel, otherwise dedicated controls are to be used.

5. 4. 10 Functions requested by the operator are to be acknowledged and confirmed by the system on completion.

5. 4. 11 Interfaces are to incorporate the capability for operators readily to decline or override automatic ship control functions critical to safe operation. *See* Pt 6, Ch 1, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.2 regarding submission of information on safety functions and overrides.

5. 4. 12 Default values, where applicable, are to be indicated by the system when requesting operator input.

5. 4. 13 If an input error is detected by the system, it is to allow the operator to correct the error immediately.

5. 4. 14 The system is to require confirmation from the operator for critical actions, e.g. they should not rely on single keystrokes.

5. 4. 15 Input error messages are to guide the correct responses, e.g.:

use Invalid entry: re-enter set point between 0 and 10

not Invalid entry.

5. 4. 16 All functions of the integrated bridge system are to remain available in the event of a single failure of an operator interface. This is to be achieved through redundancy in the integrated bridge system interfaces.

5. 5 Alarm management

5. 5. 1 All alarms provided on the bridge are to be included in the centralised alarm system required by Pt 7, Ch 9, 4.1 Alarm and warning systems 4.1.1.

5. 5. 2 In general, the alarm system is to be in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.3 Alarm systems, general requirements, *A.1021(26) Code on Alerts and Indicators, 2009 and MSC.302(87) Performance Standards for Bridge Alert Management*.

5. 5. 3 Alarm management on priority and functional levels is to be provided within the integrated bridge system. Alarms and other alerts are to be prioritised according to the urgency and type of response required by the bridge team, as follows:

a. **Emergency alarms** — alarms which indicate that immediate danger to human life, or to the ship and its machinery exists, and that immediate action must be taken.
b. **Alarms** – conditions requiring immediate attention and action by the bridge team:
i. to avoid any kind of hazardous situation and to maintain the safe operation of the ship, including escalation of unacknowledged warnings; or
ii. alerts which indicate that a caller is in distress or has an urgent message to transmit.
c. **Warnings** – conditions or situations which require immediate attention for precautionary reasons, to make the bridge team aware of conditions which are not immediately hazardous, but may become so.
d. **Cautions** – awareness of a condition which still requires attention out of the ordinary consideration of the situation or of given information.

5. 5. 4 Appropriate alarm management is to be provided. This includes prioritisation, distribution and recording of alarms and other alerts as required.

5. 5. 5 Within each priority, alerts are to be arranged in groups in order to reduce the quantity of information presented to the operator. More detailed information on the group alarm is to be readily available from the integrated bridge system on request.

5. 5. 6 Group alarms may be arranged on the bridge to indicate machinery faults, but alarms associated with faults requiring speed or power reduction or the automatic shutdown of propulsion machinery are to be identified by separate group alarms or by individual alarm parameters.

5. 5. 7 The following alarms are not to be grouped:

- Emergency alarms.
- Separate group alarms associated with faults requiring speed or power reduction or the automatic shutdown of propulsion machinery.
- Steering gear alarms.
- Navigation light power supply failure alarms, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 15.6 Navigation lights 15.6.8.

5. 5. 8 Alerts are to be displayed in order of priority. Within the priorities, alerts are to be displayed in the order in which they occur. The visual display units are to provide immediate display of new information, regardless of the information display page currently selected. This may be achieved by provision of a dedicated alert monitor, a dedicated area of screen for alerts or other suitable means.

5. 5. 9 Unacknowledged alarms are to be distinguished by either flashing text or a flashing marker adjacent to the text, and not merely by a change of colour. Acknowledged alarms are to be distinguished by either steady illuminated text or a steady illuminated marker adjacent to the text.

5. 5. 10 The centralised alarm system is to be capable of displaying at least 20 items simultaneously. There is to be a clear and unambiguous indication that there are additional items requiring attention when the display does not show all active alerts simultaneously, and it is to be possible to display the additional messages and to return to the display containing the highest priority items by single operator actions.

5. 5. 11 Alerts are to be acknowledged individually. It is to be possible temporarily to silence all audible signals with a single operator action.

5. 5. 12 The characteristics of audible warning and, where provided, caution signals are to be such that it is possible to differentiate these from audible alarm signals.

5. 6 Power supplies

5. 6. 1 All equipment forming part of the integrated bridge navigation system is to be regarded as navigational equipment and, as such, is to have power supplies in accordance with Pt 7, Ch 9, 4.4, Power supplies.

PART

7

CHAPTER 9 **Navigational Arrangements and Integrated Bridge Systems**

SECTION 6 **Trials**

6. 1 General

6. 1. 1 Before a new installation (or any alteration or addition to an existing installation) is put into service, tests are to be carried out to ensure satisfactory operation of the navigational equipment. These tests are in addition to any acceptance tests which may have been carried out at the manufacturers' works and are based on the approved test schedule as required by Pt 7, Ch 9, 1.2 Information and plans required to be submitted 1.2.1.

6. 1. 2 For **IBS** Notation, testing at the manufacturer's works and trials on board are to be carried out that cover the individual components and their interaction; and the bridge functions and their integration to form the Integrated Bridge System.

6. 1. 3 Two copies of the test schedule, signed by the Surveyor and Builder, are to be provided on completion of the survey. One copy is to be placed on board the ship and the other submitted to ACS.

6. 1. 4 Acceptance tests and trials for Programmable Electronic Systems are to include verification of software lifecycle activities appropriate to the stage in the system's lifecycle at the time of system examination.

PART

7

CHAPTER **10 Carriage of Refrigerated Containers**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**Trials**		**3079**
	1. 1	General	3079
	1. 2	Novel arrangement and designs	3080
	1. 3	Definitions	3080
SECTION 2	**Plans and documentation**		**3082**
	2. 1	General	3082
SECTION 3	**Ventilation and hold temperature**		**3084**
	3. 1	Ventilation system	3084
	3. 2	Heat balance	3085
	3. 3	Fan redundancy	3085
	3. 4	Hull structures	3086
SECTION 4	**Electrical, including container plug-in sockets**		**3087**
	4. 1	General	3087
	4. 2	Plug-in socket outlet supply transformers	3087
	4. 3	Container plug-in socket outlets	3087
	4. 4	Generated power for plug-in socket outlets	3088
SECTION 5	**Instrumentation, control and alarm systems**		**3089**
	5. 1	General	3089
	5. 2	Hold space temperature monitoring	3089
	5. 3	Container refrigeration system alarms	3089
SECTION 6	**Hold access and maintenance access arrangements**		**3090**
	6. 1	Hold pressure/vacuum	3090
	6. 2	Hold access arrangements	3090
	6. 3	Maintenance access arrangements	3090
SECTION 7	**Water cooler refrigeration units**		**3091**
	7. 1	Cooling water system	3091

SECTION 8 Deck-stowed refrigerated containers 3092
8. 1 General 3092
SECTION 9 Inspection and testing on completion 3093
9. 1 General 3093
9. 2 Acceptance tests 3093
9. 3 Testing of cooling water system 3094
SECTION 10 Spare gear 3095
10. 1 General 3095

PART

7

CHAPTER **10 Carriage of Refrigerated Containers**

SECTION **1 Trials**

1. 1 General

1. 1. 1 The requirements of this Chapter apply to ships where the class notation **CRC** 'carriage of refrigerated containers' is requested.

1. 1. 2 This notation may be applied to any ship which has the ability to carry refrigerated containers. The requirements of this Chapter cover refrigerated containers stowed on deck as well as in a hold space. A descriptive notation may be assigned in addition to the **CRC** notation giving details of electrical power and type of cargo.

1. 1. 3 The requirements are additional to the classification requirements for ships contained in other applicable parts of the Rules.

1. 1. 4 Ships which comply with the requirements of this Chapter will be eligible for the applicable class notation specified in Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.6 Class notations (refrigerated cargo installations (RMC), controlled atmosphere (CA) systems and carriage of refrigerated containers (CRC)).

1. 1. 5 An example of a typical class notation for a container ship classed with ACS, fitted with a ventilation system built under Special Survey and fitted with electrical plug-in points for deck stowed refrigerated containers, would be:

a. **+ CRC 230/140** to maintain 230 hold-stowed and 140 deck-stowed refrigerated containers operating at their design condition with a 24 hour average external ambient air temperature of 35°C.

1. 1. 6 An example of a typical class notation for a reefer ship classed with ACS, fitted with electrical plug-in points for deck stowed refrigerated containers, would be:

a. **+ CRC -/110** to maintain 110 deck-stowed refrigerated containers operating at their design condition with a 24 hour average external ambient air temperature of 35°C.

1. 1. 7 In addition to any class notation, an appropriate descriptive notation may be assigned to provide additional information about the ship's ability to carry refrigerated containers.

1. 1. 8 An example of a typical descriptive notation, which may be assigned in addition to the class notation, would be:

a. **crc 2.800 kW** provided with a power generating capacity of 2.800 kW dedicated to supplying the container plug-in points.
b. **crc 60%/40%** stowage ratio of 60% deep frozen and 40% chilled cargoes

1. 1. 9 These Rules do not cover any requirements for alarm and monitoring systems that may be fitted to container refrigeration units.

1. 2 Novel arrangement and designs

1. 2. 1 Where the proposed ventilation arrangement is novel in design, or the ventilation system involves the use of an arrangement different from that specified in the following sections, special tests may be required and a suitable descriptive note may be assigned.

1. 2. 2 The carriage of refrigerated containers in the hold spaces of ships other than dedicated container ships will be given special consideration. The **CRC** and descriptive notations will be assigned provided that the ventilation system is approved, installed and tested in accordance with the requirements of this Chapter.

1. 2. 3 Where a dedicated fresh water circulation system is installed to supply cooling water to containers fitted with an optional water cooled condenser, the fresh water system will also need to comply with the relevant Sections of Pt 5, Ch 12 Piping Design Requirements of the Rules.

1. 3 Definitions

1. 3. 1 **Balanced ventilation system** means a ventilation system consisting of a combination of forced draught and induced or natural draught, to produce a pressure condition in the hold space approximately equal to atmospheric pressure.

1. 3. 2 **Blackout** means that the main and auxiliary machinery installations, including the main power supply, are out of operation but the services for bringing them into operation (e.g. compressed air, starting current from batteries etc.) are available.

1. 3. 3 **Container cell** means the position of an individual container. This is usually within a set of vertical cell guides and is normally enclosed by transverse stringers located above and below the container.

1. 3. 4 **Container electrical power supply** means the generated power supply which is dedicated to supplying the total number of refrigerated containers and the hold ventilation system fan motors.

1. 3. 5 **Container plug-in point** means an electrical socket located at each applicable container location on deck and each cell location below deck being in accordance with Annex L of ISO 1496-2 : 1996.

1. 3. 6 **Design conditions** means the lowest design internal container temperature and the design maximum hold space temperature.

1. 3. 7 **Hold space** means an enclosed space containing refrigerated containers. The containers are usually restrained within cell guides. For hatch coverless ships, hold space means the space below the hatch coamings.

1. 3. 8 **Independent ventilation system** means a ventilation system that is in no way connected to another ventilation system and there is no provision available to allow connection to another ventilation system.

1. 3. 9 **Refrigerated container** means a standard container with a self-contained refrigeration system, located within the outer dimensions of the container, which can be driven by electrical power fed from an external power supply. The refrigeration system may be either a 'clip-on' or an integral type of cooling unit.

1. 3. 10 **Stack factor** means the ratio of the actual heat flowing into the containers forming the stack, to the heat which would flow into the same containers if all their surfaces were completely exposed to the hold temperature.

1. 3. 11 **Standard container** means a forty-foot equivalent unit (FEU) standard production container constructed in compliance with ACS's Container Certification Scheme, or another recognised *Container Certification Scheme* in accordance with ISO 1492/2 requirements. The container may be of the normal or 'high-cube' type.

1. 3. 12 **Stowage ratio** means the proportion of deepfrozen cargo in relation to banana or chilled cargoes. Unless specifically stated, the stowage ratio will be deemed to be 50% deep-frozen and 50% chilled cargo.

1. 3. 13 **Ventilation system** means a forced ventilation arrangement using mechanical fans to supply and/or extract air from the hold space.

PART

7

CHAPTER **10 Carriage of Refrigerated Containers**

SECTION **2 Plans and documentation**

2. 1 General

2. 1. 1 The following plans and information regarding the hold ventilation systems and the electrical supplies to container plug-in points are to be submitted in triplicate for appraisal before construction is commenced:

a. **Plans of ventilation arrangements:**
i. Location and installation details of each hold space ventilation system showing duct arrangement and sizes.
ii. Details of all mechanical ventilation fans including locations, number, duty at design conditions and power consumption.
iii. Details of air inlets including number, type, size and locations.
iv. Details of air outlets including number, type, size and locations.
v. Details and locations of dampers and flaps, if applicable.

b. **Plans of hold spaces:**
i. Refrigerated container stowage plans, including sectional elevation and plan views.
ii. Design pressure or vacuum in each hold space.
iii. Details of hatch cover sealing arrangements.
iv. Personnel access arrangements.
v. Details and locations of hold temperature measurement sensors.
vi. Details of any pressure/vacuum safety valves if applicable.

c. **Ventilation throughput:**
i. Specified air throughput rate and proposed method of measurement.
ii. Design temperature rise in the hold space and corresponding diurnal external ambient air temperature and relative humidity.
iii. Schematic arrangement of the ventilation system showing proposed air volume and velocity at junctions.

d. **Plans of deck-stowed containers:**
i. Refrigerated container stowage plans, including sectional elevation and plan views.
ii. Details of access arrangements for maintenance and monitoring of refrigeration units fitted to deck-stowed containers.

e. **Hull structure:**
i. Details of associated openings through the hull structure are to be submitted.

f. **Electrical**. In addition to the applicable requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.2, Documentation required for design review, the following information and plans specific to the container plug-in points and ventilation system are to be submitted:
i. Power supply arrangements to the deck stowed refrigerated containers.
ii. Power supply arrangements to the hold space stowed refrigerated containers.
iii. Power supply arrangements to the ventilation system.

iv. Single-line diagram of the ventilation system. This is to include rating of motors, insulation type, size and current loading of cables and make, type and rating of protective devices.

v. A schedule of normal operating loads of the ventilation system estimated for the design conditions expected.

g. **Control equipment**. In addition to the applicable requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, 1.2, Documentation required for design review , the following information and plans specific to the ventilation system are to be submitted:

i. Line diagram of control circuits.

ii. List of monitored, control and alarm points.

iii. Locations of control panels and consoles.

iv. Details of alarm system, including location of control panel and audible and visual warning devices.

h. **Testing:**

i. Details of the testing and commissioning programme, including instrumentation to be used, are to be submitted.

PART

7

CHAPTER 10 Carriage of Refrigerated Containers

SECTION 3 Ventilation and hold temperature

3. 1 Ventilation system

3. 1. 1 Means are to be provided to maintain the hold space at an acceptable temperature. This can be achieved by either; the direct removal of the waste heat from the refrigerant equipment of each container, or by the dissipation of the waste heat using large quantities of external ambient air. In each case the system is to be arranged in such a way as to minimise its affect on the hold space temperature. This may be accomplished by the use of a ventilation system of a mechanical supply and/or extract type.

3. 1. 2 The selection of a maximum allowable hold temperature is to be agreed between the designer and Operator/Owner. Whilst the recommendations given in these Rules do not stipulate a maximum allowable hold temperature, generally it should not exceed 45°C dry bulb. Guidance should be sought from container manufacturers on the maximum allowable ambient air temperature. When determining the maximum allowable hold temperature, the maximum number of refrigerated containers within the hold space, operating at their design condition, is to be taken into consideration.

3. 1. 3 The ventilation system is to have sufficient capacity to remove or dissipate the heat from each designated refrigerated container cell and maintain the hold temperature at or below the maximum allowable hold temperature.

3. 1. 4 The volume of air to be supplied or exhausted from a hold space per refrigerated container is at the discretion of the ventilation system designer. For guidance purposes, an indication of the amount of air required for a standard FEU having an air cooled condenser operating at the example notation as stated in Pt 7, Ch 10, 1.1 General 1.1.5 is as follows:

- *Simple supply only system* 90 m^3/min
- *Supply and exhaust duct system* 75 m^3/min
- *Sealed exhaust system* 37 m^3/min

3. 1. 5 The design of the hold space is to be compatible with the type of ventilation system proposed. For example, for supply and ducted exhaust systems, the semi enclosure of each stringer level may be beneficial. For a simple supply only system the provision of multiple gratings in each stringer level would benefit the free circulation and removal of warm air.

3. 1. 6 Only container cells served by the ventilation system are to be used for the transportation of refrigerated containers.

3. 1. 7 The design heat rejection for each container cell and the total hold space heat rejection, including any heat imparted from the ventilation system fans, if applicable, are to be stated. Guidance on heat rejection values which may be used is given below.

3. 1. 8 The minimum quantity of air supplied or extracted for each container cell and for each hold space is dependent on the type of system proposed and to be stated.

3. 1. 9 The ventilation system designer is to stipulate the maximum allowable back pressure occurring within the hold space. Due regard needs to be given to this value when selecting the ventilation fans and their ability to operate efficiently again the proposed maximum back pressure. The lower the back pressure, the more efficient the system and, hence, the lower the electrical power requirement to drive the fan motors for a given air throughput.

3. 1. 10 For supply air systems, the air outlet at each container location is to be such as to provide a flow of air towards the container's integral refrigeration system. Consideration should be given to the use of movable spigot outlets or ducting to allow both standard and high-cube containers to be stowed in any location.

3. 1. 11 The positions of supply air inlets and exhaust air outlets are to be such as to reduce the possibility of shortcycling. An adequate distance is to be maintained between inlet and outlet vents on the open deck.

3. 1. 12 The effect of warm exhaust air on deck-stowed refrigerated containers is to be taken into consideration. Similarly, the effect of warm exhaust air from deck-stowed refrigerated containers on the inlet air to the hold is to be considered.

3. 1. 13 Arrangements are to be provided to permit a rapid shutdown and effective closure of the ventilation system in each hold space in case of fire.

3. 1. 14 Ventilation ducts which penetrate the deck and/or hatch coaming, including dampers and / or closures, are to be made of steel and their arrangement is to be to the satisfaction of the relevant Administration. The use of nonmetallic flexible ducts, local to each container location, will be acceptable provided the material demonstrates suitable low flame spread characteristics.

3. 2 Heat balance

3. 2. 1 The amount of heat absorbed from the hold space by each container, which is used to determine the design air change rate, is to be stated.

3. 2. 2 The heat gain or loss from all adjacent spaces, such as fuel oil tanks, ballast tanks, engine room, etc. is to be stated.

3. 2. 3 The heat rejection from the refrigeration unit of a standard TEU or FEU container when working at low temperature (minus 18°C), chill temperature (2°C) and banana carriage temperature (13°C), used to determine the design air change rate, is to be stated. The following FEU values may be used for guidance purposes:

- *Frozen cargo (minus 18°C/38°C).* 7.0 kW
- *Chill cargo (2°C/38°C).* 10.0 kW
- *Banana cargo (13°C/38°C).* 13.0 kW.

3. 2. 4 The above heat rejection values are for the container during normal operation after the cooling down period of a non-precooled cargo.

3. 2. 5 The stowage ratio, for the carriage of containers at different internal temperatures, which is used to determine the design air change rate, is to be stated.

3. 2. 6 When an extraction ventilation system is proposed, a stack factor of 0.9 may be used in the heat balance calculations. If a ventilation system using supply air only is proposed, then no stack factor can be allowed.

3. 3 Fan redundancy

3. 3. 1 A single supply or exhaust fan is not to be used for multiple container stack locations.

3. 3. 2 Individual container cells may be fed by a system having a single mechanical fan or fans to supply and/or extract air.

3. 3. 3 Installed standby fans are not required. However, a minimum of one replacement fan, or fan blade assembly and motor, of each size is to be carried onboard. Fans are to be arranged to enable each to be replaced whilst the remaining systems remain in operation.

3. 4 Hull structures

3. 4. 1 Special consideration will be given to installations using hull spaces for air distribution, rather than dedicated ductwork.

3. 4. 2 Consideration is to be given to measures to prevent ingress of water into air inlets and exhaust outlets, where applicable.

PART

7

CHAPTER 10 Carriage of Refrigerated Containers

SECTION 4 Electrical, including container plug-in sockets

4. 1 General

4. 1. 1 In addition to the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2 Electrical Engineering, the following are to be complied with:

a. Electrical power for the ventilation system is to be provided by one or more separate feeder circuit(s) from the main switchboard.

b. Under sea-going conditions, the number and rating of service generators are to be sufficient to supply all container plug-in socket outlets and the hold space ventilation system in addition to the ship's essential services, when any one generating set is out of action.

4. 1. 2 The choice between a low (440 V) or high (6.600 V) distribution system serving the container plug-in point is considered a purely commercial decision. Consideration needs to be given to the fault level of the generating equipment selected and the total generating capacity of the ship. Independent of the system voltage, only the dedicated plug-in socket outlet kW value will be stated in the notation.

4. 1. 3 Where a distribution system exceeding 1000 V a.c. is employed, the plug-in socket outlets for each hold space may be fed from a local transformer and the following are to be complied with:

a. Transformers are to be fed from individual circuits divided between different sections of the main switchboard.

b. The electrical power for the ventilation system may be fed locally from each transformer.

4. 1. 4 Container plug-in socket outlets are to comply with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 13.6 Socket outlets and plugs.

4. 2 Plug-in socket outlet supply transformers

4. 2. 1 A standby transformer serving the container plug-in socket outlets is to be provided. However, if the CRC notation is not assigned, then there is no specific requirement covering the installation of a standby power supply.

4. 2. 2 If a standby transformer is to be provided, then the exact requirements are open to interpretation and consideration should be given to the contents of IACS Unified Interpretation SC 83 with regard to the equipment provided.

4. 3 Container plug-in socket outlets

4. 3. 1 The distribution and sub-circuit cabling for the container plug-in socket outlets is to be rated at the full load capacity (maximum rated capacity).

4. 3. 2 Groups of container plug-in socket outlets may be fed from a number of independent sub circuits.

4. 3. 3 Sub circuits are to be able to be individually switched, thus allowing a sequential start up after a prolonged (12 hours) blackout. A suitable procedure is to be proposed and approved that takes into consideration the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 10, 4.4 Generated power for plug-in socket outlets in addition to the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2 Electrical Engineering.

4. 4 Generated power for plug-in socket outlets

4. 4. 1 When determining the dedicated generating power for the plug-in socket outlets, the electrical power drawn by the refrigeration unit of a standard TEU and FEU refrigerated container when working at both low temperature (minus 18°C) and chill temperature (2°C), is to be stated.

4. 4. 2 The following values for various cargoes operating at normal design conditions may be used for guidance purposes:

4. 4. 3 Twenty foot equivalent unit (TEU):

Frozen cargo (minus 18°C/38°C)	5.5 kW
Chill cargo (2°C/38°C)	7.5 kW
Banana cargo (13°C/38°C)	*See* Pt 7, Ch 10, 4.4 Generated power for plug-in socket outlets 4.4.5

4. 4. 4 Forty foot equivalent unit (FEU) including high-cube containers:

Frozen cargo (minus 18°C/38°C)	8.5 kW
Chill cargo (2°C/38°C)	11.0 kW
Banana cargo (13°C/38°C)	*See* Pt 7, Ch 10, 4.4 Generated power for plug-in socket outlets 4.4.5

4. 4. 5 If the Owner, charterer or operator has operational data indicating that, for the ship's specific trade (for example banana only cargoes), the power provision for the refrigerated containers requirements exceeds those stated above, then these higher values should be substituted and submitted for consideration.

4. 4. 6 The above values are for the container during normal operation after the cooling-down period of a non-precooled cargo.

4. 4. 7 An overall diversity factor may be applied to the container's total power requirement. Consideration is to be given to Pt 6, Ch 2, 5.6 Diversity factor. This diversity factor is to be applied to all refrigerated container cell locations. For guidance purposes, the diversity factor is not generally to be less than 0.75.

PART

7

CHAPTER 10 Carriage of Refrigerated Containers

SECTION 5 Instrumentation, control and alarm systems

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 The alarm system is to indicate failure of each independent ventilation system in each hold space. If a balanced ventilation system is proposed, indication of failure for each individual part is to be given. The alarm system may be integral with the machinery space alarm system or, if fitted, the refrigerated container monitoring system.

5. 1. 2 Alarms are to be initiated in a manned location. Where alarms are displayed as group alarms in the main machinery space alarm system, provision is to be made to identify individual alarms at a separate control panel.

5. 1. 3 Alarms are to give both an audible and visual warning.

5. 2 Hold space temperature monitoring

5. 2. 1 A minimum of two temperature sensors are to be provided in each hold space carrying refrigerated containers. The sensors are to be positioned to give an indication of the mean air temperature occurring in the hold space used for the carriage of refrigerated containers. Sensors are to be positioned so as not to be directly affected by warm air from the condensers.

5. 2. 2 The hold temperature is to be continually monitored. Temperatures are to be recorded, either automatically or manually as a hold temperature log. If temperatures are to be logged manually, then the mean temperature in each hold space is to be recorded.

5. 2. 3 If the mean hold space temperature rises above the design maximum, then an alarm is to be initiated.

5. 3 Container refrigeration system alarms

5. 3. 1 These Rules do not cover any requirements for alarm and monitoring systems fitted to containers. It is acceptable to utilise the container power supply cables to transmit signals to a suitable receiver or data logger.

PART

7

CHAPTER **10 Carriage of Refrigerated Containers**

SECTION **6 Hold access and maintenance access arrangements**

6. 1 Hold pressure/vacuum

6. 1. 1 The maximum permitted pressure or vacuum that may occur in the hold space is to be stated. It is proposed that a value, in accordance with the contents of Pt 3, Ch 1, 9.7 Definitions and details of tests 9.7.4, may be considered as a maximum value. An overpressure of 0.015 MPa may be used for guidance purposes. If the ventilation system is capable of producing a positive pressure or vacuum in excess of the design allowable figure, then means are to be provided to protect the hold space against the effect of over pressure or vacuum. If axial supply fans are proposed, even if aerofoil fan blades are fitted, it is unlikely that the fans will be able to produce a pressure above 0.0025 MPa (250 mm water gauge).

6. 1. 2 If required, consideration is to be given to the use of a pressure or vacuum relief device or other arrangement set to operate below the maximum allowable hold pressure or vacuum.

6. 1. 3 The proposed pressure or vacuum relief device for each hold space is to be of adequate size.

6. 2 Hold access arrangements

6. 2. 1 Suitable means are to be provided to allow personnel safe access to each hold space when the ventilation system is in operation. Consideration is to be given to the possible over pressure or partial vacuum that may occur in the hold space. The use of an airlock arrangement may need to be considered.

6. 3 Maintenance access arrangements

6. 3. 1 Free access to each applicable container cell and hold space is to be provided to allow replacement of refrigeration equipment in the event of failure or malfunction.

6. 3. 2 Adequate access is to be provided to allow plugging in, data recording or retrieval and general maintenance of all deck- and hold-stowed refrigerated containers. Suitable means are to be provided to allow the removal of the compressor and electric motor from each refrigerated container.

6. 3. 3 Suitable safe access is to be provided to each tier of deck stowed refrigerated containers to allow electrical connection, monitoring and maintenance. The use of fixed platforms, such as lashing bridges, should be proposed where possible.

PART

7

CHAPTER **10 Carriage of Refrigerated Containers**

SECTION **7 Water cooler refrigeration units**

7. 1 Cooling water system

7. 1. 1 A minimum of two independently operated circulation pumps are to be installed. One of the pumps may be used for other services, such as a general service pump.

7. 1. 2 The capacity of each pump should be sufficient to supply each container at the required flow rate with an excess capacity of at least 10%. This required flow rate should be obtained from the container manufacturer.

7. 1. 3 The fresh water system is to provide sufficient flow and even distribution to each container location. This is to be achieved using all possible combinations of fresh water pumps and dedicated refrigerated container cells.

7. 1. 4 The temperature of the cooling water is to be maintained in accordance with the container manufacturer's recommendations.

7. 1. 5 Flexible hoses are to be utilised for connecting the water supply and return pipes. The connectors on the ends of the flexible hoses are to be of a type that self-closes on disconnection. Adequate valves are to be provided to allow isolation of each cargo hold sub-circuit in the event of a leak or pipe fracture.

7. 1. 6 A minimum of two fresh-water to sea-water heat exchangers are to be provided. Each is to be rated at 100% of the required cooling duty at the notation conditions. The second heat exchanger may be a standby or part of a common central system such as that used for main engine cooling duties. The heat exchangers are to be supplied by a minimum of two separate sea-water pumps.

7. 1. 7 If metal pipes are used, the contents of Pt 5, Ch 12, 11.8 Metal pipes for fresh water services are to be given due consideration.

PART

7

CHAPTER **10 Carriage of Refrigerated Containers**

SECTION **8 Deck-stowed refrigerated containers**

8. 1 General

8. 1. 1 Consideration is to be given to the effect of the warm air discharged from the condenser of each deckstowed refrigerated container. When refrigerated containers are stowed on only two tiers high, it is considered that the warm air from each condenser is dissipated without any undue effect on adjacent containers.

8. 1. 2 If containers are to be carried three or more tiers high, then consideration is to be given to limiting the effect of short-cycling warm discharge air within the central section of the stack. The proposed method or methods for dealing with this effect are to be stated. Possible options would include reserving the central cells of each stack for non-refrigerated containers, to reduce the block effect or providing fans and ductwork to supply ambient temperature air to the bottom of each vertical stack. Trials of any proposed system are to be undertaken.

8. 1. 3 Any adverse effect that the warm air discharged from the hold space ventilation system has on the deck stowed refrigerated containers is to be minimised. Similarly, the warm air discharged from the deck stowed refrigerated containers is to be shielded from entering the hold space ventilating system.

PART

7

CHAPTER 10 Carriage of Refrigerated Containers

SECTION 9 Inspection and testing on completion

9. 1 General

9. 1. 1 On completion of construction and all appropriate safety checks, the acceptance tests prescribed in Pt 7, Ch 10, 9.2, Acceptance tests are to be carried out. Their purpose is to verify the correct functioning of the installation and its ability to maintain the air throughput required for the assignment of the intended class notation.

9. 1. 2 The proposed test schedules, including methods of testing and details of the test equipment to be provided are to be submitted to ACS before the tests commence. The proposed test methods are to be appropriate for the design of the system installed and are to include such acceptance criteria as:

a. Volume of air to be supplied and/or exhausted at each container cell location.
b. Maximum allowable deviation from this air volume.
c. Maximum allowable pressure within the hold space when the system is under normal operating conditions.

9. 1. 3 Trials of the air distribution system within the hold spaces are to be witnessed by ACS surveyors before the ship is put into service and prior to the **CRC** notation certificate being issued. These trials are to be in addition to any tests which may have been carried out whilst commissioning the system.

9. 2 Acceptance tests

9. 2. 1 The acceptance tests (*See also* Pt 7, Ch 10, 9.2 Acceptance tests 9.2.2 and Pt 7, Ch 10, 9.2 Acceptance tests 9.2.3) are to comprise the following:

a. Control and alarm systems are to be tested to demonstrate that they operate correctly, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.3 Alarm systems, general requirements.
b. The accuracy, calibration and functioning of all instrumentation is to be verified.
c. For supply air systems: Verification of each supply fan's output when running at maximum speed. Verification of the air discharge rate and operation of any distribution arrangements at each individual container cell location. During the test, all supply fans serving the hold space are to be operated simultaneously, thus replicating normal operating conditions. If a common or multiple supply fan distribution system is fitted, then the arrangements are to be verified; firstly, with all supply fans in operation and, secondly, with any one fan out of action.
d. For exhaust air systems: Verification of each exhaust fan's output when running at maximum speed. The volume of air being extracted from each individual container cell location is to be verified with each exhaust fan running at maximum speed. All exhaust fans serving the same hold space are to be operated simultaneously thus replicating normal operating conditions.
e. For combined supply and exhaust air systems: Verification of each supply and exhaust fan's output when both are running at maximum speed. The volume of air being supplied and

extracted from each individual container cell location is to be verified. All fans serving the same hold space are to be operated simultaneously thus replicating normal operating conditions.

f. If the supply and/or exhaust ductwork is prefabricated and installed in one piece testing at the manufacturer's works may be accepted provided the following are considered:
i. Any change in the supply and/or exhaust fan(s) output due to differences in electricity supply.
ii. Any de-rating of the fan throughput due to a back pressure or partial vacuum occurring within the hold space during normal operating conditions.
iii. Verification of the test results is to be undertaken in a single hold space.

g. Where the air volume required to meet the class notation cannot be verified during testing for practical reasons, assignment of the notation is to be deferred until it is demonstrated that the system is able to achieve the specified air throughput within each hold space during a loaded passage.

9. 2. 2 Where a number of identical fan and ductwork installations are constructed and fitted within each hold space, the acceptance trials required in Pt 7, Ch 10, 9.2 Acceptance tests 9.2.1 need only be carried out in two separate hold spaces, provided that the results are satisfactory.

9. 2. 3 Where the same system is installed on a number of identical sister ships for the same Owner and by the same shipyard, the testing in accordance with Pt 7, Ch 10, 9.2 Acceptance tests 9.2.1 will only be required on the first ship of the series, provided that the results are satisfactory.

9. 2. 4 The effect of exhausting warm hold space ventilation air on the operation of the integral air-cooled condensers of deck stowed containers is to be established under normal operational conditions. The discharge from hold space discharges is to be suitably modified if necessary.

9. 3 Testing of cooling water system

9. 3. 1 Cooling water piping that is welded *in situ* is to be hydraulically strength tested at 1.5 times the design pressure, but in no case less than 0.35 MPa.

9. 3. 2 A distribution test is to be carried out to ensure that even fresh water distribution to each container as well as sufficient flow is achieved. As the fresh water system may be somewhat complicated, this test should be carried out with care, using all possible combinations of fresh water pumps installed.

9. 3. 3 If required, the distribution test can be carried out without containers, utilising flexible hoses for connecting the water supply and return pipes together. The return valves should be partly closed or flexible pipe may be crimped to represent the condenser pressure drop. Water flow meters are to be installed at the highest and the lowest container levels to verify equal water flow.

9. 3. 4 The capacity of each pump should be measured by a flow meter with an accuracy of ±3%. Alternatively, this capacity could be obtained from the manufacturer's curves if the static pressure difference across a pump under test conditions is measured.

9. 3. 5 Sea-water pumps and heat exchangers are normally subjected to a functional test only.

PART

7

CHAPTER **10 Carriage of Refrigerated Containers**

SECTION **10 Spare gear**

10. 1 General

10. 1. 1 Adequate spares, together with the tools necessary for maintenance or repair of the ventilation systems are to be carried. The spares are to be determined by the Owner according to the design and intended service.

10. 1. 2 A minimum of one replacement fan, or complete fan impeller and motor assembly for each size fitted is to be carried onboard.

10. 1. 3 The maintenance of the spares is the responsibility of the Owner.

PART

7

CHAPTER **11** **Arrangements and Equipment for Environmental Protection (ECO Class Notation)**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General requirements**		**3100**
	1. 1	Application	3100
	1. 2	ECO class notation: minimum requirements and additional characters	3100
	1. 3	Transfer of class ships	3101
	1. 4	Definitions	3101
	1. 5	Information to be submitted	3102
	1. 6	Alterations and additions	3104
SECTION 2	**Minimum requirements**		**3105**
	2. 1	General	3105
	2. 2	Nitrogen oxides (NO_x)	3106
	2. 3	Sulphur oxides (SO_x)	3106
	2. 4	Refrigeration systems	3106
	2. 5	ire-fighting systems	3108
	2. 6	Oil pollution prevention	3109
	2. 7	Arrangements on ships carrying oil cargoes in bulk	3110
	2. 8	Sewage treatment	3110
	2. 9	VOC management	3111
SECTION 3	**Supplementary characters**		**3112**
	3. 1	Hull anti-fouling systems – A character	3112
	3. 2	Bio-fouling – BIO character	3112
	3. 3	Cargo residue minimisation – CRM character	3112
	3. 4	Environmentally Acceptable Lubricants - EAL character	3113
	3. 5	Energy Efficiency Design Index – EEDI-3 characters	3113
	3. 6	Energy management – EnMS character	3113
	3. 7	Integrated bilge water treatment system – IBTS character	3113

3. 8 Grey water – GW character 3114
3. 9 Nitrogen oxides NO_{x3} characters 3115
3. 10 Oily bilge water– OW character 3116
3. 11 Protected oil tanks – P character 3116
3. 12 Refrigeration systems – R character 3116
3. 13 Sulphur oxides – Exhaust Gas Cleaning System SOx-EGCS character 3116
3. 14 Enhanced tank cleaning – TC character 3116
3. 15 Vapour emission control systems – VECS-L, VOC-R characters 3117
SECTION 4 Survey requirements 3118
4. 1 Initial Survey and Audit 3118
4. 2 Periodical Surveys and Audits 3118
4. 3 Change of company 3119

PART

7

CHAPTER 11

Arrangements and Equipment for Environmental Protection (ECO Class Notation)

LIST OF TABLES

Table 11. 2. 1: Fuel oil sulphur limit and corresponding emission ratio value 3106
Table 11. 2. 2: Refrigerant leak testing - maximum periodicity 3107
Table 11. 2. 3: Sewage system treatment capacity 3110

PART

7

CHAPTER 11

Arrangements and Equipment for Environmental Protection (ECO Class Notation)

SECTION

Scope

The goal of this chapter is to provide for the design and construction of ships having a reduced environmental impact during operation compared to ships designed and constructed solely in accordance with the relevant minimum statutory requirements of the MARPOL convention and as such the requirements in this chapter necessarily exceed the relevant minimum statutory requirements of the MARPOL convention.

PART

7

CHAPTER 11 **Arrangements and Equipment for Environmental Protection (ECO Class Notation)**

SECTION 1 **General requirements**

1. 1 Application

1. 1. 1 This Chapter contains requirements for the control of operational pollution.

1. 1. 2 Compliance with this Chapter is optional. An ACS classed ship meeting the requirements of this Chapter will be eligible for **ECO** class notation, which will be recorded in the *Register Book*.

1. 1. 3 Additional requirements may be imposed by the National Administration with which the ship is registered and/or by the Authority within whose territorial jurisdiction it is intended to operate. Where such additional requirements are relevant to the ship, compliance with those Regulations is the responsibility of the Owner. If specifically requested, ACS may provide suitable certification or statement of compliance.

1. 1. 4 ACS is to be advised of any matter that relates to the environmental performance of the ship that would affect the assignment of the **ECO** class notation.

1. 2 ECO class notation: minimum requirements and additional characters

1. 2. 1 Pt 7, Ch 11, 2 Minimum requirements states the minimum requirements to be met for assignment of the **ECO** notation.

1. 2. 2 Pt 7, Ch 11, 3 Supplementary characters contains additional requirements. Ships complying with these requirements will be eligible for one or more of the following associated supplementary characters, as applicable:

A Anti-fouling coatings.
BIO Bio-fouling.
CRM Cargo residue minimisation.
EAL Environmentally Acceptable Lubricants
EEDI-3 Energy efficiency design index.
EnMS Ship energy efficiency management.
GW Grey water.
IBTS Integrated Bilge Water Treatment System.
NO_{x3} Nitrogen Oxides (NO_x) exhaust emissions.
OW Oily bilge water.
P Protected oil tanks.
R Refrigeration systems.
SOx-EGCS Exhaust Gas Cleaning System
TC Enhanced tank cleaning.

VECS-L, VOC-R Vapour emission control systems (tankers only).

1. 3 Transfer of class ships

1. 3. 1 A ship classed with another IACS class society that transfers to ACS class will be eligible for the class notation **ECO(TOC)** if it holds the previous society's environmental class notation at the time of the transfer of class. However, ships with **ECO(TOC)** notation are not eligible for any of the supplementary characters listed in Pt 7, Ch 11, 1.1 Application 1.1.2.

1. 3. 2 To maintain the **ECO(TOC)** notation a ship must implement and maintain the operational procedures listed in Pt 7, Ch 11, 1.5 Information to be submitted 1.5.4, as applicable.

1. 4 Definitions

1. 4. 1 The following definitions are applicable:

- **Animal carcasses** means the bodies of any animals that are carried on board as cargo and that die or are euthanised during the voyage.
- **Antifouling Convention** means the International Convention on Control of Harmful Antifouling Systems on Ships. This Convention prohibits the use of organotin anti-fouling systems on ships and was adopted by the International Maritime Organization (IMO) in October 2001.
- **Ballast Water Convention** means the International Convention for the Control and Management of Ships' Ballast Water and Sediments. This international legislation was developed by the IMO to regulate discharges of ballast water and reduce the risk of introducing nonnative species from ships' ballast water.
- **Black water** is the drainage waste from toilets and urinals.
- **Cargo Residues** means the remnants of any cargo which is not covered by other Annexes to MARPOL and which remains on the deck or in holds following loading or unloading, including loading and unloading excess or spillage, whether in wet or dry conditions or entrained in wash water. This does not include cargo dust remaining on the deck after sweeping or dust on the external surfaces of the ship.
- **Cooking oil** means any type of edible oil or animal fat used or intended to be used for the preparation or cooking of food. This does not include the food that is prepared using these oils.
- **Domestic wastes** mean all types of wastes not covered by other Annexes that are generated in the accommodation spaces on board the ship. Domestic waste does not include grey water.
- **Garbage** means all kinds of food wastes, domestic wastes and operational wastes, all plastics, cargo residues, cooking oil, fishing gear, and animal carcasses generated during the normal operation of the ship and is liable to be disposed of continuously or periodically, except where those substances are defined or listed in other Annexes to MARPOL. Garbage does not include fresh fish and parts thereof which are generated as a result of fishing activities undertaken during the voyage, or as a result of aquaculture activities which involve the transport of fish, including shellfish for placement in the aquaculture facility and the transport of harvested fish, including shellfish from such facilities to shore for processing.
- **Geometric mean** means the nth root of the product of n numbers.

- **Grey water** is drainage from dishwater, galley sink, shower, laundry, bath and washbasin drains and does not include drainage from toilets, urinals, hospitals, and animal spaces, as defined in *Regulation 1 - Definitions* of MARPOL Annex IV and does not include drainage from cargo spaces.
- **Incinerator ashes** means ash and clinkers resulting from shipboard incinerators used for the incineration of garbage.
- **Leakage detection system** means a calibrated mechanical, electrical or electronic device for detecting leakage of refrigerant gases which, on detection, alerts the operator.
- **MARPOL** or **MARPOL 73/78** is the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships, 1973 as modified by the Protocol of 1978.
- **Operational wastes** means all solid wastes (including slurries) not covered by other Annexes that are collected on board during normal maintenance or operations of a ship, or used for cargo stowage and handling. Operational wastes also include cleaning agents and additives contained in the cargo hold and external wash water. Operational wastes do not include grey water, bilge water, or other similar discharges essential to the operation of a ship, taking into account the guidelines developed by the Organisation.
- **Operator** means the natural or legal person exercising actual power over the technical functioning of the equipment and systems.
- **Refrigerant system log book** means a method of maintaining a record of maintenance, calibration, refrigerant charging, leak detection, recovery, etc. The log book may take the form of a stand-alone book, a series of log sheets or form part of the engine room log.
- ***SEE*MP** means a Ship Energy Efficiency Management Plan, and is a ship-specific manual which aims to improve the energy efficiency of ship operations.
- **Thermotolerant coliforms** is the group of coliform bacteria which produce gas from lactose in 48 hours at 44.5°C. They are also referred to as 'faecal coliforms'; however, the term 'thermotolerant coliforms' is now accepted as more appropriate, since not all of these organisms are of faecal origin.
- **VECS** means vapour emission control system.
- **VOC** means volatile organic compound.

1. 5 Information to be submitted

1. 5. 1 The following are to be submitted for plan approval and document review:

a. One copy of every Certificate listed in Pt 7, Ch 11, 1.5 Information to be submitted 1.5.3.

b. One copy of all plans and information listed in Pt 7, Ch 11, 1.5 Information to be submitted 1.5.5.

1. 5. 2 For existing ships the certificates, information and plans listed in Pt 7, Ch 11, 1.5 Information to be submitted 1.5.3 are to be submitted for approval prior to the **ECO** Initial Survey for assignment of the **ECO** notation, *See* Pt 7, Ch 11, 4.1 Initial Survey and Audit 4.1.1. For new ships, information and plans listed in Pt 7, Ch 11, 1.5 Information to be submitted 1.5.3 and Pt 7, Ch 11, 1.5 Information to be submitted 1.5.5 are to be submitted for approval prior to the **ECO** Initial Survey. However, the operational procedures listed in Pt 7, Ch 11, 1.5 Information to be submitted 1.5.4 may be submitted up to six months after the ship enters into service.

1. 5. 3 Certificates:

a. MARPOL certificates or statements on behalf of the ship's Flag State, including:
i. Engine International Air Pollution Prevention (EIAPP) Certificate or Statement of Compliance with the NO_x emission requirements of MARPOL *Annex VI - Regulations for the Prevention of Air Pollution from Ships*, for each engine to which *Regulation 13 – Nitrogen Oxides (NOx)* applies;
ii. International Energy Efficiency Certificate.

b. Safety Management Certificate (SMC) and Document of Compliance (DOC) in accordance with the International Safety Management Code (ISM Code).

c. Incinerator Type Approval Certificate or equivalent.

d. TBT-free anti-fouling system certificate.

e. Sewage system and, where fitted, sewage treatment system statement of compliance with the requirements of USCG 33 CFR 159 and/or MARPOL 73/78 *Annex IV of MARPOL 73/78Regulations for the Prevention of Pollution by Sewage from Ships*.

f. Vapour emission control system certificate or statement of compliance with the requirements of USCG 46 CFR 39 or the IMO Standards for Vapour Emission Control Systems (*MSC/Circular.585 – Standards for Vapour Emission Control Systems – (Adopted on 16 April 1992)*) (oil tankers carrying crude oil only).

g. VOC reducing device Type Approval Certificate or equivalent as required by (supplementary character **VOC-R**).

h. ISO 50001 (Energy Management) Certificate, issued by an accredited organisation (supplementary character **EnMS** only).

1. 5. 4 The following operational procedures are to be in place at the time of the on board verification survey:

a. Procedures to be adopted to ensure that the ship's NO_x certification is maintained.

b. Fuel oil management for the control of SO_x emissions.

c. Refrigerant management including adding and recovering refrigerant charge, leak detection and sample log book.

d. Retention and disposal of spilled or spent foam, chemical or liquid based fire-fighting media, as applicable.

e. Oil pollution prevention measures.

f. Garbage management.

g. Sewage treatment and discharge control.

h. Precautionary measures to minimise the transfer of non-native organisms in ballast water.

i. Ballast Water Management Plan (all ships).

j. Ship Energy Efficiency Management Plan.

k. Vapour management plan (tankers carrying crude oil only).

l. Grey water treatment or holding and discharge (supplementary character **GW** only).

1. 5. 5 Information and plans:

a. SERS registration number or statement of membership of alternative scheme from IACS Member service provider.

b. Details of engine make and model, rated power, rated speed and duty cycle for all installed engines falling within the scope of MARPOL Annex VI, *Regulation 13 – Nitrogen Oxides (NOx)*.

c. Description of the method(s) by which the NOx certified value has been achieved and the NOx Technical File for the engine plus the NOx reducing device (**NOx-3** supplementary character).

d. Details and location of each permanently installed refrigeration system (including those used for cargo temperature control, air conditioning, provision rooms and chiller units).

e. Details of the Exhaust Gas Cleaning System demonstrating compliance with MARPOL Annex VI Regulations 14.1 and 14.4 are to be provided, including the approved SO_X Emissions Compliance Plan (SECP) and the certified value of SO_2/CO_2 emission ratio, where applicable.
f. Mass of refrigerant charge in each system and the refrigerant designation (e.g. R-134a) in accordance with ISO 817.
g. Refrigerant plant general arrangement drawing showing number and locations of the refrigerant leak detectors.
h. Details of fire-extinguishing media to be used in fixed fire-fighting systems and portable extinguishers.
i. Bilge holding, waste oil and sludge tank capacities and piping arrangements.
j. Arrangements of non-cargo oil loading and discharge connections together with associated drip trays and drainage systems.
k. Fuel oil storage, settling and service tank high level alarms/overflow systems.
l. Cargo and ballast tank arrangements (tankers only).
m. Cargo and ballast piping system plans, including cargo tank overfill prevention arrangements (tankers only).
n. Arrangements of tanker cargo manifolds together with associated drip trays and drainage systems.
o. Details of sewage treatment and handling systems.
p. Capacity of sewage holding and/or treatment system.
q. Maximum numbers of crew and passengers.
r. Details of incinerator arrangements, as applicable, associated piping systems, control and monitoring equipment.
s. Hull coating system.
t. Ballast water treatment arrangements
u. Lubricants' technical data sheet(s) and letter/Statement(s) from original equipment manufacturer(s) for each oil-to-sea interface where EAL's are applied (e.g. sterntube) to declare compatibility with the specified Environmentally Acceptable Lubricant(s) and detailed drawings of the component(s) 'interfacing' with such lubricants (supplementary character **EAL** only).
v. Energy Efficiency Design Index Statement of Compliance or certificate.
w. Details of grey water treatment plant and effluent quality (for supplementary **GW** character only).
x. Arrangements for protected oil tanks (for supplementary **P** character only).
y. Shadow area diagrams (supplementary character **TC** only).
z. Details of self-contained vapour recovery systems, where fitted, required for **VOC-R** character; for tankers carrying crude oil as applicable (*See* Pt 7, Ch 11, 2.9 VOC management); and for **VECS-L** character as applicable (*See* Pt 7, Ch 11, 3.15 Vapour emission control systems – VECS-L, VOC-R characters 3.15.3).
aa. ACS Statement of *SEE*MP conformance and associated documentation.
bb. Any information relating to the environmental performance of the ship, which may influence the assignment of the **ECO** notation.

1. 6 Alterations and additions

1. 6. 1 When an alteration, amendment, deletion or addition to the approved arrangements and procedures is proposed, appropriate details are to be submitted for approval.

PART

7

CHAPTER 11 **Arrangements and Equipment for Environmental Protection (ECO Class Notation)**

SECTION 2 **Minimum requirements**

2. 1 General

2. 1. 1 It is a prerequisite for assignment of the **ECO** notation that the ship:

a. complies with the Anti-fouling Convention, the Ballast Water Convention and all Annexes to *MARPOL - International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships* 73/78, as amended, applicable to the ship;

b. has a valid Safety Management Certificate (SMC), in accordance with the ISM Code issued by the Flag State Administration with which the ship is registered or a duly authorised organisation complying with *IMO Resolution A.739(18) – Guidelines for the Authorization of Organizations Acting on Behalf of the Administration – (Adopted on 4 November 1993)Amended by Resolution MSC.208(81)* and authorised by the National Authority with which the ship is registered; and

c. is enrolled in ACS's Ship Emergency Response Service (SERS) or the equivalent scheme of another IACS Member.

2. 1. 2 Where a ship, by virtue of its gross tonnage, is not required by the MARPOL Convention to have MARPOL Certification, the following are to be maintained:

a. An Oil Record Book in accordance with MARPOL *Annex I of MARPOL 73/78Regulations for the Prevention of Pollution by Oil*.

b. A garbage management plan and record book in accordance with MARPOL Revised *Annex V of MARPOL 73/78Regulations for the Prevention of Pollution by Garbage from Ships*.

2. 1. 3 Where a ship, by virtue of its gross tonnage, is not required by the Antifouling Convention to have certification, an antifouling system (AFS) declaration in the format shown in Appendix 2 of Annex 4 to the Convention is to be maintained on board. The application of antifouling systems containing TBT above the level specified in the Antifouling Convention is prohibited.

2. 1. 4 Where a ship, by virtue of its gross tonnage, is not required to have a Safety Management Certificate (SMC), it is exempt from Pt 7, Ch 11, 2.1 General 2.1.2.b.

2. 1. 5 High speed craft, as defined in ACS's *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Special Service Craft, incorporating Notice No. 1, 2 & 3*, and ships, other than tankers, of less than 400 gross tonnage, will be the subject of special consideration.

2. 1. 6 Offshore supply vessels that are less than 100 m in length, as per MSC 235(82), are exempt from the requirement to be enrolled in ACS's Ship Emergency Response Service (SERS) or the equivalent scheme of another IACS member. Exempting the requirement for enrolment in SERS, or the equivalent scheme of another IACS member for other vessel types, will be specially considered depending on the vessel's size and operational profile.

2. 2 Nitrogen oxides (NO_x)

2. 2. 1 These requirements apply to all installed diesel engines with an individual output power greater than 130 kW, other than those used solely for emergency purposes on the ship on which the engine is installed. There are no specific requirements relating to NO_x emissions from boilers, incinerators or gas turbine installations.

2. 2. 2 All engines falling within the scope of MARPOL Annex VI, *Regulation 13 – Nitrogen Oxides (NOx)* are to comply with its provisions and meet the NO_x emission limits applicable to the date of construction of the ship or, where relevant, the engine installation date.

2. 2. 3 **EIAPP** certification or Statement of Compliance is to be issued by, or on behalf of, the Flag State.

2. 2. 4 Alternative arrangements providing an equivalent level of environmental protection will be considered.

2. 3 Sulphur oxides (SO_x)

2. 3. 1 Emissions of SO_x are to be controlled by limiting the sulphur content of fuel oils used on board.

2. 3. 2 The maximum sulphur content of fuel oil to be used on board is not to exceed 1% m/m.

2. 3. 3 Where the grade of fuel normally used cannot be obtained with the appropriate fuel sulphur level, then a better grade of fuel meeting this requirement will need to be purchased.

2. 3. 4 A fuel oil management system is to detail the maximum sulphur content to be specified when ordering fuel oils and the means adopted to verify that the sulphur content of fuel oils supplied meets that requirement. This management system is to include the practices to be adopted to ensure that appropriate low sulphur fuel oils are used when the ship is within IMO designated 'Emission Control Areas established for SO_x and particulate matter control' and/or the jurisdiction of other local, national or regional 'SO_x Emission Control regimes' as applicable.

2. 3. 5 Where testing to determine the sulphur content of fuel received on board is to be carried out, a representative sample is to be drawn at the time of delivery from the ship's bunker manifold using the manual or automatic sampling methods defined in ISO 3170 or 3171, or their national respective equivalents. Fuel sulphur content is to be subsequently determined using the laboratory test method ISO 8754:2003 *Determination of sulphur content – Energy-dispersive X-ray fluorescence spectrometry*.

2. 3. 6 If an Exhaust Gas Cleaning System is fitted, it is to be certified to *Resolution MEPC.259(68) - 2015 Guidelines for Exhaust Gas Cleaning Systems - (Adopted on 15 May 2015)*. The system is to operate at all times regardless of the area in which the vessel operates.

2. 3. 7 Where petroleum-based distillate or residual fuels, with a sulphur content exceeding 0.1% m/m, are used with an approved Exhaust Gas Cleaning System, the SO_2(ppm)/CO_2(%v/v) emission ratio method is to be used for determination of the corresponding emission ratio value, as specified in the Table 11. 2. 1: Fuel oil sulphur limit and corresponding emission ratio value.

Table 11. 2. 1: Fuel oil sulphur limit and corresponding emission ratio value

Fuel oil Sulphur Content (% m/m)	Emission ratio SO_2 (ppm)/CO_2 (%v/v)
0.10	4.3

2. 4 Refrigeration systems

2. 4. 1 These requirements apply to all permanently installed refrigeration and air conditioning installations on board with more than 3 kg of refrigerant. These requirements do not apply to

stand-alone refrigerators, freezers and ice makers used in galleys, pantries, bars and crew accommodation.

2. 4. 2 The use of chlorofluorocarbons (CFC) and hydrochlorofluorocarbons (HCFCs) in existing and new refrigeration or air conditioning installations is prohibited.

2. 4. 3 Where possible, natural refrigerants, such as ammonia, carbon dioxide and hydrofluoroolefins (HFOs), should be used. Where hydrofluorocarbon (HFC) refrigerants are used, they are to have an Ozone Depleting Potential (ODP) rating of zero and a Global Warming Potential (GWP) of less than 1950, based on a 100- year time horizon.

2. 4. 4 Systems are to be arranged with suitable means of isolation so that maintenance, servicing or repair work may be undertaken without releasing the refrigerant charge into the atmosphere. Unavoidable minimal releases are acceptable when using recovery units.

2. 4. 5 For the purposes of refrigerant recovery, the compressors are to be capable of evacuating a system charge into a liquid receiver. Additionally, recovery units are to be provided to evacuate a system either into the existing liquid receiver or into cylinders dedicated for this purpose. The number of cylinders is to be sufficient to contain the complete charge between points of isolation in the system.

2. 4. 6 Where different refrigerants are in use they are not to be mixed during evacuation of systems.

2. 4. 7 Refrigerant leakage is to be minimised by leak prevention and periodic leak detection procedures. The frequency of leak detection and the maximum allowable annual leakage rate is dependent on the charge of each system and is specified in Table 11. 2. 2: Refrigerant leak testing - maximum periodicity.

Table 11. 2. 2: Refrigerant leak testing - maximum periodicity

Charge size	Periodicity	Leakage
3–30 kg	3 months	10%
30–300 kg	Monthly	5%
Over 300 kg	Monthly	<3%

2. 4. 8 Records are to be maintained demonstrating that leak testing is carried out in accordance with the periodicity specified in Table 11. 2. 2: Refrigerant leak testing - maximum periodicity by qualified personnel holding relevant certification, using either direct or indirect measuring methods and calibrated instruments where applicable.

2. 4. 9 A leak detection system appropriate to the refrigerant is to be provided to monitor continuously the spaces into which the refrigerant could leak. An alarm is to be activated to give warning in a permanently manned location when the concentration of refrigerant in the space exceeds a predetermined limit, (25 ppm for ammonia; 300 ppm for halogenated fluorocarbons). Remedial measures to repair the leakage are to be implemented as soon as practicable after an alarm is activated. Each leak detection system is to be checked at least once every 12 months to ensure proper functionality. The system is to be maintained and calibrated in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and recorded in the log book.

2. 4. 10 Procedures for refrigerant management including adding and recovering refrigerant charge, leak detection and the means adopted to control the loss and leakage of refrigerants are to be established and implemented.

2. 4. 11 Refrigerant inventory and log book records are to be maintained covering:

a. Refrigerant added to each system.
b. Refrigerant leaks, including remedial actions.
c. Refrigerant recovered and storage location.
d. Refrigerant disposal including quantity and location.

e. Details of personnel suitably experienced or with an applicable qualification for maintenance of the onboard refrigerant system(s), including relevant certification.

2. 4. 12 After a leak has been identified, repaired and recorded it is to be rechecked prior to the system entering normal service. All applications, independent of charge size, are to be checked for leakage within one month after a leak has been repaired to ensure that the repair remains effective.

2. 4. 13 Records demonstrating the implementation of the operational procedures specified in Pt 7, Ch 11, 2.4 Refrigeration systems 2.4.10, as applicable, are to be maintained. These records are to be kept on board for a minimum period of three years, in a readily accessible form, and are to be available for inspection by ACS Surveyors, as required.

2. 4. 14 A refrigerant log book is to be maintained for the lifetime of the system. It must record the quantity and type of refrigerant installed and the quantities added and recovered during servicing, maintenance and final disposal.

2. 4. 15 All personnel involved in the following activities must be suitably experienced or possess an applicable qualification:

a. installation, servicing or maintenance of the refrigeration equipment covered by the **ECO** Notation;
b. checking such equipment for any leakages of refrigerant gases; or
c. repairing, or carrying out work to prevent, such leakages.

2. 4. 16 **Flammability of Refrigerants** - The Refrigerant Classification Scheme, ISO 817:2014+A1:2017, is to be considered regarding the flammability class of the refrigerant. Where A2L and higher refrigerants are to be used in systems they are to be designed specifically to take into account their flammability and toxicity characteristics. These refrigerants may not replace non-flammable refrigerants when retrofitting a system.

a. Where refrigerants are classed as A2L and higher, Pt 7, Ch 11, 2.4 Refrigeration systems 2.4.4 to Pt 7, Ch 11, 2.4 Refrigeration systems 2.4.15 are applicable with the following additional requirements:

i. Spaces are to be fitted with a non sparking mechanical ventilation system, with a capacity of at least 30 air changes per hour, which is arranged to avoid areas where gas may accumulate, taking into account the density of the vapour and potential ignition sources. The ventilation system shall be separated from those serving other spaces.

ii. All leak detection equipment shall be suitable to use in a hazardous area and means are to be provided to measure oxygen levels prior to personnel entering the space.

iii. The leak detection is to be set to alarm at gas concentrations above 30% lower flammable limit (LFL),

iv. A risk assessment reviewing the application, location of components and the installed refrigerant charge.

v. All personnel carrying out maintenance, inspections, servicing and installation must hold an appropriate certificate for handling such refrigerants

vi. All spaces containing these refrigerants are to be indicated on a hazardous area plan.

2. 5 ire-fighting systems

2. 5. 1 The use of halon or halo-carbons as the fire-extinguishing medium in fixed fire-fighting systems or portable extinguishers is not permitted.

2. 5. 2 Where foam concentrates or other chemical or liquid based fire-fighting media with the potential to cause environmental pollution are used, instructions and procedures are to be provided for the safe containment and disposal of spilled media and other contaminated products during routine maintenance and, where practicable, following emergency use.

2. 6 Oil pollution prevention

2. 6. 1 All ships are to comply with the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 11, 2.6 Oil pollution prevention 2.6.2to Pt 7, Ch 11, 2.6 Oil pollution prevention 2.6.12. In addition, tankers are to comply with the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 11, 2.7 Arrangements on ships carrying oil cargoes in bulk.

2. 6. 2 Drainage from machinery space bilges is to be discharged to sea in accordance with the requirements of MARPOL 73/78, *Annex I of MARPOL 73/78Regulations for the Prevention of Pollution by Oil* or retained onboard for discharge ashore.

2. 6. 3 The oil-in-water content of the water discharged is to be less than 15 ppm. Oily bilge water is to be discharged through approved oil filtering equipment and a 15 ppm alarm combined with a device for automatically stopping any discharge to sea when the oil content in the discharge exceeds 15 ppm. Full records of all discharges are to be kept.

2. 6. 4 The loading or discharge connections and vent pipes/overflows associated with fuel oils, lubricating oils, hydraulic oils and other oils are to be fitted with drip trays. Drip trays fitted to loading or discharge connections are to be fitted with closed drainage systems except on tankers where alternative arrangements will be considered.

2. 6. 5 Fuel oil storage, settling and service tanks are to be fitted with high level alarms and/or acceptable overflow systems.

2. 6. 6 The tank arrangement and engine room management procedures are to ensure that any leakages and waste oil from machinery and equipment are collected prior to disposal ashore or incineration. At all times, there is to be sufficient capacity to store a complete lubricating oil charge from the largest engine used for propulsion or electrical generating purposes. The tank arrangement is to allow the lubricating oil charge subsequently to be renovated or to be discharged ashore.

2. 6. 7 For those ships which only operate on distillate fuel, the tank arrangements in Pt 7, Ch 11, 2.6 Oil pollution prevention 2.6.6 and sludge tanks may be combined to form a single tank. Where such a combined tank is fitted, the total capacity is to be equal to or greater than the aggregated total of the required individual tank capacities.

2. 6. 8 The bilge holding tank, the tank arrangements in Pt 7, Ch 11, 2.6 Oil pollution prevention 2.6.6 and the sludge tank are to be arranged to facilitate the periodic removal of accumulated sediments and other material.

2. 6. 9 Discharge piping systems to deck from the bilge holding tank, and the tank arrangements in Pt 7, Ch 11, 2.6 Oil pollution prevention 2.6.6, are to be separate from the fuel oil loading and transfer systems. Their piping systems are to be terminated with the standard discharge connections specified in MARPOL Annex I, *Regulation 13*.

2. 6. 10 Means are to be provided for the collection and recovery of any oil spilled on decks.

2. 6. 11 For ships delivered after 1 August 2010, fuel oil tanks with a capacity of greater than 60 m^3, except overflow tanks, are to be located in a protected location away from the ship's side or bottom shell plating. Tanks are to be located in accordance with the requirements relating to fuel oil tank protection given in MARPOL Annex I, *Regulation 12A*.

2. 6. 12 Procedures covering the handling of all oils and oily wastes are to be established and implemented. As a minimum, these are to cover:

a. loading, storage and transfer of fuel oils, lubricants, hydraulic oil, thermal heating oil and drummed oil products;
b. storage, transfer, discharge and disposal of oily mixtures contained in the ship's sludge, bilge holding and waste oil tanks and machinery space bilges;
c. recovery of any oil spilled on decks.

2. 7 Arrangements on ships carrying oil cargoes in bulk

2. 7. 1 The constructional requirements of MARPOL Annex I, *Regulations 19* and 20, as applicable, are to apply to all oil tankers greater than 600 tonnes deadweight.

2. 7. 2 Cargo tanks are to be fitted with high level alarms and/or acceptable overflow systems.

2. 7. 3 The cargo area is to have arrangements to collect accidental outflow of oil under overfilling conditions. Accidental oil spills are to be discharged to a slop tank or collecting tank. These tanks are not be located in the double hull space.

2. 7. 4 Cargo tank ballasting arrangements and segregated ballast systems are to be connected to separate and distinct sea chests.

2. 7. 5 A non-return valve is to be provided to isolate the cargo piping system from the sea connections.

2. 7. 6 Cargo manifold connections are to be fitted with drip trays with closed drainage systems.

2. 7. 7 Cargo manifold terminal pieces are to be designed, where practicable, in accordance with the relevant Oil Companies International Marine Forum (OCIMF) Recommendations for tanker manifolds and associated equipment.

2. 7. 8 Procedures covering ship to ship transfer of bulk liquid cargoes are to be established for ships engaged in the transfer of oil cargo at sea (STS Operations as defined in MARPOL Annex 1 Ch 8 *Regulation 40 – Scope of application*, *Regulation 41 – General Rules on safety and environmental protection* and *Regulation 42 – Notification*). These are to be agreed with ACS, and implemented.

2. 8 Sewage treatment

2. 8. 1 Where fitted, the sewage treatment system is to be approved in accordance with *Resolution MEPC.284.(70) - Amendments to the 2012 Guidelines on implementation of Effluent Standards and Performance Tests for Sewage Treatment Plants (Resolution MEPC.227(64)) - (Adopted on 28 October 2016)*. As an alternative, a Declaration of Conformity issued under the EU Marine Equipment Directive is acceptable.

2. 8. 2 The capacity of the sewage treatment system is to be sufficient for the maximum number of persons on board. Treatment capacities are to be as stated in Table 11. 2. 3: Sewage system treatment capacity.

Table 11. 2. 3: Sewage system treatment capacity

	Total treatment capacity in litres/person/day		
	Black water only treated	Black water and grey water treated	
		Cargo ships	Passenger ships
Conventional flushing system	115	250	415
Vacuum flushing system	15	150	315

2. 8. 3 Procedures for the operation of a sewage treatment system, including the certification of performance, are to be established and implemented. Records are to be maintained of maintenance, repair, remedial work and disinfectant dosing rates.

2. 8. 4 The manufacturer's restriction on materials, which may be disposed of through the sewage treatment system, are to be clearly displayed at each input point.

2. 8. 5 The disinfectant dosing points of the sewage treatment system are to be readily accessible. Ready access is also to be provided for the taking of samples.

2. 8. 6 As an alternative to treatment, sewage and/or grey water may be retained on board. The sewage holding tank(s) and grey water holding tank(s) are to be of adequate capacity, taking into account the operation of the ship, the number of persons on board and other relevant factors (*See* guidance figures in Pt 7, Ch 11, 2.8 Sewage treatment 2.8.2). The tank is to be fitted with a visual contents gauge and a high level alarm.

2. 8. 7 Means are to be provided to aerate holding tanks to prevent the development of anaerobic conditions, taking into account *MSC/Circular.648 – Guidelines for the Operation, Inspection and Maintenance of Ship Sewage Systems – (Adopted on 6 June 1994)*.

2. 8. 8 Records are to be maintained detailing discharges from the holding tank. These are to include:

a. the date, location and quantity of sewage discharged from the holding tank either ashore or at sea in accordance with *Resolution MEPC.157(55) - Recommendation on Standards for the Rate of Discharge of Untreated Sewage from Ships - (Adopted on 13 October 2006)*;
b. rate of discharge of raw sewage;
c. distance from land and ship's speed, when sewage is discharged to sea.

2. 8. 9 Ventilation pipes from the sewage system are to be independent of other vent systems.

2. 8. 10 A suitable piping system from the sewage treatment system or holding tank is to be provided to allow discharge from the system/tank to shore reception facilities. The systems discharge pipe is to terminate with a standard discharge connection complying with the requirements of MARPOL Annex IV, *Regulation 10 - Standard Discharge Connections*.

2. 8. 11 Procedures for the cleaning and safe entry of sewage treatment systems and holding tanks, including the use of suitable personal protective equipment, are to be provided and implemented.

2. 9 VOC management

2. 9. 1 Tankers carrying crude oil are required to develop and implement a VOC Management Plan in accordance with IMO Guidelines for the Development of a Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Management Plan for tankers carrying crude oil (*Resolution MEPC.185(59) – Guidelines for the Development of A VOC Management Plan – (Adopted on 17 July 2009)*) that has been approved by ACS or by, or on behalf of, the ship's Flag State.

2. 9. 2 For all tankers carrying crude oil, a Vapour Emission Control System is to be fitted which has been designed and constructed in accordance with the requirements of USCG 46, CFR 39 or the IMO Standards for Vapour Emission Control Systems (*MSC/Circular.585 – Standards for Vapour Emission Control Systems – (Adopted on 16 April 1992)*). A Certificate or Statement of Compliance issued by ACS or a competent Authority recognised by ACS is to be provided. As an alternative, a self-contained Vapour Recovery System, which is of a type approved by ACS and which achieves equivalent performance to the systems above, may be fitted.

PART

7

CHAPTER **11** **Arrangements and Equipment for Environmental Protection (ECO Class Notation)**

SECTION **3** **Supplementary characters**

3. 1 Hull anti-fouling systems – A character

3. 1. 1 For assignment of the **A** character, the anti-fouling system applied to the ship's hull is to be listed as biocide-free in the ACS List of Approved Products.

3. 2 Bio-fouling – BIO character

3. 2. 1 For the assignment of the BIO character, the ship is to have in place bio-fouling management plans, developed in accordance with IMO *Resolution MEPC.207(62) – 2011 Guidelines for the Control and Management of Ships' Biofouling to minimize the transfer of invasive Aquatic Species – (Adopted on 15 July 2011)*. In addition, the Bio-fouling Management Plan is to be reviewed by ACS for conformance with *Resolution MEPC.207(62) – 2011 Guidelines for the Control and Management of Ships' Biofouling to minimize the transfer of invasive Aquatic Species – (Adopted on 15 July 2011)*.

3. 2. 2 The ship is also to have on board a Bio-fouling Record Book in the format shown in *Appendix 2 - Biofouling Management Plan and Record book* of *Resolution MEPC.207(62) – 2011 Guidelines for the Control and Management of Ships' Biofouling to minimize the transfer of invasive Aquatic Species – (Adopted on 15 July 2011)* that contains at least the following:

- Details of the anti-fouling systems and operational practices used (where appropriate, as recorded in the Anti-fouling System Certificate), where and when it was installed, areas of the ship that are coated, its maintenance and, where applicable, its operation; dates and location of dry-dockings/slippings, including the date the ship was refloated, and any measures taken to remove bio-fouling or to renew or repair the anti-fouling system;
- The date and location of in-water inspections, the results of those inspections and any corrective action taken to deal with observed bio-fouling;
- The dates and details of inspection and maintenance of internal sea-water cooling systems, the results of those inspections, and any corrective action taken to deal with observed bio-fouling and any reported blockages; and
- Details of when the ship has been operating outside its normal operating profile, including any details of when the ship was laid-up or inactive for extended periods of time.

3. 3 Cargo residue minimisation – CRM character

3. 3. 1 For assignment of the **CRM** character, cargo residue is to be minimised.

3. 3. 2 In accordance with MARPOL Annex II, *Regulation 12 - Pumping, piping, unloading arrangements and slop tanks*, individual cargo tanks are not to retain more than 60 litres of residue in the tank and associated piping.

3. 3. 3 A performance test is to be conducted in accordance with *Appendix 5 - Assessment of Residue Quantities in Cargo Tanks, Pumps and Associated Piping* of MARPOL Annex II and a record of the test results retained on board.

3. 4 Environmentally Acceptable Lubricants - EAL character

3. 4. 1 For assignment of the **EAL** character, the ship shall use Environmentally Acceptable Lubricants (EAL) that comply with the EPA criteria, as defined in Section 2.2.9 of the 2013 Vessel General Permit (VGP).

3. 4. 2 Ships shall have on board a 'Report of Environmentally Acceptable Lubricants' and a Statement of Fact issued by ACS or equivalent documentation issued by another IACS member.

3. 4. 3 All the planned actions mentioned in the relevant Sections of the Report shall be completed, as appropriate, for the assignment of the supplementary character.

3. 5 Energy Efficiency Design Index – EEDI-3 characters

3. 5. 1 The 'attained' Energy Efficiency Design Index is to be established in accordance with the 2012 Guidelines on the method of calculation of attained EEDI for new ships (*Resolution MEPC.203(62) – Amendments to the Annex of the Protocol of 1997 to Amend the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships...*) and verified in accordance with ACS's procedure for verifying EEDI values.

3. 5. 2 The **EEDI-3** character will be assigned to 'new ships' (according to MARPOL Annex VI, Chapter 1, *Regulation 2 - Definitions*) to which EEDI Phase 0, Phase 1 or Phase 2 is applicable when the 'attained' EEDI is less than or equal to the EEDI Phase 3 requirement.

3. 6 Energy management – EnMS character

3. 6. 1 For the assignment of the **EnMS** character, certification under ISO 50001 (Energy Management) is to be issued by an accredited organisation and is to be applicable to the management and operation of the ship.

3. 7 Integrated bilge water treatment system – IBTS character

3. 7. 1 These requirements apply to ships with an integrated bilge water system.

3. 7. 2 For assignment of the **IBTS** character, the ship is to have an integrated bilge water system designed and installed to meet the requirements of the *Revised Guidelines for Systems for Handling Oily Wastes in Machinery Spaces of Ships* and incorporating *MEPC.1/Circular.642 – 2008 Revised Guidelines for Systems for Handling Oily Wastes in Machinery Spaces of Ships Incorporating Guidance Notes for an Integrated Bilge Water Treatment System (IBTS)...* & *MEPC.1/Circular.643 – Harmonized Implementation of the Revised Guidelines and Specifications for Pollution Prevention Equipment for Machinery Space Bilges of Ships During the Type-Approval Process – (12 November 2008)* as amended by *MEPC.1/Circular.676 – Amendment to the 2008 Revised Guidelines for Systems for Handling Oily Wastes in Machinery Spaces of Ships Incorporating Guidance Notes for an Integrated Bilge Water Treatment System (IBTS) – (31 July 2009)* & *MEPC.1/Circular.760 – Amendments to the 2008 Revised Guidelines for Systems for Handling Oily Wastes in Machinery Spaces of Ships Incorporating Guidance Notes for an IBTS (MEPC.1/Circ.642, as Amended by MEPC.1/Circ.676) – (25 August 2011)*.

3. 7. 3 Ships are to have on board a Statement of Fact on Installation of an Integrated Bilge Water Treatment System (IBTS), issued by ACS.

3. 8 Grey water – GW character

3. 8. 1 For assignment of the **GW** character a dedicated plant for the treatment of grey water is to be installed, and the plant discharge effluent is to meet the standards specified in Pt 7, Ch 11, 3.8 Grey water – GW character 3.8.2 or Pt 7, Ch 11, 3.8 Grey water – GW character 3.8.3, as applicable. The **GW** character will also be assigned where grey water is retained on board in dedicated holding tank(s) for discharge ashore, subject to the requirements specified in Pt 7, Ch 11, 3.8 Grey water – GW character 3.8.4 to Pt 7, Ch 11, 3.8 Grey water – GW character 3.8.9 being met.

3. 8. 2 Where it is not intended that the effluent is recycled or re-used for any purpose, the effluent of the grey water treatment plant is to meet the following standards:

a. Thermotolerant coliforms:
The geometric mean of the thermotolerant coliform count of samples of effluent taken during a test period is not to exceed 100 thermotolerant coliforms/100 ml as determined by membrane filter, multiple tube fermentation or an equivalent analytical procedure.

b. Total Suspended solids:
i. Where the equipment is tested onshore, the geometric mean of the total suspended solids content of the samples of effluent taken during the test period is not to exceed 35 mg/l.
ii. Where the equipment is tested on board the ship, the geometric mean of the total suspended solids content of the samples of effluent taken during the test period is not to exceed the suspended solids content of the ambient (flushing) water used on board plus 35 mg/l.
iii. The method of testing is to be as given in *Resolution MEPC.227(64) – 2012 Guidelines on Implementation of Effluent Standards and Performance Tests for Sewage Treatment Plants – (Adopted on 5 October 2012)*.

c. Biochemical Oxygen Demand (BOD_5) and chemical oxygen demand (COD):
i. The geometric mean of a 5-day Biochemical Oxygen Demand (BOD_5) is not to exceed 25 mg/l. The chemical oxygen demand (COD) is not to exceed 125 mg/l. Test methods are to be ISO 15705:2002 for COD and ISO 5815-1:2003 for carbonaceous BOD_5 or other internationally accepted equivalent test standards.

d. pH: The pH of the samples of effluent taken during the test period is to be between 6 and 8.5.

e. Zero or non-detected values: For thermotolerant coliforms, zero values are to be replaced with a value of 1 thermotolerant coliform/100 ml to allow the calculation of the geometric mean. For total suspended solids, BOD_5 and COD values below the limit of detection are to be replaced with one half the limit of detection to allow the calculation of the geometric mean.

3. 8. 3 Where it is intended that the effluent of the grey water treatment plant is to be re-used or recycled for any purpose, the effluent is to meet the potable water quality standards of the Flag or Port State Administration, as appropriate.

3. 8. 4 As an alternative to treatment, where grey water is retained on board in dedicated holding tank(s) for discharge ashore an additional allowance of 135 litres per person per day is to be made in the capacity of the holding tanks. Each tank is to be fitted with a means to open the tank, means to verify visually the contents of the tank and a high level alarm. Each tank is to be fitted with a means to open the tank, means to verify visually the contents of the tank and a high level alarm. *See* Pt 7, Ch 11, 2.8 Sewage treatment 2.8.2.

3. 8. 5 Where grey water is retained on board in dedicated holding tanks, means are to be provided to aerate the tanks to prevent the development of anaerobic conditions, taking into account *MSC/Circular.648 – Guidelines for the Operation, Inspection and Maintenance of Ship Sewage Systems – (Adopted on 6 June 1994)* .

3. 8. 6 Ventilation pipes from the grey water treatment system and, where provided, from holding tank(s) are to be independent of other ventilation systems.

3. 8. 7 A suitable piping system from the grey water treatment system or holding tank(s) is to be provided to allow discharge to shore reception facilities. The discharge pipe is to terminate with a standard discharge connection complying with the requirements of MARPOL Annex IV, *Regulation 10 - Standard Discharge Connections*. Any connection from the grey water system to the sewage discharge is to be via a screw down non-return valve.

3. 8. 8 Records of grey water treatment and/or discharge are to be maintained. A single record book may be utilised for both grey water and sewage records. Records detailing discharges from the holding tank(s) are to include:

a. the date, location and quantity of grey water discharged from the holding tank(s) either ashore or at sea;
b. rate of discharge of untreated grey water;
c. distance from land and ship's speed, when untreated grey water is discharged to sea.

3. 8. 9 Procedures for the cleaning and safe entry of grey water treatment systems and holding tanks, including the use of suitable personal protective equipment, are to be provided and implemented.

3. 9 Nitrogen oxides NO_{x3} characters

3. 9. 1 For assignment of the **NO_{x3}** character, engines and any associated NO_x emission abatement systems are to be certified as meeting the Tier III NO_x emission limits specified in MARPOL Annex VI, *Regulation 13 – Nitrogen Oxides (NOx)*.

3. 9. 2 Equipment and systems used to control NO_x emission levels are to:

a. be arranged so that failure will not prevent continued safe operation of the engine;
b. be operated in accordance with manufacturer's instructions;
c. be designed, constructed and installed to ensure structure integrity and freedom from significant vibration;
d. be designed to include adequate hatches for inspection and maintenance purposes; and
e. be instrumented to record operation. Records of operation and the degree of control are to be maintained.

Alternative control arrangements will be given special consideration.

3. 9. 3 Procedures covering the use and maintenance of the equipment and systems used to control NO_x are to be established and implemented. Records are to be maintained which demonstrate the operation of the equipment and systems and the resultant level of NO_x emissions to the atmosphere.

3. 9. 4 Where engines constructed before 1 January 2000 are not certified in accordance with MARPOL *Annex VI - Regulations for the Prevention of Air Pollution from Ships*, the test procedure and measurement method are to be in accordance with either the Simplified Measurement Method or Direct Measurement and Monitoring Method given in Chapter 6 of the IMO *NOx Technical Code (2008) - Technical Code on Control of Emission of Nitrogen Oxides from Marine Diesel Engines*.

3. 9. 5 Where engines are constructed on or after 1 January 2000, the NO_x emission value is to be established in accordance with the *NOx Technical Code - Technical Code on Control of Emission of Nitrous Oxides from Marine Diesel Engines*.

3. 9. 6 In the case where the individual engines are 'family' or 'group' engines, as defined in the NO_x Technical Code, the respective certified emission value is to be taken as that of the relevant Parent Engine.

3. 10 Oily bilge water– OW character

3. 10. 1 For assignment of the **OW** character, all drainage from machinery space bilges is to be discharged ashore, except under exceptional circumstances.

3. 10. 2 Adequate capacity for storage of oily bilge water between discharges ashore is to be provided.

3. 10. 3 Alternatively, discharge to sea is permitted where it can be demonstrated that the oil-in-water content of the water discharged is less than 5 ppm.

3. 10. 4 The bilge alarm, set at 5 ppm, is to be recalibrated or retested every five years by the manufacturer or other acceptable alternative and full records of the recalibration or retesting are to be kept on board.

3. 10. 5 Full records of all discharges are to be kept.

3. 11 Protected oil tanks – P character

3. 11. 1 For assignment of the **P** character, in addition to compliance with the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 11, 2.6 Oil pollution prevention 2.6.11, all fuel oil, lubricating oil tanks and hydraulic oil are to be located in a protected location away from the ship's side or bottom shell plating.

3. 11. 2 All fuel oil, lubricating oil and hydraulic oil tanks, with a capacity greater than 60 m^3, are to be located in accordance with the requirements relating to fuel oil tank protection given in MARPOL Annex I, *Regulation 12A*, paragraphs 6, 7 and 8. Where tanks cannot be located in such locations the vessel is to comply with the accidental fuel oil outflow performance standard, as specified in paragraph 11 of MARPOL, Annex I, *Regulation 12A*.

3. 11. 3 Main engine lubricating oil drain tanks and fuel overflow tanks are excluded.

3. 11. 4 Arrangements providing equivalent protection will be given special consideration.

3. 11. 5 Suction wells may protrude below fuel oil tanks provided they are as small as possible and the distance between the tank bottom and the ship's bottom shell plating is not reduced by more than 50%.

3. 12 Refrigeration systems – R character

3. 12. 1 For assignment of the **R** character, natural substances are to be used as the refrigerants in all main refrigeration systems such as cargo systems, provision rooms and air conditioning.

3. 12. 2 Small factory-built refrigeration system(s) that use fluorinated refrigerants, having a Global Warming Potential (GWP) of less than 1950 are allowable.

3. 12. 3 The GWP value is based on the 100-year time horizon.

3. 13 Sulphur oxides – Exhaust Gas Cleaning System SOx-EGCS character

3. 13. 1 Where Exhaust Gas Cleaning Systems (EGCS) discharge liquid effluents overboard, the Guidelines on EGCS in section 10 *Washwater* of *Resolution MEPC.259(68) - 2015 Guidelines for Exhaust Gas Cleaning Systems - (Adopted on 15 May 2015)* are to be followed.

3. 14 Enhanced tank cleaning – TC character

3. 14. 1 For the assignment of the **TC** character, oil and chemical tankers are to be provided with tank washing equipment meeting the standards specified in Pt 7, Ch 11, 3.14 Enhanced tank cleaning – TC character 3.14.2 to Pt 7, Ch 11, 3.14 Enhanced tank cleaning – TC character 3.14.8.

3. 14. 2 Cargo tanks are to be served by individual pumps.

3. 14. 3 Permanent tank washing machines shall be type approved in accordance with the revised *IMO Resolution A.446(XI) – Revised specifications for the design, operation and control of crude oil washing systems – (Adopted on 15 November 1979)* , and their method of support is to be acceptable to ACS.

3. 14. 4 At the design stage the following minimum procedures are to be used to determine the area of the tank surface covered by direct impingement (longitudinals, brackets, stiffeners, ladders, pipework, corrugations on corrugated bulkheads and face plates can be ignored):

a. using suitable structural plans, lines are set out from the tips of each machine to those parts of the tank within the range of the jets; or
b. a pinpoint of light simulating the tip of the tank washing machine in a scale model of the tank are to be used.

Alternative methods of measurement will be considered.

3. 14. 5 Additional tank washing equipment, which may be portable, is also to be provided to enable washing of the shadow areas without the necessity to enter the tanks. The use of portable machines to wash the shadow areas is not to be undertaken where the last cargo in the tank has toxic or low ignition properties, reacts with water or has other properties specified in chapter 15 of the *IBC Code - International Code for the Construction and Equipment of Ships Carrying Dangerous Chemicals in BulkAmended by Resolution MEPC.225(64)* which would prevent water washing or opening of the tank to allow the use of portable washing machines.

3. 14. 6 A back-up system to provide cleaning capability in the event of failure of one tank washing machine is to be provided.

3. 14. 7 Heating equipment is to be provided for a tank washing medium which achieves a minimum temperature of 85°C at the connection to the tank washing machine.

3. 14. 8 The effectiveness of the tank washing system is to be confirmed by tank inspections or other means as required by ACS. The confirmation is to be carried out when the ship is in service. For ships fitted with crude oil washing system(s) the confirmation will be carried out as part of the MARPOL *Annex I of MARPOL 73/78Regulations for the Prevention of Pollution by Oil* survey and need not be carried out separately.

3. 15 Vapour emission control systems – VECS-L, VOC-R characters

3. 15. 1 Tankers carrying crude oil, petroleum products or chemicals having a flash point not exceeding 60°C (closed-cup test) will be assigned the **VECS-L**, **VOC-R** character(s) provided the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 11, 3.15 Vapour emission control systems – VECS-L, VOC-R characters 3.15.2 and/or Pt 7, Ch 11, 3.15 Vapour emission control systems – VECS-L, VOC-R characters 3.15.3 respectively are complied with, as applicable.

3. 15. 2 For assignment of the **VECS-L** character, a vapour emission control system is to be fitted, as specified in Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.8 Descriptive notes, and designed and constructed to meet the requirements for vapour balancing in accordance with USCG 46, CFR 39.40 for service vessels.

3. 15. 3 For assignment of the **VOC-R** character, a self-contained system capable of preventing vapour emission formation during loading is to be fitted. This vapour emission prevention system is to be of a type approved by ACS and is to reduce vapour emission formation by at least 75% (v/v) as compared to an equivalent ship to which no vapour emissions prevention system has been fitted.

PART

7

CHAPTER 11 **Arrangements and Equipment for Environmental Protection (ECO Class Notation)**

SECTION 4 **Survey requirements**

4. 1 Initial Survey and Audit

4. 1. 1 Following satisfactory review of the plans and other information submitted (*See* Pt 7, Ch 11, 1.5, Information to be submitted), an **ECO** Initial Survey is to be undertaken for ships under construction or in service.

4. 1. 2 At the **ECO** Initial Survey, the Surveyor is to be satisfied that the requirements of these Rules, including those relating to any requested supplementary characters, are complied with. The Surveyor is to verify that the hull and machinery arrangements are in accordance with the approved documentation. The installed equipment, together with associated control and alarm systems, is to be demonstrated under working conditions.

4. 1. 3 Following the successful completion of the Initial Survey, the **ECO** notation may be assigned to a ship. The **ECO** notation will be valid, in the first instance until the first **ECO** Annual Survey. At the first Annual Survey, an audit of the operational procedures as required by these Rules is to be undertaken. Prior to the ACS audit, the operational procedures must have been fully implemented and audited by the Operator and the applicable record books must contain in-service records for a period of at least 3 months.

4. 1. 4 Audits are to confirm by direct observation, examination of internal audit reports and scrutiny of records that each of the procedures has been implemented over the preceding period. It is also to be verified that:

a. the required resources and equipment have been provided; and
b. the ship's staff are aware of their duties and responsibilities, and can perform the assigned tasks.

4. 2 Periodical Surveys and Audits

4. 2. 1 **ECO** Annual Surveys and Audits are to be held on all ships to which the **ECO** notation applies within three months of each anniversary for assignment of the full **ECO** notation.

4. 2. 2 At the **ECO** Annual Survey and Audit, the Surveyor is to be satisfied that the arrangements and equipment comply with these Rules and operating procedures have been implemented. As far as possible, the installed equipment, together with associated control and alarm systems, are to be demonstrated under working conditions. Additionally:

a. where changes to arrangements or equipment fitted to meet the requirements of these Rules have been made, it is to be verified that these changes are in accordance with approved documentation; and
b. records for the preceding 12 months are to be reviewed.

4. 2. 3 **ECO** Audits are to be undertaken in accordance with the requirements given in Pt 7, Ch 11, 4.1 Initial Survey and Audit 4.1.4.

4. 2. 4 Where the periodical surveys and audits are not completed in accordance with Pt 7, Ch 11, 4.2 Periodical Surveys and Audits 4.2.1, the **ECO** Notation will be suspended. Re-instatement will be subject to surveys being held appropriate to the age of the ship and the circumstances of the case.

4. 2. 5 Where the periodical surveys and audits identify non-conformances, the **ECO** notation will be suspended. Re-instatement will be as directed by the Classification Committee, appropriate to the circumstances of the case.

4. 3 Change of company

4. 3. 1 Where the company (as defined in the ISM Code) changes, the **ECO** notation will be suspended.

4. 3. 2 The new company may adopt the existing approved procedures as required by these Rules or may compile new procedures.

4. 3. 3 Following implementation of the procedures, an audit, in accordance with the requirements in Pt 7, Ch 11, 4.1 Initial Survey and Audit 4.1.3 and Pt 7, Ch 11, 4.1 Initial Survey and Audit 4.1.4, is to be undertaken.

4. 3. 4 The **ECO** notation will be re-assigned following successful completion of the audit provided that the ship has a valid Safety Management Certificate (SMC) and the general requirements given in Pt 7, Ch 11, 2.1 General 2.1.1 are complied with.

PART

7

CHAPTER **12 Passenger and Crew Accommodation Comfort**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General requirements**		**3124**
	1. 1	Scope	3124
	1. 2	Definitions	3125
	1. 3	Class notations	3125
	1. 4	Certificate of Compliance	3126
SECTION 2	**Noise**		**3127**
	2. 1	Assessment criteria	3127
	2. 2	Passenger accommodation and public spaces	3127
	2. 3	Crew accommodation and work areas	3128
	2. 4	Maximum noise levels	3129
	2. 5	Impact insulation	3130
	2. 6	Transient noise	3131
SECTION 3	**Vibration**		**3132**
	3. 1	Assessment criteria	3132
	3. 2	Passenger accommodation and public spaces	3133
	3. 3	Crew accommodation and work spaces	3133
SECTION 4	**Testing**		**3134**
	4. 1	Measurement procedures	3134
	4. 2	Test conditions	3134
	4. 3	Noise measurements	3135
	4. 4	Noise measurement locations	3136
	4. 5	Vibration measurements	3136
	4. 6	Vibration measurement locations	3136
	4. 7	Approved technical organisation	3137
SECTION 5	**Noise and vibration survey reporting**		**3138**
	5. 1	General	3138

5. 2 Noise 3138
5. 3 Vibration 3139
SECTION 6 Non-periodical survey requirements 3140
6. 1 Class notation assignment 3140
6. 2 Maintenance of class notation through-life and following modifications 3140
SECTION 7 Referenced Standards 3141
7. 1 Noise 3141
7. 2 Vibration 3141

PART

7

CHAPTER 12 Passenger and Crew Accommodation Comfort

LIST OF TABLES

Table 12. 2. 1: Passenger ships - Maximum noise levels in dB(A) 3127
Table 12. 2. 2: Minimum apparent airborne sound insulation indices, R'_w 3128
Table 12. 2. 3: Crew accommodation - Maximum noise levels in dB(A) 3128
Table 12. 2. 4: Crew work areas - maximum noise levels in dB(A) 3129
Table 12. 2. 5: Passenger cabins normalised field measured impact sound pressure level $L'_{n,w}$ 3131
Table 12. 3. 1: Passenger ship - Maximum vibration levels 3132
Table 12. 3. 2: Crew spaces - Maximum vibration levels 3132

PART

7

CHAPTER **12 Passenger and Crew Accommodation Comfort**

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 12. 2. 1: Noise rating curves 3130

PART

7

CHAPTER **12 Passenger and Crew Accommodation Comfort**

SECTION **1 General requirements**

1. 1 Scope

1. 1. 1 These Rules set down the criteria for the assessment of the noise and vibration on ships and are applied in addition to the other relevant requirements of the *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships* (hereinafter referred to as the Rules for Ships).

1. 1. 2 The requirements of this chapter may be applied where no other statutory requirements exist.

1. 1. 3 These Rules provide for two alternatives:

a. **Class Notations** which indicate that the ship has been assessed and complies with noise and vibration criteria in these Rules and that a periodic survey regime has been established for the lifetime of the ship.

b. **Certificate of Compliance** which provides evidence that the ship has been assessed and found to comply with the noise and vibration criteria in these Rules.

1. 1. 4 Spaces that comply with the noise level limits specified in Table 12. 2. 4: Crew work areas - maximum noise levels in dB(A) and under Acceptance Numeral 3 in Table 12. 2. 1: Passenger ships - Maximum noise levels in dB(A) and Table 12. 2. 3: Crew accommodation - Maximum noise levels in dB(A), will meet the requirements of section 4 of IMO *Resolution MSC.337(91) – Adoption of the Code on Noise Levels on Board Ships – (Adopted on 30 November 2012)The Annex below is consolidated into Resolution MSC.337(91)*, when measured in accordance with the requirements of *Chapters 2* and 3 of that Resolution.

1. 1. 5 Spaces that comply with the noise level limits specified under Acceptance Numerals 1 and 2 in Table 12. 2. 1: Passenger ships - Maximum noise levels in dB(A) and Table 12. 2. 3: Crew accommodation - Maximum noise levels in dB(A), will achieve enhanced levels of passenger and crew comfort as applicable, when measured in accordance with the requirements of *Chapters 2* and 3 of IMO *Resolution MSC.337(91) – Adoption of the Code on Noise Levels on Board Ships – (Adopted on 30 November 2012)The Annex below is consolidated into Resolution MSC.337(91)*. All vessels can apply for Acceptance Numerals 1 and 2.

1. 1. 6 These Rules recognise existing National and International Standards and specify levels of noise and vibration currently achievable using good engineering practice. Compliance with these requirements will be assessed by review of procedures, inspection and measurement of the relevant parameters and pre-survey reviews. Inspections and measurements are to be conducted, witnessed or assessed by ACS's Surveyors unless otherwise agreed by ACS.

1. 1. 7 Accommodation comfort is a function of ship type and layout. These Rules address two types of ship:

a. Passenger (e.g. cruise ships, ro-ro ferries).

b. Cargo (e.g. container ships, tankers).

1. 1. 8 These Rules include levels of noise and vibration which should be verified by measurements following completion of the ship. It is recommended that the Builders undertake calculations of

noise and vibration characteristics so that any potential problem areas can be identified and control measures implemented.

1. 1. 9 The sound pressure levels for audible alarms and public address systems fitted in accordance with other sections of the Rules are to satisfy *IMO Resolution A.1021(26) – Code on Alerts and Indicators, 2009 – (Adopted on 2 December 2009)* .

1. 2 Definitions

1. 2. 1 **Passenger spaces** are defined as all areas intended for passenger use, and include the following:

a. Passenger cabins.
b. Public spaces (e.g. restaurants, hospital, lounges, reading and games rooms, gymnasiums, corridors, shops).
c. Open deck recreation areas.

1. 2. 2 **Crew spaces** are defined as all areas intended for crew use only, and include the following:

a. Accommodation spaces (e.g. cabins, offices, mess rooms, recreation rooms).
b. Work spaces.
c. Navigation spaces.

1. 2. 3 **Noise level** is defined as the A-weighted energy equivalent sound pressure level measured in accordance with ISO 2923.

1. 2. 4 **Vibration level** is defined by the application of ISO 20283-5.

The vibration level is defined as the overall frequency weighted r.m.s. value of vibration during a period of steady-state operation over the frequency range 1 to 80 Hz.

1. 3 Class notations

1. 3. 1 The class notations described in Pt 7, Ch 12, 1.3 Class notations 1.3.2 to Pt 7, Ch 12, 1.3 Class notations 1.3.6 provide standards for noise and vibration levels in different spaces at the time of delivery and during the ship's life if substantial changes to the machinery installation or interior arrangements are made.

1. 3. 2 The **PAC** (Passenger Accommodation Comfort), **CAC** (Crew Accommodation Comfort) and **PCAC** (Passenger and Crew Accommodation Comfort) notations are optional and are primarily intended to apply to passenger ships. If requested, however, any ship can be assessed for compliance, using these requirements as the basis for the assessment and an ACS Certificate of Compliance issued (*See* Pt 7, Ch 12, 1.1 Scope 1.1.3.b and Pt 7, Ch 12, 1.4 Certificate of Compliance).

1. 3. 3 The **PAC** notation indicates that the passenger accommodation meets the acceptance criteria whilst the **CAC** notation indicates that the crew accommodation and work areas meet the acceptance criteria. The **PCAC** notation indicates that the passenger and crew spaces both meet the acceptance criteria.

1. 3. 4 For ships which achieve the noise and vibration comfort standards specified in these Rules, the notation **PAC**, **CAC** or **PCAC** will be assigned.

1. 3. 5 Following the **PAC** or **CAC** notation, numerals **1**, **2** or **3** will indicate the acceptance criteria to which the noise and vibration levels have been assessed. In the case of the **PCAC** notation, two numerals will be assigned. The first will indicate the acceptance criteria for passenger accommodation, whilst the second will indicate the crew comfort criteria.

1. 3. 6 For particular vessels, impact insulation and transient noise in accordance with Pt 7, Ch 12, 2.5, Impact insulation and Pt 7, Ch 12, 2.6, Transient noise together with any additional or more

stringent noise and vibration criteria may be assessed within the scope of the notations where agreed between the Owner, Builder and ACS.

1. 4 Certificate of Compliance

1. 4. 1 A Certificate of Compliance records that a ship has been designed and constructed to satisfy the noise and vibration criteria contained in these Rules. This is to be confirmed by measurements and reporting in accordance with Sections Pt 7, Ch 12, 4 Testing and Pt 7, Ch 12, 5 Noise and vibration survey reporting.

1. 4. 2 A Certificate of Compliance is optional and if requested, any ship can be assessed for compliance using the Rule requirements as basis for assessment.

1. 4. 3 Where noise and vibration levels are at variance with those prescribed by these Rules, these will be added to the certificate for information purposes.

1. 4. 4 A Certificate of Compliance will be issued after the initial survey required by Pt 7, Ch 12, 6 Non-periodical survey requirements.

PART

7

CHAPTER **12 Passenger and Crew Accommodation Comfort**

SECTION **2 Noise**

2. 1 Assessment criteria

2. 1. 1 Where a space is occupied by both passengers and crew, the more stringent of the relevant requirements apply unless agreed between the Builder and Owner and advised to ACS.

2. 2 Passenger accommodation and public spaces

2. 2. 1 Under test conditions specified in Pt 7, Ch 12, 4.2, Test conditions, the applicable noise levels specified in Table 12. 2. 1: Passenger ships - Maximum noise levels in dB(A) should not generally be exceeded. *See* Pt 7, Ch 12, 2.2 Passenger accommodation and public spaces 2.2.3.

2. 2. 2 For cabins bordering discotheques and similar entertainment spaces, the deck and bulkhead sound insulation is to be sufficient to ensure that the maximum cabin noise levels are not exceeded even when high external noise levels prevail. Noise from entertainment spaces shall be considered as transient noise and should meet the requirements stated in Pt 7, Ch 12, 2.6, Transient noise.

Table 12. 2. 1: Passenger ships - Maximum noise levels in dB(A)

Location		Acceptance Numeral		
		1	2	3
Passenger cabins:	Standard	49	52	55
	Superior	45	47	50
Public spaces:	Excluding Shops	55	58	62
	shops	60	62	65
Medical centre:		50	55	60
Theatre/auditorium		50	55	60
Open deck recreation areas (excluding swimming pools and similar)		67	72	72
Swimming pools and similar		70	75	75

Note *1.* The levels may be exceeded by 5dB(A) within 3 m of a ventilation inlet/outlet or machinery intake/uptake on open decks.

Note *2.* The levels may be exceeded by 3dB(A) in accommodation above the propellers for three decks above the mooring deck.

Note *3.* The levels for open deck recreation areas refer to ship generated noise only. On open deck spaces the noise generated from the effects of wind and waves can be considered separately to limits agreed between the Builder and Owner and advised to ACS for the trial conditions.

2. 2. 3 Acceptance of noise levels greater than those specified in Table 12. 2. 1: Passenger ships - Maximum noise levels in dB(A) may be considered where agreed between the Owner and Builder at specification/contract stage. Not more than 20% of the passenger cabins, 30% of the public spaces and 20% of the crew cabins should exceed the relevant noise criteria by more than 3 dB(A).

2. 2. 4 Acoustic insulation of bulkheads and decks between passenger spaces is to be generally in accordance with the values of the weighted apparent sound reduction index R'_w as given in Table 12. 2. 2: Minimum apparent airborne sound insulation indices, R'w, calculated using ISO 717/1. *See also* Pt 7, Ch 12, 2.2 Passenger accommodation and public spaces 2.2.6.

Table 12. 2. 2: Minimum apparent airborne sound insulation indices, R'_w

Location		Acceptance Numeral		
		1	2	3
Passenger cabins:	Standard	41	39	38
	Superior	45	42	40
Cabin to corridor:	Standard	38	36	35
	Superior	42	40	37
Cabin to stairway:	Standard	47	45	43
	Superior	50	47	45
Cabin to public space (excluding corridors/stairwells and discotheques):	Standard	52	48	48
	Superior	55	50	50
Discotheques to cabins		60	60	60
Discotheques to stairwells and public spaces		52	52	52
Cabin to machinery rooms and engine casing		55	53	50

2. 2. 5 For the purpose of selecting acoustic sound insulation, the following sound noise levels may be used. The frequency spectrum used should be as defined in ISO 717-1: spectrum No. 2 for discotheques and spectrum No. 1 for others. Evaluation should include the frequency range down to 50 Hz 1/3-octave band:

a. Cabins – 80 dB(A).
b. Dining Rooms – 85 dB(A).
c. Corridors – 90 dB(A).
d. Discotheques, Theatres, Entertainment Areas – 105 dB(A).

2. 2. 6 Acceptance of bulkhead and deck acoustic insulation values less than those specified in Table 12. 2. 2: Minimum apparent airborne sound insulation indices, R'w may be considered where agreed between the Owner and Builder. Not more than 20% of the interfaces tested should have airborne sound insulation indices, R'_w, more than 3 dB(A) lower than the minimum specified values.

2. 3 Crew accommodation and work areas

2. 3. 1 Under the applicable test conditions specified in Pt 7, Ch 12, 4.2, Test conditions, the noise levels specified in Table 12. 2. 3: Crew accommodation - Maximum noise levels in dB(A) and Table 12. 2. 4: Crew work areas - maximum noise levels in dB(A) are not to be exceeded.

Table 12. 2. 3: Crew accommodation - Maximum noise levels in dB(A)

Location	Acceptance Numeral			
	1	2	3	
			Ships <10.000 grt	Ships ≥10.000 grt
Sleeping cabins, hospitals	50	53	60	55
Offices, conference rooms and day cabins	55	58	65	60
Mess rooms, lounges, reception areas and recreation rooms within accommodation	55	58	65	60

Recreational areas on open deck	67	72	75	75
Alleyways, changing rooms, bathrooms, lockers	70	75	75	75
NOTE The levels may be exceeded by 5 dB(A) within 3 m of a ventilation inlet/outlet or machinery intake/uptake on open decks.				

Table 12. 2. 4: Crew work areas - maximum noise levels in dB(A)

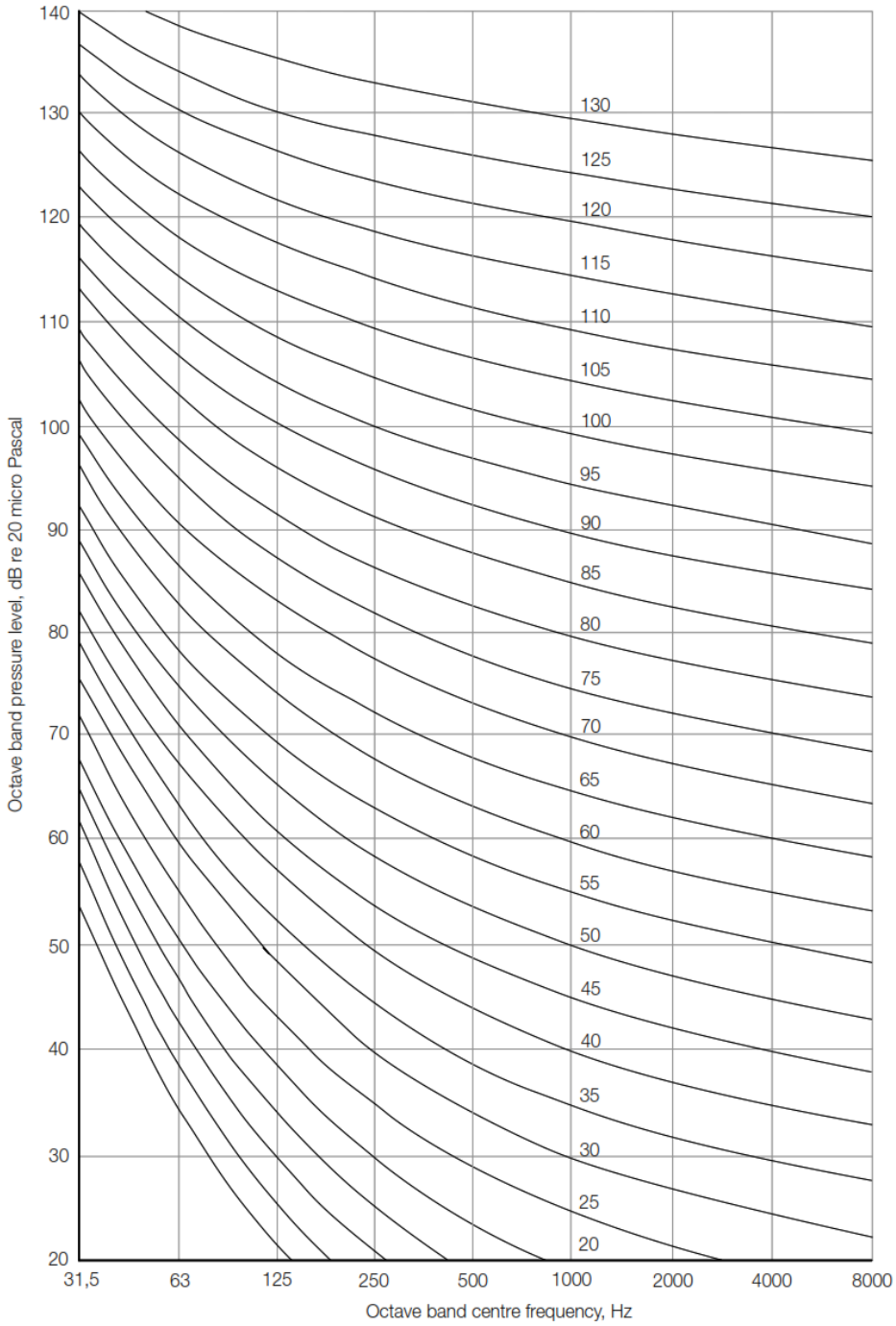
Location	dB(A) level
Machinery space(not continuously manned) e.g. pump, refrigeration, thrusters or fan rooms	110
Workshops and non-specified work spaces	85
Machinery control rooms	75
Wheelhouse, chartrooms, radar rooms	65
Look-out posts e.g. at bridge wing or window	70
Additional limits:	
• 250 Hz band	68
• 500 Hz band	63
(measured according to IMO A.343(IX))	
Radio room	60
Galleys and pantries:	75
• Equipment not working	75
• Individual items at 1 metre	80
Normally unoccupied spaces (e.g. holds, decks)	90
Ship's whistle, on bridge or forecastle	110

2. 3. 2 Crew space insulation is to comply with the requirements of IMO *Resolution MSC.337(91) – Adoption of the Code on Noise Levels on Board Ships – (Adopted on 30 November 2012)The Annex below is consolidated into Resolution MSC.337(91)*.

2. 4 Maximum noise levels

2. 4. 1 Where the measured noise level exceeds the specified criterion by 3 dB(A), or contains subjectively annoying low frequency or tonal components, the noise rating (NR) number is to be established in accordance with the graph shown in Figure 12. 2. 1: Noise rating curves. This is achieved by plotting the linear octave band levels on the graph; the NR number is that NR curve to which the highest plotted octave band level is anywhere tangent. The specified criterion may be considered satisfied if the NR number does not exceed the specified A-weighted value minus 5 dB(A).

Figure 12. 2. 1: Noise rating curves



2. 4. 2 Guidance on maximum acceptable sound pressure levels and noise exposure limits for crew spaces is given in IMO *Resolution MSC.337(91) – Adoption of the Code on Noise Levels on Board Ships – (Adopted on 30 November 2012)The Annex below is consolidated into Resolution MSC.337(91)*.

2. 5 Impact insulation

2. 5. 1 Where agreed between the Owner, Builder and ACS, enhanced criteria for noise levels recognising the effects of impact sound pressures may be applied in accordance with Pt 7, Ch 12, 2.5 Impact insulation 2.5.2 to Pt 7, Ch 12, 2.5 Impact insulation 2.5.5.

2. 5. 2 For passenger and crew cabins located below or adjacent to dance floors, stages, aerobics and gymnasium areas, jogging tracks or other areas where impact noise is generated, the normalised field measured impact sound pressure level within the cabins is not to exceed 45 dB.

2. 5. 3 For public rooms under dance floors, stages, aerobics and gymnasium areas, jogging tracks or other areas where impact noise is generated, the normalised field measured impact sound pressure level within the space is not to exceed 55 dB.

2. 5. 4 For passenger cabins, the normalised field measured impact sound pressure level, $L'_{n,w}$, calculated using ISO 717/2, is to be generally in accordance with the values stated in Table 12. 2. 5: Passenger cabins normalised field measured impact sound pressure level L'n,w . *See also* Pt 7, Ch 12, 2.5 Impact insulation 2.5.5.

Table 12. 2. 5: Passenger cabins normalised field measured impact sound pressure level $L'_{n,w}$

Location	dB
Below decks covered with carpet and soft materials	50
Below decks covered in hard materials (such as wood, marble or similar)	60
Below dance floors, theatre or sports rooms	45

2. 5. 5 Acceptance of normalised impact sound pressure levels greater than those specified in Table 12. 2. 5: Passenger cabins normalised field measured impact sound pressure level L'n,w may be considered for assignment of the applicable class notation where agreed between the Owner, Builder and ACS. No more than 20% of the passenger cabins tested should exceed the levels specified by more than 3 dB.

2. 6 Transient noise

2. 6. 1 Where agreed between the Owner, Builder and ACS, enhanced criteria for transient noise levels may be applied in accordance with Pt 7, Ch 12, 2.6 Transient noise 2.6.2.

2. 6. 2 The maximum sound pressure level ($L_{pAS,max}$) emanating from any machinery or system caused by a single event that produces a noise 'spike' compared to the reference condition sound level (such as vacuum systems or valve operations) is not to cause an increase in noise in comparison with the reference condition (background noise) as below:

(a) Passenger cabins and public areas: +2 dB(A)

(b) Officer cabins: +2 dB(A)

(c) Crew cabins and public areas: +3 dB(A)

A tolerance of +3 dB(A) may be applied to 5% of cabins and public areas in each fire zone on each deck. This criterion is generally applicable to the specified maximum noise levels for the space concerned.

PART

7

CHAPTER **12 Passenger and Crew Accommodation Comfort**

SECTION **3 Vibration**

3. 1 Assessment criteria

3. 1. 1 Where a space is occupied by both passengers and crew, the more stringent of the relevant requirements apply unless agreed between the Builder and Owner and this agreement advised to ACS.

3. 1. 2 The limits apply to vertical, longitudinal and transverse vibrations which are to be assessed separately.

3. 1. 3 Under test conditions specified in Pt 7, Ch 12, 4.2, Test conditions, the applicable vibration levels specified in Table 12. 3. 1: Passenger ship - Maximum vibration levels and Table 12. 3. 2: Crew spaces - Maximum vibration levels should not be exceeded.

3. 1. 4 Acceptance of vibration levels greater than those specified in Table 12. 3. 1: Passenger ship - Maximum vibration levels and Table 12. 3. 2: Crew spaces - Maximum vibration levels may be considered for assignment of the applicable class notation where agreed between the Owner, Builder and ACS.

Table 12. 3. 1: Passenger ship - Maximum vibration levels

Standard:	ISO 20283-5		
Units:	Frequency weighted velocity level (1–80 Hz), mm/s r.m.s.		
	Acceptance Numeral		
Location	1	2	3
Passenger cabin Luxury	1.5	1.8	2.1
Passenger cabin Standard	1.8	2.1	2.4
Public spaces	2.0	2.5	3.0
Open recreation decks	2.5	3.0	3.5
Note The vibration level may be exceeded by 0.3 mm/s in the ship's aft body directly above the propellers.			

Table 12. 3. 2: Crew spaces - Maximum vibration levels

Standard:	ISO 20283-5
Units:	Frequency weighted velocity level (1–80 Hz), mm/s r.m.s.
Location	
Accommodation and navigation spaces	3.5

Work spaces	5.0

3. 2 Passenger accommodation and public spaces

3. 2. 1 Passenger spaces are to comply with the overall vibration levels specified in Table 12. 3. 1: Passenger ship - Maximum vibration levels and Table 12. 3. 2: Crew spaces - Maximum vibration levels.

3. 2. 2 No more than 20% of all passenger spaces/areas and public spaces should exceed the relevant vibration criteria specified in Table 12. 3. 1: Passenger ship - Maximum vibration levels and Table 12. 3. 2: Crew spaces - Maximum vibration levels by more than 0.3 mm/s.

3. 3 Crew accommodation and work spaces

3. 3. 1 Crew spaces are to comply with the overall vibration levels specified in Table 12. 3. 2: Crew spaces - Maximum vibration levels.

PART

7

CHAPTER **12 Passenger and Crew Accommodation Comfort**

SECTION **4 Testing**

4. 1 Measurement procedures

4. 1. 1 These requirements take precedence where quoted standards may differ.

4. 1. 2 The trial measurements may be undertaken by an approved technical organisation as defined in Pt 7, Ch 12, 4.7 Approved technical organisation or by ACS. In the former case, the measurements are to be witnessed by a ACS Surveyor.

4. 1. 3 Subject to agreement by ACS and the Owner/ Operator, the measurements may be undertaken by the Builder. In this case, the measurements are to be witnessed by a ACS Surveyor.

4. 2 Test conditions

4. 2. 1 Test conditions for the surveys are to be in accordance with those detailed in ISO 2923 and ISO 20283-5 as applicable.

4. 2. 2 The intended operating and loading conditions of the ship during assessment surveys are to be submitted to ACS for agreement, prior to commencement of surveys.

4. 2. 3 Surveys are to be conducted when the ship is fully outfitted and all systems contributing to noise and vibration levels are operational.

Note All systems operational are to include those systems that may operate simultaneously with others during normal ship operation.

4. 2. 4 The test conditions required for the vibration and noise measurements are to be in accordance with the following conditions:

a. For passenger ships, prior to measurement surveys being carried out, the ship operating condition where the worst conditions are experienced between 0 and 85% maximum continuous rating of the propulsion machinery is to be determined. To establish this condition, four measurement positions are to be defined with the agreement of ACS and measurements taken of the parameters of interest at ship speeds corresponding to percentages of the maximum continuous rating of the propulsion machinery increasing up to 40% MCR in 10% intervals and from 40% in 5% intervals up to the 85% maximum continuous rating of the propulsion machinery. If the 85% maximum continuous rating condition is found to be the worst condition, then this will form the trial operating conditions. However, if a lower speed condition is found to be worse than the 85% maximum continuous rating condition then both that condition and the 85% maximum continuous rating condition will form the trial operating conditions. Where unavoidable any barred range within the values required for the trial operating condition may be excluded on agreement between Owner and Builder subject to approval by ACS. Other operating conditions for testing can be agreed between Owner and Builder.

b. The power absorbed by the propeller(s) is to be that defined in Pt 7, Ch 12, 4.2 Test conditions 4.2.4. Alternatively, by special agreement, some lesser power could be accepted if it can be demonstrated by the Owner that this would correspond to a more representative normal service condition.
c. Auxiliary machinery essential for the ship's operating conditions together with HVAC systems are to be running at their normal rated capacity during the noise and vibration trials. Combinations of auxiliary machinery operation may be necessary. In addition, the following equipment is to be running if appropriate: stabilisers, waste treatment equipment, swimming pool and jacuzzi equipment.
d. For sea-going ships, measurements are to be taken with the ship proceeding ahead, at a constant speed and course, in a depth of water not less than five times the draught of the ship. For other ships, an appropriate water depth is to be agreed with ACS prior to the trials.
e. Trials are to be conducted in sea conditions not greater than sea state 3 on the WMO sea state code. In addition, noise measurements should not be taken when the wind force exceeds 4 on the Beaufort scale.
f. The ship is to be at a displacement and trim representative of an operating condition.
g. Rudder angle variations are to be limited to ±2° of the midship position and rudder movements are to be kept to a minimum throughout the measurement periods.
h. In addition, for ships which are designed to spend a considerable period of time in harbour, the noise and vibration, are to be measured for this condition, with the auxiliary machinery and HVAC systems running at their normal rated capacity.
i. Intermittently run equipment such as transverse propulsion units are to be operated at 40% of their rated power for additional measurements in surrounding ship areas. If such equipment is intended for long-term operation, e.g. stabilisers, or long-term intermittent dynamic positioning (DP) mode, measurements shall be made for ensuring compliance with the general noise and vibration limits. If such systems are intended for short term intermittent operation only, for instance during port manoeuvres, the noise and vibration levels should be measured for information only. Definition of long-term DP mode can be agreed between Owner and Builder.

4. 2. 5 Prior to survey, a test programme is to be submitted for approval by ACS. This programme is to contain details of the following:
a. Measurement locations indicated on a general arrangement of the ship.
b. The ship's loading condition during survey.
c. The machinery operating condition, including HVAC system, during survey.
d. Noise and vibration measuring equipment.

4. 3 Noise measurements

4. 3. 1 Noise measurements are to be conducted in accordance with ISO 2923 and IMO *Resolution MSC.337(91) – Adoption of the Code on Noise Levels on Board Ships – (Adopted on 30 November 2012)The Annex below is consolidated into Resolution MSC.337(91)*. Measurements of noise levels are to be carried out using precision grade sound level meters conforming to IEC 61672-1, Type 1 or 2. Subject to demonstration, equivalent standards are acceptable.

4. 3. 2 Where the measured noise level exceeds the relevant criterion by 3 dB(A), or contains subjectively annoying low frequency noise or obvious tonal components, octave band readings are to be taken, with centre frequencies from 31.5 Hz to 8 kHz.

4. 3. 3 When outfitting is complete, and all soft furnishings are in place, sound insulation indices for passenger spaces are to be determined in accordance with ISO 16283-1. Cabin to cabin indices are to be determined from a minimum of three locations for each cabin type within the passenger accommodation, the number of test locations being agreed with ACS. If the partition surface area

is less than 10 m^2, an area of 10 m^2 shall be used for the calculation of the R'_w index, unless otherwise agreed.

4. 3. 4 If required, impact sound measurements are to be carried out in accordance with ISO 16283-2 and presented in accordance with ISO 717/2. *See* Pt 7, Ch 12, 4.4 Noise measurement locations 4.4.4.

4. 4 Noise measurement locations

4. 4. 1 Measurement locations are to be chosen so that the assessment represents the overall noise environment on board the ship. In addition to the requirements of IMO *Resolution MSC.337(91) – Adoption of the Code on Noise Levels on Board Ships – (Adopted on 30 November 2012)The Annex below is consolidated into Resolution MSC.337(91)* for crew spaces, all public spaces shall be surveyed. For passenger cabins the following minimum number of cabins shall be measured:

- $n < 10$: all cabins,
- $n < 50$: 50% of cabins,
- $n < 500$: 25% of cabins,
- $n > 500$: 15% of cabins

where n is the total number of passenger cabins.
At least 40% of the crew cabins shall be measured. For ships with a large number of crew cabins, e.g. cruise ships, a minimum of 15% of the crew cabins should be measured. 50% of the measurements in crew and passenger areas shall be located in the after third of the ship. Distribution of the measurement locations is to be agreed by ACS.

4. 4. 2 During measurement trials, recognised noise sources are to be operated at their normal level of noise output (e.g. machinery at design rating).

4. 4. 3 In larger sized spaces, where noise levels may vary considerably, such as restaurants, lounges, atria and open deck recreation areas, measurements are to be taken at locations not greater than 7 m apart.

4. 4. 4 The number of and locations for impact noise measurements are to be agreed between the Builder, Owner and ACS. The measurements are to be carried out when the ship is in a condition with steady and low background noise. The number and location of measurements are to take account of all different combinations of construction, areas of application, types of cabin and spaces below.

4. 5 Vibration measurements

4. 5. 1 Vibration measurements are to be conducted in accordance with ISO 20283-5.

4. 5. 2 Measurements are to be made with instrumentation meeting the requirements of ISO 8041.

4. 5. 3 Vibration levels are to be given in terms of the velocity measurement appropriate to the version of the standard being used and should be measured over a period of not less than one minute.

4. 6 Vibration measurement locations

4. 6. 1 Measurement locations are to be chosen so that the assessment represents the overall vibration environment onboard the ship. To minimise survey times, readings may be taken at the locations previously defined for the noise assessment part of the survey.

4. 6. 2 In cabins, vibration readings are to be taken in the centre of the floor area. The measurements are to indicate the vibration of the deck structure. In large spaces, such as restaurants, sufficient measurements are required to define the vibration profile.

4. 6. 3 Where deck coverings make transducer attachment impracticable, use of a small steel plate having a mass of at least 1 kg, with spikes as appropriate, is permissible.

4. 6. 4 At all locations, vibrations in the vertical direction are to be assessed. Sufficient measurements in the longitudinal and transverse directions are to be taken to define global deck vibrations in at least two locations on each deck.

4. 7 Approved technical organisation

4. 7. 1 An approved technical organisation for the purposes of these Rules is one that is acceptable to the Owner and ACS with proven capability in noise and vibration measurement and satisfies all the criteria set out below:

a. Have instrumentation whose calibration, both before and after the measurements, can be traced back to National Standards and, hence, back to International Standards.

b. Have analysis procedures capable of data reduction to the requirements and standards set out in these Rules.

c. Be able to provide a written report in English with contents as defined by Pt 7, Ch 12, 5 Noise and vibration survey reporting.

PART

7

CHAPTER **12 Passenger and Crew Accommodation Comfort**

SECTION **5 Noise and vibration survey reporting**

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 Prior to survey, a noise and vibration measurement plan is to be agreed by the Owner, Builder and ACS.

5. 1. 2 The survey report is to comprise the data and analysis for both noise and vibration and is to be submitted to ACS for consideration.

5. 1. 3 The survey report is to be prepared by the organisation undertaking the trial measurements, which may be an approved technical organisation or ACS.

5. 1. 4 The survey report is to be submitted to ACS for evaluation and confirmation that the results are in accordance with the noise and vibration levels specified in these Rules and/or agreed between the Owner and Builder. The assignment of a Class Notation or the issue of a Statement of Compliance will be subject to confirmation by an ACS specialist with a competency level of 2 or higher within Passenger and Crew Accommodation comfort (PCAC) (ADV198).

5. 2 Noise

5. 2. 1 The reporting of results is to comply with ISO 2923 and IMO *Resolution MSC.337(91) – Adoption of the Code on Noise Levels on Board Ships – (Adopted on 30 November 2012)The Annex below is consolidated into Resolution MSC.337(91)*, and is to include:

a. Measurement locations indicated on a general arrangement plan including, where possible, the measured dB(A) level.

b. Tabulated dB(A) noise levels, together with octave band analysis for positions where the level exceeds the specified criterion by 3 dB(A), or where subjectively annoying low frequency or tonal components were present. The Noise Rating number is also to be given where octave band analyses have been conducted.

c. Ship and machinery details.

d. Trial details:
   i. Loading condition.
   ii. Machinery operating condition.
   iii. Speed.
   iv. Average water depth under keel.
   v. Weather conditions.
   vi. Sea state.
   vii. Draught.

e. Details of measuring and analysis equipment (e.g. manufacturer, type and serial numbers), including frequency analysis parameters (e.g. resolution, averaging time, window function).

f. Copies of the relevant instrument calibration certificates, together with the results of field calibration checks.

5. 3 Vibration

5. 3. 1 The report is to contain the following information:

a. Measurement positions indicated on a general arrangement plan.

b. Where ISO 20283-5 is used, the frequency-weighted overall r.m.s. vibration levels tabulated for all measurement locations calculated using the weighting functions and methodology stated in the standard.

c. Ship and machinery details.

d. Trial details:

i. Loading condition.

ii. Machinery operating condition.

iii. Speed.

iv. Average water depth under keel.

v. Weather conditions.

vi. Sea state.

vii. Draught.

e. Frequency analysis parameters (e.g. resolution, averaging time and window function), if the analysis is done in the frequency domain.

f. Copies of the relevant instrument calibration certificates, together with the results of field calibration.

PART

7

CHAPTER **12 Passenger and Crew Accommodation Comfort**

SECTION **6 Non-periodical survey requirements**

6. 1 Class notation assignment

6. 1. 1 Where the assignment of a Class Notation or a Statement of Compliance is requested, an Initial Survey is to comprise sea trial or initial in-service testing, reporting and assessment against the criteria set out in these Rules.

6. 1. 2 The sea trial or initial in-service testing requirements are set out in Pt 7, Ch 12, 4 Testing, and are to be reported in accordance with Pt 7, Ch 12, 5 Noise and vibration survey reporting and evaluated against the requirements of Sections Pt 7, Ch 12, 2 Noise and Pt 7, Ch 12, 3 Vibration.

6. 2 Maintenance of class notation through-life and following modifications

6. 2. 1 Where an Owner has requested assignment of a Class Notation, arrangements are to be agreed between ACS and the Owner to record observations/complaints of excessive noise and vibration that have been such as to disturb the comfort of passengers and crew. The records of the observations are to be made available to the attending ACS Surveyor at each Annual Survey.

6. 2. 2 Where the observations indicate that the noise and/or vibration levels may exceed the criteria relating to the Class Notation requirements and those measured at the Initial Survey, a measurement programme is to be agreed between the Owner and ACS and measurements taken in accordance with these Rules.

6. 2. 3 A Renewal Survey may be required following modifications, alterations or repairs including replacement of major machinery items. It is the responsibility of the Owner to advise ACS of such modifications.

PART

7

CHAPTER 12 Passenger and Crew Accommodation Comfort

SECTION 7 Referenced Standards

7. 1 Noise

7. 1. 1 The following National and International Standards for noise are referred to in these Rules:

- ISO 2923:1996/Cor 1:1997, *Acoustics – Measurement of noise on board vessels*.
- ISO 717-1:2013, *Acoustics – Rating of sound insulation in buildings and of building elements; Part 1: Airborne sound insulation*.
- ISO 717-2:2013, *Acoustics – Rating of sound insulation in buildings and of building elements;* Part 2*: Impact sound insulation*.
- IMO *Resolution MSC.337(91) – Adoption of the Code on Noise Levels on Board Ships – (Adopted on 30 November 2012)The Annex below is consolidated into Resolution MSC.337(91)*.
- IEC 61672, *Sound level meters* (all parts), or earlier versions, .
- ISO 16283-1:2014/Amd 1:2017, *Acoustics – Field measurement of sound insulation in buildings and of building elements – Part 1: Airborne sound insulation*
- ISO 16283-2:2018, *Acoustics – Field measurement of sound insulation in buildings and of building elements –* Part 2*: Impact sound insulation*.

7. 2 Vibration

7. 2. 1 The following National and International Standards for vibration are referred to in these Rules:

- ISO 20283-5:2016, *Mechanical vibration – Measurement of vibration on ships – Part 5: Guidelines for measurement, evaluation and reporting of vibration with regard to habitability on passenger and merchant ships.*
- ISO 8041-1:2017, *Human response to vibration – Measuring instrumentation – Part 1: General purpose vibration meters* (or earlier versions).

PART

7

CHAPTER **13 On-shore Power Supplies**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General's**		**3145**
	1. 1	General	3145
	1. 2	Authorities and administrations	3145
	1. 3	Class notations	3146
	1. 4	Plans and information	3146
	1. 5	Additions and alterations	3147
	1. 6	Definitions	3147
SECTION 2	**Essential features**		**3148**
	2. 1	General requirements	3148
SECTION 3	**Electrical Connection**		**3149**
	3. 1	General	3149
	3. 2	Connection Equipment	3150
	3. 3	Connection cables, plugs and socket-outlets	3151
	3. 4	Containers	3152
	3. 5	High voltage in the presence of personnel	3153
SECTION 4	**Electrical System**		**3154**
	4. 1	Electrical Load Transfer	3154
	4. 2	Capacity	3155
	4. 3	Protection	3155
	4. 4	Interlocking and synchronising arrangements	3156
	4. 5	Ship power restoration	3157
SECTION 5	**Control and monitoring**		**3158**
	5. 1	General	3158
	5. 2	Connection Equipment control and monitoring	3159
	5. 3	Emergency Shutdown	3160
SECTION 6	**Testing, trials and surveys**		**3162**

6. 1 General 3162

PART

7

CHAPTER 13 On-shore Power Supplies

LIST OF TABLES

Table 13. 5. 1: Additional alarms and associated safeguards 3159

PART

7

CHAPTER **13 On-shore Power Supplies**

SECTION **1 General's**

1. 1 General

1. 1. 1 These optional requirements apply to the safety, reliability and availability of shipboard machinery, electrical and control engineering arrangements installed to permit continued operation of services by connection to an external electrical power supply in port. These requirements are additional to those applicable in other Parts of the Rules. Regular operation of ship's services from an external electrical power supply is often referred to as On-shore Power Supply, Cold Ironing, High Voltage Shore Connection or Alternative Marine Power.

1. 1. 2 These requirements are intended for application to the shipboard elements of designs where the connection(s) with external power supply arrangements are achieved by either extending ship cables from the ship to the external power supply connection points or by bringing external cables on board to connect to shipboard connection points. However, external equipment and machinery (including shore based transformers, circuit breakers, gantries, cables, connectors and control engineering arrangements) are not covered by classification or these requirements.

1. 1. 3 Compliance with these requirements is intended to assess the suitability of shipboard arrangements for the documented intended application and only addresses compatibility with external power supply arrangements that are suitable for connection to the installed ship arrangements.

1. 1. 4 Assessment of the overall compatibility and suitability of an external electrical power supply (including combined electrical and control engineering assessments, compliance with applicable regulations, operating practices and risk assessment, etc. as applicable) is necessary before connection and is the responsibility of the Owner. Elements of the overall assessment of compatibility will be required to be completed in advance to prepare for a ship visit to a port where it is intended to connect to an external power supply due to the need to involve competent and responsible parties.

1. 2 Authorities and administrations

1. 2. 1 Additional requirements and/or restrictions may be imposed by the National Authority with which the ship is registered and/or by the appropriate Administration or Authorities within whose jurisdiction the ship is intended to operate and/or by the Owners or Authorities responsible for an external electrical power supply. Where such additional requirements are relevant, compliance is the responsibility of the Owner. If specifically requested, ACS may be able to provide a suitable statement of compliance.

1. 2. 2 Where additional requirements imposed by an Authority or Administration would result in a departure from the requirements of this Chapter, details demonstrating that safety, availability and reliability will not be adversely affected are to be submitted to ACS for consideration.

1. 3 Class notations

1. 3. 1 **OPS** machinery class notation may be assigned where machinery, electrical and control engineering arrangements installed onboard to permit continued operation of services by connection to an external electrical power supply are assessed and found to comply with the requirements of this Chapter.

1. 4 Plans and information

1. 4. 1 Three copies of the plans and particulars in Pt 7, Ch 13, 1.4 Plans and information 1.4.2 to Pt 7, Ch 13, 1.4 Plans and information 1.4.9 are to be submitted for consideration.

1. 4. 2 Operating Manuals that describe the intended methods of connection together with operating and monitoring instructions. Assessments of the external supplies that are to be connected to the ship together with the mooring and environmental conditions are to be included. Details of equipment and arrangements necessary to ensure safety when connecting, disconnecting, transferring electrical load, testing and operating are to be incorporated.

1. 4. 3 A Design Statement which details the Defined Operations. This statement is to include a description of the operating capability, functionality, limits and restrictions; in terms of:

- Connection Equipment, *See* Pt 7, Ch 13, 1.6 Definitions 1.6.2;
- Connection Equipment routes;
- mooring arrangements;
- environmental conditions including tidal and weather and, where applicable, electromagnetic conditions required to ensure compatibility or prevent damage caused by heating or sparking;
- Connection Equipment suitability for hazardous areas, *See* Pt 7, Ch 13, 2.1 General requirements 2.1.4 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.6
- arrangements for an external connection cable to be brought on board, where provided;
- Separation details, *See* Pt 7, Ch 13, 3.2 Connection Equipment 3.2.7;
- the rating of the arrangements;
- ratings and requirements for external power supplies, *See* Pt 7, Ch 13, 3.1 General 3.1.10; and
- the services to be supplied.

1. 4. 4 Arrangement plans of equipment, control stations, locations, routes to and from connections, openings and accesses and flexible or movable arrangements.

1. 4. 5 Operational and construction details of Connection Equipment, including any flexible or adjusting arrangements, including plugs and socket-outlets, *See* Pt 7, Ch 13, 3.3 Connection cables, plugs and socket-outlets 3.3.4.

1. 4. 6 Plans for control and electrical engineering arrangements required by Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems and Pt 6, Ch 2 Electrical Engineering, as applicable.

1. 4. 7 Details of type tests for Connection cables, plugs and socket-outlets required by Pt 7, Ch 13, 3.3 Connection cables, plugs and socket-outlets 3.3.6.

1. 4. 8 Details of supplementary arrangements required to protect equipment from exposure to moisture, condensation or temperatures outside their rating.

1. 4. 9 Schedule of testing at manufacturers' works, initial surveys and trials. The test schedules are to address the defined operations and are to include normal operations and failure conditions.

1. 5 Additions and alterations

1. 5. 1 When an alteration or addition to the approved arrangements is proposed, including changes to the defined service profile, details are to be submitted for consideration.

1. 6 Definitions

1. 6. 1 'Defined Operations' include the application, connection, electrical load transfer, in-service operation, failure response, disconnection and stowage of the connection to an external power supply.

1. 6. 2 'Connection Equipment' is the ship equipment used to connect permanently installed ship equipment with external electrical power supply connection points in accordance with the Design Statement. This includes, as applicable, flexible cables, plugs and socket-outlets, slip rings or other power conductors or control connections, and support and management measures for these connections. For the purposes of this Chapter, 'Connection Equipment' does not include external equipment, *See* Pt 7, Ch 13, 1.1, General.

PART

7

CHAPTER **13 On-shore Power Supplies**

SECTION **2 Essential features**

2. 1 General requirements

2. 1. 1 Connection equipment is to be designed to be compatible with ship mooring arrangements and the limits of acceptable forces, moments and deflections on correctly applied Connection Equipment resulting from the movement of the moored ship under normal operational circumstances is to be defined in the Design Statement.

2. 1. 2 Electrical and control engineering arrangements for operation with external electrical power supplies are to be in accordance with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems and Pt 6, Ch 2 Electrical Engineering, as applicable.

2. 1. 3 Connection to an external electrical power supply is not to adversely affect the availability of main, auxiliary or emergency machinery, including ship sources of electrical power to allow ship power to be restored. Details of arrangements provided to maintain availability (for example, pre-heating and lubrication and availability of starting, fuel, lubrication, air and auxiliary systems) are to be included in the Design Statement, *See also* Pt 7, Ch 13, 4.5, Ship power restoration and Pt 7, Ch 13, 5.1 General 5.1.9.

2. 1. 4 The permanent or temporary installation of electrical equipment in areas containing flammable gas or vapour and/or combustible dust, is to be minimised as far as is consistent with operational necessity and the provision of facilities enhancing the overall safety of the ship and connection to an external power supply. Where it is necessary to install electrical equipment in these areas, the arrangements are to be in accordance with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 14 Electrical equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres or in the presence of combustible dusts. The suitability of electrical Connection Equipment for operation in areas containing flammable gas and/or vapour and/or combustible dust while in port is to be defined in the Design Statement and should, additionally, address the implications for Connection Equipment extended ashore, where applicable, and the suitability for operation in berths requiring extended, hazardous areas.

2. 1. 5 As far as practicable, Connection Equipment is to be located outside of areas where it could be damaged by inport activities under normal operational circumstances.

2. 1. 6 Consideration may be given to arrangements that are considered by ACS to provide an equivalent level of safety. Evidence demonstrating compliance with IEC/ISO/IEEE 80005-1: *Electrical installations in ships – Special features: High-voltage shore connection systems*, or a relevant National Standard may be submitted for consideration of acceptability by ACS.

PART

7

CHAPTER **13 On-shore Power Supplies**

SECTION **3 Electrical Connection**

3. 1 General

3. 1. 1 A connection cubicle is to be provided at a convenient location for the reception or extension of connection cable(s) for connection to the external electrical power supply connection points. The connection cubicle is to contain terminals for the connection cable(s) that can be isolated.

3. 1. 2 Power connections with external electrical power supply arrangements may be made with either suitable connections or by using socket-outlets and plugs in accordance with Pt 7, Ch 13, 3.3, Connection cables, plugs and socket-outlets.

3. 1. 3 Suitable cables, permanently fixed, are to be provided from the connection cubicle to the Connection Circuit-Breaker switchboard, with on-board overcurrent protection situated at or as close as is practicable to the connection cubicle. Connection Equipment to this overcurrent protection is to be installed in a manner such as to minimise the risk of short-circuit.

3. 1. 4 Where shipboard connection cables are extended to the external electrical power supply connection points, the connection cubicle is to be situated as close as practicable on board to the point where they are extended from the ship.

3. 1. 5 Means are to be provided to permit the quality of insulation between Connection Equipment conductors, and between the conductors and earth to be measured to verify suitability prior to the connection of an external power supply. The means of verifying satisfactory insulation quality of Connection Equipment in hazardous areas is to be addressed in the Operating Manuals, *See* Pt 7, Ch 13, 1.4 Plans and information 1.4.2.

3. 1. 6 An earth connection is to be provided for connecting the hull to an earth appropriate for the external electrical power supply which is being connected.

3. 1. 7 For high voltage connections, means are to be provided, as applicable to the design, to either:

a. permit termination of circuits used by external power supply equipment to monitor the continuity of the earth connection referred to in Pt 7, Ch 13, 3.1 General 3.1.6; or

b. monitor the continuity of the earth connection referred to in Pt 7, Ch 13, 3.1 General 3.1.6, *See* Pt 7, Ch 13, 5.3 Emergency Shutdown 5.3.8.

3. 1. 8 Means are to be provided for checking the phase sequence of the incoming supply.

3. 1. 9 An indicator is to be provided at the Connection Circuit-Breaker switchboard, and at the connection cubicle if in a different location, in order to show when connections are energised.

3. 1. 10 Requirements for an external electrical power supply to be connected are to be defined in the Design Statement and this is to detail the following:

- connections, including control, alarm and safety systems and data communication links;
- Emergency Shutdown requirements, *See* Pt 7, Ch 13, 5.3, Emergency Shutdown;
- nominal voltage(s) or voltage range;

- nominal frequency or frequency range;
- number of phases and system of supply;
- rated current or apparent power;
- quality of power supply;
- reference to protection system design, including protection characteristics for the Connection Circuit-Breaker;
- maximum permitted prospective fault level;
- minimum supply apparent power or current capacity;
- earth fault limiting requirements for earthed high voltage connections;
- isolation and earthing; and
- supply requirements for lightning and surge protection, galvanic isolation of supply circuit from other ships, etc.

Required electrical characteristics are to address steady state, transient and fault conditions, as necessary.

3. 1. 11 A notice is to be provided at the connection cubicle referencing the Operating Manuals and Design Statement and advising of the requirement to ensure that external electrical power supplies satisfy the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 13, 3.1 General 3.1.10 prior to connection. *See* Pt 7, Ch 13, 1.1 General 1.1.4 for the conducting of the assessment of overall compatibility.

3. 2 Connection Equipment

3. 2. 1 Connection Equipment support and management arrangements, including those for control engineering arrangements, are to be arranged not to apply damaging forces or tension to correctly applied equipment. Support arrangements are to ensure that the weight of connected cable is not borne by cable end terminations or connections, including those in plugs or socket-outlets.

3. 2. 2 Connection Equipment arrangements are to be such as not to coil or twist correctly applied equipment in a manner that would result in heating or physical tension beyond its rating during Defined Operations.

3. 2. 3 Where Connection Equipment passes through support or management arrangements or structural openings or is placed against structures, it is to be suitably protected against damage having regard to the Defined Operations.

3. 2. 4 Connection Equipment routes are not to reduce the effectiveness of openings required for the safety of the ship, for instance bulkhead or deck penetrations, watertight or fire doors.

3. 2. 5 Connection Equipment support and management arrangements are to be able to operate satisfactorily without damage during the Defined Operations.

3. 2. 6 Means are to be provided for Connection Equipment to be readily and safely adjusted in response to tidal changes, and other movements that could lead to damage or failure of connections, during the Defined Operations.

3. 2. 7 Connections with external electrical power supply arrangements are to be designed to prevent damage to the ship structure or Connection Equipment cable reels, cranes and/or gantries as a result of the connections separating in the event of the ship leaving a berth inadvertently or as a result of high cable tension for other reasons. Evidence of compliance with this requirement is to be included in the submission required by Pt 7, Ch 13, 1.4 Plans and information 1.4.3 and is to identify Connection Equipment (weak points) that will be damaged, if any, in the event of

separation. Damage to connection cables, plugs and socket outlets or other identified equipment may be considered.

3. 2. 8 Connection Equipment cable reels, cranes and/or gantries used to manage, handle or adjust connection cables, plugs and/or socket-outlets, are to be designed and manufactured in accordance with applicable ACS Rules or a marine standard acceptable to ACS. A manufacturer's certificate verifying suitability for safe and effective operation for the Defined Operations and service profile is to be submitted.

3. 2. 9 The manufacturer's certificate referred to in Pt 7, Ch 13, 3.2 Connection Equipment 3.2.8 is to be in the English language and include the following information:

a. Design and manufacturing standard(s) used.
b. Materials used for construction of key components and their sources.
c. Details of the quality control system applied during design, manufacture and testing.
d. Details of any existing type approval or type testing.
e. Details of installation and testing recommendations.

The manufacturer is to have a recognised quality management system certified by an IACS member or a Notified Body.

3. 2. 10 Connection cubicle and connection equipment locations are to have warning notices placed in prominent positions to indicate the presence of moving equipment, electricity and high voltage as applicable.

3. 2. 11 Effective means are to be provided to prevent the accumulation of moisture and condensation within equipment enclosures. Failure of heaters and/or ventilation fans provided to satisfy this requirement is to activate an alarm at a machinery control station that is attended while connected to an external power supply. The installation of open deck enclosures for high voltage connections is to be minimised to that required for the Defined Operations; a technical justification, including proposed degree of protection ratings, is to be included in the submission required by Pt 7, Ch 13, 1.4 Plans and information 1.4.8.

3. 2. 12 Connection Equipment support and management arrangements are to ensure that the correctly applied equipment is kept clear of areas where they may be exposed to moisture or temperatures outside their rating.

3. 2. 13 Arrangements are to be provided for stowage of on-board equipment when not in use such that equipment:

- will not be exposed to environmental conditions outside its rating;
- can be stowed, stored and removed without damage; and
- does not present a hazard during normal ship operation.

Adapters, extensions and parts dismantled after use are also to be provided with stowage arrangements.

3. 3 Connection cables, plugs and socket-outlets

3. 3. 1 Plugs and socket-outlets for external electrical power supply connection points, including those for external control engineering arrangements, are to be designed constructed and tested in accordance with IEC 62613-1: *Plugs, socket-outlets and ship couplers for high-voltage shore connection systems (HVSC Systems) – Part 1: General requirements* or a relevant National Standard.

3. 3. 2 Plugs are to conform to applicable requirements that ensure compatibility with the intended socket-outlet type. Compatible plugs and socket-outlets are to be in accordance with IEC 62613-2: Pl*ugs, socket-outlets and ship couplers for high-voltage shore connection systems (HVSC-*

Systems) – Part 2*: Dimensional compatibility and interchangeability requirements for accessories to be used by various types of ships* or a relevant National Standard.

3. 3. 3 Type tests are to be carried out on power connection plug and socket-outlets and cables, in accordance with IEC 62613-1: *Plugs, socket-outlets and ship couplers for high-voltage shore connection systems (HVSC Systems) – Part 1: General requirements* and Annex A.3 of the IEC/ISO/IEEE 80005-1:2012: *Electrical installations in ships – Special features: High-voltage shore connection systems respectively* or a relevant National Standard, to verify design suitability for the intended application described in the Design Statement. Type test reports are to be submitted that include details of the standards, the tests conducted and their order and the acceptance criteria. Alternative proposals may be submitted for consideration.

3. 3. 4 Power connection plugs and socket-outlets are to be assigned with ratings based on testing in accordance with IEC 62613-1: *Plugs, socket-outlets and ship couplers for high-voltage shore connection systems (HVSC Systems) – Part 1: General requirements* or a relevant National Standard. Details are to be provided in the submission required by Pt 7, Ch 13, 1.4 Plans and information 1.4.5.

3. 3. 5 Power connection plugs and socket-outlets are to be located to minimise the potential of arc flash hazards and suitable warning notices are to be provided at locations along Connection Equipment routes, including power connection plugs and socket-outlets operational locations.

3. 3. 6 Connection Equipment power cables are to be Type Approved in accordance with ACS's *Type Approval System Test Specification Number 3* or, alternatively, surveyed by the Surveyors during manufacture and testing to assess compliance with Pt 7, Ch 13, 3.3 Connection cables, plugs and socket-outlets 3.3.3 and application of an acceptable quality management system, *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.4 Surveys 1.4.6. Connection equipment cables are to be installed so as to minimise the risk of short-circuit when correctly applied.

3. 4 Containers

3. 4. 1 Connection Equipment installed in removable containers is to satisfy the additional requirements of this sub- Section.

3. 4. 2 Containers are to be for the ship's exclusive use and are to be provided with a permanent notice indicating the ship name and IMO Ship Number.

3. 4. 3 Container locations are to be designated and identified in the plans required by Pt 7, Ch 13, 1.4 Plans and information 1.4.4 and provided with fixings that are suitable for the Defined Operations. Procedures for container fixing, use and movement are to be included in the Operating Manuals.

3. 4. 4 The container type is to be a steel, closed type, weatherproof construction sufficient to prevent damage during expected use, for example during loading and unloading.

3. 4. 5 Measures necessary to prevent movement of the container when the container has electrical cables connected are to be provided.

3. 4. 6 Suitable protection is to be provided to prevent damage to Connection Equipment at the container entry points.

3. 4. 7 Suitable safe access is to be provided to the container for the Defined Operations, inspection and maintenance.

3. 4. 8 Container entry points are to be provided with suitable sealing arrangements to prevent the ingress of water into the container.

3. 4. 9 Containers are to be provided with effective means of ventilation. Where a container ventilation fan is provided, alarms are to be provided in accordance with Pt 7, Ch 13, 3.2 Connection Equipment 3.2.11.

3. 5 High voltage in the presence of personnel

3. 5. 1 The Defined Operations are, as far as is practical, not to require personnel to be in the vicinity of high voltage equipment when it is energised.

3. 5. 2 For high voltage:

a. switchgear and controlgear assemblies;
b. cable reels, cranes and gantries; and
c. mounting enclosures for socket-outlets used to connect flexible cables to fixed connections;

arrangements are to be made to protect personnel in the event of gases, arc flash or vapours escaping under pressure as the result of arcing due to an internal fault. Where the Defined Operations require personnel to be in the vicinity of such equipment when it is energised, this may be achieved by an assembly that has been tested in accordance with Annex A of IEC 62271-200 and qualified for classification IAC (internal arc classification), or equivalent.

PART

7

CHAPTER **13 On-shore Power Supplies**

SECTION **4 Electrical System**

4. 1 Electrical Load Transfer

4. 1. 1 'Dead transfer' arrangements are to be provided that permit transfer between operation using ship sources of electrical power and an external electrical power supply by disconnecting one from the ship distribution system and then connecting the other to the dead system.

4. 1. 2 Additional arrangements for connecting ship sources of electrical power and an external electrical power supply in parallel temporarily to transfer load from one to the other only are permitted, provided these are in accordance with Pt 7, Ch 13, 4.1 Electrical Load Transfer 4.1.3 to Pt 7, Ch 13, 4.1 Electrical Load Transfer 4.1.9.

4. 1. 3 Means to automatically synchronise a ship source of electrical power with an external electrical power supply and connect them in parallel for load transfer when requested by operating staff are to be provided.

4. 1. 4 Means to automatically transfer load between a ship source of electrical power and an external electrical power supply following their connection in parallel, are to be provided. The load transfer is to be completed in as short a time as practicable without causing machinery or equipment failure or operation of protective devices and this time is to be used as the basis for defining the Transfer Time Limit required by Pt 7, Ch 13, 4.1 Electrical Load Transfer 4.1.5.

4. 1. 5 When transferring of load between ship sources of electrical power and an external electrical power supply exceeds a defined Transfer Time Limit then, arrangements are to be such that:

- the transfer is aborted;
- load is removed from the ship sources of electrical power or external electrical power supply that was intended to take the load; and then
- the Connection Circuit-Breaker is opened.

An alarm is to be provided at a machinery control station that is attended when connected to an external electrical power supply when the Transfer Time Limit is exceeded and is to indicate the return to previous operating conditions.

4. 1. 6 The Transfer Time Limit referred to in Pt 7, Ch 13, 4.1 Electrical Load Transfer 4.1.5 may be adjustable to match the ability of an external electrical power supply to accept and shed load. Setting of the Transfer Time Limit is to be demonstrated to the attending Surveyor at Surveys and Trials, *See* Pt 7, Ch 13, 6.1, General.

4. 1. 7 An external power supply may only be connected in parallel with a single ship source of electrical power. Arrangements are to be provided to ensure that this requirement is satisfied before and during parallel connection. Details of alternative proposals may be submitted for consideration.

4. 1. 8 Arrangements provided to adjust ship sources of electrical power to allow connection in parallel and transfer of load are not to cause machinery or equipment failure, operation of protective devices or damage under normal conditions or in the event of a failure.

4. 1. 9 Where load reductions are required to transfer load they are not to result in loss of essential services or the loss of availability of emergency services. Means are to be provided to readily make necessary load reductions and re-instate supplies following transfer.

4. 2 Capacity

4. 2. 1 Arrangements for operating from external supplies are to be sufficiently rated to supply the following:

- essential services normally required in port;
- emergency services;
- services required to ensure ready availability of non-operating main and auxiliary machinery;
- services required to prevent damage to cargo or stores; and
- the services required for the Defined Operations.

The schedule of loads required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.3 Documentation required for supporting evidence 1.3.3 is to incorporate operation when connected to an external electrical power supply.

4. 2. 2 The maximum electrical step load switched on or off is not to cause the power supply quality to exceed the parameters given in Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.8, Quality of power supplies or failure when connected to an external electrical power supply in accordance with the defined requirements, *See* Pt 7, Ch 13, 3.1 General 3.1.10.

4. 2. 3 Consideration is to be given to providing means to inhibit automatically the connection of large motors, or the connection of other large loads, that the arrangements are not rated to supply when connected to an external electrical power supply having the defined minimum apparent power or current capacity, *See* Pt 7, Ch 13, 3.1 General 3.1.10 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 6.9 Load management 6.9.4.

4. 3 Protection

4. 3. 1 Where an external electrical power supply is not arranged to operate in parallel with ship sources of electrical power, the connection to the external electrical power supply is to be provided with a Connection Circuit-Breaker arranged to open simultaneously, in the event of short-circuit, overload or undervoltage, all insulated poles.

4. 3. 2 Where an external electrical power supply is arranged to operate in parallel with ship sources of electrical power during load transfer, the connection to the external electrical power supply is to be provided with a Connection Circuit-Breaker arranged to open simultaneously, in the event of a short-circuit, an overload or an undervoltage, all insulated poles. This circuit-breaker is to be provided with reverse power protection with time delay, selected or set within the limits of 2% to 15% of full load to a value fixed in accordance with the rating defined in the Design Statement; a fall of 50% in the applied voltage is not to render the reverse power mechanism inoperative, although it may alter the amount of reverse power required to open the circuit breaker.

4. 3. 3 The electrical system, including short-circuit protective device rating, is to be suitable for the highest prospective fault level at the point of installation. The short-circuit current calculations required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.2 Documentation required for design review 1.2.6 are to identify the system state that would result in the highest prospective fault level. The highest prospective fault level may occur during parallel connection with an external power supply and the resulting combination of:

a. ship sources of electrical power, taking into account Pt 7, Ch 13, 4.1 Electrical Load Transfer 4.1.7; and
b. an external electrical power supply having the defined maximum permitted prospective fault level, *See* Pt 7, Ch 13, 4.1 Electrical Load Transfer 4.1.7.

Details of alternative proposals may be submitted for consideration.

4. 3. 4 The connection circuit is to be arranged such that contamination due to the products of arcing as a result of a fault in the Connection Circuit-Breaker enclosure on the external power supply side will not result in essential or emergency services not being available when supplied by ship sources of electrical power.

4. 3. 5 Initial connection of an external electrical power supply to the ship switchboards or converter equipment to connect to ship loads is to be arranged to be made by closing of the Connection Circuit-Breaker only.

4. 3. 6 Converter equipment used to connect an external electrical power supply to the ship electrical system is to ensure that a supply that would result in damage is not applied to the connected ship electrical systems in the event of a failure.

4. 3. 7 The voltage and time delay settings of the Connection Circuit-Breaker undervoltage release mechanism(s) are to be selected to ensure that the discriminative action required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 6.1 General 6.1.1 is maintained.

4. 3. 8 Means are to be provided to prevent closure of the Connection Circuit-Breaker when a connected external electrical power supply has a different phase rotation or has a voltage or frequency that does not match the ship electrical system rating within the tolerances defined by Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.8 Quality of power supplies 1.8.2 or Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.8 Quality of power supplies 1.8.5. Signals are to be provided, where necessary, to allow comparison with ship electrical system characteristics.

4. 3. 9 Connection power circuits are to be provided with protection against earth faults in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 6.4, Protection against earth faults.

4. 4 Interlocking and synchronising arrangements

4. 4. 1 External electrical power supply connections are to be provided with instruments and devices on board equivalent to those required for alternating current generators by Pt 6, Ch 2, 7.11 Instruments for alternating current generators 7.11.1 where synchronising is not provided, or by Pt 6, Ch 2, 7.11 Instruments for alternating current generators 7.11.2 to Pt 6, Ch 2, 7.11 Instruments for alternating current generators 7.11.3 where synchronising for load transfer is provided. *See also* Pt 6, Ch 2, 7.11, Instruments for alternating current generators and Pt 6, Ch 2, 7.12 Instrument scales.

4. 4. 2 Means are to be provided to ensure that a source of electrical power or electrical power supply can only be connected to other live parts when synchronised. *See also* Pt 7, Ch 13, 4.1 Electrical Load Transfer 4.1.2 for temporary parallel connection for load transfer.

4. 4. 3 The arrangements are to prevent Connection Equipment power conductors being made live by connecting to the ship electrical system.

4. 4. 4 The simultaneous connection of a ship source of electrical power and external electrical power supply to the same dead part of the electrical system is to be prevented.

4. 4. 5 For high-voltage connections, suitable means are to be provided to earth the connection power circuit so that it is discharged and so maintained that it is safe to touch.

4. 4. 6 Means provided to connect a connection power circuit to earth are to be arranged such that the circuit may only be earthed when it is isolated.

4. 4. 7 Interlocking arrangements are to be provided to prevent the connection of a high-voltage external power supply to a switchboard connected to earth using the means required by Pt 6, Ch 2, 7.8 Earthing of high-voltage switchboards.

4. 5 Ship power restoration

4. 5. 1 When the ship main source of electrical power is shutdown and failure of the connected external electrical power supply occurs, the Connection Circuit-Breaker is to be arranged to automatically open followed by:

a. connection of the emergency source of electrical power to emergency services in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 3.3 Emergency source of electrical power in passenger ships 3.3.1 or Pt 6, Ch 2, 3.4 Emergency source of electrical power in cargo ships 3.4.1 as applicable; and

b. automatic connection of the transitional source of electrical power to emergency services in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 2, 3.3 Emergency source of electrical power in passenger ships 3.3.1 or Pt 6, Ch 2, 3.4 Emergency source of electrical power in cargo ships 3.4.1 as applicable; and

c. automatic starting and connecting to the main switchboard of the main source of electrical power and automatic sequential restarting of essential services, in as short a time as is practicable. *See also* Pt 7, Ch 13, 2.1 General requirements 2.1.3 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 2.2 Number and rating of generators and converting equipment 2.2.3.

Failures include loss of power, disconnection, phase failure and quality of supply outside the tolerances given in Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.8 Quality of power supplies 1.8.2 or Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.8 Quality of power supplies 1.8.5.

4. 5. 2 An alarm is to be provided at a machinery control station that is attended when connected to an external electrical power supply to indicate activation of the automatic power supply failure response required by Pt 7, Ch 13, 4.5 Ship power restoration 4.5.1. The alarm is to indicate the failure that caused the activation.

4. 5. 3 The automatic power supply failure response required by Pt 7, Ch 13, 4.5 Ship power restoration 4.5.1 is to be inhibited during the 'dead transfer' required by Pt 7, Ch 13, 4.1 Electrical Load Transfer 4.1.1 but arrangements are to permit personnel to readily revert to operation from ship sources of electrical power if the 'dead transfer' to the external electrical power supply is not completed.

PART

7

CHAPTER **13 On-shore Power Supplies**

SECTION **5 Control and monitoring**

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 Control engineering arrangements are to be in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems, as applicable. The connection of, and the electrical load transfer to and from, an external electrical power supply are only to be controlled on board using shipboard arrangements.

5. 1. 2 External control of ship equipment may only be provided when in accordance with Pt 7, Ch 13, 5.1 General 5.1.5. Otherwise, external arrangements may be used to send requests for action to ship personnel for consideration.

5. 1. 3 Integration or connection with external, control, alarm and safety systems is to be 'fail-safe'.

5. 1. 4 The effects of failure of control, alarm and safety system and data communication link connections are to be documented along with resulting failure responses in the submission required by Pt 7, Ch 13, 1.4 Plans and information 1.4.6.

5. 1. 5 Details of proposals that would involve external control of ship equipment to respond to potentially hazardous situations detected externally are to be submitted for consideration. Provided that the arrangements are considered to be in accordance with the provisions of an acceptable and relevant standard, the following external control functions may be permitted:

- initiation of load reductions;
- initiation of electrical load transfer to ship sources of electrical power; and
- initiation of Emergency Shutdown.

5. 1. 6 The connection power circuit is to be isolated, and for high-voltage connections connected to earth so that it is discharged and so maintained that it is safe to touch, until the connections necessary for safe and effective operation are correctly established, including control, alarm and safety system and data communication link connections.

5. 1. 7 Following the correct establishment of the necessary connections in accordance with Pt 7, Ch 13, 5.1 General 5.1.6:

- where applicable, the connection power circuit may be disconnected from earth; and arranged such that only then
- may the request to make the external power supply connection points live described in Pt 7, Ch 13, 5.1 General 5.1.8 be sent.

5. 1. 8 Ship control system arrangements are to be provided to request the external electrical power supply conductors to be:

- where applicable, disconnected from earth; and then
- made live up to the connection points.

5. 1. 9 An alarm is to be provided at a machinery control station that is attended when connected to an external electrical power supply upon failure of arrangements required to maintain ready availability in accordance with Pt 7, Ch 13, 2.1 General requirements 2.1.3 (for example pre-heating).

5. 1. 10 Additional alarms with their associated safeguards are indicated in . These are in addition to those required by other Parts of the Rules.

5. 1. 11 Means are to be provided to allow testing of control, alarm and safety system connections with external arrangements, including operation of Emergency Shutdown facilities, before electrical connection to an external power supply.

5. 1. 12 If, depending upon the in-port shipboard work organisation, no machinery control stations are continuously attended while connected to an external power supply, then alarm transfer arrangements that activate an audible indication to warn relevant duty personnel of alarm initiation may be accepted. An audible warning from any portable devices is to be provided in the event of loss of the wireless link.

5. 2 Connection Equipment control and monitoring

5. 2. 1 Connection Equipment is to be capable of unattended operation under normal operating conditions after correct application of the connection. Remote indication of active ship equipment faults at a machinery control station that is attended when connected to an external electrical power supply is to be provided. Details of arrangements that involve periodic attendance to inspect and adjust Connection Equipment may be submitted for consideration.

5. 2. 2 A control station is to be provided locally to Connection Equipment cable reel, cranes and gantries that permits identification of faults and permits safe and effective supervision and control of this equipment in the fore*See*able environmental conditions.

5. 2. 3 A fixed means of two-way voice communication with a machinery control station that is attended when connected to an external electrical power supply is to be provided at the control station required by Pt 7, Ch 13, 5.2 Connection Equipment control and monitoring 5.2.2.

Table 13. 5. 1: Additional alarms and associated safeguards

Item	Alarm	Note
Presence of voltage on connections		Indicators in accordance with Pt 7, Ch 13, 3.1 General 3.1.9.
Transfer of load	Time limit exceeded	Return to previous operating state to be indicated, *See* Pt 7, Ch 13, 4.1 Electrical Load Transfer 4.1.5.
Ship power restoration	Activation	*See* Pt 7, Ch 13, 4.5 Ship power restoration 4.5.2.
Arrangements to ensure main and auxiliary machinery availability	Failure	When shut down. *See* Pt 7, Ch 13, 5.1 General 5.1.9.
Applied connection equipment status	Changed	Indication to be provided also. *See* Pt 7, Ch 13, 5.2 Connection Equipment control and monitoring 5.2.4 and Pt 7, Ch 13, 5.2 Connection Equipment control and monitoring 5.2.5.
Connection equipment	Close proximity to water level	*See* Pt 7, Ch 13, 5.2 Connection Equipment control and monitoring 5.2.6
Heaters and/or ventilation fans	Failure	*See* Pt 7, Ch 13, 3.2 Connection Equipment 3.2.11 and Pt 7, Ch 13, 3.4 Containers 3.4.9

Connection equipment tension	High	Emergency Shut-Down to be activated. *See* Pt 7, Ch 13, 5.3 Emergency Shutdown 5.3.11.
Plug connectors	Withdrawal	
Earth connection, if required. *See* Pt 7, Ch 13, 5.3 Emergency Shutdown 5.3.9	Loss of continuity	
Manual disconnection	Activation	
Plug and socket-outlet, if required. *See* Pt 7, Ch 13, 5.3 Emergency Shutdown 5.3.6	Not in locked position	
Switchgear enclosure mounted socket-outlets	Arc fault detection	

5. 2. 4 The control station required by Pt 7, Ch 13, 5.2 Connection Equipment control and monitoring 5.2.2 is to be provided with a means for operators to:

- select manual control; or
- lock equipment in position; or
- where provided, select automatic adjustment.

This status is to be indicated remotely at a machinery control station that is attended when connected to an external electrical power supply.

5. 2. 5 When the equipment status selection referred to in Pt 7, Ch 13, 5.2 Connection Equipment control and monitoring 5.2.4 is changed whilst an external electrical power supply is connected, an alarm is to be activated at a machinery control station that is attended when connected to an external electrical power supply.

5. 2. 6 Where correctly applied connection equipment is not protected from submersion in the water between the ship and shore (e.g. submersible equipment, equipment routing or slack cable prevention by torque control), an alarm is to be provided at a machinery control station that is attended when connected to an external electrical power supply when Connection Equipment approaches a situation where it may be submerged in the water between the ship and shore, for instance due to tidal changes. The time between alarm initiation and possible exposure to this water is to be sufficient to allow the equipment to be attended and adjusted prior to exposure to water.

5. 3 Emergency Shutdown

5. 3. 1 The requirements of this sub-Section apply to arrangements for the emergency disconnection of live electrical power from the connection to an external electrical power supply.

5. 3. 2 Emergency Shutdown facilities are to be provided that, when activated, will instantaneously:

- isolate the connection from ship electrical power supplies; and
- request isolation of the external electrical power supply connection points.

5. 3. 3 High-voltage Connection Equipment is to be either:

a. provided with permanent arrangements for manual discharging and routed to prevent personnel access to live connection cables and connection points by barriers and/or adequate distance(s) under expected operating conditions; or

b. automatically discharged so that it is safe to touch with immediate initiation of switching device closure following the isolation from ship and shore electrical power supplies required by Pt 7, Ch 13, 5.3 Emergency Shutdown 5.3.2.

5. 3. 4 For ships that are intended to connect in ports where Connection Equipment may move into a hazardous area associated with the terminal or port area as a result of the ship inadvertently leaving the berthed position (slipping/ breaking of moorings, etc.), this condition is to be included in the Design Statement. The arrangements are to comply with Pt 7, Ch 13, 5.3 Emergency Shutdown 5.3.3.b and, additionally, other electrically powered connection equipment that is not intrinsically safe is to be arranged for automatic isolation.

5. 3. 5 Means are to be provided to detect or predict tension in the external electrical power supply connection cable that activate the Emergency Shutdown facilities described in Pt 7, Ch 13, 5.3 Emergency Shutdown 5.3.2 before damage occurs. Where alternative arrangements to tension detection are proposed (automatic break-away release, connectors with shear bolts and pilot lines, connection with ship/shore Emergency Shutdown system, etc.), details are to be submitted for consideration.

5. 3. 6 To detect and react to the withdrawal of plugs from socketoutlets while power supply connections are live, the Emergency Shutdown facilities described in Pt 7, Ch 13, 5.3 Emergency Shutdown 5.3.2 are to be activated before the necessary degree of protection is no longer achieved or power connections are broken by the removal of a plug from a connected socket-outlet, including in-line connections.

5. 3. 7 For high-voltage connection points on board where the means of locking together plugs and socket-outlets required by Pt 7, Ch 13, 3.3 Connection cables, plugs and socket-outlets 3.3.4 are not interlocked to prevent removal from the locked position when the Connection Equipment power connections are not discharged so that they are safe to touch, the Emergency Shutdown facilities described in Pt 7, Ch 13, 5.3 Emergency Shutdown 5.3.2 are to be activated when connected plugs are moved from the locked position. Consideration may be given to relaxing this requirement when evidence is submitted which demonstrates that appropriate controls and procedures acceptable to ACS are in place to control personnel access plugs and socket-outlets.

5. 3. 8 Where connection power plugs are connected to socket-outlets mounted on a switchgear enclosure, arrangements are to be provided to activate the Emergency Shutdown facilities described in Pt 7, Ch 13, 5.3 Emergency Shutdown 5.3.2 in as short a time as practicable in the event of an arc occurring in the enclosure at the rear of the socket-outlets.

5. 3. 9 Where Pt 7, Ch 13, 3.1 General 3.1.7.b applies, the Emergency Shutdown facilities described in Pt 7, Ch 13, 5.3 Emergency Shutdown 5.3.2 are to be activated in the event of loss of earth connection continuity being detected.

5. 3. 10 Means to manually activate the Emergency Shutdown facilities described in Pt 7, Ch 13, 5.3 Emergency Shutdown 5.3.2 are to be provided at:

- a machinery control station that is attended when connected to an external electrical power supply;
- in close proximity to the connection cubicle; and
- at the switchboard where the fixed cable from the shore connection cubicle are received.

Additional manual activation facilities may also be provided at other locations where it is considered necessary. The means of activation are to be visible and prominent, prevent inadvertent operation and require a manual action to reset.

5. 3. 11 An alarm to indicate activation of the Emergency Shutdown is to be provided at a machinery control station that is attended when connected to an external electrical power supply. The alarm is to indicate the cause of the activation. For power supply restoration, *See* Pt 7, Ch 13, 4.5 Ship power restoration 4.5.1 to Pt 7, Ch 13, 4.5 Ship power restoration 4.5.3.

PART

7

CHAPTER **13 On-shore Power Supplies**

SECTION **6 Testing, trials and surveys**

6. 1 General

6. 1. 1 The testing and trials required by Pt 7, Ch 13, 6.1 General 6.1.2 to Pt 7, Ch 13, 6.1 General 6.1.5 are to be successfully completed to the Surveyor's satisfaction before **OPS** notation may be assigned. Where appropriate test facilities cannot be provided, trials are likely to require the additional co-operation of a port facility with a suitable external electrical power supply and the ability to operate the defined services to be supplied during these trials and allow the testing described to be conducted.

6. 1. 2 Electrical and control engineering equipment is to be surveyed at manufacturer's works and undergo survey and operational trials on board in accordance with the approved test schedules and applicable testing requirements in Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems and Pt 6, Ch 2 Electrical Engineering.

6. 1. 3 In addition to Pt 7, Ch 13, 6.1 General 6.1.2, the following Connection Equipment, where applicable, is to be surveyed by the Surveyors during manufacture and testing:

- filters;
- converters; and
- slip ring assemblies.

See also Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.4 Surveys 1.4.6.

6. 1. 4 Cable reels, cranes and/or gantry drives for Connection Equipment are to be surveyed and tested in accordance with applicable ACS Rules and Pt 7, Ch 13, 3.2 Connection Equipment 3.2.9.e.

6. 1. 5 Trials are to be conducted when connected to a compatible external electrical power supply in accordance with Pt 7, Ch 13, 3.1 General 3.1.10 to demonstrate to the attending Surveyor that the Rules have been complied with in respect of:

a. operation of connection management arrangements;
b. trials on cable lifting appliances (for example cable reels or cranes) are to be conducted that demonstrate suitability for the maximum mechanical load and duty required by the Defined Operations within the service profile contained in the Design Statement, including connection of extensions or adapters;
c. satisfactory performance of the connection and Connection Equipment throughout the Defined Operations, including a run with the defined services to be supplied operational;
d. temperature of electrical joints, connections, circuitbreakers and fuses;
e. the operation of electrical load transfer arrangements (including Transfer Time Limit setting), electrical system protection and interlocking devices, Emergency Shutdown arrangements and other safety devices and ship power restoration;
f. where acceptable type-test evidence is not submitted, connection break-away, *See* Pt 7, Ch 13, 3.2 Connection Equipment 3.2.7;

g. voltage regulation when the maximum load is suddenly thrown off and when starting the largest motor connected to the system;
h. where more than one external power supply connection can be operated in parallel, satisfactory load sharing at loads up to normal working load; and
i. voltage drop is to be measured, where necessary, to verify that this is not in excess of that specified in Pt 6, Ch 2, 1.8, Quality of power supplies.

6. 1. 6 Arrangements are to be:

- examined at Annual Survey; and
- examined and functionally tested whilst connected to an external electrical power supply during the Complete Surveys of machinery or, where this is not practical, within 12 months of the due date of the Complete Surveys of machinery.

This is to include examination of Connection Equipment.

PART

7

CHAPTER **14** **Requirements for Machinery and Engineering Systems of Unconventional Design**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**Requirements for machinery and engineering systems of unconventional design**		**3165**
	1. 1	General - Scope and objectives	3165
	1. 2	Information to be submitted	3165
	1. 3	Project Management	3166
	1. 4	Requirements definition	3167
	1. 5	Quality assurance	3167
	1. 6	Design definition	3168
	1. 7	Risk management	3168
	1. 8	Configuration management	3169
	1. 9	Verification	3170
	1. 10	Integration	3170
	1. 11	Validation (certification and survey)	3170

PART

7

CHAPTER 14 **Requirements for Machinery and Engineering Systems of Unconventional Design**

SECTION 1 **Requirements for machinery and engineering systems of unconventional design**

1. 1 General - Scope and objectives

1. 1. 1 Consistent with the aims of the IMO guidelines for Formal Safety Assessment (MSC-MEPC. 2/Circ.12), the requirements of this Section aim to ensure that risks to maritime safety and the environment, stemming from the introduction of machinery or engineering systems of unconventional design, are addressed insofar as they affect the objectives of classification.

1. 1. 2 The requirements of this section are to be satisfied where:

a. machinery is required to be constructed, installed and tested in accordance with ACS Rules and Regulations and for which the corresponding machinery class notation is to be assigned (*See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.4 Class notations (machinery)), and,

b. the machinery and engineering systems are considered by ACS to be of an unconventional design and which, as a result, are not directly addressed by ACS's extant Rules and Regulations.

1. 1. 3 It is to be noted that as well as the requirements of this section, the general requirements of ACS's Rules and Regulations are also to be satisfied as far as they are applicable.

1. 1. 4 Compliance with ISO15288 *Systems Engineering - System Life Cycle Processes* or an acceptable equivalent national standard may be accepted as meeting the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 14, 1.3 Project Managementto Pt 7, Ch 14, 1.11 Validation (certification and survey).

1. 2 Information to be submitted

1. 2. 1 Information is to be submitted for assessment of compliance with the general requirements of ACS's Rules and Regulations, including the general requirements for:

a. Machinery, *See* Pt 5, Ch 1 General Requirements for the Design and Construction of Machinery.

b. Steam raising plant and pressure vessels, *See* Pt 5, Ch 10 Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels.

c. Machinery and ship piping systems, *See* Pt 5, Ch 12 Piping Design Requirementsto Pt 5, Ch 14 Machinery Piping Systems.

d. Control engineering, *See* Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems.

e. Electrical engineering *See* Pt 6, Ch 2 Electrical Engineering.

f. Materials, *See* Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials.

1. 2. 2 In addition to the information identified in Pt 7, Ch 14, 1.2 Information to be submitted 1.2.1, the information described in Pt 7, Ch 14, 1.2 Information to be submitted 1.2.3 and Pt 7, Ch 14, 1.2 Information to be submitted 1.2.4 is also to be submitted for consideration.

1. 2. 3 General description detailing the extent of the machinery or engineering system, the shipboard services it is to provide, its operating principles, and its functionality and capability when operating in the environment to which it is likely to be exposed under both normal and fore*See*able abnormal conditions. The general description is to be supported by the following information as applicable:

a. System block diagram.
b. Piping and instrumentation diagrams.
c. Description of operating modes, including: Start-up, shut-down, automatic, reversionary, manual and emergency.
d. Description of safety related arrangements, including: Safeguards, automatic safety systems and interfaces with ships safety systems.
e. Description of connections to other shipboard machinery, equipment and systems, including: Electrical, mechanical, fluids and automation.
f. Plans of physical arrangements, including: Location, operational access and maintenance access.
g. Operating manuals, including:
Instructions for start-up, operation, shut-down, instructions for maintenance, instructions for adjustments to the performance and functionality and details of risk mitigation arrangements.
h. Maintenance manuals, including:
Instructions for routine maintenance, repair following failure, disposal of components and recommended spares inventory.

1. 2. 4 Project process documentation including:

a. Project Management Plan, *See* Pt 7, Ch 14, 1.3 Project Management.
b. Requirements Definition Document, *See* Pt 7, Ch 14, 1.4 Requirements definition.
c. Quality Assurance Plan, *See* Pt 7, Ch 14, 1.5 Quality assurance.
d. Design Definition Document, *See* Pt 7, Ch 14, 1.6 Design definition.
e. Risk Management Plan, *See* Pt 7, Ch 14, 1.7 Risk management.
f. Configuration Management Plan, *See* Pt 7, Ch 14, 1.8 Configuration management.
g. Verification Plan, *See* Pt 7, Ch 14, 1.9 Verification.
h. Integration Plan, *See* Pt 7, Ch 14, 1.10 Integration.
i. Validation Plan, certification and survey, *See* Pt 7, Ch 14, 1.11 Validation (certification and survey).

1. 3 Project Management

1. 3. 1 A project management procedure is to be established in order to define and manage the key project processes. The project processes are to include the processes described in Pt 7, Ch 14, 1.4 Requirements definition to Pt 7, Ch 14, 1.11 Validation (certification and survey).

1. 3. 2 For the entire project, and each of the processes within the project, the project management procedure is to define the following:

a. Activities to be carried out.
b. Required inputs and outputs.
c. Roles of key personnel.
d. Responsibilities of key personnel.
e. Competence of key personnel.

f. Schedules for the activities.

1. 4 Requirements definition

1. 4. 1 A requirements definition procedure is to be established in order to define the functional behaviour and performance of the machinery or engineering system required by individual stakeholders, in the environments to which the machinery or engineering system is likely to be exposed under both normal and fore*See*able emergency conditions.

1. 4. 2 The procedure is to take account of requirements resulting from key stakeholders, including:

a. Ship's owner.
b. Ship's operator.
c. Ship's crew.
d. Shipyard.
e. Systems integrator.
f. Designers.
g. Maintenance personnel
h. Surveyors
i. Manufacturers and suppliers.
j. National Administration.
k. ACS.

1. 4. 3 The procedure is to take account of requirements resulting from the following influences:

a. Ship operations, including:
Underway, manoeuvring, pilotage, docking, alongside and training exercises.
b. Ship conditions, including:
Normal operation, abnormal operation, blackout, deadship, fire in a single compartment and flooding of a single compartment.
c. Environmental conditions, including:
Temperature, humidity, water spray, salt mist, vibration, shock, inclination, electrical fields and magnetic fields.
d. Applicable provisions, including:
Statutory legislation, classification requirements, international standards, national standards and codes of practice.
e. Expected users, including:
Multi-national users with a range of national languages and cultures, fatigued users, users without dedicated training, and maintenance and survey personnel.
f. Design, construction and operational constraints, including:
Effect of particular design decisions or component choices on other aspects of design, risk and production engineering compromises, verification, integration and validation considerations, maintenance and disposal, and changes in use.

1. 4. 4 The procedure is to specify the functional behaviour and performance requirements and is to identify the source of the requirements.

1. 5 Quality assurance

1. 5. 1 A quality assurance procedure is to be established in order to ensure that the quality of the machinery or engineering system is in accordance with a defined quality management system.

1. 5. 2 The procedure is to define the specific quality controls to be applied during the project in order to satisfy the requirements of the quality management system.

1. 5. 3 The quality management system is to satisfy the requirements of ISO9001:2000 *Quality management systems – Requirements*, or an equivalent acceptable National Standard.

1. 6 Design definition

1. 6. 1 A design definition procedure is to be established in order to define the requirements for the design of machinery or an engineering system which satisfies stakeholder requirements, quality assurance requirements and complies with basic internationally recognised design requirements for safety and functionality.

1. 6. 2 The procedure is to ensure that the design of the machinery or engineering system satisfies:

a. Statutory legislation.
b. ACS's requirements.
c. International Standards and Codes of Practice where relevant.

1. 6. 3 The procedure is to take account of stakeholder requirements, *See* Pt 7, Ch 14, 1.4 Requirements definition.

1. 6. 4 The procedure is to take account of quality assurance requirements, *See* Pt 7, Ch 14, 1.5 Quality assurance.

1. 6. 5 The procedure is to ensure that the requirements for the design of major components and subsystems of the machinery or engineering system can be verified before and after integration.

1. 6. 6 The procedure is to specify the design requirements and is to identify the source of the requirements.

1. 6. 7 Any deviations from stakeholder requirements are to be identified, justified and accepted by the originating stakeholder.

1. 7 Risk management

1. 7. 1 A risk management procedure is to be established in order to ensure that any risks stemming from the introduction of the machinery or engineering system are addressed, in particular risks affecting:

a. The structural strength and integrity of the ship's hull.
b. The safety of shipboard machinery and engineering systems.
c. The safety of shipboard personnel.
d. The reliability of essential and emergency machinery and engineering systems.
e. The environment.

1. 7. 2 The procedure is to consider the hazards associated with installation, operation, maintenance and disposal, both with the machinery or engineering system functioning correctly and following any reasonably fore*See*able failure.

1. 7. 3 The procedure is to take account of stakeholder requirements, *See* Pt 7, Ch 14, 1.4 Requirements definition.

1. 7. 4 The procedure is to take account of design requirements, *See* Pt 7, Ch 14, 1.6 Design definition.

1. 7. 5 The procedure is to ensure that hazards are identified using acceptable and recognised hazard identification techniques, and that the effects of the following influences are considered:

a. Ship operations, including:
Underway, manoeuvring, pilotage, docking, alongside and maintenance, commissioning and trials.
b. Ship conditions, including:

Normal operation, blackout, dead-ship, fire in a single compartment and flooding of a single compartment.

c. Modes of operation, including:
Start-up, running, shut-down, automatic, reversionary, manual and emergency.

d. Environmental conditions, including:
Temperature, humidity, water spray, salt mist, vibration, shock, inclination, electrical fields and magnetic fields.

e. Dependencies, including:
Power, fuel, air, cooling, heating, data and human input.

f. Environmental impact, including:
Emissions to air, discharges to water, noise and waste products.

g. Failures, including:
Human error, supply failure, system, machinery, equipment and component failure, random, systematic and common cause failures.

1. 7. 6 The procedure is to ensure that risks are analysed using acceptable and recognised risk analysis techniques and that the following effects are considered:

a. Local effects:
Loss of function, component damage, fire, explosion, electric shock, harmful releases and hazardous releases.

b. End effects on:
Services essential to the safety of the ship, services essential to the safety of shipboard personnel and services essential to the protection of the environment.

1. 7. 7 The procedure is to ensure that risks are eliminated wherever possible. Risks which cannot be eliminated are to be mitigated as necessary.

1. 7. 8 Details of risks, and the means by which they are mitigated, are to be included in the operating manual, *See* Pt 7, Ch 14, 1.2 Information to be submitted 1.2.3.

1. 8 Configuration management

1. 8. 1 A configuration management procedure is to be established in order to ensure traceability of the configuration of the machinery or engineering system, its subsystems and its components.

1. 8. 2 The procedure is to identify items essential for the safety or operation of the machinery or engineering system (configuration control items) which could fore*See*ably be changed during the lifetime of the machinery or engineering system, including:

a. Documentation.
b. Software.
c. Sensors.
d. Actuators.
e. Instrumentation.
f. Valves.
g. Pumps

1. 8. 3 The procedure is to take account of the design requirements, *See* Pt 7, Ch 14, 1.6 Design definition.

1. 8. 4 The procedure is to include items used to mitigate risks, *See* Pt 7, Ch 14, 1.7 Risk management.

1. 8. 5 The procedure is to ensure that any changes to configuration control items are:

a. Identified.
b. Recorded.

c. Evaluated.
d. Approved.
e. Incorporated.
f. Verified.

1. 9 Verification

1. 9. 1 A verification procedure is to be established in order to ensure that subsystems and major components of the machinery or engineering system satisfy their design requirements.

1. 9. 2 The procedure is to verify design requirements, *See* Pt 7, Ch 14, 1.6 Design definition.

1. 9. 3 The procedure is to identify the requirements to be verified, the means by which they are to be verified, and the points in the project at which verification is to be carried out.

1. 9. 4 The procedure is to be based on one or a combination of the following activities as appropriate:

a. Design review.
b. Product inspection.
c. Process audit.
d. Product testing.

1. 10 Integration

1. 10. 1 An integration procedure is to be established in order to ensure that the machinery or engineering system is assembled in a sequence which allows verification of individual subsystems and major components following integration in advance of validating the entire machinery or engineering system.

1. 10. 2 The procedure is to take account of the verification requirements, *See* Pt 7, Ch 14, 1.9 Verification.

1. 10. 3 The procedure is to identify the subsystems and major components, the sequence in which they are to be integrated, the points in the project at which integration is to be carried out, and the points in the project at which verification is to be carried out.

1. 11 Validation (certification and survey)

1. 11. 1 A validation procedure is to be established in order to ensure the functional behaviour and performance of the machinery or engineering system meets with its functional and performance requirements.

1. 11. 2 The procedure is to validate stakeholder requirements, *See* Pt 7, Ch 14, 1.4 Requirements definition.

1. 11. 3 The procedure is to validate arrangements required to mitigate risks, *See* Pt 7, Ch 14, 1.7 Risk management.

1. 11. 4 The procedure is to validate the traceability of the configuration control items, *See* Pt 7, Ch 14, 1.8 Configuration management.

1. 11. 5 The procedure is to identify the requirements to be validated, the means by which they are be validated and the points in the project at which validation is to be carried out, including:

a. Factory acceptance testing.
b. Integration testing.
c. Commissioning.
d. Sea trials.

e. Survey.

PART

7

CHAPTER 15 Refrigeration Systems and Equipment Serving Provision Stores and Air-Conditioning Installations

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**General requirements**		**3175**
	1. 1	General	3175
	1. 2	lans and information	3175
SECTION 2	**Construction and installation**		**3177**
	2. 1	Materials	3177
	2. 2	Equipment – Selection and installation	3177
	2. 3	Valves and relief devices	3178
	2. 4	Refrigerant systems	3178
	2. 5	Air handling unit(s) (AHUs) for air-conditioning systems	3179
	2. 6	Air coolers and cooling grids for provision store refrigeration systems	3179
	2. 7	Design pressures	3179
	2. 8	Insulation materials	3180
	2. 9	Manufacture and certification	3181
SECTION 3	**Refrigerating machinery and refrigerant storage compartment arrangements**		**3182**
	3. 1	General	3182
	3. 2	Gas storage compartments	3182
	3. 3	Pressure testing at manufacturers' works	3183
	3. 4	Pressure test after installation on board ship	3183
SECTION 4	**Refrigerant detection systems**		**3184**
	4. 1	General	3184
SECTION 5	**Control and monitoring and electrical power arrangements**		**3185**
	5. 1	General	3185
SECTION 6	**Personnel safety equipment and systems**		**3187**

6. 1 Personnel safety equipment 3187
6. 2 Personnel warning systems 3187
SECTION 7 Testing and trials 3189
7. 1 Testing 3189
7. 2 Trials 3189

PART

7

CHAPTER 15 Refrigeration Systems and Equipment Serving Provision Stores and Air-Conditioning Installations

LIST OF TABLES

Table 15. 2. 1: Design pressure limits 3180
Table 15. 3. 1: Test pressure 3183

PART

7

CHAPTER 15 Refrigeration Systems and Equipment Serving Provision Stores and Air-Conditioning Installations

SECTION 1 General requirements

1. 1 General

1. 1. 1 This Chapter states the requirements for ships having centralised refrigeration systems, designed to reject heat from refrigerated stores or from the air-conditioning and ventilation arrangements fitted to both passenger and crew accommodation spaces and are in addition to the relevant requirements of Pt 5 Main and Auxiliary Machinery and Pt 6 Control, Electrical, Refrigeration and Fire.

1. 1. 2 The requirements, which are optional, cover arrangements, equipment, and systems necessary for provision stores and air-conditioning arrangements as defined in Pt 7, Ch 15, 1.1 General 1.1.3 and Pt 7, Ch 15, 1.1 General 1.1.4.

1. 1. 3 The refrigeration system is to include the refrigeration compressor(s), condenser(s), evaporator(s), direct expansion air handling and fan coil units, interconnecting primary refrigerant piping system and fittings.

Note For the purpose of these Rules, the term primary refrigerant system, unless otherwise stated, applies to primary refrigerant systems and secondary refrigerant systems containing volatile refrigerants.

1. 1. 4 These requirements are intended to mitigate risks associated with the safety of refrigeration and air-conditioning machinery, and do not cover air distribution ductwork, chilled water systems or the calculation and verification of air flow rates and cooling loads within the air conditioned or refrigerated spaces. The method used to calculate the capacity of the air-conditioning refrigeration equipment is the responsibility of the Shipbuilder and Owner and should be in accordance with a recognised code or standard such as ISO 7547:2002 *Ships and marine technology – Air-conditioning and ventilation of accommodation spaces – Design conditions and basis of calculations* or, ASHRAE 26-1996(RA2006) *Mechanical Refrigeration and Air-Conditioning Installations Aboard Ship*.

1. 1. 5 Ships complying with the applicable requirements of this Chapter will be eligible for the optional machinery class notation **RPA** (Refrigeration Machinery for Provision Stores and Air-conditioning).

1. 2 lans and information

1. 2. 1 The following plans and particulars, as applicable, and any others which may be specially requested for the refrigerating plant and systems, are to be submitted in triplicate for approval, before construction is commenced:

a. Schematic plans, including full particulars of piping and instrumentations, for:
   i. primary and secondary refrigerant systems containing a volatile fluid;
   ii. air cooler defrosting arrangements; and
   iii. condenser cooling water systems.
b. Detailed dimensioned plans and material specifications for:
   i. reciprocating compressor crankshaft and crankcase, where exposed to refrigerant pressure;
   ii. rotary-type compressor rotors and casing;
   iii. condensers, both shell and tube, and plate type;
   iv. evaporators, both shell and tube, and plate type;
   v. air coolers or arrangement of air cooling pipe grids and construction method;
   vi. liquid receivers;
   vii. oil separators; and
   viii. any other pressure vessels or heat exchangers containing primary refrigerants, *See* Pt 5, Ch 11, 6.1 General.
c. General arrangement of refrigerating machinery compartments in elevation and plan, showing location and arrangement of the plant, ventilation details and location of temperature sensors and refrigerant vapour detectors.
d. Details of automatic controls, alarms and safety systems, *See* Pt 6, Ch 1, 1 General requirements.
e. Details of primary refrigerant level indicators.
f. Capacity calculations for pressure relief valves and/or bursting discs, and inlet and discharge pipework pressure drop calculations.
g. Programme of tests to be conducted on completion of the installation, *See* Pt 7, Ch 15, 7 Testing and trials.

1. 2. 2 In addition to the applicable requirements detailed in Pt 7, Ch 15, 1.2 Plans and information 1.2.1, the following information is also to be submitted for air-conditioning refrigeration equipment:
a. Details of direct expansion fan coil units (FCUs).
b. Details of cooling coils, fitted to air handling units (AHUs) that contain primary refrigerant.
c. General arrangement drawing showing the location of the air-conditioning refrigeration equipment, direct expansion FCUs and AHUs throughout the ship.
d. Details of pressure testing procedures for the refrigeration equipment.

1. 2. 3 Plans showing the general arrangement of refrigeration plant compartments, together with a description of the equipment and arrangements installed for isolation and distribution of ventilation air and the electrical power supply systems. The plans are to indicate segregation and access arrangements for compartments and associated control rooms and control stations.

1. 2. 4 A statement of the intended design system capacity for the intended operating conditions for verification purposes at the trials required by Pt 7, Ch 15, 7.2 Trials 7.2.1.

1. 2. 5 A schedule of testing and trials to demonstrate that systems are capable of operating as designed and as required by Pt 7, Ch 15, 7 Testing and trials.

1. 2. 6 Operating manuals are to be submitted for information. The manuals are to include the following information:
a. Particulars and a description of the systems.
b. Operating instructions for the equipment and systems.
c. Maintenance instructions for the installed arrangements.

1. 2. 7 Evidence that the required performance of refrigeration systems, pump and fan equipment is capable of being maintained under ambient and inclination operating conditions defined in Pt 5, Ch 1, 3.5 Ambient reference conditions and Pt 5, Ch 1, 3.6 Ambient operating conditions is to be provided by the manufacturer.

PART

7

CHAPTER 15 Refrigeration Systems and Equipment Serving Provision Stores and Air-Conditioning Installations

SECTION 2 Construction and installation

2. 1 Materials

2. 1. 1 The selection of materials for piping systems in provision store refrigeration systems is to take account of the following:

a. The pressures and temperatures of the refrigerant fluids.
b. Locations of systems and equipment.
c. Compatibility of materials.
d. Fluid flow rates and static pressure conditions.
e. Minimising corrosion and erosion through life of system.
f. Refrigerant flammability and toxicity.

2. 1. 2 Pipes, valves and fittings are in general to be made of steel, ductile cast iron, copper, copper alloy, or other approved ductile material suitable for the intended purpose. The use of plastics materials is also acceptable subject to the restrictions in Pt 5, Ch 12, 5 Plastic pipes.

2. 1. 3 Where applicable, the piping systems are to comply with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 12 Piping Design Requirements.

2. 2 Equipment – Selection and installation

2. 2. 1 Pressure vessels in provision store and air-conditioning refrigeration systems are to be in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 11 Other Pressure Vessels.

2. 2. 2 Valves and flexible hose lengths are to comply with the relevant requirements of Pt 5, Ch 12 Piping Design Requirements.

2. 2. 3 Pipes in piping systems are to be permanent pipes made with approved pipe connections to enable ready removal of valves, pumps, fittings and equipment. The pipes are to be efficiently secured in position to prevent chafing or lateral movement.

2. 2. 4 Suitable means for expansion are to be made, where necessary, in each range of pipes.

2. 2. 5 Suitable protection is to be provided for all pipes and equipment situated where they are liable to mechanical damage.

2. 2. 6 All moving parts are to be provided with guards to minimise danger to personnel.

2. 2. 7 Primary refrigerant pipework, serving AHUs and FCUs, which pass through bulkheads and deckheads is to comply with the requirements of SOLAS Chapter II-2, *3 Penetrations in fire-resisting divisions and prevention of heat transmission*.

2. 3 Valves and relief devices

2. 3. 1 Valves are to be fitted in places where they are readily accessible at all times.

2. 3. 2 Relief valves are to be adjusted and bursting discs so selected that they relieve at a pressure not greater than the design pressure of the system. When satisfactorily adjusted, relief valves are to be protected against tampering or interference by a locking wire with a lead seal or similar arrangement, *See also* Pt 7, Ch 15, 2.4 Refrigerant systems 2.4.4.

2. 4 Refrigerant systems

2. 4. 1 The primary refrigerants ammonia, hydrocarbons or carbon dioxide shall not be used in direct expansion FCUs located in accommodation spaces. The use of these refrigerants in machinery spaces, such as a separate AHU compartment, may be accepted subject to suitable safety arrangements being provided to the satisfaction of ACS.

2. 4. 2 Compartments containing refrigeration plant are to be provided with refrigerant gas leak detectors with an alarm. *See* Pt 7, Ch 15, 4 Refrigerant detection systems.

2. 4. 3 The design of refrigeration systems is to permit maintenance and repair without unavoidable loss of refrigerant to atmosphere. To minimise refrigerant release to the atmosphere, refrigerant recovery units are to be provided to allow evacuation of a system prior to maintenance.

2. 4. 4 Refrigeration systems are to be provided with relief devices which are arranged with sufficient margins to avoid circumstances that would allow an inadvertent discharge of refrigerant to the atmosphere. The system is to be so designed that overpressure due to fire conditions can be safely relieved.

2. 4. 5 A pressure relief valve and/or bursting disc is to be fitted between each positive displacement compressor and its gas delivery stop valve, the discharge being led to the suction side of the compressor. The refrigerant flow capacity of the valve or disc is to exceed the full load compressor capacity for the particular refrigerant at the maximum potential suction pressure. For these internal relief valves, servo-operated valves will be accepted. Where the motive power for the compressor does not exceed 10 kW, the pressure relief valve and/or bursting disc may be omitted.

2. 4. 6 Each pressure vessel which may contain liquid refrigerant and which is capable of being isolated by means of a stop or automatic control or check valve is to be protected by two pressure relief valves or two bursting discs, or one of each, controlled by a changeover device. Pressure vessels that are connected by pipework without valves, so that they cannot be isolated from each other, may be regarded as a single pressure vessel for this purpose, provided that the interconnecting pipework does not prevent effective venting of any pressure vessel.

2. 4. 7 Omission of one of the specified relief devices and changeover device, as required by Pt 7, Ch 15, 2.4 Refrigerant systems 2.4.6, will be accepted where:

a. vessels are of less than 300 litres internal gross volume; or
b. vessels discharge into the low pressure side of the system by means of a relief valve.

2. 4. 8 Sections of systems and components that could become full of liquid between closed valves are to be provided with pressure relief devices relieving to a suitable point in the refrigerant circuit.

2. 4. 9 Where any hermetic or semi-hermetic compressor has the electric motor cooled by the circulating refrigerant, the following arrangements are to be provided:

a. Refrigeration circuits are to contain no more than one hermetic or semi-hermetic compressors.
b. Each compressor motor is to be fitted with a thermal cutout device to protect the motor against overheating.
c. Each refrigerant circuit is to contain a suitable arrangement to allow debris or contaminants from a motor failure to be removed.

d. The pressure envelope of any hermetic or semi-hermetic compressor exposed to the refrigerant pressure is to be designed and constructed in accordance with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 11 Other Pressure Vessels and Pt 5, Ch 17 Requirements for Fusion Welding of Pressure Vessels and Piping as applicable. Plans are to be submitted for consideration as required by Pt 5, Ch 11, 1.6, Plans.

2. 5 Air handling unit(s) (AHUs) for air-conditioning systems

2. 5. 1 Evaporator coils as fitted to direct expansion AHUs are to be considered for approval and plans are to be submitted, *See also* Pt 7, Ch 15, 1.2 Plans and information 1.2.2. All other equipment fitted to an AHU, such as air filtration, dehumidification, heating and humidification systems are outside the scope of these Rules and are the responsibility of the Shipyard and Owner.

2. 5. 2 Each AHU is to be provided with suitable drip trays and drainage arrangements to remove any condensate which may form.

2. 5. 3 The installation arrangements of AHUs are to be such as to allow sufficient space for the withdrawal and replacement of the refrigerant cooling coil.

2. 6 Air coolers and cooling grids for provision store refrigeration systems

2. 6. 1 Air cooler fan motors are to be suitably enclosed to withstand the effects of moisture.

2. 6. 2 Means are to be provided for effectively defrosting air coolers. Air coolers are to be provided with trays of suitable depth arranged to collect all condensate. The trays are to be provided with drains at their lowest points to enable the condensate to be drained away when the refrigerated spaces are in service. When a store operates at temperatures at, or lower than 0°C, provision is to be made for the prevention of freezing of the condensate.

2. 6. 3 The installation arrangements of air coolers are to be such that when the refrigerated spaces are loaded with provisions, adequate space is provided for the inspection, servicing and renewal of controls, valves, fans and fan motors.

2. 6. 4 Steel air cooler circuits and cooling grids are to be suitably protected against external corrosion.

2. 7 Design pressures

2. 7. 1 The design pressure of the system will be regarded as equal to its maximum working pressure, *See* Pt 7, Ch 15, 2.7 Design pressures 2.7.5.

2. 7. 2 The maximum working pressure is the maximum permissible pressure within the system (or part system) in operation or at rest. No pressure relief valve or other protective device is to be set to a pressure higher than the maximum working pressure.

2. 7. 3 The design pressure of the low pressure side of the system is to be the saturated vapour pressure of the refrigerant at plus 46°C. Due regard is to be taken of defrosting arrangements which may cause a higher pressure to be imposed on the low pressure side of the system. For carbon dioxide design pressures, *See* Pt 7, Ch 15, 2.7 Design pressures 2.7.6.

2. 7. 4 The minimum design pressure of the high pressure side of the system (P_{dh}), is to be determined from $1.11 \times P_b$, where P_b is an allowance for the compressor high pressure cut-out. P_b is to be not less than to $1.11 \times P_a$, where P_a is the condenser working pressure, when operating in tropical zones and equates to the saturation pressure of the refrigerant at plus 46°C.

2. 7. 5 Design pressures applicable to refrigerants are to be not less than the values given in Table 15. 2. 1: Design pressure limits when condensers are sea-water cooled. The design pressure for other refrigerants and condensing arrangements is to be agreed with ACS.

Table 15. 2. 1: Design pressure limits

Refrigerant	Pressure, (MPa)	
	High	Low
R-717		1.72
R-22	2.06	1.67
R-290	1.81	1.47
R-600a	0.64	0.52
R-134a	1.34	1.09
R-407C	2.35	1.9
R-410A	3.45	2.8
R-507A	2.53	2.05
R-404A	2.48	2.01
R-744	*See* Pt 7, Ch 15, 2.7 Design pressures 2.7.6	
Note In view of increasing world-wide restrictive legislation and phasing out of the HCFC refrigerant R-22, it is recommended that this refrigerant should not be used in new installations.		

2. 7. 6 The proposed design pressure for a carbon dioxide system is to be stated, taking account of the maximum working pressure and the maximum pressure at rest conditions. Where the maximum pressure at rest condition is maintained by the fitting of a supplementary refrigeration unit, condensing the vapour in a holding vessel, supporting calculation is to be provided to show that this can be undertaken with a local ambient temperature of 45°C. The holding vessel is to be thermally insulated to prevent the operation of the relief devices within a 24 hour period after stopping the supplementary refrigeration unit at an ambient temperature of 45°C and an initial pressure equal to the starting pressure of the refrigeration unit.

2. 7. 7 Where a carbon dioxide system is designed for hot gas defrosting, due regard is to be given to the possibility of a higher pressure being imposed on the low pressure system. The design pressure for the hot gas defrosting section of the system is to be 10% greater than the maximum pressure experienced during defrosting.

2. 8 Insulation materials

2. 8. 1 Where applicable, having regard to their location and environmental conditions, insulation arrangements are to have:

a. materials suitably resistant to fire;
b. insulation lining suitably resistant to flame spread;
c. effective protection against penetration of water vapour; and
d. adequate protection against mechanical damage.

2. 8. 2 The potential for smoke generation and toxicity of insulation materials is to be in accordance with SOLAS Chapter II-2, Part B, *Regulation 6 - Smoke generation potential and toxicity*.

2. 8. 3 Where the *in situ* foam type of insulation is proposed, full details of the process are to be submitted.

2. 8. 4 Prefabricated panel systems are to be fitted with suitable pressure equalising devices.

2. 8. 5 All low temperature pipework, valves and fittings are to be provided with suitable thermal insulation. *See* Pt 6, Ch 3, 4.11 Piping systems 4.11.10.

2. 9 Manufacture and certification

2. 9. 1 Pressure vessels satisfying the conditions listed in Pt 5, Ch 11, 1.6 Plans 1.6.1 are to be constructed in accordance with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 11 Other Pressure Vessels and Pt 5, Ch 17 Requirements for Fusion Welding of Pressure Vessels and Piping. Plans are to be submitted for consideration as required by Pt 5, Ch 11, 1.6, Plans.

2. 9. 2 Other equipment, apart from applicable pressure vessels and heat exchangers, used for air-conditioning or provision stores refrigeration systems are not required to be constructed under survey.

2. 9. 3 All major items of equipment, containing refrigerant, such as compressors, condensers, AHU cooling coils and FCUs shall be supplied with a manufacturer's works certificate providing details of the design and test pressures.

PART

7

CHAPTER 15 **Refrigeration Systems and Equipment Serving Provision Stores and Air-Conditioning Installations**

SECTION 3 **Refrigerating machinery and refrigerant storage compartment arrangements**

3. 1 General

3. 1. 1 Refrigerating machinery is to be installed in a well ventilated compartment. In general, the arrangements are to be such that all components of the refrigerating machinery can be readily opened up for inspection or replacement. Space is to be provided for the withdrawal and renewal of the tubes in 'shell-and-tube' type evaporators (secondary refrigerant coolers) and condensers. Proposals for alternative arrangements are to be submitted to ACS for consideration.

3. 1. 2 Refrigerating machinery using toxic and/or flammable refrigerants is to be located outside the main machinery space in a separate gastight compartment.

3. 1. 3 Where the refrigerating machinery is located in a separate gastight compartment, outside the main machinery space, this compartment is to be equipped with effective mechanical ventilation to provide 30 air changes per hour based upon the total volume of the space. The mechanical ventilation system is to have two methods of control, one of which is to be operable from outside the compartment.

3. 1. 4 Openings for pipes, electrical cables and other fittings in bulkheads and decks are to be fitted with gastight seals.

3. 2 Gas storage compartments

3. 2. 1 Portable steel cylinders containing reserve supplies of refrigerant are to be stored in a well ventilated compartment reserved solely for this purpose.

3. 2. 2 The storage compartment is to be provided with a mechanical ventilation system providing 10 air changes per hour.

3. 2. 3 The storage compartment is to be provided with a suitable vapour detection system, *See* Pt 7, Ch 15, 4 Refrigerant detection systems.

3. 2. 4 The storage compartment is to be provided with suitable water drainage arrangements not connected with the main machinery spaces.

3. 2. 5 Steel storage cylinders are to be of an approved type and are to be filled to a level suitable for an ambient temperature of plus 46°C.

3. 2. 6 The storage compartment is to be provided with racks to facilitate secure stowage of the cylinders.

3. 3 Pressure testing at manufacturers' works

3. 3. 1 Components intended for use with a primary refrigerant are to be subject to pressure testing procedures as detailed in Table 15. 3. 1: Test pressure.

Table 15. 3. 1: Test pressure

Component		Test pressure, (MPa)	
		Pressure test	Tightness test
(1)	Pressure vessels	*See* Pt 5, Ch 11 Other Pressure Vessels	1.0*p*
(2)	Compressor cylinders/crankcase/casing	1.5*p*	1.0*p*
(3)	Valves and fittings	2.0*p*	1.0*p*
(4)	Pressure piping, fabricated. headers, air coolers, etc.	1.5*p*	1.0*p*
Note *p* is the design pressure as defined in Pt 7, Ch 15, 2.7, Design pressures.			

3. 3. 2 Component pressure tests are to be hydraulic or where suitable safety measures are taken, may be pneumatic. The latter is to be carried out with a suitable dry inert gas.

3. 3. 3 Component tightness tests are to be carried out only after completion of satisfactory pressure tests. Pneumatic pressure is to be applied using a suitable dry inert gas.

3. 3. 4 Components for use with a secondary refrigerant or cooling water are to be hydraulically tested to 1.5 times the design pressure which, in no case is to be less than 0.35 MPa.

3. 4 Pressure test after installation on board ship

3. 4. 1 For primary refrigerant piping welded in place, pressure tests of the welds are to be carried out at a test pressure of 1.5*p*. This will normally take the form of a pneumatic test (*See* Pt 7, Ch 15, 3.4 Pressure test after installation on board ship 3.4.2) since hydraulic testing media such as water are not acceptable due to their incompatibility with the primary refrigerants and the difficulty of removing all traces from a completed system.

3. 4. 2 Pneumatic pressure tests are to be carried out using a suitable inert gas.

Note Where pneumatic testing is used, adequate safety precautions recognising the hazards involved should be observed to prevent danger to personnel and to minimise risk to property.

3. 4. 3 Where pneumatic tests are prohibited by relevant authorities, the tests required by Pt 7, Ch 15, 3.4 Pressure test after installation on board ship 3.4.1 and Pt 7, Ch 15, 3.4 Pressure test after installation on board ship 3.4.2 may be omitted provided non-destructive examination has been carried out by an approved operator to the satisfaction of ACS and in accordance with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 17, 6 Non-Destructive Examination.

3. 4. 4 After completion of the test required by Pt 7, Ch 15, 3.4 Pressure test after installation on board ship 3.4.1, Pt 7, Ch 15, 3.4 Pressure test after installation on board ship 3.4.2 or Pt 7, Ch 15, 3.4 Pressure test after installation on board ship 3.4.3, a tightness test is to be carried out using a suitable inert gas at a pressure equal to the design pressure, in the presence of the surveyor.

3. 4. 5 Secondary refrigerant piping welded in place is to be hydraulically tested to 1.5 times the design pressure which, in no case is to be less than 0.35 MPa.

PART

7

CHAPTER 15 Refrigeration Systems and Equipment Serving Provision Stores and Air-Conditioning Installations

SECTION 4 Refrigerant detection systems

4. 1 General

4. 1. 1 A fixed refrigerant detection system is to be provided in the refrigerating machinery compartment or space and ventilation outlet ducts when the ventilation system is shared with other compartments.

4. 1. 2 The alarm system is to comply with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems and, as a minimum requirement, the system is to activate at a low-level concentration to give warning of refrigerant leaks, and at a high-level concentration corresponding to the refrigerant's safe occupational level.

4. 1. 3 Detection equipment is to be so designed that it may be readily tested and calibrated; any failure of the equipment is to initiate an alarm.

4. 1. 4 The location of the detectors is to be determined relative to the layouts of the individual compartments and machinery spaces and are to be indicated in the plan submission.

4. 1. 5 Audible and visual alarms are to be activated, located both inside and outside the affected space. The alarms are to be readily identifiable and be visible and audible in all locations within the space housing the refrigeration equipment.

PART

7

CHAPTER 15 **Refrigeration Systems and Equipment Serving Provision Stores and Air-Conditioning Installations**

SECTION 5 **Control and monitoring and electrical power arrangements**

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 Control engineering arrangements are to comply with Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems as applicable.

5. 1. 2 All cooling and secondary refrigerant pumps are to be provided with an indication of discharge pressure and a low discharge pressure alarm at each control station.

5. 1. 3 The power to all independently driven ventilation fans is to be capable of being stopped from position(s) outside the fire boundary which will remain readily accessible in the event of fire occurring in any space, as well as from the local control panel.

5. 1. 4 Electrical engineering arrangements are to comply with Pt 6, Ch 2 Electrical Engineering.

5. 1. 5 Refrigeration compressors are to be provided with the following instrumentation and automatic shutdowns:

a. Indication of suction pressure (saturated temperature), including intermediate stage when applicable.
b. Indication of discharge pressure (saturated temperature), including intermediate stage when applicable.
c. Indication of lubricating oil pressure.
d. Indication of cumulative running hours (screw compressors).
e. Automatic shutdown in the event of low lubricating oil pressure.
f. Automatic shutdown in the event of high discharge pressure, *See also* Pt 7, Ch 15, 5.1 General 5.1.13.
g. Automatic shutdown in the event of low suction pressure.

5. 1. 6 For refrigeration compressors greater than 25 kW, the following instrumentation, additional to that required by Pt 7, Ch 15, 5.1 General 5.1.5, is to be provided:

a. Indication of lubricating oil temperature.
b. Indication of condenser cooling water outlet temperature.
c. Indication of cumulative running hours (reciprocating compressors).
d. Indication of suction and discharge temperatures.

5. 1. 7 Alarms are to be initiated in the event of the following fault conditions with refrigeration compressors:

a. High discharge pressure.

b. Low suction pressure.
c. Low oil pressure.
d. High discharge temperature.
e. High oil temperature.
f. Motor shutdown.

5. 1. 8 Refrigeration plants are to be provided with the following alarms as applicable:

a. Failure of condenser cooling water pumps.
b. High condenser cooling water outlet temperature.
c. Failure of air cooler fans.
d. High and low refrigerated air delivery temperatures.
e. High secondary refrigerant temperatures.
f. Failure of secondary refrigerant pump.
g. Low level in secondary refrigerant header tank.

5. 1. 9 Where the air-conditioning/refrigerating system is fitted with automatic or remote controls, so that, under normal operating conditions, no manual intervention by the operators is required, it is to be provided with the alarms required by Pt 7, Ch 15, 5.1 General 5.1.6 to Pt 7, Ch 15, 5.1 General 5.1.8 in accordance with the relevant requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems.

5. 1. 10 Where more than one compressor is fitted, the control sequence is to be such as to allow one machine to stop in the event of a reduction in cooling duty. Provision is to be made to allow selection of the lead machine to equalise running hours.

5. 1. 11 To allow the equipment to be isolated from the power supply in the event of a failure or refrigerant leak, refrigeration compressors and AHUs are to be fitted with local emergency stop switches.

5. 1. 12 AHUs are to be provided with the following instrumentation as a minimum:

a. Indication of primary refrigerant outlet pressure and temperature; and
b. Indication of outlet air temperature.

5. 1. 13 Compressors are to be provided with automatic shutdown in the event of high discharge pressure. For refrigeration systems where the maximum working pressure is less than or equal to 4 MPa, the automatic shutdown is to operate at a pressure in excess of normal operating pressure but no greater than 0.9 of the maximum working pressure. For refrigeration systems where the maximum working pressure is greater than 4 MPa, the automatic shutdown is to operate at a pressure in excess of normal operating pressure but no greater than 0.95 of the maximum working pressure.

PART

7

CHAPTER 15 Refrigeration Systems and Equipment Serving Provision Stores and Air-Conditioning Installations

SECTION 6 Personnel safety equipment and systems

6. 1 Personnel safety equipment

6. 1. 1 Access doors to the refrigerated spaces are to open outwards, alternatively sliding doors may be used where the door is external to the space.

6. 1. 2 Access ways to the refrigerated spaces are to be designed to facilitate escape in emergencies, and the removal of stretcher-borne personnel.

6. 1. 3 Access ways and refrigerated compartments are to be provided with an independent lighting system in accordance with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 2, 5.7 Lighting circuits 5.7.2 and Pt 6, Ch 2, 5.7 Lighting circuits 5.7.4, with the means of locking the switches in the 'on' position.

6. 1. 4 Arrangements are to be such that means are provided for both opening the room door(s) and sounding the alarm required by Pt 7, Ch 15, 6.2 Personnel warning systems 6.2.2 from inside refrigerated spaces.

6. 1. 5 Where ammonia is used in refrigerating systems, the following items of safety equipment are to be provided as a minimum, and positioned in accessible protected storage (e.g. locked glass fronted cabinets) located outside the machinery compartment:

a. Two sets of ammonia protective clothing (including helmet, boots and gloves).
b. Two portable battery powered hand lamps (to be of certified safe-type).
c. Two sets of self-contained breathing apparatus (compressed air).
d. Two full face mask respirators.
e. Two fire-resistant life-lines.
f. Two firemen's axes.
g. Two heavy duty adjustable spanners.
h. Two wheel wrenches.
i. Irrigation facilities or eye wash bottles containing an eye wash solution, distilled water or non-carbonated mineral water.
j. Hand or foot-operated douches providing a copious supply of clean water, located outside the compartment's doors.

6. 2 Personnel warning systems

6. 2. 1 A system to monitor the well-being of crew members entering refrigerated spaces is to be provided.

6. 2. 2 The system is to be such that at a predetermined time, after initiation, the crew member(s) receives warning that the system is to alarm and must indicate their well-being by accepting the warning.

6. 2. 3 The system is to be designed and arranged such that only an authorised person has access for enabling and disabling it and setting the appropriate intervals, and such that it cannot be operated in an unauthorised manner.

6. 2. 4 It is to be possible to acknowledge the warning by means of illuminated switches situated near the access doors or hatches of each refrigerated space or chambers within the space.

6. 2. 5 In the event that the crew member(s) fails to respond and accept the warning within an agreed specified time, the system is to immediately initiate an alarm on the bridge and at the main control station, or subsidiary control stations as appropriate. Manual initiation of the alarm system from the refrigerated spaces is to be possible at any time.

6. 2. 6 The system is to comply with the relevant requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1 Control Engineering Systems.

PART

7

CHAPTER 15 Refrigeration Systems and Equipment Serving Provision Stores and Air-Conditioning Installations

SECTION 7 Testing and trials

7. 1 Testing

7. 1. 1 The requirements of the Rules relating to testing of pressure vessels, piping and related fittings including hydraulic testing are applicable. *See* Pt 5, Ch 11 Other Pressure Vessels and Pt 5, Ch 12, 8 Hydraulic tests on pipes and fittings.

7. 1. 2 On completion, tanks and reservoirs for service and storage of system fluids are to be tested by a head of water equal to the maximum to which the tanks may be subjected, but not less than 2.5 m above the crown of the tank.

7. 1. 3 After installation on board, piping systems together with associated fittings that are under internal pressure, are to be subjected to a running test at the intended maximum working pressure.

7. 1. 4 Testing is to cover the following items:

a. Verification of control, alarm and safety systems.
b. Simulation tests for failure of refrigeration equipment, to verify correct functioning of alarms and systems in service.
c. Verification of accuracy, calibration and functioning of temperature control for refrigeration systems.

7. 2 Trials

7. 2. 1 Acceptance trials, as stipulated in this Section, are to be conducted. It is to be demonstrated that the provision store or air-conditioning refrigerating system capacity meets the design duty. As far as is practicable, the trials are to represent the operating conditions that will be encountered in service. For example, the condenser cooling water flow should be restricted so that the compressor discharge pressure is at the design value.

PART

7

CHAPTER 16 Towing Winch Emergency Release Systems

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**Towing winch emergency release systems - goal-based framework**		**3192**
	1. 1	Goal-based framework	3192
	1. 2	ACS accepted solution for towing winch emergency release systems in satisfying the goal-based framework	3193
SECTION 2	**Towing winch emergency release systems - scope and definitions**		**3194**
	2. 1	Scope	3194
	2. 2	Definitions	3194
SECTION 3	**Emergency release system requirements**		**3195**
	3. 1	General requirements	3195
	3. 2	Emergency release system operation	3195
	3. 3	Emergency release control system	3196
SECTION 4	**Validation of requirements for emergency release systems**		**3197**
	4. 1	Documentation	3197
	4. 2	Testing and trials	3197

PART

7

CHAPTER 16 Towing Winch Emergency Release Systems

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 16. 2. 1: Towline 'fleet angle' 3194

PART

7

CHAPTER **16 Towing Winch Emergency Release Systems**

SECTION **1 Towing winch emergency release systems - goal-based framework**

1. 1 Goal-based framework

1. 1. 1 The purpose of this Section is to present a goal-based approach to the requirements for towing winch emergency release systems provided on towing winches that are used for towing ships within close quarters, ports or terminals.

1. 1. 2 The goals, functional requirements and performance requirements listed herein relate to design, construction and testing of the emergency release system.

1. 1. 3 The list of goals is as follows:

a. The towing winch emergency release system is designed, constructed and tested through life to release loads safely, if necessary, in the event of an incident.

b. The towing winch emergency release system is designed, constructed and tested in accordance with appropriate documented requirements.

1. 1. 4 The list of functional requirements is as follows:

a. The emergency release is to operate under all normal and reasonably fore*See*able abnormal conditions.

b. The towline load is to be released in a controlled manner

c. Control systems are to function in a safe manner in all fore*See*n operational conditions.

d. Activation of the emergency release shall not expose the crew to any additional hazard.

e. Towline load is to be released quickly enough to prevent capsize of the tug.

f. The release system is to operate across the full range of possible towline loads, fleet angles and ship heel angles.

g. The emergency release control system is to be designed to 'fail-safe', *See* Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.5 Control systems, general requirements 2.5.3.

h. Necessary information and instructions to maintain and test the emergency release system are to be available.

i. Emergency winch release is to be tested to demonstrate functionality and correct operation at appropriate intervals.

1. 1. 5 The list of performance requirements is as follows:

a. The emergency release is to operate at 100% of the maximum design load.

b. An alternative source of energy is to be provided and is to be available in dead ship condition, sufficient to allow for three attempts to release the towline and/or hold the brake open for sufficient time to release the full length of the towline or five minutes, whichever is lesser.

c. Towline load required to rotate the winch drum once emergency release has been activated is to be no greater than:

i. the lesser of five tonnes or five % of the maximum design load when two layers of towline are on the drum; or

ii. 15% of the maximum design load where it is demonstrated that this resistance to rotation does not exceed 25% of the force that will result in listing sufficient for the immersion of the lowest unprotected opening.

d. The towline release is to be controlled to prevent the towline from becoming jammed.

e. Control systems are to provide all necessary alarms to alert the crew in the event of failure affecting capability of the emergency release system.

f. Arrangements of emergency release system controls are to prevent accidental or non-deliberate activation of the release system.

g. Operation of the emergency release is to be possible from the bridge and from safe locations on the deck.

h. The load is to be released within a maximum of three seconds.

i. A weak link or similar arrangement is to be provided connecting the towline to the winch drum.

j. All locations from where the emergency release can be operated are to have a full view of the towing winch and surrounding area.

1. 2 ACS accepted solution for towing winch emergency release systems in satisfying the goal-based framework

1. 2. 1 For ACS accepted solutions to satisfactorily meet the goal-based framework *See* Pt 7, Ch 16, 2 Towing winch emergency release systems - scope and definitions to Pt 7, Ch 16, 4 Validation of requirements for emergency release systems.

1. 2. 2 The application of the prescriptive content in this Chapter in its entirety is considered to satisfy the functional and performance requirements of this chapter as applied to towing winch emergency release systems.

1. 2. 3 Alternative proposals for meeting the goal-based framework of this Section will be specially considered.

PART

7

CHAPTER **16** **Towing Winch Emergency Release Systems**

SECTION **2** **Towing winch emergency release systems - scope and definitions**

2. 1 Scope

2. 1. 1 The requirements of this Chapter apply to winch emergency release systems provided on towing winches that are used for towing ships within close quarters, ports or terminals.

2. 1. 2 The requirements of this Chapter are not applicable to towing winches on board ships used solely for long distance ocean towage, anchor handling or similar offshore activities.

2. 1. 3 *See* Pt 4, Ch 3, 7 Towing arrangements for requirements for towing winches and associated equipment.

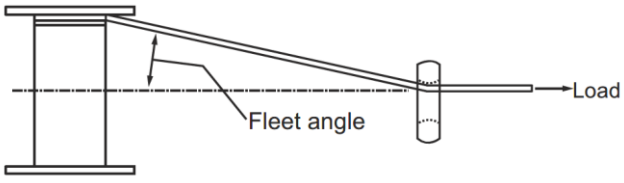
2. 2 Definitions

2. 2. 1 **Emergency release system** refers to the mechanism and associated control arrangements that are used to release the load on the towline in a controlled manner under both normal and dead ship conditions.

2. 2. 2 **Maximum design load** is the maximum load that can be held by the winch as defined by the manufacturer (the manufacturer's rating).

2. 2. 3 **Fleet angle** is the angle between the applied load (towline force) and the towline as it is wound onto the winch drum, *See* Figure 16. 2. 1: Towline 'fleet angle'.

Figure 16. 2. 1: Towline 'fleet angle'



PART

7

CHAPTER **16 Towing Winch Emergency Release Systems**

SECTION **3 Emergency release system requirements**

3. 1 General requirements

3. 1. 1 The in-board end of the towline is to be attached to the winch drum with a weak link or similar arrangement that is designed to release the towline at low load.

3. 1. 2 All towing winches are to be fitted with an emergency release system.

3. 1. 3 Where required for testing the winch, adequately sized strong points are to be provided on deck.

3. 2 Emergency release system operation

3. 2. 1 The emergency release system is to operate across the full range of towline loads, fleet angles and ship heel angles under all normal and reasonably fore*See*able abnormal conditions (including, but not limited to vessel electrical failure, variable towline load (for example due to high strain rate loadings i.e. 'snap loads'), etc.).

3. 2. 2 The emergency release system shall be capable of operating with towline loads up to at least 100% of the maximum design load.

3. 2. 3 The emergency release system is to function as quickly as is reasonably practicable and within a maximum of three seconds after activation.

3. 2. 4 The emergency release system is to allow the winch drum to rotate and the towline to pay out in a controlled manner such that, when the emergency release system is activated, there is sufficient resistance to rotation to avoid uncontrolled unwinding of the towline from the drum. Spinning (free, uncontrolled rotation) of the winch drum is to be avoided, as this could cause the towline to get jammed and disable the release function of the winch.

3. 2. 5 Once the emergency release is activated, the towline load required to rotate the winch drum is to be no greater than:

a. the lesser of five tonnes or five per cent of the maximum design load when two layers of towline are on the drum; or

b. 15% of the maximum design load where it is demonstrated that this resistance to rotation does not exceed 25% of the force that will result in listing sufficient for the immersion of the lowest unprotected opening. Unprotected openings include openings fitted with closing appliances that must remain open for operational reasons.

3. 2. 6 An alternative source of energy is to be provided such that normal operation of the emergency release system can be sustained under dead ship conditions.

3. 2. 7 The alternative source of energy required by Pt 7, Ch 16, 3.2 Emergency release system operation 3.2.6 is to be sufficient to achieve the most onerous of the following conditions (as applicable):

a. Sufficient for at least three attempts to release the towline (i.e. three activations of the emergency release system). Where the system provides energy for more than one winch, it is to be sufficient for three activations of the most demanding winch connected to it.
b. Where the winch design is such that the drum release mechanism requires continuous application of power (e.g. where the brake is applied by spring tension and released using hydraulic or pneumatic power), sufficient power is to be provided to operate the emergency release system (e.g. hold the brake open and allow release of the towline) in a dead ship situation for a minimum of five minutes. This may be reduced to the time required for the full length of the towline to feed off the winch drum at the load specified in Pt 7, Ch 16, 3.2 Emergency release system operation 3.2.5 if this is less than five minutes.

3. 3 Emergency release control system

3. 3. 1 Emergency release operation must be possible from the bridge and from the winch control station on deck. The winch control station on deck is to be in a safe location.

3. 3. 2 The emergency release control is to be located in close proximity to the emergency stop button for winch operation and both should be clearly identifiable, clearly visible, easily accessible and positioned to allow safe operability.

3. 3. 3 The emergency release function is to take priority over any emergency stop function. Activation of the winch emergency stop from any location is not to inhibit operation of the emergency release system from any location.

3. 3. 4 Emergency release system control buttons are to require positive action to cancel. The positive action may be made at a different control position from the one where the emergency release was activated. It must always be possible to cancel the emergency release from the bridge regardless of the activation location and without manual intervention on the working deck.

3. 3. 5 Controls for emergency use are to be protected against accidental activation.

3. 3. 6 Indications are to be provided on the bridge for all power supply busbar voltage and frequency and/or hydraulic/pneumatic pressure levels related to the normal operation of the emergency release system. Alarms are to activate automatically if any level falls outside of the limits within which the emergency release system is fully operational.

3. 3. 7 Wherever practicable, control of the emergency release system is to be provided by a hard-wired system, fully independent of programmable electronic systems.

3. 3. 8 Computer-based systems that operate or may affect the control of emergency release systems are to meet the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, 2.13, Programmable electronic systems - Additional requirements for essential services and safety critical systems.

PART

7

CHAPTER **16 Towing Winch Emergency Release Systems**

SECTION **4 Validation of requirements for emergency release systems**

4. 1 Documentation

4. 1. 1 Operation and maintenance procedures for the emergency release system are to be incorporated in the vessel's operations manual.

4. 1. 2 Components critical for the safe operation of the emergency release system are to be identified by the manufacturer and included in the operations manual on board the vessel.

4. 1. 3 The method for periodic testing in accordance with manufacturers recommendations of the winch is to be documented, a copy of which is to be kept on board and made available to the Surveyor on request.

4. 2 Testing and trials

4. 2. 1 All testing and trials defined within this Section are to be carried out under survey to the satisfaction of the attending Surveyor.

4. 2. 2 For each emergency release system, the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 16, 3.2, Emergency release system operation are to be verified either at the manufacturer's works or as part of the commissioning of the towing winch when it is installed on board. Where verification solely through testing may present a safety hazard, testing may be combined with inspection, analysis or demonstration in agreement with ACS.

4. 2. 3 The performance capabilities and operating instructions of the emergency release system are to be included in the operating manual which is to be made available on board the ship on which the winch has been installed.

4. 2. 4 The full functionality of each emergency release system fitted is to be tested as part of the shipboard commissioning trials to the satisfaction of the attending Surveyor. Testing may be conducted either during a bollard pull test or by applying the towline load against a strong point on the deck of the tug that is certified to the appropriate load.

4. 2. 5 Where the performance of the winch in accordance with Pt 7, Ch 16, 3.2, Emergency release system operation has previously been verified, the load applied for the installation trials is to be at least the lesser of 30% of the maximum design load or 80% of vessel bollard pull.

PART

8

Rules for Ice and Cold Operations

CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1 Application 3199

SECTION 1 Scope 3201

SECTION 2 Ice environment 3203

CHAPTER 2 Ice Operations - Ice Class 3204

SECTION 1 Strengthening requirements for navigation in ice – Application of requirements 3208

SECTION 2 General hull requirements for navigation in ice – All ice classes 3210

SECTION 3 General machinery requirements for navigation in ice – All Ice Classes 3213

SECTION 4 Hull requirements for light ice conditions – Ice Classes 1D and 1E 3215

SECTION 5 Machinery requirements for light ice conditions – Ice Classes 1D and 1E 3218

SECTION 6 Hull requirements for first-year ice conditions – Ice Classes 1AS FS, 1A FS, 1B FS, 1C FS and 1D 3220

SECTION 7 Machinery requirements for first-year ice conditions – Ice Classes 1AS FS, 1A FS, 1B FS and 1C FS 3225

SECTION 8 Hull requirements for first-year ice conditions – Ice classes 1AS FS(+), 1A FS(+), 1B FS(+) and 1C FS(+) 3227

SECTION 9 Hull requirements for first-year ice conditions – Ice classes 1AS FS(+), 1A FS(+), 1B FS(+) and 1C FS(+) 3228

PART

8

CHAPTER **1** **Application**

CONTENTS

SECTION 1 Scope 3201

1. 1 General 3201

SECTION 2 Ice environment 3203

PART

8

CHAPTER **1** **Application**

LIST OF TABLES

Table 1. 1. 1: Ice and cold operations 3201

PART

8

CHAPTER **1** **Application**

SECTION **1** **Scope**

1. 1 General

1. 1. 1 The following requirements are for ships intended for operations in ice and cold conditions.

1. 1. 2 Guidance on the appropriate requirements and notations is provided in Table 1. 1. 1: Ice and cold operations.

Table 1. 1. 1: Ice and cold operations

Reference			Conditions	Description	Notation
Ice operations					
Chapter 2	Section 1		Application		
	Section 2 Section 3	Hull Machinery	General requirements	Applicable to all ice classes	
	Section 4 Section 5	Hull Machinery	Light and very light ice conditions	For ships with length less than 150 m	**Ice Class 1E**
				Hull strengthening in forward region only	**Ice Class 1D**
	Section 6 Section 7	Hull Machinery	First-year ice conditions	*Finnish-Swedish Ice Class Rules*	**Ice Class 1C FS**
					Ice Class 1B FS
					Ice Class 1A FS
					Ice Class 1AS FS
	Section 8 Section 9	Hull Machinery		*Finnish-Swedish Ice Class Rules* with enhanced engine power for icebreaking capability	**Ice Class 1C FS(+)**
					Ice Class 1B FS(+)
					Ice Class 1A FS(+)
					Ice Class 1AS FS(+)

1. 1. 3 At the Owner's request and in order to enhance safety and awareness on board during ship operation, the **ACSPlus SEA(ICE)** *Ship Event Analysis Guideline* may be applied. This procedure may be applied to all ships where it is intended to provide a hull surveillance system for monitoring of the ship's hull girder stresses and local ice loads when the ship is navigating in

ice, and warning the ship's personnel that the load levels or the frequency and magnitude of ice impacts are approaching a level where corrective action is advisable. *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.8 Descriptive notes 2.8.3 and Pt 3, Ch 16, 6 Ship Event Analysis.

1. 1. 4 At the Owner's request and in order to enhance safety, the **ACSPlus FDA ICE** *Fatigue Induced by Ice Loading Guideline* may be applied. This Guideline is supplementary to the FDA Guidelines and is to assess fatigue damage induced by ice loads for ships navigating in ice-covered regions. The objective of the **ACSPlus FDA ICE** Guideline is to provide technical guidelines to assess fatigue at the end connections of stiffeners in the ice belt regions under ice loading. *See* Pt 1, Ch 2, 2.3 Class notations (hull) 2.3.17 and Pt 3, Ch 16, 4 Fatigue design assessment.

PART

8

CHAPTER **1** **Application**

SECTION **2** **Ice environment**

PART

8

CHAPTER 2 Ice Operations - Ice Class

CONTENTS

SECTION 1	**Strengthening requirements for navigation in ice – Application of requirements**		**3208**
	1. 1	Additional strengthening	3208
	1. 2	Application for light ice conditions	3208
	1. 3	Application for first-year ice conditions	3209
	1. 4	Loading manual	3209
SECTION 2	**General hull requirements for navigation in ice – All ice classes**		**3210**
	2. 1	General	3210
	2. 2	Definitions	3211
	2. 3	Rudder and steering arrangements	3211
SECTION 3	**General machinery requirements for navigation in ice – All Ice Classes**		**3213**
	3. 1	Materials for shafting	3213
	3. 2	Materials for propellers	3213
	3. 3	Ship-side valves	3213
	3. 4	Fire pumps in motor ships	3214
	3. 5	Main propulsion and essential auxiliary engines	3214
SECTION 4	**Hull requirements for light ice conditions – Ice Classes 1D and 1E**		**3215**
	4. 1	Ice Class 1D	3215
	4. 2	Ice Class 1E – General	3215
	4. 3	Shell plating	3215
	4. 4	Transverse framing	3216
	4. 5	Primary longitudinal members supporting ice frames	3216
	4. 6	Stern frame and rudder – Ice Class 1D	3216
	4. 7	Weld connections	3217
SECTION 5	**Machinery requirements for light ice conditions – Ice Classes 1D and 1E**		**3218**
	5. 1	General	3218
	5. 2	Engine power	3218

5. 3 Main engine shafting and propellers 3218
5. 4 Minimum propeller blade tip thickness 3219
5. 5 Blade edge thickness 3219
5. 6 Cooling water lines 3219
SECTION 6 Hull requirements for first-year ice conditions – Ice Classes 1AS FS, 1A FS, 1B FS, 1C FS and 1D 3220
6. 1 General 3220
6. 2 Framing – General requirements 3220
6. 3 Primary longitudinal members supporting transverse ice framing 3221
6. 4 Stem 3222
6. 5 Stern 3223
6. 6 Renewal criteria within ice strengthening area for CSR ships 3223
6. 7 Rudder and steering arrangements 3223
SECTION 7 Machinery requirements for first-year ice conditions – Ice Classes 1AS FS, 1A FS, 1B FS and 1C FS 3225
7. 1 General 3225
7. 2 Determination of ice torque 3225
7. 3 Propeller blade sections 3225
7. 4 Intermediate blade sections 3225
7. 5 Blade edge thickness 3225
7. 6 Mechanisms for controllable pitch propellers 3225
7. 7 Keyless propellers 3226
7. 8 Screwshafts 3226
7. 9 Intermediate and thrust shafts 3226
SECTION 8 Hull requirements for first-year ice conditions – Ice classes 1AS FS(+), 1A FS(+), 1B FS(+) and 1C FS(+) 3227
8. 1 General 3227
SECTION 9 Hull requirements for first-year ice conditions – Ice classes 1AS FS(+), 1A FS(+), 1B FS(+) and 1C FS(+) 3228
9. 1 Powering of ice strengthened ships 3228
9. 2 Materials for shafting 3229

PART

8

CHAPTER 2 Ice Operations - Ice Class

LIST OF TABLES

Table 2. 2. 1: Allowable stress in rudder stopper, ice knife and supporting structure in way of rudder stopper, ice knife 3212
Table 2. 5. 1: Increase for main engine shafting and propellers 3218
Table 2. 6. 1: Extent of anti-tripping supports 3220
Table 2. 6. 2: Longitudinal distribution factor α_o 3221
Table 2. 6. 3: Minimum speed 3223

PART

8

CHAPTER **2** **Ice Operations - Ice Class**

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 2. 4. 1: Extent of application of plating requirements 3216
Figure 2. 6. 1: A sharp edged stem 3222

PART

8

CHAPTER 2 **Ice Operations - Ice Class**

SECTION 1 **Strengthening requirements for navigation in ice – Application of requirements**

1. 1 Additional strengthening

1. 1. 1 Where additional strengthening is fitted in accordance with the requirements given in this Chapter, an appropriate special features notation will be assigned. It is the responsibility of the Owner to determine which notation is most suitable for his requirements.

1. 1. 2 Where a special features notation is desired, the ship is to comply with the requirements of the applicable Sections, in addition to those for sea-going service, so far as they are applicable.

1. 1. 3 Where the hull and machinery are constructed so as to comply with the requirements of different ice classes, then the assigned Ice Class Notation will be indicated for the combination as the lower of these classes on the Certificate of Class. Any compliance of the hull or machinery with the requirements of a higher ice class will be indicated in square brackets after the main notation. Other supplementary information that would influence the ice performance will also be indicated. For example, a ship hull built in compliance with 1B FS and the machinery in compliance with **1AS FS** would be assigned the Notation **Ice Class 1B FS [1AS FS Machinery]** or **Ice Class 1B FS [1AS FS azimuth thrusters]** where azimuth thrusters are included in the approval.

1. 1. 4 The vertical extent of the ice strengthening is related to the upper ice waterline and lower ice waterline, which are defined in Pt 8, Ch 2, 2.2 Definitions. The maximum and minimum draughts at the fore, amidships and aft ends (for the lowest ice class) are to be stated on the Certificate of Class.

1. 1. 5 For ships that comply with the requirements of the *Finnish-Swedish Ice Class Rules*, the installed and required minimum engine output (for the lowest ice class), *See* **Pt 8, Ch 2, 7 Machinery requirements for first-year ice conditions – Ice Classes 1AS FS, 1A FS, 1B FS and 1C FS**, will be stated on the Certificate of Class.

1. 2 Application for light ice conditions

1. 2. 1 The requirements for **Ice Class IE** are for ships with length less than 150 m and are intended to navigate in very light first-year ice conditions, such as in brash ice and small ice pieces. The requirements of Pt 8, Ch 2, 4 Hull requirements for light ice conditions – Ice Classes 1D and 1E and Pt 8, Ch 2, 5 Machinery requirements for light ice conditions – Ice Classes 1D and 1E are to be complied with.

1. 2. 2 The requirements for **Ice Class 1D** are for ships intended to navigate in light first-year ice conditions. The requirements for strengthening the forward region, the rudder and steering arrangements for **Ice Class 1C FS** are applicable.

1. 3 Application for first-year ice conditions

1. 3. 1 Ships that comply with the requirements of the Finnish Swedish Ice Class Rules and Pt 8, Ch 2, 6 Hull requirements for first-year ice conditions – Ice Classes 1AS FS, 1A FS, 1B FS, 1C FS and 1D and Pt 8, Ch 2, 7 Machinery requirements for first-year ice conditions – Ice Classes 1AS FS, 1A FS, 1B FS and 1C FS, for **Ice Class IA Super**, **IA**, **IB** and **IC** may be assigned the corresponding notations **Ice Class 1AS FS**, **Ice Class 1A FS**, **Ice Class 1B FS** or **Ice Class 1C FS**. The *Finnish-Swedish Ice Class Rules* may be obtained from the following website:

www.trafi.fi

1. 3. 2 For ships where the ice class notation **Ice Class 1AS FS(+), Ice Class 1A FS(+), Ice Class 1B FS(+)** or **Ice Class 1C FS(+)** is requested, the requirements of the *Finnish-Swedish Ice Class Rules*, and Sections 8 and 9 are to be complied with.

1. 4 Loading manual

1. 4. 1 Sufficient information is to be supplied to the Master of every ship to enable him to arrange loading and ballasting in such a way as to avoid the creation of unacceptable stresses in the ship's structure. The following information is to be included in the vessel's loading manual:

a. Upper and lower ice waterline.
b. Propeller immersion.
c. Indication of whether the vessel is strengthened for icebreaker towing.

PART

8

CHAPTER **2** **Ice Operations - Ice Class**

SECTION **2** **General hull requirements for navigation in ice – All ice classes**

2. 1 General

2. 1. 1 The following Sections are to be complied with for all Ice Classes, where applicable. Alternative arrangements to attain similar performance will be specially considered.

2. 1. 2 The ballast capacity of the ship is to be sufficient to give adequate propeller immersion in all ice navigating conditions without trimming the ship in such a manner that the actual waterline at the bow is below the lower ice waterline.

2. 1. 3 Fresh water and sea-water ballast tanks, the tops of which are situated above the design ballast waterline and adjacent to the shell, which are intended to be used in ice and cold navigating conditions, are to be provided with means to prevent freezing. Measures are to be provided to demonstrate that they protect against the following:

a. hull structural damage from pumping water creating a vacuum beneath a layer of ice across the top of the water in the tank, and
b. hull structural damage from ice expansion, and
c. engineering systems, such as piping systems and components, damage from ice expansion or ice blockage, and
d. engineering systems, such as piping systems and components, damage from ice pieces melting or dislodging from upper sections of the tank.

Heating coils are considered an effective means for tanks entirely above the waterline. Heating coils or other effective means such as continuous circulation, air bubbling and/or tank pressure/engineering systems alarms are considered effective for tanks partially below the waterline. Alternatively, demonstration that the above hazards have been mitigated is to be submitted through theoretical calculations, service experience, experimental tests, or a combination thereof.

2. 1. 4 These Rules are formulated for both transverse and longitudinal framing systems but it is recommended that, whenever practicable, transverse framing is selected.

2. 1. 5 These Rules assume that when approaching ice infested waters, the ship's speed will be reduced appropriately. The vertical extent of ice strengthening for ships intended to operate at speeds exceeding 15 knots in areas containing isolated ice floes will be specially considered.

2. 1. 6 An icebreaking ship is to have a hull form at the fore end adapted to break ice effectively. It is recommended that bulbous bows are not fitted to **Ice Class 1AS** ships.

2. 1. 7 The stern of an icebreaking ship is to have a form such that broken ice is effectively displaced.

2. 1. 8 Where it is desired to make provision for short tow operations, the bow area is to be suitably reinforced. Similarly, icebreakers may require local reinforcement in way of the stern fork.

2. 1. 9 Shell strakes in way of ice strengthening area for plates are to be grade B/AH.

2. 1. 10 To prevent unintended contact and permit close tow operations, provision of a bow ice knife (plate fitted between stem and bulbous bow) is not recommended for ships intended to navigate with icebreaker escort.

2. 2 Definitions

2. 2. 1 The upper and lower ice waterlines upon which the design of the vessel has been based is to be indicated in the classification certificate. The upper ice waterline (UIWL) is to be defined by the maximum draughts fore, amidships and aft. The lower ice waterline (LIWL) is to be defined by the minimum draughts fore, amidships and aft.

2. 2. 2 The lower ice waterline is to be determined with due regard to the vessel's ice-going capability in the ballast loading conditions (e.g. propeller submergence).

2. 2. 3 The upper ice waterline (UIWL) and lower ice waterline (LIWL) are to be indicated on the plans. For navigation in certain geographical areas, the relevant National Authority may require the maximum Ice Class draught to be marked on the ship in a specified manner.

2. 2. 4 **Displacement** Δ is the displacement at the upper ice waterline (UIWL) when floating in water having a relative density of 1.0. For first-year ice class Rules, the displacement is in tonnes. For multi-year ice class Rules, the displacement is in kilo tonnes.

2. 2. 5 **Shaft power**, P_0 , is the maximum propulsion shaft power, in kW, for which the machinery is to be classed.

2. 3 Rudder and steering arrangements

2. 3. 1 Rudder stoppers working on the rudder blade or rudder head are to be fitted to ships assigned the notations **Ice Class 1AS FS**, **1AS FS(+)**, **1A FS**, **1A FS(+).**

2. 3. 2 The design ice force on the rudder, based on the maximum rudder torque, shall be transmitted to the rudder stoppers without damage to the steering system.

2. 3. 3 The design ice force on the rudder stopper shall be considered as $F_s = M_x/d_s$, where M_x is the maximum design rudder torque determined according to the requirements of the *Finnish-Swedish Ice Class Rules* for ships assigned the notations **Ice Class 1AS FS**, **1A FS**, and d_s is the distance between the centre of the rudder stock and the rudder stopper. The allowable stresses given in Table 2. 2. 1: Allowable stress in rudder stopper, ice knife and supporting structure in way of rudder stopper, ice knife are not to be exceeded in the stoppers, their supporting structure, and the throat of the stopper welds.

2. 3. 4 Rudder stoppers are to be arranged such that protection of the steering gear is provided two degrees before the maximum travel of the steering gear.

2. 3. 5 The steering gear, rudder stock and upper edge of the rudder are to be protected from loads from ice impact when operating astern. A robust ice knife or equivalent means of protecting the rudder head and upper edge of the rudder is to be fitted to ships assigned the notations **Ice Class 1AS FS**, **1A FS**

2. 3. 6 The width of the ice knife shall provide protection to the rudder two degrees either side of the centreline. The lower edge of the ice knife should extend below the upper edge of the rudder's trailing edge or lower ice waterline, whichever is the lowest. For a ship with large draught variations, the ice knife shall extend below the upper edge of the rudder's trailing edge.

2. 3. 7 The design force for the ice knife, F_k, shall be determined as $F_k=phl$, where p is the ice pressure and h is the ice load height calculated according to the stern hull area according to the requirements of the *Finnish-Swedish Ice Class Rules* for ships assigned the notations **Ice Class 1AS FS, 1A FS**.

The load length, l, is to be considered according to the ice knife construction, but in general is to be taken as the support frame transverse spacing.

2. 3. 8 For the Ice Classes **1AS FS**, and **1A FS** notations, due regard is to be paid to the excessive load caused by the rudder being forced out of the midship position when backing into an ice ridge. When vessels are intended to operate with significant time in astern operation, then the hull strength is to be based on the method used in the forward region; however, due consideration may be given to the anticipated power in this mode of operation.

2. 3. 9 For plated structures, the thickness of the boundaries of the ice knife structure is not to be less than that of the rudder side plating.

Table 2. 2. 1: Allowable stress in rudder stopper, ice knife and supporting structure in way of rudder stopper, ice knife

	Von Mises stress, in N/mm^2	Shear stress, in N/mm^2
Allowable Stress	$235/k$	$138/k$, *See* Note 1

Where

$k = 235/s_0$

s_0=specified minimum yield stress of the material, in N/mm^2

Note 1. When the direct calculation is based on beam theory, the allowable shear stress must be not be greater than 122/k.

PART

8

CHAPTER **2** **Ice Operations - Ice Class**

SECTION **3** **General machinery requirements for navigation in ice – All Ice Classes**

3. 1 Materials for shafting

3. 1. 1 The following Sections are to be complied with for all Ice Classes, where applicable. Alternative arrangements to attain similar performance will be considered.

3. 1. 2 All components of the main propulsion system are to be of steel or other approved ductile material.

3. 2 Materials for propellers

3. 2. 1 Propellers and propeller blades are to be of cast steel or copper alloys and are to be manufactured, tested and certified in accordance with Ch 4, 1 General requirements, Ch 4, 5 Castings for propellers and Ch 9, 1 Castings for propellers of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials.

3. 2. 2 For steel propellers, the elongation of the material used is to be not less than 15 per cent for a test piece length of 5*d*. Charpy impact tests are to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials.

3. 2. 3 Cast steel load transmitting components of controllable pitch mechanisms are to be manufactured, tested and certified in accordance with the requirements of Ch 4, 5 Castings for propellers of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials.

3. 2. 4 Forged steel load transmitting components of controllable pitch propellers are to be manufactured, tested, and certified in accordance with Ch 5, 1 General requirements and Ch 5, 2 Forgings for ship and other structural applications of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials. Impact tests are to be carried out at minus 10°C and the average energy value is to be not less than 20 J.

3. 2. 5 Spheroidal cast iron load transmitting-components of controllable-pitch mechanisms are to be manufactured, tested and certified in accordance with the requirements of Table 7. 3. 5: Mechanical properties: special qualities in Ch 7, 3 Spheroidal or nodular graphite iron castings of the Pt 2 Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials.

3. 3 Ship-side valves

3. 3. 1 The sea inlet and overboard discharge valves which are situated at or below the maximum Load Line, are to be provided with low pressure steam or compressed air connection for clearing purposes, *See* Pt 5, Ch 13 Ship Piping Systems. Provisions need not be applied for the discharge from the main engine and central cooling water system for first-year and multi-year ice classes.

3. 3. 2 When steam is not available for clearing, it is recommended that arrangements be made for supplying water for machinery cooling purposes by circulating from ballast tanks(s) of adequate

capacity, preferably situated in the double bottom. Such tank(s) must be used only for storage of water ballast or fresh water.

3. 4 Fire pumps in motor ships

3. 4. 1 In motor ships where clearing steam is not available, fire pumps are to be provided with suctions from a suitable sea water inlet which is maintained ice-free at all times.

3. 4. 2 At least one of the fire pumps is to be connected to a sea chest which is provided with de-icing arrangements.

3. 5 Main propulsion and essential auxiliary engines

3. 5. 1 Sea inlets for the cooling water system are to be provided with arrangements to maintain ice free cooling water arrangements as given by IMO *MSC/Circular.504 – Guidance on Design and Construction of Sea Inlets Under Slush Ice Conditions – (28 April 1989)* or by the *Finnish Swedish Ice Class Rules*. Alternative arrangements will be considered, such as by circulating engine cooling water via designated tanks where heat balance calculations have demonstrated that the engines are capable of operating at their maximum continuous rating.

3. 5. 2 For electric propulsion systems, the total engine output for propulsion provided by generator sets/central generation system is to be based on the calculation with one set out of action, *See* Pt 6, Ch 2, 16 Electric propulsion.

PART

8

CHAPTER 2 **Ice Operations - Ice Class**

SECTION 4 **Hull requirements for light ice conditions – Ice Classes 1D and 1E**

4. 1 Ice Class 1D

4. 1. 1 The requirements for strengthening the forward region for **Ice Class 1C FS** are applicable. *See* Pt 8, Ch 2, 6 Hull requirements for first-year ice conditions – Ice Classes 1AS FS, 1A FS, 1B FS, 1C FS and 1D.

4. 2 Ice Class 1E – General

4. 2. 1 These requirements apply to ships with length less than 150 m and which are intended to operate in very light first-year ice conditions. Where additional strengthening is fitted in accordance with the requirements of this sub-Section, the notation **Ice Class 1E** will be assigned.

4. 2. 2 The requirements for shell plating need only be applied in the shaded region shown in Figure 2. 4. 1: Extent of application of plating requirements. The requirements for framing need only be applied forward of the flat of side.

4. 2. 3 For longitudinally framed ships, the scantlings of shell plating and framing are to comply with the requirements of **Ice Class 1C FS** using 0.9 times the ice pressure.

4. 2. 4 For transversely framed ships, the requirements of Pt 8, Ch 2, 4.3 Shell plating are to be applied.

4. 2. 5 Where the structural requirements of **Ice Class 1C FS** give lesser scantlings than the requirements of this sub-Section, the lesser scantlings may be applied.

4. 3 Shell plating

4. 3. 1 The shell plating thickness within the region shown in Figure 2. 4. 1: Extent of application of plating requirements is not to be less than:

$$t = 21.75_s \sqrt{k\left(\frac{BL^2}{110000} + 1\right)\left(1.3 - \frac{4.2}{(\frac{0.26}{s} + 1.8)^2}\right)} + 2\text{mm}$$

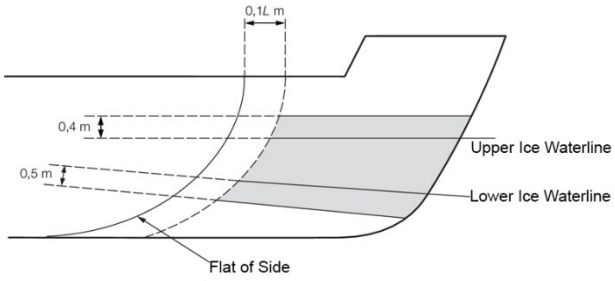
where

s = spacing of main frames, in metres

L and B = are defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1, Principal particulars

k = is defined in Pt 3, Ch 2, 1.2 Steel.

Figure 2. 4. 1: Extent of application of plating requirements



Upper Ice Waterline and Lower Ice Waterline are defined in Pt 8, Ch 2, 2.2 Definitions L, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1, Principal particulars

4. 4 Transverse framing

4. 4. 1 The section modulus of main frames forward of the flat of side is not to be less than:

$$z = 6.08slk\left(\frac{BL^2}{140000} + 1.23\right)\left(7 - \frac{1}{2l}\right) \text{cm}$$

but need not be taken as greater than:

$$z = sLT$$

where

s = spacing of main frames, in metres

l = span, in metres

L and B = are defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1, Principal particulars

k = is defined in Pt 3, Ch 2, 1.2 Steel.

4. 4. 2 Intermediate ice frames are to be fitted in the region forward of the flat of side and are to extend from 0.62 m above the upper ice waterline to 1 m below the lower ice waterline.

4. 4. 3 Intermediate ice frames aft of the collision bulkhead are to have a section modulus not less than 65 per cent of that given in Pt 8, Ch 2, 4.4 Transverse framing 4.4.1.

4. 4. 4 Intermediate ice frames forward of the collision bulkhead are to have a section modulus not less than 40 per cent of that given in Pt 8, Ch 2, 4.4 Transverse framing 4.4.1.

4. 5 Primary longitudinal members supporting ice frames

4. 5. 1 Forward of the collision bulkhead, in single deck ships, an ice stringer is to be fitted approximately 0.25 m below the upper ice waterline and is to have scantlings in accordance with Table 5. 4. 4: Primary structure forward in Pt 3, Ch 5 Fore End Structure.

4. 5. 2 Aft of the collision bulkhead a series of tripping brackets are to be fitted at each main and intermediate frame at the same level as the ice stringer to a distance $0.1L$ aft of the flat of side.

4. 6 Stern frame and rudder – Ice Class 1D

4. 6. 1 The rudder and stern frame scantlings are to be in accordance with Pt 8, Ch 2, 6.7, Rudder and steering arrangements.

4. 7 Weld connections

4. 7. 1 Weld connections to the shell plating forward of the collision bulkhead are to be double continuous.

PART

8

CHAPTER 2 **Ice Operations - Ice Class**

SECTION 5 **Machinery requirements for light ice conditions – Ice Classes 1D and 1E**

5. 1 General

5. 1. 1 Where the notation **Ice Class 1D** or **Ice Class 1E** is desired, the requirements of this Section, in addition to those for open water service, are to be complied with.

5. 1. 2 The requirements need not be taken as greater than those for **Ice Class 1C FS**.

5. 2 Engine power

5. 2. 1 The total engine output is to be not less than determined by the following formula:

$$P = 0.72LB \text{ kW}$$

where

L = Rule length, in metres, *See* Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1 Principal particulars 6.1.1

B = moulded breadth of ship, in metres, *See* Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1 Principal particulars 6.1.3.

5. 3 Main engine shafting and propellers

5. 3. 1 The diameters of the shafting and propeller blade thickness as required by the Rules for open water service are to be increased by the percentages as given in Table 2. 5. 1: Increase for main engine shafting and propellers. No increase in the diameter of crankshafts, thrustshafts or intermediate shafts is required.

5. 3. 2 The screwshaft may be tapered at the forward end in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.5 Screwshafts and tube shafts 3.5.3 and Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.5 Screwshafts and tube shafts 3.5.4 subject to the increase in diameter of 5 per cent as required by Pt 8, Ch 2, 5.3 Main engine shafting and propellers 5.3.1.

Table 2. 5. 1: Increase for main engine shafting and propellers

Screwshaft, increase in diameter as required by Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.5, Screwshafts and tube shafts	5%
Propeller, increase in blade thickness at root and at 60 per cent radius as required by Pt 5, Ch 7, 3.1 Minimum blade thickness	8%
Keyless propeller fitting, increase in mean torque as defined in Pt 5, Ch 7, 3.2 Keyless propellers	15%

5. 4 Minimum propeller blade tip thickness

5. 4. 1 The tip thickness, *t*, of the blade at 95 per cent radius is to be not less than that obtained by the following formula:

$$t = 0.14(T + 57)\sqrt[3]{\frac{430}{\sigma_u}} \text{ mm}$$

where

T = blade root thickness required by Pt 8, Ch 2, 5.3 Main engine shafting and propellers 5.3.1, in mm

σ_u = specified minimum tensile strength of material, in N/mm^2

5. 5 Blade edge thickness

5. 5. 1 The edges of the blades are to be suitably thickened for the operating conditions but are to be not less than 50 per cent of the required tip thickness, *t*, measured at 1.25 times tip thickness, *t*, from the edge. For controllable pitch propellers, this requirement need only be applied to the leading edges of the blades.

5. 6 Cooling water lines

5. 6. 1 Connections are to be fitted between the cooling water overboard discharge lines and sea inlets for main and/or auxiliary engine cooling water systems so that warm water may be used to assist in maintaining the suction pipes free from ice.

5. 6. 2 Where the cooling water inlet valves are fitted to a common water box, the connections from the cooling water discharge lines may be led to the water box in a position as near as possible to the inlet valves.

PART

8

CHAPTER **2** **Ice Operations - Ice Class**

SECTION **6** **Hull requirements for first-year ice conditions – Ice Classes 1AS FS, 1A FS, 1B FS, 1C FS and 1D**

6. 1 General

6. 1. 1 In addition to the requirements of the *Finnish-Swedish Ice Class Rules*, the following Sections are to be complied with for **Ice Class 1AS FS**, **Ice Class 1A FS**, **Ice Class 1B FS**, **Ice Class 1C FS** and **Ice Class 1D**, where applicable. Alternative arrangements to attain similar performance will be considered.

6. 2 Framing – General requirements

6. 2. 1 Where a frame intersects a boundary between two of the hull regions the scantling requirements applicable will be those for the forward region if the forward midship boundary is intersected or for the midship region if the aft midship boundary is intersected.

6. 2. 2 The effective weld area attaching ice frames to primary members is not to be less than the shear area for the frames.

6. 2. 3 Asymmertrical frames and frames which are not at right angles to the shell (web less than 90 degrees to the shell) shall be supported against tripping by brackets, intercostals, stringers or similar, at a distance not exceeding 1300 mm. For **Ice Class 1D**, the distance may be increased to 2000 mm. For frames with spans greater than 4 m the extent of anti-tripping supports is to be applied to all regions. For frames with spans less than or equal to 4 m the extent is to be as given in Table 2. 6. 1: Extent of anti-tripping supports. FEA may be carried out to demonstrate equivalent support of alternative arrangements.

Table 2. 6. 1: Extent of anti-tripping supports

Ice Class	Extent of anti-tripping supports
1AS FS	All regions
1A FS	Forward and midship regions
1B FS	Forward region
1C FS	Forward region
1D	Forward region

6. 3 Primary longitudinal members supporting transverse ice framing

6. 3. 1 The webs of primary longitudinal members supporting transverse ice frames are to be stiffened and connected to the main or intermediate frames so that the distance, *r*, between such stiffening is not to be greater than given according to the following formula:

$$r = \sqrt{\frac{291t^3}{\alpha_o \gamma^2}} \text{ mm}$$

where

t = thickness, in mm, of the primary longitudinal member adjacent to the shell plating

α_o = longitudinal distribution factor as given in Table 2. 6. 2: Longitudinal distribution factor αo

γ = (a) Forward region

$\gamma = 0.653 + 3.217\sqrt{P_0 \triangle} \times 10^{-5}$

$= 0.876 + 9.908\sqrt{P_0 \triangle} \times 10^{-6}$

or

γ = 1.0, whichever is the least

(b) Midship and aft regions

$\gamma = 0.653 + 9.908\sqrt{P_0 \triangle} \times 10^{-6}$

or

γ = 1.0, whichever is the least

P_0 and Δ = are as defined in Pt 8, Ch 2, 2.2 Definitions.

6. 3. 2 The minimum thickness of the web plating of longitudinal primary members is to comply with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 10, 4 Construction details for primary members.

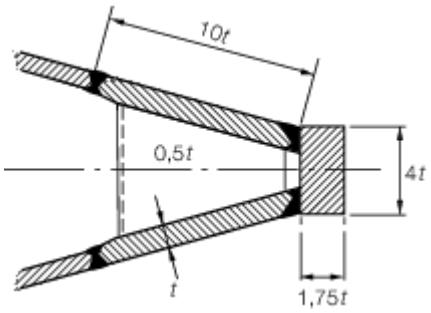
Table 2. 6. 2: Longitudinal distribution factor α_o

Ice Class	α_o		
	Forward	Midship	Aft
1AS FS	1.00	0.98	0.89
1A FS	0.87	0.75	0.64
1B FS	0.78	0.64	0.51
1C FS	0.68	0.53	0.37
1D	0.68	—	—

6. 4 Stem

6. 4. 1 The stem is to be made of rolled, cast or forged steel or of shaped steel plates. A sharp edged stem, as shown in Figure 2. 6. 1: A sharp edged stem, improves the manoeuvrability of the ship in ice. Where a sharp angle stem is fitted, the section modulus as given in Pt 8, Ch 2, 6.4 Stem 6.4.2 and Pt 8, Ch 2, 6.4 Stem 6.4.3 is to apply to the stem section only, otherwise the section modulus may be applied including side plates.

Figure 2. 6. 1: A sharp edged stem



6. 4. 2 The section modulus of the stem in the fore and aft direction is not to be less than determined in accordance with the following formula:

$$Z = 1500\,(\alpha_o\,\gamma^2)^{3/2}\ \text{cm}^3$$

where

α_o = longitudinal distribution factor for the forward region as given in Table 2. 6. 2: Longitudinal distribution factor αo

γ = is defined in Pt 8, Ch 2, 6.3 Primary longitudinal members supporting transverse ice framing 6.3.1.

6. 4. 3 The dimensions of a welded stem constructed as shown in Figure 2. 6. 1: A sharp edged stem are to be determined in accordance with the following formula:

$$t = 31\sqrt{\alpha_o\gamma^2}\text{mm}$$

where

t = thickness of the side plates, in mm.

6. 4. 4 In bulbous bow constructions, the extent of plating below the Ice Light Waterline should be such as to cover that part of the bulb forward of the vertical line originating at the intersection of the Ice Light Waterline and the stem contour at the centreline. A suitably tapered transition piece should be arranged between the reinforced stem plating and keel. However, in no case should the reinforced stem plating extend vertically below the Ice Light Waterline for less than 750 mm. The adjacent strake to the reinforced shaped stem plating of the bulb should be in accordance with the requirements for shell plating.

6. 4. 5 Where in the ice belt region the radius of the stem or bulb front plating is large, one or more vertical stiffeners are to be fitted in order to meet the section modulus requirement of Pt 8, Ch 2, 6.4 Stem 6.4.2. In addition, vertical ring stiffening will be required for the bulb.

6. 4. 6 The dimensions of the stem may be tapered to the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 5, 3.3 Stem at the upper deck. The connections of the shell plating to the stem are to be flush.

6. 5 Stern

6. 5. 1 Where the screwshaft diameter exceeds the Rule diameter, the propeller post is to be correspondingly strengthened, *See* Pt 3, Ch 6, 7 Sternframes and appendages.

6. 6 Renewal criteria within ice strengthening area for CSR ships

6. 6. 1 For double hull oil tankers and bulk carriers that are compliant with the *IACS Common Structural Rules for Bulk Carriers and Oil Tankers (CSR)* , the renewal criteria of the local structure for general corrosion is to be calculated in accordance with the applicable CSR renewal criteria.

6. 7 Rudder and steering arrangements

6. 7. 1 Rudder scantlings, posts, rudder horns, solepieces, rudder stocks, steering engine and pintles are to be dimensioned in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 6 Aft End Structure and Pt 3, Ch 13 Ship Control Systems as appropriate. The speed used in the calculations is to be the maximum service speed or that given in Table 2. 6. 3: Minimum speed, whichever is the greater. When used in association with the speed given in Table 2. 6. 3: Minimum speed, the rudder profile coefficients are to be taken as 1.1.

Table 2. 6. 3: Minimum speed

Ice Class	Minimum speed, in knots
1AS FS	20
1A FS	18
1B FS	16
1C FS	14
1D	14

6. 7. 2 For double plate rudders, the minimum thickness of plating and horizontal and vertical webs is to be determined as for shell plating in the midbody region. For the horizontal and vertical webs, the corrosion-abrasion increment, need not be added. For **Ice Class 1D**, the minimum thickness of plating and webs, of double plate rudders and the extent of application are to be determined as for those in **Ice Class 1C FS**.

6. 7. 3 Where an ice class notation is included in the class of a ship, the nozzle construction requirements, as defined in Table 13. 3. 1: Nozzle construction in Pt 3, Ch 13 Ship Control Systems, are to be upgraded to include abrasion allowance as follows:

Ice Class	Thickness increment
1AS FS	5 mm
1A FS	4 mm
1B FS	3 mm
1C FS	2 mm
1D	2 mm

However, the thickness of the shroud plating is not to be less than the shell plating for the aft region taking frame spacing s in the formula as 500 mm.

6. 7. 4 The scantlings of the stock, pintles, gudgeon and solepiece associated with the nozzle are to be increased on the basis given in Pt 8, Ch 2, 6.7 Rudder and steering arrangements 6.7.1. However, the diameter of the nozzle stock is to be not less than that calculated in the astern condition taking the astern speed as half the speed given in Table 2. 6. 3: Minimum speed or the actual astern speed, whichever is the greater.

6. 7. 5 Nozzles with articulated flaps will be subject to special consideration.

6. 7. 6 For the Ice Classes **1AS FS** and **1A FS**, the rudder stock and the upper edge of the rudder shall be protected against ice pressure by an ice knife or equivalent means. The ice knife is to extend down to the ice light waterline; this requirement may be waived where this would lead to impracticable ice knifes, e.g. for ships with large draught variations.

6. 7. 7 For the Ice Classes **1AS FS** and **1A FS**, due regard is to be paid to the excessive load caused by the rudder being forced out of the midship position when backing into an ice ridge. When vessels are intended to operate with significant time in astern operation, then the hull strength is to be based on the method used in the forward region; however, due consideration may be given to the anticipated power in this mode of operation.

6. 7. 8 Relief valves for hydraulic pressure are to be effective, *See* Pt 5, Ch 19, 3.3 Valve and relief valve arrangements. The components of the rudder steering gear are to be able to withstand the yield torque of the rudder stock, *See* Pt 5, Ch 19, 3.2 Components 3.2.2.

PART

8

CHAPTER 2 Ice Operations - Ice Class

SECTION 7 Machinery requirements for first-year ice conditions – Ice Classes 1AS FS, 1A FS, 1B FS and 1C FS

7. 1 General

7. 1. 1 In addition to the requirements of the *Finnish- Swedish Ice Class Rules*, the following Sections are to be complied with for **Ice Class 1AS FS, Ice Class 1A FS, Ice Class 1B FS** and **Ice Class 1C FS**, where applicable. Alternative arrangements to attain similar performance will be specially considered.

7. 2 Determination of ice torque

7. 2. 1 If the propeller is not fully submerged when the ship is in ballast condition, the requirements for **Ice Class 1A FS** is to be used for **Ice Class 1B FS** and **Ice Class 1C FS**.

7. 3 Propeller blade sections

7. 3. 1 Where the blade thickness derived from the *Finnish-Swedish Ice Class Rules* is less than the blade thickness derived by Pt 5, Ch 7, 3.1 Minimum blade thickness, the latter is to apply.

7. 4 Intermediate blade sections

7. 4. 1 The thickness of other sections is to conform to a smooth curve connecting the section thicknesses as determined by the *Finnish-Swedish Ice Class Rules*.

7. 5 Blade edge thickness

7. 5. 1 The thickness of blade edges is to be not less than 50 per cent of the derived tip thickness, t, measured at $1.25t$ from edge. For controllable pitch propellers, this applies only to the leading edge.

7. 6 Mechanisms for controllable pitch propellers

7. 6. 1 The strength of mechanisms in the boss of a controllable pitch propeller is to be 1.5 times that of the blade when a load is applied at the radius $0.9D/2$ in the weakest direction of the blade.

7. 7 Keyless propellers

7. 7. 1 When it is proposed to use keyless propellers, the fit of the propeller boss to the screwshaft will be specially considered.

7. 8 Screwshafts

7. 8. 1 Where the screwshaft diameter as derived by the *Finnish-Swedish Ice Class Rules* is less than the diameter derived by Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.5 Screwshafts and tube shafts 3.5.1, the latter is to apply.

7. 8. 2 The diameter, d_s, of the screwshaft determined in accordance with the *Finnish-Swedish Ice Class Rules* is to extend over a length not less than that to the forward edge of the bearing immediately forward of the propeller or $2.5d_s$ whichever is the greater.

7. 8. 3 The shaft may be tapered at the forward end in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.5 Screwshafts and tube shafts 3.5.3and Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.5 Screwshafts and tube shafts 3.5.4, except for **Ice Class 1AS FS** ice strengthening, where these diameters are to be increased by 10 per cent.

7. 8. 4 For screwshafts in ships intended for the notation **Ice Class 1AS FS** or **Ice Class 1A FS** and where the connection between the propeller and the screwshaft is by means of a key, Charpy impact tests are to be made in accordance with the requirements of Ch 5, 3.4 Mechanical tests 3.4.12 of the Rules for Materials.

7. 9 Intermediate and thrust shafts

7. 9. 1 The diameters of intermediate shafts and thrust shafts in external bearings are to comply with Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.1 Intermediate shafts and Pt 5, Ch 6, 3.4 Thrust shafts respectively, except for **Ice Class 1AS FS** ice strengthening where these diameters are to be increased by 10 per cent.

PART

8

CHAPTER 2 Ice Operations - Ice Class

SECTION 8 Hull requirements for first-year ice conditions – Ice classes 1AS FS(+), 1A FS(+), 1B FS(+) and 1C FS(+)

8. 1 General

8. 1. 1 The requirements for **Ice Class 1AS FS, Ice Class 1A FS, Ice Class 1B FS** and **Ice Class 1C FS**, as applicable, are to be applied using the installed engine power as given by Pt 8, Ch 2, 9 Machinery requirements for first-year ice conditions - Ice classes 1AS FS(+), 1A FS(+), 1B FS(+) and 1C FS(+).

PART

8

CHAPTER 2 Ice Operations - Ice Class

SECTION 9 Hull requirements for first-year ice conditions – Ice classes 1AS FS(+), 1A FS(+), 1B FS(+) and 1C FS(+)

9. 1 Powering of ice strengthened ships

9. 1. 1 For ships that require additional strengthening in ice, the total shaft power installed is to be calculated using the following Sections, but is not to be less than required by the *Finnish-Swedish Ice Class Rules* in force at the time of contract.

9. 1. 2 Ice strengthened ships which are to be considered to have an icebreaking capability are to be able to develop sufficient thrust to permit continuous mode icebreaking at a speed of at least five knots in ice having a thickness equal to the nominal value for the desired Ice Class and a snow cover of at least 0.3 m.

9. 1. 3 The shaft power necessary to provide an icebreaking capability can be determined by the equation:

$$P_1 = 0.736 C_1 C_2 C_3 C_4 \left[240 B h (1 + h + 0.035 v^2) + 70 S_c \sqrt{L}\right] \text{kW}$$

where

B = moulded breath of ship, in metres, *See* Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1 Principal particulars 6.1.3

L = Rule length, in metres, *See* Pt 3, Ch 1, 6.1 Principal particulars 6.1.1

Δ = displacement, in tonnes, *See* Pt 3, Ch 9.7.2.1

C_1 = $\frac{1.2B}{\sqrt[3]{\Delta}}$ *but is not be taken as less than* 1.0

C_2 = 0.9 if the ship is fitted with a controllable pitch propeller, otherwise 1.0

C_3 = 0.9 if the rake of the stem is 45° or less, otherwise 1.0. The product C_2 C_3 is not to be taken as less than 0.85

C_4 = 1.1 if the ship is fitted with a bulbous bow, otherwise 1.0

h = ice thickness

= 1.0 for **Ice Class 1AS FS(+)**

= 0.8 for **Ice Class 1A FS(+)**

= 0.6 for **Ice Class 1B FS(+)**

= 0.4 for **Ice Class 1C FS(+)**

S_c = depth of snow cover

v = ship speed, in knots, when breaking ice of thickness h.

9. 2 Materials for shafting

9. 2. 1 For screwshafts in ships intended for the notation **Ice Class 1AS FS(+)** or **Ice Class 1A FS(+)** and where the connection between the propeller and the screwshaft is by means of a key, Charpy impact tests are to be made in accordance with the requirements of Ch 5, 3.4 Mechanical tests 3.4.12 of the Rules for Materials.